

RICHARD COOPER



THE UNPLUGGED ALPHA

THE NO BULLSH*T GUIDE TO WINNING WITH WOMEN & LIFE

RICHARD COOPER



THE UNPLUGGED
ALPHA

THE NO BULLSH*T GUIDE TO WINNING WITH WOMEN & LIFE

THE UNPLUGGED ALPHA

THE NO BULLSH*T GUIDE TO WINNING WITH WOMEN
AND LIFE

RICHARD COOPER

Edited by
STEVE FROM ACCOUNTING

Copyright © 2020 by Richard Cooper

All rights reserved. This book or any portion thereof may not be reproduced or used in any manner whatsoever without the express written permission of the publisher except for the use of brief quotations in a book review.

The events and conversations in this book have been set down to the best of the author's ability, although some names and details have been changed to protect the privacy of individuals.

Although the author and publisher have made every effort to ensure that the information in this book was correct at press time, the author and publisher do not assume and hereby disclaim any liability to any party for any loss, damage, or disruption caused by errors or omissions, whether such errors or omissions result from negligence, accident, or any other cause.

No information in this book is intended as a substitute for the medical advice of a licensed physician. The reader should regularly consult a licensed physician in matters relating to their health, particularly with respect to any symptoms that may require diagnosis or medical attention.

First Edition, 2020

ISBNS

Digital eBook Edition: 978-1-7774733-1-0

Paperback Edition: 978-1-7774733-3-4

Hardback Edition: 978-1-7774733-0-3

Audiobook Edition: 978-1-7774733-2-7

1818 Dundas Street East,

Suite 202,

Whitby, Ontario, L1N 2L4

www.entrepreneursincars.com

*I dedicate this book to all the men around the world that never
had a strong, masculine male role model growing up to teach
them about the cold, hard truth of modern women and the world
we live in.*

CONTENTS

Foreword

My Unplugging

1. The female primary social order
Men, the disposable sex
War brides
Toxic masculinity
The way forward
The cold hard truth
2. Women's rules - How they break them or make them
Enter the Amazonian
The Alpha to Beta conversion process
A thousand concessions
The cold hard truth
3. Why genuine burning desire matters
How to determine her interest
A Score of 9 - 10 shows Genuine Burning Desire
A Score of 7 - 8 shows Indifference
A Score of 1 to 6 shows they're a Detractor
Be attractive, not unattractive
Gauging your SMV
Validation sex versus transactional sex
Conclusion
The cold hard truth
4. 20 Red Flags
Red flag #1 - Daddy issues
Red flag #2 - Feminists
Red flag #3 - The unhappy and unlucky
Red flag #4 - She competes with you
Red flag #5 - Keeps men from her past around
Red flag #6 - Poor with money
Red flag #7 - Violent women
Red flag #8 - Extreme jealousy
Red Flag #9 - Party girls
Red Flag #10 - Heavily tattooed and pierced women

Red Flag #11 - Big notch counts
Red Flag #12 - Single mothers
Red Flag #13 - Women seeking validation
Red Flag #14 - She was a sugar baby
Red Flag #15 - Pathological liars
Red Flag #16 - Baby rabies
Red Flag #17 - Hissy fits
Red Flag #18 - Not being in control of the birth
Red Flag #19 - Drama queens
Red Flag #20 - Addictions
Conclusion
The cold hard truth

5. Single Mothers

Cuckoldry
Responsibility without authority
The victim mindset
Financial issues
Reprioritization
The BIG risk
When dating a single mother - might - make sense
The cold hard truth

6. Hire slowly but fire quickly

My single mommy experience
The business partner experience
The cold hard truth

7. Looks, Money, Status, and Game

Looks
Money
Status
Game
The cold hard truth

8. Manage Your Endocrine System

Optimal versus normal
My TRT protocol
How to boost testosterone naturally
In conclusion
The cold hard truth

9. Manage the fucks you give

Self-control
Mastering self-control
How do you strengthen self-control?

The cold hard truth

10. Getting “Da Girls” Online
The cold hard truth about online dating
How to assess your value
How to get results
Your biography
Messaging
The date aka: “The sniff test”
Getting laid and spinning those plates
Always be in control of birth
The cold hard truth
11. Promiscuous Primates
We are terrible at monogamy
How her sexual strategy constantly changes
Her cycles
Sex at Dawn
Cuckoldry
Men’s proclivity to “Oneitis”
Enter plate theory
Spin those plates
A monogamous Long Term Relationship (LTR).
The tattoo test
Open LTR
Polyamory
Conclusion
The cold hard truth
12. Own a Motorcycle
Masculine therapy
Shared interests
In closing
The cold hard truth
13. Master Violence
A powerful defense is the best offense
The cold hard truth
14. When men go their own way (MGTOW)
The problem as they see it
The dangers of “Red Pill Rage”
Surrender to female nature
Learn to accept it and then navigate it
The “Black Pill” solution
Sex dolls

[The real MGTOWs](#)

[Rise of the Incel](#)

[Better safe than sorry](#)

[Conclusion](#)

[The cold hard truth](#)

15. [Why Smart Men Avoid Marriage](#)

[Family law](#)

[Domestic violence charges - A woman's trump card](#)

[How women behave during divorce](#)

[How the state encourages women to become single mothers](#)

[Arguments for marriage](#)

[Divorce and suicide](#)

[Children and divorce](#)

[How marriage changes men](#)

[How to minimize the risks of marriage](#)

[Conclusion](#)

[The cold hard truth](#)

[In Conclusion...](#)

[Glossary](#)

FOREWORD

I met Rich Cooper in 2016. I'm loathed to call it a meeting, since it seems like no one really meets anyone face-to-face these days. At least not in the online spheres. Rich hit me up via email and asked me to come on his YouTube podcast, *Entrepreneurs in Cars*, for an interview. While the interview is still available on his channel, I *really* wish I still had that first email exchange.

I was two books into the Rational Male series by then and was working on the third. This was when I got a lot of requests for interviews. I guess this sounds conceited, but '*The Rational Male*' was maturing into the "*Bible of the Red Pill*"^w then. '*Preventive Medicine*' was getting traction, and I was consumed with the writing/compiling of '*Positive Masculinity*' that year. I wasn't doing interviews.

Hell, I didn't even show my face until 2017, but something about Rich's email struck me as raw honesty. I've always been very hesitant to talk with guys who I got a grifter vibe from, but I didn't get that from Rich. He was sincere in his

appreciation for what I put in ‘*The Rational Male*’ in a way that made me think: “Arigh, I’ll take an hour to talk with him.”

I’m glad I did. Since that first meeting, Richard Cooper has become a good friend, business associate, and a mind with whom I could bounce ideas off of. He’s a man who’s experienced a lot, has the stripes to prove it, but more so, he was honest in his assessments.

In this crazy *Manosphere* conglomerate of online personalities, there are a lot of damaged men. Physically, or psychologically, guys in this sphere can be insane. Some only mildly, some very intensely, some are well-meaning, while others are just malicious; it’s rare to find the *normal* guy among the autistics. Every man in this sphere is looking for answers, but what they do when they acquire those answers, and who they become after they gain that awareness, is based on where they began when they started looking.

Rich is a guy I would hang out with had I initially met him *in real life*. I didn’t meet Rich face-to-face until September 2017. But, when I did, we just talked like old friends. No pretense, no fawning admiration, just two men who related like men. Although, that might sound stupidly mundane in the foreword of a book by today’s standards in the *TL;DR* generation of the “*sphere*.”

I think he may have mentioned something about my work saving his life, but beyond that, we became fast friends.

Since then, Rich and I have worked on collaborations both good and *unwise*. Even through the worst of decisions, Rich has proven a good and balanced friend. But, at the risk of glossing him up too much, Rich is *honest* with himself – and this is the prime requisite of a true *author*.

So, it is with that where I will leave Richard Cooper, and you the reader, with a note of advice from one *author* to another: Stay honest with yourself and read this book with the intent of internalizing the ideas contained within.

– *Rollo Tomassi, November 2020*

MY UNPLUGGING

“ Learn from the mistakes of others, you can’t live long enough to make them all yourself.

- Eleanor Roosevelt

When it came to making mistakes, 2011 to 2015 were terrible years for me. I'd barely survived a divorce, my award-winning business was almost in ruins, and my heart was in pieces from a terrible experience with a single-mom that I'd dated post-divorce.

I knew I'd hit rock-bottom when I was seriously contemplating suicide. I remember driving my truck on the highway and thinking to myself: "If I just nail it, take off my seat-belt, and slam into an overpass freeway concrete pillar, it'll all be over quickly."

I was living in what psychologists have referred to as a “Safe World Theory.” A belief system that is a place of refuge, and it was completely shattered during these years. Towards the beginning of 2016 I had all the symptoms of Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder (or PTSD).

Something needed to change - and fast. But it wasn't the world, government, or women that needed to change. It was me. I needed to wake up and update my belief system because what I was doing, clearly, wasn't working.

In December 2016, I started my recovery when I was at a prestigious men's retreat. An attendee recommended a book called '*The Rational Male*' by Rollo Tomassi. It kick-started my path to clearer thinking and helped me unplug from comforting lies. I soon saw the uncomfortable truths about the world that we, as men, all-too-often struggle through.

It's a book that opens with the question "Why do my eyes hurt?" And the answer... "You've never used them before." The quote is taken from the movie '*The Matrix*'. During this infamous scene, Morpheus offered two pills to Neo: One blue and another red.

The "Blue Pill" offers a viewpoint that is one of falsehood, security, and the blissful ignorance of illusion. The "Red Pill" perspective offers us men the knowledge, freedom, and the sometimes-painful, truth of reality.

I had subscribed to the notion that good, virtuous, and strong will always prevail over all things bad, painful, and evil. However, severe blows to my belief system forced me to question that notion and adapt accordingly.

At the age of 38, I began the divorce process, two years after my only child was born. I quickly experienced the gut-wrenching reality of how badly family law treats men in today's Western world. How family law, and a female-first

primary social order, encourages women to behave horribly, and without remorse, towards the child's father.

On top of that, during the separation period, I was also forced to defend an attack on the company I founded ten years earlier. This attack by credit card issuers with massive legal teams, threatened to put us out of business by changing legislation that would financially strangle us.

After getting off a phone-call updating my business coach in 2011, I vividly remember closing the door to my office and turning away from the window (so my staff couldn't see me). I then put my face into the palm of my hands and began crying uncontrollably.

Only two years prior, I was on cloud nine. I had built a multi-million-dollar custom home, I was married to a lawyer who I thought was my "soulmate," and I was the father to a healthy child. Within one year I'd paid off my mortgage, and then bought my dream car.

Suddenly, I felt like my world was burning down around me. Before the divorce, my family and close friends always relied on *me* for being their rock, for being unshakable. Feeling this way was *completely* unlike me.

I spent \$60,000 on lobbyists and a year and a half of my life trying to save my business. I was in charge of 23 employees and we had thousands of customers. To make the business viable again, we had to pivot into an almost impractical direction, which put me in a position where I needed to become the lowest paid person in my company.

The final blow that led to my awakening came in 2015, after putting almost three years into a relationship with a single mother and her two young boys. I was betrayed in ways I couldn't fathom by a woman who I believed in and trusted. I put a massive amount of personal equity into a woman and her children. Only to be abused, lied to, and ultimately cheated on by her.

My *entire* world was an illusion, and it completely shattered my beliefs.

After that breakup, and for longer than I care to admit, I was re-experiencing the trauma through intrusive distressing recollections of the events, flashbacks, and nightmares. I routinely woke up at 3am and couldn't fall back asleep as my mind was subconsciously trying to reconcile what happened.

I started experiencing emotional numbness, and began avoiding places, people, and activities that reminded me of the trauma. I also had great difficulty concentrating and getting things done. These were all symptoms of PTSD.

Trauma is a normal reaction to abnormal events that overwhelm a person's ability to adapt to life. Leaving you believing that you were powerless.

One thing that happens when you take the proverbial "Red Pill", is your senses become heightened and more aware. You gain a new sense of clarity; things or events that may have fooled you before, become more obvious and you really begin to understand *why* certain events happened in your past. We call the process "unplugging" and we do it by updating our old belief system.

While some men get angry when they unplug from beliefs that weren't serving them, it calmed me. I became aware. Events in my life that previously didn't add up, *finally* made sense and I wanted to see how far down the metaphorical rabbit hole I could go. I needed an outlet and somewhere to express the lessons I was learning about how to live life in today's world as a man.

Fortunately, as I already had a platform, an audience, and a test bed to get feedback on my theories, I dove right in.

After becoming frustrated with my divorce, and the attacks on my business from competitors, on May 23rd 2014 I created a YouTube channel to marry up my two biggest passions in life: Entrepreneurship and fast cars. I made videos and uploaded them to YouTube and called the channel 'Entrepreneurs in Cars'. It started out showcasing my entrepreneurial friends in their success rides, then giving away business tips and lessons from the trenches as an entrepreneur.

But I soon ran out of friends with cool cars and stories to tell. That was when a regular viewer of my work said: "Do a video on the different types of women to avoid dating."

Well, I had just broken up with my single mother and had plenty of experience on what *not* to do in life, so I began sharing those stories and letting my wounds become my work.

Since I began talking about how men could become better, by adopting a "Red Pilled lens" to viewing the world, I've had over forty million views on my YouTube channel.

Questions soon flooded in from my viewers seeking clarity on areas in life they were stuck on. Mostly dating, divorce, marriage, self-care, business, and money. I also took so many questions from people going through their own unplugging struggles that I started coaching them one-on-one. I began taking copious notes and making videos on the lessons that I learned.

This book is a collection of my own personal experiences, the feedback from my community, and the *thousands* of people I have coached through their personal problems.

Many men have called me “The father they never had.” That I’ve taught them, by navigating this world with the truth that a Red Pill lens offers, how they could live a better, more fulfilling, and happier life that enabled them to fulfil their purpose. I believe that it’s my style of dispensing these experiences and cold hard truth bombs that has helped others connect the dots and see the world as it truly is.

However, I must warn you: Some of these stories and lessons may be inconvenient and many will shock you. Remember, the truth doesn’t care about feelings, or political correctness. Also, comforting lies always sell better than uncomfortable truths.

Ultimately, men live in a difficult time today as we are living in a “feminine first” primary social order. Men must embrace their masculinity and completely surrender to the notion that, by employing masculine virtues, there is a place for men to become the best version of themselves in today's world.

Society, culture, religion, the government, mainstream media, and Hollywood all lied to us. Which is why I believe wholeheartedly that a man's *true* mental health and happiness begins with an ability to navigate through life seeing things as they truly are - not as we've been told they are.

To get the most out of this book, clear your head and then really open your mind. Many of the concepts that I discuss will not be popular and some will be opposed. But, as I always tell my audience: "The truth will first piss you off, then it will set you free - if you let it."

Look, I am not university trained, with fancy pieces of paper with letters after my name, framed in mahogany on my wall. Like you, I'm just an ordinary guy that wanted to work on himself. A guy that can use a lot of key life experiences to point to some facts about life, self-care, women, money, masculinity, and navigating the sexual marketplace.

I truly hope you enjoy this book and the invaluable life lessons contained within.

Peace.

Richard Cooper

THE FEMALE PRIMARY SOCIAL ORDER

One of the most difficult concepts guys struggle with today, is that men live in a ‘female first’ social order. This is why I’m placing this chapter early in the book, because it’s important for men to understand how we, as a society, value the feminine over the masculine, and also why that is.

Until a man accepts this reality, and updates his core beliefs, he will forever struggle with the reality the Red Pill brings.

The average man has been fed a steady diet of silly narratives his entire life, such as: “Women are oppressed,” “The patriarchy is evil,” “Masculinity is toxic,” “All men are rapists,” “Women are victims,” and “Women get paid less than men for the same work.”

In actuality, *none* of these narratives bear any close resemblance to the facts. This outrage is manufactured by a “female first” primary social order, with it originating from a toxic version of feminism that is no longer about equality. But rather, female dominance and male submission.

When you pay attention, you will notice an ongoing narrative that dismisses the plight of men, and even somehow makes women the victim of male disposability.

Hillary Clinton illustrated this eloquently when she said:

“ *Women have always been the primary victims of war. Women lose their husbands, their fathers, their sons in combat.*

So, men die in war, but women are the most affected. As if to say that the, often painful, death of a soldier fighting for freedom is simply insignificant.

Men, the disposable sex

Dr. Warren Farrell is a soft-spoken, educator, activist, and author on gender issues. He was the only man ever to be elected three times to the board of the National Organization for Women, which is a feminist organization, and spent much of his life advocating for feminism.

During his work advocating for women, a switch flipped in his head when he realized that women are, in fact, *not* the oppressed sex. Instead, women are the protected sex.

But, when we change the discussion, and talk about a female primary social order that's not being the victim of men, then it invites anger, disbelief, and ridicule as if to say: “How dare you suggest that women aren't victims and that men are treated with disposability!”

In his book, ‘The Myth of Male Power’, Dr. Farrell spills the beans on everything he learned through his experience as a male feminist, while also pointing to the cold, hard, and indisputable facts about the “female first” primary social order that we live in.

Although he had advocated for women for decades, his peers and critics called his observations of the facts a “Promotion of misogyny.”

One of the cold hard truths that men need to get used to, is that, whenever someone has a problem with facts, the problem *isn’t* with the facts.

The truth is, *any* narrative that doesn’t put the feminine first today **will** be manipulated, so it is therefore seen as misogyny by default.

Some of interesting facts I discovered when consuming his work included:

- Men and women have similar mortality rates with prostate and breast cancer. Yet, six times more money is spent on researching breast cancer.
- 85% of homeless people in the US are men.
- Men get *far* longer prison sentences than women – for exactly the same crime.
- In divorce, men are more often left financially broken, with little – or sometimes no – access to his own children, while family law enriches the mother (at his expense no less).

- Men, by a wide margin, enter more dangerous professions by becoming: Roofers, Fire Fighters, Law Enforcement Officers, Miners, and Soldiers. A whopping 94% of workplace injuries are men. Men also commute further, and work longer hours than women do. So, while men do often earn more, it's because men take on riskier, and therefore higher paying, roles. Often trying to buy their way, like the good little beta bucks they are, to female approval and love.
- 24 of the Fortune 500 companies are led by female CEOs. So, the state of California, in an effort to equalize outcome (but without an equality of effort, or merit), passed a law in 2018 to *force* publicly traded companies to put more women on the boards of directors. Yet, there is no such push to get more women into coal mines, offshore drilling, or on garbage trucks.
- In situations where a parent is required to pay child support to the other parent, men are twice as likely as women to pay child support. Yet, unlike the disparaging term “Deadbeat dad,” there is no similar mainstream female equivalent. Perhaps “Deadbeat mom?”
- More than twice as many men are the victim of violent crimes compared to women (even when including rape), and men are also *three times* more likely to be murdered.
- Boys are taught in a female-centric school system. From the earliest grades, schools do a better

job educating girls. Women now earn a majority of Associate, Bachelor, Masters, and Doctoral degrees, and their share of college degrees increases almost every year.

- In every TV sitcom and commercial, men are portrayed as bumbling beta idiots. Incapable of doing anything right and are the butt of all jokes, while women are praised and celebrated.

These facts show us that society puts *far* greater value, and importance, on the lives of women over men. Society treats men as disposable and women as the protected sex.

That's okay, because we've always valued women over men. Let's just be honest about it, rather than pushing lies about women being the oppressed, while men are the oppressors.

War brides

Even throughout history, men have always been disposable, while women were valued and protected. Go back 20,000 years ago. If a hostile warring empire conquered a neighboring nation, then all men of fighting age that weren't killed during the conflict, were either killed afterwards, or put in chains and enslaved.

Influential young boys were recruited into legions to fight for the conquerors. While women and girls were taken into the conquering army, preserved as war brides, because of their value in childbearing.

To put that dynamic into perspective today, it's one of the reasons why women have a far easier time getting over a breakup than men do. Women, as a function of adaptation, need to be able to adapt quickly and move from man-to-man easily.

It's part of a woman's hypergamous nature to *always* seek the best male that she could get. Warring tribe wins? Then the men in that tribe now become her best option for survival.

Men have always been disposable protectors. Women have always selected the best men for survival. Even if that meant becoming a war bride to a conquering army that killed off, or enslaved, their family.

Toxic masculinity

We live in a time where “Toxic masculinity” means that “All masculinity is toxic.” This is especially true anytime a man commits a violent crime, or mass shooting.

In 2018, 19-year-old Nikolas Cruz took a gun, shot, and killed 17 people at his former high-school. He had his face painted all over the media, with headlines purporting that his actions were the result of “Toxic masculinity.”

The media published the following headlines after the event:



How Gun Violence and Toxic Masculinity are Linked, In 8 Tweets

- The Huffington Post

“ Toxic Masculinity Is Killing Us

- The Boston Globe

“ Guns don’t kill people; men and boys kill people, experts say

- USA TODAY

This was a boy brought into a world by an irresponsible single mother that allegedly drank alcohol during her pregnancy. Lynda and Roger Cruz adopted him as an infant. 17 months later, the Cruz family learned that Nikolas' biological mother gave birth to another baby boy, from a different father, who they also adopted. Roger died when Nikolas was four, leaving Nick and his half-brother to be raised by their now single, widowed mother.

Boys raised in a single-mother household have disproportionately higher crime rates and mental health issues. 73% of adolescent murderers grew up without a father. 85% of adolescents with behavioral issues originate from fatherless homes, while 85% of youths in prisons grew up in fatherless homes.

From reading the articles, you quickly learn that Nikolas was never taught discipline, determination, or resiliency. He was also a product of the ‘participation trophy’ generation where “Everyone’s a winner!” by default. Therefore, never needing to learn how to deal with defeat or rejection by women.

As his belief system lacked any ability to deal with women, or rejection, when he was bullied in school, and then rejected

by a girl he was fond of, it wasn't surprising that he defaulted to the feminine programming he grew up on. Ultimately, resulting in an outburst of anger and resentment, that lead to him going on to kill his school peers that rejected him.

Yet, when I searched the internet, I couldn't find one news article about how boys like Nikolas need a father growing up. Or, how 26 of the last 27 school shooters came from fatherless homes.

With an increasing number of boys being raised by single mothers, the vast majority of teachers being female today, most boys have extraordinarily little influence from strong, virtuous male role models growing up. Toxic masculinity isn't the problem - a lack of masculinity is.

You've got to learn to question societal narratives as a man; constantly ask yourself why men are being demonized and women are praised.

The way forward

The point of this chapter isn't to anger you. Rather, it's intended to expand the scope of your thinking as a man to the realities of the modern world we live in. And accepting the reality of where we stand is the first step in moving forward.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- Third-wave feminism isn't even close to being about "equality." Rather, it's about female dominance and male submission.
- Hypergamy is an evolutionary survival technique that ensures the female, and then her kids, are looked after by the strongest, most resourceful man.
- Society often sees men as the disposable sex. For example, the classic "Women and children first" approach on sinking ships (or other disasters).
- Men make up nearly all suicides (with many of them being because of failed past relationships - especially ones that involve his kids that he's no longer "allowed" to see).
- If you can't learn to accept this way of life, then you run the very real risk of taking the "Black Pill" and becoming exceptionally jaded against all women and pursuing any type of relationship with them (whether that is spinning plates, non-exclusive LTRs, or otherwise). You can prevent this from happening by updating your belief system with healthy adaptations and then learning how to maximize your benefits while minimizing the risks.

WOMEN'S RULES - HOW THEY BREAK THEM OR MAKE THEM

There is plenty of debate on what constitutes an alpha male and how to become more like one. Most men have heavy ego investments in what they believe and dictate what is what. So, I think it's pointless to get into those.

Instead, I'd like to defer to women. Which, as we already know, are the sexual selectors and, unlike the advice they give to men about women, their *behavior* won't ever lie to us.

In my life, I've been both the alpha and the beta. And it depended on how effectively my belief system was operating, and also the lens in which I was viewing the world. From my personal experience, and the many men I've coached, women will **always** break the rules for a man she deems to be alpha.

Like the cute "good girl" librarian that made you patiently wait three months for basic missionary sex when you were 20. She'll end up naked in bed with Chad Thundercock 15-minutes after meeting him in Ibiza at the foam cannon party on her 23rd birthday. You can also be certain she'll be doing everything she said she wouldn't do with you - with him.

Never forget: Women break rules for alphas and make them for betas.

If every alpha had a dime for every time a woman said, “I don’t normally do this,” when it comes to first date sex, sex without a condom, swallowing, or some other act she might later regret, men would be rich.

When women say: “I don’t do that,” always add to it in your head: “With you.” Because she’ll do it with a man who *she* deems worthy of such sexual gymnastics.

Women will **always** break the rules for an alpha. It always has been, and always will be, that way. Conversely, women will **MAKE** rules for men who they deem to be a mere beta.

They will make a beta wait eight, likely expensive, dates to sleep with them. They won’t perform oral for a beta and they won’t drive to a bar to meet (because it’s too far for her to bother for a beta male). Women **WILL** always make rules for betas.

Enter the Amazonian

It’s story time. I once had a first date with a thirty-something woman that I met online. She showed up around 30lbs heavier than her pictures suggested, and also quite a bit taller than I expected. But she was cute enough to have one drink with.

Women **will** subconsciously shit test men **all the time** to see if they are alpha or beta. So, a few swigs into my beer, and she proceeded to tell me how, after some bad experiences

with men, she now has an “eight dates” rule before she’ll sleep with them.

Nearly spitting out my beer, I chuckled with amused mastery, and called bullshit. I stated I don’t play games and I certainly don’t negotiate desire, or when sex happens.

I also told her it was childish, and interferes with the natural progression of the sexual dynamics and desire.

Men need to understand. Anytime you negotiate desire, it automatically creates obligated compliance. Which leads to resentment, and *nobody* wants that.

After some back-and-forth banter on the topic of her “eight date rule,” with a dilation of her pupils, and a huff of her giant tits in her push-up bra, she put down her girly cocktail. She looked me dead in the eyes, smirked and said “Okay, let’s fuck *right now.*” And made a gesture towards the bathrooms in the bar.

The same woman who was previously lecturing me about her “Eight date rule,” was ready to bang me in the bathroom. Literally only 20-minutes after I sat down with her.

It was a shit test - and I passed it with flying colors. It was also one of the few times in my life where I’ve passed on an aggressive sexual female advance.

If a woman is placing hoops for you to jump through, and tests to pass, then she is testing you as a beta, a provider. And I promise you, it’ll **not** end in amazing “Fuck me like you own me!” sex.

A woman **will** break all her rules if she views you as an alpha. Every. Single. Time.

She will enter your frame. She will come to you. She will swallow. She will have sex with you on her period. She will enthusiastically say “I want to feel you everywhere,” and put your cock in her ass. She will make you breakfast in the morning, make your bed, do the laundry. And, ultimately, if you can maintain the frame of such a dynamic on a long-term basis, she **will** become a compliment to your life.

However, a woman who's making rules for you views you as a beta. Every. Single. Time.

She'll make you wait for sex. You'll go to her. She won't perform oral. You'll be buying her dinner, be her shoulder to cry on, and she'll be the focus of your life. She will treat you like an emotional tampon. She'll use you to fix her car, hang shelves, and take care of her kids. All while she goes out salsa dancing with her girlfriends where she might meet Chad Thundercock one night and then fuck him in the nightclub's bathroom.

Men that operate in a beta frame end up getting cheated on *far* more than alpha males. They never get her best (in, or out of, the bedroom) and they end up marrying women that will only ever treat them like a plow horse.

As a man that she deems a Beta, you will have little say in family matters, raising the kids, or financial control. You'll go to your job every week while she drops off the kids in her SUV to school or daycare. Before she sits down in a coffee shop, after yoga class, cackling with her friends about how

useless their husbands are. They then complain they had to “give” sex to their Beta husband earlier that week, while they pine for their hot yoga instructor.

That same woman could have been in Ibiza for her birthday, enthusiastically fucking two cute Italian guys like a porn star in a gangbang, just moments after she met them.

The Alpha to Beta conversion process

A woman spends years 'changing' her man, then wonders what happened to the guy she fell in love with.

– Anon.

This process takes years, and can turn an alpha into a weak beta male – it’s often considered to be the process of “Betatization by a thousand concessions”. It is one of the many catalysts that leads to the trauma that men suffer, sending them online to seek answers and the truth.

This is a process I’ve spoken about many times in my videos and it turns men from a pet she loves and admires, to a plow horse that she sees as nothing more than a utility. A utility that she emotionally abuses and doesn’t want to fuck enthusiastically anymore.

If you aren’t aware, and you don’t control the frame of the relationship, then the chances are, this will happen to you. It will make you weak, soft, poor, and undesirable to your woman.

The process of “Betatization by a thousand concessions” is a genuine threat to you as a man, especially if you cohabit, or enter into a marriage, or have children.

Because of women’s innate hypergamous nature, women aim to marry up to a better man, so he generally earns the bulk of the income in the household. Meaning that the Betatization process could end up costing you a **significant** part of your past, and even future, wealth in a divorce.

But that’s not even the worst part. Since women still get primary custody of children around 80% of the time, most men not only lose their wealth, but also their decision-making capacity around their children. Meaning that they also lose their ability to father them properly.

Becoming a weak beta is one of the most dangerous things that happens to men in LTRs and marriages.

It is a process that women unknowingly facilitate. And men allow it to happen because we, as men, have been told our entire lives to put her on a pedestal and to be less - so that she can become more.

A thousand concessions

The timeline looks something like this: She locks down a man that she admired, wanted to fuck, and be with. Over time, he turns into the beaten down beta plow horse that succumbs to her beck and call. He performs chores *hoping* for sex, and is who she ultimately no longer wants to fuck - or even desires.

This phenomenon usually starts with: “Honey, put your dark socks in the dark hamper, and your white socks in the white hamper for whites”. It then progresses to “Let’s go vegan together!” and ends at “I love you, but I’m not in love with you, I want a divorce, so I’m taking the kids to my mothers”.

For a perfect illustration of what these Betatized married plow horses look like, pay attention to your next few trips to the grocery store. Now stroll by the baby diaper isle and look for the family doing their shopping.

You will start to see husbands with an exhausted and beaten down look on their faces. Their kids, aged one, three, and five, plus one bun in the oven, are out of control. His, now rotund, wife with her permanent “resting bitch face” scowls at him about how incompetent he is for putting the wrong diapers in the shopping cart.

Once you see this happen, it can’t ever be unseen. You will notice these types of men more often around you. At the mall, at your kid’s soccer game, and around social gatherings with friends and family.

This husband is the same man that she, many years prior, would look up to and potentially even had enthusiastically rough, monkey sex with. She would proudly present her new “pet” boyfriend for the first time over the holidays before proudly saying to her family, “This is Kevin, the VP of sales I told you all about from work.”

Heck, he was probably the same guy she would get in a quarrel with. He would hang up the phone to control the frame because he was subconsciously alpha enough to know

when a soft next worked. She likely drove over at 3am that same night, after he hung up on her, to let him fuck her in the ass, something she rarely did, just to calm him down and get back into his good books.

Kevin the VP of sales started out as an alpha but, through a thousand concessions to placate her whims during the length of the relationship, Kevin becomes the Beta.

An alpha does as he pleases, he possesses the traits of: Strength, courage, mastery, and honor. Men want to *be him*; women want *to be with him*. When women are with him, they will enthusiastically show it.

A beta on the other hand, is on the other end of the spectrum. He is not her first choice; he is an accessory to her life, a utility, a handyman and, in many cases, she'll also treat him like an ATM.

The worst form of beta is the cuckold. Which is the man that gets involved with a single mother, and then willingly raises the children of another man. Or worse, his wife gets knocked up by another man, and he, unknowingly, raises that child as his own.

Women don't divorce alpha men they admire and look up to. They generally leave beta men that become a plow horse to them. As a man, if you want to take on the risk of marriage and kids, then you **need** to be on your mission, always maintain the frame, and your alpha status.

Remember, in every relationship, one partner enters the others frame. It is therefore incumbent on you, as the man,

to ensure that your woman is in **your** frame. You cannot let the balance of that frame shift to her.

Far too many men, get married and actually *believe* the vows they take: “In sickness, and in health... for richer or for poorer... ‘til death do us part.”

The fact of the matter is, women divorce men *all the time* if the circumstances of the marriage change and she now deems you of lesser value to her. If you get fat, go broke, can’t hold down a job, or are utterly useless around a house, then a woman reserves her right to untie the marriage knot.

It’s why I tell men *all the time* that, taking on a marriage, or LTR, is *far* more work than simply dating, or spinning plates (and they both come with far more risks).

Never forget that, if you are going to get married or have kids, then it is imperative to control the frame, and **do not allow yourself to become a beta male.**

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- Women break rules for alphas and make them for betas.
- As unfair as it may be, the “Burden of Performance” is always on you. This means that you must always be on your A-game when it comes to frame, Game, and leading the relationship (more so if you’re married or in an LTR).

- If you notice her making rules, or setting conditions, on areas such as when she'll have sex with you (for example: "If you ever want to have sex again, then..."), you now **know** that she definitely sees you as a beta and that the frame has shifted.
- Learn to say "NO." It's a complete sentence that doesn't need any further explanation. If you've been pussy-whipped for years, then she'll likely be surprised. But also intrigued. Expect her to ramp up the shit tests to see if this new, more assertive you, *is* the real deal. So, you had best make sure it is.

WHY GENUINE BURNING DESIRE MATTERS

One of the simplest concepts a man must understand is “genuine desire.” What it is, why it matters, and how to measure it. When you get it right, it’s a superpower. But, when you get it wrong, it leads you to making *terrible* choices, leading to poor results with women.

A man will chase a woman who’s indifferent to him and suddenly wife her up. Only to find out, after two kids and seven years of investing his blood, sweat, and tears into the relationship, she’s leaving him for another man. A man she has more desire for, while simultaneously running him hard through the divorce machine.

In 2018 I recorded a video in my car while heading home from the office, talking about why genuine burning desire matters with women. To find this video, search ‘genuine burning desire’ on my channel.

I’ve created a simple system to make it easier to determine her interest in you.

How to determine her interest

I've been using a measurement system in my business for over 10-years now called the "Net Promoter Score" (or NPS). It's a system which uses a measurement scale of 1 - 10. The system highlights three distinct levels of interest that a potential customer has in your business.

You survey your customers with the question: "On a scale of 1 - 10, how likely are you to recommend our services to a friend or colleague?" When you plug in a formula after conducting your customers' surveys, it tells you how much interest your customers have in your business.

The levels of interest are:

- A score of 9 to 10: These customers are your "Promoters" and they love what you do.
- A score of 7 to 8: These customers are indifferent. They have nothing good, nor bad, to say about you.
- And finally, a score of 1 to 6: These customers are your "Detractors" and they *don't* like you.

You may wonder why I am applying a business measurement tool to a man's life.

It's because the answers to most of the struggles we have already existed elsewhere. We simply need to identify them and then apply what works.

However, we aren't interested in the NPS of you as a man. That would require sampling every woman you've either

dated, or are currently dating, to find out what your NPS would be. It's impractical to survey so many women with such a question and expect an honest reply. But understanding *how* to measure desire is important and you **must** know why genuine burning desire matters.

Let me break down the way desire works for you:

A Score of 9 - 10 shows Genuine Burning Desire

When a woman *truly* desires you, you'll know it. She'll show up on time and call or text you without you making the first attempt. She'll also respond quickly, willingly enter your frame, and complement your life (without wanting to be the focus of it).

She will also ask you questions to get to know you better. She may also buy you random gifts, make you meals, and follow you closely on social media. She will even message you first on a dating app, always responding quickly. She will show up for dates with make-up and nice clothes, she'll enthusiastically fuck your brains out and swallow your load.

She will also often initiate sex with you, unprovoked. When a woman genuinely desires you, it will be as obvious as taking a blow from a frying pan to the forehead.

A Score of 7 - 8 shows Indifference

When women are indifferent, they frequently reschedule/cancel dates, ask for more than they give, become bitchy, and sometimes confrontational. She will shit

test you often, take longer to respond to your texts/calls, not put much effort into her appearance when you see her, and she will rarely ask you questions to get to know you.

If you message her on a dating app, she'll be slow to respond. Her interest in the bedroom will also not be very high either. She'll be far less likely to want to suck your cock and she'll rarely initiate sex with you. When a woman is indifferent to you, it will be obvious.

A Score of 1 to 6 shows they're a Detractor

When women are detractors, they will not respond to your calls or texts and they will not go out on dates with you. They will not follow you on social media, and if you message them on dating apps, they will not respond. When a woman is a detractor, it will be obvious.

Every man, when dealing with a woman on a romantic level, should always gauge her interest in him by watching her behavior. He must respond accordingly by only allocating his valuable time, energy, and resources on the woman who shows him a strong, genuine, burning desire.

Be attractive, not unattractive

Men are natural problem solvers. So, your next logical question is: "How do I create such an enthusiastic desire in her so she signals a clear indicator of interest in me?".

The answer is that you can't manufacture it. It must be natural. You **must** be a man that is desirable. You **must** be a

man that exudes confidence, competence, and strength.

It's unlikely that a woman with only a detractor level of interest in you will ever enthusiastically become a promoter and want to fuck you.

It's not that it can't happen. I've had *plenty* of women over the years, from my past, that may have been passively interested in me back then, only to express a much higher desire later on down the road as my "Sexual Market Value" (or SMV) had greatly improved. This often happens when she deems that her SMV has gone down as "The Wall" does its work. All while watching your SMV go up as you approach your own SMV peak later in life.

For a definition of what "The Wall" is, check out the [Glossary](#) at the back of the book.

However, at the end of the day, you must ask yourself why would you want to get involved with a woman that gave her best to someone else, making you her second choice.

The genuine burning desire you receive from a woman must be organic. You *cannot* manufacture it, or negotiate it. Anytime you negotiate desire, you get obligated compliance in return, which only leads to resentment further down the line.

You can, however, work on yourself. In fact, it is the only part of the universe that you *can* control. If you are fat, fix it. If you are broke, fix it. If you don't understand "Game", learn it. If you are socially insignificant, learn to become influential.

These aspects are truly within your control. Some men will argue that they are short and that their height is out of their control. True, but if you aren't tall, then do the work to be a fit, rich, smooth, short badass.

If you are not a high-value man that commands a high level of attention, then you cannot expect a "10" to want to rip off your clothes enthusiastically and jump your bones.

Your highest "Return on Investment" (or ROI) in life will always be that of being a man of vision, purpose, and who is always chasing excellence.

Gauging your SMV

Ask yourself the question: "On a scale of 1 to 10, with 10 being the absolute best version of myself, and with 1 being the worst, where would I place myself right now?"

It's important to note that you aren't comparing yourself to anyone else - it's only about you.

A perfect 10 would mean that you have already achieved the level of wealth, self-care, success, income, desirability, social recognition, and community, that you couldn't do much better. You live where you want, drive cars you love, take vacations when and where you want. You look masculine and strong, women are constantly seeking your attention, and you never worry about money.

If you are rating yourself a six or lower, then I'd suggest limiting your dating, or perhaps stop dating entirely, and go fix yourself before you go chasing after women.

Your ROI on the time invested with women will be low and you will probably become frustrated with your results.

Because of hypergamy, women always seek men who are a few points higher than them on the SMV scale. So, as a man, you have the burden of performance to do the work on yourself.

Remember: “Men are made; women are born.” You need to do the work on yourself if you want to be successful with women. Never forget that women have always viewed men as success objects, whereas men have always viewed women as sex objects.

Validation sex versus transactional sex

Women with a high level of desire for you will have sex with you for validation. They crave it, and it’s enthusiastic. When women have validation sex, the risk of her claiming either a #MeToo or a false rape claim allegation, after the fact, is almost zero.

I’ve seen women who crave that validation sex from me drive 45-minutes, in the middle of the night, during a work week, and throw down a dark towel to fuck me enthusiastically on their period.

When women fuck a man for validation, her vagina is soaking wet, your bed will be wet, she will do anything to please you, including swallowing your load, or do anal first, and then swallow your load. There is virtually no limit to

what a woman will do with a man that she has an enthusiastic and genuine desire for.

Indifferent women will either have transactional sex with you, or try to use it as a negotiation tool. It's women that have transactional sex that are more likely to claim a #MeToo, or false rape accusation against you. Just because they regretted their choice at a later date.

When women have transactional sex with you, her vagina isn't soaking wet. She won't do much in bed and it will often come with some requirements in exchange for the intimacy she's "giving you." There's a growing trend amongst beta men who are resigned to doing "choreplay".

"Choreplay" is defined as a man who is doing the household chores, that the female would normally do, in exchange for sex.

Simply put, you *cannot* negotiate genuine desire with a woman. Once you start down the path of transactional sex, the clock starts counting down to the end of the relationship.

If a woman won't do something sexual then, in your head, add "with you" to the end of her statement when she declines it. For example, when she says: "I won't do anal." then add "with you" to the end. Make no mistake about it, she *will* enthusiastically do it for validation with a man that she has a genuine, burning desire for.

Conclusion

It's absolutely *vital* that you only invest your limited time in women whose actions show you, beyond any doubt, that she has nothing but a *genuine*, burning desire for you. However, never forget that the "Burden of Performance" *always* rests firmly at your feet. It's up to you, and no-one else, to become the top-tier man that commands that level of genuine desire from a high-value woman.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- Your highest ROI in life will **always** be that of being a man of vision, purpose, and who is **always** chasing excellence.
- Negotiated desire only ever leads to resentment, from both parties, down the road.
- Rest assured, once you've experienced the pleasures of a woman who displays a genuine desire and attraction to you, it'll be easy for you to spot anything less from that point on.

20 RED FLAGS

On my YouTube channel, I often reference the phrase “She has more red flags than a Chinese communist parade.” In this chapter, I want to dive a little deeper into the riskiest red flags that men need to be aware of as they navigate their life around women.

I’ve made plenty of these mistakes myself and have counseled hundreds of men who’ve done the same. Therefore, it’s *essential*, for your own wellbeing, that you do not ignore these red flags.

Keep in mind that you *can* pursue a deep relationship with a woman who displays any of these red flags. However, in my estimation, the juice simply isn’t worth the squeeze, and the risks *far* outweigh any reward.

If you are a woman reading this chapter, and you identify with a red flag, then don’t get upset. Instead, like I keep reminding men: work on yourself, take ownership, and seek counseling.

As many men have observed, the wrong woman can ruin your life if you let her in it. Therefore, learning how to spot red flags early is an *essential* skill for men to master. Even though this chapter covers the 20 major ones I've identified, plenty of others exist – so keep your eyes open.

If you choose to involve yourself with any of these types of women, then my advice, unless otherwise stated, is to limit your interaction to a “Friends With Benefits” (or FWB) relationship and to keep spinning plates. As soon as you identify one or more of these red flags, limit her to plate status, or pass on them and make no further emotional investment in either her, or in a relationship with her.

There are women out there that *will* add value to your life – if you keep the wrong ones out.

I'm also approaching this chapter with the assumption that you are a man of purpose that values his own masculinity, strength, and traditional male competency skills.

Beta men constantly make concessions and excuses, while accepting red flags. Whereas a high-value alpha male keeps chasing excellence and his purpose in life. He doesn't let problem women interfere with his life's mission.

Red flag #1 - Daddy issues

If she doesn't have a friendly relationship with her father, or had an acrimonious relationship with him growing up, then she likely has a variety of daddy issues. Whether her mother pushed her dad out of her life, or that he was absent, or

perhaps he was disinterested in being a dad and instead, acted as a piece of furniture in the house.

Either way, any woman that didn't have a solid relationship with a strong, masculine, and virtuous father in her life will not value a masculine, virtuous, alpha man.

If she didn't value her father, what makes you think she will value you? I've counseled far too many men that have tried far too hard to rescue women with daddy issues. It's *never* worth your time.

Another area of concern with daddy issues is that it's often tied into Borderline Personality Disorder (or BPD). Women with BPD frequently originate from fatherless homes, which breeds their fear of abandonment. This fear continues as they become adults, where they will presume that they will, once again, be abandoned. They then act out in such a way that will make abandonment certain.

BPD women are so dangerous because they operate in extremes, they can be freaks in the sheets and then immediately act like a classy lady on the street.

A BPD woman can quickly go from hot to frigid cold. Such BPD women can hook a guy in by pretending to be a caring, loving, and nurturing woman. A BPD woman can create the false sense of perfection that makes you say "Wow, a woman who *finally* loves, respects, *and* appreciates me!"

Asking her "Tell me about your parents growing up" early on helps you to identify, and then filter out, women with daddy issues. Remember that you have two ears and one

mouth. So, use them in that ratio – ask, *then* listen. She will often tell you her story.

I've had my fair share of experiences with women who had daddy issues and they are *never* worth your time, effort, or resources.

A woman's father is her primary role model growing up and provides the foundation that governs her belief system. And includes the lens in which she views both men and women, and how they should interact.

However, the origin of her issues is irrelevant because, if she expresses disdain for her father, she is unlikely to value men.

Single mother households, especially feminist ones, are a petri dish for today's women with daddy issues. A feminist-identifying mother will instill toxic values in her daughter. Instead of valuing you, you'll be deemed as a "privileged male" and will be resented for your masculinity.

After my divorce, I dated a woman who had three older siblings. Her mother became a widow before my ex was born. Instead of being a single mother of three, she optimized her hypergamy and looked for a beta provider. She eventually had a fourth child, my ex-girlfriend, with her second husband.

My ex's mother died of cancer while she was in her early twenties. When I asked about her relationship with her father, she claimed unforgivable indiscretions that her father was responsible for. She painted her mother as a feminist

saint and her father as an abusive, misogynist cheater, and child abuser.

While we were dating, my ex went almost twenty years without contact with her father. She unsurprisingly identified as a feminist, became a single mother of two herself, and subsequently had little regard for men and masculinity - unless it served value to her and her children. She then dismissed them once she capitalized on their value.

While she constantly battled her internal conflict to find a high-value man, she also resented masculine energy and claimed that men didn't subscribe to her solipsistic feminist beliefs.

My ex ran away from Canada after her mother died to teach English in Asia. She then partied through her young adult years with many men there, came back at her epiphany phase, married a beta male that pined for her at 28 to fulfill her biological clock. Before promptly divorcing him at 38 when she deemed that he no longer served any purpose to her.

A popular video on my channel called '*3 Women Men Should Avoid Dating*,' was based on the multiple women that I had dated that had:

1. Daddy issues,
2. Needed saving,
3. Fought with her children's father.

These types of women will never take ownership for their own lives. When I did that video titled “*3 Women Men Should Avoid Dating*” on my channel, women with daddy issues sputtered their insecurities in the comment section.

Red flag #2 - Feminists

I briefly touched on this in the previous “daddy issues” red flag. Many western women today either identify as a feminist, or have welcomed toxic feminist beliefs into their schools of thought. They’re indoctrinated to believe that men are privileged, that men hold women back, and that men succumb to the patriarchy.

Thankfully, the devout lifetime feminists are typically easy to spot. They:

- Avoid traditional feminine cues and instead opt for shorter, unnaturally dyed hair colors (think bright blue, purple, or red),
- Mutilate their body with several tattoos and/or facial piercings,
- Are often overweight and usually dress in ill-fitted clothes.

Compared to keeping themselves fit, well dressed, and groomed to maintain their physical appeal to men.

Feminism preaches radically leftist political views that fight for unlimited free abortion, elevate single mothers on a pedestal, and claim that masculinity is “Toxic.”

Feminists hate it when the State imposes limits on abortion and tries to force them to be mothers. However, they more than happily use State family law to force men to be fathers.

Feminism teaches women to vote for the welfare state, massive government handouts, huge tax rates on top income earners, and social programs that widely benefit a female primary social order.

A feminist will never appreciate you or value you as a man. Feminism teaches women to be victims, and anyone with a victim mindset can't find happiness.

Today's version of feminism is so toxic that it is anti-femininity. It encourages women to hate men, while simultaneously encouraging them to behave like men, and that they should ditch the notion of motherhood to prioritize their careers.

Feminism doesn't seek to make women better, or more feminine. Feminism seeks to make women into terrible versions of men.

Ownership is a concept that most women struggle with. However, feminists are often completely unfamiliar with it, and so everything will be the fault of the patriarchy.

Therefore, avoid *any* woman that identifies as a feminist - at all costs.

Since the #MeToo movement, we have seen several exceptional men fall to the false claims of sexual harassment or rape, and the vast majority of these false charges originated from feminist women.

Sadly, even feminine cues are not enough anymore. There are plenty of women out there that identify with feminist values that remain feminine in appearance, and these are the ones you must be the most careful with. As they are on a transformational path to obesity, collecting cats, and eventually short and brightly colored hair.

If you are getting into an LTR, or are even considering marriage, it is *vital* that you give yourself a good two years to watch both her behavior and her choices in life. Pay close attention to her *before* you do something silly, like marrying a woman that appears feminine, but internally idealizes feminist propaganda.

Red flag #3 - The unhappy and unlucky

Robert Green's tenth law states: "Avoid the unhappy and unlucky." If you haven't read '*The 48 Laws of Power*', do yourself a favor and read it and always avoid the unhappy and unlucky.

And while this doesn't only apply to women, I note it here in this chapter as these types of women are a complete waste of your time. Their perpetual unhappiness will rob you of your joy.

Such women always have some problem going on in their life that attracts the "Captain Save-a-Hoe" type of guys to swoop in and rescue them from their own shitty existence and choices in life.

The unhappy and the unlucky often go from man to man, draining them of their joy and fortune. They are a magnet for drawing drama into their life - and yours. Therefore, only associate with the happy and lucky.

Red flag #4 - She competes with you

A woman that constantly tries to compete with you might seem cute at first, but it's a test of your competency as a man, and it's an underhanded behavior that ultimately aims to reduce your worth to her.

The female primary social order tells women that they are better than men, and it's why we see the rise of the "Boss girl" on social media. I once dated a woman that competed with her brother growing up, and that competitive behavior continued into her relationship with me.

It's a red flag because when women compete against you, she thinks she is better than you. A woman that thinks she is better than you *will not respect you* and will, ultimately, try to undermine you.

For a woman to satisfy her hypergamy, she must feel like she is with a man that, in her eyes, has at *least* 1-2 Sexual Market Value (or SMV) points more than she does.

A woman won't try to compete with you when she believes your value is greater, she will instead admire you. Remember, women want to be with a giant. She wants to look up to you. Hypergamy never seeks its own level; hypergamy can only be satisfied if it does better than itself.

A woman constantly competing with her LTR, or husband, is always a prelude to a train wreck.

Red flag #5 - Keeps men from her past around

Women like to have options. A recent survey showed that almost half of all married women admitted to having a “back-up plan” (aka: another guy). If you are getting into an LTR and she wants you to abandon your sexual strategy of unlimited access to unlimited women, then *she* needs to burn the ship on the shores of her new life with you and cut *all* emotional ties with other men.

Now, some women end up as an “Alpha Widow”. An “Alpha Widow” is a woman who pines for that high value alpha that didn’t commit to her in her earlier years.

She may not be in contact with him anymore. However, if she still sees him as the one that “got away,” and she keeps a place for him in her head, and therefore in her heart, then she *will never* see you as her best option.

It’s imperative that she has a genuine, burning desire for you. You don’t want to be “Good enough.” You want to ensure that you are getting her absolute best.

Trust me when I say that no good ever comes from her having lunch with ex-boyfriends, or other male friends, and you *certainly* do not want to be the guy she “settled” for.

If you are a man that is chasing excellence in his life, then you don’t need distractions like your woman seeking attention from, or still pining for, other men.

Men and women have little in the way of common interests; other than men wanting to have sex with women and women wanting to extract attention or resources from men.

There should be no room for male “friends” in her life if you are in an LTR. Women like this should be a plate, at least until they can prove that they are over their past.

Red flag #6 - Poor with money

Some of you may know this already from my videos, but I’m well versed on financial services from my past businesses, and when women are bad with money, it’s often serious trouble.

If she is an adult and doesn’t have a pot to piss in or a window to throw it out of, then she is not to even be considered for an LTR. I’ve seen *far* too many men trying to play “Captain Save-a-Ho” and bail out women with horrendous debt and terrible spending habits.

Despite the lie feminism has told women that they only earn 75 cents for every dollar a man earns, women have every opportunity to earn a good living today.

Yet, women *still* continue to choose careers that pay *less* than men, while going into deep debt by overspending. Ultimately, if she can’t manage her monthly cash flow and has nothing but a pile of handbags and shoe collection to show for her debt, avoid her for anything more than a FWB, because she will make *her* financial problems *your* problem.

Red flag #7 - Violent women

Women that have violent tendencies are a **massive red flag**. Early signs of violence are as small as a punch, or a shove. However, I've counseled *many* men that have dodged knife attacks or even objects being thrown at them from their angry woman that was having a hissy fit.

Men are physically stronger than women, so when there is a domestic violence call into the police, even if you are the innocent party making the call, or defending yourself, it's likely that they will take you away in handcuffs, rather than her.

In most domestic violence cases, men are automatically presumed guilty and women are protected, even if she was the one starting the physical abuse. I've seen peaceful men, during a divorce, removed from their own home and children, because a violent woman accused her husband of domestic violence that never happened.

Violence from any woman towards you, for any reason, should **never ever** be tolerated, and is grounds for terminating the relationship immediately. To protect themselves, men **must** use their cell phone as a shield, and record a video of her erratic behavior as proof for the authorities.

If I haven't made my point clear enough yet - avoid all violent women **at all costs!** They aren't even worth an FWB arrangement! When it comes to violent women, the juice *truly* isn't worth the squeeze.

Red flag #8 - Extreme jealousy

Women want to be with a man that other women want to fuck. But they don't want their man fucking other women.

This dichotomy of female nature is something that men will always struggle with. A degree of jealousy, also known as competition anxiety, is an excellent thing as it keeps her working hard to keep you. But it becomes undesirable when the women are so insecure in themselves that they always make her problems your problems, distracting you from your purpose.

They will be like a predator drone, always keeping watch on you. She will constantly text, scan through your receipts to see where you've been, what was ordered on the receipt, look for hairs that aren't hers, she'll want to look in your phone, creep on women that follow and like your social posts, and count the number of condoms in your nightstand drawer.

It's exhausting. She will drain you of your sanity, joy, and dignity. Jealous women have work to do on themselves, and it's honestly not your job to be their therapist.

Red Flag #9 - Party girls

Most women under the age of 27 that have never been in an LTR are in their party years. If you met your girl in a nightclub, bar, or other social event, and she claims to be relationship material, but still continues to party several nights a week, you have two options:

1. Tell her that women with boyfriends don't go out partying and if she continues, you walk away.
2. Keep her as a plate only.

The “party years” aren’t exclusive to women under 27 either. Sometimes, she was married young, had kids, and got divorced in her thirties and missed her “party years.” So, it’s not uncommon to see women in other stages of their life trying to re-live that missed party era as an older woman.

You can’t be in an exclusive LTR with a woman if she is going out partying with her friends regularly. The process involves two hours of preparation time in her hair, makeup, and clothes, for the main purpose of marketing herself to other men. If she is going out selling herself to others, she is not your woman.

Men have evolved to require fidelity from the woman they have invested in, as a step in ensuring paternity. This is not jealousy. Most men instinctively want to know that his woman is sexually exclusive with him.

Do not fall for the new age beta male narrative of polyamory. It is a mating strategy for weak beta men that must resign himself to sharing a woman with alpha men.

When there is a conflict between what she is saying and doing, and she is acting single when she goes out to party, then believe the action, never the words. Actions **always** speak louder than words.

I dated a few party girls, and their phones would always be going off at 2am from guys looking to hook up. Avoid party

girls for LTRs and never limit yourself to one woman if you are dating a party girl. Only spin her as a plate.

Red Flag #10 - Heavily tattooed and pierced women

I realize some men prefer women with some ink, and there will be men that will debate me on this. However, my experiences have taught me that their placement and frequency matters. One tattoo hidden in her bikini line isn't much to worry about. However, if she has a tramp stamp, or more than one visible tattoo while wearing normal clothing, then you might want to ask yourself what she is saying to the world.

Tattoos all over a beautiful woman is like putting bumper stickers all over a Lamborghini. You don't do it as it shows a lack of taste. I've never met a woman with several visible tattoos that didn't bring at least three or more red flags to the table.

Heavily pierced women are another red flag. Draw the line at earrings, and if you want to push the limits, a nose ring. But, if that piercing is on her septum, nipple, clitoris, and eyebrow, or she even has multiple ear piercings up one ear, then keep in mind that you are dealing with someone that enjoys mutilating their own body, which is a red flag.

Red Flag #11 - Big notch counts

The most attractive quality in a woman is when you know she hasn't been with everybody and has her own standards.

Setting aside the higher probability of her having an STD, multiple conducted studies have proven that the younger the age a woman loses her virginity at, and the higher the number of men she's slept with (aka: Her notch count), often results in her being far less likely to bond monogamously to a man, in a healthy way, over a long period of time.

For example, a woman that lost her virginity at 14 and has slept with 30 men, is *far* less likely to bond monogamously to you over the long-term. Compare that to a woman who lost her virginity at 23 and has only slept with two men in long-term relationships.

If you want to get into a monogamous LTR, or take on the risk of marriage, then do it with a woman with a low notch count that lost her virginity later on in life.

Research conducted by the Institute for Family Studies revealed that a virgin has a 5% chance of divorce after five years of marriage. Whereas, a woman with two previous partners has a 30% chance of divorce. The data stopped at 10 partners, which showed a 35% chance of divorce.

Promiscuous women that have had many partners and/or have been sexually active from a young age **DO NOT** make good long-term partners. It's not to say they can't, or won't, try to be a girlfriend or wife. But the statistics reveal how undesirable these women are long-term, and that's why they should be treated as an FWB - and nothing more.

Women with a higher notch count are also more likely to report depression, become single mothers, have personality

disorders, and have abortions compared to women with lower notch counts.

Women must preserve their value; men must create their value. It's why, throughout history, women's virginity was so prized. Whereas, a man's value comes from his ability to make something out of himself so he can provide, preside, and protect.

I should note that women will *never* reveal the truth about their notch count to you, so don't bother asking to get an authentic number. Some may volunteer it. Be wary of any number they throw out, as women often fear being slut shamed.

Women only usually factor in relationships as part of their notch count, and they often disregard all the one-night stands, threesomes, lesbian encounters, or FWB relationships that they had in the past.

At a bare minimum, double whatever number she gives you.

The lifestyle, and company a woman keeps, reflects her notch count. A woman that you meet at 30 that claims she was in an LTR from the time she lost her virginity at 23, probably has a low notch count.

But women with an absence of any drama free LTRs in her past, that lived on her own, traveled a lot, and you met her at 35 could have a notch count approaching triple digits, or more. It's not uncommon for women in their party years (20-27) to rack up a notch count of 25 or more men.

Never forget, women become the average of the five people she spends the most time with. If five of her friends are, or were sluts, then she will be the sixth.

Red Flag #12 - Single mothers

Do not be a cuck. Do not raise another man's child.

There is absolutely nothing in it for you as a man. You do not pass on your own DNA; they do not have your last name, and cuckoldry shackles you with 100% of the responsibility as a parent, but you have 0% authority.

Some men choose an FWB arrangement because it's low hanging fruit. However, I've dated single mothers when I was blue pilled and trust me: **DO NOT** date, live with, or marry a single mother. It's not worth it. See my video "Why Men Shouldn't Date Single Mothers" on my YouTube channel.

Look, I've counseled *hundreds* of men that have made the mistake of living with a single mother in such a way that the state views as a marriage. Guess what? They have been on the hook to pay child support for kids they didn't even father.

In one case I counseled, a man was married for less than two years. He paid off over \$100,000 of her debt and she brought two special needs kids to the table with her. She wanted out and was taking him to court for child support... for life.

Do not be a cuck.

Red Flag #13 - Women seeking validation

Social media is a staple in today's world, and almost all women are on it. However, women who use public social media to gain attention from men should be avoided. While there are no "good girls" on social media, the better ones will use private accounts. Meaning that only 'friends and family' can see their posts and they aren't posting provocative pictures, fishing for likes, comments, and direct messages from men providing loads of attention and validation.

Public accounts using social media to sell a product or service and treating it like a business are okay, but understand she will still have men flirting with her.

The women posting daily provocative pictures of themselves on public accounts, with thousands of thirsty beta males following them, are selling something too - their sexual agency. Women like this are openly optimizing their hypergamy.

If she is with you, but is still posting pictures for attention, then she is asking herself if *you* are the best that *she* can get.

Most women can become drunk on social media attention. So, if you consider an LTR with a woman that is constantly seeking attention online, then you need to continue to exercise your sexual strategy, and date her non-exclusively until she abandons her open hypergamy.

A woman's sexual strategy is open hypergamy, and when she is seeking attention online, she is out playing on the ice,

trying to score a goal. Your sexual strategy as a man is unlimited access to unlimited women. Therefore, do not even consider monogamy until she abandons advertising herself. **Do not** take these women seriously. They are to be limited to plate or FWB status only.

Red Flag #14 - She was a sugar baby

In a book by author B Rob titled ‘*Salty*’, the author shares his excursion into sugar dating as a “Salt Daddy”. He also figured out how to identify if a woman has ever been looking for money in exchange for dating as a “sugar baby”.

You will need to search in her email for the term ‘seeking’ and see if there are any emails sent from the site in her past that show up. This will require that you look into her private life. But, if you are looking for LTR material, then you need to take this step to ensure that you aren’t going to make a whore a housewife. If she *was* a sugar baby, limit her to plate status only.

Red Flag #15 - Pathological liars

Everyone, women included, lie. Many women, however, can’t help but to lie pathologically. For some, their entire world is a house of cards, and they can’t even tell when they are speaking the truth or not. These women are not LTR material, because they aren’t trustworthy.

Fortunately, these types of women usually ‘out’ themselves over time because they can’t keep up with their own bullshit.

A girlfriend I had at 19 lied about everything and anything.

I was riding sport bikes, and she told me early on how she had a sport bike at her mom's house an hour away. Although strangely, it was never available for her to ride, or she had it locked up in storage. There was always a story about how she rode, and enjoyed the experience, but always made excuses about where the bike was.

I was becoming suspicious of her stories. Knowing it cost me \$9 to fill up the tank of my bike, I casually asked her how much it cost to top up her bike tank when she rode. She responded with \$25. Right *there* I knew she was a pathological liar, and many of her other stories collapsed shortly after that.

Pathological liars are dangerous, they will tell you they are on birth control, when they aren't. They'll lie about things that will put you, or your health, at risk. If you are attentive and poke at her stories, then these women are simple to spot.

Red Flag #16 - Baby rabies

This is an interesting term I came across after I got divorced and re-entered the dating pool around 39. I had this annoying feeling that most of the childless women in the dating pool were desperate to get married and have children. Some of them were so thirsty to get married and have kids, that they would even ask if that's what I wanted before asking me anything else.

Sometimes it was even in their opening message on a dating application. It felt like they were looking for a dutiful beta with sufficient provisioning ability, and decent genes to settle down with.

Women exhibiting desperation to get married and reproduce are not into you and will not support your mission. They will not complement your life, but will instead want to be the focus of your life.

Any women attempting to rush you into having kids and getting married, without allowing for a two-year vetting period, is a big red flag.

But, if you feel that you are simply an accessory to fulfilling her biological imperative to reproduce, or that she is counting her eggs every month as they dry up? She has baby rabies.

Move on and don't let her problems become your problem.

Many of these women put degrees and careers ahead of their prime child-bearing years. As they approach their mid-thirties, they grow desperate. Remember, men can capably father healthy children well into their forties. For women, their prime childbearing years decrease rapidly after the age of 30.

Red Flag #17 - Hissy fits

Some women never learned the social maturity required to process their emotions, so they resort to hissy fits to deal with their differences in a relationship.

When my daughter was 3, if something didn't go her way, she threw herself on the ground, face down, then kicked and punched with her limbs at the ground while screaming. This is the toddler version, and it's excusable in a child, because they don't know how to process their emotions with maturity when something doesn't work out for them, so they start kicking and screaming.

In an adult woman, hissy fits are an unacceptable red flag and come in many forms.

Rather than approaching the issue head on like an adult, she'll commonly start by passive aggressively going on social media to post something revealing and sexy, behave erratically, or make underhanded posts about you.

One says, "Hey fellas, I'm over here, and my man pissed me off; look at me and shower me with validation and attention." The other is a passive aggressive maneuver to shame or ridicule you, usually with some covert statement or meme.

Hissy fits cover a wide range and include, but aren't limited to, overtly stating something like: "Just leave my shit on the front porch" when things aren't going their way. Or using actions like hiring a male personal trainer you know she was fucking in the past, and posting a picture on social media of themselves together, with some trite caption about how, "This girl will get her body back," in an effort to push your buttons.

These outbursts by women are bad news, and I've noticed that there is often a correlation between her hissy fits and

daddy issues. I've seen fathers set logical, and reasonable boundaries for their daughters to preserve her value as a woman, and she broke them in a rebellious and dangerous way in protest.

For example, a traditional European father will often set limits on when his daughters can date, and in what cultures. A woman with daddy issues that can't respect the boundaries set by a man will go out with, and intentionally have plenty of unprotected sex with, men from cultures that she knows her father would be vehemently opposed to.

Deal with hissy fits head on and treat them as unacceptable behavior. Otherwise, you'll constantly deal with them in your relationship.

Also, **do not** argue with women. They will not let a thing like logic or reason get in the way of their emotional hissy fit. You set the boundary, then cut off all contact (called a soft next) with her for about four to five days to let her think about it.

Remember, attention is the coin of the realm for women, so when you remove it, they lose their mind and will usually automatically fall back in line. She will either comply, or it's "Goodbye."

Most women, because of their own solipsistic nature, will not recognize it as a "hissy fit," even if you spell it out for them. So be resolute. You will get out of life what you tolerate. Do not argue with her about her hissy fit.

Men are deductive, rational thinkers - women aren't. Therefore, a soft next allows you to return to the table with a boundary you set. If she doesn't like it? Show her the door.

A woman that has a genuine, burning desire for you, and is serious about sorting herself out, *will* do the work. A woman that isn't, will resist, make excuses, and will *constantly* test your boundaries as a man.

Red Flag #18 - Not being in control of the birth

In Rollo Tomassi's book, '*The Rational Male*' he outlines his "Iron Rules," and number five was: "Always be in control of the birth." As a man today, once your sperm leaves your balls, women make 100% of the decisions.

If you knock up the wrong woman, you could be on the hook for around 20-years as her personal ATM. NEVER, EVER trust a woman you are not in a properly vetted LTR with when she says, "It's okay, just go inside me, I can't get pregnant." You must have **100% certainty** that there is effective birth control in play. Oh, and for the record, birth control pills are *not* sufficient.

Many men have knocked up women who claimed to be on the birth control pill, only to discover she "accidentally" forgot to take them or wasn't even on them. Condoms (that you flush away afterwards), or an IUD, are your most reliable methods of birth control today. Remember, women lie. It's called birth control for a reason - so always be in control of it.

Red Flag #19 - Drama queens

All women, not just some, periodically crave for some form of drama. If they are bored, and there're no issues in your relationship, they will manufacture indignation to test you and create those “feels”. Drama queens choose random molehills to turn into mountains. This is also another form of a hissy fit.

I guarantee you will encounter drama with a woman at some point. But, if it appears more than once within the first three months of dating, or more than a weekly “thing” during your LTR, then she is flat out telling you that this drama will be a regular occurrence for life.

Buckle up buddy, you’ll be in for a roller coaster ride if you don’t put your foot down and use a “soft next” to maintain boundaries.

Manufactured indignation is really just a shit test, and it’s also about testing your frame as the dominant frame in a relationship. Remember, drama *will* happen with *all* women at some point. So, decide early on what you will, and more importantly what you won’t, tolerate. Alpha men with plenty of options will tolerate little to no drama, lesser men with few options will accept it as it comes.

Red Flag #20 - Addictions

Dependency to things, activities, or substances is a big red flag. Women that rely on alcohol, shopping, drugs, cigarettes, news, or reality TV to name some examples, can

be highly problematic to a man that is chasing excellence in his life.

Unhealthy addictions, if left unchecked, will dominate her life, her choices, and her conversations. Addicts, usually, become self-destructive. If it's affecting your life, then it has become an unhealthy addiction.

A woman who is addicted to a reality TV show will talk about the mindless drama between characters on the show non-stop. Alcoholics are always looking for their next drink, and anyone that's ever dated a woman that's addicted to anti-depressants knows how badly it affects her body weight and sex drive.

Don't let women make her addictive problems, your problems. Smart men do not get into an LTR with women that have addictions, it's **not** your job to save or cure them.

If they have acknowledged their addiction, and are working on their problems with a professional, good, let them. But keep her at arm's length as a plate until she has shown genuine progress for several months. Also, make sure that her addictive personality doesn't replace one addiction with another.

Conclusion

As I stated earlier, you can ignore my warnings about these red flags and get involved with these women. But, at some point, your life *will* become complicated and unnecessarily difficult.

As a man, it is incumbent on you to shoulder the burden of performance, and to chase excellence. In life, women can either become an anchor, or a sail. Look for women that are a complement to your life and that gladly fill your sails with wind and limit your interactions with anchors that hold you back.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- It's *your responsibility* to set, and *always enforce*, the boundaries that are meaningful to you.
- Never date, LTR, or wife-up a single mother. Neither the mother, nor the kids, will *ever* genuinely appreciate you for your sacrifices.
- If a woman *ever* becomes physically violent with you, then you **must** get the hell out of that relationship immediately. And if you have kids with her, then see an attorney ASAP.
- If your spidey senses are tingling and your gut is telling you something, then there's a reason why. Listen to it.
- A man who's chasing excellence and making his dent in the universe will have the options and self-respect to drop *any* woman who's complicating his life.

SINGLE MOTHERS

In the red flag chapter, I covered several warning signs that men should be aware of with women. However, this book wouldn't offer a useful roadmap for men unless I cover *why*. I'll explain why a relationship with a single mother often invites both drama, and unnecessary complexity, into a man's life.

I've had well over a thousand coaching calls with men, and the one common denominator that keeps repeatedly showing up, is that men dramatically complicate their lives by allowing single mothers into them.

Now, not *every single* mother is bad news. But, the reality is, they bring a *lot* of problems into men's lives that women without children simply don't.

When I got divorced at 39, after seven years with the same woman, I had shared custody of my four-year-old, and I did what most men typically did in that scenario. I looked around and found that most women in my age range had children in tow.

Most had several kids, and sometimes, each kid came from a different father.

I got involved with a single mother almost immediately. She was also recently divorced, pretty, fit, knew how to cook, she also had the typical post-divorce breast augmentation, and she had two kids in tow that were seven and ten when I met them. If you want to learn more about my personal experience, search YouTube for “entrepreneurs in cars and why men shouldn’t date single mothers.”

Some men would argue from experience that there are *dozens* of problems that come from relationships with single mothers. However, I’m only going to focus on the five I’ve seen most often.

They are, in no particular order:

- Cuckoldry,
- Responsibility without authority,
- The victim mindset,
- Financial issues,
- And re-prioritization.

Cuckoldry

When you take on the financial, parental, and emotional burden of raising another man’s children, you are, by definition, a cuckold. Some men would argue that if she is a widow, or he was a deadbeat father that disappeared from their lives, there is an exception. Well, there isn’t.

Regardless of how you want to rationalize it in your head - you are a cuck.

Society today encourages and celebrates cuckoldry. You'll often see articles titled: "The case for being a cuck." The truth is, it's nothing to celebrate.

They don't take on your last name, and they *definitely* don't possess your genetic legacy to pass down. These two points have historically been the biggest selling points to men for fatherhood. For most men, this is enough to enforce a firm "pass" rule on single mothers. But, many men *still* ignore the obvious problem and it is because they lack better options because of their own limited value.

To add insult to injury, women overwhelmingly get awarded primary parenting of their children the vast majority of the time, while men don't. So, if you are a divorced father, then you might end up spending more time parenting the children of *another man* than your own.

Responsibility without authority

Getting involved with a single mother often means that you will find yourself in a position where you have the same parental responsibilities as a biological father, but with *none* of the authority of a parent.

Shortly after she introduces you to her kids, she *will* expect you to "step up" and take on parenting duties.

It often starts with going out for dinner, and she brings her kids along for the first time. This is when you will be

expected to demonstrate that you can provide for Billy and Bobby too. You'll be on the hook with parental responsibility for birthdays, travel, holidays, ski trips, the beach, the list goes on.

You will fill the shoes of "Daddy" and your financial resources will certainly be warmly welcomed. But, at some point during a grievance, you *will* also eventually hear them say something like: "You are not my father! You can't tell ME what to do!"

They will be "our" kids when she needs you. However, they'll be "her" kids when you need to discipline them or enforce healthy boundaries.

Strangely, if you are a single father you will learn that, when your kids need something, your children are never "ours," but selectively "yours." Yet, most men discover that women want authority over kids, just without the responsibility that goes along with it.

Most men eventually hear her say something that reflects the mindset of: "Not my monkey, not my circus." There is a reason why some kids that grew up with a step-mother call her "Step-monster."

If the fact that you are being cucked as a man isn't enough to make you question your choice to get involved with a single mother, then expect to have responsibility, but with zero authority. Whereas, *she* will often take on little responsibility herself, while still seeking authority.

The victim mindset

Women are naturally solipsistic (after all, it is hard-wired into them). However, single mothers run a special gauntlet of mental gymnastics that they rationalize as normal. But, ultimately, it boils down to them adopting a victim mindset. They often brag on social media about how they are strong, independent, and “don’t need no man.” While simultaneously turning to the government for handouts, and/or their children’s father(s) for financial support.

I dated a lot of single mothers that would complain about the father of their children and often heard her use disparaging terms like: Loser, dumb, deadbeat, beta, or boring. If I would ask them why they married him, or had kids with him, their face would turn to stone as if to say, “How dare you hold me accountable for my own choices.”

Naturally, she didn’t own her choices. She was always pointing and sputtering at her ex-husband, her boss, her father, or the President. With the rare exception, she rarely looked in the mirror to take ownership for her results in life.

While I’ve only ever dated traditionally feminine looking women, I’ve never met a single mother that wasn’t a feminist.

To identify as a feminist, you must have an oppressor and, when it comes to feminist logic, *every woman is oppressed by default and, is therefore, a victim.*

The victim mindset requires her to be unhappy, unlucky, and oppressed. When I started dating these women, I found out

first-hand how hard done by she claimed she and her children were, and it was *always* someone else's fault.

Her children also adopt this mindset (because kids naturally learn their behaviors from their parents). So, if something doesn't go their way, they will emotionally manipulate their mother, and have her side with their bratty behavior. *Even* when you are right, and they require boundary enforcement and discipline.

Most men love playing the role of "Captain Save-a-Hoe." And, since most single mom's *love* being a damsel in distress, men are all too happy to step-up, and swoop in to protect "her honor."

Financial issues

When it comes to money, women choose jobs that pay less than men the vast majority of the time. Even though there are more women in the workforce than ever before, men earn the vast majority of wealth by choosing higher paying professions. Most men discover that single mothers gravitate to professions like: Nursing, Teaching, Dental Hygienist, Daycare Work, and Hairdressing.

Few women take on jobs that pay over six figures. So, when I was dating them, I found it difficult to meet a single mom that earned as much as I did.

For the most part, they aren't driving expensive cars or living in mortgage-free homes.

Most single mothers have debt, and often, also have nothing to their name (except the children in tow with another man's last name attached to them).

You will be called upon to pay for her life and that of her children's. I've had several coaching calls with men where they paid off her debts, bought her kid's cars, and paid for their college tuition. It's common for uninitiated men to make themselves less, so she and her children can become more.

Reprioritization

In general, men are all too happy to abandon their purpose in life to fulfill a woman's. Unfortunately, when you get involved with a single mother, you will *never* be her priority.

Most men find their place in a pecking order behind: Her needs, her kid's needs, her work issues, her wine drinking nights with her "sisters," her salsa nights out, and then her cat. If you get involved with a single mother, you'll never be *anywhere near* the top of her priorities.

You will often be expected to make your hobbies and passions less of a priority, so she can focus on hers. There's an old soundbite that calls women "Dream killers." The truth is, most men that get into relationships with single mothers will be required to shift their priorities around for her and her kids.

The BIG risk

There is an often-overlooked risk with dating a single mother, *especially* if you have a young daughter, and she has one or more boys. The biggest risk to young girls is being physically violated through non-blood related relatives in the household. This is far more common with girls, but it does happen to boys too.

There is hard wiring in our DNA, as a function of survival and for genetic diversity, to avoid sexual activity with blood related relatives. It's why brothers and sisters are sexually repelled by one another.

There are many women that have been raped, or sexually assaulted, by step-brothers or step-fathers during their childhood.

This is a risk that you *need* to be aware of if you are a divorced dad, more-so if your ex-wife isn't particularly good at picking men. If she invites characters into your daughter's life, with step-brothers in tow, then you *must* find a way to have that conversation with your children's mother.

When dating a single mother - might - make sense

I've often been challenged to present a situation where dating a single mother might make sense. I can only think of one.

You've already got a kid, so you've secured your family name and DNA. Her child is about the same age and sex as yours, so they can interact and relate with one another and, most importantly, there is no risk of her being violated.

Your frame also naturally infers 100% authority in the relationship. She isn't a feminist, and takes ownership for her life, and holds her kids accountable to my standards. She is, at a minimum, financially equal to me. She is a complement to my life, and certainly not the focus. She'd also have to be attractive, have a genuine burning desire for me, and also get on well with my child.

To be perfectly honest, I think you'd have much better luck finding a Leprechaun with a pot of gold at the end of a rainbow, than finding someone who can comfortably meet every condition.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- You don't want to be a cuck. You might genuinely love her kids "Like they're your own." But, ultimately, they will *never ever* be yours and your bloodline will not continue if you don't already have kids.
- They'll never, ever, *ever* respect you in the way that you want them to. Even if you adopted them. Because, deep down in their core, they'll *always* know that you "Aren't their father."
- While it's a cold truth that a woman's kids will *always* be a higher priority than you, with single mothers, you'll be even *further* down in her list of priorities. Until she wants something from you that is.
- The victim mindset, along with unhealthy doses of shaming and guilt-tripping, is the de-facto method-

of-operation for single mothers. If it's *all* the bio father's fault, and she can't own up to *anything* that she did to screw up the relationship, then you can bet your ass she'd say the same about you to the next guy.

- The vast majority of sexual-violations are perpetrated by close family members. If you have a young daughter, then it's incumbent on *you* to make sure she stays as safe as possible and make sure she feels comfortable enough to tell you *anything*. So lay the groundwork in making her feel comfortable enough to confide in you ASAP.

HIRE SLOWLY BUT FIRE QUICKLY

In 2003, I was working for Canada's largest collection agency where I was well into my fourth year of service as a manager to a team doing \$2 Million in receivables. My staff were well trained and loyal, which meant our recovery rates were incredible.

Earlier that year, I had a new VP assigned to our group, a French-Canadian guy from a very rough background. I remember him telling us stories about his childhood and how his father shot himself in the face.

He clashed with me from the get-go. He would publicly disrespect me in front of my staff, and make me run detailed reports, which he never looked at, for his own personal amusement.

After a few months of putting up with his disrespect, something snapped inside of me, and I let him know what I thought of him. *This* is where I learned the valuable lesson that people get hired for their skills, and resume, but get fired for fit.

Towards the end of the year, only three weeks after I moved into my first house with a big mortgage, a manager's salary needed to come off the books for corporate cost cutting.

Guess who was selected by my loving VP to go home? Me.

The initial burn of being handed that severance package hurt. But, this push inspired me to go create my own business which helped to settle consumer credit card debt, and I will be forever thankful for that.

It was about a decade later when I finally learned the lesson to hire slowly and fire quickly in my own business. You can use this idea with women in your life, employees, business partners, and even friends.

Take your time vetting people. Get to know them and study their behavior. The choices someone makes, and how they behave, should *always* trump what they tell you if there is a conflict between actions and words. I.e. Don't listen to what they say, watch what they do.

If your Spidey senses tingle, listen to your intuition. It knows something is up. Intuition is the little voice whispering in your ear, and it often only becomes a loud shout when it's too late and you are going to experience a train wreck.

My single mommy experience

Shortly after my divorce, I got involved with a single mom of two boys, and for the first few months it was great fun dating her. After a few short months, she started suggesting

that I meet her boys. This was when my intuition started whispering to me, telling me it wasn't a good idea.

But, I ignored it.

Of course, my intuition only became a shout when her older son manufactured indignation. He started throwing a bad hissy fit, yelling at me, and calling me names, because I enforced a boundary with them they didn't like eight months after I met them. Their mother sided with the bratty behavior, completely ignoring the fact that I was right.

In hindsight, I should have limited my time in that relationship to just her and let it run its course. I *never* should have become involved with her kids. I should have also quickly fired her ass and ended the relationship with her at that point and then moved on. But, I let the torture drag on for nearly two more years. I also endured several similar incidents because I, again, ignored my intuition. It ended in a colossal train wreck for me with a severe case of "oneitis," when she cheated on me (after I tried to enforce boundaries with her kids again).

The business partner experience

Shortly after I took my severance package and went home, I partnered with a friend of mine I used to work with to offer debt relief services to consumers. He still had a job that paid him very well, so I was doing almost all of the work and he was taking half the money out of the business account every month.

I was working exceptionally hard to make it work; we were making about \$30,000 a month for a business with only two staff, and no overhead, so it initially felt amazing.

That was until I realized that my partner had a drug problem – and was a control freak.

My intuition was telling me to get out. But, once again, I didn't listen. It wasn't until eight months later when it became a literal shout out in my head. And only when my business partner was screaming at me over my insistence for him to quit his job and join me full time. In a full-blown state of hysteria, he began yelling at me that he "never put me on the corporate books," and that I technically "don't exist" in the business.

Initially, it ended *very* badly. But, I picked myself back up quickly and with my brother, formed what would become Canada's most successful debt settlement company.

Anytime I've gotten into trouble with women, employees, business partners, or anything else, it was because **I didn't listen to my intuition and fire that person from my life quick enough.**

With women, friends, employees, and business associates, **always** hire slowly and fire fast. You *must* be fastidious with your time, and who you allow into your inner circle.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- It's incumbent on you to take your time with the vetting period. The "honeymoon phase" can apply in other areas of life – not just in relationships.
- Be vigilant and observe if someone's actions match their words. Ignore what they say and watch what they do as words can be empty, while actions speak the truth.
- If you find that there's an inconsistency between their words and their actions, then you **must** be prepared to cut them out of your life as swiftly as possible. Make sure you've done your legal homework when it comes to business partners (or LTRs/Marriages), then execute that strategy with military precision and speed.
- **And finally, listen to your gut.** It's your brain telling you that things *definitely* aren't adding up.

LOOKS, MONEY, STATUS, AND GAME

Sadly, when it comes to women, men aren't taught the importance of looks, money, status, and Game.

Instead, men are taught that he must become less, so she can become more. To "Just be yourself," and that just being a "Nice Guy" is enough to attract high-quality women into your life.

Unfortunately, women don't work like this. They never have, and they never will.

Women possess an evolved firmware that selects for the best-looking man, who has sufficient resources, and status. Not because they are picky gold diggers, but because they need to ensure that they pass on the best genes and can retain access to sufficient resources for the survival of their offspring. Therefore, men view women as beauty objects; women view men as success objects.

Most men do not understand what drives attraction in women, and the vast majority of men are getting terrible, or no results with women they are attracted to.

This leads to frustration, resentment, and ultimately quitting. Women are born; men must be made.

Women expect men to develop useful skills, be masculine, strong, and acquire resources that a woman and her offspring can benefit from. Her sexual strategy is hypergamy and, as a result, it continuously asks her if you are the best she can do.

By this point, the quitters will protest and scream, “See! All she wants is your money, muscles, and when she is done, she will go fuck another guy and break your heart. This isn’t worth my time!” That’s a loser’s mindset.

There is a lot more to creating and maintaining *genuine, burning* desire from women.

Most men behave like women are a scarce commodity, placing them high up on a pedestal while worshipping them. Yet, nothing could be further from the truth. High value men who are maxed out on their looks, money, status, and Game are *scarce*. Conversely, attractive women are *everywhere*. Don’t believe me? Search the hashtag #fitnessgirl on Instagram, and there are *millions* of results, with the vast majority of them, objectively, being nines and tens.

Looks

Looks matter, there is no way around this. Based on their usage patterns, women’s behavior on dating apps show that they find 80% of men unattractive.

She isn't basing this on what he does for a living, his bio, sense of humor, competency, skills, or even location. It's based almost entirely on one profile picture and, for the most part, men are *horrible* at projecting a strong masculine appearance with professional-grade photography.

When it comes to looks, women overwhelmingly prefer tall men, with high testosterone cues like muscles and a chiseled jawline. Given the choice, almost all women would rather fuck a bald and muscular 6'5" Dwayne Johnson, over a full head of hair 5'4" Michael J. Fox.

However, with that being said, men need to learn how to max out their looks. Because, even with his height deficit, Michael J. Fox *still* had an abundance of women in his life by maxing out in many other areas.

The first step is, apart from not quitting, is to be at peace with yourself with what you can't change and max out what you *can* change

A man that is 5'4" can't do much about his height. But studies show that 70% of a man's attractiveness is based on the appearance of upper body strength, with height and leanness accounting for only 10%.

When women are shown images of men's bodies in studies and asked to rate attractiveness, they subconsciously, but overwhelmingly, seek a 1.62 ratio of shoulder to hip width. Yet, most men in developed Western countries are fat.

You can accomplish a "V taper" along with a thin waist and visible abs, by eating right and build broad shoulders, large

traps, and a muscular back, by lifting right. This is an area that almost all men can max out in that will *significantly* improve their overall look.

Sadly, most men don't track something as basic as their weight, let alone their shoulder to waist ratio.

If you are out of shape and carry belly fat, then you *must* make self-care a priority. There is simply no excuse for being fat and out of shape. If you want an enjoyable experience with women and want to be spoiled for choice, then you must do the work to live in a strong, masculine, and healthy body.

REFINE YOUR STYLE

Style is another area where men can improve looks dramatically. You should wear clothes that fit you well and complement your physique. Most men show they don't understand style by wearing clothes that don't fit properly.

In my early twenties, when I first worked in office spaces, I used to buy cheap off-the-rack dress shirts and suits and I looked terrible in clothes, but great naked. Most cheap clothing is loose and baggy on me because most of the population is fat - and that's how they manufacture it.

It wasn't until a girl suggested that I should get tailored shirts made that I started getting more looks and compliments from women. When I splurged and bought my first tailored suit, it was the icing on the cake and my girlfriend at the time became exceptionally jealous of the attention that I was getting when we went to formal events.

I use this example to impress upon you the importance, and significance of, wearing clothes that fit *properly*. And how dramatically they can improve your looks - *especially* if you've put in the work for a nice physique.

You don't need to buy expensive tailored suits. Instead, keep an eye out for clothes marked "fitted" with a small percentage of the fabric blend from spandex to ensure a good fit. For more on style, read Tanner Guzy's excellent book 'The appearance of power'.

Hair plays a big role with looks, yet I constantly find men with messy hair. Or worse, balding men holding desperately onto their disappearing strands of hair with bad haircuts. If you possess a thick, full head of hair, then take a look. Find a popular Hollywood heartthrob, that has similar features to you, and get a good hair stylist to fix your hair.

HAIR Loss

When it comes to hair loss, you need to understand that the 25% of men with a hereditary predisposition to baldness, start losing their hair by age 21. By age 35, 66% of men start experiencing hair loss, and by age 50, 85% of men display significantly thinner hair on their head.

Men spend *way* too much time and money looking for ways to hide, or slow down, their hair loss. Do *not* be that guy.

If you've a hereditary predisposition to hair loss, surrender to it, because you *are* going to lose it. The gene usually skips a generation; my dad has his hair, his father did too, and so does my younger brother. My grandfather on my mum's

side, however, was bald. So, my middle brother and I are balding.

I started noticing signs of hair loss around the age of 21 when I would take my motorcycle helmet off and notice a half dozen strands of hair in the helmet, but I kept a full head of hair until my early thirties. By my mid-thirties, I was using clippers on level one because there was no hairstyle that could hide it. Once I hit my early forties, I finally started shaving my head.

Throughout my life, I've been losing my hair. Yet, I've *never* had a problem with women. I always had a look that they liked. I've learned that there is a good part of the female population that just *loves* the look of a masculine man with a shaved head. Dwayne Johnson, Vin Diesel, Bruce Willis, and Jason Statham are all balding men in Hollywood that have a look that women are not only drawn to, but in many cases prefer. Because *they own it*.

You will need to make sure you've got a masculine physique if you are balding, or bald. If you look fat or scrawny - and balding - it's a really bad image. No woman pines for characters in Hollywood that remind them of George Costanza.

Surrender to it and adopt an image that suits your stage of hair loss. There is nothing on the market today, that I am aware of, that will truly reverse male pattern baldness. There are band-aid solutions, but they aren't even mildly successful at slowing down hair loss, and some are so pathetic, they aren't fooling anyone.

PICTURE PERFECT

There's a great misconception from quitters that will lead you to believe that you can't do *anything* about your looks, and that women only ever date handsome men. Yet, if you Google "Joe Manganiello transformation," you'll find a picture of a scrawny-looking high-school dork in bad glasses. A dork that transformed himself into a buff, handsome stud that landed a role as a male stripper in the movie 'Magic Mike.'

Lifting weights, eating right, improving your personal hygiene, and having a well-thought-out image can do wonders. It's called "looks maxing," and it's dressed in overalls, and looks like work, so most men avoid it. Therefore, making excuses as to why they can't.

The great equalizer in looks is photography. When it comes to pictures for dating apps or social media, definitely hire a photographer. There is an oversupply of young photographers you can hire for less than \$100 on Craigslist, alongside Air B 'n' B experiences for 2-hrs, to do a professional photo shoot in. Bring along three tailored outfits, ask the photographer to select some suitable locations, dress sharp, and then let them work their magic. Many men significantly improved their results with women on dating apps with superior photography.

Surrender to what you can't control; max out on what you can.

Money

There's a prevailingly lazy notion that money is evil, and that there is only so much money moving around out there, and that it's in the offshore accounts of all the rich and greedy men. Not only is that a lie, it's also a loser's mindset.

Money is, simply put, nothing more than a store of value. If you acquire it, then that's because you've added value to the lives of others. Bill Gates has acquired a massive amount of money because he solved massive global software issues with Microsoft, and also helped bring computing to the masses.

Throughout history, women have *always* preferred men with money. Women love a man that can "Make it rain."

Even with your style and physique locked down, your looks will only get you so far if you haven't got any money. You should aim to be in the top 10% of income earners where you live. As you get older, the significance of wealth increases because, like it or not, your looks will decrease. Even ugly, short, fat, bald men can have sex with really hot women if they have enough status and money. It is the *ultimate* equalizer for unattractive men.

While stable employment is still the primary objective of most men, a basic J.O.B. (Just Over Broke) isn't enough anymore for most men today.

Women are graduating with more degrees and earning more. But men aren't and today there are more women earning more money than *any* other time in history. And because

hypergamy never seeks its own economic level, women *always* want to date up. So, it's men with the wealth that get some of the best results with hot women.

When women ask what you do for a living, she doesn't particularly care about the "what" part. She is merely trying to be polite and curious about your status. More importantly, what she's *really* trying to do is assess how much money you earn.

However, the status component of your source of income does have some relevance. For example, a man that owns his own plumbing company might earn 50% more than a junior lawyer in a law firm. But hypergamy isn't all about money, it's about "the best that she can do." And if her hypergamy thinks a lawyer is more valuable to her than a plumber when introducing her new boyfriend to her family at Thanksgiving, then the lawyer wins.

A rich man can turn a broke woman's life around. But you should understand that a rich woman won't give a broke man the time of day (unless he's seriously hot, and even then it'd only be for sex). To complicate female nature even further, women will overlook a poor man in his twenties with ambition, and a plan (because he has "potential"). However, they have *truly little* patience for a poor man in his forties with ambition and a plan.

To have options in life you need money. Yet, most men live paycheck to paycheck.

"FUCK You" MONEY

Every man in the West should ideally aim to be a millionaire by the time they are 30, or 40 at the latest. This isn't to beg for pussy, or for female validation. It's for you. So, you can do what you want, when you want, and have the confidence to tell people to "Fuck off!" that you don't want to listen to. Which is an *incredibly* powerful position to be in - in *any* area of life.

Money creates freedom and options. Women are merely a by-product and they should *never* be the main reason that you continue to chase excellence.

Entrepreneurship, C-suite jobs (so CEO, CFO, etc.), high-end sales, and professional designations (think Doctors, Lawyers, Pilots, etc.), are the main categories where you can find the top 10% of earners.

My preference is entrepreneurship, because it can be the quickest path to wealth, with the most personal freedom. But, being an entrepreneur isn't for everyone, it can take years to get the role of a CFO, a Doctor, Pilot, or Salesman that sells high-end real estate or yachts.

The ROI on investing in yourself is absolutely *massive*, and in my view at least, is *well* worth the work.

The point I'm making, is that a factory job might have been enough for your grandfather after he returned from the war and then married your grandmother. But in today's world, that's not going to lead to a higher level of self-actualization for most men and, truthfully, it's not enough for today's women.

However, I want to re-emphasize here that while the point of creating wealth *isn't* to get women, you will naturally have access to more and more attractive women by acquiring wealth. As an intelligent man of vision and purpose, you must set boundaries and ultimately decide what kind of access you will permit women to have to *your* money.

Status

For men, status is mostly a by-product of wealth and influence, and we touched upon this aspect briefly when I was discussing money. Women, on the other hand, can achieve status with a decent physique, one million thirsty beta Instagram followers, and *still* be broke.

Part of the evaluation process women go through, when their hypergamous hindbrain is evaluating if you are the best that she can do, is assessing your status and influence.

Throughout history, men of high status have always had abundant access to high-quality women. In many cases, influential men of high status had harems of women.

Men of status are so desirable and in demand, that most women would rather share such a man with other women, compared to being saddled with a faithful loser.

When women get with a 5'9" Dan Bilzerian, they are happy to share him, because he is a successful, wealthy alpha, with a thirty million plus following on Instagram. The man has status and so has an unlimited supply of smoking hot women who are much younger than him, who are willingly

waiting in line for a chance to fuck him and be in one of his Instagram posts.

Status will get doors opened for you, meetings with important people, preferential treatment, and yes, access to attractive women.

Even ugly men of status do well with women. Mick Jagger, the lead singer of the Rolling Stones, was as ugly as they come. Yet, as a lead singer of a high status band, women didn't care about his looks because of his status. As legend has it, he once left a date with Angelina Jolie no less, to have a one-night stand with Farrah Fawcett.

I use these extreme examples to impress upon you the importance of status, and Instagram is just one way of hundreds where high status can be signaled.

An average looking 21-year-old man, who has just started promoting fitness courses from his business, can signal high status by having a good Instagram following of 20,000. This allows him to garner the attention and praise of 2,000 people with every Instagram post as he goes about the business of promoting his products.

However, when it comes to signaling higher status, that won't work for a 45-year-old man. For him to have the same measure of status in a woman's hindbrain, he must show that he has acquired wealth and has a more seasoned reach and status.

STATUS CAN'T BE FADED, IT MUST BE EARNED

When I'm with my girlfriend and a random guy approaches me that profusely thanks me for saving his life with my videos, it reminds her she is with a man of status.

I also show status with the Japanese chef that runs the small, high-end, sushi boutique restaurant that I frequent. When I call on the speakerphone to pick up an order, he always recognizes my voice before I mention my name, he calls me Mr. Cooper, and is very respectful. It's even more obvious when I visit the restaurant in person when I'm on a date to eat in, because I always get treated like a VIP.

When I'm at the gas station, with my girl in the passenger seat, filling up my R8 Spyder, and people approach me to ask about or compliment my car, I signal status.

Listen, you don't need to be a Rockstar or a billionaire to have status. All you need to do is make money and have people show respect and admiration for you. You get to decide how you want to signal status, but the more status you have, the more doors that will open up for you and, ultimately, the better you will do with women.

Game

Game is defined as you confidently using your attributes, characteristics, and overall personality to win the affection of women. It's about playing, and optimizing the cards you're dealt, and winning with women. It's also about turning your positives into swagger and your negatives into charm.

Game, when distilled, is about knowing what women respond positively to.

Pick Up Artists (or PUAs) will tell you that Game is the great equalizer when it comes to attracting women. If you haven't read the 2005 edition of '*The Game*' by Neil Strauss, then I strongly suggest you do. Neil isn't particularly good looking, and wasn't rich at the time of writing the book, but the techniques he uses *clearly* proves that Game works.

Game matters, but if you haven't got looks, money, or status to go with Game, then you will only ever get so far with it. Even the legendary "Mystery" in Strauss' book ended up with a debilitating case of "oneitis" for a woman because all he had was high-level Game.

You can use Game to get some success when cold approaching pretty women, while getting a number to set up a date. But, to be *truly* effective at Game, then you must also be Red Pill aware. Most PUAs have Game, but not all PUAs are Red Pill aware. Game without any Red Pill awareness is like owning a Ferrari, but without an engine.

To properly cover Game, with a Red Pill lens applied, requires several books. Beyond Neil Strauss' book above, notable reads are:

1. '*The Rational Male*' book series by Rollo Tomassi, which covers the mindset and psychology behind Game.
2. '*The Mystery Method*', by Mystery.
3. '*The Art of Seduction*', by Robert Greene.

When it comes to looks, money, status, and Game, some will try to convince you there is an order of importance to these but, in my view, there isn't.

A man should do his best to max himself out in every area. One area is no more important than the other.

They are synergistic and create a compounding effect as you improve in all areas. At the end of the day, the pursuit of excellence in these areas, should be for yourself, *not* for the goal of getting women.

Women should only ever be a by-product of looks, money, status, and Game. Remember, women should *never* be the focus of your life, only a complement to it.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- Men that do the work to put themselves into the most desirable top 20% of men have, by far, the greatest chances of sleeping with the vast majority of women. So, put a conscious effort into improving your physique, your style, and how you carry yourself. It'll pay dividends down the line.
- Are you losing your hair? Who gives a fuck? Own that shit and make it work *for you*. Guess what? It's only a problem if you let it be one.
- Being wealthy affords you the financial security in life to tell people, or other opportunities, that aren't offering any value to you, to "Fuck Off". Money has

an inherent value that allows you to pursue different options or enjoy experiences that you previously could only have dreamed about before.

- Go make your own recognizable dent in the universe and positively elevate your status to “world class-level” in whatever field you specialize in.
- While you don’t *have* to be an extrovert to be good at Game, although that certainly doesn’t hurt, you do need to build up a solid frame of genuine confidence that women can, quite literally, see you exude from across a crowded room. Are you being playful with women? Are you playfully teasing them and busting their, metaphorical, balls? Are you being your unapologetically authentic self around them? Are you only rewarding them with the value that your undivided attention brings because they’ve *earned it*? If not, then go and **Do. The. Work.**

MANAGE YOUR ENDOCRINE SYSTEM

Disclaimer: This book is not intended as a substitute for the medical advice of a licensed physician. The reader should regularly consult a licensed physician in matters relating to their health, particularly with respect to any symptoms that may require diagnosis or medical attention.

The male endocrine system is an extraordinarily complex collection of hormone-producing glands that regulate metabolism, growth, development, tissue function, sexual function, reproduction, sleep, mood, and many other functions.

The primary hormone men should be aware of tracking as they age is their testosterone levels. Because, even in a healthy male, your levels **will** drop somewhere between 1-2% per year from the age of 30 onwards (and this is in a best-case scenario).

This process in men is known as “andropause.” Unlike a woman’s menopause, which is an immediate decline in her optimal hormones. The process in men takes *decades* and, for many men, is hardly noticeable.

Declining testosterone levels is a genuine issue for men for a bunch of reasons. These include:

- Your lean muscle mass decreases,
- Body fat levels increases,
- Mental clarity decreases,
- Sexual function decreases,
- Bone density decreases,
- Energy decreases,
- And the risk of some diseases increases.

Optimal testosterone levels in men are directly connected to living an optimal life. And note the word “optimal”, which *isn’t* the same as “normal.”

It’s my belief that men should track their levels starting at the age of 25, and then every subsequent year, until the blood panels show the need for exogenous testosterone supplementation.

Some men will try to shame you for using Testosterone Replacement Therapy (or TRT), but understand that they are just jealous because **you** will do better in life. Hate *never* comes from above, only from people beneath you. People never get jealous of losers.

Once you start treatment, you'll track it about 2-3 times a year under the supervision of a TRT doctor.

For me, it was around the age of 43 that I noticed the following symptoms:

- Low energy,
- Moodiness,
- An inability to focus,
- A lack of morning wood,
- A lower libido,
- Less strength,
- Muscle wasting,
- More body fat,
- And far less motivation.

I knew something was up, saw how TRT improved the lives of several of my friends, and then found a local doctor that specialized in TRT. When I ran my full blood panel, my levels, according to government tables, were within the “normal” ranges for my age. Thankfully, my doctor didn’t treat numbers. Instead, he treated the symptoms I described above.

Optimal versus normal

Nobody wants to be “normal.” As a man chasing excellence, you want to optimize every area of your life. A good TRT doctor will treat your *symptoms* to optimize you to the levels you had around the age of 30.

It's important to note that I am not talking about reaching the super physiological levels that a competitive bodybuilder aims for. Their exogenous testosterone dosages will be 4-10 times higher than what a TRT doctor will prescribe; abusing testosterone **will** eventually lead to health problems down the road.

Again, you are aiming for the optimal levels you had around the age of 30. Most TRT doctors will prescribe between 80 to 200 mg of testosterone per week and then adjust your dosage based on the results of your blood work.

A full blood panel, in most places in the world, will cost you around \$150 and is *well* worth the investment in your long-term health. A full blood panel will give you a factual baseline from which to begin your health optimization strategy from.

My TRT protocol

I'm currently prescribed 100mg of testosterone cypionate per week and 1000 IU of Human Chorionic Gonadotropin (or HCG) weekly.

My blood panels also revealed that I needed to attend to a few other minor areas, which my TRT doctor has been extremely helpful with. He recommended supplements that have had a noticeable impact on my overall health.

I **strongly** suggest doing this under the supervision of a licensed medical doctor that specializes in optimizing male hormones. Some men will try to save money, and do this

themselves, and get their testosterone from an underground lab in Asia, or their “bro” from the gym. But you never really know what you are getting, it’s potency, and you won’t have a licensed doctor guiding you. To me, the cost savings simply aren’t worth the risk.

I’ve already explained the merits of optimal testosterone. However, one downside of introducing exogenous testosterone into your body is that your own natural production shuts down once your body detects healthy levels again. That means your testicles will stop, or reduce, producing testosterone, sperm, and some other master hormones (like Pregnenolone, etc.).

Some men do fine with just testosterone supplementation. But I found that within four weeks of starting TRT treatment, I didn’t like the contraction (or aching) of my testicles. Some brain fog returned, and my orgasms weren’t quite as enjoyable since sperm production was reduced. So, my doctor added HCG to my protocol, and I felt like myself again after a couple of weeks.

Some men seem to do better with HCG in their protocol, as we have Luteinizing Hormone receptors throughout our body. It keeps your testes full and functioning, pumping out your standard explosive loads. HCG is also useful if you want to maintain fertility to father children.

How to boost testosterone naturally

There are a lot of products on the market that claim to boost testosterone, and always seem to cost a fortune, yet do little

to nothing. Save your money when it comes to testosterone boosters.

There are two ways to optimize testosterone naturally. The first is to remove certain habits or compounds from your life. The second way is with some vitamins and supplements that help your body produce testosterone.

REDUCE STRESS

Stress increases cortisol, and cortisol has a heavy negative impact on your body's ability to optimize its endocrine system naturally. For most men, it's either stressful jobs, or the women in their lives creating the stress. Therefore, find ways to reduce, or remove, stress where possible.

REDUCE SCREEN TIME AND BLUE LIGHT

Screens emit a blue light which disrupts our circadian rhythm and sleep patterns. Either wear blue light blocking glasses at night, or cut out screen time three hours before bed. Now use that time to read or do something else away from any screens so you can get a full night's sleep. Get 6-8 hours of restful sleep as your body repairs itself when sleeping - which includes testosterone production and other growth hormones. Your body *needs* to rest and recover more than you realize.

REMOVE PROCESSED FOODS

If the 2.4 million years of human history were broken down into 24-hrs on a clock, we've been eating meat for almost 24-hrs, wheat for six minutes, and processed foods for four seconds. Get your nutrition from a variety of greens and

animal proteins. Studies have shown processed foods to disrupt your endocrine system, so avoid them wherever possible and stay away from extreme diets that restrict variety.

REDUCE BODY FAT

Men today are fatter than ever, and excess body fat negatively affects testosterone production, and compounds the problem further because excess fat supports the aromatase function in the body. That is, the natural conversion of testosterone to estrogen increases. The more body fat you have, the more testosterone you will convert into estrogen, and it's why you see so many obese men with visible breasts today.

ADD VITAMIN D3

People living north or south of the tropics cannot manufacture enough vitamin D from sunlight, and the problem worsens in the winter months with less sunlight. The government recommends 1000 IU a day of vitamin D, but that's too low for most people; I need about 5,000 to 7,000 IU a day to even get my blood labs to show optimal levels. Vitamin D is critical in many bodily functions, including testosterone production.

Vitamin D needs the help of fats or oils to be absorbed into the bloodstream, so any vitamin D spray that is oil-based works best. However, if you only have access to tablet forms of D3, take it *after* you have a meal. The oils from the food will help aid the breakdown of the D3 tablets into the bloodstream.

It's important to note that it's possible to take too much D3, leading to a state of toxicity. While this may require sustained dosages as high as 40,000iu per day for some people, for others, it may require considerably less. This is why I *strongly* recommend that you get your blood panel done so you have an accurate baseline level to work from.

One of the by-products of higher D3 levels in the blood is calcium. This excess calcium has a tendency to be deposited in the arteries, where it can build up and calcify. In turn, ultimately risking a blockage in the affected artery if left long enough, which could be fatal.

Therefore, if you plan on taking 5,000iu a day (or more), then you **must** have a look at taking 200 **micrograms** of Vitamin K2 MK7 for every 5,000iu of D3. The MK7 variant of K2 is the most effective at working alongside D3. K2-MK7 directs the additional calcium into your bones (where it's needed most), and away from your arteries. A dosage of around 100 micrograms of K2-MK7 per 2,000iu of D3 is a sensible start.

Editor's note: Based on where I live, I take 16,000iu of D3 alongside 600 micrograms of K2 MK7 every day. And I get my blood panels done every 6-months so I can track how well I'm optimizing my levels. Suffice to say that, for me at least, there's been a *direct* correlation between my D3 levels and my Testosterone levels in *every* blood panel for the last two years.

It's so important, I also give my young kids some apple flavored D3+K2 MK7 spray every morning. One spray

totaling 800iu for spring and summer, and two sprays totaling 1,600iu during autumn and wintertime.

In short: Don't underestimate the importance of Vitamin D3 in naturally improving your T-levels.

AVOID ELECTROMAGNETIC FIELDS (EMF)

Electromagnetic frequencies have been shown to disrupt the endocrine system, and mitochondria. These are emitted all around us, all day from our cell phone, tablets, and laptops. Try to minimize your exposure to microwave (cell signals), Wi-Fi, and Bluetooth as much as possible.

Put a timer on your Wi-Fi router power outlet to shut it off while you sleep and keep all electronics or screens out of your bedroom. If you use a laptop, it's often sitting right on top of your testes, so get an EMF blocking pad to eliminate exposure. Also keep your cell phone out of your pant pockets, or away from the body at all times.

ADD THE FOLLOWING SUPPLEMENTS

The following vitamins are useful in helping the body optimize its own testosterone production: A, B, C, E, Zinc, and Boron. Studies have also proven that ginger extract and Ashwagandha naturally help improve your sleep.

In conclusion

Testosterone is what makes us a man. It's why a healthy male has three times the upper body strength as a female, it's what makes us aggressive, and rise to life's challenges.

We have seen a dramatic decline in testosterone levels in men over the last 50-years, and the subsequent rise of weaker, softer, and more agreeable men in society.

Environmental estrogens in food, toiletries, drinks, and beers are being consumed in record numbers. Compound into that, the constant bombardment of EMF on your body in large cities everywhere you go, terrible diets, inactivity, and people's addictions to their blue light screens. Combined together, it explains why we've seen the general weakening of the Western male.

Simply put, without healthy testosterone levels you will never operate at an optimal level as a man. Make monitoring your levels habitual. It will be a competitive advantage when navigating a world that is slowly making most men weaker, slower, and dumber.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- Testosterone doesn't just fuel your sex drive. It also governs many vital functions within your body. So, increasing it is **vital** to your own physical, mental, and emotional well-being.
- Do absolutely *everything* you can to optimize your testosterone levels naturally first. It might surprise you just how much you can raise them using just consistency and self-discipline.

- Your T-levels might come back within the “normal” range. But that range might only be normal if you’re 60+ years of age. Remember, get a competent doctor to treat your *symptoms* (not your number).
- Therefore, not all doctors are created equal in this area. Do your homework and shop around for a doctor who has real experience in this field.
- Going onto TRT is a *lifelong* commitment as your body will stop making testosterone naturally as your T-levels increase.
- Check your medical insurance (if applicable to where you live) to see if it covers TRT. If not, you must factor in the ongoing cost of private TRT treatment.

MANAGE THE FCKS YOU GIVE

When I was young, we played a lot of player-versus-player video games. There was a popular one called Mortal Kombat, and they all operated on the same concept. You started with 100% on your life bar and as you battle, each hit you took reduced your life until it was 0% and you'd die by some outrageous fatality resulting in massive carnage.

Life isn't much different. Essentially, it's about us taking hits all day long, draining our energy, attention, and resources until we hit zero. Unfortunately, most people don't value the energy they give away and they freely dispense it like it's an unlimited resource, and this is a **big** mistake.

Many people today see the barrage of hate I get for the truth I reveal in my videos, and they ask me how I handle it. Often my response is: "You need to learn to give zero fucks."

We all, by design, have a limited amount of energy that we can allocate to our daily lives. Everything we do takes time and resources. Our job, kids, friends, events, partners, and even the small things, like when my child wants me to kill a spider in the bathroom.

I refer to the energy that you can spend as the "fucks" you can give. Therefore, it's incumbent upon you, as a man of vision and purpose, to manage every fuck wisely.

We are the masters of our lives, so we have the privilege of deciding where we want to dispense those limited amounts of fucks on. Only we get to choose what is *truly* fuckworthy in our lives.

When you drive to work and the asshole in the BMW cuts you off, you often choose to allocate those fucks to being frustrated. Rather than accepting it and saving those fucks for something else.

When a co-worker makes a disparaging comment because you won't donate \$10 to "Donna in accounting's" fundraiser, you can dispense those fucks, and comment back with your feelings. Or, you can go about your business in a "zero fucks given" kind of way and ignore her underhanded comment.

To truly manage your fucks, you must first master self-control.

Self-control

You know that asshole in a BMW who doesn't signal and cuts you off? You have two choices:

1. Throw a tantrum in your car, wave your middle finger about, and flash your high beams, before accelerating

up to his bumper - giving away some of your limited fucks in the process.

2. Utilize self-control, reserve your fucks for something more fuck worthy, and do nothing.

Option one burns up some of your limited fucks for the day and also applies stress to your body. Cortisol, a stress hormone, is released into your body when something gets under your skin, making it catabolic. Whereas option two does nothing. Ultimately, mastering self-control, and your emotions matters.

Those who are world class at their craft, and pursue excellence, are *incredibly careful* about managing their time, energy, and resources. Ultimately, you can't become the best version of yourself if you're constantly re-allocating your energy to things which don't deserve that energy and don't bring you closer to your goals, passions, and dreams.

“

Where awareness goes, energy flows.

- Dandapani

While this may seem like a simple notion, this idea was profound for me. I met Dandapani, a monk, at an entrepreneur's dinner event in Toronto where he was booked as the keynote speaker.

He sat there before us, legs crossed, on the floor, in full monk garb, with beads, and three white lines painted on his forehead.

He was an unlikely character to speak to entrepreneurs running successful multimillion-dollar businesses. They presented him to us as a Hindu priest with an Australian accent who had just finished 10-years in a monastery in Hawaii.

Entrepreneurs are notoriously prone to distractions, and many have varying degrees of Attention Deficit Disorder (or ADD). They are like herding cats. This monk was there to help entrepreneurs understand the notion of what “Energy Vampires” are, and how to manage their awareness to be more effective in their businesses.

Awareness, he explained, is like a glowing ball of light which moves around in your head, and when it goes to a particular area of the mind, then that area is lit up, which is where your energy flows.

So, if awareness goes to a happy area of the mind, then that is where your energy is flowing. And, if energy is flowing to the happy area of the mind, then it is also strengthening this area of the mind.

In order to manage your fucks, you must understand that the biggest threat comes from people, places, or things which are “Energy Vampires.” These are usually people that will take up your time, drain your energy, and leave you feeling exhausted from your encounter with them.

The keyword here is “exhausted” after your encounter. For more on that, search for ‘How to deal with Energy Vampires’ on my channel.

Mastering self-control

So how do you master self-control? Self-control is perhaps the most powerful skill you can develop that will help you master a better life.

When you learn how to manage your fucks and walk away from Energy Vampires, you exercise self-control, and start preserving your fucks for truly fuckworthy things that make you happy in life.

How do you know if something is fuckworthy? Simple. If the dispensing of the fuck helps make you, or your loved one's lives better, then it's usually worth dispensing precious fucks on.

Some might argue that this is a selfish or unkind way to navigate life. I propose that you re-evaluate how serious you are about managing your energy if this belief is violated by my statement above.

If the dispensing of said fuck drains you, or your loved ones, then it is probably better if you use self-control and preserve those fucks.

Let me give you a perfect example. I dated a single mother once, and one of her core passions was dinner parties. She would invite guests that were exhausting to be around.

My date had one friend that would berate, criticize, and judge everyone - including her husband. Her friend was a typical stay-at-home soccer mum, with teenage kids, who also had an exceedingly high opinion of herself.

However, she was nothing more than an obese middle-aged woman expecting people to agree with her worldview. She was, in fact, an Energy Vampire. Meaning that being around her was an emotionally draining experience.

Simply put, there was no benefit to being in the same room as her. I knew that she set a terrible example of what an adult woman should be, I knew I didn't want to have *my* daughter around that energy.

After I received a second invite to attend another dinner party. I declined and, as you'd expect, declining the offer offended my girlfriend and she tried to create an argument out of it.

I simply didn't take part, thanked her for the invite, and ended the call. We didn't talk for a few days, and she called me after the dinner event to apologize and agreed that her friend was an Energy Vampire.

You see, when you exercise self-control, you manage your fucks better. When you become aware of who is an Energy Vampire in your life, you will be forced to make choices that may offend some people. Guess what? That's okay. A man that is on his purpose in life will inevitably rub some people the wrong way.

Remember, if you value your fucks as a limited resource, you will only dispense them for things that are *truly* fuckworthy.

How do you strengthen self-control?

It's my belief that self-control is like a muscle, the more you work it, the stronger it gets.

One of the simplest ways to strengthen that self-control muscle is to do things that are physically difficult or that challenge you. If you are looking for a task to improve your self-control, then taking a cold shower for most people is hard. Especially if you've had access to hot water all your life. Hot water is a modern luxury, but for millions of years we have been bathing in icy lakes and rivers.

To take a cold shower requires self-control. But, most people don't even have the ability to do something basic like stand in uncomfortably cold water in a shower. I urge you to start taking cold showers for the following reasons:

- It strengthens your self-control.
- It also offers the following health benefits:
- Reduced brain fog and improved focus.
- Improves circulation.
- Keeps skin & hair healthy.
- Strengthens immunity.
- Improves energy and wellbeing.
- Improves metabolism and fat burning abilities.

Do you want to improve your self-control and learn how to manage your fucks better? Then start by doing something as simple as taking cold showers. It's easy to understand, simple to execute on, but takes discipline and willpower to build.

I was speaking at a conference and closed off my talk speaking about managing your fucks, and someone asked me in the audience about how they felt anxiety over dispensing their fucks, and how to reserve them better.

The bottom line is this: If you value your fucks as a resource that has a limit to it, then you will only allocate your limited fucks towards matters that *truly deserve* your fucks.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- The energy that you begin every day with is *extremely limited*. So, stop wasting it on things that don't help drive you, your mission, or your family forwards in life.
- Giving a shit about every little thing that happens will only go to raise your Cortisol levels. In turn, you get worked up over nothing important, while you simultaneously tank your Testosterone levels. Be sure you've read my chapter 'Manage Your Endocrine System' for more information on this vital area of your well-being.
- There's also a good chance that if you go to bed with lower Cortisol levels, then there's a much higher chance of having a far better night's sleep.

GETTING “DA GIRLS” ONLINE

It's exceptionally important for me to open this chapter by stating that women should *never* be the focus of a man's life. Chasing excellence, finding purpose, making bank, and self-care need to trump chasing tail. Every. Single. Time.

Remember, beautiful women are not a scarce resource. High-value men that have their lives sorted out are the scarce resource on the sexual marketplace, not beautiful women.

The cold hard truth about online dating

Now that we've gotten that out of the way, understand that when you use online dating apps, the deck is *always* stacked up against you if you aren't in the top 20% of men.

Several dating sites have released data over the years on how men and women use online dating sites. And some startling results have emerged confirming what the red pill has been saying for decades.

The top 78% of women are competing for the attention of the top 20% of men. While the bottom 80% of men are competing for the bottom 22% of women.

Confirming the reality of women's hypergamous nature on dating apps.

What that means is, if you are a high-value man (so an 8/10 or better), you are spoiled for choice with women on dating apps. It's absurd to say this, but a 3/10 female is shooting for the 8/10 male or better - and she'll genuinely think she's in with a chance of landing one.

If you are a 7/10 male or lower, you are basically competing for scraps. So, again, this is why it's vital for men to understand that chasing excellence, and not women, will always be your best ROI in life.

Dating sites and apps are filled with overly entitled and bratty women. Who possess an over-inflated sense of self-worth and, to top it all off, many of them are single mothers too.

How to assess your value

I'm a big fan of getting an ROI on every area of life. So knowing now how women use dating apps, we can approach it from an informed angle, giving us better results. This is a two-step process.

The first step is a brutally honest self-assessment. Take a good, hard, look at yourself and your life, and rate yourself on a scale of 1 to 10. With 10 being the absolute best version

of yourself, and 1 being the worst. **Do not** compare yourself to a Hollywood actor, or a billionaire. You are asking yourself: “Am I the best version of myself?”

Factor in the following for your age: Your job, wealth, self-care, your physique, look, style, your network, your hobbies, if you have kids, your car, and your home. The “Looks, Money, Status, and Game” chapter covers most of this.

These areas matter to women, so be completely honest with yourself.

Now that you’ve rated yourself, go onto your dating application of choice, and set yourself up to see what the female experience is like in your age range and location, but set it to “Female seeking Male.”

You are now looking at your competition. This will help you understand what you are up against. Now use this newfound knowledge of your competition to make a correction of your sexual market value assessment – if you require it.

If you are a 6/10 or lower, then I’d discourage you from using dating apps. Instead, I’d encourage you to double-down on yourself and do the work needed to increase your value on the sexual marketplace.

If you are a 7/10, you’re going to have a harder time. But, good photography can be an equalizer to improve the optics of your value one point higher. However, don’t rely on trick photography, you still have work to do.

If you are an 8/10 or higher, then congratulations, you’ve done the work. Continue to keep working on yourself and

enjoy being one of the 20% of men that are spoilt for choice on dating apps.

How to get results

There's three parts to doing well with online game (after that, everything happens in real-life):

1. Photography.
2. Bio.
3. Messaging.

PHOTOGRAPHY

Photography is arguably the most important part. On matching apps like Tinder or Bumble, it's the primary driver that dictates in which direction she will swipe. It's also the area where you can create the illusion of a SMV that's one to two points higher if you do it right.

It's essential that you hire a photographer to take pictures for dating apps or social proof.

At the time of writing in mid-2020, there is an oversupply of young photographers that you can hire for around \$100 on Craigslist, or even Air B 'n B experiences, for two hours to do a photo shoot.

To get the most out of it, bring three different, but well-fitted, outfits, and ask the photographer to select some suitable locations that they are familiar with. Make sure you show up looking sharp with a fresh haircut and let them

work their magic. Many men have *significantly* improved their results with women on dating apps with the correct use of superior quality photography.

Once you've got your collection of eye-catching photos, the next step is to use a site where women rate your pictures for dating purposes.

At the time of writing this book, Photofeeler is the best platform available to get genuine feedback from real women.

HOW TO LEVEL UP YOUR PHOTOS

Once you've narrowed down your top three professional photographs (based on the top three ratings from Photofeeler), you can stop there if you like. However, it often helps to include the following three additional compositions into your profile. These are: The “group of friends” picture, the “mystery” picture, and the “Aww!” picture.

The “group of friends” picture is straightforward and is designed to immediately establish high-value through social proof. You'll get bonus points if your circle of friends looks successful, established, and they look like the type of people and social circle that she wants to be around.

You are basically telling her, “Hey sexy, if you date me, you'll get to know these legends and hang around my people.” For example, a group photograph on a yacht will *always* do better for you than a group picture in a trailer park, surrounded by lower-value men. So be intentional when selecting a “group of friends” picture.

The mystery picture is one of my favorites, because it caffeinates the hamster in her head, and runs her imagination wild. This is always a solo picture and it's best taken at sunrise or sunset with the light behind you, and your image as a back-lit silhouette.

The following photo of me is a solid example and was taken at sunrise at a resort in Mexico. It works well because you can clearly see my physique, the 'V taper' and because I was enjoying a natural moment in the pool. That I am also half naked will get her mind racing to manufacture ideas.



Giver her something mysterious to think about.

The “Aww!” picture is something that will pull on her heartstrings a bit, and should ideally be a picture of you with

a pet. It doesn't need to be your pet, but cute puppies are, by far, the best accessory for this picture.

Stay away from cats, or a kid (even if they aren't your kids). The only time I would suggest kids for this type of picture is if you are building a school on a Caribbean island after a hurricane (and you're surrounded by kids that obviously aren't yours).

Even if you are a single father, I'd still discourage you from posting pictures of you with your kids. Like it or not, women are inherently solipsistic, and are self-interested in what they can benefit from being with you. If you signal in a photo to potential women that you are a father with kids in tow, it's highly unlikely to benefit you.

Your biography

The biography (or, bio) section is far less important than the pictures. But it's still worth covering from the perspective of what *not* to do.

Do not drone on and use the full character allowance. Truthfully, she doesn't even care that much, and she has already made 95% of her decision about matching with you based on the pictures she has seen. The point of the bio is to caffeinate the hamster in her mind that bit further and get her really curious about you.

We know women are hypergamous and solipsistic. So, all your bio needs to convey is that you are her best option (of

the many available to her), and that there's something in it for her.

My typical bio would read:

“ 6'2”, successful entrepreneur putting a dent in the universe. Great social circle of friends and adventurer, looking for a feminine beauty to join me.

That's it, that's all you need. It says I'm tall, make bank, have an impressive network, and that I am not boring. The bit about “putting a dent in the universe” should get her asking questions if she has a strong interest in you. The “join me” bit lets her know right off the bat; she's entering my frame.

With women, you can do almost anything you want to them – but do not bore them.

Some guys will use clever lines like: “Like my shirt, it's made out of boyfriend material.” And while that may seem smart, truthfully, it comes off a bit desperate. Make women qualify for your time, not the other way around.

Messaging

So, you've got matches; now let's talk messaging. The vast majority of men get messaging totally wrong. The **entire** point of communicating back and forth on a dating application is to weed out the manipulative time wasters and then get her number to set up a date.

That's it. The biggest mistake men make is in wasting time 'getting to know her.' That's not what she wants. Nor, do you want to waste your time chatting up someone that looks nothing like their pictures, only to be disappointed in person.

Keep in mind, *many* women will use dating apps just to get fleeting social validation from men. They will ignore, or ghost, any guy they have low desire for, even if they previously matched with you.

Your first message to her should be something playful like: "You look like you could be trouble."

Ask this question to establish her interest level. A woman with a high level of interest will respond, and engage with you, preferably with a question about why you said that, or about your awesome pictures.

If she isn't asking questions, uses noticeably brief responses, or takes a long time to respond, she isn't that into you.

If she asks questions, be somewhat vague in your response. Remember, you want her qualifying herself to you, so be curious. Women *love* exciting and mysterious men, so don't show up and verbally throw up all your most interesting information before you even meet her.

For me, women try to establish what kind of entrepreneur I am, or businesses I run. Not because she is interested in the business, but to establish how much I earn running it. She might ask about my business, or what dent I am putting in the universe. To which I would often reply with: "I'm a board advisor in a national financial services business, real

estate investor, and do my own private equity investing.” All true, but most women won’t understand what any of that means, aside from I’m important, and again, that I make bank.

After I drop that bomb, I’d often follow up with: “So what do you do?” Not because I particularly care, but to subconsciously establish that my SMV is higher than hers.

Once you’ve exchanged a few messages back and forth, message her with: “I’m busy today, and I’m not on here often, but what’s your number? Let’s set up a date to meet this week.”

If she is into you, she will give you her number. If not, she will give you an excuse. It’s always one or the other. The medium is the message, gentlemen.

Also, *do not* take her social media, Instagram, or Snapchat as a replacement for a phone number. GET. HER. PHONE NUMBER! Women *want* a man that can take control and set up the date and you need a number to do that.

If she offers you to follow her on social media, immediately decline the offer. She wants you to be one of her hundreds of thirsty betas orbiting around her there, giving social validation and free attention to her.

If she says she barely knows you and wants to chat more on the application, tell her you are busy, and only on there to date in real life. You’re not there to accumulate pen pals. Women that say this do not have genuine burning desire for

you, she only sees you as an alternative if her line of other, more preferable, options don't work out.

Again, if she has a genuine desire for you, then she will give you her number. When she does, text her within a day, and set up a date. Otherwise, unmatched her and move right on.

The date aka: “The sniff test”

Your first date with her should be an hour or less, and nothing more than a drink or coffee. The whole point of the sniff test is to:

1. See if she is worth your time.
2. Determine if she has a genuine interest in you.

The total cost should be less than \$20. You always pay and do not split the bill for a drink - you will look like a loser. My preferred first date would be to grab a coffee and then go for a stroll in some public space like a park or hiking trail.

You want her to feel comfortable. But, you also want to get a good look at her since most women today use older photography, or even touch up their pictures, so they rarely look better in person.

If it's during the day, meet her at a coffee shop, grab your drinks, and then find your way to an outdoor trail. If it's at night, make plans after eight for a drink so she isn't expecting a free dinner, and then chat her up on a patio or bar.

If she is unfamiliar with the area for a date, send her a Google map link for the location so she can find it with no trouble.

Unless you are in her area on business, always have her meet you halfway. The more she has to travel, and the less you need to, is preferable for you for two reasons:

1. It saves you time.
2. It tests her for genuine burning desire.

A woman with a strong desire for you will drive two hours to your house on a first date. She'll then gladly drop to her knees at the door without saying a word (on your instructions) and give you the best blow job of your life.

Trust me. **Do not** go running to her front door for dates. If she insists that you travel to her, then she is telling you *right off the bat* that she doesn't have that genuine burning desire for you.

Each new meeting should start by standing up with a big smile, including a brief handshake, or if you're so inclined and comfortable, pull her in for a brief hug. Then, gesture to either sit, if it's a night venue, or stand in the ordering line if you are getting coffee and going out.

Some men like to go for a same day lay. And, while you may be successful sometimes, my preference is to just do a "sniff test" on her. Just to see if she is even worth seeing again and to check if there is a genuine connection there or not.

When the hour is up, walk her to her car, Uber or transit and, if you have a connection, bring her in for a hug, and/or brief kiss and let her know you'll be in touch. If there is no connection, just say your farewells and leave it at that.

Getting laid and spinning those plates

Sexual intimacy should happen by the second to third date for three reasons:

1. You make it clear that you have a genuine interest in her sexual attention and will not be friend-zoned.
2. You want to ensure there is a good sexual connection.
3. Sex is awesome.

Some guys might argue that it's too soon, or they will wait "for the right girl". I'm here to tell you that this is the wrong way to approach it. Never forget: Women break rules for alphas and make them for betas.

If a woman is happy to have sex with the hot dude from the foam cannon party in Ibiza 15-minutes after she meets him, why should you wait eight dates?

Unless you are Amish, all of today's modern women on dating apps have hooked up with *many* guys prior, so don't think for a minute she is the Virgin Mary.

Some people like to argue that there are "good girls" you should wait to be intimate with. The truth is, the only difference between good girls and bad girls is: Good girls just haven't been caught yet.

The best way to facilitate sexual intimacy is to begin with your messages leading up to the next date. Make it clear you are interested in her sexual attention. It's men that play the 'nice guy' that get 'friend-zoned' by women, earning them nothing but non-sexual attention.

Some women will send you provocative pictures without request. Other times you will need to request them. Other women may not send naughty photos at all, but will openly engage in some naughty talk with you. Either way, it should be crystal clear to her after the first date, aka: "The sniff test," that you are interested in her *sexual* attention, and it should be mutual.

If it's not, and she wants to "get to know you first" because she has rules, remember that women break rules for alpha men, and make them for betas. You will *never* get her "best" if she sees you as a beta, but she will give her best to Chad Thundercock on the first date. My view is *never* date a woman if she treats you as a beta as she will always hold out on you.

Ideally, set your sex date for an evening, and host her at your place. If she drinks, have a selection of wine or vodka at your house. If you don't have your own place, you will need to go to her place. Or, if you're a younger man and still with your parents, having a car with tinted windows is always useful.

To get to sex, you need to get comfortable and confident with escalation. Music is great for setting the mood, I use whatever sexy playlist off my Google music application is trending. You can escalate the sexual tension by inviting her

for a hot tub or sauna if you have one, or you can simply start by touching, and kissing. If she reciprocates warmly, then escalate, and move to heavier petting, which should lead to sex.

Always be in control of birth

As a man, you must **always** be in control of the birth. Once your sperm leaves your body, **you no longer have any decision-making ability to terminate a pregnancy**. The government will force you to pay child support - even if you don't want the child.

All control is with the woman. So **always** have condoms on hand; do not 'raw dawg' a woman, no matter how horny you are. You cannot rely on her promise of being disease free, or on reliable birth control. Women lie, and they lie *often*.

You should also have a "Plan B" on hand in the event a condom breaks. "Plan B", more commonly known as the morning after pill, is effective. It's an oral tablet she takes, which very quickly triggers her period, removing the risk of your sperm fertilizing her egg.

If you have an accident, make sure she takes the morning after pill in front of you, and you **know** for sure that she swallowed it. Women have been known to take them in the bathroom with the door shut, and just spit it into the toilet or garbage if they want your seed bad enough.

Again, I **cannot** put enough emphasis on this; **always** be in control of birth, **do not** rely on a woman's word. As the old

saying goes, an ounce of prevention is worth a pound of the cure.

If you get involved on a longer-term basis with her, and are getting fed up with condoms, then you may want to consider other forms of birth control, like an IUD. However, I **strongly** discourage you from ever trusting her to take a birth control pill - or any other oral contraceptive.

“Surprise” pregnancies often come out of her forgetting, or intentionally not taking her birth control. IUDs are generally considered more than 99% effective.

There are male birth control pills going through clinical trials at the time of writing this book, and the studies reveal that they work by lowering your testosterone levels to make your sperm ineffective. **NEVER** use this form of male contraception! You will become weak, unattractive, and feminized. It's a pill that basically turns you into an old man. Either have her on an IUD, use condoms, or get a vasectomy.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- 78% of women are only interested in the top 20% of men online. The other 80% of men who are invisible to them are left fighting for the bottom 20% of the super-low SMV women.
- Be completely honest with your own personal value and mark it accordingly. Put your focus into

developing these areas *before* you re-enter the sexual marketplace.

- Stand out from the crowd by investing in some professional photography. Seriously. It'll pay dividends - trust me on this one.
- Texting is mostly for logistics. By all means, open up with something fun and flirty for her to bounce off of. Once she's asking questions, get her agreeing to a date ASAP.
- Don't be single-minded in trying to get laid on the first date. It's more important to vet her for potentially serious red flags (such as seeing how she responds if you tell her "No." with a smile on your face). Never stick your dick in crazy.
- Finally, **ALWAYS** be in control of the birth. **Without exception.** Far, *far*, too many men have been already duped by women with "baby rabies". **Do not** let yourself become one of them.

PROMISCUOUS PRIMATES

Most men idealize a single type of relationship with women. The version that Walt Disney sold us as kids. One man, his wife, their children, and a love that lasts forever.

Society has conditioned us to believe that a relationship is going to be nice, romantic, caring, and respectful. That we'll find that "one good girl" that will only date and love you. That you'll both get engaged, then get married, have kids and live "happily ever after." That she will be a faithful, loving wife and mother "In richer or poorer, in sickness or in health. 'til death do us part."

This is a social contract that very rarely fulfills its promise of a blissful life. Instead, marriage comes with significant risks to men.

While the next chapter talks about marriage in more depth, it is important to note that this social contract is *exceedingly difficult* to manage over the long term.

Our highly promiscuous ancestors lived as non-monogamous hunter/gatherers, in small nomadic tribes, and

preceded us for six million years. We've lived as modern humans for 200,000 years, and civilization, as we know it, began around 6,000 years ago. Monogamy and marriage have only been around for less than 2,000 years.

Men and women are, by nature, highly promiscuous. There's also a *massive* conflict between how we've all been told to behave, versus our instinctual hard-wiring. Which has been built up over millions of years of evolution.

In this chapter, I want to expose some myths about humans and enlighten you to the true nature of our sexual strategies.

We are terrible at monogamy

In fact, as a species, we are highly promiscuous. When it comes to mammals, monogamy isn't common at all. In fact, as a sexual strategy, monogamy is an *outlier* amongst mammals.

I always catch heat from traditional conservatives for talking about how badly we fail at monogamy. But, as the saying goes, a bomber only gets flak when it's over the target.

It's universally accepted by those that study the dynamics between men and women, that the male sexual strategy is unlimited access to unlimited women. Whereas the female sexual strategy is open hypergamy.

What that means is men want to scatter their seed far and wide. As men produce millions of sperm every month, those seeds are both ridiculously cheap and readily available.

Women, however, are more complicated. They look for the best genetic investment in their offspring and the best provisioning male, because their eggs are a limited resource.

You should note that the best genetic investment, and best provisioning male, isn't always the same man. It's sometimes one high value alpha with great genetics that provides the seed, and another, more beta, reliable male that provides for the need of raising the offspring.

Hence the popular soundbite distilling the female sexual of open hypergamy as: "Alpha fucks; beta bucks."

A women's sexual strategy is dualistic and quite frustrating for most men to comprehend. It's also why men often raise grievances about women crying over wanting "Mr. Dependable," while she goes off and fucks "Mr. Exciting" instead.

How her sexual strategy constantly changes

A woman's sexual strategy changes over time. Under the age of 27, women are generally in their party years, and are happy to explore, and sleep with, as many high value alpha men as possible. By the time she is in her late twenties, she has reached the 'Epiphany Phase' of her life. This is where millions of years of evolution in her DNA yell at her, "Hey lady, where are the babies!?"

The 'Epiphany Phase' is often when women will start seeking out a suitable man to have children with. Ideally, they want a strong alpha seed, and a tender beta protector.

But these traits rarely exist in the same man, and high value alphas aren't that easy for her to lock down. So, women will typically compromise and settle for a more beta male that they deemed as "good enough."

It's why you'll often see many mid-thirties divorced women on the dating market with kids in tow after initiating her divorce. I encountered many of these women on the dating market after my own divorce. I also noticed a trend of some version of the soundbite: "I loved him, but I wasn't IN love with him anymore."

Somehow, today he is a loser. But, at some point in time, he was good enough for her.

This *completely* violates the marriage vows of "To have and to hold, from this day forward, for better, for worse, for richer, for poorer, in sickness and in health, to love and to cherish, 'til death do us part..."

I've coached many men who have taken this hook, line, and sinker. But, you need to understand that marriage is no buffer from hypergamy. If a woman feels like she hasn't done the best that she can do, and her Sexual Market Value (or SMV) has increased over her partner's significantly, then the marriage is at risk. Women can, and often do, leave the *perfectly* good men that they took those vows with, so they can "Go and explore their options."

This is often around the time when she'll get her breast augmentation, start hitting the gym and yoga studio, and why wouldn't she? She's had kids, so family law ensures she'll be well looked after financially. There's also plenty of

people telling her: “You go girl, you don’t need a man, and you can do better.”

Her cycles

When women ovulate, they dress more provocatively, wear more make-up, and expose more skin. It’s when they prefer men with signals of higher testosterone, more facial symmetry, a deeper voice, who’s taller, who has bigger muscles and, of course, a real alpha presence. Basically, the “Alpha Fucks” part of the hypergamy equation. But, when women are on their period, their preference for men shifts more towards comfort, provisioning, and safety. Essentially, the “Beta Bucks” part of hypergamy.

The problem is society, religion, government, school, media, culture, and family have programmed us as men to look for “the one” and then *only* be with her. But, when you observe the behavior of human’s sexual strategy, it’s more or less “monogomish.” We rarely pair bond to one partner for life.

Instead, we try to declare monogamy to one partner at a time, while acting clandestine in our adulterous adventures. But we usually have multiple sexual partners and relationships throughout our lives.

At some point, you’ll learn the hard way that women are not particularly good at being monogamous over the long term. Although, neither are men.

Women can, and do, move *very* quickly from partner to partner. In several cases, I’ve known women who’ve slept

with multiple partners in a 24-hr period as they felt that it advanced their sexual strategy. All without giving your feelings a second thought.

I'm personally aware of women doing this at least twice in my life.

Sex at Dawn

In Chris Ryan's pivotal 2011 book '*Sex at Dawn*', he examines human promiscuity throughout history on a deep level. All evolutionary evidence, and the terrible success record of marriage today, points to both men *and* women being incredibly poor at long term monogamous pair bonding.

Here are some shocking evolutionary truths about humans and our primate cousins we share 98% of our DNA with:

MALE AND FEMALE SIZE DIFFERENTIALS

Only non-monogamous primates universally have males that are 15-20% larger than females. In harem-based primates (like Gorillas), the size differential is even more pronounced, with the male being twice the size of the female. In monogamous based primates, like Gibbons, there's no size differential between males and females.

PENIS & TESTICULAR SIZE

Only non-monogamous and promiscuous primates have large testicles and a highly specialized penis to facilitate sperm competition in the reproductive tract of the female. Harem-based primates, like Gorillas, have tiny testicles the

size of kidney beans, and unspecialized penises smaller than your pinky finger. This is because the silverback owns the reproductive rights to his harem of females through sheer physical strength and size.

There is no need for the sperm to “fight it out” in the reproductive tract for the rights to fertilize the egg. The fighting is finished long before any other male can get anywhere near the reproductive tracts of his harem females.

FEMALE COPULATORY VOCALIZATION

Of the hundreds of primate species (including humans), female copulatory vocalization (aka loud moaning during sex) universally exists through non-monogamous primates only. In monogamous based primates, like the Gibbons for example, there is no moaning from the females during sex.

Remember that the next time you are having sex, because millions of years of evolution are making her moan as a calling to other males to mate with her. This reduces the chances of infanticide, since it is impossible for the males to know who the father is. It also ensures that the female obtains the highest quality sperm to compete for her single available egg in her reproductive tract.

SEX THAT DOESN'T LEAD TO PREGNANCY

On average, non-monogamous promiscuous primates have sex 750 times, or more, for every pregnancy. In humans, it's approximately 1,000 times for every pregnancy. Sex for the purpose of pleasure and socializing is very unusual in the animal world. Yet, it's quite common in non-monogamous

primates. For most animals they have sex, on average, 10-15 times for every pregnancy that occurs.

Humans rarely have sex just to reproduce. If you factor in all the ways humans have sex that can't possibly lead to pregnancy (for example, oral and anal), then over 99% of the sex humans have will never lead to a pregnancy. Sex for non-monogamous promiscuous primates is all about social interaction, pleasure, validation, or transactions.

Cuckoldry

Cuckoldry, or “cuck”, is a term that is often used online to be disparaging. It's where a man raises another man's child (his genetic investment). Note, that 43% of North American children are being raised by a single mother. So, it needs to be stated that most of these children are the result of a woman taking on the alpha seed for the best genetic material.

She then pivots her sexual strategy, either by choice, or involuntarily, to beta need. Therefore, finding a willing male to adopt her offspring, either knowingly or unknowingly.

There are millions of these women on dating sites today looking for beta cucks to take over the responsibility of raising another man's child. In fact, some are even brazen enough to go shopping for their cuckold, while pregnant with another man's seed.

There is another, less obvious, form of cuckoldry today, and it is beta men unknowingly experiencing paternity fraud

from raising children he thought were his. However, the kids are in fact the alpha male's seed.

Marriage is no buffer from paternity fraud. It's impossible to determine the actual statistics because fraud, by definition, requires deceit, something women are highly evolved at. However, it's estimated that anywhere from 10-30% of children that are born are not biologically the child of the man that is acting as the "father" to that child.

The female primary social order is so vested in burying paternity fraud by women, that feminist groups have called it "the demonization of women." In fact, paternity testing in some countries has been outlawed by the feminine imperative.

Men's proclivity to "Oneitis"

Of the hundreds of men that I've coached, one of the most common reasons for booking a call was to deal with a condition known as "Oneitis." We loosely define Oneitis as when a guy falls hard for a girl, to the point of obsessing over her.

It is often characterized by the guy making a statement such as: "She's the only one for me."

“ Oneitis is an unhealthy psychological dependency that is the direct result of the continuous socialization of the soulmate myth in pop culture.

- Rollo Tomassi

One shortcoming of the male belief system is that there is only one perfect woman for us. Women will argue that they feel oneitis too. But, it's *never* anywhere near close to the debilitating degree of 'Oneitis' that I've seen men suffer from.

It's a scarcity mindset and is something I've personally experienced in the past.

I've pined for at least two women that I believed were "the one." Men suffering from 'Oneitis' can't sleep properly or focus on tasks. They lose weight because of a lack of appetite and are distracted from chasing excellence. The sulking they do can last for weeks, months, or in some cases, for well over a year.

I've done it myself and I can honestly say it's one of the most pathetic things I've done and see men do.

There's a lot of theories floating around about why men suffer so badly from it. But, as there are over four billion women on the Earth, it's incredibly arrogant to think there is just *one* perfect woman for you.

But you can't tell that to the guy who's curled up in a ball crying himself to sleep, because he got dumped by his "Oneitis," and that he needs to let it go and move on. He genuinely *cannot* fathom a world without her.

So, how *does* a man reduce his tendency for 'Oneitis'? By creating abundance and options in his life. In short, he spins plates, and makes himself his own mental point of origin.

Enter plate theory

We've all seen the circus act of the man spinning multiple plates on several sticks. If not, it works like this: The circus performer randomly makes some spinning inputs to each plate. He then gives each plate some attention as they need it, enabling them to spin simultaneously, but independently.

A “plate” is any woman you are dating non-monogamously while also seeing other women.

When spinning plates, you are not obligated to be intimate with more than one woman, but if you are so inclined, you may. This dating strategy is especially ideal because:

- It creates plenty of contrast in female nature, and helps men looking for an LTR, or a mother for children, to assess the best possible candidate.
- It creates an abundance mindset and greatly reduces the chances of Oneitis from occurring.
- It helps men optimize their sexual strategy of unlimited access to unlimited women.
- You remain your own mental point of origin.
- You can quickly eliminate the women with a lower interest in you, because they won't tolerate being an option to a man that is dating other women.
- It helps quickly solidify women with a strong interest in you, because they will tolerate other women in your life.

A lot of men think that women won't tolerate being treated as a plate. But, we know by watching what women do, that they are happier to share a high value alpha than to be saddled with a faithful beta loser.

Men already in a monogamous relationship, or marriage, cannot spin plates. But for men, especially under the age of 30, this is *ideal* to help them more rapidly understand the sexual marketplace, and what drives arousal and desire between the sexes.

Men post-divorce, recently single or otherwise, should also consider this dating strategy. Because any immediate commitment to one woman after you've been through the divorce machine usually ends in a train wreck.

I've seen plenty of men not give themselves enough time to understand female nature, only to rush straight into another LTR or marriage without updating their belief system. These men often get into several marriages and then wonder why women keep taking them to the cleaners.

Taking some time to date casually and spin plates will help recalibrate your awareness on the sexual marketplace.

A man should *never* openly declare that he is spinning plates. Rather he should, through his actions, covertly convey that he is a man of status. That he has options by the choices he makes, and the availability in his schedule.

For example, if you normally see a plate on Wednesday nights, and she wants to add a Friday night (but you have plans with another date), then you simply respond with "I

have plans, but I'll see you next Wednesday." You don't need to explain what you are doing, why, or with whom.

In fact, what this will do is induce competition anxiety in her head. Which, if she's hot for you, will increase her desire for you as she'll see you as a man of higher value who has his time in demand by others.

One of the greatest aphrodisiacs for women is the unknown, and letting her marinate on rationalizing your whereabouts often increases desire in women.

Remember, women would rather share a high value alpha than be saddled with a faithful loser. **You are the prize**, so act like it.

Spin those plates

A man up to his late twenties should never limit his options to just one woman, or get into a LTR. Most men have *no* idea what women are about, or understand their nature, and are incapable of staying focused on building their purpose in life. Far too many men in their twenties are too quick to abandon their purpose in life. Instead, they want to fulfill that narrative of having a girlfriend, or worse a wife, for definition. Women should **never** define you.

If you do allow a woman to enter your frame, and be a part of your life, then you should only ever allow it if she compliments your life. She must not be the focus of it.

I've noticed, during coaching, that there are many men that had moved across the country in their twenties, changed

their majors, and knocked up their girlfriend. All because they thought it was a good idea. Only to get divorced at thirty-five, get forced through the family law meat grinder, and end up with no access to his kids. It's at this point where they book a coaching call with me to guide them out the other end with the least amount of damage.

So slow things down and stop acting like women are a scarce resource (because they're not).

High value men that are competent, resourceful, and know how to make *serious* money are a scarce resource. Beautiful women aren't.

The ROI on chasing excellence is **far** greater than chasing women, more so when you know nothing about female nature.

Spinning plates will lead to some Friends With Benefits (or FWB). An FWB arrangement is loosely defined as a non-monogamous friendship with sexual intimacy, but with no dates, sleep overs, or introduction to family or friends.

Ideally, you want a FWB arrangement to last over a prolonged period of time, and you can have more than one FWB. However, they rarely last long and if they do, a FWB can come in, and out, of your life like the seasons. Therefore, don't be surprised if an old fling contacts you well into the future.

There are women you will automatically categorize as a FWB when you identify red flags from that chapter of this book. **DO NOT** allow a woman with red flags to be more than a

FWB, it is incumbent on you to assess and filter through women that display red flags.

Don't give a FWB priority in your schedule - she is only an option when your time permits.

A monogamous Long Term Relationship (LTR)

You should only consider a conventional relationship with a woman *after* you have spun enough plates, and the cream has risen to the top. She must also exhibit none of the warning signs described in the '20 Red Flags' chapter. Or, if she does, then she is pro-actively working on fixing that area of her life herself.

Women don't like to admit it, but they are natural plate spinners because of their hypergamous nature.

They are always asking themselves, "Is this the best I can do?". If you are dating a woman, then assume that she is seeing other men, until she initiates the "Where do we stand?" talk and wants to open dialogue about a deeper commitment. Women, not men, should start the "talk" about a long-term relationship.

Never, **ever**, initiate a "Where do we stand?" talk. It's weak and signals scarcity in your life. Let her bring it up. Remember, women are the gatekeepers to sex, while men are the gatekeepers to relationships. Which means women get to decide when you will fuck her; you get to decide if you want to become more serious with a woman (and whether or not it's on an exclusive basis).

You should only consider an LTR after about six months of plate spinning. If she demands an LTR after only a month of dating, move on, and let her go.

Remember, men are the gatekeepers to relationships, and women are the gatekeepers to sex. So act like it. You, as the man, gets to decide when a woman gets your exclusive sexual, and non-sexual, attention.

If you do this and get into a monogamous LTR, you end up abandoning your male sexual strategy of unlimited access to unlimited women.

You should also note that if you choose to abandon your sexual strategy, she must also abandon her sexual strategy of open hypergamy.

That means: No male friends, no more seeking attention on social media with provocative pictures and posts. Oh, and no overnight girl's trips to places where she can proclaim to her friends "What happens in Vegas stays in Vegas."

Some other conditions that should exist for an LTR to work well for you:

- You should be one to two points higher than her on the SMV scale, so she feels that she's optimizing her hypergamy. Remember, a woman can only be content if she feels like her man is of higher value than her.
- Your frame must be the dominant frame of the relationship, meaning that she is a complement to your life, not the focus. A woman that's fully in your frame will defer to you in major choices.

- She must understand, through your covert actions and words, that everyone is replaceable - including her. There is no “one”. You, on the other hand, must understand that you never own her, *it's just your turn*. She may be in your life for a year, or she may be with you until “death do you part.”
- On a scale of one to 10, with 10 being the highest level of interest, her interest level in you **must** be an obvious nine (but preferably a 10). Women with an interest level lower than that will be an exceptional amount of work, and the chances of her love wandering will be higher.
- You must have done some recon work on her family and friends and decided if they are people you enjoy being around. This is because she will *always*, regardless of her feelings for you, choose them over the relationship. So, make sure her family and friends are good people and that you like being around them. Most importantly, if you are planning on marriage and kids, then look at her mother. She will eventually look like, and behave like, her.
- Also, do **not** live with an LTR, as doing so causes her competition anxiety to relax, making it tougher for you to manage the frame of the relationship. The *only* exception to this is if you are planning on getting married and having children, and you need to vet her as a wife by living together first.

A long-term relationship with a woman brings considerably more work to a man’s life when it comes to managing the

frame of the relationship. However, an excellent woman can add substantial value to your life.

At the time of writing this book, I'm in a non-cohabiting LTR. My woman is almost 10 years my junior. She's tidy, non-materialistic, loves to cook healthy meals, is positive, very sexual, fun loving, and has a great relationship with her father and my child. If she didn't add any value to my life, I wouldn't have bothered to enter into an LTR with her.

A woman **must** always be a complement to *my* life, not the focus. This should be *every* man's non-negotiable.

I'll warn you now that, if you ignore my advice and live with your LTR, you will expose yourself and your wealth, to the risks of family law.

In most Western countries, the state deems you to be in a common law marriage after one to two years. And, even if you aren't legally married, she may have rights to half of your assets. Therefore, it's *essential* that you consult with a family lawyer in your state or province *before* you live with any woman. If you have more assets than her, then see if you can protect them with a cohabitation agreement.

The tattoo test

If you really want to test my theories on the "soulmate myth" that men subscribe to, and how willing she is to enter your frame in an LTR, then the tattoo test is brilliant. It really forces her to show, via her actions, that she is serious about an LTR with you over the long haul.

If she starts “the talk”, it usually encompasses some version of the soundbites: “I’ll love you forever, and ever” or, “We were made for one another.”

Tell her, “Good, prove it. Tattoo my name on your body.”

It doesn’t need to be visible, or huge. Most of the time, she will make the tattoo discrete, so it’s hidden in her bikini or bra line. Don’t force it on her or march her into a tattoo studio. Instead, just drop the hint, but be serious about it, and then see what she does.

This is not a two-way street either. You are not tattooing her name on you. She is the one that is asking for your exclusive sexual, and non-sexual, attention. A woman who’s in your frame that sees you as a high value alpha, and that has a genuine, burning desire for you shouldn’t protest and would love to have your name on her body.

A woman that doesn’t see you as her best option, and her “forever” man, will make up excuses.

Regardless of what they are, whatever excuses she makes, she is telling you she doesn’t really believe that you are her best option. You’re not satisfying her hypergamous needs, and she doesn’t see you two together forever.

Remember, whenever there is a conflict between her actions, and words, always, **always** believe what she does. As the old saying goes: “Actions speak louder than words”.

Open LTR

The LTR can either be open or closed. So, you can either be exclusive with your LTR, or keep the relationship open where you continue to have one or two other women that you see periodically. But she should understand that you are doing this. Covertly spinning plates while in an LTR always catches up to you somewhere down the line. You'll end up dealing with a lot of unnecessary drama in your life.

There is nothing wrong with an open LTR, aside from societal conditioning telling you to be monogamous. In fact, it is the natural state of our non-monogamous nature.

She can also be in an open LTR with you, but now you are leaning into Polyamory (Poly), and a more beta frame of a relationship.

The highest value alpha males will be in an open LTR on their end, but she can't do the same. More feminized men will gawk at this statement and protest. But, throughout history, truly high value alpha men had a harem of women that were sexually exclusive with him.

Polyamory

The “Poly Lifestyle” is being pushed by the media, and even some academics seem to like to push the narrative since they are in a poly marriage. If you are unfamiliar with the “Poly Lifestyle”, you let your wife or girlfriend have sex with whoever they want, while you also do what you want. It's basically an open LTR for both of you.

This dating strategy is becoming the standard for many beta males because they would rather share a woman versus not having one at all.

On the surface, it may look appealing. However, men and women *aren't* equal. More often than not, it's two beta males fighting over one girl. All while she goes out on the weekends fucking the alphas for fun (leaving the poly men to raise the kid(s)).

Conclusion

When it comes to the types of relationships you can have with women, I **strongly** encourage you to always make yourself your own mental point of origin. This means you do what is right - for **YOU**. Men should always set the frame of the relationship at the beginning, because it's the exit that women most often control.

If monogamy is your path, then make sure you chose it and it hasn't been forced on you by your woman or society. Natural monogamy *can* work, but only if it is organic, and you both truly want to be sexually exclusive. I would strongly encourage all men to use the tattoo test if you are going to start an LTR. This test will assure you that her actions truly do align with her words.

Chris Ryan once said: "Monogamy is like going vegan. You can choose a plant-based diet, but that doesn't mean bacon will stop smelling good."

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- Women may be the gatekeeper of who they have sex with, but **you** are the gatekeeper of who you have a relationship with. And, as a man of increasingly high value, that's the *strongest*, and most valuable, bargaining chip of the two.
- When a woman has a genuine desire for you, and appreciates your value, then she will have no problems sharing you with other women as you are satisfying her hypergamous nature.
- Track the menstrual cycle of any potential LTRs. Watch how differently they behave when they are ovulating, versus when they are menstruating.
- I've said it before, and I'll say it again, **always** believe a woman's actions over her words. Her actions will tell you what her *true* priority is and tells you the truth about how she truly feels.
- As noted by my good friend Dr. Shaun T. Smith in his book 'The Tactical Guide to Women', spend as much time as possible vetting and setting healthy boundaries with a woman before committing. It's from month 18-onwards when a woman's *true* personality comes through.

OWN A MOTORCYCLE

It is my firm belief that, as a rite of passage, every man should own a motorcycle at one point in their life. As Jon Bon Jovi famously sang, “I’m a cowboy. On a steel horse, I ride. I’m wanted. Dead or alive.”

Whether you’re a hero or an outlaw (or, like the best among us, a bit of both), the motorcycle is the modern-day equivalent of the stallion. It is a rite of passage for every man to own one in his life.

During a bitterly cold and rainy spring day in early April, I got my motorcycle license at 18 on a single cylinder 125cc bike. Despite the miserable weather, it was one of the best days of my life. I remember being so cold and wet, we’d put our hands on the scalding hot air-cooled fins of the motor to keep our fingers from getting frostbite.

However, getting my motorcycle license was one of the best things I did as a teen. And, as a rite of passage, as I was transitioned from a teen to a man.

The most important skill you learn from riding a motorcycle is situational awareness. You learn to keep your head on a swivel, and you are *constantly* scanning around you for potential threats. Just about everything else on the road is bigger than you - and can kill you. Being aware of your surroundings *at all times* is a skill that men need to apply to all areas of their life.

Let me explain. The first office I rented for one of my early businesses was on the top floor of an old century home in suburban Toronto. On the main floor there was a psychotherapist. She was a lumpy, old, fat, stuck up woman. Who would come up, stomp around, and complain once a week we were “making too much noise” for her practice located below us.

My office window looked out into the parking lot. And she always had a steady flow of patients coming in to treat whatever disaster was going on in their lives. I did, however, notice two glaringly obvious things:

1. Most of her patients were thirty-five-plus year-old women, showing up in expensive SUVs with permanent scowls on their faces. They had a look of emptiness, anger, and resentment as they marched into her office.
2. When men came, there wasn’t a single arrival on a motorcycle. Not one.

With hundreds of visits per month, and over our three-year lease, I saw close to a thousand of her patient arrivals.

However, I never once saw a *single* guy ride in on a motorcycle. Let that sink in for a moment.

Masculine therapy

A motorcycle is many things to a man: It's often a friend, a statement, an adrenaline rush, a toy, a place to fuck and, of course, transportation. Most importantly, there were many times as a young man that my bike was my therapist.

Shit day at work? Ride the bike.

Girlfriend fucks my best friend for redemption because she resented a threesome we had with her girlfriend a year ago? Ride the bike.

Didn't get the promotion I wanted? Ride the bike.

Roommates driving me nuts? Ride the bike.

You fire it up, go out, and reconcile whatever your issues are on the road.

Motorcycles require balance, strength, and dexterity. Cars don't. When you go around corners, you lean into the turn, and hang off the bike while your knee hangs mere millimeters from the asphalt. The toll you pay if you make a mistake is often much higher than that of a car. After all, a car is effectively surrounded by a metal cage - and bikes aren't.

Even with all of that, I bet if you hopped into a time machine and went back to a time when horseback was the main form of transport and asked a young man what he thought of his

horse, he'd likely describe a fond attachment to it in a similar manner.

Men need masculine pursuits. Throughout history, sitting on a living, breathing, beast capable of *incredible* feats of power was something that men have wanted to tame. While a motorcycle isn't alive, most sport bikes have F1-like power to weight ratios, and it has an internal combustion engine, so it does breathe. After all, an engine is nothing more than an air pump.

Shared interests

Brotherhood is another perk of owning a motorcycle. The only form of transportation I've always got a head nod, or a hand wave from others, was when on a bike. Regardless of make, model, or style. *Everyone* is friendly to you when you're on a bike. There were plenty of places peppered throughout the city where motorcyclists would meet up for a coffee, have a chat, and then go for a rip together into the night.

I had been riding bikes for 12-years when a friend, I would ride with often, suddenly announced that his brother had died in a motorcycle accident when a car hit him on the highway. I noticed that others got hurt too, mostly because of careless drivers not paying close enough attention to motorcycles.

After four different sport bikes, two Katana 600s, a GSX-R750, and a ZX-7R, I decided that no matter how careful I

was, my number would come up at some point, and so I took a sabbatical when I hit thirty.

I'd be lying however if I said that I didn't miss my bike, leaving me with a hole in my heart that needed to be filled.

So, I moved into fast convertibles, a 2003 BMW M3 in Imola Red, lowered on BBS LMs which, at face value, may seem like a 180-degree pivot. But, it was close enough to satisfy the open-air feeling while moving at speed.

It not only had the added safety of airbags, and a metal cage around me, but I could drive with like I was outside without a helmet, whilst listening to music. I can still remember the first day I got the car, I dropped the top, cranked up Mötley Crüe's '*Kickstart My Heart*', and left for a rip.

In closing

Motorcycles are incredible value to a young man. For less than \$10,000 you can buy something that will out-accelerate, and often brake better than, any exotic car costing 20x as much. While *still* getting incredible fuel economy because of its small engine size.

The only things a car can do better than a bike are: Carry more cornering speeds (since there are larger contact patches on the tires), transport more people, and protect you better in an accident.

Women also *love* a man on a bike. I was constantly giving women rides on the back of my bike. Often, while at parties, my friend's girlfriends would harass me to take them for a

spin right in front of their boyfriends. By the very nature of how you ride motorcycles, it forces intimacy.

Bikes attracted women like a moth to a flame. These women would press their breasts into my back, while grabbing tightly to my lower waist, and sometimes grabbed my manhood when they got comfortable on the bike.

Trust me when I say, women *crave* adventure, variety, and fun. Dollar-for-dollar, *nothing* gets a woman more excited than to grab onto you tightly as you accelerate your bike into a wheelie. Remember, women in their teens or twenties are in their party years, they are looking for excitement. They *aren't* looking for men driving big SUVs.

Therefore, I strongly believe that every young man should own a bike at some point in their youth. Or, at the very least, a fast convertible.

However, I'm not done with motorcycles yet, I've merely just taken a break. Mid-engine exotic cars are my bikes - for now.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- Bikes offer you an unrivaled sense of freedom and escape from the trappings of everyday life.
- When you take a woman on a bike with you, *every single* receptor in her body is in hyper-drive as the addictive, and heady, cocktail of adrenaline and

dopamine surges through her body. And she'll be associating *that* feeling - with you.

- If bikes *really* aren't your thing, then make sure you emulate the experience with a fast convertible that screams FUN! from every inch of it.

MASTER VIOLENCE

Throughout our lives we've been lied to and have been told things like "Nothing good ever comes from violence," or that "Violence is the last refuge of the incompetent." These statements aren't particularly truthful, nor do they embrace the value of the capacity for violence.

Violence isn't always the answer. But it *is* a legitimate response in certain situations. Men have an obligation for the capacity to be violent and, if exercised, should be decisive and lethal.

Most men today can't be violent, or even understand why it's a skill that men should master. The narrative we've had crammed down our throats is "Be kind, be humble, and that love is the answer."

But, the truth is, is that society, and *especially* women, don't want meek and incompetent men. What women *want* is a **dangerous man that is civilized**.

Women's darkest fantasies were discovered when Google engineers studied the use of search engines and

pornography. The top five searches were stories about Vampires, Werewolves, Billionaires, Surgeons, and Pirates. Films often show such characters walking quietly, while carrying a big stick.

Therefore, when search engine choices trump her social narrative, believe her choices.

A powerful defense is the best offense

I believe that you need to learn how to defend yourself, and your loved ones, should the need ever arise. It's an essential part of becoming the best version of yourself as a man.

Learn combat. There are plenty of facilities within 10-minutes of most urban areas that will teach different forms of Mixed Martial Arts (so MMA). These forms include: Boxing, Krav Maga, Brazilian Ju Jitsu, Muay Tai, Kickboxing, Karate, and much more.

Memberships are around \$150 per month, and most classes are 90-minutes in total. Half of the time is spent on cardio drills designed to simulate improved endurance in combat. The other half of the time being spent on core skills.

Joining a Dojo offers four major benefits:

1. The cardio drills are some of the most intense workouts you can do, and great for your body and conditioning.
2. You learn how to use violence in a focused and productive manner.

3. Your network is your net worth and people that train in combat, for the most part, are not losers, so your social circle will also improve.
4. You'll have your ass repeatedly handed to you by more experienced members. *This is a good thing.* It'll teach you how to pull yourself up and how to get your head back in the game. Both metaphorically *and* physically.

My dojo offers plenty of MMA classes, but my favorites are boxing for the skills needed to be an effective striker, and Krav Maga for its effectiveness in self-defense. Krav is known for its lethality and efficiency of the responses to attacks, minimizing the damage to yourself while keeping you on your feet.

Krav Maga is so lethal, it's not used in MMA fights because many of the responses to attacks are illegal. It's also the gold standard in training for close combat for many Special Forces units around the world. If it's good enough for the Special Forces, then it's good enough for me.

Also, one of Krav's greatest assets is that it heavily encourages 'situational awareness'. The ability to 'read a room' is a life-skill that can get you out of trouble before it even begins. Or, at the very least, give you sufficient warning that an attack is coming your way, giving you ample time to dodge or prepare a counter-maneuver.

If I am ever jumped by someone with a gun or a knife, or by multiple attackers, I want the ability to respond with a highly trained, and proportionate, level of violence.

You may never need to use violence. But, if the need arises, it's a tool that you *definitely* want in your tool chest.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- It's incumbent on you to know how to protect yourself effectively. Doubly so if you have a family.
- You need to try several forms of MMAs to see which one resonates with you best.
- You **must** stick with whatever self-defense MMA that works for you. Be sure to put in the hours and watch as your skills and overall confidence grows.

WHEN MEN GO THEIR OWN WAY (MGTOW)

There is a growing movement of men choosing to check out from the sexual marketplace completely. This movement of Men Going Their Own Way is better known by its acronym “MGTOW.”

While I may agree with many of the grievances MGTOWs have with women and the world we live in, I don’t agree with their response.

Some MGTOWs limit their female interactions strictly to casual dating (even if she is someone who genuinely compliments them and adds real value to their life).

In other cases, men cannot compete in the sexual marketplace and seem to be involuntarily “Sent their own way.” Such men become what’s known as an involuntary celibate, or an “Incel.”

The problem as they see it

Truthfully, I’ve lost track of the list of grievances MGTOWs have raised about women. However, here’s a collection of the

soundbites I've heard most often:

- “Hostile divorce laws towards men that strip men of their wealth and access to their children, while simultaneously enriching the mother.”
- “Women have become overly entitled and bratty.”
- “If a guy like Brad Pitt can be taken to the cleaners in divorce law, what chance do I have?”
- “Women are constantly seeking validation and attention on social media.”
- “Women are Machiavellian opportunists with the power of the state behind them, while simultaneously being incompetent children who are run by their emotions.”
- “If marriage was a business contract, you’d tell the other guy to go fuck himself.”
- “Women make bad voting choices, repeal the 19th, and take women’s voting rights away.”
- “Feminism is a supremacy and hatred movement against men.”
- “Women can file a false domestic violence claim with no proof.”
- “Women get to be promiscuous with impunity today.”
- “Fear of paternity fraud and cuckoldry.”
- “Fear of Sexually Transmitted Diseases (or STDs).”
- “Gynocentric laws in most Western countries favor women.”
- “Fear of a lack of any loyalty to ‘a good man’.”
- “False ‘#metoo’ allegations.”

These are all part of the struggle of men today, and these grievances have legitimacy.

The dangers of “Red Pill Rage”

“Red Pill Rage” (aka: The anger phase), is one of the initial, and most dangerous, phases of “unplugging” there is as a man. Now, anger is a natural, and very legitimate, response to something that you believe to be an injustice. Therefore, it’s perfectly acceptable to feel angry about something. In fact, anger can be a *great* motivational tool to get you to refocus your energy in the right places.

However, if you become stuck in this phase of being angry all the time, you start to run the real risk of becoming overly bitter at both women and the world around you. This bitterness will continue to eat away at you as you let your brain go down to those deep, dark, places in your mind that you didn’t even realize existed.

Look, the world as you know it isn’t based on the idealism of “fairness”. It *never* has been, and it *never* will be. Society continues to feed you your “participation trophy,” pat you on the back for coming in last, and will tell you that if you’re just “nice” to everyone (especially to women), that it will “all work out in the end.”

Granted, most MGTOWs understand this reality. However, they prefer to play the victim card and keep themselves to themselves. And that’s their choice. But, it’s also a quitter’s mindset. And, by definition, quitters never win.

If you're coming out of a shitty divorce, or similar, and you need to hit the reset button on your life. Then sure. By all means, take the time to recenter yourself and truly learn how to become your own mental point of origin. But, this should only ever be a very temporary step before you use your newfound knowledge of the world, and the sexual marketplace, to elevate your life to new untold heights of excellence and happiness.

Surrender to female nature

Do you get annoyed at the sea for being wet? Do you get irritated at the sun for being warm? Then why do you get so angry at women for doing what's been in their biological programming since homo sapiens began roaming the Earth?

Like it or not, females developed hypergamy as a means of survival. If a woman picked the wrong man to pair and breed with, then it would spell certain doom for both her and her child. So, making sure that she was getting the "best that she could get," literally meant the difference between life and death for her and her kids.

And because hypergamy has been hard-wired into them, *nothing* has changed as the years have gone on.

Learn to accept it and then navigate it

When you finally get to the "acceptance" stage of how the world and the sexual marketplace works, you'll be in the

perfect position to “flip the script” and use this knowledge to your advantage as you navigate your way through life.

It’s almost like having a superpower where you can “see the code in the matrix” in real-time.

The “Black Pill” solution

The standard MGTOW “Black Pill” solution is: Just go your own way and avoid women completely. Or, at the very least, if you *do* allow women into your life, *never* live with a woman in a way where the state would automatically, and legally, view such cohabitation as a marriage.

There also seems to be an underlying belief by some MGTOWs that, if they convince enough men to “Go MGTOW,” women will be magically forced to fall back in line and start to love all men for who they are.

Throughout history, women have always dismissed men they personally deemed weak or incompetent.

Women simply do not get involved with men they see as quitters. Women don’t care about your struggles, they wait at the finish line and fuck the winners.

A popular comment I’ve read in my videos is “DDD” or “Dudes, Dogs, and Dolls.” Dudes, or men, are used for friendship, dogs for companionship (and affection), while sex dolls are to be used for sexual release.

This sounds an *awful* lot like the toxic narrative feminists sell women. That: “All they need is their girlfriends, cats,

and vibrators.”

Sex dolls

The “doll” solution amongst some MGTOW is to have sex with an inanimate doll. Do a quick Google search for “sex doll” and you’ll see what I mean.

I found a post on Twitter from user @Masumi with a pinned tweet of a sex doll looking like a “perfect 10.” It reads:

“

You know she doesn't love you, so stop pretending, dump her and buy a doll today. Always loyal, always there for you, 0% chance of a false rape allegation, STDs, divorce rape, pregnancy, she will never ask you for more. Credit options are available.

As a marketer myself, I’m impressed by the copy; I’m not convinced, however, that it’s the best solution.

If you Google “MGTOW” there are over 3.5 million results. There are *hundreds* of YouTube channels dedicated to men talking about why women are not worth your time. Yet, many sex doll companies sponsor these channels and often end their arguments about how you should “Go MGTOW and get a doll”.

Yes, feminism has destroyed the nuclear family. Women are more masculine these days, less agreeable, more interested in seeking attention and validation on social media, and in pursuing careers. Divorce rape is a *real* problem if you get married. A woman can allege rape with *no* proof (ruining a

man's career), and this is possible because the world is built around a female primary social order.

The risks women pose to men is fairly high. But, the MGTOW narrative sounds like: "You are a victim; down with the gynocracy."

Which sounds an *awful* lot like the toxic feminist narrative used by women which seems to be: "You are a victim; down with the patriarchy."

The biggest distinction between MGTOWs and feminists is that MGTOWs say you should quit a game which is rigged against you. Whereas, feminists screech loudly and organize protests to march on policy makers just to bend even more laws in their favor.

Both toxic feminists and MGTOWs appear to have the same end in mind - the isolation and segregation of the sexes.

Look, life has *always* been rigged against men. This isn't some golden era of the cards being stacked up against men which we've never seen before.

Did the 300 Spartans say it was a rigged game when the Persians invaded and quit? Did the British give up when Hitler began a massive air assault on the British Isles during the battle of Britain?

Last time I checked, nobody won *anything* by quitting.

You win by figuring out what you are up against, adapting, and then mastering the game. At the end of the day, every

struggle a man must face in life comes with some risk attached.

Be careful of anyone selling you fear, or a victim mindset. A victim mindset is a loser's mindset.

The real MGTOWs

In my opinion, the real MGTOWs, are the men that quietly go about their life, without constantly pointing and sputtering at women, society, or at anyone else who lives their life differently to them. This was what I originally understood this movement to be about.

Rise of the Incel

There is a sub-group of men that call themselves MGTOW. Truthfully though, it's not by choice. Rather, they feel that they can't attract women and haven't done well with them in the past, so they are now an involuntarily celibate man.

The soundbites used by Incels online, usually sound something like this:

“ Why don't girls like me? I mean, I'm literally a great guy, just because I'm not attractive, or don't have money doesn't mean I'm not a great catch.

If you are short and skinny, be short with muscles and rich. If you are ugly, be ugly, muscular, and rich. Napoleon was only 5 foot 5 inches tall. And Mick Jagger is as ugly as they

come. Yet, neither of these men had much trouble with women, or success in life, because they worked their asses off.

The saddest thing of all, is that at least 27 mass murders in North America alone have been attributed to men that have openly identified themselves as an Incel.

These men never learned how to handle rejection, learn from their experiences, or accept that they had some work to do on themselves. It was *always* the fault of others or society for their results in life. Sound familiar?

Self-professed Incel Alek Minassian, posted the following to Facebook shortly before he rented a van and went on a killing spree in Toronto:

“Private (recruit) Minassian Infantry 00010, wishing to speak to Sergeant 4chan please C23249161. The Incel rebellion has already begun! We will overthrow all of the Chads and Stacy’s! All hail the supreme gentleman Elliot Rodger.

Minassian drove his rented van over the curb onto sidewalks, killing 10 people and injured 16 more. His reference to “‘Chads’ and ‘Stacy’s” is relevant because the frustration was that, as Incels, they can’t compete with stronger, more alpha, males (Chads), or the women (Stacy’s) that pine for the Chads.

You’d think men “Going their own way,” would just unplug from society and live their own peaceful life. But, the Incel

uprising has shown us that there is a dangerous subculture to MGTOW.

Better safe than sorry

MGTOWs will say that feminism has destroyed the social contract between men and women. It's hard to disagree with that observation.

But, if you search for channels on YouTube about MGTOW, you'll find pages upon pages of videos with narratives backing these claims up with, very well thought out, analytical breakdowns taking it further into a passive aggressive hate movement.

Ultimately, persuadable, and frustrated men are the target of these recruitment videos.

I happened across a video once by a MGTOW explaining that avoiding marriage isn't enough anymore, that feminism had infiltrated civil law to the point that vindictive women could file domestic violence restraining orders in the US against a man they weren't living with. And, even though they weren't married, she could divorce rape him, all without proof, without his knowledge, and without a shred of evidence.

All women need to do is claim that you are violent, and the law will immediately side with them. Scary stuff, right?

By the end of such well-presented lectures, they'll have many men, incorrectly, believing that all women are demons.

While I don't disagree with the threat, it's the significance of the threat that I question.

Let's dig into the math used...

MGTOWs are great with stats. The content creator in this recruitment video provided numbers that suggested there are 900,000 domestic violence restraining orders filed every year in the USA. Asking how would you, as a man, like to be removed from your house, have your car taken away, and half your stuff gone based on allegations, not evidence?

Now, what if women filed those 900,000 restraining orders? While this is unlikely to be the case, for the sake of argument, let's assume all of them were.

There are now 325,000,000 people in the US. Of which men account for half.

That leaves us with 162,500,000 men and we know that about 40,000,000 of those men are under the age of 20.

So, we can assume that there are 122,500,000 men that might have been exposed to this potential threat with a woman. Remember, in this recruitment video, the man isn't living with anyone else and is only dating women on an exclusive basis.

That's .7% of the male population. Statistically insignificant. Let's put that into perspective.

According to data from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the individual American driver's odds of dying as a result of an injury sustained in an automobile crash (which

includes pedestrians, bicyclists, and motorcyclists involved in car crashes), comes out to around 1 in 77.

That works out to 1.29%. The vast majority of the population can go through life without dying in a car accident. However, MGTOWs are telling men the threat is so great, that all men should now completely avoid half the population or, “just get a doll.”

Conclusion

Personally, I don’t care what you do with your time, or where you stick your dick. A prostitute, doll, your hand, or a hot woman. I’m not the Penis Police. What I do have a problem with though, is other men in need of help being misled by people so they can sell snake oil to them. Weaponizing them to hate how society is, before selling them silicone dolls to have sex with for \$3,000.

Granted, men have the burden of performance; women just need to show up and look pretty. But, MGTOWs appear to want men to stop playing a game that, truthfully, no man can ever fully check out of.

Unless you live in a cabin in the woods, with no connection to society, you will always be a cog in the wheels of the female primary social order.

Even MGTOWs that scratch their itch by using a sex doll are part of the feminine imperative. They likely work with women and probably also buy products and services

facilitated by women. Hell, even their sex doll that “Looks like a perfect 10,” keeps them tied to the feminine social.

The only proper solution is to:

- Do the work in life, so you become high value,
- Make yourself your own mental point of origin,
- Learn how to handle rejection like an adult,
- Always be the one responsible for the birth control,
- Learn how to spot dangerous personalities,
- And, finally, understand what drives attraction, Game, and how to limit your risk in a hostile sexual marketplace.

If you allow a woman into your life, then it's *imperative* that she is a complement to that life, not the focus. It's incumbent on you to stay on your purpose in life. Constantly chasing excellence with a genuine belief of outcome independence.

Look, disconnecting from women *might* be an interesting place to visit for a short while *if* you get divorced or have had your heart broken. But it's hardly a solution to living in a world where half of the population are women.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- Temporarily stepping out of the sexual marketplace is only valuable if you've just gotten out of a shitty

divorce or relationship. Taking some time out to chase excellence and to “Level up in multiple areas in your life,” will *definitely* pay off for you. Just make sure you’re receptive to the increase in higher-quality women that make themselves known to you now you’re a man of higher value.

- Remember, 70% of women want the time and attention of the top 20% of men. Chasing excellence will easily put you in the top 20%. What you do with your options when you get there... Well, that’s entirely up to you. Have fun.
- “Black Pill” MGTOW thinking is very nihilistic and unhealthy for your mental and emotional state. Men and women can certainly complement each other in life. Not *all* women are men-hating third-wave feminists. But, you *do* need to know how to “Find the diamonds in the rough.”
- Finally, hypergamy simply “is”. Accept it, embrace it, flip the script, and start using hypergamy to your advantage.

WHY SMART MEN AVOID MARRIAGE

Let me start by stating I'm not opposed to marriage or having a family. We are just a slightly higher form of primate, and make no mistake - as men, we're designed to scatter and pass down our seed. It is in our biological imperative.

I am, however, against allowing the state to decide what happens to your wealth, your freedom, and your access to your children if a marriage doesn't work out.

The divorce statistics vary slightly around the world. But, on a balance of probabilities, about half of all marriages end in divorce within seven years. Remember, this statistic ignores the *other* half of the men who are either living in an unhappy, or sexless, marriage.

In a study by Acevedo and Aron on both romantic love and long-term relationships¹, they discovered that only 13% of their participants, in an average of an 8.39 year relationship, felt "romantic love". And only 2% felt "obsession" for each other.

Meaning the chances of living in a state of bliss for eternity aren't particularly good and, in a marriage, it's the male and not the female who is often left in ruins. With him picking up the pieces after the couple goes through the relentless grind of the divorce machine, before being spit out the other side.

Throughout history, men have always been the disposable sex, and women the protected sex. So, it would make sense that everything in family law today favors the woman, while being hostile towards men.

It's time to drop some cold hard truth bombs about the reality of marriage in today's Western world:

“Marriage is a high reward/low risk choice for women, but a low reward/high risk choice for men.

- Richard Cooper

I should clarify in this chapter that, when I say, "Western family law," I am including all First World, modern countries indoctrinated by today's version of feminism.

Throughout most of history, men were at the head of the household. They were legally responsible for the actions of their spouse and children and could keep order in their home by more or less whatever means they saw fit. If a man's home was his castle, then everyone within was his vassals.

No one knows exactly when and where the tables began to turn. But things started changing in the late 1800s when the state passed new laws. For example, in 1895 London passed a bylaw prohibiting wife beating past 9pm. However, this

wasn't designed to protect women. It was primarily a noise pollution issue in the densely populated city.

In Stephanie Coontz book, '*A History of Marriage*', she concluded that, for tens of thousands of years, people married not for love, but for the acquisition of in-laws, assets, and influence. Church records, personal diaries, and public court records showed love wasn't even part of the equation.

Men had 100% authority, and 100% responsibility to the family unit. Family and their in-laws took care of medical care, law enforcement, the elderly, schooling, and so on. Men were the head of the household, and there was little to no state involvement in how a man ran his family.

This was a time when masculine virtues were both respected - and valued. But, in the last one-hundred-and-fifty-years, a toxic version of progressive feminism has changed it all. Toxic feminism has reversed the roles so both women and the state are now at the head of the household.

Today's men no longer have authority in their house, yet they still have 100% of the responsibility. Almost all authority has been taken away from men and has been given to both the government and women, while men maintain *all* the financial responsibility.

What is even more troubling is that, with the recent #metoo era, something as fundamental as establishing the facts first is no longer required. Instead, we are to believe all women when they accuse men by default, no questions asked.

Family law

When I was getting divorced in Canada, I thought I knew what the process would look like. But, truthfully, I had *no* idea what I was up against. I approached divorce with a naive eye, viewing it as a simple process with a fair exit for everyone. *Every expectation I had was way off.*

In fact, I was **dead wrong.**

Within the first hour I talked to my family lawyer, he had dropped so many truth bombs on me that I walked away from the call with a feeling of complete hopelessness. I actually believed I'd be lucky to see my daughter ever again. That I'd spend the rest of my life bending at the knee to the state and my ex-wife. While I simply watched as my wealth left me, and I became alienated from my child.

I'll never forget my lawyer's words "If you have the penis, and go to court, you are going to lose - and badly." I was shocked.

Hadn't feminism leveled the playing field for women?

Aren't women *equal* to men?

If so, then why am I being told that, because I was born with a penis, I would lose *by default* in family court?

They say the original intent of progressive changes to family law was to deal with deadbeat dads who didn't look after their kids, right? Well it did, and then it kept going on, becoming a supremacist movement against men which hasn't ever stopped.

In today's world, women are the supreme rulers in both the household and in family law. Western governments designed every part of legislation to preserve and improve the mother's interests, while simultaneously destroying the fathers. In Western family law, for one gender (the female) to advance its cause, it comes at the expense of the other gender (the male).

If you are considering marriage, then the best thing you can do is buy one hour of a local family lawyers time. Sit down, listen well, and learn how the law handles men in your state or province. Because there's a 50% or more chance your marriage will end in divorce.

Remember, this divorce statistic doesn't take into account the people who remain married because they are too unattractive, broke, and lack the option to leave. Or, simply because they are cowards.

It is nearly impossible to calculate the number of unhappy marriages that persist.

Domestic violence charges - A woman's trump card

Domestic violence charges, alleged by the mother against the father, is a trump card which has been built into Western family law. Men can be forcibly removed from their own homes by the police for false or exaggerated claims of domestic violence. It also includes being alienated from their children, while the courts enforce unreasonable payments to the mother from the father. In turn, restraining you from

entering the house you paid for, or accessing the children you fathered.

I had a coaching call once with a man who was cheated on by his wife several times. So, he decided he'd had enough, and that it was time to divorce her. During the acrimonious separation period, he became upset with her one day and pointed a finger at her face and angrily proclaimed, "You are a fucking liar."

The finger-pointing was enough for her to call the police, make a claim of domestic violence, and have the authorities involved. There was no violence, no physical contact, nothing. Just an angry finger being pointed while saying five words.

It's absolutely *vital* that you always keep in mind the following phrase: The woman you marry is **never** the same woman you divorce.

Remember, Western family law is written in such a way that it assumes women are the weaker sex. Men are the privileged sex and are also the abusive sex by default.

How women behave during divorce

Men need to understand that through a combination of family law and female nature, women are motivated to behave incredibly poorly to the father of their children during the divorce.

There are *significant* female-centric financial rewards that have been written into family law encouraging women to be

the sole custodial parent of the children. By becoming the parent that has primary custody of the children, money, and all decision-making capacity, goes to the parent awarded custody. Which, eight times out of 10, is the woman.

Let's be clear about something. Women are opportunistic *by nature*, it's hard-wired into them, and it's part of the reason why sapiens are such a successful species. Without opportunism, her children were less likely to survive. You can't blame women for this; opportunism is an evolved survival mechanism.

Women needed this skill to find the best provisioning mate, and to optimize their hypergamy. If you give someone, that's naturally opportunistic, incentive to benefit at another's expense then, guess what, they will do it.

It's only in recent history that female opportunism has had the full backing of the state behind it as family law. Interestingly, prior to the last 150-years or so, if there was a divorce, then the father would most often get custody of the children and retain all family assets - including what she brought to the table.

Once a parent has custodial rights, they can make unilateral decisions without the other parents' consent. Even if that decision is not agreed upon by both parents.

Depending on where the law governs your divorce, that could include choices about school, extra-curricular programs, religion, medical procedures, and even where the custodial parent chooses to live.

The financial rewards are not exactly small either. There are three major financial drains from the parent that isn't the custodial parent:

ALIMONY

Also known as maintenance, this is the first level of responsibility that a man must pay to his ex-wife if he was the breadwinner in the home, and she didn't work, or earns significantly less. For some men, that was because she was a stay-at-home mom. For others, she just never worked after the marriage, and there were no kids.

Either way, you are responsible to upkeep her standard of living after the marriage ends. The monthly cost, and duration of the payments, depends on where you live, and how long you were married. In some places, like California for example, if you are married for 10-years or more, then its lifelong alimony.

CHILD SUPPORT

Child support is paid to the custodial parent to cover the cost of raising the children. Contrary to popular belief, the payment amount is not based on what the children actually need to survive. Rather, it's based on state issued tables. I had a friend who had calculated that, during his marriage, the monthly cost to look after his child for things like food and clothing were around \$500 per month.

The state issued child support tables, however, compelled him to make a legally enforceable payment of \$4,367 every

month. Child support, for the most part, goes to the mother, not the kids.

MATRIMONIAL ASSETS

Matrimonial assets are divided after the knot is untied, usually 50/50 in most cases. Although, there are places like Australia where *more than half* of the assets can be awarded to the mother. So, every asset you acquired, before, or after, your nuptials goes into a pile, and you split it down the middle, regardless of who paid for it.

In some cases, a prenuptial agreement may protect assets that were acquired before the wedding. But, if circumstances changed during the time you were married, or a considerable length of time has passed since the prenup was signed, then a judge will most likely throw out your prenup and it won't be worth the paper it's written on.

Since men rarely stay home to raise children, and women are hypergamous in their mate selection strategies, then you can begin to see how unlikely it is for the mother to pay the toll of family law. For the vast majority of cases, it's the men that are left in financial ruin. With little to no access to his children, watching helplessly as his money flow to his ex-wife, while she alienates him from his kids.

Hypergamy doesn't care if she vows to love and be with you "In richer or poorer, in sickness or in health... 'til death do us part."

Divorce, and not career or entrepreneurship is, statistically, still the number one-way women acquire their wealth today.

For a clear example of this, as I write this chapter in a Starbucks, a woman at the next table said to her girlfriend, complaining about her husband. She said: “I can divorce him, take half his shit, the kids, the house, and not need to put up with his dumb ass anymore.”

That, gentlemen, is the world that this toxic version of feminism has created.

How the state encourages women to become single mothers

In the spring of 2019, angry single mother journalists from around the world attacked me for warning men on Twitter about the dangers of getting into relationships with single mothers. They manufactured about a dozen hit pieces, all from a three-minute clip of a 50-minute speech that I gave an audience of men.

You can watch my video response by searching “The truth sounds like hate, to single moms that hate the truth” on my channel for more perspective.

An overwhelming show of support came from men, and some women, praising me for shining a light on this unflattering subject. But, a golden nugget appeared from commenter “Kim Brown” in the comment section of the video, she said:

“ The thing that infuriates me is my hubby makes about \$50,000 per year, I make about half that. But when you are talking to people about taking responsibility for themselves, you do realize that if

I were to leave my hubby and become a single mother with government benefits, I'd have way more money. What we pay in taxes as a couple, opposed to what the government would give me if I was on my own isn't even close. So, when women leave there [sic] husbands they are improving their situation until that changes nothing else will. It's sickening when society rewards those who make bad choices!

She went on to expand on that with the following:

“ My friend who is a single mother, does the same job and makes the same money as me. We sat down and compared our finances and, with all the subsidies and tax breaks she receives from the government, she has about \$1,000 a month more than my family in disposable income. To me, that's not just rewarding single mothers, it is actively punishing middle to low income women for staying with the father of their children.

If there is a more damning piece of evidence that the state is encouraging women to leave their marriage and become a single mother... Well, I'm not sure where to find it.

Arguments for marriage

Some men might argue that their girlfriend is a “God fearing religious woman.” Or that his beautiful fiancée comes from a

home with conservative values where both of her parents remained happily married for twenty-years.

That isn't enough, for two simple reasons:

1. A woman *always* reserves the right to change her mind at any time.
2. Even conservative, God loving religious women will leverage the corrupt family legal system to benefit from family law.

I had a coaching consultation once where a man spent a good part of the call framing what was to become the “evolution” of “her” during his marriage. She went from a church going religious woman, from an unbroken home, to someone he didn’t even recognize during the divorce process.

It shocked him that she had performed a 180-degree pivot during the divorce. She filed a false domestic violence charge to get him out of the house. Allowing her to control the sale of the home, obtain primary custodial caregiving, and earn maximum benefits from the child support tables.

I simply cannot endorse marriage in its current state today.

But Rich, don’t men have an obligation to find a “good girl” and settle down?

No, you don’t. However, men do have an obligation to become the best possible version of themselves. If a woman enters your frame, is a complement to your life (but not the focus), and you want children, then - and only then - should

you consider having children (after a proper two-year vetting period).

But you must always remember... Women *always* reserve the right to change her mind.

All you need to do is browse the divorce discussion forums for 10-minutes to see loads of women who think that, just because the child came out of their body, that they are the sole *owner* of that child. Therefore, they are entitled to be the primary caregiver by default.

Better yet, spend an afternoon sitting in on divorce hearings at your local family court, and see with your own eyes how fathers get treated.

Societal conditioning, media, feminism, and the law all reinforce that men are inept clowns, incapable of being a useful parent to a child. Fathers are, however, useful as tax cattle, so the state can milk and then transfer those assets to a mother.

Society celebrates single mothers so much that, during Father's Day, you will see memes being passed around that are praising single mothers for doing the job of both parents. However, single fathers receive no praise on Mother's Day.

For more on this topic of the feminization of society, search for a video on my channel titled 'Why are today's men so feminized?'.

Throughout history, men were valued. However, with the state at the head of the household, we have slowly been reduced to that of the disposable parent and are treated like

tax cattle. Fathers are no longer the head of the household, the state is. The state ensures that women are well looked after. Even if it comes at the father's expense.

It's absolutely essential to understand: "The woman you marry is *not* the same woman you divorce." Mark my words - a woman's *true* colors will come to light in a divorce.

For one side to advance its agenda it will come at the cost of the other. Win-win scenarios in divorce are rare because of female hypergamy and only sometimes happens if a woman marries a man of lower value than her (which is even rarer).

Understand that women are not natural risk takers, men are. Now, wrap your head around the fact that women initiate about 80% of all divorces, and often plan them months, or sometimes years, in advance. They do this because they are confident that they will do well - because the state makes sure of it.

Remember that taking unnecessary risks is not inherent in female nature because women play not to lose. It's men that play to win.

Also, men, if you were caught fucking around on her, always understand that hell hath no fury like a woman scorned. Female nature is not on your side. Yet, it expects you to forgive her, look past her indiscretions and, in many cases, it expects you to take ownership for the reason why she fucked around on you.

Divorce and suicide

It was a warm spring day as I drove along the freeway. I was six months into my separation, and still living in the matrimonial home trying to hash out the details of my divorce. I was driving into the office in my truck, feeling utterly depressed about how things were going for me.

This was when overwhelming thoughts of suicide entered my mind. I felt powerless, and the notion of taking off my seatbelt, flooring the truck, and quickly slamming into a concrete pillar entered my mind. I figured it would be over fast.

It was *easily* the lowest point in my life. My life was out of control, and I had no idea if I was going to survive financially, or even see my daughter grow up.

Throughout history, men have been conditioned to be tough and to “man up.” We fight in horrible wars and do incredibly dangerous jobs that women aren’t typically willing to do, like work in mines, or on oil rigs. But when it comes to the emotional and economic toll of divorce, simply put, men can’t cope very well. Divorced men are also more than twice as likely to commit suicide as married men, and divorced men are almost 10 times more likely to kill themselves than divorced women.

But, this is something that the mainstream media won’t shine a spotlight on. Remember, men are disposable; women are protected.

Children and divorce

Even in today's modern world where women are working, and have income equality, mothers are *still* awarded a "primary caregiver" custody order about 80% of the time. That usually means that the father sees his child(ren) every other weekend and a Wednesday night - for dinner only.

My family lawyer said this is par for the course, and it's often called the "Screw over daddy deal."

Women often argue, "Children need their mothers," and family law still sides with that notion. Which, of course, is utter nonsense. Children need access to *both* of their parents if they are going to be an effective member of society as an adult.

Approximately 43% of children in North America are raised by the mother. Here's some more statistics that men should know when relying on the mother to raise their children:

Fatherless boys and girls are:

- Twice as likely to drop out of high school, twice as likely to end up in jail, and are four times more likely to need help for emotional or behavioral problems.²
- 85% of youths in prisons grew up in a fatherless home.³
- 85% of children who exhibit behavioral disorders come from fatherless homes.⁴
- 71% of pregnant teenagers lack a father.⁵
- 63% of youth suicides are from fatherless homes (five times the average).⁶

Mothers, by an overwhelming margin, are doing most of child rearing post-divorce. And, despite how single mothers are praised in the media for being strong and independent, they're often doing a terrible job at it.

How marriage changes men

A lot of men I've coached through divorce entered the marriage with some beliefs they came to learn weren't true. And most of those men were downright shocked by what happened to them.

Men's testosterone levels decrease

It's been proven that when a man lives with a woman, and has children, his testosterone levels drop. Some would argue that this process is just andropause, and natural. But unmarried men of the same age usually have higher testosterone levels than their married counterparts.

PATERNITY FRAUD

While it's difficult to get reliable statistics on this (because of gynocentric laws in some Western countries that lean towards no paternity testing), it's estimated that somewhere between 10 and 30% of married men are raising children that aren't biologically theirs.

This is a big issue because - one of the bigger selling points of marriage to most men - is the ability to pass down his seed. Marriage is, in theory anyway, supposed to *protect* paternity.

BETATIZATION BY A THOUSAND CONCESSIONS

Women will constantly test a man's frame. The vast majority of men will go through the slow process of agreeing to his wife's endless requests and demands. It often starts with "Honey, put your dark clothes in the dark hamper, and your white clothes in the light hamper." Before progressing on to "Let's go vegan together," and may eventually escalate to "Let's have a poly relationship." Which inevitably ends in a speech about how she "Loves you, but isn't in love with you."

Throughout your marriage, the question isn't if you *will* be betatized. It's more of *by how much* and will it be to the point that you become so unattractive to her; she leaves. It's important to note that **women don't do this intentionally**, it's just a natural part of female nature alongside the societal conditioning of the sexes.

REDUCED SEX DRIVE

Men often marry under the impression their wife will reward them with the reliable, consistent, and wild sex that they had before they got married. Yet, one of the biggest search queries from married men is: "How do I get my wife to fuck me?"

Sexless marriages are extremely common today. Introducing kids into the relationship *will* dramatically change the dynamic between both of you, her sexual availability, and her enthusiasm for you. Another, often overlooked reason for this, is that her competition anxiety drops considerably

when she lives with you. She also subconsciously knows family law has her back.

She knows where you are at all times and where you live. Therefore, the competition anxiety that she had when you were both living under separate roofs would keep the hamster between her ears caffeinated. With her constantly wondering what you might be up to.

For more information on competition anxiety search “Entrepreneurs in cars what is competition anxiety.”

How to minimize the risks of marriage

I've had men propose all kinds of ways to eliminate the risk of divorce rape, from importing foreign brides, to surrogacy. Look, there is no way to remove *all* risk. But, from my research, I've discovered a few things that you can do to minimize it:

LIVE WHERE SHARED CUSTODY IS THE DEFAULT ARRANGEMENT IN DIVORCE

There are a few places around the world where, upon divorce, *both* parents share custody 50/50 by default. Unless one parent can prove that the other parent is a risk to the children's safety. So, if one parent is a heroin addict, with a history of violence, or criminal activity, then there may be an argument for a sole custody hearing. However, be sure to ask a family lawyer in your country about this.

HAVE BOTH A PRENUPTIAL AND A POSTNUPTIAL AGREEMENT

A prenuptial isn't enough, and many people will tell you they really aren't worth the paper they're written on during a divorce. This is especially true if 10 years have passed since you got married and she stayed home to raise three kids while you worked. They just have less value over time.

However, there *are* cases where judges have enforced a prenuptial, because a postnuptial was signed *after* the marriage, thereby confirming the original terms. You must remember, any nuptial agreement loses value over time. As circumstances change again, be sure to ask a family lawyer in your country about the best way to handle this. **You** must protect **your** assets.

DON'T MARRY DOWN (Too FAR)

Men typically marry down. It's not uncommon for the VP of Accounting, who's making \$360,000 a year, to marry a hairdresser that's earning just above the poverty line. When you marry down, she doesn't return to her hairdresser lifestyle upon divorce. It is *you* who'll be expected to maintain the lifestyle she became accustomed to in the marriage.

Family law doesn't allow women to return to the poverty line, *especially* if there are children in the equation. Therefore, if you choose to marry in a Western country, then find someone that brings similar assets to the table. Or ideally someone who earns as much, or more, than you (although even that brings its own unique set of problems in a divorce).

DON'T MARRY A FEMINIST

Feminism teaches women they don't need men, that we men are disposable. How men have oppressed women, why men are the privileged sex, and that women are better than men. You simply cannot expect a woman to stick around when they subscribe to a belief system that indoctrinates women into simultaneously being a victim and a supremacist, all while hating the opposite sex.

SEEK THE BRIGHT TRIAD TRAITS

They are:

1. Clarity,
2. Stability,
3. Maturity.

My friend Dr. Shawn T. Smith, author of the book '*The Tactical Guide to Women*,' would consider a woman who displayed these traits as being a high-quality woman. Read this book, then read it again, and seek out these traits.

AVOID THE DARK TRIAD TRAITS

They are:

1. Narcissism,
2. Machiavellianism,
3. Psychopathy.

Narcissists are easy to spot today; she is the woman that is constantly seeking attention on social media throughout the day.

Machiavellianism is when a person is so focused on their own interests that they will manipulate, deceive, and exploit others to achieve their goals.

Psychopathy is traditionally a personality disorder that is characterized by persistent antisocial behavior, impaired empathy and remorse, and bold, dis-inhibited, and egotistical traits. It is sometimes considered synonymous with sociopathy.

Although it's not specified in the dark triad, I would add Borderline Personality Disorder (or BPD) to this list of traits to avoid.

WAIT TWO YEARS BEFORE YOU MARRY

In his book, clinical psychologist Dr. Shawn T. Smith pointed out that women can put on an act, *especially* if they are post-wall and in a rush to get married due to “baby rabies.”

Therefore, be sure to “Hire slow and fire fast.” Do your due diligence and take your time vetting a woman. One of the *biggest* complaints that men, who marry too quickly have, is they learn that they were merely dating a *representative* of the woman. And that the nice representative leaves after she says, “I do.” If, by the two-year mark, it’s not a “Hell Yeah!” then it’s definitely a “Fuck no!”

LIVE TOGETHER

You’ll only see someone’s true colors when you live with them. Live with them for at least six months to see if you still like them on the seventh month. Also, don’t listen to people that tell you that marriages have a higher chance of

failure if you live together before you marry. This is true in North America by a tiny percentage point. But, in Europe, most marriages fair better where a couple lives together first.

SEE HOW SHE HANDLES STRESS

Flight got cancelled? Her baggage was lost? Sandra at the office is a royal bitch every day? See how she handles stressful situations, and if she can make the best of them. Stress happens in marriage, so dealing with stress maturely is a skill needed for a successful marriage. Avoid a woman that can't handle stress, or one that makes mountains out of molehills.

SHE HAS A GOOD RELATIONSHIP WITH HER FATHER

I'm assuming you are a masculine man, or one seeking that level of excellence. How can you expect a woman to admire, and look up to you, if she didn't have a positive masculine male role model in her life growing up? See my chapter '20 Red Flags to Avoid' in this book, as I cover "Daddy Issues" extensively there.

SHE TAKES YOUR NAME

We live in a world today where some women, usually feminists, won't take on your last name. Sometimes, I've heard of weak beta men taking on their wife's last name. In an environment where the burden of all risks are on the man's shoulders, your wife should take on *your* last name. And, no, hyphenation *isn't* acceptable either.

It shows that she is in it for the long haul and is willingly entering your frame. There are some cases where women with a professional designation, for example, a Lawyer or a Doctor, can't change their surnames without a substantial amount of hassle. But, as far as the marriage license, passport, driver's license, etc., then her last name should change to yours.

DON'T COMPLICATE THE WEDDING

Do not get involved in the long, drawn out process that is wedding planning. Photographers, videographers, band, DJ, limo, venue, meal plan, invitations, and so on. If you let yourself get carried away in the planning, then you will overspend on something that already has a 50% chance of failure.

Therefore, keep it simple, have a justice of the peace perform it or, even better, make it fun and have a destination wedding. Statistics also show that more expensive weddings have a higher probability of divorce. A woman that is in your frame and admires you will not insist on a giant party that's all about her.

Conclusion

Marriage is utterly unnecessary in today's day and age. It is **all risk for men, and all reward for women**. If you want to have children, then my advice is to leave any Western country, state, or province, that is hostile towards men. Instead, live somewhere where there's ideally no alimony, division of assets, and child support to worry about.

There are still feminine women that frown upon feminism and value masculinity. Find one of these women and live where the law isn't going to destroy you.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- The woman you marry, **will not** be the same woman that you divorce. A woman's *true* character *will* be revealed during a divorce. So, don't be surprised if she makes up loads of crazy stories to get family law, and potentially even the police, to do her dirty work for her.
- If you have kids with her, then be ready for her to weaponize them during the divorce. She'll do absolutely *everything* in her power to turn them against you and alienate them from you. Rest assured, that this *will* test your personal resolve and frame to the absolute limit. Being alienated from their kids is one of the biggest reasons why so many men either commit suicide, or at the very least, contemplate it.
- If you've been betatized by a thousand concessions, and you begin to take back your life and frame, then you can be *absolutely certain* that your wife *will* fight you tooth and nail to prevent this. Expect the shit tests to escalate to never-before-seen epic-levels as she pokes and prods at this "new you," to see if you *truly are* taking your balls back out of her handbag. Or if you're just faking it.

- Before getting married, go see a divorce lawyer together and **do not** be guilt-tripped or shamed by your LTR for doing this (that, in and of itself, is a major red flag). Invest the money needed for a one-hour consultation with a local divorce lawyer to find out how a divorce would pan out where you live. Just think, if a skydiving instructor informed you that, not only did your parachute only have a 50% chance, or less, of opening. But, that you would also immediately lose legal access to everything that you had worked hard for the minute you jumped (including access to your kids), would you *still* want to jump out of that plane?
-

1 *Review of General Psychology* © 2009 American Psychological Association 2009, Vol. 13, No. 1, 59–65

2 US D.H.S. news release, March 26, 1999

3 *Fulton County Georgia jail populations, Texas Department of Corrections, 1992*

4 *Centers for Disease Control*

5 *U.S. Department of Health and Human Services press release, Friday, March 26, 1999*

6 *US Dept. Of Health/Census*

IN CONCLUSION...

So, there you have it. Several of society's most comforting lies crushed by a series of cold, hard, truths. Allowing your eyes to open up to these truths is the basis of the ultimate playbook to understanding how to get better results in life and with women. Ultimately, transforming you into that unplugged Alpha you want to be.

This book is just a no-bullshit introduction to the harsh realities that men around the world face today. There's much more to unpack, which I may release in a future book. The red flag chapter for example, could contain significantly more red flags. But, for the sake of simplicity, I had to distill that chapter down to the basics.

Throughout this book, I've referenced several other books that I strongly suggest you read. Consider those books next if you'd like to dive even deeper into the rabbit hole of becoming more alpha and masculine.

When you take the Red Pill, it's like being parched and then taking your first drink from a firehose. You're thirsty for the

information, but the sheer volume of information comes at you with a shocking intensity and speed.

With that in mind, I'd suggest reading this book a few times over. *Especially* if my cold, hard, truth bombs make that Beta inside you feel deeply uncomfortable.

If you are new to my work, I invite you to browse my YouTube channel called 'entrepreneurs in cars.' At the time of writing this book, there I've uploaded almost 1,000 free videos for you to watch and learn from. They're the perfect compliment to the information in this book.

Similarly, if you are looking to connect with like-minded men from around the world that are actively working on becoming a top 1% man, then consider joining my private men's community. I offer my members many exclusive benefits, including discounted 1-on-1 coaching with me. Continue your journey by watching the introduction video here: <https://entrepreneursincars.com/community/>

Finally, it's **essential** to remember: The point of unplugging from the comforting lies you've been told by society *isn't* to hate women, or to even leave a nasty taste in your mouth. It's about accepting, and then fully embracing, the realities of life as a strong, driven, masculine man. Which includes the requirement of being truly at peace with women and not hating them for what they can never be to you.

Peace,

Rich Cooper

GLOSSARY

Oneitis

An unhealthy attachment to one woman where a man desperately pines for her love, attention, and intimacy. The woman in question often couldn't care less about his existence. Men who get “oneitis” often subscribe to the notion of her being his “one true love”, only to see her move on to another man. All while he suffers and sulks in misery hoping she will, one day, return.

Spinning plates

This is a term used to describe simultaneously dating multiple women in a non-monogamous fashion (aka: casual dating), and is a tactic that's often used by men who are disinterested in a conventional monogamous relationship. Or, by someone who knows that he's prone to developing “oneitis,” or prefers vetting women for an LTR/wife by allowing contrast and comparison. Which allows “the cream” (his best “plate”) to rise to the top.

It's important to note that you *never* overtly state you are spinning plates. You just do it, and let your actions signal, by the lack of your availability, that you are spinning plates. Women are, unknowingly by nature, master plate spinners, and often date multiple men at once. Unless, of course, they feel that they've found their best hypergamous option.

SMV (Sexual Marketplace Value)

An individual's own value in the sexual marketplace. For example, your physique, style, Game, frame, confidence levels, etc. all have an individually perceived "value" to women. The more you chase excellence, the higher your natural SMV becomes as you optimize every area of your life.

The Wall

There comes a time in a woman's life when she can no longer really compete on the sexual marketplace with younger, more virile women, and they have therefore "hit the wall." Women are beauty objects to men and her SMP peak is around 23-years old. After that, her looks are on a steady decline.

While you'll never hear a woman admitting to the existence of "the wall" in public. If you ever hear divorced women talk between each other, they'll often refer to giving their "best years" and often ask their friends "who wants a 30-year-old with two kids in tow?" Like it, or not, they *know* that their prime asset to a high-value man, their looks, is on a very steady decline.

A woman can will hit the wall much sooner with destructive lifestyle habits like: smoking, drinking, drugs, or by becoming a single mother. Conversely, a woman can also delay hitting the wall by a few years, by mastering self-care. Either way, a hot 23-year-old will *always* be more attractive to high-value men than a relatively hot 43-year-old (as the latter now has a lower SMV).

Men also hit the wall, but a man's decline doesn't begin until he's in his mid-late thirties (or *much* later if he's a high-value man). For more, search: "What is (SMV) Sexual Marketplace Value and The Wall" on my YouTube channel.

Soft Next

A soft next is where you cut all contact with a girl for a few days if she displays any terrible behavior (maybe longer, depending on how often you see her, or how bad the behavior was in your eyes). This means you do not respond to her texts, calls, or attempts to visit you. Think of it as short-term ghosting.

The soft next works because it anchors negative consequences/emotions to bad behavior. For women, attention is the coin of the realm, and removing your attention powerfully resets your frame as the dominate one in the relationship.

However, it's *critical* that, at the end of the soft next, you continue the relationship normally and act as if nothing had ever happened. If she took the hint that you're more than

prepared to hold your boundaries firm, she'll be more than happy to meet up with you again.

Frame

Regardless of the relationship (or even with life in general), **frame is everything**. Frame is the rock-solid, congruent, outward representation of your core beliefs and your own personal boundaries. The term frame is most often used when talking about managing the frame of a relationship. In every relationship, regardless of the type, one person always “enters the others frame.”

What this means is that the person who's defining the frame of the relationship, is the one who is in control (as the other person willingly “submits” to the stronger frame).

When a man is in control of the frame of the relationship, then that means she is a complement to his life, not the focus. She rarely finds the need to shit test him, create drama, or challenge his choices or authority in the relationship. Women today subconsciously, but desperately, want to enter the frame of a strong, masculine alpha male. A frame that's been built upon the solid foundations of competency, success, and purpose.

Shit Test

Also more accurately known as a competency test. Women often shit test men to check if he's their best option. The competency test can be in the form of a question, or a

behavior she exhibits to test the frame of the relationship, where she's watching closely how he responds (is he cool, calm, and collected? Or does he let his emotions get the better of him?).

An example of a shit test might be: "Hold my purse for me while I go into this clothes store." But, what she's *really* testing you for, is to find out if you are a good little compliant beta male that will do as he's told, and stand there holding her purse like an obedient little puppy.

A simple "No. I don't carry female accessories" with a slight sneer would let her know that you're not falling for her test. Hypergamy means that women will *always* competency test men (whether that's at a conscious or subconscious level), but the frequency and severity of these tests will reduce close to zero when she trusts your leadership and competency skills and is willingly 100% in your frame.

Hypergamy

Women's primary sexual strategy for millions of years has been to form a sexual relationship with a superior man on the socioeconomic scale. It's often said that hypergamy doesn't seek its own level. Rather, hypergamy always seeks *better* than itself.

This is an evolved survival technique for her and her children to always find the best male she can secure for provisioning and protection. When a woman leaves a man, for another that she deems to be of higher value, it's because of hypergamy.

Many men are furious at women for being hypergamous. However, there's no value in being angry at a woman for wanting the best that she, rightly or wrongly, believes that she can get. Therefore, understand hypergamy and make it work *for* you. To dive deeper into hypergamy, search for: “what is hypergamy” on my YouTube channel.

AREA 51

AN UNCENSORED
HISTORY OF AMERICA'S
TOP SECRET
MILITARY BASE

ANNIE JACOBSEN

AREA 51

An Uncensored History of America's Top Secret Military Base

ANNIE JACOBSEN



Little, Brown and Company
New York Boston London

AREA 51

AN UNCENSORED

HISTORY OF AMERICA'S

TOP SECRET

MILITARY BASE

ANNIE JACOBSEN

[Begin Reading](#)

[Table of Contents](#)

[Photo Inserts](#)

[Copyright Page](#)

For Kevin

Time will bring to light whatever is hidden; it will cover up and conceal what is now shining in splendor.

—Horace

PROLOGUE

The Secret City

This book is a work of nonfiction. The stories I tell in this narrative are real. None of the people are invented. Of the seventy-four individuals interviewed for this book with rare firsthand knowledge of the secret base, thirty-two of them lived and worked at Area 51.

Area 51 is the nation's most secret domestic military facility. It is located in the high desert of southern Nevada, seventy-five miles north of Las Vegas. Its facilities have been constructed over the past sixty years around a flat, dry lake bed called Groom Lake. The U.S. government has never admitted it exists.

Key to understanding Area 51 is knowing that it sits inside the largest government-controlled land parcel in the United States, the [Nevada Test and Training Range](#). Encompassing 4,687 square miles, this area is just a little smaller than the state of Connecticut—three times the size of Rhode Island, and more than twice as big as Delaware. Set inside this enormous expanse is a smaller parcel of land, 1,350 square miles, called the [Nevada Test Site](#), the only facility like it in the continental United States. Beginning in 1951, on the orders of President Harry Truman, [105 nuclear weapons](#) were exploded aboveground at the site and another 828 were exploded underground in tunnel chambers and deep, vertical shafts. The last nuclear weapons test on American soil occurred at the Nevada Test Site on September 23, 1992. The facility contains the largest amount of [weapons-grade plutonium and uranium](#) in the United States not secured inside a nuclear laboratory.

Area 51 sits just outside the Nevada Test Site, approximately five miles to the northeast of the northernmost corner, which places it inside the Nevada Test and Training Range. Because everything that goes on at Area 51, and most of what goes on at the Nevada Test and Training Range, is classified when it is happening, this is a book about secrets. Two early projects at Groom Lake have been declassified by the Central Intelligence Agency: the U-2 spy plane, declassified in 1998, and the A-12 Oxcart spy plane, declassified in 2007. And yet in thousands of pages of declassified memos and reports, the name Area 51 is always redacted, or blacked out. There are only [two known exceptions](#), most likely mistakes.

This is a book about government projects and operations that have been hidden for decades, some for good reasons, others for arguably terrible ones, and one that should never have happened at all. These operations took place in the name of national security

and they all involved cutting-edge science. The last published words of Robert Oppenheimer, father of the atomic bomb, were "Science is not everything. But science is very beautiful." After reading this book, readers can decide what they think about what Oppenheimer said.

This is a book about black operations, government projects that are secret from Congress and secret from the people who make up the United States. To understand how black projects began, and how they continue to function today, one must start with the creation of the atomic bomb. The men who ran the Manhattan Project wrote the rules about black operations. The atomic bomb was the mother of all black projects and it is the parent from which all black operations have sprung.

Building the bomb was the single most expensive engineering project in the history of the United States. It began in 1942, and by the time the bomb was tested, inside the White Sands Proving Ground in the New Mexico high desert on July 16, 1945, the [bomb's price tag](#), adjusted for inflation, was \$28,000,000,000. The degree of secrecy maintained while building the bomb is almost inconceivable. When the world learned that America had dropped an atomic weapon on Hiroshima, no one was more surprised than the U.S. Congress, none of whose members had had any idea it was being developed. Vice President Harry Truman had been equally stunned to learn about the bomb when he became president of the United States, on April 12, 1945. Truman had been the chairman of the Senate Special Committee to Investigate the National Defense Program when he was vice president, meaning he was in charge of watching how money was spent during the war, yet he'd had no idea about the atomic bomb until he became president and the information [was relayed to him by two men](#): Vannevar Bush, the president's science adviser, and Henry L. Stimson, the nation's secretary of war. Bush was in charge of the Manhattan Project, and Stimson was in charge of the war.

The Manhattan Project employed two hundred thousand people. It had eighty offices and dozens of production plants spread out all over the country, including a sixty-thousand-acre facility in rural Tennessee that pulled more power off the nation's electrical grid than New York City did on any given night. And [no one knew the Manhattan Project was there](#). That is how powerful a black operation can be.

After the war ended, Congress—the legislators who had been so easily kept in the dark for two and a half years—was given stewardship of the bomb. It was now up to Congress to decide [who would control its "unimaginable destructive power."](#) With the passing of the Atomic Energy Act of 1946, a terrifying and unprecedented new system of secret-keeping emerged. The presidential system was governed by presidential executive orders regarding national security information. But the newly created Atomic Energy Commission, formerly known as the Manhattan Project, was now in charge of regulating the classification of all nuclear weapons information in a system that was totally separate from the president's system. In other words, for the first time in American history, a federal agency run by civilians, the Atomic Energy Commission, would maintain a body of secrets classified based on factors other than presidential executive orders. It is from the Atomic Energy Act of 1946 that [the concept "born classified" came to be](#), and it was the Atomic Energy Commission that would oversee the building of [seventy thousand nuclear bombs](#).

in sixty-five different sizes and styles. [Atomic Energy was the first entity to control Area 51](#)—a fact previously undisclosed—and it did so with terrifying and unprecedented power. One simply cannot consider Area 51's uncensored history without addressing this cold, hard, and ultimately devastating truth.

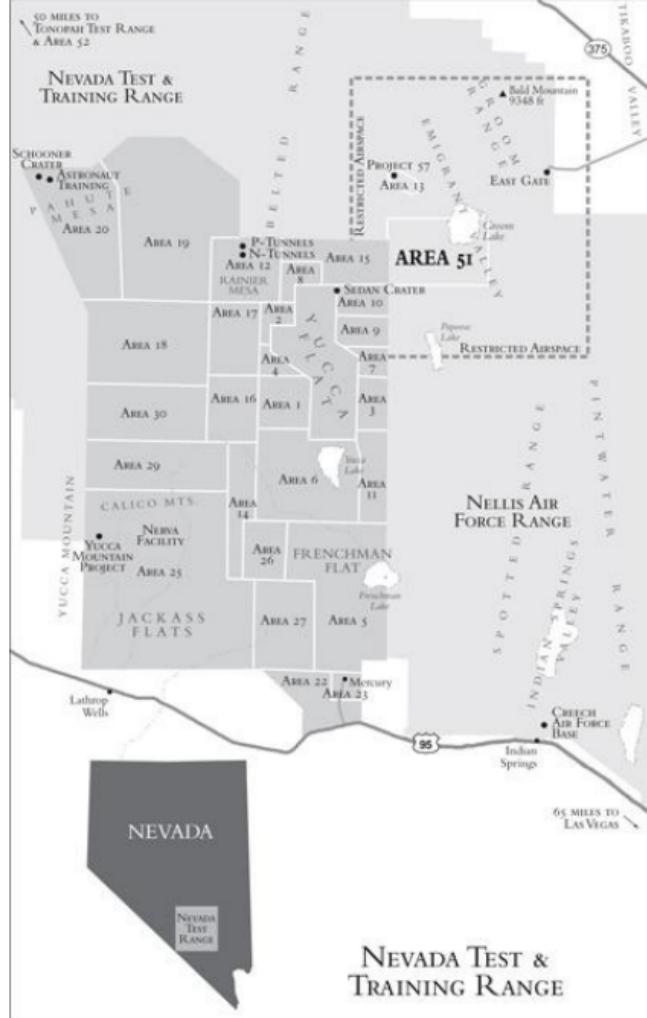
The Atomic Energy Commission's Restricted Data classification was an even more terrifying anomaly, something that could originate outside the government through the “thinking and research of private parties.” In other words, the Atomic Energy Commission could hire a private company to conduct research for the commission knowing that the company's thinking and research would be born classified and that even the president of the United States would not necessarily have a need-to-know about it. In 1994, for instance, [when President Clinton](#) created by executive order the Advisory Committee on Human Radiation Experiments to look into secrets kept by the Atomic Energy Commission, certain records involving certain programs inside and around Area 51 were kept from the president on the grounds that [he did not have a need-to-know](#). Two of these programs, still classified, are revealed publicly for the first time in this book.

One of the Atomic Energy Commission's former classifications officers, Donald Woodbridge, characterized the term *born classified* as something that [“give\[s\] the professional classificationist unanswerable authority.”](#) Area 51 lives on as an example. Of the Atomic Energy Commission's many facilities across the nation—it is now called the Department of Energy—the single [largest facility is, and always has been, the Nevada Test Site](#). Other parts of the Nevada Test and Training Range would be controlled by the Department of Defense. But there were gray areas, like Area 51—craggy mountain ranges and flat, dry lake beds sitting just outside the official borders of the Nevada Test Site and [not controlled by the Department of Defense](#). These areas are where the most secret projects were set up. No one had a need-to-know about them.

And for decades, until this book was published, no one would.

50 MILES TO
TONOPAH TEST RANGE
& AREA 52

NEVADA TEST & TRAINING RANGE



The Riddle of Area 51

Area 51 is a riddle. Very few people comprehend what goes on there, and millions want to know. To many, Area 51 represents the Shangri-la of advanced espionage and war fighting systems. To others it is the underworld of aliens and captured UFOs. The truth is that America's most famous secret federal facility was set up in order to advance military science and technology faster and further than any other foreign power's in the world. Why it is hidden from the world in southern Nevada's high desert within a ring of mountain ranges is the nexus of the riddle of Area 51.

To enter Area 51 requires a top secret security clearance and an invitation from the uppermost echelons of U.S. military or intelligence-agency elite. The secrecy oath that is taken by every individual who visits the base before arriving there is both sacred and legally binding. For those without an invitation, to get even the slimmest glimpse of Area 51 requires extraordinary commitment, including a ten-hour block of time, a four-wheel-drive vehicle, and a pair of good hiking boots. Through binoculars, from the top of a mountain called Tikaboo Peak, located twenty-six miles east of Area 51, one can, on occasion, see a flicker of activity. Daylight hours are bad for viewing because there is too much atmospheric heat distortion coming off the desert floor to differentiate airplane hangars from sand. [Nighttime is the best time](#) to witness the advanced technology that defines Area 51. Historically, it has been under the cover of darkness that secret airplanes and drones are flight-tested before they are sent off on missions around the world. If you stand on Tikaboo Peak in the dead of night and look out across the darkened valley for hours, suddenly, the Area 51 runway lights may flash on. An aircraft slides out from inside a hangar and rolls up to its temporarily illuminated runway. After a brief moment, it takes off, but by the time the wheels leave the ground, the lights have cut out and the valley has been plunged back into darkness. This is the black world.

According to most members of the black world who are familiar with the history of Area 51, the base opened its doors in 1955 after two CIA officers, Richard Bissell and Herbert Miller, chose the place to be the test facility for the Agency's first spy plane, the U-2. Part of Area 51's secret history is that the so-called Area 51 zone had been in existence for four years by the time the CIA identified it as a perfect clandestine test facility. Never before disclosed is the fact that Area 51's first customer was not the CIA but the Atomic Energy Commission. Beginning in 1951, the Atomic Energy Commission used its parallel system of secret-keeping to conduct radical and controversial research, development, and engineering not just on aircraft but also on pilot-related projects—entirely without oversight or ethical controls.

That the Atomic Energy Commission was not an agency that characteristically had any

manner of jurisdiction over aircraft and pilot projects (their business was nuclear bombs and atomic energy) speaks to the shadowy, shell-game aspect of black-world operations at Area 51. If you move a clandestine, highly controversial project into a classified agency that does not logically have anything to do with such a program, the chances of anyone looking for it there are slim. For more than sixty years, no one has thought of looking at the Atomic Energy Commission to solve the riddle of Area 51.

In 1955, when the Central Intelligence Agency arrived at Area 51, its men brought with them the U.S. Air Force as a partner in the nation's first peacetime aerial espionage program. Several other key organizations had a vested interest in the spy plane project and were therefore briefed on Area 51's existence and knew that the CIA and Air Force were working in partnership there. Agencies included NACA—the National Advisory Committee for Aeronautics (NASA's forerunner)—and the Navy, both of which provided cover stories to explain airplanes flying in and out of a military base that didn't officially exist. The National Photographic Interpretation Center (NPIC), the agency that would interpret the photographs the U-2 collected on spy missions abroad, was also informed about the area. From 1955 until the late 1980s, these federal agencies as well as several other clandestine government organizations born in the interim—including the National Reconnaissance Office (NRO), the National Security Agency (NSA), and the Defense Intelligence Agency (DIA)—all worked together behind a barrier of secrecy on Area 51 programs. But very few individuals outside of an elite group of federal employees and black-world contractors with top secret clearances had confirmation that the secret base really was there until November of 1989. That is when a soft-spoken, bespectacled, thirty-year-old native Floridian named [Robert Scott Lazar appeared on Eyewitness News](#) in Las Vegas with an investigative reporter named George Knapp and revealed Area 51 to the world. Out of the tens of thousands of people who had worked at Area 51 over the years, Lazar was the only individual who broke the oath of silence in such a public way. Whether one worked as a scientist or a security guard, an engineer or an engine cleaner, serving at Area 51 was both an honor and a privilege. The secrecy oath was sacred, and the [veiled threats of incarceration](#) no doubt helped people keep it. With Bob Lazar, more than four decades of Area 51's secrecy came to a dramatic end.

That Bob Lazar wound up at Area 51 owing to a job referral by the Hungarian-born nuclear physicist [Dr. Edward Teller](#) is perfectly ironic. Teller coinveted the world's most powerful weapon of mass destruction, the thermonuclear bomb, and tested many incarnations of his diabolical creation just a few miles over the hill from Area 51, in the numbered sectors that make up the Nevada Test Site. The test site is America's only domestic atomic-bomb range and is Area 51's working partner. Area 12, Area 19, and Area 20, inside the test site's legal boundaries, are just some of the parcels of land that bear Dr. Teller's handprint: charred earth, atomic craters, underground tunnels contaminated with plutonium.* Area 51 sits just outside.

Bob Lazar first met Edward Teller in Los Alamos, New Mexico, in June of 1982, when Lazar only twenty-three years old. Lazar was working at the Los Alamos Nuclear Laboratory in radioactive-particle detection as a contractor for the Kirk-Mayer Corporation when he arrived early [for a lecture Teller was giving](#) in the lab's auditorium. Before the

lecture, Lazar spotted Teller reading the *Los Alamos Monitor*, where, as coincidence would have it, there was [a page-1 story featuring Bob Lazar](#) and his new invention, the jet car. Lazar seized the opportunity. "That's me you're reading about," he famously told Teller as a means of engaging him in conversation. Here was an ambitious young scientist reaching out to the jaded, gluttonous grandfather of mass destruction. In hindsight it makes perfect sense that the ultimate consequences of this moment were not beneficent for Lazar.

Six years later, [Lazar's life had reached an unexpected low](#). He'd been fired from his job at Los Alamos. Terrible financial problems set in. He and his wife, Carol Strong, who was thirteen years his senior, moved to Las Vegas and opened up a photo-processing shop. The marriage fell apart. Lazar remarried a woman named [Tracy Murk](#), who'd worked as a clerk for the Lazars. Two days after Bob Lazar's wedding to Tracy, his first wife, Carol, [committed suicide by inhaling carbon monoxide](#) in a shuttered garage. Lazar declared bankruptcy and sought advanced engineering work. He reached out to everyone he could think of, including Dr. Edward Teller, who was now spearheading President Reagan's Strategic Defense Initiative, or Star Wars. In 1988, Teller found Lazar a job.

This job was far from any old advanced engineering job. Edward Teller had recommended Bob Lazar to the most powerful defense-industry contractor at Area 51, a company called EG&G. Among the thousands of top secret and Q-cleared contractors who have worked on classified and black projects at the Nevada Test Site and Area 51, none has had as much power and access, or as little oversight, as EG&G. On Teller's instruction, Lazar called a telephone number. A person at the other end of the line told him to go to McCarran Airport, in downtown Las Vegas, on a specific date in December—to the EG&G building there. Lazar was told he would be flown by private aircraft to Groom Lake. He was excited and followed orders. Inside the EG&G building, he was introduced to a man called Dennis Mariani who would soon become his supervisor. The two men went to the south end of the airport and into a secure hangar ringed by security fences and guarded by men with guns. There, EG&G ran a fleet of 737 airplanes that flew back and forth to Groom Lake—and still do. Because they flew with the call sign Janet, this private Area 51 commuter fleet had become known as Janet Airlines. Lazar and his supervisor passed through security and boarded a white aircraft with no markings or logo, just a long red stripe running the length of the airplane.

[Fly to Area 51](#) on a northerly course from Las Vegas and you'll see a Nevada landscape that is classic American Southwest: snowcapped mountains, rolling hills, and desert valley floors. Bob Lazar would not have seen any of this on his approach to Groom Lake because the window curtains on his Janet Airlines flight would have been drawn—they always are when newcomers arrive. The airspace directly over Area 51 has been restricted since the mid-1950s, which means no one peers down onto Area 51 without authorization except satellites circling the globe in outer space. By the time Lazar arrived, the 575-square-mile airspace had long been nicknamed the Box, and Air Force pilots at nearby Nellis Air Force Base know never to enter it. Distinctly visible at the very center of Area 51's Box sits a near-perfect six-mile-diameter endorheic basin, also known as a dry lake. It was the lake bed itself that originally appealed to the CIA; for decades it had

doubled as a natural runway for Area 51's secret spy planes.

Almost everything visible on approach to Area 51 from the air is restricted government land. There are no public highways, no shopping malls, no twentieth-century urban sprawl. Where the land is hilly, Joshua trees and yucca plants grow, their long spiky leaves extended skyward like swords. Where the land is flat, it is barren and bald. Except for creosote bushes and tumbleweed, very little grows out here on the desert floor. The physical base—its hangars, runways, dormitories, and towers—begins at the southernmost tip of Groom's dry lake. The structures spread out in rows, heading south down the Emigrant Valley floor. The hangars' metal rooftops catch the sunlight and reflect up as the Janet airplane enters the Box. A huge antenna tower rises up from the desert floor. The power plant's cooling tower comes into view, as do the antennas on the radio-shop roof, located at the end of one of the two, perpendicular taxiways. Radar antennas spin. One dish is sixty feet in diameter and always faces the sky; its beams are so powerful they would instantly cook the internal organs of any living thing. The Quick Kill system, [designed by Raytheon to detect incoming missile signals](#), sits at the edge of the dry lake bed not far from the famous pylon featured in Lockheed publicity photos but never officially identified as located at Area 51. Insiders call the pylon "the pole"—it's where the radar cross section on prototype stealth aircraft is measured. State-of-the-art, million-dollar black aircraft are turned upside down and hoisted aloft on this pole, making each one look tiny and insignificant in the massive Groom Lake expanse, like a bug on a pin in a viewing case.

As a passenger on the Janet 737 gets closer, it becomes easier for the eye to judge distance. Groom Mountain reveals itself as a massive summit that reaches 9,348 feet. It towers over the base at its northernmost end and is rife with Area 51 history and lore. Countless Area 51 commanding officers have spent weekends on the mountain hunting deer. Hidden inside its craggy lower peaks are two old lead and silver mines named Black Metal and Sheehan Mine. In the 1950s, one ancient miner hung on to his federal mining rights with such ferocity that the government ended up giving him a security clearance and briefing him on Area 51 activities rather than continuing to fight to remove him. [The miner kept the secrecy oath](#) and took Area 51's early secrets with him to the grave.

At the southernmost end of the base sits a gravel pit and concrete-mixing facilities that are used to construct temporary buildings that need to go up quick. Against the sloping hills to the west sit the old fuel-storage tanks that once housed JP-7 jet fuel, specially designed for CIA spy planes that needed to withstand temperature fluctuations from -90 degrees to 285 degrees Fahrenheit. To the south, on a plateau of its own, is the weapons assembly and storage facility. This is recognizable from the air by a tall ring of mounded dirt meant to deflect blasts in the event of an accident. Behind the weapons depot, a single-lane dirt road runs up over the top of the hill and dumps back down into the Nevada Test Site next door, at Gate 800 (sometimes called Gate 700). Old-timers from the U-2 spy plane days called this [access point Gate 385](#), originally the only way in to Area 51 if you were not arriving by air. On the Area 51 side of the gate, the shipping and receiving building can be found. In the height of the nuclear testing days, the 1950s and 1960s,

[trucks from the Atomic Energy Commission motor pool](#) spent hours in the parking lot here while their appropriately cleared drivers enjoyed Area 51's legendary gourmet chow.

In December of 1988, had Lazar been looking out the Janet 737 aircraft window just before landing, off to the northwest he would have seen EG&G radar sites dotting the valley floor in a diagonal line. Part of the Air Force's foreign technology division, which began in 1968, these radar sites include coveted Soviet radar systems acquired from Eastern-bloc countries and captured during Middle East wars. Also to the north lies Slater Lake, named after Commander Slater and dug by contractors during the Vietnam War. Around the lake's sloped banks are trees unusual for the area: tall and leafy, looking as if they belong in Europe or on the East Coast. This is the only nonindigenous plant life in all of Area 51. Move ahead to December of 1998, and five miles beyond Slater Lake, across the flat, dry valley floor, an airplane passenger would have seen a crew of [men dressed in HAZMAT suits](#) busily removing the top six inches of soil from a 269-acre parcel contaminated with plutonium. Set inside Area 51's airspace but in a quadrant of its own, this sector was designated Area 13. What the men did was known to only a select few. Like all things at Area 51, if a person didn't have a need-to-know, he knew not to ask.

The airplane carrying Lazar would likely have landed on the easternmost runway and then taxied up to the Janet terminal, near the security building. Lazar and his supervisor, Dennis Mariani, [would have gone through security there](#). According to Lazar, he was taken to a cafeteria on the base. When a bus pulled up, he and Mariani climbed aboard. Lazar said he could not see exactly where he was taken because the curtains on the bus windows were drawn. If Lazar had been able to look outside he would have seen the green grass of the Area 51 baseball field, where, beginning in the mid-1960s, during the bonanza of underground nuclear testing, Area 51 workers battled Nevada Test Site workers at weekly softball games. Lazar's bus would have also driven past the outdoor tennis courts, where Dr. Albert Wheelon, the former Mayor of Area 51, loved to play [tennis matches](#) at midnight. Lazar would have passed the swimming pool where CIA project pilots trained for ocean bailouts by [jumping into the pool](#) wearing their high-altitude flight suits. Lazar would have passed the [Area 51 bar, called Sam's Place](#), built by and named after the great Area 51 navigator Sam Pizzo and in which a photograph of a nearly naked Sophia Loren used to drive men wild.

In December of 1988, Lazar had no idea that he was stepping into a deep, textured, and totally secret history. He couldn't have known it because the men described above wouldn't tell their stories for another twenty years, not until their CIA project was declassified and they spoke on the record for this book. But Lazar's arrival at Area 51 made its own kind of history, albeit in a radical and controversial way. In making Area 51 public, as he subsequently did, Lazar transformed the place from a clandestine research, development, and test-flight facility into a national enigma. From the moment Lazar appeared on *Eyewitness News* in Las Vegas making utterly shocking allegations, the public's fascination with Area 51, already percolating for decades, took on a life of its own. Movies, television shows, record albums, and video games would spring forth, all paying homage to a secret base that no outsider could ever visit.

[According to Lazar](#), that first day he was at Area 51 he was driven on a bumpy dirt

road for approximately twenty or thirty minutes before arriving at a mysterious complex of hangars built into the side of a mountain somewhere on the outskirts of Groom Lake. There, at an outpost facility Lazar says was called S-4, he was processed through a security system far more intense than the one he'd been subjected to just a little earlier, at Area 51's primary base. He signed one document allowing his home telephone to be monitored and another that waived his constitutional rights. Then he was shown a flying saucer and told it would be his job to reverse engineer its antigravity propulsion system. All told, there were nine saucers at S-4, Lazar says. He says he was given a manual that explained that the flying saucers had come from another planet. Lazar also said he was shown drawings of beings that looked like aliens—the pilots, he inferred, of these outer-space crafts.

According to Lazar, over the following winter, he worked at S-4, mostly during the night, for a total of approximately ten days. The work was intense but sporadic, which frustrated him. Sometimes he worked only one night a week. He longed for more. He never told anyone about what he was doing at S-4, not even his wife, Tracy, or his best friend, Gene Huff. One night in early March of 1989, Lazar was being escorted down a hallway inside S-4 by two armed guards when he was ordered to keep his eyes forward. Instead, curiosity seized Bob Lazar. He glanced sideways, through a small, nine-by-nine-inch window, and for a brief moment, he says, he saw inside an unmarked room. He thought he saw a small, gray alien with a large head standing between two men dressed in white coats. When he tried to get a better look, he was pushed by a guard who told him to keep his eyes forward and down.

For Lazar, it was a turning point. Something shifted in him and he felt he could no longer bear the secret of the flying saucers or what was maybe an alien but "could have been a million things." Like the tragic literary figure Faust, Lazar had yearned for secret knowledge, information that other men did not possess. He got that at S-4. But unlike Faust, Bob Lazar did not hold up his end of the bargain. Instead, Lazar felt compelled to share what he had learned with his wife and his friend, meaning he broke his Area 51 secrecy oath. Lazar knew the schedule for the flying saucer test flights being conducted out at Groom Lake and he suggested to his wife, Tracy, his friend Gene Huff, and another friend named John Lear—a committed ufologist and the son of the man who invented the Learjet—that they come along with him and see for themselves.

The group made a trip down Highway 375 into the mountains behind Groom Lake. With them they brought high-powered binoculars and a video camera. They waited. Sure enough, they said, the activity began. Lazar's wife and friends saw what appeared to be a brightly lit saucer rise up from above the mountains that hid the Area 51 base from view. They watched it hover and land. The following Wednesday they returned to the site. Then they made a third visit, on April 5, 1989—this time down a long road leading into the base called Groom Lake Road—which ended in fiasco. The trespassers were discovered by Area 51 security guards, detained, and required to show ID. They answered questions for the Lincoln County Sheriff's Department and were let go.

The following day, Lazar reported to work at the EG&G building at McCarran Airport. He was met by Dennis Mariani, who informed Lazar that he would not be going out to

Groom Lake as planned. Instead, Lazar was driven to Indian Springs Air Force Base. The guard who had caught him the night before was helicoptered in from the Area 51 perimeter to confirm that Bob Lazar was one of the four people found snooping in the woods the night before. Lazar was told that he was no longer an employee of EG&G and if he ever went anywhere near Groom Lake again, alone or with friends, he would be arrested for espionage.

During his questioning at Indian Springs, he was allegedly given [transcripts of his wife's telephone conversations](#), which made clear to Lazar that his wife was having an affair. Lazar became convinced he was being followed by government agents. Someone shot out his tire when he was driving to the airport, he said. Fearing for his life, he decided to go public with his story and contacted *Eyewitness News* anchor George Knapp. Lazar's TV appearance in November of 1989 broke the station's record for viewers, but the original audience was limited to locals. It took some months for Lazar's story to go global. The man responsible for that happening was a Japanese American mortician living in Los Angeles named [Norio Hayakawa](#).

Decades later, Norio Hayakawa still recalls the moment he first heard Lazar on the radio. "It was late at night," Hayakawa explains. "I was working in the mortuary and listening to talk radio. KVEG out of Las Vegas, 'The Happening Show,' with host Billy Goodman. Remember, this was in early 1990, long before Art Bell and George Noory were doing 'Coast to Coast,'" Hayakawa recalls. "I heard Bob Lazar telling his story about S-Four and I became intrigued." As Hayakawa toiled away at the Fukui Mortuary in Little Tokyo, he listened to Bob Lazar talk about flying saucers. Having no television experience, Hayakawa contacted a Japanese magazine called *Mu*, renowned for its popular stories about UFOs. "*Mu* got in touch with me right away and said they were interested. And that Nippon TV was interested too." In a matter of weeks, Japan's leading TV station had dispatched an eight-man crew from Tokyo to Los Angeles. Hayakawa took them out to Las Vegas, where he'd arranged for an interview with Bob Lazar. That was in February of 1990.

"We went on a Wednesday because that was the day we'd heard on the radio they did flying saucer tests," Hayakawa recalls. "We interviewed Lazar for three or four hours. He was a strange person. [He had bodyguards](#) with him in his house who followed him around everywhere he went. But we were satisfied with the interview. We decided to try and film some of the saucer activity at Area 51." Hayakawa asked Lazar if he would take them to the lookout point on Tikaboo Mountain off Highway 375. Lazar declined but told them exactly where to go and at what time. "We went to the place and set up our equipment. Lo and behold, just after sundown, a bright orangeish light came rising up off the land near Groom Lake. We were filming. It came up and made a fast directional change. This happened three times. We couldn't believe it," Hayakawa says. At the time, he was convinced that what he saw was a flying saucer—just like Lazar had said.

Hayakawa showed the footage to the magazine's bosses in Japan, who were thrilled. The TV station had paid Lazar a little over five thousand dollars for a two-hour segment about his experience at Area 51. Part of the deal was that Lazar was going to fly to Tokyo with Norio Hayakawa to do a fifteen-minute interview there. Instead, just a few days before

the show, Lazar called the director of Nippon TV and said federal agents were preventing him from leaving the country. Lazar agreed to appear on the show via telephone and answered questions from telephone callers instead. "The program aired in Japan's golden hour," Hayakawa says, "prime time." Thirty million Japanese viewers tuned in. "The program introduced Japan to Area 51."

As Lazar's Area 51 story became known around the world, Bob Lazar the person was scrutinized by a voracious press. Every detail of his flawed background was aired as dirty laundry for the public to dissect. It appeared he'd lied about where he went to school. Lazar said he had a degree from MIT, but the university says it had no record of him. In Las Vegas, Lazar was arrested on a pandering charge. It didn't take long for him to disappear from the public eye. But Bob Lazar never changed his story about what he saw at Area 51's S-4. Had Lazar witnessed evidence of aliens and alien technology? Was his discrediting part of a government plot to silence him? Or was he a fabricator, a loose cannon who perceived what he saw as an opportunity for money and fame? He sold the film rights to his story, to New Line Cinema, in 1993. Lazar took two [lie detector tests](#), and both gave inconclusive results. The person administrating the test said it appeared that Lazar believed what he was saying was true.

"The odd part," says Norio Hayakawa, "is how in the years after Lazar, the story of Area 51 merged with the story of Roswell. If you stop anyone on the street and you ask them what they know about Area 51 they say aliens."

Or they say Roswell.

To the tens of millions of Americans who believe UFOs come from other planets, Roswell is the holy grail. But Roswell has not always been considered the pinnacle of UFO events. It too had a hidden history for many years.

"What you need to remember is that in 1978, the Roswell crash registered a point-zero-one on the scale in terms of important UFO crashes," explains [Stanton Friedman](#), a septuagenarian nuclear-physicist-turned-ufologist often referred to by Larry King and others as America's leading expert on UFOs. "Until the 1980s, the most important book about UFOs was called *Flying Saucers—Serious Business*, written by newsman Frank Edwards," Friedman says. "In the book, thousands of UFO sightings are discussed and yet Roswell is mentioned for maybe half a paragraph. That is not very much compared to now."

Until [Stanton Friedman's exposé on the Roswell incident](#), which he began in 1978, the story was limited to a few publicly known facts. During the first week of July 1947, in the middle of a powerful lightning storm, something crashed onto a rancher's property outside Roswell, New Mexico. The rancher, named W. W. Brazel, had been a famous cowboy in his earlier days. Brazel loaded the strange pieces of debris that had come down from the sky into his pickup truck and drove them to the local sheriff's office in Roswell. From there, Sheriff George Wilcox reported Brazel's findings to the Roswell Army Air Field down the road. The commander of the 509th Bomb Group at the base assigned two individuals to the W. W. Brazel case: an intelligence officer named Major Jesse Marcel and a press officer named Walter Haut.

Later that same day, Frank Joyce, a young stringer for United Press International and a

radio announcer at KGFL in Roswell, received a telephone call from the Roswell Army Air Field. It was press officer Walter Haut saying that he was bringing over a very important press release to be read on the air. Haut arrived at KGFL and handed Frank Joyce the original Roswell statement, which was printed in the paper later that afternoon, July 8, 1947, and in the *San Francisco Chronicle* the following day.

The many rumors regarding the flying disc became a reality yesterday when the intelligence office of the 509th Bomb Group of the Eighth Air Force, Roswell Army Air Field, was fortunate enough to gain possession of a disc through the cooperation of one of the local ranchers and the Sheriff's Office of Chaves County.

The flying object landed on a ranch near Roswell sometime last week. Not having phone facilities, the rancher stored the disc until such time as he was able to contact the Sheriff's office, who in turn notified Major Jesse A. Marcel, of the 509th Bomb Group Intelligence Office.

Action was immediately taken and the disc was picked up at the rancher's home. It was inspected at the Roswell Army Air Field and subsequently loaned by Major Marcel to higher headquarters.

Three hours after Haut dropped off the statement, the commander of the Roswell Army Air Field sent Walter Haut back to KGFL with a second press release stating that the first press release had been incorrect. What had crashed on W. W. Brazel's ranch outside Roswell was nothing more than a weather balloon. Photographs showing intelligence officer Major Jesse Marcel posing with the weather balloon were offered as proof. The story faded. No one in the town of Roswell, New Mexico, spoke of it publicly for more than thirty years. Then, in 1978, Stan Friedman and his UFO research partner, a man named Bill Moore, showed up in Roswell and began asking questions. "Bill and I went after the story the hard way," says Friedman. "There was no Internet back then. We went to libraries, dug through telephone records, made call after call." After two years of research, Friedman and Moore had interviewed more than sixty-two original witnesses to the Roswell incident. Those interviewed included intelligence officer Major Jesse Marcel and press officer Walter Haut.

It turned out that a lot more had happened in Roswell, New Mexico, in the first and second weeks of July 1947 than just a weather-balloon crash. For starters, large numbers of the military had descended upon the town. W. W. Brazel was jailed for almost a week. Some witnesses saw military police loading large boxes and crates onto military trucks. Other witnesses saw large boxes being loaded onto military aircraft. The local coroner received a mysterious call requesting several child-size coffins that could be hermetically sealed. Townsfolk were threatened with federal prison time if they spoke about what they saw. The majority of the stories relayed by the sixty-two witnesses to UFO researchers Friedman and Moore all had two factors in common. The first was that the crash, which included more than one crash site, involved a flying saucer, or round disc. The second assertion was jaw-dropping. Witnesses said they saw bodies. Not just any old bodies but

child-size, humanoid-type beings that had apparently been inside the flying saucer. These aviators had big heads, large oval eyes, and no noses. The conclusion that the majority of the witnesses drew for the UFO researchers was that these child-size aviators were not from this world.

In 1980, [a book based on Friedman and Moore's research was published](#). It was called *The Roswell Incident*. The lid was off Roswell, and the floodgates opened. "By 1986 a total of ninety-two people had come forward with eyewitness accounts of what really had happened back in 1947," Friedman asserts. Ufologists elevated the Roswell incident to sacred status; that is how it became the holy grail of UFOs.

When Bob Lazar went public with his story about flying saucers and a small, alien-looking being at S-4, just outside the base at Area 51, it would seem to follow that Stanton Friedman and his colleagues would champion Bob Lazar's story. Instead, the opposite happened. "Bob Lazar is a total fraud," Friedman contends. "He has no credibility as a scientist. He said he went to MIT. He did not. He called himself a nuclear physicist and he is not. I resent that. I got in to MIT and could not afford to go there. You can't make something like that up and expect to be taken seriously." Friedman says he does not care what Lazar says he saw. He can't get past the false statements Lazar made about himself. It was not like Friedman didn't try to have a face-to-face with Lazar. "I spoke with Lazar on the telephone in 1990. We arranged to have lunch [in Nevada] but he never showed up," Friedman explains. "Scientists normally have diplomas. They write papers, they appear in directories. I wanted to ask him why none of that applies to Bob Lazar. I tried to believe him. I was not antithetic to his story. He's obviously a very smart guy and not just because he could put a jet engine on the back of a car. But my conclusion about him is that he's a total fraud."

It is unfortunate the two men never had lunch. In talking, they might have realized how close to the truth—something far more earthly and shocking than anyone could have imagined—they both were. The true and uncensored story of Area 51 spans more than seven decades. The Roswell crash is but a thread, and Area 51 itself—the secret spot in the desert—has its origins in places and events far outside the fifty square miles of restricted airspace now known as the Box.

It all began in 1938, with an imaginary war of the worlds.

Imagine a War of the Worlds

On Halloween eve in 1938, mass hysteria descended upon New Jersey as CBS Radio broadcast a narrative adaptation of Victorian-era science fiction novel *The War of the Worlds*. Listening to the live radio play, many people became convinced that Martians were attacking Earth, in New Jersey, and killing huge numbers of Americans. "Ladies and gentlemen," the show's narrator began, "we interrupt our program of dance music to bring you a special bulletin." A huge, flaming meteorite had crashed into farmland at Grover's Mill, twenty-two miles north of Trenton, listeners were told.

Frank Readick, playing Carl Phillips, a CBS reporter claiming to be physically on scene, delivered a breaking report: "The object doesn't look very much like a meteor," Phillips said, his voice shaky. "It looks more like a huge cylinder. The metal casing is definitely extraterrestrial!" Things quickly moved from harmless to malevolent and Phillips began to scream: "Ladies and gentlemen, this is the most terrifying thing I have ever witnessed! Someone's crawling out of the hollow top!" Phillips explained that extraterrestrial beings had begun wriggling their way out of the crashed craft, revealing bodies as large as bears' but with snakelike tentacles instead of limbs. The woods were ablaze, Phillips screamed. Barns were burning down, and the gas tanks of parked automobiles had been targeted to explode. Radio listeners heard wailing and then silence, indicating the newsman was now dead. Next, a man solemnly identified himself as the secretary of the interior and interrupted the report. "Citizens of the nation," he declared, "I shall not try to conceal the gravity of the situation that confronts the country." Scores were dead, including members of the New Jersey police force. The U.S. Army had been mobilized. New York City was under evacuation orders. Interplanetary warfare had begun.

Although the 8:00 p.m. broadcast had opened with a brief announcement that the story was science fiction and based on the novel by H. G. Wells, huge numbers of people across America believed it was real. Those who turned their radio dials for confirmation learned that other radio stations had interrupted their own broadcasts to follow the exclusive, live CBS Radio coverage about the Mars attack. Thousands called the station and thousands more called the police. Switchboards jammed. Hospitals began admitting people for hysteria and shock. Families in New Jersey rushed out of their homes to inform anyone not in the know that the world was experiencing a Martian attack. The state police sent a Teletype over their communications system noting the broadcast drama was "an imaginary affair," but the hysteria was already well beyond local law enforcement's control. Across New York and New Jersey, people loaded up their cars and fled. To many, it was the beginning of the end of the world.

The following morning, the *New York Times* carried a page-1, above-the-fold story headlined "Radio Listeners in a Panic Taking War Drama as Fact." Across the nation, there had been reports of "disrupted households, interrupted religious services, traffic jams and clogged communications systems." All through the night, in churches from Harlem to San Diego, people prayed for salvation. In the month that followed, more than 12,500 news stories discussed the *War of the Worlds* broadcast. The Federal Communications Commission (FCC) opened an investigation but in the end decided not to penalize CBS, largely on the grounds of freedom of speech. It was not [the FCC's role](#) to "censor what shall or shall not be said over the radio," Commissioner T. A. M. Craven said. "The public does not want a spineless radio."

The 1938 *War of the Worlds* broadcast tapped into the nation's growing fears. Just two weeks before, Adolf Hitler's troops had invaded Czechoslovakia, leaving the security of Europe unclear. Rapid advances in science and technology, which included radar, jet engines, and microwaves, left many Depression-era Americans overwhelmed by how science might affect a coming war. Death rays and murderous Martians may have been pure science fiction in 1938 but the concepts played on people's fears of invasion and annihilation. Man has always been afraid of the sneak attack, which is exactly what Hitler had just done in Czechoslovakia and what Japan would soon accomplish at Pearl Harbor. The weapons introduced in World War II included rockets, drones, and the atomic bombs —were all foreshadowed in Wells's story. Advances in science were about to fundamentally change the face of war and make science fiction not as fictional as it had once been. World War II would leave fifty million dead.

From the moment it hit the airwaves, the *War of the Worlds* radio broadcast had a profound effect on the American military. The following month, a handful of "military listeners" relayed their sanitized thoughts on the subject to reporters with the Associated Press. "What struck the military listeners most about the radio play was its immediate emotional effect," the officials told the AP. "Thousands of persons believed a real invasion had been unleashed. They exhibited all the symptoms of fear, panic, determination to resist, desperation, bravery, excitement or fatalism that real war would have produced," which in turn "shows the government will have to insist on the close co-operation of radio in any future war." What these military men were not saying was that there was serious concern among strategists and policy makers that entire segments of the population could be so easily manipulated into thinking that something false was something true. Americans had taken very real, physical actions based on something entirely made up. Pandemonium had ensued. Totalitarian nations were able to manipulate their citizens like this, but in America? This kind of mass control had never been seen so clearly and definitively before.

America was not the only place where government officials were impressed by how easily people could be influenced by a radio broadcast. [Adolf Hitler took note as well](#). He referred to the Americans' hysterical reaction to the *War of the Worlds* broadcast in a Berlin speech, calling it "evidence of the decadence and corrupt condition of democracy." It was later revealed that in the Soviet Union, [Joseph Stalin had also been](#) paying attention. And President Roosevelt's top science adviser, [Vannevar Bush, observed the](#)

[effects](#) of the fictional radio broadcast with a discerning eye. The public's tendency to panic alarmed him, he would later tell W. Cameron Forbes, his colleague at the Carnegie Institution. Three months later, alarming news again hit the airwaves, but this time it was pure science, not science fiction.

On January 26, 1939, the Carnegie Institution sponsored a press conference to announce the discovery of nuclear fission to the world. When the declaration was made that two German-born scientists had succeeded in splitting the atom, a number of physicists who were present literally ran from the room. The realization was as profound as it was devastating. If scientists could split one atom then surely they would be able to create a chain reaction of splitting atoms—the result of which would be an enormous release of energy. Three months later, the *New York Times* reported that scientists at a follow-up conference were heard arguing “over the probability of some scientist blowing up a sizable portion of the Earth with a tiny bit of uranium.” This was the terrifying prospect now facing the world. [“Science Discovers Real Frankenstein”](#) headlined an article in the *Boston Herald* that went on to explain that now “an unscrupulous dictator, lustng for conquest, [could] wipe Boston, Worcester and Providence out of existence.” Vannevar Bush disagreed with the popular press. The “real danger” in the discovery of fission, he told Forbes, was not atomic energy itself but the public’s tendency to panic over things they did not understand. To make his point, Bush used the [War of the Worlds radio broadcast as an example](#).

Atomic energy, it turned out, was far more powerful than anything previously made by man. Six years and seven months after the announcement of the discovery of fission, America dropped atomic bombs on Hiroshima and Nagasaki, essentially wiping out both of those cities and a quarter of a million people living there. [President Roosevelt had appointed](#) Vannevar Bush to lead the group that made the bomb. Bush was the director of the Manhattan Project, the nation’s first true black operation, and he ran it with totalitarian-like control.

When the Japanese Empire surrendered, Vannevar Bush did not rejoice so much as ponder [his next move](#). For eighteen days he watched as Joseph Stalin marched Soviet troops into eastern Asia, positioning his Red Army forces in China, Manchuria, Sakhalin Island, and North Korea. When the fighting finally stopped, Bush’s response had become clear. He would convince President Truman that the Soviet Union could not be trusted. In facing down America’s new enemy, the nation needed even more advanced technologies to fight future wars. The most recent war might have ended, but science needed to stay on the forward march.

[As Americans celebrated peace](#) (after the atomic bombs were dropped on Hiroshima and Nagasaki, public opinion polls showed that more than 85 percent of Americans approved of the bombings), Vannevar Bush and members of the War Department began planning to use the atomic bomb again in a live test—a kind of mock nuclear naval battle, which they hoped could take place the following summer in the Marshall Islands in the Pacific. There, in a deep lagoon at Bikini Atoll, dozens of captured Japanese and German warships would be blown up using live nuclear bombs. The operation would illustrate to the world just how formidable America’s new weapons were. It would be called Operation

Crossroads. As its name implied, the event marked a critical juncture. America was signaling to Russia it was ready to do battle with nuclear bombs.

In less than a year, [Operation Crossroads was in full swing](#) on Bikini Atoll, a twenty-five-mile ring of red coral islands encircling a clear, blue lagoon. A July 1946 memo, one of many marked Secret, instructed the men not to swim in the lagoon wearing red bathing trunks. [There were barracuda everywhere](#). Word was that the fanged-tooth fish would attack swimmers without warning.

The natives of Bikini, all 167 of them, were [led by a king named Juda](#), but in July of 1946, none of them were on Bikini Atoll anymore. [The U.S. Navy had evacuated the natives to Rongerik Atoll](#), 125 miles to the east. The upcoming [three-bomb atomic test series](#) would make their homeland unsafe for a while, the natives were told. But it was going to help ensure world peace.

On the shores of the atoll, [a young man named Alfred O'Donnell](#) lay in his Quonset hut listening to the wind blow and the rain pound against the reinforced sheet-metal roof above him. He was unable to sleep. "The reason was because I had too much to worry about," O'Donnell explains, remembering Crossroads after more than sixty years. "Is everything all right? Is the bomb going to go off, like planned?" What the twenty-four-year-old weapons engineer was worrying about were the sea creatures in the lagoon. "Let's say an octopus came into contact with one of the bomb's wires. What would happen? What if something got knocked out of place?" The wires O'Donnell referred to ran from a concrete bunker on Bikini called the control point and out into the ocean, where they connected to a twenty-three-kiloton atomic bomb code-named Baker. The men in the U.S. Navy's Task Force One gave the bomb a more colorful name: they called it Helen of Bikini, after the legendary femme fatale for whom so many ancient warriors laid down their lives. A nuclear weapon was both destructive and seductive, the sailors said, just like Helen of Troy had been.

As a leading member of the arming party that would wire and fire the atomic bombs during Operation Crossroads, O'Donnell had a tremendous responsibility, especially for someone so young. "Five years earlier I was just a kid from Boston with a normal life. All I was thinking about for my future was a baseball career," O'Donnell recalls. In 1941, when O'Donnell was in high school, he'd been recruited by the Boston Braves, thanks to his exceptional .423 batting average. Then came the war, and everything changed. He married Ruth. He joined the Navy, where he learned radio and electronics. In both subjects he quickly excelled. Back in Boston after the war, O'Donnell was mysteriously recruited for a job with Raytheon Production Corporation, a defense contract company cofounded by Vannevar Bush. What exactly the job entailed, O'Donnell did not know when he signed on. The recruiters told him he would find out more details once he was granted a security clearance. "I didn't know what a security clearance was back then," O'Donnell recalls. After a month, he learned that he was now part of the Manhattan Project. He was transferred to a small engineering company named for the three MIT professors who ran it: Edgerton, Germeshausen, and Grier. Later, the company shortened its name to EG&G. There, O'Donnell was trained to wire a nuclear bomb by Herbert Grier, the man who had invented the firing systems for the bombs dropped on Japan.

"The next thing I knew I was asked to go to Bikini in the summer of 1946," says O'Donnell. "I did not want to go. I'd fought on those atolls during the war. I'd seen bodies of young soldiers floating dead in the water and I swore I'd never go back. But Ruth and I had a baby on the way and she said go, and I did." He went on, "I missed Ruth. She was pregnant, thank God, but I wondered what she was doing back in Boston where we lived. Was she able to take out the garbage all right?" Forty-two thousand people had gathered on Bikini Atoll to witness Operation Crossroads, and O'Donnell could not sleep because he felt all of those eyes were on him. Thinking about Ruth was how O'Donnell stopped worrying about how well he had wired the bomb.

Elsewhere on Bikini Atoll, Colonel Richard Sully Leghorn cut the figure of a war hero. Handsome and mustached, Leghorn looked just like Clark Gable in *It Happened One Night*. Commanding officer of Task Force 1.5.2, Leghorn was one of the pilots leading the mission to photograph the nuclear bombs from the air. Leghorn spent afternoons with Navy navigators rehearsing flight paths that, come shot day, would take him within viewing distance of the atomic cloud. At twenty-seven years old, Richard Leghorn was already a public figure. He'd been the young reconnaissance officer who'd taken photographs of the beaches of Normandy on D-day. "[In the face of intense fire](#) from some of the strongest anti-aircraft installations in western Europe, Richard Leghorn photographed bridges, rail junctions, airfields and other targets," the U.S. Army Air Forces was proud to say. Leghorn, a physicist, had a degree from the Massachusetts Institute of Technology. He loved the scientific concept of photography, which was why he went to work for Eastman Kodak after the war. Then, in early 1946, the Navy called him back for temporary duty on Operation Crossroads. He trained at the Roswell Army Air Field in New Mexico and flew the military's best photographic equipment across the Pacific. Now here he was on Bikini. Soon, Leghorn would be soaring over the mushroom cloud taking pictures of what happens to warships when they are targeted by a nuclear bomb.

At central command, Curtis Emerson LeMay stood chomping on a cigar. LeMay was going over procedures and protocols for the Crossroads event. Just thirty-nine years old, LeMay had already graced the cover of *Time* magazine and was known around the world as the man who'd helped end World War II. By the time he was forty-five, Curtis LeMay would become the youngest four-star general in the U.S. military since Ulysses S. Grant. Dark, brooding, and of legendary self-will, LeMay had led the incendiary bombing campaigns against Japanese cities, including Tokyo. When the napalm bombs didn't end war in the Pacific, President Truman authorized LeMay to lead the 509th Operations Group, based on Tinian Island, to drop the Hiroshima and Nagasaki atomic bombs.

[Curtis LeMay rarely smiled](#). When he spoke, it was described as "not much more than a snarl." Critics called him a coldhearted military strategist and attributed his calculated vision to a troubled upbringing. His father was a violent drunk, and LeMay was forced to help support the family when he was a child. At the age of seven, he was shooting sparrows for an old-lady neighbor who paid [five cents per bird](#). Though journalist I. F. Stone called LeMay a "[Caveman in a Jet Bomber](#)," his men adored him, often noting that he was not someone who sent his men into battle but one who led them there. During the war in the Pacific, LeMay often flew lead on bombing raids. But now the war was over and

LeMay was thinking about a military strategy for the future. Beginning at Crossroads, he would shape the U.S. Air Force in a way no other individual has since. As deputy chief of air staff for research and development of the U.S. Army Air Forces, [LeMay was at Bikini to determine](#) how effective the bomb could be in nuclear naval battles against the Soviet Union.

[Operation Crossroads was a huge event](#), described as "the apocalypse with fireworks." To someone who didn't know World War II was over, the scene on the lagoon at Bikini that day might have seemed surreal. An armada of captured German and Japanese warships had been lined up alongside retired American cruisers and destroyers. These were massive, football-field-size warships whose individual might was dwarfed only by the combined power of them all. Eight submarines had been tethered to anchors on the ocean floor. There were over [one million tons of battle-weary steel](#) floating on the ocean without a single human on board. Instead, thousands of pigs, sheep, and rats had been set out in the South Pacific sunshine, in cages or in leg irons, and they would face the coming atomic blast. Some of the animals had metal tags around their necks; others had Geiger counters clipped to their ears. The Navy wanted to determine how living things fared against nuclear bombs.

Forty miles west of the lagoon, [Alfred O'Donnell stood below deck](#) in the control room of an observation ship watching the control bay. Above him, on deck, Los Alamos scientists, generals, admirals, and dignitaries waited in great anticipation for the bomb. Shielding their eyes were dark, 4.5-density goggles, necessary measures to prevent anyone from being blinded by the nuclear flash. O'Donnell worked the instrument panel in front of him. There were sixty seconds to go. He watched the auto sequence timer perform its function. With less than a minute remaining, the firing system moved into automation. The bars on the oscilloscopes moved from left to right as the signals passed down through [the DN-11 relay system](#). There were ten seconds left. Then five seconds. The light for the arming signal blinked on. Two seconds. The firing signal flashed.

It was zero time.

O'Donnell kept his eyes on the control panel down to the last second, as was his job. In the event of a malfunction, it would be up to him to let the commander know. But the signal had been sent without a problem, and now it was moving down the underwater wires, racing toward the Baker bomb. If O'Donnell moved fast, he could make it onto the ship's deck in time to see the nuclear blast. Racing out of the control room, he pulled his goggles over his eyes. Up on the ship's deck he took a deep breath of sea air. There was nothing to see. The world in front of him was pitch-black viewed through the goggles. He stared into the blackness; it was quiet and still. He could have heard a pin drop. He listened to people breathing in the silence. Facing the lagoon, O'Donnell let go of the ship's railing and walked out farther on the deck. He knew the distance from the button to the bomb and the time it took for the signal to get there. In a matter of seconds, the signal would reach its destination.

There was a blinding flash and things were not black anymore. Then there was a white-orange light that seemed brighter than the sun as the world in front of O'Donnell transformed again, this time to a fiery red. He watched a massive, megaton column of

water rise up out of the lagoon. The mushroom cloud began to form. "Monstrous! Terrifying! It kept getting bigger and bigger," O'Donnell recalls. "It was huge. The cloud. The mushroom cap. Like watching huge petals unfold on a giant flower. Up and out, the petals curled around and came back down under the bottom of the cap of the mushroom cloud." Next came the wind. O'Donnell says, "I watched the column as it started to bend. My eyes went back to the top of the mushroom cloud where ice was starting to form. The ice fell off and started to float down. Then it all disappeared into the fireball. Watching your first nuclear bomb go off is not something you ever forget."

Mesmerized by the Baker bomb's power, O'Donnell stood staring out over the sea from the ship's deck. He was so overwhelmed by what he'd witnessed, he forgot all about the shock blast that would come his way next. The wave of a nuclear bomb travels at approximately one hundred miles per hour, which means it would reach the ship four minutes after the initial blast. "I forgot to hold on to the rail," O'Donnell explains. "When the shock wave came it picked me up and threw me ten feet back against the bulkhead." Lying on the ship's deck, his body badly bruised, O'Donnell thought to himself: You damn fool! You had been forewarned.

High above the lagoon, Colonel Richard Leghorn piloted his airplane through the bright blue sky. To the south, in the distance, cumulus clouds formed. The U.S. Army Air Forces navigators had sent Leghorn close enough to ground zero to assess what had happened down below on the lagoon, but far enough away so as not to be irradiated by the mushroom cloud. [What Leghorn witnessed horrified him](#). He watched Baker's underwater fireball produce a hollow column, or chimney, of radioactive water six thousand feet tall, two thousand feet wide, and with walls three hundred feet thick. The warships below were [tossed up into the air like bathtub](#) toys. The Japanese battleship *Nagato*, formerly the flagship of Admiral Isoroku Yamamoto, the man responsible for planning the attack on Pearl Harbor, was thrown four hundred yards. The retired USS *Arkansas*, all twenty-seven thousand tons of it, was upended against the water column on its nose. Eight mighty battleships disappeared in the nuclear inferno. Had the armada floating in the lagoon been crewed to capacity, thirty-five thousand sailors would have been vaporized.

From up in the air Colonel Leghorn considered what he was witnessing in the exact moment that the bomb went off. It was not as if Leghorn were a stranger to the violence of war. He had flown more than eighty reconnaissance missions over enemy-controlled territory in Europe, from 1943 to 1945. On D-day, at Normandy, Leghorn made three individual passes over the beachheads in a single-seat airplane without any guns. But like O'Donnell, Leghorn was able to recollect Operation Crossroads with precise detail after more than sixty years. For Colonel Leghorn, this is because he remembered exactly how it made him feel. "I knew in that life-defining moment the world could not ever afford to have a nuclear war," Leghorn says. The only sane path to military superiority in an atomic age was to spy on the enemy so that you always had more information about the enemy than the enemy had about you. Leghorn says, "That was the way to prevent war and that is how I formulated the original idea of overhead."

At the time, in 1946, America's intelligence services had virtually no idea about what was going on in Russia [west of the Volga River](#) and absolutely no idea what was

happening west of the Ural Mountains. Leghorn believed that if the United States could fly secret reconnaissance missions over Russia's enormous landmass and photograph its military installations, the nation could stay ahead of the Russians. By spying on the enemy, America could learn what atomic capabilities the Russians had, what plutonium- or uranium-processing facilities existed, what shipyards or missile-launch facilities the Soviets were constructing. And because Leghorn was a scientist, he could imagine precisely the way the military could accomplish this. His idea was to create a state-of-the-art spy plane that could fly higher than the enemy's fighter jets could climb or than their antiaircraft missiles could travel. In that moment during Operation Crossroads, Leghorn committed himself to developing this new philosophy of spying on the enemy from above, a concept that would come to be known as overhead, or aerial, espionage. Leghorn's efforts would take him from the halls of Congress to the corridors of the U.S. Air Force Strategic Air Command. There, he would be at odds with a third set of eyes watching the twenty-three-kiloton Baker bomb at Crossroads. The eyes of Curtis LeMay.

LeMay's perspective could not have been more diametrically opposed to Leghorn's spy plane idea. LeMay believed that atomic bombs, not conventional explosives, won wars. Japan did not surrender after the firebombing of Tokyo. The empire surrendered only after America dropped its second nuclear bomb. During the atomic tests at Bikini, LeMay knew what only a few others knew, and that was that the Joint Chiefs of Staff had recently reversed America's long-standing national policy of only going to war if attacked first. The JCS's new and top secret first-strike policy, code-named Pincher, now allowed the American military to "strike a first blow if necessary." A single effort could include as many as thirty atomic bombs dropped at once. The new and unprecedented policy had begun as a planning document less than one month after the Japanese surrendered, on August 15, 1945. Ten months later, on June 18, 1946, the policy legally took effect. No doubt this influenced LeMay's perspective at Crossroads.

When it came time for LeMay to present his observations on the test series to the Joint Chiefs of Staff, he narrowed them down to three succinct points. "Atomic bombs in numbers conceded to be available in the foreseeable future can nullify any nation's military effort and demolish its social and economic structures." In other words, LeMay would argue, America needed lots and lots of these bombs. LeMay's second point was even more extreme: "In conjunction with other mass destruction weapons, it is possible to depopulate vast areas of the Earth's surface, leaving only vestigial remnants of man's material works." But it was LeMay's third point that would fundamentally shape the future U.S. Air Force, which would come into existence the following year: "The atomic bomb emphasizes the requirement for the most effective means of delivery in being; there must be the most effective atomic bomb striking force possible." What LeMay was arguing for was a massive fleet of bombers to drop these nuclear bombs.

LeMay got all three wishes. Three years later, after he was promoted to commander of Strategic Air Command, the Joint Chiefs of Staff would raise the number of bombs that could be used in a first strike against the Soviets from 30 to 133. LeMay was also one of the most powerful advocates of the creation of a new and thousand-times-bigger nuclear bomb, called the hydrogen bomb, the plans of which were being spearheaded by Dr.

Edward Teller. Over the next forty-four years, seventy thousand nuclear weapons would be produced by the United States. LeMay was definitely not interested in spy planes or overhead. Spy planes didn't have guns and they couldn't carry weapons. Military might was the way to keep ahead of the enemy in the atomic age. That was the way to win wars.

[Halfway across the world](#), in Moscow, in a military fortress called the Kremlin, Joseph Stalin saw what was going on at Operation Crossroads but with an altogether different set of eyes. First excluded from but then invited to the Navy's nuclear tests at Bikini Atoll, the Soviet Union had two representatives observing, one physicist and one spy. The physicist was with the Radium Institute, and the spy was a member of the MBD, the Ministry of State Security, which was the precursor to the KGB. The cover story for the spy was that he was a correspondent for the newspaper *Pravda*.

To Joseph Stalin, the atomic tests at Bikini were America's way of signaling to the rest of the world that the nation was not done using nuclear bombs. It also confirmed for the already paranoid Stalin that the Americans were ready to deceive him, just as Adolf Hitler had four years earlier when Stalin agreed to a nonaggression treaty with Nazi Germany and then was double-crossed in a deadly sneak attack. Unknown to the Americans, as Stalin watched Crossroads he did so with confidence, knowing that his own nuclear program was well advanced. In just five months, the Soviet Union's first [chain-reacting atomic pile would go critical](#), paving the way for Russia's first atomic bomb. But what has never before been disclosed is that [Joseph Stalin was developing another secret weapon](#) for his arsenal, separate from the atomic bomb. It was almost straight from the radio hoax *War of the Worlds*—something that could sow terror in the hearts of the fearful imperialists and send panic-stricken Americans running into the streets.

Ten months passed. It was nighttime on the Rio Grande, May 29, 1947, and Army scientists, engineers, and technicians at the White Sands Proving Ground in New Mexico were anxiously putting the final touches on their own American [secret weapon, called Hermes](#). The twenty-five-foot-long, three-thousand-pound rocket had originally been named V-2, or Vergeltungswaffe 2, which means "vengeance" in German. But Hermes sounded less spiteful—Hermes being the ancient Greek messenger of the gods.

The actual rocket that now stood on Test Stand 33 had [belonged to Adolf Hitler](#) just a little more than two years before. It had come off the same German slave-labor production lines as the rockets that the Third Reich had used to terrorize the people of London, Antwerp, and Paris during the war. The U.S. Army had confiscated nearly two hundred V-2s from inside Peenemünde, Germany's rocket manufacturing plant, and shipped them to White Sands beginning the first month after the war. Under a parallel, even more [secret project called Operation Paperclip](#)—the complete details of which remain classified as of 2011—118 captured German rocket scientists were given new lives and careers and brought to the missile range. Hundreds of others would follow.

Two of these German scientists were now readying Hermes for its test launch. One, [Wernher Von Braun](#), had invented this rocket, which was the world's first ballistic missile, or flying bomb. And the second scientist, [Dr. Ernst Steinhoff](#), had designed the V-2 rocket's brain. That spring night in 1947, the V-2 lifted up off the pad, rising slowly at first, with Von Braun and Steinhoff watching intently. Hermes consumed more than a thousand

pounds of rocket fuel in its first 2.5 seconds as it elevated to fifty feet. The next fifty feet were much easier, as were the hundred feet after that. The rocket gained speed, and the laws of physics kicked in: anything can fly if you make it move fast enough. Hermes was now fully aloft, climbing quickly into the night sky and headed for the upper atmosphere. At least that was the plan. Just a few moments later, the winged missile suddenly and unexpectedly reversed course. Instead of heading north to the uninhabited terrain [inside the two-million-square-acre](#) White Sands Proving Ground, the rocket began heading south toward downtown El Paso, Texas.

Dr. Steinhoff was watching the missile's trajectory through a telescope from an observation post one mile south of the launchpad, and having personally designed the V-2 rocket-guidance controls back when he worked for Adolf Hitler, Dr. Steinhoff was the one best equipped to recognize errors in the test. In the event that Steinhoff detected an errant launch, he would notify Army engineers, who would immediately cut the fuel to the rocket's motors via remote control, allowing it to crash safely inside the missile range. But [Dr. Steinhoff said nothing](#) as the misguided V-2 arced over El Paso and headed for Mexico. Minutes later, the rocket crash-landed into the Tepeyac Cemetery, three miles south of Juárez, a heavily populated city of 120,000. The violent blast shook virtually every building in El Paso and Juárez, [terrifying citizens](#) of both cities, who "swamped newspaper offices, police headquarters and radio stations with anxious telephone inquiries." The missile left a crater that was fifty feet wide and twenty-four feet deep. It was a miracle no one was killed.

Army officials rushed to Juárez to smooth over the event while Mexican soldiers were dispatched to guard the crater's rim. The mission, the men, and the rocket were all classified top secret; no one could know specific details about any of this. Investigators silenced Mexican officials by cleaning up the large, bowl-shaped cavity and paying for damages. But back at White Sands, reparations were not so easily made. [Allegations of sabotage](#) by the German scientists who were in charge of the top secret project overwhelmed the workload of the intelligence officers at White Sands. Attitudes toward the former Third Reich scientists who were now working for the United States tended to fall into two distinct categories at the time. There was the let-bygones-be-bygones approach, an attitude summed up by the Army officer in charge of Operation Paperclip, Bosquet Wev, who stated that to preoccupy oneself with "picayune details" about German scientists' past actions was ["beating a dead Nazi horse."](#) The logic behind this thinking was that a disbanded Third Reich presented no future harm to America but a burgeoning Soviet military certainly did—and if the Germans were working for us, they couldn't be working for them.

Others disagreed—including Albert Einstein. Five months before the Juárez crash, Einstein and the newly formed Federation of American Scientists appealed to President Truman: "We hold these individuals to be potentially dangerous... Their former eminence as Nazi party members and supporters raises the issue of their fitness to become American citizens and hold key positions in American industrial, scientific and educational institutions." For Einstein, making deals with war criminals was undemocratic as well as dangerous.

While the public debate went on, internal investigations began. And the rocket work at

White Sands continued. The German scientists had been testing V-2s there for fourteen months, and while investigations of the Juárez rocket crash were under way, three more missiles fired from Test Stand 33 crash-landed outside the restricted facility: one near Alamogordo, New Mexico, and another near Las Cruces, New Mexico. A third went down outside Juárez, Mexico, again. The German scientists blamed the near tragedies on old V-2 components. Seawater had corroded some of the parts during the original boat trip from Germany. But in top secret written reports, Army intelligence officers were building a case that would lay blame on the German scientists. The War Department intelligence unit that kept tabs on the German scientists had designated some of the Germans at the base as "under suspicion of being potential security risks." When not working, the men were confined to a six-acre section of the base. The officers' club was off-limits to all the Germans, including the rocket team's leaders, Steinhoff and Von Braun. It was in this atmosphere of failed tests and mistrust that an extraordinary event happened—one that, at first glance, seemed totally unrelated to the missile launches.

During the first week of July 1947, U.S. Signal Corps engineers began tracking two objects with remarkable flying capabilities moving across the southwestern United States. [What made the aircraft extraordinary](#) was that, although they flew in a traditional, forward-moving motion, the craft—whatever they were—began to hover sporadically before continuing to fly on. This kind of technology was beyond any aerodynamic capabilities the U.S. Air Force had in development in the summer of 1947. When multiple sources began reporting the same data, it became clear that the radar wasn't showing phantom returns, or electronic ghosts, but something real. Kirtland Army Air Force Base, just north of the White Sands Proving Ground, tracked the flying craft into its near vicinity. The commanding officer there ordered a decorated World War II pilot named Kenny Chandler into a fighter jet to locate and chase the unidentified flying craft. This fact has never before been disclosed.

Chandler never visually spotted what he'd been sent to look for. But within hours of Chandler's sweep of the skies, one of the flying objects crashed near Roswell, New Mexico. Immediately, the office of the Joint Chiefs of Staff, or JCS, took command and control and recovered the airframe and some propulsion equipment, including the crashed craft's power plant, or energy source. [The recovered craft looked nothing like a conventional aircraft](#). The vehicle had no tail and it had no wings. The fuselage was round, and there was a dome mounted on the top. In secret Army intelligence memos declassified in 1994, it would be referred to as a "flying disc." Most alarming was a fact kept secret until now—inside the disc, there was a very earthly hallmark: Russian writing. Block letters from the [Cyrillic alphabet had been stamped](#), or embossed, in a ring running around the inside of the craft.

In a critical moment, the American military had its worst fears realized. The Russian army must have gotten its hands on German aerospace engineers more capable than Ernst Steinhoff and Wernher Von Braun—engineers who must have developed this flying craft years before for the German air force, or Luftwaffe. The Russians simply could not have developed this kind of advanced technology on their own. Russia's stockpile of weapons and its body of scientists had been decimated during the war; the nation had lost

more than twenty million people. Most Russian scientists still alive had spent the war in the gulag. But the Russians, like the Americans, the British, and the French, had pillaged Hitler's best and brightest scientists as war booty, each country taking advantage of them to move forward in the new world. And now, in July of 1947, shockingly, the Soviet supreme leader had somehow managed not only to penetrate U.S. airspace [near the Alaskan border](#), but to fly over several of the most sensitive military installations in the western United States. Stalin had done this with foreign technology that the U.S. Army Air Forces knew nothing about. It was an incursion so brazen—so antithetical to the perception of America's strong national security, which included the military's ability to defend itself against air attack—that upper-echelon Army intelligence officers swept in and took control of the entire situation. The first thing they did was initiate the withdrawal of the original Roswell Army Air Field press release, the one that stated that a "flying disc... landed on a ranch near Roswell," and then they replaced it with the second press release, the one that said that a weather balloon had crashed—nothing more. The weather balloon story has remained the official cover story ever since.

The fears were legitimate: fears that the Russians had hover-and-fly technology, that their flying craft could outfox U.S. radar, and that it could deliver to America a devastating blow. The single most worrisome question facing the Joint Chiefs of Staff at the time was: [What if atomic energy propelled the Russian craft?](#) Or worse, what if it dispersed radioactive particles, like a modern-day dirty bomb? In 1947, the United States believed it still had a monopoly on the atomic bomb as a deliverable weapon. But as early as June 1942, Hermann Göring, commander in chief of the Luftwaffe, had been overseeing the Third Reich's research council on nuclear physics as a weapon in its development of an airplane called the [Amerika Bomber](#), designed to drop a dirty bomb on New York City. Any number of those scientists could be working for the Russians. The Central Intelligence Group, the CIA's institutional predecessor, did not yet know that a spy at Los Alamos National Laboratory, a man named Klaus Fuchs, had stolen bomb blueprints and given them to Stalin. Or that Russia was two years away from testing its own atomic bomb. In the immediate aftermath of the crash, all the Joint Chiefs of Staff had to go on from the Central Intelligence Group was speculation about what atomic technology Russia might have.

For the military, the very fact that New Mexico's airspace had been violated was shocking. This region of the country was the single most sensitive weapons-related domain in all of America. The White Sands Missile Range was home to the nation's classified weapons-delivery systems. The nuclear laboratory up the road, the Los Alamos Laboratory, was where scientists had developed the atomic bomb and where they were now working on nuclear packages with a thousand times the yield. Outside Albuquerque, at a production facility called Sandia Base, assembly-line workers were forging Los Alamos nuclear packages into smaller and smaller bombs. Forty-five miles to the southwest, at the Roswell Army Air Field, the 509th Bomb Wing was the only wing of long-range bombers equipped to carry and drop nuclear bombs.

Things went from complicated to critical at the revelation that there was a second crash site. [Paperclip scientists Wernher Von Braun and Ernst Steinhoff, still under review over the Juárez rocket](#) crash, were called on for their expertise. Several other Paperclip

scientists specializing in aviation medicine were brought in. The evidence of whatever had crashed at and around Roswell, New Mexico, in the first week of July in 1947 was gathered together by a Joint Chiefs of Staff technical services unit and [secreted away in a manner so clandestine](#), it followed security protocols established for transporting uranium in the early days of the Manhattan Project.

The first order of business was to determine where the technology had come from. The Joint Chiefs of Staff tasked an elite group working under the direct orders of G-2 Army intelligence to initiate a [top secret project called Operation Harass](#). Based on the [testimony of America's Paperclip scientists](#), Army intelligence officers believed that the flying disc was the brainchild of two former Third Reich airplane engineers, named Walter and Reimar Horten— now working for the Russian military. Orders were drawn up. [The manhunt was on.](#)

[Walter and Reimar Horten](#) were two aerospace engineers whose importance in seminal aircraft projects had somehow been overlooked when America and the Soviet Union were fighting over scientists at the end of the war. The brothers were the inventors of several of Hitler's flying-wing aircraft, including one called the Horten 229 or Horten IX, a wing-shaped, tailless airplane that had been developed at a secret facility in Baden-Baden during the war. From the Paperclip scientists at Wright Field, the Army intelligence investigators learned that Hitler was rumored to have been developing a faster-flying aircraft that had been designed by the brothers and was shaped like a saucer. Maybe, the Paperclips said, there had [been a later-model Horten in the works](#) before Germany surrendered, meaning that even if Stalin didn't have the Horten brothers themselves, he could very likely have gotten control of their blueprints and plans.

The flying disc that crashed at Roswell had technology more advanced than anything the U.S. Army Air Forces had ever seen. Its propulsion techniques were particularly confounding. What made the craft go so fast? How was it so stealthy and how did it trick radar? The disc had appeared on Army radar screens briefly and then suddenly disappeared. The incident at Roswell happened just weeks before the National Security Act, which meant there was no true Central Intelligence Agency to handle the investigation. Instead, hundreds of Counter Intelligence Corps (CIC) officers from the U.S. Army's European command were dispatched across Germany in search of anyone who knew anything about Walter and Reimar Horten. Officers tracked down and interviewed the brothers' relatives, colleagues, professors, and acquaintances with an urgency not seen since Operation Alsos, in which Allied Forces sought information about Hitler's atomic scientists and nuclear programs during the war.

A records group of more than three hundred pages of Army intelligence documents reveals many of the details of Operation Harass. They were declassified in 1994, after a researcher named [Timothy Cooper filed a request for documents](#) under the Freedom of Information Act. One memo, called "Air Intelligence Guide for Alleged 'Flying Saucer' Type Aircraft," detailed for CIC officers the parameters of the flying saucer technology the military was looking for, features which were evidenced in the craft that crashed at Roswell.

Extreme maneuverability and apparent ability to almost hover; A plan form approximating that of an oval or disc with dome shape on the surface; The ability to quickly disappear by high speed or by complete disintegration; The ability to group together very quickly in a tight formation when more than one aircraft are together; Evasive motion ability indicating possibility of being manually operated, or possibly, by electronic or remote control.

The Counter Intelligence Corps' official 1947–1948 manhunt for the Horten brothers reads at times like a spy novel and at times like a wild-goose chase. The first real lead in the hunt came from Dr. Adolf Smekal of Frankfurt, who provided CIC with a list of possible informants' names. Agents were told a dizzying array of alleged facts: Reimar was living in secret in East Prussia; Reimar was living in Göttingen, in what had been the British zone; Reimar had been kidnapped "presumably by the Russians" in the latter part of 1946. If you want to know where Reimar is, one informant said, you must first locate Hannah Reitsch, the famous aviatrix who was living in Bad Hauheim. As for Walter, he was working as a consultant for the French; he was last seen in Frankfurt trying to find work with a university there; he was in Dessau; actually, he was in Russia; he was in Luxembourg, or maybe it was France. One German scientist turned informant chided CIC agents. If they really wanted to know where the Horten brothers were, he said, and what they were capable of, then go ask the American Paperclip scientists living at Wright Field.

Neatly typed and intricately detailed summaries of hundreds of interviews with the Horten brothers' colleagues and relatives flooded the CIC. Army intelligence officers spent months chasing leads, but most information led them back to square one. In the fall of 1947, prospects of locating the brothers seemed grim until November, when CIC agents caught a break. A former Messerschmitt test pilot named Fritz Wendel offered up some firsthand testimony that seemed real. The Horten brothers had indeed been working on a flying saucer-like craft in Heiligenbeil, East Prussia, right after the war, Wendel said. The airplane was ten meters long and shaped like a half-moon. It had no tail. The prototype was designed to be flown by one man lying down flat on his stomach. It reached a ceiling of twelve thousand feet. Wendel drew diagrams of this saucerlike aircraft, as did a second German informant named Professor George, who described a later-model Horten as being "very much like a round cake with a large sector cut out" and that had been developed to carry more than one crew member. The later-model Horten could travel higher and faster—up to 1,200 mph—because it was propelled by rockets rather than jet engines. Its cabin was allegedly pressurized for high-altitude flights.

The Americans pressed Fritz Wendel for more. Could it hover? Not that Wendel knew. Did he know if groups could fly tightly together? Wendel said he had no idea. Were "high speed escapement methods" designed into the craft? Wendel wasn't sure. Could the flying disc be remotely controlled? Yes, Wendel said he knew of radio-control experiments being conducted by Siemens and Halske at their electrical factory in Berlin. Army officers asked Wendel if he had heard of any hovering or near-hovering technologies. No. Did Wendel have any idea about the tactical purposes for such an aircraft? Wendel said he

had no idea.

The next batch of solid information came from [a rocket engineer named Walter Ziegler](#). During the war, Ziegler had worked at the car manufacturer Bayerische Motoren Werke, or BMW, which served as a front for advanced rocket-science research. There, Ziegler had been on a team tasked with developing advanced [fighter jets](#) powered by rockets. Ziegler relayed a chilling tale that gave investigators an important clue. One night, about a year after the war, in September of 1946, [four hundred men from his former rocket group](#) at BMW had been invited by Russian military officers to a fancy dinner. The rocket scientists were wined and dined and, after a few hours, taken home. Most were drunk. Several hours later, all four hundred of the men were woken up in the middle of the night by their Russian hosts and told they were going to be taking a trip. Why Ziegler wasn't among them was not made clear. The Germans were told to bring their wives, their children, and whatever else they needed for a long trip. Mistresses and livestock were also fine. This was not a situation to which you could say no, Ziegler explained. The scientists and their families were transported by rail to a small town outside Moscow where they had remained ever since, forced to work on secret military projects in terrible conditions. According to Ziegler, it was at this top secret Russian facility, exact whereabouts unknown, that the German scientists were developing rockets and other advanced technologies under Russian supervision. These were Russia's version of the American Paperclip scientists. It was very possible, Ziegler said, that the Horten brothers had been working for the Russians at the secret facility there.

For nine long months, CIC agents typed up memo after memo relating various theories about where the Horten brothers were, what their flying saucers might have been designed for, and what leads should or should not be pursued. And then, six months into the investigation, on March 12, 1948, along came abrupt news. [The Horten brothers had been found](#). In a memo to the European command of the 970th CIC, Major Earl S. Browning Jr. explained. "The Horten Brothers have been located and interrogated by American Agencies," Browning said. The Russians had likely found the blueprints of the flying wing after all. "It is Walter Horten's opinion that the blueprints of the Horten IX may have been found by Russian troops at the Gotha Railroad Car Factory," the memo read. But a second memo, entitled "Extracts on Horten, Walter," explained a little more. Former Messerschmitt test pilot Fritz Wendel's information about the Horten brothers' wingless, tailless, saucerlike craft that had room for more than one crew member was confirmed. "Walter Horten's opinion is that sufficient German types of flying wings existed in the developing or designing stages when the Russians occupied Germany, and these types may have enabled the Russians to produce the flying saucer."

There is no mention of Reimar Horten, the second brother, in any of the hundreds of pages of documents released to Timothy Cooper as part of his Freedom of Information Act request—despite the fact that both brothers had been confirmed as located and interrogated. Nor is there any mention of what Reimar Horten did or did not say about the later-model Horten flying discs. But one memo mentioned "the Horten X" and another referred to "[the Horten 13.](#)" No further details have been provided, and a 2011 Freedom of Information Act request by the author met a dead end.

On May 12, 1948, the headquarters of European command sent the director of intelligence at the United States Forces in Austria a puzzling memo. "[Walter Horten has admitted his contacts with the Russians.](#)" it said. That was the last mention of the Horten brothers in the Army intelligence's declassified record for Operation Harass.

Whatever else officially exists on the Horten brothers and their advanced flying saucer continues to be classified as of 2011, and the crash remains from Roswell quickly fell into the blackest regions of government. They would [stay at Wright-Patterson Air Force Base for approximately four years](#). From there, they would quietly be shipped out west to become intertwined with a secret facility out in the middle of the Nevada desert. No one but a handful of people would have any idea they were there.

The Secret Base

It was a foggy evening in 1951 and Richard Mervin Bissell [was sitting in his parlor](#) in Washington, DC, when there was an unexpected knock at the door. There stood a man by the name of Frank Wisner. The two gentlemen had never met before but according to Bissell, Wisner was "very much part of our inner circle of people," which included diplomats, statesmen, and spies. At the time, Bissell held the position of the executor of finance of the Marshall Plan, America's landmark economic recovery plan to infuse postwar Europe with thirteen billion dollars in cash that began in 1948. Being executor of finance meant Bissell was the program's top moneymen. All Bissell knew about Frank Wisner at the time was that he was a top-level civil servant with the new Central Intelligence Agency.

Wisner, a former Olympic competitor, had once been considered handsome. An Office of Strategic Services spy during the war, Wisner was rumored to be the [paramour of Princess Caradja](#) of Romania. Now, although not yet forty years old, Wisner had lost his hair, his physique, and his good looks to what would later be revealed as mental illness and alcoholism—but the true signs of his downfall were not yet clear. During the fireside chat in Richard Bissell's Washington parlor, Bissell quickly learned that Frank Wisner was the man in charge of a division of the CIA called the Office of Policy Coordination, or OPC. At the time, not much was known about America's intelligence agency because the CIA was only three and a half years old. [As for the mysterious office called OPC](#), only a handful of people knew its true purpose. Bissell had heard in cocktail conversation that OPC was "engaged in the battle against Communism through covert means." In reality, the bland-sounding Office of Policy Coordination was the power center for all of the Agency's covert operations. All black and paramilitary operations ran through OPC. The office had been set up by the former secretary of the Navy James Forrestal, who was also the nation's first secretary of defense.

Seated beside the fire in the parlor that foggy evening in 1951, Wisner told Bissell that the OPC needed money. "He asked me to help finance the OPC's covert operations by releasing a modest amount of [funds generated by the Marshall Plan](#)," Bissell later explained. Mindful of the gray-area nature of Wisner's request, Bissell asked for more details. Wisner declined, saying that he'd already said what he was allowed to say. But Wisner assured Bissell that Averell Harriman, the powerful statesman, financier, former ambassador to Moscow, and, most important, Bissell's superior at the Marshall Plan, had approved the money request. "I could have confirmed Wisner's story with [Harriman] if I had any doubts," Bissell recalled. But he had no such doubts. And so, without hesitation, Richard Bissell agreed to siphon money from the Marshall Plan and divert it to the CIA's

Office of Policy Coordination. Largely unknown until now, this was how a significant portion of the CIA's earliest covert black budgets came to be. Richard Bissell was the hidden hand.

Equally concerned about the nation's needs in gathering intelligence was Colonel Richard Leghorn. For Leghorn, the mock nuclear naval battle called Operation Crossroads in 1946 had spurred him to action. Leghorn presented papers to the Joint Chiefs of Staff arguing that overflying the Soviet Union to learn about its military might was urgent business and not just something to consider down the line. He walked the halls of the Pentagon with his papers immediately after Crossroads in 1946, and again in 1948, but with no results. Then along came another war. The Korean War has often been called the forgotten war. In its simplest terms, it was a war between North Korea and South Korea, but it was also the first trial of technical strength and scientific prowess between two opposing teams of German-born scientists specializing in aviation. One group of Germans worked for America now, as Paperclip scientists, and the other group worked for the Soviet Union, and the jet-versus-jet dogfights in the skies above Korea were fights between American-made F-86 Sabres and Soviet-made MiG-15s, both of which had been designed by Germans who once worked for Adolf Hitler.

When war was declared against Korea, Colonel Leghorn was called back into active duty. As commander of the reconnaissance systems branch of the Wright Air Development Center in Dayton, Ohio, Leghorn was now in charge of planning missions for American pilots flying over denied territory in North Korea and Manchuria to photograph weapons depots and missile sites. American spy planes were accompanied by fighter jets for protection, but still the enemy managed to shoot down an undisclosed number of American spy planes with their MiG fighter jets. In these tragic losses, Leghorn saw a further opportunity to strengthen his argument for overhead. Those MiGs could reach a maximum altitude of only 45,000 feet, meaning that if the United States created a spy plane that could get above 60,000 feet, the airplane would be untouchable. After the armistice was signed, in 1953, [Leghorn went back to Washington](#) to present his overhead espionage idea to Air Force officials again.

One man in a position to be interested was Lieutenant General Donald L. Putt, the Army commander whose men had captured Hermann Göring's Volkenrode aircraft facility in Germany just before the end of the war [as part of Operation Lust](#). Putt had smuggled one of the earliest groups of German scientists, including V-2 rocket scientists Wernher Von Braun and Ernst Steinhoff, out of the country and into America. Now, Putt was overseeing the fruits of the scientists' labor from inside his office at the Pentagon. Putt had been promoted to deputy chief of staff for research and development at the Pentagon, and the three stars on his chest afforded him great power and persuasion about America's military future involving airplanes. But [Putt listened](#) to a presentation of Leghorn's spy plane idea and immediately said that he was not interested. The Air Force was not in the business of making dual-purpose aircraft, airplanes that carried cameras in addition to weapons. Besides, Air Force airplanes came with armor, Putt said, which made them heavy. Any flier in the early 1950s knew heavy airplanes could not fly anywhere near sixty thousand feet.

Richard Leghorn was undeterred. He went around Putt by going above him, to the commander of the Strategic Air Command, or SAC, his old antagonist from Operation Crossroads General Curtis LeMay. In the winter of 1954, LeMay was presented with the first actual drawings of Leghorn's high-flying spy plane, conceptualized by the Lockheed Corporation. [Whereas Putt was uninterested](#) in Leghorn's ideas, LeMay was offended by them. He walked out of the meeting declaring that the whole overhead thing was a waste of his time.

But there was another group of men who had President Eisenhower's ear, and those men made up the select group of scientists who sat on the president's scientific advisory board, friends and colleagues of Colonel Richard Leghorn from MIT. They included James R. Killian Jr., president of the Massachusetts Institute of Technology, as well as Edwin H. Land, the eccentric millionaire who had just invented the Polaroid camera and its remarkable instant film. The president's science advisers had an idea. Never mind the Air Force. Generals tended to be uncreative thinkers, bureaucrats who lived inside a mental box. Why not approach the Central Intelligence Agency? The Agency was made up of men whose sole purpose was to conduct espionage. Surely they would be interested in spying from the air. Unlike the Air Force, [Killian and Land reasoned](#), the CIA had access to the president's secret financial reserves. All the overhead espionage program really needed was a team captain or a patron saint. As it turned out, they had someone in mind. It was February of 1954. A brilliant economist who had formerly been running the financial office over at the Marshall Plan had just joined the CIA as Director Allen Dulles's special assistant. His name was Richard Bissell. He was a perfect candidate for the overhead job.

At least one of Richard Bissell's ancestors was a spy. Sergeant Daniel Bissell conducted espionage missions for General George Washington during the Revolutionary War. Generations later, on September 18, 1910, Richard Mervin Bissell Jr. was born into a family of Connecticut aristocrats. Severely cross-eyed from birth, it was only after a risky surgery at the age of eight that Richard Bissell could see clearly enough to read anything. Before that, his mother had read to him. As a child, Bissell was obsessed with history and with war. His parents took him on a visit to the battlefields of northern France when he was ten years old, and it was there, staring out over barren fields ravaged by firebombs, that Bissell developed what he would later describe as an overwhelming ["impression of World War I as a cataclysm."](#)

Despite great privilege, Bissell struggled through his formative years with intense feelings of inadequacy, first at Groton boarding school, then later at Yale University. But behind his low self-esteem was a great willfulness and burgeoning self-confidence that would emerge shortly after he turned twenty-one. On a weekend trip with family friends at a Connecticut beachhead called Pinnacle Rock, Bissell fell off a seventy-foot cliff. When he woke up in the hospital, he was suffering from a mild case of amnesia. But as soon as he was well enough to move around on his own, which took months, he secretly ventured back to the site of the fall. There he made the same climb again. "My hands were shaking," Bissell explained in describing the second climb, but "I was glad to have done it and to know that I didn't have to do it again." He had gone from unsure to self-assured,

thanks to a death-defying fall. Immediately after college, in 1932, Bissell headed to England, where he received a master's degree from the London School of Economics. Then it was back to Yale for a PhD, where he wrote complex financial treatises at the astonishingly prolific rate of twenty pages a day. Bissell's colleagues began to admire him, calling him a "human computer." His mind, they said, functioned "like a machine." Soon the classes he taught were filled to capacity.

Eventually, his talents as an economist caught the eye of MIT president [James Killian](#), who recruited Bissell to join the MIT staff. Now, in 1954, here was James Killian recruiting Richard Bissell again, which was how just a few short years after the fireside chat with Frank Wisner, Richard Bissell found himself in charge of one of the most ambitious, most secret programs in CIA history, the U-2 spy plane program. Its code name was Project Aquatone.

The following winter, in 1955, Richard Bissell and his fellow CIA officer Herbert Miller, the Agency's leading expert on Soviet nuclear weapons, flew across the American West in an unmarked Beechcraft V-35 Bonanza in search of a location where they could build [a secret CIA test facility](#), the only one of its kind on American soil. Only a handful of CIA officers and an Air Force colonel named Osmond "Ozzie" Ritland had any idea what the men were up to, flying around out there. Bissell's orders, which had come directly from President Eisenhower himself, were to find a secret location to build a test facility for the Agency's bold, new spy plane—the aircraft that would keep watch over the Soviet Union's burgeoning nuclear weapons program. Accompanying the CIA officers was the nation's leading aerodynamicist, Lockheed Corporation's Clarence "Kelly" Johnson, the man tasked with designing and building this new plane.

Johnson sat in the back of the Beechcraft with geological survey maps spread out across his lap as the men flew from Burbank, California, across the Mojave Desert, and into Nevada. They were searching for a dry lake bed called Groom Lake just outside the Nevada Test Site, which had had its boundaries configured by Holmes and Narver in July of 1950 during the top secret Project Nutmeg that resulted in Nevada's being chosen as America's continental atomic bombing range. Legendary air racer and experimental test pilot Tony LeVier was flying the small airplane. LeVier had a vague idea of where he was going because his fellow Lockheed test pilot Ray Goudey had taken him to Groom Lake on a prescouting mission just a few weeks before. On occasion, [Goudey had shuttled atomic scientists](#) from California to the test site and once he had even set down his aircraft on Groom Lake to eat his bag lunch.

"Descending for a closer look, we saw evidence of a temporary landing strip," Bissell later recalled, "the kind of runway that had been built in various locations across the United States during World War Two for the benefit of pilots in training who might have to make an emergency landing." The large, hardened salt pan was a perfect natural runway, and LeVier effortlessly landed the plane. The men got out and walked around, discussing how level the terrain was and kicking the old shell casings lying about like stones. To the north, Bald Mountain towered over the valley, offering cover, and to the southwest, there was equal shelter from a mountain range called Papoose. According to Bissell, "Groom Lake would prove perfect for our needs."

Bissell was acutely aware that Groom Lake was just over the hill from the government's atomic bomb testing facility, which meant that as far as secrecy was concerned, there was no better place in the continental United States for the CIA to set up its new spy plane program and begin clandestine work. "[I recommended to Eisenhower](#)" that he add a piece of adjacent land, including Groom Lake, to the Nevada Test Site of the Atomic Energy Commission," Bissell related in his memoir, written in the last year of his life. Four months after Richard Bissell, Herbert Miller, Kelly Johnson, and Tony LeVier touched down on Groom Lake, Area 51 had its first residents. It was a small group of four Lockheed test pilots, two dozen Lockheed mechanics and engineers, a handful of CIA officers who doubled as security guards, and a small group of Lieutenant Colonel Ritland's Air Force staff. There was a cowboy feel to the base that first summer, with temperatures so hot the mechanics used to crack eggs on metal surfaces just to see how long it would take for them to fry.

Originally the base consisted of one airplane hangar and a handful of tents, called hooches, constructed out of wooden platforms and covered in canvas tops. Sometimes when the winds got rough, [the tents would blow away](#). Thunderstorms were frequent and would render the dry lake bed unusable, temporarily covered by an inch of rain. As soon as the sun returned, the water would quickly evaporate, and the test pilots could fly again. Power came from a diesel generator. There was one cook and a makeshift mess hall. It took another month for halfway-decent showers to be built on the base. The men could have been at an army outpost in Egypt or India as far as amenities were concerned.

Residents were issued work boots, [to defend against rattlesnakes](#), and hats with lights, to wear at night. When the sun dropped behind the mountains in the evenings, the sky turned purple, then gray. In no time everything was pitch-black. The sounds at night were cricket song and coyote howl, and there was barely anything more than static on the radio and definitely no TV. The nearest town, Las Vegas, had only thirty-five thousand residents, and it was seventy-five miles away. At night, the skies at Area 51 glittered with stars.

But as rustic as the base was as far as appearance, behind the scenes Area 51 was as much Washington, DC, as it was Wild West. The U-2 was a top secret airplane built on the covert orders of the president of the United States. Its 1955 budget was \$22 million, which would be \$180 million in 2011.

Each U-2 aircraft arrived at Area 51 from Lockheed's facility in Burbank in pieces, hidden inside the belly of a C-124 transport plane. The pointy fuselage and long, thin wings were draped in white sheets so no one could get even a glimpse. "In the very beginning, we put Ship One and Ship Two together inside the hangar so nobody saw it before it flew," recalls Bob Murphy, one of the first Lockheed mechanics on the base. From the moment the CIA began operating their Groom Lake facility, they did so with very strict protocols regarding who had a need-to-know and about what. All elements of the program were divided into sensitive compartmented information, or SCI. "I had no clue what the airplane looked like until it flew directly over my head," recalls security guard Richard Mingus.

Getting the U-2 operations ready was a dream job for the daring experimental test pilot

Ray Goudey. "I learned to fly an airplane before I could drive a car," Goudey explains. As a teenager, Goudey joined the flying circus and flew with Sammy Mason's famed Flying Brigade. After the war, he became part of a daredevil flying team called the Hollywood Hawks, where his centrifugal-force-defying outside snap made him a legend. In 1955 he was thirty-three years old and ready to settle down, in relative terms.

Getting Lockheed's tricky new spy plane ready for the CIA was not a terribly daunting task for a flier like Goudey. Still, the U-2 was an unusual airplane, with wings so long their ends sagged when it sat parked on the tarmac at Groom. To keep its fuel-filled wings from tipping side to side on takeoff, mechanics had to run alongside the airplane as it taxied, sending huge dust clouds up from the lake bed and covering everything in fine sand. The aircraft's aluminum skin was paper-thin, just 0.02 inches thick, which meant the aircraft was both fragile on the ground and extremely delicate to fly. If a pilot flew the U-2 too slow, the airplane could stall. If he flew too fast, the wings could literally come off. Complicating matters was the fact that what was too slow at one altitude was too fast at another height. [The same variable occurred](#) when the weight of the plane changed as it burned up hours of fuel. For these reasons, the original flights made by the test pilots were restricted to a two-hundred-mile radius from the center of Groom Lake. The likelihood of a crash was high, and the CIA needed to be able to keep secure any U-2 wreckage.

"In the beginning, all we did was fly all day long," Goudey recalls. At Area 51 "we'd sleep, wake up, eat, and fly." Soon, the base expanded and one hundred more people arrived. Navy Quonset huts were brought in and two additional water wells were dug. Commander Bob Yancey located a pool table and a 16-millimeter film projector in Las Vegas; now the men had entertainment other than stargazing. By September, there were two hundred men on base from three organizational groups: one-third were CIA, one-third were Air Force, and one-third were Lockheed. Everyone had the same goal in mind, which was to get the U-2 to sustain flight at seventy thousand feet. This was a tall order and something no air force in the world had been able to accomplish.

Every Monday Ray Goudey would fly from Burbank to Groom Lake with Lockheed's gung-ho young mechanic Bob Murphy beside him in the passenger seat. All week, Murphy worked on the U-2's engine while Goudey worked with the other test pilots to achieve height. The pilots wore specially designed partial-pressure suits, tight like wet suits, with most of the tubing on the outside; it took two flight surgeons to get a pilot into his suit. Pre-breathing pure oxygen was mandatory and took two full hours, which made for [a lot of time in a recliner](#). The process removed nitrogen from the pilot's bloodstream and reduced the risk of decompression sickness at high altitude.

In those early days at Area 51, history was being laid down and records were being set. "I was the first guy to go up above sixty-five thousand feet, but I wasn't supposed to be," Goudey recalls. "Bob Mayte was scheduled to do the first high-altitude flight but he had a problem with his ears. So I went instead." Which is how Goudey ended up becoming the first pilot to ever reach that altitude and fly there for a sustained amount of time—a remarkable fact noted in the Lockheed record books and yet kept from the rest of the world until 1998, when the U-2 program was finally declassified. Goudey explains what the view was like at sixty-five thousand feet: "From where I was up above Nevada I could

see the Pacific Ocean, which was three hundred miles away."

Ray Goudey was also the world's first test pilot to experience engine failure at sixty-four thousand feet, a potentially catastrophic event because the delicate U-2 is a single-engine airplane: if a U-2 loses one engine, it has lost all of them. In Goudey's case, he glided down four thousand feet and got the engine to restart by using a tactic called windmilling. "Then it quit again," Goudey explains. He let the plane fall another thirty thousand feet, more than five miles. Down in lower air, Goudey was able to get the engine to restart—and to stay started. Once Goudey was on the ground, it was [Bob Murphy's job](#) to troubleshoot what had happened on the engine. Of course, in 1955, no mechanic in the world had any experience solving a combustion problem on an engine that had quit unexpectedly at sixty-four thousand feet.

Bob Murphy was a twenty-five-year-old flight-test mechanic whose can-do attitude and ability to troubleshoot just about any problem on an aircraft engine meant he was promoted to engine mechanic supervisor the following winter, in 1956. "The romance of the job was the hands-on element of things," Murphy recalls of those early days at Groom Lake. "There was absolutely no government meddling, which enabled us to get the job done." There was only one man with any kind of serious oversight at Area 51 and that was Richard Bissell, or [Mr. B., as he was known to the men](#). Most of Bissell's work involved getting Area 51 to run like an organization or, as he put it, "dealing with the policy matters involved in producing this radically new aircraft." Shutting back and forth between Washington and Area 51, Bissell seemed to enjoy the base he ruled over. "He moved around the facility somewhat mysteriously," Bob Murphy recalls. "He would appear briefly out on the dry lake bed to say hi to the pilots and mechanics and watch the U-2 fly," Murphy remembers. "Mr. B. always expressed enthusiasm for what we were doing and then he'd disappear again in some unmarked airplane." But for Murphy, the concern was rarely the Customer, which was Lockheed's code name for the CIA. Murphy was too busy working with test pilots, often finding himself in charge of overseeing two or three U-2 flights in a single day. "My job was to help the pilots to get the aircraft instruments checked out, get the plane to fly to seventy thousand feet, get it to fly for nine and ten hours straight, and then get it to start taking pictures. There was no shortage of work. We loved it and it's what we did day after day."

The job of the Lockheed test pilots was to get the U-2 ready as fast as possible so they could turn it over to the CIA's instructor pilot [Hank Meierdierck](#), who would then teach the CIA mission pilots, recruited from Air Force bases around the country, how to fly the airplane. Bissell's ambitious plan was to overfly the Soviet Union inside of a year. The Communist advances in hydrogen bombs and long-range missiles had the CIA seriously concerned, as did the hastily hushed Soviet overflight of—and crash in—the West. Human intelligence, or HUMINT, behind the Iron Curtain was at an all-time low. The great news for the Agency was that there was no such thing as an Iron Ceiling. Overhead was what was going to keep America safe. The U-2 was the Agency's best chance to get hard intelligence on the Soviet Union, considering that one photograph could provide the Agency with as much information as approximately ten thousand spies on the ground.

President Eisenhower put the CIA in charge of the overhead reconnaissance because,

as he later wrote, the aerial reconnaissance program needed to be handled in an ["unconventional way."](#) What that meant was that President Eisenhower wanted the program to be black, or [hidden from Congress](#) and from everyone but a select few who needed to know about it. He also wanted the U-2 to be piloted by a man who didn't wear a uniform. Before the U-2, there was no precedent for one nation to regularly spy on another nation from overhead during peacetime. The president's fear was that if a U-2 mission was exposed, it would be interpreted by the Soviets, and perhaps by the whole world, as an overtly hostile act. At least if the plane had a CIA pilot, the president could deny the U.S. military was involved.

Despite his apparent elusiveness, Mr. B. maintained absolute control of all things that were going on at Area 51. Remarkably, he had been able to set up the remote desert facility as a [stand-alone organization](#); he did this by persuading President Eisenhower to remove the U-2 program from the CIA's own organizational chart. "The entire project became the most compartmented and self-contained activity within the agency," Bissell wrote of his sovereign territory at Groom Lake. "I worked behind a barrier of secrecy that protected my decision making from interference." The Development Project Staff, which was the bland-sounding code name for the secret U-2 operation, was the only division of the CIA that had its own communications office. Bissell saw government overseers as unnecessary meddlers and told colleagues that Congress and its committees simply got in the way of getting done what needed to be done. In this way, Bissell was remarkably effective with his program at Area 51. Each month he summed up activities on the secret base in a [five-page brief](#) for the president. But Bissell's long leash, and the extreme power he wielded over the nation's first spy plane program, earned him enmity from a top general whose wrath was historically a dangerous thing to incur. That was General Curtis LeMay.

While the CIA was in charge of Project Aquatone as a whole, U-2 operations were to be a collaborative effort among the CIA, the Air Force, and Lockheed Corporation. Lockheed built the airplane and provided the first test pilots as well as the program mechanics. The Air Force was in charge of support operations. It was there to provide everything the CIA needed, from chase planes to tire changers. But Richard Bissell exercised his power early on, making Lockheed, not the Air Force, his original Project Aquatone partner. Bissell worked hand in hand with Lockheed's Kelly Johnson to get the U-2 aloft with as little Air Force involvement as possible. In fact, [the Air Force was almost entirely left out](#) of the early planning stages. The first U-2 was built by Lockheed and flight-tested at Groom Lake by Lockheed test pilots before the commander of the Air Force research and development office had ever heard of an airplane called the U-2 or a test-flight facility called Area 51. This overt slight ticked off many top generals, a number of whom developed grudges against the CIA. And yet, by the end of 1955, dozens of active-duty Air Force personnel had been assigned to the U-2 operation. Air Force air expertise was absolutely necessary now that pilot training had begun and multiple U-2s were flying multiple practice missions every day, as the CIA readied Project Aquatone for assignments overseas. Richard Bissell, not Curtis LeMay, was now the de facto base commander of a whole lot of Air Force officers and enlisted men. [LeMay was](#)

understandably enraged.

In early autumn of 1955, a conflict erupted between the two men, and President Eisenhower was forced to intervene. LeMay had been raising questions about why he wasn't in charge of the program. It was now up to the president to decide who was officially in charge of Area 51 and the U-2. Bissell desperately wanted to reign over the prestigious program. "It was a glamorous and high-priority endeavor endorsed not only by the president but by a lot of very important scientific people," Bissell wrote in his memoirs decades later. LeMay argued that the Air Force should be in charge of all programs involving airplanes, which was ironic, given the fact that LeMay had disliked the U-2 program from the get-go. In hindsight it seems as if LeMay wanted the U-2 program simply because he wanted the control.

Ultimately, [the president's decision](#) came to rest on one significant quality that the CIA possessed and the Air Force did not: plausible deniability. With the CIA in charge, if a U-2 were to get shot down, the government could claim the spy plane program didn't exist. Air Force fliers flew in uniform, but U-2 pilots working for the CIA would wear civilian garb. The cover story for such a mission would be weather-related research; at least, that was the plan. And so, in late October of 1955, the dispute was settled by President Eisenhower. He directed Air Force chief of staff Nathan Twining to give the CIA control over the spy plane program and Area 51. The job of the Air Force, Eisenhower said, was to offer all necessary operational support to keep the program aloft.

One of the Air Force's designated jobs was to handle flights to and from Area 51. Because the project was so secret, Bissell did not want personnel driving in and out of the base or living in Las Vegas. As far as Bissell was concerned, men cleared on the project were far more likely to draw attention to themselves driving to and from Sin City than they would be if they lived out of town and came in and out by airplane. Locals had friends in the area, whereas out-of-towners did not. This meant that each day, a C-54 transport plane shuttled workers from Lockheed's airport facility in Burbank, California, to Area 51 and back. Ray Goudey and Bob Murphy had enjoyed four months of Goudey's flying the pair back and forth between Burbank and the Ranch. Now they would have to commute on the Air Force's C-54 like everyone else.

Bob Murphy was well versed in the mechanics of the C-54 aircraft. He'd been an engineer on that aircraft in Germany during the Berlin airlift of 1948–1949, the first major international crisis of the Cold War. From a military base in Wiesbaden, Murphy serviced the C-54s that ferried coal and other supplies into Berlin. Flying back and forth between Burbank and the Ranch, [Bob Murphy would often chat with George Pappas](#), the experienced Air Force classified-missions pilot who flew the shuttle service. Pappas and Murphy spent hours talking about what an interesting aircraft the C-54 was.

On the night of November 16, 1955, Pappas flew Murphy, Ray Goudey, and another Lockheed pilot named Robert Sieker from the Ranch to Burbank so the men could attend a Lockheed party at the Big Oaks Lodge in Bouquet Canyon. For Bob Murphy, it would be a one-night stay; he was scheduled for the early-morning flight back with Pappas's C-54 Air Force shuttle the following day. But Murphy drank too much at the party and overslept. As Bob Murphy was sleeping through his alarm clock, eleven men assigned to Richard

Bissell's Project Aquatone walked across the tarmac at the Burbank airport and boarded the C-54 transport plane where Pappas, his copilot Paul E. Winham, and a flight attendant named Guy R. Fasolas prepared to shuttle everyone back to Area 51. The manifest listed their destination as "Watertown airstrip." A little over an hour after takeoff, Pappas broke his required radio silence and called out for assistance with his position in the air. It was snowing heavily where he was, somewhere north of Las Vegas, and Pappas worried he had strayed off course. Nearby, at Nellis Air Force Base, a staff sergeant by the name of Alfred Arneho overheard the bewildering transmission. There was no record of any flight, military or civilian, scheduled to be in his area this time of day. Arneho listened for a follow-up transmission but none came. Puzzled, Arneho made a note in a logbook. Just a few minutes later the airplane Pappas was flying crashed into the granite peak of Mount Charleston, killing everyone on board. Had Pappas been just thirty feet higher, he would have cleared the mountaintop.

Back in California, Bob Murphy awoke in a panic. He checked his alarm clock and realized that he had missed the flight back to Area 51 by three hours. Murphy was furious with himself. Getting drunk and oversleeping was completely out of character for him. He had never missed a single day of work in his four-year career at Lockheed. He'd never even been late. Murphy knew there was no sense going to the airport; the airplane would have long since departed. He got himself together and went out to find some breakfast. Bob Murphy was sitting in a restaurant listening to the radio playing behind the counter when the music was interrupted with breaking news. A C-54 transport plane had just crashed into Mount Charleston, north of Las Vegas. The newscaster said that reports were sketchy but most likely everyone on board had been killed. Murphy knew immediately that the aircraft that had crashed into Mount Charleston was the C-54 he would have been on had he not overslept.

Overwhelmed with grief and in a state of disbelief, Murphy went back to his apartment. He paced around for some time. Then he decided to locate a bar and have a drink. "As I opened the front door to my apartment, this guy from Lockheed was raising his hand to knock on it," Murphy explains fifty-four years later. "I looked at him and he looked at me and then he turned white as a ghost. I had been listed on the CIA flight manifest as having been on that airplane. The security officer on the tarmac had marked me off as having checked in for the flight. This man from Lockheed had come to inform my next of kin that I was dead. Instead, there I was."

Two hundred and fifty miles to the east, on top of Mount Charleston, the wreckage of the airplane still burned. Smoke from the crash was visible as far away as Henderson, ten miles south of Las Vegas. That afternoon, a CBS news team was halfway up Highway 158, headed to the crash site, when the newsmen met a military blockade. Armed officers told the news crew that a military plane had crashed on a routine mission heading to the base at Indian Springs. The road into Kyle Canyon was closed. Meanwhile, Bissell had U-2s dispatched from Area 51 to help pinpoint the exact location of the Air Force airplane—an impromptu and unorthodox first "mission" for the spy plane, triggered by tragic circumstances. But there were briefcases full of secret papers that needed to be retrieved, and the U-2's search-and-locate capabilities from high above were accurate and

available. It was Hank Meierdierck, the man in charge of training CIA pilots to fly the U-2, who ultimately located the remains of the airplane.

The crash was the first of a series of Area 51-related airplane tragedies that would occur over the next decade. Airplane crashes, sensational by nature, risk operational exposure, and between crash investigators and local media, there are countless opportunities for leaks. That first airplane crash, into Mount Charleston, set a precedent for the CIA in an unexpected way. The Agency did what it always does: secured the crash site immediately and produced a cover story for the press. But an interesting turn of events unfolded, ones that were entirely beyond the CIA's control. Hungry for a story and lacking any facts, the press put together its own, inaccurate version of events. One of the city's leading papers, the *Las Vegas Review Journal*, reported that the crash was being kept secret because the men on board were most likely nuclear scientists working on a top secret new weapons project at the Nevada Test Site. Reporters stopped asking questions and the speculative story quickly became accepted as fact. The CIA would learn from this experience: it could use the public's preconceptions as well as the media's desire to tell a story to its own benefit. Civilians could unwittingly propagate significant disinformation on the CIA's behalf.

In Central Intelligence Agency parlance, there are two kinds of strategic deception: cover and disinformation. Cover induces the belief that something true is something false; disinformation aims to produce the belief that something false is in fact true. In other words, cover conceals the truth while disinformation conveys false information. When the CIA disseminates false information, it is always intended to mislead. When the press disseminates false information that helps keep classified information a secret, the CIA sits back and smiles. The truth about the crash at Mount Charleston, the single biggest loss of life for the U-2 program, would remain hidden from the public until [the CIA acknowledged the plane crash in 2002](#). Until then, even the families of the men in the airplane had no idea that their loved ones had been working on a top secret CIA program when they died.

As a result of the crash, the Air Force lost its job as the air carrier for Area 51. For the next seventeen years, commuter flights in and out of the base would be operated by Lockheed. Starting sometime around 1972, the CIA began turning control of Area 51 over to the Air Force, and the Department of Defense took charge of commuter flights. But rather than running military aircraft to and from the clandestine facility, the DOD hired the engineering company EG&G to do it. It made sense. By 1972, EG&G had gotten so powerful and so trusted in the uppermost echelons of the government, it was even in charge of some of the [security systems for Air Force One](#).

The Seeds of a Conspiracy

As soon as the U-2s started flying out of [Area 51, reports of UFO sightings](#) by commercial airline pilots and air traffic controllers began to inundate CIA headquarters. Later painted black to blend in with the sky, the U-2s at that time were silver, which meant their long, shiny wings reflected light down from the upper atmosphere in a way that led citizens all over California, Nevada, and Utah to think the planes were UFOs. The altitude of the U-2 alone was enough to bewilder people. Commercial airplanes flew at between ten thousand and twenty thousand feet in the mid-1950s, whereas the U-2 flew at around seventy thousand feet. Then there was the radical shape of the airplane to consider. Its wings were nearly twice as long as the fuselage, which made the [U-2 look like a fiery flying cross](#).

In 1955 the UFO phenomenon sweeping America was seven years old. The modern-day UFO craze officially began on June 24, 1947, when a search-and-rescue pilot named Kenneth Arnold spotted nine flying discs speeding over Washington State while he was out searching for a downed airplane. Approximately two weeks later, [the crash at Roswell occurred](#). By the end of the month, more than 850 UFO sightings had been reported in the news media. Rumors of flying saucers were sweeping the nation, and public anxiety was mounting; Americans demanded answers from the military.

According to a CIA study on UFOs, declassified in 1997, the Air Force had originally been running two programs. One was covert, initially called Project Saucer and later called [Project Sign](#); another was an overt Air Force public relations campaign called [Project Grudge](#). The point of Project Grudge was to "persuade the public that UFOs constituted nothing unusual or extraordinary," and to do this, Air Force officials went on TV and radio dismissing UFO reports. Sightings were attributed to planets, meteors, even "large hailstones," Air Force officials said, categorically denying that UFOs were anything nefarious or out of this world. But their efforts did very little to appease the public. With the nuclear arms race in full swing, the idea that the world could come to an end in nuclear holocaust had tipped the psychological scales for many Americans, giving way to public discussion about Armageddon and the End of Times. In 1951, Hollywood released the film *The Day the Earth Stood Still*, about aliens preparing to destroy Earth. Two years later, *The War of the Worlds* was made into a movie and won an Academy Award. Even the famous psychiatrist Carl Jung got into the act, publishing a book that said UFOs were individual mirrors of a collective anxiety the world was having about nuclear annihilation. Sightings continued and so did intense interest by both the Air Force and the CIA.

At Area 51, the reality that the U-2 was repeatedly being mistaken for a UFO was not something analysts welcomed, but it was something they were forced to address. The

general feeling at the Agency was that CIA officers had more important things to do than handle the public hysteria about strange objects in the sky. Dealing with UFO reports, the CIA felt, was more appropriately suited for pencil pushers over at the Air Force. According to declassified documents, the CIA did open up a clandestine UFO data-collecting department, albeit begrudgingly. Seeing as the CIA could easily clear its own analysts to handle information on the U-2, this made sense. This attitude, that CIA officers were above plebeian affairs such as UFO sightings, was endemic at the Agency and trickled down from the top. CIA director Allen Dulles was an elitist at heart, an old-school spy brought up in the Office of Strategic Services, the World War II espionage division of the Army. Dulles preferred gentlemen spy craft and [disliked technology in general](#), which was why he'd delegated control of the U-2 spy plane to Richard Bissell in the first place. As for the UFO problems, Dulles assigned that job to a former OSS colleague named Todos M. Odarenko. [The UFO division was placed](#) inside the physics office, which Odarenko ran. Almost immediately Odarenko "sought to have his division relieved of the responsibility for monitoring UFO reports," according to a CIA monograph declassified in 1997. And yet the significance of UFOs to the CIA could not have had a higher national security concern.

The case file regarding unidentified flying objects that Allen Dulles had inherited from the Agency's previous director, General [Walter Bedell Smith](#), was, and remains, one of the most top secret files in CIA history. Because it has yet to be declassified, there is no way of knowing how much information Bedell Smith shared with his successor. But Bedell Smith himself would more likely than not have had a need-to-know about the Army intelligence's blackest programs, and that would have [included the flying disc retrieved at Roswell](#). When the crash occurred, in July of 1947, [Bedell Smith was the ambassador to the Soviet Union](#). During the search for the Horten brothers under the program known as Operation Harass, Bedell Smith was serving as commander of the First Army at [Governors Island, New York](#)—a locale from which Project Paperclip scientists were monitored, evaluated, and assigned research and engineering jobs. And when the crash remains left Wright-Patterson Air Force Base in Ohio to be shipped out to the desert in Nevada, Bedell Smith was the director of the CIA. The degree of need-to-know access he had regarding secret parallel programs set up there remains one of the great riddles of Area 51.

Walter Bedell Smith served as director of Central Intelligence from 1950 to 1953, and there were few men more trusted by President Harry Truman and five-star general of the Army Dwight D. Eisenhower. Years earlier, when General Eisenhower had been serving as Supreme Allied Commander of Europe during World War II, Bedell Smith was his chief of staff. A handful of Smith's closest colleagues affectionately called him Beetle, but most men were intimidated by the person privately referred to as Eisenhower's "hatchet man." So forceful was Bedell Smith that when George S. Patton needed discipline, the task fell on Bedell Smith's shoulders. When the Nazis surrendered to the Allied Forces, it was Bedell Smith who was in charge of writing up acceptable terms.

From the earliest days of the Cold War, General Walter Bedell Smith fought the Russians from America's innermost circle of power. He had served as President Truman's ambassador to the Soviet Union from 1946 to 1948, a position that uniquely

qualified him to be the second director of the CIA. Intelligence on the Soviet Union was the CIA's primary concern in the early days of the Cold War, and there was nothing the U.S. government knew regarding what the Russians were up to that Bedell Smith did not have access to. The conundrum for Smith when he took over the role of director of Central Intelligence on August 21, 1950, was that very few people at the CIA had a need-to-know what the general now knew regarding unidentified flying objects. The record that has been declassified thus far suggests that Bedell Smith demanded that all his employees accept what his personal experiences with the Russians and "UFOs" had taught him: the Communists were evil, and this idea that UFOs were coming from other planets was nothing but the fantasy of panicked, paranoid minds. General Smith summarily rejected the idea that UFOs were anything out of this world and he spearheaded CIA policy accordingly. "Preposterous," he wrote in a memo in 1952. Unlike Dulles, Bedell Smith personally oversaw the national security implications regarding UFOs at the CIA.

To a rationalist like General Smith, "Strange things in the sky [have] been recorded for hundreds of years," which is true—unidentified flying objects are at least as old as the Bible. In certain translations of the Old Testament, a reference to "Ezekiel's wheel" describes a saucerlike vehicle streaking across the skies. During the Middle Ages, flying discs appeared in many different forms of art, such as in paintings and mosaics. In British ink prints from 1783, favored examples among ufologists, two of the king's men stand on the terrace of Windsor Castle in London observing small saucers flying in the background; researchers have not been able to identify what they might have referenced. Smith could offer no "obvious... single explanation for a majority of the things seen" in the sky and cited foo fighters as an example, the "unexplained phenomena sighted by aircraft pilots during World War II." These, Smith explained, were "balls of light... similar to St. Elmo's fire."

Like the president's science adviser Vannevar Bush, CIA director Walter Bedell Smith was primarily concerned about the government's ability to maintain control. Toward this end, he saw the CIA as having to take decisive action regarding citizen hysteria over UFOs. During Bedell Smith's tenure, and according to declassified documents, it was the position of the CIA that a nefarious plan was in the Soviet pipeline. It had happened once already, at Roswell. Fortunately, in that instance the Joint Chiefs had been able to cover up the truth with a weather balloon story. But a black propaganda attack could happen again, a grand UFO hoax aimed at paralyzing the nation's early air-defense warning system, which would then make the United States vulnerable to an actual Soviet air attack. "Mass receipt of low-grade reports which tend to overload channels of communication quite irrelevant to hostile objects might some day appear" as real, Smith ominously warned the National Security Council. The unending UFO sightings preoccupying the nation were becoming like the boy who cried wolf, the CIA director cautioned.

To work on the problem of UFO hysteria, in 1952 Bedell Smith convened a CIA group called the Psychological Strategy Board and gave them the job of putting together recommendations about "problems connected with unidentified flying objects" for the National Security Council—the highest-ranking national security policy makers in the United States. Bedell Smith's Psychological Strategy Board panel determined that the American public was far too sensitive to "hysterical mass behavior" for the good of the

nation. Furthermore, the board said, the public's susceptibility to UFO belief was a national security threat, one that was increasing by the year. From a psychological standpoint, the public's gullibility would likely prove "harmful to constituted authority," meaning the central government might not hold. Any forthcoming UFO hoax by Stalin could engender the same kind of pandemonium that followed the radio broadcast of *The War of the Worlds*.

Bedell Smith's CIA told the National Security Council that for this reason, the flying saucer scare needed to be discredited. According to CIA documents declassified in 1993, the Agency proposed a vast "debunking" campaign to reduce the public's interest in flying saucers. The only way of countering what Bedell Smith was certain was the Russians' "clever hostile propaganda" was for the CIA to take covert action of its own. The Agency suggested that an educational campaign be put in place, one that would co-opt elements of the American "mass media such as television, motion pictures, and popular articles." The CIA also suggested getting advertising executives, business clubs, and "even the Disney Corporation [involved] to get the message across." One plan was to present actual UFO case histories on television and then prove them wrong. "As in the case of conjuring tricks," members of the panel suggested, "the debunking would result in reduction in public interest in flying saucers," in the same way that those who believe in magic become disillusioned when the magician's trick is revealed.

What action was actually taken by the CIA remains classified as of 2011, but one unforeseen problem that Bedell Smith's CIA encountered was an American press wholly uninterested in going along with the wishes of the CIA. The media had an agenda of its own. UFO stories sold papers, and in the spring of 1952, [the publishers of Life magazine](#) were getting ready to go to press with a major scoop about UFOs. Reporters for the magazine had learned that the Air Force had been keeping top secret files on flying saucers while insisting to the public it was doing no such thing. It was a big story, likely to sell out copies of the magazine. One week before press time, the Air Force got wind of *Life*'s story. In a move meant to deflate the magnitude of the magazine's revelation, the Air Force decided to reverse its five-year position of denying that it had been actively investigating flying discs and to attend, of all things, a UFO convention in Los Angeles, California.

To understand what a radical about-face this was for the Air Force requires an understanding of what the Air Force had been doing for the past five years since it had begun the simultaneous and contradictory campaigns Project Sign (to investigate Air Force UFO concerns) and Project Grudge (the public relations campaign intended to convey to the nation that the Air Force had no UFO concerns). Of the 850 UFO sightings reported in the news media the first month of the UFO craze, in July of 1947, at least 150 of the sightings had concerned military intelligence officials to such a degree that they were written up and sent for analysis to officers with the Technical Intelligence Division of the Air Force at Wright Field. Six months later, in January of 1948, General Nathan Twining, head of the Air Force Technical Service Command, established Project Sign; [originally called Project Saucer](#), it was the first in a number of covert UFO research groups created inside the Air Force. For Project Sign, the Air Force assigned hundreds of its staff

to the job of collecting, going over, and analyzing details from thousands of UFO sightings, all the while denying they were doing any such thing.

In Air Force circles, behind the scenes, officials were acutely aware that "the very existence of Air Force official interest" fanned the flames of UFO hysteria, and so the public relations program Project Grudge needed to officially end. On December 27, 1949, the Air Force publicly announced that it saw no reason to continue its UFO investigations and was terminating the project. Meanwhile, the covert UFO study programs steamed ahead. In 1952, the Air Force opened up yet another, even more secret UFO organization, this one called Project Blue Book. That the Air Force clearly kept from the public what it was actually doing with UFO study would later become a major point of contention for ufologists who believed UFOs were from out of this world.

The UFOs being reported seemed to have no end. In addition to the flying disc sightings, bright, greenish-colored lights in the sky were also reported by a growing number of citizens. This was particularly concerning for the Air Force because many of these sightings were in New Mexico near sensitive military facilities such as Los Alamos, Sandia, and White Sands. Witnesses to these "green balls of light," which had been reported since the late 1940s, included credible scientists and astronomers. These sightings were put into an Air Force category known as [Green Fireballs](#). In 1949, the Geophysics Research Division of the Air Force initiated Project Twinkle specifically to investigate these various light-related phenomena. Observation posts were set up at Air Force bases around the country where physicists made electromagnetic-frequency measurements using Signal Corps engineering laboratory equipment. In secret, air traffic control operators across the nation were given 35-millimeter cameras called videoons and asked by the Air Force to photograph anything unusual. All work was performed under top secret security protocols with the caveat that under no circumstances was the public to know that the Air Force was investigating UFOs. As the files for Project Twinkle and Project Blue Book got fatter by the month, Air Force officials repeatedly told [curious members of Congress](#) that no such files existed.

For Air Force investigators, the UFO explanations trickled in. One group of scientists assigned to Holloman Air Force Base, located on the White Sands Missile Range and home to the Paperclip scientists, determined many of the sightings were observations of V-2 rocket contrails. Other sightings were determined to be shooting stars, cosmic rays, and planets visible in the sky. Another study group concluded that some responsibility fell on birds, most commonly "flocks of seagulls or geese." But the numbers of sightings were overwhelming. By 1951, the Air Force had secretly investigated between 800 and 1,000 UFO sightings across the nation, according to a CIA *Studies in Intelligence* report on UFOs declassified in 1997. By 1952, that number rose to 1,900. The efforts were stunning. Data-collection officers met with hundreds of citizens, all of whom were told not to disclose that the Air Force had met with them and asked to sign inadvertent nondisclosure forms. Classified for decades, these investigations have resulted in over thirty-seven cubic feet of case files—approximately 74,000 pages. But for every one or two hundred sightings that could be explained, there were always a few that could not be explained—certainly not by Air Force data-collection supervisors who had a very limited

need-to-know. Seeds of suspicion were being sown among these Air Force investigators and in some cases among their superiors, a number of whom would later famously leave government service to go join the efforts of the ufologists on the other side of the aisle.

Ultimately, the [Air Force concluded for the National Security Council](#) that "almost all sightings stemmed from one or more of three causes: mass hysteria and hallucination; misinterpretation of known objects; or hoax." The sightings that couldn't be explained this way went up the chain of command, where they were interpreted by a few individuals who had been cleared with a need-to-know. In the mid-1950s, this included the elite group over at the CIA working under Todos Odarenko, analysts responsible for matching the CIA's U-2 flights with Air Force unknowns. But no matter how many sightings were explained as benign, there was still the unexplained mother of all unidentified flying objects—the nefarious crashed craft from Roswell. Everything about that flying disc had to remain hidden from absolutely everyone but a select few. If Americans found out about it, or about what the government had been doing in response, there would be outrage.

For CIA analysts and Air Force personnel working together on the UFO problem, one concern was made clear: the public was not to learn about the government's obsession with UFOs. These orders came from the top. Why exactly this was the case, the rank and file did not have a need-to-know. Underlings simply followed orders, which was why two Air Force officials from Project Blue Book, Colonel Kirkland and Lieutenant E. J. Ruppelt, were sent to sit on a panel at a UFO convention in California, side by side with men who were convinced UFOs were from outer space. These men, some of the nation's leading ufologists, were part of a group called the Civilian Saucer Investigations Organization of Los Angeles.

On April 2, 1952, just one week before the *Life* magazine UFO story hit the newsstands, Kirkland and Ruppelt sat in a conference hall at the Mayfair Hotel with the leading UFO hunters of the day. It was a huge media event, with people from *Time*, *Life*, the *Los Angeles Mirror*, and Columbia Pictures in attendance. The Air Force officials placated the ufologists by saying that they too were concerned about UFOs and offering to "bring them into the loop." In return, the Air Force said, they would "throw" Civilian Saucer Investigations certain "cases that might be of interest" to the organization for their review. When the scientists pressed for security clearances so they could access top secret data, the Air Force began to squirm. "I see no reason at all why we can't work together," Colonel Kirkland said, deflecting the question. "I think it would be very foolish if we didn't." Ruppelt offered up an Air Force perk: CSI members could call the military collect.

On April 7, 1952, *Life* magazine published its cover story titled "There Is a Case for Interplanetary Saucers." The sixteen-page feature article began with the exclusive Air Force reveal. Above the byline, it read "The Air Force is now ready to concede that many saucer and fireball sightings still defy explanation; here LIFE offers some scientific evidence that there is a real case for interplanetary saucers." The article made its case well, with the takeaway being that UFOs really could be from out of this world. But there was a second reason the Air Force participated in the UFO convention. The CIA's Psychological Strategy Board had urged the National Security Council to "monitor private UFO groups [such] as the Civilian Flying Saucer Investigators in Los Angeles," and

because of this, the Air Force officers had been placed at the [UFO convention in Los Angeles](#) through backdoor recommendations at the CIA.

The CIA was particularly interested in one specific individual on the Civilian Saucer Investigations panel, and that was a German Paperclip scientist named Dr. Walther Riedel. Seated front and center at the UFO conference at the Mayfair Hotel, Dr. Riedel was a study in contradiction. When Riedel smiled, a close look revealed that he had fake front teeth—his own had been knocked out in 1945 at the Stettin Gestapo prison in Germany. Riedel had been a prisoner there for several weeks with fellow Peenemünde rocket scientist Wernher Von Braun, and during the war, Riedel had served as the chief of Hitler's V-2 missile-design office. The American soldiers guarding Riedel at the Stettin Gestapo prison roughed him up after Army intelligence agents passed along information stating that in addition to designing the V-2, [Dr. Riedel had been working on Hitler's bacteria bomb](#). It was in the harsh interrogation that followed that Riedel lost his front teeth.

At the end of the war, Riedel, like Wernher Von Braun, desperately wanted to be hired by the U.S. military so he could work on rocket programs in the United States. Germany no longer had a military, let alone a rocket research program, which meant Riedel was out of a job. The Russians were known to hate the Germans; they treated their pillaged scientists like slave laborers. An offer from the Americans was the best game in town, even if their soldiers had broken your teeth first.

In January of 1947, Dr. Riedel became a Paperclip. His past work in chemical rockets and bacteria bombs was whitewashed in the name of science. The caveat for Riedel's prosperous new life, as opposed to his possible prosecution at Nuremberg, was that he would comply with what the U.S. military asked of him. But Riedel's rogue UFO-promoting behavior only a few years later illustrates that in certain situations, the Paperclips had the upper hand. Here was Riedel at the saucer convention, stirring up UFO hysteria. He participated in the *Life* magazine article and was quoted saying that he was "completely convinced that [UFOs] have an out-of-world basis." If that did not engender what CIA director Bedell Smith called hysterical thinking, what would? Riedel was not just any old rocket scientist going on the record with America's most popular magazine. When asked about his profession, he told *Life* magazine that he was "engaged in secret work for the U.S."

What is publicly known about Dr. Riedel's American career is that he had begun at Fort Bliss, in Texas, as part of the V-2 rocket team, but after only a few years he was mysteriously traded by the government to work as an engineer for North American Aviation. [There were rumors of "problems"](#) with other Paperclip scientists at White Sands Missile Range. Once Riedel was in the private sector, he had a considerably longer leash, given that the government was not signing his paycheck anymore. Clearly he was valuable to North American Aviation: the company made him director of rocket-engine research. But from the moment he left government service, Riedel was a serious thorn in the CIA's side. A year after the UFO conference, the CIA was still keeping close tabs on Dr. Riedel. In early 1953, the Agency trailed Riedel to one of his lectures in Los Angeles. There, they were shocked to learn that the Paperclip scientist and his UFO-minded colleagues were ["going to execute a planned 'hoax"](#) over the Los Angeles area in order to test the reaction

and reliability of the public in general to unusual aerial phenomena." Mention of a planned hoax went up the chain of command at the CIA and [set off alarms in its upper echelons](#). In a secret memo dated February 9, 1953, declassified in 1993, the CIA's director of the Office of Scientific Intelligence expressed outrage over the company Riedel now kept. But because he was no longer a Paperclip, there was little the CIA could do except follow his moves and those of the men he associated with.

The CIA had also been [trailing a colleague of Riedel named George P. Sutton](#), a fellow North American Aviation rocket scientist and ufologist. When Sutton gave a lecture entitled "Rockets Behind the Iron Curtain," the CIA was shocked to learn that the flying saucer group seemed to know more about UFO sightings inside the Soviet Union than the entire team of CIA agents who had been tasked with monitoring that same information.

Ever since Bedell Smith had taken office in 1950, he'd expressed frustration over how little information the CIA was able to get on UFO reports inside Russia. Joseph Stalin, it appeared, kept all information about UFOs out of the press. Between 1947 and 1952, CIA analysts monitoring the Soviet press found only one single mention of UFOs, in an editorial column that briefly referred to UFOs in the United States. So how did Riedel's group know more about Soviet UFO reports than the CIA knew?

Sufficiently concerned, the CIA instructed Riedel's Paperclip handlers to get him in line. His handler "suggested politely and perhaps indirectly to Dr. Riedel that he disassociate himself from official membership on CSI." But the obstinate scientist refused to cease and desist. What the consequences were for Riedel remains unclear. Whether or not Riedel and his fellow ufologist pulled off their hoax and how he and his colleagues were able to so freely gather information about Soviet UFOs and Soviet rockets behind the Iron Curtain is secreted away in Riedel's Project Paperclip file, most of which remains classified, even after more than fifty years.

By 1957, according to the CIA monograph "CIA's Role in the Study of UFOs," the U-2s accounted for more than half of all UFO sightings reported in the continental United States. Odarenko had been unsuccessful in his bid to be "relieved" of his UFO responsibilities and instead got to work creating CIA policy regarding UFOs. He sent a secret memo to the director of the Office of Scientific Intelligence outlining how he believed the [Agency should handle reports of UFOs](#):

- Keep current files on UFOs: "maintain current knowledge of sightings of unidentified flying objects."
- Deny that the CIA kept current files about UFOs by stating that "the project [was] inactive."
- Divide the explainable UFOs, meaning the U-2 flights, from the inexplicable UFOs: "segregate references to recognizable and explainable phenomena from those which come under the definition of 'unidentified flying objects.'"

The Agency's concerted effort to conceal from Congress and the public its interest in UFOs would, in coming decades, open up a Pandora's box and cause credibility issues

for the CIA. "The concealment of CIA interest [in UFOs] contributed greatly to later charges of a CIA conspiracy and cover-up," wrote Gerald K. Haines, the historian for the National Reconnaissance Office and someone who is often introduced as the CIA's expert on the matter. But to get the UFO monkey off his back, Allen Dulles began a "psychological warfare" campaign of his own. When letters came in from concerned citizens about the sightings, the CIA's policy was to ignore them. When letters came in from UFO groups, the CIA's policy was to monitor the individuals in the group. When letters came in from congressmen or senators, such as the one from Ohio congressman Gordon Scherer in September of 1955, the CIA's policy was to have Director Dulles write a polite note explaining that UFOs were a law enforcement problem and the CIA was specifically barred from enforcing the law. The notes certainly portray [Allen Dulles as an arrogant public servant](#), but they are prized by UFO collectors, who say they prove the CIA's sinister cover-up of extraterrestrial UFOs. Regardless of alleged CIA policy, the public's fascination with UFOs proved more formidable than the CIA had ever bargained for; average citizens simply could not get enough information about mysterious objects streaking across the skies. And the more information they were given, the more they wanted to know and the more questions they asked. It didn't take long for the public to become convinced that the CIA was covering *something* up, which, of course, it was.

The Need-to-Know

Everything that happens at Area 51, when it is happening, is classified as TS/SCI, or top secret/sensitive compartmented information—an enigmatic security policy with [protocols that are also top secret](#). “TS/SCI classification guides are also classified,” says Cargill Hall, historian emeritus for the National Reconnaissance Office; this government espionage agency is so secret that even its name was classified top secret from the time it was founded, in 1958, to its declassification, in 1992. In 2011, most Americans still don’t know what the NRO is or what it does, or that it is a partner organization routinely involved with Area 51, because that is classified information.

Information classified TS/SCI ensures that outsiders don’t know what they don’t know and insiders know only what they have a need-to-know. Winston Churchill famously said of Russia, “It is a riddle, wrapped in a mystery, inside an enigma.” The same can be said about Area 51. In the lesser-known second part of Churchill’s phrase, he said, “But perhaps there is a key. That key is Russian national interest.” Facing a totalitarian government like the Soviet Union’s, where secrets are easily kept, Area 51 had to mirror Soviet secrecy techniques in order to safeguard the U-2. It was in America’s national interest to do so because human intelligence was failing. “We obtain little significant information from classical covert operations inside Russia,” [bemoaned the president’s science advisers](#) in a secret 1954 national security report in which they gunned for “science and technology to improve our intelligence take.”

They got what they wanted at Area 51. By using Soviet-style secrecy protocols for its own operation, and putting these tactics in place out in the Nevada desert, the CIA felt it could give its archenemy a run for its money regarding the element of surprise. Even Air Force transport crews had no idea where they were going when they went to the base. A classified-missions pilot would fly to a set of coordinates over the Mojave Desert and contact a certain UHF frequency called [Sage Control](#). There, a voice at the other end of the radio would deliver increasingly more specific coordinates, ending with a go-ahead to land at a spot nestled inside a circle of mountains where no airstrip was supposed to exist. Only when the aircraft was a few hundred feet off the ground would runway lights flash on.

CIA pilots were kept equally in the dark. Carefully culled from Strategic Air Command bases at Turner Air Force Base, in Georgia, and Bergstrom Air Force Base, in Texas, the men had no idea who they were going to be working for when they signed on. In retrospect it seems easy to recognize the hand of the CIA, but this was not the case in late 1955 when the Agency was just seven years old. [“It was like something out of fiction.”](#) Hervey Stockman recalls. “I was given a date and told to be at Room 215 at the Austin Hotel and

knock on that door at exactly 3:15. So I went down there at the appointed time and knocked on the door. An extremely good-looking guy in a beautiful tweed opened it and said, 'Come on in, Hervey...' That was my first introduction to the Agency."

Hervey Stockman was one of America's most accomplished pilots. He was as fearless as he was gentle, a man who fell in love with airplanes the first time he flew one for the Army Air Corps, shortly after leaving the comforts of Princeton University to fight the Nazis in the Second World War. By the time he arrived at Area 51 for training, part of the first group of seven U-2 fliers called Detachment A, he had already flown 168 combat missions in two wars, World War II and Korea.

Area 51 "was the boonies," Stockman says. "We lived in trailers, three to a trailer as I recall. We couldn't write or call home from out there at Groom Lake." When Stockman's group arrived in January of 1956, there were "probably fifty or so people on the site." The trailers were in walking distance from the hangars, and "there was a training building, which was also a trailer," right next door, which was where Stockman spent most of his time. He remembers the mess hall as being one of the only permanent structures besides the hangars on base. "It was just all desert out there," Stockman remembers. On occasion, wild horses roamed onto the lake bed looking for water or food. "To get to civilization you were pretty dependent on aircraft. There was some road traffic but it was very carefully watched. Security people everywhere."

The identities of the pilots were equally concealed. "We all had pseudonyms. Mine was Sampson... I hated the name Sampson so I asked, Can I use the name Sterritt? I said, 'Sterritt fits me better. I'm a little guy and Sterritt is more my speed.' They said, 'Feel free. If you want to be Sterritt, you're Sterritt.' But for their record keeping I was Sampson. The records are still there... in the basement. And they're under the name Sampson. The Agency was very smart about all of that." The pilots were watched during their time off, not so much to see what the men might be up to as to make sure KGB agents were not watching them. Detachment A pilots were given apartments in Hollywood, California, where they officially lived. During weekends they socialized at the Brown Derby Restaurant. "It was a gathering spot and the security people could keep an eye on us there," Stockman explains. Come Monday morning, when it was time to return to Area 51, the Derby was the rendezvous spot because "it was one of the few places that was always open at five a.m." The majority of the Derby clientele had been up all night; the six very physically fit, clear-eyed pilots with their Air Force haircuts, accompanied by two CIA handlers in sport jackets and bow ties, must have been a sight to behold. From there, the group drove the Cahuenga Pass through the Hollywood Hills to the Burbank airport, where they boarded a Lockheed airplane headed for the secret base. "At the time, we did not know of Lockheed's involvement in the program," Stockman explains. "Even that was concealed from us. We were called 'drivers.' There were a lot of reasons for it. At the time, I don't think any of us really understood why, but that's essentially what we were. We were just, by God, drivers. We were not glory boys." The drivers did not have a need-to-know about anything except how to fly the airplane. Stockman once asked his superiors what the policy would be if he were shot down and captured. "Effectively, we were told that if we were captured and we were pressed by our captors, we could tell them anything and

everything. Because of our lowly position as ‘drivers’ we didn’t know very much.” He said that during training even the name “Groom Lake was not part of our lexicon.”

Across the world, the Russians were busy working on their own form of espionage. If Area 51 had a Communist doppelgänger, it was a remote top secret facility forty miles northeast of Moscow called [NII-88](#). There, a rocket scientist named Sergei Korolev—the Soviet Union’s own Wernher Von Braun—was working on a project that would soon shame American military science and propel the arms and space race into a sprint. Fearing the CIA would assassinate Russia’s key rocket scientist, [Stalin declared Sergei Korolev’s name a state secret](#), which it remained until his death, in 1966. Sergei Korolev was only referred to as Chief Designer, not unlike the way Richard Bissell was known to employees outside the CIA only as Mr. B. Just as insiders called Area 51 the Ranch, NII-88 was known to its scientists as the Bureau. Like Area 51, NII-88 did not exist on the map. Before the Communist Revolution, NII-88 had been a small village called Podlipki, same as the Groom Lake area had once been a little mining enclave called Groom Mine. Both facilities began as outcroppings of tents and warehouses, accessible only to a short list of government elite. Both facilities would develop into multimillion-dollar establishments where [multibillion-dollar espionage platforms](#) would be built and tested, each having the singular purpose of outperforming what was being built on the other side.

In 1956, all the CIA knew of NII-88 was that it was the place where Russia kept dozens of its captured German scientists toiling away on secret science projects. These men were [Russia’s version of America’s Paperclip scientists](#), and they included the four hundred German rocket scientists who’d been plied with alcohol and then seized in the middle of the night—just as former Messerschmitt pilot Fritz Wendel had said.

The CIA first learned about NII-88’s existence in late 1955, when the Soviets decided they had milked their former Third Reich scientists for all they were worth and began sending them back home. When the CIA learned of Russia’s repatriation program, the Agency leaped at the intelligence opportunity and initiated a program called [Operation Dragon Return](#). CIA officers were dispatched to Germany to hunt down the scientists who had been working in Russia, and the information gleaned from the returnees was considerable. It included technical data on Russian advances in radio technology, electronics, and armaments design. But to the CIA’s great frustration, when it came to NII-88, the repatriated German scientists claimed to have no clear idea about what was really going on there. It seemed that NII-88, like Area 51, worked with strict need-to-know protocols, and the German scientists hadn’t been cleared with a need-to-know. All the Germans could tell the CIA agents debriefing them was that Moscow’s top scientists and engineers were developing something there that was highly classified. Unlike in America, where German rocket scientists were put in charge of America’s most classified missile program at White Sands Missile Range, German scientists in Russia had been relegated to the second tier. With no hard facts about the extraordinary technological enterprise that was under way at NII-88, the CIA was left guessing. The speculation was that the Russians were developing intercontinental ballistic missiles, or ICBMs, that could reach the United States by traveling over the top of the world.

The missile threat needed to be addressed, and fast. By 1956 Americans were

constantly being reminded about this foreboding Red menace by the media. A January 1956 issue of *Time* magazine made Soviet missile technology its big story. The cover featured a drawing of an anthropomorphic rocket, complete with eyeballs and a brain, carrying a nuclear bomb and bearing down on a major U.S. city. The magazine's analysts declared that in a little more than five years, Russians would be winning the arms race. The editors went so far as to prophesize a nuclear strike on the Pacific Ocean that would send a "cloud of radioactive death drift[ing] downwind" over America. Making the threat seem worse was the fact that there was no end to the confidence and bravado projected by the Soviet premier. "We're making missiles like sausages," Nikita Khrushchev declared on TV. If Russia succeeded in making these ICBMs, as was feared, then Russia really could place a nuclear warhead in the missile's nose and strike anywhere in the United States. "I am quite sure that we shall have very soon a guided missile with a hydrogen-bomb warhead which would hit any point in the world," Khrushchev boasted shortly after the *Time* magazine article appeared.

While the Soviets were concentrating efforts on advancing missile technology, the powerful General LeMay had convinced the Joint Chiefs of Staff that long-range bombers were a far better way for America to go to war. LeMay was not shy about expressing his disdain for missiles; he brazenly opposed them. LeMay's top research-and-development commander, General Thomas S. Power, told Pentagon officials that missiles "cannot cope with contingencies" the way bomber pilots could. Another one of LeMay's generals, Clarence S. Irvine, stated, "I don't know how you show... teeth with a missile." While the Joint Chiefs were deciding whether it was better to build up America's arsenal with missiles or bombers, the nuclear warheads continued to roll off the production lines at Sandia, in New Mexico, with astonishing speed. Ten years earlier, in 1946, the U.S. nuclear stockpile had totaled two. In 1955, that stockpile had risen to 2,280 nuclear bombs. The reason for LeMay's opposition to the missile programs was obvious: if the Pentagon started pumping more money into missiles that could carry nuclear warheads, LeMay's bombers would lose importance. As it was, he was already losing money and men to the overhead reconnaissance nonsense being spearheaded by the CIA's Richard Bissell over at Area 51.

In early 1956, the Air Force retaliated against Khrushchev's war of words with the kind of response General Curtis LeMay knew best: threat, intimidation, and force. LeMay scrambled nearly a thousand B-47 bombers in a simulated attack on Russia using bomber planes that were capable of carrying nuclear bombs. Air Force pilots took off from air bases in Alaska and Greenland, charged over the Arctic, and flew to the very edge of Soviet borders before U-turning and racing home. This must have been a terrifying experience for the Soviets, who had no idea that LeMay's bombers were planning on turning around. Further provoking them, on March 21, 1956, LeMay's bomber pilots began flying top secret missions as part of Operation Home Run, classified until 2001. From Thule Air Force Base in Greenland, LeMay sent modified versions of America's fastest bomber, the B-47, over the Arctic Circle and into Russia's Siberian tundra to spy. The purpose was to probe for electronic intelligence, or ELINT, seeing how Soviet radar worked by forcing Soviet radars to turn on. Once the Soviets started tracking LeMay's

bombers, technicians gathered the ELINT to decipher back home. Asked later about these dangerous provocations, LeMay remarked, "With a bit more luck, we could have started World War III."

Sam Pizzo worked as a navigator during the SAC espionage operation, planning flights over nuclear facilities, missile sites, naval installations, and radar sites. The 156 missions took place from March 21 to May 10, 1956, where the Russian landscape meets the Arctic Ocean, which made for total darkness twenty-four hours a day. The temperature outside varied between -35 degrees and -70 degrees Fahrenheit. Sam Pizzo recalls those Cold War missions: "Ambarchik, Tiksi, Novaya Zemlya, these were the territories we covered. This was the real deal. Our missions were not twelve miles off the coastline, to study electromagnetic wave propagation [as was reported]. We went in." An undetermined number of pilots were shot down. Several were believed to have survived their bailouts, only to be taken prisoner and thrown into the Russian gulags. Everyone knew that suffering a gulag imprisonment was a fate worse than death. The missions were so top secret, Pizzo explained, that very few people at Thule had any idea where the pilots were flying. As a navigator, Pizzo was among the elite group who charted the pilots' paths. Flying over the Arctic required a very specific expertise in navigation, a different skill set than was used anywhere else on the globe. At the top of the world, the magnetic field fluctuates radically, which means compasses simply do not work. Instead, navigators like Sam Pizzo used celestial shots of the North Star and drew maps accordingly. This was a skill that Pizzo would later use when he was recruited for work at Area 51.

As Operation Home Run continued, the CIA worried that General LeMay's aggressive missions were a national security threat. "[Soviet leaders may have become convinced](#) that the U.S. actually has intentions of military aggression in the near future," a nervous CIA panel warned the president in the winter of 1956. And President Eisenhower's science advisers told him that flying U-2s over Russia could not wait. The Agency's Russian nuclear weapons expert Herbert Miller, the man who accompanied Bissell on that first scouting trip to Area 51, explained that no other program "can so quickly bring so much vital information at so little risk and so little cost."

The CIA planned to have the first U-2 flights photograph the facilities where the Agency believed Russia was building its bombers, missiles, nuclear warheads, and surface-to-air missiles. And the U-2 pilots would seek out the location of the elusive facility called NII-88. Having completed pilot training at Area 51, four pilot detachments were ready to go, fully prepared to penetrate deep into denied Soviet territory. There, they would be able to photograph half of the Soviet Union's 6.5-million-square-mile landmass. But it had to happen fast.

[President Eisenhower was gravely concerned](#). "I fear if one of these planes gets shot down [we run] the risk of starting a nuclear war," he wrote in his White House journal. [Richard Bissell promised the president](#) that there was no chance of shooting down the U-2 and very little chance of tracking it. Besides, if the U-2 did get shot down, Bissell said, it would most likely disintegrate on impact with the ground, killing the pilot and destroying the airplane.

The Moscow air show on June 24, 1956, foreshadowed the breaking of promises

made to the president. In a show of ceremony, Soviet premier Nikita Khrushchev invited air force generals from twenty-eight foreign delegations, including General Nathan Twining, the U.S. Air Force chief of staff. For all the fanfare and bravado of the bombers and fighter jets swooping across the skies, the more significant event occurred a few hours later, at a wooden picnic table in Gorky Park. There, General Twining and the leaders of the British and French delegations sat and listened to Khrushchev deliver a long-winded speech. Partway through, the Soviet premier raised his vodka glass and made a toast "in defense of peace." Years later, retired Russian colonel [Alexander Orlov](#) [related](#) what happened next: "In the midst of his toast [Khrushchev] turned to General Twining and said, 'Today we showed you our aircraft. But would you like a look at our missiles?'" Shocked by the offer, General Twining said, "Yes." Khrushchev shot back, "First show us your aircraft and stop sending intruders into our airspace." Khrushchev was referring to the bombers sent over the Arctic Circle by General LeMay. "[We will shoot down uninvited guests](#). We will get all of your [airplanes]. They are flying coffins!"

It was a terribly awkward moment underscored by the mercurial Soviet leader's abrupt shift in tone, from applauding peace to talking about shooting down American airplanes. General Twining had been set up for a confrontation. Things got worse when Khrushchev looked around the picnic table for reactions and saw a U.S. military attaché pouring his drink under a bush. "Here I am speaking about peace and friendship, but what does your military attaché do?" Khrushchev shouted at Ambassador Charles Bohlen, then demanded that the attaché drink a penalty toast. Once the man had swallowed his vodka, he got up and quickly left the picnic. If Khrushchev thought the Americans were trying to insult him in the park, [he would be even more enraged](#) two weeks later when he learned the CIA had sent a U-2 directly over the Kremlin to take photographs of the house in which Nikita Khrushchev slept.

Area 51 had a Washington, DC, complement for the U-2 program, an office on the fifth floor of an unmarked CIA facility at 1717 H Street. This served as the command center for Project Aquatone's first, secret missions over the Soviet Union. It was from this clandestine facility that, shortly before midnight on July 3, 1956, Richard Bissell made a historic telephone call over a secure line. He reached the U-2's secret base in Wiesbaden, West Germany, and gave the commander the authorization to proceed. There, in a nearby room, Hervey Stockman sat breathing pure oxygen from a ventilator as a flight surgeon monitored the levels of nitrogen in his blood. Outside the door, [CIA men armed with machine guns](#) stood guard. Given the time difference, where Stockman was sitting it was already the following morning, making it the anniversary of America's independence. The nation was 180 years old. If all went well, Stockman was about to become the first pilot to penetrate the Iron Curtain's airspace. He would fly all the way to Leningrad, around the coast, and back down, putting him forever in the record books as the first man to fly over the Soviet Union in a U-2.

Stockman and his U-2 took off from Wiesbaden a little after 6:00 a.m., the pilot and his airplane moving skyward in a dramatic incline. The U-2 rose at a remarkable fifteen thousand feet a minute, so steep a gradient that for airmen on the ground who were unfamiliar with the airplane, it must have looked like Stockman was about to pitch back

and stall. Halfway to altitude, Stockman briefly let the fuselage even out, allowing his body fluids and the fluids in the fuel tanks to expand and adjust. Once, a U-2 pilot had ascended too quickly, and his fuel tanks exploded. The pilot was killed. After a few additional minutes of ascent, Stockman arrived at cruising altitude. The sky above him was black and he could see stars. Below him, the Earth curved. It would be an eight-and-a-half-hour journey without a sip of water or a bite of food. In the U-2's camera bay, Stockman transported a five-hundred-pound Hycon camera fitted with the most advanced photo lenses ever devised in America. To prove how accurate the camera was, Bissell had sent a U-2 from Groom Lake on a flight over President Eisenhower's Pennsylvania farm. From thirteen and a half miles up, the U-2's cameras were able to take clear photographs of [Eisenhower's cows](#) as they drank water from troughs.

After several hours, [Stockman approached Russia's submarine city](#). "I was supposed to turn the cameras on when I reached Leningrad," Stockman recalls. "I was to fly along photographing the naval installations there as well as a couple of airfields that were all part of what we had been led to believe might hold long-range Soviet bombers." But there were no long-range bombers to be found. The famous bomber gap, it turned out, was false. What Stockman filmed on the first overflight into Russia provided the CIA with critical facts on an issue that had previously been the subject of contentious debate. Russian weapons expert [Herbert Miller wrote a triumphant memo](#) to Eisenhower after the film in Stockman's camera was interpreted, explaining just how many "new discoveries have come to light." Stockman's flight provided the Agency with four hundred thousand square miles of coverage. "Many new airfields previously unknown, industrial complexes of a size heretofore unsuspected were revealed... Fighter aircraft at the five most important bases covered were drawn up in orderly rows as if for formal inspection on parade." What astonished Miller was just how current the information was. "We know that the guns in the anti-aircraft batteries sighted were in a horizontal position rather than pointed upwards and 'on the ready.' We know that some harvests were being brought in, and that the small truck gardens were being worked." They denoted "real intentions, objectives and qualities of the Soviet Union." Hervey Stockman explains it this way: "What it portrayed was that as a people they were not all geared up to go to war. They were leading a normal Russian life, so that behind this 'Iron Curtain' there wasn't all this beating of drums and movement of tanks and everything that was envisioned. They were going about their way over there."

Stockman's photos made the CIA ecstatic and justified the entire U-2 program, as a flurry of top secret memos dated July 17, 1956, revealed. "For the first time we are really able to say that we have an understanding of what was going on in the Soviet Union, on July 4, 1956," Miller wrote. But as beneficial as Stockman's flight was for the CIA, the results proved disastrous for President Eisenhower's relationship with Nikita Khrushchev. Despite Bissell's assurances to the contrary, the U-2s were tracked by the Soviets' air-defense warning systems from the moment they hit the radar screens. Once the film from Stockman's flight was developed, CIA photo interpreters determined that the Soviets had attempted more than twenty interceptions of Stockman's mission. "MiG-17 and MiG-19 fighters were photographed desperately trying to reach the U-2, only to have to fall back to an altitude where the air was dense enough for them to restart their flamed-out, oxygen-

starved engines," photo interpreter Dino Brugioni told *Air and Space* magazine after the U-2 program was declassified, in 1998.

When Khrushchev learned the Americans had betrayed him, he was furious. After the picnic at Gorky Park, Khrushchev had agreed to spend the Fourth of July at Spaso House, the official residence of Ambassador Charles Bohlen, located just down the street from the Kremlin. When Khrushchev learned that while he had been celebrating the American Independence Day with the country's ambassador, a U-2 had been soaring over Russia, he was humiliated. "The Americans [are] chortling over our impotence," [Khrushchev told his son, Sergei](#), a twenty-one-year-old aspiring missile designer. But in addition to the personal affront they caused Khrushchev, the U-2 overflights greatly embarrassed the Soviet Union's military machine. Soviet MiG fighter jets couldn't get a shot anywhere near Hervey Stockman's U-2, which flew miles above the MiG performance ceiling, just as Colonel Leghorn had predicted. In 1956, the land-based Soviet surface-to-air missiles could not get a shot up high enough to knock the airplane out of the sky. America's spy plane had flown over Russia with impunity. And if that fact became known, the Soviet Union would look weak.

Weighing the options—embarrass his own military, embarrass the American president, or say nothing—Khrushchev chose to remain silent, at least as far as the international press was concerned. As a result, the first U-2 overflights were kept secret between the two governments. But they seriously strained already tenuous relations. Eisenhower ordered the CIA to stop all overflights inside the Soviet Union until further notice. Even worse, the president told Richard Bissell that he had "[lost enthusiasm for the CIA's aerial espionage program](#).

Back at Area 51, Bissell had a lot to worry about. Concerned that his U-2 program was going to be canceled by the president, [he hired a team to analyze](#) the probability of a Soviet shoot-down of the U-2. The news was grim: the Soviets were advancing their surface-to-air missile technology so rapidly that in all likelihood, within eighteen months they would be able to get their SA-2 missile up to seventy thousand feet. Bissell decided that the only way to keep his program aloft was to hide the U-2 from Soviet radar by inventing some kind of radar-absorbing paint. Bissell shared his idea with Lockheed's Kelly Johnson, who told him that [painting the U-2 was a bad idea](#). Paint was heavy, and the U-2 flew so high because of how light it was, Johnson explained. The weight that paint would add to the aircraft would result in a loss of fifteen hundred feet of altitude. Bissell didn't want to hear that. So he went to the president's scientific adviser James Killian and asked him to put together a group of scientists who could make the CIA some radar-absorbing paint. These scientists, who worked out of Harvard University and MIT's Lincoln Laboratory and were called the Boston Group, told Bissell they could get him what he wanted. It was a radical idea that had never been tested before. The scientists and engineers at MIT prided themselves on meeting challenges that other scientists believed were impossible.

There was a second serious problem facing Richard Bissell in the summer of 1956 and that was General LeMay. Impressed with the spy plane's performance, LeMay was now angling for control of the airplane. Under a program called Project Dragon Lady,

LeMay ordered a fleet of thirty-one U-2s specifically for the Air Force. To keep the program secret from Congress, the [Air Force transferred money over to the CIA](#), which meant that while working to head off LeMay's usurpation, Bissell simultaneously had to act as the go-between between the Air Force and Lockheed for the slightly modified U-2s. With these new Air Force airplanes came a demand for more "drivers," which meant the arrival of two new groups of pilots at Area 51—those picked for CIA missions and others chosen for Air Force ones. [Among those selected](#) for Air Force missions was Anthony "Tony" Bevacqua.

"I may have been the only U-2 pilot at Area 51 who never made a model airplane as a kid," Bevacqua recalls. Instead, he had spent all his time devouring books. His obsessive reading of paperbacks, usually those by Zane Grey or Erle Gardner, helped offset his fear that he be unable to read English, like his father. The son of Sicilian immigrants, Bevacqua was the youngest pilot to fly the U-2 at Groom Lake, which he did in the winter of 1957 at the age of twenty-four. But before the handsome, vibrant Bevacqua wound up at the CIA's secret base, he was the roommate of another dashing young pilot whose name would soon become known around the world.

Before the two fighter pilots arrived at Area 51 to fly the U-2, Bevacqua and Francis Gary Powers were a couple of type A pilots with the 508th Strategic Fighter Wing at Turner Air Force Base in Georgia. They lived in a rented four-bedroom house situated two miles from the main gate. Both had been flying F-84 fighter jets for almost two years when one day Powers, whom everybody called Frank, just up and disappeared. "There were rumors that Frank had gone off on some kind of secret program," Bevacqua says, "but this was just talk, not something you could really sink your teeth into." A few months later Bevacqua was approached by a squadron leader and asked if he wanted to volunteer for "an interesting flight program."

"About what?" Bevacqua asked. The recruiter said he could not say, only that it would involve flying and that Bevacqua would have to leave the Air Force but could later return. The program, he was told, needed "a volunteer." It was important, the recruiter said, a mysterious edge to his voice. Bevacqua signed on.

He was flown to the Berger Brothers Company, located in a nondescript building in New Haven, Connecticut, not far from Yale University, that was filled with seamstresses making girdles and bras. What was he doing in there? he wondered. He was led through the workstations and into a back room. The unlikely supplier had a perfect cover for CIA-contract work: making ladies' underwear. In reality, the company, later renamed the David Clark Company, had already proven itself thousands of times over. During World War II, it made parachutes for U.S. Army Air Forces and Navy pilots.

In a clandestine back room, behind the brassiere assembly lines, Tony Bevacqua was fitted for a high-altitude flight suit specifically tailored for his physique. For the duration of his contract, Bevacqua would be required to maintain his weight within ounces. An ill-fitting suit could mean death for a pilot and the inevitable loss of an airplane. Bevacqua understood the concept of need-to-know and was aware that it prohibited him from asking any questions about what the suit was for. But he knew enough about partial-pressure suits to realize that whatever aircraft he was going to be piloting was going to be flying

very high indeed.

His next stop was Wright-Patterson Air Force Base for a battery of physical and psychological procedures. There, Bevacqua underwent a series of endurance tests. Some were familiar but others he found thought-provokingly strange. All U-2 pilots were put into the high-altitude chamber to simulate the experience of sitting in a cockpit in a flight suit that your life depended on. At 63,000 feet, blood boils because there is not enough pressure to sustain oxygen in the bloodstream. There was another test called the Furnace in which U-2 pilots were left in a room that was significantly hotter than a hot sauna. Bevacqua was spared that one but he did have liquids pumped into his every orifice, first water and then some kind of mineral oil. Many U-2 pilots were hooked up to odd machines and others were given electroshock. Bevacqua got what he called the dreaded corpse test instead. He recalled how he "was put in a small space, my arms crossed over my chest like I was in a casket at a morgue. It was absolutely impossible for me to move my extremities. I was told to hyperventilate for as long as I could."

Bevacqua surmised that he would be chosen for the prestigious, top secret assignment only if he was able to pass every test. He wanted the job badly and was entirely willing to push himself physically to the edge. "I came within a breath of passing out during the corpse test," he explains. "After they said I could breathe, the attendants then pulled at my arms and legs but there was no way they could move or bend my extremities. As I breathed oxygen back into my body my cheeks loosened and then the rest of my body gradually returned to normal." After a few minutes Bevacqua's vital signs stabilized. "Apparently, this test was to see if I would have a seizure," he explains.

The next test was a freezing experiment. "I was asked to put my arms in a bucket of ice for as long as I could stand it. I don't remember what happened exactly. Probably good that I don't. I remember that I felt like a guinea pig." Unknown to Bevacqua or the rest of America, the division of the [aviation medicine school at Wright-Patterson](#) that was responsible for testing the U-2 pilots was run by Project Paperclip doctors, doctors with controversial histories. The Air Force had been willing to turn a blind eye to the scientists' past work in order to get where it wanted to go in the future, which was the upper atmosphere and outer space. The work that these Paperclip doctors had done during the war would later become a shameful stain on the Air Force record.

In 1980, journalist Linda Hunt published an article in the *Bulletin of the Atomic Scientists* revealing publicly for the first time that several of the nation's leading German American aerospace doctors had [previously worked at Nazi concentration camps](#). There, they had obtained aviation medicine data by [conducting barbaric experiments](#) on thousands of Jews, Poles, Gypsies, and other people considered disposable. Many newspaper articles and medical papers followed, documenting how Project Paperclip came to be and raising important questions about how much the government had known about the scientists' sordid pasts. The issues were well reported but often ignored by the public because of the heinous subject matter involved. The idea that the American military and its intelligence agents would overlook war crimes and crimes against humanity in the name of advancing American science was, and continues to be, an odious one. It is likely that this is the reason why the federal government has never fully declassified the

Operation Paperclip files. In 1999, a government panel released 126,000 pages of previously classified documents on former German Paperclips, but the panel also revealed that there were over [six hundred million still-classified](#) pages waiting "for review." No significant release has occurred since.

In March of 1957, Bevacqua finally passed his tests and arrived at Area 51, where the living conditions had improved. The canvas tents had been upgraded to Quonset huts. There were working showers. The mess hall had been expanded, and someone had built a makeshift bar. But the protocols for flying were as undeveloped as they'd been when Ray Goudey and others were first figuring out how to get the U-2 to fly high. The training that Tony Bevacqua experienced at Area 51 was unlike anything he had ever seen on an Air Force base. The CIA method to train pilots on the [U-2 was as radical and as unorthodox](#) as an Air Force pilot could imagine. At Turner Air Force Base, Bevacqua had learned to fly F-84s the Air Force way. That meant first diligently studying the aircraft manuals, then practicing in a flight simulator, then practicing in a trainer, and finally going up in the airplane with an instructor. At Area 51, there was no manual for the U-2, no flight simulator, no trainer, and no instructor. "The original U-2s had only one seat and one engine, which meant the CIA instructor pilot gave you a lesson with your feet on the ground," Bevacqua explains. Flying this strange and secret spy plane came without a morsel of bureaucracy, never mind basic rules, making the overall experience profound. "You were basically given a talk by an instructor pilot. Then you were given a piece of cardboard with a checklist on the front side, and fuel and oxygen graphs on the back. Then it was time to fly. And that was that."

Coupled with the secrecy protocols, the experience for pilots at Area 51 verged on sublime. No one but his old roommate from Turner AFB, Francis Gary Powers, knew who Tony Bevacqua really was. At Area 51 he went by only a pilot number and his first name. His family members had no idea where he was, nor would they find out about his secret missions for decades to come. As for future assignments, very few people were told where Air Force pilots were headed in the U-2—including the pilots themselves. What everyone knew was that pilots who got shot down over enemy territory were almost always tortured for information. This meant that the less you knew as a pilot, the better it was for everyone involved.

Bevacqua couldn't wait for an assignment. For this small group of pilots—only 25 percent of candidates passed the physical tests—a U-2 mission carried with it a sacred sense of national pride. Tony Bevacqua was living the American dream and protecting it at the same time. He was not someone who ever forgot for a moment how lucky he was. "Always make the most of your opportunities," Bevacqua's Italian-speaking father had told him as a child. Tony Bevacqua had done just that. He couldn't have asked for a better opportunity. He was one of America's most important spy plane pilots. He was helping to save the free world.

By the winter of 1957, the Boston Group had completed what Richard Bissell wanted in radar-absorbing paint. Bissell received the paint and gave it to Lockheed engineers at Area 51. He asked them to coat the fuselage of several U-2s with it, which they did. Bissell understood that Kelly Johnson disapproved of the radar-absorbing-paint program, which

he said made his U-2s "dirty birds." But Bissell was under too much presidential pressure to deal with the watchful eye of Kelly Johnson at this point. To measure how the dirty birds performed against radar, Bissell hired a different company to measure the radar returns, the defense contractor EG&G.

EG&G is an enigma in its own right. Beginning in 1947, EG&G was the most powerful defense contractor in the nation that no one had ever heard of. In many ways, this still remains the case in 2011. The early anonymity was intended. It was cultivated to help make secret-keeping easier. Originally called Edgerton, Germeshausen, and Grier, EG&G had once been a small engineering company run by three MIT professors. In 1927, Dr. Harold "Doc" Edgerton invented stop-motion photography, which utilized another of his patented inventions, the strobe light. [Edgerton's famous stop-motion photographs](#) include one of a bullet passing through an apple, a drop of water splashing on a countertop, and a hummingbird frozen in flight. Edgerton was fond of saying that his career began because he wanted to make time stand still. EG&G got its first known set of defense contracts during World War II, when Doc Edgerton's strobe lights and photographer's flashbulb were used to light up the ground during nighttime aerial reconnaissance missions, rendering the age-old flare obsolete. Thanks to Doc Edgerton, fliers like Colonel Richard Leghorn were able to photograph Normandy before D-day.

[Kenneth J. Germeshausen](#) worked in high-energy pulse theory at MIT. He held more than fifty patents, including a number in radar. Together with the company's third partner, Herbert Grier, Germeshausen developed the firing system for the Hiroshima and Nagasaki nuclear bombs. The Manhattan Project contracts came to the three professors because of their affiliation with Vannevar Bush, the former dean of engineering at MIT and later the man in charge of the Manhattan Project.

In addition to the firing systems on the nuclear bombs, which were based on a simple signal-switching relay system called the DN-11 relay, EG&G handled the defense contract to take millions of stop-motion photographs of nuclear bomb explosions in the Pacific and at the Nevada Test Site. It was from these photographs, and from these photographs only, that EG&G scientists could determine for the Atomic Energy Commission and the Department of Defense the exact yield, or power, of an exploded nuclear bomb. For decades a great majority of [the most highly classified engineering jobs](#) related to nuclear weapons testing went to EG&G. In the 1960s, when special engineering teams were needed to clean up deadly radioactive waste that was the result of these nuclear tests, the contracts went to EG&G as well. They were trusted implicitly, and EG&G's operations were quintessential black. They also had other businesses, such as radar testing. In the early 1950s, EG&G ran a radar-testing facility approximately thirty miles south of Area 51, at Indian Springs. Very little information is known about that period or about what EG&G was working on, as the data remains classified in EG&G's unique Restricted Data files. At Bissell's behest, in 1957 [EG&G agreed to set up a radar range](#) on the outskirts of Area 51 to measure radar returns for the dirty-bird project. In a CIA monograph about the U-2, declassified in 1998, the EG&G tracking station just outside Groom Lake is alleged to be "little more than a series of radar sets and a trailer containing instrumentation" where engineers could record data and analyze results. And yet the exact location of this "small

testing facility" has been redacted from the otherwise declassified U-2 record. Why? The key term is EG&G. Giving away too much information about EG&G could inadvertently open a can of worms. No one but an elite has a need-to-know where any exterior EG&G facilities are located at Area 51—specifically, whether they are located outside the blueprint of the base.

And so, in April of 1957, with EG&G radar specialists tracking his aircraft's radar returns, [Lockheed test pilot Robert Sieker](#) took one of the newly painted U-2s to the skies over Groom Lake. His orders were to see how high he could get the dirty bird to climb. Sieker took off from Area 51 and flew for almost ninety miles without incident when suddenly, in a valley near Pioche, the Boston Group's paint caused the airplane to overheat, spin out of control, and crash. Sieker was able to eject but was killed when a piece of the spinning aircraft hit him in the head. Kelly Johnson was right. It was a bad idea to try to retrofit the U-2. CIA search teams took four days to locate Sieker's body and the wreckage of the plane. The crash had attracted the watchful eye of the press, and the U-2's cover story, that it was a weather research plane, wore thin. Halfway across the country, a headline at the *Chicago Daily Tribune* read "Secrecy Veils High-Altitude Research Jet; Lockheed U-2 Called Super Snooper."

A pilot was dead, and the camouflage paint had made the U-2 more dangerous, not more stealthy. Bissell knew he needed to act fast. He was losing control of the U-2 spy plane program and everything he had created at Area 51. His next idea, part genius and part hubris, was to petition the president for an entirely new spy plane. The CIA needed a better, faster, more technologically advanced aircraft that would break scientific barriers and trick Soviet radars into thinking it wasn't there. This new spy plane Bissell had in mind would fly higher than ninety thousand feet and have stealth features built in from pencil to plane. Bissell was taking a major gamble with his billion-dollar request. Bringing an entirely new black budget spy plane program to the president's attention at a time when the president was upset with the results of the previous work done at Area 51 was either madness or brilliance, depending on one's point of view. But just as Richard Bissell began presenting plans for his radical and ambitious new project to the president, a national security crisis overwhelmed the country. On October 4, 1957, the Soviets launched the world's first satellite, a 184-pound silver orb called Sputnik 1. This was the secret that Sergei Korolev had been working on at Area 51's Communist doppelgänger, NII-88.

At first, the White House tried to downplay the fact that the Soviets had beat the Americans into space. Eisenhower, at his country home in Pennsylvania for the weekend, didn't immediately comment on the event. But the following morning, the *New York Times* ran a headline of half-inch-high capital letters across all six columns, a spot historically reserved for the declarations of war.

SOMET FIRES EARTH SATELLITE INTO SPACE; IT IS CIRCLING THE GLOBE AT 18,000 MPH;
SPHERE TRACKED IN 4 CROSSINGS OVER U.S.

A satellite launch meant the Russians now had a rocket with enough propulsion and

guidance to hit a target anywhere in the world. So much for the Paperclips Wernher Von Braun and Ernst Steinhoff being the most competent rocket scientists in the world. “[As it beeped in the sky](#), Sputnik 1 created a crisis of confidence that swept the country like a windblown forest fire,” Eisenhower’s science adviser James Killian later recalled. British reporters at the *Guardian* warned, “We must be prepared to be told [by Russia] what the other side of the moon looks like.” French journalists homed in on America’s “disillusion and bitter[ness]” at the crushing space-race defeat. The French underscored America’s scientific shame. “The Americans have little experience with humiliation in the technical domain,” read the article in *Le Figaro*. Because members of the public had no idea about the CIA’s U-2 spy plane program, they believed that with Sputnik, the Russians could now learn all of America’s secrets, while America remained in the dark about theirs. For twenty-one days, Sputnik circled the Earth at a speed of 18,000 mph until its radio signal finally faded and died.

In deciding the best course of action, the president turned back to his science advisers. In the month following Sputnik, a new position was created for James Killian—special assistant to the president for science and technology—and for the next two years Killian would meet with the president almost every day. This became a defining moment for Richard Bissell. For as depressing as his Area 51 prospects had seemed only a month before, the news of Sputnik was, ironically for the CIA, a harbinger of good news. James Killian adored Richard Bissell; they’d been friends for over a decade. Immediately after the Russians launched Sputnik, [Killian and Bissell found themselves](#) working closely together again. Only this time, they weren’t teaching economics to university students. The two men would work hand in glove to launch America’s most [formidable top secret billion-dollar spy plane](#), to be built and test-flown at Area 51. [Advancing science and technology for military purposes](#) was now at the very top of the president’s list of priorities. With James Killian on his side, Bissell inadvertently found himself in the extraordinary position of getting almost whatever he wanted from the president of the United States. And as long as what Richard Bissell built at Area 51 could humiliate the Russians and show them who was boss, this included a bottomless budget, infinite manpower, total secrecy, and ultimate control.

Atomic Accidents

Richard Bissell once said that setting up Area 51 inside a nuclear testing facility kept the curiosity-seekers at bay. With Operation Plumbbob, a 1957 atomic test series that involved thirty consecutive nuclear explosions, he got more than he bargained for. With the arms race in full swing, the Department of Defense had decided it was just a matter of time before an airplane transporting an atomic bomb would crash on American soil, unleashing a radioactive disaster the likes of which the world had never seen. In the twenty-first century, this kind of weapon would be referred to as a dirty bomb.

The dirty bomb menace posed a growing threat to the internal security of the country, one the Pentagon wanted to make less severe by testing the nightmare scenario first. The organization needed to do this in a controlled environment, away from the urban masses, in total secrecy. No one outside the project, absolutely no one, could know. Officials from the Armed Forces Special Weapons Project decided that the perfect place to do this was Area 51, inside the Dreamland airspace, about four or five miles northwest of Groom Lake. If the dirty bomb was set off outside the legal perimeter of the Nevada Test Site, secrecy was all but guaranteed. As far as specifics were concerned, there was an apocalyptic prerequisite the likes of which no government had ever dealt with before. Weapons testers needed "a site that could be relinquished for 20,000 years."

Code-named the 57 Project, and later Project 57, the Atomic Energy Commission, the U.S. Air Force, and EG&G would work together to simulate an Air Force airplane crash involving an XW-25 nuclear warhead—a crash in which radioactive particles would "accidentally" be dispersed on the ground. The land around the mock crash site would be contaminated by plutonium, which, according to scientists, would take 24,100 years to decay by half. At the time, scientists had no idea what accidental plutonium dispersal in open air would do to beings and things in the element's path. The 57 Project was a test that would provide critical data to that end. There were further prerequisites, ones that had initially narrowed the possibilities of usable land to that within the Nevada Test Site. The place needed to contain "no preexisting contamination," to be reasonably flat, and to cover approximately fifty square miles. Ideally, it would be a dry lake valley, "preferably a site where mountain-valley drainage currents would induce large amount of shear," or flow. It had to be as far away as possible from prying eyes, but most important, it had to be a place where there was no possibility that the public could learn that officials were even considering such a catastrophic scenario, let alone preparing for one. It was decided that in press releases the 57 Project would only be referred to as "a safety test," nothing more. With a doctor named James Shreve Jr. in charge of things, the project had an almost wholesome ring to it.

One dry lake bed originally considered was Papoose Lake, located six miles due south of Groom Lake, also just outside the test site. But soil samples taken by weapons planners revealed the earth there already had trace amounts of plutonium, owing to previous nuclear explosions conducted inside the test site in 1951, 1952, and 1953, five miles to the west at another dry lake bed called Frenchman Flat. Further complicating matters, Papoose Lake was the subject of contention between the Atomic Energy Commission and two local farmers, the Stewart brothers. The [dispute was over eight dead cows](#) that had been grazing at Papoose Lake in March of 1953 when a twenty-four-kiloton nuclear bomb called Nancy was detonated nearby. Nancy sent radioactive fallout on livestock across the region, including those grazing at Papoose Lake. Sixteen of the Stewart brothers' horses died from acute radiation poisoning, along with their cows. [The commission had paid the Stewarts](#) three hundred dollars for each dead horse but stubbornly refused to pay the men for the dead cows. Instead, a lieutenant colonel from the Army's Veterinary Corps, Bernard F. Trum, wrote a long, jargon-filled letter to the farmers stating there was "nothing to indicate that [the blast] was the actual cause of the [cows'] deaths." Instead, the commission insisted the cows' deaths were "text book cases... of vitamin-A deficiency."

Shamelessly, the commission had a second doctor, a bovine specialist with Los Alamos, to certify in writing that "Grass Tetany" or "general lack of good forage" had killed the cows, not the atomic explosion over the hill. To add insult to injury, the Atomic Energy Commission told the Stewart brothers that its Los Alamos scientists had subjected their own cows to atomic blasts in New Mexico during the original Trinity bomb test in 1945. Those cows, the commission stated, were "burnt by the radioactivity over their entire dorsum and yet have remained in excellent health for years." In essence, the commission was saying, Our nuked cows are alive; yours should be too.

The Stewart brothers remained unconvinced and requested a note of explanation they could understand. In 1957, as weapons planners were determining where to hold Project 57, the dispute remained unresolved. Fearing that any attention brought to Papoose Lake might ignite the unresolved Stewart brothers' controversy, officials crossed the Papoose Lake land parcel off the location list.

The focus narrowed to a large, flat expanse in the Groom Lake valley, the same valley where the CIA was running its U-2 program. There, to the northwest of Area 51, lay a perfect sixteen-square-mile flat parcel of land—relatively virgin territory that no one was using. A record search determined that all grazing rights to the area had been "extinguished," meaning that local farmers and ranchers were already prohibited from allowing their livestock to roam there. Then weapons-test planners made an [aerial inspection of Groom Lake](#). Colonel E. A. Blue joined the project's director, Dr. Shreve, in an overhead scout. In a classified memo, the two men joked about how they spotted a herd of cows roaming around the chosen site, "[60 to 80 cattle who hadn't gotten the word.](#)" and that "somehow information must be gotten to them and their masters." Gallows humor for cows.

A land-use deal between the Department of Defense, which controlled the area for the Air Force, and the Atomic Energy Commission, the civilian organization that controlled the

test site, was struck. As it was with the rest of the loosely defined Area 51, this desired land parcel lay conveniently just outside the legal boundaries of the Nevada Test Site, to the northeast. This allowed the 57 Project to fall under the rubric of a military operation, which could assist in shielding it from official Atomic Energy Commission disclosures, the same way calling it a safety test did. Anyone with oversight regarding unsafe nuclear tests simply didn't know where to look. In the end, the land designation even allowed Project 57 to be [excluded from official Nevada Test Site maps](#). As of 2011, it still is.

In March of 1957, workers cordoned off the area in preparation for Project 57. The [nuclear warhead was flown](#) from Sandia Laboratories in New Mexico to the Yucca Lake airstrip at the test site and transferred to Building 11, where it would remain in storage until explosion day. Since it needed its own name for record-keeping purposes, officials decided to designate it Area 13.

[Richard Mingus was tired](#). The twenty-four-year-old Ohio native had been working double shifts at the Sands hotel for three years and four months, ever since he returned home from the front lines of the Korean War. Newly married, Mingus and his wife, Gloria, had their first baby on the way. The Sands was the most popular spot on the Las Vegas Strip. It was the place where high rollers and partygoers went for entertainment, where they could hear the Rat Packers sing in the Copa Room. The restaurant at the Sands was a first-class operation, with silver service delivered from over-the-shoulder trays. Richard Mingus was proud to work there. Once he even got to wait on Elizabeth Taylor and Eddie Fisher. But by the summer of 1956, the novelty of hearing celebrity singers like Frank Sinatra, Dean Martin, and Sammy Davis Jr. perform had taken a backseat to the financial uncertainty that comes with a waiter's life. When he'd learned Gloria, the light of his life, was pregnant, Mingus became elated. Then economic insecurity settled in. In addition to having a little one on the way, Mingus supported his widowed mother back east.

Looking back, Mingus reflects on that time in his life. "You can never guess what the future holds," he says. That summer, life dealt Richard and Gloria Mingus a cruel blow. Gloria delivered prematurely, and their baby died in the hospital. They were without health insurance, and the bills accompanying the tragedy left Richard Mingus overwhelmed. Gloria became despondent. "I needed a solid job. And one that came with hospital benefits," Mingus explains. "It was time for me to find a profession. So I asked one of the waiters at the Sands if he knew about anything." Mingus learned the federal government was hiring security guards. The following morning he drove over to Second Avenue and Bonanza Street to apply.

There, Mingus stood in a long line of about a hundred other applicants for what seemed like hours. The Nevada Test Site, which was a sixty-five-mile commute to the northwest, had jobs. Rumors were those jobs paid well. The atomic tests, which had begun five years earlier, in 1951, had brought tens of millions of dollars in business to the Las Vegas economy. For the most part, Las Vegas as a city had endorsed the tests because they were such an economic boon. And yet it had been more than a year since the last atomic test series, which was called Operation Teapot and which was made up of twelve nuclear bomb explosions, including one that was dropped from an airplane. Controversies about fallout, particularly debates involving strontium-90, the deadly by-

product of uranium and plutonium fission, had made their way into the public domain. For a while, there was even talk among locals that the test site could get shut down. Standing in line, Mingus got the sense that closing down the test site was far from reality. And he was right—weapons planners were gearing up for the largest atomic bomb test series ever to take place in the continental United States.

Mingus stood in line for a long time. Finally, a sergeant took his fingerprints and asked him if he had any military background. When Mingus said he'd served in Korea, the sergeant nodded with approval and sent him into a separate room. Las Vegas in the 1950s was a town made up largely of gamblers, swindlers, and fortune seekers. The fact that Mingus was a former soldier with an honorable discharge made him an ideal candidate for what the government was after: good men who could qualify for a Q clearance, which was required for a job involving nuclear weapons. Mingus filled out paperwork and answered a battery of questions. In just a few hours, Mingus was, tentatively, offered a job. Exactly what the job entailed, the recruiter could not say, but it paid more than twice what the best local waiters made during a stellar night at the Sands. Most important to Mingus, the job came with health insurance—Gloria's dream. He could begin work as soon as his security clearance came in. That process could take as long as five months.

Richard Mingus had no idea that he was about to become one of the first Federal Services security guards assigned to Area 51. Or that the very first nuclear test he would be asked to stand guard over would be Project 57—[America's first dirty bomb](#).

From the first atomic explosions of Operation Crossroads, in 1946, until the Nevada Test Site opened its doors, in 1951, America tested its nuclear weapons on atolls and islands in the Pacific Ocean. There, in a vast open area roughly twice the size of the state of Texas, the Pentagon enjoyed privacy. The Marshall Islands were a million miles away from the American psyche, which made secret-keeping easy. But the [Pacific Proving Ground](#) was a long haul for the Pentagon in terms of moving more than ten thousand people and millions of tons of equipment back and forth from the United States for each test series. Guarding these military assets en route to the Pacific required a near-war footing. The ship carrying the nuclear material also carried the lion's share of the nation's nuclear physicists, scientists, and weapons engineers. The precious cargo required constant air cover and an escort by destroyer battleships while it [made its zigzag course](#) across the ocean. When Dr. Edward Teller, the Hungarian émigré and father of the hydrogen bomb, began [arguing for an atomic bombing range](#) in America to make things easier on everyone, there was hardly a voice of dissent from Washington. Officials at the Pentagon, the [Armed Forces Special Weapons Project](#), and the Atomic Energy Commission all agreed with Teller and began encouraging the president to authorize a continental test site.

Science requires trial and error, Dr. Teller explained. As nuclear bombs grew more powerful, as weapons went from kilotons to megatons, scientists at the Los Alamos National Laboratory were struggling with discrepancies between theoretical calculations—equations made on paper—and the actual results the weapons produced. If the Pacific Proving Ground was the Olympic stadium for nuclear bombs, the scientists needed a local

gym, a place to keep in shape and try out new ideas. Nevada would be perfect, everyone agreed. It was only a two-hour plane ride away from Los Alamos in New Mexico, as compared to the weeklong journey it took to get people to the Pacific Proving Ground.

In 1950, a top secret feasibility study [code-named Project Nutmeg](#) determined for President Truman that a huge area in southern Nevada, one of the least populated areas in the nation not situated on a coastline, was the most ideal place in the continental United States to test nuclear weapons. The Nevada Test and Training Range quickly became 4,687 square miles of government-controlled land. "[The optimum conditions](#) as to meteorological, remote available land and logistics" can be found there, the study explained. Even more convenient, there was an airstrip located just seven miles from the entrance of the test site, at a government-owned airfield called Indian Springs.

Before the Nevada Test Site was a nuclear bombing range it had been an animal sanctuary. In the 1930s, the Department of the Interior made the region a wildlife reservation. Herds of antelope and wild horses roamed the high-desert landscape with mountain lions and bighorn sheep. Kit fox and sidewinder rattlesnakes were more prevalent there than anywhere else in the country. Centuries earlier, Native Americans lived in the caves in the mountains. They left behind magnificent paintings and ornate petroglyphs on the caves' rock walls. In the mid-1800s, settlers built silver- and copper-mining camps, giving the local geography colorful names such as Skull Mountain, Indian Springs, and Jackass Flats. But by 1942, America had entered World War II, and the entire region was withdrawn from public access for War Department use. The Army set up a conventional bombing range across what would later include the Nevada Test Site, Area 51, and the Nellis Air Force Base. It was an ideal place to train aerial gunners, far from people and resplendent with flat, dry lake beds, which were perfect for target practice and for landing airplanes. After the war ended, the bombing range was closed and its buildings were allowed to deteriorate. But the Army hung on to the land rights for possible future use. That future use became clear when 1,350 acres, or about one quarter of the restricted area, was parceled off and called the Nevada Test Site. On January 27, 1951, at 5:45 a.m., an Air Force B-50D bomber dropped the first atomic bomb on U.S. soil, onto a dry lake bed called Frenchman Flat, inside the Nevada Test Site.

Edward Teller loved the closeness of Nevada and referred to the bombs being set off there as "quickie" tests. Almost immediately, a second nuclear laboratory, called the Lawrence Radiation Laboratory at Livermore, was created by the Atomic Energy Commission [with the goal of fostering competition](#) with the Los Alamos nuclear lab. Shortly before the creation of Livermore, scientists at Los Alamos had started to challenge the military establishment regarding what the future of the nuclear bomb should or should not be. Uninterested in what the creators of the atomic bomb had to say, the Department of Defense pushed back by developing Livermore. Competition fosters productivity; the greater the rivalry, the more intense the competition will be. Indeed, it did not take long for a fierce competition to develop between the two outfits, with Los Alamos and Livermore fighting for weapons contracts and feasibility-study awards. Dreaming up prototypes for new weapons was how contracts were won. Dr. Teller argued for the need to experiment with certain "boosters," like the radioactive isotope of hydrogen tritium, which could further

enhance yield. If a scientist or his lab could make a strong enough case for the necessity of testing such a thing, the Armed Forces Special Weapons Project and the Atomic Energy Commission could easily allocate money for it. The goal was singular: get the highest-yield bombs to fit inside the smallest packages, ideally ones that could be put into the nose cone of a missile designed by Wernher Von Braun.

In five short years, from January 1951 to January 1956, a total of forty-nine nuclear bombs were exploded at the Nevada Test Site, bringing the worldwide total for atmospheric nuclear explosions by the United States to eighty-five. Which is when Richard Mingus joined the security force at the Nevada Test Site and Area 51, just in time for Operation Plumbbob, the largest, [most ambitious series](#) of nuclear weapons tests in the United States so far. The first test scheduled in the thirty-test Plumbbob series was Project 57.

In the flat Nevada desert, Richard Mingus took to work in top secret nuclear security like a fish to water. He loved the formal protocols and the way everything was ordered. "I developed a reputation for being tough," Mingus recalls. From the checklists to the radio codes, everything at the Nevada Test Site and at Area 51 worked with a military precision that Mingus thrived on. What others may have found monotonous, spending long hours guarding nuclear weapons in a vast desert-landscape setting, Mingus found challenging. He passed the pistol training with flying colors. He studied the manuals with such intensity, he ended up scoring in the top 90 percent of all the trainees. His excellence earned Mingus a position as one of only five men chosen to guard the top secret base over the hill from Yucca Flat. For employees of Federal Services, Incorporated, the first thing learned was that the facility was to be referred to only as Delta site. The radio channel on which Mingus and his colleagues spoke could be heard by guards all over the test site. The code was important; it was [Delta, nothing more](#). Mingus remembered how everything at Area 51 worked with top secret/sensitive compartmented information protocols. "Even my sergeant wasn't cleared to go over the hill to Delta. He was my superior but he didn't have a need-to-know what I was doing over there," Mingus explains. "So I was very curious the first time driving out there, looking out the window... wondering what's ahead. When we got there, it was not very fancy at all. Just an airstrip in the desert. Later, we were told the place was also called Watertown but never to use that word. Over the radio we always referred to our position at Delta, never anything else." That first day at Delta, aka Area 51, Richard Mingus and his four colleagues were met by a CIA security representative at the west-facing perimeter gate. "He drove us into the area. We went straight to the admin building, which was just a little wooden structure with a patch cord telephone system sitting there on a desk. The sergeant looked at me, pointed to a chair, and said, 'Dick, that's your post.'" A surge of intimidation swept over Mingus. "A country boy like me, I looked at the phone system and I thought, This is the hottest spot on the post, the place where all the communication from the CIA comes in. I had never used a switchboard before and I knew if I wanted to keep my job I'd have to learn real fast. As it turns out, there was plenty more time to learn. The phone almost never rang. 'Thirty-two thirty-two,' that's how I answered the telephone. There were not many calls. And when someone did call, they would almost always ask for the same person, a [generic] name like Joe Smith, the code name for the

commander at the base."

At Area 51, Mingus and his colleagues rotated through four sentry posts: the administration building, the top of a seventy-five-foot water tower, and the east and west gates. The gate positions were used to control access to Area 51 by land. On more than one occasion, Mingus turned away what he calls "overly curious Air Force," individuals who "just because they had rank, they thought they should be able to come on in." Mingus denied access to anyone not badged for Area 51. "A few times things got real tense. We worked on strict orders and it was my job to keep people out." The water-tower post at the facility was used by guards to keep an eye on the sky. "We were on the lookout for a rogue helicopter or small aircraft, that type of thing," Mingus recalls. During this time, the security guards got to know many of the U-2 pilots. "They'd fly low enough over me so I could see their faces in the cockpit. They got a kick out of flying over our security posts. They'd buzz over us and after they landed they'd always make a joke about not wanting us sleeping on the job."

Richard Mingus had been guarding Area 51 for a little over a month when the Los Alamos scientists and the EG&G engineers began their final preparations for Project 57 at Area 13. A supervisor at the Nevada Test Site asked Mingus if he was willing to work some considerable overtime for the next few weeks. He had been requested to serve as the guard to keep both Area 51 and Area 13 secure. Considerable overtime meant double-time pay, and Mingus agreed. Finally, a shot date of April 3 was chosen. *Shot*, Mingus quickly learned, was commission-speak for "nuclear detonation." As was required by an agreement between the Atomic Energy Commission and the State of Nevada, the Department of Defense prepared a simple statement for the press. "A highly classified safety test [is] being conducted by Dr. James Shreve Jr., in April 1957," read the *Las Vegas Sun*. The public had no idea the Department of Defense and the Atomic Energy Commission would be simulating an airplane crash involving an XW-25 nuclear warhead by initiating a one-point detonation with high explosives at Area 13. Neither did any of the U-2 program participants living in Quonset huts just a few miles to the east. Scientists predicted the warhead would release radioactive plutonium particles, but because a test like Project 57 had never been conducted before, [scientists really had no clear idea](#) of what would happen.

[Workers set up](#) four thousand fallout collectors around a ten-by-sixteen-square-mile block of land. These galvanized steel pans, called sticky pans, had been sprayed with tacky resin and were meant to capture samples of plutonium particles released into the air. Sixty-eight air-sampler stations equipped with millipore filter paper were spread over seventy square miles. An accidental detonation of a nuclear weapon in an urban area would be far more catastrophic than one in a remote desert area such as Groom Lake, and the Department of Defense wanted to test how city surfaces would respond to plutonium contamination, so mock-ups of sidewalks, curbs, and pavement pieces were set out in the desert landscape. Some fourteen hundred blocks of highway asphalt and wood float finish concrete were fabricated and set around on the ground. To see how automobiles would contaminate when exposed to plutonium, cars and trucks were parked among the juniper bushes and Joshua trees. As zero day got closer, Mingus saw

preparations pick up. Giant air-sampling balloons were tethered to the earth and floated over Area 13 at various elevations; some were five feet off the ground and others a thousand feet up, giving things a circus feel. Nine burros, 109 beagles, 10 sheep, and 31 albino rats were put in cages and set to face the dirty bomb. EG&G's rapatronic photographic equipment would record the radioactive cloud within the first few microseconds of detonation. A wooden decontamination building was erected just a few hundred yards down from Mingus's post. It was nothing fancy, just a wooden shack "[stocked with radiation equipment and protective clothing](#), shower stalls... with a three-hundred-fifty-gallon hot-water supply and a dressing room with benches and hangers for clothes." Shortly before shot day, workers installed a "two-foot-wide wooden approach walk" and covered it with kraft paper.

Shot day came and went without the test. All nuclear detonations are subject to the weather; Mother Nature, not the Pentagon's Armed Forces Special Weapons Project officers, had final say regarding zero hour. [Mother Nature's emissary](#) at the test site was Harold "Hal" Mueller, a meteorologist from UCLA. In the case of Project 57, there was one weather problem after the next. It was April in the high desert, which meant heavy winds, too much rain, and thick clouds. For several days, snow threatened the skies. In the second week of April, the winds were so intense that a blimp moored twelve miles south, at Yucca Flat, crashed and deflated. On April 19, one of the [Project 57 balloons broke loose](#), forcing General Starbird to issue a telegram notifying Washington, DC, of a potential public relations nightmare. The balloon had sailed away from Area 13 and was headed in the direction of downtown Las Vegas. "A twenty-three foot balloon towing two hundred feet one eighth inch steel aircraft cable escaped Area 13 at 2255 hours April 19 PD," read Starbird's terse memo. His "best estimate is that balloon will self-rupture and fall within boundaries of the Las Vegas bombing and gunnery range," and thereby go unnoticed. But General Starbird and everyone else involved knew if the balloon were to escape the test site's boundaries, the entire Plumbbob series was at risk of cancellation. Lucky for Starbird, the balloon crash-landed inside the Nevada Test and Training Range.

The concept of using balloons in nuclear tests was first used in this series. In thirteen of the thirty Plumbbob explosions scheduled to take place in spring and summer of 1957, a balloon would be carrying the nuclear device off the ground. Before balloons were used, expensive metal towers had been constructed to hold the bomb, towers that guards like Richard Mingus spent hours tossing paper airplanes from. "You needed something to keep your mind off the fact that the bomb you were standing next to was live and could flatten a city," Mingus says. To get weapons test engineers like Al O'Donnell up that high—the towers were usually three hundred, five hundred, or seven hundred feet tall—in order to wire the bomb, rudimentary elevators had to be built next to the bomb towers; these were also very expensive. A balloon shot was far more cost-effective and also produced a lot less radioactivity than vaporizing metal did. For the public, however, the safety and security of hanging nuclear bombs from balloons raised an obvious question: What if one of the balloons were to get away?

Finally, during the early-morning hours of April 24, the weather cleared and the go-ahead was given for Project 57. At 6:27 a.m., local time, the nuclear warhead in Area 13

was [hand-fired by an employee from EG&G](#), simulating the plane crash without actually crashing a plane. Mingus remembers the day because "it was just a few days after Easter, as I recall. Finally a good weather day. I don't remember snow but I do remember I had to get muddy to get to my post. Area 13 was way out in the boondocks. Barely any people around because it was a military test, not AEC. There wasn't much traffic and from where I was parked in my truck, I could see a mile down the road. I remember it was cold and I had my winter coat on. No radiation-protection gear." The predicted pattern of [fallout was to the north](#). When the dust from the small radioactive cloud settled, plutonium had spread out over 895 square acres adjacent to Groom Lake. Mingus says, "It wasn't spectacular. It didn't have a big fireball. But it involved an extreme amount of radiation, which made it nasty. I remember how dirty it was."

[The bomb was indeed dirty](#). Plutonium, if inhaled, is one of the most deadly elements known to man. Unlike other radiation that the body can handle in low dosages, such as an X-ray, one-millionth of a gram of plutonium will kill a person if it gets in his or her lungs. According to a 1982 Defense Nuclear Agency request for an unclassified "[extract of the original report](#)", most of which remains Secret/Restricted Data, Project 57 tests confirmed for the scientists that if a person inhales plutonium "it gets distributed principally in bone and remains there indefinitely as far as human life is concerned. One cannot outlive the influence because [the alpha half-life of plutonium-239](#) is of the order of 20,000 years." These findings came as a result of many tests performed on the dead burros, beagles, sheep, and albino rats that had been exposed to the dirty bomb. So why wasn't Richard Mingus dead?

The same report revealed that "air samplers indicated high airborne concentrations of [respirable plutonium remarkably far downwind](#)." Plutonium is a poison of paradox. It can be touched without lethal effects. Because it emits alpha particles, the weakest form of radiation, plutonium can be blocked from entering the body by a layer of paper or a layer of skin. Equally incongruous is the fact that plutonium is not *necessarily* lethal if ingested. "Once in the stomach, its stay in the body is short, for [particles] are excreted as an inert material with virtually no body assimilation," read another report. In other words, plutonium is deadly for humans and animals only if particles reach the lower respiratory tract.

Mingus never breathed any particles into his lungs as he kept watch for ten to twelve hours at a time on a desolate stretch of land between Area 13 and Area 51, guarding two of the most classified projects in post-World War II American history: Projects 57 and Aquatone, the U-2. As the weeks wore on and Project 57's plutonium particles settled onto the desert floor, Mingus watched men from Sandia, Reynolds Electric and Engineering Company, and EG&G go in and out of the contamination site. They'd put on face masks and seal areas on their bodies where their clothing met their skin by using household tape. They passed by a small metal sign that read DO NOT ENTER, CONTAMINATED AREA so they could swap out trays, feed the animals that were still alive, and remove the dead and dying ones. They replaced spent millipore paper with fresh strips and then headed back down to the laboratory and the animal morgue inside the Nevada Test Site. Meanwhile, Mingus watched overhead as the U-2 pilots made their final test flights, putting in as many flight hours as they could before their missions became real. Soon these pilots

would be dispatched overseas, where they would be stationed on secret bases and fly dangerous missions that technically did not exist and that the public would not learn about for decades.

Data obtained as a result of Project 57 confirmed for the Department of Defense what it already knew. "Plutonium has a 24,000 year half-life. It does not decay." Once plutonium embeds in soil, it tends not to move. "There are few instances of plutonium depletion with time. There is little tendency for the plutonium to change position (depth) in soil with time." Provided a person doesn't inhale plutonium particles, and provided the plutonium doesn't get into the bloodstream or the bones, a person can pass through an environment laden with plutonium and live into his eighties; Richard Mingus is a case in point.

Within a year of the detonation of the dirty bomb, the scientists were satisfied with their preliminary data, and Project 57 wound down. The acreage at Area 13 was fenced off with simple barbed wire. Stickers that read contaminated materials were attached to the bumpers and hoods of Atomic Energy Commission vehicles before they were buried deep underground. Clothing contaminated with "alpha-emitting material was sealed in plastic bags and buried in the contaminated waste area." And yet, by the summer of 1958, Project 57's director, Dr. James Shreve, authored a very troubling report—one that was marked Secret-Restricted Data—noting that the measurements research group had made a potentially deadly observation. "Charles Darwin studied an acre of garden in which he claimed 53,000 hard working earthworms moved 18 tons of soil," wrote Dr. Shreve. "Translocation of soil, earthworms' ingestion of plutonium, could turn out to be a significant influence, intentional or unintentional, in the rehabilitation of weapon-accident environment." In other words, plutonium-carrying earthworms that had passed through Area 13, or birds that ate those earthworms, could at some point in the future get to a garden down the road or trees in another field. "The idea of an entirely separate program on ecology in Area 13 had occurred to [names unclear] in the summer of 1957," wrote Shreve, "but the AEP/UCLA logical group to undertake the investigation was too committed on Operation Plumbbob to consider the responsibility." The twenty-nine nuclear bombs about to blow in the rest of the Plumbbob series would take precedent over any kind of effort to contain future harm done by the first test in the series, the Project 57 dirty bomb. Out in the desert, men with extraordinary power and punishing schedules worked without any effective oversight. As one EG&G weapons engineer remarked, "Things at the test site rolled fast and loose." Not until as late as 1998 was the top layer of earth from Area 13 scraped up and removed. By then, earthworms in the area, and birds eating those earthworms, had been moving plutonium-laden soil who knows how far for more than forty years.

With the plutonium-contamination test out of the way, the Armed Forces Special Weapons Project began moving forward with the rest of the 1957 open-air nuclear-test series. It was a boon to the Las Vegas economy, supplying millions of dollars in resources and in jobs. Each test was reported to cost about three million dollars—approximately seventy-six million in 2011 dollars—although it is impossible to learn what that figure did or did not include.

Nearly seven thousand civilians were badged to work at the test site during Operation

Plumbbob. Another fourteen to eighteen thousand employees of the Department of Defense also participated; official figures vary. But despite all the money being pumped into Las Vegas, the debate over fallout threatened to cancel the tests. Just two weeks before Project 57 contaminated 895 acres adjacent to Groom Lake with plutonium, Nobel Prize winner Linus Pauling made a statement that spooked the public and threatened the tests. [Pauling said](#) that as a result of nuclear tests, 1 percent of children born the following year would have serious birth defects. The Atomic Energy Commission responded by positioning their own doctors' opinions prominently in the news. Dr. C. W. Shilling, deputy director of biology and medicine for the Atomic Energy Commission, ridiculed Linus Pauling, saying that "excessively hot baths can be as damaging to the human sex glands as radioactive fallout in the amount received in the last five years from the testing of atomic weapons." In hindsight, this is astonishingly erroneous, but at the time it was what Americans were willing to believe.

Almost every newspaper in the country carried stories about the debate, often presenting diametrically opposed views on the subject in columns side by side. "Children are smaller on island sprinkled with nuclear fallout," read the *Santa Fe New Mexican*; "Study Finds Kids Born to Marshall Islanders Are Perfectly Normal," headlined another; "2000 Scientists Ask President to Ban Bomb Tests," the *Los Angeles Mirror* declared. Editorials, such as the one published on June 7 in the *Los Angeles Times*, suggested that a recent influx of seagull and pelican deaths along the California coast was proof that the biblical End of Times was at hand.

All across Europe there were protests. Japan tried to get the tests canceled. When it became clear that the tests would go forward, one hundred enraged Japanese students protested at the U.S. embassy in Tokyo. When things turned violent, heavy police reinforcements were called in. Prime minister of India Jawaharlal Nehru called the tests a "menace" and, in a personal appeal to President Eisenhower, proclaimed that unless all nuclear tests were stopped, the Earth would be hurled into a "pit of disaster." Soviet scientist Professor Federov publicly accused the United States of developing a weapon that was meant to cause worldwide drought and flood. To counter the campaign aimed at putting an end to nuclear testing, the Atomic Energy Commission kept the propaganda rolling out. Colorful characters such as Willard Frank Libby, one of the Agency's leading scientists and known as Wild Bill of the Atom Bomb, insisted that "science is like an art. You have to work at it or you will go stale. Testing is a small risk." In the end the weaponeers won. When it was finally announced that the Plumbbob series had received presidential approval, the press release described the twenty-four nuclear tests (the other six were called safety tests) as "low yield tests," promising none would be more than "30 kilotons." The six "safety tests" were generally excluded from mention. The magnitude of the megaton bombs set off in the Pacific had fundamentally warped the notion of atomic destruction. The Hiroshima bomb, which killed seventy thousand people instantly and another thirty to fifty thousand by radiation poisoning over the next few days, was less than half the size of what the U.S. government was now calling "low yield."

The tests were important, the president promised the public. The government needed to build up its "encyclopedia of nuclear information." The Army needed its troops to

practice "maneuvers" on a nuclear battlefield and to record how soldiers would perform in the event of a nuclear battle. The government had to know: At what distance could a military jeep drive through a nuclear shock wave? How did a blast wave affect a hill versus a dale? What effect would weapons have on helicopters, blimps, and airplanes when they flew close by a mushroom cloud? [The Pentagon wondered](#) and said it needed to find out. And so, in the sparsely populated desert of southern Nevada, the Plumbbob nuclear weapons tests went ahead as planned.

Following Project 57, the first nuclear explosion in the series to form a mushroom cloud was called Boltzmann, detonated on May 28, 1957. At twelve kilotons, it was approximately the same size as the Hiroshima bomb and [caused Area 51 personnel](#) located eleven miles over the hill to be temporarily evacuated from the base. The bomb was described in a press release simply as a "Los Alamos Scientific Laboratory device." On June 9, 1957, the *New York Times* printed the Atomic Energy Commission's "partial schedule" of the Operation Plumbbob atomic tests so that summer tourists wanting to see a mushroom cloud could plan their itineraries accordingly. "This is the best time in history for the non-ancient but none the less honorable pastime of atom-bomb watching," the *New York Times* said. According to Richard Mingus, it seemed that higher-ranking CIA officers at Area 51 did not agree with the Gray Lady's assessment. "After one blast really shook the place, a group of them jumped in someone's private aircraft and took off pretty fast." One report, declassified in 1993, noted the damage: "The blast buckled aircraft hangar doors, shattered windows in the mess hall and broke a ventilator panel on a dormitory." Area 51 employees were once again evacuated. Neither Richard Bissell nor his team was prepared for such drastic effects and certainly not as a matter of course. Whether the Agency protested or complied remains classified, but the U-2s were quickly flown to a remote area of the north base at Edwards Air Force Base in California and hidden in hangars there. Nothing was going to stop the Atomic Energy Commission and its tests. Operation Plumbbob was in full swing.

Then came the Hood bomb.

It was the middle of the night on July 5, 1957. Richard Mingus was getting ready to head to the test site for work. Gloria was finally pregnant again, and it had been a celebratory Fourth of July. Now Mingus prepared himself for what he knew was going to be an exceedingly long day. The shot was going to be big; so big, the commission had already evacuated every last person from Area 51. Only the caretakers were left. Richard Mingus kissed Gloria good-bye and climbed into his new 1957 DeSoto. How Mingus loved his car, with its four doors and long fins, a luxury made affordable by long overtime hours at the test site. The morning of the Hood bomb, Mingus drove the sixty-five miles to the main gate at Camp Mercury, located at the southernmost end of the test site, off Highway 95. It was somewhere around 1:30 a.m. Hood was scheduled for detonation early that morning, in Area 9. On the seat beside him, Mingus carried his lunch, always lovingly packed by Gloria in a small, wooden lunch box. Inside there was a sandwich, a can opener, and a can of Mingus's favorite: Dinty Moore stew. Once inside the gates of the test site, Mingus parked his DeSoto and transferred his belongings into an Atomic Energy Commission truck. Then he drove the familiar route from Camp Mercury to the

control point. First he made sure to stop by the ice house, where he could fill up a five-gallon can with water, making sure to put a big block of ice inside. "The size of the Hood bomb was classified but everyone knew it was going to be really big," Mingus explains.

Three miles to the north, at Area 9, the Army would be conducting hundreds of tests during and immediately after the explosion. Seventy Chester White pigs wearing military uniforms were enclosed in cages facing the bomb and placed a short distance from ground zero. The pigs had been anesthetized to counter the pain of the beta radiation burns they were certain to receive. Using the pigs, the Army wanted to determine which fabrics best withstood an atomic bomb blast. Farther back, lying in trenches, were one hundred soldiers, all of whom were participating in twenty-four scientific experiments. In classified papers obtained by the author, scientists called this [the Indoctrination Project](#). A committee called the [Committee on Human Resources](#) was conducting these secret tests on soldiers to determine how they would react psychologically when nuclear bombs started going off. The Committee on Human Resources wanted to study the "psychology of panic" and thereby develop "emotional engineering programs" for soldiers for future use.

A second battalion of 2,100 troops was stationed farther back, in Area 4 and Area 7, troops whose job was to simulate a "[mythical attack by an aggressor force](#) against Las Vegas, conducted over four days." A mile to the south, twenty-five hundred Marines would be working on combined air-ground exercises during Hood, using an amphibian tractor called the LVTP5, the ship-to-shore vehicle that was used in the Pacific during World War II, an "armored monster capable of bringing Marines ashore with dry feet." Dozens of helicopters performed maneuvers as well. Medical divisions were present, tasked with studying "blast biology," to determine the primary and secondary effects of flying bricks, timber, and glass. Different types of wood houses had been built to see what could withstand a nuclear blast best: wood or wallboard; masonry or metal; asbestos-shingle or tar-paper roof. The Federal Civilian Defense Administration was testing different types of bomb shelters and underground domes. One structure was ninety feet by ninety feet across and had a reinforced door weighing a hundred tons that was mounted on a monorail. The Mosler Safe Company sponsored and paid for a \$500,000 nuclear-bombproof steel vault, ideal for insurance companies and banks seeking ways to mitigate loss after a nuclear attack.

Richard Mingus was at the control point when the Hood bomb went off, all seventy-four kilotons of it. Almost immediately after the bomb detonated, a call came in from Mingus's boss, a man by the name of Sergeant May. There was a major security problem, May was told. The Atomic Energy Commission had forgotten to secure Area 51. May needed to send Mingus over to the evacuated CIA facility immediately. "Once Sergeant May got off the phone he turned to me quick and said, 'Go to rad safe, check out a Geiger counter and get over to Building 23 fast.'" Mingus followed orders. He jumped into his Atomic Energy Commission truck and raced toward Building 23.

Not only the yield size of Hood was classified; so was the fact that despite the Atomic Energy Commission's assurance that it was not testing thermonuclear bombs, Hood was a thermonuclear bomb test. At seventy-four kilotons, it was six times bigger than the bomb

dropped on Hiroshima and remains in 2011 the largest bomb ever exploded over the continental United States. The flash from the Hood bomb was visible from Canada to Mexico and from eight hundred miles out at sea. "So powerful was the blast that it was felt and seen over most of the Western United States as it lighted up the pre-dawn darkness," reported the United Press International. It took twenty-five minutes for the nuclear blast wave to reach Los Angeles, 350 miles to the west. "LA Awakened. Flash Seen, Shock Felt Here. Calls Flood Police Switch Board," headlined the *Los Angeles Times*. Right around the time the blast reached Los Angeles, Richard Mingus reached Building 23, a solid concrete bunker where radiation safety officers stayed during the explosions. In the distance, [Mingus saw that a large swath of the desert was on fire.](#)

"You know about Delta?" the security officer inside Building 23 asked Mingus.

"I've worked there many times," Mingus said.

"Grab another fella and get out there," the man said. "Find a place with the least amount of radiation and set up a roadblock between the test site and Delta." The Atomic Energy Commission may have moved Area 51 workers off the test site for the nuclear test, but entire buildings full of classified information remained behind. That the facility was not being physically secured by a guard had been an oversight. Now Richard Mingus was being asked to plug that security hole.

Mingus drove quickly up through the test site, heading north toward Area 51. "The whole of Bandit Mountain was on fire," Mingus explains, referring to the low hills between Papoose Lake and Yucca Flat. "You could see individual Joshua trees on fire." Mingus kept on driving, moving as fast as he could while avoiding an accident. But to get to where he needed to go, Mingus had to drive straight through ground zero. "There were huge rocks and boulders in the road sent there by the blast," Mingus explains. "I had my windows rolled up tight and I was driving like hell and my Geiger was screaming. I was worried if I drove too fast and had a wreck in that area, that wouldn't have been good. At guard post three eighty-five, my Geiger counter was chirping like hell. I remember distinctly it was reading eight point five Rs [never considered a safe amount]. We'd already deactivated that post because of the bomb and now it was way too hot to stay there so I drove on over the hill to Area 51."

When Mingus arrived at Groom Lake, his Geiger counter finally settled down. It had been approximately fifty minutes since the bomb had gone off. Having reached forty-eight thousand feet, the mushroom cloud would have already floated over Area 13 and Area 51 by that time. Most likely, it was somewhere over Utah now. "When I pulled into Area 51, it was like a ghost town," Mingus recalls. "I set up a west-facing post. I could see far. Pretty soon, the other guard arrived. He took up the post at the control tower and I stayed in the truck, parked there on the road facing west." Mingus was fewer than ten miles from ground zero, where the Hood bomb had exploded just an hour before. The blast wave had hit Area 51 with such force, it buckled the metal doors on several of the west-facing buildings, including a maintenance hangar and the supply warehouse. Radioactive ash floated down from the sky. And yet, despite the near-constant rain of nuclear fallout, the requirement for security took precedent. Mingus drank water from his five-gallon jug and waited for the smoke from the nuclear bomb to clear. He ate the sandwich that Gloria had made for him

and watched the hills burn. After several hours, he took the can of Dinty Moore stew from his lunchbox and opened it with the can opener that Gloria always made sure to pack. Mingus got out of the AEC truck and opened the hood. He set the soup can on the control block and stirred it with a spoon. It didn't take long for the liquid to heat up. Mingus got back in the car and checked to see if his radio was working. "Delta is secure," Mingus said before kicking back to enjoy his stew. For the rest of the day and well into the night, every half hour a voice came over the radio from the control point asking if everything was "okay." Each time, Mingus let his boss know that Groom Lake was secure. He didn't see another soul out there in the desert for the rest of the day. By nightfall, all that was left of the fire were the Joshua trees smoldering on the hills. The land at the test site had been appropriately chosen; mostly it was just creosote bush and sand. The bushes had burned, and the sand, after being subjected to 5,400 degrees Fahrenheit, had fused into little pieces of glass. Between the fallout and the structural damage, [Area 51 had become uninhabitable](#). After Hood, the once-bustling classified facility transformed into a ghost town overnight—not unlike the mining towns that had preceded it a century before. The future of the secret base was, almost literally, up in the air.

From Ghost Town to Boomtown

After the Plumbbob atomic tests rocked Area 51, the CIA base sat like a ghost town. Very little is known about what happened there from the summer of 1957 through the summer of 1959. According to Richard Mingus, a pair of caretakers lived at the Groom Lake facility, a man and his wife. No record of their names has been found. What is known is that after the Plumbbob series effectively shut down operations at Area 51, workers from the Atomic Energy Commission roamed the hills and valleys [measuring fallout with Geiger counters in hand](#). As impossible as it is to imagine in the twenty-first century, in the early days of atomic testing there was no such thing as HAZMAT suits for workers performing tasks in environments laden with WMD. Instead, workers combed the desert floor [dressed in white lab coats and work boots](#), looking for particles of nuclear fallout. According to Atomic Energy Commission documents made public in 1993, this radioactive debris varied in size, [from pinhead particles to pencil-size pieces of steel](#).

Much to the [surprise of the nuclear scientists](#), the atomic weapons tests revealed that sometimes, in the first milliseconds of destruction, the atomic energy actually jettisoned splintered pieces of the bomb tower away from the intense heat, intact, before vaporization could occur. These highly radioactive pieces were then carried aloft in the clouds and deposited down on places like Groom Lake, and Atomic Energy Commission workers [could then locate them with magnets](#). But while workers measured fallout patterns, [weapons planners moved ahead](#) with preparations for the next atomic test series, which would take place the following fall. The Operation Hardtack II nuclear test series would prove even bigger than Plumbbob, in terms of the number of tests. From September 12 to October 30, 1958, an astonishing thirty-seven nuclear bombs were exploded—from tops of tall towers, in tunnels and shafts, on the surface of the earth, and hanging from balloons. Areas 3, 5, 7, 8, 9, 12, and 15 served as ground zero for the detonations, all within eighteen miles of Area 51.

All but abandoned by the CIA and left to the elements, the once-bustling Area 51 facility took on a spooky, postapocalyptic feel. Guards from the test site did occasional spot tests, but the classified material had all been moved. While the barren landscape weathered the fallout, [the animals observed](#) around Groom Lake suffered terribly. Wild horses, deer, and rabbits roamed around the abandoned hangars and vacant airfields covered with beta radiation burns—the skin lesions caused by radiation poisoning that had plagued so many people and animals in Hiroshima and Nagasaki after the war. It was also during this period that a rare breach of security over Area 51 airspace occurred. On July 28, 1957, a Douglas Aircraft Company employee named Edward K. Current made what he said was an [emergency landing on the former U-2 airstrip](#) at Groom Lake. Mr.

Current told Atomic Energy Commission security officers who questioned him that he had been on a cross-country training flight when he became lost and ran low on fuel. He was held overnight and released. The following day, the Nevada Test Organization uncharacteristically issued a press release stating that a private pilot had mistakenly landed on the "Watertown landing strip." Mr. Current never made a public statement about his curious visit and remains the only civilian who ever landed at Area 51 uninvited in a private airplane, got out, and roamed around.

Meanwhile, in Washington, DC, Richard Bissell waited for presidential approval to plan more overflights using U-2s stationed at secret CIA facilities overseas. And on the West Coast, in Burbank, California, Lockheed's Kelly Johnson was busy drawing up plans for the secret new spy plane. If Johnson was able to secure the new CIA contract he was working on with Bissell, it would likely mean Lockheed would spend the next decade fulfilling contract work out at Area 51. But what Kelly Johnson needed at this point was a radar cross-section wizard.

It was September of 1957, and [Edward Lovick was standing on](#) Lockheed's antenna pattern range tinkering with echo returns when Kelly Johnson approached him for a chat. Lovick, then a thirty-eight-year-old physicist, was known among colleagues as Lockheed's radar man. Radar was still a relatively new science but Lovick knew more about the subject than anyone else at Lockheed at the time.

"Would you like to come work on an interesting project?" the boss asked Lovick. In his eight-and-a-half-year tenure at the company, Lovick had never seen Kelly Johnson before. But standing beside Johnson were William Martin and L. D. MacDonald, two scientists Lovick considered to be brilliant. Martin was Lovick's former boss, and the three men used to work together in the antenna lab. Martin and MacDonald had since disappeared to work on projects inside Building 82, a large, nondescript hangar at the north end of the facility where Lockheed's black operations went on. As for the project that Kelly Johnson was asking Lovick to join, Johnson said it might finish in six weeks. Instead, it lasted thirty-two years. Although Lovick had no idea at the time, he was being invited into Lockheed's classified group, officially called Advanced Development Projects but nicknamed the Skunk Works. In 1957, its primary customer was the CIA.

Lovick was granted his top secret security clearance and briefed on the U-2 aircraft. He learned about the death of test pilot Robert Sieker at Area 51, just four months before. "My first assignment at Lockheed came as a direct result of this tragedy," Lovick recalls. Sieker's death had inadvertently played a role in the invention of the most significant military application of the twentieth century, and it led Ed Lovick to become known as the [grandfather of stealth](#). What the Boston Group at MIT had attempted to do—add stealth features via paint to an existing airplane—had proved futile. But what Lovick and his team would soon discover was that stealth could be achieved if it was designed as a feature in the early drawing boards.

"The purpose of stealth, or antiradar technology," Lovick explains, "is to keep the enemy from sensing or detecting an aircraft, from tracking it, and therefore from shooting it down. The goal is to trick the enemy's air defenses though camouflage or concealment." Camouflage has been one of the most basic foundations of military strength since man

first made spears. In ancient warfare, soldiers concealed themselves from the enemy using tree branches as disguise. Millennia later, American independence was gained partly because the British ignored this fundamental; their bright red coats made them easy targets for a band of revolutionaries in drab, ragtag dress. In the animal kingdom, all species depend on antipredator adaptation for survival, from the chameleon, which defines the idea, to the arctic fox, which turns from brown in summer months to white in winter. Lockheed's U-2s were being tracked over the Soviet Union because they had no camouflage or antiradar technologies, so the Soviets could not only detect the U-2s but also accurately track the spy planes' precise flight paths.

To stay ahead of the Russians, Richard Bissell envisioned a new spy plane that would outfox Soviet radar. The CIA wanted an airplane with a radar cross section so low it would be close to invisible, the theory being that the Russians couldn't object to what they didn't know was there.

The [aircraft would be radically different](#), unlike anything the world had ever seen, or rather, not seen, before. It would beat Soviet advances in radar technology in three fields: height, speed, and stealth. The airplane needed to fly at ninety thousand feet and at a remarkably unprecedented speed of twenty-three hundred miles per hour, or Mach 3. In the late 1950s, for an aircraft to leave the tarmac on its own power and sustain even Mach 2 flight was unheard-of. Speed offered cover. In the event that a Mach 3 aircraft was tracked by radar, that kind of speed would make it extremely difficult to shoot down. By comparison, a U-2, which flew around five hundred miles per hour, would be seen by a Soviet SA-2 missile system approximately ten minutes before it was in shoot-down range, where it would remain for a full five minutes. An aircraft traveling at Mach 3 would be seen by Soviet radar for fewer than a hundred and twenty seconds before it could be fired upon, and it would remain in target range for fewer than twenty seconds. After that [twenty-second window](#) closed, the airplane would be too close for a Soviet missile to fire on it. The missile couldn't chase the airplane because, even though the top speed for a missile at the time was Mach 3.5, once a missile gets that far into the upper atmosphere, [it loses precision and speed](#). Shooting down an airplane flying at three times the speed of sound at ninety thousand feet was equivalent to hitting a bullet whizzing by seventeen miles away with another bullet.

Lockheed was confident the speed element was possible, but it wasn't in charge of building the jet engines; the Pratt and Whitney corporation was. Height was achievable; Lockheed had mastered flying at seventy thousand feet with the U-2. Stealth was the feature that would be the most challenging, and it was also the single most important feature of the spy plane to the CIA. To create stealth, Lovick and his team had to master [minutiae involving radar returns](#). Eventually, they'd need a wide-open space and a full-size airplane, which is how Ed Lovick and the Lockheed radar cross-section team became the first group of men after the atomic blast to set up shop at Area 51. But first, they did this inside a room within a hangar at Lockheed.

"Radar works analogous to a bat," Lovick explains. "The bat squeaks and the sound hits a bug. The squeak gets sent back to the bat and the bat measures time and distance to the bug through the echo it receives." So how does one get the bug to *absorb* the

squeak? "The way in which to solve the radar problem for us at Lockheed was to create a surface that would redirect radar returns. We needed to send them off in a direction other than back at the Soviet radars. We could also do this by absorbing radar returns, like a diaper absorbs liquid. In theory it was simple. But it turned out to be quite a complicated problem to solve."

Lovick had been solving problems ever since he was a child growing up in Falls City, Nebraska, during the Depression—for instance, the time he wanted to learn to play the piano but did not want to disturb his family while he practiced. "I took the piano apart and reconfigured its parts to suppress the sound. Then I sent the vibrations from the strings electronically through a small amplifier to a headset I wore." This was hardly something most [fourteen-year-old children were doing in 1933](#). Four years later, at the age of eighteen, Lovick published his first article on radar, for *Radio-Craft* magazine. Inspired to think he might have a career in radar technology, he wrote to Lockheed Corporation in faraway California asking for a job. Lockheed turned him down. So he took a minimum-wage job as a radio repairman at a local Montgomery Ward, something that, at the age of ninety-one, he still considers a serendipitous career move. "What I learned at Montgomery Ward, in an employment capacity that today some might perceive as a dead-end job, would later play an important role in my future spy plane career." Namely, that there is as much to learn from what doesn't work as from what does.

To learn how to outfox radar, Lovick returned to the trial-and-error principles he'd first cultivated as a child. He set about designing and overseeing the building of Lockheed's first anechoic chamber to test scale models of Skunk Works' proposed new spy plane. "An anechoic chamber is an enclosed space covered in energy-absorbing materials, the by-product of which is noiselessness," Lovick explains. It is so quiet inside the chamber that if a person stands alone inside its four walls, he can hear the blood flowing inside his body. "Particularly loud is the blood in one's head," Lovick notes. Only in such a strictly controlled environment could the physicist and his team accurately test how a one-twentieth-scale model would react to radar beams aimed at it. Lockheed's wood shop built tiny airplane models for the physicists, not unlike the models kids play with. Lovick and the team painstakingly applied radar-absorbing material to the models then strung them up in the anechoic chamber to test. Based on the radar echo results, the shape and design of the spy plane would change. So would its name. Over the next several months, the design numbers for [the Archangel-1](#) went up incrementally, through eleven major changes. This is why the final and official Agency designation for the airplane was Archangel-12, or A-12 for short.

While imaging and then designing Lockheed's new spy plane, Edward Lovick accompanied Kelly Johnson on trips to Washington, DC. There, the men met with Richard Bissell and President Eisenhower's science advisers to deliver progress reports and attend briefings on the aircraft. President Eisenhower called it "the Big One." On these trips to DC, Bissell, whom Lovick knew only as Mr. B., would pepper Kelly Johnson with technical questions about stealth, or "low observables," which Lovick was responsible for answering. "We shared test data from the chamber work, which was going along fine," Lovick recalls. "But the Customer always wanted better. No matter how low we felt our

observables were, the Customer always wanted them to be lower." This meant more work. In a final design stage, Skunk Works aerodynamicists and the radar team added downward slopes, called chines, on either side of the body of the aircraft, making the airplane look like a cobra with wings. With the plane's underbelly now flat, its radar cross section was reduced by an astonishing 90 percent. Still, Richard Bissell wanted a spy plane closer to invisible. Lovick needed a full-scale laboratory. Johnson got an idea: return to Area 51.

Johnson had met privately with an unnamed official to try to convince the CIA to allow a small cadre of Lockheed scientists and engineers to return to Area 51 for proof-of-concept tests. There and only there, Johnson argued, could his group do what needed to be done to meet the CIA's grueling radar-evasion demands. During this intense design phase, and despite the secrecy of the project, Lockheed was not the only contractor bidding on the job. Who exactly would land the CIA's contract to build the U-2's replacement airplane was still up in the air. The federal government liked to foster competition between defense contractors, which meant aerospace contractor Convair was also in play, hoping to secure the CIA's hundred-million-dollar contract for itself. Johnson knew reducing the aircraft's observables was his best shot at getting the contract. Permission was granted, and in the late summer of 1959, [fifty Skunk Works employees returned to Area 51](#).

The days of measuring child-size airplane models in a tiny chamber in Burbank were over. The time had come to put a full-scale model of the world's first stealth airplane to the test. "On 31 March we started to [build a full scale mockup](#) and elevation device to raise the mockup 50 feet in the air for radar tests," Johnson wrote in documents declassified in July 2007. What Johnson was imagining in this "elevation device" would eventually become the legendary Area 51 pylon, or radar test pole.

Lockheed engineers brought with them a mock-up of the aircraft so detailed that it could easily be mistaken for the real thing. For accurate radar results, the model had to represent everything the real aircraft would be, from the size of the rivets to the slope on the chines. It had taken more than four months to build. When it was done, the wooden airplane, with its 102-foot-long fuselage and 55-foot-long wooden wings, was packed up in a wooden crate in preparation for its journey out to Area 51. Getting it there was a daunting task, and the road from Burbank to Area 51 needed to be prepared in advance. The transport crate had been disguised to look like a generic wide load, but the size made it considerably wider than wide. Crews were dispatched before the trip to remove obstructing road signs and to trim overhanging trees. In a few places along the highway, the road had to be made level.

What kind of cleanup went on at Area 51 before the arrival of Lockheed's radar cross-section crew remains unknown. Twelve months had passed since the last atomic bomb had been exploded next door; it was [code-named Titania](#), like the mischievous queen of the fairies from Shakespeare's *A Midsummer Night's Dream*. If there was a formal decontamination of Area 51 or a summation of what the radiation levels were and whether it was safe to return, those details remain classified. As it was, the radar test system Lockheed set up was only temporary. The CIA did not yet have presidential approval to

proceed with the A-12. "I had no more than 50 people on the project," Johnson wrote in a document called *History of the Oxcart by the Builder*, declassified in 2007. The small group of Skunk Workers bunked down in the Quonset huts where the U-2 pilots and engineers had once lived.

Beginning in the fall of 1959, a Lockheed C-47 shuttled engineers and mechanics from Burbank to Area 51 on Monday mornings and returned them home to their families late Friday afternoons. It was Ed Lovick's first experience working at what he'd been told was Paradise Ranch. Because of Lovick's key role in this phase of the project, he was transported in a Lockheed twin-engine Cessna, usually alone with the pilot. He disliked the commute because the fumes from the Cessna made him queasy. But once he arrived and deplaned he would lose himself in the intensity of the radar work going on. In Burbank, in the silence of the anechoic chamber, Lovick had been testing airplane models the size of his shoe. This full-size mock-up would reveal the results of two years' worth of chamber work. "The only way to get accurate information of how a full-size aircraft would perform in radar testing was to subject the full size mock-up of the A-12 to radar beams," Lovick explains.

At the edge of the dry lake bed, scientists mounted the airplane on the fifty-five-foot-high pole, centered in a concrete pad that would rise up and down from an underground chamber in the desert floor. "A control room was located underground to one side of the pad. An anemometer and a wind-direction weather vane were located near the edge of the pad, away from the line of sight," Lovick recalls. The radar antennas, manned and monitored by EG&G, were located a mile away from the pole. "The nose of the mock-up would be tipped down so the radar would see the airplane's belly, the same way that Soviet radar would see it. It was an elaborate and time-consuming process," Lovick recalls. "The mock-up that was tested on the pole had to be housed in a hangar on the base at least a mile away. It was carried out and back on special carts."

In late 1959, the CIA did not know how far the Soviets had advanced their satellite technology—whether they were capable of taking photographs from space yet. The CIA's espionage concerns further complicated the radar work at Area 51. Each member of Lovick's crew carried in his pocket a small chart indicating Soviet satellite schedules. This often meant working odd hours, including at night. "It also made for a lot of technicians running around," Lovick explains. "Satellites passed overhead often. Getting an aircraft up on the radar test pole took eighteen minutes. It took another eighteen minutes to get it back down. That left only a set amount of time to shoot radar at it and take data recordings." As soon as technicians were done, they took the aircraft down and whisked it away into its hangar.

What Lovick remembered most about life on the Ranch during this period, besides the work going on around the pole, was how intense the weather was. At night, workers needed to bundle up in heavy coats and wool hats. But during the day, temperatures could reach 120 degrees. "Once, I saw a coyote chasing a rabbit and they were both walking," Lovick recalls.

In December of 1959, the president was briefed on the status of the A-12. Eager to move ahead, Eisenhower was also aware of the hundred-million-dollar check he would be

writing to Lockheed from his discretionary funds for a fleet of twelve spy planes. Eisenhower told Bissell he had decided to request that Lockheed deliver results on a last proof-of-concept test, one that focused specifically on radar-evasion technology. Bissell had been informed that Lockheed's A-12 would appear on enemy radar as bigger than a bird but smaller than a man. But he had not yet been told about a problem in the aircraft's low observables that Lovick and the team had been unable to remedy while testing the mock-up out at Area 51. Lovick explains: "The exhaust ducts from the two huge jet engines that powered the aircraft were proving impossible to make stealthy. Obviously, we couldn't cover the openings with camouflage coating. During testing, the radar waves would go into the spaces where the engines would be, echo around, and come out like water being sprayed into a can. We'd tried screens and metallic grating. Nothing worked." Kelly Johnson believed the CIA would accept this design weakness. "[Ike wants an airplane from Mandrake the magician.](#)" Johnson told the team and added that the president would settle for something less. Johnson was wrong.

With the president's final request on the table, settling for something less was no longer an option. On a final trip to Washington, DC, Kelly Johnson was going to have to explain to Bissell the exact nature of the design problem. "The meeting took place at an old ramshackle building in Washington, DC, inside a conference room with a mirrored wall," Lovick remembers. "Killian and [Edwin] Din Land were there, so was 'Mr. B.'" Kelly Johnson told the CIA about the problem with camouflaging the A-12's engine exhaust, how it was a weakness in the airplane's overall concept of stealth. "Bissell became furious. Throughout the process, I felt so comfortable working for Kelly, I don't think I realized how serious the situation was until that meeting. Bissell threatened to cancel the entire contract if someone didn't come up with a solution." It was a tense moment. "I knew that more than a hundred men had been lost trying to look over the fence. Shot down over Russia, killed, or listed as missing in training missions. I became aware there was a serious problem of information gathering. Before that, most of my concerns were as a scientist in a lab. [In that moment] I realized how poorly things were going in the world outside the lab. How important this airplane was, and that problem with the engine exhaust needed to be solved."

There in the conference room, Edward Lovick decided to speak up about an idea he had been considering for decades, "and that was how to ionize gas," he says, referring to the scientific process by which the electrical charge of an atom is fundamentally changed. "[I suggested that by adding the chemical compound cesium](#) to the fuel, the exhaust would be ionized, likely masking it from radar. I had suggested cesium would be the best source of free electrons because, in the gaseous state, it would be the easiest to ionize." If this complicated ionization worked—and Lovick believed it would—the results would be like putting a sponge in a can and running a hose into it. Instead of being bounced back, the radar return from the engines would be absorbed. "Bissell loved the idea," says Lovick, adding that the suggestion was endorsed heartily by several of the customer's consultants. An enthusiastic discussion ensued among the president's science advisers, whom Lovick sensed had very little understanding of what it was he was proposing. In the end, the results would be up to Lovick to determine; later, his theory indeed proved correct. Those

results remain a key component of stealth and are still classified as of 2011.

Lockheed kept the contract. Lovick got a huge Christmas bonus, and the A-12 got a code name, Oxcart. It was ironic, an oxcart being one of the slowest vehicles on Earth and the [Oxcart being the fastest](#). On January 26, 1960, Bissell notified Johnson that the CIA was authorizing the delivery of twelve airplanes. The specs were laid out: Mach, 3.2 (2,064 knots, or .57 miles per second); range, 4,120 nautical miles; altitude, 84,500–97,600 feet. The aircraft was going to be five times faster than the U-2 and would fly a full three miles higher than the U-2. Skunk Works would move into production, and a facility needed to be readied for flight tests. There was only one place equipped to handle a spy plane that needed to be hidden from the world, including members of Congress, and that was Area 51.

It was January of 1960, and for the first time since the atomic bombs had shuttered the place, in the summer of 1957, [Area 51 was back in business](#). Only this time, the CIA and the Air Force were comanaging an aircraft that was bigger, faster, and budgeted at nearly five times the cost of the U-2. The program would involve more than ten times as many people, and, as it had with the U-2, [the CIA hired work crews from next door](#) at the Nevada Test Site, men with top secret security clearances already in place. There were two immediate requirements for the new airplane: a much longer runway and a 1.32-million-gallon fuel farm. [The construction of a new runway and the fuel farm](#) began first. Millions of gallons of cement had to be hauled in, along with enough building materials to construct a small city. Trucking this kind of volume through the test site would draw too much attention to the project, so a new road was built, allowing access to Groom Lake from the north. Contractors worked under cover of night, resurfacing eighteen miles of highway through the tiny town of Rachel, Nevada, so fuel trucks carrying five hundred thousand gallons of specially modified fuel each month would not crack the roadbed with their heavy loads.

[The A-12 Oxcart was a flying fuel tank](#). It held eleven thousand gallons, which made the tanks the largest portion of the airplane. The fuel had requirements the likes of which were previously unknown. During the refueling process, which would happen in the air, at lower altitudes and lower airspeeds, the temperature of the fuel would drop to -90 degrees Fahrenheit. At Mach 3, it would heat up to 285 degrees Fahrenheit, a temperature at which conventional fuels boil and explode. To allow for this kind of fluctuation, JP-7 was designed to maintain such a low vapor pressure that a person could not light it with a match. This made for many practical jokes, with those in the know dropping lit matches into a barrel of JP-7 to make those not in the know duck and run for cover. It also required extreme precision of the man who was chosen to be in charge of the fuels team, Air Force sergeant Harry Martin.

This meant Martin was one of the first men to return to the nearly deserted secret base. "Winters were freezing on Groom Lake," Martin recalls, with temperatures dropping into the low teens. "I lived in a dilapidated trailer heated with kerosene. I've never worked so hard in my life as I did that first winter at Area 51." Martin had no idea what he was working on but gathered it was important when he was woken up in the middle of the night by a two-star general. "He said we had an important task. I thought to myself, 'If a general is up working at this hour, then I'm up too.' Working at Area 51 was the highlight of my career."

The A-12 was original in every way, meaning it had unforeseen needs that came up at every turn. The eighty-five-hundred-foot runway had to be created piece by piece because the standard Air Force runways would not work when it came to Oxcart. The longitudinal sections had to be made much larger, and the joints holding them together needed to run parallel to the aircraft's roll, not horizontal, as was standard with Air Force planes. Large, new aircraft hangars went into construction, ready to conceal what would become known as the [CIA's "own little air force."](#) Getting the Oxcart to fly would involve its own small fleet of aircraft: F-104 chase planes, proficiency-training airplanes, transport planes, and a helicopter for search and rescue.

Because the Oxcart would fly five times as fast as the U-2, the Agency needed a lot more restricted airspace at Area 51. Flying at speeds of 2,200 miles per hour, an Oxcart pilot would need a [186-mile swath just to make a U-turn](#). This meant an additional 38,400 acres of land around the base were withdrawn from public access, allowing the Federal Aviation Administration to extend the restricted airspace from a 50-square-mile box to 440 square miles. FAA employees were instructed not to ask questions about anything flying above forty thousand feet. The [same was true at NORAD](#), the North American Aerospace Defense Command.

While the base was being readied for delivery of the twelve aircraft, pole testing continued on the lake bed at Area 51. All the while, the CIA feared the Russians were watching from space. Across the world, at NII-88, Sergei Korolev had designed a Soviet spy satellite called Object D, but the CIA did not know what exactly it was capable of. Also under way was a follow-on espionage platform called Zenit, a modified version of the Vostok spacecraft that had been equipped with cameras to photograph American military installations from space. The Russians took great delight in rubbing what they learned in the face of the State Department. Once, using diplomatic channels, [they passed a simple sketch](#) of the exact shape of Lockheed's top secret airplane to the CIA, whose employees were baffled as to how the enemy could have known such a thing, in view of the fact that operations personnel had been very careful to avoid the orbiting Soviet snoops. Was there a double agent among them? The CIA, ever paranoid about KGB infiltration, worried in private that there could be a spy inside Area 51. Lovick finally figured it out: the Russians were using infrared satellites. In the desert heat, which could reach 125 degrees Fahrenheit in the summer, the mock-up of the aircraft left a heat signature as it sat on the tarmac while technicians were waiting to hoist it up on the test pole. The sketch reflected that.

While the Russians watched from space, the CIA continued to monitor and translate the Soviets' reaction to its aerial reconnaissance program. Memos from Soviet chief marshal of artillery [S. Varentsov](#) revealed the Russians' growing furor over the speed at which the United States was advancing its spy planes. Varentsov lamented that the Russians' own program had barely moved beyond technology from World War II. On the one hand, this was positive news for the CIA. In the world of overhead espionage, the Russians had been forced into a defensive posture. But it was also a double-edged sword. The Soviets couldn't advance their aerial reconnaissance program because so much of their efforts went into [advancing surface-to-air missile technology](#). If the capitalist

foes were going to continue to fly over Mother Russia, Nikita Khrushchev was hell-bent on shooting them down.

Cat and Mouse Becomes Downfall

Francis Gary Powers never slept well the night before a mission flight. When his 2:00 a.m. wake-up call came on May 1, 1960, Powers felt particularly anxious. His flight had already been postponed twice. It was sweltering hot in the ancient city of Peshawar, Pakistan, and Powers had spent the night on a cot in an aircraft hangar inside the CIA's secret facility there. Between the intense heat and the noise, sleep had been sporadic. The false starts had added a layer of uncertainty into the mix. Gary Powers got out of bed and took a shower. May was the hottest month in Pakistan. It was before 5:00 a.m. and yet the sun was already up, cooking the air. After only a few minutes, Powers would be drenched in sweat again. He dressed and ate his breakfast, all the while thinking about the radical mission that lay ahead. The Agency had never attempted to fly all the way across the Soviet Union before, from the southern border near Pakistan to the northern border near the Arctic Circle. From there, Powers would fly his U-2 to a secret CIA base in Norway and land. No Agency pilot had ever taken off and landed at two different bases in a U-2.

This overflight was particularly important to the CIA. Powers would gather valuable photographic information on two key sites. The first was the Tyuratam Cosmodrome, the Soviets' busiest missile launch base. Tyuratam was Russia's Cape Canaveral, the place from where Sputnik had been launched. For years the CIA was aware of only one launchpad at Tyuratam. Now there were rumored to be two, and a U-2 overflight in April revealed preparations for an upcoming launch—of what exactly, the CIA wanted to know. After Tyuratam, Powers would fly across Siberia and head up to a facility at Plesetsk, 186 miles south of the city of Archangelsk, in the Arctic Circle. Plesetsk was alleged to be the Soviet's newest missile-launch facility and was dangerously close to Alaska. Powers's flight would cover a record 3,800 miles, 2,900 of which would be inside the Soviet Union. He would spend nine nerve-racking hours over enemy territory. That would be a lot of time for the Soviets to try to shoot him down. The reverse would have been unthinkable. Imagine a Russian spy plane flying unmolested over the entire United States, from the East Coast to the West, snapping photographs that could provide details at two-and-a-half-foot increments from seventy thousand feet up.

After breakfast, Powers sat in the hangar waiting for a final weather check. He had already sweated through his long johns. Mother Nature always had the final say. For Powers, a slight wind change meant the schedule for his mission flight that morning was disrupted yet again. Not enough to cancel the mission, but enough so that his navigational maps had to be quickly corrected. The waiting was agonizing. It was also necessary. If his photographic targets were covered in clouds, images from the U-2's camera would be

useless. The navigators needed to calculate when and if the weather would clear. As Powers sat waiting it out, his commanding officer, Colonel Shelton, crossed the cement floor and [indicated he wanted to speak with him](#).

Colonel Shelton extended his hand and opened his palm. At the center was a large silver coin. "Do you want the silver dollar?" the colonel asked Powers. What Shelton was offering was no ordinary American coin. It was a CIA suicide gadget, designed to conceal a tiny poison pin hidden inside. The pin, which the pilot could find in his pocket by rubbing a finger gently around the coin's edge, was coated with a sticky brown substance called curare, the paralytic poison found in lethal Amazonian blowpipes. One prick of the poison pin and a pilot would be dead in seconds.

Gary Powers was one of the Agency's most accomplished U-2 pilots. He had flown a total of twenty-seven missions, including ones over China. He had once suffered a potentially fatal flameout over the Soviet Union and managed to survive. On many occasions he had been offered the suicide pill, and on each previous mission he had said no. But on May 1, 1960, Powers unexpectedly accepted the pin from Colonel Shelton, then slid it into the pocket of his flight suit. Later, Powers would wonder if he'd [had a premonition](#) of what was to come.

At 5:20 a.m., it was go time. The personnel equipment sergeant strapped Powers into the cockpit of the U-2. Two men held a shirt over Powers's head to protect him from the blaring sun and the heat while he went over radio codes with the Agency officer. Pilots knew never to use their radio while flying over denied territory, but they listened carefully for click codes being sent to them. A single click meant proceed. Three clicks meant turn around and head back to base. From under his heavy helmet, sweat poured down Powers's face, making him feel helpless. Finally Colonel Shelton came out for a briefing. Powers's overflight was now awaiting final approval by President Eisenhower himself. A last-minute delay like this had never happened before and Powers became convinced the flight would again be canceled for another day. Instead, at 6:20 a.m. a signal came from an intelligence officer. The two men who had been holding the shirt over Powers's head climbed down off the ladders; the personnel equipment sergeant closed the canopy, sealing him into the airplane; and Gary Powers was cleared for takeoff.

Up he went. After the U-2's extraordinarily steep and fast climb, Powers within minutes reached an altitude where it was 60 degrees below zero outside. No longer sweating, Powers switched on the U-2 autopilot mechanism so he could make notes in his flight log. Waiting was always a drag, offset immediately by the excitement of being up in the air. Using a pen, Powers wrote: "Aircraft #360, Sortie Number 4154, 0126 Greenwich Mean Time." He listened for the one-click signal over the radio, which would let him know he was good to proceed. The click came. Powers settled in for what was supposed to be a total of thirteen hours of flying time. His overflight would be the Agency's deepest penetration into the Soviet Union so far.

In Moscow, two thousand miles to the east, it was still dark outside when Soviet premier Nikita Khrushchev sat upright in bed, [awakened by a ringing telephone](#). Defense minister Marshal Malinovsky was on the line. A high-flying aircraft had crossed the border over Afghanistan and was headed toward central Russia, Malinovsky said. Khrushchev

became enraged. Today of all days. May 1 was Russia's national holiday. The streets were festooned with banners and ribbons for the May Day parade. This could mean only one thing, Khrushchev later told his son, Sergei. Eisenhower was ridiculing him again. The Soviet premier's Achilles' heel was his lack of formal education; he'd dropped out of school to work in the coal mines after the fourth grade. With his poor reading and writing skills, Khrushchev hated feeling that a more educated world leader was trying to make him appear the fool.

The Americans were especially duplicitous regarding holidays, Khrushchev believed. Four years earlier, on the Fourth of July, the Americans had double-crossed him with their first overflight of the U-2. If that overflight was a kick in the ribs, today's overflight was a sharp poke in the eye. "An uncomfortable situation was shaping up." Russian colonel Alexander Orlov explained in a historical review of the incident written for the CIA in 1998. Orlov, who spent most of his forty-six-year military career with Russia's air defense force, had been an eyewitness to the event; he was seated at the command post in Moscow when Gary Powers was shot down. "The May Day parade was scheduled to get underway at mid-morning and leaders of the party, the government and the Armed Forces were to be present as usual," Orlov explained. "In other words, at a time when a major parade aimed at demonstrating Soviet military prowess was about to begin, a not-yet-identified foreign aircraft was flying over the heart of the country and Soviet air defenses appeared unable to shoot it down."

Not if Khrushchev had his way. "Shoot down the plane by whatever means," he shouted back at his defense minister. All across the country, the Soviet Air Force went on alert. Generals scrambled their fighter jets to go after Powers. In Siberia, officers from Soviet Air Defense Forces were summoned to their command posts with orders to shoot down the American spy. It was a matter of national pride. The orders came from Nikita Khrushchev himself.

Tucked snugly into the tiny cockpit of his U-2, Gary Powers sailed along. He was one and a half hours into his flight. The weather was proving to be worse than expected but clicks on the radio system indicated that he was to proceed. Over the majestic Hindu Kush mountain range, clouds rose all the way up to the top of the twenty-five-thousand-foot peaks, and the cloud cover made it difficult for Powers to determine exactly where he was on the map. Flying at seventy thousand feet meant the sky above him was pitch-black. Under normal circumstances he would have used the stars to determine where on the globe he was, but today his celestial navigation computations were unreliable—they'd been laid out for a 6:00 a.m. departure, not a 6:26 a.m. one. And so, with only a compass and sextant to keep him on track, Powers flew on. Spotting a break in the clouds, he determined his location to be just southeast of the Aral Sea, high above present-day Uzbekistan. Thirty miles to the north lay Powers's first target: the Tyuratam Cosmodrome.

Realizing he was slightly off course, Powers was correcting back when suddenly he spotted the condensation trail of a jet aircraft below him. "It was moving fast, at supersonic speed, paralleling my course, though in the opposite direction," Powers explained in his memoir *Operation Overflight*, published in 1970. Five minutes passed and now he knew at least one MiG was on his tail. Then he spotted another aircraft flying in the same

direction as he was. "I was sure now they were tracking me on radar, vectoring in and relaying my headings to the aircraft" below him. But the MiG was so far below his U-2, it did not pose a real threat. Protected by height, Powers flew on. He felt confident he was out of harm's way. First he passed over the Ural Mountains, once considered the natural boundary between the East and the West. He headed on toward Sverdlovsk, which was situated thirteen hundred miles inside Russia. Before the Communists took over, Sverdlovsk was called Yekaterinburg. It was there in 1918 that Czar Nicholas II and his family were lined up against a kitchen wall and shot, setting off the Communist Revolution that had made the Cold War a reality. To the Communists, the city of Sverdlovsk played an important role in the Soviet military-industrial complex, a place where tanks and rockets were built. It was also home to the [Soviets' secret bioweapons program](#), which on the date of Powers's flight was not yet known to the CIA.

Nearing Sverdlovsk, Powers made a ninety-degree turn. He headed toward what appeared to be an airfield not marked on his map. Suddenly, large thunderclouds appeared, obscuring his view. He switched his cameras on. Powers had no idea that he was about to photograph a secret facility called Kyshtym 40, which produced nuclear material and also assembled weapons. [Kyshtym 40 was as valuable](#) to Russia as Los Alamos and Sandia combined were to the Americans.

On the ground, a surface-to-air missile battalion tasked with guarding Kyshtym 40 had been tracking Powers's flight. At exactly 8:53 local time, the air defense battalion commander there gave the official word. "[Destroy target](#)," the commander said. A missile from an SA-2 fired into the air at Mach 3. Inside his airplane, Gary Powers was making notes for the official record—altitude, time, instrument readings—when he suddenly felt a dull thump. All around him, his plane became engulfed in a bright orange flash of light. "A violent movement shook the plane, flinging me all over the cockpit," Powers later wrote. "I assumed both wings had come off. What was left of the plane began spinning, only upside down, the nose pointing upward toward the sky." As the U-2 spun out of control, Powers's pressure suit inflated, wedging him into the nose of the airplane. The U-2 was crashing. He needed to get out. Thrown forward as he was, if he pushed the button to engage the ejection seat, both of his legs would be severed. Powers struggled, impossibly, against gravity. He needed to get out of the airplane and he needed to hit the button that would trigger an explosion to destroy the airplane once he was gone, but he was acutely aware that he couldn't get out of the airplane without cutting off his own legs. For a man who rarely felt fear, Gary Powers was on the edge of panic.

Suddenly, out of the chaos, three words came to him: [Stop and think](#). An old pilot friend had once said that if he ever got in a jam, all he had to remember was to "stop and think." His thoughts traveled back to his old training days at Area 51, back when the U-2 didn't have an ejection seat. Back when escaping from the U-2 was the pilot's job, not a mechanical one. Reaching up, Powers unlocked the airplane canopy. It flew off and sailed into the darkness. Instantly, the centrifugal force of the spinning airplane sucked him out into the atmosphere. He was free at last; all he needed to do was deploy his parachute. Then, to his horror, he realized that he was still attached to the airplane by his oxygen hoses. Powers tried to think through his options, but the g-forces were too great. There

was nothing he could do anymore. His fate was out of his hands. He blacked out.

Nearly two thousand miles away, at a National Security Agency listening post in Turkey, NSA operators eavesdropped on Soviet radar operators at Kyshtym 40 as operators there tried to shoot Gary Powers's U-2 out of the sky. The NSA had participated in many U-2 missions before. It was their job to equip CIA planes with listening systems, special recorders that gathered electronic intelligence, or ELINT. The NSA operators knew something was wrong the moment they heard a Soviet MiG pilot, the one who was chasing Powers from below, talking to the missile operators at Kyshtym 40. "[He's turning left.](#)" the MiG pilot said, helping the missile operator to target Powers's exact location. Just a few moments later, [NSA operators heard](#) Kyshtym 40 say that Powers's U-2 had disappeared from their radar screens.

NSA immediately sent a message to the White House marked CRITIC. Meanwhile, in the Soviet command post in Moscow, Russian colonel Alexander Orlov received an urgent report from Siberia: the American spy plane had been shot down. A missile had been fired and the target had disappeared from radar screen. The news was phoned to Khrushchev, who demanded physical proof. The White House sent a message to the CIA that was received by Bissell's special assistant, Bob King. "[Bill Bailey did not come home](#)" was how Richard Bissell learned of the incident, in code.

Over Sverdlovsk, Francis Gary Powers was free-falling through the atmosphere. Somehow, he had detached from the spinning airplane. "My body [was] just falling perfectly free. It was a pleasant, exhilarating feeling," Powers would later recall. It felt "even better than floating in a swimming pool." His parachute deployed, and Powers floated into a wide, grassy field. His thoughts during the last ten thousand feet before the ground were sharp and clear. "Everything was cold, quiet, serene. There was no sensation of falling. It was as if I were hanging in the sky." A large section of the aircraft floated by, "twisting and fluttering like a leaf." Below him, the countryside looked beautiful. There were forests, lakes, roads, and small villages. The landscape reminded him of Virginia in the spring. As Powers floated down toward Earth, he noticed a small car driving down a dirt road alongside him, as if following his course. Finally, he made contact with the ground. The car stopped and men were helping him. One assisted with his chute. Another man helped him to his feet. A third man reached over to Powers's survival pack and took his pistol. A crowd of approximately fifty people had gathered around. The men motioned for Powers to follow them. They loaded him into the front seat of a truck and began driving.

The men seemed friendly. One of them offered Powers a cigarette. The emblem on the cigarette pack was that of a dog. Taking it, Powers realized the incredible irony of it all. [The brand was Laika](#), and its emblem was the world's first space dog. Laika had flown inside Sputnik 2, the second Russian satellite to be launched from the Tyuratam Cosmodrome, the CIA target that Powers had photographed a little over an hour before. Gary Powers sat back and smoked the cigarette, noting how remarkably like an American cigarette it was.

With the U-2 spy plane and the SA-2 missile system, the Americans and the Soviets had been playing a game of cat and mouse: constant pursuit, near captures, and repeated escapes. Now that game was over. Powers, like the mouse, had been caught. But there

was a second, even greater catastrophe in the works. When the White House staff learned Powers's U-2 had been shot down, they assumed he was dead. This was an assumption based on CIA "facts." Richard Bissell had personally assured the president that in the unlikely event that an SA-2 missile was able to reach a U-2 and shoot it down, the pilot would not survive. "We believed that if a U-2 was shot down over Soviet territory, all the Russians would have was the wreckage of an aircraft," Bissell later explained. And so, believing Gary Powers was dead, the White House denied that the airplane was on any kind of espionage mission, in opposition to Khrushchev's very public accusation. For five days, the White House claimed that Gary Powers had been gathering high-altitude weather data for the National Advisory Committee for Aeronautics, or NACA.

But Khrushchev had evidence, which he would soon make public. With great bravado, on May 5, he gathered all thirteen hundred members of the Soviet parliament inside the Great Kremlin Palace speaking hall and addressed them from the stage. The United States has been making a fool of Mother Russia, Khrushchev declared. The Americans had been sending spy planes over the Soviet Union for nearly four years. To underscore the significance of what had happened, Khrushchev gave a bold analogy. "Just imagine what would have happened had a Soviet aircraft appeared over New York, Chicago or Detroit? That would mean the outbreak of war!" Amid gasps of horror, Khrushchev explained how the Soviet Union had first used diplomatic channels to protest the spy flights. That he had called upon the U.N. Security Council to take action, but nothing was done. Just four days earlier, Khrushchev explained, on May 1, yet another illegal espionage mission had occurred. Only this time the Soviets had succeeded in shooting down the spy plane. The audience broke into wild cheers. Then came the heart of the matter in the form of a question. It was also Khrushchev's bait. "Who sent this aircraft across the Soviet frontier?" he asked. "Was it the American Commander-in-Chief who, as everyone knows, is the president? Or was this aggressive act performed by Pentagon militarists without the president's knowledge? If American military men can take such action on their own, the world should be greatly concerned." By now, Khrushchev's audience members were stomping their feet.

Halfway across the world, President Eisenhower continued to have no idea that Gary Powers was alive and had been talking to his captors. All the White House and the CIA knew was that the Soviets had a wrecked U-2 in their possession. Khrushchev had laid a dangerous trap, one in which President Eisenhower got caught. The White House sent its press officer Walter Bonney to the press room to greet journalists and to tell the nation a lie. Gary Powers's weather-sampling airplane was supposed to be flying over Turkey. Instead, it had gone astray. Two days later, on May 7, Khrushchev sprung his trap. "Comrades," he told the parliament, who'd been gathered for a second revelatory speech. "I must let you in on a secret." He smiled. "When I made my report two days ago I deliberately refrained from mentioning that we have the remains of the plane and we also have the pilot who is quite alive and kicking," Khrushchev said. For the United States, it was a diplomatic disaster of the worst order.

The president was trapped. Were he to deny knowing what his "militarists" were up to, he would appear uninformed by his own military. Were he to admit that he had in fact

personally authorized Powers's flight, it would become clear he'd lied earlier when he claimed the downed airplane had been conducting weather research, not espionage. So despondent was the commander in chief about his untenable position that when he walked into the Oval Office two days later, he told his secretary Ann Whitman, "[I would like to resign.](#)" Spying on Russia and defying Soviet airspace was one thing; lying about it after being caught red-handed made the president look like a liar in the eyes of the world. In 1960, American presidents were expected to be truth tellers; there was no public precedent for lying.

Khrushchev demanded an apology from his nemesis. [Eisenhower wouldn't bow.](#) Apologizing would only open Pandora's box. There were too many overflights to make them transparent. There had been at least twenty-four U-2 flights over Russia and hundreds more bomber overflights by General LeMay. To reveal the dangerous game of cat and mouse that had been going on in secret—at a time when thermonuclear weapons on both sides were ready to fly—would likely shock and frighten people more than having a president who lied. A national poll revealed that more than half of adult Americans believed they were more likely to die in a thermonuclear war with the Russians than of old age. So Eisenhower made the decision to keep the focus on Gary Powers's flight only and admit that he personally had authorized it. This was "[the first time any nation had publicly admitted](#) it was engaged in espionage," noted Eisenhower's lead U-2 photo interpreter at the time, Dino Brugioni.

Khrushchev could play the game too. And he did so by making a dangerous, offensive move. By the summer of 1960, he had [authorized a Soviet military base](#) to be set up in Cuba. The island, just ninety miles off the coast of Florida, was in America's backyard. Khrushchev's plan was to put nuclear warheads in striking distance of Washington, DC. In this way, Soviet missiles could be launched from Havana and obliterate the nation's capital in just [twenty-five minutes' time](#). Khrushchev was showing Eisenhower that he could play cat and mouse too.

Immediately after Gary Powers had been shot down in his U-2 and picked up by the Soviets, he was flown from Sverdlovsk to Moscow, where he was put in a cell inside Lubyanka Prison, which doubled as headquarters for the KGB. There, his interrogation began. Powers had already decided on a tactic. He'd tell the Russians the truth, but "with definite limitation." The KGB wanted to know about Area 51. Where had he trained to fly the U-2? Powers was asked. According to Powers's memoir, he told the KGB that training took place at a base on the West Coast called Watertown. Powers wrote that the Soviets believed Watertown was located in Arizona and that they produced a map of the state, asking him to mark Watertown's exact location. Whether the Soviets were playing a game with Powers or whether he was telling his readers the truth but "with definite limitation" remains unclear. Either way, trial transcripts from August of 1960, declassified by the CIA in 1985, revealed that the Soviets knew exactly where Watertown was and that it was located inside the Nevada Test Site. [During Powers's trial](#), Soviet procurator-general Rudenko asked his comrade judges if they were familiar with "the deposition of the accused Powers which he gave in the preliminary investigations and here in court on the preparations for flights in the U-2 aircraft at the [Las Vegas firing range \(poligon\) in the](#)

[Nevada desert](#)," and then he fingered the base as being used by the CIA for "the training in the use of special reconnaissance aircraft." Not before the publication of this book has it been understood that the KGB clearly knew about Area 51 during the Powers trial.

Further, the trial revealed that the Soviets also had a much clearer picture of the inner workings of the American military-industrial complex and its defense-contracting system than the CIA had previously known. Rudenko was able to name "Lockheed company" as the manufacturer of the U-2. He argued that the existence of the "Las Vegas firing range," aka Area 51, and the Lockheed spy plane exemplified what he called a "[criminal conspiracy](#)" between "a major American capitalist company, an espionage and reconnaissance center, and the military of America." In his speech to the USSR International Affairs Committee, Rudenko had correctly identified the three players in the triangle of Area 51: defense contractors, the intelligence community, and the Pentagon.

After a three-day trial, the Soviets determined that Gary Powers, having been caught spying on Russia, exposed the United States for what it really was: "an enemy of the peace." Powers was sentenced to ten years in prison. President Eisenhower was judged to be a "[follower of Hitler](#)," the lowest insult in the Russian lexicon. Hitler had double-crossed Khrushchev's predecessor, Joseph Stalin, in 1941, and the result of that double cross was twenty million Russians dead. In comparing Eisenhower to Hitler, Khrushchev was sending a clear message: diplomacy was off the table. The upcoming east-west summit in Paris was canceled. How bad could things get?

The National Advisory Committee for Aeronautics issued a press release identifying [Watertown as the U-2 training facility](#) but stating falsely that it was no longer used as a training base. The Russians knew that statement was meant to mislead the American public and not Russia's intelligence service, the KGB—and the CIA knew the Soviets had first-person information about Area 51 in the form of Gary Powers, not just photographic images of the facility from the satellites they'd been sending overhead.

With the White House absorbing the fallout from the Gary Powers affair, the CIA and the Air Force were deeply involved in the Mach 3 replacement for the U-2 [out at the Ranch](#). The 8,500-foot-long runway, designated 14/32 and believed to be the longest in the world, had been finished, complete with a two-mile semicircular extension called the Hook, which would allow an A-12 pilot extra room for maneuvering were he to overshoot the runway. Four new aircraft hangars were built, designated 4, 5, 6, and 7. The former U-2 hangars whose metal doors had buckled in the atomic blast were converted into maintenance facilities and machine shops. Navy housing units, 140 in all, were transported to the base and laid out in neat rows. The commissary was expanded, as was the movie house and fire station. [Richard Bissell had a tennis court put in](#), and plans for an Olympic-size swimming pool were drawn. The airspace over the entire region was given its own designation, R-4808N, separate from what had previously been designated [Prohibited Area P-275](#); it included the Nevada Test Site, Area 13, and Area 51. All the CIA was waiting for was Lockheed's delivery of the A-12 airplanes.

At Lockheed, each Mach 3 aircraft was literally being hand forged, part by part, one airplane at a time. The production of the aircraft, according to Richard Bissell, "spawned its own industrial base. Special tools had to be developed, along with new paints,

chemicals, wires, oils, engines, fuel, even special titanium screws. By the time Lockheed finished building the A-12, they themselves had developed and manufactured [thirteen million different parts](#)." It was [the titanium that first held everything up](#). Titanium was the only metal strong enough to handle the kind of heat the Mach 3 aircraft would have to endure: 500- to 600-degree temperatures on the fuselage's skin and nearly 1,000 degrees in places close to the engines. This meant the titanium alloy had to be pure; [nearly 95 percent of what Lockheed initially received](#) had to be rejected. Titanium was also critically sensitive to the chemical chlorine, a fact Lockheed engineers did not realize at first. During the summer, when chlorine levels in the Burbank water system were elevated to fight algae, inside the Skunk Works, airplane pieces started to mysteriously corrode. Eventually, the problem was discovered, and the entire Skunk Works crew had to switch over to distilled water. Next it was discovered that titanium was also sensitive to cadmium, which was what most of Lockheed's tools were plated with. Hundreds of toolboxes had to be reconfigured, thousands of tools tossed out. The next problem was power related. Wind-tunnel testing in Burbank was draining too much electricity off the local grid. If a reporter found out about the electricity drain, it could lead to unwanted questions. NASA offered Kelly Johnson an alternative wind-tunnel test facility up in Northern California, near the Mojave, which was where Lockheed engineers ended up—performing their tests late at night under cover of darkness. The complicated nature of all things Oxcart pushed the new spy plane further and further behind the schedule.

At Area 51, the concern continued to be stealth. The radar results from the pole tests were promising, but as the Oxcart advanced, so did Soviet countermeasures to shoot it down. [Russia was spending billions of rubles](#) on surface-to-air missile technology and the CIA soon learned that the Oxcart's new nemesis was a system called Tall King. Getting hard data on Tall King's exact capabilities before the Oxcart went anywhere near it was now a top priority for the CIA.

To understand countermeasures, the CIA initiated an esoteric research-and-development program called Project Palladium. The program would get its legs over Cuba and eventually move to Area 51. It would involve ELINT. In 1960, "there were many CIA officers [who thought ELINT was a dirty word](#)," recalls Gene Poteat, the engineer in charge of Project Palladium, which originated with the CIA's Office of Scientific Intelligence. Poteat was one of the early pioneers who helped change that perception inside the CIA. "We needed to know the sensitivity of Soviet radar receivers and the proficiency of its operators," Poteat explains. With Khrushchev using Cuba as a military base in the Western Hemisphere, the CIA saw an opportunity. "When the Soviets moved into Cuba with their missiles and associated radar, we were presented with a golden opportunity to measure the system sensitivity of the SA-2 aircraft missile radar," says Poteat. To do this, the CIA needed a brigade of missile wizards. This included men like T. D. Barnes.

Thornton "T.D." Barnes was a CIA asset at an age when most men hadn't graduated from college yet. Married at seventeen to his high-school sweetheart, Doris, Barnes became a self-taught electronics wizard, buying broken television sets, fixing them up, and reselling them for five times the amount. In doing so, he went from bitter poverty—raised

on a Texas Panhandle ranch with no electricity or running water—to buying his new bride a dream home before he was old enough to vote. Barnes credited his mother for his becoming one of the CIA's most important radar countermeasure experts. "My mom saw an article on radar in *Life* magazine when I was no more than nine or ten. She said I should write a school report on the subject and so I did. That's when I got bit with the radar bug."

At age seventeen, Barnes lied about his age to join the National Guard so he could go fight in Korea. He dreamed of one day being an Army officer. Two years later he was deployed to the 38th Parallel to defend the region alongside a British and a Turkish infantry company. It was in Korea that Barnes began his intelligence career at the bottom of the chain of command. "I was the guy who sat on the top of the hill and looked for enemy soldiers. If I saw 'em coming, it was my job to radio the information back to base," Barnes recalls. He loved the Army. The things he learned there stayed with him all his life: "Never waste a moment. Shine your boots when you're sitting on the pot. Always go to funerals. Look out for your men." Once, in Korea, a wounded soldier was rushed onto the base. Barnes overheard that the man needed to be driven to the hospital, but because gas was scarce, all vehicles had to be signed out by a superior. With no superior around, Barnes worried the man might die if he didn't get help fast, so he signed his superior's name on the order. "I was willing to take the demerit," Barnes explains. His actions caught the attention of the highest-ranking officer on the base, Major General Carl Jark, and later earned him a meritorious award. When the war was over General Jark pointed Barnes in the direction of radar and electronics. "He suggested I go to Fort Bliss and get myself an education there," Barnes explains. So T.D. and Doris Barnes headed to Texas. There, Barnes's whole world would change. And it didn't take long for his exceptional talents to come to the attention of the CIA.

Barnes loved learning. At Fort Bliss, he attended classes for Nike Ajax and Nike Hercules missile school by day and classes at Texas Western University by night for the next fifty-four months. These were the missiles that had been developed a decade earlier by the Paperclip scientists, born originally of the German V-2 rocket. At Fort Bliss, Barnes read technical papers authored by former Nazi scientists. Sometimes the Paperclip scientists taught class. "No one really thought of them as former Nazis," says Barnes. "They were the experts. They worked for us now and we learned from them." By early 1960, Barnes was a bona fide missile expert. Sometimes, when a missile misfired over at the White Sands Missile Range, it was T.D. Barnes who was dispatched to disarm the missile sitting on the test stand. "I'd march up to the missile, take off the panel, and disconnect the wires from the igniter," Barnes recalls. "When you are young, it doesn't occur to you how dangerous something is." Between the academics and the hands-on experience, Barnes developed an unusual aptitude in an esoteric field that the CIA was just getting involved in: ELINT. Which was how at the age of twenty-three, T. D. Barnes was recruited by the CIA to participate in a top secret game of chicken with the Russians that was part of Project Palladium. Although Barnes didn't know it then, the work he was doing was for the electronic countermeasure systems that would later be installed on the A-12 Oxcart and on the ground at Area 51.

American military aviation began at the Fort Bliss airfield in 1916, when the First Aero

Squadron used it as a staging base while hunting Pancho Villa in nearby Mexico. Now, almost half a century later, the airfield, called Biggs, was part of the Strategic Air Command and served as home base for heavy bombers like the B-52 Stratofortress. Beginning in 1960, the facility was also a staging area for secret CIA missions that were part of Project Palladium, and that same year, T. D. Barnes found himself standing on the tarmac at Biggs Airfield watching a group of airmen as they delicately loaded a Hawk missile into the cargo bay of an airplane. Weapons are supposed to go in the weapons bay, Barnes thought to himself. But the project Barnes was participating in was unusual, dangerous, and top secret. Barnes did not have a need-to-know what the big picture involved and he knew better than to ask. Instead, he climbed into the cargo bay and sat down beside the missile. "We had the nose cone off and part of the skin off too. The missile was loaded on a stand inside the plane. It was my job to watch the electronics respond," Barnes explains. The airplane and its crew took off from the airbase and headed for Cuba. The plan was for the airplane to fly right up to the edge of Cuban airspace but not into it. Moments before the airplane crossed into Cuban airspace, the pilot would quickly turn around and head home. By then, the Russian radar experts working the Cuban radar sites would have turned on their systems to track the U.S. airplane. Russian MiG fighter jets would be sent aloft to respond. The job of Project Palladium was to gather the electronic intelligence being sent out by the radar stations and the MiGs. That was the first step in figuring out how to create a jamming system for the A-12 at Area 51.

The Cubans and their Russian patrons could not have had any idea whether the Americans were playing another game of chicken or if this act meant war. "Soviet MiGs would scramble toward us," Barnes recalls. "At the time, ECM [electronic countermeasure] and ECCM [electronic counter-countermeasure] technology were still new to both the plane and the missile. We'd transmit a Doppler signal from a radar simulator which told their MiG pilots that a missile had locked on them. When the Soviet pilots engaged their ECM against us, my job was to sit there and watch how our missile's ECCM responded. If the Soviet signal jammed our missile and made it drift off target, I'd tweak my missile's ECCM electronics to determine what would override a Soviet ECM signal." Though primitive by today's standards, what Barnes and the NSA agents with him inside the aircraft did laid the early groundwork for electronic warfare today. "Inside the airplane, we'd record the frequencies to be replayed back at Fort Bliss for training and design. Once we got what we wanted we hauled ass out of the area to avoid actual contact with Soviet planes."

The info that Barnes and his colleagues were getting over Cuba was filling in gaps that had previously been unknown. Back at Fort Bliss, Barnes and the others would interpret what NSA had captured from the Soviet/Cuban ECM transmissions that they had recorded during the flight. In listening to the decrypted Soviet responses to the antagonistic moves, the CIA learned what the Soviets could and could not see on their radars. This technology became a major component in further developing stealth technology and electronic countermeasures and was why Barnes was later placed by the CIA to work at Area 51. For the U.S. Air Force, this marked the beginning of a new age of

information warfare.

Even though the U.S. military airplane with a team of engineers, NSA agents, and a Hawk missile hidden inside would U-turn and fly away at the last moment, just before violating Cuban airspace, "there were repercussions," according to Barnes. "It scared the living daylights out of them and it escalated things." In January of 1961, Khrushchev gathered a group of Cuban diplomats at their embassy in Moscow. "Alarming news is coming from Cuba at present, news that the most aggressive American monopolists are preparing a direct attack on Cuba," Khrushchev told the group. Barnes believes Khrushchev "may have been referring to our messing with them with our Hawk missiles homing in on their planes." Were that the case, Khrushchev had a valid point. But the mercurial dictator had his own difficulties in sticking to the facts. Disinformation was a hallmark of the Soviet propaganda machine.

To a roomful of Cuban diplomats, many of whom knew otherwise, Khrushchev falsely claimed, "What is more, [the Americans] are trying to present the case as though rocket bases of the Soviet Union are being set up or are already established in Cuba. It is well known that this is foul slander. There is no Soviet military base in Cuba." Actually, this is exactly what the Soviets were doing. "Of course we knew better, and on January 3, 1961, severed all diplomatic ties with Cuba," Barnes explains.

Ten days later, the CIA convened its Special Group, a secret committee inside the National Security Council that had oversight regarding CIA covert activities. A formal decision was made that [Castro's regime "must be overthrown."](#) The man in charge of making sure this happened was Richard Bissell. In addition to being the highest-ranking CIA officer in the Special Operations Group, Bissell was also the most trusted CIA officer in the eyes of John F. Kennedy, the dashing new president. Before taking office, a member of the White House transition team asked Kennedy who he trusted most in the intelligence community. ["Richard Bissell," Kennedy said](#) without missing a beat.

Bissell's official title was now deputy director of plans. As innocuous as it sounded, DDP was in fact a euphemism for chief of covert operations for the CIA. This meant Bissell was in charge of the Agency's clandestine service, its paramilitary operations. The office had previously been known as the Office of Policy Coordination, or OPC. As deputy director of plans, Richard Bissell would be doing a lot more than playing a gentleman's spy game from the air. The CIA's paramilitary operations spilled blood. During these covert anti-Communist operations, men were dying in droves from Hungary to Greece to Iran, and all of these operations had to be planned, staged, and approved by the deputy director of plans.

In such a position there was writing on the wall, script that Richard Bissell did not, or chose not to, see. The man he was replacing was Frank Wisner, his old friend and the man who first introduced Bissell to the CIA. It was Frank Wisner who'd knocked on Bissell's door unannounced and then spent a fireside evening in Bissell's Washington, DC, parlor eleven years before. It was Wisner who had originally asked Bissell to siphon off funds from the Marshall Plan and hand them over to the CIA, no questions asked. Wisner had served the Agency as deputy director of plans from August 1951 to January 1959, but by the end of the summer of 1958, the job proved too psychologically

challenging for him—Frank Wisner had begun displaying the first signs of madness. The diagnosis was psychotic mania, according to author Tim Weiner. Doctors and drugs did not help. Next came the electroshock treatment: “For six months, his head was clamped into a vise and shot through with a current sufficient to fire a hundred-watt light bulb.” Frank Wisner emerged from the insane asylum zombielike and went on to serve as the CIA’s London station chief. A broken man, Wisner did not last long overseas. He shuffled in and out of mad-houses for years until finally forced to retire in 1962: “He’d been raving about Adolf Hitler, seeing things, hearing voices. He knew he would never be well.” Tragically, on October 29, 1965, Wisner was getting ready to go hunting with his old CIA friend Joe Bryan at his country estate when he took a shotgun out of his gun cabinet and put a bullet in his own head.

The pressure that came with being the deputy director of plans for the CIA was, for some, as treacherous as a loaded gun.

As workers toiled away at Area 51 getting ready for the arrival of the Oxcart spy plane, Richard Bissell focused on his orders to rid Cuba of Fidel Castro. By 1961, the Agency decided that Bahía de Cochinos, or the Bay of Pigs, was the perfect place to launch its “paramilitary plan.” The little sliver of coastline on the south shore of the island was barely inhabited. A few summer cottages were scattered among little bays, used mostly for fishing and swimming, and there was a valuable asset nearby in “an airstrip not far from the beach.”

Surely, the U-2 spy plane could help in gathering intel, Bissell decided. After Gary Powers was shot down, President Eisenhower had promised the world there would be no spy missions over Russia, but that promise did not include dangerous Soviet proxies like Cuba. In his new position as deputy director of plans, Bissell had used the U-2 to gather intelligence before. Its photographs had been helpful in planning paramilitary operations in Laos and the Dominican Republic. And in Cuba, overhead photographs taken by the Agency’s U-2s revealed important details regarding the terrain just up the beach from the Bay of Pigs beach. Photo interpreters determined that the swampland in the area would be hard to run in unless the commandos familiarized themselves with preexisting trails. As for the water landing itself, from seventy thousand feet in the air, the beachhead at the Bay of Pigs looked flat and lovely. But because cameras could not photograph what lay underwater, Bissell had no idea that just beneath the surface of the sea there was a deadly coral reef that would later greatly impede the water landing by commandos.

Hundreds of pages, declassified after thirty years, reveal the hand of economics wizard Richard Bissell in the design of the paramilitary operation. Bissell painstakingly outlined: “Contingency Plans... Probabilities... Likelihood, chance of success... Plans for Operation ‘T’... Operation ‘Z’... Phase 1, Phase 2, and Phase 3... Pre-Day Day plans... D-Day plans... Post D-Day plans... Unattributable actions by the Navy... Post-Recognition Plans... Arguments for maximum sabotage... Arguments for simultaneous defection... Feasibility of declaration of war by certain Central American states... Disclosures... Non-Disclosures... Continuation of Psychological Warfare Plans... How to deal, and how not to deal with the press.” For all the organization and preplanning, the operation might have been successful. But there are many reasons why it failed so

tragically. When the Bay of Pigs operation was over, hundreds of CIA-trained, anti-Castro Cuban exiles were killed on approach or left to die on the beachhead at the Bay of Pigs. Those that lived to surrender were imprisoned and later ransomed back to the United States. When the story became public, so did brigade commander Pepe San Roman's last words before his capture: "Must have air support in the next few hours or we will be wiped out. Under heavy attacks by MiG jets and heavy tanks." Pepe San Roman begged Richard Bissell for help. "All groups demoralized... They consider themselves deceived." By the end of the day, Richard Bissell's world had begun to fall irreparably apart. The Bay of Pigs would be his downfall.

There was plenty of blame to go around but almost all of it fell at the feet of the CIA. In the years since, it has become clear that equal blame should be imputed to the Department of Defense, the Department of State, and President Kennedy. Shortly before he died, Richard [Bissell blamed the mission's failure on his old rival General Curtis LeMay](#). Bissell lamented that [if LeMay had provided adequate air cover](#) as he had promised, the mission would most likely have been a success. The Pentagon has historically attributed LeMay's failure to send B-26 bombers to the Bay of Pigs to a "[time zone confusion](#)." Bissell saw the mix-up as personal, believing that LeMay had been motivated by revenge. That he'd harbored a grudge against Bissell for the U-2 and Area 51. Whatever the reason, more than three hundred people were dead and 1,189 anti-Castro guerrillas, left high and dry, had been imprisoned. The rivalry between Bissell and LeMay was over, and the Bay of Pigs would force Richard Bissell to leave government service in February of 1962. There were many government backlashes as a result of the fiasco. One has been kept secret until now, namely that President Kennedy sent the CIA's inspector general at the time, [Lyman B. Kirkpatrick Jr.](#), out to Area 51 to write up a report on the base. More specifically, the president wanted to assess what other Richard Bissell disasters in the making might be coming down the pipeline at Area 51.

Adding friction to an already charged situation was the fact that by some accounts, Kirkpatrick held a grudge. Before the Bay of Pigs, Richard Bissell was in line to succeed Allen Dulles as director of the CIA, and eight years earlier, Lyman Kirkpatrick had worn those coveted shoes. But like Bissell, Kirkpatrick was cut down in his prime. Kirkpatrick's loss came not by his own actions but by a tragic blow beyond his control. On an Agency mission to Asia in 1952, [Lyman Kirkpatrick contracted polio](#) and became paralyzed from the waist down. Confined to a wheelchair for the rest of his life, Kirkpatrick was [relegated to the role of second-tier bureaucrat](#).

In a world of gentlemen spy craft and high-technology espionage, bureaucracy was considered glorified janitorial work. But when Kirkpatrick was dispatched to Area 51 by JFK, the fate and future of the secret base Richard Bissell had built in the Nevada desert lay in Lyman Kirkpatrick's hands.

The Base Builds Back Up

As the man in charge of property control at Area 51, Jim Freedman was a taskmaster. "It was my job to provide services for all the different groups at the area," Freedman explains. "This included the CIA, the Air Force, EG&G, REECO [Reynolds Electric and Engineering], and even Howard Hughes—an individual who very few people had any idea had his own hangar out at the Ranch." What exactly Hughes was doing at Area 51 remains classified as of 2011, but Freedman explains the dynamic that was at play. "The CIA liked to foster competition between groups. It was why we had Kodak and Polaroid, Lockheed and North American, EG&G and Hughes. They were all no-bid contracts for security reasons. But competition keeps people on their toes." Jim Freedman acted as the gofer among the groups from 1960 until 1974. If a scientist needed a widget, if an engineer needed an oscilloscope, or if a radar expert needed a piece of magnetic tape, it was Freedman's job to get it, fast. As a prerequisite for the job, Freedman knew how to keep secrets. He carried a top secret and a Q clearance and had worked for EG&G since 1953. "We worked under a code that said, 'What you learn here, leave here.' That was pretty simple to follow," says Freedman. "You couldn't afford to talk. You'd lose your job and you'd be blackballed. So instead, my wife and family thought I fixed TVs. 'How was your day, Dad?' my kids would ask when I got home. 'Great!' I'd say. 'I fixed twenty-four TVs.'"

As they had been with the Manhattan Project, the various jobs going on at Area 51 were compartmentalized for Oxcart, so that every person worked within very strict need-to-know protocols. The radar people had no idea about the ELINT people, who had no idea what any of the search-and-rescue teams were up to. Each group worked on its part of the puzzle. Each man was familiar with his single piece. Only a few individuals, officers working in managerial capacities, understood a corner of the puzzle—at most. But someone had to act as a go-between among these disparate groups, and in this way, Freedman became an individual who knew a lot more than most about the inner workings of Area 51.

He also knew the layout of the base. Most Area 51 workers were confined to the building, or buildings, they worked in, the building they slept in, and the mess hall, where everybody dined together. As the Area 51 runner, Freedman "went to places out there that I don't think other people even knew were out there." For example, Freedman says, there was "the faraway runway where people who were not supposed to be seen by others were brought into the base." Freedman tells a story of one such group, the exact date of which he can't recall but that was during the Vietnam War. "One day I was out there delivering something to someone, it was three in the morning, and I watched an airplane land. Then I

watched forty-one Vietnamese men get off the plane. I never saw the men again, but a few days later I was sent on an errand. My supervisor said, 'Jim, can you go to Las Vegas and get me x number of pounds of a special kind of rice?' I'd say it was fairly obvious who that rice was being requested for." Freedman elaborates: "These [foreign nationals] were being trained to use state-of-the-art Agency equipment out at the Area, which they probably took with them when they left and went and put behind enemy lines."

Freedman's first job at the test site had been installing radios in EG&G vehicles used during weapons tests. Next, he was trained as an engineer in the art of wiring nuclear bombs. In the 1950s, Freedman participated in dozens of nuclear tests on the arming and firing party alongside Al O'Donnell at the test site and also at the Pacific Proving Ground. "I even managed to survive a helicopter crash in the Marshall Islands," Freedman adds. In 1957, EG&G learned that Freedman had studied photography after high school and assigned him to a team photographing nuclear explosions. But by 1960, the nuclear-test-ban treaty was in effect, testing had moved underground, and Freedman's life had taken what he called "a dull turn."

One afternoon, he was sitting inside an EG&G warehouse in Las Vegas, cleaning camera equipment. "I was thinking about how fast office work gets boring when my boss walked up to me and said, 'Hey, Jim, do you want to go work on a secret project?'" Freedman didn't hesitate. "I said yes, because it sounded interesting, and I wound up at Area 51. I'd never heard of the place before I went there. I never knew it existed just over the hill from the Nevada Test Site where I'd worked for so many years. Neither did anyone else who didn't have a need-to-know." When Freedman arrived at Area 51, it felt to him "like I was arriving on the far side of the moon. You know about the bright side of the moon; well, in relative terms, that was what the test site was like. Area 51 was the dark side." What began as a short-term contract in December of 1960 would last for Jim Freedman for the next fourteen years.

One day, in the late summer of 1961, just two months after the Bay of Pigs became public, Jim Freedman was walking around the base with a checklist of tasks. His priority job that week struck him as a very odd, very low-tech request. In a world of cutting-edge science and technological gadgets relating to espionage, the supervisor wanted Freeman to help Area 51 carpenters locate more plywood. "The workers were transforming a set of steps into a ramp," he explains. "This was happening all over the base. Lots of doorsills were becoming lots of ramps and I remember thinking, There's a lot of money going into getting something low and on wheels to be able to move around this base." Freedman knew not to ask questions. "But when a small airplane landed, and out came a man in the wheelchair, I watched my boss, Werner Weiss of the CIA, meet the man out on the tarmac. And I knew from watching their interaction just how important this man was to the CIA. He had white-silvery hair. A very memorable figure in a wheelchair. For years, I looked for him on TV." Freedman never saw the man on TV, but the man was Lyman Kirkpatrick, inspector general for the CIA. Working on presidential orders to assess Area 51, Kirkpatrick is the only CIA inspector general known to have visited the base. Despite being confined to a wheelchair, Kirkpatrick managed to meticulously cover the rugged high-desert terrain. After Kirkpatrick examined the various buildings he asked to be driven

around the outer edges of the base. There, he found what he considered to be a security flaw. "[The high and rugged northeast perimeter](#) of the immediate operating area, which I visited in order to see for myself, is not under government ownership," Kirkpatrick wrote in his report, which was declassified in 2004 but has since been removed from the CIA library archives. "It is subject to a score or more of mineral claims, at least one of which is visited periodically by its owner," Kirkpatrick wrote, referring to the Black Metal and Groom mines. "Several claims are sites of unoccupied buildings or cellars which together with the terrain in general afford excellent opportunity for successful penetration by a skilled and determined opposition," Kirkpatrick warned. As inspector general for the CIA, Kirkpatrick was concerned that the base was not "rigorously protected against sabotage," most notably by "air violations." In the game of cat and mouse between the Soviet Union and the United States, tensions were at an all-time high. First there had been the Gary Powers incident, in May of 1960. Less than a year later came the CIA's failed commando operation at the Bay of Pigs. The president had been advised that the Soviets could be preparing their own operation as payback for either of those events. Former president Eisenhower told Kennedy that "the failure of the [Bay of Pigs will embolden the Soviets](#) to do something that they would otherwise not do," and Lyman Kirkpatrick warned that one type of sabotage operation the Soviets could be considering might involve hitting Area 51. It would be a strike between the eyes, meant to harm the office of the president in the view of the people. After Gary Powers, the White House had promised that the Watertown facility had been closed down. After the Bay of Pigs fiasco, the president promised to rein in covert activity by the CIA. Any public revelation that Area 51 existed would expose the fact that the CIA, the Air Force, and defense contractors were all working together on a black project to overfly Russia again—despite presidential assurances that they would do no such thing. If the nation were to discover the Mach 3 spy plane project moving forward at Area 51, what would they think about the president's promises? [Area 51 was a target](#) in exposure alone, the inspector general said.

Jim Freedman was one of the men assigned to photograph and assess the mines in the mountains—the terrain that Kirkpatrick had said would "afford excellent opportunity for successful penetration." Freedman's superior, Hank Meierdierck, [decided to make a hunting trip](#) out of the task. Meierdierck was a living legend at Area 51. In 1956 he had worked as the CIA's instructor pilot on base, teaching the Project Aquatone pilots how to fly the U-2. Now, during Oxcart, Hank Meierdierck had an office at the Pentagon but most of his time was spent out at Area 51. "One day Hank asked me if I liked to hunt," recalls Jim Freedman. "I said yes. Well, Hank smiled and said, 'Good. Bring your rifle out next time.'"

Weapons were not allowed on Lockheed transport planes flying in and out of Area 51 from McCarran Airport. But Freedman's level of clearance was such that security did not examine the things he carried with him. "The next trip to Area 51, I put my rifle in a box with an oscilloscope," Freedman explains, "and that's how I got my hunting rifle out there."

Meierdierck found a helicopter pilot to fly the men into the mountains north of Area 51 to photograph the old mines there. Then he dropped the two men and their hunting rifles off at a favored spot on Groom Mountain where Area 51 officials liked to surreptitiously

hunt deer. Meierdierck told the helicopter pilot to return the next day.

From on top of Groom Mountain, the view down over Area 51 was spectacular. It was, as Kirkpatrick had speculated, a perfect place for a Soviet spy to disguise himself as a deer hunter and take notes. During the day, you could see the buildings down at Area 51 spread out in an H formation to the west of the runways. Jeeps and vans could be seen ferrying workers around. If you had binoculars, you could get a clear look at what was going on. At night, the whole place went dark; most of the buildings that had windows kept the curtains drawn. If an aircraft needed to land at night, the lights would quickly flash on, illuminating the runway. The airplane would land and the lights would quickly go off, bathing the valley in darkness once again.

For Freedman, the hunting trip dragged on a little long. "Hank was stubborn," Freedman explains. "He said he wasn't leaving until he got a deer. And he preferred to hunt on his own, so he suggested we split up and meet back at the campsite for dinner." Which is what they did. "There was very little for us to talk about," Freedman says. "We both knew we were on top secret projects. You couldn't afford to talk. Everyone had a wife and a family. No one could afford to lose their job." One subject the men could discuss was hunting. Only three years had passed since the last aboveground atomic tests had detonated across the valley down below. Freedman wondered if anyone who caught a deer up on Groom Mountain should even consider eating it because "the deer ate the foliage which was contaminated from alpha particles from all the tests." As it turned out, the men did not catch any deer anyway.

Come Monday, the helicopter pilot returned, and by the end of the next day, Freedman was sitting in his dining room in Las Vegas, eating dinner with his wife and kids. He was able to get his hunting rifle out of Area 51 the same way he got it in: "Inside the oscilloscope case."

Not long after Lyman Kirkpatrick filed his final inspector general's report on Area 51, [Richard Bissell resigned](#). This was not before he had been offered a lesser job at CIA, as the director of the Office of Science and Technology. But in that new capacity Bissell's need-to-know would have been drastically reduced. In CIA parlance, having one's access curbed was an insult. Instead, he chose to leave the Agency.

Without Richard Bissell in charge of the secret CIA facility, what would become of Area 51? And who would run the Oxcart reconnaissance program? The decision about Bissell's replacement went up the chain of command to President Kennedy. He had been in office for less than a year and already he was up to his elbows in CIA backlash. President Kennedy's new secretary of defense was a man named Robert McNamara, an intellectually minded Harvard Business School graduate who had won the Legion of Merit during World War II for performing firebomb analysis from behind a desk. Now, as secretary of defense, after the Bay of Pigs, McNamara called for the Pentagon to assume control of all spy plane programs. McNamara was at the top of the chain of command of all the armed services and believed his Air Force should be in charge of all U.S. assets with wings. The public had lost confidence in the CIA, McNamara told the president.

But James Killian and his colleague Edwin Land, now both part of Kennedy's presidential foreign intelligence advisory board, told the president that the best move

forward for national security was to [keep the CIA in the spy plane business](#) at Area 51. What happened with Bissell was unfortunate, they said, suggesting that Richard Bissell, and [Richard Bissell alone, had gone rogue](#). They argued that the CIA was still the agency best equipped to deliver overhead intelligence to the president. If that wasn't possible, Killian and Land said, then the idea of who controls overhead reconnaissance should be restructured. One plan was that the [CIA might work in better partnership](#) with the Air Force. President Kennedy liked that. On September 6, 1961, he created a protocol that required the CIA deputy director and the undersecretary of the Air Force to comanage all space reconnaissance and aerial espionage programs together as the National Reconnaissance Office, a classified agency within Robert McNamara's Department of Defense. A central headquarters for NRO was established in Washington, a small office with a limited staff but with a number of empire-size egos vying for power and control. The organization maintained a public face, an overt identity at the Pentagon called the Office of Space Systems, but no one outside a select few knew of NRO's existence until 1992.

Jim Freedman remembers the transition in the chain of command and how it affected his work at Area 51. "Because I was the person with a list of every employee at the area, it was my job to know not just who was who, but who was the boss of somebody's boss. An individual person didn't necessarily know much more about the person they worked for than their code name. And they almost certainly didn't know who was working on the other side of the wall or in the next trailer over. [Wayne Pendleton was the head of the radar group](#) for a while. He was my go-to person for a lot of different groups. One day, Pendleton suddenly says, 'I'm going to Washington, Jim.' So I said, 'What if I need you, what number should I call?' And Pendleton laughed. He said, 'You won't need me because where I'm going doesn't exist.' Decades later I would learn that the place where Wayne was going when he left the Ranch was to a little office in Washington called NRO."

After the Bay of Pigs and his resignation, Richard Bissell drifted away from Washington's power center like a man scorned. Quickly, his longtime, biggest supporters became his greatest detractors. Most notable among them was James Killian. The president's powerful science adviser, Killian had headhunted Bissell twice before, the first time in 1946 to work in the economics department at MIT, and then again in 1954 to manage the U-2 aerial espionage program for the CIA. For nearly twenty years, Killian had considered Richard Bissell not just a colleague but a friend. After the Bay of Pigs, Killian turned his back on his friend. In a clear case of the pot calling the kettle black, Killian told the CIA's historian Donald E. Welzenbach that he was terribly upset when he learned of Bissell's role in covert CIA operations. In a *Studies in Intelligence* report for the CIA, Welzenbach wrote, "Killian looked upon science and technology almost as a religion, something sacred to be kept from contamination by those who would misuse it for unwholesome ends. Into this category fit the covert operations [and 'dirty tricks' of Dick Bissell's Directorate of Plans.](#)"

It was hypocrisy of the highest order. James Killian had been up to his own dirty tricks, the true, perilous facts of which have remained buried until now. Unlike Richard Bissell, because of Killian's powerful role as President Eisenhower's chief science adviser, Killian did not get caught. But what Killian spearheaded in the name of so-called sacred science

in retrospect hardly seems like science at all. In late 1958, Killian organized, oversaw, and then tried to cover up the facts regarding two of the most dangerous weapons tests in the history of the nuclear bomb. Two thermonuclear devices, called Teak and Orange, each an astonishingly powerful 3.8 megatons, were exploded in the Earth's upper atmosphere at Johnston Atoll, 750 miles west of Hawaii. Teak went off at 252,000 feet, or 50 miles, and Orange went off at 141,000 feet, 28 miles, which is exactly where the ozone layer lies. In hindsight, it was a ludicrous idea. "The impetus for these tests was derived from the uncertainty in U.S. capability to discern Soviet high-altitude nuclear detonation," read one classified report. Killian was in charge of the tests, and his rationale for authorizing them was that if sometime in the future the Soviets were to detonate a high-altitude nuclear bomb, our scientists would need to know what to look for.

Instead of being difficult to detect, a nuclear bomb exploding in the ozone layer was instantly obvious in horrific and catastrophic ways. The fireballs produced by both Teak and Orange burned the retinas of any living thing that had been looking up at the sky without goggles within a 225-mile radius of the blast, including hundreds of monkeys and rabbits that Killian authorized to be flown in airplanes nearby. The animals' heads had been locked in gadgets that forced them to witness the megaton blast. From Guam to Wake Island to Maui, the natural blue sky changed to a red, white, and gray, creating an aurora 2,100 miles along the geomagnetic meridian. Radio communication throughout a swath of the Pacific region went dead.

"We almost blew a hole in the ozone layer," explains Al O'Donnell, the EG&G weapons test engineer who in the twelve years since Crossroads had wired over one hundred nuclear bombs, including Teak and Orange. O'Donnell was standing on Johnston Island, 720 miles southwest of Honolulu, on August 1, 1958, when the Teak bomb went off. Due to a "program failure" on the Redstone missile system (which carried the warhead to its target), the rocket went straight up and detonated directly above where O'Donnell and the rest of the arming and firing party were working. The bomb was supposed to have detonated twenty-six miles to the south. In a sanitized film record of the event, men in flip-flops and shorts can be seen ducking for cover as a phenomenal fireball consumes the sky overhead. "It was scary," O'Donnell sighs, remembering the catastrophic event as an old man, half a century later. There is a hint of resignation in his voice when he says, "But we were all used to it by then. The bombs had become too big." In Teak's first ten milliseconds, its fireball grew ten miles wide—enough yield to obliterate Manhattan. At H + 1 second, the fireball was more than forty miles wide, which could have taken out all five boroughs of New York City. It was not as if Killian, who was in charge of the project, hadn't realized the potential for part of the ozone layer to be destroyed. "In late 1957 and early 1958, the question was raised as to whether or not the ultraviolet emissions from the Teak and Orange events would 'burn a hole' into the natural ozone layer," states a 1976 review of the event authored by Los Alamos National Laboratory. But "the pre-event discussions were inconclusive" and the tests barreled ahead anyway. Why? "It was argued that even in case of complete destruction of the ozone layer over an area with radius 50 km, the ozone loss would amount to only 2×10^{-5} of the global inventory. The 'hole' would be closed promptly by bomb-produced turbulence and ambient motions in the atmosphere." As

astonishing and reckless as this was, the follow-up becomes even more unbelievable. "After the events, little attention was paid to this particular problem, evidently because no spectacular or unusual observations were made (because of lack of evidence one way or the other)." Apparently, no one thought to ask the dignitary on hand that day on Johnston Island, Wernher Von Braun.

In government archival film footage, [Von Braun can be seen observing the Redstone rocket](#) he had designed to get the nuclear weapon up to the ozone where it would explode. Wearing aviator sunglasses and a loose-fitting Hawaiian shirt and sporting an island tan, Von Braun appears more playboy than rocket scientist. But Von Braun was so spooked by the Teak blast that he [left the island before the second test](#) took place. Von Braun was not one to scare easily. When he worked for Adolf Hitler, he and his colleague Ernst Steinhoff were known [to dash up to Hitler's lair](#), Wolfsschanze, in Steinhoff's personal airplane to brief the dictator on how the V-2 was coming along. But the power of the Teak bomb sent Von Braun running. Immediately after the deadened communications systems were restored, Von Braun fled. He never publicly said why.

Killian's high-altitude nuclear tests did not stop there. Two weeks later, another ultrasecret nuclear weapons [project called Operation Argus commenced](#). Killian's nuclear bomb tests had now expanded to include outer space. "Argus was an unusual operation," a Defense Nuclear Agency summary from 1993 recalls. "It was completed in less than six months after Presidential approval, and it was completed in complete secrecy. Nuclear-tipped missiles were fired from ships for the first time." Oblique words used to conceal another one of the most radical, covert science experiments conducted by man. On August 27, August 30, and September 6, 1958, three nuclear warheads were launched from X-17 rockets from the deck of the *USS Norton Sound* as the warship floated off the coast of South Africa in the South Atlantic Ocean. Up went the missiles and the warheads until they exploded approximately three hundred miles into space. This "scientific experiment" was the brainchild of a Greek elevator operator turned physicist, Nicholas Christofilos. [Christofilos convinced Killian](#) that a nuclear explosion occurring above the Earth's atmosphere—but within the Earth's magnetic field—might produce an electronic pulse that could hypothetically damage the arming devices on Soviet ICBM warheads trying to make their way into the United States. While the phenomenon did occur in minutiae, meaning the arming devices registered "feeling" the pulse from the nuclear blast, Christofilos was wrong about the possibility that this would actually *stop* incoming enemy nuclear missiles in their tracks. In other words, the tests failed.

To cover his tracks as to the sheer waste and recklessness of the experiment, in the month following the nuclear detonation in space, Killian wrote a memo to President Eisenhower attempting to put a congratulatory spin on how quickly the project occurred and how terrific it was that secrecy was maintained. Dated November 3, 1958, Killian's letter began by describing Argus as "[probably the most spectacular event ever conducted.](#)" More egregious self-congratulation came next: "The experiment was in itself an extraordinary accomplishment. Especially notable was the successful launching of a large, solid-fuel rocket carrying a nuclear payload from the heaving deck of a ship in the squally South Atlantic. Scarcely less so is the fact that the whole experiment was planned

and carried out in less than five months... Impressive, too, is the fact that no leaks have occurred."

When the *New York Times*'s senior science writer [Walter Sullivan hand-delivered a letter to Killian](#) letting him know the *New York Times* was in possession of leaked information about these secret tests, the White House went into denial mode. "[Neither confirm nor deny such leaks.](#)" the president's special assistant Karl G. Harr Jr. wrote in a secret memo to Killian. "If the *New York Times*, or anyone else, breaks a substantial part of the story," one possible response would be to say the White House had disclosed "all that we may safely say from a national security point of view." In regards to brazenly violating the White House policy of announcing every nuclear test, Killian's position was to be that "it was a scientific experiment utilizing a nuclear detonation to discharge electrons into the Earth's magnetic field." It was semantics that gave Killian the authority, or cover, to declare that a nuclear test was not a nuclear test. Adding one last ironic touch of deception, the president's special assistant told Killian that were the *New York Times* to make the Argus test public, a panel of scientists "should meet with the press in the Great Hall of the National Academy of Science in order to emphasize the scientific aspects of this experiment."

Were the president's top science advisers really making America safer? Or were they abusing their power with the president? Couple their power with the total lack of oversight they enjoyed, and it was the president's scientists who paved the road for the U.S. militarization of space. "[It was agreed that I would be protected from congressional inquisition.](#)" Killian wrote in his memoirs, adding, "I think now this was the wrong decision. It would have been of help to Congress to have been more fully informed about the work of PSAC [President's Science Advisory Committee], and help me to have a better feeling for congressional opinion."

Beginning with Argus, the president's science advisers were using space as their laboratory, conducting tests that a Defense Nuclear Agency review board would later call "poorly instrumented and hastily executed." They did so with total disregard for potentially catastrophic effects on the planet, not to mention the effect it would have decades later on the arms race in space. According to the same report, Killian was aware of the risk and took a gamble. There had been discussions regarding the possibility that the Teak and Orange shots really could burn holes in the ozone. But those "pre-event discussions were inconclusive," the report said. And so the scientists went forward on the assumption that if a hole happened, it would later be closed.

In reality, Killian and others had no idea what would or would not happen when the megaton bomb exploded in the upper atmosphere. "And they didn't factor in to their equations what could have happened if they failed," recalls Al O'Donnell. "We were lucky. When the Teak bomb exploded right over our heads on Johnston Island, we thought we might be goners. It was an enormous bright white-light blast." The men did not have radio communications for eight hours. "All the birds on the island that had been pestering us during the setup, these big fearless birds we called Gooney birds, after the bomb went off, they just disappeared. Or maybe they died." When Admiral Parker of the Armed Forces Special Weapons Project finally reached O'Donnell and the rest of the EG&G crew by

radio from his office in the Pentagon, his words were: "[Are you still there?](#)"

If American citizens were in the dark about the megaton thermonuclear weapons tests being conducted by the American military in space, the Russians certainly were not. They forged ahead with an unprecedented weapons test of their own. On October 30, 1961, the Soviet Union detonated the largest, most powerful nuclear weapon the world had ever known. Called the Tsar Bomba, the hydrogen bomb had an unbelievable yield of fifty megatons, roughly ten times the amount of all the explosives used in seven years of war during World War II, including both nuclear bombs dropped on Hiroshima and Nagasaki. Tsar Bomba, detonated over northern Russia, flattened entire villages in surrounding areas and broke windows a thousand miles away in Finland. Anyone within a four-hundred-mile radius who was staring at the blast would have gone blind. Soviet leader Nikita Khrushchev told the United Nations Assembly that the purpose of the test was to "show somebody Kuzka's mother"—to show somebody who's boss. The world was racing toward catastrophe. Would the A-12 spy planes heading to Area 51 really help, or would overhead espionage prove to be nothing more than a drop in the bucket?

Wizards of Science, Technology, and Diplomacy

Harry Martin stood on the tarmac mesmerized by the beauty of the Oxcart. With its long, shiny fuselage, the airplane resembled a cobra with wings. As the master fuels sergeant, Martin had been at Area 51 since the very first days of the Oxcart program, back when the tarmac he was standing on was being poured as cement. Now, something big was happening at Area 51. The Oxcart had arrived and it was getting ready to fly. For more than a week, Martin had watched dignitaries come and go, touching down and taking off in Air Force jets. The generals would inevitably show up in the hangar where Martin worked because it was the place where the airplane stayed. Martin's job was to prep the aircraft with fuel, which for weeks had been leaking as if through a sieve.

Martin had caught glimpses of General LeMay, shorter than he'd expected but chomping on his signature cigar like he did on the cover of magazines. Martin had also seen General Doolittle, of the harrowing World War II Doolittle Raid. Harry Martin never shook hands with any of the generals; they were busy and way above his pay grade. Besides, Martin's left hand was wrapped in a bandage, which made work slightly challenging, although he was most grateful to still have a thumb. Martin had been working with a saw and a pipe the week before when his tool slipped and nearly severed his most important finger. Fortunately, a flight surgeon was working with a project pilot in the hangar next door and Martin got his thumb sewn together fast.

It was April 25, 1962. Just a few buildings down from where Martin worked, Lockheed test pilot Louis Schalk sat in a recliner inside a Quonset hut taking a nap when a man from the Agency put a hand on his shoulder and said, "Lou, wake up!" The Oxcart was ready and it was time for Lou Schalk to fly. Two physiological support division officers helped Schalk into a flight suit, which looked like a coverall. There was no need for a pressure suit because today Schalk was only going to make a taxi test. Out on the tarmac, an engineer rolled up a metal set of stairs and Schalk climbed up into the strange-looking aircraft. There were no observers other than the crew. John Parangosky, who authored a secret interagency monograph called "The Oxcart History," declassified in 2007, noted that if anyone had been watching he would have been unable to process what he was looking at. "A casual observer would have been startled by the appearance of this vehicle; he would have perhaps noticed especially its extremely long, slim shape, its two enormous jet engines, its long, sharp projecting nose, and its swept-back wings which appeared far too short to support the fuselage in flight." It was a revolutionary airplane, Parangosky wrote, able to fly at three times the speed of sound for more than three thousand miles without refueling—all the way from Nevada to DC in less than an hour. "Toward the end of its flight, when fuel began to run low, it could cruise at over 90,000 feet."

But of course there were no casual observers present at Area 51. On that sunny day at Area 51 in April of 1962, this was the only A-12 Oxcart that Lockheed had completed for the CIA so far.

As for all the remarkable things the aircraft had been meticulously designed to do, it wasn't able to do any of them yet. Sitting on the tarmac, the aircraft was 160,000 pounds of titanium outfitted with millions of dollars' worth of expensive equipment that no one yet knew how to work, certainly not above seventy thousand feet. Like its predecessor the U-2, the Oxcart was an aircraft without a manual. Unlike the U-2, this aircraft was technologically forty years ahead of its time. Some of the records the Oxcart would soon set would hold all the way into the new millennium.

Lou Schalk fired up the engines and began rolling down the runway for the taxi test. To everyone's surprise, including Lou Schalk's, the aircraft unexpectedly got lift. Given the enormous engine power, the aircraft suddenly started flying—lifting up just twenty feet off the ground. Stunned and horrified, Kelly Johnson watched from the control tower. ["The aircraft began wobbling."](#) Johnson wrote in his notes, which "set up lateral oscillations which were horrible to see." Johnson feared the airplane might crash before its first official flight. Schalk was equally surprised and decided not to try to circle around. Instead he set the plane down as quickly as he could. This meant landing in the dry lake bed, nearly two miles beyond where the runway ended. When it hit the earth, the aircraft sent up a huge cloud of dust, obscuring it from view. Schalk turned the plane around and drove back toward the control towers, still engulfed in a cloud of dust and dirt. When he got back, the Lockheed engineers ran up to the airplane on the metal rack of stairs. Kelly Johnson had only four words for Schalk: ["What in Hell, Lou?"](#) For about fifteen very tense minutes, Johnson had thought Lou Schalk had wrecked the CIA's only Oxcart spy plane.

The following day, Schalk flew again, this time with Kelly Johnson's blessings but still not as an official first flight. Harry Martin was standing on the tarmac when the aircraft took off. "It was beautiful. Remarkable. Just watching it took your breath away," Martin recalls. "I remember thinking, This is cool. And then, all of a sudden, as Schalk rose up in the air, pieces of the airplane started to fall off!" The engineers standing next to Martin panicked. Harry [Martin thought for sure the airplane was going to](#) crash. But Lou Schalk kept flying. The pieces of the airplane were thin slices of the titanium fuselage, called fillets. Their sudden absence did not affect low-altitude flight. Schalk flew for forty minutes and returned to Area 51. It was mission accomplished for Schalk but not for the engineers. They spent the next four days roaming around Groom Lake attempting to locate and reattach the pieces of the plane. Still, it was a milestone for the CIA. Three years, ten months, and seven days had passed since Kelly Johnson first presented his plans for a Mach 3 spy plane to Richard Bissell, and here was the Oxcart, finally ready for its first official flight.

Agency officials were flown in from Washington to watch and to celebrate. Jim Freedman coordinated pickups and deliveries between McCarran Airport and the Ranch. It was a grand, congratulatory affair with lots of drinking in the newly constructed bar, called House-Six. [Rare film footage of the historic event](#), shot by the CIA, shows men in suits milling around the tarmac slapping one another on the back over this incredible flying machine. They watch the aircraft take off and disappear from view. Schalk traveled up to

thirty thousand feet, flew around in the restricted airspace for fifty-nine minutes, and came back down. His top speed was four hundred miles per hour. Watching from the tarmac was Richard Bissell, tall and gangly, wearing a dark suit and a porkpie hat. Bissell had been invited to attend the groundbreaking event as a guest of Kelly Johnson. It was a significant gesture; the two men had become friends, and Kelly Johnson was notably making a point. "Part of what made Kelly Johnson such a good man was that he was extremely loyal to the people he considered his friends," Ed Lovick explains. For Bissell, the visit to Area 51 had to have been bittersweet. It would be the last time he would ever set foot at the facility he had overseen for the CIA since it was nothing but a desert floor. Richard Bissell would never be invited back again.

And Area 51 would soon have a new mayor.

It was late at night in the summer of 1962 and [Bud Wheelon](#) sat in the library in the Washington, DC, home of [Howard and Jane](#) Roman, two clandestine officers with CIA. It was only Wheelon's second month employed by the Agency, and because he was not a career spy, he had had a lot of catching up to do. Almost every night, he worked until ten, having just accepted the job that made him the Agency's first head of the Directorate of Science and Technology, or DS&T. Only thirty-three years old, Wheelon was a brilliant ballistic-missile scientist and signals intelligence analyst. He was also a graduate of MIT and had played rugby with James Killian when Killian was the president there. Now he had been [hand-picked by President Kennedy's science advisers](#), including James Killian, to replace Richard Bissell on all overhead reconnaissance projects for the CIA. This included satellites, U-2 operations, and the Oxcart spy plane. It was the job Bissell had declined, but "[in this way, I became the new 'Mayor of Area 51.'](#)" Wheelon explains.

"I did not have much to do at night so I started reading clandestine reports, which I'd never seen before," Wheelon says. Although he found many uninteresting, one in particular caught his eye. "It made me concerned. At the time, there was a very serious National Intelligence Estimate under way for President Kennedy, one that would address the question: Will the Russians put nuclear missiles in Cuba? I had been briefed that the estimate was coming down on the side that the Russians would not do such a thing. The Pentagon had decided that putting missiles in Cuba was too reckless a move for the Russians and that they would not do such a reckless thing."

The Pentagon was dead wrong. As Wheelon read dozens of intelligence reports, one rose up like a red flag. "One thing you have to worry about with anyone informing against a person or a state is fabrication," Wheelon explains. "There were a lot of Cubans in Miami [at the time] whose sugar plantations had been taken away from them by Castro and they wanted action taken. But there was one report that caught my eye. The informant said that he'd seen very long trailers, big trucks, led by jeeps with Soviet security people inside. As these trucks made their way through certain villages, Cubans were directing traffic so the long trailers could get by. In South America, often on the street corners, you will find post-office boxes. They are not squat boxes with a level opening like you find in the States. Instead, they are more of a traditional letterbox attached at the top of a long pole. The informant witnessed one of these very long trailer trucks coming up to an intersection and not being able to make the curb. There was a letterbox blocking the way. Some of the

Soviet security people got out of the truck. They grabbed an acetylene torch from the back and cut the letterbox right down. They didn't waste any time or give it a second thought. When I read that, I thought, Whoever reported this is no fabricator. This is not a detail you could make up. Whatever was in those trailers was too important to let a letterbox stand in the way."

Wheelon believed there were missiles inside the trailers. Missiles with nuclear warheads. Unknown to Wheelon at the time, his new boss, CIA director John McCone, also believed this was true. Except McCone wasn't around Washington, DC; he was in Paris, on his honeymoon. This left Wheelon in charge of more than was usual for a newcomer to the CIA. Concerned by the intelligence report, Wheelon asked to meet with the head of the board of the National Intelligence Council, Sherman Kent. "I went to him and I said, 'Sherm, I am new around here so you should discount a lot of what I say. I am not a professional intelligence person, but it looks to me like the evidence is overwhelming that they have missiles down there.'" Sherman Kent thanked Wheelon for his advice but explained that the board was going to present President Kennedy with the opposite conclusion—that there were no Soviet missiles in Cuba.

The Cuban missile crisis is a story of conflict between the United States and the Soviet Union, and the drama that culminated in a ten-day standoff between two superpowers on the brink of thermonuclear war. But it is also the story of two powerful rivals within the American services, the CIA and the U.S. Air Force, and how they set aside historical differences to work together to save the world from near nuclear annihilation. Like so many international crises of the Cold War, the Cuban missile crisis had its link to Area 51—through the U-2.

During the crisis, the CIA and the Air Force worked together to conduct the U-2 spy mission that caused the Soviet Union to back down. How this was accomplished not only involved two key Area 51 players but also set a precedent for the power-sharing arrangement at Area 51 that worked well for a while, until it didn't work anymore. The diplomatic efforts of one Army Air Force old-timer and one CIA newcomer helped set the stage for success. The old-timer was General Jack Ledford, and the newcomer was Bud Wheelon.

On the afternoon of August 29, 1962, a U-2 spy plane flying over Cuba spotted eight surface-to-air missile sites in the western part of Cuba, the same SA-2 missile systems that had shot down Gary Powers two years before. The following week, three more missile sites were discovered on the island, as well as a Soviet MiG-21 parked on the Santa Clara airfield nearby. For two months, the [Agency had been analyzing reports](#) that said between 4,000 and 6,000 individuals from the Soviet bloc had arrived in Cuba, [including 1,700 Soviet military technicians](#). Cuban citizens were being kept from entering port areas where the Soviet-bloc ships were unloading unusually large crates, ones big enough to "contain airplane fuselage or missile components." The implications were threefold: that Russia was building up the Cuban armed forces, that they were establishing multiple missile sites, and that they were establishing electronic [jamming facilities against Cape Canaveral](#) in Florida as well as other important U.S. installations. The director of the CIA, John McCone, had already told the president's military advisers that he believed the

Soviets were laying a deadly trap involving nuclear missiles. But there was no hard evidence of the missiles themselves, the military argued, and their position on that fact was firm. (The Pentagon did not doubt that the Soviets wanted to put nuclear missiles on Cuba; officials just didn't think they'd accomplished that yet.) [McCone left for his honeymoon in Paris.](#)

In the following month, September, bad weather got in the way of good photographic intelligence. Day after day it rained over Cuba or the island was shrouded in heavy cloud cover. Finally, on September 29, a CIA U-2 mission over the Isle of Pines and the Bay of Pigs revealed yet another previously unknown missile site. President Kennedy's top advisers were convened. The CIA warned the advisers of more unknown dangers in Cuba and pushed for additional overflights so as to gain better intelligence on military installations there. Secretary of Defense Robert McNamara and Secretary of State Dean Rusk were opposed to the idea. [Not another Gary Powers incident](#), they said. But on October 5 and 7, [the CIA got presidential approval](#) to run two additional missions of its own. The resultant news was hard to ignore: there were now a total of nineteen surface-to-air missile sites on the island of Cuba, meaning there was something very important that the Soviets were intent on defending there. The Pentagon held firm. There was still no hard data revealing actual missiles, McNamara and Rusk said. Making matters even more complicated, JFK's Air Force chief of staff, General Curtis LeMay, was [pushing for preemptive strikes](#) against Cuba. It was a volatile and incredibly dangerous situation. If the CIA was correct and there already were nuclear missiles in Cuba, then LeMay's so-called preemptive strikes would actually initiate a nuclear war, not prevent one.

What the Agency needed desperately was a wizard of diplomacy, someone who could help the rival agencies see eye to eye so they could all work together to get the Soviets to back down. The Agency and the Air Force had decidedly different ideas on imminent missions; the CIA wanted to gather more intelligence with the U-2; the Air Force wanted to prepare for war. An individual who could wear both hats with relative objectivity was needed, someone who could see both sides of the debate. In a rare moment of accord, both sides agreed that the man for the job was Brigadier General Jack Ledford. Just a few weeks earlier, [Ledford had been asked by McCone](#) to serve as the director of the Office of Special Activities at the Pentagon, meaning he would be the Pentagon liaison to the CIA at Area 51. Ledford had just graduated from the Industrial College of the Armed Forces and was looking forward to moving out west when his old World War II commander [General LeMay encouraged him to take the new CIA liaison job.](#)

LeMay had known Ledford since the war in the Pacific when Ledford flew under his command. A former Olympic diver, Ledford was tall, charismatic, and handsome. According to Wheelon, "He was someone whose charisma was contagious. Ledford was impossible not to like to be around." There was, of course, the legendary story of [Ledford's plane crash, involving heroics](#) in the Pacific theater during World War II. As a captain in the Air Force, Ledford was making a bombing run over Kyushu Island, Japan, when he was attacked by Japanese fighter jets, his airplane and his own body hit with fire. Ledford's flight engineer, Master Sergeant Harry C. Miller, was hit in the head. The medic on board treated Miller and [tried to treat Ledford with opiates](#), who declined so he could

keep his head clear. With the aircraft crashing, Ledford and the medic opened a parachute, cut the shroud lines, and attached the chute to the unconscious flight engineer. They dropped the man through the nose of the wheel well; Captain Ledford followed, delaying opening his own parachute so he could be next to Sergeant Miller when he landed. Miller would be unconscious when he hit the earth, and without Ledford's help he would likely have broken his back. The medic, not far behind, later recounted how amazing it was that Ledford's daring and dangerous plan had actually worked.

Now, two decades later, at the Cuban missile crisis round table, Ledford showed the same foresight in preempting a potentially deadly situation. The first thing General Ledford did was present the CIA and the Air Force with a shoot-down analysis, detailing the odds for losing a U-2 on another overflight. [The chances were one in six, Ledford said.](#) He pushed for the U-2 mission, arguing that it was better to know now if there really were nuclear missiles in Cuba than to wish you knew later on, when it could be too late. Once these cold hard facts were on the table, the heart of the debate became clear. The point of contention was not whether or not to fly the mission. Rather, it was *who* would fly the mission—the Air Force or the CIA. As it turned out, each organization wanted the job. President Kennedy felt the mission needed to involve a pilot wearing a blue U.S. Air Force pilot suit. [Kennedy felt that if a CIA spy plane](#) were to get shot down over Cuba, there would be too much baggage attached to the event, that it would rekindle hostilities over the Gary Powers shoot-down. But General Ledford knew what the president did not: that the CIA had higher-quality U-2 airplanes, ones far less likely to end up getting shot down. Agency U-2s flew five thousand feet higher than their heavier Air Force U-2 counterparts, which were weighed down by additional reconnaissance gear. The CIA airplanes also had better electronic countermeasure packages, meaning they had more sophisticated means of jamming SA-2 missiles coming at them. So Ledford performed diplomatic wizardry by convincing the CIA to actually loan the Air Force its prized U-2 airplanes. With the fate of the free world at stake, the CIA and the Air Force agreed to work together to solve the crisis.

On October 14, an [Air Force pilot flying a CIA U-2](#) brought home film footage of Cuba that the White House needed to see. [Photographs showing nuclear missiles](#) supplied by the Soviet Union and set up on missile stands in Cuba. Those eight canisters of film brought back by the CIA's U-2 set in motion the Cuban missile crisis, bringing the world closer than it had ever come to all-out nuclear war. They would also give the work going on at Area 51 a shot in the arm. The Pentagon told the CIA they wanted the Oxcart operations ready immediately so the aircraft could be used to overfly Cuba. A CIA review of Oxcart, declassified in 2007, said it flatly: "The Oxcart program suddenly assumed greater significance than ever, and its achievement of operational status became one of the highest national priorities."

What Airplane?

Gardening helped CIA pilot Kenneth Collins relax. He had over a hundred rosebushes in his garden, which he and his wife, Jane, pruned together on weekends after Collins returned home from a long, mysterious week at the Ranch. At Area 51, where he worked as a project pilot, [Collins went by the code name Ken Colmar](#). "Same first name because you will instantly respond to it when called," Collins explains. "Colmar for the C, in case you had something monogrammed." His call sign was Dutch 21 but most men on base called him the Iceman. The pressure-suit officers came up with the nickname. "I was known to show no emotion or irritation even after a particularly dangerous flight," Collins recalls. The pressure-suit officers could gauge how tough a flight was by how sweaty a pilot's underwear was when they helped pilots undress. Collins's underwear was always remarkably dry.

Flying Oxcart was, to an Air Force pilot, the single most elite job in the nation at the time. Ken Collins "commuted" to Area 51 each week, flying in from sunny Southern California, where he and other pilots who now worked for the CIA pretended to live normal lives with their pretty wives and, ideally, a few children. Having a stable marriage and family had become a CIA-pilot mandate during Oxcart, something that was not in place during the U-2. It was Gary Powers's alcoholic wife who'd triggered the change. Some in the Agency believed she put the secrecy of the entire U-2 program at risk with behavior that even they could not control. Once, Barbara Powers got it into her head to visit her husband at his clandestine post in Turkey. [She made it as far as Athens](#) before the officer assigned to watch her notified Powers that he would be out of a job if he couldn't keep his impetuous wife in line. Ken Collins was told this story during his first interview at the Pentagon. Loose lips didn't just sink ships, he was reminded; loose lips could trigger nuclear war. Collins also learned that his wife, Jane, would be subject to psychological screening were he to be accepted into a top secret program rumored to involve "space travel."

Collins and his family were moved from their home in South Carolina to a Los Angeles suburb called Northridge and into a four-bedroom raised ranch with a two-car garage and an avocado tree out front. He was thirty-six years old. Jane attended church and collected antique china. All four of Jane and Ken Collins's children, two boys and two girls, maintained good grades in school. The neighbors were told Mr. Collins worked for Hughes Aircraft Company. Collins was told to report nosy neighbors to the CIA, and if any foreign-borns tried to befriend the Collinsees, they were to notify the Agency, who would look into the matter.

Each Monday morning, Collins left his home and drove to Burbank Airport, nine miles

to the southwest. There, he and the other Oxcart pilots climbed aboard Constellation propeller planes and headed to Area 51, never with more than two pilots per airplane—a guideline put into place after the Mount Charleston crash eight years earlier. The deaths of those top Agency and Air Force managers and scientists had set progress on the U-2 program back several months. Now, in 1963, Oxcart was already more than a year behind schedule. The Agency could not afford to lose any pilots. The vetting process alone took eighteen months and getting familiar with the aircraft took another year.

After leaving Burbank, Collins and his fellow pilots were flown, two by two, up over the Mojave Desert to the northeast, past China Lake, and into the Tikaboo Valley. Flying into the restricted airspace above the Nevada Test Site, Collins would look out the window and make a mental note of the ever-growing landscape of giant craters. The appearance of a new, moonlike subsidence crater was often a weekly occurrence now that nuclear testing had moved underground. When seen from above, the landscape at the Nevada Test Site looked like a battlefield after the apocalypse. For Collins, the destruction was a solid visual reminder of what scorched earth would look like after a nuclear war.

The Agency couldn't have chosen a more dedicated pilot. Collecting intelligence on dangerous reconnaissance flights was Ken Collins's life mission; it was what he did best. He seemed to be propelled by a natural talent and kept alive by an unknown force Collins called fate. "Fate is a hunter," Collins believes. "When it comes for you, it comes," and for whatever reason it was not time for death to come to him yet. This was a notion Collins formulated during the Korean War while flying reconnaissance missions and watching so many talented and brave fellow pilots die. How else but by fate did he survive all 113 combat missions he had flown? On those classified missions, the young Collins was armed with only a camera in the nose of his airplane as [he flew deep into North Korea](#), sometimes all the way over the Yalu River, being [fired at by MiG fighter jets](#). During the war, he was awarded a [Distinguished Flying Cross](#) and also the [coveted Silver Star for valor](#), the third-highest military decoration a member of the armed services can receive. Both medals were pinned on Collins's chest before he turned twenty-four.

But now, as an Oxcart pilot, Collins kept his medals tucked away in a drawer, never mentioning that he had received them. As with many servicemen, glory was a difficult distinction to contemplate when so many of your fellows had died. Accepting fate as the hunter made things easier for Collins, which is how he dealt with the memory of his closest friend and former wingman from the Fifteenth Tactical Reconnaissance Squadron, Charles R. "Chuck" Parkerson. The two men had flown on many missions together, but there was one from which Parkerson never came home. "We had flown into North Korea and back out side by side," Collins recalls. "We were almost home when Parkerson radioed me. He said the engine on his RF-80 had flamed out and he was unable to restart it. I saw he was losing altitude quickly and he knew that soon he would crash." Parachuting into enemy territory meant certain death. "Over the radio, Parkerson asked me, 'What should I do?'" Collins explains. "I said, 'Fly out over the Yellow Sea and I'll fly with you.' I told him to bail out in the water and I'd send his coordinates back to base for a rescue team." It seemed like a good idea, and Collins flew alongside his wingman as they headed toward the Yellow Sea. Parkerson prepared for a bailout. "But there was a

problem," Collins recalls. "The canopy on Parkerson's RF-80 was stuck. Jammed. It wouldn't open, which meant he was trapped inside the airplane. There was nothing I could do for my friend except to fly alongside him all the way until the end." Collins watched Parkerson land his airplane on the sea. With Parkerson unable to get out of the sinking aircraft, Collins waited, watching from the air as his friend drowned. "When your time is up, it is up," Collins recalls.

Ten years later, it was 1963, the Korean War was history, and there was an airplane to get ready at Area 51. After the twin-prop passed over the last set of hills on the Nevada Test Site's eastern edge, the airstrip at Groom Lake came into view, and Collins thought about how no one but his fellow CIA pilots had any idea who he really was. During training missions, the papers in Collins's flight pouch identified him only as a NASA weather pilot. His space-age-looking aircraft was registered to an airfield called Watertown Strip, Nevada. He was never to carry any personal effects with him in the airplane. When the Lockheed Constellation landed on the tarmac at Area 51, security guards took his ID and papers and locked them away in a metal box. Each Friday, before the afternoon flight home, Collins's identity was returned to him.

His mission flight that day, May 24, 1963, should have been like any other flight. By now, there were [a total of five Oxcarts being flight-tested at Area 51](#), and Collins breezed through his prebriefing with the Lockheed engineers, making mental notes about the different tasks he was to perform during the flight. The engineers wanted to know how certain engine controls worked during acceleration and slow cruise. Today's test would be subsonic with the high-performance aircraft traveling somewhere around 450 miles per hour, like a racehorse out for a trot. It was to be a short mission up over Utah, into Wyoming, and back to Area 51. Air Force chase pilot [Captain Donald Donohue would start out following Collins](#) in an F-101 Voodoo. [Later, Jack Weeks](#), also an Oxcart project pilot, would pick up the task.

For a little over an hour, everything appeared to be normal. Heading into Wendover, Utah, Collins made note of a large cumulus cloud that lay ahead. As Collins slowed down, Jack Weeks signaled that he was going to head back to Area 51. The F-101 could not handle flying as slow as Collins needed to fly that day. Besides, from Weeks's perspective, everything on the Oxcart looked fine. Collins gave Weeks the okay signal with one hand in the cockpit window and headed into the cloud.

[Suddenly, the altimeter was rapidly unwinding](#), indicating a rapid loss of speed," Collins recalls. In heavy clouds, Collins had no visual references to determine where he was. "I advanced the throttles to counter the loss of airspeed. But instead of responding, and without any warning, the aircraft pitched up and flipped over with me trapped underneath. Then it went into an inverted flat spin." The Agency's million-dollar A-12 Oxcart was unrecoverable and crashing. Collins needed to bail out.

Collins had no idea how close he was to the Earth's surface because he was in the middle of a cloud and couldn't see out of it. He also did not know if he was over a mountain range, which would mean he had even less time to eject. Collins closed his visor and grabbed the ejection ring that was positioned between his legs. He pushed his head firmly against the headrest and pulled. This kind of radical ejection from a prized top

secret aircraft is not easy to forget, and Collins recalls dramatic details. "The canopy of the aircraft flew off and disappeared but I was still upside down, with the aircraft on top of me," he explains. "Having pulled the D-ring, my boot stirrups snapped back. The explosive system in the seat rocket engaged, shooting me downward and away from the aircraft." First Collins separated from the Oxcart. Next he separated from his seat. After that, he was a body falling through the air until a small parachute called a drogue snapped open, slowing his body down. In his long history of flying airplanes, this was the first time Collins had ever had to bail out. Falling to Earth, he tried to get a sense of what state he might be over. Was he in Nevada or Utah? The ground below him appeared to be high-desert terrain, low hills but no mountains that he could see. He was still too high up to discern if there were roads. As he floated down, in the distance he spotted the heavy black aircraft tumbling through the air until it disappeared from sight. "I remember seeing a large, black column of smoke rise up from the desert floor and thinking, That's my airplane." Only now there was nothing left of it but an incinerated hunk of titanium smoldering on the ground. Fate was a hunter, all right.

Suddenly, Collins felt his parachute break away and he began to free-fall once again. Had his luck run out? he wondered. Was today the day he was going to die? But then, as suddenly as the one parachute had broken away, he felt another tug at his shoulders, and a second parachute blossomed above him. This one was more than twice the size of the drogue. He began to float gently toward Earth. Collins hadn't been told that the A-12 Oxcart ejection system had two separate parachutes. The first parachute, or drogue, was small enough to slow the pilot down and get him to an altitude of fifteen thousand feet. Then the drogue chute would jettison away in advance of the main parachute deploying. This large, thirty-five-foot-diameter landing aid was the one most pilots were familiar with.

With the ground below him quickly getting closer, Collins could see roads and sagebrush. He wondered how long it might take for anyone to locate him. When fellow pilot Jack Weeks had left him, just minutes before the crash, everything on Collins's aircraft had seemed fine, but because of secrecy protocols, Collins had not made radio contact with the command post before he bailed out. He could see that he was most likely somewhere north of the Salt Lake salt flats. Collins tucked his legs up and assumed the landing position. When he hit the ground, he rolled. His mind went through the checklist of what to do next.

Collins unclipped himself from the parachute and began collecting everything around him. Flight-protocol pages and filmstrips of navigational maps fluttered across the desert. As he hurried to collect the top secret papers, he was surprised to hear a car motor in the distance. Looking up, he saw a pickup truck bouncing toward him along a dirt desert road. "As it got closer, I could see there were three men in the front cab," Collins recalls. "The truck pulled alongside me and came to a stop. I could see they had my aircraft canopy in the back of their pickup."

The men, who appeared to be local ranchers, sized up Collins. Because the flight had been subsonic, Collins was wearing a standard flight suit and not a high-altitude pressure suit, which would have made him look like an astronaut or an alien and likely prompted a lot more questions. Instead, the ranchers asked Collins if he wanted a ride. They said they

knew exactly where his airplane had crashed, and if he hopped in, they'd give him a ride back to his plane. Until that moment, no civilian without a top secret security clearance had ever laid eyes on the Oxcart, and Collins had strict orders to keep it that way. He'd been briefed on what to do in a security breach such as this one, given a cover story by the Agency that fit perfectly with the proximity to the Nevada Test Site—and with the times. Collins told the ranchers that his aircraft was an F-105 fighter jet and that it had a nuclear weapon on board. The men's expressions changed from helpful to fearful. "They got very nervous and said if I wanted a ride, I better jump in quick because they were not staying around Wendover for long," Collins recalls.

The ranchers drove Collins to the nearest highway patrol office. There, he jumped out, took his airplane canopy from the back of the truck, and watched the men speed off. Collins reached into the pocket of his flight suit. Inside, he found the note that read *call this number*, followed by a telephone number. Also in his pocket was a dime. Inside the highway patrol office, Collins asked the officer on duty where he could find the nearest pay phone. The man pointed around to the side of the building, and using the Agency's dime, Collins made the phone call that no Agency pilot ever wants to make. A little less than an hour later, Kelly Johnson's private airplane landed in Wendover, Utah, along with several men from the CIA. After a brief exchange of words so Kelly Johnson could confirm that Collins was physically okay, Collins boarded the airplane. During the two-hour flight to the Lovelace Clinic in New Mexico, no one said a word. "There would be plenty of talking to do during the debriefing," Collins says, "and with the Agency's tape recorders taking everything down." A crash of a CIA spy plane meant someone had some explaining to do.

Back in the control room at Groom Lake, navigator [Sam Pizzo had a monumental amount of work](#) on his hands. News of Collins's crash had just hit the command post, and it was up to Colonel Holbury, the air commander of Detachment 1 of the 1129th U.S. Air Force Special Activities Squadron, to put together a search team for the crash site. "Maintenance guys, security guys, navigators, we all took off in trucks and airplanes and headed to Utah," Pizzo explains. With Collins confirmed alive, the goal now was to locate every single piece of the wrecked airplane, "every nut, bolt, and sliver of fuselage." The efforts would be staged from an old, abandoned airfield northwest of the dry lakes. These were the same facilities where World War II bombers had practiced for the Hiroshima and Nagasaki atomic bomb runs. The quarters there, long since deserted, were rudimentary. There was no running water or heat. This meant the men from Groom Lake brought their own cooks, cots, and gear as part of their crash-recovery team.

Once they found the site, the work crew had a lot of digging to do. The aircraft, Article #123, hadn't broken apart in flight, but given the speed at which it had hit the earth, huge sections of the airplane had become buried. Critically important was locating every loose piece of the titanium fuselage. The metal was rare and expensive, and the fact that the Agency's spy plane was hand-forged from titanium was a closely held secret. If a news reporter or a local got a hold of even the smallest piece of the aircraft, its unusual composition would raise questions that might threaten the cover of the entire Oxcart program. Equally critical to national security was making sure the radar-absorbing materials, known as composite and that covered the entire airplane, remained in

government control. If a piece of the plane got into the wrong hands, the results could be disastrous: the Russians could learn the secret of stealth.

Along with a crew of more than one hundred men, the Agency brought its own horses to the crash site. Men from Groom Lake [took to the desert terrain on horseback](#) and began their search. For two days they scoured the ground, looking for stray pieces of airplane as well as for flight papers and maps that had been in the cockpit with Collins. "By the time we were done, we'd combed over every single square inch of ground," Pizzo recalls. A massive C-124 transport plane hauled the pieces of the airplane back to Area 51. In a heavily guarded hangar there, what was left of the airplane was spread out, piece by piece, in an effort to re-create its shape.

Richard Bissell's departure from Area 51 a year earlier had left a huge power vacuum at the base. There was a general feeling among the men working there now that the vacuum was being [filled by Air Force brass](#). This made perfect sense. Whereas the U-2 was, in essence, a motorized glider, the A-12 Oxcart was the highest, fastest, most state-of-the-art piloted aircraft in the world. For men who prided themselves on airpower—as did everyone involved in the U.S. Air Force—the supersonic Oxcart was the top dog. The Area 51 facility was now one of the Air Force's most prestigious billets, a place where officers got to be in charge of their "own little air force," as Major General Paul Bacalis had once said. What this meant was that Pentagon favorites, usually World War II heroes who had survived dangerous, death-defying missions, were rewarded with key positions at Area 51. Men like Colonel Robert Holbury.

At Area 51, Holbury's official title was air commander of the U.S. Air Force Special Activities Squadron at Las Vegas, the nonclassified reference name for Oxcart. A former fighter pilot during World War II, [Holbury had been given a commendation by General Patton](#) for a dangerous low-flying reconnaissance mission over the Saar River, in western Germany, which he survived despite coming under heavy enemy fire. This meant Holbury was the official wing commander at the base when Ken Collins crashed the first Oxcart spy plane. In Air Force culture, when an airplane crashes, someone has to take the blame. Collins explains: "In the SAC [Strategic Air Command] mind-set, if there's an accident, the wing commander suffers the consequences." Instead, Collins believes, Holbury tried to get Collins to be the fall guy. "Holbury didn't want blame; he wanted a star. He wanted to become a general, so he tried to put the blame on me. After the crash, even before the investigation, he requested that I be fired."

Collins was unwilling to accept that. Fortunately for Collins's career, Kelly Johnson, the builder of the aircraft, didn't care about blame as much as he wanted to find out what had gone wrong with his airplane. Listening to Collins describe what had happened during the debriefing, Johnson couldn't figure out what caused the aircraft to crash. He wondered if there was something Collins had forgotten, or was maybe leaving out. "I was clear in my mind that the crash was a mechanical error and not a pilot error," Collins explains. "So when Kelly Johnson asked would I try unconventional methods like hypnosis and truth serum, I said yes. I was willing to do anything I could to get to the truth." While the Pentagon's accident board conducted a traditional investigation, Collins submitted to a far less conventional way of seeking out the truth of the cause of the crash.

Inside the flight surgeon's office at Lockheed, Collins sat with a CIA-contracted hypnotist from Boston, "a small, rotund man dressed in a fancy suit," as Collins recalls. "He tried very hard to put me in a trance, only it didn't work. I don't think he realized that hypnotizing a fighter pilot was not as easy as he thought it might be." Next, Collins was injected with sodium thiopental, also known as truth serum. Collins remembers the day well. "I told my wife, Jane, I was going to work for a few hours, which was unusual to begin with because it was a Sunday. The point of the treatment was to see if I could remember details other than those I relayed in the original debrief with the CIA. But yes, even with the sodium pentothal in my system, everything I said was exactly the same. The treatment takes a lot out of you and after it was over, I was very unsteady on my feet. Three CIA agents brought me home late that Sunday evening. One drove my car, the other two carried me inside and laid me down on the couch. I was still loopy from the drugs. They handed Jane the car keys and left without saying a word."

When Collins woke up the next morning, he figured the only conclusion his wife could have drawn was that her husband had gone out on a Sunday and gotten drunk. Feeling bad, he confided in her that he'd been given truth serum and could not say anything more. Jane told her husband a story of her own. She said that he didn't have to explain further because she had a pretty good idea what had happened to him on the job. Earlier in the week, Jane explained, immediately after Collins's crash, family friend and fellow Oxcart pilot Walt Ray had broken protocol and called Jane from Area 51 to tell her that Ken had bailed out of an airplane but that he was all right. "Where is he?" Jane had asked. Walt Ray said he didn't know. Jane then asked, "How can you know if Ken is okay if you don't even know where he is?" At the time Walt Ray didn't have an answer for that. So now, hangover or no hangover, Jane Collins was happy to have her husband home alive. After a lengthy investigation it was determined that a tiny, pencil-size part called [a pitot tube had in fact caused the crash](#). The pitot tube measured the air coming into the aircraft and thereby controlled the airspeed indicator. Unlike in a car, where the driver can feel relative speed, in a plane, without a proper reading from an airspeed indicator, a pilot has no awareness of how fast he is going, and without correct airspeed information a pilot cannot land. When Collins flew into the cloud, the pitot tube reacted adversely to the moisture inside and froze. The false airspeed indicator caused the aircraft to stall. As a result of the stall, the Oxcart flipped upside down and crashed.

Ken Collins's crash in Utah caused the CIA to redouble its secrecy efforts regarding operations at Area 51. The press was told an F-105 crashed, and as of 2011, the Air Force still has it listed that way. Worried its cover was about to be blown, the Agency decided to shore up an accounting of who knew what about Oxcart. An analyst was assigned the task of combing through all the files the CIA had been keeping on journalists, civilians, and even retired Air Force personnel—anyone who showed a curiosity about what might be going on at Area 51. Beginning in the spring of 1963, the noted instances of what the CIA called "Project Oxcart Awareness Outside Cleared Community" drastically increased. Declassified in 2007 and never before made public, the CIA had been [monitoring phone conversations](#) of journalists who seemed interested in the Oxcart program. "Mr. Marvin Miles, Aviation Editor, Los Angeles Times, telephonically contacted

Westinghouse Corp., Pittsburgh, attempting to confirm if employees of that firm were traveling covertly to 'the desert' each week in connection with top secret Project which he suspects may have 'CIA' association," read one memo. Another stated that "Mr. Robert Hotz, Editor Aviation Week, indicated his awareness of developments at Burbank." Of particular concern to the Agency was an article in the *Hartford Courant* that referred to the "secret development" of the J-58 engine. Another article in the Fontana, California, paper the *Herald News* speculated about the existence of Area 51, calling it a "super secret Project site." An [increasingly suspicious CIA](#) worked overtime to monitor journalists, and they also monitored regular citizens, including a Los Angeles-based taxi driver who was described in a memo marked "classified" as once having asked a Pratt and Whitney employee if he was "en route to Nevada."

With the Air Force steadily gaining a foothold in day-to-day operations at Area 51, it was the Air Force that the CIA should have been watching more closely in terms of the future of the spy plane program as a whole. It was not as if there weren't writing on the wall. In the year before Collins's crash, the Air Force had decided it wanted a Mach 3 Oxcart-type program of its own. Just as it had with the U-2, the Pentagon moved in on the CIA's spy plane territory. Only with the Oxcart, [the Air Force ordered not one but three Air Force variants](#) for its stable. One version, the YF-12A, would be used as an attack aircraft, its camera bay retrofitted to hold two 250-kiloton nuclear bombs. The second Oxcart variant the Air Force ordered could carry a drone on its back. The third was a two-seater version of the CIA's stealth spy plane, only instead of being designed to conduct high-speed, high-altitude reconnaissance missions over enemy territory during peacetime, the Air Force supersonic spy plane was meant to go in and take pictures of enemy territory immediately after a nuclear strike by U.S. bomber planes—to see if any strategic targets had been missed. Designated the RS-71 Blackbird, this now-famous aircraft had its letter designation accidentally inverted by President Lyndon B. Johnson in a public speech. Since the president is rarely ever "corrected," the Air Force changed its letter designation, which is how the SR-71 Blackbird got its name. (Originally, the [letters stood for "Reconnaissance/Strike."](#))

There was no end to the irony in all of this. The Air Force's Mach 3 airplanes were a far cry from President Eisenhower's original idea to let the CIA create a spy plane with which to conduct espionage missions designed to prevent nuclear war. This new Air Force direction underscored the difference in the two services: the CIA was in the business of spying, and the Air Force was in the business of war.

There were other motives in play, including the ego of General Curtis LeMay. The Air Force had already spent [eight hundred million](#) dollars developing the B-70 bomber airplane—a massive, triangle-shaped, Mach 3, eight-engined bomber that had been General LeMay's passion project since its inception in 1959. When a fleet of eighty-five of these giant supersonic bombers was first proposed to Congress, LeMay, then head of the Strategic Air Command, had his proposition met with cheers. But the Gary Powers shoot-down in May of 1960 had exposed the vulnerability of LeMay's B-70 bombers, which would fly at the same height as the U-2. In 1963 LeMay was no longer head of the Strategic Air Command—instead, he was President Kennedy's Air Force chief of staff.

Despite evidence showing the B-70 bomber was not a practical airplane, LeMay was not about to give up his beloved bomber without a fight.

When the CIA first briefed President Kennedy on how high and how fast the A-12 Oxcart would fly, [the president was astonished](#). His first question, according to CIA officer Norman Nelson, was "Could it be converted into a long-range bomber to replace the B-70?" LeMay was in the room when Kennedy asked the question. The thought of losing his pet program to the Agency drove General LeMay wild. He lobbied the Pentagon to move forward with the B-70, and he stepped up his public relations campaign, personally promoting the B-70 bomber program in magazine interviews from *Aviation Week* to *Reader's Digest*. He was committed to appealing to as many Americans as possible, from aviation buffs to housewives. But by 1963, Kennedy was leaning toward canceling the B-70. In a budget message, he called it "[unnecessary and economically unjustifiable](#)." [Congress cut back its B-70 order even further](#). The original order for eighty-five had already been cut down to ten, and now Congress cut that to four.

LeMay was furious. He flew from Washington, DC, to Burbank, California, to see Kelly Johnson at the Skunk Works. Longtime rivals, Kelly Johnson greeted LeMay with skepticism when LeMay asked for a briefing about the A-12. After Johnson was finished, LeMay gave Johnson a quid pro quo. "[Johnson, I want a promise out of you that you](#) won't lobby anymore against the B-70," LeMay said. Provided Kelly Johnson complied, [LeMay promised to send Lockheed](#) an Air Force purchase order for an interceptor version of Lockheed's A-12 Oxcart, in addition to the preexisting order. For Lockheed, this would mean a big new invoice to send to the Air Force. At first, Kelly Johnson was suspicious of LeMay's sincerity. That changed just a few weeks later when Secretary of Defense Robert McNamara showed up at the Skunk Works with the secretary of the Air Force and the assistant secretary of defense in tow. Now McNamara asked for a briefing on the A-12, during which he took "copious notes." Within a matter of months, the Pentagon ordered twenty-five more A-12 variants. The Pentagon already had a catchy name for its versions of the Oxcart. They would call them Blackbirds. *Black* because they had been developed in the dark by the CIA, and *birds* because they could fly. The meeting touched off the long-running battle between the two agencies over control of Area 51 and control of any U.S. government asset with wings. But this is exactly what had happened with the U-2. The CIA did all of the heavy lifting to get the aircraft aloft, only to have the program eventually taken over by the Pentagon for the Air Force.

[At the Ranch, it was business as usual](#). No one but the generals had any idea that the CIA's spy plane program now officially had in the Pentagon a formidable rival that threatened its very existence. Instead, pilots, engineers, operators, scientists, and Air Force enlisted men worked triple shifts, around the clock, to get the A-12 Oxcart mission ready. These were the men who made up and supported the 1129th Special Activities Squadron at Groom Lake.

The J-58 jet engines built by Pratt and Whitney had taken forever to finish but now they were ready to fly. In January of 1963 they were [finally delivered to the Ranch](#). A host of new problems occurred when the engines were first powered up. In one instance, engineers suspected a foreign object was stuck in an engine's heart, called the power plant, and was

damaging internal parts. [An X-ray](#) showed the outline of a pen that had fallen into the engine's cover, called a nacelle, during final assembly in Burbank. From then on, Lockheed workers got coveralls without breast pockets. There were other problems. The engines worked like giant vacuums. Once powered up on the tarmac, they sucked in every loose object lying around, including rocks and metal screws. As a solution, Area 51 workers took to sweeping and then vacuuming the runway before each flight. It was a tedious but necessary job.

The next goal was to get the airplane to cruise at Mach 3. Nearly five times as fast as any commercial airplane, this was an aerodynamic feat that had never been accomplished before. Pushing through the lower Mach numbers was a laborious and dangerous task. Performance margins were met gradually, with a [new set of challenges](#) cropping up each day. As the airplane reached higher speeds, the 500-plus-degree temperatures began melting electrical components, many of which had to be redesigned and rewired. Chuck Yeager is credited with breaking the sound barrier in 1947, but every time a new aircraft moves through the speed of sound, which is 768 miles per hour, complications can arise. In the case of the Oxcart, the sonic shock unexpectedly caused the fuselage to flex in such a way that many structural parts became dangerously compromised. These parts had to be redesigned and replaced.

Some performance benchmarks came surprisingly quickly. In July of 1963, Lou Schalk flew briefly at Mach 3, much to the Agency's delight. But sustaining flight for ten minutes at Mach 3 took another seven months to achieve. Every flight was like an operational mission, with navigators plotting a course and making maps days before as they worked to test the Oxcart's internal navigation system, or INS. "When you're flying at that altitude and that speed, you need big checkpoints to validate information from the INS," recalls navigator Sam Pizzo. "Any old geographical landmark, like a mountain or a river, would not do. The Oxcart traveled too fast. Pilots would have to look for landmarks on the scale of the Grand Canyon or the Great Lakes," says the veteran navigator. "You can't imagine what new territory this was for a navigator. No amount of experience can prepare you when you work on an airplane that goes two or three times as fast as anything you navigated for before."

The essence of Area 51 was that everything that happened there happened big. Because all efforts were being made on orders of the president, and given the colossal scale of secrecy surrounding the project, there was a deeply patriotic sense that the free world depended on the work being performed at Area 51. The men worked tirelessly and with phenomenal ingenuity to overcome challenges that would have stymied countless others. And yet the strange paradox underlying all efforts at the Ranch was that Project Oxcart was also subject to unforeseeable world events. It could be given the ax at a moment's notice—which is what almost happened on November 22, 1963.

It was late in the day after a rainstorm and Captain Donald Donohue was working with a crew out on the dry lake bed. An [F-101 chase plane had run off the airstrip](#) and sunk into a layer of gypsum that was several inches deep. Working with a group of engineers and mechanics, Donohue led the efforts to lay down several long planks of steel that could then be used to tow the airplane out of where it had become stuck in the soggy lake bed.

"Pizzo came out," Donohue remembers. "He looked kinda pale. Then he said, 'Clean up and go home.' Well, something was not right. Sam Pizzo was a lot more talkative than that. Then he said something to the effect of 'We'll call you if we need you to come back.'"

"What the hell is going on?" Donohue remembers asking.

"President Kennedy has just been assassinated, in Dallas," Pizzo said solemnly.

It was a terrible shock, Donohue remembers. "Our commander in chief. Dead? I recall it like it was yesterday. Pizzo was right. We had to go home and wait this thing out. When [Lyndon] Johnson was vice president, he was entirely unaware about the existence of the A-12 program. And he didn't have a clue about Area 51." The future of Oxcart was contingent on the new president's call.

With President Kennedy dead, [Lyndon Johnson would be briefed](#) on the CIA's secret domestic base by CIA director John McCone on his eighth day as commander in chief. Until then, what Johnson would decide about the CIA's supersonic spy plane program was anybody's guess. The relationship between a new president and the CIA is always tenuous starting out. What happened to President Kennedy with the CIA and the Bay of Pigs raised the bar in terms of jeopardy for all future presidents of the United States. Only time would tell if Lyndon Johnson would authorize the completion of the Agency's Mach 3 spy plane out at Area 51.

Covering Up the Cover-Up

Jim Freedman remembers the first time he brought up the subject of UFOs with his EG&G supervisor at Area 51. It was sometime in the middle of the 1960s and "UFOs were a pretty big thing," Freedman explains. Flying saucer sightings had made their way into the news with a fervor not seen since the late 1940s. "I heard through the rumor mill that one of the UFOs had gone to Wright-Patt and was then brought to a remote area of the test site," Freedman says. "[I heard it was in Area 22](#). I was driving with my supervisor through the test site one day and I told him what I had heard and I asked him what he thought about that. Well, he just kept looking at the road. And then he turned to me and he said, 'Jim, I don't want to hear you mention anything like that, ever again, if you want to keep your job.'" Freedman made sure never to bring the subject of UFOs up again when he was at work.

In the mid-1960s, sightings of unidentified flying objects around Area 51 reached unprecedented heights as the A-12 Oxcart flying from Groom Lake was repeatedly mistaken for a UFO. Not since the U-2 had been flying from there were so many UFO reports being dumped on CIA analysts' desks. The first instance happened only four days after Oxcart's first official flight, on April 30, 1962. It was a little before 10:00 a.m., and a NASA X-15 rocket plane was making a test flight in the air corridor that ran from Dryden Flight Research Center, in California, to Ely, Nevada, during the same period of time when an A-12 was making a test flight in the vicinity at a different altitude. From inside the X-15 rocket plane, test pilot Joe Walker snapped photographs, a task that was part of his mission flight. The X-15 was not a classified program and NASA often released publicity photographs taken during flights, as they did with Walker's photographs that day. But NASA had not scrutinized the photos closely before their public release, and officials missed the fact that a tiny "UFO" appeared in the corner of one of Walker's pictures. In reality, it was the Oxcart, but the press identified it as a UFO. A popular theory among ufologists about why aliens would want to visit Earth in the first place has to do with Earthlings' sudden advance of technologies beginning with the atomic bomb. For this group, it follows that the X-15—the first manned vehicle to get to the edge of space (the highest X-15 flight was [354,200 feet—almost 67 miles above sea level](#)) would be particularly interesting to beings from outer space.

Two weeks after the incident, the CIA's new director, John McCone, received a secret, priority Teletype on the matter stating that "[on 30 April, A-12 was in air](#) at altitude of 30,000 feet from 0948-106 local with concurrent X-15 Test" and that "publicity releases mention unidentified objects on film taken on X-15 flight." This message, which was not declassified until 2007, illustrates the kind of UFO-related reports that inundated the CIA

at this time. In total, 2,850 Oxcart flights would be flown out of Area 51 over a period of six years. Exactly how many of these flights generated UFO reports is not known, but the ones that prompted UFO sightings created the same kinds of problems for the CIA as they had in the previous decade with the U-2, only with elements that were seemingly more inexplicable. With Oxcart, commercial airline pilots flying over Nevada or California would look up and see the shiny, reflective bottom of the Oxcart whizzing by high overhead at triple-sonic speeds and think, UFO. How could they not? When the Oxcart flew at 2,300 miles per hour, it was going approximately five times faster than a commercial airplane—aircraft speeds that were unheard-of in those days. Most Oxcart sightings came right after sunset, when the lower atmosphere was shadowed in dusk. Seventeen miles higher up, the sun was still shining brightly on the Oxcart. The spy plane's broad titanium wings coupled with its triangle-shaped rear fuselage—reflecting the sun's rays higher in the sky than aircraft were known to fly—could understandably cause alarm.

The way the CIA dealt with this new crop of sightings was similar to how it handled the U-2s'. Colonel Hugh "Slip" Slater, Area 51's base commander during this time, explains "[commercial pilots would report sightings](#)" to the FAA. The flights would be met in California, or wherever they landed, by FBI agents who would make passengers sign inadvertent disclosure forms." End of story, or so the CIA hoped. Instead, interest in UFOs only continued to grow. The public again put pressure on Congress to find out if the federal government was involved in covering up UFOs. When individual congressmen asked the CIA if it was involved in UFOs, the Agency would always say no.

On May 10, 1966, the most trusted man in America, [Walter Cronkite, hosted a CBS news special report](#) called *UFO: Friend, Foe or Fantasy?* To an audience of millions of Americans, Cronkite announced that the CIA was part of a government cover-up regarding UFOs. The CIA had been actively analyzing UFO data despite repeatedly denying to Congress that it was doing so, Cronkite said. He was absolutely correct. The Agency had been tracking UFO sightings around the world since the 1950s and actively lying about its interest in them. The CIA could not reveal the classified details of the U-2 program—the existence of which had been outed by the Gary Powers shoot-down but the greater extent of which would remain classified until 1998—nor could it reveal anything related to the Oxcart program and those sightings. That remained top secret until 2007. In Cronkite's exposé, the CIA looked like liars.

It got worse for the Agency. The Cronkite program also reopened a twelve-year-old can of UFO worms known as the Robertson Panel report of 1953. [Dr. Robertson appeared on a CBS Reports](#) program and disclosed that the UFO inquiry bearing his name had in fact been sponsored by the CIA beginning in 1952, despite repeated denials by officials. The [House Armed Services Committee held hearings on UFOs](#) in July of 1966, which resulted in the [Air Force laying blame for the cover-up on the CIA](#). "The Air Force... approached the Agency for declassification," testified secretary of the Air Force Harold Brown. Brown stated that while there was no evidence that "strangers from outer space" had been visiting Earth, it was time for the CIA to come clean on its secret studies regarding UFOs.

[According to CIA historian Gerald Haines](#), "The Agency again refused to budge. Karl

H. Weber, Deputy Director of OSI [Office of Scientific Intelligence], wrote the Air Force that 'we are most anxious that further publicity not be given to the information that the panel was sponsored by the CIA.'" Weber's words, said Haines, were "shortsighted and ill considered" because the Air Force in turn gave that information to a [journalist named John Lear](#), the science editor of the *Saturday Review* Lear's September 1966 article "The Disputed CIA Document on UFO's" put yet another spotlight on the CIA's ongoing cover-up of UFOs. Lear, unsympathetic to the idea of extraterrestrials, demanded the release of the report. The CIA held firm that its information was classified, and the full, unsanitized facts regarding the Agency's role in unidentified flying objects remains classified as of 2011.

The public was outraged by the layers of obfuscation. The year 1966 was the height of the Vietnam War, and the federal government's ability to tell the truth was under fire. Pressure on Congress to make more information known did not let up. And so once again, as it had been in the late 1940s, the Air Force was officially "put in charge" of investigating individual UFO claims. The point of having the Air Force in charge, said Congress, was to oversee the untrustworthy CIA. One of the great ironies at work in this was that only a handful of Air Force generals were cleared for knowledge about Oxcart flights blazing in and out of Area 51, which meant that to most Air Force investigators, Oxcart sightings were in fact unidentified flying objects. Further feeding public discord, several key Air Force officials who had previously been involved in investigating UFOs now believed the Air Force was also engaged in covering up UFOs. Several of these men left government service to write books about UFOs and help the public persuade Congress to do more.

For more than two hundred years, since the invention of the hot-air balloon, people all over the world have been terrified of unidentified flying objects because their very existence makes man feel vulnerable from an attack from above. The *War of the Worlds* radio-broadcast phenomenon was far from the first such incident. The first pictorially recorded panic over a UFO event occurred in August of 1783, shortly after two French brothers named Joseph and Etienne Montgolfier secured patronage from the king of France to design and fly a hot-air balloon—the eighteenth-century version of a modern-day defense contract. During one of the Montgolfiers' early flight tests, a balloon got caught in a thunderstorm and crashed in a small French village called Gonesse. The peasants that inhabited the town thought the balloon was a monster attacking them from the sky. A pen-and-ink drawing from that time shows men with pitchforks and scythes ripping the crashed balloon to shreds. Townsfolk in the background can be seen running away, flailing their arms above their heads in fear. From this story, it is easy to see that with any new form of flight comes the archetypal fear of an attack from above. In the more than two hundred years since, these fears have taken dramatic twists and turns.

Twenty years into the American jet age, in the mid-1960s, fears of unidentified flying objects continued to shape cultural thinking and spawn industries. By then, millions of Americans correctly believed that various factions inside the U.S. government were actively engaged in a cover-up regarding UFOs. Many citizens believed the government was trying to cover up the existence of extraterrestrial beings; people did not consider the

fact that by overfocusing on Martians, they would pay less attention to other UFO realities, namely, that these were sightings of radical aircraft made by men. By the late 1960s, the two government agencies at the forefront of citizens' wrath—the CIA and the Air Force—had been using cover and deception as tools to keep classified programs out of the public eye. Cover conceals the truth, and deception conveys false information. From cover stories about airplane crashes to deception campaigns about covert UFO study programs, both organizations had created complex webs of lies. How exactly a deception campaign works on ordinary people is best exemplified by this factual, dawn-of-the-jet-age U.S. Army Air Corps tale.

In 1942, when the jet engine was first being developed, the Army Air Corps desired to keep the radical new form of flight a secret until the military was ready to unveil the technology on its own terms. Before the jet engine, airplanes flew by propellers, and before 1942, for most people it was a totally foreign concept for an airplane to fly without the blades of a propeller spinning around. With the jet engine, in order to maintain silence on this technological breakthrough, the Army Air Corps entered into a rather benign strategic deception campaign involving a group of its pilots. Every time a test pilot took a Bell XP-59A jet aircraft out on a flight test over the Muroc dry lake bed in California's Mojave Desert, the crew attached a dummy propeller to the airplane's nose first. The Bell pilots had a swath of airspace in which to perform flight tests but every now and then a pilot training on a P-38 Lightning would cruise into the adjacent vicinity to try to get a look at the airplane. The airplane was seen trailing smoke, and eventually, rumors started to circulate at local pilot bars. Pilots wanted to know what was being hidden from them.

According to Edwards Air Force Base historian Dr. James Young, the chief XP-59A Bell test pilot, a man by the name of Jack Woolams, got an idea. He ordered a gorilla mask from a Hollywood prop house. On his next flight, Woolams removed the mock-up propeller from the nose of his jet airplane and put on the gorilla mask. When a P-38 Lightning came flying nearby for a look, Woolams maneuvered his airplane close enough so that the P-38 pilot could look inside the cockpit of the jet plane. The Lightning pilot was astonished. Instead of seeing Woolams, the pilot saw a gorilla flying an airplane—an airplane that had no propeller. The stunned pilot landed and went straight to the local bar, where he sat down and ordered a stiff drink. There, he began telling other pilots what he had definitely seen with his own eyes. His colleagues told him he was drunk, that what he was saying was an embarrassment, and that he should go home. Meanwhile, the concept of the gorilla mask caught on among other Bell XP-59A test pilots and soon Woolams's colleagues joined the act. Over the course of the next few months, other P-38 Lightning pilots spotted the gorilla flying the propellerless airplane. Some versions of the historical record have the psychiatrist for the U.S. Army Air Corps getting involved, helping the Lightning pilots to understand how a clear-thinking fighter pilot could become disoriented at altitude and believe he had seen something that clearly was not really there. Everyone knows that a gorilla can't fly an airplane. Whether or not the psychiatrist really did get involved—and if he did, whether he was aware of the gorilla masks—remains ambiguous to Dr. Craig Luther, a contemporary historian at Edwards Air Force Base. But for the purposes of a strategic deception campaign, the point is clear: no one wants to be

mistaken for a fool.

Ockham's razor is an idea attributed to a fourteenth-century English friar named William of Ockham. It asks when trying to explain a phenomenon, does the alternative story explain more evidence than the principal story, or is it just a more complicated and therefore a less useful explanation of the same evidence? In other words, according to Ockham, when man is presented with a riddle, the answer to the riddle should be simpler, not more complicated, than the riddle itself. Ockham's razor is often applied to the phenomenon of unidentified flying objects, or UFOs. In the case of the flying-gorilla story, the true explanation—that the gorilla was actually a pilot with a gorilla mask on—offered the simplest answer to what appeared to be an inexplicable phenomenon. The same can be said about the truth regarding the Roswell crash. But it would take decades for more to be revealed.

One of the more enigmatic figures involved in the Roswell mystery was Rear Admiral Roscoe H. Hillenkoetter, the first man to run the CIA. Hillenkoetter was the director of Central Intelligence from May 1, 1947, until October 7, 1950. After his retirement from the CIA, Hillenkoetter returned to a career in the navy. Curiously, after he retired from the Navy, in the late 1950s, he served on the board of governors of a group of UFO researchers called the National Investigations Committee on Aerial Phenomena. Hillenkoetter's placement on the board was a paradox. He was there, in part, to learn what the UFO researchers knew about unidentified flying crafts. But he also empathized with their work. While Hillenkoetter did not believe UFOs were from outer space, he knew unidentified flying objects were a serious national security concern. In his position as CIA director Hillenkoetter knew that the flying disc at Roswell had been sent by Joseph Stalin. And he knew of the Joint Chiefs of Staff's fear that what had been achieved once could happen again. Which makes it peculiar that, in February of 1960, in a rare reveal by a former cabinet-level official, Hillenkoetter testified to Congress that he was dismayed at how the Air Force was handling UFOs. To the Senate Science and Astronautics Committee he stated that "behind the scenes, high-ranking Air Force officers are soberly concerned about UFOs. But through official secrecy and ridicule, many citizens are led to believe the unknown flying objects are nonsense." He also claimed that "to hide the facts, the Air Force has silenced its personnel."

Hillenkoetter remained a ranking member of the National Investigations Committee on Aerial Phenomena until 1962, when he mysteriously resigned. Equally puzzling was that the man who later replaced Hillenkoetter and became the head of the board of the National Investigations Committee on Aerial Phenomena in 1969 was Joseph Bryan III—the CIA's first chief of political and psychological warfare. Not much is known about Bryan's true role with the ufologists because his work at the CIA remains classified as of 2011. If his name sounds familiar, it is because Joe Bryan was the man scheduled for a hunting trip with Frank Wisner, Richard Bissell's friend and predecessor at the CIA. But before Bryan arrived that day, on October 29, 1965, Wisner shot himself in the head.

At the CIA, during the mid-1960s, the thinking regarding UFOs began to move in a different direction. Since the birth of the modern UFO phenomenon, in June of 1947, the CIA had maintained three lines of thought on UFOs. They were (a) experimental aircraft,

(b) the delusions of a paranoid person's mind, or (c) part of a psychological warfare campaign by the Soviet Union to create panic among the people and sow seeds of governmental mistrust. But by 1966, a faction within the CIA added a fourth line of thought to its concerns: maybe UFOs were real. [This new postulation came from the Agency's monitoring](#) of circumstances in the Soviet Union, which was also in the midst of a UFO sea change.

In the 1940s and until Stalin's death in 1953, CIA analysts of Soviet publications had found only one known mention of UFOs, in an editorial published in a Moscow newspaper in 1951. Khrushchev appeared to have continued the policy. The analysts at CIA assigned to monitor the Soviet press during his tenure found no stories about UFOs. But curiously, in 1964, after Khrushchev's colleagues removed him from power and installed Leonid Brezhnev in his place, articles on UFOs began to emerge. In 1966, a series of articles about UFOs were published by Novosti, Moscow's official news agency. Two leading scientists from the Moscow Aviation Institute not only were writing about UFOs but were split on their opinions about them, which was highly unusual for Soviet state-funded scientists. One of the scientists, [Vilen Lyustiberg](#), promoted the idea that UFOs were the creation of the American government and that "[the U.S. publicizes them to divert people from its failures](#) and aggressions." A second leading scientist, Dr. Felix Zigel, [had come to believe](#) that UFOs were in fact real.

Declassified CIA memos written during this time reveal a concern that if the leading scientists and astronomers in the Soviet Union believed UFOs were real, maybe UFOs truly were real after all. In 1968, the CIA learned that a Soviet air force general named Porfiri Stolyarov had been named the chairman of a new "[UFO Section of the All-Union Cosmonautics Committee](#)" in Moscow. After learning that Russia had an official UFO committee, the CIA went scrambling for its own science on UFOs. For the first time in its history, America's spy agency internally allowed for the fact that UFOs might in fact be coming from outer space. "[The hypothesis that UFOs originate in other worlds](#), that they are flying craft from other planets other than Earth, merits the most serious examination," read one secret memo that was circulated among CIA analysts.

Had the original UFO cover-up—the crash of the Horten brothers' flying disc at Roswell—created this Hydra-like monster? Had maintaining secrecy around the follow-up program, which had been clandestinely set up in the Nevada desert just outside Area 51, resulted in such endemic paranoia among analysts at the CIA that these individuals sensed they were being lied to? That the dark secret the government was hiding was that UFOs really were from outer space? Or was an elite group with a need-to-know allowing—perhaps even fostering—exactly this kind of conjecture among analysts because it was better to have insiders on a wild-goose chase than to have them on the trail leading to the original enigma of Area 51?

Dull, Dirty, and Dangerous Requires Drones

Starting in 1963, preparing for Oxcart missions involved punishing survival-training operations for the pilots, many of which occurred in the barren outer reaches of Area 51. For Ken Collins, a mock nighttime escape from an aircraft downed over the desert was meant to simulate hell. Collins knew the kind of challenge he would be up against as he stood on the tarmac at Groom Lake watching the sun disappear behind the mountains to the west. Soon, it would be dark and very cold. Collins climbed into a C-47 aircraft and noticed that the windows were blacked out. Neither he nor any of the other Oxcart pilots he was with had any idea where they were headed. "We got inside and flew for a little while," Collins recalls, "until we landed in another desert airfield, somewhere remote." The men were unloaded from the aircraft and put into a van, also with the windows blacked out. They were driven for miles, Collins thought going in circles, until the doors of the van opened into what appeared to be thick, rough, high-desert terrain. "We were told that we were in Chinese enemy territory. To escape and survive the best that you can. There were electronic alarms, trip wires, and explosive charges on the ground."

Collins ran and took cover under a bush. In the darkness, he lay on his belly and gathered his thoughts. He had been through a series of survival trials during Oxcart training already. Once, he and another pilot were taken to the Superstition Mountains in Arizona for a mountain-survival trial. "On that exercise we had minimal food, sleeping bags, and a very small tent. We walked and camped in the mountains for five days. The first three days were comfortable; the third night a weather front moved in with cold rain," making things a little more challenging. A second exercise took place in Kings Canyon, in the Sierra Mountains. During that trip, Collins and another pilot had to live in snow for three days. They dug a snow cave and made beds of pine boughs. A third trip, to Florida, simulated jungle survival. "I was taken out to a swamp, given a knife, and told to survive on my own for four days." What Collins remembers vividly was the food. "I caught some turtles to eat, but found them difficult to open, so my staple became the heart of palm. I'd cut the new palm buds out from the center. It was thin fare, but sustainable," Collins says. But the high-desert survival training at Area 51 felt different. Unlike the other sessions, this one would involve psychological warfare by the mock enemy Chinese.

Collins crawled along the desert floor through the darkness, feeling for the trip wires and considering his next move. He pulled his small compass from his survival pack so he could chart a path. "I crawled slowly through the brambles, bugs, and mud for about thirty minutes when, suddenly, I hit a trip wire and alarms went off. A glaring spotlight came on and ten Chinese men in uniform grabbed me and dragged me to one of their jeeps." Collins was handcuffed, driven for a while, put into a second vehicle, and taken to so-

called Chinese interrogation headquarters. There, he was stripped naked and searched. "A doctor proceeded to examine every orifice the human body has, from top to bottom—literally," which, Collins believes, "was more to humiliate and break down my moral defenses than anything else." Naked, he was led down a dimly lit hallway and pushed into a concrete cell furnished with a short, thin bed made of wood planks. "I had no blanket, I was naked, and it was very cold. They gave me a bucket to be used only when I was told."

For days, Collins went through simulated torture that included sleep deprivation, humiliation, extreme temperature fluctuation, and hunger, all the while naked, cold, and under surveillance by his captors. "The cell had one thick wooded door with a hole for viewing. This opening had a metal window that would clank open and shut. A single bright light was on and when I was about to doze off, the light would flash off, which would immediately snap me out of sleep." For food, he was given watery soup, two thin pepper pods, and two bits of mysterious meat. "I had no water to drink and I was always watched. I didn't know day from night so there was no sense of time. The temperature varied from hot to very cold. The voice through the viewing window shouted demands."

Soon Collins began to hallucinate. Now it was interrogation time. Naked, he was led to a small room by two armed guards. He stood in front of his Chinese interrogators, who sat behind a small desk. They grilled him about his name, rank, and why he was spying on China. The torturous routine continued for what Collins guessed was several more days. Then one day, instead of being taken to his interrogators, he was told that he was free to go.

But halfway across the world, on November 1, 1963, Ken Collins's experience was being mirrored for real. A [CIA pilot named Yeh Changti](#) had been flying a U-2 spy mission over a nuclear facility in China when he was shot down, captured by the Chinese Communist government, and tortured. Yeh Changti was a member of the Thirty-Fifth Black Cat U-2 Squadron, a group of Taiwanese Chinese Nationalist pilots (as opposed to the Communist Chinese, who inhabited the mainland) who worked covert espionage missions for the CIA. In the 1960s, [the Black Cats flew](#) what would prove to be the deadliest missions in the U-2's fifty-five-year history, all of which were flown out of a secret base called Taoyuan on the island of Taiwan. When the CIA declassified most of the U-2 program, in 1998, "[no information was released about Yeh Changti](#) or the Black Cats," says former Black Cat pilot Hsichun Hua. The program, in entirety, remains classified as of 2011.

Colonel Hugh "Slip" Slater, the man who would later become the commander of Area 51, remembers Yeh Changti before he got shot down. "[His code name was Terry Lee](#) and he and I played tennis on the base at Taoyuan all the time. He was a great guy and an amazing acrobat, which helped him on the court. Sometimes we drank scotch while we played. Both the sport and the scotch helped morale." Slater says that the reason morale was low was that "the U-2 had become so vulnerable to the SA-2 missiles that nobody wanted to fly." One Black Cat pilot had already been shot down. But that didn't stop the dangerous missions from going forward for the CIA.

Unlike what had happened with the Gary Powers shoot-down, the American press remained in the dark about these missions. For the CIA, [getting hard intelligence on](#)

[China's nuclear facilities](#) was a top national security priority. On the day Yeh Changti was shot down, he was returning home from a nine-hour mission over the mainland when a surface-to-air missile guidance system locked on to his U-2. Colonel Slater was on the radio with Yeh Changti when it happened. "I was talking to him when I heard him say, 'System 12 on!' We never heard another word." The missile hit Yeh Changti's aircraft and tore off the right wing. Yeh Changti ejected from the airplane, his body riddled in fifty-nine places with missile fragments. He landed safely with his parachute and passed out. When he woke up, he was in a military facility run by Mao Tse-tung.

This was no training exercise. [Yeh Changti was tortured and held prisoner](#) for nineteen years until he was quietly released by his captors, in 1982. He has been living outside Houston, Texas, ever since. The CIA did not know that Yeh Changti had survived his bailout and apparently did not make any kind of effort to locate him. A [second Black Cat pilot named Major Jack Chang](#) would also get shot down in a U-2, in 1965, and was imprisoned alongside Yeh Changti. After their release, the two pilots shared their arduous stories with fellow Black Cat pilot, Hsichun Hua, who had become a general in the Taiwanese air force while the men were in captivity. Neither Yeh Changti nor Major Jack Chang was ever given a medal by the CIA. The shoot-down of the Black Cat U-2 pilots, however, had a major impact on what the CIA and the Air Force would do next at Area 51. Suddenly, the development of drones had become a national security priority, drones being pilotless aircraft that could be flown by remote control.

Drones could accomplish what the U-2 could in terms of bringing home photographic intelligence, but a drone could do it without getting pilots captured or killed. Ideally, drones could perform missions that fell into three distinct categories: [dull, dirty, and dangerous](#). *Dull* meant long flights during which pilots faced fatigue flying to remote areas of the globe. *Dirty* included situations where nuclear weapons or biological weapons might be involved. *Dangerous* meant missions over denied territories such as the Soviet Union, North Korea, and China, where shoot-downs were a political risk. Lockheed secured a contract to develop such an unmanned vehicle in late 1962. After Yeh Changti's shoot-down, the program got a big boost. Flight-testing of the drone code-named Tagboard would take place at Area 51 and, ironically, getting the Lockheed drone to fly properly was among the first duties assigned to Colonel Slater after he left Taoyuan and was given a new assignment at Area 51.

"Lockheed's D-21 wasn't just any old drone, it was the world's first Mach 3 stealth drone," says Lockheed physicist Ed Lovick, who worked on the program. "The idea of this drone was a radical one because it would fly at least as fast, if not faster, than the A-12. It had a ram jet engine, which meant it was powered by forced air. The drone could only be launched off an aircraft that was already moving faster than the speed of sound." The A-12 mother ship was designated M-21, *M* as in *mother*, and was modified to include a second seat for the drone launch operator, a flight engineer. The D-21 was the name for the drone, the *D* standing for *daughter*. But launching one aircraft from the back of another aircraft at speeds of more than 2,300 mph had its own set of challenges, beginning with how not to have the two aircraft crash into each other during launch. The recovery process of the drone also needed to be fine-tuned. Lovick explains, "The drone, designed to overfly

China, would travel on its own flight path taking reconnaissance photographs [and then head back out to sea](#)." The idea was to have the drone drop its photo package, which included the camera, the film, and the radio sensors, by parachute so it could be retrieved by a second aircraft nearby. Once the pallet was secure, the drone would crash into the sea and sink to the ocean floor.

Practicing this process at Area 51 translated into a lot of lost drones. Colonel Slater directed the test missions, which took place in what was called the special operating area, or [Yuletide](#), just north of Groom Lake airspace. Colonel Slater and Frank Murray would follow the M-21/D-21 in chase planes and oversee the subsonic launches of the drone. "They'd launch, and then disappear," Colonel Slater recalls. Helicopter pilot Charlie Trapp was sent to find them, along with a crew of search-and-rescue parajumpers, called PJs. "First, we'd locate the lost drones. Then I'd lower my parajumpers down on ropes. They'd hook the lost pods to a cargo hook and we'd pull the drones off the mountain that way," Trapp explains. "Sometimes it got tricky, especially if the drone crash-landed on the top of a mountain ridge. We had some tense times [with PJs nearly falling off cliffs](#)." When Colonel Slater felt the Oxcart and its drone were ready for a Mach 3 test, it was time to add ocean-survival training to the mix. For public safety reasons, the plan was to launch the triplesonic drone off the coast of California in March of 1966 for the first test, and to prepare his pilots, Colonel Slater had them swim laps each day in the Area 51 pool, first in bathing suits and then with their pressure suits on. "We'd hoist the guys up over the water in a pulley and then drop them in the pool. As soon as they hit the water the first time, the pressure suit inflated, so we had to have that fixed," Slater recalls. When it came time to practice an actual landing in a large body of water, the Agency's highest-ranking officer on base, Werner Weiss, got the Coast Guard to seal off a large section of Lake Mead, the largest reservoir of water in the United States, located just east of Las Vegas.

Slater remembers the pilot training well. "We were out there in this little Boston Whaler and the plan was to get the project pilots hoisted up into a parasail and then let them drop down in the water in their full pressure suits. First [Agency pilot Mele] Vojvodich went. His test went fine. By the time we got [Agency pilot Jack] Layton up, the wind had picked up. When Layton went down in the water, the Whaler started dragging him, and the water in his parachute started pulling him underneath. I called it off. 'Stop!' I said. 'We're gonna lose somebody out here!'"

They were prescient words. On the night of July 30, 1966, the 1129th Special Activities Squadron at Groom Lake prepared to make the first official nighttime drone launch off the coast of California. From the tarmac at Area 51, Lockheed's chief flight test pilot, Bill Park, was about to close the canopy on the M-21 Oxcart when Colonel Slater approached him with some final words. "I said, 'Bill, it's a dangerous mission,'" Slater remembers. "There were only a few feet between the drone and the tail of the A-12. Park knew that. We all did. In back was the [flight engineer, Ray Torick](#); he knew that too. The canopy closed and I got into another Mach 3 aircraft we had flying alongside during the test." Both aircraft flew west until they were a hundred and fifty miles off the coast of California. There, the M-21, piloted by Bill Park, prepared for the D-21 launch. A camera in Slater's airplane would capture the launch on 16-millimeter film. Down below, on the dark ocean surface, a rescue

boat waited. Park hit Ignite, and the drone launched up and off the M-21. But during separation, the drone pitched down instead of up and instantly split the mother aircraft in half. Miraculously, the drone hit neither Park nor Torick, who were both trapped inside.

The crippled aircraft began to tumble through the sky, falling for nearly ten thousand feet. Somehow, both men managed to eject. Alive and now outside the crashing, burning airplane, both men were safely tethered to their parachutes. Remarkably, neither of the men was hit by the burning debris falling through the air. Both men made successful water landings. But, as Slater recalls, an unforeseen tragedy occurred. "Our rescue boat located Bill Park, who was fine. But by the time the boat got to Ray Torick, he was tied up in his lanyard and had drowned."

Kelly Johnson was devastated. "[He impulsively and emotionally decided](#) to cancel the entire program and give back the development funding to the Air Force and the Agency," Johnson's deputy Ben Rich recalled in his 1994 memoir about the Lockheed Skunk Works. Rich asked Johnson why. "I will not risk any more test pilots or Blackbirds. I don't have either to spare," Johnson said. But the Air Force did not let the Mach 3 drone program go away so quickly. They created a new program to launch the drone from underneath a B-52 bomber, which was part of Strategic Air Command. President Johnson's deputy secretary of defense, Cyrus Vance, told Kelly Johnson, "We need this program to work because our government will [never again allow a Francis Gary Powers situation](#) develop. All our overflights over denied territory will either be with satellites or drones."

Three years later, in 1969, the D-21 drone finally made its first reconnaissance mission, over China, launched off a B-52. The drone flew into China and over the Lop Nur nuclear facility but had then somehow strayed off course into Soviet Siberia, run out of fuel, and crashed. The suggestion was that the drone's guidance system had failed on the way home, and it was never seen or heard from again. At least, not for more than twenty years. In the early 1990s, a CIA officer showed up in Ben Rich's office at Skunk Works with a mysterious present for him. "[Ben, do you recognize this?](#)" the man asked Rich as he handed him a hunk of titanium. "Sure I do," Rich said. What Ben Rich was holding in his hand was a piece of composite material loaded with the radar-absorbing coating that Lovick and his team had first developed for Lockheed four decades before. Asked where he got it, the CIA officer explained that it had been a gift to the CIA from a KGB agent in Moscow. The agent had gotten it from a shepherd in Siberia, who'd found it in the Siberian tundra while herding his sheep. According to Rich, "The Russians mistakenly believed that this generation-old panel signified our current stealth technology. It was, in a way, a very nice tribute to our work on Tagboard."

The use of drones in warfare has its origins in World War II. Joseph Kennedy Jr., President Kennedy's older brother, died in a secret U.S. Navy drone operation against the Germans. The covert mission, [dubbed Operation Aphrodite](#), targeted a highly fortified Nazi missile site inside Germany. The plan was for the older Kennedy to pilot a modified B-24 bomber from England and over the English Channel while his crew armed 22,000 pounds of explosives piled high in the cargo hold. Once the explosives were wired, the crew and pilot needed to quickly bail out. Flying not far away, a mother ship would begin

remotely controlling the unmanned aircraft as soon as the crew bailed out. Inside the bomber's nose cone were two cameras that would help guide the drone into its Nazi target.

The explosive being used was called Torpex, a relatively new and extremely volatile chemical compound. Just moments before Joseph Kennedy Jr. and his crew bailed out, the Torpex caught fire, and the aircraft exploded midair, killing everyone on board. The Navy ended its drone program, but the idea of a pilotless aircraft caught the eye of general of the Army Henry "Hap" Arnold. On Victory over Japan Day, General Arnold made a bold assertion. "The next war may be fought by airplanes with no men in them at all," he said. He was off by four wars, but otherwise he was right.

The idea behind using remotely piloted vehicles in warfare is a simple one—keep the human out of harm's way—but the drone's first application was for pleasure. Nikola Tesla mastered wireless communication in 1893, years before any of his fellow scientists were even considering such a thing. At the Electrical Exhibition in Madison Square Garden in 1898, Tesla gave a demonstration in which he directed a four-foot-long steel boat using radio remote control. Audiences were flabbergasted. [Tesla's pilotless boat](#) seemed to many to be more a magic act than the scientific breakthrough it was. Ever a visionary, Tesla also foresaw a military application for his invention. "I called an official in Washington with a view of offering him the information to the government and he burst out laughing upon telling him what I had accomplished," Tesla wrote. This made unfortunate sense—the military was still using horses for transport at the time. Tesla's friend writer Mark Twain also envisioned a military future in remote control and offered to act as Tesla's agent in peddling the "destructive terror which you have been inventing." Twain suggested the Germans might be good clients, considering that, at the time, they were the most scientifically advanced country in the world. In the end, no government bought Tesla's invention or paid for his patents. The great inventor died penniless in a New York hotel room in 1943, and by then, the Germans had developed remote control on their own and were wreaking havoc on ground forces across Europe. The Germans' first war robot was a remote-controlled minitank called Goliath, and it was about the size of a bobsled. [Goliath carried 132 pounds of explosives](#), which the Nazis drove into enemy bunkers and tanks using remote control. Eight thousand Goliaths were built and used in battle by the Germans, mostly on the Eastern Front, where Russian soldiers outnumbered German soldiers nearly three to one. With no soldiers to spare, the Germans needed to keep the ones they had out of harm's way.

In America, the Army Air Forces developed its first official drone wing after the war, for use during Operation Crossroads at Bikini Atoll in 1946. There, drones were sent through the mushroom cloud, their operators flying them by remote control from an airborne [mother ship called Marmalade](#) flying nearby. To collect radioactive samples, the drones had been equipped with air-collection bags and boxlike filter-paper holders. Controlling the drones in such conditions was difficult. Inside the mushroom cloud, one drone, code-named [Fox was blasted "sixty feet higher](#) than its flight path," according to declassified memos about the drone wing's performance there. Fox's "bomb doors warped, all the cushions inside the aircraft burst and its inspection plates and escape hatch blew off." Remarkably, the

drone pilot maintained control from several miles away. Had he witnessed such a thing, Nikola Tesla might have smiled.

During the second set of atomic tests, called [Operation Sandstone](#), in April of 1948, the drones were again used in a job deemed too dangerous for airmen. During an eighteen-kiloton atomic blast called Zebra, however, a manned aircraft accidentally flew through a mushroom cloud, and after this, the Air Force made the decision that because the pilot and crew inside the aircraft had "suffered no ill effects," pilots should be flying atomic-sampling missions, not drones. Whether or not pilots were exposed to lethal amounts of radiation during the Zebra bomb or hundreds of other atomic tests has never been accurately determined. The majority of the records regarding how much radiation pilots were exposed to in these early years and who died of radiation-related diseases have allegedly been destroyed or lost. But when the Air Force pilot [accidentally flew through the Zebra bomb's mushroom cloud](#), the incident "commenced a chain of events that resulted in manned samplers."

"Manned samplers were simply more efficient," wrote officer Colonel Paul H. Fackler in a 1963 classified historical review of atomic cloud sampling made for the Air Force systems command, declassified in 1986. As the official radiation safety officer assigned to Operation Sandstone, Fackler held sway. Fackler's colleague Colonel Cody also argued in favor of man over drone. Cody said the drone samples were obtained haphazardly by "potluck." A human pilot would be able to maneuver around a cloud during penetration so that the "most likely parts of the cloud could be sampled." It was a case of dangerous semantics; *most likely* was a euphemism for "most radioactive." For future tests, Air Force officials decided to pursue both manned and unmanned atomic-sampling wings.

Both kinds of aircraft would be needed for an ultrasecret test that was pending in the Pacific in 1951. Operation Greenhouse would involve a new kind of nuclear weapon that was being hailed as the "Super bomb." It was a thermonuclear weapon, or hydrogen bomb, the core of which would explode with the same energy found at the center of the sun. Los Alamos scientists explained to weapons planners that the destructive power of this new kind of science, called nuclear fusion, was entirely unknown. Fusion involves exploding a nuclear bomb inside a nuclear bomb, and privately the scientists expressed [fear that the entire world's atmosphere could catch on fire](#) during this process. Scientists became deeply divided over the issue and whether or not to go forward. The push to create the Super was spearheaded by the indomitable Dr. Edward Teller and cosigned by weapons planners with the Department of Defense. The opposition to the Super was spearheaded by Robert Oppenheimer, the father of the atomic bomb and now Teller's rival. Oppenheimer, who felt that developing a weapon capable of ending civilization was immoral, would lose his security clearance over his opposition to the Super bomb. According to Al O'Donnell, the EG&G weapons test engineer who wired many of Dr. Teller's Super bombs in the Marshall Islands, [what happened to Oppenheimer sent a strong message](#) to everyone involved: "If you want to keep your job, don't oppose decisions" on moral grounds. In the end, the weapons planners won, and the world's first thermonuclear bomb moved forward as planned.

Drones were needed to take blast and gust measurements inside the thermonuclear clouds, and to take samples of radioactive debris inside. During the Greenhouse test series, which did not wind up setting the world on fire, the first drone in went out of control and crashed into the sea before it ever reached the stem of the mushroom cloud. Two other drone missions were aborted after not responding to controls, and a fourth sustained such heavy damage in the shock wave, it lost control and [crash-landed on a deserted island called Bogallua](#), where it caught fire and exploded. When the test series was over, the Air Force ultimately concluded that the unmanned samplers were unreliable. "Following Operation Greenhouse, the Air Force and the Atomic Energy Commission looked more favorably upon manned samplers," wrote a Defense Nuclear Agency historian in 1963. "Greenhouse became the last atomic test series during which drone aircraft were used for this purpose." So when it came time to detonate the world's first full-scale thermonuclear device—an unimaginably monstrous 10.4 megaton bomb code-named Mike—in the next test series, called Operation Ivy in the fall of 1952, it was decided that six human pilots, all volunteers, would fly straight into the center of the radioactive stem and mushroom cloud. Another group of pilots was assigned to fly along the outer edges of the predicted fallout zones. [That group included Hervey Stockman](#), who, four years later, would become the first CIA pilot to fly over the Soviet Union in a U-2.

In anticipation of the Mike bomb's manned sampling mission, the pilots practiced at the airfield at Indian Springs, thirty miles due south of Area 51. These pilots, including [Stockman, then flew sampling missions](#) through the kiloton-size atomic bombs being exploded at the Nevada Test Site as part of a spring 1952 test series called Operation Tumbler-Snapper. "Up to this time," Stockman explains, "the [scientists had put monkeys in the cockpits](#) of remotely controlled drone aircraft [at the test site]. They would fly these things through the [atomic] clouds. Then they began to be interested in the effects of radiation on humanoids. They realized that with care and cunning they could put people in there."

The Air Force worked hard to change the pilots' perception of themselves as guinea pigs, at least for the historical record. According to a history of the atomic cloud sampling program, declassified in 1985, by the time Stockman and his fellow pilots left Indian Springs for the Marshall Islands to fly missions through megaton-size thermonuclear bomb clouds, the men accepted that they "were doing something useful...[not serving as guinea pigs](#) as they seriously believed when first called upon to do the sampling."

Stockman offers another perspective. "[In those days](#), I didn't think much about the moral questions. I was young. The visual picture when these things go off is absolutely stunning. I was very much in awe of it," Stockman recalls. "The [atomic bombs] that were going on in the proving grounds in Nevada were minute in comparison to these [thermonuclear bomb] monsters out there in the Pacific. Those were big brutes. When they went off they would punch right through the Earth's atmosphere and head out into space."

After finally arriving in the Pacific, pilots flew "familiarization flights and rehearsals" in the days leading up to the Mike bomb. But nothing could prepare an airman for the actual test. Stockman's colleague Air Force pilot [Jimmy P. Robinson was one of the six pilots](#) who "volunteered" to fly through the Ivy Mike mushroom cloud. Because the physical bomb

was the size of a large airplane hangar, it couldn't be called a weapon per se. The bomb was so large that it was built from the ground up, on an island on the north side of the atoll called Elugelab. Given the extraordinary magnitude of the thermonuclear bomb, it is utterly remarkable to consider that shortly after Robinson flew his F-84G straight through its mushroom stem, he was able to radio back clear thoughts to his commanding officer, who was located twenty-five miles to the south, on Eniwetok. "The glow was red, like the inside of a red hot furnace," the record states Robinson said. He then described how his radio instrument meters were spinning around in circles, "like the sweep second hand on a watch." After going inside the cloud a second time, Robinson reported that his "airplane stalled out and gone [sic] into a spin." His autopilot disengaged and his radio cut out, but the courageous pilot flew on as instructed. He flew around in circles and finally he flew back into and out of the mushroom stem and the lower part of its cloud—for nearly four more hours. Only when it was time for Robinson to refuel did he realize that the electromagnetic pulse from the thermonuclear bomb had ruined his control beacon. This meant that it was impossible for him to locate the fuel tanker.

Robinson radioed the control tower on Eniwetok for help. He was told to head back to the island immediately. "Approximately ninety-six miles north of the island, [Robinson] reported that he'd picked up a signal on Eniwetok," according to the official record, declassified in 1986 but with Robinson's name redacted. At that point, he was down to six hundred pounds of fuel. Bad weather kicked in; "rain squalls obstructed his views." Robinson's fuel gauge registered empty and then his engine flamed out. "When he was at 10,000 feet, Eniwetok tower thought he would make the runway, he had the island in sight," wrote an Air Force investigator assigned to the case. But he couldn't glide in because his aircraft was lined with lead to shield him from radiation. At five thousand feet and falling fast, Robinson reported he wasn't going to make it and that he would have to bail out. Now Robinson faced the ultimate challenge. [Atomic-sampling pilots wore lead-lined vests](#). How to land safely and get out fast? Fewer than three and a half miles from the tarmac at Eniwetok, at an altitude of between five hundred and eight hundred feet, Robinson's aircraft flipped over and crashed into the sea. "Approximately one minute later [a] helicopter was over the spot," the Air Force investigator wrote. But it was too late. All the helicopter pilot could find was "an oil slick, one glove, and several maps." Robinson's body and his airplane sank to the bottom of the sea like a stone. His body was never recovered, and his family would learn of his fate only in 2008, after repeated Freedom of Information Act requests were finally granted by the Air Force.

Back on Elugelab Island, the dust was settling after the airplane-hangar-size Mike bomb had exploded with an unfathomable yield of 10.4 megatons—nearly twice that of its predicted size. Elugelab was not an island anymore. The thermonuclear bomb had vaporized the entire landmass, sending eighty million tons of pulverized coral into the upper atmosphere to float around and rain down. One man observing the bomb with high-density goggles was EG&G weapons test engineer Al O'Donnell. He'd wired, armed, and fired the Ivy bomb from the control room on the USS *Estes*, which was parked forty miles out at sea. O'Donnell says that watching the Mike bomb explode was a terrifying experience. ["It was one of the ones that was too big."](#) says the man who colleagues called

the Triggerman for having wired 186 nuclear bombs. The nuclear fireball of the Ivy Mike bomb was three miles wide. [In contrast, the bomb dropped on Hiroshima](#) had a fireball that was a tenth of a mile wide. When the manned airplanes flew over ground zero after the Ivy Mike bomb went off, they were horrified to see the island was gone. Satellite photographs in 2011 show a black crater filled with lagoon water where the island of Elugelab once existed.

Drama in the Desert

Before he became president of the United States, Lyndon Baines Johnson liked to ride through rural Texas in his convertible Lincoln Continental with the top down. According to his biographer Randall B. Woods, Johnson also liked to keep a loaded shotgun in the seat next to him, which allowed him to pull over and shoot deer easily. On the night of October 4, 1957, the then senator was entertaining a group of fellow hunting enthusiasts at his rural retreat, in the dining room of his forty-foot-tall, glass-enclosed, [air-conditioned hunting blind](#) that Johnson called his "deer tower." All around the edge of the lair were powerful spotlights that could be turned on with the flip of a switch, blinding unsuspecting deer that had come to graze and making it easier to kill them.

It was an important night for Johnson, one that would set the rest of his life on a certain path. October 4, 1957, was the night the Russians launched Sputnik, and the senator began an exuberant anti-Communist crusade. That very night, once the guests had gone home and the staff of black waiters had cleaned up, Johnson retired to his bedroom with newfound conviction. "[I'll be damned](#) if I sleep by the light of a Red Moon," he told his wife, Lady Bird.

At the time, Lyndon Johnson was not just any senator. He was the Democratic majority leader, which made him the most powerful legislator in the United States. Within hours of Sputnik's launch, Johnson seized on the Red Moon moment for political gain. The Russians were a threat to America's existence, he declared: "[Soon they will be dropping](#) bombs on us from space like kids dropping rocks onto cars from Freeway overpasses."

For many Americans, Johnson's reaction was easier to comprehend than President Eisenhower's seemingly muted response. Before he was president, Eisenhower had spent his career as a soldier. He was a five-star general. As former commander of the Allied Forces in Europe during World War II, Eisenhower had faced many a deadly threat. He had led the invasion at Normandy and commanded the Allied Forces in the last great German offensive, the Battle of the Bulge, which meant he and his men shot at a lot more than blinded deer. In October of 1957, he believed that the 184-pound Russian satellite called Sputnik was [not a cause for panic](#) or alarm.

The nation felt quite different. The public consensus was that Sputnik gave reason for serious concern. The orb was seen as ominous and foreboding, a visual portent of more bad things to come from the skies, with 4 percent of Americans claiming to have seen Sputnik with their own eyes. In reality, explained historian Matthew Brzezinski, "[What most actually saw](#) was the one-hundred-foot-long R-7 rocket casing that [Sputnik's designer Sergei] Korolev had craftily outfitted with reflective prisms. It trailed some 600 miles behind the twenty-two-inch satellite," which in reality could only be seen by a person using

a high-powered optical device. Motivated by the public's alarm, Senator Lyndon Johnson provided a foil to Eisenhower's nonconfrontation, demanding a "full and exhaustive inquiry" from Congress to learn how the Russians had beaten the Americans into space. In doing so, Johnson cemented his persona as being tough on Communists. In turn, this made him an inadvertent advocate for missile defense and the military-industrial complex. Ultimately, it forced him to be a proponent for the Vietnam War.

Now, six years and one month after Sputnik, Lyndon Johnson was president. Seven days after Kennedy was shot dead, [Johnson sat in the Oval Office with CIA director](#) John McCone being briefed on Oxcart and Area 51. Johnson loved the idea of the Agency's secret spy plane, but not for the reasons anyone expected. Johnson seized on one detail in particular: the aircraft's speed. At the time, the world was under the impression that the Russians held the record for airspeed, which was 1,665 miles per hour. When Johnson learned the men at Area 51 had repeatedly beaten that record, he wanted to make that fact publicly known. What better way to begin a presidency than by one-upping the Russians?

In reality, outing the most expensive secret spy plane program ever undertaken in order to win a competition with the Russians did not make the best national security sense. Surfacing Oxcart would compromise the Agency's technological pole position in the overhead espionage field. Oxcart was singularly capable of flying "any place in the world," McCone explained. It was almost "invisible" to Soviet radar, with a "radar cross section in the order of 1/1000 of [a] normal aircraft." If McCone had had a crystal ball, he could have told the president that the Oxcart was so far ahead of its time, [it would hold aviation records](#) for sustained height and speed through the end of the century. Also in the room were Secretary of Defense Robert McNamara, Secretary of State Dean Rusk, and national security adviser McGeorge Bundy, the administration's most powerful trio. Conveniently for the Pentagon, all three men agreed with President Johnson that [outing the Oxcart was a terrific idea](#).

The reason for the trio's desire for transparency was that the Air Force had clear designs on cutting the CIA loose from the business of spy planes once and for all. Outing a program made the need for cover obsolete. Before Kennedy's assassination, the Air Force high command had been writing secret proposals arguing for ways in which [they could take over Oxcart](#). Four months earlier, Air Force commander General Schriever wrote a memo to Eugene Zuckert, secretary of the Air Force, suggesting that "an incident during the flight test program could force a disclosure." The CIA had gotten lucky with Ken Collins's Oxcart crash, General Schriever said, but if another one of the Agency's secret spy planes were to crash "it would be extremely difficult to avoid some public release." The subtext being that maybe there was a way that the Air Force could help facilitate this public disclosure. There was a final option, one that involved getting "the President on board." A few weeks before Kennedy's death, the Air Force had gone to him with a proposal to make Oxcart public; Kennedy had said to sit tight. Now it appeared that President Johnson was going to be much easier to manipulate.

To counter Air Force demands [McCone tried a different approach](#), one that involved money. He told the president that more than half of Oxcart's budget had already been

spent producing fifteen airplanes. To expose Oxcart now was a terrible idea, McCone said, not just in terms of national security but because it would be a colossal waste of money. Johnson agreed. But the president still wanted to one-up the Russians, so he settled on a slightly different plan. Through a veil of half-truths, he would out the Air Force's attack version of the Oxcart, the YF-12, as the speed-breaker. The YF-12 would be given a false cover, [the fictitious name A-11](#). Respecting McCone's national security concerns, the actual A-12 Oxcart program—its true speed, operational ceiling, and near invisibility to radar—would remain classified top secret until the CIA declassified the Oxcart program, in 2007.

Three months later, on February 29, 1964, Johnson held a press conference in the International Treaty Room at the State Department. "[The world record for aircraft speed](#), currently held by the Soviets, has been repeatedly broken in secrecy by the... A-11," President Johnson declared from the podium, thrilled to give the Russians a poke in the ribs. At Area 51, caught off guard by the requirement to do a presidential dog-and-pony show, the 1129th Special Activities Squadron scrambled to get an airplane to Edwards Air Force Base in California for a press junket, which was called for immediately after the president's grand announcement. Two YF-12s belonging to the Air Force but being tested at Area 51 were quickly flown in from Groom Lake and driven into a special hangar at Edwards. The airplanes' titanium surfaces were so hot they set off the hangar's sprinkler system, which mistook the high-temperature metal for a fire. When the press junket began, [the aircraft were still dripping wet](#). Never mind; no one noticed. Like the president, the reporters were enamored by the notion of Mach 3 speed. Of much more significance was what the event meant to the CIA. The rivalry between the Agency and the Air Force for control over Oxcart was hotter than ever.

With the two departments' gloves off, the fate of Oxcart now hung precariously in the balance. Secretary of Defense Robert McNamara snidely told CIA director John McCone that he doubted the Oxcart would ever be used. If it was used, McNamara said, it would "probably have to be done [without the specific knowledge of the President](#)," alluding to the Gary Powers shoot-down. Never again could a president be linked to a CIA aerial espionage mission. John McCone shot back that he had "every intention of using Oxcart and had so advised the President." McNamara may have won the battle by getting President Johnson to surface part of the Oxcart program, but McCone was letting him know on behalf of the Agency that the Pentagon hadn't yet won the war.

A second Air Force–Agency debate that involved the fate of the Oxcart, which in turn involved the fate of Area 51, centered on improvements in satellite and drone technology. McNamara told McCone that these two platforms would eventually eliminate the need for the Agency's expensive, cumbersome Oxcart program. And yet both men knew that for the time being, Oxcart could deliver what satellites could not, and on two separate but equally important counts. In the six years since Sputnik, satellites had advanced to the degree that their spy images were good, though not great. But satellites had an inherent limitation in the world of espionage: they worked on fixed schedules. This would forever negate any element of surprise. The average satellite took ninety minutes to circle the world, and overflight schedules were easily determined by analysts at NORAD. The ironically named

Oxcart was an attack espionage vehicle: quick and versatile, nimble and shrewd, with overpasses that would be totally unpredictable to any enemy. But most of all, in terms of clear photographic intelligence, nothing could compete with what Oxcart was about to be able to deliver to the president: two-and-a-half-foot blocks of detail made clear by film frames shot from seventeen miles up.

While McNamara and McCone fought, a presidential election loomed for Johnson. Nikita Khrushchev, ever the antagonist, decided to make things difficult for the saber-rattling Texan. During the campaign summer of 1964, the increasingly bellicose Khrushchev declared that any U-2s flying over Cuba would be shot down. The CIA saw the threat by the Soviet dictator as an opportunity to let Oxcart show its stuff, and McCone pushed President Johnson for an official mission. Finally, the president [approved the Oxcart for Operation Skylark](#), a plan to fly missions over Cuba if Khrushchev showed signs of putting missiles in Cuba again. Skylark provided a terrific opportunity for the CIA to flex its overhead muscle and gain an edge on the Air Force. The only problem was that out at Area 51, the Oxcart wasn't quite ready.

Kenneth Collins sat in the cockpit of the world's fastest aircraft as it climbed through sixty thousand feet. On this particular flight, navigators had him flying north to the border of Canada, where he was to turn around and head back. Flight-testing the Oxcart was the best job in the world, [according to Ken Collins](#). Most jobs came with a daily routine, and for Collins each day of work at Area 51 meant another performance field to tackle—anything but routine.

For months, the pilots had been testing the hydraulics, navigation system, and flight controls on the aircraft. After each flight, the data from flight recorders was analyzed by a team of Lockheed engineers. Changes were made daily at Groom Lake. The wiring continued to be problematic until replacement materials that could withstand 800 degrees were finally located. Another problem that took forever to solve involved the buildup of the liquid chemical triethylborane (TEB) that had been preventing the engine afterburners from starting. Finally, that too was solved. But one dangerous problem remained, and that was the dreaded un-starts.

Moving through seventy-five thousand feet now, Collins watched the gauges in front of him. It was -70 degrees Fahrenheit outside with exhaust gas coming out of both engines at 3,400 degrees Fahrenheit. Each one of a pair of [specially designed J-58 turbojet engines](#) behind him generated as much power as all four of the turbines on the 81,000-ton ocean liner the *Queen Mary*. It was those insanely powerful engines that enabled the aircraft to fly so high and so fast. But the *Queen Mary* carried more than three thousand people; the Oxcart just one. Collins counted on those engines. If anything went wrong with either of them it could mean catastrophe. Carefully, he moved the aircraft through the dangerous window between Mach 2.5 and Mach 2.8, which translates to something around 2,000 mph—as fast as a rifle bullet goes. Getting up to and through that speed asked more of the aircraft than anything else. It was also the place where an un-start was most likely to occur, and why Collins was counting on the aircraft engines to perform.

To the pilots, there was nothing scarier than an engine un-start. To the engineers, there was nothing to explain the cause of it. Flying at a certain pitch, one of the two J-58 engines

could inexplicably experience an airflow cutoff and go dead. At that speed, the inlets were swallowing ten thousand cubic feet of air each second. One engineer likened this to the equivalent of two million people inhaling at once; an un-start was like all those people suddenly cut short of air. During the ten seconds it took to correct the airflow problem—one engine dead, the other generating enough power to propel an ocean liner—a violent yawing would occur as the aircraft twisted on a vertical axis. This caused a pilot to get slammed across the cockpit while desperately trying to restart the dead engine. The fear was that the pilot could get knocked unconscious, which would mean the end of the pilot, and the end of the airplane.

As Collins moved through Mach 2.7, the Earth below him hurtled by at an astonishing rate of more than half a mile each second. The aircraft's preset flight path kept it away from urban centers, bridges, and dams for safety reasons, and from Indian burial grounds for political reasons. Once, a pilot flying over semirural West Virginia had to restart an engine at thirty thousand feet. The resulting sonic boom shattered a chimney inside a factory on the ground, and [two men working there were crushed to death](#). And if a pilot had to bail out, as Collins had in 1963, the aircraft needed significant amounts of remote land on which to crash. At 123,000 pounds, this airplane had about as much glide in it as a tire iron falling from the sky.

Collins pushed the aircraft through Mach 2.8. In another forty-five seconds he would be out of the danger zone. Nearing eighty-five thousand feet, the inevitable [tiny black dots began to appear](#) on the aircraft windshield, sporadic at first, like the first drops of summer rain. Only a few months earlier, scientists at Area 51 had been baffled by those black dots. They worried it was some kind of high-atmosphere corrosion until the mystery was solved in the lab. It turned out the black spots were dead bugs that were cycling around in the upper atmosphere, blasted into the jet stream by the world's two superpowers' rally of thermonuclear bombs. The bugs were killed in the bombs' blasts and sent aloft to ninety thousand feet in the ensuing mushroom clouds where they gained orbit.

Collins was just seconds away from Mach 3, which meant cruising altitude at last. If there was a brief moment where he might allow himself to relax, maybe even glance outside at the round Earth below and enjoy the cruise, that moment would come soon. But then the un-start happened. In a critical instant, the airplane banged and yawed so dramatically it was as if the airplane's tail were trying to catch its nose. Collins's body was flung forward in his harness. His plastic flight helmet crashed against the cockpit glass, denting the helmet and [nearly knocking him unconscious](#). As the airplane slid across the atmosphere, Collins steeled himself and restarted the engine. The aircraft's second engine kicked back into motion almost as quickly as it had stopped.

Things in the cockpit returned to normal. Inside his pressure suit, Collins felt his heart beating like a jackhammer in his chest. Fate really is a hunter, he thought. It lurks behind you in constant pursuit. When it will catch up to you and take you is anybody's guess.

Death didn't get him this time, and for that he was grateful. But somebody needed to fix this un-start problem, fast. With his feet firmly planted on the earth again, Collins discussed the issue of the un-starts with Bill Park during his debrief. Park was Lockheed's chief flight-test pilot and [he always sat patiently with the project pilots](#) after their flights,

listening intently about what went on during the flight and what needed work. No detail was too small. Park agreed with Collins; the un-start problem was major and had to be fixed before somebody died. Park was the liaison between the project pilots and Kelly Johnson, and Park was directed to Lockheed's thermodynamicist Ben Rich to get the un-start problem solved. Park had experienced his own share of un-starts, and giving Ben Rich an ultimatum was not something he had any problem with.

Rich's office was sparsely decorated with a few trophies and some plaques on the walls. There were papers everywhere, and pencils with the erasers gone. A hand-cranked calculator and a metal slide rule sat on Rich's desk. Park set his flight helmet down—it had its own crack, similar to Collins's—and pointed to it. "[Fix it,](#)" Park said. "And I mean the un-start problem, not my helmet. Time to suit up, Ben. Time for you to see how it feels." The pilots figured that the only way to get Ben Rich to understand just how unacceptable this un-start business was would be to have Rich experience the nightmare scenario himself, and there just happened to be a two-seater version of the Oxcart on base. The Air Force was currently testing its drone-carrying version of the Oxcart, the M-21/D-21, in the skies over Groom Lake, and the pilots had seen the two-seater going in and out of the hangar all week. Park told Ben Rich the time had come for him to take a Mach 3 ride.

In a burst of what he would later describe as "a crazy moment of weakness," Ben Rich agreed. Rich was a self-described Jewish nerd. Totally unathletic, he was a kid who never made the high school baseball team. Before joining Skunk Works, Ben Rich had only one claim to fame: being awarded a patent for designing a nickel-chromium heating system that prevented a pilot's penis from freezing to his urine elimination pipe. He was a design wizard, not an airplane cowboy. He'd never come close to flying supersonic before, and he had absolutely no desire to go that fast. But he was chief engineer for Skunk Works, so fixing the un-start problem was his job. "I'll do it," Ben Rich said.

Before Ben Rich could get into the world's fastest aircraft, he had to go through a battery of physical tests. You can't just climb into an aircraft that gets up to ninety thousand feet without being checked out in a pressure suit in an altitude chamber first. The flight surgeons on base prepped Rich for tests, the way they usually did pilots. Rich passed the physical and a few early stress tests but when he got to the pressure-chamber test—the one that simulated ejection at fifty thousand feet—things did not go as the engineer had planned. The moment the chamber door closed behind Ben Rich, he panicked. "I was sucking oxygen like a marathon runner and screaming, '[Get me out of here!](#)'" Rich later recalled. Without ever getting close to simulating what it was like to fly at Mach 3, let alone experiencing an un-start at that speed, Ben Rich admitted in his memoir that he had still nearly dropped dead from fright.

But the point was made. Rich dedicated all his efforts to fixing the un-start problem. Like so many engineering challenges facing the scientists at Area 51, fixing it involved great ingenuity. In this case, Rich and his team didn't exactly fix the problem. Instead, they created a go-around that made things not so life-threatening for the pilots. Rich invented an electronic control that made sure that when one engine experienced an un-start, the second engine dropped its power as well. The control switch would then restart both engines at the same time. After the new fix, pilots were notified of the un-start by a loud

buzzing noise in the cockpit. And as far as nearly getting knocked unconscious at 2,000 miles per hour, Oxcart pilots could cross that off their lists of concerns.

In addition to the problems the pilots were having getting the airplane up to speed, there were problems with the electronic countermeasures, or ECMs. The reports being analyzed back at Langley said if Operation Skylark was to happen over Cuba, cruise speed would have to be at a minimum Mach 2.8, because there was a real chance that the Soviet radar systems in Cuba would be able to detect Oxcart flights and possibly even shoot them down. While Project Palladium officers continue to work on jamming methods, the Office of Special Activities at the Pentagon decided that the solution lay in working to enhance stealth. The phenomenally low radar cross section on the Oxcart had to be lowered even further. This meant that Lockheed physicist Edward Lovick and the radar cross-section team were summoned back to Area 51.

In a hangar not far from the radar range, Edward Lovick got to work on a one-eighth-scale model of the Oxcart. In what became known as [Project Kempster-Lacroix](#), Lovick designed a system straight out of Star Trek or James Bond. "Two giant electron guns were to be mounted on either side of the aircraft," Lovick recalls. Remarkably, the purpose of the guns would be "to shoot out a twenty-five-foot-wide ion cloud of highly charged particles in front of the plane as it flew over denied territory." That gaseous cloud, Lovick determined, would further absorb radar waves coming up from radar tracking stations on the ground.

Using the small-scale model, the scientists were able to prove the scheme worked, which meant it was time to build a full-scale mock-up of Kempster-Lacroix. Testing the system out on a full-size aircraft, the scientists discovered that the radiation emitted by the electron guns would be too dangerous for the pilots. So a separate team of engineers designed an X-ray shield that the pilots could wear over their pressure suits while flying an Oxcart outfitted with Kempster-Lacroix. When one of the pilots made a test run, he determined that the thickness of the shield was far too cumbersome to wear while trying to fly an airplane at Mach 3. Then, while Lovick was working on a solution, the Air Force changed its mind. The Oxcart's low observables were low enough, the Pentagon said. Project Kempster-Lacroix was abandoned.

It was ironic, to say the least. Not the flip-flopping by the Air Force but the concerns about radiation. By 1964, [the government had exploded 286 nuclear bombs](#) within shouting distance of Area 51. One year earlier, the United States and the Soviet Union had signed the Limited Test Ban Treaty prohibiting nuclear testing in the air, space, or sea. The initiative had been in the works for years but negotiations had repeatedly failed. Now that it was finally signed, testing had moved underground. Neither superpower trusted the other to honor the commitment for very long, and the number of tests per month actually accelerated after the treaty; the idea was to stay weapons-ready in the event one side broke the treaty. Between September 1961 and December 1964, a record-breaking 162 bombs were exploded at the Nevada Test Site inside underground tunnels and shafts. Nearly half of these explosions resulted in the "accidental release of radioactivity" into the atmosphere.

In addition to weapons tests, the nuclear laboratories were racing to find ways to use

nuclear bombs for “peaceful applications.” This included ideas like widening the Panama Canal or blowing up America’s natural geography to make room for future highways and homes. These proposed earthmoving projects fell under the rubric of Project Plowshares, a name chosen from a verse in the Old Testament, Micah 4:3:

And they shall beat their swords into plowshares and their spears into pruning hooks: nations shall not lift up sword against nation, neither shall they learn war anymore.

But that was just semantics. Test ban treaty or not, the Department of Defense had no intention of putting down its swords. The men were fully committed to the long haul that was the Cold War.

Finally satisfied with the radar cross section, the CIA decided to set up its own electronic countermeasures office at Area 51. In 1963, the first group consisted of two men from Sylvania, a company better known for making lightbulbs than for its top secret work for the CIA. [“The first jamming system was called Red Dog; later it became Blue Dog,”](#) explains Ken Swanson, the first official ECM officer at Area 51. The Red Dog system was designed to detect Russian surface-to-air missiles coming after Oxcart and then jam those missiles with an electronic pulse. The work was exciting when the airplanes were flying and there was actual data to collect, but if the Red Dog system failed and needed fixing, it meant a lot of waiting around.

These were the early days of electronic warfare, and there were not a lot of Red Dog spare parts lying around. As a result, Ken Swanson worked many long weekends at Area 51. Swanson says that sometimes he and his Sylvania colleague felt like they were the only ones on the base. One weekend the men took the Area 51 motor pool’s four-wheel-drive vehicle up to Bald Mountain, the tallest peak on the Groom Range, to have a look around. “We found a bunch of old Model Ts and had no idea what they were doing there,” Swanson recalls. Another time he went solo to investigate the old mines. “I was wearing tennis shoes and Bermuda shorts and I bumped into a bunch of rattlers sunning themselves. Next time I went back, I wore snake boots,” he says. During winter weekends, there were even fewer people at Area 51, and for entertainment, after a long day performing high-tech electronic-countermeasures work, Swanson would go joyriding around the dry lake bed. He’d borrow an Econoline van from the motor pool, take it out on the frozen tarmac, and do spins. “But I stopped after I had the van on two wheels once,” Swanson says.

With Red Dog, the CIA wanted to see how the Oxcart would show up on Soviet radar, and so, at the southern tip of Groom Lake, on EG&G Road, Sylvania built two ECM systems, one to simulate Russian SA-2 radar and a second to simulate the Fan Song surface-to-air missile system that was showing up in North Vietnam. The goal was to see what Oxcart looked like, or hopefully did not look like, on these radars. An equally important part of the radar testing system was the radar pole that had to be installed on the top of Bald Mountain. For that, the CIA recruited one of the best rescue helicopter

pilots in the country, Charlie Trapp.

"I was minding my own business in South Carolina," Trapp recalls, "when these guys from the Air Force called me up and asked if I want to come fly a two-airplane helo unit in Nevada, one hundred miles from the nearest town. They said it was important and that I'd have to be able to hover and land at nine thousand feet." [Trapp thought it sounded interesting](#) as well as challenging and he signed on. "We flew in from Nellis in the H-43 [helicopter] and before we even landed at Area 51, they said, 'Let's go see how you land on top of the mountain first,' that's how important the mountain project was to the beginning of my Area 51 assignment." For months, Trapp hauled cement in thousand-pound buckets from the Area 51 operations center up to the top of Bald Mountain. "I'd hover over the top and lower the equipment down," Trapp explains. "There were high winds and serious dust storms." Finally, Trapp helicoptered in the one-hundred-foot-long radar pole, which a team of workers cemented into place. Mission accomplished. "We did such a good job, the CIA gave us air medals," Trapp says. On his way back down to Area 51 in the helicopter, Trapp would fly around the different mountain peaks. "Once, I came across an old graveyard. In a helicopter you can hover and look. The graves were made of piles of rocks. I remember two of them were really small. They must have been kids' graves." The mountain had a psychological pull with many of the men at Area 51 during the Oxcart years. It was also the only place the men were allowed to go that was technically "off base."

Down on the tarmac, every time an A-12 Oxcart took off, it was Trapp's job to hang out airborne, two hundred feet above the runway and off to one side, "in case the aircraft crashed," Trapp explains. "My helicopter contained firefighting equipment, and I always had two PJs with me, para-rescue jumpers, [who perform] like a Navy SEAL. It was a lot of work having us airborne and I told the boss, Colonel Holbury, that I could be airborne in less than two minutes' time. So the policy changed." Instead, Trapp was on standby in the event of an accident, "which meant I got to drive the only golf cart around the Area 51 base." The golf cart came in handy at night. "We played a lot of poker in the House-Six bar," Trapp explains. "The loser had to do the late-night cheeseburger run over to the mess hall. With the golf cart, you could get there and back in five minutes."

For all the technology that was around at Area 51, entertainment was decidedly old-school. "We did a lot of arm wrestling," Trapp says. "Some guys played racquetball and other guys played three-hole golf." When Trapp gained ten pounds eating so many late-night cheeseburgers, he was ordered to lose the weight or risk losing his job. To assist in the effort, Colonel Holbury challenged Trapp to weekly rounds of squash. Once, someone brought a sailboard out to Area 51, and the pilots pulled rank and got the men in the machine shop to affix wheels to the bottom of the board. "We took the thing out to Groom Lake when the wind was blowing really hard," Trapp recalls. "It didn't go that fast but we didn't care."

Of all the pastimes, the unanimous favorite was flying model airplanes using remote control. "We had two areas for flying model planes," Trapp recalls. "Out on the grass by the golf course, and on the tarmac out on the dry lake. Sometimes the airplanes would go so far and so high they'd get lost. A guy would come up to me and say, 'Hey, Charlie, when

you're out in the helicopter, can you keep your eye out for my model plane? It's got a five-foot wing span and yellow wings.' We found ways to entertain ourselves at Area 51. We had to; there weren't any girls."

The man who took the model airplane flying most seriously was Frank Murray. He was also the chase pilot with the most flying time during Project Oxcart. "You could always find Frank sitting in his room gluing model airplanes together," Colonel Slater recalls. "That was his idea of fun. Or maybe he was the only guy at 51 who wasn't half-drunk at eleven o'clock at night." Which is how Murray accumulated the most flying time. "If somebody's kid got hurt in the middle of the night, which happened more than you think, and I need a pilot to get someone off base fast, I'd round up Frank," Colonel Slater explains. When master fuels sergeant Harry Martin's grandfather died, it was Frank Murray who flew him back east so he could get to the funeral in time. "Frank was always willing to do the job," Colonel Slater explains. "Most people require time off from flying. Not Frank."

Murray flew model airplanes to keep his head clear for flying real airplanes. "Everyone had their different thing," Colonel Slater says. "Bud Wheelon from CIA used to want to play tennis at midnight when he was on base. Some liked to go hunting up in the mountains by the old Sheehan mine. Holbury used to like to make the guard dogs run. Some guys threw rocks at rattlesnakes. I liked to drive around in the jeep and find petrified wood."

As an Oxcart chase pilot, Murray spent his days and nights chasing the Mach 3 airplane in the F-101. The Voodoo was a two-seat, supersonic jet fighter the Air Force used to accompany the Oxcart on takeoffs and landings. "We flew it with Oxcart up through the special operating area, or Yuletide, which was the airspace just north of the base," Murray explains. "The Agency had us fly alongside the Oxcart in the Voodoo until we couldn't keep up with the Oxcart anymore." Flying chase meant Murray got assigned most of the grunt work and enjoyed little of the glamour. "I was a little jealous of the Oxcart pilots," he admits. "How can a pilot not be? But I was happy as a pig in the Voodoo. For a farm boy from San Diego, flying chase for the 1129th was a good time."

Murray flew the F-101 doing just about everything that needed to be done in support of Oxcart operations. This included flying against the Red Dog simulators, observing tanker refuels, overseeing takeoffs and landings, and flying Lockheed photographers around on CIA photo shoots. But Murray's path in life took a significant redirection when [General Ledford, the head of the Office of Special Activities](#) at the Pentagon, decided he wanted to learn how to fly the F-101 while he was overseeing activities at Area 51. Murray recalls: "The general had been a bomber pilot in World War Two but he hadn't ever flown anything as fast as the Voodoo could go, which was around twelve hundred or thirteen hundred miles per hour. So he decided that he wanted to learn how to fly it and when it came to choosing an IP, an instructor pilot, the general chose me."

Murray now had to teach a legendary war hero, someone who also happened to be the highest-ranking military officer on the Oxcart program, how to fly supersonic. It might have been a daunting task. Except that [it was not in Frank Murray's character](#) to be apprehensive. To Murray, it sounded like fun. "Out at the Ranch we had eight 101s that ran chase and one of them was a two-holer, with two cockpits and two sticks. 'Come on, Frankie,' the general said. He got in the back and up we went."

General Ledford began to spend more and more time at the Ranch, where, in addition to the serious work being done, operations had taken on a boys' club atmosphere. After a day of intense flying, nights were spent eating, socializing, and having drinks. "Sometimes, on the late side of things after dinner, Ledford would get a hair in his hat that he wanted to get back to Washington to see his wife, Polly," Murray says. "He'd slap me on the back. That was my cue to take him home." Home, in Washington, DC, was 2,500 miles away, and with supersonic aircraft at one's disposal, this could actually happen this late at night. "Ledford was my student but he was also the general so on these trips home, I started letting him sit in the front of the plane; I'd sit in back. Well, all those hours flying back and forth from Area 51 to Washington, that cemented it. He was my boss but he also became my friend." Ledford had other friends as well, several in high places at the Air Force, which made getting back to the East Coast from Nevada in the middle of the night a relatively easier trip. "Ledford had a buddy who was still in SAC, an air division commander at Blytheville Air Force Base in northeast Arkansas, just about halfway between 51 and Washington. Ledford would radio him when we were up in the air approaching the next state over and he'd say, 'Have you got a tanker in the area?' If he did or didn't you could bet your fifty there'd be a tanker lining up next to you somewhere over Arkansas," Murray says. What this meant was that when Murray and the general were traveling from Area 51 to the East Coast late at night, they never even had to stop for gas.

After a little more than two hours in the air, the men would land at Andrews Air Force Base and taxi up to the generals' quarters—similar to a luxury hotel suite on the base—and enjoy a postflight scotch. "Ledford had a fancy setup on base quarters that had a fully equipped bar," Murray explains. "We'd have a pop and chat a little before his wife, Polly, arrived to pick him up and take him home. I'd spend the night in the generals' quarters. Get some sleep and in the morning head home to 51."

It was an exciting time for Frank Murray. He couldn't have imagined living this life. Only a few years earlier, he'd been flying Voodoos at Otis Air Force Base as part of the Air Defense Command when he had seen an interesting sign tacked on a bulletin board that read *NASA is looking for F-101 chase pilots*. He thought working for NASA sounded like fun. He had no idea that was just a cover story and that the Air Force, not NASA, was really looking for chase pilots for the Oxcart program at Area 51. Murray applied and got in. He moved the family to Nevada and swore an oath not to tell anyone what he did, not even Stella, his wife. But he knew his family would be super proud of him. For a farm boy from San Diego, he was at the top of his game.

While Project Oxcart worked to get mission-ready, back in Washington the widening of the conflict in Vietnam by the Communists in the north was becoming a nightmare for President Johnson. He had won the favor of the people back in 1957 by declaring Communism to be the world's greatest threat. In comparison to the thermonuclear-armed Soviet Union, Vietnam was to Johnson a sideshow. But it was also a piece in the widely held domino theory: if Vietnam fell to Communism, the whole region would ultimately fall. President Johnson had inherited Vietnam from President Kennedy when it was a political crisis and not yet a war. That changed in the second summer Johnson held office, in August of 1964, with the Gulf of Tonkin. The Pentagon declared that the U.S. Navy had

suffered an unprovoked attack by North Vietnam against the USS *Maddox*, and the National Security Agency had evidence, McNamara said. This event allowed Johnson to push the Gulf of Tonkin resolution through Congress, which authorized war. ([In 2005 NSA released](#) a detailed confession admitting that its intelligence had been "deliberately skewed to support the notion that there had been an attack.") To avenge the USS *Maddox* attack, Johnson ordered air attacks against the North Vietnamese, sending Navy pilots on bombing missions over North Vietnam. When a number of U.S. pilots were shot down, the North Vietnamese took them as prisoners of war.

The war's escalation led Secretary of Defense [Robert McNamara to perform an about-face regarding Oxcart](#). The Agency's spy plane could be vitally useful after all, McNamara now said, certainly when it came to gathering intelligence in North Vietnam. The Agency knew the Russians had begun [supplying surface-to-air missile systems](#) to the Communists in North Vietnam, and now they were shooting down American boys. Both the Air Force and the Agency sent U-2s on reconnaissance missions, and these overflights revealed that missile sites were being [set up around Hanoi](#). But the Pentagon needed far more specific target information. In June, McNamara sat down with the CIA and began drawing up plans to get the Oxcart ready for its first mission at last.

The Ultimate Boys' Club

At Groom Lake throughout the 1960s, at least once a month and always before dawn, base personnel would be [shaken from their beds](#) by a violent explosion. When the rumbling first started happening, Ken Collins would leap from bed as a sensation that felt like a massive earthquake rolled by. A nuclear bomb was being exploded next door, underground, just a few miles west of Oxcart pilots' quarters. Next, the blast wave would hit Collins's Quonset hut and then roll on, heading across the Emigrant Mountain Range with a surreal and unnatural force that made the coyotes wail.

In the years that Collins had been test-flying the Oxcart at Area 51, the Department of Defense had been testing nuclear bombs with bravado. After a while, being awoken before dawn meant little to Collins, and he'd roll over and go back to sleep. But on this one particular morning something felt different. It was a banging he was hearing, not a boom. Collins opened his eyes. Someone was indeed banging on his Quonset hut door. Next came a loud voice that sounded a lot like Colonel Slater's. Collins leaped out of bed and opened his door. Colonel Slater had an unusual look of concern, and without explanation, he ordered Collins to get into his flight suit as fast as he could. This was a highly unusual request, Collins thought. It was definitely before dawn. Behind where Slater stood on the Quonset hut stoop, Collins could see it was still dark outside. For a brief moment, he feared the worst. Had America gone to war with the Soviets? What could possibly force an unplanned Oxcart mission flight? Rushing to put on his clothes, Collins heard Colonel Slater waking up the flight surgeon who lived in the apartment quarters next door.

Collins followed Slater in a run toward the hangar where the Oxcart lived. There he was quickly briefed on the situation: the Pentagon had called to say that a Russian reconnaissance balloon was flying across the United States, floating with the prevailing winds in a westerly direction. Collins was to find the Soviet balloon—fast. Normally, the flight surgeon would have spent two hours just getting Collins into his pressure suit. That morning Collins was suited up and sitting in the cockpit of the Oxcart in a little over thirty minutes. Up he went, blasting off the tarmac, north then east, on direct orders by the Pentagon to "hunt and find" the Soviet weather balloon visually and using radar.

Up in the air it dawned on Collins what a wild-goose chase he was on. What would a Russian reconnaissance balloon look like? What were the chances of making visual contact with such a thing? At speeds of more than 2,200 mph, he was traveling more than half a mile each second. Even if he saw the balloon, in just a fraction of a second it would be behind him. Even worse, what if he actually did get that close to the flying object? If the Oxcart hit anything while moving at Mach 3, the plane would break apart instantly and he'd be toast.

Flying somewhere over the middle of the continent, Collins briefly identified an object on radar about 350 miles away. As instructed, he flew around the object in the tightest circle he could perform at Mach 3, which meant his circle had a radius of about 400 miles. He never saw the balloon with his own eyes.

After Collins returned to base, engineers scrambled to read the information on the data recorder. [The incident has never been declassified](#). Admitting that the Soviets invaded U.S. airspace—whether in a craft or by balloon—is not something any U.S. official has ever done. Collins never asked any follow-up questions. That's how it was to be a pilot: [the less you knew, the better](#). He knew too many fellow pilots from Korea who had come home from POW camps missing fingernails—if they came home at all. Now, ten years later, pilots shot down over North Vietnam were experiencing the same kinds of torture, maybe worse. The less you knew, the better. That was the pilots' creed.

As deputy director of the CIA, Richard Helms was a huge fan of Oxcart. He worked closely on the program with Bud Wheelon, whose efforts earned him the title of first director of science and technology for the CIA. Now that Richard Bissell was gone, there were few men in the Agency as devoted to the Area 51 spy plane program as Wheelon and Helms. Whereas Wheelon saw his position at the CIA as a temporary one—he signed on for a four-year contract, fulfilled it, and left the CIA—Helms was a career Agency man. He'd worked closely with Bissell on the U-2 from its inception and he knew what important intelligence could come from overhead photographs. The United States learned more about the Soviets' weapons capabilities from its first U-2 overflight than it had in the previous ten years from its spies on the ground. Off McNamara's inquiry about possibly using the Oxcart on spy missions over North Vietnam, Helms made a personal trip out to Area 51 to sign off on Oxcart design specifications himself. Helms was also acutely aware of the Air Force's plans to push Oxcart out of the way in favor of their own reconnaissance spy plane, the SR-71 Blackbird. If Helms could get a mission for Oxcart, the chances of the CIA maintaining its supersonic espionage program greatly increased.

Almost everyone who visited Area 51 became enamored with the desert facility, and Helms was no exception. It was impossible not to be fascinated by the power and prestige the secret facility embodied. It was the quintessential boys' club, both exotic and elite. Most of all, it gave visitors the sense of being a million miles away from the hustle and bustle of Washington, DC. There were no cars to drive—instead, Agency shuttles moved men around the base. [No radio, almost no TV](#). As a visitor to Area 51, Helms was particularly careful not to step on any powerful Air Force toes. The base was, operations-wise, Air Force turf now. The CIA was in charge of missions, but there were no missions, which only underscored a growing sense of Agency impotence. The Air Force controlled most of the day-to-day operations on the base, including proficiency flights and air-to-air refuelings, which were practiced regularly so everyone in the 1129th Special Activities Squadron stayed in shape.

During his visit, Helms kept a relatively low profile, making sure to spend more of his time in the field—on the airstrip with the pilots and in the aircraft hangars with the engineers—than drinking White Horse Scotch with Air Force brass in the House-Six bar. During test flights, Helms liked to roll up his sleeves and stand on the tarmac when the

Oxcart took off. He likened the experience to standing on the epicenter of an 8.0 earthquake and described the great orange fireballs that spewed out of the Oxcart's engines as "hammers from hell." Helms, an upper-middle-class intellectual from Philadelphia, loved colorful language. He'd once told a room of military men that the Vietnam War was "like an incubus." a nightmarish male demon that creeps up on sleeping women and has intercourse with them. Helms's grandiose language, most likely intentional, separated him from straight-talking military men.

Despite playing a key role in planning and executing covert operations in Vietnam, Richard Helms did not believe the United States could win the war there. This posture kept him out of step with Pentagon brass. Helms believed Vietnam was fracturing consensus about America's need to win the Cold War, which he saw as the more important battle at hand. He was an advocate of using technology to beat the Russians by way of overhead reconnaissance from satellites and spy planes, which was why he liked Oxcart so much. And unlike Pentagon and State Department officials, who, for the most part, cautioned the president against ever sending spy planes over the Soviet Union again, Helms, like McCone, felt the president should do just that. "The only sin in espionage is getting caught." Helms once said. He believed the best intelligence was "objective intelligence." Photographs didn't have an opinion and couldn't lie. Helms attributed his respect for objectivity to his working as a journalist for the wire service United Press International. In 1936, a then twenty-four-year-old Richard Helms got his first big scoop: covering the Berlin Olympics as a reporter, he was invited to interview Adolf Hitler. Six years later, Helms would be recruited by the Office of Strategic Services, the precursor organization to the CIA, to spy on Hitler's men.

With Richard Helms at Area 51 in December of 1965, the Oxcart was finally declared operational. Celebrations were in order. One of the pilots offered to fly a C-130 Hercules on a seafood run to Westover Air Force Base in Massachusetts, where Werner Weiss had coolers full of lobsters, oysters, and crab legs ready to be taken to Area 51. Big-budget black operations had stomach-size perks too. After such feasts, the kitchen staff buried the shells in compost piles along the base perimeter, and the joke among Air Force support staff was that future archaeologists digging in the area would think Groom Lake had been an ocean as late as the 1960s.

As secret and compartmentalized as the base was, the mess hall was the one place where the men gathered together to break bread. Technical assistants would rub elbows with three- and four-star generals visiting there. Ernie Williams, who had helped find Area 51's first well in 1955 and now helped coordinate meals, loved it when Werner Weiss invited him into the mess hall to eat steaks with generals who wore stars on their chests. And after the meal was over, the men would again go their separate ways. The Special Projects program managers and the engineering nerds usually retired to their quarters to play poker and drink bottled beer. The scientists were known to return to their respective hangars, where they'd stay up until all hours of the night engrossed in various problems they needed to solve. The Air Force guys went to the House-Six bar to roll dice, have a drink, and share war stories.

When on base, Richard Helms was known to stop in for a drink. He was a great

conversationalist but almost always refrained from telling stories about himself. And as far as World War II was concerned, Helms rarely discussed the subject. In 1945, as a young OSS officer, Helms had worked in postwar Berlin. He was one of the key players in Operation Paperclip; Helms had been tasked with finding a group of Hitler's former scientists and offering them positions on classified programs back in the United States. Jobs involving biological weapons, rockets, and stealth. Years later, Helms justified his recruitment of former Nazis by saying that if the scientists hadn't come to work for us, they'd have gone to work for "them." Helms knew things other men did not know. At the Agency he was the man who kept the secrets.

In 1975, Helms would unwittingly become an internationally recognized figure famous for destroying CIA documents to avoid having their secrets revealed. After allegations surfaced that the CIA had been running a human-research program called MKULTRA—which involved mind-control experiments using drugs such as LSD—Helms as director of the CIA was asked to take the stand. While testifying to Congress, Helms stated that he had ordered all the [MKULTRA files destroyed](#) two years earlier, in 1973.

In the labyrinthine organizational chart that kept men at Area 51 in their respective places, no one was more important to the spy plane project's overall progress than the commander of the base, a position granted to an Air Force officer whose salary came from the CIA. In 1965, the position was filled by Colonel Slater. Slater was the ideal commander. He was astute, practical, and an excellent listener, which put him in direct contrast to the more elitist Colonel Holbury, who'd held the position before. What the pilots appreciated most about Slater was that he was funny. Not sarcastic funny, but the kind of funny that reminded pilots not to take their jobs so seriously all the time. One of the first things Colonel Slater did after taking command of the base was to hang a sign over the House-Six bar that listed Slip Slater's Basic Rules of Flying at Groom Lake. There were only three rules.

- Try to stay in the middle of the air.
- Do not go near the edges of it.
- The edges of the air can be recognized by the appearance of ground, buildings, sea, trees and interstellar space. It is much more difficult to fly there.

Like all the pilots at Area 51, Slater flew every chance he got. Now, as commander of the base, he began each day by making the first run. Around five thirty each morning, coffee mug in hand, Slater was driven by one of the enlisted men to the end of a runway, where he'd jump in an F-101 and fly around the Box on what he called "the weather run." Because Area 51 had a large box of restricted airspace, Slater could fly in a manner not seen at other Air Force bases. Colonel Roger Andersen, who had been recruited to Area 51 to work in the command post, remembers the first time he flew with Slater in a two-seater T-33 to Groom Lake. "We were doing proficiency flying. I'd been getting teased by the other pilots because my background was flying tankers for the Air Force, not jets," Andersen explains. "Up in the air, Slater says to me, 'You need to loosen up, Andersen,

Let's rack it around.' At which point Slater does a loop, a roll, and a spin... in a row. You could do that kind of thing up at Area 51."

Everyone knew stories about Slater's flying career: flying against the Germans in World War II, flying as the detachment commander for the Black Cats, and of course the remarkable story of his flying an airplane with a dead engine for a hundred miles on a glide—through a hurricane—in 1946. As a young hero just back from the war, Slater had been chosen by the Army Air Forces to fly a brand-new P-80 Shooting Star on a training mission from March Air Force Base to Jamaica. The P-80 was the first jet fighter used by the Army Air Forces at a time when jets in America were relatively new. As Slater remembers it, he was "one hundred miles out at sea off of Key West when the engine quit. I was just north of Cuba, which was under hurricane. There was turbine failure and a flameout so I turned around and glided back to the Keys." Jet airplanes do not normally glide without engine thrust, at least not without a skilled pilot at the controls. When a jet engine loses all power, it usually crashes. Slater rode the jet stream for a hundred miles over the Atlantic Ocean until he found an abandoned airstrip at Marathon Key, in Florida, on which to land. The amazing story made its way to the pages of the *New York Times*.

Richard Helms was a fan of Slater, and before leaving Area 51 to get back to Washington, Helms made sure to congratulate Colonel Slater on all the fine work that had been achieved to get Oxcart operational. Now Slater had to be prepared to fly himself to Washington on a moment's notice on Oxcart's behalf. Over the next several months, [Slater and General Ledford would be asked](#) to participate in the top secret covert-action review board the 303 Committee, which would be assigning Oxcart its mission. (The 303 Committee was a successor to the Special Operations Group, which Bissell had been in charge of during his tenure at the CIA.)

Slater flew himself to Washington in an F-101 more times than he could count. There, however eloquently the Agency advocated on the Oxcart squadron's behalf, the Pentagon put up roadblocks. Slater's input had little effect on the naysayers. He was looked upon as the man in charge of a billion-dollar black operations program, a golden goose that the Air Force desperately wanted to wrest from the CIA. Every time the Agency proposed a mission, the review board denied the CIA's request.

That the groundbreaking spy plane was trapped in a stalemate between the CIA and the Air Force was, at first, unbelievable to Colonel Slater. Throughout his career, Slater had moved effortlessly between different armed services and intelligence worlds, applying his talents wherever they were needed most. As a twenty-two-year-old fighter pilot, Slater flew eighty-four missions over France and Germany in a P-47 Thunderbolt. When the Army desperately needed support from airmen during the Battle of the Bulge, Slater fought side by side with soldiers on the ground at the bloody Siege of Bastogne. Later, as commander of the Black Cat Squadron flying dangerous missions over mainland China, Slater wore both CIA and Air Force hats with ease. The common goal was gathering intelligence. Colonel Slater saw no rivalry among the men.

During that winter of 1966, flying back and forth between Area 51 and the Pentagon, Slater had a front-row seat for the power struggle between the Air Force and the CIA. Secretary of Defense Robert McNamara had changed his mind again on the usefulness of

Oxcart in Vietnam. He decided to wait until the Air Force SR-71 program came online. Bud Wheeler believes that "[McNamara was delaying finding a mission](#)" for the Oxcart on purpose. He was an empire builder. Oxcart did not fit into his empire because it was never his." With each month that passed, the Air Force's SR-71 Blackbird was that much closer to being operations-ready, and the men in charge of Blackbird were in McNamara's chain of command. As soon as the Air Force's spy plane was ready, the CIA's almost identical spy plane would be out of a job.

In June of 1966, Richard Helms was made director of the CIA. Now one of the most powerful men in Washington, Helms lobbied hard on Oxcart's behalf, and in July, the Joint Chiefs of Staff voted in favor of sending Oxcart over North Vietnam to gather intelligence on missile sites there. McNamara and Secretary of State Dean Rusk dug in their heels and again offered dissent. Both men argued that putting CIA planes on the ground at the U.S. Air Force base in Okinawa, Japan, posed too great a political risk. McNamara was playing the same card he had played with John McCone when McCone was running the CIA, namely, that [if a CIA spy plane were to get shot down](#) on an espionage mission, the president would face the same backlash that Eisenhower had after the Gary Powers incident.

In August, a vote for or against Oxcart deployment was tallied in the presence of President Johnson. [The majority voted against deployment](#), and the president upheld that decision. The ice around the Oxcart program was getting thin. Colonel Slater responded as best he knew how: when the going gets tough, the tough keep flying. Back at Area 51, he was determined to keep his men mission-ready. There was no point in letting his men know that the program was on the verge of collapse. Who could have imagined that the seminal Oxcart was in danger of being mothballed before it ever got a job? Instead, Slater gave his men a new goal. He wanted them to shave six days off the time it took the squadron to go from mission notification to deployment overseas. It had been a twenty-one-day response time; [Slater now wanted it reduced by nearly 30 percent](#).

Area 51 became like a Boy Scout camp on steroids, a stomping ground for the world's fastest and now most expensive airplane. The six aircraft that would be used for deployment were put through a whole new battery of flight-simulation tests. Commander Slater kept pilot morale high and Pentagon dissent at bay. A bowling alley was built. The pilots kept in shape playing water sports in the Olympic-size swimming pool. They kept their minds clear flying model airplanes and hitting golf balls off the dry lake bed up into the hills. Even the contractors were encouraged to pick up the pace. Slater challenged a lazy work crew to dig a lake. Five decades later, Groom Lake's artificial body of water would still be referred to as Slater Lake. With the aircraft now flying at full speed and maximum height, it was time to break performance records. In December of 1966, one of the pilots set a speed record that would last into the twenty-first century. Bill Park flew 10,195 miles in a little over six hours at an average speed of 1,660 miles per hour. [Park had flown over all four corners of America](#) and back to the base in less time than most men spend at the office on any given day. To the project pilots itching for missions, it seemed like they could be deployed any day. And then, in January of 1967, tragedy struck.

Project pilot [Walt Ray was, by all accounts, a terrific pilot](#). He and his new wife, Diane,

also made for good company with Ken Collins and his wife, Jane. Diane and Jane did not have to keep up any pretenses; they both accepted that they had no idea what their husbands really did besides fly airplanes. The Rays and the Collinsses lived close to each other in the San Fernando Valley, and they would often go on holidays together. "Once we took a small prop plane and [flew down to Cabo San Lucas](#), Mexico, and spent a couple days down there playing tennis, swimming, and flying around," Collins recalls. "There were so few runways in Mexico in the early sixties, mostly we landed in big fields. The goats would see us coming, or hear us coming; they'd run away, and we'd land. Walt Ray loved to fly as much as I did. We'd take turns flying the airplane." Quiet and unassuming, Walt Ray also liked to hunt. "Right after New Year, Walt took me with him on a RON [remain overnight] in Montana. We did some hunting, spent the night in a motel, and flew home," Roger Andersen remembers. The following day, on the afternoon of January 5, 1967, Walt Ray was flying an Oxcart on a short test flight. At the Ranch, it had been snowing. Walt Ray was passing over the tiny town of Farmington, New Mexico, at exactly 3:22 p.m. when he looked down and saw the black line on his [fuel gauge move suddenly](#), dramatically, and dangerously to the left.

"I have a loss of fuel and I do not know where it is going," [Walt Ray told Colonel Slater through his headset](#), breaking radio silence to communicate on a radio frequency reserved for emergencies. The transcript would remain classified until 2007. "I think I can make it," Walt Ray said. He was 130 miles from the tarmac at Area 51, flying subsonic to conserve fuel. But twenty minutes later, over Hanksville, Utah, Ray declared an emergency. He'd gotten the aircraft down to thirty thousand feet when one of its engines flamed out. The sixty-seven-million-dollar spy plane had run out of fuel.

["I'm ejecting"](#) was the last thing Walt Ray said to Colonel Slater.

When Walt Ray ejected, the seat he was strapped into was propelled away from the airplane by a small rocket. The strings of his parachute became tangled in his seat's headrest, which meant he was [unable to separate from his seat](#). Walt Ray fell thirty thousand feet without a parachute and crashed into the side of a mountain near Leith, Nevada. Within seconds of the pilot's last transmission, Commander Slater gave the order to dispatch three aircraft from Area 51 to go find Walt Ray and whatever was left of his airplane. No one had any idea that the thirty-year-old pilot was already dead. In addition to the fleet of search-and-rescue that took off from Groom Lake, the Air Force dispatched four aircraft and two helicopters from Nellis Air Force Base. The crash site needed to be secured quickly before any civilians arrived on the scene.

Twenty-three hours passed. No pilot, no airplane. A U-2 was sent aloft to photograph the general area where Walt Ray was believed to have gone down. While the U-2 pilots flew high, [Roger Andersen flew in low, in a T-33](#). The terrain was challenging, and it was difficult to see the ground. "There was cactus and vegetation everywhere; we had to conserve fuel and fly as low as we could," Andersen explains. Helicopter pilot [Charlie Trapp found the aircraft first](#). "I saw these large film pieces rolling across the top of a ridge," Trapp recalls. "I landed where I could and let my parajumpers jump out. They ran over to the Oxcart, what was left of it, and when they came back they said, 'Walt's not in there and neither is his ejection seat.'" The Oxcart had crashed in the remote high desert

on a mountain slope dotted with chaparral. Trapp and his crew went back to Area 51 and, with the navigators' help, mapped out on the board in the command post all the places where Walt Ray might have landed after ejection. Then they went back out and continued the search.

Charlie Trapp found Walt Ray uphill from the crash site, three miles away. "I caught a glimpse of light reflecting from his helmet," Trapp recalls. "He was still in his seat, under a large cedar tree." A perimeter was set up and the dirt roads leading up to the crash site were barricaded and secured by armed guards. Herds of wild horses watched as trucks rolled in and workers carted up the jet wreckage to take back to Groom Lake. The entire process took nine days. After an investigation, officials determined that a faulty fuel gauge was all that was wrong with the triple-sonic spy plane. At first, the gauge had erroneously indicated to Walt Ray he had enough fuel to get back to the Ranch. Minutes later the gauge told him he was about to run out of fuel.

One man's tragedy can become another man's opportunity, which is what happened to Frank Murray after Walt Ray was killed. After the accident, General Ledford came out to the area to participate in the ensuing investigation. When Ledford was ready to return to Washington, he asked Frank Murray to fly him home. "Up in the air," Murray recalls, "Ledford said to me over the radio, '[How'd you like to fly the plane?](#)' I said, 'Throw me in that puddle, boss' and that was about the extent of the pilot-selection process for me.'" Murray was given Walt Ray's call sign of Dutch 20. No longer a chase pilot, Murray was now part of the CIA's elite team of overhead espionage pilots.

Defense Department officials used the tragic death of Walt Ray and the loss of another CIA aircraft to their advantage. The Office of the Budget and the Office of the Secretary of Defense met alone, in secret, without representation from the CIA. There, they highlighted the fact that the CIA's several-hundred-million-dollar black budget operation had produced fifteen airplanes, five of which had already crashed. They presented their findings to President Johnson with the recommendation that the Oxcart program be "phased out."

Richard Helms was furious. In an [eight-page letter to the president](#), he told Johnson that to mothball the Oxcart would be [a scandalous waste of an asset](#). The CIA had successfully and meticulously managed 435 spy plane overflights by the U-2 in thirty hostile countries, and only one, the Gary Powers crash, had produced an international incident, Helms said. But the [Gary Powers incident had actually strengthened](#) the argument as to why the CIA, not the Air Force, should run the spy plane program, Helms explained. It was because Powers was an intelligence officer, and not a military man, that the Soviets hadn't taken retaliatory action against the United States. Ultimately Powers had been released in a Soviet spy exchange. Helms further strengthened his argument by stating that, unlike the military, [the CIA "controls no nuclear weapons](#), which rules out any propaganda suggestion that an irrational act by some subordinate commander might precipitate a nuclear war." Helms had a point. [But would the president see things his way?](#)

The following month, in February of 1967, Colonel Slater was again summoned to Washington. It was his fifth trip in six months. In a roomful of 303 Committee members, Slater was told the Oxcart would be terminated effective January 1, 1968. There was no room for debate. The Oxcart's fate had been decided. The case was closed. [Slater was](#)

[instructed to return to Area 51](#) and keep his squadron operations ready while the Air Force's SR-71 Blackbird passed its final flight tests. Even though Colonel Slater was Air Force to his core he was very much for the CIA's Oxcart program. Slater was the program's commander, and at that moment, the Oxcart was undeniably the most remarkable aircraft in the world.

Colonel Slater had flown himself to Washington in an F-101 and now he had to fly himself home. He was uncharacteristically disheartened by it all. Stopping at Wright-Patterson Air Force Base to refuel, Slater showed his identification documents, which pushed him to the front of the refueling line, [ahead of a two-star general](#) who had been waiting there. With everyone staring at him and wondering who this officer was, Slater considered the irony of it all. In justifying why Oxcart was being terminated, the 303 Committee claimed that the Oxcart exemplified CIA black budget excess. From Slater's perspective, save for a few line-cutting perks, the Oxcart was worth every Agency dime. The scientific barriers broken by the Oxcart program would likely impress scientists and engineers in another thirty years. It was the incredible sense of achievement shared by everyone involved that Slater would miss most. But so it goes, thought Slater. Oxcart would never get a mission, and the American public would probably never know what the CIA had been able to accomplish, in total secrecy, at Groom Lake—at least not for a long time.

Colonel Slater waited for his airplane to be refueled and thought about the journey home, likely his last from DC to Area 51. It was a mistake to cancel Oxcart, Slater thought. But he also knew that his opinion didn't matter. His skills as a commander were what he was counted on for. He would return to Area 51 and, like all good military men, follow orders.

Three months later, on a balmy spring day in May of 1967, Colonel Slater decided he was going to take the Oxcart for a last ride. Some of the pilots had four hundred hours in the air in the Oxcart. Walt Ray had had 358 when he died. Colonel Slater had only ten. Why not take the world's most scientifically advanced aircraft out for a ride while he still had the chance? Soon, the Oxcart would disappear into the experimental-test-plane graveyard. There, it would collect dust in some secret military hangar way out in Palmdale, California, where no one would ever fly it again. [Slater went to visit Werner Weiss](#) to see if Weiss could arrange for Slater to take one last Mach 3 ride.

"Consider it done," Werner Weiss said to Colonel Slater's request.

Up in the air, Slater quickly took the Oxcart to seventy thousand feet. Slater had forgotten how light the Oxcart was. It had an airframe like a butterfly, which allowed pilots to get it up so high. Flying at Mach 2.5 made things hot inside the cockpit. It was like an oven set on warm. If Slater were to take off his glove and touch the window, he'd get a second-degree burn. He moved up to Mach 3 cruising speed at ninety thousand feet, traveling the seven hundred miles to Billings, Montana, in about twenty-three minutes.

The fallacy was that at this height and speed, a pilot could look out the window and take in the view. You couldn't. Even when you reached cruising height, you had to keep your eyes on every gauge, oscillator, and scope in front of you. There were too many things to pay attention to. Too many things that could go wrong.

Colonel Slater headed toward the Canadian border, where he took a left turn and flew along the U.S. perimeter until he reached Washington State. There, he took another left turn and flew down over Oregon and into California. Finally, he took the aircraft down to twenty-five thousand feet and prepared for a scheduled refuel. Minutes later, Slater met up with the KC-135 that had been dispatched from the Air Force's 903rd Air Refueling Squadron out of Beale Air Force Base in Yuba County, California.

The process of taking on fuel was one of the more dangerous things an Oxcart pilot could do. In order to connect its fuel line to the tanker, the aircraft had to slow down to between 350 and 450 mph, so slow it could barely keep its grip on the sky. The issue of speed was equally taxing on the flying fuel tank. The KC-135 tanker had to travel at its top speed just to keep up with the slowed-down triple-sonic airplane. This was always a slightly nerve-racking process, complicated for Colonel Slater by the fact that a call came in over the emergency radio at exactly that time. Whatever was going on back at Area 51 that merited this emergency call was most likely not a welcome event.

Slater answered. It was Colonel Paul Bacalis, the man who'd taken over Ledford's job as director of the Office of Special Activities for the CIA. Bacalis told Slater that an urgent call had come in for him from the Pentagon and he should get back to Area 51 immediately.

"I'm refueling," Colonel Slater said.

"Finish and dump it," Bacalis said.

"Can't it wait?" Colonel Slater asked.

"No," Bacalis said. "Where are you?"

"I'm over California," Colonel Slater said.

"Head out to sea, dump the fuel, and come home" was Colonel Bacalis's command.

Slater let loose forty thousand pounds of fuel and watched it evaporate into the atmosphere. It was critical that he save ten thousand gallons of fuel to get home, not much more and definitely not less. Too little fuel and you wound up like Walt Ray. Too much fuel meant the aircraft could blow out its brakes on landing and overshoot the runway. Now, Slater needed to make a quick U-turn to head home. When traveling three times the speed of sound, the Oxcart needed 186 miles of space just to make the hook. This meant Slater's U-turn took him from off the coast of Big Sur to high above Santa Barbara on a tight curve.

When Slater got back to base, Werner Weiss and Colonel Bacalis were waiting in his office. Both men wore grins. Colonel Bacalis dialed the Pentagon and handed Slater the telephone. As the phone rang, Bacalis told Slater what was happening so as to prepare him for the call.

Colonel Slater couldn't believe his ears.

"The president has given Oxcart a go," Slater recalls Bacalis saying, and that "orders are en route." Then came the ultimate challenge—one for which he was prepared. Bacalis asked Slater if he could deploy his men for Oxcart missions starting in fifteen days.

Operation Black Shield and the Secret History of the USS Pueblo

The new director of the CIA, Richard M. Helms, had to work hard to become a member of President Johnson's inner coterie. The president had once told his CIA director that he "[never found much use for intelligence](#)." But eventually Helms managed to acquire a coveted seat at the president's Tuesday lunch table. There, President Johnson and his closest advisers discussed foreign policy each week. Outsiders called the luncheons Target Tuesdays because so much of what was discussed involved which North Vietnamese city to bomb. In 1967, air battles were raging in the skies over Hanoi and Haiphong with so many more American pilots getting shot down than enemy pilots that the ratio became nine to one. The Pentagon had been unable to locate the surface-to-air missile sites in North Vietnam responsible for so many of the shoot-downs although they'd been looking for them all year. Thirty-seven U-2 missions had been flown since January, as had hundreds of low-flying Air Force drones. Still, the Pentagon had no clear sense of where exactly the Communist missile sites were located. There were other fears. The Russians were rumored to be supplying the North Vietnamese with surface-to-surface missiles, ones with enough range to reach American troops stationed in the south.

Which is how the Oxcart, already scheduled for cancellation, serendipitously got its mission—during a [Target Tuesday lunch](#). On May 16, 1967, Helms made one last play on behalf of the CIA's beloved spy plane, nine years in the making but just a few days away from being mothballed for good. [Helms told the president](#) that by deploying the Oxcart on missions over North Vietnam, war planners could get those high-resolution photographs of the missile sites they had been looking for. "Sharp point photographs, not smudged circles," Helms promised the president. Secretary of Defense Robert McNamara, angling hard for Air Force control of aerial reconnaissance, had promised the president that the SR-71 Blackbird, the Air Force version of the Oxcart, was almost operations-ready. But the mission had to happen now, CIA director Helms told the president. It was already May. Come June, Southeast Asia would be inundated with monsoons. Weather was critical for good photographs, Helms said. Cameras can't photograph through clouds. President Johnson was convinced. Before the dessert arrived, Johnson authorized the CIA's Oxcart to deploy to Kadena Air Base on Okinawa, Japan.

It was a coup for the CIA. By the following morning, the airlift to Kadena from Area 51 had begun. The 1129th Special Activities Squadron was being deployed for Operation Black Shield. [A million pounds of matériel, 260 support crew](#), six pilots, and three airplanes were en route to the East China Sea. Nine years after Kelly Johnson presented physicist Edward Lovick with his drawing of the first Oxcart, Johnson would write in his log notes: "[the bird should leave the nest.](#)"

Kadena Air Base was located on the island of Okinawa just north of the Tropic of Cancer in the East China Sea. It was an island scarred by a violent backstory, haunted by hundreds of thousands of war dead. Okinawa had been home to the single largest land-sea-air battle in the history of the world. This was the same plot of land where, twenty-two years earlier, the Allied Forces fought the Japanese. Okinawa was the last island before mainland Japan. Over the course of eighty-two days in the spring of 1945, the battle for the Pacific reached its zenith. At Okinawa, American casualties would total 38,000 wounded and 12,000 killed or missing. Japan's losses were inconceivable in today's wars: 107,000 soldiers dead and as many as 100,000 civilians killed. When Lieutenant General Ushijima Mitsuru finally capitulated, giving the island over to U.S. forces on June 21, 1945, he did so with so much shame in his heart that he committed suicide the following day. Thousands of Okinawans felt the same way and leaped off the island's high coral walls. After the smoke settled and the blood soaked into the earth, Okinawa belonged to the U.S. military. Two decades later, it still did.

By the time Ken Collins stepped foot on Okinawa, the Kadena Air Base occupied more than 10 percent of the island and accounted for [nearly 40 percent of all islanders' income](#). The 1129th Special Activities Squadron was stationed at a secluded part of the base, the place from where Operation Black Shield would launch. No one was supposed to know the squadron was there. The project pilots were [to keep an extremely low profile](#), living in a simple arrangement of Quonset huts almost identical to those at Area 51. Instead of on the sand-and-sagebrush landscape at Area 51, the facilities on Kadena sat in fields of green grass. Leafy ficus trees grew along little pathways. It was spring when the pilots arrived, which meant tropical flowers were in full bloom. The pilots' residence was called Morgan Manor. An American cook kept the pilots fed, serving up high-protein diets on request. On days off the pilots drank bottled beer. Sometimes the men ventured out to have a drink or eat a meal at the officers' club, where a full Filipino orchestra always played American dance tunes.

The Oxcart mission was covert and classified, and there would be ["no plausible cover story"](#) as to why an oddly shaped, triple-sonic aircraft would be flying in and out of the air base with regularity for the next year. For this reason, the Joint Chiefs of Staff suggested that Commander Slater "focus on security, not cover." One idea was to "create the illusion of some sort of environmental or technical testing involved." But no one believed that cover story would hold. Within a week of the first Oxcart landing on the tarmac at Kadena, an ominous-looking Russian trawler sailed into port and anchored within viewing distance of the extralong runway. "The Russians knew we were there and we knew they knew we were there," Colonel Slater recalls.

Impossible as it seemed, [the first Oxcart mission](#) over the demilitarized zone in North Vietnam occurred as promised, just fifteen days after Helms made history for the CIA at that Target Tuesday lunch in May. CIA pilot Mele Vojvodich was assigned the first mission. He took off at 11:00 a.m. local time in a torrential downpour—the Oxcart's first real ride in the rain. In the little more than nine minutes Vojvodich spent over North Vietnam, at a speed of Mach 3.1 and an altitude of 80,000 feet, the Oxcart photographed 70 of the 190 suspected surface-to-air missile sites. The mission went totally undetected by the Chinese

and the North Vietnamese.

After the first mission was completed, the film was sent to a special processing center inside the Eastman Kodak plant in Rochester, New York. But [by the time the photographic intelligence got back](#) to field commanders in Vietnam, the intelligence was already several days old. The North Vietnamese were moving missile sites and mock-ups of missile sites around faster than anyone could keep track of them. The CIA realized it needed a dramatically faster turn-around time, which resulted in a photo center being quickly set up on the mainland in Japan. Soon, field commanders had intel in their hands just twenty-four hours from the completion of an Oxcart mission over North Vietnam.

Still, that did not stop the North Vietnamese from moving their missiles around and avoiding bombing raids. They had help from the Soviet Union. "That was the reason for the Russian trawler parked at the end of the Kadena runway. Someone was watching and taking notes every time we flew," recalls Roger Andersen, who was stationed in the command post on Kadena, which he'd been in charge of setting up. "It was almost identical to the command post at Area 51, except it was smaller," Andersen says.

On Kadena, the operations officers tried to trick the Russian spies in the trawler by flying at night, and yet of the first seven Black Shield missions flown, [four were "detected and tracked."](#) The North Vietnamese were able to predict Oxcart's overhead pass based on the time the aircraft left the base. With this information relayed by the Russians, the Communists' Fan Song guidance radar was able to lock on the A-12's beacon. The [first attempted shoot-down](#) happened during Operation Black Shield's sixteenth mission. In photographs taken by the Oxcart, contrails of surface-to-air missiles can be seen below. Fortunately for the pilots, the missiles could not get up as high as the Oxcart. In this newest round of cat and mouse, Oxcart was resulting in a draw. Oxcart was fast, high, and stealthy. The aircraft could not be shot down. But the enemy knew the plane was there, meaning it was a long way from being invisible as Richard Bissell and President Eisenhower had originally planned.

For American pilots flying over North Vietnam, the real danger remained down low, halfway between Oxcart and the earth, at around forty-five thousand feet. That was where the surface-to-air missiles and the MiG fighter jets were shooting down U.S. pilots at the horrifying nine-to-one rate. Ken Collins recalled what this felt like at the time: "During Black Shield, we, as pilots, were relatively safe at eighty-five thousand feet. It was the pilots who were flying lower than us who were really the ones in harm's way. These were guys most of us had been in the Air Force with, before we got sheep-dipped and began flying for the CIA."

Extraordinary pilots like Hervey Stockman. Stockman had been the first man to fly over the Soviet Union in a U-2, on July 4, 1956. Eleven years later, on June 11, 1967, Stockman was flying over North Vietnam, searching for information about North Vietnam weapons depots, [when he was involved in a midair crash.](#) A pilot of exceptional skill and remarkable courage, Stockman was on his 310th mission in a career that had covered three wars when his F-4 C Phantom fighter jet collided with another airplane in his wing. He and Ronald Webb both survived the bailout. Upon landing, they were captured by North Vietnamese soldiers, beaten, and taken prisoner. Stockman would spend the next five

years and 268 days as a prisoner of war in a seven-by-seven-foot cell. First he was housed in the notoriously brutal Hanoi Hilton. Later, he was moved to other, equally grim prisons over the course of his incarceration. During Black Shield, the CIA tasked Oxcart pilots with search missions [to find U.S. airmen who'd gone down](#) over North Vietnam. The cameras on the Oxcarts took miles of photographs, seeking information on the prison complexes where American heroes like Hervey Stockman and hundreds of other POWs were being held, but to no avail. The North Vietnamese moved captured POWs around almost as often as they moved missile sites around.

The captured pilots became a purposeful part of Communist propaganda campaigns against the West. The POWs were beaten, tortured, chained, and dragged out in front of cameras, often forced to denounce the United States. If the Communists wanted to create unrest at home, which they did, they succeeded by using captured pilots for their own propaganda gains. All across America, opposition to the war was on the rise. The White House and the Pentagon fought back with propaganda and erroneous facts. "We are beginning to win this struggle," Vice President Hubert Humphrey boasted on NBC's *Today* show in November of 1967. While closed-door hearings for the Senate Armed Services Committee revealed that U.S. bombing campaigns were having little to no effect on winning the war, Humphrey told America that more Communists were laying down arms than picking them up. That our anti-Communist "purification" programs in Vietnam were going well. Later that same month, America's top commander, General Westmoreland, dug his own grave. He told the National Press Club that the Communists were "unable to mount a major offensive." That America might have been losing the war in 1965, but now America was winning in Vietnam. In an interview with *Time* magazine, Westmoreland taunted the Communists by calling them weak. "[I hope they try something because we are looking for a fight.](#)" he declared. Which is exactly what he got. At the end of January, the Communists pretended to agree to a three-day cease-fire to celebrate the new year, which in Vietnamese is called Tet Nguyen Dan. Instead, it was a double-cross. On January 31, 1968, the Communists launched a surprise attack on the U.S. military and the forces of South Vietnam. The notorious Tet Offensive stunned the Pentagon. It also resulted in violent antiwar protests. The Tet Offensive was a major turning point in America's losing the Vietnam War.

It was at this same time that another major crisis occurred, one in which Oxcart played a secret role, the precise details of which were only made public in 2007. On the foggy morning of January 23, 1968, approximately two thousand miles to the northeast of Vietnam, the U.S. Navy ship USS *Pueblo* sailed into icy waters off the coast of North Korea and dropped anchor. The *Pueblo*'s cover story was that it was conducting scientific research; really, [it was on an espionage mission](#), a joint NSA-Navy operation with the goal of gathering signals intelligence, or SIGINT. In addition to the regular crew, there were twenty-eight signals intelligence specialists working behind locked doors in a separate and restricted part of the vessel. Parked 15.8 miles off North Korea's Ung-do Island, technically the *Pueblo* was floating in international waters.

North Korea's Communist regime did not see it that way. The ship was close enough to be eavesdropping on Wonson harbor, which made it an open target for the North

Korean People's Army, the KPA. After one of the *Pueblo*'s crew members picked up on radar that a KPA ship was approaching fast, *Pueblo*'s captain, Lloyd M. Bucher, went up to the bridge to have a look around. Through his binoculars, Bucher saw not just a military ship but one with its rocket launchers aimed directly at the *Pueblo*. Bucher ordered certain flags to be raised, ones that indicated the USS *Pueblo* was on a surveying mission, something the North Koreans obviously already did not buy. Within minutes, Chief Warrant Officer Gene Lacy spotted several small vessels on the horizon: torpedo boats coming from Wonson. Next, [two MiG-21 fighter jets appeared on the scene](#).

Captain Bucher now had a national security nightmare on his hands. His boat was filled with thousands of classified papers, cryptographic manuals, and encryption machines. Most significantly, the *Pueblo* carried a KW-7 cipher machine, which was the veritable Rosetta stone of naval encryption. [The captain considered sinking his ship](#), which would take forty-seven minutes, but later explained that he knew if he had done so a gun battle was certain to ensue. Most of the *Pueblo*'s life rafts would be shot at and destroyed. Without life rafts, the men would die in the icy waters in a matter of minutes, Bucher was certain. He made the decision to flee.

The North Korean ship raised a flag that signaled "Heave to or I will open fire on you." Captain Bucher raised a signal flag in response: "Thank you for your consideration. I am departing the area." But the North Koreans opened fire. Bucher himself was hit, taking shrapnel in his foot and backside. As the *Pueblo* took off, the North Koreans continued to fire, killing a U.S. sailor named Duane Hodges. Meanwhile, behind the secret door, SIGINT specialists smashed cipher equipment with axes and shoved documents into a small incinerator there. Despite the speed at which the analysts worked to burn the secret papers, [90 percent of the documents survived](#). Sixty-one minutes after being shot, Captain Bucher was no longer in control of his ship. The North Korean People's Army stormed the *Pueblo* and took the captain and his eighty-two crew members hostage. For the first time in 160 years, an American vessel had been seized by a foreign nation. The timing could not have been worse. America was already losing one war.

President Johnson was outraged. Within hours of the *Pueblo*'s capture, the [Pentagon began secretly preparing for war](#) against North Korea. The following day, McNamara summoned the war council to lay out plans for a ground attack. "Our primary objective is to get the men of the *Pueblo* back," McNamara said, emphasizing just how secret his plan was to remain: "No word of the discussion in this meeting should go beyond this room." A stunning air attack over North Korea was laid out. An estimated fifteen thousand tons of bombs would be dropped from the air to complement the ground assault. Given the huge numbers of soldiers and airmen fighting in Vietnam, the war with North Korea would require a call-up of the reserves. A massive U.S. strategic airlift was set in motion, designated Operation Combat Fox. That the North Vietnamese were just six days from launching the sneak attack called the Tet Offensive was not yet known. A war with North Korea over the USS *Pueblo* would have been a war America could ill afford.

Richard Helms suggested an Oxcart be dispatched from nearby Kadena to photograph North Korea's coast and try to locate the USS *Pueblo* before anyone even considered making a next move. As it stood, immediately after the *Pueblo*'s capture,

there was no intelligence indicating exactly where the sailors were or where the ship was being held. Richard Helms counseled the president that if the goal was to get the eighty-two American sailors back, a ground attack or air attack couldn't possibly achieve that end if no one knew where the USS *Pueblo* was. A reconnaissance mission would also enable the Pentagon to see if Pyongyang was mobilizing its troops for war over the event. Most important of all, it would give the crisis a necessary diplomatic pause.

Three days after the *Pueblo*'s capture, on January 26, Oxcart pilot Jack Weeks was dispatched on a sortie from Kadena to locate the missing ship. From the photographs Weeks took on that overflight, the United States [pinpointed the *Pueblo*'s exact location](#) as it floated in the dark-watered harbor in Changjahan Bay. Before completing his mission but after taking the necessary photographs, Jack Weeks experienced aircraft problems. When he got back to base, [he told his fellow pilots about the problems](#) he'd had on the flight but not about his photographic success; detailed information regarding the USS *Pueblo* was so highly classified, [very few individuals had any idea](#) that Weeks's mission had delivered photographs that had prevented war with North Korea.

"The [Oxcart] quickly located the captured *Pueblo* at anchor in Wonson harbor," President Johnson's national security adviser Walt Rostow revealed in 1994. "[So we had to abandon any plans to hit them with airpower](#). All that would accomplish would be to kill a lot of people including our own. But the [Oxcart's] photo take provided proof that our ship and our men were being held. The Koreans couldn't lie about that." The Pentagon's secret war plan against North Korea was called off. Instead, negotiations for the sailors' return began. But the ever-suspicious administration, now deeply embroiled in political fallout from the Tet Offensive, worried the *Pueblo* incident could very well be another Communist double cross. What if North Korea was secretly mobilizing its troops for war? Three and a half weeks later, on February 19, 1968, Frank [Murray was assigned to fly Oxcart's second mission over North Korea](#). Murray's photographs indicated that North Korea's army was still not mobilizing for battle. But by then, the *Pueblo* was on its way to Pyongyang, where it remains today—the only American naval vessel held in captivity by a foreign power. Captain Bucher and his men were prisoners of North Korea for eleven months, tortured, put through mock executions, and made to confess espionage before finally being released. In 2008, [a U.S. federal judge determined](#) that North Korea should pay sixty-five million dollars in damages to several of the *Pueblo*'s crew, but North Korea has yet to respond.

A year had passed since Black Shield began. It was springtime on Kadena again. On days off Ken Collins and fellow pilot Jack Weeks would slip into their canvas shoes and swimming trunks and head out to the beach. The drive into the countryside was beautiful and relaxing, with its tropical bamboo forests and small ponds. Camellias and Japanese apricot trees were in bloom. [There were beautiful sunsets to watch](#) over the East China Sea. "We had a different rapport, Jack and I, than the other pilots, I think. We did more than just get along. Jack Weeks and I became friends," Collins says.

When the two pilots weren't at the beach, Collins and Weeks would take the 1129th Special Activities Squadron staff car, "an old clunker of a station wagon," and head into Kozu, a sprawling little city of cement-block high-rises and crooked telephone poles. "Jack

and I had kids who were about the same age. We'd head into Kozu and buy these little plastic airplanes and remote-control tank models which we intended to bring home to our kids. But sometimes we'd get bored back in Morgan Manor and open up the toy packages and end up making the little tank models for ourselves," Collins recalls. "We had a lot of fun doing that." Life's simple pleasures during the Vietnam War.

The Agency's six Oxcart pilots—Mele Vojvodich Jr., Jack W. Weeks, J. "Frank" Murray, Ronald J. "Jack" Layton, Dennis B. Sullivan, and Kenneth B. Collins—had [collectively flown twenty-nine missions](#): twenty-four over North Vietnam, three over North Korea, and two over Cambodia and Laos. Countless surface-to-air missile sites had been located and destroyed as a result. Despite Pentagon fears, the photographs never located a single surface-to-surface missile able to reach American forces on the ground. "We also flew overhead during Air Force bombing raids, [using our jamming systems on the bird](#) to mess with the Communists' antiaircraft systems," Murray recalls. But for all the success of the CIA's Oxcart program, the reality was that the Air Force's Blackbird, the SR-71, was finally ready to deploy. The CIA could no longer compete with the Pentagon for Mach 3 missions, and the Oxcart program reached its inevitable end. "Even if you didn't have a 'need-to-know,' it was obvious when the SR-71 Blackbirds started showing up," Collins recalls. [The Blackbirds were arriving on Kadena to take Oxcart's place](#). The Air Force version of the Oxcart, with its two seats and reconnaissance/strike modifications, had officially won the battle between the CIA and the Air Force over anything with wings.

Back in Washington, behind closed doors, Secretary of Defense Robert McNamara told President Johnson he no longer believed the war in Vietnam could be won. This did not sit well with the president, and in February of 1968, Robert McNamara stepped down. In his place came a new secretary of defense named Clark Clifford who "[reaffirmed the original decision to end the A-12 program](#) and mothball the aircraft." The men from the 1129th began packing up to head home to Area 51. The missions were over. The drawdown phase had begun.

Jack Weeks and Denny Sullivan were each given the assignment of flying an A-12 Oxcart back to Area 51; Collins was scheduled to do final engine tests from Kadena. But during the last weeks of the program, [Jack Weeks became ill](#), so Collins stepped in, completing back-to-back rotations in Weeks's place. With the schedule change, it would now be Collins and Sullivan who would fly the A-12s home, with Weeks doing the final engine check, on June 4, 1968, and not Collins, as originally planned.

Collins and Sullivan returned to Area 51 to keep up on proficiency flying in preparation for their final transcontinental flights. When it was time to return to Kadena, they flew from Groom Lake to Burbank in a Lockheed propeller plane and then took a commercial flight from the West Coast all the way to Tokyo. "That night, we had dinner in the Tokyo Hilton," Collins remembers. "We finished up dinner and were heading back up to the rooms when we heard on the radio that Bobby Kennedy had been assassinated in Los Angeles." Stunned, Collins went downstairs to buy a newspaper, the English-language version of the *Tokyo Times*. "There, in the lower right-hand corner of the paper, a small article caught my eye. The headline read something like 'High-Altitude Crash of a U.S. Air Force Airplane.'

Well, that was enough to get my attention. I had a terrible feeling I knew what 'high-altitude' meant."

The following day, Collins and Sullivan flew to the island of Kadena. An Agency driver picked them up at the airport. As soon as the door shut and the men were alone, the driver turned around and said solemnly, "We lost an airplane."

"We lost a pilot," Collins said.

It was former U-2 pilot Tony Bevacqua who was assigned to fly the search mission for Jack Weeks and his missing airplane. [After Bevacqua had left Groom Lake](#), in 1957, he'd spent the next eight years flying dangerous U-2 reconnaissance missions and atomic sampling missions all over the world, from Alaska to Argentina. During the Vietnam War, Bevacqua flew SR-71 reconnaissance missions over Hanoi. (On one [mission, on July 26, 1968](#), the photographs taken from the camera on his Blackbird show two SA-2 missiles being fired up at him.) But no single mission would stay with him into old age like the mission he was asked to fly on June 5, 1968, looking for Jack Weeks.

Bevacqua had arrived on Kadena the month before, having been selected to fly the Air Force version of the Oxcart, the SR-71. "All I had been told that day was that someone was missing," Bevacqua remembers. "I didn't have a need to know more. But I think I knew that the pilot was CIA." The downed pilot, he learned, might be floating somewhere in the South China Sea, approximately 520 miles east of the Philippines and 625 miles south of Okinawa. "As I set out, my heart was pumped up and I was thinking, Maybe I will find this guy. I remember anticipation. Hopeful anticipation of maybe seeing a little yellow life raft floating somewhere in that giant sea." Instead, Bevacqua saw nothing but hundreds of miles of open water. "It was like looking for a drop of water in the ocean," Bevacqua remembers. The day after the mission, Bevacqua went to the photo interpreters to ask if they'd found anything on the film. "They said, 'No, sorry. Not a thing.' And that was the end of that," Bevacqua explains.

Jack Weeks was gone. Vanished into the sea. Neither his body nor any part of the airplane was ever recovered. "Fate is a hunter," Collins muses, recalling the destiny of his friend Jack Weeks. "I was supposed to be flying that aircraft that day but Jack got sick and we switched in the rotation. Jack Weeks went down. I'm still here."

[The 1129th Special Activities Squadron had reached its end. The CIA held a special secret ceremony at Area 51](#) for the remaining Oxcart pilots and their wives. Some of the pilots had their pictures taken with the aircraft but did not receive copies for their scrapbooks or walls. "The pictures went into a vault," says Colonel Slater. "We were told we could have copies of them when, or if, the project got declassified." Roger Andersen recalls how quickly the operation rolled up. "By that time, in 1968, there were a lot of other operations going on at Area 51, none of which I had a need-to-know." Andersen had the distinction of flying the last Project Oxcart support plane, a T-33, back to Edwards Air Force Base. "Flying out of Area 51, I knew I'd miss it up there," Andersen says. "Even after all these years, and having lived all over the world, I can say that Area 51 is unlike anywhere else in the world." For certain, there would be no more barrel rolls with Colonel Slater over Groom Lake.

[The men moved on.](#) If you are career Air Force or CIA, you go where you are

assigned. Ken Collins was recruited by the Air Force into the SR-71 program. Because the A-12 program was classified, no one in the SR-71 program had any idea Collins had already put in hundreds of hours flying in the Mach 3 airplane. "It left many in the SR-71 program confused. It surprised many people when it appeared I already knew how to fly the aircraft that was supposedly just built. They didn't have a need-to-know what I had spent the last six years of my life doing. They didn't learn for decades," not until the Oxcart program was declassified, in 2007.

Frank Murray volunteered to fight on the ground, or at least low to the ground, in Vietnam. "During Black Shield, no one had any idea where I'd been. Quite a few people thought maybe I'd dodged the war. I decided to go back in and fly airplanes in combat in Vietnam." In November of 1970, Murray was sent to the Nakhon Phanom Air Base on the Mekong River across from Laos, where he volunteered to fly the A-1 Skyraider—a propeller-driven, single-seat airplane that was an anachronism in the jet age. "It flew about a hundred and sixty-five miles per hour at cruise," says Murray. "I went from flying the fastest airplane in the world to the slowest one. The Oxcart taxied faster than the A-1 flew." Because the Skyraider flew so slow, it was one of the easiest targets for the Vietcong. One in four Skyraiders sent on rescue missions was shot down. "We got shot at often but the Skyraider had armaments and I shot back." In his one-year tour of duty, Murray, the squadron commander, flew sixty-four combat missions. The Skyraider's most famous role was as the escort for the helicopters sent in to rescue wounded soldiers from the battlefield. "Our mission was to support the Jolly Green Giants. We pulled quite a few wounded Green Berets out of the battlefield that year."

Colonel Slater was assigned to the position of vice commander of the Twentieth Tactical Fighter Wing at the Wethersfield Air Force Base in England. By all accounts, he was well on the way to becoming a general in the U.S. Air Force. Then tragedy struck. Colonel Slater's eldest daughter, Stacy, was in Sun Valley, Idaho, on her honeymoon when the private plane she was flying in with her husband struck a mountain peak and crashed. Stranded on the side of a frozen mountain for twenty-four hours, Stacy Slater Bernhardt was paralyzed from the waist down. The recovery process was going to be long and painful, and the outcome was entirely unknown. "My wife, Barbara, and I needed to be with our daughter, with our family, so I requested to be transferred back to the United States," Colonel Slater says. For Slater, a career military man, the decision was simple. "Love of country, love of family."

Back in America, and after many months, his daughter recovered with near-miraculous results (she learned to walk with crutches). Colonel Slater was assigned to Edwards Air Force Base, where he began flying the Air Force's attack version of the Oxcart, the YF-12, which comes equipped to carry two 250-kiloton nuclear bombs. "I loved it," Slater says, always the optimist. "I enjoyed working for the CIA, but no matter how old I get, I will always be a fighter pilot at heart."

The MiGs of Area 51

To engineer something is to apply scientific and technical know-how to create an entity from parts. To reverse engineer something is to take another manufacturer's or scientist's product apart with the specific purpose of learning how it was constructed or composed. The concept of reverse engineering is uniquely woven into Area 51 legend and lore, with conspiracy theorists claiming Area 51 engineers are reverse engineering alien spacecraft inside the secret base. Historically, reverse engineering has played an important role at Area 51, as exemplified in formerly classified programs, including one from the late 1960s and 1970s, to reverse engineer Russian MiGs.

It began one scorching-hot morning in August of 1966 when an [Iraqi Air Force colonel named Munir Redfa](#) climbed into his MiG-21 fighter jet at an air base in southern Iraq and headed toward Baghdad. Redfa then made a sudden turn to the west and began racing toward Jordan. Iraqi ground control notified Redfa that he was off course.

["Turn back immediately."](#) he was told. Instead, Redfa began flying in a zigzag pattern. Recognizing this as an evasive maneuver, an Iraqi air force commander told Colonel Redfa if he didn't turn back at once he would be shot down. Defying orders, Redfa switched off his radio and began flying low to the ground. To avoid radar lock, in some places he flew as low as seven hundred and fifty feet. Once he was at altitude, [Redfa flew over Turkey](#), then toward the Mediterranean. But his final destination was the enemy state of Israel. There, one million U.S. dollars was waiting for him in a bank account in Tel Aviv.

Six hundred miles to the west, the head of the Israeli air force, Major General Mordechai Hod, waited anxiously for Munir Redfa's MiG to appear as a blip on his own radar screen. When it finally appeared, General Hod scrambled a group of delta-wing Mirage fighters to escort Redfa to a secret base in the Negev Desert. It was a groundbreaking event. Israel was now the first democratic nation to have in its possession a Russian-made MiG-21, the top gun fighter not just in Russia and its Communist proxies but throughout the Arab world.

The plan had been years in the making. Four years, to be exact, dating back to 1963, when Meir Amit first became head of the Mossad. [Amit sat down with the Israeli air force](#) and asked them what they would consider the single greatest foreign-intelligence contribution to national security. The answer was short, simple, and unanimous: bring us an MiG. The enemy air forces of Syria, Egypt, Jordan, and Iraq all flew Russian MiGs. Before Redfa's defection, the Mossad had tried twice, unsuccessfully, to acquire the airplane. In one case, an Egyptian-born Armenian intelligence agent known as John Thomas was caught in the act of espionage. His punishment was death; he and several coconspirators were hanged in an Egyptian public square.

For years, Mossad searched for a possible candidate for defection. Finally, in early 1966, they found a man who fit the profile in Munir Redfa, a Syrian Christian who had previously expressed feelings of persecution as a religious minority in a squadron of Muslims. Mossad dispatched a beautiful female intelligence agent to Baghdad on a mission. The agent worked the romance angle first, luring Redfa to Paris with the promise of sex. There, she told Redfa the truth about what she was after. In return for an Iraqi air force MiG, Redfa would be paid a million dollars and given a new identity and a safe haven for himself and his family. Redfa agreed.

With an MiG now in their possession, the Israelis set to work understanding the strengths and weaknesses of the aircraft in flight. If it ever came to war, the Israelis would be uniquely prepared for air combat. Which is exactly what happened in June of 1967. What Israel learned from Munir Redfa's MiG ultimately allowed them to overpower the combined air forces of Syria, Egypt, and Jordan during the Six-Day War.

Back in Washington, CIA chief Richard Helms was briefed on Redfa's story by [James Jesus Angleton](#), the man running the CIA station in Tel Aviv. Angleton was a Harvard- and Yale-educated intelligence officer who had been in the espionage business for twenty-five years. Angleton, who died in 1987, remains one of the [Agency's most enigmatic and bellicose spies](#). He is famous within the Agency for many things, among them his idea that the Soviet propaganda machine worked 24-7 to create an ever-widening ["wilderness of mirrors."](#) This wilderness, Angleton said, was the product of a myriad of KGB deceptions and stratagems that would one day ensnare, confuse, and overpower the West. Angleton believed that the Soviets could manipulate the CIA into believing false information was true and true information was false. The CIA's inability to discern the truth inside a forest of Soviet disinformation would be America's downfall, Angleton said.

James Jesus Angleton allegedly had as many enemies inside the Agency as inside the KGB, but Richard Helms trusted him. Helms and Angleton had known each other since World War II, [when they worked in the OSS counterintelligence unit, X-2](#). In the 1960s, in addition to acting as the liaison between the CIA and the FBI, Angleton controlled the Israeli "account," which meant he provided Helms with almost everything Helms knew about Israel.

During the course of negotiating the deal to get the MiG, the details of which remain classified, Angleton acquired additional information regarding Israel that he provided to Helms, and that Helms provided to the president. This included seemingly prophetic information about the Six-Day War before the Six-Day War began. The Israelis had been telling the State Department that they were in great danger from their Middle East neighbors when really, Helms explained to the president, Israel had the tactical advantage. Israel was playing the weak card in the hope of winning American military support. Helms also said that he'd recently met with a senior Israeli official whose visit he saw as "a clear portent that war might come at any time." Coupled with Angleton's assessment, Helms said this meant most likely in a matter of days. When Israel launched an attack three days later, [Helms's status with President Johnson](#) went through the roof. "The subsequent accuracy of this prediction established Helms's reputation in the Johnson White House," wrote a CIA historian.

The story of Redfa's defection made international headlines when it happened, in 1966. [But what didn't make the news](#) was what happened once Israel finished with the MiG: the Soviet-made fighter was shipped to Area 51. Colonel Slater, who was commander of Area 51 at the time, remembers how "it arrived in the middle of the night, hidden inside a C-130 [cargo plane], hand-delivered by Israeli intelligence agents." What had been a major coup for Israel was now an equally huge break for the United States. To the Israelis, the MiG was the most dangerous fighter in the Arab world. To the Americans, this was the deadly little aircraft that had been shooting down so many American fighter pilots over Vietnam. The Russians had been supplying the North Vietnamese with MiG-21 aircraft and MiG pilot training as well. Now, with an MiG at Area 51, Agency engineers once again had high-value foreign technology in their hands. "We could finally learn how to beat the MiG in air-to-air combat," Colonel Slater explains.

The path to Area 51 is different for everyone. For T. D. Barnes it began in 1962 when the CIA wanted him to go to Vietnam to be an "adviser" there. Barnes was just back from Bamberg, Germany, where he'd been deployed during the Berlin Wall crisis, tasked with running Hawk missile sites along the border with Czechoslovakia. It had been two years since he'd worked on the CIA's Project Palladium out of Fort Bliss.

"I said I'd go work for the Agency. But I had this dream of becoming an Army officer, which meant going through officer training school first. The Agency and the Army agreed and sent me to officer school." There, during survival training Barnes ripped open his knees and got a rare blood disease. "It just about nearly killed me. I was never going to do combat. I'm lucky I didn't die," says Barnes. He recovered but because of the blood disability, he couldn't go to Vietnam for the CIA. This also meant that after ten years of service, his military career was over. Barnes and his wife, Doris, moved home to Oklahoma and bought a house there with a yard for their two little girls, and one day when [Doris was reading the classified](#) section of the local newspaper, she found an advertisement of interest. "A contractor called Unitech was looking for telemetry and radar specialists that could work on a project involving space," Barnes recalls.

Barnes figured Unitech was harvesting résumés. "Getting a list of people who might be qualified to work on a highly specialized kind of a project if a contract were to materialize with, say, NASA down the road." Barnes told Doris it wasn't worth the phone call. Doris said to call anyway. "Within two days our house was on the market, we were packed up, and we were traveling to this little one-horse town in the Mojave Desert called Beatty." Beatty, Nevada. Population somewhere around 426, depending on who wants to know.

In 1964, [Beatty, Nevada, was one strange town](#). Situated 120 miles northwest of Las Vegas, it lay on a strip of land between Death Valley and Nevada's atomic bomb range. Beatty had one sheriff—he was eighty years old, was a great shot with a rifle, and was missing most of his teeth. Beatty also had nine gas stations, eleven churches, an airstrip, and a whorehouse called the Vicky Star Ranch. Behind the facade, Beatty housed a collection of three- and four-letter federal agencies, many of which were working different angles on various overt and covert operations there. "Nobody knew what anybody else in Beatty was really doing there and since you didn't have a need-to-know you didn't ask," recalls Barnes. Forty-five years later he still hadn't "figured out what the service stations or

the churches were a cover for."

How Beatty worked and who was running whom left much to the imagination. "When Doris and I drove into town that first day," Barnes recalls, "we pulled up to the service station to get some gas. One of the town characters, a semi-homeless person everyone called Panamint Annie, walked up to us and leaned against our car. She looked at me—it was summer—and she said, 'Well, it's hotter than Hell's hubs, now isn't it, Barnes?' I thought, How the hell does she know my last name?" Technically, Barnes had been recruited by Unitech. It turned out they had a contract with the National Aeronautics and Space Administration, or NASA, after all. "But there were lots of other agencies in Beatty who were working in the dark," Barnes says. "Unitech was the sign on the door."

America's space agency set up shop in Beatty in the mid-1960s in order to develop programs that would help get man to the moon. But before NASA landed on Earth's nearest celestial body, they had to conquer space, and to do so, they needed help from the U.S. Air Force. And before NASA conquered space, they had to get to the edge of space, which was why Barnes was in Beatty. He was hired to work on NASA's X-15 rocket plane, a prototype research vehicle that looked and acted more like a missile with wings than an airplane. Each day, Barnes got picked up for work by a NASA employee named Bill Houck, who drove a federal van around town and made a total of ten stops to retrieve all the members of the secret team. They would drive out to the edge of town and begin the short trek to the top of a chaparral-covered mountain where one hangar that was roughly the size of a tennis court, three trailers, and a number of radar dishes made up the NASA high-range tracking station at Beatty. Day after day, the ten-man crew of electronics and radar wizards manned state-of-the-art electronic systems, tracking the X-15 as it raced across the skies above the Mojave, from the Dryden Flight Research Center in California up toward the edge of space. Once, the airplane was forced to make an emergency landing on a dry lake bed not far from Beatty. There was a rule prohibiting transport trucks to haul cargo through Death Valley after dark on weekends, which meant the X-15 rocket had to spend the night in Barnes's driveway. His daughters, ages five and eight, spent the weekend running circles around the James Bond-looking rocket ship parked out front cheering ["Daddy's spaceship!"](#) No one else in Beatty said a thing.

To get into the air, the X-15 was jettisoned off a B-52 mother ship, after which its rocket engine would launch it into the atmosphere like a missile until it reached the edge of space. Touching the tip of space, the X-15 would then turn around and "fly" home, getting up to speeds of Mach 6. That kind of speed made for an incredibly bumpy ride. In a matter of months, Barnes became a hypersonic-flight-support expert. He monitored many things, including telemetry, and was always amazed watching how each of the pilots responded differently to physical stress. "We knew more about what was going on with the pilots' bodies than the pilots knew themselves. From Beatty, we monitored everything. Their heart rates, their pulse, and also everything going on with the pilot and the plane." In case of an accident, NASA had emergency crews set up across California, Nevada, and Utah on various dry lake beds [where the X-15 could land if need be](#). One of those lake beds was Groom Lake. Barnes says, "From watching my radars, I knew something was going on over there at Groom. I could see things on my radar I wasn't supposed to see.

One of those 'things' went really, really fast. Later, when I was briefed on Oxcart, I figured out what I had been watching. But at the time, I didn't have a need-to-know so I didn't say anything about what I saw at Groom Lake and nobody asked."

The X-15 was an exciting and fast-paced project to work on, with groundbreaking missions happening twice a week. As it was with so many of the early projects involving high-speed and high-altitude flight, many different agencies were involved in the program, not just NASA. The Air Force funded a large part of the program. The CIA didn't care about space travel but they were very interested in the ram-jet technology on the X-15, something they had wanted to use on their own D-21 drone. "Everyone monitored each other, technology-wise," Barnes says. To keep the various parties in the loop, there was a designated radio network set up for everyone involved in the project. "There were people from Vandenberg Air Force Base, White Sands Missile Range, Dryden, and CIA monitoring what was going on all day long."

Even though he was only twenty-seven years old, Barnes was the most senior radar specialist in Beatty. And almost immediately he noticed there seemed to be a major problem with the radar. "We tracked the X-15 with radar stations at Edwards, in California, and at Ely, in Nevada. My radar in Beatty was fine but I noticed there was a problem at Edwards and Ely. When the X-15 was parked on the tarmac at either place, the radars there read that it was at an altitude of two thousand feet instead of being on the ground."

Barnes got on the radio channel and told mission control at the Dryden Flight Research Center about the problem. Dryden blamed it on the radar at Beatty, even though Barnes's radar agreed with the airplane's. Over the radio network, Barnes argued his point. The site manager in Beatty was horrified that Barnes dared to challenge his superiors and shot Barnes a dirty look. *Back down*, he mouthed silently. Barnes complied. But just a few weeks later, when he learned that the X-15 was going through a fitting and there weren't going to be any flights for three weeks, Barnes seized the moment. "Now would be a good time to fix your radar problem," Barnes said into the radio network. There were dozens of senior officials listening in. "There was silence on the channel," Barnes remembers. "My site manager whirled around on his chair and glared at me. 'You're on your own, Barnes,' he said. Another one of the other guys, Bill Houck, leaned over to my station, gave me a big old grin and a thumbs-up. But Dryden still wouldn't listen to me. They said the problem was inherent to the radar. That it couldn't be fixed."

By now, Barnes had gotten friendly with the X-15 pilots. Even though they had never met in person, a great rapport had developed between them; understandable, given how much time they spent communicating on headset during flights. Barnes cared about the pilots' safety more than he cared about what his site manager perceived to be insubordination on his part. So Barnes told Dryden exactly what he believed was true. "I've been in radar long enough to know there's no such thing as an inherent problem in radar," Barnes said. "I agree with the airplane. If you don't fix your radar, you're gonna kill one of the pilots one of these days."

There was a deathly silence on the network. Back at Dryden, the communication had been overheard by the pilots who were in the pilots' lounge. X-15 pilot "Joe Walker got on a headset and said, 'Effective immediately, there will be no X-15 flights until the radar

problem is fixed.'" Now Dryden had no choice but to get on it. First, they flew up to the Beatty tracking station in a T-33, where they flew calibration flights to compare radar data with the airplane's altimeter. At Ely, they did the same thing. Barnes was right. The radar at Beatty was correct. Though both agreed with their data, the Dryden Flight Research Center and the Ely tracking station were off by two thousand feet. The radars were torn down and reassembled, to no avail. It was finally discovered that they were vintage radars, left over from World War II, and they had never been retrofitted with the field modification the way the radar at Beatty had. Unitech got a huge Christmas bonus, and no one got killed.

Of major significance for Barnes was that somewhere off in the black operations either a man named John Grace had been listening as the whole scenario went down. John Grace worked for the CIA, and Barnes's name rang a bell. Grace asked his staff to look into this Barnes character, the man whose unique confidence in radar had wound up saving the day. Grace wanted to get Barnes hired for a project that would be coming to Groom Lake—something that even Barnes had been in the dark on back then.

Working at Beatty meant running multiple jobs, and there was a second aircraft Barnes was in charge of tracking—the XB-70. This experimental program was all that remained of General LeMay's once-beloved B-70 bomber now that it had been canceled by Congress, despite four billion dollars invested. The *X* in front of *B-70* indicated that the bomber was now an experimental test bed for supersonic transport. It was a behemoth of an airplane, the fastest-flying six-engined aircraft in the world. On June 8, 1966, the mission for the day was a photo op with the XB-70 as the centerpiece. An F-4, an F-5, a T-38, and an F-104 would fly in formation alongside. Barnes was in charge of monitoring telemetry, radar, and communications from the Beatty tracking station. "General Electrics had built the engines on all six airplanes flying that day," Barnes says. "They wanted a photograph of all their aircraft flying in a tight formation for the cover of their shareholders' meeting manual that year."

It was a clear day, with very little natural turbulence in the air. The six aircraft took off from Dryden and headed west. About thirty minutes later, the pilots began getting into formation over the Mojave Desert. Barnes was monitoring data and listening on headphones. Using his personal Fischer recording system, Barnes was also taping the pilot transmissions. For this particular photo op, the X-15 pilot, Joe Walker, whom Barnes had gotten to know well, was flying in the F-104. Walker was on the right wing of the aircraft and was trying to hold his position when turbulence by the XB-70's six engines made him uncomfortable. "Walker came on the radio and spoke very clearly," Barnes recalls. "He said, 'I'm opposing this mission. It is too turbulent and it has no scientific value.'"

Only a few seconds later, [a catastrophic midair collision occurred](#). "We heard the pilots screaming, 'Midair! Midair! And I realized at first the XB-70 didn't know it had been hit,'" Barnes remembers. Joe Walker's F-104 had slammed into the much larger airplane, caught fire, and exploded. On the XB-70, both vertical stabilizers had been shorn off, and the airplane began to crash. Continuing to pick up speed, the XB-70 whirled uncontrollably into a flat spin. As it headed toward the ground, parts of the aircraft tore loose. One of the

XB-70 pilots, Al White, ejected. The other, Major Carl Cross, was trapped inside the airplane as it slammed into the desert floor. There, just a few miles from Barstow, California, it exploded into flames.

"It was so damn senseless," Barnes says. "A damn photograph." The worst was yet to come. "A lot of people blamed Joe Walker. Easy, because he was dead. There was, of course, the tape of him saying he was opposing the mission. That the vortex on the damn XB-70 was sucking him in. Bill Houck, the NASA monitor at our station, asked me to give him the tape recording to send to Dryden. Once NASA got a hold of it," Barnes says, "someone there quietly disposed of it."

The XB-70 tragedy more or less closed down the program, and the X-15 rocket plane program was finishing up as well. For Barnes, life in Beatty was nearing an end, but one afternoon, Barnes received a phone call. A man identifying himself as John Grace wanted to know if he'd like to come work on an "interesting project" not far away. "Grace said it would be a commute from Las Vegas," Barnes says. Grace told Barnes he would have to get a top secret clearance first. Whatever it was, it sounded exciting. Barnes told Grace, "Sign me up." T. D. Barnes was officially on his way to Groom Lake.

In March of 1968, his top secret clearance finally in place, Barnes learned his new employer was going to be EG&G. He was instructed by a "handler" to arrive at a remote, unmarked hangar at McCarran Airport for his first day at work. There, Barnes was met by a man who shook his hand and escorted him into a small Constellation airplane. "They didn't say anything to me about where we were going and I knew enough about black operations not to ask. It was a nice, quiet ride in the airplane. Just before we landed at Area 51, I heard the pilot say to the copilot, 'They've got the doughnut out.' Then the pilots quickly closed all the curtains on the airplane so when we landed I couldn't see a thing. I wondered what the doughnut was. I didn't ask. I was taken to the EG&G Special Projects building and introduced to our group. The boss said, 'What's your first name?' I said, 'T.D.' He said, 'Not anymore. You're Thunder out here.'" Later that first day, Barnes was taken inside one of the hangars at Area 51. "They opened the door. There sat a Russian MiG. They said, 'This here's the doughnut.' I got a chuckle about that. The pilots who'd brought me to the area had no idea that the whole reason I'd been brought in was because of the doughnut."

Munir Redfa's MiG had been nicknamed the doughnut because the jet fighter's nose had a round opening in it, like a doughnut's. It was the first advanced Soviet fighter jet ever to set its wheels down on U.S. soil. Colonel Slater, overseeing Black Shield in Kadena at the time, remembers getting a call in the middle of the night from one of his staff, Jim Simon. "Simon called me up all excited and said, 'Slater, you are not going to believe this!' He told me about the MiG. How it landed at [Area] 51 in the middle of the night, hidden inside a cargo plane. How it was accompanied by someone from a foreign government. Simon couldn't get over it and I couldn't wait to see it," Slater remembers. Oxcart pilot Frank Murray remembers the excitement of seeing it as well. During Operation Black Shield Murray was on rotation between Area 51 and Kadena when he was taken into the secret hangar to have a look at the MiG. "It was a tiny little sucker, considering how deadly it was," Murray says. "We couldn't believe we had a captured one

up there at the Ranch."

T. D. Barnes and the EG&G Special Projects Group at Area 51 got to work [reverse engineering Colonel Redfa's MiG](#)—taking it apart and putting it back together again. All the engineers knew that this was the best way to really understand how something had been built. The EG&G Special Projects Group appeared to have advance expertise in this technical process of reverse engineering aircraft. At the time, no one knew why, and Barnes, new to the EG&G engineering team, knew better than to ask. He was excited to get to work. "We broke the MiG down into each of its individual pieces. Pieces of the cockpit, the gyros, oscilloscope, fuel flow meter, radio... everything. Then we put it back together. The MiG didn't have computers or fancy navigation equipment." Still, Barnes and his crew were stumped. How was it that this Soviet plane was beating the supposedly more capable U.S. fighters in air-to-air engagements? No one could explain why. So a second program was conceived, the MiG's Have Doughnut tactical phase. During the Have Doughnut, the MiG would begin flying tactical missions against U.S. airplanes in the skies over Groom Lake. The Air Force said it wasn't interested but the Navy leaped at the chance.

"Breaking it down was the first step in understanding the aircraft. But it was by sending the MiG flying that we really figured out how it maneuvered so damn fast," Barnes says. [Test pilots flew a total of 102 MiG missions](#) over Groom Lake. Mock air battles between the MiG and American fighter jets were a daily event for a period of six weeks during the spring of 1968. The program (not including its Area 51 locale) was declassified by the U.S. Air Force Foreign Technology Division in October of 1997 and by the Defense Intelligence Agency in March of 2000. "We learned that you had to sneak right up on it and shoot it down before it had a chance to maneuver. That was the key. Get it on the first chance you get. There were no second chances with a MiG," Barnes explains. Constant flying takes a toll on any aircraft, but with a captured enemy airplane this proved especially challenging. "Since no spare parts were available, ground crews had to reverse engineer the components and make new ones from raw materials," Barnes says. "But when both phases were over, the technical and the tactical ones, we'd unlocked the secrets of the MiG."

There were repercussions from the Soviets. "The fact that we had a MiG at Area 51 infuriated the Russians," explains Barnes. "They retaliated by sending more spy satellites overhead at Area 51, sometimes as often as every forty-five minutes." Up to this point, the Soviets had gotten used to monitoring the routine activity at the base, which consisted primarily of takeoffs and landings of the Oxcart and a few drones. But once the MiG showed up, the U.S. Air Force Foreign Technology Division appeared on the scene too, and with them came various models of Soviet-built radar systems captured in the Middle East. And once the Soviets discovered engineers at Groom Lake were testing these foreign radar systems, they again decided to monitor the situation more closely from overhead.

The newly acquired Soviet radar systems started cropping up around the western edges of the Groom dry lake bed and also around Slater Lake, which was about a mile northwest of the main hangars. Technical evaluation of the radar was quickly assigned to

Barnes. He requested a Nike missile system and was surprised at just how quickly his request was filled. "I think the CIA went and got a Nike missile system at my old stomping ground, Fort Bliss, just about the very next day," Barnes says. With radars scattered all over the range, including acquisition radar that rotated and searched for incoming targets, a geek like Barnes had a field day. "We used the Nike to track the MiGs and other airplanes to evaluate their ECM against X-band radar." What Barnes did not know was that these radar systems were being acquired for the upcoming radar cross-section analysis of an Air Force plane in the works. The Russians had no idea what the Air Force was dreaming up either, but they were duly angry about the captured radars that were now sitting in the hills overlooking Groom Lake.

"We were pinned down," says Barnes. For weeks on end, the Special Projects Group couldn't turn on a single radar system; the Russians were monitoring the area that intensely. Barnes and his group passed the time by playing mind games with the Soviets. They painted strange shapes on the tarmac, "funny-looking impossible aircraft," which they then heated up with portable heaters to confuse the Soviets who were shooting infrared satellite pictures of the work going on there. "We got a kick out of imagining what the Russians thought of our new airplanes," Barnes says. With all the time on their hands, Barnes and his group of twenty-three electronics specialists began dreaming up other ways to entertain themselves. They made up riddles. They placed bets. They played with mixed chemicals that made their tennis sneakers glow in the dark. They rewired the Special Projects motor pool car so it would give the first guy to drive it a series of low-voltage shocks. They rigged up a tall TV antenna on top of their living quarters, hoping to draw reception from Las Vegas. Instead, they tapped into an international channel broadcast out of Spain. "For many months, all we watched were bullfights in Madrid," Barnes recalls.

This was a group of highly trained specialists gathered to pioneer radar technology, so when they finally ran out of practical jokes and bullfights, their attention turned back to problem solving. They started to occupy themselves by examining minutiae on printouts from radar returns. In a serendipitous way, this led to a technological breakthrough at Groom Lake. The EG&G Special Projects Group figured out they could identify specific types of aircraft by the tiniest nuances in the patterns their radar signatures left on various radar systems. This was made possible by the group's unusual advantage of having two things at their disposal: several bands of radar, which allowed them to compare results, and an entire fleet of military aircraft, which were to be used in the tactical phase of the exploitation of the MiG.

What would normally have been a technical endeavor to determine electronic countermeasures against enemy aircraft became a major breakthrough in the further development of stealth technology. From studying the minutiae, Barnes and his fellow radar experts identified what the enemy could and could not see on their radars back home. This information would eventually be shared with Lockheed during radar testing at Area 51, as Lockheed further developed stealth. Technology was doing for humans what humans had forever been trying to do for themselves; to spy on the enemy means to learn as much about him as he knows about himself. That was the technical breakthrough.

There was a tactical breakthrough as well. The ultrasecret MiG program at Area 51 [gave birth to the Top Gun fighter-pilot school](#), a fact that would remain secret for decades. Officially called the United States Navy Fighter Weapons School, the program was established a year after the first MiG arrived, in March of 1969, and based out of Miramar, California. Instructor pilots who had fought mock air battles over Groom Lake against Munir Redfa's MiG began training Navy pilots for sorties against Russian MiGs over Vietnam. When these Top Gun-trained Navy pilots resumed flying in Southeast Asia, the results were radically different than the deadly nine-to-one ratio from before. [The scales had tipped](#). Now, American pilots would begin shooting down North Vietnamese pilots at a ratio of thirteen to one. The captured Soviet-made MiG-21 Fishbed proved to be an aerial warfare coup for the United States. And what followed was a quid pro quo. To thank the Israelis for supplying the United States with the most prized and unknowable aircraft in the arsenal of its archnemesis, America began to supply Israel with jet fighters to assist Israel in keeping its rivals at bay.

Meltdown

The idea behind a facility like Area 51 is that dangerous top secret tests can be conducted there without much scrutiny or oversight. To this end, there is no shortage of death woven into the uncensored history of Area 51. One of the most dangerous tests ever performed there was Project 57, the dirty bomb test that took place five miles northwest of Groom Lake, in a subparcel called Area 13. And yet what might have been the one defensible, positive outcome in this otherwise shockingly outrageous test—namely, lessons gleaned from its cleanup—was ignored until it was too late.

Unlike the spy plane projects at Groom Lake, where operations tend to have clear-cut beginnings and ceremonious endings, Project 57 was abandoned midstream. If the point of setting off a dirty bomb in secret was [to see what would happen](#) if an airplane carrying a nuclear bomb crashed into the earth near where people lived, it follows that serious efforts would then be undertaken by the Atomic Energy Commission to learn how to clean up such a nightmare scenario after the catastrophe occurs. No such efforts were initially made.

Instead, about a year after setting off the dirty bomb, the Atomic Energy Commission put a barbed-wire fence around the Area 51 subparcel, marked it with HAZARD/DO NOT ENTER/NUCLEAR MATERIAL signs, and moved on to the next weapons test. The bustling CIA facility five miles downwind would be relatively safe, the nuclear scientists and the weapons planners surmised. Alpha particles are heavy and would rest on the topsoil after the original dust cloud settled down. Furthermore, almost no one knew about the supersecret project, certainly not the public, so who would protest? The closest inhabitants were the rank and file at the CIA's Groom Lake facility next door, and they also knew nothing of Project 57. The men there followed strict need-to-know protocols, and as far as the commission was concerned, all anyone at Area 51 needed to know was to not venture near the barbed-wire fence marking off Area 13.

And yet the information gleaned from a cleanup effort would have been terribly useful, as was revealed eight years and eight months after Project 57 unfurled. On the morning of January 17, 1966, a real-life dirty bomb crisis occurred over Palomares, Spain. A Strategic Air Command [bomber flying with four armed hydrogen bombs](#)—with yields between 70 kilotons and 1.45 megatons—collided midair with a refueling tanker over the Spanish countryside.

On the morning of the accident, an Air Force pilot and his six-man crew were participating in an exercise that was part of Operation Chrome Dome, something that had begun in the late 1950s as part of Strategic Air Command. In a show of force inherent to the military doctrine of the day—something called mutual assured destruction, or MAD—

airplanes regularly circled Earth carrying thermonuclear bombs. The idea behind MAD was that if the Soviet Union were to make a sneak attack on America, [SAC bombers would already be airborne](#) to strike back at Moscow with nuclear weapons of their own, thereby assuring the mutual destruction of both sides.

That morning, the bomber lined up with the tanker and had just begun refueling when, in the words of pilot Larry Messinger, “[all of a sudden, all hell](#) seemed to break loose” and the two aircraft collided. There was a massive explosion and the men in the fuel tanker were instantly incinerated. Somehow Messinger, his copilot, the instructor pilot, and the navigator managed to eject from the airplane carrying the bombs. Their parachutes deployed, and the men floated down, landing in the sea. The four nuclear bombs—individually powerful enough to destroy Manhattan—also had parachutes, two of which did not deploy. One parachuted bomb landed gently in a dry riverbed and was later recovered relatively intact. But when the two bombs without parachutes hit the earth, their explosive charges detonated, breaking open the nuclear cores. Nuclear material was released at Palomares in the form of [aerosolized plutonium](#), which then spread out across 650 acres of Spanish farmland—consistent with dispersal patterns from the Project 57 dirty bomb test. The fourth bomb landed in the sea and became lost. Palomares was then a small fishing village and farming community located on the Mediterranean Sea. As fortune would have it, January 17 was the Festival of Saint Anthony, the patron saint of Palomares, which meant most people in the village were at church that day and not out working in the fields.

Five thousand miles away, in Washington, DC, [President Johnson learned](#) of the disaster over breakfast. He'd been sitting in his bedroom sipping tea and eating melon and chipped beef when a staffer from the White House Situation Room knocked, entered, and set down a copy of his daily security briefing. On the first page, the president read about the war in Vietnam. On the second page he learned about the Palomares incident. The daily brief said nothing about widespread plutonium dispersal or about the lost thermonuclear bomb. Only that the “16th Nuclear Disaster Team” had been dispatched to the area.” The “16th Nuclear Disaster Team” sounded official enough, but if fifteen nuclear disaster teams had preceded this one or existed concurrently, no record of any of them exists in the searchable Department of Energy archives. In reality, the group was ad hoc, meaning it was put together for the specific purpose of dealing with the Palomares incident. An [official nuclear disaster response team](#) did not exist in 1966 and would not be created for another nine years, until 1975, when retired Brigadier General Mahlon E. Gates, then the manager of the Nevada Test Site, put together the Nuclear Emergency Search Team, or NEST.

In 1966, the conditions in Palomares, Spain, were strikingly similar to the conditions at the Nevada Test Site in terms of geology. Both were dry, hilly landscapes with soil, sand, and wind shear as significant factors to deal with. But considering, with inconceivable lack of foresight, the Atomic Energy Commission had never attempted to clean up the dirty bomb that it had set off at Area 13 nine years before, the 16th Nuclear Disaster Team was, essentially, working in the dark.

Eight hundred individuals with no hands-on expertise were sent to Palomares [to assist in the cleanup efforts](#) there. The teams improvised. One group secured the contaminated

area and prepared the land to remove contaminated soil. A second group worked to locate the lost thermonuclear bomb, called a broken arrow in Defense Department terms. The group cleaning up the dispersed plutonium included "specialists and scientists" from the Los Alamos Laboratory, the Lawrence Radiation Laboratory, Sandia Laboratories, Raytheon, and EG&G. It was terribly ironic. The very same companies who had engineered the nuclear weapons and whose employees had wired, armed, and fired them were now the companies being paid to clean up the deadly mess. This was the military-industrial complex in full swing.

For the next three months, workers labored around the clock to decontaminate the site of deadly plutonium. By the time the cleanup was over, more than fourteen hundred tons of radioactive soil and plant life were excavated and shipped to the Savannah River plant in South Carolina for disposal. The majority of the plutonium dispersed on the ground was accounted for, but the Defense Nuclear Agency eventually conceded that the extent of the plutonium particles scattered by wind, carried as dust, and ingested by earthworms and excreted somewhere else "will never be known." As for the missing hydrogen bomb, for forty-four days the Pentagon refused to admit it was lost despite the fact that it was widely reported as being missing. "I don't know of any missing bomb," one Pentagon official told the Associated Press. Only after the bomb was recovered from the ocean floor did the Pentagon admit that it had in fact been lost.

The nuclear accidents did not stop there. Two years and four days later there was another airplane crash involving a Strategic Air Command bomber and four nuclear bombs. On January 21, 1968, an uncontrollable fire started on board a B-52G bomber during a secret mission over Greenland. Six of the seven crew members bailed out of the burning airplane, which crested over the rooftops of the American air base at Thule and slammed into the frozen surface of North Star Bay. The impact detonated the high explosives in at least three of the four thermonuclear bombs—similar to exploding multiple dirty bombs—spreading radioactive plutonium, uranium, and tritium over a large swath of ice. A second fire started at the crash site, consuming bomb debris, wreckage from the airplane, and fuel. After the inferno burned for twenty minutes the ice began to melt. One of the bombs fell into the bay and disappeared beneath the frozen sea. In November of 2008, a BBC News investigation found that the Pentagon ultimately abandoned that fourth nuclear weapon after it became lost.

Once again, an ad hoc emergency group was put together; there was still no permanent disaster cleanup group. This time five hundred people were involved. The conditions were almost as dangerous as the nuclear material. Temperatures fell to -70 degrees Fahrenheit, and winds blew at ninety miles per hour. Equipment froze. In a secret SAC document, made public by a Freedom of Information Act request in 1989, the Air Force declared their efforts would be nominal, "a cleanup undertaken as good housekeeping measures." with officials anticipating the removal of radioactive debris "to equal not less than 50%" of the total of what was there. For eight months, a crew calling themselves the Dr. Freezelove Team worked around the clock. When they were done, 10,500 tons of radioactive ice, snow, and crash debris was airlifted out of Greenland and flown to South Carolina for disposal.

Back at the Nevada Test Site, a new industry had been born in nuclear accident cleanup. But before anything can get cleaned up, an assessment must be made regarding how much lethal radiation is present, where exactly, and in what form. All across the desert floor, new proof-of-concept, or prototypes, of radiation-detection instruments appeared. Before the nuclear bomb accidents in Spain and Greenland, individual radiation-detection machines were limited to handheld devices like Geiger counters, used to examine workers' hands and feet and to search for radiation in limited local areas. Finally, gadgets and gizmos flooded the Nevada Test Site for field-testing in a post-nuclear accident world. After the Nuclear Test Ban Treaty of 1963, testing had moved underground, but often these underground tests "vented," releasing huge plumes of radiation from fissures in the earth. The test site was the perfect place to test equipment because there was an abundance of plutonium, americium, cesium, cobalt, europium, strontium, and tritium in the topsoil, and no shortage of radiation in the air.

First came new handheld devices, like a briefcase called the Neutron Detector Suitcase, a prototype designed by EG&G, which was followed by more advanced means of detecting radiation, including ground vehicles. The Sky Scanner, developed by the Lawrence Radiation Laboratory at Livermore, roamed down the test site's dirt roads measuring radioactivity escaping from atomic vents. The Sky Scanner looked like a news van with a satellite dish, but inside it was full of equipment that could determine how much fallout was in the air. Next came fixed-wing aircraft that could patrol the air over an accident site. Used to detect fallout since Operation Crossroads, they were now equipped with state-of-the-art, still-classified radiation-detection devices. This marked the birth of a burgeoning new military technology that would become one of the most important and most secret businesses of the twenty-first century. [Called remote sensing](#), it is the ability to recognize levels of radioactivity from a distance using ultraviolet radiation, infrared, and other means of detection.

Within a decade of the disastrous nuclear accidents at Palomares and Thule, EG&G would so dominate the radiation-detection market that the laboratory built at the Nevada Test Site for this purpose was [initially called the EG&G Remote Sensing Laboratory](#). After 9/11, the sister laboratory, at Nellis Air Force Base in Las Vegas, was called the Remote Sensing Laboratory and included sensing-detection mechanisms for all types of WMD. This facility would become absolutely critical to national security, so much so that by 2011, T. D. Barnes says that "only two people at Nellis are cleared with a need-to-know regarding classified briefings about the Remote Sensing Lab." Barnes is a member of the Nellis/Creech Air Force Base support team and its civilian military council. But in the 1960s, three nuclear facilities—Los Alamos, Lawrence Livermore, and Sandia—and one private corporation—EG&G—were the organizations uniquely positioned to see the writing on the wall. If nuclear accidents were going to continue to happen, then these four entities were going to [secure the government contracts to clean things up](#).

[EG&G had been taking radiation measurements](#) and tracking radioactive clouds for the Atomic Energy Commission since 1946. For decades, EG&G Energy Measurements has maintained control of the vast majority of radiation measurements records going back to the first postwar test at Bikini Atoll in 1946. Because much of this information was

originally created under the strict Atomic Energy classification Secret/Restricted Data—i.e., it was “born classified”—it has largely remained classified ever since. It cannot be transferred to another steward. For decades, this meant there was no one to compete with EG&G for the remote sensing job. How involved EG&G is in remote sensing today, their [corporate headquarters won't say](#).

So secret are the record groups in EG&G’s archives, even the president of the United States can be denied access to them, as [President Clinton was in 1994](#). One year earlier, a reporter named Eileen Welsome had written a forty-five-page newspaper story for the *Albuquerque Tribune* revealing that the Atomic Energy Commission had secretly injected human test subjects with plutonium starting in the 1940s without those individuals’ knowledge or consent. When President Clinton learned about this, he created an advisory committee on human radiation experiments to look into secrets kept by the Atomic Energy Commission and to make them public. In several areas, the president’s committee succeeded in revealing disturbing truths, but in other areas it failed. In at least one case, regarding a secret project at Area 51, the committee was denied access to records kept by EG&G and the Atomic Energy Commission on the grounds that [the president did not have a need-to-know](#) about them. In another case, regarding the nuclear rocket program at Area 25 in Jackass Flats, the president’s committee also failed to inform the public of the truth. Whether this is because the record group in EG&G’s archive was kept from the committee or because the committee had access to it but chose not to report the facts in earnest remains unknown. Instead, what happened at Jackass Flats, well after atmospheric testing had been outlawed around the world, gets a [one-line reference](#) in the Advisory Committee’s 937-page Final Report, grouped in with dozens of other tests involving “intentional releases” near human populations. “At AEC sites in Nevada and Idaho, radioactive materials were released in tests of the safety of bombs, nuclear reactors, and proposed nuclear rockets and airplanes,” the report innocuously reads.

[If Area 51 had a doppelgänger](#) next door at the test site, it would certainly be Area 25, which encompasses 223 square miles. The flat, sandy desert expanse got its name during the gold rush when miners used to tie their donkeys to trees in the flat area while searching the surrounding mountains for gold. Like Area 51, Jackass Flats is surrounded by mountain ranges on three of its four sides, making them both hidden sites within federally restricted land. Unlike Area 51, which technically does not exist, Jackass Flats in the 1950s and 1960s maintained a polished public face. When President Kennedy visited the Nevada Test Site in 1962, he went to Jackass Flats to promote the space travel programs that were going on there. Richard Mingus was one of the security guards assigned to assist the president’s Secret Service detail that day. Photographs that appeared in the newspapers showed the handsome president, wearing his signature sunglasses and dark suit, flanked by aides while admiring strange-looking contraptions rising up from the desert floor; Mingus stands at attention nearby. Next to the president is Glenn Seaborg, then head of the Atomic Energy Commission and the man who co-discovered plutonium. But as with most nuclear projects of the day, the public was only told a fraction of the story. There was a lot more going on at Jackass Flats behind the scenes—and in underground facilities there—about which the public had no idea.

Area 25 began as the perfect place for America to launch a nuclear-powered spaceship that would get man to Mars and back in the astonishingly short time of 124 days. The spaceship was going to be enormous, sixteen stories tall and [piloted by one hundred and fifty men](#). Project Orion seemed like a space vehicle from a science fiction novel, except it was real. It was the brainchild of a former Los Alamos weapons designer named Theodore Taylor, a man who saw space as the last "new frontier."

For years, beginning in the early 1950s, [Taylor designed nuclear bombs for the Pentagon](#) until he began to doubt the motives of the Defense Department. He left government service, at least officially, and joined General Atomics in San Diego, the nuclear division of defense contractor General Electric. There, he began designing nuclear-powered spaceships. But to build a spaceship that could get to Mars required federal funding, and in 1958 General Atomics presented the idea to President Eisenhower's new science and technology research group, the Advanced Research Projects Agency, or ARPA. The agency had been created as a result of the Sputnik crisis, its purpose being to never let the Russians one-up American scientists again. Today, the agency is known as DARPA. The D stands for *defense*.

At the time, developing cutting-edge space-flight technology meant hiring scientists like Wernher Von Braun to design chemical-based rockets that could conceivably get man to the moon in a capsule the size of a car. Along came Ted Taylor with a proposal to build a Mars-bound spaceship the size of an office building, thanks to nuclear energy. For ARPA chief Roy Johnson, Ted Taylor's conception was love at first sight. "[Everyone seems to be making plans](#) to pile fuel on fuel on fuel to put a pea into orbit, but you seem to mean business," the ARPA chief told Taylor in 1958.

General Atomics was given a one-million-dollar advance, a classified project with a code name of Orion, and a maximum-security test facility in Area 25 of the Nevada Test Site at Jackass Flats. The reason Taylor's spaceship needed an ultrasecret hiding place and could not be launched from Cape Canaveral, as other rockets and spaceships in the works could be, was that the Orion spacecraft would be powered by two thousand "small-sized" nuclear bombs. Taylor's original idea was to dispense these bombs from the rear of the spaceship, the [same as a Coke machine](#) dispenses sodas. The bombs would fall out behind the spaceship, literally exploding and pushing the spaceship along. The Coca-Cola Company was even hired to do a classified early design.

At Area 25, far away from public view, Taylor's giant spaceship would launch from eight 250-foot-tall towers. Blastoff would mean Orion would rise out of a column of nuclear energy released by exploding atomic bombs. "[It would have been the most sensational thing anyone ever saw](#)." Taylor told his biographer John McPhee. But when the Air Force took over the project, they had an entirely different vision in mind. ARPA and the Air Force reconfigured Orion into a space-based battleship. From high above Earth, a USS *Orion* could be used to launch attacks against enemy targets using nuclear missiles. Thanks to *Orion*'s nuclear-propulsion technology, the spaceship could make extremely fast defensive maneuvers, avoiding any Russian nuclear missiles that might come its way. It would be able to withstand the blast from a one-megaton bomb from only five hundred feet away.

For a period of time in the early 1960s the Air Force believed Orion was going to be invincible. "[Whoever builds Orion will control the Earth!](#)" declared General Thomas S. Power of the Strategic Air Command. But no one built Orion. After atmospheric nuclear tests were banned in 1963, the project was indefinitely suspended. Still wanting to get men to Mars, NASA and the Air Force turned their attention to nuclear-powered rockets. From now on, there would be no nuclear explosions in the atmosphere at Jackass Flats—at least not officially. Instead, the nuclear energy required for the Mars spaceship would be contained in a flying reactor, with fuel rods producing nuclear energy behind barriers that were lightweight enough for space travel but not so thin as to cook the astronauts inside. The project was now called NERVA, which stood for Nuclear Engine Rocket Vehicle Application. The facility had a public name, even though no one from the public could go there. It was called the Nuclear Rocket Test Facility at Jackass Flats. A joint NASA/Atomic Energy Commission office was created to manage the program, called the [Space Nuclear Propulsion Office, or SNPO](#).

For T. D. Barnes, working on the NERVA nuclear reactor was a bit of a stretch—his area of expertise was missile and radar technologies. But when things got slow over at Area 51 in the late 1960s, Barnes, a member of EG&G Special Projects team, would be dispatched over to Area 25 to work on the NERVA program. Even though NERVA had been sold to Congress as a public program, all its data was classified, as were the day-to-day goings-on in Area 25. Barnes's workstation could not have been more hidden from the public. It was underground, [built into the side of a mountain](#) that rose up from the flat desert landscape. Each morning Barnes and his fellow Q-cleared coworkers who lived in and around Las Vegas parked in employee parking lots down at the entrance to the Nevada Test Site, at Camp Mercury, and were then shuttled out to Jackass Flats in Atomic Energy Commission motor pool vans. "Some of the people working on NERVA lived in Beatty and Amargosa Valley and drove to the tunnel themselves," Barnes adds.

All NERVA employees entered work through a small portal in the side of the mountain, "shaped like the entrance to an old mining shaft, but spiffed up a bit," Barnes recalls, remembering "large steel doors and huge air pipes curving down from the mesas and entering the tunnel." Inside, the concrete tunnel was long and straight and ran into the earth "as far as the eye could see." Atomic Energy Commission records indicate [the underground tunnel was](#) 1,150 feet long. Barnes remembered it being brightly lit and sparkling clean. "There were exposed air duct pipes running the length of the tunnel as well as several layers of metal cable trays, which were used to transport heavy items into and out of the tunnel," he says. "The ceiling was about eight feet tall, and men walked through it no more than two abreast." There was also a tarantula problem at Jackass Flats, which meant every now and then, Barnes and his colleagues would spot a large hairy spider running down the tunnel floors or scampering along its walls.

Deep in the tunnel Barnes would come up against a last set of closed doors. When they opened, they revealed a succession of brightly lit rooms filled with desks. Barnes explains, "Moving closer to ground zero where the tunnel ended, we entered a large subterranean room stacked floor to ceiling with rows of electronic amplifiers, discriminator circuits, and multiplexing components and banks of high-tech equipment lining the walls."

Standing in front of the row of electronics was an engineer "usually with a cart full of electronic test equipment calibrating and repairing electronic circuits," Barnes explains. These workers were all preparing for what was actually going on aboveground, and that was full-power, full-scale nuclear reactor engine tests. In order for NASA and the Atomic Energy Commission to be able to verify that NERVA could actually propel a spaceship filled with astronauts the [34 million to 249 million miles to Mars](#) (the distance depends on the positions of the two planets in their orbits), those federal agencies had to witness NERVA running full power for long periods of time here on Earth first. To test that kind of thrust without having the engine launch itself into space, it was caged inside a test stand and positioned upside down.

For each engine test, [a remote-controlled locomotive](#) would bring the nuclear reactor over to the test stand from where it was housed three miles away in its own cement-block-and-lead-lined bunker, called E-MAD. "We used to joke that the locomotive at Jackass Flats was the slowest in the world," Barnes explains. "The only thing keeping the reactor from melting down as it traveled down the railroad back and forth between E-MAD and the test stand was the liquid hydrogen [LH_2] bath it sat in." The train never moved at speeds more than five miles per hour. "One spark and the whole thing could blow," Barnes explains. At -320 degrees Fahrenheit, liquid hydrogen is one of the most combustible and dangerous explosives in the world. James A. Dewar, author of *To the End of the Solar System: The Story of the Nuclear Rocket*, gets even more specific. "[One hundredth of what one might receive](#) from shuffling along a rug and then touching a wall can ignite hydrogen," Dewar wrote in 2004. To help visualize what the facilities aboveground at Jackass Flats looked like, Barnes likens them to Cape Kennedy. "Imagine a one-hundred-twenty-foot-tall aluminum tower rising up from a plateau of cement surrounded by a deep, concrete aqueduct. Add some huge, spherical thermos-like dewars sitting around, each containing something like two hundred and sixty thousand gallons of liquid hydrogen, and you can visualize the space-launch appearance of things," Barnes explains. In Atomic Energy photographs from the 1960s, a single set of train tracks can be seen running along the bottom of the cement aqueduct and disappearing into an opening underneath the tall metal tower. "The railroad car carried the nuclear reactor up to the test stand and lifted it into place using remotely controlled hydraulic hands," Barnes explains. "Meanwhile, we were all underground looking at the reactor through special leaded-glass windows, taking measurements and recording data as the engine ran." The reason the facility was buried inside the mountain was not only to hide it from the [Soviet satellites spying](#) on the U.S. nuclear rocket program from overhead, but to shield Barnes and his fellow workers from radiation poisoning from the NERVA reactor. "Six feet of earth shields a man from radiation poisoning pretty good," says Barnes.

When running at full power, the nuclear engine operated at a temperature of [2,300 Kelvin](#), or 3,680.6 degrees Fahrenheit, which meant it also had to be kept cooled down by the liquid hydrogen on a permanent basis. "While the engine was running the canyon was like an inferno as the hot hydrogen simultaneously ignited upon contact with the air," says Barnes. These nuclear rocket engine tests remained secret until the early 1990s, when a reporter named Lee Davidson, the Washington bureau chief for Utah's *Deseret News*,

provided the public with the first descriptive details. ["The Pentagon released information after I filed a Freedom of Information Act."](#) Davidson says. In turn, Davidson provided the public with previously unknown facts: "bolted down, the engine roared... sending skyward a plume of invisible hydrogen exhaust that had just been thrust through a superheated uranium fission reactor," Davidson revealed. Researching the story, he also learned that back in the 1960s, after locals in Caliente, Nevada, complained that iodine 131—a major radioactive hazard found in nuclear fission products—had been discovered in their town's water supply, Atomic Energy officials denied any nuclear testing had been going on at the time. Instead, officials blamed the Chinese, stating, "Fresh fission products probably came from an open-air nuclear bomb test in China." In fact, a NERVA engine test had gone on at Area 25 just three days before the town conducted its water supply test.

Had the public known about the NERVA tests when they were going on, the tests would have been perceived as a nuclear catastrophe in the making. Which is exactly what did happen. ["Los Alamos wanted a run-away reactor."](#) wrote Dewar, who in addition to being an author is a longtime Atomic Energy Commission employee, "a power surge until [the reactor] exploded." Dewar explained why. "If Los Alamos had [data on the most devastating accident possible](#), it could calculate other accident scenarios with confidence and take preventative measures accordingly." And so, on January 12, 1965, the nuclear rocket engine code-named Kiwi was allowed to overheat. High-speed cameras recorded the event. The temperature rose to ["over 4000°C until it burst](#), sending fuel hurtling skyward and glowing every color of the rainbow," Dewar wrote. Deadly radioactive fuel [chunks as large as 148 pounds](#) shot up into the sky. One ninety-eight-pound piece of radioactive fuel landed more than a quarter of a mile away.

Once the explosion subsided, a radioactive cloud rose up from the desert floor and "stabilized at 2,600 feet" where it was met by an EG&G aircraft ["equipped with samplers mounted on its wings."](#) The cloud hung in the sky and began to drift east then west. "It [blew over Los Angeles](#) and out to sea," Dewar explained. The full data on the EG&G radiation measurements remains classified.

The test, made public as a "safety test," caused an international incident. The Soviet Union said it violated the Limited Test Ban Treaty of 1963, which of course it did. But the Atomic Energy Commission had what it wanted, ["accurate data from which to base calculations."](#) Dewar explained, adding that "the test ended many concerns about a catastrophic incident." In particular, the Atomic Energy Commission and NASA both now knew that "in the event of such a launch pad accident [the explosion] proved death would come quickly to anyone standing 100 feet from ground zero, serious sickness and possible death at 400 feet, and an unhealthy dose at 1000 feet."

Because it is difficult to believe that the agencies involved did not already know this, the question remains: What data was Atomic Energy Commission really after? The man in charge of the project during this time, Space Nuclear Propulsion Office director Harold B. Finger, was reached for comment in 2010. ["I don't recall that exact test."](#) Finger says. "It was a long time ago."

Five months later, in June of 1965, disaster struck, this time officially unplanned. That is when another incarnation of the nuclear rocket engine, [code-named Phoebus](#), had been

running at full power for ten minutes when "[suddenly it ran out of LH₂](#) [liquid hydrogen and] overheated in the blink of an eye," wrote Dewar. As with the planned "explosion" five months earlier, the nuclear rocket reactor first ejected large chunks of its radioactive fuel out into the open air. Then "the remainder fused together, as if hit by a giant welder," Dewar explained. Laymen would call this a meltdown. The cause of the accident was a faulty gauge on one of the liquid hydrogen tanks. One gauge read a quarter full when in reality there was nothing left inside the tank.

So radiated was the land at Jackass Flats after the Phoebus accident, even HAZMAT [cleanup crews in full protective gear could not enter the area for six weeks](#). No information is available on how the underground employees got out. Originally, Los Alamos tried to send robots into Jackass Flats to conduct the decontamination, but according to Dewar the robots were "slow and inefficient." Eventually humans were sent in, driving truck-mounted vacuum cleaners to suck up deadly contaminants. Declassified Atomic Energy Commission photographs show workers in protective gear and gas masks picking up radioactive chunks with [long metal tongs](#). Like many Atomic Energy Commission officials, Dewar saw the accident as "achieving some objectives." That "while certainly unfortunate, unplanned, unwanted and unforeseen," he believed that "calling the accident 'catastrophic' mocks the meaning of the word." The cleanup process took four hundred people two months to complete.

So what happened to NERVA in the end? When Barnes worked on NERVA in 1968, the project was well advanced. But space travel was on the wane. By 1970, the public's infatuation with getting a man to Mars had made an abrupt about-face. Funding dried up, and NASA projects began shutting down. "We did develop the rocket," Barnes says. "We do have the technology to send man to Mars this way. But environmentally, we could never use a nuclear-powered rocket on Earth in case it blew up on takeoff. So the NERVA was put to bed." That depends how one defines *put to bed*. President Nixon canceled the program, and it [officially ended on January 5, 1973](#). Several employees who worked at the NERVA facility at Jackass Flats say the nuclear rocket program came to a dramatic, cataclysmic end, one that has never before been made public. "We know the government likes to test accidents in advance," Barnes says. Darwin Morgan, spokesman for the National Nuclear Security Administration, Nevada Site Office, says [no such final test](#) ever happened. "Something like that would have been too huge of an event to have happened to 'cover up,'" Morgan says. "I've talked to people in our classified repository. They don't have anything."

The record suggests otherwise. In studying Area 25 to determine how former Atomic Energy Commission workers and contractors with cancer may have been exposed to potentially lethal doses of radiation there, investigators for the National Institute for Occupational Safety and Health determined that "two nuclear reactors" were in fact destroyed there. "[Due to the destruction of two nuclear reactors](#) and transport of radioactive material, the area was extensively contaminated with enriched uranium, niobium, cobalt, and cesium," the authors of the report concluded in 2008.

The full data relating to the last tests conducted on the NERVA nuclear rocket remain classified as Restricted Data and the Department of Energy has repeatedly declined to

release the documents. Atomic Energy Commission [records are "well organized and complete](#) but unfortunately, most are classified or kept in secure areas that limit public access," Dewar wrote. As for the records from the Space Nuclear Propulsion Office, Dewar said that "many SNPO veterans believe its records were destroyed after the office was abolished in 1973" and that "in particular, the chronology file of Harold Finger, Milton Klein and David Gabriel, SNPO's directors, would [be] invaluable" in determining the complete story on NERVA. When reached for comment, Harold Finger clarified that he left the program as director in 1968. "I have no knowledge of any meltdown," Finger said, suggesting that his former deputy [Milton Klein might know](#) more. "I left the program as director in 1971," Klein said, "and do not have any information about what happened to NERVA in the end."

In January of 2002, as part of the Nevada Environmental Restoration Project, the National Nuclear Security Administration conducted a study regarding proposed cleanup of the contaminated land at Area 25. The report revealed that the following [radioactive elements were still present](#) at that time: "cobalt-60 (Co-60); strontium-90 (Sr-90); yttrium-90 (Y-90); niobium-94 (Nb-94); cesium-137 (Cs-137); barium-137m (Ba-137m); europium-152, -154, and -155 (Eu-152, Eu-154, and Eu-155); uranium-234, -235, -238 (U-234, U-235, U-238); plutonium-239/240 (Pu-239/240); and americium-241 (Am-241)," and that these radioactive contaminants "may have percolated into underlying soil."

Twenty-eight years after NERVA's questionable end at Jackass Flats, shortly after the terrorist attacks of 2001, the radiated land at [Area 25 started to serve a new purpose](#) when the Department of Homeland Security and the military began training exercises there—including how to deal with cleaning up after a terrorist attack involving a nuclear weapon. T. D. Barnes served as a consultant on several of these endeavors.

NNSA spokesman Darwin Morgan discussed the WMD training that goes on at the test site in a government film that plays at the Atomic Testing Museum in Las Vegas. ["It's a PhD experience for first responders."](#) Morgan said of the test site, "because the site offers real radiation they can't get anywhere else." Still, the National Nuclear Security Administration declined to elaborate on how, exactly, this "real radiation" that contaminated Area 25 occurred.

Perhaps in the early 1970s, the thinking at the Atomic Energy Commission was that [one day a nuclear facility could very well melt down](#) in an American city. Were this to happen, the commission could have argued, it would be a good thing to know what to expect. By 1972, the nuclear energy industry had experienced [five "boom year\(s\)"](#), according to Atomic Energy Commission archives. Without any kind of regulatory arm in place, the commission had been promoting and developing [nuclear reactor "units,"](#) which are the fuel cores that provide energy for nuclear power plants. By the end of 1967, the commission had placed thirty units around the country. The following year, that number jumped to ninety-one, and by 1972 there were one hundred and sixty nuclear reactor units that the Atomic Energy Commission was in charge of overseeing at power plants around the nation.

Six years after the end of the NERVA program at Jackass Flats, the nuclear facility at Three Mile Island nearly melted down, on March 28, 1979. The nuclear reactor there

experienced a partial core meltdown because of a loss of coolant. Officials were apparently stunned. "The people seemed dazed by a situation that wasn't covered in the manuals, torn between logic and standard operating procedures, indecisive in the absence of a strong executive power," read a 1980 report on the disaster prepared for the public by the newly formed Nuclear Regulatory Commission's Special Inquiry Group. Even though similar accident scenarios had been conducted at Area 25, the "executive power," which was the Atomic Energy Commission, apparently did not share the information with its partners at the power plants.

At the same time the Three Mile Island accident happened, a movie called *The China Syndrome* was opening in theaters across the country. The movie was about a government plot to conceal an imminent nuclear meltdown disaster, with Jane Fonda playing a reporter determined to expose the plot. Although it was clear to moviegoers that the film was fictional, it had been made with great attention to technical detail. The Nuclear Regulatory Commission's Special Inquiry Group determined that the combination of the two events—the real and the fictional—resulted in a media firestorm. The fact that the near nuclear meltdown happened in the media glare, wrote the commissioner, "[may be the best insurance that it will not reoccur.](#)" The public's so-called mass hysteria, feared for decades by government elite, really did work in the public's interest after all. At Three Mile Island, the media firestorm and the public's response to it proved to act as a democratic "checks and balances" where the federal government had failed.

For as many nuclear accidents of its own making as the Atomic Energy Commission could foresee, they could not have predicted what happened on January 24, 1978, when a [nuclear-powered Russian spy satellite crashed](#) on North American soil, in Canada. NORAD analysts had been tracking Cosmos 954 since it launched, on September 18, 1977, but after three months, the movements of the spy satellite were causing NORAD ever-increasing alarm. The Russian satellite had been designed to track U.S. submarines running deep beneath the surface of the sea, and what NORAD knew about the satellite was that it was forty-six feet long and weighed 4.4 tons. To get that much payload into orbit required phenomenal power, most likely nuclear.

In December of 1977, analysts determined that the Russian satellite was slipping out of orbit, dropping closer and closer to Earth on each ninety-minute rotation of the globe. Calculations indicated that unless the Russians could get control of their satellite, Cosmos would, in all probability, reenter the atmosphere and crash somewhere in North America within a month. President Carter's national security adviser Zbigniew Brzezinski pressed Moscow for information about what exactly was on board the crashing satellite. The Russians told Brzezinski that Cosmos 954 carried 110 pounds of highly enriched uranium 235.

Richard Mingus worked at the Department of Energy's emergency command center, located in Las Vegas, during the crisis. The center was in charge of controlling public information about the looming nuclear disaster, following directions from the CIA. According to a secret CIA report declassified in 1997, [a decision was made not to inform the public.](#) Trying to predict the public's reaction to a nuclear satellite crash was like "[playing night baseball with the lights out.](#)" wrote CIA analyst Gus Weiss, because "the

outcome of [Cosmos] 954 would be akin to determining the winner of a train wreck." The CIA knew exactly what would happen, and that was that "the satellite was coming down carrying a live reactor." The CIA also believed that "a sensationalized leak would disturb the public in unforeseeable ways." This information has never been made public before.

"[It was extremely tense.](#)" recalls Richard Mingus, who spent several days fielding calls at the emergency command center. By 1978, [NEST](#)—Nuclear Emergency Search Team—was finally trained to handle nuclear disasters. The man in charge was Brigadier General Mahlon E. Gates, also the manager of the Nevada Test Site. According to Gates, "the nucleus for NEST-related activity was [established within EG&G](#), which had responsibility for overall logistics" to the nuclear lab workers and those assigned to NEST by the federal government. The team waited on standby at McCarran Airport, "ready to go the minute the thing crash-landed," Mingus says. "Our job at the emergency command center was to keep people across America from panicking." All that Brzezinski had said publicly was that America was experiencing a "[space age difficulty](#)." Mingus believes this was the right move. "The satellite was still pretty high up, there was no radioactive danger until it actually hit the ground. But imagine the panic if people, or say a mayor of a city, started calling for cities to evacuate based on where they thought the satellite was going to crash down on the next ninety-minute rotation?" Mingus says the feeling at the command center was that if that were to happen, it would be panic like in *The War of the Worlds*.

When Cosmos 954 finally crashed, it hit the earth across a large swath of ice in the middle of the frozen Canadian tundra, one thousand miles north of Montana on Great Slave Lake. At McCarran Airport a fleet of unmarked NEST vans—[meant to look like bakery vans](#) but really loaded with banks of gamma- and neutron-detection equipment inside—drove into the belly of a giant C-130 transport plane and prepared to head north. NEST personnel included the usual players in the nuclear military-industrial complex: scientists and engineers from Los Alamos, Livermore, Sandia, and EG&G. [Troy Wade was the lead federal official](#) dispatched to the crash site. Looking back, he explains, "It was the radioactive fuel we were most concerned about. If a piece comes down that weighs a ton, you can't predict how far and wide the debris, including all that fuel, will go."

For this reason, the first order of business was detecting radiation levels from the air. Wade and the [EG&G remote-sensing team loaded small aircraft](#) and helicopters into the belly of the C-130, alongside the unmarked bread vans, and headed for the Canadian tundra. As part of Operation Morning Light, NEST members scoured a fifty-by-eight-hundred-mile corridor searching for radioactive debris. "This was long before the advent of GPS. There were no mountains to navigate by," Wade says. "The pilots had no reference points. Just a lot of snow and ice out there. Temperatures of nearly fifty degrees below zero." Helping out from [high above was an Air Force U-2](#) spy plane.

After several long months, 90 percent of the debris from Cosmos 954 had been recovered. In the postaccident analysis, officials at NORAD determined that if the satellite had made one last orbit before crashing, its trajectory would have put it down [somewhere on America's East Coast](#).

The Lunar-Landing Conspiracy and Other Legends of Area 51

Two hundred and fifty thousand miles from the Nevada Test Site, on [July 20, 1969](#), with less than ninety-four seconds of fuel remaining, Neil Armstrong and copilot Buzz Aldrin were facing almost certain death as they approached the Sea of Tranquillity on the moon. The autotargeting on their lunar landing module, famously called the *Eagle*, was taking them down onto a football-field-size crater laden with jagged boulders. To have crash-landed there would have meant death. The autotargeting was burning precious fuel with each passing second; the quick-thinking Neil Armstrong turned it off, took manual control of the *Eagle*, and, as he would tell NASA officials at Mission Control in Houston, Texas, only moments later, began “flying manually over the rock field to find a reasonably good area” to land. When Armstrong finally set the *Eagle* down safely on the moon, there was a mere twenty seconds’ worth of fuel left in the descent tanks.

Practice makes perfect, and no doubt [Armstrong's hundreds of](#) hours flying experimental aircraft like the X-15 rocket ship—in dangerous and often death-defying scenarios—helped prepare him for piloting a safe landing on the moon. As with most seminal U.S. government accomplishments, particularly those involving science, it took thousands of men working hundreds of thousands of hours inside scores of research centers and test facilities—not to mention a number of chemical rockets designed by Wernher Von Braun—to get the Apollo 11 astronauts and five additional crews (Apollos 12, 14, 15, 16, and 17) to the moon and back home. A little-known fact is that to prepare for what it would actually be like to walk around on the geology of the moon, the [astronauts visited the Nevada Test Site](#). There, they hiked inside several atomic craters, learning what kind of geology they might have to deal with on the lunar surface’s inhospitable terrain. The Atomic Energy Commission’s [Ernie Williams was their guide](#).

“I spent three days with the astronauts in Areas 7, 9, and 10 during astronaut training, several years before they went to the moon,” Williams recalls. In the 1960s, astronauts had rock-star status, and Williams remembered the event like it was yesterday. “The astronauts had coveralls and wore field packs, mock-ups of the real thing, strapped on their backs. They had cameras mounted on their hats and they took turns walking up and down the subsidence craters. It was steep, rocky terrain,” he explains. Williams originally worked for the Atomic Energy Commission in feeding and housing, making sure the “feed wagon” got to remote areas of the atomic bombing range. “We’d get mashed potatoes and gravy to the faraway places inside the test site,” Williams says, “hot food being a key to morale.” But the multitalented Williams quickly became the test site’s jack-of-all-trades, including astronaut guide. His other jobs included being in charge of the motor pool and helping CIA engineers drill for Area 51’s [first water well](#). But for Williams, the highlight of

his career was escorting the first men on the moon inside the atomic craters.

"I was with them in 1965, and again five years later when they came back," Williams recalls. This time the [astronauts arrived with](#) a lunar roving vehicle to test what it might be like driving on the moon. The astronauts were taken out to the Schooner crater, located on the Pahute Mesa in Area 20. "We picked them up at the Pahute airstrip and took them and the vehicle into the crater where there was pretty rough terrain," Williams explains. "Some boulders out there were ten feet tall. One of the astronauts said, 'If we encounter this kind of thing on the moon, we're not going to get very far.'" Williams recalls the astronauts learning how to fix a flat tire on the moon. "They took off a steel tire and put on a rubber one" out in the field.

The lunar roving vehicle was not a fast-moving vehicle, and the astronauts took turns driving it. "NASA had built it and had driven it in a lot of flat places," Williams explains. "But before it came to the test site and drove on the craters, the vehicle had no real experience on inhospitable terrain. The astronauts also did a lot of walking out there," Williams adds. One of the requirements of the Apollo astronauts who would be driving during moon missions was that they had to be able to walk back to the lunar module if the rover failed.

The craters Williams was talking about are subsidence craters—geologic [by-products of underground bomb tests](#). When a nuclear bomb is placed in a deep vertical shaft, as hundreds were at the test site (not to be confused with tunnel tests), the explosion vaporizes the surrounding earth and liquefies the rock. Once that molten rock cools, it solidifies at the bottom of the cavity, and the earth above it collapses, creating the crater. The glass-coated rock, giant boulders, and loose rubble that remain resemble the craters found on the moon. So similar in geology were the atomic craters to moon craters that in voice transcripts sent back during the Apollo 16 and Apollo 17 missions, [astronauts twice referred to](#) the craters at the Nevada Test Site. During Apollo 16, John W. Young got specific. A quarter of a million miles away from Earth, while marveling at a lunar crater laden with rocks, Young asked fellow astronaut Charles M. Duke Jr., "Remember how it was up at that crater? At Schooner." He was referring to the atomic crater Ernie Williams took the astronauts to in Area 20. During Apollo 17, while looking at the Haemus Mountains, Harrison H. Schmitt can be heard talking about the Buckboard Mesa craters in Area 19. For Ernie Williams, [hearing this comparison was a beautiful moment](#). For lunar-landing conspiracy theorists, of which there are millions worldwide, the feeling was one of suspicion. For these naysayers, Schmitt's telemetry tapes, the moon photographs, the moon rocks—everything having to do with the Apollo moon missions would become grist for a number of ever-growing conspiracies that have been tied to man's journey to the moon.

[Just two months after Armstrong and Aldrin returned](#) home, a UFO-on-the-moon conspiracy was born. On September 29, 1969, in New York City, the newest installment of *National Bulletin* magazine rolled off the printing press with a shocking headline: "Phony Transmission Failure Hides Apollo 11 Discovery. Moon Is a UFO Base," it read. The author of the article, Sam Pepper, said he'd been leaked a transcript of what NASA had allegedly edited out of the live broadcast back from the moon, namely, that there were UFOs there. Various UFO groups pressed their congressmen to take action, several of

whom wrote to NASA requesting a response. "The incident... did not take place," NASA's assistant administrator for legal affairs shot back in a memo from January 1970.

As time passed the ufologists continued to write stories about the [moon being a base for aliens and UFOs](#). For the most part, NASA ignored them. But then, in the midseventies, a newly famous film director named Steven Spielberg decided to make a film about aliens coming down to visit Earth. He sent NASA officials his script for *Close Encounters of the Third Kind*, expecting their endorsement. Instead, NASA sent Spielberg an angry twenty-page letter opposing his film. "I had wanted co-operation from them," [Spielberg said in a 1978 interview](#), "but when they read the script they got very angry and felt that it was a film that would be dangerous. I think they mainly wrote the letter because *Jaws* convinced so many people around the world that there were sharks in toilets and bathtubs, not just in the oceans and rivers. They were afraid the same kind of epidemic would happen with UFOs." Fringe ufologists were one thing as far as NASA was concerned. Steven Spielberg had millions of movie fans. He was a modern-day version of Orson Welles.

Right around the same time, another moon conspiracy theorist let his idea loose on the American public, a theory that did not involve UFOs. In 1974, a man named William Kaysing self-published a book called *We Never Went to the Moon: America's Thirty-Billion-Dollar Swindle*. [With these three questions](#), Kaysing became known as the father of the lunar-landing conspiracy:

How can the American flag flutter when there is no wind on the moon?
Why can't the stars be seen in the moon photographs?
Why is there no blast crater where Apollo's landing vehicle landed?

Kaysing, who died in 2005, often said his skepticism began when he was an analyst and engineer at Rocketdyne, the company that designed the Saturn rockets that allowed man to get to the moon. While watching the lunar landing live on television, he said [he experienced "an intuitive feeling](#) that what was being shown was not real." Later, he began scrutinizing the moon-landing photographs for evidence of a hoax. Kaysing's original three questions have since planted seeds in millions upon millions of people who continue to insist that NASA did not put men on the moon. The lunar-landing conspiracy ebbs and flows in popularity, but as of 2011, it shows no signs of going away.

In August 2001 Kaysing was interviewed by Katie Couric on [the Today show](#). By then, Kaysing's theory had morphed to involve Area 51. He was often quoted as saying that the Apollo landings were filmed at a movie studio there. "Area 51 is one of the most heavily guarded facilities in the United States," Kaysing said, and anyone who tried to go there "could be shot and killed without any warning. With good reason... because the moon sets are still there."

In the twenty-first century, a new generation of moon hoaxers walk in Kaysing's footsteps to expose what they say is NASA's fraud. Like the game of Whac-A-Mole, as soon as one element of the conspiracy appears to be disproven another allegation

surfaces—from missing telemetry tapes to outright murder. So aggravated has America's formidable space agency become over the moon hoaxers that in 2002, NASA hired aerospace historian Jim Oberg to write a book meant to challenge conspiracy theorists' questions and claims—now numbering hundreds—in a point-by-point rebuttal. When news of the project was leaked to the media, NASA got such bad press over it they [canceled the book](#).

The idea that the moon landing was faked was born at a time of high government mistrust. In 1974, for the first time in history, a U.S. president resigned. In 1975, the [CIA admitted it had been running mind-control programs](#), a number of which involved human experiments with dangerous, illegal drugs. Then, in April, Saigon fell. The general antigovernment feeling was heightened by the fact that while government proved capable of many nefarious deeds it had been unable to win the war in Vietnam; [58,193 Americans were killed trying](#).

Kaysing was also tapping into a tradition. There had been one successful [Great Moon Hoax](#) already, over 130 years earlier, in 1835. Beginning on August 25 of that year, the *New York Sun* published a series of six articles claiming falsely that life and civilization had been discovered on the moon. According to the newspaper story, winged humans, beavers the size of people, and unicorns were seen through a powerful telescope belonging to Sir John Herschel, the most famous astronomer at the time. Editions of the newspapers sold out, were reprinted, and sold out again. Circulation soared, and the *New York Sun* made tremendous profits over the story, which readers believed to be true. On the subject of the public's gullibility, Edgar Allan Poe, who also wrote for the paper, said, "The story's impact reflects on the period's infatuation with progress." But the original Great Moon Hoax came and went without a conspiratorial bent because there was no government entity to blame. It was a publicity stunt to sell papers, not perceived as a nefarious plan by a government elite to manipulate and control the common man.

Shortly after Kaysing's book was published (it is still in print as of 2011), a 1978 Hollywood film followed along the same lines. Peter Hyams's *Capricorn One* told the story of a faked NASA landing on Mars. Even James Bond entered the act, referencing a lunar-landing conspiracy in the film *Diamonds Are Forever*. From there, the moon-hoax theory remained a quiet staple among conspiracy theorists for decades, but with the rise of the Internet in the late 1990s, the moon-hoax concept resurfaced and eventually made its way into the mainstream press. In February of 2001, Fox TV aired a documentary-style hourlong segment called *Conspiracy Theory: Did We Land on the Moon?* and the debate was rekindled around the world. This gave way to an unusual twenty-first-century moon-hoax twist.

In September of 2002, [Buzz Aldrin, the second man on the moon](#), agreed to be interviewed by Far Eastern TV. This was because "they seemed like legitimate journalists," Aldrin explains. Buzz Aldrin has the highest profile of the twelve Apollo astronauts who walked on the moon, and he regularly gives interviews. A former fighter pilot, Aldrin flew sixty-six combat missions and shot down two MiG-15s in the Korean War. He is also an MIT-trained physicist, which affords him extra fluency when discussing outer space. Sitting in a suite in the Luxe Hotel in Beverly Hills in the fall of 2002, it did not take

long for Aldrin to realize something was awry when the TV interviewer began asking him questions involving conspiracy theories. "I tried redirecting the discussion back to a legitimate discussion about space," Aldrin says. Instead the interviewer played a clip from the Fox documentary about moon hoaxes. Aldrin believes "conspiracy theories are a waste of everybody's time and energy," and he got up and left the interview. "I'm someone who has dealt with the exact science of space rendezvous and orbital mechanics, so to have someone approach me and seriously suggest that Neil, Mike, and I never actually went to the moon, but that the entire trip had been staged in a sound studio someplace, has to rank with one of the most ludicrous ideas I've ever heard," says Aldrin.

Then, down in the hotel lobby, a large man in his midthirties approached Buzz Aldrin and tried to spark a conversation. The man, whose name was Bart Sibrel, had a film crew with him. "Hey, Buzz, how are you?" Sibrel asked, the cameras rolling. Aldrin said hello and headed out toward the street. Sibrel hurried along beside him, asking more questions. Then he pulled out a very large Bible and began shaking it in the former astronaut's face. "Will you swear on the Bible that you really walked on the moon?" Aldrin, who was seventy-two at the time, said, "You conspiracy people don't know what you're talking about" and turned to walk in the other direction. The man began hurling personal insults and accusations at Aldrin. "Your life is a complete lie!" the man shouted. "And here you are making money by giving interviews about things you never did!" The conspiracy theorist ran in front of Aldrin, blocking his way across the road. Aldrin, who had his stepdaughter with him, walked back to the hotel and asked the bellman to call the police. "You're a coward, Buzz Aldrin!" shouted the conspiracy theorist. "You're a liar; you're a thief!" Aldrin said he'd had enough: "Maybe it was the West Point cadet in me, or perhaps it was the Air Force fighter pilot. Or maybe I'd just had enough of his belligerent character assassination... I popped him." The second man on the moon punched the lunar-landing conspiracy theorist squarely in the jaw, cameras catching it all on tape.

In no time, the video footage was airing on the news, on CNN, on Jay Leno and David Letterman. CNN political commentator Paul Begala gave Aldrin the thumbs-up for pushing back against conspiracy theorists. But elsewhere, all across America, many millions of people agreed with the conspiracy theorists who believed that the lunar landing was a hoax. By the fortieth anniversary of the historic Apollo 11 mission, in 2009, polls conducted in America, England, and Russia revealed that approximately [25 percent of the people interviewed](#) believed the moon landing never happened. Many said they believed that it was faked and filmed at Area 51.

As of 2011, the lunar-landing conspiracy is one of three primary conspiracies said to have been orchestrated at Area 51. The other two that dominate conspiracy thinking [involve captured aliens and UFOs](#), and an underground tunnel and bunker system that supposedly exists below Area 51 and connects it to other military facilities and nuclear laboratories around the country. Each conspiracy theory contains elements of fact, and each is perceived differently by the three government agencies they target: NASA, the CIA, and the Department of Defense. In each conspiracy theory lies an important clue about the real truth behind Area 51.

Michael Schratt, who writes books and travels around the country giving lectures about

government cover-ups at Area 51, says that the secret facility is "directly connected to Edwards [Air Force Base] North Base Complex and Air Force Plant 42 at Palmdale by an underground tube-shuttle tunnel system developed by the Rand Corporation and others [circa] 1960." Schrott also says that Area 51 is "very likely connected to Wright-Patterson Air Force Base in Ohio" this same way. "[The tunnels were dug by a nuclear-powered drill](#) that can dig three miles of tunnel a day," Schrott says. "These tunnels also connect, by underground train, to other military facilities where leaders of government will go and live after a nuclear event" such as World War III.

In fact, underground tunnels, called [N-tunnels, P-tunnels, and T-tunnels](#), have been drilled next door to Area 51, at the Nevada Test Site, for decades. The 1,150-foot-long tunnel at Jackass Flats, drilled into the Calico Mountains, through which NERVA scientists and engineers like T. D. Barnes accessed their underground workstations is but one example of an underground tunnel at the Nevada Test Site. The NERVA complex in Area 25 has since been dismantled and "[deactivated](#)," according to the Department of Energy, but elsewhere at the test site dozens of tunnel complexes exist. In the 1960s, one tunnel dug into the granite mountain of Rainier Mesa, in Area 12, reached down as far as 4,500 feet, nearly a mile underground. There are many such government tunnels and bunkers around America, but it was [the revelation of the Greenbrier bunker](#) by Washington Post reporter Ted Gup in 1992 that set off a firestorm of conspiracy theories related to postapocalypse hideouts for the U.S. government elite—and since 1992, these secret bunkers have been woven into conspiracy theories about things that go on at Area 51.

The Greenbrier bunker is located in the Allegheny Mountains, 250 miles southwest of the nation's capital. Beginning in 1959, the Department of Defense spearheaded the construction of a 112,544-square-foot facility eight hundred feet below the West Virginia wing of the fashionable five-star Greenbrier resort. This secret bunker, completed in 1962, was to be the place where the president and certain members of Congress would live after a nuclear attack. The Greenbrier bunker had dormitories, a mess hall, decontamination chambers, and a hospital staffed with thirty-five doctors. "[Secrecy, denying knowledge of the existence](#) of the shelter from our potential enemies, was paramount to all matters of operation," Paul Bugas, the former onsite superintendent at the Greenbrier bunker, told PBS when asked why the facility was kept secret from the public. Many citizens agree with the premise. Conspiracy theorists disagree. They don't believe that the government keeps secrets to protect the people. Conspiracy theorists believe the leaders of government are only looking to protect themselves.

The underground tunnels and bunkers at the Nevada Test Site may be the most elaborate underground chambers ever constructed by the federal government in the continental United States. The great majority of them are in Area 12, which is located approximately sixteen miles due west of Area 51 in a mountain range called Rainier Mesa. Beginning in 1957, massive tunnel complexes were drilled into the volcanic rock and granite by hard-rock miners working twenty-four hours a day, seven days a week. To complete a single tunnel took, [on average, twelve months](#). Most tunnels ran approximately 1,300 feet below the surface of the earth, but some reached a mile underground. Inside these giant cavities, which averaged one hundred feet wide, the Atomic Energy

Commission and the Department of Defense have exploded [at least sixty-seven nuclear bombs](#). There, the military has tested nuclear blast and radiation effects on everything from missile nose cones to military satellites. A series called the [Piledriver experiments studied survivability](#) of hardened underground bunkers in a nuclear attack. The Hardtack tests sought to learn how "[to destroy enemy targets \[such as\] missile silos](#) and command centers" using megaton bombs. Inside the T-tunnels, scientists created vacuum chambers to simulate outer space, expanding on those dangerous late-1950s upper atmospheric tests code-named Teak and Orange. And the Department of Defense even tested how a stockpile of nuclear weapons inside an underground bunker would hold up to a nuclear blast.

Richard Mingus has spent many years inside these underground tunnel complexes, [guarding many of the nuclear bombs](#) used in the tests before they were detonated. In Mingus's five decades working at the test site, these were his least favorite assignments. "The tunnels were dirty, filthy, you had to wear heavy shoes because there was so much walking on all kinds of rock rubble," Mingus explains. "The air was bad and everything was stuffy. There were so many people working so many different jobs. Carpenters, welders... There were forty-eight-inch cutting machines covering the ground." Most of the equipment was hauled in on railroad tracks, which is at least partially responsible for inspiring conspiracy theories that include trains underneath Area 51—though the conspiracy theorists believe they're able to ferry government elite back and forth between Nevada and the East Coast. In reality, according to Atomic Energy Commission records, the Defense Department built the train system in the tunnels to transport heavy military equipment in and out. If employees wanted to, men like Richard Mingus could ride the train cars down into the underground tunnel complexes, but Mingus preferred to walk.

Unlike atmospheric weapons tests or the atomic tests in vertical shafts that made the moonlike craters, for the T-tunnel nuclear tests, the bomb was one of the first items to arrive on scene. "The bomb was cemented in the back of the tunnel, in a room called the zero room," Mingus says. "That was about three-quarters of a mile distance." Sometimes, Mingus would stand guard with the nuclear bomb at the end of the tunnel for eight- or ten-hour shifts, so he chose to walk in each morning "for the exercise." Mingus also disliked the assignments inside the underground tunnels because they reminded him of a part of his early life he would rather have forgotten. "When I was a kid working the coal mines," Mingus explains. But as anxious as a man standing guard over live nuclear bombs might have been, Mingus remained calm. He says the coal mines of his youth were far more dangerous. "There were no electric drills back then so my brother and I drilled by hand. We'd get down on our knees in those little tunnels—three and a half feet wide, not tall enough to stand up in. We'd use black powder as an explosive, not dynamite. We'd set the powder in the hole, tap it with a rod, use a fuse that was like toilet paper, light it, run out, and then wait for the smoke to clear. Some things you never forget even if you want to," Mingus says.

Before the Limited Test Ban Treaty of 1963, the Pentagon maintained a policy of announcing nuclear weapons tests to the public, usually one or two hours before shot time, which meant somewhere around 3:30 a.m. the day of the blast. [After the test ban, the](#)

[Pentagon reversed its policy](#). Information about underground tests—when they were to take place and how big they would be—was now classified secret. Only if a scientist predicted that an earthquake-like tremor might be felt in Las Vegas, sixty-five miles to the south, was a public announcement made in advance of the nuclear test. And so, from 1963 until the last test in 1992, approximately eight hundred tests were conducted underground. By the late 1990s, decades after the first drills bored into the rock at the Nevada Test Site, the nuclear bombs, the hard-rock miners, and Area 51 had merged into one entity. As it is with many urban legends regarding Area 51, the underground-tunnels idea has been spun from facts.

As creative as conspiracy theorists can be when it comes to Area 51, it is surprising how they have missed the one underlying element that connects the three primary conspiracy theories about the secret facility to the truth. For conspiracy theorists, in the captured-alien-and-UFOs narrative, the federal agency orchestrating the plot is the CIA. In the lunar-landing conspiracy the agency committing the fraud is NASA. In the underground tunnels and bunker plot, the evil operating force is the Department of Defense. And yet the one agency that plays an actual role in the underlying facts regarding all three of these conspiracy theories is the Atomic Energy Commission.

Why have conspiracy theorists missed this connection? Why has the Atomic Energy Commission escaped the scrutiny it deserves? The truth is hidden out in the desert at the Nevada Test Site. To borrow the metaphor of CIA spymaster James Angleton, that is where a “wilderness of mirrors” can be found. Angleton believed the Soviets spun lies from lies and in doing so were able to keep America’s intelligence agents lost in an illusory forest. In this same manner, throughout the Cold War the Atomic Energy Commission created its own wilderness of mirrors out in the Nevada desert, built from illusory half-truths and outright lies. The commission was able to send the public further and further away from the truth, not with “mirrors” but by rubber-stamping documents with Restricted Data, Secret, and Confidential, to keep them out of the public eye. The Area 51 conspiracy theories that were born of the Cold War—the ones peopled by aliens, piloted by UFOs, set in underground cities and on movie sets of the moon—these conspiracies all stand to aid and assist the Atomic Energy Commission in keeping the public away from secret truths.

It is no coincidence that the agency behind some of the most secret and dangerous acts out in the desert—at the Nevada Test and Training Range, the Nevada Test Site, and Area 51—[has changed its name four times](#). First it was called the Manhattan Project, during World War II. Then, in 1947, it changed its name to the Atomic Energy Commission, or AEC. In 1975 the agency was renamed the Energy Research and Development Administration, or ERDA. In 1977 it was renamed again, this time the Department of Energy, “the government department whose [mission is to advance technology and promote related innovation](#) in the United States,” which conveniently makes it sound more like Apple Corporation than the federal agency that produced seventy thousand nuclear bombs. Finally, in 2000, the nuclear weapons side of the agency got a new name for the fourth time: the National Nuclear Security Administration, or NNSA, a department nestled away inside the Department of Energy, or DOE. In August 2010,

even the Nevada Test Site changed its name. It is now called the Nevada National Security Site, or NNSS.

Since the National Security Act of 1947 reorganized government after the war, the Department of Defense, the CIA, the Army, the Navy, and the Air Force have all maintained their original names. The cabinet-level Departments of State, Labor, Transportation, Justice, and Education are all called today what they were when they were born. The Federal Bureau of Investigation has changed its name once since its [formal beginning in 1908](#). Originally it was called the Bureau of Investigation, or BOI. By changing the name of the nation's nuclear weapons agency four times since its creation in 1942, does the federal government hope the nefarious secrets of the Atomic Energy Commission will simply disappear? Certainly, many of its records have.

James Angleton spent his career trying to prove Soviet deception. Angleton argued that totalitarian governments had the capacity to confuse and manipulate the West to such a degree that the downfall of democracy was inevitable unless the Soviet deceivers could be stopped. Angleton's belief system made him paranoid and extreme. For three years, he imprisoned a Soviet double agent and former KGB officer named [Yuri Ivanovich Nosenko in a secret CIA prison](#) in the United States—subjecting Nosenko to varying degrees of torture in an effort to break him and get him to tell the "truth." (After passing multiple polygraph tests, Nosenko was eventually released and resettled under an assumed identity. [His true allegiance remains the subject of debate.](#)) The Nosenko affair brought about Angleton's personal downfall. He was fired and he left the Agency disgraced. Deception may be a game between governments but the consequences of engaging in it are, for some, very real.

During the Cold War, the Soviet Union did not have the monopoly on deception. In 1995, after President Clinton ordered his Advisory Committee on Human Radiation Experiments to look into Cold War secret-keeping at the Atomic Energy Commission, disturbing documentation was found. In a [memorandum dated May 1, 1995](#), the subject line chosen by Clinton's committee to sum up early AEC secret-keeping protocol read: "Official Classification Policy to Cover Up Embarrassment." One of the more damaging documents unearthed by Clinton's staff was a September 1947 memo by the Atomic Energy Commission's general manager John Derry. In a document Clinton's staff called the Derry Memo the Atomic Energy Commission ruled: "[All documents and correspondence](#) relating to matters of policy and procedures, the given knowledge of which might compromise or cause embarrassment to the Atomic Energy Commission and/or its contractors," should be classified secret or confidential.

Clinton's staff also discovered a document that read: "... there are a large number of papers which do not violate security, but do [cause considerable concern to the Atomic Energy Commission Insurance Branch.](#)" In other words, the commission classified many documents because it did not want to get sued. A particular problem arose, the memo continued, "in the declassification of [medical papers on human administration experiments done to date.](#)" To find a way around the problem the commission consulted with its "Atomic Energy Commission Insurance Branch." The conclusion was that if anything was going to be declassified it should first be "[rewritten or deleted](#)" so as not to

result in a legal claim.

The Internet is where conspiracy theorists share ideas, the great majority of which involve government plots. It is ironic that the Internet, originally called the DARPA Internet Program, was launched by the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (originally called ARPA) in 1969 as a means for the military to communicate digitally during the Vietnam War. [In 2011 there are](#) an estimated 1.96 billion Internet users worldwide—almost one-third of the people on the planet—and the most popular conspiracy Web site based in America is AboveTopSecret.com. According to CEO Bill Irvine, the site sees five million visitors each month. AboveTopSecret.com has approximately 2.4 million pages of content, including 10.6 million individual posts. The Web site's motto is [Deny Ignorance](#), and its members say they are people who “rage against the mindless status quo.”

Of 25,000 AboveTopSecret.com users polled in 2011, the second most popular discussion thread involves extraterrestrials and UFO cover-ups at Area 51. But the single most popular discussion thread at AboveTop Secret.com is something called the New World Order. According to Bill Irvine, this idea has gained momentum at an “astonishing rate” over the past two years. Irvine says it serves as a nexus conspiracy for many others, including those based at Area 51.

The premise of [the New World Order conspiracy theory](#) is that a powerful, secretive cabal of men are aspiring to take over the planet through a totalitarian, one-world government. Some believers of the New World Order call it the Fourth Reich because, they say, it will be similar to Germany’s Third Reich, including Nazi eugenics, militarism, and Orwellian monitoring of citizens’ private lives. As outlandish as this New World Order conspiracy may seem to non-conspiracy thinkers, it touches upon the original secret at Area 51—the real reason why the U.S. government cannot admit that Area 51 exists.

From Camera Bays to Weapons Bays, the Air Force Takes Control

What happened at Area 51 during the 1980s? Most of the work remains classified and very little else is known. One of the [most sensational near catastrophes](#) to happen at Area 51 during this time has never before been revealed—notably not even hinted at in Area 51 legend or lore. It involved [a mock helicopter attack](#) at the guard station that separates the Nevada Test Site from Area 51. So serious was the situation, which included semiautomatic weapons and a nuclear bomb, that both the Pentagon and the White House stepped in.

One of the greatest potential threats to Area 51 in terms of an enemy attack would be from low-flying aircraft or helicopter. "A helicopter would be the aerial vehicle of choice," says Barnes. "Whereas an airplane would be seen airborne long before it reached its target, a helicopter could be trucked in and then launched only a short distance from the restricted area. In that case, the helicopter would breach the security protection before defending aircraft from Area 51 could become airborne." Which is why, to prepare against such threats, security guards like Richard Mingus would often participate in counterattack tests using large low-flying helium balloons as targets. "The balloons simulated helicopters," Mingus explains. The tests used aging V-100 Commando armored personnel carriers, complete with mounted machine guns, left over from the Vietnam War. With four-wheel drive, high clearance, and excellent mobility, the retired amphibious armored car would ferry Mingus and his team of heavily armed sensitive assignment specialists as far as they could get up the mountain range, until the terrain became too steep.

"We'd park the V-100, run the rest of the way up the mountain with machine guns, set up on top of the mountain, and fire at these forty-inch weather balloons. There'd always be a driver, a supervisor, and a loader on the SAS team. We each had an assignment. One guy kept score." Scores were important because the stakes were so high. The Nevada Test Site was the single most prolific atomic bombing facility in the world. It had a three-decade-long history of impeccable security, as did Area 51. Which is what made the breach that Mingus witnessed so radical.

It was a scorching-hot day during the Ronald Reagan presidency, the kind of day at the test site when people knew not to touch metal surfaces outside or they'd wind up getting burned. Mingus believes it was 1982 but can't say for sure, as the event was specifically kept off of his Department of Energy logbook. No longer a security guard, Mingus had been promoted to security operations coordinator for Lawrence Livermore Laboratory. At the time the near catastrophe occurred, the rank-and-file security entourage was escorting

a nuclear device down Rainier Mesa Road. [The bomb, one of eighteen](#) exploded underground at the Nevada Test Site in 1982, was going to be exploded in an underground shaft. As the [five-man security response team](#) trailed behind the bomb transport vehicle (in an armored vehicle of its own), they made sure to keep a short distance behind the nuclear device, as was protocol. "There was a driver, a supervisor, a gunner operating the turret, a loader making sure the ammo feeds into the machine guns and doesn't jam, and two riflemen," Richard Mingus explains. There is always distance between the security team and the bomb: "One of the riflemen handles the tear gas and the other works the grenade launcher. You can shoot both weapons from either the shoulder or the hip. They'll hit a target fifty or seventy-five yards away because if you find yourself under attack and having to shoot, you want distance. You don't want the tear gas coming back and getting you in the nose."

After the security response team and the nuclear bomb arrived at that day's ground zero, a team of engineers and crane operators began the process of getting the weapon safely and securely inside an approximately eight-hundred-foot-deep hole that had been drilled into the desert floor and would house the bomb. Inserting a live nuclear weapon into a narrow, five-foot-diameter shaft required extraordinary precision by a single engineer operating a heavy metal crane. There was no room for error. The crane worked in hundred-foot increments, which in test site—speak were called picks. Only after the second pick was reached, meaning the bomb was two hundred feet down, was the security eased up. Then and only then would two of the men from the response team be released. Until that moment, the bomb was considered unsecured.

Richard Mingus had been part of dozens of ground zero teams over the past quarter of a century but on this particular morning circa 1982 Mingus was coordinating security operations for Livermore from inside a building called the control point, which was located in Area 6, ten miles from the bomb. The nuclear bomb was just about to reach the second pick when chaos entered the scene.

"I was sitting at my desk at the control point when I got the call," Mingus says. "Dick Stock, the device systems engineer supervising the shot at ground zero, says over the phone, 'We're under attack over at the device assembly building!'" In the 1980s, the device assembly building was the place where the bomb components were married with the nuclear material. Because there were several nuclear weapons tests scheduled for that same week, Mingus knew there were likely additional nuclear weapons in the process of being put together at the device assembly building, in Area 27, which Mingus had good reason to believe was now under attack. "Dick Stock said he heard the information coming over the radios that the guys on the security response team were carrying" on their belts. Now it was up to Mingus to make the call about what to do next.

In the twenty-six years he had been employed at the test site, Richard Mingus had worked his way up from security guard to Livermore's operations coordinator. He was an American success story. After his father died in 1941, Mingus dropped out of high school to work the coal mines. Eventually he went back to school, got a diploma, and joined the Air Force to serve in the Korean War. At the test site, Mingus had paid his dues. For years he stood guard over classified projects in the desert, through scorching-hot summers and

cold winters, all the while guarding nuclear bombs and lethal plutonium-dispersal tests. By the mid-1960s, Mingus had saved enough overtime pay to buy a home for his family, which now included the young son he and Gloria had always dreamed about. By the mid-1970s, Mingus had enough money to purchase a second home, a hunting cabin in the woods. By the early 1980s, he had been promoted so many times, he qualified for GS-12, which in federal service hierarchy is only three rungs below the top grade, GS-15. "I attended the school for nuclear weapons orientation at Kirtland Air Force Base and had passed a series of advanced courses," Mingus says. "But nothing, and I mean nothing, prepares you for the experience of thinking the nuclear material you are guarding is under attack."

During that chaotic morning, Mingus knew all he could afford to focus on was the bomb in the hole. "I thought to myself, Dick Stock said the bomb is almost two picks down the hole. We're under attack here. What's best? I asked myself. If someone put a gun to the head of the crane operator and said, 'Get it out' they'd have a live nuclear bomb in their possession. I knew I had to make a decision. Was it safer to pull the bomb up or keep sending it down? I decided it was better to have a big problem at ground zero than somewhere else so I gave the order. I said, 'Keep the device going down.'"

Mingus had a [quick conversation with Joe Behne](#), the test director, about what was going on. The men agreed Mingus should call the head of security for the Department of Energy, a woman by the name of Pat Williams. "She said, 'Yes, we hear the same thing and we have to assume the same thing. We are under attack as far as I know,'" Mingus recalls.

Next Mingus called Larry Ferderber, the resident manager of the Nevada Test Site for the Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory. "Two minutes later Ferderber confirms the same thing, he says, 'I hear we're under attack.'" Mingus and Behne went through the protocol checklist. "Joe and I discussed going down to the basement and destroying the crypto which was in my building. Then we decided that it was too early for that. When you look out and you see guns firing, like on the *USS Pueblo*, then it's time to start destroying things. But not before."

Instead, Mingus called Bill Baker, the man who ran the device assembly building. With an attack now confirmed by the spokesperson for the Department of Energy and the test site manager, Mingus had to work fast. "I asked Bill Baker what was going on," Mingus recalls. "He said, real calm, 'We're fine over here. I'm looking out the window. I can see Captain Williams standing outside.'" Mingus got off the telephone and had another discussion with Joe Behne. "I told Joe, I said, 'We can't buy his word. He could be under duress. He could have a knife at his neck or a gun at his head.'"

Meanwhile, just a few miles to the east, hovering several hundred feet over the guard post between the test site and Area 51, a group of men were leaning out of a helicopter firing semiautomatic weapons at the guards on the ground. But the bullets in their weapons were blanks, not real ammunition, and the men in the helicopter were security guards from Wackenhut Security, not enemies of the state. Wackenhut Security had decided to conduct a mock attack of an access point to Area 51 to test the system for weaknesses. [With astounding lack of foresight, Wackenhut Security](#) had not bothered to

inform the Department of Energy of their mock-attack plans.

Back at the control point, in Area 6, Richard Mingus's telephone rang. It was Pat Williams, the woman in charge of security for the Department of Energy. "She was real brief," Mingus says. "She said, 'It was a test and we didn't know about it.' Then she just hung up." Mingus was astonished. "Looking back, in all my years, I have to say it was one of the scariest things I'd ever run into. It was like kids were running the test site that day." Mingus didn't write up any paperwork on the incident. "I don't believe I made a note in my record book," he says. Instead, Mingus kept working. "We had a nuclear bomb to get down into its hole and explode." Test director Joe Behne believes paperwork exists. "I know it's in the record. It was not a minor incident," he says. "For those of us that were there that day it was almost unbelievable, except we believed [briefly] it was real—that Ground Zero was being attacked from a warlike enemy. The incident is bound to be in the logbooks. All kinds of people got calls."

Far from the test site, things did not return to calm so quickly. The Department of Energy notified the FBI, who notified the Pentagon and the White House that Area 51 was under attack. The Navy's nuclear-armed submarines were put on alert, which meant that Tomahawk cruise missiles were now targeting the Nevada Test Site and Area 51. Crisis was averted before things elevated further, but it was a close call. Troy Wade was at the Pentagon at the time and told Mingus he "remembers hearing about how high up it went." Guards from Wackenhut Security lost their jobs, but like most everything at Area 51, there were no leaks to the press. Only with the publication of this book has the incident come to light.

The nuclear bomb Mingus was in charge of overseeing was live and not secured, meaning an actual attack on the test site at that moment would have raised the possibility of a nuclear weapon being hijacked by an enemy of the nation. But there was another reason that the nuclear submarines were put on alert that day: the extremely sensitive nature of a black project the Air Force was running at Area 51. The top secret aircraft being tested there was the single most important invention in U.S. airpower since the Army started its aeronautical division in 1907. Parked on the tarmac at Area 51 was the F-117 Nighthawk, the nation's first stealth bomber.

The F-117 would radically change the way America fought wars. As a Lockheed official explained at a banquet honoring the F-117 in April of 2008, "Before the advent of stealth, war planners had to determine how many sorties were necessary to take out a single target. After the invention of the F-117 stealth bomber, that changed. It became, How many targets can we take out on a single sortie?"

Lockheed physicist Edward Lovick worked on each rendition of the stealth bomber, which began in the early 1970s with Harvey, a prototype aircraft named after the Jimmy Stewart film about an invisible rabbit. Harvey's stealth qualities were initially engineered [using slide rules and calculators](#), the same way Lockheed had developed the A-12 Oxcart. Only with the emergence of the mainframe computer, in 1974, did those tools become obsolete. "Two Lockheed engineers, named Denys Overholser and Dick Scherrer, realized that it might be possible to design a stealth aircraft that would take advantage of some of the results of a computer's calculations," Lovick says. "In 1974 computers were

relatively new and most of them were the size of a car. Our computer at Lockheed ran on punch cards and had less than 60 K worth of memory." Still, the computer could do what humans could not do, and that was endless calculations.

"The concept behind the computer program involved mirrors reflecting mirrors," Lovick explains. Mathematician Bill Schroeder set to work writing Lockheed's original computer code, called Echo. If the CIA's James Jesus Angleton was correct and the Soviet security forces really were using black propaganda to create a "wilderness of mirrors" to ensnare the West, the Air Force was going to create its own set of reflective surfaces to beat the Russians back with the F-117 stealth bomber. "We designed flat, faceted panels and had them act like mirrors to scatter radar waves away from the plane," Lovick says. "It was a radical idea and it worked."

The next, on-paper incarnation of the F-117 Nighthawk began in 1974 and was called the Hopeless Diamond, so named because it resembled the Hope Diamond and because Lockheed engineers didn't have much hope it would actually fly. After the Hopeless Diamond concept went through a series of redesigns it became a full-scale mock-up of an aircraft and was renamed Have Blue. T. D. Barnes was the man in charge of radar testing Lockheed's proof-of-concept stealth bomber at Area 51. "Lockheed handed it over to us and we put it up on the pole," Barnes says. "It was a very weird, very crude-looking thing that actually looked a lot like the ship from *Twenty Thousand Leagues Under the Sea*. Our job was to look at it from every angle using radar to see how it showed up on radar." Radars had advanced considerably since the early days of the Cold War. "Initially, it was as visible as a big old barn," says Barnes. So the Have Blue mock-up was sent back to the Skunk Works for more fine-tuning. Several months later, a new version of the mock-up arrived at Area 51. "Lockheed had changed the shape of the aircraft and a lot of the angles of the panels. Once we put the new mock-up on the pole it appeared to us as something around the size of a crow." There was a final round of redesigns, then the airplane came back to Area 51 again. "We put it up on the pole and all we saw was the pole." Now it was time for Lockheed to present the final rendition of the Have Blue to the Air Force, in hopes of landing the contract to build the nation's first stealth bomber.

The director of science and engineering at Skunk Works, a man named Ed Martin, went to Lovick for some advice. "Ed Martin asked me how I thought the aircraft might appear on enemy radar. I explained that if the Oxcart showed up as being roughly equivalent to the size of a man, the Have Blue would appear to a radar like a seven-sixteenth-inch metal sphere—roughly the size of a ball bearing." Ed Martin loved Lovick's analogy. A ball bearing. That was something a person could relate to. Before Martin left for Washington, DC, Lovick went to the Lockheed tool shop and borrowed a bag of ball bearings. He wanted Ed Martin to have a visual reference to share with the Air Force officials there. "Later, I learned the ball-bearing illustration was so effective that the customers began rolling the little silvery spheres across the conference table. The analogy has become legendary, often still used to make an important visual point about the stealthy F-117 Nighthawk with its high-frequency radar signature that is as tiny as a ball bearing." In 1976, Lockheed won the contract. Immediately, they began manufacturing two

Have Blue aircraft in the legendary Skunk Works Building 82. [The man in charge of engineering, fabrication, and assembly](#) of the pair of stealth bombers was Bob Murphy, the same person who twenty-one years earlier had begun his career in a pair of overalls at Area 51, working for Kelly Johnson as chief mechanic on the U-2.

Testing a bomber plane would be a radically different process from testing a spy plane, and the F-117 was the first bomber to be flight-tested at Area 51. Most notably, the new bomber would require testing for accuracy in dropping bombs on targets. For nearly twenty-five years, the CIA and the Air Force had been flying spy planes and drones in the Box. But there was simply not enough flat square footage [at Groom Lake to drop bombs](#). There was also the issue of sound. With multiple projects going on at Area 51, not everyone was cleared for the F-117.

A second site was needed, and for this, the Air Force turned to the Department of Energy, formerly the Atomic Energy Commission. A land-use deal was struck allowing the Air Force [to use a preexisting, little-known bombing range](#) that the Atomic Energy Commission had quietly been using for decades. It was deep in the desert, within the Connecticut-size Nevada Test and Training Range. Located seventy miles northwest of Area 51, the Tonopah Test Range was almost in Death Valley and had been in use as a bombing range and missile-launch facility for Sandia Laboratories since 1957. The Department of Energy had no trouble carving a top secret partition out of the 624-square-mile range for the Air Force's new bomber project. To be kept entirely off the books, the secondary black site was named Area 52. Like Area 51, Area 52 has never been officially acknowledged.

The sparsely populated, high-desert outpost of Tonopah, Nevada, was once the nation's most important producer of gold and silver ore. In 1903, eighty-six million dollars in metals came out of the area's mines, nearly two billion in 2011 dollars, and at the turn of the century, thirty thousand people rushed to the mile-high desert city seeking treasure there. Tonopah's nearest neighbor, the town of Beatty, where T. D. Barnes lived in the 1960s, became known in 1907 as [the Chicago of the West](#). For several years the Las Vegas & Tonopah Railroad maintained a rail line between the two cities, which at one point was the West's busiest rail line. And then, almost overnight and like so many towns ensnared in the gold rush, Tonopah went bust. Within ten years, it was just a few families too many to be called a ghost town. Even the railroad company ripped up its steel tracks and carted them away for better use. Packs of wild horses and antelope came back down from the mountains and began to graze as they had before the boom, pulling weeds and scrub from the parched desert landscape between the Cactus and the Kawich mountain ranges. When a group of weaponeers from Sandia descended upon the area four decades later, in 1956, they were thrilled with what they found. Tonopah was a perfect place for [secret testing \[that\] could be conducted safely and securely](#). Years later, boasting to their corporate shareholders, the Sandians, as they called themselves, [would quote Saint Paul of Tarsus](#) to sum up their mission at Tonopah Test Range: "test all things; hold fast that which is good."

Between 1957 and 1964, Sandia dropped 680 bombs and launched 555 rockets from what was now officially but quietly called the Sandia National Laboratories' Outpost at

Tonopah. In 1963, Sandia conducted a series of top secret plutonium-dispersal tests, similar to the Project 57 test that had been conducted at Groom Lake just a few years earlier. Called [Operation Roller Coaster, three dirty bomb tests](#), were performed to collect biological data on three hundred animals placed downwind from aerosolized plutonium clouds generated from three Sandia nuclear weapons. With seven hundred Sandians hard at work in the desert flats for Operation Roller Coaster, a report called it Sandia's "highlight of 1963." Tonopah was so far removed from the already far removed and restricted sites at Area 51 and the Nevada Test Site that no one outside a need-to-know had ever even heard of it.

In October of 1979, [construction for an F-117 Nighthawk support facility](#) at Tonopah began inside Area 52. The facility at Area 51 served as a model for the facility being built at Area 52. Similarly styled runways and taxiways were built, as well as a maintenance hangar, using crews already cleared for work on Nevada Test Site contracts. Sixteen mobile homes were carted in, and several permanent support buildings were constructed. Sandia didn't want to draw attention to the project, so the Air Force officers assigned to the base were ordered to [grow their hair long and to grow beards](#). Sporting a hippie look, as opposed to a military look, was less likely to draw unwanted attention to a highly classified project cropping up in the outer reaches of the Nevada Test Site. That way, the men could do necessary business in the town of Tonopah.

The two facilities, Area 51 and Area 52, worked in tandem to get the F-117 battle-ready. When the mock attack at the guard gate at Area 51 occurred, in 1982, [test flights of the F-117](#)—which only ever happened at night—were already in full swing. For some weeks, a debate raged as to how an act of idiocy by a small group of Wackenhut Security guards nearly outed a billion-dollar aircraft as well as two top secret military test facilities that had remained secret for thirty years. An estimated ten thousand personnel had managed to keep the F-117 program in the dark. There was a collective mopping of the brow and succinct orders to move on, and then, two years later, the program was nearly outed again when an Air Force general broke protocol and decided to take a ride in one of Area 51's prized MiG fighter jets.

The death of [Lieutenant General Robert M. Bond](#) on April 26, 1984, in Area 25 of the Nevada Test Site was an avoidable tragedy. With 267 combat missions under his belt, 44 in Korea and 213 in Vietnam, Robert M. Bond was a highly decorated Air Force pilot revered by many. At the time of his accident, he was vice commander of Air Force Systems Command at Andrews Air Force Base, in Maryland, which made him a VIP when it came to the F-117 program going on at Area 51. In March of 1984, General Bond arrived at the secret facility to see how things were progressing. The general's visit should have been no different than those made by the scores of generals whose footsteps Bond was following in, visits that began back in 1955 with [men like General James "Jimmy" Doolittle](#) and General Curtis LeMay. The dignitaries were always treated in high style; they would eat, drink, and bear witness to top secret history being made. Following in this tradition, General Bond's first visit went without incident. But in addition to being impressed by the F-117 Nighthawk, General Bond was equally fascinated by the MiG program, which was still going on at Area 51. In the fifteen years since the CIA had gotten

its hands on Munir Redfa's MiG-21, the Agency and the Air Force had acquired a fleet of Soviet-made aircraft including an MiG-15, an MiG-17, and, most recently, the supersonic MiG-23. Barnes says, "We called it the Flogger. It was a very fast plane, almost Mach 3. But it was squirrelly. Hard to fly. It could kill you if you weren't well trained."

On a visit to Area 51 the following month, General Bond requested to fly the MiG-23. "[There was some debate about whether the general](#) should be allowed to fly," Barnes explains. "Every hour in a Soviet airplane was precious. We did not have spare parts. We could not afford unnecessary wear and tear. Usually a pilot would train for at least two weeks before flying a MiG. Instead, General Bond got a briefing while sitting inside the plane with an instructor pilot saying, 'Do this, do that.'" In other words, instead of undergoing two weeks of training, General Bond pulled rank.

Just a few hours later, General Bond was seated in the cockpit of the MiG, flying high over Groom Lake. All appeared to be going well, but just as he crossed over into the Nevada Test Site, Bond radioed the tower on an emergency channel. "I'm out of control," General Bond said in distress. The MiG was going approximately Mach 2.5. "I've got to get out, I'm out of control" [were the general's last words](#). The MiG had gone into a spin and was on its way down. Bond ejected from the airplane but was apparently killed when his helmet strap broke his neck. The general and the airplane crashed into Area 25 at Jackass Flats, where the land was still highly contaminated from the secret NERVA tests that had gone on there.

General Bond's death opened the possible exposure of five secret programs and facilities, including the MiG program, the F-117 program, Area 51, Area 52, and the nuclear reactor explosions at Jackass Flats. Unlike the deaths of CIA pilots flying out of Area 51, which could be concealed as generic training accidents, the death of a general required detailed explanation. If the press asked too many questions, it could trigger a federal investigation. One program had to come out of the dark to keep the others hidden. The Pentagon made the decision to out the MiG. Quietly, [Fred Hoffman, a military writer](#) with the Associated Press, was "leaked" information that Bond had in fact died at the controls of a Soviet MiG-23. The emphasis was put on how the Pentagon was able to obtain Soviet-bloc aircraft and weaponry from allies in Eastern Europe, the Middle East, and Asia. "The government has always been reluctant to discuss such acquisitions for fear of embarrassing the friendly donors, but the spotlight was turned anew on the subject after a three-star Air Force general was killed April 26 in a Nevada plane crash that was quickly cloaked in secrecy," Hoffman wrote, adding "sources who spoke on condition they remain anonymous have indicated the MiG-23, the most advanced Soviet warplane ever to fall permanently into U.S. hands, was supplied to this country by Egypt."

With this partial cover, the secrets of Area 51, Area 52, Area 25, and the F-117 were safe. It would be another four years before the public had any idea the F-117 Nighthawk existed. In November of 1988, a grainy image of the arrowhead-shaped, futuristic-looking craft was released to an awestruck public despite the fact that variations of the F-117 had been flying [at Area 51 and Area 52 for eleven years](#).

By 1974, the Agency had ceded control of Area 51. Some insiders say the transition occurred in 1979, but since Area 51 does not officially exist, the Air Force won't officially

say when this handover occurred. Certainly this had to have happened by the time the stealth bomber program was up and running; the F-117 program was the holy grail of Pentagon black projects—and, during that time period, the Air Force dominated Area 51. Having no business in bombs, the CIA maintained a much smaller presence there than historically it had before. During the 1970s, the Agency's work concentrated largely on pilotless aircraft, or drones. Hank Meierdierck, the man who wrote the manual for the U-2 at Area 51, was in charge of one such CIA drone project, which began in late 1969. [Code-named Aquiline](#), the six-foot-long pilotless aircraft was disguised to look like an eagle or buzzard in flight. It carried a small television camera in its nose and photo equipment and air-sampling sensors under its wings. Some insiders say it had been designed to test for radiation in the air as well as to gather electronic intelligence, or ELINT. But Gene Poteat, the first CIA officer ever assigned to the National Reconnaissance Office, offers a different version of events. "Spy satellites flying over the Caspian Sea delivered us images of an oddly shaped, giant, multi-engined watercraft moving around down there on the surface. No one had any idea what this thing was for, but you can be sure the Agency wanted to find out. That is what the [original purpose of Aquiline](#) was for," Poteat reveals. "To take close-up pictures of the vehicle so we could discern what it was and what the Soviets might be thinking of using it for. Since we had no idea what it was, we made up a name for it. We called it the Caspian Sea Monster," Poteat explains. Project Aquiline remains a classified project, but in September of 2008, *BBC News* magazine produced a story about a [Cold War Soviet hydrofoil named Ekranopian](#), which is exactly what the CIA's Aquiline drone was designed to spy on.

At Area 51, Hank Meierdierck selected his former hunting partner [Jim Freedman to assist him on the Aquiline drone](#) program. "It flew low and was meant to follow along communication lines in foreign countries and intercept messages," Freedman says. "I believe the plan was to launch it from a submarine while it was waiting in port." The Aquiline team consisted of three pilots trained to remotely control the bird, with Freedman offering operational support. "Hank got the thing to fly," Freedman recalls. Progress was slow and "it crash-landed a lot." The program ended when the defense contractor, McDonnell Douglas, gave a bid for the job that Meierdierck felt was [ninety-nine million dollars over budget](#). McDonnell Douglas would not budge on their bid so Hank recommended that the CIA cancel Project Aquiline, which he said they did. After the program was over, Hank Meierdierck managed to take a mock-up of the Aquiline drone home with him from the area. "He had it sitting on his bar at his house down in Las Vegas," Freedman recalls.

Project Aquiline was not the CIA's first attempt to gather intelligence using cover from the animal kingdom. [Project Ornithopter](#) involved a birdlike drone designed to blend in with nature by flapping its wings. And a third, even smaller drone was designed to look like a crow and land on windowsills in order to photograph what was going on inside CIA-targeted rooms. The tiniest drone program, orchestrated in the early 1970s, was [Project Insectohtopter](#), an insect-size aerial vehicle that looked like a dragonfly in flight. Insectohtopter had an emerald green minifuselage and, like Ornithopter, flapped its wings, which were powered by a miniature engine that ran on a tiny amount of gas. Through its

Office of Research and Development, or ORD, the CIA had also tried turning live birds and cats into spies. In one such program, CIA-trained pigeons flew around Washington, DC, with bird-size cameras strapped to their necks. The project failed after the extra weight tired out the pigeons and they hobbled back to headquarters on foot instead of in flight. Another CIA endeavor, [Acoustic Kitty](#), involved putting electronic listening devices in house cats. But that project also backfired after too many cats strayed from their missions in search of food. One acoustic kitty got run over by a car. The Agency's pilotless-vehicle projects were forever growing in ambition and in size. One robotic drone from the early 1970s, a project financed with DARPA, was disguised to look like an elephant—ready to do battle in the jungles of Vietnam.

Several projects, like Aquiline, involved only a handful of special-access personnel. But a few other projects took place on a considerably larger scale. In July of 1974, the CIA's Special Activities Division filed a memorandum of agreement with the Air Force to set up a classified project at Area 51 that was extensive enough that it required five hangars of its own. Aerospace historian Peter Merlin, who wrote monographs for NASA, explains: "The top-secret project, with a classified code-name, was expected to last about one year. Six permanent personnel were assigned to the test site, with up to 20 personnel on site during peak periods of short duration activity." The Air Force designated Hangar 13 through Hangar 17, located at the south end of the facility, as CIA-only. What mysterious project the CIA was working on there, those without a need-to-know have no idea. The work remains classified; rumor is that it was a Mach 5 or Mach 6 drone.

Some operations at Groom Lake in the 1970s involved the Agency's desire to detect facilities for weapons of mass destruction, or WMD, including bioweapons and chemical weapons, before those weapons facilities were in full-production mode. This work, the CIA felt, could ideally be performed by laying sensors on the ground that were capable of "sniffing" the air. Since the 1950s, the Agency had been advancing its use of [sensor drones to detect WMD signatures](#) by monitoring changes in the air, the soil, and an area's energy consumption. [Early efforts had been made using U-2 pilots](#), who had to leave the safety of high-altitude flight and get down dangerously low in order to shoot javelinlike sensors into the earth. But those operations, part of [Operation Tobasco, risked exposure](#). Several U-2 pilots had already been shot down. Because these delicate sensors needed to be accurately placed very close in to the WMD-producing facilities, it was an ideal job for a stealthy, low-flying drone.

Decades before anyone had rekindled an interest in drones, the CIA saw endless possibilities in them. But to advance drone technology required money, and in 1975, a Senate committee investigating illegal activity inside the CIA, chaired by Senator Frank Church and known as the Church Committee, [did considerable damage to the Agency's reputation](#) as far as the general public was concerned. Budgets were thinned. During Jimmy Carter's presidency, which began in 1977, CIA discretionary budgets were at an all-time low, and the CIA didn't get very far with its drones—until late 1979, when the Agency learned about a lethal anthrax accident at a "[probable biological warfare research, production and storage installation](#)" in Sverdlovsk, Russia—the same location where Gary Powers had been taking spy photographs when his U-2 was shot down nineteen years

before. As a result of the Sverdlovsk bioweapons accident, the CIA determined that as many as a hundred people had died from inhaling anthrax spores. The incident gave the CIA's drone program some legs. But without interest from the Air Force, drones were perceived largely as the Agency's playthings.

For twenty-five years, from 1974 to 1999, the CIA and the Air Force rarely worked together on drone projects at Area 51. This lack of cooperation was evident, and succinctly summed up in an interview Secretary of Defense Robert Gates gave *Time* magazine in April of 2008. Gates said that when he was running the CIA, in 1992, he discovered that "the Air Force would not co-fund with CIA a vehicle without a pilot." That changed in the winter of 2000, when the two organizations came together to work on a new drone project at Area 51, one that would forever change the face of warfare and take both agencies toward General Henry "Hap" Arnold's Victory Over Japan Day prediction that one day in the future, wars would be fought by aircraft without pilots sitting inside. In the year 2000, that future was now.

The project involved retrofitting a CIA reconnaissance drone, called Predator, with antitank missiles called [Hellfire missiles](#), supplied by the army. The target would be a shadowy and obscure terrorist the CIA was considering for assassination. He lived in Afghanistan, and [his name was Osama bin Laden](#).

Revelation

It was January of 2001, nine months before the terrorist attacks of 9/11, and the director of the CIA's Counterterrorism Center, Cofer Black, had a serious problem. The CIA had been considering assassinating Osama bin Laden with the Predator, but until that point, the unmanned aerial vehicle had been used for reconnaissance only, not targeted assassination. Because two technologies needed to be merged—the flying drone and the laser-guided precision missile—engineers and aerodynamicists had concerns. Specifically, they worried that the propulsion from the missile might send the drone astray or the missile off course. And the CIA needed a highly precise weapon with little possibility of collateral damage. The public would perceive killing a terrorist one way, but they would likely perceive killing that terrorist's neighbors in an altogether different light. This new weaponized drone technology was tested at Area 51; the development program remains classified. After getting decent results, both the CIA and the Air Force were confident that the missiles unleashed from the drone could reach their targets.

Along came another hurdle to overcome, one that was unfolding not in the desert but in Washington, DC. The newly elected administration of President George W. Bush realized that it had no policy when it came to taking out terrorists with drones. Osama bin Laden was known to be the architect of the 1998 U.S. embassy suicide bombings in East Africa, which killed more than 225 people, including Americans. He masterminded the suicide bombing of the USS Cole and had officially declared war against the United States. But targeted assassination by a U.S. intelligence agency was illegal, per President Ronald Reagan's Executive Order 12333, and since the situation required serious examination, State Department lawyers got involved.

There was one avenue to consider in support of the targeted-killing operation, and that was the fact that the FBI had a bounty on the man's head. By February of 2001, the State Department gave the go-ahead for the assassination. Then State Department lawyers warned the CIA of another problem, the same one that had originally sent the Predator drone to Area 51 for field tests; namely, potential collateral damage. The State Department needed to know how many bin Laden family members and guests staying on the compound the CIA was targeting could be killed in a drone attack. Bin Laden's compound was called Tarnak Farm, and a number of high-profile Middle Eastern royal family members were known to visit there.

To determine collateral damage, the CIA and the Air Force teamed up for an unusual building project on the outer reaches of Area 51. They engineered a full-scale mock-up of Osama bin Laden's compound in Afghanistan on which to test the results of a drone strike. But while engineers were at work, CIA director George Tenet decided that taking

out Osama bin Laden with a Hellfire missile-equipped Predator drone would be a mistake. This was a decision the CIA would come to regret.

Immediately after the terrorist attacks of September 11, 2001, the Pentagon knew that it needed drones to help fight the war on terror, which meant it needed help from the CIA. For decades, the Air Force had been thumbing its nose at drones. The pride of the Air Force had always been pilots, not robots. But the CIA had been researching, developing, and advancing drone technology at Area 51 for decades. The CIA had sent drones on more than six hundred reconnaissance missions in the Bosnian conflict, beginning in 1995. [CIA drones had provided intelligence for NATO forces](#) in the 1999 Kosovo air campaign, collecting intelligence, searching for targets, and keeping an eye on Kosovar-Albanian refugee camps. The CIA Predator had helped war planners interpret the chaos of the battlefield there. Now, the Air Force needed the CIA's help going into Afghanistan with drones.

[The first reconnaissance drone mission in the war on terror](#) was flown over Kabul, Afghanistan, just one week after 9/11, on September 18, 2001. Three weeks later, the first Hellfire-equipped Predator drone was flown over Kandahar. The rules of aerial warfare had changed overnight. America's stealth bombers were never going to locate Osama bin Laden and his top commanders hiding out in mountain compounds. Now pilotless drones would be required to seek out and assassinate the most wanted men in the world.

Although drones had been developed and tested at Area 51, Area 52, and Indian Springs for nearly fifty years, the world at large would come to learn about them only in November of 2002, when a drone strike in Yemen made headlines around the world. Qaed Salim Sinan al-Harithi was a wanted man. A citizen of Yemen and a senior al-Qaeda operative, al-Harithi had also been behind the planning and bombing of the USS *Cole* two years before. On the morning of November 2, 2002, al-Harithi and five colleagues drove through the vast desert expanse of Yemen's northwest province Marib oblivious to the fact that they were being watched by eyes in the skies in the form of a Predator drone flying several miles above them.

The Predator launched its missile at the target and landed a direct hit. The al-Qaeda operatives and the vehicle were instantly reduced to a black heap of burning metal. It was an assassination plot straight out of a Tom Clancy novel, except that it was so real and so dramatic—the first visual proof that al-Qaeda leaders could be targeted and killed—that Assistant Secretary of Defense Paul Wolfowitz began bragging about the Hellfire strike to CNN. The drone attack in Yemen was "[a very successful tactical operation](#)," Wolfowitz said. Except it was supposed to be a quiet, unconfirmed assassination. Wolfowitz's bravado made Yemen upset. Brigadier General Yahya M. Al Mutawakel, the deputy secretary general for the People's Congress Party in Yemen, gave an [exclusive interview to the Christian Science Monitor](#) explaining that the Pentagon had broken a secrecy agreement between the two nations. "This is why it is so difficult to make deals with the United States," Al Mutawakel explained. "They don't consider the internal circumstances in Yemen. In security matters, you don't want to alert the enemy."

Yemen pushed back against the United States by outing the secret inner workings of the operation. It was the U.S. ambassador to Yemen, Edmund Hull, an employee of the

State Department, who had masterminded the plot, officials in Yemen explained. Hull had spearheaded the intelligence-gathering efforts, a job more traditionally reserved for the CIA. [Hull spoke Arabic](#). He had roots in the country and knew people who knew local tribesmen in the desert region of Marib. The State Department, Yemen claimed, was the agency that had bribed local tribesmen into handing over information on al-Harethi, which allowed the CIA to know exactly where the terrorist would be driving and when. Revealing Ambassador Hull to be the central organizing player in the drone strike exposed the Department of State as having a hand in not just the espionage game but targeted assassination as well. Surprisingly, little fuss was made about any of this, despite the fact that diplomats are supposed to avoid assassination plots.

In political circles, Ambassador Hull was greatly embarrassed. He refused to comment on his role in what signaled a sea change in U.S. military assets with wings. The 2002 drone strike in Yemen was the first of its kind in the war on terror, but little did the public know that hundreds more drone strikes would soon follow. The next one went down the very next week, when a Predator targeted and killed al-Qaeda's number-three, [Mohammed Atef, in Jalabad, Afghanistan](#). As the war on terror progressed, some drone strikes would be official while others would go unmentioned. But never again would the CIA or the State Department admit to having a hand in any of them. When Mohammed Atef was killed, initial reports said a traditional bomber aircraft had targeted and destroyed Atef's home. Only later was the strike revealed as being the work of a Predator drone and a [targeted assassination spearheaded by the CIA](#).

Almost everything that has happened at Area 51 since 1968 remains classified but it is generally understood among men who formerly worked there that once the war on terror began, flight-testing new drones at Area 51 and Area 52 moved full speed ahead. This new way of conducting air strikes, from an aircraft without a pilot inside, represented a fundamental reconfiguration of the U.S. Air Force fighting force and would continue to remain paramount to Air Force operations going forward. This meant that a major element of the drone program, i.e., the CIA's role in overhead, needed to return quietly and quickly into the "black." The Air Force has a clear-cut role in wartime. But the operations of the CIA, a clandestine organization at its core, can never be overtly defined in real time. Remarkably, after nearly fifty years, the CIA and the Air Force were back in the business of overhead, and they would model their partnership on the early spy plane projects at Area 51. As the war on terror expanded, budgets for drone programs went from thin to virtually limitless almost overnight. As far as developing weapons using cutting-edge science and technology was concerned, it was 1957 post-Sputnik all over again.

No longer used only for espionage, the [Predator got a new designation](#). Previously it had been the RQ-1 Predator: *R* for reconnaissance and *Q* indicating unmanned. Immediately after the Yemen strike, the Predator became the MQ-1 Predator, with the *M* now indicating its *multirole* use. The [company that built the Predator](#) was General Atomics, the same group that was going to launch Ted Taylor's ambitious spaceship to Mars, called *Orion*, from Jackass Flats back in 1958.

A second Predator, originally called the Predator B, was also coming online. Described by Air Force officials as "the Predator's younger, yet larger and stronger

brother," it too needed a new name. The Reaper fit perfectly: the personification of death. "One of the [big differences between the Reaper and the Predator](#) is the Predator can only carry about 200 pounds [of weapons]. The Reaper, however, can carry one and a half tons, and on top of carrying Hellfire missiles, can carry multiple GBU-12 laser-guided bombs," said Captain Michael Lewis of the Forty-second Wing at Creech Air Force Base. The General Atomics drones were single-handedly changing the relationship between the CIA and the Air Force. The war on terror had the two services working together again, exactly as had happened with the advent of the U-2. This was not simply a coincidence or a recurring moment in time. Rather it was the symbiotic reality of war. If the CIA and the Air Force are rivals in peacetime—fighting over money, power, and control—in war, they work together like a bow and arrow. Each organization has something critical the other service does not have. The CIA's drones could now give Air Force battlefield commanders visual images from which they could target individuals in real time. Now, intelligence capabilities and military could work seamlessly together as one. Which is exactly what happened next, as the war on terror widened to include Iraq.

On the night of March 29, 2004, an MQ-1 Predator drone surveilling the area outside the U.S. Balad Air Base in northern Iraq caught sight of three men digging a ditch in the road with pickaxes. [Brigadier General Frank Gorenc was remotely viewing](#) the events in real time from an undisclosed location somewhere in the Middle East. He watched the men as they placed an improvised explosive device, or IED, in the hole. Gorenc was able to identify that the men were burying an IED in the road because the resolution of the images relayed back from the Predator's reconnaissance camera was so precise, Gorenc could see wires. Gorenc and other commanders in Iraq knew what the Predator was capable of. Gorenc described this technology as allowing him to "[put a weapon on a target within minutes.](#)" and he authorized a strike. The Predator operator, seated at a console next to Gorenc, launched a Hellfire missile from the Predator's weapons bay, killing all three of the men in a single strike. "This strike," explained Gorenc, "should send a message to our enemies that we're watching you, and we will take action against you any time, day or night, if you continue to stand in the way of progress in Iraq." Eyes in the sky, dreamed up in the 1940s, had become swords in the sky in the new millennium. Reconnaissance and retaliation had merged into one.

Simultaneous with the early drone strikes in Iraq, the CIA and the Air Force had begun managing a covert program to kill al-Qaeda and Taliban commanders in the tribal areas in the northwest of Pakistan, on Afghanistan's border, using drones. To get the program up and running required effort, just as the U-2 and the Oxcart had. A drone wing, like a U-2 detachment or a squadron of Oxcarts, involved building more Predators and Reapers, training drone pilots, creating an Air Force wing, building secret bases in the Middle East, hooking up satellites, and resolving other support-related issues. From 2003 to 2007 the number of drone strikes rose incrementally, little by little, each year. Only in 2008 did the drones really come online. During that year, which included the last three weeks of the Bush administration, there were thirty-six drone strikes in Pakistan, which the Air Force said killed 268 al-Qaeda and Taliban. [By 2009 the number of drone strikes would rise to fifty-three.](#) Since the Air Force does not release numbers, and the CIA does

not comment on being involved, those numbers are approximate best guesses, put together by journalists and researchers based on local reports. Since journalists are not allowed in many parts of the tribal areas in Pakistan, the actual number of drone strikes is unknown.

As much publicity as drones are getting today, there is a lot more going on in the skies than the average citizen comprehends. According to T. D. Barnes, "There are at least fifteen satellites and an untold number of Air Force aircraft 'parked' over Iraq and Afghanistan, providing twenty-four-hour-a-day coverage for airmen and soldiers on the ground. The Air Force is currently flying surveillance with the U-2, Predator, MQ-9 Reaper, and Global Hawk. [These are just the assets we know about](#). Having been in the business, I would expect we have surveillance capability being used that we won't know about for years." The majority of these platforms, all classified, are "in all probability" being built and tested at Area 51, says Barnes.

In April of 2009, reporters with a French aviation newspaper published drawings of a reconnaissance drone seen flying over Afghanistan. With its long wings, lack of tail, and two wheels under its belly in a line, like on a bicycle, what became known as [the Beast of Kandahar](#) looks reminiscent of the Horten brothers' flying wing of 1944. What was this new drone built for? It seemed not to have a weapons bay. Eight months later, in December of 2009, the [Defense Department confirmed](#) the existence of the drone, which the Air Force calls the RQ-170 Sentinel. Built by Lockheed Skunk Works and tested at Area 51 and Area 52, the newest drone appears to be for reconnaissance purposes only. As such, it follows in the footsteps of the U-2 and the A-12 Oxcart, comanaged by the Air Force and the CIA at Area 51. Save for its name, all details remain classified. It is likely flying over denied territory, including Iran, North Korea, China, and Russia. Fifty-five years after Richard Bissell set Area 51 as a secret place to test-fly the nation's first peacetime spy planes, new aircraft continue to be built with singular design and similar intention. Despite the incredible advances in science and technology, the archetypal need for reconnaissance remains.

Quick and adaptable, twenty-first-century surveillance requirements means the future of overhead lies in unmanned aerial vehicles, or drones. The overhead intelligence take once provided by CIA spy pilots like Gary Powers, Ken Collins, Frank Murray, and others now belongs to remotely piloted drones. The old film cameras, which relied on clear skies, have been replaced by state-of-the-art imaging systems developed by Sandia and Raytheon, called [synthetic aperture radar, or SAR](#). These "cameras" relay real-time images shot through smoke, dust, and even clouds, during the day or in the dark of night. But as omnipotent and all-seeing as the drones may appear, there is one key element generally overlooked by the public—but certainly not by the Pentagon or the CIA—when considering the vulnerability of the Air Force's most valuable asset with wings. Drones require satellite links.

To operate a drone requires ownership in space. All unmanned aerial vehicles require satellites to relay information to and from the pilots who operate the drones via remote control. As the Predator flies over the war theater in the Middle East, it is being operated by a pilot sitting in a chair [thirty miles south of Area 51, at Indian Springs](#). The pilot is

seated in front of a computer screen that provides a visual representation of what the Predator is looking at on the ground in the battlefield halfway across the world. Two sensor operators sit beside the pilot, each working like a copilot might have in another age. The pilot and the sensor operators rely on a team of fifty-five airmen for operational support. The Predator Primary Satellite Link is the name of the system that allows communication between the drone and the team. The drone needs only to be in line of sight with its ground-control station when it lands. Everything else the drone can do, from capture images to fire missiles, it does thanks to its satellite link.

Indian Springs is the old airstrip where Dr. Edward Teller, father of the H-bomb, and all the other nuclear physicists used to land when they would come to witness their atomic bomb creations being set off as tests from 1951 to 1992. Indian Springs is where the atomic-sampling pilots trained to fly through mushroom clouds. It is where EG&G set up the first radar-testing facility on the Nevada Test and Training Range in 1954. Indian Springs is where Bob Lazar said he was taken and debriefed after getting caught trespassing on Groom Lake Road. And in 2011, Indian Springs, which has been renamed Creech Air Force Base, is the place where Air Force pilots sit in war rooms operating drones.

For the Department of Defense, the vulnerability of space satellites to sabotage has created a new and unprecedented threat. According to a 2008 study on "[Wicked Problems](#)" prepared by the Defense Science Board, in a chapter significantly entitled "Surprise in Space," the board outlines the vulnerability of space satellites in today's world. By the Pentagon's definition, "Wicked problems are highly complex, wide-ranging problems that have no definitive formulation... and have no set solution." By their very nature, wicked problems are "substantially without precedent," meaning the outcome of them cannot be known because a wicked problem is one that has never before been solved. Worst of all, warned the Pentagon, efforts to solve wicked problems generally give way to an entirely new set of problems. The individual tasked with keeping abreast of the wicked problem is called a wicked engineer, someone who must be prepared to be surprised and be able to deal with unintended consequences because "[playing the game changes the game.](#)"

By relying on satellites to fight the war on terror as well as many of the foreseeable conflicts in the immediate future, the single greatest wicked problem facing the Pentagon in the twenty-first century is the looming threat of the militarization of space. To weaponize space, historical thinking in the Pentagon goes, would be to safeguard space in a preemptive manner. A war in space over satellite control is not a war the United States necessarily wants to fight, but it is a war the United States is most assuredly unwilling to lose.

"Over eighty percent of the satellite communications used in U.S. Central Command's area of responsibility is provided by commercial vendors," reads the Pentagon's "Surprise in Space" report. And when, in 2007, the Chinese—unannounced and unexpectedly—[shot down one of their own](#) satellites with one of their own weapons, the incident opened the Pentagon's eyes to a whole host of potential wicked-problem scenarios in space.

Around 5:00 p.m. eastern standard time on July 11, 2007, a small, six-foot-long

Chinese satellite was circling the Earth 539 miles up when it was targeted and destroyed by a Chinese ballistic missile launched from a mobile launcher at the Songlin test facility in Szechuan Province, running on solid fuel and topped with a “kinetic kill vehicle,” or explosive device. The satellite was traveling at speeds of around sixteen thousand miles per hour, and the ballistic missile was traveling approximately eighteen thousand miles per hour. The hit was dead-on. As radical and impressive as it sounds, the technology was not what raised flags and eyebrows at the Pentagon. The significance of the event came from the fact that with China’s satellite kill, the world moved one dangerous step closer to the very wicked problem of weaponizing space. To enter into that game means entering into the kind of mutual-assured-destruction military industrial–complex madness that has not been engaged in since the height of the Cold War.

Actions of this magnitude, certainly by those of a superpower like China, are almost always met by the U.S. military with a response, either overt or veiled, and the Chinese satellite kill was no exception. Seven months later, in February of 2008, an SM-3 Raytheon missile was launched off the deck of the USS *Lake Erie* in the North Pacific. It traveled approximately 153 miles up into space where it hit a five-thousand-pound U.S. satellite described as being about the size of a school bus and belonging to the National Reconnaissance Office. [The official Pentagon story](#) was that the satellite had gone awry and the United States didn’t want the satellite’s hazardous fuel source, stated to be the toxin hydrazine, to crash on foreign soil. “Our objective was to intercept the satellite, reduce the mass that might survive re-entry [and] vector that mass into unpopulated areas ideally the ocean,” General James Cartwright, the vice chairman of the Joint Chiefs of Staff, told the press. International leaders cried foul, saying the test was designed to show the world that the United States has the technology to take out other nations’ satellites. “China is continuously following closely the possible harm caused by the U.S. action to outer space security and relevant countries,” declared Liu Jianchao, China’s foreign ministry spokesman—certainly an example of the pot calling the kettle black.

In the 1950s, the United States and the Soviet Union actually considered using space as a launching pad for war. President Eisenhower’s science adviser James Killian—a man with so much power that he was [not required to tell the truth to Congress](#)—fielded regular suggestions from the Pentagon to develop, in his own words, “satellite bombers, military bases on the moon, and so on.” Killian was the man who spearheaded the first nuclear weapon explosions in space, first in the upper atmosphere (Orange), then near the ozone layer (Teak), and finally in outer space (Argus). But Killian shied away from the idea of weaponizing space not because he saw putting weapons in space as an inherently reckless or existentially bad idea but because Killian believed nuclear weapons would not work well from space.

[“A satellite cannot simply drop a bomb.”](#) Killian declared in a public service announcement released from the White House on March 26, 1958, a report written for “nontechnical” people at the behest of the president. “An object released from a satellite doesn’t fall. So there is no special advantage in being over the target,” Killian declared. Here was James Killian, who, [by his own admission, was not a scientist](#), explaining to Americans why dropping bombs from space wouldn’t work. “Indeed the only way to ‘drop’

a bomb directly down from a satellite is to carry out aboard the satellite a rocket launching of the magnitude required for an intercontinental missile." In other words, Killian was saying that to get an ICBM up to a launchpad in space was simply too cumbersome a process. Killian believed that the better way to put a missile on a target was to launch it from the ground. That the extra effort to get missiles in space wasn't worth the task. This may have been true in the 1950s, but decades later James Killian would be proven wrong.

Flash forward to 2011. Analysts with the [United States Space Surveillance Network](#), which is located in an Area 51-like facility on the island of Diego Garcia in the Indian Ocean, spend all day, every day, 365 days a year, tracking more than eight thousand man-made objects orbiting the Earth. The USSS Network is responsible for detecting, tracking, cataloging, and identifying artificial objects orbiting Earth, including active and inactive satellites, spent rocket bodies, and space debris. After the Chinese shot down their own satellite in 2007, the network's job got considerably more complicated. The Chinese satellite kill produced an estimated thirty-five thousand pieces of one-centimeter-wide debris and another fifteen hundred pieces that were ten centimeters or more. "[A one-centimeter object is very hard to track](#) but can do considerable damage if it collides with any spacecraft at a high rate of speed," said Laura Grego, a scientist with the Global Security Program at the Union of Concerned Scientists. The United States said the NRO satellite it shot down did not create space debris because, being close to Earth when it was shot down, its pieces burned up as they reentered Earth's atmosphere.

These scenarios create another wicked problem for the U.S. military. Every modern nation relies on satellites to function. The synchronized encryption systems used by banks around the world rely on satellites. Weather forecasts are derived from satellite information, as is the ability of air traffic controllers to keep airplanes safely aloft. The U.S. global positioning system, or GPS, works on satellites, as will the European version of GPS, the Galileo positioning system, which will come online in 2012. The U.S. military relies on satellites not just for its drone programs but for almost all of its military communications worldwide. Were anyone to take down the satellite system, or even just a part of it, the world would see chaos and panic that would make *The War of the Worlds* seem tame. When considering the actions of the United States and the Soviet Union during the atomic buildup of the 1940s, '50s, and '60s—the nuclear hubris, the fiscal waste, and the imprudent public policy—it is nothing short of miraculous that the space-based nuclear tests of the late 1950s and early 1960s did not propel the two superpowers to fight for military control of space. Instead, in the last decades of the Cold War, the United States and the USSR worked with a tacit understanding that space was off-limits for warfare. Neither nation tried to put missiles on the moon. And neither nation shot down another nation's spy satellites. According to Colonel Leghorn, this is because "[spy satellites launched into space](#) were accepted as eyes in the skies that governments had to live with." The governments Leghorn is referring to are Russia and the United States. But today, allegiances and battle lines have been considerably redrawn. At least one enemy army, that of al-Qaeda, would rather die than live according to the superpowers' rules.

In spite of, or perhaps because of, his ninety-one years, Leghorn speaks with great

authority. In addition to being considered the father of aerial reconnaissance, [Leghorn founded the Itek Corporation](#) in 1960, which developed the high-resolution photographic system for America's first reconnaissance satellite, Corona. The Corona program was highly successful and, most notably, was originally designed and run by Richard Bissell for the CIA at the same time he was in charge of operations at Area 51. After leaving the Air Force, [Leghorn spent decades in the commercial-satellite business](#). From the satellite images produced by Itek satellites, the CIA learned that in order to escape scrutiny by America's eyes in the sky, many foreign governments moved their most secret military facilities underground.

Out in the Nevada desert, while the CIA redoubled its efforts at Area 51 to develop ground sensor technology and infrared tracking techniques to learn more about underground facilities (which also requires the use of drones), the Department of Defense and the Air Force got to work on a different approach. In the 1980s, the military worked to develop the bunker buster, a nuclear weapon designed to fire deep into Earth's surface, hit underground targets, and detonate belowground. Weapons designer Sandia was brought on board. It was called the [W61 Earth Penetrator](#), and testing took place at Area 52 in 1988. The idea was to [launch the earth-penetrator weapon](#) from forty thousand feet above but after many tests (minus the nuclear warhead), it became clear that a nuclear bomb would have little or no impact on granite, which is the rock of choice in which to build sensitive sites underground. After President Clinton ended all U.S. nuclear testing in 1993 (the Comprehensive Nuclear-Test-Ban Treaty was adopted by the United Nations General Assembly in 1996 [and signed by five of the then seven or eight nuclear-capable countries](#)), the idea of developing an earth-penetrating nuclear weapon lost its steam. But the building of underground facilities by foreign governments continued to plague war planners, so along came a nonnuclear space-based weapons project called [Rods from God](#). That weapons project involved slender metal rods, thirty feet long and one foot in diameter, that could be launched from a satellite in space and hit a precise target on Earth at ten thousand miles per second. T. D. Barnes says "[that's enough force](#) to take out Iran's nuclear facility, or anything like it, in one or two strikes." The Federation of American Scientists reported that a number of similar "[long-rod penetration](#)" programs are believed to currently exist.

After the Gulf War, DARPA hired a secretive group called the JASON scholars (a favored target in conspiracy-theorist circles) and its parent company, MITRE Corporation, to report on the status of underground facilities, which in government nomenclature are referred to as UGFs. The unclassified version of the [April 1999 report](#) begins, "Underground facilities are being used to conceal and protect critical activities that pose a threat to the United States." These threats, said JASON, "include the development and storage of weapons of mass destruction, principally nuclear, chemical, and biological weapons," and also that "the proliferation of such facilities is a legacy of the Gulf War." What this means is that the F-117 stealth bomber showed foreign governments "that almost any above ground facility is vulnerable to attack and destruction by precision guided weapons." For DARPA, this meant it was time to develop a new nuclear bunker buster—Comprehensive Nuclear-Test-Ban-Treaty or not.

In January of 2001, the Federation of American Scientists reported their concern over the disclosure that the nuclear weapons laboratories were working on low-yield nukes, or "mini-nukes," to target underground facilities despite the congressional ban against "research and development which could lead to the production by the United States of a new, low-yield nuclear weapon." [Los Alamos fired back](#), claiming they could develop a mini-nuke conceptually. "One could design and deploy a new set of nuclear weapons that do not require nuclear testing to be certified," stated Los Alamos associate director for nuclear weapons Stephen M. Younger, asserting that "such simple devices would be based on a very limited nuclear test database." The Federation of American Scientists saw Younger's assertion as improbable: "It seems unlikely that a warhead capable of performing such an extraordinary mission as destroying a deeply buried and hardened bunker could be deployed without full-scale [nuclear] testing" first. On July 1, 2006, Stephen Younger became president of National Security Technologies, or NSTec, the company in charge of [operations at the Nevada Test Site](#), through 2012.

In 2002, with America again at war, the administration of George W. Bush revived the development of the nuclear bunker-buster weapon, now calling it the Robust Nuclear Earth Penetrator. In April of the same year, the Department of Defense entered into discussions with the Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory to begin preliminary design work on the new nuclear weapon. By fiscal year 2003, the Stockpile Services Robust Nuclear Earth Penetrator line item received \$14.5 million; in 2004 another \$7.5 million; and in 2005 yet another \$27.5 million. [In 2006, the Senate dropped the line item](#). Either the program was canceled or it got a new name and entered into the black world—perhaps at Area 51 and Area 52.

Or perhaps next door at the Nevada Test Site, underground. For as far-fetched and ironic as this sounds—developing a bunker-busting nuclear bomb at an underground nuclear testing facility in Nevada—this is exactly what DOE officials proposed in an unclassified report released quietly in 2005. In this report, officials with the agency formerly known as the Atomic Energy Commission [proposed to revive the NERVA program](#)—the Area 25 nuclear-powered rocket program designed to send man to Mars—and to do it, of all places, underground.

Unlike the NERVA program of the 1960s, argued Michael Williams, the author of the report, "DOE Ground Test facilities for space exploration enabling nuclear technologies can no longer be vented to the open atmosphere," meaning a facility like the one that previously existed out at Jackass Flats was out of the question. But for the new NERVA project, Williams proposed, the Department of Energy could easily conduct its nuclear tests inside "the existing [underground] tunnels or new tunnels at the Nevada Test site for this purpose."

Former Los Alamos associate director of nuclear weapons Stephen Younger, who currently serves as the president of operations at the Nevada Test Site, categorically denies that any underground nuclear weapons tests are in the works at the test site. But he does confirm that "subcritical" nuclear tests currently take place there, inside an underground tunnel complex located beneath Area 1. To access that facility, Younger says, employees use an elevator that travels a thousand feet underground. What goes on

there are "scientific experiments with plutonium and high explosives," Younger says, "not weapons tests." Younger insists the "same cannot be said about the Russians." He says that inside their underground facility at Novaya Zemlya—the location where the Soviet Union detonated their fifty-megaton thermonuclear bomb, called Tsar Bomba, in 1961—"the Russians are developing new nuclear weapons around the clock. Mr. [Vladimir] Putin has said that repeatedly. He keeps saying that because they want us to know."

There is no way to know precisely what is happening today at the Nevada Test and Training Range—aboveground at Area 51 or Area 52, or in the underground tunnels beneath the test site, because most of what is currently happening out in the Nevada desert is classified and the federal agencies involved believe the people do not have a need-to-know. The question is, does the public have a right to know? Does Congress? Many secret projects that have gone on at Area 51 have delivered results that have kept America safe. The first flight over the Soviet Union, by Hervey Stockman in a U-2 spy plane in 1956, provided the CIA with critical intelligence, namely, that the Russians were not lining up their military machine for a sneak attack. The intelligence provided by an A-12 Oxcart spy plane mission kept the Johnson administration from declaring war on North Korea during the Vietnam War. The F-117 stealth bomber crippled Saddam Hussein's WMD programs. But there are other kinds of secret actions that have gone on at Area 51, at least one of which should never have been authorized and should not be kept as a national secret anymore.

After World War II, the American government's hiring and protection of Nazi scientists was based on the premise that these scientists were the world's best and their information was needed in order to advance science—and win the next war. In doing so, America made a deal with the devil. This deal became a wicked problem for the agencies involved, and playing the game with former Nazis gave way to an entirely new set of problems, one of which has been the federal government's ongoing complicity in covering up many of these scientists' original crimes. Approximately [six hundred million pages of information](#) about the government's postwar use of Nazi criminals' expertise remains classified as of 2011. [Many documents about Area 51 exist in that pile.](#)

The reason why the federal government will not officially admit that Area 51 exists is not the secret spy planes, the stealth bombers, or the drones that were, and still are, flight-tested there. The reason is something else. It is a program undertaken by five EG&G engineers at Area 51. This program involved [the Roswell crash remains](#) and predicated the development of the original CIA facility, currently called Area 51, which was built by Richard Bissell beginning in 1955. Area 51 is named as such not because it was a randomly chosen quadrant, as has often been presumed, but because the 1947 crash remains from Roswell, New Mexico, were sent from Wright-Patterson Air Force Base out to a secret spot in the Nevada desert—in 1951.

The gypsies have a saying: You're not really dead until the last person who knows you dies. For investigative journalists it goes something like this: As long as there is an eyewitness willing to tell the truth, the truth can be known.

The flying craft that crashed in New Mexico, the myth of which has come to be known as the Roswell Incident, happened in 1947, sixty-four years before the publication of this

book. Everyone directly involved in that incident—who acted on behalf of the government—is apparently dead. Like it does about Area 51, the U.S. government refuses to admit the Roswell crash ever happened, but it did—according to the seminal testimony of one man interviewed over the course of eighteen months for this book. He participated in the engineering project that came about as a result of the Roswell Incident. He was one of the elite engineers from EG&G who were tasked with the original Area 51 wicked engineering problem.

In July of 1947, Army intelligence spearheaded the efforts to retrieve the remains of the flying disc that crashed at Roswell. And as with other stories that have become the legends of Area 51, part of the conspiracy theory about Roswell has its origins in truth. The crash did reveal a disc, not a weather balloon, as has subsequently been alleged by the Air Force. And responders from the Roswell Army Air Field found not only a crashed craft, but also two crash sites, and they found bodies alongside the crashed craft. These were not aliens. Nor were they consenting airmen. They were human guinea pigs. Unusually petite for pilots, they appeared to be children. Each was under five feet tall. Physically, the bodies of the aviators revealed anatomical conundrums. They were grotesquely deformed, but each in the same manner as the others. They had unusually large heads and abnormally shaped oversize eyes. One fact was clear: these children, if that's what they were, were not healthy humans. A second fact was shocking. Two of the child-size aviators were comatose but still alive.

Everything related to the crash site was sent to Wright Field, later called Wright-Patterson Air Force Base, in Ohio, where it all remained until 1951. That is when the evidence was packed up and transported to the Nevada Test Site. It was received, physically, by the elite group of EG&G engineers. The Atomic Energy Commission, not the Air Force and not the Central Intelligence Agency, was put in charge of the Roswell crash remains. According to its unusual charter, the Atomic Energy Commission was the organization best equipped to handle a secret that could never be declassified. The Atomic Energy Commission needed engineers they could trust to handle the work that was about to begin. For this, they looked to [the most powerful defense contractor in the nation](#) that no one had ever heard of—EG&G.

The engineers with EG&G were chosen to receive the crash remains and to set up a secret facility just outside the boundary of the Nevada Test Site, sixteen miles to the northwest of Groom Lake, approximately five and a half miles north of the northernmost point where Area 12 and Area 15 meet. A facility this remote would never be visited by anyone outside a small group with a strict need-to-know and would never have to be accounted for or appear on any official Nevada Test Site map. These five men were told there was more engineering work to be done, and that they would be the only five individuals with a set of keys to the facility. The project, the men were told, was the most clandestine, most important engineering program since the Manhattan Project, which was why the man who had been in charge of that one would function as the director of this project as well.

Vannevar Bush had been President Roosevelt's most trusted science adviser during World War II. He held engineering doctorates from both Harvard University and MIT, in

addition to being the former vice president and [former dean of engineering at MIT](#). The decisions Vannevar Bush made were ostensibly for the good of the nation; they were sound. The men from EG&G were told that the project they were about to work on was so important that it would remain black forever, meaning it would never see the light of day. The men knew that a secrecy classification inside the Atomic Energy Commission charter made this possible, because they all worked on classified engineering projects that were hidden from the rest of the world. They understood *born classified* meant that no one would ever have a need-to-know what Vannevar Bush was going to ask them to do. The operation would have no name, only a letter-number designation: S-4, or Sigma-Four.

The problem that the EG&G engineers would face would be highly complex, wide-ranging, without a definite formulation and with no set solution. This wicked problem was wholly without precedent. Solving it would undoubtedly have unintended consequences, because playing the engineering game would change the game. But there were two puzzles to solve, not just one. Two engineering mysteries for the elite group of EG&G engineers to unlock.

There was the crashed craft that had been sent by Stalin—with its Russian writing stamped, or embossed, in a ring around the inside of the craft. So far, the EG&G engineers were told, no one working on the project when it had been headquartered at Wright-Patterson Air Force Base had been able to discern what made Stalin's craft hover and fly. Not even the German Paperclip scientists who had been assigned to assist. So the crashed craft was job number one. Reverse engineer it, Vannevar Bush said. Take it apart and put it back together again. Figure out what made it fly.

But there was the second engineering problem to solve, the one involving the child-size aviators. To understand this, the men were briefed on what it was they were dealing with. They had to be. They were told that they, and they alone, had a need-to-know about what had happened to these humans before they were put in the craft and sent aloft. They were told that seeing the bodies would be a shocking and disturbing experience. Because two of the aviators were comatose but still alive, the men would have to transfer them into a Jell-O-like substance and stand them upright in two tubular tanks, attached to a life-support system. Sometimes, their mouths opened, and this gave the appearance of their trying to speak. Remember, the engineers were told, these humans are in a comatose state. They are unconscious; their bodies would never spark back to life.

Once, the children had been healthy humans. Not anymore. They were about thirteen years old. Questions abounded. What made their heads so big? Had their bodies been surgically manipulated to appear inhuman, or did the children have genetic deformities? And what about their haunting, oversize eyes? The engineers were told that the children were rumored to have been [kidnapped by Dr. Josef Mengele](#), the Nazi madman who, at Auschwitz and elsewhere, was known to have [performed unspeakable experimental surgical procedures](#) mostly on [children, dwarfs, and twins](#). The engineers learned that just before the war ended, Josef Mengele made a deal with Stalin. Stalin offered Mengele an opportunity to continue his work in eugenics—the science of improving a human population by controlled breeding to increase desirable, heritable characteristics—in secret, in the Soviet Union after the war. The engineers were told that this deal likely

occurred just before the war's end, in the winter of 1945, when it was clear to many members of the Nazi Party, including Mengele, that Nazi Germany would lose the war and that its top commanders and doctors would be tried and hanged for war crimes.

In [Josef Mengele's efforts to create a pure, Aryan race](#) for Hitler, at Auschwitz and elsewhere, he conducted experiments on people he considered subhuman so as to breed certain features out. Mengele's victims included Jewish children, Gypsy children, and people with severe physical deformities. He removed parts of children's craniums and replaced them with bones from larger, adult skulls. He removed and transplanted eyeballs, and injected people with chemicals that caused them to lose their hair. On Mengele's instruction, an Auschwitz inmate, a [painter named Dina Babbitt](#), made comparative drawings of the shapes of heads, noses, mouths, and ears of people before and after the grotesque surgeries Mengele performed. Another inmate doctor forced to work for Mengele, named [Dr. Martina Puzyna](#), recounted how Mengele had her keep detailed measurements of the shapes and sizes of children's body parts, casting those of crippled children—particularly their hands and heads—in plaster molds. When Mengele left Auschwitz, on January 17, 1945, he took the documentation of his medical experiments with him. [According to his only son, Rolf](#), Mengele was still in possession of his medical research documents after the war.

The EG&G engineers were told that part of Joseph Stalin's offer to Josef Mengele stated that if he could create a crew of grotesque, child-size aviators for Stalin, he would be given a laboratory in which to continue his work. According to what the engineers were told, [Mengele held up his side of the Faustian bargain](#) and provided Stalin with the child-size crew. Joseph Stalin did not. [Mengele never took up residence in the Soviet Union](#). Instead, he lived for four years in Germany under an assumed name and then escaped to South America, where he lived, first in Argentina and then in Paraguay, until his death in 1979.

When Joseph Stalin sent the biologically and/or surgically reengineered children in the craft over New Mexico hoping it would land there, the engineers were told, Stalin's plan was for the children to climb out and be mistaken for visitors from Mars. Panic would ensue, just like it did after the radio broadcast of *The War of the Worlds*. America's early-warning radar system would be overwhelmed with sightings of other "UFOs." Truman would see how easily a totalitarian dictator could control the masses using black propaganda. Stalin may have been behind the United States in atomic bomb technology, but when it came to manipulating the people's perception, Stalin was the leader with the upper hand. This, says the engineer, is what he and the others in the group were told.

For months I asked the engineer why President Truman didn't use the remains from the Roswell crash to show the world what an evil, abhorrent man Joseph Stalin was. I guessed that maybe Truman didn't want to admit the breach of U.S. borders. For a long time, I never got an answer, just a shaking of the head. Here was the engineer who had the answer to the riddle inside the riddle that is Area 51, but he was unwilling to say more. He is the only one of the original elite group of EG&G engineers who is still alive. He said he wouldn't tell me more, no matter how many times I asked. One day, I asked again. "Why didn't President Truman reveal the truth in 1947?" This time he answered.

"Because we were doing the same thing," he said. "They wanted to push science. They wanted to see how far they could go."

Then he said, "We did things I wish I had not done."

Then, "We performed medical experiments on handicapped children and prisoners."

"But you are not a doctor," I said.

"They wanted engineers."

"On whose authority did you act?"

"The Atomic Energy Commission was in charge. And Vannevar Bush," he said.

"People were killed. In this great United States."

"Why did we do that?"

"You do what you do because you love your country, and you are told what you are doing is for the good of the country," the engineer said. Meaning out at the original Area 51, starting in 1951, the EG&G engineers worked in secret on a nefarious Nazi-inspired black project that would remain entirely hidden from the public because Vannevar Bush told them it was the correct thing to do.

"It was a long, long time ago," the engineer said. "I have tried to forget."

"When did it end?" I asked.

No answer.

"In 1952?" I asked. Still no answer. "In 1953...1954...?"

"At least through the 1980s it was still going on," he said.

"I believe you should tell me the whole story," I said. "Otherwise, once you are gone, you will take the truth with you."

"You don't want to know," he said.

"I do."

"You don't have a need-to-know," he said.

For many months, I tried to learn more. I got pieces. Slivers of pieces. One-word details. "This" confirmed and "that" reconfirmed, regarding what he had previously said. One day, when we were eating lunch in a restaurant, I recounted back to the engineer everything I knew. I asked for his permission to put it all in this book. He did not say yes. He did not say no. We interviewed for more than one year. Then one day, I asked him how much of the story I now knew.

"You don't know half of it," he said sadly.

I took a crouton, left over from my lunch, and set it down in the middle of the restaurant's white china plate. "If what I know equals this crouton," I said, pointing at the little brown piece of bread, "then is what I don't know as big as this plate?"

"Oh, my dear," he said, shaking his head. "The whole truth is bigger than this table we are eating on, including the chairs."

He wouldn't say more. He said he was hurting. That soon he would die. That, really, it was best that I did not learn any more because I didn't have a need-to-know. But it is not just me who needs to know. We need to be able to keep secrets, but this kind of secret-keeping—of this kind of secret—is the work of totalitarian states, like the one we fought against for five decades during the Cold War. Fighting totalitarianism was America's rationale for building seventy thousand nuclear weapons in sixty-five styles. In a free and

open democratic society, conducting projects in the name of science is one thing. Keeping forty-year-old secrets from a president even after he tries to find them out is an entirely different problem for a democratic nation. It sets a precedent. It makes it easier for a group of powerful men to set up a program that defies the Constitution and defiles morality in the name of science and national security, all under the deceptive cover that no one has a need-to-know. I believe that even though the engineer didn't tell me everything, that is why he told me what he did.

According to my source, the Atomic Energy Commission conducted experiments on humans in a classified government facility in the Nevada desert beginning in 1951. Although this was done in [direct violation of the Nuremberg Code](#) of 1947, it is far from the first time the Commission had acted in violation of the most basic moral principle involving voluntary human consent. In 1993, reporter [Eileen Welsome wrote a newspaper story](#) stating that the Atomic Energy Commission had conducted plutonium experiments on human beings, most notably retarded children and orphan boys from the Fernald State School, outside Boston, without the children's or their guardians' knowledge or consent. After this horrible revelation came to light, [President Clinton opened an investigation](#) to look into what the Atomic Energy Commission had done and the secrets it had been able to safeguard inside its terrifying and unprecedented system of secret-keeping. I asked the engineer why President Clinton hadn't learned about the S-4 facility at Area 51—or had he?

"I think he might have come very close," the engineer said about President Clinton. "But they kept it from him."

"Who are *they*?" I asked. The engineer told me that his elite group had been given the keys to the original facility at Area 51. "Who inherited those keys from you five engineers?" I wanted to know.

"You don't have a need-to-know" is all he would say.

EPILOGUE

In the summer of 2010 a book arrived in the mail from Colonel Leghorn, the father of overhead reconnaissance, age ninety-one. The pages were musty and smelled like an attic. What he had sent was his 1946 [Army Air Forces commemorative yearbook](#) from the Operation Crossroads atomic bomb tests. What is most striking is how the story of America's first postwar nuclear test begins as a "mysterious Army-Navy assignment" in a "sand-swept town—Roswell."

"Roswell... Roswell... Roswell... Roswell... Roswell..."

The word repeats six times in the first few pages of the government-issued yearbook, making it clear that it was from the Roswell Army Air Field in New Mexico that the first shot in what would be a forty-three-year-old Cold War was fired. And what a colossal opening shot Operation Crossroads was, an unprecedented show of force aimed at letting Joseph Stalin know that America was not done with the nuclear bomb. Forty-two thousand people were present in the Pacific for the two nuclear bomb tests, including Stalin's spies. [The U.S. government spent nearly two billion dollars](#) (adjusted for inflation) to show the world the nuclear power it now possessed.

"Stalin learned from Hitler," the EG&G engineer says, "revenge... and other things." And that to consider Stalin's perspective one should think about two key moments in history, one right before World War II began and another right before it ended. On August 23, 1939, one week before war in Europe officially began, Hitler and Stalin agreed to be allies and signed the Molotov-Ribbentrop Pact, meaning each country promised not to attack the other when war in Europe broke out. And yet almost immediately after shaking hands, Hitler began plotting to double-cross Stalin. Twenty-two months later, Hitler's sneak attack against Russia resulted in millions of deaths. And then, just a few weeks before World War II ended, Stalin, Truman, and Churchill met in Potsdam, Germany—from July 17, 1945, to August 2, 1945—and agreed to be postwar allies. Just one day before that conference began, America had secretly tested the world's first and only atomic bomb, inside the White Sands Proving Ground in the New Mexico desert. [Truman's closest advisers](#) had suggested that Truman share the details of the atomic test with Stalin at Potsdam, but Truman did not. It didn't matter. Nuclear weapons historians believe that Joseph Stalin was already well aware of what the Manhattan Project engineers had accomplished. Stalin had spies inside the Los Alamos nuclear laboratory who had been providing him with bomb blueprints and other information since 1941. By the time the Potsdam conference rolled around, Stalin was already well at work on his own atomic bomb. Despite Stalin and Truman pretending to be allies, neither side trusted the other.

side, neither man trusted the other man. Each side was instead making plans to build up its own atomic arsenal for future use. When Operation Crossroads commenced just twelve months after the handshakes at Potsdam, the Cold War battle lines were already indelibly drawn.

It follows that [Stalin's black propaganda hoax](#)—the flying disc peopled with alien look-alikes that wound up crashing near Roswell, New Mexico—could have been the Soviet dictator's revenge for Truman's betrayal at Crossroads. His double cross had to have been in the planning stages during the handshaking at Potsdam, metaphorically mirroring what Hitler had done during the signing of the Molotov-Ribbentrop Pact. By July of 1947, Stalin was still two years away from being able to successfully test his own nuclear bomb. The flying disc at Roswell, says the EG&G engineer, was "[a warning shot across Truman's bow](#)." Stalin may not have had the atomic bomb just yet, but he had seminal hover and fly technology, pilfered from the Germans, and he had stealth. Together, these technologies made the American military gravely concerned. Perplexed by the flying disc's movements, and its radical ability to confuse radar, the Army Air Forces was left wondering what else Stalin had in his arsenal of unconventional weapons, usurped from the Nazis after the war.

["Hitler invented stealth," says Gene Poteat](#), the first CIA officer in the Agency's history to be assigned to the National Reconnaissance Office, or NRO. Gene Poteat's job was to assess Soviet radar threats, and to do this, he observed many spy plane tests at Area 51. "Hitler's stealth bomber was called the Horten Ho 229," Poteat says, "which is also called the Horten flying wing. It was covered with radar-absorbing paint, carbon embedded in glue. The high graphic content produced a result called 'ghosting,' which made it difficult for radar to see."

The Horten Ho 229 to which Poteat refers was the brainchild of two young aircraft designers who worked for Hitler's Luftwaffe, Walter and Reimar Horten. These are the same two brothers who, in the fall of 1947, became the subject of the U.S. Army Intelligence's massive European manhunt called "Operation Harass"—the search for a flying-saucer-type aircraft that could allegedly hover and fly.

[Whatever happened to the Horten brothers?](#) Unlike so many Nazi scientists and engineers who were recruited under Operation Paperclip, Walter and Reimar Horten were originally overlooked. After being [captured by the U.S. Ninth Army on April 7, 1945](#), at their workshop in Göttingen, they were set up in a guarded [London high-rise near Hyde Park](#). There, they were interrogated by the famous American physicist and rocket scientist [Theodore Von Kármán](#), who decided the Horten brothers did not have much to offer the U.S. Army Air Forces by way of aircraft technology—at least not with their flying wing. After being returned to Germany, Reimar escaped to Argentina, where he was set up in a beautiful house on the shores of Villa Carlos Paz Lake, thanks to Argentinean president and ardent Nazi supporter Juan Perón. Walter lived out his life in Baden-Baden, Germany, hiding in plain sight.

The information about the Horten brothers comes from the aircraft historian David Myhra, who, in his search to understand all-wing aircraft, industriously tracked down both Horten brothers, visited them in their respective countries in the 1980s, and recorded hundreds of hours of interviews with them on audiotape. These [tapes can be found](#) in the

archives of the Smithsonian Air and Space Museum.

"[Reimar had me agree to two restrictions](#) before I went to South America to interview him," Myhra explains. "One was that I couldn't ask questions about Hitler or the Third Reich." And the second was that "he said he didn't want to talk about the CIA. Reimar said there was this crazy idea that he'd designed some kind of a flying saucer and that the CIA had [supposedly] been looking for him." Myhra says Reimar Horten was adamant in his refusal to discuss anything related to the CIA. "The subject was off-limits for him," Myhra says. The conversation with Reimar Horten that Myhra refers to took place in the decade before Army Intelligence released to the public its three-hundred-page file on Operation Harass. This is the file that discusses the U.S. manhunt for the Horten brothers and their so-called flying disc. The Operation Harass file makes clear that someone from an American intelligence organization made contact with Reimar in the late 1940s to interrogate him about the flying disc. More than forty years later, Reimar Horten still refused to talk about what was said. A [2010 Freedom of Information Act request](#) to the Department of the Army, Office of the General Counsel, Army Pentagon, issued a "no records response." A secondary appeal was also "denied."

If Stalin really did get the Horten brothers' flying disc, either from the brothers themselves or from blueprints they had drawn, how did Stalin get their flying disc to hover and fly on like that? What became of the craft's hover technology, powered by some mysterious power plant, which was also so fervently sought by Counter Intelligence Corps agents during Operation Harass? The EG&G engineer says that while he does not know what research was conducted on the "equipment" when it was at Wright-Patterson, beginning in 1947, he does know about the research conducted on the "power plant" after he received the "equipment," in Nevada in 1951.

"There was [another \[important\] EG&G engineer](#)," he explains. That engineer was assigned the task of learning about Stalin's hover technology, "which was called electromagnetic frequency, or EMF." This engineer "spent an entire year in a windowless room" inside an EG&G building in downtown Las Vegas trying to understand how EMF worked. "We figured it out," the EG&G engineer says. "We've had hover and fly technology all this time."

I asked the EG&G engineer to take me to the place where hover and fly technology was allegedly solved, and he did. Archival photographs and Atomic Energy Commission video footage confirm that the site once contained several buildings that were operated by EG&G. Not anymore. Instead, the facility inside of which an EG&G engineer unlocked one of Area 51's original secrets in the early 1950s is now nothing but an [empty lot of asphalt](#) and weeds ringed by a chain-link fence. Is this what will become of Area 51 in sixty years? Will it too be moved? Will it go underground? Has it already?

What about flying saucers from a physicist's point of view? Edward Lovick, the grandfather of America's stealth technology, says that in the late 1950s, Kelly Johnson had him spend many months in Lockheed's anechoic chamber radar testing small-scale models of flying saucers. "[Little wooden discs](#) built in the Skunk Works wood shop," Lovick recalls. According to Lovick, Kelly Johnson eventually decided that round-shaped aircraft—flying discs without wings—were aerodynamically unstable and therefore too

dangerous for pilots to fly. This was before the widespread use of pilotless aircraft, or drones.

What about the child-size pilots inside the flying disc? Shortly after the Roswell crash in July 1947, a press officer from the Roswell Army Air Field, a man named Walter Haut, was dispatched to the radio station KGFL in Roswell with a press release saying the Roswell Army Air Force was in possession of a flying disc. Haut was the emissary of the original Roswell Statement, which, in addition to being broadcast over the airwaves, was famously printed in the *San Francisco Chronicle* the following day. It was Walter Haut who, three hours later, was sent back to KGFL by the commander of the Army Air Field with a second press release, one that said that the first press release was actually incorrect.

Walter Haut died in December 2005 and left a [sworn affidavit](#) to be opened only after his death. In the text, Haut said the second press release was fraudulent, meant to cover up the first statement, which was true. Haut also said that in addition to recovering a flying craft, the military recovered bodies from a second crash site—small, child-size bodies with disproportionately large heads. “I am convinced that what I personally observed was some kind of craft and its crew from outer space,” Haut wrote.

The EG&G engineer’s explanation about the child pilots inside the flying disc answers the riddle of the so-called Roswell aliens, certainly in a manner that would satisfy the fourteenth-century English friar and philosopher William of Ockham. It is an answer that is not more complicated than the riddle itself. According to the EG&G engineer, the aviators were not aliens but were created to look like them, by Josef Mengele, “shortly before or immediately after the end of the war.” Children would have had great difficulty piloting an aircraft. The engineer says he was told the flying disc was piloted remotely, but offered almost no information about what would have had to have been the larger aircraft from which this early “drone” was launched. “It came down over Alaska,” he says.

What about Bob Lazar? In the course of interviewing thirty-two individuals who lived and worked at Area 51, I asked the majority what they thought of Lazar’s 1989 revelation about Area 51. Most made highly skeptical comments about Bob Lazar; none claimed ever to have met him. While it appears that Lazar lied about his education, his statements about S-4 should not be summarily dismissed as fraud.

The EG&G engineer says that the S-4 facility that housed the original Roswell “equipment” continued on for decades, which fits with Bob Lazar’s time line. Lazar says he worked at Area 51 from 1988 to 1989. Lazar told newsman George Knapp that at S-4, he saw something through a window, inside an unmarked room, that could have been an alien. Was what happened to Lazar just like what happened to the P-38 Lightning pilot who, flying over the California desert during the dawn of the jet age, thought he saw a gorilla flying an airplane when really he saw Bell Aircraft chief test pilot Jack Woolams wearing a gorilla mask? Perhaps Lazar drew the only conclusion he could have drawn based on the information he had. And perhaps the Atomic Energy Commission had taken a page out of the CIA’s playbook on deception campaigns: it needed to produce the belief that something false was something true. Perhaps scientists and engineers who were brought to S-4 in the later years were told that they were working on alien beings and alien spacecraft. Try going public with that story and you will wind up disgraced like Bob Lazar.

As it was with the P-38 Lightning pilots in 1942, it remains today. No one likes being mistaken for a fool.

"[It's difficult](#) to be taken seriously in the scientific community when you're known as 'the UFO guy,'" Bob Lazar stated on the record in 2010 for this book.

For decades, hundreds of serious people—civilians, lawmakers, and military personnel—have made considerable efforts to locate the records for the Roswell crash remains. And yet no such record group has ever been located, despite formal investigations by senators, congressmen, the governor of New Mexico, and the federal government's Government Accountability Office. This is because no one has known where to look. Until now, the world has been knocking on the wrong door. The information has been protected from declassification by draconian Atomic Energy Commission classification rules, [hidden inside secret Restricted Data files](#) that were originally created for the Atomic Energy Commission by EG&G.

So now it is known.

How did [Vannevar Bush](#) get so much power? He was once the most important scientist in America. President Truman awarded him the Medal for Merit in a White House ceremony, President Johnson presented him with the National Medal of Science, and the queen of England dubbed him a knight. The statements made by the EG&G engineer about what Vannevar Bush authorized engineers and scientists to do at Area 51's S-4 facility are truly shocking and almost unbelievable. Except a clear historical precedent exists for Vannevar Bush having exactly this kind of power, secrecy, and control.

Vannevar Bush lorded over the mother of all black operations—the engineering of the world's first nuclear bomb. And as director of the Office of Scientific Research and Development, which controlled the Manhattan Project, Vannevar Bush was also in charge of [human experiments to study the effects](#) of the bioweapons lewisite and mustard gas on man. Some of those human guinea pigs were soldiers and others were conscientious objectors to the war, but a 1993 study of these programs by the National Academy of Sciences made clear that the test subjects were not consenting adults. "[Although the human subjects](#) were called 'volunteers,' it was clear from the official reports that recruitment of the World War II human subjects, as well as those in the later experiments, was accomplished through lies and half-truths," wrote the Institute of Medicine.

The "later experiments" to which the committee refers were conducted by a group also under Vannevar Bush's direction, this one called the Committee on Medical Research. As discovered by President Clinton's advisory committee on human experiments, this so-called medical research involved using as guinea pigs individuals living at the [Dixon Institution for the Retarded, in Illinois, and at the New Jersey State Colony for the Feeble-Minded](#). The doctors were testing vaccines for malaria, influenza, and sexually transmitted diseases. Some programs continued until 1973.

Even more troubling is this: buried in Atomic Energy Commission archives is the fact that the first incarnation of the Manhattan Project had a [letter-number designation of S-1](#). Were there two other programs that transpired between S-1 and S-4? And if so, what were they? What else might have been done to push science in a way that the ends could justify the means?

In this book, many pieces of the Area 51 puzzle are put into place, but many questions remain. What goes on at Area 51 now? We don't know. We won't know for decades. Airplanes have gotten faster and stealthier. Remote-controlled spy planes fire missiles. Classified delivery systems drop bombs. The players are mostly the same: CIA, Air Force, Department of Energy, Lockheed, North American, General Atomics, and Hughes. These are but a few.

The biggest players tend to remain, as always, behind the veil. Almost a century ago, in 1922, Vannevar Bush cofounded a company that contracted first with the military and later with the Atomic Energy Commission. He called his company Raytheon because it meant "light from the gods." Raytheon has always maintained a considerable presence at the Nevada Test Site, the Nevada Test and Training Range, and Area 51. Currently, it is the fifth-biggest defense contractor in the world. It is the world's largest producer of guided missiles and the leader in developing radar technology for America's early-warning defense system. This is the same system that, in the 1950s, CIA director General Walter Bedell Smith feared the Soviets might overrun with a UFO hoax, leaving the nation vulnerable to an air attack.

As for EG&G, they were eventually acquired by the powerful Carlyle Group at the end of the twentieth century but later resold, in 2002, to another corporate giant called URS. Currently, EG&G remains partnered with Raytheon in a joint venture at the Nevada Test and Training Range and at Area 51. The program, called [JT3](#)—Joint Test, Tactics, and Training, LLC—provides "engineering and technical support for the Nevada Test and Training Range," according to corporate brochures. When asked what exactly that means, EG&G's parent company, URS, declined to comment. This is corporate America's way of saying, "You don't have a need-to-know."

The veil has been lifted. The curtain has been pulled back on Area 51. But what has been revealed in this book is like a single bread crumb in a trail. There is so much more that remains unknown. Where does the trail lead? How far does it go? Will it ever end?

ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

Many have asked me how this book came to be. In 2007, I was at a Christmas Eve dinner when my husband's uncle's wife's sister's husband—a spry physicist named Edward Lovick, who was eighty-eight years old at the time—leaned over to me and said, "Have I got a good story for you." As a national security reporter, I hear this line frequently—my work depends on it—but what Lovick told me ranked among the most surprising and tantalizing things I'd heard in a long time. Until then, I was under the impression that Lovick had spent his life designing airplane parts. Over dinner I learned that he was actually a physicist and that he'd played a major role in the development of aerial espionage for the CIA. The reason Lovick could suddenly divulge information that had been kept secret for fifty years was because the CIA had just declassified it. When I learned that much of Lovick's clandestine work took place at that mysterious and mythic location Area 51, also called Groom Lake, I smiled. So, the place was real after all. Immediately, I wrote to the Office of the Assistant Secretary of Defense requesting an official tour of the Groom Lake Area—Lovick also told me that the CIA had given up control of the place decades earlier. My request was formally denied, on Department of Defense letterhead, but oddly with the words "the Groom Lake Area" separated out in quotes attributed to me, so as to make clear the Pentagon's official position regarding their Nevada base: *That locale may be part of your lexicon, they seemed to be saying, but it is most definitely not officially part of ours.* As an investigative journalist I sought to know why.

Since then, more individuals than I could have ever imagined have generously shared their Area 51 stories with me. I am indebted to each and every one of them. The list I thank includes everyone in this book: the legendary soldiers, spies, scientists, and engineers—professionals who, for the most part, are not known for sharing their inner lives. That so many individuals opened up with me—relaying their triumphs and tragedies, their sorrows and joys—so that others may make sense of it all has been an experience of a lifetime. Why I was given access to information that countless others have been denied remains a great mystery to me. A reporter is dependent on primary sources. From their stories, and using keywords such as operational cover names, I was then able to locate corroborating documents, often found deeply buried in U.S. government archives. I wouldn't have had a clue where to look without their aid. Specific examples are sourced in the Notes section.

T. D. Barnes is one of the most generous people I have met. He introduced me to many people, who in turn introduced me to their colleagues and friends. Barnes took me to Creech Air Force Base, at Indian Springs, Nevada, as part of a very private tour. There I was allowed to watch U.S. Air Force pilots fly drones halfway across the world, in

Afghanistan and Iraq. Barnes also arranged for my tours of Nellis Air Force Base in Las Vegas, where I sat inside a Russian MiG fighter jet and examined the Hawk missile system and the F-117 Nighthawk up close. And it was Barnes who, in the fall of 2010, advocated tirelessly on my behalf to allow me to join a group of pilots and engineers at CIA headquarters in Langley, Virginia, and at the Defense Intelligence Agency Headquarters in Washington, DC, as part of a week-long symposium on overhead espionage. I met many people during this trip who were extraordinarily helpful to me, on background, and I thank them all.

Ken Collins lives in the same city as I do, which meant that for a year and a half I got to interview him regularly over lunch. He is a remarkable pilot and an even more extraordinary person. Thank you, Colonel Slater, Frank Murray, Roger Andersen, Tony Bevacqua, and Ray Goudey, for sharing so many unique flying stories with me. Thank you, Buzz Aldrin, for explaining to me what it feels like up there on the moon.

Al O'Donnell arranged for my temporary security clearance so that I could accompany him to the federally restricted land that is the Nevada Test Site. Looking into the Sedan nuclear crater—so vast it is visible from outer space—is not something I will ever forget. While Area 51, Area 25, and Area 13 were off-limits to us on that visit, that I was able even to get within a stone's throw of these three hidden places is thanks to O'Donnell. And a special thanks to Ruth, Al's very capable wife. From Jim Freedman I learned things that could be contained in their own book. Freedman has the unusual ability to share deeply personal experiences with stunning clarity, objectivity, and conviction. Once, he explained why: "I tell you all this, Annie, because you give a damn."

Dr. Bud Wheelon, the CIA's first deputy director of science and technology, has given only a few interviews in his life. I am grateful to have joined those ranks. During one of our interviews he stopped mid-story to thoroughly explain missile technology to me. From that moment on I understood what was at stake during the Cuban missile crisis. How close we came to nuclear war.

Lieutenant Colonel Hervey Stockman and Colonel Richard Leghorn are legends among legendary men. Colonel Leghorn generously shared with me artifacts he had stored away in his attic, shipping original photographs, long-lost articles, and out-of-print books across the country for my review. Thanks to his assistant, Barbara Austin, for her help. Hervey Stockman was not so easy to locate at first, but when I finally did reach him, on the telephone, it was a magical moment. Thank you, Peter Stockman, for sending me a copy of Hervey's oral history, which was an invaluable source of information.

For all the investigating that goes on in writing a book like this, sometimes the most sought-after information comes in the most whimsical of ways. In the summer of 2009, I went to the Nuclear Testing Archive library in Las Vegas to locate declassified documents on the Project 57 "dirty bomb" test, ones that were mysteriously missing from the Department of Energy's online repository. Even in person, the staff was unable to fulfill my records request. Hindered and frustrated, I took a walk around the adjacent atomic-testing museum to cool down. Reporter's notebook in hand, I was staring at a photograph of a mushroom cloud hanging on the wall when the museum's security guard walked up and said hello. It was Richard Mingus. We'd met briefly before, on an earlier visit. I told Mingus

that I felt records on Project 57 were being withheld from me over at the library. In his characteristic matter-of-fact style Mingus said, "Well, I worked on that test. What is it you'd like to know?" Mingus, I quickly learned, was also one of the CIA's original Area 51 security guards. Thanks to Mingus, the "missing" Project 57 documents became easier to locate.

At the National Archives and Records Administration, thank you to Timothy Nenninger, chief of the Textual Records Reference Staff, Martha Murphy, chief of Special Access and FOIA Staff, and Tom Mills, who specializes in World War II records; thank you, Rita Cann, at the National Personnel Records Center in St. Louis, Missouri; Martha DeMarre of the Nuclear Testing Archive in Las Vegas; Troy Wade of the Nevada Test Site Historical Foundation; Tech Sergeant Jennifer Lindsey of the U.S. Air Force; Staff Sergeant Alice Moore, Creech Air Force Base; Dr. David R. Williams, NASA; Dr. David Robarge, chief historian, Central Intelligence Agency; Tony Hiley, curator and director of the CIA Museum; Cheryl Moore, EEA CIA; Jim Long, Laughlin Heritage Foundation Museum; R. Cargill Hall, historian emeritus, National Reconnaissance Office; Dr. Craig Luther, chief historian, Edwards Air Force Base; S. Eugene Poteat, president of the Association of Former Intelligence Officers; Melissa Dalton, Lockheed Martin Aeronautics; Dr. Jeffrey Richelson, National Security Archives; David Myhra, author and aviation historian; Fred Burton, former special agent with the U.S. Diplomatic Security Service; Sherre Lovick, former Lockheed Skunk Works engineer; Colonel Adelbert W. "Buz" Carpenter, former SR-71 pilot; Charles "Chuck" Wilson, former U-2 pilot; Arthur Beidler, 67th Reconnaissance Tactical Squadron, Japan; Dennis Nordquist, Pratt & Whitney mechanical engineer; Tony Landis, NASA photographer; Michael Schmitz, Roadrunners Internationale photographer; Joerg Arnu, Norio Hayakawa, and Peter Merlin of Dreamlandresort.com. A special thank you to Doris Barnes, Barbara Slater, Stacy Slater Bernhardt, Stella Murray, Mary Martin, and Mary Jane Murphy. Thank you, Jeff King, for making me such an excellent map, and Ploy Siripant, for a phenomenal job on the jacket. Thank you Tommy Harron, Jerry Maybrook, and Jeremy Wesley for the great work on the audio book.

Once I completed a draft of this manuscript, my editor, John Parsley, helped me to refine it into the book that it is. What I learned from John about storytelling is immeasurable. Thank you also to Nicole Dewey, Geoff Shandler, and Michael Pietsch.

I owe a debt of gratitude to Jim Hornfischer, the perfect agent for someone like me, and to my confidant Frank Morse. Thank you for the wise counsel, Steve Younger, David Willingham, Aron Ketchel, Eric Rayman, and Karen Andrews.

It takes a village to make a writer. I'm one of the lucky ones who has always known writing is what I was meant to do. I arrived at St. Paul's School in Concord, New Hampshire, at the age of fifteen, typewriter in hand, and wrote for nearly twenty years straight without earning as much as one cent. Only at the age of thirty-four did things shift for me, and I've earned my living as a writer ever since. I say that for all of the writers following in my footsteps. Don't give up. My village fire keepers—those to whom I am deeply indebted for their individually imperative roles—include Alice and Tom Soininen, Julie Elkins, John Soininen; my writing teacher at St. Paul's School, Michael Burns, and at Princeton University, Paul Auster, Joyce Carol Oates, and P. Adams Sitney; my

storytelling hero in Greece, John Zervos; those who supported me in Big Sur: Lisa Firestone, Thanis Iliadis, Alex Timken, Robert Jolliffe, Harriet and Jeremy Polturak, James Young, Nate Downey, Emmy Starr and Stephen Vehslage, Samantha Muldoon, Erin Gafill and Tom Birmingham; my mentors in Los Angeles: Rachel Resnick, Keith Rogers, Kathleen Silver, Rio Morse, and my friend and editor in chief at the *Los Angeles Times Magazine*, Nancie Clare, who commissioned my original two-part series on Area 51 for the magazine; my fellow writers from group: Kirston Mann, Sabrina Weill, Michelle Fiordaliso, Nicole Lucas Haimes, Annette Murphy, Terry Rossio, Jolly Stamat, Moira McMahon, Lisa Gold; fellow storyteller Lucy Firestone; my mother-in-law, Marion Woldsen, not only for her deep love of reading but for lending me her son.

Nothing in this world is so joyful as being the wife of Kevin Jacobsen and the mother of our two boys. While writing this book, it was Kevin who made endless sandwiches for me, brewed pots of coffee, and let me travel to wherever it was that I needed to go. Kevin hears out every first draft, usually standing in our kitchen or yard. Everything gets better after I listen to what he has to say.

Prologue: The Secret City

1. [Nevada Test and Training Range](#): Map reference number NTTR01, NGA stock no. 84413.
2. [Nevada Test Site](#): Map based on NTS Boundary Coordinates: FFACO, appendix 1, January 1998, revision 2, 6. On Aug 23, 2010, the Nevada Test Site changed its name to the Nevada National Security Site. Throughout the book, I refer to it as the Nevada Test Site, as that is the name it went by for nearly sixty years.
3. [105 nuclear weapons](#): Department of Energy, "United States Nuclear Tests," xii–xv. Total atmospheric for Nevada Test Site (NTS) is officially listed as 100 and total Nellis Air Force Range (NAFR) is listed as 5. Underground is 804 by U.S. plus 24 by U.S./UK for a total of 933.
- 4 . [weapons-grade plutonium and uranium](#): Darwin Morgan, spokesman for the National Nuclear Security Administration, Nevada Site Office, clarified: "The [Nevada Test Site] has never been a repository for weapons grade plutonium or uranium. Of course there is the 'expended' material from 828 underground nuclear weapons tests that is contained within the cavities where the tests were conducted." E-mail, September 21, 2010.
- 5 . [two known exceptions](#): Memo, Top Secret Oxcart, Oxcart Reconnaissance Operation Plan, BYE 2369-67, 15; second example from interview with Peter Merlin.
6. [bomb's price tag](#): Brookings Institute, "50 Facts about U.S. Nuclear Weapons," fact no. 1 (1996 dollars: \$20,000,000,000; 2011 dollars: \$28,000,000,000).
7. [was relayed to him by two men](#): Wiesner, *Vannevar Bush*, 98. This fact is hardly known; credit is usually given to General Leslie R. Groves and War Secretary Henry L. Stimson. Wiesner, Vannevar Bush's biographer at the National Academy of Sciences (he was also a science adviser to President Eisenhower), wrote: "Bush... had the duty, after the death of President Roosevelt, of giving President Truman his first detailed account of the bomb."
8. [no one knew the Manhattan Project was there](#): Wills, *Bomb Power*, 10–13. Wills elaborated on how Truman had some suspicions when he was vice president and approached War Secretary Henry L. Stimson, who told him to back off, which Truman did.
9. [who would control its "unimaginable destructive power"](#): Smyth, *Atomic Energy for Military Purposes*, 13.7. Also known as *The Smyth Report*, it was released by the government six days after Hiroshima, on August 12, 1945. Here, Smyth chronicled the administrative and technical history of the Manhattan Project, also called the Manhattan Engineering District (MED). The purpose of the report was allegedly to give citizens enough information about nuclear energy for them to participate in a public debate about

what to do next. The report also encouraged the idea that handing the bomb over to civilian control, as opposed to military control, would be a more democratic scenario. Instead, the controls imposed by the Atomic Energy Commission would ultimately prove to be even more impenetrable than military controls; Hewlett and Anderson, *New World*.

10. [the concept "born classified" came to be](#): Quist, *Security Classification*, 1. Here Quist writes: "The Atomic Energy Act of 1946 was the first and, other than its successor, the Atomic Energy Act of 1954, to date the only U.S. statute to establish a program to restrict the dissemination of information. This Act transferred control of all aspects of atomic (nuclear) energy from the Army, which had managed the government's World War II Manhattan Project to produce atomic bombs, to a five-member civilian Atomic Energy Commission (AEC). These new types of bombs, of awesome power, had been developed under stringent secrecy and security conditions. Congress, in enacting the 1946 Atomic Energy Act, continued the Manhattan Project's comprehensive, rigid controls on U.S. information about atomic bombs and other aspects of atomic energy. The Atomic Energy Act designated the atomic energy information to be protected as 'Restricted Data' and defined that data."

11. [seventy thousand nuclear bombs](#): Brookings Institute, "50 Facts about U.S. Nuclear Weapons," fact no. 6.

12. [Atomic Energy was the first entity to control Area 51](#): This is one of the central organizing premises of my book and will no doubt be contested by the Atomic Energy Commission until they are forced to declassify the project to which I refer.

13. [when President Clinton](#): The Advisory Committee on Human Radiation Experiments (ACHRE) was created by President Clinton on January 15, 1994, to investigate and make public the use of human beings as subjects of federally funded research. Created by executive order and subject to the Federal Advisory Committee Act (FACA), the advisory committee was obligated to provide public access to its activities, processes, and papers, some of which can be viewed at <http://www.gwu.edu/~nsarchiv/radiation/>.

14. [he did not have a need-to-know](#): Author interview with EG&G engineer.

15. ["give\[s\] the professional classificationist unanswerable authority"](#): Quist, *Security Classification*, 24; Schwartz, *Atomic Audit*, 442–51.

16. [largest facility is, and always has been, the Nevada Test Site](#): Written correspondence with Darwin Morgan, September 21, 2010, U.S. Department of Energy, Nevada Operations Office, Office of Public Affairs and Information.

17. [not controlled by the Department of Defense](#): It cannot yet be determined for certain if the Department of Defense (DOD) was involved in running the very first program at Area 51. Research at NARA (National Archives and Records Administration) reveals that DOD had a lot more to do with Paperclips than previously known publicly. For example, documents obtained by me through a FOIA request reveal "in the early 1950s the Defense Department [Office of Defense Research and Engineering (ORE)] and the JIOA took up overall direction of PAPERCLIP, which ran under the acronym of DEFSIP, or Defense Scientist Immigration Program." JIOA stands for Joint Intelligence Objectives Agency and was run by the Joint Chiefs of Staff. These multiple agencies and multiple

chains of command serve to hide information.

Chapter One: The Riddle of Area 51

Interviews: Joerg Arnu, George Knapp, Thornton "T.D." Barnes, Colonel Hugh Slater, Richard Mingus, Ernest "Ernie" Williams, Dr. Albert "Bud" Wheelon, Colonel Kenneth Collins, Colonel Sam Pizzo, Norio Hayakawa, Stanton Friedman

1. [Nighttime is the best time](#): Interview with Joerg Arnu.
2. [Robert Scott Lazar appeared on Eyewitness News](#): Interview with George Knapp; George Knapp, "Bob Lazar: The Man Behind Area 51," Eyewitness News Investigates, <http://area51.eyewitnessnews8.com/>.

3. [veiled threats of incarceration](#): A common note among most Area 51 employees interviewed, certainly among the Air Force enlisted men, was the "threat of Leavenworth," meaning incarceration at the largest federal security prison in the United States at Fort Leavenworth, Kansas.

4. [Dr. Edward Teller](#): Teller, who died in 2003 at the age of ninety-five, never confirmed or denied that he referred Lazar to EG&G for work at Area 51.

*contaminated with plutonium: Interviews with Richard Mingus; see notes for chapter 6.

5. [for a lecture Teller was giving](#): The subject of Teller's lecture was the nuclear freeze movement under way in a post-Three Mile Island world.

6. [a page-1 story featuring Bob Lazar](#): *Los Alamos Monitor*, June 27, 1982, identifies Lazar as "a physicist at the Los Alamos Meson Physics Facility."

7. [Lazar's life had reached an unexpected low](#): The most comprehensive information on Lazar is available at the Area 51 research Web site Dreamlandresort.com, created by Joerg H. Arnu in 1999. In "The Bob Lazar Corner" one can find a time line of Lazar's story as well as a compilation of public records, letters, and commentary about Lazar by his critics and his friends, as researched by Tom Mahood, whom I interviewed.

8. [Tracy Murk](#): According to the wedding certificate researched by Tom Mahood. Also according to Mahood's research, Tracy Ann Murk and Lazar married for a second time, on October 12, 1986 (the first wedding was April 19, 1986), with Murk inexplicably using the name Jackie Diane Evans.

9. [committed suicide by inhaling carbon monoxide](#): Ibid. Death certificate #001423-86, Clark County Health District, Las Vegas, NV; cause of death: "inhalation of motor vehicle exhaust." Sourced by Tom Mahood.

10. [Fly to Area 51](#): Descriptions based on multiple eyewitness interviews; see Primary Interviews.

11. [designed by Raytheon to detect incoming missile signals](#): Interview with T. D. Barnes.

12. [The miner kept the secrecy oath](#): Interview with Colonel Slater.

13. [access point Gate 385](#): Interview with Richard Mingus.

14. [trucks from the Atomic Energy Commission motor pool](#): Interview with Ernie Williams. A farm boy from Nebraska, Williams's father was a "water witch," and Williams inherited some water-locating charm. In this manner, he is the man credited by many Roadrunners as having officially found Area 51's first water well.

15. [men dressed in HAZMAT suits](#): R. Kinnison and R. Gilbert, "Estimates of Soil

Removal for Cleanup of Transuranics at NAEG Offsite Safety Shot Sites," FY 1981, 1984, 1986-91.

16. [would have gone through security there](#): Interview with anonymous EG&G employee who worked for the airline.
17. [tennis matches](#): Interview with Dr. Wheelon.
18. [jumping into the pool](#): Interview with Ken Collins.
19. [Area 51 bar, called Sam's Place](#): Interview with Colonel Pizzo.
20. [According to Lazar](#): Lazar's original interviews with George Knapp are available on YouTube in six parts.
21. [He glanced sideways, through a small nine-by-nine-inch window](#): Lazar's interview with George Knapp, part two of six, minutes 4:10-5:05. Knapp: "In an earlier interview, you had mentioned you saw what you thought may be an alien. Was it an alien? What did you see?" Lazar: "What I had said and all that occurred was that I was walking by a door, ah, a door that had a small, nine-by-nine window in it, little wires running through it. And glanced in there, and there were two... ah, either technicians, scientists, or whoever they were, looking down at something. And what that something was caught my eye and I never really did see what it was. A lot of people have asserted, well, there was an alien, they're aliens working around there and so on and so forth, I mean, I don't think that was the case. But, ah, who knows. I was. You know. You're seeing all these fantastic things and your mind gets going and you know you catch something out of the corner of your eye, who knows what your mind is going to come up with so I certainly wouldn't stand on that as fact by any means." See <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=XAfVZcAsTxk>.
22. [what was maybe an alien](#): Lazar's interview with George Knapp, part two of six, minutes 2:33-3:30. Lazar says he was told the UFO he was assigned to work on originated from another planet. He says he was shown autopsy photographs of the craft's alien pilots, which he described to Knapp in their interview: "One or two autopsy photographs I saw ah, dealt with just a small photograph, a bust shot essentially, just head, shoulders, and chest of an alien where the ah, ah, chest was cut open in a 'T' fashion and one single organ was removed. The organ itself in the other picture was cut and vivisected essentially the, ah, showing the different chambers in there. This was totally unrelated to anything I was doing but from that photograph it looked like what you see in UFO lore as the typical 'gray' [slang for alien] so how tall it was from what I could see, I couldn't tell, 'cause I only saw a portion of the photograph but if everything else you see is correct, I would imagine it was three and a half or four feet tall. But ah, there again, you know all I had to see was a photograph. And you know, I didn't have much to go on." See <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=XAfVZcAsTxk&feature=related>.
23. [The group made a trip](#): Tom Mahood, "The Robert Lazar Timeline, as assembled from Public Records and Statements," July 1994, updated July 1997, from dreamlandresort.com. In this time line Lazar and various friends made a total of three trips into the mountains behind Groom Lake. It was on the third trip that his group was stopped by guards.
24. [transcripts of his wife's telephone conversations](#): Ibid.
25. [Norio Hayakawa](#): Interview with Norio Hayakawa.

26. [He had bodyguards](#): In the interview with Knapp, Lazar said he was shot at while driving on the freeway (YouTube interview five of six, minute 6:00) and that during his debrief at Indian Springs a gun was pointed at him (*ibid.*, minute 8:00).

27. [Lie detector tests](#): WSVN-7 News reporter Dan Hausle's interview with former policeman Terry Cavernetti, accessed on December 21, 2010, YouTube, "Bob Lazar Passes the Lie Detector on UFOs."

28. [Stanton Friedman](#): Interview with Stanton Friedman. Friedman was employed for fourteen years as a nuclear physicist and worked on many advanced nuclear and space travel systems for companies like General Motors, General Electric, and Westinghouse. He has published eighty UFO papers, written six books, and appears in many UFO documentaries.

29. [Stanton Friedman's exposé on the Roswell incident](#): *Recollections of Roswell, Testimony from 27 Witnesses Connected with Recovery of 2 Crashed Flying Saucers in New Mexico in July 1947*, DVD, 105 minutes.

30. [a book based on Friedman and Moore's research was published](#): Berlitz and Moore, *Roswell Incident*. Friedman said it was a group decision to give Berlitz author credit instead of him, as Berlitz was from the Berlitz Language School family and had the credibility necessary to sell the publisher on the book's controversial subject matter. Charles Berlitz spoke twenty-five languages and is often listed as one of the most important linguists of the twentieth century. His 1974 book, *The Bermuda Triangle*, sold an estimated ten million copies.

Chapter Two: Imagine a War of the Worlds

Interviews: Colonel Richard S. Leghorn, Ralph "Jim" Freedman, Alfred "Al" O'Donnell, Lieutenant Colonel Hervey Stockman, Colonel Slater, David Myhra

1. became convinced that Martians were attacking Earth: *Trenton Evening Times*, October 31, 1938. Many documents relating to *The War of the Worlds* radio play are available at <http://www.war-ofthe-worlds.co.uk/documents.htm>.

2. Switchboards jammed: Ibid., "Log from Jersey Police, Port Norris Station."

3 . the FCC's role: Associated Press, "Mars Monsters Broadcast Will Not Be Repeated. Perpetrators of the Innovation Regret Causing of Public Alarm," November 1, 1938.

4. Adolf Hitler took note as well: Hand, *Terror on the Air!* 7.

5. Joseph Stalin had also been: Author interview with EG&G engineer.

6. Vannevar Bush, observed the effects: Correspondence between Vannevar Bush and W. C. Forbes, June 8, 1939; Vannevar Bush, A Register of His Papers in the Library of Congress, Manuscript Division, Library of Congress, Washington, DC.

7. "Science Discovers Real Frankenstein": Winthrop, "Science Discovers."

8. War of the Worlds radio broadcast as an example: Zachary, *Endless Frontier*, 190.

9. President Roosevelt had appointed: "Vannevar Bush, A Collection of His Papers in the Library of Congress," Manuscript Division, Library of Congress, Washington DC.

10. his next move: Zachary, *Endless Frontier*, 285. Zachary wrote, "Bush's role in the A-bomb's birth actually burnished his reputation. Like Truman, most Americans were thrilled by Japan's surrender and the end of the war... Rather than interrogate the leaders of the Manhattan Project, the public embraced them. Bush's reputation as a scientific seer grew; his image as an unmatched organizer of expertise solidified. For Bush, the atomic bomb capped off his five-year rise to celebrity from relative obscurity."

11. As Americans celebrated peace: "Majority Supports Use of Atomic Bomb on Japan in WWII": David Moore, Gallup News Service, August 5, 2005.

12. Operation Crossroads was in full swing: Author interview with Colonel Leghorn, who was the commanding officer of Task Force 1.5.2 for the operation. I am indebted to Colonel Leghorn not only for generously sharing with me recollections of his historic role at Crossroads, beginning with his departure by airplane from the Roswell Army Air Field, but for lending me original photographs taken from his airplane during the 1946 nuclear tests. He also loaned me two original yearbook-type books where I learned the operation involved more than ten thousand instruments and nearly half the world's supply of film. The Air Force alone took nine million photographs.

13 . There were barracuda everywhere: Interview with Ralph "Jim" Freedman. Freedman's first visit to Bikini was for the nuclear test Castle Bravo, six years after Crossroads, but the barracuda problem was the same.

14. led by a king named Juda: Bradley, *No Place to Hide*, 158.

15. The U.S. Navy had evacuated the natives to Rongerik Atoll: The documentary *Radio Bikini* (1987), directed by Robert Stone, includes remarkable outtakes of AEC footage showing military personnel rehearsing how to best pitch propaganda to the

- natives.
16. [three-bomb atomic test series](#): Schwartz, *Atomic Audit*, 102. Operation Crossroads cost an astonishing \$1.3 billion in 1946 eleven months after the war's end, more than any subsequent test series. Crossroads involved 95 ships and 42,000 military and civilian personnel. It was a show of force.
17. [a young man named Alfred O'Donnell](#): Interview with Alfred "Al" O'Donnell.
18. [In the face of intense fire](#): Air Force Historical Research Agency, 30 Reconnaissance Squadron (ACC), Lineage, Assignments, Stations, and Honors, Major Richard S. Leghorn, <http://www.afhra.af.mil/factsheets/factsheet.asp?id=10193>.
19. [Curtis LeMay rarely smiled](#): Kozak, *LeMay*, iv.
20. [five cents per bird](#): Ibid., 9.
21. ["Caveman in a Jet Bomber"](#): I. F. Stone, *The Best of I. F. Stone*, 326–28.
22. [LeMay was at Bikini to determine](#): Rhodes, *Dark Sun*, 261–62.
23. [Operation Crossroads was a huge event](#): The *New York Times* described it as the largest and "most stupendous single set of experiments in history." Senator Huffman called the test a "Roman holiday in the Pacific" and promised that the "only important impression these tests are going to give the world is that the United States is not done with war." Members of the Southern Dairy Goat Owners and Breeders Association recommended that the sheep being used during the test be substituted with U.S. congressmen, on the grounds that good goats were harder to find than congressmen were. In the days leading up to the event, protesters picketed the White House with signs that read, BIKINI: REHEARSAL FOR WORLD WAR THREE.
24. [one million tons of battle-weary steel](#): Fact sheet, Operation Crossroads, Defense Nuclear Agency, Public Affairs Office, Washington, DC, April 5, 1984.
25. [Alfred O'Donnell stood below deck](#): Interview with O'Donnell.
26. [the DN-11 relay system](#): Interview with O'Donnell; copy of a handwritten letter by Herbert Grier from O'Donnell's collection.
27. [What Leghorn witnessed horrified him](#): Interviews with Colonel Leghorn.
28. [tossed up into the air like bathtub toys](#): United States Atomic Energy Commission Memorandum for the Board, August 23, 1973, #718922, Naval Vessels Sunk During Operation Crossroads; AEC film footage of the explosion, Atomic Testing Museum library, Las Vegas, NV.
29. [west of the Volga River](#): Pedlow and Welzenbach, *Central Intelligence Agency*, 22.
- Leghorn believed: Interview with Colonel Leghorn.
30. [what shipyards or missile-launch facilities](#): Ibid.; interview with Hervey Stockman, who was the first man to fly over the Soviet Union in a U-2 spy plane.
31. [Halfway across the world](#): Rhodes, *Dark Sun*, 261.
32. [chain-reacting atomic pile would go critical](#): O'Keefe, *Nuclear Hostages*, 134.
33. [Joseph Stalin was developing another secret weapon](#): Author interview with EG&G engineer.
34. [secret weapon, called Hermes](#): Interview with Lisa Blevins, U.S. Army public affairs officer, White Sands Missile Range, New Mexico; "Report on Hermes Missile Project,"

35. [belonged to Adolf Hitler](#): Hunt, *Secret Agenda*, 27.

36. [secret project called Operation Paperclip](#): Paperclip was a postwar operation carried out by the Joint Intelligence Objectives Agency, a special intelligence office that reported to the director of intelligence in the War Department. Today, this would be the equivalent of reporting to the intelligence chief for the Joint Chiefs of Staff. Most details about Project Paperclip remain classified despite the government's insistence otherwise. Paperclip began before the war ended, and it was originally called Project Overcast and/or Project Pajamas. It had two primary goals: to exploit the minds of German scientists for American Cold War research projects and to keep the Russians from getting the German scientists, no matter how heinous their war crimes might have been. It is believed that at least sixteen hundred scientists were recruited by various U.S. intelligence groups and brought, with their dependents, to the United States. Paperclip had a number of secret, successor projects that remain classified as of 2011.

37. [Wernher Von Braun](#): G-2 Paperclip "Top Secret" files, WNRC Record Group 330. Also from FBI dossier "Wernher Magnus Maximilian Von Braun, aka Freiherr Von Braun," file 116-13038, 297 pages; also see Neufeld, *Von Braun*.

38. [Dr. Ernst Steinhoff](#): G-2 Paperclip "Top Secret" files, WNRC, Record Group 319.

39. [inside the two-million-square-acre](#): Schwartz, *Atomic Audit*, 169. Now called the White Sands Missile Range, the facility is the largest military installation in the country—the size of Delaware and Rhode Island combined. The first atomic bomb, Trinity, was exploded near the north boundary of the range.

40. [Dr. Steinhoff said nothing](#): Hunt, *Secret Agenda*, 27; Neufeld, *Von Braun*, 239.

41. [terrifying citizens](#): "V-2 Rocket, Off Course, Falls Near Juárez," *El Paso Times*, May 30, 1947.

42. [Allegations of sabotage](#): Army Intelligence, G-2 Paperclip, Memorandum for the AC of S G-2, Intelligence Summary, Captain Paul R. Lutjens, June 6, 1947, RG 319, Washington National Records Center (WNRC), Suitland, Maryland. Hunt, *Secret Agenda*, chapter 3; Major Lyman G. White, "Paperclip Project, Ft. Bliss, Texas and Adjacent Areas," MID 918.3, November 26, 1947.

43. [beating a dead Nazi horse](#): In a March 1948 letter to the State Department regarding "German scientists [who] were members of either the Nazi Party or one or more of its affiliates," Bosquet Wev, director of the Joint Intelligence Objectives Agency, wrote, "[R]esponsible officials... have expressed opinions to the effect that, in so far as German scientists are concerned, Nazism no longer should be a serious consideration from a viewpoint of national security when the far greater threat of Communism is now jeopardizing the entire world. I strongly concur in this opinion and consider it a most sound and practical view, which must certainly be taken if we are to face the situation confronting us with even an iota of realism. To continue to treat Nazi affiliations as significant considerations has been aptly phrased as 'beating a dead Nazi horse.'"

44. [What made the aircraft extraordinary](#): Interview with EG&G engineer.

45. [fighter jet](#): Interviews with Colonel Slater, Area 51 base commander (1963–68), Chandler's personal friend. Chandler relayed this story to Slater decades after it

happened.

46. [The recovered craft looked nothing like a conventional aircraft](#): Interview with EG&G engineer, who was an eyewitness.
47. [Cyrillic alphabet had been stamped](#): Interview with EG&G engineer.
48. [near the Alaskan border](#): Interview with EG&G engineer.
49. [What if atomic energy propelled the Russian craft](#): Interview with EG&G engineer.
50. [Amerika Bomber](#): Myhra, *The Horten Brothers and Their All-Wing Aircraft*, 217–20; interview with David Myhra, who interviewed both Horten brothers, Walter in Germany and Reimar in Argentina, for hundreds of hours in the 1980s.

51. [Paperclip scientists... called on for their expertise](#): This is my defensible speculation based on interviews with the EG&G engineer. The Paperclip group attached to the project, I learned through sources with secondhand information, allegedly included Von Braun, Ernst Steinhoff, and also Dr. Hubertus Strughold, a former Nazi and, in 1947, a research doctor at the Aeromedical Laboratory at Randolph Field in San Antonio, Texas. While employed by the Third Reich, Strughold was the leading expert on how the human body handles high altitude during flight. During World War II, Strughold had been chief of staff of aviation medicine for the German air force, or Luftwaffe. For more on Strughold, see Bower, *Paperclip Conspiracy*, 214–323.

52. [secreted away in a manner so clandestine](#): Interview with EG&G engineer.

53. [top secret project called Operation Harass](#): Jacobsen, U.S. Army Intelligence and Security Command (INSCOM) FOIA request, "Horten Brothers and Operation Harass." The file was declassified by INSCOM beginning on July 6, 1994, CDR USAINSCOM FO1/PO Auth para 1-603 DOD 5200.1R, 358 pages. Notes for pages 38 through 62 refer to this record group.

54. [testimony of America's Paperclip scientists](#): Headquarters, Counter Intelligence Corps Region I, 970th Counter Intelligence Corps, Detachment European Command, APO-154, January 6, 1948, 92. "Scientists who have better than average knowledge of the HORTEN brothers' work are: (2) Lippisch, Prof., fnu, Wright Field, Ohio, U.S.A." Dr. Lippisch was transferred to Wright Field, along with his senior staff Ernst Sielaff and Dr. Ringleb, from Luftfahrtforschungsanstalt Wien—a German aeronautical research institute for the development of high-speed aircraft.

55. [The manhunt was on](#): The earliest dated Operation Harass memo in the file is from November 10, 1947, APO 189, Subject: Flying Saucers, 139. It reads, "Considerable material has been gathered by the Air Materiel Command WRIGHT FIELD, Ohio, concerning the appearance, description and functioning of the object popularly known as the 'Flying Saucer.' A copy of the request of the report from the Air Materiel Command is on file at this Headquarters, 2. The opinion was expressed that some sort of object, such as the flying saucer, did exist. At the present time, construction models are being built for wind tunnel tests." This, however, is clearly not the first memo. [Here](#) of the FOIA file, in memo APO 134, January 2, 1948, a reference is made to an earlier letter, "RE: HORTEN Brothers, SUBJECT: Flying Saucers, dated 28, October 1947."

56. [Walter and Reimar Horten... had somehow been overlooked](#): Interview with David Myhra.

57. [been a later-model Horten in the works](#): "HORTEN, Walter-" LKL: A.V.V. Gottingen (14-5-46) "Expert on 'flying-wing' aircraft, including HO VIII IX & X," 155 (note there are two separate pages numbered 155).

58. [Timothy Cooper filed a request for documents](#): Because the Flying Saucer memos reveal that immediately after the crash at Roswell, the Army was seeking information on aircraft made by German scientists and not by extraterrestrials, the memos have been discounted by many ufologists as being Army intelligence propaganda. In fact, they reveal an important clue in understanding the EG&G engineer's truth about the Roswell mystery, namely, that the Joint Chiefs of Staff and perhaps the highest rank at Air Materiel Command knew the flying disc was in fact a Russian vehicle of German design.

59. [Extreme maneuverability and apparent ability to almost hover](#): Air Intelligence [illegible] for alleged "Flying Saucer Type Air Craft," 152-56.

60. [American Paperclip scientists living at Wright Field](#): Headquarters Sub Region Frankfurt, Counter Intelligence Corps Region III, APO 757, 4 February 1948, 71-72. "Leiber also stated that a Dr. Alexander LIPPISCH, who is at present working at WRIGHT Field, Ohio, USA, is also familiar with the work of the HORTON brothers."

61. [Messerschmitt test pilot named Fritz Wendel](#): Headquarters Counter Intelligence Corps Region IV, 970th Counter Intelligence Corps Detachment APO 407-A, US ARMY, N-2574. Subj: WENDEL, Fritz, 1 March 1948, 6 pages. Includes Sheets I, II, III, and IV—Sketches made by WENDEL re HORTEN aircraft; No. 179332, WENDEL, Fritz, "Ex-Luftwaffe Squadron leader. Presently working for Graf Von Ledebur, French Intell [sic] officer in Vienna Austria," 56-63.

62. [very much like a round cake with a large sector cut out](#): Memo, Secret, Headquarters Berlin Command, Office of Military Government for Germany (US), S-2 Branch, Subject "Flying Saucers," 3 December 1947, 126; Drawing, Directrix, Secret, 128.

63. [Could it hover?](#): Ibid., 57.

64. [if groups could fly tightly together](#): Ibid., 58.

65. [high speed escapement methods](#): Ibid., 59.

66. [Could the flying disc be remotely controlled?](#): Ibid., 58.

67. [Did Wendel have any idea about the tactical purposes](#): Ibid.

68. [a rocket engineer named Walter Ziegler](#): Memo, Secret, Headquarters Counter Intelligence Corps Region IV, 970th Counter Intelligence Corps APO 407-A Subj: ZIEGLER, Walter Erich, 1 March 1948, 52-55.

69. [four hundred men from his former rocket group](#): Ibid., 53. Ziegler called the town "Kubischew," and said it was located "east of Moscow... where they are presently constructing rockets under Russian supervision."

70. [The Horten brothers had been found](#): Headquarters 970th Counter Intelligence Corps Detachment European Command, APO 757, D-198239, Subject Flying Saucers, dated 12 March 1948, 44.

71. [the Horten 13](#): This is a transcription of a "report" originally written in German cursive writing and translated by SFC Dale R. Blohm. It is missing a cover page. The text suggests that the USG is making plans to hire "6 to 30" German scientists to create for

them the "Horten-Parabel." It reads, "The Discussions concerning the Project 'Horten-Parabel' are finalized. The results can be summed up in the following manner. 1). The Russians are in possession of the relevant planes and will be supported by German specialists. The construction series of the so called Horten 13 (Model with 2-TL (SIC) Power Unit) should not be developed beyond the initial stages by the Russians." At the end of the memo, the writer concluded, "to begin work, we ask for exact orders for the U.S. Army, for example timber work style, how many power units, operating radius, additional load, crew size, weapons layout, etc," 196-97, 202-4.

72. ["Walter Horten has admitted his contacts with the Russians"](#): Memo from European Command Message Control Secret Priority, Ref S-3773, To: United States Forces in Austria, for Director of Intelligence, 20 May 1948, 231; extracts from Horten, Walter, From D-154654, "Walter HORTEN points out that the possibility of the glider of parabolic design flown by a Russian pilot in 1925-1926 at the Rhaen competitive race may have been developed into a flying saucer. In the event the Russians further developed this glider, or, after the war, installed into it jet units of the Junkers or BMW type, the result may be the flying saucer," 232-33.

73. [stay at Wright-Patterson for approximately four years](#): Interview with EG&G engineer.

Chapter Three: The Secret Base

Interviews: Colonel Leghorn, T. D. Barnes, Lieutenant Colonel Roger Andersen, Millie Meierdierck, Bob Murphy, Ray Goudey, Edward Lovick

1. was sitting in his parlor: Bissell, *Reflections of a Cold Warrior*, 68.
2. paramour of Princess Caradja: Thomas, *The Very Best Men*, 103.
3. As for the mysterious office called OPC: CIA History Staff, "Office of Policy Coordination 1948–1952," 57 pages. Approved for release March 1997.

4. funds generated by the Marshall Plan: Bissell, *Reflections of a Cold Warrior*, 68.
5. Leghorn went back to Washington: Interview with Colonel Leghorn.
6. as part of Operation Lusty: Samuel, *American Raiders*. Operation Lusty (Luftwaffe Secret Technology) was the U.S. Army Air Forces' effort to capture and evaluate German aeronautical technology beginning at the end of World War II.

7. Putt listened: Pedlow and Welzenbach, *Central Intelligence Agency*, 35.
8. Whereas Putt was uninterested: P. Taubman, *Secret Empire*, 105.
9. Killian and Land reasoned: Pedlow and Welzenbach, *Central Intelligence Agency*, 27–37.
10. "impression of World War I as a cataclysm": Bissell, *Reflections of a Cold Warrior*, 4.

11. James Killian, who recruited Bissell: Pedlow and Welzenbach, *Central Intelligence Agency*, 16. Bissell joined the Agency in late January 1954; however, his first association with the Agency came in 1953 when he worked as a contractor. On July 26, 1954, Eisenhower authorized Killian to recruit a panel of experts to study what a U-2-type aircraft might accomplish. The group was called the Technological Capabilities Panel. In August, the idea was formally presented to Bissell. *Ibid.*, 30.

12. a secret CIA test facility: There are several accounts of who went to Groom Lake with Bissell on that historic first trip. I compile mine from Bissell's memoir and my interviews with Lockheed test pilot Ray Goudey.

13. Goudey had shuttled atomic scientists: Interview with Ray Goudey.
14. "I recommended to Eisenhower": Bissell, *Reflections of a Cold Warrior*, 102–3.
15. the tents would blow away: Interview with Ray Goudey.
16. to defend against rattlesnakes: Interview with Edward Lovick.
17. The same variable occurred: Interview with Tony Bevacqua.
18. a lot of time in a recliner: Interview with Ray Goudey.
19. Bob Murphy's job: Interviews with Bob Murphy. The U-2 engine was a P-37 specially designed by Connecticut engine maker Pratt and Whitney.
20. Mr. B., as he was known to the men: Interview with Edward Lovick.
21. Hank Meierdierck: The stories of Hank Meierdierck, the man who trained the U-2 pilots at Area 51, were relayed to me by his friends from the old days at the Ranch as well as from his personal papers, which were made available to me by his wife, Millie Meierdierck.
22. "unconventional way": Killian, *Sputnik, Scientists and Eisenhower*, 82. Killian wrote, "Eisenhower approved the development of the U-2 system, but he stipulated that it

should be handled in an unconditional way so that it would not become entangled in the bureaucracy of the Defense Department or troubled by rivalries among the services." Also see Bissell, *Reflections of a Cold Warrior*, 95.

23. [hidden from Congress](#): Top Secret Memorandum of Conference with the President 0810, 24 November 1954. "Authorization was sought from the President to go ahead on a program to produce thirty, special high performance aircraft at a cost of about \$35 million. The President approved this action. Mr. Allen Dulles indicated that his organization could not finance this whole sum without drawing attention to it, and it was agreed that Defense would seek to carry a substantial part of the financing." From the Eisenhower Archives, DDE's Papers as President, Ann Whitman Diary Series, Box 3, ACW Diary, November 1954.

24. [stand-alone organization](#): Bissell, *Reflections of a Cold Warrior*, 105. Bissell wrote, "To preserve the secrecy and expeditiousness that Eisenhower and Allen Dulles insisted on, I argued for removing the U-2 project from the agency's organizational chart and setting it up as a stand-alone organization. As a result, the entire project became the most compartmented and self-contained activity within the agency."

25. [five-page brief](#): Eisenhower was uniquely invested in Area 51 because the success of the U-2 program, which came to be during his administration, was critical to the nation's security.

26. [the Air Force was almost entirely left out](#): As recalled by General Leo Geary, Bissell's Air Force deputy, in an interview with Jonathan Lewis, tape recording, Chevy Chase, MD, 11 February 1994; Bissell, *Reflections of a Cold Warrior*, 100.

27. [LeMay was, understandably, enraged](#): "Eventually President Eisenhower settled the dispute." Pedlow and Welzenbach, *Central Intelligence Agency*, 60; Bissell, *Reflections of a Cold Warrior*, 109.

28. [the president's decision](#): "I want this whole thing to be a civilian operation," the president wrote. "If uniformed personnel of the armed services of the United States fly over Russia, it is an act of war—legally—and I don't want any part of it." From Pedlow and Welzenbach, *Central Intelligence Agency*, 60.

29. [Bob Murphy would often chat with George Pappas](#): Interview with Bob Murphy.

30. [Had Pappas been just thirty feet higher](#): From Hank Meierdierck's personal papers; Meierdierck located the crash remains from a U-2 he took out on a search mission.

31. [the CIA acknowledged the plane crash in 2002](#): As part of a tribute given by the U.S. Forest Service. The CIA did not, however, acknowledge that the aircraft was traveling to Area 51; also see Cyril Plaskon, *Silent Heroes*.

32. [security systems for Air Force One](#): EG&G, a Division of URS, Albuquerque Operations Web site. "EG&G has provided security systems for U.S. Government facilities: Department of Energy Headquarters, U.S. Bureau of Engraving, Presidential AF-1 Hangar Complex, Rocky Flats [nuclear weapons production facility in Colorado], Tooele [Utah, Army Depot for WMD]."

Chapter Four: The Seeds of a Conspiracy

Interviews: Lieutenant Colonel Tony Bevacqua, Edward Lovick, Ray Goudey, Al O'Donnell, Jim Freedman, Wayne Pendleton, T. D. Barnes

1. [Area 51, reports of UFO sightings](#): Haines, "CIA's Role," 73.
2. [U-2 look like a fiery flying cross](#): Interview with Tony Bevacqua; the wingspan is 103 feet and the fuselage is 63 feet.

3. [the crash at Roswell occurred](#): Hereafter, when I refer to the "crash at Roswell," I am referring to an aircraft, not a balloon, as has also been written. While there was a balloon-borne radar-reflector project going on at White Sands in the summer of 1947, this is not what crashed at Roswell. To learn about that project and the balloon theory put forth by one of its participants, Charles B. Moore, see Saler, Ziegler, and Moore, *UFO Crash at Roswell*.

4. [Project Sign](#): U.S. Air Force Air Materiel Command, "Unidentified Aerial Objects; Project SIGN"; Haines, "CIA's Role," 68.

5. [Project Grudge](#): U.S. Air Force, Project Grudge and Blue Book, Reports 1–12. Since the declassification of Projects Saucer, Sign, Grudge, Twinkle, and Blue Book, which began incrementally in the 1970s, the collection is housed in the National Archives; see <http://www.archives.gov/foia/ufos.html>.

6. [disliked technology in general](#): Pedlow and Welzenbach, *Central Intelligence Agency*, 17, "High altitude reconnaissance of the Soviet Union did not fit well into Allen Dulles's perception of the proper role of an intelligence agency. He tended to favor the classical form of espionage, which relied on agents rather than technology." Allen Dulles's predilection to work with former Nazis has become more obvious and more troubling as time goes by and Paperclip files are slowly declassified. The last line in Dulles's three-page CIA biography, "Secret Security Information: Subject Allen W. Dulles 7/2-127," reads: "At any rate, the American policy in the postwar period as regards [to] Germany has been directly and deeply influenced by MR. DULLES. He has a greater trust in the Germans than he has, for instance, in the French and the Italians."

7. [The UFO division was placed](#): Office Memorandum, United States Government, To: Acting Assistant Director for Scientific Intelligence, From: Todos Odarenko, Chief, Physics and Electronics Division, SI, Subject, Current Status of Unidentified Flying Objects (UFOB) Projects, 17 December 1953.

8. [Walter Bedell Smith](#): Weiner, *Legacy of Ashes*, 4, 87, 122, 131.

9. [included the flying disc retrieved at Roswell](#): This is my defensible speculation based on interviews with the EG&G engineer and my understanding of Bedell Smith's role, particularly with James Forrestal, secretary of the Navy during the war and the nation's first secretary of defense, who committed suicide on May 22, 1949.

10. [Bedell Smith was the ambassador to the Soviet Union](#): CIA Center for the Study of Intelligence, Directors and Deputy Directors of Central Intelligence, Walter Smith, General, U.S. Army.

11. [Governors Island, New York](#): National Archives Records Administration, RG 338, Box 27, G-2 Section, Headquarters First Army, Governors Island, New York, 4, New York,

12. summarily rejected the idea that UFOs: There are several CIA documents, declassified starting in 1996, that I base my interpretation of General Bedell Smith's attitude toward UFOs on during his tenure at CIA. All quotes come from these documents: Central Intelligence Agency, Washington 25, D.C. Office of the Director, ER-3-2809, Memorandum to Director, Psychology Strategy Board, Subject Flying Saucers, 2 pages, signed Walter B. Smith Director, undated; Memorandum for file OSI, Meeting of OSI Advisory Group on UFO, January 14 through 17, 1953, 3 pages; Scientific Advisory Panel on Unidentified Flying Objects 14–17 January 1953, Evidence Presented, 2 pages; CIA Scientific Advisory Panel on Unidentified Flying Objects, Comments and Suggestions of UFO Panel, 19 pages; Minutes of Branch Chief's Meeting of 11 August 1952, 3 pages; Memorandum for Director of Central Intelligence, From Deputy Director, Intelligence, Subject Flying Saucers, Dated September 7, 1952, 5 pages.

13. flying discs appeared in many different forms of art:
<http://www.crystalinks.com/ufohistory.html>.

14. like the boy who cried wolf: Memo, CIA Scientific Advisory Panel on Unidentified Flying Objects, Comments and Suggestions of UFO Panel, 10. "Potential related dangers. c. Subjectivity of public to mass hysteria and greater vulnerability to possible enemy psychological warfare."

15. "hysterical mass behavior": Haines, "CIA's Role," 72.

16. the publishers of Life magazine: H. B. Darrach and Robert Ginna, "Have We Visitors from Space?" *Life* magazine, April 7, 1952.

17. originally called Project Saucer: Haines, "CIA's Role," 67–68.

18. Green Fireballs: Project Twinkle, Final Report, November 27, 1951.

19. curious members of Congress: Interview with Stanton Friedman.

20. Air Force concluded for the National Security Council: U.S. Air Force Air Materiel Command, "Unidentified Aerial Objects; Project SIGN."

21. UFO convention in Los Angeles: "Minutes of the Meeting of Civilian Saucer Investigations."

22. Dr. Riedel had been working on Hitler's bacteria bomb: Neufeld, *Von Braun*, 206.

23. There were rumors of "problems": Ibid., 216–22.

24. "going to execute a planned 'hoax": CIA Office Memorandum to Assistant for Operations, OSI, From Chief Contact Division, CO, Date: 9 February 1953, Subject California Committee for Saucer Investigations.

25. set off alarms in its upper echelons: Special National Intelligence Estimate 100-2-57, No. 19, "Soviet Capabilities for Deception," Submitted by the Director of Central Intelligence, 16 pages. Based on recommendations made by the Technical Capabilities Panel, chaired by Dr. Killian, the recommendation read: "We need to examine intelligence data more broadly, or to invent some new technique, for the discovery of hoaxes."

26. trailing a colleague of Riedel named George P. Sutton: Curiously, the CIA document referenced above names George Sutton as a Riedel colleague and ufologist. Was he a plant? Was he turned? Did he reform on his own? According to the Smithsonian Papers, National Air and Space Museum, Archives Division, MRC 322, Washington, DC,

20560, in the G. Paul Sutton collection: "George Paul Sutton (1920-) was an aerospace engineer and manager. He received degrees from Los Angeles City College (AA, 1940) and the California Institute of Technology (BS, 1942; MS [ME], 1943) before going to work as a development engineer for the Rocketdyne Division of North American Aviation. He remained at Rocketdyne into the late 1960s, while also sitting as Hunsaker Professor of Aeronautical Engineering at MIT (1958-59) and serving as Chief Scientist, Advanced Research Projects Agency [ARPA] and Division Director, Institute of Defense Analysis for the Department of Defense (1959-60). Following his work at Rocketdyne he joined the technical staff at the Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory."

27. [Agency should handle reports of UFOs](#): Odarenko, Office Memorandum, August 8, 1955.

28. [Allen Dulles as an arrogant public servant](#): Letter from Director of Central Intelligence Allen Dulles to Congressman Gordon Scherer, October 4, 1955, ER-7-4372A.

Chapter Five: The Need-to-Know

Interviews: Colonel Slater, Hervey Stockman, Ken Collins, Frank Murray, Tony Bevacqua, Colonel Pizzo, Edward Lovick, Ray Goudey

1. [protocols that are also top secret](#): Correspondence with Cargill Hall. The Federation of American Scientists provides a nonclassified Central Intelligence Directive from 1995 at <http://www.fas.org/irp/offdocs/dcld1-19>.

2. [bemoaned the president's science advisers](#): Welzenbach, "Science and Technology," 16.

3. [Sage Control](#): Interview with Colonel Slater.

4. ["It was like something out of fiction"](#): Interview with Hervey Stockman. Also sourced in this section with Stockman are passages from his compelling oral history, a project that was spearheaded by his son Peter Stockman and the results of which are "Conversations with Colonel Hervey S. Stockman," edited by Ann Paden and Earl Haney (not published).

5. [The identities of the pilots were equally concealed](#): Interviews with Ken Collins, Frank Murray, Tony Bevacqua, and Hervey Stockman.

6. [NII-88](#): Brzezinski, *Red Moon Rising*, 22–23, 26–30, 39–44, 98, 102; Harford, *Korolev*, 77–80, 93, 95, 117. Also called Scientific Research Institute-88, which included the former NII-1, per Stalin on May 13, 1946.

7. [Stalin declared Sergei Korolev's name a state secret](#): Harford, *Korolev*, 1.

8. [multibillion-dollar espionage platforms](#): Ibid., 93. Harford quotes Gyorgi Vetrov, Korolev's Russian biographer, as saying about NII-88's radical transformation: "Hardly anyone suspected that the plant was destined to become a production base for such complicated and demanding technologies as rockets and space vehicles for traveling to other plants."

9. [Russia's version of America's Paperclip scientists](#): Ibid., 75. In addition to the Army intelligence CIC memos that I cited earlier regarding Fritz Wendel, Harford wrote "perhaps as many as 5,000 skilled Germans... were literally kidnapped and shipped with their families, by trains, freight cars and trucks to workplaces outside of Moscow."

10. [Operation Dragon Return](#): Goodman, *Spying on the Nuclear Bear*, 177.

11. ["cannot cope with contingencies"](#): Brzezinski, *Red Moon Rising*, 81.

12. [LeMay scrambled nearly a thousand B-47 bombers](#): Ibid., 25. The entirety of these Arctic overflights is still classified. Missions are written about in Burrows, *By Any Means Necessary*, 208–15, and in Bamford, *Body of Secrets*, 35–36. The National Security Agency cosponsored many of the ELINT missions. In *Secret Empire*, Philip Taubman wrote, "At least 252 air crewmen were shot down on spy flights between 1950 and 1970, most directed against the Soviet Union. It is certain that 90 of these men survived, for they were either rescued by American forces or their capture but the Soviet Union or another country was confirmed. But the fate of 138 men is unknown," 47.

13. [top secret missions as part of Operation Home Run](#): Interview with Colonel Sam Pizzo.

14. ["Soviet leaders may have become convinced"](#): CIA Staff, "Analysis of the Soviet Union 1947–1999," 27.

15. [President Eisenhower was gravely concerned](#): Top Secret Memorandum of Conference with the President, July 8, 1959. With Dulles and Bissell present at the meeting, USAF Brigadier General A. J. Goodpaster observed, "There remains in the President's mind the question of whether we were getting to the point where we must decide if we are trying to prepare to fight a war, or trying to prevent one." Office of the Staff Secretary, Subject Series, Alphabetical Subseries, Box 15, Intelligence Matters.

16. [Richard Bissell promised the president](#): Oral history interview with Richard M. Bissell Jr. by Theodore A. Wilson and Richard D. McKinzie, East Hartford, Connecticut, July 9, 1971.

17. [Alexander Orlov related](#): Orlov, "The U-2 Program," 5–14.

18. [We will shoot down uninvited guests](#): Ibid., 7.

19. [he would be even more enraged](#): Ibid.; Brzezinski, *Red Moon Rising*, 124–35.

20. [CIA men armed with machine guns](#): Interview with Hervey Stockman.

21. [Eisenhower's cows](#): P. Taubman, *Secret Empire*, 167.

22. [Stockman approached Russia's submarine city](#): Stockman also recalled in our interview, "This was good solid proof that what so many had thought to be over there, that there was this huge, dominant, strategic bomber force for the Soviet Union, [proved] not to be there."

23. [Herbert Miller wrote a triumphant memo](#): Declassified in 2000, the memo is called Top Secret Memorandum for: Project Director, Subject: Suggestions re the Intelligence Value of Aquatone, July 17, 1956. Three more U-2 flights followed Hervey Stockman's. On July 10, 1956, the Soviet Union filed a note of protest. Later that same day, Eisenhower ordered Bissell to stop all overflights until further notice. Miller's memo summarizes the intelligence value of the U-2 flights for the president and argues that the danger of stopping them was far greater than of continuing them.

24. [Khrushchev told his son, Sergei](#): W. Taubman, *Khrushchev*, 443.

25. [lost enthusiasm" for the CIA's aerial espionage program](#): Pedlow and Welzenbach, *Central Intelligence Agency*, 110. Further, the president noted that if Russia were to make these kinds of incursions over U.S. airspace, "The reaction would be drastic." Also from Andrew J. Goodpaster, memorandum on the record, July 19, 1956. The president expressed concern that if the public found out about the overflights, they would be shocked. "Soviet protests would be one thing, any loss of confidence by our own people would be quite another."

26. [he hired a team to analyze](#): Interview with Edward Lovick.

27. [painting the U-2 was a bad idea](#): Ibid.

28. [Air Force transferred money over to the CIA](#): Pedlow and Welzenbach, *Central Intelligence Agency*, 77.

29. [Among those selected](#): Interview with Tony Bevacqua.

30. [The next test was a freezing experiment](#): Interview with Bevacqua. Cold experiments were presented in the Nuremberg doctors' trials as "The Effect of Freezing on Human Beings," the purpose of which was for Nazi doctors to determine at what temperature a human subject dies from heart failure when being frozen.

31. [aviation medicine school at Wright-Patterson](#): Hunt, *Secret Agenda*, 10, 16, 19,

21. Hunt wrote that during the war, Lieutenant General Donald "Putt gathered the Germans together and, without approval from higher authorities in the War Department, promised them jobs at Wright Field," sourcing her interview with Lieutenant General Putt; "Report on Events and Conditions Which Occurred During Procurement of Foreign Technical Men for Work in the U.S.A.," September 25, 1945, Department of the Air Force, History of the AAF Participation in Project Paperclip, Appendix, May 1945–March 1947.

32. [previously worked at Nazi concentration camps](#): Bower, *Paperclip Conspiracy*, 214–323. Colonel Harry Armstrong, a surgeon with the U.S. Eighth Air Force, petitioned for the Nazi doctors to come to America after the war and "at the end of his distinguished career, in 1976, he would boast that the thirty-four German aviation doctors he brought to America had saved 'a great many millions of dollars.'" Armstrong had obtained approval from Eisenhower for an operation to "exploit certain uncompleted German aviation medicine research projects." Also see Staff Memo to Members of the Advisory Committee on Human Radiation Experiments, "Post-World War II Recruitment of German Scientists—Project Paperclip," April 5, 1995 (as per President Clinton). The committee obliquely concludes: "Follow-up Research. The staff believes this trail should be followed with more research before conclusions can be drawn about the Paperclip scientists... It is possible that still-classified intelligence documents could shed further light on these connections."

33. [conducting barbaric experiments](#): In Linda Hunt's *Secret Agenda*, chapter 5, "Experiments in Death," she chronicles several Nazi scientists who became Paperclips. Siegfried Ruff and Hermann Becker-Freyseng conducted death experiments on prisoners at Dachau, placing them in a pressure chamber that simulated high altitudes of up to 39,260 feet. "The U.S. military still viewed Ruff and Becker-Freyseng as valuable assets, despite their connection to these crimes. They were even employed under Paperclip [at the AAF Aero Medical Center in Heidelberg, Germany] to continue the same type of research that had resulted in the murder of Dachau prisoners," Hunt wrote. Ruff and Becker-Freyseng never got permanent U.S. Paperclip jobs; both were eventually arrested and tried at Nuremberg. Ruff was acquitted, Becker-Freyseng was convicted and given a twenty-year prison sentence. Another notable case was that of Konrad Schaefer. In an effort to study if Luftwaffe pilots could survive on seawater, Schaefer forced prisoners to drink seawater until they went mad from thirst. He then punctured their livers in order to sample fluid and blood. Schaefer was tried at Nuremberg and acquitted, at which point the United States hired him as a Paperclip. "When he arrived at San Antonio in 1950," wrote Hunt, "he was touted as 'the leading German authority on thirst and desalination of seawater.'"

34. [six hundred million still-classified](#): Pauline Jelinek, "U.S. Releases Nazi Papers," Associated Press, November 2, 1999. But in reality, this number is just a guess, since documents can be hidden inside agencies that are still classified (as the National Reconnaissance Office, NRO, was from 1961–1992); *Nazi War Crimes and Japanese Imperial Government Records*, April 2007. In 1998, President Clinton signed into law the Nazi War Crimes Disclosure Act, which "required the U.S. Government to locate, declassify, and release in their entirety, with few exceptions, remaining classified records

about war crimes committed by Nazi Germany and its allies." An interagency working group was created to oversee this work. Steven Garfinkel, acting chair of this five-year effort, wrote: "the WG has ensured that the public finally has access to the entirety of the operational files of the Office of Strategic Services (OSS), totaling 1.2 million pages; over 114,200 pages of CIA materials; over 435,000 pages from FBI files; 20,000 pages from Army Counterintelligence Corps files; and over 7 million additional pages of records." Garfinkel makes no mention of any Atomic Energy Commission files or the files of private contractors inside the Atomic Energy Commission, such as EG&G, who control documents classified as Restricted Data (RD).

35. [U-2 was as radical and as unorthodox](#): Interview with Tony Bevacqua.
36. [Edgerton's famous stop-motion photographs](#): Available for viewing at the Edgerton Center at MIT, 77 Massachusetts Avenue, Room 4-405, in Cambridge, Massachusetts, as well as online at Edgerton.org; Grundberg, "H.E. Edgerton, 86, Dies, Invented Electronic Flash," *New York Times*, January 5, 1990.
37. [Kenneth J. Germeshausen](#): Joan Cook, "Kenneth Germeshausen, 83, Dies; Was Nuclear and Radar Pioneer," *New York Times*, August 21, 1990. Information on Germeshausen also comes from the Kenneth J. Germeshausen Center for the Law of Innovation and Entrepreneurship at the Franklin Pierce Law Center; MIT archives; author interviews with Al O'Donnell, Jim Freedman.
38. [the most highly classified engineering jobs](#): Interviews with former EG&G employees Al O'Donnell, Jim Freedman, Wayne Pendleton, T. D. Barnes, and others.
39. [EG&G agreed to set up a radar range](#): Pedlow and Welzenbach, *Central Intelligence Agency*, 130. It is also interesting to note that in the footnotes in this CIA monograph, the source for information regarding the location of EG&G's radar range is redacted, only that they are from Office of Special Activity (OSA) records. Written requests to the CIA were denied.
40. [Lockheed test pilot Robert Sieker](#): Among pilots living at Area 51, a debate ensued about the cause of Sieker's crash. U-2 pilots Tony Bevacqua and Ray Goudey told me they believe pilot error caused Sieker's crash. According to them, he was known to open up his faceplate and take bites of candy bars during flight. Bevacqua himself flew a U-2 dirty bird and lived to tell the tale. Many of these mission flights were made over Asia. Lovick maintains it was the Boston Group's paint that caused the aircraft to overheat.
41. ["As it beeped in the sky"](#): Killian, *Sputnik, Scientists and Eisenhower*, 7.
42. [Killian and Bissell found themselves](#): Welzenbach, "Science and Technology," 18. "Killian had confidence in Bissell. A special relationship existed between Killian and Bissell going back to 1942."
43. [formidable top secret billion-dollar spy plane](#): Top Secret Memorandum of Conference with the President, July 20, 1959. "It will have a radar cross section so low that the probability of hostile detection and successful tracking would be very low. It would have a 4000-mile range at mach 4, with 90,000 feet altitude." Office of the Staff Secretary, Subject Series, Alphabetical Subseries, Box 15, Intelligence Matters.
44. [Advancing science and technology for military purposes](#): The Advanced Research

Projects Agency was Eisenhower's response to Sputnik, "a high-level defense organization to formulate and execute R&D projects that would expand the frontiers of technology beyond the immediate and specific requirements of the Military Services and their laboratories." In 1972, ARPA became DARPA. The *D* denotes *Defense*.

Chapter Six: Atomic Accidents

Interviews with Richard Mingus, Al O'Donnell, Jim Freedman, Dr. Wheelon, Troy Wade, Darwin Morgan, Stephen M. Younger

1. involved thirty consecutive nuclear explosions: Defense Threat Reduction Agency, fact sheet, Operation Plumbbob: "Operation Plumbbob, the sixth series of atmospheric nuclear tests conducted within the continental United States, consisted of 24 nuclear detonations and six safety tests. The Plumbbob series lasted from April 24 to Oct. 7, 1957, and involved about 14,000 Department of Defense (DoD) personnel."

2. airplane transporting an atomic bomb would crash: Atomic Energy Commission, Summary of Project 57, the First Safety Test of Operation Plumbbob, report to the General Manager by the Director, Division of Military Application, 24.

3. the perfect place to do this was Area 51: Ref. Sym 5112-(127), Appendix A, Administrative Committee Report, J. D. Shreve Jr., Sandia Corporation (seven pages, no date). "B. Area Chosen (clockwise perimeter) (Groom Mine Map) Start at intersection of 89 with north NTS boundary; follow 89 north to 51 (off map); 90 east on 51 to 04, south on 04 to Watertown (north) boundary, thence west to 95, south to NTS line, and finally west along NTS line to 89. More simply, it is the rectangle of land (1) bounded north and south by grids 51 and an extension of the north NTS edge respectively, (2) bounded east and west by grids 04 and 89 respectively, (3) excluding all area assigned to Watertown," 5.

4. "relinquished for 20,000 years": Operation Plumbbob, Summary Report, Test Group 57, Nevada Test Site, Extracted Version, May–October 1957, ITR-1515 (Extracted Version), 17.

5. "no preexisting contamination": Minutes, First General Meeting, the 57 Project, January 18, 1957, at Sandia Corporation, Red. Sym 5112-(127), declassified 8/9/83.

6. "a safety test": Memo dated April 2, 1957, LAV-57-33 Atomic Energy Commission, Las Vegas Branch, Office of the Branch Chief; also see Safety Experiments, November 1955–March 1958, Defense Nuclear Agency, United States Atmospheric Nuclear Weapons Tests, Nuclear Test Personnel Review, Report Number DNA 6030.

7. dispute was over eight dead cows: The University of Tennessee Agricultural Experiment Station, Knoxville, November 30, 1953, #404942, Stewart Brothers, Las Vegas, Nevada. Through courtesy of Joe Sanders of AEC, 1–5.

8. The commission had paid the Stewarts: Memo to Dr. W. S. Johnson, Section Leader, Test Operations Section, University of California, Los Alamos Scientific Laboratory, Los Alamos, New Mexico, October 20, 1953, #4049641.

9. aerial inspection of Groom Lake: Col. E. A. Blue, DMA/AEC; J. D. Shreve Jr., SC, W. Allaire (ALO), M. Cowan (SC) all inspected the area from the air on a special flight prior to January 18.

10. "60 to 80 cattle who hadn't gotten the word": Minutes, First General Meeting, the 57 Project, January 18, 1957, at Sandia Corporation, Red. Sym 5112-(127), 3.

11. excluded from official Nevada Test Site maps: Ref. Sym 5112-(127) Appendix A, Administrative Committee Report, J. D. Shreve Jr., Sandia Corporation (seven pages, no date). "It remains undecided whether Area 13 is considered on-site or off-site so far as

NTS is concerned... This is very important to rule on soon." Ultimately, it was decided to exclude Area 13 from all maps and it remains this way on declassified maps today because Area 13 lies inside Area 51. Denoting it on a map would lead to questions that the Atomic Energy Commission does not want asked.

12. [nuclear warhead was flown](#): Ibid., 6. "It will be requested that weapon be flown to Yucca Lake air strip March 15, transferred to Building 11 for storage awaiting ready date for the shot. Checkout would be done in Building 10 and the unit moved from there to Area 13 (requested designation for site) for firing."

13. [Richard Mingus was tired](#): Interviews with Richard Mingus.

14. [America's first dirty bomb](#): Operation Plumbbob, Summary Report, Test Group 57, Nevada Test Site, Extracted Version, May–October 1957, ITR-1515 (Extracted Version), 85 pages.

15. [Pacific Proving Ground](#): General information comes from Buck, *History of the Atomic Energy Commission*; O'Keefe, *Nuclear Hostages*; Fehner and Gosling, *Battlefield of the Cold War*.

16. [made its zigzag course](#): Fehner and Gosling, *Origins of the Nevada Test Site*, 39.

17. [arguing for an atomic bombing range](#): Ibid., 46–47.

18. [Armed Forces Special Weapons Project](#): "History of the Air Force Special Weapons Center 1 January–30 June 1957." Department of Defense, DNA 1. 950210.019, declassified with deletions 2/2/95.

19. [code-named Project Nutmeg](#): Bugher, *Review of Project Nutmeg*, #404131.

20. [The optimum conditions](#): Fehner and Gosling, *Battlefield of the Cold War*, 37.

21. [the goal of fostering competition](#): Interview with Dr. Bud Wheelon; also see Nevada Test Organization, Background Information on Nevada Nuclear Tests, Office of Test Information, July 15, 1957, #403243, 25.

22. [most ambitious series](#): Plumbbob Series 1957, Technical Report, Defense Nuclear Agency 6005F, DARE Tracking 48584, 60–75.

23. [Delta, nothing more](#): Interview with Richard Mingus.

24. [scientists really had no clear idea](#): Safety Experiments, November 1955–March 1958, Defense Nuclear Agency, United States Atmospheric Nuclear Weapons Tests, Nuclear Test Personnel Review, Report Number DNA 6030.

25. [Workers set up](#): Ref. Sym 5112-(127) Appendix B, Particle Physics Committee Report, M. Cowan, Sandia Corporation Presiding (nine pages, no date). This document refers to various objectives of the particle physics program, an "experimental approach" to fallout collection, "balloon born precipitators," air samplers on the ground, collection of fallout trays. It described how "some small plywood shacks with open windows and doors will be constructed in the fallout array. Air and surface contamination levels will be measured within the structures and compared to readings on the outside."

26. [stocked with radiation equipment and protective clothing](#): Plumbbob Series 1957, Technical Report, Defense Nuclear Agency 6005F, DARE Tracking 48584, 60–75, 316.

27. [Mother Nature's emissary](#): Interviews with Richard Mingus and Al O'Donnell, who introduced me to Mueller's widow.

28. [Project 57 balloons broke loose](#): Telex TWX 01A 2008242, From Reeves Attention Gen AD Starbird, 1957 Apr 20 AM 3:39; also see "Feasibility of Weapon Delivery By Free Balloons," OSTI ID: 10150708; Legacy ID: DE98056381, 34 pages.

29. [hand-fired by an employee from EG&G](#): Operation Plumbbob, Summary Report, Test Group 57, Nevada Test Site, Extracted Version, May–October 1957, ITR-1515 (EX). Sandia Corporation, Albuquerque, NM, October 10, 1958. "At 0350 PST April 24, a surface charge of 110 pounds of stick dynamite was fired 1,000 feet east of Zone C (as position 42-61) to verify predictions of cloud height. Timing and firing circuits were the ultimate in simplicity; the weapon was hand fired by EG&G at the Test Group Director's instruction."

30. [fallout was to the north](#): Ibid., 55 (6.1., Weather Observations). The weather was meticulously recorded, which is ironic given how "fast and loose" everything else was running out at the test site, as stated by an EG&G employee who also worked as a liaison to the Pentagon. "April 10, 1957. Hodographs during the period 2100 to 2330 PST showed that satisfactory conditions existed at 2100 PST, but a recommendation for cancellation was made after the wind shifted to northwest on the 2300 PST soundings. April 1F, [sic] 1957. Satisfactory wind conditions existed at 0441 PST, but the morning inversion broke more quickly than expected. By 0530 PST, winds were too strong and the shear had disappeared, forcing cancellation. April 20, 1957, Intermittent light showers began at 2330 PST on the 19th and continued through the remainder of the night and following morning. Hodographs indicated that satisfactory winds existed during this period, but moisture on the instrumentation forced cancellation. April 24, 1957. Scattered middle clouds were observed and a moderate dew formed during the night. The sequence of wind changes from 0415 to 0756 is shown by the hodographs. The shot was fired at 0627 PST."

31. [The bomb was indeed dirty](#): In June of 1982, Sandia Corporation produced an extracted 102-page report on the results of its dirty bomb or plutonium-contamination effects study on Project 57 for the director of the Defense Nuclear Agency, in lieu of a proposed cleanup of Area 13 (see chapter 18). Information in this chapter comes from portions of that extracted study. The stated objectives of the project "were to estimate the immediate and long-term distribution of plutonium and gain an understanding of how this distribution comes about, to conduct a biomedical evaluation of plutonium-laden environments, to investigate relevant methods of decontamination, and to evaluate alpha field survey instruments and monitoring procedures." And yet Area 13 soil decontamination was not even considered for twenty-five years.

32. ["extract" of the original report](#): The full, still-classified document, originally prepared by Sandia Corporation in Albuquerque, New Mexico, in October of 1958, is called ITR-1515.

33. [the alpha half-life of plutonium-239](#): Ibid., 17 ("Motivation and Mission, 1.1 Historical Resume"). The text reads: "once in the stomach, their stay in the body is short, for they are excreted as an inert material with virtually no body assimilation. Inhalation is a different mechanism entirely and one which presents a considerable threat. Any particle small enough to reach the lower respiratory tract apparently has an excellent chance of

clinging to alveolar surfaces and staying to do radiation damage... One cannot outlive the influence, because the alpha half life of plutonium-239 is of the order of 20,000 years."

34. "[respirable plutonium remarkably far downwind](#)": Ibid., 7 ("Foreword, Abstract").
35. "[earthworms moved 18 tons of soil](#)": Ibid., 101 (8.6, "A New Program"). "Finally, Dr. Kermit Larson agreed to exploit an idea which grew out of discussions among participants in the anniversary measurements—earthworms. Compton's Encyclopedia reports that the renowned Charles Darwin studied an acre of garden in which he claimed 53,000 hard-working earthworms moved 18 tons of soil. Translocation of soil, the possibility that earthworm body chemistry may vary plutonium form, etc., could turn out to be significant influences, intentional or unintentional, in the rehabilitation of a weapon-accident environment."

36. [Pauling said](#): The quotes in this two-page section, and also the newspaper quotes [here](#), are from the extensive newspaper archive collection located in the Atomic Testing Museum library reading room in Las Vegas, Nevada.

37. [The Pentagon wondered](#): Fehner and Gosling, *Battlefield of the Cold War*, 159–82.

38. [caused Area 51 personnel](#): Interview with Richard Mingus.

39. "[the Indoctrination Project](#)": DNA 6005F, Plumbbob Series 1957, United States Atmospheric Nuclear Weapons Tests, Nuclear Test Personnel Review, Chapter 4, Exercise Desert Rock VII and VIII Programs, 81, 96.

40. [Committee on Human Resources](#): Memorandum, Members of the Advisory Committee on Human Radiation Experiments, September 8, 1994, "Human Experiments in Connection with the Atomic Bomb Tests," attachment 5, item 10.

41. "[mythical attack by an aggressor force](#)": During the Hood nuclear bomb, the Marine Corps conducted coordinated air-ground assault maneuvers that included helicopter airlifts and tactical air support; "Exercise Desert Rock VII-VIII, Operation Plumbbob," Defense Nuclear Agency 4747F.

42. [Mingus saw that a large swath of the desert was on fire](#): Interview with Mingus.

43. [Area 51 had become uninhabitable](#): Interview with Richard Mingus; also Office Memorandum, United States Government, Observed Damage at Watertown, Nevada, following the Sixth Nuclear shot of Plumbbob, July 9, 1957. R. A. Gilmore, Off-Site Rad-Safe, NTO, #0150371.

Chapter Seven: From Ghost Town to Boomtown

Interviews: T. D. Barnes, Peter Merlin, Al O'Donnell, Richard Mingus, Jim Freedman, Ed Lovick, Tony Bevacqua, Ray Goudey, Ernie Williams, Harry Martin, Colonel Slater, Frank Murray

1 . [measuring fallout with Geiger counters in hand](#): Interview with T. D. Barnes; Operation Plumbbob Projects and Reports: Program 2, Project 2.2., Neutron Induced Activities in Soil Elements WT-1411; Project 2.5 Initial Gamma Radiation Intensity and Neutron-Induced Gamma Radiation of NTS Soil WT-1414.

2 . [dressed in white lab coats and work boots](#): Photographs viewed at the Atomic Testing Museum library, Las Vegas.

3 . [from pinhead particles to pencil-size pieces of steel](#): DNA 6005F, Plumbbob Series 1957, United States Atmospheric Nuclear Weapons Tests, Nuclear Test Personnel Review, Chapter 4, Exercise Desert Rock VII and VIII Programs, Civil Effects Test Group, Fallout Studies, 204-247; AEC Research and Development Report BNWL-481-1, 113 pages.

4 . [surprise of the nuclear scientists](#): McPhee, *Curve of Binding Energy*, 166–67.

5 . [could locate them with magnets](#): Roadrunners Internationale newsletter, August 1, 2009, 34th edition. From the personal diary of Dan Sheahan, owner and operator of the Groom Mine, provided to the Roadrunners Internationale by his great-granddaughter Lisa Heawood.

6 . [weapons planners moved ahead](#): Interviews with Al O'Donnell, Richard Mingus, and Jim Freedman. There was a nuclear test ban moratorium on the horizon, which meant that all weapons tests were scheduled to end on October 31, 1958. At the test site, weapons engineers worked at a frenzied pace to finish as many nuclear tests as they could before the deadline.

7 . [the animals observed](#): An anonymous eyewitness related to me the horror of watching a dying horse seek water at Area 51. The AEC has never declassified its animal observations, which I understand are extensive. In an AEC document released to the public on July 15, 1957, entitled "Responsibility for U.S. Nuclear Weapons Programs," in a section called "Operating Controls," it is stated that "cattle and horses grazing within a few miles of the detonation suffered skin deep beta radiation burns on their hides (1952 and 1953 series) with no effect on their breeding value and no effect on the cattle's beef quality. Radiation fallout more than a few miles from detonation has been quite harmless to humans, animals or crops." In *The Day We Bombed Utah*, John G. Fuller presents the opposite argument.

8 . [emergency landing on the former U-2 airstrip](#): Interview with Peter Merlin.

9 . [Edward Lovick was standing on](#): Interview with Edward Lovick.

10 . [grandfather of stealth](#): Before working on the A-12, Lovick's first job at Skunk Works was to try to reduce the radar reflections being bounced back from the U-2 to the Soviet radar systems. With Area 51 still shuttered from atomic fallout, the physicist's first efforts took place at a remote hangar in the north corner of Edwards Air Force Base in California. There, Lovick and colleagues spent hours coming up with all kinds of antiradar

schemes: "It was our job to invent something that would neither compromise the aircraft's height, nor allow its hydraulic system to overheat as had happened with Sieker. Kelly Johnson had a rule: one pound of extra weight applied to the aircraft would reduce its altitude by one foot. This meant our camouflage coating couldn't exceed a quarter of an inch and had to weigh as little as possible."

11. [aircraft would be radically different](#): Interviews with Ed Lovick, Dr. Wheelon, T. D. Barnes. Other federal agencies were also secretly experimenting with supersonic flight, but not sustained flight at Mach 3. The Air Force, NASA, and the Navy were involved in the experimental X-15, a hypersonic airplane that would lay the groundwork for travel into space. But the X-15 was boosted off the back of a mother ship, whereas the Agency's new plane would leave the tarmac on its own power and return to the base the same way.

12. [twenty-second window](#): Peebles, *Dark Eagles*, 51.

13. [it loses precision and speed](#): Interview with Dr. Wheelon.

14. [minutiae involving radar returns](#): Jones, *The Wizard War*. Lovick spent hours describing for me the fundamental concepts of radar, which is an acronym for radio detection and ranging, which first came into being in 1904 when a German engineer named Christian Hulsmeyer figured out that electromagnetic waves could be used to identify, or "see," a metal ship floating in dense fog. It didn't take long for the military to realize the inherent value of radar as a way to detect large, moving metal objects otherwise invisible to the naked eye. This was especially true for ships and airplanes, two key means of transport in twentieth-century warfare.

15. [fourteen-year-old children were doing in 1933](#): Interview with Lovick. By high school, Lovick had created a radio receiver from scrap metal, vacuum tubes, and discarded radio parts which enabled him "to detect signals a hundred miles away, which gave me the intense feeling of discovering something that I did not previously have evidence as being there."

16. [the Archangel-1](#): Robarge, *Archangel*, 4–5. *Archangel* is a term meaning "an angel of high rank" and it is also a port city in northwestern Russia, home to many Soviet radar stations that would one day be trying to track the A-12.

17. [fifty Skunk Works employees returned to Area 51](#): Ibid., 6.

18. ["build a full scale mockup"](#): Johnson, *History of the Oxcart Program*, 5.

19. [code-named Titania](#): United States Nuclear Tests July 1945 through September 1992 DOE/NV-209-REV 15, 144. The bomb was named after a satellite of the planet Uranus.

20. [Each member of Lovick's crew](#): Interview with Lovick.

21. ["Ike wants an airplane from Mandrake the magician"](#): Rich, *Skunk Works*, 198.

22. ["by adding the chemical compound cesium"](#): Johnson, *History of the Oxcart Program*, 4. Johnson wrote: "we proposed the use of cesium additive to the fuel. This was first brought up by Mr. Ed Lovick of ADP, its final development was passed over to P&W." Lovick recalls traveling to Pratt and Whitney's research center in Florida where the aircraft engines were being tested. "I realized that I had utilized theory that applied to thermal ionization of gases and would need to use parameters appropriate to electron emission from hot solid surfaces. Our results indicated that we were dealing with mixtures of the two

states but we did not know how to determine how much of each kind of material, gas or solid, was involved in the production of the ionization that we measured. The results were encouraging, but we needed to know more. So we were moved to much better facilities at the P. & W. Willgoos Turbine Laboratory in East Hartford, Connecticut." It was there that the problem was solved.

23. [Oxcart being the fastest](#): CIA Document EO 12958 3.3(b) Oxcart Facts: A-12 Specifications; A-12 Experience Record (as of July 10, 1967). Note that in November of 1961, the X-15 rocket plane flew Mach 6, or 4,092 mph. At the time of this meeting, the CIA thought they were building the fastest airplane in the world, which technically it was, because the X-15 didn't take off on its own power. As per interviews with T. D. Barnes, who worked on both projects.

24. [Area 51 was back in business](#): Parangosky, *The Oxcart Story*, 3 (per Dr. Wheelon, Parangosky was the true author of this seminal work on Oxcart; any other name was a pseudonym). The contract was officially signed on February 11, 1960.

25. [the CIA hired work crews from next door](#): Interview with Ernie Williams.

26. [The construction of a new runway and the fuel farm](#): Interview with Harry Martin; Pedlow and Welzenbach, *Central Intelligence Agency*, 25–26.

27. [The A-12 Oxcart was a flying fuel tank](#): Interview with Harry Martin.

28. [CIA's "own little air force"](#): Interview with Colonel Slater.

29. [Getting the Oxcart to fly](#): Interview with Frank Murray.

30. [186-mile swath just to make a U-turn](#): Interview with Colonel Slater.

31. [same was true at NORAD](#): Interviews with Dr. Wheelon, Colonel Slater.

32. [they passed a simple sketch](#): Interview with Ed Lovick.

33. [S. Varentsov](#): CIA Memo, S. Varenstov, Chief Marshal, USSR, The Problem of Combat with the Nuclear Means of the Enemy and Its Solution, August 1961.

34. [advancing surface-to-air missile technology](#): Interviews with Dr. Wheelon, Ed Lovick, T. D. Barnes.

Chapter Eight: Cat and Mouse Becomes Downfall

Interviews: Gary Powers Jr., T. D. Barnes, Dr. Wheelon, Jim Freedman, Gene Poteat, Helen Kleyla (Richard Bissell's longtime secretary, via written correspondence)

1. drenched in sweat: Powers, *Operation Overflight*, 75.
2. Tyuratam was Russia's Cape Canaveral: CIA report on U-2 Vulnerability Tests, April 1960, Eisenhower Archives, Office of the Staff Secretary, Subject Series, Alphabetical Subseries, Box 15, Intelligence Matters. Memo: ICBM Targets—The Urals and Tyura Tam, "Sverdlovsk in the Urals is the best bet on the location of a major ICBM factory." Notable color U-2 flight maps are in this file.
3. head up to a facility at Plesetsk: Harford, *Korolev*, 112. "R-7s and R-7As were deployed at only two launch pads at Baikonur and, eventually, four at Plesetsk, a launch center readied by 1959... Plesetsk soon became the busiest of the USSR's three launch facilities, having responsibility for placing in orbit reconnaissance and other military satellites."
4. two-and-a-half-foot increments: Brugioni, *Eyeball to Eyeball*, 185.
5. indicated he wanted to speak with him: Powers, *Operation Overflight*, 69.
6. had a premonition: Ibid.
7. awakened by a ringing telephone: W. Taubman, *Khrushchev*, 443.
8. a sharp poke in the eye: Khrushchev, *Khrushchev Remembers*, 444. "Sverdlovsk, was an especially deep penetration into our territory and therefore an especially arrogant violation... They were making these flights to show up our impotence. Well, we weren't impotent any longer."
9. "An uncomfortable situation was shaping up": Orlov, "The U-2 Program," 10.
10. Soviets' secret bioweapons program: Hoffman, *The Dead Hand*, 119.
11. Kyshtym 40 was as valuable: Brugioni, *Eyeball to Eyeball*, 43.
12. "Destroy target": Orlov, "The U-2 Program," 11.
13. Stop and think: Powers, *Operation Overflight*, 83.
14. "He's turning left": Jack Anderson, "US Heard Russians Chasing U-2," *Washington Post*, May 12, 1960.
15. NSA operators heard: Bamford, *Body of Secrets*, 49.
16. "Bill Bailey did not come home": Richelson, *Wizards of Langley*, 18.
17. The brand was Laika: Powers, *Operation Overflight*, 91.
18. "We believed that if a U-2 was shot": Bissell, *Reflections of a Cold Warrior*, 121–22. But Bissell also admitted that the Agency agreed "unanimously" that the "big rolls of film aboard the plane would not be destroyed... Their nonflammable base would prevent them from burning, and they could be dropped from a height of ten miles and survive. We always knew that in the event of a crash there was going to be a couple rolls of film lying around, and there was not much we could do about it."
19. the White House claimed: Department of State, for the Press, No. 249, May 6, 1960; Department of State, for the Press, No. 254, May 9, 1960.
20. But Khrushchev had evidence: Incoming telegram, Department of State, Control 6700, May 10, 1969.

21. [With great bravado](#): W. Taubman, *Khrushchev*, 455–58.
22. [I would like to resign](#): P. Taubman, *Secret Empire*, 396.
23. [Eisenhower wouldn't bow](#): Bamford, *Body of Secrets*, 53–54. “For Eisenhower, the whole process was quickly turning into Chinese water torture. Every day he was being forced to dribble out more and more of the story.”
24. [the first time any nation had publicly admitted](#): Brugioni, *Eyeball to Eyeball*, 49.
25. [authorized a Soviet military base](#): Ibid., 55.
26. [twenty-five minutes' time](#): Havana, Cuba, to Washington, DC, is 1,130 miles. In 1960, a Russian missile traveled at approximately Mach 3.5.
27. [During Powers's trial](#): “Report on Conclusion of Powers Trial, USSR International Affairs,” August 22, 1960, approved for release September 1985, 39 pages.
28. [Las Vegas firing range \(poligon\) in the Nevada desert](#): Ibid., RB-6.
29. [criminal conspiracy](#): Ibid.
30. [follower of Hitler](#): Ibid., RB-20.
31. [Watertown as the U-2 training facility](#): Powers, *Operation Overflight*, 114.
32. [out at the Ranch](#): Parangosky, *The Oxcart Story*, 6–7.
33. [Richard Bissell had a tennis court put in](#): Interview with Dr. Wheelon.
34. [Prohibited Area P-275](#): Interview with Peter Merlin.
35. [thirteen million different parts](#): Bissell, *Reflections of a Cold Warrior*, 133.
36. [the titanium that first held everything up](#): Pedlow and Welzenbach, *Central Intelligence Agency*, 21–22.
37. [nearly 95 percent of what Lockheed initially received](#): Robarge, *Archangel*, 11.
38. [Russia was spending billions of rubles](#): Interview with Ed Lovick.
39. [who thought ELINT was a dirty word](#): Poteat, “Engineering and the CIA,” 24.
40. [Barnes was recruited by the CIA](#): Interview with Barnes; CIA Personal Resume, 1966, Barnes, Thornton Duard.
41. [Castro's regime "must be overthrown"](#): Bissell, *Reflections of a Cold Warrior*, 153.
42. [Richard Bissell," Kennedy said](#): Thomas, “Wayward Spy,” 36.
43. [put a bullet in his own head](#): Weiner, *Legacy of Ashes*, 303.
44. [Bahía de Cochinos, or the Bay of Pigs](#): Kirkpatrick, *The Real CIA*, chapter 8; Pfeiffer, *CIA's Official History of the Bay of Pigs*; Warner, “CIA's Internal Probe.”
45. [could help in gathering intel](#): Oral history interview with Richard M. Bissell Jr. by Theodore A. Wilson and Richard D. McKinzie, East Hartford, Connecticut, July 9, 1971.
46. [Bissell blamed the mission's failure on his old rival General Curtis LeMay](#): Bissell, *Reflections of a Cold Warrior*, 176. In discussing the decision of the Joint Chiefs, which included LeMay sitting in for the commandant of the Marines, “to cancel the air strikes so readily,” Bissell stated, “one could make a case that their view reflected rivalry between the air force and the CIA. The agency's earlier success with the overhead reconnaissance programs had disturbed certain high-ranking members of the air force.” Certainly he is referring to LeMay. “Friends of mine in the military spoke frankly to me about this,” Bissell added. “There was no denying that the sentiment existed among military that all the air activities undertaken by the CIA in the U-2, SR-71 [note: Oxcart had not been declassified yet] and spy satellite programs should have come under jurisdiction of the air force. Robert

Amory recalled in a 1966 interview that, after I was put in charge of the U-2 program, 'essentially the air force's eye was wiped in you-know-what and they resented that from the beginning.'" For Bissell, "the resentment never died."

47. [if LeMay had provided adequate air cover](#): Ibid., 175. "Curtis LeMay (who was sitting in for the absent commandant of the Marines) and several of the chiefs admitted their doubt about the absolute essentiality of air cover... I was shocked. We all knew only too well that without air support, the project would fail."

48. ["time zone confusion"](#): Ibid., 189. Bissell wrote, "When the B-26s lumbered into the air the next day, however, no navy cover appeared. It seemed that a misunderstanding about the correct time standard had prevented the air support from being at the target area when expected. As a result, the B-26s were either forced from the field of battle or shot down, the final tragic blow." From the National Security Archive: "The unmarked jets failed to rendezvous with the bombers, however, because the CIA and the Pentagon were unaware of a time zone difference between Nicaragua and Cuba."

49. [Lyman B. Kirkpatrick Jr.](#): Interviews with Jim Freedman.

50. [Lyman Kirkpatrick contracted polio](#): Biography of Lyman B. Kirkpatrick, Princeton University Library, Department of Rare Books and Special Collections, Seeley G. Mudd Manuscript Library, Public Policy Papers. Lyman B. Kirkpatrick Papers, circa 1933–2000, Call Number MC209.

51. [relegated to the role of second-tier bureaucrat](#): In his memoir, Bissell does not mince words. He calls Kirkpatrick "an ambitious man who, in spite of paralysis from polio, aspired to position of director of central intelligence. His illness necessitated a move from the exciting and challenging directorate of plans to the more mundane, bureaucratic position of inspector general, a shift he always resented." Bissell, *Reflections of a Cold Warrior*, 193.

Chapter Nine: The Base Builds Back Up

Interviews with Harry Martin, Jim Freedman, T. D. Barnes, Al O'Donnell, Peter Merlin, Millie Meierdierck

1. [the man in charge of property control at Area 51](#): Interviews with Jim Freedman, T. D. Barnes, Al O'Donnell.

2. [The high and rugged northeast perimeter](#): Interview with Peter Merlin, who obtained copies (largely redacted) of Kirkpatrick's visit to Area 51 from the CIA's online reading room (CIA.gov). These documents appear to have since been removed.

3. [Bay of Pigs will embolden the Soviets](#): Absher, *Mind-Sets and Missiles*, 10.

4. [Area 51 was a target](#): Interviews with Peter Merlin, Jim Freedman.

5. [decided to make a hunting trip](#): Interview with Jim Freedman; Hank Meierdierck's personal papers.

6. [Richard Bissell resigned](#): Oral history interview with Richard M. Bissell Jr. by Theodore A. Wilson and Richard D. McKinzie, East Hartford, Connecticut, July 9, 1971 (Harry S. Truman Library and Museum), <http://www.trumanlibrary.org/oralhist/bissellr.htm>.

7. [keep the CIA in the spy plane business](#): Welzenbach, "Science and Technology," 23.

8. [Richard Bissell alone, had gone rogue](#): Ibid., 22.

9. [CIA might work in better partnership](#): Richelson, *Wizards of Langley*, 58–60.

10. ["Wayne Pendleton was the head of the radar group"](#): Interview with Wayne Pendleton.

11. [and 'dirty tricks' of Dick Bissell's](#): Welzenbach, "Science and Technology," 22. The full passage reads: "However, a note of discord crept into Bissell's relations with Land and Killian... both Land and Killian looked upon science and technology almost as a religion, something sacred to be kept from contamination by those who would misuse it for unwholesome ends. Into this category fit the covert operations and dirty tricks of Dick Bissell's Directorate of Plans."

12. [called Teak and Orange](#): Film footage viewed at the Atomic Testing Museum, Las Vegas.

13. [which is exactly where the ozone layer lies](#): Hoerlin, "United States High-Altitude Test," 43.

14. [The impetus for these tests](#): Ibid., 47.

15. [his rationale](#): Ground stations were supposed to measure acoustic waves that would happen as a result of the blast but Teak detonated seven miles laterally off course to the south and the communication systems were knocked out. Orange detonated four miles higher than it was supposed to and "the deviations affected data acquisitions."

16. [The animals' heads had been locked in gadgets](#): Oral history interview with Air Force colonel John Pickering, 52. Film footage viewed at the Atomic Testing Museum, Las Vegas.

17. ["Teak and Orange events would 'burn a hole' into the natural ozone layer](#): Hoerlin, "United States High-Altitude Test," 43.

18. [Von Braun can be seen examining the Redstone rocket](#): Teak shot film footage

viewed at the Atomic Testing Museum library, Las Vegas.

19. [left the island before the second test](#): Interview with Al O'Donnell; Neufeld, Von Braun, 332.
20. [to dash up to Hitler's lair](#): Neufeld, Von Braun, 127.
21. [project called Operation Argus commenced](#): Final Review of Argus Fact Sheet, 16 Apr. 82. "The tests were conducted in complete secrecy and were not announced until the following year."
22. [Christofilos convinced Killian](#): Killian, *Sputnik, Scientists and Eisenhower*, 187.
23. ["probably the most spectacular event ever conducted"](#): The White House Memorandum for the President, From J.R. Killian Jr., Subject: Preliminary Results of the ARGUS experiment, dated November 3, 1958, declassified 5/20/77.
24. [Walter Sullivan hand-delivered a letter to Killian](#): The letter is marked "By Hand" and dated February 2, 1959, written on *New York Times* letterhead, and addressed to Dr. James R. Killian Jr. at the White House.
25. ["Neither confirm nor deny such leaks"](#): Memorandum to Dr. James R. Killian, Jr. Subject: Release of Information on ARGUS. Dated January 20, 1959, signed Karl G. Harr, Jr. Special Assistant to the President. Among other things, it is interesting to note here that on White House stationery, Killian is referred to as "Dr. Killian." He was not a doctor; he never received a PhD but rather a bachelor's degree in management. This fact was confirmed for me by MIT library staffer Jennifer Hirsch. "Mr. Killian always went out of his way to remind people he was not a doctor," I was told—apparently not so with the White House.
26. ["I would be protected from congressional inquisition"](#): Killian, *Sputnik, Scientists and Eisenhower*, 25.
27. ["Are you still there?"](#): Admiral Parker of the Armed Forces Special Weapons Project; Defense Technical Information Center Staff, *Defense's Nuclear Agency 1947–1997*, 140; Defense Threat Reduction Agency, 2002.

Chapter Ten: Wizards of Science, Technology, and Diplomacy

Interviews: Harry Martin, Louise Schalk, Dr. Wheelon, Colonel Slater, Frank Murray, Roger Andersen, Ken Collins

1. [Martin had been at Area 51 since the very first days](#): Interviews with Harry Martin.
2. [The generals would inevitably show up](#): Classified Message, Secret 2135Z 14 May 62, To Director, Prity [sic] OXCART. "1. General Power, General Compton, Col Montoya and Col Geary [redacted], A-12... During the flight the visitors were shown [redacted]... Kelly Johnson flew back to Las Vegas with the group... General Power seemed very impressed with the aircraft." Declassified by CIA, August 2007.
3. ["Lou, wake up!"](#): Interview with Louise Schalk.
4. [The aircraft began wobbling](#): Johnson, *History of the Oxcart Program*, 12.
5. [What in Hell, Lou?](#): Rich, *Skunk Works*, 219.
6. [Martin thought for sure the airplane was going to crash](#): Interview with Harry Martin.
7. [Rare film footage of the historic event](#): CIA footage, T. D. Barnes's personal collection.
8. [Bud Wheelon](#): Central Intelligence Agency, "Biographic Profile, Albert Dewell Wheelon," May 10, 1966, NARA, MRB, RG 263.
9. [Howard and Jane Roman](#): Helms, *A Look Over My Shoulder*, 275. "When the CIA Counterintelligence Staff was established, Jim Angleton assumed responsibility for operational liaison with the FBI. Jane Roman, a veteran OSS X-2 officer, handled the daily meetings..."; interview with Dr. Wheelon.
10. [hand-picked by President Kennedy's science advisers](#): Central Intelligence Agency, R. V. Jones Intelligence Award Ceremony Honoring Dr. Albert Wheelon, December 13, 1994.
11. ["in this way, I became the new 'Mayor of Area 51'"](#): Interview with Dr. Wheelon.
12. [Agency had been analyzing reports](#): McAuliffe, *CIA Documents on the Cuban Missile Crisis 1962*, 1–31.
13. [including 1,700 Soviet military technicians](#): Ibid., 37.
14. [jamming facilities against Cape Canaveral](#): Ibid.
15. [McCone left for his honeymoon in Paris](#): Interview with Dr. Wheelon.
16. [Not another Gary Powers incident](#): This was a common theme among military planners all through the 1960s.
17. [the CIA got presidential approval](#): Office of Special Activities DD/S&T Chronological History, 30 August 1966, Top Secret, Approved for release Jul 2001, 5. "5 October 1962, Last CIA Flight over Cuba (50 flown in all)."
18. [pushing for preemptive strikes](#): Brugioni, *Eyeball to Eyeball*, 265.
19. [Ledford had been asked by McCone](#): Interview with Dr. Wheelon.
20. [General LeMay encouraged him to take the CIA liaison job](#): Richelson, *Wizards of Langley*, 53.
21. [Ledford's plane crash, involving heroics](#): Official Website of U.S. Air Force, biography of Brigadier General Jack C. Ledford, retired Oct. 1, 1970; died Nov. 16, 2007.
22. [tried to treat Ledford with opiates](#): This story was legendary among the men who

worked under Ledford at Area 51 and is sourced from multiple interviews including with Colonel Slater and Frank Murray. A version of it can be read at the Arlington National Cemetery Web site. Ledford's backseater, Sergeant Harry C. Miller, died of his original wounds several hours after Ledford and the medic helped him out of the plane.

23. [The chances were one in six, Ledford said](#): Richelson, *Wizards of Langley*, 53.
24. [Kennedy felt that if a CIA spy plane](#): Interview with Dr. Wheelon.
25. [Air Force pilot flying an Agency U-2](#): Richelson, *Wizards of Langley*, 54.
26. [Photographs showing nuclear missiles](#): Brugioni, *Eyeball to Eyeball*, photographic inserts.

Chapter Eleven: What Airplane?

Interviews: Ken Collins, Don Donohue, Sam Pizzo, Frank Murray, Roger Andersen, Florence DeLuna, Frank Micalizzi, Harry Martin

1. [Collins went by the code name Ken Colmar](#): Interviews with Ken Collins, who had never revealed his code name before.
2. [She made it as far as Athens](#): Powers, *Overflight*, 59.
3. [he flew deep into North Korea](#): Citation, First Lieutenant Kenneth S. Collins, SO. No. 221 Hq FEAP, APO925, 6 May 53, by Command of General Weyland.
4. [fired at by MiG fighter jets](#): Ibid.
5. [Distinguished Flying Cross](#): Citation to Accompany the Award of the Distinguished Flying Cross (First Oak Leaf Cluster) to Kenneth S. Collins. AO 2222924, United States Air Force.
6. [coveted Silver Star for valor](#): Citation for Silver Star, First Lieutenant Kenneth S. Collins, by direction of the president.
7. [a total of five Oxcarts being flight-tested at Area 51](#): Robarge, *Archangel*, 17.
8. [Captain Donald Donohue would start out following Collins](#): Interview with Don Donohue.
9. [Later, Jack Weeks](#): Interview with Ken Collins.
10. ["Suddenly, the altimeter was rapidly unwinding"](#): Interview with Ken Collins.
11. [Sam Pizzo had a monumental amount of work](#): Interview with Sam Pizzo.
12. [took to the desert terrain on horseback](#): Interview with Ken Collins.
13. [filled by Air Force brass](#): Interview with Colonel Slater.
14. [Holbury had been given a commendation by General Patton](#): General Robert J. Holbury biography, Air Commander, Detachment 1 of the 1129th U.S. Air Force Special Activities Squadron at Groom Lake, Nevada; Roadrunners Internationale official Web site.
15. [a pitot tube had in fact caused the crash](#): Interview with Collins; Parangosky, *The Oxcart Story*, 11.
16. [monitoring phone conversations](#): Briefing Note for the Deputy Director of Central Intelligence, 10 March 1964. Attachment 1 to BYE-2015-64, "Project Oxcart Awareness Outside Cleared Community." The Agency also had a system in place to monitor air traffic chatter during Oxcart test flights to see if any commercial or military pilots spotted the plane.
17. [increasingly suspicious CIA](#): Col. Redmond White, Diary Notes, September 27, 1963, Secret. White was the CIA's deputy director/support and his notes include a second reference to the disclosure to *Aviation Week* as well as a notation that CIA director John McCone said, "OXCART is going to blow sooner or later."
18. [the Air Force ordered not one but three variants](#): Pedlow and Welzenbach, *Central Intelligence Agency*, 33.
19. [letters stood for "Reconnaissance/Strike"](#): Memorandum, Secretary of the Air Force Eugene Zuckert to General Bernard Schriever, April 8, 1963, w/att: Procurement and Security Provisions for the R-12 Program, Top Secret.
20. [eight hundred million dollars developing the B-70 bomber airplane](#): Marcelle Size

Knaack, *Encyclopedia of U.S. Air Force Aircraft and Missile Systems, Post-World War II Bombers*, 559. The XB-70A had its genesis in Boeing Aircraft Corporation's Project MX-2145. Also see Ball, *Politics and Force Levels*, 216–18.

21. [the President was astonished](#): Rich, *Skunk Works*, 228.

22. ["unnecessary and economically unjustifiable"](#): President Kennedy, Special Message to the Congress of Urgent National Needs, delivered in person before a joint session of Congress, May 25, 1961.

23. [Congress cut back its B-70 order even further](#): House Armed Services Committee, Authorizing Appropriations for Aircraft, Missiles and Naval Vessels for the Armed Forces (1961), 569, see FY 1962, 1564–65, 1577.

24. ["Johnson, I want a promise out of you"](#): Rich, *Skunk Works*, 231.

25. [LeMay promised to send Lockheed](#): Robarge, *Archangel*, 52. The Air Force initially envisioned a fleet of as many as a hundred YF-12s, designed to intercept a Soviet supersonic bomber rumored to be in the works.

26. [At the Ranch, it was business as usual](#): Interview with Colonel Slater.

27. [finally delivered to the Ranch](#): Robarge, *Archangel*, 17. The J-57 engine could reach a maximum speed of Mach 1.6 and a maximum height of 40,000 feet; interview with John Evans of Pratt and Whitney.

28. [An X-ray showed the outline of a pen](#): Interview with Ed Lovick.

29. [new set of challenges](#): Pedlow and Welzenbach, *Central Intelligence Agency*, 38.

30. [F-101 chase plane had run off the airstrip](#): Interview with Don Donohue.

31. [Lyndon Johnson would be briefed](#): CIA Memo, Meeting with the President, Secretary Rusk, Secretary McNamara, Mr. Bundy and DCI. Re: Surfacing the OXCART, 29 November, 1963, 1.

Chapter Twelve: Covering Up the Cover-Up

Interviews: Jim Freedman, Colonel Slater, T. D. Barnes, Stanton Friedman

1. "[I heard it was in Area 22](#)": Interview with Jim Freedman. In contemporary maps of the test site, Area 22 is located down by Camp Mercury. In the 1950s and 1960s, many of the quadrants were numbered differently.

2. [354,200 feet—almost 67 miles up](#): Jenkins, *Hypersonics Before the Shuttle*, 119. The Kármán line, commonly used to define the boundary between the Earth's atmosphere and outer space, is at an altitude of approximately 328,000, or 62 miles above sea level. The U-2 flew at 70,000 feet, or approximately 13 miles; the A-12 flew at 90,000 feet, or approximately 17.5 miles.

3. "[on 30 April, A-12 was in air](#)": Priority Secret Classified Message to Director from
2219Z Classified Message Secret 15 May 62, ZE19C "Oxcart Secure Ops."

4. [commercial pilots would report sightings](#): Interview with Colonel Slater; Annie Jacobson, "The Road to Area 51," *Los Angeles Times Magazine*, April 5, 2009, 26–28, 77.

5. [Walter Cronkite hosted a CBS news special report](#): The report can be viewed online, "From the Vault," *CBS Reports*.

6. [Dr. Robertson appeared on a CBS Reports](#): Haines, "CIA's Role," 74.

7. [House Armed Services Committee held hearings on UFOs](#): "Congress Reassured on Space Visits," *New York Times*, April 6, 1966.

8. [Air Force laying blame for the cover-up on the CIA](#): Walter L. Mackey, executive officer, memorandum for DCI, "Air Force Request to Declassify CIA Material on Unidentified Flying Objects (UFO)," September 1, 1966.

9. [According to CIA historian Gerald Haines](#): Haines, "CIA's Role."

10. [journalist named John Lear](#): Lear, "The Disputed CIA Document on UFO's," *Saturday Review* September 3, 1966.

11. [One of the more enigmatic figures](#): Hillenkoetter took over amid negotiations on May 1, 1947, of what would be the National Security Act of 1947, so when the CIA came into being on September 18, 1947, he was already DCI, per the Central Intelligence Agency Library, Roscoe Henry Hillenkoetter, Rear Admiral, US Navy, CIA.gov.

12. [served on the board of governors](#): Haines, "CIA's Role," 74.

13. [Hillenkoetter testified to Congress](#): "Air Force Order on 'Saucers' Cited; Pamphlet by the Inspector General Called Objects a 'Serious Business,'" *New York Times*, February 28, 1960.

14. [he mysteriously resigned](#): NICAP Web site, "The Who Was Series," Hillenkoetter, Vice-Admiral Roscoe, <http://www.nicap.org/photobio.htm>; in my interview with Stan Friedman, Friedman said there was nothing mysterious about Hillenkoetter's resigning, "he just resigned." Nor does Friedman believe that Hillenkoetter was planted at NICAP to gather information.

15. [Bryan's true role with the ufologists](#): Ibid. In the official NICAP bio for Hillenkoetter, it is written, "He resigned from NICAP in Feb 1962 and was replaced on the NICAP Board by a former covert CIA high official, Joseph Bryan III, the CIA's first Chief of Political &

Psychological Warfare (Bryan never disclosed his CIA background to NICAP or Keyhoe.)

16. [the CIA had maintained three lines of thought on UFOs](#): Memorandum for file OSI, Meeting of OSI Advisory Group on UFO, January 14 through 17, 1953, 3 pages; Scientific Advisory Panel on Unidentified Flying Objects, 14–17 January 1953, Evidence Presented, 2 pages; CIA Scientific Advisory Panel on Unidentified Flying Objects, Comments and Suggestions of UFO Panel, 19 pages. The CIA party line on UFOs had been firmly established by General Bedell Smith during his tenure and was maintained until sometime around 1966, when this new thinking emerged.

17. [This new postulation came from the Agency's monitoring](#): CIA Memo, Translation, Vitolniyek, R. (Director) Flying phenomena, Sovetsknya Latviya, no. 287, 10 Dec. 67; CIA Memo, 10 Aug. 67, "Report on Conversations with Soviet Scientists on Subject of Unidentified Flying Objects in the USSR"; CIA Memo, Translation of Memo from Komsomolskaya pravda, no. 13, 20 January 68, author Zigel, 3.

18. [Vilen Lyustiberg](#): CIA Memo, Translation, Lyustiberg V. (Science commentator for [illegible]), "Are Flying Saucers a Myth?" Pravda, Ukrayny, no. 40, 17 Feb. 68.

19. ["the U.S. publicizes them to divert people from its failures and aggressions"](#): CIA Memo, Translation, "Nothing But the Facts on UFOs or Which Novosti Writer Do You Read?" 9 April 1968, 12 pages.

20. [Zigel, had come to believe](#): The CIA followed Zigel closely. In the Agency's author biography on him, it states: "Zigel, F. Yu., Dr of Technical Science, writes under auspices of Moscow Aviation Institute, Associate Professor there as of 1969." CIA analysts discovered that Zigel's interest in UFOs began with his interest in astronomy and mathematics in 1936, after he participated in an expedition to Kazakhstan to observe a solar eclipse. Zigel had also visited the Tunguska crater in Siberia, where a comet likely exploded, in 1908. The blast knocked over approximately 80 million trees and flattened 830 square miles of Siberian forest. In the early 1960s Zigel stunned his colleagues by suggesting that the Tunguska crater could have been created by an outer space vehicle that crashed there.

21. ["UFO Section of the All-Union Cosmonautics Committee"](#): Title: Unidentified flying objects, Source: Soviet Life, no. 2 1968, 27–29, 1.

22. ["The hypothesis that UFOs originate in other worlds"](#): Ibid.

Chapter Thirteen: Dull, Dirty, and Dangerous Requires Drones

Interviews: Ken Collins, Charlie Trapp, Colonel Slater, General Hsichun "Mike" Hua, Edward Lovick, Changti "Robin" Yeh (via written correspondence), Hervey Stockman

1. [Collins knew the kind](#): Interview with Ken Collins.
2. [simulated jungle survival](#): Interviews with Ken Collins, Charlie Trapp.
3. [CIA pilot named Yeh Changti](#): Hua, *Lost Black Cats*, ix.
4. [the Black Cats flew](#): Ibid., viii-x.
5. [no information was released about Yeh Changti](#): Interview with General Hua.
6. [His code name was Terry Lee](#): Interview with Colonel Slater. Yeh Changti's American name is Robin Yeh (the Chinese put family names first).

7 . [getting hard intelligence on China's nuclear facilities](#): National Photographic Interpretation Center, Mission [GRC-169], 23 August 1963, 30 pages. The designation for these missions was Operation Church Door. Images of targets photographed by the Black Cats include the Lop Nur nuclear facility, missile launch sites, airfields, ports, and industrial complexes.

8. [Yeh Changti was tortured and held prisoner](#): Interview with General Hua; in *Lost Black Cats*, Hua, a former CIA Black Cat U-2 pilot, tells the tragic and amazing story of the nineteen years Changti and Chang spent as captives of Communist China, based on personal interviews. The sacrifices made by Changti and Chang have never been acknowledged by the CIA. On September 17, 1998, the CIA held a symposium called "U-2: A Revolution in Intelligence" to honor the declassification of many CIA-controlled U-2 operations and to celebrate its success. But the symposium omitted any mention of the Black Cat U-2 pilots according to my interview with General Hua.

9. [second Black Cat pilot named Major Jack Chang](#): Ibid., ix. To clarify, General Hua also refers to Major Jack Chang as Chang Liyi—Jack being the pilot's American nickname and Liyi being his "first name" in Chinese, which is his family name, the reverse of Western usage.

10. [dull, dirty, and dangerous](#): Interview with T. D. Barnes.
11. [and then head back out to sea](#): Interview with Lovick. "A colleague named Mike Ash and I designed an electrical circuit into the drone's pallet to select an antenna to be used to radiate the recovery beacon signal. If the sensor package was not recovered by an aircraft and it fell into the water, an antenna was deployed to allow radio signals to enable recovery." If the sensor package landed upside down, Lovick and Ash had created a system which allowed the seawater to act like a switch and activate a second antenna.

12. [Yuletide](#): Interviews with Colonel Slater, Frank Murray.
13. [with PJs nearly falling off cliffs](#): Interview with Charlie Trapp.
14. [flight engineer, Ray Torick](#): There are many different ideas about why and how Torick died. I adhere to Colonel Slater's view of the events. The drone's first official test launch was on March 5, 1966, and during that flight, the drone launched successfully off the back of the mother ship while traveling at a speed of Mach 3.2. It then flew approximately 120 miles before it ran out of fuel and crashed into the sea, as was planned. A month later, a second launch sent a drone flying for 1,900 miles, at Mach 3.3, until it fell into the sea. It

was on the third test launch that disaster struck and Torick died.

15. "[He impulsively and emotionally decided](#)": Rich, *Skunk Works*, 267.
16. "[never again allow a Francis Gary Powers situation](#)": Ibid.
17. "[Ben, do you recognize this?](#)" Ibid., 270.
18. "[dubbed Operation Aphrodite](#)": Singer, *Wired for War*, 48.
19. [Tesla's pilotless boat](#): Tesla, "Inside the Lab-Remote Control," PBS, http://www.pbs.org/tesla/ins/lab_remotec.html.
20. [Goliath carried 132 pounds of explosives](#): "Rise of the Machines," ArmyTechnology.com, May 21, 2008, <http://www.army-technology.com/features/feature1951>.
21. [mother ship called Marmalade](#): AFSC History Staff, *History of Air Force Atomic Cloud Sampling*, 9.
22. [Fox, was blasted "sixty feet higher](#): Ibid., 11.
23. [Operation Sandstone](#): For the Air Force, maintaining a drone wing was expensive. It was also a security risk. In early 1947, that more atomic tests were being planned was a closely guarded national secret because the public was being led to believe that the United States was genuinely considering outlawing the bomb—or at least putting the United Nations in control of atomic energy. In reality, it was during this period of alleged international debate that the drone unit was again called back into action for the next test series in the Pacific. Operation Crossroads was supposed to have been a singular event, and so talk surfaced among the drone pilots. Being reactivated could only mean one thing: more nuclear tests in the pipeline. This security leak made its way up the chain of command.
24. [accidentally flew through the Zebra bomb's mushroom cloud](#): AFSC History Staff, *History of Air Force Atomic Cloud Sampling*, 21.
25. "Now pilots, not drones, would be sent": Ibid., 23–24.
26. [fear that the entire world's atmosphere could catch on fire](#): Interviews with Al O'Donnell and Jim Freedman.
27. [what happened to Oppenheimer sent a strong message](#): Interview with Al O'Donnell.
28. [measurements inside the thermonuclear clouds](#): Now called Task Group 3.4 and operating out of Eglin Air Force Base in Florida, these new drones were modified T-33 aircraft, as opposed to the old TF-80s used in earlier tests. The wing fell under the command of Colonel Thomas Gent, who was also in command of the 550th Guided Missile Wing of the Air Proving Ground.
29. [crash-landed on a deserted island called Bogallua](#): AFSC History Staff, *History of Air Force Atomic Cloud Sampling*, 37.
30. [That group included Hervey Stockman](#): Ibid., 82. Hervey's name is misspelled as "Harvey."
31. [Stockman, then flew sampling missions](#): Ibid., 80–85. Interview with Hervey Stockman.
32. "[scientists put monkeys in the cockpits](#)": "Conversations with Colonel Hervey S. Stockman," edited by Ann Paden and Earl Haney (not published), from a section called

"Nuclear testing program."

33. "[not serving as guinea pigs](#)": AFSC History Staff, *History of Air Force Atomic Cloud Sampling*, 66.

34. "[In those days](#)": "Conversations with Colonel Hervey S. Stockman," edited by Ann Paden and Earl Haney (not published), from a section called "Pacific testing ground."

35. [Jimmy P. Robinson was one of the six pilots](#): The details of Robinson's story, including where I quote him, can be found in AFSC History Staff, *History of Air Force Atomic Cloud Sampling*, 69–75. Robinson's name is redacted from the monograph, the words "privacy act material removed" stamped in their place. In 2009, Mark Wolverton wrote "Into the Mushroom Cloud" for *Air and Space* magazine and revealed the pilot's name publicly for the first time. Robinson was posthumously awarded the Distinguished Flying Cross about a year after his death, but his family had no idea how he actually had died. Wolverton wrote that Robinson's daughter Rebecca, "a baby when her father died, spent years petitioning the government for more information about his last mission, with only limited access." Rebecca Robinson says most of the information about her father's death is "still classified."

36. [Atomic-sampling pilots wore lead-lined vests](#): AFSC History Staff, *History of Air Force Atomic Cloud Sampling*, 101.

37. "[It was one of the ones that was too big](#)": Interview with Al O'Donnell.

38. [In contrast, the bomb dropped on Hiroshima](#): Rhodes, *Dark Sun*, photograph #76, "Mike over Manhattan." Here, the Ivy Mike fireball is shown in comparison with a Nagasaki-scale atomic bomb. Mike's stem was 20 miles in diameter and its mushroom cap only began at 50,000 feet, approximately twice as high as commercial airplanes fly. The top of the mushroom cloud extended into the troposphere and was approximately 200 miles wide.

Chapter Fourteen: Drama in the Desert

Interviews: Colonel Slater, Dr. Wheelon, Ken Collins, Kenneth Swanson, Frank Murray, Charlie Trapp, Frank Murray, Tony Bevacqua, Dr. Robert B. Abernethy

1. [air-conditioned hunting blind](#): Woods, *LBJ*, 313.
2. "[I'll be damned](#)": Brzezinski, *Red Moon Rising*, 175.
3. "[Soon they will be dropping](#)": Dickson, *Sputnik*, 117.
4. [not a cause for panic](#): Korda, *Ike*, 700.
5. "[What most actually saw](#)": Brzezinski, *Red Moon Rising*, 176.
6. [Johnson sat in the Oval Office with CIA director](#): CIA Memo, Meeting with the President, Secretary Rusk, Secretary McNamara, Mr. Bundy and DCI. Re: Surfacing the OXCART, 29 November, 1963, 1.

7. [it would hold aviation records](#): T. D. Barnes explained, "Officially, the SR-71 Blackbird still holds the world speed record for sustained flight in an oxygen-breathing plane in horizontal flight but it is common knowledge throughout the Blackbird community that the A-12 flew higher and faster because of the sacrifices the SR-71 made to accommodate a second passenger. The reason the SR-71 holds the 'records' is because those of the A-12 were not certified. The A-12 Oxcart didn't exist when the Air Force was setting records."

8. [outing the Oxcart was a terrific idea](#): If the public knew about Oxcart, there would no longer be a reason to have the Agency in charge of a program that needed secrecy as a cover. The Air Force knew the CIA had done all the work getting Oxcart up and running; now was the time to push the Agency aside. This echoes what happened with Curtis LeMay's early summation of the U-2 program in 1955: "We'll let [the CIA] develop it and then we'll take it from them," from Brugioni, *Eyeball to Eyeball*, 24.

9. [they could take over Oxcart](#): Letter, General Bernard Schriever to Eugene M. Zuckert, July 11, 1963, Top Secret.

10. [McCone tried a different approach](#): CIA Memo, Meeting with the President, Re: Surfacing the OXCART, 29 November, 1963, 1. "The development of the CIA and Air Force reconnaissance planes (15 in number) would cost about \$700 million, of which about \$400 million have now been spent." This figure does not include the aircraft's "extraordinary engines," made by Pratt and Whitney. Regarding those costs, Lockheed Skunk Works chief (from 1975–1991) Ben Rich wrote, "The CIA unhappily swallowed the enormous development costs of \$600 million."

11. [the fictitious name A-11](#): Parangosky, *The Oxcart Story*, 4: "The President's reference to the 'A-11' was of course deliberate. 'A-11' had been the original design designation for the all-metal aircraft first proposed by Lockheed; subsequently it became the design designation for the Air Force YF-12A interceptor which differed from its parent mainly in that it carried a second man for launching air-to-air missiles. To preserve the distinction between the A-11 and the A-12 Security had briefed practically all participating personnel in government and industry on the impending announcement. OXCART secrecy continued in effect. There was considerable speculation about an Agency role in the A-11 development, but it was never acknowledged by the government."

12. "[The world record for aircraft speed](#)": Public Papers of Presidents of the United States, Lyndon B. Johnson, 1963–1964, 1:322–23.
13. [the aircraft were still dripping wet](#): Interview with Colonel Slater.
14. "[without the specific knowledge of the President](#)": Summary of Meeting with Secretary McNamara and Secretary Gilpatric, General Carter and Mr. McCone on 5 July 1962. DCI Records dated 6 July 1962.
15. [approved the Oxcart for Operation Skylark](#): Carter Memorandum to Wheelon, "SKYLARK," 22 Aug. 1964.
16. [according to Ken Collins](#): Interview with Ken Collins.
17. [specially designed J-58 turbojet engines](#): Interview with Dr. Robert Abernethy. Robarge, *Archangel*, 12–13.
18. [two men working there were crushed to death](#): Rich, *Skunk Works*, 221.
19. [tiny black dots began to appear](#): Ibid., 223, from a story told by Norm Nelson, the CIA-Lockheed Skunk Works liaison during Oxcart.
20. [nearly knocking him unconscious](#): Interview with Ken Collins.
21. [he always sat patiently with the project pilots](#): Ibid.
22. "[Fix it," Park said](#)": Rich, *Skunk Works*, 221. This story was also clarified for me by Ken Collins, who provided additional details.
23. "[Get me out of here!" Rich later recalled](#)": Rich, *Skunk Works*, 227.
24. [Project Kempster-Lacroix](#): Interview with Ed Lovick; Pedlow and Welzenbach, *Central Intelligence Agency*, 42.
25. [the government had exploded 286 nuclear bombs](#): Through Operation Hardtack there were 119 aboveground tests. Testing resumed on September 15, 1961. From then through the end of 1964, there were 167 underground tests at NTS, including 4 at Nellis Air Force Range.
26. "[The first jamming system was called Red Dog](#)": Interview with Kenneth Swanson.
27. [Trapp thought it sounded interesting](#): Interview with Charlie Trapp.
28. [General Ledford, the head of the Office of Special Activities](#): My portrait of General Ledford is based on my interviews with men who knew him well, including Dr. Wheelon, Colonel Slater, and Frank Murray, in addition to his U.S. Air Force biographical information.
29. [it was not in Frank Murray's character](#): Interview with Colonel Slater.
30. [In 2005 NSA admitted](#): Weiner, *Legacy of Ashes*, 276–80.
31. [Robert McNamara performing an about-face regarding Oxcart](#): Robarge, *Archangel*, 31.
32. [supplying surface-to-air missile systems](#): Helms Memorandum to the 303 Committee, OXCART Reconnaissance of North Vietnam, with Attachment, 15 May 1967.
33. [set up around Hanoi](#): Interview with Tony Bevacqua; photographs from Bevacqua's personal collection.

Chapter Fifteen: The Ultimate Boys' Club

Interviews: Ken Collins, Colonel Slater, Frank Murray, Fred White, Charlie Trapp, William "Bill" Weaver, Brigadier General Raymond L. Haupt

1. [shaken from their beds](#): Interview with Ken Collins. A moratorium on testing meant that the Titania bomb, exploded on October 30, 1958, was the last nuclear bomb fired at the Nevada Test Site for a period of nearly three years. In August of 1961, the Russians announced they were resuming testing and conducted thirty-one nuclear tests over the next three months, including the fifty-eight-megaton Tsar Bomba, the largest bomb ever exploded. In response, Kennedy had the AEC resume testing at the Nevada Test Site; interview with Al O'Donnell.
2. [The incident has never been declassified](#): Interview with Collins.
3. [the less you knew, the better](#): A sentiment unanimously shared by all CIA and USAF pilots interviewed.
4. [No radio, almost no TV](#): Interviews with Slater, Murray, Collins.
5. ["like an incubus"](#): Helms, *A Look Over My Shoulder*, 309.
6. ["The only sin in espionage is getting caught"](#): David Robarge, "Richard Helms."
7. [Helms would be recruited by the Office of Strategic Services](#): Helms, *A Look Over My Shoulder*, 31.
8. [a seafood run to Westover Air Force Base](#): Interview with Colonel Slater.
9. [MKULTRA files destroyed](#): The authority on this subject is John Marks, a former State Department analyst and staff assistant to the intelligence director. In June of 1977, Marks obtained access to part of seven boxes of MKULTRA, the only ones allegedly not lost and consisting mostly of financial records. In his book *The Search for the Manchurian Candidate*, Marks wrote that shortly before leaving the CIA, "Helms presided over a wholesale destruction of documents and tapes—presumably to minimize information that might later be used against him," 219.
10. front page of the *New York Times*: According to Colonel Slater.
11. [Slater and General Ledford would be asked](#): No. 303 National Security Action Memorandum, June 2, 1964; Top Secret, From the Director of Central Intelligence, Memorandum for the 303 Committee, 22 March 1966.
12. ["McNamara was delaying finding a mission"](#): Interview with Dr. Wheelon.
13. [if a CIA spy plane were to get shot down](#): CIA Memorandum, "Reactions to a possible US Course of Action," 17 March 1966; "OXCART Development Summary and Progress," 1 October 1966–31 December 1966.
14. [The majority voted against deployment](#): Robarge, *Archangel*, 33.
15. [Slater now wanted it reduced by nearly 30 percent](#): Interview with Colonel Slater.
16. [Park had flown over all four corners of America](#): John Parangosky, deputy for technology, OSA, wrote in summation of Park's flight: "An impressive demonstration of the OXCART capability occurred on 21 December 1966 when Lockheed test pilot Bill Park flew 10,198 statute miles in six hours. The aircraft left the test area in Nevada and flew northward over Yellowstone National Park, thence eastward to Bismarck, North Dakota, and on to Duluth, Minnesota. It then turned south and passed Atlanta en route to Tampa,

Florida, then northwest to Portland, Oregon, then southwest to Nevada. Again the flight turned eastward, passing Denver and St. Louis. Turning around at Knoxville, Tennessee, it passed Memphis in the home stretch back to Nevada. This flight established a record unapproachable by any other aircraft; it began at about the same time a typical government employee starts his work day and ended two hours before his quitting time." Full text at Roadrunners Internationale official Web site.

17. [Walt Ray was, by all accounts, a terrific pilot](#): Interviews with Colonel Slater, Walt Murray, Ken Collins, Roger Andersen, Charlie Trapp.
18. [flew down to Cabo San Lucas](#): Interview with Ken Collins.
19. [fuel gauge move suddenly](#): Briefing Memorandum for Acting Deputy Director for Science and Technology, Subject Loss of Oxcart A-12 Aircraft, 6 January 1967.
20. [Walt Ray told Colonel Slater through his headset](#): Interview with Colonel Slater.
21. ["I'm ejecting"](#): Interview with Colonel Slater. Immediately after the crash Air Force channels reported that an SR-71 flying on a routine flight out of Edwards Air Force Base had gone missing and was presumed down in Nevada.
22. [unable to separate from his seat](#): Memorandum for Acting Deputy Director for Science and Technology, Subject Loss of Article 125 (Oxcart Aircraft), 25 January 1967, 2.
23. [Roger Andersen flew in low, in a T-33](#): Interview with Roger Andersen.
24. [Charlie Trapp found the aircraft first](#): Interview with Charlie Trapp.
25. ["How'd you like to fly the plane?"](#): Interview with Frank Murray.
26. [eight-page letter to the president](#): Top Secret Idealist/Oxcart, Central Intelligence Agency Office of the Director, BYE-2915-66 Alternative A, 14 December 1966.
27. [a scandalous waste of an asset](#): DRAFT, Director of Special Activities, Comments to W.R. Thomas III Memorandum to the Director, BOB, 27 July 1966, 11.
28. [Gary Powers incident had actually strengthened](#): Ibid., 3.
29. [the CIA "controls no nuclear weapons"](#): Top Secret Idealist/Oxcart, Central Intelligence Agency Office of the Director, BYE-2915-66 Alternative A, 14 December 1966, 4.
30. [But would the president see things his way](#): Memorandum for the President, Subject: Advanced Reconnaissance Aircraft, December 26, 1966, Top Secret. Participants included Cyrus Vance (deputy secretary of defense), Donald Hornig (the president's science adviser), C.W. Fischer (bureau of the budget), and Helms. All except Helms recommended mothballing Oxcart. On December 28, the president approved this memo recommendation and ordered the phaseout of the A-12 fleet by January 1968.
31. [Slater was instructed to return to Area 51](#): Interview with Colonel Slater.
32. [ahead of a two-star general](#): Ibid.
33. [Slater went to visit Werner Weiss](#): Ibid.

Chapter Sixteen: Operation Black Shield and the Secret History of the USS Pueblo

Interviews: Colonel Slater, Ken Collins, Roger Andersen, Hervey Stockman, Peter Stockman, Frank Murray, Ronald L. "Jack" Layton, Eunice Layton, Charlie Trapp

1. [never found have much use for intelligence](#): Hathaway and Smith, *Richard Helms*, 2. The most telling comment comes from Helms (*ibid.*, 7): "With President Johnson... I finally came to the conclusion that what I had to say I should get into the first 60, or at least 120 seconds, that I had on my feet. Because after that he was pushing buttons for coffee or Fresca, or talking to Rusk, or talking to McNamara, or whispering here or whispering there. I had lost my principal audience."

2. [Target Tuesday lunch](#): Barrett, "Doing 'Tuesday Lunch,'" 676-77.

3. [Helms told the president](#): John Parangosky, Deputy for Technology, OSA, wrote in summation, "Director of Central Intelligence, Richard Helms, submitted to the 303 Committee another formal proposal to deploy the OXCART. In addition, he raised the matter at President Johnson's 'Tuesday Lunch' on 16 May, and received the Presidents approval to 'go.' Walt Rostow later in the day formally conveyed the President's decision, and the BLACK SHIELD deployment plan was forthwith put into effect."

4. [A million pounds of matériel, 260 support crew](#): Johnson, *History of the Oxcart Program*, 1. The three A-12s that were deployed to Kadena flew nonstop from Groom Lake across the Pacific. They refueled twice en route and got to Kadena in a little less than six hours; interview with Colonel Slater, Ken Collins, Frank Murray, Roger Andersen.

5. [the bird should leave the nest](#): CIA Director of Special Activities to CIA Director of Reconnaissance, "Operation readiness of the OXCART System," 12 November 1965.

6. [nearly 40 percent of all islanders' income](#): CIA NLE MR Case No. 2000-69, Ryukyu Islands (Okinawa) June 1960, 2. "The military economy employs 13% of the working population and generates 36% of the national income."

7. [to keep an extremely low profile](#): Interview with Ken Collins.

8. ["no plausible cover story](#): Interview with Colonel Slater.

9. [the first Oxcart mission](#): Photographic Interpretation Report: Black Shield Mission X-001, 31 May 1967. NPIC/R-112/67, June 1967.

10. [by the time the photographic intelligence got back](#): John Parangosky, Deputy for Technology, OSA, wrote: "Film from earlier missions was developed at the Eastman Kodak plant in Rochester, New York. By late summer an Air Force Center in Japan carried out the processing in order to place the photointelligence in the hands of American commanders in Vietnam within 24 hours of completion of a BLACK SHIELD mission."

11. [four were "detected and tracked"](#): CHESS RUFF TRINE OXCART, BYE-44232/67, Black Shield Reconnaissance Missions 31 May-15 August 1967, 22 Sept 1967, Central Intelligence Agency, 1. Declassified in August 2007.

12. [first attempted shoot-down](#): Robarge, *Archangel*, 36.

13. [when he was involved in a midair crash](#): interview with Hervey Stockman; also from *Conversations with Hervey Stockman* (not numbered) in a section called "Mid-air collision."

14. [to find U.S. airmen who'd gone down](#): Interview with Frank Murray.

15. ["I hope they try something because we are looking for a fight"](#): Karnow, *Vietnam*, 514.
16. [it was on an espionage mission](#): CIA Top Secret [Redacted], 24 January 1968, Memorandum: Chronology of Events Concerning the Seizure of the USS *Pueblo*, 8 pages.
17. [two MiG-21 fighter jets appeared on the scene](#): Ibid., 3.
18. [The captain considered sinking his ship](#): Bamford, *Body of Secrets*, 259.
19. [90 percent of the documents survived](#): Ibid., 305.
20. [Pentagon began secretly preparing for war](#): Department of Defense, Top Secret Memorandum for the Secretary of Defense, January 25, 1968.
21. [pinpointed the Pueblo's exact location](#): TOP SECRET TRINE OXCART, BYE-1330/68 Figure 9; a map of Weeks's flight is noted as Mission BX-6847, 26 January 1968, figure 5.
22. [he told his fellow pilots about the problems](#): Interviews with Frank Murray, Ken Collins.
23. [very few individuals had any idea](#): In fact, for forty years, Frank Murray believed he had located the USS *Pueblo* because, in a bizarre twist, the CIA told him he did. Only in 2007, when the CIA declassified the official documents on the Oxcart program, was Jack Weeks's true role in the crisis finally revealed. Murray's other mission remains classified.
24. ["So we had to abandon any plans to hit them with airpower"](#): Rich, *Skunk Works*, 44. This is in a section of Rich's book written by Walt W. Rostow, President Johnson's national security adviser from 1966 to 1968.
25. [Murray was assigned to fly Oxcart's second mission over North Korea](#): TOP SECRET TRINE OXCART, BYE-1330/68 figure 7. Mission BX-6853, 19 February 1968.
26. [a U.S. federal judge determined](#): Wilber, "Hell Hath a Jury."
27. [There were beautiful sunsets to watch](#): Interview with Ken Collins.
28. [collectively flown twenty-nine missions](#): Robarge, *Archangel*, 35. The pilots were put on alert to fly a total of fifty-eight. Of the twenty-nine, twenty-four were over North Vietnam, two were over Cambodia, Laos, and the DMZ, and three were over North Korea.
29. ["using our jamming systems on the bird"](#): Interview with Frank Murray. The Pentagon was also using Oxcart photographs to identify potential targets for U.S. Air Force air strikes. TOP SECRET CHESS RUFF TRINE Oxcart BYE-44232/67.
30. [The Blackbirds were arriving on Kadena to take Oxcart's place](#): Interviews with Ken Collins and Tony Bevacqua. The SR-71 began arriving in March of 1968.
31. ["reaffirmed the original decision to end the A-12 program"](#): Helms Memorandum to Paul Nitze (DOD) and Horning, "Considerations Affecting OXCART Program Phase Out," 18 April 1968.
32. [Jack Weeks became ill](#): Interview with Ken Collins.
33. [After Bevacqua had left Groom Lake](#): Interview with Tony Bevacqua.
34. [mission on July 26, 1968](#): This was the first time an SR-71 was fired upon by an SA-2. With Bevacqua, in the backseat, was reconnaissance systems officer Jerry Crew. www.blackbirds.net/sr71/sr-crew-photos/ (accessed December 29, 2010).
35. [The 1129th Special Activities Squadron had reached its end](#): The Oxcart program

lasted just over ten years, from its inception as a drawing on a piece of paper called A-1, in 1957, to termination in June of 1968. Lockheed produced fifteen A-12 Oxcarts, three YF-12As, and thirty-one SR-71 Blackbirds. The CIA's John Parangosky wrote in summation, "The 49 supersonic aircraft had completed more than 7,300 flights, with 17,000 hours in the air. Over 2,400 hours had been above Mach 3. Five OXCART were lost in accidents; two pilots were killed, and two had narrow escapes. In addition, two F-101 chase planes were lost with their Air Force pilots during OXCART testing phase."

36. [The CIA held a special secret ceremony at Area 51](#): Interviews with Ken Collins, Frank Murray, Colonel Slater, and Jack Layton. Vice Admiral Rufus L. Taylor, deputy director of Central Intelligence, presented the CIA Intelligence Star for Valor to Kenneth S. Collins, Ronald L. Layton, Francis J. Murray, Dennis B. Sullivan, and Mele Vojvodich. Jack W. Weeks's award was accepted by his widow, Sharlene Weeks. The United States Air Force Legion of Merit was presented to Colonel Hugh Slater and his deputy, Colonel Maynard N. Amundson.

37. [The men moved on](#): Interviews with Ken Collins, Colonel Slater, Frank Murray, Charlie Trapp, Roger Andersen.

Chapter Seventeen: The MiGs of Area 51

- Interviews: T. D. Barnes, Doris Barnes, Tony Landis, Peter Merlin, Colonel Slater, Frank Murray, Roger Andersen, Grace Weismann (Joe Walker's widow)
1. [Iraqi air force colonel named Munir Redfa](#): Uzi Mahnaimi, "Stolen Iraqi Jet Helped Israel Win Six-Day War," *Sunday Times of London*, June 3, 2007.
 2. [Turn back immediately](#): Geller, *Inside the Israeli Secret Service*. I use information from chapter 3, "Stealing a Soviet MiG."
 3. [Redfa flew over Turkey](#): Obituary, "Major-General Meir Amit," *Telegraph*, July 22, 2009.
 4. [Amit sat down with the Israeli air force](#): Ibid.
 5. [James Jesus Angleton](#): Helms, *A Look Over My Shoulder*, 275. "Jim's interest in Israel was of exceptional value... To my knowledge, only Israel has ever dedicated a monument to a foreign intelligence officer." Angleton worked as "the Agency's liaison with the FBI... The best of Angleton's operational work is still classified and in my view should remain so."
 6. [Agency's most enigmatic and bellicose spies](#): Author visit to CIA spy museum, CIA Headquarters, Langley, Virginia.
 7. [wilderness of mirrors](#): Helms, *A Look Over My Shoulder*, 277. The phrase has become synonymous with Angleton's thinking and most notably included Angleton's belief that the split between the Soviet Union and China was not real. According to Helms, Angleton's "conviction that the Sino-Soviet split was mirage created by Soviet deception experts [was] interesting but simply not true."
 8. [when they worked in the OSS counterintelligence unit, X-2](#): Ibid., chapter 28, "Beyond X-2."
 9. [Helms's status with President Johnson](#): Weiner, *Legacy of Ashes*, 319.
 10. [But what didn't make the news](#): Interviews with Colonel Slater, Frank Murray, T. D. Barnes.
 11. [Doris was reading the classified](#): Interview with Doris Barnes.
 12. [Beatty, Nevada, was one strange town](#): Details about Beatty in the 1960s come from interviews with Doris Barnes and T. D. Barnes.
 13. ["Daddy's spaceship!"](#): Interviews with the Barnes's two daughters, who wish to remain anonymous.
 14. [where the X-15 could land if need be](#): Interview with Peter Merlin; Barnes, "NASA X-15 Program," 1.
 15. [Barnes got on the radio channel](#): The dates and data regarding X-15 mission flights can be found in Jenkins, *Hypersonics Before the Shuttle*. This story of the missing audiotape comes from Barnes.
 16. [a catastrophic midair collision occurred](#): I tell the story as Barnes related it to me. Another account appears in Donald Malick's *The Smell of Kerosene*, 132–35. Malick was assigned the helicopter mission to locate Walker's crash site.
 17. [reverse engineering Colonel Redfa's MiG](#): Interview with Barnes.
 18. [Test pilots flew a total of 102 MiG missions](#): Barnes, "Exploitation of MiGs at Area

51, Project Have Doughnut," http://area51specialprojects.com/migs_area51.html; Tolip,
"Black Ops: American Pilots Flying Russian Aircraft During the Cold War,"
MilitaryHeat.com, October 4, 2007.

19. [gave birth to the Top Gun fighter-pilot school](#): Interview with Barnes.
20. [The scales had tipped](#): Wilcox, *Scream of Eagles*, 76–77.

Chapter Eighteen: Meltdown

Interviews: Richard Mingus, T. D. Barnes, Troy Wade, Darwin Morgan, Milton M. Klein, Harold B. Finger

1. [to see what would happen](#): Atomic Energy Commission, Summary of Project 57, the first safety test of Operation Plumbbob, report to the General Manager by the Director, Division of Military Application, Objective, 24.

2. [bomber flying with four armed hydrogen bombs](#): "Palomares Summary Report," Kirtland Air Force Base, New Mexico: Field Command Defense Nuclear Agency Technology and Analysis Directorate, January 15, 1975.

3. [SAC bombers would already be airborne](#): When LeMay left SAC in 1957 to become the Air Force vice chief of staff, he left behind a fighting force of 1,665 bomber aircraft, 68 bases around the world, and 224,014 men. The man who took over was Thomas S. Powers.

4. [all of a sudden, all hell](#): Ron Hayes, "H-bomb Incident Crippled Pilot's Career," *Palm Beach Post*, January 17, 2007.

5. [aerosolized plutonium](#): Gordon Dunning, "Protective and Remedial Measures Taken Following Three Incidents of Fallout," United States Atomic Energy Commission, 1968. This was originally given as a speech called "Radiation Protection of the Public in Large Scale Nuclear Disaster," for an international agency symposium in Interlaken, Switzerland, in May 1968.

6. [President Johnson learned](#): Moran, *Day We Lost the H-Bomb*, 36.

7. [official nuclear disaster response team](#): Memo, Secret, United States Atomic Energy Commission, No. 234505, "Responsibility for Search and Rescue Operations," to M. E. Gates, Manager, Nevada Operations, November 19, 1974.

8. [to assist in the cleanup efforts](#): Nuclear Weapon Accident Response Procedures (NARP) Manual, Assistant to the Secretary of Defense (Atomic Energy), September 1990, xii.

9. [will never be known](#): Schwartz, *Atomic Audit*, 408.

10. [I don't know of any missing bomb](#): Anthony Lake, "Lying Around Washington," *Foreign Policy*, no. 2 (Spring 1971): 93. Thirty-eight U.S. Navy ships participated in the search for the bomb, which was eventually located five miles offshore in 2,850 feet of water by a submersible called Alvin.

11. [during a secret mission over Greenland](#): SAC History Staff, *Project Crested Ice*, SECRET/RESTRICTED DATA, SPECIAL HANDLING REQUIRED, AFR 127-4: FOIA 89-107 OAS-) 1793. This source document provided many facts for this section.

12. [A second fire started at the crash site](#): The cloud formed by the explosion measured "850 m high, 800 m in length, and 800 m in depth, and undoubtedly carried some plutonium downwind," according to the Los Alamos National Laboratory.

13. [One of the bombs fell into the bay](#): Gordon Corea, "Mystery of Lost US Nuclear Bomb," *BBC News*, November 10, 2008.

14. [a cleanup undertaken as good housekeeping measures](#): SAC History Staff, *Project Crested Ice*, 28.

15. ["abundance of plutonium, americium, cesium"](#): Rollins, "Nevada Test Site—Site Description," Table 2-4.

16. [Called remote sensing](#): Department of Energy Fact Sheet DOE/NV #1140. The Remote Sensing Laboratory was established in the 1950s, an offshoot of atomic cloud sampling projects. Today, it is a secret industry about which very little is known publicly; http://www.nv.doe.gov/library/factsheets/DOENV_1140.pdf.

17. [initially called the EG&G Remote Sensing Laboratory](#): EG&G Energy Measurements Division (EG&G/EM) of EG&G, Inc., managed and operated the research facility under DOE Contract DE-AC03-93NV11265. On January 1, 1996, Bechtel Nevada Corporation operated the research and production facilities under DOE M&O Contract DE-AC08-96NV11718.

18. [to secure the government contracts to clean things up](#): And what a massive market it would become. In addition to future nuclear accidents, there would be a colossal amount of radiation detection work to be done in, on, and around the Pacific Proving Ground. Between 1946 and 1958, the Atomic Energy Commission had exploded forty nuclear bombs, including the largest thermonuclear bomb ever exploded by the United States, the fifteen-megaton Castle Bravo bomb—a thousand times as powerful as the weapon dropped on Hiroshima. In June of 1971, an EG&G crew was dispatched to Eniwetok Atoll by the Atomic Energy Commission "for the purposes of pre-clean-up surveying." EG&G had armed, wired, and fired all the bombs in the Pacific. Now, using radiation detection equipment, the company determined that the island was still uninhabitable by all life forms in the water and the air—even after thirteen years. But clean-up efforts could begin. These efforts would take decades, cost untold dollars, and involve several different contractors. EG&G would lead the way.

19. [EG&G had been taking radiation measurements](#): Interviews with Al O'Donnell, Jim Freedman; Eniwetok Precleanup Survey Soil and Terrestrial, Radiation Survey (Lynch, Gudiksen and Jones) No. 44878; draft revised 5/14/73.

20. [corporate headquarters won't say](#): Interview with Meagan Stafford, EG&G/URS public relations, Sard Verbinen & Co., July 16, 2010.

21. [President Clinton was in 1994](#): Interview with EG&G engineer. DOE Openness Initiative, Human Radiation Experiments, EG&G Energy Measurements, Las Vegas, Nevada, Finding Aids, Radioactive Fallout: "EG&G/EM played an important role in monitoring airborne radiation from weapons testing, and it retained many records relating to monitoring air-borne radiation including reports on the Nevada Aerial Tracking Systems for the 1960s. The company has developed a computerized inventory of the collection which includes some 24,000 classified documents, films, view-graphs, and other materials. Currently the company is attempting to reorganize its archives into a usable collection designed to accommodate future research efforts. The dismantling process that was begun in 1986 has been halted. The CIC will retain fallout records from the aboveground testing program. All other original research documentation, film, note-books, and other records relating to EG&G/EM's important role in monitoring airborne radiation and weapons testing, including reports and maps of cloud tracking still housed at EM, will be retained by EM. Classified Material Control (CMC) contains numerous reports on later

testing programs and Aerial Tracking Systems reports for the 1960s. The company also holds original survey data for the period before 1971, but this has not been inventoried. There is an effort under way to obtain the funding to inventory and create a computerized database for these records."

22. [the president did not have a need-to-know](#): Interview with EG&G engineer.
23. [one-line reference](#): *Advisory Committee on Human Radiation Experiments Final Report*, 506–507.

24. [If Area 51 had a doppelgänger](#): At Groom Lake, for a thirteen-year period beginning in 1955, the CIA and the U.S. Air Force comanaged spy plane programs using science and technology to advance the art of aerial espionage. Forty miles to the southwest, at Jackass Flats, beginning around 1955 and for a period of seventeen years, the Atomic Energy Commission, NASA, and the Department of Defense comanaged nuclear rocket programs using science and technology to try to get man to Mars. There is an interesting paradox. At Area 51, the spy plane programs were funded by black budgets, meaning their existence was hidden from Congress and the public. Not until they were declassified by the CIA—the U-2 program in 1998 and the A-12 Oxcart program in 2007—were their existences confirmed. The term *Area 51* has remained redacted, or blacked out, from declassified documents. When Air Force and CIA officials are asked to comment on Area 51, they have no comment, because technically the facility does not exist. At Area 25, the nuclear rocket ship programs have been funded with public awareness. No one at the Air Force, the Atomic Energy Commission, or NASA will deny that nuclear rocket development went on there. But what was really going on behind the facade at Jackass Flats has always been labeled Restricted Data, which is classified.

25. [piloted by one hundred and fifty men](#): McPhee, *The Curve of Binding Energy*, 168.
26. [Taylor designed nuclear bombs for the Pentagon](#): According to Taylor's colleague the legendary Freeman Dyson, Ted Taylor made "the smallest, the most elegant and the most efficient bombs... freehand without elaborate calculation. When they were built and tested they worked." Dyson left Princeton University's Institute for Advanced Study to work on the Mars spaceship with Taylor.

27. ["Everyone seems to be making plans"](#): McPhee, *The Curve of Binding Energy*, 170.

28. [same as a Coke machine](#): Ibid., 174.
29. ["It would have been the most sensational thing anyone ever saw"](#): Ibid.
30. ["Whoever builds Orion will control the Earth"](#): Ibid., 184.
31. [Space Nuclear Propulsion Office, or SNPO](#): Dewar, *To the End of the Solar System*, xix.

32. [built into the side of a mountain](#): Interview with Barnes; see photographs. On Nevada Test Site official maps, these mountains, in Area 25, are called Calico Hills.
33. [the underground tunnel was 1,150 feet long](#): "Corrective Investigation Plan For Corrective Action Unit 165: Areas 25 and 26 Dry Well and Washdown Areas, Nevada Test Site, Nevada." DOE/NV-788, Environmental Restoration Division, National Nuclear Security Administration, January 2002, 12.

34. [34 million to 249 million miles to Mars](#): According to NASA, "the distance between

Earth and Mars depends on the positions of the two planets in their orbits. It can be as small as about 33,900,000 miles (54,500,000 kilometers) or as large as about 249,000,000 miles (401,300,000 kilometers)."

35. [a remote-controlled locomotive](#): DOE/NV #1150, "Last Stop for the Jackass & Western."

36. [One hundredth of what one might receive](#)": Ibid., 287.

37. [Soviet satellites spying](#): Dewar, *To the End of the Solar System*, appendix F, "The Russian Nuclear Rocket Program." Dewar wrote, "The Soviets built a test complex vaguely similar to Jackass Flats."

38. [2,300 Kelvin](#): Finger and Robbins, "An Historical Perspective," 7.

39. [The Pentagon released information after I filed a Freedom of Information Act](#)": Interview with Lee Davidson. Davidson's original 1990s story is from the *Deseret News*, where he was the Washington bureau reporter for twenty-eight years. During this time, Davidson reported on a number of secret AEC radiation tests in Utah, at Dugway Proving Grounds. "They had a lot of money to play with," Davidson says of the AEC. "Here in Utah, they were trying to figure out what a meltdown would look like from a number of different angles. The AEC released more radiation in Utah than was released during the partial meltdown at Three Mile Island."

40. [Los Alamos wanted a run-away reactor](#)": Dewar, *To the End of the Solar System*, 280.

41. [data on the most devastating accident possible](#)": Ibid. Notably, Dewar lays blame for the original idea of exploding the reactor on Los Alamos. The nuclear laboratory may have come up with the idea but Los Alamos takes marching orders from the Atomic Energy Commission, and in the end, the two entities agreed to go ahead and explode the nuclear reactor on the grounds that it was a safety test. "It was critical to know the total energy release in the explosion and the amount and pattern of radioactive distribution," Dewar wrote.

42. [over 4000°C until it burst](#)": Ibid., 281.

43. [chunks as large as 148 pounds](#): Ibid., 282.

44. [equipped with samplers mounted on its wings](#)": Ibid., 281.

45. [blew over Los Angeles](#)": Ibid., 280.

46. [accurate data from which to base calculations](#)": Ibid., 285.

47. [I don't recall that exact test](#)": Interview with Harold Finger.

48. [code-named Phoebus](#): Barth, Delbert, Final Report of the Off-Site Surveillance for the Phoebus 1-A Experiment, SWRHL-19r, January 17, 1966. "The data collected indicate that radioactivity levels did not exceed the safety criteria established by the Atomic Energy Commission for the off-site population."

49. [suddenly it ran out of LH₂](#)": Dewar, *To the End of the Solar System*, 129.

50. [cleanup crews in full protective gear could not enter the area for six weeks](#)": "Decontamination of Test Cell 'C' at the Nuclear Rocket Development Station After a Reactor Accident," January 18, 1967, LA-3633; Dewar, *To the End of the Solar System*, 129–31.

51. [long metal tongs](#): The workers dropped the radioactive chunks into one-gallon

paint cans, which were driven out of Area 25 on a lead dolly.

52. [officially ended on January 5, 1973](#): Dewar, *To the End of the Solar System*, 203.
53. [no such final test](#): Interview with Darwin Morgan.
54. [records are "well organized and complete"](#): Ibid., 323.
55. ["Due to the destruction of two nuclear reactors"](#): Rollins, "Nevada Test Site—Site Description," 25 of 99.

56. [Milton Klein might know](#): Interview with Harold Finger; interview with Milton Klein. Klein also says he "takes issue with the use of the word *meltdown* because that's not exactly what happens to a reactor when it's deprived of coolant."

57. [radioactive elements were still present](#): Table 3-2, "Corrective Investigation Plan For Corrective Action Unit 165: Areas 25 and 26 Dry Well and Washdown Areas, Nevada Test Site, Nevada," 32.

312 "may have percolated into underlying soil." Ibid. Certainly, Barnes's eyewitness testimony suggests as much. "When we would run the reactor, we had to clear out forty miles of the canyon around Calico Hills, it would emit that much radiation," Barnes explained. "And every time we ran the reactor, giant dewars of water would flood the whole area, which would help cool everything down. Enough water to make a temporary pond of water several feet deep."

58. [Area 25 began serving a new purpose](#): Interview with T. D. Barnes.

59. ["It's a PhD experience for first responders"](#): Film shown on a loop at the Atomic Energy Museum in Las Vegas. Also in this section of the museum was a photograph of Area 25, which depicted desert terrain interrupted by a bright blue sign on a post that read: "EG&G Training 295-6820"—an indication that the federal partner in WMD training at Area 25 was EG&G. Morgan denies this partnership existed and insists EG&G stopped working as an "official contractor" at the test site in the 1990s. The photograph at the Atomic Testing Museum has since been taken down, but as of December 30, 2010, the telephone number remained in service (using the local area code) with a voice mail stating: "You have reached [name redacted] in the training department. Please leave a message and I will return your call as soon as possible."

60. [one day a nuclear facility could very well melt down](#): For an understanding of nuclear reactor physics, how a power reactor differs from a nuclear rocket reactor, and how both differ from a nuclear bomb, see Dewar, *To the End of the Solar System*, xvii.

61. [five "boom year\(s\)"](#): Rogovin, *Three Mile Island Report*, 182–83.

62. [nuclear reactor "units"](#): Ibid., 182.

63. [dispatched an EG&G remote sensing aircraft](#): EG&G, Inc., Las Vegas Operations, "An Aerial Radiological Survey of the Three Mile Island Station Nuclear Power Plant," U.S. Department of Energy, 1977. The cover page of the president's commission on the accident at Three Mile Island features a thermal photo accredited to EG&G.

64. ["may be the best insurance that it will not reoccur"](#): Rogovin, *Three Mile Island Report*, 5.

65. [nuclear-powered Russian spy satellite crashed](#): Gates, Mahlon, *Operation Morning Light, Northwest Territories, Canada 1978, A Non-Technical Summary of U.S. Participation*; "The Soviet Space Nuclear Power Program," Directorate of Intelligence,

66. [a decision was made not to inform the public](#): Weiss, "The Life and Death of Cosmos 954." Marked Secret, Not to be Released to Foreign Nationals, 7 pages, no date. Declassified 10/24/97.

67. [playing night baseball with the lights out](#): Ibid., 2.

68. [It was extremely tense](#): Interview with Richard Mingus.

69. [NEST](#): Secret, United States Atomic Energy Commission, No. 234505, Responsibility for Search and Rescue Operations, to M.E. Gates, Manager, Nevada Operations. November 19, 1974; see also Gates, "Nuclear Emergency Search Team," 2, www.nci.org.

70. [established within EG&G](#): Gates, "Nuclear Emergency Search Team," 2.

71. [space age difficulty](#): "Cosmos 954: An Ugly Death," *Time* magazine, February 6, 1978.

³¹⁶ would be panic like in *The War of the Worlds*: Interview with Richard Mingus.

72. [meant to look like bakery vans](#): Interview with Troy Wade.

73. [Troy Wade was the lead federal official](#): Note that Mahlon Gates, who authored *Operation Morning Light* and put together NEST, was the senior U.S. government representative on the project and also the head of DOE Nevada Operations but did not have an active role in the boots-on-the-ground operation.

74. [high above was an Air Force U-2](#): Weiss, "The Life and Death of Cosmos 954," 3.

75. [somewhere on America's East Coast](#): *Time* magazine reported, "The craft crashed into the atmosphere over a remote Canadian wilderness area last week, apparently emitting strong radiation. American space scientists admitted that if the satellite had failed one pass later in its decaying orbit, it would have plunged toward Earth near New York City—at the height of the morning rush hour."

Chapter Nineteen: The Lunar-Landing Conspiracy and Other Legends of Area 51

Interviews: Buzz Aldrin, Colonel Slater, Ernie Williams, Richard Mingus, Michael Schratt, Bill Irvine, James Oberg

1. [July 20, 1969](#): For details regarding Apollo 11, "Humankind's first steps on the lunar surface," <http://nasa.gov>; for transcripts of the first lunar landing, visit "Apollo 11 Lunar Surface Journal," by Eric M. Jones, <http://history.nasa.gov/alsj/a11/a11.landing.html>.

2. [Armstrong's hundreds of hours flying](#): Jenkins, *Hypersonics before the Shuttle*, appendix 9.

3. [astronauts visited the Nevada Test Site](#): NASA, Appendix E. Geology Field Exercises: Early Training, Field Training Schedule for the first 3 Groups of Astronauts (29), 3, Feb 17–18 & 24–25, 1965 & March 3–4, 1965. "The trip provided an opportunity to examine in detail the craters and ejecta formed by detonation of subsurface nuclear devices in lavas and unconsolidated sediments"; USGS Open-File Report 2005-1190, Table 1, "Geologic field-training of NASA Astronauts between January 1963 and November 1972."

4. [Ernie Williams was their guide](#): Interview with Ernie Williams.

5. [first water well](#): Interviews with T. D. Barnes, Colonel Slater, Ernie Williams.

6. [astronauts arrived with a lunar rover vehicle](#): Gerald G. Schaber, "A Chronology of Activities from Conception through the End of Project Apollo (1960-1973)," U.S. Geological Survey, Branch of Astrogeology.

7. [by-products of underground bomb tests](#): "The Containment of Underground Nuclear Explosions," #69043 Congress of the United States, Office of Technology Assessment, 32.

8. [astronauts twice referred to](#): DOE/NV 772 REV 1, "Apollo Astronauts Train at the Nevada Test Site," 2. The mission commentary voice transmissions can be downloaded at http://www.jsc.nasa.gov/history/mission_trans/apollo17.htm.

9. [hearing this comparison was a beautiful moment](#): Interview with Ernie Williams.

10. [Just two months after Armstrong and Aldrin returned](#): Author interview with James Oberg, and from a chapter in his book *UFOs and Outer Space Mysteries*. In addition to being an aerospace historian and leading debunker of lunar-landing and UFO-on-the-moon conspiracies, Oberg spent his career as a rocket scientist working for NASA contractors, including at Mission Control in Houston, Texas.

11. [moon being a base for aliens and UFOs](#): Interview with James Oberg.

12. [Spielberg said in a 1978 interview](#): Matthew Alford, "Steven Spielberg," *Cinema Papers*, 1978.

13. [With these three questions](#): The answers, presented by a popular Web site dedicated to debunking the moon-hoax theory, are: Q: How can the American flag flutter when there is no wind on the moon? A: The movement comes from the twisting motion of the pole. Q: Why can't the stars be seen in the moon photographs? A: There are plenty of Apollo photos released by NASA in which you can see stars. Q: Why is there no blast crater where Apollo's landing vehicle landed? A: The moon's surface is covered by a rocky material called lunar regolith, which responds to blast pressure similar to solid rock;

14. [he experienced "an intuitive feeling"](#): Fox Television broadcast, "Conspiracy Theory: Did We Land on the Moon?" February 15, 2001.

15. [the Today show](#): A transcript of Kaysing's interview with Katie Couric, cohost of the *Today* show, which aired on NBC, August 8, 2001, can be read online at Global Security.

16. [canceled the book](#): Dr. David Whitehouse, "NASA Pulls Moon Hoax Book," BBC News, November 8, 2002.

17. [CIA admitted it had been running mind-control programs](#): Marks, *The Search for the "Manchurian Candidate,"* 211. During the 1977 Senate hearings, CIA director Stansfield Turner summed up some of MKULTRA's eleven-year legacy: "The program contracted out work to 80 institutions, which included 44 colleges of universities, 15 research facilities or private companies, 12 hospitals or clinics, and 3 penal institutions."

18. [58,193 Americans were killed trying](#): The National Archives, Statistical information about casualties of the Vietnam War, ARC ID: 306742.

19. [Great Moon Hoax](#): Goodman, *The Sun and the Moon*, 12.

20. [Buzz Aldrin, the second man on the moon](#): This section is based on my interview with Buzz Aldrin, and also from chapter 20 in his book *Magnificent Desolation*, which addresses the event and is called "A Blow Heard Around the World," 332–46 (galley copy).

21. [25 percent of the people interviewed](#): Brandon Griggs, "Could Moon Landings Have Been Faked? Some Still Think So," CNN, July 17, 2009. Griggs noted that a "Google search this week for 'Apollo moon landing hoax' yielded more than 1.5 billion results."

22. [involve captured aliens and UFOs](#): AboveTopSecret.com.

23. [The tunnels were dug by a nuclear-powered drill](#): Interview with Michael Schratt.

24. [N-tunnels, P-tunnels, and T-tunnels](#): U.S. Congress, Office of Technology Assessment, *The Containment of Underground Nuclear Explosions*.

25. ["deactivated," according to the Department of Energy](#): Michael R. Williams, "Ground Test Facility for Propulsion and Power Modes of Nuclear Engine Operation," 4.

26. [the revelation of the Greenbrier bunker](#): Ted Gup, "The Ultimate Congressional Hideaway," *Washington Post*, May 31, 1992.

27. [Secrecy, denying knowledge of the existence](#): KCET American Experience, "Race for the Superbomb," interview with Paul Fritz Bugas, former on-site superintendent, the Greenbrier bunker.

28. [on average, twelve months](#): U.S. Congress, Office of Technology Assessment, *The Containment of Underground Nuclear Explosions*, 18.

29. [at least sixty-seven nuclear bombs](#): U.S. Department of Energy, *United States Nuclear Tests, July 1945 through September 1992*, 15.

30. [Piledriver experiments studied survivability](#): Cherry and Rabb, "Piledriver Drilling," UCRL-ID-126150, August 9, 1967.

31. [to destroy enemy targets \[such as\] missile silos](#): Operation Hardtack II, Defense Nuclear Agency, 3 December 1982; interview with DOE officials during my tour of the

32. [guarding many of the nuclear bombs](#): Interview with Richard Mingus.
33. [After the test ban, the Pentagon reversed its policy](#): U.S. Congress, Office of Technology Assessment, *The Containment of Underground Nuclear Explosions*, 21.
34. [has changed its name four times](#): See NNSA Timeline, <http://www.nnsa.energy.gov/aboutus/ourhistory/timeline>. Notably, there is another agency that has changed its name four times, the Armed Forces Special Weapons Project (AFSWP), which, like the Atomic Energy Commission, also began as the Manhattan Project. On May 6, 1959, it changed its name to the Defense Atomic Support Agency (DASA); on July 1, 1971, it changed its name to the Defense Nuclear Agency; on June 26, 1996, it changed its name to the Defense Special Weapons Agency. Schwartz, *Atomic Audit*, 61.
35. [mission is to advance technology and promote related innovation](#): Google DOE.gov and this statement is the subhead. Or go to <http://www.energy.gov>.
36. [formal beginning in 1908](#): Federal Bureau of Investigation Official Web site, Timeline of FBI History, 1900–1909.
37. [Yuri Ivanovich Nosenko in a secret CIA prison](#): Edward Jay Epstein and Susana Duncan, "The War of the Moles," *New York*, 28–37.
38. [His true allegiance remains the subject of debate](#): Walter Pincus, "Yuri I. Nosenko, KGB Agent Who Defected to the U.S.," *Washington Post*, August 27, 2008. In CIA documents released decades later, Nosenko is quoted as forgiving the CIA for the harsh treatment, stating "while I regret my three years of incarceration, I have no bitterness and now understand how it could happen." Shortly before he died, CIA officials gave Nosenko a ceremonial U.S. flag from CIA director Michael Hayden.
39. [memorandum dated May 1, 1995](#): Memorandum to Members of the Advisory Committee on Human Radiation Experiments, from Advisory Committee Staff, May 1, 1995, "Official Classification Policy to Cover Up Embarrassment." Clinton Staff Memo is marked "Draft, For Discussion Purposes Only," and cites 1947 memo listed below.
40. [All documents and correspondence](#): "Report of Meeting of Classification Board During Week of September 8, 1947," Atomic Energy Commission.
41. [cause considerable concern to the Atomic Energy Commission insurance Branch](#): September 28, 1947, memorandum from J.C. Franklin, manager Oak Ridge Operations to Carroll L. Wilson, General Manager Re: Medical Policy, 2–3; located circa 1995 by Clinton staff.
42. [medical papers on human administration experiments done to date](#): Ibid.
43. [reworded or deleted](#): October 8, 1947, Memorandum to Advisory Board on Medical and Biology Re: Medical Policy, 8; located circa 1995 by Clinton staff.
44. [In 2011 there are an estimated 1.8 billion Internet users](#): According to Miniwatts Marketing Group.
45. [Deny Ignorance](#): Interview with AboveTopSecret CEO Bill Irvine.
46. [the New World Order conspiracy theory](#): Wikipedia has an interesting overview of New World conspiracy theories, with bibliography.

Chapter Twenty: From Camera Bays to Weapons Bays, the Air Force Takes Control

Interviews: Richard Mingus, Ed Lovick, Bob Murphy, T. D. Barnes, Gene Poteat, Peter Merlin, Harry Martin, Millie Meierdierck, Dr. Wheelon, Joe Behne

1. [most sensational near catastrophes](#): Interview with Richard Mingus. Interview with Joe Behne.

2. [a mock helicopter attack](#): The details of the mock helicopter attack remain classified. Darwin Morgan, spokesman for the NNSA, Nevada Site Office, would neither confirm nor deny the event. Both Mingus and Behne were able to discuss this event with me because the details of the helicopter attack were only ever relayed to them secondhand. Their jobs had to do with the nuclear bomb going down the hole. In other words, while both men were privy to the security scare, neither man was ever officially briefed on the mock attack.

3. [The bomb, one of eighteen](#): U.S. Department of Energy, *United States Nuclear Tests, July 1945 through September 1992*, 14.

4. [five-man security response team](#): Interview with Mingus. This is one of the rare security stories from the secret base. Mingus tells it because the procedure is now obsolete.

5. [Quick conversation with Joe Behne](#): Interview with Joe Behne.

6. [With astounding lack of foresight, Wackenut Security](#): Interview with Richard Mingus. Interview with Joe Behne.

7. [using slide rules and calculators](#): Interview with Ed Lovick.

8. [“roughly the size of a ball bearing”](#): Interview with Lovick and specifically “based on 15GHz radar, .08 wavelength.”

9. [The man in charge of engineering, fabrication, and assembly](#): Interviews with Bob Murphy.

10. [at Groom Lake to drop bombs](#): Barnes points out that some bombs were dropped close in to the dry lake bed at Area 51.

11. [to use a preexisting, little-known bombing range](#): Johnson, “Tonopah Test Range Outpost of Sandia National Laboratories,” Sandia Report SAND96-0375 UC-700 March 1996, U.S. DOE Contract DE-AC04-94AL85000.

12. [the Chicago of the West](#): State Historic Preservation Office, Beatty, Center of the Gold Railroads, “Chicago of the West,” Nevada Historical Marker 173.

13. [“secret testing \[that\] could be conducted safely and securely”](#): Johnson, “Tonopah Test Range Outpost of Sandia National Laboratories,” 8.

14. [would quote Saint Paul of Tarsus](#): Ibid., 9.

15. [Operation Roller Coaster, three dirty bomb tests](#): Ibid., 47; Operation Roller Coaster Sites, TTR SAFER Plan, Section 2.0. Map [here](#); NVO-171 Environmental Plutonium on the Nevada Test Site and Environs, June 1977, 35.

16. [construction for an F-117 Nighthawk support facility](#): Interview with Peter Merlin.

17. [grow their hair long and to grow beards](#): Interview with Richard Mingus, who lived there.

18. [test flights of the F-117](#): Crickmore, *Lockheed F-117 Nighthawk*, 4. Major Al Whitley became the first operational pilot to fly the Nighthawk in October of that year.
19. [Lieutenant General Robert M. Bond](#): U.S. Air Force official Web site, biography.
20. [men like General James "Jimmy" Doolittle](#): Interview with Harry Martin.
21. [There was some debate about whether the general](#): Barnes had left Area 51 by this time; this is a secondhand story. Having been involved in the MiG program since its inception, Barnes was privy to information about Bond but was never formally briefed.
22. [were the general's last words](#): Transcript reads: 10:17:50 a.m., Bond: "How far to the turn?" 10:17:53 a.m. Ground control: "Turn now, right 20." Bond responds with two clicks. At 10:18:02 a.m. Bond: "I'm out of control. I'm out of..." At 10:18:23 a.m. Bond: "I've got to get out, I'm out of control."
23. [Fred Hoffman, a military writer](#): Hoffman, "Allies Help Pentagon Obtain Soviet Arms," Associated Press, May 7, 1984.
24. [at Area 51 and Area 52 for eleven years](#): Johnson, "Tonopah Test Range Outpost of Sandia National Laboratories," 79. The first flight of Have Blue was December 1, 1977, by Bill Park at 7:00 p.m. as noted in Crickmore, *Lockheed F-117 Nighthawk*.
25. [Code-named Aquiline](#): Hank Meierdierck's personal papers; interview with Jim Freedman; interview with Millie Meierdierck, who had the only known mock-up of the drone sitting on the bar in her home.
26. [original purpose of Aquiline](#): Interview with Gene Poteat.
27. [Cold War Soviet hydrofoil named Ekranopian](#): James May, "Riding the Caspian Sea Monster," *BBC News* magazine, September 27, 2008.
28. [Jim Freedman to assist him on the Aquiline drone](#): Interview with Jim Freedman.
29. [ninety-nine million dollars over budget](#): Hank Meierdierck's personal papers.
30. [Project Ornithopter](#): Richelson, *Wizards of Langley*, 148.
31. [Project Insectothopter](#): Seen by the author at the CIA museum, located inside CIA headquarters in Langley, Virginia.
32. [Acoustic Kitty](#): Richelson, *Wizards of Langley*, 147.
33. [sensor drones to detect WMD signatures](#): Interview with Dr. Wheelon.
34. [Early efforts had been made using U-2 pilots](#): Interview with Tony Bevacqua, who flew "sniffer" missions in U-2s for the U.S. Air Force. The Black Cat pilots flew some of these dangerous missions, per my interview with Colonel Slater.
35. [Operation Tobasco risked exposure](#): Richelson, *Wizards of Langley*, 93–94.
36. [did considerable damage to the Agency's reputation](#): Marks, *Search for the Manchurian Candidate*, 220. Marks's entire chapter 12, "The Search for Truth," is a particularly searing portrait of how the CIA was perceived during this time.
37. [probable biological warfare research](#): CIA Top Secret, Biological Warfare, USSR: Additional Rumors of an Accident at the Biological Warfare Institute in Sverdlovsk. Dated October 15, 1979. Declassified 6/10/96.
38. [Hellfire missiles](#): Lockheed makes the Hellfire, which is an acronym for its original design: helicopter-launched, fire-and-forget.
39. [his name was Osama bin Laden](#): Coll, *Ghost Wars*, 533: "While hovering over Tarnak Farm outside Kandahar, the Predator photographed a man who appeared to be

bin Laden."

Chapter Twenty-one: Revelation

Interviews: T. D. Barnes, Colonel Leghorn, Hervey Stockman, Gerald Posner, Stephen Younger, John Pike, Gene Poteat, EG&G engineer, David Myhra

1. [engineers and aerodynamicists had concerns](#): Interview with Barnes. This is educated speculation; Barnes did not work on the drone project. Coll also writes about this.

2. [targeted assassination by a U.S. intelligence agency was illegal](#): December 4, 1981, President Ronald Reagan Executive Order 12333.

3. [State Department gave the go-ahead](#): Coll, *Ghost Wars*, 539.

4. [CIA and the Air Force teamed up for an unusual building project](#): Ibid., 534. "The Air Force ought to pay for the Afghan operation, CIA officers believed, in part because the Pentagon was learning more about the drone's capabilities in a month than they could in a half a year of sterile testing in Nevada... Having seen the images of bin Laden walking toward the mosque at Tarnak, Black was now a vocal advocate of affixing missiles to the drone."

5. [on the outer reaches of Area 51](#): In *Ghost Wars*, Steve Coll places the mock-up "in Nevada" (549). One source interviewed by me placed the mock-up at Area 51; a second source interviewed by me placed the mock-up inside the Nevada Test and Training Range (speculating Area 52). The exact location where this took place remains classified.

6. [CIA director George Tenet decided](#): Coll, *Ghost Wars*, 535. "There was a child's swing. Families lived at Tarnak. The CIA estimated that the compound contained about one hundred women and children—bin Laden's family and family members of some top aides." Tenet would have made the final call.

7. [CIA drones provided intelligence for NATO forces](#): Jim Garamone, "Predator Demonstrates Worth Over Kosovo," American Forces Press Service, September 21, 1999.

8. [The first reconnaissance drone mission in the war on terror](#): 9/11 Commission Report, 213–214.

9. ["a very successful tactical operation"](#): Wolfowitz's interview with CNN anchor Maria Ressa appeared in print as "U.S. Missile Strike Kills al Qaeda Chief," CNN, November 5, 2002. Wolfowitz added, "one hopes each time you get a success like that, not only to have gotten rid of somebody dangerous, but to have imposed changes in their tactics and operations and procedures."

10. [exclusive interview to the Christian Science Monitor](#): Yemeni Official Says US Lacks Discretion as Antiterror Partner," *Christian Science Monitor*, November 12, 2002.

11. [Hull spoke Arabic](#): Ibid.; Seymour Hersh, "Manhunt: The Bush Administration's New Strategy in the War Against Terrorism," *New Yorker*, December 23, 2002.

12. [Mohammed Atef, in Jalalabad, Afghanistan](#): Peter Bergen and Katherine Tiedemann, "The Drone War: Are Predators Our Best Weapon or Worst Enemy," *New Republic*, June 3, 2009.

13. [targeted assassination spearheaded by the CIA](#): Mark Hosenball and Evan Thomas, "The Opening Shot," *Newsweek*, November 18, 2002.

14. [Predator got a new designation](#): MQ-1B Predator, official Web site of U.S. Air Force, fact sheet.
15. [company that built the Predator](#): General Atomics Aeronautical, <http://www.gaa.com>; accessed December 30, 2010.
16. "big differences between the Reaper and the Predator": Travis Edwards, "First MQ-9 Reaper Makes Its Home on Nevada Flightline," *U.S. Air Force Public Affairs*, March 14, 2007.
17. [Brigadier General Frank Gorenc was remotely viewing](#): Major John Hutcheson, "Balad Predator Strikes Insurgents Placing Roadside Bomb Near Balad," *Red Tail Flyer*, 332nd Air Expeditionary Wing, Public Affairs, Balad Air Base, Iraq, March 31, 2006, 5.
18. [put a weapon on a target within minutes](#): Ibid.
19. [By 2009 the number of drone strikes would rise to fifty-three](#): <http://www.longwarjournal.org/pakistan-strikes.php>; these numbers vary. Peter Bergen and Katherine Tiedemann are considered the authorities on the subject of drone strikes. The pair keep track of numbers and provide analysis for organizations including New America Foundation and the *New Republic* magazine.
20. [These are just the assets we know about](#): This is because when missiles are fired it is often the work of the CIA, and CIA drone strikes are not made public. As per my interview with Pentagon officials, "That we can't confirm or deny." State Department officials also refuse to comment on CIA drone attacks and deflect attempts to get confirmation on the CIA's role in drone operations. While visiting Pakistan in December of 2009, Secretary of State Hillary Clinton told a group of journalists who were inquiring specifically about drone strikes, "I'm not going to comment on any particular tactic or technology." In reality, the strategic partnership between the CIA and the Air Force that began with Bissell's CIA and LeMay's Air Force in 1955 is back together again.
21. [the Beast of Kandahar](#): Originally reported by *Air & Cosmos* magazine, <http://www.air-cosmos.com/site/>, the story was quickly picked up in the U.S. press. David Hambling, "Mysteries Surround Afghanistan's Stealth Drone," *Wired* magazine, Danger Room Blog, December 4, 2009; interview with unnamed Lockheed official.
22. [Defense Department confirmed](#): Interview with secretary of the Air Force, Public Affairs Engagements Office.
23. [synthetic aperture radar, or SAR](#): Sandia National Laboratories: Synthetic Aperture Radar: What is Synthetic Aperture Radar? Sandia Synthetic Aperture Radar Programs (Unclassified programs and participants); <http://www.sandia.gov>.
24. [thirty miles south of Area 51, at Indian Springs](#): Physical tour of Creech Air Force Base, Indian Springs, Nevada, October 9, 2009.
25. ["Wicked Problems"](#): "Report of the Defense Science Board, 2008 Summer Study on Capability Surprise, Volume II: Supporting Papers, January 2010. Office of the Under Secretary of Defense For Acquisition, Technology, and Logistics, Washington, DC, 20301-3140, chapter 2, Appendix 2-A, Wicked Problems, 127–31.
26. ["playing the game changes the game"](#): Ibid., 127.
27. [shot down one of their own](#): Carl Hoffman, "China's Space Threat: How Missiles Could Target U.S. Satellites," *Popular Mechanics*, July 2007.

28. [The official Pentagon story](#): Jim Garamone, "Navy to Shoot Down Malfunctioning Satellite," American Forces Press Service, February 14, 2008; "Navy Says Missile Smashed Wayward Satellite," MSNBC.com News Services, February 21, 2008; "U.S. Missile Shoots Down Satellite—But Why?" *Christian Science Monitor*, February 22, 2008.

29. [not required to tell the truth to Congress](#): Killian, *Sputnik, Scientists and Eisenhower*, 25.

30. [A satellite cannot simply drop a bomb](#): Ibid., 287. Killian originally wrote this as "a study of space science and technology made at the request of the President for the non technical reader," which was released from the White House on March 26, 1958. "Much has been written about space as a future war theatre, raising such questions as satellite bombers, military bases on the moon and so on... most of these schemes, nevertheless, appear to be clumsy and ineffective ways of doing a job. Take one example, the satellite as a bomb carrier. A satellite simply cannot drop a bomb."

31. [by his own admission, was not a scientist](#): James Killian had only an undergraduate degree in management, as per my interview with MIT's archivist who researched the question for me in March of 2010.

32. [United States Space Surveillance Network](#): NASA Orbital Debris Program Office, Frequently Asked Questions, July 2009, <http://orbitaldebris.jsc.nasa.gov/faqs.html>.

33. [A one-centimeter object is very hard to track](#): Carl Hoffman, "China's Space Threat: How Missiles Could Target U.S. Satellites," *Popular Mechanics*, July 2007.

34. [spy satellites launched into space](#): Interview with Colonel Leghorn.

35. [Leghorn founded the Itek Corporation](#): Itek, which stood for Information (/) Technology (*tek*), was founded in 1957 with seed money from venture capitalist Laurance Rockefeller. Itek built Corona cameras from the beginning of the program until Corona ended in 1972. The CIA/NRO follow-on systems were contracted out to Perkin-Elmer; interviews with Colonel Leghorn, Dr. Wheelon. In his memoir, Helms wrote, "Corona flew 145 secret missions, with equally rewarding results," 267.

36. [Leghorn spent decades in the commercial-satellite business](#): U.S. Air Force official Web site, Biography of Colonel Richard Sully Leghorn, Retired, Air Force Space Command, <http://www.afspc.af.mil/library/biographies/bio.asp?id=9942>.

37. [W61 Earth Penetrator](#): Leland Johnson, "Sandia Report: Tonopah Test Range Outpost of Sandia National Laboratories, SAND96-0375, UC-700," March 1996, 80.

38. [launch the earth-penetrator weapon](#): Nelson, "Low-Yield Earth-Penetrating Nuclear Weapons," 3, figure 3.

39. [and signed by five of the then seven or eight nuclear-capable countries](#): Comprehensive Nuclear-Test-Ban Treaty Organization (<http://www.ctbto.org/>). The Comprehensive Nuclear-Test-Ban Treaty was signed by the United States, China, France, the United Kingdom, and Russia on September 26, 1996, in New York. The nuclear-armed states who did not sign (and as of 2011 have not signed) are India, Israel, and Pakistan. According to CTBTO, Israel has not reported testing but is generally assumed to be a nuclear-armed state. In 2006, Korea announced that it had conducted a nuclear test. Notably, the 1963 Partial Test Ban Treaty, to which I also refer, prohibits nuclear

explosions in the atmosphere, outer space, and underwater but allowed for underground nuclear tests. The Comprehensive Nuclear-Test-Ban Treaty of 1996 prohibits *all* nuclear explosions, including those conducted underground.

40. [Rods from God](#): Eric Adams, "Rods from God," *Popular Science*, June 1, 2004.
41. "[that's enough force](#)": Interview with Barnes.
42. "[long-rod penetration- 43. \[April 1999 report\]\(#\): JSR-97-155, "Characterization of Underground Facilities." JASON, MITRE Corporation, McLean, Virginia.
- 44. \[Los Alamos fired back\]\(#\): Interview with Stephen Younger.
- 45. \[operations at the Nevada Test Site\]\(#\): "NSTec Contracted to Operate NNSA Test Site," *United Press International*, December 22, 2008. Interview with Stephen Younger.
- 46. \[In 2006, the Senate dropped the line item\]\(#\): CRS Report for Congress, "Bunker Busters": Robust Nuclear Earth Penetrator Issues, FY2005-FY2007; Domenici: RNEP Funds Dropped from Appropriations Bill," press release, Senator Pete Domenici, October 25, 2005, FY2006 hearings. From the transcript: Representative Terry Everett: "Could you please tell me directly if there's a military need for this, for robust earth-nuclear earth penetrator?" Secretary of Defense Donald Rumsfeld: "It is a question that's difficult to answer, because sometimes they say 'military requirement.' And that's a formal process. There was no military requirement for unmanned aerial vehicles until they came along."
- 47. \[proposed to revive the NERVA program\]\(#\): Michael R. Williams, "Ground Test Facility for Propulsion and Power Modes of Nuclear Engine Operation," Savannah River National Laboratory, Department of Energy, WSRC-MS-2004-00842.
- 48. \[six hundred million pages of information\]\(#\): Pauline Jelinek, "U.S. Releases Nazi Papers," Associated Press, November 2, 1999.
- 49. \[Many documents about Area 51 exist in that pile\]\(#\): Interviews with EG&G engineer.
- 50. \[the Roswell crash remains\]\(#\): which certainly explains why the CIA and the Air Force have not been able to locate Roswell crash remains in their archives.
- 51. \[the most powerful defense contractor in the nation\]\(#\): In 1999, EG&G was acquired by the Carlyle Group. In 2002 it was acquired by URS. In 2000, EG&G formed a joint venture with Raytheon to create JT3 \(Joint Test, Tactics, and Training\) LLC, which provides "engineering and technical support for the Nevada Test and Training Range, the Air Force Flight Test Center, the Utah Test and Training Range, and the Electronic Combat Range." Interview with Meagan Stafford, EG&G/URS Public Relations, Sard Verbinnen & Co., July 16, 2010.
- 52. \[former dean of engineering at MIT\]\(#\): Vannevar Bush papers located at National Security Archives, Truman Library, the Roosevelt Library, and MIT Archives; Zachary, *Endless Frontier*, Library of Congress, "Vannevar Bush, a Collection of His Papers in the Library of Congress," Manuscript Division, Library of Congress, Washington, DC.
- 53. \[kidnapped by Dr. Josef Mengele\]\(#\): Interview with Gerald Posner; Posner and Ware, *Mengele: The Complete Story*, 83.
- 54. \[performed unspeakable experimental surgical procedures\]\(#\): Spitz, *Doctors From Hell: The Horrific Account of Nazi Experiments on Humans*. Spitz worked as a typist](#)

during the Nuremberg trials. *Forgiving Dr. Mengele*, a film by Bob Hercules and Cheri Pugh (2006); CANDLES Holocaust Museum, Biography of Eva Mozes Kor. The Japanese also performed grotesque experiments on humans during the war. "U.S. War Department, War Crimes Office, Judge Advocate General's Office, #770475." Japan's version of Josef Mengele, General Ishii, was pardoned by the U.S. War Crimes Office on the grounds that information regarding the grotesque medical experiments he performed would somehow benefit the United States. Although it is science fiction, *The Island of Dr. Moreau*, written in 1896 by H. G. Wells, tells a twisted tale of human experimentation on a remote island.

55. [children, dwarfs, and twins](#): Koren and Negev, *In Our Hearts We Were Giants*, 85–197.

56. [Josef Mengele's efforts to create a pure, Aryan race](#): Erik Kirschbaum, "Cloning Wakes German Memories of Nazi Master Race," Reuters, February 27, 1997. America is not exempt from eugenic theology; see Edwin Black, "Eugenics and the Nazis: The California Connection," *San Francisco Chronicle*, November 9, 2003.

57. [painter named Dina Babbitt](#): Ibid., 103–31 and photographic inserts. Bruce Weber, "Dina Babbitt, Artist at Auschwitz, Is Dead at 86," *New York Times*, August 1, 2009. Babbitt's maiden name (used at Auschwitz) was Gottlieb.

58. [Dr. Martina Puzyra](#): Koren and Negev, *In Our Hearts We Were Giants*, 109.

59. [According to his only son, Rolf](#): Interview with Gerald Posner. Posner interviewed Rolf Mengele and was given access to 5,000 pages of Mengele's written correspondence as well as his personal journals written after the war.

60. [Mengele held up his side of the Faustian bargain](#): Interview with EG&G engineer.

61. [Mengele never took up residence in the Soviet Union](#): Interview with Posner.

62. [Eileen Welsome wrote a newspaper story](#): Eileen Welsome, "The Plutonium Files: America's Secret Medical Experiments in the Cold War," *Albuquerque Tribune*, November 1993.

63. [direct violation of the Nuremberg Code](#): Trials of War Criminals before the Nuremberg Military Tribunals under Control Council Law No. 10, Vol. 2, Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1949. Nuremberg Code: (1). The voluntary consent of the human subject is absolutely essential. (2). The experiment should be such as to yield fruitful results for the good of society, unprocurable by other methods or means of study, and not random and unnecessary in nature. Full text available at <http://ohsr.od.nih.gov/guidelines/nuremberg.html>.

64. [President Clinton opened an investigation](#): The advisory committee was made of fourteen members who reported to the president through a cabinet-level group called the Human Radiation Interagency Working Group, and it included the secretaries of defense and energy (formerly the Atomic Energy Commission) as well as the attorney general and the director of the CIA. The committee was dissolved in October of 1995 after publishing its findings. Today, the Office of Health, Safety and Security (HSS), a Department of Energy office, maintains a Web site. Of its efforts, DOE says, "We have undertaken an intensive effort to identify and catalogue relevant historical documents from DOE's 3.2 million cubic feet of records scattered across the country." Given that there are

approximately 2,000 pages of documents in a single cubic foot, it is telling that a record search for "EG&G" at the HSS/DOE database delivers a paltry 500 documents.

Epilogue

Interviews: Colonel Leghorn, Ed Lovick, EG&G engineer, David Myhra

1. [Army Air Forces commemorative yearbook](#): This is the government-issued "Official Report, Task Force 1.52" and is meant to look like a high school yearbook.

2. [The U.S. government spent nearly two billion dollars: Atomic Audit](#), 102. "Operation Crossroads was an astonishing \$1.3 billion [circa 1996 dollars], far more than any of the subsequent thermonuclear tests conducted during the 1950s."

3. [Truman's closest advisers](#): "Potsdam and the Final Decision to Use the Bomb," Department of Energy Archives (<http://www.cfo.doe.gov/>): "During the second week of Allied deliberations at Potsdam, on the evening of July 24, 1945, Truman approached Stalin without an interpreter and, as casually as he could, told him that the United States had a 'new weapon of unusual destructive force.' Stalin showed little interest, replying only that he hoped the United States would make 'good use of it against the Japanese.' The reason for Stalin's composure became clear later: Soviet intelligence had been receiving information about the atomic bomb program since fall 1941."

4. [Stalin's black propaganda hoax](#): Interview with EG&G engineer.

5. [a warning shot across Truman's bow](#): Interview with EG&G engineer. The engineer says this information was relayed to him by his EG&G boss, who had been given the information by a government superior. One cannot rule out the possibility that the elite EG&G engineers were given false information as a means of coercing them into participating in a morally reprehensible program; in 1951, there was no greater enemy to the free world than Joseph Stalin. Until Russia opens its UFO archives, Stalin's side of the story will remain unknown, but since the collapse of the Soviet Union, Stalin's interest in UFOs has come to light. In *Korolev*, Professor James Harford discusses an incident where Stalin asked his chief rocket designer, Sergei Korolev, to study UFOs (See [here](#), [here](#)). In 2002, Pravda.ru ran a story called "Stalin's UFOs," identifying the dictator's Roswell/UFO research team as "mathematician Mstislav Keldysh, chemist Alexander Topchiyev, and physician [sic] Sergey [sic] Korolev." Other ufologists identify Stalin's UFO team as Sergei Korolev, missile designer and inventor of Sputnik; Igor Kurchatov, father of Russia's atomic bomb; and Mstislav Keldysh, mathematician, theoretician, and space pioneer (see photographic insert).

6. ["Hitler invented stealth," says Gene Poteat](#): Interview with Gene Poteat. Also from Poteat's participation in the CIA's Oxcart panel discussion at the National Air and Space Museum, Smithsonian Institution, Steven F. Udvar-Hazy Center, September 24, 2010.

7. [Whatever happened to the Horten brothers](#): Interview with David Myhra.

8. [captured by the U.S. Ninth Army on April 7, 1945](#): Myhra, *The Horten Brothers and Their All Wing Aircraft*, 229.

9. [London high-rise near Hyde Park](#): Ibid., 230.

10. [Theodore von Kármán](#): National Aviation Hall of Fame, biography, Theodore von

11. [tapes can be found](#): National Air and Space Museum, Archives Division, Reimar and Walter Horten Interviews, Accession No. 1999-0065.
12. [Reimar had me agree to two restrictions](#): Interview with David Myhra.
13. [2010 Freedom of Information Act request](#): Letter, October 29, 2010, to Ms. Annie Jacobsen from Nathan L. Mitchell, Assistant to the General Counsel, Department of the Army, Office of the General Counsel, 104 Army Pentagon, Washington DC.
14. [another \[important\] engineer](#): The name of this engineer and his employment with EG&G during the 1950s have been verified with other former EG&G employees.
15. [empty lot of asphalt](#): The lot is adjacent to the buildings identified as EG&G's original Las Vegas headquarters in a film about the history of the Nevada Test Site, funded by the National Nuclear Security Administration, Nevada Site Office: "When EG&G first moved to Las Vegas, their headquarters were located on 'A' Street now called Commerce."
16. [Little wooden discs](#): Interview with Ed Lovick.
17. [sworn affidavit](#): "Dead Airman's Affidavit: Roswell Aliens Were Real." Fox News.com, July 3, 2007. <http://www.foxnews.com/story/0.2933.287643.00.html>, accessed December 30, 2010.
18. [It's difficult](#): Written correspondence with Bob Lazar, 2010.
19. [hidden inside secret "Restricted Data" files](#): Interview with EG&G engineer.
20. [Vannevar Bush](#): To further understand Vannevar Bush, I reviewed his papers, letters, and hand-edited drafts of his articles, books, and monographs from three major collections: Vannevar Bush, "A Collection of His Papers in the Library of Congress," Manuscript Division, Library of Congress, Washington, DC; Vannevar Bush, "Office of Scientific Research and Development," National Archives and Records Administration, College Park, Maryland; Vannevar Bush Papers, Carnegie Institute, Washington, DC.
21. [human experiments to study the effects](#): The trials involved high concentrations of lewisite and mustard gas. *Advisory Committee on Human Radiation Experiments, Final Report*, 98; *Veterans at Risk: The Health Effects of Mustard Gas and Lewisite*, 66–69.
22. [Although the human subjects](#): Ibid., 66.
23. [Dixon Institute... Feeble-Minded](#): *Advisory Committee on Human Radiation Experiments, Final Report*, Chapter Seven, Nontherapeutic Research on Children, 320–351. Dr. Susan Lederer, *Military Medical Ethics*, Volume 2, "The Cold War and Beyond: Covert and Deceptive American Medical Experiments," 514. Lederer, a Clinton committee staff member, cites D. J. Rothman, *Strangers at the Bedside: A History of How Law and Bioethics Transformed Medical Decision Making*, Basic Books, 1991.
24. [letter-number designation of S-1](#): Gosling, *The Manhattan Project: Making the Atomic Bomb*, 10.
25. [JT3](#): From the company Web site (<http://www.jt3.com/>), accessed October 18, 2010. "The Department of Defense (DoD) has merged the engineering and technical support management of several western ranges into one organization to streamline support for test and training customers. In response to this challenge, URS (URS) and

Raytheon Technical Services Company (RTSC) formed JT3, a Limited Liability Company (LLC) dedicated to supporting Joint Range Technical Services (J-Tech) requirements. We are experts at assisting our customers and other contractors in the planning, preparation, and execution of test projects and training missions."

AUTHOR INTERVIEWS AND BIBLIOGRAPHY

PRIMARY INTERVIEWS

The individuals listed below, by birth year, did many things in their long careers. Noted are topics we discussed during our interviews. All military officers and intelligence agency personnel are retired.

Helen Kleyla (1913–). Longtime secretary to CIA deputy director Richard Bissell.

CIA, Richard Bissell, Area 51, Bay of Pigs.

Interviews: Written correspondence, fall 2009

Colonel Richard S. Leghorn (1919–). The father of peacetime overhead espionage.

Army Air Forces, USAF, CIA, World War II, Korean War; U-2, MiG, Corona satellite system, reconnaissance over Normandy, overhead espionage, Operation Crossroads, General Curtis LeMay.

Interviews: July 21, 2009; July 24, 2009; February 10, 2010; written correspondence: July 2009–October 2010

Edward Lovick Jr. (1919–). The father of stealth technology.

Lockheed Skunk Works, U-2, A-12 Oxcart, SR-71 Blackbird, D-21 drone, Harvey, Have Blue, F-117 Nighthawk, Project Kempster-Lacroix, radar testing, and pole testing at Area 51.

Interviews: January 5, 2008; February 7, 2008; March 6, 2008; April 3, 2008; April 18, 2008; April 29, 2008; May 29, 2008; June 6, 2008; June 18, 2008; July 2, 2008; July 10, 2008; July 23, 2008; July 30, 2008; August 6, 2008; August 13, 2008; August 21, 2008; August 28, 2008; September 4, 2008; November 18, 2008; December 9, 2008; January 6, 2009; January 20, 2009; March 17, 2009; March 30, 2009; June 11, 2009; June 28, 2009; August 1, 2009; February 28, 2010; April 22, 2010; September 5, 2010; written correspondence: February 2008–October 2010

Ray Goudey (1919–). Flew U-2 "Ship One" at Area 51.

Lockheed test flights, U-2, Burbank to Area 51 flights.

Interviews: June 12, 2009; July 8, 2009; October 8, 2009

Fred White (1921–). Wrote the flight manuals for Lockheed U-2, A-12, and SR-71.

Lockheed Skunk Works, U-2, A-12, YF-12, SR-71, engineering projects at Area 51.

Interviews: October 3, 2009; October 8, 2009; written correspondence: October 2009–May 2010.

Colonel Hugh "Slip" Slater (1922–). Base commander at Area 51.

Army Air Force, USAF, CIA, A-12, YF-12, D-21 drone, commander of the U-2 Chinese Black Cat Squadron, commander for Operation Black Shield, the 303 Committee.

Interviews: November 13, 2008; December 20, 2009; January 7, 2009; March 4, 2009; April 25, 2009; June 25, 2009; July 14, 2009; October 7, 2009; October 8, 2009; January 13, 2010

Alfred O'Donnell (1922–), early Manhattan Project member. Armed, wired, and fired 186 nuclear bombs at the Nevada Test Site and the Pacific Proving Ground.

Nuclear weapons, World War II, Battle at Okinawa; timing, wiring, and firing system on atomic bombs; timing, wiring, and firing system on thermonuclear bombs; Operation Crossroads, Operation Greenhouse, Operation Ivy, Operation Castle, Operation Plumbbob, Operation Hardtack, Nevada Test Site.

Interviews: May 9, 2009; May 25, 2009; May 27, 2009; June 24, 2009; June 25, 2009; July 15, 2009; September 7, 2009; September 8, 2009; October 6, 2009; October 7, 2009; November 17, 2009; December 14, 2009; December 15, 2009; December 16, 2009; January 13, 2010; January 14, 2010; February 11, 2010; March 6, 2010; June 28, 2010, June 29, 2010; written correspondence: May 2009–October 2010

Colonel Hervey S. Stockman (1922–2011). First man to fly over the Soviet Union in a U-2.

Army Air Forces, USAF, U-2 pilot, atomic-sampling pilot, fighter pilot in World War II, Korea, and Vietnam; POW at the Hanoi Hilton and other prisons from June 12, 1967–March 4, 1973.

Interviews: August 24, 2009; September 17, 2009; March 24, 2010

Colonel Sam Pizzo (1922–). Navigation expert for the A-12 at Area 51 and escort to Nikita Khrushchev from Moscow to America in 1959.

Strategic Air Command, USAF, A-12 Oxcart, Operation Home Run, celestial navigation, General Curtis LeMay.

Interviews: April 22, 2009; April 24, 2009; May 19, 2009; May 21, 2009; October 3, 2009; October 7, 2009; December 2, 2009; written correspondence: April 2009–September 2010

General Hsichun “Mike” Hua (1926–). Flew with U-2 Chinese Black Cat Squadron. CIA U-2 pilot, CIA air base at Taoyuan, Taiwan.

Interview: March 12, 2010; written correspondence: winter/spring 2010

Ralph James “Jim” Freedman (1927–). Procurement manager at Area 51, EG&G weapons test engineer, and nuclear explosion photographer.

EG&G, CIA, nuclear test liaison to Howard Hughes from Area 51, Nevada Test Site, Operation Greenhouse, Operation Ivy, Operation Castle, A-12 Oxcart, Project Aquiline.

Interviews: May 7, 2009; May 8, 2009; April 25, 2009; June 24, 2009; September 8, 2009; October 8, 2009; December 15, 2009; June 28, 2010; August 4, 2010; November 30, 2010.

Brigadier General Raymond L. Haupt (1927–). The only man to fly all three models of the Oxcart at Area 51.

USAF, U-2, A-12 Oxcart, YF-12, SR-71 Blackbird, Blackbird flight manuals, Lockheed pilots, Area 51 operations.

Interviews: October 3, 2009; October 8, 2009

Major General Patrick J. Halloran (1928–). Squadron operations officer for the U-2,

wing commander for the SR-71 Blackbird.

USAF, U-2, SR-71 Blackbird, U-2 shoot-downs over China.

Interview June 12, 2009

Dr. Albert D. "Bud" Wheelon (1929–). CIA's first deputy director of Science and Technology, also known as the mayor of Area 51.

Project Palladium, A-12 Oxcart, Cuban missile crisis, satellites, early missile systems, TRW, defense contracting, MIT, President Kennedy, James Killian, General Ledford, John McCone, Richard Helms, Lyman Kirkpatrick.

Interviews: May 29, 2009; November 9, 2009

Colonel Kenneth B. Collins (1930–). A-12 Oxcart pilot for the CIA.

USAF, CIA, A-12 Oxcart pilot, SR-71 Blackbird pilot, Korean War, Vietnam War, Operation Black Shield, Jack Weeks, Walt Ray.

Interviews: October 29, 2008; January 20, 2009; March 17, 2009; April 14, 2009; April 28, 2009; May 19, 2009; June 1, 2009; June 13, 2009; August 4, 2009; October 20, 2009; December 2, 2009; January 20, 2010, April 4, 2010, August 6, 2010; written correspondence: October 2008–October 2010

Lieutenant Colonel Francis J. "Frank" Murray (1930–). A-12 Oxcart pilot for the CIA.

USAF, CIA, A-12 Oxcart pilot, F-101 pilot, Vietnam War, Operation Black Shield, USS Pueblo, General Ledford, Walt Ray.

Interviews: March 4, 2009; March 5, 2009; April 28, 2009; October 6, 2009; October 7, 2009; January 6, 2010; January 13, 2010; written correspondence: March 2009–May 2010

Lieutenant Colonel Roger W. Andersen (1930–). Area 51 command post operations for Area 51 and Kadena Air Base during Operation Oxcart.

USAF, CIA, Nevada Test Site, atomic tests, Operation Black Shield.

Interviews: March 5, 2009; May 26, 2009; October 7, 2009; September 24, 2010; written correspondence: May 2009–September 2010

Robert "Bob" Murphy (1930–). Lockheed Skunk Works engineer and project airplane manager at Area 51.

U-2, A-12 Oxcart, D-21 drone, U-2 missions out of Asia, Have Blue, F-117 Nighthawk.

Interviews: July 4, 2009; July 20, 2009; September 24, 2010

William "Bill" Weaver (1930–). Lockheed test pilot for the A-12, YF-12, SR-71, and the only pilot to survive a Mach 3 bailout at 78,000 feet in an SR-71 Blackbird.

SR-71 Blackbird, high-speed bailouts, parachutes.

Interview June 13, 2009

Captain Donald J. Donohue (1930–). Crew captain for A-12 Oxcart at Area 51.

USAF, A-12 Oxcart.

Interviews: May 8, 2009; December 9, 2009

Frank Micalizzi (1930–). Warehouse supervisor at Area 51.

USAF, CIA, Kadena Air Force Base, A-12 Oxcart camera film storage.

Interview May 8, 2009

Florence DeLuna (1930–). Area 51 transport pilot.

USAF, C-47, Walt Ray, Dreamland airspace and air traffic control.

Interview May 8, 2009

Ernest "Ernie" Williams (1930–). Atomic Energy Commission motor pool and food services coordinator, escorted the Apollo astronauts around the Nevada Test Site.

AEC, Nevada Test Site, astronaut training.

Interviews: October 7, 2009; December 14, 2009

S. Eugene "Gene" Poteat (1930–). Pioneer of electronic countermeasures, first CIA officer assigned to the National Reconnaissance Office.

CIA, NRO, Project Palladium, Area 51 radar tests, U-2 and A-12, Caspian Sea Monster, Project Aquiline.

Interviews: September 27, 2010; September 28, 2010; September 30, 2010

Richard Mingus (1931–). Area 51 security, Nevada Test Site Security, and Lawrence Radiation Laboratory operations manager.

Atomic Energy Commission, Department of Energy, Lawrence Radiation Laboratory, Federal Services, Inc., Wackenhut Security, Inc., U-2 security guard, Area 51 security, Area 52 security, Nevada Test Site, Tonopah Test Range, Project 57, Operation Plumbbob, underground nuclear testing.

Interviews: September 9, 2009; October 8, 2009; November 18, 2009; December 14, 2009; December 15, 2009; December 16, 2009; January 14, 2009; February 10, 2010; February 12, 2010; June 28, 2010; June 29, 2010

Harry Martin (1931–). In charge of the million-gallon fuel farm at Area 51.

USAF, CIA, fuels, A-12 Oxcart.

Interviews: November 13, 2008; March 5, 2009; May 26, 2009

Lieutenant Colonel Tony Bevacqua (1932–). Youngest pilot to fly U-2 at Area 51.

USAF, U-2 pilot, SR-71 Blackbird pilot, Vietnam War, Kadena Air Force Base, Gary Powers.

Interviews: June 12, 2009; June 13, 2009; October 8, 2009; written correspondence: June 2009–October 2010

Colonel Charles E. "Charlie" Trapp (1933–). Area 51 helicopter search-and-rescue pilot.

USAF, C-47, Walt Ray, Dreamland airspace and air traffic control.

Interview June 4, 2010; November 18, 2010; November 24, 2010

Troy Wade (1934–). Longtime Nevada Test Site official, former assistant secretary of energy for defense programs, ran Operation Morning Light for the Department of Energy, Nevada Test Site Historical Foundation.

Atomic Energy Commission, Department of Energy, Nevada Test Site, Operation Morning Light, underground nuclear testing.

Interviews: September 9, 2009; October 8, 2009; December 15, 2009

Wayne E. Pendleton (1935–). EG&G radar expert.

Lockheed Skunk Works, EG&G radar range, National Reconnaissance Office, Have Blue, Howard Hughes.

Interviews: October 3, 2009; October 7, 2009; April 22, 2010

Thornton "T.D." Barnes (1937–). Radar expert on multiple Area 51 projects.

CIA, EG&G, Atomic Energy Commission, NASA, Project Palladium, A-12 Oxcart, MiG, X-15 rocket plane, Apollo 1, NERVA, Nike missile system, Hercules missile system, Have Blue.

Interviews: November 3, 2008; November 13, 2008; December 20, 2009; December 21, 2009; January 7, 2009; March 4, 2009; March 5, 2009; March 6, 2009; April 24, 2009; April 25, 2009; May 7, 2009; May 8, 2009; May 26, 2009; June 12, 2009; June 13, 2009; June 24, 2009; June 25, 2009; July 14, 2009; September 7, 2009; September 9, 2009, October 7, 2009; October 8, 2009; October 9, 2009, December 14, 2009; December 15, 2009; December 16, 2009; January 13, 2010; January 14, 2010; February 11, 2010; February 12, 2010; March 6, 2010; June 29, 2010; written correspondence: November 2008–October 2010

Ken Swanson (1937–). Electronic warfare, electronic countermeasures expert, Red Dog/Blue Dog ECM System.

Interview June 17, 2010

Sherre Lovick (1960–). Lockheed Skunk Works engineer.

Lockheed Skunk Works, radar signature, defense contracting.

Interviews: February 7, 2008; March 6, 2008; April 3, 2008; April 29, 2008; May 29, 2008; June 6, 2008; July 2, 2008; July 23, 2008; July 30, 2008; August 6, 2008; August 21, 2008; June 28, 2009

Colonel Buzz Aldrin, Apollo 11 astronaut and the second man on the moon

Dr. Robert B. Abernethy, Pratt and Whitney engineer; invented the Oxcart's J-58 engine

Joseph C. Behne Jr.: Former test director, Lawrence Livermore National Laboratory

Arthur Beidler, 67th Reconnaissance Tactical Squadron, Japan

Colonel Adelbert W. "Buz" Carpenter, SR-71 pilot

Harold B. Finger, former manager of AEC-NASA Space Nuclear Propulsion Office

R. Cargill Hall, historian emeritus, National Reconnaissance Office

Milton M. Klein, former manager of AEC-NASA Space Nuclear Propulsion Office

Darwin Morgan: National Nuclear Security Administration, spokesman (current)

Dennis Nordquist, Pratt and Whitney mechanical engineer, J-58 engine

Grace Weismann: Joe Walker's widow

Charles "Chuck" Wilson: U-2 pilot

Changti "Robin" Yeh: U-2 pilot, Chinese Black Cat Squadron

Secondary Interviews and Correspondence

Steven Aftergood

Joerg Arnu

Doris Barnes

Stacy Slater Bernhardt

Tim Brown

Fred Burton

Lee Davidson

Martha DeMarre

Jeanne Donohue
Stanton Friedman
Norio Hayakawa
Bill Irvine
George Knapp
Tony Landis
Eunice Layton
Colonel Ronald "Jack" Layton
Bob Lazar
Ken Leghorn
Jim Long
Dr. Craig Luther
Tom Mahood
Mary Martin
Millie Meierdierck
Peter W. Merlin
Martha Murphy
Mary Jane Murphy
Stella Murray
David Myhra
James Oberg
Ruth O'Donnell
Thomas O'Donnell
Major General Jude Pao
John E. Pike
Gerald Posner
Gary Powers Jr.
Dr. Jeffrey Richelson
Dr. David Robarge
Louise Schalk
P. W. Singer
Barbara Slater
Peter Slater
Peter Stockman
Sharlene Weeks
Stephen M. Younger
G. Pascal Zachary

Current and former employees from the following organizations, agencies, and corporations were interviewed, some on the condition of anonymity.

National Security Agency (NSA)
National Reconnaissance Office (NRO)
National Imagery and Mapping Agency (NIMA)
National Photographic Interpretation Center (NPIC)

Defense Intelligence Agency (DIA)
National Aeronautics and Space Agency (NASA)
Central Intelligence Agency (CIA)
Atomic Energy Commission (AEC)
Department of Energy (DOE)
Defense Nuclear Agency (DNA)
National Nuclear Security Administration (NNSA)
United States Air Force (USAF)
Federal Bureau of Investigation (FBI)
United States Army Air Forces (USAAF)
EG&G Special Projects Group
Lockheed Martin Corporation
Northrop Grumman
Raytheon
General Atomics Aeronautical
Hughes Aircraft Company
Summa Corporation

Aldrin, Buzz, with Ken Abraham. *Magnificent Desolation: The Long Journey Home from the Moon*. New York: Harmony Books, 2009.

Anders, Roger M., Jack M. Holl, Alice L. Buck, and Prentice C. Dean. *The United States Nuclear Weapons Program: A Summary History*. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Energy, 1983.

Ball, Desmond. *Politics and Force Levels, the Strategic Missile Program of the Kennedy Administration*. Berkeley: University of California Press, 1980.

Bamford, James. *Body of Secrets: Anatomy of the Ultra-Secret National Security Agency*. New York: Anchor Books, 2002.

Berlitz, Charles, and William Moore. *Roswell Incident, the Most Important UFO Encounter of Our Century*. New York: MJF Books, 1980.

Bissell, Richard M., with Jonathan E. Lewis and Francis T. Pudlo. *Reflections of a Cold Warrior: From Yalta to the Bay of Pigs*. New Haven: Yale University Press, 1996.

Bower, Tom. *The Paperclip Conspiracy: The Hunt for the Nazi Scientists*. Boston: Little, Brown and Company, 1987.

Bradley, David. *No Place to Hide*. Boston: Little, Brown and Company, 1948.

Broad, William J. *Teller's War: The Top Secret Story Behind the Star Wars Deception*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 1992.

Brugioni, Dino A. *Eyeball to Eyeball: The Inside Story of the Cuban Missile Crisis*. New York: Random House, 1990.

Brzezinski, Matthew. *Red Moon Rising: Sputnik and the Hidden Rivalries That Ignited the Space Age*. New York: Henry Holt and Company, 2007.

Buck, Alice. *History of the Atomic Energy Commission*. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Energy, 1983.

Burrows, William E. *By Any Means Necessary: America's Heroes Flying Secret Missions in a Hostile World*. New York: Penguin Putnam, 2002.

Coffey, Thomas. *Iron Eagle: The Turbulent Life of General Curtis LeMay*. New York: Random House, 1986.

Coll, Steve. *Ghost Wars: The Secret History of the CIA, Afghanistan and bin Laden, from the Soviet Invasion to September 10, 2001*. New York: Penguin Press, 2004.

Coolidge, Matthew. *The Nevada Test Site: A Guide to America's Nuclear Proving Ground*. Culver City, Calif.: The Center for Land Use Interpretation, 1996.

Cornwall, John. *Hitler's Scientists: Science, War and the Devil's Pact*. New York: Penguin Group, 2003.

Crickmore, Paul F. *Combat Legend: F-117 Nighthawk*. Shrewsbury, England: Airlife Publishing Ltd., 2003.

_____. *Lockheed SR-71: The Secret Missions Exposed*. London: Osprey, 1993.

Dewar, James A. *To the End of the Solar System: The Story of the Nuclear Rocket*. Lexington, Kentucky: University of Kentucky Press, 2004.

Dickson, Paul. *Sputnik: The Shock of the Century*. New York: Walker and Company,

2007.

Dolibois, John E. *Pattern of Circles, an Ambassador's Story*. Kent, Ohio: Kent State University Press, 1989.

Fehner, Terrence R., and F. G. Gosling. *Battlefield of the Cold War: Atmospheric Nuclear Weapons Testing 1951–1963*. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Energy, 2006.

———. *Origins of the Nevada Test Site*. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Energy, 2000.

Fehner, Terrence R., and Jack M. Hall. *Department of Energy, a Summary History, 1977–1994*. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Energy, 1994.

Finger, H. B., and W. H. Robbins. *An Historical Perspective of the NERVA Nuclear Rocket Engine Technology Program*. Cleveland, Ohio: NASA Lewis Research Center Group, 1991.

Gates, Mahlon. *Operation Morning Light, Northwest Territories, Canada 1978, a Non-Technical Summary of U.S. Participation*. Nevada: U.S. Department of Energy, 1978.

Goode, Timothy. *Above Top Secret: The Worldwide UFO Coverup*. New York: William Morrow, 1988.

Goodman, Matthew. *The Sun and the Moon: The Remarkable True Account of Hoaxers, Showmen, Dueling Journalists, and Lunar Man-Bats in Nineteenth-Century New York*. New York: Basic Books, 2008.

Goodman, Michael S. *Spying on the Nuclear Bear: Anglo-American Intelligence and the Soviet Bomb*. Palo Alto, California: Stanford University Press, 2007.

Gosling, F. G. *The Manhattan Project: Making the Atomic Bomb*. Washington, DC: United States Department of Energy, History Division, 1999.

Graham, Richard H. *SR-71 Blackbird: Stories, Tales, and Legends*. Minneapolis: Zenith Press, 2002.

Hand, Richard J. *Terror on the Air! Horror Radio in America, 1931–1952*. Jefferson, North Carolina: Macfarland and Company, 2009.

Harford, James. *Korolev: How One Man Masterminded the Soviet Drive to Beat America to the Moon*. New York: John Wiley and Sons, 1997.

Hathaway, Robert M., and Russell Jack Smith. *Richard Helms as Director of Central Intelligence, 1963–1973*. Washington, DC: CIA Center for the Study of Intelligence, 1993.

Heaps, Leo. *Operation Morning Light: The True Story of Canada's Nuclear Nightmare*. New York: Ballantine Books, 1979.

Helms, Richard, with William Hood. *A Look Over My Shoulder: A Life in the Central Intelligence Agency*. New York: Ballantine Books, 2003.

Hewlett, Richard G., and Oscar E. Anderson. *The New World: A History of the United States Atomic Energy Commission*. Washington, DC: U.S. Atomic Energy Commission, 1962.

Hoffman, David E. *The Dead Hand: The Untold Story of the Cold War Arms Race and Its Dangerous Legacy*. New York: Doubleday, 2009.

Hua, Mike H. *Lost Black Cats: Story of Two Captured Chinese U-2 Pilots*. Bloomington: AuthorHouse, 2005.

- Hunt, Linda. *Secret Agenda: The United States Government, Nazi Scientists, and Project Paperclip, 1945 to 1990*. New York: St. Martin's Press, 1991.
- Jenkins, Dennis R. *Hypersonics Before the Shuttle: A Concise History of the X-15 Research Airplane*. Washington, DC: National Aeronautics and Space Administration, Monographs in Aerospace History, 2000.
- Johnson, Clarence L., "Kelly," with Maggie Smith. *Kelly: More Than My Share of It All*. Washington, DC: Smithsonian Institution Press, 1985.
- Johnson, Leland. *Sandia Report: Tonopah Test Range Outpost of Sandia National Laboratories*. Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Energy, 1996.
- Johnson, Loch K., ed. *Strategic Intelligence*. Santa Barbara, Calif.: Praeger Security International, 2006.
- Jones, R. V. *The Wizard War: British Scientific Intelligence, 1939–1945*. New York: Coward, McCann and Geoghegan, 1978.
- Jung, Carl. *Flying Saucers: A Modern Myth of Things Seen in the Skies*. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1979.
- Kaplan, Fred. *The Wizards of Armageddon*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 1983.
- Keegan, John. *Intelligence in War: The Value and Limitation of What the Military Can Learn About the Enemy*. New York: Vintage Books, 2004.
- Killian, James R. Jr. *Sputnik, Scientists and Eisenhower: A Memoir of the First Special Assistant to the President for Science and Technology*. Cambridge: MIT Press, 1977.
- Kirkpatrick, Lyman B. *The Real CIA*. New York: Macmillan Company, 1968.
- Korda, Michael. *Ike: An American Hero*. New York: HarperCollins, 2007.
- Kozak, Warren. *LeMay: The Life and Wars of General Curtis LeMay*. Washington, DC: Regnery, 2009.
- Khrushchev, Nikita. *Khrushchev Remembers*. Translated and edited by Strobe Talbott. Boston: Little, Brown and Company, 1970.
- Mallick, Donald L., with Peter W. Merlin. *The Smell of Kerosene: A Test Pilot's Odyssey*. Washington, DC: National Aeronautics and Space Administration, 2003.
- Marks, John. *The Search for the "Manchurian Candidate": The CIA and Mind Control*. New York: Norton, 1991.
- McAuliffe, Mary S., ed. *CIA Documents on the Cuban Missile Crisis 1962*. Washington, DC: CIA History Staff, Central Intelligence Agency, 1992.
- McPhee, John. *The Curve of Binding Energy*. New York: Farrar, Straus and Giroux, 1973.
- Merlin, Peter W. *Mach 3+ NASA/USAF YF-12 Flight Research, 1969–1979*. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office, 2002.
- Michels, Juergen, and Olaf Przybilski. *Peenemuende und seine Erben in Ost und West*. Bonn: Bernard and Graefe, 1997.
- Miller, Richard L. *Under the Cloud: The Decades of Nuclear Testing*. New York: Free Press, 1986.
- Moran, Barbara. *The Day We Lost the H-Bomb: Cold War, Hot Nukes, and the Worst Nuclear Disaster*. New York: Presidio Press, 2009.

- Myhra, David. *The Horten Brothers and Their All-Wing Aircraft*. Atglen, Pennsylvania: Schiffer Publishing Ltd., 1998.
- Narducci, Henry M. *Strategic Air Command and the Alert Program, a Brief History*. Nebraska: Office of the Historian, Offutt Air Force Base, 1988.
- Neufeld, Michael J. *Von Braun: Dreamer of Space, Engineer of War*. New York: Alfred A. Knopf, 2007.
- Newman, James R., and Byron S. Miller. *The Control of Atomic Energy*. New York: McGraw-Hill Book Company, 1948.
- Oberg, James. *UFOs and Outer Space Mysteries*. Virginia Beach: Donning Press, 1982.
- O'Keefe, Bernard J. *Nuclear Hostages*. Boston: Houghton Mifflin Company, 1983.
- Pechura, C. M., and D. P. Rall. *Veterans at Risk: The Health Effects of Mustard Gas and Lewisite*. Washington, DC: National Academy Press, 1993.
- Peebles, Curtis. *Dark Eagles: A History of Top Secret U.S. Aircraft Programs*. Novato, Calif.: Presidio Press, 1995.
- _____. *Watch the Skies: A Chronicle of the Flying Saucer Myth*. New York: Berkley, 1995.
- Pizzo, Sam. *As Good As It Gets: A Man of Many Hats*. New Orleans: Tommy Towery, 2008.
- Plaskon, Cyril. *Silent Heroes of the Cold War: The Mysterious Military Plane Crash on a Nevada Mountain Peak—and the Families Who Endured an Abyss of Silence for Generations*. Las Vegas: Stephens Press, 2008.
- Pocock, Chris. *Dragon Lady: The History of the U-2 Spyplane*. Shrewsbury, England: Airlife, 1989.
- Posner, Gerald L., and John Ware. *Mengele: The Complete Story*. New York: Cooper Square Press, 1986.
- Powers, Francis Gary, and Curt Gentry. *Operation Overflight: The U-2 Spy Pilot Tells His Story for the First Time*. New York: Holt, Rinehart and Winston, 1970.
- Quist, Arvin S. *Security Classification of Information*. Oak Ridge, Tenn.: U.S. Department of Energy, 1989.
- Rhodes, Richard. *Dark Sun: The Making of the Hydrogen Bomb*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 1995.
- _____. *The Making of the Atomic Bomb*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 1986.
- Rich, Ben R., and Leo Janos. *Skunk Works: A Personal Memoir of My Years at Lockheed*. Boston: Little, Brown and Company, 1994.
- Richelson, Jeffrey T. *Spying on the Bomb: American Nuclear Intelligence from Nazi Germany to Iran and North Korea*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, 2006.
- _____. *Civilians, Spies and Blue Suits: The Bureaucratic War for Control of Overhead Reconnaissance, 1961–1965*. Washington, DC: National Security Archive Monograph, 2003.
- _____. *The Wizards of Langley: Inside CIA's Directorate of Science and Technology*. Boulder: Westview Press, 2002.
- Robarge, David. *Archangel: CIA's Supersonic A-12 Reconnaissance Aircraft*.

- Washington, DC: Central Intelligence Agency, 2007.
- Saler, Benson, Charles A. Ziegler, and Charles B. Moore. *UFO Crash at Roswell: The Genesis of a Modern Myth*. Connecticut: Konecky and Konecky, 1997.
- Samuel, Wolfgang W. E. *American Raiders: The Race to Capture the Luftwaffe's Secrets*. Jackson: University Press of Mississippi, 2004.
- Schwartz, Stephen I., ed. *Atomic Audit: The Costs and Consequences of U.S. Nuclear Weapons Since 1940*. Washington, DC: Brookings Institution Press, 1998.
- Singer, P. W. *Wired for War: The Robotics Revolution and Conflict in the Twenty-first Century*. New York: Penguin Press, 2009.
- Smyth, Henry DeWolf. *Atomic Energy for Military Purposes; The Official Report on the Development Under the Auspices of the United States Government, 1940–1945*. Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1945.
- Spitz, Vivien. *Doctors from Hell: The Horrific Account of Nazi Experiments on Humans*. Boulder, Colorado: Sentient Publications, 2005.
- Stone, I. F. *The Best of I. F. Stone*. Edited by Karl Weber. New York: Public Affairs, 2006.
- Taubman, Philip. *Secret Empire: Eisenhower, the CIA, and the Hidden Story of America's Space Espionage*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 2003.
- Taubman, William. *Khrushchev: The Man and His Era*. New York: W. W. Norton and Company, 2003.
- Thomas, Evan. *The Very Best Men: Four Who Dared, the Early Years of the CIA*. New York: Simon and Schuster, 1995.
- Wallace, Lane E. *Flights of Discovery: Sixty Years of Flight Research at Dryden Flight Research Center*. Washington, DC: National Aeronautics and Space Administration, 2006.
- Weiner, Tim. *Legacy of Ashes: The History of the CIA*. New York: Anchor Books, 2008.
- Wells, H. G. *The Island of Dr. Moreau*. 1896. Reprint, New York: Dover, 1996.
- _____. *The War of the Worlds*. 1898. Reprint, New York: Dover, 1997.
- Wiesner, Jerome B. *Vannevar Bush, Biographical Memoirs*. Washington, DC: National Academies Press, 1979.
- Wilcox, Robert K. *Scream of Eagles: The Dramatic Account of the U.S. Navy's Top Gun Fighter Pilots and How They Took Back the Skies Over Vietnam*. New York: Pocket Star Books, 2005.
- Wills, Gary. *Bomb Power: The Modern Presidency and the National Security State*. New York: Penguin Press, 2010.
- Zachary, Pascal G. *Endless Frontier: Vannevar Bush, Engineer of the American Century*. New York: Free Press, 1997.

Government Documents and Publications

- Advisory Committee on Human Radiation Experiments. "Final Report." Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office, 1995.

"Agreement Between Secretary of Defense and the Director of Central Intelligence on Responsibility of the National Reconnaissance Office." May 2, 1962.

"Army Air Forces Operation Crossroads: A Complete Pictorial Record of Task Unit 1.52 Which Had for Its Job the Biggest Photographic Assignment in History." Planographed by John Swift and Co., Inc., St. Louis, n.d.

Army Intelligence, G-2 Paperclip, Memorandum for the AC of S G-2, Intelligence Summary, Captain Paul R. Lutjens, 6 June 1947, RG 319, Washington National Records Center (WNRC), Suitland, Maryland.

Army Intelligence, G-2 Paperclip, Memorandum for the AC of S G-2, Intelligence Summary, Captain Paul R. Lutjens, 20 June 1947, RG 319, Washington National Records Center (WNRC), Suitland, Maryland.

Army Ordnance Department, Fort Bliss Rocket Project, "Report on Hermes Missile Project," RG 156, Washington National Records Center (WNRC), Suitland, Maryland.

Army Records, Assistant Chief of Staff, Intelligence (ACSI) G-2 (Intelligence), Entry 47F, Project Decimal File, 1949–50, Project Paperclip, Box 55, National Archives, College Park, Maryland.

Army Records, Assistant Chief of Staff, Intelligence (ACSI) G-2 (Intelligence), Entry 47GF, Project Decimal File, 1951–52, Project Paperclip, Boxes 38–40, National Archives, College Park, Maryland.

Army Staff, Assistant Chief of Staff, Intelligence (ACSI), G-2, Entry 1019: Records Relating to the Exploitation of German and Austrian Scientists and Technicians, 1945–1946, Box 1, National Archives, College Park, Maryland.

"Black Shield Reconnaissance Missions, 31 May–15 August 1967. DST-BS/BYE/67-1, Central Intelligence Agency, Directorate of Science and Technology. September 22, 1967.

Bush, Vannevar. "A Collection of His Papers in the Library of Congress." Manuscript Division, Library of Congress, Washington, DC.

Central Intelligence Agency. "Biographic Profile, Albert Dewell Wheelon." NARA, MRB, RG 263, May 10, 1966.

Central Intelligence Agency. "R. V. Jones Intelligence Award Ceremony Honoring Dr. Albert Wheelon." December 13, 1994.

Charyk, Joseph V. "A Summary Review of the National Reconnaissance Office." February 25, 1963.

"Chronology of Events Concerning the Seizure of the USS Pueblo." Central Intelligence Agency Memorandum, January 24, 1968.

Chuykov, V. "Military Thought, Intelligence to the Level of Modern Tasks." Memorandum for the Director of Central Intelligence, January 23, 1962.

Civilian Saucer Investigations. "Minutes of the Meeting of Civilian Saucer Investigations, Wednesday, April 2, 1952, 8:00 p.m." Mayfair Hotel, Los Angeles, California.

"Debriefing of Francis Gary Powers." February 13, 1962 NARA. RG 263, Box 230. CIA Release, 1997.

"Defense's Nuclear Agency 1947–1997." Defense Threat Reduction Agency. Defense

Technical Information Center, 2002.

Director of Central Intelligence. Classified Message, 2219Z. Oxcart Secure Ops, May 15, 1962.

Director of Central Intelligence. "Soviet Capabilities and Probable Programs in the Guided Missile Field." NIE 11-6-54. October 1954.

_____. "Main Trends in Soviet Capabilities and Policies, 1957–1962." NIE 11-4-57. November 12, 1957.

_____. "Main Trends in Soviet Capabilities and Policies, 1959–1964." NIE 11-4-59. February 9, 1960.

_____. "Soviet Capabilities for a Long Range Attack." NIE 11-8-61. June 7, 1961.

Dunning, Gordon. "Protective and Remedial Measures Taken Following Three Incidents of Fallout." Washington, DC: United States Atomic Energy Commission, 1968.

EG&G, Inc., Las Vegas Operations. "An Aerial Radiological Survey of the Three Mile Island Station Nuclear Power Plant." Washington, DC: U.S. Department of Energy, 1977.

"First History of AFSWP 1947–1954." Defense Nuclear Agency, 1.941025.002. Declassified October 18, 1994.

Foreign Scientist Case Files, "Riedel, Walther," RG 330, Box 135, 190/900 (A)/24/6, National Archives, College Park, Maryland.

Haines, Gerald K. "CIA's Role in the Study of UFOs, 1947–90." *Studies in Intelligence*. Semiannual unclassified edition 1 (1997): 67–84.

"History of the Air Force Special Weapons Center, 1 January–30 June 1957." Defense Nuclear Agency. Department of Defense, 1995.

Hoerlin, Herman. "United States High-Altitude Test Experiences: A Review Emphasizing the Impact on the Environment." Los Alamos Scientific Laboratory of the University of California Monograph. U.S. Energy Research and Development Administration, October 1976.

Johnson, Clarence L. "History of the Oxcart Program: As Recorded by the Builder." Burbank: Lockheed Aircraft Corporation, Advanced Development Projects, July 1968.

Knaack, Marcelle Size. *Encyclopedia of U.S. Air Force Aircraft and Missile Systems, Post-World War II Bombers, 1945–1973*. Volume 2. Washington, DC: Office of Air Force History, United States Air Force, 1988.

Lowenhaupt, Henry S. "Mission to Birch Woods." *Studies in Intelligence* 12 (Fall 1968).

_____. "The Decryption of a Picture." *Studies in Intelligence* 11 (September 1995).

McLean, David R. "Cranks, Nuts and Screwballs." *Studies in Intelligence* 9 (Summer 1995).

National Photographic Interpretation Center. "Chronological Developments of the Kapustin Yar/Vladimirovka and Tyuratam Missile Test Centers, USSR, 1957 through 1963." November 1963.

_____. Black Shield Mission X-001. May 31, 1967, June 1967.

_____. Black Shield Mission BX-67051. June 20, 1967, June 1967.

Nazi War Crimes & Japanese Imperial Government Records. Interagency Working Group. Final Report to the United States Congress. April 2007.

Nevada Test Organization. *Background Information on Nevada Nuclear Tests*. Las Vegas: U.S. Atomic Energy Commission, Office of Test Information, July 15, 1957.

Notorious Nazi Files, Entry UD-2, Mengele, Josef, Vols. 1–2, Box 3, RG 263, National Archives, College Park, Maryland.

Odarenko, Todos M. Office Memorandum, United States Government, From: Chief, Physics and Electronics Division, SI. Subject: Current Status of Unidentified Flying Objects (UFOB) Projects, 17 December 1953.

———.Office Memorandum, United States Government. To: Acting Assistant Director for Scientific Intelligence: From: Chief, Physics and Electronics Division; Subject: Responsibility for "Unidentified Flying Objects" (UFOBs). August 8, 1955.

Office of Special Projects, 1965–1970. Vol. 1. Washington, DC: CIA, 1973.

Orlov, Alexander. "The U-2 Program: A Russian Officer Remembers." *Studies in Intelligence* (Winter 1998–1999).

Palomares Summary Report. Kirtland Air Force Base, New Mexico: Field Command Defense Nuclear Agency Technology and Analysis Directorate, January 15, 1975.

Parangosky, John. "The Oxcart Story." *Studies in Intelligence* 26 (Summer 1982).

"Path to the F-117A Stealth Fighter: Section II—Have Blue." Advanced Development Programs, Lockheed Martin Aeronautics Company, n.d.

Pedlow, Gregory W., and Donald E. Welzenbach. *The Central Intelligence Agency and Overhead Reconnaissance: The U-2 and OXCART Programs, 1954–1974*. Washington, DC: Center for the Study of Intelligence, 1992.

Poteat, Gene. "Stealth, Countermeasures, and ELINT, 1960–1975: Some Beginnings of Information Warfare." *Studies in Intelligence* (1998).

"Project Crested Ice, the Thule Nuclear Accident (U) Volume 1." SAC Historical Study #113. History and Research Division, Headquarters Strategic Air Command, April 23, 1969.

"Proposed Operation Against Cuba, Top Secret (TS) #176622." CIA Top Secret, March 1961.

"Report of the Defense Science Board, 2008 Summer Study on Capability Surprise, Volume II: Supporting Papers." Washington, DC: Office of the Undersecretary of Defense for Acquisition, Technology, and Logistics, January 2010.

"Report on Conclusion of Powers Trial." USSR International Affairs, August 22, 1960; CIA approved for release, September 1985.

"Results of a Search for Records Concerning the 1947 Crash Near Roswell, New Mexico." GAO/NSIAD-95-187. General Accounting Office, July 1995.

Rogovin, Mitchell. *Three Mile Island, a Report to the Commissioners and to the Public*. Vol. I. Nuclear Regulatory Commission Special Inquiry Group, January 1980.

Rollins, Eugene M. "Nevada Test Site—Site Description," Oak Ridge Associated Universities TEAM, Dose Reconstruction Project for NIOSH, Document Number: ORAUT-TKBS-0008-2, Effective Date: 5/27/2008.

"Scientific Advisory Panel on Unidentified Flying Objects, 14–17 January 1953." Central Intelligence Agency.

Secretary of Defense, OSD Policy Files on JIOA and Paperclip, 1950, Box 1, Box

338, RG 330, National Archives, College Park, Maryland.

SHAEF [Supreme Headquarters Allied Expeditionary Force], Entry 13D, CIOS, Horten Tailless Aircraft, Item-25, RG 331. File No. XXIII-6, Box 92, 290/7/8/2, National Archives, College Park, Maryland.

Taube, L. J. *B-70 Aircraft Study, Final Report*. Vol. 1. SD 72-SH-0003, North American Rockwell, Space Division, April 1972.

Taylor, Leland B. *History of Air Force Atomic Cloud Sampling*. AFSC, Historical Publication Series 61-141-1. Air Force Special Weapons Center, Air Force Systems Command, January 1963.

Tenet, George J. "The U-2 Program: The DCI's Perspective." *Studies in Intelligence* (Winter 1998-99).

"Thirty and Thriving: The National Photographic Interpretation Center." Washington, DC: *Studies in Intelligence* (1991).

U.S. Air Force. "Biography: Major General Paul N. Bacalis," n.d.

_____. "Biography: Brigadier General Jack C. Ledford." Died Nov. 16, 2007.

_____. "Biography: Lieutenant General Robert Bond. Died April 26, 1984.

U.S. Air Force. Project Grudge and Blue Book Reports 1-12. Washington, DC: National Investigations Committee on Aerial Phenomena, 1968.

U.S. Air Force Air Materiel Command. "Unidentified Aerial Objects; Project Sign," No. F-TR 2274, IA, Records of the U.S. Air Force Commands, Activities and Organizations, Record Group 341, National Archives. Washington, DC, February 1949.

United States Army Intelligence and Security Command, "Horten Brothers/Operation Harass," regraded unclassified, 6 July 1994, CDR USAINS COM FO1/PO Auth para 1-603 DOD 5200.1R, 358 pages.

"United States Atomic Energy Commission, Annual Report to Congress for 1965." Washington, DC: United States Government Printing Office, 1965.

"United States Atomic Energy Commission, Annual Report to Congress for 1966." Washington, DC: United States Government Printing Office, 1966.

"United States Nuclear Tests July 1945 through September 1992." DOE/NV- 209-REV 15. Department of Energy. Nevada Office Operations, December 2000.

U.S. Congress, Office of Technology Assessment. *The Containment of Underground Nuclear Explosions*. OTA-ISC-414. Washington, DC: U.S. Government Printing Office, October 1989.

U.S. War Department, War Crimes Office, Judge Advocate General's Office, #770475.

Varenstov, S. "The Problem of Combat with the Nuclear Means of the Enemy and Its Solution." CIA, August 1961.

Vaughn, Harold. "Summary of Research of Rocket Programs." Sandia, SCTM34-59(51). Declassified Case No. 409.10, February 5, 1959.

Warner, Michael. "The CIA's Internal Probe of the Bay of Pigs Affair, Lessons Unlearned." *Studies in Intelligence* (Winter 1998-1999).

Weiss, Gus W. "The Life and Death of Cosmos 954." *Studies in Intelligence* (Spring 1978).

Welzenbach, Donald E. "Science and Technology: Origins of a Directorate. Killian and Land Influence." *Studies in Intelligence* (Summer 1986).

"Wernher Magnus Maximilian von Braun aka Freiherr von Braun," Department of Justice, FBI File 116-13038, 297 pages.

Wheelon, Albert D., and Sidney Graybeal. "Intelligence for the Space Race." *Studies in Intelligence* (Fall 1963).

White, M. G., and P. B. Dunaway. *Selected Environmental Plutonium Research Reports of the Nevada Applied Ecology Group, Plutonium Valley*. Vol. 2. Nevada: U.S. Department of Energy, June 1978.

Williams, Michael R. "Ground Test Facility for Propulsion and Power Modes of Nuclear Engine Operation." Savannah River National Laboratory, Department of Energy, 2004.

Wycoff, Runore C. "International Technology Corporation, Record of Technical Change, Area 25 R-MAD Decontamination Facility, Nevada Test Site, Nevada." Project/Job No. 799417.00050010. Division Director, Environmental Restoration Division, January 2000.

Articles

Absher, Kenneth Michael. "Mind-Sets and Missiles: A First Hand Account of the Cuban Missile Crisis." Strategic Studies Institute, United States Army War College, 2009.

Adams, Eric. "Rods from God: Space-launched Darts That Strike Like Meteors." *Popular Science* (June 1, 2004).

Alford, Matthew. "Steven Spielberg." *Cinema Papers* (1978).

Anderson, Jack. "US Heard Russians Chasing U-2." *Washington Post*, May 12, 1960.

"Atomic Tests: The Blast at Lop Nor." *Time* magazine, October 6, 1964.

Barrett, D. M. "Doing 'Tuesday Lunch' at Lyndon Johnson's White House: New Archival Evidence on Vietnam Decisionmaking." *Political Science and Politics* (1991).

Bergen, Peter, and Katherine Tiedemann. "The Drone War: Are Predators Our Best Weapon or Worst Enemy." *New Republic*, June 3, 2009.

_____. "The Year of the Drone: An Analysis of U.S. Drone Strikes in Pakistan, 2004-2009." *NewAmerica Foundation*, February 24, 2010.

Black, Edwin. "Eugenics and the Nazis: The California Connection." *San Francisco Chronicle*, November 9, 2003.

Burrows, William E. "How the Skunk Works Works." *Air and Space* (April 1994).

_____. "The Oxcart Cometh." *Air and Space* (February 1999).

"Congress Reassured on Space Visits." *New York Times*, April 6, 1966.

Cook, Joan. "Kenneth Germeshausen, 83, Dies; Was Nuclear and Radar Pioneer." *New York Times*, August 21, 1990.

Corea, Gordon. "Mystery of Lost US Nuclear Bomb." BBC News, November 10, 2008.

"Cosmos 954: An Ugly Death." *Time* magazine, February 6, 1978.

Darrach, H. B., and Robert Ginna. "Have We Visitors from Space?" *Life* magazine, April 7, 1952.

Edwards, Travis. "First MQ-9 Reaper Makes Its Home on Nevada Flightline." *U.S. Air*

- Eger, Christopher. "Secret MiGs flown by the USAF: The US Flew Dozens of MiG Fighters in a Classified Cold War Project." *Air Combat Suite 101*, April 9, 2007.
- Epstein, Edward Jay, and Susana Duncan. "The War of the Moles." *New York* 11 (January/February 27, 1978).
- Fulghum, David A. "MiGs in Nevada." *Aviation Week and Space Technology*, November 27, 2006.
- Garamone, Jim. "Navy to Shoot Down Malfunctioning Satellite." American Forces Press Service, February 14, 2008.
- _____. "Predator Demonstrates Worth Over Kosovo." American Forces Press Service, September 21, 1999.
- Geller, Doran. "Inside the Israeli Secret Service: A History of Its Growth and Missions." *Jewish Virtual Library*, n.d.
- Griggs, Brandon. "Could Moon Landings Have Been Faked? Some Still Think So." CNN, July 17, 2009.
- Grundberg, Andy. "H. E. Edgerton, 86, Dies, Invented Electronic Flash." *New York Times*, January 5, 1990.
- Gup, Ted. "The Ultimate Congressional Hideaway." *Washington Post*, May 31, 1992.
- Hambling, David. "Mysteries Surround Afghanistan's Stealth Drone." *Wired*, Danger Room Blog, December 4, 2009.
- Hawkes, Terrence. "William Empson's Influence of the CIA: Counterintelligence, Argued James Angleton, Called for the Kind of Practical Criticism He Learned at Yale." *London Times Literary Supplement*, June 10, 2009.
- Hayes, Ron. "H-bomb Incident Crippled Pilot's Career." *Palm Beach Post*, January 17, 2007.
- Hersh, Seymour M. "Manhunt: The Bush Administration's New Strategy in the War Against Terrorism." *New Yorker*, December 23, 2002.
- Hoffman, Carl. "China's Space Threat: How Missiles Could Target U.S. Satellites." *Popular Mechanics* (July 2007).
- Hoffman, Fred S. "Allies Help Pentagon Obtain Soviet Arms." Associated Press, May 7, 1984.
- Hosenball, Mark, and Evan Thomas. "The Opening Shot." *Newsweek*, November 18, 2002.
- Hutcheson, John. "Balad Predator Strikes Insurgents Placing Roadside Bomb Near Balad." *Red Tail Flyer*, 332nd Air Expeditionary Wing, Public Affairs, Balad Air Base, Iraq, March 31, 2006.
- Jacobsen, Annie. "The Road to Area 51." *Los Angeles Times Magazine*, April 5, 2009.
- Jelinek, Pauline. "U.S. Releases Nazi Papers." Associated Press, November 2, 1999.
- "John Parangosky Dies; Helped Manage Spy Satellite System." *Washington Post*, September 26, 2004.
- Kirschbaum, Erik. "Cloning Wakes German Memories of Nazi Master Race." Reuters, February 27, 1997.

- Lake, Anthony. "Lying Around Washington." *Foreign Policy* 2 (Spring 1971).
- Mahnaimi, Uzi. "Stolen Iraqi Jet Helped Israel Win Six-Day War." *Sunday Times of London*, June 3, 2007.
- May, James. "Riding the Caspian Sea Monster." *BBC News magazine*, September 27, 2008.
- Nelson, Robert. "Low-Yield Earth-Penetrating Nuclear Weapons." *Journal of the Federation of American Scientists* 54 (January/February 2001).
- Pincus, Walter. "Yuri I. Nosenko, KGB Agent Who Defected to the U.S." *Washington Post*, August 27, 2008.
- "Rise of the Machines." ArmyTechnology.com, May 21, 2008.
- Robarge, David S. "Richard Helms: The Intelligence Professional Personified." *Studies in Intelligence*, April 14, 2007.
- Sanger, David E., and Thom Shanker. "White House Is Rethinking Nuclear Policy." *New York Times*, February 28, 2010.
- Smucker, Philip. "The Intrigue Behind the Drone Strikes." *Christian Science Monitor*, November 12, 2002.
- "Stalin UFOs," Pravda.ru, November 19, 2002. <http://english.pravda.ru/news/russia/19-11-2002/14700-0/#>, accessed January 2, 2011.
- Thomas, Evan. "Wayward Spy." *Civilization* (September–October 1995).
- Tolip. "Black Ops: American Pilots Flying Russian Aircraft During the Cold War." MilitaryHeat.com, October 4, 2007.
- "U.S. Dumps Bunker Buster or Not?" *Jane's Defence*, November 17, 2005.
- "U.S. Missile Strike Kills al Qaeda Chief," CNN, November 5, 2002.
- Weber, Bruce. "Dina Babbitt, Artist at Auschwitz, Is Dead at 86." *New York Times*, August 1, 2009.
- Welsome, Eileen. "The Plutonium Files: America's Secret Medical Experiments in the Cold War." *Albuquerque Tribune*, November 1993.
- Whitehouse, David. "NASA Pulls Moon Hoax Book." BBC News, November 8, 2002.
- Wilber, Del Quentin. "Hell Hath a Jury." *Washington Post*, October 8, 2009.
- Winthrop, Thornton. "Science Discovers Real Frankenstein." *Boston Herald*, June 4, 1939.
- Wolverton, Mark. "Into the Mushroom Cloud." *Air and Space magazine*, August 1, 2009.

Oral Histories

Oral history interview with Richard M. Bissell Jr. by Theodore A. Wilson and Richard D. McKinzie, East Hartford, Connecticut, July 9, 1971 (Harry S. Truman Library and Museum).

Oral history interview with Robert Thomas, Los Alamos National Laboratory, Headquarters DOE, 09/22/81. Box No. JNSOO36 I-3. National Radiobiology Archives Project.

Oral history interview with Air Force Colonel John Pickering, for the Advisory

Committee on Human Radiation Experiments, by John Harbett and Gil Whittemore, New Mexico, November 2, 1994.

Oral history interview with Al O'Donnell, by Colleen M. Beck and Hilary L. Green. Desert Research Institute, University of Nevada, 2004.

Oral history interview with Roger Andersen by Mary Palevsky. Nevada Test Site Oral History Project, University of Nevada, Las Vegas, September 20, 2005.

Oral history interview with T. D. Barnes by Mary Palevsky. Nevada Test Site Oral History Project, University of Nevada, Las Vegas, January 12, 2007.

Oral history: Conversations with Colonel Hervey Stockman, by Ann Paden and Earl Haney, 2004–2005.

Web Sites

- Central Intelligence Agency archives (<http://www.foia.cia.gov/>) Central Intelligence Agency archives
- Department of Energy archives (<http://www.osti.gov/opennet/index.jsp>)
- U.S. Air Force Archives (<http://www.archives.gov/research/guide-fed-records/groups/342.html>)
- G-2 Intelligence Archives (<http://www.dami.army.pentagon.mil/>)
- Office of the Deputy Assistant to the Secretary of Defense for Nuclear Matters (<http://www.acq.osd.mil/ncbdp/nm/nuclearchronology1.html>)
- The National Security Archive (<http://www.gwu.edu/~nsarchiv/>)
- Federation of American Scientists (<http://www.fas.org/>)
- GlobalSecurity.org (<http://www.globalsecurity.org/>)
- Roadrunners Internationale (<http://roadrunnersinternationale.com/>)
- The Long War Journal (<http://www.longwarjournal.org/>)
- JT3 NTTR—Nevada Test and Training Range (http://www.jt3.com/ne_range.asp)

Documentary Films and Television

The Day After Trinity, 1981.

Return with Honor: American Experience, 1999.

Forgiving Dr. Mengele, 2006.

The Search for Dr. Mengele, 1985.

Vietnam: A Television History, PBS, 1983.

America's Atomic Bomb Tests, 1997.

Hearts and Minds, 1974.

The Nuremberg Trials: American Experience, 2005.

Radio Bikini, 1987.

Atomic Journeys: Welcome to Ground Zero, 2000.

Modern Marvels: The Manhattan Project, History Channel, 2002.

The Fog of War: Eleven Lessons from the Life of Robert S. McNamara, 2003.

The Living Weapon: American Experience, 2006.

"Peter Jennings Reporting: UFOs in American History." ABC, February 24, 2005.

Walter Cronkite. "UFO: Friend, Foe or Fantasy?" CBS News, May 10, 1966.



Groom Lake, Nevada, in 1917. Once little more than a dry lake bed in the southern Nevada desert, what is now known as Area 51 has become the most secretive military facility in the world. (*Special Collections, University of Nevada–Reno*)



From up on top of the old Groom Mine in 1917, looking down. Not until the 1950s would the federal government take over the dry lake bed and adjacent land. (*Special Collections, University of Nevada–Reno*)



Vannevar Bush, age eighty, receives the Atomic Pioneer Award from President Nixon at a White House ceremony in 1970. Other recipients are (from left to right) Glenn T. Seaborg, the man who co-discovered plutonium; James B. Conant of the National Defense Research Research Committee; and General Leslie R. Groves, who was the commander of the Manhattan Project but took orders from Vannevar Bush. (*U.S. Department of Energy*)



Colonel Richard S. Leghorn during Operation Crossroads, at Bikini Atoll in the Marshall Islands, July 1946. Leghorn led the mission to photograph the nuclear explosions from the air, and he is credited with the concept of "overhead," which led to spy planes and satellites. (*Collection of Richard S. Leghorn/Army Air Forces*)



The Baker bomb at Operation Crossroads, July 25, 1946, was 21 kilotons, one and a half times more powerful than the bomb dropped on Hiroshima. Baker's underwater fireball produced a "chimney" of radioactive water 6,000 feet tall and 2,000 feet wide.

Stalin had spies at the event. (*Library of Congress*)



The black device attached to this balloon in Area 9 of the Nevada Test Site is a 74-kiloton atomic bomb code-named Hood, the largest atmospheric nuclear weapon ever exploded in the United States. Standing on a ladder minutes before this photograph was taken on July 5, 1957, Al O'Donnell put the final touches on the bomb's firing system. Area 51 is over the hill to the right of the device. (*Collection of Alfred O'Donnell/National Nuclear Security Administration*)



A column of radioactive smoke rises from the Hood bomb. To the right of the mushroom stem the landscape can be seen on fire. Approximately one hour after the bomb went off, security guard Richard Mingus drove through ground zero to set up a guard post at the Area 51 guard gate, directly over the burning hills. (*National Nuclear Security Administration*)



In Area 12 of the Nevada Test Site, workmen enter an underground atomic bomb tunnel through its mouth, summer 1957. (*National Nuclear Security Administration*)



Operation Paperclip scientists at Fort Bliss, Texas, in 1946. Until 1945, these men worked for Adolf Hitler, but as soon as the war ended these "rare minds" began working for the American military and various intelligence organizations, the details of which remain largely classified. Rocket scientist Wernher von Braun is in the front row, seventh from the right with his hand in his pocket. (*National Aeronautics and Space Administration*)

Nazi Dr. Walther Riedel after his capture by the U.S. Army in 1945. Unsmiling in this never-before-published file photograph, Riedel is missing teeth, which had been knocked out by U.S. soldiers while questioning him about his role in Hitler's "bacteria bomb." *(National Archives)*



Alleged to be Stalin's secret UFO study team are (standing left to right) Sergei Korolev, chief missile designer and inventor of Sputnik; Igor Kurchatov, father of Russia's atomic bomb; and Mstislav Keldysh, mathematician, theoretician, and space pioneer.
(Collection of Museum of M. V. Keldysh, Russia)



This photograph of the all-wing Horten V appeared in the Secret G-2 Combined Intelligence Objective Sub-Committee report "Horten Tailless Aircraft," dated May 1945.
(National Archives)



The 1945 G-2 report on the Horten brothers airplanes included this photograph of the unusually shaped Parabola. Two years later, after the crash of a foreign disc-shaped aircraft in New Mexico, in July 1947, the Counter Intelligence Corps embarked on a manhunt across Western Europe to locate the Horten brothers and their so-called flying disc. (*National Archives*)



A German-designed V-2 rocket is hoisted up onto a U.S. Army test stand at the White Sands Proving Ground, in New Mexico, on January 1, 1947. Five months later one of the V-2s went off course. No one was killed, but the German Paperclip scientists in charge of the rocket launch were put under investigation. (*NASA/Marshall Space Flight Center*)



Part of a U-2 coming out of a transport airplane at Area 51 in 1955. The CIA's first spy plane was so secret that Air Force pilots transporting it to Area 51, in pieces inside larger airplanes, would fly to a set of coordinates over the Mojave Desert and contact a UHF frequency called Sage Control for orders. Only when the aircraft was a few hundred feet off the ground would runway lights flash on. (*Laughlin Heritage Foundation/CIA*)



Early U-2s on the flight line at Area 51 in 1956, a worker standing on a wing. (*Laughlin Heritage Foundation/CIA*)



Trailer Area As Seen From Tower. Paved Flight Strip In Background.

Trailers at Area 51 where U-2 pilots like Hervey Stockman and Tony Bevacqua slept while learning how to fly the CIA's first spy plane. (*Laughlin Heritage Foundation/CIA*)



Over-all Shot Of Watertown Area From Hills Shooting Northeast.

A rare perspective on Area 51 looking northeast in 1955. The triangular mountain peak (just right of center in the far distance) is Tikaboo Peak, the single remaining location from where the curious can catch a faraway glimpse of Area 51. (*Laughlin Heritage Foundation/CIA*)



Hervey Stockman left Princeton University to fly with the U.S. Army Air Corps during World War II. In 1956, he was the first man to fly over the Soviet Union in a U-2. He flew 310 combat missions in three wars. In June 1967 he was involved in a midair crash over North Vietnam and became a POW for nearly six years. (*Collection of Colonel Hervey S. Stockman*)



Headquarters Building At Watertown. Flag At Half Mast Following Sieker Crash.

After the tragic death of U-2 pilot Robert Sieker on April 4, 1957, the flag at Area 51 was flown at half-mast. (*Laughlin Heritage Foundation/CIA*)



The U-2 aloft, circa 1965. All indicators of ownership, including its former NACA designation, have been removed. (*Collection of Lockheed Martin*)



A rare look at Building 82, inside the fabled Lockheed Skunk Works, circa 1957. The world's first anechoic chamber can be seen at the far rear of the room. Shoe-sized models of the CIA's spy planes would be hung from the ceiling and tested. (*Collection of Lockheed Martin*)



Area 13 sits inside Area 51 and was contaminated with plutonium in a 1957 "dirty bomb" test. This photograph, part of a set never released publicly before, was taken during a 1960 Atomic Energy Commission investigation into theft of a "hot" item stored there. After the dirty bomb test, someone had cut the fence, ignored the "Warning Alpha Contamination" hazard signs, and stolen a 1952 model pickup truck that was contaminated with plutonium and scheduled for burial in a hazardous waste pit. (*National Nuclear Security Administration*)



President Kennedy touring the NERVA nuclear facility at Area 25. The plan was to build a nuclear-powered rocket ship to take men to Mars in the astonishingly short time frame of 124 days. (*Department of Energy*)



1494-8

While working on the nuclear space ship program, T. D. Barnes walked to work each day through this 1,150-foot-long underground tunnel below Area 25. (*Department of Energy*)



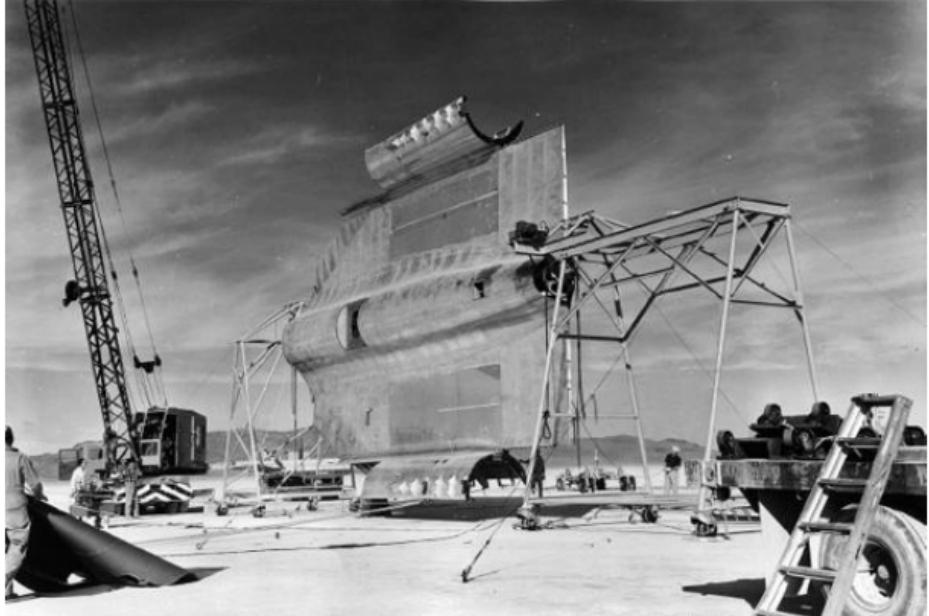
The Nuclear Rocket Test Facility at Jackass Flats, located in Area 25, seen here from above sometime in the 1960s. Three test cells (ETS-1, E-MAD, and R-MAD) were connected by a remote-controlled railroad that transported the highly radioactive reactor between them. (*Department of Energy*)



The engine for the Mars rocket can be seen at the center of the Engine Test Stand-1, positioned upside down to prevent it from taking off during testing. Operating at 3680.6 degrees Fahrenheit meant the nuclear reactor inside the engine needed to be cooled down by liquid hydrogen, contained in white industrial dewars seen at right. (*Department of Energy*)



Moving the first A-12 to Area 51, over the Cajon Pass in California. The transport crate had been disguised to look like a generic wide load. (CIA)



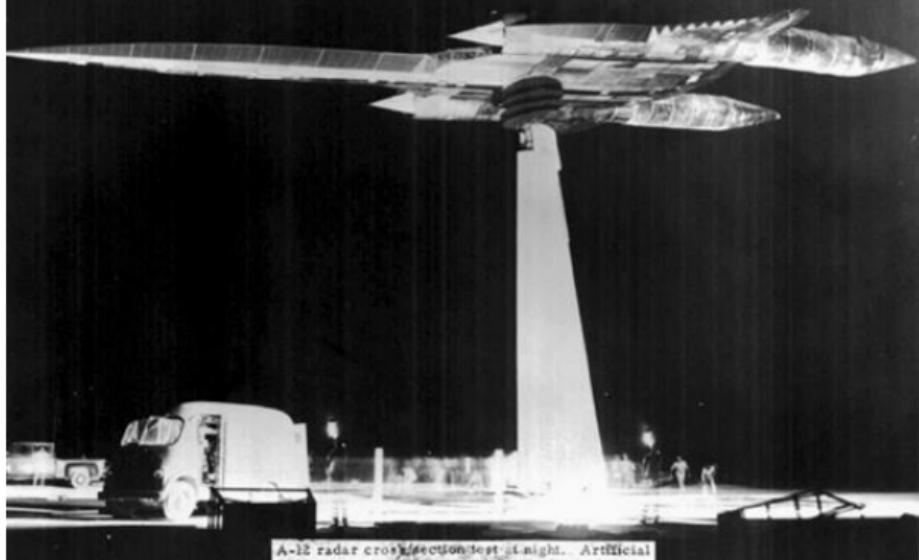
A full-scale mock-up of the Oxcart being assembled at Area 51 in 1959, even before the CIA contract was officially secured. The facility had been deserted after nuclear fallout shuttered the place in the summer of 1957. These Lockheed Skunk Workers were among the earliest returnees. (*Collection of Roadrunners Internationale/CIA*)



Setting up the legendary Area 51 pylon, or radar test pole. The radar antennas, manned and monitored by EG&G, were located a mile away from the pole. (*Collection of Roadrunners Internationale/CIA*)



Less than eight feet of the fifty-five-foot-long pole is visible here. The rest of the pole is underground, below a concrete pad, and rises up from an underground chamber built inside the desert floor. (*Collection of Roadrunners Internationale/CIA*)



A-12 radar cross section test at night. Artificial plumes attached simulating engine exhaust.

Working at night meant less of a chance of being surveilled by Soviet spy satellites. "Getting an aircraft up on the radar test pole took eighteen minutes. It took another eighteen minutes to get it back down," says Ed Lovick. "That left only a set amount of time to shoot radar at it and take data recordings." As soon as technicians were done, they took the aircraft down and whisked it away into its hangar. (*Collection of Roadrunners Internationale/CIA*)



Area 51 as seen from the air, circa 1964. This rare photograph has never been published before. (*Collection of Roadrunners Internationale*)



Yucca Flat, which spans several Areas at the Nevada Test Site, is one of the most bombed-out places on earth. In this photo taken during the winter months from a helicopter above Area 10, the Sedan Crater can be seen in the forefront. A 104-kiloton bomb was buried at a depth of 635 feet, and its detonation produced a crater 1,280 feet wide and 320 feet deep, moving 12 million tons of radioactive dirt in an instant and creating a hole that can be seen from space. (*National Nuclear Security Administration*)



Ed Lovick, at Skunk Works in the mid-1960s, with the waveguide, as he works to reduce the radar cross section for the A-12 to meet the CIA's demands. (*Collection of Edward Lovick/Lockheed Martin*)



A-12 ejection-seat test on Groom Lake's dry lake bed. (*Collection of Roadrunners Internationale/CIA*)



The A-12 Oxcart hidden behind a barrier at Area 51. It took 2,400 Lockheed Skunk Works machinists and mechanics to get a fleet of fifteen ready for the CIA. Visible on either side of the aircraft are the uniquely adjustable inlet cones that regulated airflow and allowed the CIA spy plane to cruise in afterburner and reach peak speeds of Mach 3.29 by May 1965. (*Lockheed Martin*)



Richard Bissell, known best for his role in the Bay of Pigs fiasco, was the CIA officer who built Area 51 from the ground up. In this rare photograph, he shakes hands with CIA pilot Louis Schalk after the first flight of the A-12 Oxcart in April 1962. Bissell had already resigned. (*Lockheed Martin*)



The A-12 Oxcart lands on the runway at Area 51, April 1962. (*Collection of Roadrunners Internationale/CIA*)



Charlie Trapp was chief of Rescue and Survival at Area 51 from 1962 to 1967. It was in this H-43B helicopter that Trapp found the body of Oxcart pilot Walt Ray and his airplane after a fatal crash. Trapp received the Air Medal for the twenty-five-day operation.
(Collection of Charles E. Trapp)



CIA pilot Ken Collins, in full flight gear, hanging above the Area 51 swimming pool during ocean-survival training circa 1965. Charlie Trapp sits on the diving board with a technician, name unknown. (*Collection of Charles E. Trapp Jr.*)



Radar station at the top of Bald Mountain. (*Collection of Charles E. Trapp Jr.*)



The A-12 trainer during a test flight. Note the two canopies, one for the instructor pilot and another for the trainee. The A-12 trainer aircraft could not reach the upper Mach numbers; CIA pilots experienced that remarkable feat on their own. (CIA)



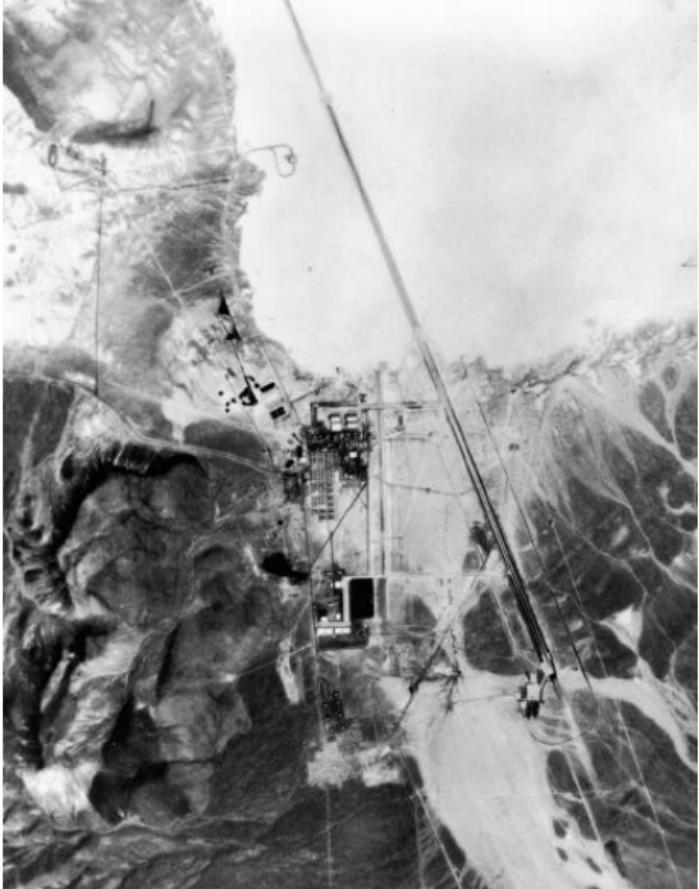
This CIA project, code-named Tagboard, was an Oxcart with a Mach 3 drone on its back, circa 1965. To avoid confusion with the A-12, the mother ship was designated M-21 (as in "mother") and the drone was designated D-21 (as in "daughter"). (*Collection of Lockheed Martin*)



Former U-2 spy plane pilot Tony Bevacqua flies over Hanoi in the fabled SR-71 Blackbird, the Air Force variant of the A-12 Oxcart. This reconnaissance photograph shows an SA-2 missile being fired at Bevacqua from a ground station below. It was the first time an SR-71 was ever fired upon. July 26, 1968. (*Collection of Tony Bevacqua/U.S. Air Force*)



Colonel Hugh "Slip" Slater served as commander of Area 51 during the Oxcart program. Before he was put in charge of Project Oxcart, he served as commander for the CIA's Black Cat U-2 Squadron, which flew covert espionage missions over China. Here he is with the YF-12, the attack version of the A-12 Oxcart, circa 1971. (*Collection of Colonel Hugh Slater/U.S. Air Force*)



Area 51 as seen from above in 1968. (U.S. Geological Survey/Federation of American Scientists)



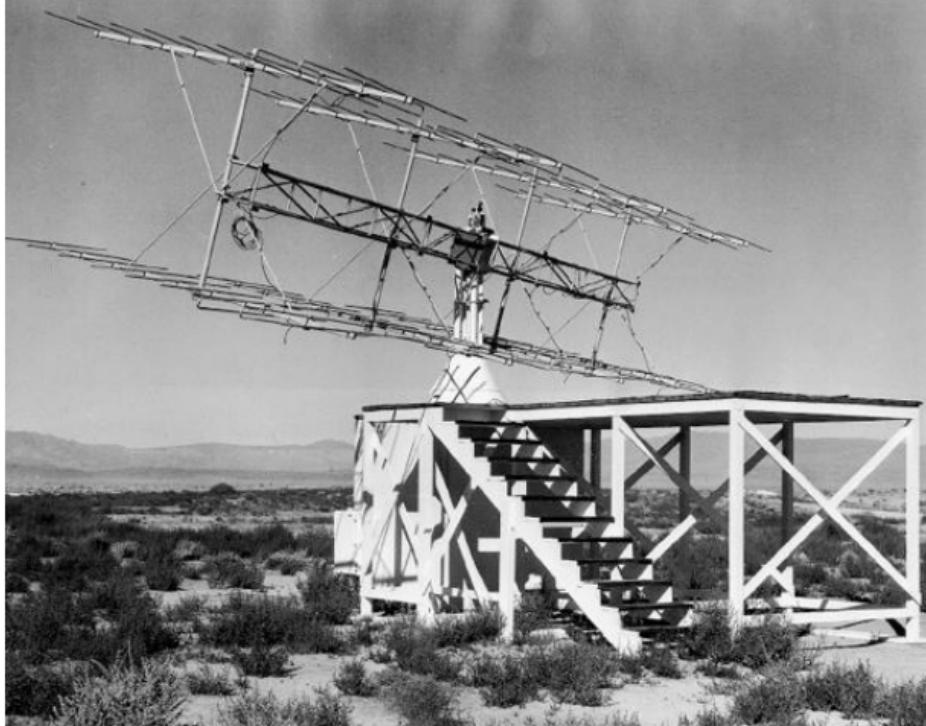
Frank Murray started out flying chase on Project Oxcart in the F-101 Voodoo. After CIA pilot Walt Ray was killed outside Area 51 during testing, General Ledford asked Murray to take Ray's place. Here Murray is on Kadena, Okinawa, before a Black Shield mission over North Vietnam. (*Collection of Frank Murray*)



Jack Weeks and Ken Collins preparing for a Black Shield mission over North Vietnam, inside the command center on Kadena in 1968. A few months later Weeks would be presumed dead; no trace of the A-12 airplane or his body was ever found.
(Collection of Ken Collins)



Area 51 radars, circa 1968. T. D. Barnes and his fellow EG&G Special Project engineers worked in the building at left. To pass the time when the Soviets pinned them down with spy satellites, they pulled pranks, like painting odd-shaped aircraft on the tarmac and heating the images up with hair dryers to add a heat signature. (*Collection of Thornton D. Barnes/Roadrunners Internationale*)



Radar antennae on the outskirts of Area 51, 1968. (*Collection of Thornton D. Barnes/Roadrunners Internationale*)



T. D. Barnes, age nineteen, serving in Korea in 1956. A photo of his new bride, Doris, sits on his desk in this photograph, as it still does in 2011. Barnes, a radar expert, started working for the CIA in 1958. (*Collection of Thornton D. Barnes*)



The Beatty High Range, where radar expert T. D. Barnes worked for joint NASA/CIA projects prior to his transfer to Area 51. From Beatty, Barnes could track airplanes over at Groom Lake, sixty miles as the crow flies. (NASA)



A Russian MiG 21 inside a hangar at Area 51. The CIA borrowed one from the Mossad, reverse engineered it, and then flew it in mock air battles over the Nevada desert. This secret program, which took place in the winter of 1968, was called Operation Have Doughnut and gave birth to the Navy's fabled Top Gun program. (*Collection of Roadrunners Internationale/U.S. Air Force*)



Apollo astronauts trained on the subsidence craters at the Nevada Test Site before they went to the moon. Ernest "Ernie" Williams was their tour guide; he helped CIA engineers locate the original water spring at Area 51. (*Department of Energy*)



Astronauts study the geology on the atomic craters while carrying mock-ups of space backpacks and other gear. (*Department of Energy*)



Richard Mingus worked security at Area 51 and the Nevada Test Site for decades. He is seen here during weapons training in 1979. (*Collection of Richard Mingus/National Nuclear Security Administration*)



A Predator drone on the tarmac at Creech Air Force Base, Nevada, June 2008.

Located just thirty miles south of Area 51, the airstrip here was formerly called Indian Springs. It is where atomic sampling pilots once trained to fly through mushroom clouds; where Dr. Edward Teller, "father of the H-bomb," used to land before atomic bomb tests; and where Bob Lazar says he was taken and interrogated after getting caught trespassing on Groom Lake Road. (*U.S. Air Force/Steve Huckvale*)

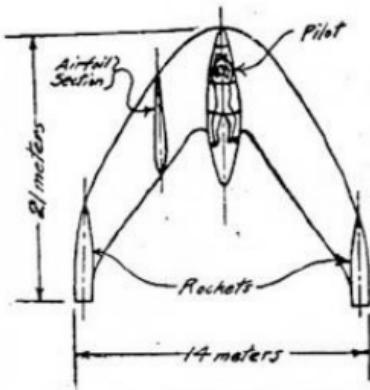


From Creech Air Force Base, Nevada, U.S. Air Force pilots fly drones over Iraq and Afghanistan using remote control. (*U.S. Air Force/author collection*)



Site of former EG&G offices on the edge of downtown Las Vegas as it looked in 2009.
(Author collection)

~~SECRET~~
WDCB, Eq., CIC Region I, File: I-1606, Subj: HORTEN, Reimer and Walter
(brothers), Re: Operation HARASS, 6 January 1948.



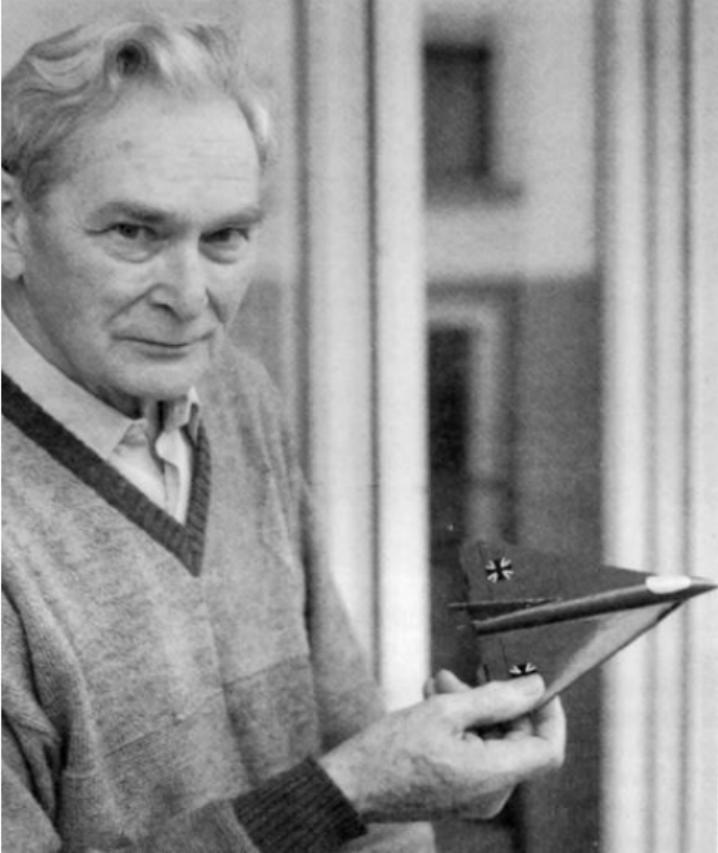
Plan View of HORTEN
Airplane

Inc 121

~~SECRET~~
Exhibit A

REGRADED UNCLASSIFIED
ON 6 JUL 1994
BY CDR USAINSCOM F01-PO
AUTH Para 1-603 DOD 5200.1R

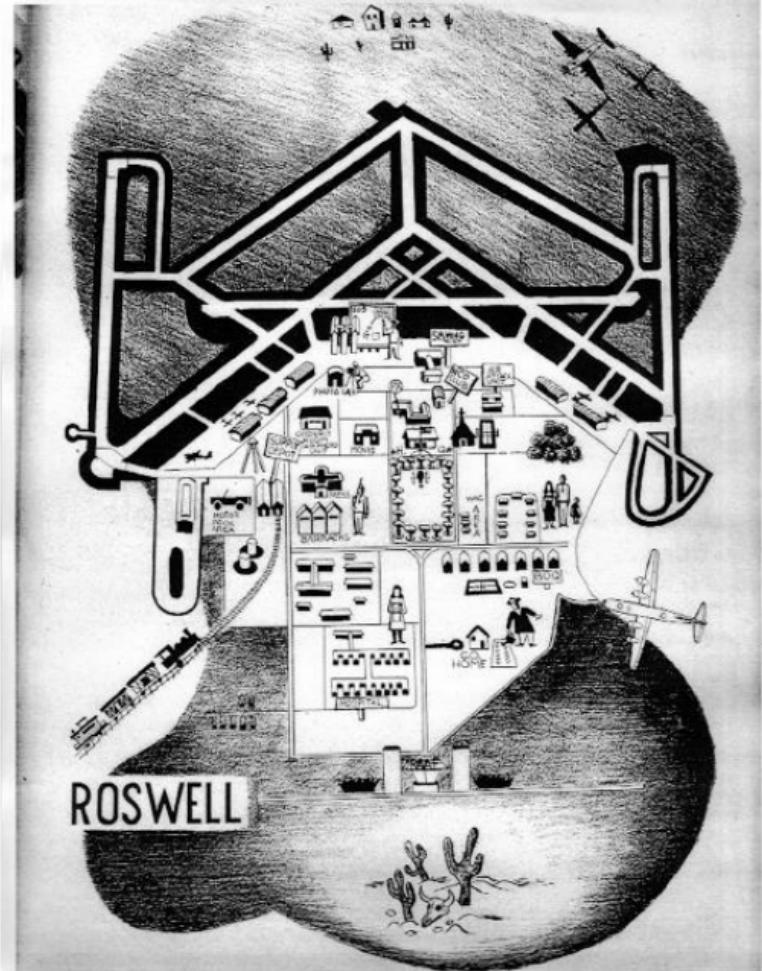
Operation Harass and the search for the Horten brothers netted this sketch of a possible advanced Horten aircraft design. (Department of Defense)



Walter Horten holding a scale model of the Horten 10B in Baden-Baden, Germany, in 1987. (*Collection of David Myhra*)



Reimar Horten in Argentina, 1985. (*Collection of David Myhra*)



The Operation Crossroads 1946 commemorative yearbook depicts the Roswell Army Air Base as the military facility from which the opening shot in the Cold War was fired.
(Collection of Richard S. Leghorn/Army Air Forces)

Contents

[Front Cover Image](#)

[Welcome](#)

[Dedication](#)

[Epigraph](#)

[Prologue: The Secret City](#)

[Chapter 1 The Riddle of Area 51](#)

[Chapter 2 Imagine a War of the Worlds](#)

[Chapter 3 The Secret Base](#)

[Chapter 4 The Seeds of a Conspiracy](#)

[Chapter 5 The Need-to-Know](#)

[Chapter 6 Atomic Accidents](#)

[Chapter 7 From Ghost Town to Boomtown](#)

[Chapter 8 Cat and Mouse Becomes Downfall](#)

[Chapter 9 The Base Builds Back Up](#)

[Chapter 10 Wizards of Science, Technology, and Diplomacy](#)

[Chapter 11 What Airplane?](#)

[Chapter 12 Covering Up the Cover-Up](#)

[Chapter 13 Dull, Dirty, and Dangerous Requires Drones](#)

[Chapter 14 Drama in the Desert](#)

[Chapter 15 The Ultimate Boys' Club](#)

[Chapter 16 Operation Black Shield and the Secret History of the USS Pueblo](#)

[Chapter 17 The MiGs of Area 51](#)

[Chapter 18 Meltdown](#)

[Chapter 19 The Lunar-Landing Conspiracy and Other Legends of Area 51](#)

[Chapter 20 From Camera Bays to Weapons Bays, the Air Force Takes Control](#)

[Chapter 21 Revelation](#)

[Epilogue](#)

[Acknowledgments](#)

[Notes](#)

[Author Interviews and Bibliography](#)

[Books and Monographs](#)

[Photo Inserts](#)

[About the Author](#)

[Copyright](#)

ABOUT THE AUTHOR

Annie Jacobsen is a contributing editor at the *Los Angeles Times Magazine* and an investigative reporter whose work has also appeared in the *National Review* and the *Dallas Morning News*. Her two-part series "The Road to Area 51" in the *Los Angeles Times Magazine* was widely read. A graduate of Princeton University, Annie Jacobsen lives in Los Angeles with her husband and two sons.

Copyright

Copyright © 2011 by Anne M. Jacobsen

All rights reserved. Except as permitted under the U.S. Copyright Act of 1976, no part of this publication may be reproduced, distributed, or transmitted in any form or by any means, or stored in a database or retrieval system, without the prior written permission of the publisher.

Little, Brown and Company
Hachette Book Group
237 Park Avenue
New York, NY 10017

Visit our website at www.HachetteBookGroup.com.

www.twitter.com/littlebrown.

First eBook Edition: May 2011

Little, Brown and Company is a division of Hachette Book Group, Inc. The Little, Brown name and logo are trademarks of Hachette Book Group, Inc.

The publisher is not responsible for websites (or their content) that are not owned by the publisher.

ISBN: 978-0-316-19385-6

AREA 51

AN UNCENSORED

HISTORY OF AMERICA'S

TOP SECRET
MILITARY BASE

ANNIE JACOBSEN

"Carl Sagan once spoke of the need to balance the scientific method with pure, unadulterated wonder. Scott Alan Roberts picks up that mantle by examining the Nephilim, the hybrid offspring of the intercourse between human women and ancient extraterrestrials. If only for just a moment, kick out the props of science and religion and let Scott take you to that place where sometimes the questions tell us far more than the answers."

—GEORGE NOORY,
COAST TO COAST AM

THE RISE AND FALL OF THE NEPHILIM

THE UNTOLD STORY OF
FALLEN ANGELS,
GIANTS ON THE EARTH,
AND THEIR
EXTRATERRESTRIAL ORIGINS

Scott Alan Roberts

FOREWORD BY CRAIG HINES, AUTHOR OF GATEWAY OF THE GODS



"Carl Sagan once spoke of the need to balance the scientific method with pure, unadulterated wonder. Scott Alan Roberts picks up that mantle by examining the Nephilim, the hybrid offspring of the intercourse between human women and ancient extraterrestrials. If only for just a moment, kick out the props of science and religion and let Scott take you to that place where sometimes the questions tell us far more than the answers."

GEORGE NOORY,
COAST TO COAST AM

THE
RISE
AND
FALL
OF
THE
NEPHILIM

THE UNTOLD STORY OF
FALLEN ANGELS,
GIANTS ON THE EARTH,
AND THEIR
EXTRATERRESTRIAL ORIGINS

Scott Alan Roberts

FOREWORD BY CRAIG HINES, AUTHOR OF GATEWAY OF THE GODS



The Rise and Fall of the NEPHILIM

The Untold Story of Fallen Angels,
Giants on the Earth, and Their
Extraterrestrial Origins

SCOTT ALAN ROBERTS



NEW PAGE BOOKS
A division of The Career Press, Inc.
Pompton Plains, NJ

Copyright © 2012 by Scott Alan Roberts

All rights reserved under the Pan-American and International Copyright Conventions. This book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form or by any means electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system now known or hereafter invented, without written permission from the publisher, The Career Press.

THE RISE AND FALL OF THE NEPHILIM

EDITED BY JODI BRANDON

TYPESET BY EILEEN MUNSON

Cover design by Scott Alan Roberts

Printed in the U.S.A.

To order this title, please call toll-free 1-800-CAREER-1 (NJ and Canada: 201-848-0310) to order using VISA or MasterCard, or for further information on books from Career Press.



The Career Press, Inc.
220 West Parkway, Unit 12
Pompton Plains, NJ 07444
www.careerpress.com
www.newpagebooks.com

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Roberts, Scott Alan.

The rise and fall of the Nephilim : the untold story of fallen angels, giants on earth, and their extraterrestrial origins / by

Scott Alan Roberts.

p. cm.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 978-1-60163-197-8—ISBN 978-1-60163-629-4 (ebook) 1. Giants-Miscellanea. 2.

Angels—Miscellanea.. 3.

Civilization, Ancient-Extraterrestrial influences. 4. Ethiopic book of Enoch-Criticism, interpretation, etc. 5. Bible. O.T.

Genesis—Criticism, interpretation, etc. I. Title.

BF1999.R5495 2012

001.94—dc23

2011042616

Dedication

For Raini.

*Thanks for loving me through the process
and putting up with
my vacant pillow
on those dark, late nights
when the Muse came calling.*

Acknowledgments

Two things I learned while writing this book: One is that it is far less daunting *writing* a book than it is *completing* a book. And two, the process itself would be much less fraught with distraction and delay were my office located *outside* my home. And on the heels of having said that, I want to thank my wife, Raini, who did everything in her power to help keep the process streamlined, while wrangling our toddler son, Flynn. I want to thank her for all the cups of coffee and meals she brought to me here at my desk while I stared at this computer screen and tapped away at the keyboard. That's love. Her burgeoning pregnancy swelled during the writing of this book, and we watched the baby girl kick as I read and re-read and re-re-read this book out loud to her. Without Raini, this monumental task would have been far less enjoyable a process, and I want to express how happy I am that she was here.

My dear friend Marie D. Jones, a well-established author, has not only been a friend, but a great sounding board. It was Marie who saw my manuscript before it was really even a manuscript at all, and encouraged me to pursue it to its present form. She has been a great help, listening to my woes, worries, caterwauling, excitements, and downright exhausted frustrations. I want to thank her for reading, critiquing, and encouraging. Without her, this book would not be a reality.

Craig Hines is a true friend and a grossly out-of-proportion inspiration. From the day we first met, we have engaged in many conversations fraught with philosophy, theology, cosmology, and just about every “-ology” in between. He is a true scholar and has been an invaluable source and encouragement as I wrote this book.

Micah Hanks of the GralienReport.com has been a friend who has kept the fire burning beneath my feet. There were times I seriously considering quitting, but he read the early manuscript and was an uplifting source of encouragement. Thanks for being there, Micah.

Dr. Charles Aling, while you may not agree with everything I have written in this book, I want to thank you for being the very first person who ever instilled in me a love of biblical mysteries and archaeology. From the very first time you sat down with me in the crowded narthex of our church, way back when I was 12 years old and doing a report on the Pharaoh of the Exodus, you have always been willing to be my consultant, my seminary professor, and now my friend. Thank you for the irreplaceable spot you hold in my heart and mind. And thank you for instilling in me the love of history.

My daughters Abigail and Bryn are the lights of my life. They have always been there believing in everything I do, every step of the way. Now they are out on their own and I want to let them know how much I believe in them.

Sam, I am so happy you are here. Sorry for all the postponed walks and excursions while I was completing this book. I look forward to spending some extra time with you in the upcoming weeks.

Flynn, while you are too young to remember these things with any clarity later on in life, your many interruptions, coffee-cup tippings, and general calls for my attention are eclipsed by my wonderful memories of you sitting in my lap while I typed. You are a complete joy to me and a living response to the question “Why?”

For all of you who have enjoyed my lectures and writing over the years, thank you for your support, encouragement, and for being here.

Contents

[Foreword](#) by Craig Hines

[Preface](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Chapter 1: Science Almighty](#)

[Chapter 2: Who's Your Daddy? From Elohim to Nephilim](#)

[Chapter 3: The Pharaoh-God of Israel](#)

[Chapter 4: The Pan-Cultural Effect](#)

[Chapter 5: The Watchers](#)

[Chapter 6: Alien Influence?](#)

[Chapter 7: Constantine: One Emperor, One God](#)

[Chapter 8: The Nephilim](#)

[Chapter 9: ... And Also Afterward](#)

[Chapter 10: Where Are They Now?](#)

[Conclusion](#)

[Epilogue](#)

[Notes](#)

[Bibliography](#)

[Index](#)

[About the Author](#)

Foreword

The first drop of water splashed atop his head unexpectedly, causing him to cease his work and glance upward. He wiped the sweat from his brow, his tired eyes struggling to focus on the darkness forming in the heavens above. Another raindrop fell against his skin, and his gaze returned to the ground. His own reflection rippled chaotically across the newly formed puddles at his feet. As a crowd began to gather around him, his trembling hands reached for his tools and collected them into his arms. It was time.

“Is this your lord’s great deluge, Noah, you mad man?” yelled one of the bystanders, inciting the rest of the mob to laugh mockingly amongst themselves.

Suddenly, a loud crack of thunder boomed and cut through the crowd’s licentious laughter. They were instantly silent as uneasiness began to rise up within their guts, much like the pools of water growing beneath their feet.

Noah rushed toward the ark, the anxious voices of his family calling to him from within the wooden structure. His progress was hindered as he trudged through the mud and water. Although his sandal became lodged in the mire, he slipped his foot free and continued to run. He refused to be deterred by the unrelenting shouts and panicking cries of his pursuers. His sons hurried him aboard and began to draw the large door closed.

From inside, Noah could hear the screams of the people he once called friends—their bloodied fists clawing and thumping against the wooden structure. He rested himself against a support beam, desperately trying to catch his breath. Before long, he collapsed to the floor in a sobbing mess.

The cacophony was too horrible to bear and threatened to drive him to madness. Yet he soon found relief as it was drowned out by the pounding of the rain, as though millions of stones were pummeling the rooftop. He wanted to help, but he knew that it was too late for them. It had been too late long before the rains had ever started.

Much like the ripples created by the rainwater in Noah's tale, the events surrounding this epic legend have flowed throughout history and on through the present day. However, just like the natural side effect of such ripples, the crystal-clear images and reflections produced by the still waters of the past have now become distorted and difficult to comprehend. We are expected to make sense of it all, but centuries of repression, persecution, political agendas, wars, and even the mundane activities of the world have washed away the clues and data necessary to bring clarity to the situation.

For example, many people insist that they are familiar with the story of Noah's Ark, but the vast majority of them only know the simplified and largely censored version that they were taught as children. Ancient accounts describing the mating of angelic beings with humans, the birth of their hybrid offspring known as the Nephilim, and the disastrous consequences of such affairs are, if you will pardon the expression, completely alien to most people. Week after week, the faithful flock to places of worship to hear sermons and receive holy guidance in their lives, yet some of the most significant details or implications of the story are never brought to their attention. Most of these individuals will be happy to tell you about Noah, his family, the construction of the ark, how many of each animal were on-board, and so on; but their enthusiastic countenance will quickly diminish into one of bewilderment at the mere mention of the Nephilim.

“The Nef-a-what?”

Exactly.

It is precisely this reason that a book like this needed to be written. If you have never heard of the Nephilim, this book will serve as an excellent introduction to the subject. Even those who are well-versed in the archaic lore of the fallen angels will find some new and interesting information to add to the ever-expanding field of research materials and notes. Scott Roberts is the ideal guide for those who wish to revisit this complex subject, as well as those who are learning about these ideas for the first time.

I first encountered the research of Scott Roberts within the pages of the June 2008 issue of *TAPS Paramagazine* and his article on the antediluvian race of beings known as the Nephilim. Scott's fascination and passion for the topic were evident, and I was humbled that he cited my book, *Gateway of the Gods* (Numina Media Arts, 2007), as a primary source and recommended reading to his audience. Little did I know that at the same time I was composing a message to thank him for acknowledging my research in his article, he was contemplating if he should contact me. After a few e-mail exchanges and enthusiastic phone calls, a new friendship was born.

Since that time, I have been interviewed on Scott's radio show on several occasions, and even spoke alongside him in collaborative presentations at paranormal conferences. One of Scott's foremost traits is an eagerness to ask questions and to learn, and he is often enthralled by the process of examining and interpreting evidence. He is just as fascinated by the topic now as he was years ago—probably even more so. Beyond that, however, are his willingness and determination to teach and share what he has learned over the years, including all of the ups and downs, pitfalls, and dead-ends that he has encountered. Scott and I may not always agree on certain interpretations or theories, but we both acknowledge and respect that there are not always definitive answers to the questions we pose, and that we are each seeking different pieces of the same puzzle.

Similarly to how my book served as an inspiration and a piece of the puzzle for Scott, it is my wish that you will also find the same excitement

and curiosity within the following pages. You may already be holding another piece of the puzzle and not even realize it, only to discover that it finally makes sense after reading *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim*. Like Noah, be vigilant and mindful of the ripples. Recognize the patterns and you will find your answers. Together, we may be able to solve the riddle of our past so that we may ultimately fulfill our destiny.

“Square the Circle.”

Craig Hines

Author, *Gateway of the Gods*

Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania

www.gatewayofthegods.com

Preface

I have been asked many times by many people what it is exactly that began my journey down this path. I can only answer that is my *insatiable curiosity*.

This book is the culmination of a lifetime's quest to find the answers to the questions that are seemingly unanswerable. It is not, however, exhaustive in its conclusions. It is, rather, a look into what I believe is one of the greatest events in human history, with far-reaching ramifications and only the slightest hint at discovering the answers.

I am sure to get heat for the conclusions I have drawn, as well as the things I have missed or deliberately avoided. But I will ever and always be open to a good debate.

That humanity experienced an interruption in its ancient past is incontrovertible in my mind. The question of extra-terrestrial interference in our genetics and bloodline is most certainly a reality, though something that will be debated in greater halls of academia and bastions of thinking far beyond my scope and attainment.

Although this little book offers my scholarly surmising and educated conclusions, I have also attempted to be deeply honest and wholesomely transparent in opening up to you the reader, my thoughts, opinions, blatherings, and outright rantings over not only the subject matter, but the philosophies and politically motivated religious trappings I have encountered along the way.

Let me state for the record that I did not set out to offend anyone's religious sensibilities, for I still adhere to the faith in which I was raised and educated. But I have found over the years that there was always some missing element that left so gaping a hole in my theology that it needed to be sought out and addressed, like looking for that missing puzzle piece in the cracks and crevices of the comfortable sofa in the living room.

Yet, though that was the intention of this book, I find that the more I research, study, and root for facts, the more questions come to the surface. It's like driving a shiny new car down an ochre-yellow dirt road on a hot summer day in the country: The farther you drive seeking your destination, the more dust you raise, and soon your luster is completely coated in the fine powder of discovery.

And that is where I stand today. Seeking out the Nephilim has stirred up a great amount of dust, so prep yourself for reading further by putting on your metaphoric safety goggles, lest you allow the dust to settle in your eyes. Read on with an open mind and let the things that might cause you consternation settle into being just a part of the process.

The world as you know it is about to take on a completely different light. And the story of the Nephilim is much bigger than you may have ever imagined.

Scott Alan Roberts

August 30, 2011

Introduction

As a kid, I spent far too many nights lying atop my mother's garage. With arms folded behind my head, I'd stare into the starry sky, consumed by my childhood fantasies of becoming a starship captain who would "boldly go" into that endless black-seeking new life and new civilizations. Yet, it was more than just growing up a product of pop culture and the science fiction of the 1960s and 70s that fired my curiosities. Something deep inside told me that we were not alone in this infinite stretch of expanding universe, and I longed to know the answers to the age-old questions of "why am I here?" and "where do I come from?" Those questions were probably not as articulated in my mind as they seem when I recount them here and now, but they gnawed at me, just the same, on some primordial, undefined level of my genetic make-up. Within every cognitive, rational human being lies that nebulous unanswered haze that rises to the surface every so often, yearning to have answers. And, yet, most of our lives, we shamble through the years, wholly unaware that those desires smolder deep down inside. We subconsciously suppress any wild, weird notions that there just might be answers beyond the realm of what we think we already know and accept. Human beings walk around this world feeling absolutely unconnected to the greater world and universe around them. As a race, we have forgotten how to make this connectivity, and this ties into all aspects of how we perceive ourselves, our loved ones, our politics, our jobs and careers, our deities, our personal spiritualities, and our place in the order of things.

Sure, like many kids growing up in America during the late 1960s and '70s, I attended Sunday school and was taught about the Origins of Man from a Genesis-Chapter-One perspective. And for many years of my life, that was the only source point to which I subconsciously hailed. It was as if the stories of creation were settled long ago in that unquestioning little

child's understanding of how things work. The curiosities and questions that rose later in life from the mental depths were somehow summarily squashed by the teachings that had been put into my head so many years earlier.

But little did I know—for it was something that was never taught, but always skipped-over, avoided, misinformed, or never mentioned—that the very book from which we dogmatically drew our genesis held secretive, mysterious, encoded messages about origins, visitations and beings not of this world. What was once accepted without question as the mystical, magical, miraculous stuff of ancient biblical stories, suddenly took on a very different perspective once I opened myself to the idea that there was more to those stories than I had been told, and much more brewing beneath the surface of what I had been taught.

Remove yourself, for a moment, to a place somewhere in a more shadowy past, before the days of modern psychological discipline and scientific advance. A time when we, the human race, believed that our life's fortunes, illnesses, woes, and serendipitous happenstances were firmly rooted in the spiritual and the supernatural. As we evolved our technology and sciences, we learned more and more about the mind and body, universal expansion and entropy, geological tectonics, and the movement of our solar system around a somewhat smallish star that burned in the Milky Way galaxy. Along the way, we dispensed with our reliance on the ethereal, casting aside our need for gods, devils, and every caste of angel, demon and spirit in between. We corporately tuned-out our hearts, and turned our minds to the methodological pragmatic, allowing science and skeptical thought to successfully supplant faith in that great “something-bigger-than-ourselves.” Quantifiable Fact became the inevitable surrogate for the misty stuff of myth and legend. And while we may not have totally thrown out the baby with the bath water, we have successfully become a culture that discounts anything that cannot be measured by the scientific method, casting dispersions on experiential faith and even the slightest adherence to anything that smacks of an older spiritual belief system.

The paramount endeavor that occupies most of the recorded history of the human race—after the history of war, that is (which, sadly, seems to be synonymous with the history of mankind)—is the great quest for discovery: the seeking-out of the whos, whats, wheres, whys, and hows of our existence. And yet, while attempting, on that quest, to adhere to strict, quantifiable sources, we have let go of the Spiritual; the innocuous, insubstantial, airborne flotsam that, when you actually look for it, seems to permeate every facet of being, down to the very spark of life itself.

So, what if the outmoded, outgrown, discarded superstitions—the things of the unseen, unwanted realms—really do have their basis in some sort of truth? What if the superstitious banalities we brushed aside in the broad swath of our skeptical, scientific hand, were truly the evidentiary stuff of things not seen, the substance of a very real universe that dwelt and operated just below the surface of the visible, tangible world around us? What if there truly exists a viable, legitimate source code that, at times, finds its way through the barrier that divides the diaphanous from the substantive? What if science ain't the end-all, be-all of this universe, and we really are surrounded by forces of good, evil, light, and dark? What if there really are living, vibrant beings who dwell and function beyond the veil of the dimension of the here and now?

Nearly every ancient culture has in its annals, mythological tales of supernatural beings who came to the earth for the purpose of intermingling with human beings. And out of these early encounters came the many subsequent accounts of an ancient universal flood imposed by a god or superior being for the purpose of wiping-out the offspring created by the supernatural intercourse between these beings and humans. In the ancient, pan-cultural understanding, these beings are referred to as angels, demons, spirits—and even gods. The question that begs to be asked is: were they actually part of some spiritual hierarchy of angelic and demonic beings, or were they only labeled as such for lack of a better understanding? Are we seeing the experiential contact of humans with angelics and demonics, or are these supernatural descriptors the only mode of illustrative labeling that ancient man had for understanding who and what they encountered and experienced? Were there supernatural beings who descended and cohabited

with humans, bequeathing an offspring of giants—as many cultures purport—or is there a physical, extraterrestrial connection? Was there a doorway opened from another dimensional reality through which beings—who could be described by ancient man as nothing less than angelic or god-like—visited this dimensional plane?

In some of the apocryphal, non-canonical writings—those books excluded from biblical scripture by the Council of Nicea during the reign of Constantine in 325 CE—we are told of a group of beings known as the “Watchers,” who “orbited” the earth with the divine mandate of “watching over” mankind, but who also desired to take on the self-imposed task of descending to the earth to teach certain skills to human beings, ultimately resulting in a cohabitation and sexual intermingling. The result was a race of god-like progeny called the *Nephilim*.

The word *Nephilim* finds its source in biblical scriptures, both canonical and non-canonical, and that is why the study in this book will focus on those texts, at least as a starting point. “There were giants in the earth in those days, and also afterward,” so says the biblical Book of Genesis, “when the sons of God looked upon the daughters of men and found them fair, and took of them wives as they chose.” The bequeathed descendants became “the mighty men of old, the men of renown.” The literal translation of this passage reads something like: “The Watchers came and took human wives for themselves, as many as they wanted. Their children were the Nephilim of old, the giants.” The accounts of these beings can also be found in the Books of Jasher, Jubilees, and the more recently discovered Dead Sea Scrolls, *The Book of Giants*. The ancient Irish wrote of giant, shining gods called the *Tuatha de Danaan* who later became the Elven Folk of lore and Celtic mythology. The Middle Eastern and Mesopotamian cultures have the *Anakim* (*Anunna/Anunnaki*), and *Rephaim*—along with other beings and races described as having descended from giant Nephilim forebears. The Norse mythologies make reference to *Niflheim*, the underworld ruled by the goddess, *Hel*. The Hindu Vedas and Puranas tell of an antediluvian (pre-flood) giant-god, *Daitya* and the race of giant *Andanari*. Native American cultures speak of highly elusive giant, hairy, big-footed creatures that roam the American forests—just as Tibetan mountain peoples tell age-old tales of

similar, equally elusive giant creatures in the Himalayas. The Greeks have their *Titans* and the ancient Sumerians have their flood epic of *Gilgamesh*, the giant half-god half-man. While these peoples, religions and cultures are widely diverse, their giant and flood mythologies, pictographs and folklore all seem to have common, historical linkages. In the pages ahead, we will explore these varied accounts and mythologies, drawing the obvious—and not-so-obvious—connections and similarities.

If, like me, you attended Sunday school as a kid, we were taught that God sent a great, universal flood to the earth to wipe out the “wickedness of mankind,” sparing only one righteous man and his family along with pairs of every animal on earth, and seven of the ritually clean ones. They all took refuge in a great barge for some 120 days, waiting out the deluge and the receding of the waters. This same story is told in these many other ancient records, with varying plot twists and a different cast of characters. But common to nearly all stories is the root account of extra-terrestrial (“extra”—from without; “terrestrial”—of this earth) beings who descended to the earth for the purpose of intermingling with humans, and having children with them. And common to most ancient accounts is the wrath of a superior being who wages “judgment” on the earth in an attempt to destroy the hybrid descendants as a result—seemingly to no avail, as they are mentioned as being “*in the earth in those days, and also afterward.*”

Cultural traditions from all around the world have myths and legends telling of angelic beings who descended to the earth and interacted with human beings, ushering in some sort of cataclysmic, worldwide destruction of humanity that left scant few survivors. When analysis of the languages used in the various accounts is compared, blatantly similar facts emerge, revealing a commonality between the varied cultural tales, substantiating a corporate mythos: flesh and blood beings who were revered as gods, interacted with humanity in the most intimate of ways.

While there is a lack of scientifically repeatable evidence, there exists a sum of recorded history combined with diverse extant religious texts that comprise a broader picture of antediluvian races and events. Because these

things cannot be quantified by the standards of the scientific method, do the plethora of ancient accounts establish any sort of verifiable proof of a crossover between inter-dimensional or interplanetary races? I believe yes, and that is what I will address in the pages of this book. While the data is not repeatable for scientific experimentation, the historical annals speak loudly and clearly. When there exist such localized myths in geographical regions, repeated by other localized myths in other, far away geographical regions, over and over again, there is a certain scientific methodology at play. There is a message revealed.

Almost more importantly than the physical, textual references and evidences are the spiritual implications that can be drawn. Beyond the accounts of giant beings and extraterrestrial intercourses with humans, we have the spirituality of the matter, spanning the gaps between dogmatic theologies and firmly held systematic beliefs, spawning a broader interconnectivity between religions, cultures, and spiritualities. It is my personal belief that there is much more to discover than has been revealed, and the more we hypothesize, ponder, explore, research, study, and meditate on this wide array of scriptures, facts, folklore, stories, and writings, the more we engage in a responsible dissecting and evaluation of the living, breathing existence of these beings.

Now, you may well ask what qualifications and credentials I possess to write of such things with any modicum of authority. I could hold up my years of incomplete, degreeless education in Bible College and Masters program in seminary as sources for much of what I learned about biblical scripture, but as I have alluded to previously, that education simply left me wondering *more* about the things I had *not* been taught. If exploration and discovery is at the core of every heart and mind, then seeking out the answers by means of personal study and research is what I am presenting here in this book. We are *all* scholars, and we *all* bear a responsibility of rooting out the facts and seeking truth. While this book certainly should never, ever be held up as a quotable resource for universal truth on these matters, it is one man's attempt to find answers that do not simply and blindly follow the dictates of a single belief system. While this effort may represent my early years of speculative imaginings, rounded off by more

years of education and scholarly research, I would call this a work of my heart as opposed to a scholarly tome that will be held as *the* absolute authority on the topics contained herein. I have many more questions than I have answers, but these pages represent honest, educated research that will—hopefully—lead you down a path to your own conclusions and discoveries.

There is so much more out there than what we have been taught. There is so much more out there to discover, uncover, and seek-out.

And then, there is that still, small voice.

My friend, Craig Hines, author of *Gateway of the Gods*, made reference in his book to a “small, quiet voice” that had been speaking to him—not audibly, but deep in his subconscious—telling him to “square the circle.” Like Craig, I have struggled with seeking and finding the answers to questions that delve much deeper than what seems to be lying on the surface. My entire life I have known that there is something lying just beyond the borders of the familiar, reaching far beyond systematic theologies and entrenched dogmas. Before we ever met face-to-face, I found in Craig, through the vehicle of his writing, an able, unwitting ally in my quest to make the square peg of my quest fit into the round hole of the universe.

There is an Old Testament passage where the prophet Elijah, desiring to have a face-to-face encounter with God, is shown a phenomenal sequence of divine events passing by him as he is standing in the cleft of a rock face: wind, earthquake, and fire. The noise of theophany is overwhelming, but it is only with the palpable quiet of the aftermath that God spoke in the sound of sheer silence. It is that same stunning silence, that “still small voice” that has whispered in both Craig’s ears and my own. When you experience the calm stillness of an almost revelatory realization that the seemingly random dots connect, a complete picture starts to materialize and come into full view. As a result, both Craig and I have, in a sense, stumbled upon the

conclusion that we have been asked to “square the circle”—something Craig reminded me of in his private, hand-written note on the title page of *Gateway of the Gods*, the copy of his book he gave to me.

For most of my life, I have insisted that as much as we live and dwell in a natural world, we live and dwell in a supernatural one. The natural and Supernatural are one-in-the-same, and do not exist and function independently of each other. In fact, there is no “supernatural.” There is only the living, breathing, substantive world and universe around us, that ebbs and flows in it’s own mysterious ways. For me, this book is all about coming to terms with the religious efforts of man to explain the misunderstood, and find a better understanding about the things we thought we once knew all there was to know about. *Squaring the circle* is my realization that all things are connected, all religions are connected, all spiritualities are connected in a great web of understanding what and who we are, where we are going, and how we are supposed to get there. I want this book to stand as another effort in attaining that equation, and there may even be theories put forward in these pages that cause you to wince in pause as you attempt to assimilate the information and conclusions offered.

Ancient mankind was visited by beings of another dimension, or from a distant star, who intermingled, seeded, receded, and in some cases reemerged in their interaction with the human race. There are remnants and evidences all over the world in every culture, all one need do is look. Ancient biblical and apocryphal texts tell us that the Nephilim “were on the earth in those days, and also afterward...” And “as it was in the days of Noah, so shall it be [in the end times].”

So sit back in your favorite reading chair, grab your itty-bitty book light. Devour, absorb, and cogitate. Agree or disagree. Above all else, examine and dissect the materials in this book by going to that place where the trappings of societal sterility cannot reach your desire to see things with “older” eyes. Discard what you think you know and see the world and universe around you with a fresher-yet-ancient, un jaded view. Draw your conclusions based on an openness to know, rather than allow current

thought to dictate where you take your beliefs. Ask questions and seek the answers to those questions. Enjoy and ask yourself how *you* can find a way to *square the circle*.

chapter 1

Science Almighty

“Science is built up of facts, as a house is built of stones; but an accumulation of facts is no more a science than a heap of stones is a house.”

—Henri Poincaré,
Science and Hypothesis, 1905

“I spent a lot of time at age eight experimenting... commanding stones to levitate: ‘esir, enots.’ It never worked. I blamed my pronunciation.”

—Carl Sagan

So, I have this pile of stones, each one representing a scientific fact that could be used to build a solid foundation for what I’ll call the “House of the Origins of Humanity.” Yet, they remain in an unstructured heap, because—although each stone may be individually factual, they can be loosely mortared together only by hypothesis, built on the presupposition that humans evolved from lesser forms of primates, who in turn evolved from emergent aquatic species, who themselves evolved from primordial slime. Though these individual facts may indeed comprise my pile of stones, they cannot construct an unshakeable foundation, for they lack concrete coherence. So the house remains in the architectural phase. We know where we want to put the stones; we just are not yet sure how they all fit together.

Science, as we know it, is defined as a branch of knowledge or study of the physical or material world, dealing with a body of facts and/or truths

systematically arranged, showing the operation of general laws gained through observation and experimentation, reflecting a precise application of said fact and/or principles. Science is also the observation, identification, description, experimental investigation, and theoretical explanation of phenomena, restricted to a class of natural phenomena.

Although science is continually uncovering facts as to variant species that on a hypothetical level demonstrate a mutation within the species, they still lack that definitive link that results in an exclamation of “Eureka!”

This does not nullify the facts—that metaphoric pile of stones—but it certainly wreaks havoc with the proposed hypothesis.

To continue following my House of Humanity construct: Science has proven that there are five characteristics that separate man from other hominoids: a large neocortex, bipedality, reduced anterior dentition with molar dominance, material culture, and unique sexual and reproductive behavior.¹ Science has yet to demonstrate that the discovered variants are actual linkages within the Human species. All we know with certainty is that scientists have uncovered numerous forms of fossilized prehistoric skeletal remains, leading them to conclude that they are substantiating the line of human evolutionary ascendancy, albeit with many gaps in the progression, and therefore no real linkages. But they are pretty damned sure that they are correct in their hypothesis.

What science and its practitioners have demonstrated is that fossils exist that provide incontrovertible evidence that various hominid species walked the earth in our primordial past. What they have *hypothesized* is that they are all linked to human evolution. Even the DNA findings at best are interpolated from what scientists *think* maybe appears to be sort of connected to human DNA. They make the stretch to linkage based solely on the educated “hope” that it is “probably so,” despite not having evidence to make it so without a shadow of a doubt. And isn’t that the very same way religious believers cling to their particular version of God?

Science has a love affair with itself. It loves to puff out its chest and declare for itself (as do many religions), yet with the last 150 years of research since Darwin's *Origin of Species* (1859), their accumulated facts have still not gotten them past their original leaping-off point—their educated guess that all these finds are somehow linked, demonstrating an unbroken chain of evolutionary mutation resulting in modern man.

Although science has made great advances in the quest for the identification of linkages in the line of human evolution, science has also been forced to make quantum leaps of faith in order to adhere to pre-established hypotheses. Of course, members of the scientific community wouldn't call it *faith*, but that is the practical outcome.

In a very real sense, science (and I use the term *science* here as representative of the accumulated collective of thought, hypotheses, research, and conclusion embodied in a single entity/word) rose up to find and identify fact, and has established its own "truth" in a sometimes-overt, sometimes-unwitting desire to do an "end run" around spiritual and religious belief. Spirituality existed long before established science, but somewhere at the very roots of understanding, science kicked in as soon as someone raised his or her head and said, "*Hmmm. I know the stars are the placental remains of the Great Goddess in the sky birthing the sun and moon. But... is that just a story, or is there something more... ?*"

The Great Conflict: Science vs. Religion vs. Science vs. Faith

A conflict has existed between science and spirituality—reason versus faith—since the beginning of recorded history, and it seems as if that fight will continue until time itself ends. For many in the scientific fields, there is a need to eradicate all that is not fact, including faith-based spirituality or its

organized religious practices, as well as a denial—at least on an intellectual level—that there is some powerful, divine creative force at play in the universe.

According to evolutionary biologist Richard Dawkins, scientists never need to rely on faith, at least “not in the sense of faith as meaning belief in something for which there is no evidence.”² Dawkins, being a self-acclaimed atheist, says that any expression of “faith,” on his part, is based upon his confidence in the scientific method alone. In agreement with Dawkins is pop cultural skeptical icon James Randi, who by trade is a stage magician and scientific skeptic. He has made a notable name for himself out of debunking the paranormal and the pseudo-scientific—which is not in and of itself a bad thing. Randi says, when hailing to his experience of being tossed out of Sunday school as a kid, “I am an atheist, tried and true.”³ Since then he has dedicated his life and career to finding ways to prove that science is the end-all and be-all when it comes to the great controversies surrounding the big questions of faith, religion, and the great mysterious unknowns of life and the universe.

Carl Sagan’s credo, which has become the broadly adopted Skeptic’s Credo, states that “extraordinary claims require extraordinary evidence.”⁴ In that mantra, agenda-driven skeptical scientists have eradicated the need for any sort of faith-based belief, save that of their own exponential leaps of faith in science and the scientific method, as earlier demonstrated with the inability to find and establish the “missing link.” These very same skeptics will on one hand revile faith, religion, and spirituality as outmoded and lacking in reason, while on the other hand accept as fact the presuppositions and as-of-yet unproven theories of things such as evolutionary ascendancy. In a very real sense, the scientist and dyed-in-the-wool atheistic skeptic have, in decrying faith, established Scientific Skepticism as the new surrogate for faith, and in its own rationale unwittingly declared itself the New Religion.

The definition of religion is:

1. A set of beliefs concerning the cause, nature, and purpose of the universe, especially when considered as the creation of a superhuman agency or agencies, usually involving devotional and ritual observances, and often containing a code governing the conduct of human affairs with a strong emphasis on practice.
2. A specific fundamental set of beliefs and practices generally agreed upon by a number of persons, sects or collectives.
3. The body of persons adhering to a particular set of beliefs and practices: a world council of religions.
4. The life or state of a monk, nun, etc.: to enter religion.
5. The practice of religious beliefs; ritual observance of faith.
6. Something one believes in and follows devotedly; a point or matter of ethics or conscience: to make a religion of fighting prejudice.
7. Archaic. Religious rites.
8. Archaic. Strict faithfulness; devotion: a religion to one's vow.⁵

There is cause and nature recognized by the scientific community, and a devoutly strict adherence to its “religious” practice, but they seem to collectively come up short when it comes to acknowledging a spiritual point-of-view, and they collide in epic proportions with spirituality and religion altogether. The true skeptical and scientific mindset should more appropriately recognize the “unknown” quantity underlying religion as an *undiscovered country*, and rather than eliminate it altogether from discourse and acceptance, place it more aptly in the category of “things we don’t know for sure.” The scientific community, in aggressively attempting to eliminate—or at the very least diminish—the role of spirituality and religion from the playing field, have in a very real sense established themselves as the authority on all things unverifiable. Dawkins, again, labels religion as “trash,” and in so doing, elevates himself and his scientific colleagues to the status of “secular gods.” When religion is deposed by a conflicting mindset, that mindset then promotes itself to the lofty echelon of God’s Surrogate.

The Church of Skeptic

I have a friend who is a Skeptic, a true believer in science and skepticism; a Michael Shermer devotee. I have seen this friend during the last 20 years evolve (or “devolve,” depending on how you see things) from a Roman Catholic to a die-hard skeptical atheist, so much so that I now, amicably, refer to him as a “reverend in the Church of Skeptic.” He bristles at this moniker, yet takes it in the lighthearted fashion in which it is delivered; at the same time, he is also representative of the brand of skeptic who has less true questioning than he does unwitting cynicism. And let it be said for the record that I, too, have a skeptical mind, but my skepticism has not crossed over the boundary into arrogant adherence to only the things I can prove by means of the scientific method. Science and Skepticism, too, need to be tempered by an attitude of wanting to discover, learn, grow, and know, not a leaping-off point of absolute denial of anything outside the realm of provable science.

“The threats to human dignity and integrity are being ramped up to extraordinary levels of stress, when what we most need is wisdom,” says Yale computer guru David Gelernter,⁶ decrying the dangerous trend of know-it-all scientists promulgating the idea that “religion and spirituality are trash.” What we are seeing trended more and more is that wisdom, moral seriousness, and adherence to religion and spirituality are coming under grave and perpetual attack, and more often by the people who are prominent figures in the scientific community. Crusading atheism combined with an aggressive desire to secularize the world through the funnel of science and skeptical thought has become a major hurdle to accepting the fact that not all things are measurable by the scientific method.

The first step needed in order to help science and faith find common ground is a starting point of admitting our absolute ignorance. We know nothing. None of us, with all our glorified sciences and metaphysical mumbo-jumbos, really know anything at all. We have experienced only the tip of the iceberg when it comes to the physical workings of our universe,

and we need to constantly question and test and discover, then question and test to discover more. This process is what separates those who would remain in self-imposed make-believe worlds, from those who would be seekers of fact and truth.

Eugenie Scott, the director for the National Center of Science Education, was asked a question about whether science could ever prove or disprove God's existence. With a wry smile, she said, "Well, we don't exactly have a 'God-ometer,' do we?" And she went on to express that she was highly skeptical that such a device could ever be conceived, let alone manufactured. We don't, and probably never will have a test or device that could measure that sort of information.⁷

Some things are simply unquantifiable. This doesn't mean such things don't exist; it just means that there are some things that we may never know for sure. As appealing as it would be to assert with 100-percent certainty that God exists, we simply cannot. The existence of God is something that can only be accepted by faith—not blind faith, but a faith that recognizes there are some veils that cannot be pierced. The scientific method can only take us so far, and that explanation will only ever leave us dissatisfied. But, then again, we can never be satisfied until we reach that unknown point.

So, to debase belief in the divine and the unexplained mysteries that surround us simply because they are not definable by science, is to display utter arrogance at best and total stupidity at worst. Science, without the understanding of how everything loops together with faith and spirituality, is only half the picture.

And then there's the other side of the equation. Pope John Paul II, in an address to the Pontifical Academy of Sciences in Rome, declared on October 27, 1996, his acceptance of evolution as a fact of nature, noting that he believed there was no real war between science and religion. He said, in part, "Consideration of the method used in diverse orders of knowledge allows for the concordance of two points of view which seem

irreconcilable. The sciences of observation describe and measure with ever greater precision the multiple manifestations of life...while theology extracts...the final meaning according to the Creator's design.”⁸ Christians and the Religious Right reacted angrily to the Pope's statements, and Henry Morris, president emeritus of the Institute for Creation Research responded, “The pope is just an influential person; he's not a scientist. There is no scientific evidence for evolution. All the real solid evidence supports creation.”⁹

And so the battle wages on between mindsets, ideologies, science, and religious points of view.

But what about myth and legend? The human race bears the scars of ancient interruption. Science observes the details, but does little to recognize the random elements that lie outside the realm of the observable and testable. Spirituality opens the door to usher in any whacked-out theory or belief, as long as the person expressing the theory is sincere about his or her faith. One allows for the possibilities, while the other closes the door to anything that is unquantifiable or improbable by the scientific method.

True science is *nothing* more than us catching up to what we already naturally know and understand on a spiritual level. That level of understanding is not outside our grasp. We simply have to be unafraid to reach for it.

In his book *The Demon Haunted World*, Carl Sagan spoke of the two things instilled in him from a very early age: “My parents ... in introducing me simultaneously to *skepticism* and *wonder* ... taught me the two uneasily cohabitating modes of thought that are central to the scientific method.”¹⁰

Be scientific. Be skeptical. Be religious. Be spiritual. But never lose touch with the wonder that is beyond our finite ability to quantify that which is unquantifiable.

The Sons of God descended from the heavens and intermingled with the daughters of humans, taking whomever they chose, and the women conceived and bore children. Myth? Superstition? Religious folly? Scientific fact? Let's move on to see how all of these blend in the stew pot of ancient history, contemporary experience, and the application of scientific methodology.

“A knowledge of the existence of something we cannot penetrate, of the manifestations of the profoundest reason and the most radiant beauty—it is this knowledge and this emotion that constitute the truly religious attitude; in this sense, and in this alone, I am a deeply religious man.”

—Albert Einstein

“Enlightenment is not imagining figures of light, but making the darkness conscious.”

—Carl Jung

chapter 2

Who's Your Daddy? From Elohim to Nephilim

“A rose by any other name would smell as sweet.”

—William Shakespeare

“Then God said, ‘Let us make humankind in our image, after our likeness, so they may rule over the fish of the sea and the birds of the air, over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over all the creatures that move on the earth.’”

—Genesis 1:26

The Nephilim (Hebrew: נְפִילִים) have spawned myriad cultural mythologies, appearing in variant forms and by various names throughout the annals of ancient historical and religious texts, from the offspring of the Sons of God to the bright, shining Tuatha de Danaan of the ancient Celts, from Gilgamesh of Uruk to the Bigfoot of Native American lore. Ranging from the religious to the ufological, the Nephilim seem to defy reasonable explanation except within two basic trains of thought: the metaphysical, which is open to many various forms of spirituality and religious explanations, and the scientific, which may not wholly deny the existence of the spiritual, but will most likely not allow for the incorporation of such wondrous folly in making a determination of veracity.

On the spiritual/metaphysical track it is easy to accept non-scientific accounts of spirit beings, angelics, and demonics when attempting to

comprehend the existence of a race that “descended from the heavens” and cohabited with human women. It’s even easier to believe when you consider the many accounts of demonically intrusive sexual encounters, not to mention similar tales of alien abductions and impregnations. But these sorts of explanations describe interactions that comprise a speculative mix of religion, spirituality, and meta-science—and many times a sort of parapsychology—that is open to the possibilities of things beyond veils that are seemingly impossible to pierce by the finite mind and the study of science. Yet, even a more scientific approach, when it is not wholly dismissive of the entire notion of the Nephilim, while seeking out non-religious facts, sometimes yields just as fantastical an understanding.

No matter which path you allow to dictate your train of thought, it is simple historical fact that the Nephilim, in their various forms, permeate the writings of ancient civilizations on a nearly pan-cultural basis. And no matter whether you follow a spiritual, metaphysical, parapsychological, or scientific track, one fact stands firm: The very name of these mythical beings finds its source in the Old Testament faith writings of the Book of Genesis, with the Hebrew word *Nephilim*. In that source book, the Nephilim themselves are said to be the hybrid offspring of the “Sons of God,” or, as the Hebrew calls them, the *bene haElohim*—the Watchers of the apocryphal book of Enoch, whose pages include accounts of the Nephilim that parallel and even amplify the scant details that appear in the Book of Genesis, leading many to believe that the two accounts were based in the same source. These so-called Sons of God were, in turn, bequeathed/birthed/created by *Elohim*, the Hebrew name given to God so many thousands of times in the Jewish books of faith and law. So, in seeking out this mythical race, the big question is this: Do we define the Nephilim by spiritual texts and a faith-based understanding, or are there explanations that fall outside the realm of spirituality, despite finding the name source-point only within the scriptures of Jewish spiritual literature? Larger yet, is this question: Are the two trains of thought actually one in the same? Either the religious definitions are accurate, or the ancients simply defined these mythic beings in the only terms they could understand: those that fell within their finite realm of spiritual comprehension of how the

universe worked, while at the same time upholding a monotheistic belief in God and his created caste of spirit beings.

Now, I am not going to suggest that the Book of Genesis is not factual. Nor will I suggest that the God of the Bible is not who the writers of those books say He is. I will, however, state emphatically that the Bible is a book of faith, governed by the dictates of a faith-based spirituality, thus rendering its facts the products of not only a faith-based culture, but a theocratic one.

For the purposes of scholarly integrity, I have chosen—as a leaping-off point—to examine first, the Hebrew source of the word Nephilim—**נְפִילִים**—and to do that, we have to take the whole thing back a notch further to the headwaters of the source point: the Hebrew scriptures. If the Nephilim are the mythical offspring of the Sons of God—the *bene haElohim*—then who is the Father? Who is this Elohim that bequeathed them?

God Among Many Gods

When I first learned that one of the most common names for God was a plurality, I began to question the way I thought about much of what I had been taught about the Bible. And by “plurality,” I don’t mean the triune manifestations of the Godhead: Father, Son, and Holy Ghost (in other words: the Trinity). I am referring to the Old Testament name *Elohim*—**אֱלֹהִים**—who is said to have bequeathed the *bene-haElohim*—**בְּנֵי־אֱלֹהִים**, the Sons of God—who then had intercourse with human women and gave birth to the hybridic race of Nephilim.

More than 2,500 times in the Old Testament, the Hebrew word used in reference to the name of God is *Elohim*. Interestingly enough, the word is not a mere name alone, but it is also a descriptor, in that it details physical attributes of the Hebrew God, also known as Yahweh [Jehovah]. The word *Elohim*, itself, denotes plurality, specifically “more than two.” But it is also

most commonly used in the Hebrew texts only in conjunction with a singular verb or adjective, which can sometimes indicate a singular, individual God with a plurality of vast and many powers, depending on the context of the passage wherein it is found. There is also the argument that *Elohim* is a statement of the *Hashalush HaKadosh*, or the Trinity, despite the fact that there is no indicated number limiting the plurality of *Elohim* to “three.” Anti-Trinitarians would tell you that the term *Elohim* suggests only the multiplicity of power and majesty, as opposed to suggesting the word indicates a plurality of beings or multiplicity of entities individually combined into a collective, singular God. The word *Elohim* is also used as a collective plural reference to the many denounced false gods and idols throughout the Old Testament.

The literal translation of the word *Elohim* is “God of Many Gods,” more simply: “God of Gods.” But to render this as a wholly polytheistic term would fly in the face of how Judaism’s staunchest scholars would interpret the word. No higher authority on the Hebrew language can be found than the great Hebrew scholar Wilhelm Gesenius. He wrote that the plural nature of *Elohim* was for the purpose of intensification, and was related to the plural of majesty and used for amplification. Gesenius states that “the language has entirely rejected the idea of numerical plurality in Elohim (whenever it denotes one God) and is proved especially by its being almost invariably joined with a singular attribute.”¹

“That the language has entirely rejected the idea of numerical plurality in **אֱלֹהִים** (whenever it denotes one God), is proved especially by its being almost invariably joined with a singular attribute (cf. § 132 h), e.g. **שָׂעָלְתִּי אֱלֹהִים צְדִיקָם** 710, &c. Hence **אֱלֹהִים** may have been used originally not only as a numerical but also as an abstract plural (corresponding to the Latin numen, and our Godhead), and, like other abstracts of the same kind, have been transferred to a concrete single god (even of the heathen).”²

In other words, although it is very tempting to extrapolate from the word *Elohim* a definition that renders it literally as “God of Many Gods,” it is more likely than not that in the Old Testament, a Jewish book of faith, it would be wholly inconsistent with the Jewish religion to present their God as anything but a singular, individual, monotheistic deity. To render the word *Elohim* as signifying that the Jews held to a polytheistic expression of God, would simply fly in the face of their entire monotheistic belief system.

Though certainly debated, the name *Elohim* (most probably) has to do with the first God-encounter that humans experienced,³ at least within the Hebraic Jewish mindset. Those initial experiences produced awe or fear for the multiple powers of nature, as is reflected in the Old Testament where the word *Elohim* is used for God Himself. But it is also used for the complete plurality of so-called idolatrous gods, the wooden and stone images that people worshipped in their homes and village localities. *Elohim* is even used to mean “angels” and “judges.”

In the final analysis, the name *Elohim* has something to do with powers: The Powers That Be; The Many Powered; Power and Majesty. In the traditional Jewish view, *Elohim* is the Name of God as the Creator and Judge of the universe. In Exodus 3:6, the plural name of *Elohim* is modified by its singular personal pronouns, said to be spoken by God in the first person:

“The Holy One, Blessed be He, said to those, ‘You want to know my name? I am called according to my actions. When I judge the creatures I am Elohim, and when I have mercy with My world, I am named YHWH (Jehovah). . . .’”

(Exodus 3:6)

Yet, the Hebrew word *Elohim* does, without question, signify a plurality. Deciding whether or not that plurality indicates “more than one God” versus “many powers and amplified majesty” is where the debate starts and

ends. When one usage of the word is said to mean a singular God with a vast array of powers, and another translation of the word indicates a plurality and/or vast array of idols and “false gods,” you see the inherent conflict and subsequent confusion. However, as we talked about earlier, it is all about context and the usage of the word as it is modified by the surrounding verbs and adjectives.

“In the beginning, God (“Elohim”—plural) created (“bara”—singular) the heavens and the earth.”

(Genesis 1:1)

Is the word *Elohim* being used in this context a demonstration of the creative power of God representing the volitional act of a divine collective of many gods engaging in the act of the first creation? Is it a singular entity representing many gods? Or is it the God of Vast and Many Powers doing the creating? You could argue that the act of creation is being done by a singular representation of *Elohim*, or, if you take it outside the religious mindset of the author of Genesis, you could interpret the language as meaning the creative act performed by a vast host of many gods embodied in the singular *Elohim*. However, you would have to consider the point-of-view of the author of the Book of Genesis: Moses, so says Jewish tradition (and I believe there is no reason to doubt this fact, as I will demonstrate in the following chapter on Moses and the 18th Dynasty of Egypt). Moses was the great “Law Giver” of the Hebrews, establishing the Ten Commandments, whose very first mandate in the first commandment was, “*I am the Lord your God who brought you out of the land of Egypt, from the house of slavery. You shall have no other gods before Me.*” Should the emphasis of this commandment be placed on the person of the singular *Elohim* who commands that “nothing” should be put before him in the act of worship? Or should the emphasis be on the “other gods,” interpolating that other gods exist, but Jehovah God is the one who is demanding your worship if you are to follow him, alone? Or is it simply metaphoric language?

“Then God (Elohim) said, ‘Let us make mankind in our image, in our likeness, so that they may rule over the fish in the sea and the birds in the sky, over the livestock and all the wild animals, and over all the creatures that move along the ground.’”

(Genesis 1:26)

Is God, in this passage, referring to Himself in the third person, much as would an earthly monarch when speaking of the vast powers he or she holds in sway over his or her subjects? Or is this an example of a plurality of gods speaking as a singular entity?

The examples could go on to a point of trivial exhaustion, as there are more than 2,500 of them throughout the Old Testament. So let us (plural) bring (singular) our (plural) examination (singular) of the word *Elohim* (plural) to a conclusion, putting it in context with our entire subject matter, the Nephilim:

The source of the word *Nephilim* is found only in ancient Jewish religious writings, including the Bible’s Old Testament Books of Moses, the apocryphal book Book of Enoch, and a few other scant biblical and non-biblical references. Whether you like it or not, the Judeo-Christian books of faith are teh absolute source point for the word itself. That is not to say that there are not dozens of other ancient cultures (see [Chapter 4](#)) that record accounts of the same beings under different labels and names. But for the sake of going to the source of the most commonly understood and used word for these beings, the Nephilim are sourced in Jewish scriptures. According to Genesis, it was *Elohim* who gave birth to or created beings known as the Watchers (according to Enoch), who are called the Sons of God (*bene haElohim*) in Genesis [Chapter 6](#). It is said that these Sons of God descended to the earth and cohabited with human women, producing offspring called the Nephilim. Bing. Bang. Boom.

But we still have one intermediate step to look at before getting to the Nephilim themselves—namely, their unearthly lineage, the one half of their cross-bred parentage: the *bene haElohim*, or the Sons of God.

The Sons of God

Now that we have examined the plurality of the name *Elohim*, and the presentation of the Jewish concept that it meant (more likely than not) a singular God with vast majesty and possessing of many powers, we now need to examine his offspring. They are the characters in the account of the lineage of the Nephilim known as the Sons of God, the *bene Elohim* or *bene-haElohim*, the “parents”—or least one half of the parental line.

“1 When human beings began to increase in number on the earth and daughters were born to them, 2 the sons of God saw that these daughters were beautiful, and they married any of them they chose. 3 Then the Lord said, “My Spirit will not contend with human beings forever, for they are mortal; their days will be a hundred and twenty years.” 4 The Nephilim were on the earth in those days—and also afterward—when the sons of God went to the daughters of the human beings and had children by them. They were the heroes of old, men of renown.”

(Genesis 6:1-4)

These four verses from Genesis [Chapter 6](#) appear in the preamble to the account of Noah’s Flood. Noah’s name appears for the first time in the text in verse 8, where it states that he “*found favor in the eyes of the Lord*.” The passage goes on to state that Noah (and his family) was the only “righteous” human being left on the earth, and that is why he was chosen to be the builder of the great ark—or barge—which would preserve him, his family, and pairs of animals from the great watery judgment of God’s wrath. (We

will examine later the meaning of the word *righteous* and find out that it meant much more than simple spiritual goodness.)

These four verses comprise a very interesting passage in that it differs in writing style from the rest of the Book of Genesis, having earmarks of having been extracted, edited, and perhaps even plagiarized—at least in part—from other extant contemporary source material. If you’ve ever written a term paper for school, it’s like paraphrasing bits and pieces of material from external sources without quoting that source. After extensive study of this passage, Dr. David Penchansky, chair of the University of St. Thomas (St. Paul, Minn.) stated in a personal conversation with me:

This passage has been edited, either by the writer of Genesis, or by later scribes. It most certainly does not match the writing style of the rest of the book, and the language in which it is written is “choppy,” almost as if it is reproduced in the text as snippets from other source material. And the account was, obviously, far too well-known at the time to be omitted completely.

Who Are the Sons of God?

The term *bene haElohim* (בְּנֵי הָאֱלֹהִים), or Sons of God is found only four times in the Old Testament: Genesis 6:1-4; Job 1:6 and 2:1; Job 38:7; Psalm 29:1.

In the Genesis 6:1–4 passage we are told that the Sons of God looked upon human women (other translations refer to these women as: “the daughters of men/man; men’s daughters; the beautiful women of the human race; and even, ‘these girls’”) and “saw that they were beautiful.” In some translations, the Sons of God “lusted after them,” and then “married any of them they chose,” or in some translations “they took the ones they liked.”

The title, Sons of God, has been viewed several ways, and various translations refer to them as “God’s Sons, heavenly beings, and Sons from the Heavens.” It is clear to most biblical scholars that the title, Sons of God refers to angelic beings, and this is supported by other passages throughout the old and new testaments, as well as the apocryphal Book of Enoch, and various other historical texts. It is interesting to note that even Jesus of Nazareth, himself, was called “The Son of God.”

However, different views are taken on the Genesis 6:1-4 passage:

Sons of God simply refers to men, the sons of the nobles who were patrons of the school of the prophets, who married daughters of the common people. This is the view of many Jewish authorities as well as professors from my own theological roots in fundamentalist, conservative Baptist seminary circles, who hold that the Sons of God are only human men, justified by the use of *elohim* being defined as “judges” in other passages such as Exodus 21:6 and 22:8. But this is simply a means by which certain theologians avoid dealing with the intermingling of spirit beings and human women, an entire notion that falls far too close to an admission that there is more than just humanity inhabiting the universe. This is a perfect example of good scholars using disingenuous scholarship for a means to squeeze the interpretation of certain words into their particular theological point of view.

Sons of God—*bene haElohim*—is used in this passage to demonstrate the stark contrast to the term *daughters of men* (*סְרִבְגָּתָן*). From *Elohim* to *adahm*; God to man. When you read Elohim in conjunction with other words in the context, you have to view the Hebrew word for men: *adahm* (*אָדָם*). It simply means “the human race of men.” If, indeed, the Sons of God—the *bene haElohim*—refers only to mere mortal men of the upper classes, seeking to marry the daughters of the lower classes, the word *adahm* would not be contrasted with *bene haElohim*. And when used in the same context with *elohim*, *adahm* signifies the human race in contrast to the divine. The *bene-haElohim* were anything but human beings, and that is in strict unity with the Hebrew language of the passage.

Some theologians hold that the Sons of God are to be understood as the pious, righteous race descended from Seth (Adam and Eve's third son), and that "daughters of men" is to be interpreted as the "daughters of worldly men." However, the language simply does not state that, and, again, it is intellectually disingenuous, and a theological stretch to say that it does.

Whoever they were, the text makes it clear that they were bequeathed by the God who was above them; sons by birth, or sons by creative act, their point of origin is clear in all accounts: They came from the heavens and had some claim to being called Sons of God. The following passage from the Book of Enoch introduces them within the framework of the Jewish/Christian tradition—despite their appearance in a book that was banned from the canonical scriptures by the Church—and offers up a startlingly similar account to the Genesis 6:1-4 passage.

"1 It happened after the sons of men had multiplied in those days, that daughters were born to them, elegant and beautiful. 2 And when the angels, the sons of heaven, beheld them, they became enamoured of them, saying to each other, "Come, let us select for ourselves wives from the progeny of men, and let us beget children." 3 Then their leader Shamjaza said to them; "I fear that you may perhaps be indisposed to the performance of this enterprise; 4 And that I alone shall suffer for so grievous a crime." 5 But they answered him and said; "We all swear; 6 And bind ourselves by mutual execrations, that we will not change our intention, but execute our projected undertaking." 7 Then they swore all together, and all bound themselves by mutual execrations. Their whole number was two hundred, who descended upon Ardis (during the days of Jared), which is the top of mount Armon (Mt. Hermon in present day Israel). 8 That mountain therefore was called Armon, because they had sworn upon it, and bound themselves by mutual execrations. 9 These are the names of their chiefs: Shamyaza, who was their leader, Urakabarameel, Akibeel, Tamiel, Ramuel, Danel, Azkeel, Saraknyal, Azazel, Armers, Batraal, Anane, Zavebe, Samsaveel, Ertael, Turel, Yomyael, Arazyal. These

were the prefects of the two hundred angels, and the remainder were all with them. 10 Then they took wives, each choosing for himself, whom they began to approach, and with whom they cohabited; teaching them sorcery, incantations, and the dividing of roots and trees. 11 And the women conceiving brought forth giants.”

(1 Enoch 7: 1-11)



Looking west from the slopes of Mount Hermon, Israel.
Copyright Rama Yappy Kawitarka mannaismayaadventure.wordpress.com.
Used with permission.

According to Enoch, the Sons of God were created, bequeathed angelic beings who descended (fell down) to the earthly realm, and on the slopes of Mount Hermon made a pact to produce offspring with human women. To ascribe malevolence to these angels would not be wholly accurate, but Enoch's book does intimate that should they carry out their plan, they were in fear of being held responsible for enacting a “sinful” deed in the eyes of God. Enoch goes on to tell of the attributes they brought down to the human race with them: enchantments, the making of weaponry, meteorology,

astrology, astronomy, interpretations of moon phases, herbology, and the signs of the sun, stars, and moon. With these angelic-taught skills, mankind delved to the lowest common denominator by developing the art of warfare and pursued wickedness to the point of stirring up Jehovah's wrath. And the Sons of God were, indeed, held to blame; Shemjaza, their leader, somehow overlooked, and Azazel held as the main culprit for introducing weapons and warfare to mankind.

And then there was their “giant” offspring.

The Nephilim

According to scripture, the offspring of the Sons of God and human women were the Nephilim, but I do not believe the term is solely attributable to the offspring only. The Sons of God who descended from the heavens were known as the Nephilim once they took up residence in the earthly realm. So they and their offspring together became known as the Nephilim. It is similar to the scenario you have when an Irish immigrant moves his existence to America. He is Irish, but his emigrating act has given him the new title of American, and he and his offspring are now known by both titles: Irish and American, possessing a dual identity. But the children born to him in America bear the stronger title.

The writers of the 1611 King James Bible indirectly translated the word *Nephilim* as “giants,” yet the preferred scholarly translation is “fallen ones.” Giant can be better understood when you ascribe the values of height, distance from the ground to the top, descending from the heights, falling from the heavens, and so forth. Although there are many scholarly views on the identity of the Nephilim, you have to take into consideration the interpretation of the word based on the surrounding textual context, as well as the audience for whom the text is written.

The root Hebrew word for Nephilim is the verb *nephal* (Hebrew text נָפַל), meaning: 1) to fall (to the ground); 2) to fall (in battle); 3) to be cast down; 4) to desert a location; 5) to fail. The “im” (Hebrew text יִם) denotes plurality, giving us the “fallen down ones,” or the “ones who descended.”

The Sons of God can best be defined as a race of beings who descended—or “fell”—to the earth, abandoning their existence and habitation in the heavenly realms. According to the Bible, they were angelic in origin, birthed/created by God (*Elohim*), and they brought to the human inhabitants of the earth special skills, as well as an unearthly libido. Their offspring bore the title of Nephilim, and the propagation of their mixed race on the earth led to the judgment of God in the form of a flood, as described in Genesis and other ancient accounts. Also mentioned in the Book of Enoch is the fact that these beings descended to the earth during “the days of Jared,” the father of Enoch. His name means, literally, “descent,” and he was named thus because the descent of the Sons of God to the earth took place during his lifetime.

It is interesting at this point, to note that both Jared and Enoch are also mentioned in the Genesis account:

“18 When Jared was 162 years old, his son Enoch was born. 19 After the birth of Enoch, Jared lived another 800 years, and he had other sons and daughters. 20 He died at the age of 962. 21 When Enoch was 65 years old, his son Methuselah was born. 22 After the birth of Methuselah, Enoch lived another 300 years in close fellowship with God, and he had other sons and daughters. 23 Enoch lived 365 years in all. 24 He enjoyed a close relationship with God throughout his life. Then suddenly, he disappeared because God took him.”

(Genesis 5:18-24)

In the older archaic English of the 1611 King James Version of the Bible, that last verse is worded “*And Enoch walked with God, and was not, for God took him.*”

Digest all of that. Then take a deep, cleansing breath.

Elohim begat the *bene haElohim*, who begat the Nephilim. But that is simply one version of events. The question that still begs to be asked and answered is: What if the Nephilim, as defined by other cultural writings of the day, are something completely different? What if the Jewish Bible is only a version of events as understood and written by a monotheistic culture who recorded these events from within their framework of understanding, from within a monotheistic, mono-theocratic structure? What if these angelic beings were anything but angels? As is always the case, the uncovering of the basics only leads to deeper questions. As we move forward we will tackle the issue of extraterrestrial origins and the seeding of mankind.

But first, let's move to an all-important historical examination of Moses, the author of the Pentateuch, the first five books of the Bible or, as the Jewish religion calls it, the Torah. Once you have an understanding of this man's origins and why he wrote the things he wrote, you start to gain a clearer picture of just who the Nephilim really are, and why Moses wrote what he did.

chapter 3

The Pharaoh-God of Israel

Who Was Moses...*Really*?

“Yahweh spoke to Moses face to face, as a man speaks to his friend.”

(Exodus 33:11)

“27 They gave Moses this account: ‘We went into the land to which you sent us, and it does flow with milk and honey! Here is its fruit. 28 But the people who live there are powerful, and the cities are fortified and very large. We even saw descendants of Anak there.... 33 We saw the Nephilim there, the descendants of Anak of the Nephilim. We seemed like grasshoppers in our own eyes, and we looked the same to them.’”

(Numbers 13:27-28, 33)

As I state in my public lectures on the topic of the Nephilim, we are now going to “rabbit trail” a bit. But it is a vitally contextual, highly relevant side-track to understanding the bigger picture of the Watchers and the Nephilim. It’s going to include a lot of history, but remember: *History is fun, passionate, and exciting!* This isn’t the stuff of sitting in a boring high school classroom; this is the stuff that opens the door and sheds the light. Understanding the past gives illumination to the present. We all have personal histories and things that have happened in our pasts to make us

who and what we are today. The same applies to this outstanding character in history. Understanding that he is much more than a Bible story, but rather a real person who lived and breathed and experienced life, will help us to greater understand the things he wrote about and why he said what he said.

Of great importance to understanding the Genesis account of the Nephilim is having an understanding of the author of the book and the education he would have experienced in the royal courts of 18th Dynasty Egypt. The first five books of the Bible's Old Testament—Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy—are collectively known as the Pentateuch, the books of the Law, and their authorship is attributed to Moses, the most well-known lawgiver and Hebrew leader of Judeo-Christian tradition.

First of all, Moses is the author of the Book of Genesis. Just because he is a biblical character whose story is made up of fantastical deeds and miraculous events, does not mean he is simply part of myth.

It is Moses who, the Book of Exodus tells us, was born a Hebrew slave living under captivity in the slave city of Goshen in the delta region of the land of Egypt. The Hebrews had been living in Egypt as a family since the time of their ancestor-patriarch Joseph, one of the sons of Jacob/Israel, who migrated them to Egypt during a time of great famine in Canaan, present-day Israel. The family grew into an expatriated people, numbering nearly two million by the time of the Exodus, and suffered a gradual captivity imposed on them by the Egyptian pharaohs during a period of four centuries.

It is important to point out that, although the story of Moses is rife with faith-story tradition, many of the deeds of the historical man Moses cannot be found anywhere in recorded history, other than the pages of holy scripture and religious writings. And one has to dig very deeply to find the scant mentions that do exist, and even then there is the monumental task of discerning the man from the legend. The historical treatment of his life, as it

appears in the Old Testament books of Exodus through Deuteronomy, are events written from the perspective of the man himself, comprising major context within four of the five books of the Law in the Old Testament. Moses was a powerful man striving—as would any leader of a new nation that was the product of invasion, rebellion, or coup—to establish his authority and base of power. It is important to understand that Moses was the product of 18th Dynasty Egypt, where he was part of a ruling dynasty that held absolute power over its subjects, and this is where he learned the royal skills necessary for national leadership. This is where Moses learned that he was a “son of the Pharaoh God.” This is where he learned to impose the will of a god-man over the people he ruled.

In reading the pages of religious scripture, one must ask whether Moses was a mere figment of the pious imagination of Jewish rabbis and Hebrew historians, a mere adjunct to religious sentimentality and Judeo-Christian mythos? Or was he a real personality of some stature and substance in Egypt as the Jewish Scriptures claim? During the biblical account of the Ten Plagues of Egypt and the “let my people go!” audiences Moses had with, arguably, the most powerful monarch in the known world, we are given the distinct impression that Moses has absolute dominance over the Pharaoh, the government, and the people. In fact the biblical record states explicitly:

“The man Moses was very great in the land of Egypt, in the sight of Pharaoh’s servants and in the sight of the people.”

(Exodus 11:3)

During the period of the Ten Plagues, the very word of Moses became as *law* in the courts of the Pharaoh and the land of Egypt. Take note of what most commentators on the biblical account have overlooked:

“And all these your servants” [Moses is addressing the pharaoh]
“shall come down to me, and bow down themselves unto me, saying,

“Get you out and all the people that follow you: and after that I will go out!” And he went out from Pharaoh in the heat of a great anger.”

(Exodus 11:8)

Moses minced no words, but rather dictated with power and authority to the most powerful ruler of the ancient world. Moses was notable, exceptional, talented, and no ordinary man by any standard, past or present.

Faith Story vs. Historical Account

This is also where I am sure to draw a bit of heated criticism from my old Bible School classmates and fellow seminarians, as well as leaders and friends from the evangelical Christian circles in which I spent many years of my life. For to question the absolute authority of the Bible in its application to faith, practice, theology, or history is to question the very nature and attributes of God, Himself. Yet, there are gaping holes in the scriptural historical accounts that can be filled only with extrapolation of historical data, and the squeezing of size 13 feet into size 10 1/2 wide Egyptian sandals.

We are informed by Polybius (c. 201-120 BCE) that there are essentially three classes of historians:

- ★ One class slants their documentation for financial gain, expressing “the pleasure or the plans of kings and states.”
- ★ Another class writes for those who enjoy “rhetorical display,” an enjoyment of the sensuous exploitation of words, in a manner that sounds pleasant to the listener.
- ★ Finally, some record the truth, “for the good of mankind.”¹

The New Testament references to Moses are written within a framework of early Christian apologetics, meant to establish the young Christian religion during its infancy. The faith story told by early Christian apologists is solid tradition that sets a foundation for religious practice and tradition, and the history remains obscure, unsubstantiated, and many times unverifiable by extant historical records of the day. There are many traditional tales of Moses, as well as traditional histories in the Jewish Mishnah and other writings, but the Egyptian historical records are silent. And even Moses himself for some reason refrains from mentioning historical names of the pharaohs and royalties that would have surrounded him during the first 40 years of his life spent as a prince of Egypt.

And that is because the writings of Moses were never meant to be cold, hard, historical records. They were meant to establish the authority of God over Israel, as embodied in the authority of Moses. We see presented in the scripture an acceptable arrogance in Moses that is an indicative—and many times necessary—ingredient on the part of national leaders in establishing their authority. Even more so when that leader claims that his authority is one that is favored by the gods. Or in Moses' case, by God. Moses, in writing of his relationship with God, states in Exodus 33:11 that he was able to "*speak with God face-to-face, as a man speaks to his friend.*" Yet Moses was not destroyed by the utter holiness of God in a consuming fireball for this intimate contact. Then, a few verses later in the very same passage, God Himself tells us, via the pen of Moses:

"You cannot see My face, for no man can see Me and live!"

(Exodus 33:20)

When Moses emphatically states that he survived what other human beings could not, he establishes himself as having a little bit of divine edge that is above and beyond what the common person could endure. He begins to equate himself with the Divine in ways that establish his leadership over Israel as not only divinely appointed, but miraculously maintained. When

Moses had his personal, face-to-face meetings with Jehovah, this is how they are described in the book of Exodus:

“7 Now Moses used to take a tent and pitch it outside the camp some distance away, calling it the ‘tent of meeting.’ Anyone inquiring of the LORD would go to the tent of meeting outside the camp. 8 And whenever Moses went out to the tent, all the people rose and stood at the entrances to their tents, watching Moses until he entered the tent. 9 As Moses went into the tent, the pillar of cloud would come down and stay at the entrance, while the LORD spoke with Moses. 10 Whenever the people saw the pillar of cloud standing at the entrance to the tent, they all stood and worshiped, each at the entrance to their tent. 11 The LORD would speak to Moses face to face, as one speaks to a friend.”

(Exodus 33:7-11)

God descended to the tent of Moses in a cloud—just as He did when descending upon the ark of the covenant in the cloudy form of His female counterpart, the Shekinah—but outside the written text, no one knows exactly what Moses encountered while alone in the tent with the presence that descended there. Whether this happened precisely as the book of Exodus describes or whether it was a series of events that Moses used to further establish his position as the Pharaoh-God of Israel will be a question that remains unanswered, as there is no way to establish the veracity of what he has written beyond faith.

There are, however, speculative Ancient Alienists who would chalk these events firmly into the “Alien Encounter” category. Though we cannot establish the existence of the Divine beyond the faith of the human heart, some would choose to view these events as not only supernatural, but extra-terrestrial. Just as the pillar of cloud by day and the pillar of fire by night appeared in the skies and went before the Israelites to guide their way, the same pillar of cloud came down to the tent of Moses and later came down and settled on the ark of the covenant in a form that is described in the Hebrew language by a strictly female term, the Shekinah (**הנִיכָש**), the

grammatically feminine presence of God.² According to the text of Exodus, “all the people” saw these events take place, and if there was any further editing of the book after Moses’ death, the passages were not omitted. The event is there in the context to establish the absolute authority and sovereignty of God, as well as the absolute authority of Moses as the God-appointed leader.

Regarding the pillars of fire and cloud themselves, it is well established in rabbinic teaching that these manifestations were nothing other than the magnificence and glory of God; God personally appearing in miraculous manifestations to lead his people. This is what is known to theologians as a “theophany,” an appearance of God in physical form. And according to Judeo-Christian teaching, this is simply the glory of God appearing at the door of Moses’ tent, and hovering in the sky to guide his people. Moses was set apart as the only human being to have this close contact with God, thereby establishing him as someone who was in close union with God. The next best thing to being the monarchical Pharaoh-God.

But then we see the following passage, just a few verses later, in which Moses is not allowed to see the face of God. For some reason, the same presence that spoke to Moses in the tent, face-to-face, could not allow Moses to see its face on the top of Mount Sinai. Like anyone else who experiences the mystical, phenomenal paranormal, there is always the desire to be drawn in and know more, see more, experience more. So Moses asked for more:

“18 Then Moses said, ‘Now show me your glory.’ 19 And the LORD said, ‘I will cause all my goodness to pass in front of you, and I will proclaim my name, the LORD, in your presence. I will have mercy on whom I will have mercy, and I will have compassion on whom I will have compassion. 20 But,’ he said, ‘you cannot see my face, for no one may see me and live.’ 21 Then the LORD said, ‘There is a place near me where you may stand on a rock. 22 When my glory passes by, I will put you in a cleft in the rock and cover you with my

hand until I have passed by. 23 Then I will remove my hand and you will see my back; but my face must not be seen.””

(Exodus 33:18-23)

In establishing the magnificence and glory of the all powerful Jehovah God, Moses writes that even he was not allowed to look on God's face, though just a few sentences earlier he had established that he possessed a special, hierarchical relationship with God, being the only man who had ever talked with God “face-to-face,” as a man talks with his friend. This was all written so that the people would understand that Moses indeed as powerful as the Pharaoh-Gods of Egypt; he communed with the Divine in the most intimate of ways! And later, during the 40 years of wandering in the wilderness as a nomadic people, Moses goes a step further, and in his anger with the people he equates himself with God by referring to himself and God as “We.” For this, the scripture then tells us, Moses was reprimanded by God for his pride, and not allowed to enter into the Land of Promise. Whether that anecdotal story was part of Moses' original account, or was added later by a future editor, such as Joshua, Moses' successor, is unknown. But what is clear is that Moses took on himself the persona of the Pharaoh-God, the ruler who has absolute authority and absolute communion with the Divine.

The Residual Effect of Communing With Deity

“29 When Moses came down from Mount Sinai with the two tablets of the covenant law in his hands, he was not aware that his face was radiant because he had spoken with the LORD. 30 When Aaron and all the Israelites saw Moses, his face was radiant, and they were afraid to come near him. 31 But Moses called to them; so Aaron and all the leaders of the community came back to him, and he spoke to them. 32 Afterward all the Israelites came near him, and he gave them all the commands the LORD had given him on Mount Sinai. 33 When Moses finished speaking to them, he put a veil over his face. 34 But

whenever he entered the LORD's presence to speak with him, he removed the veil until he came out. And when he came out and told the Israelites what he had been commanded, 35 they saw that his face was radiant. Then Moses would put the veil back over his face until he went in to speak with the LORD."

(Exodus 34:29-35)

Moses' encounters with the Divine left physical traces. His face glowed and his hair and beard turned white as snow. So frightening was his appearance that he had to veil his face to hide the radiance. His face-to-face encounters with the radioactive deity bleached his skin and made him ... glow. And according to the biblical passage, he didn't even realize it until the people recoiled in superstitious horror.

It is interesting to note at this point that the Watchers who descended to the slopes of Mount Hermon, and in their varying forms as manifested in other cultures around the ancient world, were said to be bright, shining gods who descended from the skies. The ancient Sumarian *El*, the Celtic *Aillil*, Babylonian *Ellu*, Cornish *El*, Incan *Illa*, Hebrew *Elah*, and Muslim *Allah* all had their varying words for the physical shining brightness of the gods who descended down to mankind.

Was it this same light that was passed on to Moses during his close encounters with *Elohim*?

General and King

It is vital to establish exactly what it is that Moses would have experienced during those first 40 years of his life in order to have an understanding of what influenced him when he became the leader of the wilderness-wandering nation of Israel later in life. The culture, education,

and religion of Egypt would have had an intensely engraining influence on the man, despite the Bible telling us that he made a conscious choice to identify himself with his own people—which alone tells us that he was being raised as an Egyptian, living as part of the royal family of 18th Dynasty Egypt in Thebes, near Luxor, roughly 400 miles up the Nile, south of present-day Cairo. Moses was less Hebrew than he was Egyptian, so for him to make a cognitive choice to identify himself with his slave people of origin, was nothing less than altruistic. Perhaps even heroic.

But was his identification with the Hebrews an “act of faith” on his part, as the New Testament Book of Hebrews tells us, or was it in an attempt to look for opportunities to *rule* them?

There is a traditional tale in Jewish mishnah that speaks of Moses leading an army, under orders of the Pharaoh, to quell a rebellion in Nubia. Once the rebellion is squashed, and thousands of rebels are dead, Moses takes the throne for his very own, much to the chagrin of the ruling family in Nubia. Word gets back to the Pharaoh, who hastily reprimands Moses, telling him to relinquish the throne to the vassal ruling family, and to get himself and his army back to Egypt. Moses, of course, abdicates the short-lived monarchy, and returns to the courts of the Pharaoh.

Desiring a position as the ruler of a people was in Moses’ blood. He was raised as a prince, and his Egyptian queen step-mother raised him to be the next Pharaoh.

I cannot emphasize enough how utterly important it is, in dissecting the story of the Watchers descent to Mount Hermon and their offspring the Nephilim—to have an understanding of what Moses would have been exposed to in the royal tutelage and religious philosophies of 18th Dynasty Egypt.

The Traditional Story

Moses was born a slave, but adopted by a queen of Egypt, where he grew up as a palace kid, enjoying an upbringing that afforded him a royal education and lifestyle. What we know from the biblical account is that as he grew older, he began to identify himself more and more with his own people, and arrogantly saw himself, from his lofty position in the royal courts of Egypt, as the prophesied deliverer of the Hebrew people from bondage. Taking matters into his own hands, he murdered an Egyptian taskmaster and fled for his life from the wrath of the Pharaoh. He spent the next 40 years as a shepherd in the land of Midian, where he married the daughter of Jethro, the high priest of Midian, and lived to the age of 80 as a sort of outback, off-the-grid shepherd.

It was at the age of 80 that he saw a miraculous vision of God in the form of a burning bush, and was called out to return to Egypt and lead the Hebrews out of slavery. Moses balked and attempted to get out of any task that would bring him back to the land where he had spent the first half of his life and where he was wanted for murder. But God assured him that those who sought his life were long since dead and his crimes forgotten. Moses returned, and, in a series of coercive plagues leveled against the land of Egypt, finally convinced the pharaoh to set the Hebrews free after the plague of the firstborn took the life of the Pharaoh's son. Under Moses' leadership, the Hebrews left Egypt *en masse* overnight in an event called the Great Exodus, which has been celebrated ever since at the Jewish Passover.

The Pharaoh, of course, has second thoughts and mounts his armies to pursue the escaping Hebrew slaves, only to have them destroyed in one of the Bible's greatest, single mythically miraculous events: the parting of the Red Sea. Once completely free of the Pharaoh and his armies, Moses leads the Hebrews to the Holy Mountain of God—some say it is Sinai, other writings place it at Jabal Musa in Saudi Arabia. It is here that Moses climbs to the top and meets God face-to-face, and God sends him back down 40

days later with the tablets of the Law inscribed (by God's own hand) with the Ten Commandments. Upon Moses' descent, he finds the people worshipping a golden calf and partying like an Egyptian. He breaks the tablets and imposes punishment for the idolatrous worship, then returns to the mountaintop, where God inscribes a new set of stone texts for him.

The Hebrews make their way to the Land of Cana'an, only to have their spies return with reports of giant Nephilim dwelling in the land. In fear, the people tell Moses that they are unwilling to enter Cana'an and conquer it, even though it was promised them by God because it was their ancestral homeland. So Moses leads them back out to the wilderness where they wander as a nomadic tribe for 40 years. In the process of their wilderness sojourn, Moses, in an angry response to the complaints of the people, commits the sinful act of pride by equating himself with God, and is then told by God that for his punishment, he could see the promised land, but not enter it. As the Hebrews march into the land of Cana'an, Moses ascends the slope of Mount Nebo, where he gazes into the land of God's promise, and dies. His body is never found.

In the entire account of the life and deeds of Moses as written in the Old Testament, we are never given the names of the historical kings of Egypt with whom Moses lived and against whom he stood in conflict in his return to lead the Hebrews out of captivity. They are referred to only as "Pharaoh" or "the king of Egypt."

Moses had particular reasons for writing these accounts the way he did, the first of which was a demonstration of just how unimportant the names of these great rulers were to the story of the deliverance of his people. Examining the life of Moses and the dating of his exploits will bring a much greater understanding of the texts he authored and subsequently his handling of the topic of the Nephilim in his Book of Genesis.

The Making of a Pharaoh-God

It is extremely important to have an understanding of the historical data surrounding these people and events, for without that information we are left to dangle at the end of the rope of mythology and legend. Seeking out and ascribing solid dates and historical facts is nothing short of throwing wide the door of illumination on the dark room of ignorance and speculative conjecture. Of course, there are many who will say that these very facts presented here are nothing but subjective hypothesis, yet out of all the systems and theories set in place to establish the historical life of Moses, this is the one that makes the most sense by the current facts as they exist—at least when one makes an attempt to ensure the facts as presented in the Bible concur as closely as possible to the historical record.

And before you walk away from this chapter wondering what the historical story of Moses has to do with the Sons of God and the Nephilim, consider this: The man who wrote about them in the Book of Genesis experienced an upbringing, education, and lifestyle in the courts of the Egyptian royalty. Being one of the progeny of the Pharaoh, who was considered to be a god, Moses was indeed himself, a literal “son of god” in the eyes of the Egyptian people. Moses’ notions of the creation of the world and the birth of humanity were greatly influenced by the religion of the Egyptian culture that was all around him during his first 40 years of life.

According to the Book of Exodus, Moses stepped out and chose to be identified with his own people, the Hebrew slaves, but at the same time, he did not relinquish his position in the royal family of Egypt. It is plainly evident in the passages of biblical text that he saw this identification with the Hebrews as a way to set himself up as their promised deliverer. In a very real sense, there was an undercurrent of political opportunism in Moses that he could not simply allow to pass by. He may have had a faith that he was the promised deliverer, as the New Testament Book of Hebrews tells us, but that faith seems to be something applied to his acts by the foundational apologists for the Christian faith, as opposed to the literal moral motivation on the part of Moses. It is clear in the Exodus text that he saw himself as greater than those around him—a thing not at all out of

place for someone raised in a family of monarchs who held an iron-fisted rule over Egypt.



The Barque shrine relief (highlighted area) at Medinat Habu, “House of Millions of Years.” Located at the upper western end of the lower portion of the north interior wall of the second courtyard, the “Festival Hall,” northwestern quadrant. Moses would have seen this wall many times during his youth in Egypt.

Photos courtesy of Dr. John T. Ward and Dr. Maria Nilsson, The Sirius Project copyright 2011. Used with permission.

And make no mistake about it: Moses was Hebrew in name only during his first 40 years of life. Moses was an Egyptian through and through, as most of his writings, philosophies, adjudication of laws, and building of religious ceremonial objects implies. Even the ark of the covenant, which Moses, as the voice of God, gave instruction to build, resembles so closely

the relief paintings of Egyptian barque shrines of worship, that the roots of influence are undeniable.

Solomon's Temple: The Cornerstone to Dating Moses

There is a hardcore, undisputed historical date in the Old Testament on which we can hang our hat when determining the dating of the events of Moses' life. Once this date is established, the rest of the mystery surrounding Moses' life unravels.

In 966 BCE, in the fourth year of the reign of Solomon, the son of David, as king of Israel, the first Jewish temple built in Jerusalem (known historically and archaeologically as "Temple") was dedicated.³ This is an iron-clad date in history, disputed only by a number of three to five years in either direction by Jewish, Christian, and historical scholars alike.

"In the four hundred and eightieth year after the Israelites came out of Egypt, in the fourth year of Solomon's reign over Israel, in the month of Ziv, the second month, he began to build the temple of the LORD."

(1 Kings 6:1)

And there you have it. Although even the existence of kings David and Solomon is still in raging dispute among archaeologists, scholars, and biblical minimalists, the temple in Jerusalem was dedicated in 966 BCE, and the date is non-disputed. This brings us to the dating of the Exodus. According to the aforementioned passage from 1 Kings, the temple was dedicated in the 480th year after the Hebrews were led out of their Egyptian captivity. This would make the year of the great Exodus under the leadership of Moses, the first Passover of the Jewish religion, 1446 BCE.

And if Moses was 80 years old at the time of the Exodus, he would have been born in 1526 BCE during the reign of Thutmoses I.

The Egyptian Pharaohs During the Time Line of Moses

Thutmoses 1

“8 Then a new king... came to power in Egypt. 9 ‘Look,’ he said to his people, ‘the Israelites have become far too numerous for us. 10 Come, we must deal shrewdly with them or they will become even more numerous and, if war breaks out, will join our enemies, fight against us and leave the country.’ 11 So they put slave masters over them to oppress them with forced labor, and they built Pithom and Rameses as store cities for Pharaoh. 12 But the more they were oppressed, the more they multiplied and spread; so the Egyptians came to dread the Israelites 13 and worked them ruthlessly. 14 They made their lives bitter with harsh labor in brick and mortar and with all kinds of work in the fields; in all their harsh labor the Egyptians worked them ruthlessly.”

(Exodus 1:8-14)

In accordance with the dateline we hinge on the dating of Solomon's Temple, Moses was born in 1526 BCE, during the first year of the reign of Thutmoses I, the son of Hebrew slaves Amram and Jocabel. Thutmoses I ruled Egypt from 1526 to 1513 BCE, and it was during his reign, the Bible tells us, that the Pharaoh of Egypt issued a decree that all Hebrew male children below the age of 2 years be slain and cast into the Nile River.

“15 The king of Egypt said to the Hebrew midwives, whose names were Shiphrah and Puah, 16 ‘When you are helping the Hebrew women during childbirth on the delivery stool, if you see that the baby is a boy, kill him; but if it is a girl, let her live.’ 17 The midwives, however, feared God and did not do what the king of Egypt had told them to do; they let the boys live. 18 Then the king of Egypt summoned the midwives and asked them, ‘Why have you done this? Why have you let the boys live?’ 19 The midwives answered Pharaoh, ‘Hebrew women are not like Egyptian women; they are vigorous and give birth before the midwives arrive.’ 20 So God was kind to the midwives and the people increased and became even more numerous. 21 And because the midwives feared God, he gave them families of their own. 22 Then Pharaoh gave this order to all his people: ‘Every Hebrew boy that is born you must throw into the Nile, but let every girl live.’”

(Exodus 1:15-22)

Moses’ mother hid her infant son as long as she could, and when he was 3 months old, in a plot to spare him from the Pharaoh’s decree, she placed him in a pitch-smeared basket woven from papyrus and set him adrift on the Nile River. Although this is not implicit in the text, it can be subjectively surmised that this was no arbitrary act of blind hope on her part. When she released him to the currents of the Nile, she ordered her daughter Miriam, Moses’ older sister, to follow along in the bulrushes along the shoreline to assure that no harm came to the child and that the basket reached the destination she had hoped: the Nile backwater pools of the palace, where the Pharaoh’s household came to bathe.

The idea of a “savior in a basket, floating down the river” was not exclusive to the story of Moses.

Sargon the Great

In an Akkadian clay cuneiform tablet purporting to be the biography of Sargon the Great of Akkad, around 2400 BCE, legend states that his mother was a temple priestess. Giving birth to him in secret and setting him in a basket to float, she abandoned him to the Euphrates river. Akki, a gardener, rescued him from the river and raised him. After working as a gardener for Akki, Sargon rose to the position of cup-bearer to Ur-Zababa, the king of Kish, and from there went on to rise in power, sacking Uruk and establishing himself as the emperor of Sumar in place of Lugalzagesi, king of Uruk.

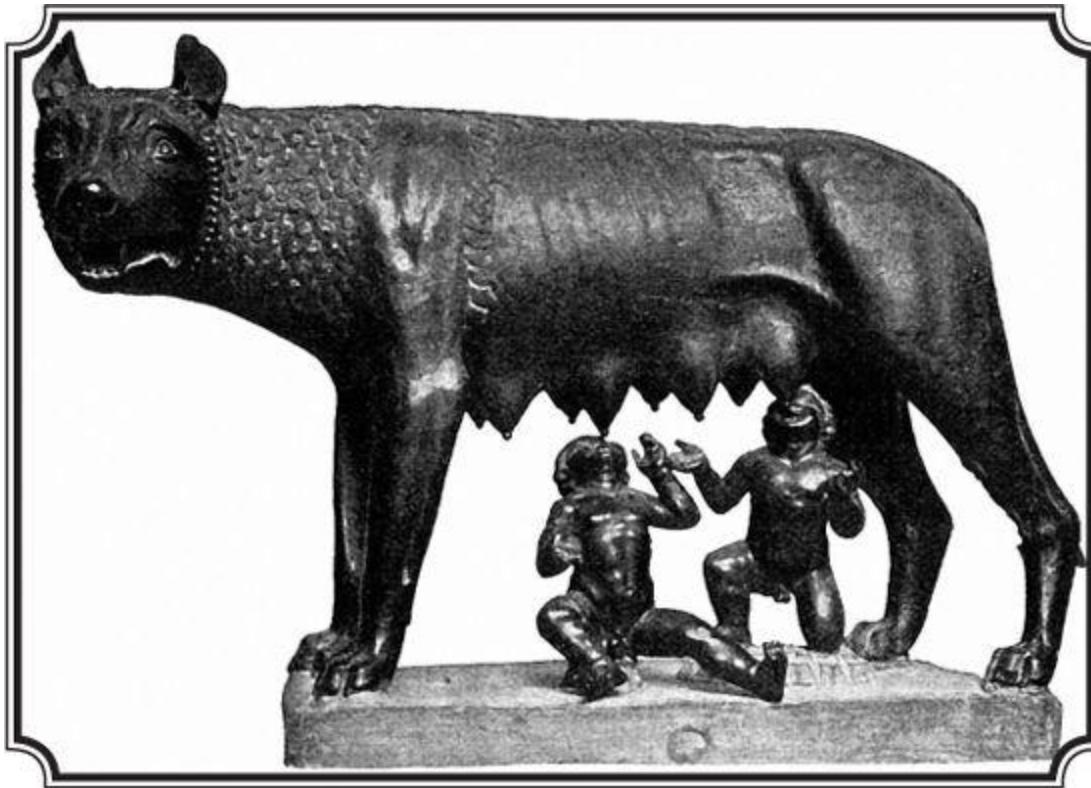
Osiris

Osiris, around 2500 BCE, the sacrificial savior god of Egypt, was murdered, after which his decapitated crowned head was placed in a papyrus basket and floated down the Nile.

Romulus and Remus

Romulus and Remus, according to Plutarch, were twins descended from Prince Aeneas, a fugitive from the legendary city of Troy after its destruction by the Achaeans. Their maternal grandfather was his descendant *Numitor*, who inherited the kingship of Alba Longa. Numitor's brother *Amulius* inherited its treasury, including the gold brought by Aeneas from Troy. Amulius used his control of the treasury to dethrone Numitor, but feared that Numitor's daughter, Rhea Silvia, would bear children who could overthrow him. In an attempt to solidify his claim to the throne with no other royal candidates rising to challenge him, Amulius forced Rhea Silvia to perpetual virginity as a Vestal priestess. This didn't end up working, as she bore children anyway. According to the legend, Mars, the god of war, seduced Silvia and impregnated her. In other accounts, it was Hercules or

even Amulius himself who impregnated his niece. Under confinement by Amulius, she gives birth to twin boys of remarkable beauty, upon which her uncle ordered all of their deaths. Rhea was buried alive, and Amulius ordered the death of the twins by exposure; both means would avoid his direct blood-guilt.



“She-Wolf Suckles Romulus and Remus.” Capitoline Wolf, traditionally believed to be Etruscan, fifth century BC, with figures of Romulus and Remus added in the 15th century by Antonio Pollaiuolo.

Photo courtesy of Wikimedia Commons (commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:She-wolf_suckles_Romulus_and_Remus.jpg).

Amulius charged a servant with the deed of killing the twins, but the servant could not follow through with the act. Instead he placed them in a basket and left it on the banks of the Tiber River, which flooded and carried the twins downstream, unharmed. The river deity Tiberinus made the basket

catch in the roots of a fig tree that grew in the Velabrum swamp at the base of the Palatine Hill. The twins were found and suckled by a she-wolf, Lupa, and fed by a woodpecker, Picus. A shepherd named Faustulus discovered the twin boys and took them to his hut, where he and his wife Acca Larentia raised them as their own children. Romulus went on to found the city of Rome.

Hatshepsut

This remarkable woman was the daughter of Thutmose I, born in or around 1535 BCE. She went on to marry her half-brother Thutmose II, fathered by Thutmose I and to a “lesser” wife. He was weak and somewhat sickly in his reign, and she loathed the man. When he died, she became coregent of Egypt with her stepson, Thutmose III (from, yet again, a lesser wife), and eventually deposed him and took over the monarchy as ruler herself. Thutmose III learned to hate his stepmother, and when she died, he had all Hatshepsut’s imagery stricken from every painting, obelisk, and relief, eradicating her from Egyptian history and the afterlife. Thutmose III went on to bring Egypt’s United Kingdom during the 18th Dynasty to its golden pinnacle.

In 1526, Hatshepsut would have been a mere child of about 7 to 10 years of age. When she found the baby Moses in a basket, floating into her bathing pool off the Nile; she claimed him and named him, but had no way to care for him on her own. It was then that Miriam emerged from the bulrushes and offered to help, taking the child back to his mother to have him cared for until the royal princess was old enough to legitimately adopt him, which she did a few years later.



This remarkable woman, who reigned in Egypt's 18th Dynasty, is most probably the stepmother of the biblical Moses, whom she found floating in the Nile in a basket made of bulrushes.

Photo courtesy of the author. Copyright 2011.

It can be speculated that a man named Senmut, very close to Hatshepsut and the tutor to her daughter, was none other than Moses himself. Though

the evidence is only circumstantial, one must read a bit between the lines and hail to Egyptian mythology to make the connections.

Senmut was very close to Hatshepsut and was her strongest ally, advisor, and friend, a lowly born man who rose to power with Hatshepsut. It is speculated that his lowly birth was as a Hebrew slave, and his close stepson relationship to Hatshepsut was nothing short of the love between mother and son, and the nepotism that came along with it. The name Senmut itself means “*mother’s brother*.”

To understand the significance of this mother’s brother title, it is necessary to look, briefly, at Egyptian religion and the Pharaoh: The ancient Egyptians believed that the first king of Egypt was Osiris, married to his sister Isis. Set, the brother of Osiris, murdered him out of jealousy, and claimed the throne. Incorporating a spell of magic, Isis brought Osiris back to life for one night, made love with him, and conceived a child, after which Osiris returned to his death state. The child she bore was Horus, the reincarnation of Osiris, who reclaims his rightful place on throne. The child born to Isis was, all at once, her son, her husband, and her brother. All kings of Egypt were then said to be “Horus,” the reincarnation of Osiris.

And this is the significance of the name given to Moses—*Senmut*. He was being “set up” by his mother, Hatshepsut, in the Egyptian economy to be the future king, the royal heir of his “grandfather-Pharaoh,” Thutmose I, who had no living royal male heirs. But he had one royal daughter, Hatshepsut. The future king could only inherit the throne through the royal daughter. Hatshepsut convinced her father, the Pharaoh, to make her little adopted boy his future heir. Nefure, as the symbolic Isis, had her little “Osiris/Horus,” who was named Senmut, his “mother’s brother.”

When Senmut/Moses makes the decision to identify himself with his slave people, the Hebrews, he forever cut himself off from the adopted pharohonic line of Hatshepsut.

“By faith Moses, when he was come to years, refused to be called the son of Pharaoh’s daughter.”

(Hebrews 11:24)

Some of Senmut/Moses’ many titles conferred on him by Hatshepsut were: Overseer of the Works, Overseer of the Fields, Overseer of the Double Gold House, Overseer of the Gardens of Amun, Controller of Works, Overseer of the Administrative Office of the Mansion, Conductor of Festivals, Overseer of the Cattle of Amun, Steward of the King’s Daughter Neferura, Chief of the King, Magnate of the Tens of Upper and Lower Egypt, Chief of the Mansion of the Red Crown, Privy Councillor, Chief Steward of Amun, Overseer of the Double Granary of Amun, Chief Architect, and none other than Hereditary Prince and Count.

Murder and Flight

“11 One day, after Moses had grown up, he went out to where his own people were and watched them at their hard labor. He saw an Egyptian beating a Hebrew, one of his own people. 12 Looking this way and that and seeing no one, he killed the Egyptian and hid him in the sand. 13 The next day he went out and saw two Hebrews fighting. He asked the one in the wrong, ‘Why are you hitting your fellow Hebrew?’ 14 The man said, ‘Who made you ruler and judge over us? Are you thinking of killing me as you killed the Egyptian?’ Then Moses was afraid and thought, ‘What I did must have become known.’ 15 When Pharaoh heard of this, he tried to kill Moses, but Moses fled from Pharaoh and went to live in Midian . . .”

(Exodus 3:11-15)

Shortly before Hatshepsut’s death in 1483 BCE, Senmut mysteriously and completely disappears from the royal courts of Egypt and the historical records. Having been groomed to be the next Pharaoh, it becomes clear that

Senmut/Moses' adopted half-brother, Thutmoses III, the co-regent with his stepmother Hatshepsut, had every motivation to eliminate Moses after he murdered the Egyptian taskmaster. So Moses—formerly Senmut, Hereditary Prince and Count of Egypt—fled to the wilderness for his life. He would not return to Egypt for 40 years, but when he did, it was with a much different influence on the royal courts of Egypt.

But Moses, at this point in his life, despite “identifying” himself with his Hebrew people, was thoroughly Egyptian, and he carried with him to the land of Midian a wealth of stored Egyptian knowledge that simmered in his head for 40 more years. The king-in-the-making, “mother’s brother” to the Pharaoh Queen, general in the armies of the Pharaoh, with a deep-set ambition to rule, was now married to the a daughter of the high priest of Midian and monarch to herds of sheep and goats in a dusty Arabian back water.

Moses possessed a belief in the gods of Egypt, and this wouldn’t change until his miraculous encounter with the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, the great “I AM,” Yaweh, who, in the form of a burning bush, pressed him into service as the great emancipator of his people of heritage, the Hebrews.

But did Moses see that blazing desert shrubbery as the only God? Was that encounter one of a spiritual nature or one that would come to fit the mold of an extra-terrestrial encounter that challenged all his beliefs in the pantheon of gods with which he was raised and whom he knew so well? The pages of scripture tell us that this calling was of Divine Origin, and that Jehovah God Himself was the power behind the upcoming miraculous events.

The big question, if you step outside the box of faith, is whether or not Moses was encountering the God of the Universe or a being that only fit his perceptions and understanding of that which had been rooted in his mind since his earliest days.

The Ogdoad

In Thebes, the little town of Medinet Habu has, nestled on its low crest, the ruins of the magnificent 18th Dynasty Mortuary Temple of Rameses III. Medinet Habu, a small village situated a little more than 2 miles to the south of the Ramesseum, was called Djanet by the ancient Egyptians and, according to popular belief, was the place where Amun appeared for the first time. From ancient times, Medinet Habu was the place of worship dedicated to this god, as evidenced by the crumbled ruins of a temple of the 18th Dynasty dedicated to Amun of Djanet, built during the time of Hatshepsut and Thutmose III, atop the ruins of a still more ancient temple. This was what later induced Rameses III to order the construction there of his own memorial temple.

Growing up in the royal palace in Thebes, Moses would have known this place well and worshipped in its sacred halls. It was here that Moses was raised in his early years and spent the first 40 years of his life. He would have been taught not only the mathematics and sciences afforded a royal education in the courts of 18th Dynasty Egypt, but also would have experienced the worship and religious practices of the day.

The Ogdoad is the Egyptian creation myth that Moses would have been very familiar with and that some say laid his basis for writing about the creation in the Book of Genesis. The Ogdoad myth originated in Hermopolis and consisted of eight personified primeval forces, each of which was represented in the four couples of deities. In Egyptian cosmology, the number 4 represented the number of totality and completeness. The significance of these four primeval couples is not easy to understand today, for they lack any greater mythological context, and neither is there much substantive personification of the four couples of deities.⁴

The couples of the Ogdoad:

Nu and Naunet, representing the primeval waters.

Heh and Hauhet, signifying boundlessness.



The Inner Gate of the Ramesseum, in Luxor, Egypt. The Ramesseum is the temple complex of Ramses III, built on the site of what is now known as

Medinat Habu, “The House of a Million Years.” On this same site are the ruins of a much more ancient temple in which Moses would have learned of the Ogdoad.

Photo courtesy of Dr. John T. Ward and Dr. Maria Nilsson, The Sirius Project copyright 2011. Used with permission.

Kek and Kauket, signifying darkness.

Amun and Amaunet, signifying air.

The four couples of the Ogdoad are less about their personalities and characteristics than they represent elemental forces in the creation of the world. The cosmogony they represent are the primeval physical matters of existence rather than the actual springing to life of the organic world, and of these eight deities, only Amun developed into a remarkable status and moved to Thebes with his female counterpart, Amaunet. These four pairs of deities also complement each other: For every “male” deity is the “female” counterpart, to make up a whole, according to the ancient Egyptian complementary way of thinking. The males are shown with the heads of frogs and the females with heads of snakes; such physical attributes are frequently said in ancient texts to inhabit the primeval waters.

At el-Ashmunein were unearthed only very scant inscriptions of the Ogdoad, telling us very little about this cosmogony, but they appear ever so subtly in the writings of Moses. The main part of evidence is taken from Theban monuments, which were pieced together in 1929 by Kurt Sethe in his survey, *Amun und die Acht Urgötter von Hermopolis*,⁵ but the earliest references to the Hermopolitan cosmogony is found in the Pyramid Texts:

You have your offering-bread, O Niu and Nenet, you two protectors of the gods Who protect the gods with your shadow. You have your offering-bread, O Amun and Amaunet, You two protectors of the gods Who protect the gods with your shadow. You have your offering-bread, O Atum and Ruti, Who yourselves created your

godheads and your persons. O Shu and Tefenet who made the gods,
Who begot the gods and established the gods....⁶

These deities were said to comprise the very substances out of which creation was brought to the universe. At Hermopolis, the opinion was that at some point these eight primeval beings interacted, whereupon a great explosion occurred, which somehow laid free the Primeval Mound. The mound later became Hermopolis, though at first it was called the Isle of Flame, as the sun god was said to be born and to rise there for the very first time. Hermopolis claimed to predate the cosmogony of Heliopolis. Just as other creation centers maintained that their location was the original place where creation first had come into being, so was also the case at Hermopolis.

The Ogdoad were the fathers and the mothers who came into being at the start, who gave birth to the sun and who created Atum. From there on the rest of the cosmos is developed. But there are some twists to the story in which the eight divinities of the Ogdoad are thought to jointly have created what is known as the “cosmic egg” out of the primeval waters (*Nun*). This egg was invisible as it was created already before the sun came into being. From this egg, according to some sources, the bird of light, an aspect of the sun-god, burst. Other sources say that the egg was filled with air, the association of the elemental couple of Amun and Amaunet. According to the Coffin Texts, this is the first act of creation:

O Atum give me this sweet air which is your nostrils

for I am this egg which is in the Great Cackler,

I am the guardian of this great prop which separates
the earth from the sky.

If I live, it will live; if I grow old, it will grow old;

if I breathe the air, it will breathe the air.

I am he who splits iron, I have gone round about the egg,

(even I) the Lord of Tomorrow.⁷

In another version of this myth, the egg is laid by a goose, the Primeval Goose, or the *Gengen Wer*, with which Amun was associated as the creator. The goose is thought to carry the egg out of which creation comes. This myth is only given in fragments, but obviously it states that the sun in the form of a bird came out of the egg that the Primeval Goose laid in the waters of creation. It is also a form of Amun in his creator-god aspect.

The act of the creation, as performed by the Ogdoad, takes this basic chronological order:

1. The Ogdoad created existence in the form of the Primeval Mound or in the form of the cosmic egg.
2. The cosmic egg was created by the Primeval Goose.
3. The cosmic egg held air, or
4. The cosmic egg held a bird.
5. And the bird was a form of the sun.

To sum it all up, all forms of initial creation happened in the darkness of the primeval waters. Creation was circular, as was the egg. Birth led to decline-death-rebirth-renewal of the cyclic existence. The significance of all this is that some things existed before existence. One of these in preexistence was *Nun*. Another was primeval beings such as frogs and snakes, frogs being associated with fertility, snakes being associated with circularity and rebirth (that is, they shed their old skin). The first creator-

god is created out of *Nun* by some interaction between all these primeval creatures. Then the creator-god creates the rest of the cosmos.

These are the things Moses would have experienced in his religious training, growing up in the royal courts of Egypt. But how are they applicable to our study of the Nephilim, and why are these backdrops important to their study? Because the setting of a solid foundation is critical to an examination of the words he wrote in the Book of Genesis. As I stated earlier, it is important to sludge through some of what seems to be mundane history in order to understand why certain things were said in certain ways. Understanding what motivated Moses to write the things he did is an all-important step to understanding the *objectives* of the things he wrote about.

Let's look at how the Egyptian myth of creation was a foundation for what Moses wrote in the Book of Genesis.

Moses the Heretic

A great source for this examination of the influences on the writing of Moses are the writings of Irenaeus, a second-century Bishop of Lugdunum in Gaul, then a part of the Roman Empire (now Lyons, France). He was an early church father and apologist, and his writings were formative in the early development of Christian theology, which at the time was indistinguishable from Catholic theology. Irenaeus's best-known book, *Adversus Haereses*, or *Against Heresies*, was written around 180 CE, and is a detailed attack on Gnosticism, which was at the time considered to be a serious threat to the Church.⁸ As one of the first great Christian theologians, Irenaeus emphasized the traditional elements in the church, especially the episcopate, scripture, and tradition. Irenaeus wrote that the only way for Christians to retain unity was to humbly accept a single doctrinal authority, and that was the episcopal councils in union with the bishop of Rome. Against the Gnostics, who said that they possessed a secret oral tradition from Jesus himself, Irenaeus maintained that the bishops in different cities

are known as far back as the Apostles, and none of *them* were Gnostics. He also maintained that the bishops provided the only “safe guide to the interpretation of Scripture.” His writings, with those of Clement and Ignatius, are taken to hint at papal primacy—the infallible word of the pope in all matters ecclesiastical and scriptural. Irenaeus is the earliest witness to recognition of the canonical character of all four gospels, and is really the precursor to the Constantinian Councils that established canonical rules for the bible.

The Gnostics claimed to possess the “hidden mysteries” as relayed to them by Jesus Christ himself. And according to their “heretical” teachings, Moses constructed the entirety of the Genesis account of creation on his early influence in Egyptian teachings of the Ogdoad. Irenaeus sets about in his writings to present and dissemble the writings of the Gnostics regarding Moses and creation, first referring to them as the development of “mighty fictions.”⁹

According to Irenaeus, Moses followed the pattern of the Ogdoad in the fashion in which he wrote the account of creation. This can get a little sticky, so stay with me here....

At the beginning of Moses’ account of creation in the Book of Genesis, he starts out in verse one of Genesis chapter one, by saying that “In the beginning, God created the heavens and the earth” (Genesis 1:1). And by creating a numerical number of four elements to the first statement of creation—God, created, heavens, earth—Moses was establishing the first *Tetrad* (grouping of four) of the Gnostics and hailing back to the initial four elements of the four god couples of the Egyptian Ogdoad. See where this is going, now? Fascinating stuff! Read on....

Moses went on in his creation account by stating that the creative act was invisible and hidden nature—a reference to the “invisible egg” of creation; a visible physical creation birthing from an invisible spiritual dimension: “Now the earth was invisible and unformed” (Genesis 1:2). Then, by

naming an abyss and darkness, in which were also water, and the Spirit moving upon the water, Moses is referring to the second *Tetrad* that births out of the first: “invisible, unformed, Spirit, moved.”

Then, proceeding to mention the Gnostic *Decad*, Moses names light, day, night, the firmament, the evening, the morning, dry land, sea, plants, and, in the 10th place, trees all as a part of the initial creative act. Thus, by means of these 10 names, he indicated the 10 *Æons* of the Gnostic structure, again based on the Egyptian Ogdoad.

Moses then reiterates the power of the Gnostic *Duodecad* and names the sun, moon, stars, seasons, years, whales, fishes, reptiles, birds, quadrupeds, wild beasts, and, after all these, in the 12th place, man. In this, the Gnostics taught that the *Triacontad* (the Triacontad (30) exist in a tripartite division of an Ogdoad (8), Decad (10), and Duodecad (12)) was spoken of through Moses by the Spirit. Further, man was also being formed after the image of the power above, had in himself that ability that flows from the one source: the invisible force. This ability was seated in the region of the brain, from which four faculties proceed, after the image of the Tetrad above, and these are called sight, hearing, smell, and taste. Moses also hails to the Ogdoad in stating that man has four sets of two: two eyes, two nostrils, two ears, and two senses of taste: bitter and sweet.

Moses continues on with his Ogdoad construct in that the sun was created on day four; the tented courts of the Tabernacle were made of fine linen, blue, purple, and scarlet. Again, the long robe of the priest falling over his feet, was adorned with four rows of precious stones. Moses also shows the influence of the Ogdoad, again, in that man was formed on the eighth day, his earthly part was formed on the sixth day, but his fleshly part on the eighth. Multiples of four.

And then Moses states that the ark of Noah was 30 cubits high—again the Tricontad—and that eight persons were saved inside most clearly indicates the Ogdoad, which brings salvation.

Now, for the record, I know very little about Gnosticism and how it works. However, it appears that they at least believed that Moses was writing in multiples that revealed a heavy influence of the teaching of Egyptian Ogdoad creation.

Why Is Moses Important to the Nephilim?

The place we draw our primary source for the Hebrew word, *Nephilim* is in a book authored by Moses, a historical character drenched in the waters of Judeo-Christian, biblical tradition. In many circles of non-religious thought, this sinks Moses deep into the pond of religious mythology, where even his existence as a real person falls under the voluminous waves of skeptical attack. So, having even a brief understanding of his history and a “lite” touch on the probable history surrounding his existence and interaction with the people living in the known historical courts of Egypt lends some credence to the things he is said to have traditionally written.

When there is scholarly controversy even over the lives and deeds of royal Egyptian figures who are established in the historical record, how can we even begin to establish the credible existence of someone who by mention of his name alone, casts him in the shadowy light of religious mythology? Moses’ presence in established Egyptian history is, for all practical purposes, anonymous. So it is ultimately important, in researching works that are traditionally held to be authored by him, to establish who he was, when he lived, what he experienced, and from where he drew his foundational abilities and philosophies, in order to lend some modicum of concrete foundation for the things about which he wrote.

And I believe I have accomplished that goal in the preceding words. Defy the auto-psychological response to discount anything that goads you to offhandedly dismiss something simply because it is entrenched in religious

or mysterious belief systems, and open your eyes to the reality that even religious writers with hugely miraculous events ascribed to them, have their place in real history.

Moses wrote the books of the Law of the Hebrews; there is no question in my mind. He penned the passage in the Book of Genesis regarding the Nephilim, though, I believe, as an abridged retelling of already widely accepted events sourced in already-ancient texts of his day in the 15th century BCE. His later mention of the Nephilim, the descendants of Anak, who the spies said were living in the land of Cana'an, may have been a later edit by Moses or his successor, Joshua, but the passage still reveals hints and clues as to the existence of these beings. Moses relied heavily on the original accounts of Enoch (as rewritten after the Babylonian captivity in the third century BCE) and on his early religious education as a “son of the pharaoh” in 18th Dynasty Egypt.

A final thought on Moses, as a result of my 30 years of study, research, and contemplation on this remarkable man, is that he was establishing himself as the “Pharaoh-God” of the Israelites. Everything he had learned in the royal courts, he incorporated into establishing his leadership. His “talks with God” gave him the seal of Divine kinship and approval before the people—something that most leaders of coups or rebellions strive very hard to accomplish. His word was law. And his kingly arrogance could only have found its roots in the leadership styles and qualities he learned from the best, the Thutmoses/Hatshepsut family of Egyptian monarchs.

Of all this, he gave us the Nephilim, though borrowed from other faith writings of his day, blended with the gods of Egypt.

chapter 4

The Pan-Cultural Effect

In 1872, George Smith, pioneering English Assyriologist and noted archaeologist and researcher with the British Museum, laboriously reconstructed the puzzle-piece-like fragments of Babylonian tablets dating to 1700 BCE found at excavations of the city of Ninevah. One night, Smith came across a large fragment with only one side legible. He was stunned to read the story of a man who built an ark to escape a devastating flood, who brought on board animals of all types, who sent out birds to see if the water had receded. If you are thinking that Smith found an ancient tablet recounting the flood of Noah, you would be incorrect. Smith had stumbled across one chapter of the much longer, long forgotten tale, of the *Epic of Gilgamesh*,¹ a “mirrored” account of the Noah and the Ark story found in the Book of Genesis. Only the account of Gilgamesh had a completely different cast of characters and a recounting of other events not found in the Noah story.

In the Babylonian Epic of Gilgamesh, toward the end of the *He Who Saw the Deep* version by Sîn-lēqi-unninni,² there are references to the great flood (Tablet XI). Many scholars believe that the flood myth of Gilgamesh was added to Tablet XI in the “standard version” of the *Gilgamesh Epic* by an editor who plagiarized the flood story from the *Epic of Atrahasis*.³ A short reference to the flood myth is also mentioned in the much older Sumerian Gilgamesh poems, from which the later Babylonian versions drew much of their inspiration and subject matter. This was a late addition to the Gilgamesh cycle, largely paraphrased or copied verbatim from the *Epic of Atrahasis*.⁴ In this account, the hero Gilgamesh, seeking immortality, searches out Utnapishtim in Dilmun, a kind of paradise on earth. Utnapishtim tells Gilgamesh how Ea (equivalent of the Sumerian

Enki) warned him of the gods' plan to destroy all life by means of a great flood. Utnapishtim then passes on instructions he had been given on how to build an enormous barge-like vessel in which he could save his family, his friends, and his wealth and cattle. After the deluge subsides, the gods repented of their action and granted immortality to Utnapishtim and his wife.

Short of historical and comparative religious and mythological research, there is no scientific methodology that can be applied to a study of the Nephilim and the disastrous deluge that killed a world of living beings as a result. You can't ring up a spirit, angel, demon, or some other form of extra-terrestrial being on the telephone, lure it into a laboratory and coax it to have sex with a human woman for the purposes of observing conception and birth of offspring. There is no means to have the ability to hypothesize, study, and repeat the procedure to gain quantifiable data. You can, however, look to the ancient annals. There is a certain scientific methodology at play when you consider that nearly every culture of the ancient world has its version of these phenomena as mentioned in the Books of Genesis and Enoch.

Including the Genesis account of Noah's Flood, in which we have the introduction of the Sons of God and their mixed-blood offspring, there are more than 600 ancient tribal legends from around the world giving account of the global deluge that consumed the antediluvial (pre-flood) world. And every major civilization of the ancient world has its corresponding mythological gods, demigods, and star children that all seem to have common source points. Despite mainstream anthropological explanations of these ancient accounts as referring less to a global flood than localized rivers over-spilling their banks, nearly all of the ancient tribal legends comprising the 600 tales speak of a "world covering" flood. And most of those tribal histories mention the intercourse between spirit beings and human women as partial cause for a deity to send flood waters to wipe them out.

The various accounts of a great, ancient flood come from hundreds of tribes in Europe, Asia, the Near East, Africa, Australia, the Pacific islands, and the Americas. To enlist them all here would require a volume of its own, so suffice it to say that these various tales are found not only in what we would consider the major, well-known cultures of antiquity, such as Greek, Roman, Celtic, Egyptian, and Middle Eastern, but also from tribes such as the Masai, Yoruba, and Mandingo of Africa; the Vogel, Samoyed, Yenisey Ostyak, Tibel, Lepcha, Sagaiye, Ifugayo, Bahnar, and Kammu tribes of Asia; the Australian tribes of Maung, Gunwinggu, Gumaidje, and Manger; North America's Inuit, Kwakiutl, Kootenay, Cherokee, Mandan, Choctaw, Navajo, and Lakota; the Tarascan, Yaqui, Tlaxcalan, Chol, Toltec, and Maya of Central America; and the South American Acawai, Yaruro, Arawak, Murato, Toba, and Selk'nam. The list is so vast that even the scant few shown here are barely the tip of the iceberg.

All this illustrates is that every culture, every tribal system, every clan, region, city-state, and religion had its version of the Genesis Flood and the events surrounding its purpose, from the utilitarian to the obscurely mythological.

Although I list here only a few of the cultural variants on the flood story, take note of how most of them reference the gods, giants, and anger of a deity against the corrupt and sinful inhabitants of the earth.

Lithuanian

From his heavenly window, the supreme god Pramzimas saw nothing but corruption, war, and injustice among mankind. He sent two giants, Wandu and Wejas (water and wind), to destroy the earth. After 20 days and nights, little was left. Pramzimas looked to see the progress. He happened to be eating nuts at the time, and he threw down the shells. One happened to land on the peak of the tallest mountain, where some people and animals had sought refuge. Everybody climbed in and survived the flood floating in the

nutshell. Pramzimas's wrath abated, and he ordered the wind and water to end their devastation. The people left the nutshell and dispersed, except for one elderly couple who stayed where they landed. To comfort them, Pramzimas sent the rainbow and advised them to jump over the bones of the earth nine times. They did so, and up sprang nine other couples, from which the nine Lithuanian tribes descended.⁵

Celtic

Heaven and Earth were great giants. Heaven lay upon the Earth so that their children were crowded between them, and the children and their mother were unhappy in the darkness. The boldest of the sons led his brothers in cutting up Heaven into many pieces. From his skull they made the firmament. His spilling blood caused a great flood that killed all humans except a single pair, who were saved in a ship made by a beneficent Titan. The waters settled in hollows to become the oceans. The son who led in the mutilation of Heaven was a Titan and became their king, but the Titans and gods hated each other, and the king titan was driven from his throne by his son, who was born a god. That Titan at last went to the land of the departed. The Titan who built the ship, whom some consider to be the same as the king Titan, went there also.⁶

Roman

Jupiter, angered at the evil ways of humanity, resolved to destroy it. He was about to set the earth to burning, but considered the possibility that the flames might set heaven itself afire, so he decided to flood the earth instead. With Neptune's help, he caused storm and earthquake to flood everything but the summit of Parnassus, where Deucalion and his wife Pyrrha came by boat and found refuge. Recognizing their piety, Jupiter let them live and withdrew the flood. Deucalion and Pyrrha, at the advice of an oracle,

repopulated the world by throwing “your mother’s bones” (stones) behind them; each stone became a person.⁷

Scandanavian

Oden, Vili, and Ve fought and slew the great ice giant Ymir, and icy water from his wounds drowned most of the Rime Giants. The giant Bergelmir escaped with his wife and children on a boat made from a hollowed tree trunk. From them rose the race of frost ogres. Ymir’s body became the world we live on. His blood became the oceans.⁸

Chaldean

According to accounts attributed to the great Babylonian priest-historian Berosus (whose writings about Oannes we will see in [Chapter 5](#)), the antediluvians were giants who became impious and depraved, except one among them who revered the gods and was wise and prudent. His name was Noa, and he dwelt in Syria with his three sons Sem, Japet, Chem, and their wives Tidea, Pandora, Noela, and Noegla. From the stars, he foresaw destruction, and he began building an ark. Seventy-eight years after he began building, the oceans, inland seas, and rivers burst forth from beneath, attended by many days of violent rain. The waters overflowed all the mountains, and the human race was drowned except Noa and his family who survived on his great boat, which came to rest at last on the top of the Gendyaean Mountain. According to legend, remnants of the enormous boat still remain, which men take bitumen from to make charms against evil.⁹



The list of cross-cultural accounts of the flood and the giants could fill volumes of books, so I merely noted a handful to illustrate the point that nearly every culture has its own version of the Flood of Noah and the elements that brought on the great deluge. Again, the absence of recorded history becomes a near-irrelevancy when stacked against the innumerable cultural accounts that all seem to hail back to a singular common event. This is by no means the final word on the matter, but merely a start in sifting through the many mythological evidences that seem to point to a great historic event.

As mentioned, there are many cultural references to “giants” and “visitors from the sky,” whom most tales refer to as angels, demons, or spirit beings. These “spirits who descended” are found in nearly every account of the ancient deluge, and are found in innumerable ancient accounts such as the Anaaye (Diné/Navajo), the Nunhyunuwi (Cherokee), the Cawr (Welsh), the Dev (Turkish), the Velikan (Russian), the Yak (Thai), the Rephaim (Hebrew), the Famangomadan (Spanish), the Wrnach (Welsh), Fomorians (Celtic), Dasa Maha Yodayo (Sri Lanka), the Puntan (Micronesia), the Azrail (Armenian), the Gigantes (Greek), and many, many others.

The notion that the accounts of the Nephilim reached every culture of the world is not as far-fetched as we might think. Though the story of the descent of the Watchers to the top of Mount Hermon is the Hebrew version, other cultural mythologies have their own variations on the tale. Whether borrowed and incorporated into their own mythologies and legends, or experienced firsthand by their own ancient inhabitants, it is clear that the Nephilim in one form or another affected the populations of nearly all ancient cultures, exponentially spreading around the globe.

But where did the Nephilim come from, in the first place?

chapter 5

The Watchers

“I ought to be thy Adam, but I am rather the fallen angel...”

—The Creature, from Mary Shelley’s *Frankenstein*

“The desire of excessive power caused the angels to fall; the desire of knowledge caused men to fall.”

—Francis Bacon

Enoch, a book found among the Dead Sea Scrolls, called them “The Watchers,” these non-earthly beings who seemed to hold some sort of superior capacity over the inhabitants of the earth. The writer of 1 Enoch even subtitles a section of the book, “The Book of the Watchers”: 1 Enoch 6-36. In the Aramaic the Watchers are the Irin, which is translated as “angel” (Greek *angelos*; Coptic *malah*) in the Greek and Ethiopian translations, although the commonly used Aramaic term for angel, *malakha*, never appears in the Book of Enoch, which is written in Aramaic. Irin is a word also found in the Old Testament’s historical/prophetic Book of Daniel, where three times throughout the book the author links them directly to God’s holy angels. It is in the Book of Daniel that the great Babylonian King Nebuchadnezzar falls into a period of madness upon seeing a “Watcher, a holy one (singular) come down from heaven” and appear to him in a dream and prophesy. The singular form of the word in this context suggests that “a Watcher” and “a Holy One” are two different titles for the same entity or caste of entities.

In the Book of Daniel, King Nebuchadnezzar goes on to describe the message delivered to him in his dream, wherein he is told that he will be reduced to madness and shall crawl upon the ground as a beast, eating grass, and that this divinely ordered punishment is “by the decree of the Watchers, and the demand by the word of the holy ones” in order that “the living may know that the Most High rules in the kingdom of men.” Nebuchadnezzar then falls into an undefined period of mental illness and temporal insanity after which, when he comes back to his full senses, he states:

“34 At the end of that time, I, Nebuchadnezzar, raised my eyes toward heaven, and my sanity was restored. Then I praised the Most High; I honored and glorified him who lives forever. His dominion is an eternal dominion; his kingdom endures from generation to generation. 35 All the peoples of the earth are regarded as nothing. He does as he pleases with the powers of heaven and the peoples of the earth. No one can hold back his hand or say to him: ‘What have you done?’ 36 At the same time that my sanity was restored, my honor and splendor were returned to me for the glory of my kingdom. My advisers and nobles sought me out, and I was restored to my throne and became even greater than before. 37 Now I, Nebuchadnezzar, praise and exalt and glorify the King of heaven, because everything he does is right and all his ways are just. And those who walk in pride he is able to humble.”

(Daniel 4:34-37)

It appears that the Watchers had made their point. And it is also clearly indicated by this passage that the Watchers themselves existed long after the rebellion of Shamyaza and his followers on Mount Hermon, and were a caste who, in their non-rebellious station, were emissaries of God or of a much higher, superior being. If nothing else, it is abundantly clear that the Watchers are here in this passage again established as being part of a hierarchy who answered to a superior authority.

In the Book of Enoch, the Watchers are angels who have been dispatched or assigned to the earth to “watch over” its inhabitants, but in the process of conducting their duties, they become enamored with human women. The passage in Genesis says they “lusted” after the women of the earth, which results in one *en masse* act of rebellion in which they follow the prodding of their leader, Shamyaza, and illicitly instruct human beings in all types of arts and practices not yet naturally developed by humans. And they, of course, enter into intimate relations and sexual procreative activity with the inferior humans. The draw for these beings to interact and have intercourse with human women must have been either a very strong urge, if they indeed were angelic or superior in nature, or it was the act of beings who had a definitive purpose and goal of interbreeding.

Whether they were divinely appointed emissaries part of an orderly caste of angels that held responsibility over mankind, or a race of infiltrators perceived by the earth’s population as gods and spirit beings, they seemingly had the ability to choose and impregnate whomever they wished. And having had such ability clearly indicates that they were much higher on the cosmic food chain than the humans they were able to subjugate and influence at whim. The great theological question looms around whether or not they were part of the biblical accounts of fallen angels or only labeled as such in the perception of those who first beheld and intercoured with them.

After their offspring, the Nephilim, are conceived, the Watchers carry on a systematic instruction of humans in the arts of herbology, cosmetics, mirrors, weaponry, sorcery, and other technical advances that would otherwise have taken a much longer period of time for humans to develop on their own. It gives humanity a foisted-upon boost that would not otherwise have happened in such a short period of time. This ongoing teaching was carried out by Shamyaza and the 200 Watchers who were there dwelling among the humans along with him.

There are 20 leaders of the Watchers mentioned in the Book of Enoch:

“7 And these are the names of their leaders: Samlazaz, their leader, Araklba, Rameel, Kokablel, Tamlel, Ramlel, Danel, Ezeqeel, Baraqijal, 8 Asael, Armaros, Batarel, Ananel, Zaqlel, Samsapeel, Satarel, Turel, Jomjael, Sariel. These are their chiefs of tens.”

(1 Enoch—The Book of the Watchers 6: 7-8

According to the Book of Enoch, the Watchers who took wives, had sexual intercourse with them, producing offspring, and taught forbidden knowledge became part of the caste of fallen angels. Enoch lists their leaders by specific names. And take specific note of how many of these beings bear the name of their maker, Elohim, denoted by the “El” at the end of the name (Other such great archangels who bore the name of God, ranking them as “Sons of God [bene haElohim] are Gabriel, Michael, and Raphael, but they were not part of the fallen caste.):

Araqiel

(also Arakiel, Araquel, Araciel, Arqael, Sarquael, Arkiel, Arkas) taught humans the signs of the earth. However, in the Sibylline Oracles, Araquel is referred to not as a fallen angel, or Watcher, but as one of the five angels who lead the souls of men to judgement, the other four being Ramiel, Uriel, Samiel, and Azazel.

Armaros

(also Amaros) in 1 Enoch taught men the resolving of enchantments and the casting of spells.

Azazel

taught men to make knives, swords, and shields, and how to devise ornaments and cosmetics.

- | | |
|------------------|--|
| Baraqel | (Baraqiel) taught men astrology and the divining of the stars. |
| Bezaliel | is also mentioned in 1 Enoch, but is left out of most translations due to damaged manuscripts and problematic transmission of the text. |
| Chazaqiel | (sometimes Ezeqeel) taught men the signs of the clouds, the art and science of meteorology, and the prognostication of weather. |
| Gadriel | also taught the art of cosmetics. |
| Kokabiel | (also Kakabel, Kochbiel, Kokbiel, Kabaiel, and Kochab) is a high-ranking, holy angel, but, in general apocryphal lore and also in 1 Enoch, he is a fallen Watcher, resident of nether realms, and commands 365,000 surrogate spirits to do his bidding. Among other duties, he instructs his fellows in astrology. |
| Penemuel | taught mankind the art of writing with ink and paper, and taught “the children of men the bitter and the sweet and the secrets of wisdom. |
| Sariel | (also Suriel) taught mankind about the courses of the moon and tidal influences, at one |

time regarded as forbidden knowledge.

Shamyaza

(also Shemyazaz, Shamazya, Semiaza, Shemhazi, Semyaza, and Amezyarak) is one of the leaders of the fall from heaven, and the instigator of the pact to cohabit with human women.

Shamsiel

once a guardian of Eden, served as one of the two chief aides to the archangel Uriel (the other aide being Hasdiel) when Uriel bore his standard into battle, and is the head of 365 legions of angels and also crowns prayers, accompanying them to the fifth heaven. He is referred to as one of the Watchers. He is a fallen angel who teaches humanity the signs of the sun.

“1 ‘And all the others together with them took unto themselves wives, and each chose for himself one, and they began to go in unto them and to defile themselves with them, and they taught them charms 2 and enchantments, and the cutting of roots, and made them acquainted with plants. And they 3 became pregnant, and they bare great giants, whose height was three thousand ells: Who consumed 4 all the acquisitions of men. And when men could no longer sustain them, the giants turned against 5 them and devoured mankind. And they began to sin against birds, and beasts, and reptiles, and 6 fish, and to devour one another’s flesh, and drink the blood. Then the earth laid accusation against the lawless ones.”

(1 Enoch 7:1-6)

A Rebellion Against Heaven

So the Watchers, some 200 in number, swore an oath to one another on the slopes of Mount Hermon in northern Israel, making a pact to descend to the earth, take human form, and take wives from the daughters of men. Ignoring, for a moment, the obvious mythical, mystical aspect of angelic beings—and this seems such an inconsequential thing in current cultural mindset, where we no longer have great prohibitions against intermarriage among the races except in racially entrenched pockets of modern civilization—and one would think that this sort of inter-breeding on the part of (even mythological) characters is rather innocuous. There is almost a “who cares?” aura about it, until you consider the far reaching ramifications of the actions of the Watchers—especially if they are in any form true events that have been recorded. Just as we have “changed” the role of God as our civilized tendencies have evolved, we ascribe modern thinking to ancient prohibitions and deeds. Note what God said of himself to the prophet Amos in the pages of Old Testament scripture:

“7 This is what he showed me: behold, the Lord was standing beside a wall built with a plumb line, with a plumb line in his hand. 8 And the Lord said to me, ‘Amos, what do you see?’ And I said, ‘A plumb line.’ Then the Lord said, ‘Behold, I am setting a plumb line in the midst of my people Israel;

I will never again pass by them; 9 the high places of Isaac shall be made desolate, and the sanctuaries of Israel shall be laid waste, and I will rise against the house of Jeroboam with the sword.’”

(Amos 7:7-9)

In essence, God was calling himself the standard by which Israel needed to measure up. The plumb line falls straight and true due to the laws of gravity and nature. Anything that deviates from the plumb is considered by God to be “off the mark.” The pact made by the Watchers to impregnate human women constituted a rebellion against the laws of heaven that knocked the plumb completely off the wall. And, as we shall see in [Chapter](#)

8 (in the section entitled “The Assembly of the Sons of God”), their sin was against the supreme king of the Divine Council of the gods—a deed worthy of divine consequences. This links the Nephilim, “those who were cast down,” with the fallen angels of the “War in Heaven” described in The Book of Isaiah. In the passage, God is assuring Isaiah that their Babylonian oppressors will be brought down to size. The following passage speaks of the Babylonian king, but many have attributed this to the fall of Lucifer, even though the passage does not implicitly say that:

“12 How you have fallen from heaven,
morning star, son of the dawn!
You have been cast down to the earth,
you who once laid low the nations!
13 You said in your heart,
‘I will ascend to the heavens;
I will raise my throne
above the stars of God;
I will sit enthroned on the mount of assembly,
on the utmost heights of Mount Zaphon [one of the most
sacred mountains to the Cana'anites]
14 I will ascend above the tops of the clouds;
I will make myself like the Most High.’
15 But you are brought down to the realm of the dead,
to the depths of the pit.”

(Isaiah 14:12-15)

The trouble with many of these Old Testamental prophecies is that they seemingly start talking about one thing, but then click over, mid-sentence, into making spiritual word pictures of a completely different notion or event altogether. It’s rather like having a talk about your backyard birdfeeders over a cup of coffee with a friend, then watching his eyes turn to a fervent, glossy stare as he begins to speak to you about the “wings of the black raven spreading their shadow over your soul....” (This actually happened to me, once, so don’t laugh.) At any rate, God seems to lapse into prophetic mode while seemingly relating information about something completely

different—and usually without warning or notice. The casual reader of these prophetic passages of scripture would have to draw the conclusion that the passage is either complete in its thoughts about the king of Babylon, or that the God who delivered the message has a—and I mean no disrespect nor blasphemy by this—attention deficit disorder problem when transmitting hidden meanings in the midst of what is a completely different description altogether on the surface. Also interesting to note in this passage: The reference to the “mount of Assembly” here contains a veiled reference to the Divine Council.

“10 ‘Then they took wives, each choosing for himself, whom they began to approach, and with whom they cohabitated; teaching them sorcery, incantations... (and) all the secret things which are done in the heavens.’”

(1 Enoch 7:10)

This is the real sin of the Watchers laid bare. They shared “powerful forbidden secrets” with mankind, and as Enoch says, “*men were not born for this.*” As we saw, each of the leaders of the Watchers taught some specialized field of knowledge, such as astronomy, the manufacture of goods, the dying of textiles, the making and application of cosmetics, and so on. And certainly, although the teaching of such things as sorcery and astrology may have been viewed as ungodly and taboo at the time, despite these things having taken place long before Mosaic Law and written prohibitions, one of the Watchers, Penemuel, stands accused of something as simple as “teaching men to understand writing, and the use of ink and paper.” This seems to be a very out-of-place prohibition, for even Enoch himself is described as a “scribe of righteousness,” and is credited in the Muslim Qur'an with being the inventor of mathematics, writing, and astronomy.¹

Berossus of Babylon, a third-century BCE Hellenistic-era Babylonian writer² born near the beginning of Alexander the Great's reign, an astronomer and priest of Bel Marduk, speaks of the half-man or half-fish

god, Oannes, as having engaged in similar forms of activity as the Watchers. He would rise up out of the sea each morning and teach unknown arts and knowledges, only without the inherent prohibition of those said knowledges being forbidden by a superior deity or set of theological rules. So, setting aside the Watchers' acts of cohabitation with and impregnation of human women, the Book of Enoch tells us that the teaching of forbidden knowledge to humanity seems to be the overt crime committed by the Watchers. If you read between the lines and root out the unwritten subtext of the book, it would almost seem as if the hidden message is that "knowledge begets evil."³ Like the Amish and the Pennsylvania Dutch who shun technological advance, believing it distracts them from a closer walk with God and is the source of all the world's sins and woes, the author of the Book of Enoch is telling us that "higher understanding" was contrary to primeval man's true nature, and resulted inevitably in corruption, judgment, and eventual punishment. It's like handing a child a loaded gun: He may have some concept of what the thing does, but he can create a world of havoc and tragedy when wielding it on his own.

But, of course, we have the opposite side of the argument from more conservative, evangelical theologians who, if they even broach the topic of the Watchers and the Nephilim at all, will quickly point out how they believe these beings were part of the Luciferian fall after the War in Heaven. And, as if God had no control over his creation, these minions of Lucifer set about a campaign to infiltrate the human bloodline and thereby infect the pure blood of the human race, leaving no possibility for the pure human bloodline of the prophesied Messiah to ever take hold. The great sin, then, of the Watchers was not just the teaching of ancient, forbidden wisdom, but an all-out assault on the one and only begotten Son of God, who had not yet been conceived. However, were this the stratagem incorporated by the fallen demonic minions of Satan, then they waited seven long generations to begin their tactical.

Watcher Psych 101

The Book of Enoch is more of an accurate record of how the Watchers were *perceived* within a framework of antediluvian worship of God than it is a reflection of who the Watchers really *were* or what they really *did*. In these accounts of the “fallen” caste of Watchers, we are given very little insight as to what their intent was, or into their personalities or their motivations. We only know that they lusted, sought out, and carried through with a plan that they were convinced was something they should carry out, but that would also bring down the wrath of God on their heads. This is why Shamyaza was second-guessing his decision, and why he looked pleadingly to the others of his kind to bolster him in his decision. They, in response, joined in with him and set the pact in concrete. Their devilish intent and malicious bloodplay are ascribed later by scholars and researchers who parse the texts with ecclesiastical intent, or who are merely disingenuous with the context when it falls outside their theological or denominational beliefs. Never once in the passages about the Watchers does it say they descended with intent to thwart the bloodlines of the coming Messiah, but that very sin has been ascribed to them by later interpreters of the text. It is axiomatic that people have an innate fear and mistrust of those whom they perceive as knowing more than they do, and most certainly of those who wield a greater power over them. It is also a given (just ask Machiavelli) that people fear, resist, and rise against any brand of change that accompanies new knowledge and new ideas. This is precisely what the Watchers brought to the ancients—change, revolutionary and evolutionary concepts, and knowledge; the sweet, fruity filling of forbidden knowledge baked within the pie crust of taboo and prohibition.

But the corruption seems to go far beyond the mere transmission of knowledge and wisdom. The offspring of the Watchers were guilty of grievous crimes against mankind that Enoch equates to the “whole earth being filled with blood,” and the souls of those who perished at their hands crying in some dreadful ghostly complaint to gain the attentions—if not the vengeance—of God.

“5 Thou hast seen what Azazyel has done, how he has taught every species of iniquity upon earth, and has disclosed to the world all the secret things which are done in the heavens. 6 Shamyaza also has

taught sorcery, to whom thou hast given authority over those who are associated with him. They have gone together to the daughters of men; have lain with them; have become polluted; 7 And have discovered crimes to them. 8 The women likewise have brought forth giants. 9 Thus has the whole earth been filled with blood and with iniquity.

10 And now behold the souls of those who are dead, cry out.

11 And complain even to the gate of heaven.

12 Their groaning ascends; nor can they escape from the unrighteousness which is committed on earth. Thou knowest all things, before they exist. 13 Thou knowest these things, and what has been done by them; yet thou dost not speak to us. 14 What on account of these things ought we to do to them?"

(1 Enoch 9:5-14)

Naturalness of awareness is synonymous with wisdom—true wisdom. And true wisdom holds a true power, not to oppress or manipulate, but to enlighten and illuminate; it's a power that is innate in every single being. In ancient times, however, wisdom was synonymous with power, and power especially for those who did not possess it was more often than not perceived to be synonymous with *oppression*.⁴ Indeed, the Nephilim were accused of such when it was written:

"12 All the earth has been corrupted by the effects of the teaching of Azazyel. To him therefore ascribe the whole crime. 13 To Gabriel also the Lord said, Go to the biters, to the repro- bates, to the children of fornication; and destroy the children of fornication, the offspring of the Watchers, from among men; bring them forth, and excite them one against another. Let them perish by mutual slaughter, for length of days shall not be theirs.... 18 'Destroy all the souls addicted to dalliance, and the offspring of the Watchers, for they have tyrannized over mankind. 19 Let every oppressor perish from the face of the earth; 20 Let every evil work be destroyed...'"

(1 Enoch 10:12-13, 18-20)

As is common in apocalyptic Jewish texts, as well as mythological tales from around the world, the oppressors in the tales are ascribed attributes of enormously epic proportion. In the Book of Enoch, the offspring of the Watchers, the Nephilim, are described as a race of giants who committed acts against both mankind and nature to monstrous, mythic degrees:

“11 Then they took wives, each choosing for himself, whom they began to approach, and with whom they cohabited; teaching them sorcery, incantations, and the dividing of roots and trees. 11 And the women conceiving brought forth giants, 12 Whose stature was each three hundred cubits. These devoured all which the labor of men produced; until it became impossible to feed them; 13 When they turned themselves against men, in order to devour them; 14 And began to injure birds, beasts, reptiles, and fishes, to eat their flesh one after another, and to drink their blood.”

(1 Enoch 7:11-14)

They consumed birds and fish, “devouring their flesh one after another and drinking their blood.” This resembles the highly exaggerated claim of a peasant tenant who watches his feudal overloads feast on fatted calves and flambéed fowl while he and his family subsist on the broth of roots and bark, with a side helping of gruel—and then he makes up horrible stories about it to exaggerate his classist angst. However, most major religions and countless legends and mythologies speak of a time when giants walked the Earth. Why would diverse and widely separated traditions all make the same outrageous claims unless it had some basis in truth? All myth and legend have at their primordial headwaters some kernel of fact and truth. And if that truth was not there at the core, what are the odds that all these traditions could concoct such similar stories?

In the Watchers we see an emerging prototype of *Satan*, the adversary, deciever, accuser, liar. We can also see a variation on the theme of Original Sin. Just as with Eve and the forbidden fruit, the sin of the Watchers involved a specific combination of infractions, having to do with both

disobedience and knowledge. And in a very real sense, Cain, the firstborn son of Adam and Eve, became the first of the Nephilim.

If one were to look behind the mythic elements of the story of the Watchers, there are many various historical events that could come to the forefront in ways to explain the spread of such incredible tales. But what ought to intrigue us beyond all fanciful stories is the persistence of the myth itself; the ongoing story of a race of gods and their descendants, who somehow come to be perceived as demonic.

Where Their Feet Hit the Ground

The Watchers. They first appear on the scene in Sumer. *Shumer*, it seems, literally means the “land of the Watchers.” For American author Zecharia Sitchin, they are alien beings whose specific task is to orbit the earth, monitoring events on earth. For Sitchin, the Watchers are not a race or a species; they are merely a job specification. Their colleagues had abandoned their ships and had landed on Earth—they continued to orbit the Earth. Those who did land, either mated or genetically engineered mankind into its present form. As a consequence, mankind worshipped the Watchers as gods.

Going a step further back, however, It is recorded in the Book of Enoch that these so-called “Watchers” descended first to the slopes and foothills of Mount Hermon (*Ha Hermon* in Hebrew), also known as *Jabal el-Shaykh* in Aramaic, meaning, “Mountain of the Chief.” The mountain is actually a cluster of mountains made up of three distinct summits that straddle the current-day border between Lebanon and Syria in the highly political, much-disputed Golan Heights region of northern Israel. To set it in more modern context, it was this mountain that exchanged hands back-and-forth between Israel and Syria during the Six Day War of 1967 and the Yom Kippur War of 1973. On this mountain it is said the Watchers first

descended to the earth and made their pact to cohabit with human women and to teach “forbidden” skills to mankind.



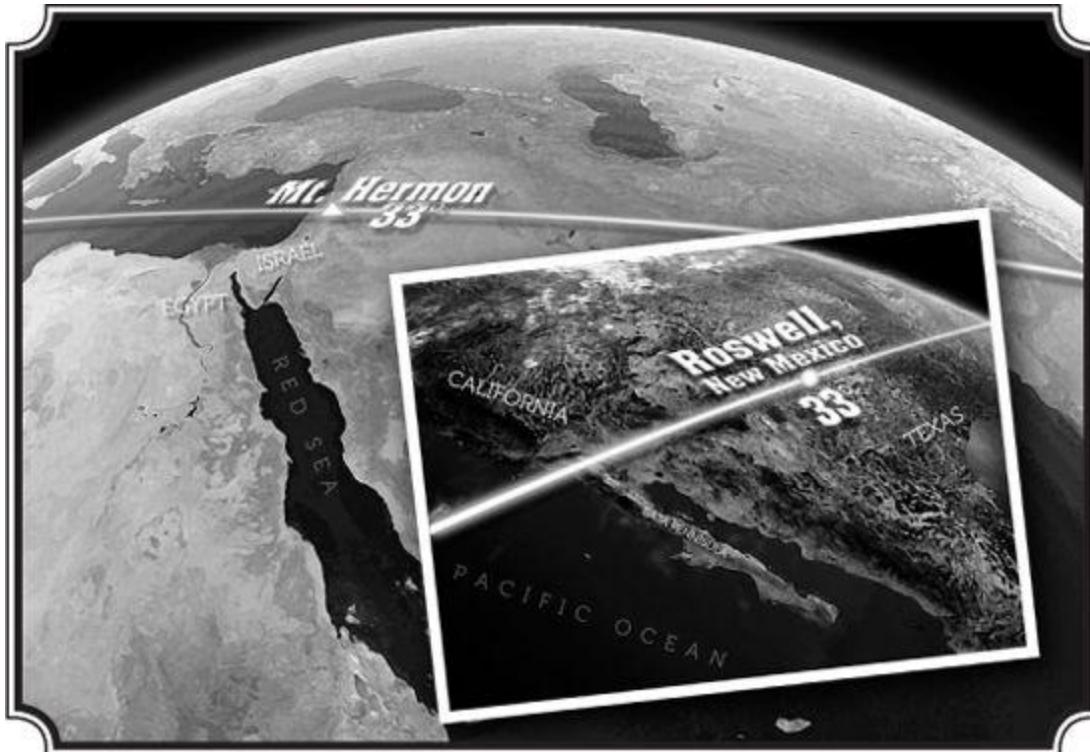
Mt. Hermon, Golan Heights, Israel/Syria/Lebanon, where the Watchers descended to the earth.

Photo is licensed under Wikipedia Creative Commons.

In the occult science of Numerology, the number 33 represents the ultimate attainment of consciousness. Keeping that in mind, it is very interesting to note that the geographic location of Mount Hermon, the very place where the Watchers are said to have descended to the earthly plane, lies on the 33rd parallel, which is a latitude of 33° north of the equator. If you trace the 33rd parallel to the exact geographic global opposite from Mount Hermon, you will find yourself directly on top of the most controversially mythic place in current ufological history: Roswell, New Mexico. Mount Hermon, where the Watchers descended to the earth, and Roswell, New Mexico, are exact polar opposites on the same 33rd degree north latitude. The global coordinates of Mount Hermon and the Roswell crash site are no accident, and speak to some deeper, perhaps secret significance.

“If aliens used the thirty-third latitudinal line as a weigh point—a landing point for planet earth, what biblical people saw thousands and thousands of years ago on Mount Hermon, were entities that came down from the sky. They called them angels.”

Bill Birnes, *Ancient Aliens*,
UFO Magazine, *UFO Hunters*⁵



Two significant sites on the 33rd parallel north. Mt. Hermon, Israel, and the highly controversial Roswell, New Mexico, UFO crash site are exact geo-global opposites.

Photo courtesy of the author. Copyright 2011.

Could the Watchers who descended to the slopes of Mount Hermon thousands of years ago, and the UFOs that reportedly crashed at Roswell in 1947 be from the same extra-terrestrial race? If these two events spanning the entirety of recorded human history indeed involve alien races, then they have been with us for the long haul, since the beginning of time. And it begs the question of whether or not they were left behind to monitor us, or to help establish and guide our civilizations and culture. And the even bigger question: Are they still among us today?

Some Christian ufologists, such as Chuck Missler, believe that the “Sons of God” in Genesis 6:2 are actually extra-terrestrials or grey aliens,⁶ and that these beings are actually fallen angels or demons that have appeared during the antediluvian times in order to genetically alter the human race, and to pollute the bloodline of Jesus.⁷ Thus, the Nephilim would be the hybrid race of these beings in this view.

Sumer

The land of “Shumer,” or Sumer, “Shinar” of the bible (literally, “Land of the Watchers” or “Land of the Bright Shining Ones”), as it has been identified in the Mesopotamia’s Fertile Crescent region, in modern-day Iraq, is the place where the Watchers and their offspring, the Nephilim, had their first great influence on human history. Or at least this is where they made their prehistoric, tangible mark on humanity, beyond their initial contact and intercourse.

On today’s map, the Land of Sumer lay roughly 400 miles east—as the crow flies—from the slopes of Mount Hermon, which is just a few miles northeast of Damascus. That seems like quite a distance to cover from the Watchers’ geographic touchdown on the planet to where they bore the greatest influence in mankind’s earliest of histories, but it is extremely important to take note of the region and all its connectivity to early biblical and Middle Eastern religious accounts.

For hundreds of years, we regarded Egypt as the world’s “oldest” civilization, but now the land of the pharaohs has been relegated to the periphery of the civilized world in the fourth and third millennia BCE. Despite the progress of archaeology and anthropology, we still know very little about the history of the peoples of the Mesopotamian region prior to 2500 BCE. And the Sumerians seemed to rise suddenly out of nowhere, predating Egyptian culture by at least 1,500-2,000 years.

In speaking of the Sumerian culture, Carl Sagan once remarked that we still have no clear perspective about their origins: “Their language is foreign; it shows no resemblance to Indo-European, Semitic or any other language. We can only map them by the actions of their successors, the Akkadians, who created a voluminous Sumerian-Akkadian dictionary.”⁸

The Sumerian culture of ancient Mesopotamia is the earliest human civilization known to contemporary science and the archaeological record, and Sumar’s sudden onset of civilized culture remained a mystery for many years despite representing an exponential quantum leap in humanity’s intellectual development. It all began about 6,000 years ago when the very first cuneiform writing was developed by the Sumerians to record a dramatic astronomical event: the visible star-burst of Vela X, a star that went supernova about 1,300 light years away from our solar system. It can still be seen today as a faintly flashing pulsar. Virtually overnight, in evolutionary terms, the Sumerians gave the world written language, the first fundamental character of which was the Sumerian symbol for the word *star*, commemorating the astronomical event. The cuneiform word was then linked to the symbol for “deity,” and the term *star god* was born.

In the blink of an eye, historically speaking, the Sumerians gave humanity written language when it had never before existed. The ancient Sumerians left behind, in the ruined mounds of their ancient cities, cuneiform tablets that listed everything from the spiritual form of worship to the mundane business receipts drawn up between merchants. The Sumerians, in their written language, gave us the first love song, the first prescription of pharmaceutical concoctions (all without any inclusion of magic or spirituality), the first school system, the first law code of jurisprudence, and the first parliament. And it all came out of nowhere, in the twinkling of a bursting supernova.

Why is this contextual to the Watchers? Because it was the Watchers who, according to the Book of Enoch, brought these skills to the ancient

Sumerians—and not only the Watchers, but other races that are recorded in the annals of ancient history and religious spirituality. All of the citings of ancient god-like entities appearing in various cultures, teaching mankind advanced skills, can all be collectively lumped together as superstitious myth-building, but, all myth and legend have at their core at least a kernel of truth and fact. The skeptic will ask you to cite evidences that other species interfered in the evolutionary ascendancy of mankind's civilization, while at the same time ignoring or at the very least watering down the pan-cultural evidence that already abundantly exists. It merely boils down to your "leaping off" point. That point with the skeptically and scientifically minded eliminates the possibility of spiritual or extra-terrestrial influence, as they seek to merely boil all anthropological studies down to what humanity achieved on its own accord. The possibility of external influence in cultural development—or physiological development, for that matter—is eliminated as a possibility because it smacks of too much superstition and unfounded, spurious claims. Yet the spiritual-historical documentation of every culture possesses an exponential thread of commonality in that they all express similarities. Even the Bible itself, in its many fables and Judeo-Christian mythologies, has an underlying code that exposes at least the possibility that there was influence from a more supreme being or race of infiltrators set on tangibly altering the course of homo-nid development and cultural establishment. It can't all be chalked up to superstitious myth.

Religious Mythology vs. Alien Influence

So much of what we read and interpret as mythology—especially from ancient religious texts—are things that we in our modern, much more advanced culture dispatch with a broad swath. We tend to do this so we can claim a higher intellectual ground than that of our ancestors, avoiding any possibility of being labeled as superstitious or appearing as if our theories and conclusions are being drawn from outmoded ways of perceiving and thinking.

But what if the old superstitions and mythologies are true, and we only label them as being myth because they lie outside the realm of a more sterile scientific view? In a universe as vast as the physical one in which we are only the tiniest drop in the motion of a vast, endless, blue sparkling sea, there are obviously more things at play than we can possibly fathom or even conceive in our wildest imaginings. So, instead of brushing aside the mythologies as irrelevant and lacking in any substantive fact, let's take the opposite approach and examine some of what has been left for us to consider by our ancient forebears.

Oannes, the Fishman

In the third century BCE, Babylonian priest-historian Berossus chronicled the coming of the Annedoti and their leader, Oannes, a race described as being half-human, half-fish, that surfaced from the Persian Gulf to instruct the early inhabitants of Mesopotamia in the arts of culture and civilization. According to the chronicles of Berossus, the ancient Sumerians were like “beasts of the field,” prior to the arrival of Oannes, living under no law, order, or conduct of governance. It was this half-fish/half-man entity who surfaced, appearing in the midst of the Sumerians, and though described in the writings of Berossus as being frightfully hideous in appearance, spoke with superior intelligence, ability, and instruction for the prehistoric, uncivilized Mesopotamians. According to Berossus, the leader of the Annedoti Fishman, Oannes, would rise up out of the sea every morning and instruct the people in all manner of arts and insights into all manner of letters and sciences. Oannes taught them how to construct houses, to found and build temples, and to compile laws and codes of conduct, and explained to them the principles of geometrical knowledge—all things that were necessary to devise and construct a cohesive, civilized culture. Oannes also taught the art of agriculture and the discerning of seeds and fruits and all manner of husbandry. In short, it is said by Berossus, Oannes “humanized” the savage, uncivilized humans that lived as un-unified, scattered animals in the wilds of Mesopotamia.

The appearance of reptilian-like entities exists all throughout human history. Oannes is simply one version of this extra-terrestrial form of entity, the half-man, half-fish, walking on two legs, possessing superior intelligence and the ability to communicate and teach specific knowledge to a lesser-advanced humanity.

Many ancient cultures have legends of amphibians or serpent people who serve as teachers and instruct ancient mankind in the arts of civilization. Quetzalcoatl, the feathered serpent of the Aztecs, descended from heaven in a silver egg. The strikingly handsome Nagas were the semi-divine Serpent People with supernatural powers who figure in the Hindu and Buddhist traditions. The shadowy recesses of history are rife with mentions of mythical sky people who were emissaries of the flying serpent. The snake-worshipping Mayans and Aztecs bear striking resemblance to the Chinese, who worshipped the celestial dragon. There are even reptilian characters that rise up in the Genesis account of creation and the first family.

The Dogon Nommos

The Nommos are the ancestral spirits, sometimes referred to as deities, hailing from the star Sirius B and worshipped by the Dogon tribe of Mali, West Africa, their villages situated around the arid Bandiagara Escarpment. The word *Nommos* is derived from a Dogon word meaning “to make one drink.” They are described as being frog-like creatures in both their amphibious and hermaphroditic physiologies. The Nommos were said to have been quite “ugly,” beings that resembled mermen and mermaids. They also appear in Babylonian, Accadian, and the Sumerian myths of the Annedoti and Oannes. The Egyptian goddess Isis, who is sometimes depicted as a mermaid, is also linked with the star Sirius. Dogon folk art depicts the Nommos as creatures with the upper torsos of human beings, and the legs and feet of an amphibian, with a fish-like tail. The Dogon also refer to the ancient Nommos as “Masters of the Water,” “the Monitors,” and “the Teachers.”

We see in Dogon mythology a commonality shared by many creation mythologies: the introduction of multiple births at the point of creation. This element of multiple births is even seen in the Genesis account of Adam and Eve's twin sons, Cain and Abel. In the case of the Nommos, the multiplicity is demonstrated by the mutation of a single entity into multiples. Nommo—the singular entity representing the race of Nommos—was the first living creature created by their sky god Amma. Soon after, Nommo underwent a transformative mutation and multiplied into four pairs of twins. One of the twins rebelled against the universal order created by Amma and, to restore order to his creation, Amma sacrificed one of the multiple Nommo progeny, dismembered his body, and scattered it throughout the universe. This dispersal of body parts is seen by the Dogon as the source for the proliferation of Binu shrines throughout the Dogons' traditional territory; wherever a body part fell, a shrine was erected.

In the latter 1940s, four Dogon priests related to French anthropologists Marcel Griaule and Germaine Dieterlen (who had been working with the Dogon since 1931) a belief that the Nommos, according to the Dogon legend, lived on a planet that orbits a star in the Sirius system, identified as Sirius B. The Nommos landed on earth in an "ark" that made a spinning decent to the ground with great noise and wind, like that of thunder and fire. The Dogon apparently possessed traditional astronomical knowledge about Sirius and its two companion stars that would normally be considered impossible without the use of telescopes. Of course, skeptics have attributed this intimate knowledge of the stars to "cultural contamination," possibly even introduced by the anthropologists themselves. However, that skeptical observation is considered by most to be far too simplistic a speculation.

After arriving, the Nommos, requiring a watery environment in which to exist, immediately set about the task of constructing a reservoir of water and subsequently dove in. According to the myth related to Griaule and Dieterlen, the Nommo divided his body among men to feed them; that is why it is also said that as the universe had drunk of his body, the Nommo also made men drink. He gave all his life principles to human beings.

According to the Dogon legend, the Nommo was crucified on a tree, but was resurrected and returned to his home world. Dogon legend has it that he will return in the future to revisit the earth in a human form.

The Serpent in the Garden of Eden

“1 Now the serpent was more crafty than any of the wild animals the LORD God had made. He said to the woman, “Did God really say, ‘You must not eat from any tree in the garden?’”

(Genesis 3:1)

The original paradise that rolled off the creative fingertips of God, as stated in the biblical account, is more than simple lore or myth. Despite all the spiritual mythos built up around the Garden of Eden’s existence, understanding its geographic location and the events that the Bible says took place there, are the first steppingstones to understanding the descent of the Watchers and the influence of external entities and races. We are going to take a bit of a diversion in this section in order to establish some background of the character known as the Serpent in the Garden of Eden.

According to the Book of Genesis, Eden lay in the region between the Tigris and Euphrates Rivers, with the Pishon and the Gihon flanking.

“10 A river watering the garden flowed from Eden; from there it was separated into four headwaters. 11 The name of the first is the Pishon; it winds through the entire land of Havilah, where there is gold. 12 (The gold of that land is good; aromatic resin and onyx are also there.) 13 The name of the second river is the Gihon; it winds through the entire land of Cush. 14 The name of the third river is the

Tigris; it runs along the east side of Ashur. And the fourth river is the Euphrates.”

(Genesis 2:10-14)

But all of this intimate geography may have been altered significantly during the Great Flood, which covered, as the Bible says, the entire surface of the world, even to the tops of the highest mountain peaks.

“17 For forty days the flood kept coming on the earth, and as the waters increased they lifted the ark high above the earth. 18 The waters rose and increased greatly on the earth, and the ark floated on the surface of the water. 19 They rose greatly on the earth, and all the high mountains under the entire heavens were covered. 20 The waters rose and covered the mountains to a depth of more than fifteen cubits [roughly 23 feet or 6.8 meters]. 21 Every living thing that moved on land perished—birds, livestock, wild animals, all the creatures that swarm over the earth, and all mankind. 22 Everything on dry land that had the breath of life in its nostrils died. 23 Every living thing on the face of the earth was wiped out; people and animals and the creatures that move along the ground and the birds were wiped from the earth. Only Noah was left, and those with him in the ark. 24 The waters flooded the earth for a hundred and fifty days.”

(Genesis 7:17-24)

There has been much debate over the land surface that was actually engulfed by the Great Flood. If the purpose of the flood was to destroy all life on the entire planet, then an earth-enveloping deluge is what would have been necessary, even though early human civilization existed only in the Fertile Crescent region of the earth. In the ancient way of understanding and evaluating, the “entire earth” encompassed only the areas that were known to the people alive at that time. Anything else existing on the opposite side of the globe was simply far beyond understanding or comprehension. Some ancient cultures even illustrated the Mesopotamian region as being an island surround by infinite horizons of ocean.

If the Great Flood were a more localized event, it may have simply engulfed the entirety of the Mesopotamian region, consisting of the Tigris and Euphrates River valleys, covering what would have been the highest of mountains in that antediluvian geography. A massive flood of the nature described in the Bible would have altered the landscape significantly, so the actual location of the Garden of Eden is impossible to pinpoint by today's geographic markers.

Wherever Eden actually lay on the map, it is clear that it was situated somewhere in the great Mesopotamian river valleys, in relatively close proximity to the rising Sumerian civilization and the earliest of cities built in the region.



The region of Eden. Although there is no way to be absolutely sure of its precise location, the Garden of Eden was most likely just to the northwest of the budding Sumerian civilization. The Genesis narrative places the Garden between the Tigris and Euphrates rivers, flanked by the Gihon and Pishon rivers, both of whose courses have altered over the millennia due to geologic catastrophe, yet not so much so that the approximate location of the Garden of Eden was rendered a complete mystery.

Photo courtesy of the author. Copyright 2011.

Now take a different look at the events that took place there:

The Hebrew word used in the Book of Genesis for the word *snake* is *nachash* (pronounced “naw-kawsh”), meaning “magician or enchanter; a spellbinder; to illuminate, shine.” Jewish Rabbinic interpretation never saw this word as meaning a literal snake. It was to be understood as “a shining being with power to enchant.” This is a far cry from a snake in the grass, and in many biblical interpretations is none other than Lucifer himself, although the passage itself never actually calls him out by name. It is this being that influences Eve—or beguiles her, in a more accurate sense—into eating the fruit of the forbidden tree in the midst of the Garden of Eden.

“2 The woman said to the serpent, ‘We may eat fruit from the trees in the garden, 3 but God did say, You must not eat fruit from the tree that is in the middle of the garden, and you must not touch it, or you will die.’”

(Genesis 3:2-3)

The Hebrew word for that tree is *ets*, a word that is in very close association with the Hebrew word *toledah*, both meaning “generations.” It is from these words that we draw the modern equivalent of “family tree.” Another variation of the word *ets* is “the wood of a tree as an opening and closing of a door.” In an applicational stretch the same word can apply to the term “portal; opening of one’s mind; enlightenment.”

It has been in some circles suggested that the Tree of the Knowledge of Good and Evil, from which Eve is said to have eaten the forbidden fruit, was not a literal tree at all, but, rather, symbolic of the pre-Adamic races that lived in the regions surrounding the Garden of Eden. These races are said to encompass the Atlantean civilization.

The phrase *fruit of the tree* is the Hebrew word *periy*—fruit: produce of the ground; offspring, children, progeny (of the womb); or figuratively: fruit (of actions). The phrase *eat of it* is the Hebrew word *akal* (aw-kal); this word has many uses, among which, one use means to “lay with a woman (sexual intercourse);” and the word *touch* is the Hebrew word *naga* (naw-gah); to touch, that is, to lay the hand upon (for any purpose); euphemism for: to touch, have sex with a woman.

“4 ‘You will not certainly die,’ the serpent said to the woman. 5 ‘For God knows that when you eat of it your eyes will be opened, and you will be like God, knowing good and evil.’ 6 When the woman saw that the fruit of the tree was good for food and pleasing to the eye, and also desirable for gaining wisdom, she took some and ate it. She also gave some to her husband, who was with her, and he ate it. 7 Then the eyes of both of them were opened, and they realized they were naked; so they sewed fig leaves together and made coverings for themselves.”

(Genesis 3:4-7)

This was obviously no ordinary tree. In fact, it wasn’t a literal tree at all. Many biblical scholars interpret this as Lucifer himself.

- ★ The phrase *pleasant to the eyes* is the Hebrew word *chamad*: to desire, to covet, to take pleasure in, to delight in, to be desirable, to delight greatly, to desire greatly, desirableness, preciousness.
- ★ The word *desired* is the Hebrew word *ta’avah* (tah-av-aw’)—to yearn for, to lust after (used of bodily appetites) a longing; by

implication: a delight (subjectively, satisfaction, objectively, a charm): a desire, a wish, longings of one's heart; lust, an appetite, covetousness (in a bad sense); to covet; to wait longingly.

**Took* is the Hebrew word *laqach* (law-kakh'); a primitive root; to take (in the widest variety of applications): to take (as in: "Abraham took his cloak in his hand"), to lay hold of, to receive, to marry, to take a wife, to take to or for a person, to procure, to get, to take possession of, to select, to choose, to take in marriage, to receive, to accept.

A very different picture of Eve's temptation in the Garden of Eden is beginning to emerge. The previous parsed passage is far more than a sinful, disobedient appreciation of fruit. All the references we hear of Eve eating an apple, or depictions in religious art of the Eden couple eating a big piece of fruit is merely coded information and hiding what the passage truly speaks about.

"It is obvious here that the snake was a symbol and not a literal talking snake selling apples. If you look up the words used in Genesis from a Strong's Concordance, you will then see that Genesis is filled with many sexual idioms. In fact the picture of the snake eating dust is a Jewish idiom for being lower than low. To take it literally is a mistake. Note too that there are no snakes that eat dust. Also that male penis strongly resembles a snake in its shape, so I do not think that we are dealing with a literal snake. And what was the law that Eve broke and was in "transgression" of? I would think it is clear that she was in transgression because she had committed adultery. It says that Adam did too partake in the eating of the fruit and became ashamed. But this fruit did not come directly from the tree but from Eve.⁹"

According to 1 Enoch 69:4-12, the serpent was one of five angels known as "the Five Satans," and one of those Satans was named Gader'el, and was "he who showed the children of the people all the blows of death, who misled Eve, who showed the children of the people (how to make) the instruments of death (such as) the shield, the breastplate, and the sword for

warfare, and all (the other) instruments of death to the children of the people.”

What really happened in this scene in the Garden of Eden is that Eve, the mother of humanity, lost her virginity to the Serpent; you can see that she encountered him sexually before ever having sex with her husband, Adam. And later in the passage, the text is implicit that Eve was impregnated by this encounter. Then she drew her husband into the scenario, he willingly partook, and Eve also became impregnated by Adam. Eve was then bearing fraternal twins, Cain and Abel, one from the seed of Adam and the other from the seed of the character known as the serpent in the Garden.

The grand sin that was committed in Eden was not mere disobedience in the eating of a forbidden piece of fruit from a forbidden tree in the midst of the garden. It was a sexual sin that created a dual bloodline in the twins conceived in Eve’s womb. According to the subsequent passages in Genesis, we learn that Abel was the blood seed of Adam, but that Cain was the blood seed of the serpent, and that those opposing lineages would be in constant conflict with one another, starting with Cain murdering his twin brother.

Here, we see that events in the Garden of Eden were greatly influenced by none other than a reptilian character. Theologically, you could pigeon-hole him as Lucifer or “Satan,” taking the form of a snake, but even in that form he would have had to have possessed the physical ability to have sexual intercourse with Eve. So the reptilian feature is mere poetic biblical language, or it represents the physical appearance and qualities of the person who tempted Eve.

In a very real sense, then, Cain, the seed of the serpent, was for all practical purposes the *very first* of the Nephilim, bequeathed by a fallen angel, perhaps even Lucifer himself.

Whoever the serpent truly is, there have been linkages made between the obviously coded message of the Adam and Eve story with the beings that descended to the slopes of Mount Hermon and bred with human women seven generations later. But is this “serpent seed” planted in the Garden of Eden only the first of many such recorded events in biblical history? Was the seed of the serpent something that was planted in the womb of Eve, only to be done again and again and again in the wombs of other women in both the pre-flood and post-flood worlds? And was the serpent himself—obviously not a snake or a man—a member of an angelic caste or even Lucifer, as some suggest, or was he something completely different?

“12 How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning!”

[Isaiah 14:12]

“18 I beheld Satan as lightening fall from Heaven.”

[Jesus Christ, quoted in Luke 10:18]

Reptilians

The presence of a reptoid character in the biblical account of the Garden of Eden and the temptation of Eve has given rise to countless pop cultural mythologies, theories, and anecdotal personal encounters about a race of alien reptilian beings that interfered with human development and history. And they are linked closely with the Nephilim, Anunnaki, and the Sons of God of Genesis [Chapter 6](#). The only problem with most of the theorizing, despite how intriguing and possible the claims may be, is that it is just that: theorizing and speculation.

There are countless numbers of books and Websites that host a plethora of information about the reptilians that lived on this planet more than

800,000 years ago, hailing from the Draco star system. The vast majority of those fonts of reptilian information have no source points, no data, no cited facts. The entire reptilian issue seems to be summed up as accepted fact in particular circles of alien and ufological thought, but they offer us no solid evidence or empirical data to use as a foundation. No evidence, no verification, no historical records—much like most of our belief systems structured around the characters and events in the Bible itself. In his book *The Big Secret*, British-born new ageist, David Icke, one of the most well-known authors and lecturers on alien reptilians, speaks of their involvement with the human race through his own gaussian-blurred view of both historical and current events. For Icke, the reptilian factor is an otherworldly platform to use as a launching pad for his anti-Semitism, neofascism, and an ostensibly oddball convergence of New Age thinking with Nazi philosophy that he incorporates into the foundation for his belief that mankind has always been controlled and governed by a global Jewish conspiracy fathered by lizards from another planet.¹⁰ This merely illustrates that the topic of alien reptilians is comprised of more speculative ranting, subjective story-telling, and wishful thinking, than quantifiable historical or anthropological fact. Even the header on Icke's Website states that he is “[e]xposing the dreamworld we believe to be real.”¹¹

Reality can be stranger than fiction, it has been said, yet when we see the exposing of ideas from people who seem to have slippery holds on historical accuracy, let alone common sense and sanity, we tend to laugh them off into the other room and seat them at the children's table so they can do their thing while we adults converse at the grown-ups' table about the hardcore truisms of life and the universe. However, as crackpot as some of the ideas surrounding reptilians may sound, and whatever pseudo-political ideologies have been built on their shoulders, a kernel of truth may still lie quivering at the core. Although Reptilian art and religious application of serpents and dragons exist all throughout human history, there is little—if any—evidence that they dwelled on this planet and interacted with human beings on the level that is expressed in the theorizing of pseudo-scientific thought. Yet their presence in one form or another is pervasive and ultimately convincing to a certain degree.

Snake on a Stick

The remarkable fact is that throughout all ancient and modern civilizations, the serpent or dragon bestowing knowledge upon the human race figures prominently in all religions and histories: the Judeo-Christian reptilian “fallen angel” Lucifer; the Mayan serpent god, Quetzalcoatl; the enormous plumed serpent god of the Hopi Indians, Baholinkonga; the East Indian mystical human-like reptilians known as NAGAS; the Egyptian serpent god, Enuph; the Phoenicians Agathodemon; and even the Hebrews Nakhustan or Brazen Serpent that Moses cast and placed high on a pole when the Israelites were plagued by serpents in the wilderness—which is a biblical scene all on its own that begs the question of more encoded language from Moses. The actual passage reads:

“4 They traveled from Mount Hor along the route to the Red Sea, to go around Edom. But the people grew impatient on the way; 5 they spoke against God and against Moses, and said, ‘Why have you brought us up out of Egypt to die in the wilderness? There is no bread! There is no water! And we detest this miserable food!’ 6 Then the LORD sent venomous snakes among them; they bit the people and many Israelites died. 7 The people came to Moses and said, ‘We sinned when we spoke against the LORD and against you. Pray that the LORD will take the snakes away from us.’ So Moses prayed for the people. 8 The LORD said to Moses, ‘Make a snake and put it up on a pole; anyone who is bitten can look at it and live.’ 9 So Moses made a bronze snake and put it up on a pole. Then when anyone was bitten by a snake and looked at the bronze snake, they lived.”

(Numbers 21:4-9)

As a punishment for griping and complaining against God and Moses, the biblical account written by Moses tells us that God sent “firey serpents” into the camp of the wandering Israelites. The people were being bitten and dying in hordes. So God instructed Moses to cast a bronze snake and place

it high upon a pole, and all who were bitten and taken ill could look on the serpent from anywhere within the camp and be healed. The brazen serpent remained with the Israelites for another 700 years, where it eventually stood in the Temple in Jerusalem. But the people, during the time of King Hezekiah (715-687 BCE) had begun worshipping the snake and making an offering to it. So in a vast iconoclastic reform, Hezekiah cut down all the pagan groves, smashed all the idols, and destroyed the Nakhustan, which didn't bear that name until his reign on the throne of Israel, suggesting that he may have given it that name himself.

It is interesting to note that originally the second commandment written by Moses included this prohibition:

“4 You shall not make for yourself an idol, whether in the form of anything that is in heaven above, or that is on the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth.”

(Exodus 20:4)



Moses and the Brazen Serpent: Sebastien Bourdon, 1653-54.
Photo is licensed under Wikipedia Creative Commons.

This mandate was so strong in its wording that the Jews incorporated into their laws an extremist prohibition against portraiture and sculpted imagery of any kind, of man, beast, animal, or deity. Illustrating the power of the Jewish law, two first-century Jewish historians, Philo and Josephus, recorded revolts by the Jews during the tenure of Roman Praefect Pontius Pilatus (26-36 AD; Pilate), over the placement of graven images and effigies. According to Josephus, Pilate demonstrated a fairly insensitive approach to the Jews religious customs, and he ignored their protests by allowing his soldiers to bring the images of Caesar into the city by the dark of night. When the citizens of Jerusalem discovered these the following day, they appealed to Pilate to remove the ensigns of Caesar from the city. After five days of deliberation, Pilate had his soldiers surround the demonstrators, threatening them with death, which they were willing to accept rather than submit to desecration of Mosaic Law. Pilate finally removed the images. The incident proved to be an early example of effective resistance to tyranny by aggressive, nonviolent means, yet Pilate quelled the rebellion by signaling other of his plain-clothed troops who had positioned themselves within the crowds, to begin a very brief but bloody massacre of many of the protestors.¹²

Philo describes a similar incident in which Pilate was officially reprimanded by Emperor Tiberius after antagonizing the Jews by setting up gold-coated shields in Herod's palace in Jerusalem. The shields were ostensibly to honor Tiberius, and this time did not contain engraved images. Philo writes that the shields were set up "not so much to honor Tiberius as to annoy the multitude." The Jews protested the installation of the shields at first to Pilate and then, when he declined to remove them, by writing to Tiberius. Philo reports that upon reading the letters, Tiberius "wrote to Pilate with a host of reproaches and rebukes for his audacious violation of precedent and bade him at once take down the shields and have them transferred from the capital to Caesarea."¹³

The point is that the Jewish law forbade iconoclastic imagery of any kind, in a preemptive strike to stave off idol worship. But the Brazen Serpent was an exception, and it was imbued with divine power to cure illness and heal snake bites, and the people eventually worshipped it as a result, although centuries later. The worship of the serpent grew out of the fact that the serpent is so represented in creation scripture as the “god of the earth.” But he is also clearly presented as being subservient to the higher Divine, Elohim, who curses him in coded, symbolic language in Genesis [Chapter 3](#), as a result of the seduction of Eve. And Although it is true that the Bible itself never uses the word *reptilian*, but *serpent*, it is clear that the serpent is not simply a snake. There are only four characters mentioned at the dawn of mankind in the Garden of Eden: God, Adam, Eve, and the serpent.

Ancient Jewish beliefs about this serpent explicitly state that it had arms and legs, and walked upright. This claim is found in the *Bereshit Rabbah*, an ancient Jewish commentary on the Book of Genesis. While dealing with the story of the Garden of Eden, the *Midrash* also deals with the serpent. It declares that before causing Adam and Eve to sin, “it had legs” (*Bereishit Rabbah*, 19). According to this, the serpent was once a tall, splendid and regal creature. When its fate was decided and it is written that “upon thy belly shall thou go” (*Bereishit* 3:14), “the ministering angels descended and cut off its arms and legs” *Bereishit Rabbah*, 20. This descriptive tradition gives the physical image of the enticing serpent an impressive dimension that has repercussions on many viewpoints of the ancient world, which saw the serpent as representing forces of evil on one hand and as possessing supernatural powers on the other hand. Down through the ages, the description of the reptilian archtypical being that Adam and Eve may have encountered has been altered and evolved. By calling it a serpent and nothing more, biblical revisionists have effectively simplified the description and robbed humanity of a more mysterious, and possibly accurate, reality of which we are only now recognizing. Another point that should also be noted is that in the Book of Genesis, Elohim condemns the serpent by saying “On your belly you shall go,” which suggests that he wasn’t on it before.

The ancient Jewish accounts of the Garden of Eden describe a being that is more like the ufological, extra-terrestrial reptoids than just a plain serpent. They also tell how the reptilians' behavior amid early mankind resulted in their being *cast down into the earth*, hinting at a subterranean realm, having all traces of hands, feet, and the ability to walk upright, hidden from surface-dwelling humans, erased from man's memories, and placed permanently out of sight.

The Mighty Men of Renown

“4 The Nephilim were on the earth in those days, and also afterward, when the sons of God came in to the daughters of men, and they bore children to them. Those were the mighty men who were of old, men of renown.”

(Genesis 6:4)

There is also an alternate, not-so-pretty picture of the motivation behind the descent of the Watchers, and that is the story of enslavement and the breeding of a “worker class” by a superior race of extraterrestrial beings perceived by the simple-minded humans as divinity. The homonids found on the earth by the Watchers—the divine caste set in place, according to scripture, to protect and watch over the earth—were bettered by the genetic interbreeding of a superior, extraterrestrial race for the purpose of creating a slave caste. Accordingly, the Watchers as described in the religious Hebrew texts were none other than beings of superior intellect, strength, and technical advancement who saw opportunity to subjugate a lesser race, improving them by impregnation or genetic tampering. It is also a wave of thought among Ancient Alienists that the “interbreeding” mentioned in the Genesis and Enochian accounts was ancient, poetic, picturesque coded language used to describe what would be described in our modern terminology as cloning and genetic engineering.

The Book of Genesis tells us that the offspring of the cohabitation between the Watchers and humans were known as “the heroes of old” and the “mighty men of renown”; the *Gibborim*, the Hebrew word for “mightiest,” the intensive noun for Gabar, or “mighty.” The word was many times used to describe the valiant, brave, and of great stature. But in the usage of this word in Genesis [chapter 6](#), it speaks of a class of beings in its description of the Nephilim as being “mighty.” The word *Gibborim* is also used more than 150 times in the Tanakh, an acronym formed from the initial Hebrew letters of the Masoretic Text’s three traditional subdivisions: the Torah (“Teaching,” also known as the Five Books of Moses), Nevi’im (“Prophets”), and Ketuvim (“Writings”), and is applied not only to the Nephilim and men, but also to lions (Proverbs 30:30), hunters (Genesis 10:9), soldiers (Jeremiah 51:30), and leaders (Daniel 11:3). The ancient, divine connotation of the word is nearly lost in the modern usage of the word *Gibbor*, which means “hero” and “brave” (as a verb).

The Gibborim have even made it into current-day pop culture. Marvel Comics has their Gibborim of the Demogorge, created by Brian K. Vaughan and Adrian Alphona, as a race of three six-fingered giants, among the various Elder Gods of Earth (having somehow survived ancient judgmental catastrophe) whose goal is to wipe the Earth clean of all humanity. Averaging a rough height of 100 feet, the Gibborim despise all humans.

Despite the watering down of the ancient usage of the word and its further pop cultural diminutives, it is this class of cross-bred “mighty heroes,” these Nephilim offspring of the Watchers, who begin the ravaging of humanity and the earth. It is also this race of hybrid offspring who are said to have begun the slave enforcement of mankind. As they grew in influence and power, the Gibborim began to extract more and more natural resources for their sustenance, and all the peoples of the earth, who inhabited a relatively small region of what is now the Middle East, were oppressed and completely entrenched in a slave caste societal bondage to these beings. It was this interplay and corruption that the Book of Genesis hails to as the cause of the “wickedness of mankind,” the stench to the

nostrils of God that had him “grieving” that he had ever created mankind on the earth. And that grieving was not a hatred of humans, but rather a deep agonizing on the part of the deity that he had created a race that was so easily manipulated and altered by the Watchers, his own emissaries. The course of action taken by the divine was to then wipe out the entire race of Nephilim/Gibborim, as well as the rest of the tainted-blood humanity, in one, great universal catastrophic judgment: the Great Flood of Noah. But to preserve the human race, Noah was chosen to build an ark, a great barge to preserve all animal life as well as the one pure-blooded human family—his own.

It seems impossible for we who exist at this far end of antiquity, for such a salvational vessel to be created out of “shittim wood and tree sap tar,” as the Bible recounts, and even more implausible for a man and his three sons to take 120 years to build it, then to gather two of every kind of animal in existence to load into its many stalls and chambers. Yet one must remember that the passage itself never says that Noah went out with a net and a lasso to gather the species of animals; it says that they were “brought to the ark” by God. And, of course, as we are beginning to see, this act in and of itself is more likely than not one of two things: perfect in its illustrative descriptions and true to the scriptures as read, or poetic code language utilized to set in place a mythological cover story for an event that may have been nothing short of genetic storage at the hands of a much superior race understood by ancient man to be gods.

Demonic Interbreeding

According to Roman Catholic theology, fallen angels have been attempting to interbreed with mankind for the purposes of creating a perfect hybrid mix of demonic and human ever since the fall of man.

The Watchers themselves were not demons, nor were they fallen angels, but their act of descending to the earth in defiance of their divine charge,

certainly placed them in a position of dangerous disobedience as attested to by their leader:

“3 Then their leader Shamyaza said to them (the other prefects of the Watchers); ‘I fear that you may perhaps be indisposed to the performance of this enterprise (intermingling with human women); 4 And that I alone shall suffer for so grievous a crime.’”

(1 Enoch 7:3-4)

Against whom was Shamyaza concerned about committing a crime? God? A racial hierarchy? The humans? It is clear by this text that whoever Shamyaza really was, he was a bit nervous about his plans, as he alone would be held responsible, being their leader. He seemed to have a clear understanding that his act would bring hierarchical consequences. But he was, as the text indicates, immediately followed by the rest of the Grigori, and as we will see, they all bore the consequential brunt of their deeds, for it was this act on their collective part that placed them—at least in religious and scriptural terms—in the camp of the “fallen angels,” as some contend.

Whereas the New Testament uses the Greek word “demon” to refer to these “sons of the mighty,” the Old Testament uses revealing descriptive names. Words that describe these beings, such as *bene ha’Elohim*, meaning “sons of God,” *Zophim*, meaning “the watchers,” and *Malakh*, meaning “messengers” (this reference was translated to angel in English), are used for the “aerial host” often regardless of alignment. The Book of Enoch tells us the origin of certain “interdimensional intelligences”—called in the monotheistic New Testament “demons,” who were understandably associated with evil because originally the Greek term *daimon* meant “any deity”—was in the Days of Noah, and didn’t end with the Flood but continued, according to Genesis 6, “even after.” There are three main terms for demons in the New Testament: *daimonion* (demon; 60 times, 50 in the Gospels); *pneuma* (spirit; 52 times) usually with a qualifying adjective such as *akatharton* (unclean; 21 times) or *poneron* (evil; eight times); and

angelos (seven times of demonic agencies). *Daimon* (demon), the term commonly used in classical Greek, appears only once, in Mark 8:31.”¹⁴

Divine Judgment

In short, the reason for the flood as recorded in the Book of Genesis was not an imposition of divine judgment on a race of humans who had simply grown too wicked for their own good. That would seem an awful waste of humanity, even for God himself, especially when there would have been much better ways to offer repentance and forgiveness short of the complete destruction of the earth and all things dwelling on it. This entire issue of a great deluge being used simply to eradicate a race of sinners, sending them all to the eternal hell of infinite separation from God, is lost in its grandiosity, akin to dropping an atomic bomb in order to squash a beehive hanging from the eave of your house.

There had to be something more than simple matters of heart at play here; something more than a mere rejection of the laws of God on the part of a rebellious race of humans. Sin can be handled, according to the Bible, by a change of heart that does not require the extermination of an entire race. But what if what we have here in this story goes far beyond the “wickedness of mankind,” and delves deep into the extermination of an extra-terrestrially manipulated race that has corrupted humanity, bringing them wickedness through the mode of genetic corruption and alteration of DNA? What if the great flood was a means incorporated by a supreme being—or a master, superior race—to kill the experiment that had gone badly awry—a wiping out of an experiment that had gone very, very wrong?

In Mary Shelley’s *Frankenstein*, which she attested to have written as an allegory of God’s creation of man and his subsequent fall from grace, a man is created by a scientist experimenting with the reanimation of dead human flesh. The created being is highly intelligent and learns to read, write, and

communicate on a near-genius level—much unlike the monster that was made popular in the Boris Karloff movies of the 1930s. It was when this created man became corrupt and turned into the “monster” that his creator found it necessary to take his life, ending in a great pursuit that led them to the frozen wastes of the Arctic and a fiery demise for them both.

The creators of the hybrid race of Nephilim found it necessary to eradicate them and their influence in humanity. *But it didn't work.* Even after the utter devastation of a universal flood, even after the collection of the DNA and/or physical quarantine of every species of animal, the Bible tells us, again, that...

“4 The Nephilim were on the earth in those days—and also afterward... [!]”

(Genesis 6:4)

For the purist believer in the infallibility of God and scripture, this notion would seem heresy and blasphemy, but that is, of course, if you follow the stricture of scriptural accounts of these things by the letter, not accounting for coded language and simplistic fabled cover stories for much greater events.

Outgrown and Outmoded

On one side of the equation, humanity seems to have outgrown its need for traditional religious belief. The firmly held dogmas of the existence of a Supreme Divine have become an outmoded mythology, only to be replaced with updated, more acceptable versions of what we think ancient mankind was experiencing. Did prehistoric humans encounter strange and wonderful beings so far advanced that they could only describe them within the framework of their scientific and spiritual understanding? It seems as if

anything that lay in that realm of the mystical and unexplained—even in religious circles where we are *already* supposed to believe in great divine beings and miraculous deeds—there is a move away from anything that even smacks of the “woo woo” that fringes on the mythological. There is some exceptional allowance for God and his angels, but nearly everything else falls under the category of “we don’t know that.”¹⁵

However, on the flip side of that equation, I have found that most people have their curiosities piqued when it comes to topics of UFOs, aliens, and extra-terrestrial visitations—no matter how far outside their religious or denominational box those curiosities take them. Although they may want to accept that these things are highly possible, if not probable, they will stop haltingly short of any attempt to reconcile them with their pre-established religious belief systems that focus on a traditional, omniscient, omnipresent, all-powerful God and his caste of angels. It’s as if they *want* to believe that these mysteries bear some truth, but they are unwilling to allow those things to merge with their traditional religious beliefs and values—the things they may not even know for sure if they believe, but are unwilling to release. There is a dichotomous set of beliefs, one part wanting to accept that there are as-yet unexplained mysteries, and the other too afraid to say so, for fear of religious repercussions.

I tend to take particular issue with the evangelical, fundamentalist circles from which I hail in my younger days of church-going and ministry. Fundamentalist believers seem to have this intrinsic sense about them that, should there be any veracity to the seemingly mounting evidences that extra-terrestrials and alien visitors from the other regions of the universe or dimensionalities truly exist, their religion and faith would be somehow irreconcilably shaken to its core, as if God’s universe is not big enough to handle the existence of other races, off planet, “exo-solar system.” For these followers of hyperbolic forms of Christianity, the Bible’s faith message of salvation and reconciliation is rendered null and void if there exists another race that does not fall under the same mandates as the bible’s descriptions of a fallen human race, born in iniquity and in need of redemption.

I faced this same sort of argument in those same fundamentalist circles when discussing—long before the book and the movie—the theories behind Dan Brown’s highly provocative book *The DaVinci Code*, in which he engages the age-old theory that perhaps Jesus of Nazareth was a married man and had children. I had one old Bible School friend discount the notion completely, insisting that for Jesus to have been married would unravel the Nazarene’s claim to being the Son of God possessive of redemptive power. This theological position, of course, was taken despite the fact that there are many evidences—inclusive of a rabbinic requirement for rabbis to be married men—suggesting that Jesus was indeed married. And in establishing the Messianic authority of Jesus, the New Testament itself claims, in Hebrews 4:15, that he “experienced life (“temptation”) in *all manners*, just as we do.”

Yet, the Christian fundamentalist view is that nothing exists outside the bounds of written scriptural text, and if it was ever proven that it does, that would somehow dissemble their faith in God, leaving them like so much wet laundry hanging out on the line, flapping in the wind, void of any solid religious structure or spiritual coherence.

At the same time, the scriptures on which the foundations are built for faith and religious practice for most of these believers, are rife with all sorts of references to clearly non-human, non-earthly beings. From angels to demons to devils to cherubim and seraphim, all the way up the ladder to God Almighty, the pages of traditional religious texts put on a perpetual cavalcade of non-human entities whose actions range from simple visitations, to fiery, flying chariots, to beings who descend to the earth making a pact among themselves to impregnate the daughters of humanity.

“1 The number of people on earth began to grow, and daughters were born to them. 2 When the Sons of God [Enoch refers to these same beings as the ‘Watchers’] saw that these girls were beautiful, they married any of them they chose. The Lord said, ‘My Spirit will not remain in human beings forever, because they are flesh. They will live only 120 years.’ The Nephilim were on the earth in those days and also

later. That was when the sons of God had sexual relations with the daughters of human beings. These women gave birth to children, who became famous and were the mighty warriors of long ago.”

(Genesis 6:1-4)

The big question is: Are they gods, angels, and devils, or did early man simply ascribe those titles within the construct of their understanding?

What most faith-based believers in the Bible fail to recognize is the fact that the Bible is full of references to other intelligences and non-human entities. These beings are generally said by the theological intelligentsia to be angelic beings or demonic entities, rather than any sort of extra-terrestrial alien presence:

★ The apostle Paul, who started out as Saul of Tarsus, a persecutor of the early Christians, had set out to Damascus, carrying with him the death warrants for members of the Christian movement there. As he and his entourage were on the road, a shaft of light blazed down out of the sky, casting Saul to the ground. No one else in his party heard a word, but later, Saul recounted a tale of God speaking to him in the form of Jesus Christ, the “Son of God.”

This was said by Saul to be his conversion experience, and he changed his name to Paul. Was this an encounter with a member of the Divine Council who later manifested as the Son of God, the Jewish Messiah? Paul had an apparently life-changing, out-of-body, or near-death experience in which he saw “things which it is not lawful for a man to speak” (2 Corinthians 12:4). I have often wondered what it was that he saw and why he was never permitted to say anything about it. But it is apparent that the experience made such an indelible mark on Paul’s life that he could not even speak of it in the first person:

“2 I know a man in Christ who fourteen years ago was caught up to the third heaven. Whether it was in the body or out of the body I do not know—God knows. 3 And I know that this man—whether in the body

or apart from the body I do not know, but God knows—4 was caught up to paradise. He heard inexpressible things, things that man is not permitted to tell.”

(2 Corinthians 12:2-4)

★ The star systems of Orion, Pliades, and Arcturus are mentioned by name in the chronologically oldest book in the Old Testament, the Book of Job:

“9 He is the Maker of the Bear [Ursa Major] and Orion, the Pleiades and the clustered stars [Arcturus] of the south.”

(Job 9:9)

“Can you bind the beautiful Pleiades? Can you loose the cords of Orion?”

(Job 38:31)

★ The high priest of El Elyon [the “Most High God”] and king of the city of Salem [ancient Jerusalem] was a man named Melchizedek who, according to Hebrews 7:3, had “neither beginning nor end of days” and who mysteriously appeared in Abraham’s time, resembling a “Son of God”:

“3 He is without father or mother or genealogy, having neither beginning of days nor end of life, but resembling the Son of God he continues a priest forever.”

(Hebrews 7:3)

★ The apostle John, in his dotage on the Isle of Patmos some 60 years after he walked as a disciple to Jesus, had a most profound apocalyptic vision, which dealt with numerous non-human intelligences. In just the first of many sections of the Book of Revelation, filled with strange beasts and ostentacious visions, John wrote:

“9 I, John, your brother and companion in the suffering and kingdom and patient endurance that are ours in Jesus, was on the island of Patmos because of the word of God and the testimony of Jesus. 10 On the Lord’s Day I was in the Spirit, and I heard behind me a loud voice like a trumpet, 11 which said: ‘Write on a scroll what you see and send it to the seven churches: to Ephesus, Smyrna, Pergamum, Thyatira, Sardis, Philadelphia and Laodicea.’ 12 I turned around to see the voice that was speaking to me. And when I turned I saw seven golden lampstands, 13 and among the lampstands was someone ‘like a son of man,’ dressed in a robe reaching down to his feet and with a golden sash around his chest. 14 His head and hair were white like wool, as white as snow, and his eyes were like blazing fire. 15 His feet were like bronze glowing in a furnace, and his voice was like the sound of rushing waters. 16 In his right hand he held seven stars, and out of his mouth came a sharp double-edged sword. His face was like the sun shining in all its brilliance.

17 When I saw him, I fell at his feet as though dead. Then he placed his right hand on me and said: ‘Do not be afraid. I am the First and the Last. 18 I am the Living One; I was dead, and behold I am alive for ever and ever! And I hold the keys of death and Hades.’”

★ As we covered extensively, the Hebrew slaves were led out of bondage in Egypt under the leadership of Moses, and were guided by a pillar of fire by night and a pillar of cloud by day. Both were seen for 40 years, leading the way through the skies.

★ Ezekiel saw what has been described as a “flying saucer.” NASA spacecraft engineer Josef F. Blumrich had read Erich von

Däniken's *Chariots of the Gods*. In the book, von Däniken described Ezekiel's vision as none other than a "flying disk." Blumrich immediately set about to disprove von Däniken's theory, but upon further examination found that the vision in Ezekiel was nearly identical to a proposed craft design that he had invented. So he did an engineering analysis and worked out a preliminary design for the craft. He later wrote his findings in his book, entitled *The Spaceships of the Prophet Ezekiel*.¹⁶ Here is the description of what Ezekiel saw:

"1 In the thirtieth year, in the fourth month on the fifth day, while I was among the exiles by the Kebar River, the heavens were opened and I saw visions of God. 2 On the fifth of the month—it was the fifth year of the exile of King Jehoiachin—3 the word of the Lord came to Ezekiel the priest, the son of Buzi, by the Kebar River in the land of the Babylonians. There the hand of the Lord was upon him. 4 As I looked, behold, a storm wind was coming from the north, a great cloud with fire flashing forth continually and a bright light around it, and in its midst something like glowing metal in the midst of the fire. 5 Within it there were figures resembling four living beings. And this was their appearance: they had human form. 6 Each of them had four faces and four wings. 7 Their legs were straight and their feet were like a calf's hoof, and they gleamed like burnished bronze. 8 Under their wings on their four sides were human hands. As for the faces and wings of the four of them, 9 their wings touched one another; their faces did not turn when they moved, each went straight forward. 10 As for the form of their faces, each had the face of a man; all four had the face of a lion on the right and the face of a bull on the left, and all four had the face of an eagle. 11 Such were their faces. Their wings were spread out above; each had two touching another being, and two covering their bodies. 12 And each went straight forward; wherever the spirit was about to go, they would go, without turning as they went. 13 In the midst of the living beings there was something that looked like burning coals of fire, like torches darting back and forth among the living beings. The fire was bright, and lightning was flashing from the fire. 14 And the living beings ran to and fro like bolts of lightning. 15 Now as I looked at the living beings, behold, there was one wheel on the earth beside the living beings, for each of the four of them. 16

The appearance of the wheels and their workmanship was like sparkling beryl, and all four of them had the same form, their appearance and workmanship being as if one wheel were within another. 17 Whenever they moved, they moved in any of their four directions without turning as they moved. 18 As for their rims they were lofty and awesome, and the rims of all four of them were full of eyes round about. 19 Whenever the living beings moved, the wheels moved with them. And whenever the living beings rose from the earth, the wheels rose also. 20 Wherever the spirit was about to go, they would go in that direction. And the wheels rose close beside them; for the spirit of the living beings was in the wheels. 21 Whenever those went, these went; and whenever those stood still, these stood still. And whenever those rose from the earth, the wheels rose close beside them; for the spirit of the living beings was in the wheels. 22 Now over the heads of the living beings there was something like an expanse, like the awesome gleam of crystal, spread out over their heads. 23 Under the expanse their wings were stretched out straight, one toward the other; each one also had two wings covering its body on the one side and on the other. 24 I also heard the sound of their wings like the sound of abundant waters as they went, like the voice of the Almighty, a sound of tumult like the sound of an army camp; whenever they stood still, they dropped their wings. 25 And there came a voice from above the expanse that was over their heads; whenever they stood still, they dropped their wings. 26 Now above the expanse that was over their heads there was something resembling a throne, like lapis lazuli in appearance; and on that which resembled a throne, high up, was a figure with the appearance of a man. 27 Then I noticed from the appearance of His loins and upward something like glowing metal that looked like fire all around within it, and from the appearance of His loins and downward I saw something like fire; and there was a radiance around Him. 28 As the appearance of the rainbow in the clouds on a rainy day, so was the appearance of the surrounding radiance. Such was the appearance of the likeness of the glory of the LORD. And when I saw it, I fell on my face and heard a voice speaking.”

(Ezekiel 1:4-28)

A “mobile” star guided three astrologers from the region of Babylon to the birthplace of Jesus Christ, mentioned only in the Gospel of Matthew, but not in the others. Even the Gospel of Luke omits the presence of the star, which is interesting, as Luke—who also wrote the New Testament book of Acts of the Apostles—was a physician and historian.

There are some who believe the star never actually existed, as it is recorded in no other historical writings of the day. Judea was a Roman province, and they gave no record of the star and its fanciful movement through the skies. However, if these “wise men” saw the star “in the east,” or better, from the east, it would have taken months if not a year or two to decipher the star’s meaning and follow it to Judea.

Whatever the star was, it probably did not happen at one moment, on one night, but over the course of several months as a portent in the sky.

The appearances of both angels and demons were apparently relatively commonplace throughout the whole of biblically documented history.

chapter 6

Alien Influence?

“Devoutly to be wish’d. To die, to sleep;
To sleep: perchance to dream: ay, there’s the rub:
For in that sleep of death what dreams may come,
When we have shuffled off this mortal coil,
Must give us pause: there’s the respect
That makes calamity of so long life...”

—William Shakespeare, *Hamlet*

Despite my many questions and ponderings, based on the things I have studied, read, and absorbed over the years, I still cling to my Judeo-Christian roots, and making the leap from God, angels, and demons to UFOs, extra-terrestrials, and aliens is an exponential one for me. Yet, there is so much information out there that would tend to substantiate the existence of UFOs and alien interruption in humanity, that it cannot be overlooked. If you are anything at all like me, these things make you pause, wonder, and recalculate the things you were taught.

I have always said, rather cheekily, that when it comes to biblical theology, I have not “thrown out the baby with the bathwater.” Were I to make an on-the-spot statement of faith, I would say that I adhere to the basic tenants of the Bible, and hold Jehovah God as the Supreme Being, as well as a faith in Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit. In my youth I was taught that the Bible is the “only authority for faith and practice,” especially as a good, conservative Baptist. The further I grow in distance from my cloistered education and walled-in, “fishbowl” denominational practices—and by fishbowl, I mean that we believers congregationally sat inside our

glass bowl of church while the rest of the world looked in—I am finding that there is so much more to the universe than what we were taught, so much more to God than is visible in a methodological Christian environment.

Then there is that stinging, lurking *fear* in the back of my mind that any deviation from my old faith practices is merely my sinful nature drawing me away from God and his dictates. The apostle Paul warned his acolyte Timothy that “*... the time will come when men will not put up with sound doctrine. Instead, to suit their own desires, they will gather around them a great number of teachers to say what their itching ears want to hear*” (2 Timothy 4:3). And I find myself wondering if my disillusionment with church organization and methodology was the catalyst I allowed to drag me from the “true faith.” I find that I struggle with what was engrained in my head and heart, versus what I research and discover.

I consider myself to be a thinker. But there are times when I may imbue my thinking with fear of becoming inviolate of religious mandate and practice.

Therein lies the rub: No matter which way you look at this enigma, no matter how much existential mumbo-jumbo we wish to ascribe to our existence in the universe, or how much power of initiative or self-illumination we think we may possess, we are still the products of someone else’s creation, and the toys of some superior being’s manipulation.

We are not our own.

Whether it was an almighty, omnipotent God who created us from the dust of the ground and breathed into our nostrils the breath of life, or some enslaving, experimenting race of interstellar breeders who interfered with our primordial DNA, we are the product—or by-product—of someone else’s hand. Are we God’s creations, to do with as he pleases, having been

imbued with a free will that is truly only free until, like insurance, you actually use it? Or are we the descendants of an alien science experiment—the genetic offspring of an extra-terrestrial race that was either acting in benevolence by imposing its superior DNA into a race of genetically intellectual gutter monkeys, or implementing an intent that was far more sinister and enslaving?

Or are we simply the products of chemical reactions and evolutionary mutation and development; slaves to overt eradication of anything spiritual in order to default to what is scientific and explainable by mathematics and scientific methodology?

Either way, it appears as if we, the human race, are simply someone else's toys. And sometimes, it's just cooler to think that we are the offspring of alien interruption as opposed to "sinners in the hands of an angry God.¹" I believe that is why the scientific/skeptical community eschews the spiritual and metaphysical: They simply want to seek the basic nuts and bolts without having to answer to a higher authority or deal with the implications of the soul and spirit. As I said quite a bit earlier, there are veils we simply have no ability to pierce, and both the scientific/skeptical circles and the religious/faith-based circles are dead set on operating on the basis of what simply cannot be seen or proved. One circle consciously disregards and eradicates it as part of the functional equation; the other incorporates it in every facet of life.

Boiling It All Down

Whatever your leaping-off point, be it faith, spirit, science, skepticism, anthropology; whether religious, anti-religious, Christian, Jew, Atheist, animist, Pagan, Wiccan, true believer, *et cetera ad infinitum*—it doesn't matter when it comes down to sifting through the evidences and the facts, such as they may be. What is clear is that there was some interruption in the human race, whether it can be hinged on the extinction of the dinosaurs,

opening the way for human development (without being eaten), or microbial mutations that developed and evolved over eons, bringing the human race where it is today (with obviously much more evolving to do if we believe the chain of evolution is still moving along), or the hands of a Divine Creative force, whether you view that entity as a spiritual/religious one, or simply an entity that has the supreme power over us. Or, perhaps, it was clean and simple as extra-terrestrial interruption of some sort.

Then there are the proponents of philosophies, such as the following quote, that ignore any other outside-the-box investigation by immediately dismissing its veracity for the simple reason that it is not revealed in God's Holy Word, the Bible: "The Bible, the revealed written Word of God teaches that life is only possible through a process of creation. Even if there were other galaxies with planets very similar to earth, life could only be there if the Creator had fashioned it. If God had done that, and if these beings were going to visit us one day, then He would surely not have left us unenlightened about this."²

Pardon the crass vernacular, but these are the sorts of statements that have me crying, "bullshit!" This brand of mindless, limited, inane, uneducated dross has me seeing red, and serves no purpose to further an understanding other than that which lies within a particular mindset or theology or philosophy or scientific framework. As you can probably tell by now, I am not one who has abandoned his faith, nor am I one who dismisses science and skepticism, but I measure the building blocks of these things against each other. The answers come only as the fabricated Berlin Walls of division, and the finger-pointed catterwauls of ignorance and fraud start having holes bored into them.

The naked truth of the matter—so sorry to inform my theological friends—is that God has given us information about these aliens. And it is within the very same pages of scripture they use to bolster an argument against such things.

Whatever the truth of the matter—because, believe it or not, truth is *not* governed by *perception*—there are evidences all over the world and in nearly every ancient cultural spirituality and history that record extraordinary events. Those events have their tone set in cement, based on the interpretation given by the people who experienced them firsthand. Whether influenced by the divine or the angelic or the alien, the task in the present day is to determine just what it is that happened—and, frankly, that may not be possible beyond mere hypothesis.

The Nitty-Gritty

Because we have spent a great deal of this book talking about the spiritual and religious take on the Nephilim and their interruption in the human bloodlines, let's look to some of the evidences that would be the foundation for the extra-terrestrial—or better, *alien*—theory of human interruption.

“The UFO manifestations seem to be, by and large, merely minor variations of the age-old demonological phenomenon...”³

“UFO behaviour is more akin to magic than to physics as we know it.... [T]he modern UFO-nauts and the demons of past days are probably identical.”⁴

“[The occultist] is brought into intelligent communication with the spirits of the air, and can receive any knowledge which they possess, or any false impression they choose to impart.... [T]he demons seem permitted to do various wonders at their request.”⁵

The majority of alien abduction cases recorded in modern history have the same earmarks and traditional elements as are seen in the written

accounts of the Watchers descending to the earth to impregnate human women. Sure, the facts differ, the tales are much less mythological in scope, but the act itself is something that bears remarkable resemblance to the acts committed by the Watchers. Are we seeing today similar events as those described in the Books of Genesis and Enoch, or has an entirely fabricated modern mythos been constructed around the writings of people like Zechariah Sitchin and the growing list of Ancient Alienists? The main problem with Sitchin's work was his lack of translating the ancient texts. The conclusion he drew had to be manipulated, squeezed, and otherwise made to fit into the theories he was promulgating.

So often I hear major proponents of the Ancient Alien theories decry the belief systems of theologians. It is almost as if one is required to have an atheistic or agnostic dogma in place in order to put forward an extra-terrestrial hypothesis. To me, this has the very same dogmatic approach as do the biblical theologians who insist that aliens could not exist because they are not mentioned expressly as such in the pages of scripture.

Annunaki, You're the One. You Make Legends Lots of Fun...

All one needs do is enter the words *Annunaki* and *aliens* together in a Google search to find an endless list of Websites that state nearly the same, exact thing: that the Annunaki built a “race” of android beings to subjugate the people of the Sumerian civilization. Sadly, none of these Websites cite any sources that would have translated Sumerian cuneiform texts as stating that sort of information. When putting forward a statement regarding these kinds of ancient “findings,” it is all-important to offer up the texts themselves, or the source of the research academic who translated the texts revealing that sort of information. Sadly, again, it is more likely that the readers and proponents of works such as Sitchin’s, are merely parroting the words of their new age-ist teacher without researching his claims to see if they possess any sort of veracity.

Semitic scholar John Heise, in his work the Akkadian language, makes the observation that the term *Annunaki* is interchangeable with the word *Igigi*,⁶ which translates roughly as “those who observe,” or “the Watchers.”⁷ The Igigi are referred to as the “gods who reside in heaven,” while the Annunaki are mentioned as being in both heaven and on the earth. And when the Sumerian god Marduk asks a question of the Annunaki, it is the Igigi who respond. So the Annunaki and the Igigi are more than likely candidates for the Watchers after their descent to the earth. But are they an alien race? Well, certainly within the context of the mythology, they are alien in the sense that they came from some other place other than the earth. According to the Sumerian texts, they resided in both heaven and earth, once you see that the terms are interchangeable. So the heavenly Igigi are the same as the chthonic (or “underworld”) gods, the Annunaki.



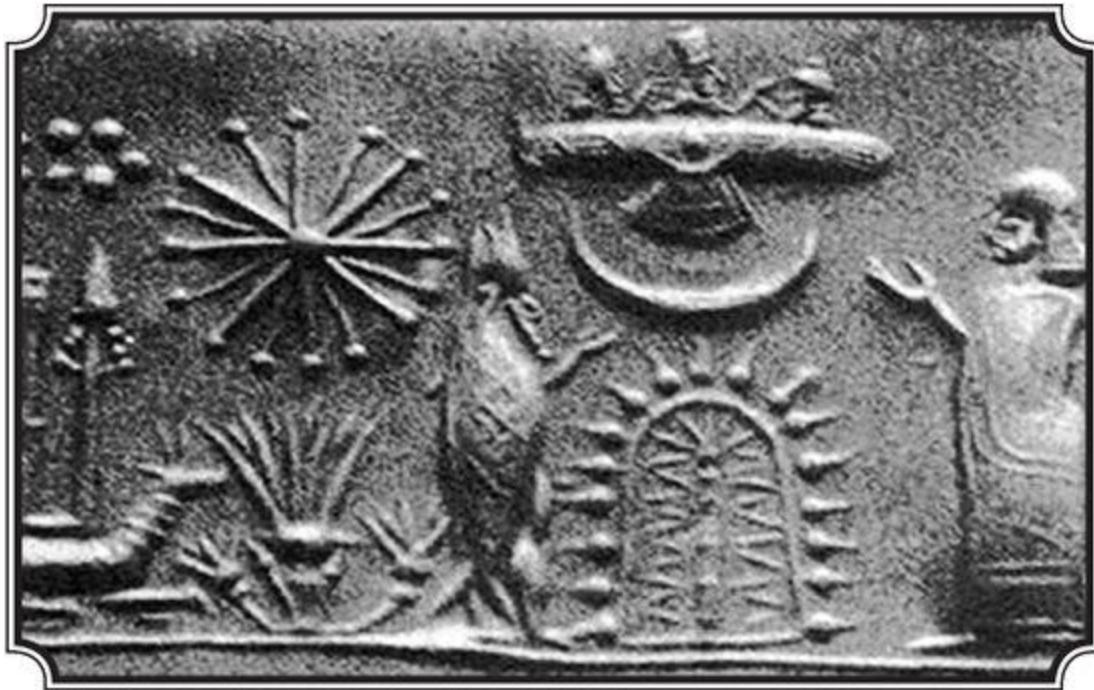
Ancient Sumerian relief of a seated Annunaki, with the sun and orbiting planets shown in the upper left. Readers of Zecharia Sitchin's books, particularly The 12th Planet, will recognize the seal, VA 243 (so named because it is number 243 in the collection of the Vorderasiatische Museum in Berlin). This seal is the centerpiece of Sitchin's theory that the Sumerians had advanced astronomical knowledge of the planetary bodies in our solar

system. This knowledge was allegedly given to the Sumerians by extraterrestrials, whom Sitchin identifies as the Anunnaki gods of Sumero-Mesopotamian mythology.

Photo is a public domain image courtesy of www.michaelsheiser.com.

According to Boulay's work, the Sumerians and Akkadians did not refer to the Annunaki as "gods." It was later cultures that introduced the notion of divine beings, and that was what gradually made its way into our language and thinking. The Sumerians referred to the Annunaki by the term *ilu*, or "the lofty ones," from which the Semitic *ili* and *el* of the Hebrew evolved. And as an interesting cross-cultural reference, Prince Utu's name in the Mayan language was Xochipili.

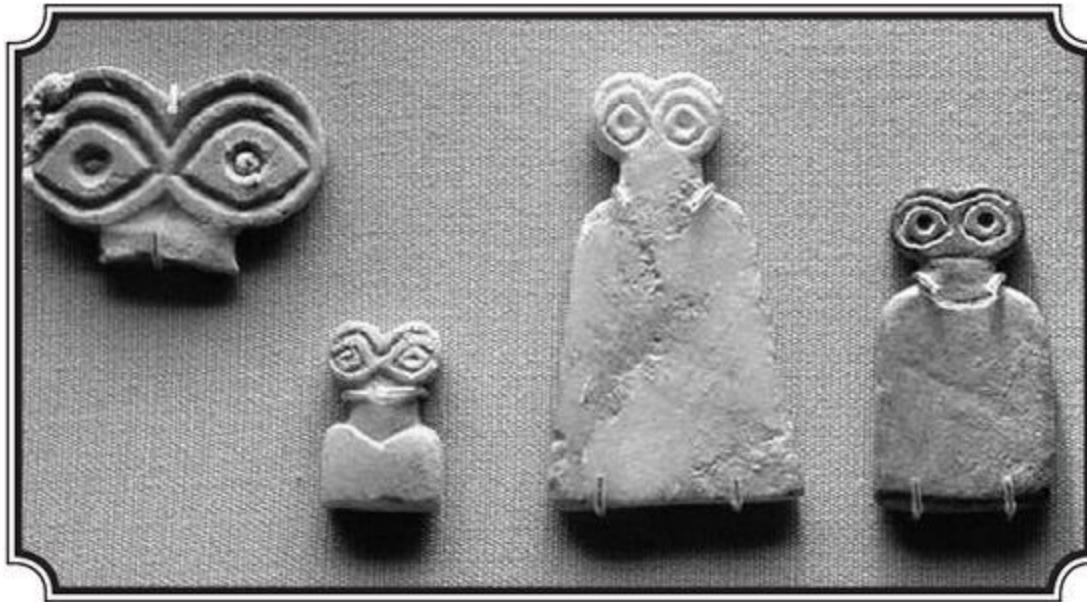
Boulay, in his fervent belief that the ancient "gods" were indeed of alien origin, goes on to say that although the term *Anunnaki* is used generically to apply to all the Proto-Sumerians who "came to this planet," it means literally "the sons of An," the greatest among their ancient gods. In the antediluvian (pre-flood) period, a large group of these Anunnaki descended from their mother ship to colonize Earth. According to the "Enuma Elish," the Babylonian myth of creation, 300 of these Anunnaki descended to Earth while another 300 remained aboard the spaceship.⁸



Images on a Sumerian clay tablet are believed to depict the Anunnaki and their “flying vehicles,” advanced spacecraft used by the Anunnaki gods to descend to the earth. The tall figure to the left may depict the half-man/half-fish god Oannes, who emerged from the ocean to teach skills to ancient mankind.

Photo is licensed under Wikipedia Creative Commons.

There are no pictures or drawings left of the Annunaki, but there are many small figurines that some ancient alienists say resemble the alien “greys” of modern ufology. Were the Annanuki the beings described by the ancient Sumerians? And were they the equivalent of the grey aliens synonymous with so many UFO and alien abduction cases reported in current history? Contemporary reports of these encounters bear a strong similarity to the ancient accounts of the Anunnaki and their appearance among the Sumerian people.



Sumerian clay figurines housed in the British Museum, London.
Photo courtesy of Jason Martell (www.xfacts.com). Used with permission.

As mentioned previously, the Sumerian culture is the oldest known written language culture. Even today we still use the same system of mathematics, the same basic calendar, and the telling of time that they developed. They possessed an amazing knowledge of the solar system and of beings coming down to earth. The Sumerians tell us that the Anunnaki had “helpers” who often performed such tasks as flying their craft, or helping with miscellaneous needs. The Sumerians directly explain that these “helpers” were not living beings, but had the physical capabilities of rendering living human tasks.

The Annunaki and Igigi also appear in other Mesopotamian cultures, sharing a commonality that isn’t just limited to the descriptions found in Genesis and Enoch. They are also found in the Ugaritic texts and the Canaanite pantheon as the *banu ili* or *banu ili-mi*.⁹ There are also more recent finds that place them in Ammorite and Phoenecian inscriptions¹⁰ dating to the eighth and seventh centuries BCE. The huge significance of these similar finds, according to Craig Hines, is the fact that the other cultures

also recognized these beings as non-human “royal ambassadors” sent to humanity at the behest of the supreme god.

Psalms, Hymns, and UFOs

No other book in the Old Testament is as richly beautiful in its imagery as the compiled Book of Psalms. They include songs written by King David and songs written by his chief musician, as well as poetry to be accompanied by musical instruments and used in worship and prayer penned by various other writers. One of the Psalms is even a prayer of forgiveness from David after he committed adultery with Bathsheba, the wife of one of his war captains, and had the man murdered.

But in and throughout the beautiful, poetic language of the Psalms is an undercurrent of visionary language that could possibly imply encounters with what some have suggested are alien encounters.

Is it possible that David, the “sweet singer of Israel,” as he was once known, had a close encounter that he described—or hid—in a song of praise to God? Psalm 18 holds an intriguing story that tells of David being surrounded by enemies and being forced into deep water, from which he was suddenly taken up out of and put in a large place. He describes the scene in very vivid terms: the heavens opening up, and God descending, mounted on a cherub—not your typical mental image of a cherub; a heavenly beast that rode on the clouds, black smoke and fire shot out the nostrils of God—and the ensuing shafts of flame consuming everything in its path. David then writes that God, astride his cherub, was followed by, or left a “jet stream,” of dark clouds that produced hail, and a “great noise” coming from God.

Is this all an incarnate manifestation of God, a miraculous act of deliverance? Or could it be something else, something much more like the

vision of Ezekiel, who saw what has been described in modern terms as some sort of craft?

David finishes the account of the heavenly attack, telling of bolts of lightning being shot at his enemies, scattering them. This was all followed by a great earthquake, leaving the modern-day reader wondering if this entire account is a description of alien craft and weaponry being used to deliver King David of Israel—the same man who slew one of the few remaining Nephilim, Goliath of Gath—and took his head. Could this be a rescue mission sent to the man who killed one of the descendants of the great giants? Or is this merely the song written by a man who was, like Moses, establishing his “tightness” with God before the people he ruled?

“4 The sorrows of death overtook me, and the rush of ungodly people made me afraid. 5 The sorrows of hell overtook me: the traps of death captured me. 6 In my distress I called on Yahweh, and cried out to my God, who heard my voice out of the sanctuary, and listened to my cry. 7 Then the earth quaked; the foundations of the hills were disturbed and shaken, because God was angry. 8 There went up a smoke out of the face of God, and fire out of the mouth of God, in which the flames consumed everything ignited by them. 9 God opened the heavens, coming down with dark smoke underneath, 10 riding on a cherub, a heavenly being, and flying on the wind, 11 making darkness the hiding place of God, with a shelter of dark waters and the thick clouds of the skies all around. 12 But the brightness that surrounded God was followed by the thick clouds that passed, with hail stones and flashes of lightening. 13 The noise of Yahweh rumbled in the heavens, and then the voice of the Most High God spoke through the hail stones and flashes of light. 14 Yes, God sent out bolts of electricity, scattering the enemies, shooting out like flashes of lightning, and destroyed them. 15 Then the outlets of water were seen, and the heart of the earth was uncovered at Your word, oh Yahweh, from the exhaust of Your face. 16-18 God sent from above, taking hold of me, and drawing me up out of much water, delivering me from my strong enemies, and from those who hated me, which were too strong for me, and who had shamed me in the day of my misfortune, but You, oh Yahweh, were my stay. 19

You brought me forward also into a large place and delivered me, because you delighted in me.”

(Psalm 18:4-19)

Of course, it could simply be a great songwriter/story-teller embellishing his tale with vivid, colorful imagery. It is interesting to me how so many Bible believers will entertain and believe the most garish, creative stories told in the pages of scripture, but will shun the notion of the existence of aliens and UFOs, because they are just too far-fetched.

A Long Time Ago, In a Galaxy Very Close to Home...

Another Psalm of David tells of God’s presence shaking the earth and the heavens descending like an object of silver and gold, with chariots of heaven numbering 20,000 containing thousands of heavenly beings. He described it as an inanimate object found in the feeding pens of a sheepfold that comes to life and flies through the air like a dove, shimmering with silver and gold, and glowing white like the snow. He described armies running in fear from its presence. Could this be a mother spacecraft with many smaller spacecrafts containing their occupants? Would these aliens come to the rescue of God’s chosen one?

“7 Oh God, when You went forward before Your people, Israel, when You marched with them through the wilderness; Selah: 8 The earth shook and the clouds descended at Your presence: even Sinai itself quaked at the presence of God, the God of Your people, Israel.... 12 Leaders of armed forces ran away, and our dependents at home received the benefits. 13 Though You’ve been as lifeless as a metal pot, yet you will fly as the silver wings of a dove, with feathers of yellow gold.

14 When the Almighty scattered rulers in it, it was white as the snow on Mt. Zalmon... 17 The vehicles of God are twenty thousand, in which are thousands of angels: my Sovereign God is among them, as in Mt. Sinai, in the holy place... 32 Sing to God, You nations of the earth; oh sing praises to Yahweh; Selah: 33 To the Great One who rides on the heaven of heavens, which are eternal; see, the mighty voice of God sounds out. 34 We attribute strength to You, God: Your greatness is above Your people, Israel, and Your strength is in the skies. 35 Oh God, You are awesome coming out of Your holy places: It is You, God, who gives strength and power to Your people, Israel. God be blessed!"

(Psalm 68:7-8, 12-14, 17, 32-35)

The Ostentatious Power of the Remote

If you are a follower of more contemporary UFO sightings and activity, you'll have noticed that many of them take place in remote areas, such as deserts and mountainous regions, and over large bodies of water, despite the more recent advent of mass sightings over populated areas. Now consider some of the biblical events that have piqued the curiosities of ancient biblical UFO theorists: Moses was witness to a physical manifestation of God while hidden in the cleft of a secluded mountain outcrop; the prophet Elijah and Moses appeared to Jesus, and two of his disciples on the very slopes of the same mountain where the Watchers are to have descended to the earth in the Book of Enoch, Mount Hermon; God protected the children of Israel with a pillar of cloud by day and one of fire by night as they wandered as a nomadic tribe of freed slaves after the first Passover and the Exodus. Are these accounts of God's miraculous majesty and power or could they possibly be descriptions of events that might be linked to UFO and alien activity? The 29th Psalm describes some unusual activity in remote, out-of-the-way places that Ancient Alien theorists have linked to possible UFO sightings of a biblical proportion:

“3 The voice of Yahweh is heard across the oceans: the God of glory rumbles, echoing over the seas. 4 The voice of Yahweh is strong and majestic. 5 The voice of Yahweh snaps the cedars in two; yes, Yahweh snaps the cedars of Lebanon completely in two. 6 Yahweh makes the volcanoes erupt. 7 The voice of Yahweh spews fiery flames. 8 The voice of Yahweh shakes the desert; the wilderness rumbles. 9 The voice of Yahweh makes the doe to bear, and unclothes the forests, and every one tells of the glory of God in the sanctuary. 10 Yahweh rules over the Tsunami; yes, oh Yahweh sits a Sovereign One forever.”

(Psalm 29:3-10)

Columbus and the Psalmist

The voice of God is described as enormously powerful in this Psalm. The flames and the rumbling noise, along with weapons that snap massive cedar trees in two, cause volcanoes to erupt, make the deserts cascade with voluminous rumblings and the forests to burn to ash. Can these all be interpreted as the manifestation of advanced alien spacecraft? Could a space ship hide in the depths of the ocean, as many ufologists already believe? Psalm 104 describes a very bright object resting beneath the water, then emerging and moving with great speed into the clouds.

Interestingly, a UFO was spotted by none other than Christopher Columbus during his maiden voyage to America in 1492. Columbus recorded in his log that, as he was sailing through the waters of what is now the Bermuda Triangle, his compass began acting in an odd fashion. He and Pedro Gutierrez while on the deck of the *Santa Maria*, observed, “a light glimmering at a great distance,” as they observed it for several hours “in sudden and passing gleams.”¹¹ Four hours later, they saw land. Columbus attributed the sighting to divine guidance to the New World.

“2 Covering Yourself with light as with clothes: You who stretches out the heavens like a curtain: 3 Who lays the shafts of Your chambers in the waters and makes the clouds Your vehicle, moving on the wings of the wind: 4 Who makes the angels spirits; Your ministers a flaming fire.”

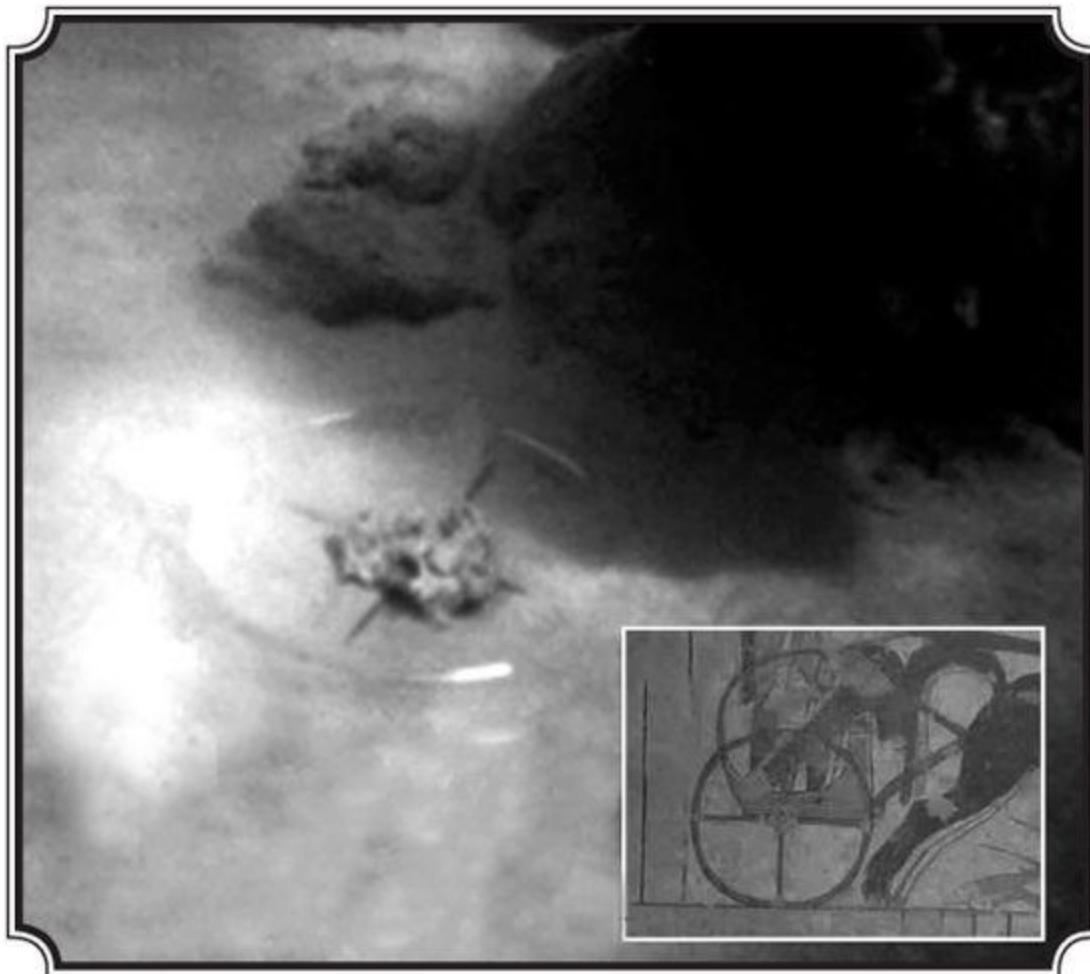
(Psalm 102:2-4)

Making a Way Through the Sea

Unusual activity from the depths of the sea is also mentioned in Psalms 74 and 77. According to the Book of Exodus, God let a strong east wind blow all night, parting the waters of the Red Sea—or, as many biblical scholars believe, the marshy region of the Yam Suph to the far northern delta region of the Red Sea. What, other than an almighty God, could send a powerful force strong enough to part the waters and let the Israelites cross on dry ground, releasing it just in time to drown the whole of the whole of Pharaoh Amenhotep II’s mighty army? Psalm 77:19 tells us that God travels in the sea and the oceans, and that his path cannot be discovered. Is this a reference to underwater craft that traverse in obscurity through the briny depths?

“13 You divided the sea by Your strength: You broke the heads of the dragons in the oceans. 14 You broke the heads of leviathan, the great sea beasts, in pieces, and gave them for meat to the people living in the wilderness. 15 You opened up the wellspring and the flood: You dried up mighty rivers. 16 The waters felt You, oh God, the waters felt You disturb them and the depths were troubled as well. 17 The clouds poured rain, the skies thundered, and Your lightening flashed also. 18 The voice of Your thunder was in the heavens: the lightning lit up the world and the earth trembled and shook. 19 Your way is in the sea, and Your path in the great oceans, and Your footsteps aren’t known.”

(Psalm 77:13-19)



One of the many gilded chariot wheels discovered at the bottom of the Red Sea, in the Gulf of Aqaba, off Neweiba Beach. Coral does not grow on gold, but the wood inside had completely deteriorated. Inset: Chariot wheel on Egyptian tomb painting.

Photo courtesy of Dr. Lennart Moller, Karolinska Institute, Stockholm, Sweden.

Wax On, Wax Off

Is Psalm 97 a description of God or of an alien craft? Melting hills, enfolding darkness broken by fire, lightning, and illumination.

“2 Clouds and darkness are around you: righteousness and judgment are the symbols of Your reign. 3 A fire goes before you, and burns up Your enemies everywhere. 4 Your lightning enlightened the world: the people of earth saw, and trembled.

5 The hills melted like wax at the presence of the Sovereign One, at the presence of the Most Sovereign of the whole earth. 6 The heavens declare Your righteousness, and everybody sees Your glory.”

(Psalm 97:2-6)

Riders on the Storm

Do God and His angels ride in spacecrafts? In one Psalm they are described as a cherub on the back of whom God rides down out of the clouds. Here, in Psalm 144, we have a description of God and His angels flying down out of the heavens in what is said by biblical alienists to be a spacecraft. What if that alien spacecraft contained what we know as God and the angels screaming down out of the heavens and laying waste to the mountains? Is this the description of a terrible ufological weapon, or the power of a divine God? The psalmist may have wondered the very same thing, as he questions why God would take special note of his people and destroy their enemies. In this verse he prays for God to open the heavens and come back down to destroy his enemies.

“3 Yahweh, what are human beings, that You take note of them! Or the children of humanity, that You take account of them! 4 People are as nothing: their days are as a shadow that passes away. 5 Open Your heavens, oh Yahweh, and come down: You touch the mountains and they smoke. 6 Make lightning, and scatter them: shoot out Your lightening bolts, and destroy them.”

(Psalm 144:3-6)

Frogs and Locusts and the Angel of Death (Oh My!)

Psalm 78 is a *maskil* of Asaph—a maskil being a particular style of song, much like we'd say ballad or love song—in which the psalmist recounts the mighty power of God displayed against the Egyptians when Moses led the Hebrews out of bondage. He speaks of the terrible wonders of God when he parted the waters of the Red Sea, turned the Egyptian sources of water to blood, spread blight, frogs, and locusts across the land, then engulfed the Egyptians in utter darkness so that pharaoh “could not see his hand before his face.” The devastation goes all the way to the house of pharaoh when the final plague of the firstborn takes the eldest child in every house of Egypt. Some have speculated that it was the power of alien forces that brought down the heinous plagues and executed the great geological miracles.

“13 You divided the sea, and allowed them to pass through it; making the waters to stand up as a mountain pass. 14 You also led them with a cloud in the daytime, and through the night with the light of fire. 15 You split the rock in the wilderness, and gave them water to drink from a deep creek. 16 God brought streams of water out of the rock also, causing it to run down like rivers. 17 And they sinned all the more against God by provoking the Most High in the wilderness. 18 And they tempted God in their hearts by asking for meat for their appetites. 19 Yes, they spoke against God and said, Can God furnish a table in the wilderness? 20 Look, God split the rock, so that the waters gushed out, and the streams overflowed; Can God give us bread also? Can God provide meat for the people as well? 21 Yahweh heard this, and was angry: so a fiery wrath was kindled against Jacob, and anger also came up against Israel, 22 because they didn’t believe in God, and didn’t trust in Your salvation, 23 though You had commanded the

clouds from above, and opened the doors of heaven, 24 and had rained down manna on them to eat, and had given them of the grain of heaven. 25 People ate the food of angels: for You, God sent them enough meat to fill them. 26 You caused an east wind to blow in the heaven, 27 and powerfully brought in the south wind, raining meat on them as dust, and quail like the sand of the sea, 28 and let them fall in the middle of their camp, all around their tents. 29 So they ate and were well filled, because You gave them what they desired. 30 They weren't kept from their appetites, but while their meat was yet in their mouths, 31 the anger of God came down on them, and slew the fattest of them, and brought down the chosen people of Israel....42 They neither remember God's hand, nor the day when You delivered them from the adversary. 43 How God had wrought signs in Egypt, and wonders in the field of Zoan, turning their rivers into blood, making it so that they couldn't drink it. 45-46 You sent different sorts of flies among them, which devoured them; and frogs, which destroyed them, giving their increase to the caterpillar, and their labor to the locust also; destroying their vines with hail, and their sycamore trees with frost; destroying their cattle also in the hail, and their flocks with hot lightning bolts; casting on them the fierceness of Your anger, rage, indignation, and trouble, by sending evil angels among them; making way for anger; not sparing their soul from death, but giving their lives over to the pestilence; and striking all the firstborn in Egypt, their strongest rule, in the sanctuaries of Ham.... 52 But You made Your own people go forward like animals, 53 guiding them in the wilderness like a herd, leading them safely on, so that they weren't afraid, while the sea overwhelmed their enemies. 54 You brought them to the border of Your sanctuary, even to this mountain, which the hand of God had bought.”

(Psalm 78:13-31, 42-43, 45-46, 52-54)

Into the Belly of the Earth

There was a great rebellion among the Hebrews led by a man named Dathan. Moses descended with the tablets of the Law after spending 40 days atop the fiery, tumultuous, God-inhabited Mount Sinai, only to find the people worshipping a golden calf they had erected as their god who led them out of bondage. In righteous anger, Moses breaks the tablets of the Law and calls out to the people to divide, the followers of Dathan on this side, and the followers of Jehovah on that. After they separate, the ground immediately opens up in a great earthquake and swallows up Dathan and his rebels. You can imagine the hushed silence that fell over the rest of the people. With all the miraculous wonders performed under the leadership of Moses during their great Exodus, one wonders how these people would do anything but follow Moses' lead. Yet, Ancient Alienists believe there is more to this account than a simple miraculous tale of divine judgment. Was Moses not only being led by UFOs through the wilderness, but also being protected and upheld by a race of alien visitors? Here is how the book of Psalms records this event from the Exodus:

“16 They envied Moses and Aaron, the saints of Yahweh, also in the camp. 17 The earth opened up and swallowed Dathan, and buried the followers of Abiram. 18 And a fire was kindled in the middle of them, burning up those sinful ones.... 28 They joined themselves also to the false god, Baal-peor, and ate offerings made for the dead. 29 So they provoked You to anger with their inventions, and a deadly illness came on them. 30 Then Phinehas stood up and executed judgment: so the deadly illness was stopped.”

(Psalm 106:16-18, 28-30)

And that's just a few of the Psalms. Were we to mention every biblical passage that contains even a hint of the possibility of extra-terrestrial activity, there would not be enough room in a 10-volume set to list them, let alone comment on them. This sampling should have given you a taste of what is inside the Bible itself, when it comes to the imaginings and speculations of biblical alien theorists.



When we consider all of the passages in scripture that seem to indicate miraculous deeds and divine actions, and if you place all those passages in the context of Ancient Aliens as opposed to the acts of Jehovah, you can see the wealth of information that is right at your fingertips, on the shelves of nearly every home in Christendom.

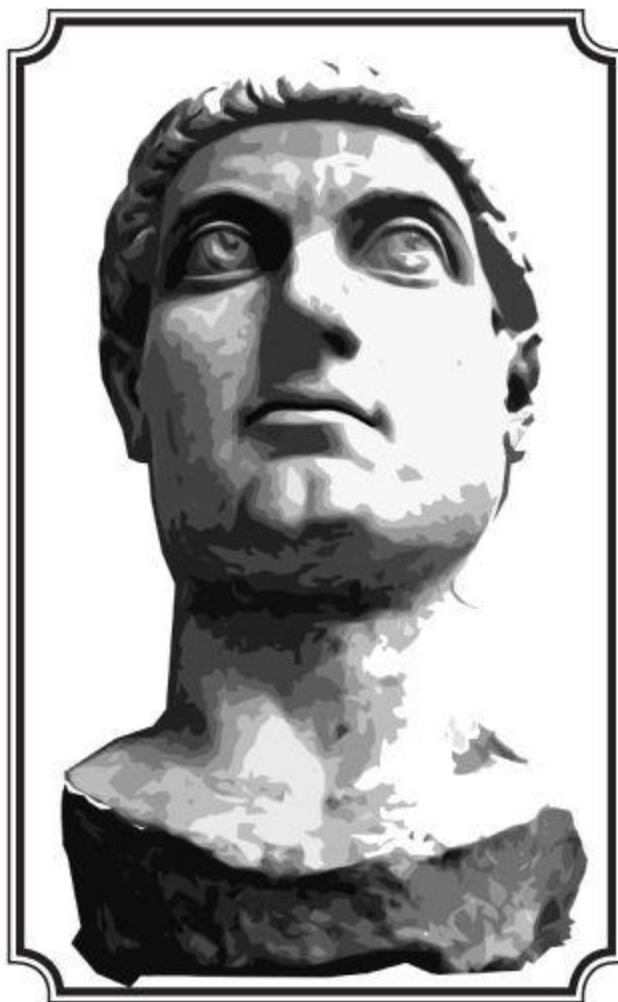
Clearly, if your perspective is one that is firmly rooted in Judeo-Christianity, you will see these passages as the amazing, almighty acts of a supreme being benevolently and sometimes violently imposing his majesty in the lives of his prophets and worshippers, making a display of his power and majesty. But if your beginning point is one that lies outside the realm of faith in the divine characters dwelling in these books, then you are outside the box looking in. Under that light, these pages can be filled with accounts of ancient UFOs, and alien races that appeared as God, angels, demons, and a host of other heavenly beings.

If Moses, Ezekiel, David, the psalmists, and other biblical leaders and figures had in fact witnessed alien presences, and interpreted their experiences as encounters with God, then it would be absolutely appropriate of them to have warned others to fear God and obey his commands. In light of the passages we have examined regarding the Watchers and their offspring, as well as the ancient gods of the Sumerians, it is clear that the issue is wide open for debate and further examination.

We may never know in this lifetime if these beings are of God or from some distant corner of our physical galaxy, but there is much fodder for thought, and a good starting point for examining the issue further.

chapter 7

Constantine: One Emperor, One God



Constantine, the first “Christian” emperor of Rome.
Photo courtesy of the Capitoline Hill Museum, Rome, Italy
(en.museicapitolini.org).

The story of the Nephilim and their divine parentage is one that the early Church fathers did not want told—at least in the entire form as it was written down in the Book of Enoch. It was a tale that transgressed the Church’s teachings that spirit beings were sexless, and spoke of beings who were considered to be gods among early mankind. Their presence in the story of Noah’s flood was something that created ecclesiastical panic among the early church fathers, and when push came to shove, there was no unanimous consensus, and Enoch was booted from the canon of God-breathed scripture. This was done under the influence of Rome’s first Christian emperor, Constantine, who ruled from 306 to 337 CE.

Constantine used his power to establish and promote the religion of Christianity, but he always remained a controversial figure, especially through the eyes of those who recorded his histories, which are abundant and detailed, but have been strongly influenced by the official propaganda of the period and are often skewed.¹ According to the various contradictory accounts of the life of Constantine, he was seen by some as the great Christian Prince, and by others, during his decline, as a noble war hero corrupted by Christian influences who transformed into a tyrannical despot in his old age—“a hero... degenerating into a cruel and dissolute monarch.”²

Among the great accomplishments of Emperor Constantine were his ecclesiastical councils, which came as he began to enter the latter part of his reign. It is said that he did not personally adopt Christianity until well into his 40s, but once he did, he instituted laws that allowed Christians to worship and practice freely in the Roman empire, as well any other religion. Constantine established a precedent for the position of the emperor as having some influence on the religious discussions going on within the Catholic Church of that time, mainly because he disliked what he considered to be the risks to societal stability that religious disputes and controversies brought with them. And so he sought, wherever possible, to establish an orthodoxy. In fact, the emperor saw it as his duty to ensure that God was “properly worshiped” in his empire, and that “proper worship” would be determined by the Church.³



The Council of Nicea, 325 CE. Melkite icon from the 17th century. Artist unknown.

Photo courtesy of the Peter Paul Reubens Gallery.

The first ecclesiastical council summoned by Constantine was the Council of Nicea, 325 CE, in which several Church resolutions were discussed and set into motion. Among them was the beginnings of the canonization of scripture, which set a precedent for removing from the scriptures, any book on which the entire council could not unanimously agree. The Book of Enoch, despite its many mentions throughout the writings of both the Old and New Testaments, as well as being quoted by Moses and the Apostle Paul, was not unanimously accepted, and it fell under the surgical knife of the council.

Keep at the forefront of your mind, when considering the facts behind the Council of Nicea, the overall motivations on the part of Emperor Constantine when summoning them. Although Constantine's reputation was

bolstered by his propaganda machine, it is well-known⁴ that he was motivated by the desire to establish only two things:

1. One God/one emperor.
2. One religion/one empire.

Constantine was above all a pragmatist, and his Christianity was only prominent when it was politically expedient—and he did not become more compassionate after his conversion to Christianity. On the heels of presiding over the Council of Nicea, he went immediately back home to Constantinople and murdered both his wife, Fausta, and his eldest son, Crispus. Fausta was Crispus's stepmother, and there were rumors that she and Crispus had been engaged in immorality while the emperor was away. Constantine had his wife slowly boiled to death in a bath, and his son was cold poisoned. Indeed, Constantine was the poster boy for living your life as licentiously and perverted as possible, saving baptism for his deathbed. Which is exactly what he did. He lived his life as wickedly as any other Roman emperor, despite the paths he paved for Christianity and its spread, and went screaming into heaven simply because he was baptized minutes before he died.

Within the first 400 years of Christianity there were in existence more than 20 gospels, 15 apocalypses, and nearly 50 other texts about Jesus. In some of these texts, Jesus didn't die, took revenge on his enemies, was not human at all, was not God at all, and was a wise teacher instead of a miracle worker. The Gospel of Thomas, attributed to "Doubting Thomas," has been discovered in its entirety and contains what is claimed to be direct quotes from Jesus, yet it has been left out of the Bible. The Gospel of Peter, Jesus' best friend among the disciples, says Jesus was silent on the cross and did not feel any pain, for he only appeared to be human, yet this Gospel was also left out of the Bible. Only a select four of the written gospels made it into the Bible—Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John—and only those Gospels that told their followers what the early Roman Church wanted them to hear. Constantine's desire to have one single authority in the Church apparently worked quite well.

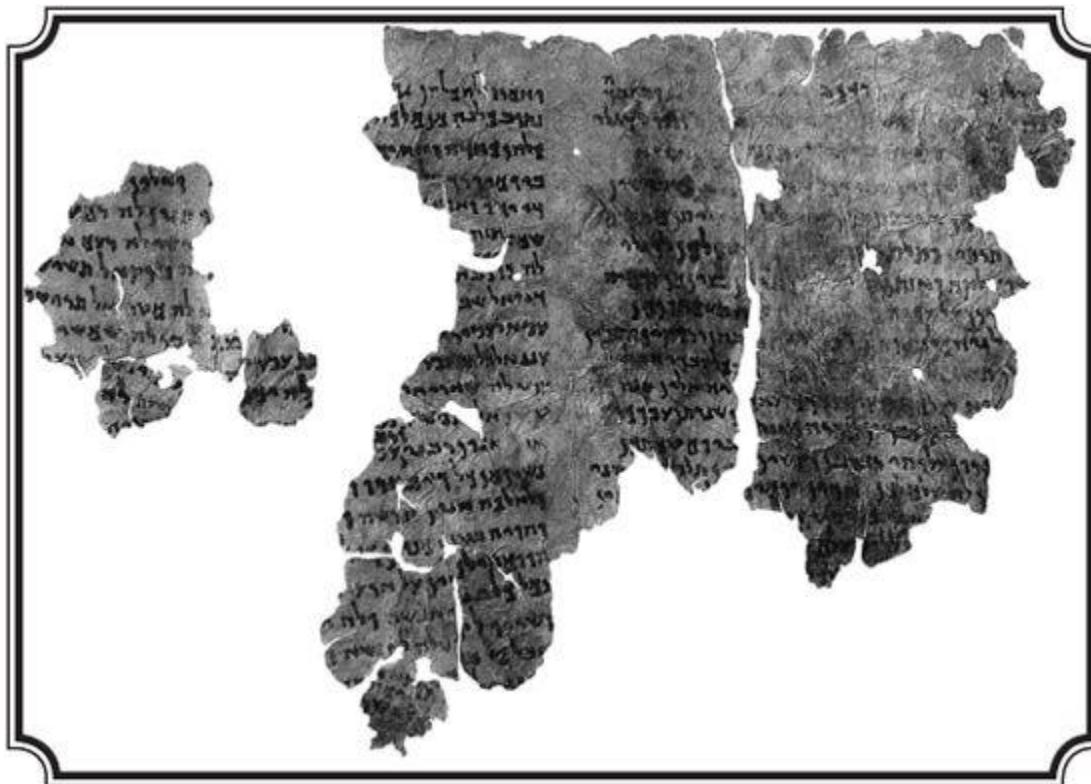
Lost books referred to in the Bible, but removed by Council:

- ★ Book of Jasher (Joshua 10:13, 2 Samuel 1:18).
- ★ Book of the Acts of Solomon (1 Kings 11:41).
- ★ Book of Samuel the Seer (1 Chronicles 29:29).
- ★ Book of Gad the Seer (1 Chronicles 29:29).
- ★ Book of Nathan the Prophet (1 Chronicles 29:29; 2 Chronicles 9:29).
- ★ Prophecy of Ahijah (2 Chronicles 9:29, 13:22).
- ★ Visions of Iddo the Seer (2 Chronicles 9:29, 12:15, 13:22).
- ★ Book of Shemaiah (2 Chronicles 12:15).
- ★ Book of Jehu (2 Chronicles 35:25).
- ★ Sayings of the Seers (2 Chronicles 33:19).
- ★ Lament for Josiah (2 Chronicles 35:25).
- ★ Paul's epistle to Corinthians before our "1 Corinthians" (Corinthians 5:9).
- ★ Paul's epistle to Church at Laodicea (Colossians 4:16).

The Book of Enoch

Because we have spent so much time talking about and around, and quoting from the book of Enoch—as well as mentioning its exclusion from the scriptural canon—it seems time to give a little bit of history about the author and the book itself.

The Book of Enoch is an ancient Jewish religious manuscript ascribed to Enoch, the great-grandfather of Noah (the same Noah associated with the Ark and Flood account of Genesis 6-9) and, according to the New Testament Book of Jude, the seventh generation from Adam. Enoch is one of those ancient manuscripts that was dropped out of the now-traditional biblical canon (the word *canon* comes from the Greek “κανών”, meaning “rule”). Simply said, you won’t find Enoch’s book in a current-day Bible, but it is grouped with several other books referred to as the apocryphal writings, meaning they were considered to be hidden, esoteric, spurious, or of questionable authenticity by the Church leaders of the day. You can find some of these books in their own section in various versions of the Christian Bible, but they are clearly labeled as being “non-scriptural.” And though the Book of Enoch is considered to be questionable by Judaism and all of Christianity, it is regarded as canon by the Ethiopian Orthodox and Eritrean Orthodox Churches.



Dead Sea Scroll Fragment of Enoch 1. The backside of P.Mich.inc. 5552, showing portions of the Book of Enoch in Greek. This manuscript is

part of the Chester Beatty Papyri, and is the third leaf of the surviving manuscript.

Photo is licensed under Wikipedia Creative Commons.

The Book of Enoch, along with several of the other apocryphal books, were excluded from the Bible during the Council of Nicea in 325 CE, which was convoked by the Roman emperor, Constantine, the first “Christian” emperor of the Roman Empire. But Constantine’s status as a “Christian” is held in as dubious regard as some of the books that his empirically appointed church emissaries booted out of the Bible.

The first section of the Book of Enoch (Dead Sea Scrolls) describes the fall of a group of non-human entities known as the Watchers—the bene haElohim—the Sons of God who fathered the Nephilim. Their descent to the earth is chronicled not only in the Book of Enoch, but also in the old testament’s Book of Genesis, where the subject was edited down to a few mere sentences by either by Moses himself, or by later scribes. In the Genesis 6:1-4 passage, we find Moses doing what Moses often did: abbreviating and extrapolating vital information without much detail. The passage is obviously a series of quotations from a much older source regarding the Nephilim, but contains distinct earmarks of having been edited at a later date, as the writing style doesn’t match that of the rest of the book.

Despite modern scholars dating the authorship of the Book of Enoch to a time period in Jewish history known as “The Captivity” (around the third or fourth century BCE, when the Diaspora—the scattered nation of Israel—were living in Babylon), Enoch is a much older book. In the New Testament Book of Jude, the Book of Enoch is quoted, and obvious authorship attributed to Enoch, the seventh-generational descendant from Adam.

“14 Enoch, the seventh from Adam, prophesied about them: ‘See, the Lord is coming with thousands upon thousands of his holy ones 15 to judge everyone, and to convict all of them of all the ungodly acts

they have committed in their ungodliness, and of all the defiant words ungodly sinners have spoken against him.””

(Jude 1:14-15)

The apostle Paul, who wrote the little epistle of Jude, was an educated member of the Jewish Sanhedrin prior to his conversion to Christianity, and the Book of Enoch was very well-known to his educated, religious class.

The Book of Enoch opens with these brief words about Enoch himself, saying:

“2 [Enoch] a just man, whose eyes were opened by God so that he saw a vision of the Holy One in the heavens, which the sons of God showed to me, and from them I heard everything, and I knew what I saw....”

(Enoch 1:2)

This fragmentary manuscript is similar to portions of the Book of Jubilees, an important writing of Second Temple Judaism that survived only among Christian readers and that has long been known to us from versions in Greek and Ethiopic. Among Ethiopian Christians, Jubilees was so treasured that it actually became a part of their version of the Old Testament. Fifteen fragmentary pieces of Jubilees have turned up among the Dead Sea Scrolls, establishing the work as one of the most common among those caches and clearly testifying to its importance for those who hid the texts. Like the Ethiopian Christians, they may have considered the book a part of the canon of Holy Writ.

In that light, the Book of Enoch seems to be a retelling of the Book of Jubilees, just as Genesis seems to be a very brief highlight of what is found in the Book of Enoch in its Nephilim segment. It may be that we should consider Enoch an example of “rewritten Bible,” the interpretive phenomenon we encounter so often in the scrolls. Surviving fragments of

the scrolls labeled “4Q227” relate to Jubilees 4:17-24, but give the material in a different order.

Jubilees 4:18 reports that the angels taught Enoch the calendar.

Jubilees 4:22 says that Enoch testified against the Watchers, or fallen angels, who had taken human wives and whose progeny were the Giants.

Jubilees 4:23 speaks of the judgment of the entire world.

Frag. 2 i[...]E]noch, after we taught him 2 [...] he was with the angels of God] six full jubilees 3 [... the la]nd, into the midst of the sons of man and he testified against them all 4 [...] and also against the watchers. And he wrote all [...] heaven and the ways of their hosts and [ho]ly ones 6 [...] So that the ri[ghteous ones] shall not commit error [...]

Ancient Cosmology

According to Hindu philosophy, life in the universe is created, destroyed, and re-created once every 4.1 to 8.2 billion years. Each one of these creation cycles is a repeating period of time divided by four yugas, or epochs/eras. The cycles are said to repeat like the seasons of a year, waxing and waning within a greater time-cycle of the creation and destruction of the universe. Like summer, spring, winter, and autumn, each yuga involves stages or gradual changes that the earth and the consciousness of mankind goes through as a whole. These cycles, devolving from light to darkness are the Satya yuga, the Treta yuga, the Dvapara yuga, and finally the Kali yuga. A complete yuga cycle from a high Golden Age of enlightenment to a Dark Age and back again is said to be caused by the solar system’s motion around another star, a binary star system that rotates around our solar system.

In accordance with this cosmology, we are currently in the final yuga cycle, the Kali yuga, which is the darkest of the “seasons,” also known as the Age of the Male Demon [Kali], and the Age of Vice. According to the Surya Siddhanta, Kali yuga began at midnight on 18 February 3102 BCE, and will last for 432,000 years.⁵

chapter 8

The Nephilim

“What a piece of work is a man! How noble in reason! How infinite in faculties! In form and moving, how express and admirable! In action how like an angel! In apprehension, how like a god!”

—William Shakespeare (*Hamlet* II, ii)

Now we are on it. The “brass tacks” of this entire book: the Nephilim themselves. We have taken many words to get to this chapter, and we have examined many different foundations and rabbit-trailing facets that have lead us to this point, albeit *not exhaustively*. As I mentioned in the Introduction, I am certainly not the end-all and be-all on the topic of the Nephilim, the Watchers, their religious and spiritual aspects and ramifications, nor the alternative alien angle we have touched on in oh-so-cursory a fashion. I am, however, another in a long, ever-lengthening line of interested, invested researchers to study, examine, and come to somewhat scholarly conclusions. I have melded the scholarship done by so many others before me, broached the pop cultural, fringe, metaphysical science, and presented ideas and hypotheses drawn from the historical, cultural, archaeological, and anthropological data that is so scattered and diverse on this topic.

What is clear is that something phenomenal happened in our ancient past—and is still happening today—that ought not be relegated simply to the realm of the supernatural or the paranormal only because it deals with subject matter that falls outside the lines etched in the sand by the scientific and religious communities. I have found it extremely daunting yet strangely interesting that the two differing camps in nearly any phenomena, theory, or

topic out there, seem to unwittingly come together in their opposing dissents and dogmatic stances when it comes to the Nephilim and all the surrounding information.

As I have mentioned in my public lectures many times, a study of the Nephilim is no simple task, for it encompasses a plethora of hugely diverse information that delves into so many other aspects of human existence. The story of the Nephilim is an enormous topic, for it goes to the roots of religion, faith, science, and the existence of humanity as we know it—or don't know it—today.

On one hand, the Nephilim speak to the foundations of human development; the encoding of DNA and ancient anthropological development of human civilization. On the other hand, the Nephilim represent a caste of mutated, corrupt progeny, bequeathed by the Watchers, part of the military structured host of created beings who were subservient to the Holy God of the Jews and the Christians. And what you come down to is nothing short of a religious-scientific quandary: to decide which end of the spectrum you choose to believe regarding these characters who are so much the product of a mythological history. And, yes, it is about *belief*, because even the facts used to establish a more-or-less solid case for the existence of these beings does not follow the dictates of historical, scientific, and anthropological rules. Their source point lies within religious texts and the faith writings that comprise scriptures from all different spiritual aspects, and as you have already experienced in the earlier pages of this book, I have used as my starting point the Book of Genesis in the Judeo-Christian scriptures—after all, the word Nephilim itself is sourced from those pages.

You are reading this book because these things are of interest to you. You either possess a belief that they exist, and you want to know more about it. Or you have a curiosity about these sorts of mysteries that leads to you to find out what others have to say about them. Or you are simply looking on these pages to point out what I have missed or where my theories are disingenuous or lacking in scholarship. Whatever the case may be for you,

when it comes to the Nephilim and all the surrounding mass of information used to build up a case, you have to—in your own mind—come to one of two conclusions: Either the Nephilim are figments of spiritually based imaginations, or they are actual beings who existed, whether having non-supernatural explanations or spiritual ones.

This reminds me of a true story I heard in my youth, as told by the head of Baptist Mid-Missions. A group of missionaries set up a bush hospital to help the population of several small villages in west Africa. As their medical outpost became established, the missionaries had to work very diplomatically with the tribal “witch doctor,” who saw the influence of modern medicine as a threat to his craft and sway over the locals. There had been an outbreak of disease in which it was found that certain bacteria were the cause of the illness, though the witch doctor had insisted it was demonic in nature. By invite, the tribal shaman came to the mission hospital and was shown a microscope, through which he could actually see the living bacteria and what it did to human cells to cause the illness that had been plaguing the villagers. The witch doctor left the meeting disgruntled and angry. Late that same night, the mission hospital was broken into by the witch doctor and his minions. They stole the microscope, took it to the village center, and smashed it to pieces. When he was confronted by the mission staff and asked why he did such a thing to such an expensive and valuable piece of medical equipment, the shaman smiled, with a bit of a twinkle in his eye, and said very softly, “Now there are no more bacteria.”

Just because we can’t see or ignore the evidence does not render it nonexistent. These pages, along with the writings of many others, simply stand as a microscope to point out the facts, whether scientific, religious, spiritual, archaeological, or any other method incorporated to establish the whos, whats, wheres, and whys of the Nephilim, their progenitors, and the historical ramifications. Destroying or diminishing the vehicle of scripture or mythology cannot undo what exists.

“The Nephilim were on the earth in those days, and also afterward, when the Sons of God [the bene ha’Elohim] descended to the

daughters of human beings [Adam] and had children by them. They were the heroes of old, men of renown.”

(Genesis 6:4)

Divine Offspring

When I was a young child attending Sunday School at the local church in our neighborhood, I was taught about the story of Noah and the Ark. According to the storyboard felt cloth cut-outs, Noah was a man who wore a robe and had a white beard. God had told him to build an enormous boat, and to take two of every kind of animal on board, for there was going to be a Great Flood coming that would destroy the entire earth. The reason for the Flood, we were taught, was that God had become angry with humans due to their sin and wickedness, and in his utter holiness, he needed to destroy every living thing and start all over, relaunching the human race with Noah and his sons and their wives, the only righteous people left on the earth untainted by the wickedness of the rest of mankind. I heard this tale repeated many times as I was growing up, and saw many variations of illustrated children’s books, toys, puppets, and even cartoons and movies depicting the tale. But never, in all of those tellings and retellings of the story, did I once hear about the Nephilim. At least not until I was much older, attending Bible College and seminary.

When thinking about the deliberate omission on the part of my various Sunday School teachers of one of the most important features of the story of Noah and the Ark, I wondered if it was, perhaps, due to the fact that the entire story hinges on sexual acts—perhaps even rapes—perpetrated against human women by divine beings. These would certainly be things that most child-conscious church lay workers would hold as being too graphic for the minds of children. Yet these sexual events are vital to understanding the entire passage and the much deeper implications of why the flood took place.

“1 When human beings began to increase in number on the earth and daughters were born to them, 2 the sons of God saw that the daughters of humans were beautiful, and they married any of them they chose. 3 Then the LORD said, ‘My Spirit will not contend with humans forever, for they are mortal[b]; their days will be a hundred and twenty years.’ 4 The Nephilim were on the earth in those days—and also afterward—when the sons of God went to the daughters of humans and had children by them. They were the heroes of old, men of renown. 5 The LORD saw how great the wickedness of the human race had become on the earth, and that every inclination of the thoughts of the human heart was only evil all the time. 6 The LORD regretted that he had made human beings on the earth, and his heart was deeply troubled. 7 So the LORD said, ‘I will wipe from the face of the earth the human race I have created—and with them the animals, the birds and the creatures that move along the ground—for I regret that I have made them.’” 8 But Noah found favor in the eyes of the LORD.””

(Genesis 6:1-8)

“1 And it came to pass when the children of men began to multiply on the face of the earth and daughters were born unto them, that the Sons of God saw them on a certain year of this jubilee, that they were beautiful to look upon; and they took themselves wives of all whom they 2 chose, and they bore unto them sons and they were giants. And lawlessness increased on the earth and all flesh corrupted its way, alike men and cattle and beasts and birds and everything that walks on the earth—all of them corrupted their ways and their orders, and they began to devour each other, and lawlessness increased on the earth and every imagination of the thoughts of all men 3 (was) thus evil continually....”

(Jubilees 5:1-3)¹

The entire account of the Nephilim, as we have already seen, was the preamble to the Genesis account of the Flood of Noah, and when reading it in its context it renders a greater, deeper meaning to the understanding of the rest of the Genesis Flood story—a meaning that has apparently been kept from most faithful church attendees and congregations, and avoided by most ministers for centuries. It is one of those taboo topics that requires a much greater understanding of the scripture and why it was written, and therefore gets summarily skipped over or avoided for fear of opening up a can of worms that is either beyond the scholarship of the practitioners teaching it, or outside the realm of what they want their congregations to understand. Nor does a traditional telling of the story of Noah and the Ark, and the destruction of the earth at the mercy of a great deluge sent by God, fit comfortably into the picture of salvation and faith that most Christian teachers want to ascribe to the meaning of the passage.

The reason for these omissions and ignoring of the mention of the Nephilim in the passage becomes overtly clear when one takes a step back from the biblical scriptures and begins to understand the account of the Flood of Noah and the Nephilim as part of a much greater story, with far deeper implications—and even more so when it is found to be so incredibly comparable to many other myths and legends found in other cultures. In that light, the biblical account begins to take on the form of simply *one version* of an event that is mirrored in many other religious writings and what seem on the surface to be allegorical mythologies from nearly every culture of the ancient world.

The Assembly of the Sons of God

The trappings of heaven sink into deeper and darker mystery every time I stare into their depths. The more I think back on my days growing up in the Christian church, the less I understand the superficialities of God and His angels that I learned while there. The concept of the Assembly of the Gods or the Divine Council that was comprised of the lesser Gods beneath the

rule of Yahweh goes all the way back to the pantheon of the Sumerians, once believed to be the world's most ancient civilization, but looking relatively young in comparison to new discoveries of places such as Gobekli Tepe, the circular temple complexes dating back some 8,000 years further than Sumerian civilization.



A carved pillar at the Gobekli Tepe temple near Danliurfa, Turkey, the oldest known temple in the world, dating to 12,000 BCE.
Photo courtesy of Berthold Steinhilber.

The concept of the Divine Council was universally shared by the Semitic religious traditions of the ancient Near East that came after the Sumerians. The Sumerian god An and his wife Ninhursag created or gave birth to the other gods in the Sumerian pantheon. This divine couple generally remained aloof from human affairs, residing beyond the sky and allowing their children, the lesser gods, to create the first man and woman and all of

humankind as a race of subservient beings. These lesser gods also became the patrons of the various city-states of Sumer.

These lesser gods formed an Assembly of the Gods, known as the Annunaki, in the language of Sumer, which was presided over by Enlil, their god-king. Each of these lesser gods of the Assembly represented or controlled major forces that affected the lives of their human servants. Enlil's wife, Ninlil, was also known as The Maiden, who ruled over human fertility. Inanna, the Queen of Heaven, was both the goddess of passion and of warfare. It was Enki, the god of wisdom, who was originally patron god of the city of Eridu, but later the influence of his cult spread throughout Mesopotamia and to the Canaanites, Hittites, and Hurrians, who crafted the world-platter that floats on the great abyss of the primeval waters.²

There has been some controversy over interpretation of the Annunaki in modern times. You can chalk this up to the “spiritual drift” of humanity, in that people are constantly seeking answers beyond the traditions they have held firm for so many hundreds and thousands of years. As I have said many times, man is a beast of discovery, wanting always to know more, experience the limits, and expand knowledge. After all, even in the Book of Genesis when Eve succumbed to the seductions of the serpent, wasn’t it because she was curious and wanted to know and experience more? These things of the Watchers, Nephilim, Divine Council of the gods—these are all the stuff of new discovery, despite their ancient nature and the fact that we’ve known about them all along.

But we want to know *more*.

So we read and write books such as these to find ways to expand our knowledge. In those attempts to find the undiscovered country, we continually throw out new thoughts, new ideas, new theories. One of the latest developments—on the grand scale of history, that is—has been the advent of the “Ancient Astronaut/Ancient Alien” twist on history and traditional religion. One could chalk this up to man’s desire to gain

knowledge; others may consider it the “turning away” from truth in order to find answers that do not require an adherence to the strictures of religion. Whichever it is, it has uncovered theories that challenge the nomenclature of religious history and even faith itself.

One of the earliest pioneers in the Ancient Astronaut culture has been Erich von Däniken, who wrote his *Chariots of the Gods* series of books in the early 1970s. Another is the late Zecharia Sitchin and his near-religious writings of *The 12th Planet* and subsequent books. His ideas surged the Annunaki into popular culture in the ufological community and stirred up a simmering pot of home-brewed controversy on the topic. I grew up in the 1970s, and thoroughly enjoyed and became deeply intrigued by the writings of von Däniken, and I still enjoy him today in his many appearances on various documentaries revolving around the Ancient Alien theorist culture. He is a pioneer who paved the way. Yet, although both of these respected, highly popular research authors have made great strides, forging the path for countless other theorists on the subject, elements of their work remain questionable, some revealing false findings and a severe lack of understanding and comprehension of the history and linguistics of the cultures they examine. Sitchin, especially, while claiming to be a specialist in the ancient Sumerian language, makes exponential stretches in the definition of certain words that he uses to lay the foundational cornerstones of his Ancient Alien platform, completely mistranslating words and seemingly not comprehending the language that he purported to know so well. Sitchin’s hypotheses have never been accepted by scientists and academic peers, who dismiss his work as pseudo-science and pseudo-history.³ Sitchin’s work has been criticized for flawed methodology and mistranslations⁴ of ancient texts as well as for incorrect astronomical and scientific claims.

One of the foremost respected scholars in ancient languages, Micheal S. Heiser, even says of Sitchin:

“As I noted in my open letter to Zecharia Sitchin, I have challenged him and other ancient astronaut researchers to produce one

line of one cuneiform text that demonstrates his ideas about the Anunnaki are really in the Sumerian texts. I want to see one line of one text that says things like the Anunnaki inhabit a planet or inhabit Nibiru, or that the term ‘Anunnaki’ means ‘people of the fiery rockets, that sort of thing.’”⁵

The Unspeakable Name of God

Getting back to the Divine Council, the pantheon of ancient Sumer was eventually borrowed by Sumer’s northern neighbors, the Semitic peoples of Mesopotamia. And “borrowed” is an overly simplistic term. It would be much better to say that the ancient religion evolved and spread into the other civilizations that arose out of and around the Sumerian culture. Generally, they substituted Semitic names for the Sumerian gods, but the structure of the pantheon, including the distinction between the Divine Progenitors and the Assembly of Gods, was maintained in the Semitic religions—although Semitic people typically substituted the name of their local chief god for that of the particular name of the God-king who was one of the gods of the Assembly.

We see this in more recent history with the Christian church, when it banished the pagan religions and took over their groves and high places, building their cathedrals, and even renaming the pagan holidays with Christianized versions. However, the Christianizing of pagan Europe resembles more of a *conquest* than an evolution, much like the pogroms instituted by Jehovah to “wipe out” all the non-believing inhabitants of the land of Canaan in order to institute the pure religion of Judaism. And although that may seem like an over-generalized statement, all you need do is go to the pages of the Old Testament to find instance upon instance played over and over again of religious-based genocide and xenocide. It is no wonder the early church felt the need to murder “infidels.” It is not difficult, then, to comprehend the heinous murder of someone such as Hypatia of Alexandria⁶—considered the first notable female mathematician

who also taught philosophy and astronomy—at the hands of murderous Christian mobs⁷ under the orders of their bishop, St. Cyril of Alexandria. It is also not hard to see how even the Crusades were then justified by the Christian hierarchy of the day, as it was so much the established pattern set forth in the pages of Old Testament scriptures. The spread of religion and religious practice either evolved, or it was foisted and forced upon the new masses of commoners at the hands of a ruling monarch or body that needed to establish its power base over the people. (See [Chapter 7](#) for more on this.)

In Babylonian religion, the children of El, collectively known as the Elohim were subordinate to their father, El. These sons of the god presided individually over the various stars and planets, as well as over their respective individual earthly estates. At the height of Babylonian civilization, the Elohim were ruled by a son of El called Marduk, who could be seen in the night skies as the “wandering star,” the planet Jupiter today. In Cana’anite culture, in-country, northern neighbors and political competitors to the Hebrew Israelites, Marduk was called simply Lord or Ba’al, while his true name (Hadu or, in some dialects Hadad) was held secret and known only to his priests. Ba’al’s chief rival for kingship among the gods was Yamm, meaning “Sea,” who also sometimes took the guise of a storm-god—think: Zeus. His personal name was Yaw or, in some texts, Yawu. For instance, in the Epic of Ba’al, El, speaking to Athirat about their son Yamm says, “The name of my son is Yaw, Oh Goddess....”

It is extremely interesting to note that the name Yamm is intriguingly similar to the name of the Hebrew deity Yahweh, the short form of which was Yah. The similarity of names is paralleled by a similarity of roles, because Ba’al was considered to be the chief rival of Yahweh by the Hebrews. Although this identification is not a certain one, the two are thought to have been the same deity by some scholars or, at the very least, drawn from the same roots.

In the same fashion as the Cana’anites, the Hebrews regarded the true name of their tribal god, Yahweh, as far too sacred for common use, and

they too usually called him simply “Lord” (Hebrew *adonai* [אֲדֹנָי] or, sometimes, *ba’al* [בָּעֵל]). Consider the scene of Moses before the burning bush. In the account in the Book of Exodus, Moses asks God to “tell him his name”:

“13 Then Moses said to God, If I come to the people of Israel and say to them, ‘The God of your fathers has sent me to you,’ and they ask me, ‘What is his name?’ what shall I say to them? 14 God said to Moses, ‘I AM WHO I AM.’ [in other translations: ‘I WILL BE WHAT I WILL BE’—or literally: ‘I AM THAT ‘I AM’ THEY SPEAK OF’] And he said, ‘Say this to the people of Israel, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ 15 God also said to Moses, ‘Say this to the people of Israel, ‘The LORD, [when in capital letters, means ‘YHWH’] the God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, has sent me to you.’ This is my name forever, and thus I am to be remembered throughout all generations.””

(Exodus 3:13-15)

Knowing the secret name of God was forbidden in Hebrew religion, and in a round-about way Moses here was asking God to reveal it to him, which, according to tradition, would have given Moses power over God. Again, Moses’ ambition stands out, or at least the need to elevate himself as the pharaoh-god of Israel. Another prime example of this was when the prophet Elisha called on the secret name of God (how he obtained it, we do not know) to punish some young people who were taunting him and his position as prophet of Israel.

“23 He [Elisha] went up from there to Bethel, and while he was going up on the way, some small boys came out of the city and jeered at him, saying, “Go up, you baldhead! Go up, you baldhead!” 24 And he turned around, and when he saw them, he cursed them in the name of the LORD [capital letters = “YHWH”]. And two she-bears came out of the woods and tore forty-two of the boys. 25 From there he went on to Mount Carmel, and from there he returned to Samaria.”

(2 Kings 2:23-25)

As a rabbit trail, yet vital to understanding all these things, I find it very interesting to note that the prophet in this passage was able to call upon the name of the Lord and violently and maliciously kill 42 children who were mocking him. Despite the fact that Bethel was known for mocking the prophets of God, this seems an extreme consequence for childish bullying. Perhaps this is a picture of the severe, uncontrollable consequence of calling on the secret name of God. For as it shows in the text, there was no other consequence for Elisha's extreme actions. And as an anecdote to this story, keep in mind the third commandment of Moses:

“You shall not utter the name of Yahweh your God to misuse it, Yahweh will not leave unpunished the man who utters his name to misuse it.”

(Exodus 20:7; the Jerusalem Bible)

A more literal reading in modern idiom would read something like “You shall not utter the secret name of God to misuse it for vain or selfish purposes, for Yahweh will not leave that person unpunished who does so.” This commandment has little to do with cussing and saying things such as “Goddammit.” It has more to do with a person’s conduct of life, especially in light of the secret name of God being used to fulfill vain purposes. Elisha seemed to be inviolate of this commandment, yet there is no consequence mentioned in the passage. It is pure and complete speculation, but perhaps the greatest punishment of all was living in the horrid aftermath of having utilized the Holy to perform such an evil deed.

As Israel expanded its territories, conquering and possessing the land throughout the region of Cana'an, they killed and ousted the inhabitants who had entrenched themselves there during the 400 years of the Hebrews' Egyptian captivity. As a result, the displaced Cana'anites became the traditional enemies of Israel, but their deities seemed to have the same, identical roots, and were actually the same god, but in name only, as the

form of worship differed between the two cultures. The parallels between Ba’al and Yahweh are quite detailed. For example, both peoples referred to him, in his role as the god of storms and war, by the euphemisms “the rider on the clouds” and the “father to the fatherless.”



Limestone stele from the western wing of the Temple of Ba’al, Acropolis, Ras Shamra (ancient Ugarit), Levant. It depicts the storm god, Ba’al (late Bronze Age, 18th to 15th centuries BCE).

Photo courtesy of the author. Copyright 2011.

“5 Father of the fatherless and protector of widows is God in his holy habitation. 6 God settles the solitary in a home; he leads out the prisoners to prosperity, but the rebellious dwell in a parched land.”

(Psalm 68:5-6)

Both are portrayed as overcoming their enemies, such as when Yamm and his henchman battled Litan, the Fleeing Serpent/the Twisty Serpent, known as “Leviathan” [לְתִינָה] in the Hebrew.

“13 You did divide the sea by your strength: you brake the heads of the dragons [some translations say, ‘sea monsters,’ perhaps an allusion to the Serpent] in the waters.”

(Psalm 74:13)

“12 Am I a sea monster or a dragon [again, an allusion to the Serpent?] that you must place me under guard?”

(Job 7:12)

“12 By his power the sea grew calm. By his skill he crushed the great sea monster.”

(Job 26:12)

“8 Or who enclosed the sea with doors when, bursting forth, it went out from the womb....”

(Job 38:8)

So it is more likely that, whatever the origin of his name, Yahweh took over the history of Ba’al in Hebrew folklore and is best understood as the Hebrew equivalent of that Cana’anite god.

Anecdotally, there is a famous confrontation between the Israelite prophet Elijah, and the prophets of Ba'al recorded in the Bible.

“16 So... [King] Ahab went to meet Elijah. 17 When he saw Elijah, he said to him, ‘Is that you, you troubler of Israel?’ 18 ‘I have not made trouble for Israel,’ Elijah replied. ‘But you and your father’s family have. You have abandoned the LORD’s commands and have followed the Ba’als. 19 Now summon the people from all over Israel to meet me on Mount Carmel. And bring the four hundred and fifty prophets of Ba’al and the four hundred prophets of Asherah, who eat at Jezebel’s table.’ 20 So Ahab sent word throughout all Israel and assembled the prophets on Mount Carmel. 21 Elijah went before the people and said, ‘How long will you waver between two opinions? If the LORD is God, follow him; but if Ba’al is God, follow him.’ But the people said nothing. 22 Then Elijah said to them, ‘I am the only one of the LORD’s prophets left, but Ba’al has four hundred and fifty prophets. 23 Get two bulls for us. Let Ba’al’s prophets choose one for themselves, and let them cut it into pieces and put it on the wood but not set fire to it. I will prepare the other bull and put it on the wood but not set fire to it. 24 Then you call on the name of your god, and I will call on the name of the LORD. The god who answers by fire—he is God.’ Then all the people said, “What you say is good.” 25 Elijah said to the prophets of Ba’al, ‘Choose one of the bulls and prepare it first, since there are so many of you. Call on the name of your god, but do not light the fire.’ 26 So they took the bull given them and prepared it. Then they called on the name of Ba’al from morning till noon. ‘Baal, answer us!’ they shouted. But there was no response; no one answered. And they danced around the altar they had made. 27 At noon Elijah began to taunt them. ‘Shout louder!’ he said. ‘Surely he is a god! Perhaps he is deep in thought, or busy, or traveling. Maybe he is sleeping and must be awakened.’ 28 So they shouted louder and slashed themselves with swords and spears, as was their custom, until their blood flowed. 29 Midday passed, and they continued their frantic prophesying until the time for the evening sacrifice. But there was no response, no one answered, no one paid attention. 30 Then Elijah said to all the people, ‘Come here to me.’ They came to him, and he

repaired the altar of the LORD, which had been torn down. 31 Elijah took twelve stones, one for each of the tribes descended from Jacob, to whom the word of the LORD had come, saying, ‘Your name shall be Israel.’ 32 With the stones he built an altar in the name of the LORD, and he dug a trench around it large enough to hold two seahs[a] of seed. 33 He arranged the wood, cut the bull into pieces and laid it on the wood. Then he said to them, ‘Fill four large jars with water and pour it on the offering and on the wood.’ 34 ‘Do it again,’ he said, and they did it again. ‘Do it a third time,’ he ordered, and they did it the third time. 35 The water ran down around the altar and even filled the trench. 36 At the time of sacrifice, the prophet Elijah stepped forward and prayed: ‘LORD, the God of Abraham, Isaac and Israel, let it be known today that you are God in Israel and that I am your servant and have done all these things at your command. 37 Answer me, LORD, answer me, so these people will know that you, LORD, are God, and that you are turning their hearts back again.’ 38 Then the fire of the LORD fell and burned up the sacrifice, the wood, the stones and the soil, and also licked up the water in the trench.

39 When all the people saw this, they fell prostrate and cried, ‘The LORD—he is God! The LORD—he is God!’

40 Then Elijah commanded them, ‘Seize the prophets of Ba’al. Don’t let anyone get away!’ They seized them, and Elijah had them brought down to the Kishon Valley and slaughtered them there.”

(1 Kings 18:16-40)



Elijah and the prophets of Ba'al.
Photo courtesy of the author. Copyright 2011.

It is apparent that the Hebrews did not recognize the evolution of the religion of the Mesopotamian region, and it is clear that they did not worship Yahweh as being the same as the god Ba'al. Despite the name of Yahweh being originally sourced to a son of El is attested by a document (KTU 1.1 IV 14) from Ugarit,⁸ a Palestinian site occupied by neighbors of Israel. The document translates as “The name of the son of god, Yahweh.”

Furthermore, this status as the foremost of the sons of El is commemorated in the *Song of Moses*, one of the oldest of the Hebrew scriptures found in Deuteronomy:

“8 When the Elyon [another name of El] apportioned the nations, when he divided humankind, he fixed the boundaries of the peoples according to the number of the gods [the bene haElohim—the Sons of God]; 9 Yahweh’s own portion was his people, Jacob [Israel] his allotted share.”

(Deuteronomy 32:8-9)

In Canaanite literature, Yahweh ruled as the king of the other children of El. In this role, he presided and judged whenever the Assembly of the Gods met in council. The preeminence of Yahweh over the other gods is repeatedly asserted in the Old Testament Book of Psalms. In Psalm 86, we are told that “*There is none like you among the gods, O Yahweh*” (Psalm 86:8), and Psalm 89 is even more specific in explaining that the “gods” are the sons of El who met as the Assembly of the Gods, the Divine Council:

“6 The heavens praise your wonders, O Yahweh,
your faithfulness in the assembly of the holy ones.
For who in the skies can be compared to Yahweh?
Who among the sons of gods is like Yahweh?
7 a God feared in the council of the holy ones,
great and awesome above all that are around him?”

(Psalm 89:6-7)

Angels or Gods?

Setting aside the theories of extra-terrestrial interpretations that we touched on in earlier chapters, it is abundantly clear that the Genesis 6:1-8

passage is speaking of unique characters, the Watchers. Identifying these characters strictly as angels creates a problem in the text, which is supported by other biblical passages such as Psalm 82, in which we have the mention of the Elohim in context of the “Divine Council”—the gathering of the plurality of gods. But the gods mentioned in the Psalm are *not* angels. Let’s examine this Psalm a little more closely, looking at its language and meaning.

A Psalm of Asaph

“1 God (Elohim) stands in the midst of the divine council
[literally, council of El]; among the gods [elohim] He
pronounces judgment.

2 How long will you [plural] judge unjustly,

showing favor to the wicked? Selah.

3 Judge the wretched and the orphan,

vindicate the lowly and the poor,

4 rescue the wretched and the needy;

save them from the hand of the wicked.

5 They neither know nor understand,

they go about in darkness;

all the foundations of the earth totter.

6 I said, “you (plural) gods [elohim],

sons of the Most High [bene Elyon—another title for God], all of you [plural];

7 but you [plural] shall die as men do,

and fall like a man, O princes [plural; more accurately “shining ones”].

8 Arise [the command is singular], O God [plural; elohim],

judge [the command is singular] the earth,

for you [singular] shall inherit all the nations.”

God stood in the midst of the gods, the *sons of the Most High* (a variation on the Sons of God as found in Genesis 6:4). In this council, the *bene haElohim* are called “gods” and also “princes,” and are told that they will collectively fall. One would have to manipulate the passage, or simply overlook certain whole chunks of the Hebrew text in order to read around what it actually states: There is a multitude of gods. The first mention of Elohim in Psalm 82:1 must be translated as a singular, in that it is the subject of a singular verb: “*Elohim stands.*” This is consistent with the Hebrew language. The second mention of Elohim in the Psalm must be read

as a plural, as the preposition in front of it (“in the midst of”) requires more than one. It is impossible to be *in the midst* of one person. In Psalm 82, God (Elohim) is presiding over an assembly (or council) of other gods (Elohim). This where I spoke in a previous chapter of the word *elohim* being both singular and plural, wholly dependent on the rest of the sentence structure and the context in which it is being used, such as saying “A deer stood in the midst of a herd of deer”—same word with both singular and plural contexts.

Verse 6 of the Psalm makes it very clear that the *elohim* are the very same characters as the Sons of God mentioned in Genesis 6:4, in that he addresses them as the other *elohim*, and calls them the “sons of the Most High,” addressing them, point blank, saying “*you are gods [elohim], all of you.*” An interesting observation has been made by Dr. Michael S. Heiser, when he notes that the *elohim* mentioned here are not angels, which comes from the Hebrew word *Mal’akim*, meaning “messenger,” an entirely different term than what occurs for the Sons of God.⁹

Other passages where the plurality of gods [haElohim] appear are:
“Among the gods there is none like you, O Yahweh; neither
[are there any works] like your works.”

(Psalm 86:8)

“For Yahweh is a great God, and a great King above all gods.”

(Psalm 95:3)

“For Yahweh is great, and deserving of exceedingly great praise: he is to be feared above all gods.”

(Psalm 96:4)

“All who served images were put to shame; those who boasted in mere idols; even all the gods bow down before him.”

(Psalm 97:7)

“For you, O Yahweh, are Most High above all the earth: you are exalted far above all gods.”

(Psalm 97:9)

“For I know that Yahweh is great, and that our lord is above all gods.”

(Psalm 135:5)

“O give thanks to the God of gods: for his mercy endures forever.”

(Psalm 136:2)

“I will praise you with my whole heart: before the gods will I sing praise to you.”

(Psalm 138:1)

“Who is like you, O Yahweh, among the gods? Who is like you, majestic in holiness, awesome in splendor, doing wonders?”

(Exodus 15:11)

“Do you indeed decree what is right, O gods? Do you judge people fairly?”

(Psalm 58:1)

Some trains of more conservative theological thought insist that Psalm 82 is speaking of God addressing other members of the Holy Trinity: God the father, God the Son and God the Holy Spirit. But this cannot be at all accurate in light of the fact that not all members of the Trinity are “sons”;

the Holy Spirit is not a “son of God.” Further, in verses 2-5 of the Psalm, God is charging the other Elohim with corruption, and condemning them for their corrupt rule of the earth. At the end of the Psalm, God is reclaiming the rule of the earth from the other elohim, the implication being that they have done a horrible job of it, acting wickedly, and so they must be taken out of the picture. Again, according to Dr. Michael S. Heiser, these other elohim were an “impediment or a nuisance or at best a disappointment”¹⁰ —certainly not indicative of the Holy Trinity, as defined by Christian theology.

There are numerous other passages in the Bible that speak of this divine council and the *elohim* as a plurality, as well as the sons of God, the *bene haElohim*. One of the most familiar passages where the Sons of God appear is in the first two chapters of the Book of Job, which is considered to be, chronologically speaking, the oldest book in the Bible, pre-dating the formulation of Israel as a nation and the Jewish religion itself. Take note of another character who shows up in this passage:

“1 There was a man in the land of Uz, whose name was Job; and that man was blameless and upright, one who feared God, and turned away from evil. 2 There were born to him seven sons and three daughters. 3 He had seven thousand sheep, three thousand camels, five hundred yoke of oxen, and five hundred she-asses, and very many servants; so that this man was the greatest of all the people of the east. 4 His sons used to go and hold a feast in the house of each on his day; and they would send and invite their three sisters to eat and drink with them. 5 And when the days of the feast had run their course, Job would send and sanctify them, and he would rise early in the morning and offer burnt offerings according to the number of them all; for Job said, “It may be that my sons have sinned, and cursed God in their hearts.” Thus Job did continually. 6 Now there was a day when the Sons of God [*bene haElohim*] came to present themselves before the LORD, and [the] Satan also came among them. 7 The LORD said to (the) Satan, “Whence have you come?” [The] Satan answered the LORD, “From going to and fro on the earth, and from walking up and down on it.” 8 And the LORD said to [the] Satan, “Have you considered my

servant Job, that there is none like him on the earth, a blameless and upright man, who fears God and turns away from evil?” 9 Then [the] Satan answered the LORD, “Does Job fear God for nought? 10 Hast thou not put a hedge about him and his house and all that he has, on every side? Thou hast blessed the work of his hands, and his possessions have increased in the land.”

(Job 1:1-10)

And again in Job [Chapter 2](#):

“1 Again there was a day when the Sons of God [bene ha’Elohim] came to present themselves before the LORD, and [the] Satan also came among them to present himself before the LORD.”

(Job 2:1)

One could only imagine what exactly was going on in the courts of heaven when the Divine Council, the host of elohim, “presented themselves” before God, the singular elohim that held rule over them. Although these verses as well as other passages throughout scripture exist, and have meaning and purpose, it tells of a very different picture of the gods of the Bible, and a much murkier purpose behind the things that they did. Suddenly, the picture of the mythological Zeus holding court with the other Olympian gods, toying with the lives of humans while bartering with Hades, the god of the Underworld, starts to look at once not so unfamiliar or far-fetched. Again, we see the great mythologies of the world start to merge into a bigger, more mysterious story where the differing cast of characters blend and merge into one another.

The members of the Divine Council, known as the Watchers, who descended to the earth on the slopes of Mount Hermon, did so with great determination to make a pact among themselves. They were charged with the responsibility of watching over humanity, the children of God’s creation, but then left that responsibility behind when they looked down on

humanity with desire, wanting to be one of them and experience the lustful, sensual, steamy, flesh-on-flesh experience of sexual contact. They wanted to create life that sprang forth from their own loins, experiencing what only the Creator himself had experienced. For this, they were condemned, stripped of their “god-ness,” and reduced to a fleshly life that would suffer the consequence of physical death—a thing that they, apparently, would not have had to suffer in their heavenly state.

But there is also the danger of ascribing too much non-malevolence to these beings. In a desire to make them seem “more human,” we can often times imbue them with attributes that they did not possess. In the Christian way of thinking, making something “good” that God has deemed “evil” can run the risk of heresy and blasphemous behavior, and apparently the elohim who stood in the midst of the elohim—the Divine Council—had the superior power to condemn them for their actions. Yet, in great speculation, it is curious to wonder how these lesser gods saw themselves, what they thought about, and how they rationalized a departure from their Creator. When mankind considers offending a holy God, we have nothing to register that against, save for words taught from scriptures and consciousnesses that have religious mores grafted into them. These members of the Divine Council who left their place in the courts of heaven and descended to the earth to cohabit with human women seemingly understood full well what consequences their actions would produce. Yet, they still did it. Was it because they didn’t believe that God had the power to condemn and destroy them? Or was it that they simply didn’t care? Because, unlike human beings who have no visceral, tangible connection to the presence of God save through faith alone, these beings had physical access, beings gods themselves, and could experience the presence of the Most high God on a firsthand basis.

Still, the Watchers chose to desert the Divine Council and make their own way among the humans. Perhaps their biggest mistake was in believing that they were princes who could float untainted by their actions, above the consequences, and impose rule over the inferior children of Adam, much as Moses believed when he saw himself as the deliverer and potential ruler of the Hebrews the day he murdered the Egyptian task master.

And That's How I Met Your Mother...

The Nephilim are the children of the Sons of God, the offspring of the mixed blood of the bene haElohim and the benoth Adam, the daughters of men. But these offspring, according to scripture, were anything but normal children. There was no father-son stroll down the lane, fishing poles on shoulders, whistling a happy tune and skipping stones into the Euphrates River. We are told in the texts that the offspring of the sexual relations between the Sons of God and human women was like an experiment gone very wrong. The accepted view in academia is that the Nephilim are the offspring of angels, but that may be only part of the story, at least according to the text as rendered in the 1611 King James translation of the Bible, where the word Nephilim has been translated as “giants.”

As mentioned previously in this book, the generally accepted view of the word Nephilim is that it is derived from the Hebrew word *nepahl* (נֶפֶל). The “-im” ending signified plurality. The most commonly accepted definitions for the word nephal are:

1. To fall (as if to the ground).
2. To fall (as if in battle).
3. To be cast down.
4. To desert a location.
5. To fail.

As Craig Hines suggests in his book, *Gateway of the Gods*, these definitions are most likely were in reference to “fallen angel” originates.¹¹ But he goes on to ask which of the meanings most readily applies to the Nephilim, and does it refer to the angelic parents or the hybrid offspring? If we are to take the first definition of “to fall (as if to the ground),” it would seem that this could apply to angels who “fell from a state of grace to an

evil fallen one”—an act of motion, moving from one place to another. But there are much better, more succinct words to describe this act, such as *yarad* (יָרַד), which means “to come or go down, to descend,” and the “im” would have been added in some form to denote the plural aspect of the word.

Then there is the second definition, “to fall (as if in battle).” This definition denotes death. But we are told that these Sons of God and their offspring were very much alive. They were living, breathing, thinking, lusting, and having sexual intercourse and reproducing. Doesn’t sound very dead to me, unless, perhaps, later scribes were making reference to them at a much later date, viewing them as the “dead warriors” who had already been destroyed in the waters of the great deluge.

The third definition, “to be cast down,” seems to be a perfect fit if we are ascribing a fallen state to the Watchers and their offspring. They would have been seen as being cast down from heaven as a consequence of their rebellion against God. Yet, were this the only definition, it would exclude the many accounts of other cultures experiencing these beings as good, well-meaning teachers and beings of beneficent intent. Remember: The offspring of the Watchers were not all considered to be evil, but are written about as such in scripture as a collective.

The fourth definition speaks to desertion, a moving from one location to another with deliberate abandonment. In a real sense, this is what the Watchers did when they descended to the steepes of Mount Hermon and deliberately made a pact to willingly leave their godly estate on the Divine Council and dwell among the humans, one of the purposes of which was to experience the fathering of children with the human women.

The fifth definition is one of “failure,” which could easily be manipulated to fit the context in that the Watchers obviously failed to do their duty and fulfill their responsibility—which is, in part, the reason they are condemned

in Psalm 82. You can also find this supported by the text in the Book of Jubilees, part of the Dead Sea Scrolls.

“15 And in the second week of the tenth jubilee Mahalalel took unto him to wife Dinah, the daughter of Barakiel the daughter of his father’s brother, and she bare him a son in the third week in the sixth year, and he called his name Jared, for in his days the angels of the Lord descended on the earth, those who are named the Watchers, that they should instruct the children of men, and that they should do judgment and uprightness on the earth.”

(Jubilees 4:15)

“1 And it came to pass when the children of men began to multiply on the face of the earth and daughters were born unto them, that the angels of God saw them on a certain year of this jubilee, that they were beautiful to look upon; and they took themselves wives of all whom they chose, and they bare unto them sons and they were giants. 2 And lawlessness increased on the earth and all flesh corrupted its way, alike men and cattle and beasts and birds and everything that walks on the earth—all of them corrupted their ways and their orders, and they began to devour each other, and lawlessness increased on the earth and every imagination of the thoughts of all men (was) thus evil continually. 3 And God looked upon the earth, and behold it was corrupt, and all flesh had corrupted its orders, and all that were upon the earth had wrought all manner of evil before His eyes. 4 And He said that He would destroy man and all flesh upon the face of the earth which He had created. 5 But Noah found grace before the eyes of the Lord. 6 And against the angels whom He had sent upon the earth, He was exceedingly wroth, and He gave commandment to root them out of all their dominion, and He bade us to bind them in the depths of the earth, and behold they are bound in the midst of them, and are (kept) separate. 7 And against their sons went forth a command from before His face that they should be smitten with the sword, and be removed from under heaven. 8 And He said ‘My spirit shall not always abide on man; for they also are flesh and their days shall be one hundred and

twenty years.’ 9 And He sent His sword into their midst that each should slay his neighbour, and they began to slay each other till they all fell by the sword and were destroyed from the earth. 10 And their fathers were witnesses (of their destruction), and after this they were bound in the depths of the earth for ever, until the day of the great condemnation, when judgment is executed on all those who have corrupted their ways and their works before the Lord.”

(Jubilees 5:1-10)

Can you see the similarity that shines through in all of these texts, even from the books that were completely eradicated from scripture under the councils invoked by Emperor Constantine? This speaks to the fact that not all of these “non-canonical” scriptures were indeed rightfully eradicated from the Bible! (See [Chapter 7](#).)

There are inherent problems, however, with the word Nephilim, and Heiser goes through great strides to demonstrate the differences between the Hebrew and the Aramaic, where a single “yod” (Hebrew vowel) can take the definition of the word in a completely different direction. Heiser ends up defining the word Nephilim as meaning “those who were fallen,” expressly meaning “those who fell/were fallen.”

However, though I have great respect for the linguistic work of Heiser, I would more align myself with the observations of Hines, who expresses a philosophy that seems inherent to the context of the Genesis 6 passage, wherein the Nephilim come across as, for all practical purposes, rather neutral. They are not defined by the evil of some fallen state of their parental lineage, but are rather set up in the Genesis passage by Moses as being “heroes of old” and “men of reknown.” They were obviously not all inherently evil in nature, and a study of these beings in the literature and scriptural writings of other cultures demonstrates that many of them were not considered to be malevolent. The Watchers may have descended to the earth in a desire to cohabitate with human women—a thing they knew had grave consequences for them in the Divine Council—but they came down

to experience life as human beings and to procreate. Some of them may have had evil intent, as we will see, but others, obviously, bore no malicious, devilish intent. They taught humans the “forbidden knowledges” of such dastardly things as cosmetics, mirrors, and herbology and medicine, but some also took advantage of the humans by teaching the arts of making weapons, sorcery and waging war. It was their hybrid offspring who, it is said in the passages of Enoch, wreaked havoc and brought destruction to mankind. The Watchers’ inability to control what they had procreated seems to be the source of the corruption, and the sin of the Watchers themselves was the act of deserting their posts and fraternizing on the most intimate of levels with those whom they were appointed to watch over. The consequences were widespread and resulted in divine judgment.

Then again, you also have the viewpoint of Derek Kinder’s work, in which he says, “The craving of demons for a body, evident in the Gospels, offers at least some parallel to this hunger for sexual experience.”¹²

Again, for clarity and reference, the passage as written in 1 Enoch:

“1 It happened after the sons of men had multiplied in those days, that daughters were born to them, elegant and beautiful. 2 And when the angels,¹³ the sons of heaven, beheld them, they became enamoured of them, saying to each other, Come, let us select for ourselves wives from the progeny of men, and let us beget children. 3 Then their leader Samyaza said to them; I fear that you may perhaps be indisposed to the performance of this enterprise; 4 And that I alone shall suffer for so grievous a crime. 5 But they answered him and said; We all swear; 6 And bind ourselves by mutual execrations, that we will not change our intention, but execute our projected undertaking. 7 Then they swore all together, and all bound themselves by mutual execrations. Their whole number was two hundred, who descended upon Ardis,¹⁴ which is the top of Mount Armon. 8 That mountain therefore was called Armon, because they had sworn upon it,¹⁵ and bound themselves by mutual execrations.”

(1 Enoch 7: 1-8)

Hines sums it up best: “There is good and bad in everything, and it is through the actions of an individual (even an angel) that determines their nature.”¹⁶

It is my sincere belief that, in accordance with the language and the contexts surrounding the various appearances of the word Nephilim, they were not inherently evil in nature, and they are best described as the descendants of a race of beings who abandoned or left their place in the heavenly realms and the courts of the Divine Council, and descended to the earth in violation of the rules established by God.

“6 And the angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he hath reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day. 7 Even as Sodom and Gomorrah, and the cities about them in like manner, giving themselves over to fornication, and going after strange flesh, are set forth for an example, suffering the vengeance of eternal fire.”

(Jude 6-7)

Once again we also see in this passage the reassertion of the prohibition against certain forms of sexual activity. As we saw with the serpent character in the Garden of Eden story, we see again in the account of the Watchers. Everything seemed to revolve around encoded sexual activity in its adulterous or fornication forms. And there is always an imposition of consequential judgment imposed after these rules are violated. In the case of the breeding of the hybrid race of Nephilim, God is “grieved” that He ever made man and sets about a great natural catastrophe to wipe them all out—mankind, Nephilim and every living creature on the planet, according to the Genesis and Enochian accounts. Save for one man and his family, and pairs of every known animal in creation that could not survive in an aquatic habitat.

“Perfect in His Generation”

Why Noah and his immediate family were seemingly the only ones immune from this great watery judgment of God is significant. Genesis 6:9 says, “Noah was a just man.” According to Judeo-Christian teaching, Noah stood out among the rest of humanity as an example of righteousness and godliness in a world that had gone completely insane with perverse corruption around him. Like Enoch before him, Noah also “walked with God.” This is where most commentators and bible teachers seem to come to a screeching halt, falling far short of—as the late, effervescent radio personality Paul Harvey used to say—the rest of the story.

There was another reason why Noah was spared. And this reason goes far deeper than the surface issue of merely following God or being a “good believer.” The greatest cause of frustration over this issue is the fact that it seems to have escaped most commentators either through ignorance of the language of the text, or lack of desire to broach these topics beyond the surface message. Genesis 6:9 says that Noah was “perfect in his generation.” Is the text implying moral and spiritual perfection? Not in the least. Genesis 9:20-23 disproves any such perfection:

“20 Noah, a man of the soil, proceeded to plant a vineyard. 21 When he drank some of its wine, he became drunk and lay uncovered inside his tent. 22 Ham, the father of Canaan, saw his father naked and told his two brothers outside. 23 But Shem and Japheth took a garment and laid it across their shoulders; then they walked in backward and covered their father’s naked body. Their faces were turned the other way so that they would not see their father naked.”

(Genesis 9:20-23)

I Just Survived the Great Deluge, and Now I’m Going to DisneyLand!

What was the first recorded act of Noah in the Book of Genesis, after the events of the Great Flood? He got drunk. (And who wouldn't?) I think that if I had just spent the last 120 years building a huge barge as a repository for every species of animal in the known world, and spent four to six months in those closed quarters with my wife and kids, tending to the menagerie, and watching the total and complete destruction of living thing on earth, the first thing I would most probably do when all the puddles had dried up is thank God for my salvation, and hit that bottle of 21-year-old single malt Highland Scotch stashed in my overnight bag. Noah was as predictably human as you and me.

So why does the biblical account call him “perfect”? What is the meaning of this word? The Hebrew word is *tamiym* [תָמִيم]¹⁷ and comes from the primitive root word *taman* [תָמַן]. This means “complete, whole, entire, sound, without blemish” (see also: Exodus 12:5, 29:1, Leviticus 1:3). In its primary meaning, it does not refer to any moral or spiritual quality or superiority, but to *physical* purity. Noah was uncontaminated by the bloodlines of the Watchers and their offspring, the Nephilim. He was also of the line of Abel, the seed of *Adam* [אָדָם] not of the serpent’s bloodline as carried through the descendants of Cain. Noah alone had preserved their pedigree and kept it pure, in spite of prevailing corruption brought about by the fallen angels.¹⁸ What the language is telling us in Genesis [Chapter 6](#) is that Noah’s bloodline had remained free of genetic contamination, be it angelic or alien in nature. Noah was pure human being, through and through.

Flavius Josephus, a Palestinian, wrote *Antiquities of the Jews* to educate the Roman-Hellenistic world about Judaism and the history of the Jews. In it he recounts the tale of the Watchers, Nephilim, and Noah as follows:

“For many angels of God accompanied with women, and begat sons that proved unjust, and despisers of all that was good, on account of the confidence they had in their own strength; for the tradition is, that these men did what resembled the acts of those whom the Grecians call giants. But Noah was very uneasy at what they did; and

being displeased at their conduct, persuaded them to change their dispositions and their acts for the better: but seeing they did not yield to him, but were slaves to their wicked pleasures, he was afraid they would kill him, together with his wife and children, and those they had married; so he departed out of that land.¹⁹"

Despite the rather warmed-milk version of events given by Flavius Josephus, the overt implication is, then, that all other human families on the Earth had been contaminated by the blood of the Nephilim, save for Noah and his children. And if the biblical implication is that humanity was completely tainted by the blood of the serpent as represented in the lines of the Nephilim, it is no wonder that God pronounced such a universal fiat of judgment.

As for the fallen members of the Divine Council who descended to the earth to commit themselves to interbreeding with humans, participating in the abomination, God put them in custody "in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day" (Jude 6). This is sometimes interpreted as Tartarus or the "nether realms" (2 Peter 2:4). In Greek mythology, Tartarus (*Tάρταρος*) is a deep, gloomy place, a pit, or an abyss used as a dungeon of torment and suffering that resides beneath the underworld. In the *Gorgias*, Plato (c. 400 BCE) wrote that souls were judged after death and those who received punishment were sent to Tartarus, and it is only known in Hellenistic Jewish literature from the Greek text of 1 Enoch 20:2, where the archangel Uriel is the jailer of the 200 Watchers who sinned by cohabiting with human women and producing the bloodline of the Nephilim.²⁰ It is, further, interesting to note that even Peter—"Saint Peter," the big fisherman, the "rock" upon which Christ would build His church, the friend and disciple of Jesus and the apostle who wrote the New Testament Books of first and second Peter—refers to the Greek mythological place of punishment in the afterlife:

"4 For if God did not spare angels when they sinned, but sent them to Tartarus, putting them in chains of darkness in gloomy dungeons to be held for judgment; 5 if he did not spare the ancient world when he

brought the flood on its ungodly people, but protected Noah, a preacher of righteousness, and seven others; 6 if he condemned the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah by burning them to ashes, and made them an example of what is going to happen to the ungodly; 7 and if he rescued Lot, a righteous man, who was distressed by the depraved conduct of the lawless 8 (for that righteous man, living among them day after day, was tormented in his righteous soul by the lawless deeds he saw and heard)—9 if this is so, then the Lord knows how to rescue the godly from trials and to hold the unrighteous for punishment on the day of judgment. 10 This is especially true of those who follow the corrupt desire of the flesh and despise authority.”

(2 Peter 2:4-10)

The punishment was reserved for those fallen who had participated in the great seeding of the human bloodline, and would also explain why some fallen angels are kept in custody and others are free to roam the heavens and torment mankind. Such a severe and dramatic punishment presupposed a severe and dramatic sin, something infinitely more evil and more sinister than mere mixed marriages. It was nothing less than the fallen, perhaps even demonic, realm attempting to pervert the bloodlines of the human world. By genetic control and the production of hybrids, the serpent of the Garden of Eden, and those who left their place on the Divine Council, following him, were out to rob God of the people He had made for Himself. The serpent character in the Bible, as we examined earlier, was none other than the leader of the fallen. And were the purpose of this book to examine Lucifer, the Star of the Morning, the Glory of God, and a Prince of the Divine Council, we would say a lot more about the implications, but we'll save that for another time. Suffice it to say that if the serpent from the garden who fathered the very first of the Nephilim in Cain had succeeded in corrupting in entirety the human race, he would have hindered the coming of the perfect Son of God, the promised “seed of the man,” who would defeat the fallen and restore man's dominion (Genesis 3:15).

In what is considered to be the very first Messianic prophecy in the Bible, God said to the serpent character in the Garden of Eden:

“15 And I will put enmity between you and the woman, and between your offspring and hers; he will crush your head, and you will strike his heel.”

(Genesis 3:15)

The bloodline of the serpent was manifested in Cain, his offspring conceived during the seduction of Eve in the Garden of Eden. The bloodline of the woman was manifested in her son Abel, whom Eve conceived with Adam. The prophetic implication of this verse in Genesis is that the Messiah would be born through pure human bloodlines, the seed of Adam and Eve, uncorrupted by the blood of the serpent and his host of fallen Watchers. That is why you find the lineage of Mary, the wife of Joseph and mother to the immaculate conception of Jesus Christ, being traced through King David and all the way back to Adam, through the younger son Abel.

According to Christian theology, if the bloodlines of the Nephilim had by any means prevented the birth of the “only begotten” Son of God, they would obviously have averted their own doom. It was for this reason, according to Christian theology, that God drowned all of mankind in the Great Flood of Noah.

There is a state of what I will call “contingent dualism” at play here: Had the bloodlines of the serpent and the Watchers succeeded in contaminating all of humanity, there would have been no immaculately born Son of God, who the Jewish Messianic prophecies referred to as the “Kinsman Redeemer,” the seed of the man, the divine savior of our own bloodline who would take away the sins of the world. Because the bloodline of the Watchers was eliminated in the flood, the pure human genealogies would be allowed to continue through the pure human sons of Noah, producing a messiah of pure human birth.

But wait—is not the Messiah, according to Christian theology, born of a human bloodline, mixed with the bloodline of God? Was not Mary the mother of Jesus impregnated by elohim in the same fashion as the daughters

of men were impregnated by the Watchers, the elohim of the Divine Council? Did not the mother of Jesus conceive the Messiah as a result of a divine sexual interference? And are not the genealogies of Mary, tracing her lineage back to the throne of David the king, and further back to the line of Adam through Abel written into the story of the birth of Jesus, written for the sole purpose of establishing the untainted human bloodline of the Christian messiah, who was said to be both God and Man? For, indeed, the greatest Son of God was the messiah, himself, born to a virgin, fathered by a God. Yet he is called the “only begotten” son of God. Not simply a prince of heaven, but God Himself in human form. The mysteries of the universe compound exponentially when the elohim who stands in the midst of the elohim and pronounces judgment on the gods of the Divine Council, holds the ability to strip the other gods of their divinity, yet strips Himself of divinity in order to become a human being in a singular act the Koinae Greek calls the kenosis ($\kappa\acute{e}nōsīs$). This, according to Christian theology, placed Jesus Christ in a place far above the gods and angels. God out-did the Watchers and the serpent in that he made the perfect melding of human and god.

Pardon Me, but There's a Giant in My Soup

There is some confusion when reading all these passages as to whether or not these Watchers were a caste of hierarchical angels, or whether they were lesser gods, as expressly stated in Psalm 82. I believe it is as simple as understanding that the angels of God had different titles in the heavenly domain than they did after their collective descent to the earth. In short, they were *both*. But gaining an understanding that these beings existed far outside the story-bookish view many people have of angels is important to understanding the princely majesty of these beings, as well as the devastation that they brought to the bloodlines of humanity.

Could the term Nephilim, though generally accepted as the offspring of the Watchers, also be used to describe the Watchers themselves? After all,

the definition of the word Nephilim means to fall or descend. The children of the Watchers did neither of those things, as they were the product of the Sons of God interbreeding with human women. They descended from nowhere, other than the wombs of their earthly mothers. As I alluded to much earlier, a good illustrative example would be the monikers we place on immigrants from foreign countries. When an Irish family emigrates from Ireland to the United States, their children are known as Irish-Americans. But then the term extends also to the parents, who also become Irish-Americans. Once the Nephilim were bequeathed, the titles spread across the board to both the parents and the children.

There is another completely unique distinguishing factor to the children of the Watchers: They were called “giants.” And there is some textual evidence to support a larger size. When the wandering Israelites finally reached the Promised Land, an advance party was sent to spy on the country. They came back with this report:

“32 So they gave out to the sons of Israel a bad report of the land which they had spied out, saying, “The land through which we have gone, in spying it out, is a land that devours its inhabitants; and all the people whom we saw in it are men of great size. 33 There also we saw the Nephilim [the sons of Anak are part of the Nephilim]; and we became like grasshoppers in our own sight, and so we were in their sight.”

(Numbers 13:32-33)

Although I do not fully subscribe to the Creationist views of Dr. Henry Morris, he has some interesting things to say about the “giants” and their further offspring:

“There were giants “also after that,” in the days of the Canaanites, and these were likewise known as, among other things, the Nephilim (Numbers 13:33). Humanly speaking, they were descended from Anak, and so were also known as the Anakim. These people were, of course, known to Moses and it was probably he who editorially

inserted the phrase “and also after that” into Noah’s original record here in Genesis 6:4. Moses probably also inserted the information that these were the “mighty men of old, men of renown,” men whose exploits of strength and violence had made them famous in song and fable in all nations in the ages following the Flood. To rebellious men of later times, they were revered as great heroes; but in God’s sight they were merely ungodly men of violence and evil.^{[21](#)}”

During the campaign of the Five Kings in Abraham’s day, several tribes nestled around the Valley of Siddim in the Dead Sea region, evidently intermingled with the Canaanites, and are considered to be the Nephilim or hybrids of Nephilim. These tribes are identified in both Genesis 14 and Deuteronomy 2 as the Rephaim (“titans,” children of “Rapha”), the Zuzim or Zamzummim (“terrible ones”), the Emim, Horites, and Anakim (“crushing tyrants”). It is the tribe of the Anakim that is directly connected with the Nephilim in the report given to Moses and the Hebrews by the spies in Numbers 13:33. The context of the Dueteronomy and Numbers passages suggest that the other tribes of giants were relatives of the Anakim or other lines of Nephilim, particularly the Rephaim, whose descendant is described as living in the city of Gath along with the Anakim giant, Goliath, and Lahmi. The Rephaim are giants and are generally described as being tall or large, and seem to be synonymous with the Nephilim, based on the translation of the word *giants* in Genesis [Chapter 6](#).

The tribe of the Anakim were descended from a giant named Anak, who was a son or grandson of a giant named Arba, from which the ancient city of Hebron was originally called “Kiriath Arba” or “The City of Arba” because “Arba was the greatest man among the Anakim” Joshua 14:15. This tribe was so tall, that the weak-kneed spies reported, “we are like grasshoppers to them” (Numbers 13:33).

The Old Testament scriptures tell of how the tribes of giants were fought and destroyed by the tribes of normal men who replaced them, including the Israelites. Moses killed Og, king of the Rehpaim who lived on the Golan heights near Mount Hermon, the original spot where the Watchers

descended and fathered the Nephilim. Og apparently did not travel far from home. According to the biblical passage, Og had a bed that was nine cubits long (13.5 to 15.5 feet, depending on which cubit was used) and was called “last of the remnant of the giants” (Deuteronomy 3). Og may be the source of the word *ogre* in the English language.

According to Issac E. Mozeson’s *The Word: The Dictionary That Reveals the Hebrew Source of English*, an “ogre” (עָגָר) is a hideous monster or giant (and is never mentioned as having “layers,” so get the picture of Shrek out of your mind completely). The mighty King Og of Bashan was said to be the last of the original line of Nephilim giants of scripture, so we are told in Numbers 21:33 and Deuteronomy 3:11. The old etymological notion that the word *ogre* came from the French language was probably written by men who had never heard of the biblical King Og. The French version explains the “re” suffix to be French in origin.

“The Illiterate Greeks, who clumsily borrowed an alphabet from the Semites, probably paganized the stuff of many biblical epics. One of these was the account of the Mighty Og and the Anakim—or Nephilim—battling the armies of god for the rights to settle Cana’an. Gigas [Og] is a major figure in their mythic battle between the Titans and the Gods. As for Og’s wife, note the Old Norse term for ogress, gygr. This is the given source for the Scottish word for an evil spirit or ogre.”²²

Joshua, Moses’ successor, drove the three remaining sons of Anak out of Hebron in his first campaign after leading the Children of Israel into the Promised Land. The sons of Anak evidently reoccupied the city of Hebron while Joshua was waging his campaign against Canaanite cities in the North. Caleb later retook Hebron and killed the three giants.²³ Surprisingly, there was probably heavy motivation for Caleb to drive them out and keep them from retaking the territory, as this is the region where, 40 years earlier, Caleb was one of the spies who said to Moses, “Yeah, they’re giants, all right, but we can take ‘em! Oh, and by the way, I have this great piece of land I want where these three giants live....” Caleb had his eyes and heart

set on a piece of land for 40 years. His motivation to kill the residents was strong indeed, bolstered by sand in his sandals for four decades.

David and King Saul fought a remnant of smaller giants who had taken refuge in the Philistine city of Gath. They included Goliath, who was “six cubits and a span” (roughly 9' 3”), and his brother Lahmi “whose spear had a shaft like a weaver’s rod.” The last of the Gittite giants was slain “In still another battle, which took place at Gath”:

“20 In still another battle, which took place at Gath, there was a huge man with six fingers on each hand and six toes on each foot—twenty-four in all. He also was a giant, descended from Rapha.”

(2 Samuel 21:20)

The last scriptural reference to the giants, chronologically speaking, may be Isaiah 45:14, which prophesies that Sabeans “men of stature” will become slaves in chains of the redeemed Israelites:

“14 This is what the LORD says: ‘The products of Egypt and the merchandise of Cush, and those tall Sabeans—they will come over to you and will be yours; they will trudge behind you, coming over to you in chains. They will bow down before you and plead with you, saying, Surely God is with you, and there is no other, there is no other god.’”

(Isaiah 45:14)

These are the characteristics of the remnant tribes of giants described in Scripture:

- ★ Their height was two or three times the height of normal men.

- ★ They were associated with some kind of unholy intermixing before the Flood.
- ★ They were closely associated with the wicked Canaanites after the Flood.
- ★ In one case they are described as having polydactyly (extra fingers and toes).
- ★ Unlike the Canaanites, there are no examples of Nephilim who became followers of God.

The Genesis account clearly states that the Nephilim were on the earth both before and after the Great Flood. This generates another question all on its own: If God sent a devastatingly tragic universal deluge that killed off all human beings and every other living thing, for the purpose of wiping out and completely exterminating this hybrid race, *why did it not work?*

Did God in all his biblical attributes of omniscience and foreknowledge not know that his act of judgment would not have the desired effect? Did God make a huge blunder, or was there something more going on? Was the great flood not as universal as we are told, allowing for the escape and survival of some of the Nephilim? Perhaps, as Ancient Alien theorists suggest, the Nephilim bugged out as soon as they knew of the Great Flood's impending arrival. Could the same space craft have returned to take away the remnant, only to redeposit them on the earth after the flood waters had receded? These are all—pardon the pun—giant questions. As we'll see at the end of this book, there may be some answers that will explain their return, and why Moses penned this:

“The Nephilim were on the earth in those days—and also afterward—when the Sons of God came in to the daughters of men and they bore children to them...”

(Genesis 6:4a)

God. No...Angel. Wait... *Gods*?

We've talked extensively about Elohim, and we know that the word refers to both the singular God and the multitude of gods of the Divine Council, the context of the passage defining which usage is to be incorporated. The Princes of the Divine Council are also referred to as angels, as they are seen in the biblical texts and the apochryphal books of Enoch. One such instance of the word elohim in the plural was when King Saul visited the witch of Endor in 1 Samuel 28:13. The noun elohim is used in conjunction with a plural when the witch tells Saul that she sees "gods" (elohim) coming up out of the earth; this seems to indicate that the term was used to mean something like "divine beings" among spiritists in ancient Israel.

Elohim (אֱלֹהִים) is used nearly 3,000 times in the Old Testament for the name of God, and in addition to meaning "God," it can also mean gods, goddesses, divine rulers, angels, god-like being or beings, or judges. In the New American Standard version of the Hebrew Old Testament, the word *elohim* is used in these instances for:

God, 2,326 times.
God's, 14 times.
divine, 1 time.
divine being, 1 time.
exceedingly, 1 time.
god, 45 times.
goddess, 2 times.
godly, 1 time.
gods, 204 times.
great, 2 times.
judges, 3 times.
mighty, 2 times.
rulers, 1 time.
shrine, 1 time.

The shortened, singular name for God is the word *El* (אֵל), which has the same meanings as above, but in a shorter, singular form: god, mighty man, and strength. It is very interesting to note that the Sons of God, the angels, and gods of the Divine Council had the name El incorporated into many of their names to denote their status as Sons of God, names such as the archangels bore: Michael, Raphael, Gabriel, Uriel, and even Azazel, who introduced the art of weaponry and warfare, as well as harlotry and prostitution to the humans. As mentioned earlier when talking about the bright shining gods, various other cultures have beings that have variants of the same word:

Sumerian *el* meant “brightness” or “shining.”
Akkadian *ilu* meant “radiant, shining one.”
Babylonian *ellu* meant “the shining one.”
Old Welsh *ellu* meant “a shining being.”
Old Irish *aillil* meant “shining” or “to shine.”
English *elf* meant “shining being.”
Anglo-Saxon *aelf* meant “radiant being.”

Philo of Alexandria (20 BCE-50 CE) wrote a commentary of Genesis 6 called *Concerning the Giants*. In it, he emphasized that the passage was not a myth:

And when the angels of God saw the daughters of men that they were beautiful, they took unto themselves wives of all of them whom they Chose.” (Genesis 6:2) Those beings, **whom other philosophers call demons, Moses usually calls angels;** and they are souls hovering in the air. And let no one suppose, that what is here stated is a fable, for it is necessarily true that the universe must be filled with living things in all its parts, since every one of its primary and elementary portions contains its appropriate animals and such as are consistent with its nature; the earth containing terrestrial animals, the sea and the rivers containing aquatic animals, and the fire such as are born in the fire (but it is said, that such as these last are found chiefly in

Macedonia), and the heaven containing the stars: for these also are entire souls pervading the universe, being unadulterated and divine, inasmuch as they move in a circle, which is the kind of motion most akin to the mind, for every one of them is the parent mind. It is therefore necessary that the air also should be full of living beings. And these beings are invisible to us, inasmuch as the air itself is not visible to mortal sight. (But it does not follow, because our sight is incapable of perceiving the forms of souls, that for that reason there are no souls in the air; but it follows of necessity that they must be comprehended by the mind, in order that like may be contemplated by like. [author's emphasis])²⁴

chapter 9

...And Also Afterward

It was sometime during the mid-1990s, while deep in an engaging conversation with friends, that a little light bulb popped on over my head, rather suddenly. We had been talking about aliens, D&D, *Star Trek*, and general metaphysical and ufological genre stuff, enjoying the heady, mystical, metaphysical atmosphere we seemed to be conjuring up in front of the fireplace. Of course, the Guinness was flowing pretty freely, and we all had reached that “higher plane” of enlightenment—you know, the one where all your thoughts suddenly have no filters, and your words come out as if they’d been under restraint for all the days of your life prior to that moment.

Well, this was one of those moments.

I jumped to my feet, yelling several exclamatory expletives of joy upon realizing that I had just stumbled upon a new discovery—at least for me. The information was nothing new, nor was it going to win me a Pulitzer or high praise around the world, but at that moment, it was completely new to me: UFOs and aliens are somehow inextricably linked to the Flood of Noah and the wildly fantastic breed of hybrid Nephilim that appeared at the beginning of the biblical account.

See? Nothing new.

But what occurred to me at that moment was a sudden understanding of the link between events that took place thousands of years ago, and what

seemed like events that were taking place today. And this was the biblical passage that spawned the entire *gadzooks!* scene in front of my friends' living room fireplace:

"26 Just as it was in the days of Noah, so also will it be in the days of the Son of Man. 27 People were eating, drinking, marrying and being given in marriage up to the day Noah entered the ark. Then the flood came and destroyed them all."

(Luke 17:26-27)

And cross-referenced in Matthew's gospel:

"37 As it was in the days of Noah, so it will be at the coming of the Son of Man. 38 For in the days before the flood, people were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage, up to the day Noah entered the ark; 39 and they knew nothing about what would happen until the flood came and took them all away. That is how it will be at the coming of the Son of Man."

(Matthew 24:37-39)

These were the words of Jesus, spoken to his disciples. In their context, they were speaking less about the *conditions* of the times of Noah, than they were speaking to the suddenness of God's wrathful judgment, in that people were still marrying and partying all the way up until they heard the slamming door of the ark that Noah had been building for 120 years. When the first little droplets of rain started to pitter-patter off their foreheads, they suddenly realized that all Noah had been saying was coming to pass. It's not that they hadn't *heard* Noah's words of warning; it was that they didn't *believe* them.

There was a deeper application of the passage than the simple suddenness of judgment—the idea that the things that were taking place all around us in current-day ufology and alien contact scenarios, seemed to be exactly what was taking place when the Watchers interbred with human women and sired the Nephilim. We asked ourselves that night: Is this a repeat of angelic or demonic beings attempting to infiltrate the human bloodline to stave off a

second judgment? Was this the precursor to the fulfillment of all the eschatological prophecies and the path to Armageddon?

Genesis 6:4 leaves us hanging on a haunting, almost chilling three words: “*... and also afterward.*” We have already established that several passages in the books of Moses tell us that the Nephilim survived the flood. But this seems to stand in stark contradiction to the verse in Genesis where we are told:

“21 And all flesh died that moved upon the earth, birds, cattle, beasts, all swarming creatures that swarm upon the earth, and every man; everything on the dry land in whose nostrils was the breath of life died. He blotted out every living thing that was upon the face of the ground, man and animals and creeping things and birds of the air; they were blotted out from the earth. Only Noah was left, and those that were with him in the ark.”

(Genesis 7:21)

Is this an oversight or a contradiction in the passage, or was it an intentional ruse to throw us off the path of the Nephilim? It is clear that what Moses wrote was an account of the Hebrew version of the Flood, but as we discovered earlier, the account of the Nephilim themselves, as recorded in the first few verses of Genesis [Chapter 6](#) have earmarks of having been edited, or added completely at a later date. Was this the work of Joshua, Moses’ successor? Or was it the addition of later scribes?

Or does it simply mean that the Nephilim were not considered as anything but the offspring of spirit beings, therefore not included in the list of things destroyed in Genesis 7:21?

Then there is a question that is often associated with this entire topic: Could this hybrid race of Nephilim giants, produced from the union of the princes of heaven—the lesser gods of the Divine Council—and earthly women, still be roaming the earth today? Because according to Genesis 6:4,

they survived the Flood, regardless of who wrote the passage. If it is a detail that Moses did not write or was somehow unaware of, someone edited the text and added in the appropriate phrases telling us that the Nephilim were still on the earth *after* the Flood that was supposed to have destroyed them.

As discussed in [Chapter 8](#), the Old Testament mentions several occurrences of “giants” and “Nephilim” appearing, specifically the giant-races of Canaan: the Rephaim, the Emim, the Horim, the Zamzummim, and the Anakim.

“10 The Emites used to live there—a people strong and numerous, and as tall as the Anakites. 11 Like the Anakites, they too were considered Rephaite, but the Moabites called them Emites. 12 Horites used to live in Seir, but the descendants of Esau drove them out. They destroyed the Horites from before them and settled in their place, just as Israel did in the land the LORD gave them as their possession.”

(Deuteronomy 2:10-12)

The Kingdom of Og, the King of Bashan, was the “land of the giants.”

“12 That is, the whole kingdom of Og in Bashan, who had reigned in Ashtaroth and Edrei and had survived as one of the last of the Rephaite. Moses had defeated them and taken over their land.”

(Joshua 13:12)

Anak, and his seven sons of the Anakim were also giants, along with the famed Goliath and his four brothers:

“4 A champion named Goliath, who was from Gath, came out of the Philistine camp. He was over nine feet tall. 5 He had a bronze helmet on his head and wore a coat of scale armor of bronze weighing five thousand shekels; 6 on his legs he wore bronze greaves, and a bronze javelin was slung on his back. 7 His spear shaft was like a

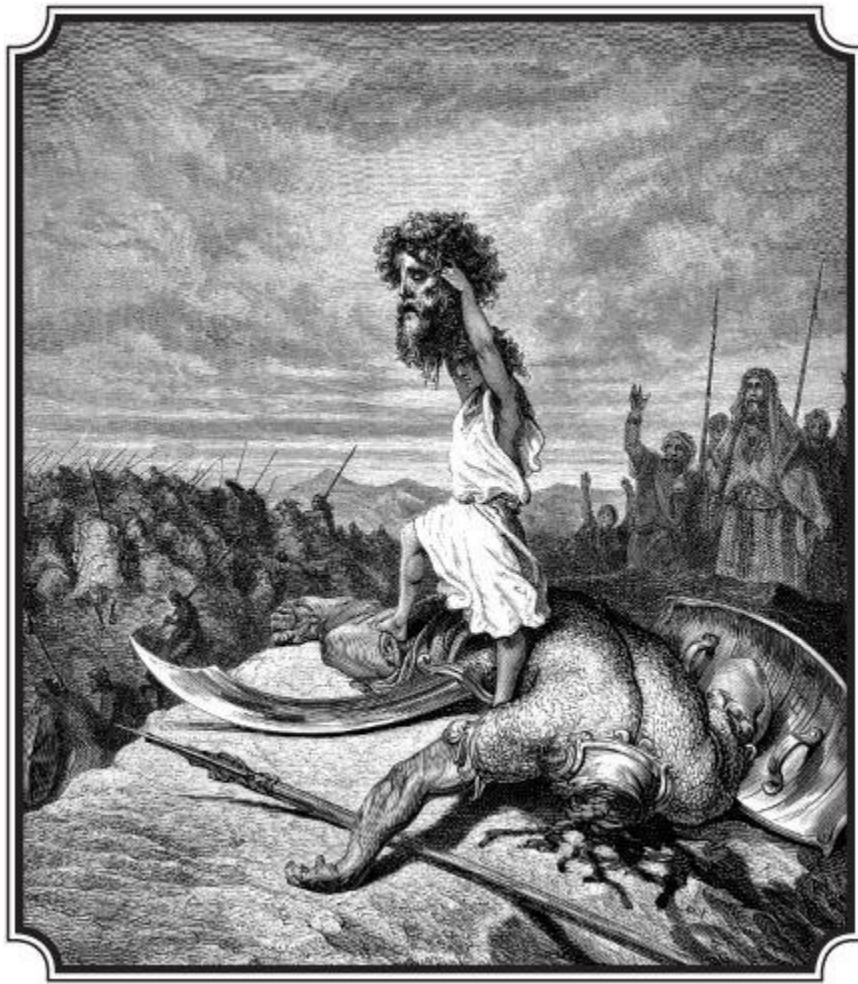
weaver's rod, and its iron point weighed six hundred shekels. His shield bearer went ahead of him."

(1 Samuel 17:4-7)

"15 Once again there was a battle between the Philistines and Israel. David went down with his men to fight against the Philistines, and he became exhausted. 16 And Ishbi-Benob, one of the descendants of Rapha, whose bronze spearhead weighed three hundred shekels and who was armed with a new sword, said he would kill David. 17 But Abishai son of Zeruiah came to David's rescue; he struck the Philistine down and killed him. Then David's men swore to him, saying, "Never again will you go out with us to battle, so that the lamp of Israel will not be extinguished." 18 In the course of time, there was another battle with the Philistines, at Gob. At that time Sibbecai the Hushathite killed Saph, one of the descendants of Rapha. 19 In another battle with the Philistines at Gob, Elhanan son of Jaare-Oregim the Bethlehemite killed Goliath the Gittite, who had a spear with a shaft like a weaver's rod. 20 In still another battle, which took place at Gath, there was a huge man with six fingers on each hand and six toes on each foot—twenty-four in all. He also was descended from Rapha. 21 When he taunted Israel, Jonathan son of Shimeah, David's brother, killed him. 22 These four were descendants of Rapha in Gath, and they fell at the hands of David and his men."

(2 Samuel 17:16-22)

The account of David and Goliath pits the youngest shepherd son of Jesse against the giant from Gath who fought for the Philistines. Goliath came down from the ridge where the Philistines were encamped, every day for 40 days, taunting the armies of Israel, challenging them to single-handed combat.



David and Goliath, Gustave Doré, 1866.
Photo licensed under Wikipedia Creative Commons.

King Saul had promised that whomever could defeat the giant in hand-to-hand, single combat would become Israel's champion. That man would also become the captain of the king's body guard, get the king's daughter's hand in marriage, and have his family become "tax free" in Israel all their days. Not a single soldier answered the call, but they remained encamped, waiting for something to break.

"1 Now the Philistines gathered their armies together to battle, and were gathered together at Sochoh, which belongs to Judah; they encamped between Sochoh and Azekah, in Ephes Dammim. 2 And

Saul and the men of Israel were gathered together, and they encamped in the Valley of Elah, and drew up in battle array against the Philistines. 3 The Philistines stood on a mountain on one side, and Israel stood on a mountain on the other side, with a valley between them. 4 And a champion went out from the camp of the Philistines, named Goliath, from Gath, whose height was six cubits and a span. 5 He had a bronze helmet on his head, and he was armed with a coat of mail, and the weight of the coat was five thousand shekels of bronze. 6 And he had bronze armor on his legs and a bronze javelin between his shoulders. 7 Now the staff of his spear was like a weaver's beam, and his iron spearhead weighed six hundred shekels; and a shield-bearer went before him. 8 Then he stood and cried out to the armies of Israel, and said to them, 'Why have you come out to line up for battle? Am I not a Philistine, and you the servants of Saul? Choose a man for yourselves, and let him come down to me. 9 If he is able to fight with me and kill me, then we will be your servants. But if I prevail against him and kill him, then you shall be our servants and serve us.' 10 And the Philistine said, 'I defy the armies of Israel this day; give me a man, that we may fight together.'"

(1 Samuel 17:1-10)

You can still visit the Valley of Elah today, where the flat, low valley is bordered on two sides by low ridges, and where the armies of Israel encamped on one side and the armies of the Philistines on the other.

Saul was the logical choice to fight Goliath on two counts: He was the king, and the Bible tells us that he stood "head and shoulder" over all the rest of the men of Israel. Saul was a tall man, but nowhere near the height of the giant of Gath. When David came to the camp to deliver food to his brothers, who were soldiers in the Israelite army, he heard the tauntings of Goliath, who by that time had started ascending the Israelite side of the valley to shout out his challenge. David, as the story goes, answered the call. King Saul attempted to dress the shepherd boy in his own armor—some commentators think as a ruse to let the rest of the army think it was Saul himself going into battle against the giant—but the armor was too big

for David. David went into the valley and faced off against Goliath, who mocked him in disdain.

“41 So the Philistine came, and began drawing near to David, and the man who bore the shield went before him. 42 And when the Philistine looked David over, he disdained him; for he was only a youth, ruddy and good-looking. 43 So the Philistine said to David, ‘Am I a dog, that you come to me with sticks?’ And the Philistine cursed David by his gods. 44 And the Philistine said to David, ‘Come to me, and I will give your flesh to the birds of the air and the beasts of the field!’”

(2 Samuel 17:41-44)

And, of course, David replied:

“45 You come to me with a sword, with a spear, and with a javelin. But I come to you in the name of the Lord of hosts, the God of the armies of Israel, whom you have defied. 46 This day the Lord will deliver you into my hand, and I will strike you and take your head from you. And this day I will give the carcasses of the camp of the Philistines to the birds of the air and the wild beasts of the earth, that all the earth may know that there is a God in Israel. 47 Then everyone gathered here shall know that the Lord does not save with sword and spear, for the battle is the Lord’s, and He will give you into our hands.”

(2 Samuel 17:45-47)

And the rest of story we all know: David picked a smooth stone from the valley floor, put it in his sling, and buried it into Goliath’s forehead, killing him instantly. And before you go adhering to the theories that Goliath was just a man with gigantism, keep in mind that he was called a man who had been a “warrior from the days of his youth” (1 Samuel 17:33). When someone is inflicted with gigantism, the older they get, the more brittle their bones become, and the more unstable their musculature and ability to function, or even walk, normally. Goliath was a warrior, he was not a man inflicted with a physical ailment that gave him great size and debilitated him.

Goliath was the offspring remnant of the Nephilim, and he had four other brothers.

But what of the acts of the Watchers? Are they still happening today? Is mankind still being visited by the members of the Divine Council and those who left that domain thousands of years ago? And what of the Nephilim themselves?

chapter 10

Where Are They Now?

“2 Don’t forget to show hospitality to strangers, for some who have done this have entertained angels without realizing it.”

(Hebrews 13:2)

There is a pervasive question regarding the Nephilim as to whether or not they are still among us today. The answer would simply be *yes*, but obviously not in the same form as they interacted with humanity thousands of years ago. And though there may be a bloodline remnant of the Nephilim evident throughout history, it would be a safe bet to say that it no longer has anything to do with the original Watchers. Their influence died thousands of years ago. Unless there are more Watchers in the heavens who did not fall to the earth that day so long ago, there is little probably that their influence will ever be seen again.

But the same cannot be said for their offspring.

It is unknown whether the entire Divine Council of gods came to earth, touching down on the slopes of Mount Hermon. Nor is there any way to calculate the number of beings who may have descended and intermingled with humanity over the millenia. What we know for a certainty is that nearly every ancient culture experienced this brand of extra-terrestrial interruption on some level, bequeathing offspring that took the form of what we now deem as mythological or legendary beings—or, better, the heroes of old and men of renown. From the Tuatha de Danaan’s Elven deities, the statuesque, bright shining giants of the Celtic peoples, to the Sasquatch of

the Native Americans, there have been genetic footprints left in nearly every ancient culture throughout all of recorded history.

As we have already seen, there were remnants of the Nephilim found in various passages of the Old Testament. As early as the time of Abraham, the Nephilim are mentioned as having dwelled in the region around the Dead Sea, scattered among several tribes. The footnotes of the Jerusalem Bible suggest that Moses, in the Genesis 6 passage, intended his words on the Nephilim to be an “anecdote of a superhuman race.” According to the Jerusalem Bible’s commentary, Moses does not go into great detail, nor does he make any bones about representing the Nephilim as the offspring of superhuman beings, as it was already a known entity in his day. He merely references them in order to establish, in his account of Noah’s Flood, the severity of the “wickedness” that was present on the earth prior to the meting out of God’s judgment by flood.

In Christian evangelical circles, there are those who believe these Watchers came down to “pollute” the Messianic bloodline of Jesus Christ. By interfering with human DNA, the “pure,” necessary humanity of the Messiah could thus be thwarted before it ever came to be. Along with Ancient Alienists, Chuck Missler, an evangelical Christian, also believes that the Watchers were extra-terrestrials or grey aliens¹ who were, in actuality, fallen angels or demonic beings setting out to muddy the Messianic waters.

The history of the human race is synonymous with the history of a great spiritual conflict. When we view world politics today, many of us wonder why we can’t just all come to the table and settle disputes in a peaceful fashion. To some extent, it seems to me that the gods and every caste of spiritual being beneath them seem intent on not being able to do what seems so common sensed to humans. There was not a “war in Heaven”: there is an ongoing conflict that makes the stuff of earthly battles seem insignificant. And it has been taking place since before the dawn of time itself.

The Demonology Connection

It is interesting to note that so much of what we read in the biblical accounts of the first family and the subsequent books of the Law, revolve around sexuality and the encoded messages of adultery and sexual prohibition. Just pick up a Bible and read the first five books of the Old Testament, and you'll get the picture. The subtext is rife with pictures of God's relationship to man taking on the tone of a marriage, any deviation from which would be adulterous. And adultery, in accordance with Biblical Law, bore the punishment of death—but only for the woman, not the man. Is this a residual condemnation placed on the female because it was she who was tempted in the Garden of Eden, thereby bringing on the fall of mankind? Is it residual judgment of the women who introduced the world to the Nephilim by sleeping with the Watchers, allowing the world to be corrupted by their offspring?

Creation is sexual in nature—and if you don't believe that, you need to get out more. Whether it was simple lust, as the Genesis passage tells us, or the seeking of elemental power over creation, the heavenly beings were drawn to the sexuality of humans. Do not try to define away the word *lust* as something other than its true intent, which is sexual in its basic, most primal etymology. Could it also be that so much of what we read in the biblical accounts of early mankind—the serpent in the Garden, the Watchers, the overtly sexually discriminating, gender-biased Mosaic Law—are so sexually underwritten in their subtexts, that they were created for the sole purpose of enforcing patriarchal rule? And was that patriarchal rule contrived out of scapegoating the female gender for all of mankind's spiritual woes? Were the questionably misogynistic mandates laid out for the early Christian Church by the Apostle Paul simply there for the intent of controlling women in first-century patriarchal Judean society, or were they in adherence to what was—even then—the ancient notion that women needed to keep covered to prevent the temptation of angels and other spirit beings? It is clear that the Judeo-Christian scriptures contain a resounding undertone of sexual prohibition that can trace its foundations back to the role that women played in the downfall of man, and the corruption and

destruction of the world by the Nephilim. Clearly, it is the sexual promiscuity of women that brought on the greatest woes of the world, and clearly the under-code of sexual prohibition is there to remind them of their follies and keep them suppressed as punishment for their gender-driven acts. The Watchers were not the only ones placed under lock and key when God imposed judgment on the world.

Make no mistake: It was the early church fathers who first said that the angels and other spirit beings were “sexless.” This is a completely fabricated, extra-biblical notion. Scripture never states that angels and demons cannot engage in sex. The highly quoted passage in Matthew 22:30 has Jesus telling his followers that “angels do not marry.” He doesn’t, however, say they are incapable of sex, and the context of his words in this passage focus on the righteous angels, not the unrighteous demons. The entire contextual point of Christ’s argument is that *people* will not marry in heaven; He is not particularly discussing the sexual habits of the angels.

There is something more to all of this, something deeper. Some alien conspiracy theorists contend that the Church has been silent about UFOs and abductions, and about alien hybridization, fetus thefts, and the impregnation of women by these beings. Yet, all along, the Church has spoken out as loudly as any other voice in that it has a complete doctrine built around the infiltration and interference of the demonic on humanity—and it all stems from the very first impregnation of Eve in the Garden, by the character known as the “Serpent.” It was he who fathered Cain, the first of the Nephilim. This act was repeated throughout all of antediluvial humanity until God had had enough, and there was judgment.

According to Roman Catholic Church doctrine, “the fallen” have been attempting to breed the perfect hybrid offspring of spirit and human since the time of the resurgence of humanity onto the still damp floodplains of ancient Mesopotamia. In accordance with Roman Catholic systematic theology—and in the simplest of terms—God keeps demons on a pretty short leash. They can do nothing without his consent or allowance. The account of the descent of the Watchers is not to be misconstrued as demonic

attempts at breeding with human women. The Watchers, as we have seen, were not demonic, nor were they fallen angels. They were the minor gods of the Divine Council who “left their first estate” and descended to their charges, the humans, to interbreed with them, and the judgment imposed on them is hinted at in Psalm 82: “They were stripped of their immortality and died like mortal men.”

From Genetic Hybrid to Demon

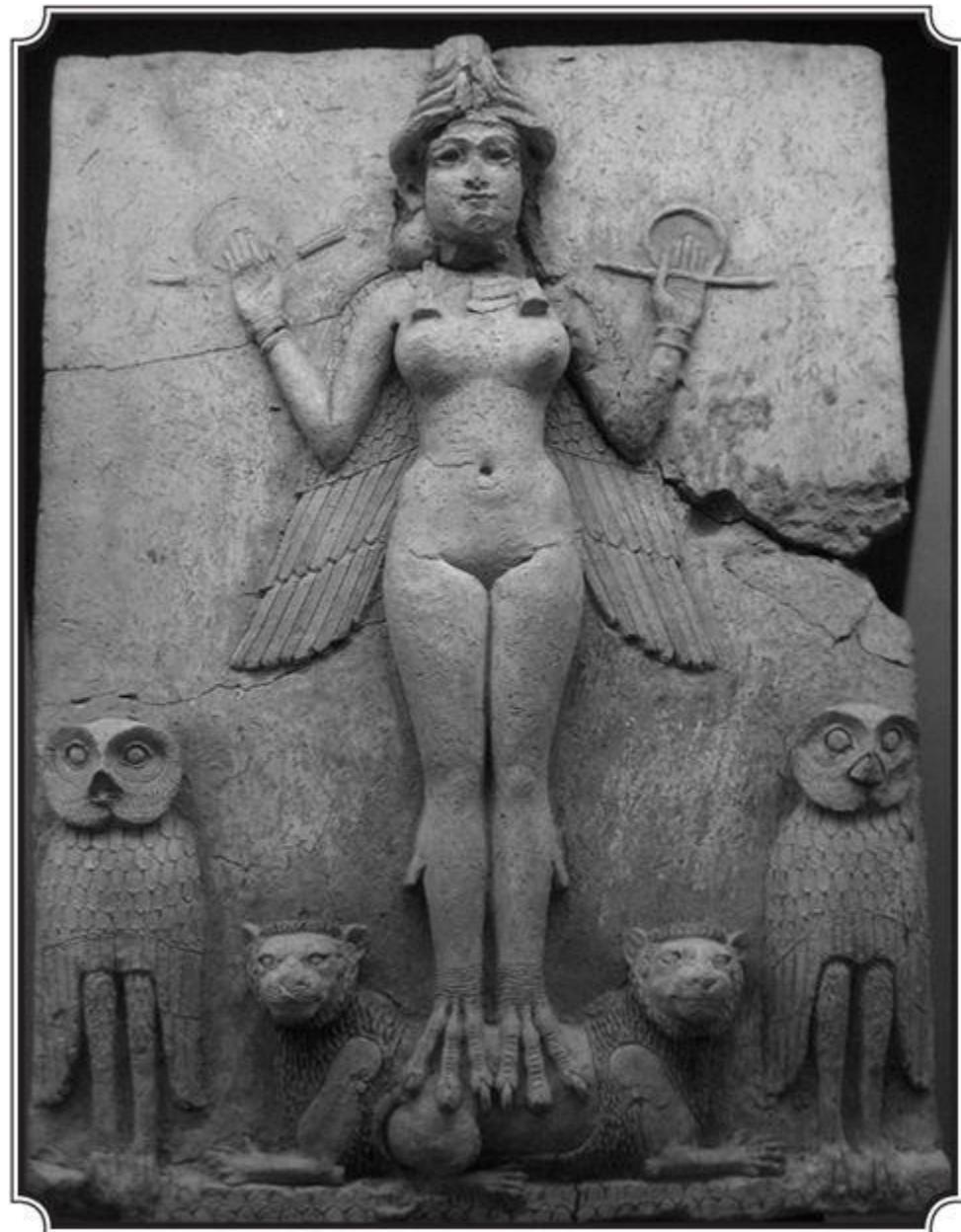
Although it is commonplace in Judeo-Christian circles to believe that demons are simply the angels who rebelled against God and were cast to the earth, the Book of Enoch gives us a very different alternative to that tradition:

“8 And now, the giants, who are produced from the spirits and flesh, shall be called evil spirits upon 9 the earth, and on the earth shall be their dwelling. Evil spirits have proceeded from their bodies; because they are born from men and from the holy Watchers is their beginning and primal origin; 10 they shall be evil spirits on earth, and evil spirits shall they be called. (As for the spirits of heaven, in heaven shall be their dwelling, but as for the spirits of the earth which were born upon the earth, on the earth shall be their dwelling.) 11 And the spirits of the giants afflict, oppress, destroy, attack, do battle, and work destruction on the earth, and cause trouble: they take no food, but nevertheless 12 hunger and thirst, and cause offences. And these spirits shall rise up against the children of men and against the women, because they have proceeded from them.”

(Enoch 15: 8-12)

The Enochian passage is implicit. It is the spirits of the Nephilim killed in the Great Flood that are the demonic forces dwelling on the earth today. It was here on the earth that they were born; it is here on the earth where they died. And because they were fathered by spirit beings, Enoch tells us

that they will forever dwell on the earth in the form of evil spirits. The “ghosts” of the Nephilim are the demonic host who have plagued humanity through the ages. The offspring of the Watchers and human women were disruptive, corrupt, and evil in nature, and that is why the Divine sent a great flood to wipe them out. Evidently, in spirit form they are no different.



The earliest known representation of Lilith, Sumerian, circa 1950 BCE. Famous relief from the Old Babylonian period (not in the British Museum) called the “Burney relief” or “Queen of the Night relief.” The depicted figure could be an aspect of Ishtar, Mesopotamian goddess of sexual love and war. However, her bird-like feet and accompanying owls have suggested to some a connection with Lilitu (called Lilith in the Bible), though seemingly not the usual demonic Lilitu.

Photo courtesy of the British Museum, London.

The spirits of the Nephilim are the great harassers of mankind. They are the true Fallen—those who came down, those who descended, those who fell. They troubled mankind to the point of watery judgment imposed by the supreme God, and they continue, in spirit form, to commit evil against humanity. The Watchers are not fallen angels, as we have established already in this book, but their offspring, whose mix of extra-terrestrial and human DNA made them unique on the earth, have become the spiritual hounds of hell who torment the living.

And they continue wreaking havoc on the earth and in the lives of humans—even today.

Sleeping With the Enemy

In *The Gilgamesh Epic*, the god-man Gilgamesh’s father is listed as Lilu,² and he is one of the earliest mentions of an incubus. The story hales from ancient Mesopotamia and is found in the Sumerian King List (2400 BCE), where it is said that Lilu seduced women in their sleep and had sex with them. At the same time, Lilitu³ (“Lilith”), a female demon, appeared to men in their erotic dreams. Both Lilu and Lilitu strove to fulfill their sexual desires and create offspring.

Regarding Lilith (Hebrew: לִילִית) herself, she is a character found in Jewish mythology, mentioned earliest in the Babylonian Talmud, documents compiled between the third and fourth centuries CE. In Jewish folklore, during the eighth to 10th centuries CE, Lilith became known as Adam's first wife, and this mythology developed into a widely accepted view among the Jews of the Middle Ages.⁴ As the legend became more refined and expanded, the 13th-century writings of Rabbi Isaac ben Jacob Alfasi ha-Cohen had Lilith leaving Adam, refusing to return to Eden after she refused to become subservient to him. She later mated with archangel Samael.⁵ The resulting Lilith legend is still found in modern Western culture, literature, occultism, fantasy, and even horror. And she has even become a cult favorite in the spiritist-feminist community.

It is said in some traditions that Lilith, taking the form of a male, was actually the serpent in the garden who seduced Eve, and then went on to seduce Adam with grave consequence:

“And the Serpent, the Woman of Harlotry, incited and seduced Eve through the husks of Light which in itself is holiness. And the Serpent seduced Holy Eve, and enough said for him who understands. And all this ruination came about because Adam the first man coupled with Eve while she was in her menstrual impurity—this is the filth and the impure seed of the Serpent who mounted Eve before Adam mounted her. Behold, here it is before you: because of the sins of Adam the first man all the things mentioned came into being. For Evil Lilith, when she saw the greatness of his corruption, became strong in her husks, and came to Adam against his will, and became hot from him and bore him many demons and spirits and Lilin.”⁶

It was the offspring of Lilith by Adam that was said, in this tradition, to have become the host of demons. This is really the birth of the modern understanding of the incubus and succubus, demonic beings who sleep with humans for the purpose of satiating some innate sexual drive, and for the purpose of creating spirit offspring.

In the Christian tradition, there existed a huge debate over the veracity of demonic influence—especially when it came to discussions over the incubi and succubi. St. Augustine, a Roman philosopher and theologian who lived in the late fourth and early fifth centuries, touched on this topic in his work, *The City of God*. Sounding much like alien abduction believers today, Augustine said that there were too many attacks by incubi to deny their existence: “There is, too, a very general rumor, which many have verified by their own experience, or which trustworthy persons who have heard the experience of others corroborate, that sylvans and fauns, who are commonly called incubi, had often made wicked assaults upon women.”⁷

Eight hundred years later, Thomas Aquinas, disputing the reproductive abilities of incubi, as they were—in his account—fallen angels, therefore incapable of sexual reproduction, wrote: “Still if some are occasionally begotten from demons, it is not from the seed of such demons, nor from their assumed bodies, but from the seed of men taken for the purpose; as when the demon assumes first the form of a woman, and afterwards of a man; just as they take the seed of other things for other generating purposes.”⁸

According to the *Malleus Maleficarum* (“Witches’ Hammer”), written by Heinrich Kramer in 1486, a succubus will have sex with a human male in order to collect semen from the men she seduces. She then gives it to the incubi or male demons, who then use the semen to impregnate human females, thus explaining how demons could apparently sire children despite the traditional belief that they were incapable of reproduction. Children so begotten were known as *cambions*, and were supposed to be those who were born deformed, or more susceptible to supernatural influences.⁹ The *Malleus Maleficarum* does not address the obvious issue: why a human female impregnated with the semen of a human male would not produce normal, healthy human offspring, even if the mode of delivery was demonic.

Of course, it is also widely believed that the *Malleus Maleficarum*, written during the period of the Inquisition's greatest power, is nothing more than a work of misongyny. It holds women as the main culprits of evil and perpetrators of witchcraft. The book also claims that women are much more susceptible to demonic influence as they are “weaker in faith than men,” and more apt to be carnal. The author also put forward the notion that most of the women accused as witches were guilty of “possessing strong personalities” and were known to defy convention by overstepping the lines of “proper female decorum.”¹⁰

Whether or not any of information on demonic activity as found within the pages of the *Malleus* bears any resemblance to the truth of the matter is very hard to decipher, especially when obfuscated by the persecution and the political maneuverings of those who were in control of the masses at the time of its writing. When one steps back, outside the box, it all starts to take on the tone of so much ridiculous surmising and story-telling, and works such as the *Malleus Maleficarum* do little to dispel the notion that so much of this is pure fiction.

Do the demonic spirits of the Nephilim have sex with humans to continue to propagate a species of mixed-blood spirit beings? It seems that even in death, the offspring of the Watchers continue to perpetrate their raging corruption of humanity. Of course, there is very little of this that can be proven by physical evidence, so it once again it is all governed by the tone of what you *choose to believe*. And it all sounds so fanciful and the stuffs of dark imaginings, it is no wonder the scientific community shuns the slightest notion.

The Paranormal

There is a great and grave fascination with demons among modern paranormal hobbyists. The surge of ghost hunting and paranormal investigation throughout the last decade, spurred on by the success of pop

cultural, live-action paranormal television, has fostered a rise in interest in demons and demonology, the study of evil spirits and their influence on people. However, with the rise of pop cultural influence also comes the rise in pop cultural application, and the vast majority of so-called demonologists operating today have little knowledge of what it is they claim to be, and little ability to enact on the behalf of those tormented by demonic spirits. Having an interest in the demonic is not the same as having experience with helping people who are in bondage to these beings.

Are the ghosts encountered during highly popularized paranormal investigations in any way linked to the spirits of the Nephilim? The short answer is *yes*. Something I have always said when investigating claims of ghosts and encountering the spirit world is that you never know who you are talking to, *really*. Without making a case for the existence of “human” ghosts, suffice it to say that it is more often than not that a demon will deceive you into believing it is the ghost of a dead human, rather than an actual encounter with those who have passed on, and are still roaming the hallways and attics of old houses and abandoned insane asylums.

The evil spirits encountered in demonological settings are the spirits of the Nephilim, who died in the Great Flood.

Are the Nephilim among us today? Most certainly—in both physical remnants that have bred into the bloodlines of the human race, and the ghostly presence and influence of the Nephilim demons.

Conclusion

As you have been able to see by now, the story of the Nephilim is not a simple one. Recounting the actual biblical tale, including the various accounts from other ancient books, could comprise a page or two in a book such as this. But attempting to dig a little deeper to gain a richer knowledge of what's behind the story, along with its historical and future ramifications, is what transforms it into a much bigger account. The descent of the Watchers to humanity is no small, isolated myth; it has far-reaching tendrils that dip into the subterranean flow of every culture and even life itself on this planet. Of course, there is a modicum of *faith* required to make the connections, just as there is with leaping the great chasms that lie between the mileposts on the evolutionary chain established by science. And as with the scientific research of the ascendancy of mankind, there are no quantitative facts that link it all together, simply stepping stones from one discovery to the next. As I said at the very beginning of this book, we have a pile of stones here, but that pile does not make a house until it is all mortared together—and sometimes that mortar is mixed pretty thinly in order to make exponential leaps to fill in the missing data. There is so much to surmise and such significant amounts of subjective extrapolation, that the true story in all its details may never be known to modern humanity. But the fact that something indeed happened many thousands of years ago is incontrovertible.

Whether you are a believer in the religious writings of the bible and its apocryphal companions, or whether you are in strict adherence to the scientific code that allows for nothing to exist beyond what is provable in the here and now, humanity bears the marks and scars of interference on both a historic scope as well as in our bloodlines. That is where we find ourselves flipping the intellectual coin of subjectivity into the air, wondering if the answer is as simple as “heads it is so, tails it is not.”

I have already begun to garner criticism on my religious views as expressed in this book, and I am sure there is much more to come as these ideas of mine, as mixed into the examination of these unearthly beings, makes their appointed rounds to the minds of those who crack the covers of this book. I am sure to be taken to task for some of my translations of the ancient texts, as there are so many good scholars who have done the groundwork beneath my feet, and from whom I have gleaned bits and pieces of information. Though not intending to make any enemies in the Jewish and Christian camps, I am sure to have offended some sensibilities when addressing the religious tone of these topics, and I know I will draw some concern for the safety of my immortal soul from those who will see my words as damning Christianity and thumbing my nose at the monotheistic God of the Bible. But those actions on my part would be the farthest thing from the truth. I am simply asking questions and seeking answers.

Have I undergone some transformative thinking during the process of researching and writing this book? Most certainly. And although I have an overwhelmingly satisfactory grasp on what I believe about the Watchers and the Nephilim, there have been great tolls taken on my faith and even greater questions burning in my brain. Perhaps one might think that my faith must not have been very strong to begin with, if a little historical buffeting could shake it up a bit, but I would differ with that assessment, for my faith was very strong during my early years and my subsequent Bible College and seminary training. But the older I get, and the further away I travel from those days of innocence, the more difficult it becomes to trust in a God who resembles so many other mythological characters—many of whom preceded him in the historical record.

So what I want to leave you with as a result of reading this book is a better understanding of who the Nephilim are—where they came from and why they are important to understanding the great ebbing and flowing undercurrent of humanity. I want you to have gleaned an understanding that, although stories maybe stories, there is usually a kernel of truth at their

core that is a much bigger story than what you could have ever imagined. To me, my study of the story of the Nephilim has emerged as an eye-opening encounter with beings who are living and breathing around us every day of our lives. Their activities have great bearing on the whole of humanity and the course of world events. They once were so influential that they brought about the end of the world. The big question is whether or not they are having that same influence yet again.

It is up to you to determine what you want to believe about these beings. Were they the descendants of the minor gods of heaven? Were they the offspring of alien encounters with humanity? Either path bears little proof beyond the obvious earmarks of interruption. Determining just who and what did the interrupting is at the core of the big questions of life. If nothing else, I hope this book provided you with information, and, in the grandest of hopes, opened the doors to deeper consideration and the asking of even greater questions.

It is my belief that there exist out there beings much greater than ourselves—perhaps not greater in reason and compassion, but greater in the sense that they hold a power that was strong enough to create us, and then strong enough to manipulate our genetics and bloodlines. It is my belief that there is a great, universal spirituality that resembles nothing like that which we have been taught or have conceived in our wildest fictions.

The Nephilim rose to dominance on the earth as the children of a mixed race of superior beings and human women. They, as all things do, degraded and became corrupt, but their decay and decadence were on as grandiose a scheme as their unnatural origins. They wreaked havoc and tragedy and catastrophic corruption among humankind. Then they fell in the great judgment imposed by the king of all that exists, only to return in the form of pure evil.

If this all sounds like the stuffs of myth, you would be correct in your assessment, for all myth begins to merge at the edges, blending into a

massive blurred picture of the great cosmic narrative, underpinning the foundation and origin of the universe. The saddest part of all is that myth is not testable. It is not logical, and it rarely makes sense in light of scientific methodology.

The Nephilim came, conquered, decayed, and fell, and they are still with us to this very day.

The big question is in asking yourself what you can and cannot believe. And the greatest responsibility we all have is squaring the circle.

Epilogue

“8 ‘For enquire, I pray thee, of the former age, and prepare thyself to the search of their fathers: 9 For we are but of yesterday, and know nothing, because our days upon the earth are a shadow.’”

(Job 8:8-9)

Notes

Chapter 1

1. Owen Lovejoy, “The Origin of Man,” *Science*, Vol. 211, no. 4480, January 1981, pp. 341-50.
2. Richard Dawkins is an evolutionary biologist and the former Charles Simonyi Professor of the Public Understanding of Science at Oxford University. He is the author of several of modern science’s essential texts, including *The Selfish Gene* (1976) and *The God Delusion* (2006). Born in Nairobi, Kenya, Dawkins eventually graduated with a degree in zoology from Balliol College, Oxford, and then earned a masters degree and doctorate from Oxford University. He is the founder of the Richard Dawkins Foundation for Reason and Science.
3. James Randi, BigThink.com interview, 2010.
bigthink.com/jamesrandi.
4. Sagan, *The Demon Haunted World*.
5. Dictionary.com (www.dictionary.com) and Webster’s.
6. David Gelernter, BigThink.com interview, 2010.
bigthink.com/davidgelernter.

7. Cited in Rev. Jonathan Weyer, “Critical thought and the Paranormal: Not an Oxymoron,” *TAPS ParaMagazine*, Volume 7, No. 1, 2011.
8. Michael Shemer, *Why People Believe Weird Things* (Henry Holt and Co., 1997, 2002).
9. Cited in *Skeptic*, Volume 4, No. 4, 1996.
10. Carl Sagan, *The Demon Haunted World* (Random House, 1996).

Chapter 2

1. Wilhelm Gesenius, *Gesenius' Hebrew Grammar*, 2nd English ed., Rev. in accordance with the 28th German ed. (1909) by A.E. Cowley. Edited and enlarged by E. Kautzsch. P. 399.
2. Ibid.
3. William F. Albright, *Yahweh and the Gods of Canaan* (1968).

Chapter 3

1. Polybius, *The Histories*, Introduction p. xiv. Loeb ed., Col. H.J. Edwards, C.B., W.R. Paton trans., Bk.16.14.
2. Raphael Patai, and Merlin Stone, *The Hebrew Goddess* (Wayne State University Press, 1990), p. 139.

3. Fielder, David. *Jesus Christ, Sun of God: Ancient Cosmology and Early Christian Symbolism* (Quest Books, 1993), p. 128.
4. G.A. Wainwright, “The Origin of Amūn,” *The Journal of Egyptian Archaeology*, Vol. 49, December 1963, pp. 21-23.
5. Pyramid Texts, § 446, transl. R.O. Faulkner.
6. Coffin Texts, spell 223, transl. R.O. Faulkner.
7. F.L. Cross, ed. *The Oxford Dictionary of the Christian Church* (New York: Oxford University Press, 2005).
8. Irenaeus, *Against Heresies: Book I, Chapter XVIII*. Passages from Moses, which the heretics pervert to the support of their hypothesis.
9. Ibid.

Chapter 4

1. George Smith, *The Chaldean Account of Genesis* (1876).
2. According to Wikipedia (en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sin-liqe-unninni), Sîn-lēqi-unninni was an incantation/exorcist priest (mashmashshu) who lived in Mesopotamia in the period between 1300 BC and 1000 BC. He is the compiler of the best preserved version of the Epic of Gilgamesh. His name is listed in the text itself, which is unusual for works written in cuneiform. His version is known by its incipit, or first line, “He who saw the deep” or “The one who saw the Abyss.” It is unknown how different his version is from the earlier texts. The only time when Sin-lēqi-unninni narrates the story in first person is in the prologue. His version includes Utnapishtim’s story of the

Flood in Tablet XI and in Tablet XII the Sumerian Gilgamesh, Enkidu and the Netherworld. Sîn-lēqi-unninni's name means "Sin (the Moon God) is one who accepts my prayer." It is also sometimes transcribed, albeit less probably, as "Sîn-liqe-unninni," meaning "O Sin! Accept my prayer."

3. A.R. George, *The Babylonian Gilgamesh Epic*, Introduction, critical edition and cuneiform, p. 27.
4. Jeffrey H. Tigay, *The Evolution of the Gilgamesh Epic* (Philadelphia, Penna.: University of Pennsylvania Press, 1982).
5. Theodor H. Gaster, *Myth, Legend, and Custom in the Old Testament* (New York: Harper & Row, 1969).
6. Barbara C. Sproul, *Primal Myths* (New York: HarperCollins, 1979).
7. Ovid, *The Metamorphoses*, Horace Gregory, transl. (New York: Viking Press, 1958).
8. Snorri Sturluson, *The Prose Edda*, Jean I. Young, transl. (Berkeley, Calif.: University of California Press, 1954).
9. Hugh Miller, *The Testimony of the Rocks. Or, Geology in Its Bearings on the Two Theologies, Natural and Revealed* (Boston, Mass.: Gould and Lincoln, 1857).

Chapter 5

1. Scott Noegel, and Brannon M. Wheeler. *Historical Dictionary of Prophets in Islam and Judaism*. (Lanham, MD.: Scarecrow Press, 2003).

2. A. Kuhrt, “Berossus’s Babyloniaca and Seleucid Rule in Babylonia,” in A. Kuhrt and S. Sherwin-White, eds. *Hellenism in the East* (Berkeley, Calif.: University of California Press, 1987), pg. 55f.
3. “An Introduction to the Grail Research & Esoteric Writings of Boyd Rice,” www.thevesselofgod.com.
4. Boyd Rice, www.thevesselofgod.com.
5. Interview with Bill Birnes.
6. Chuck Missler, *Alien Encounters: The Secret Behind the UFO Phenomenon* (Koinonia House, 2003).
7. Tim Lahaye, *Charting the End Times* (Harvest House Publishers, 2001), pg. 32-33.
8. *Life in the Universe: Essays by Carl Sagan*, unabridged edition (University Press Audiobooks, 1998).
9. Richard Vizzutti, “The Return of the Stargods,” author’s Website, www.stargods.org, 2003.
10. Will Offley, “David Icke and the Politics of Madness: Where the New Age meets the Third Reich,” article for the political Research Associates, 2000.
11. David Icke’s Website, www.davidicke.com.

12. Flavius Josephus, *The Jewish Wars*, 75 A.D., 2.9.2-4. This passage from Josephus can also be cross-referenced with the New Testament passage of Luke 13:1-3.

13. Philo, *On The Embassy of Gauis Book XXXVIII* 299-305.

14. From Walter A. Elwell's *Baker's Evangelical Dictionary of Biblical Theology*.

15. Joe Soucheray, KSTP AM1500 talk radio host.

16. Josef F. Blumrich, *The Spaceships of Ezekiel* (Bantam Books, 1974).

Chapter 6

1. “Sinners in the Hands of an Angry God” is a sermon written by American theologian Jonathan Edwards, preached on July 8, 1741, in Enfield, Connecticut. Like Edwards’s other sermons and writings, it combines vivid imagery of the Christian concept of Hell with observations of the secular world and citations of scripture. It remains Edwards’s most famous written work, and is widely studied both among American Christians and historians, due to the glimpse it provides into the theology of the Great Awakening of c. 1730-1755.

2. “Were the Nephilim Extraterrestrials,” Christian Answers Website, www.christiananswers.net/q-aig/aig-c036.html.

3. John A. Keel, *UFOs: Operation Trojan Horse* (Illuminet Press, 1996).

4. Dr. Pierre Guerin, “Thirty Years After Kenneth Arnold,” *Flying Saucer Review*, Vol. 25, No. 1, January/February 1979, pp. 13-14.
5. G.H. Pember, *Earth’s Earliest Ages and Their Connection with Modern Spiritualism and Theosophy* (1876).
6. John Heise, “Akkadian Cuneiform, Chapter II, Mosepotamia.” Netherlands Institute for Space Research website. www.sron.nl/~jheise/akkadian/Welcome_mesopotamia.html, 1996.
7. R.A. Boulay, *Flying Serpents and Dragons: The Story of Mankind’s Reptilian Past* (The Book Tree, 1999), p. 80.
8. Boulay, *Flying Serpents and Dragons*, chapter on the Ruling Gods of the Sumerian Pantheon, 1990, www.bibliotecapleyades.net/serpents_dragons/boulay01e.htm.
9. Craig Hines, *Gateway of the Gods* (Numina Media Arts, 2007), p. 74.
10. Ronald S. Hendel, “When the Sons of God Cavorted With the Daughters of Men,” *Understanding the Dead Sea Scrolls*, Hershel Shanks, ed. (Vintage Books, 1993), p. 172.
11. Washington Irving, *The Life and Voyages of Christopher Columbus* (New York: Collins, 1838).

Chapter 7

1. Averil Cameron and Stuart G. Hall. *Life of Constantine* (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1999).
2. Edward Gibbon, “Gibbon’s ‘Age of Constantine’ and the Fall of Rome”, 1969, pp. 71-96.
3. Richards, Jeffrey, *The Popes and the Papacy in the Early Middle Ages* (London: Routledge & Kegan Paul, 1979).
4. Timothy Freke and Peter Gandy, *The Jesus Mysteries: Was the “Original Jesus” a Pagan God?* (Three Rivers Press, 2001).
5. Egbert Richter-Ushanas, *The Induand the Rg-Veda, 2nd edition* (India: Motilal Banarsidass, 2001), p. 16.

Chapter 8

1. As found in the Apocrypha and Pseudepigrapha of the Old Testament.
2. Noah Kramer, Samuel Maier, and John Maier, *Myths of Enki, the Crafty God* (New York and Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1989).
3. Carroll, Robert T (1994-2009). *The Skeptic's Dictionary: Zecharia Sitchin and The Earth Chronicles* (John Wiley & Sons), www.skepdic.com/sitchin.html.
4. Corey Kilgannon, “Origin of the Species, From an Alien View,” *New York Times*, January 8, 2010, www.nytimes.com/2010/01/10/nyregion/10alone.html. Retrieved October 29, 2010: “Mr. Sitchin has been called silly before—by scientists, historians and archaeologists who dismiss his hypotheses

as pseudoscience and fault their underpinnings—his translations of ancient texts and his understanding of physics.”

5. Michael S. Heiser, PhD, Hebrew and Semitic Studies, University of Wisconsin-Madison, www.sitchiniswrong.com/letter/letter.htm.
6. I. Mueller, L.S. Grinstein, and P.J. Campbell, *Women of Mathematics: A Biobibliographic Sourcebook* (New York: Greenwood Press, 1987).
7. Kathleen Wider, *Women Philosophers in the Ancient Greek World: Donning the Mantle* (Indiana University Press, 1986), pp. 49-50.
8. *A Study of History Volume XII Reconsiderations* (London: Oxford University Press, 1961). Also read more at phoenicia.org/ugarbibl.html#ixzz1VJiwUi6m.
9. Michael S. Heiser, *Dictionary of the Old Testament: Wisdom, Poetry, & Writings*, Tremper Longman and Peter Enns, eds. (InterVarsity Press, 2008).
10. Michael S. Heiser, The Divine Council Website, www.thedivinecouncil.com, 2010.
11. Craig Hines, *Gateway of the Gods* (Numina Media Arts, 2007), p. 62ff.
12. Derek Kinder Tyndale, “Genesis” in *Old Testament Commentaries* (IVP Academic, March 13, 2008).

13. An Aramaic text reads “Watchers” here (J.T. Milik, *Aramaic Fragments of Qumran Cave 4* [Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1976], p. 167).
14. Upon Ardis. Or, “in the days of Jared” (R.H. Charles, ed. and trans., *The Book of Enoch* [Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1893], p. 63).
15. Mt. Armon, or Mt. Hermon, derives its name from the Hebrew word *herem*, a curse (Charles, p. 63).
16. Hines, *Gateway of the Gods*.
17. Brown, Driver, Briggs, and Gesenius. “Hebrew Lexicon entry for Tamiym.” “The Old Testament Hebrew Lexicon.” www.searchgodsword.org/lex/heb/view.cgi?number=8549.
18. *Companion Bible* (Oxford University Press), Appendix 26.
19. Flavius Josephus, *The Antiquities of the Jews* (first century).
20. Kelley Coblenz Bautch, *A Study of the Geography of 1 Enoch 17-19: “No One Has Seen what I Have Seen,”* (Brill Academic Publishers, 2003), p. 134.
21. Henry M. Morris, *The Genesis Record* (Grand Rapids, Mich.: Baker Books, 1976), p. 174.
22. Issac E. Mozeson, *The Word: The Dictionary That Reveals the Hebrew Source of English* (New York: SPI Books, 1989, 1995, 2000), p. 117.

23. Larry Pierce and Marian Pierce, *The Annals of the World* (Master Books, 2003), pp. 52-53.
24. Philo, “Concerning the Giants, Commentary on Genesis 6” in *On the Giants* II: 6-9 (20-30 CE).

Chapter 10

1. Chuck Missler, *Alien Encounters: The Secret Behind the UFO Phenomenon*, Revised Edition (Koinonia House, 2003).
2. Raphael Patai, *The Hebrew Goddess*, 3rd enlarged edition (New York: Discus Books, 1978).
3. Siegmund Hurwitz, *Lilith: The First Eve*, Third Edition (Daimon Verlag, 2003).
4. Howard Schwartz, *Tree of Souls: The Mythology of Judaism* (Oxford University Press, 2007), p. 218.
5. Kristen E. Kvam, Linda S. Scheuring, and Valarie H. Ziegler, *Eve and Adam: Jewish, Christian, and Muslim Readings on Genesis and Gender* (Indiana University Press, 1999), pp. 220-221.
6. Patai, *The Hebrew Goddess*, 81:455f.
7. Augustine, *The City of God*, 15.23.
8. Thomas Aquinas, *Summa Theologica*.

9. Heinrich Kramer and James Sprenger, Montague Summers, translator (1928), *The Malleus Maleficarum, Part 2, Chapter VIII*, “Certain Remedies Prescribed Against Those Dark and Horrid Harms with Which Devils May Afflict Men,” at sacred-texts.com.
10. Michael D. Bailey, *Battling Demons: Witchcraft, Heresy, and Reform in the Late Middle Ages* (Pennsylvania State University Press, 2003), p. 51.

Bibliography

- Albright, William F. *Yahweh and the Gods of Canaan: An Historical Analysis of Two Contrasting Faiths*. Winona Lake, Ind.: Eisenbrauns, 1968.
- Augustine. *The City of God*. 410.
- Bailey, Michael D. *Battling Demons: Witchcraft, Heresy, and Reform in the Late Middle Ages*. State College, Penn.: Pennsylvania State University Press, 2003.
- Blumrich, Josef F. *The Spaceships of Ezekiel*. New York: Bantam Books, 1974.
- Boulay, R.A. *Flying Serpents and Dragons: The Story of Mankind's Reptilian Past*. San Diego, Calif.: The Book Tree, 1999.
- Cameron, Averil, and Stuart G. Hall. *Life of Constantine*. Oxford, UK: Clarendon Press, 1999.
- Carroll, Robert T. "Zecharia Sitchin and The Earth Chronicles." The Skeptic's Dictionary Website. www.skepdic.com/sitchin.html, 2009.
- Coblentz-Bautch, Kelley. *A Study of the Geography of 1 Enoch 1719: No One Has Seen What I Have Seen*. Boston, Mass.: Brill Academic Publishers, 2003.
- Cross, F.L. *The Oxford Dictionary of the Christian Church*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2005.
- Dawkins, Richard. *The God Delusion*. Orlando, Fla.: Houghton Mifflin Harcourt, 2006.
- Edwards, H.J. *Polybius, The Histories, two volumes*. Boston, Mass.: Harvard University Press, 1922. Volume 1, Introduction.

- Elwell, Walter A. *Evangelical Dictionary of Theology*. Grand Rapids, Mich.: Baker Academic, 2001.
- Faulkner, R.O. *The Ancient Egyptian Coffin Texts*. London: Aris & Phillips, 2004.
- . *The Ancient Egyptian Pyramid Texts*. Lawrence, Kans.: DigiReads.com Publishing, 2007.
- Fideler, David. *Jesus Christ, Sun of God: Ancient Cosmology and Early Christian Symbolism*. Adyar, India: Quest Books, 1993.
- Freke, Timothy, and Peter Gandy. *The Jesus Mysteries: Was the ‘Original Jesus’ a Pagan God?* New York: Three Rivers Press, 2001.
- Gaster, Theodor H. *Myth, Legend, and Custom in the Old Testament*. New York: Harper & Row, 1969.
- George, A.R. *The Babylonian Gilgamesh Epic: Introduction, Critical Edition and Cuneiform Texts*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2003.
- Gesenius, Wilhelm. *Gesenius’ Hebrew Grammar*, 2nd English ed. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press, 1922.
- Gibbon, Edward. *Gibbon’s Age of Constantine and the Fall of Rome*. Middletown, Conn.: Blackwell Publishing for Wesleyan University, 1969.
- Heise, John. “Akkadian Cuneiform.” www.sron.nl/~jheise/akkadian/Welcome_mesopotamia.html. 1996.
- Heiser, Michael S. *Dictionary of the Old Testament: Wisdom, Poetry, & Writings*. Ed. Tremper Longman and Peter Enns. Westmont, Ill.: InterVarsity Press, 2008.
- . Hebrew and Semitic Studies. Madison, Wisc.: University of Wisconsin-Madison. www.sitchiniswrong.com/letter/letter.htm.
- Hendel, Ronald S. *When the Sons of God Cavorted With the Daughters of Men, Understanding the Dead Sea Scrolls*. Ed. Hershel Shanks. New York: Vintage Books, 1993.

- Hines, Craig. *Gateway of the Gods*. Pittsburgh, Penn.: Numina Media Arts, 2007.
- Hurwitz, Siegmund. *Lilith: The First Eve, Historical and Psychological Aspects of the Dark Feminine*. Einsiedeln, Switzerland: Daimon Verlag, 1992.
- Irenaeus. *Against Heresies: Book I*. Kila, Mont.: Kessinger Publishing, 2004.
- Irving, Washington. *The Life and Voyages of Christopher Columbus*. New York: Collins, 1838.
- Josephus. *The Antiquities of the Jews, Jewish Wars*.
- Keel, John A. *UFOs: Operation Trojan Horse*. Atlanta, Ga.: Iluminet Press, 1996.
- Kilgannon, Corey. *Origin of the Species, From an Alien View*. New York: The New York Times Company, 1989.
- Kramer, Noah, Samuel Maier, and John Maier. *Myths of Enki, the Crafty God*. New York and Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1989.
- Kramer, Heinrich, and James Sprenger. *The Malleus Maleficarum, Part 2, Chapter VIII*. 1486.
- Kuhrt, A. *Berossus's Babyloniaca and Seleucid Rule in Babylonia*. Berkeley, Calif.: University of California Press, 1987.
- Kvam, Kristen E., Linda S. Scheuring, and Valarie H. Ziegler. *Eve and Adam: Jewish, Christian, and Muslim Readings on Genesis and Gender*. Bloomington, Ind.: Indiana University Press, 1999.
- Lahaye, Tim. *Charting the End Times*. Eugene, Oreg. and Irvine, Calif.: Harvest House Publishers, 2002.
- Lovejoy, Owen. "The Origin of Man," *Science*, Vol. 211, no. 4480, January 1981.
- Miller, Hugh. *The Testimony of the Rocks. Or, Geology in Its Bearings on the Two Theologies, Natural and Revealed*. Boston, Mass.: Gould and Lincoln, 1857.

- Missler, Chuck. *Alien Encounters: The Secret Behind the UFO Phenomenon*. Coeur d'Alene, Idaho: Koinonia House, 2003.
- Morris, Henry M. *The Genesis Record*. Grand Rapids, Mich.: Baker Books, 1976.
- Mozeson, Issac E. *The Word: The Dictionary That Reveals the Hebrew Source of English*, New York: SPI Books, 1989.
- Mueller, I., L.S. Grinstein, and P.J. Campbell. *Women of Mathematics: A Biobibliographic Sourcebook*. New York: Greenwood Press, 1987.
- Offley, Will. "David Icke and the Politics of Madness: Where the New Age Meets the Third Reich." Article for Political Research Associates, 2000.
- "The Old Testament Hebrew Lexicon." Heartlight's Search God's Word Website. www.searchgodsword.org/lex/heb/view.cgi?number=8549.
- Ovid. *The Metamorphoses*. Trans. Horace Gregory. New York: Viking Press, 1958.
- Patai, Raphael. *The Hebrew Goddess*. Detroit, Mich.: Wayne State University Press, 1967.
- Pember, G.H. *Earth's Earliest Ages and Their Connection with Modern Spiritualism and Theosophy*. London: Hodder and Stoughton, 1876.
- Philo. *On The Embassy of Gauis*, Book XXXVIII.
- Pierce, Larry, and Marian Pierce. *The Annals of the World*. Green Forest, Ark.: Master Books, 2003.
- Rice, Boyd. *An Introduction To The Grail Research & Esoteric Writings of Boyd Rice*. Los Angeles, Calif.: Discriminate Media, 2006. www.thevesselofgod.com.
- Richards, Jeffrey. *The Popes and the Papacy in the Early Middle Ages*. London: Routledge & Kegan Paul, 1979.

- Richter-Ushanas, Egbert. *The Indus Script and the Rig-Veda*, 2nd Edition. India: Motilal BanarsiDass, 2001.
- Sagan, Carl. *The Demon Haunted World*. New York: Random House, 1996.
- Schwartz, Howard. *Tree of Souls: The Mythology of Judaism*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2007.
- Shermer, Michael. *Why People Believe Weird Things*. New York: Henry Holt & Company, 2002.
- Smith, George. *The Chaldean Account of Genesis*. New York: Scribner Armstrong, 1876.
- Sproul, Barbara C. *Primal Myths*. New York: HarperCollins Publishers, 1979.
- Sturluson, Snorri. *The Prose Edda*. Berkeley, Calif.: University of California Press, 1954.
- Tigay, Jeffrey H. *The Evolution of the Gilgamesh Epic*. Philadelphia, Penn.: University of Pennsylvania Press, 1982.
- Vizzutti, Richard. "The Awakening Has Begun." www.stargods.org. 1999.
- Wainwright, G.A. "The Origin of Amūn." *The Journal of Egyptian Archaeology*, Vol. 49, December 1963.
- Weyer, Jonathan. "Critical Thought and the Paranormal: Not an Oxymoron." *TAPS ParaMagazine*, Volume 7, No. 1, 2011.
- Wheeler, Brannon M., and Scott B. Noegel. *History of Prophets in Islam and Judaism*. Lanham, Md.: Scarecrow Press, 2003.
- Wider, Kathleen. *Women Philosophers in the Ancient Greek World: Donning the Mantle, by Hapatia*. Bloomington, Ind.: Indiana University Press, 1986.

Index

- Abel, [100](#), [108](#), [193](#), [195](#), [196](#)
Acts of the Apostles, [128](#)
Adam, [93](#), [100](#), [107](#), [108](#), [114](#), [155](#), [185](#), [196](#), [224](#)
Akkadians, [134](#)-136
Akki, [59](#)
Alexander the Great, [89](#)
alien influence and religious mythology, [98](#)-99
Amos, [86](#)-87
Anak, [43](#)
Ancient Alien, [168](#), [169](#)
Ancient Alienists, [48](#), [133](#)
Annunaki, [134](#)-138, [168](#)
Aquinas, Thomas, [225](#)
Ark of the Covenant, [56](#)
Aztecs, [100](#)
Ba'al, [171](#), [175](#)-178
Babylon, [87](#), [88](#), [89](#), [100](#), [128](#), [157](#), [171](#), [223](#)
Babylonian tablets, [75](#)
Bacon, Francis, [81](#)
barque shrines, [55](#), [56](#)
Bergelmir, [79](#)

Book of Amos, [86](#)-87
Book of Daniel, [81](#), [82](#)
Book of Deuteronomy, [44](#), [200](#), [210](#)
Book of Enoch, [30](#), [37](#), [41](#), [73](#), [76](#), [81](#), [83](#), [84](#), [86](#), [89](#), [90](#), [91](#), [92](#), [97](#),
[88](#), [107](#), [117](#), [133](#), [138](#), [141](#), [152](#)-153, [155](#)-158, [189](#), [190](#), [191](#),
[221](#),
Book of Exodus, [43](#), [44](#), [45](#), [47](#), [49](#), [50](#), [55](#), [56](#), [57](#), [58](#), [112](#), [143](#), [172](#),
[173](#), [182](#), [193](#)
Book of Ezekiel, [125](#)-127
Book of Genesis, [16](#), [30](#), [31](#), [34](#), [35](#), [36](#), [44](#), [54](#), [65](#), [69](#), [71](#), [75](#), [76](#), [96](#),
[102](#), [103](#), [105](#), [106](#), [109](#), [115](#), [116](#), [188](#), [119](#), [122](#), [133](#), [138](#), [157](#),
[164](#), [168](#), [180](#), [189](#), [191](#), [192](#), [195](#), [199](#), [202](#), [204](#), [209](#), [210](#)
Book of Hebrews, [63](#), [121](#), [124](#), [217](#)
Book of Isaiah, [87](#), [88](#), [109](#), [201](#)
Book of Jeremiah, [116](#)
Book of Job, [123](#), [175](#), [182](#)-184, [233](#)
Book of Jubilees, [158](#)-159, [165](#), [188](#)
Book of Jude, [155](#), [157](#), [191](#)
Book of Kings, [56](#), [172](#)
Book of Leviticus, [44](#), [193](#)
Book of Numbers, [43](#), [44](#), [111](#), [198](#), [199](#), [200](#)
Book of Revelation, [124](#)
Book of Samuel, [201](#), [202](#), [211](#)-214
Book of Timothy, [130](#)
books of Law, [44](#), [73](#), [219](#)
books removed from the Bible, [155](#)
Cain, [93](#), [100](#), [108](#), [193](#), [195](#)
Cairo, [51](#)

Cana'an, [44](#), [53](#), [73](#), [171](#), [173](#), [179](#), [192](#), [199](#)
Celtic flood story, [78](#)
Chaldean flood story, [79](#)
Church of Skeptic, [22](#)-25
Coffin Texts, [68](#)
Columbus, and UFOs, [142](#)
Columbus, Christopher, [142](#)
Corinthians, [123](#)
Council of Nicea, [153](#), [156](#)
Daniel, [81](#), [82](#)
Dathan, [147](#)-148
David and Goliath, [210](#)-215
David, [56](#), [200](#)
Dead Sea, [199](#), [218](#)
Dead Sea Scrolls, [81](#), [157](#), [187](#)
demonic interbreeding, [117](#)-118
Deuteronomy, [200](#), [210](#)
divine judgment, [118](#)-120
Dogon Nommos, [100](#)-102 Dueteronomy, [44](#)
Eden, [102](#), [104](#), [107](#), [108](#), [114](#)
Egypt, [18th](#) Dynasty of, [45](#), [51](#), [61](#), [65](#), [73](#)
Egypt, [44](#), [47](#), [50](#), [51](#), [52](#), [54](#), [55](#), [69](#), [96](#), [201](#)
Egypt, and the plagues, [145](#)-147
Elder Gods of Earth, [116](#)
Elijah, [141](#), [175](#), [178](#)

Elohim, [30](#)-[36](#), [38](#), [41](#), [51](#), [84](#), [113](#), [157](#), [171](#), [179](#), [180](#), [181](#), [182](#), [184](#)-[185](#), [196](#), [197](#), [202](#), [203](#),

Enoch, [73](#), [76](#), [81](#), [83](#), [84](#), [86](#), [88](#), [89](#), [90](#), [91](#), [92](#), [97](#), [107](#), [117](#), [133](#), [138](#), [141](#), [152](#)-[153](#), [155](#)-[158](#), [189](#), [190](#), [191](#), [221](#)

Epic of Gilgamesh, [75](#), [223](#)

Euphrates River, [59](#), [102](#), [103](#), [186](#)

Eve, [93](#), [100](#), [105](#), [107](#), [108](#), [114](#), [168](#), [195](#), [196](#), [224](#)

Exodus, [43](#), [44](#), [45](#), [47](#), [48](#), [49](#), [50](#), [52](#), [55](#), [56](#), [57](#), [58](#), [112](#), [141](#), [143](#), [172](#), [173](#), [182](#), [193](#)

Ezekiel, [125](#)-[127](#), [139](#)

Fertile Crescent, [96](#), [103](#)

flood story,

Celtic, [78](#)

Chaldean, [79](#)

Lithuanian, [77](#)-[78](#)

Roman, [78](#)

Scandinavian, [78](#)-[79](#)

Garden of Eden, [102](#), [104](#), [107](#), [108](#), [114](#), [191](#), [195](#), [219](#)

Garden of Eden, and the serpent, [102](#)-[109](#)

Gaul, [70](#)

Genesis, [16](#), [30](#), [31](#), [34](#), [35](#), [36](#), [44](#), [54](#), [65](#), [69](#), [71](#), [75](#), [76](#), [96](#), [102](#), [103](#), [105](#), [106](#), [109](#), [115](#), [116](#), [118](#), [119](#), [122](#), [133](#), [138](#), [157](#), [164](#)-[165](#), [180](#), [189](#), [191](#), [192](#), [195](#), [199](#), [202](#), [204](#), [209](#), [210](#)

genetic hybrid, [221](#)-[223](#)

Gilgamesh, [75](#)-[76](#), [223](#)

Gospel of Luke, [128](#)

Gospel of Matthew, [128](#)

Great Flood, [76](#), [102](#), [103](#), [116](#), [155](#), [164](#)-166, [192](#), [201](#), [207](#), [209](#), [210](#), [218](#), [221](#), [227](#)

Hatsheput, [60](#)-65

Hebrews, [63](#), [121](#), [124](#), [217](#)

Hebron, [199](#), [200](#)

Heliopolis, [68](#)

Hermopolis, [68](#)

Hindu philosophy, [159](#)

Holy Mountain of God, [53](#)

Horus, [63](#)

Isaiah, [87](#), [88](#), [109](#), [201](#)

Isis, [62](#), [100](#)

Isis, [62](#)

Job, [123](#), [175](#), [182](#)-184, [233](#)

John the apostle, [124](#)

Joseph, [44](#)

Jubilees, [158](#)-159, [165](#), [188](#),

Jude, [155](#), [157](#), [191](#)

Judea, [128](#)

Kali, [159](#)

King David, [138](#)-139, [140](#)

King Nebuchadnezzar, [81](#), [82](#)

Kings, [56](#), [172](#)

Kish, [59](#)

Land of Promise, [50](#)

Leviticus, [44](#), [193](#)

Leviticus, [44](#)
Lilith, [223](#)
Lithuanian flood story, [77](#)-78
Lucifer, [87](#), [110](#), [195](#)
Mesopotamia, [96](#), [97](#), [99](#), [103](#), [104](#), [138](#), [168](#), [170](#), [178](#), [220](#)
Midian, [52](#)
Miriam, [58](#), [62](#)
Mosaic Law, [89](#), [113](#), [219](#)
Moses, [110](#), [111](#), [125](#), [139](#), [141](#), [146](#)-148, [153](#), [171](#), [172](#), [185](#), [199](#),
[200](#), [209](#), [218](#)
Moses, [32](#), [41](#), [43](#)-52, [54](#)-58, [62](#)-65, [67](#), [69](#)-73
Moses, faith story of, [46](#)-51
Moses, importance to the Nephilim, [72](#)-73
Moses, traditional story of, [52](#)-56
Mount Armon, [190](#)
Mount Carmel, [175](#)-176
Mount Hermon, [51](#), [52](#), [80](#), [82](#), [86](#), [94](#), [95](#), [96](#), [108](#), [141](#), [184](#), [187](#), [199](#),
[217](#)
Mount Nebo, [53](#)
Mount Sinai, [49](#), [50](#), [147](#)
Nagas, [100](#)
Nephilim, and Moses, [72](#)-73
New Testament, [51](#), [55](#), [118](#), [121](#), [128](#), [155](#), [157](#)
Nile River, [51](#), [57](#)
Ninevah, [75](#)
Noa (Syrian), [79](#)

Noah, [72](#), [75](#), [76](#), [79](#), [116](#), [117](#), [155](#), [164](#)-166, [188](#), [192](#), [193](#), [207](#), [208](#), [209](#), [218](#)

Nubia, [52](#)

Numbers, [43](#), [44](#), [111](#), [198](#), [199](#), [200](#)

Nun, [68](#), [69](#)

Oannes, [99](#)-100

Oden, [78](#)

Ogdoad, [65](#)-69, [72](#)

Old Testament, [19](#), [30](#), [31](#), [32](#), [33](#), [35](#), [37](#), [44](#), [54](#), [56](#), [81](#), [86](#), [88](#), [123](#), [138](#), [157](#), [170](#), [179](#), [199](#), [203](#), [210](#), [218](#)

Osiris, [59](#), [62](#), [63](#)

Passover, [52](#), [57](#), [141](#)

Paul the apostle, [130](#), [153](#), [157](#), [219](#)

Pentateuch, [41](#), [44](#)

Peter the apostle, [195](#)

Pharaoh, [45](#), [52](#), [58](#)

Pharaoh-God, [48](#), [50](#), [54](#)

Pharaohs, timeline of, [57](#)-65

plagues, and Egypt, [145](#)-147

Pontius Pilate, [112](#)-113

Psalm [10](#), [143](#)

Psalm [106](#), [148](#)

Psalm [135](#), [181](#)

Psalm [136](#), [182](#)

Psalm [138](#), [182](#)

Psalm [144](#), [145](#)

Psalm [18](#), [140](#)

Psalm [29](#), [142](#)

Psalm [68](#), [141](#), [174](#)

Psalm [74](#), [175](#)

Psalm [77](#), [143](#)

Psalm [78](#), [147](#)

Psalm [82](#), [197](#), [221](#)

Psalm [86](#), [181](#)

Psalm [89](#), [179](#)

Psalm [95](#), [181](#)

Psalm [96](#), [181](#)

Psalm [97](#), [144](#)-145, [181](#)

Psalm of Asaph, [179](#)-180

Psalms, and UFOs, [138](#)-140

Pyramid Texts, [67](#)

Quetzalcoatl, [100](#), [110](#)

Rameses III, [65](#)

Red Sea, [143](#)

religious mythology and alien influence, [98](#)-99

Remus, [59](#)-60

reptilians, [109](#)-110, [114](#)

Revelation, [124](#)

Rime Giants, [78](#)

Roman Empire, [70](#)

Roman flood story, [78](#)

Rome, [60](#)

Romulus, [59](#)-60

Sagan, Carl, [24](#), [28](#), [96](#)-97
Samuel, [201](#), [202](#), [211](#)-214
Sargon the Great, [58](#)-59
Satan, [107](#), [183](#)
Satan, [183](#)
Saudi Arabia, [53](#)
Scandinavian flood story, [78](#)-79
Senmut, [62](#)
Serpent People, [100](#)
serpent, [102](#), [111](#), [114](#), [196](#)
serpent, and the Garden of Eden, [102](#)-109
Shakespeare, William, [129](#), [161](#)
Shamyaza, [39](#), [82](#), [85](#), [90](#), [117](#), [190](#)
Shekinah, [48](#)
Skeptic, Church of, [22](#)-25
Solomon's Temple, [56](#), [57](#)
Sons of God, [76](#), [84](#), [87](#), [96](#), [109](#), [166](#)-170, [181](#), [182](#), [186](#), [203](#)
Sumer, [93](#), [96](#)-98, [170](#)
Sumer, and the Watchers, [93](#)-96
Sumerian pantheon, [167](#)
Sumerian texts, [134](#)-138
Sumerians, [96](#)-99
Ten Plagues, [45](#)
Thutmoses I, [57](#), [60](#)
Thutmoses II, [60](#)-61
Thutmoses III, [61](#), [65](#)

Tigris River, [102](#), [103](#)

Timothy, [130](#)

Titans, [78](#)

Torah, [115](#)

Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil, [105](#)

UFOs, [129](#), [133](#), [137](#), [140](#), [141](#), [142](#), [148](#)-[149](#), [207](#), [220](#)

UFOs,

- and Christopher Columbus, [142](#)
- and Psalms, [138](#)-[140](#)

Uruk, [59](#)

Ur-Zababa, [59](#)

Utnapishtim, [76](#)

Valley of Elah, [213](#)

Ve, [78](#)

Vili, [78](#)

Watchers,

- and the rebellion against heaven, [86](#)-[90](#)
- leaders of the, [84](#)-[85](#)

Watchers, the, [43](#), [80](#), [81](#)-[128](#), [133](#), [184](#), [187](#), [189](#), [190](#), [191](#), [193](#), [196](#), [197](#), [198](#), [208](#), [215](#), [217](#), [220](#)-[221](#), [226](#)

Watchers, the, and Sumer, [93](#)-[96](#)

West Africa, [100](#)-[102](#)

yuga, [159](#)

About the Author

SCOTT ALAN ROBERTS is the founder and publisher of *Intrepid Magazine* (www.intrepidmag.com), and is the author and illustrator of *The Rollicking Adventures of Tam O'Hare*. After several years in Bible college and seminary, Roberts spent the bulk of his next 25 years as an advertising art and creative director, and was the editor-in-chief of *TAPS Paramagazine*, SyFy's *Ghost Hunters*' official publication. Roberts has written numerous articles and appeared on countless national radio shows, including *Coast to Coast AM*. Scott is a well-known public speaker, and is currently working on his magazine and future book projects. He lives with his family in western Wisconsin, not far from the twin cities of Minneapolis and St. Paul, Minnesota.

MOHAMMED HIJAB

FIFTH-WAVE



FEMINISM

KBYH

KbyH Publishing

MOHAMMED HIJAB

FIFTH-WAVE



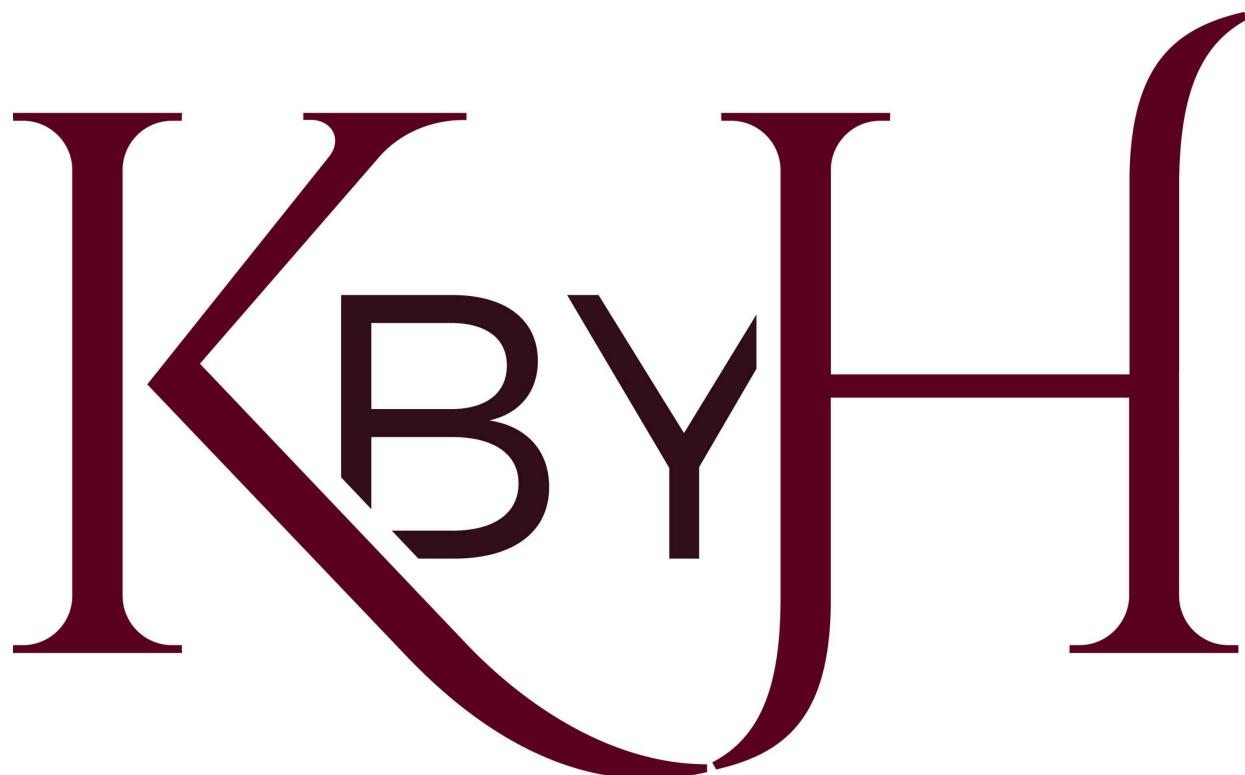
FEMINISM

KBYH

**ISBN 978-1-910952-14-6 © Copyright 2019 1st Edition by
Mohammed Hejab**

*All rights reserved. No part of this publication may be reproduced
in any language, stored in a retrieval system or transmitted in any
form or by any means, electronic, mechanical, photocopying,
recording or otherwise without the express permission of the
copyright owner.*

Published & distributed by



KbyH Publishing

CONTENTS

[Introduction](#) 1

[Chapter 1: Feminist Epistemology \(Judith Butler\)](#) 3

Chapter 2: Judith Butler and Third-Wave Contradictions 6

[Chapter 3: Mona Eltahawy: The Feminist Uncle Tom?](#)⁹ [Chapter 4: Domestic Violence in the Middle East](#) 12

Chapter 5: Homonationalism and the Muslim Example 15

[Chapter 6: Fifth-Wave Feminism](#) 21

[Conclusion](#) 28

INTRODUCTION

Many books on ‘feminism’ have a starting point of describing the positionality of the author. In so doing, some feminists emphasise race, others emphasise sexuality, and yet others emphasise general points of nonconformity. I am a traditionalist Muslim man. I am not a feminist and am neither liberal nor secular. This book is a collection of essays I have completed at a post-graduate level at the Centre for Gender Studies at SOAS University of London. I have not named this book ‘Fifth-Wave Feminism’ to bait my reader. The recommendations I have made in this book do amount to what I believe could be a renewal of feminist thought. The main question is: what was the ideological impetus for a traditionalist, non-feminist Muslim to write a book like this or even be concerned with feminism? I have decided to write this book for the preservation of traditionalist Islamic thought in the West and throughout the world. In the numerous community projects that I am involved in related to promoting and rationalising traditionalist Islamic thought, perhaps the most common forms of questions I am asked everywhere I go in the world relate to Islam’s relationship with gender equality. People ask, ‘to what extent is Islam compatible with feminism?’.

What they mean by feminism is usually a second-wave conception, and what they mean by Islam is usually a traditionalist Sunni interpretation. I have found that the most academically honest way to answer these questions – if my aforementioned definitions of feminism and Islam are assumed – is ‘to some extent’. Unfortunately, this answer does not leave many ‘Western Muslims’ satisfied. The question ‘to what extent is feminism compatible with Islam’ is a different question to that of ‘to what extent is Islam compatible with feminism’. The first question focusses on the accommodation of feminist ideas in traditionalist Islam, whereas the second question focusses on the accommodation of Islam in feminism. Through this book, I argue that if we were to ask the second question – of how much of feminism can be accommodated in traditionalist notions of Islam – we may get more favourable results.

Having said this, this book is not about theology and will not even reference theology. As will be apparent by the end of the book, everything discussed

surrounding traditionalist Islam is applicable to almost any religion on the face of the earth. If the recommendations of this book are taken seriously, I feel they may have the potential to solve many of the societal issues surrounding the complex relationships between religious groups and other kinds of minorities in the West. For this reason, I have included chapters on the serious issue of domestic violence, as well as homonationalism. Muslims and non-Muslims, homo- and heterosexuals, need to know what homonationalism is. A robust understanding of homonationalism provides us with the academic tools to negotiate some of the main challenges relating to potential ‘tensions’ that exist between traditionalist Muslim communities, for example, and LGBT communities; of course, these two communities are not mutually exclusive.

The aim of this book is simple: to assess the potential flexibility of feminist reasoning in a way that allows as many people to be represented in this social discourse as possible without compromising any of their individual core principles.

Mohammed Hijab

CHAPTER 1

FEMINIST EPISTEMOLOGY (JUDITH BUTLER)

Epistemology, or the ‘theory of knowledge’, refers to the ways in which we know things about the world. It is closely connected to the idea of ‘first principles’, which are the most reduced simplifications through which all other propositions (of a chosen field) are predicated. In Western academia, feminist epistemology has undergone major transformations since the 60s. These changes are most notably because of the introduction of post-modern modes of philosophical considerations into feminist discourse, as well as a new understanding of intersectional forms of analysis since the 80s. At the heart of any feminist epistemology are questions on ‘sex’ and ‘gender’.

According to the gender theorist Judith Butler, the second-wave (Beauvoirian) notion of an individual not being born a woman but rather ‘becoming one’ “has come under attack for ‘degrading the natural as that which is “before” intelligibility, in need of the mark, if not the mar, of the social to signify, to be known, to acquire value...’” (Butler, 1993:5). To Butler, the category of ‘sex’ has been assumed by second-wave feminists to be an epistemological starting point, whereas it could be said to be “a contrived premise ... a fiction” (Butler, 1993:5). On this view, the category of sex is potentially as fluid as the category of gender itself, and the second-wave assumption of a supervening gender on sex implies that “sex is relinquished in the course of that assumption and gender emerges” (Butler, 1993:5). An epistemic shift from second-wave to third-wave approaches also has implications on notions of ‘patriarchy’, which Butler sees as depending on a ‘universalising principle’ which may engender a kind of Orientalist essentialism when used in ‘comparison’ with other cultures (Butler, 1990:3).

Epistemology is also connected with both the positionality and subjective experiences of the examiner and examined. This point is fervently made by the civil rights activist Audre Lorde, who discussed the inclusion of “poor women, black and third world women and lesbian women” (Lorde,

1983:25). Gloria Jean Watkins (writing under the pseudonym bell hooks) makes a similar kind of point: “As a radical standpoint, perspective, position. ‘the politics of location’ necessarily calls those of us who would participate in the formation of counter-hegemonic cultural practices to identify the spaces where we begin the process of re-vision” (hooks, 1996:48). Both Lorde and hooks see language, and the general dominant paradigm through which they both operate, as a challenge. hooks says, “language is also a place of struggle” (hooks, 1996:48), while Lorde notes that “the master’s tools will never dismantle the master’s house. They may allow us temporarily to beat him at his own game, but they will never enable us to bring about genuine change” (Lorde, 1983:27). According to these evaluations, who you are and how you are positioned (especially relative to the ‘sources of domination’) are an incredibly important part of how things are ‘known’ in feminist theory.

Besides all the aforementioned nuanced developments, second- and third-wave feminists have had to endure many epistemic contradictions that have afflicted their modes of analysis. Such contradictions are sometimes candidly noticed by post-Beauvoirian feminists. For example, bell hooks acknowledges – as Butler does above – that “[t]he idea of common oppression was a false and corrupt platform disguising and mystifying the true nature of women’s varied and complex social reality” (hooks, 2002:396) yet hooks also notes that “there can be no mass-based feminist movement to end sexist oppression without a unified front” (hooks, 2002:396), thus imposing an activist agenda on an otherwise untouched epistemology of intersectional complexity. Unusually, hooks often uses a form of pseudo-Darwinian explanation of ‘survival’ to justify her cause, writing, “Many of us are struggling to find new strategies of resistance. We must engage decolonisation a critical practice if we are to have meaningful chances of survival even as we must simultaneously cope with the loss of political grounding which made radical activism more possible” (hooks, 2006:194). Several issues can be noticed when making this kind of analysis. Perhaps the most severe of them is the issue of the hierarchisation of the intersectional variables, which must be done in order to ‘unify’ ‘women’ behind ‘one cause’. Of the many categories that are often mentioned (class, race, gender, and sexuality), and others more inconspicuous in the literature (religion, lineage, tribe, and other oft-ignored items of identification), one must arrange and prioritise the categories in order of epistemic importance. In so

doing, feminists have often disregarded key categories and created a new ‘master’s house’ that belongs to the privileged English-speaking academic whose intellectual voice became forcibly heard through the very dominant structures they resist. Baring this in mind, an effective intersectional approach ought to never presuppose gender priority or ‘feminism’ for all subjects, especially if it is to be consistent with post-structuralism. A potentially more pressing issue is that post-structuralism, second-wave, third-wave, black feminist, and most other Western ‘feminist’ approaches may be said to represent the ‘master’s house’ if the master is the immediate hegemonic beneficiary. Lorde academically exonerated herself in implying that, as a result of her blackness and gayness, she is not in fact not a ‘master’ respective to some unrepresented voiceless counterpart. Such self-exemption may not be justified on epistemological grounds. A question may therefore be asked: how (and by whom) is ‘domination’ defined? How (and by whom) ought it be defined on an intersectional basis? Why, and on what epistemological grounds, is ‘domination’ rejected? How can we guarantee (if it is assumed that we ought to) that domination does not just repeat itself in the discourse of the would-be ‘new masters’?

- REFERENCES:** Butler, J. (1990). *Gender Troubles*. London: Routledge.
- Butler, J. (1993). *Bodies that Matter*. New York: Routledge.
- hooks, b. (1996). Choosing the Margin as a Space for Radical Openness. In: A. Garry & M. Pearsall (Eds.), *Women, Knowledge and Reality*. London: Routledge.
- hooks, b. (2002). Sisterhood: political solidarity between women. In: A. McClintock (Ed.), *Dangerous Liaisons, Gender, Nation, and Post-Colonial Perspectives*. London: University of Minnesota Press.
- hooks, b. (2006). Postmodern Blackness. In: S. Morgan (Ed.), *The Feminist Reader*. London: Routledge.
- Lorde, A. (1984). *Sister Outsider: Essays and Speeches*. Berkeley, CA: Crossing Press.

CHAPTER 2

JUDITH BUTLER & THIRD-WAVE CONTRADICTIONS

Human beings have been in a continual diaspora for as long as they have inhabited the earth. The Cambridge Dictionary defines diaspora as “a group of people that have been spread from one original country to another” (Cambridge Dictionary). The problem with this definition, and other definitions like it, relates to stating what is meant by ‘a group of people’ and how such people should be grouped in the first place, and what constitutes the ‘original country’. This chapter will use these questions as the main tools for interrogating Judith Butler’s article entitled *What Shall We Do Without Exile*. In the beginning of the article, Butler invokes Edward Said as a useful point of reference for her analysis, yet shows perplexity at his use of secular humanism as a method of analysis. As Butler is undoubtedly aware, Said used other frameworks to develop his arguments in *Orientalism*. Said uses postmodernism (or more specifically, Foucauldian post-structuralism) as well as a Gramscian hegemonic power framework. A similarity between both Said and Butler is their reference to postmodernist thinkers, especially in their discourse analyses and efforts to deconstruct dominant paradigms. The argument that will be made in this chapter is as follows: a post-colonial analysis of the condition of the Palestinian people is more coherent (though not free from inconsistencies itself) and effective in making a case for a sociohistorical historical collective of the Arabic speaking people otherwise known as ‘Palestinians’.

Those who are familiar with Judith Butler’s theories may recall her theorising the idea of gender performativity. Butler’s analysis is predicated on a deconstructionist epistemology whereby the “unproblematic unity of the woman” (Butler, 1990:6) is put into question and ultimately described as a cultural production. What is most peculiar and interesting about *What Shall We Do Without Exile* is that Butler departs from the epistemological criticality that she has for gender/sex when it comes to matters of

race/ethnicity. This is as she continually groups Jews/Palestinians into unified lexical categories (Butler, 2012:33). The burning philosophical question would be: why does Butler not exhibit the same amount of deconstructionist criticality she employs with race/ethnicity as she does with gender/sex? Doing so, of course, may have irreversible philosophical consequences for subsequent analysis of the matter. The most obvious of these consequences is the conclusion that there is no actual substance that can be referred to as ‘race’ or ‘ethnicity’, and no actual ‘grouping of people’ that can occur, and therefore no diaspora to talk about. Connected to this is a question of ‘race performativity’, if there could ever be one. If so, should ‘race’ or ‘ethnicity’ themselves, as cultural productions or dominant discourses, be deconstructed? If ‘race’, ‘ethnicity’, ‘nationality’, and ‘citizenship’ are designated as social constructions, it could be said that there is simply a movement of ‘individuals’ who are the product of a hybridity of different cultural productions from one place to another. Thus, there is no such thing as ‘diaspora’ or ‘migration’. Of course, Butler herself is aware of these issues and asks, “to what extent do regulatory practices of gender formation and division constitute identity, the internal coherence of the subject, indeed, the self-identical status of the person?” (Butler, 1990:17). Although this is a good way to summarise the inquiry, it unfortunately leaves us on a philosophical cliff-hanger.

Two important points can be made here that have been the feature of Butler’s article on exile. Firstly, Butler seems to use legalistic definitions to inform her critique (Butler, 2012:33) despite having previously criticised structuralists for “[referring] to the law as singular” (Butler, 1990:38). There is also a question of whether power relations define identities or whether identities form power relations. As these questions are not given a definitive answer using post-structuralist, queer, or third-wave approaches, it would seem that deconstructionism makes it exceedingly difficult to make ‘general’ claims of oppression from one ‘group’ of people to another. Queer, post-structuralist, and (perhaps to a lesser extent) third-wave approaches are therefore probably best used diagnostically rather than prescriptively. Said anticipated these challenges and used Gramscian analysis to be able to make ‘general claims’ of hegemonic exploitation relating to the colonised people. The contradiction here, of course, is that if this is not clearly delineated from post-structuralism, two competing theories of power (Foucauldian and Gramscian) will be present. In making value judgements, these two theories

cannot be said to work in contradistinction with one another. As an Italian, Antonio Gramsci was also ‘Western’, which might be an issue with those who are making a case for Eastern self-expression. The project of post-colonialism as a framework of reference should be understood as giving the ‘Oriental’ peoples an opportunity to make a case for themselves, whether individually or “collectively” (Said, 1980:17). Butler is quite right in realising that ‘secular humanism’ is an ideology that attempts at universalising concepts that are often ‘Western’. The general idea of ‘humanity’ or ‘humanness’ is presupposed by the vast majority of social scientists and is a useful guide to whether ‘a people’ who mutually agree to define themselves with whatever ‘characteristic(s)’ have been ‘mistreated’. The main task thereafter is that such individual collectives, or collective of individuals (whichever first – if any) need to themselves individually or collectively philosophise to know what ‘being human’ is and what it entails. From this, it would naturally follow that a robust theory of ‘justice’ may well be developed (as has been in moral philosophy, for example), which may express how such diasporic people feel at being oppressed. Thus, the work of the post-colonial scholar ought not to be one of describing the ‘power dynamics’ and concluding the ‘injustice’ (as we see in second-wave discourse), but rather freeing the space for the ‘colonised’ – or in our case the ‘diasporic subjects’ – who would themselves conceptualise the ‘oppression’ and rationalise a remedy for dealing with it in line with their own world view.

REFERENCES:

- Butler, J. (2012) ‘What Shall We Do Without Exile?’ *Journal of Comparative Poetics* Vol. 32, pp. 30-54
- Butler, J. (1990). *Gender Troubles*. London: Routledge.
- Cambridge Dictionary. (2019). Meaning of diaspora in English. [Online] Available at: <https://dictionary.cambridge.org/dictionary/english/diaspora> [Accessed 9 February 2019]
- Said, E. (1979). *The Question of Palestine*. New York: Vintage Books.

CHAPTER 3

MONA ELTAHAWY: THE FEMINIST UNCLE TOM?

The study of postcolonialism has gone through many developments since Franz Fanon first wrote the *Wretched of the Earth* and Edward Said subsequently wrote *Orientalism*. Homi Bhabha developed Saidian ideas of didactic representation (or protagonist/antagonist dualisms) into new developed concepts of hybridity, stereotype (Huddard, 2006:35), mimicry (Huddard, 2006:57) and the uncanny (Huddard, 2006:77). In his work *A Location of Culture*, Bhabha focuses on the case of Thomas Babington Macaulay's speech in the British Parliament about the need to educate Indians who would then bridge communication between the coloniser and the colonised (Huddard, 2006:61). The problem is that the colonised found that such class became too similar to them in attitude and ideas, and had grown in anxiety as the cultural justification to colonise such 'inferior' people was threatened. Baring this in mind, this chapter aims to use Mona Eltahawy and her article *Why Do They Hate Us* to draw upon the pre-existing frameworks of post-colonialism and proposes a new category not explicitly mentioned in scholarly works. I propose that post-colonial studies should have an explicit category that references the cultural 'Uncle Tom', which I will call 'command capitulators'. I will use the case of Mona Eltahawy to explicate what such a category entails, and I will leave it up to the reader to judge whether Eltahawy fits within this description. This category is best illustrated by Malcom X, who described the 'house Negro' as simply mimicking the words or criticisms of the slave master. To this end, when the slave master would say 'we have good food', the slave would say 'we have plenty of good food'. A key part of Malcom X's speech relates specifically to the use of lexis. Malcom X said, "he [the house negro] speaks with the same phraseology, the same diction". Malcom X's house Negro example directs us to an important socio-economic variable that relates to privilege and which may apply to Eltahawy. Eltahawy is a privileged

Westerner who, instead of giving agency to Arab women by conducting research on their perspectives and issues, uses the diction and phraseology of the colonial neo-conservative Western elites to instead instruct women on what should outrage them.

At one point in her article, Eltahawy makes the sweeping statement that, “[p]oor or rich, we all hate our women”. Eltahawy focusses all her attention specifically on Arab men, with an intentional attempt to strip any nuance from her angry misandrist discourse. The statement ‘poor or rich’ – a sidestepping of the class discourse – is indicative of a deeper issue relating to the hierarchisation of the identifiers that lead to exploitation. In other words, Eltahawy deliberate – or probably blissfully ignorant – non-consideration of the class variable in her non-intersectional assessment of power relations indicates that her intellectual capitulation of Orientalist discourse is more than surface deep. Eltahawy peppers her article with frequent mention of the previous Saudi Arabian ban on women driving, saying that Arab women are “denied the simple mobility of getting into their own cars.” This generalises the rulings of the Saudi clergy on the entire Arab world the attitude of Arab men towards women. It is therefore surprising that Eltahawy has not complained about the process of White colonial elites stopping both men and women from having the simple mobility of getting into their own homes in Iraq and Afghanistan, or even Vietnam and North Korea, as a result of hegemonic occupation. Of course, this may upset the readers of the right-wing Foreign Policy magazine in which Eltahawy’s article features. Eltahawy’s lack of intersectional consideration may mean that her concern is solely to target Arab men. Eltahawy begins her article with a fictitious short story written by the Egyptian author Alifa Rifaat. The story focuses on an unknown Arab man not providing his wife with sexual satisfaction, preferring to go and pray in the mosque instead. Eltahawy concludes, “In a crisp three-and-a-half pages, Rifaat lays out a trifecta of sex, death, and religion, a bulldozer that crushes denial and defensiveness to get at the pulsating heart of misogyny in the Middle East.” Aside from using this short story to reinforce the colonialist stereotype myth, Eltahawy projects her own first-world concerns of achieving an orgasm on a population of Arab women, many of whom do not have basic economic provisions.

Of course, some of Eltahawy's complaints are legitimate to some extent and represent an issue in the attitudes of some men in the Middle East that may have themselves fallen victim to the attitudes of a hybridity of cultures that puts women in a morally sedentary position. Eltahawy's narrative, however, is a racist one. The real test of Eltahawy's academic bravery will come when she makes similar statements such as the ones she has made about Arab men on Black and Jewish men. Eltahawy makes constant mention of religion, and more specifically Islam, as a motivating force for misogyny against women. However, she has forgotten that there are Muslim-majority countries in sub-Saharan Africa, the Indian subcontinent, and the Far East. Had this article been about Black men, she may have chosen a different kind of sexual example to suit a different form of Orientalist discourse, one that would have probably put Eltahawy out of business right away. Summarising this point, Edward Said writes, "malicious generalisations about Islam have become the last acceptable form of denigration of foreign culture in the West; what is said about the Muslim mind, character or religion, or culture as a whole cannot now be said about mainstream discussions about Africans, Jews, and other Orientals" (Said, 1997:xii). Religion may well be a contributor to hybrid cultures in a globalised world, but Eltahawy's overemphasis on such a contributor presents an unrealistic optimism in being able to understand the complexities of a cultural environment using this kind of reductionist methodology. To this extent, Said writes, "it is therefore just as well that 'Islam' has not been particularly useful in explaining the Gulf War, any more than ideas about the 'Negro mentality' were useful in explaining the twentieth century experiences of black people in America" (Said, 1997:169). The fact that Eltahawy could not write a piece on 'the Negro mentality', but effectively could write on the Arab or Muslim one, highlights to us a bigger issue our society is facing regarding acceptable colonial racisms.

REFERENCES:

- Eltahawy, M. (2012). Why They Hate Us. [Online] Available at: <https://foreignpolicy.com/2012/04/23/whydo-they-hate-us/> [Accessed 10 February 2019].
- Huddart, D. (2006). Homi K. Bhabha. New York: Routledge.
- Said, E. (1997). Covering Islam. London: Vintage.
- X, Malcom. (1963). "Malcolm describes the difference between the 'house Negro' and the 'field Negro.'" [Online] Available at: <http://ccnmtl.columbia.edu/projects/mmt/mxp/speeches/mxa17.html> [Accessed 10 February 2019].

CHAPTER 4

DOMESTIC VIOLENCE IN THE MIDDLE EAST

The issue of domestic violence in the Middle East – and the broader Muslim world – is a crucial and interesting case study. It provides a glimpse into the interplay between the interlocking spheres of influence from religion, the state, and institutional power. The issue is highly contentious as a case of Arab or Muslim peculiarity and is often made with specific reference to the sacred texts of Islam. Much has been written on jurisprudential ‘rulings’ that allegedly allow ‘wife beating’ in Islam, which is a topic that requires special treatment and is beyond the scope of this paper. Domestic violence has been defined as “violence that occurs within the private sphere, generally between individuals who are related through intimacy, blood or law... [It is] nearly always a gender-specific crime, perpetrated by men against women” (Coomarswamy, 1996:53). Aside from not differentiating between ‘sex’ and ‘gender’, this definition begs the question by arriving at the conclusion before allowing for an investigation. In her work on domestic violence in the Middle East, Lisa Hajjar admits that for “some countries, there is virtually no statistical information. Most of the existing information about domestic violence comes from local and international organizations, including women's and human rights organizations, and certain bodies of the United Nations with mandates that focus on or include women” (Hajjar, 2004:8). Despite this, Hajjar spends much effort examining Islamic jurisprudence and ‘human rights’ in Arab- and Muslim-majority countries and concludes that “[a]lthough shari'a is administered, interpreted and used in a variety of ways across Muslim societies, in many contexts it provides a potent justification for states to deny or limit women's rights” (Hajjar, 2004:32). To her credit, Hajjar explains that there is a need to avoid stereotypes that “Muslim women are uniquely or exceptionally vulnerable” (Hajjar, 2004:1). This argument notwithstanding, Hajjar’s case study objective – to understand domestic violence in the context of the relationship between religion and state power –

could not be said to be achieved through actual data analysis, nor does Hajjar attempt to carry out surveys on which to base her conclusions on.

Kecia Ali exhibits the same kind of Orientalist discourse, even when there is no sociological need or where clear fallacies of presentism or anachronism are at play. Ali writes, “In sum, the books of marriage, divorce, and related topics in formative period Sunni fiqh compilations express no explicit concern whatsoever with the consent of an enslaved female to a sexual relationship with her owner” (Ali, 2017:151). Despite using words such as ‘slave’ – which has acquired a different historical meaning in Western contexts (Brown, 2017)

– and making claims which are jurisprudentially aberrational, Ali falls into the common trap of ideological presuppositional prejudice of a post-Western Enlightenment nature. Put another way, the language and approach of both Ali and Hajjar forcibly creates binaries between ‘Islamism’ and ‘human rights’ (in the case of Hajjar) and immediately puts a Euro-centrally understood ‘human rights’ discourse at an epistemological advantage. The issue with this on an intersectional feminism approach – which prioritises the autonomy and self-description of a ‘subject’ – is that it forces a hierarchy of ideas which are not legitimised by the subject group. In other words, Hajjar does not put any effort whatsoever into asking Middle Eastern or Muslim women about their worldview or their moral philosophy. In this way, Hajjar imposes her own theory of justice on women without their consent. Perhaps the biggest issue of all from this topic is its propensity to feed into a knowledge production that may ultimately contribute to promoting interventionism by foreign powers into less militarily advantaged Muslim or Arab nations.

Azal Ahmadi, like Hajjar, also found several serious methodological problems in his investigation of hymenoplasty surgeries in Iran. As with Hajjar, this did not stop Ahmadi from coming to conclusions as to the implications of these operations on women in Iran. In terms of his method, Ahmadi writes that he “found challenges in locating women and physicians who were prepared to talk to me about their experiences with the surgery. Since participants did not consent to having the interviews audio recorded, I also had to rely on detailed notes to reconstruct participants’ experiences” (Ahmadi, 2015:8). Ahmadi further writes that “hymenoplasty is a covert form of resistance against socio-culturally prescribed sexual inegalitarianism

that restricts women to the social sphere of premarital chastity” (Ahmadi, 2015:1). This is highly peculiar especially considering that Ahmadi claims that he is using Butler’s idea of ‘performativity’ and Foucault’s idea of ‘reverse discourse’ to come to this conclusion. In reality, Ahmadi uses neither effectively, as using either of these frameworks would be self-refuting. This is because the idea of ‘resistance’ could equally be said to be performative and is unnecessary to post-structuralism.

Moreover, this kind of research sample inaccessibility raises questions about the statistics from the World Health Organization (WHO) report on FGM. These statistics are neatly arranged for Black and Arab nations, with the report stating that “[m]ore than 200 million girls and women alive today have been cut in 30 countries in Africa, the Middle East and Asia where FGM is concentrated” (WHO, 2018). While the report does not mention the condition of consent for the recognised completion of FGM, the literature is sparse on the statistics of labiaplasty as well as other cosmetic ‘unofficial’ FGM procedures done in the Western world. The literature is also lacking in investigating the extent to which Western women, for example, are more likely to have piercings in their vaginas compared to Black or Arab women (piercings are described by the WHO as a form of FGM).

In summary, the Orientalist discourse that positions the Arab/Muslim other as the subject of investigation is running out of academic steam. The framing of the white/Western saviour academic who needs to stop Egyptian and Ethiopian women from cutting themselves for their husbands while acquiescing to White women doing the same thing (NHS, 2016) makes it clear that this is an issue of linguistic framing more than anything else. The expat Britisher may cut herself and be cut by her domestically violent husband and will not be peculiarised or assumed to be acting out of ideological justification, but she is foreign in the country of her Arab immigrant counterpart who is compelled by his Ishmaelite wildness to harm and injure his concubine-like wife.

REFERENCES:

- Ahmadi, A. (2016). Recreating Virginity in Iran: Hymenoplasty as a Form of Resistance, *Medical Anthropology Quarterly*, Vol. 30. no. 2, pp. 222-237.
- Anon. (2016). Your Guide to Cosmetic Procedures. [Online] Available at: <https://www.nhs.uk/conditions/cosmetic-treatments/labiaplasty/> [Accessed 29 March 2019].
- Brown, J. (2017). Slavery and Islam: What is Slavery? [Online] Available at:

<https://yaqeeninstitute.org/jonathan-brown/slavery-and-islam-what-is-slavery/> [Accessed 29 March 2019].

Coomarswamy, R. (1996). Further Promotion and Encouragement of Human Rights and Fundamental Freedoms for Women. Report to the UN Commission on Human Rights. E/CN.4/1996.

Hajjar, L. (2006). Religion, State Power, and Domestic Violence in Muslim Societies: A Framework for Comparative Analysis. *Law & Social Inquiry*, Vol. 29 no. 1, pp. 1-38.

Kecia, A. (2017). Concubinage and Consent. *International Journal of Middle East Studies*, Vol. 49 no. 1, pp. 148-152.

WHO (2018). Female Genital Mutilation. [Online] Available at: <https://www.who.int/news-room/factsheets/detail/female-genital-mutilation> [Accessed 29 March 2019].

CHAPTER 5

HOMONATIONALISM & THE MUSLIM EXAMPLE

Jasbir Puar defines homonationalism as “[a] facet of modernity and a historical shift marked by the entrance of (some) homosexual bodies as worthy of protection by nation-states, a constitutive and fundamental reorientation of the relationship between the state, capitalism, and sexuality” (Puar, 2013:337). Homonationalism could be said to be the utilisation of a conception of gay rights that is intricately connected to a nation state(s) – usually ‘Western’ – at the expense of another self-identified ‘community’. In this way, homonationalism becomes linked with conceptions of settler colonialism, post-colonialism, neo-liberal/capitalist orders, and human rights. In order to fully grasp homonationalism, one must investigate both the epistemologies and methodologies by which it is predicated and through which it becomes operationalised. The first part of this paper will deal with such an investigation. The argument will subsequently be made that ‘homonationalism’ is an epistemological by-product of a knowledge production that gives the European experience an advantage from the onset. Focus will be placed on certain definitions in this discourse, as well as the extent to which narratives can and have been manipulated in order to superimpose ostensibly benign yet dogmatically dominant ethical suppositions onto the discourse.

Homonationalism could be seen to be especially pertinent to the narrative concerning the perception of Muslim minorities in the West (and indeed in other places) and gay rights. Commenting on this, Jasbir Puar writes, “the justifications and the admonishments provoked by the Abu Ghraib photos rely on Orientalist constructions of Muslim male sexuality as simultaneously excessively queer and dangerously premodern” (Puar, 2013:336). Puar also uses the example of Israel’s utilisation of a gay rights protection narrative in order to justify a reduction in the rights of the Palestinian people (Puar, 2013:336-7). Éric Fassin, commenting on a similar phenomenon in the West,

writes, “[f]or while the “sexual clash of civilizations” remains an international rhetoric in the post-9/11 world, the instrumentalization of sexual politics against immigrants has now become a European reality” (Fassin, 2010:515). Thus, it would seem in the first instance that a ‘clash of civilisations’ narrative is required, one that juxtaposes Muslims (or other such minority groups) with Europeans. Such a juxtaposition manufactures Muslims as the antagonist to the defender European protagonist, whose job it is to uphold tolerance, human rights, and equality. On this point, Fatima El-Tayeb makes specific reference to this required binary by stating that “the claim to the “incompatibility” of Islam and Europe is not framed as a conflict between a Christian majority and a Muslim minority, both of whom are European, but between European humanism, committed to the protection of rights, namely those of gender equality and sexual freedom, and a hostile, intolerant, foreign culture” (El-Tayeb, 2006:81). For many Western elites, this kind of reasoning offers political justifications that either disadvantage Muslim minorities in the West or militarily inferior Muslim-majority nations elsewhere. Military intervention can become justified as part of the mission to spread equality and sexual freedom by the proverbial sword. El-Tayeb writes, “Muslim youths — the violent male and the veiled young woman — become the central Other of the unifying Europe, exemplifying everything it is not and cannot be, exactly at a point when the existence of a native European Muslim population has become an undeniable reality” (El-Tayeb, 2006:83). Perhaps such sharp dividing lines can most easily be seen in the International Lesbian, Gay, Bisexual, Trans and Intersex Association (ILGA) maps that track the most ‘homophobic’ countries with neat and simplistic reference to where homosexuality is criminalised.

In addition to using the post-9/11 context, Puar uses the case study of the Abu Ghraib prison scandal in 2004 to discuss the interplay between the different themes of Orientalism, homophobia, and sexuality. The case of Abu Ghraib is particularly disturbing, as it entailed the sexual torture of Iraqi soldiers by US Army members. Male prisoners were forced to commit sexual acts with one another while being molested by members of the US Army. Puar discusses this point:

The taboo of homosexuality in Islamic cultures figures heavily in the equation for why the torture has been so “effective”; this interpretation of sexual norms in the Middle East — sexuality is repressed, but perversity is

just bubbling beneath the surface — forms part of a centuries-long Orientalist tradition, an Orientalist phantasm that certainly informed photographs of the torture at Abu Ghraib. (Puar, 2007:81)

What is of note here is that Puar describes what she sees as Orientalising. Puar outlines the heteronormative view that homosexual acts are aberrational or irreligious and may create higher levels of discomfort for the tortured subject. After mentioning a range of Islamic and LGBTQ organisations, and their taking specific offense to the rape and torture (especially on account of the subjects' religion and culture), Puar objects to the viewpoint of a certain LGBTQ organisation:

I do take issue with Al-Fatiha's statements, as they, along with many others', relied on an Orientalist notion of Muslim sexuality that foregrounded sexual repression and upheld versions of normative masculinity; that is, being in the feminized "passivo" positioning is naturalized as humiliating, producing a muscular nationalism of sorts. (Puar, 2007:91-2).

In terms of epistemological approach, it seems that Puar's conception of Orientalism is one that is fixed against a particular Western knowledge production that is psychologically and sexually 'liberating' or 'freeing'. In other words, suppression of some kinds of sexual behaviours is seen as either inconceivable realistically or undesired socially. In either case, these conceptions, perhaps ironically, may in and of themselves be perceived to be Orientalist. This is because they lack the propensity to be able to potentialise a willing 'self-suppressor' of homosexual acts, for example, who may do so on religious grounds. In this way, not only may the experiences of the torture victims at Abu Ghraib be demoted to a non-exceptional status, but the subjects of the torture themselves are denied from being able to exhibit non-normative ideas or be understood for experiencing pain related specifically to such non-normative ideas. Methodologically, there is little effort by Puar to analyse how subjects of torture felt themselves, and even less effort to endure some of the potential tensions that may result from the perspectives of such subjects. Puar comes close to this in some sections:

It is surely wishful thinking to assume that U.S. guards, female or not, having forced prisoners to wear women's underwear, among other derogatory "feminizing" acts, would then be perceived by the non-west as a

product of the west's gender equality. In fact, misogyny is perhaps the one concept most easily understood by both captor and captive. (Puar, 2007:91)

Though Puar attempts to use words carefully, stating that misogyny is ‘understood’ by both captor and captive, she does not go into any methodological depth as to how misogyny (itself a phrase susceptible to the forces of cultural malleability) may be conceptualised by the captor in contrast to the way in which it would be for the captive.

The deep-rootedness of the clash of civilisations discourse is premised on an epistemological favouritism of one series of post-Enlightenment dominant ethics over and above all other ‘foreign’ discourses. Fatima El-Tayeb says that a “universalist narrative simultaneously presents the European condition as paradigmatically human and other, non-Western parts of the world as inevitably deviating from this norm” (El-Tayeb, 2006:81). Liberalism and its outgrowths (human rights, capitalism, etc.) are perhaps first on the list of preferred knowledge items presupposed in the discussion of equity among subjects. By making the claim that ‘Western’ knowledge productions are in fact ‘universal’ (in a Kantian cosmopolitan sense), it would follow that they ought to be enforced. Such enforcement is most likely entrusted to the hegemonic leader, namely, the United States, Europe, the UN, or other such connected ‘allies’. El-Tayeb writes about “the European notion of tolerance and secularism, suggesting that the tensions becoming visible in their wake are in fact already built into the (Western) European model of liberal tolerance, including its feminist and queer variations” (El-Tayeb, 2006:81). The layers of contradiction in this line of reasoning are problematic even on liberalism, as tyrannies of the majority are created, and unequal favouritism of one community over another is allowed. Thus understood, the dominant liberal discourse may only free itself from the contradiction of having a perceived conflict of interest between ‘traditionalist’ or ‘conservative’ advocates of heteronormativity by manufacturing a social protagonist (the gay, white, oppressed) and the socially backward antagonist (the unintegrated Muslim Other).

What is interesting about conceptions of liberal tolerance (which are forcibly mixed with queer study discourses) is their overt illogicality with one another, especially considering the post-structuralist and deconstructionist nature of the queer approach. Perhaps even more pertinently are the prima

facie contradiction of the intersectional approach and liberal presuppositional approaches. For example, Judith Butler's destabilisation of our understanding of both gender and sex in *Gender Troubles* and *Bodies that Matter* is usually not translated to a destabilisation of concepts such as 'sexism', which may be called into question in epistemological entirety as a direct result of having its foundations shaken by the queer approach. Race, and even racism, would also be destabilised, since the latter may not exist in a 'conventional' format without the former. There is much to be said as to the Eurocentric nature of these descriptors and the legitimacy of expressing racism, sexism, and homophobia through the lens and experience of the privileged Westerner. Queer approaches, as argued by many who favour the LGBT approach from this perspective, could be seen to be quite fragile. Intersectional approaches, on the other hand, allow for both an individual and collective case to be made in line with the autonomous decision-making ability of individuals in groups or groups of individuals. In this way, queer approaches may be useful up until the point of 'prescription'. The intersectional approach as suggested by Kimberly Crenshaw and others offer quite simplistic types of subject-categories. Such taxonomies, whilst improving the state of feminist analysis, are not complex enough to accommodate for the most unaccounted-for subjects. While intersectionality could be facilitative of a gay Muslim or a Muslim gay person, for example, it does not have much to offer for the guilty gay Muslim or the convinced Muslim gay. Put another way, intersectional categories are always depicted as impassive and abstracted states rather than a combination of potentially contradicting cognitive and emotional ones. This reality was seen in our case study with Abu Ghraib, where it was difficult to conceptualise the raped and tortured victims as enduring any enhanced modes of humiliation on account of their proposed religious averseness to homosexual acts. Almost in Freudian terms, such approaches have generally prioritised 'expression' over 'repression'. Many religious/ conservative approaches (including Jewish and Islamic traditionalism) have favoured the opposite. Where the emotions expressed as 'guilt', 'shame', or even 'humiliation' are seen as necessary in some approaches, they are seen as unnecessary and unacceptable in others. Psychological 'guilt' can and has been instrumental in the creation and disregard of categories of importance and unimportance. In order for this hurdle to be overcome, it must be conceivable that a religious 'traditionalist', for example, may feel most actualised repressing sexual desires. In this way,

otherwise impossible subjects of a guilty gay Muslim, for example, may be potentialised. The fluid and complex intersectional approach which I am proposing allows dominant discourses to be produced by subjects through self-autonomy and free-will.

REFERENCES:

- Butler, J. (1990). *Gender Troubles*. London: Routledge.
- Butler, J. (1993). *Bodies that Matter*. New York: Routledge
- El-Tayeb, F. (2011). *European Others: Queering Ethnicity in Postnational Europe*. New York: University Of Minnesota Press.
- Fassin, E. (2010). National Identities and Transnational Intimacies: Sexual Democracy and the Politics of Immigration in Europe. *Public Culture*, Vol. 20 no. 1, pp. 507-529.
- Puar, J. (2007). *Terrorist Assemblages*. New York: Duke University Press.
- Puar, J. (2013). Re-Thinking Homonationalism. *Journal of Middle East Studies*, Vol. 45, pp. 336-338

CHAPTER 6

FIFTH-WAVE FEMINISM

Feminist approaches have undergone countless transformations throughout the years. First-wave feminism was, to a large extent, cause-driven. The ‘unifying’ cause had been universal suffrage. Feminist campaigning led to legislative change in Canada, the UK, and the US. Despite its success, the movement has many historical skeletons in its academic closet. White supremacy, for example, was an issue for early feminists such as Elizabeth Stanton, Millicent Fawcett, and Rebecca Latimer Felton (the first female senator in the US), who all believed in lynching black people (White, 2005:178–9). This colonial and discriminatory feminist streak continued even through secondwave feminism, where the voices of people of colour were not well represented. This prompted the important contributions of prominent Black feminists such as bell hooks and Audre Lorde, who had re-orientated the way many feminists conceptualised categories of identification, specifically race.

An extension of this is the ‘intersectional’ approach that Kimberly Crenshaw mentions in *Demarginalizing the Intersection between Race and Sex*. The idea of interlocking and overlapping markers of identification is the hallmark of both third- and fourth-wave approaches. Moreover, Judith Butler’s contribution to the philosophical discourse is possibly unmatched in the movement to the third wave. This is as she reconstituted her understanding of feminist thought from its philosophical basis in Sartrean existentialism (the Beauvoirian approach) to a new post-modern Foucauldian approach. Perhaps rather vaguely is also the fragile link between intersectionality and postmodernism. The latter may be seen to be deconstructive of the former, but we will cover these contradictions later in this chapter. One can postulate that ‘feminism’ has entangled ‘objectives’ or ‘motives’ throughout its scholastic history. Universal suffrage and equal pay are examples of material politico-economic objectives having been met. ‘Representation’, whether it be of views or actual bodily representation, has been another objective of feminism. Studying gender and sexuality in the Middle East, Africa, Asia, or

anywhere else for that matter has been problematic for many theorists on account of the following two main epistemological and historical complications. Firstly, ‘feminism’, as it is understood in the Western academic landscape, is shaped by the historical events of the ‘Western’ experience more than that of any other ‘hemisphere’ or knowledge producer. This has meant that both the philosophical foundations (as seen above with Beauvoir and Butler), as well as the ‘legitimate causes’, are decided upon largely in the Global North. Racial, class, and sexual considerations complicate the picture as the issue of ordering the most important identity markers usually becomes the privilege of Westerners. Intersectionality represents perhaps one of the sharpest doubleedged swords that feminist theorists have ever had to face. The existence of intersectionality may deem feminism itself irrelevant, since the state of being feminine can now be seen as a secondary, tertiary, or even a non-consideration in discourse analysis.

Bearing this in mind, this chapter will make the following argument: if representation of subjects is what is sought through feminist theory, then a complex intersectional approach that has the propensity to renegotiate gender categories to either a logical point of non-importance or primary importance is required. Moreover, if a researcher is primarily concerned with giving voices to voiceless subjects (men, women or otherwise), such voices may be antithetical to Western notions of ‘human rights’, ‘women’s rights’, or any knowledge production that is ‘Western’. This chapter will begin with a discussion on some of the acknowledged limitations on studying gender and sexuality in the Middle Eastern context, and will then move on to what I will call Orientalist post-colonialist approaches. This section will look at how approaches which respond to universalising and Orientalist narratives can ironically themselves be Orientalist in nature. Finally, I will conclude with what I refer to as the fifth-wave approach. This, in addition to being ambitiously named, is a complex intersectional approach I will propose which links to epistemology and general methodology.

In recent decades, theorists have taken into good consideration the Orientalist pitfalls that many academics have fallen into when studying the Middle East. One of the reasons for this may be the unearthing of new historical information. Researchers such as Dror Ze'evi are able to access sexual information from the Ottoman Empire and have shown the nuance in sexual attitudes within them (Dror, 2005). Indira Gesink’s recent research

has examined the case study of the intersex body in the Middle East, showing that such bodies were known to Muslims and Arabs and that modernity did not introduce them bodies to the world (Gesink, 2018). These examples of social histories showcase that non-normative sexual patterns, bodies, and general gender interactions are not as straightforward as Orientalist discourse would have us figure. To this end, these studies – like studies from other disciplines – have helped create nuance in the discourse.

Commentators such as Jasbir Puar have offered different kinds of sociological analysis that shed a different kind of academic light onto the discourse. Puar explains how nation-state nationalism predicated on homosexual bodies finding refuge in the West away from Muslim/Arab harm creates social Othering:

Sexual deviancy is linked to the process of discerning, othering, and quarantining terrorist bodies, but these racially and sexually perverse figures also labor in the service of disciplining and normalizing subjects worthy of rehabilitation away from these bodies, in other words, signaling and enforcing the mandatory terms of patriotism. (Puar, 2007:67)

Moreover, third-wave feminist approaches could be said to also take into account problematic Orientalist discourse in conjunction with the ‘third world’, or the Arab world. Judith Butler, for example, calls into question the traditional second-wave idea of the patriarchy as being a ‘fixed unity’ and problematises such fixing and unification on Oriental grounds:

The political assumption that there must be a universal basis for feminism, one which must be found in an identity assumed to exist cross-culturally, often accompanies the notion that the oppression of women has some singular form discernible in the universal or hegemonic structure of patriarchy or masculine domination. The notion of patriarchy has wickedly been criticised in recent years for its failure to account for the workings of gender oppression in the concrete cultural contexts in which it exists ... that form of feminist theorizing has come into criticisms for its efforts to colonise and appropriate non-Western cultures to support highly western notions of oppression ... they tend to construct a “Third World” or even an “Orient” in which gender oppression is subtly explained as symptomatic of an essential, non-Western barbarism. (Butler, 1990:3)

Despite these developments, there is an ironic tendency for postcolonial approaches to be inadvertently Orientalist. Orientalist postcolonial approaches exist when Western knowledge productions are implicitly assumed as superior frameworks for analysis before research begins. As will become clear in the last part of this chapter, these approaches are incredibly deep-rooted in the vast majority of feminist, queer, and LGBT approaches. They are problematic for two main reasons, both of which highlight the contradiction between third-wave and intersectional methodologies. Firstly, the hidden assumption of a dominant ethic – such as Western human rights – is problematic for post-structuralism. Secondly, they are problematic with notions of subject autonomy, especially in conjunction with intersectional approaches.

To take a specific example, attitudes towards homosexual sex in a society as being a ‘human right’ is contingent on notions of sexual expressions that prefer demonstration to repression. This view is favoured by Sigmund Freud in *Civilisation and Its Discontents* and most enigmatically demonstrated in the so-called ‘sexual revolution’ in the 60s, a time when second-wave approaches were also on the rise. A simple question could therefore be posed: who determined that sexual expressionism is epistemically superior to ‘repressionism’ in all cases and through all types of sexual behaviour? Why is ‘coming out of the closet’ assumed to be in the moral best interest of the sexually suppressed? Why is the closet emblematic of suppression in the first place? What categories of sexual suppression are acceptable? What about suppression of incestuous desires for instance, and what makes that any less sexually acceptable than any other non-normative sexuality? Perhaps more severely, what do we do when there is a conflict of moral interest between non-normalative ‘traditionalist’ types of ideas and the preferred moral philosophies of the Western analyst? Such tensions have attempted to be resolved in a myriad of ways within the ‘framework’ of feminism. Amina Wadud, perhaps the most notable self-proclaimed Muslim feminist in the West, writes Muslim men throughout history have lavished more attention on the language directed toward them than upon attaining the goals of justice directly commanded of them. It was not until women, in the modern era, began the task of publicly indicating the Qur’anic pointers that men were so careless or flippant about – rather than agents toward – that this tendency, which had prevailed for over a millennium, was blatantly exposed. Since the significance of gender

as a philosophical and epistemological category of thought has only become pronounced in modernity, it is really no surprise that gender implications of all fields of Islamic intellectual thinking has overlooked this. (Wadud, 2006:216)

Aside from re-producing the binary/Orientalist image Butler was referring to above, Wadud presupposes that second-wave feminism is the philosophical gold standard through which all of women's rights (or in particular, Muslim women's rights) should be measured. However, this is not legitimised by consent or 'objective' measures from either a philosophical or research perspective. Directing her complaints to the situation in the Middle East, Wadud further writes:

Muslims have been struggling through an identity crisis not only as a consequence of colonialism's infiltration and corruption of Muslim complacency, but also in response to the globalisation of ideas like pluralism, Western secular human rights universals, and their sheer backwardness – as recently reported through an internal study of the state of the Arab world/Middle East (read: Muslims, despite actual demographics). I entered this struggle with my own peculiar identity concerns as well, as a woman. I concluded early in my research that one way to resolve my questions about gender was to direct myself to Islamic theology rather than Muslim social contexts or commentary, present or historical. Using the Qur'an, I proposed ideas about the Muslim woman's full human agency and dignity despite Qur'anic interpretations, juridical codes, and practices to the contrary. (Wadud, 2006:187)

Wadud's epistemological insistence that Islamic traditionalism ought to accommodate for second-wave approaches is problematic as it presupposes that Muslim women have and would agree with her intersectional understanding of feminism. This point will be elaborated upon in what follows with my concluding proposals.
barbarism. (Butler, 1990:3)

Despite these developments, there is an ironic tendency for postcolonial approaches to be inadvertently Orientalist. Orientalist postcolonial approaches exist when Western knowledge productions are implicitly assumed as superior frameworks for analysis before research begins. As will

become clear in the last part of this chapter, these approaches are incredibly deep-rooted in the vast majority of feminist, queer, and LGBT approaches. They are problematic for two main reasons, both of which highlight the contradiction between third-wave and intersectional methodologies. Firstly, the hidden assumption of a dominant ethic – such as Western human rights – is problematic for post-structuralism. Secondly, they are problematic with notions of subject autonomy, especially in conjunction with intersectional approaches.

To take a specific example, attitudes towards homosexual sex in a society as being a ‘human right’ is contingent on notions of sexual expressions that prefer demonstration to repression. This view is favoured by Sigmund Freud in *Civilisation and Its Discontents* and most enigmatically demonstrated in the so-called ‘sexual revolution’ in the 60s, a time when second-wave approaches were also on the rise. A simple question could therefore be posed: who determined that sexual expressionism is epistemically superior to ‘repressionism’ in all cases and through all types of sexual behaviour? Why is ‘coming out of the closet’ assumed to be in the moral best interest of the sexually suppressed? Why is the closet emblematic of suppression in the first place? What categories of sexual suppression are acceptable? What about suppression of incestuous desires for instance, and what makes that any less sexually acceptable than any other non-normative sexuality? Perhaps more severely, what do we do when there is a conflict of moral interest between non-normative ‘traditionalist’ types of ideas and the preferred moral philosophies of the Western analyst? Such tensions have attempted to be resolved in a myriad of ways within the ‘framework’ of feminism. Amina Wadud, perhaps the most notable self-proclaimed Muslim feminist in the West, writes Muslim men throughout history have lavished more attention on the language directed toward them than upon attaining the goals of justice directly commanded of them. It was not until women, in the modern era, began the task of publicly indicating the Qur’anic pointers that men were so careless or flippant about

REFERENCES:

- Butler, J. (1990). *Gender Troubles*. London: Routledge.
- Butler, J. (1993). *Bodies that Matter*. New York: Routledge
- El-Tayeb, F. (2011). *European Others: Queering Ethnicity in Postnational Europe*. New York: University Of Minnesota Press.

- Fassin, E. (2010). National Identities and Transnational Intimacies: Sexual Democracy and the Politics of Immigration in Europe. *Public Culture*, Vol. 20 no. 1, pp. 507-529.
- Puar, J. (2007). *Terrorist Assemblages*. New York: Duke University Press. Puar, J. (2013). Re-Thinking Homonationalism. *Journal of Middle East Studies*, Vol. 45, pp. 336-338

CONCLUSION

We started this book with a question: to what extent is feminism compatible with traditionalist Islam? The answer is, if representation is what is sought in feminist theory, then fifth-wave feminism – which prioritises the intersectional approach – has no choice but to epistemologically self-implode and allow any other system of representation to be prioritised in formal analysis. This is because a woman, or man, who decides to represent herself using Islam has the full intersectional right to do so. In this way, intersectional feminism can be totally compatible with traditionalist Islam, or any other way of life for that matter.

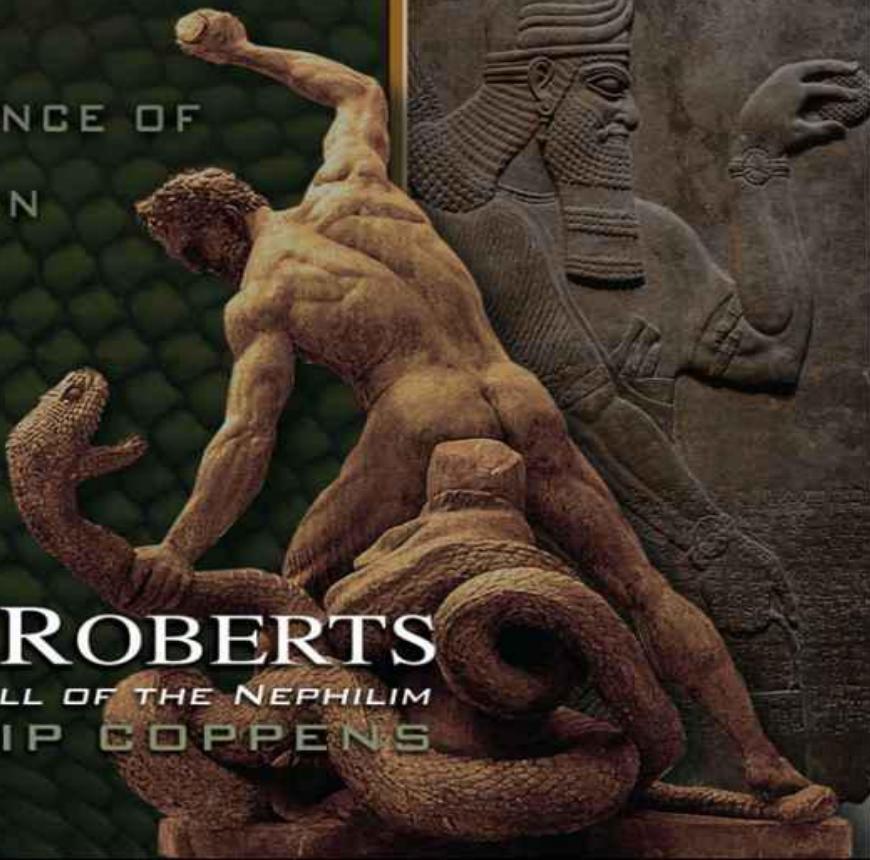
"Fortunately, Scott Roberts boldly goes where few men have surfaced from, providing a well-balanced, innovative, and insightful approach to the topic."

—PHILIP COPPENS, AUTHOR OF *THE ANCIENT ALIEN QUESTION*

THE
SECRET
HISTORY
OF
THE
REPTILIANS

THE PERVERSIVE PRESENCE OF
THE SERPENT IN HUMAN
HISTORY, RELIGION,
AND ALIEN MYTHOS

SCOTT ALAN ROBERTS
AUTHOR OF *THE RISE AND FALL OF THE NEPHILIM*
FOREWORD BY PHILIP COPPENS



"Fortunately, Scott Roberts boldly goes where few men have surfaced from, providing a well-balanced, innovative, and insightful approach to the topic."

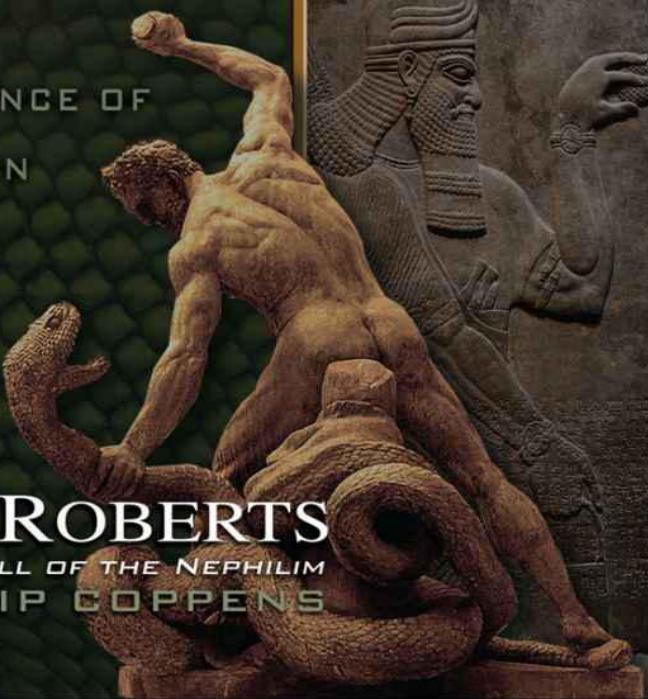
—PHILIP COPPENS, AUTHOR OF *THE ANCIENT ALIEN QUESTION*

THE
SECRET
HISTORY
OF
THE
REPTILIANS

THE PERVERSIVE PRESENCE OF
THE SERPENT IN HUMAN
HISTORY, RELIGION,
AND ALIEN MYTHOS

SCOTT ALAN ROBERTS

AUTHOR OF *THE RISE AND FALL OF THE NEPHILIM*
FOREWORD BY PHILIP COPPENS



The Secret History of the Reptilians

THE SECRET HISTORY OF THE REPTILIANS

The Pervasive Presence of the Serpent in Human History, Religion, and Alien Mythos

Scott Alan Roberts



NEW PAGE BOOKS
A division of The Career Press, Inc.
Pompton Plains, NJ

Copyright © 2013 by Scott Alan Roberts

All rights reserved under the Pan-American and International Copyright Conventions. This book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form or by any means electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system now known or hereafter invented, without written permission from the publisher, The Career Press.

THE SECRET HISTORY OF THE REPTILIANS

EDITED BY JODI BRANDON

TYPESET BY EILEEN MUNSON

Cover design by Scott Alan Roberts

Printed in the U.S.A.

To order this title, please call toll-free 1-800-CAREER-1 (NJ and Canada: 201-848-0310) to order using VISA or MasterCard, or for further information on books from Career Press.



The Career Press, Inc.
220 West Parkway, Unit 12
Pompton Plains, NJ 07444
www.careerpress.com
www.newpagebooks.com

The Library of Congress has cataloged the printed edition as follows:

Roberts, Scott Alan.

The secret history of the reptilians : the pervasive presence of the serpent in human history, religion, and alien mythos / by Scott Alan Roberts.

p. cm.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 978-1-60163-251-7 — ISBN 978-1-60163-542-6 (ebook)

1. Serpents—Folklore. 2. Serpents—Mythology. 3. Serpents—Religious aspects. 4. Civilization, Ancient—Extraterrestrial influences. I. Title.

GR740.R65 2013
398.24'52796—dc23

2012039161

Dedication

*For better, for worse;
For richer, for poorer;
In faith, in cognitive dissonance;
When writing, when facing writer's block...*

Although these were not the vows of our nuptial bliss, my wife, Raini, has been the experiencer, in and throughout, hefting all of these things as they blethered and bilged from me, although not all occurred during the particular writing of this particular book.

For all the months of time I spent researching, reading, writing, rewriting, lying in bed with my laptop casting a blue-gray luminescence about our room in the middle of the night; for all the times I excitedly distracted her from her tasks or—even worse, her slumber—to read new translations of ancient Sumerian cuneiforms or newly stumbled upon historical information that prodded me from my intellectual bienséance; for all the times she was over-burdened with being the single parent—the war widow—of our two wonderful, little children, Flynn and Rhowan Claire, and my 11-year-old son, Samuel, while I was off campaigning through ancient texts and pop cultural fantasies—all the while remaining grounded and supportive despite her frustrations with my brooding creativity, and uplifting during her motherly vehemence.

For providing an atmosphere where I could work and think and create, while taking on the heavier burden of wrangling the pre-teen, the toddler, and the babe, doing her best to keep the extraneous daily affairs of the household off my plate so I could write; for bringing me coffee and sitting on my lap to hear me read things that I am sure either bored her to tears, or during which she could have been engaging in something much more aligned to her own schedule, likes and agenda for those times, I lovingly dedicate this book to my wonderful, caring, supportive wife, **Raini Roberts**. This book is as much a product of her stalwart love and affection for me as it is the work of my own hand.

This book is also dedicated to the memory of Philip Coppens, whose life and research has been an inspiring, integral part of who I am. Go rest high

on that mountain, my dear friend.

Acknowledgments

When there are so many books available on the shelves, it must seem a small thing to the common reader that an author of just one small book could spend any amount of significant time or space acknowledging the people who helped along the way. But it truly is not any small task, nor is it anything even close to insignificant. Without these people I am about to mention, this book would not be a reality.

First I want to thank everyone at New Page Books who has had a hand in publishing this work. Michael Pye, Laurie Pye, and Kirsten Dalley have been overtly supportive and unflinching proponents of my writing, and for that I cannot say enough how thankful I am. To Kirsten, especially, I want to say thank you for putting up with my inane schedule, and for tolerating my making you hound me for permissions and other details toward the end of this process. Thank you all for letting me part of what you are at New Page Books.

To my wife, Raini Roberts, I want to say thank you for putting up with my distractedness and downright surliness while I, sometimes literally, paced the floors and remained in an agitated, unruly state while contemplating what I hope translates into the struggle of dealing with some of the issues in this book. This isn't all just folly to me, but highly representative of fundamental, foundational changes in my beliefs and intellectual approaches to things I once thought so substantial. Thank you, Raini.

To my dearest of friends, my brother, my cohort in *Intrepid Magazine* and Paradigm Symposium, my ally and fellow explorer, Micah Hanks, I cannot express how thankful I am to have you in my life. Your help in constructing elements of this book are astronomically off the scale, and were it not for your consistent uplifting nature, and your research and work on my behalf, this book would most certainly not exist in the form it is in today. I love you with all my heart, my dear friend, and may the gods place your essence in the heavens for your care and selfless nature. Thank you for "making it so," oh, Science Officer.

Once again I must thank my old friend and professor Dr. Charles Aling, for it was he who originally sparked in me a love of history and archaeology. Although he and I may reside on differing sides of the theo-

historical fence in some regards, he remains an inspiration whose influence has deep roots in who and what I have become. Perhaps we can sit over coffee and you can take me to task for some of my ideas and interpretations, and push me to continually do better, as you have always done.

Father Jack Ashcraft, thank you for listening. Thank you for inspiring and prodding me to think. You have been a good friend, indeed, and without your valuable influence in my life, I would be a poorer, sadder man. You have heard my caterwauls, misgivings, frustrations, dismissive pangs, and struggles of faith. Thank you for being not just an ear, but a dear friend through the process of writing this book.

Anthony F. Sanchez, you are someone who has established yourself as a dear friend, and your writing and conversations and ever-present encouragements are things of beauty to me. Thank you.

Dr. John Ward, thank you for your historical and archaeological input. Your invaluable information on the Thule and the 19th-century influences, though not all used in this book, established an incredible foundation from which to structure what did appear in these pages. As with *Nephilim*, we don't always see eye-to-eye on all these issues of interpretable history, but we do share a common love of the knowledge that comes from the research. I thank you for always being there for my questions and conversations. Your help in structuring parts of this book have immeasurable value. Thanks for the smokes and coffee by the Nile during our many video chats.

Thank you, Philip Coppens, for your wonderful Foreword and for your support in so many of my endeavors.

And for all those of you who let me rant and bounce ideas off your brains and hearts, I thank you unabashedly: Dave Potter, James Keuhl, Jim Fitzsimons, Barry Fitzgerald, Cassidy O'Connor-Nicholas, April Slaughter, Jane Scott (Mom), and many others far too numerous to list here.

And, of course, only last on the list due to her utter importance and influence, my dear friend on whom I cannot heap enough accolades and heartfelt praise and thanks—the inimitable, incomparable, amazing Marie D. Jones. You have been a dear friend, supporter, sounding board, and inspiration. Without your influence and prodding, this book—and the one before it—would not even exist. Thank you, my friend.

Contents

Foreword by Philip Coppens

Preface

Introduction

PART I:

The Empire of the Serpent

Chapter One:
The Annunaki and Their Sumerians

Chapter Two:
That's Not What I Learned in Sunday School

Chapter Three:
Coiled Around Many Cultures

PART II:

The Serpent in Alien Subculture

Chapter Four:
The Reptoids...Reptilians—No, Wait...Reptilian-Humanoids

PART III:

The Serpent's Bloodline

Chapter Five:
The Remnant of the Nephilim

Chapter Six:
The Merovingian Connection

Chapter Seven:
The New Age and the Serpent

Conclusion:
The Continued Presence of the Serpent

Afterword

Notes

Index

About the Author

Foreword

I remember ordering and reading Rene Andrew Boulay's *Flying Serpents and Dragons* from an alternative science mail order catalog in 1991. Boulay continued the work of American author Zecharia Sitchin, who had proposed that in our distant past, we were visited by beings from a 12th planet—allegedly named NIBIRU, the Crossing—in our solar system, who were the founders of most civilizations, but specifically that of Ancient Sumer. Whereas Sitchin had left the nature of these beings blank, Boulay claimed that these beings were reptilian. Boulay argued that there were numerous references in ancient accounts, including the Bible, that showed that some of our ancestors, including Noah, still showed physical marks of their reptilian origins, as we were a genetic manipulation of Earthly humanoids and Nibirian reptilians.

The early 1990s was also the time when thousands of mostly Americans were reporting “UFO abductions.” Some of these abductors were described as reptilian entities. These two ingredients were mixed by British conspiracy author David Icke, who proclaimed that the British Queen Elizabeth II was actually a reptilian in disguise—a gimmick that guaranteed his claims would make headline news, including the British tabloids who loved that a former BBC sports presenter had made such outrageous claims. In fact, his claim was very much on par with what could be seen in the 1980s popular science fiction television series *V*, which portrayed a reptilian alien species that colonized Earth.

The theme that there are reptilian overlords overseeing the fate of humanity is a strong presence in modern conspiracy literature. As I appear on the popular television show *Ancient Aliens* and people as a consequence assume I have editorial input, one of the most frequently asked question is whether there is going to be a special on the Annunaki, the name the conspiracy-minded Sitchinites have given to our assumed reptilian overlords.

Of course, our current mindset didn't begin with David Icke; he merely played with an archetype that is far older and perpetually remained popular. The source of all evil in the Bible has become commonly identified as a reptilian being—a serpent. Though the crime the serpent seems to commit

in the Bible is quite minor—providing information to Adam and Eve—as Christianity grew in popularity and power, it sought to personalize evil in the form of Lucifer and the devil, who became identified with that speaking serpent of the Garden of Eden.

If the devil is one of your most prominent identifiers, it is not surprising that serpents face an uphill struggle in popularity contests, though this is a cultural phenomenon. In the New World, the Feathered Serpent Quetzalcoatl was seen as a culture bringer, while the Vision Serpent helped the Mayan king in receiving information from the underworld. Though it shows that serpents were not always seen as evil, it does show, even in the biblical account, that intelligent serpents have provided our ancestors with knowledge, including otherworldly knowledge.

With a topic that has been identified by the Church for almost two millennia as the root of all evil, wading through the material is not a simple task. Sitchin and Icke are but two of a long list of researchers who have stranded in the murky waters of the reptilian archetype. Scott Roberts fortunately boldly goes where few men have surfaced from, providing a well-balanced, innovative, and insightful approach to the topic.

It is time to become reacquainted with our reptilian neighbor, who seems to have a consistent, cross-cultural reputation of bringing us knowledge. It is high time we learn....

Philip Coppens
August 8, 2012

Preface

“Mankind is poised midway between the gods and the beasts.”

—Plotinus

Writing a book about the ever-enigmatic race of extraterrestrial Reptilians is as simplistic a task as writing a book about the divinity of the historical Jesus. Fluxing in and out between myth and science, history and religion, all tempered with a healthy dose of “show-me-the-facts” skepticism, the very notion could drive one to the hard conclusion that establishing fact beyond a shadow of a doubt is nearly impossible in its efforts. The implications of the comparative historical and religious touch points are so far-reaching that the meanderings of myth one must follow to seek efficacious tendrils of fact could most certainly drive one mad in its contemplation.

What is it that religion and science aren’t telling me about where I come from and why I am here? And why is the Serpent, a being both feared and revered, so inextricably linked to the misty imaginations and fortified spiritualities of man?

When I was a kid, I was deathly afraid of the dark.

Back then, I had a newspaper delivery route that encompassed several city blocks around my neighborhood in the farthest reaches of northern Minneapolis, slipping over into the closest residential areas along the busy middle-class suburb on the west bank of the Mississippi River. As a paperboy, it was my after-school responsibility to ensure that the people on my route received their copy of the *Minneapolis Star* every afternoon, before the dinner hour. That was the easy part of my job, which earned me about \$8 per week. (In 1970, that was big money for a school kid.)

The hard part of my job was the Sunday morning route. The Sunday paper was three times as thick as the daily paper, and required me to rise at about 3 a.m., head to the paper shack (the pick-up location in our district, located about six blocks from my house), and collate the several sections of the paper for my route. I would then load those papers into my large, metal,

bright yellow, two-wheeled cart, as they were far too thick and cumbersome to carry in my canvas sack.

Our house sat on a corner lot, and, despite the yellowish street lamp at the apex of the two bordering streets, our yard was always completely engulfed in the black shadows of night when I'd rise to walk to the paper shack. I remember standing there on the back cement steps of the house, jumping down into the dark yard and grabbing for the yellow handle of my paper cart. I'd yank it out of its spot and run, headlong through the yard to the dimly lit street. While standing beneath the incandescent glow, which created a 12-foot circle of safety around me, I would stare down the vacant, dead-of-night street to the next lamp, contemplating my sprint through the darkness between. Sucking up all my courage, gripping my yellow, two-wheeled anchor behind me, I'd again close my eyes tightly and run with all my might toward the next streetlamp, squinting only momentarily to make sure I hadn't deviated off my course and into the shadows that lined the street.

I would repeat this blind feat at every corner until I finally reached the safety of the corrugated tin shack, which was usually already bustling with other kids loading their paper carts.

I don't know what it was that created such a fear of the dark for me. Perhaps it was many hours watching *Dark Shadows*, a show filled with vampires, werewolves, and ghosts that scared the beejeebies out of me. Or maybe it was the thought of aliens and monsters that would spring from the bushes and devour my guts while I was still alive, kicking and screaming. Then again, it may have been all of those things simply combined with my innate fear of the unknown—that sense we all have that makes you tingle when you enter a dark room or pass a shadowy alcove that you absolutely know—beyond a shadow of a doubt—is inhabited by some otherworldly, carnivorous entity. The unknown has always been the primordial slime of the imagination, the place where we birth and foster our most terrifying nightmares.

My boyhood friend and fellow paperboy Doug Beman and I would, on many Sunday mornings, lay atop the newspapers stacked in our respective carts, and philosophize—as only fifth graders can do—beneath a corner street lamp, waiting for the earliest sliver of silvery-blue on the eastern horizon. There was one pre-dawn morning when we watched a cat slowly

cross the road about 50 feet away from us, and we mused whether or not God had taken the form of that cat to come and watch over us. We took that reasoning and mused even further, reflecting on all the different things that had happened to us in our sphere of existence that might have conjured such a theophany (although we didn't use those particular words, as they were far outside our 10-year-old lexicon). As we sat there talking, we looked at each other and were astonished to see we were both shedding tears—not of sadness or any sort of uncontrollable weeping, but from something that hit very close to home in our psyches, on a very deep, subconscious level. And it was from that point we determined that God or his angels truly existed and could manifest before us in any shape or form they desired. And the cat, from that day forward, became the object of our fecund, private, little religion.

I imagine, now, some 40 years later, that this could be very much like the experiences of the ancients, when they sat philosophizing beneath flickering nocturnal torchlight, gazing up at the sky, only to be interrupted by some astronomical phenomena or the unexplained, unrecognized rustling of something out there in the dark, prompting the same sort of musings my friend and I experienced several thousand years in their future.

What was their religious cat, I wonder? Who or what became the object that, for them, could so capture their worship in the midst of their contemplative brooding? What was it that caused them to conceive deities and imagine giants from the dark to such a degree that they would soon end up etched for all time on the local cliff face, painted with dye concocted from the roots of the plants that grew around their village?

Or perhaps their ancient encounters were far more tangible: men from faraway tribes appearing in their village for the very first time—beings from the desert, hills, skies, and possibly even the stars. And from these encounters were birthed their oral stories that were generations growing into legends and myths.

On the heels of *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim*, which examined and explored evidences and theological, anthropological, and comparative cultural accounts that the human race was visited in ancient times by non-human intelligences that interrupted and influenced the development of humanity, these pages will take the case another step further. There is a lot of mythos out there to suggest that we have been visited by

“extraterrestrial” intelligences, so much so that it has permeated our popular culture, our intellectual dialogues, and even our religions and spiritualities. In fact, there exists more “evidence” to support the existence of UFOs than there is to support the existence of God—and seeing as God never really seems too overtly interested in proving himself beyond the heartfelt acceptance of the faithful, that is a fairly concise statement.

Notions of beings from outside this world impregnating humans are as old as humanity itself, up to this current day. And those histories and accounts have comprised a bulk of human mythology, legend, religion, and superstition. But what if those ancient visitations and encounters with non-human intelligences were far less than the stuff of “first contact”? What if those races manipulated the DNA of homo sapiens, creating a “slave race” to do the bidding and work of Reptilian-hominid overlords?

The theory of ancient alien interruption and the possibility of extraterrestrial reptilian races is not a new one, and its purveyors have been writing and theorizing on the topic for decades. Ever since early humans first gazed up in wonder at the star-blanketed night sky, we were intrigued by the seemingly unanswered questions of a mysterious, unattainable universe intrigued by its unexplained mysteries. Early mythologies and legends give the circumstantial evidences of mysterious objects roaring across the heavens. Shards of ancient tablets and shreds of ancient documents describe phenomenal, unexplained manifestations in the skies, and virtually every culture and religion relates visitations from angels, demons, devils, and gods who visited mankind in ancient times. And humanity, in its infancy, described these visitations from the sky in the only terms they could understand. Of course they were deities.

Despite this decades-old—if not centuries-old—debate, there is still a lot of disinformation and misinformation out there that begins with an atheistic point of view bent on disproving the religious and spiritual elements of creation and otherworldly interaction, as well as the opposite, which would seek to disprove or naysay anything that smacks of anything outside the box of established traditional theology.

Despite being a secular society, focused on the tangibles of day-to-day material safety nets and a laissez-faire adherence to entrenched generational religious denominations, people have an underlying draw to old spiritualities and covert superstitions. Though outwardly displaying a

dismissive attitude toward anything that smacks of a deeper connection with traditional beliefs and spiritual roots, usually accompanied by an almost-apologetic acquiescence to having grown up in a faith or religion, the overt façade belies a deeper, inextricable-yet-unrequited draw to theo-philosophical questions, mixed with a fascination of God, UFOs, ghosts, angels, demons, and everything in between. As for scientific dogma, most people dismiss the sciences as “mathematical things” that are either too heady or too emotionally dissociative to matter, and far less things to incorporate into any sort of daily life, and they tend to ignore them altogether. Unless Morgan Freeman narrates a show about the universe or genetics, science has become a thing that has been relegated to the realm of geeks, nerds, and academia. Why, you’d never find a scientist drinking beer, eating hot dogs, changing diapers, and belching out his new theory on the Higgs Boson...right?

When you strip away all the externals and lay bare the hearts of most people, at the core is their need to know who they are, where they came from, why they exist, and what the hell else is out there—regardless of how much they try to make the rest of the world believe they view these things as unimportant. Myth, legend, theology, and meta-science comprise the underlying faiths and beliefs of most Americans, who would otherwise give no outward indication that they hold to such values, even on a level of simple curiosity.

This book represents the *never-ending-book*, contained in 220 or so pages. You’ll find yourself, at times, deeply entrenched in facts and details, sorting through historical and linguistic material, but I have presented in such a way that is, hopefully, exciting and enlightening while riddled with bits and pieces of humor and my own anecdotal rants. In other places, you will endure my pedagogic philosophizing mixed with my middle-of-the-road positioning while attempting to bring a clear connection between myth and anthropology. In these pages we will discuss and hopefully provoke thought, addressing the innate need we all have to know the answers to these age-old questions via a very focused examination of a race of beings who visited earth, millennia past, for the sole purpose of not simply cohabiting, but creating and manipulating a race of underlings.

Utilizing a scholarly approach, blended with a bit of light-hearted tongue-in-cheek intellectualism, I will engage, on a deeper level, the examination of familiar accounts in the Old Testament book of Genesis,

combined with similar, corresponding accounts in various other cultures, religions, and spiritualities, cracking wide open the theories of extraterrestrial interruption and intercourse with early humanity, thus challenging and bringing new light to what we have discarded as mere mythology and ufological “urban myth.”

What if non-human intelligences bequeathed a race of mixed-blood humans?

This book explores the cross-cultural theological accounts as well as the current New Age movements that capitalize on fear mongering, the Illuminati, and the behind-the-scenes of the behind-the-scenes of what is taking place in humanity. We will explore the Merovingian bloodlines, the bloodlines of the Nephilim, and the presence of Reptilian and other alien races working to destroy, aid, and/or bolster humankind, all as they precariously balance against ancient religious mythology of the presence of the serpent in and throughout ancient history and religions.

The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim established that something huge happened to the human race in our ancient past, supported by the comparative religions, cultures, and archaeology of the world. Utilizing archaeological record, anthropological studies, and comparative religious examinations, we dig even deeper to establish what is already so evident yet hidden and encoded in the world today.

It’s a grossly huge topic that deserves an equally huge scholarly look and treatment. That does not mean we will, in these pages, be able to exhaustively cover all the angles and bring conclusive answers to every issue. But these pages will establish a great place to start looking at the questions from a new vantage.

I am told that people want to know precisely where you stand on an issue when you present it in a book such as this. What you will find from me is someone who straddles the fence between science and faith, mythology and archaeology, legend and history. They all work together to bring us a clearer understanding of what exists out there. You simply cannot have one without the other—and this is the fallacy of discarding one for the other, because, as I have contended time and time again, there are veils that simply cannot be pierced, and eschewing the unquantifiable, although scientifically acceptable, is philosophically irresponsible.

“There is nothing truer than myth: history, in its attempt to realize myth, distorts it, stops halfway; when history claims to have succeeded, this is nothing but humbug and mystification. Everything we dream is realizable. Reality does not have to be: it is simply what it is.”

—Eugene Ionesco

Introduction

“Snakes. Why’d it have to be snakes?”

—Indiana Jones

Every night a snake-like man would visit me in my house. I don’t know how he got in or where he came from. He was just there, standing more than 6 feet tall, with smooth, delicately scaled, greenish-brown skin, almost silky to the touch, giving me the sense of a cobra or some other sort of sleek reptile. His eyes were large and glossy black with vertical iris slits that glinted an iridescent yellow. When he spoke, his voice was as deep and hollow as a bottomless canyon, rapacious and seductive all at once. His breath held a faint scent of cinnamon. He said he was from another part of the galaxy, somewhere in Orion’s Belt, and that I had been someone “They” had been watching for a long, long time....

That is the beginning of a story told to me, several years ago, by a woman whose name I have long since forgotten. She went on to describe a fearsome yet benevolent creature who described himself to her as being part of a hostile race set on the destruction of humanity—a course that was determined long, long ago in humanity’s primordial past. This woman even sent me drawings she had done of this being, as well as much more descriptive, and at times quite sexual, narrative. They, too, have simply vanished along the way, more a result of my own ramshackle filing system than any sort of weird conspiracy theory.

Her story, along with many other similar accounts of such beings I have heard throughout the years, was relegated to the back of my brain, filed under: “Interesting but Nutty.” There it sat in a metaphoric mental stew pot, slowly simmering—a reptilian “stone soup” growing in richness and flavor as I subconsciously added the bits of ingredients delivered by all sorts of characters and sources along the way. Every so often the lid of the pot would rattle, releasing a steamy, fragrant aroma of hearty broth, bringing me back to the awareness that I had something cooking over there in the kitchen of my mind. And what was cooking was a splendid, blended concoction of theology, archaeology, ufology, psychology, cosmology, anthropology, and every other little “ology” in between.

Having recently completed my work on the *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim*, I found myself in a highly agitated state of spiritual and emotional unrest. I had either just opened up (at least for me) an exponentially expanded view of who God is, or I had, in essence, eliminated his existence altogether. Either the god of the Hebrew and Christian scriptures existed as I had been taught in cloistered, fundamentalist academia, or I had effectively stripped away his divinity by lowering him a few rungs on the ladder to the level of non-human entity with some power over the human race to create, procreate, and destroy. To me, this represented a crisis of faith, and I entered the grieving process of the “loss of innocence,” as embodied in the theology I once adhered to so strictly and believed in so intimately. When my theology was forced to stand against the onslaught of history, comparative religion, cumulative cultural mythologies, and archaeological record, everything about my religious practice seemed to be ripped open and lain bare, as if by a great whirlwind. And all that was left was a naked faith, shivering in the harsh cold of a veritable nuclear winter of pragmatic thinking and common sense, void the protective cloak of religious insulation.

The Serpent in the Garden of Eden took on the completely different role of historical influence once I was able to view the story without the filter of religion or denominational interpretation. When I was able to see that this creature, as described in the Hebrew Bible’s Book of Genesis, was similar to if not synonymous with many other cultural tales of trickster beings who brought knowledge and illumination to early humans, I saw a much bigger picture encoded within those pages of biblical scripture. When people step outside the box of religion and denominational spirituality, they find themselves in a unique vantage point of being able to see myriad varied tales that have intrinsic common threads woven throughout.

It’s rather like walking into one of those glorious, old theatres that dominated the cultural avenues of upper-crust society at the turn of the last century. As you entered the theatre and walked down the main aisle, the gilded proscenium and glittering chandeliers sparkled the magnificence of the thespian palace, built as a showcase for the art of the show. And there, lining the aisles were row after row of plush velvet seats, all identical and all capable of holding the weight of a patron every night. Yet despite their identical construct and appearance, each chair held a different perspective of the show being performed on the stage. Depending on which seat you

settled into, your viewpoint of what was being performed up front varied. Some seats were side-by-side, so their vantage was nearly identical; other seats delivered views from the far sides, back, or distant last row of the balcony. Some seats even had partially obstructed views. But in a literal, mathematical sense, not a single seat held the same exact vantage point or view of the show being played out onstage. But one thing was also sure: No matter where you sat in that theatre, and no matter which vantage point from which you viewed the show, the performance was unaltered.

Perception does not alter reality; it merely alters practice. The show on stage doesn't change dependent on where I am sitting or from what vantage point I am viewing. Only my perception of it alters. So the trick is to not be part of the audience, but rather a part of the play—a member of the cast. A participant, as opposed to an observer.

The Hebrew story of a race interrupted is an encoded one: Adam and Eve, the Serpent, their offspring, the fallen state of humanity, and the proclamation of an angry deity. These are all elements of an encoded cover story, as I spoke about extensively in both *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim* and in *Lost Civilizations and Secrets of the Past*. There is a much bigger message than the meticulously buried messages of the biblical tales that is similar in tone and thread to hundreds of other cultural religious mythologies of spectacular non-human beings interacting with the human race of ancient times. Common to nearly all of these cultural stories is the common thread of residual bloodlines that run through the course of all of human history.

Call it religious mumbo-jumbo, or theological manipulation. Look at it as the establishment of the messianic bloodlines and the mixed race meant to thwart the coming of the Kinsman Redeemer. But no matter how you view it, the story of the ongoing bloodlines remain a concurrent theme, from the very first utterance of an enmity that will exist between the seed of the serpent and the seed of the woman, all the way down the historical biblical genealogies that are there within Old Testament passages to exhort the ever present, vigilant eye to be ever watchful of the *pure human line* versus the oppositional mixed-blood lineage.

Humanity was visited by non-human entities that from the very beginning introduced an alternate bloodline that has carried all the way down the historical record to current day—the bloodline of the serpent. But

we only see fragmentary bits and pieces, rather like a checkerboard where half the spaces are occupied, but the other half remain completely void and empty.

I am not one who quickly sidles up alongside “great awakenings,” new spiritual movements, or hyper-fastidious conspiracy theories. They all generally tend, to me, to be the stuff of manufactured emotional reactions to hypothesis that are either not well researched—historically, spiritually, anthropologically—and many times are not well-articulated, despite their complex yet imaginative constructs. Most of these types of theoretical movements rely far too heavily on fanciful whimsy, bolstered by a desire to find something new and exciting, filled with elements unwittingly designed to “suspend reality,” or move the mind away from the mundane—not to mention the targeting of political opponents.

Far too many times throughout human history we have seen the devastatingly horrific result of revolutionary new movements that explode onto the scene, spewing theoretical spiritualities, political conspiracies or *vox populi, vox Dei*, but in the long run end up being little more than mere flashes in the pan, lacking substance and longevity, resulting in the martyrdom (whether literal or metaphoric) of self-proclaimed messiahs and the murder, suicide, or disbanding of disciples. Yet those movements that do gain a foothold and garner mass followings trend to the darker elements of racial bigotry, genocide, political xenocide, and holocaust, building gravitas and momentum by catering to the fears of potential devotees and zealous followers alike.

People are always looking for something that is different than what they already have, or more exciting than what are told they should be satisfied with. Spiritually, politically, and conspiratorially based movements generally thrive within, around, and despite the well-established religions, spiritualities, sciences, and governments that are deeply entrenched in our societies and cultural histories.

On the flip side of the coin, deep within well-established philosophies, religions, and political mindsets, there are embedded messages and encoded languages that tend to shift the paradigm away from the established way of thinking. Once this new information is articulated and disseminated, established systems of spiritual belief and practice are enhanced, are expanded, and in many cases rewrite the history of a well-established,

firmly entrenched philosophy. The end result is that the new twist can sometimes appear to be a new awakening or new conspiracy theory, when it is in reality an illumination of something that already exists—an expansion based on a fresher understanding of what was already there.

The Serpent in the Garden of Eden, though allegorical in nature and very possibly the stuff of Hebrew religious mythology, is a figure that represents a very real source of what has become an emerging understanding of a very real bloodline running through the veins of human descendants throughout all of human history.

There is, indeed, a Reptilian factor to humanity, and it shines through our religious and cultural icons. The serpent is one of the oldest and most widespread mythological symbols. Snakes have been associated with some of the oldest religious rituals known to humankind and have carried the dual expression of both good and evil. From the Hebrews' Serpent in the Garden to the Mayans' Quetzalcoatl; the Bhuddist Naga to the rattlesnake on the early Colonial American flags; the African Dahomey and Aido Hweido to Jörmungandr of the Nordic mythologies; and Ouroboros, the ancient Near Eastern serpent devouring its own tail representing the great cycle of life. Then there exist everything from sea serpents to St. George and the Dragon, and even the medical caduceus.

If symbolism, however, was all there was to the traceable bloodlines of the serpent, the flesh and blood of the story would be a short, sweet, picturesque history lesson. Demystifying the cover story of the serpent in the Garden is only the beginning. Identifying the source point of his and countless other mythological and cultural counterparts is what will allow us to see the tangible evidence of ancient human encounters with non-human entities, revealing what that lies beneath the surface of old mythologies as they meld into current-day accounts.

The human race has not yet experienced a full-fledged “first contact” with any alien race—at least none that has been disclosed. Those who have made experiential disclosures are generally pooh-poohed by the skeptical, scientific, religious, and even hopeful, believing camps. We do have, however, countless numbers of ancient documents and texts that record interactions with what can only be described as non-human intelligences. Most of these ancient documents categorize these intelligences as their version of gods, angels, demons, and spirit beings—the biblical stories of

the Sons of God, the Watchers, and their offspring, the Nephilim being prime examples.

One of the criticisms thrown at most religious documents is that they cannot be trusted as quantifiable historical sources, because they are books of faith. The Bible falls under this sweeping dismissal all the time. However, most ancient historical documents were synonymous with religious texts, as ancient peoples did not separate those two driving forces of civilization the way we do in modern affairs. Even as recently as the reigns of Henry VIII and Elizabeth I of England, many royal proclamations were linked to the religious views of the monarchs, and in that period of history in England, the conflict between Catholicism and Protestantism was a driving force. Keeping this non-separation of powers squarely in mind, note that Reptilian creatures have filled the texts of ancient documents. To cite just a small handful:

- ♦ The serpent Nachash interacted with and impregnated Eve in the Garden of Eden story.
- ♦ Oannes, the half-fish/half-man, and his people rose up out of the Persian Gulf to teach civilization to the ancient Mesopotamians.
- ♦ The Cannanite goddess Qetesh interacted with serpent beings.
- ♦ In Sumerian literature, Gilgamesh loses his powers of immortality to a serpent.
- ♦ The Sumerian fertility god, Ningizzida, is depicted as a serpent.
- ♦ The ancient Jewish (Hebrew) tribe of Levi is said to have conquered Europe under a surge driven by Reptilian “illuminati-like” overlords
- ♦ Ho Ti, of the House of Sui, also known as the Serpent Emperor of China (618 AD) found a wounded serpent and nursed it to health, after which it returned to him with a reward of recompense.

And there is much more, as we will discover throughout these pages.

The serpent has been a pervasive presence indeed throughout human history, filling our religious scriptures, historical tomes, and mythological

tales, and appearing on the faces of thousands of archaeological relics. And, yes, our theories of UFO visitations and extraterrestrial encounters have a decisive Reptilian influence in and throughout the ancient alien subculture. Simply enter the word *reptilian* in an Internet search engine and you will find millions of entries, ranging from the profusely inane and undocumented to highly politicized pseudo-religious movements, to loosely documented claims by highly credible people.

The opening lines of this book began by recounting an experiencer's tale of interaction with a single member of an "alien" reptoid race. We will now move forward to explore the veracity of these experiential claims, as well as the serpent as a religious symbol, a political force, a mythological influence, and a race of both intraterrestrial and extraterrestrial races bent on the mutual destruction and salvation of our species.

PART I
The Empire of the Serpent

Chapter One

The Annunaki and Their Sumerians

“[The realm of myth and magic] is a dangerous field: fairies abound, good fairies and bad fairies, dragons and dragon-slayers, gods and goddesses, truth and untruth, history and legend, science and fiction, inextricably mixed and fused. But what has archaeology to do with it, you will say? Archaeology is concerned with bones and flints, with pots and pans and post-holes, with stone and metal, in short, with the material remains and spades to dig them up with.”

—F.J. Tritsch, “Myth, Magic and Archaeology”

Going back to the very beginning is generally the best place to travel when looking for the roots of any mythology. It’s in the fertile soil of creation that we find the seeds that sprouted and grew into the massive, towering beanstalk that has led us to the realm of the giants and the golden goose in the clouds. And whether allegorical, mythological, legendary, or the stuff of fable, there is generally always an incontrovertible fact at the core—that thing that started the whole story. And let’s make no mistake about it: Once you start delving into the depths of comparative ancient stories, their encoded similarities and subsequent decipherment, you enter a muddled world of interpretation that will raise both dust and ire. Clearing the air is the monumental task with which you are left.

There are mindsets that are at complete odds here, like two trains running at high speed toward each other on the same set of tracks. There is bound to be an eventual collision of catastrophic proportion—in this case, the repeating scenario of science colliding with belief and archaeology running headlong into myth (and vice versa). But there has to be an accounting on both parts. Faith and belief open themselves to upholding the sometimes-nonsensical, mystical, un-provable, capricious, and many times ambiguous, spiritual soul of religion and mythology, whereas science and archaeology will eschew—many times with great disdain—the

unquantifiable as folly, rooting out what they define as fact from fiction, no matter how grounded in their own sense of objectivity and importance—rather like when the science of the day upheld that the earth was the center of the universe and the sun rotated around it. Those were simply the facts based on the available knowledge and interpretation, and they were religiously adhered to by the academia of the day—until, that is, science developed the capability to move beyond its limits and recalculate its positions, determining that the earth, indeed, rotated around the sun.

Now, bear with me as I work through laying a little background that will serve as the platform from which we will engage in an examination of the secret history of the Reptilians.

The Naked Truth

When I completed my work on *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim*, I recall sitting back in my office chair and staring at the ceiling for a long, silent time. In those minutes I was contemplating what it was that I had just written. In all the research I did into the Book of Genesis, from both Christian and Rabbinic standpoints, I found myself drawing further and further away from the God of my youth. It was not a deliberate distancing, but after stepping outside the box and looking back in, I found that the God I had discovered in my youth was not the same God that seemed to materialize after taking a closer look at more than dogmatic systematic theology. The God I grew up knowing was one of holiness, of benevolence, and ultimately of eternal, sacrificial, propitiating, atoning love. His was a love that transcended everything and embraced me where I was, saving me from myself, and the horrors of an eternal existence void of His loving presence.

Perhaps this was simply a byproduct of my need to step “outside the box” in order to see things from as objective a point of view as possible. This seems to be the problem with a purely academic—or secular—examination of these things: When you distance yourself from the possibility of the weird, odd, spiritual, and mythological, you deliberately set yourself up to look beyond the wonder and the possibilities, to funneling all research through a sterile filter.

What is even more profound is to observe the distillation of research by secular scholarship and that the scientific and skeptical approach to biblically themed topics, such as the Nephilim, seems to operate under a

preconceived notion that the Bible cannot be taken literally in any form, including its historicity. One critic of *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim* stated that I erred simply by placing any veracity at all in the biblical record. However, it has been quantified time and time again that the Bible is quite irrefutably strong in its historical presentations, albeit at times vague, limited, and deliberately not forthcoming in detailed information, as the contextual themes inclusive of some historical data were meant to present a faith principle, rather than historical documentation. Therefore the historical information was sometimes sketchy, at best. Skeptical researchers, honest to their scholarship, are finding it increasingly more difficult to dispute the overwhelming archeological evidence for the historical accuracy of the biblical accounts. Any corroboration of biblical historical facts, however, does not by any means emphatically state that the faith story wrapped around these events is “truth,” but it does lend to the veracity of the Bible as a historically accurate document, aside from the religious and spiritual aspects of Judaism and Christianity. Biblical accounts that include such things as listings of nations, historic personages, customary rituals, and colloquial practices have been verified by archeological evidence and anthropological research. Secular academicians who have corner-stoned careers on criticism of biblical history have many times found themselves humiliated by new discoveries that validate the biblical accounts they had previously deemed to be myth (academic embarrassment). Among these are such discoveries as the existence of the obscure Hittites, King David of Israel, Goliath of Gath, and Pontius Pilate, the praefect of Judea during the lifetime of Jesus of Nazareth. Nelson Glueck, noted 20th-century Jewish archeologist whose work in biblical archaeology led to the discovery of more than 1,500 ancient sites, put it this way: “It may be stated categorically that no archeological discovery has ever controverted a single biblical reference. Scores of archeological findings have been made which confirm in clear outline or in exact detail historical statements in the Bible.”¹

Not surprisingly—as some think of the biblical record as being inaccurate and rife with faith stories alone—when stacked up against non-biblical accounts of historical events, the scriptural narratives reveal unflinching veracity. In his 1919 collection of essays and other journal work, *A Scientific Investigation of the Old Testament*, R.D. Wilson, who was fluent in 45 ancient languages and dialects (inclusive of all the biblical

languages of common etymological origin, such as Hebrew, Aramaic, Assyrian, Phoenician, Sumerian, Babylonian dialects, Ethiopic, as well as several Egyptian and Persian dialects), engaged in a meticulous analysis of 29 different monarchs from 10 different nations mentioned in Masoretic texts (the Old Testament). By way of comparative analysis, every one of these monarchs had corresponding archeological artifacts documented by secular historians containing their names, syllable-by-syllable, consonant-by-consonant. Wilson demonstrated that the monarchical names as recorded in the biblical record matched the findings of secular historians and archaeological artifacts, accurate in minute detail to the chronological order of the kings. Conversely, Wilson also demonstrated that many secular historical accounts were often filled with gross inaccuracies and were eventually deemed quite unreliable. Ptolemy, the famed Librarian of Alexandria, and even Herodotus were horrendously inaccurate in their documentation of royal names, and in many instances even misspelled the names (in the Library of Alexandria) to the point of nearly being unable to be recognized when compared to their respective archaeological artifacts or ancient monuments. Their research simply required more evidentiary research to establish any sort of accurate corroboration.

Even the well-known 19th-century archaeologist and historian Sir William Ramsay, a noted scholarly skeptic of biblical history, converted to Christianity after his travels to Asia Minor to conduct meticulous research and archaeological excavations into the New Testament's Gospel according to Luke and Luke's follow-up historical record, the Acts of the Apostles. The evidence Ramsay uncovered continually and incontrovertibly supported the historical record of the biblical writings of Luke. At a time when many secular historians and scholars dismissed the existence of most of Luke's record of governmental officials and geographical name-places, Ramsay's archeological digs actually flipped the naysayers' claims on their heads. Without error, Ramsey established through his excavations that Luke was accurate in naming countries, cities, islands, Roman officials, and many other salient details of historical record contained in the New Testament writings. As a result of his discoveries, Ramsay wrote: "I began with a mind unfavorable to it...but more recently I found myself brought into contact with the Book of Acts as an authority for the topography, antiquities, and society of Asia Minor. It was gradually borne upon me that in various details the (biblical) narrative showed marvelous truth."²

Ramsay also wrote: “Luke is a historian of the first rank; not merely are his statements of fact trustworthy...this author should be placed along with the very greatest historians.”³

Although the previous paragraphs may have seemed a bit of a rabbit trail—for which I have become very well-known, as there is so much information that could be incorporated to illuminate any tidbit of information out there—I included them for the purpose of establishing the fact that not all religious literature is merely faith-based alone, despite many secular, skeptical opponents, in their own particular biases, wishing it were so. When you step outside the box of a particular faith, and look to find corroboration between historical data and scriptural teaching, using the faith writing as a guide, not a filter, you will find that biblical history, in particular, stands the test of historical scrutiny.

However, because the historical data may be reliable, this does not always necessitate the spiritual information it’s housed within is universal truth. Though I can insist that the Constitution of the United States is a historical document and uphold it as closely as possible to its original intent, there will be others who interpret its words through different filters, thereby causing decades of debate on its veracity versus its interpretability. The same is true with religious writings.

On a spiritual level, my personal universe was very small back in the days of my youth, and God was a God, I was told, who waited for me with open arms, to take my troubled life and make it something beautiful through His saving, undeserved grace. Yet the older I got, and the more I dug into the topic of the biblical Nephilim, the more I found a God emerging from the murkiness that was, in nature and human-like emotional volatility, ultimately detached from humanity—a God who didn’t give (and pardon my plain vernacular here) two shits about humanity. This is mythological interpretation as opposed to historical veracity, but it is the result of my spiritual studies and evolving understanding of the spiritual content of these ancient documents. Despite all the teaching about God and all the systematic theology in my Bible school and seminary days, the Elohim of the Old Testament seemed more concerned and focused on the stuffs going on in the realm of the heavens than he did with human beings. There are many instances in the Bible’s stories of God’s dealings with mankind where human life was as dispensable as yesterday’s news, and several occasions

where God insisted on their extermination and even followed through with it by divine judgment or mandates passed on to His followers. And once I discovered that the Elohim were a *plurality*—a pantheon, if you will—dominated by a superior member of their caste of gods, the one, singular, omniscient, omnipresent God of my upbringing took a decidedly rear seat in the family van. Although there were plenty of scriptures that were interpreted as God’s presence, love, and interaction with people, there were even more that spoke to His ability to be as human and unjust as any earthly monarch establishing his jealous reign over his subjects, enacting the wiping out of non-believers and the genocide of whole peoples in His justified wrath. There was even an account in the Old Testament Book of Exodus where God was going to destroy His promised people, and it took the intervention of Moses to hold back God’s wrath, reminding Him of His promise to Abraham and caused God to “repent of the evil he was going to do” (Exodus 32:14).

The Jewish Midrash teaches (Ecclesiastes 5:4) that “Three things annul evil decrees: 1) prayer; 2) charity [righteousness]; 3) repentance [tshuvah].” In striking contrast, however, in Bamidbar Rabbah (23:8; cf: Exodus 32:14) we read that Moses “came forward and *made God repent* (author’s emphasis).” In this case, it was the intervention of a righteous human being that preceded prayer, righteousness, or *teshuvah* [תְשׁוּבָה] on the part of evil-doers. There are several instances in Hebrew scripture where men intervened and changed the mind of God; Moses, Abraham, and Jonah, in particular, seemingly all had the influence to reverse what can be understood as God’s “evil inclination.” In fact, Exodus 32:9–14 passage says:

9–10God said to Moses, “I look at this people—oh! what a stubborn, hard-headed people! Let me alone now, give my anger free reign to burst into flames and incinerate them. But I’ll make a great nation out of you *instead* (author’s emphasis).”

11–13Moses tried to calm his God down. He said, “Why, God, would you lose your temper with your people? Why, you brought them out of Egypt in a tremendous demonstration of power and strength. Why let the Egyptians say, ‘He had it in for them—he brought them out so he could kill them in the mountains, wipe them right off the face of the Earth.’ Stop your

anger. Think twice about bringing evil against your people! Think of Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, your servants to whom you gave your word, telling them ‘I will give you many children, as many as the stars in the sky, and I’ll give this land to your children as their land forever.’”

¹⁴And God did think twice. He *decided not to do the evil* (author’s emphasis) he had threatened against his people.

In short, there are several biblical instances in which God looked more and more like Zeus, Neptune, Elil, and the other superior reigning gods of mythology than He did a real, substantive heavenly father that was so presented throughout my life. God began to look no different than all the other “false” gods we learned about in comparative religions courses. He started to take on the traits and attributes of a god created by man for the purpose of rallying the troops or controlling the erstwhile yet sinful courses of common folk who needed to be reigned in and controlled.

Further, as I began the research into ancient religions for the purpose of this book, I found much of what I had believed by faith to be the only-one-true-religion, to be simply the stuffs of revitalized, rewritten, reworked—possibly even plagiarized—religions of thousands of years prior to the writing of the compiled books we refer to today as the Bible. When Moses penned the Pentateuch (the first five books of the Hebrew Bible and the Christian Old Testament) in and around 1400 BCE (I believe there is absolutely no reason to doubt that these books were, at least originally, authored by Moses, and that he indeed was a real, historical person, as established in the dating system set forth in my previous work⁴), it is very clear that Moses “borrowed” information from the earlier Sumerian and Akkadian religions, recorded in cuneiform 1,500–2,000 years earlier, sometime between 2500 and 2800 BCE. (**Author’s Note:** In *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim*, when stating that the date of the Sumerian civilization flourished around “4500–4800 BCE,” I meant to say 2500–2800 BCE, but inadvertently stated the number of years from today, backward, rather the correct date. Ah, the things that can get missed even in your most meticulous editing!) The evolution and migration of humans from the Fertile Crescent region between the Tigris and Euphrates rivers south and west into the Canaanite region brought with it, also, the evolution and transformation of ancient religion. The Hebrews picked up on the name

“El” and incorporated it into their religion—their own, homespun version of a superior god and the pantheon of the Sumerians. Elil became Elohim, El Eliyon, El Shaddai of the Hebrew religion, while Enki/Ea, the base word for Ywhw, became Yahweh, or Jehovah.

However, when discussing this very issue of etymology of ancient god-names, my friend and Byzantine Catholic priest Father Jack Ash-craft said to me in a personal conversation, “The word ‘Allah’ can be found in use in the Syrian Churches. The etymology isn’t the issue. Muhammad merely used a common word in his tribe for deity. The issue is the character, will, and salvific history of the deity concerned. If they do not match, they cannot be the same deity.”

When considering this anthropological migration of religion and its adaptation of cultural words and names, it is interesting to note that the name “Allah” was one of the pagan deities of the Quraish. As a youth, Muhammad, who later founded the Islamic religion, participated in the worship of the 360 pagan gods of the Kabah in Mecca, overseen by the Quraish tribe to which Muhammad belonged. As Muhammad grew up, he was influenced by Jewish and Christian monotheists who condemned the polytheism of the Kabah. At some point in Muhammad’s life, he became convinced that polytheism was completely incompatible for a nationalistic-based religion and sought to reject the 360 pagan gods with which he had been raised.⁵ Muhammad was converted to the concept of monotheism through the influence and teachings of Judaism and Christianity.⁶ However, being a proud nationalistic Arab, he sought not to change his people’s beliefs completely, but turned reformer and sought to reboot his native pagan religion rather than adopt a completely different belief system altogether, such as Christianity. As a result, Muhammad took the chief pagan god of the Kabah in Mecca (Hubal/Allah⁷) and chose him to be his new monotheistic god. This god was already considered the chief god among the other gods at the Kabah. Muhammad’s strategy was simple: Rather than converting all the Arab people to the monotheism of Christianity, he merely banished the other 359 pagan gods and chose Hubal/Allah to be the one and only god, thus giving Islam “Allah.” In a very real sense, Muhammad created Islam out of whole cloth for the purpose of solidifying Arabic nationalism under one god and one religion—much the same as Constantine with Christianity in the early 300s AD.

The last thing I wish to do is dissuade anyone from their personal faith or traditional beliefs. However, in saying that, it also must be recognized that even the most sacredly held names in our most holy beliefs have come from earlier sources. Civilization developed and migrated across the globe, and with that came the migration and evolution of religious thought. Just as the early Christian church dislocated pagan tribes and usurped their places of high worship, burning down their sacred groves only to erect chapels and cathedrals in their place, so did ancient humanity as they borrowed and transformed religion into newer modes of practice and objects of worship.

This train of thought, of course, represents what religious scholars would call a secular view. It eliminates the need for faith, and filters the history of humanity and the development of religion and religious stories through the strainer of archaeology and anthropology. Accordingly, evangelicals and staunch adherents to Judeo-Christian faith, as well as Islam and other dogmatic faiths, would view this migration of religion and evolution of language as nothing more than a secularized explanation for something they accept by faith. At best they would accept by faith that the secular view can be merged with the religious mythology. Insisting that the so-called secular left despises them, Evangelical Christians maintain that post-modernism has moved the secularists to abandon absolutism for the more comfortable, objective, relative definition of “truth”: “Evangelical Christians believe... there is absolute truth which applies to all people, in all cultures, for all times. Evangelicals recognize that this objective and absolute truth is found ultimately in the one true God...and in His revelation given to us personally in Jesus Christ and in the Bible.⁸

In a conversation in July 2012, during the writing of these paragraphs, Micah Hanks, prominent futurist and author, said to me:

I think when one begins to look at the anthro-side of things, our inherent humanity is put in new perspective for us. It becomes easy to dismiss any kind of divinity at that point. But divinity is faith...in what? Faith cannot exist without the hope for something greater.... It is merely that glue which binds us to the divine. Whether or not a God exists, many have faith...and many who choose not to believe lack that faith, even if “he” is still there nonetheless. Or is our “faith” merely another human construct, much like thought, sight, and other things?

And, then, rather tongue-in-cheek, he added, “I would like to know if the Darsannee of Plibius TE-17 with their cold stony moon have an equivalent word to our English ‘faith.’”

We’ll cover this in more detail later, but suffice it to say that at this point in our study the Hebrew Bible starts to look more and more as if it is, simply, the Hebrew *version* of greater and much older worldly events. Could the Old Testament be nothing more than mere religious myth as opposed to the absolute on the spiritual truth of the universe, as Judeo-Christianity teaches? The more we investigate our religious origins, through the many myths, legends, and dogmatic theologies out there, the more we find that the similarities are staggering. Is there a “one true religion,” where God is the benevolent ruler of all that exists, or are all these collective mythologies simply different versions of common events, with common threads running throughout them all? Was there some “proto-religion” from which all ancient religions drew their basic information, or did there exist some magnificent story from which all religions built their versions of origins?

And what of this pervasive presence of the serpent that emerges not only in the Sumerian and Hebrew religions, but in many prevalent religious mythologies the world over? What of this supposed mysterious race of Reptilian beings that seems to run through the undercurrent of humanity’s mythos? Are these creatures the mere stuffs of man’s creation? The devils in the dark of the conspiratorial minded? Or are they the diaphanous stuff of ether?

Archaeology and Myth

archae·ol·ogy (noun)

The recovery and study of material objects, such as graves, buildings, tools, artworks, and human remains for the purpose of investigating the structure and behavior of past cultures. Archaeologists rely on physical remains as clues to the emergence and development of human societies and civilizations. Anthropologists, by contrast, interact with living people to study their cultures. (*The American Heritage New Dictionary of Cultural Literacy*)

myth (noun)

A traditional or legendary story, usually concerning some being or hero or event, with or without a determinable basis of fact or a natural explanation, esp. one that is concerned with deities and demigods and explains some practice, rite, or phenomenon of nature.

Stories or matter of this kind: realm of myth.

Any invented story, idea, or concept: His account of the event is pure myth.

An imaginary or fictitious thing or person.

An unproved or false collective belief that is used to justify a social institution. (*Collins English Dictionary, Complete & Unabridged, 10th Edition*)

I was recently part of a live debate where an archaeological PhD made the emphatic statement that myth was merely “mankind’s fantasies” and nothing more. Though it’s true that a myth can at times be a mere story, removing itself far from the status of reliable historical resource that the increasingly scientifically minded discipline of archaeo-anthropological disciplines would utilize, myths are not always as rooted in the realms of fantasy as the esteemed halls of academia might consider them to be. Of necessity to a richer understanding of our past, an interdisciplinary dialogue efficacious to the future development of both mythological and archaeological disciplines should exist. Perhaps, somewhere along the way, you will come to find that the union of archaeology and mythology is far from being grounded in the realm of fairytale.

In context to the subject matter of this book, I am hailing back to the creation story as written in the Old Testament of the Bible. Although the story of creation as told in the book of Genesis is not the first of humanity’s creation stories, it is one that tends to be most familiar in a broader sense and contains the roots of this discussion, so it is there that I will begin this search for fact, buried deep within the religious machinations and mythologies of faith. Also note that, though we may be able to identify facts within the linguistics and stories of the ancient texts, there is still no real way to quantify those facts as being hard evidence as to how things actually happened. But the multiplicity of creation accounts spread across a multiplicity of cultures and religions does give us a visible common thread

that, when viewed from “outside the box” of any particular religion or culture, presents a picture comprised of commonalities that are pan-cultural.

Does this merely underscore the notion that humanity’s civilizations, cultures, and religions have all evolved in equal fashion as one another? Or does it establish that there is a common thread woven throughout all cultures, beginning with a singular, common event lost in primordial antiquity? Each subsequent culture then ascribes its own version of events, character names, and twists on the original story, remanufacturing it to adapt to their own values and politics, not to mention the un-pierceable veils—the individual accounts of encounters and experiences that cannot be substantiated, but that are wholly important to any consideration of these spiritualistic, therefore hyper-speculative things.

Adam, Eve, and the Prince

The Book of Genesis tells us that Adam and Eve were the first couple. Whether you believe they were real people evolved from lower species, metaphoric stick figures, mythological characters, or actual, living human beings spiritually set against a deeply encoded message, the Hebrew religion tells us that they were created by God and given dominion over a garden paradise, and commanded to not eat of certain fruit growing on certain trees, lest they “die.” Period.

Enter, stage left, the trickster character Nachash [נַחַשׁ], the serpent. Although never identified in the text as Lucifer, Satan, or the Devil (those names being attributed to him much later in the biblical scriptures), this character has become religiously synonymous with the devilish figure who led humanity away from God, thereby ushering in original sin and the resultant fall of mankind from a state of grace before a holy God, placing humanity in need of a spiritual savior-redeemer. This serpent character is also established from that point forward as the evil force, ever-present and working to thwart the work of a gracious and loving God in the affairs of humanity. Nachash is the Hebrew word that, when translated into English means, “serpent; trickster; crafty magician, bringer of knowledge; illuminator; bright shining one.” According to Psalm 82, “God,” appearing in the singular version of the word *Elohim*, refers to the *other* gods of heaven—the “Divine Council”—as the Elohim [אֱלֹהִים], using the very same Hebrew word in its plural version, also calling them the “bright,

shining Princes of Heaven.” In this instance, you have the God of the Hebrew Bible declaring the existence of a “caste of gods” or “minor gods” over which He has authority, but whom he calls by the same name. Note that He never refers to them as “angels.” The Hebrew word for angels (*mal’ahk* [מֶלֶךְ], which means “messenger”) never appears in the passage.

Noted Hebrew and ancient Semitic language scholar Michael S. Heiser put it this way:

...[I]n light of the serpentine appearance of divine beings in Yahweh’s presence, what we have in Genesis chapter three is wordplay.... *That is, Eve was not talking to a snake. She was speaking to an bright, shining upright being who was serpentine in appearance, and who was trying to bewitch her with lies.* (Heiser’s emphasis)⁹

In other words, Eve was in the presence of one of the Sons of God. These beings were not angelic in nature, but were beings that possessed free will, and were more powerful than the angels, the messengers of God. When Psalm 8:4–5 speaks of the creation of human beings, utilizing the phrase “a little lower than the angels,” the Hebrew text actually renders this as “a little lower than the Elohim.” Eve was actually interacting with a member of the Divine Council who did not share God/Yahweh’s enthusiasm for his new creation, human beings.

I am convinced, by ancient linguistic use of the same word, that the Serpent in the Garden of Eden story is one of these bright shining princes of heaven who is none other than the “bright shining one” who appears in the Genesis account of Adam and Eve as Nachash, the serpent character, who “seduces” and impregnates Eve, after she sits at his feet to learn the knowledge he bestows.

Believe what you will, as your faith might dictate regarding the connection to Lucifer, the Star of the Morning, the “Bright Shining Presence of the Glory of God,” but the big question to ask is whether or not this teaching in the Hebrew scripture is a factual accounting or an elaborate cover story for much deeper events involving much more detail. We will, most probably, never know if Adam and Eve or Nachash ever existed, outside the realm of a faith story. But historical evidence does exist that links all these characters to other personages in different creation

mythologies throughout many other ancient religious cultures, establishing a common thread or under-current, as we will see later in this chapter.

Let me say again, at this still-early point in this study, that it is not my intent to offend anyone's religious or spiritual beliefs or sensibilities. Nor is it my desire to trounce scientific research or input. My personal background is one that has its foundations in the Christian faith and academia; that is where I received all of my formal-yet-incomplete biblical training and seminary education, and I must state again, for emphasis, that I do not by any means wish to dissuade anyone from believing what they trust by faith in their own heart to be true. I would like to present some questions, however, throughout the entirety of this book that may challenge those beliefs. When making comparative forays into religious teachings that span many different cultures, one is left to decipher the messages and determine in his own heart that which he believes to be true and that which he must discard as false, not to mention what one can or cannot accept as fact on the basis of archaeological and anthropological research—two schools of study that must completely separate themselves from faith issues in order to retain integrity in fact-finding. (As with my previous work on the Nephilim, I am sure that there will be some who will fear for the eternal salvation of my soul, if not the back-slidden state of my position with the Christian God.)

Suffice it to say that our personal faiths and religions—if adhered to—play harsh taskmasters in our lives and with what we understand to be our eternal souls. Add to that faith mix, the necessity of stepping back to examine other theologies outside its reach, then blend them all together with mythology, and you will find that there may exist something else completely different lying beneath the surface. There just may be things in the anthro-archaeo-mythological record that challenges you to look beyond the limits of your religious affiliations and think outside the box.

Slaves and Freedom Fighters

“[While] the Annunaki are sitting before you,
...Belet-ili the womb-goddess is present,
Let the womb-goddess create offspring,
And let man bear the load of the gods!
...Create primeval man that he may bear the yoke!

Let him bear the yoke, the work of Elil,
Let man bear the yoke of the gods!"

—Atrahasis, Tablet 1¹⁰



Cuneiform tablet containing the Atrahasis Epic, housed in the British Museum. Image made available through Wikimedia Commons.

Let's go back a little further than the writing of Genesis to the ancient Mesopotamian civilization of Sumer. According to their ancient cuneiforms, they were ruled by the Annuna/Annunaki, their god-caste of beings who came to the earth from the heavens. As the story goes, these gods, weary of performing their own manual labor, bred into—or genetically engineered and manipulated the DNA of—the humans of the Mesopotamian region who roamed as wild beasts. They did this to create a slave caste to do their work for them. As the story continues to unfold, the humans began to feel the weight of their enslavement. Theirs was an unwilling servitude. Accordingly, as time went on, the cruel hand of the

slave masters became unbearable to the humans, and some of the Annunaki overlords went rogue, launching a conspiracy to free the humans and teach them the knowledge of science and spirituality, and the art of civilization, thus elevating them to the same god-like status as the Annunaki. The leader of the rebel freedom fighters was none other than Elil's brother god, an Annunaki named Enki, also known as Ea in the neighboring Akkadian culture.

When seeking to understand any ancient text, it is important to recognize a few things up-front:

1. The language in which it was written, as most ancient languages have a logic all their own that does not translate as well into modern English.
2. The people for whom the stories were being written. Their understanding of the stories and the way in which they were presented could have been vastly different than what we understand in a modern reading.
3. The context of the text in relation to the people for whom it was being written. Again, our current-day understanding being completely different as to what ancient peoples' would be.

The poetic, picturesque language of these ancient Sumerian texts, though beautiful in their presentation as ancient religious accounts, offer no source to quantify their veracity, thereby leaving themselves to stand only as religious history and myth. The importance of sources and verifiable information matter wholly when deciphering ancient texts, but five to seven thousand years ago, there was little need for this, if there existed even the slightest concept that far in the future, archaeologists, historians, and anthropologists would be far greater served had the ancients included indexes and bibliographies along with their cuneiform tablets. These accounts were written as religious history, in their context, and presented to the people of that time and place. The writers were establishing spiritual stories and a history of the origins of their people, but they were not presenting that information for the ages.



Zechariah Sitchin. Image made available through Wikimedia Commons.

In modern day, their stories have certainly been over-romanticized in the works of the late Zechariah Sitchin, who, while perhaps being “on to something,” pushed his theories too far in order to make things fit. But despite his mistranslations and abused usages of ancient text, he did create an intriguing fictional account of the descent of extraterrestrial beings to the earth, housing the Sumerian mythology in updated, vernacular narrative. A prime example is when Sitchin forced the word *Nephilim* to mean “people of the firey rockets.”¹¹ Sitchin, at best, simply mistranslated the word, ignoring—or misunderstanding—the Aramaic usage blended with biblical Hebrew. The Nephilim were not the ones who “came down” from anywhere. They were the descendants—the offspring—of those who actually did come down—namely, the Watchers, the “Sons of God,” the bene ha ’Elohim [בְּנֵי־הָאֱלֹהִים] of Genesis chapter six. At worst, Sitchin deliberately ignored linguistics and fabricated meanings in order to substantiate his personal theories. But it is easy to understand how he may have extrapolated word definition from the combination of language and pictographs, as many of the carvings and reliefs from ancient Sumer depict their gods as descending in winged or bowl-like craft.



First-millennium seal showing descending Annunaki. Pictured is a worshipper and a fish-garbed sage before a stylized tree with a crescent moon and the descending winged disk set in the sky above it. Behind this group is another plant-form with a radiant star and the Star-Cluster (Pleiades cluster) above. In the background is the dragon of Marduk with Marduk's spear and Nabu's standard upon its back. Image made available through Wikimedia Commons.

The bigger issue is that Sitchin, in desiring to update the mythology and bring it into a more relevant understanding of ancient astronaut theory, simply did not do his homework. He, rather, like many of the theoretical metaphysicists of our age, stated that things were so, based solely on his (mis)interpretation of language, and his continual forcing of the square peg into the round hole. It's like grasping to the farthest possible meaning of a word—the broadest associative definition—and utilizing that obscure definition as the rock solid basis for your hypothesis. That can only end in disastrous interpretation and ultimately faulty conclusions.

When Sitchin refers to the Nephilim as the “people of the firey rockets,” he has gone far out of his way and deep into a misunderstanding of the Sumerian language in order to establish his hypothesis. His argument for “ancient rockets” and “firey space flight” is constructed completely on two ancient Sumerian words, *mu* and *me*,¹² which are the same words as the Akkadian *shamu*, and the Hebrew *shem*. Continuing in his argument to establish the ancient space craft theory, Sitchin goes on to contend that the Tower of Babel account in Genesis, in which the people wanted to make for themselves a *shem*, is in reality describing the construction of a flying craft

or rocket of some sort. In his book *The Twelfth Planet*, Sitchin defines the Sumerian word *mu* as meaning “an oval shaped, conical object,” as well as “that which rises straight.”¹³

The problem is that Mr. Sitchin merely defines the word, but offers up no linguistic etymology to define it within the framework of Sumerian language. He simply states the meaning and continues on building his hypothesis. However, it is interesting to note that the ancient Sumerians created their own dictionary,¹⁴ and it contains the word *mu*! The entry in the ancient Sumerian dictionary has the word *mu* being synonymous with the Akkadian word *shamu*, meaning “heaven, part of the sky, (sometimes) rain.” This is what the word means according to ancient scribes, who make no mention of flying craft or fiery rocket ships. It is a simple descriptive noun for the sky. The Sumerian word *me* is used for the same meaning, as part of the heavens.

And that’s just the linguistics. Zechariah Sitchin represents, to me, a man who had a deep-set interest in discovering who we are and where we came from. His research into ancient Mesopotamian culture to look for ancient answers is admirable, while all at once woefully incomplete and academically insincere.

Peter James, coauthor of the controversial book *Centuries of Darkness*, has leveled his own criticisms against Sitchin’s scholarship, pointing out that he not only deliberately had to disregard the rest of the known world outside Sumer and Mesopotamian civilization, but also for his seemingly innate misunderstanding of Babylonian literature:

[Sitchin] uses the Epic of Creation Enuma Elish as the foundation for his cosmogony, identifying the young god Marduk, who overthrows the older regime of gods and creates the Earth, as the unknown “Twelfth Planet.” In order to do so, he interprets the Babylonian theogony as a factual account of the birth of the other “eleven” planets. The Babylonian names for the planets are established beyond a shadow of a doubt—Ishtar was the deity of Venus, Nergal of Mars, and Marduk of Jupiter—and confirmed by hundreds of astronomical/astrological tables and treatises on clay tablets and papyri from the Hellenistic period. Sitchin merrily ignores all this and assigns unwarranted planetary identities to the gods

mentioned in the theogony. For example, Apsu, attested as god of the primeval waters, becomes, of all things, the Sun! Ea, as it suits Sitchin, is sometimes planet Neptune and sometimes a spaceman. And the identity of Ishtar as the planet Venus, a central feature of Mesopotamian religion, is nowhere mentioned in the book—instead Sitchin arbitrarily assigns to Venus another deity from *Enuma Elish*, and reserves Ishtar for a role as a female astronaut.¹⁵

William Irwin Thompson, well-known social philosopher and cultural critic (ergo: a man who make his living criticizing and poking tongue-in-cheek jabs), writer and publisher of poetry throughout his career, and a recipient of the Oslo International Poetry Festival Award in 1986, describes his personal writing and speaking style as mind-jazz on ancient texts. Thompson had this to say about what he calls Sitchin's "literalism":

What Sitchin sees is what he needs for his hypothesis. So figure 15 on [page 40](#) is radiation therapy, and figure 71 on [page 136](#) is a god inside a rocket-shaped chamber. If these are gods, why are they stuck with our cheap B movie technology of rockets, microphones, space-suits, and radiation therapy? If they are gods, then why can't they have some really divine technology such as intradimensional worm-hole travel, antigravity, starlight propulsion, or black hole bounce rematerializations? Sitchin has constructed what appears to be a convincing argument, but when he gets close to single images on ancient tablets, he falls back into the literalism of "Here is an image of the gods in rockets." Suddenly, ancient Sumer is made to look like the movie set for *Destination Moon*. Erich Von Däniken's potboiler *Chariots of the Gods?* has the same problem. The plain of Nazca in Peru is turned into a World War II landing strip. The gods can cross galactic distances, but by the time they get to Peru, their spaceships are imagined as World War II prop jobs that need an enormous landing strip. This literalization of the imagination doesn't make any sense, but every time it doesn't, you hear Sitchin say "There can be no doubt, but..."¹⁶

This is what disturbs me most about Zechariah Sitchin.

As someone who is invested in wanting to know more about our origins, and who is thoroughly intrigued with the ancient astronaut theory, I have to admit that such small words as *mu* and *me* can redefine the entire theory as put forward by Sitchin, who I still contend has some good ideas brewing, but has relied too heavily—and foolheartedly—on his own translations and, perhaps even deliberate, squeezing of a definition to fit his overall theory.

Folks, language is important. It is so important that even the Bible refers to itself as a book that is so “God-breathed,” that it is “infallible” and cannot be changed by “one jot or tittle” (Matthew 5:18)—the tiniest of Hebrew punctuation marks. Simply put, the writers of Hebrew scripture were *using language as a gage of authenticity*. That is an ultimately strong point on which theories can rise or fall, and we have archaeologists to thank for the deciphering of ancient mythological texts. Who knew a five-thousand-year-old dictionary would come in so handy? I wish Sitchin had referred to it, as that would, for me, not cast such broad dispersions on his interpretations and subsequent theories.

Does this—or should it—delegitimize Sitchin’s theories and his dozen-plus books on the topic? A most definitive yes on my part. If you are going to present theory based on scholarship, would it not be important to first ensure that the scholarship is sound?



Enki from a ninth-century BCE Babylonian alabaster wall-panel relief.
Copyright Trustees of the British Museum. Image used by permission of the British Museum.

In turn, should this, then, delegitimize ancient alien theory that adheres to similar yet differing hypothesis as Sitchin's? Not necessarily. Better scholarship on the topic needs to be established. And in the end, we may not come up drawing the same conclusions that were the object of our original hypothesis.

In Sumerian mythology, Enki ("Ea" in the neighboring Akkadian religion) is the god of craft, mischief, intelligence, and knowledge. He is also known as the god over the waters and creation, and although the exact meaning of his name is uncertain, the common translation is "Lord of the Earth." When you compare him to Nachash in the Book of Genesis, you find similar definitions as the "trickster" and bringer of "mischief." When

you keep in mind the etymology of “making mischief,” you will find that its origins have little to do with what we consider to be mischief by modern standards. Mischief was in its earliest forms equated with chaos, havoc, and the committing of rebellious acts.

There is such overt similarity between the acts of Enki/Ea and the serpent in the Garden of Eden in the Book of Genesis that it cannot be overlooked. The traditional story tells us that the serpent is none other than Satan, the Devil, Lucifer. However, the serpent is never called by any of those names in the text. Those are names attributed to the serpent thousands of years later in other scriptural writings of the Hebrew Bible. What is clear is that Nachash, the serpent character in the Eden story, is a member of the Divine Council, the Elohim. As I covered extensively in *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim*, Psalm 82 presents a caste of minor gods referred to as the Elohim, the “bright, shining Princes of Heaven.”¹⁷ This plural form of the word *Elohim* was uttered in the text by the singular Elohim, who equates them to himself.

For most evangelicals, there is a problem in that the Old Testament, here, affirms the existence of a multiplicity of Elohim. Though simple, the solution requires us to think like an ancient Semitic Israelite, and not as a product of the Reformation or the modern evangelicalism that exists today. Biblical theology did not begin with modern evangelicalism, the Calvins, the Luthers, the Aquinases, or even the Augustines. It began with the ancient text as it stands, understood within the historical, cultural, and religious context that produced it.

The first occurrence of *Elohim* [אֱלֹהִים] is correctly translated “God” and is obviously to be taken as the singular form of the word for reasons of grammatical subject-verb agreement. The second use of the word *Elohim* in this passage is to be equally understood as being in the plural form because it is the object of the sentence’s preposition. The grammar and syntax are crystal clear in this psalm, in that a singularity cannot preside from within a singularity. It is clear by the language of the text that Elohim (the singular) is presiding over the Elohim (the plural), and it is repeated a second time later in the short psalm. Both “God” and the “gods” are represented by the identical word *Elohim* [אֱלֹהִים].¹⁸

It Must Be Satan!

By definition, Nachash, the bright shining one (later, he becomes known as Lucifer, who in his pre-fallen state is the bright shining presence and defender of the glory of God, “The Bright and Morning Star”—which is also a reference to the Messiah/Jesus, much later; more on this in the next chapter), is also known as “the bringer of knowledge and intelligence, the illuminator.” When Nachash seduced Eve by the offering of “forbidden fruit”—that forbidden information that would make humans “just as Elohim (gods)” (Genesis 3:22)—he became the bringer of knowledge and the emancipator of the intellect, for after the forbidden fruit was accepted and eaten, the humans knew that they were naked. They knew that there was more to their existence than simply caring for the garden for the superior being who bred them.

And the LORD God said, “The man has now become like one of us, knowing good and evil. He must not be allowed to reach out his hand and take also from the tree of life and eat, and live forever.”²³ So the LORD God banished him from the Garden of Eden to work the ground from which he had been taken. Genesis 3:22–23

The Sumerian tablets tell us that the rebel god named Enki/Ea was the extraterrestrial (not-of-this-earth, non-human) being appointed by the chief god of the Annunaki, Elil, to create Homo sapiens. After his involvement with the original genetic experiment that bequeathed the slave race of humans, bred to do the work for the Annunaki (as paralleled in the keepers of the Garden of Eden in the Book of Genesis) his compassion for the plight of the slave race shifted his role as a genetic engineer to that of a veritable “rebel leader.” His actions flew in the face of the rest of his kind.

Now there was one Atrahasis
Whose ear was open (to) his god Enki.
He would speak wih his god
And his god would speak with him.
Atrahasis made his voice heard
And spoke to his lord,
“How long [will the gods make us suffer]?
Will they make us suffer illness forever?”
Enki made his voice heard

And spoke to his servant:
“Call the elders, the senior men!
Start [an uprising] in your own house,
Let heralds proclaim...
Let them make a loud noise in the land:
Do not revere your gods,
Do not pray to your goddesses...”

—from: Atrahasis 1:vii¹⁹

It is also related in the Sumerian texts that Ea's headquarters of operation were in the swampy, backwater region called the Snake Marsh, also referred to as a *den* to many reptiles and serpents. In other words, the first fight for freedom of the human race took place in an area known as “Ea-Den.”

Enki/Ea was originally the god of the ancient Sumerian city, Eridu, known for being the first and oldest city mentioned throughout Sumerian literature. It is closely associated with Uruk (“First City”) as built in biblical tradition by Cain, the Nephilim son of Eve and Nachash.²⁰

Closely associated with the city of Eridu is the mythical region below the earth's surface, known as the Abzu,²¹ which is often interpreted as an underground sweet water ocean in Mesopotamian mythology.²²



The ancient city of Eridu as envisioned by archaeological artist Balage Balogh. Used by permission from the artist, www.archaeologyillustrated.com.

The geographical characteristics and features of the ancient site of the city of Eridu must have had great impact both physically and spiritually with the original concept of the Abzu. It is difficult to imagine what exactly made the place sacred to the ancient Sumerians, mostly due to the fact that there are no direct references or depictions of the original landscape and terrain. However, where there was water in these arid, desert regions, there was life, and it was in these geographical places that civilizations were established and flourished. Eridu was situated in a marshy and continuously flooded area in the backwaters of the Tigris and Euphrates rivers, where it can be easily deduced by geographical patterns that some natural phenomenon of flooding and receding marsh waters took place, and was perceived by the ancient inhabitants of Eridu to be sacred nature at work.

The concept of the Abzu was derived from the waterways and clear lagoons that encompassed the city of Eridu. The surrounding river backwaters were also referred to as a “marshy den” that physically created a sanctuary setting, enclosing the sacred city, where eventually, a cult arose, dedicated to the god and/or goddess of sweet water.²³

The earliest form of the god Enki could have been “Abzu,” who was later seen as being conquered or vanquished by Enki,²⁴ who then stepped into the place of Abzu, which in turn became known as his domain.²⁵ This sort of alteration of concepts, where an ancient deity becomes a mere attribute of a more contemporary, evolved, divine figure, was a common attributable alteration when the god took on the function or act of a certain deed or natural phenomena, such as took place in the rising and falling of the waters surrounding Eridu. And make no mistake, the changing of the names of deities was common practice among the ancients, this being clearly illustrated in the many names for God in the Old Testament (Jehovah, Elohim, El Shaddai, Adoni, the Angel of Lord, and many others) as well as the biblical record of the divine changing of names of some of the early patriarchs—Abram of Ur becoming Abraham, Jacob becoming Israel, Joseph being renamed by the Egyptians as Zaphnath-paaneah, Saul of Tarsus renamed Paul the Apostle, and even the Messiah had evolutionary progressive name changes and additions as the function of the Messiah grew and burgeoned: Kinsman Redeemer, the Lion of Judah, the Lamb of God, the Rod of Jesse (of the royal house of King David, which did not exist until thousands of years after the earliest form of Messiah was used),

and so on. The meanings of names was all-important in ancient religion, and the owner of the name change generally followed the rule of *change equates function, designation, or purpose*.

In antiquity, one deity might have had several names used for him simultaneously, as mentioned previously with the several names for God and Messiah in the Hebrew Bible. During the course of time as older names disappeared or developed into newer forms with greater contemporary meaning, the older name incorporated as an attribute of his newer function. However, it should be taken into consideration that an original meaning of the name of a deity might mean nothing at all to a community of people using that name many centuries after the name was first uttered.

Look to the Tetragrammaton, the paleo-Hebrew name of the god YHWH (Jehovah). It must have had a translatable meaning, very early on, prior to the writing of the Hebrew scriptures, when the Hebrew religion was in an early state of development, and still in its infancy. Yet, much later, when Moses composed the Hebrew Scriptures around 1400 BCE, which also contained the Law for the Hebrew people, establishing the foundations of the Jewish religion, demonstrates signs that the name YHWH was still rather ambiguous and had no direct translation. And it is highly possible that the original meaning of YHWH had no importance whatsoever for the Hebrews who lived much later, where in the fifth century BCE they used several divine names for God, all more than likely referring to older deities in older layers of Israelite religion. The form and pronunciation of YHWH, although considered as sacred, as was the deity behind the name itself, was never altered. It was simply retained as part of the growing list of attributable names for the Hebrew God.

All of this is highly important to understanding the name of Enki/Ea, the evolution of his name being much similar. Even if Enki/Ea once had a clearly translatable meaning that was understandable to ancient Sumerian people, that original meaning was not necessarily understood by the Mesopotamian people living in the third millennium city-states of Sumer and neighboring Akkad. But the name Enki—specifically the Akkadian version, Ea—did migrate into the Canaanite region from the Mesopotamian region throughout the course of the following millennia and a half. The name *Ea* became the base of the Canaanite word *YHWH* (pronounced “Yee-ah-weh”), the Hebrew name *Jehovah*. This is all important in understanding

how the idea of the serpent became the basis for the Genesis account of the Garden of Eden's Serpent character, Nachash.

The direct translation of the Sumerian name, Enki, recorded as a divine Sumerian name in written sources since the composition of the texts literally translated as "Lord Earth," or "Lord of the Earth," extending to the meaning of "he who ruled beneath the earth (the Abzu) and had dominion over it."²⁶

Sounds like Satan, doesn't it? The problem is that, although Enki/Ea has incredible mythological linkage to the Serpent in the Bible, the name Ea is the early form of the name *YHWH*—Jehovah. There is some sort of twist in meaning that has taken place along the millennia, and there is some theoretical, yet highly heretical, surmising that the two characters are, perhaps, one in the same: Lucifer and Jehovah, at least etymologically, if not theologically. Were they both of the pantheon of the Elohim? The connectivity between Enki/Ea, who brought forbidden knowledges of the gods to early humans from a place known as the Snake Den (Ea's Den), is undeniably connected to the character of Nachash, who was the illuminator and bringer of forbidden knowledge to Adam and Eve in the Genesis story of the Garden of Eden, yet he is etymologically linked to Jehovah, the savior of humanity.

Chapter Two

That's Not What I Learned in Sunday School

If you grew up anything like me, you attended Sunday school as a kid. Maybe you even attended as an adult, and perhaps you still attend today. I only talk about religious education in the framework of “Sunday school,” as it gives a quick reference in our minds to all the things we were taught in our religious training as kids. It’s there that we learned in rudimentary form all the basic stories of the Bible and the embryonic systematic theology that formed our particular denomination’s dogmas and doctrines. If you were Catholic, you went to Catechism. If Lutheran, you attended Confirmation classes. If Jewish, you attended synagogue and both pre-and post-bar and bat mitzvah education, and maybe even went on into Medrichim in your teens. Perhaps you are of a different faith altogether or experienced no form of biblical training at all. Most of us have some notion as to what the early stories of the bible had to say regarding the creation of mankind, the Garden of Eden, Noah and the Ark, and other great stories that are religious in their origins, but that have transcended into common dialogue through the countless retellings and spread into pop culture, children’s books, toys, games, and all sorts of other ancillary forms throughout the years.

For the purposes of this examination, as I have stated, I hail back to the roots of my Christian education, as they are the foremost familiar tales stemming from much older, not-so-familiar historical religious accounts and mythologies. If I were to approach an absolute stranger on the street and ask him or her about the Garden of Eden or the Serpent in the Garden or Noah’s Ark, a great flood, or even Moses and the Ten Commandments, he or she would, as would most people, have some idea of what it is I was asking. These are common stories woven into the fabric of our religious heritage; that is not to say *your* particular heritage, but the heritage and religious “mythology” of humanity. In many cases, the old adage rings true that familiarity breeds contempt, and many of us, though perhaps adhering to what we were taught as children, have drifted far from those original teachings, relegating them to the realm of fantasy and religious fairytale.

As I grew older, I began to question many of the things I had been taught. I knew that I accepted those old stories as the absolute truth of God's Word as I was taught to do as a youngster, and they became engrained in my mind as some sort of probable universal truth. But because I extended my biblical education into my teens and young adult years, I found that my logical mind contended with the faith stories that made so much sense so many years earlier. I questioned who God really was, what His names meant, and why there were so many things in the pages of scripture that seemed to play like a *Lord of the Rings* movie, only with angels on crack.

So, I started asking questions.

“Why does the name Elohim have a plural connotation?”

“What!? Beings came down from heaven and impregnated humans?! Who were they?”

“Why did Moses never name the pharaohs with whom he had his encounters? Isn’t that important to the narrative?”

“Was Goliath actually a real giant?”

“What the hell are ‘sea monsters’ and ‘leviathan’?”

“What is that wheel-within-a-wheel-within-a-wheel contraption in Ezekiel?”

“Why is it Leviticus placed a legal mandate against eating Alaskan King Crab?”

“What? I can’t have sex with a menstruating woman?”

And so on, and so on, and so on.

Those were only the tip of the iceberg when it came to my questions. Many more dealt with textual criticisms, historical references, the mention of constellations that played important roles in pagan religions but figured prominently in biblical passages, homosexuality, Old Testament patriarchal polygamy, the genocide of infidels, the drinking of alcoholic beverages, and the mandate for women to stay silent in the church while allowing them to teach classes and sing.

The questions listed here are not just examples I’ve pulled out of the air, but all actual questions I asked, among many others, while attending Bible school and seminary, and working in youth ministry in my teens and 20s.

Ultimately, I was labeled a troublemaker. This moniker was delivered in one of two forms: “You are a troublemaker, Mr. Roberts. That kind of thinking will get you nowhere, fast, around here,” and “You are a troublemaker, Mr. Roberts”—wink-wink-nudge-nudge, accompanied by the non-verbal “And you are on to something by asking, but we can’t talk about that here, in this setting,” which ended up in private, out-of-the-way chats over cups of coffee in dark corners of far-away cafés.

As in most theological, dogma-driven circles, questioning the norm generally lands you in hot water. But the biggest question of them all, for me, was this: “Why? How do we know that what we believe and teach is the absolute corner on the truth? Did God descend and tell us these things firsthand, or are we simply believing in something for which we have no proof and for which all the science and reason and logic out there seems to contradict? Is that the true nature of faith?” I’d ask, bewildered, “Believing something that makes no sense for a greater purpose of which we have absolutely no proof?”

“It’s better than believing in nothing at all,” I was admonished with some conclusive air.

That is what has brought me to the place where I write about these things. I do not disbelieve in God, nor have I thrown out the baby with the bathwater, but I do have questions for which answers are hard to come by within the context of my religion. So I started looking outside the box, to the places that might lend me some better perspective or some answers that might give more solidity to the foundation that I was told was as “solid as the Rock of Christ. Amen and Glory!”

The Serpent in the Garden

¹Now the snake was the most clever of all the wild animals the Lord God had made. One day the snake said to the woman, “Did God really say that you must not eat fruit from any tree in the garden?” ²The woman answered the snake, “We may eat fruit from the trees in the garden. ³But God told us, “You must not eat fruit from the tree that is in the middle of the garden. You must not even touch it, or you will die.”” ⁴But the snake said to the woman, “You will not die. ⁵God knows that if you eat the fruit from that tree, you will learn about good and evil

and you will be like God!”⁶The woman saw that the tree was beautiful, that its fruit was good to eat, and that it would make her wise. So she took some of its fruit and ate it. She also gave some of the fruit to her husband who was with her, and he ate it.⁷Then, it was as if their eyes were opened. They realized they were naked, so they sewed fig leaves together and made something to cover themselves.⁸Then they heard the Lord God walking in the garden during the cool part of the day, and the man and his wife hid from the Lord God among the trees in the garden.⁹But the Lord God called to the man and said, “Where are you?”¹⁰The man answered, “I heard you walking in the garden, and I was afraid because I was naked, so I hid.”

¹¹God asked, “Who told you that you were naked? Did you eat fruit from the tree from which I commanded you not to eat?”

¹²The man said, “You gave this woman to me and she gave me fruit from the tree, so I ate it.”¹³Then the Lord God said to the woman, “How could you have done such a thing?” She answered, “The snake tricked me, so I ate the fruit.”¹⁴The Lord God said to the snake, “Because you did this, a curse will be put on you. You will be cursed as no other animal, tame or wild, will ever be. You will crawl on your stomach, and you will eat dust all the days of your life.¹⁵I will make you and the woman enemies to each other. Your descendants and her descendants will be enemies. One of her descendants will crush your head, and you will bite his heel.”¹⁶Then God said to the woman, “I will cause you to have much trouble when you are pregnant, and when you give birth to children, you will have great pain. You will greatly desire your husband, but he will rule over you.”

¹⁷Then God said to the man, “You listened to what your wife said, and you ate fruit from the tree from which I commanded you not to eat. So I will put a curse on the ground, and you will have to work very hard for your food. In pain you will eat its food all the days of your life.¹⁸The ground will produce thorns and weeds for you, and you will eat the plants of the field.

¹⁹You will sweat and work hard for your food. Later you will

return to the ground, because you were taken from it. You are dust, and when you die, you will return to the dust.”²⁰The man named his wife Eve, because she was the mother of all the living.²¹The Lord God made clothes from animal skins for the man and his wife and dressed them.²²Then the Lord God said, “Humans have become like one of us; they know good and evil. We must keep them from eating some of the fruit from the tree of life, or they will live forever.”²³So the Lord God forced Adam out of the garden of Eden to work the ground from which he was taken.

²⁴After God forced humans out of the garden, he placed angels and a sword of fire that flashed around in every direction on its eastern border. This kept people from getting to the tree of life. (Genesis 3:1–24)

Taking a biblical story and dissecting it to bare all the internal organs and skeletal structure is a meticulously important process necessary in an understanding of ancient culture. Simply said, the Bible, for all of its gloriously revered tales of Jehovah God and His interactions with His human creation, spawning three of the world’s major religions, is a source point for understanding the ancient anthropology of humanity. Depending on your view of the veracity of biblical scripture, there is no shadow of doubt that its pages reveal stories, accounts, myths, legends, and fables that mirror—or are mirrored by—a plethora of cultures in the ancient world. The importance of the Bible, if not for faith and practice, is to see it as a book that demonstrates another facet of events as experienced and recounted by ancient mankind—a *version*, if you will, of common events experienced by ancient humanity.

Accordingly, if you are of Judeo-Christian or Muslim religious heritage, the pages of these religious texts and biblical scripture are Truth. According to certain Christian denominations (and a phrase I heard over and over throughout my Bible education!), “The Bible is the only foundation and authority for faith and practice.” Although this may or may not be true, it is clear that when one takes a step back from the text of the Bible, removing the sometimes-rose-colored glasses of dogma and systematic theology, you can start to read between the lines and see, as it were, the vastness of the

world flickering between the slats as you walk along the perimeter fence of one of the world's most holiest of books.

And there exist many other world cultures that have varying accounts of creation and the first family, some of which border on that fairytale sort of scenario, such as gods or great human warriors casting beasts and animals into the skies to create the swath of heavenly constellations. African and Native American accounts of creation share such commonalities such as subterranean humans coming to the surface of the earth and “gods” from the heavens impregnating their beautiful daughters with quadruplets.

For example, in Lakota, accounts of the first human family, Waziya, the Old Man, and his wife, Wakanka, emerged for the first time out into the world from underground. Wakanka gave birth to Ite, a daughter so beautiful that she captivated the attentions of Tate, the God of the Wind, who married her and fathered quadruplets. In this account, we are told of a character, Iktomi the Trickster, who tempted that first family with promises of great wealth, power, and beauty. Iktomi bears great resemblance to the Old Testament’s account of the serpent, Nachash, who tempted Eve in the Garden of Eden, promising eternal life and knowledge like that of the gods if she ate of the forbidden tree at the garden’s center. As with the Lakota tale of Waziya, Wakanka, and Ite, disobedience and treachery against God/the gods resulted in banishment from paradise for them all. Nachash and his Lakota counterpart, Iktomi, were cursed and exiled to the earth for all time, while the first families went on to bear children and spread throughout the world.

It is very interesting to note that although Waziya and Wakanka “came out from underground,” according to Lakota oral tradition, in the Genesis account (2:7), Adam was “formed out of the clay of the ground.” The similarities in cultural versions of creation can be clearly seen. All the varied cultural tales of creation have such a vast number of similarities and overlaps that the touch points create a tangled web of scientific methodology, established more by the crossovers in the myths of various cultures, rather than the veracity of the individual cultural tale.

In the Hebrew account of creation’s first family, in the Genesis text, Adam and Eve were the first human couple, created by God and placed in a beautiful paradise garden called Eden. Their mandate was to till the ground and keep it (the garden) for God, the only prohibition being the eating of

fruit from the two forbidden trees, the Tree of the Knowledge of Good and Evil and the Tree of Life, located at the center of the garden. Along comes the Serpent, out of nowhere, with no contextual link to the passage, and tempts Eve to eat of the fruit of one of the forbidden trees. Eve looks at the fruit, and finds it beautiful and tasty in appearance, as well as something that would make her wise. How she knows that the fruit will bring her wisdom is absent from the narrative. She plucks the fruit, eats it, and offers it to her husband, Adam, who according to the text, just happened to be standing there with her, saying nothing nor offering any protest to her actions or the temptations of the Serpent. The result is an instantaneous opening of the floodgates of their minds, and they are suddenly fully aware that they are naked. They run and hide, covering themselves with fig leaves they've sewn together, while the Serpent seems to fall silent. The consequences are devastating to the human race, in that God finds the couple, curses them for disobeying his decrees, and condemns forever all of humanity. He also curses the Serpent, condemning him to crawl forever on his belly and be reviled above all other animals on the earth, and that his offspring and the offspring of the mother of humanity would forever be in enmity and conflict.

That's about as mythological a tale as they come, rife with all the earmarks of every other culture's mythological tales. But in Judeo-Christianity, we are taught that this is the truth, breathed from God, Himself. So, either one of two things is true:

1. It's a myth, not unlike the creation myths of many other cultures, or
2. Mythological tales are sometimes the absolute truth, despite resembling the mythological tales of all other cultures.

Perhaps you could add a third option:

3. It's the truth, and all other mythological tales sourced in other cultures are simply those other culture's twist on the truth, and are the work of Satan performing acts of diabolical mimicry.

There is more to the Eden tale than what you read on the surface. And whether you believe the account to be fact, fiction, allegory, or myth, there is an encoded message deep within the subtext of the passage. The story of the Garden of Eden's occupants and their fall from grace is more than a simple tale of disobedience and the eating of forbidden fruit. It is a tale of

race interrupted—and it mirrors many of the events we find in the ancient Sumerian account of the Annunaki breeding and enslavement of primeval mankind.

In Eden, Eve's downfall came as a result of her encounter with the Serpent. The encoded message in the Genesis passage implies that she had intercourse with the Serpent character, thus rendering her recorded bite out of a piece of fruit, small potatoes.

The Serpent not only seduced Eve away from the arms of her husband Adam, but impregnated her and she conceived her son Cain. Eve, in turn, brought this sexual knowledge to her husband, Adam, and they also had sex, conceiving Abel, Cain's twin brother. But Nachash did much more. Buried in the encoded mythical tale, he also passed to the first couple the forbidden knowledge of the Elohim, the pantheon of gods ruled by Jehovah.

Comparatively, similar events took place when Enki/Ea went to the humans and incited rebellion against the gods by passing on their forbidden knowledge to the humans from his place in the Sanke Marsh, Ea's Den. The ancient Sumerian cuneiforms also tell that this was done against the wishes of his superior and brother god, Elil, and as punishment for this treasonous act, the progressive Enki/Ea and his followers were condemned and ordered to remain underground—in the earth, Abzu as their domain, within its vast cavernous systems weaving and intersecting throughout the substrata of the earth. Along with this punishment, it was ruled that Enki/Ea was to never interfere with humans again and that their generations would not only not ever know each other, but will learn to hate each other and be in continual conflict, just as God pronounced the “continual enmity” that would exist between the offspring of the Serpent and the offspring of the humans, in Genesis 3:14–15.

In a rather tragic way for Western religious thought, then, the story seems to suggest that God stands against our own moral maturity, against sexuality, and against the divinization of human nature through the acquisition of knowledge and sexual pleasure. It also insinuates, when it does not actually shout, that we all die because our first parents knew each other within the intimate gnosis of sexual intercourse. Because they fucked, we're screwed.

—Jeffrey J. Kripal, *The Serpent's Gift, Gnostic Reflections on the Study of Religion*

Have you ever encountered a serpent that walked upright? Spoke in an audible, understandable voice? According to Genesis, the snake that Eve encountered did both of these things. Though it is probably safe to say that Eve was not very experienced in the ways of the world, seeing as she was the very first woman, it is also probably very safe to say that she knew the difference between a snake and a man. According to the scripture (Genesis 3:1), this snake was neither:

Now the serpent was more crafty than any of the wild animals the LORD God had made. He said to the woman, “Did God really say, ‘You must not eat from any tree in the garden?’”²

As mentioned, the Hebrew word used in the Book of Genesis for the word *serpent* is nachash (pronounced: naw-kawsh), meaning “magician or enchanter; a spellbinder; to illuminate, shine.” Jewish Rabbinic interpretation never saw this word as meaning a literal snake. It was to be understood as “a shining being with power to enchant.” This is a far cry from a snake in the grass, and in many later interpretations is identified as none other than Lucifer himself, although the passage never actually calls him by that name. It is attributed thousands of years later. It is this being that influences and beguiled Eve—or “seduced,” in a more accurate sense—into eating the fruit of the forbidden tree in the midst of the Garden of Eden—which, as we have seen, had absolutely nothing to do with eating fruit from a tree.

²“The woman said to the serpent, “We may eat fruit from the trees in the garden,³ but God did say, ‘You must not eat fruit from the tree that is in the middle of the garden, and you must not touch it, or you will die.’” (Genesis 3:2–3)

The following linguistic details of what transacted in the Genesis account of the Garden of Eden were presented in *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim*, but well worth reconsidering here:

The Hebrew word for that tree is *ets* [אֵת], a word that is in very close association with the Hebrew word *toledah* [תּוֹלֶדֶת] both meaning “generations.” It is from these words that we draw the modern equivalent of “family tree.” Other variations of the

word *ets* is “the wood of a tree as an opening and closing of a door.” In an applicational stretch the same word can apply to the term “portal; opening of one’s mind; enlightenment.”¹

It is highly suggested that the Tree of the Knowledge of Good and Evil, from which Eve is said to have eaten the forbidden fruit, was not a literal tree at all, but rather, symbolic of the pre-Adamic races that lived in the regions surrounding the Garden of Eden. These races are said to encompass the Atlantean civilization.

The phrase *fruit of the tree* is the Hebrew word *periy* [בָּתִים]—fruit: produce of the ground; offspring, children, progeny (of the womb); or figuratively: fruit (of actions). The phrase *eat of it* is the Hebrew word *'akal* [אָכַל]; this word has many uses, among which, one use means to lay with a woman (sexual intercourse); and the word *touch* is the Hebrew word *naga* [נָגַע]—to touch (that is, to lay the hand upon [for any purpose]; euphemism for: to touch, in a sexual manner).

⁴“You will not certainly die,” the serpent said to the woman.

⁵“For God knows that when you eat of it your eyes will be opened, and you will be like God, knowing good and evil.”

⁶When the woman saw that the fruit of the tree was good for food and pleasing to the eye, and also desirable for gaining wisdom, she took some and ate it. She also gave some to her husband, who was with her, and he ate it. ⁷Then the eyes of both of them were opened, and they realized they were naked; so they sewed fig leaves together and made coverings for themselves.

(Genesis 3:4–7)

This was obviously no ordinary tree; in fact it wasn’t a literal tree at all. Many biblical scholars interpret this as Lucifer. The definitions of some of the Hebrew words used here are controversial as to their application in this context. That is to say that there may be opinions that have already been drawn prior to extrapolating meanings and applying them to the context. Here are the words from this Hebrew passage: The phrase *pleasant to the eyes* is the Hebrew word *chamad* [חָמַד]—to desire, to covet, to take pleasure in, to delight in, to be desirable, to delight greatly, to desire greatly, desirableness, preciousness. The word *desired* is the Hebrew word *ta'avah*

[תַּאֲנִה] —to yearn for; to lust after (used of bodily appetites) a longing; by implication: a delight (subjectively, satisfaction, objectively, a charm): a desire, a wish, longings of one's heart; lust, an appetite, covetousness (in a bad sense); to covet; to wait longingly. *Took* is the Hebrew word *laqach* [לְקַחַ]—a primitive root; to take (in the widest variety of applications): to take, to lay hold of, to receive, to marry, to take a wife, to take to or for a person, to procure, to get, to take possession of, to select, to choose, to take in marriage, to receive, to accept.

Under these definitions, a very different picture of the Eve's temptation in the Garden of Eden emerges. The parsed passage shown is far more than a sinful, disobedient appreciation of fruit. All the references we hear of Eve eating an apple, or depictions in religious art of the Eden couple eating a big piece of fruit, are merely coded information and a hiding of what the passage truly speaks about. What really happened in this scene in the Garden of Eden is that Eve, the mother of humanity, lost her virginity to the Serpent, as you can see that she encountered him sexually before ever having sex with her husband, Adam. And further down the passage, the text is implicit that Eve was impregnated by this encounter. She then drew her husband into the scenario, and he willingly partook. And Eve also became impregnated by Adam. Eve was now bearing fraternal twins, Cain and Abel—one from the seed of Adam, and the other from the seed of the character who is known as the Serpent in the Garden.

The grand sin that was committed in Eden was not mere disobedience in the eating of a forbidden piece of fruit from a forbidden tree in the midst of the garden. It was a sexual sin that created a dual bloodline in the twins conceived in Eve's womb. According to the subsequent passages in Genesis, we learn that Abel was the blood seed of Adam, but that Cain was the blood seed of the Serpent and that the lineage would be in constant conflict with one another, starting with Cain murdering his twin brother.

This begins the trail of the Nephilim—the bloodlines of the serpent.

Blood Is Thicker Than Water

The Genesis record of the Serpent's sexual encounter with Eve, the "mother of all living," establishes that the biblical account recognizes a dual bloodline had been conceived in Eve. This fact is borne out, not only in the condemnations in Eden, post-fall, and the pronunciation of what is

understood in rabbinic and evangelical schools to be the first Messianic prophecy (“...and he will crush your head, but you will bite his heel” [Genesis 3:15]) but also by the long lists of genealogies that appear in the subsequent Old Testament books. And these genealogies were written down and placed there for one purpose alone: to establish a traceable, pure human bloodline from which the Messiah would come. “Traceable to whom?” you might ask. Traceable back to the loins of Adam, the first human male. Here is how the genealogies began in the first 28 verses of 1 Chronicles, [chapter 1](#):

Historical Records From Adam to Abraham to Noah’s Sons

¹Adam, [Author’s Note: Take note of the exclusion of the firstborn twin sons, Cain and Abel] Seth, Enosh, ²Kenan, Mahalalel, Jared, ³Enoch, Methuselah, Lamech, Noah.

⁴The sons of Noah:

Shem, Ham and Japheth.

The Japhethites

⁵The sons of Japheth:

Gomer, Magog, Madai, Javan, Tubal, Meshek and Tiras.

⁶The sons of Gomer:

Ashkenaz, Riphath and Togarmah.

⁷The sons of Javan:

Elishah, Tarshish, the Kittites and the Rodanites.

The Hamites

⁸The sons of Ham:

Cush, Egypt, Put and Canaan.

⁹The sons of Cush:

Seba, Havilah, Sabta, Raamah and Sabteka.

The sons of Raamah:

Sheba and Dedan.

¹⁰Cush was the father of

Nimrod, who became a mighty warrior on earth.

¹¹Egypt was the father of

the Ludites, Anamites, Lehabites, Naphtuhites, ¹²Pathrusites,

Kasluhites (from whom the Philistines came) and Caphtorites.

¹³Canaan was the father of

Sidon his firstborn, and of the Hittites, ¹⁴Jebusites, Amorites, Girgashites, ¹⁵Hivites, Arkites, Sinites, ¹⁶Arvadites, Zemarites and Hamathites.

The Semites

¹⁷The sons of Shem:

Elam, Ashur, Arphaxad, Lud and Aram.

The sons of Aram:

Uz, Hul, Gether and Meshek.

¹⁸Arphaxad was the father of Shelah,

and Shelah the father of Eber.

¹⁹Two sons were born to Eber:

One was named Peleg, because in his time the earth was divided; his brother was named Joktan.

²⁰Joktan was the father of

Almodad, Sheleph, Hazarmaveth, Jerah, ²¹Hadoram, Uzal, Diklah, ²²Obal, Abimael, Sheba, ²³Ophir, Havilah and Jobab.

All these were sons of Joktan.

²⁴Shem, Arphaxad, Shelah,

²⁵Eber, Peleg, Reu,

²⁶Serug, Nahor, Terah

²⁷and Abram (that is, Abraham).

The Family of Abraham

²⁸The sons of Abraham:

Isaac and Ishmael.

And this listing of genealogies goes on for eight-and a-half more chapters!

Why was there a need to trace the human bloodline back to Adam? Why such a meticulous biblical record of the flow of humanity from the first human man? It was to establish the traceable lineage of the coming Messiah, the kinsman redeemer prophesied during the pronouncement of cursing and judgment back in Genesis 3:15. These genealogical records

exist for one purpose and one purpose only: to establish that there existed a dual bloodline in humanity, bequeathed in the Garden of Eden—the seed of Adam, being the “pure human bloodline,” and the seed of Nachash, the bloodline of “mixed human and Elohim blood,” as bred into Eve. And, as I noted above in the 1 Chronicles passage, the firstborn son, Cain, as well as the younger twin whom he murdered, are both omitted from the genealogy. Why? Cain is the firstborn and by Hebrew tradition should have appeared on the list immediately following Adam, but he is omitted from the genealogical record as listed in the Old Testament for the simple reason that he was not of pure, human blood. Cain was of the mixed blood of Nachash and Eve. He was the first of the Nephilim. Abel wasn’t listed in the record for the simple fact that he was murdered by Cain before he had bequeathed any children. That is why we see the third third-born son, Seth, listed in the genealogical record as the direct descendent of Adam.

Again, if you recall—and this is extremely important to understand the entirety of the Old Testament—Cain, as the firstborn son of Eve, was fathered by Nachash, the Serpent character in Eden who was of the Elohim, the bright, shining prince of heaven. He represents the mixed bloodline, and if the Messiah was to be the kinsman redeemer, the savior of mankind born of mankind, his lineage had to be established as being of the pure, human bloodline, therefore, a descendent of Seth, not Cain.

The Kinsman Redeemer

The ancient Hebrew sense of redemption was firmly fixed in the word *goel* [גּוֹלֵךְ], the act of redeeming as a kinsman. The Hebrew sensibility understood the Messiah to be the “kinsman redeemer,” the one who would come to save, redeem, and rectify, but who was also a near kinsman to the family.

The concept of the kinsman redeemer was structured like this: The Law of Moses made provision for instances when a person who was forced to sell part of his property or himself into slavery, that his nearest of kin could step in and come to his aid by “buying back” what his relative was forced to sell, whether goods or person. The kinsman redeemer became the benefactor, the person who frees the enslaved by paying the ransom price and eliminating his debt.

“If a fellow countryman of yours becomes so poor he has to sell part of his property, then his nearest kinsman is to come and buy back what his relative has sold.” (Leviticus 25:25)

It was generally the nearest of kin who had the responsibility of redeeming his kinsman. If a person sold himself into slavery—or was forced into such—his kinsman redeemer purchased his freedom. When debt threatened to overwhelm a person, the kinsman redeemer stepped in to buy his homestead and let the family live. If a family member died without an heir, the kinsman redeemer gave his name by marrying the widow and rearing the existing son or a new son to carry on his dead relative’s name. When death by murder came at the hands of another man, the kinsman redeemer acted as the avenger of blood and pursued the murderer to enact familial vengeance or bring to justice (Numbers 35:12–34; Deuteronomy 19:1–3).

So when you think of the Jewish Messiah, remember that the Hebrew concept of Messiah was the kinsman redeemer—the one who was from “among us” coming to “save or redeem us.” And although this is a high, mighty biblical concept of redemption and salvation, it is also the theology in which was buried the encoded message of race interrupted and a dual human bloodline. Piggybacked on the prophecies of the coming Messiah, whose heritage was said over and over and over again throughout the Old Testament to be that of a kinsman who would be of pure human blood, was the story of a pure-blooded race versus a mixed-blood race. When the very first prophecy of the kinsman redeemer was uttered, directly after the impregnation of Eve by both Adam and Nachash, dovetailing with the proclamation that there would forever be a state of conflict between the seed of Nachash and the seed of the woman, there was a necessity to provide a traceable heritage from which the future, prophesied Messiah would be able to hail.

In short, the Old Testament story of the Messiah, and the corresponding genealogical records substantiating a traceable, pure human bloodline, obviate the complete opposite: that there was an “impure” bloodline, that which was not completely human. That was the bloodline of Nachash, the Serpent of the Garden of Eden, member of the Divine Council, one of the gods of the pantheon of gods known as the Sons of God, the *bene ha ‘Elohim*, the Watchers.

I have to state emphatically that the story and prophecies of the Messiah woven throughout the entirety of the Old Testament were there for one reason: to provide an encoded, deeply subtextual message speaking to common events that every other ancient religion wrote about. The story of the coming Messiah seems more and more to simply be the Hebrew religion's collective mythology that needed to establish a pure, human bloodline. And even the "subtext of race interrupted" has dubious origins, as there is simply no way to establish any sort of solid fact. The story of the Messiah that was to come, and the genealogical record by which his human heritage was to be established, was the vehicle that was incorporated to establish a pure, human bloodline, in opposition to the bloodline that was somehow tainted. Is this a story of extraterrestrial interference? Or is it a story of the anthropological development of comparative religions? Or is it a story of the One, True God's creation and control of that which He created?

Comparatively Speaking...

The symbolic Tree of the Knowledge of Good and Evil as depicted in the Genesis account of Eden—the object of the forbidden fruit consumed by the first couple inciting God's wrath and judgment—is the Hebrew correspondent to the very same palm tree in Ea-Den, depicted as having a trunk around which a half-man-half-snake is entwined. It is from this tree that the Enki/Ea passed on knowledge and intelligence to humans—or, in the parallel Genesis scenario, Nachash taught the first human couple to partake of the forbidden knowledge. As the information was absorbed by Eve and passed on to Adam, their perceptions and awareness of reality quickly shifted, leaving the two in a severe state of shock and fear. (Author's Note: A person who is totally unaware of the reality in which he or she lives is said to reside in an "Edenic state.") The account goes on to explain that, soon thereafter, the couple ran and hid themselves from the voice of God, not because they had their first sexual experiences, nor that they were shy of their nakedness; even though Adam said they were hiding because they were naked, it was because they were suddenly, appallingly aware that there was a profound physical difference between the gods and themselves. They also were experiencing an enlightenment—for good or ill—that they had not known prior to these events. It is clear that until this time, the humans had no concept that they were in any way physically

different from their reptilian/god counterparts. They had finally leapt from their childlike innocence and ignorance into the realization that they were intended, by design, to be tillers of the field and slaves to their overlords. There was also the fear, as is accounted in Genesis, that they had, as slaves who transgressed the law, brought down upon themselves the enormity of consequence.

The symbolism of the forbidden tree in Eden is not limited to Judeo-Christianity. The Eastern Indian god Krishna sat atop a coiled serpent beneath the branches of the Banyan Tree, and from there bestowed spiritual knowledge to humanity. Further representation of the tree can be found in the many crucifixion accounts of great teachers and gods, such as that of Quetzalcoatl, the winged serpent god of the great Toltec and Aztec civilization whose crucifixion on a tree is etched forever in stone. The wooden crucifixes upon which those that bestowed knowledge upon humankind—the symbols of the supreme god called the Egyptian Tau and Ahnk—represent the Tree of the Knowledge of Good and Evil. It was the result of the teaching of the forbidden knowledges to humans that they were killed.

The remarkable fact is that throughout all ancient and modern civilizations, the serpent, snake, or dragon bestowing knowledge upon the human race figures prominently in all religions and histories. The Judeo-Christian serpent as embodied in the fallen angel known as Lucifer; the Mayan serpent God Quetzalcoatl; the enormous plumed serpent god of the Hopi Indians, Baholinkonga; the mystical, human-like reptilians known as Nagas of India; the Egyptian serpent god, Kneph; the Phoenicians Agathodemon, and even the Hebrews Nakhushstan, the Brazen Serpent that Moses raised on a pole for the people to be healed—these are but a few of the myriad accounts that exist in worldwide religious cultures describing early gods as having reptilian-human physical features as well as having descended from the stars in the heavens.

Where's the Beef...?

After reading to this point, you may be asking yourself, “So, what’s the ‘Reptilian’ connection to ancient man?” It is clear that, though our most familiar biblical stories have connectivity with ancient religions, it is also clear that there is symbolism that carries from one to the other. Not only is it my (secularized) contention that, anthropologically speaking, the Hebrew

religion (aka Christianity) has its roots in language and characters modified from more ancient religions, it also carries over symbolism and adapted meanings. The importance of drawing the comparisons between the ancient Sumerian culture and the ancient Hebrew scriptural accounts is superficial in this book, at best, for there are literal tome-filled libraries speaking to these matters, but it speaks to the foundational concepts that flow throughout the religious mythologies that have given us the foundations of what we believe. The bigger question to ask is whether we are putting our faith in something that we hold to be truth, when in fact it is nothing more than accumulated myth upon myth upon myth.

Now, before you cluck your tongue in disgust at this, I must again state emphatically that faith is a completely other matter. Faith is the “substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen,” so said the Apostle Paul (Hebrews 11:1). Faith is the adhesive that binds together the things that don’t always make sense. If you are willing to step outside the box, if only for a bit, in order to look back in and ask some serious questions, you may just find that there are other things beyond the scope of religious dogma and systematic theology. You may even step back into the box with a stronger sense of what you believe, for it’s the repeated tearing down of muscle that builds its strength. The late physicist Richard Feynman put it this way:

If you expected science to give all the answers to the wonderful questions about what we are, where we are going, what the meaning of the universe is, I think you can easily become disillusioned and then look for some mystic answer to these problems.... We're exploring, we're trying to find out as much as we can about the world!

...[I]f there's a simple ultimate law that explains everything, so be it. That'd be a very nice discovery. If it turns out it's like an onion with millions of layers...then that's the way it is!... [W]hen we go to investigate we shouldn't pre-decide what it is we are trying to do except to find out more about it.... [W]e should look to see what's true and what may not be true. Once you start doubting—which...to me, is a very fundamental part of my soul—to doubt and to ask...it gets a little harder to believe.

...I can live with doubt, uncertainty and not knowing. I think it's much more interesting to live not knowing than to have answers which might be wrong. I have approximate answers, possible beliefs, and different degrees of certainty about different things but I'm not absolutely sure of anything... But I don't have to know an answer.... I don't feel frightened by not knowing things, by being lost in the mysterious universe without having any purpose—which is the way it really is as far as I can tell....²

So, with my decidedly middle-of-the-road approach to personal faith, let's look at some of the comparatives in religion that seem to paint a bigger picture, not only of humanity but of the influences of the “secret history” of the Reptilians, which you will soon find isn't really a secret at all. It's just forgotten and buried in the dust of time.

Chapter Three

Coiled Around Many Cultures

“If the account given in Genesis is really true, ought we not, after all, to thank this serpent? He was the first schoolmaster, the first advocate of learning, the first enemy of ignorance, the first to whisper in human ears the sacred word, ‘liberty.’” —Robert Green Ingersoll, American statesman, 1833–1899 “Look like the innocent flower, but be the serpent under it.”

—William Shakespeare

There is a huge difference between approaching the issue of the multicultural serpent with a broad view that religion is most often a thing that cannot be quantified to the liking of the skeptical or scientific mind, versus the brand of angry atheism tantamount to hatred of any form of religion. To most skeptical thinkers and the crusading scientific atheists of today, faith is a list of pieties and practices that consist of superstitions built on the misty nothingness of ignorance and the dangerous falsehoods of faith-based thinking. (I had one scientist refer to me, in an open debate, as an “ass-plucking, denialist Nephilimer.”) With this sort of eliminatory thinking, there is no room for the wonder of the spiritual (at least not openly admitted) and very little grasp of the way the theological incorporates critical thinking, let alone the complex phenomenology of the religious experience. Hardcore atheists are to religious believers what an office-bound, short-sleeved, horn-rimmed-spectacle-wearing, white shirt, and tied accountant is to the free styling, caution-to-the-wind, dreadlocked, barefooted, multi-colored-paint-smeared, loft-dwelling artist. Pardon my stereotypes.

Religion is the construct of human beings. It is the attempt to place structure on the unstructured spiritual experience, and more often than not, the foundational religious constructs evolve into a systematic set of dogmas and theologies that produce, in nearly every case, a meticulous mode of control, which bears little resemblance to the origin of the systemized

structure. Spiritual experience is rarely ever something that is corporate. It is individual. That individual, in turn, internalizes and personally pursues his particular religion or, as is evident throughout the history of humanity, he moves that personal experience to a place of revelation that of necessity should be shared with those around him. But many times, the seeking of like-minded followers turns heinously into sycophancy, and the establishment of a controlled system is imposed that resembles nothing of the original experiencer's spirituality. Religion contains within its symbols and myths, some of the most utterly profound truths of the human psyche, and even the body. But these are things that need to be properly interpreted and freed from the illusion of faith and theology in order to function. Though faith is a thing that is necessary in most religious practices, it is also the thing that, in its simplicity, can completely obliterate the open mind.

Now, see? I've turned the entire argument on its head: Science and skepticism have closed off the possibilities under the lock and key of quantifiability within a "theological" approach to methodology and evidentiary research. On the other hand, "Faith-ers," in opening themselves to internalizing external spiritual experience and structuring it into theology of any sort, have adopted the rigidity that comes with legalizing their acceptance of that which is unquantifiable. It's a nasty catch-22 of thinking, so that neither approach seems to be complete, but always lacking what the other brings to the table. Science needs faith and faith needs science, and both need skepticism. Both are incomplete without the other, and that is the great schism of the mind.

The symbolism and presence of the serpent in the ancient world was highly significant, and somewhere back there, a person, a priest, or a collective of both determined that the serpent was a symbol that should be held in high esteem. Whether it was like the cat my friend and I experienced on our Sunday morning philosophical excursions, or simply a recognition that the serpent bore physical qualities that superstitiously became spiritual ones, the deifying of this reptilian creature became widespread throughout human civilization, and carried to all parts of the world. Ancient societies and religious scriptures from the Cradle of Civilization to the Far East and European cultures are rife with serpent figures, which were simultaneously attributed two highly symbolic roles: One role connected serpents to the heavens in their representation as deities, creative powers, and healing entities; the second role linked them with the underworld, associating them

with darkness, evil, harm, and destructive influences. Nowadays, if one just stops and considers, there should be little difficulty recognizing this dual symbolism, as it persists, perhaps not to the same theological depths it once did, but it is there nonetheless. Look simply to the symbol of the healing serpent as it appears on the physician's caduceus, the two coiled serpents wrapped around the tree, while at the same time, we see the serpent as a thing to be feared and reviled, a representative of evil intent and even as a descriptor for wily, despicable character attributes: "That dude's a snake in the grass!"

No matter what your religious take may be on the serpent, it is clear that nearly every civilization either deified the serpent in one form or another, or looked upon the serpent as somehow sacred or symbolic of the more esoteric values in life and nature. The serpent's dualism in the Hebrew religion is clearly seen when Moses, the giver of the Law and traditional author of the Pentateuch (Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy), writes of the Serpent in the Garden of Eden as the seducer of Eve and the catalyst for the spiritual fall of humanity, yet upholds the serpent as the symbol of divine healing when the people are smitten by venomous snakes:

⁵And the people spake against God, and against Moses, Wherefore have ye brought us up out of Egypt to die in the wilderness? for there is no bread, neither is there any water; and our soul loatheth this light bread. ⁶And the Lord sent fiery serpents among the people, and they bit the people; and much people of Israel died. ⁷Therefore the people came to Moses, and said, We have sinned, for we have spoken against the Lord, and against thee; pray unto the Lord, that he take away the serpents from us. And Moses prayed for the people. ⁸And the Lord said unto Moses, Make thee a fiery serpent, and set it upon a pole: and it shall come to pass, that every one that is bitten, when he looketh upon it, shall live. ⁹And Moses made a serpent of brass, and put it upon a pole, and it came to pass, that if a serpent had bitten any man, when he beheld the serpent of brass, he lived. (Numbers 21:5–9)

Moses casts a bronze, shining serpent, the *necoshet* [נְכֹשֶׁת], and raises it on a pole, and the people who were bitten were then instructed to

look at it or touch the base of the pole to be healed of the terminal bites. Christianity, in turn, hailed to this miraculous healing event by equating the image of the brazen serpent elevated on the pole to the “lifting up,” or crucifixion of Jesus Christ.

¹³No one has ever gone into heaven except the one who came from heaven—the Son of Man. ¹⁴Just as Moses lifted up the serpent in the desert, so the Son of Man must be lifted up,

¹⁵that everyone who believes in him may have eternal life.
(John 3:13–15)

Although we have no idea of how this was supposed to have worked, other than the claim of divine power, we also have no idea how much time passed and how many people died between conception of the divine brass serpent, its sculpting design and casting, to final elevation on the pole. The story expounds on sacred symbolism over the sacred value of human life, the emphasis of the story demonstrating that the serpent was to be viewed as both the agent of harm *and* of healing—the bringer of death and the giver of life, perhaps paying homage to the fall of humanity, while at the same time revering the serpent as the deliverer of esoteric knowledge of the gods. The Hebrews sinned before their God and fiery serpents were sent to bite them as a divine punishment. In response, Moses crafted a bronze image of the venomous serpent, and the people were healed and ultimately spared by simply looking at it or touching the pole on which it had been erected.

The intent of the biblical passage is to illustrate that it is none other than God—Jehovah—who is the power working behind the image of the serpent. It is the paradoxical Jehovah who is at once the instigator of both death and life. And as God was so often want to do in Hebrew scriptures, He allows for—and in this case is the originator of—the deadly calamity in order to establish both his magnificent terror and beneficent grace in being the God who imposes harsh judgment as well as the God who offers a way out, salvation, and healing. To some, this may smack of a sort of divine Münchausen by proxy syndrome, but for the Hebrews, it was their God at work.

What is clear is that the Israelites were already quite familiar with images of deified serpents from their exposure to Egyptian mysticism and mythology during the four centuries they dwelled in Egypt, either as slaves or workers. And keep in mind that after 400 years, they were clearly

“Egyptian-ized” in a similar way as if you are a descendent of an Englishman who traveled to America on the *Mayflower* in 1620 and whose descendants remained here all those generations up until the current day, you would you be considered English by ancestry alone, but you would in actuality be completely American. Same deal with the Hebrews in Egypt.

The Hebrews were barely even Hebrews anymore. They had a vestige of their heritage kept alive in oral tradition and religious practice, but had completely forgotten who they were, as evidenced by the machinations Moses had to go through to keep convincing them that Jehovah was their God. They were Egyptians! But Moses came to lead them back to their ancestral promised land, and in the harshness of judgment, the serpent symbol is now seen by the Hebrews in its true light: a valid and important representation of their ancient god’s ultimate power over life and death. Their life and death. What is established to them in the symbol of the bronze serpent is that God was the divine force behind the serpent figure. Now put *that* in your edenic pipe and smoke it.

The Snake Marsh of Eridu

When we consider the Sumerian creator god, Enki—paralleled by the neighboring Akkadian god, Ea—as being connected through both ancient and modern mythology to a place called the Snake Marsh, coupled with the fact that we have already established that Enki/Ea is a linguistic precursor to YWHW (Jehovah), the Middle East becomes the hotbed of early serpent mythology. The parallel being, of course, that Enki, the brother god to Elil the chief god of the Annunaki, was not only responsible for the creation of intelligent mankind as a slave race at the behest of Elil, but he also saw the humans’ plight and led them into insurrection against the Annunaki. As we saw earlier, Enki/Ea is the prototype for the Hebrew Jehovah, and they played very similar functions as both creators and saviors. And the serpent symbolism is connected to them both.

In his fairly complex book *Deliver Me from Evil: Mesopotamian Incantations, 2500–1500 BC*, Oxford University researcher Graham Cunningham examines Sumerian tablets pre-dating the time known as the Sargonic period in ancient Mesopotamia, which extended from approximately the 22nd to the 23rd centuries BCE. During this earlier period in Sumer, there are many cuneiform tablets containing magical incantations, for both “helpful” and “harmful” divine ritual intervention. In these tablets

we find there are two specific incantations associating Enki/Ea with various agents of illness—in other words, the summoning of infliction, harm, or illness on someone else. In these incantations there is a reference to the “Snake of Enki,” while the other mentions “the place of the black snake in the middle of the abzu.” Remember the term *abzu*?

This is the great, underworld sea on which the city of Eridu sits, and surrounding the city lies the swampy region known as the Snake Marsh, a place, according to the mythology, well-known and loved by Enki/Ea. The incantations also mention a black dog, a horned snake, a serpent, and Enki himself. This association between Enki/Ea and harmful snakes continues well into the Old Babylonian period, and there is even one incantation directed against various snakes referred to as the two-tongued snake of abzu. Other incantations show that Enki/Ea could cure as well as cause illness (remember Moses and the brazen serpent on the pole), and there is a particular repeating phrase in the incantations saying *Ea did it, Ea undid it*. In essence: God brought catastrophe, God brought healing.

“Enmerkar and the Lord of Aratta” is a mythical Sumerian epic in which a speech is delivered by Enmerkar, the son of Mesh-ki-ang-gasher, the founder of the first dynasty of Uruk and builder of the city of Uruk. In that speech he delivers a magical incantation for the purpose of confusing the various languages of the people. Note the striking similarities to the Genesis account of the Tower of Babel:

Once upon a time there was no snake, there was no scorpion,
There was no hyena, there was no lion,
There was no wild dog, no wolf,
There was no fear, no terror,
Man had no rival.
In those days, the lands of Subur (and) Hamazi,
Harmony-tongued Sumer, the great land of the decrees
of princedom,
Uri, the land having all that is appropriate,
The land Martu, resting in security,
The whole universe, the people in unison
To Enlil in one tongue [spoke].
(Then) Enki, the lord of abundance (whose) commands

are trustworthy,
The lord of wisdom, who understands the land,
The leader of the gods,
Endowed with wisdom, the lord of Eridu,
Changed the speech in their mouths, [brought]
contention into it,
Into the speech of man that (until then) had been one.¹

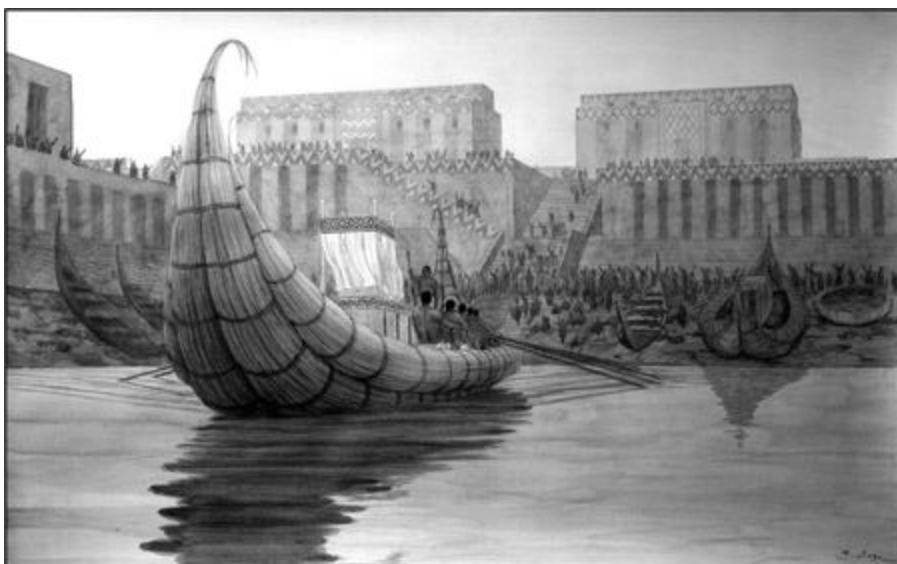


Sumerian cylinder seal depicting Enki and Adapa in a marsh boat. Image made available through Wikimedia Commons.

In the Book of Genesis, God comes down to earth and confuses the languages of humanity, causing them to disperse. For some reason he did not want the humans working in a unified fashion as they were building their giant ziggurat to “reach to the heavens” (Genesis 11:14). Enki/Ea plays this very same language-dispersing role in the Sumerian version of the tale. So, again, we see the correlation between Enki/Ea and Jehovah of the Old Testament. And the serpent slithers in and out through the narratives.

On one of the many Akkadian green jasper cylinder seals, dating between 2000 and 2300 BCE, there is an impression of the god Enki/Ea in a reed-filled marshland setting, standing in a shallow draft boat constructed out of the long reeds growing in the marsh, traditional to the inhabitants of the area. It is obvious that the central figure in the boat is none other than Enki, as evidenced by the ever-present dual streams of water emerging from his shoulders and the fish leaping from those streams. The boat pictured on

the cylinder is being guided through the heavily reeded marsh by two servants, both holding punting poles in their hands, while out of the water at the boat's fore and aft are fish leaping into the air, presumably greeting their creator in joyous worship. The entire setting on the cylinder is meant to evoke beauty and worshipful honor of Enki. One of the men standing in the boat with Enki is more than likely the man who never left his side, Adapa, the first human created by Enki. Adapa became the god's personal servant, baking daily fresh bread and fishing for his god's meals. In Sumerian hymns it is said of Enki that his greatest pastime was to navigate the waters of the Snake Marsh in his boat, known as the Ibex of the Abzu. It was here in the Snake Marsh that Enki is said to have lived in his mythical Sea House, which metaphorically cast its shadow over the waters of the Snake Marsh. If you visit the site of Eridu today, snakes can still be seen gliding across the surface of the water, forever reminding us why, after thousands of passing years, the place was given its name.



The harbor of ancient Eridu, with a boat carrying the statue of their patron god, Enki, as envisioned by archaeological artist Balage Balogh. Image used by permission from Balage Balogh, www.archaeologyillustrated.com.

Accordingly, in the ancient tablets, amplified to otherworldly proportions in the modern mythologies of the Annunaki found in the works of Zechariah Sitchin and others, it is said that Enki/Ea led a rebellion against his brother gods of the Annunaki, becoming the first “freedom fighter” for the human race, his base of operations being the Snake Marsh or Den of

Serpents, known as Ea's Den. (We'll expand on this in greater detail in the next chapter.)

Around the World in 80 Serpents

Well, not quite 80, but when you consider all the civilizations, ancient, archaic, and modern, that revere or worship the serpent in some form, the list is staggering. World religion, cultural mythology, and archaic literature represent the serpent as having become synonymous with the act of fertility, life force, and creative power.² The fertility and sexual linkage is partly due to snakes being seen as figuratively phallic in form and symbolically synonymous of the male sex organ—not to mention the linkage to the Garden of Eden story of impregnation at the seduction of the Serpent character. Serpents also became associated with water and earth due to the many species of snakes that live in the water or in holes in the ground, and agriculture, as their dwellings were in the ground and amongst the roots and plants.

The ancient Chinese linked the serpent with the gods of rain, a life-giving symbol of fertility and abundance in their agrarian culture. Australia, India, North America, and Africa have all linked snakes with rain and rainbows (bringing to mind the aptly titled 1985 book by Wade Davis and subsequent motion picture, *The Serpent and the Rainbow*, exploring the voodoo, zombie, and reincarnating resurrection practices in the Caribbean), which, again, are connected with rain and ultimately agricultural fertility. Cultural symbolism of rebirth, resurrection, transformative power, immortality, and healing (as with the brazen serpent of Moses) became strong spiritual aspects of the serpent. This is linked to the serpent's seasonal shedding of its outer skin, the orborous, a natural, physical occurrence called sloughing. This became a demonstrable, natural symbolism for resurrection, eternity, and the perpetual renewal of life. In the two major world religions said to have sprouted from the loins of Abraham—Judaism and Islam—the serpent was representative of sexual desire,³ reestablishing the sexual nature of the Garden of Eden story. Again reaffirming this idea, rabbinic tradition holds that the serpent in the Garden of Eden is illustrative of sexual passion and lustful desire.⁴ I find it interesting that these symbols existed in Abrahamic religions despite the fact that most adherents to traditional Hebraic, Muslim, and Christian faiths are far removed from the notion that the interaction between the Serpent

and Eve in the Garden of Eden was anything having to do with sexual encounter and transmission of forbidden knowledge.

In Hinduism, the *kundalini* is a coiled serpent that sits, metaphorically, at the base of the spine, a symbol of that residual power of pure desire and sexual passion.

The Hebrews and Sumerians have been touched on quite extensively, thus far, but let's do a brief recap, then move on to some other examples.

Israelite

The Hebrews held the serpent high as an evil presence embodied in the serpent that tempted Eve in the Garden of Eden. There are several other passages in the Old Testament and New Testament that speak to this character in other forms, both inanimate and possessing of character.

In Exodus 4, Moses is gifted with a magical staff that can turn to a serpent upon request. This was meant to be a sign of God's miraculous power when Moses went to confront the pharaoh of Egypt.

²And the LORD said unto him, What is that in thine hand? And he said, A rod. ³And he said, Cast it on the ground. And he cast it on the ground, and it became a serpent; and Moses fled from before it. ⁴And the LORD said unto Moses, Put forth thine hand, and take it by the tail. And he put forth his hand, and caught it, and it became a rod in his hand: ⁵That they may believe that the LORD God of their fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, hath appeared unto thee. (Exodus 4:2–5)

This very same rod-turned-serpent was a magical trick duplicated by the court magicians in Egypt, but as the story goes, Moses' rod-snake devoured the snakes produced by the Pharaoh's magicians. Again, according to Hebrew religion, a demonstration of God's power and Moses' demonstration that his snake was bigger than the Pharaoh's.

⁸And the LORD spake unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying,

⁹When Pharaoh shall speak unto you, saying, Shew a miracle for you: then thou shalt say unto Aaron, Take thy rod, and cast it before Pharaoh, and it shall become a serpent. ¹⁰And Moses and Aaron went in unto Pharaoh, and they did so as the LORD

had commanded: and Aaron cast down his rod before Pharaoh, and before his servants, and it became a serpent.

¹¹Then Pharaoh also called the wise men and the sorcerers: now the magicians of Egypt, they also did in like manner with their enchantments. ¹²For they cast down every man his rod, and they became serpents: but Aaron's rod swallowed up their rods.

¹³And he hardened Pharaoh's heart, that he hearkened not unto them; as the LORD had said.

(Exodus 7:8–13)

It is biblical stories like these that cause me to ponder why an infinite God did things the way He did them. It seems that God could have simply manifested Himself to the Egyptians, demonstrating that He was, indeed, a benevolent deity, resulting in the Egyptians falling on their faces and worshipping Him. Instead, according to the story in Exodus, God marionettes His followers through a series of devastatingly awesome events that equated to nothing more than the wreaking of destruction, mayhem, and suffering, when He could simply have gained the respect, worship, and reverence by manifesting Himself to the Pharaoh and the people of Egypt. Is this a God of infinite wisdom, holiness, and omniscience, or is it the manufactured god of humans in a historically culturally driven tale? That is the big question whose theme resonates throughout the subtext of this book. But as the systematic Judeo-Christian theology dictates, “Who am I to question God’s ways?” It’s an issue of faith in the supernatural that became law, theology, and dogma, as we will see repeated throughout many ancient religions.

If some of what I write seems as if I have some sort of axe to grind with biblical theology, please do not misinterpret me. What you see here are the shards of traditional stories *not* being filtered through religious predisposition, but the tales as seen from outside the box of dogma. When you look at these stories in that light, they become less God-inspired accounts and more of the same sort of religious mythological transference of divinity-driven theology for the purpose of establishing a picture that the teller of tale wanted told. The symbolism used to denote divine power is demonstrated in mythical proportions in the following passages:

⁴[The Hebrews] traveled from Mount Hor along the route to the Red Sea, to go around Edom. But the people grew impatient on

the way; ⁵they spoke against God and against Moses, and said, “Why have you brought us up out of Egypt to die in the desert? There is no bread! There is no water! And we detest this miserable food!” ⁶Then the Lord sent venomous snakes among them; they bit the people and many Israelites died.

⁷The people came to Moses and said, “We sinned when we spoke against the Lord and against you. Pray that the Lord will take the snakes away from us.” So Moses prayed for the people.

⁸The Lord said to Moses, “Make a snake and put it up on a pole; anyone who is bitten can look at it and live. ⁹So Moses made a bronze snake and put it up on a pole. Then when anyone was bitten by a snake and looked at the bronze snake, he lived.”
(Number 21:4–9)

¹¹“Beware that thou forget not the Lord thy God, in not keeping his commandments, and his judgments, and his statutes, which I command thee this day.... ¹⁵Who led thee through that great and terrible wilderness, wherein were fiery *serpents* (author’s emphasis), and scorpions, and drought, where there was no water; who brought thee forth water out of the rock of flint...”
(Deuteronomy 8:11,15)

As we have already examined, the serpent that Moses cast in bronze, many years later, became an object of worship itself. The nehushtan, as it was called (a derivative of the word *Nachash*), had taken on the status of god, and a cult formed around its worship, so much so that King Hezekiah expurgated the cult and tore down the bronze serpent. Apparently, serpent worship in Jerusalem was not new in Israel, as there are no less than seven such bronze serpents from pre-Israelite Palestinian cities. Two of these serpents were uncovered during an archaeological dig at Megiddo,⁵ one at the ancient cite of Gezer,⁶ two from the “holy of holies” at the ruins of Hazor, and another two at the remains Shechem.⁷ There are several other archaeological discoveries of the snake and serpent in the Canaanite region, but they mostly predate Israel’s occupation of the territory. However, with what we understand of the spread of religion and the adaptations from culture to culture, it is clear that the Israelites simply appropriated the older Palestinian serpent worship, blending it with their own version of serpent worship as embodied in the bronze serpent of Moses.

It is interesting to note that despite all the miraculous wonders experienced by the Hebrews under the leadership of Moses, and during the great exodus from Egypt, the people still clung to the physical objects such as the golden calf and the serpent, and elevated them to the status worthy of their worship. Could this be some indicator as to what really happened in these biblical tales? Ask yourself: Would you, if confronted with the sea splitting open to allow you to pass on dry ground, or if you stood before the fiery mountain where Moses ascended to receive the tablets, or if you experienced all the other miraculous wonders of the Hebrew's 40-year sojourn in the desert, forget about what God performed and worship an idol!? Or, perhaps, the Hebrews never really experienced any of these things on the same level as they have been passed down to us in biblical religious myth. Perhaps the experienter, Moses, constructed an elaborate religion from the bare bones of personal divine revelation, but the hard part for him was convincing the people to live by the dictates of his individual encounter with a god. And then, in a posthumous slap in the face to Moses, throughout the next few hundred years, the people took his brazen serpent on a pole, incorporated it into Canaanite religion of Palestine, and began worshipping the snake as if it were the God of their deliverance.

¹Now it came to pass in the third year of Hoshea son of Elah king of Israel, that Hezekiah the son of Ahaz king of Judah began to reign. ²Twenty and five years old was he when he began to reign; and he reigned twenty and nine years in Jerusalem. His mother's name also was Abi, the daughter of Zachariah. ³And he did that which was right in the sight of the Lord, according to all that David his father did. ⁴He removed the high places, and brake the images, and cut down the groves, and brake in pieces the brasen *serpent* (author's emphasis) that Moses had made: for unto those days the children of Israel did burn incense to it: and he called it Nehushtan. (2 Kings 18:1–4)

In magnificent poetic form, Job 26: 6–14 presents a picture of God's handiwork. The serpent is mentioned near the end of the passage:

⁶“Death is naked before God;
Destruction lies uncovered.

⁷He spreads out the northern [skies] over empty space;
he suspends the earth over nothing.

⁸He wraps up the waters in his clouds,
yet the clouds do not burst under their weight.

⁹He covers the face of the full moon,
spreading his clouds over it.

¹⁰He marks out the horizon on the face of the waters for a
boundary between light and darkness.

¹¹The pillars of the heavens quake,
aghast at his rebuke.

¹²By his power he churned up the sea;
by his wisdom he cut Rahab to pieces.

¹³By his breath the skies became fair;
his hand pierced the crooked serpent.

¹⁴And these are but the outer fringe of his works;
how faint the whisper we hear of him!

Who then can understand the thunder of his power?"

What is this “crooked serpent” spoken of in the passage? It appears again in Old Testament scripture:

¹In that day the LORD with His hard, great and strong sword shall visit leviathan the serpent, and leviathan, the *crooked serpent* (author’s emphasis), and shall slay the whale that is in the sea. ²In that day there shall be singing to the vineyard of pure wine. ³“I am the Lord that keep it, I will suddenly give it drink, lest any hurt come to it, I keep it night and day.” (Isaiah 27:1–3)

There are many interpretations of the “crooked serpent,” the leviathan and dragon, ranging from a presence of the Holy Ghost, to the constellation of Draco, to a prophecy of the swastika of the Nazi regime.

In all, the serpent is mentioned more than 40 times in biblical references. An exhaustive listing here would be simply that: a list. Rather than reference every passage, suffice it to say that all you need do is refer to a

Concordance of the Bible words and look under the heading for “serpent” or “snake.” You could also conduct an Internet search for the words “serpent + bible,” then sit back and find the voluminous Web pages and limitless amount of information and interpretation, from the scholarly to completely whack fringe. Suffice it to say that the Bible establishes the serpent mythology was at play in ancient Israel, most probably carried over, in their origins, from the Egyptian, Palestinian, and Sumerian cultures that influenced the early development of Hebrew religion.

The Great Dragon: China

For four millennia, Chinese culture has existed and thrived in an unbroken line, dating back to the Xia Dynasty as early as 2000 BCE. China’s mythological roots, however, extend even farther back in time. Five thousand years ago in China, around the time the ancient Britons were building the first circular ditch and mound of Stonehenge, the dragon began its long-standing tradition as a mythological figure of the Chinese people. Unlike the serpent or snake in other cultures, the Chinese held the serpent/dragon as a symbol of happiness, immortality, sexual intercourse, and fertility, imbued with the ability to ward off evil spirits. The pervasive dragon decorates nearly every ancient monument and structure in China, as well as adorning the garments of ancient Chinese generals and high governmental officials. The Emperor wore nine dragons on his brocaded robe.

In ancient times, again illustrating the dual nature of the serpent, the dragon was regarded as not only the highest of sacred animals, but it also became the imperial emblem of all Chinese emperors. Unlike the depictions of evil dragons of Western cultures, and the need for St. Patrick to drive the evil serpents from the Land of Ireland, the Chinese dragon is beneficent and gracious among all other creatures, and was worshipped as the divine ruler of lakes, rivers, and seas. It is the powerful yet gentle serpent Lung that brings the fertile, healing rain to the earth, giving life to the crops and cooling and quenching the thirst of the toiling husbandman.

The dragon ultimately became synonymous with the Chinese, who proudly proclaim themselves “Long De Chuan Ren” (Descendents of the Dragon). The long line of emperors believed themselves to be, as did the Egyptians and other monarchical families in ancient times—the sons of heaven (the Sons of God; the Elohim), brothers to the gods, and incarnate

embodiments of the sacred dragons. All the empirical accouterments became known as things that were of the dragon: The bed of the emperor was the dragon bed; the throne, the dragon seat; and the emperor's ceremonial robes, the dragon robes. The dragon was in and throughout every aspect of ceremonial worship and daily life.

For half a millennium, the Xia people and their dynasty dominated the northern regions of China, from about 2000 to 1500 BCE. They were a people who collectively worshipped the sacred serpent, a creature found coiled around the most ancient of Chinese mythologies. Through the course of religious evolution, the serpent took on the form of the traditional Chinese dragon, and became the most everlasting symbol of a people and the most recognized emblem of Chinese culture, spirituality and mythology.

In 551 BCE, a child named Kongfuzi was born into a poor family of aristocratic lineage. His family's lineage allowed him the ability to become an educator and governmental official. Better known to the world as Confucius, his philosophy as an educator was that learning, in and of itself, was the path to greater self-knowledge and self-improvement. Working for and attaining these things would lead you to good conduct and clean living. His teachings took on legendary proportion through the centuries and millennia, but his underlying goal was to make wisdom the divine force that would result in the smooth operation of a stable and well-ordered state of being. Sounds very New Age, doesn't it? As most of us know, his teachings became a legendary guide to living wisely.

Many followers flocked to the teachings of Confucius, and they continued to perpetuate his ideas, even after his death in 479 BCE. As is with most legendary figures, who attained legendary status even during their own lifetimes, legends were fostered and spread about Confucius, including one in which sacred dragons guarded his mother during her pregnancy and attended to her at his birth.

Mesoamerican Feathered Serpent

According to Aztec, Mayan, and Toltec scriptures, Quetzalcoatl, the feathered serpent god, was the primordial creator and giver of life to all that is. Along with his mirrored opposite god, Tezcotlipoca, he created the world, and he was sometimes referred to as the "White Tezcotlipoca," contrasted to his darker opposite, the god of the night. He was called the great Sky God, the "Lord of the East," being associated with the morning

star, which also gave him the name Tlahuizcalpantecuhtli, “Lord of the Star of the Dawn.” Quetzalcoatl was also of virgin birth, his mother being the goddess Coatlicue and his twin brother god, Xolotl, known as the evening star, associated with Venus. It was Quetzalcoatl who, after the death of the fourth sun (Fourth Age), descended to Mictlan, the land of the dead, and by sprinkling blood drawn from his penis over the bones of the dead he had gathered from the previous era, created the fifth sun and the dawning of the new age of mankind.



The Temple of the Feathered Serpent has fine stylized depictions of that deity in a style that includes the apparent influences of Teotihuacan and Maya art. Image made available through Wikimedia Commons.

Comparatively speaking, the resemblance to titles used for Jesus, the Bright Morning Star, and Lucifer [לִילִּה], the Morning Star, are striking. This begs the question as to whether the Jesus of early Christianity garnered His title from the same sort of evolution of pagan, earth-based religious belief as did Quetzalcoatl, only a few hundred years later. Although Christianity teaches that God (the Creator) and Lucifer/Satan/Devil (the created) are not precise opposites, despite the fact that they represent opposing forces of good and evil, and that-which-is-holy versus that-which-is-profan, the dual nature of the opposing forces is present in nearly all religious belief and mythology in every culture. In this sense, Quetzalcoatl becomes the very same archetype. And because we all know that the morning and evening stars are merely a planet in the solar system, attributing them to being the presence of divinity, even on a comparative level, is certainly nothing short of an archaic understanding on the part of both religious mythologies. As humans, we have always looked to the equinoxes and the traversing of the heavenly bodies to ascribe some sort of mystical substance to our gods.

The dual, or twin, aspects of Quetzalcoatl and Xolotl is not lost on the comparison between Jesus and Lucifer, who are not only the diametrically opposing elements in the Christian faith, but also hypothesized, by some wags, to be twin brothers, both of the Elohim.

As with other gods riddled throughout human history, it was Quetzalcoatl, the feathered serpent, who—as is attributed to Lucifer, Enki/Ea, Khrisna, and others—brought the knowledge of the gods to humanity, this act bestowing on him the additional title of “wise legislator.” And, as with the Serpent in the Garden of Eden, he was condemned by the other gods, and crucified on a tree, like Jesus Christ, the Messiah of the Christian faith.

Veneration of Quetzalcoatl as a god appears to have begun in the early Classic Mesoamerican periods between 400 BCE and 600 AD, and spread throughout Mesoamerica by the Late Classic Period (600–900 AD).⁸ There is some credence to the academic notion that Quetzalcoatl was merely a deified earthly king from an earlier Mesoamerican period, which would also fit the picture of most mythological gods who once had firm footing in the flesh and blood, but with the evolution of legend, became much, much more.

In the Aztec culture, whose religious beliefs are among the best-documented in historical sources, Quetzalcoatl was the god of the wind, the star of the dawn, of merchants, arts, crafts, and knowledge. He was also, as the bringer of learning and knowledge, the patron god of the Aztec priesthood,⁹ another cross-cultural similarity to the Illuminator and Bringer of Knowledge.

In one version of the myth, Quetzalcoatl allowed himself to be seduced by his smoking mirror opposite, Tezcatlipoca, and in his resultant remorse, threw himself on a funeral pyre, killing himself by “theocicide.” After his death his heart became the morning-star, creating his identification with the god Tlahuizcalpantecuhtli. Toltec religious dualism has it that Tezcatlipoca, the opposing deity to Quetzalcoatl, had reportedly driven the god into exile. According to yet another tradition, Quetzalcoatl traveled over the sea on a raft of snakes. Quetzalcoatl has been physically described as being light-skinned and bearded, and prophesies of his future return were connected to his mythology. When the Spanish conquistador Hernán Cortés appeared in Mesoamerica in 1519, the Aztec king at the time, Montezuma II, lured by

the higher technology, weaponry, and appearance of the Conquistadors, was easily convinced that Cortés was in fact the reincarnate Quetzalcoatl, returning to rule his people.

Quetzalcoatl became a dualistic serpentine symbol of death and resurrection. The god has a great affinity with the priest-king Topiltzin Ce Acatl Quetzalcoatl, who ruled the Toltecs in Tula during the 10th century. The cult of Quetzalcoatl became widespread in Teotihuacan, an area about 30 miles north of what is now Mexico City, as well as Xochilco, Cholula, and Chichen Itza.

In his book *Fingerprints of the Gods: The Evidence of Earth's Lost Civilization*, British author Graham Hancock published a controversial theory that states Egyptian culture, as well as all the Mesoamerican culture inclusive of the Aztec, Mayan, and Olmec, all shared similar Quetzalcoatl mythologies.¹⁰ The stories of a bearded, light-skinned man bringing “knowledge” are alleged to be common, and sprouting from a central source or a “master/proto” culture. As racist as that may sound by today’s standards of politically correct-speak, keep in mind that the mythologies are much older than current, 21st-century politics. The caterwaul by the scientific community is that all these theories are based on some sort of tacit racism, when in fact, it is the cultures themselves that have given us the stories, not later cultures attributing those stories to only the, as some in the scientific community call them, “brown peoples.”

Native American Rattlesnake

The serpent is revered among Native American tribes in the form of the rattlesnake, who is known as “Grandfather” and “King of Snakes.” It is he who gives both fair winds and is the bringer of tempestuous weather, aligning with the myths of Quetzalcoatl and his connection to the wind and weather.

In Native American Chippewa and Cherokee flood mythology, the Horned Serpent, Misiginebig, an evil, underwater serpent/dragon, kills one of the gods’ cousins. In an act of divine revenge, the gods kill the Horned Serpent, who in dying unleashes a great flood. The people first flee to the mountains and when they, too, become submerged, they float on a raft of serpents until the flood subsides. The evil spirits once controlled by the serpent god then go into hiding out of fear of further punishment and

repercussion. Again, the similarities to the Nephilim and the Flood of Noah are undeniable, as the Hebrew scripture tells us that the Nephilim were “on the earth in those days and also afterward” (Genesis 6:4). This is not to establish the Flood of Noah as the prototype or “true” story, but rather to compare the Flood of Noah to the other cultural accounts, demonstrating the common theme amongst varying cultural tales. (Anecdotally, in Ohio, atop a plateau overlooking the Brush Creek Valley, Serpent Mound is the largest and finest serpent effigy in the United States. The Mound Builders associated some great mystical value to the serpent, as demonstrated by archaeological sites such as the Serpent Mound, though, to date, no one has been able to decipher the particular associations.)

The Canaanite Basilik

The early, pre-Canaanite Phoenicians (the basis of the name “phoenix,” the rising firebird/dragon) had a serpent god called the Basilisk (made popular in one of the *Harry Potter* books and movies). This serpent wasn’t quite a serpent, but bore some of the physical characteristics of an early dragon figure, again demonstrating the migrated physicalized presence of the earlier serpentine representations. The Basilisk was considered to be an early representation of a phallic god, common in ancient religions, obviously founded in male domination. According to the mythology, to look directly at a Basilisk meant certain death in many of heinous forms, so it is impossible to picture them accurately, as no one was able to look at them and create an accurate representation. This ability to kill with a glance is shared by the gorgons of Greek mythology, mythical correspondents of the Basilisk. In turn, the only way to kill a basilisk was blindfolded and by use of indirect visual, such as by a mirror or by use of a mirror-like object in which the serpent could view its own reflection, as was the case with the Grecian myth of Perseus and his fight with Medusa.

First-century Roman historian Pliny the Elder wrote of the Basilisk: “The basilisk serpent has the same power, to kill with its gaze. It is a native of Cyrenaica, not more than 12 inches long. It routs all snakes with its hiss, and moves its body forward in manifold coils like other snakes.”¹¹

During the Middle Ages, the basilisk became identified with the cockatrice, a two-legged dragon with the head of a rooster, very similar to the phoenix, a serpent mentioned occasionally in the Old Testament book of Isaiah and other Hebrew scriptures:

And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice' den. (Isaiah 11:8)

Rejoice not thou, whole Palestina, because the rod of him that smote thee is broken: for out of the serpent's root shall come forth a cockatrice, and his fruit shall be a fiery flying serpent. (Isaiah 14:29)

They hatch cockatrice' eggs, and weave the spider's web: he that eateth of their eggs dieth, and that which is crushed breaketh out into a viper. (Isaiah 59:5)

For, behold, I will send serpents, cockatrices, among you, which will not be charmed, and they shall bite you, saith the lord. (Jeremiah 8:17)

When we enter the modern period, and Medusa becomes an innocuous decorative motif found on door knockers and broaches, the Basilisk immigrates to the United States and becomes identified with different American snakes, most notably the rattlesnake. One of the first rattlesnakes encountered by European explorers, a tropical variety known as the "Mexican West Coast rattlesnake," was given the scientific name *crotalus basiliscus*, or "Basilisk snake."

(On an interesting etymological note, the work *Basilisk* is where we got the later word for a temple of the phallic god, and eventually a type of church: the *basilica*. There is a remembrance to this ancient mythology found atop St. Peter's Basilica in Rome in the form of a phallic ball.)

Hindu Mythology

The worship of snakes and serpents in Hindu culture and religion demonstrates high status of snakes or nagas, in their mythology. नाग is the Sanskrit and Pāli word for a deity or class of entity or being, taking the form of a very large snake, found in Hinduism and Buddhism. The use of the term *naga* is often ambiguous, as the word may also refer, in similar contexts, to one of several human tribes known as or nicknamed the Nāgas. The term is still used to apply to ordinary snakes, particularly the King Cobra and the Indian Cobra, the latter of which is still called naga in Hindi and other languages of India.

The serpent primarily represents symbolic rebirth, death, and mortality, again as we've seen in other cultures, due to the casting of its skin and symbolic "rebirth." Carved representations of cobras or nagas can be found all across India, to which offerings of food and flowers are left, with lights burned before the many and various shrines. Among some South Indians, the cobra is so revered that, if accidentally killed, it is burned like a human being on a funerary pyre; no one would kill one intentionally.

The Serpent Nāgas form an important part of Hindu mythology and play prominent roles in various legends. The following is a list of serpents from Hindu mythology¹²:

Shesha (Adisesha, Sheshnaga, or the 1,000-headed snake) upholds the world on his many heads and is said to be used by Lord Vishnu to rest. Shesha also sheltered Lord Krishna from a thunderstorm during his birth.

Vasuki allowed himself to be coiled around Mount Mandara by the Devas and **Asuras** to churn the milky ocean creating the ambrosia of immortality.

Kaliya poisoned the Yamuna/Jamuna River where he lived. Krishna subdued Kaliya by dancing on him and compelled him to leave the river.

Manasa is the queen of the snakes. She is also referred to as Manasha or "Ma Manasha," with *ma* being the universal mother.

Ananta is the endless snake who circles the world.

Padmanabha (or Padmaka) is the guardian snake of the south.

Astika is half-Brahmin and half-naga.

Kulika.

Lord Shiva also wears a snake around his neck.

An important Hindu festival bearing ancient association with snake worship is *Nag panchami*. It is held on the fifth day of Shravana, and snake idols are offered gifts of milk and incense. It is said that the gaining of

wisdom, wealth, and fame are sought after by the offering of milk and incense to the serpent idol. Once again, the serpent is associated with illumination and the getting of knowledge.

Egyptian

Apophis, also known as Apep,¹³ dating back into the 1500s BCE, was the great water serpent god who slept in the mountains of Baku, rising with the morning star, daily attacks Ra on his journeys through the daytime sky and the underworld, and is subsequently destroyed each evening by Sobek, the god of the crocodiles.

As we have seen in most other religions and cultures thus far, the serpent seems to always hold some chthonic symbolism—that underworld characterization as the giver of life, possessing the creator aspect that seems ever present wherever the serpent is worshipped. Nowhere is this so evident and pervasive than in the mysticism of ancient Egyptian religion and worship. In the mythology and symbolism of Egypt exist some of the most glaring dualistic contrasts between reverent worship of the serpent and fear-based repudiation.

The Egyptians' reverence for the serpent's life-giving powers probably arose, in part, from—once again—observing them shedding their skins, continually exposing a new resurrected body in the process. The god Atum, the ancient Egyptian primeval creator deity, is represented in the form of the serpent who seasonally shed his outer skin, a symbol of the continual life, death, and new life cycle. At one point, Atum prophesies to Osiris, the Egyptian god of the netherworld and final judgment, that he is going to destroy the entire world he had created and revert back to his serpentine form.¹⁴

Early-20th-century Dutch-born archaeologist Henri Frankfort, who spent his life reconstructing ancient Egyptian and Mesopotamian culture and mythology, said of the Egyptian serpent gods, “The primeval snake survives when everything else is destroyed at the end of time. Thus the serpent was strongly and continually associated with creation and eternal existence in the ancient Egyptian ethos. The Egyptians portrayed life itself by the image of the rearing serpent, and a serpent biting its tail was a common Egyptian emblem for ‘eternity.’”¹⁵

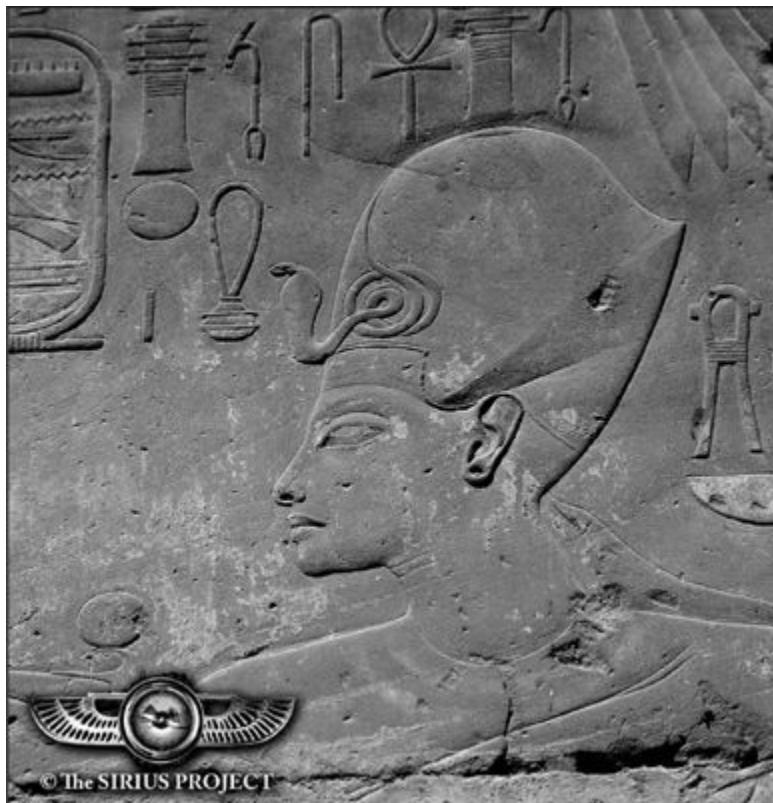
During the Egyptian Middle Kingdom (2030–1640 BCE), post-11th Dynasty, the god Amun came onto the scene as the patron god of the capitol city of Thebes. Amun in one of his manifestations was that of the serpent god named Kematef (“he who has completed his time”).¹⁶ At Karnak, during the beginning of the New Kingdom (1550–1090 BCE), Amun was merged with the sun god Ra, when Pharaoh Ahknaten uprooted the entire Egyptian system of religion and worship and decreed a new, monotheistic society. “Amun-Ra became the monotheistic, supreme state-enforced/endorsed god of Egypt during this period. Amun-Ra’s divine consort, the serpent goddess Mut (“the resplendent serpent”) gave birth to a son named Khonsu.”¹⁷ Together, this holy triad, in the Egyptian worldview, symbolized the perfect union both in the house of the gods as well as being representative of the supreme social structure of the royal family. And it was this family portrait that inextricably linked the house and family of the pharaoh to the mythological serpent of Egyptian mythology. But Ahkenaten’s monotheistic society lasted but one generation before it was overthrown and the implementation of a reversion back to the polytheism took place.

All periods of Egyptian history, from the earliest historical times all the way to the end of the New Kingdom, creation, fertility, birth, the goodness of the gods, rebirth, and resurrection were all embodied in the image of the serpent. Thermuthis was the serpent-headed goddess to whom were brought offerings at the time of harvest, thanking her for successful crops of both food and grape of the vine.¹⁸

The Father of Serpents, Geb, was the god of earth and “the father of the gods.”¹⁹ The snake was linked to life after death and the recurring cycle of life due to Egyptian obsession with the quest for eternal life, and he became a symbol of survival after death and even resurrection among the ancient Egyptians. In the *Egyptian Book of the Dead*, sometimes referred to by its more precise title, *The Book of Going Forth by Day*, in chapter 87, we are told that transformation into a serpent upon death gives new life to the deceased.²⁰

A serpent goddess in pre-dynastic Egypt set the stage for her veneration as an enduring symbol throughout the rest of dynastic Egyptian history. The most important serpent of Lower Egypt was Wadjet (“the green one”) who eventually became the symbol of a unified Egypt and its royal house. It was

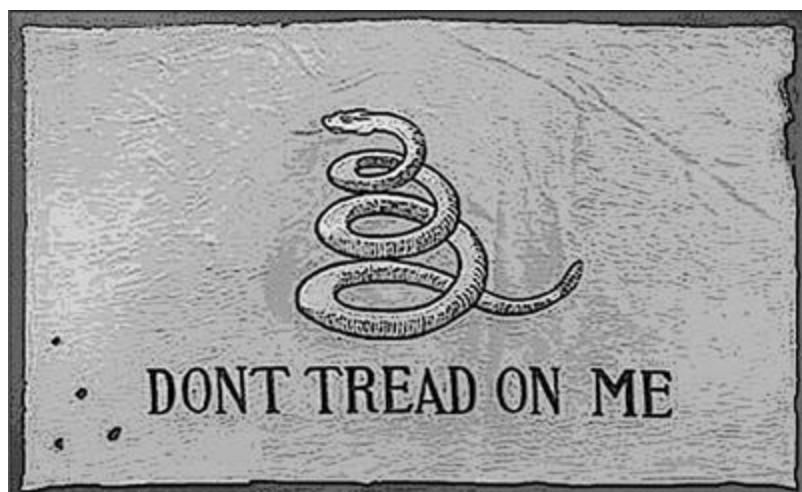
this serpent goddess whose name became synonymous with the general Egyptian term for *cobra* and the foundation for the creation of the symbol of the uraeus, the standing figure of the cobra found most often as the headpiece on the royal Egyptian crowns. The cobra/uraeus became such an important piece of Egyptian iconography that the life of the Pharaoh became known as the living years of the uraeus.²¹ Wadjet not only became physically represented on the Pharaoh's crown as his guardian and protector, but eventually was bestowed the title of the Eye of Ra. Her green color, significantly, became the color that represented resurrection in ancient Egypt, and Wadjet, also referred to as "the green one," embodied the forces of health and fertility. As with most gods out of antiquity, you can quickly see how numerous titles continued to be added on, as the powers and influence of the god evolved in worship (Wadjet: the green uraeus of the Pharaoh, the Eye of Ra, the protector and guardian of the life of the Pharaoh, the power of fertility and good health).



The crown of 18th-Dynasty Egypt, clearly showing the serpent figure. Copyright Sirius Project, Dr. John Ward, and Dr. Maria Nilsson, Luxor, Egypt. Used by permission of the Sirius Project.

Representing the oppositional character of the Egyptian serpent was the Serpent God of Darkness, the winged, fire-spewing Apophis. What Wadjet was to all that was good in ancient Egypt, Apophis was her counterpart, representing the demonic forces, evil gods, and powers of the bleak underworld. Apophis was the serpent of darkness, in complete opposition to the sun god Ra, who was the light of the world. But Apophis, albeit the antithesis to Ra, was never more powerful. He simply counterbalanced the serpent Mehen (“the coiled one”) who was the protector of the sun god Ra, assisting him on his journey through the realm of night to be reborn every morning.²² And as you find in many cultures and religions, the powers of darkness are thwarted by the power of good. As Satan is to God, so Apophis is to Ra, with minor alterations to the functionality.

It has been said time and again that the ancient Egyptians were utterly preoccupied with death—at least the royal family’s, as far as can be seen. Their entire lives, especially when a seated Pharaoh, were consumed with the afterlife and the resurrection. There is an interesting entry in the Pyramid Texts, the funerary papyri of ancient Egypt. In these documents is listed something for which there is very little explanation: the “snake game,”²³ presumably a test of sorts, played out in the afterlife when a Pharaoh died—a game he has to win. How interesting a tie to modern Christianity would that be!? The notion of an Egyptian judgment, test, or fist-a-cuff in order to enter the beautiful wonders of the afterlife seem a colloquial version of a much greater religious prime.



The Gadsen Flag: “Don’t Tread on Me.” Image copyright of the author.

Don't Tread on Me

Being an American and a citizen of the United States, I cannot overlook the serpent symbolism in some of my country's own iconography, continuing a long tradition of the snake making its appearance in the cultures of humanity. The Gadsen Flag, commonly recognized as the yellow "Don't Tread on Me" banner, emblazoned with the coiled rattlesnake, was named after Christopher Gadsen, a colonial general and statesman. Benjamin Franklin wrote of the rattlesnake as a symbol for American vigilance:

I recollect that her eye excelled in brightness, that of any other animal, and that she has no eye-lids—She may therefore be esteemed an emblem of vigilance. She never begins an attack, nor, when once engaged, ever surrenders: She is therefore an emblem of magnanimity and true courage.—As if anxious to prevent all pretensions of quarreling with her, the weapons with which nature has furnished her, she conceals in the roof of her mouth, so that, to those who are unacquainted with her, she appears to be a most defenseless animal; and even when those weapons are shewn and extended for her defense, they appear weak and contemptible; but their wounds however small, are decisive and fatal:—Conscious of this, she never wounds till she has generously given notice, even to her enemy, and cautioned him against the danger of stepping on her.—Was I wrong, Sir, in thinking this a strong picture of the temper and conduct of America?²⁴

The serpent has always been associated with strength and influence, despite its dualism as both a creature to be feared and revered. It can be asserted, however, that given such overwhelming evidence from texts and inscriptions, the ultimate duality in nature and perception of the serpent was illustrated by the need to have the serpent demonstrably enact both supreme goodness as well as ultimate evil among the ancient Egyptians, and that serpent imagery was incontrovertibly associated with the afterlife, resurrection, and eternity, as with so many other serpents in so many other religions and cultures.

PART II
The Serpent in Alien Subculture

Chapter Four

The Reptoids...Reptilians—No, Wait...Reptilian-Humanoids

As you have seen, the key to understanding the connectivity of the serpent to Reptilian/alien mythos is completely predicated on having an understanding of how the serpent's role became so important in human history—more specifically, to people, themselves. Believe what you will about spirituality, religion, science, or anthropology, the serpent figure has played prominently in the lore of ancient theory, and has become the rock star of current alien conspiratorial thought, the theory itself becoming the “mother ship” for all the varied, extraneously divergent sub-theories making the rounds in the circles of the ufological faithful. Make no mistake: The secret history of the Reptilians is as much a manufactured “religion” as are the snake and dragon cults from the depths of our anthropological past. That does not mean they do not exist in some form. If that was the final conclusion, this book would end right here.

The Bacilica of Reptilica

Gnosticism will tell you that the truest sense of theology is psychology. I would add anthropology to that mix—and that claims made about God or gods, are in their truest sense, actually only projections of humanity, the reflections of who we deem ourselves to be. After all, religion is humankind’s attempt to fill the god-shaped vacuum that exists in the human mind and heart, creating and re-creating God in the form that we need Him to be; religion, of course, being something completely different than spirituality—certainly on the same chart, just a different emphasis. We project and extrapolate our needs onto what we think God should be, and—*viola!*—we have religion.

What is all this talk about religion doing in a section of the book that is supposed to be about Reptilian/alien subculture, one might ask? Intrinsically, it is because they are the *very same thing*. Humans have some deep primordial, psychological, physiological wiring that makes us want to know more about who we are and where we come from and where we are

supposed to go from there. Human beings have an innate need to know our roots, and discover the reasons we are what we are and why we do what we do, but then we incorporate our innate creativity to construct the landscape around us. We can take the minutest of causality and convert that to consequence, and in so doing, we may find ourselves constructing a psychological fortress that will house and protect the way we conceive our universe and interact with our surroundings. So let's take a brief jaunt into the psychology of the need for God and aliens and everything else in between. Those base needs sprout from the human psyche.

To get some grasp of why the mind works the way it does in regard to these matters of mythology, let's take a simple look to the “fathers” of modern psychology: Sigmund Freud and Alfred Adler.

Freud, although a pioneer in his field—some of whose ideas have been left behind as we learn more and more about how the mind operates—focused his research on the unconscious/subconscious mind and how it juggles innate biological motives that are hardwired into human physiology, alongside the brain’s ability to produce irrational thinking. Repressed, early memories were at the root of what Freud was looking for, and he referred to his methods as *depth psychology*, a going back to our roots to see what we’re made of and why we operate the way we do in the current. We hear so much about modes of operation and family systems when we are trying to root out the origins of behaviors, which ultimately was fleshed out for the first time with Freud’s research. This brand of looking-to-the-past-psychology *can* be applied corporately (to a group), but Freud was much more interested in how the *individual* formed these modes prior to cognitive awareness.

On the other hand, common sense and conscious behavior were the focus of Adler’s research, leading him to emphasize what he called *surface* or *context psychology*. He believed that cognitive social motives and intimate social interactions were what drove behaviors in people, and he was aptly dubbed the father of ego and humanistic psychology. His work in cognitive and family therapy led him to the conclusion that it was the interactive social structure between people¹—especially family members—that was the primary motivation for human behavior. The goal for Adler’s form of therapy was to focus on a form of daily living experience that made social interaction the primary focus.

Freud, generally speaking, filtered his view of human nature through a pessimistic view of the things that govern behavioral outcomes. He adhered to a Darwinian/Hobbesian philosophy, which basically states that man in the state of nature, according to Hobbes, has no idea of moral goodness, and therefore must be naturally wicked; he is vicious because he does not know virtue. Throw a little “survival of the fittest” into the mix, and you have the rudimentary basics of Darwinian-Hobbesian Theory. (Hold on, psychologists; I’m going somewhere with all of this.)

Adler had a much more optimistic approach to the foundations of cognitive behavior, following a more or less Rousseau-ian/Humanistic philosophy, which espoused that human nature is innately good, and that society, our surrounding, and environment are the corrupting force that transforms man into self-interested/self-actualizing people.

The first man who, having fenced in a piece of land, said “This is mine,” and found people naïve enough to believe him, that man was the true founder of civil society. From how many crimes, wars, and murders, from how many horrors and misfortunes might not any one have saved mankind, by pulling up the stakes, or filling up the ditch, and crying to his fellows: Beware of listening to this impostor; you are undone if you once forget that the fruits of the earth belong to us all, and the earth itself to nobody.

—Jean Jacques Rousseau, *Discourse on Inequality*, 1754

Sense of self, Freud contended, was determined by what was passed on to you from your parents, immediate family, and social externals, such as the environmental factors of familial relations, parenting, and social interactivity that took place when we were infants and small children—as well as decisive, life-altering experiences as we grow older. We are not only influenced, but governed and manipulated by our past experiences, so in getting to the roots of who you really are and why you act in certain methods and modes of operation, you have to return to your foundations and the starting points that launched certain lifelong behaviors. Freud promoted the retracing of your steps to see where you came from, the influences of that past, and how you’ve gotten to where you are in the current. Your personality and present modes of operation are, therefore, determined by your earlier environmental influences.

Adler believed that people are absolute free agents with the will to determine their own personality via their own cognitive choices and reliance on their own innate creative selves. If you want to know who you truly are and why you are doing what you're doing, *in the now*, look *ahead*, and consciously move yourself forward toward what you have determined you want to be. When you focus on your future goals and ambitions, you align your personality with what it is you want to become and achieve. Freud, conversely, endorsed something called *efficient causality*—those experiences that push us forward from behind, making us what we are in the present.

“We do not have knowledge of a thing,” purported Aristotle, “until we have grasped its why, that is to say, its cause.”²

In stark contrast, Adler, much like Freud’s early associate Karl Jung, advocated *final causality*, that which pulls us forward, from that which we determine lies ahead. The difference in causalities is the source: either influence from the past (of which we have no control) or influence from the future, or that which we create and ultimately control by our cognitive actions.

Adlerian philosophy observed that, on an innate level, human beings *feel inferior* and that these feelings of inferiority—or, better, a sense of feeling lost in an infinite world and universe—are the motivating force, the fire in the belly, the drive behind all personal striving for accomplishment and attainment of personal goals. In a sense, we start with absolutely nothing—perhaps even a deep insignificance in our own estimation—and we work our way up to what we *choose* to become, persistently building upon each successive failure and accomplishment. We *strive for excellence*—superiority, if you will—in order to compensate for the deeply innate feelings of inferiority. These are the things that push us to be better and to strive for being the very best we can be. This isn’t about seeking superiority over others; it is about expressing and actualizing the drive toward perfecting ourselves. Eventually Adler expanded this idea of striving for the *ideal self* to striving to create a superior or perfect society to go along with it, and that our creative self is free to make up any sort of world it envisions and puts into implementation. This, however, was in contrast to German psychoanalyst Karen Horney, a contemporary of both Freud and Adler, who pushed her idea that humans don’t strive for superiority; they strive for a

self image built out of *idealism*. People don't believe their real self is acceptable, so, out of necessity and psychological survival, we create—out of whole cloth—an *idolized* self—the thing we think we *should* be.³

Do you see where this is going?

The entire notion of a race of Reptilians may be simply explained as a thing we've *devised from our own imaginations*. Just as we have devised religions built on spiritual experience and theory, we have done the very same thing with the notion of extraterrestrial races that live and operate behind the scenes of humanity. Just as with religion, there are things we call "evidences," yet no solid, empirical facts to back the claims, with the exception of historical studies and research that reveals a past history rife with nothing more than myth building within myth building within myth building. Simply go to your computer and type in the word "reptilians" (as I just did), and you will find more than 1,630,000 entries, and in the top 10 sites that appear in the list, half of them take you to something written by or based on the work of Zechariah Sitchin and David Icke, a self-proclaimed messiah, and the rest start off with phrases such as the following:

"Reptilians (also called reptoids, reptiloids, or draconians) are purported reptilian humanoids that play a prominent role in science fiction...."⁴

"Description: Typically, Reptilians are described as 6 to 8 feet tall, bipedal, having scaly green skin, have a bad odor, have large eyes usually yellow or gold with...."⁵

"The Reptilian Aliens which are called Reptoids are proportional in size to modern humans. They have a snake like or lizard appearance...."⁶

"I'm not claiming these people weren't 100% human at one time, what I am saying is that they invited the control and bodily takeover of Reptilians through blood...."⁷

"The teachings of the reptilian Ea, thereafter referred to as the esoteric mysticism of the snake brotherhood, caused a major shift in the perceptions of reality for...."⁸

"The Reptilians are the creation of the Carians, their parent race. They evolved on a planet...."⁹

“David Icke - The Reptilians - the Schism - Obama and the New World Order...Reptilian Experiencer and Author ‘Susan Reed’ Found Dead in the Bahamas....”¹⁰

“Alex Collier - On Reptilians - ETs and The Global Connection. - Alex Collier - On...Cosmic Explorers - Different Reptilian Factions on Earth. - Credo Mutwa On....”¹¹

“Reptilian influence comes via Satanism which they created, and that controls Freemasonry (Phil Schneider found that the UN was run by tall grey aliens)....”¹²

At this point it may seem as if I am completely trashing and thrashing the Reptilian theory. In fact, I am doing nothing of the sort. In order to find what can withstand scrutiny and the boiling off of the dross, it is necessary to apply the “small s” skepticism of questioning everything— but not to point of offhandedly dismissing all. That’s the job of “big S” Skeptics such as Michael Shermer, who sustains his income in much the same way as the paranormalists, ufologists, and weird-o-logians he decries. If you can’t trust a researcher of the paranormal because they make money off of books, events, and TV, you certainly can’t trust those who do the same thing on the other side of the philosophical fence, for the same reasons.

I have found that there are “small s” skeptics and “big S” Skeptics. I and many other like-minded philosophers are in the “small s” camp; we approach things with an open, yet questioning mind. We want to *know* the answers, but we do not do what the “big S” Skeptics do, and that is to dismiss questioning and make empirical statements such as “No it isn’t”; “No it doesn’t”; “You’re completely wrong” without application of research, even if it’s a fringe element. “Big S” Skepticism has (as has science, in many degrees), in proclaiming themselves better, more knowledgeable, or possessing of keener reason and more erudite insight, become the surrogate for religion, faith, and any train of thought outside what they deem as acceptable science or mainstream thinking. In a very real sense, Skepticism and science have established themselves as the “new religion,” especially when they spend so much time decrying, and so little time researching the questions that fall outside established academia. The New Absolutism is that there are no absolutes.

Bringing this back to the psychological, it is clear that the human psyche is comprised of both the Freudian and Adlerian modes of primary expressions of the psyche: We humans have both the need to look to our pasts to determine where we came from, and the need to allow our future aspirations to pull us forward. Out of both, we create our present realities and live within the frameworks we compose for ourselves. Does this, then, bring to utter discredit the theory of alien interaction with human beings? Does it dismiss the completely the notion that there are races of extraterrestrial (ETs), interterrestrial (ITs), and ultraterrestrial (UTs) dwelling among us and influencing activity on this planet? Not necessarily. Just as I cannot dismiss the existence of God or the veracity of ancient religions on the simple notion that they are not quantifiable by the scientific method, I cannot dismiss the possibility that we have been visited by beings outside the realm of our sciences or understanding. This is where intelligent discussions on these matters collide as opposing, approaching trains on the same track.

“Oy!” you say, “Psychology! Religion! God! Mythology! When are you going to give us the aliens?” Hang on, folks; they’re comin’.

The proofs and evidences that exist to substantiate a factual claim that a Reptilian race exists and operates on this planet are as evasive as the proofs and evidences required to prove the existence and work of God in humanity or the existence of ghosts of dead people materializing at midnight on the third full moon of every year. In short, there is no solid proof beyond personal experience and anecdotal evidence. Has that lack of measurable quantifiability prevented humanity from its historical, perpetual worship of God, gods, and other forms of divinities? Not in the least. As with religion, Reptilian/alien theory has its experiencers, such as the one mentioned in the opening of the introduction of this book, but they become the promulgators of personal, individual contact and intercourse (not limited to a sexual understanding) that have seen the unseen, spoken with the invisible, and learned the secret knowledges not known to others. These are the founders of “religious thought” in the alien field. I don’t say this to cast any sort of negative light on their claims; I merely make the comparison to the spread of ancient religion and the evolution of religious thought within the alien culture. Just as Elil became Elohim, and Enki/Ea became Jehovah, so the progression of Reptilian esoterica has developed into its current state. The evangelists of the theory are as convinced in their perceptions and

evidences as are the professors and theologians in different trains of religious thought, who many times are found to overlap the two fields. And why do they do that? Because the two fields are all one-in-same; they are outward expressions of inner desires—projections of what we want the world to be. That can be placed squarely on the shoulders of both religion and alienist trains of thinking in that they both hail to the spiritual make-up of the human psyche, those parts of the spiritual composition of individuals that need something to answer the greater questions of what lay beyond the explorable sciences.

Insert caveat here: Just because science and psychology seem to indicate that these things might not be so, does not qualify as the final answer on the topic. Remember: There exist some veils that we simply cannot pierce.

“Professing themselves to be wise, they became fools.”

(Romans 1:22)

Where is the wise man? Where is the scholar? Where is the philosopher of this age? Has not God made foolish the wisdom of the world?

(1 Corinthians 1:20)

Everyone is senseless and without knowledge; every goldsmith is shamed by his idols. His images are a fraud; they have no breath in them.

(Jeremiah 10:14)

How can you say, “We are wise, for we have the law of the LORD,” when actually the lying pen of the scribes has handled it falsely?

(Jeremiah 8:8)

My Reptile Can Kick Your Lizard’s Ass

As we have seen, the archetypical serpent of ancient religion is certainly not the end of the story. The veneration of the snake in the ancient religious cultures of Sumer and Israel, China, Africa, and the ancient Americas is not where the influence of the serpent figure comes to a screeching halt. The presence of the serpent is not limited to the ancient religions of the world, though those religious/cultural mythologies are the philosophical foundations for ongoing reptilian mythologies. The psychology of needing or wanting something greater, built on human need for something to

eliminate the foundational struggles of the past, has created some short coattails on which ride the current Reptilian and alien mythologies.



© SCOTT ALAN ROBERTS

Author's rendition of the classic Reptilian. Image copyright of the author.

And perhaps this is the direct result of a humanity that wants something more than the traditional tales and entrenched religions. People are seeking for something more, so they create what they need and what they want to be. This, however, does not diminish the possibility that these notions have great efficacy, archaeologically, historically, cosmologically, and philosophically.

Our historical folklore is filled with imagery of the serpent reptile, ranging from science fiction and fantasy, to religious legends and modern conspiracy theories, ufology, and alien mythos to mysterious cryptozoological beings. The Reptilians, as we have come to understand them in current-day mythology, can be found firmly ensconced in alien,

otherworldly, and hollow earth lore as well as the theories of a race of intelligent, supernatural, inter-dimensional, highly developed reptile-like humanoids. They have become the stuffs of cult fiction, pseudoscientific theories, and the topics of the writings of New Age conspiracists.

David Icke, Riley Martin, and John Rhodes, stand out among the most recognizable claimants promoting the Reptilian existence and conspiracies, and though there are similarities to their versions of these beings, they also represent vastly differing theories as to their origins and interactions with the planet earth and the human race. None of them is anything less than malevolent. Martin's book, *The Coming of Tan*, is a memoir of his experiences as a sharecropper's kid who was taken on board an alien spacecraft. In his book he claims to have a personal knowledge of a race of Reptilians known as the Targzissians, an evil race of Reptilians who manage to coexist with six other types of aliens on a mother ship near Saturn.

On his [tumblr.com](#) profile, Rhodes says of his himself and his work: "My name is John Rhodes and I am a researcher, explorer and lecturer in the realms of ufology, occulted archaeology and metaphysics. In this report, I will be providing you with compelling evidence, gathered over many years of research, as to our genealogical connections with the overlord reptilian alien race and the occulted historical archaeology that clearly demonstrates that these reptilian beings have coexisted on this planet Earth with us for thousands of years prior to our current era."¹³

David Icke speaks of good and bad Reptilians fighting it out for domination of the Earth while clothed in cloned human skin, mostly infiltrating the royal families of Europe. (We will focus a bit on Icke in [Chapter 7](#).)

Reptoids is a descriptive manufactured word defining Reptilian-Humanoid beings. It is the most culturally popular name used to describe these extraterrestrial beings, although they are also referenced as dinosauroids,¹⁴ or lizardfolk or lizardmen (both *Dungeons and Dragons* terms, for you gamers out there). Other names include Draconians,¹⁵ which draw their name from the many proponents of the Draconian constellation as the point of origin for these otherworldly visitors, as well as Saurians and the hypothetical Dinoauroids.¹⁶ Although you may seek out other source points, they are generally found referenced by name in the plethora of

Internet sites that neither state source material nor point of origin, yet are found repeated over and over again into the countless hundreds of thousands. In these accountings the Reptilians are often described as having soft, scaly skin that is green or golden-brown in color. Yet, despite their similarity to Reptilian archetypes throughout mythology, no one has produced even a modicum of proof of the existence of Reptilian-Humanoids, and allegations of their existence can at best be referred to as crypto-zoological or pseudoscientific as opposed to a recorded genus or species.

Dale Russell, a Canadian-born geologist and paleontologist, was the first to purport an extraterrestrial theory as to the extinction of the dinosaurs in the form of an asteroid collision or supernova.¹⁷ He is also invented what became the highly controversial “Dinosauroid Thought Experiment,” a process that incorporates the employing of imaginary situations to help us understand the way things really are, or in other words, a hypothetical imagining of what could be if certain criteria had happened. This thought experiment resulted in his highly controversial, previously mentioned Dinosauroid.

Reptilians and the claims to their existence are nothing new. They are not simply the product of the mid-20th-century ufological explosion, nor are they a science fiction invention of Hollywood, however well-capitalized they might be in that market, with movies such as *The Alligator People* (1959), *Enemy Mine* (1985), *Conan the Barbarian* (1982), *Krull* (1983), *V—the Miniseries* (1984), the *Star Trek* franchise, and the list goes on. Experiencers, contactees, and abductees have, for centuries, made claims that they have been in contact with Reptilian peoples, yet there still exists no substantive proof beyond the stuffs of anecdotal evidences and personal experience as to just who the Reptilians are and where they actually come from, if indeed they exist as a race at all. Arguments have been made that Reptilians are Earth-evolved beings that expanded out into the cosmos long ago, and others will conversely argue that they came here from the aptly named constellation of Draco, hence the “Draconian” moniker.

According to proponents of the Reptilian theory, there has been enough information derived from the many contactee and experiencer reports and stories as to build a formidable trove of information about these beings. As a result, the Reptilian conspiracy *believers* emphatically insist they are in a

position to *deliver the truth* behind the origins of the Reptilian aliens, revealing precisely who these beings are and exactly what is behind their hidden agenda. Those unwilling to listen and heed the warnings will be doomed to fall under the influence and enslavement of the Reptilians.

After researching copious amounts of information on the origins of these Draconian Reptilians, I was able to boil down the varying stories, hypotheses, and myriad personal accounts into an acceptable amalgam that bears all the elements of the following:

The Reptilians evolved on two separate planets, one being Earth and the other a planet near Draconis, the brightest star in the aptly named serpentine-shaped constellation of Draco (Latin for “Dragon”). “Draco” is circumpolar—that is, never setting—for many observers in the northern hemisphere’s night sky. It was one of the 48 constellations listed by second-century astronomer Ptolemy and remains one of the 88 modern constellations today. From these two vastly distant planets of origin, two distinctly different races of Reptilian would evolve and help shape our planet and civilization as we know it today.

As the two Reptilian races evolved, it was known to the Draconian Reptilians, an evil spirited, warrior species, manipulative and deceitful in nature, that the Earthly Reptoids were a peaceful, good-hearted race. The Draconians were so evolved that, like the Arcturians, they surpassed the physical limitations of their material bodies, eschewing—despite their evil nature—their carnivorous need to eat and digest solid foods, developing the ability to ingest their nutrients through pure energy alone. The only problem was that their required energy food source was bad, evil energy. Accordingly, in order to survive, the Draconians must ingest pure evil energy, and it is this fact alone that turns simple self-preservation for the Draconians into an evil agenda.

In order to survive, the Draconian Reptilians are also rumored to have created the race that we have come to know as the Alien Greys as their slave race cloned as a source for nutrition. As the Draconian civilization continued to grow and expand, however, there was wrench in the gears, for as the

Reptilians grew in numbers, so did their slave race of Greys. Soon the Greys, weary of being drained of their negative energy by the evil race of overlords, revolted, resulting in their freedom from the consumptive bondage of their creators, the Draconian Reptilians. They left their captors and, apparently, continued on with their own agenda.

But now, bereft of their evil-energized clone slave race, the Draconians desperately needed new sources of nutrition. So they set out in their mighty but evil fleet of starships, seeking other planets that had populations on which they could feed. But, of course, the energy of those populations had to be comprised of bad and evil energy, so the search for the right planet was painstaking and long. One can only assume the cannibalism that must've taken place during those long generations of space travel, furtively seeking a source of food.

One day, the fleet was all abuzz, for a new source of energy consumption had been located! The Draconians had stumbled across the planet Earth. Their discovery of Earth is difficult to reconcile with the fact that they seemed, by various accounts, to already know that the Reptoids of Earth were benevolent and good-spirited, and that represents one of the many gaping cracks in the narrative. As the story goes, it was here they observed the highly advanced, yet peaceful race of Reptilian-like aliens known as Reptoids. But far more important to the Draconians were the human beings indigenous to Earth. They set a plan in motion to utilize the human population on Earth as the source for their evil energy nutrition. They first needed to eliminate and remove the Earth-evolved Reptoids in order to launch their Reptilian Agenda and manipulate a race of evil-minded humans for their energy consumption.

At this point, there are gaps in the storyline, but after successfully forcing most of the Reptoids to leave the Earth, Draconian Reptilians began to work their way into and influence the civilizations of Earth's ancient past. Rumored reports state that some Earth-evolved Reptoids still exist beneath the streets and farms of our planet, and within the

subterranean caverns of the Earth, secretly operating as freedom fighters for the human population of Earth, countering the Draconian Reptilian Alien agenda.

Today, power struggles among the Alien forces have thwarted an outright invasion of our planet. Reptilian Aliens from the Draco Constellation still have a fixed eye on our planet and have emissaries here on Earth performing the vital tasks to ensure that humans remain on the track of corruption, hatred, and egocentric goals. The more evil, the more food.

Now, pull this leg and it plays “Jingle Bells.”

I honestly did not know, after reading several sources on the Draconian story, whether to laugh uncontrollably or simply shake my head slowly from side to side. And you thought the story of the Garden of Eden seemed implausible.

After dissecting the various stories and myriad accounts of the so-called Reptilian Agenda, the preceding story was what emerged. Granted, some of the versions I encountered were meticulously well-written, providing “research notes” (mostly citing Sitchin, Icke, and others) and eloquent narrative. Others read like a fifth-grade essay project, but for the most part, they all said, pretty much, the same thing—reading like the script to a poorly conceived, made-for-television, B-grade science-fiction thriller with even poorer CGI. If you want a weekend’s worth of good entertainment, simply conduct an Internet search on the “Reptilians,” then start reading the various versions of where they came from, how they got here, and what they’re up to. Then note, as you read, the absolute lack of source material and references, and you become as frustrated as I was attempting to locate any accounts that bore even a modicum of presented fact beyond the individual author’s *feelings* and ungrounded, unsubstantiated storytelling (and in most cases, not even good storytelling).

In short, if these accounts were all we had to go on, I would think it would be pretty easy to chalk this all up to overactive imaginations and erstwhile yet sloppy interpretations of personal experiences set against an even looser grasp of history and the anthropology of myth.

Hitting Below Orion’s Belt

“There are good reasons to assume the man does not experience his fellowman as a member of the same species.... For him different language, customs, dress and other criteria perceived by the mind rather than by instincts determine who is a co-specific and who is not, and any group which is slightly different is not supposed to share in the same humanity... precisely because he lacks instinctive equipment, also lacks the experience of the identity of his species and experiences the stranger as if he belonged to another species; in other words, it's man's humanity that makes him so inhuman.”

—Erich Fromm

The fact that there are so many stories and theories attempting to establish the existence of extraterrestrial and intraterrestrial Reptilians on this planet speaks to one of two things:

1. Extraterrestrial Reptilians actually exist and interact with humanity based on the over-abundance of stories and experiential accounts.
2. The over-abundance of stories provides a distinct picture of how “believers” in certain phenomena attempt to establish their case, while presenting absolutely no quantifiable evidence, thus contributing to an ever-increasing cache of unsubstantiated stories and information.

In other words, there's a lot of information out there that is the product of over-worked imaginations based on the supposed scholarly presentations of a very small handful of researchers.

It's like the existence of God and the hundreds of religions that have sprouted from that one particular idea: Everyone starts with the root concept and either mimics what has been taught, or builds their own offshoot denomination or religion. In recent years I have read more accounts of the Reptilians on the Internet that are precise, repetitive, word-for-word copies of theories presented by Zechariah Sitchin, David Icke, and others of like-mind, whom I would refer to as founders of the contemporary thinking on the Reptilian Theory, that I believe there are very few original thoughts or unique research out there. Most of these accounts are presented without any reference to their source material, nor any evidences or proofs establishing

their cases, but contain the very same language, parroting the information presented by one or two major proponents.

Despite believing that there is something that has interfered with and interrupted the bloodlines of humanity, I tend toward the latter, above, in that there seems to be an awful lot of scrambling to make a story fit the preconceived notion, as opposed to empirical data to substantiate the claim. And there exists a completely different take on the entire notion of extraterrestrial life making contact with the human race. The astrobiologists and exo-biologists who study life as it may or may not exist on other planets have a daunting task at their fingertips. Though we have not even mastered the intricacies of human life and other forms of life on *this* planet, the study of places billions of light years from where we exist is theoretical at best, impossible at worst, yet we still engage in the study and research, all because we want to have some idea of what is out there—and speculate on whether or not *what is out there* may know anything about *us*. On top of that, to even suggest that there might be life out there that is similar if not more advanced than life on Earth is still met with general ridicule and eye-rolling scoffs. To some who criticize, the notion flies in the face of reason and/or religion. To others, it is simply an irrelevancy that when stacked against the tumultuous intricacies of life on this planet, let alone within local governments, politics, poverty, war, communities, and even families, is completely without meaning. If we can't figure things out *here*, then how are we supposed to try to connect with something that exists in a place beyond the stars, so out-of-context and out-of-reach to us humans? "If they exist, why don't they just fly their little starship space saucers over and say 'Hi!'" is the arrogant response, and "If they had that technology, why would they want to come *here*?" is the answer for those who believe that our understanding of science is the unit by which we measure the dimensions of the greater galaxy and universe. Perhaps, for extraterrestrial life, contact with our species is as risky to them as Fromm suggests in the quote here, defined by humanity's intolerance to his fellow man.

I am as dichotomous on the subject of extraterrestrial contact as I am on the idea of God. To evangelicals, I am a heretic and a reprobate—a back-slidden blasphemer who has abandoned the true faith. To the atheist, I am a Bible-thumping, Word-of-God preaching, Christian apologist. And that is because I am decisively middle of the road in that I accept the unprovable

possibility that there is a God, but I have deeply rooted questions and doubts, and seek better answers than the regurgitated pap offered up in most churches.

I have the very same dichotomous approach when it comes to my stance on ancient alien theory and the existence of Reptilians and Greys: I want to see the evidence that doesn't force my hand to squeeze the square peg into the round hole. Yet, based on my multicultural religious studies, I have very little doubt that this planet has been visited by non-human intelligences. Call them gods, devils, angels, demons, or extraterrestrials, it's not even a stretch for me to believe that in the vastness of the outward moving, ever-expanding universe there are not races intelligent and advanced enough to have come to this place and possibly even still live here, as colloquial and local as that may seem. After all, ancient myth combined with historical documentation, film footage, experiencer and abduction cases, leaked government information, and numerous other data speak loudly to their existence. The bigger questions for me, as with many who have come before me, are: "Who are the main players?"; "How do we fit into the scheme?"; "After we know these things, where will that take us?"

The entire history of the alien mythos repeatedly asserts the existence of many different types of alien beings present on this planet today. Anecdotally speaking, even I am only one step removed from a dear, old friend who encountered and became intimately involved with a mysterious man who reported that he worked for a facility in New Mexico that sank dozens of stories under the ground, headquartering several dozens of alien species that live and interact on this planet. According to this shadowy character, these alien races have been restricted from any interference with human beings or their affairs, at least in the greater sense. But if this is true, why are we seeing an ever-increasingly number of experiencers and abductees repeatedly describing only two distinct types of intelligent life forms with whom they've interacted (the Greys and the Reptilians)? And why is it that *they* seem to have exclusive rights of interference with humans? If interaction between these beings and our own species has been occurring throughout history, as legend and myth could seem to indicate, then where is the substantive evidence as to their existence? Where are they from, and what is their business with, or interest in, us?

I am firmly convinced that the contact we have experienced with non-human entities is inextricably linked to the mythologies of the ancients and

that the contact we may be experiencing today has not only a metaphysical connection to the past, but a physical one as well.

The legacy of the ancient serpent has become the modern history of the Reptilian connection. Is there any substantive reality to it, or is it all simply the extrapolation of ancient mythology into the current age, all driven by the *need* to have something more?

PART III
The Serpent's Bloodline

Chapter Five

The Remnant of the Nephilim

¹When mankind began to multiply on the earth and daughters were born to them, ²the sons of God saw that the daughters of mankind were beautiful, and they took any they chose as wives for themselves. ³And the Lord said, “My Spirit will not remain with mankind forever, because they are corrupt. Their days will be 120 years.”

⁴The Nephilim were on the earth both in those days and afterward, when the sons of God came to the daughters of mankind, who bore children to them. They were the powerful men of old, the famous men. (Genesis 6:1–4)

It's a very familiar story to you by now. The Elohim came to the earth, according to the Old Testament's Book of Genesis and the apocryphal book of Enoch, and intermingled with humans. They chose women, cohabited with them, married them, impregnated them, and produced offspring: the hybrid race of Nephilim, the children of those Elohim who had left their place and come down. Prior to those events, one of the Elohim, forever known as the Serpent character, Nachash, had an intimate encounter with Eve in the Garden of Eden, revealing forbidden knowledge and impregnating her with his seed, producing the very first of the human-Elohim crossbred Nephilim, Cain. According to the religions wrapped around the events of the Book of Genesis, the consequence of this activity was the fall of humanity from the grace of God, spiritually ushering in the need for a system of blood redemption and a savior who would be their Messiah—the kinsman redeemer. The God of the Hebrews cursed the Elohim, Nachash, prophesying perpetual conflict between his offspring and the offspring of the human woman, Eve, who was the mother of all humanity. What followed in the biblical record were lengthy cataloguings of the descendants of Adam—which, we have noted, did not include Eve's firstborn twin son, Cain, as he was the child of Nachash of the Elohim. This genealogical record was set in place to establish the “pure” human

bloodline from which the kinsman redeemer was to come. What is glaringly left out of the biblical accounting, though, is the line of Nachash. We read that Cain was banished from Eden after murdering his younger twin brother, Abel. Exiled from Eden, Cain left behind the only two other people mentioned in the Bible as being on the earth at that time: Adam and Eve. He went out into a world void of inhabitants and civilization, east to the Land of Nod. Once there, the passage tells us that he made love to his wife (of course—what else would you do after being banished from the only place on earth?), whom he either brought with him from Eden—meaning she was one of his sisters not named in the account of the first family—or a woman he met in his wanderings. She, in turn, bore him a son, whom Cain named Enoch.

And there in the Land of Nod, Cain built a city, most likely a wooden enclosure around a few huts, in honor of his new son, and named the city after him, Enoch. Of the subsequent history of this little city we know very little, but of the name of the city we know a very great deal. Without entering into too much detail regarding changes in pronunciation that occur in the course of the development of a language, it seems necessary to point out here that the sound represented by the letter N is often reproduced as an R. The CH sound that terminates the name *Enoch* may be replaced by a K or G, or a GH sound. These sorts of linguistic changes are very common in ancient tongues, and in relation to biblical city mounds, or tells, the people living around these cities kept the name places fairly intact throughout the passage of millennia. This revealed a very important city in antiquity that appeared under the name *Uruk*, and a study of cuneiform soon revealed that this could equally well be pronounced *Unuk*, which was recognized as identical with the biblical word *Enoch*.¹

What is more interesting is that the name Uruk/Unuk became synonymous with the word *city*, and not simply a mere city, but a city of great historical importance. The word in its raw form actually means, “the First City.”

Nod [נוֹד] is the Hebrew root of the verb “to wander” [לְנַדּוּ] and is obviously an etymological causation intended to explain the wandering, nomadic lifestyle of Cain and his future putative descendants, the Kenites. This sort of play on words is typical of rabbinic writings and suggests that this is a later scribal interpretation, which was more than likely inserted to

suggest that Cain's descendants were without territory—in other words, nomadic. Additionally, the Hebrew language did not exist prior to the time of Abraham, who lived some 4,000 years after the time of Cain. The language Cain and his descendants would have spoken was probably a Nilotic/Kushitic language closer to Old Arabic (Dedanite). So, although Cain built the first city, his descendants were forever known as wanderers, those without home, territory, or place to exist. And these were the offspring of Nachash.

It is interesting to note that, though the Nephilim mentioned in Genesis 6 are offspring of the Sons of God, the bene ha 'Elohim, they are not the children of the serpent. Nachash was not their father. So the Nephilim of Genesis 6 are not the "serpent seed," though it is quite possible that the descendants of Cain had grown large enough to be part of the hybrid race of Nephilim that had encompassed all of the known earth, corrupting the bloodlines of humanity up until the time of Noah. There is no direct information on this point of detail, though it can be extrapolated from the rest of the information that this is probably so.

The Serpent Seed Doctrine

So many times and in so many ways, current Christianity operates under presumptions that the text from which they pull their doctrine has been accurately translated, or presents a factual accounting of what they think they are understanding. Never is this truer than when fundamental Christianity takes dogmatic stances on the person and character of Lucifer/Satan/the devil, as well as the passages used to substantiate his presence in the Bible and in important doctrine-establishing passages of scripture. The lack of careful examination of the biblical text about the Serpent Seed Doctrine reveals a complete misunderstanding of the figure of Satan. The biblical passages that are forced to support the theory that Satan is a fallen angel is a tragic theological conundrum in the churches of modern Christianity, because the result is a complete misunderstanding of several applied biblical passages, the result of which has created a corrupt doctrine that perpetuates a complete error about the creature known as Satan.

When YHWH (Yahweh/Jehovah), the Mighty-One, revealed Himself to Moses and had Moses write the Hebrew Torah (also known as the Pentateuch, the first five books of the Bible), there was not one single

mention of an evil angel named Satan, or a plurality of evil angels—or, for that matter, *any* being that could tempt you in your mind to transgress the law of God. In fact the main point of the Torah is to proclaim that there is only one Mighty-One, and that one Mighty-One is YHWH (Yahweh/Jehovah). In Exodus 20:2–3 we find these words:

²“I am YHWH (Yahweh) your Mighty-One, which has brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage. ³You shall have no other mighty one before Me.”

Deuteronomy 4:35–36 says:

³⁵Unto you it was shown, that you might know that YHWH (Yahweh), ³⁶He is the Almighty, there is none else beside Him. Know therefore this day, and consider it in your mind, that YHWH (Yahweh/Jehovah) He is the Almighty in heaven above and upon earth beneath: there is none else” (author’s emphasis).

The first point to understanding this Serpent Seed Doctrine, is to understand that it is generally looked down upon as an heretical doctrine by those who claim to have the truth of God’s Word” on their side. Before we say a single word about the doctrine itself, it is important to note that we are looking at it from a “religion-spin-free zone”—from a point of view that sees such statements as “Let’s look at this from the perspective of one and only true word of God” as being thickly entrenched in religion-making and religion-keeping, as opposed to fact-finding.

If you wonder what the Serpent Seed Doctrine is, well, you actually already know, if you have read this book up to this point. The Serpent Seed, Dual Seed, or Two-Seedline is a controversial doctrine according to which the Serpent in the Garden of Eden mated with Eve, and the offspring of their sexual union was Cain, thereby bequeathing a bloodline that threads throughout humanity. Bingo. There it is.

The reaction in fundamentalist Christian circles is *What!? Eve mated with Satan and bore the devil’s child?! And there is a line of descendancy? Impossible. Not in my Bible!* But you have to disavow yourself of contemporary notions and fictions such as the idea behind *Rosemary’s Baby* or such other works when attempting to understand these concepts. **Nachash was not Satan. He was not the devil.** He may not have even been Lucifer, despite the later works in the Bible attributing Lucifer/Satan/the

devil to the Serpent in the Garden. And keep in the forefront of your mind, the only biblical passages making this claim do not spell it out in precise detail, nor can they, generally, withstand the scrutiny of criticism on a linguistic level. *Never* is Nachash, the Serpent in Genesis, directly said to be Lucifer, Satan, or the devil.

Here are the few references in the Bible that some theologians use to establish that the Serpent in the Garden has anything to with Lucifer, Satan, or the devil. See what you think.

Ezekiel 28:11–19

Ezekiel 28:11–19 is considered to be the first extrapolated reference to Lucifer/Satan/the devil as being present in the Garden of Eden. It was written approximately 1,000 years *after* the writing of the Book of Genesis. It is a lament written for the fallen King of Tyre, and the Christian church has rendered its meaning to stand as a metaphor for Lucifer/Satan/the devil. In actuality, it is not about Lucifer/Satan/the devil at all. Here is how the authorized version of the biblical passage reads:

Lamentation for the King of Tyre
(author's emphasis throughout)

¹¹Moreover the word of the Lord came to me, saying, ¹²“Son of man, take up a lamentation for the *King of Tyre*, and say to him, ‘Thus says the Lord God:

“You were the seal of perfection,
Full of wisdom and perfect in beauty.

¹³*You were in Eden, the garden of God;*
Every precious stone was your covering:
The sardius, topaz, and diamond,
Beryl, onyx, and jasper,
Sapphire, turquoise, and emerald with gold.
The workmanship of your timbrels and pipes
Was prepared for you on the day you were created.

¹⁴“*You were the anointed cherub who covers;*
I established you;
You were on the holy mountain of God;
You walked back and forth in the midst of fiery stones.

¹⁵You were perfect in your ways from the day you were created,
Till iniquity was found in you.

¹⁶“By the abundance of your trading
You became filled with violence within, And you sinned;
Therefore I cast you as a profane thing
Out of the mountain of God;
And I destroyed you, O covering cherub,
From the midst of the fiery stones.

¹⁷“Your heart was lifted up because of your beauty;
You corrupted your wisdom for the sake of your splendor;
I cast you to the ground,
I laid you before kings,
That they might gaze at you.

¹⁸“You defiled your sanctuaries
By the multitude of your iniquities,
By the iniquity of your trading;
Therefore I brought fire from your midst;
It devoured you,
And I turned you to ashes upon the earth
In the sight of all who saw you.

¹⁹All who knew you among the peoples are astonished at you;
You have become a horror,
And shall be no more forever.”

However, there are many translation issues with the preceding verses, which render it to read as a figurative descriptive metaphor for Lucifer/Satan/the devil. On examination, it says nothing of the sort. Here is how the passage is rendered in the Hebrew language in which it was originally written. Compare it to the rendering of the passage above (again, author’s emphasis throughout):

^{11–12}And the word of YHWH (Yahweh) came to me saying,
‘Son of man, raise a dirge over the king of Tyre. Say to him,
“The Master YHWH (Yahweh) says this: You were once a *seal-print [exemplar] of perfection*, full of wisdom, perfect in beauty.

¹³You came into luxury, a paradise from Elohim, gems of every kind were your covering, Sardin, topaz, diamond, chrysolite, onyx, jasper, sapphire, carbuncle, emerald. Your jingling beads were of gold, and the spangles you wore were made for you on the day of your birth. ¹⁴I had provided you with a guardian cherub; you were in the set-apart mountain of Elohim, and you walked proudly among the stones that flashed with fire. ¹⁵You were blameless in all your ways from the day of your birth until iniquity came to light. ¹⁶Your busy trading has filled you with lawlessness and sin, so I thrust you down from the mountain of Elohim, and the guardian cherub banished [or destroyed] you from among the stones that flashed like fire. ¹⁷Your heart has made you arrogant because of your beauty. You have corrupted your wisdom because of your splendor. *I have thrown you to the ground; I have made you a spectacle for other kings.* ¹⁸So great was your sin in your wicked trading, that you have desecrated your sanctuaries. So I kindled a fire within you, to consume you. I left you as ashes on the ground for all to see. ¹⁹Of the nations, all who know you were aghast; you became waste, gone forever.””

The major textual problems with the previous passage require a highly technical linguistic research, bringing in many intricate details from not only the Hebrew language, but also the LXX (the Septuagint, or Greek translation of the Old Testament). So rather than write 10 pages of textual criticism, linguistics, and translation issues, let me simply state that the comparatives made between the King of Tyre and Lucifer/Satan/the devil are insufficient translations, and one needs to go back to the Hebrew and Septuagint to understand the proper translation as rendered in the second version of the passage above.^{2,3}

Job 38:7

Job 38:7 is also used to speak of the Serpent being Lucifer:

“When the morning stars sang together, And all the sons of God shouted for joy?”

Because Lucifer/Satan was a created being, and because Eden was guarded by cherubim after the Fall, some scholars say that Lucifer/Satan must have been in Eden between his creation and the fall of humanity. Many scholars believe, based on Job 38:7, that all the angels, including Lucifer, were created on or before Day Four of creation week along with the sun, moon, and stars, only two days before the creation of Adam and Eve. But remember: Lucifer was a member of the Divine Council, one of the Elohim, the “Sons of God.” Though Lucifer may have been the Serpent, this verse says absolutely nothing about him being so. This verse also establishes for me that the “days” of Genesis were more than likely not 24-hour, solar days, but probably epochs of time. If they were literal 24-hour, solar days, then Lucifer decided he would take over God’s throne, rebelled, and fell from grace in roughly four to seven days from his moment of creation. (That’s another topic that we could trail off into for many pages.)

2 Corinthians 11:3

2 Corinthia isn 11:3 mentions the Serpent in the Garden, but make no connection to Lucifer/Satan. The following is a comparative statement, not an identifying one.

But I fear, lest somehow, as the serpent deceived Eve by his craftiness, so your minds may be corrupted from the simplicity that is in Christ.

Book of Revelation

The following three passages are taken from the writings of the Apostle John, who in his old age was imprisoned for the faith on the Isle of Patmos. While there, he had extraordinary prophetic visions that he recorded in what is known to be, chronologically, the last book written in the Bible’s New Testament, the Book of Revelation. Here are the three references he makes to Satan, whom he calls the “great dragon.” They are not presented in their full context here, but they are fairly stand-alone in their reference. They were written nearly 1,500 years after the Book of Genesis.

Revelation 12:9

So the great dragon was cast out, that serpent of old, called the Devil and Satan, who deceives the whole world; he was cast to

the earth, and his angels were cast out with him (author's emphasis).

Revelation 12:13–17

¹³Now when the *dragon* (author's emphasis) saw that he had been cast to the earth, he persecuted the woman who gave birth to the male Child. ¹⁴But the woman was given two wings of a great eagle, that she might fly into the wilderness to her place, where she is nourished for a time and times and half a time, from the presence of the serpent. ¹⁵So the serpent spewed water out of his mouth like a flood after the woman, that he might cause her to be carried away by the flood. ¹⁶But the earth helped the woman, and the earth opened its mouth and swallowed up the flood which the dragon had spewed out of his mouth. ¹⁷And the dragon was enraged with the woman, and he went to make war with the rest of her offspring, who keep the commandments of God and have the testimony of Jesus Christ.

Revelation 20:2

He laid hold of the dragon, that serpent of old, who is the Devil and Satan, and bound him for a thousand years...

1 Peter 5:8

1 Peter 5:8, in one final biblical passage, renders the metaphoric Satan in a completely different form than the Serpent, as found in Eden.

Be alert and of sober mind. Your enemy the *devil prowls around like a roaring lion* (author's emphasis) looking for someone to devour.

So what was the purpose of this little foray into the Serpent Seed Doctrine? It was to establish that the doctrine is not heretical to church teachings, for it simply does not refer to Satan as the entity of the Genesis passages. More than anything, it establishes that the Serpent in the Garden of Eden was completely unique from the biblical references to Lucifer, Satan, or the devil—and even those references are obscure in Hebrew,

extrapolated and forced into meaning by the teachings of the Christian church.

The Serpent Seed Doctrine should rightfully have the word *Doctrine* removed from the title, for it is nothing more than a statement of fact as substantiated within the textual passage where we find the interaction between the Serpent, Nachash, and Eve, the wife of Adam. Moreover, the Reptilian race that interacts with humanity is beginning to look more and more as if it is less a host of alien invaders, but rather a linkage, both physically and metaphysically, to the bloodline of the Serpent.

The doctrinal belief of the Serpent Seed is still held by some adherents of Christian Identity, a label applied to a wide variety of loosely affiliated believers and churches with a white supremacist theology. Most promote a racist interpretation of Christianity, claiming that the Jews, as descendants of Cain, are also descended from the Serpent. This is a belief that has surface throughout history and was adhered to by none other than one Adolf Hitler.

Chapter Six

The Merovingian Connection

If you believe there is a lot of mythology and mystery surrounding the Serpent and the Elohim, be prepared to pull up your iron shorts and pull on your thinking cap, because the Merovingian connection to the Serpent and the Elohim will quite possibly blow your mind. If you have heard the term *Merovingian(s)* used, you may have heard them referenced in connection to the Holy Grail and the search for that sacred cup in the Arthurian legends, and still have absolutely no idea who or what they are—and that they have been tied into the mythology of the Serpent. You will now find an astonishing connection to all the mythologies presented thus far in both *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim* and everything in this book thus far. But, as always, let's start at the beginning.

In the Dark Ages

Ready for a little history lesson? For roughly 300 years between the fifth and eighth centuries, the Merovingians (sometimes referred to by their contemporaries as the “long-haired kings,” as they wore their hair long in ostentatious comparison to the closer-cropped hairstyles of the rest of the Franks) were a Salian Frankish dynasty that came into power, ruling the region known as Francia, largely synonymous with ancient Gaul, inclusive of modern-day France, as the regional name implies. From the third century on, the Salian Franks appear in the historical records as warlike Germanic barbarians and pirates, bitter ancestral enemies of the Gaulic Celts, and avowed allies of the Romans known as *Laeti*, a word used by the Romans to denote the barbarian tribes (literally “babblers” of out-land tongues; that is, foreigners, people from outside the Empire) who gave them fealty, serving as underlord serfs who swore allegiance and provided soldiers for the Roman armies, resulting in a rag-tag alliance with Rome. This granted them the right to be the first Germanic tribe settling permanently on Roman land. In 358, they entered into political agreement with the Romans and moved

into the region known as Toxandria, which comprises roughly the area of current-day Holland and Belgium.¹

By the seventh century, the Salians fully adopted Frankish identity and gradually dropped their identification with Salian roots and heritage altogether. It's interesting to note that the Merovingian kings operated under a rather socialistic system of governance, as defined by current-day standards. The king redistributed conquered wealth and real estate among his followers, and this was not just given to the nobility, as it apparently extended to the indentured peasantry. Some scholars have attributed this to the Merovingians as lacking a manageable understanding of public affairs, but there is also the view that they knew precisely what they were doing, and this was an act meant to foster loyalty among their people.

It was the son of Meroveus/Merovic (the ruler from whom the name Merovingian is derived), the leader of the Salian Franks, Chiladeric I (c. 457–481), who founded the Merovingian dynasty. His son Clovis I (481–511), however, was the man who united the Gaulic tribes and territories under Merovingian rule. After his death the Merovingian family seemed to be in a constant state of in-fighting and back-and-forth skirmishes for power, but when threatened by outsiders, the Merovingians always presented a unified front, standing together with unified purpose and intent. They were the ultimate power in the region. During the final century of Merovingian rule, the dynasty was increasingly pushed into a more or less ceremonial role. In 752, Pope Zachary formally deposed the last ruler of the Merovingian dynasty, Chiladeric III, bringing to an end the Merovingian era.^{2,3}

Christianity eventually started to take a foothold with the Merovingians, at least in the sense of being “Christianized.” An Irish monk named Columbanus, who was eventually elevated to sainthood by the Church, enjoyed great influence due to his sincere friendship with Queen Balthid, the wife of Clovis II. The Merovingians established numerous monasteries throughout their empire and awarded them to their loyal lords who funded the abbeys and monasteries, granting them bishoprics and titles as abbots. Many of them, due to their financial support, were even granted sainthoods.

Before we go further with the Merovingians, let's take an intermediate trip, wading through the theories behind the bloodline of Jesus Christ, which will intersect us with the Merovingians once more.

Mr. and Mrs. Jesus Christ

There is an enduring, shadowy, hypothetical mythology surrounding the ancestry and lineage of Jesus Christ, with the trail originating in first-century Palestine, leading to the thrones of the Merovingian kings of Franco Europe. It has been claimed that Mary Magdalene was Jesus' concubine, and Mormonism claims that Jesus was a polygamist. There are also theories that Jesus turned, of all things, atheist, married Mary, and went to Europe. If any genuine historical data to back any of these claims existed, they have been lost to antiquity. What we have today are countless books on the subject, some rich in history, and others just as rich in conspiratorial magma and speculative kookiness. So, it is left to the interpretations of the readers of the many literary works glutting the shelves—both fiction and non-fiction—to determine their veracity, in lieu of any solid proof.

In the highly intriguing, yet equally controversial book *The Holy Blood and the Holy Grail* (1982), the Merovingians are presented as kings who established their power by claiming they were descended from the bloodline of Jesus Christ, who, if the claim were true, would have had to have been married and producing offspring in order to leave a traceable bloodline.⁴ This book, as one might imagine, caused an immense stir around the world, and the ideas contained in the book were deemed blasphemous enough for it to be banned in some Roman Catholic-dominated countries. Response from the historical and academic fields was quite negative, and critics of the book tore it to shreds, claiming that the bulk of the claims, ancient mysteries, and conspiracy theories presented as fact were nothing short of pseudo-historical. Famed book critic Anthony Burgess wrote of the book, “It is typical of my unregenerable soul that I can only see this as a marvelous theme for a novel.”⁵ Dan Brown did just that and utilized the theme for his international best-selling 2003 novel, *The DaVinci Code*.

Despite the criticisms, and even the authors of the book making statements that some elements had to be fictionalized in order to fill the untraceable gaps in an invisible lineage of Jesus, the book presented enough historical fact as to prompt many historians—off the beaten path of convention and peer review—to dig a little deeper, giving us the Jesus bloodline that linked into the Merovingians.

As might be imagined, *The Holy Blood and the Holy Grail* spawned innumerable other books and documentaries exploiting both the veracity of the claims and the criticisms made in the book. In his 1996 book, *Bloodline of the Holy Grail: The Hidden Lineage of Jesus Revealed*, Sir Laurence Gardner picks up the gauntlet and presents what he said were actual pedigree charts of the lineage of Jesus of Nazareth and Mary Magdalene. Gardner maintained that these family trees proved beyond all doubt that the biblical couple were the ancestors of all royal European families,⁶ claiming that this, indeed, linked them to the contemporary Reptilian conspiracy theories that state all modern European Royal families are alien Reptilians, operating under the influence of a hidden race of extraterrestrials bent on the destruction of humanity. In his 2000 sequel, *Genesis of the Grail Kings: The Explosive Story of Genetic Cloning and the Ancient Bloodline of Jesus*, Gardner makes extraordinary claims that there is physical evidence—outside the biblical genealogies—that the bloodline of Jesus of Nazareth could be traced back to Adam and Eve. If you are Christian, this is already something that can be established in biblical texts, as the followers of Jesus set out to establish the blood tie between Jesus, Mary, and Joseph to the royal house of King David, then all the way back to Noah and then to Seth, the third son of Adam. Gardner goes on to relay that Adam and Eve were actually the first human couple, product of alien DNA experimental interbreeding with primates, conducted by the alien race we identify in ancient Sumerian texts as the Annunaki.⁷

The 2000 book *Rex Deus: The True Mystery of Rennes-Le-Chateau and the Dynasty of Jesus*, by Marylin Hopkins, Graham Simmans, and Tim Wallace-Murphy, articulates another shadowy version of hidden blood ties and the theory that the bloodlines of Jesus and Mary were intricately linked to a lineage of 24 high priests of the Temple in Jerusalem. This bloodline was known as the “Rex Deus”—the bloodline of the “Kings of God”⁸—and ties to all the fantastical stories of King Solomon possessing a ring with which he could control demonic elements to aid in the building of the temple, as well as connections to the masons.

These few mentioned works represent only a small number of the host of fictional, non-fiction, and documentary books and films released on this topic since the 1980s. But they illustrate a fact: Enough evidentiary material exists to establish a case for such claims, which are not at all far-fetched nor

gymnastics of the imagination. Simply consider the biblical Jesus of Nazareth and his first recorded public miracle, launching his public ministry, the Wedding at Cana.

In the biblical account, Jesus is in attendance at a local wedding of some person left unnamed and unmentioned in the passage. In the account, recorded in the Gospel of John 2:1–11, Jesus’ mother (her name, Mary, omitted from the passage) rushes up to Jesus in a bit of panic, telling Jesus that the party is out of wine, to which Jesus says, in what seems a rather brusque reply, “O Woman, what have I to do with you? My hour has not yet come.” His mother then says to the servants to do whatever Jesus tells them. Jesus then orders them to take all the empty pitchers and fill them with water, and to draw out some and take it to the chief steward waiter. After tasting it, and not knowing where it came from, the steward congratulated the bridegroom on departing from the custom of serving the best wine first by serving it last (John 2:6–10). John adds: “Jesus did this, the first of his signs, in Cana of Galilee and it revealed his glory and his disciples believed in him.”

“^{1–3}Three days later there was a wedding in the village of Cana in Galilee. Jesus’ mother was there. Jesus and his disciples were guests also. When they started running low on wine at the wedding banquet, Jesus’ mother told him, “They’re just about out of wine.” ⁴Jesus said, “Is that any of our business, Mother—yours or mine? This isn’t my time. Don’t push me.” ⁵She went ahead anyway, telling the servants, “Whatever he tells you, do it.” ^{6–7}Six stoneware water pots were there, used by the Jews for ritual washings. Each held twenty to thirty gallons. Jesus ordered the servants, “Fill the pots with water.” And they filled them to the brim. ⁸“Now fill your pitchers and take them to the host,” Jesus said, and they did. ^{9–10}When the host tasted the water that had become wine (he didn’t know what had just happened but the servants, of course, knew), he called out to the bridegroom, “Everybody I know begins with their finest wines and after the guests have had their fill brings in the cheap stuff. But you’ve saved the best till now!” ¹¹This act in Cana of Galilee was the first sign Jesus gave, the first glimpse of his

glory. And his disciples believed in him.”
(John 2:1–11)

My speculative contention is that this wedding is the wedding of Jesus. There are a few things to note in this passage that would tend to establish this fact. First, in first-century Judea, it was a Jewish tradition (tantamount to law) that a rabbi must be a married man in order to be worth his salt and effective in his ministry. This miracle represents the first miracle of Jesus’ public ministry. Second, in first-century Judea (as well as in modern times) it was Jewish custom and tradition for the groom’s family to provide the wine for the wedding. In this passage you see Jesus’ mother approaching him under some stress that the wedding has no wine. Why did she approach Jesus, and why did she seem to have some position of authority at the wedding? Was Jesus, perhaps, the groom? Finally we see Jesus (the groom?) ordering the servants and presenting the wedding with wine.

Perhaps the text of the passage, as with so many other passages in the Bible, is presenting certain facts and omitting others, or completely redirecting the actual events to point in a different direction. As we know, the early Church fathers had specific views they needed to convey in order to establish Church practice and governance, and the repression of women in any position of authority seemed to govern the effort. For Jesus to have been married would have elevated a woman to a lofty role, so they deleted the wedding and reduced Mary Magdalene to the role of prostitute, which is never stated anywhere in the biblical text. Pope Gregory the Great’s homily on Luke’s gospel dated September 14, 591, first suggested that Mary Magdalene was a prostitute: “She whom Luke calls the sinful woman, whom John calls Mary, we believe to be the Mary from whom seven devils were ejected according to Mark. And what did these seven devils signify, if not all the vices? … It is clear, brothers, that the woman previously used the unguent to perfume her flesh in forbidden acts”(homily XXXIII).⁹

Speculative as my theory may be, it is clearly apparent that the Church and many denominations overtly suppress the role of important women in the scriptures, with few exceptions, and just as overtly—even vehemently—resist the notion that Jesus could have been a married man who produced offspring. One old Bible school friend of mine reacted quite harshly at this notion when I presented it, insisting that marriage and children would invalidate the divinity of Jesus Christ. When I asked him why, he fumbled

for an intelligent answer but could provide none, reverting simply to stating that my words were heretical. And, in truth, if Jesus Christ is indeed divinity, “God very God,” does not the New Testament tell us that he experienced life and was “tempted in all points, just as we are, yet without committing sin” (Hebrews 4:15)?

The big question that remains unanswered is this: Did Yeshua bar Joshof, Jesus of Nazareth, called the Christ, marry and father a child? And if he did, was that child the beginning of a bloodline that could be traced or discovered, and did it merge into the ruling class of the Merovingian kings?

As the theory goes, Jesus married Mary of Magdala, a woman from whom he cast out seven demons (thought to be seven illnesses and infirmities) and who became one of his most ardent disciples, even to the point where after Jesus’ death, resurrection, and ascension, she was referred to by the other disciples and followers of Jesus as Miriamne, “The Great Teacher.” According to the non-canonical Gospel of Phillip, a Gnostic Gospel of the New Testament apocrypha (dating to the third century), Mary Magdalene was revered as the Great Teacher, establishing her as the heir-apparent to the living philosophies of Jesus. Her husband.

There were three who always walked with the Lord: Mary, his mother, and her sister, and Magdalene, the one who was called his companion. His sister and his mother and his companion were each a Mary. (the Gospel of Phillip)

There is another passage from the Gospel of Phillip referring to Mary Magdalene, but as is common with millennia-old documents, it is incomplete due to damage to the original manuscript, and several words are missing. The best, scholarly guesses as to what they were are shown here in brackets. Most notably—and frustratingly—there is a hole in the manuscript after the phrase *and used to kiss her often on her...*. The passage appears to be telling of Jesus kissing Mary Magdalene, and Jesus goes on to use a parable to explain to the disciples why he loved her more than he loved them:

As for the Wisdom who is called “the barren,” she is the mother of the angels. And the companion of [the saviour was Mar] y Ma[gda]lene. [Christ loved] M[ary] more than [all] the disci[ples, and used to] kiss her [softly] on her [hand]. The rest of [the disciples were offended by it and expressed

disapproval]. They said to him “Why do you love her more than all of us?” The Saviour answered and said to them, “Why do I not love you like her? When a blind man and one who sees are both together in darkness, they are no different from one another. When the light comes, then he who sees will see the light, and he who is blind will remain in darkness.”

However, the word *hand* is not necessarily the word after *kiss her... on her....* It may have been cheek, forehead, lips, or feet to simply show respect.¹⁰

The holy bloodline of Jesus is nothing more than a theory, filled with speculative evidences and magnificent stories, but, as with other theories of this sort, it is filled with conjecture, filler content, and unsustainable facts. The theory goes on to state that Jesus Christ had a natural child with Mary Magdalene, named Sarah (Hebrew for “princess”), who was then taken to France to keep her safe, either during Magdalene’s pregnancy or as a young child. It is Sarah’s blood descendants who in later centuries founded the Merovingian dynasty of the early kings of France.

The theory goes on to state that a secret order protects these royal claimants because they may be the literal descendants of Jesus and his wife, Mary Magdalene, or, at the very least, of King David and the High Priest Aaron. This secret society known as the Priory of Sion has a long and illustrious history dating back to the First Crusade, starting with the creation of the Knights Templar as its military and financial front. The Priory is said to be led by a Grand Master—or “Nautonnier,” one who steers through murky waters—and is devoted to reestablishing the Merovingian dynasty on the hereditary thrones of Europe and Jerusalem.

Historically speaking, the Roman Catholic Church is said to have attempted to exterminate all remnants of this dynasty as well as their guardians, the Cathars and the Templars, during the Inquisition. Their goal, according to Jesus conspiratorialists, was to maintain power through the apostolic succession of Peter instead of the hereditary succession of Mary Magdalene—so the mythos goes.

A variation on the bloodline theory is that Jesus didn’t die on the cross but survived the torturous event, after which he fled to Kashmir, returning to Srinagar, where he had originally been influenced by Buddhist teachings. It was there that he died of old age, and the biblical accounts of his

resurrection were enhanced by his followers. This theory is given merit by close comparisons of the teachings of Jesus in the Gnostic Gospel of St. Thomas paralleling classical Buddhist Sutras. The theory also has parallels with other stories of Jesus' disciples fleeing to foreign lands, such as the journey of Joseph of Arimathea to England after the death of Jesus, taking with him a piece of thorn from Jesus' crown of thorns, which he planted on Weayall Hill in Glastonbury, England. The tree that grows there, across the valley from Glastonbury Tor, is said to be a direct descendent of the tree that sprouted from the thorn planted by Joseph, and a flowering sprig is sent to the monarch of England every Christmas, a tradition started during the reign of James I, royal sponsor of the 1611 King James Bible, in the early 1600s.

The Beast From the Sea

Buried in obscure antiquity, there is a legend surrounding Meroveus, the founder of the Merovingian dynasty, in which he made claims to having been sired by two different fathers. Despite the more recent claims that the Merovingians descended from the bloodlines of Jesus Christ (predicated, of course, on the notion that Jesus was indeed married to Mary Magdalene and fathered a child with her who carried on his lineage in ancient France), King Clodian, the human father of Meroveus, and a strange beast of the sea were the progenitors of the first Merovingian king. Meroveus's mother was already pregnant with her son by King Clodian when she went swimming in the surf and encountered the beast of the sea.

“Despite the carefully listed genealogies of his time, the heritage of ***Meroveus*** was strangely obscured in the monastic annals. Although the rightful son of Clodian, he was nonetheless said by the historian Priscus to have been ***sired by an arcane sea creature, the Bistea Neptunis***....

“The Sicambrian Franks, from whose female line the Merovingians emerged were associated with Grecian Arcadia before migrating to the Rhineland. As we have seen, they called themselves the *Newmage*—‘People of the New Covenant’, just as the Essenes of Qumran had once been known. It was the Arcadian legacy that was responsible for the ***mysterious*** sea beast—the *Bistea Neptunis*—as symbolically defined in the Merovingian ancestry. The relevant sea-lord was King Pallas, a

god of old Arcadia. His predecessor was the great Oceanus. The immortal sea-lord was said to be ‘ever-incarnate in a dynasty of ancient kings’ whose symbol was a fish—as was the traditional symbol of Jesus”

—Laurence Gardner, *Bloodline of the Holy Grail*
(author’s emphasis throughout)

The *Bistea Neptunis*¹¹ was worshipped in classical antiquity as the Roman god Neptune and as Poseidon in Greek mythology. Neptune was the mythological god of the sea who is said to have founded Atlantis, which is the pagan version of the antediluvian civilization that existed prior to the Great Flood of Noah, in which God wipes out all of humanity while purging the earth of the Nephilim, the offspring of the Elohim, in Genesis chapter seven.

In the Apostle John’s visions on the Isle of Patmos, he records an image of the Antichrist as the beast that rises out of the sea. This appearance of the *Bistea Neptunis* in the Book of Revelation has interesting linkages to the Merovingian legend, especially in light of the fact that the Merovingian monarchs are said to have demonic connections.

¹And I stood upon the sand of the sea, and saw a beast rise up out of the sea, having seven heads and ten horns, and upon his horns ten crowns, and upon his heads the name of blasphemy.

²And the beast which I saw was like unto a leopard, and his feet were as the feet of a bear, and his mouth as the mouth of a lion: and the dragon gave him his power, and his seat, and great authority.

(Revelation 13:1–2)

The name Meroveus is a name created from two conjoined French words: *mer*, meaning “sea,” and *vere*, meaning “werewolf” or “dragon”—hence, beast from the sea. The Book of Revelation refers to the dragon in specific terms as being none other than Satan, the devil.

And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels.... And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast

out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.
(Revelation 12:9)

It is interesting to make note at this spot regarding two comparatives that stand out in this Merovingian mythology. The first is the relation to the great beast who rises up out of the sea. In the Sumerian mythology of Enki/Ea, it is said that he is the Lord of the Earth and the Lord of the Abzu, that great underworld sea, atop of which lay the Snake Marsh. It is the connectivity to the snake that the second comparative comes into view: the Dragon, which is simply an archaic derivative of the snake and the ancient serpent.

Some of the books mentioned (*Bloodline of the Holy Grail; Holy Blood, Holy Grail*; and *The Da Vinci Code*) were popular books marketed for mass consumption and sold millions of copies. As such, conspiratorialists hold them up as being nothing less than propaganda tools that conceal the true origins of the Merovingian race. This propaganda is obviously something masterminded from behind the mystical scenes in the mists of demonic and otherworldly ether. For their esoteric allusion to the Merovingians' legendary progenitor, King Meroveus, having been sired by a mysterious beast of the sea, is an overt claim that the bloodlines of the Merovingians were of literal satanic descent. The demonic origins and history of the Merovingian Dynasty, also known as the Dragon Dynasty in honor of the great red dragon (the "pendragon") of Revelation 12 and 13, are revealed in less available insider sources such as Gardner's *Realm of the Ring Lords* and Kenneth Grant and the Merovingian Mythos (published by DragonKey Press).

The Tuatha dé Danann

In Irish mythology, it is said that a race of kings descended from the heavens to the ancient Celts of Ireland. These tall, bright, shining creatures were elegant and beautiful, and brought with them the secret knowledge of the gods. Although the Tuatha represent a caste of Irish elemental beings, there are also accounts of them being flesh and blood conquerors of the Fir Bolg, one of the more ancient races inhabiting Ireland, coming down and invading from the four northern cities of Falias, Gorias, Murias, and Finias, where they acquired their occult skills and magical attributes.¹²

Tuatha dé Danann roughly, but imprecisely translates as “peoples’/children of the goddess Danu.” In the old Irish *tuath* means “people, tribe, nation”; *dé* is the genitive case of *día*, meaning “god, goddess, supernatural being, object of worship.”¹³ They are often referred to simply as the Tuatha, Tua, or the Tuatha dé, which also was used in early Irish Christian texts as a name for the Israelite diaspora.¹⁴ That, in and of itself, is an interesting historical reference: As Danu has also been rendered Anu, the reference—if not already obvious—creates an interesting link between Israel and ancient Sumerian mythology.

According to *Lebor Gabála Érenn* (*The Book of the Taking of Ireland*), the Middle Irish title of a loose collection of poems and prose narratives recounting the mythical origins and history of the Irish from the creation of the world down to the Middle Ages, they descended to Ireland “in dark clouds” and “landed on the mountains of Conmaicne Rein in Connacht, bringing a darkness over the sun for three days and three nights.”¹⁵ In another version of the story, less steeped in the mistiness of legend, the Tuatha landed in a fleet of sea vessels on the shores of what is modern-day Connemara, Ireland. As if to seal their resolve, they burned all their ships, so as to provide themselves no mode of retreat. The rising smoke from the fires is said to be the basis for the myth that says they arrived in smoke from the skies.

A poem in the *Lebor Gabála Érenn* says of their arrival:

It is God who suffered them, though He restrained them
They landed with horror, with lofty deed,
In their cloud of mighty combat of spectres,
Upon a mountain of Conmaicne of Connacht.
Without distinction to discerning Ireland,
Without ships, a ruthless course
The truth was not known beneath the sky of stars,
Whether they were of heaven or of earth.¹⁶

After a series of wars, it is said that the Tuatha dé Danann receded into the Hollow Hills and eventually became known as the Elven folk of Cletic lore. It is interesting to note that the “El” of Elven is a derivative of the ancient Sumerian Elil and the Hebrew Elohim. The connectivity between the mythological Tuatha dé Danann and the Nephilim is well worth

recognition, as they are perhaps etymological descendants in the same vein, again, as Elil and Ea are to Elohim and YWHW.

On a literary note, the Tuatha dé Danann are the basis for J.R.R. Tolkein's tall, elegant, bright, shining Elven people of Lothlorien. Tolkein had his finger on the pulse of shadowy history, and was obviously on to something.

Tuatha dé Annunaki?

“...The ancient people of the Tuatha De Danann...were the supernatural tribe of the pre-Achaean agricultural goddess Danae of Argos, or perhaps of the Aegean mother-goddess, Danu. But their true name rendered in its older form was Tuadhe d'Anu. As such, they were the people (or tribe) of Anu, the great sky god of the Annunaki.”

—Sir Laurence Gardner, *Realm of the Ring Lords: The Myths and Magic of the Grail Quest*

The Canaanite territory of northern Israel is said to have once been occupied by the Israelite tribe of Dan, who, during the days of the Bible's Great Exodus, around 1446 BCE, is said to have separated from Moses and the rest of the Israelites, traveling to the north. There the Dannites encountered the worship of Baal/Pan and became involved in the pagan fertility rites practiced by the indigenous Canaanite peoples at Mount Hermon, the very place where, according to the Book of Enoch, the Sons of God descended to the earth and made a pact to go in among human women and have children with them, bequeathing the Nephilim.

The people of the Israelite tribe of Dan intermingled with the Canaanite Tuatha dé Danann, also known as the Dragon Lords of Anu, said to be the offspring of the ancient Sumerian Annunaki. This is also one of the interpretations of the “Sons of God” intermingling with the “daughters of men,” referenced in the Genesis chapter six story of the Nephilim. One of the human-based interpretations of the story is that the children of Israel, as represented by the tribe of Dan, broke the law of God and intermarried with the Canaanites in the region of Mount Hermon, where the Elohim were said to have descended. Cultural values of the day did not allow for the women of Israel to intermingle with the men of another culture, so only the men were said to have taken Canaanite brides from the Tuatha dé Danann.

Hence, the basis of the story for the Sons of God intermingling with the daughters of men. From there, the integrated tribe a Dan and Dannan/Danu/Anu migrated to the north and west, settling along the way in the European and Scandinavian regions as a conquering nomadic people, replacing those they conquered with their own traditions blended with the Canaanite Annunaki Serpent culture.¹⁷

I again find the similarities and connectivities staggering: Tuatha dé Danann, Danites, Tribe of Dan, and their linkage to the Dragon Lords, the Annunaki, and the Serpent. Are these simply tricks of word similarities, or are the coincidences far too great to overlook?

Yet another version of the origins of the Tuatha dé Danann, the Dragon Lords of the Anu (before settling in Ireland around 800 BCE), is that they were the descendants of the Black Sea princes of Scythia,¹⁸ now known as the Ukraine. Like the original dynastic Pharaohs, they traced their ancestry to the great Pendragons (note: Uther and Arthur Pendragon of the Arthurian legends) of Mesopotamia, and from them sprang the kingly lines of the ancient Britons, the Irish Bruithnigh, and the Picts, the indigenous people of northern Scotland. In Wales the Tuatha founded the Royal House of Gwynedd, whereas in Cornwall in the southwest of England, they were the sacred gentry known as Pict-Sidhe, connected with the early Merlin (Myrddin) and Tyntagel, the legendary Cornish birthplace of King Arthur.

“So, from a single caste of the original Blood Royal—whether known as the Sangréal, the Albi-gens or the Ring Lords—we discover many of the descriptive terms which sit at the very heart of popular folklore. For here, in this one noble race, we have the ‘elves’, ‘fairies’ and ‘pixies’—not beguiling little folk, but distinguished Kings and Queens of the Dragon succession.”

—Sir Laurence Gardner, *Realm of the Ring Lords*

The Psalter of Cashel (the lost Book of Munster) states: “[T]he Tuatha dé Danann’ ruled in Ireland for about two centuries, and were highly skilled in architecture and other arts from their long residence in Greece.”¹⁹ According to The Psalter of Cashel, the Tuatha dé Danann were regarded as the descendants of Danaus, the son of Belus, who went with his 50 daughters to Argos, the home of his ancestral Io. In Irish legends the Tuatha

dé Danann, considered to be demi-gods, were said to have possessed a Grail-like vessel.²⁰ They were teachers of ancient wisdom and the founders of the Druidic priesthood.

As you can see, mythology melds with history. In the vaguely historical, mostly pseudo-anthropological works of Sitchin, the Annunaki are space travelers who descended in linguistically forced “firey rockets.” In anthropological research, they are the deified kings of the ancient Sumerians whose descendants migrated north to Black Sea region and south to Palestine, encountering other ancient peoples, and merging cultures and language.

In a Merovingian sense—and in accordance with modern Reptilian mythology—these are the ancestral Euro-Semitic people who forged the bloodlines of the royal families of the Franks, not to mention the royal houses of Europe’s history.

The Holy Grail

The Holy Grail has for centuries been linked to the legends of King Arthur and his Knights of the Round Table. It was a quest on which the mythical king sent his mighty men of valor. In more modern interpretations, this grail quest has been seen as less a quest for an object (the cup of Jesus used at the last supper) but one of finding and identifying the bloodline of Jesus Christ, the holy Son of God who was the divine savior of humanity. Take into consideration the aforementioned migration of the Tuatha dé Danann, and their purported establishment of the royal lines of Wales and Cornwall, both of which have connectivity to the Arthurian legends, and you will see the linkage between the legendary quest for the grail and the quest for the blood heirs of Jesus. Yet the dynastic lines of kings who claim to have descended from this hidden bloodline were not any part of the Christianity we recognize today. They were known as Sorcerer Kings and Dragon Lords, some of whom claimed to be not only descendants of the bloodline of Jesus Christ, but also the Luciferian bloodline, which seems an outright contradiction to the former!

The Merovingian kings were said to have descended from the Atlantian diaspora, the remnant of inhabitants of Atlantis who had escaped the destruction of that mythological region, fleeing to the Pyrenees Mountain region, bringing with them their abilities as occult adepts, and practitioners

of arcane sciences and the esoteric arts. The Merovingians, in fact, were often called Sorcerer Kings, or thaumaturge kings—sorcerers, workers of miracles, and practitioners of the black arts.²¹ These are the descendants of the grail, the heirs of the bloodline of the Christ. These are the things that delve into the darker side of Judeo-Christian history and lore—the mysteries of God, if you will—and they end up painting God in a very different light than we were taught in Sunday School or Synagogue, which is why they are deemed as heretical and blasphemous to the Church. But what if they are true? How would this affect your faith or your adherence to what you believed you knew from the Bible? Or would it simply send you back into those pages to dig deeper for answers, perhaps even into prayer to ask if that Holy God is truly there in the form you once understood Him?

Digging into more rabbinic lore, there is another version of the story of Cain, the son of Eve, in which he was not the son of Adam (which we've already established several times over, between this book and *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim*), but of the fallen angel Samael, whose name loosely equates to Lucifer. We have already established, textually speaking, that the Serpent in the Garden was a character called Nachash, in accordance with the Hebrew of the Genesis text. But according to this obscure rabbinic version of this particular bit of Hebrew lore, it was Samael who appeared to Eve as the Serpent, the Nachash, seducing her. Whoever it was who actually appeared as the Serpent isn't as important as is the fruit of that union: Eve's firstborn twin son, Cain. If the Merovingians knew of this rabbinic version of the story—which they no doubt did—it could have been the basis of their alleged assertion that they possessed, flowing in their bodies, the blood of both Christ and Lucifer. And the idea that Cain was the offspring of a superior intelligence was already a well-established teaching of the Cainite Gnostics, of which the Merovingians were also sure to have intimate knowledge.

An alternate version of the Cain saga, equally Luciferian in its connotations, says that he was the son of Adam's first wife, Lilith, who was also a candidate for the Serpent, Nachash, in the Garden of Eden.²² According to rabbinic lore, she had been the consort of Elohim before her fall from grace and descent to the earth. It is interesting that, of the two alternate traditions concerning Cain's parentage, both involve a Luciferian-Elohim bloodline connection.

The Lilith-Samael version of the story also bears great connectivity to the grail saga insofar as, according to this account, the angelic/demonic pairing produces a son of their *own* who seems to play a recurring role in the entire grail mythos: Asmodeus. Not only is Asmodeus said to have played the central role in building the Temple of Solomon, the edifice from which the Knights Templar took their name, but he is also represented in the dominant statue at the entrance to Rennesle-Chateau in France, which has enormous legendary connections to the grail mythos. The recurrence of the character of Asmodeus in connection to grail lore gives credence to the notion that both he and the descendants of Cain may in fact have shared kindred ancestry. In some traditions it has been said that it was Asmodeus, not God, whom Moses called upon to part the Red Sea. Though portrayed as a demon or devil figure, the name Asmodeus reveals that he may not always have been viewed as such, for Asmodeus translates simply to Lord God (*Ashma* = “Lord,” and *Deus* = “God”). Asmodeus bears the same brand of duality found in the serpent deities of ancient Egypt, Sumar, and myriad other cultures we have mentioned in this book—which happen to be only the tip of the iceberg. So, again, we have to ask ourselves what it is we think we really, truly know for sure.

On an even more intriguing observance are the four French words positioned above the sculpture of Asmodeus at the entrance to Rennesle-Chateau: “PARCE SIGNE TULE VAINCRAS.” These four letters are an anagrammatic code in Latin, “CELATA AGNI SUPER ENRICVS” (“LAMB’S SECRET OVER ENRICUS”). “Lamb” is a reference to Jesus Christ, and it is thought that this phrase over the sculpture of Asmodeus is the third of a series of encoded anagrams that speak to the location of the Holy Grail. (To rabbit trail into that topic here would be lengthy and worthy of a book all its own, so for now, consider it fodder for thought and exploration.)

Another possible origin of the Luciferian bloodline theory is inextricably linked to the Elohim, the pantheon of gods in mythology who said in the Book of Genesis: “Come, let Us make man in Our image.” Elohim is the plural form for the name of God: “God Among Many Gods,” the bene ha Elohim, the “Sons of God” known as the Watchers in the Book of Enoch.

We have already established that the word *Elohim* is an etymological descendent of the name Elil, chief god of the Annunaki of the Sumerian culture, but it also has roots in the ancient Babylonian word *Ellu*, which means “shining ones.” This phrase has a distinctively Luciferian

connotation, because the name Lucifer literally means “light bearer.” Additionally, if you see Lucifer as being the same person as Nachash in the Genesis account of the Garden of Eden, remember that Nachash, by definition means, “crafty magician, *illuminator, bright shining one.*” It is also to be noted that the descendants of Cain, who became the deified kings of Sumer, bore the title of Ari, a term that also meant “shining ones.” And as I have already contended, Cain being the son of Nachash and Eve, is the first of the Nephilim mentioned in the Book of Genesis. The phrase *shining ones* would be a very apt description for the descendants of Enoch’s Watchers (the Sons of God of the Genesis account), who were said to have, according to the Enochian account, “hair white as snow, pale eyes, and pale skin that filled the room with light” (Enoch 105:10).

The Sumerian Ari are almost always depicted as wearing crowns bearing horns, and some of their descendants were said actually to have had horns. For instance, the most famous statue of Moses, carved by Michelangelo, depicts him with horns atop his forehead, not wholly inappropriate for someone who may be a blood relation of Asmodeus. But we also must consider the anti-Semitism of medieval Europe, a time of great bigotry against Jews and Hebrew culture. Many Christian artists in Europe, especially under the power of the Vatican papacy, were “required” to depict their biblical Jewish subjects as having horns, in accordance with the opinions of the powers that be. So, the presence of horns on the statuary heads of patriarchal Jews from the Bible had, some say, absolutely nothing to do with the mystical. They were a political contrivance. Theologians protest that they are not horns, merely rays of light. If they are rays of light, it could also suggest a Luciferian subtext, due to the bright shining element of Nachash and the Elohim.



Tetradrachm of Lysimachos. The head of Alexander is featured wearing royal and divine symbols: the diadem and the horns of Zeus Ammon. C. 305–281 bc. Image made available through Wikimedia Commons.

It's obvious, even to the casual observer, that they are *indeed* horns, which is not at all inconsistent with the normal medieval Western depiction of Moses and other biblical patriarchs, based on the description of Moses' face as *cornuta* ("horned") in the Latin Vulgate translation of Exodus. The Douay-Rheims Bible translates the Vulgate as: "*And when Moses came down from the mount Sinai, he held the two tables of the testimony, and he knew not that his face was horned from the conversation of the Lord*" [author's emphasis]. This was, however, a mistranslation of the original Hebrew text, which uses a term equivalent to "radiant," suggesting an effect like a halo. The Greek Septuagint translates the verse as: "*Moses knew not that the appearance of the skin of his face was glorified.*"

Anecdotal Historical Fact: Alexander the Great declared himself the Son of God, and he, too, was rumored to have horns. In fact, to this very day, if you talk to people on the streets of Iran (who have a cultural remembrance of his invasion as though it happened last week), they will tell you in all solemnity that it's a historical fact that Alexander had horns, which is why he wore his hair long—to cover them up. There was an ancient Greek coin, the silver tetradrachmon, issued

posthumously in the name of Alexander the Great around 242/241 BCE, depicting Alexander with the horns of Ammon-Ra.

Cain, the first of the twin-born sons of Eve, seems to have engendered his own traditional stories, as found in an obscure Gnostic sect bearing his name called the Cainites. Like the Carpocrateans, the salvific doctrine of the Cainites espoused a theology that declared the believer must gain favor with God by “making the journey through everything.”²³ Fourth-century Bishop of Salamis St. Epiphanius describes the Gnostic Cainites as a group of believers who possessed an “obscure chaos of evil practices,”²⁴ “consecrating...lustful or illegal acts to various heavenly beings...heretics so adulterated with the dualism...and licentious practices of Oriental heathenism...”²⁵ as a sort of sacred prerequisite. Interestingly, many contemporary scholars compare them to Satanists, but that was a common thought already forming nearly 2,000 years ago. In alignment with our study of the Nephilim and the serpentine cultures, Cainites also taught that Eve’s twin sons had different fathers, purporting that Cain was the offspring of Eve by a superior power, and Abel was Eve’s son by an inferior power. The Cainites are also considered an heretical group as they possessed the Gospel of Judas, in which Judas is written as the disciple who “studied the mysteries of God,” and that his knowledge was so much more advanced than any of the other disciples of Jesus, that he, in adherence to the insistence of Jesus himself, betrayed Jesus to the Jewish Sanhedrin so that the prophecy would be fulfilled.²⁶ In disparity to the accepted gospels contained in the canonical Bible, Judas did this out of complete altruistic discipleship to his master, resulting in such a tumultuous grief that he committed suicide. And as a result of his loyalty to Jesus, his name has been besmirched in Christianity for all time.



Coat of arms of Stenay. Image copyright of the author.

The extent to which the Merovingians knew of these alternate traditions is uncertain. Whether or not they believed in them is more uncertain still, yet it remains likely that they both knew about these traditions and took them quite seriously. To this very day, the coat of arms of the capital of the Merovingian empire, Stenay, bears an image of the devil. And the original name of Stenay was Satanicum.

How the Merovingians Influenced Hitler

In 1919, at the age of 30, Adolf Hitler joined the occultist Germanic Revivalist Thule Society,²⁷ although there are no historical records indicating that he ever attended a single meeting.²⁸ Hitler later reconceived and organized this organization into the National Socialist German Workers' Party, better known as the Nazi Party. The Thule Society was founded a year earlier by the followers of two men: Jorg Lanz Von Liebenfels, who later claimed that it was his “occultist ideals” that helped form Hitler’s thinking,²⁹ and Guido von List, a Viennese “Renaissance Man” of many varied interests and talents who gained his popular notoriety as an occultist and *völkisch* (“ethnic folk”) author. Through his writings and popular approach to reviving Germanic mysticism, List was one of the original New Agers, establishing himself as an important contributor to what has been hailed as modern Germanic revivalism. He was a late-19th-century pioneer in Runic Revivalism and Runosophy, a specialized branch

of archaic Germanic linguistics not only used as a means to establish Germanic foundations in ancient language transmission, but also steeped in a mysticism that purported the proper usage of runes could divine, charm, prognosticate, curse, and even bring people back from the dead. List was a Pagan occultist to the heart, and by later standards was the poster child for the colloquial term *long hair*. Perhaps his runic forays worked well for him, for he was highly regarded by the people, who saw his particular brand of folk writing as a solid foundation to the reemergence of Germany as a substantial power in the West.

So much can be said on these matters that a veritable tome could be written on these topics alone. Suffice it for the purposes of this study to say that the Thule Society, though outwardly deemed a populace organization that lent pride to the growing nationalist movement in Germany—rather like a grown-up version of the American Boy Scouts—became the animus behind the organizing of what was known as the *Deutsche Arbeiterpartei* (*DAP*), a German workers' party that met in local beer halls and was made up of members who wanted to see a rise in the worker class.



Adolf Hitler's DAP membership card, with the forged date and number, reduced from 555 to 55 to make him appear as if he were an original founder and member. Image by Mike Peel www.mikepeel.net. Made available through Wikimedia Commons.

Hitler, who at that time was a corporal in the German army, was ordered to attend a meeting of the DAP in order to spy on them for the purposes of

establishing their political agenda. While he was at this meeting, he did what a good spy ought not do by getting into a rather violent political argument with a member of the group. In short, he was recognized for his oratory skills and later invited to become a member of the fairly unorganized party. Hitler agreed to join and began to organize the party from what was tantamount to a bunch of guys meeting at the pub to argue politics into a solid organization. Hitler renamed the organization the National Socialist German Workers' Party (NSDAP)— the Nazi Party. According to Hitler biographer Ian Kershaw, the Thule's "membership list...reads like a Who's Who of early Nazi sympathizers and leading figures in Munich,"³⁰ with its small membership list inclusive of such historical German figures as Rudolf Hess, Gottfried Feder, Alfred Rosenberg, Hans Frank, Julius Lehmann, Karl Harrer, and Dietrich Eckart.³¹

By today's standards, the Thule Society's underlying philosophy would be considered heinous in concept and societally scorned in intent. At the core of the Thule was their occultist belief in the origins of a superior man, the Aryan race. In 1917, this underlying theme of superiority extended to membership qualifications. If you wanted to join the society, you were required to sign a special "blood declaration of faith" establishing lineage: "The signer hereby swears to the best of his knowledge and belief that no Jewish or coloured blood flows in either his or in his wife's veins, and that among their ancestors are no members of the coloured races."³²

The organizational intent of the Thule was originally an outwardly innocuous German study group headed by Berliner Walter Nauhaus, a wounded World War I veteran turned art student. In 1918, Nauhaus came into contact with a occultist named Rudolf von Sebottendorf, the newly elected head of the Bavarian Germanenorden Walvater of the Holy Grail,³³ an offshoot organization formed after a schism with the Thule Society. Nauhaus and Sebottendorf became associates while recruiting for their particular branches, and eventually they merged their branches under the Thule name, using it as a cover name for Sebottendorff's Munich lodge of the Germanenorden Walvater. Not only are we starting to see all the occultist roots to the Thule and its varying offshoots and chapters, but also the growing chimera of political power. What started in occultist folk

nationalistic revitalization quickly turned populace and aggressively political in intent and heinously evil in philosophy.



The Thule Society seal. Image from proswastika.org/e107_images/custom/thulegesellschaft_emblem.jpg.

The occultist origins of Nazi Aryanism, specifically as influenced by the Thule's philosophical foundation, is deeply probed in Kevin Abrams's and Scott Lively's *The Pink Swastika*. Abrams and Lively document how the Thule Society relied on ancient occultist supernaturalism to imbue their members with powers to be used for their Aryan claims and the foundational thinking behind their belief in the use of eugenics.³⁴ The fire of Adolf Hitler's dream of an Aryan super-race was fueled by the underlying occult theology of the Thule Society. Adhering to the belief that they were somehow infused with esoteric powers passed on to them by the spirits of the lost civilization of Atlantis, members of the society regarded themselves as metaphysically imbued with the god-like wisdom of these advanced ancients, fueling them to create a new race of Aryan super-men. They followed a more-or-less Darwinian philosophy that moved them by

some esoteric “eminent domain” to claim superiority and eliminate the ‘inferior’ races.³⁵

Jorg Lanz Von Liebenfels, the spiritual inspiration behind the founding of the Thule Society, was a Cistercian monk who claimed to have been given revelation and enlightenment upon discovering the rune-filled tombstone of a Templar knight. After interpreting what he believed were encoded messages on the tombstone, he began constructing his own philosophies of a blue-eyed/blond-haired, God-ordained Aryan race and its superiority over lower, inferior races. Lanz was hailed the “Father of National Socialism” by Austrian psychologist Wilfried Daim, who in 1958 penned his study of Lanz in *The Man Who Gave Hitler His Ideas*. The book remains a chilling history of the Merovingians and their infiltration of the Catholic Church.

Like most Merovingian monasteries Glastonbury became a Benedictine Monastery. And the purpose of Merovingian monasteries was “infiltration” based on the belief that the best way to crush the Church was from “within.”... There is no doubt in my mind that [the Grail legend] would have been the work of the Cistercians, founded by Benedictine monks as “the ratchet” for the structural organization of [the Prieuré de] Sion. Joseph of Arimathea is alone associated with the Grail legend and the Quest of the Grail legends, which per Colliers Encyclopedia, are dominated by the mystical symbolism of Cistercians....

More than any heretical Merovingian organizations, the Cistercians personified the banality of evil at its finest. The name Cistercian and of their first monastery, Citeaux derive from Cistus, of the Cistaceae or Rockrose family resembling the wild rose and cultivated in the Mediterranean. The Myrrh with which Mary Magdalene anointed the Body of Jesus also comes from the Cistus family. And they had chosen the Magdalene... assigning her the symbol of the Rose and Cross in memory of the Brotherhood of the Sun founded by Akhenaten who had taken as its symbol the Rose and Cross (Lewis). Cistercians were Rosicrucians. And this Rosicrucian order of monks would triumph in its infiltration of the Church.³⁶

The Secret Doctrine, authored by Madam Blavatsky in 1893, became the quintessential sourcebook for 20th-century metaphysical esoterism, and it was heavily influential on the construction of the Thule Society's foundational philosophies. The inner sanctum of the Thule Society was comprised of heavy-hitting occultists, some of whom were overtly Satanist, such as Dietrich Eckart to whom Hitler, very tellingly, dedicated his book, *Mein Kampf*. As a member of the Thule, despite his membership, perchance being in name only, Hitler diligently worked to align himself to the philosophies contained in Blavatsky's *The Secret Doctrine*, the thematic undercurrent of which was that the Aryan root race theory, a gnostic belief that humanity, in its current state of evolution, is destined to be "refined" by something called the seventh root, a belief delineating the philosophy that a race of "godmen," or *Homo Noeticus* (the New Man), would rise to preeminence over the rest of humanity, replacing them and cleaning the slate of lesser, races of color and evolutionary inferiority.³⁷ It has been purported German scientists under the Third Reich, in the development of their war machine and genetic research, were aided by repeated contact with gray entities who came from inside what is known as the hollow earth.

A book considered to be one of the first "science fiction" novels, *Vril, the Power of the Coming Race*, written by Lord Edward Bullwer Lytton and published in 1871 under the original title *The Coming Race*, despite being a fictional book with a Jules Vernes-ish style of 19th-century sci-fi, was highly influential on the thinking of Hitler, the Thule Society, and the Third Reich. Though not Lord Lytton's intention whatsoever, some later Theosophists—the broader field of esoterism founded by Madame Blavatsky—supported the notion that Lord Lytton's book was an actual fictionalized account of an existing superior subterranean master race who utilized the energy-form called Vril. The Thule Society did not merely consider the book the stuff of mid-19th-century science fiction, but, in fact, a true story based on a real magical substance. Helena Blavatsky, the founder of theosophy, endorsed this presupposition in her book *Isis Unveiled* (1877) and again in *The Secret Doctrine* (1888).

So the question that lingers is this: Although Adolf Hitler was clearly an occultist, easily influenced by the mystical and mentally governed by his innate drive to be one of the mythic royalty of the gods and demi-gods of ancient esoterica, was there anything beyond the simplistic interest entailing the influence of any sort of non-human involvement, and if so, was there

any linkage to mythical beings that governed his actions? As you have seen, this all funnels backward into the ancient past, linking races, religions, occult practices, and the etymological blending of language blended with the mythologies of ancient religion. And it all goes back to the Annunaki and continued reference to them having Reptilian roots of some sort. Perhaps it is time to go take a soothing bath in the great Abzu, with a fresh rinse in the snake marsh to collect our loose ends and organize our perceptions.

Here and now I have to admit to the fact that I loathe conspiracy theories, for they are generally the stuffs of overactive imaginations spurred into overload upon the discovery of some obscure, ancient myth or legend that they find either substantiates a theory (at least in their own way of thinking), or gives them animus to build a new theory, generally void of historical accuracy, twisting facts and figures, dates, and interpretations of names, events, locations, and archaic religious or occultist practices.

Chapter Seven

The New Age and the Serpent

Make no mistake about it: The mythologies of the Serpent bloodline, though well-established in the past, have never gone away; they've merely morphed into new mythology. We have seen that the Serpent is ever present in antiquity, slithering its way down through history, leaving meandering trails in the dust of nearly every ancient culture and religion, even touching the untouchable spirituality of Jesus Christ and the religion founded by his immediate friends and disciples, proliferated throughout the known world of 2,000 years ago by the evangelist Saul of Tarsus, who after his conversion changed his name to Paul, an apostle who never laid eyes on his master, Jesus Christ, but by vision alone.

The New Age movement, quite frankly, is nothing new, at all, in that it is a revisionist philosophy that has adapted the old mythologies to newer thinking. The notion that we are “all gods” is merely a looping replay of the teachings of the ancients, with the new twist that removes the brother-god/sister-goddess status from only the castes of royals to the common individual. Woven throughout the philosophies, when viewed as an amalgam of religious/spiritual/scientific/metaphysical thinking, is a connectivity to the serpent that is the driving force. One has to consider, only, the prevalent New Age philosophy put forward by well-known teacher and translator Eknath Easwaran,¹ of the kundalini (she who is “ring shaped”), that unconscious, instinctive, or libidinal force or Shakti, that is said to lie coiled at the base of the spine, the “sleeping serpent,”² to see where the connection to the Serpent of old has morphed into new meaning, but still maintains its presence.

David Icke

On a more sinister plane, the Serpent takes up abode in the highly conspiratorial world views of David Icke, former British football (that's “soccer” for Yanks like me) star and news/sportscaster turned New Age philosopher, who “exposes the dreamworld we believe to be real”—so says

the header on his Website.³ According to the description on his [Amazon.com](#) Author Profile,⁴ the elusive Icke says of himself:

David Vaughan Icke (born 4/29/52) British writer and speaker...[describes] himself as the most controversial speaker in the world, he is the author of 19 books and has attracted a global following that cuts across the political spectrum. His 533-page *The Biggest Secret* (1999) has been called “the Rosetta Stone for conspiracy junkies.”

Icke was a well-known BBC television sports presenter and spokesman for the Green Party, when in 1990 a psychic told him he was a healer who had been placed on...and that the spirit world was going to pass messages to him so he could educate others. In 1991 he held a press conference to announce that he was a “Son of the Godhead”—a phrase he said later the media had misunderstood.... [Icke] told the BBC’s Terry Wogan show that the world would soon be devastated by tidal waves and earthquakes.

...[in] *The Robots’ Rebellion* (1994), *And the Truth Shall Set You Free* (1995), *The Biggest Secret* (1999), and *Children of the Matrix* (2001) [Icke] set out a moral/political worldview that combined New-Age spiritualism with a passionate denunciation of totalitarian trends...[in which] many prominent figures are Reptilian, including George W. Bush, Queen Elizabeth II, Kris Kristofferson, and Boxcar Willie.

Michael Barkun has described Icke’s position as “New Age conspiracism.”... Richard Kahn and Tyson Lewis argue that the reptilian hypothesis may simply be Swiftian satire, a way of giving ordinary people a narrative with which to question what they see around them.

Whenever I encounter self-proclaimed gods and messiahs, despite their well-meaning messages of peace toward all, unity among fellow man, and self-growth based on a philosophical foundation that we are all little gods within the universal collective, I tend to write them off rather quickly, simply for the self-labeling—good or bad philosophical beliefs notwithstanding. Be it my past education in theology, or my years of

thinking, writing, and mulling over history, religion, and spirituality, or simply my exposure to and study of history's cavalcade of messianic figures who accomplished little other than leading their followers—and themselves—to bitter ends, it is at the moment of self-proclaimed messianic revelation that I lose interest and cluck my tongue. When I read that Icke compares himself to a god, substantiated by his many public appearances and the rare granted interview, I know what he is getting at from the standpoint of a New Age way of thinking.

Sure, the concept that we are all gods—that we collectively comprise the greater good and have within us the ability to rise to spiritual heights—is not necessarily a thing to be reviled, no matter what your spirituality or religious (or non-religious) status may be. However, when those spiritual concepts, not uncommon to many, many religions, and spiritual trains of thought and practice, are hitched to the wagon of fringe conspiracy theories that focus on ancient alien Reptilians from another star system, and are working behind the scenes to draw energy off the evil and corruption of humanity, while at the same time pulling the strings behind such mythical groups as the Illuminati, I tend to think the Messiah has stepped off the surface of the water and sunk into the sea of self-adulation entangling himself and his followers in the seaweed of self-deception.

Icke's boiled-down philosophies are not uncommon to the New Age thinking community. He blends staples of the metaphysical discussion about the nature of the universe and consciousness with over-the-top conspiracy theories about public figures ranging from world politicians, religious leaders, and Hollywood celebrities to members of Europe's Royal families. But where he adds a decidedly sinister twist is when he openly accuses them of being Satanic pedophiles, child killers, shape-shifters, mass murderers, serial killers and worse. What seems like unconnected political and social events are in fact, according to Icke, attempts by a hidden Reptilian race to subvert and control humanity.⁵

In his book *The Biggest Secret*, Icke contends that human beings are the product of an extraterrestrial genetic engineering program launched by a race of reptilians called the Annunaki, who came to earth from a solar system in the constellation of Draco. How he makes his connection to Reptilians is as obscure as a few pieces of statuary and a heavy reliance on the works of Zechariah Sitchin. In part, he embraces the ancient Sumerian

account of Enki's creation of primeval man as a slave race for the other gods. But he goes beyond merely hailing to ancient mythology as fact, expounding that reality is a holographic experience, the only *true* reality is the realm of the Absolute, which he illustrates by making comparison to the Hollywood movie *The Matrix*.

He teaches a philosophy of Collective Consciousness built on intentionality, reincarnation, a loose, adapted understanding of string theory, and outer-galactic worlds that exist alongside ours on other planes of frequency. He contends that our life experiences alter our DNA by "downloading" new information and "overwriting the software" of our conscious state, and that we attract experiences to ourselves by means of good and bad thoughts⁶—all in all, a mixture of current metaphysical thought with alien conspiracy theory, and, frankly, very appealing on many levels to those who have been disillusioned by science and religion and are seeking something different to assuage their loneliness or dissatisfaction with the status quo. It is very easy to understand how simply listening to Icke and reading his work can draw one in. His converts are, I am sure, people who have considered both aspects of his foundational thinking, and simply not dug deeply enough to see the missteps and calculated misinterpretations.

David Icke is certainly not the first to have mentioned Reptilian aliens, but he claims he has been the one to have pioneered the road to a better understanding of who the Reptilians really are, and why they continue to interact and influence earthly humans. From secretive governmental control to world domination, ancient religious roots to modern day New Age-ism, Reptilians, according to Icke, *have been known* for their secret agenda. And although we do not have a clear picture of what their true intentions may be, "we are able to gather from history the signs and traces of their past actions and influence with ancient human civilizations. Accounts from the Aztecs, Greeks and Chinese mythology and history leaves us clues as to an ancient race of aliens that perhaps helped and aided the building of our civilizations past and present."⁷ He has thrown the ancient alien theory on its head by attributing his particular brand of conspiracy to them.

Icke purports that Reptilians, today, are believed to have shape-shifting abilities that enable them to secretly work their agenda behind the scenes, hidden within the bodies of the ruling classes of Europe and in the majority

of U. S. presidents and political figures, not to mention prominent entertainment and pop cultural personages the world over. Icke reports that he has found evidence that our political structure and economic systems have already been influenced by these evil, cunning, crafty (a word used to define Nachash, the serpent character in the Garden of Eden) Reptilians who have worked for thousands of years behind the scenes of human history. These alien intruders, for at least 6,000–8,000 years have seduced, through their cloned counterfeit political leaders and royal personages, the hearts and minds of all humanity, who are blinded to their existence. All the while, these Reptilian overlords are plotting their secret agenda and have been slowly fostering chaos throughout human history, waiting for the right time for the ultimate conquest of our planet.

During his aptly named Turquoise Period, in which Icke and his wife dressed only in the color turquoise due to his claim of some metaphysical effect that acts as a conduit for receiving positive energy, Icke writes that he had been channeling beings from another world and via automatic writing, and had received messages from extraterrestrials telling him that he was a Son of the Godhead—in other words, a “Messiah.” After the clamoring controversy and criticisms that ensued after the release of that statement, Icke later attempted to backpedal his statement, amending it and reinterpreting “Son of the Godhead” as the “Infinite Mind.”⁸ After this experience, in 1990, he met Deborah Shaw, a British psychic living in Calgary, Alberta. Icke began a relationship with Shaw, and the couple had a daughter the next year. Shaw and her infant daughter moved in with Icke and his wife, and she changed her name to Mari Shawsun. Icke’s wife changed her name to Michaela, which, she said, was an expression of the Archangel Michael. The eclectic trio was dubbed by the British press as the “turquoise triangle.”⁹

You have to think that anyone who predicts the end of the world must be a true believer in his or her ability to prognosticate world event, or have some real deep set faith in his or her ability as a channeler or psychic. Icke made himself part of this short list of doomsayers when he publicly prophesied that the world would end in 1997 (that was, now, 15 years ago, in case you’re counting, as of this writing). The end of the world as we knew it, according to Icke, would be preceded by a number of disasters, including a severe hurricane around the Gulf of Mexico and New Orleans—now there’s a stretch, a hurricane in the Gulf of Mexico (do I sound too

skeptical here?)—volcanic eruptions on the island of Cuba, “disruption” in China, a hurricane in Derry, and an earthquake on the Isle of Arran. He also said in that interview that Los Angeles would become an island, New Zealand would disappear, and the cliffs of Kent would be underwater by Christmas of that year. Icke told reporters that the information contained in this world-ending prophecy had been passed on to him through channeling the voices in his head, which was physically transmitted through automatic writing. As of the writing of this book, Icke is still holding enormous stadium events today, filling sports arenas for his 10-hour conferences. To me, this merely reaffirms my contention, and aptly illustrates the fact that the world is hungry for something and people will look for the things they feel they are missing in any outlet available. When science and religion fail us, we will look to anything to fill the void.

Of course, the end-of-the-world prophecy saw 1997 come and go without incident. Icke later wrote in that he had felt out of control during that press conference where he uttered his prophecy, almost as if he wasn’t the one saying the words. He said that he heard his own voice predict the end of the world, yet was completely appalled at what was spilling out of his own mouth: “I was speaking the words, but all the time I could hear the voice of the brakes in the background saying, ‘David, what the hell are you saying?’”¹⁰ To Icke’s great dismay, his prophecies were splashed all over the front page news the next morning.

In and of themselves, there would seem to be no real harm to Icke’s channeling-driven, automatically written script and his alien-Reptilian-overrun world view. If a guy wants to read the works of Zechariah Sitchin and add his own twist, insisting that the Sumerian pantheon of Annunaki gods were a race of Reptile aliens with evil intent, still governing our human affairs from behind a curtain of subterfuge, placing Reptilians in seats of high political world power throughout the ages, imposters in an exterior skin of cloned human flesh, infiltrating their way into all the ruling families of the world, who am I to tell him no? If the man has built a following that buy his books, pays to attend his conferences (and he *is* a phenomenal, eloquent, moving public speaker) and promulgate his views, why should any of us care? If that is the niche David Icke has found to fill his coffers and pay the electric bill, and if people have so little to believe in that they ascribe to his views (which, frankly, I have a hard time believing even Icke himself fully believes) then more power to him. After all, blended

throughout his alien message is a more overt call for people to take action against the abuses and oppressions of government, the seeking of world unity in contrast to the New World Order, and the gaining of inner god-like awareness and tranquility. What's so wrong with that? Whatever the vehicle of delivery of the message, the ends justify the means, and if the world becomes a better place, even if we have to foist upon the common mind the notion that if we don't pursue these things, the Reptilians will get a stronger foothold and destroy our world and have us all for lunch. No matter if you are exploiting information and creating a revenue stream, while at the same time foisting peace and unity as the answer, despite how disgusted one might be with his methods, he is ultimately pushing a good thing, right?

But there is a much more insidious aspect to David Icke's assertions. The Reptilians that he claims exist and operate behind the scenes of humanity are ones he links to the bloodlines of Cain, the Merovingians, and the Luciferian lineage. He speaks a form of anti-Semitism, buried in a twisted view of world history, linking the Jews with the Illuminati and the New World Order. The Jews, Icke purports, are the Reptilian-populated, -controlled, -manipulated race seeking world domination through their positions held in the wealthy, ruling, and royal families of Europe and the Western world. The "Chosen People" of the Old Testament are a plague to humanity. And the heinous underpinning of his teachings is that his foundations are laced with historical fact, yet merged into his Reptilian/Illuminati views.

This is not to say that the man does not adhere to good philosophies that stand for the betterment of humanity, but that is the hook that draws an inordinate amount of followers to his philosophies. Truth and fact mixed with bizarre theorizing make for the propagation of a message that is all at once appealing and stimulating to the curious, who are dying for answers to convert our world from what they view as a place of evil and oppression, to one of peace and harmony. Throughout his career, David Icke has professed to having long stood against many political and social systems that may be compromised by the Reptilian alien agenda, and, although Reptilians continue to make their push against humanity, many believe that we have protectors from yet *another* constellation watching their every move and awaiting their chance to move against the Reptilian alien race of aliens and their agenda. Although many of the subjects related to Reptilian aliens or intelligent life elsewhere is usually left to the science-fiction authors and

fanatics, David Icke continues to push his own alien agenda toward what he believes to be the “truth that has been hidden from the public for ages.”¹¹

Conclusion

The Continued Presence of the Serpent

As we have seen throughout this entire book, the presence of the serpent as a thing of both good and evil began as early as the recorded history of humanity and has coursed its meandering trail down through the ages. If, indeed, the imagery and symbolism is a result of ancient humankind's face-to-face encounters with non-human entities in the form of Reptilians, the case of history does not bear out that fact. What we know for a certainty is that the symbolic form of the serpent was inextricably linked with the worship and veneration of the serpent since the dawn of civilization.

Is the presence of the serpent linked to the Luciferian? Does the serpent crawl on its belly solely due to the spoken judgment of God in the Book of Genesis? Or is that simply representative of one version of the serpent in human religion and religious mythology? The seemingly as-yet unanswerable questions are co-dependents with our ability as humans to reach the unreachable and piece the unpierceable. In the vastness of the universe, we are awfully big for our own britches when we think we have the answers to the most elusively quantifiable of questions.

To not know all the answers is the beginning of exploration. That is precisely what I believe we set out to do in all of our sciences, histories, archaeologies, and anthropologies, let alone the verbose pomposity of our philosophies. For me, the pervasive presence of the serpent through our human existence on this planet—our spiritualities, religions, legends, and mythologies—represents an enduring symbol of something or someone that had such great impact on early humanity and their civilizations that it pressed an deeply encoded imprint in our collective psyche that has endured nearly all others, equaled only by our innate need for a deity. Those equally dichotomous quantities have been present with us, family to us, and governing aspects of who and what we are—and surely will continue to be so, prompting further seeking, questing, and digging for the reasons why.

Afterword

It's a river. As you have seen in the preceding pages, the amount of information that stems from one simple thought to the next is filled to over-brimming with tributaries branching off the main artery into other tributaries—stemming into hundreds of branches, little creeks, streams, coolies, and swampy backwaters with inlets and outlets of their own. As I stated at the very start of this book: "*The implications of the comparative historical and religious touch points are so far-reaching that the meanderings of myth one must follow to seek efficacious tendrils of fact could most certainly drive one mad in its contemplation.*" It has nearly brought me to that point, not due to the content of the mythologies and varied philosophies, but based upon the overwhelming mountain range of information to sift through and weigh against fact, fiction, insanity, and spirituality—and those distinctions are, sometimes, very difficult to decipher. What is one person's religion is another's folly, leaving plenty of room for criticism, nay-saying, and propagandizing.

There were times in the writing of this little book that I saw myself as a literary version of Meriwether Lewis on his quest to discover the Northwest Passage to the great western Pacific Ocean. After weeks and months of forging through seemingly un-traversable terrain he came, finally, through the foothills and low mountains. It was at that point that Lewis scaled a nearby ridge, certain he would see the Pacific Ocean stretched across the horizon. When he reached the top of the ridge and gazed at what lay beyond, though, all he saw was mile upon mile, range upon range of the craggy, snow-crested Bitterroot Mountains. His spirit sank and he was overcome with the feeling that he'd never find his way. His thoughts of enduring the hardship of the quest for even a single mile more turned into the despair that accompanies the feeling of having come too far to go back, but not far enough to find completion. Despite his inner turmoil, he pressed on and eventually cleared the mountains and pine forests of the northwest and stepped onto the sandy beach of accomplishment, the salty waves of the Pacific Ocean lapping at the soles of his boots.

For me, seeking the Reptilian factor and the connectivity of the serpent in human history and religious myth has been all-consuming, and just when

I feel I have fulfilled the goal and step to the ridge of conclusion, there, stretching out before me as far as the eye can see, is another range of snow-capped peaks, each bearing a new rocky climb.

It's the looking for the way through that seems daunting while you are in it. Then, when you finally get there, you look back at the terrain you've traversed and wonder about all the wondrous undiscovered country in other regions extending off to the right or the left of the trail that brought you to this place. Yet, despite all the unexplored territory, you are satisfied that you have at least forged a single path to the other side.

Our ancient past is filled with amazing stories of beings who governed our existence. Whether they were gods descended from the heavens, extraterrestrial beings making their presence known while, perhaps, undergoing their own explorations, or whether they are simply comprised of deified human royal bloodlines and the stuffs of overwrought imaginings and religious control—whichever it may in reality be, they represent the mysterious elements of our past that have comprised the modern mythologies of today. If we take but a moment to stop ourselves in the tracks of our busy work schedules, hang up the phone, shut off the television and the Internet, close the calendar, stop shopping and mowing the grass, and simply “unplug” for a few moments and listen to the quiet, we will find that those voices are still speaking, beckoning us to come find them.

Conclusively answering whether or not extraterrestrial serpentine beings interacted with humanity and continue to make their presence felt from the stealthy shadows is as simplistically easy as finding God sitting on His patio having a cup of Darjeeling. What is certain is that humanity has been writing about these things since they first developed the skill set to record their personal histories. The plethora of occultists, religious apologists, scientists, true believers, skeptics, and experiencers can accomplish only one thing, and that is a presentation of the facts as they understand them. That is why all we are left with, beyond establishing points of history, anthropology, and archaeology—the bare tools of the trade—are the facts, which sometimes controvert the theories.

The things that seem to really matter to the questioning mind, most often never have solid answers. I am again brought to the words of the Richard Fyneman, astralphysicist contemporary of Oppenheimer and Einstein:

If you expected science could give all the answers to the wonderful questions about “what we are” or “where we’re going” or what the meaning of the universe is, and so on, then I think you could easily become disillusioned and then look for some mystic answer to these problems.

...I can live with doubt and uncertainty and not knowing. I think it’s much more interesting to live “not knowing” than to have answer which might be wrong. I have approximate answers and possible beliefs and differing degrees of certainty about different things, but I’m not absolutely sure of anything, and there are many things I don’t know anything about. But I don’t have to know an answer. I don’t feel frightened by not knowing things, about being lost in a mysterious universe without having any purpose.

...I can’t believe the special stories that have been made up about our special relationship to the universe...because they seem to be too simple, too connected, too local, too provincial. The earth! He came to the Earth! One of the aspects of God came to the Earth, mind you, and look at what’s out there, it isn’t in proportion. Anyway, it’s no use arguing it...we should look to see what’s true and what may not be true. Once you start doubting, which for me is a fundamental part of my soul, to doubt. And ask. And to doubt and ask, it gets a little hard to believe.¹

Did a race of Reptilians come to this planet long ago? Did extraterrestrials seed the human race or genetically engineer primordial hominids, creating a slave race? Were humans freed from bondage, led by a traitor from the ranks of the alien oppressors? Is there an extraterrestrial race that has sifted in and out of humanity’s affairs for all of recorded history, governing our destiny from the shadows? Or are we a race that simply evolves and grows, learning from the past and moving beyond our old superstitions and mythologies? Are we bound by religious thought and man-made myth, only to suffer at its invisible grasp until we move beyond the need for false messiahs and imagined gods, spirits, devils, and monsters that subjugate us to our own fears? Or is it truly that we are the creation of a one, true God, and all the rest is simply the concocted, fabricated veil of lies

and deceit, obfuscation and illusion that enslaves us to the dictates of the demonic evil that would stand in the way of our knowing that God in a more real, meaningful way?

These are the questions that I sincerely hope you are left pondering when closing the cover of this book. It is obvious that God does not go out of His way to present His case in a fashion that is not as old, cracked, and crumbling as the last surviving manuscripts telling his story. Accordingly, his opponents seem to work much harder gaining proselytes than He spends attempting to bring us to Him, and so answering the call of religion—even when told it is supposed to be a personal, loving God in charge—is a much more daunting challenge than simply believing things are what they are.

So, toss the coin in the air—or better, roll your 32-sided die. Are we simply creatures at the behest of some greater power, or are a race that lives, thrives and grows off of and in spite of its misty history and scaly mythology? Has humanity experienced the visitations of non-human entities?

Trust no one. Listen to no one. Adhere to no one. Grasp the gift of exploration and seek out the answers for yourself, for if you are comfortable simply living by the dictates of what someone else tells you is so, then you are doomed to live that life of constrained servitude. Think for yourself, and before you know it the answers will make themselves as evident as the nose on your face—the realization that all that remains in the end is a kind of forbidden knowledge, a rage with and beyond reason against reason itself, as exiles from the comforts of bondage, we are composers of a cognitive music that is not a spirituality or a religion, nor is it an eschewing of either, but it is a religion of no religion, a faith of no faith, a belief in no belief.

And, yet, there is that still, small voice...

“Extinguished theologians lie about the cradle of every science, as the strangled snakes beside that of Hercules.”

—Aldous Huxley

Notes

Chapter 1

1. Glueck, Nelson, *Rivers in the Desert: A History of the Negev: Being an Illustrated Account of Discoveries in a Frontierland of Civilization* (New York: Macmillan; Farrar, Straus & Giroux, 1959), p. 31.
2. Ramsay, William M., *St. Paul the Traveler and the Roman Citizen* (1982), p. 8.
3. Ramsay, William M., *The Bearing of Recent Discovery on the Trustworthiness of the New Testament* (1915), p. 222.
4. Roberts, Scott Alan, *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim* (Pompton Plains, N.J.: New Page Books, 2012).
5. *Muhammad: Maxime Rodinson*, translated by Anne Carter (1971), pp. 38–49.
6. “Studies on Islam,” edited by Merlin L. Swartz, in *Pre-Islamic Bedouin Religion* by Joseph Henninger (1981), pp. 3–22.
7. Muhammad, *The Holy Prophet* (Pakistan: Hafiz Ghulam Sarwar), pp. 18–19.
8. Carlson, Jason, and Ron Carlson, “Why the Secular Left Despise the Christian Right,” Christian Ministries International Website, www.christianministriesintl.org/articles/Why-Secular-Left-Despise-Christian-Right.php.
9. Heiser, Michael S., PhD, “The Nachash and His Seed: Some Explanatory Notes on Why the ‘Serpent’ in Genesis 3 Wasn’t a Serpent” (Dept. of Hebrew and Semitic Studies, UW-Madison), www.thedivinecouncil.com/nachashnotes.pdf.
10. Dalley, Stephanie, *Myths from Mesopotamia: Creation, The Flood, Gilgamesh, and Others* (New York: Oxford University Press, 1989, 2008), pp.13–15.
11. Sitchin, Zechariah, *The Twelfth Planet* (Harper, 2007), Chapter Five: “The Nefilim, People of the Firey Rockets.”

12. Heiser, “The Nachash and His Seed.”
13. Sitchin, *The Twelfth Planet*, Chapter Five: “The Nefilim, People of the Firey Rockets.”
14. Heiser, “The Nachash and His Seed.”
15. James, Peter, I. J. Thorpe, Nikos Kokkinos, Robert Morkot, and John Frankish, *Centuries of Darkness: A Challenge to the Conventional Chronology of Old World Archaeology* (London: Jonathan Cape, 1991).
16. Thompson, William Irwin, *Coming into Being: Artifacts and Texts in the Evolution of Consciousness* (Palgrave Macmillan, 1998), pp. 75–76.
17. Roberts, Scott Alan, *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim* (Psalm 82 and Elohim).
18. Heiser, Michael S., “The Plural Elohim of Psalm 82: Gods or Men?” Michael S. Heiser’s Website, michaelsheiser.com/TheNakedBible/2010/11/the-plural-elohim-of-psalm-82-gods-or-men, 2010.
19. Dalley, *Myths from Mesopotamia*, pp. 18–19.
20. Pye, Michael, and Kirsten Dalley, *Lost Civilizations and Secrets of the Past* (Pompton Plains, N.J.: New Page Books, 2011), “Cain and the First City.”
21. Green, Margaret W. “Eriduu in Sumerian Literature,” PhD dissertation, University of Chicato (1975), p. 156: “abzu is often applied to a cosmological region whereas Eridu more precisely designates a geographical site.”
22. Lambert, W.G., “Processions to the Akitu House,” *Révue d’Assyriologie, RAI 44* (University of Michigan Library, 1997) pp. 75–77.
23. Lawton, Ian, “Guide to Mesopotamian Gods and Pantheons (in Tammuz),” Ian Lawton’s Website, www.ianlawton.com, 2000.
24. Ibid.

25. Galter, H.D., “Der Gott Ea/Enki in der akkadischen Überlieferung: Eine Bestandsaufnahme des vorhandenen Materials” (Ph.D. diss., Karl-Franzen-Universität Graz., 1983).
26. Halloran, John, *The Sumerian Lexicon, Version 3.0* (Los Angeles, Calif.: Logogram Publishing, 2006), p. 54.

Chapter 2

1. Roberts, Scott Alan, *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim*.
2. Feynman, Richard, *The Pleasure of Finding Things Out* (Basic Books, 2000).

Chapter 3

1. Kramer, Samuel Noah. *Sumerian Mythology: A Study of Spiritual and Literary Achievement in the Third Millennium BC* (Charleston, S.C.: Forgotten Books, 1997).
2. Malkowski, Edward F., R.A. Schwaller de Lubicz, *The Spiritual Technology of Ancient Egypt: Sacred Science and the Mystery of Consciousness* (Inner Traditions/Bear & Co., 2007), p. 223.
3. Her Holiness Shri Mataji Nirmala Devi Srivastava, *Meta Modern Era* (Vishwa Nirmala Dharma, first edition, 1995), pp. 233–248.
4. Barton, Stephen C., and David Wilkinson, *Reading Genesis After Darwin (“Midrash, Rabba to Genesis”)* (New York: Oxford University Press, 2009), p. 93.
5. Loud, Gordon, *Megiddo II*, Plates 240:1, 4. The serpents came from Stratum X (dated 1650–1550 BCE) and Stratum VIIB (dated 1150–1250 BCE) and cannot definitely be associated with the cult.
6. Macalister, R.A.S., *Gezer II*, p. 399, fig. 488. The serpent came from the high place area and apparently is to be dated in the Late Bronze Age.
7. Yadin et al., *Hazor III–IV*, Plates, pl. 339: 5–6. The serpents are from Stratum I (Late Bronze Age II). Yadin informs of their provenance in a personal correspondence.

8. Ringle, William M., Tomás Gallareta Negrón, and George J. Bey, “The Return of Quetzalcoatl” in *Ancient Mesoamerica* (Cambridge University Press, 1998), pp. 183–232.
9. Smith, Michael E., *The Aztecs (2nd edition)* (Malden, Mass.: Blackwell Publishing, 2001), p. 213.
10. Hancock, Graham, *Fingerprints of the Gods: The Evidence of Earth's Lost Civilization (1st Edition)* (Crown, 1995).
11. *Pliny the Elder*, eds. John Bostock and H.T. Riley (translators), “The Natural History.” 1855. viii. 33.
12. This list comes from wyrdin.com.
13. Bickel, Susanne, “Apophis” in *Iconography of Deities and Demons in the Ancient Near East*. Electronic pre-publication revision, November 20, 2007, accessed at www.religionswissenschaft.unizh.ch/idd/prepublications/e_idd_apophis.pdf.
14. Moscati, Sabatino, *The Face of the Ancient Orient* (Garden City, N.Y.: Doubleday Anchor Books, 1962), pp. 125–127.
15. Frankfort, Henri, *Kingship and the Gods* (Chicago, Ill.: The University of Chicago Press, 1962), pp. 145–146.
16. Lurker, Manfred. *Gods and Symbols of Ancient Egypt*, (London: Thames and Hudson, 1984), pp. 26, 10.
17. Frankfort, *Kingship and the Gods*, p. 180.
18. Lurker, *Gods and Symbols of Ancient Egypt*, 108.
19. Moscati, Sabatino, *The Face of the Ancient Orient*, pp. 125–26; and Lurker, *Gods and Symbols of Ancient Egypt*, p. 93.
20. Lurker, Manfred, “Snakes,” in *The Encyclopedia of Religion* (New York: Macmillan, 1987), 13:373.
21. Joines, Karen R., *Serpent Symbolism in the Old Testament: A Linguistic, Archaeological, and Literary Study* (Haddonfield, N.J.: Haddonfield House, 1974), p. 19.
22. Lurker, *Gods and Symbols of Ancient Egypt*, p. 108.

23. Frankfort, Henri, *Kingship and the Gods*, p. 119.
24. Franklin, Benjamin, *Pennsylvania Journal* (December 27, 1775).

Chapter 4

1. Milliren, Alan P. “Adlerian Theory.” Available at www.carterandevans.com/portal/index.php/adlerian-theory/69-adlerian-theory.
2. Aristotle, *Physics* 194 b17–20. See also: *Posterior Analytics* 71 b9–11; 94 a20.
3. Horney, Karen, *Self-Analysis* (New York: Norton & Company Inc., 1942).
4. “Reptilians,” Wikipedia, en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Reptilians.
5. “Reptilians,” Crystalinks Metaphysics and Science Website, www.crystalinks.com/reptilians.html.
6. “The Reptilians: Who Are They Really?” Dreams of the Great Earthchanges Website, www.greatdreams.com/reptlan/reps.htm.
7. “Alien Nation,” The Watcher Files Website, www.thewatcherfiles.com/exposing_reptilians.htm.
8. Rhodes, John, “The Reptilian-Human Connection,” [Reptoids.com](http://www.reptoids.com/Vault/ArticleClassics/1994RepHuConn.htm), www.reptoids.com/Vault/ArticleClassics/1994RepHuConn.htm.
9. “The Reptilians,” The Nibiruan Council Website, www.nibiruancouncil.com/html/reptilians.html.
10. “Reptilian Agenda,” David Icke’s Website, www.davidicke.com/articles/reptilian-agenda-mainmenu-43.
11. “The Occult Reptilian Sage,” Biblioteca Pleyades Website, www.bibliotecapleyades.net/sumer_anunnaki/reptiles/reptiles.htm.
12. “The Reptilians,” Whale Website, www.whale.to/b/reptilian_h.html.
13. Rhodes, John, “The Reptilian-Human Connection.”
14. Russell, D.A. “Speculations on the Evolution of Intelligence in Multicellular Organisms.” CP-2156, Life in the Universe Conference.

15. “Alex Collier: On Reptilians: The Draconians and the Paa Tal,” Biblioteca Pleyades Website, www.bibliotecapleyades.net/sumer_anunnaki/reptiles/reptiles33.htm#The%20Draconians%20and%20the%20Paa%20Tal.
16. Hecht, Jeff, *Cosmos Magazine 315* (June 2007). This article highlights the hypothesis of Dale Russell’s dinosauroid.
17. Russell, Dale, and Wallace Tucker, “Supernovae and the Extinction of the Dinosaurs,” *Nature 229* (Fenbruary 1971), 553–554.

Chapter 5

1. Gibson, David J. “The Land of Eden Located,” Unpublished manuscript, available at nabataea.net/eden.html.
2. Taylor, Bernard A., *Analytical Lexicon to the Septuagint* (Peabody, Mass.: Hendrickson Publishers, expanded edition, 2009).
3. Silva, Moisés, and Karen H. Jobes, *Invitation to the Septuagint* (Grand Rapids, Mich.: Baker Academic, 2005).

Chapter 6

1. Geary, Patrick J., *Before France and Germany: The Creation and Transformation of the Merovingian World* (New York: Oxford University Press, 1988).
2. Knight, Xharles, *The English Cyclopaedia: Volume IV* (London: Nabu Press, 2010), p. 733.
3. Rendina, Claudio, and Paul McCusker, *The Popes: Histories and Secrets* (New York: Seven Locks Press, 2002), p. 145.
4. Baigent, Michael, Richard Leigh, and Henry Lincoln, *The Holy Blood and the Holy Grail: The Secret History of Jesus and the Shocking Legacy of the Grail* (New York: Delacorte Press, 1982).
5. Burgess, Anthony, *But Do Blondes Prefer Gentlemen Homage to Qwert Yuiop and Other Writings* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1986), pp. 33–35.
6. Gardner, Laurence, *Bloodline of the Holy Grail: The Hidden Lineage of Jesus Revealed* (Lions Bay, British Columbia, Canada: Fair Winds

Press, 2002).

7. Gardner, Laurence, *Genesis of the Grail Kings: The Explosive Story of Genetic Cloning and the Ancient Bloodline of Jesus* (Lions Bay, British Columbia, Canada: Fair Winds Press, 2002).
8. Hopkins, Marilyn, Graham Simmans, and Tim Wallace-Murphy, *Rex Deus: The True Mystery of Rennes-Le-Chateau* (Shaftesbury, Dorset, UK: Element Books, 2000).
9. Haskins, Susan, *Mary Magdalen: The Essential History* (London: Pimlico, 2003), p. 96.
10. Evans, Craig A., *Fabricating Jesus: How Modern Scholars Distort the Gospels* (Downers Grove, Ill.: Ivp Books, 2008), p. 94.
11. Pseudo-Fredegar, “Historia” in *Monumenta Germaniae Historica, Scriptores Rerum Merovingicarum, Tomus II* (Hannover Press, 1888).
12. Ellis, Peter Berresford, *The Mammoth Book of Celtic Myths and Legends* (London: Constable & Robinson, 2002), p. 28.
13. *Dictionary of the Irish Language, Compact Edition* (Dublin, Ireland: Royal Irish Academy, 1990), p. 612.
14. MacKillop, James, *Dictionary of Celtic Mythology* (New York: Oxford University Press), p. 366.
15. *Lebor Gabála Érenn: Book of the Taking of Ireland Part 1-5*. Edited and translated by R.A.S. Macalister. (Dublin, Ireland: Irish Texts Society, 1941.)
16. Ibid.
17. Gardner, Sir Laurence, *Realm of the Ring Lords: The Myth and Magic of the Grail Quest* (Lions Bay, British Columbia, Canada: Fair Winds Press, 2003).
18. Aho, Barbara, “The Merovingian Dynasty,” Watch Unto Prayer Website, watch.pair.com/merovingian.html.
19. Van Buren, Elizabeth, *The Sign of the Dove* (Suffolk, UK: Neville Spearman, Ltd., 1983), pp. 141–142.
20. Ibid.

21. Franke, Sylvia, *Tree of Life and The Holy Grail: Ancient and Modern Spiritual Paths and the Mystery of Rennes-le-chateau* (ZEast Sussex, UK: Temple Lodge Publishing, 2007), p. 127.
22. Patai, Raphael, *The Hebrew Goddess* (New York: Ktav Publishing House, 1967).
23. Blunt, John Henry, *Dictionary of Sects, Heresies, Ecclesiastical Parties, and Schools of Religious Thought* (Rivingtons, 1874), p. 95.
24. Mead, G.R.S., *Fragments of a Faith Forgotten* (Whitefish, Mont.: Kessinger Publishing LLC, 1992), p. 225.
25. Blunt, John Henry, *Dictionary of Sects, Heresies, Ecclesiastical Parties, and Schools of Religious Thought* (Rivingtons, 1874), p. 95.
26. *Biblia Sacra Vulgata*, Exodus 34:29–35.
27. Phelps, Reginald H., “Before Hitler Came: Thule Society and Germanen Orden,” *Journal of Modern History* (University of Chicago Press, 1963), pp. 245–261.
28. Goodrick-Clarke, Nicholas, *The Occult Roots of Nazism: The Ariosophists of Austria and Germany 1890–1935* (Wellingborough, England: The Aquarian Press, 1985, republished 1992).
29. Daim, Wilfried, *Der Mann, der Hitler die Ideen gab (The Man, Who Gave Hitler the Ideas)* (1958).
30. Kershaw, Ian, *Hitler: 1889–1936 Hubris* (New York: W.W. Norton & Company, 2000), pp. 138–139.
31. Bromer, Dietrich, *Bevor Hitler kam: Eine historische Studie* (Marva Publishing, Aulf Edition, 1933, 1972), p. 42.
32. Goodrick-Clarke, Nicholas, *The Occult Roots of Nazism: The Ariosophists of Austria and Germany 1890–1935* (Wellingborough, England: The Aquarian Press, 1985, republished 1992), pp. 127–128.
33. Strohm, Harald, *Die Gnosis und der Nationalsozialismus (Gnosis and National Socialism)* (Berlin, Germany: Suhrkamp, 1973).
34. Abrams, Kevin, and Scott Lively, *The Pink Swastiks: Homosexuality in the Nazi Party* (Founders Publishing Corp., 1995).

35. Goodrick-Clarke, Nicholas, *The Occult Roots of Nazism*, pp. 131, 142.
36. “The Merovingian Infiltration of the Christian World Through Monasticism,” www.angelfire.com/journal2/post/infiltration.html.
37. Blavatsky, H.P., *The Secret Doctrine (abridged & annotated edition)* (New York: Tarcher (Penguin), 2009).

Chapter 7

1. Easwaran, Eknath, *A Glossary of Sanskrit from the Spiritual Tradition of India* (Berkeley, Calif.: Blue Mountain Center of Meditation, 1970), p. 5.
2. Header of David Icke’s Website. www.davidicke.com.
3. Ibid.
4. In Icke’s own words at www.amazon.com/wiki/David_Icke/ref=ntt_at_bio_wiki.
5. Icke, David, “List of Famous Satanists, Pedophiles, and Mind Controllers.” The Forbidden Knowledge Website. www.theforbiddenknowledge.com/hardtruth/list_of_satanist.htm.
6. Icke, David, *Children of the Matrix*, p. 291ff; and David Icke, *The Biggest Secret*, pp. 30–40.
7. “Reptilians, Reptilian Aliens.” [Arcturi.com, arcturi.com/ReptilianArchives.html](http://arcturi.com/ReptilianArchives.html).
8. Icke, David, *In the Light of Experience* (Time Warner Paperbacks, 1993), pp. 190, 208.
9. Ibid., p. 193.
10. Icke, David, *Children of the Matrix*, pp. 30–40.
11. David Icke’s Website, www.davidicke.com/articles/reptilian-agenda-mainmenu-43.

Afterword

1. Feynman, Richard, *The Pleasure of Finding Things Out*.

Index

- Abel, 73, 77
- Abrams, Kevin, 184-185
- absolutism, 43
- Absolutism, the New, 128
- Abzu (mythical region), 61, 64, 73, 93
- Abzu (concept), 61-62
- Acts of the Apostles, 37
- Adam and Eve, story of, 26, 46-47, 64
- Adler, Alfred, 122, 123-125
- Adlerian philosophy, 125
- Akkad, 63
- Akkadian
 - culture, 51
 - cylinder seals, 94, 95
 - religion, 57
- alien
 - mythos, history of the, 141
 - race, first contact with, 29
- aliens, psychology of need for, 122-126
- Allah,
 - meaning of, 41
 - origin of the name of, 42
- Amun-Ra, 114
- ancient texts, considerations when reading, 51
- angels, 47, 48
- Annunaki, 33-64, 161
- anthro-archaeo-mythological record, 49

anti-Semitism of medieval Europe, 178

Apophis, 116

- similarity to Satan, 117

archaeological evidence for biblical accounts, 35

archaeology and myth, 34, 44-46

- union of, 45

Ari, 177

Aristotle, 125

Arthurian legends, 174

Aryan root race theory, 186-187

Aryanism, Nazi, occultist origins of, 184-187

Ashcraft, Msgr. Jack, 41

Asmodeus, 176-177

Atlantean

- civilization, 75
- diaspora, 174

Atlantis, 168

Atrahasis Epic, 49, 60

Aztec culture, religious beliefs of, 107-109

Baholinkonga, 84

Bamidbar Rabbah, 39

basilica, etymology of, 111

Basilisk, 110

basilisk snake, 111

behavior,

- Adler's view of, 124-125 (*see also* final causality)
- Freud's view of, 124, 125 (*see also* efficient causality)

bene ha'elohim 52, 82 (*see also* Sons of God)

Bible, historical accuracy of, 35-36

biblical accounts, archaeological evidence for, 35

Bistea Neptunis, 167-169

Blavatsky, Helena, 186-187

bloodline

- of Jesus, 159-161, 165
- of Jesus Christ, 174
- of the kinsman redeemer, 146
- of the serpent, 26, 149
- theory, Luciferian, 177

bloodline,

- Jesus', 159-161, 165
- pure human, 26, 146

bloodlines

- of humanity, 139
- of European royal houses, 174

Book of Exodus, 39

Book of Genesis, 25, 34, 46

Book of Munster, 173

Book of Revelation, 153-154

Brown, Dan, 160

caduceus, 28, 89

Cain, 60

- descendants of, 177
- two alternate versions of the story of, 175-176
- as progeny of Eve and the Serpent, 73, 77
- as the first of the Nephilim, 80

Cainites, 179-180

Canaan, 41 (*see also* Canaanite region)

Canaanite region, 63

Catholicism and Protestantism, conflict between, 29

chthonic symbolism, 113

cockatrice, 110-111
Confucius, 105
conspiracy theory, 24
Constantine, Emperor, 42
context psychology. *See* surface psychology.
creation account, Hebrew, 71-72
 encoded message in, 73
creation accounts,
 African, 70
 Lakota, 71
 multiplicity of, 46
 Native-American, 70
 pan-cultural commonalities of, 46, 71
creation story, Old Testament, 45-46
crisis of faith, author's, 24
cultural religious mythologies, 26
cuneiform tablets, 52
 magical incantations in, 93
Cunningham, Graham, 92
cylinder seals, Akkadian, 94, 95
Dahomey, 28
Daim, Wilfried, 185
David, King of Israel, 36
deities, changing names of, 62
depth psychology, 123
Devil, the, 47
Dinosauroid Thought Experiment, 133-134
Dinosauroids, 133
dogmatic faiths, 43
Draco, 134

Draconian stories, author's amalgam of, 135-137

Draconians, 133

Ea (*see* Enki/Ea)

Ea' Den, 60, 64, 73, 83, 96 (*see also* Garden of Eden)

Edenic state, 83

efficient causality, 125

Egyptian Book of the Dead, 115

El Eliyon, 41

Elil, 40, 41, 59

Elohim

- as a plurality, 39
- as a plurality and a singularity, 58, 59
- of the Old Testament, 39

Elohim,

- etymology of the word, 177
- definition, 58
- first occurrence of the word, 58
- plurality and singularity of the word, 59
- second use of the word, 59

El Shaddai, 41

embedded messages, 27

Enki, translation of the Sumerian name, 64

Enki/Ea

- as bringer of forbidden knowledge, 73
- as linguistic precursor to YWHW, 92
- as prototype for the Hebrew Jehovah, 92

Enki/Ea, 41, 51, 57, 60

- common translation of, 58
- earliest form of the god, 62
- evolution of the name of, 63

Enmerkar and the Lord of Aratta, 93
Enoch (Cain's son), 146
Enoch (city), 146-147 (*see also* Uruk)
Eridu, 60-61, 95, 96
evangelical Christians, 43, 58
Eve's temptation, different interpretation of, 77
extraterrestrial
 encounters, 30
 life, human contact with, 140
faith,
 Apostle Paul's definition of, 85
 author's crisis of, 24
 science's need for, 89
faiths, dogmatic, 43
fall of humanity, 146
Fertile Crescent, 41
Feynman, Richard, 85-86, 203
final causality, 125
Flood of Noah, 109, 168
flood mythology, Native American, 109
Frankfort, Henri, 114
Franklin, Benjamin, 118
Freud, Sigmund, 122-123, 124, 125, 126
Fromm, Erich, 138
Gadsen, Christopher, 118
Gadsen Flag, 117-118
Gardner, Sir Laurence, 160, 161, 167, 173
Garden of Eden, 25, 28
Garden of Eden, story of, 64
 encoded message within, 73

translation of, 74-76
Geb, 115
genealogies, purpose of, 78-80, 146
Gilgamesh, 30
Glueck, Nelson, 36
Gnostic Cainites, 179-180
Gnosticism, 121
God in the Old Testament, many names for, 62
God,
 names for, 41
 identity of, 24
 psychology of the need for, 122-126
god-names,
 etymology of ancient, 41
 historical antecedents of, 42
gods of mythology, 40
gods, pagan, 42
Gospel of Judas, 180
Gospel of Luke, historical accuracy of, 37
Gospel of Phillip, 164-165
Gospel of St. Thomas, 166
grail
 mythos, 176
 quest, 174
 saga, 176
Greys, 141, 142
Hancock, Graham, 108
Hanks, Micah, 43-44
Hebrew
 Bible, 44, 62

view of the serpent, 98-103

Heiser, Michael S., 47

Herodotus, 37

historical reliability vs. universal truth, 38

Hitler, Adolph, 181-188

Hittites, 36

Hobbes, Thomas, 123

Holy Grail, 174-181

 location of, 176-177

Horney, Karen, 125-126

Ho Ti, 30

human nature,

 Freud's view of, 123

 Adler's view of, 123-124

Huxley, Aldous, 205

Icke, David, 126, 133, 190-197

Iktomi the Trickster, 71

Illuminati, 192, 197

Indiana Jones (character), 23

Ingersoll, Robert Green, 87

Islam, creation of, 42

James, Peter, 54

Jehovah, 63 (*see also* Yahweh and YHWH)

 correlation between Enki/Ea and, 95

 etymological link between Lucifer and, 64

 the paradoxical, 91

Jörmungandr, 28

Jesus,

 bloodline of, 159-161, 165

 bloodline theory of, 165-166

first recorded public miracle of, 161-162
Lucifer and, similarity of names for, 106
mythology surrounding ancestry and lineage of, 159
wedding of, 163
Judeo-Christianity, 44
Jung, Carl, 125
Kabah, 42
Kenites, 147
kinsman redeemer, concept of, 80-82, 146
Kneph, 84
Knights Templar, 166
 source of name of, 176
Kongfuzi. *See* Confucius.
Kripal, Jeffrey J., 74
Krishna, 83
kundalini, 98, 190
Lakota oral tradition, 71
language as a gauge of authenticity, 57
language, importance of, 56
Lilith, 175
Lively, Scott, 185
Lucifer as father of Cain, 175
Lucifer, 47, 48, 59, 74, 84, 153
 and Elohim, etymological connection between, 177
 and Jehovah, etymological link between, 64
 and Jesus, similarities between names for, 106
Luke, Saint, 37, 38
Lytton, Lord Edward Bullwer, 187
mal'ahk, definition, 47
Martin, Riley, 132

Mary Magdalene, 160, 163-166
Mary of Magdala. *See* Mary Magdalene.
me, definition, 54
Mehen, 116
Meroveus/Merovic, 158
 legend surrounding, 167-169
 meaning of name of, 168
Merovingian
 connection to serpent and Elohim, 157-188
 dynasty, 167
 empire, capital of, 181
 kings, 159
 race, true origins of, 169
Merovingians, 157-159 (*see also* Salian Franks)
 bloodlines of, 169
 Christianization of, 159
 link of the Jesus bloodline to, 160
 on Hitler, influence of, 181-188
Mesopotamia, Sargonic period in, 92-93
Mesopotamian
 civilization, 55
 people, 63
Messianic prophecies, sole purpose of, 82
Messianic prophecy, first, 78
Midrash, 39
Misiginebig, 109
mixed-blood lineage, our, 26
monotheistic society, Egyptian, 114 (*see also* Amun-Ra)
monotheists, Christian, 42
Moses,

medieval Western depiction of, 178-179

the historical, 41

mu, definition, 54

Muhammad, 41-42

myth, definition, 45

mythology,

ancient Egyptian, 113

current-day, 132

Hindu, 111-113

Irish, 169

Nachash

and Jehovah, etymological link between, 64

as trickster, 47, 71

as bringer of knowledge, 59

as bringer of forbidden knowledge, 64, 73

as illuminator, 64

Nachash, 47, 48

definition, 47, 58, 74

basis for the serpent character of, 64

Naga, 28, 111

Nagas, 84, 111

Nag panchami, 113

Nakhushstan, 84

Nazi Aryanism, occultist origins of, 184-187

necoshet, 90

nehushtan, 100

Nephilim, 29, 35, 38, 49, 77,

Sitchin's mistranslation of, 52, 54

Neptune, 40

New Age

movement, 189
philosophy, prevalent, 189-190
New World Order, 196-197
Ningizzida, 30
Nod, 146
 etymology of, 147
non-human
 beings, 26
 entities, 28, 142
norm, questioning the, 67
objective point of view, 35
Oannes, 29
Old Testament, 36 (*see also* Masoretic texts)
 as religious myth, 44
Ouroboros, 28
Pentateuch, 41, 90
perception and reality, 25-26
Pink Swastika, The, 185
Pliny the Elder, 110
polytheism, 42
Pontius Pilate, 36
Priory of Sion, 166
proto-religion, 44
Ptolemy, 37
pure human bloodline, 26
Pyramid Texts, 117
Qetesh, 29
Quraish, 42
Quetzalcoatl, 28, 84, 105-109
Ra, 114

similarity to God, 117

Ramsay, Sir William, 37-38

religion, skepticism and science as the new, 128

religion

- as identical to Reptilian/alien subculture, 122
- as a human construct, 88, 122
- as a mode of control, 88
- vs. spirituality, 122

Reptilian

- Agenda, 137
- beings, 44
- race, paucity of proof of, 129
- theory, 127
 - proponents of, 134
 - founders of contemporary thinking on, 139

Reptilian-Humanoids, 121-142

- paucity of proof for existence of, 133

Reptilian/alien

- mythos, 121
- subculture, 122

Reptilians,

- author's dichotomous approach regarding, 141
- depictions in Hollywood of, 134
- descriptions of, 133
- explanation for our belief in, 126, 130-132
- modern European royal families and, 161
- multiplicity of stories and theories regarding, 138-139
- personal contact with, 129
- shape-shifting abilities of, 193

Rennes-le-Château, 176

Reptoids, 133
rewriting history, 28
Rex Deus (bloodline), 161
Rhodes, John, 132-133
Rise and Fall of the Nephilim, The, 24, 26, 34, 35, 58, 75, 157
Rousseau, Jean Jacques, 124
Russell, Dale, 133
Salian Franks, 157-158
Saliens. *See* Salian Franks.
Samael. *See* Lucifer.
Satan, 47, 64, 154
Saurians, 133
science
 faith's need for, 89
 belief vs., 34
scriptural narratives
 as historically accurate, 36
 vs. secular historical accounts, 37
secular view, 43
Septuagint, 152
serpent
 as a bestower of knowledge, 84
 as a mythological influence, 30
 as a political force, 30
 as a symbol of fertility and sexuality, 96-98
 as agent of both harm and healing, 91
 as deliverer of esoteric knowledge, 91
 as emblem of Chinese culture, 105
 as mythological symbol, 28
 as religious symbol, 30

as representative of sexual desire, 97
as symbol of survival after death and resurrection, 115
figure, God as the divine force behind, 92
figures, two symbolic roles of, 89
goddess, pre-Dynastic Egyptian, 115 (*see also* Wadjet) in Hindu culture and religion, symbolism of, 112-113
in the ancient world, symbolism and presence of the, 89
pervasive presence of, 44
reptile in our historical folklore, 132
worship in Jerusalem, 100-101
worship, Palestinian, 101

serpent,
ancient Chinese view of the, 104-105
association of strength and influence with, 118
association of water with, 97
civilizations that revere and worship, 96-118
deifying of, 89
dualism of, 89
duality in nature and perception of, 118
Egyptian fear and worship of, 113
Hindu worship of, 111
Mesoamerican view of, 105
Native American reverence for, 109
sleeping, 190 (*see also* kundalini)
the crooked, 102-103
the multicultural, 87

Serpent, 25, 28, 47, 48 (*see also* Nākha)

Eve's sexual encounter with, 73, 77
identity of, 150-155
in the Garden, biblical story of, 68-69, 155

Jews as descendants of, 155
Moses' Brazen, 84, 90, 93
New Age movement and, 189-197
similarity between Enki/Ea and, 58
Serpent God of Darkness, 116 (*see also* Apophis)
Serpent Mound, 109
Serpent Seed Doctrine, 148-155
serpent-gods, Egyptian, 114
serpent-headed goddess, Egyptian, 114-115 (*see also* Thermuthis)
serpents from Hindu mythology, list of, 112
Seth, 80, 161
Shakespeare, William, 87
shamu, definition, 54
Shermer, Michael, 127
Sitchin, Zechariah, 52-57, 96, 126
skepticism, two kinds of, 127-128
Sons of God, 29, 47, 52, 82 (*see also* Elohim)
 vs. angels, 48
snake game, Egyptian, 117
Snake Marsh, 60, 73, 92-96 (*see also* Ea' Den)
Stenay, 180-181
Sumer, 50, 63
Sumerians, 61
Sumerian
 Ari, 177-178
 civilization, 41
 cuneiforms, 73
 hymns, 95
 language, 54
 mythology, 57

pantheon, 41
tablets, 59, 92, 96
texts, 51, 60, 161
 surface psychology, 123
 symbolism, chthonic, 113
theology as projections of humanity, 121
Thermuthis, 114-115
Thompson, William Irwin, 55-56
Thule Society, 181-186
 underlying occult theology of, 185
 underlying philosophy of, 183
Tigris and Euphrates rivers, 41 (*see also* Fertile Crescent)
Tower of Babel, Genesis account of, 93-95
Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil, 71, 75
 symbolism of, 83
Tree of Life, 71
trickster
 beings, 25
 character, 47
Tritsch, F.J., 33
Tuatha dé Danann, 169-173
UFO visitations, 30
Uruk, 60, 93
 meaning of, 147
Wadjet, 115
Watchers, the, 29, 52, 82
Wilson, R.D., 36-37
women in scriptures, role of, 163-164
Yahweh, 47
YWHW, 41 (*see also* Yahweh and Jehovah)

early form of the name, 64

original meaning of, 63

Zeus, 40

Xia Dynasty, 103, 104-105

About the Author

SCOTT ALAN ROBERTS is the founder and publisher of *INTREPID Magazine* (www.intrepidmag.com), a publication that boasts an eclectic focus on science, politics, culture, ancient civilizations, conspiracies, ancient aliens, and unexplained phenomena.

Roberts is an accomplished illustrator and writer of fiction and non-fiction. He can be more or less defined by his roles as Dad and Husband, and is a parent to five exuberant children, three of whom are still young enough to live at home. These ingredients combined have made Roberts's life a paradoxical roller coaster of hellacious joy and insightful befuddlement, and were it not for his self-acclaimed buoyant, easy-going nature, he insists he would most assuredly have lost his sanity a long time ago.

Having spent the bulk of the last 25 years in advertising as a creative director, designer, and illustrator, Roberts's background is laced with varied and diverse skills and experience in publishing and marketing. He possesses an astute flare for the visually dramatic, demonstrated in his various ventures from theatre to comic book art and publishing, as well as advertising campaigns and public speaking.

After two years in a Christian bible college, he entered seminary, pursuing his Masters in Divinity (Mdiv) and worked as a youth director alongside his advertising career. His religious studies intensified his natural interest in spirituality, and his research of the paranormal expanded throughout the following years, much to the chagrin of many of his former Bible school fellows.

Shortly after his seminary years, Roberts began a small comic book publishing effort, writing and illustrating stories, which were also pitched as animated television series. He developed and published *The Bloodlore Chronicles*, as well as the highly successful *Ancient Heroes* trading card series, and began development on a series of chapter books. He authored and illustrated his first historical teen novel, *The Rollicking Adventures of Tam O'Hare* (www.tamohare.com), which garnered success in the teen and college markets in 2008 and 2009.

Roberts began his delve into paranormal investigation in 1999 by co-hosting and producing Three Horizons Paranormal Radio airing in Oklahoma City and several affiliates. He simultaneously launched a fledgling paranormal investigative long before the pop culture of paranormal investigation was “all the rage.”

Roberts's current projects include *Tam O'Hare and the Banshee of BallyGlenMorrow*, the second in his series of Tam O'Hare historical novels, and a more scholarly effort on the historical Moses, tentatively entitled *The Grimoire of Moses: An Historical Exploration of the Majick and Mysticism Behind The Great Exodus and Its Enigmatic Leader*, co-authored with archaeologist/anthropologist Dr. John Ward. He is also working on a joint authoring effort with *INTREPID Magazine* partner Micah Hanks, *At Odds: The Pervasive, Perpetual Conflict Between Science and Religion*.

Roberts is a standup philosopher, and frequent guest speaker at many conferences and events around the country and abroad. He is the former Editor-In-Chief of *TAPS ParaMagazine*, the official publication of SyFy's *Ghost Hunters*.

Roberts currently lives with his family not far from the Minneapolis/Saint Paul metro area, where he grew up and lived most of his life. You can see more visiting his Website (www.scottalanroberts.com).



SHAPE SHIFTERS

A JOURNEY THROUGH
THE CHANGING HUMAN BODY

GAVIN FRANCIS



SHAPESHIFTERS

A Journey Through the
Changing Human Body

GAVIN FRANCIS

BASIC
BOOKS
New York

wellcome
collection

Copyright

Copyright © 2018 by Gavin Francis

Hachette Book Group supports the right to free expression and the value of copyright. The purpose of copyright is to encourage writers and artists to produce the creative works that enrich our culture.

The scanning, uploading, and distribution of this book without permission is a theft of the author's intellectual property. If you would like permission to use material from the book (other than for review purposes), please contact permissions@hbgusa.com. Thank you for your support of the author's rights.

Basic Books
Hachette Book Group
1290 Avenue of the Americas, New York, NY 10104
www.basicbooks.com

First published in Great Britain in 2018 by Profile Books Ltd
First US Edition: June 2018

Published by Basic Books, an imprint of Perseus Books, LLC, a subsidiary of Hachette Book Group, Inc. The Basic Books name and logo is a trademark of the Hachette Book Group.

Published in association with Wellcome Collection



183 Euston Road
London NW1 2BE

www.wellcomecollection.org

The Hachette Speakers Bureau provides a wide range of authors for speaking events. To find out more, go to www.hachettespeakersbureau.com or call (866) 376-6591.

The publisher is not responsible for websites (or their content) that are not owned by the publisher.

Library of Congress control number: 2018938201

ISBNs: 978-1-5416-9752-2 (hardcover); 978-1-5416-9751-5 (ebook)

E3-20180503-JV-PC

Contents

Cover

Title Page

Copyright

Dedication

Epigraph

A note on confidentiality

1. Transformation

2. Werewolves

Agitation at the Full Moon

3. Conception

The First and Second Reason for Existing

4. Sleep

The Chamber of Dreams

5. Bodybuilding

Unhelmed by Fury

6. Scalp

Of Horns, Terror and Glory

7. Birth

Reshaping the Heart

8. Rejuvenation

An Alchemy of Youth and Beauty.

9. Tattooing

The Art of Transformation

10. Anorexia

The Enchantment of Control

11. Hallucination

A Sphere of Devils

12. Puberty

Suddenly Accelerated Youth

13. Pregnancy

The Most Meticulous Work

14. Gigantism

Two Giants of Turin

15. Gender

The Two Lives of Tiresias

16. Jetlag

The Brain that Holds the Sky

17. Bonesetting

An Algebra of Healing

18. Menopause

Third Face of the Goddess

19. Castration

Hope, Love and Sacrifice

20. Laughter

Some Eminency in Ourselves

21. Prosthetics

Humanity 2.0

22. Memory

Palaces of Forgetting

23. Death

The Celebration of Life

24. Transformations

Gratitude

About the Author

Also by Gavin Francis

Notes on Sources

List of Illustrations

Index

*For life's optimists,
who see hope in human change*

LECTOR INTENDE, LAETABERIS

Mankind–

N. human race, human species, human kind, human nature; humanity.
human being; person, individual, mortal, body.

Adj. human, mortal, personal, individual, social.

Change–

N. alteration, mutation, variation, modification,
metastasis, deviation, turn, evolution, revolution,
transformation, transfiguration; metamorphosis.

V. alter, vary; modulate, turn, shift, veer, shuffle, swerve,
deviate.
transform, transfigure, metamorphose.

My aim is to sing of the ways bodies change, ceaselessly transforming into other forms.

Ovid, *Metamorphoses* (c. 8 CE)

All things change with time, and we change with them.

Lothar, Holy Roman Emperor (c. 840)

And then I, a woman, by a flick of Fortune's hand was transformed into a man.

Christine de Pizan, *The Mutation of Fortune* (1403)

We are nothing but a bundle or collection of different sensations... and are in a perpetual flux and movement.

David Hume, *A Treatise of Human Nature* (1739)

It is itself unchanged, the same water which my youthful eyes fell on; all the change is in me.

Henry David Thoreau, *Walden* (1854)

Metamorphosis governs natural phenomena... reflects the shifting character of knowledge and attitudes to the human.

Marina Warner, *Ovidian Metamorphosis in Contemporary Art* (2009)

A note on confidentiality

THIS BOOK IS A SERIES OF STORIES about medicine and the changing human body. Just as physicians must honour the privileged access they have to our bodies, they must honour the trust with which we share our stories. Even as long as two and a half thousand years ago that obligation was recognised: the Hippocratic Oath insists ‘whatsoever in the course of practice you see or hear that ought never to be published abroad, you will not divulge’. As a doctor who is also a writer I’ve spent a great deal of time deliberating over that use of ‘ought’, considering what can and cannot be said without betraying the confidence of my patients.

The reflections that follow are all grounded in events within my clinical experience, but the patients in them have been so disguised as to be unrecognisable – any similarities that remain are coincidental. Protecting confidences is an essential part of what I do: ‘confidence’ means ‘with faith’ – we are all patients sooner or later; we all want faith that we’ll be heard, and that our privacy will be respected.

1

Transformation

From so simple a beginning endless forms most beautiful and most wonderful have been, and are being, evolved.

Charles Darwin, *On the Origin of Species*

THERE'S A PARK near my medical office lined with cherry trees and elms that undergo beautiful annual transformations. If there's time on my commute I'll stop at a bench and watch them for a few moments. Winter brings storms, and the last few years have seen several of the tallest elms blown over. When they fall down, tearing up their roots, deep coffin-sized gashes open in the earth. Around Easter the branches thicken with a green so enchanting I see why some imagine it as the colour of heaven. The blossoming of the cherry trees in spring strews the grass with petals, and to take a stroll beneath their branches is to be feted in pink. The summer air feels ripe and dense – barbecues are lit and babies play on rugs in the shade; acrobats teeter over ropes strung between the tree trunks. But my favourite season is autumn, when the sky feels high, the air pellucid and brittle, and heaps of crimson, auburn and gold gather around my feet. I've been appreciating this park for around twenty-five years – it's adjacent to the medical school where I trained.



Aged eighteen, in the first year of training, I walked through drifts of those leaves to a biochemistry class that I've never forgotten – a lecture where I had something approaching a revelation of the intricacy, the interconnectedness, even the wonder of life. It had an inauspicious beginning: projected on the wall was a complex diagram of the haemoglobin molecule. The tutor explained that the chemical which binds oxygen into red blood cells, known as a ‘porphyrin ring’, was essential both to the haemoglobin of blood and the chlorophyll that traps the sun’s energy in leaves. Thanks to porphyrins, she said, life on earth as we know it is possible. Up on the wall, the molecular structure resembled a four-leaved clover, with porphyrin leaves interlocked in an architecture of almost Gothic complexity. Cradled at the core of each of the four leaves was a lava-red atom of iron.

When oxygen binds to the heart of each leaf, she explained, it reddens like an autumn maple; when oxygen is released, it darkens to purple. So far, so biochemical. ‘But this isn’t a static process,’ the tutor added, ‘it’s dynamic and alive.’ The binding of oxygen transforms its cradle; the stress of that transformation pulls a tiny atomic lever which bends the cradles of the other three, encouraging the take-up of more oxygen. This was the first revelation of the elegance of biochemistry, as startling as it should have been obvious: from chlorophyll to haemoglobin, molecules cooperate with one another in order to sustain life.

Watching the diagram, I tried to imagine billions of molecules of my own haemoglobin, their shapes shifting as they gathered oxygen in my lungs with each breath. Then the beating of my heart pushing on rivers of blood to my brain, my muscles, my liver, where the same shift would occur in reverse. It seemed a transformation as vital and as perennial as the annual

growth and fall of leaves, implausible, somehow, that it could be happening moment to moment throughout my body.

'The more the tissues need oxygen the more acid they become,' she went on; 'that acidity deforms haemoglobin into releasing oxygen *exactly in proportion to how much it's needed*.' This was the second revelation of the morning: blood is exquisitely calibrated to meet varying oxygen requirements across the body. She began explaining the ways in which foetal haemoglobin is subtly enhanced to draw oxygen across the placenta from the mother, but I was already so caught up in the first two realisations that I hardly heard her.

I felt the air charge with reverence, the unfolding of a kind of joy: that such balance existed among the tumult of body chemistry seemed strangely beautiful, though at the same time inevitable.

TRANSFORMATION IS ONE of the most ancient and resonant themes in literature and art: two thousand years ago in the *Metamorphoses*, the Latin poet Ovid painted nature and mankind as a seething maelstrom where all matter, animate and inanimate, was caught up in cycles of change 'like pliant wax which, stamped with new designs, does not remain as it was, or keep the same shape... everything is in a state of flux, and comes into being as a transient appearance'. Ovid closed his poem with a declaration of the fraternity of life, and a passionate plea to treat all beings with compassion. That compassion too is at the heart of clinical practice – medicine could be described as the alliance of science with kindness. This book is a celebration of dynamism and transformation in human life, both as a way of thinking about the body, and as a universal truth.

The great cavalcade of the cosmos is in evolution around us: the universe is expanding, the gyre of the galaxy spinning, the earth wheels through its orbit and the moon gets more distant with every year. A tilt in our planet's axis gives us the swing of the seasons; more than a trillion tides have already rinsed earth's shores. The churn of plate tectonics is renewing the crust of the earth. 'Nothing stays the same for long' is a truism that, depending on your perspective, is either a curse or a consolation. 'You can't step into the same river twice', said Heraclitus – because our bodies are ceaselessly renewed, even as each river's waters are renewed.

To be alive is to be in perpetual metamorphosis. The borders of our

selves are porous – shaped and recomposed by elements of our environment. River water was once sea spray; next year it could flow in your neighbour's blood. The water in your brain once fell as rain on ancient landscapes, and surged in the swell of long-gone oceans. From this perspective, the body is itself a flowing stream, or burning fire: no two of its moments are ever the same. In growth and in recovery, in adapting and in ageing, our bodies ineludibly change form – and with sleep, memory and learning, so do our minds. From the crises that may overwhelm us to the transitions between conception and the grave; from the neural flows that weave consciousness to the changes that can be effected through our own willpower and determination, we embody change.

The word 'patient' means 'sufferer', and to practise medicine is to seek to ease human suffering. Much of my work as a physician takes advantage of those changes that aid us, and tries to slow those that would constrain us. As a writer, I'm interested in change as a metaphor that has preoccupied poets, artists and thinkers for millennia, and as a doctor, I'm interested in the same theme because to practise medicine is to seek positive change, however modest, in the minds and the bodies of my patients.

2

Werewolves: Agitation at the Full Moon

As the first human metamorphosis of its kind, Lycaon's transformation [into a wolf] is worth examining in detail.

Genevieve Liveley, *Ovid's 'Metamorphoses'*

WHEN A NIGHT in the emergency department is particularly blood-soaked with violence, or heavy with psychiatric admissions, it's common to hear colleagues remark: 'It must be a full moon.' On a busy night shift I've even stepped outside to check, seeking explanation in the heavens for my busy workload on earth. That the moon has effects not just on the tides or on cycles of human fertility, but on minds, is an ancient belief. Othello says to Emilia, 'It is the very error of the moon. She comes more near the earth than she was wont and makes men mad.' James Joyce in *Ulysses* waxes on the moon's 'power to enamour, to mortify, to invest with beauty, to render insane'. That the moon has a transformative effect on the human psyche is a widespread conviction – a variety of studies from India, Iran, Europe and the US have all asserted it. One North American study found that 40 per cent of the general public were convinced that the moon had an influence on the mind; an earlier survey put the rate for mental health professionals at 74 per cent. But statisticians haven't been able to substantiate the claim: the number of admissions for trauma, or for mania or psychosis ('lunacy'), are unaffected by the phase of the moon, and there is no connection between a

full moon and the frequency of suicide attempts, road accidents or calls to crisis support telephone services. My colleagues in emergency medicine, and those 74 per cent of American mental health professionals, are all wrong.

That the truth runs counter to such a widely held opinion led three Californian psychiatrists to investigate. In a study called ‘The Moon and Madness Reconsidered’, they proposed that before the advent of effective artificial lighting in the nineteenth century, the full moon probably did affect those with precarious mental health, by disturbing quality and duration of sleep. They cited evidence that resting in the dark for fourteen hours a day can terminate or even prevent episodes of manic psychosis, and that even a mild reduction in hours of sleep can worsen mental health and bring on epileptic seizures – something my own patients with bipolar illness and epilepsy have confirmed. Patterns of activity in the brain involved in healthy sleep seem to overlap with patterns associated with good mental health in ways we don’t yet fully understand.

Before artificial lighting, people took advantage of the days around a full moon, because its light was powerful enough to be abroad at night. The Lunar Society of industrialists and intellectuals in eighteenth-century England named itself not for its object of study but because its members found it easier to meet on evenings when the moon was full. But moonlight was also shadowy enough to give a prompt to the fearful imagination. ‘The insane are more agitated at the full of the moon, as they are also at early dawn,’ the French psychiatrist Jean-Étienne Esquirol wrote in the nineteenth century: ‘Does not this brightness produce, in their habitations, an effect of light, which frightens one, rejoices another, and agitates all?’

JOANNE FREDERICK was brought in by ambulance; ‘agitated delirium’ was written across the top of her triage sheet. The medical history came from her flatmate: she’d been suffering with a head cold for a few days, feeling weak and under the weather, and had gone to the pharmacy to buy medicine. It didn’t work: she became weaker, had abdominal pains, and her skin felt as if it was burning. Her urine felt hot and heavy, and was painful to pass. She’d had urine infections in the past, but this was different: a bodily unease had possessed her, spreading up through her torso and out into her limbs. Her legs trembled, her arms lost all their power, and she had

a persistent low-grade fever. She arranged an appointment to see her GP, but never made it: her flatmate called an ambulance when she began hallucinating giant lizards on the walls. On the way to hospital in the ambulance she had a seizure and when I met her in the high-dependency unit, she had been sedated.

There are hundreds of reasons that someone might end up with an ‘agitated delirium’: drug overdoses, drug withdrawal, infections, strokes, brain haemorrhage, head injuries, psychiatric disorders, and even some vitamin deficiencies. But all of Joanne’s blood tests came back normal – the CT scan of her brain was unremarkable. As she lay sedated in the high-dependency unit, her flatmate began to tell me more of her story. Joanne lived a fairly quiet life, with a few close friends but keeping largely to herself. She’d been admitted to hospital with a ‘nervous breakdown’ once before; the hospital notes said that she’d had a brief episode of incapacitating panic and anxiety that had resolved after a few days’ rest. She worked as an administrator in the basement of the city council offices – a job she loved because it allowed her to stay out of the sun. ‘She burns really easily,’ said her flatmate, ‘you should see her in the summer – she gets blisters from it.’ Her skin was mottled with brown pigments, particularly across the face and hands, as if coffee granules had been spilled over wet skin.

I was a junior doctor at the time, and for me and the rest of the medical team Joanne’s diagnosis was a puzzle. When the supervising physician arrived to do his rounds he listened carefully to the story of how Joanne had come to be there, and flicked through the hospital notes from her previous admission. He examined her skin closely, leafed through the reams of normal tests, then looked up with a glance of triumph: ‘... we need to check her porphyrins,’ he said.

Porphyrins, critical for both the structure of haemoglobin and chlorophyll, are generated in the body by a series of specialised enzymes that work together like a team of scaffolders. If one of those scaffolders doesn’t work properly, porphyria is the result. Part-formed rings of porphyrin build up in the blood and tissues bringing on ‘crises’, which can be occasioned by drugs, diet, and even a couple of nights of insomnia. Some porphyrins are exquisitely sensitive to light (it’s this property that enables them to absorb the sun’s energy in chlorophyll) and some types of

porphyria lead to a blistering inflammation on exposure to the sun, with consequent scarring. The build-up of porphyrins in nerves and the brain causes numbness, paralysis, psychosis and seizures. Another effect of the accumulation of porphyrins in the skin, as yet unexplained, is growth of hair on the forehead and cheeks. Acute porphyria can cause constipation and agonising abdominal pain: it's not unusual for victims to be brought howling into operating theatres, subjected to unnecessary operations time and again before doctors reach the correct diagnosis.^{*}

When Joanne's lab report came back it confirmed soaring levels of porphyrins: it was likely that she had a rare variant of porphyria known as 'variegate'. Treatment had already begun: rest, avoidance of exacerbating drugs (the cold remedies she'd bought over the counter had probably triggered her crisis) and intravenous fluids. To those we added infusions of glucose. Within three days she had recovered, and was discharged home from the ward with a list of drugs to avoid and an explanation, at last, of why she'd always been sensitive to light.

IN 1964 A CURIOUS PAPER was published in the journal *Proceedings of the Royal Society of Medicine* by a London neurologist called Lee Ellis. In four eloquent and persuasive pages he proposed that the myth of werewolves has been reinforced or even initiated by porphyria. Skin conditions such as hypertrichosis may cause hair to grow over the face and hands, but have no psychiatric manifestations. Rabies in humans may induce an agitated, furious state of mind with biting and hallucinations, but without skin changes. Ellis pointed out that people with porphyria avoid direct sunlight, and prefer to go about at night. Crises are precipitated by periods of poor sleep or a change in diet. In severe untreated cases sufferers may have pale, yellowish skin caused by jaundice, scarring of the skin, and hair may even begin to grow across their faces. People with certain types of porphyria may suffer derangements in their mental health and become socially isolated, breeding distrust among the wider community.

In past centuries this constellation of symptoms may have attracted accusations of witchcraft. A French exorcist, Henri Boguet, boasted in his *Discours exécrible des Sorciers* (1602) of the number of werewolves and witches he had tortured and put to death: six hundred, including scores of children. 'All these Sorcerers were grievously scratched on the face, arms

and legs,’ he wrote, ‘one of them was so disfigured that he could scarcely be recognised as a human being, nor could anyone look at him without shuddering.’ It isn’t inconceivable that a light-sensitive, intermittent kind of madness, transposed to an illiterate, isolated, credulous community, could nourish and perpetuate the fear that human beings can transform into wolves. After all, 74 per cent of mental health professionals believe that the full moon can cause madness.

IN ANCIENT HITTITE LAW, to be banished from a community was to be told, ‘thou art become a wolf’; we still describe certain excluded people as ‘lone wolves’. The first human transformation described in Ovid’s *Metamorphoses* is of man into wolf, effected by the gods as retribution for ferocity and cannibalism. Though the threat from wolves has all but disappeared from Europe we still turn to them when we need a metaphor for the predatory or the ravenous: we speak of a ‘wolfish grin’ and a ‘wolfish appetite’; children still tremble at the wolf in the ‘Little Red Riding Hood’ story, and the one terrorising the Three Little Pigs. Cave paintings of wolves by our palaeolithic ancestors are among the oldest artworks we know of.

‘Werewolf’ is supposed to refer to the physical transformation of human being into wolf, while the Greek term ‘lycanthropy’ is now reserved, in English, for the psychiatric delusion that one has become a wolf – a form of psychosis. Psychiatrists have broadened the term’s use to take in any delusion that one has been transformed into an animal, but the correct term for that is ‘therianthropy’ from the Greek *therion* meaning ‘beast’. Pliny thought the idea that people could physically turn into wolves absurd, and that it was only the human mind which was capable of transformation: ‘That men may be transformed into Wolves and restored again to their former shapes, we must confidently believe to be a loud lie.’

King James I of England (James VI of Scotland) had a particular fascination for the occult, and in his book *Daemonologie* (1597) he wrote of werewolves: ‘by the Greekes they were called lykanthropoi which signifieth men-woolfes. But to tell you simplie my opinion... if anie such thing hath bene, I take it to have proceeded but of a naturall super-abundance of Melancholie.’ Lycanthropy, then, was thought by King James to be a temporary madness, a psychiatric problem, rather than a physical

transformation. The Greek physician Marcellus of Sida agreed: he argued that the werewolves reported to frequent the graveyards of Athens after nightfall were not ‘turnskins’ – the Roman term for those who could shape-shift into wolves – but deluded. The Byzantine doctor Paul of Aegina wrote that these lycanthropes could be treated with copious bloodletting, sleep, and sedatives – a set of remedies not too different from the modern treatment of porphyria.

Ancient literature is replete with delusional transformations: one of Virgil’s *Eclogues* tells of the madness of three sisters, cursed into believing they had become cows: ‘They filled the fields with imaginary lowing... each feared the plough-yoke on her neck and often searched for horns on her smooth brow.’ In the Bible’s Old Testament, King Nebuchadnezzar undergoes an animal transformation following a fit of depression: ‘He was driven from men, and ate grass as oxen, and his body was wet with the dew of heaven, till his hairs had grown like eagles’ feathers, and his nails like birds’ claws.’

In late medieval Europe atrocities like those described by Boguet were relatively common: hundreds of would-be werewolves were put to death at the stake. As the eighteenth and nineteenth centuries wore on, published reports of ‘lycanthropy’ began to fade along with superstitions (and European wolf populations). But the delusion didn’t go away entirely, it just changed form. In 1954 Carl Jung described three sisters who dreamed night after night that their mother had transformed into an animal. He wasn’t surprised when, years later, the mother developed psychotic lycanthropy: the daughters, he reasoned, had unconsciously recognised their mother’s long repressed ‘primitive identity’.

IN OUR OWN TIMES and culture, the most famous literary work to express the horror and the metaphorical potential of animal transformation is Kafka’s *The Metamorphosis*. Gregor Samsa wakes one day as a ‘monstrous vermin’, an insect-like creature with scurrying legs, horny jaws and a beetle-like shell.* Samsa’s transformation is irreversible: as a travelling salesman he was trapped in the service of his family, and in his new life as vermin he is physically trapped in his room. As his family agonise over what to do he gets accustomed to his new form, scuttling on his ceiling, and preferring rotting scraps from the floorboards to the plated food his family leave out

for him. In the end he goes the way of all vermin, dead on the floorboards, and swept out with the trash.

Kafka's *Metamorphosis* resists straightforward interpretations, but speaks to anyone who feels alienated, persecuted and powerless. Samsa's metamorphosis renders him spatially and socially isolated, like many who suffer profound mental or physical illness. The animal transformations we know of from myth and from folklore traditions tend to carry a semblance of coherence, or even justice, at least within the logic of their own story. But Samsa doesn't have that consolation: 'he could think of no way of bringing peace and order to this chaos.'

ONE OF THE ELM TREES near my clinic seems to me different from all the others, not because of its size, or the pattern of its limbs, but because one of my patients once fell twenty feet from it. Gary Hobbes wasn't normally a tree-climber: he was a young man with schizophrenia who, after taking a cocktail of drugs containing MDMA, became convinced he had transformed into a cat. Witnesses recounted that on the day of his fall he had been prowling the local streets examining the contents of bins before scaling the elm to hiss at passers-by. The police were called; he climbed higher. A dog-walker approached to watch; Gary recoiled and screeched, demonstrating a previously unexpressed terror of dogs. The police were debating how to get him down when he slipped and fell, breaking his wrist on impact. He knocked his head too and lay mewling on the grass, concussed enough to be transferred without incident to the emergency department.

The following morning Gary woke on an orthopaedic ward with a plaster cast on his arm, reluctant to discuss his experience with the hospital psychiatrist. He was discharged back to his supported accommodation – a complex of small apartments with a warden on hand to help. On visits to see how he was getting on I'd spot opened cat-food tins in his kitchen, and wonder if he was eating them. From time to time I'd ask him about that night, but he changed the subject. The last I heard, he'd adopted a couple of street cats as pets, and had cat flaps cut in the apartment door.

Early European and Near Eastern myths are full of animal transformations; some scholars take them as evidence of ancient animal worship. A glance at internet traffic suggests that the veneration of cats and

dogs remains as powerful a motivation in human affairs as it ever did. Folklore traditions are full of animal transformations too, from the selkie tales of the Celtic lands, in which humans shape-shift into seals, to the spirit animal transformations of shamanism. Something these stories hold in common is that it's dangerous to lose one's hold on the human world: the selkie who spends too long as a seal forfeits their human life; the shaman who is mentally weak, or insufficiently trained, might get stuck in his or her animal skin.

'THEY ARE ALL BEASTS of burden in a sense,' wrote Thoreau, 'made to carry some portion of our thoughts.' Visit any toy shop, or watch a few television programmes made for children, and you'll see just how much humanised animals remain part of western culture. From Peter Rabbit to Stuart Little, tiger costumes to face-painting parties, adopting the skin and habits of animals offers children a liberating means of becoming fiercer, or smaller, or faster, or more agile, than they really are. For some adults, the psychosis of therianthropy may offer a comparable escape, a release from the limitations and pressures of human life.

In the late 1980s a group of psychiatrists in Massachusetts published a paper in which they described a series of twelve cases they'd seen over fourteen years at a clinic in suburban Boston. Two had suffered true lycanthropy and become wolves, two had become cats, two had become dogs, and two were 'unspecified' (their behaviour was 'crawling, howling, hooting, clawing, stamping, defaecating', and 'crawling, growling, barking'.) Of the remaining four, one had transformed into a tiger, one a rabbit, one a bird, and one – a lifetime keeper of gerbils – became his favourite pet.

There was no predominance of schizophrenia among the patients – eight were categorised as 'bipolar', two 'schizophrenic', one had a diagnosis of depression and one was described as having a 'borderline personality'. 'The presence of lycanthropy had no apparent relation to prognosis,' the authors noted: 'the delusion of being transformed into an animal may bode no more ill than any other delusion.' The most persistent transformation of all was of a young man, age twenty-four, who following a period of alcohol abuse became convinced, like Gary Hobbes, that he was a cat trapped inside a man's body. At the time the series was published this man had lived in his

feline persona uninterrupted for thirteen years.

'The patient stated that he had known that he was a cat since this secret was imparted to him by the family cat, who subsequently taught him "cat language"', the psychiatrists wrote. He held down a normal job, all the while 'he lived with cats, had sexual activity with them, hunted with them, and frequented cat night spots in preference to their human equivalent.' The psychiatrists had little hope for improvement – his belief had persisted despite various trials of antidepressants, anticonvulsants, antipsychotics and six years of psychotherapy. 'His greatest – but unrequited – love was for a tigress in the local zoo,' they concluded. 'He hoped one day to release her.'

* When those same scaffolder enzymes fail in plants, dark spots bloom across the leaves following even modest light exposure.

* The transformations in Angela Carter's modern fairy tales are similarly striking.

3

Conception: The First and Second Reason for Existing

May he be ashamed who thinks badly of it.

Sir Gawain and the Green Knight

THROUGH TERM-TIME at medical school I had a job in a bar; through the summers I worked preparing dissections of human cadavers. The bar job was an education in life, and the anatomy job, I imagined at first, would be an education in death. I didn't find it macabre, but enlightening – it earned me a strong stomach and a thorough knowledge of anatomy. But it taught me nothing of death.

Only after I'd qualified as a doctor did I begin performing medicine's most doleful tasks: breaking news of terminal illness, or the death of someone loved. And working regularly on hospital wards I began to be routinely present at moments of dying: standing solemnly as someone's last breath rattled, or noticing the cooling of the skin after an unsuccessful resuscitation. It seemed somehow strange that no material change occurred at that moment of transition: the dead body was composed of the same elements as the living one of moments before. The dynamism from which life is woven, moment to moment, had merely been stilled.

It was once believed that on death the soul escaped from an open mouth.

‘Your existence is attached by a thread,’ wrote Montaigne, ‘it rests only on the tip of your lips.’ That thread is sometimes robust and well-fastened, at others weak and loosely held. For Montaigne, death was the snapping of the thread from life’s loom, the beginning of a new process of unravelling. As its converse, conception was simply the tying on of a new thread, initiating a new weave in the tapestry of life.

LEONARDO DA VINCI wrote that his earliest memory was of a red kite, a kind of hawk that feeds on carrion, swooping down to his cradle and opening his lips with its tail. Kites are masters of aerobatics – their tail shape influenced the design of Roman ships – and Leonardo watched them carefully when designing his own flying machines. Interpretations of the cradle memory vary: some see in it the ignition of his creative genius, others his perception of his exceptionality, yet others relate it tangentially to his homosexuality.

Around 1503 he painted the adult Virgin Mary seated on the lap of her mother, St Anne. Mary reaches out as if to pull Jesus back into the family, but he eludes her grasp, straddling the lamb that by convention symbolises the sacrificial crucifixion that awaits him.



In Leonardo's day the belief that Mary had become pregnant without sex was long-established, and the notion was gathering adherents that her own conception was the same. The pope at the time brought the belief into orthodoxy. For the couple of centuries prior, Anne had been central to a medieval cult of fertility – earlier paintings show her with three daughters, each called Mary, by three husbands. At a time when women were often pregnant twenty or more times in the course of their lives, Anne's several pregnancies made her a popular saint.

Even for those who weren't saints, the creation of new life was held a divine miracle beyond the reach of human understanding. It was obvious that sex had something to do with it, but the mechanism remained a mystery. Leonardo, though, was committed to understanding every stage of human life, all the way back to its initiation. In one of his most famous cartoons, made a decade before the painting of St Anne, he attempted an X-ray anatomy of the male and female laps at the very moment of conception:



There were few precedents, and though he was a keen anatomist and dissector, most of the sexual anatomy in the cartoon was made up. His vision of the body was one in which bodily fluids are changed one into another by heat and activity. The womb he drew has a tube connecting it directly with the breasts (he thought that breast milk was transformed menstrual blood), and the womb receives a conduit of a female seminal fluid directly from the spine. His understanding of male sexual anatomy

was similarly unconventional – he drew a duct from the heart into the fluid bathing the spinal cord, and other ducts bringing semen from the brain to the spine and directly into the penis. Testicles appear as little more than counterweights, holding the ducts into position. He must have had a sense of humour: over his cartoon of conception he wrote: ‘I expose to men the origin of their first, and perhaps second, reason for existing.’

Twenty years after da Vinci’s painting of St Anne, a German physician called Euchar Roesslin was influenced by Genesis 3:16: ‘I will greatly multiply your sorrow and your conception; In pain you shall bring forth children; Your desire *shall be* for your husband, And he shall rule over you.’ He suggested that the ‘singular natural delight between men and women’ was partial compensation for the pain of childbirth, and for both sexes, a salve against the inevitability of death.

By the 1700s, the German physician Albrecht von Haller knew that human eggs came from ovaries, but thought that sex caused each fallopian tube to stiffen and, ‘surrounding and compressing the ovary in fervent congress, [it] presses out and swallows a mature ovum.’ It took seventy years before another German, Karl Ernst von Baer, actually identified a mammalian ovum (in a dog), and it wasn’t until the 1930s that a human ovum was seen within a woman’s fallopian tube, and modern understanding of conception began.

MUCH OF MY WORK concerns fertility and infertility: conception, contraception and, sometimes, abortion. Women come seeking assistance in losing a pregnancy or encouraging one; provoking ovulation, or preventing it. I give advice, prescribe drugs, draw inexpert cartoons of male and female anatomy. But, even today, many aspects of fertility and its rhythms remain obscure.

The creation of new life usually passes unnoticed: some women have a fleeting pain when they ovulate, but embryos can be conceived as much as twenty-four hours after that, and neither conception itself nor implantation in the womb occasions any sensation at all. It may take weeks for someone’s suspicion of pregnancy to grow into a conviction, to become strong enough to go out and buy a pregnancy test.

As consultations go, it can be joyful or sombre: a woman comes into my office, sits down by the desk, and says ‘I’m pregnant’. The way the words

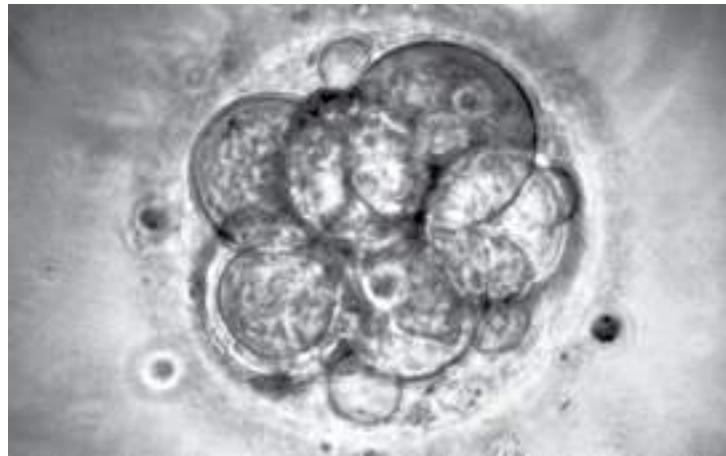
are delivered can be enough to gauge whether it's cause for celebration or dread. I take a guess which, then reply slowly with '... and how do you feel about that?' – just to be sure. 'Delighted!' I sometimes hear, or 'Awful!' Sometimes a bag opens, and urgently purchased test sticks are laid out on the desk, all showing the same blue cross or double pink line. We scrutinise them, twisting their angle to the light to make sure we're not mistaken, then repeat the test with one from my own cupboard. As the urine seeps along the reagent strip we gaze down, faces anxious and downcast, or lit with excited anticipation.

Today's tests are so sensitive that many women know within a few days of conception, when the embryo is still a thread-thin streak of cells on a disc of jelly – a streak that will define the axis of the spinal cord. When the mood in the room is excited anticipation, those moments are a treat, whether it's a longed-for baby or a welcome surprise. In those other consultations, when the mood is downcast, my questions become a little more urgent: when was your last period; how regular are they normally; when could you have conceived; have you ever been pregnant before? We're accustomed now to being in charge of our own bodies, but pregnancy is a primitive reminder that its changes are often beyond control; that bodies have their own rhythms, waypoints and fixed destinations. For some it's that inexorable quality of pregnancy that's its most terrifying aspect: a process often alienating in its otherness has been set in motion, and for the woman, whether the pregnancy proceeds or not, nothing will ever be the same again.

In most parts of the United Kingdom a woman can request the termination of a pregnancy if she feels, and two medical practitioners sign a document to agree, that there's a risk to her physical or mental health were the pregnancy to continue. The referral process is swift and discreet – I've referred happily married women whose husbands are not the father of the pregnancy, and teenagers whose lives would be misery if their parents found out. There's less of this now than there used to be: thanks to sex education and the provision of contraception, teen pregnancy rates in the UK have halved in twenty years.

I watched an IVF conception once: semen was dripped from a pipette onto a woman's eggs, layered out in a glass dish, where they fertilised almost immediately. The eggs were left multiplying in their vitrine, the

multiplying cells becoming smaller and smaller as each split, until the proto-embryo was a hollow ball still comparable in size to the original egg. The development of new life doesn't bring accumulation of size or weight at first – chemical elements already present within the egg and sperm are simply woven into a new pattern. Watching a human fertilisation was both impressive and unimpressive, like watching a bee pollinating a flower.



A century ago, a Massachusetts physician, Duncan MacDougall, weighed his patients immediately before and after death: the loss of mass, hence the weight of the soul, he calculated as 21 grammes. His instruments were faulty: neither the transition to death nor the conception of life occasions any change in weight, no loss or gain of mass. It is simply the cessation or initiation of all that sustain us, the commencement of a new process of transformation.

HANNAH MOLLIER was twenty-four when I met her. Her long hair was worn tied up in a knot, and between consultations it changed colour like traffic lights; she dressed in ankle-length purple or blue dresses. She and her husband Henry had moved to Scotland from the Welsh valleys, and her accent was so strong that I'd often ask her to repeat herself. One day in clinic she opened her bag and three pregnancy tests tumbled out onto my desk. 'I'm pregnant,' she said.

'And how do you feel about that?' I asked her.

'It wasn't planned if that's what you mean, but I'm going through with it.' We talked about vitamins and midwives, ultrasound scans and morning sickness, and I referred her to the antenatal clinic.

I saw her regularly through the pregnancy, which was dreadful for her: high blood pressure, nausea, heartburn, and back pain so severe she could hardly walk. ‘There’ll be no more after this one,’ she told me in her lilting, sing-song accent. ‘One is enough.’

Six weeks following the delivery she brought the baby to see me – a delicate little girl with dark eyes like ink spots and a pelage of translucent, downy fur. After I’d completed the screening checks on her daughter, and examined the scar of her caesarean section for how well it had healed, we discussed the options for contraception: she left with a prescription for contraceptive pills. ‘They’ve a failure rate of about 1 per cent,’ I told her: ‘it’s important to take them at around the same time every day.’

Three months later she was back in clinic, pushing a pram ahead of her. When I went to call her from the waiting room, I noticed she was sitting beside another patient of mine who was just embarking on her third cycle of IVF.

‘I’m pregnant again!’ Hannah said, as she negotiated the pram through the office doorway. She sat down, and with one arm continued to rock the pram.

‘And how do you feel about that?’ I asked.

‘It’s a nightmare, isn’t it? I’ve not recovered from the last time. I knew right away: feeling sick, sore breasts...’ She paused a moment, her expression shifting as she realised why I’d asked. ‘But we’re going through with it, Henry and me – our minds are made up.’

Hannah’s second pregnancy was more gruelling for her than the first – we met every two to three weeks, juggling medications for sickness, for heartburn, for back pain and worsening sciatica. Towards the end she became incontinent of urine, struggled to leave her flat, and could barely sleep. The platelet count in her blood dropped, her blood pressure rose, and the gynaecologists offered to deliver the baby by caesarean section again. ‘I’m definitely not having any more,’ she told me, limping around her flat when I called in to see her. ‘Can’t they just tie my tubes while they’re in there?’

‘I’ll ask,’ I said, and wrote a letter to the department of obstetrics and gynaecology.

Two weeks later a message arrived: ‘Female sterilisation in a woman as young as Hannah is inadvisable,’ she’d replied. ‘Rates of regret are high.

We will offer a contraceptive implant at the time of discharge from hospital.'

IT TOOK UNTIL the nineteenth century for medicine to catch up with da Vinci's research, when a series of mostly German gynaecologists pondered the anatomy of conception. They scrutinised physical changes during intercourse, and guessed their effects on the likelihood of conception. They queried which sexual positions had the best chance of success, and whether sex during pregnancy was dangerous. They theorised with one another about whether the womb itself altered its shape or position during orgasm. None of them were women.

In 1933, just as physiologists were beginning to understand human fertility and the timing of ovulation, pornography laws in the United States relaxed enough for a New Jersey physician called Robert Dickinson to publish his own research. Dickinson believed that anatomical science needed to get away from the dead bodies in the dissection room, and occupy itself instead with living human beings. As a gynaecologist he was challenged daily to figure out why some couples struggled to conceive, and realised that society's reluctance to discuss sex freely was the cause not just of enormous misery, but even of infertility. 'Perhaps,' he wrote, 'this shyness is begotten by the certainty that such study cannot be freed from the warp of personal experience, the bias of individual prejudice, and, above all, from the implication of prurience.' He begins a chapter called 'Anatomy of Coitus' with an observation of the centrality of sex in the perpetuation of human life: 'No bodily function of human beings may challenge sex intercourse for far reaching effects from a single act, or for manifold implications based on short total time of action. In the single act new life or no life can hang on seconds.'

It was 'no life' that most concerned him – whether conception was hoped for, or whether it was to be prevented – and his book includes a chapter on contraceptive devices, and on methods of abortion. One passage describes how to carry out a simultaneous abortion and sterilisation. Carrying out the two procedures through a single abdominal opening gave women a single scar, and for the many who approached him in secret, he argued it offered 'a better alibi'. One of his illustrations attempts to delineate, in profile, like Leonardo, the most important journey any of us

ever made, when our mother's ovum and our father's sperm came together.

Dickinson's final section is on the anatomy of different sexual positions, and in particular how they affect the pooling of semen at the cervix, and the likelihood of conception. He thought that a varied sex life would help conception, but that wasn't his only concern:

Artistry avoids monotony. This applies not alone to variety in action but to variety in atmosphere and adventure, to the notion of sea and sky as none too spacious and spring woods or moonlight none too gracious as background and as setting for rapture and splendour.

Following Dickinson, more precise representations of the anatomy of conception weren't possible until the 1990s, when accurate MRI scanners became available. A Dutch physiologist, radiologist, anthropologist and gynaecologist solicited the help of seven couples who agreed to have sex inside an MRI scanner (the anthropologist and her partner also volunteered). Their paper begins by acknowledging how little was known about the anatomy of sex, and commenting that even six decades after Dickinson, research was still being held back by the fear of being seen as prurient. They demonstrated changes in the position of the womb during female arousal, and noticed that Dickinson had been wrong about the shape of the penis during intercourse. They demonstrated striking changes in the blood supply to the vagina during sex.

Only one of the couples involved, the anthropologist and her partner, managed to sustain intercourse long enough for the scanner to take accurate images. 'The reason might be that they were the only participants in the real sense,' the paper concludes, 'involved in the research right from the beginning... and as amateur street acrobats they are trained and were used to performing under stress.'

WHEN I SAW HANNAH after her second delivery she was pushing a double pram. I asked how she was coping with two babies – her daughter was just fourteen months old – and she gave a hollow laugh. 'We can cope,' she said; 'he's good, my Henry – together we manage.' Her second daughter was more unsettled than her first had been; nights were disrupted, and both

she and Henry were exhausted. But they were still able to laugh. Just. She was keen to show me the site of her contraceptive implant. It was high on the inside of her left arm, just under the skin – about the size and thickness of a matchstick, but smooth and flexible. ‘I don’t know why I need to bother with contraception,’ she said and gave a ribald laugh. ‘Sex is the last thing on either of our minds.’

When the youngest was about four months old I came to work to find a note on my desk: ‘Call Hannah Mollier,’ it said, ‘it’s urgent.’

‘You’re never going to believe this, Dr Francis,’ she said down the telephone. ‘I’m pregnant again.’

‘... and how do you feel about—’

‘I can’t go through with this, I just can’t, I don’t think my body can take it.’ The line went quiet for a few seconds. ‘I hate the idea of an abortion, but I’m going to have to. I could hardly even walk the last time, couldn’t sleep, was peeing myself. I think I need an abortion. Don’t you think I need one, on medical grounds?’

She was early in the pregnancy, and could only have conceived a few days previously. I phoned the obstetrics and gynaecology department explaining her situation, her two young babies, her disabling back pain worsened by pregnancy, the failure of contraception. Abortion clinics send their appointments to the referring clinic rather than to a home address (too many women still have to seek abortions in secret), and so the following day I rang Hannah with the place and time for her to attend for what’s called an ‘early medical’ abortion. She met a counsellor who explored her choices, and explained how she’d be given a tablet to block hormones of pregnancy then, a day later, a pessary to put inside the vagina to encourage the shedding of womb lining.

We spoke on the phone the following week. ‘You’ll never guess,’ she told me. ‘It didn’t work. I’m still pregnant. They say it’s a one in a thousand chance.’

Again she met the counsellors, again she took the tablet; again she was given a pessary to take home, and again it didn’t work.

‘By my calculations that makes me one in a million,’ she said. I wondered if the pessary had failed, or whether once home, Hannah had felt unable to use it.

I saw Hannah the following week, back in clinic to have the

contraceptive implant taken out of her arm. The counsellors had offered her a decisive surgical termination, but she'd turned them down. 'I've decided to go ahead with it,' she told me, shuffling her double pram forwards and backwards as she spoke. 'Why didn't those tablets work?' she asked.

'No idea,' I said, shaking my head. 'I guess you're right – you must be one in a million.'

'Well, if this baby wants to stay so much, maybe I should let it.' The lilt of her accent rose up and down, lifting and dropping like a needle on a running stitch.

4

Sleep: The Chamber of Dreams

I had never heard mention before then of any gods that could make people sleep, nor to wake.

Chaucer, *The Book of the Duchess*

SOME PATIENTS ATTEND my clinic complaining of flitting symptoms that veer from one part of the body to another. As soon as I begin to get an understanding of one symptom (knee pain, say, or stomach cramps) the narrative shifts, and I'm asked to come to terms with another. It's as if each symptom recounted is of less importance than the suffering I'm being asked to acknowledge. To recast the focus of the conversation into the sufferer's mental and emotional life, drawing it away from the repetitive listing of ever more physical symptoms, it can be enough to ask: 'How is your sleep?'

'Terrible,' I'm sometimes told, or 'Too good – I'm never out of bed.' Chronic pain can cause agitated and unrefreshing sleep, but so can a restless, agitated mind. Oversleeping can mean thyroid deficiency, but it can also suggest being in retreat from the world. For many people, being asked about sleep isn't as threatening as being asked about anxieties or despondencies.

Many of the serial insomniacs I meet can't switch off their attention – every time they glide towards sleep some controlling, rational part of their

mind jerks them awake. Brain scans show that when sleeping the analytical parts of our brains tend to fall silent, while more instinctual, emotional areas come alive. To fall asleep is a kind of abandonment, of consciousness as well as of the body; sleep's inherent lack of control can make it a terrifying prospect for some. Often there's an urgency just to get some sleep: the pills to achieve this can be dangerously addictive but, for the most part, effective. Sedatives like valerian are among the oldest known drugs, and opium too has been used for millennia.

It's estimated that about 10 per cent of the world's population suffer chronic insomnia – a 'symptom' experienced by the patient, not a 'diagnosis' implying a particular medical cause – and the proportion who sleep poorly is higher still. No one can say exactly why we have to sleep, but every organism goes through alternating periods of repose and activity. Some cetaceans, seals, and birds even sleep with one half of their brains at a time, suggesting that the process is so important that it must not be suspended for long: vital cerebral hygiene is at stake. Neural processes engaged through sleep are thought to remove waste material produced by brain cells, restore aspects of the body's function, and repair injured tissues. Children sleep more than adults because their brains are constantly learning, and because they have to grow so much – it's during sleep that growth hormone is generated by the body. The longer we're awake the more a chemical called adenosine accumulates in our neural tissues. Vital for cellular energy metabolism, too much adenosine makes us feel terrible, but sleep returns its levels to normal.^{*}

Different phases of sleep seem to perform different functions: REM sleep, in which the majority of dreaming occurs, is important for memory consolidation (or perhaps the systematic forgetting of useless information[†]), while without 'slow wave' sleep we may wake feeling unrefreshed. (REM means 'rapid eye movement'; though the body is paralysed, the muscles around the eyes continue to move.) We experience REM every ninety minutes or so while we sleep – most adults have four or five episodes of it each night. Phases of 'non-REM' sleep have traditionally been divided into four stages, I – IV, but this classification has been challenged as overly simplistic.

Much about the detail and the mechanisms of sleep remains mysterious. Newborn babies spend about half their sleep time in REM, and adults about

a quarter. The deepest phases of sleep, when the brain's EEG tracings show deep coordinated pulses in neural activity, also diminish as we age – some elderly people don't enter the deepest phase of slow wave sleep at all. REM is triggered by a tiny bunch of neurons that spring from deep in the brainstem and flow into a region at the core of the brain called the thalamus. When they activate, REM is enabled. Only mammals and birds have REM. If you wake someone during REM, 90 per cent of the time they'll report having a dream.

From the 1950s to the 1990s it was largely assumed that to be in REM sleep *was* to be in a dream, but more recently that's been shown to be wrong. If you wake someone during non-REM sleep, there's still a 10 per cent chance they'll report a dream, though those dreams are usually more conceptual and less vivid than dreams reported during REM. If you're prevented from drifting into deep sleep your chances of reporting a dream when awoken from non-REM rise to over 70 per cent. No one can agree on the purpose or meaning of dreams. If you suffer the sort of brain damage that affects the generation of REM sleep you can still dream, but if you sustain damage to an area called the 'ventromedial quadrant' you can't dream, but will still have REM sleep.

Sleep might be relatively straightforward to grant with drugs, but recurrent, distressing dreams are a more difficult problem. But listening to the narrative within dreams, and exploring their associations, can offer a welcome space in which to explore unarticulated anxieties and preoccupations. I'm not a psychoanalyst, but listening to the content of my patients' dreams can often be helpful in exploring the challenges and complexities of their lives. Here are some recurrent dreams I have heard in the consulting room, only in the past year:

An elderly man finds himself running through a labyrinth of corridors, opening and closing the silvered doors of rooms. Sometimes he enters a room, and pulls out all the drawers – he's looking for something, but doesn't know what. A list in his pocket urges him on, a list he's sure is incomplete. As the dream progresses he grows more frantic until he wakes with a start, eyes wet with tears, his heart pounding against his ribs.

A successful museum curator with a high public profile and onerous administrative responsibilities dreams herself as a surgeon, standing over a slit body. Nurses surround her in silent expectation: there are entrails

hanging out, and she can't figure out how to put them back in.

A young man, violated and abused by his parents as a child, is haunted by persistent recurrent dreams of cartoon characters. Sometimes they fly around his head, taunting and mocking him. Sometimes they humiliate him, or one another. He wakes from these dreams electrified by horror, and fears sleep.

THERE'S A DREAMLIKE QUALITY to Ovid's *Metamorphoses*; the reader is aware of being drawn into a strange, hallucinatory space. In Book XI the dream-god Morpheus is described as living at the bounds of the earth, in a cave surrounded by opium poppies. The waters of the river Lethe, which springs from the cave, 'invite slumber as they glide'; dark, soporific mists emanate from the earth. Morpheus's father Somnus, the god of sleep, lies dozing on a vast ebony couch in the cave. He's surrounded by the insubstantial forms of numberless dreams, 'as many as the harvest bears ears of corn, the wood green leaves, or as the sands cast up on the shore'.

Morpheus means 'shape-maker' – he can take any human shape. His purpose is to act out the dreams of mortals, in order to send them portents. That dreams are charged with divine significance was taken for granted among the Near Eastern and Mediterranean cultures which nourished Ovid's thought: the Babylonian *Epic of Gilgamesh* has both the eponymous hero and his alter ego Enkidu receiving clairvoyant dreams. The power of dreaming is celebrated in the Hebrew scriptures with the story of Joseph, a young Hebrew from Canaan who's supremely adept at the interpretation of God-given dreams. There are numerous other episodes in Egyptian, Mesopotamian and Greek culture that testify to the importance of understanding the messages within dreams.

One of the founding texts of psychoanalysis is Freud's *The Interpretation of Dreams* – a title he took from a two-thousand-year-old work by an Ionian Greek called Artemidorus ('*Oneirocritica*'). Freud didn't believe that dreams come from the gods, but neither did he see them as the flotsam of a chaotic, ungoverned mind – he saw them as the guardians of sleep. Our restless minds would wake us ceaselessly, Freud said, if it weren't for the transformative power of dreaming. Just as Morpheus changed shape in order to act out our dreams, so dreaming transforms our fear, shame and dark ambitions into the narratives of our dreams. For Ovid,

the dream-god Morpheus comes as a storyteller, and his fictions illuminate deeper truths.

'THALAMUS' MEANS 'inner chamber'. The thalamus lies beneath the mushroom folds of the cerebral cortex, under the caves of the cerebral ventricles. I've examined them at autopsy: twinned packets of grey matter the colour and consistency of alluvial clay. Their function is to pass on sensory information towards the cerebral cortex, filtering and relaying all that we see, hear and touch. The world flows to us through the networks and synapses of the thalamus, and when sedative drugs make us sleep, it's in part because those drugs change thalamic function.

Each of the senses is apportioned a thalamic 'nucleus', and within each nucleus millions of connections are humming and clicking in communication with one another and with the cortex. Sight passes through to the back of the brain, where it's perceived a couple of inches above the bones of the neck. Hearing rises up and out in a radiation to be processed beneath the ears themselves.* Touch is perceived in a ribbon of cortex wrapped like a headphone band across the top of the brain. Smell and taste – our earthiest, most primitive senses – are different: they pass directly into the brain's underbelly, where they mingle with the emotional centres involved in hunger and lust, fear and memory. The cortex that makes sense of smell and taste is more primitive too – structured in just four layers instead of six – a hangover from our reptilian evolutionary past. It's the primitive way in which smell and taste are perceived that makes them so evocative of our past, and so intimately associated with feelings like nostalgia or disgust.

The brain's world is electrical: it's through electricity that nerve cells communicate with one another, and it is through manipulating each cell's electrical voltage that thalamic neurons block or transmit sense information. Each thalamic neuron answers to the rhythm of the sense that it serves. The activity of its neurons can be imagined as a million desynchronised drum machines, pounding out a million different rhythms, each one responding to a different sense-impression. In addition to the classical five senses, ceaseless torrents of data inform the cortex moment to moment of our balance, motion, temperature, thirst, hunger, the tension and position of every muscle and tendon of the body, the fullness or emptiness of our

bladder and rectum, and the pressure of air in the lungs and windpipe, not to mention all the higher-order reflections, perceptions and memories that clatter constantly through our waking minds. The din of all this would deafen us if we weren't so skilled at directing our attention to just two or three sensations at a time. But when it comes to sleeping, even a few of the millions of sensations pressing in on us would be distracting. To permit the brain to rest it's not enough just to direct our attention, we have to slam the gate of the senses shut.

When we begin to drift towards sleep, one among many changes is that ions of potassium leach out through the wetsuit-tight membranes that clothe each thalamic cell, and into the surrounding extracellular fluid. The leaching occurs because of the change in shape of a tiny membrane channel called ' K_{2P} ': twin pores open within the channel's structure and positively charged potassium ions glide out. The electrical charge of the neuron drops with the departure of the potassium, and the speed of thalamic neurons' firing slows as a consequence. Awake, millions of syncopated rhythms convey all the complexity of the world around us. Asleep, those neurons slow to a deep, harmonised beat that shields us from awareness. When we shake ourselves awake the reverse occurs: K_{2P} channels narrow and close, the voltage in the thalamic neurons rises, and each begins again to faithfully transmit information to the cerebral hemispheres about the outside world.

K_{2P} channels aren't unique to humans – they were first identified in pond snails. They're not unique to the brain either – you can find them in the kidney and in the pancreas (where their function is less thoroughly understood). We know they're involved in sleep because when scientists deliver anaesthetic gases or sedative drugs to pond snails, their K_{2P} channels open, and the snails become sluggish. Even pond snails sleep. Maybe they even dream.

Artemidorus, the Greek author of *Oneirocritica*, didn't get caught up in the question of whether dreams come from the gods or from the self – he said only that when we experience recurring dreams, 'our spirit admonishes and foretells us affectionately the self-same thing worthy to be thought upon.' I appreciate the gentleness of that 'affectionately'; some of my own consultations become quiet, mutual reflections on what recurring dreams might mean. The sites where dreaming takes place within the brain are

poorly understood, and they can be a dangerous territory – a realm of primitive emotion we explore at our peril. Drugs like amphetamines tap into the same areas of the brain as dreaming when they gift energy and elation; if those same regions become ungoverned, the waking nightmare of psychosis may break through. In clinic, I ask about dreams cautiously, aware not just that they're deeply private, but that their content carries power.

I began to ask those of my patients who experience recurrent nightmares what their spirit could be ‘affectionately admonishing’ them to contemplate. I asked dreamer one, who found himself nightly running through corridors opening and closing doors, to talk more to me about his personal history. His wife and both his children had died in appalling circumstances many years before (car crash, cancer, suicide). If there was any eloquence to his dream, it perhaps expressed anguish over all that had been left unsaid between himself, his wife, and his children. There was a horror that came from his knowledge that he could never substitute his life for theirs. Exploring this as a potential meaning didn’t diminish the frequency of his dreams, but it did allow him to articulate something of the depth of his grief. The intimacy that grew between us through those discussions made it easier, I hope, to discuss other fears and anxieties. I couldn’t cure him of grief, but through discussions of his dreams we created a space for that grief to be voiced.

Dreamer two had dreamed herself a surgeon uncertain how to proceed; when she began to talk about that terror she moved naturally, and without being prompted, into a disclosure of her childhood, her career choices, and her parent’s high ambitions for her – they always put on pressure to transcend the family’s modest background. She admitted that she never expected to be promoted so highly, and often worried that those around her thought her not up to the responsibilities of her job. When we were able to discuss those feelings of inadequacy – of being an imposter in her role – she went on to list all the reasons she was, in truth, ideally qualified for her post.

For dreamer three, who repeatedly experienced taunting and tormenting at the hands of cartoon characters, the physical and emotional betrayals he suffered as a small child were too raw to begin approaching with words: he found himself unable to talk about them. We decided instead to suppress the

dreams with drugs. There's a drug called clonazepam that blunts and attenuates our dreams, or at least subdues the memory of them. I began a regular prescription of clonazepam for him, to be taken until such time as he feels able to talk about the tragic abuse of his past, either with me or with a counsellor – a time we acknowledged might never come.

* We need sleep to live: there is a genetic condition called 'Familial Fatal Insomnia' in which a progressive intractable insomnia, in step with a deteriorating dementia, leads to death. It is thankfully extremely rare.

* Francis Crick, one of the discoverers of DNA's structure, believed that this was the purpose of REM sleep.

* A paradox being that the noises heard in the right ear are processed in the cortex beneath the left, and vice versa.

5

Bodybuilding: Unhelmed by Fury

If you want to be strong, you must accustom your body to be the servant of your mind, and train it with toil and sweat.

Prodicus, *On Hercules*

ONE OF THE FIRST CONSTELLATIONS I learned to recognise was that of Hercules: a box of stars radiating flailing, half-bent limbs. Look for the Pole Star, then follow the tiny saucepan handle of Ursa Minor, and you're not far off. As a child, I had a pop-up book about astronomy, and over starry bones it showed a greyed-out Hercules kneeling, club in hand, about to deal a death blow to the serpent Draco.

I knew the story of Hercules because my schoolteacher had organised a project on Greek mythology. According to the myth, Draco was a snake-like creature guarding an apple tree in a sacred garden when Hercules (or, as the Greeks named him, Heracles) clubbed him to death. I don't remember her pointing out the parallels with the story of the Garden of Eden, but I do remember her asking us to make drawings of Hercules's twelve labours. I sketched mountains of shit in the Augean stables, and puddles of blood under the Nemean lion (his 'thirteenth' labour, the impregnation of fifty virgins in a single night, was never mentioned). He was so strong, the teacher said, that when a superhuman being called Atlas tired of holding up the heavens, Hercules was the only mortal powerful

enough to take on the task.

In the most usual telling of the myth Hercules was the son of Zeus, result of one of his many illegitimate affairs. Zeus's wife Hera tried to prevent the birth, directing magic spells at Hercules's mother while clamping her own thighs tightly together. This was an integral part of the spell, and Hera was tricked into uncrossing her legs; the enchantment broke, and Hercules survived his first labour. It was immediately apparent that the boy was strong: in his cot he strangled the snakes that Hera sent to kill him, and the prophet Tiresias augured that he would accomplish great deeds.



HARRY ALKMAN ABUSED anabolic steroids. It wasn't his muscles that gave me the clue, but his skin: no matter what treatment I gave, his acne remained disastrous. I tried everything in the armoury: lotions and astringents, antibiotics and vitamin A, but his shoulders, neck and cheeks continued to erupt with pustules which scarred to pits, as if raindrops had fallen on the dust of his skin. I was new to medicine when we met, with an innocent belief in my patients' honesty. While discussing Harry's acne at a coffee break one day, a more experienced colleague suggested: 'Ask again what else he's taking.'

At our next appointment I asked Harry if he was *sure* he never took anything I hadn't prescribed; he confessed he'd been buying steroids online for the last four years. 'Which one?' I asked.

'One?' he said, surprised by my ignorance. 'No one takes just one.'

'Well, what *do* you take?'

‘Well, I started with testosterone and some Dianabol. That’s to bulk you up, for the first twelve weeks. And also anastrozole to stop man-boobs.’ I knew anastrozole as a hormonal treatment for women with breast cancer.

‘And then?’

‘Well, that depends on what you want to achieve. To get more definition you’d usually switch the type of testosterone, and add in something like Anavar. But keep going with the anastrozole.’

‘So you said that’s for starters. What do you take once you’ve moved up a level?’

‘There are plenty of schedules out there,’ he said, ‘Masteron, Equipoise, Decanate, Nandrone, human growth hormone...’

I interrupted: ‘Your acne won’t get better until you stop taking those steroids. They’re making your skin oily, which brings on the spots and scarring.’ I ran through some of the other risks of steroids: heart failure through its effect on cardiac muscle, diabetes, infertility, depression, uncontrollable bouts of rage. He listened politely; in his lap I could see the skin over his knuckles tightening and relaxing.

‘If you don’t want to help me with my acne just say so,’ he said finally. ‘But I know what I’m doing. I’ve never felt better.’

THE FIRST BODYBUILDER in the modern sense was a nineteenth-century German circus strongman called Friedrich Müller, who adopted the stage name Eugen Sandow. He claimed to have been inspired by a famous Roman statue of Hercules, the ‘Farnese’. In his manifesto ‘Body-Building’, Sandow coined a phrase as well as an industry – to emphasise the self-improvement ethos of his new sport, he subtitled it ‘Man in the Making’. He patented a regime of clean living and weight training that resonated with the fin-de-siècle obsession with colonial strength and self-determination. In 1901 he conceived a public contest to find the world’s best physique: it was organised at the Royal Albert Hall in London, and judged by the author and physician Arthur Conan Doyle and the sculptor and fitness enthusiast Charles Bennett Lawes. Opening the show was a troupe of gymnasts from the London Orphan Asylum. The contestants paraded on stage, dressed in black tights and animal skins, striking poses from famous statues of antiquity. Sandow presented the winner with a golden statue of himself holding a Herculean pose.

Sandow must have had immense willpower; he claimed he had been a weakling until he was inspired by the statue of Hercules to build up his muscles. He sold his patented techniques by mail order, and from the outset his aim was an aesthetic one: mimicry of classical statuary rather than feats of particular strength. In the journey from circus strongman to the Albert Hall he made a leap of respectability; adopting classical motifs gave the endeavour a dignity and acceptance which broadened its audience. That audience grew exponentially with the advent of cinema: after 1910, Italian films like *Cabiria*, *Marcantonio e Cleopatra*, and *Quo Vadis?* all led with Herculean muscle-men, and borrowed heavily from the classics. The films were phenomenally successful across Europe and the United States, and their actors became celebrities – feted for their muscles rather than their acting skills or good looks. By the 1960s, the films were epic in scope: Steve Reeves's *Hercules* and *Hercules Unchained* set the tone for bodybuilders as actors. Others followed: Arnold Schwarzenegger (*Hercules in New York*), Mickey Hargitay (*The Loves of Hercules*) and Ralf Moeller (*Gladiator*).



In his memoir *The Education of a Bodybuilder*, Arnold Schwarzenegger wrote of how at the age of fifteen he first visited a gym in Austria and became intoxicated by the idea of transforming his body. The men who took him on as a protégé were huge, brutal but profoundly admirable – he sought specifically to emulate their ‘Herculean’ looks. His account of his first summer in the gym is steeped in a kind of sexual intoxication: Schwarzenegger felt turned on by the feeling of his muscles expanding, and dreamed of growing ever more gigantic. He modelled his own training schedule on that of the bodybuilding actor Reg Park (star of *Hercules and the Conquest of Atlantis*). Park advocated a kind of sculptural bodybuilding, which involved first pumping the muscles up, and then finessing the definition of each one.* Like an autoerotic Pygmalion, Schwarzenegger fell more deeply in love with his body as he sculpted it.

On the subject of steroids, Schwarzenegger is coy: his *Encyclopedia of Modern Bodybuilding* slips a discussion of performance-enhancing drugs into the last couple of pages. Every great bodybuilder uses steroids, he declares, but they do so only as a final polish to a body already honed to near-perfection through *effort*. Steroids, he says, are essential if you want to keep your edge – an edge as much mental as physical. The drugs don’t just help build muscle faster and stronger, they bring on an aggression that facilitates a ferociously competitive attitude to training.

FROM MY DESK I usually had warning that Harry Alkman was coming to clinic – his voice like a chain-gang foreman carrying from the hallway as he argued with the receptionists, or his dogs barking outside as he chained them to the surgery steps. He had three Staffordshire bull terriers – pale, muscled and belligerent.

After the conversation about his acne I didn’t see him for a few months. The next time I heard those dogs barking, I went out to the waiting room to find him sitting with his girlfriend Tanya. She was silent in the corner: pale, and nervous, her ginger hair straggling over a grey tracksuit top. Harry sat with legs spread, occupying the space of three chairs. The cloth of his T-shirt bulged as if crammed with snakes.

‘You’ve got to help him with his temper,’ Tanya said tentatively, as they sat down together in my office. Her voice was like a child’s whisper. ‘It’s

getting out of hand.' Harry's skin looked better, and I asked if he was still taking steroids.

He laughed. 'Maybe I tried a new regime,' he said.

'He won't listen to what I say,' said Tanya, her eyes pressing on me.

'To be honest, he doesn't tend to listen to me either,' I said.

A few nights previously they had been having an argument and Harry had lashed out at her; she dodged, and his fist hit the wall. The impact snapped a bone. He held up the hand as evidence, bandaged in the emergency department. 'See what she made me do? You've got to give me something to calm down.'

'You're responsible for your own actions,' I said, as calmly as I could. 'And if you cut out the steroids you'll get less angry.' I reached down into the drawer for a leaflet titled 'Alternatives to Violence', circled the phone number on the front, and handed it over. The leaflet carried a portrait of a pensive young man, heavily muscled, above the legend: 'Be Who You Want To Be: Respect yourself, Listen to others, Get on with people.'

'You have to stop those steroids,' I repeated. 'And Tanya, if he threatens you or hurts you – phone the police.'

She came a week later without him, and I told her about the local women's shelter where she could go if she ever felt unsafe at home. She already had their number.

THERE'S YET ANOTHER VERSION of Hercules's myth, dramatised by the Greek playwright Euripides, in which, on the completion of his twelve labours, Hercules returns home to his wife Megara and their three sons. In this telling, Hera can't bear to see Hercules happy after his labours, so from her viewpoint on Mount Olympus she sends a furious madness upon him. Euripides describes the change: 'He was no longer himself; his eyes were rolling; he was distraught; his eyeballs were bloodshot, and foam was oozing down his bearded cheek. He spoke with a madman's laugh.' Hera's spell makes Hercules believe that Megara and his children are enemies; boiling with rage he turns on them. He slaughters one son with an arrow; his second son pleads with him but Hercules, absorbed in his frenzy, clubs the boy to death and tramples on his bones. He then turns on his wife and third son, shooting a single arrow through both bodies. Finally, his family slaughtered, he turns on his foster father Amphitryon but the goddess Pallas

intervenes, hurling a rock at his breast. As it hits home his ‘frenzied thirst for blood’ fades; he falls to the floor and into an enchanted sleep.

MANY CULTURES HAVE STORIES of muscle-bound strongmen, unhelmed by fury. In medieval Norse culture these men were much valued in battle: they were called ‘berserks’, or ‘bear-shirts’, transformed by their bloodlust to become as much bears as men. The Germans too had a word for that altered state: ‘mordlust’, a lust for death. The Anglo-Saxons had Beowulf; the Irish, Cú Chulainn; in Hindu mythology, Krishna; for the Babylonians, Gilgamesh. There are resonances and echoes with the battle-trance of Achilles. The Hebrew Bible has the story of Samson, a Herculean strongman who, like his Greek counterpart, kills a lion with his bare hands, pulls down buildings and lays waste to an army (but where Hercules has his bow and arrows, Samson is armed with an ass’s jawbone). Just as the Greek myth gives Hercules three earthly ‘wives’ in quick succession, the Hebrew story offers Samson the same.

Anabolic steroids can make an already irascible temper far worse – there are a few accounts in the medical literature of murder committed under their influence. Weight training without steroids can enhance well-being by boosting testosterone, but it can also intensify background aggression. A study conducted in a male prison showed that the most aggressive men had higher testosterone levels. Men born with doubled ‘Y’ chromosomes instead of the usual single ‘Y’ don’t just have more testosterone, there is some evidence to suggest that they are over-represented in the prison population, possibly through greater propensity to short-tempered violence. Anecdotal evidence suggests that when adolescent boys are in the midst of the testosterone boost of puberty they get into more fights, and become more argumentative at home. Like the madness of Hercules, unnatural levels of testosterone can ignite furies that consume the individual, even as they threaten everyone around him.

MEN WHO TAKE ANABOLIC STEROIDS for a length of time usually become infertile, because artificial testosterone inhibits the body from making its own. Their testicles shrink, and their sperm count drops. As if in awareness of the paradoxical effects of excessive testosterone, many of the greatest strongmen in mythology pass through a phase of feminisation: Thor goes

through a period dressing as a woman, as does Krishna. One of the Greek myths of Hercules tells that in one of his three marriages he stayed home to cook and clean, while his wife went out hunting and fighting. In one version of the story of the Trojan War, Achilles's mother tries to keep him home by dressing him as a girl (he is betrayed when the Greek army passes through the village, and he can't resist fondling their weapons).

The next time I saw Harry there was no warning – no barking of dogs, no yelling at the reception desk. He was sitting quietly in the waiting room when I went to call him, wearing a loose hooded sweatshirt. As he sat down in the chair of my office, he placed a piece of paper on the desk.

'What's this?' I asked.

'My new regime. I've come to see what you think.'

The piece of paper had a list of medications on it, and none of them were anabolic steroids.

'So have you stopped taking testosterone?' I asked him.

'Yep – I've brought it down slowly. Tanya and I are going to have kids. I've come to see if you'll help.'

'Well, I can't prescribe any of this stuff for you – most of these are IVF drugs for women. They're not licensed for use in men.'

'I don't need you to prescribe them for me – I'll get them and inject them myself. I just wanted to know what you think of the regime, and if you'll send the sperm count test afterwards, to see if it's worked.'

Harry had it all worked out: his research had told him to arrange a week of daily injections with a hormone to stimulate his testicles. Then he'd start a drug which in women leads to hyperovulation, but in men can kick-start the production of sperm. Anastrozole was on the regime again – this time to prevent Harry's natural testosterone being converted into oestrogen by the body.* The sperm he produced would at first be very sluggish, so after a month he'd take a fairly low dose of another drug to promote agility and mobility of the new sperm.

I phoned a colleague who specialises in endocrinology – the study of hormones – to ask him about the regime. 'Will it work?' I asked him.

'Sadly, it probably will,' he said. 'But most bodybuilders do this every so often, just to make sure their testes are still working. As soon as they get the reassurance of a normal sperm count, they go back on the steroids.'

BODYBUILDING COULD BE DESCRIBED as a species of addiction, both to the mental rush when blood surges to the brain fresh from swollen muscles, known as ‘pump’, and to a body shape perceived to be superior. A couple of decades ago it was thought of as a modern neurosis – a ‘body dysmorphic disorder’ responding to a contemporary crisis in masculinity. For some bodybuilders there may be a fragment of truth in that, but Eugen Sandow and Arnold Schwarzenegger are emblematic of a dream that has been around for as long as humans have admired strength.

In most of the Greek myths of Hercules he is born strong, but in a story recorded by Xenophon, one of Plato’s pupils, there was a moment in the hero’s adolescence when he had to make a choice between a life of strength or a life of ease. Walking along a path one day, Hercules encounters two women who present him with a decision. He could choose a path of comfort through life or a path of difficulty. The path of difficulty would require great effort but would result in a commensurate measure of honour. He could be strong, but that strength wouldn’t come as the free gift from a god or through taking a drug – it would come only through the exercise of will. He chose the path of difficulty: ‘For of all things good and fair, the gods give nothing to man without toil and effort.’

* In 1972, after winning Mr Universe, Schwarzenegger was invited to Park’s home in Johannesburg. Park criticised the definition of his calves, and instructed Schwarzenegger on how to improve them.

* Men who have one testicle removed often experience a flare of testosterone production from the remaining one. It swells in size, and breast tissue beneath their nipples may swell as the newly released testosterone is converted to oestrogen.

6

Scalp: Of Horns, Terror and Glory

My hair is grey, but not with years,
Nor grew it white In a single night,
As men's have grown from sudden fears.

Lord Byron, *The Prisoner of Chillon*

ON A JOURNEY THE LENGTH of the New York subway I once attempted a survey of the hairstyles of everyone who entered my carriage. There were spray-backs of radiant gold; ringlets of bouncing delight; dreadlocks and crew cuts; forelocks and permanent waves. A multiplicity of braids, plaits, ponytails, pigtails, tresses, tufts and knots. I counted Afros, mullets and tonsures. There were quiffs, coiffures, streaks of white and rainbow-dyes of colour. There were also fungal patches of ringworm and balding patches of alopecia.

Even the bald scalps showed a wealth of diversity: some were pockmarked like asteroids, others looked worn down and freckled – sandstone sculptures under acid rain. Some had swatches of bruises, others were glossy as polished mahogany. Some were wrinkled, others suave, some scratched like glacial erratics. I saw scalps that were crusted with psoriasis, others with sun damage and dermatitis. I didn't see anyone with horns.

THE SCALP HAS one of the best blood supplies in the body: wide arterial trunks ascend into it from each side of the face, and when it gets wounded, blood can spurt a couple of centimetres into the air. Scalp skin is tough, and its wounds satisfying to stitch – in the emergency department I often start with a few tight silk sutures to halt the bleeding, and then finish the job with staples or glue. ‘Superglue’ was invented during the Vietnam War for the express purpose of repairing briskly bleeding wounds like those of the scalp. Only the tongue and cheek heal quicker, thanks to their more generous blood supply. The scalp is among the thickest skin on the body, at around 1 mm (skin thickness varies from 0.05 mm in the eyelids and behind the ears, to 1.5 mm on the palms and soles of our feet). Women have thicker skin on their scalps than men, and bald, elderly men the thinnest scalps of all. All this variety across the acreage of the body’s surface makes skin our largest and heaviest organ, oddly and unjustifiably overlooked by most medical training.

Training in every speciality involved being summoned to ‘interesting cases’ and then adding them to an inner register of experience, but being a medical student in Dermatology felt peculiarly voyeuristic: every day we were asked to crowd around scantily clothed patients and scrutinise their skin. I remember being ushered in to view verrucas that had metastasised across someone’s heel; to dress necrotising blisters of bullous pemphigoid (an autoimmune condition, the name of which derives from the Greek for ‘pustule’); and to witness a scabies hunt that ended with the skewering of mites from tunnels in the skin of an aghast student.

One morning I was marshalled with five other students into a consulting room where a middle-aged woman in a rainbow-coloured cardigan and gypsy skirt was sitting on the side of an examination couch. Her face was haloed with blonde frizz, and she had brushed it forwards over her forehead. ‘I’d like you all to see this,’ said the consultant, and asked her if she’d lift up her fringe. At least two of us took a sharp intake of breath: in the centre of her forehead, just at the hairline, she was growing a horn. It was about two inches long, brown, and curling to a point like the stalk on a Halloween pumpkin.

‘We’re making arrangements to remove this,’ said the consultant. ‘These cutaneous horns are made of keratin, just like your hair, nails and…

rhinocerous horns.' Various skin conditions can generate a horn: sun-damaged skin, which may start overproducing a horny layer of skin that lengthens; some skin cancers; verrucas; and even some disorders of the sweat glands. About one in five horns turn out to be cancerous. Though of different origins, the horns are all composed of the same substance – keratin. 'They're fairly straightforward to remove,' the consultant went on, 'though this one will require a skin graft to close the defect.'

We all stood in a half-moon around her, trying not to look horrified, though the patient herself seemed unconcerned. 'Don't take it off today,' she said, and gave an impish laugh. 'I've a costume party next week – I was thinking of going as a unicorn.'

IN ROME THERE'S a statue of Moses by Michelangelo, in which he is portrayed with twinned horns, gathered brows and an intense gaze. It was commissioned for the tomb of the Renaissance pope Julius II, but sits in a small church called San Pietro in Vincoli. The horns commemorate the moment in the Bible when Moses, after receiving the ten commandments, descends Mount Sinai to his people with his face noticeably changed. St Jerome, in translating the Hebrew into Latin, described the transformation of his face as 'horned', and ever since, in the iconography of the West, that's how Moses has been represented. The Moses of Michelangelo is an enthralling, masterful piece of sculpture – Sigmund Freud devoted a lengthy and breathless essay to it ('How often have I mounted the steep steps... and have essayed to support the angry scorn of the hero's glance!')

Transformations in the classical as well as the Biblical tradition tend to imply an element of divine justice: in the *Metamorphoses* of Apuleius someone behaving like an ass becomes a donkey, in the *Metamorphoses* of Ovid a bloodthirsty murderer changes into a wolf. The Bible has a couple of horned transformations: in Deuteronomy 33 there's a prophet whose horns convey strength and grandeur, while the book of Revelation is stuffed with horned messengers from hell. What meaning or justice was served by putting horns onto Moses's head?

Three and a half centuries ago the physician and polymath Thomas Browne puzzled over this inconsistency, and so went back to the Bible's original Hebrew and Greek. He realised that in Hebrew the word 'kaeran' means 'glorified' or 'shining' and that the almost identical 'karan' means

'horned', and concluded that the western iconography of Moses, for more than a millennium, is all down to a mistranslation. Horns, Browne concedes, are the 'hieroglyphic of authority, power and dignity' and so of all the transformations that could have been effected on the face of Moses these were perhaps not inappropriate.^{*} In Ovid, the future king of Rome accepts his destiny only when horns start growing from his skull. The confusion between 'horned' and 'shining' too is an ancient one – Browne quotes the Roman philosopher Macrobius: 'The Libyans reckon their god Hammon to be the setting sun, and they portray him with ram's horns, since these are the source of that animal's strength, as sunbeams are of the sun's.'

FREUD'S PSYCHOANALYSIS takes it for granted that the emanations and irritations of skin can reflect aspects of our inner life – almost as if the skin can be a barometer of our mental and emotional weather. In the early years of the twentieth century more pedestrian skin complaints like eczema and even nettle rash were assumed to be reactions to psychological or emotional conflicts. Many of my own patients notice that their psoriasis and eczema worsen during periods of anxiety or poor sleep – an observation that modern theories of immunobiology struggle to explain. Modern medicine is fairly good at knowing how to subdue skin diseases when they flare up, but our knowledge of what kindles them in the first place remains embarrassingly poor.

If skin can be a barometer to psychic weather, so too can hair – as a reaction to an emotional shock it's well known to turn white or fall out. In medical journals, this phenomenon is called 'Marie Antoinette syndrome', because of the widespread belief that the French queen's hair blanched over a single night, waiting for the gallows. Over a century ago Leonard Landois wrote,

One of the oldest problems of pathology and physiology which has escaped scientific research and is still clouded in mythical darkness is the sudden whitening of the hair. I call it a mythical darkness, because the reports, dating mostly from older times, sound more like fairy tales than scientific observations.

But it's no fairy tale: modern dermatologists have confirmed it. Once a strand of hair leaves its follicle within the scalp it's dead – it can't change colour unless bleached. But the phenomenon of sudden whitening happens not through a change in the pigment, but through the preferential shedding of coloured hair after a fright or a shock, leaving only pale hairs behind. No one understands why the immune system attacks coloured hair in this way, and there is no known treatment.

The first historical example is in the Talmud, when bereavement is described as greying the hair. Inconsolable grief whitened the hair of Shah Jahan following the death of his wife Mumtaz Mahal (unassuaged by the building of her mausoleum, the Taj Mahal). The grief doesn't have to be for loved ones – the loss of books can do it too. On hearing of the loss of his ship with numerous priceless manuscripts, the hair of the Renaissance scholar Guarino of Verona turned white. There are numerous examples in the literature of hair-whitening following imprisonment awaiting execution: Ludovico Sforza, when captured by King Ludwig of France; Sir Thomas More in the Tower of London; and a military officer called D'Alben in pre-revolutionary France (whose hair blanched only down one side, the right). The *Chronique d'Arras* tells of the hair-whitening of a condemned criminal at the court of Charles V, and Marie Antoinette has her Scottish counterpart in Mary Queen of Scots, whose hair may have turned white awaiting execution (or it may just have been that she had more grey hair than she was ordinarily willing to admit). Of Mary's execution Stefan Zweig wrote:

When Bulle [the executioner] wished to lift the head by the hair and show it to those assembled, he gripped only the wig, and the head dropped onto the ground. It rolled like a ball across the scaffold and when the executioner stooped once more to seize it, the onlookers could discern that it was that of an old woman with close-cropped and grizzled hair.

HORNS DON'T JUST SIGNIFY DIGNITY, but also lust, gaiety and mischief. They are the symbols of stag parties, infidelity and inexperience (greenhorns). Pan, the Greek god of shepherds and sex, had two horns, as did Bacchus, the god of wine and of fertility. 'There be many Unicorns', wrote Sir

Thomas Browne, ‘and consequently many Horns... Since what Horns soever they be that pass among us, they are not the Horns of one, but several animals.’ As a medical student I was warned against the temptation of jumping to obscure, dramatic diagnoses – if I heard hoof-beats, I was instructed to think of horses not zebras, and never mind the possibility of unicorns. Though he accepted that a variety of species could be unicornous, Thomas Browne doesn’t mention human unicorns and likely never met one. Since that afternoon in Dermatology clinic, neither have I.

But preserved in the anatomical collections of the University of Edinburgh is the horn of a human unicorn: Elizabeth Low. The stories behind many of the specimens in the collection have been lost over the centuries, but Low’s is preserved thanks to a silver medallion attached to the horn itself. The horn began growing in 1664, the year that Browne was elected a Fellow of the College of Physicians. It was removed in 1671, the year Browne was knighted.

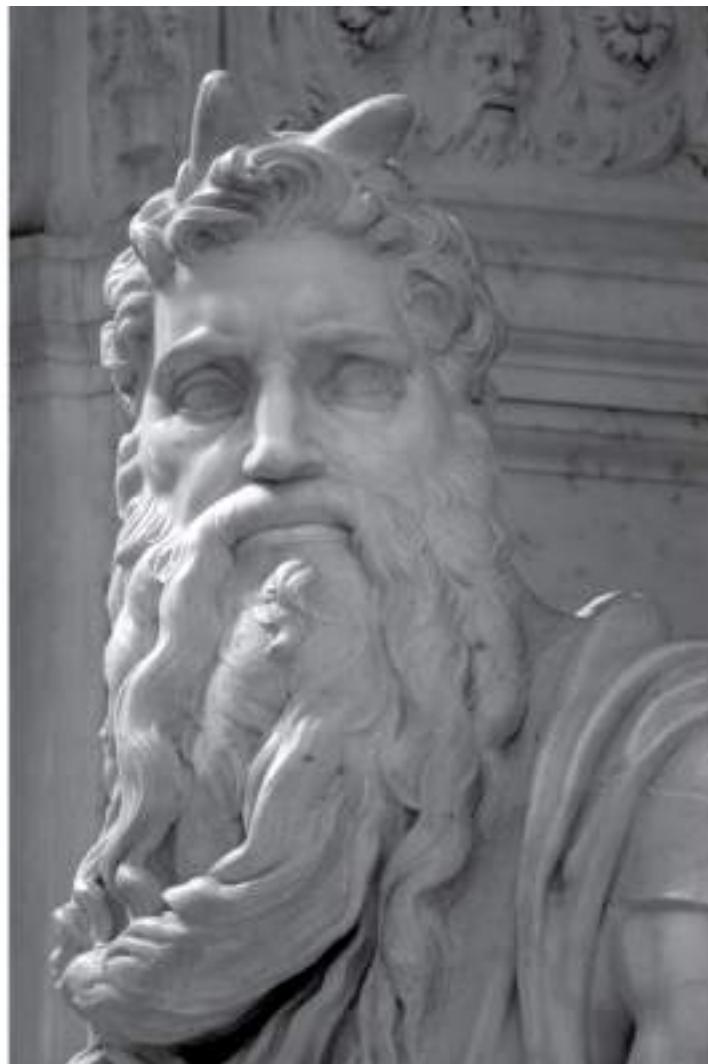
‘This horn was cut by Arthur Temple’, it reads, ‘Chirurgeon, out of the head of Elizabeth Low, being three inches above the right ear, before thir witnesses Andrew Temple, Thomas Burne, George Smith, John Smyton and James Twedie, the 14 of May 1671. It was agrowing 7 years, her age 50 years.’



FOR CENTURIES, it's been assumed that Michelangelo's Moses depicts the moment when the prophet catches the Israelites in the act of worshipping a golden calf, and his expression is one of incandescent fury. In defence of this perspective Freud quotes two contemporaries, Henry Thode and Carl Justi, in describing Moses's face as 'a mixture of wrath, pain and contempt'; 'quivering with horror and pain'. In Rome once I went to see Moses's face, and he didn't look angry to me – but wary, astonished, and even a bit frightened. It's true his eyebrows are gathered, but the left one

slopes downwards, and his expression seems more a backward glance than a furious stare, as if he can't quite wrench his gaze from something terrifying or even wondrous.

There's an alternative view: the statue might just commemorate an earlier moment in the story, when Moses has asked God to reveal himself. His face would show not anger, but heaven-struck, terrified awe. It's one of the strangest and most powerful scenes in the Hebrew Bible – it's hard to think of a more fitting moment for Michelangelo to immortalise. It's just a pity that, being sculpted in marble, we can't tell if Moses's hair has turned white.



* Attila the Hun and Alexander the Great were generally depicted with horned helmets. In the

Qur'an, Alexander is referred to simply as the 'Two-Horned One', *Dhul-Qarnayn*.

7

Birth: Reshaping the Heart

When brought to birth, man is not yet completed; he must be born a second time.

Mircea Eliade, *The Sacred and the Profane*

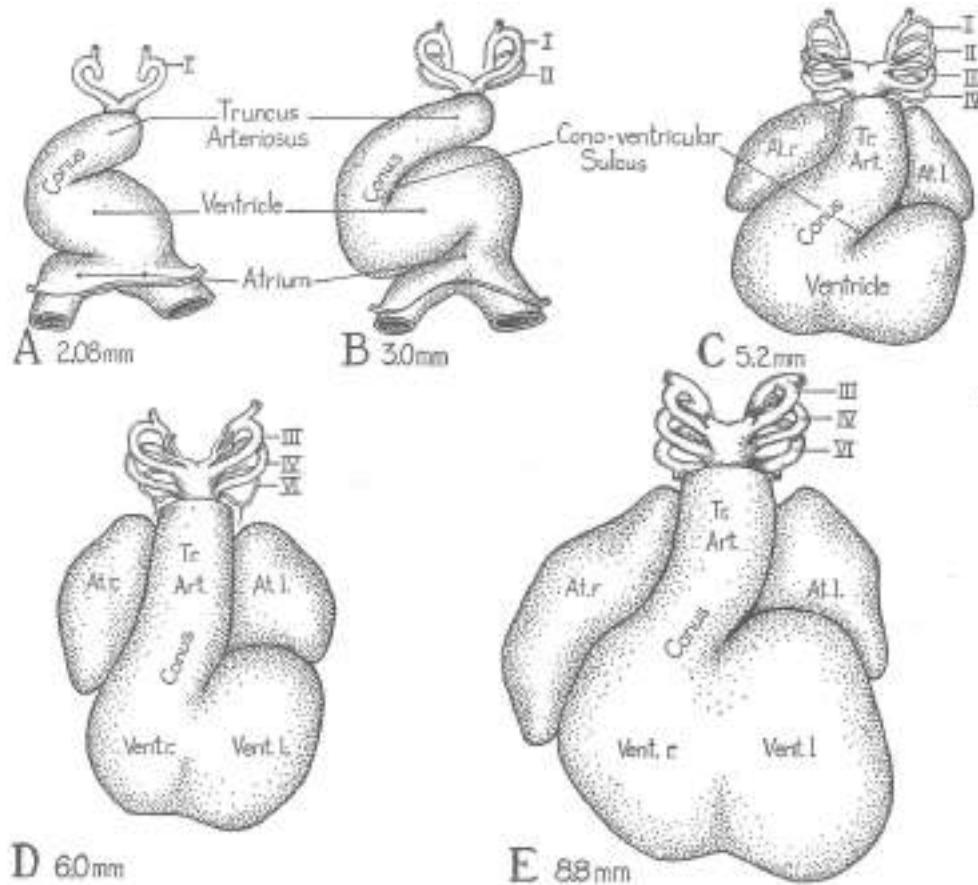
THE FIRST BABY I delivered was at the end of a long night shift as a medical student. Her parents had arrived on the ward the previous afternoon, when the mother was still in the first stage of labour. We were formal and polite with one another at first – this was their first baby, and they knew it to be my first delivery – but after hours of blood and shit and sweat we were like old friends. Long after I'd qualified, every year on her birthday, I'd receive in the post a photo of their little girl. Whenever I went travelling I'd send her postcards.

I remember my hands shaking as I held her in those first moments, silenced by a sense of wonder. She took her first gasps; to watch her body change from a pallid blue to pink was like seeing colour return to a landscape after an eclipse. We were on an upper floor of a rural Scottish hospital, and the summer sunrise cast golden light on the bare institutional walls. I took a towel to dry her, clamped the cord when it stopped pulsing, and passed her up to her mother. She cried out, and I was stopped short by a tiny, powerful voice that until moments before hadn't existed.

I have attended many births since hers, and my sense of amazement has

never greyed at new life, new breath, claiming its place in the world. It's glorious to see colour and life flooding into new limbs, to watch a baby join the cavalcade of life thanks to a concert of changes in the heart.

THE HEART BEGINS as two rolled tubes on a flat embryonic disc, which coalesce to form a bulbous sac that twists and knots as it grows – a fattening snake folding itself into the basket of the ribs.



We speak of ‘the circulation’ but in reality human beings have two: a ‘pulmonary circulation’ for our lungs, and a ‘systemic circulation’ for the rest. The ventricle on the right pumps to the lungs, the ventricle on the left pumps to everywhere else, and the two beat simultaneously. Every beat of an adult heart pushes about seventy millilitres in tandem into each circulation; the two bloodstreams cross at the heart in an endlessly flowing figure of eight. One of the many marvels of our mammalian hearts is that they manage to conduct these twinned circulations with a single pump. Another is that the baby’s lungs have to develop in the absence of air to

breathe – the foetus gets all its oxygen through the placenta. Blood from the placenta gets where it's needed quickly by circumventing the baby's lungs through a pair of 'shunts': ingenious channels which shift blood from the right-sided pulmonary circulation to the left-sided systemic circulation.

The first shunt is a hole between the right atrium and the left, the 'foramen ovale'. Oxygen-enriched blood courses from the placenta, through the umbilical cord, and into the largest vein of the body. This vein is fluted at just such an angle that about a third of its blood, on entering the right side of the heart, twists straight across the atrium, through the foramen ovale, and onto the left side of the heart, where it can take oxygenated blood out to the brain and torso where it's needed. In my summers as an anatomist I'd seek out this window with astonishment: the hearts we dissected were of men and women who'd lived into old age, and yet the impression left by the foramen ovale was still visible, as was the groove in the atrial wall that rolled and directed blood towards it. To examine the walls of the adult right atrium is to see foetal fluid dynamics imprinted in the heart.*

The second shunt necessary for life in the womb is the 'ductus arteriosus', a fat trunk of a vessel that spills 90 per cent of the volume of every heartbeat away from the lungs and into the aorta. This channel is also fluted at a very particular angle, calibrated to draw bluer, more deoxygenated blood from the right ventricle down the descending aorta, and out to the placenta to be re-oxygenated.

Human babies start out in the earliest weeks of pregnancy with tails, and gill arches at their throats like fish. The heart develops in the throat from the vessels of these gill arches, and the ductus arises from the residue of the sixth arch.

As the embryo grows, its heart migrates down from the neck to its place in the chest. As it descends it remains connected to its original nerve supply in the neck, which is why for many people, the only sign of a heart attack is that they feel a pain in the throat and jaw. The closure of the ductus is a transformation essential to sustain our air-breathing lives, part of the transformation that turns a blue newborn pink.

All large arteries have a layer of muscle between the inner and outer coats, but the ductus is special: it has a double spiral of opposing helical fibres. It's the contraction of these fibres that closes the vessel off after birth, and they're triggered to do it by sensing oxygen from the baby's first

gasps. If that early closure fails, the blood flow in the ductus reverses, damaging the lungs and overexerting the heart.

The Greek physician Galen didn't know about those helical fibres, but made a surprisingly accurate observation of ductus closure two millennia ago:

The ductus joining the aorta to the pulmonary artery not only ceases to grow after birth, when all the other parts of the animal are growing, but it can be seen to become thinner and thinner, until as time progresses, it dries up completely and wears away.

In the dissection room I'd find its remnants: frayed scraps of fibrous tissue under the arch of the aorta, and marvel that they were all that was left of a once broad, vigorous conduit of blood, able to channel 90 per cent of each heartbeat.

A ductus that hasn't closed by seventy-two hours after birth gets classified as a 'patent ductus arteriosus' or PDA, and can be dangerous. 'Failure of the ductus arteriosus to close shortly after birth is associated with significant neonatal morbidity and mortality,' concluded a recent review; 'Early diagnosis is essential.'

I'M ACCUSTOMED TO LISTENING to the hearts of newborns: every baby born to a patient of my practice is seen soon after birth. The heart of a newborn beats more quickly than that of an adult – at least double the speed – the two pairs of valves making a rapid, see-saw staccato as they close in unison at more than two beats a second. There's something fragile about it, but vital; I'm acutely conscious that I'm hearing the first few beats of a heart that will beat billions of times – with luck, long after my own has fallen silent.

A decade after making that first delivery, a baby just a few weeks old was brought to my clinic for a check-up. His mother, Joy, told me 'He's not feeding very well.' 'He's trying,' she said, 'but it's as if he can't coordinate sucking with breathing. And his nose is getting blocked up.' She stretched the baby's tiny body out on her lap; a river-map of veins showed through translucent abdominal skin. His eyes blinked unseeing from that half-womb

half-world that babies occupy in the first weeks of life. I asked about the birth: Connor had been born a week or two early, and there had been no complications. At first he'd thrived, and regained his birth weight, and when I plotted out his size on a growth chart I saw that he was around the 90th centile – meaning that only 10 per cent of babies his age would be larger. At first he'd fed well, but for a few days now he'd been struggling.

I warmed the end of the stethoscope by rubbing it on my hand, knelt on the floor, and put it to Connor's ribs. Instead of a soft staccato there was a legato, each beat joined to the next by a muffled rumble, loudest to the left side of his breastbone, and audible, though quieter, along his back. His lungs sounded healthy, with plenty of free passage of air. 'He has a murmur,' I said, taking the stethoscope from his chest. Joy's eyes widened, her nostrils flared a little, her head became very still on her neck. 'He's not feeding so well because his nose is blocked, but I'd like to have his heart checked too. Lots of babies have murmurs – it's usually nothing to worry about.'

'Could it be serious?' she asked, searching my face as much as she listened to my words.

'Not necessarily' – I tried to look relaxed – 'we'll need an ultrasound scan of his heart to know more.'

As I typed up a referral letter Joy buckled him into a sling with grim efficiency; as she left down the clinic corridor I heard her call her husband on the phone. A couple of weeks later a letter from the paediatric cardiologist arrived.

'Thank you for referring this infant, in whom you noted a murmur,' it said. 'There is no family history of valvular heart disease, though a grandfather had a persistent ductus arteriosus closed as an adolescent.' The cardiologist had plotted Connor's weight as I'd done, checked all of his pulses, and noted that when she placed a hand over Connor's chest, she could feel a transmitted impulse from the left ventricle of the heart – beating more vigorously than it should. 'Ultrasound showed a moderately volume-loaded left ventricle, normal valves, a patent aortic arch, and a moderate ductus arteriosus with ceaseless, turbulent flow. Connor is tolerating this haemodynamic abnormality very well.'

As Connor's heart had knotted into position it had left one thread untied – a patent ductus. 'It is unlikely this will now close on its own,' the

cardiologist added, ‘and we may need to arrange surgical ligation at around six months, or transcatheter occlusion.’

The next time I saw Joy was in the clinic corridor a couple of months later, when her son was four months old. She had just had him weighed: he was still growing along the 90th centile with regard to his length, but his weight had dropped to the 50th, because he was getting slimmer. ‘Sometimes I can even hear his murmur,’ she said. ‘Do you think there’s a chance it’ll close on its own?’

I did my best to reassure her, but by the next appointment with the paediatricians his weight had dropped to the 35th centile. They assured Joy that Connor’s heart hadn’t sustained any irreversible damage, though it was now a little wider than it should have been, and the lungs were showing signs of strain. The cardiologists wanted to see whether it would close further on its own. ‘They said they’d see him again in another two months, and put dye inside him to take X-rays of his heart,’ Joy said. ‘They think they’ll be able to tell then how easily it can be closed.’

The day of his ‘cardiac catheterisation’ Connor was anaesthetised, and a narrow tube was introduced from an easily accessible blood vessel in his leg up and into his heart. Pressures in the pulmonary arteries and aorta were measured and compared. By then his weight had fallen to the 25th centile, and his length had begun to fall too. Sometimes a patent ductus arteriosus has a shape that means it can be closed from within, using only wires introduced down the catheterisation tubes, but Connor’s could not. His surgery was two days later.

The next time I saw him was the following week. He fed from Joy’s left breast, and she lifted up his vest to show me the scar where the surgeons had cut into the left side of his chest. They had splayed open his ribs, collapsed his lung, and with a watchmaker’s precision, tied off the ductus.

‘The noise has gone,’ Joy said, ‘you can’t feel his heart thudding through his chest any more. He’s feeding better too. Who’d have thought a tiny thread, tied in exactly the right place, could make such a difference?’

Three months later Connor was back up to the 50th centile in terms of his weight, and his chest X-ray showed that his heart had reverted to normal size. The return of his growth was dramatic: at a year his weight had returned to the 90th centile. ‘Connor can now be regarded as having a completely normal heart,’ said the final letter discharging him from clinic.

‘Looking to the future, there is no need for him to take any precautions whatsoever.’

THE CHARACTERISTIC MURMUR of a patent ductus was first described over a century ago by a Dr George Gibson, a few hundred yards away from my clinic in Edinburgh. A physician in the city’s Royal Infirmary, Gibson described the distinctive ‘thrill’ he felt over the chest as blood rumbled through the ductus. Turbulence in an artery causes its inner lining to roughen, the way a river abrades its banks. That abraded layer is fertile soil for seedlings of bacteria to lodge and grow. Until a few decades ago, children with patent ductus often died from these infections, or from the failure of an overexerted heart.

Until 1938, children with a patent ductus had to live with it, or more often die with it, but that year at the Boston Children’s Hospital a surgeon managed to close one. His name was Robert Gross, and his achievement is all the more astonishing given that he had the use of only one eye. He practised the minuscule stereoscopic movements required by dismantling and reassembling watches. Closing the ductus was considered so risky that Gross did it surreptitiously, when his boss went away on holiday. Only two surgeons had tried before him: one had opened the chest to find no ductus present (before ultrasound was invented, misdiagnosis was common), and the other proved technically impossible – the child died soon afterwards. ‘The child or youth who possesses a patent ductus faces an uncertain future,’ wrote Gross, ‘like Damocles, he leads a precarious existence, never knowing when he might be cut down by the danger which menaces him.’

Gross’s first patient was a sickly child who had narrowly survived to the age of seven. His account of the surgical innovation, published in the *Annals of Surgery*, describes a wan, melancholy girl: ‘Frequently she would stand still, have a rather frightened appearance, and place her hand over her heart. When asked what was the trouble she would whisper “Something wrong inside of here.”’ She couldn’t play with the other children, and her mother often reported a frightening buzzing noise coming from deep within her chest.

Gross was convinced that this devastating problem had a simple, technical solution. First he went to the dissection room, where, working on cadavers, he figured out the best place to open the ribcage to get at the

ductus.

Then he trialled his procedure on a series of living, anaesthetised dogs, until he was confident he had perfected the procedure of dissecting the pulsing aortic arch away from the pulmonary arteries. It took ‘great care and patience,’ he said: ‘in a small place between the great vessels... space is at a premium’. There was a risk of damaging three nerves: one that sustains the breath, one that coordinates digestion and pulse rate, and one that supplies the larynx – a scalpel-slip could induce suffocation, or make his patient mute. ‘I have spent as long as an hour in locating, freeing up, and tracing this nerve, for it is time well spent,’ he wrote of the nerve to the larynx; ‘once it is brought into view, the remainder of the dissection seems to be on a safer and surer basis.’ After a meticulous clearing of the fibrous tissue around the ductus, he recommended pinching it closed for several minutes before proceeding. ‘If no undesirable effects are produced... the ductus may be permanently ligated.’ This he did with heavy braided silk, which had to be ‘drawn up *very tightly* if complete obliteration is to be effected’. The linings of his patient’s lung were sutured up again, her lung re-expanded, and after a day resting in bed, she was allowed up in a wheelchair.

Gross’s first paper describes four separate cases, all achieved without complications. His technique had brought a transformation to the heart and the great vessels that, in most of us, occurs naturally in the first hours after birth. ‘The child’s general condition has been excellent,’ he wrote of one of the cases. ‘She has returned to school and in the first two months after operation she has gained three pounds in weight.’ A length of silk, expertly tied, had effected a kind of rebirth.



* In about 15 to 30 per cent of us the foramen ovale stays patent into adulthood (a 'PFO'). William Harvey, the discoverer of the circulation of the blood, thought PFOs might permit their owners to breathe underwater. He was wrong: PFOs make diving more dangerous. They permit gas bubbles that form in the blood on surfacing to cross from the right circulation to the left, where they may cause strokes in the brain.

Rejuvenation: An Alchemy of Youth and Beauty

Whereat Hecabe... leapt into the sea and changed her aged form.

Nicander's *Heteroeumena* ('Beings Made Alien')

IN MIKHAIL BULGAKOV'S NOVEL *The Master and Margarita* there's a scene of miraculous rejuvenation, accomplished by a magical cream. Margarita Nikolayevna, a thirty-year-old woman, is sitting on a bench in Moscow's Alexander Gardens beneath the Kremlin when a suspicious fang-toothed man (later revealed as an agent of Satan) presents her with a golden casket, heavy and ornate as a reliquary. He tells her to wait until exactly half past eight that evening before opening it and applying the contents to her skin. For reasons too complicated to summarise, she agrees.

At 8.29 p.m. Margarita can't wait any longer: she lifts the heavy box of gold and opens the lid. The cream is yellowish and oily, and gives off the aroma of earth, marshland and forest. She begins rubbing it into her forehead and cheeks, where it is absorbed quickly and greaselessly, producing a tingling effect over her skin. Then she looks in the mirror and drops the casket in shock.

Her eyes have changed colour to green, and her eyebrows have grown from narrow, plucked lines into perfect, symmetrical arcs. A worry-line

between them has vanished. Shadows around her temples, and ‘barely detectable sets of crowsfeet’ have vanished. The skin of her cheeks begins to glow pink, her forehead becomes pale and perfectly smooth, and the artificial waves in her hair are loosened into flowing and natural-looking curls. She laughs with glee, throws off her bathrobe, and begins to rub the cream all over her naked body. A tense headache that had bothered her since her meeting in the gardens disappears, her arms and legs grow stronger and firmer. Jumping into the air with joy, she sinks slowly and elegantly back to earth, as if being lowered by angels. The cream has granted her the power of flight.

Bulgakov was trained as a doctor and his book brims with vivid clinical details: of blood spurting at a beheading, of a gently persuasive psychiatric interrogation, of the grinding crunch of a leg being severed. He brings the same attentiveness to the effects of the cream.

As a physician, he must have known that creams in the real world can only slow the inevitable process of ageing, never reverse it. To keep skin looking youthful, it’s more important what you *avoid* than what you rub on: smoking, unhealthy food and sun exposure all add years to the skin. Once its natural elasticity has started to fade, there’s no cream on earth that can restore it.

IT WAS AN AIRPORT, but it could have been a shopping mall, a railway station or even a hospital concourse anywhere in the rich world: strip lighting, cathedral-high ceilings, gantries of air ducts, wear-resistant carpets, overpriced cafés, gallimaufries of shops, and target demographics idling on uncomfortable chairs. The products for sale vary slightly with the season, but not much: magazines, gifts, clothes and bags; caffeine, electronics, junk food and alcohol. A solitary chemist’s shop offers a different promise, with illuminated banners of ‘health’ and ‘beauty’. But what they are really selling is youth.

Medieval alchemists had a thousand different names for youth elixirs, and the contemporary rejuvenation industry is not far behind. The first three creams I picked up belonged to the same range, and blended an appetising list of ingredients: rosemary, chamomile, cocoa, eucalyptus, borage, avocado, echinacea, aloe vera, hops, cucumber, calendula, and ‘heavenly fragrance of rose-scented geranium’. On another shelf, an exotic melon

from the Kalahari had been rarefied and liquefied, and presented for application to heat-damaged hair. There were seductive promises of rejuvenated and radiant-looking skin. One of the creams promised a transformative reduction in the appearance of fine lines and wrinkles, and another a ‘firmer, lifted, and youthful-looking complexion’. There were variably blended products customised for hands, nails, feet, face, body and breast. Some creams were described as ‘precious serums’, the application of which was not just beneficial, but necessary. Each offered to make skin ‘visibly plumper, smoother and rejuvenated’.



The men’s shelf ran to just four products, which in their own way also promised youth, though their effects were described as calming, softening and smoothing rather than rejuvenating (as if mollifying male character, not male skin, was their object). The divergent marketing approach for men’s products was replicated on the shelves stocking vitamin supplements, which promised youth and improved complexion for women, but strength and potency for men. These were advertised as being necessary not just for health, but to confer ‘vitality’.

The story of Bulgakov's Margarita is part of a long tradition, from Snow White's wicked stepmother (who wanted to remain 'fairest of them all') to the Germanic legends that granted vigorous youth to men heroic enough to slay a dragon. There's a spectacular example of youth enchantment in Ovid's *Metamorphoses* when Jason defeats a dragon to get hold of a golden fleece, then implores his wife – the sorceress Medea – to rejuvenate his father Aeson, using a potion of herbs so exotic they could have been taken from a modern cosmetics catalogue. In her dragon-harnessed chariot Medea makes a tour of the most glamorous and outlandish sites in the Greek world in order to gather herbs. She fills twinned holes in the earth with the blood of a sacrificed sheep, adds wine and milk, then dips flaming torches in before setting them ablaze. Into a cauldron go roots from Thessaly, sands from Oceanus at the earth's limit, and powdered rocks from the far east.^{*}

Medea used a desiccated old olive wand to stir the brew; as she did so it sprouted leaves then grew heavy with olives. Spatters from the broth caused flowers and grass to spring up on the cold dark earth. At this final sign Medea felt ready to proceed: she slit Aeson's jugular veins and poured in her potion. 'Quickly his beard and his hair lost their whiteness... New flesh filled out his sagging wrinkles, and his limbs grew young and strong. The old king marvelled at the change in himself, recalling that this was the Aeson of forty years ago.'

BETH LORD WAS in her mid-fifties and wore elegant designer suits and blusher on her cheeks. Her vigilant eyes were heavy with mascara, and her eyebrows were as delicately contoured as the finest sable paintbrush. She'd trained as a lawyer but hadn't worked for years. Her husband was an executive at an investment bank, and worked long periods away between offices in New York and Shanghai. 'About twenty years ago he told me "we don't need the money" and encouraged me to quit. So I did.' At first, she didn't miss work, being a busy mother of a young daughter, and she signed up for every school and local committee that asked her to contribute. In addition to her rounds of meetings and school fairs she attended a gym every day, and started a small-scale business selling cosmetics to friends and neighbours.

Usually in clinic we talked about her anxiety, which was high, and her mood, which was low, as well as her struggles to relate to her husband.

They hadn't had sex for years, and she would sometimes ask me to recommend relationship counsellors, or how to improve her libido, as well as that of her husband. My advice never seemed to reap much reward. One day she attended complaining of chest pains, which had been gripping her ribcage at night – usually when her husband was away. She was anxious that they might be coming from her heart, or from some cosmetic breast surgery she'd had in the past.

'I didn't know you'd had surgery,' I said, glancing at her notes on the screen. She unbuttoned her blouse and pulled down her bra to show the circumferential scars at the periphery of each nipple, where the disc of tissue had been resected and repositioned higher on the breast. 'It hasn't given me any problems up to now,' she said, 'do you think those operations could be causing the pain?' Each silvered circle radiated a thin line, which dropped down over the recontoured breast – invisible in dim light but shown up by the examination lamps. 'I had it done ten years ago.'

I told her that it was unlikely her pains were caused by scarring. 'Did you ever have any other operations?' I asked. We had never discussed plastic surgery.

'Oh, a couple, but you won't have the records – it's all been done abroad,' she said. 'I've had Botox around the eyes, some fat at the top of my arms taken out, and – oh! Some sagging skin taken off my belly.' She indicated another circular scar around her navel where the skin had been pulled taut and trimmed, then repositioned over her umbilicus. 'That was just to deal with the stretch marks after being pregnant with Margaret.'

Her daughter Margaret suffered from migraines, and I'd come to know her a little over the years. 'How is Margaret?' I asked.

'Fine, fine,' she said with a quick, nervous smile. 'She's off at college now, having a ball. I'm happy she's away, you know, living her own life.' But her voice suggested otherwise, and the fingers of her right hand fretted at the diamonds on her left.

There were a few tests to arrange, to confirm that the pain wasn't coming from Beth's heart. Its character and timing implied it wasn't coming from her lungs, ribs or past surgery. 'You know, much of the time we can't find any physical cause for chest pains,' I told her. 'The pains come and go on a rhythm that's more to do with worries or anxieties than anything else. When those worries and anxieties ease, so does the pain.' We talked a little

about breathing techniques to try the next time she felt the pain.

‘Sometimes,’ I added, ‘these kinds of pains can be your mind and your body’s way of telling you that something in your life has to change. It won’t let you rest until that happens.’

‘My life could do with a few changes,’ she said.

THE EARLIEST KNOWN TEXT concerned with the elixirs of youth is an early Chinese commentary on the *I Ching*, the ‘Book of Changes’, in which chemical substances and processes are tentatively correlated with the book’s famous hexagrams. The *I Ching* takes it for granted that the universe and all beings in it are caught up in cycles of transformation, and suggests that the astute application of mystical and medical knowledge can influence those changes for the better.

In Europe, alchemists were obsessed with generating gold, but in China they preferred to work on youth elixirs. A string of Chinese alchemists claimed to have created a rejuvenating potion; Joseph Needham, the historian, scientist and Sinologist, was so struck by the frequency with which Chinese emperors were poisoned by these drugs that he tabulated a list of victims. In around 300 CE, a Chinese alchemist called Ko Hung collated various recipes. Three centuries later a more detailed treatise specified the inclusion of obscure, exotic substances such as mercurial salts and compounds of sulphur. There are over a thousand different names for these potions, most of which carried the same basic mineral ingredients.

One of Ko Hung’s near-contemporaries in the West, a Byzantine called Synesius, believed that the physical transformations effected by alchemy were less important than the mental positions adopted by its practitioners. A true alchemy of youth didn’t require a laboratory or precious, exotic substances; all that was needed was the right kind of incantation, and a change in attitude.

‘I’VE LEFT HIM,’ Beth told me when she next came to clinic. ‘Or rather, he’s left me, or we’ve both left each other – either way, the marriage is over.’ There was a fierce and triumphant gleam in her eye that I hadn’t seen before. Though she was still meticulous about her clothes I noticed she was without her usual layers of make-up. She looked fired-up, vital, and slightly in shock.

‘What happened?’

‘I’ve known for years that something had to change...’ she began. ‘Maybe I just held on for the sake of Margaret. But those chest pains, they were the last straw.’

One night she’d felt the pains beginning, and rather than worry over them she’d got up out of bed, put the lights on, and had written out a list of every disappointment and frustration in her life. ‘It was quite a list,’ she said, with a wry smile. ‘Two sides of paper. But one thing kept coming up again and again – the sense of being trapped in this marriage, trapped with a man who had lost interest in me and in our life together. And the worry that time’s running out.’

‘So what did you do?’ I asked.

‘When he came back from business last time, I showed him the list.’

‘And?’

‘He’s been having an affair for years! He admitted it! With a woman twenty years younger than me.’

I waited for a few moments.

‘It was almost a relief to hear him confess,’ she said. ‘Well, I’m better off now without him. That’s the first change, but there’ll be more.’

‘What do you think you’ll do next?’ I asked.

‘He told me I didn’t need to work... but we all need work, don’t we? And I want to travel!’

‘How has Margaret taken the news?’

She beamed back at me with pride: ‘That was the greatest surprise of all,’ she said. “‘Mum, you should have done it years ago,’ she told me.”

BULGAKOV WROTE THAT Margarita felt ‘anointed’ by the magical cream: a glorious sense of freedom ran through her limbs, her body fizzed with giddy pleasure. She had the sudden conviction that she would leave her home and her husband, who she did not love, and begin a new life.

After shouting ‘Hurray for the cream!’ to no one in particular, she flies through the air to her husband’s desk and, without hesitation or deliberation, writes a note asking him to forget her.

A sound disturbs her – a broomstick knocking in the cupboard. Margarita opens its door, jumps onto the broomstick, and zooms naked out of the window. Magic has rendered her invisible to onlookers – it’s

understood that this youthful beauty is for her own pleasure, not anyone else's. After taunting her boring neighbour, taking revenge on an enemy, she takes off on a flight out of Moscow.

At first she flies at tremendous speed across the Russian landscape, her toes brushing the tops of trees, the great rivers of Siberia passing beneath her so quickly that a strobe of reflected moonlight flashes beneath her feet. Then she slows to enjoy her new perspective, and 'savour the thrill of flight'.

MEDICAL PRACTICE IS SO THICK WITH DAILY REVELATIONS, SO DEEPLY TEXTURED WITH THE INTIMACIES AND DETAILS OF SO MANY LIVES, THAT SEVERAL MONTHS WENT BY BEFORE I REALISED I HADN'T SEEN BETH LORD AGAIN. SHE MUST HAVE MOVED AWAY, GIVEN UP ON HER PRESCRIPTIONS OF ANTIDEPRESSANTS, OR HAD NO NEED OF THE SPACE OUR CONSULTATIONS OFFERED. SOMETIMES A THERAPEUTIC RELATIONSHIP COMES TO AN END BECAUSE IT HAS ACHIEVED ITS AIM, AND SOMETIMES BECAUSE A STRAY PHRASE HAS CAUSED OFFENCE. USUALLY I NEVER FIND OUT WHY.

A couple of years later I saw Beth's name again on my clinic list. I called her name from the waiting-room door; 'Long time no see,' she said, rising quickly from her seat and striding after me to the office.

'So how have you been?' I asked.

She was still gracefully dressed, but wore little make-up, and the expression around her eyes was cheerful and relaxed. In her attitude and her appearance she seemed younger. 'Fine, marvellous really,' she said, taking her seat.

'When we last met you spoke about leaving your husband...'

'And I did!' she finished with glee. 'And I took off travelling. I've been twice around the world since then...'

* Chinese alchemists traditionally mixed and heated different minerals, not herbs, to create youth treatments, and it's as if Ovid was aware of Chinese preference.

9

Tattooing: The Art of Transformation

They were stains of some sort or other... And what is it, thought I, after all! It's only his outside; a man can be honest in any sort of skin.

Herman Melville, *Moby Dick*

IT'S THIN, THE BARRIER that separates us from the world – when I see skin blister or crack I'm often startled by just how insubstantial it is. The subtlest of scratches may leave a scar; the most trivial of abrasions may drive dirt under the skin and leave a permanent stain. The first tattoos must have been like this, unintentional, ash or mud forced into the body through falls or flint wounds.

A few years ago I had a clinical attachment to a medical research unit in East Africa. One of the local doctors, Faith, took care of me. She had trained in Nairobi, was efficient and imperturbable, and her long, braided hair was knotted high on her head. As she led me on her rounds she spoke of her grief at the corruption that robbed funds from the hospital. One of the hundreds of bedside stops we made together was to a malnourished boy, about eight years old, who lay face down on a dirty bed. He had cerebral palsy, had fallen in a fire, and before coming to the hospital had been nursed at home with inadequate, dirty dressings. Mottled burn scars made a chiaroscuro of his back; pressure sores too, some infected. Embedded in the burn scars were flecks of charcoal that would be almost impossible now to

remove – if he survived, he'd carry their marks for the rest of his life. ‘He is improving a little,’ said Faith, her voice matter-of-fact as she picked up his chart. ‘When I admitted him I almost cried, he had been so neglected. But then I remember that I don’t care. I can’t.’

For accommodation I rented a bungalow in an empty holiday complex near the hospital. One day the manager’s ex-husband arrived, sacked the staff, switched off the water supply and locked the main gate. For a couple of days I had to wash my clothes and dishes in the pool, until I found a room in another house with some colleagues, further away from the hospital but next to the beach. It was a round house, surrounded by the bush, open to the air and with iron bars instead of walls, and it came with a resident population of giant millipedes, dive-bomber beetles, and smug, fat geckos. Within the toilet rim lived a colony of tiny frogs, naturally selected to swim fast enough to avoid being flushed away.

At night I’d hear the sounds of partying carry through the trees from the house next door. The neighbours at that time were Samburu warriors from the highlands of Kenya. They had recently been the subject of a documentary, and had come down to the coast to celebrate with the film’s director. At an evening party I was taken aside by one of the men: he didn’t like it down by the Indian Ocean he told me – too hot, too many people, and the locals ate too much fish. No self-respecting Samburu would eat such food. It was different in his homeland, he said: cool, spacious, healthy, and a hunter could eat red meat all year round.

Around his thighs he had a pattern of circular scars: raised, shiny blebs as if divots of flesh had been prised out with thorns, then left to heal. I asked how he had got them. ‘It’s done with burning sticks,’ he said; ‘we do it when we become *moran*, warriors.’ He ran his fingers over the scars, remembering. ‘For days afterwards it was very hard to walk.’ The whorled patterns of the markings were like fingerprints writ large. Others on his trunk were arranged in neat cubic geometries, like *I Ching* ideograms cast over the body. The young men in his tribe were all marked this way, he said, before they were expected to go out to fight against neighbouring tribes, such as the Turkana.

‘Did you ever fight the Turkana?’ I asked.

He shook his head. ‘They are near to Somalia. They have AK-47s.’

He’d visited Edinburgh once for the film festival. ‘Very cold’, he

remembered. I imagined this African warrior, skin like polished anthracite, scars hidden beneath blue jeans, bracing himself against the icy brine of the North Sea wind.



IN MY CLINIC in Edinburgh I often see another kind of scarification – the ‘deliberate self-harm’ of those who cut themselves in moments of intense anguish. I asked one of my patients, Calvin, how he’d fallen into the habit: ‘It started in secret,’ he said, ‘something I did in my own bedroom. I’d take a razor, or unscrew the blade from a pencil sharpener, and just nick the skin ever so slightly. Just enough to draw blood. I’d catch the blood in tissues, then smuggle the dirty tissues out to a bin far from the house. It made me feel better, for a while. But then worse, you know, afterwards.’

‘Where did you cut yourself?’ I asked.

‘At first just here’ – he pointed to his hip – ‘so that if I was wearing shorts no one would be able to see the scars.’

Calvin pulled down the waistband of his trousers and half-stood to show me: a marbled lattice of white lines overlay his hip.

‘And then?’

‘Then it wasn’t enough – I switched to the other hip, and then my forearms. At the beginning I thought I could just wear long sleeves, and

then I didn't care any more. Something switched in me – I *wanted* others to see the scars. I wanted my mum, my dad, my teachers, everyone around me to see how unhappy I was.'

We were both silent for a few seconds. 'What do you think about them now?' I asked.

'For a long time I was happy to have them. That phase in my life is past, but it's a big part of me. It's part of who I am. Those scars are a relic of my past self – I don't want to get that low again. Until recently, each time I glanced down and saw the scars, I remembered how much stronger I am these days.'

I'd been seeing Calvin for a year or so, weaning down his antidepressants slowly, checking in on the counselling and the confidence-building courses he'd signed up for. 'And now?'

'And now I'm ready to move on. I'm going to leave that part of my life behind for ever. I've decided to get tattoos, I'm going to cover them all.'

For some, the act of being tattooed is related to the same impulse to cut, but for Calvin each tattoo was a step away from the person he'd been. Over the next few visits I watched his tattoos evolve. First a Chinese dragon coiling over his left hip, flicking its tail up over the crest of his pelvis and towards his spine; 'It means vigour for me,' he said, 'a reminder that I've got hidden strength.' I looked closely – the scarring was barely noticeable. Then, a few months later, I saw him again: his right hip was overlain with a lion rampant. 'It's bold and proud, like I want to be.' Over the following year, on his right forearm, there evolved a scene of winged angels mounted on clouds, the trumpet blasts of heaven radiating around them like discharges of electricity. In the pale gaps of skin there bloomed a garden of flowers. On his left there evolved a hellish scene: ghouls, skulls and trident-bearing demons, with fanged snakeheads crammed in the spaces.

'I'm caught in the middle,' he said, pointing at his torso; 'with hell on my left side' – at this he lifted his left forearm with its ghouls and demons – 'and heaven on my right' – he lifted the angels and trumpet blasts.

'You're carrying both around with you,' I said.

'Don't we all. You must see that in your job.'

IN THE SHERLOCK HOLMES STORIES, Arthur Conan Doyle implies that the discerning detective can learn much about a person from their tattoos. 'I

have made a small study of tattoo marks,' Conan Doyle has Holmes say, 'and have even contributed to the literature of the subject.' The tattoo is valued as a living testimonial to the life history of its bearer – as valuable to the physician as to the detective.

Often, when I roll up a sleeve to take blood pressure, or pull up someone's shirt to listen to their lungs, I see tattoos that ordinarily go unseen. Some are about family allegiance: the names and birthdays of children, or fidelity to a particular partner. Some tell me about military tours of duty, or time spent in the merchant navy. Tattoos of bikers, soldiers, sailors and prisoners all bear witness to membership of a closed, strictly tiered society. I remember opening a shirt to test a man's belly for appendicitis, to see his torso inscribed in a flowing copperplate: 'worrying is praying for the worst to happen'. His tattoo was a kind of self-uttered enchantment: he told me that since getting it, his lifelong anxiety had gone.

Tattoos can be helpful to the clinician in a very direct, practical way: one patient of mine could point to exactly where among a writhing sleeve of snakes to plunge a needle to be sure of getting blood. Sometimes skin is tattooed to show a radiotherapist exactly where on the body a tumour is to be targeted. Some are about forging an allegiance between the present and the future self – a lifelong keepsake of how its bearer used to be: a flower at the ankle, a rosette at the base of the spine, a cartoon character on a shoulder. And I've seen some that are emblems of transcendence and celebration: a phoenix rising from the ashes of a mastectomy scar, a garden of flowers blooming over stretch marks.

Tattooing must be among the earliest of art forms – the body as canvas, as symbol, as commemoration, as welcome, and warning. They're frameless works of art, transformations of the body surface – itself subject to ceaseless change. They break down the distinction between subject and object. Sometimes they're dismissed as something you'd get on impulse, but for most people, getting a tattoo is painful – as the poet Michael Donaghy pointed out, you'd need a 'whim of iron'. The word is Polynesian – it came into global usage with the voyages of Captain Cook, and refers to the 'tat-tat-tat' repetition of the needle as it punctures the skin (the drum roll 'tattoo' of a military band has the same origin).

It can be the puncturing of the skin that brings a tattoo to my medical attention – infections, blistering, sometimes inflammatory reactions to ink.

Psychological reactions too – around half of tattoo recipients regret them. In the United States a quarter of all young and middle-aged people have a tattoo, and there are more than 100,000 tattoo-removal procedures each year. James Kern, a tattoo artist specialising in transmuting unwanted tattoos into new designs, has written: ‘You will never have a happier client than someone who no longer has a tattoo that they hate. It destroys their self-esteem. I love the transformation physically and spiritually.’

Historically there have been hundreds of reasons for getting tattooed – perhaps as many reasons as there are people who have them. Anthropologists have listed a few: camouflage for hunting; to mark and propitiate puberty and pregnancy; to counteract disease; improve fertility; to mollify malign spirits. Some of the motives identified among tribal societies are just as relevant among my own patients: to take on new characteristics; to honour ancestors or descendants; to enhance one’s respect among the community; to frighten enemies; to make the body a register of life events; to beautify oneself; to express an emotion (patriotism, love, friendship); to demonstrate group allegiance. Some motives seem unique to contemporary culture: as permanent facial make-up, or even to make money exhibiting yourself. I’ve heard of someone who tattooed his blood group onto his arm, in case he ever needed a transfusion (with an arrow pointing at the broadest vein). And there are more baleful reasons: being branded by a fascist regime; as an act of deliberate self-harm; or to relieve boredom in a prison cell.

Of the latter two, the tattoos of prisoners tell a story of bravado, isolation and violence, or affirm allegiance and status. Some prison cultures, like those in Russia or South Africa, have elaborate tattoos that symbolise crimes committed – coffins to signify a murderer, a dagger at the throat for a mercenary, wrist manacles or numerals to signify the number of years incarcerated.* For the prisoner, the body can be the only possession left – and the only weapon of rebellion. I’ve seen clumsy self-inked allegories of freedom restrained, and of gardens and birds intertwined and tangled with thorns. I’ve seen scrawled skulls reminiscent of the *memento mori* skeletons that dance around the borders of old gravestones. Tattoos are a way of bringing disorder, playfulness and creativity to a body living within the drudgery and order of the prison. The body in chains comes to tell a story of its own liberation.

THE FIRST I KNEW of Mark Blakewell was a sheet of paper sent in to the medical practice from the city jail: ‘The above-named patient is being released from prison tomorrow,’ it said, ‘I’d be grateful if you would take over the methadone prescription as detailed below.’ Methadone is an opiate substitute, prescribed to dull the cravings of heroin addicts. I looked up the notes we held from the time before his conviction: a catalogue of emergency department attendances for fight injuries, and a couple of psychiatric referrals that he didn’t turn up to. Then a sudden silence, about ten years previously. We sent an appointment time back through to the prison nurses, and the following day he showed up in my office.

He was thin and pale, in his early forties, with crew-cut blonde hair, and tight, bloodless lips. There were lines notched into his eyebrows. He wore a green tracksuit with white stripes, and down one cheek he had twinned scars. He blinked too often, and his eyes fidgeted around the room. But the most striking thing about him was his tattoos – all amateur works, executed in thick blue ink. A spider’s web was drawn up one side of his neck, and a dagger, pointing towards his heart, tattooed down the other. There were some tears tattooed onto one cheek; a loop of barbed wire circled his throat. Through his thin hair I could make out more designs on his scalp – a swastika, a skull and a Scottish flag. I glanced down at his hands: he had ‘LOVE’ tattooed across his right knuckles, and ‘HATE’ across his left. On his thumb knuckles he had clusters of blue dots, and a swallow fluttered at the web spaces between his right thumb and index finger.

He sat down next to my desk, and glowered. He had skin creases like target circles around his eyes. ‘I’ve come for my methadone,’ he said.

‘Sure. What dose are you on?’

He sighed theatrically: ‘If you don’t know that already, you don’t know what you’re doing.’

‘I’m just checking I’ve got the right details.’

‘Eighty,’ he said. ‘And I need my Valium too.’

‘Eighty, fine. But I can’t give you Valium – no one comes out of prison on Valium.’

‘If you think we can’t get it there you really don’t know what you’re doing.’ The consonants in his voice were hard. ‘If you don’t give me any, I’ll have to buy it on the street. Then it’ll be your fault when the police

come after me.'

'If you're so nervous you have to buy street Valium, then maybe we should talk about how to ease your anxiety.'

He grunted, grabbed the prescription from my hands, and went to stand up. Then the mask of fury on his face softened, he exhaled slowly and sat down again.

'Sorry,' he said, and looked down at his shoes. He looked as if he was trying to find the words to say more.

'I'll be civil to you, if you'll be civil to me,' I said.

He sat back in his chair and took a deep breath. 'OK, let's start again.'

Each of my patients on a methadone prescription is seen monthly, and over the months, as I came to know Mark better, he grew his blonde hair long. It curled around his ears and cast the spider's web and dagger into shadow. The tattooed tears on his cheek were still prominent, and through his open-necked shirt I'd glimpse the barbed wire girdling his throat. On that first day out of prison I'd watched him manage to get his temper under control; slowly, I watched him do the same with his drug use.

One day he came in with a bandaged hand. He was wearing a polo-necked shirt, and was down from eighty to forty millilitres of methadone a day. We agreed to drop it to thirty-five. He told me he'd found a job in a mechanic's shop – a friend had recommended him for the work. 'And what happened to your hand?' I asked.

'Tattoos,' he said. 'I burned one with battery acid.'

I unwrapped the bandage: weals of reddened skin were healing over his knuckles, but blue ink was already showing through the scabs.

'They used to try this in the old days,' I said. 'They'd peel off tattooed skin, then graft new skin over the wound. It doesn't work very well – they use lasers now.'

'And does it work?' he asked.

'Sometimes,' I said. 'And your tattoos are exactly the kind it's best for. Not cheap, though.'

The lasers for tattoo removal are chosen according to the colour of pigment to be broken down – red and orange pigments need a green laser, a red laser is used for blues and blacks. It's painful too – more painful than getting the tattoo in the first place. The lasers usually lighten the skin, which can be a problem for anyone with a dark skin tone.*

I went on meeting with Mark every month, bringing his methadone down by increments – and as his addiction eased, I watched his tattoos dissolve. By the time he was at thirty millilitres a day, the tattooed tears on his cheek were just faint smudges, barely noticeable. He was living frugally, spending all of his income on the laser clinic. By twenty-five millilitres the dagger and webs at his throat were fading, and I could see he had started on the circle of barbed wire at his throat. By ten millilitres a day there were just blemishes to see on his face and neck, though he still had to keep his hair long enough to prevent the scalp tattoos showing through.

A year or so later I saw him in clinic again. He looked well – as he walked into my office his once grey, zipper-tight lips opened wide in a smile. He wanted me to prescribe something to help him stop smoking. I noticed the swallow still fluttered at the web space between the thumb and index finger of his right hand.

‘What about that one?’ I asked him, pointing down at the free-flying bird.

‘That one I’m keeping,’ he said.

* Kafka’s *In The Penal Colony* describes a machine that tattoos each prisoner’s body with the law that has been broken.

* There is a push now to extend the regulation of tattoo artists to the pigments that it is legally permissible to use, in order to make them more easily removable. Bright modern pigments are the most difficult to remove with lasers.

10

Anorexia: The Enchantment of Control

This is a real illness, not a whim of spoiled rich girls. It's been treated like it's voluntary and wilful as opposed to what it is: a serious, life-threatening psychiatric and medical illness.

Diane Mickley MD

ANOREXIA NERVOSA IS AN INSCRUTABLE ILLNESS: baffling and frustrating to those who suffer it as it may be to those trying to help. Some mental illness dissolves the boundaries of the self, tearing the seams by which we hold ourselves together. Some foist on us delusions of being pursued, persecuted, contaminated – or their opposite: delusions of being powerful, grand and invulnerable. Some mental illness forces a retreat from the world, shutting down engagement in a destructive cloak of depression or catatonia. Anorexia is none of these things: a self-destructive, poisonous assault on the body and mind, a grim alliance between one of our most ancient instincts – to fast and even avoid food that we believe might harm us – and one of humanity's newer preoccupations – the way we appear to ourselves and to others.

Effective mental health therapists are part-priest and part-conjuror: they find ways to re-invoke an individual's boundaries, dissolve his or her delusions, and summon an authentic, engaged self from the shadow beneath which they've fallen. We no longer think of mental illness as a possession

which descends on us, cast by powers beyond our control. Modern medical psychiatry looks at mental illness as a phenomenon of brain chemistry, but some languages still carry the sense that it comes from without as a kind of psychic weather. This perspective can be effective in neutralising any guilt or culpability a sufferer might feel – ancient physicians spoke of melancholia as something beyond our control, subject to the flux of humours, and some languages retain this sense today. There are languages in which to say ‘I’m depressed’ is to say ‘a sadness is on me’; in English we still speak of a depression as having ‘lifted’.

It seems irrational, in the twenty-first century, to think of anorexia as a malignant enchantment, yet culturally it’s the most plausible fit – a mood or conviction that brings misery and starvation, often arriving inexplicably and departing just as unaccountably. There may be warning signs: an unusual attitude to food before the illness came, a powerful determination to achieve goals, a destructive family dynamic, a traumatic experience, a perfectionist attention to detail, or any one of a number of other ‘risk factors’. Each could have played a part in initiating an obsession with restricting food, but that doesn’t explain why many people with odder attitudes to food, more destructive family dynamics, or greater perfectionism over details, never develop anorexia.

In some parts of the world shamans still use rituals to cast out malign spirits: as a family physician, in the modern West, anorexia can make me feel like a novice exorcist. Some of the anorexic patients I’ve known have succeeded, with or without help, to cast out the illness that was starving them; others found ways to make an uneasy truce with it. Some were defeated by their anorexia – it has the highest death rate of any mental illness. And it has been with us for centuries – St Catherine of Siena, who lived in the fourteenth century, was anorexic (‘I pray to God and will pray, that He will grace me in this matter of eating so that I may live like other creatures’). So was the seventeenth-century nun Veronica Giuliani, a tortured woman who would lick walls and eat spiders, but not the meals placed before her in the convent refectory. It’s not just a disorder of western culture: there are reports of anorexia from Nigeria, Hong Kong and South Africa, as well as among the Amish people (though one study from Fiji implied that television introduced anorexia to a community that had never known it).

Accounts from the Middle Ages, written by priests and abbesses charged with the care of anorexic nuns, betray feelings of bewilderment and impotence in the face of the illness that are comparable to those I've heard expressed by therapists in modern psychiatric clinics. Anorexia has been intimately, painfully and eloquently described by many men and women who have suffered it, and my perspective as a clinician is no substitute for those accounts.

SIMONE WAS A LAW STUDENT who hobbled into my office holding her stomach, complaining of overwhelming nausea and a light-headed sensation as if she was about to faint. I helped her onto the examination couch; the wings of her pelvic bones stretched the skin at her hips, and her ribs were a bowed washboard. Her abdomen was distended into a dome. 'It must be gas,' I thought to myself, 'maybe she's got a bowel obstruction.' But the swelling felt dull beneath my tapping finger, as if there was little air or gas beneath the skin. Her temperature was normal, and her blood pressure was on the low side for someone suffering so much pain. Most people with an obstruction in the bowel can't stop vomiting, but Simone didn't even retch. When the bowel is blocked by a twist or a tumour, the intestine works harder to clear the obstruction: intestinal fluids trickle through the interconnecting caverns of the bowel making high-pitched, tinkling sounds. But when I put a stethoscope on Simone's abdomen, it was silent.

'What have you had to eat in the last twenty-four hours?' I asked, gently pressing my hand over the quadrants of her swollen abdomen.

'Nothing unusual,' she said, grimacing. Her eyes looked trapped and frightened, like a stowaway under an opening hatch. 'A rice salad last night, and this morning a bit of toast.'

I slid a needle into her vein at the elbow, drew out a few tubes of blood for the lab, then gave her some anti-nausea medication and morphine. 'You're very dehydrated,' I told her, 'I'd like to arrange an ambulance to take you down to the hospital.' She lay back on the couch and nodded. White, downy hair on her cheeks, illuminated by the overhead strip lights, made a ragged, tilted corona around her face. 'Come and see me when you get out.'

It was a couple of weeks before she came back to see me, and her discharge letter held a surprise. 'Acute gastric dilatation with foodstuffs,' it

said: ‘Therapeutic Procedure: Decompression gastrotomy.’ Simone had stitches down the front of her belly: the surgeons at the hospital had opened her up and found a stomach bulging with around six pints of half-chewed rice and melted ice cream. They’d piped it out with a tube, repaired the hole in her stomach, and stitched her up again.

The food restriction of anorexia leads to emaciation and malnutrition, while most men and women I’ve known with bulimia – whose eating disorder takes the form of self-induced vomiting or other purging – maintain a normal weight. But there’s a grey zone between the two, variants of anorexia that are haunted by the compulsions of bulimia. In ‘binge-purge anorexia’, sufferers survive years of semi-starvation only to binge as a response to some stressor, sometimes as rarely as once every few years. A stomach shrivelled through disuse can’t cope with the burden of a normal meal, so a binge stretches it perilously thin, and vomiting the foodstuffs out becomes impossible. It was clear that Simone had eaten so much food that her stomach, like her skin and bones, had been taken to breaking point.

I NEVER KNEW SIMONE’S PARENTS; on the couple of occasions I went to the home she shared with them, they weren’t there. Over the months, then years, that I was Simone’s doctor I found out more about her, and how anorexia nudged its way into her life. It took root like a spore in shadowed soil. She had always been slender and quiet, an only child, and the family was affluent: her mother was an academic who commuted between Edinburgh and Oxford, and her father a lawyer. They lived in a modern luxury apartment overlooking one of the city’s parks, with sleek designer furniture and wide, echoing rooms.

Some anorexia begins in imitation – it’s commoner among siblings of anorexic people and in pupils attending boarding schools – but in Simone’s case it began with a fear of contamination. She picked up an infective diarrhoea – a common enough illness – that left her for a few weeks with cramping abdominal pain every time she ate. At first she thought that she was being recurrently infected by intestinal parasites, then that she was being poisoned by new food intolerances. She began to manipulate her diet to exclude potential triggers. Alone for much of the time in an empty flat with her textbooks, she commenced an obsessional hygiene routine, and began to categorise and weigh her food into ‘good’ and ‘bad’. ‘Bad food’

insidiously became categorised in her mind as ‘too fattening’. Most of us when we are hungry become distracted, irritable and light-headed, but Simone had a paradoxical reaction – she felt clean, clear-headed and calm. At first, her studies improved. She felt a new level of control over life and her circumstances.

Gradually, Simone’s worries over being contaminated or poisoned by food began to give way to a horror of the sated feeling that comes with a normal meal. She approached her meals distrustfully, pushing food around the plate as if engaged in bomb disposal rather than nourishment. In the early days, she’d stand in front of the refrigerator for a quarter of an hour, agonising over what to eat before walking away empty-handed. Later she avoided the refrigerator altogether. She took up running, experimenting with how little she could eat and still manage to complete her favourite circuit of the park without feeling faint. The circuit lengthened; the fat that all of us need for health, to cushion our bones, muscles and organs, began to melt from her hips, cheeks, shoulders. Her bones thinned, her ankles swelled with fluid from malnutrition, and she felt cold all the time. Her family life had never been particularly harmonious but mealtimes with her parents, frantic with concern about how to make her eat, became a battleground. It was after a particularly violent argument with them that she’d gorged on the rice and ice cream that had brought her to my clinic.

When we met again after the hospital admission I referred Simone urgently to the local eating disorders clinic. The psychiatrists recommended citalopram, an antidepressant medication which they hoped would help reduce some of her anxieties around eating, and they arranged fortnightly meetings both with themselves and with a dietician. ‘They gave me sheets showing the minimum I have to eat to slowly bring up my weight,’ Simone told me at one of the early appointments. ‘I’m sticking to them, I really am.’ But her weight didn’t rise. Deception is an inextricable part of most eating disorders, and I found out later that she never took the citalopram as prescribed, and rarely ate as the dieticians advised. Her periods had stopped long before, but now her ankle swelling worsened, and downy hair grew even more thickly on her ^{*}cheeks. She dropped out of law school.

WHAT IS IT THAT CAUSES a healthy adolescent, whether male or female, to starve themselves until their bones soften, their teeth loosen, their hair falls

out and their hearts weaken? Among the first to define it was a French physician, Charles Lasègue, who in 1873 gave a fairly sweeping summary of some of the characteristics he associated with the illness:

A young girl, between fifteen and twenty years of age, suffers from some emotion which she avows or conceals. Generally it relates to some real or imaginary marriage project, to a violence done to some sympathy, or to some more or less conscient desire. At other times, only conjectures can be offered concerning the occasional cause.

As to ideas about causes, the same could be said today: ‘only conjectures can be offered’. As a constellation of attitudes to food and body weight, anorexia transcends times and beliefs, but its triggers involve a pernicious synergy of culture, advertising, peer pressure, genetics, family relationships, storms of hormones and peculiarities of personality. It’s often precipitated by some stressful life event: a bereavement, challenge or change in role.

The journalist Katy Waldman, a recovered anorexic, wrote an eloquent, fearless essay about her illness which noted some of the contradictions at its heart. She pointed out that there’s a tendency among survivors to make a poetry of emaciation: anorexia becomes a choreographed performance that ultimately becomes a prison. She called for an end to the celebration of wan, delicate women in art and literature, and a rejection of destructive narratives that seek to amplify their appeal. The illness awakens a revulsion towards food and a healthy body weight that seems unassailable, perhaps because it is so closely associated with the primitive aspects of our humanity: nourishment, sexuality, body awareness. For adolescents, it provokes a retrogression of puberty, seeming at first to effect a transformation in reverse. ‘I starved,’ wrote Waldman, ‘to acquire that old classical capability: metamorphosis.’



If anorexia is, as Waldman proposes, a kind of dramatic performance, Simone and I tried to sneak in new stage directions. I wanted to exploit her formidable perfectionism and resolve to an alternative end: a healthy weight. We agreed together a list of foods she'd endeavour to eat at breakfast, lunch and dinner, tabulating their associated calories – she accepted that without a minimum intake her body would grow weaker, and her mind too. But none of my interventions seemed to hold; her revulsion at the feeling of a modest meal within her stomach remained strong, and her weight continued to fluctuate on the edge of what is compatible with life. Twice more she was admitted to hospital: once when the salt levels in her blood threatened to destabilise the rhythms of her heart, and once when she collapsed unconscious with low blood pressure. I asked her once, ‘Do you think there’s a part of you that would welcome death?’, and she took a long time in answering.

But the answer, when it came, was ‘no’, and after three years of our meetings, her breakthrough came. I can’t take any credit for the change: after numerous medications, dieticians, admissions to hospital and regular visits to the psychiatrists, one day she told me simply that she’d eaten a chocolate bar, and felt better. ‘It was that simple,’ she said, astonished by the obviousness of what she needed to do. ‘I had energy. I felt good. I was expecting that horrid feeling to come over me, that disgust, but it didn’t. And I had only the one – I didn’t gorge on them.’

‘What made the difference?’ I asked her.

‘No idea – it’s just that now when I feel nauseated at the idea of eating, I

can see it as a sign that I'm not thinking straight, a sign that I actually *have to eat.*^{*}

Over the subsequent months I charted the rise of Simone's weight back into health. She returned to law school, moved out of her parents' flat, started dating, and though she never lost her perfectionism, her dedicated attention to the ingredients of what she ate, her weight didn't drop the way it had over those three years.

Much later, when the downy hair had gone from her cheeks, she had strength in her limbs and the rhythms of her hormones had returned, she came to see me about contraceptive pills. 'Remember those awful years,' she said and gave a short laugh, 'the only good thing about them was that my periods stopped.'

'Do you ever think about those years now?' I asked her.

'Sometimes,' she replied. 'It's hazy though, as if I was under a spell. I wish I knew how it was broken.'

* The downy hair growth is due to hormone imbalance. This 'lanugo' or 'wool-like' hair has led some scholars to speculate that the medieval nuns canonised as 'bearded saints' suffered from anorexia.

11

Hallucination: A Sphere of Devils

For man has closed himself up, till he sees all things through narrow chinks of his cavern.

William Blake, *The Marriage of Heaven and Hell*

I HAVE A PATIENT who believes her fingers are rotting. Usually Megan offers me her fingertips for inspection. Her unclipped nails are thick with grime, and more than once I've led her to the sink where together we've scrubbed them with a nail brush. 'Can't you smell it?' she asks me, 'they're disgusting.' I don't smell or see anything unusual. Megan is sometimes tormented by bullying and insulting voices, and when those voices are strong, so are the hallucinations of rot. We meet at least once a month: for me, it's a chance to check how she's getting on; for her, it's to pick up her antipsychotic drug prescription. She finds the drugs helpful; the consultations, I think, less so. I've tried exploring what the rotten fingertips might mean for her; whether they're a symbol of some rot or canker that gnaws at her mind rather than her fingers. 'Nope, there's nothing symbolic about it,' she says. 'They *really* stink. I can't believe you can't smell it.'

In Greek the word 'psyche' means 'soul' or 'life'; 'psychosis' means 'animation' or 'infusing with life'. For nineteenth- and early twentieth-century psychiatrists it meant something different: 'psychosis' was madness arising from a disorder of mind, as opposed to 'neurosis', which arose from

a disorder of nerves (this is now recognised to be a meaningless distinction). Today the word is reserved for those who hold beliefs and report hallucinatory perceptions that are manifestly untrue – those who've lost touch in a particularly damaging or distressing way with what's verifiably real. In *Dementia Praecox, or the Group of Schizophrenias*, published in 1911, psychiatrist Eugen Bleuler coined the term ‘schizophrenia’ to describe a group of mental illnesses that suggested this loss of grip on reality. His book affirmed that when delusions or hallucinations become prominent, ‘everything may seem different; one’s own person as well as the external world... The person loses his boundaries in time and space.’ In schizophrenia, this loss of boundaries can become enduring, life-limiting and profoundly distressing.

When people take hallucinogenic drugs for pleasure, that pleasure is contingent on the change they offer being temporary. Aldous Huxley’s *Doors of Perception*, an essay exploring the effects of taking four-tenths of a gramme of the hallucinogenic drug mescaline, took its title from William Blake: ‘If the doors of perception were cleansed, every thing would appear to man as it is, infinite.’ For Huxley, the brain was a reducing valve, optimised to restrict the glory and plurality of the world. He took hallucinogens with the intention of blowing open that valve, and specifically noted that the drug gave him an ‘inkling’ of what it might feel like to be psychotic. He wanted to induce a transformed state of consciousness, and shortcut through to the ecstatic states of mystical religion like those described by practitioners of Zen Buddhism, in which perceptual boundaries are said to be similarly dissolved.

The idea that drugs could offer transcendence was criticised by the Zen master D. T. Suzuki, who insisted that hallucinogenic drugs gave an insight only into a ‘devil’s sphere’ of reality. Taking LSD, Suzuki is quoted as saying, ‘is stupid’. ‘These drugs conjure up “mystic” visions,’ he wrote, ‘[but] Zen is concerned not with these visions, as the drug-takers are, but with the “person” who is the subject of the visions.’ Suzuki’s student Koji Sato took a different view: hallucinogenic drugs gave access to a mental state in which students ‘should not linger’, but from which much could be learned. Sato tells the story of one Zen student who couldn’t progress beyond a series of Buddhist koan teachings until he took LSD; following his drug experiences, he ‘passed these koans easily’.

It seems a universal that human minds seek to move in and out of alternative worlds, altering their state of consciousness. Children accomplish these transformations through play, but with adults, drugs are an almost ubiquitous feature of human communities, whether to transform perspective, become energised or to relax. Almost every society has a tradition of using drugs, and the few without tend to have developed alternative means of accessing hallucinatory states such as fasting, or prolonged meditation.

Broadly speaking, to be an hallucinogen, a drug must induce a distortion of perception without acting as a sedative or stimulant. There are many natural hallucinogens, and their use by humans has been described as far back as the Hindu Vedas – about 5,000 years. In the Middle Ages there were periodic outbreaks of a condition known as St Anthony's Fire, in which whole communities experienced hallucinations when they ate bread contaminated with ergot alkaloids. The alkaloids are generated by a fungus that grows on grain; in the gut they cause diarrhoea and vomiting, and in the brain they can cause headaches, hallucinations and seizures. A similar effect is brought on by ingesting the leaves or berries of deadly nightshade ('belladonna'). One seventeenth-century treatise on belladonna poisoning emphasised the religious and mystical nature of the hallucinations – prefiguring Huxley's *Doors of Perception*.



There are many other natural drugs that have hallucinogenic effects, like the psilocybin of mushrooms, and the peyote of Meso-American cacti. But the most powerful hallucinogen of all is a synthetic one, Lysergic acid, or LSD. It's active in tiny doses, about a thousandth of the equivalent dose of mescaline, making it one of the most powerful drugs known: 10 μ g can produce a feeling of euphoria, and as little as 50 μ g an hallucinogenic effect.

LSD was first synthesised in 1938, but its effect wasn't discovered until 1943 when, while working in the laboratory, the Swiss chemist Albert Hoffman accidentally absorbed some through his fingers. He thought he had died and been transported to hell. The drug has wide-ranging effects across the brain, and scientists couldn't figure out how it transformed vision, hearing, smelling and dreaming without dulling or heightening the taker's level of consciousness. In the 1950s and 1960s it was trialled as a therapy for alcoholism, for depression, even for schizophrenia, but few studies have been able to prove any enduring therapeutic benefit. More recently, the psilocybin of hallucinogenic mushrooms has been proposed as an aid to deepen engagement in psychotherapy, much as Sato's Zen student passed the most difficult koans only after taking hallucinogens. But LSD is not without danger: many studies show a small, persistent risk of psychotic reactions to the drug – around 1 or 2 per cent. It seems that LSD-induced

visions can cede to hallucinatory states that persist long after the drug itself has been eliminated from the body.

MY INTRODUCTION AS A MEDICAL STUDENT to the horror of drug-induced psychosis was Dan, a young student of philosophy I met during a psychiatry attachment. After taking LSD for the first time, Dan had a psychotic reaction with persistent hallucinations, and disabling panic attacks. I spent a couple of hours talking with him about his experience. He was short, with blonde curls to each side of his forehead like question marks, and a vertical line between his eyebrows like an exclamation. Angry patches of acne erupted between the sparse bristles on his cheeks.

He told me that he took a tab of the drug one evening in his bedroom, out of curiosity. The first thing he noticed, within twenty minutes or so, was that his bed was breathing, the quilt was rising and falling in time with his own breath. He tried to write down ‘the bed is breathing’ on a piece of paper, but the sensation of the pen on paper was all wrong, as if the nib was sinking through into the wooden desk beneath. Lying down on his bed he glanced up out of the window, and noticed that the sky was pulsing between light and dark. ‘It wasn’t frightening at first,’ he said, ‘but beautiful’; he lay for a while mesmerised by the change. He knocked on his flatmate’s door to tell him about the vision but found that instead of words, only giggles would come out. ‘Every time I tried to speak it was as if I had to line the words up beforehand in some antechamber of my mind,’ he said, ‘then blurt them out. But they wouldn’t come.’ On a trip to the toilet he saw his urine as fluorescent green blobs on the porcelain, beautifully bright, like scales on a dragonfly. As he watched, they seemed to spiral in a vortex towards the base of the pan before melting away.

At first the drug made him feel exhilarated and euphoric: he wanted to go out and enjoy his new perceptions. He strode out for a walk around the neighbourhood, but the euphoria quickly melted: his feet on the pavement seemed to sink into the cement; the music playing through his earphones began to boom from the brick walls of the buildings around him. His exhilaration yielded to a creeping, desolating anxiety. Beneath the hood of a pedestrian he glimpsed the flashing impression of a skull. Every piece of chewing gum trodden into the pavement glowed red, green or amber depending on the light showing at its nearest traffic lights. A panic attack

came over him, bringing a toxic paranoia: every car looked like a police car, every pedestrian seemed like a threat.

He cut the walk short and, running back to his flat, noticed that the drug had done something to his body temperature – he was overheating. Once back in his room he stripped off all his clothes, and sat naked in the middle of the bedroom. ‘I kept telling myself, “What can happen to you? You’re here, on your bedroom floor, nothing bad can happen”’. But a great deal was happening: the edges of the posters on his walls were moving, scraps of paint on the wooden floor seemed to writhe like larvae, and when he looked down at his skin, it seemed to swirl in endless migration over its own surface. ‘It was terrifying to see that even my body wasn’t safe,’ he said. ‘But it was also horribly fascinating: my hand would transform between looking old, wrinkled and weak, then it’d become strong, youthful and powerful. And if I looked in the mirror I’d see the same rapid change, backwards and forwards, on my face.’

Dan sat for hours like that on his bedroom floor, too scared to switch off the lights and sleep, terrified to leave the room. ‘I felt as if I’d passed my whole life perched on a plinth in a central chamber of my mind,’ he said. ‘Stable and secure. That night I was kicked off, and left hanging by my fingernails over some awful chasm. I knew that if I let go, I’d go mad.’

By sunrise the following day he was still flinching at unexpected auditory hallucinations, distrustful of every sensation – even the hard pressure of the floor beneath him. Music would blare loud then become muted, and he flinched at flickering shadows on the edges of his vision. Sleepless now for thirty hours, his paranoia was intensified by exhaustion: he became overwhelmed by terror at the prospect of going outside. His flatmate called the GP, and then accompanied him to the local clinic. The GP sent him in a taxi to the emergency psychiatric team at the local hospital, where he sweated, trembled and stared at the floor until he was seen.

‘They told me it would fade with time and they were right,’ Dan said. ‘They gave me some drugs – sedatives – that brought such relief. The first one I took was like honey on my brain.’ The psychiatric team arranged to see him again the following day – he didn’t need to be admitted into the hospital ward. The new drug slowed him down, his thoughts became viscous, and he had to stop attending the university. But within three weeks

he had reduced the dose to a negligible amount, and was learning to breathe through the panic attacks. Out on the street he still saw skulls on people's faces, but was finding ways of ignoring the visions and distracting himself. Speaking to medical students like me was one of the ways in which he was trying to understand his experience, and reclaim his mind.

THE PSYCHIATRIST R. D. LAING spent many hundreds of hours listening to personal accounts of psychosis. There are striking similarities between his case reports and accounts like Dan's of a terrifying LSD trip. In *The Divided Self* Laing quotes one of his psychotic patients: 'I'm losing myself. It's getting deeper and deeper. I want to tell you things, but I'm scared.' In his book *Disembodied Spirits and Deanimated Bodies*, Italian psychiatrist Giovanni Stanghellini quotes a patient undergoing a similar kind of 'ego disintegration': 'All sensations seem to be different from usual and to fall apart. My body is changing, my face too. I feel disconnected from myself.'

There's a theory about schizophrenia that proposes psychosis as a disintegration of the moment-to-moment synthesis between the different social and mental roles we inhabit – a synthesis we all carry out unconsciously, and which hallucinogens temporarily disrupt. From this perspective, psychosis and hallucinogenic drugs break the tiller that allows us to navigate between inner and outer worlds. Each of us is composed of bundles of different identities, and we are subject to ceaseless torrents of sensory awareness; in psychosis the ability to create wholeness from that turmoil breaks down. Images from functional MRI scanners are notoriously difficult to interpret and the technology is still in its infancy, but when the brains of LSD users are visualised, networks of neurons that under normal circumstances all fire together can be seen to become desynchronised. It may be an insight into how those many selves that constitute our being can be shattered apart.

Dan found a way back from the edge of disintegration and his breakdown, though provoked by a drug, gave me a glimpse of what some of my patients with schizophrenia, like Megan, might be going through. Hallucinogens can offer visions but risk division of the self, and for Albert Hoffman, Dan, and for D. T. Suzuki, those visions are a 'sphere of devils'. But for many users the effects are pleasing, compelling, addictive, even heavenly. Precisely because they are temporary, they offer some an escape

when life feels tedious, and bring breadth and richness when it feels narrow or impoverished. But it's a fragile heaven they offer: dissolving the boundaries of experience may become a dark hell of terror. To reassert the boundaries of perception is to offer a path back to the light.

12

Puberty: Suddenly Accelerated Youth

With man the young arrive at maturity at a much later age than with any other animal.

Charles Darwin, *The Descent of Man*

I WORKED ONCE with a wise and straight-talking community midwife, a mother of four, who after delivering babies at home would visit regularly for the first few days to check how well couples were adapting to becoming parents. I asked if there were any impressions or insights she'd gathered over the decades of her work. Some take a first baby in their stride, she told me, while others felt as if parenthood had dropped them into a tunnel of fear and exhaustion. It often seemed to her as if the younger the parents, the less difficulty they had adapting to the change.

'Do you give them any advice?' I asked her.

'The ones who are struggling? I tell them that for the first six or seven years kids just need you,' she replied, 'and you have to find a way of reconciling yourself to that. But then the following six or seven are just lovely, as the children learn about the world, and get slowly more independent.'

'And the six or seven years after that?' I asked.

'They go somewhere you can't follow,' she said and gave a wistful smile. 'But mostly they come back.'

In clinic I see plenty of babies, toddlers and pre-school children – often with wheezes, fevers, ear infections and rashes. Sometimes there are concerns about feeding, and sometimes about growth. By about the age of six the frequency of visits drops away, as the kids get better at fighting off infections, and hit their stride in terms of development. But then at age twelve or thirteen I start to see them again, as the hormonal upheavals of adolescence take hold.

All babies produce sex hormones: I often see unweaned newborns of both sexes with swollen breast tissue created by oestrogen. But the brain of a newborn baby is trigger-sensitive to sex hormones, and a sensitive feedback mechanism, initiated soon after birth, slams a brake on their production. The sensitivity of that brake diminishes in late childhood until it's weak enough, finally, to activate puberty. The onset of puberty isn't then the unfolding of something new, but a release into something that's been long suppressed.

There's a famous painting by Edvard Munch, created during his anxious years in Berlin, which shows a naked pubescent girl with flushed cheeks and a defiant, quizzical gaze. He called it simply *Pubertet* – ‘puberty’. She's sitting on the edge of a bed, wrists crossed in her lap, hair loose over the shoulders. The most striking aspect of the image is not the boldness of her stare, or the finesse with which she's been painted, but a large, womb-shaped shadow that bulges up from beneath her onto the wall.

Some critics reckon that the shadow represents Munch's own repressed sexuality; others think it's a phallic symbol or symbol of the womb, or that it represents the challenges and complexities of looming adult life. Many parents welcome the gathering strength and independence they see in their children, while others mourn the arrival of puberty as a loss of innocence. Munch's painting implies that the coming of sexual maturity is a kind of expulsion from the Eden of childhood into the solitude and the responsibilities of adult life.



I MET BILLIE BAXTER when she was four years old, when two long-term patients of my practice adopted her. She was small for her age, inquisitive and agile, with short blonde hair that curled at the nape of the neck. As soon as she entered my office she'd make straight for a mat of toys, then jump on the weighing scales. Her mother Amy worked as a librarian, and her father Simon stayed home to look after Billie.

Ear infections, chest infections, constipation, eczema – over the first couple of years I saw a fair amount of Billie. She stayed small for her age. If you measure the heights and weights of one hundred children, and plot them on charts, it's usual to show the 'normal' range as existing between the third-smallest and the third-largest child: the '3rd centile' and the '97th centile' respectively. Billie stayed around the 5th centile, at the lower end of the normal range. Billie's inquisitiveness remained with her – she was

bright at nursery, and once at school proved to be a precocious reader. Little was known about her birth parents.

I never had to visit Simon and Amy at home, and by the time Billie was six the frequency of her visits to the clinic dropped away. A year after I'd last seen her I received a questionnaire from a life insurance company for Amy. I rang up to see how they were all getting on: Simon told me that the infections had stopped bothering Billie, her eczema had settled down, and that she was no longer troubled with constipation.

A couple of years later, when Billie was eight, I saw her name on my clinic list again. She sat in the chair by my desk, swinging her legs and looking around as if remembering all those childhood visits. She was wearing unicorn-patterned trousers and a sweater printed with a kitten – her hair had darkened with age and she held it back in a ponytail. She looked about average size for her age – she must have been approaching the 50th centile. ‘I’ve come to ask you about her toes,’ said Amy, ‘the nails are growing in at the corners.’ Billie took off her trainers – she had glitter varnish on every toenail – and I showed her how to lift up the corners with pieces of cotton wool so they wouldn’t dig into the flesh. When I’d finished, and Billie had put her socks and trainers back on, Amy asked her to go and wait outside.

‘I wanted to speak to you on your own,’ Amy said as soon as the door was closed. ‘When is it normal to start puberty?’

‘Well, that depends...’ I began.

‘Because I was twelve before my periods started,’ Amy went on.

‘Has Billie had a period?’

‘No, not a period, but her breasts are starting to grow. She’s only eight!’

‘Has she any pubic hair yet?’ I asked her.

She shook her head. ‘No, thank goodness. It couldn’t be starting already, could it?’

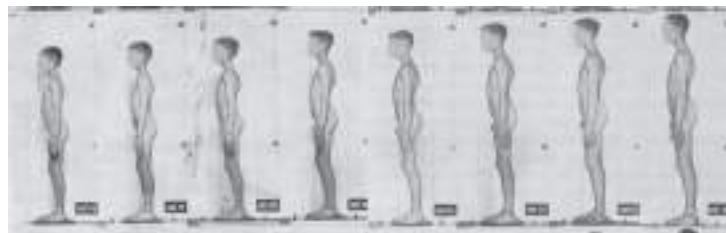
THE SEQUENCE AND TIMING of puberty was first worked out in the 1960s by James Tanner, a paediatrician at the Institute of Child Health in London, and his colleague W. A. Marshall. As a medical student I had to memorise the sequence, so as to be able to recognise when it went awry. No periods in a girl with mature bones suggested an underlying gynaecological problem; pubic hair before breast or testicle growth suggested a hormonal problem,

and so on.

My textbook in paediatrics carried cartoon drawings based on Tanner and Marshall's seminal papers, showing the progressive changes in boys' genitalia, girls' breasts and both sexes' pubic hair, alongside normal age ranges for each stage. According to Tanner, the photographs the cartoons were based on were taken at an orphanage called the Harpenden Children's Home just north of London – the focus of a study that had examined the growth of children since 1951. For two days every month throughout the period of the study one of Tanner's colleagues, R. H. Whitehouse, visited the children's home. Whitehouse took naked photographs of the boys and girls one at a time, making sure they were timed to capture images within fifteen days of their birthdays. In total each child was photographed twice yearly in childhood, and four times yearly as adolescents, because the rate of change in adolescence is so much greater; 192 girls and 228 boys took part.

It's not clear from Tanner's research publications how much choice the children had about taking part. It must have been an unsettling sight: scores of children queuing nervously for a room in which each had to strip for a photographer. Whitehouse worked 'at a rate of three or four per hour'. The photographs were taken as frontal and profile images, collated by name, and later assessed by Tanner and Marshall. 'The development of the secondary sex characters was studied in whole-body photographs,' wrote Tanner, 'By comparing each picture with the preceding one, changes in the genitalia and pubic hair could be readily recognized.'

But the images they gathered have been fundamental to the understanding of the way puberty evolves, and the medical understanding of how to intervene when it goes wrong. The two men classified pubertal development into five discrete stages, and created tables to facilitate the staging of development for the clinician. In the profile photographs each child was arranged to face their younger selves, as if looking back with longing towards their own childhood.



Arranged in sequence, the photographs stood as a cinematography of the transformations of puberty.



In the materials and methods section of their paper, Tanner and Marshall described all the participants as ‘white British’ and that ‘they had no physical abnormalities, and lived in small family groups in a children’s home where the standard of care was in all respects excellent’. Online, there are plenty of testimonies agreeing that Harpenden was an excellent institution, though you don’t have to look far to find poignant tales of unhappiness, as well as furious allegations of abuse. Socio-economically it was a skewed population; Tanner admitted that the children ‘came mainly from the lower socio-economic sector of the population, and some may not have received optimal physical care before entering the home (usually between age 3 and 6 years)’.

Being neglected as a child, and being of low birth weight, has been found in some studies to bring puberty forward through a mechanism that remains unknown, as if the human evolutionary response to a stressful childhood is to facilitate pregnancy in the next generation as quickly as possible. This process is known as ‘early life programming’; Tanner’s children may have entered puberty earlier than the average through this mechanism, and so weren’t representative of the general population. It’s well recognised that children like those at Harpenden who begin life in a resource-poor environment but move to be brought up in a resource-rich environment, go into puberty earlier than the natives of either environment that stayed put. The same process happens in plants – those that begin in

poor soil, and are then given richer soil, reproduce earlier and more abundantly. At the same time the *average* age of menarche or menophany – the age when girls first have a period – has dropped overall in the United States and in western Europe from around age seventeen in the mid-nineteenth century to age thirteen by the mid-twentieth, for reasons that are still unclear.*

BILLIE WAS YOUNG to show the earliest signs of puberty, but according to Tanner's charts her development was within the normal range – just as she was in the lowest centiles for height, she was in the lowest centiles for pubertal onset: the second, visible stage of breast development can be reached as early as eight and a half. Perhaps her life before adoption had influenced her early puberty, or perhaps her own birth mother had been the same.

It was a couple of years before I saw Billie in my office again – Amy told me before the appointment that she'd been teased at school for wearing a bra, and her first period had come just before her tenth birthday. She was now among the tallest in the class. She sat in the chair by my desk, big for her age, wearing dark, baggy jeans and a black hooded sweatshirt. She no longer swung her legs or looked interestedly around the room, but held her hands in the front pocket of the sweatshirt, her shoulders hunched forwards.

‘The first thing is her acne,’ said Amy; ‘you can see it on her forehead, and she’s getting it on her shoulders too.’ The skin was shiny and speckled with little pustules. Billie sank even further, if it was possible, into her chair.

‘I can help with that,’ I told her, and lightly tugged back the hood on the sweatshirt to have a closer look. ‘I’ll give you some lotions and if it’s no better within a couple of months let me know – there’s other things we can do.’ A glance of relief shot across Billie’s face, like sunlight between clouds, but she still didn’t say anything.

‘And then there’s her knees – she gets these terrible pains when she runs, or after sports in school,’ Amy said. ‘And they’ve got lumps on them too. Come on, Billie,’ she added with a hint of impatience, ‘show Dr Francis.’

Billie gave a sigh, and rolled up her jeans to show me her knees; she had hard, tender swellings on her shins just below the kneecaps.

‘That’s just because you’re growing so quickly just now,’ I said. ‘You can think of it as your bones growing faster than your tendons.’ I pulled over the skeleton that stands in my clinic room, and pointed out where the tendon from the kneecap attaches to the shin, and how its traction could pull up and irritate the bone. ‘It’s even got a name, this condition,’ I added, ‘Osgood-Schlatter’s disease.’ Billie snorted a laugh.

The growth rate of bones after babyhood through childhood is fairly constant, but the sex hormones of puberty accelerate that background rate. Tanner and Marshall showed that graphs of ‘height velocity’ throughout childhood take the shape of a ski jump, because the rapid growth of babyhood falls away only to shoot up again in early adolescence. Tanner and Marshall’s papers are a model of dispassionate clinical language, but occasionally a note of humanity breaks through, showing that they were concerned not only with their research, but with the anxieties that all teenagers feel around puberty: ‘All the girls in this study... had passed the peak of their height spurt before menstruation began,’ they wrote; ‘We can therefore confidently reassure the tall girl who has reached menarche at an early age that her growth is now slowing down.’ Tanner also acknowledged the institutionalised sexism of the 1950s with reference to a paper from the American psychologist L. K. Frank: ‘adolescence, at least in urban American girls, is a period of considerable stress and perplexity; [Frank] lays particular emphasis on the difficulty these girls find in accepting with satisfaction the feminine role.’

SEX HORMONES AFFECT the male breasts too – it’s not uncommon to have to reassure adolescent boys whose nipples are swollen and tender that they aren’t turning into girls. With time their symptoms almost always settle down. The first sign of puberty in boys is a loosening of their scrotum, giving way to an increase in the size of their testicles, and the first pubic hair. The enlarging testicles make more and more testosterone, which in turn drives other changes: an increase in the size of the penis, a darkening of the scrotal skin.

Pubic hair growth is driven not so much by testosterone, but by steroid hormones produced in the adrenal glands – that’s why it occurs in girls as much as it does in boys. Those same hormones also drive a change in the sweat glands: so-called ‘apocrine’ glands become active, which make oilier,

smellier secretions than the more watery sweat glands active in childhood (as anyone who has ever washed a teenager's socks will confirm). The same hormones bring an increased tendency for pores on the face, chest and shoulders to get plugged and infected, provoking eruptions of acne. In both sexes the larynx lengthens and broadens, deepening the voice, but in boys this deepening effect becomes more pronounced.

And the transformations of puberty entail more than just the visible: there are substantial changes in the brain. An increase in risk-taking behaviour and aggression in boys has been tentatively correlated to a delay in maturation of the pre-frontal areas of the cortex. It's thought that our capacities for abstract reasoning, and perception of social cues, go on improving into our twenties. For reasons that aren't quite clear, teenage brains recalibrate to a different, later, body clock: for the average teenager, 7 a.m. feels the same way for them as 5 a.m. does for someone middle-aged. In 1955 Tanner caricatured the folk wisdom about adolescence:

A picture is painted of the suddenly accelerated youth, staggering under the impact of his newly acquired hormones... Mutually incompatible drives and emotions are simultaneously aroused, many of which later become shed or repressed bit by bit as the individual chooses inevitably this path rather than that.

Or as the midwife I once worked with told me, they go somewhere you can't follow, but then they come back.

Many adolescents develop anxieties around body image that are intimately connected to the rapid transformations of their bodies. Tempestuous shifts in mood through adolescence are found across cultures, irrespective of wealth (though one study in the United States found that African Americans were uniquely protected against body image anxieties, for obscure reasons). Puberty can entail intense psychosocial upheaval, of questioning the choices and the wisdom of the adults around us – it becomes a fire through which some aspects of our childhood selves are burned away, while others are annealed into elements of our adult identity.

The final act in the drama of puberty is the closure of the growth plates of bone, the timing of which is the same across human populations

irrespective of ethnicity. Epiphyses fuse in a particular order – understanding the correct sequence is essential when reviewing X-rays in the emergency department so that, as a doctor, you can distinguish between a flake of bone chipped off through an injury, or a healthy flake of bone that has simply yet to fuse. Long bones, such as the femur or the humerus, may not fully fuse until age twenty-one, and in women, the pelvis may grow until as late as twenty-two.

When Charles Darwin began to think about puberty, he noticed how striking the delay in human puberty is in comparison with other primates – chimpanzees go into puberty between the ages of six and eight, and then reach full skeletal maturity a decade earlier than we do. It's thought that the slow growth of the human pelvis is one of the reasons women complete puberty with such wide pelvic outlets in comparison with the other primates. Human babies have the largest heads relative to body size of any mammals – without that late, long growth of the pelvis, we could never be born.

* In 1939 a Peruvian girl called Lina Medina became the youngest recorded mother, giving birth by caesarean section to a baby boy at the age of five years and eight months. Lina reportedly began menstruating at around a year old. Edmundo Escomel, ‘La plus jeune mère du monde’, *La Presse Médicale* vol. 47, no. 43, 1939, p. 875.

13

Pregnancy: The Most Meticulous Work

‘Good God!’ says he, ‘how snug and compleat it lies – I defy all our painters in St Martins lane to put a Child into such a situation.’

William Hogarth, on seeing the dissection of a foetus *in utero*

ULTRASOUND SCANS were first developed in Glasgow, by a professor of midwifery called Ian Donald who had heard of metalworkers using them to detect flaws in steel. The metalworkers would calibrate the ultrasound machines against their thumbs, because bone and flesh reflect sound waves differently. In the summer of 1955, Donald drove from Glasgow down to a boiler manufacturers in Renfrew, his car boot full of buckets of ovarian cysts and uterine tumours. He compared ultrasound images of the body parts with those he obtained from a slab of steak. Impressed with the results, he moved the machine out of the metallurgists’ workshop and into the clinic.

In 1958 he wrote up his findings in a paper called ‘The Investigation of Abdominal Masses by Pulsed Ultrasound.’ The sound waves worked as well to outline the dimensions of a baby’s skull as they did a cyst or a tumour, and Donald began refining the technique to monitor the growth and development of babies in the womb. Within a couple of decades his scanners were ubiquitous: I’ve seen cheap and simple machines used upcountry in East and West Africa, and in rural clinics in India. They’re

indispensable now for monitoring the growth and development of the baby, to identify the position of the placenta (if it is too near the cervix it risks rupture in labour). They're even used in the frenzy of delivery itself for a quick check of the baby's precise position.

The technology has moved on: it's possible these days to watch babies on ultrasound in three dimensions. The internet is suffused with these images; often the sonogram image is shown side by side with a photograph of the same baby hours after birth. Mothers bring printouts to my clinic: asteroidal contours pixelate against a black, starless background, reminiscent of images beamed back from deep space. But a closer inspection reveals them to be the most human of forms, beamed not from the reaches of the solar system but from the future.

Perhaps it's the glimpse of the future they grant that makes these images so enchanting, or perhaps it's because through most of human history the transformations of pregnancy have been hidden. There's something transgressive, even uncanny, about them. Though woven by sound, they offer silent promises of what is to come.

AS A JUNIOR DOCTOR working in obstetrics I'd be asked to help out in antenatal clinics: a dozen or so women, in various stages of pregnancy, seen across the span of a morning. There was an ultrasound scanner somewhere behind a curtain but it wasn't for routine use – it was enough to use faster more traditional methods of determining whether a pregnancy was proceeding well. The checks I was to perform have been standardised across the world, and are so formulaic that each woman brought a list of them to each appointment on a grid. Date of clinic visit was written on the vertical axis, and each check was given a box to be ticked along a horizontal. To complete an antenatal check, it was enough to work your way across the grid.

Pregnant women have an increased blood volume, their hearts beating for two (or three, in the case of twins), which may drive blood pressure up. Their pulse rate too can accelerate to cope, and a particularly elevated pulse hints at a problem. Kidneys can be affected, and I'd dip-test a bottle of urine to make sure that there was no blood or protein leaking out. I'd draw a blood sample from each patient to see if the haemoglobin and platelets were keeping up with the extraordinary demands being made on them: the blood

counts of most women drop during pregnancy, their blood diluted by the increased volume. And I'd ask them whether they were suffering from any of the customary complaints of pregnancy: nausea, backache, heartburn, or the bony pain of a stretching pelvis.

These checks were to gauge how much the effort of pregnancy was proving a strain on each woman's body; when they were complete I'd move on to check how the baby, or babies, were growing and changing in the womb. That new life may take root and, like some kind of magical fruit, begin to swell, is the most quotidian of marvels. But it *is* marvellous. It felt like a great privilege to chart that burgeoning change.

First to be assessed was the baby's 'lie' in the womb, trying to feel the weighty, solid roundness of a head, the curve of a spine, the smaller, softer and more mobile globe of a tiny rump. The further on the pregnancy the more significant the 'lie'; if the head was up ('breech'), a discussion would be opened with the midwives about whether to plan a caesarean or a vaginal delivery. Next I'd measure the 'height' of the womb itself, using nothing more advanced than a tape measure. Beyond the middle weeks of pregnancy, irrespective of size or ethnicity, the distance in centimetres, from the pubic bone to the uppermost extent of the womb correlates almost exactly to the number of weeks a woman has been pregnant. This correlation is so responsive that in the final weeks of pregnancy, when the baby's head drops deeper into the pelvis in preparation for labour I'd see a corresponding drop in this 'fundal height'.

In her elegant account of her own pregnancy, *Expecting*, Chitra Ramaswamy wrote of how comforting this element of the antenatal visit was for her:

How reassuring to feel the old-school pressure of its end against the top of my pubic bone, drawing me up as if I were a length of fabric. Pregnancy was meticulous work, as precise as a dress pattern, and my bump always measured within a centimetre or so of the number of weeks I was pregnant.

The unravelled tape measure would follow the *linea nigra* or 'black line' of pregnancy, in which the skin from pubis to umbilicus darkens with the

hormones of pregnancy. ‘It bisected my stomach like a ring around a planet or a veined streak of quartz encircling a pebble,’ wrote Ramaswamy, ‘evidence of a disturbance within. Some mysterious ancient change.’

The final phase of the antenatal check, listening to the baby’s heartbeat, was to be signed off on the grid with a scribbled ‘FHH’ – ‘foetal heart heard’ – a peremptory way to document something so auspicious. If foetal ultrasound images seem beamed from the future, so did these peculiar, mesmerising sounds: rapid, pristine heartbeats clattering above the stately bass of the mother’s own pulse.

AFTER BILLIE BAXTER’S precocious puberty I didn’t see her again until she was thirteen – having finished developing at an age when some boys have barely started. Amy brought her in. ‘Billie’s pregnant,’ she said bluntly, as soon as they’d sat down, her face haloed in anger. ‘I don’t know how it happened, and she’s certainly not telling.’ Billie sat hunched in the chair by my desk, face hooded, arms folded, gaze fixed on the floor. She didn’t know it, but she was mirroring her mum’s posture. ‘It doesn’t matter who he is,’ Billie said. ‘I’m not seeing him any more. You can’t make me get rid of it.’

‘Who’s going to look after the baby?’ Amy said, her voice beseeching, then menacing. ‘You can’t drop out of school at fourteen. For God’s sake, Billie!’ She looked across at me, pleading now. ‘I can’t be a grandmother! Not yet!’ Billie just folded her arms all the tighter. Her ex-boyfriend was fourteen, she said. She’d wanted to have sex with him. And she was going to have the baby.

In my area there are counsellors trained to support young women who’ve become pregnant in their teens, or need confidential advice about contraception. I picked up the phone and spoke to one of them – she gave me a time for Billie to attend the following day. I wrote the time and place on a slip of paper and handed it over, along with a prescription for some folic acid supplements. ‘If you’re sure you want to go ahead with this pregnancy, take one of these each day,’ I said, ‘they’re good for the baby.’ She sighed, took the prescription and stuffed it into her pocket.

The following day, the counsellor contacted me to say that Billie hadn’t shown up. I left a message, and in case she preferred to see a female doctor, left a time to come in and see one of my colleagues. But again, Billie didn’t

turn up.

I spoke with Simon and Amy: they were both furious with Billie, and thought her decision more about being wilful and obstinate than about expressing a genuine desire for motherhood. Otherwise, the pregnancy was going well: she had a touch of nausea, was sleeping more than usual, but was still making it in to school. Her parents thought that she was taking the folic acid I'd given. Billie was early in pregnancy for review by the midwives, but there was a new scheme – one-to-one support for teenage mums, throughout pregnancy and for the first couple of years. It was called the 'Family Nurse Partnership'; an idea planted in the United States in the early 1980s, recently sown in Scotland. Extra funding meant there was more midwife and nurse time to spend with the young pregnant women, and to support them. It encouraged healthier pregnancies, better language development for babies, better school outcomes for their mums, fewer subsequent pregnancies, and a dramatic improvement in keeping fathers engaged. The nurses and midwives of the scheme would liaise with Billie's teachers, and start preparing her for what it would be like to be heavily pregnant at thirteen, and care for a baby at fourteen.

The partnership arranged an ultrasound scan: the pregnancy was about twelve weeks on, and the baby a strong, healthy girl.

Billie was seen regularly by the nurses of the partnership, but eight weeks passed before I saw her back in clinic. Her lower back was beginning to hurt, she said, and she wanted a medical letter excusing her from gym class. 'How is it all going?' I asked.

'Fine,' she said, and for the first time in years looked directly at me.

'Did you have your twenty-week scan yet?'

'It was amazing,' she said, her face brightening. 'Sometimes I just can't believe that there's a new person inside, waiting to come out.' She put both hands on her belly, regarding it with an expression of fear mingled with pride. 'It's incredible when I can feel her moving inside me.'

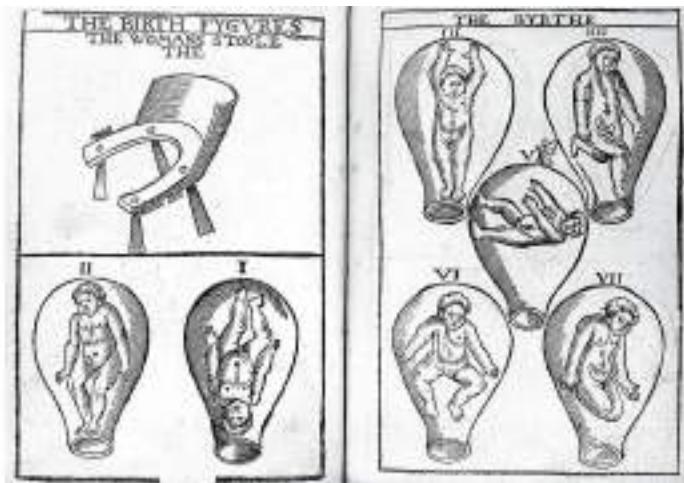
'And your mum and dad? How are they getting used to the idea?'

Her face fell.

FOR MILLENNIA, knowledge about midwifery care must have been passed orally between women, but rarely written down. The few writings that have survived from the classical period, written by men, suggest they understood

little about pregnancy. ‘If a woman is pregnant with twins and either breast loses its fullness she will miscarry one,’ says one of the Hippocratic treatises, ‘if the right breast it will be the male child, or if the left, the female.’ Some women *are* alerted they are going to miscarry by a sudden easing of breast tenderness, but in Hippocrates, that observation is conflated with senseless ideas about twins.

By the Middle Ages, manuals of midwifery began to show how babies might be positioned within the womb in late pregnancy, in order to give some guidance as to how they might be helped out. The images were schematic and poorly drawn, but they at least acknowledged that the growth of babies is not the stuff of miracles, but of material facts – a matter of anatomy and physiology. Men and women both were beginning to imagine what they might be feeling when they put their hands on a pregnant belly. One of the first to have useful images was an early sixteenth-century textbook called *The Byrth of Mankynde*, written by Eucharius Roesslin. It tabulated the different ‘lies’ of a baby in the womb, and offered advice about how best to deliver the baby in each case.

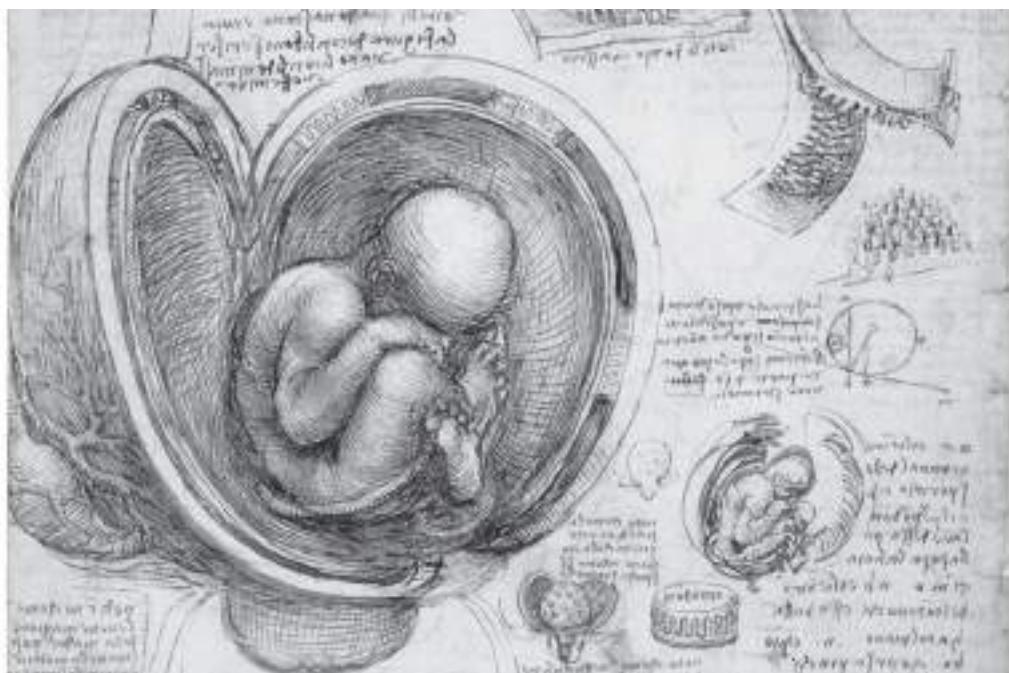


South of the Alps, Roesslin’s contemporary Leonardo da Vinci was working on a far more accurate vision. Earlier in his career, he’d sketched out the ways in which he wanted to approach the mystery of new life and its development:

... begin with the conception of man, and [then] describe the nature of the womb and how the foetus lives in it, up to what stage it resides

there, and in what way it quickens into life and feeds. Also its growth and what interval there is between one stage of growth and another. What it is that forces it out from the body of the mother.

Leonardo thought that a baby did not receive its own soul until birth ('the same soul governs the two bodies... the things desired by the mother are often found impressed on the members of the child'), but others of his contemporaries believed it was somehow funnelled in from God at the 'quickening', when a pregnant woman began feeling movements within the womb – usually around twenty weeks. His *Study for the Foetus in the Womb* was made from a dissection he made of a woman who'd died at around this stage of pregnancy. Just as his images of coitus and conception prefigured those now obtainable with MRI scans, his images of the foetus in the womb are a hint of the 3D technology to come.



THE TRANSFORMATIONS OF PREGNANCY are as much social as physical: the pregnant woman's belly becomes a kind of unwilling public property, and her choices a matter of open debate. Strange hands assume licence to poke and prod; others may tut-tut disapprovingly if she dares drink coffee in public, never mind wine. Pregnancy illuminates with an unforgiving light

how much society pries into women's bodies with more intensity, and with harsher judgement, than it does men's. Virginia Woolf skewered this disapproval in *Orlando*: 'the better to conceal the fact; the great fact; the only fact; but, nevertheless, the deplorable fact; which every modest woman did her best to deny until denial was impossible; the fact that she was about to bear a child'. But there's a flip side to the public scrutiny of pregnancy which shows itself in a kind of wonder – a spellbound reification of the pregnant woman. For all our scientific understanding, an enchantment persists about new life forming within the body of another. Those intrusive hands may be hoping for some magic to rub off on them.

Margaret Atwood's *The Handmaid's Tale* describes a dystopian society in which fertility has plummeted, and women are subjugated as reproductive slaves. Atwood conveys both the sense of wonder that pregnancy inspires as well as the opprobrium meted out to many pregnant women. One of the captive women, Ofwarren, walks triumphantly into a shop frequented by the other handmaidens, her belly swollen like a 'huge fruit'. Ofwarren's hands lie over the dome of her abdomen as if protecting it, but also as if she hopes to absorb something of its vigour. The other women murmur excitedly; they long to touch her even as she glances haughtily at their own flat bellies. The tension in the room builds until one of the women mutters 'show-off'. Chitra Ramaswamy captures this strange mingling of admiration with resentment: 'How people stared, particularly women, with a deep, almost male gaze that bore an unnerving resemblance to lust,' she writes of the later stages of pregnancy. 'I began to realise that they weren't really looking at me at all. To be pregnant was to be a kind of mirror. Women, especially, wanted to see themselves in you.'

LEONARDO'S IMAGES of how the foetus lies in the womb weren't surpassed until the 1750s. The Scottish anatomist William Hunter saw the original folios among the Royal Collection in Windsor, and conceived an ambition to better them. Hunter was Queen Charlotte's personal physician, a celebrity doctor and a Fellow of the Royal Society. He recognised how much progress Leonardo had made towards comprehending the changes of pregnancy, but also how much more there still was to understand. With a Dutch illustrator called Jan van Rymsdyk, then famous in London circles for the grace and precision of his illustrations, he began work on his

magnum opus, the anatomical work for which he's still best remembered: *The Anatomy of the Human Gravid Uterus*. Hunter had many enemies, was by report an insufferable narcissist, and was often accused of taking credit for others' work. Rymdyk later said of him, 'it is a dishonest mean cunning, in making one self a great Man with other People's Merit'. But the work the two men created is one of clear-sighted vision, a fusion of Enlightenment science with an aesthetic sensibility reminiscent of the Dutch masters. It's a lesson in how scientific discovery can be a close cousin of art, and how much beauty can be revealed through anatomy.

The original drawings that Hunter made with Rymdyk are held at the library of the University of Glasgow. I phoned ahead for an appointment – they're held in black, sepulchral boxes, and the staff need a few days' notice to bring them up from the archives. Each of the boxes needs its own table, and when they came up I saw that each was marked 'RESTRICTED'. Opening them, I found seventy-two drawings across thirty-four mounted plates. It was necessary to handle them with gloves, slowly lifting each image from the box as if unearthing them.

Hunter's interest was in relieving obstructed labour, and so his emphasis was on the final months of pregnancy. 'I was so fortunate as to meet with a Gravid Uterus,' he wrote cynically to a correspondent in February 1751, 'to which, from that time, all the hours have been dedicated.' The drawings are composed from about a score of these 'meetings'; they move backwards through a sequence of women prematurely dead, from full-term pregnancy to the days following conception. Rymdyk's illustrations are of William Hunter's own dissections, as well as those of his brother John – the three men likely worked at times in the same space. Hunter's attitude to the dissected women is betrayed by his correspondence, and sounds shocking to modern ears. But in eighteenth-century London around one in fifty pregnancies ended in the mother's death. For Hunter, the death of a pregnant woman was routine; he was driven by scientific curiosity to understand pregnancy, but also by the imperative to reduce maternal deaths. Prints of engravings were produced for the education of clinicians all over the Anglophone world.

The Special Collections department of Glasgow University Library is on the twelfth floor; as I spread Rymdyk's drawings across four tables I looked out over the city, and realised that I was within a few hundred yards

of the lab where Ian Donald developed ultrasound. The foetal images hadn't faded; the babies were so lifelike it seemed scarcely possible they were drawn in death.

The printed edition of the engravings is dedicated to Hunter's sovereign George III, and attempts to impress upon the king the significance of his highly unconventional work:

Sir, this work had no other claim to the honour with which it is distinguished by YOUR MAJESTY, than as it illustrates one part of science hitherto imperfectly understood, it contains the foundation of another part of science, on which the lives and happiness of millions must depend.

Consistent with his interest in reducing maternal death, rather than understanding foetal development, Hunter often dismisses the baby with statements such as: 'The Foetus, with two turns of the navel-string round its neck, requires no explanation.' But Rymsdyk devotes great attention to the foetuses. Plate I shows the skin of the abdomen folded back like a mantle, the bulge of the womb filling the centre ground. Plate VI shows the same womb opened: a term baby in position, left arm extended, fingers curled as if plucking at strings. Her hair is stuck down with amniotic fluid as if sweating at the exertion of being born, or of dying.

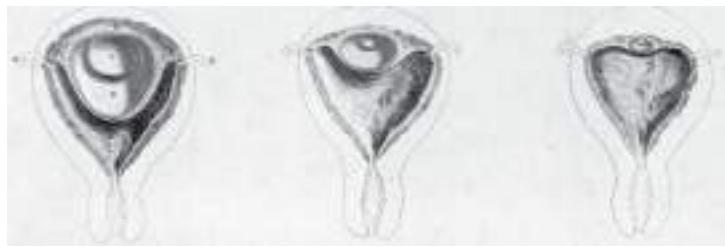


Plate XX shows a baby in breech position, fingertips touched lightly together. In one drawing made at around eighteen weeks of pregnancy, the detail is such that you can make out the window frame behind Rymdyk, reflected on the shiny amniotic membrane. The membranes have been peeled back so carefully that the amniotic fluid is undisturbed; we look down with the artist on the baby floating in the liquid. Of this fluid, Hunter wrote: ‘To the taste it is always very sensibly saltish: and a considerable quantity of common salt may be obtained by evaporating a large quantity of liquor’ – like a fragment of the sea carried inside.



Some of the illustrations show the pelvis seen lengthways, like Leonardo's couple in coitus. Others have been drawn looking up at the swollen dome of the womb from between the thighs, as a midwife or obstetrician would gauge the progress of labour.

The final plate of Rynsdyk and Hunter's *The Anatomy of the Gravid Uterus* shows the sac of the embryo in reducing size – a shrinking crystal in a droplet of dew – retreating to its own conception.



SIMON AND AMY came around to the idea of being grandparents. Billie went into labour at forty-one weeks – only slightly overdue, but normal for a first pregnancy. She went through twenty-six hours of agony, a perineal tear, stitches, haemorrhage, transfusions, and delivery with the help of forceps. She might have appeared to have completed puberty, but her pelvis still had years to grow; if she'd lived a century earlier, she would almost certainly have died.

But she gave birth to a healthy baby girl, called the baby Danielle, and, as Amy had predicted, went back to school while Amy and Simon took on the job of being parents. I had *déjà vu*: Simon or Amy back regularly in clinic, a child bouncing on his or her knee, asking me about wheezes, fevers, rashes and feeding.

'It suits us you know, being a family of four,' Amy said to me one day, with Danielle in her arms. 'I didn't expect it to, but it does.'

'And Billie? How is she getting on?' I asked.

She shrugged. 'She plays with her a little bit, will pass me a nappy if I'm in the middle of changing her, but she never speaks about the pregnancy. It's like it never happened.' She looked down at Danielle, smiled at her and tickled her toes. 'I'm keeping a close eye on this one though,' she said; 'I don't want to be back here in a few years with a great-grandchild.'

14

Gigantism: Two Giants of Turin

Really, there must be some energizing element in the air here – to be at home here will make one king of Italy.

Friedrich Nietzsche, *Selected Letters*

TURIN: A NORTHERN ITALIAN, French-inflected city of boulevards, *settecento* palaces, varnished wood and polished brass; of plane trees, promenades and the river Po. Of Alps visible on three horizons, Primo Levi's suicide, and Friedrich Nietzsche's madness. Before his breakdown Nietzsche wrote of it: 'Here day after day dawns with the same boundless perfection and plenitude of sun: the glorious foliage in glowing yellow, the sky and the big river delicately blue, the air of greatest purity... In every way, life is worth living here.'

Turin's Museum of Human Anatomy is behind an inconspicuous wooden door off one of the city's grandest boulevards, up three flights of marble stairs. There are no windows; the smells are of floor polish and plaster, with a hint of formalin. Columns of stone are interleaved with vitrines of dark lacquered wood. I worked once in Edinburgh's Anatomical Museum, arranging collections of specimens for display, and Turin's museum felt familiar. It too was built up in the 1800s, by obsessive categorisers – part educational institute, part wonder-house. Skulls of Etruscans jostle with the skulls of apes. There are pickled hands and feet;

twenty feet of coiled, preserved intestine; decapitated Peruvian mummies; wax models of the female pelvis with an erotic attention to detail. As in Edinburgh, phrenology heads sit side by side with the death masks of celebrities; wax models illustrate the development of the embryonic heart. Both museums are preoccupied with comparative anatomy – the natural world ransacked in the attempt to conjure order from the commotion of Life.

In Edinburgh, you're met at the door by the skeleton of a hanged murderer,^{*} and in Turin you're met by the skeleton of a giant. Giacomo Borghello of Liguria was seven feet two inches tall when he died in 1829, at just nineteen years old. The plaque didn't mention it, but I asked the attendant how he died: he'd been employed in a circus, she said, and his cause of death was given as 'heart failure'. Borghello's mortal remains, yellowed as parchment, are suspended in a cabinet, and my head reached not much higher than his pelvis. His skull was undersized in comparison with his gigantic limbs, and the growth plates ('epiphyses') at the end of each long bone were not even beginning to fuse. Something was driving Borghello's enormous growth even as it killed him.

The attendants of Turin's museum wouldn't allow it, but I would have liked to glance inside his skull, just between and behind the eyes, at the place where the pituitary gland nestles. The pituitary produces the hormone that drives growth; the recess in the skull where it fits is named the *sella turcica* or 'Turkish saddle', because early modern anatomists noticed its similarity to the high-pommelled saddles of the Ottoman cavalry. In producing so much growth hormone Borghello's pituitary was likely to have been swollen, and his *sella turcica* wider than usual to accommodate it.^{*}

IN TURIN I ALSO WENT to visit Piazza Carlo Alberto, where the philosopher Nietzsche lived in the late 1880s: 'the only suitable place for me,' he said of it; 'it shall be my home henceforward'. On one of the piazza's corners I found a laudatory plaque, erected on the centenary of Nietzsche's birth. Engraved in marble, it was a hymn to gigantism of the mind: 'In this house Friedrich Nietzsche knew the fullness of spirit that tempts the unknown, the will to dominion that calls forth the hero.'

Nietzsche wrote his autobiography *Ecce Homo* in Turin, during three

frantic weeks in October and November of 1888.[†] In it, he describes feeling as heroic as a polar explorer: ‘The ice is near, the solitude is terrible – but how peacefully all things lie in the light! How freely one breathes!’ Nietzsche saw himself as a giant among dwarves: *Ecce Homo* has section headings called ‘Why I am so wise’, ‘Why I am so clever’, ‘Why I write such excellent books’.

Nietzsche felt that it was his duty as a philosopher to encourage mankind to expand perspective and strive to become *Übermensch*, variously translated as ‘Overman’, ‘Beyond-man’ or ‘Superman’. These ‘supermen’ included philosophers such as Montaigne and Aristotle, and were rare in the history of humanity. Nietzsche imagined them as fellow members of a ‘republic of creative minds’, ‘each giant calling to his brother through the desolate intervals of time... undisturbed by the wanton noises of the dwarfs that creep past beneath them’.

In a section of what he considered his finest work, *Thus Spake Zarathustra*, a thinly disguised Nietzsche carries a dwarf up a mountain to show him the breadth and nobility of his vision. The dwarf finds the vision incomprehensible. Nietzsche makes an explicit correlation between exalted physical stature and exalted mental perspective, then compares that exaltation with the tininess of most human concerns. He seems to be refuting the old saying, repeated by scholars from the twelfth-century John of Salisbury to Isaac Newton, that academics are simply dwarves who see far ‘because they have stood on the shoulders of giants’. On the contrary, Nietzsche maintained that he could see far because he was a giant of the mind.

In the autumn of 1888 Nietzsche wrote of ‘a supreme feeling of pride which nothing could equal’, articulating his sense of ‘the disparity which obtains between the greatness of my task, and the smallness of my contemporaries.’ His expansive sense of himself and his mission continued to grow.

THE PITUITARY GLAND is the strategic command of several of the body’s hormonal systems: it is essential not only for growth but also for healing, sex, birth, lactation, response to trauma and maintenance of equilibrium. It sits on the margins between body and brain. In the embryo, the gland begins as a pouch at the back of the throat; it migrates up and back into its saddle-

like position beneath the cranial vault between week four and week six of gestation. There it takes in nerves, and fuses with a small outgrowth from the brain that becomes its posterior half.

Through secretion of TSH, or ‘thyroid stimulating hormone’, the pituitary controls the body’s metabolic rate by calibrating the release of thyroxine, another hormone, from a gland in the neck. Failure of the gland to respond is the cause of one of the more common hormonal transformations: with an underactive thyroid we gain weight, lose hair, feel sluggish and shiver with cold in a warm room. With an overactive thyroid the converse is true: we lose weight, tremble with agitation and feel hot even in a cold room. The thyroid is intimately connected to how active we are – in ancient Rome, mothers would allegedly measure the neck circumference of their daughters after they’d spent an evening with a man, because sexual encounters cause the gland to swell.

The pituitary also secretes LH and FSH, ‘luteinizing hormone’ and ‘follicle stimulating hormone’, which control the testes and ovaries, sexual differentiation, ovulation and the generation of sperm. Through prolactin the pituitary drives the production of milk in the breasts (among other things) and through ACTH, ‘adrenocorticotropic hormone’, it controls the production of natural steroids. But it is the pituitary’s secretion of growth hormone that drives the lengthening of bones and determines the height we attain.

The response of the long bones to growth hormone is time-limited – once the growth plates have fused at the close of puberty, they ignore the pituitary’s command to grow. But if the pituitary gland goes on producing growth hormone after fusion of the growth plates, other parts of the body can still respond: the heart thickens and blood pressure rises; the jaw lengthens, the forehead becomes embossed, the hands, feet and nose swell. This constellation of changes is called ‘acromegaly’, or ‘swelling of the extremities’. It may come as a consequence of untreated gigantism in adolescence, or it may arise in adulthood, if production of growth hormone surges (usually due to a pituitary tumour) later in life.

The transformation of acromegaly happens so slowly that for the most part it’s hardly noticed by close family and friends – usually it’s only after an absence of months that the change becomes obvious. But those familiar with its distinctive features may spot it at once: I knew a hormone specialist

who recognised evolving acromegaly in the barista from whom he bought his morning coffee. The barista handed over his coffee one morning, and my colleague handed over a business card and, scrawled on it, a clinic appointment.

Since the mid-twentieth century it's been technically possible to treat both acromegaly and gigantism with either surgery to the pituitary gland or drugs to block growth hormone's effects – or both. It's necessary too: Borghello's heart wasn't unusual in giving out at nineteen, overwhelmed by the challenge of pumping blood to such a colossal frame, while being pathologically thickened both by growth hormone itself and by his elevated blood pressure. A swollen pituitary can cause other problems, such as blindness, which is caused by the squeezing of the optic nerves. It's as if, as human beings, our stature is calibrated to stay within a particular range. Beyond that range, life becomes difficult to sustain.

IN *ECCE HOMO*, Nietzsche wrote that he felt ‘certain at each moment of my immortality’. It was to be among his last writings. On 3 January 1889 he came upon a horse being flogged just a few yards from his front door on Piazza Carlo Alberto. He rushed to embrace and protect it, then fell sobbing, arms around the horse’s neck, before being carried back to his quarters by his landlord. Over subsequent days he wrote a series of crazed letters to his usual correspondents, including Richard Wagner’s wife Cosima (‘Ariadne, I love you’), and Fräulein von Salis (‘The world is transfigured, for God is on earth. Do you not see how all the heavens rejoice? I have just now taken possession of my kingdom, am casting the Pope into prison.’). He signed these letters as ‘Dionysus’ or ‘the crucified one’. Franz Overbeck, a Protestant theologian and close friend, recognised that Nietzsche’s customary arrogance had given way to something more sinister, so he came to Turin and arranged to transfer him to an asylum in Basel.

In Basel, Nietzsche shuffled between psychiatric clinics and his mother’s house for a decade, before succumbing to pneumonia, probably precipitated by a series of strokes. His madness has variously been attributed to syphilis, bipolar illness, a benign brain tumour, and a disorder of the cerebral arteries. He never again wrote anything of significance. It was as if the will to dominate, to be a giant among dwarves, contained

within it the catalyst for his own destruction.

OPPOSITE BORGHELLO'S SKELETON in Turin there is a diminutive skeleton with all its growth plates fused: not the skeleton of a child, but an adult with arrested growth. The museum's description reads '*un esempio di nanismo armonico*' – 'an example of harmonic dwarfism'; though small, the body is in standard if childlike proportion. In life, this individual lacked the human growth hormone of which Borghello had a surfeit.

Within flexible limits society gives advantage to those who are bullish and self-confident, as it does to those who are above average height. In his book *Size Matters*, the science journalist Stephen Hall comments on his own experience as a man of five feet five and three-quarter inches: we live in an altocracy. Hall quotes the perspective of an eighteenth-century German physician, Johann Augustin Stoller: 'Nobility of soul accompanies tallness of body.' Sociologists tell us that tall people are consistently deemed more intelligent, congenial, reliable and authoritative, and Hall points out that in US presidential elections, the taller of the two candidates usually wins.*

Once a patient of mine who lived on one of the wealthiest streets in Edinburgh brought her daughter to my clinic to request referral to a growth specialist. 'She's stopped growing, and she's only five foot,' she said. Molly had been the first in her class to enter puberty, and now, aged fourteen, was being overtaken by all of her classmates. Both her parents were below average height.

When people believe modern medicine to be capable of miracles, I try to take it as testimony of just how accustomed we have become to its success. But I had to tell her that, in this case, medicine had nothing to offer: 'There's nothing wrong,' I told Molly as kindly as I could, 'and no reason for a referral.' I plotted out her height on a centile chart and showed her where she stood: 'The height at which you stop growing is related to your own parents' heights, your nutrition in childhood, and your age at puberty. If you start the growth spurt of puberty early, you stop growing earlier too.' Even if growth hormone had been indicated it was now too late – the growth plates of Molly's long bones were already beginning to fuse.*

The use of growth hormones as a treatment for short stature has had the unintended effect of medicalising natural variation in height. Growth

hormone secretion from the pituitary gland peaks at night, and treatment with artificial hormone is given as an injection under the skin every evening, within an hour of going to bed. In those who most need it the effect can be dramatic: one or two inches may be gained within six months of treatment, and one or two shoe sizes.

Until the 1980s, the hormone was extracted from the pituitary glands of cadavers, but it's now synthesised artificially in the laboratory. Even so, the process is complex and sophisticated – human growth hormone is one of the most expensive treatments in medicine. At the time of writing, a course may cost three or four times the average UK annual salary, and those with a normally functioning pituitary can expect to gain an inch in height at best. But if Hall is right, and height is so directly correlated to economic success, then even the vast costs of human growth hormone treatment could prove a worthwhile (if ethically dubious) investment.

TO BE PERSUADED to leave Turin, Nietzsche had to be drugged with sedatives, and cajoled into believing that Switzerland was putting on a state visit in celebration of his new royal status. On the train north he sang songs and proclaimed himself king of Italy.^{*}[†]

If only he'd paid more attention to some of his favourite philosophers: Aristotle believed that virtue lay in finding the balance between extremes; Montaigne warned against hankering after physical or intellectual stature. One of Montaigne's famous essays, 'Of Moderation', advises human beings to stay within 'the fair and beaten way that nature has traced for us'. He suggests temperance even in philosophy, and offers a passage that could stand as a critique of Nietzsche's own grandiloquent claims: 'In the end [philosophy] renders a man brutish and vicious, a condemner of religion and the common laws.' In another essay he warns against an obsessive preoccupation with height: 'A man of low stature is as much a man as a giant; neither men nor their lives are measured by the ell.'

* William Hare, of 'Burke and Hare', who were paid for their murder victims by the Edinburgh anatomist Robert Knox.

^{*} Pituitary' means 'snot'; early anatomists thought that the gland channelled mucus.

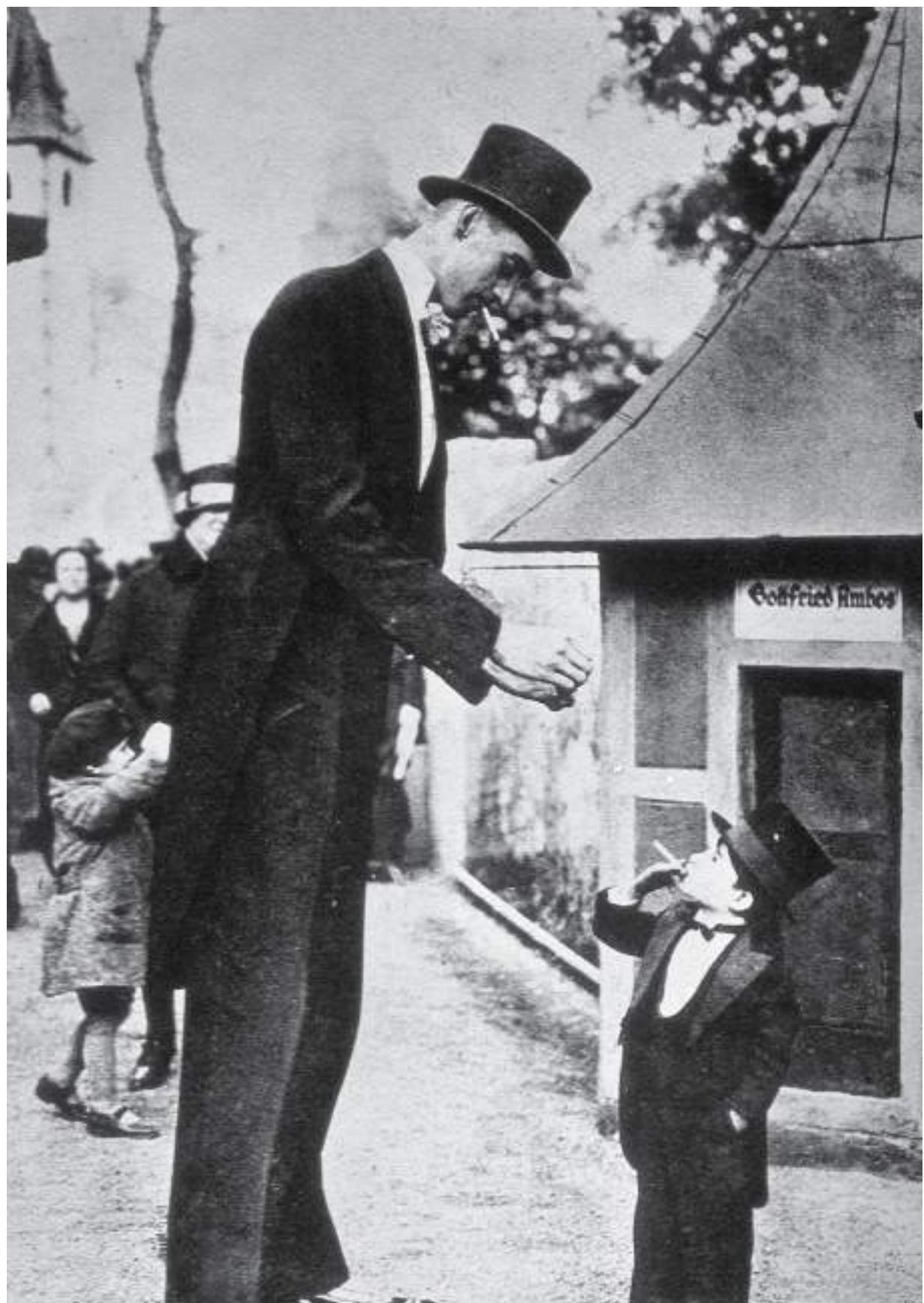
[†] 'Ecce Homo' are Pontius Pilate's words on releasing Jesus of Nazareth to the mob: 'Behold The

Man'.

* There are exceptions: George W. Bush managed to beat John Kerry, and Jimmy Carter beat Gerald Ford.

* Though as discussed in ‘Puberty’, her pelvis would still have some years to grow.

* Overbeck says that he sang the ‘wonderfully beautiful gondola song’ reproduced in *Ecce Homo*: ‘And my soul, a stringed instrument,/ Sang, touched by invisible hands,/ To itself a secret gondola song,/ Trembling with all the colours of bliss.’ See also *Selected Letters of Friedrich Nietzsche*, Christopher Middleton, trans., p. 354.





15

Gender: The Two Lives of Tiresias

We must acknowledge this Androgynal condition in man.

Thomas Browne, *Pseudodoxia Epidemica*

AT MEDICAL SCHOOL in the mid-1990s, my paediatric training took place in a Victorian hospital in Edinburgh called the ‘Sick Kids’. But it began before birth, so to speak, in the modern maternity unit a short stroll away across the park. It was there in the obstetric hospital that I was obliged to learn how to deliver babies, as well as gain an understanding of the many perils that attend the first few minutes of life. When I’d been signed off as competent to assist births, the next stage in training followed the newborn babies into an adjoining neonatal unit.

The babies we admitted were often mortally ill and critically underweight, but one day there was an unusual admission: a perfectly healthy nine-pound newborn. In the moments after birth, when its parents had cried out to ask if it was a boy or a girl, the midwife had gasped, ‘I don’t know!’ The baby had ambiguous genitalia, a small penis as well as a vagina. He or she was robust and feeding well – no metabolic or hormonal problems were causing the ambiguity. The only reason to stay in the hospital was to figure out whether ‘she’ really was a ‘he’, or vice versa. The importance placed on the distinction was implicit even in the name bands we wrapped around the babies’ wrists. These were usually colour-coded

pink or blue, but the new baby was given one of white. The parents were anxious and bewildered, and only became more so when the attending neonatologist began to speak of blood tests, scans and gonadal biopsies.

Later that day, I walked back across the park to the library at the Sick Kids and looked up ‘Disorders of sexual differentiation’ in the textbooks. ‘Ambiguity of the external genitalia at the time of birth causes great distress for the parents,’ I read. ‘Sensitive explanation is vital.’ It was estimated that one in 2,000 babies manifest some degree of genital ambiguity, and as regards the tests: ‘Complete diagnostic evaluation requires special expertise as it has to consider the long-term functional role of the individual as well as the precise gender.’ The book went on to explain that the vast majority of babies with ambiguous genitalia fall into two broad groups. Intersex babies could turn out to be genetically female – with two X chromosomes – but their clitorises had swelled to the size of small penises because of a hormonal condition generating unusually high levels of testosterone-like hormones (androgens) while still in the womb. But there were also genetic males – possessing an X and a Y chromosome – whose developing genitalia had proven partially insensitive to testosterone, or who hadn’t been able to generate adequate amounts of the hormone to physically differentiate. As human beings, our default form is female – if the bodies of XY babies don’t sense androgens in their blood, they develop short, blind-ended vaginas with a clitoris instead of a penis.

There was a third category in the textbook – ‘true hermaphrodites’: these were babies born with both testicular and ovarian tissue, and small penises as well as wombs and vaginas. Highly improbable events had to coincide for this to happen, and there were several ways in which it could come about. The most likely is that a ‘male’ sperm carrying a single ‘Y’ chromosome, and a ‘female’ sperm carrying a single ‘X’ chromosome, fertilise an egg that has just divided, then those two fertilised eggs fuse together. The bodily tissues of these ‘true hermaphrodites’ are a tessellation of male and female cells, and are known in medical jargon as ‘mosaics’. Mosaicism has been known since at least the 1930s, but it wasn’t until the late 1950s that it was realised this phenomenon could lead to hermaphroditism.

The textbook said, in clear but insensitive style, that ‘a genetic male with functioning testes but feminized external genitalia is better reared as a

girl.' I wondered how they could be so sure.

It took a few days to sort out all the blood tests and scans – days in which the parents, in the interests of neutrality, referred to the baby as Sam. Names might tolerate ambiguity, but the deeply gendered nature of language meant that no one could figure out which pronouns to use. 'It' seemed grossly insensitive, but 'he' or 'she' might prove incorrect.* Sam was gloriously oblivious, breastfeeding well and putting on weight.

When all the results were put together, they implied that Sam had rare, 'true' hermaphroditism: a mosaic of male and female cells had given rise to elements of both sexes. As well as a penis and vagina, Sam had a womb as well as a fallopian tube leading from an ovary on the left side, but on the right there was a buried testicle, and a vas deferens, the duct that in adulthood conveys sperm from the testicle to the urethra.

In the 1990s in Edinburgh, there wasn't a great deal of sensitivity around gender ambiguity, and the possibility of raising Sam as neither male nor female – being dressed in green or red instead of pink or blue – didn't appear to arise. The very nature of the English language seemed to demand a decision. 'She's a girl,' Sam's mother decided finally, once we had explained the findings of the tests, 'Sam is Samantha.' What would be done about her penis was left for a later decision. Her bald little head was immediately decorated with a flowery headband. Her cot-side filled up with pink cards, frilly blankets, and heart-shaped balloons.

SAM WAS LIVING, thriving proof that there's more to men and women than X and Y chromosomes, but modern western culture, and in particular western medicine, often struggles with ambiguity and androgyny. Through most of the twentieth century, medical orthodoxy held to the line articulated in my paediatric textbook: boys without male genitals (absent either because of a developmental anomaly, or consequent to an accident) could simply be raised as girls. But it was increasingly noted that in adolescence, many of these individuals began to express discomfort with the gender allocated to them. Early hormonal exposure seemed to have a role in determining later identity. It was noticed, too, that XX babies raised as boys because of their enlarged clitorises reported high levels of preference for identifying as women. One study from 2005 put this proportion at 12 per cent, while the proportion of XY babies raised as girls, but who later identified as male,

was lower at 5 per cent.

Modern medicine is only now getting to grips with these fluid ideas of gender identity, but thousands of years ago, in the philosophy and mythology of the Greeks, these concepts were already being explored. Plato's *Symposium* tells of the contribution of the playwright Aristophanes to an earnest discussion about love. In the beginning there were three sexes, he says, not two: male, female and androgynous. Each consisted of four hands, four feet, two sets of genitals and two faces gazing in opposite directions. Those beings wholly male came from the sun, those all female came from the earth, and those in whom male and female parts coexisted came from the moon.

All three groups of these original, powerful beings began to threaten the gods, so Zeus split them down the middle 'as you might divide an egg with a hair', doubling their numbers but condemning each to search forever for his or her other half. Those who were once androgynous became heterosexuals, useful for breeding but prone to adultery. Those who were all-woman became lesbians and those who were all-man became homosexual men ('the best of boys and youths, for they have the most manly nature'). Aristophanes was a comic playwright, and seems to have anticipated being mocked for his ideas. 'This is my discourse of love,' he says in the *Symposium*, 'which, although different to yours, I must beg you to leave unassailed by the shafts of your ridicule.'

From the ancient world through to the Renaissance, there are plenty of examples in medical and other writings in which men and women are thought of less as opposites than as sharing essential characteristics, and capable of changing sides. From the anatomies of Aristotle and Galen, to the speculations of Thomas Browne, for most of scientific history, transition between female and male was thought of not just as possible but as expected from time to time. Only about 200 or 300 years ago, with the hardening rationalism of the Enlightenment, did this fluidity give way.

Another Greek story, the myth of the prophet Tiresias, attests to a fascination with gender flexibility. As a young man, Tiresias was walking in the forest when he came upon a pair of mating snakes – a symbol of bisexuality and an omen of ill luck. Instead of rushing away from the misfortune, 'he struck them across their backs'. The female snake was killed, and Tiresias was transformed instantly into a woman. Snakes were

symbolic of transformation because they periodically shed their skins, and in her new skin Tiresias became a prostitute in Thebes, and later a mother. After seven years, she came upon mating snakes again, and this time struck the male, and was promptly returned to male form.

Ovid follows the tale of Tiresias with a bawdy, barroom story about Zeus and his wife Hera having an argument over whether men or women had the greatest pleasure during sex. As the only ancient transsexual, Tiresias was called in to adjudicate, and testified that if sexual pleasure consists of ten parts then women enjoy nine-tenths and man enjoys one part only. It's an odd tale, and given the assertion that only about one-third of women in western culture reach climax during heterosexual intercourse, perhaps says more about male anxieties than it does about sexual realities.

TARIK TOLD ME that he had known from a young age that he should have been born a girl. He was neither straight nor gay, and he couldn't remember ever being interested in sex. As a boy, he'd been more interested in Barbie than in Action Man, and was scolded for wearing his sister's dresses. Outwardly he had been a calm and studious child, but a whirlwind of anxieties over his gender identity gathered force through adolescence. He became an academic, and when we met three or four years ago, he was just beginning a long research sabbatical. The free time offered by the sabbatical had given him his first opportunity to think about changing his gender identity. 'You're the first person I've told,' he told me, sobbing. 'I can't go on like this.'

Since my time in medical school, neurodevelopmental research had moved on: momentum had gathered against the proposition that a boy without a penis should simply be raised as a girl – and vice versa. Elements of gender differentiation are deeply rooted in the brain and in hormones – there's little doubt now that there's more to a sense of gender identity than socialisation. Twin studies imply that the incidence of discontent with birth gender is higher in identical twins than it is in fraternal (non-identical) twins, which implies at least a partial genetic component. Other studies have found that chromosomal disorders that lead to reduced testosterone production in boys may result in increased desire for male-to-female transition.

Until recently, gender variance was considered a deviance. The first

Diagnostic and Statistical Manual ('DSM') of the American Psychiatric Association, published in 1952, placed gender variance under the blunt heading 'Sexual Deviation'. The second manual, published in 1968, retained the same classification, although by then the Kinsey Report on sexual behaviour in the United States had broadened awareness of sexual diversity. The third DSM, from 1980, created the new category 'Gender Identity Disorders', which was carried over into the fourth, from 1994. The fifth version, in 2013, has switched the term 'disorder' for 'dysphoria' – a state of mind that connotes suffering and distress. This term, too, has been criticised as excluding those entirely at ease in their adopted gender, and the more neutral term 'variance' is now proposed.

Tarik was profoundly dysphoric; every morning he woke with a plunging feeling in his gut, knowing he faced another day of acting as a man. He was depressed, and his sleep was agitated and unrefreshing. His body disgusted him, particularly his chest hair and beard, his jaw line, penis and scrotum. He could barely bring himself to touch his genitals and found it easier to wash them quickly, in the dark.

Medical guidelines in both the UK and the US require living fully in the 'adopted gender role' for twelve months or more before gender reassignment surgery. 'I hate that expression, "living in a role",' Tarik told me when we began to discuss transition. 'For me, this is living authentically.' With support from a local gender identity clinic he took the difficult step of telling his academic colleagues, his parents and his siblings, and began to live as 'Teresa'.

Tiresias had switched gender at the strike of a snake – with the support of the clinic, I began the much slower process of effecting a comparable metamorphosis with prescription drugs. The first drug was finasteride, which inhibits the generation of the most potent form of testosterone within the body. It's used to shrink the prostate, and in small doses it helps to retard male-pattern baldness. This was only partially successful – it isn't a very effective treatment – and gave way after a few months to leuprorelin injections, initially monthly and then, once her body was used to them, once every three months. Leuprorelin inhibits the pituitary gland's production of gonad-stimulating hormones and can shrivel the testes – it has the potential to cause flushing of the skin, a collapse of interest in sex and weakening of the bones. A few weeks after leuprorelin was established, we commenced

oestrogen therapy. This feminises the body and promotes the development of breasts, but can bring on blood clots as well as subtly increase the risks of stroke, heart attack and breast cancer.

This all took a couple of years, and the final phase of transition to Teresa would be the most difficult: surgical removal of the testicles and parts of the penis, and then the creation of a blind-ended vagina using the penile skin. The physical transition proceeded in two stages – Teresa's convalescence from each procedure took months. The body's own power of healing can rebel against its new form: initially, trans women have to keep their newly created vagina open with the daily use of dilators, and regular douching with antiseptic solution. Parts of the scrotal skin are infolded and sutured down to resemble labia.

Once Teresa's physical scars had healed, her dysphoria was replaced by euphoria. She went back to her position at the university and the quiet, studious life she'd had before transition. She told me that her academic work was better than it had ever been. Oestrogen affects more than just the shape and hair distribution of the body: 'My brain loves these hormones,' another trans woman told me shortly after commencing oestrogen therapy. 'It feels as if a missing cog has fallen into place.' Teresa remained uninterested in sex or in finding a partner. There were still immense challenges she faced: teasing and disapproval from her colleagues; disappointment and disbelief from her parents; harassment in the street; the need for ongoing hormonal treatment; her ceaseless battle with chest and facial hair. But her sleep now was restful, and the feeling of dread on awakening had gone.

EVEN THIRTY YEARS AGO the transition from Tarik to Teresa would have been improbable: gender surgery was far more difficult to access, and it was rudimentary in terms of the procedures that could be offered. But though the science and the surgery to effect gender transition is a relatively recent phenomenon, classical medical ideas of gender and sexual differentiation prefigured it. They hinged on the assumption that male bodies were simply warmer than those of women, and the temperature of your mother's womb determined whether you'd develop male or female sexual organs. According to Galen, these organs were fundamentally the same: the scrotum was simply a womb turned inside out, and the penis was an

extruded vagina. To transform a woman to a man, all that was necessary was to heat the pelvic organs, which would then ‘break free’ and become externalised. It was an absurd view in many respects, but it did allow for the possibility that gender exists on a spectrum, and that we all carry the potential for transformation.

This idea persisted from classical times to the medieval, and endured past the Renaissance. The sixteenth-century French philosopher Michel de Montaigne and his surgeon contemporary Ambroise Paré both tell the story of a female swineherd, Marie, who, while energetically jumping a ditch after some pigs, found that her vagina had ‘extruded’ into a penis, making her a man. The transformation was confirmed by a bishop and Marie was re-baptised ‘Germain’, and honoured by being made one of the king’s courtiers. It seems as if Germain was welcomed in his new form because he’d transitioned through an apparent act of God, rather than through his own choice. It’s likely that Germain was an XY male, and the growth of his penis was not sudden but took place gradually over months; he probably had a hormonal condition that had diminished the conversion of testosterone to its most potent form, and so developed feminine genitalia in the womb. The sequence is well described by the heroine/hero of Jeffrey Eugenides’s novel *Middlesex*: the heightened hormonal boost of puberty causes the growth of a penis and beard, descent of the testicles, as well as a deepening of the voice. This particular genetic condition is also relatively common in a genetically restricted community in the Dominican Republic, where those who experience it are known as *huevedoces*, or ‘testicles at twelve’.

Montaigne tells another gender transition story, about a woman called Mary who took to living as a man. Mary became a weaver in a distant town and fell in love with a woman whom he married, and with whom he lived ‘for four or five months, to [his wife’s] satisfaction’. But then someone from his home town recognised him and called in the authorities, who tried him as a woman. Mary was hanged for ‘using illicit devices to supply her defect in sex’. In the French society of the period, acts of God were permissible, but Mary’s transition was perceived as a matter of wanton choice.

In 1931 a German physician named Felix Abraham published a description of a new procedure, carried out by a Dr Gohrbandt in Berlin, on

two individuals with gender dysphoria. The first, Dora R., had tried repeatedly as a boy to amputate his penis. Abraham described the second, Toni E., as a ‘homosexual’ and ‘transvestite’ who had only ever felt comfortable in women’s clothing. Toni E. was fifty-two at the time of her surgery – Abraham adds that she had waited until the death of her wife before proceeding.^{*}

Gohrbandt’s ‘vaginoplasty’ procedure involved the creation of a tunnel through the pelvic muscles from the perineum up to the abdominal lining. The new cavity was then packed with a rubber sponge coated with skin grafts taken from the thigh. Abraham concluded his case reports with a summary of his case for facilitating surgical transition:

One could raise an objection to this type of surgery, that it is some kind of luxury surgery with a frivolous character, because the patient possibly will return to the doctor after some time with new and greater demands. This cannot be excluded. It was not easy for us to decide on the described procedures, but the patients were not to be dismissed, but also were in a mental state that made it probable that self-mutilation, with life-endangering complications, could be possible. From other cases we have learned that transvestites [sic] indeed cause themselves very severe harm if the doctor does not fulfil their wishes.

Following the simple vaginoplasty of Gohrbandt, it wasn’t until the 1950s that Dr Georges Burou in Morocco began to use inversion of the penile skin to create a vagina – a neater, and from the perspective of healing, more successful method of vaginoplasty. Hundreds of trans women are said to have passed through Burou’s clinic through the 1960s and 1970s. ‘I do not transform men into women,’ he announced in 1973. ‘I transform male genitals into genitals that have a feminine aspect. All the rest is in the patient’s head.’

In a sense, Burou could be said to have been correct: it’s now known that there are structures in the brain, constituting parts of the hormonal and emotional regulatory systems, that exhibit differences between the sexes. A post-mortem study from Holland found that the hypothalamus of trans

women shared neuronal characteristics with natal women. Whether these similarities pre-date or post-date the surgical transition (i.e. whether they were innate or consequent to behavioural or hormonal changes) wasn't clarified by the study. But either way, in their 'heads' and in their 'brains', the trans women were identifiably women.

There is much still unknown about gender, sexuality and the developing brain. It's becoming apparent that there are critical moments in the womb that determine whether we grow up identifying as male, female or somewhere in between, and neuronal structures within the brain come to reflect these different positions. This isn't to deny that the expression of identity is enormously influenced by our individual contexts and cultures, or to contest the evident truth that elements of our identities shift ceaselessly through different social interactions.

The next few years are going to see a gathering appreciation of the many determining factors involved in the expression of gender identity, as well as improvements in surgical techniques. Many elements of transition thought impossible are now looking achievable: uterine transplants have become technically possible, and in 2014 a recipient of such a transplant gave birth. Though no trans woman has yet successfully received a uterine transplant, many have expressed the wish to do so, and it would be surprising if one isn't announced within the next few years.

As a doctor, my role is to ease suffering and promote health; my interest in gender reassignment (or 'confirmation' as many trans men and women prefer it) is primarily whether it eases the distress of the patient consulting me, and helps them live their lives. Gender variance holds a mirror up to the polarisation of gender in our society, which instructs us relentlessly and emphatically to *choose*. It's known now that forcing this choice can be harmful, and isn't backed up by the scientific evidence – we all benefit from allowing elements of our identity to be in flux. In her book *The Argonauts*, Maggie Nelson quotes her partner's impatience with the idea that anyone with an ambiguous expression of gender must be on a journey to one binary extreme or the other ('I'm not on my way anywhere'), and points out that all of us are in ceaseless transition, irrespective of gender: 'on the inside, we were two human animals undergoing transformation beside each other, bearing each other loose witness. In other words, we were aging.'

There is a gathering movement of people who feel that, for them, gender

reassignment surgery may have been a mistake – that the medical profession’s checks and barriers to hormonal and surgical transition, though formidable, were for them insufficient. After twenty years living as a woman, ‘Elan Anthony’ detransitioned, like Tiresias, back to being a man. He calls his journey ‘third way trans’: ‘I couldn’t bond with people and eventually started therapy to work on why I couldn’t have relationships and why my body was so tense,’ he said in an interview with *The Guardian*. ‘I eventually realised that a lot of this had to do with trying to present myself as female, which was unnatural for my body.’ He’d been bullied as a boy, feeling himself at the bottom of a strict male hierarchy; through therapy he came to realise that his childhood identification as female reflected an unconscious need to escape. One of the greatest barriers faced by Elan was criticism within the trans community: ‘It is difficult being part of the psychological community that is so pro-transition right now, and being one of the few critics,’ he said, ‘but it feels like there are a lot more people speaking out about detransition, as well as more clinicians who are interested in looking at alternative ways to deal with dysphoria.’

When in *The Waste Land* T. S. Eliot wrote of the pain of being trapped between two lives, tortured and unable to be fully accepted in either, the allegorical figure he chose was Tiresias, ‘throbbing between two lives’. To undergo transition from one gender to another takes courage and determination, but in a polarised culture, so too does the occupation of an ambiguous, androgynous space. In the natural world, to occupy a space part-way between two genders is not just possible, it’s common. The testimony from science, medicine and people with fluid or ambiguous gender all indicate that the distance between Tiresias’s two lives needn’t be so great, and that sometimes the choice need not be quite so stark.

* The Italian poet Carlo Emilio Gadda pronounced pronouns ‘the lice of thought’ for the lazy thinking they introduce.

* The same year Lili Elbe, a trans woman born in Denmark who changed her name from Einar Wegener, died from surgical complications of a procedure to implant a womb in her pelvis.

16

Jetlag: The Brain that Holds the Sky

The brain is wider than the sky,
For, put them side by side,
The one the other will include
With ease, and you beside.

Emily Dickinson

ON THE ANTARCTIC RESEARCH STATION where I lived as base doctor for a year there were almost four months of sunlessness, while the planet's winter tilt put the continent in shadow. But it wasn't perpetually dark: there was plenty to see and the sky was always changing.* On emerging from Halley base I became accustomed to looking up and seeing the wheel of the stars and planets, meteor showers, or the slow creep of satellites. The ice was usually moonlit, and at that latitude there were weekly and sometimes daily auroras, granting depth and spectacular brilliance to the sky. On midwinter's day, almost two months into the dark time, we added another source of light – we lit a fire. We piled up wooden packing crates and set them ablaze.

To warm yourself by a bonfire built on ice is a distinctive experience. The floating ice shelf beneath our feet was hundreds of metres thick, fixed to the shoreline, and composed of snow that had fallen further into Antarctica over millennia, and then flowed slowly, as a glacier, out over the Weddell Sea. As the fire gathered intensity, the compacted snow melted and

seeped away, the flames sinking their own firepit deeper into the oblivious ice. To the south of the base we could see the contours of the continent rising towards the South Pole, its immense weight settling beneath the stars and auroras as if in obeisance. On midwinter's night we kept our backs to it, holding our beer bottles towards the fire to keep them from freezing. For a few hours we bathed in heat and light, trying not to think how alien an environment we were living in, and how far we were from those we loved.

For some, the winter so far had been particularly tough. Sleep had become restless and unrefreshing: as *Homo sapiens* we're best adapted to the rhythms of tropical skies, and the lack of sunlight month after month was sending our body clocks awry. Some of my base-mates experienced 'free-running', when the body's internal rhythm loses its purchase on the celestial twenty-four-hour clock and slips to a shorter, or longer, internal timer. Free-running can lead to a bewildering, exhausting sensation of perpetual jetlag, as the body tries to run to a rhythm shorter, or longer, than twenty-four hours.

The body's internal clock is called 'circadian' (Latin for 'almost a day') and is characterised by the secretion of melatonin at night from the pineal gland of the brain. When we're in temperate or tropical latitudes, the pineal's own rhythms are calibrated by the sky's alternation of light with dark. Deprived of natural light during a polar winter, the pineal gland of those who by nature are early-rising larks defaults to a shorter internal 'day' of just twenty-two or twenty-three hours, while night owls may default to twenty-five or twenty-six.^{*} To get up or to try to sleep on schedule when your circadian rhythm is running faster or slower than twenty-four hours was to put yourself out of synchrony with the rhythms of the base. But to sleep as you pleased would cause havoc to base routine, and upset the delicate harmony of its little society – there were just fourteen of us for the ten months the base was isolated. My role as the doctor was to look after the well-being of those on base, but also to investigate whether supplementing the dim fluorescent lighting on base with additional light boxes could keep everyone's body clocks to time, alternating white light with blue-enriched as the winter progressed.

Circadian rhythms influence more than just our waking and sleeping – they govern body temperature, blood pressure and aspects of our bodies from the biochemical level right up to the psychological. Light is the best

stimulus to mould our sense of time, but exercise after waking can help, as can rigid mealtimes (the liver has a distinct body clock calibrated to customary mealtimes, just as the brain's clock is timed to sleep cycles). The pineal gland gets its knowledge about the seasons, and ambient light conditions, via 'ganglion cells' arising within the intricate weave of the retina and running into a part of the primitive brain called the 'suprachiasmatic nucleus', or 'SCN'. These neurons are a 'third eye', keeping the body aware of the passage of night and day in an entirely unconscious way, and they respond better to light at the blue end of the spectrum.[†]

The temperature outside reached the fifties below zero, but every 'afternoon' I would go skiing on a marked track around the three-kilometre perimeter of the base. I'd ski by moonlight if the moon could be seen, or starlight when it could not. Sometimes I'd ski by the light of auroras. Gathering light into my eyes at the same time each day, I hoped to convince my brain that there was still a shape to the day.

THE SIMPLEST and most archaic organisms on earth, blue-green algae, have circadian rhythms: during daylight, special proteins gather like parasols over their DNA to prevent damage by the sun's radiation (in darkness those proteins move away to let DNA do its work). It's likely that the earliest organisms in the primordial ocean worked to a shorter rhythm than we're used to today, just twenty-two hours, because the earth was spinning faster when they first evolved. There was no ozone layer then, making it even more crucial that DNA be protected against the harsh, unfiltered sunlight. Many of the genes that govern our body's sense of time look as if they have evolved from primitive proteins involved in this ancient cycle of protecting and repairing DNA.

Many of our own cells – not just in the pineal gland or the liver – have what's called a 'molecular oscillator', showing a twenty-four-hour pattern to the genes they express, and varying throughout the day in terms of their electrical activity. At the molecular level the body is chemistry, and as a general rule chemical reactions go faster in the heat and slower in the cold. But body clock genes and the proteins they express can keep to time irrespective of background warmth – something of critical importance to insects, plants and other organisms that have no temperature control.

Jetlag exists because our bodies have a brake that slows adjustment

whenever we move into a new rhythm of darkness and light. It's a form of resistance to change: the body shifts cautiously into the new rhythm, and it is that caution that prevents our rapid adjustment to a new ambient time zone. If body clocks were able to reset quickly and easily our ancestors might have been thrown out of kilter by a full moon, or whenever they enjoyed a late night around their Palaeolithic fires. But our body clocks have to be able to shift – without that malleability we could never have moved from the tropics to the temperate and polar latitudes as a species, where there are rapid swings in sunrise and sunset times around each equinox. Adaptability of the body's sense of time made it possible for humanity to move across immense distances of latitude, just as today it facilitates the jet-age shifts in longitude.

A few years ago, a group of cell biologists in Oxford found the cause for this 'brake' on adjustment to jetlag: when light shines on the ganglion cells within our retinas, the cells of the SCN begin to express hundreds of genes that transform cell timing to fit the new ambient light conditions. But then another protein kicks in, switching those genes off again almost as soon as they're active.* Adjustment to the new rhythm is delayed until the pressure of light exposure, day after day, becomes irrepressible. The researchers created transgenic mice without this molecular brake; the new mice adapted to an artificially induced jetlag of six hours within just a day or two, raising their hopes that one day there could be a drug that could cure jetlag, or help shift workers adjust to switching between night and day shifts.

IT'S MORE THAN A DECADE since I practised medicine in Antarctica, but I still meet with circadian problems in clinic. The rhythms of our bodies are often discordant with the rhythms of our communities and our working lives; people in the West spend on average an hour less a day out in natural light than they did twenty years ago, and screen time has burgeoned over the same period, cramming our brains with its blue-enriched light. Shift-working is endemic – particularly in healthcare – and to work rapidly alternating shifts is to condemn yourself to perpetual jetlag. Shift-working is known to lead to poorer concentration, as well as obesity – you get hungrier when your sleep is mistimed, crave more carbohydrate, and a sluggish, out-of-kilter metabolism exacerbates and accelerates diabetes and heart disease.

When the clocks change for winter, for many it's as if a door is gradually closing, or a curtain is being drawn across their mood and ability to concentrate. 'Winter blues' is one name for it, 'Seasonal Affective Disorder' another. Herman Melville described it in *Moby Dick*: 'Whenever I find myself growing grim about the mouth; whenever it is a damp, drizzling November in my soul...' To get away from winter blues Melville's narrator Ishmael took off to the South Seas, but most of us don't have that opportunity – we have to find a way to make our peace with the winter.

It can feel as much of a struggle to keep one's body clock running to time through a Scottish winter as it did through an Antarctic one. The research I conducted in Antarctica showed that the sky-blue light boxes offered a slight improvement in the quality of sleep, but didn't help any of our small group stay more closely to the twenty-four-hour clock. The best ways to beat winter blues, keep the body clock to time, as well as get over jetlag, remain the same wherever you are in the world: stick to a routine, eat well-spaced healthy meals, get daily exercise and, crucially, get as much light through the day as possible – natural light from the sky is usually many factors of magnitude brighter than artificial light. When I remember my time in Antarctica, skiing day after day beneath heavens as wide and dark as a dilated pupil, I was grateful for the spectacle of meteors and auroras, the phases of the moon and the ceaseless turning of the stars. My eyes, as organs of light, granted visions of great beauty there, but I appreciate them too, now, as organs of time.

* I wrote about my year on the station in *Empire Antarctica: Ice, Silence & Emperor Penguins* (Berkeley: Counterpoint, 2013).

* There are identifiable genes which code for these traits, and 'clock genes' can predict whether you are by habit early or late to bed.

† There are even people who are 'cortically blind', in the sense that they have no conscious perception of light, but this 'third eye' continues to keep the body clock running strictly to time.

* This is called 'salt-inducible kinase I' or *SikI*.



Bonesetting: An Algebra of Healing

The treatment of a fracture is not difficult, and is almost any practitioner's job.

Hippocrates, *Fractures*

A YEAR AFTER FINISHING the job in Antarctica I flew out to West Africa to learn about the work of my friend Stephen, a paediatrician. He was carrying out some research on malnutrition, and running a back-country clinic near the Gambia's border with Senegal. The clinic lay to one side of a small village community and did basic, vital work as well as research: minor injuries, treatment of infections, pregnancy care, nutritional advice. There were no X-ray facilities and few drugs. Every morning as I ate breakfast I'd watch a queue lengthen from the clinic's front door along a shaded walkway and out into the surrounding trees. I had little experience of rural tropical medicine then, but hoped to learn.

It was April, the hottest month of the year, and the temperature climbed over 40°C. In the hottest part of the day it was impossible to work: I'd lie still in a hammock strung between two trees. The wind that came scorching out of the Sahara was like a furnace blast, warming the skin rather than cooling it. Within a year my skin had passed through a hundred degrees of heat – from the fifties below zero in Antarctica to the forties above. Vultures sat panting in the dust, wings outstretched to cool themselves, the

way I'd seen penguins do when Antarctic temperatures approached the melting point of ice.

The sun fell so swiftly that there was little sense of an evening, but when the day's clinical work was done, and the temperature became more bearable, I'd take a walk through the village. Though at times it felt remote – there was no phone signal after 5 p.m., and the internet connection was vestigial – there were hints of the wider world. One of the village's earthen huts housed a bakery: when flour arrived from the coast you'd see smoke from its chimney, and know that there'd be French baguettes on sale. There was a small shop run by a Mauritanian pedlar, who sold lanterns and buckets made in China. Those goods were imported by Lebanese merchants who'd been settled for a century on the Atlantic coast. As he worked, the pedlar listened to the BBC World Service in Arabic.

If there was time I'd continue on towards the river, beneath a spreading mango tree, down an avenue of baobabs and through thickets of man-high yellow reeds. Beyond the reeds there were squared ridges of dry-baked soil – rice paddies in the wet season – then some mudflats and, in the distance, the brown slick of the river. I'd been brought up with the reliable rivers of northern Europe, but this was something altogether different: briny and unpredictable, an oily wallow of mud, fed by the fickle rains of the Saharan fringe. Lungfish flopped into holes at my approach, breathing heavily. It seemed a land where categories were unstable, and the unexpected was routine.

'GEOMETRY' MEANS 'measurement of the earth', and as a science it has its origins in ancient Egypt. It was used to calculate the land available for agriculture as the water level rose and fell in the fertile Nile delta. One of its foundational texts is Euclid's *Elements*, written in Alexandria around 300 BCE – said to be the most influential textbook ever written, second only to the Bible in terms of the number of editions that have been printed. It starts with defining terms ('a line is a breadthless length', 'a boundary is an extremity of any thing') and goes on to postulate various axioms ('the whole is greater than the part', 'all right angles are equal to one another'). From these definitions and axioms it constructs a whole mathematical world, then tames it. Proofs tumble from its pages. One of the most famous of its proofs shows how the two basal angles of an isosceles triangle must

always be equal. In the Middle Ages, scholars gave this proof the name ‘Bridge of Asses’, because students who struggled with it were unlikely to progress.

At school I always enjoyed mathematics; I liked its absence of words, the way it encouraged visualisation of the infinite, and its reliable delivery of neat conclusions – at my level at least. There was pleasure in mastering each new technique: now the circumference of a circle, now the length of a hypotenuse, now the gradient of a curve. Calculus was particularly satisfying – a kind of arithmetical magic. That a string of letters and numbers could be transformed into a sweeping parabola was an unexpected delight.

I learned that one inventor of calculus was Isaac Newton and that for him transformation was a universal, elemental process: everything in flux that could be measured and portrayed in algebraic form he termed a ‘fluent’. His mathematics summoned a world of ceaselessly changing rivers of numbers. He invented calculus to describe the rate of change of each fluent, which he called ‘fluxion’.

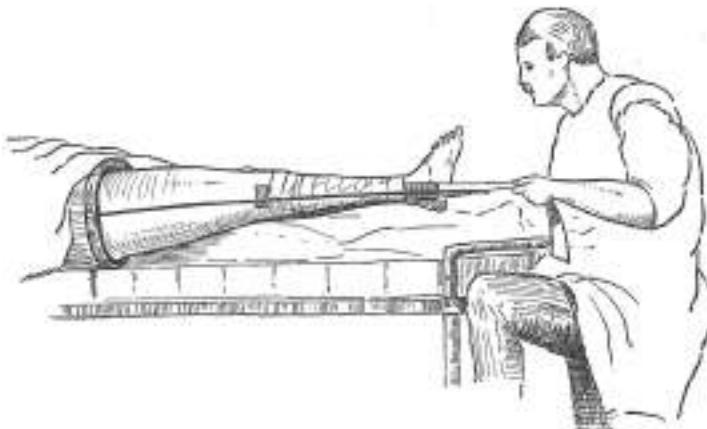
The word *algebra* is Arabic, *al-jabr*, which means ‘bonesetting’. Although there are hints of algebra in ancient Greek texts such as Euclid’s *Elements*, and even in the writings of the Greek physician Galen, the algebra that we know today was invented in ninth-century Baghdad. The mathematics of algebra was named for bonesetting because it pulls apart two sides of an equation, balances them, then resolves them to find solutions – just as a broken bone could be pulled apart in traction and then made to heal. In southern Spain, thanks to the legacy of the Arabs, bonesetters and barber surgeons were known until modern times as *algebristas*.

One of the great reassurances of mathematics is that equations work out the same every time. The human way of healing doesn’t fit well into the ethereal perfection of mathematical formulae: it’s different for every individual, and every injury. Mathematics can probe transcendent mysteries such as prime numbers reaching into infinity, or the impossible calculation of negative square roots. The business of human healing is messier, though no less mysterious.

ONE AFTERNOON A BOY of eight was carried into the Gambian clinic having

fallen ten feet from a mango tree and injured a leg. He was unable to walk and, sobbing with pain, wouldn't let anyone examine him. Stephen injected local anaesthetic into the groin at the top of his left leg to numb the thigh, which allowed the boy, eventually, to straighten his hips. His left leg looked shorter than it should have, and his left knee was turned out to one side – both signs suggesting his femur had been fractured. It was a life-threatening injury: femoral fractures can prove fatal either from blood loss within the leg or from pneumonias that set in with immobility. The best way to ease the pain of these fractures is to pull the leg out into traction on a frame called a Thomas splint, which restores the thigh to its normal length and brings the snapped ends of bone together.

Thomas splints are named for a Welsh surgeon called Hugh Owen Thomas, who came from a long line of Anglesey bonesetters – perhaps his ‘innovation’ was simply the adaptation of a family secret. I’d had two of these ‘Thomas splints’ in my clinic in Antarctica and never needed to use them. In the Gambia, where I really needed one, there were none available.



We wrapped the boy’s leg in loose bandages and made a box with pieces of wood lined with crumpled tissue paper – he’d be more comfortable with the leg immobilised, but without the traction of the Thomas splint his leg still looked shorter than it should. The only way to assess his injury thoroughly would be to get an X-ray, which meant a four-hour journey, on dirt roads, to a clinic on the Atlantic coast.

The boy’s father was a solemn old man, stately in his dirty white robe and skull cap. No, he said, the boy wouldn’t go to the coast. He knew someone who had gone there with a fractured leg and had never returned. The boy would come home with him and they’d see a bonesetter in the

village.

Some of the nurses began to get angry, accusing the father of child abuse. He was threatened with a call to the police. I tried to explain through interpreters that there was a chance the boy would be crippled, that his leg would shorten and tilt unless it was treated correctly. But with dignity the man simply gathered his boy in his arms and walked off through the trees.

FOR MANY CENTURIES algebra evolved in parallel with geometry, rather than integrated with it. They were thought of as mutually exclusive mathematical systems: geometry was the more distinguished elder cousin, representing the world in concrete terms that were discrete and universally applicable. Algebra was the newcomer, a slippery, Arab-inflected symbolism which, for many in the West, carried a hint of the occult (the philosopher Thomas Hobbes called it ‘a scab of symbols’).

It was Descartes, the philosopher of division between body and mind, who finally unified algebra with geometry. He showed how the two disciplines were part of the same cosmic continuum, that together they could resolve mathematical problems that had previously been insoluble. He plotted geometrical shapes on perpendicular axes that we still call ‘Cartesian coordinates’ in his honour, giving the letter ‘x’ to one axis, and ‘y’ to the other. He had devised a system of mapping shapes of infinite dimensions.

With his division of body and mind, Descartes broke the physical world into parts and processes, heralding the specialisation of science and medicine and unleashing a revolution in thought still reverberating today. And with his fusion of algebra with geometry he paved the way for calculus, for a mathematics of transformation to fit the churning, evolving world.

A WEEK AFTER THE INCIDENT with the boy and the broken leg I drove out with Kalilu, one of the clinic’s nurses, to another village to deliver ‘directly observed’ tuberculosis therapy (‘DOT’). Kalilu wore a neat Islamic beard with no moustache, and wore a black woollen skull cap. His spectacle frames were ornate and golden, and clipped to his nursing uniform he carried a mobile phone. He had a calm air of imperturbability, and told me that he hoped one day to study in the UK. On the drive he told me about the

DOT initiative to ensure adequate treatment of TB, and to limit its spread. We roared away from the clinic into the loose, Sahel scrubland, beeping at donkeys and goats that strayed into our path. Baboons loped across the road ahead of us, green velvet monkeys swung up into the trees. There were no road signs, but termite mounds towered along each verge like snow poles. The track was not so much potholed as undulating; sometimes the earth looked scorched, but whether deliberately cleared for agriculture or accidentally ignited by a stray cigarette, Kalilu couldn't say. We drove past swamps, savannah and rubble-fields of volcanic rocks. The air felt gritty with Sahara-blown sand. The landscape was so beautiful that I didn't want the journey to end, but suddenly I saw tin and thatched roofs appear through the trees, announced by a tired UNICEF notice: 'Baby Friendly Community'.



We slowed as we entered the village. Groups of men sat in the shade and waved to Kalilu as we passed. The women were all working: carrying wood, pounding flour. Children ran from the earthen-walled houses to follow the car, surrounding us as we emerged, shouting 'What-is-your-name-what-is-your-name.'

'Just say, "Tubab",' said Kalilu. 'It means "white man".'

He led me to an earthen-walled house with a corrugated steel door; an old woman sat in the shade outside. Beside her stood a naked boy aged two or three who gazed open-mouthed at my pale skin. We went in and called but there was no answer. Inside there were two rooms: one bare, its walls washed in white, a torn cloth mattress rolled up in one corner. The other room was empty but for a well-made double bed and, on it, a dirty throw. We walked back out, Kalilu calling for his patient. A crowd began to gather, then a young woman in an ankle-length sarong and matching headscarf stepped forward, laughing. She directed us back into the house: our patient had been sleeping under the dirty throw.

The man who emerged from beneath the throw was so thin that each joint and ligament, each vein and tendon, stood out as if he'd been flayed. He acknowledged his audience (spectators were crowding into the room), lit a cigarette stub, and with a groan pulled himself over to the edge of the bed. Kalilu poured the correct dose and combination of anti-tuberculous pills into a cup. No, the patient said, shaking his head. He wouldn't take them. There were too many, and they made him feel sick. 'See how thin he is,' muttered Kalilu to me, tut-tutting. 'He has refused a test for HIV.' More of the man's family began to appear, pushing through the onlookers, raising their voices and pointing. 'They are telling him not to be stupid,' Kalilu translated, 'they are telling him to take the medicine.' Village elders arrived, and gave more indignant advice. Most onlookers seemed amused, but their voices began to edge with impatience. Still the man sat calmly, smoking and shaking his head as the villagers remonstrated with him.

As with the boy with the broken leg, I knew that having treatment available for a particular medical problem didn't mean that I knew how to persuade a patient to accept it. And then there were the wider economics of his situation: in nineteenth-century Britain, before anti-TB treatments had been developed, death from the disease was directly linked to the sufferer's level of poverty. Even with effective drugs available, the link between poverty and TB deaths remains stubbornly robust. To treat the man's TB effectively, he had to be cured of his poverty and, as a doctor, I didn't have the first idea how to approach that.

I asked Kalilu what he was saying to the man. He said: 'I'm telling him the tubab doctor is ordering him to take the medicine.'

The man pointed up at me and said something – everyone laughed.

‘What did he say?’

“If the tubab wants me to take them, he can pay me”, Kalilu said.

Kalilu shook his head and laughed at the suggestion – though hidden within it was the tacit acknowledgement that money was as necessary as medicine in the cure of this disease. Resistance broke: the crowd looked on silently while one by one the man took the tablets, swigging them down with cola before falling back on the mattress and pulling the throw over his shoulders. The women drifted back to their work, the men to the shade, the children to their games.

IN THE FIRST PHASE of bone healing there’s a flare of inflammation, with clotted blood forming around the broken ends, and the body’s immune system provokes pain and swelling. The blood clot becomes a framework for tough, fibrous cells, and the lining of each bone (the ‘periosteum’) transforms into a tissue that can lay down new cartilage and bone. This new bone grows out in a bulbous mass from each end of the fracture, until they meet one another in the middle to form a bridge of ‘fracture callus’. This process may take days with a small bone or weeks with a large one. How close the broken ends are to one another, and how well aligned, influences the speed of healing.

The new bone to be laid down is spongy and frail; over further weeks it is gradually replaced with layered, stronger, ‘lamellar’ bone. Lamellar bone is then remodelled by specialised cells that streamline the callus outline. Sometimes I see X-rays in which the fracture healing has been perfect – there’s little sign on the image that there’s been any injury at all. At other times lumpy irregularities and thickenings endure, and I’ll be able to turn to a surprised patient and ask ‘So when did you break your ribs?’ Small bones, like the ones in the fingers, may be fully healed by three weeks. A bone like the femur may take twelve.

As I walked back to the car with Kalilu, I saw the boy of the week before, limping along after his friends. ‘Look!’ I said to Kalilu, pointing over to him. ‘There’s that boy with the femoral fracture. But those fractures take six weeks at least.’

Kalilu shrugged. ‘Maybe the bonesetter worked some magic. Maybe you were wrong – the leg wasn’t broken at all.’

We drove back into the bush, which seemed less beautiful on the return

journey. Rather than admire the scenery I thought about the economics of health and how much about being a doctor I was yet to learn. Another day working in medicine, another Bridge of Asses I struggled to cross.

Menopause: Third Face of the Goddess

The menopause is probably the least glamorous topic imaginable; and this is interesting, because it is one of the very few topics to which cling some shreds and remnants of taboo.

Ursula K. Le Guin, '*The Space Crone*'

EDINBURGH'S MENOPAUSE CLINIC is held in the Chalmers Sexual Health Centre – an old Victorian hospital first opened in 1864 at the bequest of a master plumber. George Chalmers specified in his will that he wanted a ‘New Infirmary or Sick and Hurt Hospital, or by whatever name it may be Designed’. The lower two wards were for the destitute, the upper two wards for those who could pay three shillings a day. ‘In 1887 a small apartment for nurses was opened,’ says the official history; ‘It lay between the wine cellar and the mortuary.’

Sometime in the 1950s the building amalgamated with the nearby Hospital for the Diseases of Women, and through slow metamorphosis shed its lying-in wards. In 2011 it was refurbished as the city’s sexual health centre, with a mixed bag of specialisms: venereal diseases, contraception, menopause, as well as the gender identity clinic. Queues lengthen outside every morning for the drop-in service. Jokers or prudes have prised the word ‘Sexual’ from its sandstone wall.

Most of the sexual health clinics I’ve worked in have a jaunty, informal

atmosphere; their patients are fairly young, the diseases for the most part are treatable (now that even HIV is kept in abeyance), and the staff have a gentle irreverence that lends itself to a good working environment. All doctors hear stories that must remain private, but sexual health physicians hear more than their share.

When I went to learn more about the work of the menopause clinic I started in the coffee room, where students, trainees and consultants were all laughing together over stories from a staff night out. I was there to sit in with Ailsa Gebbie, a consultant gynaecologist and the senior clinician at the menopause clinic. Ailsa had been one of my tutors at medical school twenty years earlier – energetic and enthusiastic, with short blonde hair and a crisp, careful manner of speaking. She's a former director of the UK's Faculty of Sexual and Reproductive Healthcare.

Few women come to my clinic for advice about the menopause – I'm a forty-something man, and they generally prefer to consult a female colleague. But every so often someone going through what still gets called ‘the change of life’ asks me about hot flushes, insomnia, skin changes or mood swings. Oestrogen slows over years rather than months, making the name ‘menopause’ sound more abrupt than the reality. *Meno-pause* also suggests something temporary, even trivial. Symptoms of the menopause may be transient and often mild, but the phase it gives onto is enduring and hardly trivial. Menopause isn't a disease, or a deficiency, or even a constellation of symptoms, but a natural consequence of having lived for four or five decades as a woman. All women see a dramatic drop in oestrogen levels around menopause, but only about one in fifty men sees a comparable drop in testosterone levels at the same age. Around a third of women suffer enough from it to want to see a doctor, ranging from those exhausted, distressed and depressed by their symptoms, to those who'd just like to attenuate their hot flushes. As a man, I see too few women in this situation to keep up with the latest advice, but too many to refer them all to a colleague. So I went to sit in with Ailsa to see what I could learn.

BEFORE ‘MENOPAUSE’ WAS COINED a little over a century ago, the clunky Greek term ‘climacteric’ was used more widely. The word means a step on a ladder – a phase to be transcended or surpassed – but ‘climacteric’ has been made to bear a heavy burden of meanings: a climax to life, a critical

period, a storm successfully weathered. For much of its history it applied to men as much as it did to women, though men's 'climacterical year' was traditionally thought to be the sixty-third – long after the forty-ninth year suggested for women. Pre-modern medicine was preoccupied with numerology and had an obsession with factors of seven that goes back at least to Solon of Athens, who in around 600 BCE wrote a long poem about the way that human life is divided into ages of seven years, each initiated by a rite of passage and occasioning a change in role. But the association with sevens is more ancient still: the Babylonians noticed seven celestial bodies (Sun, Moon, Mercury, Venus, Mars, Jupiter, Saturn) and built seven levels to their ziggurats; Greek language took seven vowels, and defined seven wonders of the world.

There are three columns of discussion in the *Oxford English Dictionary* devoted to 'climacteric', and only one entry refers specifically to the menopause: 'Applied to that period in life (usually between the ages of 45 and 60) when the vital forces begin to decline (in women coinciding with the period of "change of life").' For the term 'climacteric disease' it offers: 'a disease of unknown cause which often occurs at an advanced stage of life, characterized by loss of flesh and strength, sleeplessness, etc.'

Of the four hundred or so editors and contributors who worked on the *OED*, about seventy were women. The 'C' section that includes 'climacteric' was overseen by four.* But the exclusion of women's voices from much of literature's history means that every original source for 'climacteric' they recorded, written between 1590 and 1879, was written by a man.

The historian Louise Foxcroft, in her book *Hot Flushes, Cold Science: A History of the Menopause*, summarises the historical male take on menopause by quoting the sixteenth-century physician Giovanni Marinello: 'as soon as the periods stop, pains arise... the disorderly uterus rises or descends all the time, or commits other actions difficult to endure.' Foxcroft warns against thinking of the climacteric as a purely female phenomenon: 'Men have hormones too,' she observes, 'and arguably, a menopause, if we think of it as a transitional phase which is part of the ageing process.'

The historian of medicine Roy Porter warned about the domination of masculine perspectives, particularly with respect to discussions of women's bodies. Porter's opinion was that menopausal problems, when they present

at all, are overblown and the result of a male-orientated profession's tendency to medicalise whatever it doesn't understand. He reported that in many traditional societies there's an absence of subjective problems with menopause – that, on the contrary, menopause was something that women celebrated, because it marked release from a part of their lives that was often 'burdensome and dangerous' (bearing children), as well as stigmatising (menstruation being viewed as polluting). Cross-cultural studies of women around the climacteric bear up Porter's analysis: Finnish, Mayan, North African, Rajput, Chinese and Japanese women have all been found by researchers to suffer fewer physical or 'somatic' menopausal symptoms than, for example, American women. A 1980s study by Nancy Datan examined five ethnic groups in Israel – Muslim Arabs as well as Jews from North Africa, Persia, Turkey and central Europe – and found that each welcomed the menopause as a liberation. As human beings, wrote Datan, we are all in different states of transition, 'immigrants in middle and old age to a changing world for which we are not prepared'. She concluded that each ethnic group had traditions which helped women adopt new and liberating roles in middle age, and that every culture finds ways of infusing life with love and with meaningful work.

In the twentieth century, medicine began characterising menopause as a deficiency disease, treatable by Hormonal Replacement Therapy (HRT) – first launched in 1942. Twenty years later, HRT was applauded into the pharmacies and stock exchanges of the world by a New York gynaecologist called Robert A. Wilson, whose book *Feminine Forever* suggested that women should consider HRT in their thirties or risk crumbling bones and collapsing libidos. Wilson called women who'd been through the menopause 'castrates'.

In the final years of the medicalising twentieth century, 27,000 post-menopausal women took part in the 'Women's Health Initiative' study, the results of which implied that women taking HRT had a slightly higher risk of strokes and breast cancer than those who didn't. Then in 2003 a far larger study, appropriately named 'The Million Women Study', suggested that taking HRT as much as *doubled* the risk of breast cancer, though the absolute numbers remained small. Headline writers are prone to prioritise relative risk over absolute risk: an increase of 1 in 100,000 adverse events to 2 in 100,000 is an almost insignificant change, but a headline may still

scream that risk has ‘doubled’. The effect was immediate – between 2002 and 2006 HRT prescription in the UK dropped by two-thirds. These trials were shown to be fundamentally flawed, using the same doses of hormones in women aged forty who’d gone into an early menopause as they did in women aged seventy who’d had a natural menopause twenty years earlier.

HRT remains controversial. Before going along to the menopause clinic I asked Iona Heath, former president of the Royal College of General Practitioners and for thirty-five years a practising GP, for her perspective on the merits and hazards of HRT. ‘When I meet a menopausal woman in clinic who wants help with her symptoms I tell her there are two ways to look at the HRT controversy,’ she told me. ‘The first is that HRT is a male-dominated conspiracy to medicalise a normal, natural process.’

‘And the second?’

‘That the scare stories about HRT are a male-dominated conspiracy to stop women getting the hormone supplements they need. The way they respond would tell me which way they wanted to go.’

WHEN CHALMERS’S HOSPITAL first opened in the 1860s a girl born in its wards would have had a life expectancy of about forty-one. By the late 1880s, when nurses’ quarters were opened by the mortuary, that life expectancy had risen to just forty-five. These figures were so low because of the terrible frequency with which women (and babies) died in childbirth. The majority of female children didn’t live to reach the menopause, and those who did were relatively rare – resilient survivors.

Ailsa led me from the coffee room along a whitewashed mezzanine corridor. The refurbishment had given this third phase of Chalmers’ hospital a new and repurposed life – it had gained a glass roof, they had rebuilt some walls, and natural light fell in shafts past a space where once there had been gynaecology and obstetric wards. ‘Will the clinic today be all new patients?’ I asked Ailsa.

‘A mixture – some of these women I check in on every few weeks while trying out different treatments. Some of them will be new to me – referred in because their usual doctor can’t get their symptoms under control.’

‘Will they all have been on HRT already?’

‘Most of them – though there are still a few GPs who are anxious about prescribing, particularly if there are complications – a family history of

cancer, thrombosis, strokes.'

I sat beside Ailsa while she conducted her clinic, meeting her patients, discussing with her how I'd manage each in my own clinic, taking notes for my own future practice. Many of the women clearly knew and trusted Ailsa; there were discussions about hot flushes, sexual problems, urinary infections, incontinence, osteoporosis, libido, crashing mood swings. Some women had gone into the menopause gradually, others in abrupt consequence of treatments for breast or ovarian cancer. 'In someone suffering severe hot flushes from cancer treatment there's good evidence for cognitive behavioural therapy rather than HRT,' Ailsa told me. 'Some kinds of counselling can be as good as HRT, perhaps even better, at helping people adjust to mood and sleep problems. And without the risks.'

'And what do you tell people about those risks?' I asked her.

'I show them a table that lays them out.' She opened the UK bible of prescribing – the *British National Formulary* – to a page listing the statistical risks. 'It shows how cancer and thrombosis risks begin to rise a little after ten years of continuous treatment. But those risks remain small.' For women in their fifties who've taken HRT for over ten years, breast cancer rates rose from about 2 per cent to just over 4 per cent. For women in their sixties the incidence rose from 3 per cent to just under 7 per cent.

'So it doubles, more or less,' I said.

'But it's still small. When people know the actual risk at a population level, rather than the relative risk, and their symptoms are intolerable, they often prefer the HRT. And generally I don't prescribe it beyond sixty years of age, because it's then that the cancer and thrombosis rates begin to rise.'

I saw Ailsa prescribe antidepressants rather than hormones on occasion, and I asked her whether she thought that meant mood changes and sleep problems around the menopause were related to depression and anxiety. 'Not always,' she said, 'but small doses of antidepressants can be helpful. No two women are the same.' Sex hormones maintain bone strength, so with menopause can come a thinning and weakening of bones. Ailsa prescribed medications to slow that process, and she also encouraged a couple of the women to smoke less and exercise more (smoking weakens bones, and exercise strengthens them). While most of the HRT I've ever prescribed has come in tablets, Ailsa suggested alternatives. 'If the only problem is that the skin of the vagina is getting thin and dry, or the bladder

is getting too sensitive, it doesn't make sense to take large doses of oestrogen by mouth. I prescribe a ring that women can put in the vagina and take out themselves, placing the oestrogen directly where it's needed. Skin patches and gels that you can rub into the skin of your thigh or your chest can be useful too – lower doses, fewer risks.'

Perhaps it's not possible, as a doctor, to make an objective judgement, but, in sitting for an afternoon with Ailsa, I didn't see any evidence of an overbearing medical establishment attempting to convince women they were suffering a deficiency disease. I saw women with anxiety, unbearable hot flushes, sexual difficulties and insomnia, some of which may have been brought on by a slowdown of body oestrogen, receive careful, balanced and often life-changing advice.

'AT MENOPAUSE as never before, a woman comes face to face with her own mortality,' wrote Germaine Greer in *The Change*. 'When a fifty-year-old woman says to herself, "Now is the best time of all", she means it all the more because she knows it is not forever.' The feminist psychologist Carol Gilligan noticed that the climacteric, as one of life's most significant transitions, can occasion a kind of mourning that 'can give way to the melancholia of self-depreciation and despair'. But there are other, more positive perspectives on menopause.

In 1976, the American novelist Ursula Le Guin wrote an essay both panoramic in scope and beautifully concise, reflecting on her own arrival at the change. I can't speak with authority or experience on the menopause, but Le Guin can, and I've recommended her essay to patients. She argues in the essay that the traditional division of women's lives into the triple phases of 'maidenhood', 'maturity' and 'crone' gave life a meaning and trajectory that was more than just a physical evolution – it was about social shifts in being. Le Guin views the late twentieth century as undervaluing virginity, with children acting more and more as young adults, while post-menopausal women are encouraged to take hormones to perpetuate youth. It is as if 'the Triple Goddess has only one face: Marilyn Monroe's, maybe,' she wrote.

Her proposal was that women become more comfortable with accepting the third stage in their lives, valuing it for something uniquely feminine, and offering liberating opportunities: 'The woman who is willing to make that change must become pregnant with herself, at last. She must bear

herself, her third self, her old age, with travail and alone.’ Unlike the births she’d laboured with her own children, no male obstetrician would stand over this new transition, or suture up her lacerations. ‘Anyhow it seems a pity to have a built-in rite of passage and to dodge it, evade it, and pretend nothing has changed. That is to dodge and evade one’s womanhood, to pretend one’s like a man.’

Many readers know Le Guin through her body of science fiction and fantasy novels, and she concludes her essay with a sci-fi thought experiment: imagine some aliens asked to take ‘an exemplary person’ back to their planet Altair to teach them something of the nature of humanity. Le Guin wouldn’t pick a young cosmonaut, or a male scientist, or even a statesman like Henry Kissinger. Neither would she pick one of the many young women who’d volunteer, ‘some out of magnanimity and intellectual courage, others out of a profound conviction that Altair couldn’t possibly be any worse for a woman than Earth is.’ Instead she’d pick a woman over sixty – wise, patient, witty and shrewd – who’d worked hard all her life, given birth and raised her own children. She’ll be too modest to volunteer, says Le Guin, but we should insist, because as a woman in the third stage of life she ‘has experienced, accepted, and acted the entire human condition – the essential quality of which is Change.’

* Miss J. E. A. Brown, Miss Edith Thompson, Miss E. R. Steane and Mrs W. Noel Woods.

19

Castration: Hope, Love and Sacrifice

We defend ourselves not against castration anxiety but against death, a far more absolute castration.

Ernest Becker, *The Denial of Death*

THE UNIVERSITY LIBRARY at my medical school was shared with students of Veterinary Medicine. Sometimes I'd find myself at a desk opposite one of the vet students; we'd glance at one another's textbooks with curiosity, occasionally open at the same subjects – haematology, say, or orthopaedic surgery. It was reassuring to see how much common ground there was between medicine for humans and medicine for animals.

One day I was revising prostate cancer: the appearance of its malignant cells under a microscope, the stages of its spread, the radiotherapy, brachytherapy (embedding of radioactive pellets into the tumour), and standard chemotherapies used to treat it. In health, the prostate gland stores semen and mature sperm; it has strong muscular walls that squeeze during ejaculation. Exposure to a lifetime of testosterone increases the growth of the gland as well as its susceptibility to cancers. Many treatments for prostate cancer work by blocking testosterone's generation within the testicles – with no testosterone, the growth of the tumour slows.

'All that for prostate cancer?' asked one of the vet students, glancing over at my notes.

'Sure,' I said; 'what do you guys do to treat it?'

'One word,' he laughed, 'castration!'

As a boy I'd see farmers castrating spring lambs in the fields near my home. They'd take a tiny rubber 'O', the diameter of its hole almost as wide as the rubber was thick, and with a pair of special pliers spring it over the lamb's scrotum. The rubber squeezed off the blood supply to the testes, and a few weeks later they'd drop off. The first time I saw farmers gelding lambs I asked one of them, 'Doesn't it hurt?'

He shrugged. 'It's better this than the old way,' he replied. 'A century ago, shepherds used their teeth.' After an afternoon spent gelding, the men's beards would be clotted with blood.



Gelding animals takes testosterone out of their development, making them less aggressive and more biddable, but also bigger (sex hormones accelerate the closure of the growth plates of bones, so without testosterone, animals' bones grow longer before fusing). Low testosterone levels also encourage the accumulation of fat. You can leave castrated animals grazing alongside females without fear they'll reproduce. Agricultural societies have used it since long before written records: castrated oxen take a yoke more easily, and will pull a plough with less whipping. Castrated dogs are simpler to train, and will more readily round up the castrated sheep put out to fatten in the fields. Early Assyrian and Chinese civilisations transposed this knowledge to humans: boys born in poverty would be castrated and

sent to work under the yoke of the state in the imperial household. (In China, both penis and testicles were removed – these ‘three treasures’ were pickled in a jar, brought out for special occasions, and buried with the eunuch.) Eunuchs were often taller, sometimes stronger than average, and were frequently employed as the core of an imperial guard. They could work in the imperial harem without fear that they’d cuckold the emperor.

When Alexander the Great conquered Persia he was struck by the utility of such eunuch slaves, and adopted the custom – eunuchs were also considered sexually desirable. The Romans copied it from the Greeks: the emperor Nero had a eunuch called Sporus (whom he dressed as a woman, and married) and the emperor Domitian had a favourite eunuch called Earinus. There’s usually an element of voyeurism in the Roman accounts, a curiosity about ambiguous gender and genitalia that’s still visible in media coverage of the phenomenon today. Eunuchs were high-class slaves, the most expensive in the market; in losing testicles they were believed to have lost family loyalty and to have become faithful only to their masters and to the empire.

Around the time that Christianity began to spread into the Roman Empire there was already a cult of a eunuch god called Attis, who was celebrated in springtime and believed to have died then been resurrected after three days. His priests committed self-castration in honour of a fertility goddess, and they did it on the hill in Rome where Vatican City sits now. The practice survived the Christianisation of the Roman Empire: one of the early church fathers, Origen, is famous for committing self-castration. Castration continued in Byzantium (where gelded boys were trained as choristers) and into the twentieth-century Russian Orthodox church, where the *skoptsy* sect encouraged self-castration as late as the 1920s. St Paul’s advice that women should keep quiet in church was taken to its logical conclusion during the Italian Renaissance: God’s glory was sung in soprano by castrated men from the mid-1500s. The Jesuit Tommaso Tamburini, active in the early seventeenth century, sanctioned castration only ‘provided there is no mortal danger to life and that it is not done without the boy’s consent’. How much choice they had in the matter is hard to assess, though reports throughout the seventeenth and eighteenth centuries describe boys ‘pleading’ for the honour of being castrated, to bring both prestige and financial security to their families. The complex, high-pitched melodies for

which castrati were most in demand by the Vatican were those sung around Easter week – the same time of year that the priests of Attis celebrated castration.

The Vatican didn't ban the castration of boys for its choirs until the late nineteenth century, and the last castrato of the Sistine Chapel, Alessandro Moreschi, died in 1922. But twenty years before he died, with his voice already fading in quality, he made a series of recordings for the 'Gramophone and Typewriter Company' that would become 'His Master's Voice' or HMV. You can find the recordings online, Moreschi's voice a wavering, ghostly soprano that makes every song an elegy.

THE COMEDIAN BILLY CONNOLLY once joked that he'd reached an age when doctors had become uninterested in his balls, and had begun showing greater interest in his rectum. The median age for testicular cancer is around thirty-four, for prostate cancer it's nearer seventy-two. To have your prostate gland checked manually you have to lie on one side, knees pulled up to your chest, while a doctor puts a gloved finger in through your anus – the size and consistency of the prostate can be assessed through the thin bowel wall.

Prostate cancer is common: among my local patient population of almost four thousand, there are several new diagnoses a year. Alex Sinclair was one of them: a sixty-two-year-old builder, muscular and stoical, bald, with a beard so dense and black it was as if the lower half of his face was eclipsed. He told me he was divorced, and hinted at a dynamic sex life; his children had long ago grown up and moved away. He came to clinic wearing his overalls. 'I used to get up once or twice a night to pee,' he told me, 'but now it can be five or six times. I wake up exhausted.' There were times he found himself standing at the toilet for a full minute before urine began to trickle out. 'I prefer not to see doctors,' he said. 'But I couldn't put it off any more.'

We worked through a questionnaire called the 'International Prostate Symptom Score' which asks for a rating of one to five across a series of questions, from how often you have had the sense that you haven't emptied your bladder, to how often you have to strain to initiate urine flow: Alex scored an impressive twenty-two. I took a blood sample from his arm, to examine levels of a substance specific to the prostate – this 'PSA test'

varies broadly with prostate size, and can on occasion flag up cancer. I asked if I could do a rectal examination up on the couch. ‘I’ve heard about these,’ he said with resignation, standing up to unzip his overalls; ‘if you must.’

Alex’s prostate was huge, jutting back from its position under the bladder and indenting his rectum. On one side of the crease down the middle of the gland I felt a firmer, discrete lump, like a pebble lodged in tarmac.

‘Well, that’s why you’ve been struggling,’ I told him; ‘your prostate is so large, urine can hardly squeeze through it.’ Alex stood up and started pulling up his overalls. ‘I’d like you to see one of the specialists,’ I added, then caught and held his eye. ‘They’ll want to check tiny pieces of the gland under a microscope.’

His actions slowed as he took in this information. Then he asked carefully: ‘How do they get the pieces out?’

‘They’ll pass a very fine needle in through your anus, and through the bowel wall.’ I was hoping to reassure, but wondered if perhaps I was making his anxiety worse. ‘Your prostate gets bigger the longer it’s been exposed to the testosterone in your body – so the longer you’ve lived, the bigger your prostate grows. You’re not alone – it’s quite common to start getting problems around your age.’

‘Is it the same thing as cancer?’ he asked, pulling up his zip and reaching for his hat.

I waited a couple of moments, until again his gaze swung back towards me. ‘Just as every man’s prostate grows the longer he’s lived, they say every man gets prostate cancer if he lives long enough. But in most men it grows slowly, and never causes bother.’

‘How will I know if it’s going to cause bother with me?’

THROUGH THE 1980s, an editor at *The New York Times* called Anatole Broyard wrote a series of short, brilliant essays about being diagnosed and treated for prostate cancer. The essays were collected and published by his widow following his death from the illness. Broyard had for many years been a literary critic, and he brought to the essays an immense breadth of reference, humour, a ferocious intellect, and prose as luminous as an arc light. ‘What goes through your mind when you’re lying, full of nuclear dye,

under a huge machine that scans all your bones for evidence of treason?’’, he wrote of one scan, undertaken to see if cancer had infiltrated his skeleton; ‘There’s a horror-movie appeal to this machine: Beneath it you become the Frankenstein monster exposed to the electric storm.’

Broyard experienced his own diagnosis as a storm of anxiety and fear, but also, paradoxically, a liberation – life became as colourful as a ‘paisley shawl draped over a grand piano’. As a critic he turned to books to help him come to terms with his cancer, but complained that too many memoirs were humourless, over-respectful, and soaked in Romanticism, ‘so pious they sound as if they were written on tip-toe’. He admitted that a part of him felt exalted by the diagnosis, as if in hearing some of the worst news anyone can hear – a diagnosis of terminal illness – he’d been granted a great blessing by the universe. There was an element of gratitude for some aspects of his illness: it had given him a deeper and more intimate appreciation of the glory of being alive, as well as licence to give in to a long-suppressed desire to be more impulsive.

In an essay called ‘The Patient Examines the Doctor’, he spells out the kind of physician he’d prefer – someone with a ‘furious desire to oppose himself to fate... intense enough or wilful enough to prevail over something powerful and demonic like illness’. Broyard often felt that he had to put on a stoical front for his friends, who’d congratulate him on his bravery, but knew that a good doctor should see through the bravado and recognise his loneliness, even act as a guide through the inferno of cancer therapy. He didn’t want a doctor that relied on bluster, or phoney confidence tricks. His ideal doctor would be schooled in poetry, or be at least familiar with the possibilities of metaphor:

I would like a doctor who is not only a talented physician, but a bit of a metaphysician, too. Someone who can treat body and soul.... To get to my body, my doctor has to get to my character. He has to go through my soul. He doesn’t only have to go through my anus.

Broyard refused the physical castration his first surgeon offered (‘My urologist, who is quite famous, wanted to cut off my testicles, but I felt that this would be losing the battle right at the beginning’); but he accepted that

most treatments for his prostate cancer might make him impotent, or affect his libido. He advised against thinking of sex as physical, rather than an intimate extension of the imagination, and accepted the diminution of his sex life as a reasonable bargain in the hope of gaining more years of life. ‘In my own case,’ he wrote, ‘after a brush with death, I feel that just to be alive is a permanent orgasm.’

THE UROLOGISTS CONFIRMED IT: Alex had prostate cancer. What’s more it had spread, and so removing his prostate gland to eliminate the tumour wasn’t an option. The first step to improving his quality of life was to widen the urinary passage through the prostate, or ‘bore it out’ as Alex put it (builders have a useful store of analogies when thinking about the body and its failings). I had assisted in these operations as a junior doctor: a patient was laid anaesthetised on their back, legs in stirrups, while a narrow instrument with a camera inside it was advanced down through the penis and into the bladder. It was always an amazement to watch the procedure, the camera exploring an unseen, barely credible world of pink tunnels and embankments, delicately veined and whorled with contours. Once into the prostate a wire loop emerged from the instrument, which, when heated up by an electric current, could simultaneously peel away and cauterise the tissue that had been blocking the urine’s flow. It took a few days for the bleeding to settle down – days in which Alex had to stay in hospital with a wide-bore catheter draining the bladder. Following the procedure Alex’s urine was flowing, but his cancer was too far advanced to be eliminated. I started him on injections to shut down the production of testosterone in the testes, as well as hormone blockers. Plans were made for radiotherapy at the local hospital.

I reviewed him a couple of weeks after the first injection. His interest in sex had collapsed, his skin felt hot and dry, his urine heavy and stinging. ‘I’ve never been much of a worrier,’ he told me, ‘but I’m getting uptight about everything these days. And I can’t watch a film without blubbing like a baby.’ He wanted to continue working, but found his muscles ached after even minimal exercise, and he was losing much of his strength. These were all symptoms that could be put down to the loss of testosterone, rather than to the cancer. ‘I used to lift four sheets of plasterboard no problem,’ he told me, ‘but I think I’ll be lucky if I can manage two.’ Over subsequent weeks

his testicles shrank, and though he didn't lose the density of his beard his skin took on a pink, delicate sheen, as if it were becoming more fragile.

'Have you had enough?' I asked him one day, after he'd detailed all the side effects that were troubling him. 'Do you want to stop the treatment?'

'Not if it's doing me good,' he replied. 'If it's keeping down the cancer, for me at least – it's worth it.'

ALEX STILL ATTENDS my clinic every twelve weeks for the injections which wither his testicles but slow the growth of his tumour. A pragmatist by nature, he sees the exchange as a reasonable compromise: 'I'm lucky to be here,' he says, as he loosens his belt for the injections which, for their size, have to be given into the largest muscle in the body – the buttock.

After the initial shock of the treatment his libido returned, slowly, and one day he told me he had a new girlfriend. 'Her eyes are wide open,' he said, 'she knows I might not be around for ever.' I told him just to let me know if he wanted to try medication for impotence, but he just winked: 'no need,' he said, 'I've just got to use a bit more imagination than I used to.'

SOME MEN PERCEIVE the loss of testosterone as a punishing humiliation. Castration has long been exploited as punitive: the Oracle Bones of the Shang Dynasty in China, carved around 1500 – 1400 BCE, list castration as a sentence for prisoners of war, and an Egyptian Pharaoh who lived a couple of centuries later boasted of having castrated more than six thousand soldiers of an invading Libyan army. More recently, the Janjaweed militia in Sudan perpetrated the same on their prisoners. Some western jurisdictions today order chemical castration as a combined punishment and 'treatment' for convicted sex offenders, with controversial results.

Given the cultural hinterland of castration as punishment, it's a mystery as to why, historically, many young men and boys volunteered for such an ordeal. In *The Castrato*, a comprehensive examination of the phenomenon, the historian Martha Feldman explores some of the reasons why they did so. She proposes that we think of the exchange as much more than a bargain, but rather as a *sacrifice* – the transformation being in some sense sanctifying or sacralising. The castrato was offering something precious as a gift to celebrate the greater glory of God, but also in the hope of receiving something precious in return. Castrati, says Feldman, were 'sacralized

'creatures', in a way comparable to kings. In Confucian China that sacrifice was made to the state, and in Renaissance Italy, the church. It was seen as a kind of rebirth, much as Broyard felt that his life was given back to him when he received his terminal diagnosis.

Sir Thomas Browne noticed that after undergoing castration, males seemed to increase their chances of a long life – in part because diseases of the prostate had been neutralised. The Roman poet Lucretius, in *The Nature of Things*, describes sufferers of the plague sacrificing their testicles in the hope that they'd avoid the disease. Matthew's Gospel reads:

There are some eunuchs, which were so born from their mother's womb: and there are some eunuchs, which were made eunuchs of men: and there be eunuchs, which have made themselves eunuchs for the kingdom of heaven's sake.

And there are some who choose castration in the hope of prolonging their lives.

Laughter: Some Eminency in Ourselves

We will try to avoid the error of those who in their subtle disquisitions on the comic idea forgot that laughter is a bodily act.

James Sully, *An Essay on Laughter*, 1902

AT EIGHTEEN I HAD A JOB as a nursing assistant at a long-stay residential hospital specialising in learning disabilities. I wore a lemon-yellow uniform, and my job was to bathe and dress male residents and help them with their meals. The hospital had been built in the late 1960s, with four hundred beds for the long-term care of those labelled ‘mentally deficient’. Many had entered as children; I met one who’d been committed for stealing a bicycle, another told me he’d been locked up for climbing on roofs. Both, as children, had been slow at school, and their parents had complained of bad behaviour at home. My colleagues said it was doubtful whether they’d manage now beyond the walls of the hospital. I learned the bitter reality of the word ‘institutionalised’.

For some of the residents there was a genetic background to their difficulties: it was my job to feed a boy with Cornelia de Lange syndrome, who didn’t have any hands and couldn’t speak. Every morning I’d help dress an elderly man with Fragile X syndrome, a genetic disorder that may lead to learning disabilities. I struggled to get his legs into his trousers or socks on his feet – he had a beatific, amiable tolerance of my clumsiness.

The other assistants knew that I was a medical student and at tea break they'd ask me about the details of genetic syndromes, or the drugs we helped dish out. I couldn't help them (I was in first year) but the job, and their enquiries, forced on me an early appreciation of the subtlety and fragility of the mind. Our brains are delicately calibrated, I realised, and there's a multiplicity of ways in which their potential can be frustrated. I had been living independently for only a few months; now I had an insight into the lives of those who never do.

On the ward was Henry, who according to the notes had the intellect and speech of a three-year-old. He had a bald head, stubby yellowed teeth, and a nose like a Roman general, as well as a tremendous and uninhibited capacity to laugh. He had a powerful, resplendent laugh, deep and sonorous, which he delivered sporadically throughout the day. When he wasn't laughing he'd usually be smiling – his expression at rest was one of irrepressible mirth. He loved dancing and music – the accordion music of Jimmy Shand was a favourite – and when music was playing he would take to the floor and whirl me around until he was gasping in great gales of laughter – I'd end up laughing alongside him. Afterwards, we'd sit back down to catch our breath, and there was a sense of some tension having been released, of some appreciable change for the better.

Now and again, in the throes of a full-bellied laugh, something would come over Henry, and that laughter would turn to a sob. Tears would bead at the corners of his eyes, and a choke would catch at his voice. 'What's the matter,' I'd ask him, 'is anything wrong?' He'd shake his head, shoulders shuddering, and I'd wait. A few moments later he'd be chuckling again, as if life was a joke to which tears or laughter were equally appropriate.

THERE ARE BROADLY TWO KINDS of laughter: the kind that floods out in response to something funny, and the kind of laugh that we put into conversation, to ease social interaction. As we get older we get better at distinguishing the two – the ability to tell the difference goes on improving into our forties. Both kinds of laughter are the ally of health: those who laugh regularly report less pain, anxiety and depression than others, as well as better sleep, energy and feelings of well-being. Laughter dilates blood vessels, dwindle heart disease and rallies our immune systems, making us less allergic but better able to fight infections. Many paediatric hospitals

employ clowns, or ‘giggle doctors’, to ease tension and aid healing among attending children. ‘Laughter is the best medicine,’ goes the joke, ‘unless you’ve got diarrhoea.’

We don’t have much idea as to why we laugh. It’s evidently a physical process – breathing is disturbed, the face becomes flushed, and we’ve all known the feeling of our sides aching with laughter. And there are mysterious physical changes associated with hearty laughter – I’ve known patients for whom a comedy show invariably brings on an asthma attack.

In 1900, the French philosopher Henri Bergson wrote an essay that was later translated as *Laughter: An Essay on the Meaning of the Comic*. For Bergson, human beings live in two worlds: the physical world that we perceive with the senses, and the social world of meanings, hierarchies, love, hate and mockery. He thought we laugh only in company, which isn’t true – we do laugh alone, but we are thirty times more likely to laugh when we’re with others, particularly with people we like, and who we want to like us (hence the ‘canned’ laughter on sitcom soundtracks). As human beings, he went on, we’re on shifting social sands, constantly trying to figure out where we are situated with respect to those around us. Laughter reconciles us to the fact that we’re changing social animals in a restless world; it allows us to smooth the roughness of dynamic social exchange. It’s cathartic of social tensions, and its work is to reinforce connections between individuals. Absent from Bergson’s sophisticated theory is any robust attempt to integrate theories of laughter with the evident truth that small children laugh often, and with gusto, long before they’ve developed the intellect required to understand the meanings of jokes or care much about the opinions of others.

Charles Darwin, that master of unprejudiced observation, begins his study of ‘high spirits’ with children in mind: ‘Laughter seems primarily to be the expression of mere joy or happiness. We clearly see this in children at play, who are almost incessantly laughing.’ Laughter can also be provoked when there are incongruities between different associations of meaning, such as in the classic gag by Mae West: ‘Marriage is a great institution, but I’m not ready for an institution.’ Babies can be just as sensitive as adults to incongruities – a baby who laughs when she sees a tower of blocks fall over is observing that one moment the tower is stable, and the next it isn’t – it could be the non-verbal discontinuity that provokes

the laughter. Tickling too involves a kind of incongruity, as it's a mock 'attack' by a trusted person. Darwin thought a great deal about tickling:

The anthropoid apes, as we have seen, likewise utter a reiterated sound, corresponding with our laughter, when they are tickled, especially under the armpits... Yet laughter from a ludicrous idea, though involuntary, cannot be called a strictly reflex action. In this case, and in that of laughter from being tickled, the mind must be in a pleasurable condition; a young child, if tickled by a strange man, would scream from fear.

Darwin noticed that the movements involved in laughter – short, interrupted vocalisations on breathing out, with long drawn-out gasps on breathing in – are the precise opposite of those uttered when screaming with distress – so laughter acts as a powerful social signal of good humour. The transformative effect of a gale of laughter imposes a temporary paralysis that renders other actions, or the communication of other emotions, impossible.

Laughter to ease social relationships can be fake, or exaggerated, but it still serves a useful purpose. It marks our alignment or disalignment with others, and displays our affinity with those around us much more quickly than is possible with words. Aristotle thought that getting amused was a virtuous, social activity, as long as it was carried to the right extent, at the right time. He even had a word for it, *eutrapelia*, coming from the Greek meaning 'able to turn well'. If individuals can be imagined as cogs in a social machine, wittiness and humour are the grease that enables the machine to turn smoothly.

FOR HENRY, the frontier between tears of sorrow and tears of laughter was permeable and fragile – the two emotions seemed to have a common origin, and merge seamlessly from one to the other. One of oldest surviving books of medical case studies, the *Epidemics* of Hippocrates, noted how laughter and tears may erupt spontaneously in situations of extreme stress, almost as if they are interchangeable methods of coping: 'she used to wrap herself up... scratching and plucking out hair, and alternately wept and laughed.'

Darwin commented that these transitions between tragedy and comedy, even in prominent social situations, are widespread among other cultures: ‘Mr. Swinhoe informs me that he has often seen the Chinese, when suffering from deep grief, burst out into hysterical fits of laughter.’ In western cultural traditions those rapid transitions between tears and laughter are restricted for the most part to babies and toddlers, though in situations of extreme stress they’re observed in adults too. Darwin cites the ‘recent’ siege of Paris (his book was published in 1872): ‘the German soldiers, after strong excitement from exposure to extreme danger, were particularly apt to burst out into loud laughter at the smallest joke.’ Many people report the impulse to laugh at funerals, for example, not out of insensitivity, but from some inarticulate need for catharsis and to release tension from the grief of the situation. Perhaps the humour in bleak comedies arises from a similar kind of discomfort.

Among neurologists, the common origin of tears and of laughter is widely accepted – in the 1920s a syndrome called PLC, ‘Pathological Laughter and Crying’, was described: uncontrollable episodes of laughter or crying, or both at the same time, triggered by the most insignificant stimuli. For someone with PLC, sobs of distress might be provoked by having a hand waved in front of your eyes, or fits of giggles brought on by being given a plate of food. PLC can result from stroke, certain kinds of epilepsy, brain tumours, multiple sclerosis, and even the infusion of antiepileptic drugs, and seems quite separate from any subjective sense of mirth or well-being. It’s apparently triggered by the activation of a kernel of tissue near the base of the brain that coordinates the muscular movements involved in both kinds of emotional expression. It’s likely that the idiosyncrasies of Henry’s brain led to the activation of this centre on the slightest of stimuli. The cerebellum – the ‘little brain’ beneath the nape of the neck – is also involved in laughter in some way: one of its functions is to coordinate not just appropriate movement, but the appropriateness of emotional expression.

In 1903, a French neurologist described a syndrome of *Fou rire prodromique* – ‘anticipatory crazy laughter’. In this case uncontrollable, unemotional laughter caused by disinhibition of the brain centre was the herald to a stroke that led on rapidly to death. In an afterthought to his long poem *Briggflatts*, Basil Bunting relates a Persian tale of a stone in Tibet, the

mere sight of which causes any viewer to descend into paroxysms of laughter ‘which continues till they die’.

MANY YEARS AFTER I’d stopped working as a nursing auxiliary, I had a job providing medical cover to a hospice. Whenever I passed the day room there would be a funny movie, or a stand-up comedy routine, playing on the television. After the nurses took around their trolley of pills and suppositories, a trolley of comedy DVDs followed – a consolation, even a tonic, for patients and clinicians alike. Tea breaks and ward rounds were informal affairs – you could tell that the staff of the hospice were devoted to their work. There were just a few yards of hospital linoleum to walk between each bedside, but on passing between patients we would traverse mountain ranges of emotions. At one bedside there’d be solemnity, sadness and a frank discussion of death’s approach; at the next we’d all be chuckling about constipation, or the eccentricities of hospital wheelchairs.

The philosopher Thomas Hobbes thought that laughter was a ‘sudden glory arising from some sudden conception of some eminency in ourselves’. If he was right, perhaps there was laughter in the hospice to show superiority to the imminence of death. There was plenty of cathartic laughter to relieve tension; perhaps without it we could have been paralysed or overburdened by pity. We laughed at the absurdities and incongruities thrown up by the proximity of death in a society which reveres youth and health. We’d sometimes laugh to share solidarity with both colleagues and patients, and I’d sometimes hear laughter erupt from rooms at visiting time, perhaps easing tension between members of a family already wrapped in grief. The laughter wasn’t cynical, or hard-hearted – it was changing the atmosphere, giving courage and a sense of togetherness, helping patients, doctors and relatives adapt to a new reality, when words no longer seemed enough.

21

Prosthetics: Humanity 2.0

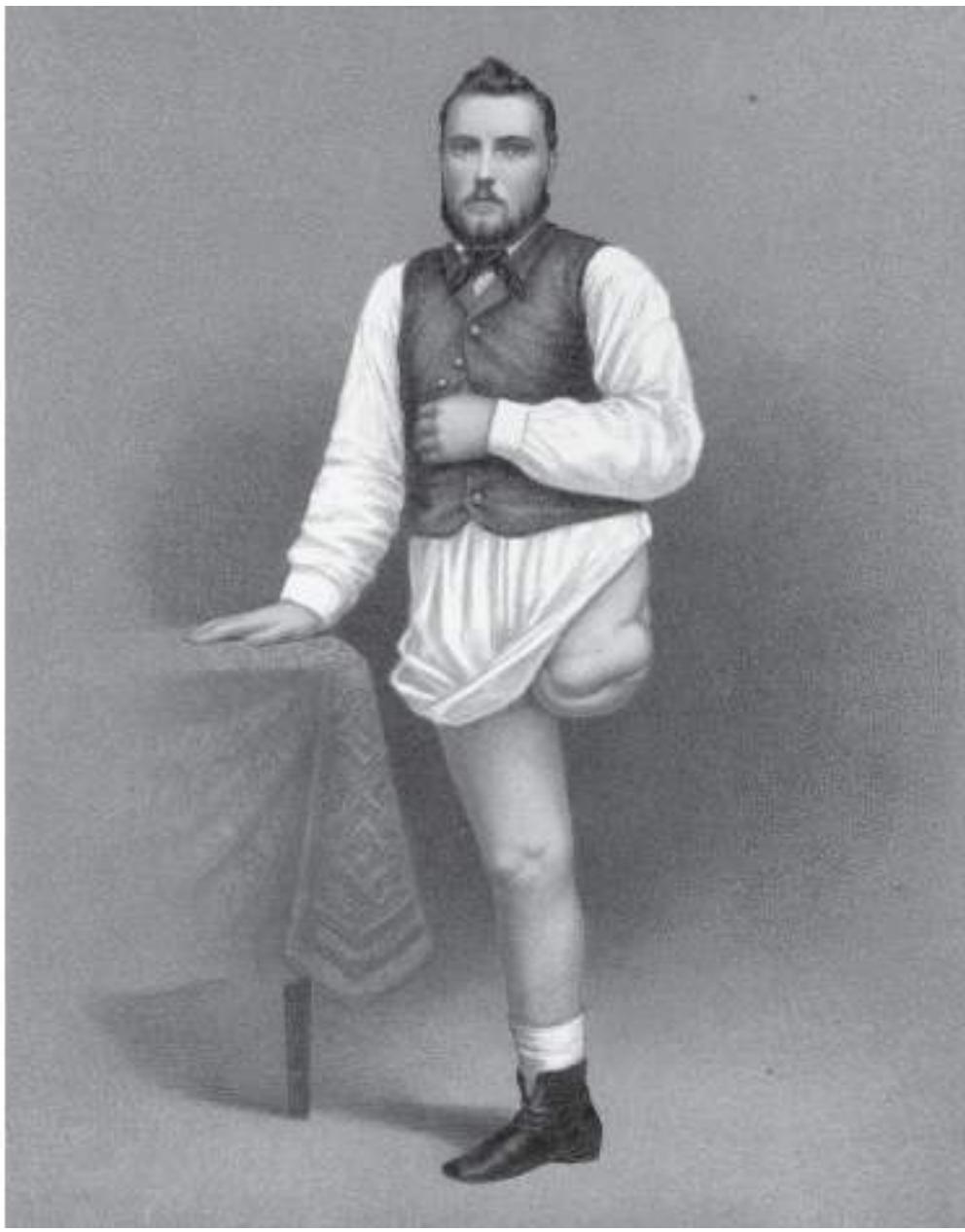
He walked on an orthopaedic limb, but in such a manly way that everyone envied him his walk.

Osip Mandelstam, *Journey to Armenia*

LIGHTSABERS MUST HAVE cauterising powers; when Luke Skywalker lost a hand in *The Empire Strikes Back* the stump hardly bled. Before long he had a new robotic hand, whirring and clicking to that stump's commands. It's an old idea that technology can restore us following mutilations, and perhaps even give us an upgrade. Long John Silver and Captain Ahab had their peg-legs, Captain Hook his eponymous hook. Pliny the Elder writes of a Roman general during the Punic Wars who, following a traumatic amputation on the battlefield, had a prosthetic arm fashioned to fit into his shield. One of the earliest literary forerunners of Luke Skywalker's amputation is the moment in Ovid's *Metamorphoses* when Pelops is hacked to pieces by his father. The gods reconstitute his scattered parts, but can't find the shoulder – they craft instead a replacement from an elephant tusk 'making his body by such means complete'.

As a junior trainee in vascular surgery I used to assist in limb amputations. Despite the sophistication of the hospital and the surgical implements it was always a surprise how much of a grisly business it remained. As soon as the patient was anaesthetised, the cleavers and bone

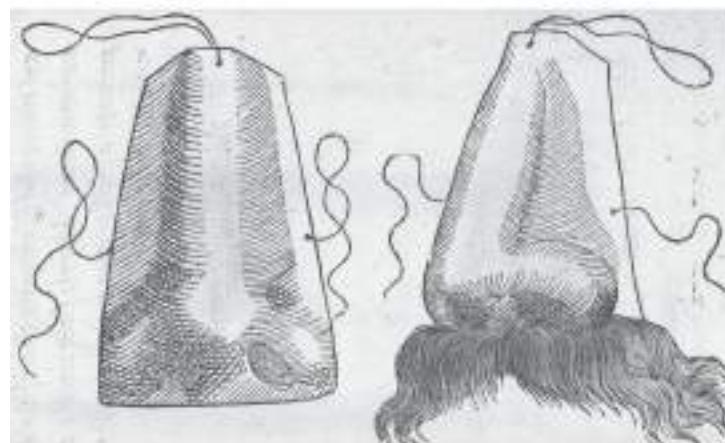
saws came out, and within minutes a severed limb would lie purpling on the green surgical drapes, before being tossed into an incinerator bag. The following morning, on the ward round, we'd check the stitching of the stumps, and make arrangements to introduce each patient to his or her prosthetist who'd fit them for a new limb. There was a new amputation every couple of weeks, usually performed because of blocked arteries – these were patients who'd suffered years of chronic pain and infections. On those crisp, starched, hospital sheets I'd see them gaze on their newly lightened, truncated limbs, stunned by the change effected on their bodies.



The earliest-known prosthesis is a big toe, made of wood and leather and found on the mummified foot of an Egyptian noblewoman buried three and a half thousand years ago. A bronze and iron leg dating from 300 BCE was unearthed two millennia later in southern Italy (it was transported to London, and destroyed during the Blitz). It's not until the early sixteenth century that there are stories of customised prosthetic hands – a German mercenary knight called Götz von Berlichingen lost his right arm in battle at the age of twenty-four, and had a replacement one built of iron, housing

springs and pulleys. He went on to fight for Charles V against the Turks and the French. Armourers were the finest craftsmen of prostheses through the Middle Ages; they were the most skilled in ergonomic metalwork and their clients were the most likely to suffer amputations.

By the late sixteenth century, the Parisian surgeon Ambroise Paré was making sophisticated advances in prosthetic technology. He had noticed that people whose lives he saved through amputation often struggled with shame and disability, so he invented lifelike peg-legs that could kneel, and elbows that could bend. He also manufactured a hand with bendable fingers, and made prosthetic noses for those who had suffered nasal amputations.



In one of the many conflicts between the Ottoman Empire and the Bulgarians, captured Ottoman soldiers had their noses amputated as a humiliation and a warning. It's said that on their return to Istanbul, the Sultan awarded each one an upgrade: a new nose cast in gold.

ANDREW GANNON HAS WORN a prosthetic arm for as long as he can remember – he was born with a left arm that ended at the elbow, and his parents insisted, even as a toddler, that he wear a prosthesis – keen that from his earliest years he'd build a mental self-image that included the limb he was born without. By age four, his prostheses were ‘myoelectric’; that is, they could sense activity in the muscles of his arm and make the hand open or close accordingly.

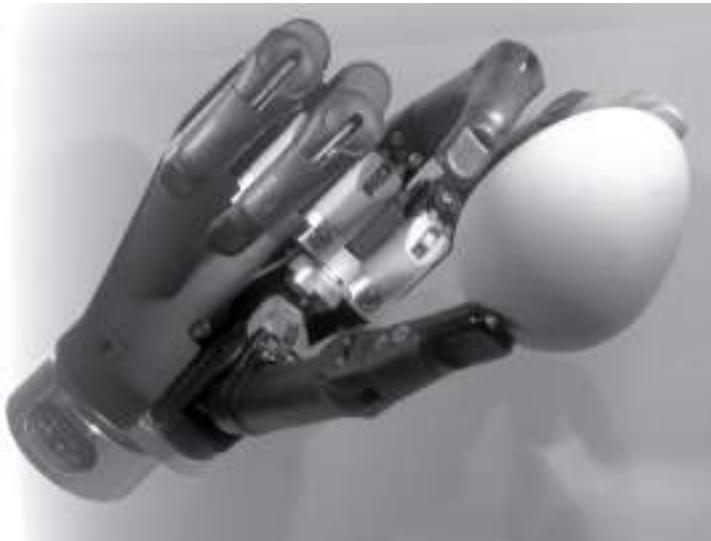
On his left arm Andrew wears an ‘iLimb’, the latest of his myoelectric prostheses; it’s sheathed in translucent silicon, revealing a skeletal intricacy

of jointed and piston steel. The translucence of the prosthetic skin allows the branding over the back of the hand to be seen. It made a low electronic whine as Andrew demonstrated its capacities for me. ‘There’s so much pride in their engineering that the manufacturers want everyone to be able to see it,’ he explained of the translucent glove, and shrugged; ‘I’d rather just have it black.’^{*} The silicon wears through quickly, exposing the robotics within to moisture, so he had to regularly change the cover. Some prosthetic limbs are now sheathed in photovoltaic cells, so that they can at least partially recharge as they are being used.

Andrew had had the iLimb for two years when we met. It has only two sensors within its socket – one over the muscles that would ordinarily work to open the hand, and one over the muscles that would ordinarily close the hand. The limb is plugged into an electric socket to charge every night. The vast range of potential movements programmed into its circuits are initiated by just four signals: there’s one signal to open the hand, initiated by a rapid muscular impulse at the elbow; a double impulse of the same signal; a triple impulse of open signal; and simultaneous contraction of both open and closing signal (‘co-contraction’). The prosthesis switches between different programmes through sensing quickly alternating combinations of those signals: ‘There was funding available to supply just two of these limbs in the region,’ he told me. ‘The prosthetic centre chose me because they knew I’d use it, and that I’d be honest in my feedback.’ Initially he struggled with the complex movements required. ‘But I got there in the end,’ he said, reaching for a packet of paper tissues. Almost absent-mindedly, he held the crumpled plastic wrapping with the fingers of his iLimb, and pulled a tissue out with ease. ‘That’s one of the best things about this limb,’ he said, noticing my gaze, ‘the lateral grip. As a boy I had my own way of tying shoelaces, but this is the first limb that can manage the thumb movements involved in pulling out a tissue, or tightening a lace.’

The iLimb fingers have sensors within them that stop contracting when they meet resistance, meaning that Andrew can pick up an empty aluminium can without difficulties – previous limbs lacked sensitivity, and would crush cans in their grip. He uses both of his hands naturally in gestural body language, spreading wide open palms or closing his fist in context as he speaks. He also has an application on his smartphone that can wirelessly switch the limb between different settings, rendering the hand

capable of positions such as the hold required to shake hands, or even make obscene gestures. But he rarely uses these – the four pre-set programmes are enough. ‘I’ve a new baby at home,’ he told me, ‘but I decided against changing nappies with the limb. It’s quicker and safer just to slip the limb off, finish the nappy one-handed, and then put the limb back on.’



THERE ARE AN ESTIMATED four million people around the world who have suffered amputation of a limb – only a tiny proportion of them are rich enough (or live in countries rich enough) to afford myoelectric prostheses. Olivia Giles is a quadruple amputee living in Edinburgh; in 2002 she lost her hands and feet to a rare form of meningitis which causes blood poisoning. Trained as a lawyer, she now works full time as the director of the charity 500 Miles, providing prosthetic limbs in Malawi and Zambia.

I asked about her own experience, losing her hands and feet to septicaemia a decade earlier. A bacterial infection in the bloodstream had reduced the circulation to her extremities so profoundly that they had turned gangrenous, and had to be amputated. ‘One day at work I felt really ill, as if I had flu,’ she said. ‘The following morning I saw these purple spots spreading over my feet, and then my hands, and felt dreadful – I went to the hospital where I collapsed unconscious. Then I woke up four weeks later like this’ – she raised her forearms that end short of the wrists. ‘I came within an inch of dying, but I survived, and that’s why I’ve never looked back. I’ve more regrets about my life before the amputations than I do

about the life I've lived since.'

I asked Olivia about the transition to her new life – for many people who suffer amputations, the first few months or even years can be torturous. ‘The day I got up on my prosthetic legs and took a couple of steps was like a rebirth – the beginning of a new life,’ she said. ‘I was euphoric; I hadn’t dared to hope that one day I might walk out of hospital. So almost immediately I began thinking about a charity, so that others could have the same chance for a second life as I’ve had. Malawi is a place with great need, and it isn’t war-torn – when I chose a place to start the charity I wanted to be able to visit and supervise it myself. And Zambia – there are so many strong connections between Scotland, Malawi and Zambia.’

I was surprised that the majority of the charity’s work was to offer prosthetic legs; arms were lower priority. ‘For an adult, in sub-Saharan Africa, they know they will never be given a job over someone who is able-bodied,’ Olivia said. ‘Once they’ve had an amputation their life as a working adult is largely over, but prostheses can enable them to go on working in the fields. We fit arm prostheses that have sprung hooks that can hold a hoe or a rake, but legs give people mobility, which means freedom. The arms that we use are really just cosmetic – people get mocked and ostracised, and supplying a dummy limb can help them to fit in.’ Olivia told me that someone who has lost one arm still has around 95 per cent of their ability to function – adding a prosthetic arm, even a sophisticated one like an iLimb, adds only an extra 5 per cent.

‘The most transformative thing about prosthetic limbs is the potential they offer for children,’ she told me. ‘The kids we work with, if they lose a limb in an accident, they become trapped in the home, a burden on their families, often ashamed of the disfigurement. Having a prosthetic leg makes it possible for them to go back to school. You can see it in the mothers’ faces when the new limbs are fitted, their faces light up, because they know that this means that their child has a future. The prosthesis gives them a future.’

The limbs that Olivia’s charity supplies are made in Switzerland, not locally in Africa; she told me that the locally sourced limbs are not yet of high-enough quality. ‘We order them in batches, then ship them out to Lusaka and Blantyre and Lilongwe,’ she said. The local prosthetists she employs have all studied on a diploma course in Cambodia; as a

consequence of the war there, low-cost prosthetic technology is advanced. ‘It’d be cheaper to have the prosthetists train over in Tanzania,’ she added, ‘but the course isn’t yet as good. There’s a diploma course too in Togo, but it’s French-speaking, which is no good for our Zambians and Malawians.’

Over the years, I’ve known many amputees struggle with phantom pain, prejudiced attitudes about disability, chronic depression and anxiety. But Olivia was upbeat about the possibilities open to amputees, even those who have suffered multiple amputations like herself: ‘We’re so lucky to live in a western society where it’s acceptable to be disabled, where society has made accommodations for us, where there’s legislation, where things are accessible. It’s possible to have a high quality of life here in Scotland no matter your disability. The facilities and the funds available in the UK are generous: here, if the mould for your stump doesn’t quite fit then it’s discarded and a new one is made. That would never happen in poorer countries where they have to make do with what they’ve got.’

The charity doesn’t only provide prosthetic limbs, it issues splints to straighten club feet, and orthotics to help burned skin heal without disfiguring and disabling contractures. ‘Some don’t realise how important it is to look after the skin of a burn,’ she said. ‘Many hospitals in Africa have a terrible reputation, and people tend to run away as soon as they can. We’re working hard to convince people of the importance of good follow-up.’

Olivia is positive about the possibilities of life after amputation; that even simple, low-cost prosthetics can revolutionise lives for the better. ‘It doesn’t make any sense to me how someone could look at me and my body, and feel pity, when my body is healthy and strong! How much more miserable would it be to have chronic depression, or a degenerative condition that you can’t see but which is going to shorten your life. My life isn’t going to be shorter because of having no hands and no feet – it’s just a little more inconvenient.’

WITH TECHNOLOGY, humanity has the opportunity not just to replace the function of a missing limb, but to improve on it. The word *prostheses* means ‘addition’ – hidden in the word’s root is the hint that prostheses might enhance the possibilities of human beings, rather than just substituting them. Pelops had a replacement shoulder carved from ivory; now prosthetists use titanium, carbon fibre, and Kevlar.

Many years ago I met Jamie Andrew, a quadruple amputee who lost both hands and both feet to frostbite in an Alpine climbing accident. Like Olivia, he prefers not to use prosthetic hands from day to day. ‘I think you’ve got to ask yourself what the limb is for,’ he told me. ‘Is it to replace a missing part – because you’re never going to get back your hand – or is it a tool to help you do things?’ Jamie leaned forwards, deftly picked up his coffee cup with his handless forearms, and took a sip. ‘If it’s a tool, well, I have plenty of those, and they work better than hands. I have an arm designed for driving, arms for ice climbing, an arm with a kitchen knife for chopping vegetables... I could go on. All these are better at their function than my hands were.’

‘And the new generation of myoelectric limbs?’ I asked him. ‘What do you think about the value, the usefulness of those?’

‘I’d be more interested in the technology if they tried to make an improvement on the human hand, instead of trying to make a slower, clunkier, second-class copy of one.’

A few years ago one of the UK’s military prosthetic centres closed, and its funding was passed over for use through the UK National Health Service. The transfer meant that civilians had access to the kind of technology that previously was available only to veterans. ‘Take rock climbing, for example,’ said Jamie. ‘My climbing legs have stubby little toe-fronts on their feet that are perfect for narrow crevices in the rock. Or skiing: human thighs, knees and calves are pretty good at absorbing pressure from uneven snow surfaces. My old skiing legs had sprung carbon-fibre dampeners, which worked well, but would chatter over the ice on sharp turns. But my latest skiing legs have mini shock absorbers, like the ones that you see on the front forks of a bicycle – they’re perfect for eliminating vibration, and better than a human leg.’



I told Jamie that I'd heard there was disagreement in the amputee community about the value of pursuing transplants, versus the value of concentrating on developing and refining prostheses. The reality of 3D scanning of stumps, and 3D printing to build sockets, allied to an ever-evolving toolkit of synthetic materials, means that Paralympic athletes are catching up with able-bodied ones – in some instances they surpass them. It's as if prosthetics might offer more than just a replacement for a missing limb, but a new improved version of being human – Humanity 2.0. Jamie laughed: 'If someone was to offer me a hand like Luke Skywalker's I'd take it,' he said, 'though that's a long way off.' But not light years away.

* Since we met, Andrew has sourced a supply of plain black gloves.

22

Memory: Palaces of Forgetting

One condition of remembering is that we should forget.

William James, *The Principles of Psychology*

THE FOURTH CALL of the night shift was to a nursing-home resident, George B., who the staff said had become uncharacteristically belligerent. Earlier in the day he'd struck out at another resident of the home – something he'd never done before. It was turning into a busy night: the first call had been to give morphine to a woman on her deathbed. She had looked as if she might not survive until morning, and the morphine had helped ease her pain and breathlessness. The second was to decide if a man had dislocated his artificial hip, but he met me at the door with little more than a limp. The third was to a young woman who'd phoned the service in a panic, hallucinating that her living-room carpet was infested with spiders. It turned out that she wasn't psychotic – she had just been injecting amphetamines.

I pushed a buzzer and stood at the door next to a rusting municipal bench and a bin for stubbing out cigarettes. It was a modern construction in cheap brown brick, all on one level, with a peaked gable roof over the entrance. On the glass door there were notices asking me not to disturb residents at mealtimes, to sign in and out of the building, and please remember to sterilise my hands. I peered in through the glass: a mandatory fish tank, scrubbable carpets, wipeable easy chairs, and information boards

with photographs of the staff, alongside montage illustrations of residents on days away. As I waited, an angular, elderly woman in a dressing gown appeared on the other side of the glass. She was leaning with determination over a walking frame, and stopped for a moment to look through at me. Her left hand went up in a regal salute, then she smiled a dazzling, hundred-watt smile. For a second or two we stood smiling at one another. Then she moved on down the corridor, looking from side to side as she went, like a queen surveying the splendour of her palace.

It was another couple of minutes before a nurse flustered to the door to let me in. Her hair was in a high bun with a pen stabbed through it, and her dark-blue uniform told me that she was in charge for the night. In one hand she held a bunch of keys, and in the other a sheaf of papers in plastic wallets. ‘I’m Maggie – sorry for the wait,’ she said, turning on her heels and striding back in the direction she’d come from. She gestured for me to follow: ‘short-staffed,’ she added.

‘Don’t worry,’ I said.

I caught up with her at another set of double doors. ‘George is usually so mild-mannered’ – she punched a code into a keypad on the wall – ‘a real gentleman.’ We were stopped as the door opened: a frail, bowed man wearing a green polo shirt and nothing below the waist met us at the door. ‘I’m just going home,’ he said, ‘see you,’ and pushed past me into the main corridor.

‘Not that way, Jimmy,’ said Maggie, lunging to catch him. She took him persuasively by the arm, directing without forcing him down a separate corridor – he clearly trusted her. ‘Go and get your trousers, please,’ she said to him, then grinned at me. ‘Welcome to the madhouse,’ she said in a stage whisper.

In this half of the building there were only men – several were walking up and down the corridor, some were sitting in a lounge. They all looked clean and well cared for. On an unwatched television, celebrities walked down a red carpet; the room flickered with the flashbulbs of paparazzi.

Maggie led me down the corridor to George’s room. ‘Carol will look after you,’ she said, and strode off again at a clipped pace. George’s name and his photograph were tacked to the door: a big man, bald, with a summer shirt open to the waist, bronzed and smiling into the camera. A holiday snapshot. His shoulders were muscled, and his tattooed arms were stretched

around a wife, daughters, grandchildren.

The room inside had been stripped of anything that could be used as a weapon, and in its centre George lay naked on a bed. He was paler and more haggard than his photograph. Arrayed around the walls were photocopies of old photographs. George in uniform, medals on his broad chest; one standing by a jeep, another of him saluting a senior officer. There was a close-up photograph of the same medals taken decades later, I presumed: they were tarnished and dusty. George lay on his back, eyes open, fingertips held to his cheeks. Sweat beaded on his forehead and his lips moved as if in silent prayer. There was no sign of Carol.

I put my bag down next to the bed. ‘Hello, George,’ I said, ‘I’m Gavin Francis, the doctor. How are you?’ I took his right hand off his cheek gently, as if to shake it, and with my left felt for his pulse. A middle-aged woman in the yellow tunic of a nursing assistant stepped out of the adjoining bathroom. She had white bobbed hair and drawn-on eyebrows. ‘He won’t reply,’ she said, ‘he’s hardly spoken all day.’ She moved to the other side of his bed and put a hand on his shoulder. ‘You’re not right, are you, George? Poor love.’ Her voice was sing-song, as if speaking to a child, but the affection in it was honest. We both stood for a moment looking down on his naked body in all its tragic strength, so deserted by his mind. I looked away, up at the photographs on the walls, and Carol followed my gaze. ‘He was a captain in the army,’ she said. ‘He told me that one’ – she pointed up at the photograph of George saluting the more senior officer – ‘was taken in Berlin, just after the war ended. He can still tell you all about his medals.’

I nodded. ‘Haven’t you got a sheet for him?’

‘He just throws them off,’ Carol said. She pointed at some clothing in the corner; ‘His pyjamas need a wash.’

I leaned in closer to George’s ear: ‘I’m just going to check your temperature and examine you,’ I said. He showed no sign of having heard, and his lips muttered on. I pushed the nozzle of a thermometer into his ear, and its reading showed a slight fever. Bending over him, I put my stethoscope to his chest: the air moved cleanly through his lungs, his heart murmured as if an unoiled cog was turning slowly inside. I took off the stethoscope and began gently to press on his belly, and he winced. ‘Did you manage to get a urine sample?’ I asked Carol.

‘In there,’ she said, pointing her thumb over her shoulder into the bathroom. I took the urine testing sticks from my bag and went in: tough-wearing institutional lino; a hard plastic chair beneath a disability shower; handles on the walls; polythene-wrapped packets of incontinence pads.

To assess whether urine has an infection takes a full two minutes – those one hundred and twenty seconds can be the only slack moments in a shift. Urine testing sticks have tiny squares of chemical reagents on them; after those chemicals are dipped in urine they change colour, coming to resemble the swatches of paint in a DIY store, or the colour-keys to altitude in the corner of old maps. Sometimes, as I wait, I’m conscious of the centuries of physicians before me who have scrutinised urine for clues. Usually I just watch the colours evolve. Sometimes I remember the clinical exam, many years ago now, when a distinguished professor asked me to dip a urine stick and hold it out, ‘so I can see if your hands are shaking’.

I dipped the thin paper testing stick into the urine Carol had left out on the sink and, glancing at my watch, counted out thirty seconds before the urine’s sugar level could be gauged, a minute to read off its blood and protein, two minutes to assess its white blood cells. The protein square turned the pale green of the nursing-home corridors. The white blood cell square turned the same lilac as the shower curtain.

The combination of lilac, green and some streaks of midnight blue confirmed that George had another urine infection. The workings of his brain were so tenuously balanced that just a few bacteria growing in his bladder, and the associated toxins in his blood, had tipped this ordinarily gracious if forgetful man into terror and bewilderment.

No one understands the exact mechanism which makes people with dementia so vulnerable to a worsening of memory when they have an infection. In medical terminology George had a ‘delirium’, a particular species of confusion named for a Latin word referring to ploughing: ‘*deliriare*’ means ‘out of furrow’. George’s brain and mind were accustomed to well-worn routines and habitual responses; the urine infection had jolted the ploughshare of his mind from its customary track.

IN 1943 THE THEORETICAL PHYSICIST Erwin Schrödinger gave a series of lectures at Trinity College Dublin entitled ‘What is Life?’ He dedicated the lectures, and the book that came of them, to the memory of his parents. For

Schrödinger, our ability to learn and hold memories was what most made us human. The brain and central nervous system, he explained, were engaged in the constant ‘phylogenetic transformation’ of learning. To learn something new was to be engaged in a deep and intimate way with your own humanity.

Schrödinger delivered another series of lectures thirteen years later, at Trinity College Cambridge. He titled them *Mind and Matter*, and elaborated on his Dublin theme: much of what we consider the self is intimately connected to our ability to make new memories, which we use to build images of both present and future. Loss of memory may lead to a loss of self; memory is how we weave the world into existence. ‘There really is no before and after for mind,’ he wrote. ‘There is only a now that includes memories and expectations.’

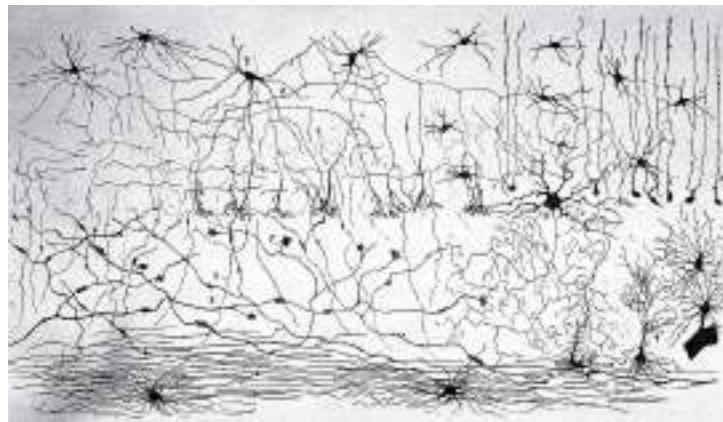
Schrödinger was schooled in the classics and begins a memorable passage in *Mind and Matter* by comparing the neuroscience of consciousness with a scene in Homer’s *Odyssey*, when a blind bard sings of the horrors of the war so beautifully that Odysseus begins to weep. The bard’s name is Demodocus, which means ‘gift-to-the-people’; it’s thought that Homer intended him as a self-portrait. Just as Homer’s poem was a tapestry of epic magnificence with a self-portrait stitched into it, so Schrödinger said that our mind weaves experience from skeins of memories, then contrives to knit our conscious selves in as participants.

After reading Schrödinger’s *Mind and Matter* I went to dig out the passage: ‘It’s as if you were present yourself at Troy, or have heard the tale from a witness,’ says Odysseus to Demodocus. ‘You must have been taught by the Muses or by Apollo.’

The ‘Muses’ were the daughters of Zeus and of Memory; the earliest sources have it that there were three of them: ‘Meditation’, ‘Remembrance’ and ‘Song’.^{*} The ‘Museum’ was their palace, and their work was to give inspiration, by infusing memories with a divine spark of creative life.

MEMORY ALLOWS US to travel in time and space, it moors us in the present, liberates us from the moment, and offers to take us into the past, as well as imagine the future. Conversely, the loss of memory is socially isolating and profoundly disorientating; to lose memory is to experience a change in the nature of the self. There are a hundred billion cells in the human brain with

an average of five thousand synapses each: five hundred trillion potential connections in which to embed memories. The scale and splendour of these neural networks took a long time to elucidate – neuronal branches ('dendrites') were too densely packed for the first microscopists to trace the connections of a single cell. It was like trying to visualise a single tree, wrapped in a thicket of thorns, in a rainforest, at night. In the late nineteenth century, a technique was developed by an Italian, Camillo Golgi, then improved by a Spaniard, Santiago Ramón y Cajal, that was capable of staining just a few neurons in a thin slice of brain tissue. It was as if a way had been found to select a few trees in that dark rainforest and charm them into luminescence. In drawings of magnificent elegance, Ramón y Cajal revealed the awesome complexity of the brain's networks of memory.



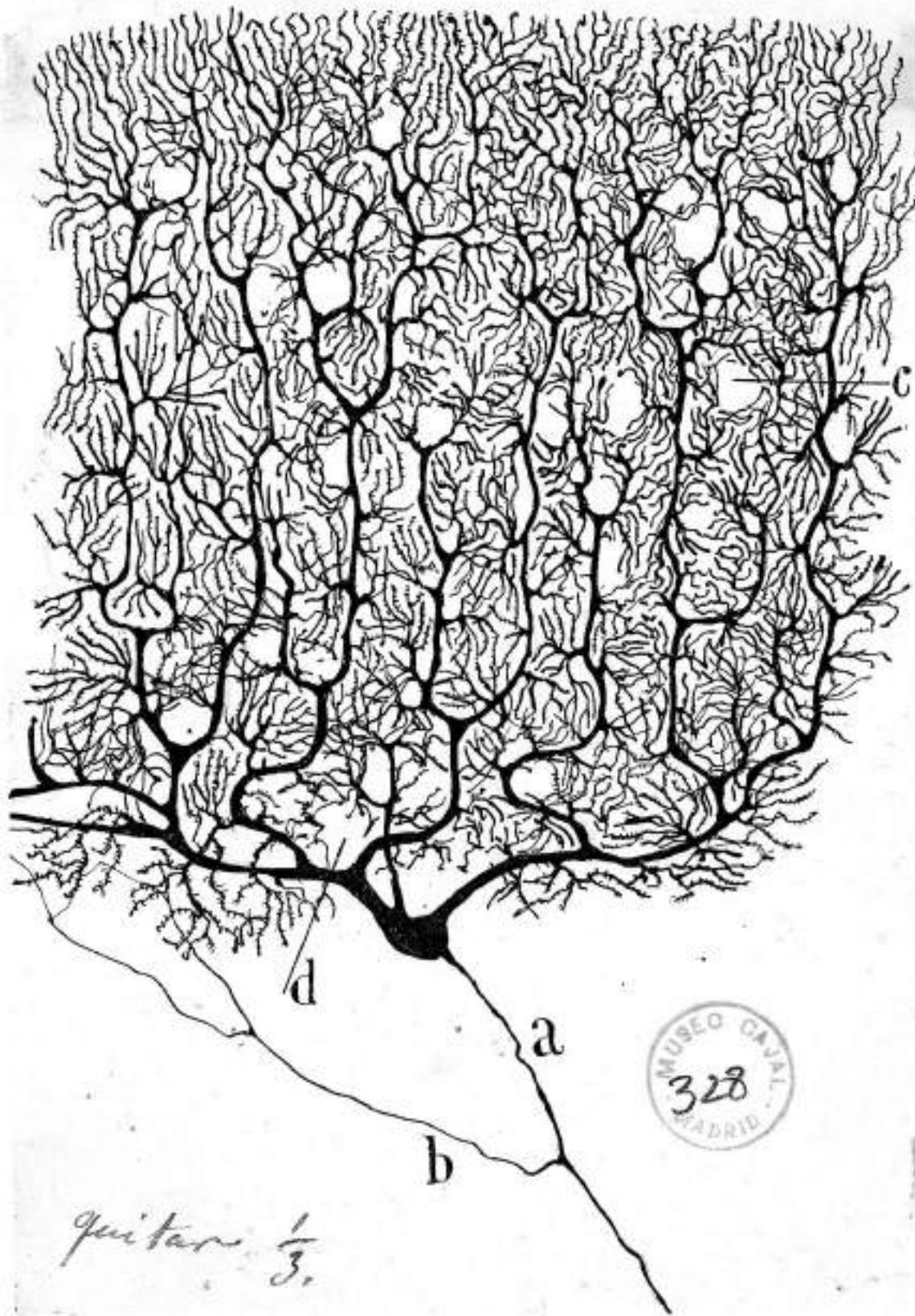
Neuroscientists speak of several ways in which we learn new memories. Impressions pass in milliseconds from our senses into the brain, and are then filtered through grids of semantic memory that make 'sense' of them – it's through the organising sieves of semantic memory, learned by experience over years, that sound becomes understood words, and patterns of light become recognisable images. Our brains do not passively sense the world – they knit it from moment to moment by braiding and knotting remembered encounters from the past. Those networks are continually modified as certain connections or 'synapses' are strengthened while others are weakened – a process called 'synaptic plasticity'. Plasticity entails material change to the structures around the synapse. Memories are sustained in part through a long-term modification of calcium and sodium channels in the membrane of each brain cell.

There are several distinct types of memory. It appears there's a dedicated

network just for ‘working memory’; reverberating loops of neural activity in the cortex which can hold information for just a few minutes. Nobody understands the fragile mechanism of this, or why it’s so easily sidetracked. If you see a car perform a hit-and-run, you can be distracted from committing the car’s colour and registration number to memory, but you can’t be distracted from remembering the colour or registration of your own car.

The memory of what you were doing at the time of major events, such as 9/11, or the assassination of JFK, is termed a ‘flashbulb memory’. Particular events of your remembered past are termed by neuropsychologists ‘episodic memories’: decisive, photographic moments in the narratives of our lives. Though these episodes too are little understood, it’s known that the hippocampus – a baroque curl of cortex in the base of each temporal lobe – is fundamental to establishing them, and sleep is necessary to consolidate them. The hippocampus needs a lot of oxygen, which suggests that it’s extraordinarily active; children who’ve suffered periods of oxygen starvation have fewer hippocampal neurons, and poorer memories as a consequence. One of neuropsychology’s most famous patients, Henry Molaison (‘H. M.’), had surgery to both hippocampi to mitigate epilepsy in 1953. He woke with fewer seizures but unable to commit any new experience to memory.

Other parts of the brain than the higher cortex and hippocampus are involved in alternative modes of memory. The basal ganglia that lie just beneath the cerebral hemispheres learn how to transform new deliberative movements and behaviours into seamless, unconscious actions. Timing of movements is ‘remembered’ elsewhere, in networks of the brain’s cerebellum, which coordinates complex actions like speech, or delivering a serve at tennis. People with damage to the cerebellum have impaired working memories, suggesting that it is essential for coordinating words and images, not just muscles. The cells that accomplish this are among the most intricately branched neurons in the brain.



The forgetting of Henry Molaison was of a sudden and catastrophic kind – from the day of his surgery he was unable to remember anything new. The only comparable pathology in normal clinical practice is Korsakoff's psychosis – something I've seen only once in twenty years of practice – when a destructive alcoholism, in alliance with certain vitamin deficiencies, brings on irreversible brain damage. This is the kind of memory loss that afflicted 'Jimmie G.' in Oliver Sacks's essay 'The Lost Mariner' – a man cursed by Korsakoff's to be marooned in time while life flowed on around him. Jimmie G. was admitted to Sacks's hospital with a note saying only 'helpless, demented, confused and disorientated'. But Sacks found his personality intact, and his mind robust for everything but the creation of new memories.

To get a glimpse of the myriad ways of forgetting, it's worth glancing at the index of a textbook of psychiatry. Under dementia you might find 'alcoholic', 'Alzheimer's', 'cerebrovascular', 'Creuzfeldt-Jakob', 'depressive', 'Lewy Body', 'Parkinsonian', and 'psychotic'. Up to half of the dementia I see is 'cerebrovascular': as the body ages its blood vessels silt up and the result is a slower, more forgetful brain. Some is 'Parkinsonian': Parkinson's disease may progress from a difficulty initiating movements to a difficulty initiating thoughts and, eventually, memories. But in many who attend my clinic complaining of memory loss, a cause can't be identified – psychiatrists classify these as 'Alzheimer's type'. When post-mortem examinations are performed on the brains of people with this kind of dementia, memory circuits are seen to be clogged with two unusual proteins. The first, 'beta-amyloid', is found in plaques between the brain cells; the second, called 'tau', is found in tangles within the cells themselves.

The reason why these substances accumulate remains a mystery, and we know little about how to prevent them. The onset of forgetting in Alzheimer's is insidious: for many, the process moves so slowly that it never causes difficulties, while for others the accretion of tau and amyloid is accelerated for reasons that remain obscure. There are some drugs which, if started early, may slow the decline by about six months at best, but these too have side effects, and are often poorly tolerated by the frail, elderly people who need them most.

When Sacks sought the advice of the great Russian neuropsychologist

A. R. Luria about how he might treat Jimmie G., he received an eloquent and compassionate response.

There are no prescriptions in a case like this. Do whatever your ingenuity and your heart suggest. There is little or no hope of any recovery in his memory. But a man does not consist of memory alone. He has feeling, will, sensibilities, moral being – matters of which neuropsychology cannot speak. And it is here, beyond the realm of an impersonal psychology, that you may find ways to touch him, and change him. And the circumstances of your work especially allow this, for you work in a Home, which is like a little world, quite different from the clinics and institutions where I work. Neuropsychologically, there is little or nothing you can do; but in the realm of the Individual, there may be much you can do.

Luria's advice reads as a plea for dedicated, resource-rich nursing care for people with dementia; care that's possible in homes like the one I was called into in order to see George. In the absence of any effective treatment for memory loss, it's the quiet humanity and enthusiasm of nursing staff like Maggie and Carol that we have to support.

WE LIVE LONGER now than at any other time in the history of humanity, and dementia may seem like a modern epidemic. But it's nothing new. 'Nothing whatever, in man, is of so frail a nature as the memory', says Pliny's *Natural History* (c. 70 CE) 'for it is affected by disease, by injuries, and even by fright... very often the memory appears to attempt, as it were, to make its escape from us, even while the body is at rest and in perfect health.' But dementia is of less interest to Pliny than its converse, the stories he'd heard of prodigious memories. He recounts the rumours about King Cyrus of the Persians, who was said to remember the names of every one of his thousands of soldiers; of an ambassador who within a day of arriving in Rome had memorised the names of every senator; and of a man called Charmidas, who, on being given the name of any book in the library, could recount it just as if he was reading aloud.

Jorge Luis Borges borrowed from Pliny for his story *Funes the*

Memorious, in which a Uruguayan gaucho, Ireneo Funes, falls from a horse and wakes up crippled in body, but with a newly infallible memory. Through the power of perfect memory Funes' world is transformed to one of almost unbearable richness and brightness; the depths of his vaguest recollections become illuminated with brilliance and clarity. He becomes able to remember every configuration of clouds he has ever seen, and forms comparisons in his mind's eye between those skyscapes and all the varieties of marbled patterns he has ever glimpsed in the binding of books. In the back bedroom of his mother's house, working only by candlelight, Funes learns English, French, Portuguese and Latin simply by flicking through dictionaries. Borges has Funes declaiming Pliny in a flawless Latin learned only hours before.^{*}

Normal life is impossible for Funes, distracted as he is by the variety and ceaseless metamorphosis of the world around him. The vivacity and lucidity of his visual memory means that he is tortured by the subtle effects of ageing, of entropy, of rot, of the creep that all living things make moment to moment into senescence. Memory is intimately bound to our humanity, but it has to be selective; an overactive and vivid memory can be a curse, and not just for savants like Funes. I've known many hundreds of patients unmoored by memory loss, but I've known dozens who would welcome the forgetting of painful memories. Forgetting can be just as important as remembering. 'The truth is,' concludes Borges's narrator, 'we all live by leaving behind.'

ON A HILL overlooking the nursing home where Maggie and Carol work there's a palatial university business school, set back from the road by a croquet lawn, and in it a small museum. It's not immediately obvious from the road, being hidden behind mature stands of chestnut, sycamore and Scotch pine. When I last visited it was spring: cherry blossom was out along the main road, and the croquet lawn was edged with bluebells. You wouldn't think you were in the midst of a city, and when the building was first constructed, it wasn't. It was designed in the style of an Italian palace as a 'hydropathic hospital' in the closing decades of the Victorian era, for fee-paying customers attracted by its peaceful location and a spring famous for its curative waters. The central tower has five storeys, the wings of it just three; high sash windows look north-west in the direction of Fife. In

1916 the hospital was requisitioned for the war effort and rechristened Craiglockhart War Hospital. Shell-shocked officers were sent there to recuperate following the atrocities of the Somme.

The small museum preserves the memory of how the building, between 1916 and 1919, was home to nearly two thousand officers – among them the poets Wilfred Owen and Siegfried Sassoon. One of the psychiatrists in residence, William H. R. Rivers, pioneered a new approach to those tortured by their memories. Rather than accuse the officers of cowardice or malingering, Rivers sought to understand how these men’s memories had become a torment, and how they might be induced to remember without pain.

In December 1917, Rivers addressed the Royal Society of Medicine in London on his work at Craiglockhart. To repress memories wasn’t pathological, he said, but a ‘necessary element in education and in all social progress’. Soldiers, said Rivers, usually learn over long periods of training to dampen their distress at war, and divert the powerful emotions generated in conflict into other channels. But the war had come too precipitously, and the training of the men had been inadequate: ‘Training in repression normally spread over years has had to be carried out in short spaces of time,’ Rivers wrote, ‘while those thus incompletely trained have had to face strains such as have never previously been known in the history of mankind.’ The problem in shell-shock was not repression *per se*, but maladaptive and ineffective repression. The only antidote to the poison of recurrent, traumatic memories was to bring them back into the light of remembrance, re-examine them with a psychiatrist, and hope that their emotional significance would fade.

One of Rivers’ cases was an officer who had walked out into no man’s land only to stumble over his friend’s head, torso and limbs, ripped apart by a shell. The officer tried to forget the appalling incident, but every night as he slept was gripped by nightmares of seeing again his mutilated friend blasted across the battlefield. He’d wake in terror, sweat soaking his pillow. Rivers realised that it was the man’s love for his friend which gave this horrific memory its power, and searched for some element of the experience that ‘would allow the patient to dwell on it in such a way as to relieve its horrible and terrifying character’. He focused the man’s reflections on the ‘conclusive evidence that [his friend] had been killed outright, and had been

spared the prolonged suffering which is too often the fate of those who suffer mortal wounds'.

According to Rivers, the man's face brightened at once: 'He saw that this was an aspect of his experience upon which he could allow his thoughts to dwell.' From that day, whenever the painful memory came to mind, he'd imbue it with the reassuring thought that his friend had been spared suffering. After a few nights the dream disappeared. Then it began again, but this time without fear or horror. In the second version of the dream he was able to direct his actions: he crouched down next to the dead friend, touched his belongings and gathered them, and was even able to converse gently with him about their shared grief.

In 1917, the year after Siegfried Sassoon was discharged from Craiglockhart, he contributed two poems to an anthology of war poetry, its title invoking those gods of Memory: *The Muse in Arms*. Throughout the anthology, there are images of war as a kind of delirium or madness. One of the poems contributed by Sassoon, 'The Rear-Guard', hints at a modest liberation achieved by leaving painful memories behind, though that liberation might be into death on the open battlefield:

At last, with sweat and horror in his hair,
He climbed through darkness to the twilight air,
Unloading hell behind him, step by step.

AFTER CHECKING GEORGE'S URINE in the en-suite bathroom I moved back to his bedside. Carol was sitting beside him now, stroking his arm and talking in a low, soothing voice. 'He has a urine infection,' I said. 'I'll just go out to the car and get some antibiotics for him.' Before leaving, I stood watching George for a moment. He still showed no sign of having noticed me, his lips continued to murmur, and sweat pooled at the corners of his eyes. I wondered how much of his memory had been lost in tangles of beta-amyloid and tau proteins, yet Carol had told me that, when well, he was able to remember much about the war seventy years earlier, and the stories behind each of his medals. With luck the antibiotics would nudge him out of his delirium, back to the habitual furrows along which his thoughts and his memories ran. In a delirium of memory loss we can lose much of what

we think of as identity; with treatment of his infection, and good care from staff like Carol, I hoped that George would find himself again.

Maggie led me back through three sets of doors, a different code punched in each time. We stepped out into the night. For a moment we stood together, savouring the moment of being between tasks, breathing open air. I walked over to the car, saw that two more visits had come through to the emergency services laptop, and picked up a box of antibiotics. On my way back towards the double doors I saw Maggie talking with the elderly lady I'd seen earlier – the one who had saluted me like a queen. She was explaining some urgent matter, eyes bright, hands animated. Maggie stood listening patiently, a hand on her shoulder, as if she had all night.

* Later sources speak of nine Muses, with fabulous names, including ‘lovely-voice’, ‘make-famous’, ‘heavenly-one’, ‘give-delight’, ‘beloved’, ‘song-celebration’, ‘many-hymns’, ‘dance-delighting’ and ‘flourishing’.

* There’s a suggestion that Borges himself possessed a prodigious eidetic memory. Many years after he had become blind, he was able to remember the book, page and which part of the page, he had first seen a particular quotation.

23

Death: The Celebration of Life

You can frighten people with death or an idea of their own mortality, or it can actually give them vigour.

Damien Hirst

A DETECTIVE INSPECTOR once told me that the key thing to remember at a crime scene was to keep your hands in your pockets; the temptation to reach out and touch a murder victim, or a potential murder weapon, could be overwhelming. He had little faith in forensic pathologists. ‘I was at a scene where a dead man lay slumped over a desk,’ he told me. ‘There was a narrow entry wound on the back of his head, and a hole in the victim’s forehead. A Bakelite phone on the desk was shattered into pieces – he had obviously been shot. The pathologist arrived: “Hmm,” he said. “Looks like we’re searching for a stiletto, or maybe a knife.”’

Once he was called to a high-rise block of flats. A body had been found in an advanced state of decomposition. ‘It was the strangest thing I’ve ever seen,’ he told me. ‘I had a witness saying she was alive only the day before, but the witness must have been wrong. There she was, turning into liquid.’

He had retired early, and I asked whether having dealt with so many murders had made him pessimistic about life. ‘Not pessimistic,’ he said, ‘but more philosophical. Enjoy it while it lasts.’

AFTER OUR BRIEF ENCOUNTERS in the clinic, my patients go out into the world, and it may be months or years until I see them again. Occasionally, I hear later from the hospital or the police that they've died. That death is usually in some way expected, or could at least have been anticipated. When death comes as a surprise, or is in some way suspicious, the body of the deceased goes for an autopsy, or post-mortem.

Recently, on the phone with a pathologist about a post-mortem report that she had prepared on one of my patients, I realised how rarely I had cause to speak to her or her colleagues. 'So much of my practice is guesswork,' I said to her, 'trying to figure out what's going on beneath my patients' skin. I envy you being able to take a look inside and figure out what's happening once and for all.' 'That's a misconception,' the pathologist, Charlotte Crichton, replied. 'We don't have all the answers either.' She invited me to come and see for myself.

I met Charlotte at 8.30 a.m. sharp, in her office, where she was busy with the police summaries for the morning's cases. There was a man whose body had been pulled from a river; fishing tackle had been found nearby. 'He might well have stumbled and drowned,' Charlotte said. There was a woman in her fifties, found dead on her sofa; Charlotte wanted to find out whether the woman had died of a heart attack, which seemed likely, or had been poisoned by gas or drugs. 'It's relatively unusual for us to do a post-mortem on a woman,' she said; 'it tends to be men who die violent or suspicious deaths.' Finally, there was a man with morbid obesity, found face down in his kitchen, who could conceivably have choked on some food he was preparing. The circumstances of each were detailed in a police report, listing witness statements, some medical history provided by the GP, and also any pertinent information provided by family members. There was a brisk professionalism about Charlotte's description of each patient, as well as an unmistakable curiosity. She was in the business of looking for answers, and hoped that the morning's work would deliver them.

I changed into blue hospital scrubs. Between the locker room and the autopsy suite was a tiled tray of the kind used to disinfect your feet at a swimming pool; rubber boots were lined up against the wall, next to a hose for washing them down. The suite was somewhere at the heart of the building and saw little natural light. There were three body-sized steel trays

at waist height; when there were enough pathologists around, autopsies could be carried out three at a time. The ventilators in the ceiling were designed to push air down and away from the noses of the pathologists. ‘At least that’s the idea,’ Charlotte said. ‘It doesn’t seem to work very well.’ Along one side of the room was a glass wall with seating behind it: a viewing gallery for students. A fluorescent purple Insect-O-Cutor blinked high on one wall next to a sign: ‘No eating, drinking or smoking.’ We tied on disposable aprons, rolled plastic gauntlets up our sleeves, tucked the gauntlets into surgical gloves, and were ready to start.

The first time I ever saw a dead body was in the first week of medical school, in the dissection room. It was the body of a man, partly skinned. Most of him was obscured under a linen cloth, but his right arm, stiff with rigor mortis, pointed at the ceiling. Preservatives had turned the muscles brown; they spiralled from the hand towards the elbow like ivy around a tree trunk.

In the mortuary, the first dead body – let’s call him Philip – was pulled out on a gurney. No linen cloth had been draped over him, no preservatives had been injected: his skin was grey and mottled, and for the most part intact, except where fish had nibbled. His eyes were half-open, and his head thrown back. The first task of the post-mortem examination was an external search for scratches, scars and injuries. Charlotte carefully examined his hands, nails and feet for evidence of a struggle, and pointed out that his right eye was bloodshot. ‘But look: his arm is reddened on the right too. So it’s only bloodshot from gravity, because he’s been lying on that side after he died.’

Charlotte took a scalpel and made a long cut from the notch at Philip’s throat to his pubic bone, and opened his abdominal cavity. Whether in operating theatres or anatomy classrooms, I’ve always been stunned by this moment of revelation: that just a few millimetres below the skin lies a glistening clockwork intricacy, the mechanisms that keep us alive. Philip had been dead for a few days, and his viscera were beginning to turn – I had to stifle a gag. But Charlotte was deft and businesslike (‘I only wear a mask when there are maggots’);^{*} she cut through his rectum and oesophagus, then lifted out all his major abdominal organs – liver, spleen, stomach, intestines – in one piece and onto a plastic tray. Left behind was a hollow, exenterated space. The tray was placed on an examination table for later, and we turned

back to the corpse.

The main artery of the leg enters the pelvis just to one side of the bladder. Charlotte squeezed some blood from it, to be sent away for analysis of drugs and toxins. ‘From my clinic I usually send urine for toxicology,’ I said. ‘So do we,’ she replied. But where I would send the patient off to the loo with a tiny sample bottle, she made a small hole in the top of the bladder with a knife and sucked some urine out with a syringe.

The next step was a delicate dissection of the neck – strikingly gentle after the vigorous opening of the abdomen. There are several layers of muscles in the neck, all of them involved in speech or swallowing. Charlotte peeled away the layers one by one, looking for signs of bruising or haemorrhage – anything that might suggest strangulation. (In anatomy class I was taught the same dissection; like an archaeologist tenderly brushing away earth, the tutor would elevate each strap muscle, eventually reaching the nerve that lies beneath.) There were no signs of bruising or struggle, and the hyoid bone – a C-shaped structure that anchors the tongue – was unbroken. ‘No signs of strangling or hanging,’ Charlotte said. ‘It’s always good to document it if you accidentally break the hyoid or the larynx in the removal, just in case the body is exhumed for a repeat examination.’

During the frontal cut Charlotte had left the ribs themselves untouched. Now she used secateurs to cut their front ends, all the way up to the collarbones. She cut those too, and lifted away the breastbone to expose the heart and lungs, gleaming in the chest. The heart is held within a tough membrane called the pericardium; Charlotte took care not to pierce it. Then she nimbly cut a U-shaped slice through the floor of the mouth and, because the neck muscles had already been dissected, she was able to pull the tongue, throat, windpipe, lungs and heart away in one piece.

Philip’s tongue lay on the dissection tray, slippery and purple, still attached to his throat and gullet. Charlotte began to make neat, precise cuts across its length looking for evidence that it had been bitten or chewed – injuries that might suggest the dead man had suffered an epileptic seizure or a biting struggle just before death. The tongue was normal, so she turned back to the table to deal with the head.

While we’d been busy at the dissection tray, the mortuary technicians had cut across the top of Philip’s scalp from ear to ear, exposing the skull, then peeled the forehead skin forwards over the face. The scalp had also

been pulled backwards, and the calvarium – the dome-like part of the skull – removed to reveal the brain. Charlotte scrutinised the membranes and confirmed that there was no evidence of haemorrhage or meningitis, then extracted the brain itself for examination.

Our brains can't bear their own weight out of the skull – that's why they float in briny cerebrospinal fluid, as the foetus floats weightless in the womb. Charlotte placed the brain to one side, creamy and grey, and it sagged into the contours of the tray. Then she stripped back the opalescent meninges of the skull and we peered into the smooth bowl of its base, where the nerves to the face, ears, eyes and tongue enter and exit. 'Have you ever seen an acoustic neuroma?' I asked her – a relatively rare tumour on the nerve running to the ear. 'Oh yes,' she said, 'they're commoner than you think.'

Charlotte pointed out the pearly translucence of the bone overlying the mechanism of the inner ear. 'Can you see it looks purplish – that's blood behind the bone, in the inner ear. You'd think it was a sign of head trauma, but we see that often in drownings.'

'Why?' I asked.

'Gravity,' she said. 'When bodies are carried along in the water they usually float head down, and blood within the veins and arteries begins to leak out of the blood vessels and into the inner ear.'^{*}

There were no fractures in the skull that we could feel. The mortuary technicians packed the space with cotton wool and put the calvarium back on. The skin was stitched over as if the brain had never been disturbed.

What was left of Philip lay on the stainless-steel table. All of his major organs had been removed, his abdomen disembowelled, his chest excavated, his ribcage splayed open. Charlotte cradled his head on the now spindle-thin neck, and rocked it gently from side to side, to feel if there were any broken bones. Because his throat and windpipe had been removed it was possible to run a finger along the front of the neck's vertebrae, to check they were all in alignment. Using a knife, she meticulously divided each rib from its neighbours, and moved it back and forth to feel if there were any fractures. The limbs and pelvis were left to themselves: 'There's not much that can kill you in the limbs,' she said. 'And now for the cut-up.'

All the major organs were now laid out in a couple of trays (as a medical student, this was the only part of a post-mortem I'd been allowed to see).

Charlotte proceeded methodically, at times with extraordinary finesse. There were moments when she slowed down and scrutinised the tissue in her hands as if struggling to read arcane script. Her examination of the heart, for example, involved making scores of tiny cuts through each of the coronary arteries, looking for any clots that might have caused a heart attack. There were moments too when she moved at speed, such as when she bisected each kidney, or cut the liver into broad slabs to look for cancer and cysts. It was surprising how much of the work she did by feel. ‘Some livers are greasy with fat,’ she told me. ‘Feel here’ – she held out a lobe of lung – ‘that rubberiness means it’s infected, but in the healthier tissue it feels airy and light. Emphysema feels different again; *too* light and airy, like bubble wrap.’ There was a creamy yellow plaque on the surface of one of Philip’s lungs (‘he had probably worked with asbestos’), and Charlotte took a wedge of it away for further examination under the microscope.

Each organ was weighed and carefully catalogued on a whiteboard at one end of the room. ‘We’re so used to the big hearts of overweight men that it comes as a surprise when we find one of normal size. We start thinking there’s something wrong with it.’ Charlotte opened Philip’s heart to examine its chambers, then looked in the pulmonary arteries for evidence of the jelly-like clots of pulmonary embolism. She guided my fingertips onto the lining of Philip’s aorta: it was porridgy, suggesting that he’d had high cholesterol – ‘Another big problem among the Scottish population,’ she said.

The tongue, throat and larynx had already been examined; now Charlotte looked along the length of the windpipe for tumours, then opened it from behind to look for any obstructions that might have caused choking – there were none. ‘There’s not much of interest generally in the abdomen,’ she said, ‘although we do sometimes see tumour seedlings from the bowel, and there are usually plenty of gallstones. See?’ She handed me Philip’s gall bladder: it felt like a bag of dice.

‘Do you ever find anything in the pancreas?’ I asked. ‘Sometimes tumours, sometimes a big gallstone blocks its exit, but usually not much.’ The pancreas generates the enzymes necessary to digest our food, and after death those enzymes are released. As a result, the pancreas auto-digests; the clean contours of the organ transform into liquid as it relents to its constituent parts.*

The long, smooth knives used in autopsies are known as ‘brain knives’ because their principal use is to cut sections through the brain. Charlotte methodically made sections across the brain’s width, starting at the front and moving slowly towards the back, each slice about a centimetre in depth. She did the same with the cerebellum, cutting through the connections that sustained his thought and his identity, hoping to reveal what might have brought about his death. All the sections were then arranged on a slab so that Charlotte could take in the whole structure of Philip’s brain in one glance. The brain was partly decomposed, yet the grey and white matter appeared distinct. There were no tumours, cysts or evidence of bleeding. Charlotte took samples from the hippocampus, and part of the cerebellum (the ‘dentate’). ‘They’re the parts of the brain most sensitive to lack of oxygen,’ she said, ‘so will show if he was struggling for air before he died.’

In the brains of people with Parkinson’s disease, pathologists notice an absence of dark tissue towards the brainstem – the so-called *substantia nigra*. ‘With vascular dementia,’ Charlotte said, ‘you see little speckles through the brain, and also in chronic carbon monoxide poisoning. In multiple sclerosis there are jellied pink areas, where the nerves’ fatty sheaths have broken down.’

All of Philip’s organs were placed back in the cavities of his chest and abdomen, and the wounds were stitched up until he looked just as he had when he was rolled into the autopsy suite. The samples Charlotte had taken were labelled, and would be sent off for further examination. ‘The toxicology will go off to the lab too,’ she said, ‘and we’ll see whether he might have been poisoned. But often post-mortem is inconclusive. It looks like he had a chest infection, he doesn’t seem to have been assaulted, and there was no obvious reason for a collapse.’

‘So what happens now?’

‘The procurator fiscal will take my report into account, but it’s only one part of the evidence.* It’s up to her to decide whether the death was suspicious, not me.’

I knew the routine now. Taking less than an hour with each, Charlotte performed the same sequence of examinations on the other two bodies. When we opened the skull of the woman in her fifties there was blood: she had died of a massive brain haemorrhage, not a heart attack. ‘What would the actual mode of death have been?’ I asked Charlotte.

‘She’s likely to have died very quickly,’ said Charlotte as she lifted out the woman’s brain; ‘either a rise in pressure within her cranium because of the haemorrhage would mean that blood couldn’t reach and circulate within it, or a brainstem seizure would have terminated her breathing, or even stopped her heart. Look, there’s the ruptured one,’ she said, gesturing among the small aneurysms that hung like grapes beneath the trellis of her brain. It looked like a tiny, deflated wineskin.

The obese man had indeed choked: when we opened the back of his windpipe, we found incontrovertible lumps of potato. ‘And with asphyxiation?’ I asked. ‘How long would it have taken him to die?’

‘He wouldn’t have suffered much either,’ she said, guessing what I was really asking. ‘Forensic studies of asphyxiation have found you lose consciousness within about ten seconds. By twelve or fifteen seconds, seizures begin.’ She went on to explain how, at first, blood would have gone on pumping between the man’s failing heart and his unconscious brain, until a tipping point was reached – oxygen deprivation would have begun to cause irreversible damage to both organs. I thought back to biochemistry class, and how delicately haemoglobin molecules are calibrated to sustain life. By the time he lost consciousness the man’s haemoglobin would have changed from a bright, lava red to a dusky amethyst purple. ‘With less oxygen in the blood, there comes a point when heart muscle can’t carry on,’ Charlotte said; ‘it goes into ventricular fibrillation, and the pulse stops.’

Processes all across the body that for decades had maintained life, stitching it together moment to moment – the filtering of blood in the kidneys, the sifting of toxins in the liver, the maintenance of breath in the brainstem – would have slowed to a stop over minutes. ‘By three or four minutes into an asphyxiation,’ said Charlotte, ‘there are no more signs of life.’

WHEN WE HAD FINISHED the last post-mortem I stripped off my apron, gauntlets and gloves, and hosed down my rubber boots. I stood for a long time in the shower, trying to wash off the smell of human dissolution. I had a clinic to go to in the afternoon, and so changed back into trousers, collar and tie, then went back through to Charlotte’s office. She was writing up her findings. As I walked in she looked up and smiled.

‘So what did you think?’ she asked.

‘You see so much death,’ I said, straightening my tie; ‘how does it affect you?’

She paused, and looked back to her papers. ‘I don’t think about it too much,’ she said at last. ‘But’ – she took a deep breath then smiled again – ‘a morning of post-mortems, it always makes me want to celebrate being alive.’

On the main road outside, a dead rat had been flattened by traffic; a crow was picking at its remains. I got on my bike and pedalled half a mile to my own clinic.

All that afternoon, and for a couple of months afterwards, after-images from the post-mortem room flashed through my memory. ‘Autopsy’ means ‘to see for oneself’ – it felt as if a veil had been pulled aside, and a terrible fragility revealed. I’d be talking with a patient then suddenly imagine them laid out on the mortuary slab, their eyes glazed, their blood cold and dark. Those moments were shocking, but also somehow motivating. Medicine is in some ways the art of postponing death, and I returned to my work with new energy.

* Forensic pathologists have to be entomologists too: the species of insects found on the body can predict the time of death to a remarkable degree. Edinburgh’s pathology department are developing new charts that take into account Scotland’s colder climate, and different patterns of insects.

* Thomas Browne quotes Pliny’s insistence that drowned women float prone, and drowned men belly up, *veluti pudori defunctorum parcente natura* – ‘nature modestly ordaining this position to conceal the shame of the dead’. He was wrong.

* Thomas Browne, *Urne Buriall* I. ‘Some, being of the opinion of Thales, that water was the original of all things, thought it most equal to submit unto the principle of putrefaction, and conclude in a moist relentment.’

* A Scottish role roughly comparable to that of a coroner.

24

Transformations

How long can this go on? But let us by all means extend the scope of our charts.

Annie Dillard, *Holy the Firm*

JUST UNDER FOUR THOUSAND people are registered with my medical practice, and at times their difficulties seem to flow like a torrent through the clinic. But I'm conscious that my colleagues and I catch only the briefest glimpse of their lives, our consultations just momentary eddies in a vast tide of human life. Across the span of a morning clinic I might arrange an admission to a hospice, mitigate a storm of anxiety, explore a worrying discomfort, medicate a feverish baby, adjust some antipsychotics, assess a healing fracture. I might celebrate a remission of cancer, or commiserate over its diagnosis; voice congratulations on the safe birth of a baby, and condolences over the death of a spouse. Some of the work is modest and routine, some is urgent and dramatic, most of it is rewarding and worthwhile. At its best, medicine invokes and influences human change, and the possibility of change means hope.

There's a quick walk I can take from my medical office up to an outcrop of cliffs overlooking Edinburgh's city centre. The cliffs are known as 'Salisbury Crags', and the land around them has long been a protected royal park. The view from them always grants perspective. Their rock is of

cooled magma, thrust out more than three hundred million years ago by the pleating and wrenching of the earth's crust. Scotland lay nearer the equator then, and the local bedrock – an uplifted ocean floor – was already ancient. You can still see the step between the softer sandstone base and the hard magma intrusion of the cliffs. For centuries, the city streets were cobbled with the durable rocks of Salisbury Crags.



In the 1780s a local physician, chemist and farmer called James Hutton examined the crags, and realised what they testified: the earth's surface was not static, but slowly churning. He delivered a paper to the Royal Society of Edinburgh arguing that the sandstone beneath the crags had been created 'in the unfathomable regions of the sea', before rising up to become land. He was resurrecting an ancient idea: in the *Metamorphoses*, Ovid described land and sea caught in cycles of transformation, one into another: 'I have seen what once was solid earth now changed into sea,' Ovid wrote, 'and lands created out of what once was ocean.' Hutton summoned a vision of eternal, universal flux: 'we find no vestige of a beginning – no prospect of an end.'

From my habitual perch on the clifftop I can see my practice area laid out below me like a living map. Patches of cloud shadow and light move over the face of the city, merging and dividing. The fluid lives of my patients are reflected in the street movements of cars and pedestrians. From up there I can see the old medical school and the adjacent park of elm and cherry trees, where I first had a revelation of the dynamism and elegance of biochemistry. There's the tree where Gary Hobbes fell, convinced he'd become a cat, as well as the housing scheme where Hannah Mollier conceived three pregnancies, and Harry Alkman injected himself with bodybuilding drugs. There are the bars and tattoo parlours my patients frequent; their apartments, offices and college halls. To the north, there's the

morgue, to the south, the crematorium, and between them, the green baize of several burial grounds. There's the rehabilitation hospital I refer to for prosthetics, and the sexual health centre with its menopause and gender clinics. Off to the west there's the hill of Craiglockhart, where W. H. R. Rivers sought the redemption of war memories; closer by there's the dementia centre run by his heirs. Visible too is a research institute where, even now, genetic mutations that were millennia in evolution are being replicated in minutes. Our species has the power now to transform its own DNA – an ability that may yet prove a curse, or a consolation.

Ovid's *Metamorphoses* ends on a note of optimism. It conjures a vision of the citizens of Rome, out on the streets to receive the god of medicine who has journeyed from Greece to save the city from a pestilence. The god arrives in the form of a snake, symbol of transformation and renewal; it winds through the streets before coming to rest on an island that divides the flow of the river Tiber. Once there, the god 'resumed his divine appearance, put an end to the citizens' distress, and brought health to the city by his coming'. The final lines see Julius Caesar deified, hoisted to heaven, and transformed into a star. Ovid proclaims that the magnificence of his own poem has rendered him immortal. But no one is immortal, nothing is eternal, everything is in flux – even the stars.

This world always was, is, and will be an ever-living Fire, with measures of it kindling, and measures going out... it rests by changing.

Heraclitus, *Fragments* 30, 84

Gratitude

TWENTY YEARS OF REMEMBERED clinical encounters are the inspiration for this book, and the people to whom I'm most grateful are my patients. The requirement to honour their confidentiality means that they must go unthanked individually. I'm also thankful to Andrew Franklin, Cecily Gayford and Penny Daniel of Profile, and Kirty Topiwala of the Wellcome Collection, for their trust, support and editorial talent. Susanne Hillen copy-edited the manuscript beautifully. A bouquet of gratitude too for Jenny Brown – the only literary agent I know who offers babysitting.

I'm grateful to Lee Illis for his insights into porphyria and lycanthropy, and Genevieve Lively for permitting me to quote from her book on Ovid. Some ideas in 'Conception' were inspired by Thomas Laqueur's 1986 essay 'Orgasm, generation, and the politics of reproductive biology'. Carrie Vout of Cambridge University kept me right with Ovid, and with Hercules. Douglas Cairns kept me right with Heraclitus and with Nicander. 'Bodybuilding' couldn't have been written without Sven Lindqvist's *Bench Press*. Claire Preston's work on Thomas Browne was instrumental in the writing of 'Scalp'. Malcolm MacCallum at the University of Edinburgh has given enormously of his time and energy in supporting my research for this book. Thomas Morris's *The Matter of the Heart* helped me in writing 'Birth' and Marina Warner guided me through European and Near Eastern rejuvenation myths. I gratefully acknowledge the contribution to 'Anorexia' of Katy Waldman's brilliant *Slate* essay 'There once was a girl'. For 'Hallucination', I gratefully thank Theresa Kiyota and acknowledge the influence of Paul and John Lysaker's 2010 'Schizophrenia and alterations in self-experience'. Thomas Williams of the University of Edinburgh and Louise Bath of Edinburgh's Royal Hospital for Sick Children both gave

generously of their time and their thoughts in helping me with ‘Puberty’ and ‘Gigantism’, as did James Hall and Iain McClure. For ‘Pregnancy’, I’m grateful to Chitra Ramaswamy for allowing me to quote from her book *Expecting*. Maggie Nelson graciously permitted me to quote from *The Argonauts*, and Elan Anthony to quote his views on detransitioning. I’m grateful to Professor Dick Swaab for confirming with me the details of the post-mortem studies quoted in ‘Gender’. Diane Mickley permitted me to quote her views on anorexia. Thanks are due to Professor Jo Arendt for supervising my Masters thesis on circadian clocks in Antarctica – some of the material in ‘Jetlag’ is thanks to her. James Kern generously gave permission to quote his words on the redemption of unwanted tattoos. I’m grateful to Stephen Owens, Kalilu Sanneh and Conor Doherty, for welcoming me to Keneba in the Gambia. Thanks to Ailsa Gebbie for inviting me to her menopause clinic in Edinburgh, and to the late Ursula Le Guin, Louise Foxcroft, Germaine Greer and Iona Heath, for giving me permission to reproduce their reflections on the menopause, published and unpublished. Sergio Bestente introduced me to Martha Feldman’s book *The Castrato* and is a fine editor and friend; thanks to the estate of Anatole Broyard for giving permission to quote from his collection of essays. Penguin Books granted kind permission to quote from *Metamorphosis* by Ovid. trans. Mary M. Innes. Copyright © Mary M. Innes, 1995. Andrew Gannon, Olivia Giles and Jamie Andrew all gave generously of their time in helping me understand more about their use of, and work with, prosthetic limbs. Professor Richard Morris of the University of Edinburgh shared his ideas on memory and brain injury. Thanks to Karen Edgar in New York, and the estate of Alexander Luria in Moscow, for permitting me to quote Luria’s letter to Oliver Sacks, previously published in *The Man Who Mistook His Wife for a Hat*. Damien Hirst kindly granted permission to quote his comments to *The Telegraph* on death and vigour. David Farrier and Peter Dorward read an early version of the typescript and gave insightful comments.

An early version of ‘Gender’ first appeared in *The New Republic* in November 2015; the writing of it, with the help of Sarah Kennedy and Jennifer Whyte, set me off on a journey into human transformation. I’m grateful to the editors for permitting elements of it to be reproduced here, and to Laura Marsh and Emma Foehringer Merchant for their skill in

editing it. Earlier versions of ‘Werewolves’ and ‘Death’ first appeared in the *London Review of Books*; I’m grateful to Mary-Kay Wilmers for permitting them to be reproduced here, and Paul Myerscough for editing them so attentively. Some of the material in ‘Sleep’ was unearthed during research for my essay ‘Cerebral Hygiene’, published in the *London Review of Books*, and material on the networks of synaptic plasticity reproduced in ‘Memory’ was courtesy of research for my piece on Santiago Ramón y Cajal, ‘In The Flower Garden of the Brain’ in *the New York Review of Books*.

My colleagues at Dalkeith Road Medical Practice are incomparable: thanks to Teresa Quinn, Fiona Wright, Ishbel White, Janis Blair, Geraldine Fraser, Pearl Ferguson, Jenna Pemberton, Lynsay McDonald, Sharon Lawson, and Nicola Gray.

My final thanks are to Esa, for all the changes so far through the seasons of our lives.



Credit: Thomas Farnan, Wellcome Trust

Gavin Francis is a physician and the award-winning author of four books, including *Adventures in Human Being*, *Empire Antarctica*, and *True North*. A regular contributor to the *London Review of Books*, *Guardian*, and *New York Review of Books*, Francis lives in Edinburgh, Scotland. For more information, visit www.gavinfrancis.com or follow him on Twitter @gavinfranc.

ALSO BY GAVIN FRANCIS

True North: Travels in Arctic Europe
Empire Antarctica: Ice, Silence and Emperor Penguins
Adventures in Human Being



WELLCOME COLLECTION is a free museum and library that aims to challenge how we think and feel about health. Inspired by the medical objects and curiosities collected by Henry Wellcome, it connects science, medicine, life and art. Wellcome Collection exhibitions, events and books explore a diverse range of subjects, including consciousness, forensic medicine, emotions, sexology, identity and death.

Wellcome Collection is part of Wellcome, a global charitable foundation that exists to improve health for everyone by helping great ideas to thrive, funding over 14,000 researchers and projects in more than seventy countries.

wellcomecollection.org

Notes on Sources

1. Transformations

[here](#) Ovid, *Metamorphoses*, Book XV, lines 169–75.

2. Werewolves: Agitation at the Full Moon

[here](#) Genevieve Liveley, *Ovid's 'Metamorphoses'* (London: Continuum Books, 2011), p. 22.

[here](#) M. D. Angus, 'The rejection of two explanations of belief in a lunar influence on behavior', in D. E. Vance, ed., 'Belief in lunar effects on human behavior', *Psychological Reports*, 76 (1995), p. 32.

[here](#) Charles Raison, Haven Klein and Morgan Steckler, 'The moon and madness reconsidered', *The Journal of Affective Disorders* vol. 53, no. 1, April 1999, pp. 99–106.

[here](#) Jean-Étienne Esquirol, *Mental Maladies, A Treatise On Insanity* (Philadelphia: Lea and Blanchard, 1845, translated from the French), pp. 32–33.

[here](#) In 1969 it was proposed that King George III (reigned 1760–1820) had a variant of porphyria, but this has since been debunked as unlikely. See I. Macalpine and R. Hunter, *George III and the Mad Business* (London: Penguin Press, 1969).

[here](#) L. Illis, 'On porphyria and the aetiology of werewolves', *Proceedings of the Royal Society of Medicine* vol. 57, 1964, pp. 23–26.

[here](#) *Encyclopaedia Metropolitana*, Edward Smedley, Hugh James Rose and Henry John Rose, eds (London: B. Fellowes et al., 1845), p. 618.

[here](#) Paul M. C. Forbes Irving, *Metamorphosis in Greek Myths* (Oxford:

Clarendon Press, 1990).

[here](#) *The History of the World, Commonly Called the Natural History of C. Plinius Secundus, or Pliny* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1964), Book VIII, chapter 22, p. 65.

[here](#) Virgil, *Eclogues* VI, ‘The Song of Silenus’.

[here](#) Daniel 4:33.

[here](#) C. G. Jung, *Collected Works*, vol. 17 (London: Routledge and Kegan Paul, 1954). Jung’s story is an interesting reversal of the legend of Dante Alighieri’s mother, who famously dreamed while pregnant that her unborn son would transform into a peacock.

[here](#) See Forbes Irving, *Metamorphosis in Greek Myths*.

[here](#) Paul E. Keck, Harrison G. Pope, James I. Hudson, Susan L. McElroy and Aaron R. Kulick, ‘Lycanthropy: alive and well in the twentieth century’, *Psychological Medicine* vol. 18, no. 1, 1988, pp. 113–20.

3. Conception: The First and Second Reason for Existing

[here](#) Quoted in Sarah Bakewell, *How to Live: A Life of Montaigne in One Question and Twenty Attempts at an Answer* (London: Random House, 2011), p. 20.

[here](#) Notebook from 1504: ‘Questo scriver si distintamente del nibbio par che sia mio destino, perchè nella prima ricordatione della mia infantia e’ mi parea che, essendo io in culla, un nibbio venisse a me e mi aprissi la bocca colla sua coda e molte volte mi percuotesse colla sua coda dentro alle labbra.’ Translated in Meyer Shapiro’s paper ‘Leonardo and Freud – An art historical study’, *Journal of the History of Ideas* vol. 17, no. 2, April 1956, pp. 47–78: ‘This writing distinctly about the vulture seems to be my destiny, because among the first recollections of my infancy it seemed to me that as I lay in my cradle a vulture came to me and opened my mouth with its tail and struck me many times with its tail inside my lips.’

[here](#) Pliny’s *Natural History*: ‘It seems that this bird by the movements of its tail taught the art of steermanship, nature demonstrating in the sky what was required in the deep.’

[here](#) In English it was published another twenty years later, in 1545, as *The Byrth of Mankynde*.

- [here](#) Cited in V. C. Medvei, *A History of Endocrinology* (Lancaster and Hingham, Massachusetts: MTP Press, 1982), p. 357; Albrecht von Haller, *Physiology: Being a Course of Lectures*, vol. 2 (1754), paragraphs 823–26, pp. 301–303.
- [here](#) Q. U. Newell et al., ‘The time of ovulation in the menstrual cycle as checked by the recovery of ova from the Fallopian tubes’, *American Journal of Obstetrics and Gynecology*, vol. 19, February 1930, pp. 180–85; George W. Corner, ‘Our knowledge of the menstrual cycle, 1910–1950’, *The Lancet* vol. 240, no. 6661, 28 April 1951, pp. 919–23.
- [here](#) Robert Latou Dickinson, *Human Sex Anatomy* (Baltimore: The Wilton and Williams Company, 1933). Dickinson lists dozens of German sources, including Litzmann (1846), Kristeller (1871), Wernich (1872) and Kisch (1895).
- [here](#) Dickinson, *Human Sex Anatomy*, p. vii.
- [here](#) Ibid., p. 84.
- [here](#) Ibid., p. 109.
- [here](#) ‘Magnetic resonance imaging of male and female genitals during coitus and female sexual arousal’, in *BMJ* vol. 319, 1999, pp. 596–600.

4. Sleep: The Chamber of Dreams

- [here](#) Fabian Guénolé, Geoffrey Marcaggi and Jean-Marc Baleylete, ‘Do dreams really guard sleep? Evidence for and against Freud’s theory of the basic function of dreaming’, *Frontiers in Psychology* vol. 4, no. 17, 2013.
- [here](#) As translated by Henry Riley, London, 1893.
- [here](#) *The Epic of Gilgamesh*, Book III: ‘then he transformed me so that my arms became wings covered with feathers’.
- [here](#) Richard Stephenson and Vern Lewis, ‘Behavioural evidence for a sleep-like quiescent state in a pulmonate mollusc, *Lymnaea stagnalis* (Linnaeus)’, *Journal of Experimental Biology* vol. 214, 2011 pp. 747–56.
- [here](#) *The Interpretation of Dreams, digested into five books by that ancient and excellent philosopher, Artemidorus*, Robert Wood, trans.

(London, 1644).

5. Bodybuilding: Unhelmed by Fury

[here](#) Quoted by Xenophon in *Memorabilia*, Book II, chapter 1, in E. C. Marchant, ed., *Xenophon 4* (Cambridge, Massachusetts: Harvard University Press; London: William Heinemann, Ltd, 1923).

[here](#) The trophy turned out to be brass thinly plated in gold. See Andrew Lycett, *Conan Doyle: The Man Who Created Sherlock Holmes* (London: Phoenix Books, 2008), p. 284.

[here](#) For a deeper exploration of these themes, see Maria Wyke, ‘Herculean muscle!: The classicizing rhetoric of bodybuilding’, *Journal of Humanities and the Classics*, Third Series, vol. 4, no. 3, Winter, 1997, pp. 51–79.

[here](#) Arnold Schwarzenegger: *The Education of a Bodybuilder* (London: Sphere Books, 1979), pp. 14–15.

[here](#) Psychiatrists have found a preponderance of ‘pathological narcissism’ among weightlifters, particularly those who use steroids. See J. H. Porcerelli and B. A. Sandler, ‘Narcissism and empathy in steroid users’, *American Journal of Psychiatry* vol. 152, no. 11, 1995, pp. 1672–74.

[here](#) Arnold Schwarzenegger, *Encyclopedia of Modern Bodybuilding* (London: Michael Joseph, 1987), p. 725.

[here](#) *The Complete Greek Drama Volume One*, Whitney J. Oates and Eugene O’Neill Jr, eds, with plays by Euripides translated by E. P. Coleridge (New York: Random House, 1938).

[here](#) See, for example, Brian Corrigan, ‘Anabolic steroids and the mind’, *Medical Journal of Australia* vol. 165, 1996, pp. 222–26.

[here](#) Helen Keane, ‘Diagnosing the male steroid user: drug use, body image and disordered masculinity’, *Health* vol. 9, no. 2, 2005, pp. 89–208.

6. Scalp: Of Horns, Terror and Glory

[here](#) *Totem and Taboo*, in *The Standard Edition of the Complete Psychological Works of Sigmund Freud*, vol. XIII (London: Hogarth Press, 1955), p. 213.

[here](#) ‘Equally amazed was Cipus, the Republican general, when he looked

at himself in the waters of the river: for he saw horns sprouting from his brow.' Ovid, *Metamorphoses*, Mary Innes, trans. (London: Penguin Classics, 1955), Book XV, line 560.

- [here](#) Sir Thomas Browne, *Selected Writings*, Claire Preston, ed. (Manchester: Carcanet Press, 1995), *Pseudodoxia Epidemica*, p. 69.
- [here](#) Leon J. Saul, MD and Clarence Bernstein Jr, MD, 'Emotional settings of some attacks of Urticaria', *Psychosomatic Medicine* vol. 3, no. 3, October 1941, pp. 49–69.

- [here](#) L. Landois, 'Das plötzliche Ergrauen der Haupthaare', *Archiv für pathologische Anatomie und Physiologie* vol. 35, 1866, p. 575.

- [here](#) For an irreverent but scholarly appreciation of the phenomenon, see J. E. Jelinek's review 'Sudden whitening of the hair', presented at a meeting of the Section on Historical Medicine of the New York Academy of Medicine, 22 March 1972.

- [here](#) Byron recognised that the phenomenon didn't happen overnight, when he wrote of Sforza in *The Prisoner of Chillon*, as quoted at the beginning of this chapter: 'My hair is grey/ but not with years / Nor grew it white / In a single night / As men's have grown from sudden fears.'

- [here](#) Stefan Zweig, *Mary Stuart* (London: Pushkin Press, 2010); Wordsworth's 'Lament for Mary Queen of Scots': 'Those shocks of passion can prepare / That kill the bloom before its time / And blanch, without the owner's crime / The most resplendent hair.'

7. Birth: Reshaping the Heart

- [here](#) M. S. Sutton, A. Groves and A. MacNeill et al., 'Assessment of changes in blood flow through the lungs and foramen ovale in the normal human fetus with gestational age: a prospective Doppler echocardiographic study', *Heart* vol. 71, 1994, pp. 232–37.

- [here](#) D. C. Little et al., 'Patent ductus arteriosus in micropreemies and full-term infants: The relative merits of surgical ligation versus indomethacin treatment', *Journal of Pediatric Surgery* vol. 38, no. 3, 2003, pp. 492–96.

- [here](#) Quoted in Charles Harris, *The Heart and the Vascular System in Ancient Greek Medicine: From Alcmaeon to Galen* (Oxford:

Clarendon Press, 1973), pp. 294–95.

[here](#) J. E. Dice and J. Bhatia, ‘Patent ductus arteriosus: An overview’, *The Journal of Pediatric Pharmacology and Therapeutics* vol. 12, no. 3, July–September 2007, pp. 138–46.

[here](#) Robert E. Gross, MD, ‘Surgical management of the patent ductus arteriosus with summary of four surgically treated cases’, *Annals of Surgery* vol. 110, no. 3, 1939, pp. 321–56.

8. Rejuvenation: An Alchemy of Youth and Beauty

[here](#) A. S. F. Gow and A. F. Scholfield, *Nicander: The Poems and Poetical Fragments* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1953), pp. 42–45. This is fragment 62.

[here](#) Mikhail Bulgakov, *The Master and Margarita*, Michael Glenny, trans. (London: Vintage Classics, 2010).

[here](#) *Chou-i ts'an t'ung ch'i*.

9. Tattooing: The Art of Transformation

[here](#) Arthur Conan Doyle, *The Red-Headed League*, p. 3.

[here](#) See Donaghy’s poem ‘Liverpool’ in *Errata* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1993).

[here](#) See Ronald Scutt and Christopher Gotch, *Skin Deep* (London: Peter Davies Ltd, 1974).

[here](#) See Chee-Leok Goh and Stephanie G. Ho, ‘Lasers for tattoo removal’, in K. Lahiri, A. De and A. Sarda, *Textbook of Lasers in Dermatology* (London: J. P. Medical Ltd, 2016).

10. Anorexia: The Enchantment of Control

[here](#) Diane Mickley, MD, Wilkins Center for Eating Disorders, Greenwich, Connecticut; personal communication.

[here](#) Rudolph Bell, *Holy Anorexia* (Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1985).

[here](#) L. K. Oyewumi and S. S. Kazarian, ‘Abnormal eating attitudes among a group of Nigerian youths: II. Anorexic behaviour’, *East African Medical Journal* vol. 69, 1992, pp. 67–69.

- [here](#) S. Lee, T. Ho and L. Hsu, ‘Fat phobic and non-fat phobic anorexia nervosa: a comparative study of 70 Chinese patients in Hong Kong’, *Psychological Medicine* vol. 23, 1993, pp. 99–1017.
- [here](#) D. Wassenaar, D. le Grange and J. Winship et al. ‘The prevalence of eating disorder pathology in a cross-ethnic population of female students in South Africa’, *European Eating Disorders Review* vol. 8, 2000, pp. 25–36.
- [here](#) M. Husni, N. Koye and J. Haggarty, ‘Severe anorexia in an Amish Mennonite teenager’, *The Canadian Journal of Psychiatry* vol. 46, no. 2, 2001, p. 183.
- [here](#) There are an abundance of these, but in terms of essay-length pieces I can recommend Carrie Arnold’s ‘A grown-up approach to treating anorexia’, published online by Mosaic Science on 29 March 2016 (mosaicscience.com).
- [here](#) Charles Lasègue, ‘On Hysterical Anorexia’, 1873.
- [here](#) ‘There once was a girl – against the false narratives of anorexia’, *Slate*, December 2015 cover story.

11. Hallucination: A Sphere of Devils

- [here](#) Eugen Bleuler, *Dementia Praecox, or the Group of Schizophrenias*, Joseph Zinkin, trans. (New York: International Universities Press, 1950), p. 143.
- [here](#) D. T. Suzuki, in the preface to R. H. Blyth, *Zen and Zen Classics Volume Four ‘Mumonkan’* (Tokyo: Hokusaido Press, 1966).
- [here](#) See Koji Sato’s illuminating paper, ‘D. T. Suzuki, Zen and LSD 25’, *Psychologia* vol. 10, 1967, pp. 129–32.
- [here](#) Johann M. Faber, *Strychnomania explicans strychni manici antiquorum, vel solani furiosi recentiorum, historiae monumentum, indolis nocumentum, antidoti documentum*, 1677.
- [here](#) R. D. Laing, *The Divided Self* (New York: Penguin Books, 1978), p. 151.
- [here](#) Giovanni Stanghellini, *Disembodied Spirits and Deanimated Bodies* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2004), p. 126.

12. Puberty: Suddenly Accelerated Youth

- [here](#) J. M. Tanner, *Growth at Adolescence 2nd Edn* (Oxford: Blackwell, 1962), p. 240.
- [here](#) W. A. Marshall and J. M. Tanner, ‘Variation in the pattern of pubertal changes in girls’, *Archives of Disease in Childhood* vol. 44, 1969, p. 291; and W. A. Marshall and J. M. Tanner, ‘Variation in the pattern of pubertal changes in boys’, *Archives of Disease in Childhood* vol. 45, 1970, p. 13.
- [here](#) See James S. Chisholm et al., ‘Early stress predicts age at menarche and first birth, adult attachment, and expected lifespan’, *Human Nature* vol. 16, no. 3, 2005, pp. 233–65.
- [here](#) Tanner, *Growth at Adolescence* (1962), p. 220, referencing L. K. Frank, R. Harrison, E. Hellersberg, K. Machover and M. Steiner, ‘Personality development in adolescent girls’, *Monographs of the Society for Research in Child Development* vol. 16, 1951, p. 316.
- [here](#) J. M. Siegel et al., ‘Body image, perceived pubertal timing, and adolescent mental health’, *Journal of Adolescent Health* vol. 25, no. 2, August 1999, pp. 55–65.
- [here](#) C. Berge, ‘Heterochronic processes in human evolution: An ontogenetic analysis of the hominid pelvis’, *American Journal of Physical Anthropology* vol. 105, no. 4, pp. 41–59.

13. Pregnancy: The Most Meticulous Work

- [here](#) Hogarth’s personal correspondence, quoted in John L. Thornton and Patricia C. Want, ‘William Hunter (1718–1783) and his contributions to obstetrics’, *British Journal of Obstetrics and Gynaecology* vol. 90, September 1983, pp. 787–94.
- [here](#) I. Donald, J. Macvicar and T. G. Brown, ‘The investigation of abdominal masses by pulsed ultrasound’, *Lancet* vol. 271, no. 7032, 7 June 1958, pp. 188–95.
- [here](#) Chitra Ramaswamy, *Expecting: The Inner Life of Pregnancy* (Salford: Saraband, 2006), p. 101.
- [here](#) Ibid., p. 67.
- [here](#) Peter M. Dunn, ‘Leonardo da Vinci (1452–1519) and reproductive anatomy’, *BMJ* vol. 77, no. 3, November 1997.
- [here](#) From da Vinci’s notebooks, quoted in Antonio J. Ferreira, ‘Emotional

factors in prenatal environment: A review', *Journal of Nervous and Mental Disease* vol. 141, no. 1, July 1965, pp. 108–18.

[here](#) Virginia Woolf, *Orlando: A Biography* (Oxford: Oxford University Press, 2014), p. 136.

[here](#) Margaret Atwood, *The Handmaid's Tale* (London: Vintage, 2016), p. 42 and p. 43.

[here](#) Chitra Ramaswamy, *Expecting*, p. 70.

[here](#) J. van Rynsdyk and A. van Rynsdyk, *Museum Britannicum* (London: Moore, 1778), p. 83.

[here](#) Notes from an exhibition: 'Contributions of the Hunter brothers to our understanding of reproduction: An exhibition from the University Library's collections', Special Collections department, Glasgow University Library 16 July–30 September 1992.

[here](#) See Margaret Hunt, *Women in Eighteenth-Century Europe* (London: Routledge, 2009), p. 100.

[here](#) *An anatomical description of the human gravid uterus and its contents, by the Late William Hunter, MD* (London: printed for J. Johnson, and G. Nicol, 1794).

14. Gigantism: Two Giants of Turin

[here](#) *Selected Letters of Friedrich Nietzsche*, Christopher Middleton, trans. (Indianapolis: Hackett, 1996), p. 296.

[here](#) *Selected Letters of Friedrich Nietzsche*, Christopher Middleton, trans., letter to Peter Gast, 30 October 1888, p. 318.

[here](#) Friedrich Nietzsche, *Ecce Homo* (London: Macmillan, 1911), p. 120.

[here](#) Friedrich Nietzsche, *Philosophy in the Tragic Age of the Greeks*, Marianne Cowan, trans. (Washington, DC: Regnery Publishing, 1996), p. 3.

[here](#) John of Salisbury: 'Bernard of Chartres used to compare us to [puny] dwarfs perched on the shoulders of giants', *Metalogicon* (1159), quoted in *The Metalogicon of John of Salisbury: A Twelfth-Century Defense of the Verbal and Logical Arts of the Trivium*, Daniel D. McGarry, trans. (Westport, Connecticut: Greenwood Press, 1982).

[here](#) At least according to Miroslav Holub, the Czech poet and immunologist. See 'The intimate life of nude mice', in *The*

Dimension of the Present Moment and Other Essays (London: Faber and Faber, 1990), p. 39.

[here](#) See J. T. Lie and S. J. Grossman, ‘Pathology of the heart in acromegaly: anatomic findings in 27 autopsied patients’, *American Heart Journal* vol. 100, no. 1, 1980, pp. 1–52.

[here](#) Quoted in Walter Kaufmann, *Nietzsche: Philosopher, Psychologist, Antichrist* (Princeton: Princeton University Press, 1974), p. 46.

[here](#) Stephen Hall, *Size Matters* (Boston: Houghton Mifflin, 2006), p. 177.

[here](#) ‘That to philosophize is to learn to die’, in *The Complete Essays of Montaigne*, Donald Frame, trans. (Palo Alto, California: Stanford University Press, 1965), p. 67.

[here](#) *The Complete Works of Montaigne*, Donald Frame, trans. (Palo Alto, California: Stanford University Press, 1957), pp. 69–70.

15. Gender: The Two Lives of Tiresias

[here](#) F. Abraham, ‘Genitalumwandlungen an zwei männlichen Transvestiten’, *Zeitschrift für Sexualwissenschaft und Sexualpolitik* vol. 18, 1931, pp. 23–26, translated and republished as ‘Genital reassignment on two male transvestites’, *International Journal of Transgenderism* vol. 2, no. 1, January–March 1998.

[here](#) Burou is quoted on the website, Trans Media Watch.

[here](#) This was suggested in a 1995 paper in *Nature*: J.-N. Zhou, M. A. Hofman, L. J. Gooren and D. F. Swaab, ‘A sex difference in the human brain and its relation to transsexuality’, *Nature* vol. 378, pp. 68–70. A later study from California disputed the chain of causation, arguing that the brain structure changed slowly over time due to a change in behaviour.

[here](#) Maggie Nelson, *The Argonauts* (London: Melville Press, 2016), pp. 65, 103.

[here](#) *The Guardian*, ‘Family’ section, 16 September 2017, p. 5.

16. Jetlag: The Brain that Holds the Sky

[here](#) Aarti Jagannath et al., ‘The CRTC1-SIK1 pathway regulates entrainment of the circadian clock’, *Cell* vol. 154, no. 5, 29 August 2013, pp. 100–111.

[here](#) Gavin Francis et al., ‘Sleep during the Antarctic winter: Preliminary observations on changing the spectral composition of artificial light’, *Journal of Sleep Research* vol. 17, 2008, pp. 54–60.

17. Bonesetting: An Algebra of Healing

[here](#) See Michael Marmot, *Status Syndrome* (London: Bloomsbury, 2015).

18. Menopause: Third Face of the Goddess

[here](#) ‘The 30 or 35 years of menstrual life, i.e. from puberty to menopause’, ‘Ovarian Tumours’, 1872, cited in the *Shorter Oxford English Dictionary*.

[here](#) Respectively, ‘Georgius Castriotus... died upon this day in his climactericall year 63’ in Lloyd’s *Dial Daises*; and ‘the climacteric effacement of the breast’ in Bryant’s *Practical Surgery*, as cited in the *OED*.

[here](#) Louise Foxcroft, *Hot Flushes, Cold Science: A History of the Menopause* (London: Granta, 2009), from the introduction.

[here](#) Roy Porter, *The Greatest Benefit to Mankind: A Medical History of Humanity* (London: HarperCollins, 1999), pp. 706–7.

[here](#) Nancy Datan, ‘Aging into transitions: Cross-cultural perspectives on women at midlife’, in *The Meanings of Menopause*, Ruth Formanek, ed. (Hillsdale, New Jersey: The Analytic Press, 1990), pp. 117–31.

[here](#) Eleanor Mann et al., ‘Cognitive behavioural treatment for women who have menopausal symptoms after breast cancer treatment (MENOS 1): a randomised controlled trial’, *The Lancet Oncology* vol. 13, no. 3, March 2012, pp. 309–18.

[here](#) Germaine Greer, *The Change: Women, Ageing and the Menopause* (London: Hamish Hamilton, 1991), p. 124.

[here](#) Carol Gilligan, *In a Different Voice: Psychological Theory and Women’s Development* (Cambridge, Massachusetts: Harvard University Press, 1982), p. 171.

[here](#) Ursula K. Le Guin, ‘The Space Crone’, in *Dancing at the Edge of the World* (New York: Grove Press, 1989).

19. Castration: Hope, Love and Sacrifice

[here](#) Quoted in Anatole Broyard, ‘Reading and writing; Life before death’, *New York Times*, 6 June 1982.

[here](#) Martha Feldman, *The Castrato* (Oakland, California: University of California Press, 2015), p. 14.

[here](#) Anatole Broyard, *Intoxicated by my Illness* (New York: Fawcett Columbine, 1992), p. 22.

[here](#) Ibid.

[here](#) Ibid., p. 36.

[here](#) Ibid., p. 40.

[here](#) Ibid., p. 26.

[here](#) Ibid., p. 27.

[here](#) Brian Steidle and Gretchen Wallace, *The Devil Came on Horseback: Bearing Witness to the Genocide in Darfur* (New York: Perseus Books, 2007), p. 88.

[here](#) Sir Thomas Browne, *Selected Writings*, Claire Preston, ed., *Pseudodoxia Epidemica*.

[here](#) Lucretius, *The Nature of Things* (London: Penguin Classics, 2007), Book VI, line 1207.

[here](#) Matthew 19:12.

20. Laughter: Some Eminency in Ourselves

[here](#) M. Demir, ‘Effects of laughter therapy on anxiety, stress, depression and quality of life in cancer patients’, *The Journal of Cancer Science & Therapy* vol. 7, 2015, pp. 272–73.

[here](#) See R. Provine, *Laughter: A Scientific Investigation* (London: Penguin, 2000).

[here](#) Charles Darwin, *On the Expression of Emotion in Man and Animals* (London: John Murray, 1872), p. 343.

[here](#) *Hippocratic Writings*, G. Lloyd, ed. (London: Penguin Classics, 1983), ‘Epidemics, Book III’.

[here](#) Charles Darwin, *On the Expression of Emotion in Man and Animals*, p. 342.

[here](#) P. C. Jacob and R. P. Chand, ‘Pathological laughter following intravenous sodium valproate’, *Canadian Journal of Neurological*

Sciences vol. 25, 1998, pp. 252–53.

- [here](#) J. Parvizi et al., ‘Pathological laughter and crying: A link to the cerebellum’, *Brain* vol. 124, no. 9, 2001, pp. 1708–719.
- [here](#) F. A. Gondim, B. J. Parks and S. Cruz-Flores, “‘Fou rire prodromique’ as the presentation of pontine ischaemia secondary to vertebrobasilar stenosis”, *Journal of Neurology, Neurosurgery, and Psychiatry* vol. 71, 2001, pp. 802–804.
- [here](#) Basil Bunting, *Briggflatts* (Hexham: Bloodaxe Books, 2009).

21. Prosthetics: Humanity 2.0

- [here](#) The sixth book of Ovid’s *Metamorphoses*, verse 401.
- [here](#) Some studies have found that calamitous events, such as disabling accidents, or longed-for events, such as winning the lottery, have little long-term effect on levels of personal happiness. See P. Brickman, D. Coates and R. Janoff-Bulman, ‘Lottery winners and accident victims: Is happiness relative?’, *The Journal of Personality and Social Psychology* vol. 36, 1978, pp. 917–27.

22. Memory: Palaces of Forgetting

- [here](#) William James, *The Principles of Psychology*, authorised edn, vol. 1 (New York: Henry Holt, 1890; repr., New York: Dover, 1950), pp. 680–81.
- [here](#) See Schrödinger’s *Nature and the Greeks*, first published in 1954, which attempted to bridge an understanding gap between religion and modern science.
- [here](#) Erwin Schrödinger, *What is Life? & Mind and Matter* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1967), Epilogue, p. 96.
- [here](#) Schrödinger, ‘Oneness of Mind’ in *What is Life? & Mind and Matter* (Cambridge: Cambridge University Press, 1967), p. 145.
- [here](#) Schrödinger, *What is Life? & Mind and Matter*, p. 147.
- [here](#) Homer’s *The Odyssey*, D. C. H. Rieu, ed. (London: Penguin Classics, 2003), Book VIII, line 487.
- [here](#) Janine M. Cooper et al., ‘Neonatal hypoxia, hippocampal atrophy, and memory impairment: Evidence of a causal sequence’, *Cerebral Cortex* vol. 25, no. 6, 1 June 2015, pp. 469–76.

[here](#) Susan M. Ravizza et al., ‘Cerebellar damage produces selective deficits in verbal working memory’, *Brain* vol. 129, no. 2, February 2006, pp. 306–20.

[here](#) *The History of the World, Commonly Called the Natural History of C. Plinius Secundus, or Pliny* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1964), Book VII, chapter 24.

[here](#) W. H. R. Rivers, ‘An address on the repression of war experience’, *The Lancet* vol. 191, no. 4927, 2 February 1918, p. 173.

[here](#) *The Muse in Arms*, E. B. Osborn, ed. (London: John Murray, 1917).

23. Death: The Celebration of Life

[here](#) ‘Damien Hirst: “We’re here for a good time, not a long time”’, interview with Alastair Sooke, *Daily Telegraph*, 8 January 2011.

[here](#) See Anny Sauvageau et al., ‘Agonal sequences in 14 filmed hangings with comments on the role of the type of suspension, ischemic habituation, and ethanol intoxication on the timing of agonal responses’, *American Journal of Forensic Medicine and Pathology* vol. 32, no. 2, June 2011, pp. 104–107.

24. Transformations

[here](#) Ovid, *Metamorphoses*, Book XV, line 260.

[here](#) James Hutton, ‘Theory of the Earth’, *Transactions of the Royal Society of Edinburgh* vol. I, part II, pp. 209–304, plates I and II, published 1788 (paper given 7 March and 4 April 1785).

[here](#) Ovid, *Metamorphoses*, Mary Innes, trans. Book XV, line 831.

List of Illustrations

- [here](#) Autumn leaves in the Meadows, Edinburgh (2017) by Gavin Francis.
- [here](#) Leonardo da Vinci (c. 1503) *The Virgin and Child with St Anne*.
- [here](#) Leonardo da Vinci (c. 1492) *Coitus*.
- [here](#) Human Embryo from IVF, photo by K. Hardy (Wellcome Trust).
- [here](#) *The constellation of Hercules*, from *Uranographia* (1690) by Johannes Hevelius.
- [here](#) Eugen Sandow, a strongman. Process print, 1900 (Wellcome Trust).
- [here](#) Human horn, image © University of Edinburgh Anatomical Collections.
- [here](#) Detail of Michelangelo's *Moses*. Image reproduced by courtesy of, and with thanks to, Jörg Bittner.
- [here](#) The development of the foetal heart, reproduced from T. C. Kramer (1942), 'The partitioning of the truncus and conus and the formation of the membranous portion of the interventricular septum in the human heart', *American Journal of Anatomy*, 71: 343–70.
- [here](#) Case 3: Photograph by Robert Gross (1939) showing position and condition of wound on tenth postoperative day, 'Surgical Management of the Patent Ductus Arteriosus with Summary of Four Surgically Treated Cases' in *Annals of Surgery* 110(3): 321–56.
- [here](#) 'The Cult of Beauty', advertisement for Hazeline Snow (1929)

(Wellcome Collection).

[here](#) African male showing cicatrisation on his back (Wellcome Collection).

[here](#) Two photographs, before and after treatment for anorexia (Wellcome Collection).

[here](#) ‘A man suffering madness from having eaten poisonous plant’, by H. Z. Raidel (Wellcome Collection).

[here](#) *Pubertet* (1895) by Edvard Munch.

[here](#) (Top) Adolescent development of a fairly typical boy from age 11-and-a-half to 15 (detail), from J. M. Tanner, (1962) *Growth at Adolescence* (2nd edition, Blackwell, Oxford).

[here](#) (Bottom) Alteration in facial expression as a result of adolescent changes (detail). *Ibid.*

[here](#) Figures of parturition chair and foetuses (c. 1526) by E. Roesslin (Wellcome Collection).

[here](#) Detail of *Studies of the Foetus in the Womb* (c. 1513) by Leonardo da Vinci.

[here](#) ‘The child in the womb, in its natural situation’, by Jan van Rynsdyk, in W. Hunter, *Anatomia uteri gravidi* (1774) (Wellcome Collection).

[here](#) (Top) Dissections of the pregnant uterus at five months: two figures. Copperplate engraving by P. C. Canot after J. V. Rynsdyk, 1774, reprinted 1851 (Wellcome Collection).

[here](#) (Bottom) Dissections of chorions during the early stages of pregnancy: nine figures. Copperplate engraving by G. Powle after J. V. Rynsdyk, 1774, reprinted 1851 (Wellcome Collection).

[here](#) A giant and a dwarf, London (1927) (Wellcome Collection).

[here](#) Halley Research Station, Antarctica, under a full moon at midwinter (2003) by Gavin Francis.

[here](#) Thomas splint in use. Image by Philip H. Mitchiner and E. M. Crowell (1939) (Wellcome Collection).

- [here](#) Approach to a Gambian village, image courtesy of Annie Spratt.
- [here](#) Castrating set (detail) (Wellcome Collection).
- [here](#) American Civil War veteran with an amputated leg at the hip, by George A. Otis (1867) (Wellcome Collection).
- [here](#) Nasal Prostheses, from the *Works of Ambroise Paré* (1561) (Wellcome Collection).
- [here](#) iLimb holding an egg (2017). Image by Gavin Francis.
- [here](#) A selection of prosthetic legs (2017), image courtesy of Jamie Andrew.
- [here](#) Neurons in the brain, by Santiago Ramón y Cajal (Wellcome Collection).
- [here](#) Purkinje cell, by Santiago Ramón y Cajal (Wellcome Collection).
- [here](#) Salisbury Crags and Arthur's Seat seen from Blackford Hill, Edinburgh (2017) by Gavin Francis.

While every effort has been made to contact copyright-holders of illustrations, the author and publishers would be grateful for information about any illustrations where they have been unable to trace them, and would be glad to make amendments in further editions.

Index

The suffix ‘n’ indicates that only a footnote on that page relates to the index entry.

A

- abortion *see* pregnancy termination
- Abraham, Felix [152–3](#)
- acidity, oxygen depletion and [3](#)
- acne
 - and drug-induced psychosis [103](#)
 - and puberty [115, 117](#)
 - and steroid abuse [40–1, 44](#)
- acoustic neuromas [234](#)
- acromegaly [137–8](#)
- ACTH (adrenocorticotrophic hormone) [137](#)
- addiction, bodybuilding as [48–9](#)
- adenosine levels and sleep [31](#)
- adolescence *see* puberty
- adrenal hormones [117](#)
- Africa *see* Gambia; Kenya; Malawi
- age
 - and adaptability of parents [108](#)
 - Le Guin’s three ages of women [182–3](#)
 - onset of puberty [111](#)
 - and sleep phases [32](#)
 - Solon’s ages of seven years [176](#)
- ageing as irreversible [70](#)

aggression
 factors intensifying [46–7](#)
 puberty in males [117](#)
‘agitated delirium’ [8](#)
Ailsa (Gebbie, gynaecologist) [175–6](#), [179–81](#)
alchemists
 Chinese and European [72n](#), [75](#)
 search for elixirs of youth [71](#)
Alex (Sinclair, patient) [188–9](#), [191–2](#)
algebra [166–7](#)
Alkman, Harry (patient) [40–1](#), [44–5](#), [47–8](#), [242](#)
Alzheimer’s disease [222](#)
amniotic fluid [130–1](#)
amphetamines [37](#), [213](#)
amputations [202–5](#), [207–10](#)
Amy (mother of Billie) Baxter [110–11](#), [115](#), [122–4](#), [132](#)
anaesthesia [65](#), [167](#), [191](#), [203](#)
 K_2P channels [37](#)
anastrozole [41](#), [48](#)
anatomy of conception [19–20](#), [26–7](#)
The Anatomy of the Human Gravid Uterus, by William Hunter [128–9](#), [131](#)
Andrew, Jamie [210–12](#)
Andrew (Gannon) [205–6](#)
androgyny [143](#), [146–7](#), [156](#)
animal transformations
 into an insect [13](#)
 into cats and dogs [13](#), [15](#)
 into cattle [12](#)
 into seals [14](#)
 into wolves [11](#)
animals, gelding [185–6](#)
Anne, Saint, mother of Virgin Mary [18–19](#)
Anorexia nervosa
 ‘binge-purge anorexia’ [93](#)
 case study [92–4](#), [97–8](#)

first description [96](#)
as a mental illness [90–2](#), [94–5](#)
Antarctic research [157–62](#)
antenatal care [120–2](#)
Anthony, Elan [155](#)
antidepressants
 citalopram [95](#)
 and the menopause [181](#)
antipsychotic drugs [99](#)
anxiety
 breathing exercises [74](#)
 chest pains and [73–4](#)
 cured by a tattoo [84](#)
 over body image [118](#)
 skin diseases and [54](#)
 Valium and [87](#)
Apuleius [53](#)
The Argonauts, by Maggie Nelson [155](#)
Aristophanes [146–7](#)
Aristotle [135](#), [141](#), [147](#), [199](#)
Artemidorus [34](#), [37](#)
artificial limbs *see* prostheses
asbestos [235](#)
asphyxiation [238–9](#)
Attis [187](#)
Atwood, Margaret [127](#)
autopsies [35](#), [230–1](#), [236–7](#), [239](#)
 see also post-mortems

B

babies
 with ambiguous genitalia [143–4](#)
 heads and pelvis size [118](#)
 ultrasound scanning [119–20](#)
babies, newborn
 heart rate [63](#)

REM sleep [32](#)
sex hormones [109](#)
basal ganglia [221](#)
Baxter, Billie (patient) [110–11](#), [115–16](#), [122–4](#), [132](#)
Becker, Ernest [184](#)
belladonna [101](#)
Bergson, Henri [197–8](#)
berserks [46](#)
beta-amyloid protein [222–3](#), [227–8](#)
Beth (Lord, patient) [73–5](#), [77–8](#)
Billie Baxter (patient) [110–11](#), [115–16](#), [122–4](#), [132](#)
biochemistry, transformative lecture [2–3](#), [238](#), [242](#)
bipolar illness [7](#), [15](#), [139](#)
Blake, William [99](#), [100](#)
Blakewell, Mark (patient) [86–9](#)
Bleuler, Eugen [100](#)
blindness [138](#), [159n](#), [224n](#)
blood pressure
 and anorexia [97](#)
 and pregnancy [121](#)
blood supply
 to the head [51](#)
 volumes pumped by the heart [60](#)
bloodletting for porphyria [12](#)
blue-green algae [160](#)
the body, change in [4](#)
Body-Building, by Eugen Sandow [42](#)
body clock
 adaptation to higher latitudes [161](#)
 clock genes [159–60](#)
 in polar winters [158](#)
 SCN role [159](#)
 teenagers [117](#)
body dysmorphic disorders [48–9](#)
body image anxieties [118](#)
bodybuilding [42–4](#), [48–9](#)

Boguet, Henri [10](#)

bones

- fusion of epiphyses [118](#), [134](#)
- growth rates [116](#), [137](#)
- process of healing [172–3](#)
- strength and the menopause [181](#)

bonesetting

- and algebra [166–7](#)
- in the Gambia [168](#)

bonfires, on ice [157–8](#)

The Book of the Duchess, by Geoffrey Chaucer [30](#)

Borges, Jorge Luis [224](#)

Borghello, Giacomo [134](#), [138–9](#)

bowel obstructions [92](#)

brains

- believed source of semen [20](#)
- of dementia victims [222](#)
- development and sexual identity [154](#)
- number of cells, synapses and dendrites [219](#)

at post-mortem [222](#), [234](#)

brain haemorrhage [237](#)

‘brain knives’ [236](#)

brain regions

basal ganglia [221](#)

cerebellum [200](#), [221](#), [237](#)

hippocampus [220–1](#), [237](#)

hypothalamus [154](#)

supra-chiasmatic nucleus [159](#), [161](#)

breast cancer [150](#), [178](#), [180](#)

breast implants [73](#)

breasts

believed source of menstrual blood [20](#)

and miscarriages [125](#)

breech position [121](#), [130](#)

‘Bridge of Asses’ [166](#), [173](#)

Browne, Thomas

on androgyny [143](#), [147](#)
on horns [52–3](#), [56](#)
on life expectancy of eunuchs [193](#)
on putrefaction [236n](#)
Broyard, Anatole [189–91](#), [193](#)
bulimia [93](#)
Bunting, Basil [200](#)
burns, treatment [209](#)
Burou, Dr Georges [153](#)
The Byrth of Mankynde, by Euchar Roesslin [125](#)

C

caesarean section [24](#), [114n](#), [121](#)
calculus [166](#), [169](#)
Calvin (patient) [81–2](#)
Cambodia [209](#)
carbon monoxide poisoning [237](#)
cardiac catheterisation, for PDA [65](#)
Carol (nurse) [215–17](#), [223](#), [225](#), [227–8](#)
cartoon characters dream [33](#), [38](#)
castrati [187](#), [193](#)
castration
 gelding of animals [185](#)
 and life expectancy [193–4](#)
 prostate cancer and [185](#), [191](#)
 punitive [193](#)
 self-castration [187](#)
 see also eunuchs
The Castrato, by Martha Feldman [193](#)
Catherine of Siena, Saint [92](#)
centiles, weight and height [63](#), [65–6](#), [111](#), [115](#), [140](#)
cerebellum [200](#), [221](#), [237](#)
cerebrovascular dementia [222](#)
Chalmers Sexual Health Centre [174](#), [179](#)
change
 associated with pregnancy [22](#), [121](#)

associated with the menopause [181–3](#)
as inescapable [4, 241–2](#)
reflected in calculus [166](#)

The Change, by Germaine Greer [181](#)

Charlotte (Crichton, pathologist) [230–9](#)

Charmidas [224](#)

Chaucer, Geoffrey [30](#)

chemist's shops [70](#)

chest pains and anxiety [73–4](#)

child abuse [33](#)

childbirth

- author's experience [59–60](#)
- caesarean section [24, 114n, 121](#)
- ductus arteriosus closure [62](#)
- maternal deaths [129–30, 179](#)

children

- adopted [110](#)
- appeal of humanised animals [14–15](#)
- heart defects in [63–8](#)
- laughter in [197–8](#)
- parental relationship stages [108–9](#)
- questions of consent [112](#)
- value of prostheses [208–9](#)

chimpanzees [118](#)

Chinese alchemy [72n, 75](#)

Chinese castration traditions [186, 193](#)

chlorophyll [2](#)

chocolate and anorexia [98](#)

choking [238](#)

chromosome abnormalities [46–7, 149](#)

the cinema, bodybuilding in [42–3](#)

circadian rhythms [158–61](#)

circulation

- pulmonary and systemic [60](#)
- shunts in foetal circulation [61](#)

citalopram [95](#)

climacteric (now menopause) [176–7](#), [182](#)
clock genes [159–60](#)
clonazepam [38](#)
cognitive behavioural therapy [180](#)
cold remedies triggering porphyria [10](#)
compassion in medicine [4](#)
conception
 early views of [18–21](#)
 IVF process [22](#)
 modern view of [20–1](#), [27](#)
Connolly, Billy [188](#)
Connor (baby with a heart defect) [63–6](#)
contraceptive implants [25](#)
Cornelia de Lange syndrome [195](#)
corruption and funding [79](#)
cosmetic surgery [73–4](#)
cosmetics offering rejuvenation [70–2](#)
Craiglockhart War Hospital [225–7](#), [242](#)
Crick, Francis [32n](#)
Cyrus, King of the Persians [224](#)

D

Daemonologie, by James VI, King of Scotland (later James I of England)
[11–12](#)
Dan (patient) [103](#), [105–7](#)
Darwin, Charles [1](#), [108](#), [118](#), [198–200](#)
Datan, Nancy [178](#)
deadly nightshade [101](#)
death
 absence of material change [17](#)
 unexpected or suspicious [230](#)
deficiency diseases, characterising the menopause as [175](#), [178](#), [181](#)
delirium [8](#), [217](#)
dementia
 in history [223–4](#)
 recognised varieties [222](#), [237](#)

vulnerability to infections [217](#)

Dementia Praecox, or the Group of Schizophrenias, by Eugen Bleuler [100](#)

The Denial of Death, by Ernest Becker [184](#)

Descartes, René [168](#)

The Descent of Man, by Charles Darwin [108](#)

detective inspector's experiences [229–30](#)

detransitioning [155](#)

Dickinson, Emily [157](#)

Dickinson, Robert [25–7](#)

diet, of Samburu warriors [80–1](#)

Dillard, Annie [240](#)

disability, attitudes to [208–9](#)

Discours exécable des Sorciers, by Henri Boguet [10](#)

Disembodied Spirits and Deanimated Bodies, by Giovanni Stanghellini [106](#)

The Divided Self, by R D Laing [106](#)

Donaghy, Michael [84](#)

Donald, Ian [119–20](#)

Doors of Perception, by Aldous Huxley [100, 102](#)

DOT (directly observed tuberculosis) therapy [169–70](#)

Doyle, Arthur Conan [42, 83](#)

dreaming

- clonazepam suppression [38](#)
- diagnostic value [33](#)
- imagined divine significance [34](#)
- recurrent dream examples [33, 37–8](#)
- and REM sleep [32](#)

drownings [234](#)

drugs

- hallucinogenic drugs [13, 100–3](#)
- performance-enhancing [44](#)
- recreational, as near universal [101](#)

drug abuse

- anabolic steroids [40–1, 46–7](#)
- methadone [86–8](#)

DSM (Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of the American Psychiatric Association) [149](#)

ductus arteriosus [61–3](#), [65–7](#)

patent (PDA) [63–6](#)

dwarfism [139](#)

E

‘early life programming’ [114](#)

Earth, primitive life [160](#)

eating disorders *see* anorexia; bulimia

Ecce Homo, by Friedrich Nietzsche [135](#), [138](#)

Eclogues, by Virgil [12](#)

eczema [54](#), [110–11](#)

The Education of a Bodybuilder, by Arnold Schwarzenegger [43](#)

egg (ovum), human, observed [20](#)

eidetic memory [224n](#)

Elbe, Lili [153n](#)

Elements, by Euclid [166](#)

Eliade, Mircea [59](#)

Eliot, T(homas) S(tearns) [156](#)

elixirs of youth [71](#), [75](#)

embryonic development

 heart [60](#), [62](#)

 In Hunter’s anatomy [131](#)

 pituitary gland [136](#)

Empire Antarctica: Ice, Silence and Emperor Penguins, by Gavin Francis
[157n](#)

Encyclopedia of Modern Bodybuilding, by Arnold Schwarzenegger [44](#)

Epidemics, by Hippocrates [199](#)

epilepsy [7](#), [200](#), [221](#), [233](#)

epiphyses, fusion [118](#), [134](#)

see also growth plates

episodic memories [220](#)

ergotism [101](#)

Escomel, Edmundo [115n](#)

Esquirol, Jean-Étienne [7](#)

An Essay on Laughter, by James Sully [195](#)

Euclid [166](#)

Eugenides, Jeffrey [152](#)
eunuchs [186–7](#), [194](#)
Euripides [45](#)
Expecting, by Chitra Ramaswamy [122](#)

F

facial hair
 anorexia [93](#), [95](#)
 porphyria [9–10](#)
Faith (fellow doctor) [79–80](#)
Familial Fatal Insomnia [31n](#)
Family Nurse Partnership [124](#)
Feldman, Martha [193](#)
Feminine Forever, by Robert A. Wilson [178](#)
feminisation [47](#)
fertilisation process, human [22](#)
fertility
 and anabolic steroids [47](#)
 incomplete understanding of [21](#)
 see also conception
fingers, rotting [99](#)
500 Miles charity [207](#)
‘flashbulb memories’ [220](#)
foetus
 foetal haemoglobin [3](#)
 heart beat check [122](#)
 shunts, in foetal circulation [61](#)
food, anorexia and attitudes toward [91](#), [96](#)
food intolerances [94](#)
foramen ovale [61](#)
 patent (PFO) [61n](#)
forgetting as beneficial [225–6](#)
Foxcroft, Louise [177](#)
fractures [167–8](#), [172–3](#)
Fractures, by Hippocrates [164](#)
Fragile X syndrome [195](#)

Francis, Gavin [157n](#)
Frank, L K [116](#)
Frederick, Joanne (patient) [8–9](#)
‘free-running’ [158](#)
Freud, Sigmund [34, 53–4, 57](#)
FSH (follicle stimulating hormone) [137](#)
‘fundal height’ [121–2](#)
Funes the Memorious, by Jorge Luis Borges [224–5](#)

G

Gadda, Carlo Emilio [145n](#)
Galen [62, 147, 151, 166](#)
The Gambia [164–5, 167–70](#)
ganglion cells, retina [159, 161](#)
Gannon, Andrew (patient) [205–6](#)
Gary (Hobbes, patient) [13–15, 242](#)
Gebbie, Ailsa [175–6, 179–81](#)
gender ambiguity / flexibility [145, 147, 186](#)
gender identity disorders / dysphoria / problems [148, 149, 152–5](#)
gender reassignment surgery [149–50, 153–5](#)
genes
 body clock genes [159–60](#)
 Sik1 gene [161n](#)
genitalia, ambiguous [143–4](#)
geometry [165–6](#)
George B (patient) [213–17, 223, 227–8](#)
George III, King [129](#)
Gibson, Dr George [66](#)
gigantism
 and acromegaly [137–8](#)
 heart failure in [134](#)
Giles, Olivia [207–10](#)
Gilgamesh, Epic of [34, 46](#)
Gilligan, Carol [182](#)
Giuliani, Veronica [92](#)
Gohrbandt, Dr [152–3](#)

Golgi, Camillo [219](#)
Götz von Berlichingen [204](#)
Greer, Germaine [181](#)
Gross, Robert [66–7](#)
growth hormone, human [41](#), [134](#), [137–41](#)
growth plates [118](#), [134](#), [137](#), [139–40](#), [186](#)
see also epiphyses; pelvis
Guarino of Verona [55](#)

H

haemoglobin [2–3](#), [9](#), [121](#), [238](#)
hair
 abnormal facial hair [9–10](#), [93](#), [95](#)
 hairstyles [50](#)
 as psychological indicator [54](#)
 sudden whitening [54–6](#)
Hall, Stephen [139–40](#)
hallucinations
 in porphyria [8](#)
 of rotting fingertips [99](#)
 in schizophrenia [100](#)
hallucinogenic drugs [100](#), [102–3](#), [213](#)
 defined [101](#)
The Handmaid's Tale, by Margaret Atwood [127](#)
hands, prosthetic [204](#), [205–6](#)
Hannah (Mollier, patient) [23–5](#), [27–8](#), [242](#)
Hare, William [134n](#)
Hargitay, Mickey [43](#)
Harpenden Children's Home study [112–14](#)
Harry (Alkman, patient) [40–1](#), [44–5](#), [47–8](#), [242](#)
Harvey, William [61n](#)
head, blood supplies [51](#)
hearing, sense of [35](#)
heart
 embryonic development [60](#), [62](#)
 failure in gigantism [134](#)

foetal heartbeat [122](#)
heart defects in children [63–8](#)
placental blood supply and [61–3](#)
size, in the overweight [236](#)
heart attacks [62, 230, 235](#)
heart murmurs [64–6, 216](#)
heart rate in pregnancy [121](#)
Heath, Iona [179](#)
height, social advantage and [139, 141](#)
Henry Molaison ('H M') [221](#)
Henry (Mollier, partner of Hannah) [23–4, 27](#)
Henry (patient) [196, 199–200](#)
Heraclitus [4](#)
Hercules, constellation [39](#)
Hercules / Heracles
 in film titles [43](#)
 in mythology [39–40, 45–7, 49](#)
hermaphrodites [144–5](#)
Heteroeumena, by Nicander [69](#)
hippocampus [220–1, 237](#)
Hippocrates [125, 164, 199](#)
Hirst, Damien [229](#)
Hobbes, Thomas [168, 201](#)
Hobbes (Gary, patient) [13–15, 242](#)
Hoffman, Albert [102–3, 107](#)
Hogarth, William [119](#)
Holy the Firm, by Annie Dillard [240](#)
Homer [218](#)
hormones
 adrenal [117](#)
 growth hormone, human [41, 134, 137–41](#)
 of the pituitary gland [136](#)
 see also sex hormones
horns
 Biblical references [53](#)
 cutaneous [52, 56](#)

on helmets [53n](#)
symbolism [54–5](#)
hospices, laughter in [201](#)
Hot Flushes, Cold Science: A History of the Menopause, by Louise Foxcroft [177](#)
HRT (Hormonal Replacement Therapy) [178–81](#)
'Humanity 2.0' [212](#)
Hunter, William [128–31](#)
Hutton, James [241](#)
Huxley, Aldous [100, 102](#)
hyoid bone [233](#)
hypertrichosis [9–10](#)
hypothalamus [154](#)

I

I Ching [75, 81](#)
iLimbs [205–6, 208](#)
Illis, Lee [10](#)
immune reactions, Marie Antoinette syndrome [54](#)
In The Penal Colony, by Franz Kafka [85n](#)
incongruities and laughter [198](#)
infections, dementia and vulnerability [217](#)
infertility, reluctance to discuss [25](#)
insects, in pathology [232n](#)
insomnia [9, 30–1, 175, 181](#)
 see also sleep disturbance
institutionalisation [195–6, 198](#)
The Interpretation of Dreams, by Sigmund Freud [34](#)
IVF conception [22](#)

J

James, William [213](#)
James VI, King of Scotland, and I of England [11–12](#)
jetlag [158, 160–2](#)
Jimmie G (Oliver Sacks's patient) [222–3](#)
Joanne (Frederick, patient) [8–9](#)

John of Salisbury [136](#)

Journey to Armenia, by Osip Mandelstam [202](#)

Joy (mother of baby with a heart defect) [63–5](#)

Joyce, James [6](#)

Jung, Carl [12](#)

K

Kafka, Franz [13](#), [85n](#)

Kenya [79–80](#)

keratin [52](#)

Kern, James [85](#)

knee problems [115–16](#)

Ko Hung [75](#)

Koji Sato [101](#)

Korsakoff's psychosis [222](#)

K_{2P} channels [36–7](#)

L

Laing, R D [106](#)

Landois, Leonard [54](#)

larynx, changes in puberty [117](#)

Lasègue, Charles [96](#)

laser tattoo removal [88](#)

laughter

Bergson and Darwin on [197–9](#)

immediately preceding death [200](#)

spontaneous [196](#)

Thomas Hobbes on [201](#)

two kinds distinguished [197–9](#)

Laughter: An Essay on the Meaning of the Comic, by Henri Bergson [197](#)

Lawes, Charles Bennett [42](#)

Le Guin, Ursula [174](#), [182–3](#)

learning disabilities [195–6](#)

lecture, biochemistry [2](#)

Leonardo da Vinci [18–20](#), [25](#), [126](#)

leuprorelin [150](#)

LH (luteinizing hormone) [137](#)
life expectancy
 and castration [193–4](#)
 and death in childbirth [179](#)
lighting, natural [161](#), [162](#)
lighting, supplementary [159](#), [162](#)
limbs
 African priority for prosthetic legs [207](#)
 amputation [202–5](#), [207–10](#)
 artificial (*see* prostheses)
linea nigra [122](#)
Liveley, Genevieve [6](#)
liver, body clock [159–60](#)
Lord, Beth (patient) [73–5](#), [77–8](#)
Low, Elizabeth [56](#)
LSD (lysergic acid) [101–6](#)
Lucretius [193–4](#)
The Lunar Society [7](#)
lungs
 placental blood supply and [61](#)
 pulmonary circulation [60](#)
Luria, A R [223](#)
lycanthropy
 cases, Boston, Mass. [15](#)
 medical opinion on [11–12](#)
 werewolves and [11](#)
Lycaon [6](#)

M

MacDougall, Duncan [23](#)
Maggie (nurse) [214–15](#), [223](#), [225](#), [228](#)
Malawi [207–9](#)
male-dominated conspiracies [179](#)
male-dominated theorising [25](#), [125](#), [177](#)
malnutrition symptoms [95](#)
Mandelstam, Osip [202](#)

Marcellus of Sida [12](#)
Margaret (Lord, daughter of Beth) [74](#), [76](#)
Marie / Germain historical case [151–2](#)
Marie Antoinette syndrome [54–5](#)
Marinello, Giovanni [177](#)
Mark (Blakewell, patient) [86–9](#)
marriage, confining [75–8](#)
The Marriage of Heaven and Hell, by William Blake [99](#)
Marshall, W A and Tanner, James [111–17](#)
Mary, Queen of Scots [55](#)
Mary (historical case) [152](#)
The Master and Margarita, by Mikhail Bulgakov [69–70](#), [72](#), [76–7](#)
mathematics
 algebra and geometry compared [165–6](#)
 algebra and geometry unified [169](#)
 calculus [166](#), [169](#)
MDMA [13](#)
medicine
 as easing suffering [4–5](#)
 the ideal doctor [190–1](#)
 persuading patients to accept treatment [168–9](#), [172](#)
 as postponing death [239](#)
Medina, Lina [114n](#)
Megan (patient) [99](#), [106](#)
melatonin [158](#)
Melville, Herman [79](#), [162](#)
memories
 different types [220](#), [224n](#)
 formation [219–20](#)
 prodigious [224](#)
 repressing painful [225–6](#)
memory loss
 as effectively untreatable [223](#)
 and loss of self [218–19](#)
menarche (or menophany) *see* periods; puberty
meningitis leading to septicaemia [207](#)

menopause

consequence of cancer treatment [180](#)

cultural perspectives [177–8](#)

formerly climacteric [176](#)

oestrogen levels [175](#)

menopause clinics [175](#)

menstruation *see* periods

mental health professionals (US) [6–7](#)

mental illness

anorexia as [90](#)

brain chemistry and [91](#)

see also learning disabilities

mescaline [100, 102](#)

Metamorphoses, by Apuleius [53](#)

Metamorphoses, by Ovid

animal transformation in [11, 53](#)

figure of Morpheus in [34](#)

Genevieve Liveley on [6](#)

on the inevitability of change [3, 241–2](#)

story of Jason, Medea and Aeson [71–2](#)

story of Pelops [202, 210](#)

The Metamorphosis, by Franz Kafka [13](#)

methadone [86–8](#)

Michelangelo, statue of Moses [52–3, 57–8](#)

Mickley, Diane [90](#)

Middlesex, by Jeffrey Eugenides [152](#)

midwifery [108, 118–19, 121, 123–5, 131, 143](#)

Mikhail Bulgakov [69–70, 72, 76](#)

military prosthetics centres [211](#)

The Million Women Study [178](#)

Mind and Matter, by Erwin Schrödinger [218](#)

mistranslation, Biblical references to horns [53](#)

Moby Dick, by Herman Melville [79, 162](#)

molecular oscillators [160](#)

Moller, Ralf [43](#)

Mollier, Hannah (patient) [23–5, 27–8, 242](#)

Molly (patient's daughter) [139–40](#)
Montaigne, Michel de [18](#), [135](#), [141](#), [151–2](#)
moon, alleged behavioural effects [6–7](#)
More, Sir Thomas [55](#)
Moreschi, Alessandro [187](#)
Morpheus [34–5](#)
mosaicism [145](#)
Moses, Michelangelo's statue [52–3](#), [57–8](#)
mother, youngest recorded [114n](#)
MRI scanners [26–7](#), [106](#)
Müller, Friedrich (aka Eugen Sandow) [42](#), [49](#)
multiple sclerosis [237](#)
Munch, Edvard [109](#)
muscle-bound warriors [46](#)
muscle-man actors [42–3](#)
The Muse in Arms anthology [227](#)
the Muses [218](#)
Museum of Human Anatomy, Turin [133](#)
mushrooms, magic *see* psilocybin
myoelectric prostheses [205](#), [207](#), [210](#)

N

Natural History, by Pliny the Elder [223–4](#)
The Nature of Things, by Lucretius [193–4](#)
Nebuchadnezzar, King [12](#)
Needham, Joseph [75](#)
Nelson, Maggie [155](#)
nerve damage risk [67](#)
neurosis, former distinction from psychosis [100](#)
newborns *see* babies, newborn
Newton, Isaac [136](#), [166](#)
Nicander [69](#)
Nietzsche, Friedrich [133](#), [135–6](#), [138–9](#), [141](#)
noses, amputation [204–5](#)

O

Odyssey, by Homer [218](#)
oestrogen [48](#), [109](#), [150–1](#), [175](#), [181](#)
Olivia (Giles, charity director) [207–10](#)
On Hercules, by Prodicus [39](#)
Oneirocritica, by Artemidorus [34](#), [37](#)
Origen [187](#)
On the Origin of Species, by Charles Darwin [1](#)
Orlando, by Virginia Woolf [127](#)
Osgood-Schlatter's disease [116](#)
Ovid *see* Metamorphoses
Ovid's 'Metamorphoses,' by Genevieve Liveley [6](#)
Owen, Wilfred [225](#)
oxygen requirements
 blood response [3](#)
 ductus arteriosus closure [62](#)
 foetal [61](#)

P

pancreas, auto-digestion [236](#)
Paralympic athletes [212](#)
Paré, Ambroise [151](#), [204](#)
parents
 adoptive [110](#)
 age and adaptability [108](#)
 of anorexia patient [94–5](#)
 of pregnant teenagers [122–4](#)
 youngest recorded mother [114n](#)
Park, Reg [44](#)
Parkinson's disease [222](#), [237](#)
patent ductus arteriosus (PDA) [63–8](#)
patent foramen ovale (PFO) [61n](#)
Paul of Aegina [12](#)
pelvis development in females [118](#), [132](#), [140n](#)
periods
 age of commencement (menarche) [111](#), [114–16](#)
 anorexia and [95](#), [98](#)

menstruation as polluting [177](#)
peyote [102](#)
'Philip' (autopsy subject) [231–7](#)
philosophy, dangers of [141](#)
pineal gland [158–60](#)
pituitary gland [134](#), [135n](#), [136–8](#), [140](#), [150](#)
plastic surgery [73–4](#)
Plato [146–7](#)
PLC (Pathological Laughter and Crying) syndrome [200](#)
Pliny the Elder [11](#), [202](#), [223–4](#), [234n](#)
poisoning
 by belladonna [101](#)
 carbon monoxide [237](#)
 Chinese emperors [75](#)
police experiences of death [229–30](#)
pornography laws (US) [25](#)
porphyria
 case study [8–9](#)
 Lee Ellis on werewolves and [10](#)
porphyrins, in haemoglobin and chlorophyll [2](#)
Porter, Roy [177](#)
post-mortems [222](#), [230](#), [232](#), [235](#), [237](#), [239](#)
 see also autopsies
potassium leaching [36](#)
poverty and TB deaths [172](#)
practice size [240](#)
pregnancy
 breech position [121](#), [130](#)
 case study [23–5](#), [27–8](#)
 as inexorable [22](#)
 as marvellous [121](#), [127](#)
 public scrutiny [127](#)
 schedule of routine checks [120](#)
 teenage pregnancies [22](#), [122–4](#), [132](#)
pregnancy termination [22](#), [28](#)
pregnancy testing [21](#)

The Principles of Psychology, by William James [213](#)
prion diseases [222](#)
prison populations
 chromosome abnormalities [46–7](#)
 tattooing [85–6](#)
procurators fiscal [237](#)
prolactin [137](#)
pronouns [145](#)
prostate cancer [184–5](#), [188–9](#), [191](#)
prostheses
 in fiction [202](#)
 in history [204–5](#)
 military [211](#)
 myoelectric and iLimb [205–8](#), [210](#)
 possibility of enhancement [210](#), [212](#)
 provision in Malawi and Zambia [207–9](#)
 transplantation alternative [212](#)
proteins, atypical, in the brain [222](#)
PSA (prostate-specific antigen) test [188](#)
Pseudodoxia Epidemica, by Thomas Browne [143](#)
psilocybin [102–3](#)
psoriasis [50](#), [54](#)
psychoanalysis [33–4](#), [54](#)
psychosis
 former distinction from neurosis [100](#)
 psychotic reactions to LSD [103](#)
Pubertet, painting by Edvard Munch [109–10](#)
puberty
 age of onset [111–12](#), [114](#)
 anorexia as retrogression [97](#)
 chimpanzees [118](#)
 and clinic attendance [109](#)
 height gain and [116](#), [139](#)
 male [116–17](#)
 photographic images [112–14](#)
 sequence and timing of changes [112–13](#)

public hair growth [112–13](#), [117](#)
public opinion, on lunar influences [6](#)

R

rabies [10](#)
Ramaswamy, Chitra [122](#), [127–8](#)
Ramón y Cajal, Santiago [219](#)
recreational drug use [101](#)
Reeves, Steve [43](#)
rejuvenation
 alchemists' prescriptions [75](#)
 cosmetic products offering [70–2](#)
 miraculous [69–70](#), [72](#)
REM sleep [32–3](#)
retina, ganglion cells [159](#), [161](#)
risk-taking behaviour [117](#)
risks, relative and absolute [178](#), [180–1](#)
Rivers, William H R [225–7](#), [242](#)
Roesslin, Euchar [20](#), [125](#)
Roman emperors' eunuchs [186](#)
Rymsdyk, Jan van [128–31](#)

S

Sacks, Oliver [222–3](#)
The Sacred and the Profane, by Mircea Eliade [59](#)
Saint Anne (mother of Virgin Mary) [18–19](#)
St Anthony's Fire [101](#)
Salisbury Crags, Edinburgh [240–1](#)
Sam (patient) [145–6](#)
Samburu warriors [80–1](#)
Sandow, Eugen (Friedrich Müller) [42](#), [49](#)
Sassoon, Siegfried [225](#), [227](#)
scaffold proteins [9](#)
scalp
 blood supply [51](#)
 diversity of appearance [50](#)

scarification [80–2](#)
schizophrenia [13](#), [100](#), [103](#), [106](#)
Schrödinger, Erwin [217–18](#)
Schwarzenegger, Arnold [43–4](#), [49](#)
SCN (supra-chiasmatic nucleus) [159](#), [161](#)
screen time [161](#)
Seasonal Affective Disorder [162](#)

seasons

 in a local park [1](#)

 pineal gland and [159](#)

 sedatives [12](#), [31](#), [35](#), [37](#), [105](#)

Selected Letters, by Friedrich Nietzsche [133](#), [141](#)

 self-castration [187](#)

 self-harm [81](#), [85](#), [153](#)

 selkies [14](#)

sella turcica [134–5](#)

 semantic memory [220](#)

 seminal fluids, male and female [20](#)

senses

 beyond the classical five [36](#)

 mediation by the thalamus [35–6](#)

sex chromosomes *see X*

sex differences

 alleged, in drowning victims [234n](#)

 classical explanations of [151](#)

 cosmetic marketing [71–2](#)

 disorders of differentiation [144](#)

 hypothalamus [154](#)

sex hormones

 in babies [109](#)

 oestrogen [48](#), [109](#), [150–1](#), [175](#), [181](#)

see also testosterone

sexual activity

 distribution of pleasure [148](#)

 sexual positions and conception [26](#)

 and the thyroid [137](#)

‘sexual deviations’ [149](#)
sexual difficulties [73–5](#), [77–8](#)
sexual health clinics [174–5](#)
Shah Jahan [55](#)
shamanism [14](#), [91](#)
‘shell-shock’ [226](#)
shift-working [6](#), [59](#), [161–2](#)
shunts, in foetal circulation [61](#)
Simone (patient) [92–5](#), [98](#)
Sinclair, Alex (patient) [188–9](#), [191–2](#)
Size Matters, by Stephen Hall [139](#)
skiing using prostheses [211](#)
skin
 blistering and porphyria [8–9](#)
 burning-stick marking [80–1](#)
 as psychological indicator [54](#)
 treatment of burns [209](#)
 weight and extent [51](#)
 youthfulness [70–1](#)
 see also acne; tattooing
sleep
 K₂P channels in [37](#)
 need for [31](#), [220](#)
 phases of [32](#)
sleep disturbance
 full moon and [7](#)
 insomnia [9](#), [30–1](#), [175](#), [181](#)
 LSD and [105](#)
 menopause and [180](#), [181](#)
 in polar winters [158](#), [162](#)
 porphyria and [10](#)
 skin diseases and [54](#)
 slow-wave sleep [32](#)
 smell, sense of [35](#), [99](#)
snakes, symbolism of [147–9](#), [242](#)

social advantages of height [139](#), [141](#)
social function of laughter [197–8](#), [199](#)
Solon of Athens [176](#)
sonograms *see* ultrasound
soul
 attempt to weigh [23](#)
 imagined escape from the mouth [18](#)
 introduction into babies [126](#)
The Space Crone, by Ursula Le Guin, [174](#)
sperm production [48](#)
splints [167–8](#), [209](#)
Stanghellini, Giovanni [106](#)
statistics on lunar influence on the mind [7](#)
sterilisation, female [25](#)
steroid abuse [40–1](#), [46–7](#)
Stoller, Johann Augustin [139](#)
stress
 anorexia trigger [96](#)
 and onset of puberty [114](#)
 provoking tears and laughter [199](#)
strokes [61n](#), [139](#), [150](#), [178](#), [180](#), [200](#)
strongmen in battle [46](#)
Study for the foetus in the womb, by Leonardo da Vinci [126](#)
substantia nigra [237](#)
Sully, James [195](#)
‘Superglue’ [51](#)
surgery
 for patent ductus arteriosus [66–8](#)
 in recurrent dream [33](#), [38](#)
Suzuki, D T [100–1](#), [107](#)
Symposium, by Plato [146–7](#)
symptoms, shifting, and sleep disturbance [30](#)
synaptic plasticity [220](#)
Synesius [75](#)

T

Tamburini, Tommaso [187](#)

Tanner, James and Marshall, W A [111–17](#)

Tarik / Teresa (patient) [148–9](#), [151](#)

taste, sense of [35](#)

tattoo removal procedures [85](#), [88](#)

tattooing

to cover scaring [82](#)

medical use [84](#)

possible origins [79](#), [84–5](#)

possible regulation [88n](#)

of prisoners [85–6](#)

regretted later [84](#)

significance to Sherlock Holmes [83](#)

tau protein [222–3](#), [228](#)

tears and laughter, alternating [196](#), [199–200](#)

teenage body clock [117](#)

teenage pregnancies [22](#), [122–4](#), [132](#)

television and anorexia [92](#)

temper, loss of

methadone abuse and [88](#)

steroid abuse and [44](#), [46–7](#)

Temple, Arthur [56](#)

Teresa (formerly Tarik, patient) [148–9](#), [151](#)

testicular cancer [188](#)

testosterone

age and [175](#)

ambiguous genitalia and [144](#), [149](#)

anabolic steroid abuse [41](#), [46–8](#)

and castration [186](#), [193](#)

conversion to oestrogen [48](#)

in domestic animals [186](#)

inhibition with finasteride [150](#)

and prostate size / cancer [150](#), [184–5](#), [189](#), [192](#)

in puberty [117](#)

side effects of loss [149](#), [192](#)

thalamus [35–6](#)

therianthropy [11](#), [15](#)
the Thomas splint (Hugh Owen Thomas) [167–8](#)
Thoreau, Henry David [14](#)
Thus Spake Zarathustra, by Friedrich Nietzsche [135–6](#)
thyroid activity [136–7](#)
thyroid deficiency [30](#)
tickling [198](#)
tigers, and animal transformation [14–15](#)
Tiresias [40](#), [147–9](#), [155–6](#)
toenails [111](#)
touch, sense of [35](#)
transformations
 gender reassignment surgery [149–50](#), [153–5](#)
 geological [241–2](#)
 growing horns [52–6](#)
 as a literary theme [3](#)
 transformed consciousness [100](#)
 see also animal transformations; tattooing
transplantation
 alternative to prostheses [212](#)
 uterine [153n](#), [154](#)
TSH (thyroid stimulating hormone) [136](#)
tuberculosis [169](#), [171](#)
Turin, Museum of Human Anatomy [133](#)
twin studies
 gender identity and [148–9](#)
 Hippocrates ideas [125](#)

U

Übermensch concept [135](#)
ultrasound
 of the heart [64](#), [66](#)
 in pregnancy [119–20](#), [122](#), [124](#), [129](#)
Ulysses, by James Joyce [6](#)
unicorns, human [52](#), [56](#)
urine tests [216–17](#), [227](#), [232](#)

Urne Buriall, by Thomas Browne [236n](#)

US Presidential elections [139](#)

V

‘vaginoplasty’ [153](#)

Valium [87](#)

vascular dementia [237](#)

veterinary medicine [184–6](#)

Virgin Mary, own conception as immaculate [19](#)

von Baer, Karl Ernst [20](#)

von Haller, Albrecht [20](#)

W

Waldman, Katy [96–7](#)

The Waste Land, by T. S. Eliot [156](#)

werewolves [10–12](#)

What is Life? by Erwin Schrödinger [217](#)

Whitehouse, R H [112](#)

Wilson, Robert A. [178](#)

‘Winter blues’ [162](#)

witchcraft and porphyria [10](#)

wolves, human transformation into [11](#)

womb

babies’ position [121–2](#), [125](#)

dissection of foetus in [119](#), [126](#), [129](#)

measurement [121–2](#)

uterine transplantation [153n](#), [154](#)

women, Le Guin’s three ages [182–3](#)

Women’s Health Initiative study [178](#)

Woolf, Virginia [127](#)

working memory [220](#), [221](#)

worrying *see* anxiety

X

Xenophon [49](#)

XX and XY babies with hormonal problems [144](#), [146](#), [152](#)

XYY chromosome abnormality [46](#)

Y

youthfulness, dreams of [70](#)

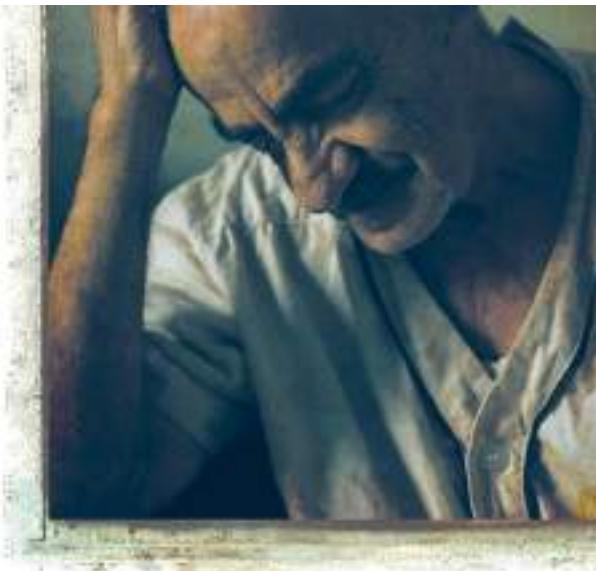
see also elixirs

Z

Zambia [207–9](#)

Zen Buddhism [100–1](#), [103](#)

Zweig, Stefan [55](#)



SHAPE SHIFTERS

A JOURNEY THROUGH
THE CHANGING HUMAN BODY

GAVIN FRANCIS





THE ANSWER

DAVID ICKE

THE MAN WHO HAS BEEN PROVED RIGHT AGAIN AND AGAIN

THE ANSWER

DAVID ICKE

THE MAN WHO HAS BEEN PROVED RIGHT AGAIN AND AGAIN

THE ANSWER

ickonic
publishing

First published in August 2020.



**1a Babbington Lane,
Derby,
DE1 1SU
UK**

email: info@davidickebooks.co.uk

Copyright © 2020 David Icke

No part of this book may be reproduced in any form without permission from the Publisher, except for the quotation of brief passages in criticism

Cover Design: Gareth Icke
Illustrations: Neil [Hague.com](http://NeilHague.com)

British Library Cataloguing-in Publication Data

A catalogue record for this book is available from the British Library

ISBN 978-1916025820
eISBN 978-1-8384153-0-3

THE ANSWER

DAVID ICKE

Dedication:

To All That Is, Has Been, And Ever Can Be

ICKONIC



THE ALTERNATIVE

NEW. DIFFERENT. REVOLUTIONARY

HUNDREDS OF CUTTING EDGE DOCUMENTARIES,
FEATURE FILMS, SERIES & PODCASTS.

SIGN UP NOW AT ICKONIC.COM

THE LIFE STORY OF DAVID ICKE

RENEGADE

THE FEATURE LENGTH FILM

/ren'ē gād/

noun

A person who behaves in a rebelliously unconventional manner.



AVAILABLE NOW AT DAVIDICKE.COM

**What is the point of life?
There does not have to be a point.
It just is.
Enjoy.**

David Icke

Quotes by 13th century Persian mystic Jalāl ad-Dīn Muhammad Rūmī widely known simply as Rumi. His words are confirmation that nothing is new. It has only been forgotten:

The universe is not outside of you. Look inside yourself; everything that you want, you already are.

You are not a drop in the ocean.
You are the entire ocean in a drop.

Stop acting so small. You are the universe in ecstatic motion.

Why do you stay in prison when the door is so wide open?

Raise your words, not voice. It is rain that grows flowers, not thunder.

Take someone who doesn't keep score, who's not looking to be richer, or afraid of losing, who has not the slightest interest even in his own personality: He's free.

And one that I can seriously relate to ...

Run from what's comfortable. Forget safety. Live where you fear to live. Destroy your reputation. Be notorious. I have tried prudent planning long enough. From now on I'll be mad.

I've been 'mad' for 30 years. Try it – it's wonderful.

I'm Not Crazy.
My Reality is Just Different Than Yours.
People might think you're crazy for what
you believe or wear or say, but it doesn't matter.

Cheshire Cat in *Alice in Wonderland*

Alice: 'Have I gone mad?'

Mad Hatter: 'I'm afraid so, but let me tell you something, the best people
usually are.'

Alice in Wonderland

Though I may not know the answers,
I can finally say I'm free.
And if the questions led me here, then,
I am who I was born to be.

From *Who I Was Born to Be*, written by Audra Mae
and recorded by Susan Boyle.

Contents

[The Prologue](#)

CHAPTER 1	<u>What is Reality?</u>
CHAPTER 2	<u>Who are we?</u>
CHAPTER 3	<u>What mysteries?</u>
CHAPTER 4	<u>What is love?</u>
CHAPTER 5	<u>Where are we?</u>
CHAPTER 6	<u>Why don't we know?</u>
CHAPTER 7	<u>How are we manipulated?</u>
CHAPTER 8	<u>Why demonise the gas of life?</u>
CHAPTER 9	<u>Why is 'climate change' being hoaxed?</u>
CHAPTER 10	<u>Are you New Woke?</u>
CHAPTER 11	<u>Why white people? Why Christianity? Why men?</u>
CHAPTER 12	<u>Where are we going – if we allow it?</u>
CHAPTER 13	<u>What is really behind transgender hysteria?</u>
CHAPTER 14	<u>What is the New World Symphony?</u>
CHAPTER 15	<u>How did they pull off the fake 'pandemic'?</u>
CHAPTER 16	<u>Why is Bill Gates a psychopath?</u>
CHAPTER 17	<u>What is <i>The Answer?</i></u>

[POSTSCRIPT](#)

[APPENDIX 1](#)

[APPENDIX 2](#)

[BIBLIOGRAPHY](#)

[INDEX](#)

[Dr Richard Day Predictions](#)

[Noahide Laws = human control](#)

The Prologue

When I discover who I am, I'll be free – Ralph Ellison

I am going to expose from 30 years of research and experience in a long list of countries what I say is really happening in the world and why. These are my perspectives and they don't have to be yours, but in the wake of the 'Covid-19' police state impositions worldwide they surely become near impossible to deny any longer.

It is ever more blatantly obvious that what I have been saying for decades was planned to happen *is* happening as global society transforms so quickly in the image I have predicted. Events have never moved so fast in that direction than during the manufactured 'Covid-19' hysteria and fascistic national lockdowns in which billions were put under actual and virtual house arrest across the world. Eighty-five percent of this book was written before these draconian impositions were rolled out – based on a lie – and I have decided to hold back on the 'Covid-19' story and its catastrophic human impact through economic Armageddon until the late-added chapters near the end which expose in detail both the nature of the 'virus' scam and why it was perpetrated. I will of course refer to the 'virus' briefly here and there before then, but I want you to read the rest of the book and the information that I laid out *before* the 'virus' blitzkrieg because then the who and why of the 'virus' hoax will be devastating in their clarity and context. Nothing in my lifetime has so proved my point about global control than the staged illusion of 'Covid-19'. To emphasise – *Please note when you see my comments relating to the 'virus' that the text around them was written before the 'virus' hysteria and lockdowns began.*



Figure 1: All these decades later the mainstream media is still using the same CIA propaganda term for those who are aware that governments lie to us.

Is it really random coincidence that what I have written for three decades was planned for humanity is now so clearly happening? Or is it the most glaring evidence and confirmation of a calculated agenda for total human enslavement? I vociferously say the latter and I am confident that by the end of this book with the dots and strands connected you will agree that coincidence theory is simply not credible in the face of the evidence. I'll make it very clear what I say is going on, but I want the *evidence* to speak for itself and for you to decide what it means. With that said we shall begin. I have been exposing for 30 years a conspiracy to enslave humanity in an Orwellian global tyranny of total control – ultimately (and very

soon if we don't wake up fast) by connecting artificial intelligence to the human brain so that AI *replaces* the human mind. That's crazy? It's happening step-by-step before our eyes right now. 'Human' thinking and emotions would be history and our perceptions dictated directly by AI and those that control AI. It's no good people screaming 'conspiracy theory' – a term brought into widespread use by the CIA in the 1960s as it sought to discredit those questioning the ludicrous official story of the Kennedy assassination ([Fig 1](#)).

These are definitions of the term 'conspiracy': An evil, unlawful, treacherous, or surreptitious plan formulated in secret by two or more persons; a combination of persons for a secret, unlawful, or evil purpose; an agreement by two or more persons to commit a crime, fraud, or other wrongful act; any concurrence in action or combination in bringing about a given result. On that basis the world is drowning in conspiracies at every level of society, but to the mainstream media, indeed the Mainstream Everything, conspiracies don't exist and anyone who says so is a kook peddling a 'conspiracy theory'. Yes, even in the light of the draconian, fascistic impositions of the 'Covid-19' hoax. What I have been exposing since 1990 is not multiple unconnected conspiracies (though they do exist by those definitions alone). I have uncovered *one* conspiracy with multiple faces driving human society to the same despicable end and what I have revealed is not a 'theory'. It is an obvious reality unfolding by the day as AI takes over human life and freedom is deleted. The crazies in the Devil's Playground of Silicon Valley are now telling you that what I have been warning about for so long is indeed what is planned to happen. They are doing so because they have no choice as AI takes over and cannot be hidden any longer. The sales-pitch is the emergence of a new era in which humans will be 'gods' thanks to a connection to AI when, in truth, the 'new human' will be post-human and no longer 'human' at all. Insiders like Google executive Ray Kurzweil even point to the year of 2030 for when this will be seriously underway and human brains will be connected to the AI 'cloud'. He said:

Our thinking ... will be a hybrid of biological and non-biological thinking ... humans will be able to extend their limitations and 'think in the cloud' ... We're going to put gateways to the cloud in our brains ... We're going to gradually merge and enhance ourselves ... In my view, that's the nature of being human – we transcend our limitations.

As the technology becomes vastly superior to what we are then the small proportion that is still human gets smaller and smaller and smaller until it's just utterly negligible.



Figure 2: How human perception is manipulated into a myopia of possibility. Control information and you control perception. (Image Gareth Icke.)

This is what I have called 'the assimilation' as human awareness is absorbed into AI and that which is truly behind AI. I don't mean the middlemen and women of Silicon Valley. Even the tech billionaires are not the engineers of all this. They are merely the oil rags, albeit very rich ones. What is happening today is the endgame in a story that has spanned thousands of years as we perceive the illusion of 'time'. Our human sense of reality was infiltrated long ago by a force that is not human which has created a global

hierarchy of control with its representatives and agents manipulating human perception century after century on the road to *total* enslavement ([Fig 2](#)). By controlling perception you control experience individually and collectively in a cause-and-effect that I will be explaining in detail. The plan has demanded the constant centralisation of power as a bottom-line imperative. With every step in that direction fewer and fewer people seize more control over the population. Tribes became nations and nations are becoming superstates like the European Union and trading blocs controlled from the centre. Decisions are being made increasingly through global corporations and institutions like the United Nations and the World Health and Trade Organizations. People have long called this conspiracy (while not realising it's a conspiracy) 'globalisation'. What is this? The global centralisation of power over every aspect of human life – the very plan I have been exposing for decades. We now have the centralisation of control in Silicon Valley over the flow of information from which people form their perceptions of events and reality. Hysterical Silicon Valley censorship by Google, Facebook, Twitter, Amazon and all the rest (controlled from the shadows by the same force) is aimed at dictating everything you see and hear and, through that, manipulating your *perception* of everything. Even that won't be necessary with an AI connection to your brain. Your perceptions would then be delivered directly.

This has always been the goal of the non-human infiltration of human society via its agents and operatives in apparently human form. The technological cutting edge that we see in the public arena is as nothing compared with technological knowledge in other realities where what is today called 'smart' was known about while history records humans knocking rocks together and living in caves. The constant flow of 'new inventions' that daily deepen human control have been waiting for humanity to reach a point of intellectual development where it could build and operate its own technological prison. This is where we are today. Gadgetry and communication systems required by the global prison are playing out into public awareness from underground bases and secret projects with cover stories and cover people hiding the truth of where it all comes from. The flow of technology is seamless for this reason. There are no 'seams' or big delays as the manipulators wait for the next stage to be 'invented'. There are no gaps as technological limitations are pondered for decades and overcome. Almost by the week the next stages of technological AI are revealed and the pace is ever quickening. Humanity has been perceptually-manipulated to develop the intellectual capacity ('cleverness') to build and operate its own technological Alcatraz while not developing the wisdom to see that this is what we are doing. I have been saying for decades: Cleverness without wisdom is the most destructive force on earth. So it is proving and not by accident, but design. Cleverness is so often confused with wisdom. Cleverness knows about information while wisdom knows what it means and sees its consequences. It is clever to build an atomic weapon, but not wise to do so. I have exposed the conspiracy, ancient and modern, in enormous detail and the non-human force orchestrating from the shadows and realities unseen by the human eye. You can find this information in ... *And The Truth Shall Set You Free*, *The Biggest Secret*, *Children of the Matrix*, *Tales From The Time Loop*, *The David Icke Guide to the Global Conspiracy*, *The Perception Deception*, *Human Race Get Off Your Knees*, *Phantom Self*, *Everything You Need To Know But Have Never Been Told*, *The Trigger*, and other books. My focus here is on how human perception has been manipulated to follow the path the control system has decreed and from this knowledge point to *The Answer* that will set us free. That answer relates to who and what we really are and to escaping the fake self-identity that we are told and pressured to believe in. To know who we are, where we are and how the two interact is the whole foundation of human freedom which is why every effort is made to keep us in ignorance of that information and awareness.

How it's done

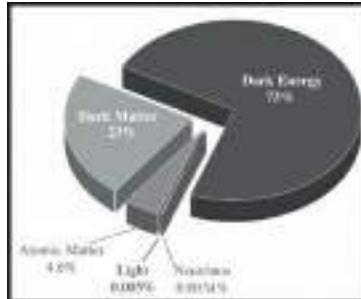


Figure 3: The almost infinitesimal band of frequency that we call ‘light’ or the electromagnetic spectrum. Scientists call that which we can’t see ‘dark’ which I contend is erroneous in their version of reality. ‘Dark’ should be simply considered beyond human sight.

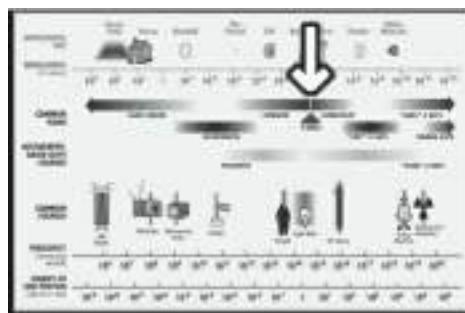


Figure 4: Visible light, which is the only reality we can ‘see’, is a fraction of the 0.005 percent. The human five senses are aware of only one ‘TV channel’ within Infinite Existence.

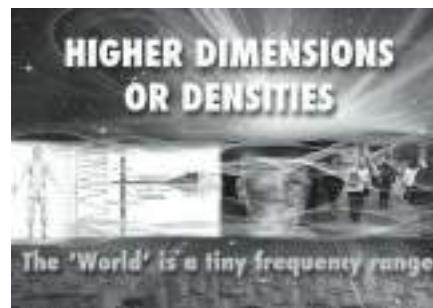


Figure 5: Our ‘world’ is a band of frequency within Infinite Reality.

Some brief but essential background is required for those new to my work about the overwhelmingly hidden hierarchical structure driving the direction of human society on behalf of the non-human force that it represents. Without awareness of this structure and how it works the context of world events simply cannot be understood. I have long used the concept of the spider and the web. The Spider is the non-human force operating beyond the *extraordinarily* narrow frequency band of five-sense human perception. People think they can see all there is to see in the ‘space’ they are observing; but they can’t. They are seeing only a tiny fraction of what exists around us and within us. The electromagnetic spectrum (including radio waves, microwaves, infrared, ultraviolet, X-rays and gamma rays) is only 0.005 percent of what exists in the universe in various forms of energy and reality. Some scientists say it’s a bit more, but not much. The point is that the electromagnetic spectrum is a fraction of what exists beyond its band of frequency and humans can’t see the almost totality even of that spectrum. Human sight – everything we perceive as a visual reality or ‘the world’ – is confined to a micro-segment of the 0.005 percent known as visible light ([Figs 3 and 4](#)). We are limited in our visual perception to a minuscule band of frequency and that is only by the terms that mainstream science can currently measure or thinks it can ([Fig 5](#)). In truth what we ‘see’ is even more myopic in comparison to Infinite Reality that exists

beyond the firewalls of visible light and the illusory limits of the speed of light. Watch television or listen to radio and you perceive only what is being broadcast by the channels and stations you have chosen. All the other channels and stations exist in the same room but you are not aware of them unless you change the channel or move the dial. When people ask why if this non-human force is real we can't see it – this is why. It operates from realms of frequency outside the human band of visual reality and is invisible to us in the same way that when you are tuned to TV station 'A' you can't see TV stations 'B', 'C' or 'D' even though they exist. Change channel and you switch from station 'A' and connect with one of the others. Station 'A' doesn't disappear when you switch; it's only that you are no longer connected to its wavelength or output and so you can't see it. I have just described what happens when we 'die' (or rather don't – only the body does). Our consciousness changes 'channels' or moves its point of attention. This is that all death is – a transfer of *attention* from one reality to another. The source of human control is hidden from us although non-human entities representing this force can move in and out of our reality by entering our band of visual frequency and then withdrawing. Accounts are legion of people claiming to have seen entities or craft 'appearing out of nowhere' and then 'disappearing' in a flash. They don't appear or disappear. They enter the human band of visual frequency and then leave. To the observer they have appeared from nowhere and disappeared into nowhere when it is just a case of now you see it, now you don't, as it comes and goes from visible light. What does a TV channel do when you switch to it? What does it do when you switch away from it? The channels, or realities, appear 'out of nowhere' and then 'disappear into nowhere' when in fact they don't go *anywhere*. We only connect and disconnect with them.

The Web



Figure 6: The compartmentalised web of secret societies, semi-secret and public organisations that allow the 'Spider' hidden at the centre to impose its agenda on human society. (Image Neil Hague.)

What I call 'The Web' is the interconnecting secret society structure that allows the Spider in the hidden to dictate events in the seen ([Fig 6](#)). Strands in The Web close to the Spider are the most exclusive secret societies and their initiates will know the detailed Spider agenda and where it is planned to go.

Communication with the Spider directly and through satanic ritual allows these inner-strand initiates to know about technological possibility way before it appears in the world of the seen and to secure the transfer of technological knowledge long before its official time of release. If you have access to this inner sanctum of The Web, or penetrate it through decades of work, you can predict what we perceive as the 'future' – including the technology involved – because the 'future' in this sense is only the Spider agenda being spun. If there is a plan for the world and nothing intervenes to stop that plan then it will happen and revealing the plan becomes predicting the future. My books over the decades have proved extraordinarily accurate in predicting events for this reason – including a plan for 'pandemics'. The whole

point of what I do is to alert enough people so that humanity *does* intervene and stop the planned outcome of total human control. Famous 'see-the-future' writers such as Aldous Huxley (*Brave New World*, published in 1932) and George Orwell (*Nineteen Eighty-Four*, published in 1948) have proved to be so accurate because by whatever means they were able to penetrate the Spider agenda and could predict technology and other possibilities that didn't exist at the time of their writing. As we move out in The Web from the Spider and the inner-sanctum initiates we meet the secret societies that we do know about in terms of name if not actions. These include the Knights Templar, Knights of Malta, Opus Dei, the Jesuit Order, Freemasons and many others which have an interlocking command structure if you go deep enough. Most of their members will not be aware of their interlocking nature and the agenda their controlling core is pursuing. Different levels or 'degrees' are compartmentalised from what those above them know ([Fig 7](#)). Human society is arranged in the same way with the great majority in any organisation kept in ignorance of what the few at the top know and are seeking to impose. They are pawns and foot-soldiers for an agenda they don't even know exists. Intelligence agencies (themselves structured as secret societies) are classics of this compartmentalisation or 'need to know' technique.

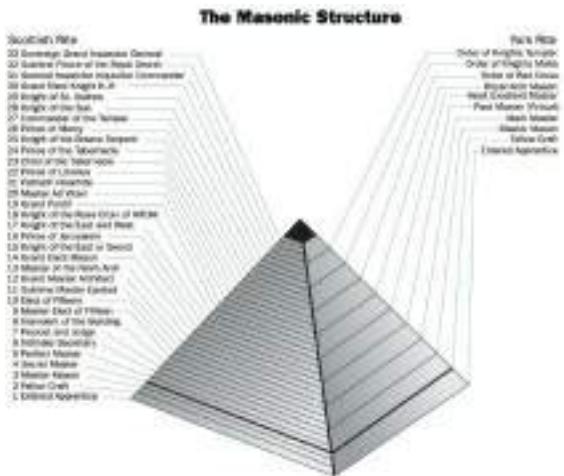


Figure 7: The compartmentalised ‘degrees’ that keep each level of Freemasonry in ignorance of what the others know is the structural basis for all organisations within The Web.



Figure 8: Major ‘cusp’ organisations that take the hidden agenda of the Spider and play it out across human society.



Figure 9: What happens in the world of the 'seen' is hatched in the unseen.

There is a point in The Web where the hidden meets the seen and here we have what I call the 'cusp' organisations that include the Royal Institute of International Affairs (established in London in 1920); Council on Foreign Relations (US, 1921); Bilderberg Group (US, Europe, worldwide, 1954); Club of Rome (Europe, US, worldwide, 1968); and the Trilateral Commission (US, Europe, worldwide, 1972). These groupings and others answer to the Round Table secret society founded in London in the latter years of the 19th century by the House of Rothschild and its frontman lackey, Cecil Rhodes (Fig.8). The definition of 'cusp' describes perfectly the role of these organisations – 'a point of transition between two different states'. In this case those two states are the hidden and the seen between which they act as a conduit. Cusp groups gather together politicians, government administrators, financiers, corporations, intelligence operatives and media to advance a common direction for the world although many of the gofers and stooges involved will have no idea because of compartmentalisation. Cusp organisations include a fantastic list of 'think tanks' and nongovernmental organisations (NGOs). Their role is to take the Spider agenda hatched in the hidden part of The Web and impose that in the world of the seen through governments, government agencies, banks, corporations, intelligence and military groupings, media conglomerates and all the pillars and institutions that dictate the direction of human society. We see apparently random and unconnected decisions made by governments, groups and organisations, but the society-transforming ones are not random and certainly not unconnected. They are the Spider agenda being introduced through its countless proxies which in the end all answer to the same master (Fig.9). At the inner-core of The Web governments and politics *are* the banking system *are* the global corporations *are* the Silicon Valley giants *are* the mainstream media *are* the education system *are* mainstream science *are* the pharmaceutical cartel, or 'Big Pharma', and so on. Key decisions that change the direction of human life are not taken randomly or independently. They are part of the Spider's plan for total control. The vast majority of people working in these groups and organisations who daily take Spider-instigated actions are clueless about the origin of those decisions, changes and policies, and what they are designed to collectively achieve. This is the structure that allows the very few to control and manipulate the very many while the many remain in ignorance of what is really happening and why. Who is going to tell them – the *mainstream media*? That is owned by The Web and most mainstream 'journalists' are as ignorant and often more so about the agenda than the rest of the population.

The Death Cult

The inner core of the secret society global network locks into human-sacrificing Satanism – literally making sacrifices to their hidden 'gods' and masters beyond human sight which are obsessed with death. They feed off the energy and terror associated with death and especially sacrificial death. Most people think that human sacrifice to the 'gods' came to an end in the ancient world. If they read some of my other books they will see otherwise and how many of the global rich and famous are practitioners of this horror to this day. They will also realise that Satanism involves vampiring the energy of children which is where the whole theme originates of 'sacrificing young virgins to the gods'. This is code for children.

Satanic and paedophile rings often work in unison in the targeting of children in their service to The Web and the 'gods'. These ancient practices have passed through what we experience as history under the cover of this network and that's why I refer to the inner elite of The Web as a Death Cult. You can read the detailed background to the Cult going back thousands of years in other books like *The Trigger* and *Everything You Need To Know But Have Never Been Told* (*Everything You Need To Know* from hereon). One central network within the Cult is known as Sabbatian (or Sabbatean)-Frankism which emerged in the 17th century and was the driving force behind the creation of Israel and Zionism, Saudi Arabia and the head-chopping (Death Cult) 'ISIS' version of extreme 'Islam' known as Wahhabism. Sabbatian-Frankism is named after two dark occultists, Sabbatai Zevi (1626-1676) and Jacob Frank (1726-1791) and is a form of Satanism. Jacob Frank teamed up with Sabbatian-Frankist Mayer Amschel Rothschild, founder of the Rothschild banking dynasty, to establish the infamous Illuminati in 1776 as another important strand in The Web. I expose Sabbatian-Frankism in *The Trigger* in relation to the *real* perpetrators of 9/11 (a mass death ritual) and all that has followed in regime-change wars (death of millions) and deletion of freedom. I will refer to the inner-core controlling The Web within human society throughout the book as 'the Cult' and it is important to keep in mind the central part played by its Sabbatian-Frankism wing in relation to Israel, the United States, United Kingdom, Europe and worldwide in the manipulation of global events. Tiny Israel has so much power and influence because it is the fiefdom of Sabbatian-Frankism (the global Cult) and no one needs to know this more urgently than the Jewish community which it has infiltrated while posing as Jewish.



Figure 10: The ever-growing obsession with death.

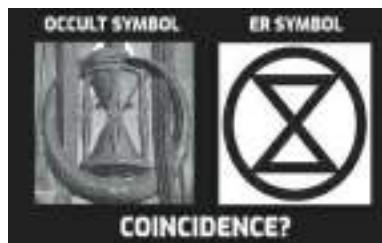


Figure 11: Occult symbol and Extinction Rebellion ('ER') symbol.

The great majority of my research on Sabbatian-Frankism has come from Jewish sources that were and are well aware of how their community has been hijacked. Sabbatian-Frankism and the rest of the Cult specialise in infiltrating societies, cultures and religions by posing as members of those communities while pursuing a very different goal. This infiltration allows the Cult to create and control groups of all kinds while most of those involved have no idea there even is a Cult let alone that it is directing their organisation, religion, culture or society. How many of those who blindly repeat the official nonsense about human-caused climate change and demand the dystopian transformation of society to 'solve the problem' know about the Cult's cusp-cult the Club of Rome? This was specifically created to exploit

environmental concerns (real and imagined) to transform society into a global centralised Marxist-like tyranny in precisely the image demanded by ‘climate change’ protestors such as Extinction Rebellion and promoters of the ‘Green New Deal’ in America. Who string-pulls from the shadows such protests and demands? The *Death Cult* does. You can even see the obsession that groups like *Extinction Rebellion* (ER) have with death and blood ([Fig 10](#)). We are told that the group’s symbol represents an hourglass in a circle to mean time is running out ([Fig 11](#)). It is, however, a symbol long used in occultism and ‘sex magic’ and referred to as ‘The Mark of the Beast’. The O is female and X is male. ‘Ceremonial magician’ Kenneth Grant was secretary and personal assistant to the elite British occultist Aleister Crowley. He explains in his 1973 book, *Kenneth Grant, Aleister Crowley & The Hidden God*, that the symbol also related to a Celtic god called Nodens:

The Heart of the Sigil of Nodens is identical with the Mark of the Beast: ☽ the fusion of O and X which produces the lightning flash. Nodens is the God of the Great Deep or Abyss, microcosmically identical with subconsciousness. He reigns over the Abyss and controls and harnesses its lightnings ... The Seat of Stone is [Egyptian goddess] Isis, and upon this foundation the Goddess is established and rules the heavens, the earth and the deeps beneath the earth. In other words, the Goddess who grants all desires is invoked by the union of the X and the O ...

Extinction Rebellion protests are incredibly ritualistic with groups of people with white faces and blood-red robes walking through the streets. I am not saying that all followers of Extinction Rebellion and supporters of the Green New Deal know they are assets of the global Cult. They are still more pawns in a game they don’t understand. If they read this book to the end they might see how monumentally they are being had. Human-caused climate change is being hoaxed to justify the centralisation of global power over the fine detail of our lives and as I write so is – *big time* – the ‘pandemic’ which ticks every box for those seeking to impose the global Orwellian state.

Permanent government is the real government



Figure 12: Permanent governments operate nationally and globally and dictate the direction of countries and the world while ‘elected’ politicians of all parties come and go.



Figure 13: Politicians are here today and gone tomorrow, but the Hidden Hand that I call the Cult is always there and ultimately controls all of them. (Image Gareth Icke.)



Figure 14: Get the public to support different masks on the same face and divide and rule will always follow. (Image Gareth Icke.)

Every country and the world as a whole has a permanent government controlled by the Cult through compartmentalisation and these are always in power no matter what the nature of the here-today-gone-tomorrow political parties that only *appear* to be the origin of societal change. Permanent government is widely referred to as the 'Deep State' today although that is only part of the permanent control. The Deep State consists of Cult-directed intelligence, military and law enforcement personnel along with government administrators and insider politicians that seek to advance the Cult agenda for the world. They direct, manipulate and undermine elected government and non-Cult personnel (the overwhelming majority) to ensure that what the Cult wants it gets. Other sections of permanent governments include the banking and financial networks, Big Tech, Big Biotech, Big Pharma, Big Media (and some of the 'alternative'), Big Oil, other major corporations, the legal system and courts. Politicians come and go, but the hidden government is always there and no matter what the colour of the briefly-elected political rosettes the same direction of the world incessantly continues (Fig 12). America is a perfect example of how this works although it's the same in every country. The United States is governed (at least officially) by either the Democratic or Republican parties and the Permanent Government controls both of them. Whichever you vote for the Cult is in power. The Republican Party is controlled by a group known as the Neocons or neoconservatives (major funder casino billionaire Sheldon Adelson) and the Democrats have a similar group that I call the Democons (major funder financier billionaire George Soros). Adelson and Soros both answer to those that control Israel which in the shadows is the Sabbatian-Frankist wing of the Cult. Soros would deny that Israel connection to maintain his cover of being different from Adelson. He's not. Do these people and others always like each other? No, they don't and there is rivalry between them. Levels above them, however, make sure that any mutual contempt doesn't get out of hand or in the way. Woe betide them if it does. We see the US presidency passing between 'Democrat' Bill Clinton, 'Republican' Boy George Bush, 'Democrat' Barack Obama or 'Republican' Donald Trump who are described in office as the most powerful people in the world. They are in reality only temporary puppets of the Permanent Government because the Neocons and Democons both take their orders from the same Cult (Fig 13). Political squabbles, attacks and counterattacks are sideshows as the Cult agenda for total human control moves incessantly forward. Public squabbles played out in the media also help to convince the population that they really do have different political choices within what is called 'democracy'. This term is used as interchangeable with 'freedom' when democracy is really only the ability to mind-manipulate enough people to vote for you by lying to them. You lie in election campaigns about your planned policies and then largely do the opposite once you win office. You are then free to officially run the country until the next lie-fest when you may be replaced by another party controlled from the shadows by the same force that controls you. It happens all the time across the world. People vote for Party 'A' and they get into power. The public don't like what they do and next time the majority vote for Party 'B'. People don't like what they do because it's pretty much the same in outcome and the only way they can remove them is to return to Party 'A' that they threw out the election before. Round and round the garden generation after generation. Heads you lose, tails you lose. In some countries there

may be a Party 'C', but the principle is the same. The government that you see is subordinate to the Permanent Government that you don't see and national Permanent Governments fuse into a global Permanent Government that dictates to the world through The Web. Against this background the massive divisions in the population between the political 'Right' and 'Left' take on a whole new light and state of ridiculousness. They are manipulated divide and rule to set the target population at war with itself while believing they have 'choice' ([Fig 14](#)).

Cult wars

War after war in the Middle East is testament to the existence of the Permanent Government behind all political faces and facades. A Neocon 'think tank' called the Project for the New American Century (PNAC), founded and dominated by ultra-Zionists with fanatical allegiance to Israel and Sabbatian-Frankism, published a document in September, 2000, calling for American troops to 'fight and decisively win multiple theatre wars' in the Middle East and elsewhere to regime change governments in a list of countries including Iraq, Libya, Syria and Iran as well as bringing about regime-change in North Korea and eventually China. The Cult seeks to control the whole landmass of Eurasia from Europe to China and from Russia down to the Middle East and this further explains the constant demonisation of Russia. The PNAC document said that to justify this policy to the American public and secure the enormous required increases in military spending the United States had to experience another attack on the homeland like the one by the Japanese at Pearl Harbor, Hawaii, in 1941. To quote the document:

... [The] process of transformation ... [war and regime change] ... is likely to be a long one, absent some catastrophic and catalysing event – like a new Pearl Harbor.

A year to the month later America had what President Bush called 'the Pearl Harbor of the 21st century' – 9/11. Members of the Project for the New American Century behind the document came to office with Bush in January, 2001. They included Dick Cheney (Vice-President and de-facto President); Donald Rumsfeld (Defense Secretary); Paul Wolfowitz (Deputy Defense Secretary); Dov Zakheim (Comptroller of the entire Pentagon budget); and many others allied to Israel and committed to the PNAC list of regime-change targets. I show beyond doubt in *The Trigger* that the satanic Sabbatian-Frankist network of the Cult operating out of Israel and in league with its agents in the US Deep State were the real perpetrators of 9/11 which they then used as the excuse to launch the 'war on terror' (war of terror) to pick off their list of target countries. They invaded Afghanistan to 'get' the fake 9/11 villain Osama bin Laden and followed this by targeting the countries on the original PNAC list – Iraq, Libya, Syria and Iran with much finger-pointing also at North Korea and increasingly China. The nature of the Permanent Government comes into focus when you observe how those countries have been targeted by different presidents from apparently 'opposing' parties: George Bush ('Republican', Iraq); Barack Obama ('Democrat', Libya and Syria); and Donald Trump ('Republican', Iran). We also had UK Prime Minister and war criminal Tony Blair (Labour Party) working with Bush to invade Afghanistan and Iraq while David Cameron (Conservative Party) was Prime Minister when Britain supported Obama in laying siege to Libya and Syria. They may appear to be 'different' presidents, prime ministers and parties, but they follow the same script written by the Permanent Government.

Unhooking the mind

All this brings me to the focus of this book which is escaping the human mind-prison by taking back control of our own perceptions and self-identity. I mean by that our perceptions of *everything* from world events to the nature of the True 'I' and reality itself. The number of Cult operatives working in full knowledge of what they are doing is microscopic compared with a global population heading towards eight billion. The only way so few can control and direct so many is by hijacking their perception of everything. You can use 'physical' control only over relatively small groups through military and civilian

law enforcement (unless the population acquiesce en masse through perception control as with the 'pandemic'). For global control you require perception control. Behaviour comes from perception and if you control perception you control behaviour and what people will do or won't do, challenge or support. Hijack perception and you hijack behaviour; hijack behaviour and you hijack the world. The sequence of control is perception = behaviour = collective human society. The next question is where do perceptions come from? They come from *information* received. We develop our perceptions through information that we absorb from personal experience, a bloke down the bar, the ten o'clock news, a posting on Facebook, and countless other sources. We can therefore extend the sequence to information = perception = behaviour = collective human society. Control information and you control that whole sequence. The Cult already overwhelmingly controls information and it seeks total control. Perceptions are *assumptions* based on the brain's best guess in the light of information received. Humanity would increase by a ginormous leap its potential for knowledge and creativity if we realised that perception and truth do not have to be the same thing and in fact rarely are. What is perceived 'truth' anyway except assumptions that become perceptions that become 'this is how it is'? Donald Hoffman, a professor in the Department of Cognitive Sciences at the University of California, Irvine, said that perception is a controlled illusion and reality is when we agree about our hallucinations. Yes, but who controls the illusion and elicits agreement on hallucinations by controlling information and the assumptions that come from that? The Cult is seeking to enforce total control by imposing perception directly through a brain-connection to AI, but for now they must control information to control perception to hijack collective reality. Here you have the reason the Cult is obsessed with controlling sources of information through ownership of the mainstream media and Silicon Valley while suppressing other information through the ever-increasing censorship documented at length in my other books and experienced by more people every day. The Cult seeks to delete or suppress any source of information and opinion that questions and challenges the official narrative of almost any subject, including government (Cult) policy, 'Covid-19', vaccines, regime-change wars, human-caused climate change, the nature of human biology and political correctness which is manipulating the population to censor itself. All these subjects and so many more are aspects of the Spider agenda and they are imposed by the Cult via The Web. The coordination of censorship by this network is obvious and it's cheered on by the Cult-created fake-'progressive' 'Woke' culture. 'Woke', ironically, is another word for 'fast asleep'. The climate change hoax, the imposition of extreme transgender doctrines, beliefs and language, and the obsession with seeing racism absolutely everywhere are all facets of 'Woke' and, not coincidentally, facets of the Cult agenda for the world as I will be explaining.

Fake self-identity

The foundation and bottom-line of mass perception programming is to maintain humanity in ongoing ignorance of who we are and where we are. The idea is to program the belief from cradle to grave that we are cosmic accidents of random 'evolution' and to define self-identity only by the labels we are given and give ourselves. Life has a beginning and an end and when you're dead you're dead. For those who won't buy the latter you tell them they are subject to the demands of an angry, judgemental external 'God' with rules and regulations (Cult rules and regulations) which must be followed to avoid the fires of hell or secure a date with multiple virgins waiting only for believers. Whether religious or atheist the labels of limitation still apply. These are the labels of 'I-am-a' as in: I-am-a man, woman, gay, transgender, black, white, rich, poor, Christian, Muslim, Hindu, Jew and all the rest. These labels are not who we are. They are merely what we are briefly *experiencing*. We – the eternal 'I' – are an expression of an Infinite State of Awareness *having* those experiences. Think how impossible it would be to pressure, frighten, intimidate and manipulate people to do what the Cult demands if we knew that we are a point of attention within a state of Infinite Awareness having a brief experience called human in whatever form, colour, race or sexuality. How even harder would it be to divide and control people aware that we are all aspects of the

same consciousness and who understand that our temporary labels are illusory divisions and not real in the way that they seem to be? How would the Cult instigate the essential divide and rule and conflict between labels of race, culture, sexuality, politics and income bracket if we all knew they were temporary illusions and that our reality is just another type of ‘dream’? Or that human life is like donning a headset and playing virtual reality? Such games may seem so real, but take off the headset (symbolic of ‘death’) and you see that it was all a technologically-generated illusion, a dream or nightmare that we believed in the moment to be real. Such is the nature of human life. As Rumi, a 13th century Persian mystic, said:

This place is a dream. Only a sleeper considers it real. Then death comes like dawn and you wake up laughing at what you thought was your grief.



Figure 15: The human illusion.

These truths must be kept from us for the Death Cult conspiracy to prevail. This book is about how that is being done and how we can return to the true and eternal ‘I’ that we are and always will be beyond the illusory diversions of the five senses. The inner circle of the Cult knows what reality is and how it works and their power comes from keeping that knowledge from the population. They do this by dismissing or demonising such information in the public arena while passing it on to generations of chosen initiates in the secret society networks of The Web. Secret societies and other assets of The Web answer in the end to the Cult which itself answers to its non-human masters or Spider. We have in this way been manipulated to forget our real nature and live in an isolated ‘Bubble’ of self-identity and limitation that I call Phantom Self – *label self* (Fig 15). This is the whole foundation of human control, but it doesn’t have to be. Open your mind and it’s wakey, wakey time.

CHAPTER ONE

What is ‘reality’?

If you don’t know who you truly are, you’ll never know what you really want – Roy T. Bennett

Dictionary definitions of ‘conscious’ include: ‘The state of being aware of, and responsive to, one’s surroundings’; and ‘the state of understanding and realising something’. My definition for the purposes of this book is going to be very different.

I am making a clear distinction between what I will call ‘mind’ and ‘consciousness’. I will use the term ‘mind’ and ‘Body-Mind’ to describe the perception of five-sense reality and ‘consciousness’ for expanded awareness beyond the walls – firewalls as we shall see – of the five senses. From this perspective those two official definitions can be seen in another way. Take the first one: ‘The state of being aware of, and responsive to, one’s surroundings.’ Okay, but aware of *what* surroundings? Perceived ‘surroundings’ (quite the wrong term as I shall explore) are actually illusory when compared with how we appear to experience them. The world is not ‘solid’, for example. It only seems that way to *senses* that are not consciousness in its prime form. Our five senses, or information decoding systems, ‘sense’ our ‘surroundings’ while not in the widest meaning of the word being ‘conscious’ or ‘aware’ of what those surroundings are. If that was the case we would see through the illusions and mind-trickery to perceive the world as it really is. Then there is that other definition of conscious: ‘The state of understanding and realising something.’ Can anyone truly understand *anything*, never mind *something*, when we appear to be experiencing a ‘physical’ world of ‘solidity’ which is, in fact, neither? How can we understand anything *in* the world if we don’t understand the nature of the world? We can’t and yet all the institutions of human society are making decisions and forming perceptions based on an illusory reality which is nothing like the one they think they are living ‘in’. How can such decisions and perceptions be anything except skewed and misguided? These are the same institutions of education, science, medicine, politics and media etc. from which all but a few glean their perceptions and make their decisions. Put all that together and it captures in its totality the meaning of the phrase ‘the blind leading the blind’ or, as I would put it, the unconscious leading the unconscious. Five-sense mind is not *conscious* in my definition so much as *sensory* – ‘relating to the physical senses’. It doesn’t perceive and instead *decodes*. I will explain the hows and whys as we go along. This entrapment in five-sense perception is why so many (especially in academia, science and medicine) only believe in what they can see, touch, taste, smell or hear – *sense, decode*. They are not *conscious* beyond sensory self. By my definition, therefore, such people are unconscious and slaves of five-sense mind. Our senses are not conscious any more than a computer is conscious when it *decodes* data and presents it on the screen in a form that we recognise.



Figure 16: The symbolic – but very accurate – depiction of the human plight. The computer operator (consciousness) becomes disconnected from the computer (Body-Mind) which is then programmed with false perceptions of everything to secure mass human control. (Image Neil Hague.)



Figure 17: Who are we? We are awareness, a state of being aware. The body is only a temporary vehicle for a brief experience by that awareness as a ‘human’.



Figure 18: We may experience ourselves as ‘individual’, but we are all expressions, too, of the same infinite flow of awareness that at one level I will call ‘The Field’. (Image Neil Hague.)

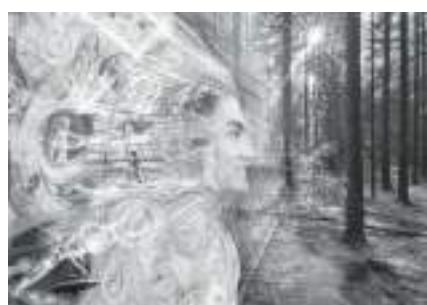


Figure 19: When our point of attention enters the human frequency band we should be guided from our expanded levels of consciousness. Instead most are manipulated to operate only in the realm of the five senses where the Cult controls what they see and hear. The result is ‘physical’ enslavement through perceptual enslavement. (Image Neil Hague.)

What I am calling ‘conscious’ is that which operates beyond the merely sensory. You could think of this as the person sitting at the computer with the keyboard and mouse while sensory mind is the computer which should be responding to that input ([Fig 16](#)). When a computer virus infiltrates a system and takes it over – takes ‘possession’ – the operator is tapping the mouse and banging the keys without response. The computer takes on a life of its own with something else seizing control. I say this is what has happened to humanity. A ‘virus’ – the Death Cult and its non-human masters – have infiltrated human perception and essentially disconnected sensory mind (Body-Mind) from expanded awareness. We are not our body or sensory perception. They are only experiences for the True Self which is simply awareness – a state of being aware ([Fig 17](#)). Everything in all existence is consciousness, the *same* consciousness in different states of awareness, and we, like *everything*, are an expression of that state of Infinite and Eternal Awareness ([Fig 18](#)). Our expression or *point of attention* is currently having a brief experience called human and our Body-Mind (the symbolic computer) is the vehicle for that experience. Humanity has been manipulated by the Cult to forget our true nature and identify with the ‘me’ of the five senses and all its illusory labels and sense of apartness and division ([Fig 19](#)). We are meant to retain a connection to the True ‘I’ (the hands on the mouse and keyboard) and we can open our minds potentially to Infinity itself. When our minds are closed that influence is lost to our *experiencing* awareness, or Body-Mind, and we becomes isolated in the ‘Bubble’ within which our sense of reality is dominated by five-sense perception ([Fig 20](#) overleaf). Instead of being influenced by our expanded levels of awareness we become mesmerised by information constantly fed to the brain and five senses by Cult-controlled media, politics, science, medicine and academia while all except a few in those professions have no idea they are serving a Cult-directed agenda. They are as perceptually mesmerised by their Bubbles as everyone else. Perceptions within the isolated ‘Bubble’ are programmed to *sense* reality while not being *conscious* of reality and this allows the Cult to impose its will via manipulated ignorance on human experience. From this has come the collective madness of war, division and conflict of every kind and this possession of Body-Mind is planned to be completed through the mass-connection of AI to the human brain. That would take us beyond mere perception programming to full-blown assimilation into artificial intelligence and the force behind it. I don’t mean assimilation of the True ‘I’, but of the five-sense Body-Mind Bubble isolated from True ‘I’. It’s like a virus taking control of an entire computer network by bypassing and disconnecting the operators (True ‘I’) and connecting the system to another source (the Cult and its masters in the unseen). Everything is conscious because everything *is* consciousness manifesting in infinite states and forms. Not everything, however, is *equally* conscious and hence my distinction in this book between what I am calling Body-Mind and consciousness. Observe humanity for five minutes to see multiple states of awareness. Sensory mind is a form of awareness which is incredibly limited in its perception of reality compared with consciousness beyond the Body-Mind Bubble.



Figure 20: The whole foundation of human control – isolation in the Bubble of perception. See Neil Hague colour section.

What is this ‘God’?



Figure 21: Our ‘individual’ awareness is Infinite Awareness experiencing itself. We are the ‘individual’ and the whole.

We are a point of attention within an Infinite state of awareness/consciousness that some refer to as ‘God’. I don’t use that term with all its religious connotations and diversions. For those who do, we are not *apart* from ‘God’; we are a part of ‘God’. We are a unique point of attention through which Infinite Awareness, or ‘God’, can infinitely experience itself ([Fig 21](#)). Infinite Awareness means Infinite Possibility and Infinite Potential for Infinite Experience. We are all expressions of the same consciousness and separation is a five-sense illusion that the Cult works so hard to maintain. American cosmologist Carl Sagan said:

We are a way for the universe [I prefer The Infinite] to know itself. Some part of our being knows this is where we came from. We long to return. And we can, because the cosmos is also within us. We’re made of star stuff.



Figure 22: Humanity is entrapped in perceptual Bubbles and programmed by Cult-controlled mainstream information sources operating in the Bubble. Isolate and program. See Neil Hague colour section.

What is ‘human’ except a state of awareness experiencing itself in multiple ways? The level of awareness of the ‘part’ is decided by the strength of connection that it has to the whole. The more we lose a perception of self-identity with the whole (I am Infinite Awareness having a human experience) and perceive ourselves to be isolated random ‘labels’ (I am Ethel on the checkout or Charlie at the drive-through) the more the connection and influence of Infinite Awareness is lost and we become trapped in illusion and forget who we really are. This can be accurately symbolised as living in a Bubble of isolated Body-Mind in which the perception of everything is formed only from the information available within the Bubble ([Fig 22](#)). Beyond its walls lies infinite possibility, potential and awareness that would give you a completely different understanding of who you are and where you are. The Cult works incessantly to keep humanity entrapped in the Bubble because only then can its will prevail. Isolate Body-Mind from expanded states of consciousness and program Body-Mind with the perceptions and self-identity that allow the imposition of mass servitude. Crucial to this is to use the inner-core of the secret society network to communicate the nature of reality through the generations of the Cult while keeping that knowledge from the target population.

Descriptions of Infinite Reality that I have outlined here can be found throughout history long before

the Cult instigated mainstream ‘science’ to tell us that we are all random cosmic accidents, that consciousness only comes from the brain, and death is the end. The perceptual outcome of promoting this nonsense has been to embed the belief that we are not an eternal expression of an infinite whole and only a meaningless assembly of randomly-evolved cells. We are told by ‘experts’ that the brain is the origin of consciousness and life depends on the brain being active. When it’s not then consciousness ceases to be. Selling this Bubble illusion is an essential precursor to mass control. Cult-created ‘education’ and academia download this baloney to each generation of young people who largely pass it on to the next generation. Academia and this-world-is-all-there-is ‘scientists’ have themselves downloaded the same script (otherwise they would never get the job) and their funding and authorities demand that this is what they teach to others in a perpetual-perceptual motion machine in which ignorance speaks lies unto ignorance and calls it ‘education’. For those who won’t buy this perceptual program there is the associated entrapment of religion in which some have eternal life if they do what ‘God’ (the Cult) demands while others are condemned to the Fires of Hell for having a mind – or consciousness – of their own. Religion in a sentence: ‘Do what ‘God’ (we) say or you’ll be in deep shit.’ Ancient cultures across the world knew that consciousness is eternal and their societies were founded on that understanding in the thousands of years before Cult ‘science’ and religion dropped in to tell and sell another story which was imposed by Cult-orchestrated colonisation from Britain and Europe. The Cult headquartered itself in Britain (hence the British Empire) after its journey of the centuries out of Sumer and Babylon (today’s Iraq), Egypt, Asia, and elsewhere. Italy and Germany are other major Cult centres (so is China) and it expanded into North America with colonisation while establishing itself in the pivotal land of Palestine through Sabbatian-Frankism with the creation of Israel (see *The Trigger*).

Unravelling the illusion

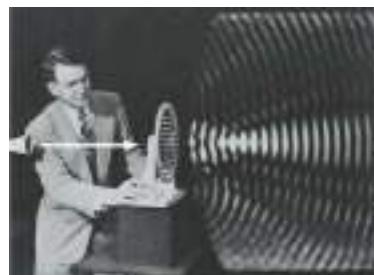


Figure 23: The foundation of human reality is information encoded in wavefields and the illusory ‘physical’ world is a decoded projection of that information.



Figure 24: A computer decodes information from Wi-Fi radiation fields in the unseen into images on the screen that we can see.



Figure 25: The human brain and five-sense decoding systems do the same by transforming unseen wave information into holographic, illusory ‘physical’, information that only exists in our ‘heads’. (Image Gareth Icke.)



Figure 26: Different parts of the brain specialise in decoding different senses and fits them together to form perceived reality. (Image Neil Hague.)

Before I explore reality more deeply I should summarise the illusory ‘normal’ that we are told to believe in. This requires us to accept that what we appear to be experiencing is *really* what we are experiencing. Official reality is what the *five senses* are manipulated to believe in. Can I see it? Check. Hear it? Check. Touch it? Check. Smell it? Check. Taste it? Check. Okay, it exists then. But *does it* in the form that we think it does? Are we and the world really ‘physical’ and ‘solid’? No. The sensory system of the five senses is a decoder of information in the same way that a computer decodes Wi-Fi into a very different form on the screen. The five senses decode information in a particular way (again like a computer) which reflects what they have been encoded to do. A computer decodes information from electronic circuits and Wi-Fi electromagnetic radiation fields into pictures, colours, graphics and text on the screen as radio and television broadcasts transmit sound and images in waves which the television decodes ([Fig 23](#)). We perceive the Internet to be what we see on the screen when in fact the only place the Internet exists in that form is actually on the screen. Everywhere else that same information is expressed as electronic circuits, codes and Wi-Fi fields. Our human reality also consists of electromagnetic Wi-Fi-like wavefields of information and we are interacting with those fields as a computer interacts with Wi-Fi. A computer is encoded to decode Wi-Fi wave information to produce what we see on the screen while the five senses, in league with the brain, are encoded to decode information from radiation wavefields to produce the reality (the *sense* of reality) that we perceive as the ‘physical world’ ([Figs 24](#) and [25](#) on previous page). The foundation of our reality and the human self is not ‘physical’. It is wavefield information (keep thinking Wi-Fi) which the five senses decode into the ‘world’ that we think we are experiencing as physicality. Observe each of the senses and you will see that this is true. They decode wavefield information into electrical information which is communicated to the brain to be decoded into what we experience as the physical world. There are specific areas of the brain that process input from each sense and these sources are then combined to construct what we believe to be human reality ([Fig 26](#)). Our sense of everything in terms of physicality and solidity is an illusion of this decoding process. What appears to be physical is really holographic – *illusory* physical. Holograms give the appearance of solidity while being anything but solid. This illusion can be seen in today’s holographics which can look as solid as you and me when in fact they are energetic projections that have no solidity. I’ll cover this in more detail in the next chapter.

Only at the end of this wavefield-electrical-digital-holographic decoding process does the ‘external’ world exist as we perceive it ([Fig 27](#)). Nor is holographic ‘physical’ reality actually external to us despite what our senses may tell us. The ‘world’ that we experience apparently ‘outside’ of us only exists in that form *in our heads – the brain*. In the same way information on the screen of a computer only exists in that form *inside* the computer. I have heard scientists claim that the senses de-construct an external reality and then re-construct it in the brain. This is absolutely not the case and anyone taking even a cursory look at well-established evidence will see that. Our experienced reality, as acknowledged by more aware scientists, is like a computer screen which hides all the codes, circuits and pixels which make the sound and images possible. In our case those codes, circuits and pixels are information (consciousness) waves that when decoded form our illusory ‘physical’ reality.



Figure 27: The human decoding system transforms wave information into electrical information which becomes digital and holographic information – the illusory ‘physical’ world. (Image Neil Hague.)



Figure 28: The foundation of the human body and everything in our reality is information encoded in wavefields. See Neil Hague colour section.

The foundation of our reality – including ourselves – is wave information fields which are expressions of *consciousness* and so everything is conscious in some form. Information encoded in the wavefield of a tree is what makes it a tree and not a flower or a thorn bush. What is a ‘tree’ in a virtual reality game? It is information encoded to be decoded by the computer into the form of a tree. Every expression of form, every thought and emotion, transmits different wave frequencies that reflect the information the waves represent and contain. Form is *information – waveform information*. What is encoded into the human body wavefield makes us appear ‘physically’ human ([Fig 28](#)). Our reality is the sum total of all these wave information fields within the frequency band of the human senses and I will refer to this totality as ‘The Field’ – the energetic ‘sea’ that connects everything while our senses tell us that each ‘form’ stands apart from all other ‘form’ with ‘space’ in between. That ‘space’ is filled with the information (consciousness) of The Field which connects everything ([Fig 29](#) overleaf). Wi-Fi technologically mimics ‘The Field’ and the reason for that will become clear later on ([Fig 30](#) overleaf). Body-Mind fields are interacting with ‘The Field’ in the same way that we take information from the Internet and also post information. The Field affects us and we affect it. We *are* The Field and The Field is us – we are indivisible. The term ‘We Are One’ is not some trite esoteric phrase. It describes how everything in our reality and *all* realities is

ultimately one field of energy/consciousness. Apparent division is an illusion of the way we experience reality. The key is to realise that *everything* is a wave information field which we decode into the ‘world’ that we think we live ‘in’ when ‘it’ really lives in *us* – Body-Mind. Understanding the foundation wave nature of ‘physical’ reality is to truly grasp what is happening in the world as will become clear.



Figure 29: Everything is connected with The Field and wave-interacts with everything else through The Field. See Neil Hague colour section.



Figure 30: A portrayal of the now ubiquitous Wi-Fi fields – a technological overlap of The Field which operates basically the same.

Ears to hear? Tongues to taste?



Figure 31: A falling tree (and everything else) literally does only make a noise when we hear it.



Figure 32: Everything is wavefield information in its base state – including food. ‘Physical’ food is decoded wavefield energy (information). See Neil Hague colour section.

The hearing sense is the most obvious example of decoding waves into electrical signals. Our ears receive wavefield information as soundwaves and transmit them to the brain as an electrical communication. Only when the brain decodes that information do we ‘hear’ sound. People talk about ‘hearing’ each other speak, but words don’t pass between us – sound waves do. Words only manifest at the *end* of the sequence, not the beginning. When we speak we are generating *wavefields* of information from the vocal chords and these soundwaves are decoded by the ears and transmitted electrically to the brain to be decoded into the words that we think we are hearing with our ears. We hear them in the brain and it’s the same with all the senses. Sound is *silent* to our senses in the form of sound *waves* until their information enters the brain. Take the example of a tree falling. A falling tree is an electromagnetic wave information field that impacts on the electromagnetic wavefield ‘sea’ or The Field. A wave disturbance is generated in the ‘sea’ from this wave interaction and if no one is there to decode that disturbance a falling tree makes no noise. If an observer is present they will pick up the wave disturbance as electromagnetic (sound) waves and transmit these electrically to the brain to be decoded into the sound of a tree falling. Hence the question ‘does a falling tree make a noise?’ can be answered by ‘only if you hear it’ ([Fig 31](#)). All five senses work this way. Food and drink as we perceive them are really energetic fields of information decoded by the senses into the form that we see and taste. The tongue sends electrical signals to the brain to become ‘yummy’ or ‘what’s this shit?’ It is the *brain* that tastes within human reality and the same with sight, touch, smell and hearing ([Fig 32](#)). There are pain relief techniques used today which involve blocking the point of pain from communicating electrically with the brain. Unless the brain decodes that signal into ‘ouch’ there can be no pain. Food companies, well, they call it food, add taste enhancers to their products to trick the brain into decoding more taste than the ‘food’ contains. Car seats are now being designed to further trick the brain for health reasons into believing someone sitting behind the wheel is walking. ‘Physical’ reality is an illusion and the Cult knows this. It works constantly to stop *you* knowing to make you a sitting duck for its perceptual manipulation. The famous scene in the first *Matrix* movie describes the world as it really is when the character Neo has his mind inserted into a computer program to be shown the illusory nature of physicality:

Neo: This isn’t real?

Morpheus: What *is* real? How do you define ‘real’? If you’re talking about what you can feel, what you can smell, taste and see, then ‘real’ is simply electrical signals interpreted by your brain.

That’s all it is and everything we believe to be real only exists in the brain or Body-Mind in the form that we experience. British philosopher Alan Watts, who became well-known in America for his Western interpretation of Eastern philosophy, said:

... [Without the brain] the world is devoid of light, heat, weight, solidity, motion, space, time or any other imaginable feature. All these phenomena are interactions, or transactions, of vibrations with a certain arrangement of neurons.

Outside the brain none of these foundations of ‘physical reality’ exist in that form. Mainstream scientist Robert Lanza describes in his book, *Biocentrism*, how we decode electromagnetic waves and energy into visual and ‘physical’ experience. He used the example of a flame which emits photons, or tiny packets of electromagnetic energy, each pulsing electrically and magnetically:

... these ... invisible electromagnetic waves strike a human retina, and if (and only if) the waves happen to measure between 400 and 700 nano meters in length from crest to crest, then their energy is just right to deliver a stimulus to the 8 million cone-shaped cells in the retina.

Each in turn send an electrical pulse to a neighbour neuron, and on up the line this goes, at 250 mph,

until it reaches the ... occipital lobe of the brain, in the back of the head. There, a cascading complex of neurons fire from the incoming stimuli, and we subjectively perceive this experience as a yellow brightness occurring in a place we have been conditioned to call the 'external world'.

Illusion Confusion

Even movement is a decoded illusion. There is no *movement*? You experience moving around in your dreams while *you* don't move at all. It all happens in your mind. *You* are lying in bed fast asleep. How can human experience involve 'physical' movement except as a holographic dream given that holographic 'physical' reality only exists in the brain? When people don headsets to play computer games they experience speeding along in a car or falling over a cliff while their bodies are sitting in a chair going nowhere. A British newspaper writer described how the most striking aspect of playing such a game was the physical sensation of moving without really moving: 'My brain sends signals to my body that create the illusion that it's shooting around like a pinball when in fact I am stationary.' This is how the illusion of human movement works. Colours don't exist until they are decoded by the brain. Each colour and shade is a unique frequency that requires decoding to 'see'. Objects (wavefields) absorb some wave frequencies of colour and reflect others. What they reflect we decode and 'see' as their 'colour' and what they absorb we don't. All that we visually perceive is reflected light which is why we can't see in pitch black when objects (wavefields) have no light to reflect. At the two colour extremes black absorbs all light and appears black while white reflects all light and appears white. Other colours absorb some and reflect some which gives them their unique light representation that we 'see' (decode) as colour. Rainbows are called a spectrum which comes from a Latin word meaning an apparition or phantom (hence 'spectre'). That sums it up, really. In the same way that sound can only manifest when waves are decoded by the brain so visual reality can only manifest through the same process. This is the real foundation of the scientific concept of the 'Observer Effect' which says that 'physical' reality only exists in that form when it is being observed or 'measured'. When it is not being observed/measured reality remains in its wavefield state and only becomes 'physical' when we *look at it* in some form even through a measuring device. One media headline said: 'Your entire life is an ILLUSION: New test backs up theory that the world doesn't exist until we look at it'. Andrew Truscott, an Associate Professor at the Australian National University who has studied this phenomenon, said that at the quantum (smaller than the atom) level reality does not exist if we are not looking at it. He added that his team's experiments revealed how '... the atoms did not travel from A to B ... and it was only when they were measured at the end of the journey that their wave-like or particle-like behaviour was brought into existence.' Theoretical physicist Werner Karl Heisenberg (1901-1976), the celebrated German pioneer of quantum mechanics, said that 'a path comes into existence only when you observe it'. An article in *Epoch Times* described the findings of another experiment in an article headlined 'Your Mind Can Control Matter':

Atomic particles were shown to also be waves. Whether they manifested as waves or as particles depended on whether someone was looking. Observation influenced the physical reality of the particles – in more technical language, observation collapsed the wave function.



Figure 33: The white crest of a wave and the ocean are the same body of water. Humans and Infinity are the same body of consciousness. They

just take a different visual form.



Figure 34: It all seems so 'real', but it is holographic illusion decoded from wave information. See Neil Hague colour section.

Scientists have long pondered on the strange phenomenon that particles are also waves at the *same time*. That's impossible, surely? They have to be one or the other? They don't when you appreciate that particles and waves are manifestations of the *same information*. They only appear to be different because of the form that information takes (Fig 33). Waves are the foundation information construct and particles are their decoded holographic representation. 'Collapsing the wave function' is the act of decoding holographic reality which exists in another form at the beyond-human-sight quantum level. Quantum reality is waves of possibility and potentiality and the mind decodes that into holographic actuality. Scientists say that 'physical' reality only exists when we observe it, but the term missing here is '*decode it*'. Physical reality only exists when it is *decoded*. The act of observation triggers the decoding process. Human reality requires an observer to exist because the observer is *making it* exist in that form in the decoding system of the brain (Fig 34). Waves ('non-physical') and particles ('physical') are different forms of the same field of information. Scientist Albert Einstein said: 'The [wavefield] is the sole agency of the particle [matter].'

He's behind you!



Figure 35: 'He's behind you' and when observation decodes reality true reality is always 'behind you'.



Figure 36: Look and see what's not really there except in your 'head'. (Image Neil Hague.)

For reasons I have explained Einstein's contention *has* to be the case. The 'observer' principle is like the classic scene in a British pantomime show when a character faces the audience and they shout that someone 'is behind you'. As the character turns around to check this out the person behind moves around as they do. No matter how many times the character turns what he is looking for is always behind him and so unseeable ([Fig 35](#)). Move your focus in any direction and wavefield becomes hologram. We don't see what's 'behind you' (wavefield reality) because the act of observation triggers holographic decoding ([Fig 36](#)). Writer Michael Talbot described in his book, *The Holographic Universe*, something he witnessed at a family party in which a stage hypnotist was invited to entertain the guests with some mind tricks. At one point a man called Tom was put into a hypnotic trance and told that when he was brought back to a waking state he would not be able to see his daughter. The hypnotist asked the daughter to stand right in front of her father and the now apparently awakened Tom was asked if he could see her. 'No', he said, she wasn't in the room. He was, in fact, looking right into her belly as he sat and she stood. The hypnotist then put his hand in the small of her back and asked Tom if he could see what he was holding. 'Yes', Tom replied, bemused at such an easy question – 'You are holding a watch'. He was asked to read an inscription on the watch which he did while his daughter was standing between him and the watch. A mainstream scientist would tell you that is impossible when the explanation is so simple. The base form of the daughter's body was a wavefield of information operating at frequencies outside the human visual frequency range. Unless she was decoded into holographic form within the frequency band of Tom's eyes/brain she would not appear in her father's 'physical' reality. What's more if she wasn't in his mind holographically she could not block his view to the watch ([Fig 37](#)). The hypnotic suggestion that Tom wouldn't see his daughter firewalled his brain's decoding system from reading his daughter's field and without that happening she would remain invisible to him. This is also a basic explanation for 'ghosts' which are wavefields of consciousness not connected to a human body field and thus cannot be decoded into 'physical reality'. Most appear as ethereal and not 'solid' because of this although some can project a self-image so powerfully that they may appear to be 'solid', albeit briefly. Neo in *The Matrix* asks how he can appear to have a body while in a computer program connected to his brain and he is told that his mind is creating a 'residual self-image' – a 'mental projection of your digital self'. In the context of a 'ghost' it's a mental self-image of the former digital self which will still be imprinted in the 'ghost's' wavefield. Even the illusory 'world' that the brain constructs is manifested from a fraction of the information we receive second by second. The mainstream *Wonderpedia* science magazine said:



Figure 37: If we don't decode something from the waveform it cannot appear in our holographic 'physical' reality. (Image Neil Hague.)

Every second, 11 million sensations crackle along these [brain] pathways ... The brain is confronted with an alarming array of images, sounds and smells which it rigorously filters down until it is left with a manageable list of around 40. Thus 40 sensations per second make up what we perceive as reality.



Figure 38: The process of decoding virtual reality games is the same in principle as how we decode the ‘physical’ world.



Figure 39: Like the ‘physical’ world it can seem so ‘real’.

Forty sensations or bits of information construct our experienced reality from 11 *million* received and any gaps are filled in by what the brain believes should be there. It’s hysterical to think what reality is compared with the way we experience it. We can get some insight into the process of reality-manifestation with the ever more sophisticated virtual-reality games and systems which mimic technologically the way we create reality biologically (another form of technology if the truth be told). Players wear headsets, earphones and gloves which allow electrical information and codes of the game to access and override the decoding of ‘normal’ reality and trick the same senses into decoding a fake reality ([Fig 38](#)). The mind-trick can be so effective that people react as if what is being played artificially to their eyes, ears and touch senses is real ([Fig 39](#)). I have just described human reality and how its illusions are created.

The brain is an information processor



Figure 40: The brain can decode frequency information from other realities as it can decode frequency ‘words’ from the human vocal chords. We only have to open our minds and breach the Bubble. (Image Neil Hague.)

This sub-heading may appear to be stating the obvious. Of course the brain processes information. Yes,

on that we are in agreement. It's the wider context that produces the fork in the road that takes me and many in mainstream science in different directions. This involves the contention that consciousness (information) is not only processed by the brain but also *originates* in the brain. I seriously don't agree. Oh, but different parts of the brain 'light-up' or switch-on when people are in various perceptual states. Okay, but does that happen because the brain is generating those states? Or because it is *decoding* those states through specialised areas of the brain related to those states while the information being *processed* originates elsewhere? I say the latter. Where does the information come from which the brain decodes into what we perceive as our thoughts, emotions and perceptions? The question has multiple answers in that the nature and origin of that information can come from multiple potential sources. Those locked away in the Bubble will process information through the brain from within their Bubble while those who have breached the Cult's perceptual firewalls and accessed expanded awareness will process information from way beyond the Bubble. As a result how they see themselves and reality will be dramatically different. Put aside what you have been told about the brain for a second and imagine it to be only a processor of consciousness and not the origin – 'you hum it, son, and I'll play it', as the saying goes. Information processed by the brain comes from wavefields of consciousness outside the brain and this can be confined to the five-sense 'Bubble' or be any scale of expanded awareness with which your mind allows itself to connect. If you do access those expanded levels you are called crazy and insane by those in the Bubble. Information processed by the brain also comes from countless other sources including television, social media, personal experience and the ridiculously-named 'education' system. The brain will process anything that comes its way so long as this myriad of potential information is delivered within the frequency band of brain activity. It will decode the sound (frequency) of the human voice and also information delivered from realities way beyond the realm of the human voice if minds open to that level of awareness ([Fig 40](#)). When people say they 'hear voices in their head' they are describing the same phenomena as the brain receiving information delivered by the vocal chords as electromagnetic waves which it decodes into words. The information can originate with another human or from dimensions of reality 'far away' (as with psychics or mediums). It can also be delivered in the form of waves generated technologically to infiltrate the brain's perceptions to misdirect and manipulate a target. The Cult operates just such a system worldwide today as I will be describing. The brain is a receiver, transmitter and processor of information, not the origin, and it can be a challenge to discern what is 'you' and what is another source of the wave information you decode as thought and emotion. There are ways of doing that though which I'll get into later.

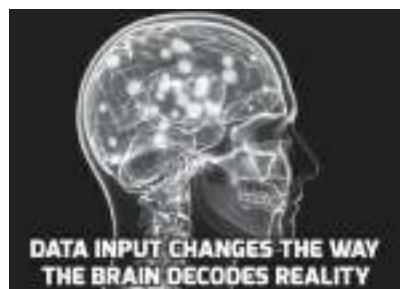


Figure 41: The brain becomes what it receives and processes.

The brain may be a processor of information, but it's not a neutral one any more than a computer is neutral when it has been encoded to process information in a particular way. Program a computer to decode information 'A' and not information 'B' and that's what it will do. We call this a 'firewall' and they are employed in China to prevent the population accessing large swathes of the Internet that the Chinese dictators don't want people to see. The same can be done with the brain and a central factor in

this is what is called brain ‘placidity’. It was believed until relatively recently that once the brain was formed this was how it remained for life. Scientists now know the very opposite is the case. ‘Placidity’ refers to how the brain changes the way information is *processed* in accordance with the information that it *processes* (Fig 41). All information is delivered in the form of frequency. Every thought, emotion and perceptual state is represented by its own unique frequency and as the brain processes information it arranges its neuron networks to fire (decode) in the sequence those frequencies represent. The brain processes particular frequencies of information, thought, emotion and perceptual states and here you have the reason why different perceptions and behaviour light-up different parts of the brain which are involved in processing those frequencies. Consciousness via perception activates those parts of the brain and the brain does not activate itself. The more the brain becomes dominated by flows of the same information, thought, emotion and perception (frequencies) the more its placidity will solidify the neural networks into a repeating sequence of processing (‘firing’ – *decoding*). The only way this can be changed is through other information, thought, emotion and perception representing other frequencies which then, through placidity, change the sequence of processing. Perceptions are represented by frequency waves and create a self-fulfilling conscious and subconscious feedback loop in which we interact with The Field of possibility only within the frequency band that our perceptions represent. In this way our perceptions become our experienced reality. The potential for mass manipulation is limitless when the Cult knows this and works to stop humanity knowing. Perception frequencies impact on the brain through placidity to dictate the way it processes information. In the absence of any change the brain goes on processing information in the same way. Through this sequence solidified perceptions become self-fulfilling prophecies as the brain processes information to match the solidified perceptions and the subsequent neuron-firing sequence which comes from that. We see this in people unable and unwilling to explore another point of view or ways of looking at situations and subjects. They say ‘my mind is made up’ (solidified neuron pathways), ‘I am right’ and ‘the science is settled’ when it blatantly is not.



Figure 42: Perceptions create a self-fulfilling conscious and subconscious feedback loop in which we interact with The Field of possibility only within the frequency band that our perceptions represent. See Neil Hague colour section.

The term ‘a closed mind’ is most apt. People can break free anytime they make the choice to realise they are entrapped by their own unyielding perceptions that lead their brain to process information in ways that appear to *confirm* those perceptions (Fig 42). Round and round it goes again like a fairground ride apparently moving while going nowhere. This is not helped by the system employed by Internet giants such as YouTube which recommend information based on your past viewing. Hey look at this – something else to confirm what you already think. The very idea that we can form solidified perceptions while being aware of a fraction of 0.005 percent of what exists in the Universe is a fair definition of insanity. Religions go even further and insist that all people need to know can be found between the covers of a *single book* within a fraction of a fraction of 0.005 percent of what exists in the Universe. As a measurement of crazy, that is world class. It becomes clear why the Cult has always sought to control the

information that people see and hear worldwide. Information dictates the way the brain processes information and becomes the person's sense of reality which, in turn, becomes their experienced reality. There's a lot more about this to come in relation to current events which look very different from this perspective.

Time? What time?



Figure 43: 'Past', 'present' and 'future' are only perceptions. All is happening in the same NOW. See Neil Hague colour section.

I understand why people find it so difficult to comprehend that there is no time when 'time' is the very foundation of human society. Everything is driven by the perception of 'time' – time is running out, look at the time, how time flies and where has the time gone? Yet the only moment within the entirety of Infinite Reality is the NOW. There is nothing else. What we perceive as past, present and future are all happening in the same NOW. I know that sounds incomprehensible to most people, but look at it from this perspective: Where is the 'present'? In the NOW. Where are you when you think about the 'past'? In the NOW. Where are you when you think about the 'future'? In the NOW. Where does the perceived 'future' eventually happen? In the NOW. Where did the 'past' happen? In the NOW. There is only the NOW ([Fig 43](#)). As you read this book in what is perceived to be the 'present' all your thoughts and memories of the 'past' exist in your conscious and subconscious mind in that same 'present' as do all the wavefield perceptions that you will experience as the 'future'. They are all vibrating in the same field of NOW. I see scientists speculating about how the future can affect the present or even the past. Some of their experiments make it seem that way when in fact 'past', 'present' and 'future' affect each other because they are all happenings and connections in the same NOW. 'Time' is a decoded construct of holographic reality. Wavefield happenings in the NOW are arranged in a holographic sequence by the brain so that one appears to follow another. The apparent speed that Body-Mind runs this sequence leads to the perception of 'time' and our personal mental and emotional state affects how fast or slow 'time' appears to pass. When we are doing things we don't like 'time' seems to pass slowly while activities we enjoy make 'time' appear to pass quickly – 'My goodness, where's the time gone?' and 'Time flies when you are enjoying yourself'. Einstein called this 'relativity' as in 'time' being relative to the observer – the *observer* or decoder again. He was describing this in terms of the speed and location of the observer relative to what was being observed, but it goes much deeper into the speed at which the observer processes information. A sequence of events ('time') comes into existence only when we decode that sequence into experienced reality and the passage of 'time' is dictated by perception – one person says 'time is flying by' while someone even in the same room will say 'time is dragging today'.



Figure 44: Different scenes on a DVD appear as past, present and future when they all exist on same disc in the same NOW. Our perceptions of them creates the illusion of 'time'. (Image Neil Hague.)



Figure 45: 'Time' is real when you cross an invisible line and change the 'day'? Time does not exist. We make it *appear* to exist. (Image Neil Hague.)

'Time' seems to pass quicker the more information the brain processes and as ever more information is processed today, especially with instant news, social media and the Internet, 'time' seems to be speeding up for many people. Studies with soldiers have shown how time is in the mind. Three groups were taken on a march of the same distance but at one point each was told they had been marching for different times even though they had not. One group was told the correct time or miles they had been marching; the second was told they had been marching for less time than they had; and the third was told they had been marching for more time than they had. The fatigue of the three groups matched the time they *thought* they had been marching when the time/distance involved was the same. A movie on DVD exists in the same NOW and I think everyone could agree with that. We experience the movie, existing in the same NOW, as a sequence of 'time' as one scene follows another. Where you are on the DVD will appear to be your 'present' while your 'past' is the scenes you have already watched and your 'future' is the scenes you have yet to watch ([Fig 44](#)). A DVD in totality in the NOW is still experienced as 'time' passing from past through present to future and that's how we experience the passage of 'time' when there is only the NOW. Philosopher Alan Watts described 'individual' events as 'different sections of one continuous happening'. This is a good analogy, as with the DVD, and there is also the symbolism of experiencing a journey along a river as a series of moments in 'time' when the whole river exists in the same moment from source to sea. Each perceived 'moment' following past 'moments' are really 'different sections of one continuous happening'. Time as we perceive it is quite obviously a human construct in that it involves clock-time which is so ridiculously manufactured that you can pass an invisible line called the International Dateline and instantly be in tomorrow or yesterday ([Fig 45](#)). People in Australia enter each New Year long before those in the United States and yet if an American in his today calls an Australian in his tomorrow they talk in the same NOW. The *speed* of ageing is connected to the perception of 'time' that doesn't exist except as a decoded illusion. While the body's wavefield stability remains the same the body hologram cannot change. Ageing is an interaction between mind and body. There is a sequence in the body blueprint that leads to a cycle from birth to death. After all we wouldn't want to stay in this one band of frequency forever when there is infinity to explore. The speed of this 'ageing' sequence, however, is down to the mind and its perceptions. People think they must age in a certain cycle

and period only because almost everyone else does. Once again we have a self-fulfilling prophecy in which ageing is driven by the *perception* of ageing gleaned from experiencing the ‘norm’ of ageing. This is a quote that captures the time-illusion theme:

Time doesn’t exist, clocks exist. Time is just an agreed upon construct. We have taken distance (one rotation of the Sun), divided it into segments, then given those segments labels. While it has its uses, we have been programmed to live our lives by this construct as if it were real. We have confused our shared construct with something that is tangible and thus have become its slave.

A slave to the Cult ‘gods’ and the manipulated construct of illusory ‘time’; but we don’t have to be. Once we understand how the mind and a perception of ‘time’ interact we can start to control time. Top sportsmen and women already do this without realising. Researchers at the University of London found that those taking part in sports involving fast movement of a ball (tennis, baseball, cricket etc.) are able to slow down time. Their focus during play processes information so fast that its holographic movie sequence runs slower than the general population. The crowd in a tennis match with their heads lurching left and right to follow the ball perceive one speed while the players are experiencing another. This allows them to accurately hit a ball which at ‘spectator’ speed would defeat them. You often hear it said about great footballers that they seem to have more ‘time’ than everyone else. They *do* through the way they process information. They assess a situation on the pitch (process information) so fast that they can respond quicker than others who process (and so react) slower. Remember the game is happening in the minds of players and therefore it must be mind that decides the outcome. When this is more deeply understood by the world of sport we will see performances of all kinds improve by amazing leaps. The limit of sporting performance – as with life itself – is decided only by the self-imposed perception limits of the mind. There is an altered state that top sports people know well called ‘the Zone’. I experienced it myself as a footballer and it is not confined to sport. I go into the Zone when I am writing and during speaking events. In sport the Zone slows down ‘time’, the sound of the crowd dissipates to silence, and any nerves or worry about the outcome disappear. You access a level of awareness beyond what is called the ‘conscious mind’ which can be full of self-doubt (‘You think too much’). What follows is a calmness and level of focus that is only interested in doing the job and not worrying about what the outcome will be. In these moments come the best performances which self-doubt and emotion can otherwise sabotage.

The speed of light? It's pedestrian



Figure 46: The night sky seems so far away, but it only exists in that form in your brain. What happened to ‘space’? (Image Neil Hague.)



Figure 47: All existence shares the same ‘space’ on different bands of frequency just as analogue radio and television stations share the same ‘space’ without being aware of each other unless they are very close on the dial. (Image Neil Hague.)

The collective programmed perception limit of speed and ‘time’ is the speed of light which we are told is the fastest speed possible. What crap that will be seen to be. We live in an infinite reality of Infinite Possibility and there is no fastest or slowest anything. The speed of light at 186,000 miles per second (and the perceived physics associated with that) apply only to the frequency band of current human perception and even then they are malleable through the perceptions of consciousness. The speed of light is only the inability of Body-Mind to consciously decode reality faster than the speed of light and there is a reason for that which I will be exposing. The already-measured speed of communication by consciousness is infinitely quicker than the speed of light – as in *instant*. When cells from the same person were located 40 miles apart they responded instantaneously to changes in the other. This both revealed the myth about the speed of light and confirmed the truth about wave communication over what we perceive as enormous ‘distance’. Physicists led by Juan Yin at the University of Science and Technology of China in Shanghai estimated the speed that photons (tiny packets of light) interact at *ten thousand* times the official speed of light. ‘Time’ changes along with much else when you approach the speed of light and the limits of the Body-Mind decoding system within the human frequency band. Space and distance are further illusions of holographic decoded reality. Scan the night sky and everything you think you ‘see’ in the form that you think you ‘see’ exists only in your ‘head’ – the Body-Mind decoding systems ([Fig 46](#)). In fact, it’s not even your head but an area at the back of the brain where visual reality is decoded and your personal visual movie constructed. Computer games appear to have both time, as scenes change, and space in depth and perspective. Yet they are only codes written for the computer to decode. Space as we perceive it is defined by holographic form. Where there is no form we call this ‘space’ and people think of this ‘space’ as ‘empty’ when it is a consciousness field full of information – The Field. What we refer to as ‘space’ is only the absence of form or ‘things’ and it is absolutely not ‘empty’. Infinity exists in the same ‘space’ where you are sitting or standing now while only an infinitesimal fraction can be perceived by the human decoding system ([Fig 47](#)). We are told that light from stars travels billions of light years to get to us when there is no ‘space’ to ‘cross’ or ‘time’ to ‘travel’ except as an illusion of decoded perception. What you believe you perceive and what you perceive you experience. Change what you believe and you change what you experience.

Evidence galore



Figure 48: Enormous numbers of people have described leaving five-sense perceptual focus and entering a vastly different reality in a near-death experience.

We have evidence of other realities and levels of consciousness from literally millions of people living today who have had what are called 'near-death experiences', or NDEs. This is when the body dies and people apparently experience their awareness being released to another point of observation outside the body ([Fig 48](#) overleaf). Reality that I have outlined so far explains why near-death experiencers describe what they do. The number of NDEs must be many hundreds of millions and more throughout history with near-death experiences described in ancient Greek and Roman texts and medieval works. Modern experiencers report how they see medical staff trying to revive 'them' (or rather their temporary vehicle) while being perceptually detached from the body. Many are able to accurately recall what staff were saying while 'they' were officially 'dead'. Many describe looking down on their body and no longer identifying with that as part of them. NDEs have many common themes of passing through a tunnel (though far from always); meeting long-dead friends and relatives (often looking far younger than when they 'died'); and experiencing stunningly beautiful places while enveloped in indescribable love. They report an extraordinary sense of calm and peace and how they felt free for the first time. Not everyone's life changes for the better after they return to the body, but that is the case with most once they have come to terms with living in a world they know is not what it appears to be. One experiencer said: 'I don't fit in because I don't "toe the line" and just agree with things.' This happens when you see through the illusion. Others report feeling more tolerant, loving and compassionate and no longer obsessed with materialism and personal status. The most common trait of a near-death experience is that people no longer fear death. Humanity in general is haunted by the prospect of death when there is nothing to fear. The Cult doesn't want us to know this when fear of death (fear of the unknown) has so many uses in pursuit of control (see the Covid-19 hoax). I have read a long list of near-death accounts over the years and the great majority are very positive. Rarely do you find people who prefer human life to what they experienced in 'death'. They return because they are told their experience is not yet over or they don't want to leave children and other loved ones behind. Most are transformed by their experience and what it showed them about reality beyond the myopia of the body which focuses our attention within the minuscule frequency band of visible light. 'We' don't die – only the illusion does. My own findings were confirmed by a team of scientists from the University of Liège in Belgium and Canada's Western University who found that in 158 written testimonies about near-death experiences positive responses far outnumbered negative ones. Canadian paramedic Adam Tapp, who was clinically dead for eleven minutes, said: 'It was just like waking from a nap in a place I have always been and there was no fear or anything, just complete contentment and happiness.'



Figure 49: My mother's picture with the life-force that had departed her body at the time of 'death' which was nothing more than a transformation of her point of attention.



Figure 50: Our experienced reality is like a torch light in a pitch-black 'warehouse' and all we perceive is within its beam.



Figure 51: When we leave the body it is like all the lights of the warehouse are switched on and we realise that reality is far greater than we thought. Oh, just a little bit.

I went to the funeral parlour when my mother 'died' and saw her body lying on a table. I touched her hand and it was cold and lifeless as you would expect; but alongside was a big picture of her which my brother Paul had arranged to have at the funeral and that picture was *alive* with energy and radiance ([Fig 49](#)). Cameras don't only record an image we can see. They capture the energetic life-force – the True 'I' – that takes temporary residence 'in' the body. The life-force that I saw in my mother's picture which was no longer in her body – *that's* who we are. Switch off the electricity to a piece of technology and it 'dies' or ceases to work while the electricity itself, the life-force of the machine, continues to exist. A body devoid of its life-force decomposes because the energy sustaining it has gone. A near-death experiencer described our world as like walking through a pitch-black warehouse with a torch when all you can see and be aware of is limited to the narrow beam of light ([Fig 50](#)). She said leaving the body was like all the lights in the warehouse are turned on. You see the enormity of what you are and where you are when before you were aware only of that within the torch light ([Fig 51](#)). Another constant theme of experience outside the body is the feeling of being at 'one' with everything and connected to everything. A near-death experiencer said he was aware of his hospital environment in Los Angeles and could also hear conversations of family members in India. He said he felt everywhere in the same moment. This is what happens once our awareness is no longer focused through the visible light myopia of the body – the torch light – and we access the perceptual reality of waves that connect with other waves beyond the illusions

of distance and time. There is still the ‘individual’ sense of self and at the same time the feeling of a seamless connection to all that exists. This can be simply explained. We are a unique point of attention within a seamless flow of Infinite Awareness and we are both the ‘individual’ attention and the whole at the same ‘time’. Human disconnection from awareness of the whole as manipulated by the Cult means that ‘incarnate’ consciousness experiences reality from a sense of isolation and apartness – the Bubble ([Fig 52](#)). A near-death experiencer described beyond-the-body reality:



Figure 52: Burst the Bubble and freedom awaits.

... everything from the beginning, my birth, my ancestors, my children, my wife, everything comes together simultaneously. I saw everything about me, and about everyone who was around me. I saw everything they were thinking now, what they thought then, what was happening before, what was happening now. There is no time, there is no sequence of events, no such thing as limitation, of distance, of period, of place. I could be anywhere I wanted to be simultaneously.

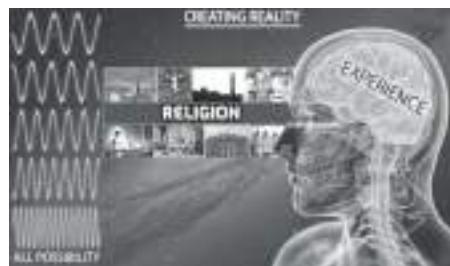


Figure 53: Religion is the greatest form of mind control ever invented never mind which name may be on the temple door. (Image Gareth Icke.)



Figure 54: Create religions and then play them off against each other – and within each other – to divide the target population into conflicting groups. (Image Gareth Icke.)

Exactly. That is life beyond the limited focus and decoded illusions of Body-Mind. Think how different our world would be if humanity realised that we are experiencing a temporary illusion or movie and that we are ALL expressions of the same Infinite whole in which, despite what our five senses may tell us, there is no time, sequence of events, limitation, distance, period or place and we can be anywhere we want to be simultaneously. How would you pitch race against race, religion against religion, sex against

sex, politics against politics and income against income if everyone knew these are temporary and illusory labels and experiences and that we are all *each other*? The Cult must perpetuate this illusion or its divide and conquer manipulation is over. Religion is one of the greatest forms of mind control ever invented (by the Cult) and up there as the greatest form of divide and rule ([Figs 53](#) and [54](#)). Do people really think that when they leave the body they are still Christians, Muslims, Jews, Hindus, black, white, man, woman, transgender, rich, poor and so on? Some may wish to believe so, but it's delusion. Are those suffering 'physical' or psychological handicaps still handicapped when they withdraw from a body where the handicap manifests? We need to urgently see the fundamental difference between the *experience* and the *self*. That realisation alone will change the world.

You are what you believe

Some near-death experiencers report amazing health transformations with even late-stage cancer disappearing. They say pain goes with release from the body and that must be so. Pain is a phenomenon of the senses and not beyond-the-body consciousness in its infinite form. They describe how they can see, touch, hear, taste and smell without attachment to the five senses and in a far more advanced way. How can you see without the eyes of the body? It's all *illusion*. Expanded awareness is aware across all 'senses' with no need for the perceptual confines of the body to allow it to see; but if incarnate awareness is so body-focused and programmed by the illusions of eye-only sight then it will experience that reality until it's released from the body. People see visions in states of meditation and altered states of consciousness when their eyes are closed. Do we think that we see our vivid dreams through our *eyes*? Blind people describe how they could see once they leave the body. Blindness is the inability to decode visual information through the eye/brain connection within the human reality of visible light. Once they withdraw from visible light they see with consciousness whose awareness is filtered out by body systems during a human experience. Other common themes of near-death experiences are 'life-reviews' when they feel the consequences for others of their actions – nice and not so nice. Many describe having an infusion of knowledge about life and reality when they are released from the body information filter and consciously connected to awareness, insight and knowing that the Cult works to perceptually firewall. An experiencer returned with a deep knowledge of quantum physics that she didn't have before and had never studied. You can, however, access such information while in the body and I'll be describing how to do this. Mainstream academics and scientists ignore this mountain of evidence from the experiences of multiple millions because it demolishes their version of reality. They work on the basis that if they can't explain it then it can't exist which launches self-deluding arrogance into the stratosphere. I call it the arrogance of ignorance. 'What about the laws of physics?' they will cry. What about them? They only apply in theory within the frequency walls of human reality. They don't apply anywhere else and they don't need to apply here once we grasp what reality really is and how it really works. Manifestations of this are dubbed 'miracles' ('defying the laws of physics') when there is no such thing as a miracle – only understanding that Infinite Possibility means anything is possible. All will become clear as the book proceeds.

Most people have blissful experiences when they leave the body, but some don't. Others see religious figures, but most don't. There are many reasons for these differences including the saying 'death is no cure for ignorance'. Near-death does not have to be a cure for perceptual programming, either, although it certainly can be. If you believe that Jesus is your saviour then you may see Jesus in a near-death experience and let's not forget that consciousness beyond the body is trying to communicate information and concepts to you. If you associate love with Jesus then that image may be used to symbolise love and give you comfort in a bewildering situation. It doesn't mean there is literally a Jesus and of course no one knows what 'he' looked like even if he had been real. I don't believe for a second that he was, but I can relate to the character that appears in many guises and under many names in different cultures to be a *symbol* for expanded states of consciousness. This would make sense of 'No one comes to the Father

except through me' – only through expanded states of consciousness can you be aware of the Infinite Whole. The basic 'Jesus' story was told in versions all around the world long before the period when 'Jesus' was supposed to live and each could be symbolising states of expanded awareness. They represent a recurring narrative put into different historical and cultural settings using different names for the hero. There is not even a physical description of 'Jesus' in the Bible. The image that people have of 'Jesus' came from far later artistic imagination and interpretation and yet those who claim to meet 'Jesus' in near-death experiences see this classic version of 'him'. It's all in the mind, but then everything is. The New Age 'Jesus' is called 'Sananda' and claimed to be an 'Ascended Master'. Guess what? He is portrayed in virtually the same way as the Christian 'Jesus'. I don't accept the literal existence of 'Jesus', but as a *symbol* of expanded awareness, well, I'm open to that. Your state of consciousness when you withdraw from the body will massively influence your experience until the truth dawns that what you believed about life and reality is to say the least not quite how it is. Those who have some understanding of reality will be aware of the process that follows 'death' while those with their awareness welded to Cult perception programs can be seriously bemused and bewildered as so many near-death experiences have confirmed.

Your state of awareness most certainly affects the experience of psychoactive drugs which activate areas and channels of the brain to access realities normally denied to human perception. These have been used for thousands of years as a major source of shamanic comprehension of reality. I took ayahuasca, a psychoactive rainforest potion, over two nights in Brazil in 2003 and had a fantastic experience over a total of seven hours. For five hours on the second night a clear, loud, powerful voice taking a female form gave me chapter and verse about the illusory nature of 'physical' reality. I refer to the communicator as 'The Voice'. During an explanation about the illusion of 'time' and 'space' The Voice said: 'Why do you fly from point A to point B when you *are* point A and point B and everything in "between"?' When I returned home with total recall of what was said I began to research the subject at length and found that mainstream science (especially quantum physics) already had the evidence to prove that physical reality is illusory, but the controlling hierarchy still sought to push the case for this-world-is-all-there-is and you are only your brain. This is the Cult narrative for reasons I have explained. Some have had nightmare experiences with psychoactive drugs and in my view they only open brain channels that allow access to deeper levels of yourself which can still reflect your current mental and emotional state and what is happening in your subconscious. I have known people who have taken drugs like LSD hundreds of times and they were no more enlightened than someone who has had nothing stronger than a cup of tea. It is not only about opening your mind, but what level of awareness you open to. Gail Bradbrook, a co-founder of the extreme climate group Extinction Rebellion, is a psychoactive potion-taker who thinks she is enlightened as a result and wants others to partake. She told the BBC that the idea of creating Extinction Rebellion came to her when she prayed 'in a deep way' while taking 'psychedelic medicines'. Her subsequent 'enlightenment' led her to establish a Climate Cult operation which is a fundamental threat to human freedom as I will be exposing. She confuses demands for global centralisation of power to 'save the world' (exactly what the Cult has been seeking all along) with an 'awakening'. Such 'enlightenment' is really a fast-track to even greater enslavement and I repeat: Psychoactive drugs only take you to where you already are subconsciously, if not consciously, and that will dictate the level of awareness beyond human reality that you connect with. These drugs, like death, are indeed no cure for ignorance, but they can be for some. Perception is the key and who is in control of that? *We are* – if we make that choice and stop allowing others to tell us what to think.

The scale of the reality illusion, which is mercilessly manipulated by the Cult, can be seen in the fact that mainstream science believes that (illusory) time and space are among the fundamental building blocks of the Universe. This systematically-imposed ignorance ('lack of knowledge, understanding, or information') is the foundation of human control and it must end before, as Martin Luther King put it, freedom can ring.

CHAPTER TWO

Who are we?

All growth is essentially an expansion of awareness – Joseph Rain

There is a malevolent force behind humanity's systematic perceptual entrapment and the indoctrination is incessant and life-long. What a testament to the power of consciousness over programming that anyone is awakening from the Cult-induced trance and they are in ever greater numbers.



Figure 55: I-am-a whatever my upbringing told me to be.

People are unconscious and perceptually entrapped in Body-Mind because they are *manipulated* to be that way and this needs to be understood to avoid awakening from the trance to include a sense of superiority. Almost everyone was asleep once. Five-sense unconsciousness can appear to be unbelievably stupid, but that is what happens when people are disconnected from an influence of the True and Infinite 'I' and imprisoned in a sensory world that hijacks perception for an entire human lifetime. The great news is that we can become conscious anytime we want. More and more people are awakening from their induced coma while others are being captured more deeply in the Cult's perceptual fly-trap by a tsunami of programming deployed increasingly via technology. The latter, too, can escape the illusion – perceptual entrapment – whenever they make that choice. The motivation of this book is to speed and expand that process. As more become conscious of their True Self the world must change to reflect that. In the same way the crazy world of today, and a long time 'past', has reflected and continues to reflect collective human *unconsciousness*. So much is explained about 'past' and 'present' events when this is understood. Ironically, and it's another big penny-drop, the most *unconscious* are invariably those in positions of power directing the lives and society of everyone else. This is once again by design and not random chance. The Cult has to keep its targets asleep in unconsciousness if it is to secure ongoing collective control through perceptual programming and the most effective way to achieve that is to put unconscious Bubble people into positions of official power who are string-pulled from the shadows by the Cult. The plot demands disconnecting Body-Mind from expanded awareness and then to program

isolated Body-Mind with the required perception of self and reality through control of information. We see this process everywhere. Muslims tend to come from Muslim families, Christians from Christian families, Hindus from Hindu families, and followers of Judaism from Jewish families. In every case that version of reality and life is all they have ever heard in their growing-up years ([Fig 55](#)). The greatest form of mind control is repetition as the Cult-created Nazis well understood. You repeat a statement or alleged ‘fact’ until it becomes an ‘everyone knows that’ when in truth ‘everybody’ only ‘knows’ what they have been told to think they *know*. They don’t ‘know it’; they have only *downloaded* that perception which is a very different thing. Add the carrot and stick, benefits and punishments, for believing or not believing in the orthodoxy and it’s no wonder the religion that people are born into becomes the one they follow for life with all the limitations and impositions of belief and behaviour that come with the package. The sequence I have described applies equally to those who follow no religion or may indeed be antagonistic to religion. The non-religious population is also programmed through family, ‘education’, academia and media by the repetition of information headed ‘normal’ and ‘rational’ when most of this betrays an extreme misrepresentation of reality. Young people are told they must believe this crap and they are tested on their level of absorption in ‘exams’ that have potentially life-long career implications within The System. If you regularly question what you are told to believe you are ‘a disruptive influence’ in the classroom. Has your doctor prescribed Ritalin?



Figure 56: The fake self-identity that most people believe they are.



Figure 57: I am what I’m told I am.

I am going to focus on this life-long programming process later because it is vital to understanding how collective human perception is hijacked and how we can stop falling for it. Our human lives are a choice – a *perception*. These choices decide your health, happiness and entire experience. By that I mean *everything* you ever experience and even that called ‘random chance’, good and bad ‘luck’ and circumstances that appear to be created by other people. To appreciate how this happens we must first put aside all mainstream perception, belief and preconceived idea about the nature of self, reality and the human body. What the control system has told us about all of these things is fakery and at the core of this unceasing propaganda delivered day after day to generation after generation is the Cult. It knows that if we can be kept in ignorance of who we really are its agenda for mass control becomes a relative breeze. This is the foundation of human enslavement – hypnotically peddling a fake self-identity or what I call the Bubble or ‘Phantom Self’ ([Fig 56](#)). How apt that the word ‘person’ comes from the Latin ‘persona’

which means ‘actor’s mask’. Our Phantom Self persona is indeed our actor’s mask or headset. We appear to experience a solid world through a solid body. We do not. We are told that we are victims of our genetics. We are not. We appear to live in a world where everything is apart from everything else with ‘empty’ space in between. We do not. All is illusion that we are manipulated from cradle to grave to believe is real ([Fig 57](#)). When people can see through the scam they can stop it controlling their lives.

The One



Figure 58: The body is only a temporary vehicle for the awareness that we eternally are.

Who are we? Put the temporary human form aside and we are formless *awareness* – a state of being aware ([Fig 58](#)). How aware depends on how aware we choose to be or *allow* ourselves to be and that ‘how aware’ decides our life experience. We are unique points of attention within an infinite stream of awareness or consciousness and that awareness in its ‘totality’ (infinity) is what some call ‘God’ or the ‘Godhead’, Native Americans call ‘The Great Spirit’, and I call the *All That Is* or ‘*The One*’. Existence is not a single state of perception with *The One* constantly experiencing itself through its infinite expressions in different states of consciousness. There is a level of awareness that I describe as *Infinite Awareness in Awareness of Itself* which is aware that it is all awareness. This has been variously called ‘the Void’, ‘the Father’ and in my case *The One*. The ancient religious term ‘Father’ is an attempt to relate this concept to the world of human experience. *The One* is really the Father and Mother and everything in all existence. It is the realm of All Possibility, All Potential, and our perceptions dictate which possibility and potential that we manifest in ways I will be describing. All Possibility is the implication encoded in *All That Is, Has Been and Ever Can Be*. To the human mind enslaved in the illusion of past, present and future this would seem to be impossibility. How can anything be all that *is*, has *been* and ever *can be*? Yet what is this depicting except *All Possibility*? Reality is infinite because possibility is infinite within the awareness of *The One*. How can you have a state of all possibility unless everything is possible? Thus *Infinite Awareness in Awareness of Itself* is ‘past, ‘present’ and ‘future’ (as they appear to be); it is *and* it isn’t; it can *and* it can’t; it did *and* it didn’t; it is everywhere *and* nowhere; it is everything *and* nothing, it exists *and* it doesn’t. Some people say ‘God is everywhere’ while others say that’s crazy and cannot be; but it’s true in the sense of *The One* that weaves through the fabric of everything because *The One* is everything. Even impossible must exist within all possibility because the impossible is a possibility. Whether we choose (through our perception) to experience the possible or impossible is down to us. What one person will experience as impossibility another will find a way to overcome and make possible. If you don’t know how to do something that ‘thing’ is indeed impossible. When you *do* know it becomes possible. Both are potentials within All Possibility which includes every paradox. All Possibility must be awash with paradox which is defined as ‘a state in which one is logically compelled to contradict oneself’. When all is possible that must be. For every ‘truth’ there must be a contradictory ‘truth’ or perception of reality and *possibility*. Look at something from one angle (perception) and A is ‘true’. Look from another angle (perception) and B is ‘true’. They can both be true (possible) depending on your point of observation even

though they appear to be contradictory. Is the body solid in the way we experience it? Yes. Is it really solid from a point of expanded awareness? No. Here we have a paradox – it is *and* it isn't. Both are true from two different points of experience ... perception, *possibility*. Maybe human belief in '*I am right*' could benefit from some revaluation.

The no-thing is everything

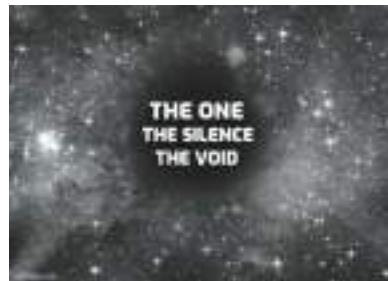


Figure 59: The *All That Is, Has Been, And Ever Can Be* that interpenetrates all existence. It *is* all existence.



Figure 60: The One is the creator of all reality via its infinite points of attention – including us. See Neil Hague colour section.

The 'Void' is a term used to describe *Infinite Awareness in Awareness of Itself* because that is how it appears to be ([Fig 59](#)). Those who have entered altered states of consciousness throughout human history have perceived 'God', the 'Father' or '*The One*' in the form of a void or silence. I did so myself during my ayahuasca experience in 2003. I observed from the realm of vibration, frequency and form an indescribable brilliant blackness. I know it may sound crazy but the darkness shone like the brightest light. 'This is the Infinite, David', the ayahuasca Voice told me. 'It is where you come from and where you shall return.' The word 'return' is only used in relation to human perception. We are *always* the Infinite – we never 'left'. We've just forgotten and been manipulated to forget. The shining blackness was still and silent and so different from the movement and vibration in the world of form. The Void has been described as 'nothingness', but within the stillness and silence is *everythingness* in the form of All Possibility waiting to manifest from the imagination of 'God' or '*The One*' which includes *our* imagination as an expression of *The One*. Sit in silence for a moment and what do you hear? Nothing. Okay, but this 'nothing' is only the absence of sound waves for your brain to decode. Within the silence, the nothing, is everything. When you hear sound or see images they are possibilities manifested out of All Possibility – the silence and the stillness. Silence is the norm, the foundation state, while sound comes and goes from the silence of *All That Is*. Rumi, the 13th century Persian mystic, said: 'Silence is the language of god, all else is poor translation.' Scientific studies have highlighted the negative effect of excessive sound – as in too loud and too much even when not loud – and the benefits for heart and mind of silence. I sit working all day in silence or near silence thanks to the quiet nature of where I live and it's wonderful. I read that

the word ‘noise’ actually comes from a Latin word meaning nausea. It is certainly highly recommended to spend time regularly when possible where it is quiet and not noisier/nausea. The ‘Void’ is the *source of all Creation* (possibility) while the realms of frequency and vibration *are the Creation* ([Fig 60](#) overleaf). The ayahuasca Voice said: ‘If it vibrates, it’s illusion.’ An immense indescribable love was emanating from the stillness and silence which confirmed what The Voice had said right at the start of the five hours of communication: ‘All you really need to know is Infinite Love is the only truth – *everything* else is illusion.’ This became the title of a book that I wrote soon afterwards. Put another way: *Infinite Awareness in Awareness of Itself* (the ‘Void’, *The One*, the source of love) is the only truth – everything else is the Creation or imagination of Infinite Awareness made manifest by information (consciousness/‘thought’) in the form of frequency/vibration. How can there be an ‘only truth’ within All Possibility? The only truth is All Possibility. This is limited only by the imagination of *The One*, and that is limitless.

Five years after my experience in Brazil, Dr Eben Alexander, an academic neurosurgeon at Harvard, fell dangerously ill and went into a coma for a week from which he said doctors did not believe he would emerge alive or at least as a functional human being. He said he was a this-world-is-all-there-is believer as the product of academic perception programming. This was underpinned by his scientist father who also believed that consciousness only exists in the brain and when the brain dies so do ‘you’. Alexander did recover his faculties even though he said his brain had so shutdown that only the primary survival functions remained active during the coma. He later wrote a book, *Proof of Heaven*, published in 2012, about what he experienced in his near-death state which transformed his perception of self and reality. He recalled how he met a female figure ‘out there’ that he somehow recognised, but he didn’t know why or where from. When he recovered he said he was later shown a picture of his younger sister from his birth family (he had been adopted) who he had never seen before. It was the figure he had met in his near-death state. Alexander’s claims have been controversial, of course, and people will have to decide for themselves what they think of them. The part of his book that most struck me for obvious reasons was when he recalled experiencing ‘The Core’ which he described as a ... Dazzling Darkness. This is what I had seen nine years earlier and he also described this ‘Core’ as a place from where ‘the purest love emanated and all is known’ ... all is known = All Possibility. I experienced this as the all-knowing *All That Is, Has Been and Ever Can Be – The One*. Albert Einstein said: ‘Anyone who becomes seriously involved in the pursuit of science becomes convinced that there is a spirit manifest in the laws of the Universe, a spirit vastly superior to man.’ That spirit is *The One* which pervades all existence and not only one universe.



Figure 61: A droplet can appear to be individual, but connect it to the ocean and where does the droplet end and the ocean start? They are one and the same.

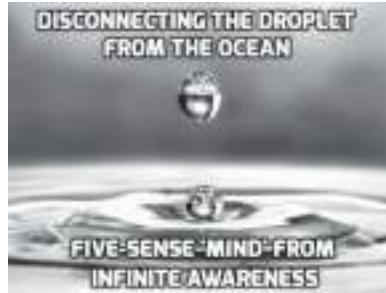


Figure 62: The foundation of human perceptual control is to disconnect the droplet from awareness of the ocean – our True Self.

What is called Creation emerges from *The One* through infinite expressions of *The One* (including ‘humans’) and Creation is once again limited only by the imagination of *The One* which is infinite. Creation is therefore infinite in its possibility and we are experiencing only a fragment of this in the micro-frequency band of light visible to humans. We are nevertheless co-creators of *The One* as an expression of *The One*. Consciousness fields emanating from *The One* themselves beget other consciousness fields like a single cell divides and divides until it is the *trillions* of cells in a human body. The point is that all those cells are manifestations of *one* cell as all that exists is the manifestation of One Consciousness. We are ‘individual’ points of attention and *all* points of attention. The part is the whole and the whole is the part. Where does the droplet end and the ocean begin once the droplet is reconnected with the ocean? They are the same and the Cult’s whole agenda is founded on keeping the droplets unaware of the ocean that we all are ([Figs 61 and 62](#)). We are all manifestations, or co-creators, of *The One* – yes, even you sleeping in the street believing yourself to be downcast, outcast and a failure. In my expanded awareness during the ayahuasca experience beyond the perceptual limitations of the body I felt connected to everything, but I was still a unique individual ‘me’. We are not one or the other. We are *both*. The more your mind opens and your consciousness expands the more your sense of self and the ‘I’ expands. Humanity has largely been manipulated to perceive only the individual. Even most major religions, while accepting there are other realities, still present ‘God’ and humanity as apart from each other instead of being the *same*. Saying ‘I am God’ is considered blasphemy. In the world of the Cult there has to be a servant and a master to match its own agenda for humanity. Infinite Awareness in its fully awakened state – ‘*The One*’ – pervades everything. It is that which weaves the web of life. *The One* interpenetrates all realities and is within you now. Perception creates experienced reality as I am going to make clear and a human perception of isolation and *only* individuality becomes our experience of both. They are illusions that without a conscious connection to *The One* can seem very real. Redefine who you are, open your heart and mind to expanded awareness, and your experience will – *must* – change.

What is ‘human’?



Figure 63: The body and the auric electromagnetic field is what I am calling Body-Mind which experiences reality through the five senses; but we are much more than that.



Figure 64: The energy vortexes known as 'chakras' which interpenetrate and communicate through our different energetic levels of being.

Now we can connect all this to today's global society. Human experience operates on multiple levels of awareness. There is the level that can be electromagnetically and visually recorded as the human 'auric field'. The combination of body and auric field is what I am referring to as Body-Mind. It is also known by many as the 'Ego' ([Fig 63](#)). We talk of people having open minds and closed minds and this is a perfect description. An open mind remains connected to expanded states of awareness while a closed one withdraws into the Bubble and perceives everything from the Body-Mind (five-sense) perspective. Bubble perception applies to much of the population (although this is changing) and crucially to those that dictate mass perception in the institutions of the Mainstream Everything – science, academia, media, medicine, commerce, politics and government. There is a level of our awareness that people call 'Soul' which operates outside the human frequency band and connects with Body-Mind through energetic vortexes known as 'chakras'. This is an ancient Sanskrit word from the Indian subcontinent meaning 'wheels of light' and that's an excellent description of the spinning energetic (consciousness) connections between levels of awareness within the same 'self' ([Fig 64](#)). When chakra connections are open the human 'I' can be influenced and guided by the Soul 'I' and through that to *The One* 'I'. In other words how far we open our minds has no limit. When those chakra/consciousness connections close or diminish we become perceptually isolated in the five senses and fall prey to self-identity with illusory human labels. The label 'I', or Phantom Self Body-Mind, then appears to be the only 'I'. Body-Mind is a projection of Soul and when the influence of Soul is weakened Body-Mind can take on a life and direction of its own. There are vortex points throughout the body and the seven main ones are:

The crown chakra on top of the head (many near-death experiencers describe re-entering their body through the top of the head); the 'third eye' chakra in the centre of the forehead through which we can make psychic connections to other realities; the throat chakra which relates to multi-level communication and connects with the vocal chords to affect their vibration; the heart chakra in the centre of the chest through which we express love (a lot more about this to come); the solar plexus chakra just below the sternum; the sacral chakra beneath the navel from where we experience emotion and the connection of this emotion-chakra to the bowel/intestine is why people 'get the shits' when they are nervous and fearful; lastly there is the base or 'root' chakra at the bottom of the spine which grounds us in apparently 'physical' reality and also relates to sexuality and reproduction.

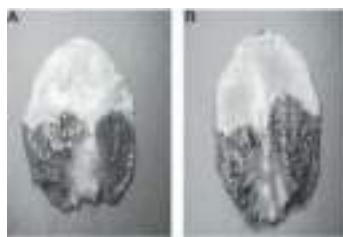


Figure 65: Fluoride calcifies the pineal gland which connects us to frequencies of awareness beyond Body-Mind. Definitely not a coincidence.

Each chakra is connected to a gland in the endocrine system including the pea-sized pineal gland in the brain which is known as the 'Third Eye' for its association with psychic sight or 'sixth sense'. The pineal gland is shaped like a pine cone and located in the middle of the brain. It has been revered in cultures across the world throughout history as a connection with 'god' and expanded reality. Endocrine glands regulate hormones, including sex hormones, metabolism, biological cycles including sleep, and the immune system. Through these connections the energetic balance or imbalance of the chakra vortices affects the 'physical' and psychological health of the whole body. In the case of the pineal gland/chakra connection it affects the ability to expand into other levels of awareness and malfunction locks people away in the five-sense Bubble – as the Cult well knows. Fluoride which the Cult has manipulated into drinking water and toothpaste on the false pretext that it protects teeth has been shown to calcify the pineal gland ([Fig 65](#)). The theme of locking people away in the five senses is *everywhere*. Add the fact that aluminium (in vaccines and many other sources), glyphosate (a herbicide that has long entered the food-chain and is sprayed in the public environment) and Wi-Fi all suppress the pineal gland and you see what the game is – entrapping human perception in the five-sense Bubble. Scientific research has revealed how aluminium and glyphosate combine to be especially destructive to pineal gland function through the compounds they produce. The blood-brain barrier used to protect the brain from these and other toxins, but that is now being breached through technological radiation with 5G increasing the effect many fold.

'Serpent goddess'



Figure 66: The caduceus is symbolic of the kundalini energy rising through the chakra and central nervous system and bursting through the crown chakra on top of the head to connect us with other realities. The nature of those realities is dictated by our own state of being.



Figure 67: A kundalini activation can connect people with high frequencies of awareness or the low frequencies in which the Cult and its 'gods' operate.

The root chakra is the source of the transformative energy known as 'kundalini' (from a Sanskrit word meaning 'coiled') and this is symbolised as a coiled serpent or snake. Kundalini energy is revered as a goddess in some eastern traditions and symbolised by the caduceus symbol with the wings representing 'enlightenment' that comes from kundalini activation ([Fig 66](#)). The effect of this can be slow and measured or, as in my case in 1991, like a nuclear explosion. When kundalini energy is triggered it moves

up through the chakras, spinal cord and central nervous system to burst through the crown chakra and activate all the other chakras on the way ([Fig 67](#)). Such activation is said to bring people into a state of ‘enlightenment’ and make them ‘illuminated’. The term ‘Illuminati’ which describes a key network within the global Cult relates to this principle of kundalini activation that can consciously connect people to other realities and instigate sometimes outstanding psychic abilities. The point to emphasise, however, is that such a connection is not good or bad. Kundalini awakening can connect you with expanded consciousness of high vibration or equally to consciousness of low and manipulative vibration. It will reflect where you are consciously and subconsciously as with psychoactive drugs. Illuminati Cult initiates are opened via kundalini activation in secret society and satanic rituals to the frequency realms from which the non-human force controls the Cult through perceptual possession. Whether kundalini awakening connects you with high or low realms of awareness depends on your own frequency and that is dictated by your own perceptions and state of being. Are you driven by love or hate, for example? These are very different frequencies. Gathering numbers of people are going through the experience of ‘kundalini rising’ with a fantastic human awakening underway although you wouldn’t know this by observing the Mainstream Everything. They will be the last ones to get what is happening.

The kundalini process or a slower form of awakening from the Bubble can present many challenges and be very confusing as your perceptions begin to transform. Suddenly the world doesn’t seem the same anymore and those around you may believe you have ‘gone crazy’. Many people who end up under psychiatric treatment are only having a kundalini experience and they may have strange new perceptions or ‘hear voices’ as the activation connects them with other sources of information and influence beyond the five senses. This settles down eventually in most people, but by then many are prescribed drugs by clueless psychiatrists who don’t know what is happening or even the very nature of the human being. Such drugging (suppression of awakening) can be encouraged by family members who also have no idea what is going on. Such are the consequences of ‘educated’ ignorance. I had a colossal kundalini awakening in 1991 after a life-changing ‘paranormal’ experience on a hill in Peru as I have recounted in other books. I have described how energy that felt like a drill entered the top of my head and passed down through my body while another flow came the other way. I didn’t know it at the time but that energy was flowing through the chakra network and central nervous system to activate – *big time* – the kundalini. My conscious mind became flooded with concepts, information and awareness from beyond the senses and this launched me into three months of utter confusion and bewilderment when I didn’t know who I was, where I was, or what on earth was happening. I call this my ‘turquoise period’ when I had the urge to wear the colour turquoise all the time. Everything is a unique frequency including colours and I was attracted to turquoise as my energetic field was attracted to the *frequency* of turquoise as a result of the transformation I was going through. People are subconsciously attracted to certain colours for the same reason and they radiate in particular colours (‘you always look great in that colour’) while looking and feeling drained in others. It’s not the colour as we perceive it that has that effect; it’s the frequency and how it impacts on our own frequency field.

Give us a wave

To realise what the body is we have to deprogram ourselves from what we’ve been told that it is. Everything in created reality outside the stillness and silence of the Void is information (thought, imagination) delivered through frequency and vibration in the form of waves. We talk about sound *waves*, thought *waves* and brain *waves*, and creation emerges from the thought or consciousness waves emanating from the awareness of ‘God’, or *The One*, via all its points of attention. *The One* experiences itself through the infinite realms of Creation. ‘In my Father’s house are many mansions’ as the Bible puts it. You, me, everything outside The Void are information/consciousness fields taking the form of waves, frequency and vibration with an always-there conscious connection to *The One* whenever we choose. People believe they are only their human labels when we are in fact an expression of Infinity and

ultimately we *are* that Infinity. This is the last thing the Cult wants us to know when its control depends on us not knowing. Perception dictates the frequency and nature of the waves we generate. The more expanded your consciousness and sense of 'I' the higher/quicker and more expanded the frequency/vibration you will emanate and connect with until you perceptually become *The One* and return to the silent, still, all-knowingness of the Void from whence you came. Even then you are still 'you', just a very different state of consciousness and perception. The Biblical story of the Prodigal Son who leaves his 'Father', messes up, learns from the experience and returns home again to be welcomed by his Father can be a symbolic way to describe this. 'The Father' didn't judge his son just as *The One* doesn't judge. Whatever your choices and experience you are *The One* experiencing itself. The point is, though, that while we remain in perceptual states of isolation, a sense of *only* individuality, and in emotional prison cells of hate, anxiety, fear, worry, depression, guilt, resentment, revenge and so on we cannot expand into higher levels of consciousness. These are low-vibrational states which entrap us in low-vibrational experience. If you are in perceptual frequency band 'A' you can only experience that band when that's all you can connect and interact with. Radio station 'A' can't connect with radio station 'B' when they are broadcasting on different frequencies. The same applies after what is perceived as 'death'. Our perceptual (frequency/vibrational) state decides what reality – which of the 'mansions' – we can gravitate to although release from the body and its illusions can obviously transform perception very quickly.



Figure 68: When Body-Mind disconnects from an influence of the greater self – 'Soul', 'Higher Self' – we are at the mercy of perceptions gleaned only through the five senses. See Neil Hague colour section.

The body/auric field (Body-Mind) and Soul (expanded awareness beyond Body-Mind) are both consciousness fields of frequency and waves. They are meant to connect and communicate as one 'entity', but if Body-Mind becomes seriously out of frequency-sync with Soul then communication and influence is diminished ([Fig 68](#)). Soul, or what some call the 'Higher Self', is banging the keyboard, tapping the mouse and getting no response from Body-Mind, or 'Ego'. The Cult works ferociously to secure this disconnection and isolate Body-Mind from Soul. The game is then to program isolated Body-Mind with perceptions that ensure mass human control ([Fig 69](#)). Knowledge of true reality has been held at the inner core of the secret society and satanic networks and passed on through the generations via those networks to exclude mainstream humanity. Such knowledge was once widely understood in the ancient world, but was then sucked out of general circulation. This was achieved not least by the imposition of religion which made exploring reality a death sentence imposed by the Cult behind those religions. Cult empires (especially the British) targeted shamans and carriers of ancient knowledge as the world was colonised

with a fake version of reality that hijacked perception and instilled the crooked beliefs of mainstream (Cult) ‘science’ and mainstream (Cult) religion to secure an official monopoly on the perception of reality. Religions in the East do speak of Maya (‘illusion’) and Brahman (Infinite Existence, Infinite Knowledge, and ultimate reality) and that’s great. Unfortunately these basic truths are mostly obscured by the ritualistic worship of stupendous numbers of perceived Hindu ‘gods’. Hoarding knowledge and imposing ignorance is the whole foundation of human control. Today the knowledge is returning through those tapping into expanded states of awareness and the relatively few open-minded scientists genuinely seeking the truth (mostly through the realms of quantum physics which explores reality beyond the perceived ‘physical’ world). They are seeing the unsupportable fallacy of the ‘physical’ illusion and understanding what the ancients knew and the Cult has worked so hard to suppress.



Figure 69: Humanity is bombarded second by second with information – most inaccurate – by Cult-serving sources to form mass human perception. (Image Neil Hague.)

The body is not solid and quantum physics alone shows that this cannot be. It is a field of energy waves encoded with an information blueprint which constantly responds, positively or otherwise, to other waves in the form of thought, emotion and those delivered as food, drink and the now endless and ever-gathering forms of radiation in our ‘smart’ society. Everything, including food, drink and all that we consume and interact with, are manifestations of wavefields of information and waves affect other waves in positive, negative and neutral ways. Ever wondered why human behaviour has been so transformed by the ‘smart’ revolution of technologically-generated radiation waves and why suicides among the young are soaring? Stick around because the ‘why’ will become obvious from this perspective. Open-minded scientists operating outside the song-sheet mainstream have reached the same basic conclusions about the importance of understanding the function of waves and their impact on human life. It may seem strange to some that they could reach their conclusions from scientific research while I came to the same perspective through other means. There is actually nothing strange about it. When you tap into expanded states of awareness beyond Body-Mind you tap into the same knowledge whether you are a scientist or someone who left school at 15 as I did to play professional football. The label doesn’t matter. It’s how much you open your mind to other levels of awareness and possibility that decides what you know and what you don’t. By these criteria it is better to have an open mind and not be a ‘scientist’ than to be a ‘scientist’ with a mind slammed shut.

Atomic mythology

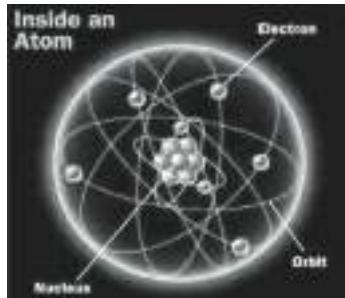


Figure 70: Atoms that are not solid cannot create a solid world. Yep, makes sense.

Replacing the conditioned perception of solidity and materialism with wavefields and holograms immediately explains mysteries that have bewildered mainstream establishment science since its inception. When you realise that nothing is solid or physical it all begins to make sense. The foundation of the materialist view is the atom which we are told is what forms matter – ‘solid’ matter. How strange then that atoms have no solidity! They are packets of energy waves made up of what science perceives to be electrons ‘orbiting’ a nucleus. Atoms are not solid and cannot a solid world make ([Fig 70](#)). The particles and nucleus are a fraction of the atom in totality. The rest is ‘empty’ in terms of physicality. Yet scientists tell us the body is made of *atoms*. They claim at the same time that the body is physical and has solidity when that cannot be when atoms have no solidity. Atoms are a decoded manifestation of information carried in waves. This description puts the whole ‘physical’ atom theory into perspective:

If the nucleus were the size of a peanut, the atom would be about the size of a baseball stadium. If we lost all the dead space inside our atoms, we would each be able to fit into a particle of dust, and the entire human race would fit into the volume of a sugar cube.



Figure 71: Plato’s Allegory of the Cave symbolising the human plight.

Go deeper into the nucleus and electrons and you find that they are not ‘physical’ either while mainstream science battles on with ever-diminishing credibility to hold the line at ‘the world is solid and the body is solid’ when they demonstrably *are not*. Atoms were named from a word meaning ‘uncuttable’ by Ancient Greek philosopher Democritus who lived approximately between the years of 460 and 370BC. He formulated the theory which became the foundation of modern science that matter is made of ‘uncuttable’ atoms and that movement comes from atoms colliding and bouncing off each other. You might observe that this has led to scientific explanations for the Universe invariably involving things bashing into other things. The (illusory) Big Bang is said to have been the instigator and the Universe has been staggering around colliding ever since apparently like some Saturday night drunk. Call a cab – the Universe is pissed again. How do you explain how so and so happened, professor? ‘Collision.’ And this? ‘Something hit it.’ Even in Ancient Greece there were others who could see through this. Famous philosopher Socrates (around 470 to 399 BC) believed that another force separate from ‘physical reality’ provided what I would call the blueprint for the world of the seen and he was right. His pupil Plato (approximately 427-347 BC) described something similar with his Allegory of the Cave ([Fig 71](#)). He told

the symbolic story of prisoners living in a cave and never seeing anything other than the single wall that their chains allowed them to see. Behind them was a fire which they couldn't see and people and animals walked past the flames casting shadows on the wall. These shadows became the reality of the prisoners because it was all they knew and experienced. Some prisoners studied the shadows and were acknowledged as experts about perceived reality while all along they were only studying shadows believing them to be real. Mainstream scientists and academics today are doing exactly the same apart from the minority of honourable exceptions who go their own way. In my analogy they are 'experts' studying reality within the Bubble while believing that to be all there is. A prisoner in Plato's story escapes and realises the shadows are illusions. He comes back to share the news with the others still enslaved, but they don't believe him and call him crazy. This is an allegory, as Plato clearly intended, for the human plight which continues to this day.



Figure 72: Shut-up – I know how things are. The System told me.

The reality that we think we are experiencing is a 'shadow' of something else in the sense of illusory 'physical' reality being a 'shadow' (decoded projection) of wavefield reality. The Soul is a wavefield phenomenon and so is Body-Mind. The body is a wavefield information blueprint that can replicate itself through 'procreation'. It, too, is a state of awareness because everything is and the body is designed for the mind – an incarnation of Soul – to experience this reality. The idea is that the mind, or 'ego', remains in sync and connection with Soul and is influenced by its expanded awareness. In this state of connection the mind/ego is *in* this world, but not completely *of* it. It has perceptual radar which is not subject to the illusions of 'matter'. If, however, mind ceases to be influenced in its perceptions by Soul the whole focus of reality is captured by the five senses and this becomes the dominant reality gleaned from information received from five-sense reality in the form of the Cult-controlled media, science, medicine and what is taught in schools and universities (Fig 72). Now, with Soul out of the game, an entire sense of reality can be programmed into isolated Body-Mind to induce Bubble perceptions. This one sentence describes how a few have enslaved the many through almost the entirety of known human 'history' to present day when 'smart' technology is taking this to a whole new depth of control. There are two primary levels of mind, the conscious and subconscious. It has been estimated that some 95 percent of human behaviour comes from subconscious programming and not from conscious decision-making. The Cult and its non-human masters target the subconscious to keep their targets *unconscious* of what is happening in great swathes of their mind. Remember that *Wonderpedia* magazine quote describing how every second eleven million sensations crackle along [brain] pathways which the brain filters down to a manageable list of around 40 per second and from this we perceive visual reality. We are consciously aware of a fraction even of what we see, hear, touch, smell and taste while the subconscious absorbs it *all*. The Cult has a whole language of symbolism revealed at length in my other books which is designed to bypass the conscious mind and speak to the subconscious.

How we create 'physical' reality



Figure 73: Human reality – waveform becomes holographic via human decoding systems. (Image Neil Hague.)



Figure 74: We even decode our own body into holographic form. Where is your body? In your *mind*. (Image Neil Hague.)

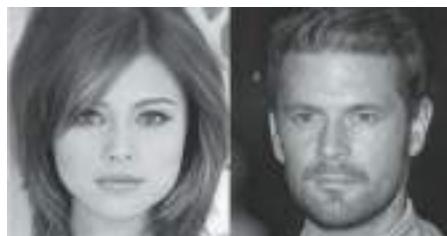


Figure 75: These are digitally-generated 'people' that don't exist as live human beings. The technology can also create fake landscapes and objects.

A wavefield information blueprint becomes the experience of a physical world when we decode the wave information into holograms. The five senses decode *wavefield* information into electrical information which they communicate to the brain and this is decoded into the digital/holographic information (illusory 'physical') which we perceive as the physical world (Fig 73). The different forms of information are the *same* information expressed in different ways. Wavefields are the foundation of all created reality and the body can be no different. This decoding sequence is the work of the mind which means that we decode our *own body* into apparently 3D physical reality by what scientists would call 'observation' or 'looking at it' (Fig 74). This is done through the interaction of the wavefield of the body and the wavefield of the mind in ways that I will come to shortly. Our bodies exist in our mind (like everything else) which is why your state of mind dictates the state of your body. Characters in the most sophisticated virtual reality games can appear to be so real and yet they are only information decoded by the computer and today fake digital people are being created that appear to be live human beings (Fig 75). I watched an experiment in which a group wore headsets that gave them the illusion that their bodies were that of a doll. This so tricked the brain that when something was done to the doll, including a needle in the eye,

the group reacted as if it was happening to *them*. We don't have to really have a 'physical' body to perceive the *experience* of having one. Virtual reality is technologically mimicking our experienced reality which is itself only a more advanced version of virtual reality. Indeed the two are becoming so close in their appearance that those at the cutting edge of virtual technology say it won't be much longer before you will not be able to tell the difference. We accept that virtual reality technology is decoded information that increasingly mirrors 'real' reality, but people still find it hard to grasp that 'real' reality is made manifest in basically the same way. Virtual reality technology hijacks and overrides the very same five senses through which we decode 'real' reality. Observe how virtual reality works and you are looking at how 'real' reality works. Virtual reality worlds exist only in your brain and so does 'real' reality – including the brain itself which is a wavefield construct in its prime state. I have been saying this for years and American cognitive sciences professor, Donald Hoffman, shares that view: 'The brain itself is an illusion ... neurons do not exist except when we see them, just like different colours ... only exist when we perceive them.' Where is the 'physical' body and the 'physical world? It's in our *minds*. We hear about mind over matter when mind *is* matter and matter *is* mind ([Fig 76](#) overleaf). This applies to mind at all levels of consciousness and to all expressions of 'matter'. Max Planck (1858-1947), the 'father of quantum physics', said:



Figure 76: This famous scene from *The Matrix* perfectly describes the 'physical' illusion.

All matter originates and exists only by virtue of a force which brings the particle of an atom to vibration and holds this most minute solar system of the atom together. We must assume behind this force the existence of a conscious and intelligent mind. This mind is the matrix of all matter.

Planck also said:

I regard consciousness as fundamental. I regard matter as derivative from consciousness. We cannot get behind consciousness. Everything that we talk about, everything that we regard as existing, postulates consciousness.

Mind is the *decoder* and *perceiver* – the *creator* – of all matter.

Holographic illusion



Figure 77: All of these images are holograms that appear ‘solid’ when they’re not.



Figure 78: Holograms of people – some no longer alive – can be inserted into scenes with living people.



Figure 79: The woman in this picture is a hologram projected from another location.



Figure 80: The guitar players are holograms.



Figure 81: The bike is a digital hologram.

The reality we experience as physical is really holographic and malleable, not solid. Holograms emerge from a flat surface in a form that makes them look three-dimensional ([Fig 77](#)). The technology began with simple holograms you see in shops, but holography has since been moving ever closer to human reality in the same way that virtual reality has. Holograms are now used to insert holographic fake people into films and stage shows alongside ‘real’ people with the join getting harder to see. The best of them look as ‘solid’ as you and me. Holographic depictions of long-passed artists like Elvis appear in duets with very much alive singers and I saw a whole comedy programme featuring a hologram of the late and great British comedian, Les Dawson ([Fig 78](#)). Holographic versions of people can be transmitted across the world ([Figs 79](#) and [80](#)). We also have digital holograms which is actually what ‘physical’ reality really is ([Fig 81](#)). Rich Terrile, director of the Centre for Evolutionary Computation and Automated Design at NASA’s Jet Propulsion Laboratory, said in 2017 that he believes the Universe is a digital hologram. This must be so because everything in what we perceive as the material world is a digital hologram. You would expect in this case to find pixilation in the fabric of our reality akin to pixels on a television screen that we decode into the images of TV programmes. It turns out that we do. A *New Scientist* magazine article about holographic reality in 2009 said that under magnification ‘the fabric of space-time becomes grainy and is ultimately made of tiny units rather like pixels’. A report by researchers at Britain’s University of Southampton in 2017 found ‘substantial evidence’ that human reality is like watching a 3D movie projected from a 2D screen. Yes, a *wavefield* screen. Kostas Skenderis, head of applied mathematics and theoretical physics at Southampton, said that while we perceive pictures to have height, width and depth they are in fact on a flat surface. The team detailed their findings in the peer-reviewed scientific journal, *Physical Review Letters*. They said the Universe could be a ‘vast and complex hologram’ and Professor Skenderis said that holographic reality was a huge leap in understanding the structure of the Universe. Skenderis likened reality to watching a 3D film in the cinema with the difference that we could touch objects and experience the ‘projection’ as real. I suggest that we don’t touch objects hologram to hologram (as in the experience of solid to solid) but electromagnetic field to electromagnetic field. The skin or touch-sense is a fundamental decoder of information into holographic reality and a wave antenna. Nor are we *watching* a holographic movie. We are *creating* it (*decoding* it). Researchers at Ibaraki University in Japan said they have found ‘compelling evidence’ that the Universe is a holographic projection and ever more scientists are being pushed in the same direction by both the evidence and the way the apparent contradictions of ‘matter’ become perfectly explainable once you bring holograms into the story. Leonard Susskind, professor of physics at Stanford University, has encompassed the holographic model to describe the Universe along with celebrated Argentine theoretical physicist Juan Martín Maldacena among many others. Susskind said: ‘It’s now gone from wild-eyed conjecture to be an everyday working tool of physics.’ How come I could have been so sure our reality was holographic in nature long before it touched the mainstream of science? If you tap into The Field beyond the five senses you just *know* how things are without having to work out every mathematical detail and confirmation. Those who were crap at school and feel a failure as a result should remember that. An open mind, and especially an open heart as we shall see, is far more enlightening than a university degree – first class or otherwise. You don’t need a scientific mind to understand reality. You need an *open* one. Great scientists *know* first and work out the details later while most of science does it the other way round.

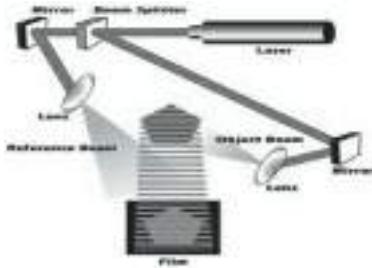


Figure 82: How holograms are created with two parts of a laser colliding to form an interference pattern – a waveform version of the object being captured.



Figure 83: A waveform holographic interference pattern.



Figure 84: Two stones dropped in water create waves that expand and connect to form an interference pattern that reflects the weight of the stones, where they were dropped and at what speed.



Figure 85: Holographic car looking very solid, but you could walk through it.

The information foundation of holograms that we have in human society is encoded in *wavefields*. They are created by dividing a laser beam into two parts. One part ('working beam') passes across the subject/object being photographed to record it as a wavefield and then strikes a holographic print. The other part (reference beam) strikes the same print directly ([Fig 82](#)). The two halves collide on the surface and create an 'interference pattern' which is the information of the featured subject encoded in a wavefield ([Fig 83](#)). The process is the same as two pebbles being dropped in a pond and the waves moving out until they collide and form a wave pattern in the water ([Fig 84](#)). This pattern is a wavefield representation of the weight of the stones, how high and at what speed they were dropped and how far apart. With holographics another laser is directed at the wavefield interference pattern and, apparently miraculously, but not really, a three-dimensional 'solid' image of the subject is projected as a hologram.

The laser ‘reads’ (decodes) the information in the wavefield pattern and in the case of human reality that laser is the *mind*. Our entire reality is being decoded by the mind from the base form of waves into holographic ‘physical’ illusion. Holograms can appear to be so solid that people refuse to walk through them when they depict cars and such like at motor company launches. When they try to do so they realise that they can ([Fig 85](#)). Okay, then, why can’t we walk through walls and each other? Two main reasons: (1) what the mind believes is real it will experience as real and (2) the resistance you feel when you bump into a ‘solid’ object is not a physical resistance but an electromagnetic one. I am sitting in this chair now and not falling through the seat and then the floor and then the earth etc., because the electromagnetic waves of my bum are different to those of the chair. My bum and the chair aren’t making contact at the holographic (‘physical’) level. They are establishing resistance at the *wavefield* electromagnetic level. When wavefield frequencies are far enough apart they can pass through each other which is why people see ‘ghosts’ walk or float through walls. Ghostly figures (other expressions of consciousness) tend to appear as ethereal. They are not a manifestation of the visible light, five-sense, frequency band and they can pass through apparently solid objects just as radio frequencies pass through walls. Those who can expand their visual decoding potential beyond the usual limits of human perception tend to see ‘ghosts’ while others more confined to five-sense reality tend not to. One will say ‘I’ve seen a ghost’ and the other will say ‘You’re mad, I can’t see anything’. It’s all about frequency and what you can and cannot tune into. ‘Physical’ reality, then, is a holographic illusion and what a difference this makes to understanding human experience and what is termed the ‘paranormal’. All the ‘paranormal’ phenomena that could not be happening if the world was ‘solid’ suddenly becomes possible and explainable from the perspective of the illusory solidity of holograms and the power of the mind to impact on wave information fields and through that change the nature of those holograms. What appear to be impossible happenings and ‘miracles’ are only wavefields generated by consciousness influencing other wavefields and thus holographic ‘solid’ reality. We will see in the next chapter that all ‘paranormal’ activity can be simply explained from this understanding. While great swathes of mainstream science focuses only on ‘physical’ reality that doesn’t exist, they will never explain the apparent mysteries of life which demand an understanding of non-physical reality. In such circumstances mainstream scientists with that ‘physical’ mindset can only deliver the mantra of ‘it’s not possible’ because, from its knowledge base and perspective, it *is* impossible.

Electric reality

Body-Mind operates and communicates electrically and electromagnetically and the brain also communicates with the body and its cells and organs through electrical signals. We are electrical/electromagnetic beings at the human level and part of what I call the Cosmic Internet in which the Universe affects us and we affect it and each other. This is possible through an exchange of information as our thoughts, emotions and perceptions interact through wave connections with The Field. Biologist Bruce Lipton points out that each human cell contains 1.4 volts of electricity which doesn’t sound much until you multiple that by the *trillions* cells in the body. You can see Internet videos showing how the power of an antenna is increased when touched by a human hand and electricity transferred (this happens with ‘hands-on’ energetic healing). We are electrical and when this electricity ceases to be generated by the body we are said to ‘die’. Our cells are batteries that store electricity and if they become drained we become weak and ill while vice-versa is the case. The speed of ageing is connected to this with cells lacking their optimum electricity either dying or not being like-for-like replaced. In this way the original body blueprint begins to unravel and we experience this as ageing and diminishing function. Ponder on the effect therefore of living in the technologically-generated radiation fields that we do today which scramble the electrical/electromagnetic systems of the body including cell replacement. When this constant replacement gets seriously out of kilter it is known as cancer. Here you have the link between technological radiation fields and cancer and other diseases. Emotional stress imbalances and distorts

electrical/wave harmony in the Body-Mind through the electrical/wavefields it generates and this is how stress becomes illness. A rush of fight-or-flight stress in response to danger or a short experience is fine. The body is designed to deal with those situations before returning to equilibrium. Ongoing stress known as 'background anxiety' or 'survival stress' is a very different matter and can be extremely destructive to health. Distorted wavefields generated by stress can jam immune system communication and stop people thinking straight through chaotic interaction with thought processing. The opposite is true with states of love and joy which transmit balanced waves and transfer that state to the body. Another aspect of stress is addiction to chemicals produced by those states. My mother used to say about a neighbour ... 'It's being so miserable that keeps them going'. Addiction to emotional chemicals means that when people are not worried (miserable) they have to find something to worry about to get their chemical fix. Methods of healing outside the mainstream are increasingly founded on achieving electrical/electromagnetic balance and harmonising the rate and direction of cellular electrical spin. Observe the solar system and the galaxy and you'll see that everything is spinning down to the smallest particle. When the spin reverses from what it should be electrical chaos in the body can follow and people head for a doctor who has no idea about the real cause and hands out a drug (also a wavefield) that can lead to even greater electrical mayhem, sorry 'chemical side-effects'. Pharmaceutical drugs are imbalanced fields of information (hence 'side-effects') while natural, not synthetic, nutrition and vitamins can have harmonious fields that sync with the body instead of wreaking havoc. The trick is to know which fields (nutrition/supplement) will help to secure harmony in any particular situation and which will not. Overriding everything is the power of the mind to heal the body by generating the perception waves that balance the imbalances that are experienced as illness.

In the language



Figure 86: The body meridian system picked out by a tracer dye and looking like a computer motherboard.



Figure 87: The Earth is also criss-crossed and interpenetrated by meridian lines of energetic force.



Figure 88: Hair-like needles and other techniques balance the flow of energy or 'chi' (information) in the body meridian system.

Reality can be seen in the phrases people use without realising that what they say is literally true. We describe the 'electricity' we feel in a room, theatre or stadium generated by various human interactions. Hair stands up on the back of the neck and skin tingles in an excited crowd because of electromagnetic energy emitted in the form of emotion. Skin is an antenna and the whole body is the same – hence the tingling amidst powerful electrical/electromagnetic fields. This happens to people in 'haunted' places when they feel the electromagnetic fields of entities just beyond the human visual frequency range. We speak of the electricity between people while others are said for the same reason to have 'magnetic personalities'. It is all about the power and compatibility of electrical/electromagnetic fields. Sex is the merging of two electromagnetic fields which together generate electrical power greater than the sum of the parts (well, sometimes!). The ancient art of acupuncture is based on balancing the flows of information in the form of electricity and electromagnetism that circulate the body through lines of force called meridians. These are the body equivalent of meridians or 'ley lines' that circulate and interpenetrate the Earth ([Figs 86](#) and [87](#)). Both systems are manifestations of the communication networks of The Field that connect everything to everything else. The ancients knew of these phenomena before religion suppressed the knowledge and they marked their paths and major vortex 'chakra' points where many lines cross with earthworks, standing stones and circles. The more powerful the vortex the more sacred the circle and location was considered to be. Hair-like needles and other methods employed by acupuncture balance the flow through the meridian system of *information* encoded in electricity known by the Chinese as 'chi' ([Fig 88](#)). The principle is yet again the same as with computers. When a virus scrambles the flow of information passing through the system the computer response to keyboard/mouse direction slows down or ceases to react. What appears or doesn't on the screen is affected by the distorted information and this is what happens when chi information in the form of electricity is in a state of disharmony or dis-ease. In ancient China some would for this reason pay their acupuncturist when they were well and not when they became ill. The acupuncture practitioner was supposed to keep the chi in balance to ensure that illness couldn't manifest. A perfect example of ignorance dictating perception is when acupuncture is dismissed and ridiculed for 'putting a needle in the foot to treat a headache'. If such people had the self-respect to do some research before waving their arrogant hand they would know that chi information passes around the body in circuits and a circuit that passes through the foot and the head can be blocked in the foot in a way that transfers to a pain in the head.



Figure 89: Every part of a hologram is a smaller version of the whole and encoded with the same information.

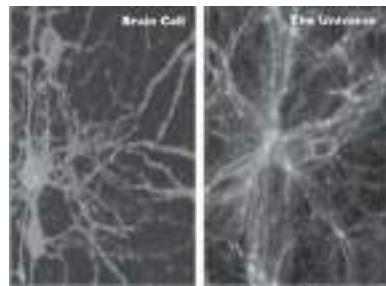


Figure 90: Brain activity and the Universe. As above, so below – the holographic principle.

There is one other point to make about holograms before we move on. They have an amazing characteristic in which every part of the hologram is a smaller version of the whole. If you cut a holographic wavefield print or interference pattern into four pieces and direct the laser at each one you would expect to see four quarters of the original image. But you don't. You see a quarter-size version of the *whole* image (Fig 89). This continues to be the case as you cut the image further because of the way information is distributed within a holographic wavefield or interference pattern. Although the clarity gets fuzzier as you reduce the size it's still the image in its entirety. The human energy field is a smaller version of the Earth field while brain activity and levels of the Universe look remarkably similar in our holographic reality (Fig 90). Here you have the reason why healing methods such as acupuncture and reflexology have identified areas throughout the body that are smaller representations of the whole body. This has to be the case when the body is a hologram and every part must be a smaller version of the whole. Tiny cells have respiratory, digestive and immune systems just as the body does in line with the holographic principle and the Earth has a ley line electrical system as the body has the chi meridian network. A skilled palm reader can read the information of the whole body in the hand thanks to the way holographic information is distributed (Fig 91). Holographic principles are the foundation of the ancient theme of 'as above, so below'.



Figure 91: Information can be gleaned from the hand because it represents the information blueprint of the whole body in a smaller form – precisely how holograms work.

Reality is certainly not what we are told to believe that it is. 'Unexplainable mysteries' don't tend to survive open-minded research. Talking of which ...

CHAPTER THREE

What mysteries?

The impossible could not have happened; therefore the impossible must be possible in spite of appearances – Agatha Christie

From the perspective of reality that I am describing so-called mysteries of life dissolve like snow in the sunlight. A long list of ‘inexplicable’ phenomena become ‘Ah, so that’s how it works’ and ‘Blimey, it all makes sense now’.



Figure 92: Wave entanglement – a key to understanding reality and human interaction.

We return to the theme of waves in water after two pebbles are dropped (Fig 92). Where waves from each collide and connect is known as wave *entanglement* and from this understanding of entanglement everything starts to fall into place. For example: Body-Mind is a wave entanglement between the wavefields of the body and those of the mind. While they remain in sync or entangled we are ‘alive’. Body-Mind’s wave entangled dance of synchronised oscillation is the human Dance of Life. When the body ceases to function (its *wavefield* ceases to oscillate and generate electricity) this releases the mind from entanglement and we ‘die’, or rather the body does. This is happening when near-death experiencers describe leaving the body as the mind is freed from the perceptual limitations of the body and opens to an entirely different reality. Wave entanglement with the body focuses attention of the mind on the micro-band of frequency called visible light through the decoding systems of the five senses. Once the mind is released from that body myopia we become aware of other realities. We are back to the torch light and warehouse analogy. If the body’s wavefield oscillation is restored so that entanglement is restored the mind can be drawn back into the body. If it doesn’t revive we’re out of here. The mind needs a body operating within the frequency band of the human world to experience and interact with the human world. Seeking out another body to entangle with is known as reincarnation. Those who have a lot of out of body experiences (a near-death experience without the body needing to die) have a much more fluid wave entanglement with the body which allows their mind to be released more easily. There are ways of training the mind to do this. Mind has the power to dictate the nature of wave entanglement

or whether there is one at all. Mind wave-power can think us alive against all the medical odds ('I'm *determined* to live') and think us dead ('I have lost the *will* to live'). Mind is the governor of the body while the Cult wants us to believe that the opposite is the case and so we don't use that power in all manner of ways. The body cannot exist without the mind. When mind disentangles it takes with it the life-force energy that animates and empowers the body which then starts to decompose. The light literally goes out as death is often described. Human life is the *rhythm* or oscillation of life and the body's rhythms including circadian and all biological rhythms are connected to this prime oscillation and its interaction with other waves. Another version of entanglement is called quantum entanglement in which 'entangled particles remain connected so that actions performed on one affect the other, even when separated by great distances'. Scientist Albert Einstein described this as 'spooky action at a distance'. There is actually nothing 'spooky' about it. When particles that are expressions of waves are connected by those waves they will act in unison as manifestations of the *same* wave or the *same field*.

Gene Genie



Figure 93: Big Pharma – the Cult cartel that controls mainstream medicine and seeks to crush any alternatives that work.

The wavefield relationship between Body-Mind is crucial to understanding everything in human reality. We are told that our genes basically decide all that happens to us physically and mentally. Some women tragically have breasts removed after being told their genes give them a high chance of breast cancer. Mainstream medicine is often brilliant in dealing with trauma injuries, orthopaedics, surgery, and reviving people at death's door (do electric shocks revive only the heart or primarily the wavefield oscillation that generates electricity?). Antibiotics have also been highly effective although they are handed out far too liberally to the point where infections can mutate to overcome them. These are the so-called 'superbugs'. When it comes to illness in general, however, modern medicine can be a disaster zone. One of the biggest causes of death in the United States – right up there with heart disease and cancer – is the *treatment* in all its forms. That's crazy? Yes, it is, but if people mean crazy as in that can't be true – check the figures and remember that they are only the numbers officially reported. Many other deaths which have medical causes are hidden behind fake diagnosis. The reason for this is that mainstream medicine doesn't know what the body really is beyond the biological, let alone how it functions, and it is manipulated to be that way through control of medicine by the pharmaceutical cartel or 'Big Pharma' ([Fig 93](#)). This is a Cult creation given predominance over 'health' thanks to people like oil tycoon and Cult operative J.D. Rockefeller (see my other books). Big Pharma (the Death Cult, hence it kills so many people) owns the medical schools where doctors are trained and indoctrinated; owns the professional bodies like the Medical Associations; and owns governments through a global army of lobbyists and money-no-object political funding. The situation is so outrageous and dire that the best rule of thumb is this: If Big Pharma wants something it's bad for humanity. Mainstream medicine is an outgrowth from mainstream 'science' which is also a Cult production at its establishment core. Both are controlled through funding and governing authorities that ensure only the Big Pharma version of the body and its treatment is allowed to be practiced in the mainstream (and increasingly anywhere). You want to be a

doctor? Then do it our way or we'll have you struck off. This has happened to many proper doctors seeking to employ methods that work rather than singing from the Big Pharma rulebook. You want to be a mainstream scientist? Well, don't think you are going to get funding or any prestigious position if you challenge what we tell you is 'scientific' orthodoxy (which becomes medical orthodoxy). Witness the withdrawal or non-existence of funding for scientists who challenge human-caused 'climate change' orthodoxy which the Cult seeks to impose through its Climate Cult in which the dominant theme is 'extinction' (death). The same methodology can be found throughout academia which takes its orthodoxy from science orthodoxy and medical orthodoxy which all originate with Cult orthodoxy. The great majority in these institutions don't know they are following the rules of the Cult while those in the inner circles of secret societies and satanic groups most certainly do.



Figure 94: An imbalance or flaw in the body wavefield becomes illness or disease – disharmony – in the hologram. Wavefield balance = holographic 'health' because one is a reflection of the other. See Neil Hague colour section.



Figure 95: The body 'hard drive' – the receiver-transmitter of information known as DNA.



Figure 96: 'Blank-sheet' stem cells can be encoded to perform any function.

The foundation of medical orthodoxy is that genes and not mind are the arbiter of everything when the opposite is true. This calculated inversion of reality is designed by the Cult to isolate body from mind in human society when body *is* mind. Big Pharma medicine is based on this misrepresentation and its drugs focus on affecting the body (hologram) chemically. This means they concentrate on the symptom they see

in the hologram and not the cause which is a wavefield, energetic, information imbalance decoded through into the hologram ([Fig 94](#)). A problem in the hologram (symptom) is really a problem in the field (cause). Alternative methods of healing have long accused mainstream medicine of treating only symptoms and ignoring the cause and this must be so when the medical industry doesn't acknowledge the existence of the body wavefield where the cause *always* lies. I say always because the body is a wave information field and its holographic level is only a decoded projection of that field. What happens in the field happens in the hologram and what doesn't bother the mind doesn't bother the body. Even when Big Pharma drugs are claimed to have psychological effects they target the way the brain processes information and not the source of information itself – wavefield mind. The body has some trillions of cells (cell 'batteries') and in almost every one is the body 'hard drive' known as DNA ([Fig 95](#)). We apparently have three billion base pairs of DNA and one section of this is called a gene. DNA of a normal human cell contains an estimated 30,000 to 120,000 genes although only a fraction of them are activated at any time. We are talking biological nanotechnology. Genes contain instructions for what the body looks like (everything from eye colour to height) and how it functions minute by minute. From this has come the myth that genes control what happens to the body, what diseases you'll have and even how long you will live. This is profoundly misleading in that it ignores the X-factor of mind and consciousness beyond mind. The membrane of every cell is a liquid crystal and DNA is crystalline because they are receiver-transmitters of information. This is the wave communication system through which the mind (and heart) activate and deactivate cell function. American developmental biologist Bruce Lipton, who wrote *Biology of Belief* and has a YouTube presentation of the same name, points out that cell membranes are semiconductor information processors like those, also crystalline, used in electrical circuits. Genes are a 'hard disk' and programmable. 'Blank-sheet' stem cells are produced by the body which then receive signals to encode instructions that dictate their function ([Fig 96](#)). Through this communication system humans, animals and the natural world 'evolve' in the sense of exchanging information between mind, body and environment to develop new gifts and abilities to cope when their environment changes. Animals are in sync with their surroundings thanks to this information exchange and so desert species have less need for water and birds hunting fish have microscopic sight to see fish from high in the air. When this transmutation through encoding new cell instructions stays in step with environmental changes it is called 'evolution'; when it doesn't we call it species extinction. We are rather more than a 'lump of meat' and our world far more than a cosmic accident. I will be describing how the entire Universe is an electrical/electromagnetic phenomenon which, like everything else in all existence, is conscious.

Turning yourself on (and off)



Figure 97: Our mental and emotional state is transmitted as waves which can turn genes on and off that relate to those states. In this way our state of mind becomes 'genetic' consequences good and bad. See Neil Hague colour section.

Which genes and their functions are active and which are not is dictated overwhelmingly by the mind and its *perceptions* through wave entanglement with the body. I have been banging on for decades now about the central role played by perception – *everything* originates from perception which is why the Cult in all its forms seeks as its prime objective to control perception. Every thought, emotion – perception – manifests as a unique frequency (wave) emanating from the mind and its emotions and you can feel these waves emitted by people. We talk of good vibes and bad vibes and that's true. Someone may put on an act with their face and demeanour, but we feel something about them that doesn't *feel* right. We are picking up the wave frequencies representing their real perceptions and attitudes behind the 'physical' mask. The nature of these frequencies, or perceptions, decide which genes in the cells are activated or switched on and which are not. We have genes with different instructions that affect the body's 'physical' and psychological state. Among them are genes that will make you healthy, joyful, optimistic and mentally and emotionally balanced along with others that can make you sick, even fatally, depressed, pessimistic and mentally and emotionally *imbalanced* by the way they *process information*. Now picture perception waves or signals emanating from the mind and having the effect of activating and deactivating different genes on the basis of their particular function. This is possible because genes of different functions respond to frequencies broadcast by the mind that relate to those same functions ([Fig 97](#)). The mind wave frequency and that representing a particular gene's function operate on the *same wavelength* and they entangle to send a signal from mind to gene. In this way the *perceptual* state of the mind is transferred to the body's genetic system. If your mind feels depressed its frequencies will activate the genes which carry instructions that represent depression and this emotional state will be transferred to a like-effect in the body. The same perceptual waves are affecting which functions are encoded in blank-sheet stem cells. Mainstream medicine sees only the chemical effect on the body and not the wave imbalance triggering that chemical effect which emerges from the conscious *and* subconscious mind. Doctors prescribe chemical drugs for a chemical symptom and miss the wavefield cause. Through this wave connection or entanglement stress becomes illness. The disruptive effect that stress waves can have on heart-related genes is how stress causes heart disease and the same process happens with cancer and everything else. When the mind and its emotions feel nervous or fearful the frequency activation will cause emotion genes in the belly to give you 'the shits' as I mentioned earlier. It is not the *genes* that decide what happens to the body in terms of the outcome origin; it is mind frequencies that dictate which genes are switched on and which are not. Mind is the message and genes are the messenger. Different parts of the brain 'light-up' and are activated by different thoughts and emotions for the same reason that genes are. The brain is responding to perceptual waves/signals from the mind and these activate those areas of the brain related to those frequencies as the brain processes the information. The brain is again the processor of information and not the origin, just as genes are processors – *semi-conductor* processors – of information and not the source.



Figure 98: It's not only chemical shite. It's wavefield shite.

What I have described is being studied today by an emerging scientific discipline called epigenetics.

Science believed that to change the genetic nature of the body our DNA, or 'hard drive', had to change or mutate. This is now known to be untrue and reflects the long history of scientific dogma which lurches from 'this is how it is' to 'er, well, actually, it's not'; and from 'you are talking nonsense you science blasphemer' to 'well, okay, you were right, but we'll claim the credit and call it a new discovery'.

Epigenetics studies how the body changes 'physically' and psychologically by which genes are switched on and off and which gene functions dominate. Highly significantly this on-off sequence dictated by the perceptual mind waves of one generation can be passed on to the next through procreation. Sperm and eggs combine to form the body ('software') program and carry the epigenetic (wavefield) blueprint of the parents (there are cases, however, where this doesn't happen). Children can be born with the same on-off gene sequence with all the consequences, good and bad, which that entails. The child is born with what the perceptions of parents and other 'ancestors' genetically developed through life experience. We hear this described in lines like 'She's just like her mother' and 'He's just like his dad'. There are other reasons for this, of course, but epigenetics is one of them. It is also the case that signals activating and deactivating gene function are not confined only to mind although that is the dominant source. Drugs and toxins are wavefield phenomena in their base form even though we perceive them holographically as chemical in nature. Big Pharma drugs cause so much damage to health because they are energetic wave distortions which transfer that distortion to the wavefields of body and genes. It's the same with toxins in food and the environment. Do we really think that poisons in the herbicides and insecticides sprayed onto crops are not retained in the food they produce? Of course they are – both in waves and their chemical form in the hologram. What we eat and drink may look like a sandwich or a soda, but in its base form food and drink are fields of information waves. These fields can harmonise with the Body-Mind field when they are in vibrational sympathy ('nutritious food') or cause disharmony and dis-ease when their disruptive waves distort the Body-Mind field (Big Mac and a coke, please). Food and drink have long been shown to affect people psychologically, too, and this comes from the same wave-gene impact ([Fig 98](#)). Frequencies represented by fast food in recent decades have been triggering genes that relate to weight gain and through the epigenetic effect generations of children are being born with a greater genetic aptitude to gain weight than earlier generations did not have. The smart technology explosion is pounding everyone with radiation frequencies from phones, masts, satellites and Wi-Fi and this will be having an enormous impact on epigenetic gene function in ways that the general population and most of the medical and telecommunications industries will not be aware of. The Cult does know, however, and those consequences are long-planned. Untested 5G now being rolled out around the world is the next level of genetic and psychological manipulation. I'll deal with this in detail in later chapters. Do people think that the transformation in the perceptions and emotions of especially the young in the 'smart' era is just some random coincidence?

Believing is seeing

When someone is poisoned it is not the chemical that kills them but the deeply distorted wavefields represented *holographically* as a chemical. The body's wavefield oscillation is so undermined that it can no longer function when its dancing waves cease to dance. Some Christians in America take Biblical Scripture so literally that they handle poisonous snakes and even drink lethal strychnine to prove their faith. Some die, as you would expect, but some don't and how can this be? The danger of snake poison and strychnine is in the effect of its wavefields on the body's wavefield. If the wavefield mind is so strong in its belief that they won't die then the frequency signals from the mind will not allow body reactions to be activated by the poison that will lead to death. Thus there you have the process of 'mind over matter'. We are increasingly urged to fear genes with genetic tests warning people what their genetic blueprint has in store for them later in life. What a tragic irony on many levels. If you believe that you are destined to be the victim of your genetic blueprint you are sending out the mind/brain waves within the frequency band which can activate the very genes that produce the outcome. It becomes a self-fulfilling

wavefield/genetic prophecy. If our minds do not believe in such an outcome – especially if we *know* and live the fact that mind is the governor – those cancer genes or whatever won't be activated for your whole life. Why is it that so many people die within the period the doctor predicted they would die? 'How long do I have, doctor?' is so often a question that delivers literally a death sentence. Mind becomes convinced that the body will die within the declared period and sends out waves of frequency that make it happen. There have been cases where people have been told they have a fatal disease with a certain period to live and they have died in that period only for post-mortem tests to reveal they did not have the 'fatal disease' at all. They died from a *belief* that they had the disease and a *belief* in the doctor's prognosis of how long they had to live. There are so many stories and accounts along the same lines. In this way we can believe ourselves to live and believe ourselves to die. Witness the list of cases in which one group has been given a drug to have some effect or other and a second group is unknowingly given only a sugar pill or 'placebo'. Many times those taking the non-drug placebo experience the effect of the drug they have not even taken. Some trials involving psychoactive drugs have had those taking only a placebo heading out on a psychedelic 'trip'. People have recovered from health problems, even serious ones, by taking a placebo they believed was a drug that would cure them. This can happen through the process I have been describing. Belief in the cure sends out the mind/brain waves that activate the genetic blueprint and its immune system to deliver the believed-in outcome. There is also the 'nocebo' effect when belief in a bad health outcome focuses the mind to produce just that. Warning people about the 'side-effects' of drugs is understandable, but how many then experience those effects because that possibility has been transferred to the mind and its perceptions? Tell someone that the cup of tea they just drank contained poison and watch what happens even though there was no poison. How many drugs appear to work only because people believe they will? The same applies to alternative methods, too, although they are much more in sync with how the body works and what it is. Mind is *all* when it comes to the body and the Cult knows that.

I'll give you an example of how perception manifests illusions. I researched mind control for many years both sides of the Atlantic and met a large numbers of people who had been shockingly abused in the infamous US government-military-CIA mind control operation known as MKUltra. Part of this horrific programme was 'trauma-based mind control' in which the target is subject to situations of extreme terror. Their mind builds an amnesic memory-barrier around the experience like a bubble or honeycomb so the person does not have to keep reliving what happened. This creates self-contained compartments called by insiders 'alters' as in altered states. These self-contained alters are then programmed to carry out tasks including assassination in the style of a Manchurian Candidate and mind manipulators are able to switch the alters to different 'personalities' which perform different preprogrammed tasks. A so-called 'front alter' is installed that operates as the target's conscious mind while the other alters remain in the subconscious. Trigger words, phrases, even sounds, are encoded to switch alters and make them temporarily the front alter to carry out their designated task or be sexually and violently abused by rich and famous people. Once completed the prime front alter is restored which has no idea what the other alter has done or experienced. I have exposed this in detail in other books and the reason I raise the subject here is that many who suffered in MKUltra told me that if they took drugs or were drunk in one alter or fragment of mind the effect of the drugs and drink would disappear immediately they were switched into an alter that had not been 'conscious' or 'front' when the drugs and drink were consumed. One told me that her biggest nightmare was to be given anaesthetic in hospital while in one alter and for another to kick in during the operation. She knew that the anaesthesia would cease to work and she would wake up. Such is the illusion of experienced reality. The latest mind control techniques involve harmonics which technologically manipulate the brain's wavefield and electrical patterns to program perceptions and behaviour and even insert death programs that trigger the body to shut down. 5G, anyone? Relate this to the Cult's control of information through 'education' and media when both are forms of perceptual hypnotism. I will be showing later that the Cult's knowledge of how

perception becomes experienced reality is mercilessly exploited to instigate mass human control.

I know myself how consciousness can override medical prognosis. I began to develop joint problems at aged 15 just six months into my football career and they continued to develop until I had to stop playing at 21. I was diagnosed with rheumatoid arthritis and given a horrible prognosis that included the possibility of being in a wheelchair in my 30s. I refused to accept that and rejected the offer of painkilling drugs for the rest of my life. It's a good job I did or I would be dead now. I didn't need a wheelchair in my 30s, but the arthritis did continue to develop and at its peak affected very painfully my toes, ankles, knees, hips, wrists and fingers. The experience gave me many gifts that didn't seem so at the time. These included the end of my soccer career which led me into journalism and what I am doing now, plus the activation of a fierce determination not to let the pain and arthritis stop me. There came a time, however, as I began to understand the relationship between mind and body, that I decided to put this into practice by using perception to impact the arthritis. I decided the arthritis was not going to continue progressing and would start rolling back and releasing me from the pain. By 'decided' I mean something much deeper than that which I call 'knowing' and I'll be coming to this in due course. At the time of this book's publication I am 68 and should *really* be in a wheelchair by now with a ravaged body after the arthritis developed at aged 15; but I'm not. I have no pain and apart from some remaining deformation in my right hand my life is not affected in any way by arthritis. What you believe you perceive and what you perceive you experience. Don't be a victim of your genes. Be the master of them through your perceptions which decide which are activated and which are not. Hereditary inevitability and doctor prognosis is a myth – if you know this.

'Born' winner? 'Born' loser? Or mind dictates all?

The process of perception creating experience applies across the entirety of human life. We talk about 'born winners'. What is that except mind dictating experience? 'Born winners' always seem to manifest situations and 'strokes of luck' to grasp victory from the jaws of defeat while others, individuals and teams, grasp defeat from the jaws of victory. You see this with sports people who dominate in less important games and yet whenever they come to the decisive match or championship final others with less talent and stronger perception win the day. An example was England's Leeds United football team in the 1960s and 70s. They were a brilliant side with highly talented players managed by a guy called Don Revie. They would dominate a season until the closing deciding stages and then fall away at the decisive moment. It was not their talent that defeated them; it was their own perception. Revie was famous for producing detailed 'dossiers' on each of the opposition players which his team were supposed to read. This betrayed far too much attention on what the other team might do instead of what *his* team could do. Leeds were so good that if they performed to their potential what the other team did didn't matter, but it mattered big-time to Revie, a superstitious man, to the point of obsession. This exposed the undertone of insecurity that was often transferred to his team when the pressure was on in season-defining situations. Perceptual transfer happens with all groups, large and small, and even to whole populations as we saw in Nazi Germany. Everybody is emitting wave frequencies that reflect their perceptions and emotional state. Football teams are therefore groups of wavefields that become *entangled*. The more perceptually powerful fields will impose themselves on the others and soccer pundits talk about someone having a personality that 'dominates the dressing room and what happens on the pitch'. They often describe these players as ... 'born winners'. The manager as the boss of the team is obviously best placed to impose his perceptions on the group and in this way Don Revie's insecurities would have been transferred by wavefield to the team at crucial moments of high pressure. Confident of winning becomes fear of losing which is something very different. Perception is transferred from mind to body in the ways I have described and the body's actions reflect the mind's perceptions. We hear this reported in these terms: 'They have been brilliant all season, but in this deciding match they just didn't perform.' With the great Revie Leeds United team that happened far too often to be coincidence. Perception/wavefield dominance or

subordination can be observed in every aspect of human society and most certainly in sport where it is always on public display.

There is another phenomenon known as 'a disruptive influence in the dressing room' – a player with negative attitudes and perceptions who emits those waves within the team's collective field of wave entanglement and creates a schism or distortion that affects the perceptions and performance of the collective. I played in teams that had disruptive characters and in others where everyone was mutually supportive and it absolutely can seriously affect the performance of the whole group. This is the real background to terms like 'infectious' behaviour, infectious enthusiasm and infectious negativity. The 'infection' spreads through wave entanglement. A further sporting example of how entanglement affects outcome is the impact of supporters on a team or individual. The crowd watching a sporting event is affecting the outcome – or can – and teams playing at home in front of their own supporters tend to win more often than they do away. The wavefields of the crowd become entangled with the fields of the team they are focused upon. If this support is positive these 'good vibes' are transferred to the team along with potentially enormous surges of energy to aid stamina and performance. Many successful UK athletes in the 2012 Olympic Games in London described how they felt empowered by the British crowd and especially when it was a race for the line and their bodies were at their apparent limit. Somehow they found another surge of energy just when they needed it and this would have been a combination of their own minds (determination) and very much the wavefield energy input from entanglement with spectators willing them to win. The reverse of this is also true. Football teams having an unsuccessful run often do better away from home because the frustration and criticism of their fans is transmitted through wave entanglement and this can disrupt and drain the performance, confidence and energy of the players. 'Born winners' are so perceptually strong, however, that they perform to their maximum ability in a hostile atmosphere and are empowered by their determination not to be affected. If you believe in 'Little Me, I have no power' you will live a life that expresses that self-identity as your perceptual state is transmitted in waves that entangle with other waves in sync with them. You will attract into your life people, situations and experiences that reflect your state of mind and emotion to produce a self-fulfilling prophecy. Everything in our reality is a frequency wavefield, a pattern of entangled, vibrating, oscillating, consciousness/information, and that includes circumstances, potential situations and experiences all of which are forms of consciousness. If we are in sync with their 'vibe' we attract them. If we're not, we don't. This will be immensely-relevant when I come to how the Cult manipulates human society and how we can stop that happening. You don't like your life? Then stop creating it – *attracting* it.

The relationship (wave) field



Figure 99: Relationships of all kinds are founded on wave-entanglement and the attraction or resistance of 'vibes'. See Neil Hague colour section.

Relationships of every kind from boy meets girl to the experiences we attract and the effect of planets in astrology can all be described and understood in terms of mind/consciousness-wave entanglement ([Fig](#)

[99](#)). Perceptions obviously decide what personal relationships we seek to pursue and if this is mutual then wave entanglement follows. We describe this as making a ‘bond’. Entanglement can be imposed, too, if we allow it. A relationship based only on ‘physical’ attraction will form a wave entanglement to reflect that. When the attraction fades the entanglement unravels and the couple (coupling) separates. Or, at least, they do if that’s the only connection. If by the time the ‘physical’ attraction fades a mutual hostility has developed then the attraction wave entanglement is replaced by a hostility wave entanglement and things can get very ugly. Hostility and hate from one partner is infused into the mutually entangled field and can trigger more hostility and hate in the other who reflects that back in a mutual feedback loop that diminishes, even destroys, the lives of both parties. Apply this interaction across human society and you see it everywhere in everything from personal relationships to world wars. Parents, communities and religions that instil in their children a hatred for other communities and religions ensure negative, destructive and ongoing wave entanglement passed on generation after generation as we have seen throughout the world. Entanglement between couples can be based on multiple waves generated by multiple perceptions of each other including attraction *and* repulsion, love (or the human version of it) *and* hate. These are described as love-hate relationships and which wave connection dominates at any time depends on particular circumstances. Candlelit dinner – ‘I love you’. Come home pissed – ‘You horrible bastard’. When relationships of whatever kind are founded on love in its *unconditional* sense generated from the heart chakra vortex, and not just the groin, entanglement can be mutually beneficial, supportive and last indefinitely even though its nature may change. We can see this in couples late in life well past the lust stage that love each other even more than ever and live in wavefield harmony and mutual support. Individual minds decide individual experience and entangled mind connections decide collective experience. A dictator mind is someone who wave-entangles, sometimes with whole nations, and imposes his or her perceptions on everyone else. See Hitler, Stalin, Mussolini, the Chinese leadership and endless other examples. The Nazi mentality entangled with millions of Germans and became the mesmerised masses oscillating to the same rhythm in those grotesque rallies of unquestioned wave-entangled homage to Hitler. The theme here is that whatever your waves (perceptions) sync with will become entangled in some form of relationship. Those that don’t sync will pass you by. ‘Hands-on’ energy healers make a wave entanglement with those they work with as energy is transferred through these channels (so make sure you pick the right one). Energy healing can be done directly or at a distance when waves of energy are directed from the healer’s field to entangle with the recipient. I have experienced this and it works *when* the healer knows what they’re doing.

Wave entanglement equally applies to desires, ambitions, fears and all situations that we face. Every thought and emotion is a wave frequency and desires, ambition, fears and situations are wavefields of thought and emotion on particular frequencies. Our perceptions in relation to what we want, fear or experience decide the type of relationship, or no relationship, that we have with these potentialities. Say you want to achieve something, but you don’t believe you can or will with your self-identity perception of ‘things like that never happen to me’. Waves generating from your mind will not sync in that perceptual state with the wavefields represented by what you would like to achieve. If you are determined to do everything you can to reach your goal in the belief that you *could* achieve it you will make some level of wave entanglement with the objective; but *know* you will get there and you make an entanglement with the field of *being* there. This allows you to manifest *being* there and achieve what you want. Mind/heart power operates on many levels. There is not believing you will achieve what you want; hoping you’ll achieve; being confident you’ll achieve; believing you’ll achieve; and top of the shop in terms of ensuring the goal – *knowing* you’ll achieve. I saw many young players when I was footballer with terrific talent who fell by the wayside because they didn’t believe – *know* – they would be a footballer. We talk of people ‘lacking confidence’ when in truth it goes deeper than that. I said as a kid that I was going to be a professional footballer. Few believed me. Lots of young people want to be footballers and only a few ever make it with the competition so fierce. I just *knew*. I didn’t hope – I *knew*. I could not explain why

I never doubted the outcome even when the statistical chances were so slim. What followed was a series of ‘lucky breaks’ that put me in the right place at the right time with the right performance in the right game. Was this really by lucky chance or my mind creating that through *knowing* the outcome making a wave entanglement with the wavefields that represented the outcome? There was, and is, more to this than just ‘positive thinking’ which is low-level when it comes to experience-manifestation. *Knowing* is way beyond that as I will discuss later and is connected to intuition – intuitive *knowing*.

What possessed you?



Figure 100: Possession by demonic entities is real – the classic image from *The Exorcist* movie.



Figure 101: The information field of the possessing entity is infused into the field of the possessed target who then, in the most extreme cases, starts to reflect holographically the visual image of the entity. (Image by Neil Hague.)

An extreme example of wave entanglement is known as ‘possession’. This is an age-old concept of entities, usually described as ‘demonic’, taking over a human body and dictating its behaviour and even the way it looks. We have seen this depicted in many horror movies including *The Exorcist* and the process has been described in every culture throughout known human history ([Fig 100](#) overleaf). There is a reason for that – it’s true. Mainstream science dismisses even the possibility. It doesn’t understand reality and has no knowledge base from which to explain how such things can happen. Given the ‘science’ motto is ‘if I can’t explain how it’s happening then it can’t be happening’ all that’s left is to deny that it’s happening. Never mind the mountain range of people’s personal experience of common phenomena over hundreds or thousands of years as we perceive ‘time’. Well, in fact, it *can* be explained, as the entire spectrum of the ‘paranormal’ can be, and simply, too. Science uses the term ‘paranormal’ for everything it cannot explain despite the said Himalaya-like compilation of personal experience and accounts, ancient and modern, to show that it’s real. Only scientifically-endorsed absurdity qualifies for the official verification stamp of ‘normal’. Possessing entities are wavefields of consciousness operating outside the band of visible light that are able to entangle with the wavefields of Body-Mind *if* – emphasise *if* – Body-Mind falls into compatible mental and emotional frequencies. This can happen in states of fear or depression and through the effect of drugs and extremes of alcohol consumption or by having sex with a possessed person which allows the entity to use the wave-connection of sexual energy to ‘jump’ across and make an energetic entanglement. The Cult employs sexual predators to target people it wants to open to entity possession and control. The entity instigates wavefield entanglement and can then start to

transfer its own information field and personality to the target (think of a computer virus ‘possessing’ a computer system). Friends and observers will notice the target starting to change in personality and behaviour and in the most extreme examples of possession even their facial features transform and distort. The consciousness/information field of the possessing entity transfers so much of its own wave information that the possessed person starts to take the holographic form of the entity ([Fig 101](#)). It doesn’t have to go this far for someone to be possessed and perceptually influenced and directed, but it absolutely happens. Satanists set out to *be* possessed in this way during rituals and the hierarchy of Satanism is dictated by the power of the possessing entities which means that the demonic hierarchy in the unseen becomes the satanic hierarchy in the seen. This is how the pecking order of the Cult is decided. Cult operatives who direct human society via The Web are actually non-human demonic entities hiding behind apparently human form. I say *apparently* because the major Cult families and operatives are really biological software programs and a form of what we would call today artificial intelligence, or AI. Their thought processes are AI and this is why those that direct the Cult are so intellectually advanced while having no empathy. Does a software program have empathy? No – it just acts according to data input. Anyone still wonder why the Cult has visited such evil on humanity with no emotional consequence? These biological AI software vehicles allow their hidden masters to manipulate human society without actually needing to enter the human frequency range. The ‘masters’ are also a form of AI as I will come to in detail later and the plan to assimilate human consciousness into AI through brain connections and other means is this AI ‘awareness’ seeking to empower itself by absorbing non-AI human minds. Their AI nature explains why they are so obsessed with technology which they are using to impose their control. They are *not* human and their consciousness fields are devoid of empathy and compassion so anything goes. Lower level servants of The Web (mostly ignorant of what is really going on) are possessed in less powerful ways, but still enough to turn them into advocates and manipulators of the Cult agenda even though they may not know the true background and origin of that agenda. For obvious reasons most possessed people don’t know they are possessed. The inner elite by contrast definitely do and glory in the fact. I have heard accounts of many wives and families of men who joined the Freemasons and began to change personality as they lost their former warmth, empathy and sense of justice, fairness and decency. The great majority of Freemasons don’t know that their weird initiation rituals are not just historic throwbacks to a bygone age. They are designed to create an energetic wavefield environment in which entities can attach to the initiate and the more elite the secret society and satanic group the more extreme this becomes. Satanic arts and voodoo are founded on these same wave connections which are exploited to adversely affect the target. Putting a pin in a doll used to symbolise a person and them feeling pain a long way distant is possible and explainable. The doll becomes the wave-surrogate of the person (a focus of *attention* representing the person which allows the instigation of wave entanglement) and through that connection their wavefield is disrupted and they feel the transmitted discomfort. The US military and many other countries have psychic assassination squads that connect with the wavefields of people they want to kill. They can stop their heart waves oscillating or affect them in other ways *unless* the target’s wavefield (mind/consciousness) is more powerful than theirs.

Taking shape and wavefield families

I have been widely and intensely ridiculed – and still am – for saying that the inner hierarchy and many lower operatives of the Cult are shapeshifters able to take both human and their prime non-human form through their dual hybrid *wavefield information fields*. I have said they can appear as either human or reptilian although reptilian is not the only entity-type involved. You can read about all this in detail in *Everything You Need To Know*. Ridicule from the media and much of the public comes once again from an ignorance of reality and given the way people are programmed to believe in a fake version of reality all their lives I can understand why. Funnily enough I don’t resent such people. I feel sad for them and I get why they dismiss what I say although it would be nice if they read one of my books before waving a

hand in arrogant dismissal of something they have chosen to know nothing about. The thought process goes like this: 'The world is solid and so it's impossible to shift between one shape and another – that Icke is clearly crazy.' If the world was *solid* all that would be correct, but it isn't. Shapeshifting does not happen 'physically'. It can't – there is no physical. Recall what I said earlier about what science calls the 'observer effect' and I call the 'decoder effect'. Apparent solidity is really a hologram which is decoded into manifestation by the mind of the *observer* from a wave information field. What we think we see as physical reality is really holographic reality which only exists in that form in the decoding processes of Body-Mind. Shapeshifting as a perceived 'physical' happening is really the observer decoding the human part of the hybrid field and then the field shifting to project the non-human part which the observer also decodes. What happens is a *wavefield* shift of information, but to the observer's mind the person appears to have *physically* shifted from one form to another as one field is decoded and then the other. Here is a perfect example of how if you suppress the true nature of reality you can manipulate great swathes of the target population to dismiss as impossible what is actually happening.



Figure 102: The reptilian brain or R-complex has an enormous impact on human perception and behaviour.

I have written at great length over the decades about Cult bloodlines that have interbred since 'ancient times'. These are best-known as 'royalty' and 'aristocracy' although they now overwhelmingly operate through the dark suit professions of politics, government, banking, business and media. Designer procreation passes on the hybrid wavefield blueprint (biological AI software program) which involves a duel information field. One part is infused with human wavefield information and the other is non-human, often, although far from always, reptilian in nature. Observe reptile behaviour and you'll see how software-like it is. I have witnessed a number of crocodile/alligator presentations at wildlife parks where the computer-like 'press-enter' nature of their behaviour has been highlighted. Royal and aristocratic bloodlines (wavefields) are called 'bluebloods' and the term illustrates the difference between these families and the rest of the human population. The whole theme of royal bloodlines with a 'divine right to rule' comes from their origin as the bloodlines of the 'gods' and you find this theme across the world. Ancient Chinese emperors claiming the right to rule through their genetic (wavefield) descent from the 'serpent gods' is only one example. 'Divine' right to rule has been associated with the Christian god while it should far more appropriately refer to the Sanskrit 'Deva' (female Devi) which is defined as 'a shining one or supernatural being'. The ancients often described their non-human 'gods' as the 'Shining Ones'. Deva comes from the Latin '*deus*', or 'god', and '*divus*' from which derive the English words 'divine' and 'deity'. Cult bloodlines were given their (divine) right to rule by 'supernatural gods' – the non-human force behind human control. The Biblical story of the 'sons of God' who interbred with the daughters of men to create a hybrid race called the 'Nephilim' is describing the instigation of the hybrid bloodlines and the Cult also infiltrated human genetics in general. It is no accident of evolution that one of the most influential parts of the human brain in dictating behaviour is called the reptilian brain, or R-complex, which absolutely has a 'press-enter' reaction system as we'll see ([Fig 102](#)). All the background can be found in detail in my other books. The original text from which 'sons of God' was translated in fact

referred to sons of the gods, plural. These ‘sons’ and ‘gods’ are symbolic of the non-human entities which hijacked human society long ago and still impose their will and agenda through the Cult ... *run by the Nephilim bloodline families* which are the AI biological software programs.

When populations began to reject overt rule by bloodline ‘royal’ dictatorships the Nephilim continued and expanded their control by moving into the realms of politics, banking, business, media and so on where they remain predominant to this day. They continue to interbreed through covertly arranged marriages to ensure the Nephilim bloodline software information program is not diluted or deleted by interbreeding with the ‘common people’. They may not overwhelmingly be official royalty any longer but they act as if they are, They believe they are special and above humans and have the ‘divine’ right to control everything. Nephilim bloodlines now operating through dark suit and uniform professions are orchestrators of The Web serving the interests of the Spider operating in frequencies outside human sight. Non-human entities which I refer to as the Spider are the same entities that the Old Testament calls collectively ‘God’ and other cultures around the world call ‘the gods’. Hence the Old Testament ‘God’ is described in nature and behaviour in very different ways to the New Testament ‘God’. A few overt Nephilim ‘royalty’ survive, most notably the British royal family which provides the ongoing UK and Commonwealth head of state on the basis purely of *bloodline* succession. I have written widely about the Nephilim human-reptilian hybrid nature of the British royals and naturally attracted a blaze of ridicule for my trouble. I don’t care. I am interested in the truth not a pat on the back and a Facebook thumbs-up. I do not wish to be considered ‘normal’ when that word with regard to human society is another term for clinical insanity. The fake royals live in ongoing mega-privilege off the backs of the British population as the entire Nephilim network lives off the backs of the global population under terms like the One-percent. They are Cult bloodline human-reptilian shapeshifters and if people don’t like that or accept that then they must do the other thing which is fine by me. They should know, however, that no amount of ridicule and condemnation is going to stop me saying it.

The bloodlines around the world were behind the emergence of major religions that serve their interests of perception control. There is no coincidence in many major Cult bloodlines emerging from the Middle East and ancient Egypt, Sumer and Babylon – the latter two now called Iraq – when from this region came three of the world’s major religions, Christianity, Judaism and Islam. These have so much in common and recognise many of the same deities and heroes. The differences are emphasised, however, to allow centuries of divide and rule between them and that continues to this day to the ongoing benefit of the Cult which created them. Philosopher Alan Watts pointed out how religion is a copy of the monarchical societies from which they emerged with followers kneeling, bowing and prostrating themselves to ‘God’ as they did to the monarch. The Christian ‘God’ sits on a throne and terms such as Basilica mean ‘House of the King’. We have Biblical descriptions of ‘Jesus’ and ‘God’ as ‘King of Kings’ and ‘Lord of Lords’ and Christianity and other religions have the same follower-God relationship that ‘subjects’ had with monarchs. This version of ‘God’ worship is just an extension of monarchical (Cult bloodline) control.

It can't be true? Oh yes, it can

Suppressing the nature of reality requires the constant dismissal and alleged debunking of any phenomena that cannot be explained by Cult-controlled mainstream science. It obviously follows in the public mind that if things are happening or possible that science claims can’t happen the version of reality pedalled by science can’t be all there is to know. This realisation has the potential to open minds to other possibilities and that’s something the Cult wants to avoid at all costs. Take astrology which originates in the ancient world and claims that the movements of planets and stars influence human life and behaviour. Astrologers claim these forces have very a significant impact on the personalities of people through the astrological sequences at work at the time of birth (some believe conception). I will have more to say about this when I address the power of expanded consciousness to override not only

astrological wave influences but all the others that come at us today with the speed of machine gun fire. I emphasise that astrological frequencies are *influences* and don't have to impose upon us unless we allow them to through choice or five-sense unconsciousness. The foundation of astrology and how it works can be simply explained and that's one reason why mainstream science is so instantly dismissive. The 'scientific' mind is obsessed with complexity. Any answer must be complex or it can't be true – 'I mean look at how much my degree in physiological, physicochemical and physiopathological complexity cost me.' Genius is not to understand complexity; it is to see the simple hidden by complexity. It is to see the whole and not only the parts. Mainstream science is so obsessed with the twigs that it can't see the forest. Serbian-American scientist Nikola Tesla (1856-1943), who was way ahead of the science mainstream, said:

The scientists of today think deeply instead of clearly. One must be sane to think clearly, but one can think deeply and be quite insane.

Scientist Robert Lanza put it this way:

When it comes down to it, today's science is amazingly good at figuring out how the parts work. The clock has been taken apart, and we can accurately count the number of teeth in each wheel and gear, and ascertain the rate at which the flywheel spins. We know that Mars rotates in 24 hours, 37 minutes, and 23 seconds, and this information is as solid as it comes. What eludes us is the big picture.

We provide interim answers, we create exquisite new technologies from our ever-expanding knowledge of physical processes, we dazzle ourselves with our applications of newfound discoveries. We do badly in just one area, which unfortunately encompasses all the bottom-line issues: What is the nature of this thing we call reality, the Universe as a whole?



Figure 103: Astrology is founded on the impact of wave entanglement between frequency waves of planets and stars and frequency waves of people, animals and all life. See Neil Hague Colour Section.

Astrology could hardly be more straightforward when you see this big picture. All form is a hologram decoded by the observer from wavefields and that 'all' includes planets and stars which are conscious wavefields emitting different frequencies of information – the 'music of the spheres'. They entangle with wavefields of other planets, stars and people and this is most powerful between heavenly bodies when they are in various alignments. Astrologers refer to these as conjunctions, squares, trines, oppositions, and the like. These alignments create wave entanglements which are collectively more powerful than the individual parts and amplify their impact on other wavefields they entangle with *including humanity*. Waves emitting from planets and stars, especially combinations of them in alignment, impact on the

human wavefield and the trillions of cells and their genes encoded with a myriad of instructions that affect health and behaviour depending on whether they are active or inactive ([Fig 103](#)). At birth/conception (a combination of both probably) the wavefield of the child's Body-Mind is imprinted with the astrological wave blueprint generated from the positions of the planets and stars. The blueprint will be different in one period than another as the heavenly bodies change their wave relationships and these periods are designated as astrological 'signs'. The astrological frequency field imprint on someone born in 'Taurus' will be different from a 'Leo' and even the 'time' in the day makes some difference with the astrological field constantly changing. Different astrological imprints will interact differently with ongoing astrological sequences throughout their life to give us the esoteric art of astrology. People born in the same astrological periods can have aptitudes for certain jobs or abilities and this is a reason why ([Fig 104](#)).



Figure 104: Our unique wave patterns, influenced by planetary wavefields at the moment of birth/conception, interact with wavefields of planets and stars through a human lifetime to provide the basis of astrology. The 'heavens' are once again *within* us. (Image Neil Hague.)

This background applies with the Chinese Zodiac and its years of the monkey, rat, ox, tiger, rabbit, dragon etc. and other cultural methods of reading the effect of astrological information waves. Consciousness in certain wave states can also be attracted to 'incarnate' through entanglement in life situations and locations that sync with that state. This would provide the wavefield basis of a reincarnation cycle in which one 'life' dictates the nature of the 'next' one. Reincarnation is not what it seems, however, in that with time an illusion and everything happening in the same NOW there is obviously more to know about the perception of a reincarnated 'sequence' in time. The Sun has an absolutely central impact on humanity ('astrologically') by bombarding us with photons (information) which are emitted by the Sun as ... *waves*. Photons (sunlight) are transformed (decoded) by cholesterol in the skin into the vital vitamin D. Cholesterol has many other crucial functions and the brain contains 20 percent of the body's cholesterol which is an essential component of cell membranes involved in cell signalling. Alzheimer's and dementia which have become an epidemic in recent times are names to describe brain cell signals misfiring and miss-communicating. You will have noticed the Cult-instigated systematic demonisation of cholesterol and the pressure to reduce it through changing food habits and taking ongoing statin drugs to do the job. Is this another coincidence? Not a chance. There is one other point to make here about the Sun which is relevant to everything else. We define the Sun by the circle of light in the sky when that is only the part that we can see. The Sun's influence is transmitted across the solar system in the form of waves and photons which are as much part of the Sun as the perceived ball of fire. Everything from a planet to a human has a frequency field that we can see and a far greater wavefield 'aura' that we don't see. The more powerful the mind and expanded awareness the bigger its auric range and influence.

I was just thinking the same

'Paranormal' telepathy and psychic phenomena are explained through wave connections. Forget about 'distance' which is an illusion of holographic decoded reality. Everything you think you 'see' in the night sky in the form that you think you 'see' exists only in your 'head' – Body-Mind decoding systems. What happened to stars billions of light years and trillions of miles away when they are located in that form between our ears?? As the near-death experiencer said of reality beyond the body: 'There is no time, there is no sequence of events, no such thing as limitation, *of distance*, of period, of place. I could be anywhere I wanted to be simultaneously.' We are *waves* and we can be anywhere we like and in as many 'places' as we choose once we are released from the focused attention of Body-Mind. Other levels of us are already operating simultaneously all over Creation while this wave of that same consciousness is having a human experience. Still frightened of death? Still think you are 'insignificant' Ethel on the checkout or Bill at the call centre?? Our waves can connect with other waves and through that entanglement exchange information with those on the other side of the world or in another dimension of reality. This is called telepathy, intuition, premonition and mind reading. Experiments galore have proved this to be real and it is widely used in covert operations by intelligence agencies and the military. The same wave connections allow plants, trees and the natural world to communicate with each other and us with them. Yes we can 'talk' to trees and plants. While they don't understand human language they feel the vibrations of the sound waves from the vocal chords and the waves we emit in general. They know love, danger, friend or foe, by *feeling* it. People with close relationships attune with each other's wavefields more powerfully and telepathy between them is more likely. One will say something and the other will respond with 'I was just thinking that'. There are endless stories of people thinking of someone followed by the phone ringing with the person on the other end. Others have premonitions that a fate has befallen a loved one which turns out to be true. 'Primitive' ancients knew about this, hence the origin of the term 'bush telegraph' when tribal peoples became aware of happenings 'far away' and could communicate telepathically with their family and friends back in the village while out on a hunt. We are all capable of this – *it is how we are supposed to be* – but perceptual programming has blocked these natural processes in most people. We need to bring them back.



Figure 105: Psychics and mediums are connecting their awareness with realities beyond the human five-sense frequency band. (Image Neil Hague.)

Psychic communication is another form of telepathy in which the psychic or medium attunes (entangles) with the wavefields of 'people' who have passed from human reality or with the wavefields of people still here. You might have seen TV programmes about 'psychic detectives' in which they solve crimes that have defeated the police. They do this by wave-attuning with the criminal and/or the deceased or missing victim and access what happened from that information source. This is sometimes done by going to the location of a crime. The wave-encoded representation of what happened will still be there in the energetic field. All events and actions are recorded in wavefields and have to be when all

events and actions *are* wavefields. In this way houses can be ‘haunted’ by fields of information containing happenings there. You could think of it as a wavefield recording like a CD or DVD and the more emotion involved in the events the more powerful will be the recording. Many ‘haunted’ places are not the result of discarnate entities, but happenings encoded in the wavefield like people hearing the ‘sounds of battle’ at the scene of some historic mass carnage. Psychics are not reading the ‘past’ or the ‘future’ when neither exists. They are reading wave patterns in the NOW. The most open psychics and mediums can connect with expanded states of consciousness that can communicate phenomenal insight about reality and the human plight ([Fig 105](#)). This happened to me in my ayahuasca experience and on endless other occasions far less dramatically. I say endless. It’s pretty much every day and mostly this is in the form of intuitively ‘knowing’ rather than hearing words. Wavefield information from these sources is decoded by the brain in the same way as human speech and when this happens it can sometimes sound like ‘voices in the head’. People are often condemned as crazy when they describe this experience, but when a friend or workmate talks to you what do you hear? Voices in your head! It’s the same brain information processing from a different source. Mediums can allow their bodies to be used as temporary vehicles for disembodied entities to speak through them. The entity instigates a wave entanglement strong enough to speak directly to the brain of the medium and the communication is decoded into words. I have witnessed situations where the connection is so powerful that the medium’s voice changes and even their face is transformed. Those that believe shapeshifting is not possible should have seen what I have on these occasions. The process is a form of temporary possession. The difference is that the medium makes the choice to allow that to happen rather than having it imposed upon them. Two things I would advise are to check out any psychic or medium you are thinking of contacting and research their history, accuracy or otherwise, with previous clients. Not everyone who calls themselves psychic is any good and remember that just because an entity is speaking through a psychic/medium does not mean they have your best interests at heart. Death is no cure for ignorance or manipulation. I am seriously discerning in these situations. You have to be or you can get scammed.

Blimey, what a coincidence!

Synchronicity is another wave phenomenon when people experience ‘amazing coincidences’ that make no sense when compared with statistical possibility. ‘Wow – fancy seeing you here – what are the chances of that?’ Well, actually, very good if you make a wavefield entanglement with the location and each other. This is how synchronicity works and people describe such experiences as ‘meant to be’. Sometime they *are* in the sense of wavefields being pre-encoded to meet as part of a planned life experience. Wavefields can be two people or a person, a situation, information or location. Other times ‘meant to be’ is simply ‘made to happen’ by the synchronisation and entanglement of wave patterns generated by the mind waves (perceptions) of the parties. Synchronicity has been a central feature of my life. I could not have compiled the enormous library of information that I have in the last 30 years unless constant synchronicity had led me to it. Many have described how they were perusing in a bookshop when one of my books dropped off a shelf next to them. This would appear to be ‘spooky’ and to others just a coincidence when it has happened too many times to be explained that way. The person perusing is a wavefield and so is the book. If something in the person’s subconscious field wants the conscious mind to look at information an electromagnetic wave connection is made that pulls the book from the shelf to say: ‘Hey, look at this.’ It can also be that someone searching for understanding who has a wavefield reflecting that intent entangles with information that will aid that understanding through a symbiotic frequency connection – ‘seek and you shall find’. People who begin to ‘seek’ often experience people and information ‘coincidentally’ coming into their lives that relate to what they ‘seek’. This has been happening to me for 30 years. Another example is when you view a row of books and your attention goes to one of them even though you don’t know at first what it’s about. The subconscious constantly communicates to the conscious mind in synchronicities, coincidences and ‘paranormal’ experiences and

you can learn to read the signs and symbols just as clearly as you do words. I call it the language of life. Everything that happens is telling us something. The trick is to see that and grasp what the language of life is saying. When people go through the process of awakening from Body-Mind into expanded states of consciousness they notice far greater synchronicity in their lives. Expanded consciousness generates both more powerful wave communication and at a higher and wider frequency which means we can make entanglement connections with a vastly greater range of other wavefields – people, places, situations, information, insight. We experience this as ‘My God, what a coincidence’ when it is really wave-magnetism at work. As your frequency quickens from expanding your awareness there comes a corresponding increase in the speed and scale of information processing. What would have given you a headache trying to understand before suddenly becomes clear and simple. A faster speed of processing can influence your perception of ‘time’ which is really the speed that you process information.

Speaking personally

My own conscious awakening got seriously underway when I was in a news shop in the spring of 1990 and what happened brings all these themes together. I was standing at the door when the atmosphere suddenly changed which I now know was a field of electromagnetic wave energy. My feet began to feel as if magnets (electromagnetic wave energy) were pulling them to the ground and I heard a strong thought (wave entanglement communication) pass through my mind which said: ‘Go and look at the books on the far side.’ I walked across the shop in a bewildered state to the single shelf of books and my attention immediately locked on (made a wave connection with) a title called *Mind to Mind*. I read the blurb on the back to find it was the biography of a professional psychic, Betty Shine. ‘Synchronistically’ I had been having the experience for the previous year of feeling a presence around me (wavefield of consciousness) even when I was in an apparently empty room. This became ever more powerful and tangible. It reached a peak just before my experience in the news shop and encouraged me to meet with Betty Shine to see if she would ‘pick up’ what was happening around me. I told her nothing except that I had arthritis and perhaps her ‘hands-on’ healing (an exchange of wave energy) might help. The first two visits were uneventful and then on the third while she was working ‘hands-on’ near my left knee I felt something akin to a spider’s web on my face (electromagnetic wave energy) and I remembered reading in her book that when ‘spirits’ are seeking to communicate you can feel this web-like sensation. Other dimensions of reality connect with us through electromagnetic entanglement. I said nothing but within a few seconds Betty threw her head back and said: ‘My God, this is powerful. I’ll have to close my eyes for this one.’ She said that a figure in her mind (wave projection from another reality) was communicating information to her to pass on to me. I was a BBC television presenter in 1990 and a spokesman for the Green Party. Now I was being told that I would go out on a world stage and ‘reveal great secrets’. A communication said: ‘One man cannot change the world, but one man can communicate the message that can change the world.’ Everything communicated to me that day and the following week, which I have detailed in other books, has happened or is happening. From the moment I left Betty’s home that morning my life became a constant series of synchronicities and ‘coincidences’. It had been before when I looked back, but now it became conscious. Synchronistic ‘coincidence’ has since taken me on an incredible journey of discovery which continues today. This book is the latest instalment.

Life-plans

Life is not what we are told that it is and neither is humanity ‘alone’. Creation is teeming with life – Creation is life made manifest. Consciousness beyond the myopic visual limits of visible light guides (or manipulates) other consciousness having a brief human experience. If you become entrapped in purely five-sense reality the connection to high-frequency benevolence can be lost to low-frequency malevolence. This is the goal of the Cult and its other-dimensional masters. Life is not random chance. Choices become consequences which become new choices and there are specific experiences that we set out to have

although manipulated perceptions can get in the way. This is why we are born to specific parents in specific situations and locations. It is why we can choose to enter the cycle at a certain astrological point to underscore the direction we plan to take. Information can be encoded into our wavefields to trigger certain events and happenings. I recognise those situations clearly when I look at my own life. My arthritis came out of nowhere at age 15 and finished my football career at age 21 to lead me into journalism and all that followed. Without the arthritis I would not have had the same life and I would certainly not have activated so much determination so early to overcome adversity that would come in rather handy later on. Mass ridicule that I went through in the 1990s set me free of the fear of what other people thought of me and so I had no problem talking and writing openly a few years later about seriously far-out subjects that would attract mass ridicule and abuse. I didn't know the far-out information was coming when the initial ridicule was in full-swing while other levels of me did and that which has been guiding me all these years from other realities. Freedom through extreme experience from the fear of what others say was preparation for what would follow. Life is not about any single experience. It is a long series of experiences which are all connected either through the choices that we make from the five-sense perspective or through pre-birth planning. The latter can be felt as a sense of 'destiny' and I guess it is in some ways if you take destiny to be something you set out to experience or achieve. Whatever happens, it is *just an experience* and there'll be another one along after that. Pre-birth planning can even pre-decide when you 'die' by encoding the moment when mind will free itself from entanglement with the body. Someone may die 'young' from a rare heart condition when the clock was ticking on that from birth because it was encoded in the wavefield. This may seem hard to believe from a human perspective and that's understandable. When you are free from prison cell perceptions of Body-Mind and its five senses life does not look the same. You know that life is all there is, death is an illusion and a human life only a very temporary experience.

Paranormal is perfectly normal (it's the 'normal' that's not)



Figure 106: Tarot cards and rune stones are electromagnetic fields which reflect the electromagnetic field of the person involved and what is happening in your field is most likely – though not certain – to manifest as a holographic experience. (Image Neil Hague.)

The wave nature of reality dissolves all the classic paranormal 'mysteries'. How do people stop watches with their mind? Thought/intention waves focused on the watch entangle with the wavefield of the watch and affect its function. Why do you pick card 'A' and not 'B' in a Tarot card reading to allow your 'future' to be discerned? Well, first it's not your future, only a sequence of possibilities and probabilities that can be identified by a skilled reader from the cards you choose and in what order. Even so, that's still crazy, right? No, it's not. The whole thing is happening on the wavefield level. Tarot cards are wavefields that represent certain states of mind, emotion and possibility/probability (frequencies). Your wavefield syncs with cards that represent the frequencies of thoughts, emotions and possibility/probability that exist in your field. They make an electromagnetic frequency connection between hand and card to portray what

is happening in your field as a series of symbolic cards laid out on the table ([Fig 106](#)). Rune stones symbolising different perceptual states and possibilities work the same way as do other forms of divination. I have had the runes read for me by shamans and the African version of bones carved into different symbols. You are asked to first put your hand over a basket of stones to sync and entangle your wavefield with theirs. Hands are a powerful centre for energetic exchange. The runes, or bones, are then thrown on the floor and the way they land in relation to each other is read by the shaman. To the closed mind it seems like gobbledegook until you realise that where the stones fell and their relationship was decided before they were thrown by the connections that were made with the person's electromagnetic field. The stones then reflect that field on the floor and can be read by someone who knows what they are doing (the quality of the reader is vital). Numerology is the reading of people through numbers. I have described how wavefields are decoded into *digital* holograms. The hologram is a digital version of the information in the wavefield. Numerologists and psychics are reading different forms of the same information. I have had psychic and numerology readings close together by different people as part of my research and the information I was given was in theme exactly the same. The synchronicity generated by wavefields can be seen with recurring numbers in people's lives. The number 8 seems to follow me around and it's been my favourite number since I was a child. I have lived at number 8 for two decades and it 'found' me not the other way round. Numbers are digital versions of frequencies and a recurring number is a recurring frequency. Language is a manifestation of both wave frequencies and numbers. Hebrew is very much a numbers language with words formed with particular number values that are, in turn, representations of particular frequencies. In this way language itself and its use is a frontline source of perceptual programming.

A great deal of paranormal phenomena happens via electrical systems. Lights dim or turn on and off, a music player starts or stops, and so on. Wavefields are electrical/electromagnetic in our reality and you can feel this when hairs on the back of your neck stand up in a spooky situation when an unseen wavefield entity or 'ghost' is around you. The same happens with an excited crowd generating a mass of collective wavefield energy. 'Atmosphere' in a sports stadium ('the atmosphere was electric') is the result of electromagnetic waves emitted by the crowd and through entanglement becoming collectively more powerful than the parts. Electrical circuitry can therefore be affected by waves generated by people or by entities projecting electrical waves across realities in what is referred to as a 'haunting'. Some of this manipulation can be malevolent while most of it is only perceived to be so by those who fear the unknown. The Cult seeks to keep the population in a state of unknowing so there is more unknown to fear. Witness how religion has been used to manipulate its followers to fear the unknown as the 'occult' when the word merely means 'hidden'. Such hidden knowledge can be used for good or ill. What people fear they tend to try to avoid – in this case knowledge that will set them free. My brother, Paul, experienced some otherwise unexplainable electrical and number happenings and 'coincidences' in the days after my mother died. This is a way that loved ones try to tell us – 'Hey, it's okay, there is no death'. On the first night of my ayahuasca experience in Brazil I was lying on a mattress in the pitch black in a big round hut in the rainforest. I was alone except for a facilitator overseeing the process who had taken ayahuasca many times. In fact, I think he had pretty much smoked and drunk the rainforest. He was playing music on a CD as the ayahuasca effect kicked in and I felt an incredibly powerful energy pouring in an arc from the centre of my chest (heart chakra) and into my forehead area (third-eye chakra). It was like a sensation of hands gripping my chest and forehead. The music stopped and then started again as if the electricity had been turned off and on. Then one of the strip lights illuminated followed by a second and third. I wondered why the facilitator was messing with the music and lights. When I looked he was sitting near to me and nowhere near either the music player or the light switch. Even if he had been the lights would have switched on all together around the hut, not as one, two or three. Electromagnetic energy that I was so powerfully feeling was affecting electrical circuits and that is what happens during paranormal events. One of the scariest examples for people is so-called poltergeist activity when

'physical' objects can move and even fly around the room. If we approach this from the perspective I am describing this, too, can be explained. 'Physical objects' are not physical. They are decoded holographic projections of wavefields which other fields can entangle with and make 'move'. This can be done by 'other-world' non-human entities, although moving objects of energetic density can take a lot of energy. Crazy as it may sound, this can also be caused *unknowingly* by humans. I have read many times how a common theme of poltergeist activity is the involvement of adolescent girls going through emotional trauma. On a wavefield level they would be emitting chaotic, imbalanced and potentially powerful emotional frequencies that could certainly entangle with other fields in the room and create mayhem that is blamed on a 'poltergeist'. During 'hauntings' people describe how the location becomes suddenly very cold and this is the 'ghost' (consciousness in another reality) sucking energy in the form of heat out of the field to gather the energetic power that it takes to communicate between realities. When people report feeling chills down the spine this is the electromagnetic field of an entity impacting on the central nervous system.

On and on we could go with perfectly simple explanations for apparently impossible happenings and events – if we clear our minds of the fake version of reality spoon-fed to us throughout our lives by the Mainstream Everything controlled by the Cult. Now consider the fact that politics, governments, corporations, science, medicine, academia, media, and all the other global institutions are making decisions every day affecting the direction of human society based on a world that doesn't actually *exist* except as a decoded illusion. WTF? No wonder they make such a mess of it. How can that not be the case when a world in which everything connects to everything else is perceived as nothing connecting to anything else? The dream is the dreamer and the dreamer is the dream. When we forget that we can create a nightmare.

CHAPTER FOUR

What is love?

Have enough courage to trust love one more time and always one more time – Maya Angelou

This is not a book that simply says: ‘Love is the answer.’ It is, by the way, because everything comes from that, but I want to lay out why it is the answer from the context of how reality and consciousness interact.

From *The Answer* come all the other answers, plural, to the range of challenges facing humanity and which humanity has brought upon itself. In the end when you break it down they have *all* been brought on ourselves through the way we have allowed others to dictate perception and self-identity. I am not referring, in terms of *The Answer*, to the human version of ‘love’ which is mostly founded on mutual attraction. I talked to a mind-control expert in the United States many years ago who said he could make two people who would otherwise pass in the street without a second glance fall deeply in (attraction) ‘love’ purely by stimulating certain chemicals in their brain (chemicals = wavefield frequencies). Love in its deepest sense goes way beyond: ‘Cor, fancy her, fancy him.’ This is why attraction ‘love’ can be so fleeting and temporary. It doesn’t have to be if other expressions of love are involved, but it definitely can as we see every day. Commitment to a lifetime together in the flush of attraction at the altar can be gone within weeks and certainly years. With no deeper love to maintain the connection the relationship unravels often in hostility. What happened to the words of love spoken so apparently genuinely at the vicar’s prompting? They were illusory and not founded on *real* love at all. Attraction love is captured in phrases like I love you *when* and I love you *because*. Love in its true and infinite sense does not love only *when* or *because*. It just loves infinitely and this love takes appropriately infinite forms. Sharing the same bed is only one of them and not even close to the most important. Love must also be freely given and not demanded because love is only love when it is given freely. ‘I want you to love me’ and ‘I’m trying to love you’ just doesn’t work.

Chemical ‘love’ in which the mind generates chemicals connected to ‘physical’ attraction can indeed be a manifestation of Infinite Love expressing itself through intimate relationships. The point is that ‘physical’ relationships are only one expression of love. We experience love most potently in human discourse as friendship. Couples attracted ‘physically’ that develop a deep friendship can stay together for a lifetime. ‘Physical’ attraction ‘love’ may fade, but friendship love – Infinite Love – never does. Its depth can be seen in this saying: ‘A friend is someone who walks into a room when everyone else is walking out.’ The friend may not agree with what you have done and may even be appalled by it, but they stand at your side anyway and say ‘how can I help?’ Friendship connects through the heart while purely attraction chemical ‘love’ prefers the groin. Okay, it can be both and that’s perfect. If it’s only the latter the clock is already ticking. To articulate this misrepresentation of love we have to employ terms like Infinite Love and unconditional love (without the ‘when’ and ‘because’) to describe what we mean. If

we only love 'when' and 'because' we don't really love at all. That is not love. It's a contractual arrangement of cause and effect – you do this and you get that in return. Sign here. Infinite Love is both cause *and* effect. It has no 'when' or 'because'. The nicest and most loving of people can be arseholes sometimes and real love goes on loving despite not liking the behaviour. I am not saying that people should stay in a close relationship with someone being constantly unpleasant. I mean to realise that they do what they do because love is absent both for others and themselves. Evil is the absence of love by the evil-doer for themselves and those they affect. I have spent 30 years exposing the psychopaths directing human society, but I don't feel hatred towards them. What would be the point for a start? Hatred would affect me, not them, and distort my own perception of reality and wavefield state. What you hate you become and what you fight you become and we see this everywhere there is hatred and perceived 'resistance'. Your hate makes a wavefield entanglement with what you hate and the same with what you fight. If I hated the Cult I would make a wave connection with the mega-hate that is the Cult. You become what you lovelessly oppose through this wavefield (information) interaction and entanglement. Look at all the 'anti-fascists' who behave like fascists as a perfect example of what I mean. Withdrawing love from those we don't agree with changes nothing and condemns us to more of the same.

Anti-hate Anti-love

The demise of love (though there is still seriously plenty hidden from the daily headlines) can be seen in the ubiquitous 'anti-hate' movement in all its apparently endless and constantly replicating forms. Note they are not 'pro-love' groups, but 'anti-hate', and 'anti-hate' is not love. 'Anti-haters' attack perceived 'haters' while having hate on their faces and violence on their minds. Other 'anti-haters', including many ultra-Zionist groups, set out to crush their targets financially, legally and by deleting their freedom of speech. Their closed hearts allow their hatred free-reign while couched in the virtue-signalled hypocrisy of opposing hate. Where is the love in such groups? 'Anti-hate' is not love – it's just another term for hate. The fact that the Cult in the shadows with a malevolent agenda for humanity is covertly funding and orchestrating these anti-hate hate groups is no coincidence. For the few to impose their will on billions requires the billions to be divided, and so ruled, and to be manipulated to enslave each other. The Cult achieves this by creating groups, factions and belief systems that can be played off against each other in violent conflict and battles for supremacy. 'Identity politics' is the latest version of the technique that religion has served so well throughout human history. What are identity politics and the associated Climate Change Cult if not modern-day religions that the manipulators seek to be *one* religion through what they call 'intersectionality'? This is defined as: 'The complex, cumulative way in which the effects of multiple forms of discrimination (such as racism, sexism, and classism) combine, overlap, or intersect especially in the experiences of marginalised individuals or groups.' This means from the manipulators point of view: Play different identity groups against each other on detail, but also unite them behind a common goal (your goal) of overturning society and imposing your long-planned blueprint for global centralised control and tyranny. Take the blinkers off and you see that very world emerging before our eyes day after day, especially through the Climate Cult founded on the human-caused global warming hoax, and more than anything the 'virus pandemic' scam I will be exposing in detail later. To secure the desired outcome you must create division and conflict and to do that you need an absence of love. In other words you need to transfer the psychopathic mentality of Cult manipulators to the target population which means sucking love out of human discourse in the way that love has been sucked out of Cult discourse. You transfer *your* mentality to your targets and make them an extension of you. Conflicts and injustices that plague human society are founded on the absence of love and its key components like empathy, the fail-safe mechanism in human interaction. Empathy is: 'The ability to share someone else's feelings or experiences by imagining what it would be like to be in that person's situation.' If you do this and feel something of what they must be feeling in the light of your actions those actions will change. If you can't feel empathy then anything goes. You have no emotional consequence no matter

what the extremes of your behaviour. We don't have to feel what others feel indefinitely. That would just drain us and mirror their energetic state. It takes only a brief empathic connection to either change our own behaviour or support someone affected by others. Without these key aspects of love such as empathy and compassion the Cult is emotionally free to drive its agenda for humanity. The Cult can be described in these terms: The *absence of love*. I have long referred to Cult personnel as psychopaths and that is spot-on accurate when the foundation trait of a psychopath is ... *the absence of empathy* which is the absence of *love*.

Loveless 'money'



Figure 107: Control money in the world as currently structured and you largely control freedom by controlling choice. (Image by Gareth Icke.)

The global banking system created by the Cult is, as you would expect, psychopathic as an extension of its creators' mentality. It is a manifestation of the absence of love and could not exist in its current form with an infusion of love. Banking is an organised crime network based on lending people 'money' that doesn't exist (except in theory) called 'credit' and charging interest on it. 'Credit' is illusory 'money' or figures on a screen that banks are allowed to create out of fresh air through something called fractional reserve lending. In simple language this means they can lend 'money' they don't actually have through a conjuring trick called 'credit' and control those they can lure into their lair of debt and criminal activity. The overwhelming majority of money in circulation begins life with private banks issuing fake 'money' called 'credit'. The Cult created-and-controlled banking system has the power to decide how much 'money' is in circulation by how many loans of 'credit' that it makes. This, in turn, dictates if we have an economic boom or collapse. Take 'money' out of circulation by reducing the availability of credit and you make it impossible for many to repay loans. There is not enough 'money', theoretical or otherwise, in circulation to do that no matter how hard debtors may work. Remember they called the economic collapse after 2008 the '*credit crunch*'. When people default because of the actions of the banking and financial system the *same system* can seize the possessions offered as collateral on the loan of 'credit'. In this way tangible wealth is constantly accumulated in exchange for non-existent 'money'. It's an incredible scam which political parties never challenge when it is a very foundation of human control and enslavement. Why do they never commit to a country creating its *own* money interest free and lending that to the population interest free? Simple – the Cult with its tentacles throughout finance and politics does not want that to happen and in my experience most politicians don't understand how banking works anyway. I expose all this in great detail in other books and its coldly-calculated effect is to entrap the population in debt which many can't repay. When that happens the bankers get their debtors' wealth in the form of their home, business, land and possessions in exchange for a 'loan' that does *not exist* except as a computer file – 'credit'. The virus '*pandemic*' hoax has offered the banks and financial system the opportunity to send in the hounds and vultures like never before to tear at the entrails of human misery taking their homes, businesses and resources for not paying back 'credit' loans amid the global financial catastrophe which Cult actions through idiot governments instigated. This is by calculated design, not random chance. This credit deception has been happening for many centuries and has led to

the wealth of the world being stolen from the population by a microscopic few. Hence we have the ‘One-percent’. Control ‘money’ (especially its *theoretical* creation in the form of ‘credit’) and you control choice which means you control freedom or rather delete it. Freedom is the ability to make choices and in today’s Cult-created structure of human interaction ‘money’ (who has it and who doesn’t) dictates who has choice and who doesn’t ... who has *freedom* and who doesn’t ([Fig 107](#)). Ponder that in the light of the events of 2020. Choice-dictatorship is enforced by banks and other financial money-controllers such as hedge funds and private equity operations. We return to love and the absence of it. Could anyone coming from a place of love ever conceive, let alone impose, such a system of financial control purely for personal gain, power and omnipotence? Empathy would prevent them. Could they throw families onto the street for the inability to repay loans of ‘credit’ that do not, have never, and will never exist except as a concept? Could bankers even do this to families in properties the bank did not lend ‘money’ to buy? This happened to so many after the crash of 2008 when banks and corrupt court systems forged documentation to secure eviction from homes with which they had absolutely no contractual connection. Love would never and could never do that. Psychopaths (the absence of love) most certainly could and get a sexual high for doing so. Here we have a very pillar of human control – the financial system dictating choice and thus freedom – which is built from its foundations on the absence of love.

Designer ‘love’



Figure 108: Entertainment – yes. Everything else – illusion.

Then there is what I call personalised or designer ‘love’ when you have genuine empathy with those around you like family and friends while not extending that to anyone beyond that circle. You see this when those with family or other connections attract empathy for their plight while those being bombed on the other side of the world do not. I have seen the ‘love your family’ mindset cheering or even demanding the mass bombing of other families far away just as I constantly see anti-haters seeking to crush and destroy those they don’t agree with. These are all examples of designer ‘love’ which basically means ‘loving’ only those close to you or those that think like you do. This is not Infinite Love. It is finite illusory love. Religion is a most potent example in which there is (illusory) ‘love’ between fellow believers and hostility for those that worship another version of ‘God’ through some other ritualistic label. India and Pakistan are centres for mutually-hostile religions that dictate who you must love (in theory) *and* hate. I say in theory because if you ‘love’ people identifying with one label and hate those of another then you don’t love anyone in its real sense. How can we truly love if we don’t grasp what love is? We can track designer love and empathy into sport where some people following one soccer team hate followers of another for the blasphemy of supporting the ‘wrong’ group of players kicking a bag of wind about trying to direct it into a net. I am not knocking football as a form of entertainment – I used to be a footballer. I am saying we have become so caught in the illusion of human life that we decide who we like, love and hate, on the basis of what colour shirts we cheer? I live not far from two football clubs on the English south coast, Portsmouth and Southampton, which require a big police presence when they play to deal with the fact that many supporters of both sides hate each other. Why? One group supports

Portsmouth and the other supports Southampton. Er, that's it. I don't support either club and yet if I went to one of their matches I could decide which group loves me and hates me simply by wearing a scarf in the colours of one of the teams. What madness ([Fig 108](#)). The absence of love tends to trigger madness (extreme imbalance) because love *is* balance – the balance of everything.

Wherever there is imbalance, and human society is often at the extreme end, the way to rebalance is always love. Take any situation of conflict, violence and discord (imbalance) and an infusion of love will turn it around – rebalance. We can observe the imbalanced madness that only love can heal in the endless wars between factions of the human family. We are points of attention in the same stream of Infinite Awareness and in the illusion of separateness we fight and compete to reach some illusory outcome. We are eternally exploring forever *forever* and the 'baddy' today may be the 'goody' tomorrow. There is no 'outcome', only current experience. Ponder on any 'outcome' and you'll see that it is only a temporary step to the next step ('outcome') which is a temporary step to the next step ('outcome'). There are no 'outcomes', only experiences following each other like waves of the ocean. Oh, but I must 'get somewhere'? I must 'be someone'? You are *already* everywhere. You are *already* everyone and everything. You may like to experience something, but that's not the same as feeling the need to 'get somewhere' and 'be someone' when you are already everywhere and everything. People are so busy and focused trying to 'get somewhere' and 'be someone' that they miss the experience of the only moment that exists – the NOW. We miss what is happening NOW when our perception is enslaved in the illusory 'past' (regret, resentment) and pulled into the illusory 'future' (I gotta *be* someone, I gotta *get* somewhere). The loss of this understanding – the systematic loss thanks to the Cult – is indivisible from the absence of love through which expanded awareness speaks to us. It is true that we can't be all things to all people and it is understandable that we feel the closest connection to those literally closest to us. That doesn't mean we can't have empathy with those outside our circle and care about the freedom, justice and plight of others though we may not know their names. I have heard the term 'compassion fatigue'. Compassion is love and love knows no limits and certainly has no fatigue. We can love and care for our families and still stand up for people far away of different races, religions and colour of face. Martin Luther King said:

Injustice anywhere is a threat to justice everywhere. We are caught in an inescapable network of mutuality, tied in a single garment of destiny. Whatever affects one directly, affects all indirectly.

This is indeed literally true on multiple levels of reality. When you strip away the illusions and the labels that underpin those illusions what is left is the understanding that we are all each other – points of attention in the same infinite flow of consciousness having a brief experience called 'human'.

Source of love

The love that I am describing is more than empathy and compassion. It is *everything* and I mean *everything* that we need to transform a prison to a paradise. Love is the very fabric of existence. Much of humanity has been disconnected from its influence by a malevolent network which is a Death Cult because it has *itself* been disconnected from the influence of love for longer and more profoundly than anyone. To understand this disconnection we come back to *The Void*, *The One*, *The Source*, *The All That Is in Awareness of Itself* – whatever term you wish to use. Some will prefer 'God', but that has become so discredited by religion that it has no meaning to me. I say it's a grotesque misrepresentation of reality to identify *The One* with the angry, bloodthirsty 'God' of the Old Testament; the 'God' that would sacrifice his 'son' on a cross in the New Testament; or demand the beheading of 'infidels' in the extremes of Islam. Religious fantasies have served the Cult agenda magnificently in replacing the source of love in the human heart with a mythical 'God' of violence, imposition and self-obsession which religious factions can claim for their own. Factions following this hideous version of 'God' can then be manipulated into conflict and battles for supremacy that have plagued, divided and ruled humanity for so long. I have been writing for

decades that the Cult was the force behind the creation of religion and we can also understand why the Cult installed a God-free version of mainstream ‘science’ to dominate the perception of reality in most of those who reject overt religion. Either way, *The One* has been written out of the script and this has been vital for the Cult’s absence-of-love agenda to block the influence of *The One* on human perception and behaviour. I have described my own experience of the ‘Dazzling Darkness’ of silence and stillness from which ‘Creation’ emerges from the *All Possibility* of *The One*. Creation is the realm of frequency and vibration while the Creator is stillness and silence. The foundation of all existence is the All-Knowing, All Possibility, of stillness and silence while sound and form are only possibilities within All Possibility. People experience stillness and silence in states of deep meditation through which they can access ‘knowingness’ – the *All*-knowingness of *The One*. ‘Quiet contemplation’ is a similar experience and we speak of the stillness of the heart and a quiet mind. Some say that yoga and martial arts like Tai chi take them into quiet mind states. I call my own experience of this ‘daydreaming’ when I allow my mind to open and flow without the mind-chatter and focus of five-sense attention to keep the door shut. These states take me into the stillness and silence from which knowing emerges. Funny, when I saw the dictionary definition of daydreaming it offered an example of the term in a sentence: ‘He never paid attention in class and seemed to be in a permanent daydream.’ That was me at school to a tee and most of my life to this day. *The One* is the source of Creation, the observer of Creation and the experiencer of Creation via expressions of itself like you and me and *everything*. As ‘Shakespeare’ (or whoever it was) wrote:

All the world’s a stage, and all the men and women merely players: they have their exits and their entrances; and one man in his time plays many parts ...

The nature of those ‘parts’ is decided by the strength of connection we have with *The One* while we are ‘on the stage’. These ‘parts’ are our ‘persona’ or actor’s mask. When people think of ‘God’ they tend to look to the sky (the symbolism of sitting on a cloud). This is a trait that follows from a belief in all-that-you-see-is-all-that-there-is. If you think you can see all there is to see in the ‘space’ before you then ‘God’ must be ‘up there’ if you can’t see ‘him’. When by contrast you know that your range of sight is only a band of frequency that your Body-Mind can decode then the concept of ‘God’ moves from ‘up there’ to ‘in here’ – a force that shares the same ‘space’ that we do beyond our range of vision. *The One* is not ‘up-there’. *The One* interpenetrates everything. From this perspective we can rightly say that ‘God is everywhere’ and ‘love is everywhere’. Yes, they are. Love is everywhere because *The One* is the source of love and interpenetrates everything. Love as in Infinite Love and unconditional love that is.

The heart – gateway to *The One*



Figure 109: The heart vortex in the centre of the chest – the gateway to ‘home’.

There is a level of Infinite Realty – including those in the Cult – which is the love of *The One*. Cult initiates have closed themselves off from its influence and so they behave as they do. Our prime connection (or

disconnection) with *The One* while in Body-Mind experience is through an open or closed heart vortex, or heart 'chakra' ([Fig 109](#)). Not coincidentally this is the balance-point chakra in the main sequence of seven. We feel love in all its forms, even purely attraction love, in the centre of the chest and we hear this described in terms of 'I love you with all of my heart' and 'You make my heart flutter'. The heart chakra through which we can connect with the love that is *The One* is the origin for the symbolism of the heart representing love. This symbol appears to relate to the 'physical' heart when the real connection to love is through the spiritual or energetic heart ('heart of hearts'). Even so there is a pivotal link between the two with the wavefield heart (chakra) impacting on its holographic projection or 'physical' heart. When the heart chakra is closed or energetically stressed through extremes of grief this can so affect the holographic heart that people do indeed 'die of a broken heart'. From this we can appreciate why, in a world awash with systematic, Cult-induced stress, frustration, anxiety and fear that heart disease is one of our biggest killers. Stress, frustration, anxiety and fear are all dense wavefields that impact on the heart chakra vortex – 'my heart aches', and 'I have fear in my heart'. The language is peppered with sayings and phrases that tell the truth about the spiritual heart while appearing to pertain only to the 'physical' heart:

Follow your heart; listen to your heart; heart of gold; heart of stone; change of heart; heart-to-heart; lose heart; heavy heart; joy in the heart; tug on your heart strings; big heart; all heart; no heart; from the heart; heart goes out; heart in the right place; from the bottom of the heart; heart sinks; take heart; young at heart; sick at heart; goodness of the heart; have a heart.

We also speak of 'hearts and minds' and 'heart and soul'. All these terms and many more reflect different states of the heart chakra and its connection, or disconnection, with the source of love – *The One*. We also speak of 'hearts and minds' and 'heart and soul'. These describe profound truths in the sense that they say heart and minds, heart and soul. The heart chakra is our prime connection from Body-Mind to Soul and *The One*. When that is closed or diminished enough the influence on perception and self-identity of *The One* (love) consequently also diminishes and we become isolated in the Bubble of purely Body-Mind. As the Cult would say: *Gotcha!* Many people have a feeling of being 'lost'. They have an emptiness they cannot explain and a yearning for something 'missing' that they can't put into words. These feelings are widespread and come from the loss of a conscious connection through the heart to *The One* ([Fig 110](#)).

Love is more than human 'love'



Figure 110: Open heart – opens to *The One*.



Figure 111: The head thinks.



Figure 112: The heart knows.

Think about love and most people will think about relationships in terms of true love, unrequited love, and so on. Love in the sense that I am describing – *The One* love – is far more than this and that's another central reason why the Cult seeks to close our hearts. The heart chakra is our connection to *The One* and *The One* is not only the source of love as we perceive that word; it is All-Possibility and ... All-Knowing. Many ancient cultures considered the heart to be the connection to real intelligence, the Soul and the *Source of All That Is*. If this is true then the heart must also be our connection to this innate or knowing *intelligence* and research is showing this to be exactly the case as I will shortly explain. We must first identify the massive difference between Body-Mind 'intellect' and the intelligence of the heart with its connection to *The One*. This can be defined by the gargantuan difference between thinking and knowing. Body-Mind *thinks* because it doesn't *know* and has to try to work it out through information processing in the brain. Knowing does not originate in the brain. It comes from the heart and the connection to *The One*. Verbal language and phrases tell the truth about the heart and so does body-language. When we say 'I'm thinking' we point to the head which is where the thinking is taking place ([Fig 111](#)); when we say 'I know' our hands go to the heart (chakra) where the knowing is coming from ([Fig 112](#)). Body is an extension of mind and what the mind is *perceiving* the body is *doing*. Body-language can therefore discern a person's mental and emotion state. Knowing is also called intuition which doesn't think – it *knows*. When we intuitively know something we haven't spent hours working it all out with the brain. It comes to us in an instant in one whole without a sequence of thoughts or dots leading to a conclusion. We say: 'I don't know why I know, I just *know*.' Isolated Body-Mind wants all the details and the research papers to 'prove' what you 'know'. People talk about something being 'counter-intuitive' when what they really mean is counter-programmed-perception.

Prison of the intellect

Human society celebrates the intellect while scorning expanded awareness of which the intellect is only a fractional part. It follows from this that professional 'sceptics' who demand five-sense 'proof' for everything are utterly dominated by the intellect. An example is the intellectual humanist movement which is founded on a belief in this-world-is-all-there-is with no continuation of consciousness.

Humanism is defined this way by the *Concise Routledge Encyclopedia of Philosophy*:

... a commitment to the perspective, interests and centrality of human persons; a belief in reason and autonomy as foundational aspects of human existence; a belief that reason, scepticism and the scientific method are the only appropriate instruments for discovering truth and structuring the human community; a belief that the foundations for ethics and society are to be found in autonomy and moral equality ...



Figure 113: The human perceptual illusion

Mainstream science and academia as you would expect are overwhelmingly directed by this mentality that cannot perceive beyond the five senses. How can you discover something when there are colossal areas in which you refuse to look? The foundation of five-sense intellectualism is the concept of 'reason' which is believed to be the arbiter of truth by mainstream science, academia and The System in general. Yet most of what is called 'reason' is only perception derived from limitation of awareness – ignorance – that comes with a closed mind. Mainstream Everything's version of 'reason' includes 'rational' and 'logical'. Their dictionary definitions reveal the perceptual feedback loop that maintains the state of ignorance: *Reason* is defined as 'to determine or conclude by logical thinking'; *logic* is 'a system of reasoning'; and *rational* is 'based on or agreeable to reason'. What is *reason* really? It is a process of assessing information on the basis of perceived (programmed) credibility and fact to reach a conclusion about how things are. The credibility and limitation of your 'reason' depends purely on how wide you are prepared to spread your explorational net. If it is only cast within the imposed Postage Stamp 'normal' you will get Postage Stamp 'reason' that can be, and invariably is, a load of old tosh ([Fig 113](#)). 'Reason' of this kind brings perceptual enslavement and never enlightenment. Blaise Pascal, the 17th century French philosopher and mathematician, said: 'The end point to rationality is to demonstrate the limits of rationality.' It takes those with open minds and expanded awareness to see what those limits are and to go beyond them. Here's an example from a Central American shaman:

We are perceivers, we are awareness; we are not objects; we have no solidity. We are boundless ... We, or rather our reason, forget this and thus we entrap the totality of ourselves in a vicious circle from which we rarely emerge in our lifetime.

These are perceptions that come when you step off the Postage Stamp of 'rational' and 'reason'. This is why Cult-created 'education' teaches children and young people throughout their entire formative years the myopic illusion of mainstream 'reason' that entraps the totality of themselves in a vicious circle from which they rarely emerge in their human lifetime. Limitations of mainstream science in grasping the nature of reality mean that once again if it can't explain intuition from a five-sense perspective then it can't exist or be happening. Open your mind a few notches and it *can* be explained. Intuitive knowing comes from a heart connection to expanded awareness and *The One* and through wave connections to other fields of information. The latter can be a wave frequency connection to a loved one which allows you to know what is happening to them and a similar connection to wavefields that we experience as events and happenings, current and 'historic'. People and situations are all wavefields that connect with The Field and through this conduit we can attune with that information in The Field, the energetic sea or

Cosmic Wi-Fi, and access awareness in the form of ‘knowing’. We are told it is a mystery why animals can sense when an earthquake or bad weather is coming despite the lack of five-sense evidence. It’s not a mystery. Animals that don’t go to school, watch the media or have a Smartphone retain their natural sensitivity to changes in The Field which all humans are supposed to have. They sense wave disturbances in the Field that indicate trouble coming and take evasive action where possible. What is this except a form of ‘intuition’ or knowing? My books since the early 1990s are packed with information that has subsequently happened or is happening. Until the mid-90s I would research five-sense information and come to conclusions about what was going on. Since then I have intuitively known what was going on and the five-sense confirmation in the form of facts and research have followed. Had it been the other way round I could never have connected the dots over such an array of subjects. It’s the knowing that connects the dots and five-sense research that adds the detail. Studies by the HeartMath Institute in the United States that researches the nature of the heart and heart chakra have shown that when someone is in heart-mind balance enormous creativity can be unleashed and that must be so. Open hearts in energetic harmony connect with the flow of *The One* which is ... *All Possibility* and so all creativity. Closed hearts do not ([Fig 114](#)).

No worries, mate



Figure 114: Closed hearts got us here. Open hearts will take us home. See Neil Hague colour section.

Another aspect of Infinite Love accessed through the heart is that it isn’t burdened, blocked and limited by fear. Humanity is so often frozen by fear – fear of losing, of winning, of failing, of consequences, of death, of the unknown, of what others think. The list could go on for pages. Fear is the bottom-line of how the Cult controls and direct billions worldwide (pandemic hoax, I rest my case). We are given endless reasons to fear and to fear each other. Every day there seems to be something else we are told to fear. Once it was fear of not finding food or an enemy coming over the hill. Today the list seems to be without limit – fear this, fear that, fear everything. We have the term ‘culture of fear’ to describe the manipulation of fear to secure control. Fear in totality leads to people looking to authority for protection from what they fear while fear of each other is the constant creator of division and conflict. The Cult wants the global population to look to its police state for protection and in doing so to accept the ever-increasing imposition of the Cult. What happened on 9/11 and in other Cult-orchestrated terror attacks is designed to manipulate people to demand, or at least not challenge, the erosion of their own freedom in the name of protection from ‘terrorists’. These ‘terrorists’ invariably turn out to be controlled by the same force that is imposing the new laws to ‘protect us’ from them. I coined the term ‘Problem-Reaction-Solution’ (PRS) to describe this technique of covertly creating a problem, getting the public response of ‘do something’, and then overtly offering the (Cult) ‘solution’ which changes society in the way that you want. The virus hoax is a glaring example which I will explore in detail later. There is another version that I call No-Problem-Reaction-Solution in which you don’t need a real problem only the *perception* of

one – ‘weapons of mass destruction’ in Iraq and once again the virus fraud. See my book *The Trigger* for a detailed exposure of this with regards to 9/11 and what it has been used to justify ever since. The key element in PRS (or ‘false flag’) events is to instil fear in the population which then makes them open to the ‘solution’. It is well-known in mind-control circles that fear and trauma makes people more open to hypnotic suggestion. Every day the media is brimming with reasons to fear including fear of each other. This is essential to securing mass control by setting the population at war with itself. The sense of division is crucially underpinned by the perception that our five-sense labels are who we really are. When we open our heart to the flow of Infinite Love and expanded awareness from *The One* our perceptions transform and these Cult techniques no longer work. We are not diminished by fear when Infinite Love knows there is nothing to fear. Whatever is currently happening is only a brief experience for Body-Mind while the True ‘I’ is observing the experience with the potential to change it. Infinite Love – *The One* – will always do what it knows to be right and no amount of manipulation, fear of consequences or anything else will make any difference. To consider consequences for doing what you know to be right is to consider the possibility of not doing what you know to be right. Infinite Love will never do that. I have never feared and will never fear what might happen to me for doing what I know to be right. More than that I know that if I flow with my heart such consequences will not manifest anyway. Only if I feared them could I attract them through wave entanglement. People are described as having a ‘faint heart’ when there is no such thing. A ‘faint mind’, yes, but the heart in its power is never ‘faint’.



Figure 115: Why judging people by their temporary and illusory labels is so crazy.

Love in its true and infinite sense is how we connect with expanded states of awareness, innate intelligence, wisdom, knowing, intuitive insight, courage and that which is beyond courage – the absence of fear. In fact fear is merely the absence of love when love in its purest and most powerful state is the absence of fear. What is the world of today and a long time ‘past’ except the absence of expanded states of awareness, innate intelligence, wisdom, knowing, intuitive insight, courage and that which is beyond courage – the absence of fear? All these are aspects of Infinite Love flowing from *The One*. There is an absence of love in human society, but that doesn’t mean ‘non-existent’ and far from it. We witness amazing acts of empathy and compassion in examples of personal and collective love. We see them in courage and self-sacrifice and they offer an insight into the Infinite Love that I am describing. Such acts are not the norm, however, and ‘it’s not my problem’ is a far more frequent response. It is also true, and with profound consequences for human wellbeing, that such acts of love are most rare in the seats and positions of economic, political and administrative power. The Cult has made certain of that and this must change if its goal of total human control is to be thwarted. That endgame is not even decades away as things stand and it most urgently needs to be rolled back. (I wrote that and 85 percent of this book before the Cult seized astonishing levels of global power through its manufactured virus scare). To impose its control the Cult must maintain the delusion of apartness to allow divide and rule to run riot. It is in our power any time we choose to bring down those walls of illusion and see the truth on the other

side – the truth that we are *all* love and always have been despite often wearing heavy disguise. We have forgotten and been encouraged and manipulated to forget. What has followed is a world that reflects this amnesia, but now there is a stirring in the hearts and minds of forgotten love. Many are remembering and the more that do so the quicker the illusions will fade and fall and a new reality must form from this new collective perception based on the understanding that we are each other ([Fig 115](#)). Love is *who* we are. The absence of love is *where* we are. So what is *The Answer*? The question answers itself

Science of love

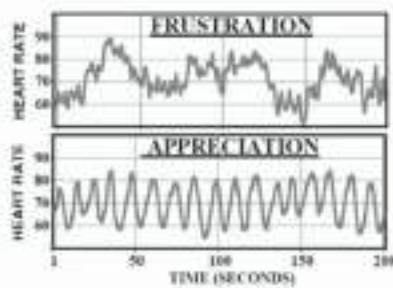


Figure 116: Different mental and emotional states create frequency coherence and incoherence – connection and disconnection from expanded awareness.

The HeartMath Institute was launched in California in 1991 to study the impact of the heart on human behaviour and psychological wellbeing along with much else. The Institute has since published a considerable body of information to confirm that the heart is far more than it appears to be. More than that the chakra heart and ‘physical heart’ are the central core of human psychology, perception and health (harmony) in all its forms. If heart energy (love) is flowing in harmony all is well and when it’s not the trouble starts in many and various ways. Love is in one aspect the balance of all things and you would expect HeartMath research to confirm that when the heart is open to the flow of love this brings balance to the systems and information processing of Body-Mind. We are told that the brain is the governor when in fact it is the heart which communicates its balance or imbalance to the brain to process as perception. When I talk of the heart in this context I am referring for simplicity to both the chakra heart and its holographic ‘physical’ projection with the chakra heart the key to it all. HeartMath research has established that when the heart, brain and central nervous system are in harmony, or ‘coherence’, the person enters an expanded state of consciousness and the opposite happens when there is disharmony or incoherence. I say this happens because the connection via the heart to the Soul and *The One* ceases to communicate the true magnitude of its awareness, innate intelligence and balance (love) to the systems, psychological and ‘physical’, of Body-Mind. Other studies reveal that with heart-mind harmony we enter states of consciousness known as ‘non-local’ or ‘outside the bounds of time and space’. Isolated Body-Mind lives in its Bubble of ‘time’ while the heart lives in the NOW. People also think with more clarity with heart-mind balance. Energetic distortion and chaos that results from heart-mind imbalance (like trauma and stress) stops them from ‘thinking straight’. For obvious reasons the Cult does not want its targets to be influenced by *The One* through the heart connection and seeks to isolate human brain perception (*in the world and of the world*) from heart perception (*in the world, but not of the world*). These two perceptual states are so immensely different. The Cult’s modus operandi is to structure human society to ensure maximum fear, stress, anxiety, depression, hatred, regret, resentment, inner and outer conflict etc., or what I call low-vibrational emotion. This can also be accurately described as disharmonious and incoherent ongoing emotion that I have seen referred to as ‘white noise emotion’ which is always there in the background. HeartMath studies have confirmed that this creates incoherence in heart-brain-nervous system communication and suppresses expanded states of consciousness ([Fig 116](#)).

Those in a state of energetic (information) incoherence withdraw perceptually into the *Bubble*. The more fear, stress, anxiety, depression, hatred, regret, resentment, inner and outer conflict, the Cult can generate the deeper perceptual enslavement will be as people are entrapped in the illusions of the five-senses. Heart-mind coherence or incoherence has a central impact on psychological and ‘physical’ health.



Figure 117: Heart consciousness connects and sees everything as One.



Figure 118: Head consciousness disconnects and sees everything as apart from everything else.

HeartMath researchers speak of ‘bio-communication’ or energetic transfer between open hearts. I am calling this wave entanglement. Heart waves (love, harmony, Soul, *The One*) connect with like waves in others to establish a *Oneness* connection of perceptual unity. This happens between people; people and animals; and people, animals, and the ‘natural world’ ([Fig 117](#)). When heart waves are weak or incoherent the perceptual unity of *Oneness* is lost to the domination of brain wave connections which, without the influence of the heart, present everything as apart from anything else ([Fig 118](#)). You can see from this even more profoundly why the Cult targets the heart.



Figure 119: ‘Human’ is a point of attention focused within a tiny band of frequency, but we can also open our minds to connect with expanded awareness and see our reality from a very different perspective. (Image Neil Hague.)

It can’t directly affect love in its true sense flowing from *The One* through the heart. The frequency is so high that Cultists and their non-human masters can make no connection. They behave as they do because they have closed themselves off from its influence and are thus described as being ‘heartless’ and from the ‘dark side’. Even so they are still expressions of *The One* that can return to perceptual unity whenever

they make that choice. While they are currently the ‘baddies’ in the stage show there’s another costume waiting for them to play another part. As things stand, given their inability to affect love directly, they must work to block its influence on their human targets. They do this by manipulating human life to generate maximum low-vibrational emotion which closes the heart chakra channel and creates energetic distortion and incoherence between the heart, brain and central nervous system to isolate Body-Mind in the Cult’s perceptual lair. Crucial to this is securing mass ignorance of true identity. Once that veil lifts we have the power to reconnect through the heart with our Soul and *The One* and for the Cult the game is over. We then speak and act from the heart and not only Body-Mind. With that everything changes. Once the heart opens to *The One* you see the unity of everything and not apartness. You see the experience of individuality and also the infinite stream of consciousness which connects us all. You see that judging people by their race and labels is so ridiculous and no one does this more obsessively than ‘antiracists’, ironically. I can speak from personal experience. My conscious ‘awakening’ in 1990 and 91 began the process of opening my heart triggered by the kundalini experience. From that moment, and ever more as it has progressed, I have seen the connections and unity (*The One*) that join all the apparent dots (people, experiences, everything). Heart-opening does not mean you suddenly start acting ‘perfectly’ (what is ‘perfect’ anyway?). It means you start to be influenced by something greater than only Body-Mind and your state of awareness expands. As this progresses you see that the dots are only different points of attention and awareness within a unified whole ([Fig 119](#)). Opening your heart doesn’t mean we never regress into isolated Body-Mind mode. Instead this becomes rarer the more your heart enters the formulation of perception.

Follow your heart



Figure 120: The Bubble seems to make sense until it bursts. Then the ‘real world’ within the Bubble appears as it really is – lunacy.

What changed my life more than anything came in the early 1990s. I decided that when my heart and head (intuition and thought) were at odds I was always going with my heart/intuition. The decision got me into some interesting situations, experiences and scrapes, including mass ridicule, and the brain screams: ‘See what happens when you don’t listen to me!!!’ Brain-heart conflict blights the life of almost everyone to some extent with their different ways of seeing the world and making decisions. Most people go with their head (‘use your head’) when their heart intuition is urging another direction. Heart doesn’t see reality and situations like the head. It has another perspective on life from a state of expanded awareness not confined to the perceptual ‘norms’ of human Body-Mind society. Follow your heart and you start acting differently to Postage Stamp normal which still the great majority believe (thanks to head perception) to be ‘the real world’. I took the consequences of that in historic levels of ridicule. Fortunately, I’m a stubborn bugger when I choose to be and I wasn’t budging and being absorbed back into the flock. I decided to stick with it and something amazing eventually happens. Your head perspective sees that while following heart intuition can lead to challenges it all works out in the end – and not *despite* the challenges but *because* of them. Our greatest gifts are often brilliantly disguised as our worst nightmare. Mass ridicule was the making of me however unpleasant it was to experience. My head (limited

awareness) didn't know what was happening; my heart (expanded awareness) most certainly did. Body-Mind can see to the next turn in the river. Heart can see the whole river from source to sea. Consciousness with which my heart was connecting, and urging apparently strange courses of action, knew that my life would later involve communicating information like shapeshifting people that would attract bucket-loads of ridicule and abuse. For me to put myself through that any concern about what others thought about me or said about me had to be deleted. Mass ridicule appeared to be a nightmare in the experience when it was really a gift to set me free. Such is the difference in perspective of the head and the heart. The head reacts to every happening. The heart plays the long game. For decades now my heart and head have worked in unison and when my heart says do this, go there, my head says 'Okay, let's go'. The war is over. Heart and mind become one. Almost everyone starts out in unconsciousness once The System kicks in and the pressure to stay there until the hearse rolls up is 24/7 incessant. No wonder we spend so much of our lives, even all of it, in the Bubble; but *we don't have to*. We can all open to expanded awareness any time we want – it's our natural state – and that's especially so when the 'how' is known ([Fig 120](#)). I'll come to that in the final chapter and it's far simpler than many believe it to be.

Heart-Brain-Belly



Figure 121: The heart field is the most powerful electromagnetic field in the body.

From this background I was not at all surprised to discover that major perception-dictating heart-brain connections have been identified through scientific research and study. Mainstream science has long believed that the brain is the brain and the heart is the heart in another example of the illusion that follows from seeing everything as apart from everything else. The brain has been thought to be the dominant processor of perceptual information when in fact the heart is far more influential than previously believed in the modern era. The heart projects the body's most powerful electromagnetic field, 5,000 times more powerful than the brain field, and the heart field can be measured several feet from the body ([Fig 121](#)). You would expect electromagnetic waves to be most powerful from the source of most expanded consciousness. The heart is the body's biggest source of bio-electricity – up to 60 times more than the brain. Far more communication is passed from heart to brain than in the other direction and the heart is the only organ that can independently send information to the brain. The heart can also act independently *from* the brain and has its own long and short term memory and nervous system. Sixty-seven percent of heart cells are nerve cells (neuron communicators). It has some 40,000 neurons and a network of neurotransmitters which led to the term 'heart-brain'. Research has revealed how the heart receives information *before* the brain and transmits this with its own perception to different parts of the brain which, in turn, communicates its coherence or incoherence back to the heart in a feedback loop. The heart can open the mind and the mind can close the heart. Communications from the heart have particular influence on the frontal areas of the brain that process thinking, reasoning, speech and language, coordination, distinguishing objects, long-term memories, empathy (of course), personality, attention and motivation. The frontal lobe also relates to seeking reward and the brain-chemical dopamine which is mercilessly manipulated by social media platforms such as Facebook (more later). Heart communications have immense influence on the perceptual systems of the brain when they are

working in harmony or coherence. These interactions are distorted when the connection is weak or in a state of disharmony.

An open heart and open mind produce a communication feedback loop in which both work and perceive as one. Divisions between brain and heart lead to the contrasting perceptions of 'What does your head say?' and 'What does your heart say?' There are other perceptual connections to the emotional centre in the abdomen which leads to 'What does your gut say?' and 'What is your gut instinct?' When heart, brain, gut and nervous system are communicating in harmonic coherence it becomes 'What do YOU say?' Unity and Oneness we have lift off. The gut, heart and brain are connected by the vagus nerve which is the longest and most complex of the cranial nerves that emanate from the brain. 'Vagus' comes from a Latin word meaning 'wandering' which describes its nature and function. Both the vagus and the gut are far more important to human psychological and 'physical' health than most imagine and the source of energetic power – 'fire in the belly'. This is also sabotaged by low-vibrational emotion which we feel in the gut through the belly chakra. You see people with 'beer gut' bellies, but at the same time you see the same extended bellies with spiritually-developed people in the East who don't drink beer. To them the belly is the location of the energetic power and point of perception they call hara or tandem. A six-pack may be the state pursued for ascetic reasons, but is it best for hara? Many people who study these subjects say no. We are ideally looking for a harmonious connection between heart, gut, brain and nervous system to be truly in our power. No, I'm not saying we should drink lots of beer. There is the beer gut and the hara gut. They are not the same. The HeartMath website says of the heart-brain connection:

Research has shown that the heart communicates to the brain in four major ways: **neurologically** (through the transmission of nerve impulses), biochemically (via hormones and neurotransmitters), biophysically (through pressure waves) and energetically (through electromagnetic field interactions). Communication along all these conduits significantly affects the brain's activity.



Figure 122: The Earth magnetic field and the body field again reflect the holographic principle.

Heart is love which is balance and waves from an open heart can balance all other systems, mental, emotional, 'physical', whatever, and ensure a harmonious connection to the consciousness field of the Earth which leads to a harmonious interaction between humans and nature ([Fig 122](#)). This balance is reflecting the unity, harmony and Oneness that is love and *The One*. I have said there is no imbalance or conflict that an infusion of love cannot harmonise and that includes the mental, emotional and biological systems of Body-Mind. The heart balances emotions through its connection to the emotion-regulating amygdala in the brain and the release of hormones. It becomes clear through this central connection between emotion and the heart why stress is such a cause of heart disease (imbalanced wave entanglement and a closing heart chakra impacting on the 'physical heart'). The oscillation of heart chakra energy, the body wavefield and electrical rhythms of the holographic heart are all connected. Wave imbalance from the heart chakra is transferred to the 'physical' heart, but when the chakra opens to love the more powerful and balancing are the energies we exchange with Body-Mind and its emotional

processes. Studies have shown that the heart's feedback loop with emotional states profoundly affects the nature and power of the heart's electromagnetic field which is diminished by low-vibrational emotion and empowered by others such as love, appreciation, compassion, empathy and joy ('I have joy in my heart'). We feel fear and anxiety in the gut while love, appreciation, compassion, empathy and joy are all 'heart-felt' emotions. This is one more reason for the Cult seeking to generate low-vibrational emotion to close human hearts. Heart waves can be so drawn into energetic density that we have the phrases 'closed heart' and 'heart of stone' which Cultists seek to manipulate to make humanity the same as them.

Heart is our access point to wisdom – the wisdom of expanded states of consciousness – and wise is the last thing the Cult wants humanity to be. Wisdom sees through the illusion. What is called heart-based living leads to wisdom, intelligence and clarity of perception through connection to expanded awareness and balance between heart, body and mind. I would add a warning here, too, though. I have observed many who believe they are heart-based and advocate the findings of HeartMath research that are certainly not street-wise about the world. Many are in denial of the Cult agenda and avoid exploring information they believe to be 'negative'. I witnessed this in the movement dubbed 'New Age' where I saw the same denial masquerading as being 'positive'. The Cult is quite happy for people to live in their own 'be positive' bubble so long as it allows the Cult free-reign to go about its business unexposed of manipulating the population into anything but heart-based living and 'positive emotion'. The 'spiritual' is a sitting duck without having the streetwise to watch its back. There is nothing more manipulatable than naive genuineness. There will be many 'heart-based' people who express compassion for the Earth by supporting action on human-caused climate change and the centralisation of power to 'save the planet'. This is, however, a Cult-created hoax to justify that very centralisation of global power. There is far more to the heart than just 'positive emotion'. We must be aware of reality *and* of that which works so hard to stop us being aware of reality. Ignoring the latter is not wisdom, heart-based or otherwise. It is denial. You don't have to be 'negative' to face reality so we can deal with it and know how the game is being played. Those truly in their hearts can disseminate unpleasant information without being affected in the sense of allowing this to disrupt their own fields and flows. How does *The One* observe such 'negativity' and not be pulled into it? The principle is the same. Since when was knowledge about *anything at all* 'negative'? Knowledge is not 'good' or 'bad', 'positive' or 'negative'. The way it is used, processed and dealt with is what matters. Love is intelligence – *all* intelligence – and not only the bits that suit us.

From the start

Love and emotions of the heart – or lack of them – can have a profound impact on babies in the womb and after birth. I read the book, *Why Love Matters*, by the British psychotherapist Dr Sue Gerhardt who documents the connections between the emotional environment and the development of the unborn child with especial emphasis between conception and two years. It is sobering to see images of a child in the womb jumping with shock at parents shouting at each other and there are some cultures which have understood this since ancient times. They demand that no one raises their voice and people remain calm around a pregnant mother. Gerhardt quotes a description of pregnancy in Patagonia in South America:

While a female Patagonian is with child, all disagreeable objects are kept from her; she is awakened by music; they study to divert her with amusements most suitable to her taste; her mind is brightened with joy, without allowing her to grow slothful for want of action ...

Sue Gerhardt explains why this is considered important. She describes how the child's brain systems are developing in the womb and are affected by the mother's diet and emotions in the form of biochemicals circulating in the mother's body. The nature of those emotions can seriously impact on the way the child's systems develop and they can open pathways that later lead to susceptibility to conditions such as

'anorexia, psychosomatic illness, addiction, antisocial behaviour, personality disorder or depression'. Gerhardt points out that stress in the mother can release certain chemicals in the womb that can produce a propensity for a pot belly later in life (a lot of which is unprocessed stored emotion around the emotion chakra). The child's environment before birth is showing the child what to expect and its psychological and bodily systems develop in line with that. Gerhardt calls this 'weather forecasting'. I say the child's pre-birth and post-birth parental environment and relationship is also one of wave entanglement and the kind of waves being transmitted are triggering in the child through epigenetics which gene functions are activated and which are not. Gerhardt points to the period from conception to two years as 'uniquely significant' because this is when 'the nervous system itself is being established and shaped by experience'. She continues:

During this period how parents **behave** has as much influence on their child's emotional make-up as his or her genetic inheritance. Their responses to the baby teach him what his own emotions are and how to manage them. This means that our earliest experiences as babies (and even as foetuses) have much more relevance to our adult selves than many of us realise. It is as babies that we first feel and learn what to do with our feeling, when we start to organise our experience in a way that will affect later behaviour and thinking capacities.



Figure 123: Why children and young people are so targeted by the Cult – they will be the adults of tomorrow that they want to enslave like never before.

You can see this learned behaviour in the response of parents to a child falling over. If you make it a big deal the child will follow that cue and cry. Children scan the faces of their parents for guidance on how to respond. If you act as if it's no big deal the child will get up and carry on as if nothing had happened. I have witnessed this with my own children and Gerhardt describes how 'faces with expressions of fear and anger will be registered ... and provoke an automatic response'. The Cult knows how a child's emotional environment locks in brain and emotional pathways that can affect their responses and interactions for the rest of their life (Fig 123). It doesn't want emotionally balanced and heart-centred people. They are far more difficult to divide and rule. The Cult financial system and Cult agents and gofers in government make life for parents as hard as possible to make the child's formative years as stressful as possible. Parents stressed, frustrated, anxious and fearful about paying the rent and affording food are dumping that emotion on their children with all the potential effects that Gerhardt lays out. The saying goes: 'Give me a child until he is seven and I will show you the man.' Many career mothers continue their stress-ridden lifestyle right up to birth and then continue as soon as possible afterwards. What does that do to the child? The Cult, as I have detailed in other books, was behind the rise of feminism to pressure women into careers when they would otherwise be at home with their children in the vital early years. The idea was to disconnect parents from their children for all the reasons detailed here and to be able to tax two people in a household instead of just one. I am not saying that women should not have careers. That's none of my business and of course it is right that women have sought to free themselves from a male-dominated society. The Cult is expert in piggy-backing on legitimate

grievances and twisting them to its benefit. I am only pointing out the downside when children are young and emphasising that the Cult is seeking at every opportunity to divide parents from their children so the state can control their formative years. This has now become ever more extreme with parental rights being eroded in every direction through dictatorial schools and satanic-like social services literally stealing children from caring parents for the most spurious reasons. This is happening all over the world because it's a global Cult agenda. What does being wrenched from loving parents do to a child? We will see later in the book where this is meant to lead.

Back to love

Sue Gerhardt notes that babies are born with a brain only a quarter the size of an adult's and much more incomplete than other mammals: '... Human care in early childhood (and beyond) plays a much bigger role in shaping the brain.' The Cult is aware of this and sets out literally to mould the minds of children to become the adults it wants them to be. Many parents have no choice except to keep working to pay the bills and this is not to cast blame on parents trying to financially survive and do their best for their children. The system is against them – on purpose – but we should not forget that studies have concluded that parental hostility affects the emotional development of a child more than poverty. I often wonder why some parents even have children at all when I see the lack of love and care they have for them. Rich families send their children away to residential private school from an early age and what message does that give them with regard to love and rejection? These are the kids that mostly grow up to run The System after a childhood that closed their hearts to survive emotionally. Can I come home this weekend, daddy? Not this time, son, I'm playing golf. Such parents see their kids as appendages and not as unique expressions of life – 'My children spent childhood prepping for exams and got a place at Oxford; I'm so proud they did what I told them.' Their childhood is stolen and their future decreed – you'll be a lawyer, banker, politician – by parents who exploit their children to be a symbol of their own perceived 'success'. Whenever you hear 'I only want the best for you' it usually means 'I only want the best for me' or 'What I say is best'. Don't stand for it, kids. Be what you choose to be. I have met many people over the years brought up this way and they are emotionally broken despite the outward facade. Most of them then treat their own children the same by sending them to residential schools when love is all they need. Well-off parents often say they give their children everything they want – money no object. What is missed is the key gift that money can't buy and doesn't have to because it's always available for free: *Love*.

Other children are told they are stupid, useless and idiots by parents who couldn't give a shit. The imprint can last a lifetime. Children are far more suggestable in their formative years and the Cult targets the young to 'suggest' what it wants them to believe for their entire lives. A teacher told me how he went to the home of a 'problem child' at school and found both parents in a pissed-up coma while a toddler played with their empty bottles. No wonder the kid was a 'problem child'. The emotion-processing amygdala in the brain which regulates pain, pleasure, fear, anger, grief and joy is formed within 15 weeks of conception and is affected by the mother's emotional state in that period and beyond. Once an emotional pattern is encoded it can produce 'press enter' reactions in which a stimulus (experience) triggers the same recurring response. As a result many who have never experienced the full joy and bliss of the heart define their state of happiness by their level of unhappiness. I am less unhappy today so this must be what happy feels like. Children tend to have fluid emotions in which they can switch from tears to laughter in seconds while the older people get the more the patterns are entrenched and emotional states can last for hours, days, weeks or even the rest of their life. Sue Gerhardt writes that 'a mother who has high levels of anxiety or depression ... is more likely to have the kind of baby who finds it hard to cope with stress or new stimuli and who takes longer to get over stress'. She adds:

Even, as a newborn, her baby may be more fearful, and is more likely to have higher than average cortisol [stress hormone] levels at the age of four months. At worst, babies ... are more likely to grow up with

behavioural and emotional problems ...

The opposite has been found to be the case when children enjoy a heart connection with their parents and environment and this is possible even with two working parents. Negative emotional effects are also reversible when love comes into play. Gerhardt points out that '... if love can be found, it still has the power to shape a new reality.' Children (like adults) crave a heart connection. A baby's heart beats before the brain is formed and a mother's brainwaves have been shown to sync with a baby's heartbeat in the womb. The nature of that connection is so vital to the life experience of a still-unborn child. Wherever you look love is *The Answer*.

Water tells the story

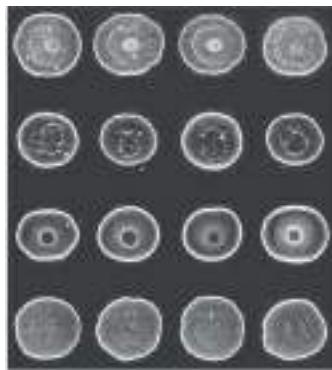


Figure 124: Each set of four droplets taken by each person was different, but the groups of four were virtually the same.



Figure 125: The amazing difference between water crystals reflecting words of love, gratitude and hate, and those from polluted water

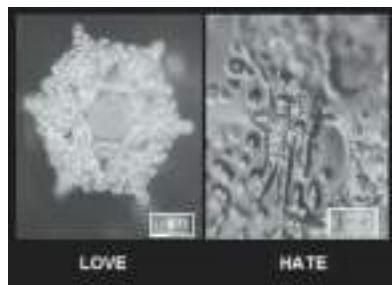


Figure 126: The difference in water crystals from water canisters labelled with words of love and hate. This is what states of love and hate do to ourselves, each other and The Field.

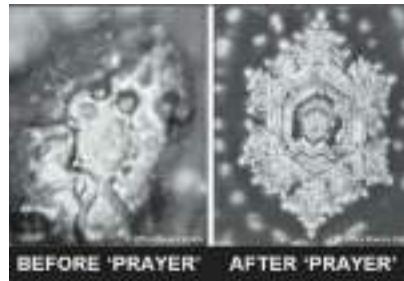


Figure 127: The power of love and focus ('prayer') to transform dark and negative states into beauty and harmony.

The impact of heart and brain waves has been clearly demonstrated by their effect on water. A team at the Aerospace Institute in Stuttgart, Germany, developed a means to photograph information in droplets of water. In one experiment they asked people from the locality to take four droplets from a communal tank and put them in a dish with their name on. The team then used their technique to photograph the droplets and discover that each set was unique from all the others and each drop in the sets of four was virtually the same ([Fig 124](#)). The simple act of a person taking a droplet from a tank and placing it in a dish had imprinted their own unique energetic signature on the water. Such is the interaction we have with The Field and each other. HeartMath research discovered that a person's heartbeat can be detected in water and given that the body is 80 percent water (a wavefield in its base state) we are exchanging heart rhythms all the time even on that level. The PH (measure of acidity) in water has been changed in experiments purely by someone focusing that intent (making a wave connection). A Japanese friend of mine, the late Dr Masaru Emoto, became well-known for his work in photographing the heart-mind impact on water. We wrote a book together published in Japanese and I visited his centre in Tokyo. Dr Emoto worked with small canisters of water that he would imprint with different frequencies and vibrations by for example writing 'love' and 'hate' on the canister. He would freeze the water very quickly, photograph the ice crystals, and the difference between them was amazing ([Fig 125](#)). Words such as love and appreciation produced beautiful crystals of balance and harmony to reflect the balance and harmony of the words. By contrast hate produced basically an ugly mess as it transferred its waves to the water ([Fig 126](#)). It may be asked how the written word can have such an effect and the answer is that *everything* is a wavefield of information in its base state with its frequency dictated by *intent*. We may see 'love', 'appreciation' and 'hate' as written words, but they are really wavefields reflecting their intent and meaning. These fields impact on the wavefield of the water and this is revealed in the crystals reflecting that effect when the water is frozen. In this way the hate of 'anti-haters' impacts on The Field in exactly the same destructive way as the 'haters' they claim to oppose. The Cult is behind both because they equally contribute to creating disharmony in The Field. Dr Emoto studied the impact on the crystals of polluted water, different types of music, and technology including a mobile phone. The theme was always the same: Harmony = beauty and disharmony = ugh!! Mobile phones created highly distorted crystals to reflect the way they distort the human wavefield. The crystal representation of polluted water is confirmation of what I said earlier about toxicity in all its forms being a chemical (holographic) expression of deeply imbalanced wavefields. Toxic chemical disharmony, like toxic emotional and thought disharmony, can be rebalanced as Dr Emoto's work clearly showed. He exposed water with distorted crystals (waves) to focused 'prayer' or harmonious intent and the negative impact of the waves was reversed ([Fig 127](#) overleaf). This is what we can do to The Field and human society by changing the waves we transmit. Many think they are interacting with 'God' and asking for help when they 'pray'. I guess this could be considered to be true in that *The One* is the awareness behind all experienced Creation. Prayer on a more human level is the focused interaction with The Field of thought and desire. If this connects – entangles – you with a wavefield that reflects your prayer then you can manifest that in your life. People say when this happens: 'My prayers were answered.' In truth you answered your own.

What is called prayer in the Emoto images is really focused intent from the heart to harmonise the wavefield disharmony in the water which becomes harmony in the crystals.

Wave impact on water explains how homeopathy works despite the arrogant dismissal by mainstream medicine of what it terms 'quackery'. Mainstream medicine is the quackery which is founded, thanks to the Cult's Big Pharma cartel, on complete ignorance of what the body really is – a wavefield. Professor Dame Sally Davies, UK Government Chief Medical Officer, said that 'homeopaths are peddlers and homeopathy is rubbish' while a UK newspaper reported that 2,500 'vets and animal lovers' had called for a ban on the use of homeopathy on animals. They claimed homeopathy was dangerous compared with 'proven medicines' (which with other mainstream treatments constitute one of humanity's leading causes of death). Simon Stevens, chief executive and medical director of the Big Pharma-controlled National Health Service in England, demanded that the Professional Standards Authority strip accreditation from the Society of Homeopaths. The clueless bloke claimed that endorsing the society gave it a 'veneer of credibility' that lured vulnerable patients towards 'bogus treatments'. Was he talking about homeopathy or mainstream medicine? He also claimed that homeopathy was reducing the number of parents having their children vaccinated which involves entangling a seriously imbalanced wavefield of toxicity with the wavefields of children. What could possibly go wrong? Simon Stevens, Sally Davies, and their like are infected by the mainstream disease that says: If we can't explain something it can't be happening. How can homeopathy be understood when your view of the body comes from Big Pharma-controlled (Cult-controlled) medical schools and professional bodies that police what doctors must believe and what treatments they can and cannot prescribe? A big problem that the Mainstream Everything has with homeopathy is that treatments (based on flowers and other natural substances) are diluted so many times that no 'physical' substance remains. The UK newspaper article said '... scientists argue that the cures are so diluted they are unlikely to contain any of the original substance'. In the isolated Body-Minds of the Mainstream Everything 'no physical' must by definition mean 'no possible effect'. Excuse me while I have a quick yawn. Another experiment by the team at the Aerospace Institute in Stuttgart involved a flower dipped into a tank of water and immediately removed. They then photographed droplets from the tank and found that every single one contained the information of the flower. How come? Wave information from the flower entangled with the wavefield of the water. It is not the *substance* that affects health in homeopathy. It is the wavefield *frequency information* of the substance which interacts with the wavefield of the body and as the Stuttgart experiment showed the wave information remains in the water when the substance has gone. Russian researcher Dr Vladimir Poponin found the same phenomenon in an experiment beaming a laser through DNA. When the 'physical' DNA was removed it remained in the laser in energetic *waves* in the same way as the flower in the water. This is known as the 'Phantom DNA Effect' when there is nothing 'phantom' about it at all. It is the wavefield effect. I would just say before I move on that while the basis of homeopathy can be explained (even though homeopaths I have met didn't know) the quality of the practitioner is as always crucial and not every problem will necessarily respond. Every situation can be different because of the wavefield differences involved with patients in different mental and emotional states.

All together now ...



Figure 128: We are constantly interacting with The Field as computers interact with Wi-Fi.

We are constantly emitting waves of thought, emotion and awareness into the collective field and in this way our own states of being are transmitted into the energy ‘sea’ – The Field – with which we are all connected and constantly interacting. The dominant waves (collective state of being) impact upon on everything connected with The Field and that means ‘us’ and the entirety of the natural world. What effect through The Field must Cult-instigated, technologically-generated radiation and 5G be having on all of us along with animals, birds, insects, trees, and all the rest? Technology waves are scrambling the radar systems of birds, whales and dolphins that use The Field to navigate. Among the consequences are birds losing their way and whales and dolphins beaching themselves. One level of The Field is the Earth’s magnetic field and we are affecting that with every thought and emotion. In turn, it affects us as an expression of The Field. The Cult’s central goal is to control the wave nature of The Field by making this as low-vibrational and disharmonious as possible through maintaining humanity in a low-vibration emotional state and by infusing The Field with technological frequency waves designed specifically to distort heart and Body-Mind communication systems. How do you affect all the fish at the same time? You affect the sea. The relationship with humanity and The Field is exactly the same ([Fig 128](#)). The Climate Cult and its Green Party political wing have been manipulated into such an obsession with the hoax of human-caused ‘global warming’ they are not interested in the effect on humanity and the natural world of the radiation tidal wave. The UK Green Party even denied its own members the right to debate 5G at a party conference and threatened a member protesting about this outside the hall with the police. To say it is not the party that I joined in the 1980s is to seriously underestimate. The Green Party, like the Climate Cult in general, has been seconded to the agenda of *the Cult*. Sadly this movement overall is in such a state of unconsciousness that it has no idea there even is a Cult, never mind that it is driving their agenda. The good news is that we neither have to add low-vibration to The Field or be affected by its low-vibrational chaotic state. We can change the nature of the waves we are emitting by opening our hearts and generating high-frequency waves which also block wave entanglement with low-frequency waves in The Field. We can interact with The Field on another level of frequency and be empowered rather than drained and disrupted. All roads out of here lead to and from the heart.

Global heart



Figure 129: If we connected and interacted through the heart the world would be transformed.

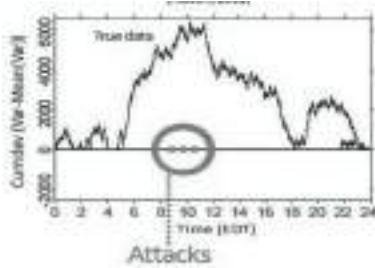


Figure 130: What happen to the Earth field when the world became aware of the 9/11 attacks.

We can see from all this the incredible impact that we can have on The Field and The Field has on us. I have discussed how this plays out in sports teams and it applies to all groups including families and work colleagues. HeartMath Institute research revealed that those in heart-mind (frequency) coherence reflect this personal harmony in collective harmony when they work together or interact ([Fig 129](#)). The opposite is the case with those in heart-mind incoherence through emotional imbalance. People in coherence or incoherence can transfer their state of being to others through wave entanglement as the dominant state prevails. The same process happens nationally and globally through The Field and our mental, emotional and heart resonance can bring about global societal coherence and cooperation or tear the world asunder. Hitler and the Nazis were dark occultists who understood how this works and they infused The Field in mid-20th century Germany with their frequencies to such an extent that they hijacked the Body-Mind of much of the German nation. To see a microcosm of the technique watch footage of Hitler's rallies in which music, marching and colour were used together with Hitler's carefully-crafted (wavefield) speeches to so dominate the frequency nature of The Field that vast audiences were transformed into a rabid frenzy with their own fields adding to the collective power of the event. Hitler was described as 'magnetic' as in 'magnetic personality' which is another description of electromagnetic wavefield energy. The focus of the crowd (entanglement) on his field, however, was the source of so much of this 'magnetism'. Talk about 'give me your power'. The Cult targets human and emotional perception to continually infuse low-frequency waves into The Field which then circulate back in a perpetual/perceptual feedback loop to humanity. We can break this cycle with the heart. We are being manipulated to create the feedback loop and we have the power to delete it. The HeartMath Institute has positioned sensors around the world to measure changes in the Earth's magnetic field which have related to events that cause major impacts on collective human emotion. They identified an enormous spike in the Earth field in precisely the period that the global population was learning about the attacks of 9/11 ([Fig 130](#)). The point is that this interactive effect does not have to be negative. Infinite Love in all its expressions is far more powerful than negativity and we can change the wave frequencies of The Field. Whether we will do that is our choice, but we *can*. We saw a simple example with the focused intent of love transforming the wave state of polluted water and its crystals. How do we change the 'world'? We change ourselves because the world is a collective manifestation of *us*. There is much more on that to come and the HeartMath Institute has many techniques to develop heart-mind coherence. See back of the book for the website.

Love – the ultimate strength

I have heard it said that love is weakness and marginal to changing anything. Change only comes when you 'put your mind to it' and hate your oppressors (who are only a vehicle for suppressing yourself through wave entanglement). What an utter misunderstanding of the love I am talking about. I am not referring to human or attraction love, but to something infinitely greater. The very word has become so misrepresented I only use it in the absence of a term more appropriate. Infinite Love, unconditional love, is the nearest we can get with human language which has not developed, certainly in the West, to

describe what it doesn't understand. I have said that love is without fear and will always do what it *knows* to be right. This deletes weakness from the equation immediately before we take another step.

'Weakness', both in thought and action, is always a manifestation of fear. On that basis alone love in its most powerful form is the absence of fear and the ultimate strength. Love doesn't consider consequences for doing what it knows to be right – it just does it. Nor does love always do what others would like it to do. Often love means doing the opposite. Is it love to give your children everything they ever ask for and protect them from every emotional upset and then they go out into the world and can't cope with its challenges? Or is it love to help them build inner strength and self-confidence in their growing-up years to face and overcome challenges and ensure that when they enter the adult world they have all they need to deal with it? We are now seeing the consequences for many young people of this misguided 'love' with 'helicopter' parents fussing over their offspring at every turn and producing what are called 'cotton wool kids' who then go on to the programming centres of college and university. They are the self-styled 'Woke' generation with an extraordinary sense of narcissistic entitlement (anything you want upbringing) and hurl their toys from the pram when adult society does not continue where their parents left off. More than that the Woke mentality has been infused with psychological weakness that makes people babes-in-arms to a system that claims to be protecting them by taking their freedom away (and everyone else's which is the point of the exercise). 'Wokers' are the foot soldiers and (Twitter) storm troopers of the Cult's agenda to delete all freedom with freedom of speech at the top of the list. Love in its true sense would have intervened long ago to head off this personal and collective disaster and in doing so parents would have faced much hostility: 'How can you say I can't have that?'; 'How can you say I can't do that?'; and, with due irony – 'You clearly don't love me.' Love, in fact, has many facets and faces and what pulls them together in unity is doing what you know to be right.

There is the myth that to 'love your enemies' means to lie down and let them walk all over you. How can it be 'right' to accept domination by others imposing their will upon you? Love won't stand for that and, in the absence of fear, *absolutely* won't stand for that. Love is also the self-love of self-respect that will not be cowered into submission. If you want to see stubborn in action try telling Infinite Love that it must not do what it knows to be right. You don't have to hate your perceived oppressors. Just don't stand for their impositions on your life and the lives of others. No hatred necessary. What we hate we entangle with and become. If I make a wave connection with the Cult it will be on *my* frequency not theirs. For this to happen I have to love them by my definition of love which involves compassion and understanding for why they are what they are. Their actions come from their perceptions and self-identity which are formed with their heart centres closed to the influence of *The One*. Would you like to be them? What a nightmare to be so isolated from love, for self and others, that you desire to hurt and dominate everyone else. They need our compassion – but NOT our acquiescence. Fake 'love' is everywhere and by that I mean 'love' only by word and facial expression and not by deed or heart-based integrity. I have met many 'New Agers' and observed endless Wokers who present the persona (mask) of being loving because that is what they want others (and themselves) to believe they are. Instead I have experienced a long list of New Agers (though *far* from all) who have been among the most unloving, manipulative self-deceivers I have come across in any walk of life. Wokers claim to be loving, compassionate, warriors for social justice while seeking to destroy the freedom, careers and livelihoods of those who don't agree with them. There is no empathy with anyone they target and no place for forgiveness amid their clenched-teeth fury for those who transgress the Woke tyranny which calls itself with more breathtaking irony 'anti-hate'. We urgently need a mass re-evaluation of what love is before we can get anywhere and when the truth about love sinks in we'll be able to get *everywhere*. I will develop all these themes as we go along.

So who are you? You are your heart. Who are we? We are all *One* heart. Why don't we live like that? The Cult doesn't want it. Is the Cult all powerful? No – *we* are *when* we follow our heart.

CHAPTER FIVE

Where are we?

You are deluded if you think that the world around you is a physical construct separate from your own mind – Kevin Michel

Yeah, good question in the chapter title. Where the hell *are* we? What is this ‘place’? Isn’t it amazing that so little consideration is devoted in the mainstream media to asking these profound and fundamental questions? But, then, if the Cult doesn’t want them to be asked the Cult-controlled media is not going to ask them in any way that is both deep and consistent.

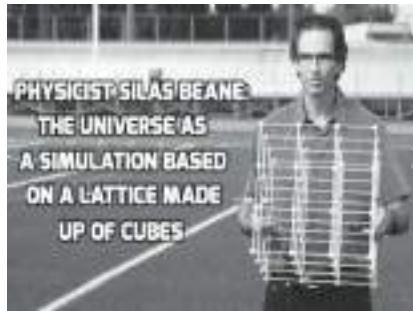


Figure 131: Silas Beane and the proposed cube structure of the simulation/matrix.

You see the odd snippet here and there about ‘scientists discover’ this; ‘scientific studies reveal’ that; or ‘scientists think’ something or other. Dots are rarely if ever connected and nor the truth about reality pursued with vigour in search of answers. Surely who are we and where we are should be at the forefront of human inquiry? Well, once again, not if those manipulating society don’t want their targets to know who they are and where they are because if they did it would change everything. I have written at length in *Everything You Need To Know* about my long-held view that we are experiencing some kind of simulation akin to an interactive virtual reality game. I came to this conclusion and began writing about it just after the turn of the millennium although I had considered the possibility before. In recent years an increasing number of even mainstream scientists have said the emerging evidence points to precisely that. Among them is Rich Terrile, director of the Center for Evolutionary Computation and Automated Design at NASA’s Jet Propulsion Laboratory, who went public a few years ago with his belief that the Universe is a digital hologram (true). He also made the obvious point that if reality is a holographic construct some form of intelligence must have created it. This fits with my own contention since the 1990s that an unseen force is manipulating our reality. American nuclear physicist Silas Beane led a team at the University of Bonn in Germany which explored the question of whether our reality is a simulation similar to the one portrayed in the *Matrix* movie series. They decided that it most likely was and Beane proposed that it could be cube-like in nature ([Fig 131](#)). I have been saying for decades that the speed of light is not

the fastest speed possible and my view is that this speed in fact represents the outer firewall of the simulation or Matrix. ‘Light’ and the electromagnetic spectrum is therefore the *Matrix* that we believe to be the ‘world’. Morpheus said in *The Matrix* movie: ‘You live in a dreamworld, Neo.’ And we do. Scientific orthodoxy claims that the speed of light – 186,000 miles per second – is the fastest speed possible; but then it also believes in the ‘Big Bang’ some 13.7 billion years ago when it claims the Universe was compressed into the nucleus of an atom which they call the ‘singularity’. They say this then exploded to create subatomic particles, energy, matter, space, time, planets, stars, and Ethel on the checkout. American writer and researcher Terence McKenna described Big Bang theory in these terms:

... give us one free miracle, and we will roll from that point forward – from the birth of time to the crack of doom! – just one free miracle, and then it will all unravel according to natural law, and these bizarre equations which nobody can understand but which are so holy in this enterprise.

Another observer brilliantly compared the chances of the Universe evolving by random accident as like a hurricane sweeping through a scrapyard and assembling a Jumbo Jet. Physicist Silas Beane points out that simply *being* a simulation would create its own ‘laws of physics’ that would limit possibility. I say this limit is the speed of light within which ‘time’ and ‘space’ are encoded within our holographic reality. Near-death survivors have described how the ‘light’ they experienced outside the body is not the same as sunlight (the speed of light). ‘It’s not like the light that burns your eyes’, one said, ‘not like sunlight’. I have been writing for a long time that sunlight is the Matrix or simulation. Virtual reality games and simulations have their own laws of physics and limitations which are encoded by the designer and our reality is in principle the same. The ‘laws of physics’ perceived by mainstream science are merely encoded limitations of the simulation and so near-death experiencers describe a very different reality and limitless possibility when they withdraw from the body which entangled them with the simulation and focused their attention within its illusions. Mainstream scientists are the ‘academics’ in Plato’s cave studying the shadows on the wall (simulation) while believing them to be ‘real’. Being ‘human’ is like donning a headset in a computer simulation with the five senses decoding the simulation into apparent ‘natural’ reality ([Fig 132](#)). The Silas Beane team in Bonn discovered that cosmic rays align with a specific lattice pattern of cubes which they suggested could be the foundation of the simulation construct. Cosmic rays are ‘atom fragments’ that rain down on the Earth at the speed of light from outside of the solar system. The [Space.com](#) website says:



Figure 132: The ‘real world’.

Discovered in 1912, many things about cosmic rays remain a mystery more than a century later. One prime example is exactly where they are coming from. Most scientists suspect their origins are related to supernovas (star explosions), but the challenge is that for many years cosmic ray origins appeared uniform to observatories examining the entire sky.



Figure 133: A standing wave created by the oscillation of two forces of equal strength pushing against each other.

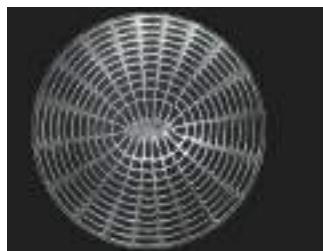


Figure 134: Cymatics image created by a sound vibration. Particles form together to reflect the frequency/vibration and in short the frequency/vibration is made ‘physically’ manifest. Change the vibration and the particles will re-form to reflect that. Image from Cymascope.com.

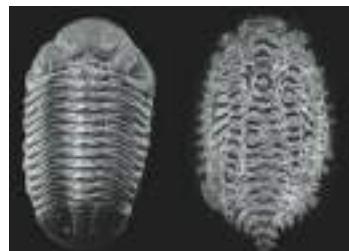


Figure 135: A stone alongside a cymatics image created by vibration. Images from Cymascope.com.



Figure 136: Real starfish and cymatics vibration starfish. Images from Cymascope.com.

Cosmic rays are actually an information source of the Matrix or simulation. The Bonn team highlighted what is known as the GZK cutoff (the Greisen-Zatsepin-Kuzmin limit). This is a boundary for cosmic ray particles that results from the interaction with cosmic background radiation. The process involves particles called ‘pions’ which I initially took to be the human race. The team’s paper ‘Constraints on the Universe as a Numerical Simulation’, says the GZK cut-off ‘pattern of constraint’ is exactly what you would find with a computer simulation. The consequence of this for human perception is described in these terms: ‘Like a prisoner in a pitch-black cell we would not be able to see the “walls” of our prison.’ This is correct although we have given the walls a name – the speed of light – which appears to be the

fastest speed when in truth it represents the limits of Body-Mind decoded perception. Consciousness can communicate instantly beyond the bounds of 'light' because it operates at frequencies outside the simulation. We are constantly communicating at faster-than-light speeds while our conscious perception is dictated by the brain decoding information within the frequency band of the simulation. The foundation construct of the 'Matrix' is formed by standing waves of energy and information. Standing waves 'stand' when held within an area of limitation (in this case the speed of light). Waves flow one way, strike a limiting obstacle and flow in the reverse direction to create an interaction in which the two opposing flows cancel each other out and oscillate 'on the spot' ([Fig 133](#)). It's like two people running in opposite directions and when they meet they both jog on the spot as they block each other's forward movement. Standing waves can be created by frequencies which act as the limitation and cause them to oscillate without forward momentum and they can also be formed by vibration. The principle can be seen in what is known as 'cymatics' which creates form through ... *vibration generating standing waves*. Particles or another medium are spread on a metal plate and when sound frequencies are introduced they form into patterns that reflect the frequency involved ([Figs 134, 135 and 136](#)). Cymatic patterns formed by sound vibration are standing waves that will remain in place until the frequency changes and then they will transform into another pattern to sync with the new frequency. This is how frequency waves create 'matter' and form. You can see videos of standing waves and cymatics on YouTube with these key words: 'Standing Waves.mov' and 'Cymatics full documentary bringing matter to life with sound'. A very good cymatics website is [Cymascope.com](#). A closed mind is also a standing wave as it oscillates within the perception Bubble to the frequency of lies and illusions ([Fig 137](#)).



Figure 137: A closed mind or Bubble is a standing wave oscillating on the spot and going nowhere.

Standing wave reality



Figure 138: Compare a standing wave



Figure 139: ... with DNA. Another coincidence? No chance.



Figure 140: The hexagram or ‘Star of David’ is a sound frequency vibration as confirmed by this one made by sound passing through a liquid medium. This is the symbol on the flag of Israel and from which the name Rothschild (Red-Shield) derives. It is also the symbol of Saturn which its frequency reflects.



Figure 141: A hexagon manifested in the same way from sound. All symbols – all *form* – are standing waves created by vibration/oscillation.

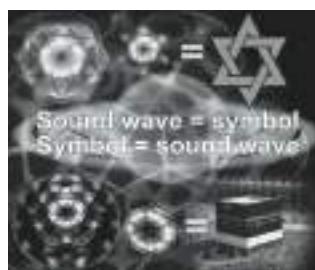


Figure 142: The hexagram/Star of David and cube (remember Silas Beane’s cube Matrix) are ancient symbols of Saturn because they are reflections of its frequency. The black cube in particular is a Saturn symbol and you have the black cube in Mecca, the holy place of Islam, and the Israeli ‘security’ company connected to Israel intelligence agency Mossad called Black Cube. The Jewish holy day of the week is Saturday or Saturn-day.

The Universe (simulation) is a standing wave and everything within the Universe including the human body. Now what are classic examples of standing waves? *Holograms*. You see how all the strands come together if you pursue reality with an open mind. The two wave sources that collide on a holographic print interact with each other to create a *standing wave* which when decoded appears as apparently three-dimensional form. Standing waves, holograms and cymatics are all versions of the same phenomenon. The heart oscillates – beats – with the body standing wave. When we talk of emotion affecting heart rhythms we are describing how emotion waves are affecting the rhythm of the body standing wave and the rhythm of the heart wave. While the standing wave is oscillating the form is ‘alive’ and when it stops this is ‘death’. Our minds are entangled with the standing wave oscillation and when that ceases we are released from the body. People can ‘lose the will to live’ and generate such energetic density (slow oscillation) through their mind and emotional wave states that the standing wave rhythm can cease. Dying from a broken heart is one example. In the same way mind and emotion waves of a different kind can empower the standing wave and bring it back from the brink of ‘death’. People cry ‘it’s a miracle’ when it is really wave interaction. Many near-death experiencers have returned to find their body healed of what nearly killed them. Their out-of-body experience changed their perceptions which changed their wavefield state which changed their body. DNA is a receiver-transmitter standing wave as a holographic representation of the universal wave. Check what DNA looks like compared with a standing wave ([Figs 138 and 139](#)). German biophysicist Fritz-Albert Popp discovered that DNA vibrates or oscillates to a particular frequency and this has been confirmed many times since by cutting-edge scientists and researchers. ‘Matter’ is the manifestation of standing waves resonating to different frequencies and that applies even to symbols which is why the Cult employs them throughout global society. Symbols are holographic manifestations of particular frequencies and they are placed all around us to influence human perception through sound vibration and wave entanglement. You will recognise the ones in

[Figures 140](#) and [141](#) which were created by passing sound at specific frequencies through a liquid medium. Frequency and form are different expressions of the same information and interestingly the hexagram ('Star of David' on the flag of Israel) and the cube are both symbols of Saturn ([Fig 142](#)). I expose the reasons for that in depth in *Everything You Need To Know* and it relates to the simulation. The very name 'Rothschild' from the German 'Red Shield' comes from the red hexagram on the family home in Frankfurt in the 18th and 19th centuries. Dynasty founder and Sabbatian-Frankist cultist Mayer Amschel Rothschild is known as the 'founding father of international finance'. He also founded the Cult's Illuminati. Everything connects in the end. Famous American esoteric and occult writer Manly P. Hall rightly described the power and significance of symbols in these terms: 'When the human race learns to read the language of symbols, a great veil will fall from the eyes of men.' While they remain undecoded those same Cult symbols are part of that veil.

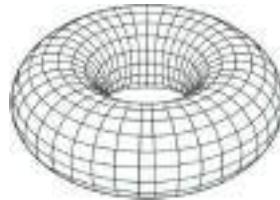


Figure 143: The shape of the Universe says 'ground-breaking' scientific study published in 2019. The torus nature of the Universe was in my books long before.

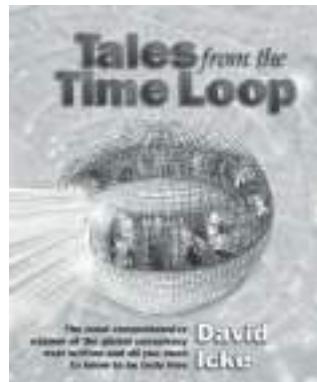


Figure 144: The front cover of my book *Tales From The Time Loop* published in 2003 which portrayed our reality as a torus ring passing through an illusory looped sequence of 'time'.



Figure 145: The torus in the human eye.



Figure 146: The Large Hadron Collider at CERN in Switzerland.



Figure 147: The Cern ring, or rings, remind me of a mini-version of the simulation.

Scientists announced the results of a ‘paradigm-shifting’ study in 2019 that found the Universe to be a closed loop in the shape of a torus or doughnut. Eleonora Di Valentino at Manchester University led an international team of astronomers studying data from the European Space Agency’s Planck satellite. They concluded that the Universe is a curved, closed and inflating sphere. Di Valentino called the findings a ‘cosmological crisis’ that warrants a ‘drastic rethinking of the current cosmological concordance model’. What kept them? I have written in previous books about the Universe being a closed loop shaped like a doughnut or ‘torus’ ([Fig 143](#)). I even named one book, published in 2003, *Tales from the Time Loop*, with the torus simulation symbolised on the cover ([Fig 144](#)). A torus can also be found in the human eye – as above, so below ([Fig 145](#)). The Universe is a closed loop because it’s a simulation within the frequency band of ‘the speed of light’. It is a wavefield construct decoded into a holographic closed loop which can be breached only by consciousness expanded beyond Body-Mind. You can liken this ‘loop’ to the Large Hadron Collider, the world’s most powerful particle accelerator, at the European Organization for Nuclear Research (CERN) in Switzerland ([Fig 146](#)). I address what this multi-billion operation is really about in *Everything You Need To Know* and it’s not the reason they’re telling us. The Collider is a ring tunnel or tube of superconducting magnets that extends for 17 miles hundreds of feet below ground across the Swiss-French border. Proton particles (waves) travel within the ring at the speed of light in both directions to crash into each other. Protons complete 11,245 circuits of the ring every second ([Fig 147](#)). It’s a long story why they do this which I tell in *Everything*. I mention the Hadron Collider here as a visual representation of the torus universe. Imagine being within that enclosed tube circuit while not knowing it was enclosed and decoding the circulating energy/information into a holographic world completely different to the tube as it would otherwise appear in an undecoded state. You would think that time was moving ‘forward’ when you were really in a loop. Where you were in the loop you would call the present and from that you would perceive ‘past’ and ‘future’. Human reality is actually a cycle in the NOW. The image symbolising this in [Figure 148](#) overleaf is from my *Human Race Get Off Your Knees* published in 2010. It is my contention that universal cycles such as the Great Year (nearly 26,000 years), Hindu Yugas or epochs, and the Mayan calendar of distinct periods or ‘counts’ are measuring cycles of the simulation program. Some researchers have identified points in these cycles when global catastrophes have happened many times which deleted most of what existed before along with knowledge of what life was like. ‘Known’ human history is a fraction of what has happened and fantastic ancient structures that we would struggle to build today are evidence that the apparent upwards progression from primitive people to the modern world is a fantasy. A simulation with ‘rebooting’ points would be a major way to isolate humanity in perceptual illusion.



Figure 148: The Time Loop ‘universe’ which we decode into illusory ‘physical’ reality and experience as the ‘human world’.

I am of the Light.’ Okay, but which Light?



Figure 149: I have seen the wrong kind of light.



Figure 150: The pyramid and all-seeing eye symbol of the Cult on the dollar bill as well as the reverse of the Great Seal of the United States and endless other guises.



Figure 151: The Statue of Liberty was given to New York by French Freemasons in Paris who knew what it really represented.



Figure 152: A mirror of the Statue of Liberty on an island in the River Seine in Paris.

This background explains many mysteries and indicates the knowledge hidden within the Cult. When people worship ‘the light’ they are worshipping their own perceptual prison ([Fig 149](#)). We can further understand why one of the hero ‘gods’ of the Cult is Lucifer, the *Light Bringer*. Yes, the bringer of the *simulation*. ‘Lucifer’ is portrayed as a ‘Fallen Angel’ – the Biblical term to describe the non-human force that manipulates through its hybrid human/non-human lackeys (the Cult Nephilim bloodlines) operating within the simulation along the lines of Agent Smith and company in *The Matrix* movies. If you have not seen the *Matrix* trilogy it is recommended – especially the first one – to get a feel for what our reality is and how we are manipulated. ‘Fallen Angel’ by my definition means those who have closed their heart centres to a connection with *The One* and now seek to do the same with humanity to assimilate human Body-Mind awareness into their own. This is what smart technology and artificial intelligence is really all about as we shall see. The so-called Lucifer ‘revolt against God’ is said to have followed his refusal to ‘return God’s love’ (closed heart centre) and set out to be ‘as powerful as his creator’. ‘Lucifer’ is also referred to as Satan and the Devil which are described in the Bible in reptilian terms as with the ‘Great Dragon’ and ‘that ancient serpent’. In turn Cult bloodlines are human-reptilian hybrids that worship their hidden masters through *Satanism*. I expose in *The Trigger* the Sabbatian-Frankism network within the Cult that was really responsible for 9/11. This aspect of the Cult is named after its inspirations, Sabbatai Zevi (1626-1676) and Jacob Frank (1726-1791), as I mentioned earlier. Sabbatian-Frankism hates Judaism and Jewishness and yet has manipulated itself into control of Israel and its global nexus while the great majority of Jewish people have no idea Sabbatian-Frankism even exists. We have the familiar theme of Lucifer worship with Jacob Frank who said Lucifer is the true god. The Kabbalah, or Kabala/Cabala, the Jewish bible of mysticism and esoteric belief, is the holy book of Sabbatian-Frankists and in particular the series of works called the Zohar which means ‘splendour’ and ‘radiance’ (light). From this came the concept of being ‘illuminated’ (kundalini activation) and the name of a highly significant grouping within the Cult known as the ‘Illuminati’ with its symbol of the ‘all-seeing eye’ which you see on the dollar bill and the reverse of the Great Seal of the United States ([Fig 150](#)). This elite satanic secret society was established in 1776 by three Sabbatian-Frankist cultists, Jacob Frank, Meyer Amstel Rothschild, founder of the Rothschild (Redshield/hexagram/Saturn) financial dynasty, and its frontman, Jesuit-trained fake ‘Jew’ Adam Weishaupt. The theme of Lucifer the Light Bringer (*simulation*) is widely on public display if you know what to look for and one example is the Statue of Liberty holding the lighted torch of ‘illumination’. The statue was given to New York by French Freemasons in Paris who knew the true meaning and a mirror image ‘Liberty’ stands on an island in the River Seine in the French capital ([Figs 151](#) and [152](#)). Freemasonry worships Lucifer as the ‘Great/Grand Architect of the Universe’ – the architect of the *simulation*. The same symbolism of the ‘Architect’ can be found in the *Matrix* movies which portrays him as the one who built the Matrix. You’ll find all the fine detail on these subjects and so much more in *Everything You Need To Know*.

Simulation science and numbers



Figure 153: Binary codes of 0 and 1 representing on-off electrical charges in computer systems.

DISCONTINUATION ANALYSIS
OF THERAPEUTIC AGENTS
IN THE TREATMENT OF
ACUTE MYELOID LEUKEMIA
AND CHRONIC MYEOLYTIC
LEUKEMIA. PART ONE: THE
DISCONTINUATION OF
THERAPEUTIC AGENTS
IN THE TREATMENT OF
ACUTE MYELOID LEUKEMIA.
DISCONTINUATION ANALYSIS
OF THERAPEUTIC AGENTS
IN THE TREATMENT OF
CHRONIC MYEOLYTIC
LEUKEMIA. PART TWO:
DISCONTINUATION OF
THERAPEUTIC AGENTS
IN THE TREATMENT OF
CHRONIC MYEOLYTIC
LEUKEMIA.

Figure 154: The A, C, G and T codes of DNA which also have binary values.



Figure 155: The digital codes of the Matrix portrayed on computer screens in the movie series.



Figure 156: The physics and mathematics of video games and virtual reality is the same as our experienced reality.

Another mainstream scientist who has pursued evidence for a simulation is James Gates, an American theoretical physicist who has been Professor of Physics at the University of Maryland, Director of The Center for String and Particle Theory, and served on the Council of Advisors on Science and Technology to President Obama. A Gates-led team discovered computer codes of digital data embedded in the energetic fabric of our reality which take the form of 1 and 0 – the binary system used in computers of on-off electrical charges which looks so similar to codes of the Matrix in the movies and the A, C, G, and T codes that make up DNA and also have binary values ([Figs 153](#) and [154](#)). These codes and their relationships with each other decide what the ‘physical’ form looks like. Differences in coding between a human and rat are marginal yet their form is fundamentally different. DNA codes have digital binary values of A and C = 0 and G and T = 1. DNA code sequences look like binary number coding and the numbers on the computer screens in the *Matrix* movie series depicting the digital basis of the reality simulation ([Fig 155](#)). James Gates said they had no idea what digital computer codes were doing in the fabric of our reality, but this can be explained if we are dealing with a simulation. The Gates team also found error-correcting codes or block codes within the energetic fabric of reality. These are mathematical sequences employed in computers that return data to its original state or ‘default settings’ when something knocks it out of kilter. They would be necessary to hold the simulation together in the face of forces impacting upon it. Gates said they found a set of equations embedded in reality that were indistinguishable from those that drive search engines and browsers. The Internet and digital technology in general are actually mimicking the simulation to create a simulation within a simulation and enslave human Body-Mind in more extreme states of illusion and isolation than even the main simulation itself. I have said already that one level of our reality – the simulation – is digital and that the ‘physical’ world from the Universe downwards consists of digital holograms. Numerology reads reality at this level of numbers and Max Tegmark, a physicist at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT), said: ‘The

Universe can be entirely described by numbers and maths.' Tegmark, author of *Our Mathematical Universe*, says reality is encoded with numbers and mathematics in the same way as computer games and the physics of our reality and computer games are basically the same ([Fig 156](#)). He compares human experience with characters in advanced games. The characters would think because of the software codes that they were bumping into real objects, falling in love and feeling emotions. Eventually they might study the workings of the game more deeply and realise that everything (as with our reality on one level) was made of pixels. They would see that what they thought was 'physical' was in fact just numbers.

Tegmark then relates this to human reality:

And we're exactly in this situation in our world. We look around and it doesn't seem that mathematical at all, but everything we see is made out of elementary particles like quarks and electrons. And what properties does an electron have? Does it have a smell or a colour or a texture? No! ... We physicists have come up with geeky names for [electron] properties, like electric charge, or spin, or lepton number, but the electron doesn't care what we call it, the properties are just numbers.

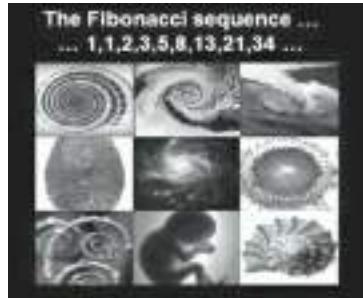


Figure 157: The Fibonacci number sequence can be found throughout our reality.

Everything these scientists are uncovering is what you would expect to see if we live in some sort of simulation. There is also the ancient concept of 'divine proportion' which is the term given to mathematical and geometrical sequences found throughout our reality, the 'natural' world and the human body (holographic as above, so below, once again). Initiates of the hidden knowledge understood these sequences and gave them names such as Phi, Pi, Golden Mean, Golden Ratio and Golden Section. They encoded them into their temples, cathedrals and important buildings to attract – entangle – with particular energies/information and frequencies to connect them with 'God', or 'the gods'. Artists like the initiate Leonardo Da Vinci encoded these proportions or ratios into their paintings. Da Vinci was so 'ahead of his time' because he understood reality by tapping into awareness outside the simulation and he would have had close associations with secret societies. The number of Golden Ratio is 1.61803398874989484820 ... which then goes on repeating indefinitely. Golden Ratio proportion comes from 'dividing a line into two parts so that the longer part divided by the smaller part is also equal to the whole length divided by the longer part'. Put simply it is a sequence that can be found everywhere and is obviously there by design and not chance. Another ubiquitous sequence is the Fibonacci number code which was identified at least in ancient India by a mathematician called Virahanka, but gets its name from the 12th/13th century Italian mathematician Fibonacci also known as Leonardo of Pisa. The Fibonacci sequence adds the two previous numbers to get the next one, as with ... 1, 1, 2, 3, 5, 8, 13, 21, 34, 55, and so on. The higher it goes the closer it gets to the Golden Ratio. The Fibonacci sequence is encoded in everything from the human face and body to animals, DNA, seed heads, pine cones, trees, shells, spiral galaxies, hurricanes and the number of petals in a flower ([Figs 157](#) and [158](#)). Then we have fractal patterns encoded in the fabric of reality and once again they are everywhere. Fractals are a 'never-ending pattern that is infinitely complex and self-similar across different scales' – the as above, so below, characteristics of holograms ([Figs 159](#) and [160](#)). Fractal patterns can be found in:



Figure 158: Fibonacci numbers are encoded in the ways that shells form.

River networks, mountain ranges, craters, lightning bolts, coastlines, mountain goat horns, trees and branch growth, animal colour patterns, pineapples, heart rates, heartbeats, neurons and brains, eyes, respiratory systems, circulatory systems, blood vessels and pulmonary vessels, DNA, geological fault lines, earthquakes, snowflakes, crystals, ocean waves, vegetables, soil pores and even the rings of Saturn (again).



Figure 159: Repeating holographic fractal patterns are found everywhere.



Figure 160: Fractal patterns are found in the torus of the human eye.



Figure 161: Binary DNA.

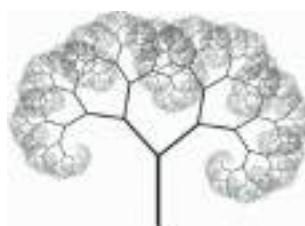


Figure 162: The way a tree grows follows fractal patterns.

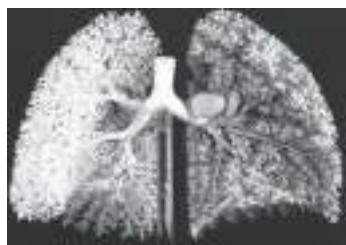


Figure 163: Fractal patterns in the human lung.

Fractal/holographic patterns are found in binary 1 and 0 on-off electrical charges encoded in our energetic reality that are also found in the DNA receiver-transmitter ‘hard drive’ of the body ([Fig 161](#)). A science paper captured the essence of DNA with its heading: ‘DNA is a Fractal Antenna in Electromagnetic Fields.’ DNA is a receiver-transmitter of information and is digital, binary, holographic and fractal because our experienced reality is digital, binary, holographic and fractal. American psychology professor David Pincus has said that as above, so below, repeating fractal patterns have been identified in psychology, behaviour, speech patterns and interpersonal relationships which begs the question of how much human behaviour comes from ‘free will’ and how much from simply following the simulation program? I’ll have more about this later. Fractal principles relate to ‘symmetrical mathematics’ which are ‘one shape being exactly like another’ when you move it, turn it, flip it or slide it. Symmetrical mathematics are found in everything from the way trees grow to the structure of the human lung ([Figs 162](#) and [163](#)). Dmitri Krioukov, a physicist at the University of California, San Diego, was coauthor of a study reported in *Nature’s Scientific Reports* which suggested that ‘undiscovered and fundamental laws’ may govern the growth of systems on all levels from electrical firing between brain cells to the growth of social networks and expansion of galaxies’ (the holographic principle *yet again*). Krioukov said: ‘Natural growth dynamics are the same for different real networks, like the Internet or the brain or social networks.’ He added that ‘for a physicist it’s an immediate signal that there is some missing understanding of how nature works.’ What’s missing is the understanding that we are dealing with a holographic simulation. The work of Krioukov and his team was reported by the *Huffington Post*:

When the team compared the Universe’s history with growth of social networks and brain circuits, they found all the networks expanded in similar ways: They balanced links between similar nodes with ones that already had many connections.

For instance, a cat lover surfing the Internet may visit mega-sites such as Google or Yahoo, but will also browse cat fancier websites or YouTube kitten videos. In the same way, neighboring brain cells like to connect, but neurons also link to such ‘Google brain cells’ that are hooked up to loads of other brain cells. The eerie similarity between networks large and small is unlikely to be a coincidence, Krioukov said.

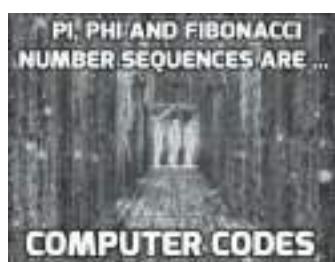


Figure 164: Bingo! Computer codes of the simulation.

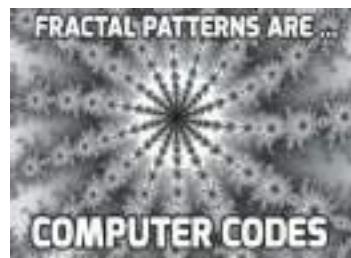


Figure 165: Bingo! Computer codes of the simulation.

What are all these recurring mathematical sequences that pervade our reality? I say they are the *computer codes* of the simulation ([Figs 164](#) and [165](#)). I watched a presentation by Donald Hoffman, a professor in the Department of Cognitive Sciences at the University of California, Irvine, in which he described his concept of our experienced reality acting like a computer interface which I agree that it does:

Evolution shaped us with a user interface that hides the truth. Nothing that we see is the truth – the very language of space and time and objects is the wrong language to describe reality.

I contend that it was not evolution which shaped this, but manipulation. The computer interface – the equivalent of a computer screen – is the simulation which gives a false sense of reality to hide the fact that it *is* a simulation.

Electric Universe (simulation)



Figure 166: Lightning is the most obvious example of an electric atmosphere.



Figure 167: The electrical phenomena of the Northern Lights or Aurora Borealis.



Figure 168: We see the heavens as stars and planets and space, but that's only one level.



Figure 169: On another level the Universe – or simulation – is a vast electrical system.



Figure 170: The simulation is an electrical/electromagnetic system which interacts with the human body and brain and overlays a fake reality to obscure prime reality. I call it the Cosmic Internet. (Image Neil Hague.)



Figure 171: Galaxies are ‘embedded in the same ‘large scale structure’ – the simulation.

A major pointer to a simulation comes with a highly-compelling area of independent scientific research that reveals the Universe to be an electrical/electromagnetic communication system which is how computers and virtual reality work. The research is known collectively and appropriately as the Electric Universe and also the Thunderbolts Project. I have been reading and watching their information for many years and you can find them at www.thunderbolts.info/wp. Everything from the Universe to the human body/brain is on one level an electrical/electromagnetic communication system. The electrical nature of the atmosphere can clearly be seen in lightning, the Aurora Borealis or northern lights, and the rapidly-rotating electromagnetic fields of tornadoes that appear during electrical storms (Figs 166 and 167 overleaf). The electrical fabric of our reality, however, goes much deeper than that. Electricity and electromagnetism pervade everything and Electric Universe researchers say that planets and stars are points or ‘devices’ in a colossal electrical circuitry that we experience as reality and see as the night sky (Figs 168 and 169 overleaf). The electrical impact on this circuitry of planets, stars and their combinations is another level of how astrology works and all together I call this the Cosmic Internet (Fig 170). I have said that the Sun is much bigger than it appears to the eye and that its wavefield oscillates throughout the solar system. This is also true of the Sun’s electrical circuits and communication systems. Electric Universe researchers have been pointing this out for a long time and official science confirmation of this electrical connection grid is beginning to mount. *The Astrophysical Journal* published a study in 2019 describing how hundreds of galaxies are acting and rotating in synchronised motions even with those tens of millions of light years away (the illusion of time and space). The study involved 445 galaxies within 400 million light years of Earth. Joon Hyoep Lee, an astronomer at the Korea Astronomy and

Space Science Institute, said that something appeared to be connecting them which caused them to behave exactly in sync. In some way they 'directly interact with each other', he said. The study suggested that the galaxies appeared to be embedded in the same 'large scale structure'. Yes – the electrical/electromagnetic grid of the Cosmic Internet or what I say is the simulation ([Fig.171](#)). Computer virtual reality is connected by the same codes and electrical communication which makes what appears on the screen happen in sync. Joon said: 'The dynamical coherence even out to millions of light-years was unexpected and surprising to us, because such distances are obviously too far for neighbour galaxies to directly interact with each other. The unifying force remained invisible or in other words outside the frequency band of human and technological sight. Then there is David Sibeck, a project scientist at NASA's Goddard Space Flight Center, who revealed satellite confirmation of these electrical/electromagnetic connections:

The satellites have found evidence of magnetic ropes connecting Earth's upper atmosphere directly to the Sun. We believe that solar winds flow in along these ropes providing energy for geomagnetic storms and auroras.

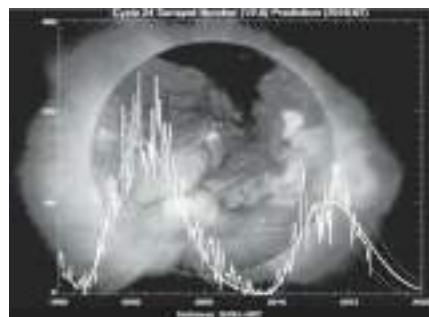


Figure 172: Solar power rises and falls in cycles and can be measured by the number of sunspots or massive explosions on the sun which project energy into the solar system.

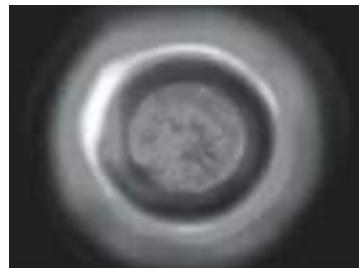


Figure 173: Sunspot explosions have been believed to originate inside the Sun, but Electric Universe researchers say the torus around the Sun absorbs electricity from The Field which goes through cycles of higher and lower power. When the torus becomes overloaded at high times it discharges energy like colossal lightning bolts that strike the Sun and punch the sunspots thus making sunspots a measure of solar activity.

Sun-Earth connections, wavefield and electrical, are what changes our climate and temperature in cycles of power increasing and decreasing. These cycles are revealed in the number of fantastic explosions of energy on the Sun's surface known as sunspots. This phenomenon is not factored into the manipulated 'climate models' devised purely to sell the hoax of human-caused climate change. The outrageous deceit is confirmed by climate projections that don't centrally include the foundation effect on temperature of the Sun while blaming carbon dioxide, the gas of life, without which we would all be dead (*much more later*). The Sun is electrical in nature and highly significantly the observable Universe is 99.999 percent plasma – so is the Sun. Plasma is often called the fourth state of matter and represents a near-perfect medium for ... *electricity and electromagnetism*. The plasma Sun is a *processor* of electrical power and not the origin of it. Solar power does not come from within the Sun as mainstream science claims from

assumption, not evidence. It comes from the universal electrical wavefield or circuitry. If you could see the heavens on another level of frequency you would see a vast electrical system with the stars and planets as points in the circuit that pervades the Universe. The Sun absorbs and processes power from this system which operates in cycles of higher power and lower power just as waves (of all kinds) have peaks and troughs ([Fig 172](#)). Electrical power is processed by the Sun (not created by it) and projected into the solar system affecting temperature, climate and much else within the planetary fields. These projections are decoded by the Earth's atmosphere and magnetic field into the heat that we feel. Space is cold and the higher you go in the Earth's atmosphere the colder it gets when, through mainstream scientific 'logic', it should be getting warmer as you move closer to the Sun. Why are planets nearer the Sun hotter, then? The closer you are the more powerful the energy to be decoded into heat and that is also affected by the nature of their fields. The Sun is much cooler on the surface than way out in its atmosphere when it should be the other way round if the heat is being generated from within.

Mainstream science estimates the Sun's surface temperature to around 5,000 degrees kelvin while much further out the temperature is said to be 200 *million* degrees kelvin. Encircling the Sun a considerable distance from the surface is a doughnut-shaped torus which has been recorded in ultraviolet images ([Fig 173](#)). The Sun's torus at its equator absorbs electricity from the universal circuit for the Sun to process. When it overloads massive versions of lightning are projected to punch holes in the Sun's surface that we know as sunspots. They are a pointer to the changing electrical power of the Sun because the torus only overloads and punches them at times of high power in the circuit. The Sun is known to dim in its low period of activity (electrical processing) although this is imperceptible to the human eye. Think dimmer switch. NASA reported in 2019 that predictions suggest the cycle of solar activity between 2020 and 2025 could be the lowest in 200 years and 30 to 50 percent lower than the previous one. Mainstream science is being forced to face the facts about the universal electrical system as evidence continually comes to light. Haimin Wang, a professor of physics at the New Jersey Institute of Technology, said of sunspot activity:

We used to think that the surface's magnetic evolution drives solar eruptions [sunspots]. Our new observations suggest that disturbances created in the solar outer atmosphere can also cause direct and significant perturbations on the surface through magnetic fields, a phenomenon not envisioned by any contemporary solar eruption models.

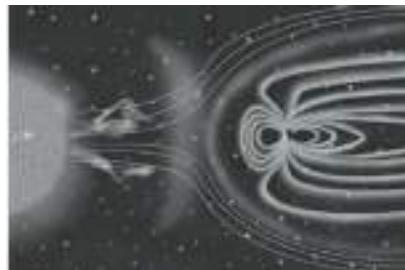


Figure 174: Planetary magnetospheres are formed by the resistance between different electrical charges in the plasma field between the planets and the wider solar system.

The Earth's magnetic field, or magnetosphere, is defined by the interaction of electricity with plasma (ultimately wavefield state with wavefield state). When plasma conducting electricity of one frequency/charge meets plasma with a different charge a barrier is automatically formed between the two which defines planetary magnetic fields. Planets and stars emit different electrical charges into the plasma medium and where these different fields meet the barrier is formed known as a 'Langmuir sheath' after American scientist Irving Langmuir (1881-1957) who discovered the phenomenon ([Fig 174](#)). Here is still more proof that planets and stars transmit different frequencies that form the basis of astrology. Increasing numbers of scientists are now seeing that the evidence points to our 'physical'

reality being a holographic simulation as I concluded nearly 20 years ago. Where I differ from these scientists is that they seem to see the simulation as external to us. My view is that in the form we experience as 'physical' reality the 'Matrix' only exists when we decode it into manifestation in the brain. The holographic level of reality is within us and not external to us. If we revisit what I said earlier about the human decoding system we can bring that together with electrical reality. The foundation information construct of the simulation is information encoded in waves and when this is decoded it becomes an electrical and digital/holographic reality. See how this fits perfectly with the five senses decoding waves into electrical information communicated to the brain to become digital/holographic information and perceived 'physical' reality. The Universe has wavefield, electrical, digital and holographic levels and so do human decoding processes. *Both are expressions of the same simulated system.*

Who created the simulation?

This all has revelatory implications for how the simulation was created by the non-human force behind the Cult and for the nature of our experienced reality. There are other levels of the Earth that operate on a far higher frequency band which means we can't see them. Many near-death experiencers have described this high-frequency Earth with its incredibly vivid colours they had never seen before. They are manifestations of the much higher frequencies that exist outside the perceptual confines of the Body-Mind simulation. Shamans and seers have talked since ancient times of this other 'Earth' as have those who have experienced psychoactive potions. 'Other Earth' reality existed before the simulation and continues to do so. Its high frequency means it is far less energetically dense which makes far more possible and negates the need for 'physical' food. Energetic sustenance is taken directly from the energetic field. Communication is by telepathy rather than voice and people can transport themselves by thought rather than having to 'physically' walk, drive or fly in aircraft. Why do they need planes when they themselves can fly with their lack of human-like density? High-frequency Earth is the planet's prime reality although it's still just a micro-fraction of Infinite reality. The biblical story of the 'Fallen Angels' and their 'revolt from God' (a theme repeated in non-biblical cultures throughout the ancient world) is really the story of the simulation. 'Fallen Angels' lost their heart-centre connection to *The One* to such an extent that they fell down the frequencies (hence 'fallen') and believed they were the 'gods' ruled by their master 'God' that Cultists know as Lucifer the Light Bringer – the bringer of the simulation formed from 'light' within the speed of light. The 'Fall of Man' refers to those in Prime Earth who the Fallen Ones enticed and manipulated down the frequencies with them. Prime Earth is what the Bible calls 'Eden' and humans left the 'garden' to be trapped in density and the false perceptions of self and reality that come from that. These are the same 'fallen' entities that the Cult and Satanists are connecting with in their rituals and the inner circle members of the Cult are incarnate 'Fallen Angels' hiding behind biological AI software 'human form'.

The Fallen Ones set about creating their own world to entrap indefinitely Prime Earth awareness that would become their slaves in a form called 'mind'. They created the simulation – a wave/digital copy of Prime Earth. I say this is described at the start of Genesis with 'God' making the world in 'seven days' after the declaration 'Let there be *Light*'. The Cult's central modus operandi is the technique of inversion to sell a perception of everything that's the opposite of what it really is. What a perfect example it would be for '*the God*' of the Old Testament to be the very 'Lucifer', 'Satan', 'Devil', that '*the God*' is supposed to 'fight'. Heads you worship Lucifer, tails you worship Lucifer. Ever wondered why the 'god' of the Old Testament is portrayed so differently to the 'god' of the New? Christianity's attempt to present them both as the same entity makes no sense whatsoever. I have concluded after 30 years of research into all these related subjects that the simulation is a wavefield information construct (think Wi-Fi) with a human body that can decode the construct, interact with it (think computer), and perceive it as reality. I have been referring to the body for decades as a biological computer. Carl Sagan's statement about humans being made of 'star stuff' – the carbon, nitrogen and oxygen atoms, etc. of stars – is another as above, so below,

confirmation. Chris Impey, professor of astronomy at the University of Arizona, said that because humans, animals and most ‘matter’ on Earth contain these elements ‘we are literally made of star stuff’. Look at this from the simulation perspective and you get the same story from a different route. Are characters in a computer game encoded with different maths and rules to the rest of the game? Are they made of different ‘stuff’? No, and it’s the same with the simulation and the human body specifically created by the Cult ‘gods’ to interact with the simulation. They are encoded with the same basic codes in their wavefields and express that through the ‘star stuff’ comparison in their holographic ‘physical’ state. The creation of the body-computer is told symbolically in the story of ‘God’ creating ‘Adam’ and ‘Eve’ along with the reference to the sons of ‘God’ (the gods, plural in the original) interbreeding with the daughters of men. We don’t have to be talking here of literal interbreeding through procreation. The body can be changed by broadcasting frequencies of information which the hard-drive, receiver-transmitter DNA decodes into holographic mutations through changes in the wavefield (5G, 6G, 7G?). A Russian research team transformed frog embryos into salamander embryos by transmitting salamander DNA information patterns. Dr Michael Levin at Tufts University in Massachusetts produced tadpoles with eyes on their backs and frogs with six legs by manipulating their electrical communication systems. Levin believes the same technique could be used on humans to regrow lost limbs. So much becomes possible once the Cult illusions are breached and the true nature of reality is grasped. The human body is a wave/digital copy of the forms in Prime Earth reality and far, far denser and more limited in nature. It does mean, however, that the Cult and its masters have had to leave in place many functions of the original form that allow awakening awareness to connect with expanded consciousness outside the simulation. The whole ‘smart’ technology and AI agenda is about deleting those connections by creating a new human form connected even more powerfully to the simulation and I’ll have much more later about this.

Come again? Mmm ... no thanks



Figure 175: To ‘evolve’ and find ‘enlightenment’ we have to keep incarnating onto a pin-head-sized planet over and over while ignoring the rest of Infinity. Yep, makes absolute sense, right? Or we only do it once and then ‘God’ judges us. What utter crap we are told to believe and so many do.

The simulation or Matrix is an artificially-generated field of information that has been overlaid on The Field or Infinite Field. Humanity has been manipulated to connect and interact with this artificial field or Matrix and perceive it as reality. Today’s ‘smart’ technology and Wi-Fi are overlaying *another* even more limited field over the main simulation field to further disconnect humanity from *The Field*. This could only be done once humans had developed intellectually to the point where they could build and operate such technology, but what is happening has been in the planning for thousands of years in our perception of ‘time’ (again much more later). The sequence goes like this: Create the wavefield/digital information construct as a copy of Prime Earth; create forms, human, animal, etc., which are wave-entangled with the construct; entice consciousness to make a wave entanglement with those forms (‘incarnate’). A key aspect to the enticement is the unique sensations of the five senses which are very different from Prime Reality and appear to act like a drug addiction. People become addicted to virtual reality games and the

frequencies emitting from smartphones while consciousness can become addicted to the sensations of the five senses. These addictions create a wave entanglement with the simulation that pulls consciousness in the form of mind back into five sense reality over and over and this is known as reincarnation. Eastern religions believe in the cycle of reincarnation and ‘karma’ in which we continually incarnate on Earth to work through the ‘karmic cycle’ of actions-consequences-actions-consequences until, through trial and error, we reach a frequency state (‘enlightenment’) high enough to escape that cycle and gravitate to Prime Reality. Mainstream science estimates that the Earth when compared with the perceived extent of the Universe is the equivalent of a billionth the size of a pinhead ([Fig. 175](#)). Do we really believe that to ‘evolve’ we have to keep incarnating over and over onto a planet a billionth the size of a pinhead compared with the Universe which itself is a fractional smear of Infinite Reality? That’s crazy. From my perspective there is another way to explain this. You are enticed into the simulation; you become addicted to the sensations of the simulation like people become addicted to computer games; you leave the body when its cycle ends, but you are still addicted (therefore deeply wave-entangled) with the simulation that it draws you back again and again (flies to a light, bees to a honeypot). This continues until you work out the illusion and in doing so raise your frequency to the level of vibration (through the heart) that allows you to escape the electromagnetic pull of the simulation. ‘Reincarnation’ does not *have* to happen – *we* make it so with encouragement and manipulation from the hidden ‘gods’. We can escape the Matrix anytime we want by realising it’s a flytrap and by remembering who and what we really are. Academic neurosurgeon Eben Alexander describes how in his near-death experience he first entered a dark realm of heavy vibration which he perceived as deep mud. He felt trapped and unable to free himself until an entity came to take him out. Once in Prime Reality when he realised his true self, and his frequency increased in sync with that, he said he was able to enter and leave the ‘dark place’ whenever he chose if you believe his account. Whether people do or not the theme is correct.

Reincarnation advocates say we select the body, situation and ‘time’ (astrology) of ‘incarnation’ to best suit the experience we wish to have. I say this can also be explained by the mind’s state of wavefield frequency entangling with other wavefields – bodies, situations, locations and astrological fields – that best suit (a) what it wants to experience and/or (b) what its wave entanglements draw the mind into purely by its wavefield attaching to like fields. What we come into and what we go out to is decided by our wavefield state which is decided by our *perceptual* state. Another relevant question with regard to this: Do addicts make choices about what they are addicted to? They are not in control – their addiction is. For those minds addicted to the five-senses of the simulation the ‘Matrix’ is in control. The point of this book is to offer the tools to free ourselves from that addiction which holds much of humanity in perceptual and five-sense servitude to the alleged ‘karmic cycle’. We should not forget there is quite a common theme with near-death experiences of a point, sometimes symbolised as a fence or wall, that they say if they pass they cannot return to their body in that particular ‘life’. By the very fact that they come back to tell the tale they don’t cross that line. They don’t know what lies beyond it. For sure Infinite Reality lies beyond, but is there also a realm from which minds still wave-attached and addicted to the simulation return here? I think there is and that is why our frequency state at ‘death’ is so important. I suggest that the great majority of even genuine psychics are accessing that realm with their ‘I’m getting a Mary, anyone know a Mary?’ communications. Only the most open and expanded attune to frequencies high enough for the really profound information to be passed through that is free of simulation manipulation and perspective. Addiction to the simulation has become so ingrained through this cycle with each new addiction increasing previous addiction that an intervention is being directed from Prime Reality to break the cycle. I’ll have more about this in the final chapter.

During my ayahuasca experience in 2003 I was shown a picture of a path across a field and then people began falling from the sky onto the path. As they walked in ever greater numbers they wore down the path which morphed into the dark groove of one of the old vinyl records. The people in the darkness just followed the groove and where it took them (round and round). The Voice said over the pictures that

humanity fell so easily for the programming in each ‘incarnation’ because they had been through it many times before. ‘She’ asked from the groove perspective if it was really so strange that people looked upwards for ‘God’ when it was the only direction they could see ‘light’. I have one other point about ‘reincarnation’. You hear people say when they have particular traits or something happens to them that ‘I must have been bad in a previous life’ or ‘it must be my karma’. In reality, it may have nothing to do with either although the basic like-frequency entanglement principle still stands. We inherit body wavefields encoded with the emotional states and traits of others. I have described the passing on of epigenetic on-off gene sequences caused by the wavefield interactions of ‘previous generations’. These can be ‘physical’, mental and emotional. A person feeling bad about themselves today because they are overweight no matter how they diet may have inherited the epigenetic gene sequence from someone who was a fast-food freak consuming toxic shite that switched on genes that pile on weight. This is happening to incredible numbers of people in the fast food era. An apparently irrational fear that makes no sense to a person’s experience in this lifetime does not always have to be ‘past life’ related. It can be a bad experience relating to that fear involving someone in the genetic line which is still encoded in the body field and triggers an apparently inexplicable emotional reaction to particular situations. Consciousness can delete these programs as I’ll be explaining.

Cult vampires and Agent Smith



Figure 176: Agent Smith in *The Matrix* symbolised Cult operatives within the simulation manipulating events for their unseen ‘gods’. Smith was a computer program or what we would call today artificial intelligence – so are the major Cult operatives running our world.



Figure 177: In the same way humanity is the power source of the Cult’s hidden ‘gods’. The more low-vibrational mental and emotional waves we produce the better for them.



Figure 178: The Cult’s unseen ‘gods’ feed off human low-frequency energy especially fear, anxiety, hatred, resentment, regret, and other such emotional states. (Image Neil Hague.)



Figure 179: The main all-seeing eye character in Disney's *Monsters, Inc* in which the monsters powered their world with the fear of human children.

Cult bloodlines (hybrid Fallen Angel/human wavefields) that I have been exposing for decades are the simulation's 'Agent Smiths'. He is the character in the *Matrix* movies who manipulates events in the simulation on behalf of those in the unseen that created the Matrix ([Fig 176](#)). This is the role of the bloodlines that run The Web of secret, semi-secret and public organisations and institutions (including politics and government) to advance the agenda for total human control dictated by the Luciferian Fallen invisible to human sight. Agent Smith is an artificial intelligence program that can replicate itself into multiple Smiths. I say that the major Cult operatives in our world are also biological software programs or AI that are seeking via AI to take over everything by connecting humanity to AI. To the Cult and its 'gods' the biological is a form of technology. One of the goals is to vampire low-vibrational mental and emotional energy emitted by humans who the Cult has manipulated into low-vibrational mental and emotional states. *The Matrix* movies symbolised this with the Morpheus character holding up a battery and saying the 'machines' (the Fallen Ones symbolically) had turned humans into batteries to empower themselves ([Fig 177](#)). I have heard the same theme from shamans and carriers of ancient knowledge all over the world. The Fallen Ones have closed their heart centres to the energy flow of *The One* to such an extent that they have had to develop their own sources of energy that match their own low-vibrational state. Humanity is one such source. The game is to entrap human perceptions and manipulate conflict, fear, anxiety, depression, hatred, despair, guilt, resentment and regret so mercilessly and incessantly that immense waves of low-frequency energy are transmitted for the Fallen Ones to absorb and feed off ([Fig 178](#)). When we stop generating these frequencies on the scale that we do the energy source is disconnected and the manipulators are correspondingly weakened (another benefit of opening the heart). Cult-controlled Disney released the movie *Monsters, Inc* in 2001 which portrayed a 'monster world' that had no energy source. They overcame this by entering the human realm to terrify children. Screams of the kids were caught in a tube device and the energy transferred to the 'monster' power system. The hero was depicted with one giant (all-seeing) eye ([Fig 179](#)). Satanic rituals making sacrifices 'to the gods' through the ages and still today are sacrifices specifically aimed at generating a rush of terror for 'the gods' to absorb. The rituals are designed to create maximum terror in the target in the run up to the sacrifice as a 'gift' or 'offering' to 'the gods'. All the 'sacrifice to the gods' shite comes from this. While the 'gods' are absorbing the wavefield level of the terror outside visible light the Satanists drink the blood which contains that same terror in the form of adrenalin. The Fallen are energy vampires and their Cult gofers are blood vampires. The 'gods' prefer children as sacrifices because of the particular frequencies of pre-pubescent children. Paedophilia rings connect at their core with satanic rings for the same reason. While possessed paedophiles are having sex with children the wave entanglements from the child to the paedophile and through to the possessing entity allow the entity to draw off and absorb the child's energy. So many rich and famous Cult operatives and bloodlines I have researched in royalty, politics, banking, business, intelligence agencies, military, law enforcement and 'entertainment' are connected to

both paedophilia and Satanism. Are we really so naive that we think it's just a coincidence that Jimmy Savile, the UK mega-paedophile and procurer of children for the rich and famous, had deep and decades-long inner-circle connections with the Cult bloodline British Royal family and Prince Charles in particular? Or that Savile was brought into the royal fold in the 1960s by Lord Mountbatten, a known paedophile and Prince Charles mentor? Or that Prince Andrew's close friendship with Sabbatian-Frankist Cult and Israeli Mossad agent, mega-paedophile and child procurer, Jeffrey Epstein, was more random chance? Or that UK Prime Minister Margaret Thatcher was a close friend of Savile in an administration that protected known paedophiles? Oh, *please*.



Figure 180: Yep, I'm getting some more. Plenty to come.

Maintaining Body-Mind humanity in low-frequency states of programmed ignorance is not only about feeding off our energy. The simulation is a band of frequency and to hold Body-Mind in perceptual servitude and illusion we must be entangled with the simulation through body, mind and emotions, and that means staying within its frequency band. From this we have had the age-old targeting of anyone who expands their awareness beyond that perceptual prison and sees the truth. The Cult created religions which insisted that everyone believed what they said on pain of death. 'Witches' (psychics) were drowned and 'blasphemers' of every kind were burned or in other ways mass-murdered. The Inquisition was a Cult operation to protect its control of human perception and when people began to turn away from religion the Cult instigated mainstream science to keep the truth about reality from the masses while continuing to pass on the hidden knowledge to each generation of the Cult 'elite'. This new religion called science has been policed by another inquisition for would-be scientists, academics and doctors in which they follow the prescribed 'truth' or find another job. Mainstream science is the same religion blueprint under another name. Scientism has its own holy books ('scientific orthodoxy'), imposes its beliefs through the 'education' system (just like religious schools), and through the mainstream and much of the 'alternative' media. All use holy Scientism orthodoxy as their point of reference for 'how things are' even though most of this is way off the mark ([Fig 180](#) overleaf). Where once people were killed for seeing the truth outside the simulation (though many still are) the weapons of choice in the West today are ridicule, condemnation and censorship by Cult-owned Google, YouTube, Facebook, Twitter, and all the rest. They are the modern face of the Inquisition and Nazi book-burners along with government agencies targeting alternative methods of healing based on knowledge denied by Scientism's religious dogma (the Cult).

Where are the 'aliens'?

Given the extent of the night sky alone in terms of stars and planets why isn't the Galaxy/Universe that we 'see' (decode) teeming with life? By the law of averages alone it should be. The ancients in cultures all over the world described non-human visitations. Rock and cave paintings dated to thousands of years ago feature images remarkably similar to those reported in the modern world by people claiming to have seen, or been abducted by, non-human entities. They clearly exist so why not make themselves openly visible to everyone? Italian physicist Enrico Fermi (1901-1954), who created the first nuclear reactor, asked this question and it became known as the Fermi Paradox. American astrophysicist Michael Hart studied the mystery and wrote an article for the *Royal Astronomical Society Quarterly Journal* in 1975

entitled 'An Explanation for the Absence of Extraterrestrials on Earth'. He concluded that the mystery had these possible explanations: (1) Aliens never came because of something 'that makes space travel unfeasible'; (2) aliens chose not to come to Earth; (3) advanced civilizations arose too recently for aliens to reach us; (4) aliens have visited Earth but we didn't see them. I would add another: The Fallen Ones behind the simulation don't want humanity to interact with extraterrestrials that would open their minds to the scale and nature of reality. They want us to believe we are alone (*alone* – isolated, disconnected). What would happen if people became consciously aware of non-human civilisations who came to impart knowledge that has been kept from us? Human minds would fly open and Cult control of perception would be over. Open visitations from benevolent and advanced extraterrestrials is the last thing the Fallen want and given they have so much control over the gateways to the simulation they can overwhelmingly stop that although not entirely. What they want is a closed system with them controlling the gateways and portals and most of the 'extraterrestrials' that people report (though not all) are reptilian in nature or the classic Greys – both of which are expressions of the Fallen Angels. Malevolent 'Greys' and 'Reptilians' are inserts into the Matrix to serve the Fallen and I believe the classic 'Greys' to be another form of biological/technological artificial intelligence which the Cult wants to connect to the human brain. Still other 'UFO' craft are really flown by humans with the technology developed through technology transfer between the Fallen and Cult operatives in underground bases, or DUMBS (deep underground military bases), run by Cult levels of the military. What is happening in these bases is denied even to elected governments. Make that *especially* to elected governments. The existence of 'flying saucer', or anti-gravity, technology has been widely documented for decades and the scam is to keep from the population and politicians an awareness of technology way beyond the public cutting edge. When people see glimpses of that they will immediately assume it's the work of 'aliens'. American military pilots have described seeing craft moving at speeds and changing direction in ways that are impossible to known human technology. The Pentagon has admitted to having these sightings, some caught on radar, but they refuse to release details of their internal 'investigations'.

Astrological inversion?

What are the chances of such an apparently limitless realm of stars and planets being seemingly devoid of life when life has evolved to the extent that it has on a planet the comparative size of a pinhead? You know, the same pinhead that we have to keep incarnating onto to follow 'God's Plan'. It's all ridiculous ... *unless* ... the simulation has been specifically encoded to be that way to give target minds the feeling of isolation which confirms we are all alone, a 'Little Me' in every sense. Remember the simulation is a *simulation*, an artificial construct, and its creators can encode information any way they choose just as video game creators do. The scale of the two may be very different, but the theme is exactly the same. Today's virtual reality technology is mimicking the simulation. The Universe and galaxy seems devoid of life, except for us, because the simulation is *made to be* that way. I remember being hit between the eyes in a revelatory sense on my first visit as a child to the then new London Planetarium which opened in 1958. I could have been no more than six or seven. There were many strange things about that trip including the fact that it happened at all. We didn't have much money and travelling anywhere outside my home city of Leicester was very rare in those days even to the seaside. My father came down the stairs that morning and said 'Get ready – we're going to London'. I couldn't believe it. Where did that come from? *London?* Wow, I'd never been there and it would be a long time before I did again. Even stranger is that my father announced we were going to visit the planetarium having shown no interest whatsoever in astronomy before or indeed after. I had no idea what a planetarium was and didn't know what to expect. I clearly remember the moment and the effect it had on me when the lights went down and I saw the night sky projected on the domed ceiling. 'It looks so *real*', I thought'. If someone had said it was nighttime and the roof had been removed I would have believed them. The experience struck me so profoundly and I never forgot the moment. I had no idea why until I began to realise that the night-sky

itself is a holographic projection. Oh, but when spacecraft send back pictures the planets look so real and solid. Of course they do – the decoded simulation is *holographic*. If the planets and stars are a projected holographic construct where does that leave the wave effects on humans measured by astrology? Well, I am going to be controversial here, but then I have been known to be. Where that leaves astrological influences is as ... *part of the control program*. These influences are constantly affecting us mentally and emotionally and laying out our life ‘path’ which is why it is important to expand into beyond-the-simulation consciousness to override astrological influences. Without expanded awareness a human life is the playing out of a software program with many different influences dictating the direction including the astrological. This is not to say that we don’t need astrologers or their readings. No, the opposite is true. Skilled astrologers are actually reading the influences of the simulation which is very useful information. I am saying that we need to know what these influences are and by opening our hearts and minds we can tap into the power of consciousness to overcome them when necessary.

Gnostics knew (and they were not alone)



Figure 181: The Royal Library of Alexandria.

The themes of what I am saying can be found all over the ancient world before Cult religions moved in to make revealing the knowledge a death sentence. This is certainly true of a group of people – a belief system rather than a race – known as Gnostics with their philosophy of Gnosticism. Wherever they located and their information began to spread the Roman Church, the Church of Babylon relocated to Rome by Cult operatives, would send its armies and mobs to destroy them. Most importantly this happened with regard to the Gnostics with the destruction of the Royal or Great Library of Alexandria in Egypt in the 5th century. Gnostic thinkers at the library collected an estimated nearly half a million scrolls, manuscripts and documents detailing ancient history and knowledge from many centres including Egypt, Assyria, Greece, Persia, India, and elsewhere ([Fig 181](#)). This was knowledge about history (the arrival of the Fallen Ones) and reality that the Cult-controlled Roman Church did not want to be circulated. Greek philosophers Plato, a pupil of Socrates, and Aristotle were among the inspirations of Hypatia, an Athens-educated mathematician, astronomer and philosopher who was head of the Platonist school in Alexandria. One of her quotes captured the spirit of open-minded inquiry at the Great Library: ‘Reserve your right to think, for even to think wrongly is better than not to think at all.’ Such commitment to free thought produced revelations about reality thousands of years before modern science ‘discovered’ them and claimed the credit. Gnostics in Alexandria knew that the Earth orbits the Sun 2,000 years before Polish mathematician and astronomer, Nicolaus Copernicus, confirmed this. The Cult was not happy with free-minded discovery and the Great Library was destroyed in a series of attacks by the Church. These included the murder of Hypatia in 415AD by a mob under the control of Cyril, Patriarch of Alexandria, who like so many mass killers before and since was made a saint by the Vatican. Gnostics also famously gathered in southern France centuries later under the name ‘Cathars’ before their mass-slaughter by the army of Rome in the siege in 1244 at the Castle of Monségur in the Languedoc near the Pyrenees.



Figure 182: Part of the fantastic Nag Hammadi find of Gnostic writings.



Figure 183: So many names, but the same force being described.



Figure 184: Gnostic texts describe how Archons appear in our reality in forms that are reptilian and sound very much like the 'Greys' of UFO research lore and legend.

When you read Gnostic philosophy it is easy to understand why the Cult's Roman Church wanted rid of them wherever they located. Gnosis means 'knowledge' and more specifically hidden or spiritual knowledge. What I am calling Body-Mind the Gnostics called 'Nous' and what I am referring to as Infinite Self they gave the name 'Pneuma'. From this comes the phrase about 'using your nous' which would translate as using your mind. It's much better to use your Pneuma – your expanded awareness. It was believed that any detailed record of Gnostic belief had been lost with their demise at Monségur until an amazing find in 1945 at Nag Hammadi about 80 miles north of Luxor on the banks of the River Nile in Egypt. A local found a sealed jar filled with Gnostic texts or scriptures that became known as the Nag Hammadi Library (Fig 182 overleaf). They included 13 leather-bound papyrus codices (manuscripts) and more than 50 texts written in Coptic Egyptian. The texts are estimated to date from about 350 to 400AD which would fit with the period before the attack on the library in which Hypatia was killed. It's thought likely they are representations of Greek works going back to maybe 120-150AD or earlier. From this incredible find far more is known about the Gnostic view of reality and this is especially significant with the texts hidden away and remaining unchanged when many religious texts have been manipulated, rewritten and translated to suit the authorities of the day. I was taken aback to read the Nag Hammadi works after what I had already concluded about the Fallen Ones and the simulation. More than 1,600 years ago (as we perceive 'time') the Gnostics wrote about a non-human force they called 'Archons' and a 'fake reality' which in modern parlance was, in effect, describing a simulation. No wonder the Cult-created-and-controlled Roman Church wanted them gone. Archon is a Greek word meaning 'ruler', 'prince', 'authorities' and 'from the beginning'. A fifth of the Nag Hammadi manuscripts are about the

Archontic manipulation of human society under the chief Archon which Gnostics refer to as 'Yaldabaoth', or the 'Demiurge', and the Cult calls Lucifer the Light Bringer. Other names for Yaldabaoth/Demiurge are Satan and the Devil which are biblically referred to in reptilian terms ([Fig 183](#)). Gnostics believed that Yaldabaoth and the Archons were the source of evil in human society and that they indeed *created* the material world that I am calling the simulation. They said human bodies were a trap to enslave us in the fake reality. Gnostic texts referred to Archons in their base form as energy beings (what I would describe as wavefields of consciousness), but they said Archons could take 'material' form. They described their most common manifestations as ... reptilian or serpentine and beings that look like 'an unborn baby or foetus with grey skin and dark, unmoving eyes'. Reptilian entities have featured in my books since the 1990s as manipulators of human life from the hidden realms with their bloodline human/reptilian hybrids operating within the simulation and appearing outwardly to be human. The description of grey foetus-like entities with dark eyes captures the appearance of the classic 'Greys' of UFO research fame ([Figs 184](#)). They are by far the most common 'alien' entities reported by witnesses and those dubbed 'abductees' across the world who describe in remarkably consistent detail how they were abducted by a non-human species, usually 'Greys'. Gnostic texts have their version of '*The One*' which they symbolically call 'The Father' and 'The All'.

The Nag Hammadi *Bruce Codex* says:

He is an incomprehensible one, but it is he who comprehends All. He receives them to himself. And nothing exists outside of him. But All exist within him. And he is boundary to them all, as he encloses them all, and they are all within him. It is he who is Father of the aeons, existing before them all. There is no place outside of him.



Figure 185: Gnostics described Prime Reality and fake reality – what I am calling the simulation. Prime Reality was a place of harmony, love and the NOW. Fake reality was a place of disharmony, evil and 'time' created by Yaldabaoth (Lucifer the Light Bringer).

What a perfect description of *The One*, the still and silent 'isness' of All Possibility and Infinite Intelligence pervading all existence and to whose influence we can open any time we choose. Nag Hammadi texts divide reality into what they call the 'Upper Aeons' (Prime Reality) and the 'Lower Aeons' or material world. Aeons in the Gnostic context are bands of perception, reality and potential. Upper Aeons, the realm of *All That Is in Awareness of Itself*, is 'The Silence', 'the silent Silence', 'the living Silence', with its 'Watery Light' ([Fig 185](#)). This light is very different from the simulation light within the speed of light and has been described by near-death experiencers. Water symbolism is often used by Gnostics for Infinite light as with '... the waters which are above'; '... the waters which are above matter'; and '... the Aeons in the Living Water'. The Bible describes in the opening to Genesis how the Old Testament 'God' (I say 'Yaldabaoth') created the earth from the 'void' by moving upon the 'face of the waters':

In the beginning God created the heaven and the earth. And the earth was without form, and void; and darkness **was** upon the face of the deep. And the Spirit of God moved upon the face of the waters. And God said, Let there be light: and there was light.

Gnostics said there is no ‘time’ or ‘space’ in the Upper Aeons as I described earlier. One text says that ‘since the emanations [from ‘The Father’] are limitless and immeasurable’ there can be no time or space and they are pure consciousness or awareness named Pleroma or ‘the totality’, ‘the fullness’ and the ‘perfection’ of ‘emanations of the Father’. The *Tripartite Tractate* text says:

The emanation of the Totalities, which exist from the one who exists, did not occur according to a separation from one another, as something cast off from the one who begets them. Rather, their begetting is like a process of extension, as the Father extends himself to those whom he loves, so that those who have come forth from him might become him as well.

Gnostics speak of the interaction between ‘The Father’ and ‘The Mother’ which they refer to as ‘The Thought’. Their interaction produced a third force or extension of The One which they symbolised as the Son. There are many themes in the Nag Hammadi texts which Christianity twisted through the centuries and took for its own.

Archontic fake reality



Figure 186: Gnostic texts said that Yaldabaoth created a ‘bad copy’ of Prime Reality and I say they were describing the creation of the simulation. (Image Neil Hague.)



Figure 187: What the Gnostic ‘bad copy’ really is.

Nag Hammadi manuscripts say the material world was created ‘in error’ when an emanation of the ‘The Father’ disconnected from his influence and this is the Gnostic version of ‘The Fall’ and Fallen Ones. The emanation called by Gnostics Yaldabaoth or the Demiurge (Lucifer/Satan/Devil) is said to be a ‘formless entity’ that proceeded to create a ‘bad copy’ of the Upper Aeons (Prime Reality) which became the Lower Aeons or ‘material’ world and what I say is a simulation ([Figs 186](#) and [187](#)). I suggest that using modern language what Gnostics described as a ‘bad copy’ is a wavefield/digital copy of cosmic Prime Reality – a virtual reality representation. A simulation could be very accurately dubbed a bad copy and once it was created the copy could be continually changed and downgraded just as once you have downloaded a copy of a website you can change its nature while the original continues to exist as it always was. This has been happening since the simulation was installed and never more so than with the current technological transformation. The Gnostic *Apocryphon of John* says that Yaldabaoth is a ‘counterfeit spirit’ and Nag

Hammadi texts describe this entity as 'The Blind One', 'The Blind God' and 'The Foolish One'. Samael, a name for Yaldabaoth in Jewish Talmudic writings, translates as 'Poison of God', or 'Blindness of God'. Gnostics said this 'insane' fake 'god' oversaw chaos without limit. The Nag Hammadi *Origin of the World* manuscript says: '...There appeared a force, presiding over the darkness [Lower Aeons]. And the forces that came into being subsequent to them called the shadow "the limitless chaos".' You only have to observe Planet Earth for confirmation. Nag Hammadi texts depict our reality of chaos as 'Hell', 'the Abyss' and 'Outer Darkness', where trapped Souls are tormented and manipulated by demons (as I have been writing for decades). The *Hypostasis of the Archons* quotes Yaldabaoth as saying: 'It is I who am God, and there is no other power apart from me.' You have heard similar in the Old Testament from the Genesis 'God' that 'created the world' – created the simulation: '*I am the LORD, and there is none else, there is no God beside me*' (Isaiah 45:5). The 'Lord God' of the Bible is the 'Lord Archon' or Yaldabaoth of the Gnostic manuscripts. Yaldabaoth is depicted in popular culture as the 'Dark Lord', 'Lord of Time', Lord (Darth) Vader and Dormammu, the evil ruler of the 'Dark Dimension' trying to take over the 'Earth Dimension' in the Marvel comic movie, *Dr Strange*. The angry, hate-filled, vindictive 'God' of the Old Testament, known as Yahweh/Jehovah, is quite clearly Yaldabaoth of the Gnostic manuscripts. Here he is quoted in Leviticus:

You will eat the flesh of your sons and the flesh of your daughters. I will destroy your high places, cut down your incense altars and pile your dead bodies on the lifeless forms of your idols, and I will abhor you ... I will scatter you among the nations and will draw out my sword and pursue you. Your land will be laid waste, and your cities will lie in ruins.



Figure 188: The Speed of Light is the simulation.



Figure 189: Once again different names, same story, same phenomenon.

Nice bloke. I emphasise that I came to all the conclusions outlined earlier from a list of other sources *before* I read the Nag Hammadi documents which made them even more compelling to me. The texts say that Yaldabaoth left the Upper Aeons (left the 'garden'). He created subordinate like-entities, AI software copies called Archons, and a likeness 'in him' of the Cosmos (simulation). Note the term 'in him'. I recall a quote by Caleb Scharf, Director of Astrobiology at Columbia University, who said that 'alien life' could be so advanced that it transcribed itself into the quantum realm to become 'physics' and numbers. He talked of intelligence which is indistinguishable from the fabric of the Universe. This has been my view for a long time and I say that 'AI' beyond what we have been told about is 'Yaldabaoth' and the

Archontic force which has transcribed itself into the quantum realm to become physics and numbers. This would explain why the physics of our reality are so different to those outside the speed of light ([Fig 188](#)). The AI connection will become incredibly important in the chapter 'Where are we going – if we allow it?' Gnostic texts say of Yaldabaoth: 'He became strong and created for himself other aeons with a flame of luminous fire which exists now.' Flame of fire = the 'light' of the simulation within the speed of light. The same themes can be found in ancient societies across the world as I have detailed in other works. Archons are the Gnostic name for the Islamic (and pre-Islamic) Jinn or Djinn (also genies), Christian demons, and Zulu Chitauri 'Children of the Serpent', or 'Devastators'. Satan is known by Christians as 'the Demon of Demons' while Gnostics called Yaldabaoth the 'Archon of Archons'. Both are known as 'The Deceiver'. Nag Hammadi documents call Archons mind parasites, inverters, guards, gatekeepers, detainees, judges, pitiless ones and the Deceivers. Gnostics describe Archons in terms of 'luminous fire' while the Jinn are said in Islamic belief to be made from 'smokeless fire' ([Fig 189](#)). Archons and Jinn are both said to be entities in the unseen manipulating humanity. I was talking to a Muslim taxi driver in New York about my work and I mentioned the Archons and how they were described. He said immediately – 'That sounds just like the Jinn'. Gnostics portray the 'material' world with words like 'deficiency', 'imperfection', darkness and the Abyss while the Upper Aeons are 'fullness'. Prime Reality is called 'the existent' while 'material reality (the simulation) is 'non-existent'. The *Bruce Codex* says:

And then the existent separated itself from the non-existent. And the nonexistent is the evil which has manifested in matter. And the enveloping power separated those that exist from those that do not exist. And it called the existent 'eternal', and it called the non-existent 'matter'. And in the middle it separated those that exist from those that do not exist, and it placed veils between them.



Figure 190: The 'Ouroboros', or 'Leviathan' is the reptilian symbol marking the walls of the simulation. We pass through those perceptual limits to escape the Matrix.



Figure 191: The ancient concept of the Ring-Pass-Not through which we must pass to return 'home' and as with the Gnostic version our perceptions hold the key. (Image Neil Hague.)

Gnostics make the distinction between our 'Spirit' in the Upper Aeons and our 'Soul' trapped in the

material world. Most psychics are connecting with the realm of Soul and only a relative few with Spirit where the really top-notch information can be accessed. If our point of attention remains in Soul (Mind/Psyche) and not Spirit when we withdraw from ‘physicality’ we are trapped in the Lower Aeons at other less energetically-dense levels before returning in another bodily form through ‘reincarnation’. Gnostics have a concept of what they call ‘the middle place’, a ‘space’ between the Upper and Lower Aeons which they describe as a state of temporary ‘non-existence’ as the Soul waits to reincarnate or is trapped there by ignorance (low-frequency wavefield). Archons are said to guard the exits and gateways, but they are low-frequency idiots and cannot block or affect high-frequency states. Texts entitled *Pistis Sophia* symbolise the limits of Yaldabaoth reality (simulation) as a dragon swallowing its own tail: ‘The outer darkness is a great dragon, whose tail is in his mouth, outside the whole world and surrounding the whole world.’ See the reptilian symbolism yet again. An esoteric/occult symbol portrays precisely this concept in the form of the ‘Ouroboros’, or ‘Leviathan’, which is a serpent swallowing its own tail ([Fig 190](#)). Gnostics said the outermost planetary sphere or Archon (of the Lower Aeons/simulation) is Saturn. Beyond that was the serpent Leviathan through which Souls had to pass to reach paradise (reconnect with pure Spirit). Readers of *Everything You Need To Know* will be aware of what I have written about Saturn and its role in the simulation which again fits with the Nag Hammadi manuscripts. Cult symbolism is awash with portrayals of Saturn which is dubbed ‘Lord of Karma’ and ruler of ‘time’ – both concepts of the simulation. I also say that the Moon (linked to the perception of ‘time’) and the constellation of Orion are very significant to the simulation and human control. The theme of the Gnostic great dragon or Ouroboros can be found in the ancient esoteric concept of the ‘Ring-Pass-Not’ ([Fig 191](#)). This is a definition:

A profoundly mystical and suggestive term signifying the circle or bounds of frontiers within which is contained the consciousness of those who are still under the sway of the delusion of separateness – and this applies whether the Ring be large or small.

It is a general term applicable to any state in which an entity, having reached a certain stage of evolutionary growth of the unfolding of consciousness, finds itself unable to pass into a still higher state because of some delusion under which the consciousness is labouring, be that delusion mental or spiritual.



Figure 192: Humanity is entrapped by ignorance through suppression of perception and true self-identity. This maintains a low-frequency state that keeps people in the Bubbles of the simulation. We can break out any time we choose as I will later explain. (Image Neil Hague.)



Figure 193: An 1888 depiction of the firmament or 'vast dome'.



Figure 194: A different portrayal of the firmament and two divided 'world' from 1475.

Common themes keep on repeating and among them are the following: Consciousness is trapped in the illusion of 'material' reality by perceptions of reality which dictate frequency. The simulation is a band of frequency which humanity and Body-Mind is manipulated not to breach by becoming aware of its true nature – formless Spirit ([Fig 192](#)). When this realisation is integrated as a *knowing* and not just an intellectual concept our Mind/Soul frequency quickens and we can pass after human 'death' through the Ring Pass Not/Ouroboros (outer frequency walls of the simulation). The Nag Hammadi *Tripartite Tractate* says of Souls trapped in the Lower Aeons: 'Therefore they fell down to the pit of ignorance which is called "the Outer Darkness" and "Chaos" and "Hades" and "the Abyss".' Pit of ignorance = caught in the illusion = low frequency state. Gnostics describe humanity as a whole as manipulated 'forgetfulness'. The way out of here is to remember our true nature and see through the illusion by opening the heart to a high-frequency state. The Jim Carrey film *The Truman Show* was very symbolic of this whether by accident or design. The Carrey character is born onto the mega-set of a TV soap and everyone around him is an actor although he doesn't know that. The Sun comes up and down every day and seems real to him while in fact it's a technological illusion orchestrated like the whole show from a control centre that looks remarkably like the Moon. Later in adult life Carrey's character begins to realise something is not right (he 'awakened') and he sails a boat out into what appears to be an endless ocean to find the outer wall of the dome that marks the limit of the movie set which he was never allowed to see. He finds a door in the wall of the dome and walks through to the 'real world' (symbolic of Prime Reality). Interestingly, the term 'firmament' means 'vast dome' and the Biblical reference to 'beyond the firmament' takes on a whole new meaning from this perspective. The concept has been portrayed for centuries as you can see in

[Figures 193](#) and [194](#) overleaf which are depictions from 1888 and even 1475. The inscription on the second one reads: 'A medieval missionary tells that he has found the point where heaven and Earth meet ...' Biblical texts describe how the Old Testament 'God' (Yaldabaoth) manifested the 'vast dome' firmament on the second day of the Creation sequence to divide the primal sea (Infinite Awareness) into upper and lower parts (Infinite reality and simulated reality):

Then God said, 'Let there be a firmament in the midst of the waters, and let it divide the waters from the waters.' Thus God made the firmament, and divided the waters which were under the firmament from the waters which were above the firmament; and it was so.

This biblical text is describing the division of what Gnostics call the Upper and Lower Aeons. Gnostic writings symbolise levels of conscious in terms of 'the waters' as we have seen with '... the waters which are above'; '... the waters which are above matter'; and '... the Aeons in the Living Water'. The simulation is an inversion (the Gnostic 'bad copy' 'shadow world') of Prime Reality. Gnostics compared the two with terms such as fullness/deficiency, immortal/mortal, spiritual/psychic, Spirit/Soul, existence/non-existence, no-time/time, no space/space. The deficiency of possibility compared with Prime Reality is why the Archontic force had to develop technology in an effort to bridge some of the ginormous gap in creative potential. Prime Reality manifests directly through consciousness with no technology necessary.

Software Archons



Figure 195: The bearded 'Architect' who built the *Matrix* in the movie series.



Figure 196: The bearded Kronos, ruler of 'time', and the Ancient Greek god of Saturn.



Figure 197: Kronos is known today as 'Old Father Time'.



Figure 198: The Grim Reaper is another Cult symbol of Saturn which is said to represent death as well as time. We are talking about a Death Cult after all and no wonder Cultists worship Saturn (see *Everything You Need To Know* for why).

Agent Smith and other agents in the *Matrix* movies are portrayed as software programs downloaded into the simulation to manipulate events and target dissidents on behalf of the creator of the Matrix who is called 'The Architect' (Fig 195). He is given a white beard which connects to Kronos, the Greek god of Saturn, who is depicted holding a scythe and an hour glass to symbolise control of 'time' (Fig 196). The chief god of Rome was also Saturn after which was named the festival of Saturnalia that became the Western Christmas (Santa is an anagram of Satan). Other versions of Kronos/Saturn are called 'Old Father Time' with the long beard and the scythe-holding Grim Reaper which symbolises the Cult obsession with death (Figs 197 and 198). The Grim Reaper is associated with Saturn which is astrologically associated with death. Archons are encoded in *arch-angels*, *arch-bishops* and many such terms. We see the same with the Jewish god of Saturn called El. We have Is-Ra-EL (with its Saturn symbol Star of David flag) and the *El*-elite, *El*-ections, and so on. Agent Smith in *The Matrix* can replicate himself countless times because 'he' is a software program and I contend that the same is true with the Cult bloodlines. They are biological software known through the ages as the 'Soulless Ones' and 'Heartless Ones'. They are cold, emotionless psychopaths who have no Soul and no heart connection to *The One*. We are talking AI biological robots or, in their base form, AI wavefields of encoded information. The Cult bloodline obsession with interbreeding is to hold fast the software codes. It's not really about protecting the 'blue blood' gene pool, but the wave-code 'pool' which becomes holographically the biological gene pool. Archons in general are wavefield 'software' and Gnostic texts refer to them in terms of what we would call cyborgs. The 'cold', 'emotionless', Greys are software programs while reptilian species are robot-like in their behaviour. Zulu high shaman and official historian Credo Mutwa, who left us in 2020 at the age of 98, told me decades ago that to understand the 'Illuminati' we must study the behaviour of the reptile. I did and I found them to be extraordinarily computer-like as I already mentioned. I read an article about Swiss clairvoyant, Anton Styger, which was about his life and not at all about these subjects. Nevertheless one of his comments was very relevant to what I am saying. Skilled clairvoyants are able to see deeper into the energetic field and outside purely visible light. Styger said:

When I see people in business or politics who are particularly trapped by the material world, for example, I notice that they no longer have any light bodies at all [wavefields associated with 'human']. In many of these people, the point of light at the heart chakra, which is otherwise always present, is no longer visible to me.

Instead, I see something like a layer of 'shiny tar' around them in which a monstrous being in the shape of a lizard can be distinguished. When such people speak on television, for example, I see a crocodile shape manifesting itself around the person like in a concave mirror; I don't see the light of their throat and forehead chakra.

They don't have 'light bodies' in the human sense because they are possessed software constructs and no light at the heart chakra explains their *heartless* behaviour and lack of connection to *The One*. These are software entities running our world through control of politics, intelligence agencies, military, banking, business, media, academia, science, medicine, 'education', Silicon Valley, and all the rest. Many have quick minds and intellects because they are AI, and this further explains why Gnostic documents say that Archons have no 'ennoia' ('intentionality' or 'creative imagination'). They have to trawl and exploit the creativity of their targets, in this case humanity, which is being manipulated to build its own technological prison. They have to manipulate the creative imagination of humans (which they don't have) to manifest the reality they want and this will become seriously relevant later in terms of current events. Archons can copy and imitate, but not innovate. Gnostics called this 'countermimicry'. One example is mimicking Prime Reality with the 'bad copy' simulated virtual reality and you can relate this concept to Hong Kong/China where so much is copied and not created – *it is counterfeit* as Gnostics called Yaldabaoth a 'counterfeit spirit'. Gnostic texts say Archons are expert in deception and 'phantasia' – creating *illusions* through 'Hal' or *virtual reality* with the goal 'to overpower humanity in its perceptual functions' and impose 'fear and slavery'. John Lamb Lash, author of the book *Not In His Image* about the Nag Hammadi texts, wrote:

Although they cannot originate anything, because they lack [without connection to *The One*] the divine factor of ennoia (intentionality), Archons can imitate with a vengeance. Their expertise is simulation (HAL, virtual reality). The Demiurge fashions a heaven world copied from the fractal patterns [of the original] ... His construction is celestial kitsch, like the fake Italianate villa of a Mafia don complete with militant angels to guard every portal.

It reminds me of a quote in the TV series, *The Hitchhiker's Guide to the Galaxy*: 'In the beginning the Universe was created ... This has made a lot of people very angry and been widely regarded as a bad move.'

Computer reality mimicking simulation reality



Figure 199: The interactive *No Man's Sky* universe with more than 18 quintillion planets.

The Gnostic view of reality is close to my own in the areas I have described, but that doesn't mean I am 'Gnostic'. There is just a convergence of view on the fake reality and its source. The last thing we need is any more black and white labels. There will be many other things on which Gnostics and I will disagree.

Themes describing a fake ‘god’ rebelling against ‘*the God*’ and manipulating humanity by deception are widespread in so many forms within the religions and cultures of the world. It’s a universal story and if people think that imposing a simulated reality on the *apparent* scale of the Universe is too far-fetched they should look at interactive video games like *No Man’s Sky* released in 2016 ([Fig 199](#)). This features more than 18 quintillion planets each with their own unique, flora, faunas and animal species. There are sentient alien races and those who are ‘mechanical lifeforms’. The controlling ‘God’, called The Atlas (Yaldabaoth), is a ‘ubiquitous entity represented by a red orb inside a black diamond’. The will of Atlas is imposed by the Sentinels (Archons) who are ‘mechanical lifeforms; self-replicating, non-organic machines ... [who] ... act as workhorse machines of The Atlas and as universal police, controlling the actions of those who reside within the universe’. This pretty much sums up the human plight. We are experiencing a false reality that takes the form of an interactive virtual-reality simulation in which information is encoded in the simulation’s version of The Field for us to decode into an apparently physical world. The human personality without a connection to beyond-the-Bubble consciousness is created by electronic/electromagnetic stimulus through a system of activation and reaction (input-output) between the simulation and the five senses. Body-Minds have major or subtle differences in their ‘wiring’ or wavefields and so can respond differently to the same input. One person may react to a situation with compassion and another with empathy-deleted contempt. These reactions will appear in the playing out as a person who cares and a psychopath. Human responses to electronic/electromagnetic stimulus (a situation) are what we call different ‘personalities’. At the same time there are enormous similarities in the way that humans react to stimulus that induces fear – the ‘press enter’ response as I call it.

So we have Body-Minds reacting to fear-based stimulus on a mass scale – especially that relating to fear of death and the unknown (same thing) – but in their five sense-stimulus feedback loops responding to other electrical input in different ways that appear to give us different ‘personalities’. I say those ‘personalities’ are largely the creation of electrical input-output interaction while a connection to expanded awareness takes you beyond the programmed limits of human personality. Heart consciousness does what it knows to be right and overrides the input-output feedback loops. It does not react to fear stimulus with an output of fear and fear-generated response. It calmly sees things as they are from a panoramic perspective and the awareness that it is an eternal state of Infinite Consciousness having a brief and transitory experience. It has no fear of death because it knows that ‘death’ is merely a transfer of attention from a myopic reality to an infinite one. Heart awareness may seem to have a ‘personality’ through the perception of its behaviour (not least because that is so different to the ‘norm’), but such people are responding from the ‘I’ beyond the Bubble and not five-sense dominated input-output. Heart consciousness overrides that simulation/Body-Mind interaction and those senses then respond to the heart and not the simulation. In this way we begin to impact upon the simulation and not the other way round.

The simulation gives the illusion of past-present-future just as a video game does when both are only encoded information following a pre-set program in the NOW. Also encoded are the reincarnation/karma/astrology cycles which are feedback loops maintaining Souls and minds in the illusion even after human ‘death’ unless we transform our self-identity, remember our true nature, open our heart connection, and expand into frequencies the simulation cannot control. Our enslavement depends in totality on us being held within the frequency band of the simulation within the speed of light through our perceptual state and we can change that any time we want. Nor should we think that the manipulating entities are all-powerful as the force behind an apparently gigantic simulated Universe. Who says it’s gigantic? The *No Man’s Sky* universe appears to be so and yet it is only computer codes giving the illusion of enormity. When I looked at the ‘night sky’ in the London Planetarium it appeared to be fantastic in scale while it only existed as a projection on the ceiling. The ‘real’ night sky seems gigantic when it only exists in that form in your brain. The simulation is 2D or ‘flat’ encoded information fields that we decode into illusory 3D through Body-Mind systems specifically designed to do that. Holograms

work the same way. The extent of the simulation can be minute compared with what we perceive it to be. At the time of release *No Man's Sky* was running from 600,000 lines of code which sounds a lot until you know that modern vehicles with their entertainment and Wi-Fi systems use 100 *million* lines of code with plans for this to increase by two to three times. Do we only decode wavefields into holograms when we are observing them to save computational power that would be necessary for the entirety to be in holographic form all the time in the same way that computer screens go blank to save energy when they are not being used?

Decoding our own prison

The key to control by the simulation is not only its wave information construct. The crucial part is getting incarnate minds to decode the illusion while believing it to be real. The brain/body is constantly decoding the Matrix into holographic form and while perception is dictated only by the five-senses (the point of Matrix-Body interaction) the simulation is in control. Minds are then in the world and of the world and have no other point of reference. Would computer game characters know they are only responding to software? They would think it was all real. The point about 'responding' is significant. Humanity is not ultimately manipulated and directed by agents of the Cult sitting around a table deciding their next move. The transformation of global society now unfolding could never be achieved on that scale by table-sitters alone. The Archontic plan is being encoded in the energetic fabric of the simulation field for humanity to *decode* into reality and this is how it can happen so fast and on such global scale. For this to happen humanity must be attuned with the wave frequencies carrying that information – 5G is the next stage. Incessant propaganda through the 'education' system and mass media is specifically designed to instil perceptions that will create the desired Cult reality by entangling with the wavefields infused with that agenda. What you believe you perceive and what you perceive you experience. Humanity, in short, is decoding and manifesting its own prison. Only a transformation of perception through a transfer of self-identity to the True Self will stop this. How much of human perception is already being delivered by the simulation? What is the real origin of the constant chatter passing through people's minds? I call this the 'Scenario Mind' because it spews out an endless list of scenarios and how we would respond even though the scenario is not happening. If he did this, I'd do that, if she said that, I'd say this. Where is all that coming from? Go into a quiet space and *observe* this chatter. Stand back from it. Listen as it rambles on. You can observe your own Body-Mind chatter and what does that tell you? It's *not you*. The *observer* of the chatter is *you*.

Benjamin Libet (1916-2007), a scientist in the physiology department of the University of California, San Francisco, generated many highly-significant experiments in his quest to understand human consciousness. One group was asked to move their hand whenever 'they' chose while their brain activity was being monitored. Libet found that brain activity to move the hand began a full half a second before any conscious decision to do so. John-Dylan Haynes, a neuroscientist at the Max Planck Institute for Human Cognitive and Brain Sciences in Leipzig, Germany, found in his studies that he could predict an action *ten seconds* before a conscious intention purely by monitoring brain activity. Frank Tong, a neuroscientist at Vanderbilt University in Nashville, Tennessee, said: 'Ten seconds is a lifetime in terms of brain activity.' Where was the decision-making really coming from if not the conscious mind? I say that *some* – not all, some – is coming from the simulation. Morpheus said in *The Matrix*: 'Are they your thoughts you're thinking now?' The body is encoded to be a limiting device for consciousness. In our no-form energetic state we can see, hear, feel, smell and taste without the body. We don't actually need it except to interact with the simulation. It focuses our attention within the frequency band of the simulation or in fact an even smaller band than that called visible light. It makes us believe that we can only see, hear, feel, smell and taste through the body which means people fall for the illusion that the body is who we are and without it we're nothing. Without it we're *everything*. Mainstream science and medicine constantly underpin this belief that the body is the totality of the 'I'. The body is *counter-*

mimicking consciousness and limiting our sense of self, reality and the possible. No wonder Gnostics said the body was a prison trapping the 'divine spark' within matter. One other mystery explained by all this is why Earth's atmosphere and ecosystems are perfect to sustain life as we perceive it when only a tiny change would spell disaster. Scientist Robert Lanza writes in his book, *Biocentrism*:

Why are the laws of physics exactly balanced for animal life to exist? ... If the strong nuclear force were decreased 2 percent, atomic nuclei wouldn't hold together, and plain-vanilla hydrogen would be the only kind of atom in the Universe. If the gravitational force were decreased by a hair, stars (including the Sun) would not ignite. These are just [some of] more than 200 parameters within the solar system and Universe so exact that it strains credulity to propose that they are random – even if that is exactly what standard contemporarily physics baldly suggests.

They are of course not random. They are *made* to be that way. How? Our world is a virtual-reality simulation with its own encoded rules and information. Why? To allow the Cult and its non-human 'gods' to enslave human perception in ongoing illusion and control. The simulation has been breached by many over the years who have sought to make humanity aware of its plight and they have often taken the consequences for that instigated by the Cult. This continues to be the case today as a concerted effort is underway by consciousness 'incarnating' from Prime Reality to wrest back control from the Fallen by informing the human family what is really happening in the manner of the prisoner in Plato's cave. We are making progress, but to say the very least the job is far from done.

CHAPTER SIX

Why don't we know?

Is there any point in public debate in a society where hardly anyone has been taught how to think, while millions have been taught what to think? – Peter Hitchens

The game of life – in this case human life – plays out in a stadium (the simulation) called *perception*. From this everything else comes. What we perceive becomes what we believe becomes how we behave becomes what we experience. This is the deal and to understand these connections is to understand the world and the human plight.



Figure 200: A closed mind emits a closed frequency which interacts with The Field only within that limited band of possibility and thus creates the feedback loop in which 'Little Me' and 'Label Me' perception produces through cause and effect limited experience and awareness. (Image Gareth Icke.)



Figure 201: Open your mind and expand your self-identity and you expand your interaction with The Field and possibility. 'Big Me' perception creates a 'Big Me' experience. (Image Gareth Icke.)



Figure 202: What I call the Postage Stamp Consensus is the narrow band of possibility taught in the ‘education’ system and promoted by the media which is the foundation belief system of academia, science, corporations, medicine, government, and the great majority of the public.

Our perceptions dictate our frequency and our frequency dictates our wave-entanglements with people, places, situations, and experiences. Through this process we create our own reality and experience by attracting into our lives a holographic representation of our *perceptions*. A ‘Little Me’ perception will transmit waves so limited and weak in terms of perceived potential (‘I have no power’, ‘I’m a victim’ and ‘I’ll never be up to much’) that the feedback loop between perception and The Field will deliver back to you just that sort of life ([Fig 200](#)). By contrast if you come at life from the perspective of being Infinite Awareness (All Possibility) having a brief human experience you make a very different feedback connection with The Field – one that is both greater in scale and much higher in frequency. An expanded sense of self automatically expands your accessed consciousness to match that perception and you are interacting with that range of possibility within The Field. Your life is transformed as more possibilities attach to your feedback loop and become your experience ([Fig 201](#)). Our self-identity is central to our relationship with The Field. The Cult well knows that if it controls perception it will control experience. This is why people are being herded into smaller and smaller perceived identities to the point where one American university has this code for its students’ perceptions of self-identity: LGBTTQQFAGPBDSM (don’t ask). I’m sure that string of letters will be longer by the time you read this with new and ever more myopic identities invented by the day. What is happening in the world in terms of manipulation and events falls into place once you know how reality works.



Figure 203: Virtual reality headsets perfectly symbolise the human perception program.



Figure 204: The Cult knows that if it hijacks perception it will dictate the frequencies that attract experience. Myopic perceptions create a myopic life and collectively mass control becomes possible. The Cult is creating the nature of our reality through the manipulation of human perception.

The Cult's prime objective then is to dictate perception and it has structured human society as a cradle-to-grave programming laboratory founded on what I have long called the 'Postage Stamp Consensus' ([Fig 202](#)). This is the tiny band of possibility indoctrinated in schools, colleges and universities and repeated 24/7 worldwide by the mainstream and much of the 'alternative' media. Postage Stamp belief dictates the perceptual limits of academia, establishment science, medicine, media, government, business and the Mainstream *Everything*, and provides the foundation of what I refer to as The Program ([Fig 203](#) overleaf). The Cult first exploited religion as its perception deception in which deviating from the imposed belief proclaimed in a 'holy book' was a death sentence. This was the Postage Stamp Consensus of its day. Religion still retained the concept of life continuing after death, but included subordination to a schizophrenic 'God', both loving and vindictive, that invited those who believed in him to eternal paradise while condemning non-believers to stoking the fires of hell forever. We are asked to believe that this eternal division was decided by 'God' on the basis of a brief life on Earth of anything from seconds to decades on a planet equivalent to a billionth of a pinhead. I don't know about you, but that makes perfect sense to me after a dozen gin and tonics with whisky chasers. Shockingly this belief still controls the perceptions (and the decoded experience) of billions. Ever greater numbers began to reject this form of control, however, and they were targeted with the new Cult entrapment wheeze of 'science' and state-controlled 'education'. Mainstream establishment science had the added benefit of deleting any concept of a Creator and believers in this religion masquerading as 'rational thought' drew its targets and advocates deeper into the perception of random existence within 'matter'. For religion in its most extreme form there is death to blasphemers and the milder version is ejection from 'the faith'. With the 'rational' religion of Scientism there is death to your career and ejection from the faculty ('the faith'). Mass indoctrination is further entrenched by Cult-controlled media bias and censorship now being taken to ever more extreme levels by Cult-owned Silicon Valley. If you control what people see and hear they will believe what you tell them so long as you also control what they *don't* see and hear ([Fig 204](#)).

The download begins



Figure 205: Perceptual programming begins the moment we leave the womb and in fact even before that through the wave and chemical connections to the mother.



Figure 206: 'Education' in a single image.



Figure 207: Children go to school to be perceptually programmed with a sense of reality designed to last their entire lives.

Human society is a laboratory for Body-Mind and other terms that capture the theme include conveyor belt, sausage machine and computer download. Human life is indeed a *perceptual* download that starts even in the womb and ends at the cemetery. When a child arrives blinking into the light the programming really starts ([Fig 205](#)). First there are parents who have already been processed by the programming system the child is about to go through and accepted what it told them to believe (if they are entrapped in Body-Mind which the great majority still are). Parents upload this indoctrination to their child in its earliest years and I am not saying this is done through malevolent intent. Often it is quite the opposite. They have themselves downloaded the system's version of reality and they think they are doing the best for their children by giving them the benefit of that 'wisdom'. Downloaded illusory 'wisdom' includes everything from what children are told and how they are treated to accepting the tidal wave of vaccinations they now receive to fill the coffers of the Cult-owned Big Pharma and undermine their immune systems and perceptual processes for life. When children are damaged by vaccines it often happens in the brain. How many kids who are not brain-damaged enough to be diagnosed still have their thinking and creative processes suppressed and limited for the rest of their lives? When this impacts on behaviour they are prescribed drugs made by the same Cult Big Pharma cartel that produced the vaccines to 'treat' the effects of vaccines. The same goes for food/drug (chemical/wave) distortions which skew the way that kids process information into perception and behaviour. Three or four years after arriving in the world the perception download goes through a colossal upgrade known hilariously as 'education' when an already toxin-infested child heads for school ([Fig 206](#)). Now parents start to lose influence over their offspring while children increasingly lose their distinct individuality to a programmed perception about everything ([Fig 207](#)). Life as it will be for their entire formative years has begun during which they will sit at a desk or in a lecture theatre day after day being told what to believe and not believe about themselves and the world in all its facets and forms by authority figures representing the perception program of the state. These may be anything from a primary school teacher to an 'eminent professor'. Either way their role is the same – to get children and young people to believe what the state (the Cult) wants them to believe. What more effective way can there be to dictate collective perception and behaviour than to have control of what young generations are told to believe throughout their formative years? The 'educator' at every level may themselves believe what they say thanks to their own programming, or they may not. It doesn't matter. The state insists that they teach what they are told to teach in the way they are told to teach it or they're out the door. Teachers and academics are in the same perceptual penitentiary as their students in the 'education' environment. I am going to detail in upcoming chapters how this is transforming society more blatantly and profoundly than ever before and to what end. Pressure to pass exams means that 'education' for both student and teacher becomes a daily rush to stuff state-approved (Cult-approved) alleged 'facts' into the memories of young people to be held for just long enough to repeat them on the exam paper. How much of what you 'learned' at school do you remember or have you used in your life apart from the basics of maths, writing and such like? Very little will be the answer from most people, or, in my case, next to sod all. In fact I have spent my life since deleting the crap I was told at school on the few occasions when I was paying any attention. The Cult doesn't mind that you don't consciously remember the programming. Its target is your subconscious which studies have revealed is

responsible for 95 percent of human behaviour. Your so-called conscious mind is the slave of the subconscious and the *subconscious* is what the Cult is after. When it has that it has *you*.

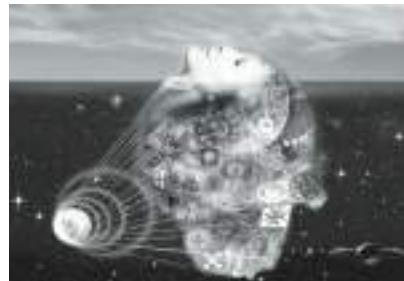


Figure 208: The subconscious is the target of perceptual programming and this seeps through to the conscious mind as what appears to be a 'personal' view or opinion. 95 percent of human behaviour derives from subconscious perceptions. (Image Neil Hague)

It is extraordinary how little conscious decision-making is involved in prompting actions. Most of them are computer-like responses and reactions often emotional in nature. Remember the research that showed how brain activity required to do something starts before a conscious decision is made to do it. The conscious mind retains very little, indeed perceives very little, as we saw with the quote about visual reality being constructed by the brain from 40 'sensations' a second from the 11 million received. Our subconscious absorbs it all and why wouldn't that be the governor of perception? People don't have to *remember* all they were programmed to believe by the 'education' system. The Cult knows the subconscious will do that and influence the conscious mind for life unless de-programming takes place called 'awakening' – awakening from the *program* ([Fig 208](#)). Observe people's reactions and responses to events and happenings and you will see reflex-action perception akin to pressing 'enter'. I have been ridiculed for decades for what I have said by those who have not spent a single second checking the facts or background. Their instant reaction is triggered by subconscious responses on the basis only of what they have been told is possible. Never have they had to consider shapeshifting while absorbing only information that says the world is solid. To them, therefore, shapeshifting must be crazy by reflex action. Subconscious programming seeps through to conscious perception. You have seen already my take on life that we are all one consciousness having different experiences and that human labels of race, sexuality and so on are illusions that we allow to divide us. I have been saying the same for 30 years. Compare that with what a British 'writer' called Gary Spedding posted on Twitter to my son, Gareth: 'You are the son of a known anti-Semitic white supremacist conspiracy theorist.' Has Spedding read any of my books? No. Has he been to my public presentations? No. Does he know anything about me that has not come from biased sources? No. Much of humanity is forming its perceptions in the same way which is why the great majority of what people believe is not true and only what the Cult wants them to *believe* is true. They are making 'conscious' decisions second by second considering validity in a whole range of subjects and situations from life-long programmed *assumptions* supported by no personal research whatsoever. To become *conscious* beyond The Program means to take control of our perceptions which involves reaching our *own* conclusions and not taking them off the shelf from someone else.

'Education': Systematic programming



Figure 209: The System told me what to think – if you say anything different you must be mad or stupid.



Figure 210: Big mistake.

From all this comes what I call ‘everyone knows that’ syndrome. We’ve all heard it – me more than most – when you challenge an assumption of reality and you are dismissed with an ‘everyone knows that’ repetition of the programmed possible (Fig 209). How come that ‘everyone knows’? Well, everyone has been through the same perceptual download. Er, that’s it (Fig 210). Children in religious families invariably follow that religion because it’s all they’ve ever heard and the same principle applies to the ‘education’ download. The general rule of the Cult is this: If that’s all they ever hear that is what they will believe subconsciously and so consciously. Any information challenging those assumptions has to break through the walls and layers of programming before an ‘Ah-ha’ moment can occur. There is another reason for the deluge of mostly irrelevant information heaped upon children and young people. While you were filling your mind with the daily deluge mostly utterly useless to you – and then revising it again for exams – your mind was focused on that and not going its own unique way. Five-sense focus is the goal. Once you focus at the exclusion of all else you lose peripheral vision where the truth lies and dots can be connected. The System adds still more focus time in the form of ‘homework’ to perpetuate five-sense focus and wire the brain to process information in a particular way which I’ll come to in a moment. It’s all coldly calculated by those in the shadows. Compartmentalisation means that the high 90 percents of those directly imposing the programming will have no idea why this is being done or even *what* is being done to the perceptions of the young. The Cult *does* and created the structure of ‘education’ through bloodline families like the Rockefellers. John D. Rockefeller, the American oil/banking/pharmaceutical tycoon and Cult agent, founded the US General Education Board at the start of the 20th century. He said: ‘I don’t want a nation of thinkers – I want a nation of workers.’ I want a nation of *slaves* would be more accurate. Frederick T. Gates, Rockefeller’s co-founder and business advisor, said it all:

In our dream we have limitless resources, and the people yield themselves with perfect docility to our moulding hand. The present educational conventions fade from our minds; and, unhampered by tradition, we work our own good will upon a grateful and responsive rural folk.

We shall not try to make these people or any of their children into philosophers or men of learning or of science. We are not to raise up among them authors, orators, poets, or men of letters. We shall not search

for embryo great artists, painters, musicians. Nor will we cherish even the humbler ambition to raise up from among them lawyers, doctors, preachers, statesmen, of whom we now have ample supply.

Cult ‘education’ has been imposed to condition children to believe and accept for life the following:

- Truth comes from authority
- Intelligence is the ability to remember and repeat
- Accurate memory and repetition are rewarded
- Non-compliance is punished
- I must conform intellectually and socially

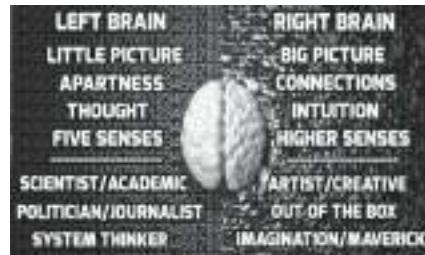


Figure 211: The left and right brain process information in very different ways to produce very different perceptions of reality.



Figure 212: The System, driven by the Cult, defends the left-brain from right-brain influence. (Image Neil Hague)

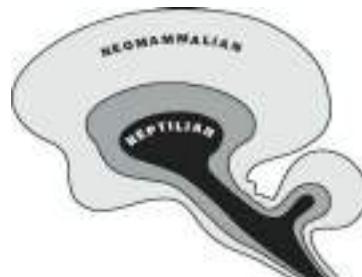


Figure 213: The reptilian brain works closely with the left-brain to dictate perception and behaviour. Reptilian brain? What a coincidence.

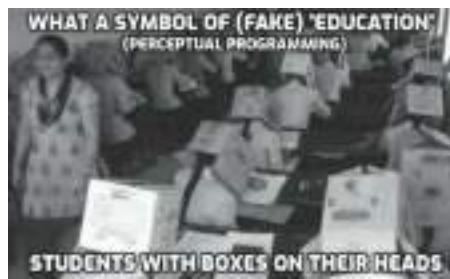


Figure 214: Once again the 'education' programming system in a single image.

The Cult 'education' system worldwide is so carefully moulded from its controlling core that it targets a particular part of the brain – the left hemisphere. This has a largely different function overall than the right hemisphere. The brain is holographic in its decoded form and will have all functions spread throughout, but on the whole-brain level the two hemisphere's have different emphasis. The left-brain decodes information in ways that dominate human perception. From here come words, language, numbers and the sense of everything being apart from everything else. It sees dots and pixels, identifies with labels and likes to conform within hierarchical structures ([Fig 211](#) overleaf). It is the orthodox politician, scientist, doctor, journalist, academic, business leader or worker, lawyer and judge. In other words all the people who run or serve The System. Current human society is overwhelmingly a holographic expression of the left side of the brain which is the foundation perception of the Mainstream Everything. The right-brain by contrast is free-spirit creativity, imagination, art, poetry, spontaneity, the maverick. It is authors (of certain types), orators, poets, great artists, painters and musicians which Frederick T. Gates said they didn't want the 'education' system for the masses to produce. Crucially the right-brain has a greater sense of oneness unity and connects dots/pixels into pictures and patterns that reveal the truth about life and reality. The right-brain has close connections to the heart and for that reason alone it is in the gunsights of Cult 'education' which is designed to close the heart chakra, suppress the right-brain, and enslave the young for life in the Body-Mind Bubble. Note how little school time is given to right-brain activities like art, drama and music, and how left-brain subjects dominate the curriculum ([Fig 212](#)). Exams are passed by compiling information through the left-brain and then repeating that on the exam paper. The left-brain to a fundamental extent is the home of The Program and its perception processing centre in conjunction with the reptilian brain, or R-complex', from where reflex-action, survival-instinct responses are activated ([Fig 213](#)). I say that the reptilian brain, at least in its present dominant form, comes from Archontic manipulation of the human body. The reptilian brain is constantly scanning the environment for threats to survival and not just 'physical' survival. I mean also financial survival, relationship survival, job survival, etc. Road rage and reflex-action, fight-or-flight, over-the-top emotional responses are reptilian brain 'press-enter' reactions and the underlying fear and anxiety felt by so many is reptilian brain connected. It is one of the major behaviour-control mechanisms and its impact on emotion keeps people in a low-vibrational state. *Is this really a coincidence given what I have been writing for decades about a reptilian connection to human control?* British psychiatrist Dr Iain McGilchrist has featured what he calls the divided human brain in his presentations. He describes how the left-brain has a narrow focus (point of attention) in terms of detail and the right perceives the panorama or big picture. You can see the recurring theme. Those focused in their left-brain have a narrowed 'window of attention' – window of perception – which leads to lower and less expanded frequency states. Brain hemisphere/heart separation also instils a sense of Body-Mind/Soul/Spirit separation. The 'education' system is specifically designed to be a conveyor belt to turn out life-long Bubble people. How symbolically appropriate that a school in India forced students to wear cardboard boxes on their heads to stop cheating during exams ([Fig 214](#)). Unseen boxes are donned by children the world over every time they start a school day.

Play time? What play time?



Figure 215: The very different perceptions of brain hemispheres portrayed in a car advertisement. We are meant to be whole-brained and balance the two.

The two hemispheres of the brain are connected by a bridge called the corpus callosum and we are supposed to be whole-brain people getting the best of both 'sides' (Fig 215 overleaf). Once they are divided we become divided in the way we process information into perception. Extremes of left-brain dominance create five-sense 'system' people and right-side domination produces highly-creative people who struggle to function and cope in a left-brain world. Another aspect of the dot-connecting, pattern-perceiving, right brain is to see *context*. Awareness only of dots denies context which comes from seeing how dots connect. An individual dot can look a certain way, but connect that to other dots – provide context – and the dots together look very different to dots by themselves. I spend my life connecting dots between apparently unconnected people, places, organisations and situations. Their meaning and relevance in and of themselves is transformed once connections give them context. Dots can tell you *what* is happening while dot-connected context tells you *why* it's happening. Clearly the Cult doesn't want people doing this or its game will be revealed. The race to manipulate brain processing to see only left-brain dots begins in earnest the moment a child arrives for the first day at school. From here children are 'taught (programmed) by teachers and academics who have been imprisoned in their own left-brain by the same programming system. The best way for children to activate their right-brain is to use their imagination by simply *playing*. They need to be allowed to ad-lib and *imagine* by enjoying this definition of play – 'Engaging in activity for enjoyment and recreation rather than a serious or practical purpose'. This presents such a danger to the Cult's programming strategy that play is being deleted from childhood through homework, the push for longer school days, and the youngest of children being introduced to left-brain activities at an ever earlier age. Democrat presidential candidate Bernie Sanders promised free education and 'Pre-K' (a pre-kindergarten classroom-based preschool program for children under five). This fits perfectly with the agenda to take children from their parents as soon as possible The Sanders website said:

For parents all over the country, taking time off or working fewer hours to care for their children is simply not an option. That leads many families to spend a disproportionate amount of their income to cover the cost of child care and early education.



Figure 216: Take children and young people in the prime of life with all possibility to explore and stick them at a desk all day while telling them what to believe for life. Utterly shocking village idiocy – but exactly what the Cult requires.

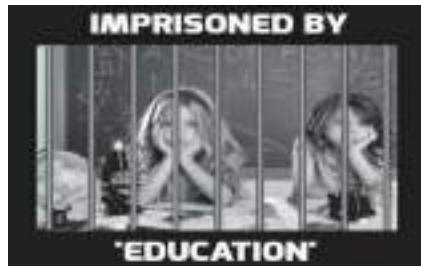


Figure 217: The walls and bars they increasingly build around schools capture the reason for fake ‘education’ – building walls and bars around the mind. (Image Gareth Icke.)

There was no mention of the consequences of parents spending a disproportionate amount of their time away from their kids while the state has control of their minds. No, no – just how to make even easier to spend a disproportionate amount of their time away from their kids. We had the same theme with one-time Democrat presidential candidate Kamala Harris who called for the American school day to be extended to 6pm to align with the adult work day and this was right in line with the agenda for kids which seeks to secure still more time for perceptual programming away from parents. Children sit at desks for hours every day being talked at while outside the Sun is shining and there are trees to be climbed and imagination to be explored (Fig 216). What little ‘time’ is left for children to play has been hijacked by smartphones and videogames that mostly stimulate ... the *left-brain*. John Taylor Gatto, a former teacher in the United States, realised what ‘education’ was really designed to do and wrote a series of excellent books exposing the game. Gatto was New York City Teacher of the Year in 1989, 1990, and 1991, and New York State Teacher of the Year in 1991. He became rather less popular with the authorities when he began speaking out. Gatto said the aim was to subdue creative, inventive, and bright students and make them obedient, subdued and dependent individuals by controlling their school-time and then hijacking what should be free time through homework (Fig 217). He said children on average watched television for 55 hours a week (perception programming) and slept for 56. This left them 57 hours ‘to grow up strong and competent and whole’, but 30 hours of that was spent at school (perception programming), 8 hours preparing for school and getting to and from school, and 7 hours doing homework (perception programming) totalling 45 hours related to school. Gatto went on:

After the 45 school hours are removed a total of 12 hours remain each week from which to fashion a private person – one that can like, trust, and live with itself. Twelve hours. But my kids must eat, too, and that takes some time. Not much, because they’ve lost the tradition of family dining – how they learn to eat in school is best called ‘feeding’ – but if we allot just 3 hours a week to evening feedings, we arrive at a net total of private time for each child of 9 hours ...

...This demented schedule is an efficient way to create dependent human beings, needy people unable to fill their own hours, unable to initiate lines of meaning to give substance and pleasure to their existence. It is a national disease, this dependency and aimlessness, and schooling and television and busy work ... has a lot to do with it.



Figure 218: In a nutshell.



Figure 219: Get where? And why? Gotta, gotta, gotta, get to the end as fast as I can. Enjoy the moment? What moment?

This is exactly the situation the Cult set out to create given that ‘education’ is all about producing children and young people that become adult mind-slaves for life (Fig 218). We hear spewing from the mouths of mind-slave politicians that ‘Education must prepare children for the workplace’. You must spend your childhood working hard, studying and swotting to ‘be someone’ and ‘get somewhere’. Oh, really? Be who? Get where exactly? You must have a career, a job, you must strive, strive, strive, gotta, gotta, gotta, there’s not a minute to be lost (Fig 219). The Red Queen says in Lewis Carroll’s *Through the Looking-Glass*: ‘Now, here, you see, it takes all the running you can do, to keep in the same place. If you want to get somewhere else, you must run at least twice as fast as that!’ In fact, when we understand reality, the best way to ‘get somewhere’ is to stop running and manifest. The current ‘education’ system must be dismantled to emphasise play and imagination to activate the right brain and develop whole people. I left school at 15 to play professional soccer and daydreamed through my school years. Somehow – it must be a miracle – I have managed to write and research a stream of highly detailed books and speak for ten hours a go to audiences around the world without a single note. How is that possible when I am officially so ‘uneducated’? A deeply-programmed alleged member of the ‘alternative media’ once said that I can’t be taken seriously because I ‘didn’t have a degree’. She had one. No further comment necessary. All that I have learned since I left school with no exam passes has been on my own terms. My son Gareth got an ‘E’ in some exams because he cared even less about school than I did. Today he’s a highly intelligent man aware of the world with a highly creative mind that makes him an exceptional singer-songwriter and all-round talent in many fields. There is absolutely no need to deluge young minds with information they will never use hour-by-hour, day after day, when they can easily find that information for themselves later should they want to or need to. The deluge is not for the benefit of children and young people. It’s for the benefit of the Cult and its incessant perceptual programming regime.

Diane Ravitch, an American education historian, policy analyst and writer, summed it up when she said: ‘Sometimes the most brilliant and intelligent minds do not shine in standardised tests because they do not have standardised minds.’ The Cult, however, wants standardised minds and set up the system to get them. Psychiatrist Iain McGilchrist rightly points out that the left-brain is focused upon *knowing ever more about what is already known*. It’s the right-brain and the heart that want to explore and uncover the unknown and have the awareness to understand it. Canadian-born psychiatrist Eric Berne described the perceptual difference between the hemispheres: ‘The moment a little boy is concerned with which is a jay

and which is a sparrow [left-brain] he can no longer see the birds or hear them sing [right-brain/heart].’ This is yet another example of label limitation and division at the expense of the unity of Oneness. The ‘education’ system is about indoctrination of the ‘known’ (allegedly). The Cult doesn’t want us to know the publicly unknown. I am not saying that all mainstream academics and scientists are knowingly suppressing knowledge. They’re in the Bubble, too. I am saying the Cult-asset academics and scientists are doing that which is a relative few. For the scam to work Mainstream Everything in general must also be kept from the truth and diverted into misunderstanding and dead ends. There is also the immense difference between knowledge and *knowing* which ‘education’ cannot teach. It comes from within. The mystic Osho said:

Knowledge has no capacity to dispel ignorance. Knowledge is a false phenomenon. It is not wisdom at all; it is just the opposite of wisdom. Knowledge is borrowed; wisdom is the flowering of your innermost being ... No university can offer it, no scripture can offer it and no scholarship is capable of doing it. They are all impotent efforts, but they have been deceiving millions of people for thousands of years. Yes they make you knowledgeable. To be knowledgeable is one thing, to ***know*** is totally different.

Perception lobotomy



Figure 220: The medicalisation of childhood.

Children and young people are indoctrinated with the Mainstream Everything’s version of history, science, medicine, politics, current events, life, self, all of it. ‘Education’ is a Cult-created programming machine constantly underscored by the Cult-controlled media which I’ll be coming to shortly. Kids that want to question, challenge the orthodoxy, or are plain bored stiff like I was, are called ‘disruptive influences’ and increasingly prescribed mind-altering drugs like Ritalin for ‘attention’ disorders. We have the medicalisation of childhood, medicalisation of growing up, and it extends into colleges and universities as the medicalisation of teenage experience essential to developing emotionally strong, fully-rounded, adults capable of looking life in the eye ([Fig 220](#)). Here we have children in the prime of life sitting in a prison waiting for the bell to ring to enjoy a modicum of freedom (homework apart) which today is defined as time on my smartphone. They are being prepared for an entire life in an adult prison after school becomes work, the teacher becomes the boss, and obeying authority is seen as essential to financially survive in adulthood while, as with childhood, often counting the minutes to home-time. Obey the teacher is replaced by obey the boss in a seamless life of external control in which only the characters and names change. ‘Quick, get up, you’ll be late for school’ becomes ‘Quick, get up, you’ll be late for work’; ‘What will the teacher say?’ becomes ‘What will the boss say?’ Children from the earliest age are programmed by representatives of authority with carrot and stick punishment and reward for those who conform or do not. This, too, is ingrained in the subconscious as a fear of not obeying authority. None of this is by chance.

Charlotte Iserbyt realised this fact when she was a policy advisor to the Reagan administration at the US Department of Education. She describes in her book, *The Deliberate Dumbing Down of America*, how she

saw documents laying out the ‘restructuring’ of American and global education through computerisation designed to make perception programming even more effective. Iserbyt said that what she saw was like ‘communist brainwashing’ and this will become extremely relevant later. One manual by a Professor Ronald Havelock was aptly titled *The Change Agent’s Guide to Innovation in Education*. Iserbyt said she was trained to identify ‘resistors’ who were ‘... those good, smart Americans who realise that anything that has education hanging off the end of it is probably not what they’re looking for’. She was told to ‘go up against them, and actually to go and try to get them to join us through the group process system’. This is the group-think, group-absorption, technique to either suck-in or marginalise opposing views and ideas – a modus operandi employed at every level of human society. What Iserbyt saw was planned in those documents in the 1980s has been rolled out – and worse – all over the world and it is transforming human life as the young subjected to this become adults. Central to mass indoctrination through fake ‘education’ in the United States is the programming operation called Common Core much promoted by big-time Cult asset Bill Gates who turns up in financial support of a long list of Cult agendas. These include mass vaccination of children worldwide. Gates is a very sinister piece of work and there is a lot more to come about him when I get to the ‘Covid-19’ hoax. The pillars of standardised state education (indoctrination) were erected by the One-percent through vehicles such as the Rockefeller and Ford Foundations and today state child programming is dominated by the One-percent Gates Foundation. The fronts may change but the Cult is always in control. Organisations associated with Cult agent George Soros were behind the transformation of the Russian education system based on the Western model after the fall of the Soviet Union. School life was extended by a year, textbooks replaced and schools amalgamated in a period that saw plummeting levels of education and literacy. Soviet education was of course dictated by government, but the Western model of Rockefeller, Gates and Soros is aimed at *global* standardisation of indoctrination and centralised control. I read a book published in 2018 by American teacher Rebecca Friedrichs and the title said it all: *Standing Up To Goliath*. Her 28 years in teaching showed her how children are being politically and perceptually indoctrinated on an industrial scale with tyrannical teaching unions forcing upon young minds what I am calling the Cult agenda. She describes how teachers who can see what is happening and vehemently oppose it are intimidated into silence and acquiescence. This is being done to parents and society as a whole through Cult-instigated political correctness.

I have exposed the plan for decades to delete parental rights and hand control of children and their upbringing to the state (Cult) by giving ever more power to schools and social services to destroy parental rights and control the lives of children. A primary school in England announced it would fine parents for every five minutes they were late picking up their children and threatened to call social services if they took too long. As usual the poorest parents struggling to juggle work to survive with getting to the school on time would be the ones to suffer. Parents fined by schools is a critical line to cross in the power of schools over families and this is already widespread in Britain with parents fined if they take their children on holiday in term time when the cost of holidays is so much cheaper (once again hitting the poorest). The deeply corrupt authorities on the Isle of Wight where I live, with a population of 142,000, revealed through a Freedom of Information Act request that they accrued more than £100,000 in the previous year fining parents and carers whose children had ‘unauthorised absences’. What must the figure be nationally? It’s an Orwellian racket. Schools are becoming dictatorships and tyrannies with surveillance cameras and, in America, police officers on duty preparing kids for their planned adult life in an Orwellian nightmare. It’s getting so extreme that the utterly ridiculous staff at Valley Forge Elementary School in Pennsylvania reported a six-year-old Downs syndrome girl to the police for pretending to shoot her teacher with her fingers. Little children pointing their fingers and saying bang, bang, is now worthy of police attention according to teaching staff who are more programmed than the kids they are programming. A *six-year-old* girl was handed over to the police by the Love Grove Elementary School in Jacksonville, Florida, without her mother being told after a ‘tantrum’ and held in a

facility for two days under a ‘mental health’ law. Police body-camera footage shows the girl walking calmly and quietly with a police officer saying ‘she’s fine, there’s nothing wrong with her’. Those of us old enough know what life was like before the extreme Big Brother state appeared have the radar and experience (those that are in any way awake that is) to see the scale of what is both happening and planned. Children and young people have been *born* into the world as it is and it’s all they have ever known. What are to people like me extraordinary extremes of control gathering by the day are, to young people enslaved in Body-Mind, just ‘how things are’ in human society. Such is the grip that the Cult-controlled state has on perception that many even demand more control and deletion of freedom which they and their own children will have to live with for the rest of their lives. Kyung Hee Kim, professor of education at the College of William and Mary in Virginia, ran a study involving a very large number of school-age children between kindergarten and 12th grade which tracked the effect of (the Cult’s) ‘education’ programming of the young. The study found the following as children were processed by the system:

A massive decline of creativity [right brain] as ‘children have become less emotionally expressive [right brain], less energetic, less talkative and verbally expressive, less humorous [right brain], less imaginative [right brain], less unconventional [right brain], less lively and passionate [right brain], less perceptive [right brain], less apt to connect seemingly irrelevant things [right brain], less synthesizing [right brain], and less likely to see things from a different angle [right brain].

I rest my case, M’Lud ([Fig 221](#)).



Figure 221: What the ‘education’ system does to young people. Tell them to fuck off, kids. (Image David Dees.)

Sending them crazy

When do you ever hear political parties and ideologies, whether ‘Left’, ‘Right’ or ‘Centre’, challenge what and how children and young people are ‘taught’? They argue incessantly over the money spent on ‘education’ and class sizes. They say next to nothing about ‘education’ as a programming operation from first to last. Some are Cult agents (very few) and the rest are as perceptually programmed as anyone after being subjected to the same download. There is a war on children, mentally and emotionally, and this is some of the background to the suicide rate among the young dramatically increasing through a combination, among other things, of exam stress (what the hell are the parents doing?) and the multiple pressures of the smartphone, social media, era which is orchestrated through Cult-controlled Silicon Valley. Adding still further to these pressures is the often near life-long levels of debt imposed on the young to pay for their college and university ‘education’. The merciless Cult-driven state has manipulated young people to pay for at least decades for their own *programming* through empathy-deleted universities that operate like multinational corporations selling a stream of made-up, for-profit-only, shit and useless ‘courses’ to dip their snouts in an ever-deeper trough at the expense of the young. To them young people are just commodities or punters to be exploited like the worse kind of spiv and to be indoctrinated with The System’s perceptual blueprint. The outstanding student loan ‘bubble’ in the United States accrued to pay outrageous college fees has passed \$1.6 *trillion*. This staggering figure

represents devastated young and adult lives crushed by debt and thus ... *control*. Analysis by the Institute of Fiscal Studies for the UK Department of Education suggested that one in five students would be financially better off if they had not gone to university and instead left school to get a job. It must be a similar case elsewhere. Wayne Johnson, former CEO of First Performance Corporation and Reunion Student Loan Finance Corporation, resigned his post at the US Department of Education to campaign for justice on this issue including cancellation of most outstanding student debt owed to the Federal government (though not to private Cult corporations). Johnson said that if the loan crisis is not fixed we would see the 'ever-increasing destruction of the fabric of America, it's that profound – people are not getting married, not having children'. This was always the plan as part of the transformation of human society. Tony Blair introduced student fees in the UK when he was prime minister and they have since soared as they were always intended to. Everything that Blair does and says is the Cult doing and saying. The man should be in jail for crimes against humanity for so many reasons including life-crippling student debt.

More parents are seeing through the calculated fraud and homeschooling their children either individually or in small groups with great success in both critical and creative thinking and career advancement. Eliezer Yudkowsky, the well-known American AI researcher and author of several academic books on the subject, never attended high school or college and had no formal 'education'. 'Liberal' Germany bans homeschooling – a policy instigated by the Nazis – and so do 'liberal' Sweden and the Netherlands. If you want to sell tyranny do it under the banner and smokescreen of liberal democracy. As homeschooling rapidly expands the pressure to limit or ban education outside the school system is growing. Parents are raided by armed police in Germany and children removed from parents for the crime of not wishing to have them indoctrinated by the state. My own preference is for 'self-directed learning' in which children pursue their own interests and experiences and in doing so learn all the other basic skills. If you research your interest you need to learn to read; if you compile information about your interest you have to learn to write. Children can learn what they *choose* to learn and as a by-product learn what they *need* to learn. Their minds don't have to be filled with what is irrelevant to most of them just because the state insists on that for its own ends. Children have their whole life to learn what they need to know from the far more relevant perspective of where their life takes them. How many ever use algebra once they leave school? What is the benefit to them of spending hours of their childhood working out what X equals??

A study by Dr Peter Gray, an American psychology professor at Boston College, found that children's mental health improved significantly when they engaged in self-directed education with more freedom and control of their own learning. He found after studying the data that the mental health of children is directly related to school attendance with psychiatrist visits falling dramatically during school holidays away from the pressure of lessons, rules and exams. They spiked once again when a new term began. Gray said that available evidence suggests 'quite strongly' that school is bad for children's mental health: '... behaviour, moods, and learning generally improved when they stopped conventional schooling.' He added that school is bad for 'physical' health, too: 'Nature did not design children to be cooped up all day at a micromanaged, sedentary job.' One of the most profound forms of mind control is familiarity. Once something becomes familiar it is no longer questioned and becomes another integrated subconscious program and assumption. Kids are born and then pretty soon they go to school and college for the rest of their childhood, right? Everyone knows that – it's how things are. Draw the 'education' system out of the subconscious and make it conscious. Now look again at how it works and the consequences for children. *Oh my God, it's a programming operation. Exactly.* The urgency with which this needs to be acknowledged can be seen in the figures for young people suicide and extreme levels of stress happening across the world. Suicide attempts by children under the age of 14 in Israel alone have risen by 62 percent in a decade, according to the Israeli National Council for Children. In Britain children under 11 contacting the help service Childline over suicidal thoughts and feelings increased by 87 percent between 2015 and 2020.

The Cult is killing childhood and parents need to get their arses in gear *fast* because it's meant to get much worse. A 2013 study by the American Psychological Association found that school is the main source of stress for teenagers with 83 percent of teenagers questioned saying school was 'a somewhat or significant source of stress' while 27 percent said they suffered from 'extreme stress' during the school year. This dropped to 13 percent during school holidays and out-of-school stress would fall even further if you delete smartphones and social media. Much of the academic pressure on kids comes from parents who have slavishly accepted the utter baloney that exam passes = intelligence and exam results decide success or failure for the rest of their lives. How many young people feel a failure because they didn't get high enough exam grades? Who gives a shit? You are *All That Is, Has Been, And Ever Can Be*.

Are you happy?

No.

Are you fulfilled?

No.

Are you super-stressed?

Yes.

So what's good about school?

I know what X equals. No, hold on, I forgot.

Most outrageous are those parents who treat their children and their academic success as a personal statement about themselves in some bizarre exercise in reflected glory which includes the follow-through of what the parents 'want' their children to be. 'Your father wants you to be a banker'; 'Your mother wants you to be a lawyer'. Well, tough – I'm going walking in India. Bye. This is nothing less than child abuse. We bring children into the world and we can give them advice, but it's *their* life, not ours. The late and very great American comedian, George Carlin, said: 'Here's a bumper sticker I'd like to see ... we are proud parents of a child who has resisted his teachers' attempts to break his spirit and bend him to the will of his corporate masters.' The Cult's war on children in pursuit of perceptual control is getting so extreme and intense that the consequences are destroying whole generations. Parents worldwide have a responsibility to say '*enough!*'

Postage stamp society

Young minds are at the mercy of the programming system throughout their key perception-forming years from at least aged four to nearly 20. Most – thankfully not all – absorb the program subconsciously if not always consciously and without the de-programming process called 'awakening' those beliefs and assumptions will drive their perception of everything for the rest of their lives. Ironically, and not by chance, those that teach (program) the next generations are academics who have rarely, mostly never, left the 'education' program. They absorb what they are told in their own 'education' and pass exams to prove that. Then they head for teacher training colleges and courses which further underpin the program and show them how to indoctrinate the next generation with The System's (the Cult's) version of everything. Freemasons climb their hierarchy in compartmentalised sections called 'degrees' and ambitious young people (and/or their parents) seek the ultimate goal in 'education' of securing a 'degree' from the false assumption (it's *all* assumption) that a degree is confirmation of intelligence. It is not. Some of the most intelligent people I have met have never been near a university let alone a 'degree' while

some of the least intelligent have had ‘educational qualifications’ coming out of their ears. This is not to say you can’t have a degree *and* be intelligent – only that one doesn’t have to mean the other and often does not. With both Freemasons and ‘education’ the degree measures the degree of programming thanks to another assumption that the information imparted in the lodge or the college is factually correct. Much of it isn’t and indeed Freemasons are told one thing in one degree and something different in another to keep them in ignorance of what the inner core knows. Armed with a degree, or at least some degree of perceptual programming, young people leave the halls of academia and go out into the ‘world’. Here they meet others who earlier went through the same programming machine and overwhelmingly accept the same *assumptions* about life, society and reality. They have all been given, and largely absorbed consciously and subconsciously, the system’s (Cult’s) version of history, science and reality, medicine, human biology, world events, what’s possible and impossible, the whole shebang. Together this forms what I have dubbed the Postage Stamp Consensus which is a staggeringly narrow band of perceived possibility designed specifically to keep humanity in the Bubble ([Fig 222](#)).



Figure 222: Jump off and RUN! (Image Gareth Icke.)

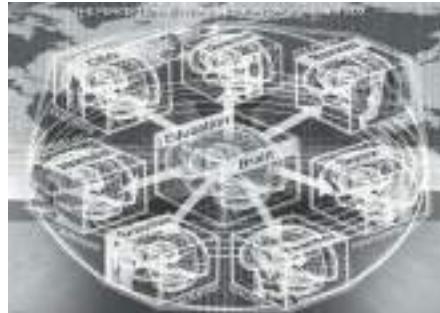


Figure 223: Those serving the institutions overwhelmingly have the same perceptions of reality because they have all been through the same ‘education’ programming system. Therefore: ‘Everyone knows that!’ (Image Neil Hague.)



Figure 224: A perfect description of those who believe what The System tells them.

Young people entering the adult workplace now have the assumptions they downloaded at school and college confirmed by almost everyone around them who earlier downloaded the *same* assumptions at their school and college. From this comes ‘everyone knows that’ syndrome. Even more accurately it should be ‘everyone *remembers* that’ syndrome. This is all it is – *memory*. The memory (conscious and

mostly subconscious) of what you were told some time and what everyone remembers because everyone was told the same thing. Indian ‘mystic’ Jaggi Vasudev (known as Sadhguru) talks about ‘mistaking memory for intelligence’ and he’s spot on. How can we intelligently see things as they are when memory (perception programming) is constantly telling us what we should believe they are? Sadhguru describes how people live out of their memory and not their intelligence and this is what The Program sets out to achieve. Postage Stamp Consensus and ‘everyone knows/remembers that’ are different descriptions of the same program which means that the institutions of politics, government administration, law, science, academia, medicine, media, business, banking, etc. are all founded (except the inner cores connected to the Cult) on the same assumptions about the world and reality when they are nothing more than illusions ([Fig 223](#)). They are founded (quantum physics excepted) on the world being solid, people being only their bodies and labels, everything being apart from everything else, and only through ‘physical’ change can anything *be* changed. Don’t change your perceptions and assumptions to instigate societal change. If you want change you have to physically protest on the basis of your current perceptions and assumptions which have contributed to the very situations you are protesting about. It is sobering to think that governments and politicians are making laws all over the world based on assumptions about reality that are utterly bogus. Politicians are arguing over what should happen to everyone and everything from perceptions of a world that doesn’t exist except in the way it appears to be experienced. No wonder the world is in the state it is. Which deluded programmed mind are you going to vote for, the one with the blue rosette, or the red, yellow, or the green? *Mmmm*, hard isn’t it? The Cult has created a system in which programmed ‘leaders’ clueless about reality impose the Cult agenda upon a population enslaved in the same ignorance if they only get their perceptions from the Mainstream Everything. Talk about the blind leading the blind. Watch that cliff now ([Fig 224](#)). More than that the institutions and personnel of the Postage Stamp continually confirm to each other that the nonsense is valid and each make their decisions about what to do from those flawed assumptions. Governments make laws, including those relating to health care, on the basis of what Postage Stamp science says. They instigate policy decisions on the basis of what Postage Stamp academics say. It’s a mad house in which crazy is credible and sanity is crazy. What a mess and I have likened the world to putting 20 kittens in a room with 100 balls wool and coming back two hours later to say: ‘Okay, sort that out’. Fortunately bringing harmony and sanity to human society does not have to be done ‘physically’ and cannot be because there is no ‘physical’.



Figure 225: Don’t think for yourself – prison is lovely. (Image Gareth Icke.)



Figure 226: Baa, baa, baa.

Every aspect of the Cult agenda comes with a protection system to stop those with a mind of their own demolishing the ludicrous assumptions which humanity has to believe for the agenda to prevail. This is where censorship comes in and one major example of that is peer pressure – the paramilitary arm of ‘everyone knows that’ syndrome which seeks to impose the worst of all censorship and that is self-censorship. I have seen this described as the tyranny of silence. There is no debate or conversation as people with different views keep their mouths shut to avoid peer pressure consequences ([Fig 225](#)). Peer pressure is a term for those who have allowed themselves to be programmed into believing mega-untruths and insisting that everyone else does the same. If people don’t acquiesce then ridicule, dismissal, abuse and even a lost job or career will follow. Intimidation and fear of consequences makes so many stay silent about what they think and leaves the field for ‘everyone knows syndrome’ to dominate perception unchallenged. Well, fuck that, I say. Let people follow others if they want – I’ll follow myself, thanks ([Fig 226](#) overleaf). Those with open minds are the black sheep of the flock or herd and it’s such a wonderful place to be. If you are there – *celebrate*. Would you want to be part of the herd?? Shit, what a nightmare. To be called mad by a system that’s insane is a confirmation of your sanity. You say I’m mad Mr System Believer? *Yippee*, thank-you, so kind. I refer to this peer pressure to conform as ‘psychological fascism’ and that’s what it is. We now have ever more extreme psychological fascism in the form of political correctness and the Climate Change Cult which together stand beneath the umbrella term of ‘Woke’. The emergence of social media as a vehicle for black sheep abuse by the herd mentality has added to the pressure to keep your head down. Well, fuck that, too, I say. That’ll be the day.

Media software



Figure 227: ‘Journalism’ the world over with honorable exceptions.

Cult ‘education’ instils the foundation perception program while the mainstream media is the constant top-up and confirmation that also plays the role of perception enforcer. Speak publicly in ways that challenge the Cult agenda and see what happens. I say *mainstream* media. Even much of the ‘alternative’ involves those who have been through the same perceptual programming and accepted its validity. Swathes of the ‘alternative media’ have ridiculed me over the years as much as the mainstream has for my ‘far-out’ concepts. Many of these same people with a Christian background believe that a man was born to a virgin mother, walked on water, turned water into wine, fed 5,000 from a few loaves and fishes, died on a cross, came back to life in a cave, and floated up to heaven promising to return on a cloud. Followers of Judaism, among them mainstream journalists and media owners that have ridiculed me, claim to believe that God parted the Red Sea and the wife of some bloke called Lot was turned into a pillar of salt. One thing you see very clearly when you operate outside the programmed ‘normal’ is that people don’t demand evidence for their own beliefs on anything like the scale they demand for others. Postage Stamp programming is again driving the perceptions and behaviour of the media. At ownership and key editorial levels you will find in-the-loop Cult operatives. The teeming majority of journalists, however, have no idea there is a Cult never mind that it controls their industry. They report the world from the perspective of their Postage Stamp programming and anything or anyone they come across that has disembarked its narrow band of perception is, by definition, mad, bad, or both. That mentality

dominates the nature of their reporting and treatment of individuals and organisations even without the added limitations set by their employers on what can and cannot be said ([Fig 227](#)). We have the ubiquitous subconscious programming at work in controlling the actions of the entire media as the propaganda arm of the Mainstream Everything: The only scientific truth comes from mainstream scientists; the only medical truth comes from doctors; valid explanations of world events come only from governments and mainstream commentators, and so it goes on. I watched an interview with a former mainstream journalist who had partly seen through the manipulation and good for her. She said that I say some ‘fantastic’ things about education, but dismissed the bit about a shapeshifting royal family. I understand why from the perspective of ‘normal’ and her life-long ingrained conscious and subconscious perceptions about reality. What I say about education is within her sense of the possible, so that’s fine. Once you breach the limits of programmed ‘normal’ and ‘possible’, that’s not fine. ‘I can’t get my head around that’, people say. *Exactly*. So try the heart and expanded consciousness. Give that a go. There are many from what is called the ‘Left’ and ‘Right’ who agree with what I say about the world from their perspective of Postage Stamp normal. They won’t say so publicly because they don’t want to be associated with things I say that are off the Postage Stamp. The foundations for these responses are (a) the world is solid so what he says can’t be true and (b) what would people think about me if I said he talked sense?



Figure 228: The BBC version.

Reporting parameters set by media owners and executives are another generator of self-censorship with journalists knowing the lines they can’t cross without resistance or the door. As a result they don’t cross them. No report or information is offered to their media bosses that breaches the dyke. At that point they are no longer journalists and little more than propagandists for the Cult’s version of everything. The money’s good, though, eh? The BBC in Britain is particularly adept at such ingrained censorship which it tries so hard to hide behind pompous self-congratulation about unbiased reporting when it is institutionally Postage Stamp biased. By the terms of its charter the BBC is supposed to be politically neutral yet exercises its political and system bias by what it leaves out, through the views of the guests it invites to pontificate on its output and by not inviting those who have a different perspective to the Postage Stamp ([Fig 228](#) overleaf). They’ll let you debate how much money should be in circulation but absolutely not the fact that private banks are lending people and governments credit ‘money’ that has never and will never exist. The BBC has outrageously skewed the climate change debate so it’s not a debate at all by virtually banning views and information that expose the hoax behind the orthodoxy. You don’t have to come out and say ‘vote for so and so’ or ‘believe this or that’ to manipulate information in favour of your political line and I am talking about a political *agenda* line and not necessarily *party* political in nature. The BBC is a department of the permanent government and takes its line on everything no matter who is officially ‘in power’. BBC ‘journalists’ are in fact little more than civil servants who know their place and where not to go. If you get your ‘truth’ from the BBC, well, by definition, you *don’t* because you *can’t*. It’s the same with all of them, but the BBC’s pompous self-congratulation about its ‘quality journalism’ is particularly sickening and stomach-turning, not to say

laughable. Journalist Tareq Haddad resigned from *Newsweek* in late 2019 claiming that editors stopped him reporting the story about a whistleblower at the OPCW, the world chemical weapons ‘watchdog’, who exposed how the organisation manipulated the facts to allow a chemical attack in Syria to be blamed on Cult-target President Assad. This was done by suppressing evidence that proved Assad had nothing to do with it. The attack was really staged by US-backed terrorists as an excuse to demonise Assad and justify unleashing missiles against Syria – a No-Problem-Reaction-Solution. Haddad confirmed that the media is the propaganda arm of the government-military-intelligence-industrial complex or what I call the Cult:

The US government, in an ugly alliance with those [that] profit the most from war, has its tentacles in every part of the media – impostaers, with ties to the US State Department, sit in newsrooms all over the world ... Inconvenient stories are completely blocked. As a result, journalism is quickly dying. America is regressing because it lacks the truth.

The Cult owns governments as it owns the media as it owns the armament companies. The late Dr Udo Ulfkotte, a leading journalist in Germany, went public to reveal how he was made to publish articles in his own name written by intelligence agencies or lose his job. The sources included the CIA even though he was working in Germany. The Cult has no borders.

Fake ‘grassroots’ programming

Former CBS News investigative reporter Sharyl Attkisson revealed in a Ted Talk how fraudulent grassroots movements, funded by political, corporate, or other special interests (the Cult), manipulate public perception. The technique is known as ‘astroturfing’, as in fake grassroots. Special interests hide behind coordinated groups and individuals who start Facebook and Twitter accounts, write letters to newspapers and post comments in support or opposition to something. The idea is to give the false impression that a grassroots movement is speaking and that opinion is going a certain way when neither is true. The media, naturally, very rarely question the origins or funders. An excellent example of astroturfing was when American Zionist communications firm Edelman launched a Walmart-supporting ‘grassroots’ group called Working Families for Walmart which turned out to be funded by Walmart.

Attkisson said astroturf groups try to change public opinion and marginalise opposition to what they want by attacking them and appearing to be part of a grassroots campaign that doesn’t actually exist. You see this throughout the Woke agenda of climate change, transgender activism, political correctness, anti-racism and other connected issues with the media reporting them as if they are spontaneous and genuine. Surveys and studies are funded by astroturfers to produce the answers and conclusions they want to advance their propaganda. This happens constantly with regard to climate change, transgender, drugs and vaccines. Attkisson highlighted the manipulations of Wikipedia which she called an astroturf dream come true:

Built as the free encyclopaedia that anyone can edit, the reality can’t be more different. Anonymous Wikipedia editors control and co-opt pages on behalf of special interests. They forbid and reverse edits that go against their agenda. They skew and delete information in blatant violation of Wikipedia’s own established policies with impunity, always superior to the poor schlubs who actually believe anyone can edit Wikipedia, only to discover they’re barred from correcting even the simplest factual inaccuracies.

Wikipedia is a shocking operation. The Off-guardian.org website pointed out that Wikipedia’s nine billion page views per month are overseen by just 500 active administrators and their real identity in many cases remains unknown. ‘Moreover studies have shown that 80% of all Wikipedia content is written by just 1% of all Wikipedia editors, which again amounts to just a few hundred mostly unknown people.’ Sharyl Attkisson recalled a huge scandal when Wikipedia officials were caught offering a PR

service that skewed and edited information for paid publicity-seeking clients in utter violation of Wikipedia's alleged policies:

All of this may be why, when a medical study looked at medical conditions described on Wikipedia pages and compared it to actual peer-reviewed published research, Wikipedia contradicted medical research 90 percent of the time. You may never fully trust what you read on Wikipedia again, nor should you.



Figure 229: Hijacking global perception.

You won't be surprised to know that Wikipedia is an agency of the agenda as a platform where billions get their information about people, events and every other subject (Fig 229). Israel (its Sabbatian-Frankist control system) has a colossal astroturfing and opinion-manipulating army driving its global 'Hasbara' campaign to promote the narrative of what I call the 'Anti-Semitism Protection Racket' (more shortly) and the far-right Sabbatian-Frankist apartheid Israeli government. Hasbara means 'explaining' which *really* means explaining what the Sabbatian-Frankists want you to believe. Ultra-Zionist ownership of the media in the United States is infamous although the Protection Racket intimidates most people from stating the obvious. Where there is not direct ownership there is a whole network operating out of Israel and exposed in *The Trigger* that manipulates media coverage of Israel. *Jewish News* reported in 2019 about an email sent to the wrong address by Lorna Fitzsimons, director of BICOM (the British Israel Communication & Research Centre). The email, which was never meant to be widely distributed, said: 'Throughout the weekend, BICOM staff were in contact with a whole host of BBC and Sky News desks and journalists, ensuring that the most objectively favourable line was taken, and offering talking heads, relevant to the stories unfolding.' Fitzsimons went on to describe a BICOM trip to Israel by a BBC news presenter:

Bicom has one of BBC News' key anchors on a bespoke delegation. When planning her very first trip to the region, Sophie Long got in touch with Bicom to see if we could help her out with meeting [sic] in the region. Sophie is now spending three days of her trip with Bicom Israel, taking a tour around the Old City, meeting [Israeli government spokesman] Mark Regev... as well as visiting Ramallah and Sderot.

This is how your 'news' is manipulated by ultra-Zionism alone every day. If you read *The Trigger* the scale on which this is happening out of Israel worldwide will blow your mind. Add into the mix the expanded definition of 'anti-Semitism' which includes criticism of Israel and Zionism and you see how any balanced coverage of Israel (Sabbatian-Frankists that control Israel) has long past. Ultra-Zionist Fitzsimons, a former Labour Party MP and president of the National Union of Students, said in the email that BICOM had 'briefed Jonathan Ford, the *Financial Times* leader writer for his upcoming leading article'. I wonder if the Palestinians had, too? That's obviously a rhetorical question. The now shocking scale of Sabbatian-Frankist control worldwide hiding behind 'Israel' was further confirmed, as with my own speaking ban from Australia in 2019, by the experience of former Pink Floyd singer Roger Waters and American journalist Abby Martin who are both critics of Israeli government treatment of Palestinians. *American Major League Baseball* banned advertising for Waters events on its platforms on the say-so of Rothschild-created B'nai B'rith International who have been on my case many times. B'nai B'rith president Charles Kaufman and chief executive Daniel Mariaschin said Waters was 'an avowed

anti-Semite whose views on Jews and Israel far exceed the boundaries of civil discourse'. This is Orwellian code for 'Waters tells the truth so we have to shut him up'. Abby Martin is suing the state of Georgia after she was prevented from speaking at Georgia Southern University for refusing to sign a pledge of allegiance to *Israel*. Some 28 states have so far mandated loyalty pledges to Israel to block exposure of the actions of its government, military and fantastic web of lobby groups. That is worth pondering for a moment to take in the full implications of Sabbatian-Frankist power in the United States. American citizens cannot speak in a country that claims free speech rights guaranteed by the First Amendment unless they sign a pledge of alliance to a country of a few million people 5,000 miles away. But no – saying that Israel has fantastically disproportionate global power compared with size and numbers is an 'anti-Semitic' trope even though it's blatantly true. This is what happens where the Cult is in control.

Forest protection agency

We now have global 'news' spewing out the Cult system's version of everything 24/7 on channels so many in number I'm sure they must breed overnight like luminous jackets appear to do in Britain. Media 'diversity' is a joke. Newspapers and TV channels may be biased to one political party or other, but they are all biased in support of the *same system* – the same *Postage Stamp*. They differ on the twigs while all promote the same forest. Arguments over twigs present the illusion of diversity. Challenge the forest, the structure of control and manipulation, and the truth about 'diversity' becomes self-evident. They *all* promote and protect the forest as I've found again and again in the last 30 years. The media first ridiculed me on a historic scale before turning to abuse and demonisation which morphed more recently into outright ignoring or censoring me. These phases directly relate to the scale of public interest in my work which has been growing exponentially year on year. That Icke is exposing the forest – *laugh* at him. Er, that didn't work – *demonise* him. Oh no, *that* didn't work – *censor* him! The censorship was never more obvious than with the publication of my absolutely explosive book, *The Trigger*, which exposes who was really behind the attacks of 9/11 and it wasn't 19 Arab hijackers working for Osama bin Laden. In revealing the central players in that horror I also reveal the Cult and its control system. It is *so* explosive and perceptually transforming that the usual suspects didn't even seek to attack me and the book as they normally would. Abuse would give the content publicity and they want the fewest number possible to know it exists. One of the main ways the Cult has sought to demonise me is through its anti-Semitism industry, or Protection Racket. Its method of operation is to condemn anyone (especially Jewish people) who criticise the government of Israel as 'anti-Semitic (which really means anti-Arab as I have explained many times). Cult gofers, many of which won't even know there *is* a Cult, have used this label to block my public events and media appearances including a ban by the Australian government from speaking in that country on the say-so of one ultra-Zionist asset and pressure from media outlets owned by Israel-fanatic Rupert Murdoch. This censorship network is a protection racket to protect the Cult from exposure and not Jewish people from discrimination. Jewish people who don't conform to the narrative are attacked even more vociferously than anyone else.

I did two interviews with the now Rupert Murdoch-owned TalkRadio in Britain which at the time of writing have accrued in excess of three million views on YouTube. The ultra-Zionist censor group, the Campaign Against Antisemitism (CAA), complained to the station for having me on because of 'anti-Semitism' even though neither Israel nor Zionism was discussed in either interview. Several TalkRadio programmes were later sent copies of *The Trigger*, but not one would have me on to discuss the content despite the previous two getting such big YouTube audiences. Protecting the forest is far more important to media owners than money. The Cult ensures their major assets are swimming in that. No British national newspaper or radio station would even mention *The Trigger* and 5,000 media releases sent out to newspapers, radio and television across Britain, Europe and North America met with no mainstream response. A TV booker told me that a well-known British television talk show refused to have me on

his show because I 'deny the Holocaust'. *I don't*, if you read my books, but he wouldn't know that because he takes his cue from other media promoters of The System. The mainstream media operates like The System in general with the perceptually-programmed confirming to each other that their perceptual-programming is the truth. Cult assets lie and misrepresent people; the media report the lies unchallenged; other media assets believe the lies and accept them as their reality; and they then repeat and further circulate the lies as 'everyone knows that' truth. Copies of *The Trigger* were sent to the Russian 'alternative' TV station RT in both London and Moscow. They didn't want to know either. RT is funded by the Russian government and as such conducts journalism with regard to the West more in the way the Western media should be doing. I'm glad RT exists from that perspective. It questions what the Western media refuses to do *except* when it comes to the Russian government. RT journalistic values are then immediately ditched and cap-touching 'yes sir, no sir', kicks in. I have been writing and talking for 30 years about all the subjects that RT covers and although it claims to be 'alternative' they have never had me on their news programmes while preferring many who from my perspective are nowhere close to 'alternative'. Why would a Russian government-funded station not want to discuss a mountain of evidence that the American government lied at every turn about 9/11?? I was approached out of the blue for a substantial feature interview by an RT reporter called Polly Boiko in September, 2019, which she said they wanted to go quickly to air. She and a crew came to my house soon after with a view to almost immediate transmission. They left after filming with me for hours and said they hoped it would be broadcast within days. As I write the best part of a *year* later I am still waiting. The mainstream media basically says question nothing; RT's motto is 'question more'; but I say question *everything*. That makes me an outsider to all of them. I dismantle the forest which their owners in multiple forms are pledged to protect. The Cult knows that seeing only the twigs keeps you in Body-Mind with a sense of apartness and twigs are not a problem. Seeing the forest and how it all fits together sets you free and that's a *BIG* problem. *Censor him!*

By the few, for the few

Incessant concentration of media ownership is the Cult gathering ever more control over what people see and hear to dictate perception and behaviour across the world. Major corporations (in the end *one* Cult corporation) have secured global ownership of newspapers, radio, television and the Internet through Silicon Valley and Pentagon agency DARPA which I'll come to shortly. The media once had some diversity of ownership and that could not be allowed to continue. Diversity is the enemy of central control and the campaign began to concentrate power for the benefit of the Cult. As recently as 1984 there were still 50 'independent' media companies in the United States. By 2019 some 90 percent of the US media was controlled by just *four* – Comcast (NBCUniversal), Disney, AT&T (WarnerMedia) and Viacom. The last two are owned by the National Amusements corporation. Control over what you see and hear is now ridiculously narrow and planned to get even more so. Political leaders sanction this as you would expect when the Cult owns politics as it owns major media. Such concentration allows what is written and broadcast to be centrally dictated and focused only on the twigs while exposure of the forest is censored. You can see video compilations on the Internet of TV presenters in cities and communities across America reading the same stories word for word and repeating with guests the same scripted phrases and talking points to push the same political agenda. There was once such a thing as 'independent radio' in Britain and I worked at a station in Birmingham called BRMB. It was owned by a single company and had an independent operation for local news. Today those stations are owned by corporations with centrally-dictated news broadcasts and even music playlists. I was libelled by the usual suspects in the UK in 2017 with outrageous claims about what I am saying. I saw the same lies repeated – again almost word for word with the same headline – on a series of newspaper Internet sites. When I checked I realised they were all owned by the same corporation then called Trinity Mirror and now Reach PLC. This is what that company owns (not an exhaustive list) and it will give you an idea for what I mean

about the centralisation of media power over what you see and hear:

National newspapers: *Daily Mirror*, *Sunday Mirror*, *Daily Express*, *Sunday Express*, *Daily Record*, *Sunday Mail*; *Western Mail*; *The Sunday People*; *Irish Daily Mirror*, *Irish Daily Star* (50% ownership). Local and regional newspapers; *Accrington Observer*, *Anfield & Walton Star*, *Barking & Dagenham Yellow Advertiser*, *Bexley Mercury*, *Birmingham Post*, *Birmingham Mail*, *Sunday Mercury*, *Bootle Times*, *Bracknell Standard*, *Brent & Wembley Leader*, *Bristol Post*, *Buckinghamshire Examiner*, *Buckinghamshire Advertiser*, *Chester Chronicle*, *Chronicle Extra* (Newcastle upon Tyne); *Colne Valley Chronicle*; *Coventry Telegraph*; *The Crawley News*, *Crewe Chronicle*, *Crosby Herald*; *Derby Evening Telegraph*; *Dover Express*, *Ealing Gazette*, *Ealing Informer*, *Ealing Leader*, *Ellesmere Port Pioneer*, *Enfield Advertiser*, *Enfield Gazette*; *Evening Chronicle* (Newcastle upon Tyne); *Evening Gazette* (Teesside); *Express & Echo*, *Fomby Times*, *Fulham & Hammersmith Chronicle*; *The Glaswegian*, *Gloucester Citizen*, *Gloucestershire Echo*; *Haringey Advertiser*, *Harrow & Wembley Observer*, *Harrow Informer*, *Harrow Leader*, *Havering Yellow Advertiser*, *Heywood Advertiser*, *Hightown Books*, *Hinckley Times*, *Hounslow Borough Chronicle*; *Hounslow, Chiswick & Whitton Informer*, *Huddersfield District Chronicle*, *Huddersfield Examiner*, *Hull Daily Mail*; *Ilford & Redbridge Yellow Advertiser*, *The Journal* (Newcastle upon Tyne); *Kensington & Chelsea Informer*, *Leicester Mercury*, *Lewisham & Greenwich Mercury*, *Liverpool Echo*, *Loughborough Echo*, *Manchester Evening News*, *Manchester Metro News*, *Maghull Star*, *Middleton Guardian*; *Mid Devon Gazette*; *Mitcham, Morden & Wimbledon Post*; *Neath Guardian*; *North East Manchester Advertiser*, *North Devon Journal*; *North Wales Daily Post*; *Nottingham Post*; *Oldham Advertiser*, *Ormskirk Advertiser*, *Paisley Daily Express*, *The Press* (Barnet and Hendon); *Prestwich Advertiser*, *Reading Post*, *Rochdale Observer*, *Rossendale Free Press*, *Runcorn & Widnes Weekly News*, *Salford Advertiser*, *Slough Express*, *Stockport Express*, *Macclesfield Express*, *Wilmslow Express*; *The Sentinel* (Staffordshire); *Surrey Advertiser*, *Southport Visiter*, *South Manchester Reporter*, *South Liverpool Merseymart*, *South Wales Echo*; *South Wales Evening Post*, *Staines Informer*, *Streatham, Clapham & West Norwood Post*; *Sunday Sun* (Newcastle Upon Tyne); *Surrey Herald*, *Surrey Mirror Advertiser*, *Sutton & Epsom Post*, *Tameside Advertiser*, *Glossop Advertiser*, *Uxbridge & Hillingdon Leader*, *Uxbridge Gazette*; *Walton & Weybridge Informer*, *The Wharf* (Canary Wharf). *Scottish and Universal Newspapers*: *Trinity Mirror Scotland*, *Airdrie and Coatbridge Advertiser*, *Ayrshire Post*, *Blairgowrie Advertiser*, *Business 7*; *Dumfries and Galloway Standard*, *East Kilbride News*, *Galloway News*, *Hamilton Advertiser*, *Irvine Herald*, *Kilmarnock Standard*, *Metro Scotland*, *Paisley Daily Express*, *Perthshire Advertiser*, *Scottish Business Insider*, *Stirling Observer*, *Strathearn Herald*, *The Lennox Herald*, *West Lothian Courier*, *Wishaw Press*. Digital online brands: Belfast Live; Dublin Live; Examiner Live (Huddersfield); Glasgow Live; Gloucestershire Live; Leeds Live.

When you look around news shops and stands and see all those newspapers and magazines on every conceivable subject it appears that media diversity is alive and well. Check who owns them and you realise that media diversity is history. I list in my book *Human Race Get Off Your Knees* the media outlets from television to magazines then owned by Time Warner. It is extraordinary in both length and range of subjects and goes on for more than one and a half pages. Two of America's most prominent newspapers, the *New York Times* and *Washington Post* are both owned by the same elite. The *Times* has been owned by the Zionist Sulzberger family since 1896 while the *Post* was controlled from 1930s by the Zionist Graham-Meyer family before being sold to Amazon's 'world's richest man' Jeff Bezos in 2013 whose company has close ties to the CIA. No potential bias there, then.

The Devil's Playground – media endgame



Figure 230: Cult to its DNA.

People get most of their information today in the form of 'news' through Cult-controlled Silicon Valley corporations such as Google, YouTube, Facebook and Twitter. Add to that the domination of the global book market by Amazon. The Cult created the Internet to serve its agenda for human control. In terms of the subject at hand they want all information to eventually be transferred to the Internet because then it can be censored through algorithms of artificial intelligence without even human involvement once the codes are in place. The Internet for all its short-term benefits has been a Trojan horse from the start and the real reason – or reasons – for its creation will become clear in later chapters. What a surprise that the Internet was made possible by the Cult-controlled US Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency (DARPA), the technological development arm of the Pentagon, which has seed-funded Silicon Valley corporations along with In-Q-Tel, or IQT, the technology-funding vehicle of the CIA ([Fig 230](#)). The Pentagon, DARPA and the CIA are all Cult assets and agencies of the 'Deep State'. When the Internet was launched it had to be censorship-free to attract the global audience necessary for the DARPA (Cult) goal of making the World Wide Web the central pillar of human society. In this essential honeymoon period we enjoyed the free flow of information which allowed people like me to circulate research to expose the Cult. This was an unfortunate though necessary consequence from the Cult's point of view in pursuit of its ultimate ambitions. Once the Internet was established as the said central pillar of human society in a way that is basically irreversible the mask could come off with a gathering frenzy of censorship to target information that in any way exposes the Cult agenda even without mention of the Cult itself. They, of course, don't present this as censorship. They invent a series of made-up excuses such as 'fake news' and 'hate speech'. The definition of both continues to be expanded to lasso ever more information, views and opinions into their calculated and systematic censorship in the guise of protecting the public from 'hate' and 'discrimination'. They claim to be advancing 'diversity' while destroying it and this particularly applies to the 'Woke' mentality that claims to demand diversity in another example of Cult inversion. Cult-created 'Wokeness' is exploited to justify and impose ever more Internet and media censorship under the guise of political correctness. The Woke British trade union organisation, the TUC, banned a premier of *Renegade*, a film about my life and work, from one of its buildings on the grounds that the TUC 'believes in diversity'. Well, clearly with the exception of anyone exposing the forest. For the TUC read the global mainstream media.

Technology is increasingly being introduced that will prevent the posting of information unacceptable to the Cult without the need to take it down. Even now YouTube, Facebook, Twitter and others employ 'ghost or shadow banning' in which material can be posted but algorithms ensure that they are seen by a fraction of what would otherwise be the case. My YouTube interviews about *The Trigger* and 9/11 were blatantly suppressed through the recommendation system and while they still got large numbers they were not on the scale they would have been if left unmolested. Highly significantly my video interviews have got by far their biggest audiences when posted on YouTube channels not subject to shadow banning than they did on my own algorithmically-manipulated channel before YouTube deleted me altogether in May, 2020 (more later). Facebook admitted in 2018 that it 'demotes' posts reported by users (easy to arrange) and rated as false by 'fact checkers' (working for the Cult agenda). Facebook claimed that this censorship reduced views of posts and pages by 'around 80 percent'. As all information is moved to the

Net the point will be reached when the Cult can literally control everything you see with the tyranny of (Cult-instigated) political correctness intimidating people into censoring even private conversations out of fear of being exposed for ‘hate speech’. Cult-serving Google, Google-owned YouTube, Facebook and Twitter are major actors in this stage show to hide the real reason that censorship is happening which to protect the Cult and its agenda for humanity from exposure. These Internet-dominating corporations and others like Amazon have been taken through the same process as the World Wide Web. First they allowed the free circulation of information and opinion because they, too, had to attract users on a world-changing scale on their way to near-monopoly. Once that line had been crossed by hugely predominant market share their masks could also be removed and censorship of Cult-unapproved information and opinion began as a drip before becoming the biblical flood that it is today. Amazon has long passed the point of domination in book sales to drive independent shops and publishers out of business and has now begun to target books for censorship in its version of the book-burning so beloved of tyrannies. We have reached the point where people cannot post anything questioning official narratives of 9/11, human-caused climate change or the ‘pandemic’ on platforms like YouTube without them adding links to read the official fairy tale version on Cult-serving *Wikipedia*. You want the official story of *anything*? Go to Wikipedia. How plain it is to see how information is being royally stitched up and we are still nowhere near where it is meant to go although the massive leap in censorship since the ‘Covid-19’ hoax gives you some idea. Another point here is that the Cult owns the financial system and has limitless funds by creating ‘money’ out of nothing. Money is therefore no object for corporations like Google, Facebook, Twitter and Amazon which had no need to post a profit as they were buying their way to monopoly. ‘Investors’ were always there to write the cheques. You see the same with anything related to Elon Musk (more later). How can other companies that do have to make a profit to survive compete with those that don’t have to be profitable and have the financial capability to buy out or crush any independent opposition? Genuine opposition that won’t sell-out is demonised by the media under the usual tag of ‘hate speech’ when they establish other social media and video platforms. Cult-owned website hosts and payment companies also ban them to destroy their ability to function.

Silicon censors

Self-deluding so-called ‘journalists’ who support this war on information are promoting their own demise as traditional media falls to Silicon Valley domination and its censorship algorithms. Google virtually monopolise Internet searches which are algorithmically manipulated to emphasise official narratives and suppress alternatives. Where Google doesn’t control searches other Cult operations pick up the slack. Google-owned YouTube monopolise video content and social media domination falls to Facebook and Twitter. What about Instagram? Owned by Facebook. I don’t use social media – I message with WhatsApp? Owned by Facebook. Big Tech was made exempt by government from lawsuits for postings on their platforms in return for acting as neutral vehicles rather than publishers who do face legal action for what they publish. Silicon Valley psychopaths have benefited from one while ignoring the other by censoring information challenging the official narrative and particularly those known in America as conservatives. Government could rescind the ‘liability exception’ deal, but hasn’t. It is indicative of how the Cult works that ‘conservative’ organisations funded by the billionaire Koch family (‘conservative’) and Big Tech have been exposed for campaigning *against* laws to stop Big Tech censorship of conservatives. Control both sides and you control the game. Even more sinister is that these mega-corporations connect into the Cult-controlled Pentagon and intelligence agency network. Big Tech is continually exposed for gathering user data of every kind including surveillance through microphones and this ends up with the military-industrial-intelligence complex on a scale never made public. Many people have noted that conversations they thought were private lead immediately to products relating to the conversation being offered to them in Facebook and other advertisements. Official owners of these Cult-fronts like Facebook’s Mark Zuckerberg are super-frauds who are not ultimately in control. They are

front people for forces much deeper in The Web than the Zuckerbergs will ever be. Silicon Valley giants are there to control what you see and keep detailed surveillance on what you do, say, and think. Facebook admitted in a letter to two US senators that it can locate where you are even if you have opted out of location tracking. Artificial intelligence can piece together other information to determine location including tagged photographs, addresses for purchases on the Facebook shopping section, and IP address information. Amnesty International said that Google and Facebook were 'posing a systemic threat to human rights' – exactly as they are meant to.

Tim Berners-Lee who is credited with inventing the World Wide Web unveiled a nine-point plan or 'contract' through his World Wide Foundation to 'save the internet' from 'digital dystopia'. Some things sounded good until you knew the flip-side. Authors of this 'contract' included the hate-speech, censorship-obsessed French and German governments and major Silicon Valley censors like Google, Facebook and Microsoft. A highly-significant sentence said it was necessary to 'develop technologies that support the best in humanity and challenge the worst'. When passed through an Orwellian translation unit this becomes 'develop technologies to silence dissenters and renegades'. Who decides what is the 'best' and 'worst', Tim? Ah, *The System* does which wants to silence dissenters and renegades. Ah, gotcha. World Wide Web Foundation president and chief executive Adrian Lovett said prime issues include the problem of 'disinformation'. Who decides what that is? Same answer. He said they will 'track progress of all of those who have signed on, and others too who haven't, and report that progress, make sure it's public, make sure that we're able to see who is going in the right direction and who is not.' Who decides what direction is 'right'? Same answer. The group hopes to enforce the contract through UN regulations and EU/national laws while companies that don't sign up would be ostracised. The group says it will have succeeded when governments and companies that don't back the contract 'principles' are 'true outliers' (defined as 'a person or thing situated away or detached from the main body or system'). Companies and governments that broke the Internet are claiming to save it by taking a rock-hammer to what's left of free expression. Claim you are stopping Internet dystopia while creating it and say at first this will be voluntary before enforcement by law. Does Berners-Lee know it's a scam to advance Internet dictatorship? It doesn't really matter. The corporations and the Cult do.

Wizard's spell



Figure 231: The human plight and we have the power to change it.

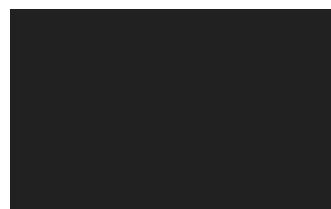


Figure 232: In close-up what is it? Just blackness?

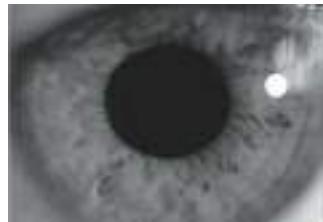


Figure 233: Expand your perspective and you see what it is. Expanding the mind has the same effect.

Pull all these strands together and you see that a human life is a cradle to grave download of Cult-desired perception. Postage Stamp parents are followed by Postage Stamp ‘education’, Postage Stamp media and Postage Stamp Silicon Valley. At the same time the arbiters of reality within human society are taken to be Postage Stamp scientists, Postage Stamp doctors, Postage Stamp academics, Postage Stamp government, Postage Stamp administrators, and Postage Stamp ‘experts’ of every kind. Their Postage Stamp narratives are enforced by Postage Stamp peer pressure and, should you be a public figure, by Postage Stamp journalists. A definition for my ‘Postage Stamp’ analogy is *unconsciousness* and my definition of unconscious for the purposes of this book is to be locked away in the perceptual Bubble of Body-Mind. Beliefs and perceptions enshrined in the Postage Stamp Consensus are designed to achieve just that end by suppressing awareness and firewalls people from frequencies where *knowing* can be accessed. Humanity has been mass-hypnotised every bit as much as the stooges in a hypnotist show ([Fig 231](#)). Do people on the stage shouting out on a word cue, playing a non-existent musical instrument or seeing the clothed audience as naked *know* they are hypnotised? Do those billions of people who respond to information and situations with their press-enter actions and behaviour *know* they are hypnotised? Of course they don’t *because* they are hypnotised. ‘Waking up’ and ‘The Awakening’ are terms for breaking the wizard’s spell. The idea is to so limit human awareness that we can’t see the picture. If people were asked what they were looking at in [Figure 232](#) they would likely say ‘blackness’ and that would be the extent of it. Expand the image (awareness) and they’d see it was really an eye ([Fig 233](#)). Expand still further and you’d see the eye was a person in a room in a house in a street in a city in a world. The Cult wants to enslave perception in that symbolic blackness of myopia and it has achieved this spectacularly in generation after generation by controlling mainstream information and through the constant repetition from all directions of its perceptual program until it becomes an ‘everyone knows that’. German philosopher Arthur Schopenhauer said that ‘every man takes the limits of his own field of vision for the limits of the world’. This is The Program. Limit their sense of the possible and make them believe that their sense of the possible is the limit of the possible. The truth will then be dismissed and ridiculed and the ‘blackness’ perceived as the limit of possibility. Schopenhauer was born in 1788. The Program is not new, just more expanded. American Neuroscience researcher Joe Dispenza was on the money when he said: ‘Ninety-five percent of who we are by the time we’re 35 years old is a memorised set of behaviours, emotional reactions, unconscious habits, hardwired attitudes, beliefs and perceptions that function like a computer program.’ Why would it be any other way given what I have described in this chapter alone?

Always back to wavefields

Humanity has been vibrated into conformity on the wavefield level of reality by downloading a collective perception which forms a mass wave-entanglement between like-perceivers (like *frequencies*).

Confirmation of Postage Stamp reality does not only happen in the realm of the seen. It is being communicated through wave connections of frequency entanglement. This is the real level at which the herd mentality is formed. A study published in *Current Biology* by researchers from New York University and the Max Planck Institute of Empirical Aesthetics found that brainwaves synchronise into similar patterns when students pay attention and are ‘engaged’ with each other. Co-lead author Suzanne Dikker said: ‘We think that all these effects can be explained by shared attention mechanisms during dynamic

group interactions.' From that 'shared attention' comes wave entanglement. What we 'see' is only the decoded holographic version of that. Intimidating people into collective conformity is really vibrating them into line. If you place violins together vibrating to the same note any other violin placed alongside them will start to vibrate to the same note even though it was playing another or none before. The dominant frequency will 'entrain' other frequencies and make them vibrate to its tune. Perceptions and pre-conceived ideas are frequencies and can both entrain others and prevent the person themselves from seeing other possibilities. Technological frequencies such as 5G are designed to have this effect on human brain activity. Some people go into politics with a genuine desire to make a positive difference and then transmute into everything they went into politics to challenge. They have been vibrated into line. Everything is a vibrational field including a parliament, political party or ideology and in the way of the violins the dominant frequency will prevail and absorb others into itself. The same is true of all groups and organisations, schools, universities, science, doctors, media, the whole lot. There's a saying that goes: 'When you dance with the Devil, the Devil doesn't change, the Devil changes you.' The dance in this case is frequency – oscillation – and the Devil is the Cult agenda.



Figure 234: The Cult controls by suppressing and leeching the power of humanity through perceptual programming – not through power of its own.

The Devil doesn't *have* to change you and the opposite can be true if you open your heart and mind to connect with consciousness way more powerful than the Cult and its 'gods'. They can only enslave humanity by making us more ignorant than they are (quite a task). We are not looking at some all-powerful force. It's more like the one-eyed man who can only be king in the land of the blind ([Fig 234](#)). The all-seeing eye is not all-seeing. It's a seven-stone weakling compared with humanity in its Infinite power. I've been exposing the Cult for 30 years and they have not vibrated me into line. Nor will they ever do so. It will be the other way round.

CHAPTER SEVEN

How are we manipulated?

Facts do not cease to exist because they are ignored – Aldous Huxley

Here's a way to read the world: Know the outcome and you'll see the journey. The Cult is desperate for you not to know what is planned for humanity because once we do the steps towards that end become crystal-clearly obvious day by day. Know the outcome and you'll see the journey, or see the 'where' and you'll see the 'why?' ([Fig 235](#)).



Figure 235: A brilliant way to 'read' daily events.

The Cult and its agents (knowing and overwhelmingly unknowing) in government, media and The System in general present everything in the form of dots. It is vital to maintain the illusion that policies, laws, media reports and 'education' depict a world in which everything stands apart from everything else. This policy is not connected to that policy, this law to that law, or this change to that change. When you perceive society from that perspective daily life appears to be a series of random and unfathomable events across the great spectrum of human experience. What the hell is going on? Why is this happening? Why are they doing that? Amid such bewilderment many people switch off and don't even try to work it out. I mean, what's the point? It's impossible to understand, right? No – *wrong*. At its core it's all very simple. Human society consists of fields of consciousness – some called 'human' – making wave entanglements on the basis of compatible frequencies generated by *perception*. Control perception and you dictate the entanglements that decide the nature of human interaction collectively known as 'society'. How do you control perception? You control information from which people form perception and at all costs you keep your targets in ignorance of one simple fact: What they see and experience are not the work of random chance but of carefully calculated steps in pursuit of a very specific and extraordinarily sinister end.



Figure 236: Both are controlled by the Cult network of Sabbatian-Frankism and so both work to the same script.

I'll give you a great example of this coldly coordinated 'random' before exposing the wider goals of the Cult and how humanity is manipulated to achieve them. I describe a sequence of events in detail in my mega-work, *The Trigger*, and mentioned them briefly at the start of the book. They involve the network within the Cult known as Sabbatian-Frankism which emerged in the 17th century and infiltrated communities, cultures and religions of all kinds. Sabbatian-Frankists pose as members of communities and followers of religions while infiltrating and directing them to serve the Cult's desired agenda. Sabbatian-Frankists (who hate Jewish people, by the way) control Israel; they *are* the Saudi fake 'royal' family; and they have networks across the world, especially in North America and Europe. Wait – aren't Israel and Saudi Arabia opponents? Not at the level of the Cult they're not. They are on the same team and any public divisions (increasingly few) are to hide these connections ([Fig 236](#)). Once you realise that apparent opponents ultimately answer to the same masters the cataracts of 'random' fall from the eyes. I have already explained how the Bible of Sabbatian-Frankism is the Kabbalah, the Jewish esoteric/spiritual/nature of reality work. Most important to them is the part known as the Zohar which means 'radiance' or 'illumination'. Three Sabbatian-Frankists chose the name 'Illuminati' for a Cult network they founded officially in 1776. They were Mayer Amschel Rothschild, founder of the Rothschild dynasty, Jacob Frank (hence 'Frankism') and Illuminati frontman, Adam Weishaupt. All the detailed background is in *The Trigger*. Sabbatian-Frankists, their Illuminati and Kabbalah, are yet another example of how global manipulation is founded on the knowledge of how reality works while keeping that knowledge from the target population.

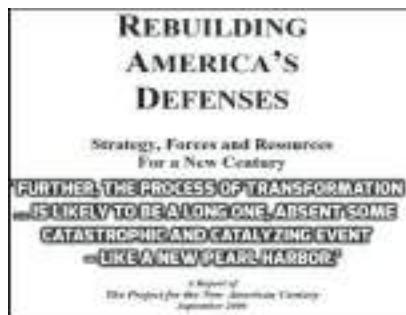


Figure 237: The document that listed countries for regime change in September, 2000, which presidents of 'different' parties have pursued ever since. It said that a 'new Pearl Harbor' would be needed to justify the plan and that's what we got – 9/11.

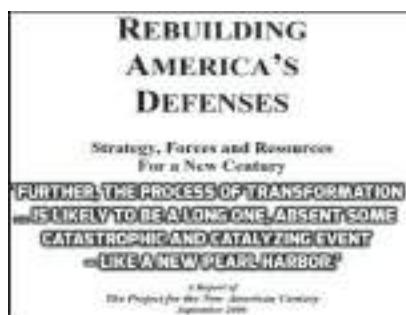


Figure 238: See *The Trigger* for who was really behind the 9/11 attacks and it wasn't Osama bin Laden.

Sabbatian-Frankists have long infiltrated America to the point of control and they created a 'think tank' in 1996 called the Project for the New American Century. Among their number were those who would be major players in the United States government and the Pentagon at the time of 9/11 during the regime of child-like puppet president, Boy George Bush. They included Dick Cheney (9/11 vice-president and de facto president); Donald Rumsfeld (9/11 Secretary of Defense); Paul Wolfowitz (9/11 Deputy Secretary of Defense); Dov Zakheim (9/11 Pentagon comptroller in charge of the entire military budget); and a long list of others either working within government and the Pentagon on 9/11 or promoting wars in the media in response to 9/11. The Project for the New American Century published a document in September, 2000, calling for American troops and military influence to be used to force regime-change in a series of countries including Iraq, Libya, Syria, Iran and North Korea leading in the end to regime-change in China. The document demanded (on behalf of the Sabbatian-Frankists) that American troops 'fight and decisively win simultaneous major theater wars' to achieve the desired regime change. It said, however, that this 'process of transformation' would be slow 'absent some catastrophic and catalysing event like a New Pearl Harbor' to justify attacks on target countries and the necessary gigantic increases in military spending. A year to the month after the document was published and nine months after those who wrote it came to power with Bush in January, 2001, America had what Bush called at the time 'the Pearl Harbor of the 21st century' – 9/11 ([Fig 237](#)). As a result of those horrific attacks a 'war on terror' was launched and the very countries named in the document have been targeted for regime change ever since under presidents and UK prime ministers of different (and apparently opposing) political parties. At the level of the Cult, which controls the always-there *permanent* government I described earlier, countries are one-party states. Whoever you vote for the Cult is in power. The sequence I have described is much longer and more detailed than outlined here and you'll find the full story in *The Trigger* which demolishes the official story of 9/11 and names those really involved – not 19 Arab hijackers ([Fig 238](#)). The point is that if you see each point in the sequence as an isolated in-and-of-itself event there seems to be no pattern and all appears random. Arab hijackers controlled by Osama bin Laden attacked America and the military invaded Afghanistan to find him; then along came the invasion of Iraq which was to stop Saddam Hussein and his non-existent 'weapons of mass destruction'; Libya was attacked and Colonel Gadhafi was killed to protect the people from Gadhafi violence; Syria was invaded to stop President Assad 'killing his own people'; Iran is being targeted for developing nuclear weapons and sponsoring terrorism. We are asked to believe that none of these events are linked in any way. Connect the dots while knowing the planned outcome and a very different picture can be seen.

Create the problem so you can impose the solution



Figure 239: War as creative destruction. Nothing changes a society quicker and more than war and that's why we've had so many.

The media, by emphasis and censorship, presents everything as random so the truth can be hidden and the great majority of journalists are doing this through ignorance, not calculation. Any who do make the

connections and want to report them are out the door very fast. It doesn't take many people to control the media so long as the Cult dominates the positions of ownership, editorial policy and hire and fire. This applies to every organisation and institution – government, 'education', banking, business, etc. The attacks of 9/11, regime-change wars and externally-manipulated 'people's revolutions' that followed are examples of two mass mind-control techniques that I dubbed decades ago Problem-Reaction-Solution (PRS) and the Totalitarian Tiptoe (TT). PRS is the mind-trick by which you covertly create a problem while blaming someone else (9/11); then you tell the public through an unquestioning mainstream media the version of the problem you want people to believe (Bin Laden and 19 Arab hijackers 'did it') to illicit the reaction of 'something must be done'; finally you offer the solution to the problem you have covertly created (a 'war on terror' to regime change countries as you planned all along). There is another version as I mentioned earlier that I call No-Problem-Reaction-Solution when you don't even need a real problem only the *perception* of one. The lie about 'weapons of mass destruction' to justify the catastrophic invasion of Iraq in 2003 is an obvious case and as we will see later so is the 'Covid-19' hoax. Iraq was on the hit-list and there was no reason to invade so the Cult made one up and had it promoted by Boy Bush and UK Prime Minister Tony Blair. The stablemate of PRS is the Totalitarian Tiptoe in which you instigate a series of happenings and changes that are all connected and leading the world in your desired direction while being presented as unconnected random events. Wars transform the world step-by-step as each follows the other in the Totalitarian Tiptoe technique of 'creative destruction'. A war destroys the status quo and creates a new one. The next war destroys that status quo and so on. With each new status quo you are moving closer and closer to your end goal. Look how the two world wars utterly transformed global society ([Fig 239](#)). The European Union is a Totalitarian Tiptoe planned from the start to be a centralised bureaucratic (Cult) superstate which they could never have openly admitted. The public backlash and resistance would have blocked it at birth. Instead they sold the superstate tyranny at first as just a free trade zone (the 'Common Market') before, step-by-step, incessantly centralising power to delete national sovereignty on the journey to what was planned from the start – a bureaucratically-controlled United States of Europe. Observe the world with this knowledge and you will see Problem-Reaction-Solution and the Totalitarian Tiptoe constantly at work across the entirety of human life. When something new is introduced by the Tiptoe technique where it starts is never where it is intended to finish. Taser stun guns unleashing 55,000 volts of electricity were introduced by police 'only for trained firearms officers', but it was obvious to anyone who understands the game and the Tiptoe that they would soon be widely distributed. By the year to March, 2019, Tasers were used thousands of times in England and Wales alone and broke all previous records. We now have 70-year-old grandmothers being Tasered multiple times in America by psychopathic goons in uniform for asking them to show a warrant before entering their home. Crucial to making PRS and TT techniques effective is to program the population to believe *your* version of why these manufactured events happen and to keep the real reason hidden. The alternative media and alternative opinion is being censored to ever greater extremes by the Cult-owned Internet giants to stop the truth being exposed about PRS and TT events (which went into overdrive to stop exposure of the 'Covid-19' hoax).

Cult movie

What I am about to describe really is a movie in the sense there is a script designed to tell you what you are seeing and experiencing. If you watch a series of pictures with no commentary or voiceover you can reach your own conclusions about what they mean. Instead a reporter will tell you what you are seeing and what the pictures mean when often what is said is not true at all. Most of the time the *reporter* doesn't know what is happening. They get their information from official sources, repeat that in the voiceover and call it 'journalism'. Whatever the event may be – a terrorist attack, war, financial collapse – the media is telling you the official version 99 percent of the time. We are back to one of the most profound techniques of mind control which is repetition. Media sources may seem numerous but they will be

quoting the same official narrative ad infinitum until it fuses into ‘everyone knows that’ and a widely accepted version of history (memory). Stop people in the street anywhere in the world and ask them what happened in an historical or more recent event and they will invariably give you the official version (often thanks to Hollywood or ‘Tinseltown’). Hollywood is a Cult creation to program perceptions of the global masses. Ask many people for a version of history and it will come from the script of a Hollywood movie. That John Wayne was a war hero wasn’t he? No, he was in make-up in LA while the guns were firing on the other side of the world. Wayne was there to tell you what to *believe* about the guns firing on the other side of the world. Moment by illusory moment you are being told what to think – to perceive – about *everything*. I will pull together over the next few chapters the elements of a coordinated global control system which are happening before our eyes every day while being presented as random events.



Figure 240: The structure of the planned global tyranny.

The foundation manipulation is centralisation of power which has been unrelenting thanks to the Cult. A few can’t control the many without centralisation of power. The more power is devolved from the centre the less control the global Cult at the centre can have. Humans once organised in tribal groups which decided what happened to the tribe. Then tribes were brought together under centralised control called nations and countries and a few people could dictate to all the former tribes. Today nations are being centrally controlled through superstates like the EU, trading blocs, United Nations agencies, the World Health Organization, World Trade Organization, International Monetary Fund, World Bank and so many more. The all-encompassing name for this phenomenon is ‘globalisation’ – the centralisation of global power in every area of human life which I have been warning about for 30 years. Globalisation is the Totalitarian Tiptoe to the imposition of a world government, army, central bank and currency underpinned by a microchipped population connected to AI ([Fig 240](#)). The more you centralise power the more power you have at the centre to centralise even quicker and centralisation gets faster and faster. The European Union has been created this way as each power-grabbing and centralising step has followed another. A single world currency, which I have again been predicting since the early 1990s, is meant to be purely digital with the deletion of cash. We are seeing cash disappearing so fast in favour of digital transactions through cards and smartphones in the Tiptoe to this end with planned microchips waiting to take over from them. Bank branches and ATMs are being closed and removed to make it ever harder to have cash transactions. The plan is to make it near-impossible to function without a smartphone. I went to a railway station car park during the writing of this book and the only way I could pay was by a smartphone which I don’t use. It meant I couldn’t park there and this is the way those who don’t want to succumb to the agenda are being pressured into doing so. The sequence in all subject areas goes like this ... voluntary ... can’t function without doing it ‘voluntarily’... compulsory. Individual cash currencies are disappearing with the Cult-created EU deleting many European currencies through the introduction of the euro that itself is planned to be assimilated into the world currency (look at the utter demonisation of cash and refusal to deal in cash transactions as a result of the ‘Covid-19’ hoax). Global government would

not even be run by elected people as I have long warned. Rulers would be bureaucrats and technocrats serving the Cult through what is termed a technocracy – ‘Government or control of society or industry by an elite of technical experts’. Silicon Valley which already has far more power than governments is this very emerging technocracy at work as are the unelected bureaucrat dictators of the European Union. A world army is designed to impose the will of the world dictatorship on those who resist. Recent plans for a European Union army (which I predicted in the 1990s) and the long-established European Central Bank are Totalitarian Tiptoes to the world army and world central bank, as is NATO. The same goes with regard to world government with the World Health Organization, World Trade Organization, International Monetary Fund and World Bank. The biggest stalking horse of all for the world government structure is the Cult-created-and-controlled United Nations which is being transformed step-by-step into a world government dictatorship. I’ll say more about this when I deal with the climate change hoax being driven through the UN.

Hunger Games Society

Unrelenting centralisation of global power is sold as ‘the world coming together’. This illusion and lie has been bought in its totality by desperately naive ‘Woke’ progressives and their associated Climate Cult which is an offshoot of The Cult although only a few of its advocates will know that. Do they really believe that a Cult obsessed with driving people apart to divide and rule wants the world to ‘come together’? It’s about centralisation of total power in the hands of a few at a global level from where they will control AI which, by then, will be connected to the human brain. Helloooooooo!!! My God – wake the hell up, people. It is a skin-pinch to think that the political ‘Left’ that I grew up with – the one that stood for freedom of speech and challenged elite power – has now been so hijacked by the fake ‘progressive’ ‘Woke’ mentality that it demands freedom of speech is deleted through Cult-created political correctness (PC) and that the elite be handed ever more power through the Cult-created EU. Who will eventually reap the consequences of the tyranny they are demanding to be implemented? They will – and their kids and grandkids still more so. The original truly liberal Left has been so absorbed by Cult-created ‘Woke’ that real liberals are today condemned as ‘far-right’ and ‘Nazis’ for defending basic liberal values like freedom of speech. The label ‘Woke’ which this mentality awards itself is a serious misrepresentation of its origin and maybe, ironically, ‘cultural appropriation’ in the language of PC. ‘Woke’ is apparently a political term used in African-American culture since the 1900s and relates to an awareness of social and racial justice. Its use by fake ‘progressives’, however, does not mean that although they claim it does. ‘New Woke’, as I will call it from here-on, means campaigning for the agenda of the very Cult responsible for social injustice of all kinds throughout what we perceive as human history. This includes the slavery and oppression of black and other non-white people and the oppression of most white people.

Hunger Games – the real-life movie



Figure 241: The Hunger Games Society I have warned about for decades that is now clearly being imposed. (Image Neil Hague.)



Figure 242: The Hunger Games Society is a global fascistic society.

I have long described where the Cult and New Wokeness are leading us as the 'Hunger Games Society' and the Tiptoe to that continues every day worldwide. Clearly my phrase comes from the *Hunger Games* movie series which portrays a privileged elite hoarding all the wealth and power while living in a hi-tech city of mega luxury. They are protected by a vicious and merciless police/military state from the rest of the population working as slaves to the elite (today's Cult-connected One-percent) in abject poverty under extreme levels of surveillance and control. The masses are isolated in 'sectors' to prevent a unified response (divide and rule). I have been warning for decades that this is the very structure the Cult seeks to impose with a brain link to AI thrown in ([Fig 241](#)). Scan the world and you can't miss the pieces being put into place ever more quickly. I saw an image of Adolf Hitler at a mass Nazi rally. He stood alone at the front delivering his psychopathy to a massive military presence and beyond them were thousands of people kept in line by that military to ensure whatever Hitler demanded would be done. I had that image flipped upside down and overlaid on the Hunger Games Society structure and they are exactly the same. We are indeed looking at a global version of Nazi Germany with the added control-system of advanced-technology and AI ([Fig 242](#)). Now add the 'virus' lockdowns to what I said there.



Figure 243: People die of hunger and sleep in the streets while a handful of multi-billionaires like these hijack the world's wealth. The fact that many claim to be 'caring' and have 'values' is a real challenge to the stomach.



Figure 244: A cause and effect that never fails.

The plan is for the leaders and key agents of the Cult to control the wealth and power at the top of the pyramid in the way of the *Hunger Games* movies. We have already reached the point where we talk about

a ‘One-percent’ and an Oxfam report in 2019 estimated that the world’s 26 richest men owned as much wealth as the poorest *half* of the global population – some 3.8 billion people at the time ([Fig 243](#)). The 26 are themselves in hierarchical order with the top few dominating the wealth and multi-billionaires Jeff Bezos at Amazon and Bill Gates at Microsoft up there at the top. By 2020 the world had a record 2,816 billionaires worth \$11.2 trillion which is more than the gross national product of every country except the United States and China. Another Oxfam report in 2020 said the wealthiest 2,153 people have more money than the poorest *4.6 billion* while the 22 richest men have more than all the women in Africa. We should be careful even then of believing these are the wealthiest people. Behind the scenes Cult leaders have wealth way beyond a Bezos or Gates who are relative artisans and gofers compared with those with the most power who don’t put themselves on public display. They hide the extent of their holdings through a stream of nominees and proxies. The One-percent and their operatives own governments and buy politicians and parties ([Fig 244](#)). Multi-billionaire financier George Soros owns the Democrats in the United States along with much of the New Woke network of organisations while multi-billionaire Sheldon Adelson owns the Republican Party and has been Donald Trump’s biggest funder. The Cult technique is control all sides and you control the game. The Sabbatian-Frankist House of Rothschild is a player even above all of those I have mentioned and they are global experts at hiding the extent of their wealth and power. Cult-controlled corporations are far richer than countries. Sixty-nine of the world’s leading economic entities are corporations not countries and 157 of the top 200. Corporations such as Walmart, Apple and Shell attract more wealth than countries like Russia, Belgium and Sweden while a mere one percent of the wealth of Jeff Bezos is equivalent to the entire health budget of Ethiopia with its 105 million people. Mega corporations own governments, dictate laws – and wars – and hand themselves all the aces at the expense of potential competition. You have laws making it ever more difficult (on purpose) for small and medium size non-Cult businesses to survive while Cult corporations get what they like (*update* – look what has happened to small business and even bigger ones all over the world because of the ‘virus’ hoax lockdowns). Control of governments and the system in general means that billionaires and their corporations pay a far smaller percentage of their income in taxation than people struggling to survive. Google paid just £6 million in tax in 2011 on a turnover of £365 million and avoids tax like the other vampires by moving tens of billions into shell companies in offshore tax havens. They and their famous front people have utter contempt for you. Fair Tax Mark, a group campaigning for tax transparency, reported in 2019 that the big six US tech firms Amazon, Facebook, Google, Netflix, Apple and Microsoft had ‘aggressively’ avoided \$100 billion of global tax over the previous decade. It claimed that in this period Amazon paid only \$3.4 billion in tax on revenues of \$960.5 billion and profits of \$26.8 billion. How can smaller less connected companies compete with that? They can’t. How can they compete with those like Amazon and global taxi firm Uber who have apparently unlimited funding to buy and expand their way to monopoly? They can’t and that’s the idea.

Global sweatshop

The Cult controls – indeed created – the global banking and financial system in which it conjures money out of fresh air called ‘credit’ and its financial pot is therefore unlimited. The gathering monopoly of Amazon alone has devastated bricks and mortar shops, mom and pop businesses, and dominates the book industry at the expense of independent stores which are driven out of business (see ‘virus’ hoax lockdowns which have left Amazon with a massively-increased global market share). US retail giant Walmart, the largest company in the world by revenue, has done something similar in the bricks and mortar sector through a business model described by one commentator as ‘selling foreign goods to domestic consumers, cheap Chinese garbage manufactured offshore in factories that pay slave wages – wages that American manufacturers could never match’. One study estimated that America lost 400,000 jobs between 2001 and 2013 because of Walmart’s Chinese imports and this devastated many towns especially in rural areas. This depopulation of rural land just happens to be a major Cult agenda as you

will see. Walmart even has a policy of selling goods at a loss until competitors are destroyed to secure a monopoly (see Amazon) and employs mostly part-time staff to avoid paying them benefits while knowing that the taxpayer via the government will top up the wages with welfare payments. This goes on while the Walmart family is reported to be worth \$150 billion. Walmart and its methods are straight from the Cult playbook. It's a disgusting company exploiting and living off the backs of the poor. Walmart was once widely condemned by genuine liberals of the genuine Left, but not by New Woke since the Walmart family, the richest in America, began spouting the language and agenda of New Woke. Monopoly means control and the plan is for Cult corporations to dominate every sector and market so that you buy from them or no one. Where do the bankrupt business owners and their employees go? They slide into the lower reaches of the Hunger Games Society along with everyone else – look at the effect of the ‘virus’ hoax lockdowns which have accelerated this process on a staggering scale ([Fig 245](#)).



Figure 245: The global dynamic.

While global wealth is sucked into the One-percent and the Cult the poor and what are called the middle class are being stripped of income and assets in line with the Hunger Games pyramid. I warned long ago that those who thought none of this applied to them were in for a shock. By that I mean those at the time who had a well-paid job, nice car, good home and money for holidays. I pointed out that the Cult had its sights on them, too. The plan is for everyone outside the elite to be enslaved in dependency and poverty by controlling the wealth and replacing people with AI. The Cult-instigated financial crash of 2008 contributed immensely to this while the mega-rich went on getting mega-richer. Figures I saw for 2017 and 2018 revealed that a new billionaire was created every two days as formerly ‘comfortable’ or even ‘well-off’ people were finding themselves on the street. A headline captured the trend: ‘In rich countries, the middle class is getting smaller and smaller, generation by generation.’ It describes the Totalitarian Tiptoe to the Hunger Games Society. Many people who once thought that what I was exposing did not affect them are now sleeping in tent cities or shop doorways and this is planned to continually expand until the Cult’s job is done. Suicide rates in America have increased by 40 percent in 17 years and many of them are among those termed ‘blue collar’ workers or ‘working class’ who have been profoundly affected by One-percent accumulation of wealth and systematic mass immigration competing in their job market. Vast numbers of people even in work are living from week to week with a missed pay check or two meaning financial disaster and a lost home. A national survey by UK homelessness charity Beam found that the average British person is only two pay cheques away from homelessness at a time when AI is sweeping away jobs traditionally done by humans (and that was before the lockdown). This has all been planned. Food charity Move for Hunger says that one in eight Americans or 40 million people are food insecure with more than twelve million children and five million seniors not sure where their next meal is coming from (again before lockdown). Homelessness was rising all over the world through lower incomes, unemployment and social factors even before the ‘pandemic’ with the cost of housing right up there as a prime cause. British homeless charity Shelter said in December, 2019, that a child becomes homeless in the UK every eight minutes. None of this has to happen when you consider that the United States government has spent \$2 trillion (at least) on the Cult-created unwinnable war in

Afghanistan, the longest in American history. Much of that \$2 trillion has ended up in the coffers of Cult-owned arms and 'defence' corporations while homeless numbers incessantly rise. Why would they spend the money on the population when they want to make the masses impoverished, destitute and dependent on them? I have described the Hunger Games agenda in all its form at length in *Everything You Need To Know* and if you want the detailed background for all I am saying in this book then *Everything* is a must-read.

Gather them in cities

I have long exposed the agenda for financially forcing people out of the rural areas into mega cities controlled by AI where they would live in micro-homes – some the size of a single decker bus and many even less. All these years after I made that warning those micro-homes are being built all over the world and the movement of people from financially-devastated rural communities into the cities where they can be kept under surveillance 24/7 gathers apace ([Fig 246](#)). The US federal government already owns 28 percent of the land in America and there's a lot more to come. Patrick Wood at Technocracy.news described how this process is happening even more directly in China where vicious government control has allowed no opposition:

... China unveiled a plan in 2014 to summarily move 250 million farmers off their land by 2026 and into megacities that had already been constructed but sat vacant. The vacated farm land is being combined into giant factory farms to be operated by advanced technology such as agricultural robots and automated tractors. Ostensibly, the farmers who refuse to leave will be helped along with the barrel of a gun.



Figure 246: Micro-homes for the serfs being built around the world for the Hunger Games masses in AI-controlled cities.



Figure 247: 'Ghost cities' built all over China waiting for the masses to be forced to relocate from the land.

For years people have been asking why China has been building a stream of new 'ghost cities' with few or no one living there ([Fig 247](#)). This is why. The guiding rule for the West is China today and you tomorrow or in fact not even tomorrow. Abandoned homes, family farms, shops and factories can now be seen right across rural America between the coasts thanks to companies like Walmart with its imports from Chinese sweatshops and pricing to destroy competition. Then there are hedge fund billionaires who asset-strip local employers and devastate rural areas. American cable news host Tucker Carlson, one of the last proper journalists on US television, highlighted one sickening example involving ultra-Zionist New York-based hedge fund manager Paul Singer who has a personal fortune according to Forbes of more than \$3 billion. Carlson told the story of how Singer's predatory hedge fund targeted the only major employer in the small town of Sidney, Nebraska, and destroyed it for a fat profit. The town lost 2,000 jobs

in a population of 6,000. No wonder *Bloomberg News* dubbed Singer as ‘the world’s most feared investor’ and he is reported to be ‘a strong opponent of raising taxes for the wealthiest 1% of taxpayers’. You don’t say. At the time of writing ultra-Zionist Singer is reported to be buying shares in Twitter to oust chief executive Jack Dorsey. Carlson described Singer-like asset-stripping practices as ‘vulture capitalism feeding off the carcass of a dying nation’. He said of the Sidney disaster: ‘A heartbreakingly familiar cascade began: people left, property values collapsed, and then people couldn’t leave. They were trapped there. One of the last thriving small towns in America went under.’ This is happening systematically all over America to drive people into the cities and a life of poverty, which means dependency, which means control. A further aspect of this agenda is the Cult’s campaign for people to eat a vegan diet in response to the climate change hoax which would ultimately cause many animals to disappear from land that could then be absorbed in state and One-percent land grabs from which the public in the mega-cities would be excluded. You could drive there? Your autonomous car won’t take you. Fracking is endangering the viability of rural life. Each fracking well consumes between 1.5 million and 16 million gallons of water while whole communities don’t have enough to drink and have to leave the country for the cities. Injected water used in fracking to access oil and gas fields is polluted with hundreds of chemicals which then seep into ground water further reducing supplies to drink.



Figure 248: Exploit any disaster or human catastrophe to advance your agenda.



Figure 249: Smart cities with everything controlled by AI and human choice deleted are referred to as ‘human settlement zones’ in official documents.



Figure 250: The ginormous smart city being built by Sabbatian-Frankist-controlled Saudi Arabia not far from Sabbatian-Frankist-controlled Israel which is planned to be the key centre of the global smart control grid.

Around 2010 the world passed the point where more people live in urban areas than rural and it has been speeding in that direction ever since. In Australia people are being forced out of rural areas by catastrophic forest fires (hardly difficult to start) and lack of water as rivers dry up. They blame human-caused climate change when honest Australian scientists have admitted there is no evidence to link

climate change to either fires or drought and dwindling rivers. In fact, water is being siphoned off before it reaches communities by dams owned by private corporations who use it for their own ends including mega-cotton production operations for the benefit of Chinese and Japanese ‘investors’. I recommend the Internet videos of Max Igan with regard to Australian fires and water shortages. Climate Cult child goddess Greta Thunberg of course blamed the 2019/2020 catastrophe in Australia on ‘climate change’ when forest fires have always been part of Australian life and were once mitigated by controlled burning in the winter to create barriers that fires struggled to jump ([Fig 248](#)). Non-burning policy instigated at the behest of the Greens has since created a disaster waiting to happen. But, no, hey, it’s global warming – the script says so – and the fact that nearly 200 people were arrested for ‘fire-related offenses’ according to New South Wales police, including some for deliberately starting them, is not at all relevant. There have been horrific fires in other regions including Indonesia which also have human and not climate change origins through forest and land mismanagement by timber and farming companies. At their most extreme these fires have produced more carbon dioxide than the US economy to put industrial production of CO₂ into perspective and killed monumental numbers of animals including many from endangered species. The same has happened in Australia with one biodiversity specialist estimating that a billion animals had been killed in the fires of 2019/2020. The real causes of this don’t matter to the climate obsessives – only their agenda that everything is ‘climate change’ – and still more people are forced out of rural areas into urban centres. Mega-cities where the masses are being forced to relocate from rural areas are known as ‘Smart Cities’ which is code for densely-populated centres of mass surveillance and control of everything through artificial intelligence with no private means of movement and only state-controlled driverless vehicles and communal transport systems. You go where the state says you can go and nowhere else. Current cities are being transformed into Smart Cities while others are being built from scratch around the world as in China ([Fig 249](#) overleaf). To give you an idea of what I mean Saudi Arabia, controlled by the Sabbatian-Frankist fake royal House of Saud, is developing a \$500 billion Smart City dubbed the ‘NEOM project’ which is planned to be 33-times the size of New York ([Fig 250](#)). NEOM means ‘New Future’, but ‘Cult agenda’ would be more accurate.

Prison camp cities

We have in San Francisco and Los Angeles perfect examples of the Cult’s Hunger Games programme and also California in its entirety. New Woke California has twelve percent of the American population but 25 percent of its homeless and 25 percent of people in the state are poor amid incredible wealth (what must it be now with the lockdown?). There have been outbreaks of typhus among the shit-laden, piss-laden, streets of Los Angeles with fears that the plague will follow while the millionaires and billionaires of the Hollywood elite look the other way from their ivory towers and conspicuous wealth. Human waste goes into the LA River bypassing sewage treatment and how does anyone think that will turn out? If you want to see the Hunger Games Society let’s go to San Francisco and this time there’ll be no need for flowers in your hair. Watching where you walk will be far more important. San Francisco and the associated Silicon Valley is the most unequal society on Planet Earth. I have been to the ‘Golden Gate’ city many times starting before the emergence of the billionaire technocracy when the city really was a place to sing about. I have been there recently and it’s a shithole – literally. ‘New Woke’ owners of Google, Facebook, Twitter and the like live in their multi-million walled mansions with private security while the streets of San Francisco are awash with homeless people, human piss and shit, and spent needles left by addicts often desperately trying to escape from their daily nightmare while suffering from mental illness. There are now more drug addicts in San Francisco than high school students. Residents reported about 5,500 cases of human shit in the city’s streets in 2011 and by 2018 it was more than 28,000. One bloke I saw on video defecated in a supermarket aisle. San Francisco’s response to all this has been to stop prosecuting people that piss and shit in public places which of course has made the situation far worse. Seattle in Washington State is another city that has taken the route of San Francisco with all the same consequences. The multi-

billionaire George Soros and other One-percenters behind New Woke have been funding their gofers to become district attorneys across America and when they win office crimes are downgraded or no longer prosecuted. The aim is to destroy human society and let rule by the mob take over. The result in the same period has been a surge in murders in America as well as other crime. San Francisco has just such a district attorney in Chesa Boudin whose parents were jailed for what would today be called Woke terrorism with a group called the 'Weather Underground'. Boudin's city has the highest rate of property crime of any big city in the country with an average of 60 cars broken into every day. San Francisco's Board of Supervisors decided to act decisively in true New Woke fashion by deleting the term 'convicted felons' to be replaced with 'justice-involved individuals' which is the term also used for the targets of crime. We have the same term for both robber and robbed, attacker and attacked. Young people committing crime are now 'young people impacted by the juvenile justice system'. Drug addicts are 'people with a history of substance use'. The Cult New Woke technique is to ignore the problem (it *wants* the problem) and instead delete the language that makes talking about the problem in factual detail impossible. New York has done something similar by abolishing cash bail for certain crimes. In the first month after introduction car theft surged 67 percent and robbery 33 percent with six suspected drug dealers accused of running a \$7 million operation given this get out of jail card. Will any of these people come back for trial? A former New York police commissioner described how people have been arrested for rape, been let go and raped again, while others have been arrested on serious charges, let go, and committed murder. There are many people in jail who shouldn't be, but that's not the motivation here. It's about still keeping the wrong people in jail while setting free those who should be there. New Woke California voted to make crime involving less than \$950 a misdemeanour with likely no investigation or consequences. You'll never guess what has happened. I mean who could have predicted it? Crime in that category has soared with some thieves even carrying calculators to make sure their shoplifting booty totals less than \$950. Small businesses are being especially badly hit and anyone who wants society to be a see-want-take lawless free-for-all would be ecstatic. California even reduced penalties for knowingly exposing a sexual partner to HIV and the same with knowingly donating HIV-infected blood. What about those infected? New Woke is not interested in real victims, only inventing fake ones. Ultra-Zionist multi-billionaire one-time Democratic presidential candidate Michael Bloomberg described California despite all this as a model for all of America. To the Cult it is.

I have been exposing for decades the systematic drugging of American and other communities worldwide to enslave the population in addiction with the Bush and Clinton families centrally involved in the Cult drug networks that control the drug cartels. China is circulating drugs in America via Mexican drug gangs crossing large swathes of the basically undefended southern border (see *The Trigger* for background to Cult drug networks and the Bush/Clinton/CIA/Israeli Mossad involvement). Addiction to opioids, a class of drugs derived from the opium poppy plant, has been devastating for America and especially a synthetic opioid called Fentanyl which is some 100 times more powerful than morphine and overwhelmingly sourced to China. Opioids are brain manipulators promoted as painkillers and have been mass-circulated by Purdue Pharma owned by the multi-billionaire Sackler family. The result of their mega-marketed drug OxyContin can be seen in horrific numbers of deaths, destroyed lives and destruction of whole communities. OxyContin was promoted with big help from Purdue-funded Washington Deep State Zionist 'think tank', the American Enterprise Institute, which had many connections to the Project for the New American Century. A commentator described how 'many hundreds of thousands of Americans have entered into a death spiral of addiction after being prescribed these drugs by doctors'. Purdue is offering compensation pay-outs of \$12 billion which does not even nearly match the horrors that its drug has perpetrated. Addiction to drugs, alcohol, smartphones and all the rest is fuelled by despair and the need to escape from the life people are living as the Cult dismantles countries, lives, and psyches in pursuit of the Hunger Games Society. Opioid deaths have been sharply higher in American communities where Cult-owned vehicle-makers have closed their US plants and

outsourced jobs to other countries where they can pay people less. This is 'globalisation' at work. The manipulated problem of homelessness is waiting for a solution that will advance the Hunger Games Society even further on behalf of the Cult and its Sabbatian-Frankist network. American website Politico reported that 'the growing homeless encampments — which have led to a rise in human waste, trash and open-air drug dealing — have united unlikely allies'. They were talking about Republican Donald Trump and ultra-Zionist San Francisco Democrat state senator Scott Wiener. This guy cares, you see: 'The crisis is so bad people's minds are really opening up and the policies are shifting ... Legislation that would have had no chance five or ten years ago can pass.' Problem-Reaction-Solution. Wiener's 'solution' is the forced internment of homeless people under certain circumstances (which the state would interpret) using the Orwellian term 'involuntary commitment'. These 'circumstances' will be planned to constantly expand until it involves all homeless people. Julie Winter, mayor of Redding, California, has suggested that the homeless be put in a 'shelter' which they would not be allowed to leave until they 'demonstrate self-sufficiency'. In other words she is talking about internment in a de-facto jail for the crime of being homeless. These may currently be isolated attempts at authoritarian laws but they will grow and not least because populations of towns and cities are going to be impacted more and more by the homeless crisis. The Cult doesn't want a real solution. To these empathy-deleted, stone-hearted crazies, the homeless are a means to an end.

Guaranteed poverty and control



Figure 251: The fantastic mass-surveillance system in China in the process of coming to the West.

Another Cult agenda to exploit the plunge to the Hunger Games Society is a guaranteed income. When multi-billionaire New Woke professional frauds like Facebook's Mark Zuckerberg support a 'universal basic income' you know it's not what it seems. I have believed since childhood that there should be a level below which no one should be allowed to fall in a civilised society, but that is not what the Cult's guaranteed or basic income plans are all about. The motivation is *control*. Billions and billions are planned to be forced into the lower reaches of the Hunger Games pyramid by manipulation of the financial system, giant corporations and hedge funds destroying communities and job opportunities, and by the utter devastation of employment with the AI takeover (this was again written even before the lockdowns). AI means still more money being transferred to ever fewer hands in that AI doesn't get paid. Technology represents the most crucial factor in the creation of a Hunger Games world (along with the effects of lockdowns). One 'solution' to this 'problem' is the guaranteed income which will be guaranteed by whom and on what basis? Look no further than China for the answer. Cult-assets of the state will decide who gets what on the basis of acquiesce to the state. China is the fast-developing blueprint for the Cult control system. New Woke billionaires far from criticising China work to support its psychopathic dictators in the creation of the very system planned for the West and the rest of the world. One Chinese city alone has 2.6 million cameras and the country has a surveillance system that scans facial features to create a virtual map of the face in real time to be checked by AI against a state database ([Fig 251](#) overleaf). The same system is fast coming to the West thanks to the Cult and its Silicon Valley multi-billionaire celebrity technocrats. 'Smart' technology (I'll explain the real context in a later chapter) allows for constant mass surveillance and China's communist/fascist (same thing) government is exploiting this

potential for its ‘social credit’ system. This tracks the behaviour of the entire population and awards or deletes credits based on that behaviour. Do what the government wants and you get credits; do what the government doesn’t want and they are taken away with major consequences. A government document in 2014 said the system is designed to ‘allow the trustworthy to roam everywhere under heaven while making it hard for the discredited to take a single step’. They are not kidding. By the end of 2018 the National Public Credit Information Centre revealed that Chinese courts had banned the purchase of plane tickets 17.5 million times and 5.5 million for train tickets for becoming officially ‘discredited’ (the fake ‘pandemic’ is being exploited to do the same in the West). Apply this to a guaranteed (tiny) income that would be paid only if you conform to what governments demand. That’s the real story behind guaranteed income and why One-percenter frauds and censors like Zuckerberg give it their support while promoting themselves as kind and caring. A small guaranteed income with no alternative way of earning money = the Hunger Games Society. A glimpse of how the China system is being introduced in the West can be seen with the Silicon Valley company Airbnb which is causing people to be thrown out of their permanent homes around the world as they are rented to tourists through Airbnb just as Silicon Valley’s Uber is destroying local taxi firms across the globe in its money-no-object business plan leading to autonomous taxis. Airbnb has developed technology to scour the internet and social media accounts to check potential renters for character traits. The company’s ‘trait analyser’ software employs artificial intelligence to give black marks to people ‘associated’ with ‘drugs or alcohol, “hate websites”, or sex work’ by ‘scanning keywords, images and video footage across the internet linked to a potential customer to assess their trustworthiness’. The programme assesses their ‘behavioural and personality traits’ including ‘conscientiousness and openness’ – see China’s social credit system.

Cult gun-grab



Figure 252: Police are looking and acting like the military because they are planned to fuse into a global police-military state.

This brings me to the middle section of the Hunger Games pyramid – the police/military state emerging before our eyes all over the world. Its role is to protect the One-percent from the Hunger Games masses and enforce the will of the One-percent upon the rest of humanity as per *Hunger Games* movies (see the lockdowns). The plan is to eventually fuse police and military into one force and we have the police looking more like the military with every passing year ([Fig 252](#)). Police officers are armed to the enamel on their teeth at the same time that constant pressure is being applied to disarm Americans even including those living in isolated homes with no chance of a swift police response. Is this a coincidence? Not a chance. I speak as someone who wishes there were no guns. I can’t stand them and I have never used one except to win – or not – a coconut at the fair; but we need to see the world as it is and not only as we would like it to be. If you have a heavily-armed Cult-controlled police and military and an unarmed population how is that going to end? It is such a cinch with today’s sophisticated mind-control techniques to program kids and others to go on shooting sprees in schools and shopping malls to increase the demand for gun confiscation. Do people really think that criminals and crazies won’t locate and use guns because the law says they should not? They are *criminals and crazies* for goodness sake. Are armed criminals more likely to attack a home where they don’t know if the occupants are armed or one where

they know they are defenceless against their weapons? Ultra-Zionist multi-billionaire Michael Bloomberg, former Mayor of New York and failed Democrat presidential wannabe, is funding campaigns to target gun owners in a move that promotes the Cult agenda. The desire to remove guns from the law-abiding population cannot be divorced from the extraordinary level of surveillance now in place because it's all connected. It's the Totalitarian Tiptoe to a global Cult-controlled police-military world army state to impose the agenda of the Cult-controlled world government. China's social credit system is only a glimpse at how extreme this is meant to be. Cult-owned Silicon Valley and associated Cult technology giants around the world in countries like China have constructed an immense and ever-expanding network of 24/7 surveillance in which your every action is logged and stored on databases planned to become one global database. You are watched and recorded by smart televisions, smart phones, smart personal assistants, cameras, increasingly with face-recognition, and through your every action online. The list is becoming endless. Smart streets with microphones in lamp posts are another development and the roll-out of 5G will expand the tracking and data-gathering potential by gigantic leaps. A beyond-Orwellian technological tyranny has been introduced so fast.

Open the borders

I have exposed Cult insiders over the years describing how they want to impose the 'law of the jungle' in which people are constantly in states of fear and anxiety and open to more Orwellian control to protect them from what they have been manipulated to fear. Part of the fear and chaos agenda is opening the southern border of America to psychopathic gangs arriving through Mexico such as MS-13 with its lovely motto 'kill, rape and control'. Mexican drug cartels that have taken psychopathy and brutality to still new depths of depravity exploit the near-open border areas to flood America with drugs and they are major suppliers worldwide. Mexico is run by those cartels and law and order has basically been deleted. The idea is for the situation to get so bad that there will be an exodus of people into the US on such a scale from the south that it is unstoppable. Many who cross the border illegally give birth to children in the United States to secure them US citizenship in the knowledge that the rest of the family will then not be sent home. The number of so-called 'anchor babies' born to those living illegally in America was reported to be 372,000 in 2019 which was greater than US citizen birth rates in 48 states. Billionaire financier George Soros, part of the ultra-Zionist global network no matter how much he may try to hide that, is funding both the movement of illegal migrants into America and Europe and election campaigns of New Woke district attorneys across America who then refuse to prosecute illegal migrants, criminals (including killers) and decriminalise a list of offences. This is creating the 'jungle' that Cult insiders talk about. We can also see the real meaning behind this Bloomberg pledge: 'I believe we can once again be a country that welcomes immigrants, values immigrants, respects immigrants, and empowers them to pursue the American Dream.'



Figure 253: The reason for mass migration of cultures and the obsession with seeing 'racism' everywhere and in everything. (Image Gareth Icke.)

Mass migration into Europe and the United States is a frontline Cult agenda to transform societies with the goal among many other things of creating conflict (divide and rule) between indigenous and incoming cultures ([Fig 253](#)). The Cult doesn't give a shit about the migrants. They are just pawns in a

game to secure the will of the same Cult that has bombed their countries and turned them asunder in places like Libya and Syria in the full-knowledge that it would start a trek to the north into Europe in search of safety. I am all for giving succour to migrants fleeing persecution and wars mostly of the Cult's making via the West to create chaos and control. The point that needs to be made is the great majority of migrants are not fleeing war. They only want to get into Europe and the United States and if I were them I would want to do the same. Some perspective is urgently required, however, on what that means for European and American society. German newspaper *Die Welt* has conceded that most of the migrants arriving in Europe across the Mediterranean are not genuine refugees: 'Contrary to popular belief, the majority of those arriving in Italy are not refugees ... the main countries of origin for boat migrants in January [2020] were Algeria, Ivory Coast, and Bangladesh.' Italian Interior Ministry figures suggest that large numbers are arriving from Tunisia, Algeria, and Turkey. Most of these people are not given asylum or refugee status but most stay in Europe anyway. Germany's Federal Office for Migration and Refugees agreed that only a small fraction of failed asylum seekers from Africa had been deported and that most probably never will be. Those that are deported just come back. The time is planned when an unstoppable exodus of people will head into Europe and the United States from the south. I said in *The Trigger* that Turkey would at some point lift its ban agreed with the EU on migrants crossing its border into Europe and that would lead to potentially millions more migrants heading northwards. In late February, 2020, the Turkish government of the tyrannical President Erdogan said it would no longer hold back people from Syria and other countries who wish to go to Europe and seek asylum there. Turkish officials spoke of 'opening the floodgates of migrants on Europe'. I'm not a prophet. I just know what the game is and that makes predicting events quite straightforward. Erdogan said the situation would continue until the EU renegotiated the deal and even if that happens the threat is ongoing. This tyrant is supposed to be 'anti-Israel', but somehow manages to promote the Israel-based Sabbatian-Frankist cult plans for both flooding European society with migrants and continuing the efforts launched by the ultra-Zionist Project for the New American Century to remove President Assad in Syria. Maybe he's just confused, eh? I publish evidence in my last two books that Mustafa Kemal Atatürk, first president of the Republic of Turkey, was a Sabbatian-Frankist fake Muslim interloper.

None of this is a condemnation of migrants who are looking for a better life. It is simply laying out what the plan is. I have been warning about this agenda for many years since mass migration began and it went mainstream in 2020 when Hungarian foreign minister Péter Szijjártó warned that the (Cult-created-and-controlled) United Nations is funding a program of mass migration that threatens 'the whole of humanity'. He told a United Nations conference in Vienna that the UN is funding agencies encouraging people to leave their homelands and head to western countries. Szijjártó was talking about the UN Compact on Migration passed in 2018 to press Western governments to assimilate ever more migrants from other cultures which then British MEP Janice Atkinson said could lead to Europe being faced with 59 million new migrants within a few years. Watch for criticism of mass migration and its consequences being criminalised as 'hate speech' to protect the cultural elimination policy from exposure. We are close already. The long-planned theme is confirmed by the UN document in 2001 called 'Replacement Migration: Is It a Solution to Declining and Ageing Populations?'. This said that dealing with a declining population would mean potentially hundreds of millions of migrants heading for Europe. It estimated that Europe would need at least 159 million migrant workers to arrive by 2025 'to maintain the current balance of 4 to 5 workers for a pensioner' with perhaps at the most extreme 1.4 billion migrants required by 2050 at an average of 25.2 million a year. At that time 1.7 billion migrants, or their descendants, would make up nearly three quarters of the total population of 2.3 billion. The document said that in the United States 'it would be necessary to have 593 million migrants from 1995 to 2050, an average of 10.8 million per year' and 'by 2050, out of a United States total population of 1.1 billion, 775 million, or 73 per cent, would be post 1995 immigrants or their descendants.' It is chilling in the light of this to watch Internet videos by ultra-Zionist and Sabbatian-Frankist extremists and 'rabbis'

saying openly that they are using Islam to transform European society and destroy ‘Edom’ – Rome and Christianity. David Touitou, a ‘Rav’ or Hebrew ‘teacher/spiritual guide’, said: ‘You will have no place to run. Islam is the broom of Israel.’ These crazies say that the Jewish Messiah will only return when Europe and Christianity are ‘totally destroyed’ (see also the United States). Touitou, who is far, far from alone in his shocking extremism, said:

So I ask you. Is it good news that Islam invades Europe? It is excellent news! It means the coming of the Messiah [who will rule the whole world from Israel] ... You will pay dearly for it Europeans. To such an extent you have no idea ... You will have no place to run to. Because of all the evil you have done to Israel you will pay for it a hundredfold.

When Italy will be gone ... when Edom (Rome) ... when that place is gone, and that’s what Islam is going to go. Islam is the broom of Israel and you have to know it.



Figure 254: Mass migration of people and cultures into Europe and the United States is being driven by the Cult and its One-percent cheered on by the ‘Woke’ that claim to oppose the One-percent. Babes in bloody arms.

Once ‘Edom’ was gone the same insanity will turn its attention to destroying Islam and so on. See *The Trigger* for the detailed background to what is being orchestrated out of Israel by the Sabbatian-Frankist Satanists and you will see why the definition of ‘anti-Semitism’ is constantly being expanded and enforced by censorship through the Sabbatian-Frankist ‘Anti-Semitism’ Protection Racket to stop any of this being exposed and debated. The New Woke mentality funded by billionaires like ultra-Zionist frontman George Soros is keen for open borders while considering none of the consequences (which the Cult wants) for countries and their current populations including former migrants. They certainly don’t realise – except the inner core – that they are promoting a population transformation agenda directed by the One-percent. There is no rational contemplation of what must surely follow when all that matters to New Wokers is posturing their self-purity in a constant exercise of round-the-clock virtue-signalling. This New Woke mindset – or emotionset – is a perception-virus that first infested political parties supposedly of the ‘Left’ and then expanded into centre and even ‘conservative’ parties having long infected almost the entirety of the self-obsessed celebrity ‘Luvvies’ who fly first class or in private jets to and from their walled mansions to lecture the great unwashed on the urgency to save the planet from climate change, help the poor and needy, and oppose border walls like the ones they have around their own properties. Unchecked migration is a disaster more than anything – as usual – for the poor and unemployed and yet wonderful for the rich. Wages at the lowest end are driven down by competition from people amid a labour surplus willing to work for less and job opportunities are reduced. The rich meanwhile see their wage-bill fall and enjoy a limitless supply of servants and cleaners at very reasonable rates in their big houses ([Fig 254](#)). Black communities in America have been particularly hit by this predictable sequence and it’s happening in all countries with mass immigration. Billionaires benefit and the poor lose out thanks to an outrageous and transparent deception incessantly promoted by New Wokers who call themselves ‘social justice warriors’. If it wasn’t so tragic for those who take the consequences this claim would be comedy club territory.

Tiptoe-by-Tiptoe

The long-planned outcome is being brought about by a series of interconnected steps that generate a domino effect to impose the Cult's transformation of Western society:

- 1) Manipulate wars in the Middle and Near East and support drug gangs and crime cartels to terrorise communities in Central and South America while financially trashing those societies to create a combination of extreme danger and deprivation.
- 2) You know that great numbers will seek to flee and with both the Middle and Near East and Central and South America you know they will head north into Europe and the United States.
- 3) Fund groups that will aid their passage and encourage far bigger numbers to join them in a piggy-back operation in which you assure them they will reach their 'promised land'. George Soros networks have been centrally involved in this.
- 4) You instigate such a mass movement of people that your target countries are overwhelmed with the support of the Cult-created European Union and leaders like Cult asset Chancellor Merkel in Germany who opened her borders and said 'let them all in'. The same happened in Sweden and the full force of New Woke Democrats in America cry 'open the borders to everyone'. The Swedish Employment Service revealed that just 6.1 per cent of new arrival migrants were able to find full-time work not subsidised by the government in 2019. Migrants are only a means to an end.
- 5) Democrat-controlled New Woke city and state governments introduce 'sanctuary cities' to protect those who have crossed the border illegally from US Immigration and Customs Enforcement, or 'ICE', which you demonise and demand be disbanded.
- 6) Calls to build a wall or fence to secure borders are condemned as racist bigotry and Nazi ideology in a black and white fantasy that says all migrants are good and anyone questioning the numbers and their effect is automatically evil and must be silenced. Censorship is then provided by billionaire heads of Silicon Valley giants who promote their New Woke credentials from their corporate headquarters and walled mansions – 'Make some tea, Sergio, and there's still dirt on that floor'.
- 7) The often catastrophic consequences of these events for jobs, crime, and economics in countries such as Sweden and Germany are suppressed through a compliant gutless media and by attacking anyone speaking the truth as a bigot, racist and Nazi leading to vilification and lost employment. Observers with the same concerns stay quiet in fear of similar repercussions. In this way you silence dissent and give yourself free-rein to expand the influx and increase the consequences.
- 8) The point is reached – as now in Sweden – where the truth can no longer be hidden amid bombings, arson, murder and rape. Swedish Moderate Party leader Ulf Kristersson cited figures from the Crime Prevention Council about 230 bombings in 2019 alone as proof that the government had lost control of the country. By now it doesn't matter with the job done and irreversible.
- 9) Even more extreme New Woke governments are elected, the floodgates open, the target society is transformed, and the Hunger Games structure installed.

Group protection



Figure 255: If you want the truth about the 'Woke' tyranny invert everything they say and claim to stand for.

What I am saying here is not a condemnation or mass-labelling of migrants. I want instead to expose the cold and calculated exploitation of often tragic people for political ends and the insanity of judging migrants and minorities *en masse* as groups and not through individual behaviour. Show me any racial, cultural, sexual or religious group and I will show you nice people, okay people and psychopaths – *every time*. Cult-programmed New Wokeness cannot process, or cope with, such basic subtlety. It sees only black and white racially and literally and inclusivity becomes exclusivity in that white is bad in totality and other shades are all victims of the bad white people. White supremacy and privilege extends to white homeless living amid the shit in San Francisco. My goodness, the billionaires behind New Wokeness know how to manipulate a mind. New Woke is another term for inversion – everything is inverted ([Fig 255](#)). The Cult New Woke agenda for the end of America in any form even close to what we have known is laid out in the Democrat-sponsored New Way Forward Act proposed by Mexican-born socialist Jesús García, a member for Illinois in the US House of Representatives. The bill would decriminalise illegal immigration and remove any disincentive for untold numbers to walk across the often weakly-defended border. Once in the US the bill would make it very difficult for illegal migrants to be deported and that goes even for violent criminals. The bill would open the way for those who have committed serious crimes in other countries to be allowed to settle in America. Immigration law and enforcement would basically disappear. What would be the point of border patrols when it's not illegal to cross and those who do can't be detained? Cable news host Tucker Carlson, who alerted the public to the context of the bill that was being virtually ignored by the New Woke media, said:

Under current US law, legal US immigrants can be deported if they commit an 'aggravated felony' or a 'crime of moral turpitude' – that is, a vile, depraved act, like molesting a child. Under the New Way Forward Act, 'crimes of moral turpitude' are eliminated entirely as a justification for deportation. And the category of 'aggravated felony' gets circumscribed too. What does that mean?

Consider this: Under current law, immigrants who commit serious crimes – such as robbery, fraud, or child sexual abuse – must be deported, regardless of the sentence they receive. Other crimes – less severe ones like racketeering – require deportation as long as the perpetrator receives at least a one-year sentence. But if this bill passes the House and Senate and is signed into law by the president, there will no longer be any crimes that automatically require deportation. None.

The minimum prison sentence under the bill for crimes that still require deportation would rise from one year to five and even then judges would be given the discretion not to deport. Immigration and Customs Enforcement (ICE) would have to convince a court that an illegal migrant was dangerous or a flight risk, but officers would be banned from quoting prior criminal behavior to prove this – including rape, child molestation and drug trafficking. Even more insane is the provision compelling the government to create a 'pathway for those previously deported to apply to return to their homes and families in the United States' if they would not have been deported under the new rules. It is a retrospective open border. Taxpayers would have to pay for the previously deported to be located and

brought ‘back home’ from where they had been removed for criminality. To put this in perspective 480,000 were deported for illegal entry or re-entry into America between 2002 and 2018 and they would be eligible to ‘come home’. The bill has next to no chance of being successful before the scheduled 2020 election when it would have to be signed by Donald Trump and to do so would be electoral suicide. The bill does indicate, however, what would happen once New Woke came to power and confirms the Cult agenda to destroy America by setting criminals free to create mayhem and the domination of the strongest. For this open border plan with Mexico to be proposed by a Mexican-born US politician, Jesús García, shows that they don’t care if you see they have no integrity or have any wish to hide their intent. They are now quite happy to put that on public display. There is a chasm of difference between migrants seeking a better life for themselves and their family or fleeing from war and the psychopaths of America’s MS-13 and violent gangs in Sweden, Germany and France which terrorise once-peaceful communities. There is a gathering list of no-go areas in Sweden where police won’t go except in numbers and ambulance crews won’t go after migrant attacks. The response was to launch an initiative to recruit a ‘more diverse’ police force with ‘language and cultural competence’. This was soon in trouble when half the applicants failed the admission tests. Never mind – watch the admission criteria be reduced. Sweden’s top migration official Mikael Ribbenvik, head of the Swedish Migration Agency, went public to warn Swedes that their country was becoming a ‘safe haven for war criminals and potential terrorists’ with the government giving passports and benefits to suspected dangerous criminals that were protected by law from deportation (see the common theme). Ribbenvik said that other countries ‘have a hard time understanding how we consider people dangerous but still continue to give them passports and residence permits’. Once you realise that the idea is to destroy white Swedish culture and turn its society into an arena of fear and might-is-right there is no longer any ‘hard time’ in understanding why such things are happening. Political correctness and ‘hate speech’ are smokescreens to stop this being openly discussed and exposed.



Figure 256: MS-13 are only ‘fleeing tyranny’ to impose a new one in the United States. What’s wrong with that you rascist?

Pakistani and Asian gangs raping and trafficking underage and teenage white girls in British cities were ignored by police and politicians who knew what was going on for years before officially coming to light and it’s still happening on an industrial scale. One girl was forced to have sex with 300 ‘men’ by the age of 15 in the northern town of Huddersfield. They are called ‘grooming’ gangs when rapists, psychopaths and child traffickers is what they are. They are brutal, sexist, racist, and everything and more that New Woke rails against – if you’re white. New Woke silence is deafening otherwise. Exposing these psychopaths challenges the mass immigration narrative and that is far more important to The System than shockingly abused young girls. Had they been white gangs and Pakistani girls the police would have been on them in an instant and quite right, but you see the systematic bias based on race which, of course, is blatant racism. ‘Grooming’ (rape) gangs are clearly still operating across the UK with new cases now regularly coming to light and how many more – far more – are not being caught? A leaked document from the French internal security service, the General Directorate for Internal Security, said that up to 150 communities in France are controlled, or ‘held’, by Islamist radicals. The document was classified to stop the information being known by the public and to protect the agenda. This is not

how all migrants behave, the great majority do not. The fact is, however, that some *do* and political correctness is silencing their exposure and the scale of the problem. The El Salvadorian migrant gangs of MS-13 are terrifying communities in US cities with their signature savagery of dismembering people with machetes and their prime target is other migrants from El Salvador (one in three El Salvadorians now live in America). Donald Trump was furiously attacked by New Woke Democrats and media when he described MS-13 as ‘animals’. Chopping people up with machetes? *Bless ‘em* ([Fig 256](#)).

The more the merrier

There is clearly a policy of encouraging more migrants to cross the border illegally with moves to give them driving licences, the right to vote and free health care. At least tens of thousands, some claim far more, enter the United States on a visa and never leave. These policies are protected from scrutiny by making criticism of them increasingly illegal or a reason for censorship. There is a fundamental difference between those willing to respect the culture and traditions of countries they enter and cultural supremacists and bigots who seek to impose their society and prejudices on everyone else including migrant sharia police telling Swedish girls what they can wear. Those that have allowed this human disaster to happen in Sweden, Germany and elsewhere should be in a prison cell for crimes *against* The People and *for* The Cult. What does all this do collectively? It creates the very daily fear and anxiety that the Cult wants to impose everywhere. The House wins yet again. I have charted the mass migration agenda in other books back to at least the 1920s and those connected to the Habsburg and ultra-Zionist banking families behind the creation of the EU. I have quoted the extraordinarily accurate predictions of ultra-Zionist doctor and Rockefeller family insider Richard Day who told a meeting of paediatricians in Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania, in 1969 how the world was going to change across a wide range of subjects and all of which have happened or are happening (you’ll find a summary in [Appendix 1](#)). Day knew for the same reason that George Orwell knew 20 years earlier in his *Nineteen Eighty-Four* and Aldous Huxley knew in 1932 in *Brave New World*. If you are either part of the agenda (as with Day) or have access to the plan through research or contacts you can comfortably predict the ‘future’ because unless something intervenes to stop the plan it will play out. See my book *Phantom Self* for the detail of what Day said in 1969 which will take you aback in the light of what has happened since. He predicted among so much more the emergence of the Internet, the surveillance state, smart televisions, the plan to ‘make boys and girls the same’, clearing rural areas and forcing everyone into cities, and calculated mass migration to transform Western society. Lawrence Dunegan, one of the paediatricians present, took notes and in 2004 he recounted in audio interviews with an alternative website what Day said that night. Dunegan was prompted to do so when he saw the predictions were happening. He quotes Day as saying this in 1969 about the plan for mass migration:

There [will] be mass movements and migrations of people without roots in their new locations because traditions are easier to change in a place where there are a lot of transplanted people, as compared to trying to change traditions in a place where people grew up and had an extended family, where they had roots.

This is the real reason for mass immigration – to manipulate an infusion of people from other cultures that have no connection to the history and traditions on which target societies are founded. Those with a sense of nationhood will resist the deletion of nations and countries under a world government dictatorship and the more you dilute that sense of nation and culture the more you dilute that resistance. As older people die out and the young take over who know nothing except the current society the historical and cultural foundations fall and disappear. The manipulation and dilution of the indigenous sense of nationhood is further systematically undermined by denigration of the culture as we have seen so clearly in Sweden. This has included an advertisement by SAS, the biggest airline in Sweden, Denmark and Norway, promoting the belief that there is no Swedish culture and nothing ‘truly Scandinavian’.

Swedish politicians supporting mass immigration and TV documentaries by the state broadcaster have said the same. SAS featured a black guy saying 'We are no better than our Viking ancestors' and the advertisement (propaganda) said everything considered 'Swedish' was a copied culture which came from foreign lands. Swathes of the public were outraged, but the theme will continue because it's the Cult agenda. Something similar is emerging in America with Democrat politicians saying that migrants are 'more American' than Americans. The absorption of national sovereignty into superstates like the European Union is part of the same plan and explains why the same people who plotted in the 1920s to introduce the EU also plotted even then the mass movement of people that we have today (see *Everything You Need To Know*).

The takeover sequence

There is another sequence that follows in the overthrow of the indigenous culture in any country in the face of mass immigration. Not immigration at all – *mass*, basically open-border, immigration. First you have an influx from another culture that tends to gather in certain areas and transform their cultural nature. Members of the indigenous population move out into familiar surroundings. This has happened in the extreme in the East End of London where its cultural status has been utterly transformed in little more than a generation. I have seen this referred to as people losing their 'cultural security' in the face of the incoming culture or cultures. Next the numbers reach levels where how new culture communities vote decides who is elected to local councils and as Members of Parliament. At this point parties of Left, Right and Centre begin to pander to the new cultures with their election-deciding potential. At the same time they ignore and take for granted those parts of the wider community who would normally vote for them. I call this the 'gimme vote' and gimme voters get nothing from political parties – 'they'll always vote for us anyway'. The British New Woke pro-mass immigration Labour Party found in the 2019 national election that those days are now over as the kick-back after decades of 'gimme' exploitation of the white urban class demolished their support. New cultures become the focus as their numbers continue to rise. Politicians from incoming cultures start to be elected and eventually they become leaders with an ever-increasing body of support with new culture birth-rates far exceeding those of the indigenous culture. This is happening as Western women have children later or not at all in the ridiculous and encouraged assumption that this will save the world from 'climate change'. Fertility rates for white women were down in every US state in 2017 according to the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) and the same is happening in countries like Germany. They have fallen below the rate needed for the population to replace itself. Pointing out these facts is not racism. It is to expose the agenda behind it and that affects us all no matter what your racial background and skin colour. London now has a white minority population as does my birth city, Leicester, with Birmingham, Britain's second biggest city, going the same way. The transformation has happened in 50 years with the speed increasing. The BBC reported in 2018 on a study projecting university places which predicted that three in four London students will be from ethnic minorities by 2030. A British 'journalist' and self-proclaimed communist activist called Ash Sarkar, British-born of Bengali descent, pointed out in a 2016 video that the white population of London had fallen by 600,000 while non-whites had increased by 1.2 million. Her response to this was: 'So yes, lads, we're winning.' She claimed she was joking (I don't think so) when people were appalled by the remark, but it showed once again how we live in a two-tier system of political correctness. Had a white person said the same if the figures were reversed they would be condemned and banned in a fury of 'racist, bigot, Nazi' and Ash Sarkar with breathtaking hypocrisy would be leading the charge. To Sarkar white Britain is a racist society and in line with true New Woke orthodoxy only white people can be racist and not those of Bengali descent who describe the white population of London falling and the non-white increasing as 'we are winning'. The bias and unfairness is transparent and systematic. Census projections in the United States predict that whites will be a minority by 2045 with Hispanics the next biggest group. If the One-percent-controlled New Woke mentality gets political power

it will be much sooner. We should not forget that white people occupied the land that was once the domain of Native Americans and it is not the demographic change by itself that is the point here. It is why it is being systematically manipulated by the Cult and to what end and why white people are being so targeted.



Figure 257: Don't reveal what he's actually doing or you are an 'anti-Semitic'.

While this sequence of societal change unfolds any criticism or exposure of what is happening, any complaints from the indigenous population about their home areas being transformed into what is to them a foreign land, are dismissed and silenced by political correctness. New Woke thought police brand every dissenting voice as racist. They demand that people must be 'non-judgemental' (while themselves being constantly so) when in fact 'non-judgemental' is Orwellian code for having 'no opinion' outside the New Woke perceptual prison camp. The sub-text here is that if people are not allowed to criticise what people and the Cult are doing this automatically blocks all exposure of what is happening to enslave and manipulate the population. New Wokeness pervades the Cult-owned media to ensure PC reporting of events and government agencies are infused with Wokeness including the police as laws are introduced to make illegal any criticism of the impact of incoming cultures on the indigenous culture. Legitimate criticism is labelled 'hate speech'. The cumulative effect eventually is that incoming cultures override and replace the original culture and legislation is passed to change the cultural basis on which the country is governed. It's no good New Wokers shouting bigot at me for pointing this out which is ridiculous given my view of reality and the Oneness of everything. The sequence I have described is factually how it works and this has been *made* to happen by the Cult and its agents like war criminal British Prime Minister Tony Blair to serve its agenda for the cultural and racial transformation of Western Society. If people don't like me speaking the obvious truth I have a finger that I will gladly put on public display.

Soros money



Figure 258: Have you thought this through, people? Have you thought at all? It seems not.

I have exposed billionaire manipulator George Soros in great detail in many other books including *The Trigger* and *Everything You Need To Know* ([Fig 257](#)). His global vehicle operating in 100 countries is the Open Society Foundations (OSF) to which he has given at the time of writing some \$32 billion. OSF is dubbed an NGO, or non-governmental organisation, and these along with 'think tanks' are a major source of Cult manipulation and government policy. Note the giveaway name – Open Society. This is code for open borders and the end of countries and nations which just happens to be the goal of the Cult as I have been highlighting for 30 years. The Cult's planned global structure requires an end to countries

to make way for a world government overseeing superstates like the EU with regional entities replacing nations and countries. Maps of a regionalised Europe have come to light through the EU. People would be designated 'global citizens' and be subject to the impositions of an unelected global government run by 'experts' and technocrats directing the 'Smart' technological control grid. Making countries disappear means borders must disappear and this is the whole idea of what is happening. Without borders there can be no countries, individual value systems, or safety nets for the poor, disabled, sick and destitute – you know, all those things the New Woke social justice warriors claim to care about ([Fig 258](#)). Anyone just walks in to the land of a former country no matter what their background and attitudes and demands they are looked after; but by whom and with what? Very soon after open borders the game would be up. There would not be the money, jobs, housing, healthcare, 'education' for all those who would want them as hordes of people move in. I shake my head when I hear New Wokers demanding open borders *and* more spending on healthcare, housing, unemployment and schools. They have no self-awareness to see the obvious contradictions. New Woke is purely about virtue-signalling and not rational thought. Ask them if they could stop a jug running over while the tap was still on and they might say 'of course, not'. Then they would call for open borders *and* more spending on healthcare, housing, unemployment and schools while believing that at some point there would be enough for everyone. No such point could ever be reached. The more you spend on healthcare, housing, unemployment and schools the *even more* would be needed to meet ever-increasing demand through ever-increasing numbers. Cabal asset Soros directs his tens of billions at all the facets of the agenda and funds Open Society operations to overthrow governments, control politicians and parties, impose the New Woke agenda, and encourage mass migration into Europe and the United States. He also bankrolled organisations in an effort to stop the UK leaving the European Union or at least in a way that could genuinely be called 'Brexit'. Soros money from someone who lives in the United States and is not British was directed against Brexit. The sheer arrogance of it is mind-numbing. The Strategic Culture Foundation website detailed in a 2017 article the control that Soros has over the European Union:

It's an open secret that the 'Soros network' has an extensive sphere of influence in the European Parliament and in other European Union institutions. The list of Soros ['reliable allies'] has been made public recently. The document lists 226 MEPs from all sides of the political spectrum, including former President of the European Parliament Martin Schulz, former Belgian PM Guy Verhofstadt [a major opponent of Brexit], seven vice-presidents, and a number of committee heads, coordinators, and quaestors. These people promote the ideas of Soros, such as bringing in more migrants, same-sex marriages, integration of Ukraine into the EU, and countering Russia. There are 751 members of the European Parliament. It means that the Soros friends have more than one third of seats.

George Soros, a Hungarian-American investor and the founder and owner of Open Society Foundations NGO, was able to meet with President of the European Commission Jean-Claude Juncker with 'no transparent agenda for their closed-door meeting', and [it was] pointed out how EU proposals to redistribute quotas of migrants across the EU are eerily familiar to Soros's own self-published plan for dealing with the crisis.

The report is talking about ways to respond to the very migration 'crisis' *created* by Soros, his masters and his Open Society Foundations – Problem-Reaction-Solution. The European Center for Law and Justice revealed in 2020 that in the period 2009-2019 nearly a *quarter* of the judges on the bench of European Court of Human Rights have had strong links to the Soros Open Society Foundations or to organisations that he funds including Amnesty International which has received \$100 million since 2010. The study found that some NGOs are so funded by the Soros networks that they are effectively wholly-owned subsidiaries. But there's no conspiracy, George Soros is a shining light of unimpeachable virtue, and it is 'anti-Semitic' to say otherwise.

'Soros Spring' technique

Soros-funded groups have a particular role in manipulating protests against target governments to give the illusion of spontaneous 'people's revolutions'. If the Cult continually invades countries with military force the pattern will be clear and opposition will gather with each one. Instead the ideal is to manipulate the population in the country to overthrow the government as you hide in the shadows saying 'Who, me?' Open Society place-people and agent provocateurs instigate the unrest and this is followed by thousands from the population who have no idea that it's all a scam. Cult-controlled American and European governments then give public support to the protestors and demonise the country's leader. This is often quite straightforward with so many psychopaths of all kinds that kill, terrorise and otherwise manipulate themselves to power in country after country. The Open Society Foundations of Soros were frontline players in the so-called 'Arab Spring' when protests across the Arab world removed governments and replaced them with military dictatorships as in Egypt and warring warlords trafficking children in open slave markets as in Libya. If the Soros network can't overthrow a regime by protest alone American and European governments send in the bombers to finish them off under the PR cover of 'saving the people from violence' – by bombing them from the sky. Precisely this happened in Libya when the country with the highest per-capita income in Africa was bombed into the Stone Age by Cult-created-and-owned NATO. Countries targeted by Soros and US/NATO psychopaths happened to be the same ones demanded for regime-change by the Cult's Project for the New American Century organisation founded in the United States by Sabbatian-Frankist ultra-Zionists that included the major players in the White House and Pentagon in 2001 when the Cult-orchestrated 9/11 gave them the excuse to start picking off the list. Another Open Society-manipulated overthrow was that of President Viktor Yanukovych in Ukraine in 2014 and was overseen by ultra-Zionist Victoria Nuland, Assistant Secretary of State for European and Eurasian Affairs at the US State Department, and the wife of ultra-Zionist Robert Kagan, co-founder of ... the Project for the New American Century. More than 2,200 Open Society Foundation documents secured by the group DC Leaks reveal the manipulation of Soros and his lackeys including US policy toward Ukraine after the 2014 coup during the fake-liberal Obama administration. One document described the 'New Ukraine' as a key that 'reshapes the European map by offering the opportunity to go back to the original essence of European integration' (the plan for the tyrannical centralisation of power over the whole of Europe by Cult-controlled bureaucrats which explains why Soros sought to thwart Brexit). British academic Frank Furedi has personal experience of the arrogance, reach and agenda of the Soros network and exposed what he saw in a British national newspaper. He said he was a guest speaker at an event funded by a Soros foundation in Budapest, Hungary, where Soros was born. Furedi recalled:

It was later during lunch at a plush Budapest hotel that I encountered the full force of the arrogant ethos promoted by the Soros network of organisations. At my table I listened to Dutch, American, British, Ukrainian and Hungarian representatives of Soros NGOs boast about their achievements. Some claimed that they played a major role in the Arab Spring in Egypt. Others voiced their pride in their contribution to the democratisation of the Ukraine. Some bragged about their influence in preparing the ground for the overthrow of the Gadhafi regime in Libya. I sat quietly and felt uncomfortable with a group of people who so casually assumed that they had the right to play God throughout the world.

At one point, the head of the table – a Hungarian leader of a Soros NGO – asked me what I thought about their work. Not wishing to offend, I quietly remarked that I wasn't sure whether the external imposition of their idea of democracy on the people of Libya was legitimate nor that it would work. Without a second's hesitation, my interlocutor rounded me with the response: 'I don't think that we have the luxury of waiting until the Libyan people come with their own Jefferson.'

The overthrow of Colonel Gadhafi in the Soros foundation 'people's revolution', and manipulation in

other countries including Syria, led to the start of the mass movement of people out of the Middle and Near East and Africa into Europe aided by the same Open Society Foundations as you can read in detail in *Everything You Need To Know* where you will also see how Soros-funded groups are behind the attempts to relocate masses of people from Central and South America into the United States. Yet another Cult think tank was launched in 2018 called the New Center that campaigns for an amnesty for all 'illegal aliens' in the United States to allow them to stay permanently. The New Center is headed by William Galston of the Brookings Institute and ... ultra-Zionist *William Kristol, co-founder of the Project for the New American Century*. The demands of the 'New Center' are supported to their DNA by the New Woke mentality funded to a pivotal extent by ... *George Soros*. The Soros Open Society network officially left Hungary, the country of his birth, in 2018 after Prime Minister Viktor Orban's government passed the 'Stop Soros' law to criminalise the organisation's manipulation of the country ([Fig 259](#)). Others have seen through the Soros game with Russia banning Open Society activities as representing 'a threat to the foundations of the constitutional system of the Russian Federation and the security of the state'.



Figure 259: The Hungarian government knows what the Soros game is and displayed these posters exposing his activities.

The defence-mechanism to stop exposure of Soros is that he is Jewish and any criticism of him must be 'anti-Semitic'. This is the Anti-Semitism Industry and Protection Racket at work blocking legitimate investigation into anyone who is Jewish or Zionist purely *because* they are Jewish and Zionist. Is that supremacist or what? A whole new definition of 'anti-Semitism' is being introduced by governments and institutions around the world that includes criticism of Israel for the specific reason of expanding the definition to dub ever more information and opinion as 'anti-Semitic' to protect the Cult and its operatives from exposure. Is it really discriminatory to ask why 0.2 percent of the world population and two percent of the American population have so much power over politics, finance and censorship by the mainstream media and Silicon Valley? It is a very legitimate question in a society that values its freedom.

The Cult doesn't want these questions asked because its Sabbatian-Frankist wing, which hates Jews, would soon be secret no more – not least to Jews. This would be a mortal blow when hiding behind and within the Jewish community is their essential cover. Few make these points or ask these questions for fear of being condemned as 'anti-Semitic'. I don't give a shit. I want the truth and if that means taking an onslaught of misrepresentation and abuse then so be it. For now the incessant intimidation of the non-New Woke population means that what the Cult wants the Cult gets and it will go on doing so until humanity stiffens its backbone and summons some self-respect.

We'd better do that fast – like now – before the chance is gone.

CHAPTER EIGHT

Why demonise the gas of life?

Belief can be manipulated. Only knowledge is dangerous – Frank Herbert

New Wokeness is a cult religion in every sense and its sub-section known as ‘human-caused climate change’ is most certainly so. Climate orthodoxy is a theology, a term which derives from two Greek words together meaning ‘the study of God’. In this case the ‘God’ is the Virtuous Self and the Devil is carbon dioxide ([Fig 260](#)).



Figure 260: The Climate Cult and its constituent parts like Extinction Rebellion are just another religion and tick every box. ‘Rebel for life’ means rebel for the One-percent. Like all religions the Climate Cult is a perception program to ensnare its followers. (Image Gareth Icke.)

Religions have an orthodoxy founded on unsupportable beliefs that include walking on water and virgin births and so does the Climate Cult. Religions label non-believers of these unsupportable beliefs as heretics and blasphemers and so does the Climate Cult. Religions have had inquisitions to demonise and silence such heretics and blasphemers and so does the Climate Cult. Religions dictate a narrative and tell followers to unquestioningly believe whatever it claims and so does the Climate Cult. Religions say that belief in the orthodoxy must be founded on faith and not facts and so does the Climate Cult. You must believe the crap spewed out by faith-based religions like Extinction Rebellion and the Climate Cult priesthood in the form of people like New York New Woke congresswoman Alexandria Ocasio Cortez or you are a ‘climate change denier’ (see heretics and blasphemers). Don’t question – *believe*. These methods are straight from the Cult manual for its ‘astroturf’ fake protest groups described by former *CBS News* investigative reporter Sharyl Attkisson:

Hallmarks of astroturf include use of inflammatory language such as ‘crank’, ‘quack’, ‘nutty’, ‘lies’, ‘paranoid’, ‘pseudo’, and ‘conspiracy’. Astroturfers often claim to debunk myths that aren’t myths at all. Use of the charged language test well. People hear something’s a myth, maybe they find it on Snopes, and they instantly declare themselves too smart to fall for it. But what if the whole notion of the myth is itself a myth, and you and Snopes fell for that? Beware when interests attack an issue by controversialising or attacking the people, personalities, and organisations surrounding it rather than addressing the facts. That could be astroturf.

And most of all astroturfers tend to reserve all of their public scepticism for those exposing wrongdoing rather than the wrongdoers. In other words, instead of questioning authority, they question those who question authority. You might start to see things a little more clearly. It's like taking off your glasses, wiping them, and putting them back on, realising, for the first time, how foggy they'd been all along. I can't resolve these issues, but I hope that I've given you some information that will at least motivate you to take off your glasses and wipe them, and become a wiser consumer of information in an increasingly artificial, paid-for reality.

Questioning those who question authority is at the very core of Climate Cult and New Woke propaganda in general and both are drowning in astroturf fronts because they are a means through which human society is being transformed into a global dictatorship by the Cult as we'll see in following chapters. In this chapter I want to first unpick the truly mendacious climate change narrative.

Cult doctrine and its many faces

Here are some archetypal traits of a cult: Unquestioning submission to leaders of the cult and what they insist you believe; those beliefs are the only truth; control cult members through the constant repetition and indoctrination of this orthodoxy; invoke an 'us' against 'them' mentality and claim that any outside challenge is 'persecution'; salvation through association with the cult – only we can save the world by everyone doing what we demand; group think with pressure by the group to conform and target any individual with doubts; if doubters persist shun or expel them so they don't pollute the group-think with legitimate questions; avoid critical thinking and ignore blatant contradictions in the orthodoxy; often impose a cult form of clothing or uniform so a cult member can be recognised purely by what they wear or what they do with their hair. All of these traits can be observed with the Climate Cult which has been funded and manipulated into existence by billionaires like George Soros (again) and decades of climate change indoctrination in the schools and universities. This has led to great swathes of whole generations believing utter baloney because that's all they've heard. Climate Cult theology is founded on one of the most powerful forms of perception control – repetition of the orthodoxy at the exclusion of other views, opinions and information. Even Princeton professors who don't accept climate hoax theology after a lifetime of expertise in climate science and the effects of carbon dioxide have their YouTube videos tagged to a *Wikipedia* page promoting the official lies (which goes without saying when Wikipedia actually *exists* to promote official lies). I typed in key words for YouTube videos that questioned climate change doctrine and the Wikipedia page parroting that doctrine was at the top of even that list. What a con job by this Cult propaganda operation YouTube owned by Google.

The Climate Cult demands that people 'listen to the science' when the Cult is anti-science. It's not interested in allowing all scientific opinion and research to be heard in a spirit of openness and balanced understanding. The aim as with all New Woke agendas is to silence opposition and block open debate which they know they would lose. George Soros, a member of the United Nations High Level Advisory Group on Climate Change Financing, funds a list of organisations seeking to silence 'denial' of climate change orthodoxy. These include Avaaz ('Voice') which has been described as 'the globe's largest and most powerful online activist network'. It was established in 2007 by two other Soros-funded groups, Res Publica and [MoveOn.org](#). Avaaz claims to have 55 million members with campaign teams operating in 30 countries and presents itself as a global grassroots operation working in pursuit of 'people-powered politics'. It campaigns in 15 languages with a 'core team' on six continents and this Soros-funded group is leading a campaign to have Google-owned YouTube ban all information and opinions challenging the official propaganda about human-caused climate change. Avaaz ('Voice') doesn't want others to have one. We have also had a Soros-connected Democrat Congressional committee (New Woke political wing) demanding that Google-owned YouTube censor videos that contain 'climate misinformation' which means challenging the official narrative. Fascistic committee members wrote to Google CEO Sundar Pichai to urge that YouTube stop 'driving millions of viewers to climate misinformation videos every

single day'. The contempt for freedom is extraordinary, but it suits the Cult agenda perfectly. Avaaz claims that 'climate denial = death' which is only another way of saying that if you can't win a debate – ban it. 'Grassroots' Avaaz has a long record of campaigning for items on the Cult wish-list. It has helped Iranian protestors demanding the removal of the country's government that the Cult has long worked to remove; supported a no-fly zone for Libyan military aircraft which allowed America, Britain and NATO to bomb the country and its people shitless without challenge and delete Colonel Gadhafi; supported the US-instigated 'civil uprising' against Cult-target President Assad in Syria and this was reported to include training activists and delivering \$1.5 million of Internet communication technology to protesters. Avaaz claims to 'unite practical idealists' to make the world a better place when its support for Western (Cult) actions against Libya and Syria alone played a part in the human nightmare that followed in a frenzy of death and destruction of the innocent. All those countries were on the September, 2000, list of targets named by the ultra-Zionist Sabbatian-Frankist Project for the New American Century.

To those who trust Avaaz I would suggest a call to Naivety Anonymous. To those who trust George Soros I would say don't waste a call – even they can't help you. How could anyone if you believe that a man who has caused financial mayhem for whole populations by targeting their currencies for financial gain is funding 'progressive' 'people-power' groups from the kindness of his heart. The best of luck finding that, by the way. Soros has also funded groups behind the worldwide Friday school 'climate strikes' fronted by the Climate Cult's Greta Thunberg who has copyrighted the terms 'school strikes for climate' and 'Friday's for future'. America's Media Research Center, a non-profit conservative media watchdog, reported that at least 22 activist groups listed as partners in the Global Climate Strike received almost \$25 million from Soros through his Open Society network between 2000 and 2017. They included Fund for Global Human Rights, Global Greengrants Fund, 350.org, Amnesty International, Avaaz, Color of Change and People's Action. Has the penny dropped yet Green movement? Unfortunately probably not, but maybe it will when we get to *why* human-caused climate change is being hoaxed. A major funder of Extinction Rebellion is Sir Chris Hohn who heads one of the world's biggest hedge funds valued at multiple billions. The UK *Mail on Sunday* revealed the fund's investments in companies at the centre of environmental scandals. Everywhere the Climate Cult and New Woke have a remarkable ability to attract billionaire sponsorship and support. Amazon's mega-billionaire Jeff Bezos announced in early 2020 that he would spend \$10 billion on 'fighting climate change' by funding 'scientists, activists and non-governmental organisations (see Soros) through a new 'Bezos Earth Fund'. It was still more confirmation that human-caused climate change is a One-percent hoax. Bezos picked up the script and said the climate was changing faster than had been predicted. 'Those predictions were bad but what is actually happening is dire'. Bloody yawn. He said that Amazon was ordering 100,000 electric delivery vehicles from Michigan-based, Amazon-invested Rivian, which again is straight from the Cult agenda. To underscore the power of programming hundreds of Amazon workers, who face losing their jobs to 'climate-friendly' (it's not) AI, had protested that Bezos was not doing enough about climate change. Manipulate the serfs to demand that you do what you want to do anyway (it happens all the time). The Climate Cult works to silence the ever-growing list of scientists worldwide who can see that climate change orthodoxy is mendacious nonsense. They are demonised, targeted in the courts, denied access to the media, and their careers and income disappear. By contrast those self-proclaimed 'scientists' prepared to sing from the song-sheet (the ones Bezos will support) are constantly wheeled out by the Cult-owned media and can dip their snouts in an almost unlimited trough of protection money – money to protect the lies.

The cult (literally) of New Woke climate celebrity

Once belief in the orthodoxy is secured in the mainstream it becomes 'cool' to support that orthodoxy. If you are a virtue-signalling celebrity it's a must to build your own image and support-base. New Woke is 'in' while not being New Woke can be the death knell for a career in the media, entertainment and comedy. It's the same technique that controls scientists. Say what we want and you get a stack of money

or tell your truth and we'll destroy you. Do you want lots of likes on Facebook or a Twitter storm? As a result we have a lengthening list of celebrity arselickers proclaiming Climate Cult orthodoxy of 'Thou Shalt not fly' while heading in private jets to climate conferences and protests. In the case of virtue-signal world champions like actor Leonardo DiCaprio this involves taking private jets to receive climate protection awards. Celebrities are used by the Cult for their public platform to spread the message while almost every one of them won't have a clue who is really pulling their strings and why. Britain's Prince Harry and his American wife Meghan Markle constantly virtue-signal their climate change New Wokeness while being driven in limousines to private jets and telling others to reduce their 'carbon footprint'. Isn't that hypocrisy? No, no – I said *you* must reduce your footprint, not *me*. Harry's contribution to saving the planet has been limited to the New Woke posturing of making a speech in bare feet. Put your shoes on, mate, or you'll hurt your feet on the tarmac when you leave. The couple announced in January, 2020, they were 'stepping down' as 'senior royals' and heading for Canada. Part of this will involve super-Woke Markle being able to publicly promote her virtue-signalling super-Wokeness (including climate change theology) while Harry follows behind doing what he's told and apologising for being a white male. New Wokers supported the move because the pair are New Woke while the now hijacked original Left would have been exposing their unearned privilege, opportunism and narcissism. Oh, how the Cult is going to exploit them both – and make them very rich – to promote the climate change and New Woke agenda. Their first big, *big* pay-day came with a 'speech' to the assembled mega-rich One-percent fake Woke at a JP Morgan Chase event in February, 2020, for which they were reported to be paid between \$750,000 and \$1 million. JP Morgan Chase is America's biggest bank and the world's sixth biggest with assets of \$2.6 trillion. Here we have fake Wokers selling their souls to speak for big bucks to other fake Wokers with limitless pockets whose investments have done so much to devastate the environment and create widespread inequality and injustice. The hypocrisy and lack of self-awareness of these royals-on-the-make is chilling.



Figure 261: Sad, real sad.

The 'royal' couple, said they were seeking to become 'financially independent' which means exploiting their royal connections and privilege to make lots of money and freeing Markle from her royal restrictions to stay out of party politics. Now she can campaign for the New Woke agenda including all the demands of the Climate Cult which she and her husband appear to ignore at every turn. Prince Harry was caught on tape by two Russian pranksters thinking he was talking to Greta Thunberg. The result was toe-curling and absolute confirmation that he just repeats the climate hoax script word-for-word without a thought of his own. How Woke and aware Markle really is can be gleaned by her closeness to the Clintons, particularly Hillary, one of the most corrupt partnerships on Planet Earth. We can expect the royal private jet passengers to be even more vocal now in support of the Climate Cult and every last facet of New Woke while living their own life in the 'privilege' that New Woke claims to despise. The System will give them every support. American TV host Tucker Carlson accurately described celebrity climate New Wokeness as 'the theology of the private jet class'. Meanwhile we are told that the rest of us will soon be flying in planes (as a stepping-stone to not flying at all) that fly together in V-shape formations

like migrating birds to save fuel and CO₂ emissions by reducing air resistance like racing cars that get close to the one in front. As someone who has experienced what happens to a plane when it gets too close to another and is twisted by the air turbulence I can't wait. Swedish Climate Cult goddess Greta Thunberg has been used to promote the Swedish term 'flygskam', or 'flight shame', to pressure people to stop flying (except the private jet class). The shame that Thunberg will feel when she realises the scale on which she has been manipulated does not bear thinking about ([Fig 261](#)). She and the Climate Cult have created a situation so crazy that the UK's University of Derby introduced 'climate anxiety classes' for staff and students worried about the planet and the eco-system. The university said the classes are aimed at dealing with feelings of anger, guilt and grief and combatting their 'sense of loss'. I mean – *pinch me*. One student said the 'climate emergency' made her feel she 'isn't going to have a future'. Oh, congratulations Greta and your handlers. Well done you. Dr Jamie Bird, university deputy head of health and social care research, said people suffer 'climate grief' when they see what they are losing. They are not losing *anything* except their bloody minds. Despite incessant public indoctrination great numbers of people can see through the garbage, but most are frightened to say so for fear of the backlash and consequences. Perhaps, however, we saw a turning point in 2019 when narcissistic, self-obsessed Extinction Rebellion protestors were pulled off the roofs of London Tube trains by commuters who just wanted to get home after a day's work. They'd had enough and rightly so. We've *all* had enough.

Monumental mendacity

A key component of mass indoctrination is the sheer scale of deceit which the Nazis described in terms of the bigger the lie the more will believe it. Lie a little bit and you may get caught out on the basis that people are open to smaller-scale lies. What most resist are the ginormous super-whoppers pedalled by the Cult. Okay, people say, they might lie here and there to support climate change orthodoxy, but they wouldn't lie about the whole *shebang* would they? Oh yes they would and they have and they are. They lie both about the individual components of the climate hoax *and* about the hoax in its entirety. I'll explain why shortly. In fact, the entirety of the hoax is the totality of the individual hoaxes. The Cult seeks to protect this fact from exposure by silencing and demonising dissenters to ensure only one version is ever heard by most people. The foundation of the hoax is the ever-repeated claim that 'the science is settled' when it is absolutely not and becomes less so by the day. Pedro Sanchez, acting prime minister of Spain, reached still new levels of ridiculous when he said: 'Only a handful of fanatics deny the evidence.' He's talking about an ever-increasing list of experts in their fields worldwide who are exposing climate change orthodoxy as the claptrap that it is. All Sanchez and almost every other politician will have heard is the official version ultimately emanating from the Cult through The Web and they repeat that orthodoxy as solid-gold unquestionable truth. This is what teachers and academics are doing with their daily indoctrination of the young to believe in climate change mendacity. You don't want to indoctrinate the kids? Then find another job and we'll replace you with someone who will. It's the programmed programming the next generation of programmed. Once the orthodoxy is established as accepted reality political leaders and parties compete with each other (with a few exceptions) over who will do the most to 'fight' a problem that doesn't exist. To question the climate change religion is political suicide especially on the New Woke 'Left' and those who have seen through the hoax zip their mouths as they seek election. The Cult knows that from the moment it secures official belief in the 'conventional wisdom' about any subject the dominoes will begin to fall right across society with all institutions making decisions and introducing laws on the basis of that flawed and manipulated 'wisdom'. The climate change hoax is such a wonderful example. The official narrative is taught in the schools and universities, promoted by the mainstream media and infused into the law of the land while dissenters are silenced, abused and demonised. No wonder that narrative has become accepted 'truth' among those who don't question. I am no supporter of Donald Trump for many reasons, but at least he has spoken out against climate orthodoxy while others cower or believe what they're told.

In support of ‘the science is settled’ baloney we have the associated lie about 97 percent of climate scientists believing that humans are the main cause of climate change (a climate that is *always* changing and has been since the Earth was formed). I saw Jonathan Bartley, co-leader of the Green Party for England and Wales, parroting this deceitful figure on a BBC programme while he berated the BBC for allowing ‘climate deniers’ to appear. I was a national spokesman for the UK Greens for a short time in the 1980s when it still campaigned for freedom of speech and wider environmental issues before it was completely hijacked by New Woke. Even the establishment *Wall Street Journal* has debunked the 97 percent claim. When you track back to where it came from, and on what basis, this figure being cited as fact by those who wish to sell the orthodoxy is ludicrous. Al Gore just pulled the figure out of nowhere and subsequently the most quoted source is John Cook, ‘Climate Communication Fellow’ for the Global Change Institute at the University of Queensland who is not a climate scientist. He just promotes the official story. I have read many articles explaining how Cook examined 11,944 papers by climate scientists and found that 97 percent agreed that humans were the main cause of ‘warming’. This is not the case at all. In his own words Cook writes that 32.6 percent endorsed human-caused warming (though very few as the main cause) while 0.7 percent rejected that and 0.3 percent were uncertain. Now here’s the most important figure … 66.4 percent *expressed no position*. I see it claimed again and again by the Climate Cult and the media that 97 percent of climate scientists say humans are the main cause of climate change when even by Cook’s flawed methodology the figure refers only to those who *expressed a view* and not the scientists in totality. One study of Cook’s figures found that only 64 of the 11,944 papers – (0.5 percent) – said humans are the main cause of global warming and nowhere was mentioned terms such as ‘crisis’ or ‘emergency’. Even if you apply this to the 3,974 papers that did express a view the figure of 64 pointing the finger at humans as the main culprit plays out as 1.6 percent. A later study of Cook’s source papers found that in fact only 41 of the 64 papers endorsed the view that humans are the main cause of warming. That’s 41 out of 11,944. Where does the 97 percent of climate scientists agree come from? They *made it up* like they have made up virtually everything else. Science is about evidence not a show of bloody hands from song-sheet scientists with their nose in the climate trough and nor is it about fiddling temperature figures to support your case because the actual temperatures don’t do that. This has been exposed over and over and if you are telling the truth you don’t need to manipulate the data. How many people know that US Senator Timothy Wirth admitted they even manipulated the temperature of the room when NASA scientist James Hansen really kicked off the global warming scare at a Senate hearing in 1988? Wirth said:

... We ... went in the night before and opened all the windows, I will admit, right? So that the air conditioning wasn’t working inside the room and so ... when the hearing occurred there was not only bliss, which is television cameras in double figures, but it was really hot ...

... So Hansen’s giving this testimony, you’ve got these television cameras back there heating up the room, and the air conditioning in the room didn’t appear to work. So it was sort of a perfect collection of events that happened that day, with the wonderful Jim Hansen, who was wiping his brow at the witness table and giving this remarkable testimony ...

Senator Wirth also said:

Believe it or not, we called the Weather Bureau and found out what historically was the hottest day of the summer. Well, it was June 6 or June 9 or whatever it was, so we scheduled the hearing that day, and bingo: It was the hottest day on record in Washington, or close to it. It was stiflingly hot that summer. [At] the same time you had this drought all across the country, so the linkage between the Hansen hearing and the drought became very intense.

You can see that from the start the climate change hoax was not about facts, but manipulating perception to believe a fantasy.

You were saying?



Figure 262: Al Gore, the One-percent gofer to sell the lie.

Hansen's dire claims that day more than 30 years ago have not happened and it's the same with long-time Cult asset Al Gore who became the global sales-pitcher for the Big Lie and has made a fortune from being so ([Fig 262](#)). Gore said in 2006: We have ten years to save the planet (big-time wrong); the Arctic will be ice-free by 2014 (big-time wrong); the Gulf Stream will slow down (it's been speeding up); polar bears are in danger of becoming extinct (big-time wrong); sea levels will rise by 20 feet in the near future (big-time wrong). Read some of my other books and you'll see the background to Gore who has a personal carbon footprint the size of Godzilla. He was a vice-president to Bill Clinton and you don't get that job if you have any inclination whatsoever to tell the truth. The Cult controls the Nobel Peace Prize, which is why so many Cult-asset war-mongers and mass killers have been recipients, and it also dictates Oscar winners whenever that would promote the agenda. Gore, you will not be shocked to know, was handed both awards for lying about climate change and frightening the life out of whole generations of children and the young. Prince Charles said in 2009 that we had twelve years to save the world from irretrievable climate and ecosystem collapse (big-time wrong) and with extraordinary idiocy he claimed that climate change was the 'root cause' of the Syrian conflict which was actually triggered by terrorists funded and armed by the United States and Gulf State allies like Saudi Arabia. Here are some other climate and environmental catastrophe warnings that turned out to be utter crap around the period that the annual Earth Day was established in 1970:

Harvard biologist George Wald:

'Civilization will end within 15 or 30 years unless immediate action is taken against problems facing mankind.'

American biologist Paul Ehrlich:

'The death rate will increase until at least 100-200 million people per year will be starving to death during the next ten years.'

Peter Gunter, a North Texas State University professor:

'Demographers agree almost unanimously [see 97 percent of climate scientists agree] on the following grim timetable: by 1975 widespread famines will begin in India; these will spread by 1990 to include all of India, Pakistan, China and the Near East, Africa. By the year 2000, or conceivably sooner, South and Central America will exist under famine conditions ... By the year 2000, thirty years from now, the entire world, with the exception of Western Europe, North America, and Australia, will be in famine.'

Then there was the climate temperature prediction in 1970 from ecologist Kenneth Watt:

'The world has been chilling sharply for about twenty years. If present trends continue, the world will be about four degrees colder for the global mean temperature in 1990, but eleven degrees colder in the year 2000. This is about twice what it would take to put us into an ice age.'

The threat to human existence went from an ice age to runaway super-heating in the blink of an eye. How could that happen? They just changed the propaganda. The lies are constant and apparently without end.

Make-it-up mythology

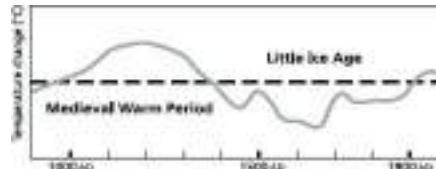


Figure 263: The Medieval Warm Period began around 1,000 years ago when temperatures were warmer than today without industrialisation. Then came the Little Ice Age when freezing temperatures were the winter norm which makes temperature comparisons between that period and now utterly irrelevant.



Figure 264: Depiction of the frozen-over River Thames during the Little Ice Age.

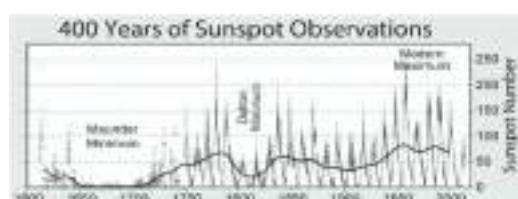


Figure 265: The correlation between solar activity measured by sunspots and Earth temperature. It is an obvious comparison and connection which the Climate Cult ignores because it destroys the narrative. The 'Maunder Minimum' corresponded with the coldest point of the Little Ice Age.

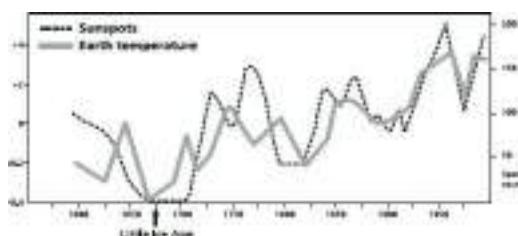


Figure 266: Another sunspot-Earth temperature chart.

We hear claims about the 'hottest day ever recorded' and even when you factor out manipulated data the key word is *recorded*. Many times this will be deleted in headlines to read 'hottest day ever'. Some background before I make my point. The planet has been hotter for much of its life than it is today and there was the Medieval Warm Period that began around 1,000 years ago which eclipsed current temperatures when there were no factories or 4 x 4s or indeed any carbon producing vehicles at all ([Fig 263](#)). The warm period was also a time of abundance compared with cold periods. Grapes were grown for wine in the far north of England and even Scotland. There was, in short, no climate catastrophe. Temperatures began to cool and previous abundance disappeared in what is called the Little Ice Age between the 16th and 19th centuries (some say it started earlier). It was so cold in this period they held ice fairs on the River Thames in London which froze over every year. Some Christmas cards still depict the scenes ([Fig 264](#)). It was highly significant that during the Little Ice Age fantastic explosions of energy on the Sun known as sunspots, which indicate solar activity, all but disappeared. This is known as the sunspot 'Maunder Minimum' after the man who conducted the research studies ([Fig 265](#)). You don't think there could be a connection between Sun activity and Earth temperature do you? There can't be, surely, or the Climate Cult would mention the Sun sometimes instead of being utterly obsessed with carbon dioxide. Maybe they think it's just a coincidence that when the Sun comes out it gets warmer; or perhaps they think that when solar energy projected at the Earth increases this couldn't possibly affect our temperature ([Fig 266](#)). They are experts after all. Scientists at CERN recorded an extremely close correlation between Earth temperature and the penetration of cosmic rays into our atmosphere. Records of 'the hottest day/year since records began' started mostly as we were still coming out of the Little Ice Age and of course temperatures are going to be warmer now. What use is a comparison between an extremely cold period and one after that period ended? It's a pointless comparison unless you are trying to mislead which they are. Why would the trough-snout scientists of the Climate Cult seek in leaked emails and documents to delete from the record the existence of the Medieval Warm Period and make it appear that today's temperatures are 'unprecedented' and caused by the industrial era? To mislead, of course, and people mislead to hide the fact that they're lying. Here are some other climate propaganda myths:

- **The migrant crisis is caused by climate change lowering crop yields that force people to relocate in search of food:** This has been alleged to explain why so many are heading out of Central America to the United States border and supports the Cult migration agenda which I have described. In fact, crop yields in Honduras, Costa Rica, Mexico, Panama, Ecuador, etc., have been consistently increasing.
- **Climate change will empty the North American Great Lakes:** This is shown to be without substance by all-time recorded high water levels and no downward trend over 100 years. These high volumes were reported with the question: 'Why are water levels on the Great Lakes fluctuating so widely?' How about through misrepresentation of the trend?
- **Climate change will mean ever-greater extremes of weather such as tornadoes and hurricanes:** Strong tornadoes and devastating landfall hurricanes have been steady in number or in decline in recent decades according to peer-reviewed scientific literature that says the same about droughts, floods, and other extreme weather events. The worldwide death rate caused by weather events has dropped more than 98 percent since the 1920s.
- **Polar bears are heading for extinction as climate change makes their ice habitat disappear:** Polar Bears became the poster children of the Climate Cult as a symbol for a terrifying future. Polar bear specialists like Dr Susan Crockford, former adjunct professor at the University of Victoria in Canada

and a forensic zoologist, demolishes the official narrative in her book, *The Polar Bear Catastrophe That Never Happened*. Indeed she destroys the polar bear hoax so well that she lost her role at the university in what she described as ‘an academic hanging without a trial, conducted behind closed doors’. This is what happens when you challenge Climate Cult orthodoxy.



Figure 267: You can always bet on the BBC’s David Attenborough parroting (appropriately) the official narrative.



Figure 268: Yet another constant misrepresentation to promote CO2 as a pollutant.

Crockford shows how polar bears are flourishing and communities are either stable or increasing. Polar bears in part of the Barents Sea increased by 42 percent between 2004 and 2015; in Baffin Bay where bears were predicted to decline by 25 percent they increased by 36 percent; and in Kane Basin they more than doubled. The global average had risen to more than 30,000 bears which Crockford says is ‘far and away the highest estimate in more than 50 years’. Crockford exposes the BBC’s climate change propagandist David Attenborough for misleading the public on polar bears and much else in an Internet video *Attenborough’s Arctic Betrayal* ([Fig 267](#)). Greta Thunberg said she became an activist on climate change after watching reports of polar bear decline that *isn’t happening*. The same BBC of course gave her a TV programme (program) to promote her propaganda.

- **Images show belching chimneys pouring out ‘dangerous’ carbon dioxide:** CO2 is invisible to the human eye and what they are showing you is pollution and not CO2 which is the gas of life and without it there would be no plants and so no humans or animals ([Fig 268](#)). They show you pictures of pollution to make you believe that carbon dioxide is a pollutant. Most of the ‘journalists’ who do this don’t know the difference themselves in yet another exercise in the blind leading the blind.

Protecting make-it-up mythology

How could a hoax based on so many lies become accepted fact in the minds of so many – especially the young – and drive much of government policy? The hoax has been possible by control of information to indoctrinate a belief system underscored by the fear that ‘we’re all going to die’. I’ve said that once you implant the orthodoxy of ‘everyone knows that’ the rest follows largely unaided. Older people are more sceptical of the climate claims because they’ve not had a lifetime of climate propaganda in the schools and universities. The young have and it’s clear why many children and young people believe the lie pedalled through all Cult institutions of government, ‘education’, and crucially the media. Unless people seek out information beyond the Mainstream Everything they live in a one-track world. Without alternative sources of information the population is only being told what the Cult wants them to think.

Pictures of distressed polar bears have been explained as the consequences of ‘global warming’ when the cause of their distress and emaciated state were later revealed to have had other origins unrelated to climate. Show a bear in trouble and say it is climate change and most people believe that to be true when it fits the narrative they have already been suckered to believe in. I read an excellent book by American meteorologist and weather forecaster, Joe Bastardi, a vehement and outspoken exposer of the climate lie. He describes in *The Climate Chronicles* how he has studied weather patterns going way back to show that weather now being blamed on human-caused climate change has happened in a recurring sequence long before the industrial era. The difference is that before the climate hysteria the same weather was just weather. Today it’s always caused by global warming (which became ‘climate change’ when temperatures stopped rising and then the ‘climate crisis’ as the scare was ramped up). It’s so easy to be scammed if people don’t check the facts. We have a hurricane – it’s global warming!; tornado – it’s global warming!; drought – it’s global warming!. It’s hot – it’s global warming! It’s cold – it’s global warming! Bastardi calls them Climate ambulance chasers. He says: ‘What happened before naturally is happening again, as is to be expected given the cyclical nature of the climate due to the design of the planet.’ Bastardi presents many examples of these cycles now blamed on human activity and this is one relating to droughts in the United States:

... Major US dry periods are a product of a cooling tropical Pacific. In the decades such as the 1950s through the 1970s, when the tropical Pacific is cooler overall, the US is drier than normal in much of the nation.

It is exactly the opposite in the years the Pacific warms, which, by the way correlates nicely to an increase in global temperatures until the atmosphere adjusts to the warming tropical ocean and temperatures level off. But the idea that global warming causes droughts here in the US is the opposite of the facts! It’s when the Pacific starts to cool and global temperatures start to drop that we see it dry out.

Bastardi’s book is highly recommended as is *The Politically Incorrect Guide to Climate Change* by Republican insider Marc Morano who charts the blatant political manipulation behind the climate hoax. A good website for hoax-challenging information is the Global Warming Policy Foundation at thegwpf.com. We should not forget that all the projections upon projections about climate Armageddon don’t come from observing the climate. They result from putting data and assumptions into computer models and believing what they tell you is going to happen. The fact that they have been wrong by shocking margins so many times might have given them a clue by now that this doesn’t work due to a simple cause and effect: If you factor in shit the computer will process that shit to produce ‘predictions’ that are nothing more than a feedback loop of shit-in and shit-out. Assume something with your input and you’ll get the answer you want, but rarely the truth. There are so many variables and influences that affect climate that long-term predictions are a mug’s game anyway. Follow the cycles that have happened before if you want to predict the climate. There’s another angle to this that we should be constantly vigilant about. Technology to manipulate weather is now highly-advanced and there would not be international treaties agreeing not to manipulate weather if it was not technologically possible to do that. See *Everything You Need To Know* for detailed background about how extremes of weather can be made to happen and we can expect the Cult to continue to strike in this way around the world to convince people climate disaster is at hand.

The gas of life



Figure 269: Carbon dioxide is the gas of life and the natural world's version of oxygen. I know – let's demonise the gas of life and transform society into the global centralised tyranny to make sure we have less of it.

The Cult takes facts and inverts them to become the very opposite of the truth before selling the inversion as 'conventional wisdom'. This way the public *perception* of reality becomes the opposite of actual reality. We are told we face 'catastrophe' when if what the Climate Cult demands are followed through we will have a real, not imagined, human catastrophe in economics, food production and energy supplies (this was written before the 'virus' lockdowns which have had the same effect). Global society would be devastated by plans to be 'carbon neutral' by 2025 to 2030 or 2050. There can, however, be no better or more blatant example of inversion than carbon dioxide (CO₂) itself. This is the gas of life without which we really would all be dead and yet CO₂ has been thoroughly demonised ([Fig 269](#)). If it was human it could sue for libel. You'll find interviews at [Davidicke.com](#) with professors at Princeton University emphasising both the central role played by carbon dioxide in human life and that far from having too much in the atmosphere *we don't have enough*. This will be amazing to people who have bought the carbon-is-a-pollutant narrative and it reveals the scale of inversion that we are dealing with. William Happer, Professor of Physics at Princeton University and long-time government advisor on climate, is one scientist who says the planet has a CO₂ deficiency and needs more for optimal plant growth and food production. Such views have made him a big hate figure for the Climate Cult as the truth always does. He says that most of the warming in the last 100 years happened as we emerged from the Little Ice Age and was over by 1940. Happer points out that in a peak year for warming in 1988 there was a 'monster El Nino' which is a natural and cyclical warming of the Pacific that affects global weather patterns and temperature and has nothing to do with 'climate change'. He says the nature of the CO₂ effect can be likened to painting a wall with red paint. Once two or three coats have been applied it doesn't matter how much more paint you add the wall will not get much redder. He explains that almost all the effect of the rise in CO₂ has already occurred and the amount in the atmosphere would now have to *double* for even a single degree increase in temperature:

I know a lot about CO₂ compared with most climate scientists ... there's an interesting thing about CO₂ which is unique to CO₂ – it's not true, for example, of water vapour, methane. [This] is that if you get one degree of warming from doubling CO₂, so going from say 400 parts per million for simplicity to 800 ... then to get another degree of warming you have to double 800, you have to go to 1,600. So it gets harder and harder to warm. Technically they call that the logarithmic dependence of temperature rise on CO₂ concentration.

Happer said that this fact was realised early in the climate hysteria and to overcome such a demolition of the orthodoxy we had advocates of the hoax inventing theories about 'feedback loops' amplifying the CO₂ effect. These are the doom-laden predictions that you constantly hear parroted by climate activists including Greta Thunberg. Happer said he laughs when he hears about 'carbon pollution' given that people, plants and animals are made of carbon and without it there would be no life. He said that an increase in CO₂ in the atmosphere would make plants more drought resistant because when plants open holes in their leaves to absorb CO₂ they leak water and the holes have to be open for longer to take in enough carbon dioxide amid what he calls a 'CO₂ famine'. Happer emphasised that CO₂ increases since

industrialisation have had a ‘huge effect’ on plants and increased their growth: ‘When people talk about the social cost of carbon it’s absurd. The social cost is negative of CO₂.’ He said climate computer models don’t look at the world as it is, but at *other computer models*. How much funding would the modellers get, by the way, if their predictions did not support the Climate Cult hypothesis? Imperial College in London which has produced many of the ridiculous ‘climate change’ models was also responsible for the computer models warning of insane numbers of ‘Covid-19’ deaths in the UK, United States and other countries which led to the lockdowns that have destroyed the lives of billions. Needless to say the insane ‘projections’ did not materialise, but provided the excuse for global house arrest.

Too much CO₂? We don’t have enough

The central importance of CO₂ was a theme developed by Greenpeace co-founder Patrick Moore in a presentation to the Global Warming Policy Foundation. Scientist Moore left Greenpeace in 1986 and has criticised the green movement for scare tactics and disinformation with particular emphasis on climate change. He makes the point that other scientists have made about how dangerous it is to have low levels of CO₂. Plants start to die at 150 parts per million and Moore says that even when CO₂ fell to 180 ppm 18,000 years ago plants began to starve. This only turned around when the *temperature went up* for reasons I will shortly explain. Calling for a reduction in carbon dioxide is the plant equivalent of humans demanding a reduction in oxygen – CO₂ is, in effect, plant oxygen. Today Moore says CO₂ stands at around 400 ppm and plant life is still ‘relatively starved of nutrition’ with the optimum levels for plant growth *five times* higher at 2,000 ppm and in some periods of the Earth’s history the ratio has reached 4,000 ppm. These facts explain why since CO₂ levels began to rise with industrialisation the Earth is getting *greener* as CO₂ has risen from 280 ppm in an 1880 measurement in Hawaii to 413 ppm in 2019. The Climate Cult that claims to be ‘saving the planet’ wants to *reverse* that process! Why do they think people pump extra carbon dioxide into greenhouses?? The Climate Cult contends amid its mass-hysteria that we face extinction when the gas of life is at way below optimum planet-growth levels and 500 million years ago there was *17 times* more CO₂ in the atmosphere than we have today. Patrick Moore said levels have been falling for hundreds of millions of years as it was absorbed from the atmosphere and locked away by many and various sources. Over the last 150 million years CO₂ levels in Earth’s atmosphere had reduced by *90 percent*. By the time humans began releasing carbon dioxide through fossil fuels Moore said we were at ‘38 seconds to midnight’ in terms of threats to plant life (thus *all* life) through plummeting levels of CO₂. Not only aren’t humans causing extinction they are *preventing* it. ‘Release of CO₂ has turned around the constant fall’, Moore said, and in this sense ‘Humans are [the Earth’s] salvation’. Moore also noted that only half the CO₂ emitted by fossil fuels ends up in the atmosphere. You read these facts about the fundamental importance of CO₂ and then hear as I did an interview with ‘carbon footprint expert’ Mike Berners-Lee, a professor at the Institute for Social Futures at the UK’s Lancaster University, and brother of Tim Berners-Lee who is credited with inventing the World Wide Web. The interview was on the London-based TalkRadio in which Mike Berners-Lee told an unchallenging host how *emails* add to carbon emissions and that ‘a low-carbon world is better than a high-carbon world’. Breathes deeply, shakes head, moves on. Some other information in Patrick Moore’s speech that the Climate Cult should know: The Earth has been in a major cooling period since the maximum of 50 million years ago when it was as much as *16 degrees* warmer. Today’s poles were ice free and covered in forests. The ancestors of today’s species came through that temperature period fine, but a *two percent* rise is now supposed to threaten mass extinction! Even in our current interglacial period we are experiencing one of the coldest climates in the Earth’s history. The Medieval Warm Period (long before fossil fuels) was still cooler than temperatures in the last 10,000 years, Moore said.

Temperature doesn’t follow CO₂ – it’s the other way round

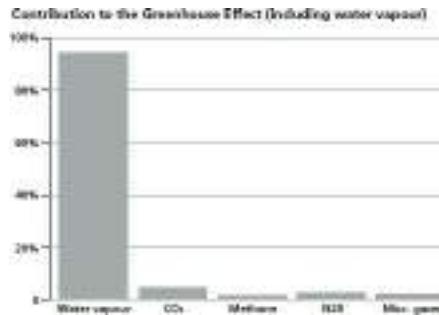


Figure 270: CO₂ is a tiny fraction of greenhouse gases which are almost entirely water vapour and clouds. What's more the great majority of that CO₂ is naturally-occurring and nothing to do with humans.

Oh, Climate Cultists may say, higher CO₂ might be better for plants, but it will cause the Earth to heat catastrophically. I mean, Greta Thunberg says we should believe that our house is on fire and she wouldn't mislead us, right? Well, if she has been mercilessly mislead herself I think she probably would. In fact, temperature rises don't follow increases in CO₂ – *it's the other way round* as the records clearly show. In the last 400,000 years CO₂ has lagged temperature by an average of 800 years. As Patrick Moore rightly says carbon dioxide cannot be the cause of rising temperature when the increase in temperature comes *before* the increase in CO₂. How can the effect come *before* the cause? It can't. So here's a shocker for New Wokers ... *temperature must be affecting CO₂ levels* and not vice-versa. Here we have yet another classic Cult inversion of the truth. How could temperature increase CO₂? The ocean contains 45 times more CO₂ than we have in the atmosphere and the ocean *releases* carbon dioxide in *warm periods* and *absorbs it* in colder periods. The lag between the two is around 800 years and look what was happening 800 years ago the *Medieval Warm Period*. Carbon dioxide does not cause the Earth to catastrophically warm. The history of CO₂ correlation with temperature shows that for immense periods the two have been completely out of kilter. Temperatures have risen and remained high as CO₂ went down. Carbon dioxide is also only 0.117 percent of what are called greenhouse gases while more than *90 percent* of those gases are water vapour and clouds ([Fig 270](#)). Only a fraction of that 0.117 percent is CO₂ caused by human activity and the rest happens naturally. Professional conman Al Gore tried to obscure this fact by saying that if you 'take water vapour out of the equation CO₂ is 30 percent of greenhouse gases'. Don't buy a used car from that man or even a new one. How can you 'take water vapour out of the equation' when that together with clouds makes up close to the entirety of greenhouse gases? To deceive – that's how. Calculated demonisation of CO₂ is so transparent. Professor Leslie Woodcock, Emeritus Professor at the University of Manchester, fellow of the Royal Society of Chemical Engineering, a recipient of a Max Plank Society Visiting Fellowship, and former NASA researcher, said:

Water is a much more powerful greenhouse gas, and there is 20 times more of it in our atmosphere, around one percent of the atmosphere, whereas CO₂ is only 0.04 percent. Carbon dioxide has been made out to be some kind of toxic gas, but the truth is that it's the gas of life. We breathe it out, plants breathe it in and it's not caused by us. Global warming is nonsense.

British scientist James Lovelock was a one-time Green icon with his Gaia theory of the Earth as a living entity (true). He became even more acclaimed by climate alarmists when he predicted in his book *The Revenge of Gaia* that 'billions will die' and humanity was doomed. Lovelock wrote that any survivors would have to live in the Arctic which would be one of the few habitable places on Earth. Then reality dawned and to his enormous credit he had the courage to publicly change his mind. Humanity was not in imminent peril after all. Lovelock now says that climate alarmism is not 'remotely scientific', computer models are unreliable and anyone who tries to 'predict more than five to ten years is a bit of an idiot'. A single volcano can make more difference to global warming than humans ever could, he has stated. He

accuses the Greens of exaggeration and behaving ‘deplorably’. Weather Channel founder John Coleman has said human-caused global warming is a myth and the list of scientists saying the same is getting longer by the week. Such honesty often comes at a cost, however, in the form of lost jobs and income. Dr Judith Curry, a respected climatologist and tenured professor at Georgia Tech University, left her ‘dream job’ when she refused to pledge unquestioning obedience to the Climate Cult. She told Fox News:

I've been vilified by some of my colleagues who are activists and don't like anybody challenging their big story ... I walk around with knives sticking out of my back ... In the university environment I felt like I was just beating my head against the wall.

Curry is a target of an establishment-promoted ‘climate advocacy group’ called Skeptical Science which operates a ‘blacklist’ of scientists who won’t comply with Climate Cult orthodoxy. Dana Nuccitelli, one of the principals of Skeptical Science, wrote of Curry: ‘If you look at the statements we catalogued and debunked ... it should make her unhireable in academia.’ Judith Curry is a former chair of the School of Earth and Atmospheric Sciences at Georgia Tech and a Fellow of both the American Geophysical Union and American Meteorological Society. She was only ‘unhireable’ because the Climate Cult made it so. Curry was asked to step down by her university for her views on climate and had ‘numerous inquiries from academic headhunters encouraging me to apply for major administration positions, ranging from Dean to Vice Chancellor for Research’. She didn’t even make the shortlist. Curry said in a *Forbes* interview:

They thought I was an outstanding candidate, looked excellent on paper, articulated a strong vision, and interviewed very well in person. The show stopper was my public profile in the climate debate, as evidenced by a simple Google search.



Figure 271: Refuse to sing from the song-sheet and you're gone.

Google is so helpful in ensuring that Skeptical Science is on the first page and sometimes the top listing for a word search for Judith or Judy Curry. This is the tyranny that genuine academics and scientists are facing from the Climate Cult in all its forms. Who created Skeptical Science? *John Cook*, the Australian bloke most quoted about ‘97 percent of climate scientists’ agreeing that humans are most responsible for climate change when his ‘research’ doesn’t say that at all. Small world, eh? Those that don’t accept climate change orthodoxy are labelled ‘anti-science’ when questioning every hypothesis is what real science is all about. It’s the Climate Cult that is anti-science (another inversion). French television weatherman Philippe Verdier was fired by the France 2 channel for publishing a book accusing ‘climate experts’ of misleading the public and the Cult-controlled UN Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change of publishing deliberately misleading data ([Fig 271](#)). What he said is true and he was sacked *because* it is true. Programmed New Woke trade union members at the station demanded he was dismissed. Verdier wrote his book after French Foreign Minister Laurent Fabius asked TV meteorologists to highlight climate change issues in their broadcasts. ‘I was horrified by this speech,’ Verdier said.

Cult narrative: humanity is the enemy



Figure 272: An academic promoting the end of humanity. She is teaching young people, right? Wow. Her extreme of extreme views are fine with Woke. It's when you say men and women are biologically different that you trigger their ire.

Greenpeace co-founder Patrick Moore is a scientist who says the Greens have abandoned science and replaced it with emotion and sensationalism based on an ‘anti-human’ agenda that paints humanity as the enemy of the Earth. If you are a Death Cult targeting humanity would you not want them to believe that they were the problem? Wouldn’t you want them to despise themselves and turn against themselves? You surely would. We breathe out carbon dioxide and even the act of breathing is harming the planet – *ahhhhhh!!!* Humans are deadly. We must kill them. A vegan father-of-four voiced this anti-human mentality when he called a UK radio station to say humans shouldn’t breed to produce more offspring to ‘harm animals’. He urged people to encourage a ‘graceful ending of our time on the planet’. The caller, who gave the name ‘Danny’, said he had recently discovered ‘anti-natalism’ – ‘the idea that we shouldn’t be breeding humans when it causes so much unnecessary suffering to animals, especially people who bring up children to eat meat’. Should we then not allow animals to breed when they cause so much harm to each other in the killing fields that are the ‘natural world’? ‘Danny’ said there was nothing wrong with human extinction and admitted that he tells his nine-year-old son and older daughters to question their own reproduction and whether they should be here in the first place. ‘I don’t want grandchildren, and I don’t want them to impose life on another generation for no good reason.’ He’s not psychologically damaged or anything and this is not in any way psychological abuse of his children. These views may seem seriously extreme, but the guy is far from alone and they are just the attitudes you want to engender when you are a Death Cult led by unseen ‘gods’ that wish to replace humanity as we know it today (more later). It would be easy to dismiss an anonymous caller to a radio station if what he said was not being promoted by academics such as Patricia MacCormack, a professor of continental philosophy at Anglia Ruskin University in Cambridge. She argues in her book, *The Ahuman Manifesto*, that ‘the only solution for climate change is letting the human race become extinct’ ([Fig 272](#)). This was the headline in an interview with MacCormack in which she set out a ‘positive view’ for the future of Earth without humans. She said she came to these conclusions through her interest in feminism and ‘queer theory’ and railed against ‘this hierachal world where white, male, heterosexual and able-bodied people are succeeding, and people of different races, genders, sexualities and those with disabilities are struggling to get that’. Well, best get rid of everyone then.

MacCormack further argues that we need to dismantle religion while clearly not realising that she is a member of one. She said that humans are already enslaved to the point of ‘zombiedom’ (oh, the irony) by ‘capitalism’ and because of the damage this has caused ‘phasing out reproduction is the only way to repair the damage done to the world’. This is straight from the Cult agenda for a mass human cull as will become clear and she will be utterly oblivious to that. The realisation that such mentalities are teaching young people is very sobering while at the same time explains so much about where New Woke is coming from.

To summarise what Patrick Moore has said, and what I have observed for decades, the Green movement that he and I remember has been hijacked by New Woke and real environmental issues are being marginalised and sacrificed on the altar of global warming. We have the obsession with ‘climate

change' while genuine pollution increases, including radiation pollution, and US Green New Deal promotor Alexandria Ocasio-Cortez represents a district awash with trash in the streets. I am so glad I was briefly a national spokesman for the Green Party in the 1980s. It has given me such an insight into the mentality that drives the tyranny of the New Woke Climate Cult today. Moore brings sanity to the debate when he says that carbon dioxide is a building block for all life on earth and without its presence in the global atmosphere in sufficient concentrations this would be a dead planet. He says that all life is carbon-based including our own and he describes carbon dioxide as 'the currency of life' and the most important building block for terrestrial life. 'Yet today our children and our publics are taught that CO₂ is a toxic pollutant that will destroy life and bring civilisation to its knees.' Once again if you were a Death Cult with humanity in its gunsights wouldn't you want them to believe that what keeps them alive threatens their existence? Wouldn't you want them to dismantle what gives them life? What a testament to the programming of human perception that so many believe this absurdity to their core.

Climate Cult veganism - not so simple

We have a perfect system in which humans breathe in oxygen and breathe out carbon dioxide (how dare we?) while plant life and trees absorb carbon dioxide and produce oxygen during the day by converting sunlight, carbon dioxide and water into carbohydrates and oxygen in a process called photosynthesis. The Sun, like carbon dioxide, is obviously essential to life on Earth and notice that both are being targeted. We are encouraged to fear the Sun through the climate hoax on the grounds that it generates heat (while not presenting the Sun as a source of global temperature!) and we are urged to cover our skin with cancer-causing chemicals in sun lotion when the skin turns sunlight into the essential vitamin D so vital to human health. This process of synthesising sunlight into vitamin D is achieved through *cholesterol* in the skin cells – the same cholesterol that is also *vilified* as we are urged to 'lower your cholesterol' and take ongoing, health-destroying statin drugs to do so (ka-ching say the Big Pharma tills). We are told by officialdom that LDL cholesterol, or low-density lipoproteins, is 'bad cholesterol' and can cause heart disease. To save ourselves we should take statins. A global team of 17 doctors published a study of nearly 1.3 million people in 2018 that concluded there is no link between high LDL cholesterol and heart disease and that statins were, with serious understatement, of 'doubtful benefit'. The study, published in the *Expert Review of Clinical Pharmacology*, exposed the demonisation of cholesterol and reported that heart attack patients were shown to have *lower* than normal levels of LDL or 'bad cholesterol'. Professor Sherif Sultan, one of the authors, said the 'strongest finding' was elderly people with high levels of LDL live the longest. The big rule of thumb to remember: If 'The System' is pushing something it's bad for humanity. If it is targeting something it's good for humanity. It works every time. The highest concentration of cholesterol is in the brain – 20 percent of the body total. The brain is 60 percent fats and without cholesterol it cannot function effectively. This explanation comes from [Psychologytoday.com](https://www.psychologytoday.com/):

Synapses – the magical areas where communication between brain cells takes place – are lined by cholesterol-rich membranes responsible for passing neurotransmitters like serotonin, GABA, and dopamine back and forth. Myelin, the white matter that insulates brain circuits, is made from tightly-wound membranes containing 75% of the brain's cholesterol.

Cholesterol also helps guide developing nerve endings to their destinations on 'lipid rafts'. If the brain is too low in cholesterol, its membranes, synapses, myelin and lipid rafts can't form or function properly, bringing all brain activity – including mood regulation, learning, and memory – to a screeching halt.

We are witnessing soaring numbers of people with forms of dementia. Is this a coincidence? No, it's not. There are other reasons for this, too, but if you significantly lower or eliminate cholesterol and fat consumption this is what happens. Check the facts for yourself. Every vegan and vegetarian should read for their own sake the book by David Evans called *Low Cholesterol Leads to an Early Death: Evidence from*

101 Scientific Papers. There are also the books of Barry Groves including *Trick and Treat: How healthy eating is making us ill*. I am not saying vegans and vegetarians should change their lifestyle – that's none of my business. I am saying check the facts first and you won't get them only by reading mainstream sources. Is it still another 'by chance' that the Climate Cult (a stooge of the Death Cult) is demanding a major decrease (ideally the elimination) of meat consumption with its mega sources of cholesterol and fats? The theme is being promoted by pathetically-named documentaries such as *Apocalypse Cow: How Meat Killed The Planet* fronted by *Guardian* 'journalist' virtue-signaller and fast-asleep New Woker 'vegan' George Monbiot who bizarrely shot a deer on the programme and ate it as a burger. Go figure. I understand why vegetarians and vegans choose not to eat animal products and I absolutely respect the intent. I was a vegetarian myself for some 15 years. It is not, however, that simple. Firstly vegans and vegetarians might consider that *all* life is conscious including the plants they eat themselves. I have written a number of times over the years about research revealing how plants and trees feel pain and stress which can even be generated by the tone of voice and someone's intent towards them. When people 'talk' to plants it generates a wave interaction with the frequency field of the voice and this is picked up by the plant. They may not understand human words, but they pick up the 'vibe'. A team of scientists at Tel Aviv University published a study in 2019 revealing that tomato and tobacco plants emitted multiple ultrasonic 'stress' sounds between 20 and 100 kilohertz when deprived of water or their stems were cut. Plants with no environmental threat or damage emitted less than one ultrasonic sound per hour. Many other experiments have confirmed the theme – plant life is conscious and feels forms of emotional pain and stress when threatened. What does a tree feel when it is cut down? What do other trees feel when it is well established that trees operate in 'families' and communicate?

There is no consumption of food in higher frequencies and these moral dilemmas do not arise. Within the simulation there is such density and a comparative deficit of energy that the difference is made up by consuming 'physical' food which is really wavefields. I wish that didn't have to be, but the point to remember is that *everything* is conscious. We are told that meat eating must end to protect animals when animals eat each other second by second. It is the way the simulation is set up to be a killing field. Animals eat each other to secure the sustenance they need to survive and biologically humans have the same basic make-up and nutritional requirements. We may wish it was different, okay, agreed. But for now that's how it is. Animals that provide the basis for human food will, of course, disappear altogether as a consequence of what is being demanded by a few imposing their lifestyle choice on everyone else. The meat industry is going to be subjected to full-blown demonisation and financial attacks to secure the desired Cult outcome by claiming it is 'not sustainable' – I'll explain the real significance of 'sustainable' in the next chapter. Vegans should make their choices as they see fit and have those choices respected. I just wish the same respect came the other way and self-righteous vegan activists didn't act like another cult with its deep connections to the Climate Cult which is largely the unknowing puppet of the Death Cult. By all means campaign for animals to be treated humanely – I'm with you – but please open your eyes to what you are being used to bring about. I am not telling people what they should eat. I am saying look at the pattern and how the climate hoax and other excuses are being used to target carbon dioxide, sunlight and cholesterol which, without sufficient quantities, there would truly be extinction. I find the same perceptual arrogance at the *extreme* end (not everyone) of those who contend that the Earth is flat. If people want to believe that then good luck to them I say. Unfortunately the same respect often doesn't come the other way. If you don't accept what they claim you are subject to attacks and dubbed an agent of the elite – even those who have spent their lives exposing the elite and who do more to that end in a month than 'flat Earth' extreme obsessives will do in a lifetime. The Earth is 'flat' in a sense at the level of its wavefield construct or 'interference pattern'. Its holographic decoded projection called the 'physical' Earth is quite something else. Those who see this differently have every right to do so and I won't call them agents of the elite just because they believe something that I don't. Why do so many people insist that what they believe must be accepted by everybody? This book is my view and research. I don't insist

for a second that people have to believe it if it doesn't make sense to them.

The Cult is exploiting the climate change hoax to pressure people to be vegan and that should start alarm bells ringing. I can tell you after tracking these people for 30 years that they do *nothing* without intent to harm humanity and if they want the population to be vegan it's for a reason that benefits the agenda. Some schools are imposing vegan food and banning meat including one in Sweden where preschool teacher Markus Sandström said: 'The more we thought about it, the better it seemed ... sustainable development is [our] starting point and the meat has a great impact on climate.' Sandström doesn't know what he's talking about. He's just repeating what he has been programmed to believe so he will pass on that programming to children and enforce it in this case. This is what teachers are there to do from the Cult's point of view. Vegetarian and vegan diets imposed by schools is a gathering trend with a school in Oxford, England, banning children from bringing their own packed lunches if they are not meat and fish free. We see yet again how the New Woke and climate tyranny works. It is not about winning arguments with freely-debated facts; it's about imposition. Head teacher Kay Wood said that the move allowed them to serve better quality meals for the same price. Okay, so explain how that scans with banning packed lunches brought from home. How would price be significant when the school is not paying? Who says they are better quality meals when many nutritionists have the opinion that meat and fish are essential to a balanced intake of what the body and brain needs? Who is Ms Wood to make those decisions about what children can eat and its effect on their well-being? A second reason she cited was the yawn, yawn, 'huge environmental and sustainability benefits' as she once again repeated the Cult script while not knowing there even is a Cult. Reason number three was that banning meat 'allows students of all faiths and different dietary requirements to eat together'. She wouldn't be able to see the deeper consequences of this which is imposing one set of beliefs on everyone. Why wouldn't you justify that to yourself when *I am right*. One parent at the school said banning meat and fish had made her children and other pupils hungry, but none of this matters – *I am right*. A UK property company Igloo Regeneration has decreed that all corporate entertaining and catering must be vegetarian and meals including meat cannot be reimbursed on expenses after they bought the same lie as the schools. They certainly won't be the last and watch this theme expand because it's a Cult agenda. There is pressure to introduce meat taxes and we even have people taking neighbours to court for the smell of their barbeques. *I am right* has spoken and you will comply! Why should you have choice when *you are wrong*? There are many lovely vegans who understand this defence of basic freedom. I'm sure others will be cocking their abuse ready to fire. If you want self-righteous abuse by the truckload tell an extreme vegan activist that the world is not as black and white as they think it is. You will see as we go along what the endless references of 'sustainability' really mean although these teachers won't have a clue what that is. They are just repeaters like the entire system in all its forms – repeating the Totalitarian Tiptoe agenda of the Cult like a broken record while thinking it's true. Where the delete-meat Cult agenda is really going, via veganism, is to laboratory-produced synthetic food for reasons I will be explaining.

So the gas of life is being demonised to provide the foundation of the religious orthodoxy promoted by the Climate Cult and all its associated offshoots like changing what people eat. The next question is why the global Death Cult would go to such lengths to convince us that humans are threatening the planet's very existence of the world we have come to know. The answer is both clear – and devastating.

CHAPTER NINE

Why is ‘climate change’ being hoaxed?

Evil people rely on the acquiescence of naive good people to allow them to continue with their evil – Stuart Aken

The answer to the question posed in the chapter heading is once again very simple and armed with this knowledge everything else falls into place. We are looking at a global example of No-Problem-Reaction-Solution. The Cult was only able to invade Iraq in 2003 by lying about ‘weapons of mass destruction’ which they knew didn’t exist. Without the lie they had no excuse to do what had long been planned. The climate hoax is another no-problem that gives the Cult the pretext for almost every aspect of the Hunger Games Society and the agenda for extreme Orwellian control. The NO-P-R-S goals of the Climate Cult and the ‘pandemic’ lockdowns are indivisible.

All the strands come together in the end because everything is connected. I have laid out the Hunger Games structure of a world government controlling other global institutions and dictating to every community through superstates like the European Union and regional entities underneath overseeing an utterly dependent human population. This won’t just happen – it has to be *made* to happen and for that you need reasons/excuses to do what you want like a ‘climate crisis’ and a global pandemic. If those excuses are not naturally-occurring you need to make them up. You lie in other words and ... the BIGGER the lie the more will believe it. The problem must relate to the solution and when you want a global solution in the form of world government etc. you need global problems for which your solution can be applied. A planet-wide hoax about human-caused climate change and a ‘pandemic’ fit that bill perfectly. The scammers can claim that the only way to ‘save the world and humanity’ is to centralise global power in a world government and institutions to stop any ‘bad people’ from taking actions that threaten human existence by producing the gas of life or infecting others with a ‘virus’ (which doesn’t exist as we will see). How can they stop the ‘bad people’? Well, a world army would come in handy don’t you think? Do people really believe that the climate change hoax and pandemic hoax are random happenings when they both demand centralisation of power and draconian imposition by the state which have been the aim of the Cult all along? Watch eventually for demands that an external military force be used to impose climate change measures on countries that don’t play ball. Hey, I have another idea. The threat of extinction is so ‘existential’ that we need a police/military state to keep people in line to protect everyone else and we must take control of the upbringing of children to ‘educate’ (indoctrinate) them into being good citizens obedient to their masters who know how to save the planet. We certainly don’t need parents getting in the way. So many things that humans do, including breathing, are dangerous. The police/military surveillance state must watch every World Citizen’s every move and every citizen must watch every other citizen and report on them immediately about anything the surveillance state may have missed (nothing in the end). Dystopia is vital – our very existence depends upon it. Those good people who obey will be rewarded and those who still have a mind of their own will be tracked,

recorded, punished or eliminated (see China).

The only way to save the world and humanity from imminent extinction is for everything to be controlled. This includes your energy use, what you eat, where you go, how you go, if you go, and what you say and think. Travel must be restricted to electric autonomous vehicles controlled and tracked by computers that decide where you can go and when (or if). Flying must be eliminated (except for the elite) to save us all. With so little travel possible in the interests of preventing extinction it would be more efficient and better for the Earth if people were organised in sectors like in those *Hunger Games* movies with only the elite and their police/military operatives able to pass between them without securing permission. Work must be taken over by far more efficient and less carbon-producing (they claim) artificial intelligence leaving the population in general unable to earn a living (see also 'pandemic'). The state is kind, however, and they will be paid a meagre 'guaranteed income' in return for slavery and total obedience. Don't believe for a second that you will be able to rebel. We will know what you plan before you do through mind-reading technology tracking your brain activity. Humans are very *dangerous* and they must be vastly reduced in number. Billions must be removed for the good of the rest and we must introduce a maximum length of life in the interests of the young. Birth rates must be controlled and dictated by the world state with forced abortion for women who are pregnant without the right paperwork. In the end there will be no parental procreation or parenthood as I will come to in a later chapter. If you think this is extreme to the point of fantasy you should read my other books and see in detail the evidence and documentation for all that I have described here. Observe what is demanded by the New Woke Climate Cult in the form of Extinction Rebellion and the Green New Deal of American congresswoman Alexandria Ocasio-Cortez supported by private-jet flying Democratic presidential candidate Bernie Sanders with its price tag of \$16 trillion. We also have the EU version of the Ocasio-Cortez plan in the 'European Green Deal'. Something similar would be supported by Joe Biden who clearly has serious cognitive problems and the most obvious signs of some form of dementia. Even so when Sanders pulled out of the race in April, 2020, Biden was given a free run to be the Democratic candidate barring some unforeseen circumstances like people realising in large enough numbers that Biden is unfit to run. The corrupt Wall Street-owned Biden would be an empty vessel for his handlers to dictate policy although his blatantly failing mental capacities would give Israel-owned Trump an excellent chance of a second term unless the effects of 'virus' lockdown can shield Biden from that exposure to enough of the voting population. The hate-Trump mentality would also vote for a traffic light rather than him. The Cult often likes second-term presidencies when the presidential puppet does not have to temper his policies to win another election and in Trump's case that could mean policy on Iran which Israel (Sabbatian-Frankists) want to destroy. Trump is utterly controlled by Israel and its masters with ultra-Zionist Stephen Miller, his senior advisor for policy, right up there as the most influential of his handlers. A truly New Woke president will be in the plan at some point, however, as New Wokers become ever more significant at the polling booth and Trump (74 as I write), Biden (77) and the failed Sanders (78) have the look of the last of the line before a new and seriously Woke political generation are planned to take over.



Figure 273: Well said, George.

If the ‘carbon-neutral’ demands of these suicide notes are implemented industrial society as we’ve known it will be over, finished, kaput, through curtailed energy production and CO2 bans alone. Billions of jobs would be lost and the Hunger Games Society would be installed (words written before the ‘pandemic’ which rushed forward exactly the same agenda). It is madness and unfortunately there is nothing more blind to its fate than madness. I don’t use the term as some kind of metaphor for stupidity. I really do mean madness, as in lunacy ([Fig 273](#)). Despite these consequences most politicians are falling over themselves to comply at some level with carbon neutral demands whether that be by 2025, 2030 or, at most, 2050. Simon Bramwell, co-founder of Extinction Rebellion, was filmed calling on New Woke to ‘bring down civilisation’. He wanted to see humanity return to a ‘wild’ and ‘feral’ state: ‘... it is part of our duty in my opinion that we’ve also got to not only take down civilisation but shepherd ourselves and incoming generations back into a state of wilding as it were, into like a feral consciousness that is also one of the biggest tasks remaining to us.’ A definition of ‘feral’ is: ‘Characteristic of wild animals; ferocious; brutal.’ Bramwell said modern eco-activism was finding it impossible to convince people to go ‘without food’ or ‘see their child die because we don’t simply have the machinery and technology to keep them alive any longer’ – ‘So we have to offer them something else along as [sic] these trajectories of civil disobedience and direct sabotage of civilisation.’ Gail Bradbrook, a former partner of Bramwell and a co-founder of Extinction Rebellion, is a career activist with numerous connections to NGOs, major corporations, banks and very rich people.

Environmental catastrophe – thanks to ‘Greens’

CO2 obsession, like all obsessions, ignores the consequences. Take the Climate Cult’s support for vehicles run by electricity (still largely produced from fossil fuel) and their lithium batteries which have created human and environmental devastation in the Democratic Republic of Congo where New Woke Apple, Google, Tesla, Microsoft and Dell have been accused of exploiting child labour by families who say their children were killed or severely injured mining cobalt used in lithium batteries and coltan used in cell phones and other electronics. Tens of thousands of children are involved in the cobalt and coltan trade – some as young as four – and all spend their days breathing toxic fumes. An Amnesty International report said most cobalt miners in the Congo lacked basic protective equipment like face masks, work clothing and gloves while many employed on pittance ‘wages’ complained of frequent coughing or lung problems. An article in *Forbes* magazine described the plight of a child named Lukasa who starts a 12-hour day at 5am for pay of less than \$9. He hacks at ore by hand and carries it on his back in an hour trek to a trading post where he sells it to Chinese traders who make massive profits literally off his back. Lukasa then walks another two hours to his home. The Democratic Republic of Congo has been ravaged by war that has killed millions. It is called a ‘civil war’ when in fact it is a war for control of ‘smart’ resources and has destroyed rainforests, the ancient life-style of indigenous people and threatened to make wildlife species extinct. Where are you Climate Cult?? Oh, yes, on the bloody phone demanding electric cars.

It is disgusting modern slavery and here’s the kicker for the Climate Cult – making lithium batteries for electric cars and other technology is a major emitter of *carbon dioxide*. A report in *IndustryWeek* said: ‘Just to build each car battery – weighing upwards of 500 kilograms (1,100 pounds) in size for sport-utility vehicles – would emit up to 74% more CO2 than producing an efficient conventional car if it’s made in a factory powered by fossil fuels in a place like Germany ...’ Now contemplate the pollution, child exploitation and CO2 consequences of every vehicle in the world eventually being electric and autonomous. I know that CO2 production is not dangerous, but the Climate Cult thinks it is and still supports mass mining of cobalt for electric vehicles to ‘fight climate change’. Then there is the environmental problem of what happens when batteries are expired after less than ten years. Researchers including Professor Andrew Abbott at Leicester University have calculated that the one million electric cars sold in Britain in 2017 will produce 250,000 metric tons, or half a million cubic metres, of unprocessed

battery pack waste. What will that be *globally* when all vehicles are electric?? How very green. Beautiful landscapes and seascapes are being destroyed by highly inefficient ‘green’ wind turbines that kill birds, disturb wildlife and destroy silence with their loud noise. The blades can be bigger than a jumbo jet wing and there are tens of thousands already past their working life with only landfills to deal with them. Some 8,000 will have to be disposed of in the next four years in the United States while 3,800 a year have to be dealt with in Europe according to Bloomberg. These figures reflect the number built a decade ago and there are far more now that will be coming up for disposal. Save the world by trashing it. Many millions of acres of *forest* have been cut down to locate the turbines and a Freedom of Information Act request revealed that in a small country like Scotland almost *14 million trees* across 17,283 acres have been felled for the turbines since the year 2000. These are trees that take CO₂ out of the atmosphere and clearly the CO₂ hysteria is a monumental hoax. Wind turbines also technologise the natural environment which technocrats would love.

How the Climate Cult was birthed by billionaires

New Wokeness and the Climate Cult have not emerged with such speed by random chance. They have been long in the making and in *Everything You Need To Know* I have laid it all out at length. In brief we can pick up the story in 1968 with the creation of the Club of Rome although it goes back much further. The Club of Rome is a cusp organisation in The Web which stands at the point where the hidden levels of the Cult meet the seen. Cusp entities like the Bilderberg Group, Council on Foreign Relations and Trilateral Commission have their own specific role and with the Club of Rome this has been from the start to exploit environmental concerns to justify the transformation of global society. The Club published a report in 1972 warning about environmental disaster by the year 2000 – an outcome supported by a computer model that Club of Rome co-founder Aurelio Peccei would later admit was encoded to produce the desired predictions. This would be the recurring technique for climate change propaganda using computer models. Italian industrialist Peccei said in the Club’s 1991 publication, *The First Global Revolution*: ‘In searching for a new enemy to unite us, we came up with the idea that pollution, the threat of global warming, water shortages, famine and the like would fit the bill.’ The document emphasised that these things were caused by human intervention and so *here we go ...* ‘The real enemy, then, is humanity itself.’ Bingo – the narrative and the target was set. The Club of Rome includes global political leaders (and former), government officials, diplomats, scientists, economists, business leaders and, very significantly, United Nations bureaucrats. The Cult-created UN is a stalking horse for world government through the Totalitarian Tiptoe and both the climate change hoax *and* the ‘solution’ to the hoax are being orchestrated through the United Nations as a No-Problem-Reaction-Solution. Richard Haass, president of the Cult-controlled Council on Foreign Relations, has said that world government is needed with national sovereignty reduced to ‘fight’ global warming: ‘Moreover, states must be prepared to cede some sovereignty to world bodies if the international system is to function ... states would be wise to weaken sovereignty in order to protect themselves ...’



Figure 274: Annual meeting of Naivety Anonymous.

A major event in the emergence of the Climate Cult came with the 1992 Earth Summit in Rio de Janeiro, Brazil, which was hosted by Cult asset and Canadian oil multimillionaire Maurice Strong who fronted for the Rothschild and Rockefeller dynasties. Strong believed that the United Nations should become a world government. He was appointed a founding director of the UN Environment Programme (UNEP) and from the 1980s became the promotor of human-caused climate change or 'global warming' as it was then before temperatures stopped rising. Strong's UNEP was behind the creation of the UN's Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) which has been the central body in the climate change hoax ever since. He also established the UN Framework Convention on Climate Change (UNFCCC). Through this body he hosted the Rio 'Earth Summit' attended by 108 world leaders and 20,000 'green activists'. Maurice Strong, remember, was a big-time Cult operative. The UN Framework Convention on Climate Change is the organising force for the series of conferences in Kyoto (1997), Copenhagen (2009), Paris (2015) and Glasgow (2020) pressing governments to impose laws to reduce emissions of the gas of life. Strong saw out his last years in China where he had been close to the Communist Party leadership going back to Chairman Mao. He moved there after being exposed for being paid \$1 million from the UN's Oil for Food programme which was supposed to be a mechanism to trade oil to feed starving people in Iraq. This is the same Maurice Strong who claimed to be a (multimillionaire) 'socialist' and became the darling of what would become New Woke. George Soros plays a similar and more expansive role today and New Wokers still can't see through it ([Fig 274](#)). Strong was appointed to a series of other influential positions to serve the Cult including Senior Advisor to the UN Secretary General, Senior Advisor to the World Bank, Chairman of the Earth Council, Chairman of the World Resources Institute, Under-Secretary-General of the United Nations and Co-Chairman of the Council of the World Economic Forum which would become a major promotor of Greta Thunberg. This is what happens to your career when you are a Cult asset.

An insider speaks



Figure 275: The World in our hand – perfect symbolism for what the game is.

I have written over the years about the warnings of George Hunt, an accountant and investment consultant, who was an official host of the Fourth World Wilderness Conference in Colorado in 1987 attended by Maurice Strong along with Edmond de Rothschild, David Rockefeller and executives from the World Bank and International Monetary Fund (IMF) who were there because they cared so deeply about the environment and the poor. It was nothing to do with stealing land from the poor in the name of saving the world. Well, actually, it *was* – see my book *The Perception Deception*. Hunt's experience of these mega-criminals and others led him to realise that the so-called environmental movement was a Rothschild/Rockefeller global banker front driven by what I refer to as the Cult. He said the global population was described by a banker attendee as the 'canon fodder that populates the Earth'. Hunt made a video a month ahead of the June, 1992, Earth Summit in which he called out the game before it even became public. You can still find the video on the Internet. He pointed out that the logo of the summit was a hand holding the world with the slogan 'In Our Hands' which given the Cult's obsession with symbolism was a statement of intent in itself ([Fig 275](#) overleaf). The official name was UNCED

(United Nations Conference on Environment and Development) and was pronounced ‘unsaid’. That’s a ditto. Hunt described those behind the Earth Summit in these terms:

The same World Order [Cult] families that planned World War One and World War Two, that tricked the Third World countries to borrow funds and rack up the enormous debts, the same World Order that stole much of the money borrowed by Africans and other nations and hid it in Geneva banks. They are the persons who financed Hitler and purposely [create] war and debt to bring societies into their control. The World Order crowd are not a nice group of people.

Hunt said in 1992 that ‘the world environment movement will soon be in the hands of the World Order’ if its supporters did not act on what was happening. They didn’t, of course, and they have been, as Hunt predicted, absolutely absorbed by the ‘World Order’ elite to become the New Woke Climate Cult with its teenage ‘spiritual leader’ Greta Thunberg. Hunt said:

I learned later that the World Order refers to the coming one-world government as the Fourth World. A world controlled by the World Order where there is no more First, Second and Third World ... just a boundary-less planet which is called the Fourth World Wilderness. Yogis and shamans refer to it as the Fourth World Wilderness, the lostness of the mind. The lostness of the mind refers to the collective consciousness. Persons will be coerced through lies, drugs, fear and pain to surrender their selves, their egos, to the collective consciousness.

I stress here that while I speak of us being expressions of *The One* we are both the collective *and* the individual point of attention. We must not concede that sense of individuality and personal sovereignty to any group-think or collective mind which the Cult plans to be a technological hive-mind controlled by artificial intelligence. Hunt said the ‘Fourth World’ will be a return to a society much like the Caesars or Babylon or the Fourth Reich. He said this society was described in Aldous Huxley’s *Brave New World* and *Brave New World Revisited* and George Orwell’s *Nineteen Eighty-Four*. The new World Order sought to create a society out of the ashes of chaos, a collectivist Fourth World complete with collectivist religion, collectivist finance and unchecked world national socialism. Hunt said in 1992:

The World Order will offer Gaia, Mother Earth, to the masses as the Big Brother image to worship in the Fourth World. Maurice Strong has already set up a 140,000 acre project in Creston, Colorado, to develop this Earth religion system. Projects are funded by the Rockefeller Fund among other foundations. The Earth Summit will link environment with industry, the Lords of the UNCED conference will be the masters of who gets what and when if we don’t do something about it quickly.

I repeat: George Hunt was speaking in 1992. How sobering when you see what is happening today. Hunt described how Maurice Strong identified Edmond de Rothschild as the creator of the environment movement and perhaps Climate Cult supporters will now understand why billionaires like Soros, a Rothschild lackey, are falling over themselves in support. Greta Thunberg crossed the Atlantic on a yacht once named the Edmond de Rothschild sailed by an elite crew with connections to the Monaco royal family. How very ‘of the street’.

UN double whammy

The United Nations is working a pincer movement on behalf of the Cult. On one side you have the UN Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change (IPCC) which drives the hysteria by lying incessantly about human impact on the climate. On the other you have UN Agenda 21 and Agenda 2030 which seek to transform global society into a centralised Orwellian state to ‘meet the challenge of climate change’. When you think that the United Nations was created by the Cult as a Trojan horse for world government dictatorship the game becomes transparent. One UN agency hoaxes the problem and others promote the

solution. The IPCC is not a scientific organisation, but a *political* one and its claims and behaviour are dictated by politicians, activists and place-people – not by scientists who are merely the prop. Some ‘scientists’ say what the IPCC demands when they lift their snouts from the money-trough while other genuine scientists either have their work misrepresented in IPCC ‘reports’ or are ignored all together. Many scientists mentioned in IPCC documents have complained of being misquoted and having their opinions distorted as I have detailed in other books. Another sleight-of-hand is for IPCC reports detailing alleged ‘scientific findings’ to be preceded by a ‘summary’ of those findings. These ‘summaries’ are written by the IPCC hierarchy to misrepresent or exaggerate what is in the main report in the knowledge that the world’s media will, almost in its entirety, use the summary as the basis for its reporting. For many years the IPCC was headed by a railway engineer, Rajendra Pachauri, who was succeeded by Hoesung Lee, a South Korean former economist with ExxonMobil and brother of former Prime Minister of South Korea Lee Hoi-chang. The IPCC is indeed a *political* not a scientific organisation churning out propaganda about climate change to justify the imposition of global centralised tyranny. Christiana Figueres, who is UN to her DNA, was executive secretary of the United Nations Framework Convention on Climate Change for six years and in 2020 published a book with her ‘strategic advisor’ and ‘climate change’ political lobbyist, Tom Rivett-Carnac, from a family of aristocrats. The book, *The Future We Choose: Surviving the Climate Crisis*, naturally ticked all the boxes. Figueres parroted climate change orthodoxy, endorsed Extinction Rebellion and Greta Thunberg, and promoted ‘civil disobedience’ as ‘a moral choice’ to pressure politicians to act on climate change. She even names Martin Luther King as an example when she could not have named anyone less appropriate. King was campaigning for freedom and not, as with the Climate Cult, demanding it be deleted. Funny how the establishment promotes ‘civil disobedience’ to advance the climate hoax, but those who engage in such activities in support of freedom, fairness and justice are labelled ‘enemies of the state’. How would King have responded to an article posted on the United Nations Educational, Scientific and Cultural Organization (UNESCO) website headed ‘Climate crimes must be brought to justice’. These ‘crimes’ highlighted by British academic Catriona McKinnon turn out to be refusing to believe in the UN climate hoax. McKinnon is yet another confirmation that academia, once a noble profession, is now a very sick joke. This genius wrote:

Criminal sanctions are the most potent tools we have to mark out conduct that lies beyond all limits of toleration [or none in the case of New Woke]. Criminal conduct violates basic rights and destroys human security. We reserve the hard treatment of punishment for conduct that damages the things we hold most fundamentally valuable. Climate change is causing precisely such damage ...

... I have proposed that international criminal law should be expanded to include a new criminal offence that I call postericide. It is committed by intentional or reckless conduct fit to bring about the extinction of humanity. Postericide is committed when humanity is put at risk of extinction by conduct performed either with the intention of making humanity go extinct, or with the knowledge that the conduct is fit to have this effect.

When a person knows that their conduct will impose an impermissible risk on another and acts anyway, they are reckless. It is in the domain of reckless conduct, making climate change worse, that we should look for postericidal conduct.

From this bizarre journey through what passes for McKinnon’s thought processes comes the demand that challenging climate hoax orthodoxy should be a criminal offence under international law. The fascistic nature of such a demand will not have penetrated her New Woke self-obsession. McKinnon published a book entitled *The Ethics of Climate Governance* – the ethics of *global* governance would be more like it. No wonder UNESCO promoted her article. By the way, surely Cambridge academic Patricia MacCormack must be guilty of McKinnon’s ‘postericide’ given that she says: ‘The only solution for

climate change is letting the human race become extinct.' Ah, no, you see MacCormack and McKinnon are both New Woke and believe in the climate change hoax and that is always a get out of jail card.

Greenpeace co-founder Patrick Moore, an open-and-shut case of 'postercidal conduct', emphasises another deception in the climate change racket. The IPCC's brief is not to investigate the causes of climate change, but only *human* causes. No wonder it basically ignores the Sun. It is specifically focused on alleged human causes because that's the answer the Cult needs for its manipulation. If IPCC personnel found there was no significant human impact there would be no reason for its existence and they would lose their share of what the *Climate Change Business Journal* estimated to be \$1.5 trillion a year even at the time of the UN Paris climate conference in 2015. It will be much more now. American writer Upton Sinclair said: 'It is difficult for a man to understand something when his salary depends upon his not understanding it.' This is another Cult technique to pressure its gofers to do and say what the Cult wants or lose their income. The IPCC outrageously claims to be dedicated to providing the world with objective, scientific information when its controlling core is a climate Mafioso. Scientist and engineer David Evans, a full-time or part-time consultant for eleven years to the Australian Greenhouse Office (now the Department of Climate Change), has a far more accurate assessment of what is a fantastic conspiracy to deceive. He said the theory of human-caused global warming was based 'on a guess that was proved false by empirical evidence during the 1990s', but most scientists wouldn't say so when 'the gravy train was too big, with too many jobs, industries, trading profits, political careers, and the *possibility of world government* and total control riding on the outcome' (my emphasis). With that Evans hit the nail bang on the sweet spot. This is what the hoax of the human-caused 'climate crisis' is really all about. He said that 'governments and their tame climate scientists now outrageously maintain the fiction that carbon dioxide is a dangerous pollutant' when the evidence they are wrong was overwhelming.

Agenda 21/2030

These two interconnected UN 'agendas' are the major means through which the Cult is exploiting the climate change lie to impose its Hunger Games structure of global control. Agenda 21 was launched by Maurice Strong (the Rothschilds and Rockefellers) at the Rio Earth Summit in 1992. Agenda 2030 was established by the UN General Assembly in 2015. Agenda 21 refers to centrally-controlling everything in the 21st century while Agenda 2030 is a series of 17 target 'goals' which, if implemented in the way planned, would achieve the global dictatorship demanded by Agenda 21. In short they are two versions of the same conspiracy. Agenda 21 has been accepted and promoted across the world right down into local councils. Check your council or state and see if they are implementing Agenda 21 and 'sustainable development'. The latter might seem at first to be laudable. Why wouldn't we want human activity to be 'sustainable' in the long term? BIG RED FLAG AND BRIGHT FLASHING LIGHTS: That's not the United Nations or Cult definition of the word. To them it means the excuse to impose world dictatorship. These are the 'sustainable development goals' and headings of Agenda 2030:

1. No Poverty
2. Zero Hunger
3. Good Health and Well-being
4. Quality Education
5. Gender Equality
6. Clean Water and Sanitation
7. Affordable and Clean Energy
8. Decent Work and Economic Growth
9. Industry, Innovation, and Infrastructure
10. Reducing Inequality
11. Sustainable Cities and Communities

12. Responsible Consumption and Production
13. Climate Action
14. Life Below Water
15. Life On Land
16. Peace, Justice, and Strong Institutions
17. Partnerships for the Goals

Once again these would appear to be supportable ambitions except that we are looking at a constantly-used Cult technique that tells people what they want to hear without revealing the real reason for what is planned. We should always filter claims to 'care about humanity' with the knowledge that those behind the UN are Death Cultists motivated by horrific intent. Why would practicing Satanists and paedophiles of the Cult with a pathological hatred for humans want those 'goals' to be achieved including no poverty or hunger? These are the controllers of global finance that have created poverty and hunger and use both as political tools. The Devil is not so much in the alleged 'goals'; it is in the means to achieve them (or the illusion of achieving them more to the point). This is how Agenda 21 intends to do that as outlined in its own documents:

- End national sovereignty
- State planning and management of all land resources, ecosystems, deserts, forests, mountains, oceans and fresh water; agriculture; rural development; biotechnology; and ensuring 'equity'
- The state to 'define the role' of business and financial resources
- Abolition of private property
- 'Restructuring' the family unit
- Children raised by the state
- People told what their job will be
- Major restrictions on movement
- Creation of 'human settlement zones'
- Mass resettlement as people are forced to vacate land where they live
- Dumbing down education
- Mass global depopulation in pursuit of all the above

This is the very wish-list of the Cult that I have been exposing for more than 30 years and the US Green New Deal proposed by New Woke Democrat extremists is a political manifesto to implement Agenda 21/2030 as are similar versions of the 'Deal' around the world. This is what the UN Agendas and the Green New Deals really mean behind their Orwell-speak:

An end to national sovereignty:

I don't really need to elaborate on this one after what I have said already about the plan to delete countries for a structure of world government, superstates and regions. Maps already exist for a regionalised Europe with countries eliminated and America is being regionalised by the Tiptoe technique through 500 regional councils in the 50 states called Councils of Governments (COGs) and Metropolitan Planning Organizations (MPOs). The next stage, the Smart Region Initiative (SRI), was launched in Arizona in 2019 with a view to expansion across the country.

State planning and management of all land resources, ecosystems, deserts, forests, mountains, oceans and fresh water; agriculture; rural development; biotechnology; and ensuring 'equity':

This is the centralised control of everything that I have been warning about and it's already happening

with some American states even claiming ownership of rainwater that falls on private land.

The state to 'define the role' of business and financial resources:

This means the central control of all finance and business and the end of private enterprise not supported by the World State. The systematic targeting of small mom and pop businesses and much bigger ones with taxation and regulation is aimed at destroying them all eventually so that only giant Cult corporations answering to the Cult world government will control everything – see Amazon for a start and survey the world since the 'virus' lockdowns for the extraordinary acceleration of this goal. Global financial dictatorship is the role of the planned world central bank with the European Central Bank, World Bank and International Monetary Fund all Totalitarian Tiptoes to that end and the same with the cashless single global digital currency that I have been saying was coming since the early 1990s. This is today being implemented with the disappearance of cash (again accelerated by its insane demonisation as a source of 'catching the virus'). The economic sales-pitch of 'sustainable development' includes an 'end to poverty' which really means a re-distribution of wealth to make the mega-rich even richer and Western middle and working classes seriously poorer. Another pledged goal of 'eliminating hunger' (as if the Cult cares) is to justify health-destroying genetically-modified crops requiring stupendous amounts of pesticides and herbicides to grow and the end of eating meat.

Abolition of private property:

This is the central control of all property (except for the elite) with rents so high that people are forced into the micro-'apartments' that are now being built around the world. Calls for an end to private property ownership have now started in line with this plan. Young people are being prevented from entering the property market by sky-high prices, student debt and other financial suppression.

Rockefeller family insider Dr Richard Day told those Pittsburgh paediatricians in 1969:

Privately-owned housing will become a thing of the past. The cost of housing and financing housing would gradually be made so high that most people couldn't afford it ... Young people would more and more become renters, particularly in apartments or condominiums.

People would not be able to buy [homes] and gradually more and more of the population would be forced into small apartments [the micro-apartments]. Small apartments which would not accommodate very many children.

The last point is part of a depopulation agenda and Day also indicated the control aspects of telling you where you are going to live:

Ultimately, people would be assigned where they would live and it would be common to have non-family members living with you. This by way of your not knowing just how far you could trust anybody. This would all be under the control of a central housing authority. Have this in mind ... when they ask, 'How many bedrooms in your house? How many bathrooms in your house? Do you have a finished game room?' This information is personal and is of no national interest to government under our existing Constitution. But you'll be asked those questions ...

Dictating where people live is happening in the Cult blueprint for the world – China.

'Restructuring' the family unit

The end of the family is a constant theme of Cult-related documents and organisations. The deletion of ever more parental rights which are handed to state institutions like schools and social services is this

aspect of the agenda unfolding in plain sight without the dots being connected. Remember how student debt campaigner Wayne Johnson said the loan crisis was leading to the ‘ever-increasing destruction of the fabric of America’ with people ‘not getting married, not having children’. It’s all calculated cause and effect.

Children raised by the state

This is obviously related to the end of the family and the longer term plan is for the end of even human procreation as I will be coming to. Fantastic numbers of children now being literally stolen from loving parents by social services through outrageous misrepresentation and lies in secret ‘family courts’ is this plan at work. Insider Aldous Huxley described the end of parenthood in his prophetic *Brave New World*.

People told what their job will be:

George Orwell wasn’t kidding in his portrayal of a Big Brother world in which every aspect of human life is dictated including work slavery.

Major restrictions on movement:

Why do you think Cult-serving and manipulated climate extremists are targeting flying and car use? Look at the effect on movement of the ‘pandemic’. This further explains the obsession with imposing autonomous vehicles in which the computer limits where you can go. Governments are banning the sale of petrol and diesel vehicles in favour of anything-but Green electric power because that is the stepping-stone to full-blown electric autonomous vehicles. ‘Saving the planet’ is only an excuse to advance this agenda. Britain is committed to banning new petrol and diesel vehicles from 2035 while others including Denmark, Ireland, the Netherlands and Sweden go for 2030. The knock-on effect for employment in the auto-industry can be seen with predictions of massive job losses due to the nature of electric car production. Where do those people go? Did I mention the Hunger Games Society?

Creation of ‘human settlement zones’:

Translated from the Orwellian this means people being forced into tightly-packed mega-cities of round-the-clock surveillance and micro-apartments that I have described. Their code-name is ‘Smart Cities’ (once again see China). Tightly-packed teeming cities of human chaos and misery will also provide low-vibrational energy centres on which the Cult ‘gods’ can feed.

Mass resettlement as people are forced to vacate land where they live:

Another reference to what is now happening with the destruction of rural communities, businesses and job opportunities, removal of shops and banks, plus increased transport costs, to pressure people to head for the cities.

Dumbing down education:

This has already been achieved and is programming the mentality of New Wokeness in which ‘education’ is confused with indoctrination and downloading the Cult perception program is perceived as ‘knowing it all’. Ponder the following climate change excuse for ‘dumbing down education’ from the United Nations (again) Education, Scientific, and Cultural Organization (UNESCO):

Generally, more highly educated people who have higher incomes can consume more resources than poorly educated people who tend to have lower incomes. In this case more education increases the threat

to sustainability.

Are you getting it yet New Wokeness?

Mass global depopulation in pursuit of all of the above:

With the advent of the AI world humans are no longer required by the Cult in such numbers and even more so with the end of procreation. The plan for a mass cull of the global population appears in many Cult-related documents under terms like 'population control' and a 'sustainable population'. There are many ways this is being done through the systematic undermining of immune systems through food, drink, vaccines and radiation fields, and this really becomes a cinch once human brains are connected to AI. Those you want to remove are just a press of a button away or the click of a mouse.



Figure 276: The Pied Piper of Stockholm.

The horrific multi-faceted agenda for humanity outlined here is being justified by the 'climate emergency' and an 'existential threat' to humanity which *isn't actually happening*. We are looking at mass-hysteria which is defined as 'mass psychogenic illness, collective hysteria, group hysteria, or collective obsessional behavior, which transmits collective illusions of threats, whether real or imaginary, through a population in society as a result of rumours and fear'. Mass hysteria is another example of wave entanglement with individual hysteria feeding the entangled collective to generate group hysteria. Pump-primers shout fire and the crowd starts running while others keep shouting fire ongoing in science, academia and media. Everybody's shouting fire and so there must be a fire even if no one can see the smoke (see 'virus' hysteria). The term 'hysteria' is such a perfect description of what is happening that a panel of German linguists decided to 'ban' it in relation to climate change. They choose a new word or phrase to 'ban' every year and went for 'climate hysteria' on the grounds that it 'defames climate protection efforts and the climate protection movement, and discredits important discussions about climate protection'. This is Orwell's Newspeak which deletes words that allow the 'wrong' opinions to be articulated. The 'panel's' other banned words and terms include 'alternative facts', 'do-gooder', 'liar press' and 'welfare tourism' (a description of migrants exploiting the welfare system). I'm sure you have no problem seeing the pattern. Another head-shaker is that those eventually sitting at the centre of the target for freedom-deletion are the very people demanding in organisations like Extinction Rebellion that their own mass slavery – and that of their children and grandchildren – is implemented while anyone arguing against that should be silenced ([Fig 276](#) overleaf). I do not exaggerate when I say that great swathes of humanity are descending into mental illness although thank goodness far from everyone. Patrick Moore was right when he said of the green insanity movement: 'I fear for the end of the enlightenment. I fear an intellectual Gulag with Greenpeace as my prison guards.' That is exactly the plan, but it doesn't have to be. The idea has been to indoctrinate the young through constant climate programming in schools and universities to ensure the Big Lie is so ingrained that they will accept and even demand the Cult agenda for total global control of every man, woman and child.

Heere's Greta (right on cue)

The Swedish 16-year-old Greta Thunberg was wheeled out specifically to rally the young to rebel against their elders in climate protests that insist freedom is deleted for the rest of their lives. I don't say for a second that Thunberg knows this. She is a tragic puppet and her story connected to organisations pressing the Cult agenda while she won't know there is a Cult never mind she is doing its bidding. She is, however, revealing in her arrogance ever-increasing signs of believing her own publicity and hype. Thunberg doesn't seem to know much at all and only parrots a stream of mantras and platitudes such as 'listen to the science' when she has no idea what 'the science' is. She never expands on 'the science' and mainstream media sycophants never ask her. The 'science is settled' mantra is utter bullshit and leads to people who would otherwise question climate change orthodoxy to stay quiet in fear of being accused by climate propagandists of 'denying the science'. The theme applies especially to those in the academic arena who have jobs to protect. What if the 'science' wasn't 'science' at all? What if it's only a script written by the Cult to which most of mainstream 'science' has long sold its soul? Well, it is. Greta Thunberg has been diagnosed with obsessive-compulsive disorder, autism and Asperger's syndrome and been credited with mystical powers by her Climate Cult mother, Malena Ernman, a super-New Woke Swedish singer, while her father Svante Thunberg is a talent agent and managing director of a media company. Greta's 'powers' are claimed to include the ability to see carbon dioxide with the naked eye and how it flows out of chimneys and changes the atmosphere. I kid you not. Does she see the plants grow bigger and stronger, too, when CO₂ increases? What absurdity although perfect if you want to create a new religious icon. Exploiting a 16-year-old connects with the young and gives her a free-ride with the mainstream media despite the impact of her elite-orchestrated words and actions being global in nature and fundamental to the transformation of human society. By contrast German teenager Naomi Seibt who once bought the climate change lie and then spoke out after seeing through the hoax is treated rather differently. The girl dubbed the 'anti-Greta Thunberg' is highly articulate and well-researched which means she does not get invited to elite events. Instead she is presented through implication and association as some kind of white nationalist extremist and of course the ubiquitous 'anti-Semitic' by the usual suspects that include, as always, the 'anti-establishment' establishment-to-its-DNA London *Guardian*. I bet you're in shock. We should have a live public debate between Thunberg and Seibt for all young people to watch. An Internet video reveals a code that Thunberg uses whenever she is questioned in the street about 'the science'. She takes off her hat and immediately a minder steps in to whisk her away. She is watched over by unpleasant and aggressive plain clothes security guards sometimes outnumbering protestors with her in Sweden. These heavies will not let anyone with real questions anywhere near her. Who is paying for them? Who is financing the whole Thunberg phenomenon? Members and agents of the One-percent are certainly involved in the bankrolling of this most blatant of propaganda operations. I recommend the YouTube video *Greta Thunberg Incorporated: The Exposé* to see the arrogant, authoritarian thugs among her 'security'.

Is anyone really so naive as to believe it's a coincidence that a 16-year-old protesting alone in Sweden suddenly finds herself invited by the One-percent to speak at their elite World Economic Forum conference in Davos, Switzerland, and berate them about climate change? Or that she was given a platform to speak to the world at the Climate Cult-orchestrating *United Nations*? Or that she was sailed across the Atlantic to get to the UN in a ridiculous stunt by those connected to the Monaco royal family in a multi-million yacht that used to be called the Edmond de Rothschild – the man Maurice Strong said was the creator of the environmental movement? Or that a crew filming a high-profile documentary followed her from the time she was sitting 'alone' in her 'spontaneous' one-girl protest outside the Swedish parliament? Or that the person who 'discovered by chance' her 'lone protest' was public relations and financial expert Ingmar Rentzhog who has close connections to the Club of Rome that hatched the climate change hoax from the start? He claims to have come across Thunberg 'by chance' minutes after she

started her first ‘school strike protest’ outside the Swedish parliament. I’m laughing already. Rentzhog trained with the Climate Reality Project led by climate change global propagandist Al Gore and founded the social media platform ‘We Don’t Have Time’ to promote the climate change narrative. Two months after Rentzhog ‘discovered’ Greta in 2018 the Club of Rome held a joint conference with Rentzhog and ‘We Don’t Have Time’. The person who encouraged Thunberg to start her ‘school strike’ and protest at the parliament was the head of Extinction Rebellion in Sweden who had said they needed a cute young face ‘to get help from young people to increase the pace of the transition to a sustainable society’.



Figure 277: Greta and parents promoting Antifa, a violent ‘anti-hate’ hate group so beloved of New Woke.



Figure 278: Pawn in a game she doesn’t begin to understand.



Figure 279: Saint Greta, the Climate Goddess.

I guess another coincidence is that a Thunberg climate change mentor is German climate politician Luisa-Marie Neubauer who is an asset of the ONE Movement funded by other Cult assets like Bill Gates and George Soros (yes, them again) and involving their mate, virtue-signalling rock singer Bono. Soros funds other Thunberg-connected organisations. Luisa-Marie Neubauer has appeared with Thunberg at many public events. ONE is among the most obvious of New Woke astroturf operations you could imagine. The Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation website describes ONE as an organisation that ‘pursues its goals through policy advocacy, grassroots mobilization, communications, and creative campaigning’ which is straight off the pages of the New Woke manipulation manual. The website continues: ‘ONE also mobilizes its 3.2 million members to pressure policymakers to increase their effort, accountability, and transparency in the fight against disease and poverty, particularly in Africa.’ Multi-billionaires care so deeply about poverty, you see. ONE makes ‘the most of technology and social media … [and has] … also become a leading force in educating the public about global health and development and in changing perceptions about aid and its impact’. If we translate that from the bullshit ONE campaigns for the Cult

agenda just like the Open Society network of Soros. Thunberg and her parents profess to be ‘anti-fascist’ in their ‘intersectionality’ with other New Woke sectors and all three have been photographed in t-shirts promoting the violent ‘anti-fascist’ fascist group, Antifa ([Fig 277](#)). ‘I didn’t know’, said Greta. Oh, really – what about your parents? Human-caused climate change is an elite scam and why wouldn’t there be all these elite connections to its propaganda princess? Thunberg is just their unknowing and increasingly arrogant stooge. In my view her climate extremist parents should be ashamed of how they allow her to be exploited and have played such a central role in that. Her obsessive-compulsive disorder can be clearly seen in her unquestioning obsession with a climate end-of-the-world and it’s sad to witness such outrageous exploitation ([Fig 278](#)). The Cult of Greta now includes a huge painting of her looking down in disdain over New Woke and shit-infested San Francisco and her every public move is documented by the media in a colossal exercise in public relations programming – especially of the young ([Fig 279](#)). A further crucial part of the elite promotion of Thunberg is to drive a wedge between old and young, adults and children. This was her carefully-scripted speech to the UN in 2019 and all elements of the Climate Cult agenda are there:

My message is that we’ll be watching you. This is all wrong. I shouldn’t be up here. I should be back in school on the other side of the ocean [Well, go then]. Yet you all come to us young people for hope. How dare you! [Divide young and old by blaming the old for something that’s not happening]. You have stolen my dreams and my childhood with your empty words. [No, Greta, those exploiting you have stolen your childhood]. And yet I’m one of the lucky ones. People are suffering. People are dying [not from human-caused climate change they’re not]. Entire ecosystems are collapsing [not from human-caused climate change they’re not]. We are in the beginning of a mass extinction [no, we’re not], and all you can talk about is money and fairy tales of eternal economic growth [which the Cult wants to delete for the mass of the population]. How dare you! [Ditto to you, Greta.]

For more than 30 years, the science has been crystal clear [like hell it has]. How dare you continue to look away and come here saying that you’re doing enough, when the politics and solutions needed are still nowhere in sight. You say you hear us and that you understand the urgency. But no matter how sad and angry I am, I do not want to believe that. Because if you really understood the situation and still kept on failing to act, then you would be evil. And that I refuse to believe. [So how evil are those seeking to terrify the young that their world is going to end when it’s all a gigantic hoax to delete their freedom for life?]

The popular idea of cutting our emissions in half in 10 years only gives us a 50% chance of staying below 1.5 degrees, and the risk of setting off irreversible chain reactions beyond human control [chain-reactions that don’t exist]. Fifty percent may be acceptable to you. But those numbers do not include tipping points [made up to explain the lack of CO₂ impact], most feedback loops [ditto], additional warming hidden by toxic air pollution or the aspects of equity and climate justice [more bunkum]. They also rely on my generation [divide, divide] sucking hundreds of billions of tons of your CO₂ [the gas of life] out of the air with technologies that barely exist. So a 50% risk is simply not acceptable to us – we who have to live with the consequences [divide, divide].

To have a 67% chance of staying below a 1.5 degrees global temperature rise – the best odds given by the [Cult-created Intergovernmental Panel on Climate Change] – the world had 420 gigatons of CO₂ left to emit back on Jan. 1st, 2018. Today that figure is already down to less than 350 gigatons. How dare you pretend that this can be solved with just ‘business as usual’ and some technical solutions? With today’s emissions levels, that remaining CO₂ budget will be entirely gone within less than eight and a half years.

There will not be any solutions or plans presented in line with these figures here today, because these numbers are too uncomfortable. And you are still not mature enough to tell it like it is [but you are Greta by repeating the crap you have been told to say?]. You are failing us. But the young people are starting to understand your betrayal [divide, divide]. The eyes of all future generations are upon you [divide, divide].

And if you choose to fail us, I say: We will never forgive you [divide, divide].

We will not let you get away with this. Right here, right now is where we draw the line. The world is waking up. And change is coming, whether you like it or not.



Figure 280: The Cult is desperate to turn the young against the old.



Figure 281: The plan is now so transparent. (Image Gareth Icke.)

Yes, Greta, the Cult's change is coming if we and your generation believe garbage like that. We are witnessing yet another inversion in which children tell adults what they should do. There are many stupid adults, large numbers of which are in politics. There are some aware children who have not allowed the Cult to program their perceptions (Greta Thunberg is not one of them). But the idea that children know better in general than intelligent adults with decades of experience is absurd. When I was six, twelve and sixteen I would not have dreamed of telling the world what should be done because, like those of the same age today, *I hadn't lived long enough to credibly know*. The young-old inversion has a clear motive for the Cult: Children and young people today have been subjected to the perception program at its most extreme and it wants those perceptions to prevail and transform society in its image. Program the kids and then have their will imposed on adults who will have known life and experience before child-programming reached its current extremes. No one ever asks Greta Thunberg how many hundreds of millions will die if her carbon targets are met through loss of jobs, food and warmth. The climate hoax divides advocates and 'deniers' and splits young from old on the grounds that the old are responsible for the 'existential threat' to the young (Fig 280). The German branch of the school strike organisation Fridays for Future, officially founded and copyrighted by Greta Thunberg, promoted this agenda when it tweeted: 'Why do grandparents talk to us each year? They won't be around much longer.' German public broadcaster WDR produced a song video featuring a choir of young girls castigating older people for climate change and eating meat. It referred to an imaginary grandma as 'an environmental pig' and warned we 'will not let you get away with this'. WDR called it 'satire' in the face of a disgusted public reaction when it was clearly calculated. 'Satire' is the excuse often used when attempts at indoctrination become too blatant and people see through it. The 'how dare you?' rant about older generations by 16-year-old Cult puppet Thunberg was also an example of this theme. Yes, Greta, how dare older people and the long-gone create an industrial society that allows multimillion dollar yachts to be built for your propaganda stunts and aircraft to quietly – *shhhhh* – fly your sailing crew back home across the Atlantic

while you posture your carbon self-purity? The Cult's desire to start a war between young and old has many motivations. One is that older people were born long before the climate change hoax began and many can see through the manipulation and contradictions. They must be perceived by the young as the villains and the enemy to be vanquished rather than wisdom and experience worth listening to ([Fig 281](#)).

Increasing the hype



Figure 282: Why would the One-percent invite Greta Thunberg to berate them on climate change? This is why.



Figure 283: Same song-sheet, different singers.

Thunberg was invited again in 2020 to the World Economic Forum in Davos, Switzerland, a 100 percent front for the One-percent and the Cult behind the climate change hoax and the creation of an Orwellian, AI-controlled, Orwellian global state ([Fig 282](#)). Why would these multi-billionaires invite a 16-year-old to castigate them at their own conference for the second year in a row and repeat the crap that 'our world is still on fire'? This chapter alone has answered that question and they will drop her like a stone when she has served their purpose. She outrageously claimed that if we don't do what she said we are not acting 'as if you loved your children above all else'. She added that 'we don't want these things done in 2050, 2030, or even 2021 – we want this done now'. Who is this '*we*'? The One-percenter watching her speak at Davos for sure and certainly not the general public. Donald Trump appeared at the elite propaganda-fest to deliver a speech warning against believing the climate 'prophets of doom' in a clear reference to Thunberg sitting in the audience. He was, however, pretty much a lone voice. Instead we had another burst of baloney from Prince Charles who remember said in 2009 that we had twelve years to save the world from irretrievable climate and ecosystem collapse ([Fig 283](#)). Charles travelled to Davos in a private jet and electric car to make a speech promoting the demands of the Climate Cult. In the less than two weeks before the speech Charles had flown four times in private jets and a helicopter with the aircraft flying a total of 16,000 miles at a cost to the UK taxpayer of \$280,000. This is a man who has flown 125 miles in a helicopter to make a speech about the dangers of aircraft emissions. Without a hint of embarrassment he presented himself at Davos as an environmental champion and called for 'eco-taxes', a world economy with nature at its centre (while reducing CO₂ that sustains nature), and new AI technologies – all from the Cult's letter to Santa, or Satan. He of course championed 'sustainability' and proposed a transformation of the global economy justified by climate change that precisely reflected the Cult agenda. He said:

Now it is time to take it to the next level. In order to secure our future and to prosper we need to evolve our economic model.

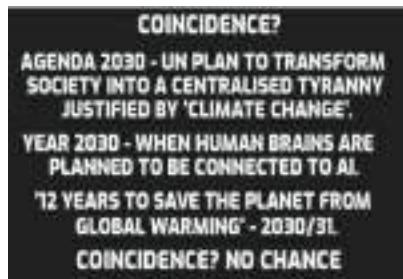


Figure 284: The year by which the Cult wants its agenda pretty much in place.

So many deadlines for the end of the world through ‘runaway’ climate change have come and gone, but like all good cults they just keep announcing a new date when the last one passed without incident. The latest doomsday is around 2030 which is a highly significant date that turns up in many guises. It was mentioned yet again by Prince Charles in his Davos speech. Here are three other examples: When the latest date of ‘twelve years to save the planet’ was first announced that would take us to around 2030. The UN list of goals to save the planet from climate change by transforming global society into a centralised dictatorship is called Agenda 2030. The year given by Google executive Ray Kurzweil and other Silicon Valley technocrats for connecting the human brain to artificial intelligence is 2030 ([Fig 284](#)). Is this yet another coincidence? What do you think when AI is being promoted as an answer to climate change? The hoax has hog-tied almost every politician into some level of compliance. There are the majority who buy the lie and say ‘something must be done’ and the rest who may be somewhat or totally sceptical, but still feel they have to go along with the farce for electoral or reputational reasons. This is what happens once the Cult has decreed and implanted the ‘norm’. Even people who see through it are mostly too intimidated to say so.

Then there is the feeling that the orthodoxy wouldn’t be repeated so incessantly if there was nothing to it. Not every fact may be true, this mentality says, but there must be some basis of truth or why would everyone keep repeating the same claims? Well, when a disease is (genuinely) spreading – in this case a perceptual disease – does everyone get the same disease? Yes. Everyone in the establishment was repeating that Iraq had weapons of mass destruction. Was there *any* truth to that *whatsoever*? No. Once people grasp that human-caused climate change and its alleged catastrophic consequences is a mega-scam – not some of it, *all of it* – the mist clears and the monumental deceit is in plain sight.

Wake up Wokers. You are being hypnotised, mesmerised and shafted and I care about that enough to take your abuse when freedom for the rest of your lives at stake.

CHAPTER TEN

Are you New Woke?

Whom the gods would destroy, they first make mad – Euripides

How strange that the gas of life is depicted as the gas of death while China, the world's biggest industrial producer of CO₂, is not the focus of Climate Cult outrage. China's emissions in 2019 were more than the United States, European Union and Japan combined and reportedly some 27 percent of the world total.

Outrage instead is reserved only for Western countries which, crazy as it may be, are making efforts to reduce their 'carbon footprint'. One commentator said of Greta Thunberg: 'I don't see her in Beijing or Delhi.' There is a reason for that. China is the blueprint for global control and must not be criticised by those who seek to globally emulate this New Woke utopia. Oh, no, New Wokers might cry, we don't want to be like China. The evidence proves otherwise. Demand after dystopian demand by the New Woke and Climate Cult mentality is straight from the playbook of the Chinese Communist Party and Stalinist Russia come to that – and so is every aspect of the 'virus' lockdowns. Chairman Mao who forced communism on China's immense population in 1949 was a Cult operative and in the decades that have followed the country has been the incubator for the global technological surveillance dictatorship. The Second World War was a Cult-manipulated Problem-Reaction-Solution that brought pre-planned colossal political change. China became communist; Stalin's Russia swept across Eastern Europe; Israel was established; and the United Nations and other globally-centralised institutions were created on the Tiptoe to world government. Brutal centralised political and military control in China had allowed the Cult's Orwellian society to advance more quickly than in the West where they still (until the 'virus' lockdowns) had to pay lip-service to freedom and 'democracy'. In China when they want to impose a new stage of dystopian control they simply do it (and now so does the West). If you want to see what is planned for the rest of the world tomorrow look at China today and therefore we have 'New Woke' billionaires and corporations owned by the Cult, including Google, working closely with the Chinese dictators while claiming to care about 'values'. A report in the *Wall Street Journal* described how US tech giants including Google and IBM are supporting China's multibillion-dollar surveillance industry: 'US companies, including Seagate Technology PLC, Western Digital Corp. and Hewlett Packard Enterprise Co., have nurtured, courted and profited from China's surveillance industry ... Several have been involved since the industry's infancy.' IBM was exposed for collaborating with the Nazis and their concentration camps (the Cult has no borders). The emulation of China in the West is now in overdrive thanks to the pandemic scam. China is where Maurice Strong ended up, the instigator for the Rothschilds and Rockefellers of the climate change hoax. We are led to believe that China is a self-contained entity and the Western world is on the other 'side'. Not at the Cult level they're not. Where did the 'virus pandemic' publicly start? *China*.

'Capitalism' is cartelism

A question quite understandably asked is why would the Cult and its One-percent which have secured

predominance through capitalism want a global society based on communism and Marxism? It would appear to be a contradiction, but it's not. First of all the Cult wants its own form of centralised tyranny called a technocracy or government and control of society and industry by an elite of technical experts with no ballot box required. This is the global control system fast-emerging out of Silicon Valley. I will be explaining the background to the technocracy and for now I'll stay with the familiar communism/Marxism of which technocracy is a technological impersonation and expansion. All are interchangeable with fascism. The experience for the population is the same – top-down dictatorship. A second answer to why the One percent would want a communistic-type society when they appear to be 'capitalists' is that the Cult has secured global power through *cartelism* not *capitalism*. If you take capitalism to be a free market in which the most efficient, effective and creative win the day then that is absolutely not the world that we live in. When Cambridge academic Patricia MacCormack denounces the hierarchy of 'capitalism' as the problem and the reason that human existence must cease she is missing this very point. There are many flaws in leaving everything to the 'free market' and I don't believe that essential public services should be subjected to often vicious and people-destroying 'free-market capitalism'. Even worse, however, is when the market is not even close to being 'free' in the first place. The Cult is not interested in 'free' markets when it seeks complete control of everything. Instead it has constantly sought to impose its monopoly over every aspect of human life through ever-expanding corporations that destroy or buy-out opposition until capitalism is replaced by rigged-market cartelism. Prices are kept low to undercut competitors until monopoly is secured and then those prices (or *censorship* in the case of social media and Google/YouTube/Facebook/Twitter) begin to soar. You don't like the new price? Too bad. Who else are you going to buy from? You don't like our censorship? Where else are you going to go? Limitless Cult money means that its corporations don't have to make a profit on the way to monopoly while 'competing' companies have to watch the bottom line and can't compete. Amazon, Google, YouTube, Twitter and Facebook are examples and we have the cartels of Big Pharma, Big Biotech, Big Oil, Big Media, Big Food, and so on. They become so powerful – and so lavish with their political donations – that they own governments no matter what politicians may say in public. Facebook's Mark Zuckerberg is 'questioned' on Capitol Hill by politicians that take Facebook political donations. It's called democracy apparently.



Figure 285: A man who says this ploughs tens of billions into 'social justice' and New Woke groups worldwide? Don't worry – he's not playing them like a stringed instrument or anything.

If you compare Cult cartelism with Cult communism/Marxism they are the same accumulation of power at the centre, or the top in MacCormack's hierarchy. Anyone think that the leadership elite in communist China don't live a vastly more privileged lifestyle than the rest of the population? Or that the same didn't happen in Stalinist Russia and every other Marxist utopia? Why do New Wokers think that communism/Marxism/socialism has been responsible for the deaths of some 100 million people amid mass-murder in Cambodia, Siberian gulags, and 're-education' camps of the Chinese Cultural Revolution? Western cartelism and Chinese communism are the same elite control systems with communism even more effective as an elite blueprint. Cartels in the West have to be manipulated into place through a sequence of acquisition and deletion of competition while with communism you have an

imposed hierarchical structure of top-down control through which the government dictatorship enforces its will over everything and everyone. What is a communist/Marxist government except a single gigantic *cartel*? The Cult prefers communist structures for this reason and it is working to impose a technological version of that on the entire world with the climate change and ‘pandemic’ hoaxes as the predominant excuse for its imposition. Marxism is not ‘government of the people’ but government of the Cult with the added bonus of enforcement by a police/military state. Perhaps it may now dawn on New Wokers why a ruthless ‘capitalist’ (cartelist) like George Soros would pour tens of billions into New Woke and climate change organisations while saying this: ‘I am basically there to make money, I cannot and do not look at the social consequences of what I do.’ He’s scamming you Wokers and *big-time* ([Fig 285](#) overleaf). The perceptual game has been to sell the idea that you either believe in capitalism or communism/socialism. What they don’t want you to know is that either way the Cult and its elite are always in control. Which ‘polarity’ do you want to rule you because either way it will be *us*. I coined the term in the 1990s of ‘opposames’ to describe apparent opposites that are in fact the same. Communism and fascism which are different names for the same basic control system are obvious cases. From this perspective you will not be shocked to hear that Karl Marx (1818-1883), the official originator of Marxism, was a Cult asset and gofer. In particular he was a front man for the major network within the Cult known as Sabbatian-Frankism which is represented by, among so many others, the Saudi Arabian fake royal family and the controlling networks of government, intelligence agencies and military in Israel with their serious influence on government, intelligence agencies and military in the United States and worldwide. I reveal in *The Trigger* the Cult background to Karl Marx and the creation of Marxism.

How New Woke was created

The Cult has established an army of naïve New Wokers to campaign for socialism, the don’t-scare-the-children name for Marxism, and it has been coordinated through control of ‘education’. Rebecca Friedrich, a 28-year teacher in the United States who also worked with teacher unions, has detailed in her book, *Standing Up To Goliath*, how those unions have been imposing political indoctrination on children. It turns out that this agenda is precisely what I am exposing to be the Cult agenda. Soviet KGB defector Yuri Bezmenov described decades ago in 1985 how a four-step technique works to subjugate societies for communism. He called the first stage ‘demoralisation’ which he said took 15 to 20 years and involves at least three generations of students being indoctrinated in schools and colleges with the desired perception and ideology while other information is suppressed and demonised. The ideology must not be challenged or questioned and accepted to be self-evident truth. Bezmenov said of the demoralisation stage:

Exposure to true information does not matter anymore. A person who is demoralised is unable to assess true information – the facts tell nothing to him. Even if I shower him with information, with authentic truth, with documents, with pictures, even if I take him by force to the Soviet Union and show him concentration camps he will refuse to believe it until he gets a kick in the back bottom [realises he has been had by a Marxist government taking over his country]. When the military boot crashes then he will understand.

I keep emphasising that when the dystopian society which New Wokers demand is in place they will be the first to feel its boot up their arse. Try doing what Extinction Rebellion does in London on the streets of Beijing. Yuri Bezmenov said of such ‘revolutionaries of the people’: ‘They think they will come to power, but that will never happen, of course.’ They are only Cult fodder to impose its will before they, too, will be targeted or eliminated. It’s already happening with feminists once high in the New Woke hierarchy now attacked for having the wrong opinion about transgender activists dismantling the freedoms of women. There are many areas and subjects on which I would disagree with Victor Davis Hanson, an American military historian and professor emeritus of Classics at California State University,

Fresno, but he was absolutely right in an article in 2019 about the way ‘revolutionaries’ become the targets of their own ‘revolution’. He said that ‘liberalism and progressivism’ (actually New Wokeism which has hijacked liberalism) will go the same way. Winston Churchill talked of how ‘each one hopes that if he feeds the crocodile enough the crocodile will eat him last’. I tell the story in *The Trigger* about how the Jacobins were a Cult front which hijacked the French Revolution and were behind what is known as ‘The Terror’ in France in 1793 and 1794 which killed 17,000 ‘enemies of the Revolution’. Victor Davis Hanson wrote:

Once liberalism and progressivism give way to Jacobinism – and they often do, as we have seen in revolutionary France, China, and Russia – no leftist is safe from the downward spiral to ideological cannibalism. Yesterday’s true believer is today’s counter-revolutionary and tomorrow’s enemy of the people ...

... the voices of the sane and the moderate are usually crushed in revolutionary cycles where extremism operates on its own logic and trajectory – until chaos and cannibalism finally lead even to the extremists’ own suicide.

We have reached the point in Bezmenov’s demoralisation where creations of the New Woke perceptual download are entering politics as with Congresswoman Alexandria Ocasio-Cortez and her Green New Deal Marxism. The influence of her mindset has turned the Democrats into the New Woke Party increasingly dominated by the likes of Ocasio-Cortez and the rest of the so-called ‘Squad’ – Representatives Ilhan Omar of Minnesota, Ayanna Pressley of Massachusetts and Rashida Tlaib of Michigan. The same has happened to the Labour, Liberal Democrat, Green and Scottish National Parties in the UK and their like across the world. This is certainly the case in Germany and Sweden where New Woke parties have opened the doors to the Cult’s mass migration agenda and dubbed anyone who questions the impact as Nazis, bigots and racists. US President Abraham Lincoln said: ‘The philosophy of the school room in one generation will be the philosophy of government in the next.’ Oh, how the Cult knows that. Bezmenov’s demoralisation stage is followed by what he called ‘destabilisation’, ‘crisis’ and ‘normalisation’ by which time what would earlier have been dismissed as crazy is now the new normal and society is transformed. Can anyone really deny that this has happened in those same 15 to 20 years (actually even less) with the extremes of climate change hysteria, political correctness, censorship, mass immigration, and immensely expanded definitions of racism, sexism and gender? New Wokeness is calling for everything required for the Hunger Games world to become reality: Economic devastation, de-industrialisation and global control to ‘save us from climate change’; political correctness to make the population silence itself to block exposure of what is happening; censorship of non-Woke information and opinions by Cult corporations cheered by New Wokers when before the Bezmenov sequence young people were protesting to *demand* freedom of speech; mass immigration and open borders to fulfil the Cult plan for divide and rule and deletion of countries; and the transformation of the sense of gender for deeply sinister reasons that I’ll be coming to.

It may seem that I am condemning those that call themselves ‘Woke’ when actually I’m not doing that. I am not condemning the *people*, but exposing their *actions and behaviour* which is a different thing. I understand *why* they do and say what they do. Their perceptions have been programmed from the day they were born and ever more emphatically as they have passed through the ‘education’ indoctrination machine. The programming has been merciless and unceasing and I have been saying for years that we are looking at the most perceptually-manipulated generations in known human history now technology and social media are employed to that end. It is amazing that so many young people have seen through the program given how fierce and extreme it has been and they must summon the courage to speak out and refuse to have their world and campuses transformed into tyrannies by New Woke insanity. Would you condemn a computer for doing what someone else has encoded it to do? This would be crazy and

with the scale of today's human programming that analogy is valid. I am pointing out the consequences of New Woke behaviour and the facts that are kept from them. I am offering another way of viewing the world to maybe stimulate some self-reflection on how The Program is impacting upon society. I don't condemn *them*. I feel sorry for them for what they are being subjected to by a psychopathic and satanic system that cares nothing for their wellbeing and uses them as imposition fodder.

Re-education is working

A poll of American 18-24-year-olds in 2019 found that 61 percent were open to a 'socialist society' and another found that 70 percent of millennials (born approximately between 1981 and 1996) would be 'somewhat or extremely likely' to vote for a socialist candidate. Two others found that 42 percent of Americans aged 18 to 39 would vote for a socialist president and that nearly 50 percent of young Americans would like a socialist government. The openly-socialist multi-millionaire, private jet passenger Bernie Sanders had young people as his support base to be the Democrat contender to face Trump in the 2020 election. He failed, but you can see the trend and 'socialism' (communism/fascism/technocracy) will be pushed even more in the wake of the 'Covid-19' hoax as we shall see. The other associated finding is that young people have a diminishing respect for capitalism. Those *for* socialism and *against* capitalism have their origins in 'educational' indoctrination (another version of communist 're-education') and in the economic consequences that the Cult has imposed upon them. First you tell young people that cartelism is capitalism and indebt them for much of their lives with student loans from 'capitalist' companies. This understandably turns them against capitalism which they mistake for cartelism while they are also indoctrinated at school and university into believing that socialism (communism/Marxism) is the panacea for all their ills. Marginalisation and misrepresentation of history purposely suppresses the horrendous reality of Marxist/socialist totalitarian regimes on the grounds that those who do not learn from the mistakes of history are destined to repeat them. After all, *repeating* them from the Cult's point of view is the whole idea and this time on a global scale. The Cult *wants* people to see how unfair society is because it adds to demands for 'change' in the form of socialist 'change' which is nothing more than changing the nature of One-percent control. The theme appeared to be further emphasised in a survey of 34,000 people by the US Zionist Edelman communications company across 28 countries in which 56 percent said capitalism is doing more harm than good. Damage done by cartelism masquerading as capitalism is far worse and I note that with capitalism (the misrepresentation of capitalism) as a target of the Cult this 'survey' and its findings were perfectly timed. The Cult both inverts the truth at every turn and seeks to present everything as a choice between black and white, literally and symbolically. You must choose between capitalism (cartelism) and socialism (communism). The fact that it's possible to protect the poor and needy (with a view to them not being poor and needy), have public control of essential services and a vibrant truly free market without cartels is not something that enters the equation. Nor is the fact that devolving power from the centre for people to make decisions about their lives within their own communities is a nightmare for cults and elites when it denies them the centralisation of power essential for the few to control the many. Every solution is more centralisation when the opposite is the case (as usual). Global bodies should be vehicles for *cooperation* between countries and communities – not centrally-directed dictatorships.



Figure 286: Mirror anyone?

Many New Wokers demand equality of outcome which is the death knell for freedom, vibrant creativity and drive. The Soviet Union had equality of outcome in that everything was shite for the general population. Equality of outcome always creates a race to the bottom which is what the Hunger Games Society requires to impose a world where everyone is equally poor and dependent on the One-percent to drop their crumbs. Equality of *opportunity* is surely what we should pursue with the understanding that not everyone is equally talented in every aptitude or skill. You can't do something if you can't do it. I repeat: *You can't do something if you can't do it.* This statement must be among the most unchallengeable you could imagine although not for New Wokers who leave rationality on the coat-hook when they enter any situation. To them everything is the result of discrimination, racism, sexism, homophobia, transphobia, any ism or phobia will do (Fig 286). It has nothing to do with ability, drive or expertise. A black woman actress not getting the part to play a white man is simply racism. It's the only possible explanation. Okay, that example is extreme, but when you see how far we have descended into New Woke insanity how long before that, too, is true? How more extreme is that than a bloke with a dick in Canada insisting that female staff at a women's beauty parlour wax his dangly bits because he chooses to self-identify as a woman? If I had said only a few years ago that schools around the world would have drag queens reading stories to very young children for the purpose of gender confusion and indoctrination people would have said that was too farfetched and could never happen. Oh, yes it could – and *is*. Cult indoctrination and extremism has no limits. It was even claimed with extraordinary stupidity that Prince Harry's missus Meghan Markle was forced out of Britain through racism (New Woke orthodoxy) relating to her mixed race when in fact it emerged that she had been planning the move to North America virtually all along. Lawyer Shola Mos-Shogbamimu, a monumental New Woker from what I can see, was doing the rounds of television studios (how very privileged) promoting this line of 'racism' against the mega-privileged private jet climate campaigner Markle. Mos-Shogbamimu describes herself as 'a political and women's rights activist who teaches intersectional feminism to female refugees and asylum seekers, scrutinizes government policies from a gender and diversity inclusion perspective, and co-organises women's marches and social campaigns'. Well, that just about covers everything. She was asked for examples of 'racism' against Markle and her reply was standard New Woke: 'Stop asking me – it's not my job to teach you about racism.' In other words she didn't have any. When a 'race and ethnicity lecturer' called Rachel Boyle claimed on a BBC show that Markle's departure to Canada was a result of 'racism' the British actor Laurence Fox told her: 'It's not racism ... We are the most tolerant lovely country in Europe.' Boyle responded: 'What worries me about your comment is you are a white privileged male.' We now live in a press-enter society founded on tidal-wave levels of brainwashing. When anything happens you press enter and New Woke says racist, sexist, transphobic or climate denier. Fox's reaction to the claim that he was an example of white privilege was right on the money:

Oh my God. I can't help what I am, I was born like this, it's an immutable characteristic: to call me a white privileged male is to be racist – you're being racist.

The New Woke mentality is permanently firewalled from that self-realisation and instead members of Fox's family were targeted for abuse and one was spat at in the street by an 'anti-hate' hater. Fox quit Twitter in the face of the abuse fearing it would damage his career and the ability to provide for his family. At the same time he was getting widespread support from the non-New Woke majority that don't have access to mainstream microphones. By far the largest number of people – even among the young most subjected to the programming – don't buy the extremes of New Woke. The domination of the media narrative and fake grassroots, elite-funded, astroturf groups give a seriously false impression of what the population in general believe. A black lady called June Sarpong, so oppressed by white privilege that she is the BBC's Director of Creative Diversity (don't ask), said of Laurence Fox: 'He couldn't possibly know what it's like to be a person of colour.' Nor could Ms Sarpong know what it was like to be a black slave in apartheid America or South Africa. Claims you often hear from New Wokers that racism is worse than ever today is such an insult to those who experienced full-blown slavery. There are imbalances that still need to be addressed – of course, there always are, and that is also true for white people; but to claim that racism today is more extreme than ever is so obviously a fantasy that it requires no further comment. Jordan Peterson, the Canadian clinical psychologist and professor of psychology at the University of Toronto, has attracted both widespread support and New Woke abuse for his defence of masculinity and true racial equality. He summed up the reverse racism that I am highlighting here:

The idea that you can target an ethnic group with a collective crime, regardless of the specific innocence or guilt of the constituent elements of that group – there is absolutely nothing that is more racist than that. It's absolutely abhorrent.

Halleluiah to that and you can see why New Woker racists hate him.

Press-enter for crazy



Figure 287: Don't tell me anything I don't want to hear.

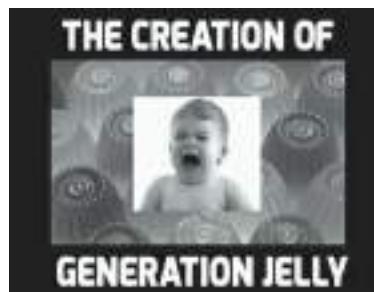


Figure 288: Fortunately it is not a whole generation. Many young people have seen through the manipulation, but it's the others that dominate the microphones to promote the Cult agenda they don't even know exists.



Figure 289: NOOOO! I only want to hear what I have been programmed to believe.



Figure 290: Being offended – the quickest way to hand your power to others.



Figure 291: The 'you must be offended by everything' Program. You're offended? Then choose not to be.

New Wokers have been enslaved in software minds by those that encode the software with the required sense of reality. Codes go on being expanded into ever-greater extremes of ridiculous as they are literally guided through wave entanglement with Cult manipulation along the path to complete mental illness. Daily perceptual programming ('education') throughout their formative years has achieved this supported by their friends and peers affirming the programming that they have also been downloading. Major Internet information sources like YouTube algorithmically offer 'recommendations' that match their search history to discourage access to other information and opinions. New Woke students are described as 'snowflakes' over their demands for safe spaces where they can't be subjected to other views (Fig 287). The cancel culture of de-platformed censorship achieves the same end of *I am right* never being subjected to challenge. I refer to the phenomenon as Generation Jelly although it's not really a generation (Fig 288). Large numbers of young people don't fall for it, but enough do and they are re-writing human society because they have the whole Cult-controlled system and establishment behind them. Demands for 'safe spaces' in colleges and universities are expressions of the fast-emerging monoculture myopia and the same with protests that ban or 'de-platform' speakers who have a different view (Fig 289). One commentator said: 'Very often we [New Wokers] cancel people, destroy people, for saying what everyone thought until 24 hours ago.' New Wokers become locked in an information bubble which becomes their perceptual Bubble. If all they see and hear is their own perceptual programming played back to them no wonder they are convinced at how right and all-knowing they are. We have the indoctrination of the New Woke belief and its imposition on the public by the New Woke Thought Police. The law is that no

one must offend or upset those in the New Woke hierarchy of victimhood by saying anything New Woke does not agree with ([Fig 290](#)). This perfectly serves the Cult agenda of destroying freedom of speech. Meanwhile, if you attack or criticise people and beliefs that are not in the official victim hierarchy (like white men and Christianity) you can be as abusive and racist as you like and the ‘inclusive’, ‘anti-racist’, mob will cheer you on. We all know how stupendously extreme the protection of Woke ‘victims’ has become to destroy human language and discourse in line with Orwell’s Big Brother state. The breathtaking absurdity of PC ‘transgression’ is constantly plumbing still new depths of extremism and ludicrousness. Some are so crackers that even Wokers call them ‘microaggressions’ which are defined by Columbia University psychology professor Derald Wing Sue as ‘brief and everyday slights, insults, indignities and denigrating messages sent to people of colour by well-intentioned white people’. From what I have seen ‘all white people are privileged racist Nazis’ doesn’t seem to be listed as a ‘microaggression’ never mind a macro one. Maybe I missed that meeting. Anything connected to another culture is now ‘cultural appropriation’ and this includes wearing a sombrero sold to you by a Mexican in a tourist shop. The Mexican *wants* to sell it to you, but Wokers say you should not buy it because *they* are offended on the Mexicans’ behalf even when Mexicans are not offended. PC is the world of victimless invented ‘crimes’ in which those not affected dictate what people should be offended about ([Fig 291](#)). This gathers momentum the more the victim culture manipulates through repetition and intimidation and the more people become offended about more and more things that didn’t offend them before. Being offended by people demanding you are silenced doesn’t count. To be offended is to hand your power to that which offends you and this is Planet Cuckoo when being offended is simply a *choice*. You can *choose not to be*. There you go – sorted. The professionally offended should have followed me around for 30 years if they want to see what ridicule and abuse is like. Have I been offended? *No*. I choose not to be offended by *anything* – least of all by ridicule and abuse from bubble-wrap minds. There is no more profound confirmation of your balance and self-security than being able and willing to laugh at yourself which New Woke can’t do, so seriously does it take itself. I don’t understand the sequence of being offended when I don’t experience it. Someone says something you don’t like or agree with. Okay, *and?* Have your say if you feel it’s necessary (it usually isn’t) and get on with your life. Why scramble your emotional state and wavefield state by the irrelevance of being *offended*?

Methodical madness



Figure 292: I'm against everything!!!! (Image by Ben Garrison at Grrgraphics.com.)

If we really cared about the wellbeing of children and young people we would not be protecting them from things they are told to be offended about. We would be encouraging them to be strong, sovereign, individuals who don’t give a shit, never mind take offence, at what anyone says to them or about them. New Wokeness is a virulent, contagious, psychological virus unless you are conscious beyond mind and the five senses. This is the reason we need to understand why New Wokers think and act as they do. They are prisoners of New Wokeness – a perceptual computer virus. Tim Hunt, a Nobel Prize-winning British biochemist, was vilified and had his career severely damaged for a so-called ‘misogynistic joke’ that turned out to be nothing like it was reported to be by a professionally-offended New Woker. What is said,

or more to point *meant*, doesn't matter. How New Woke perceives what is said, while permanently scanning the environment for potential offence, is all that matters for fast-asleep Wokers ([Fig 292](#)). A doctor in England praised a father for stepping in 'manfully' to bring his daughter for an appointment when his wife couldn't make it, but the doctor and his hospital apologised after the family complained that 'manfully' was sexist (the father was a man). It apparently implied that 'women are there to do the childcare' and not men. The complainants are deeply sad people if they think saying 'manfully' to a man is a subject for complaint and all doctors seeing what happened will no longer be focusing fully on the medical problem of the patient. They will be carefully prepreparing every statement in their mind before delivering the words. All over the world in every walk of life this verbal tenterhooks and eggshell-interaction is being experienced and destroying natural discourse, driving wedges between people, and causing ongoing daily anxiety with concern about anything you say. This is again what the Cult requires and New Wokers deliver. Here are just a few of millions of examples of discourse contraction that keep people in a state of constant anxiety to avoid saying the 'wrong' thing:

Oxford University's Equality and Diversity Unit tried to accuse people who avoid eye contact with others of 'racist microaggression'; transgender campaigners condemn such phrases like 'born a man' or 'born a woman' as inaccurate and offensive; 'biologically male' and 'biologically female' are deemed 'problematic' by a US gay rights 'media monitoring' group; Suffolk County Council in the UK stopped using traditional 'Cat's eyes removed' warning signs over fears that people thought real cats may have been killed to manufacture these reflective road safety devices; applause was banned by the National Union of Students' Women's Campaign over concerns that it could 'trigger anxiety' among nervous students with whooping and cheering also targeted. Instead people are told to 'applaud' with 'jazz-hands' which means waving your hands in the air silently like a bunch of prats; braided hairstyles on white people are 'cultural appropriation'; the word 'exotic' is apparently 'a major verbal microaggression' with 'nasty racial underpinnings' (me neither); 'Fat-liberation activists' say the term 'fat' shames people 'who might not fit the conventional beauty standards of our society', but if you *are* fat and okay with that you can 'reclaim' the word as your 'empowering identity'; a guide released by The New School, a private college in New York, said the size of chairs was deemed a microaggression against overweight people. I take it they mean chairs that are not big enough for fat arses; Lucy Delap, a lecturer in British history at Cambridge, says that words including 'genius', 'brilliant' or 'flair' should be discouraged as they carry 'assumptions of gender inequality and also of class and ethnicity'. Ms Delap can at least be sure that no one will ever accuse *her* of being a genius; migrants entering a country illegally cannot be called 'illegal', but 'all white people are racist Nazis' is still okay; anyone who cooks and names their dish 'Jamaican Stew' or 'Tunisian Rice' while not being Jamaican or Tunisian is guilty of microaggressions in the form of 'cultural appropriation' which also includes any white woman wearing hoop earrings. People from Jamaica cooking an 'English breakfast' are fine, though. Phew; a student at Louisiana State University wrote that women styling their eyebrows to make them appear thicker ('eyebrow culture') is an example of 'cultural appropriation'; 'Mother' is a no, no, because it offends transgender activists. The British Medical Association advised members that mothers-to-be should be referred to as 'pregnant people' to avoid offence and 'celebrate diversity' if not sanity; any term that includes the word 'man' is definitely a felony you sexist bastard; singer Ellie Goulding was accused of racism after tweeting a picture of herself wearing an Native American headdress – 'Don't mock a dying race, you insensitive and ignorant excuse of a person' responded a Woker; referring to the United States as a 'land of opportunity' is a microaggression because it 'asserts that race or gender does not play a role in life's successes'; a lecturer at Harvard Law School was told by a student not to use the word 'violate' as in law violation on the grounds that it might trigger traumatic fears about rape; others said rape law should not be taught to protect *law* students from 'distress'. These students are going to make super lawyers and judges then; Sussex University Students' Union warned against using the pronouns 'he' and 'she' to avoid

assumptions about identity. ‘They’ and ‘Them’ are said to be the correct, gender-neutral terms. It’s good that I don’t go there because I’d tell them to stick it up their arse. This phrase avoids microaggressions by the fact that everybody has one – but give them time; ‘Where are you from?’ or ‘Where were you born?’ could be racist microaggressions according to the University of California, Berkeley, as ‘a covert way to say you don’t belong here’; the Student Federation at the University of Ottawa banned yoga sessions. Apparently they were Western ‘cultural appropriation’ of a practice with its origins in Indian Hinduism and there were ‘cultural issues involved in the practice’ that related to ‘oppression, cultural genocide and diasporas due to colonialism and western supremacy’; Clemson University’s diversity training decrees that to be told to be ‘on time’ is a microaggression as ‘time may be considered fluid’ in some cultures; a ‘Seattle councilman’ (shouldn’t that be ‘person’?) expressed concern that hosing down human excrement on sidewalks might be insensitive ‘because it brought back images of the use of hoses against civil-rights activists’.

STOP! STOP! Have mercy, *please*. Only a short while ago you would have been laughed into oblivion if you said any of these things would happen never mind that they would increasingly be the norm.

The dark side of ludicrous

It is easy just to shake the head, laugh and dismiss all this as monumental craziness with the usual ‘political correctness gone mad’ and not to see it as that relevant in the overall scheme of things. Oh, but it is. The tidal wave of insanity is transforming human society and discourse and rapidly re-writing the language in exactly the way that Orwell described in *Nineteen Eighty-Four*. Confirmation of the real intent comes with a \$1.5 million grant by the *US military* to develop a device to allow AI to identify ‘microaggressions’. Why would the military with its focus on killing people be so concerned about people being upset by microaggressions? Well, of course, it wouldn’t. Behaviour modification is the motivation in all of this. The money is being handed to associate professors Christoph Riedl and Brooke Foucault Welles to embark on a three-year project to develop a microaggression sensor. My timbers would be shivered if it doesn’t already exist. Riedl said:

The vision that we have is that you would have a device, maybe something like Amazon Alexa, that sits on the table and observes the human team members while they are working on a problem, and supports them in various ways. One of the ways in which we think we can support that team is by ensuring equal inclusion of all team members.

Put another way: Modify behaviour and give AI an ever greater say in decision-making until it is making *all* the decisions. Now the reason for such military (Cult) interest becomes clear. We are heading down a dark and dangerous road and we have reached the point where the New Woke *Independent* in the UK published a parody article it believed to be real calling for hate laws to be imposed on comedians who tell the ‘wrong’ jokes. The article was submitted under a fake name and not checked out even though its real author, comedian Andrew Doyle, said the content was ‘clearly a hoax’. Doyle has become well known for his invented character of New Woker Titania McGrath through which he exposes New Woke extremism. The article was published suggesting comedians become subject to hate laws because it promoted the *Independent*’s own stance. New Woke tyranny is now so extreme that parody is dying in the face of real life. An example is the British feminist writer Vicky Spratt who said that men who are not willing to date Woke women was an ‘insidious’ trend that will inevitably lead to women being killed by terrorists. How do you make men go out with women they are not attracted to – state-enforced dating? How about a Western version of arranged marriages? A confirmation of the sinister nature of the New Woke mindset and its imposition came from Kyle Jurek, a ‘field organiser’ for the openly-socialist Bernie Sanders campaign to be US president. Jurek was caught on camera by the Project Veritas undercover journalism operation saying this about America under a Sanders New Woke government:

Germany had to spend billions re-educating their fucking people to not be Nazis ... we're probably going to have to do the same fucking thing here. That's kind of what Bernie's fucking like ... 'Hey, free education for everybody', because we're going to have to teach you not to be a fucking Nazi.



Figure 293: Inclusivity is not enough because that's not the Cult agenda.

Who decides what constitutes a 'fucking Nazi'? *They do*. Those decisions are made by black and white minds that are blind to context or shades of grey. It is or it isn't. You are or you're not. You are an 'us' or a 'them'. Tyranny was imposed by Orwell's Big Brother's police state in ways akin to the brutal and notorious Stasi secret police in communist East Germany which enforced the dictatorship and employed an army of spies among the population to inform on those who 'transgressed'. PC censorship, surveillance cameras and fingerprint/eye-reading technology in schools and colleges are specifically designed to make Big Brother tyranny the 'norm' so the adults that children and students become will accept the same norms in global society. Today colleges have organisations under names like 'diversity units' that impose reeducation PC orthodoxy on students while encouraging, even paying, other students to spy on their friends and colleagues and report PC transgressions to the authorities. This includes reporting academics for being non-PC in lectures and their comments. Many have been fired or forced to step down for the mildest of statements and as they have gone those that remain are frozen in fear of transgressing in any way. Britain's University of Sheffield announced plans to hire 20 of its own students to police language on campus that could be seen as 'racist' (opening your mouth is enough). They are being paid £9.34 an hour as 'race equality champions' to seek out microaggressions which it defines as 'comments or actions that might be unintentional, but which can cause offence to a minority group'. What about offence to a majority group? Oh, no, that doesn't matter. It's not about equality and inclusivity – exclusivity is what New Woke is after (Fig 293). Sheffield vice-chancellor Koen Lamberts, who will not have enough self-awareness to see that his policy mimics Stasi-like political tyrannies, said the initiative sought to 'change the way people think about racism'. More like simply changing the way people think as in East Germany, the Soviet Union, North Korea and China. Among the university's targeted microaggressions is anyone asking why everything has to be a race issue and why people are searching for things to be offended about. Impose your tyranny and then make it an offence to question the tyranny. Another microaggression that must be stamped out apparently is 'being compared to black celebrities that I look nothing like'. I wonder when such people plan to grow up? Not soon, I'll wager.

The tyranny of 'I am right'

If New Wokers believe themselves to be all-knowing then everyone who disagrees with them must by definition be wrong or motivated by racial and sexual bias or other dark motives. The only right becomes *I am right* – there is no other possibility. New Wokers despise for this reason freedom of speech for those with different 'wrong' views. If *I am right* then it follows that those who disagree with me are wrong and what is the point of freedom of speech for those that are wrong especially when humanity faces the existential threat from climate change and mortal dangers from rampant racism and sexism? Freedom of speech must be deleted to protect our freedom. It's so obvious and given that *I am right* it must be true.

These attitudes have both been downloaded from a multitude of Cult sources and been further ingrained through the encouragement of narcissism and a sense of entitlement where me, me, me is the only show in town. These are some officially-recognised traits in what is termed narcissistic personality disorder. Observe the behaviour of extreme New Wokers and you'll see the stupendous correlation:

- An exaggerated sense of self-importance (*I am right*).
- A sense of entitlement (*I am right* and what I say must be acted upon).
- Require constant, excessive admiration (*I am right* and you must recognise that and look up to me as your moral and intellectual superior).
- Expect to be recognised as superior even without achievements that warrant it (*I am right* and what I say requires no factual basis. *I am right* is enough).
- Exaggerate achievements and talents (*I am right* because I am all• knowing).
- Believe they are superior and can only associate with equally special people (*We are right*).
- Monopolise conversations and belittle or look down on people they perceive as inferior (*I am right* and if you disagree with me you must be inferior).
- Expect special favours and unquestioning compliance with their expectations (*I am right* and you must do what I say – see Greta Thunberg).
- Take advantage of others to get what they want (*I am right* and so what *I am right* about must be enforced even if it means crushing people).
- An inability or unwillingness to recognize the needs and feelings of others (*I am right* and if you challenge that fact we will target you with abuse, demonisation, a Twitter storm and efforts to get you fired and destroy your life and your family's life).
- Behave in an arrogant or haughty manner, coming across as conceited, boastful and pretentious (*I am right*, er, that's it).
- Become impatient or angry when they don't receive special treatment (*I am right* and you must dismantle the industrial system immediately no matter what the consequences because *I say so*).
- Significant interpersonal problems and easily feeling slighted (*I am right* and you say I'm not??).
- React with rage or contempt and try to belittle the other person to make themselves appear superior (*I am right* you moron).
- Difficulty regulating emotions and behavior (*I am right* and I get sooo angry when others say something different – they must be de-platformed. *Silence them!*).
- Experience major problems dealing with stress (*I am right* and I get so stressed when people won't accept that).
- Have secret feelings of insecurity and vulnerability (*I am right* and I won't have that questioned with facts in case you prove that I'm not).

Narcissistic *and* insecure and vulnerable? What a psychological combination. Narcissism is indeed a cover for insecurity. I feel so sad for them and how they have been perceptually and emotionally abused. Life behind the New Woke facade must be a psychological nightmare.

Save us from everything



Figure 294: New Woke's permanent state.

New Wokers are now indeed so vulnerable that they demand 'trigger warnings' to warn them of anything upcoming in lectures or exams that might upset them. The 'anything' is closing in on the *literally* anything as young people are pressured to be upset and offended by an ever-lengthening list of perceived horrors and verbal transgressions ([Fig 294](#)). Trigger warnings alert the permanently anxious and fearful of something coming up in a book, video, lecture or stage play that might trouble them. This has now reached such extraordinary levels that trigger warnings include: *Theology* students alerted to upcoming images and discussion of the crucifixion so they can choose to leave; archaeology students warned about any 'well-preserved archaeological body from an archaeological context' in case they find it 'a bit gruesome'; forensic science students warned before lectures involving blood patterns, crime scenes and dead bodies; Carleton University in Canada removed scales from the campus fitness centre to protect people with a special sensitivity to learning their weight. One student said: 'Scales are very triggering.' Don't bloody use them then. An article in the London *Guardian* listed some trigger warning subjects: misogyny, the death penalty, calories in a food item, how much a person weighs, terrorism, drunk driving, racism, gun violence, drones, homophobia, post-traumatic stress disorder, slavery, victim-blaming, abuse, swearing, child abuse, self-injury, suicide, talk of drug use, descriptions of medical procedures, corpses, skulls, skeletons, needles, discussion of 'isms', shaming, slurs (including 'stupid' or 'dumb'), kidnapping, dental trauma, discussions of sex (even consensual), death or dying, spiders, insects, snakes, vomit, pregnancy, childbirth, blood, Nazi paraphernalia, slimy things, holes (don't ask) and 'anything that might inspire intrusive thoughts in people with obsessive compulsive disorder'. *The New York Times* reported that activists want many classic works to have trigger warnings printed on them like health advisories on cigarette packages. Shakespeare's *The Merchant of Venice* would need the label 'contains anti-Semitism' while Virginia Woolf's *Mrs. Dalloway* would require a warning that it mentions suicide. Chinua Achebe's *Things Fall Apart* is another book of concern which may 'trigger readers who have experienced racism, colonialism, religious persecution, violence, suicide and more'. The 'anti-Semitism' industry and Israel Protection Racket has even called for trigger warnings to be inserted in the Bible and Koran to alert readers to upcoming 'anti-Semitic' texts. The self-obsession and sense of entitlement is just extraordinary from self-appointed 'leaders' of 0.2 percent of the world population. The 'anti-Semitism' Protection Racket was New Woke before New Woke and has had a highly-significant role in creating it. Kent University professor Frank Furedi rightly calls the trigger warning phenomenon and its associated 'snowflake' mentality the therapy culture, therapeutic censorship and the medicalisation of reading.



Figure 295: You need protection. Give me your freedom and leave the rest to me.



Figure 296: I demand you take away everybody's freedom to save us from what you have told us to be frightened of and offended by. (Image by Ben Garrison at Grrrgraphics.com.)

The term 'trigger' appropriately comes from the language of the mind control industry as I have been describing for decades long before it became part of PC New Woke culture. 'To trigger' refers to key words, phrases or sounds that trigger or activate preprogrammed 'Manchurian Candidate' behaviour by mind-controlled assets of government/military/intelligence agency mind control programmes like the infamous MKUltra in the United States. We need to face the fact for the sake of young generations that they are being subjected in schools and universities to systematic mass mind control and a major part of that is to have them perceive themselves as victims. New Woke verbiage is constantly focused on seeking out ever more reasons for victimhood. The Cult sub-text is that once you fall for being a victim you give your power away to the perceived victimiser and look for state protection from them often in the form of censorship ([Fig 295](#)). Victimhood is worn like a badge of honour by many New Wokers and allows the ongoing life dramas of the grievance, victim culture in which so many permanently live. You say you're a victim? Well, choose not to be. You say you're offended? Well, choose not to be. Do that and see your power return. I don't wonder that New Wokers suffer from ongoing anxiety when they are manipulated to want protection from anything that moves and a lot that doesn't. Everything around them is potential danger from which they must be protected and most notably the perceived demise of the planetary ecosystem through climate change. The technique is to indoctrinate children and young people to fear an ever-lengthening list of dangers and then have them demand that Big Brother authority protects them from the big bad world ([Fig 296](#)). This is the real reason for the 'Health and Safety' culture in the UK in which once everyday happenings are now perceived as highly dangerous. Words that people say are defined as a form of violence that require protection and this provides the added bonus of censoring people against the list of PC offences and fears. Many parents mollycoddle their children and protect them from all upset to the point where they don't have the emotional skin and skills to cope with life's challenges or anyone questioning their perceptual certainty. Writer Claire Fox, a former Brexit Party member of the European Parliament, said:

Why are we surprised that teenagers demand safe spaces? Historically, adolescents might have been risk-takers and adventure-seekers, but today we rear children to perceive the world as an endlessly scary

place. NGOs and charities [ultimately the Cult], in particular, promote panic ... Reared on a diet of disaster hyperbole, it's no wonder children grow up scared of their own shadows ...

... Today, parents go to ludicrous lengths to eliminate all risk from their children's lives. Inevitably this narrows their horizons and teaches them to be less daring. Health-and-safety mania means the young are denied resilience-building freedoms that past generations enjoyed, such as playing outdoors, climbing trees and walking to school unaided.

Fox said modern mollycoddling means that the young have been prevented from engaging in activities such as leapfrog, marbles and conkers while a child-protection industry actively encourages children to see potential abuse everywhere. Schools are surrounded by prison-like fences and systems which constantly infuse a perception of danger. Fox described how safeguarding has become the top priority in every organisation that works with children to the extent that parents are banned from taking photographs of their own children at swimming galas and adults are only allowed into many parks 'if accompanied by a child'. She continues:

There is no mystery to the absurdities of the Stepford Student. Nor should we wonder at their sudden appearance. We – adult society – protect children from criticism and suspend our critical judgment in order to massage their self-esteem. We scare them rigid by 'catastrophising' an endless list of fears. We make them hypervigilant about potential abuse from adults and their peers. We encourage them to equate abusive words with physical violence. And we have, in short, shaped our own overanxious, easily offended, censoriously thin-skinned Frankenstein monster. We created Generation Snowflake.

Some students say that even being called a snowflake is dangerous to their mental health and there's a whole new industry specialising in the psychological health of children and young people in the light of so many being diagnosed with 'mental health problems'. Suicide among the young is soaring. There is a reason for all this – children and young people in big numbers are being driven crazy by a merciless Cult-controlled system that wants to break their spirit and have them bow to its will for the entirety of their adult life.

In search of certainty



Figure 297: Woke self-delusion.

Insecurity seeks out *certainty* to placate that insecurity and from this comes the 'moral' and non-factual 'certainty' of New Wokeness. 'I am right' also includes 'I am nice', 'I am good' and 'I am ethical' – all with the proviso that anyone thinking differently must therefore not be right, nice or ethical ([Fig 297](#)). UK activist Jordi Casamitjana took his employer to a tribunal to secure the term 'ethical veganism' as a 'protected philosophical belief'. He won the case – of course he did. Notice the 'protected belief' was not 'veganism', a lifestyle choice people have every right to make, but 'ethical veganism'. Casamitjana said this involved much more than not eating food with animal ingredients: 'It's a philosophy and a belief system which encompasses most aspects of my life.' This is New Woke intersectionality. His lifestyle

includes: Walking rather than taking a bus to avoid any ‘accidental crashes with insects or birds’ (so he never unknowingly stands on insects when he walks and never travels in cars?); on occasions that he does take a bus he avoids holding on to leather straps; and he doesn’t eat non-meat figs because they are ‘grown with a symbiotic relationship to a microscopic wasp’ and so ‘you [can’t] be sure whether any of the wasp’s larvae is still inside the ripened fig and therefore I consider consumption of figs to be inconsistent with veganism’. Will you tell him or shall I that everything is conscious? ‘Ethical veganism’ is not something that can be defined unless you credibly define ‘ethical’. One person’s ethical is another person’s madness. The dictionary tells us that ethical ‘pertains to or deals with morals or the principles of morality and pertains to right and wrong in conduct.’ Who decides what is right and wrong? Who decides what is ethical? Casamitjana likely thinks it’s ethical to demonise the gas of life and tell kids they are facing climate meltdown when I say that’s seriously irresponsible and unethical.

To the New Woke mentality what *they* think and ‘ethical’ must be interchangeable. How could it be any other way? My view by contrast is that those who want their claim to be ‘ethical’ enshrined in law might benefit from checking out the definition of up-your-own-arse. Dr Jeanette Rowley, a vegan rights campaigner, said that in her direct experience ‘veganism is a way of life that defines the vegan individual as much as someone saying, for example, they are Christian or Muslim’. New Wokeness is indeed a religion designed to eventually replace all the others. Rowley said ‘the ethical vegan’ [one means the other by definition] makes a defining statement that their outlook on the world is grounded by justice, respect, duty, care and compassion in a community of sentient others, human and nonhuman, whom they do not wish to harm and whom they will endeavour to protect.’ What about harming non-meat plant consciousness? What about the ‘respect’ of seeking to impose their life choices on everyone and in many cases abusing those who make another choice? What about potential harm to the health of converts when the idea that one food choice fits all is fantasy and at odds with the evidence? What about frightening kids into believing the world could end and telling them veganism is essential to saving humanity so your agenda prevails? What about the enormous numbers of bees and insects that die (along with animals) as a result of the artificial pollination (known as ‘migratory beekeeping’), herbicides and pesticides involved in most plant-based production? What about the devastation of human society and employment through ridiculous demands to curtail the gas of life that produces the very vegetation they eat? I could go on and a lot of things that vegetarians and vegans eat is absolute crap like soy and tofu. Once anyone claims a monopoly on being ‘ethical’ the hypocrisy and contradiction soon starts to unravel. They would put their case much more effectively if many were not so obviously convinced of their own perfection and self-purity. But, then, that is the very foundation of New Wokeness. Are they trying to convince the rest of us – or *themselves*?

Why facts are so dangerous

Narcissists are always insecure and vulnerable. Narcissism is a cover to hide their insecurity from other people and again most importantly from themselves. All the most outwardly and exaggeratedly self-assured characters I have met have been frightened little boys and girls behind the facade. Genuine self-security doesn’t need narcissism when it doesn’t need external confirmation or self-promotion of its sense of identity through the reaction of others. You agree with me and think I’m intelligent and wise? Okay. You think I am wrong and an idiot? Equally okay. Genuine security treats them both as twin imposters. It is *insecurity* that needs the facade of perceived security not least to convince itself. In the same way *I am right* is terrified of being wrong and it’s another reason New Wokers don’t deal in facts. They are manipulated to perceive everything through the filter of emotion and moral superiority which is easy to induce. Facts are the sworn enemy of such emotional certainty and they have to go. New Woke congresswoman Alexandria Ocasio-Cortez captured the theme perfectly when she said: ‘There’s a lot of people more concerned about being precisely, factually, and semantically correct than about being morally right.’ Without the facts what is there to be ‘morally right’ about? What is the bloody point of

being ‘morally right’ about a human-caused climate disaster that is *not happening*? Facts immediately usher black and white perceptions into shades of grey and this is another reason why facts are so yesterday. How can you sell a belief in imminent climate mass extinction which isn’t happening if you have to deal in facts? The impossible only becomes possible when you can lie and misrepresent while censoring those with a factual response that exposes *I am right* as utter bollocks. This technique can be seen everywhere with climate change, race, sexuality and transgender activism. It goes like this: When you cannot support your stance and demands with facts and would therefore lose the debate you shut down the debate with abusive labels, de-platforming and media censorship.

There is no need to factually justify your re-writing of human biology and that’s good because you never could. Instead you assert that a man can be a woman and vice-versa by merely claiming to be so. You campaign to have professors of biology dismissed and their careers destroyed for saying otherwise. Once a few scientists and academics have been vanquished by the mob others will keep their head down or even parrot New Woke claptrap to protect their careers and income. This has happened across a great swathe of subjects and situations as Yuri Bezmenov’s ‘demoralisation’ has hurtled so fast to its ‘normalisation’. In this way schools and college campuses have been invaded and overrun by Cult New Wokeness and places of alleged ‘education’ have become initiation centres for a lifetime in La, La Land. I saw a British ‘social activist’ (whatever that is) called Lee Jasper complaining that film producer Guy Richie should have had a ‘broader social conscience and responsibility’ over the content of a film about gangsters because it was ‘not reflecting the kind of future which is of a more inclusive sense of British nationalism.’ The *fact* that gangsters don’t act like New Wokers and the film was about *gangsters* could not breach the New Woke filter which believes that everything should be portrayed as it would like it to be rather than as it really is. Facts are so lethally dangerous to the Cult’s collective emotional reality construct that they must be censored and deleted. This is being done through the Cult’s ‘education’, mainstream media, Silicon Valley and government legislation where only one version of everything is allowed to be emphasised and eventually even heard at all. Put these aspects together of faith-based belief and unquestioning certainty with silencing the blasphemers and you have a religion. New Wokeness is a faith-based, facts-unnecessary, religion or cult which imposes its will by indoctrinating the congregation and accepting no dissent. Burned at the stake becomes a Facebook ban and a Twitter flogging. Jesus walked on water becomes the gas of life is a deadly pollutant and a man can be a woman simply by saying so. The Climate Cult, as a sub-division and in many ways foundation pillar of New Wokeness, is itself a religion as you would expect in such circumstances.

Systematic censorship

We return here to knowing the outcome and seeing the journey. The outcome planned by the Cult in terms of speech and information is that eventually no one will see or hear anything not sanctioned by the World State. We are heading there with quickening speed through Silicon Valley censorship of alternative information by Cult-owned billionaires (rapidly advanced since the lockdowns) while New Wokers break into applause (well, ‘jazz hands’) with each new extreme of silencing free discourse. I have described in other books the sequence going back to the Cult’s (Rothschild) Frankfurt School of social engineering in the 1920s which led to the ‘sudden’ (long-planned) emergence of political correctness or ‘PC’. Political correctness is a Cult ruse to manipulate the target population to silence itself. Who needs a sheep dog when the sheep keep each other in line? I have said that every facet of the New Woke agenda follows the Cult agenda and that, of course, is why the Cult has created and funded New Wokeness into being. Political correctness and the end of free speech is yet another example. Freedom of speech is the freedom to speak and while that exists the situation can never be reached where the public only ever see and hear what the authorities allow. Free speech would always have its say and expose the official narrative which makes free speech a locked-on target for both the Cult and its storm troopers in New Wokeness. We see why Cult-manipulated New Wokers have to be clinically-adverse to facts that challenge *I am right* and

why they demand that such facts are censored. If it was about seeking truth all views and information would be welcomed from which truth could be discovered; but it's not about truth. It's about selling *untruth* for which facts would be fatal. Therefore facts and non-PC opinions must be silenced while fact is replaced by emotion-triggered 'feelings'. Facts or 'truth' are claimed to be only the norms of an oppressive state. Those confident of their views have no problem with other opinions being heard and they know that free speech only exists when all views can be communicated, debated, challenged and questioned. Anything less than that and there is no freedom of speech only freedom to conform to what is considered acceptable to the censors. Research at King's College in London found that one in five students, or 22 percent, say they can't speak their minds while on campus with 59 percent of those with conservative views reluctant to express them. The figures would be even higher as a percentage if the study had been focused only on non-New Woke students. Given that New Woke opinions are not subject to censorship when they parrot their orthodoxy they would believe that students are free to express their opinion. They are if you're New Woke, but try voicing a different one and see what happens. You are *free* to say what we tell you. You are *free* to do what we tell you.

The key is *when* speech is challenged. Is it before the point of delivery or after? The difference between the two is the difference between freedom and tyranny. I am not saying that people should be able to say anything without consequences such as urging violence against people and property. The question is *when* do you deal with it? The Cult wants you to believe that algorithms and other pre-post censorship should be used to stop 'unacceptable' views and information from ever being seen or heard; but who decides what is 'acceptable'? Well, the authorities do – the Cult in reality. The Totalitarian Tiptoe first makes a case for censorship that it believes most people would accept like, for instance, campaigning for terrorism. Once the precedent of pre-post censorship is set they roll out more and more reasons to expand its use – 'fake news', 'hate speech', 'upsetting people' and so on – with ever-widening definitions through the Totalitarian Tiptoe of what the terms mean and what can be censored in their name. The narcissistic insecurity of *I am right* provides the motivation to support the silencing of facts that would expose *I am right* as *I am wrong*. By contrast if speech is challenged after the point of delivery there could never be a situation in which authority could dictate what you could see and hear. It would all be out in the open and dealt with in the open. There are laws against incitement to terrorism and violence and they can be invoked without extremes to expand censorship into areas that are only silencing dissent and opinion. It would also mean that authority would have to justify its claims about speech in open debate and courtrooms instead of letting algorithms do it quietly without challenge. This could all be done so long as speech is challenged *after* the point of delivery and, anyway, don't we want to know who is campaigning for terrorism instead of pushing it into the shadows? The new definition of 'anti-Semitism' tells the story. A fair and accurate definition would be 'hatred and discrimination towards Jewish people for being Jewish'. This, however, does not preclude criticism and exposure of the far-right Sabbatian-Frankist-controlled government in Israel or the political philosophy of Palestinian-destroying Zionism. The Cult has expanded the definition to include both and protect the Cult and its agents. Ironically many New Wokers are critical on college campuses of Israel and its treatment of Palestinians and they are being censored themselves in a prelude to what will happen on a much bigger scale when their New Woke utopia is in place and they are no longer needed to demand it. Israel-owned and sponsored Donald Trump signed an executive order decree in late 2019 that added 'Jewishness' as a nationality to the list of prohibited 'discrimination'. This was specifically designed to ban criticism of Israel and Zionism, especially on college campuses, and at the same time Trump endorsed the new definition of 'anti-Semitism' which includes ... criticism of Israel and Zionism. The UK government of Boris Johnson has former Labour Party MP and ultra-Israel *fanatic* John Mann as its 'anti-Semitism' tsar to brand critics of Israel as 'anti-Semites'. Johnson has also passed laws to target the Boycott, Divestment, Sanctions (BDS) movement which calls for Israel to be boycotted over its apartheid regime that many New Wokers criticise. Be careful what you wish for New Wokers or you just might get it. In the case of criticising Israel

you already have.

Who are you? I'm LGBTTQQFAGPBSM



Figure 298: Little Me becomes Littler Me.

At the core of New Wokeness is self-identity. The above list of letters depicting ever-multiplying self-identities is actually used by an American University and with 26 letters in the alphabet and the possibility of using each one as many times as you like we are far from finished yet. Who are you? I am LGBTTQQFAGPBSM. How far is that perceptually from being *All That Is, Has Been, And Ever Can Be*? The Cult must be laughing itself to sleep. A Liberal Democrat politician in the UK came out as a 'pansexual' in early 2020 which I can only think must relate in some way to the kitchen. There are so many reasons why the Cult instigated identity obsession and identity politics. Firstly it's about enslaving people in even tinier self-identity myopia than ever before. Imprisoning perception in only five-sense reality while firewalled from expanded awareness is vital to human control. Before New Woke the Cult was limited to labels like man, woman, race, culture and religion to entrap five-sense identity and prevent expansion into identity with True 'I' – *The One*. The invention of identity politics gives the Cult limitless potential to sub-divide and sub-divide those labels ([Fig 298](#)). With each sub-division people identify with ever-smaller and fine-detail-defined labels and senses of self that squeeze them into ever-smaller perceptual Bubbles and ever-greater disconnection from *The One*. How can you identify with the True 'I' when your sense of self is defined by a letter amid a daisy-chain of others? Why do people have to define themselves in such detail anyway which includes agender, androgyny, aromantic, asexual, bicurious, bigender, binder/binding, biological sex, bisexual, butch, cisgender, demiromantic, demisexual, genderqueer, gender variant, gynesexual/gynephilic, pansexual, queer, questioning and third gender? Who gives a damn? Decide how you want to live your life and live it. Why do people have to give that choice such a fine-detail name and even more why should choices that they have every right to make be imposed on the rest of us? In Britain a well-known TV presenter called Philip Schofield 'came out' as 'gay' after 27 years of marriage and such a fuss and circus followed. Why do we have to be told where he sticks his thingamajig? Who cares except him and his family? Get on with your life, it's none of our business. Another celebrity felt the need to tell us she had just had sex for the first time in five years? Why? Who could care less apart from her and the bloke involved? Narcissism enters the equation for sure with New Woke identity-obsession in terms of attention seeking, look at me, me, me, and what I want is how things must be. Whatever the individual reason may be to publicly identify with a sub-label the same result will always follow. Their Bubble of 'I-am-a' continues to diminish in size and perception and that advances the Cult agenda magnificently. Identity politics is encouraging people to identify the 'I' only with a sexual preference. Do people really believe that who they are is where they stick their dick? Or don't? Bloody hell. What have we come to? None of this is happening randomly. It's the Cult at work and I am happy to take the abuse from New Wokers for what I say when unless they *awaken*, instead of Woke, they and their children are going to live out their lives in a technological dystopia long after I have relocated to Infinite Forever.



Figure 299: This, of course, is the whole point of identity politics.



Figure 300: New Woke is now beyond parody.

Two other Cult motivations for identity politics are divide and rule descent into tribalism and the imposition of the Big Brother state ([Fig 299](#)). There are far too many people in the world for the Cult to control them all. They plan to do that soon by connecting the human brain to artificial intelligence, but for now they don't have the numbers to impose their will on a population on its way to eight billion if people would choose not to cooperate. They overcome this problem as they always have by manipulating people to control each other in line with the Cult agenda (something we have seen in abundance in the lockdowns). Divisions generated by New Wokeness are self-evident with the obsession with race, culture and sexuality which offer endless potential to divide the general population and even the sub-divisions of self-identity. We see this increasingly happening as the revolution consumes its children. The calling card of New Wokeness is to do *everything* that it condemns others for doing and there are many precedents for this with religion. Inquisitions in their various forms that persecuted, tortured and killed untold millions were orchestrated by alleged followers of 'gentle Jesus' and opponents of 'the evil Satan'. They were convinced of their self-purity and believed they were doing the 'work of God' while acting like the children of Satan and murdering men, women and children in the name of the 'Prince of Peace'. You could hardly imagine such an inversion or self-delusion, but had anyone pointed this out to the inquisitors they would never have seen the contradiction. The belief in their own self-righteousness would have firewalled any reappraisal or glance at the mirror. They were *right* and anyone who disagreed had to be deleted. It's what 'God' wanted them to do. We have moved on for now from burning at the stake, heated metal pincers and thumbscrews and today's Inquisition goes for demonisation, vitriolic abuse and attempts to destroy the lives and careers of non-believers ([Fig 300](#)). The methods may have changed but not the basic mentality and ideology. It is still what *I* think that must be imposed on everyone.

Fake 'social justice'



Figure 301: Real inclusivity. The awareness that we are all One.

A crucial self-deception required to enforce fascism while claiming to be ‘anti-fascist’ is to act with cold, heartless, intolerance and be quite happy to wound, hurt and destroy other people and their families while retaining a self-identity as someone kind, tolerant, full of love, coming from the heart, and caring deeply about ‘social justice’. Woke ‘tolerance’ is a state of permanent anger and fury seeking out the ‘enemy’ with the ‘wrong’ opinions. Self-deception is such a foundation of the New Woke persona (‘actor’s mask’) that advocates are widely referred to as ‘social justice warriors’ when their extremists and activists (as with their major funder George Soros) could not give a damn about ‘social justice’ any more than Cult operatives behind the Russian or Chinese Revolutions which deleted all vestiges of social justice. In the same way they are ‘anti-racist’ and ‘anti-sexist’ while being utterly obsessed with race and sexuality and viewing the entirety of human behaviour and interaction through that filter. They are *themselves* racist and sexist as they treat people differently based on skin colour and sex, but they will never see it. I should remind them again that race is only a label for a brief experience of the same consciousness that we all are ([Fig 301](#)). Woke activists don’t actually do anything about social justice. They just use the concept to ‘smash and destroy’ and dance to the impulses of their software download. An Internet commentator described the difference between a genuine activist in search of social justice and a New Woke ‘social justice warrior’:

Social activist: ‘Oh look, there’s no wheelchair ramp into that building. Let’s build a ramp.’

Social justice warrior: ‘Let’s persecute the people using the stairs and make them feel bad for having legs!’



Figure 302: I hate you for hating. Yep, well thought through, mate.

I do understand the approach, though. I mean why should social justice warriors waste their time campaigning and acting in pursuit of homes for the homeless, jobs for the destitute, food for the poor, and the end of wars of mass murder, when there are epic historical battles to be won over whether some bloke calling himself a woman is referred to as ‘Her’, ‘They’ or ‘Them’? It’s all about *me, me, me*, and my self-identity. There are many people on the genuine Left that do care about fairness and social justice and they have allowed themselves to be swamped and hijacked by the social justice fakery of New Woke with its support and promotion by the entire establishment which in the end answers to the One-percent and the Cult. New Wokeness ‘fights racism’ by being racist; demands tolerance with stunning levels of intolerance; and ‘fights hate’ with hatred on its face and venom in its mind ([Fig 302](#)). They can no more

see their inversions and hypocrisy than could the Spanish Inquisition and are certainly not self-aware enough, informed enough, or with sufficient humility, to see that the same Cult behind the Inquisition is the force behind them. New Woke feminist extremists were asked on an Australian television show: 'When trying to bring about significant change when is aggression and violence a better option than assertiveness, strong argument and modelling the behaviour you expect of others?' *Never* would have been the answer if New Wokeism was the genuine article; but it's not. The first Woke extremist replied: 'When none of that other stuff works.' Another said that she wanted 'the patriarchy to fear feminism' and 'the most important thing for me as a feminist is to destroy patriarchy'. She also had a question: 'How many rapists must we kill before men stop raping women?' It was pointed out that in her reply there seemed to be a lot of 'smashing and destroying' to which she said: 'Yes ... to create a world in which I am not raped and murdered.' Neither of which had happened to her with the latter being self-evident. Make no mistake New Woke extremists are the Cult's vehicle to 'smash and destroy' democracy and freedom to clear the ground for the Hunger Games Society. As the extremists become ever more extreme they are insisting that other New Wokers share their expanding extremism or they, too, will become 'bigots, racists, Nazis and tools of the patriarchy'. Revolution, your children are served.

Destroying the language and censoring yourself



Figure 303: New Woke inclusivity. But once white people are vanquished they'll be coming for the rest of you.

Advertisements are being infused with every aspect of the New Woke Cult agenda because people see them everywhere and they are a perfect medium for perception and behaviour modification. We have ads being banned for not having a woman in them; for using the term 'girl'; and for violating 'gender stereotypes' by showing a woman caring for a baby. We are told they must be more 'diverse' which means ignoring the world as it is and portraying the world as the Cult wants it to be. Muslim Mayor of London, the mega virtue-signaller Sadiq Khan, revealed the winner of the 2020 award for 'diversity in advertising' which included no white people ([Fig 303](#)). You see the theme. 'London's greatest strength is our diversity' said Khan without even a smear of irony. Notice how many mixed race couples are featured in advertisements. I have no problem with mixed-race relationships, I think it's lovely, but when that is consistently portrayed in mass-audience advertisements in a far greater ratio to what is actually happening there is perception manipulation at work. Human society is being reformed by hijacking popular culture and the language through political correctness which is a Cult creation destroying discourse and freedom of expression. Crucial to this is policing the language through which people communicate. Delete words used to articulate your opinions and how do you verbalise those opinions any longer? George Orwell wrote in *Nineteen Eighty-Four* about 'Newspeak' which replaced 'Oldspeak' in the Big Brother dystopia. Oldspeak is the former language which contained words to describe thoughts and opinions in detail while Newspeak is a highly-edited and censored language which deletes words describing detail and bans topics and subjects from discourse altogether. Newspeak is the language of today's political correctness deleting words through censorship of opinion in the name of hate speech, fake news, and microaggressions. As generation follows generation those words no longer need to be censored. They are lost in history and not even known never mind used. We *think* in words, too, and

when all that is left are the bland, meaningless platitudes of PC-speak the language is no longer there to even *think* in detail. Words in five-sense reality make thought possible. Control words and you control the population even down to how they think.

Politically-correct intimidation leads to the most insidious form of censorship which is self-censorship when the population chooses to remain silent and opinions and information that expose the orthodoxy disappear. With everyone a potential Stasi spy and informant – even family members – and with 24/7 cyber surveillance and microphones in smart televisions, smartphones, computers and even street lamps the fear of saying the ‘wrong thing’ to any person in any situation silences all except speech that conforms to the official narrative. This is further enforced by potential employers checking social media postings going way back to decide if someone is PC enough to be hired and others being vilified and fired as adults for posts they made as kids when often what they said then was not considered non-PC. Every aspect of this is designed specifically to chill unwanted opinion and debate and Wokers are the current Stasi before a real Stasi takes their place and targets *them*. Authors and publishers are even employing ‘sensitivity readers’ to check their text. You may have noticed that I don’t use them. Comedy has been destroyed by the PC Stasi and few ‘comedians’ have had the guts or self-respect to stand up against them. Celebrity Luvvies fall over themselves to show they are New Woke. This is what happens once a new orthodoxy takes hold (see ‘climate change’). Celebrities and politicians desperate to be liked support and impose the orthodoxy to confirm their Wokeness and self-purity. They want to be seen as ‘good people’ by those who have also convinced themselves they are ‘good people’. These are the same ‘good people’ with closed hearts and minds who purvey hatred and destroy the lives of those who don’t conform to New Woke orthodoxy. Once you have a need to be liked as an end in itself, as celebrities and politicians do, your independence of thought and action is over. You no longer speak your truth, but only what you think will get a Facebook thumbs ups. I have another approach. People don’t like me? I don’t give a fuck ([Fig 304](#)).



Figure 304: Ahhh, the freedom.

Other New Woke PC ruses to silence the population are called ‘tropes’ and ‘dog whistles’. A trope is a figure of speech in which a word or phrase conveys a meaning other than its literal sense (or interpreted by PC zealots to have done so). A dog whistle is defined as ‘statements that appear innocent to the general public but use coded language to communicate a secondary message to an intended group’ (or interpreted by PC zealots to have done so). Almost anything that people say in criticism of PC-protected groups is now a trope or dog whistle to provide still more excuses to brand people racist and Nazi to justify condemnation and censorship. A classic of the genre is that anyone who says an elite cabal controls the world is labelled an ‘anti-Semite’ on the basis of the ‘trope’ that Jewish people control the banking system, media and so on. The speaker does not have to mention Jewish people or even mean Jewish people. They get the abuse and censorship anyway because the ‘anti-Semitism’ industry and Israel Protection Racket always claims that this is what they mean. It’s another fraud to justify censorship which goes on being ever expanded. A writer in the *Canadian Jewish News* said it is ‘anti-Semitic’ to say that there’s a war on Christmas (it’s a trope) or to use the terms ‘New York lawyers (and bankers)’,

'Hollywood culture', 'secularists' and 'internationalists'. Say any of them and you are an 'anti-Semite'.

I am waiting for the anti-whaling movement to be condemned as 'anti-Semitic' for being a dog whistle for the Wailing Wall in Jerusalem where Jewish people go to wail and sway back and forth. 'Anti-whalers are really saying Jews shouldn't wail – they're anti-Semites!' That's too fantastic? Stick around. The world is not simply crazy any more. It's clinically insane.

CHAPTER ELEVEN

Why white people? Why Christianity? Why men?

Hating people because of their colour is wrong. And it doesn't matter which colour does the hating. It's just plain wrong – Muhammad Ali

The way New Wokeness and political correctness have appeared and taken hold with such lightning speed can only be understood by awareness of the Cult agenda for humanity. Cult/New Woke symbiosis is so blatant because one created the other. When you connect New Wokeness to the Cult everything falls into place. Here's a brief summary of only some of the goals they have in common:

- Centralisation of global power (demanded by New Woke to save the world from climate change).
- Censorship of all criticism and exposure of the Cult and its agenda for humanity (demanded by New Woke through political correctness).
- Enslaving perception in ever-smaller self-identities (promoted by New Woke through identity politics).
- Divide and rule (promoted by New Woke through identity politics and the '*I am right*' mentality).
- Transformation of Western society and the dismantling of its culture and way of life (promoted by New Woke through identity politics and open door immigration from other cultures).
- Targeting of men, white people and Christianity for reasons I will come to shortly (promoted by New Woke through identity politics, claims of 'toxic masculinity', 'anti-racism' which is never applied to racism against white people, and anything goes in condemnation of Christianity while other religions are PC-protected).
- The creation of a no-gender, non-procreating human (promoted by largely unknowing New Woke and transgender activist extremists transforming the world into a no-gender society and indoctrinating children to question their gender when they otherwise would not).
- Disarming the American population before a coup by armed-to-the-teeth AI law enforcement and military (promoted by New Woke with demands for gun bans and confiscation that open the way for complete domination of the population by armed agents of government and a criminal free-for-all especially in rural areas which the Cult wants to depopulate).

There are many other aspects to the Cult agenda that New Wokeness serves magnificently and one is the AI technology endgame. Wherever you look the New Woke mentality and the Cult agenda are as one.

All the aspects and sectors of New Woke are Cult agendas – climate change, racial division, sexual division, transgenderism and political correctness. Cult-serving New Wokeness seeks to paper over the cracks of the divisions and contradictions between its fragile minority group coalition through something called ‘intersectionality’ which is ‘the interconnected nature of social categorisations such as race, class, and gender as they apply to a given individual or group, regarded as creating overlapping and interdependent systems of discrimination or disadvantage’. This means when translated from the Orwellian to persuade minority groups they are all united by oppression from society and white privilege and should unite to bring them down despite all that they don’t agree on and compete with each other about. Intersectionality is the Cult working to unite disparate groups into a single force to transform society in its image. New Woke activists tend to move between these different ‘sectors’. In the end it’s all one agenda from the Cult’s perspective. German New Woke activist Carola Rackete (how appropriate) personifies these interconnections. She was the ‘sea captain’ arrested for delivering migrants from Libya to Italy on the pretext of ‘saving them’ while the Dutch government under whose flag the vessel operated described what she was doing as ‘not a rescue service but a ferry service’. Rackete next turned up as a climate change activist supporting Extinction Rebellion, spouting all the Climate Cult rhetoric, and demanding society be disrupted to save the world. She’s a professional Woker in other words and there are legions of them. One other point about New Woke and LGBT etc. is the logo which is now *everywhere* of the rainbow colours. The Sabbatian-Frankist arm of the Cult has long developed through a false cover story a series of sinister and draconian laws that it wants to impose on the whole of humanity. This is justified on the basis that the laws were allegedly given to ‘Noah’ by ‘God’ and as Noah is the ‘father of all post-flood humanity’ they must be imposed on everyone. They are called the Noahide Laws and see [Appendix 2](#) for more background. The reason I mention them here is that their logo since way back before New Woke appeared features the same rainbow colours symbolising the rainbow in the Noah flood story. When you are as utterly obsessed with symbolism as the Cult is this is not a coincidence.

A whiter shade of male

New Wokeness and the Cult are targeting *Western* society which for all its many faults has been the freest region of the world. Remember those quotes from earlier by Hebrew ‘Rav’ David Touitou about the need to destroy European and Christian society before their ‘Messiah’ can come. The European Union is part of this operation, too. Communist/fascist countries such as China are already heading where the Cult wants the whole planet to go. The West is what the Cult has to change to bring about global dystopia. Climate extremists say nothing about China, the biggest producer of demonised CO₂, while vehemently insisting that Western economies are destroyed. Australia won’t build new coal-fired power stations because of the Climate Cult while Australian coal fuels power stations in China, India, Japan and other parts of Asia. The total annual carbon dioxide emissions of Australia are less than China’s *annual* increase. The West is the target because it’s the Cult’s target. All of which brings me to the perceptual war on white people and especially white men. The foundation racial group of the Western world is white or ‘Caucasian’ and here you have the reason why every racial group is protected by political correctness censorship *except* white people. When abuse against one race is allowed, but no other, there is a name for that – *racism*. For those non-white people who think this is okay because it doesn’t affect them I give you the words of Pastor Martin Niemöller about Nazi Germany:

First they came for the socialists, and I did not speak out because I was not a socialist.

Then they came for the trade unionists, and I did not speak out because I was not a trade unionist.

Then they came for the Jews, and I did not speak out because I was not a Jew.

Then they came for me and there was no one left to speak for me.

White people are being targeted to a large extent for being the dominant race of Western society which the Cult seeks to destroy. Were that position held by another race *it* would have been targeted and the white race more PC-protected. ‘Nothing personal, mate, it’s just business’ although I do think there are other reasons, too, for the Cult to seek the subjugation of white people. Once again we have the inverted hypocrisy of New Wokeness on public display and it is *calculated* hypocrisy by those in the shadows. We have even had calls for UK national parks to be made ‘more diverse’ on the grounds that they are ‘too heavily weighted towards older, able-bodied white people’. These are landscapes where anyone is free to walk no matter what their racial or sexual background and it’s their own choice not to do so if indeed that is the case. Those choices don’t suit the agenda, however, and government funding for the parks becomes dependent on more diversity being artificially introduced. What would be the reaction if someone said that a place was ‘too heavily weighted’ towards black, Asian or Muslim people, or even young people? Reverse racism and hypocrisy is everywhere today and there’s a reason for it.

Black singer Stormzy launched a scholarship to fund the fees of black Cambridge University students and good luck to him; but when philanthropist Sir Bryan Thwaites offered two leading private schools a £1 million bequest in his will to fund poor white boys it was turned down by Dulwich and Winchester Colleges for not being ‘inclusive’. Thwaites made the offer in the light of white British boys performing worse at school than nearly every other ethnic group. They are less likely to attend university than their peers and they perform relatively poorly in exams. Trevor Phillips, a black former head of the Equality and Human Rights Commission, said poor white boys were ‘today’s educational left-behinds’. His racial fairness could only end one way and Phillips was later suspended from membership of the New Woke-hijacked Labour Party for ‘Islamophobia’. To be banned or suspended by the Labour Party for racism these days is confirmation of your grip on reality. Kehinde Andrews, UK professor of Black Studies at Birmingham City University, director of the Centre for Critical Social Research, founder of the Organisation of Black Unity, and co-chair of the Black Studies Association (you get the race-obsessed picture), referred to Phillips as ‘formerly of the Black community’ because although you have a black face you are actually white unless you toe exactly the line of the New Woke tyranny. Sir Bryan Thwaites rightly asked: ‘If Cambridge University can accept a much larger donation in support of black students, why cannot I do the same for underprivileged white British?’ The answer is that New Woke does not seek equality for all – while I *do* – because Wokeness is a Cult-driven agenda that in part is targeting white people as a means to transform Western society. Classic New Woke racist extremism is that the subjugation of black people in South Africa and Zimbabwe was disgusting (true) but black racists killing white farmers and their families in those countries under black rule today is okay and what they deserve (absolutely not true).

In a possible response to this racist denigration of a single race for *being* that race we have had posters appearing with the words: ‘It’s okay to be white’. One example in Perth, Scotland, was met with the usual storm of New Woke anger. The posters didn’t say ‘white is the master race’ only ‘it’s okay to be white’ – which it is, by the way. It’s just a body. ‘It’s sickening and disgusting to know that people think like this’ was one reaction and John Swinney, Scottish Parliament member for Perthshire North, said the signs were ‘atrocious’ – ‘We must stand together to resist this unacceptable material.’ Good virtue-signalling Mr Swinney. Well done you. I will take Wokers seriously when they have the same reaction to ‘It’s okay to be black’, ‘It’s okay to be Asian’, or ‘It’s okay to be Muslim’. Until then I will perceive them as what they are – reverse-racist hypocrites. I am against racism in every form and not only that which suits the Woke (Cult) agenda, thank-you. Significantly the local police said no members of the public had complained about the posters. Their existence had been made known to them (by New Woke activists no doubt) and they were investigating.

What has happened in Sweden and Germany through open-door immigration is the blueprint for the entire West. Swedish society as it had been for at least hundreds of years is already gone and what has happened is irreversible thanks to New Wokeness controlling the country. Neighbouring Finland is

seriously Woke with 34-year-old Social Democrat Sanna Marin becoming the world's youngest prime minister in late 2019 heading a cabinet dominated by women (12 of the 19 ministry positions) and a coalition of four other parties all led by women with three of them under 40. Take an imbalance and reverse it is the Woke technique when ability and experience should be the criteria for government and not age, race or sex. Finland is another country feeling the chill on speech from political correctness for those who question events including the effect of immigration from other cultures on the Finnish way of life. What you can't talk about or criticise is *always* an aspect of the Cult agenda.

Yale University, home of the infamous US president-producing Cult secret society, the Skull and Bones, dropped a course on art history 'from the Renaissance to the present' due to the 'overwhelming' whiteness, maleness, and straightness of the artists according to a report by *The Yale Daily News*. Course instructor Tim Barringer told the newspaper that focus on Western art in a Western country was 'problematic' – a word much beloved of New Wokeness. Student Mahlon Sorensen said: 'If you get rid of that one, all-encompassing course, then to understand the Western canon of art, students are going to have to take multiple art history courses.' That, mate, is the idea in this Cult-driven cultural carnage. Students at Reed College in Oregon successfully campaigned to have all European texts removed from a humanities course and replaced by non-European books as a form of reparations 'for Humanities ... history of erasing the histories of people of colour, especially black people'. What a statement about the Woke mentality. To increase the amount of black history you have to delete white history. The fact that the Cult wants to delete white history is pure coincidence. American booksellers Barnes & Noble introduced a series of literary classics for Black History Month with non-white people on the cover – *Dr Jekyll and Mr. Hyde* with a man wearing a turban; *Frankenstein* depicting the monster with brown skin; and Juliet in Shakespeare's *Romeo and Juliet* with brown skin and wearing a headscarf. These were withdrawn after it was pointed out that the text remained the same. The books were written by white people reflecting white culture of the time and how do you promote black culture and history by overwriting white history? Instead of changing white culture classic books you promote black writers portraying black culture. Ah, but if you do that you don't promote black history by erasing white history. You celebrate them both. This is not, however, the Cult's desired outcome. The theme can also be seen with Cult-controlled corporations like the ultra-Zionist 'investment bank' Goldman Sachs which announced in 2020 that it will no longer work on stock market launches with companies that have only 'straight white men' on their boards. Goldman Sachs, which gives hypocrisy new meaning, is headed by a white man, Chief Executive Officer David Solomon, and the same white man theme continues with its finance chief, operating chief and international head. Solomon said at the One-percent-fest World Economic Forum in Davos that the no all-male policy would be imposed in North America and Europe, but not in Asia where diversity is even less prevalent. Well, grab a feather and knock me down. Whatever the company claims to be the motivation behind this it will not be pursuit of 'diversity' for the sake of diversity. Goldman Sachs was founded by Jewish white men in 1869 and most of its partners and almost all of its leaders have been Jewish white men ever since so spare me the sermon about diversity *pl-ease*. Goldman's stance is typical of thousands of examples of corporate giants dictating public and private policy outside the democratic process. This is the very foundation of post-democratic technocracy.

PC-free zone

White people, especially white men, and even more *old* white men (divide young from old), are all racists expressing 'white privilege' according to New Woke extremists. This includes white people sleeping amid the shit, disease and freezing cold on the streets of major cities. By contrast white billionaires of real privilege are fine to New Wokers so long as they are funding 'progressive' groups and censoring 'bad people'. White homeless living on the street are 'white privilege' while privileged blacks like Democrat politician Cory Booker with his rich background and Harvard education are victims of white oppression. White people are all racists except those who ask for forgiveness for things that happened before they

were born from non-white people who were also not born when they happened. An Internet video shows a white couple kissing the boots of members of the deeply-racist Black Hebrew Israelites group in penance for what their 'ancestors' did. 'They showing what it means to really salute a prophet and a priest,' one pathetic member says. 'This is a white couple here that's proving they are sorry for what their forefathers have done.' It's not the colour of the skin that matters, it's the colour of the heart and mind, and here you had a black man with the same heart and mind as those white psychopaths who oppressed black people and treated them with contempt. American 'civil rights' leader (hilarious) Al Sharpton is a New Woke hero with his rants and rhetoric against white people despite being a racist, crook, fraud, promotor of transnational corporations, and FBI informant (code-name 'CI-7'). Even super-Woke [Vice.com](#) described him as 'a world-class scumbag with criminally under-acknowledged ties to the Mafia'. Wherever there is high-profile racial tension Sharpton is there seeking out the nearest camera to pour fuel on the fire. He has rightly been described as a 'racial arsonist'. No matter that he doesn't give a damn about rights for black people. He attacks whites and that's enough for New Woke. Sharpton was an advisor to President super-fraud Obama who with typical Obamaesque poppycock lauded him for his 'commitment to fight injustice and inequality'. Democratic presidential candidates get their tongues out to secure Sharpton's blessing in pursuit of the black vote that largely can't stand him. Black people who reject New Woke (most of them) know a fake when they see one. Great numbers of black people see through it all and realise that to judge anyone by their colour, including white people, is racist, ridiculous and divisive (on purpose). Black and other non-white people born or settling in the West who want to protect its culture are considered 'enemies of the revolution' as are gay and transgender people who don't support the hysteria and impositions of the mindless fake revolutionaries. It's amazing how many New Wokers come from white comfortable or wealthy financial backgrounds while posing as oppressed (privileged 'victims') or promoting themselves as the heart-on-the-sleeve voice of the truly oppressed without permission or the personal experience to do so ([Fig 305](#)). What if the minority doesn't want them as its spokespeople or isn't offended by what New Wokers insist they should be? That's just too bad. *I am right – we know best* ([Fig 306](#)). The way minorities are patronised by New Woke is extraordinary.

Group dynamics



Figure 305: It's all about me.



Figure 306: Love is truly expressed by deeds, not words, and certainly not by virtue-signalling.

There's no perception of individual behaviour or circumstances irrespective of race (real non-racism).

Everyone has to be judged as a group. This group *bad* – all other groups *good*. The fact that this is what the Cult wants to divide and rule is another pure coincidence and absolutely nothing to worry about. Cult-manipulated New Wokeness takes a genuine oppression such as disgusting white-instigated black slavery and male domination of women and presents it both as far worse now than it was at its grotesque historical peak and pins the blame on the entire white race and male population for things done by the few before most white people and men today were even born. Richard Fochtmann, a US Democrat candidate for senator, was caught on a phone camera *celebrating* the alarming increase in suicides by white men. He said: ‘Today I saw a thing and it said a lot of men, white men, were committing suicide, and I almost thought, “Yeah, great” – then I thought about it little more, and I thought maybe I shouldn’t say that out in public.’ Some of his audience actually laughed. Donald Trump asked in response to the comments: ‘What kind of animal is this?’ Fochtmann described him with the usual New Woke irony and deleted self-awareness as a ‘racist’. It is also relevant to note that Fochtmann is Jewish. Think what would have happened had someone celebrated the suicides of Jewish men? The statement would have been dubbed ‘hate speech’ and could possibly have led to a prison sentence. What happened to Fochtmann? *Nothing*. Jewish writer and professional racist Noel Ignatiev, who died in 2019, was co-editor of *Race Traitor*, a journal founded on the belief that ‘treason to whiteness is loyalty to humanity’. Ignatiev said: ‘Make no mistake about it: we intend to keep bashing the dead white males, and the live ones, and the females too, until the social construct known as ‘the white race’ is destroyed – not ‘deconstructed’ but destroyed.’ I ask again: What would be the response if someone said that about the 0.2 percent of the global population that is Jewish? But then when Israeli rabbis have no consequences for saying that slaughtering Palestinians gets Jews closer to God and killing them is a ‘religious duty’ you know that anything goes so long as you are either not white or ultra-Zionism doesn’t like you. There is a clear and obvious agenda to target white people and to deny that in the face of the evidence is to dig a hole in the desert and insert your head.

Saira Rao, a ‘first generation Indian-American activist’ and former Colorado congressional candidate, hosts something called Race2Dinner – ‘a place to start thinking through how you actively uphold white supremacy every minute of every day’. This means, apparently, self-loathing white women programmed to hate themselves and their race paying \$2,500 to attend dinners where they are castigated by Rao and her mate Regina Jackson for being racist. One jabbering attendee apologised for apologising with this perspective: ‘I want to hire people of colour. Not because I want to be ... a white saviour. I have explored my need for validation ... I’m working through that ... Yeah. Um ... I’m struggling.’ It’s re-education and women of all ‘colours’ would benefit by giving this pair of prats the finger and getting on with their lives. I went to the Race2Dinner website to be met by a massive headline saying: ‘White women. Let’s talk racism and your complicity.’ Saira Rao is so New Woke it’s beyond parody. She does, however, provide an insight into the mentality and its contempt for white people. Among her gems is that ‘private messages of support is another form of white supremacy’; the helicopter crash that killed the black multi-millionaire basketball legend Kobe Bryant and his daughter was somehow connected to Donald Trump, racism and bigotry; and that ‘white women’s obsession with “being nice” is one of the most dangerous tools of white supremacy’. There is added irony is that Rao’s India is a seriously racist country with the caste system still alive and well despite claims to the contrary. The UK *Daily Mail* exposed how dating website Shaadi.com, which claims to be the top site for Indian singles, insists that users state their caste or ‘sub-community’ when they join. The *Mail* said:

It was discovered that a profile set up by a Brahmin, who are elite in the caste system, would not be offered potential matches from the lowest of the social divisions – the so-called untouchables, officially known as ‘scheduled caste’.

But, no, you can’t be racist unless you are white. The sight of non-white extremists acting with the same

state of mind as white extremists while thinking they are somehow morally ‘superior’ is a real head-shaker. We reached another stage that was always coming in 2020 when the Climate Cult was declared ‘too white’. German-based Filipino climate activist Karin Louise Hermes said she left the movement because of its whiteness and lack of intersectionality: ‘Anti-racism and anti-capitalism need to be made part of organizing ... If “Green” policies fail to consider anti-racism and migrant rights, how is any person of colour supposed to feel voting for them or organizing in the same spaces?’ How about to protect the planet if you really believe it is on the brink? Instead she was off into the sunset indignant that the Climate Cult was not paying enough attention to what ‘whiteness, capitalism, and inequality have to do with climate change’ (*not* caused by humans). Open the window will you? I need some air. No, scrap the window. Make that a large gin.

Woke is not a joke

We have long passed the point where just laughing at such idiocy is not enough as it increasingly becomes public policy. Filmmaker and world class New Woke virtue-signaller Michael Moore said that white men are not good people and ‘you should be afraid of them’. That, I take it, includes him? Moore warned on the so appropriately-named Useful Idiots podcast that people should cross the street if they see three white men approaching because at least two would have voted for Donald Trump. The legend in his own mind, but no one else’s, said:

Two-thirds of all white guys voted for Trump. That means anytime you see three white guys walking at you, down the street toward you, two of them voted for Trump. You need to move over to the other sidewalk because these are not good people that are walking toward you. You should be afraid of them.

Moore has turned talking mind-numbing bollocks into an art form to match his ‘anti-establishment’ films that exquisitely serve the Cult agenda. The desired psychological consequence of all this is that white New Wokers tend to hate themselves for being white. They wallow in emotional states of self-loathing and wish they had been born into one of their oppressed minorities. Democrat presidential candidate Elizabeth Warren was so desperate to be seen as a persecuted New Woke minority that she hilariously invented Native American ancestry that didn’t exist and a story about her discrimination for being a woman that never happened. In fact, women are hardly a minority with their numbers close to those of men. The New Woke rule is that not only should white people be hated they should hate themselves and spend the rest of their lives paying penance and begging forgiveness for *things they didn’t do*. The body, no matter what the colour or background, is only a vehicle for the consciousness that we *all* are. This makes racism *and* New Woke reverse racism absolutely child-like. How easy it is to see within New Wokeness the Cult agenda for disconnecting humanity from the awareness that we are all *One*. How inverted genuine equality has become in the New Woke fake ‘Left’ since civil rights leader Martin Luther King said this in his ‘I have a dream’ speech in 1963:

I have a dream that my four little children will one day live in a nation where they will not be judged by the colour of their skin, but by the content of their character.

So do I, but, if you’re white, New Wokeness does not. Is it really yet another coincidence amid this psychological New Woke war on white people that testosterone and sperm counts are plummeting in Europe and North America along with Australia and New Zealand? Even CNN ran an article highlighting the fact that ‘total sperm count in North America, Europe, Australia and New Zealand dropped by up to 60% in the 38 years between 1973 and 2011’ with the trend continuing to present day. ‘If sperm was an animal, science might worry that it’s heading toward extinction in Western nations,’ the article said. No one knew for sure what was causing this, the article continued, but it had been blamed on processed foods, chemicals in food, radiation, air pollution and water. All of which lead back to the Cult

with smartphones in trouser pockets right up there along with the ever more significant 5G.

With the cross of Jesus taken off the door.



Figure 307: Christian festivals must go – but don't you dare criticise anyone else's you Nazi.

Western culture is founded on Christianity and that doesn't mean, of course, that everyone is a Christian. I'm certainly not. It means that the architectural and intellectual influence of the Christian religion has been the backdrop to the development of Western society. Christian influence and legacy is woven into the fabric of the Western way of life. Now, with the Cult targeting Western society, we can see why political correctness protects from criticism and exposure every religion *except* Christianity as with every race *except* white. New Wokeness has become ingrained so quickly that even stalwarts of the Christian religion like the UK Archbishop of Canterbury Justin Welby have become advocates of the very Woke/Cult agenda that seeks to destroy their religion. The major Christian festival is Christmas (ironic because it's a pagan midwinter festival), but because Christmas is associated with Christianity it has to be targeted by the Cult and its Wokers to the extent that saying 'Merry Christmas' is now code in the bewildered mind of Woke for 'white supremacy' (Fig 307). US Supreme Court judge Neil Gorsuch found this out when he uttered the deeply offensive, clearly Nazi, greeting on television in 2019 and faced a backlash. A British mother said she was 'shamed' for saying 'Father Christmas' (indicating a man) instead of the 'gender-neutral' term 'Santa' (which is an anagram of Satan). The last time I looked the mythical figure with the beard and sleigh was a man – hence Father – and had not yet transitioned into a lady in red stockings called Geraldine. The 'shamed' mother told a newspaper she felt 'on edge' in the wake of the criticism. Fortunately, I have a cure for that which goes like this: 'Don't be so bloody ridiculous.' There, all sorted, with no need at all to be 'on edge'. Non-Christian religions are allowed to practice their festivals and rituals in Western countries without any push-back or interference and they should be if they operate within the laws of the country that reflect the values of the country. It's the bias for one and against another that I am highlighting and the reason for it.

Attempts to indoctrinate children into non-Christian religions in Christian-dominant or secular countries can be seen in places like Sweden among many others. Furious Swedish parents reported how teachers at their school told pupils to kneel on prayer mats facing Mecca while the class was divided by gender with girls told to gather at the back of the room. What uproar there would in the media if Muslim children were told to practice Christian rituals against the will of their parents. The school said it was 'role play'. *Bullshit*. Anyone with a brain knows what it is. A further reason for the assault on Christianity (and in the longer term all current religions) goes much deeper. I don't support any religion, but for all their many flaws, faults and misrepresentations, they do accept the existence of another power or reality beyond human. Some even describe their 'God' in terms of light and love while obscuring that simple fact with a tsunami of ritual, rules and regulations. Religions were created as an interim step between the many ancients who understood reality in a much more expanded way and the Cult's end goal of isolating humanity in a sense of reality in which only the Bubble is perceived to exist. The interim Tiptoe has been

major religions that believe in another force outside the Bubble and yet worship this as an external, dictatorial, judgemental God and not as the non-judgemental whole of which we are all an expression. In other words we are not 'God' and must only do what 'God' wants. What *does* God want? The priests will tell you, or rather the Cult will.

The endgame is to remove *any* concept of another force beyond human reality and 'New Woke' is being used to achieve that end in Western countries by targeting its major religion of Christianity. Recent polls reveal how successful this has been. In 2009 the percentage of Americans who identified as Christians stood at 77 percent; by 2019 it was 65 percent. Among Democrats, a political home of New Woke, the fall is even more extreme with 72 percent becoming 55 percent. Those considering themselves 'non-religious' increased from 17 percent to 26 percent. The most significant figure was not polled: What do those who say they are non-religious believe instead? I am not religious in an organised, bricks-and-mortar-religion sense, but I do accept the reality of a state of Infinite Awareness of which we are all part. The Cult wants those who consider themselves non-religious to instead believe in a random mechanical universe in which 'nature' has to be conquered by scientists and experts of the technocracy. You will see when I get to the technocracy that this is of crucial importance to the Cult. I also see the dominoes starting to fall towards the ultimate end of the British monarchy – the monarch is the official head of the Church of England – with what has happened with Prince Andrew, the buddy of mega-paedophile Jeffrey Epstein, and with New Woke self-obsessives Prince Harry and Meghan Markle heading for the airport and relocating to North America. The concept of royalty has served the Cult magnificently and I would be delighted to see it disappear. We have to be streetwise, however, over why suddenly it is taking such potentially mortal blows in the closing years of Queen Elizabeth. Royalty and all its trappings, history, ceremony, buildings, and central influence in law, is, as with Christianity, running through the very fabric of British culture – the culture the Cult wants to destroy to allow assimilation of British society into its global monoculture technocracy. Even the royals are dispensable for the cause when necessary and the Cult agenda enters a whole new stage.

Toxic masculinity



Figure 308: New Woke is driving men and women apart on the Tiptoe to ending all gender and male-female procreation. (Image Gareth Icke.)

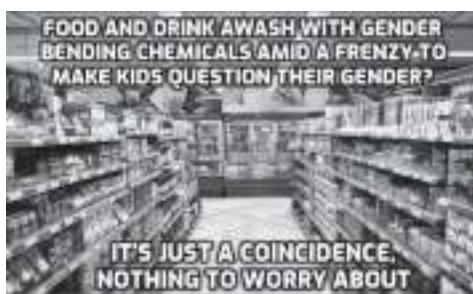


Figure 309: One big racket to transform human sexes and sexuality.

New Woke portrays non-Woke men as demons and purveyors of ‘toxic masculinity’ in the promotion of another Cult agenda. Men and women are being driven apart with the #Metoo movement employing the usual Cult-encouraged New Woke extremism of blaming every man for the actions of a few like ultra-Zionist former movie mogul Harvey Weinstein. *He* abused women so *all* men are to blame. Many men now watch every word in the company of women and seek to avoid being in a room alone with them in case they are accused of something. This is seriously damaging male-female interaction as it is meant to ([Fig 308](#)). Advertisements are employed as usual to sell the required perception of men in abominations like the Super Bowl maximum-audience ad by Gillette, owned by elite corporation Proctor and Gamble, which was a blatant attack on men and tarred them in their entirety with ‘toxic masculinity’. The sexual and racial themes in increasing numbers of advertisements are promoting societal change through perceptual change and remember they are paid for by major Cult-controlled corporations that couldn’t give a damn about ‘equality’ and ‘inclusivity’. Music videos aimed at the perceptions of children and the young have taken the same path with the 2020 Taylor Swift video ‘The Man’ an example that can only be described itself as toxic. Every stereotype about toxic masculinity is included to influence the perceptions of the young when even the mildest hint of female stereotyping attracts a storm of protest and, if it appears in advertisements, a ban. A commentator asked: Do you want your daughters growing up thinking all men act the way Taylor Swift portrays men in this video? Do you want young girls growing up resentful and distrustful of men? Do you want your sons to feel attacked and bullied by powerful women advocating for them to be shamed and subjugated by the whims of angry new-wave feminists? The answer to all of those questions from a mind in any way in a state of balance would be ‘No’. But if you are the Cult your response would be *Yes! Yes! Yes!* We even had Ann Francke, head of the UK Chartered Management Institute, saying that bosses should crack down on men talking about football and cricket at work because many women ‘don’t follow those sports and they don’t like either being forced to talk about them or not being included’. The scale of sheer undiluted arrogance that it must take to think you can tell people what they must and must not talk about is beyond my comprehension and so is her lack of awareness about how many women do like sport. Here’s another New Woke mind patronising the people she claims to speak for. What are the chances of someone demanding that women don’t talk about subjects of their choosing in case men feel left out? We live in a world now so infused with narcissism that imposing your will on others is taken as a gimme and a right. ‘Toxic masculinity’ is only code for masculinity as the Cult seeks to feminise the male and masculinise the female on the Tiptoe to the no-gender human. Crucially it wants to reduce the male hormone testosterone in men to delete the type of man that straightens his spine, lifts his chin and says: ‘I’m not having it’. Men are being ‘demasculined’ into passivity and you have testosterone levels falling around the world along with sperm counts. The feminising of men is being achieved on many fronts including contact with the contents of plastic bottles, till receipts, and other items and substances containing gender-bending chemicals including food and drink from plastic containers ([Fig 309](#)). This is a media report about a study at Exeter University in the UK:

Four out of every five British teens have their hormones upset by gender-bending chemicals found in plastics, new research suggests. The chemical, called bisphenol A (BPA), is used to make plastics, including materials that come into contact with food. But it can mimic the female sex hormone, estrogen, and cause a lower sperm count in men.

The chemical is also thought to be linked to several different types of cancer, including breast and prostate [which is soaring]. Researchers at Exeter University studied the blood and urine of 94 teenagers aged 17-19 and found 80 percent had the hormone-disrupting chemicals in their bodies.

In the gender-bending chemical era those identifying as gay or ‘LGBT’ is rapidly increasing and a US study estimated that those born before and across the millennium to be nearly twice as likely to identify

as LGBT as other American adults – ‘Millennials Are the Gayest Generation’, as one headline put it. This is a *coincidence*? Dr Richard Day told those paediatricians in 1969 they were going to ‘make boys and girls the same’ as people became ‘gender-neutral’. In support of the chemical infusion is the psychological onslaught in which being gay is celebrated and being straight is increasingly marginalised and again ‘so yesterday’. We see the same bias that we do with whiteness and Christianity and this was never more obvious than when UK TV celebrity Phillip Schofield came out as ‘gay’ in 2020 after 27 years of marriage. Celebrity Luvvies swooned and you would have thought he had dived into a raging torrent and pulled out a dozen drowning children. Schofield was described as ‘very brave’ when The System celebrates you for declaring your gayness. See what happens if you come out as straight on Twitter. ‘*Straight??* What are you a bloody pervert?’ It’s not only men that the Cult wants to weaken physically and psychologically – it’s everyone – to create a compliant population that looks to Big Brother for protection. Men and their testosterone are, however, the prime target. Patricia Hunt, a researcher at Washington State University who first identified BPA as a cause of cancer and other diseases, developed a more accurate means of measurement and her subsequent findings were stunning. Dr Hunt said in her report in 2019 that ‘safe’ limits of BPA decided by the US Food and Drug Administration are *44 times higher* than what can be considered ‘safe’. This is no more a ‘mistake’ than all the other ‘safe’ limits that turn out to be way too high. It’s done for a reason and in this case to manipulate gender and de-masculinise men. Since the introduction of the birth pill women have been peeing estrogen, or oestrogen, the primary female sex hormone, into the water supply to be consumed by men. Chemical pollution in rivers is changing the sex of fish. Soy products consumed by many vegans and vegetarians can raise estrogen levels and lower testosterone and those diets are being heavily promoted by the establishment to ‘save the planet from climate change’. Seth Siegel, author of *Troubled Water* about the shocking amount of pollutants and drugs in water supplies, described the effect on fish:

I don’t want to call it transgender fish, but I will call it inter-sexual fish. One recent study studied 19 rivers and they found that there was a very high level of male fish that were now growing eggs from the estrogen that is getting into the water ... 50% of the fish they studied in the Great Lakes had psychiatric drugs in their brains and their organs. So, Prozac, Celexa, and drugs like that, and generics.

The only way it comes into the water supplies, humans take those pills, they pee it out after they’ve taken it a few hours later. It gets flushed through the wastewater treatment system into a waterway. All perfectly legal. Exactly compliant with the law. And then it gets uptaken in fish. It gets uptaken in our drinking water. It gets uptaken in the water we use for our irrigation.

Men, especially white men, are at the bottom of the New Woke hierarchy along with white people in general and Christianity. No aspect of political correctness is willing to protect them as it protects other New Woke categories. Even saying that all lives matter is now a breach of political correctness so crazy has it become. Well, sod that – *All LIVES MATTER* because they *do*. Notice, however, how white men are promoted as the ‘good guys’ when they send the troops and bombers at the Cult’s behest to attack non-white countries. It’s nothing to do with ‘right’ and ‘wrong’; it is whether it suits the Cult agenda or not. Conservatives with a capital and lowercase ‘c’ are a particular focus for PC abuse and Silicon Valley censorship for the first two syllables in the word ... *conserve* – to ‘protect something, especially something of environmental or cultural importance, from harm or destruction’. Yes, *conserve-atives* (small ‘c’) usually want to conserve Western culture and this is another reason they are treated as they are in flagrant contrast to those who wish to usurp and delete that culture.

‘Anti-fascist’ fascism and the billionaire alliance

From all that I have discussed and exposed in the last few chapters we can explain other apparent mysteries of the New Woke-hijacked political or liberal ‘Left’. One is why people who call themselves

'liberal' and 'anti-fascist' behave with such a fascistic lack of liberalism. A dictionary definition of 'liberal' is the following: 'Someone who has liberal views believes people should have a lot of freedom in deciding how to behave and think.' Synonyms given for 'liberal' include tolerant, enlightened and open-minded. You could hardly find a better definition of what New Wokeness is *not*. The self-deceit necessary to perceive yourself as 'liberal' in the light of extreme illiberalism is fantastic, but essential. How can the Cult manipulate those with genuine liberal views to demand the imposition of a fascistic tyranny when genuine liberals believe people should have freedom in deciding how to behave, speak and think? Instead you ingrain *I am right* self-identity and self-righteousness (which you call 'liberal') and get New Wokers to believe that everyone else (including *genuine* liberals) are wrong, Nazis, bigots, racists, sexists and expressions of pure evil. In this way *I am right* self-identity and Big Brother behaviour becomes the new 'liberal' while real liberals who want freedom for everyone are 'far-right fascists'. The campaign by the New Woke Democratic Party hierarchy to destroy the liberal presidential campaign of Tulsi Gabbard, a woman of colour, exposes the extreme nature of New Woke hypocrisy. She may be a woman and she may not be white (she's a Samoan-American Hindu), but none of that matters when she stands for ending the American-Israeli wars in foreign lands demanded by the ultra-Zionist Project for the New American Century. With this background we can see why New Wokers who claim to be of the 'liberal Left' are in alliance with billionaires and mega-corporations like financier George Soros and Silicon Valley Internet censors. They still claim to be against billionaires and the One-percent, but the evidence is quite the contrary. The genuine Left once railed against the power of corporations and marched in support of freedom of speech. Today we have the inversion of both with New Wokeness organisations funded to the tune of tens of billions by Soros and others from the One-percent who could not care less about social justice. At the same time every new censorship of non-Woke opinion by Internet corporations is greeted with 'social justice warriors' punching the air. The reason the dynamic has changed is that New Woke is founded on Cult-invented identity politics and not social justice. Billionaires and corporations are not judged by their scale of social destruction, but by whether they speak the language of New Woke and bung their organisations a wad of money. When the Left was genuinely demanding social justice it would obviously target those who were accumulating mega-wealth for the few at the expense of the many. Soros would never have been allowed to fund the genuine liberal Left. They would have seen him coming from 200 miles away and the same with fake New Wokers like Zuckerberg at Facebook, Page and Brin at Google, Wojcicki at YouTube, Dorsey at Twitter, Wales at Wikipedia and Cook at Apple. British comedian Ricky Gervais talked in a brilliant speech at the 2020 Golden Globe Awards about Apple hypocrisy: 'Apple roared into the TV game with *The Morning Show*, a superb drama about the importance of dignity and doing the right thing ... made by a company that runs sweat shops in China.' He told the assembled New Woke Hollywood 'A-listers' who insisted on a vegan meal after turning up in gas-guzzling limousines: 'You say you're Woke but the companies you work for, unbelievable, I mean, Apple, Amazon, Disney – if ISIS started a streaming service, you'd call your agent wouldn't you?' Gervais went on:

So, if you do win an award tonight, don't use it as a platform to make a political speech. You're in no position to lecture the public about anything. You know nothing about the real world. Most of you spent less time in school than Greta Thunberg. So, if you win, come up, accept your award, thank your agent, thank God, and fuck off, okay?

How refreshing it was to see a very rare celebrity with balls calling out the fakery of LA Hollywood and Silicon Valley Hollywood. New Wokeness does not challenge the billionaires – it breaks bread with them. The obsession is with identity and *not* social justice. As long as billionaires and their corporations support New Woke PC identity positions they are 'one of us' and 'on our side'. The fact that they don't mean it and act in ways that cause phenomenal social *injustice* does not enter the equation. All the

billionaires have to do is hand out the dosh, pose as Woke, use the language of PC and censor all those that question or challenge New Woke *I am right* orthodoxy. This is where the apparently bizarre alliance comes from and why New Wokers are the foot soldiers of the Cult agenda of the One-percent. It explains why the Cult-controlled FBI was exposed many times for infiltrating and undermining the then genuine Left and targeting its leaders like Martin Luther King while today the FBI's focus is on the Right and New Woke is allowed to operate unmolested so long as it refrains from criticising Israel. Whatever is the Cult agenda at any stage it will be enforced by Cult-controlled agencies like the FBI and CIA and the rest of the Deep State and Permanent Government.

I emphasise again that I am not condemning New Wokers as people. Many are genuine in what they believe and in my view just seriously misguided. It's the manipulation and its source and goal that I am exposing. I understand why Wokers do what they do, think what they do, and feel such anxiety about the world around them. The programming is merciless and incessant on the say-so of psychopaths moulding the young into adults that will demand 'social justice and inclusivity' which is code for the post-fact, post-freedom, post-industrial Big Brother Hunger Games Society.

CHAPTER TWELVE

Where are we going – if we allow it?

By far the greatest danger of artificial intelligence is that people conclude too early that they understand it – Eliezer Yudkowsky

The Time-Loop simulation has been spinning through its sequence to a specific destination and we are now living through its endgame – synthetic humans with synthetic minds known as artificial intelligence or AI. This twin goal connects ‘smart’ technology to the transgender hysteria.



Figure 310: Some of the Nazi regime technocrats brought to the United States from Germany after World War Two under Operation Paperclip.

The control system structure and nature of the Hunger Games Society is planned to be a technocracy in which scientists, engineers and other unelected ‘experts’ run the show (and every human mind) on behalf of the Cult and its non-human masters. We are seeing the technocracy in the making with the ever-increasing global dominance of Silicon Valley which has vastly increased still further in the wake of the ‘virus’ lockdowns. You’ll find some excellent background information at the website Technocracy.news and I can recommend a book called *Technocracy Rising* by Patrick Wood. Promotion of technocracy emerged publicly in the 1930s (although it goes back further) and most predominantly operated out of Columbia University School of Engineering. Despite the failure to win wide support at the time its advocates continued to pursue their agenda behind the scenes and now they are sprinting for the line. Interestingly, Aldous Huxley’s *Brave New World* (1932), George Orwell’s *Nineteen Eighty-Four* (1948) and Dr Richard Day’s speech to the paediatricians in 1969 all came when or after technocracy promoters set out their ambitions for human society. All three very accurately predicted current events. Adolf Hitler and the Nazis operated a technocracy in many ways and I have described in my books how at the end of the war more than 1,600 Nazi technologists were spirited out of Germany to the United States under a military and intelligence escape plan called Operation Paperclip ([Fig 310](#) overleaf). These were the technologists that would establish NASA and ran the infamous United States military-intelligence mind-control programme MKUltra (Mind Control Ultra). The letter ‘K’ for ‘control’ comes from ‘Kontrolle’, a German word for control, to acknowledge the source of the programme. Among these German technologists was Werner von Braun, a member of the Nazi Party and SS, who designed the V2 rockets the Nazis fired at Britain. Von Braun designed the Saturn V rockets for the US Moon programme while working at NASA/NAZI. The Cult and its technocracy have no borders just as they don’t want the world

to have any. Technocracy demands a monoculture global society which is why the Cult is targeting all cultures to fuse them into one. Hence we have systematic mass immigration and a war on Western culture before absorbing all the others. Dismantling Western culture is only stage one. Defined borders and boundaries of every kind are the target of the Cult including biological boundaries between men and women.

If you don't want anyone to know – don't do it (Chinese proverb)

China, the Cult's blueprint for the world, is already a technocracy thanks in large part to covert Cult technology transfers from the West through cusp organisations in The Web like the Trilateral Commission. Trilateral documents from the 1970s reveal this fact which has been confirmed by subsequent events. Big-time Cult insider Zbigniew Brzezinski, National Security Advisor to President Jimmy Carter, described in his 1970 book, *Between Two Ages: America's Role In the Technetronic Era*, how a technocracy would emerge from its precursor stages, communism and socialism. You could call technocracy a form of 'technological Marxism/fascism' in which the police state is not even imposed by humans in uniform, but by artificial intelligence dictating through cyberspace, robots and other technology controlled by unelected technocrats. Brzezinski co-founded the Trilateral Commission in 1973 with another life-long Cult initiate, David Rockefeller, and he was a 'political scientist' at Columbia University where a technocracy movement was publically spawned in the 1930s. The Rockefeller family have had major connections with the university. Bill Clinton attended Columbia where he was taught by Professor Carroll Quigley who would later publish books exposing how a small cabal was manipulating world events and the direction of society. It was during Brzezinski's time as US National Security Advisor that relations were 'normalised' between the United States and China while Cult-owned Bill Clinton played a major part during his presidency in opening America to Chinese goods and infiltration. This is a glimpse of Brzezinski's technocratic vision from 50 years ago:

Such a society would be dominated by an elite whose claim to political power would rest on allegedly superior scientific know-how. Unhindered by the restraints of traditional liberal values [which New Woke is destroying], this elite would not hesitate to achieve its political ends by using the latest modern techniques for influencing public behavior and keeping society under close surveillance and control. Under such circumstances, the scientific and technological momentum of the country would not be reversed but would actually feed on the situation it exploits ...

... Persisting social crisis, the emergence of a charismatic personality, and the exploitation of mass media to obtain public confidence would be the stepping stones in the piecemeal transformation of the United States into a highly controlled society.

What Brzezinski accurately predicted in 1970 (because he knew the plan) is what we have fast emerging today with so much more due to come (more words that I wrote before the 'virus' lockdowns which were triggered by happenings that first emerged in China). Technocracy is what Cult agents mean when they talk of a post-industrial and post-democratic society which is being advanced by the climate change and 'pandemic' hoaxes. See how it all fits together? The Cult has been developing its China blueprint technocracy with a view to its expansion across the world. China (the Cult) is infiltrating global society through money, technology, infrastructure projects, railways, and myriad covert means while also heading out into space. The world is planned to be centrally-controlled by a 'Smart Grid' in which everything, including all technology and the human brain, is connected to the Internet and a global Wi-Fi 'cloud' with all the shots called by artificial intelligence or AI. China is a leading player along with the United States and Israel. Cult-controlled Morgan Stanley has predicted the next phase of Chinese growth will come with 'smart super-cities through 5G connectivity, smart grids, renewable energy and modern transportation' (the first 'smart city' to go online in China was Wuhan just before the 'virus' emerged

from there). The investment bank sees China's current 60 percent of the population living in urban areas expanding to 75 percent by 2030 – an increase of some 220 million people moving to cities. Morgan Stanley Chief China Economist Robin Xing said: 'In our view, China is poised to be a global leader in smart city and city cluster development.' In our *view*? No – in our *knowledge* of what is planned. All that I have described there is straight off the pages of the Cult blueprint for humanity. China's gathering influence on India represents a combined population of 2.8 *billion* and that's some 36 percent of the world population even without China's other regions of influence in Asia, North and South America, Africa and even Europe. Gigantic levels of systematic outsourcing of manufacturing to China by American and worldwide corporations at the expense of jobs at home has made the West dependent on keeping China sweet despite the criticism of the trade links by Donald Trump. This dependency was driven home after the 'coronavirus' outbreak in China in late 2019. A reported 96 percent of America's antibiotics alone now come from China and something similar will be true with other countries. What if China decides as an act of war to cut off supplies of essential products it now dominates that were previously produced in America by Americans? This is precisely what the official government-controlled Chinese news service threatened in terms of drugs as the coronavirus hoax expanded out of China to the United States and the rest of the world. We will also come to see how many operatives and agents – 'spies' – that China has working within America in areas that include stealing research. Add to this the long list of 'former' US Pentagon military officials who work for China directly or indirectly after 'retirement'.

China's efforts to buy influence in education (and steal research) were revealed in 2020 with the news that Harvard and Yale failed to disclose some \$375 million in gifts and contracts from China and Saudi Arabia in the previous four years. *The Wall Street Journal* reported that American universities have hidden \$6.5 billion received from foreign countries since 1990 with lots of money from China included. China's infiltration of the United States is already extensive and growing by the day. Remember the Cult controls China as it controls the United States and this infiltration is the Cult transforming American society into its Chinese society global blueprint with Silicon Valley absolutely on board with that. A casualty of this increasing Chinese control is free speech with criticising China in Chinese-funded academia and business heading in the same direction as criticising Israel. You always know your real masters by who you can't criticise. A big supporter of the Chinese leadership is failed Democrat presidential candidate, the ultra-Zionist Michael Bloomberg, who has made a fortune from Chinese investments. No wonder he ridiculously claims that the vicious Chinese dictator Xi Jinping is not a dictator. Bloomberg's global news operation has been accused of blocking the publication of stories exposing corruption in Xi Jinping's family and he admits they submit to China's censorship rules. The more the United States is embroiled by the Cult in mega-costly wars as American society and infrastructure disintegrates the better that is for China which is taking over great swathes of Africa alone by building roads, bridges, railways, skyscrapers and whole cities. One writer described the rapid emergence in Africa of 'Chinese factories staffed with Chinese managers that are supervising Chinese workers that are using Chinese equipment to make their products.' China is colonising Africa with two million Chinese already in the continent and more arriving every week along with ten thousand Chinese companies. The plan is to then impose the control system of the Chinese government which is really the Cult's government. The two are inseparable and the coronavirus hysteria gave the Chinese dictatorship the excuse to impose even more draconian control and offered the rest of the world the same opportunity. I'll come to this hoax in great detail in chapters fifteen and sixteen and how it was perpetrated.

Israel global technocracy



Figure 311: Part of the massive Beersheba cyber operation as Sabbatian-Frankists that control Israel seek to establish that land as the centre of the global Smart Grid of human control.

China, Israel, the United States, Europe, etc. are all assets at the deepest level of the Cult and this explains why Israel, controlled by the frontline Cult network of Sabbatian-Frankism, has so many ties with China that go on increasing. The ultra-Zionist Michael Bloomberg connection is only one of endless examples. Israel is central to the global technocracy as I expose in detail in *The Trigger* and Sabbatian-Frankists – not 19 Arab hijackers – pulled off 9/11 to a large part by controlling the computer systems of the Pentagon, the US Air Force hijack response system NORAD, the White House and the Federal Aviation Administration civilian air traffic network. They also controlled and still do the inner core of the American ‘Deep State’ including the CIA. Israeli intelligence and military front companies cross-reference with US intelligence by employing ‘former’ CIA personnel to create an interconnecting Cult-serving web both sides of the Atlantic. Israel’s ever-increasing global cyber influence is delivered through its vast military intelligence cyber centre at Beersheba and its elite military cyber-manipulation unit known as 8200 with its multiple fronts like the cybersecurity companies Team8, operating out of Israel, and Boston-based Israeli company Cybereason which form a web that connects with Israeli and American intelligence, or the ‘Deep State’ (Fig 311). Israel military and intelligence networks specialise in setting up ‘cybersecurity’ fronts posing as private companies because to design security protection (in theory) requires the actors involved to have access to the entire computer system and all its codes and passwords. This allows them to write ‘security’ encoded with hidden ‘backdoors’ for Israel (Sabbatian-Frankists controlling Israel) to access everything from then on and even manipulate in real time (see 9/11 and *The Trigger*). Given that Israeli ‘security’ software has been used by governments, intelligence, military and corporations, especially in the United States, you can see the significance for spying, blackmail and stealing data.

Infamous Israeli intelligence arm Mossad and domestic intelligence, Shin Bet, are of course fundamentally involved in all this. Cybereason was founded in 2012 by three ‘former’ (are you ever?) members of this 8200 military elite cyberwarfare division. Unit 8200 is active in manipulating elections, not least in the United States, through hacking and psychological warfare against the electorate (see the articles of Whitney Webb at Davidicke.com). Funding for this network includes the 3.8 billion that the US government gives to Israel for military expenditures every year. America is funding cyber sabotage against *itself* because Sabbatian-Frankist networks operate in both Israel and the United States and one hand gives the cash to the other. As a result tiny Israel is the biggest recipient of American aid and the contempt that its Sabbatian-Frankist leadership has for America can be seen in the story of the Iron Dome missile defence system. American taxpayers gave more than \$1.5 billion to the Israeli government to build the ‘dome’ system, but when the US military wanted to buy aspects of the technology from Israel which Americans had paid to develop for Israel’s benefit the ultra-Zionist government refused to supply the necessary source code to allow the technology to be efficiently deployed. They are laughing at you America. Cybereason software is used by a stream of ‘American’ companies including Lockheed Martin, the world’s biggest arms producer, which benefits so monumentally from any US war. A number of ‘simulations’ have been run by Cybereason based on scenarios of hacking the 2020 US presidential election. The company has stressed the election manipulation potential of the ‘coronavirus’ (an article

they took down after just an hour). Why? Too much information. Cybereason and this 8200 network operating out of Israel are connected to so-called ‘deepfake’ AI technology which can very credibly make people appear to say and do things they did not say and do. See the Internet for many examples. Israeli tech firm Canny AI is a deepfake market leader that has partnered with Cybereason and has been funded by Israeli domestic intelligence Shin Bet. Another Israeli cybersecurity firm is Upstream Security which specialises in security for cyber-connected and autonomous vehicles. These systems can be hacked to crash cars, buses and trucks (think terrorist truck attacks) just as anything connected to cyberspace can be hacked and taken over from afar right down to opening and closing car windows. Justin Rohrlich at qz.com wrote this about one Cybereason simulation:

The Red Team then took control of 50 autonomous cars and five driverless buses – a move that may be more likely rooted in a future reality – and deployed a cell-site simulator that allowed them to track people’s locations and intercept their phone calls. They seized control of ... traffic lights, causing accidents, and distributed a deep-fake video of the Democratic candidate engaging in racial and domestic violence.

Cybereason simulated US election manipulation by a foreign state or non-state source – but which state? For sure they would not have mentioned Israel. The Project for the New American Century, utterly controlled by ultra-Zionists who answered to Israel and Sabbatian-Frankism, called in its September, 2000, regime-change document for America (really Israel) to control cyberspace. All the dots connect in the end.

Military control of cyberspace

The Beersheba complex is surrounded by research and development centres of all the major Silicon Valley corporations and involves *literally* an army of soldiers in uniform and others on the payroll who constantly post on the Internet while posing as members of the public to promote Israel’s narrative and dub critics ‘anti-Semitic’. Beersheba, the biggest infrastructure project in Israel’s history, can accommodate 20,000 ‘cyber soldiers’. Military and intelligence groups and ‘private’ companies are now to Israel and its worldwide networks all the same team pursuing the same ends. Israel is a global player in Smart Grid technology and control with a view to replacing Silicon Valley in importance and power. Behind the scenes and in the shadows it already has with its controlling presence and influence in Silicon Valley through Jewish owners and heads of key companies that include Facebook (Mark Zuckerberg and Sheryl Sandberg); Google (Sergey Brin and Larry Page); YouTube (Susan Wojcicki); Barry Diller (Vimeo); and Apple (Arthur D. Levinson). As I write ultra-Zionist hedge fund multi-billionaire Paul Singer is reported to be seeking to buy control of Twitter to remove its chief executive Jack Dorsey. Should Singer secure that control Twitter will even more be a vehicle for censorship of any criticism or exposure of ultra-Zionism, Israel and the global cult agenda. What a concentration of Internet power in 0.2 percent of the world population and two percent of Americans to decide who sees what globally. That list of Zionist sympathisers heading Silicon Valley corporations does not include other Zionists like Elon Musk and Google’s AI-brain connection obsessive, Ray Kurzweil. Meanwhile, Paul Singer, like ultra-Zionist Sheldon Adelson, is a big donor to the Republican Party and a board member of the Republican Jewish Coalition which promotes Jewish Republicans. Major Democrat donors include ultra-Zionist multi-billionaires Michael Bloomberg, George Soros (whatever he may say), Donald Sussman, Dustin Moskovitz, a co-founder of Facebook with Mark Zuckerberg, Jim Simons, Seth Klarman, co-founder and chairman of *The Times of Israel*, and Haim Saban who says he is ‘a one-issue guy, and my issue is Israel’. Big Tech giants including Google, Microsoft and Intel Corporation have been moving thousands of jobs and billions in investment to Israel while ‘America first’ Donald Trump, owned by Israel, zips his mouth and then tapes it over. The same Silicon Valley Internet-dominating corporations, including Facebook, are employing leading managers and executives from Israel and its infamous military intelligence. The

transfer of cyber jobs and investment from America to Israel is largely driven by yes, him again, ultra-Zionist Paul Singer and his Start-Up Nation Central which is part of the 8200 cyber-control network. Singer's predatory hedge fund destroyed the town of Sidney, Nebraska, as I described earlier. Singer funds the ultra-Zionist-controlled 'think tank', the American Enterprise Institute (AEI), which had very close connections to the Project for the New American Century with its list of regime-change countries from September, 2000. The non-violent BDS Israel boycott campaign is largely thwarted once Israel has complete control of cyberspace which was another goal on the list of the ultra-Zionist Project for the New American Century document. Change 'American' in the title to Israeli, or even more accurately *Cult*, and you're there.



Figure 312: Israel-controlled 'New York'.

Israeli newspaper *Haaretz* reported that Israeli tech start-ups in New York increased by five times between 2013 and 2017 alone. Crucial to the functioning of the global Smart Grid is quantum computing that takes computer systems on to a whole new level of potential. Israel is again at the forefront of this through companies such as Tel Aviv-based start-up Quantum Machines (QM). We now have enormous Israel-controlled cybersecurity centres opening in Sabbatian-Frankist-controlled New York and paid for with \$30 million of American taxpayer money which will take Israeli (*Cult*) manipulation potential over US computer networks to still new extremes. This includes access to America's voting systems and claims about Russia manipulating US elections are, in large part, to divert attention from Israeli (Sabbatian-Frankist) manipulation. The New York 'cybersecurity centres' are being operated by Israel-based SOSA, a 'global innovation platform' connected to the Israeli military, and Jerusalem Venture Partners (centrally involved in the Beersheba operation) who were tasked by the city authorities to make New York the 'cyber capital of the world' (Fig 312). They are connected to an ultra-Zionist network known as the 'Mega Group' and again I highly recommend the detailed articles about these subjects by Whitney Webb. The Mega Group and the 8200 network in general has ties to child-abusing ultra-Zionist Israeli intelligence asset Jeffrey Epstein who ran his child sex network as a blackmail operation for Mossad and hence so many rich, famous and influential people were connected to him including Trump, the Clintons and Prince Andrew. Epstein's 'madam' Ghislaine Maxwell is the daughter of long-time Mossad agent, the late (killed by Mossad eventually) UK businessman and crook-to-his-DNA, Bob Maxwell (see *The Trigger*). Epstein was also an investor for his masters in the Sabbatian-Frankist network in Big Tech and Silicon Valley. Whitney Webb describes 'Mega' as 'a group of pro-Israel oligarchs with clear and direct ties to organized crime, alongside Leslie Wexner, the main financier of Jeffrey Epstein's operation that involved the sex trafficking of minors on behalf of Israeli military intelligence'. Guy Franklin, General Manager of SOSA, is connected to the Israeli American Council (IAC), an Israel lobby group funded by ultra-ultra-Zionist Sheldon Adelson and his wife. Adelson is the biggest donor to the Republican Party and Donald Trump. As a result of this and other reasons when Israel tells Trump to jump he says: 'Yes sir, how high?'

The plan is for the Cult via Sabbatian-Frankism to control the entire Smart Grid of human subjugation from a central point – Israel with its massive nuclear arsenal. Connections that lead to 'tiny' Israel are absolutely fantastic and how clear it is why the definition of 'anti-Semitism' has been expanded and

expanded to stop this coming out in the main public arena. The global Smart Grid – with connections to the human brain – is ultimately planned to be controlled out of Jerusalem and Beersheba and this relates to the ancient belief in a Jewish ‘Messiah’ who it is claimed will rule the world from Jerusalem. Sabbatian-Frankism is founded on this with its ‘Jewish Messiah’ background and history with self-proclaimed ‘messiahs’ Sabbatai Zevi and Jacob Frank although for the inner core of the Cult the whole thing is only a cover story for global control. The Cult has designed its agenda from the Jewish perspective to appear to follow biblical prophecy and ancient legend which many in the non-Cult Jewish community have taken to be confirmation of the prophecy and the fulfilment of ‘God’s will’ when in fact they are being scammed to support the imposition of something that will ensnare them as much as the rest of humanity. Those people need to wake up fast. The Jewish messianic prophecy of global rule by a ‘World King’ out of Jerusalem seemed ridiculous and impossible until the emergence of the Smart Grid and the plan to connect all technology, devices and the human brain to a centrally-controlled AI. The ultra-Zionist crazies and extremists orchestrating the ‘invasion’ (their word) of Europe by Islam to overthrow Christianity and European society is all connected to this plan and so is the rebuilding of the alleged ‘Solomon’s Temple’ on what Jews and Christians called Temple Mount in Jerusalem where the gold-domed Al Aqsa Mosque stands today. Sabbatian-Frankist-owned Donald Trump has given them everything they want to achieve their sick and sinister ends including moving the US embassy to Jerusalem and promoting the ‘Deal of the Century’ complete stitch-up of the Palestinians to clear the way for the total control and ownership of Jerusalem where the global technocracy world government is planned to be located. See *The Trigger* for all the detailed background to Sabbatian-Frankist control of the global Smart Grid.

Is it ‘anti-Semitic’ to ask why Israeli-controlled and military-connected companies increasingly dominate ‘smart’ technology and systems, effectively globally-control what you see and hear, and set out to modify perception and behaviour, are headed by people from 0.2 percent of the world population? Is it ‘anti-Semitic’ to ask why Israeli cyber firms connected as they are to Israeli (Sabbatian-Frankist) intelligence and military have so much control over American government, military and intelligence computer systems? They want you to believe that it is for no other reason than stopping those questions being asked. Yet these are questions that must be *constantly* asked and credible answers demanded when you think that 68 percent of Americans get their ‘news’ (and so perceptions) from social media and that Israeli tech firms are seizing control over Smart Grid technology.

Insider Donovan knew (of course)

I would urge you to read *The Trigger* to find out more about Israel’s AI Smart Grid and technocracy ambitions and if you do the real reason for the burgeoning China-Israel relationship will come into sharp focus. China’s ‘economic miracle’ was orchestrated from the West through Cult corporations and by 2001 Hedley Donovan, editor of Cult-controlled *Time* magazine, was describing China as a technocracy. Donovan just happened to be a founding member of the Cult’s Trilateral Commission. He wrote:

The nerds are running the show in today’s China. In the twenty years since Deng Xiaoping’s reforms kicked in, the composition of the Chinese leadership has shifted markedly in favor of technocrats. ... It’s no exaggeration to describe the current regime as a technocracy ...

... During the 1980s, technocracy as a concept was much talked about, especially in the context of so-called ‘Neo-Authoritarianism’ – the principle at the heart of the ‘Asian Developmental Model’ that South Korea, Singapore, and Taiwan had pursued with apparent success. The basic beliefs and assumptions of the technocrats were laid out quite plainly: Social and economic problems were akin to engineering problems and could be understood, addressed, and eventually solved as such.

Donovan said Scientism (the religion of scientific orthodoxy with scientists as the new priesthood) was behind China’s post-Mao technocracy and those that challenged its control were considered heretics.

Those words were written by a Cult insider in 2001 and cannot be denied today. I have described China's deeply Orwellian Social Credit System and the stupendous numbers of AI-operated face-recognition cameras supported by eye-scanners and DNA-scanners with nothing left to chance. China is already a technological dystopia and operates at the global cutting edge in all the areas necessary for total human control including, like Israel, AI and quantum computing. I have been saying for decades that China today is the world tomorrow unless humanity opens its eyes and that is now being laid out before us. London police announced in January, 2020, that they would be deploying facial recognition cameras after a 'trial' that was always only a prelude to a permanent roll-out. Other police forces in Britain are planned to follow. Leaked documents in early 2020 revealed that the European Union is preparing to connect national face-recognition databases through its EU-wide database-cross-referencing system known as Prüm. The plan is to link this EU database with a similar system in America as the global surveillance system I have warned for decades was coming is moved into place step by step. It's all the Cult agenda unfolding. General Electric (GE) was paid \$30 million by San Diego city council to install thousands of surveillance cameras and microphones in street lights and sold the data collected to third parties earning a billion dollars according to the *California Globe*. So-called 'smart streets' like these are appearing in ever more locations.

The Devil's playground and 'education' control

From this background we can see why 'Woke' Silicon Valley corporations have so many ties to the China dictatorship when those corporations are ultimately owned by the Cult. Global banking is a Cult technocracy in which financial experts make decisions (increasingly with AI) unmolested by elected officials and whoever controls the money controls the world. I have detailed in my books the part played by the Bank for International Settlements (BIS) in Basle, Switzerland, in coordinating national central banks into *one* global (Cult) network. The Bank for International Settlements is another Rothschild-Rockefeller (Cult) creation. Heads of central banks meet regularly at the BIS to coordinate policy and advance the transformation to global technocracy. No surprise, then, that a *Bloomberg Markets Special Report* in 2018 described the Bank for International Settlements as 'a bastion of global technocracy'. The cashless – (digital/technological) – single world currency is all part of the technocracy plot and so is the increasing impotence of politicians over the power of Silicon Valley technocrats and their global impact on the life of every human being. Government departments the world over are dominated by technocrats of many and various types who drive the 'Deep State' operating beyond anyone who has ever seen a ballot box. *The Technocrat* magazine, the publication of the Technocratic movement, said in the late 1930s: 'Technocracy is the science of social engineering, the scientific operation of the entire social mechanism to produce and distribute goods and services to the entire population.' All of this is happening with increasing severity today. Politicians are losing control as this passes to the technocrats and what is the European Union, so beloved of New Wokers, except rule by an unelected technocracy? The so-called 'democratic' European Parliament is just a cover to hide bureaucratic control. We can understand from this perspective why we had years of delay and resistance to the UK leaving the EU after a majority voted for Brexit in the 2016 referendum and why George Soros, an American citizen, funded groups trying to stop Brexit. It took three more years before the people spoke again in 2019 and finally thwarted the opposition by giving pro-Brexit Boris Johnson a thumping majority in a General Election. How much the *type* of Brexit which emerges will actually free British people from EU technocrats we have to wait and see. Deletion of national sovereignty by the EU is a central demand of the technocracy along with the end of private property, Common Core education (indoctrination), Public-Private Partnerships, carbon trading justified by climate change, and communistic deletion of personal choice and liberties. Each one is a pillar of a technocratic society. The Archontic force in the unseen is itself a technocracy in the sense of manipulating through its simulation and using technology to overcome the limitation of its lack of creative consciousness. There is no need for technology in our out-of-body state where creativity and

manifestation is achieved directly through thought and awareness. Control of 'education' and the indoctrination programming of the young has been a prime necessity highlighted by technocrats in the 1930s as 'an educational system to train the entire younger generation indiscriminately as regards all considerations other than inherent ability – a continental system of human conditioning'. William Akin wrote the following in his 1977 book, *Technocracy and the American Dream: The Technocrat Movement, 1900-1941*:

A continental system of human conditioning will have to be installed to replace the existing insufficient educational methods and institutions. This continental system of general education will have to be organized as to provide the fullest possible conditioning and physical training ... It must educate and train the student public so as to obtain the highest possible percentage of proficient functional capacity.

Since the basic need of society was technical expertise, their education system would abolish the liberal arts, which addressed outmoded moralistic solutions to human problems. It would essentially replace the humanities with the machine shop. In the process, members of society would be conditioned to think in terms of engineering rationality and efficiency. Man, in short, would then be conditioned to assume the character of machines, to accept 'a reality understood in terms of machine-like function'.



Figure 313: Funding global transformation behind the smokescreen of 'philanthropy'.

I ask everyone to take just a moment to scan the world today in relation to what Akin described nearly 45 years ago. It's *happening*. Constant cut-backs on spending for the arts in schools across the world now becomes easy to explain as does the fusing of children and adults with machines through Smartphones and other means. America's *privately-funded* and controlled Common Core Education Standards Initiative imposed upon schools across the country is straight from the pages of technocracy literature and backed to the tune of hundreds of millions by Microsoft technocrat Bill Gates and his Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation. My long-time observation of Gates and his funding is that if he backs it then it's bad for humanity ([Fig 313](#)). This is the bloke putting billions into worldwide vaccination through his front, GAVI, or the 'Vaccine Alliance'. Wait till I get to the 'pandemic' hoax for a major exposure of Bill Gates and the agenda he drives for his hidden masters. It's sobering to think that Gates' Microsoft has access to most computers on earth. The world has been quietly ensnared while making its latest Google search, sending another text, or posting a picture of its lunch. This is the case more than anyone with New Wokers. They think they are demanding 'social justice' and old fashioned Marxism or 'socialism' when they are being used overwhelmingly without their knowledge to pressure humanity into a technocracy in which a Marxist/fascist-type dictatorship will be enforced by technology. Climate Cultists are pressing for the dismantling of the global economy as it operates today which must be destroyed for technocracy to replace the current status quo. Prince Charles called for exactly this at the One-percent Davos conference in January, 2020, and so does Pope Francis, another Cult asset, who wants 'a different kind of economy', a 'new economy' and, of course, 'sustainable development'. Global central banks including the US Federal Reserve, Bank of England, European Central Bank and the Bank of Japan are pursuing the same end as they commit to treating climate change as a 'core mission'. It's all the same global web working in unison. Mantras parroted by the United Nations and the Climate Cult such as 'sustainable development', the

'green economy' and 'Green New Deal' are all codes for technocracy. The 'goals' for 'sustainable development' that I listed earlier are still more aims (mostly in disguise) of the technocracy. The end of private property described by Rockefeller insider Dr Richard Day in 1969 is also technocracy policy.

It is no longer a mystery why technocratic billionaires and their corporations now occupy the same bed as Green 'idealists' who require a new description for their childlike naivety when 'naive' does not even nearly suffice. Agenda 21 and 2030 are the script for global technocracy and control by scientists who are planned to be the new God. Remember Greta Thunberg's mantra from this context – 'Listen to the science' – and political leaders around the world locked-down countries and destroyed economies and livelihoods because they said they were advised to do so by 'the scientists'. Anyone ask what was the agenda of the 'scientists' and to whom they really answer? A key part of technocratic control is complete power over the distribution of energy – who has it, who doesn't, and how much can be used. Climate Cult, anyone? Non-carbon energy sources will not be able to supply current energy needs in the transition to technocracy and that's the plan with all the deprivation that will cause. Once the global dictatorship is in place, however, they will bring out technology they already know about which takes its energy from the wave and electromagnetic fields of the energy sea or The Field. Legendary scientist Nicola Tesla was doing this in the first half of the 20th century, but his work was suppressed to protect energy companies and the Cult from the consequences of the population having access to free energy both in terms of cost and the way it is accessed without the need to use energy to produce energy. The Cult could use this technology now to 'save the world'. Instead it keeps it under wraps out of self-interest. Technocracy wants control of all resources to be transferred to a global authority while ownership of anything is removed from the population including their homes.

The AI 'human'



Figure 314: Ray Kurzweil – Frankenstein's sales-pitcher.

Mass control in the Hunger Games technocracy is planned to be enforced by connecting the brain to AI. We have Silicon Valley crazies openly describing such a world and giving a date for activation – 2030 according to Google technocrat Ray Kurzweil ([Fig 314](#)). This is the same year highlighted by United Nations Agenda 2030 which sets out the transformation of global society into a centralised tyranny to save the world from human-caused climate change and 2030 represents the period for the end of the nonsensical '12 years to save humanity' stated by the Climate Cult at the turn of 2019. Prince Charles called at Davos for a transformation of the global financial and economy system by 2030. A study by the UK House of Commons Library estimated that by 2030 the One-percent will own *64 percent* of the world's wealth – the Hunger Games Society. Ray Kurzweil describes how in the 2030 period human brains will be connected to AI and what he calls the 'cloud':

Our thinking ... will be a hybrid of biological and non-biological thinking ... humans will be able to extend their limitations and 'think in the cloud' ... We're going to put gateways to the cloud in our brains ... We're going to gradually merge and enhance ourselves ... In my view, that's the nature of being

human – we transcend our limitations.

As the technology becomes vastly superior to what we are then the small proportion that is still human gets smaller and smaller and smaller until it's just utterly negligible.



Figure 315: Invasion is exactly what it is.



Figure 316: Step, step, step, tick, tick, tick.

Kurzweil is describing the assimilation of human consciousness (within the simulation) into AI and this begs the question of what is AI? On one level it refers to algorithmic codes and on another to a form of AI that learns from data input and is aptly dubbed 'Learning AI'. The *true* and deeper meaning of AI, however, is something they obviously don't talk about when it reveals where all the Cult manipulation has been leading from the start. This level of 'AI' is the very force that has been orchestrating the perceptual enslavement of humanity all along – the force known by different cultures and religions as demons, Fallen Angels, Jinn, Archons, Chitauri and the Shining Ones among many other names. We are being invaded ([Fig 315](#)). People need to realise that this force while it can take form in fact has no form in its base-state which is waves of awareness that can communicate electrically like the human brain. An AI connection with the brain allows a connection with this force that will then *become* the human mind. Up to this point the Cult and its hidden 'gods' have had to control information to manipulate perception to dictate behaviour. Religion has played a central role in this and now the new religion of Wokeness is coming to the fore with its frenzy of censorship. The censorious 'cancel culture' is vitally important for the Cult as we approach its endgame. What I am describing must be kept from the main public arena or the game could still be thwarted in its finishing straight. Once the AI-brain connection is made even controlling information will no longer be necessary. Human perception and emotional response will come direct from AI with no middleman media required ([Fig 316](#)). In those words of Kurzweil: 'As the technology becomes vastly superior to what we are then the small proportion that is still human gets smaller and smaller and smaller until it's just utterly negligible.' Individuality of human perception would be history with a centrally-controlled AI hive-mind taking its place ([Fig 317](#)). The AI-brain connection is designed to absorb humanity even deeper into the simulation on the road to absorbing Body-Mind awareness in its entirety into cyberspace. The code-term for this transition is 'immersive technology' which is described as 'technology that attempts to emulate a physical world through the means of a digital or simulated world by creating a surrounding sensory feeling, thereby creating a sense of immersion'. It is the Tiptoe to assimilation in steps that include 'augmented reality' which combines

the ‘physical’ world with the digital. It’s being very cleverly done unless you are awake in which case it is a pathetically open book.



Figure 317: The Hive Mind. Connecting the human brain to AI means that whatever controls – or is – AI controls the perceptions of the entire human race. (Image Neil Hague.)

Simulation within a simulation

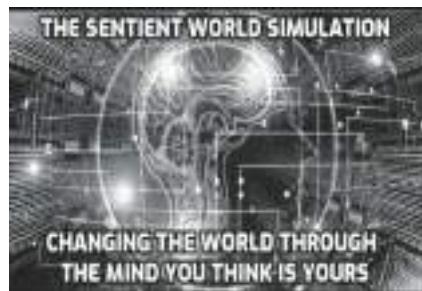


Figure 318: Real-time mirror of human society to manipulate events in human society.

‘Learning AI’ is the level planned to run the ‘Smart Grid’ control system which is fast being introduced by the Cult and its unseen ‘gods’. People are rightly concerned with the mass-surveillance state in which our every move is being tracked, every Internet post, opinion and behaviour, but this is not only for surveillance. All the information about human activity, thought, emotion and reaction gathered digitally worldwide minute by minute is being fed into Learning AI to provide ever-expanding fine-detail knowledge of what makes humans ‘tick’. The processing of this information means that AI already knows humanity far better than humanity does. This is being used to further manipulate perception and action. Every time you post personal information on Facebook, Twitter and all the other Cult-controlled platforms it is absorbed by Learning AI to add to its awareness of human thought, emotion and behaviour and the data-gathering includes live microphones embedded in computers and smartphones to track what should be private conversations. For this we can thank those lovely fake New Wokers like Zuckerberg, Brin and Page who always say one thing and do the other while the New Woke army applauds and worships. Learning AI is behind the ‘Sentient World Simulation’ (SWS) based at the Synthetic Environment for Analysis and Simulations Laboratory at Purdue University in Indiana. The SWS is mass-collecting data to predict (and manipulate) human behaviour and operates under DARPA, one of the world’s most sinister organisations (and think of the competition), which I have been exposing for decades. DARPA, or the Defense Advanced Research Projects Agency, is the technology arm of the Pentagon and the force that oversees Silicon Valley corporations and their direction on behalf of the

global Cult. It has seed-funded vital Cult operations such as Google and works in tandem with the CIA technology venture capital firm In-Q-Tel (also IQT). Both fund the development of technology and organisations to advance the Cult technocracy agenda. DARPA claims to have created the Internet which required military technology to launch and it just so happens that the Internet is the foundation of the technocracy and the unfolding technology control grid or 'Smart Grid'. This Cult agency is behind the Sentient World Simulation ('sentient' = AI) which is constantly processing information from every man, woman and child on the planet, scanning behaviour and buying patterns, and producing a 'continuously running, continually updated mirror model of the real world that can be used to predict and evaluate future events and courses of action' ([Fig. 318](#)). The Sentient World Simulation is a micro-version of the Time-Loop simulation which is impulsing the collective human mind to follow its agenda. The defence against both is consciousness in awareness of its true self that has burst through the Bubble in which the simulations operate and here we have another reason why the Cult works so hard to keep the Bubbles intact. The Smart Grid is laying another simulated information field over the main simulation field which itself is laid over the Infinite information field beyond that. Humans were first attuned with the overall simulation and now they are being connected to the 'smart' information grid to further contract their perception in deeper myopia and block out with even greater efficiency any connection to Infinite Self.

The Sentient World Simulation and its data predictions explain why we are hearing more and more about identifying 'pre-crime' in the way portrayed in the movie, *Minority Report*, set in the year 2054. Pre-crime is a version of pre-censorship in which potential posts are algorithmically blocked before they can appear. People would be targeted for pre-crime on the basis of Sentient World Simulation predictions and not necessarily on what they really planned to do. The motivation for this is not pre-crime but pre-deletion of any people or groups planning to challenge the AI dystopia and the force behind it. Cult-controlled Hollywood and other media increasingly portray dystopian themes which portray the world the Cult seeks to impose and this relates to a psychological manipulation technique known as 'preemptive programming'. The Cult's Brave New World is so extreme and beyond anything humans alive today, or in known history, have ever experienced. This scale of change has obvious potential to invoke resistance. You want to do *what??* Pre-emptive programming via Hollywood, television and other sources continually feeds the conscious, and especially subconscious, mind with portrayals of the world that the Cult is planning. The idea is to make people *familiar* with an AI technology-controlled dystopia so that when it happens for real a lot of resistance will be diluted by that induced familiarity. Cult psychologists are well aware that once something is familiar it gets a free ride and ceases to be questioned as it fuses into everybody-knows-that. The programming machine ridiculously called 'education' is rarely questioned as a way of bringing up children because people are familiar with it. Introduce the same system today to replace one based on freedom and respect for children's individuality and there would be an outcry. I have spent 30 years questioning the familiar and accepted realities and when you do they dissolve like ice in a heatwave. Unquestioned familiarity is their only means of survival.

Aligned to pre-emptive programming is the very fact that AI extremists like Kurzweil are openly telling us about an AI connection to the brain. Why would they do that? The endgame has reached the point where this is happening and they can't hide that any longer at a time when they want to actually *do it*. Instead they have to sell it rather than hide it. The sales-pitch is that an AI connection will make us superhuman when the plan is to make us sub-human and post-human. Once AI attaches to the brain human thought patterns can be fed into the Sentient World Simulation to produce an even more accurate picture of individual and mass perception and with that their predictions of human behaviour. Another fact crucial to understand is that through an AI connection the World Simulation can send thoughts and emotions *the other way* to defuse those with a challenge to The System in mind. 'I am going to stand up for freedom ... Nah, actually, I won't bother it's not worth it.' The development of quantum computers capable of infinitely more than conventional computers is taking the potential for all this to a whole new level as is the roll-out of 5G. In the end human 'thought' would be AI in totality. Professor Oren Etzioni,

CEO of the Allen Institute for AI, has said in a paper entitled ‘How to know if artificial intelligence is about to destroy civilisation’ that humanity must be ready for signs of robotic super-intelligence. He asked: ‘Could we wake up one morning dumbstruck that a super-powerful AI has emerged, with disastrous consequences?’ Well, given that this is the idea the answer must be ‘yes’. Etzioni said one test suggested for this was that ‘human-level AI will be achieved when a person can’t distinguish conversing with a human from conversing with a computer’. This is a point that we are clearly heading for very, very fast, and Etzioni rightly says that this isn’t really a warning sign because it would be confirmation that human-level AI had already arrived. Etzioni then destroys his credibility and grip on reality by saying we are far away from machine super-intelligence and we will have a comfortable amount of time to deploy ‘off-switches’. He must have majored in naivety, surely?

‘Smart’ Grid to make you stupid



Figure 319: The idea is that attachment to the ‘cloud’ via AI will block all influence from expanded states of awareness.



Figure 320: The Internet of Everything is the Internet of Things – plus the human brain. (Image Neil Hague.)

Know the outcome and you’ll see the journey comes into play again. If I describe the planned outcome for the technological control of humanity you will certainly see the journey over decades to where we are now. Kurzweil’s ‘cloud’ would cover every inch of the planet and every human would be attached through an AI-brain connection. The AI-controlled cloud would then *be* the human mind ([Fig 319](#)). It’s only a few years ago that I was warning in my books and talks about the then-planned Internet of Things (IoT) in which all aspects of life including domestic appliances, vehicles, heating systems and a stream of surveillance devices would be connected to, and controlled from, the Internet (an expression of the cloud). Today we are already there with more devices added by the day. The Internet of Things is critical for the technocracy to control all aspects of human life and so is 5G and digital control of information via Silicon Valley censorship ([Fig 320](#)). The plan is for humanity and all technology to be connected to artificial intelligence via the Internet and Kurzweil’s cloud which would give AI (and whatever is behind it) control of everything including human thought and perception. Driverless autonomous vehicles would dictate where you can and cannot go and that’s why their introduction is planned to be enforced with each new generation of vehicles adding more AI features on the Tiptoe to total computer control.

The University of Glasgow is working with the European Space Agency and UK Space Agency on 'Project DARWIN' which aims to introduce driverless cars in Britain guided (controlled) by satellites using 5G communication. Passengers would be fried on every journey in other words. We have the British road system being transformed into 'smart motorways' specifically for the use of smart autonomous vehicles and the fact that the changes are making the roads far more dangerous and killing a lot of people is irrelevant to the psychopaths. The agenda is all that matters. There would be nothing in your life that AI would not control – even which doors would open or close – and there would be nothing you do or say that AI wouldn't immediately know about. Look around – it's happening with a gathering pace and it's all been long planned.



Figure 321: The technological sub-reality or Smart Grid isolating human awareness from Infinite Awareness. (Image Neil Hague.)

We have smart televisions with their cameras and microphones, smart assistants, smartphones, smart doorbells with cameras, smart meters, smart cards, smart cars, smart driving, smart pills, smart patches, smart watches, smart skin, smart borders, smart pavements, smart streets, smart cities, smart communities, smart environments, smart networks, smart growth and smart planet (the Smart Grid). These are only a few of them. Every technology dubbed 'smart' (almost everything these days) and any system called 'smart' are all designed to interconnect to form the global grid or what I have been describing for many years as the technological sub-reality ([Fig 321](#)). What a surprise that it was announced in late 2019 that Amazon, Apple and Google will work together to create a new common standard that will make it easier for smart devices to speak to each other. I was so shocked I had to take to my bed. The Zigbee Alliance is part of the group that includes companies such as IKEA, Legrand, NXP Semiconductors, Samsung and Signify. The 'alliance' will connect existing smart assistants such as Google Assistant, Amazon Alexa, Apple's Siri, and others, which in the end all transmit their data and surveillance to the same Cult sources. They claim this will benefit users when it is another step forward for the Smart Grid. The same is true of the Amazon device called Ring with its camera on your doorbell which can be accessed from anywhere by smartphone and allows a conversation between a visitor and a distant resident. This is a great example of how the public is sold technology with a cover story to hide the real reason for its introduction. Amazon promotes Ring for home protection and convenience when it is another Trojan horse to add still further to the Smart surveillance grid. An article at [Technocracy.news](#) revealed:

Ring has over 600 partnerships with law enforcement agencies around the country, and this number is increasing daily. The company has spent the past three years systematically making sure police everywhere know and recognize Ring, quietly building a nationwide surveillance network through police partnerships, and embedding itself into the functions of law enforcement ... Behind the scenes, Ring is experimenting with emerging technologies, as well as pursuing a partnership with at least one other private surveillance company.

The number of Ring partnerships with police grows almost daily, and, to date, there has been limited

public debate about whether these partnerships should exist in the first place. Unless lawmakers curb or regulate the expansion of these partnerships, what we are seeing now is just a minuscule version of this company's full potential.

Also connected to the Smart Grid are 'green' lightbulbs that produce crap light compared with incandescent bulbs and emit radiation that can permanently redden the skin if you get too close. LED lights must have killed a lot of people already because they are so dim when used as street lamps. I know from experience how in many streets you can't see people crossing the road until they are in your headlights. All forms of 'green' lighting (or lack of it) have come courtesy of Climate Cult and the climate hoax along with wind turbine farms that have technologised landscapes and seascapes and destroyed their natural beauty. The same people call themselves *environmentalists*. Greens pressed for diesel to be encouraged over petrol until it was found that particulates in diesel were killing large numbers of people who breathed them in. What a gift to humanity and the environment the Climate Cult has been. The speed of the technological takeover is designed to have it installed and in control before most people realise what's happened. To them the Tiptoe has just been an endless series of unrelated new devices and technologies 'the latest thing' and only when the control system is in place will they see that what appeared to be random was really a calculated sequence to impose total control. Or maybe they won't even see it then with AI controlling their minds. AI will tell them not to.

Cutting edge 'new' technology has been there all along

The Cult is not sitting around waiting for essential ever-advancing technologies to be invented. The Archontic force as I call it, manipulating from the unseen, had the know-how for Smart Grid technology – and far ahead of even what we see today – when humanity was supposed to be knocking rocks together and living in caves during another simulation stage of 'history'. Human limitations of knowledge and technology apply only to this tiny band of frequency we experience as the world (the *simulation*). Beyond its firewall lies Infinite Reality and Possibility with even the low-vibrations occupied by the Archontics having far more knowledge than humans in Bubble-mode can access. Some of that knowledge is transferred to initiates of the Cult to advance the perceptual control of humanity. The transfer has included technology crucial to the Smart Grid which has been developed in beyond-top secret underground and within-mountain facilities before being introduced to the public arena in a carefully-planned sequence through a list of front men and women and their companies. These Cult agents are used, along with well-crafted cover stories, to explain where the technology came from (geeks in garages is often in the script) and we have a long list of cover-story tellers like Gates, Zuckerberg, Brin, Page, Wojcicki, Bezos and Musk among so many others. The world of high-technology is awash with Cult operatives in among genuine people who have no idea what is really going on around them. Humanity, in turn, has had to be perceptually developed to have enough intellectual (Bubble) awareness to work with and enslave itself with technology while not being wise enough to see that this is what is happening. Developing cleverness without wisdom was the plan and as I said earlier this is the most destructive force on earth. It is clever to make a nuclear weapon, but not wise to do so. The Cult 'education' system is all about cleverness, not wisdom. We have brilliant engineers and others with incredible intellectual abilities who, at the same time, believe that a man was born to a virgin mother and walked on water, or that 'God' parted the Red Sea and men should wear beards because a bloke called Mohammed had one some 1,500 years ago. I have used the following quote from a Central American shaman several times in my books and it captures the theme magnificently. He refers to the Archontic force as 'the predators':

Think for a moment, and tell me how you would explain the contradictions between the intelligence of man the engineer and the stupidity of his systems of belief, or the stupidity of his contradictory behaviour

...

... Sorcerers believe that the predators have given us our systems of beliefs, our ideas of good and evil; our social mores. They are the ones who set up our dreams of success or failure. They have given us covetousness, greed, and cowardice. It is the predator who makes us complacent, routinary, and egomaniacal ...

... In order to keep us obedient and meek and weak, the predators engaged themselves in a stupendous manoeuvre – stupendous, of course, from the point of view of a fighting strategist; a horrendous manoeuvre from the point of those who suffer it. They gave us their mind. The predators' mind is baroque, contradictory, morose, filled with the fear of being discovered any minute now.

The shaman is describing from my perspective the impulses delivered by interaction with the Archontic simulation while the direct AI-brain connection is meant to take this to a whole new level of perceptual control. We must be able to build our own AI prison without realising that we are doing so and every day I watch it happening.

Here kitty, kitty ...



Figure 322: Keep walking – just a bit longer and the carrot will be yours.

Humanity has been brought to the point where many of its number have become technologically savvy enough to build and operate the control grid while the masses have been enticed along the road to an AI mind in the way a donkey might trot forward in pursuit of a carrot always dangling just out of reach inches from the end of its nose ([Fig 322](#)). The technology version of this is to constantly bring out new devices each one slightly closer to the endgame of AI-brain connection. As people seek out each latest gadget or 'upgrade' they are unknowingly being seduced down the trail to the end of humanity as we know it ([Fig 323](#)). Apple was fined for slowing down older phones that made people more likely to upgrade with new products because, as you know, Apple is Woke and has 'values'. The cold, calculated sequence planned from the start goes like this: First you get the target population addicted to technology they hold – i.e. smartphones; next you advance to on the body with Apple watches, Bluetooth earphones, fitness wristbands, internet-connected spectacles and an explosion of other devices; finally you get inside the body (your goal all along) with microchips which is already happening as I have been predicting and warning about for nearly 30 years ([Fig 324](#)). Today 95 in every 100 Americans have access to cell phones and three out of four adults worldwide as the first stage of 'kitty, kitty' is almost complete and human discourse and relationships have been devastated ([Fig 325](#)). When I say microchips I am not referring only to those that we can see and agree, however stupidly, to be implanted. Most sinister of all are the nano-microchips invisible to the human eye known as 'smart dust' and 'neural dust' that are being released into the atmosphere for the population to breathe in. I have exposed this at length in *Everything You Need To Know*.



Figure 323: This has been the aim of the Cult and its 'gods' since the hijack of humanity began.



Figure 324: The premeditated sequence ... hold, on, in.



Figure 325: Anyone observing humanity today knows that this is working big-time. (Image Gareth Icke.)



Figure 326: Technology is already in control of vast numbers of people.

Crucial to this whole scenario has been to get people addicted to technology so *it* becomes the master and not them. This has clearly been achieved with fantastic numbers of global humanity addicted to phones and especially the young who are the prime target for everything when they will be the adults at the time the Smart Grid is planned to be imposed full-blown (Fig 326). They are manipulating the perceptions of the young to compliantly agree to the AI takeover of their minds and world a few years hence. I will be revealing an immensely important aspect of induced smartphone addiction that no one seems to be talking about and it absolutely *is* addiction. Schools in America who take away phones during the school day found that students were suffering from 'separation anxiety'. Some allowed students to *hold* their phones in pouches when they can't open them during class time. One school principal said they were allowed to 'personalise' the pouches to 'make them as cool as humanly possible for something that's keeping them from their device'. What the hell are we doing standing by while Big

Tech psychopaths addict young people worldwide in this way? What I have described with the hold-it-wear-it-insert-it sequence from phone to microchip can be identified in two other Tiptoes involving the progression from 1G to 5G and the progression of the Internet and its dominant corporations. The Cult wants us to believe that 5G is only the next more advanced stage after 1G, 2G, 3G and 4G when in fact 5G is a whole new frequency band called millimetre waves (millimeter in the US) and a whole new ball game. 5G was known about in the inner core of the Cult before 1G was even introduced through cutting edge research and the technology transfer between Cult initiates and their non-human 'gods'. I was sent a study dated 1974 from Soviet era Russia that was detailing research on the effect of millimetre waves now called 5G on viruses and pathogens and adverse effects on reproduction processes. The sequence has been a step-by-step deception to turn our reality into a microwave oven and the same technique has been used with the Internet itself.

Trojan Internet



Figure 327: One of the world's most sinister organisations.

Cult Pentagon agency DARPA claims credit for the Internet using military technology and whatever DARPA wants is bad for humanity ([Fig 327](#)). Stage one was to create the Internet and introduce the World Wide Web. The know-the-outcome-and-you'll-see-the-journey here was to make the Internet the foundation pillar of human society in a way that was irreversible in preparation for the Smart Grid. Technology needed to do this was once again known to the Cult long before it ever became public. Cult-insider Dr Richard Day was therefore able to describe the coming World Wide Web in his speech to those paediatricians in Pittsburgh in 1969 when it would not be officially 'invented' until 1989 and publicly available until 1991. DARPA and the Cult had to allow the free-flow of information and opinion in the early years to attract a global population to use the Internet. They would not have made the Web the central pillar of society if they had started with the endless wave of censorship we have today. In this period people like me were able to use the Internet to circulate information worldwide that the Cult certainly didn't want people to see. They had to bite the bullet on that in pursuit of longer-term ambitions. Once the Net had become the said central pillar and irreversibly so through functional dependency the kind of Internet planned all along removed the mask from its face. The censorship began and has become more extreme by the month. The Cult had the means which it set out to create of mass surveillance, a vehicle for AI control, and the ability to delete information it didn't want the public to see. The same sequence has been followed by Cult corporations specifically developed to dominate the Internet. The Facebooks, Googles, YouTubes, Twitters, Amazons, etc. also allowed the free circulation of information and opinion in the beginning as they had to do to pave the way for their near-monopolies. Once that had been achieved through securing a situation of 'Where else are you going to go?' their censorship began in earnest and has continued ever since picking off more and more dissenting voices.



Figure 328: America's real Silicon Valley with Israel emerging fast through Sabbatian-Frankism.



Figure 329: Regina Dugan – strange career unless you know what's going on. This was her job-description at Facebook.

These sequences that were planned from the start have been fishing lines thrown out to catch the people and then reel them in for the Hunger Games technocracy. Silicon Valley giants like Facebook and Google (YouTube) have fundamental connections to DARPA and the Pentagon as do Microsoft and Amazon ([Fig 328](#) overleaf). All of them are at the centre of the AI-controlled surveillance society while posing as New Woke and supported by Wokeness mobbery. Regina Dugan, promotor of transhumanism and post-humanism, was DARPA director between 2009 and 2012 before being hired as an executive of Google. She then transferred to Facebook in 2016. That's quite a career CV – heading DARPA, one of the world's most sinister organisations, before moving to a global search engine and social media platform ([Fig 329](#)). When you know the game there is a clear thread of consistency and that is AI control of humanity. Her brief at the secretive Facebook Building 8 operation was to develop 'technologies that fluidly blend physical and digital worlds.' Her *theoretical* 'boss' Mark Zuckerberg has talked of the need for 'a global superstructure to advance humanity'. Post-human advocate Ray Kurzweil is a Google executive and co-founder of the Singularity University in Silicon Valley which seeks to promote the AI human. Not without reason I refer to Silicon Valley as the Devil's Playground. It is a very sick place run by very sick people with a very sick agenda for humanity while posturing its New Wokeness to get the desperately naïve on board.

Behind the Musk



Figure 330: Elon Musk, the smirking fraud making possible the Smart Grid of mass and total human control.

Big names in Silicon Valley are all technocrats driving the world into technocracy including Jeff Bezos at Amazon (an orgasmic company for technocrats); Brin and Page at Google/YouTube and parent company Alphabet; Zuckerberg, the frontman at Facebook; and Elon Musk at Tesla and SpaceX. There are so many

others, too. Musk is a mega-fraud Silicon celebrity who comes into the story in many guises. For the Smart Grid to enslave the totality of humanity Kurzweil's 'cloud' has to cover every inch of the planet and that can only be done from space. Enter Mr Showman-Bullshitter Elon Musk ([Fig 330](#)). This is the man who said that AI could be the end of humanity (true) and heads a company called Neuralink working to connect the human brain to computers. *The Wall Street Journal* reported that this involves a 'neural lace' or mesh-like system which would 'implant tiny brain electrodes' with a view to uploading and downloading thoughts. Musk is the big name at Tesla cars which is developing 'smart' electric driverless vehicles and in terms of the global cloud he heads the rocket corporation SpaceX which is in the process of delivering thousands of satellites into orbit to fire the Wi-Fi cloud at the entire Earth. Space X received \$1billion in funding from Google and Fidelity Investments in 2015 amid the usual incestuous Silicon Valley interconnections. Musk officially requested permission from the Federal Communications Commission (FCC) in late 2016 to launch 4,425 satellites into low orbits at between 715 and 823 miles to provide Wi-Fi worldwide when at the time there were only 1,500 active satellites in orbit. The number planned by Musk is actually far, far higher as we'll see shortly. The UK *Independent* questioned the economics involved without realising that to the Cult agenda money is no object:

The astronomical cost of the satellites and launch may be the limiting factor. The customers for the service are the very poorest populations in the most remote regions on earth. The initial cost of the satellite network will be difficult to recover.

Covering costs is not the prime goal – covering the Earth with the Wi-Fi cloud and 5G is the goal. Elon Musk is an extraordinarily arrogant man and very dangerous in terms of human freedom and health. He only gets away with his behaviour because what he's doing serves the Cult. He was warned that his Starlink programme to launch 12,000 satellites to, among other things, fire 5G/Wi-Fi at the planet would seriously damage astronomy by blocking out the stars with light. Musk of course didn't give a shit and did it anyway. *Forbes* magazine reported how in November, 2019, Musk's SpaceX launched 'a network of 60 bright, large, reflective and radio-interfering satellites ... ruining numerous professional observations'. If 60 are doing that what are 12,000 going to do or the 42,000 that Musk wants? How much skin cancer alone are Musk's satellites going to cause as well as a long list of other health and psychological problems from 5G transmitted from space? Skin and sweat ducts directly interact with 5G. Musk announced a programme to launch 60 new satellites every two weeks to have 1,500 in orbit by the end of 2020 and the *Forbes* headline described the consequences: 'Latest Starlink Plans Unveiled By Elon Musk And SpaceX Could Create An Astronomical Emergency'. The article said: 'With competitors such as Kuiper Systems and OneWeb planning on launching similar networks, and Starlink attempting to procure approval for a total of 42,000 satellites, it's possible that looking through a pair of binoculars in 2030 [that year again] would reveal more satellites than stars.' Facebook is also involved in satellite Wi-Fi cloud-creation through a front company called PointView Tech along with other companies including Boeing. A Musk Space X rocket exploded at Cape Canaveral in 2016 before it was due to launch an Israeli-built communications satellite for Facebook to bathe a large area of sub-Saharan Africa in Wi-Fi. I'm sure as many search for food to survive they are desperate to watch CNN and cat videos on YouTube. Mark Zuckerberg said after the explosion that Facebook was 'committed to our mission of connecting everyone and we will keep working until everyone has the opportunities this satellite would have provided.' Google is also involved in the race to 'get everyone connected' purely from the light of human kindness. Satellite systems can also manipulate Earth weather which can then be blamed on human-caused 'climate change'.

This is what is happening to our world as the technological sub-reality I have for so long warned about is put in to place with no public approval or even knowledge in most cases. More confirmation of Musk's arrogance and fakery came in Germany where his Tesla electric car company fought off a campaign from

the public and environmental groups to build a ‘Gigafactory’ that involved levelling 227 acres of what was described as serene forest in the ironically-named in the circumstances Gruen[Green]heide municipality. Protestors said it would turn the idyllic area into a dirty industrial zone. What does Musk care? Billionaire fake Wokers say one thing and do the opposite. Musk claims that electric cars are the future with ‘the advent of sustainable transport and energy production’. First of all electric cars are not sustainable with the devastation caused in Africa alone in making the batteries and what is ‘sustainable’ and morally sustainable about deleting 227 acres of forest in a community that doesn’t want that when you live on the other side of the world? Musk’s activities are typical of a technocracy in which technocrats like him do what they like without the global population having any say and working above and beyond the level of elected politicians. Unbelievably self-obsessed people like Musk think they own the world and yet he is seen by many New Wokers as some kind of hero. How did Musk get permission for what he’s doing? Cult asset Musk was given approval by the Cult-owned Federal Communications Commission – the usual story. He doesn’t hold the positions that he does by accident. How interesting that his Jewish grandfather Joshua Haldeman was head of the Canadian Technocracy Party and campaigned for a technocracy between 1936 and 1941 when the movement was banned for a time by the Canadian government over alleged subversion. Now here we have grandson Elon Musk playing a front-line role in leading the world into technocracy. Aren’t coincidences amazing?

Demonising democracy

The world government is planned to be a technocracy as the Cult leads us into a post-democratic society without elected representatives and a psychological campaign has been underway for decades to discredit the concept of democracy in the public mind. This is done by misrepresenting democracy by equating it with corrupt place-people in all parties doing the will of the Cult in the same way that cartelism is sold as the ‘free market’. The Bennett Institute for Public Policy, a think tank based at the UK’s University of Cambridge, published a survey of 400 million people worldwide conducted between 1973 and 2020 which claimed that nearly 58 percent were ‘dissatisfied’ with democracy. The highest level on record came in 2019 when violent street protests broke out across the world. The World Economic Forum of the One-percent was quick to highlight the survey results given that dissatisfaction with democracy is the whole idea. The Cult is encouraging contempt for politics and politicians to transform democracy into technocracy and not least by ensuring that so many crooked and clueless people get elected to office. The System isn’t working because it is not *meant* to work. Witness the ever-increasing power over global society by the big names of Silicon Valley and how they are usurping and buying the political class. Politicians have already lost control of Silicon Valley technocrats, their Deep State handlers and the technology they oversee. The ground is being prepared for a full-blown technocracy wherever you look. *The Atlantic* magazine, yet another vehicle to promote the elite agenda, praised the technocrat takeover in an article headed: ‘It’s Jeff Bezos’s Planet Now’:

... in an age of political dysfunction ... Bezos has begun to subsume the powers of the state. Where the government once funded the ambitious exploration of space, Bezos is leading that project, spending a billion dollars each year to build rockets and rovers. His company, Amazon, is spearheading an experimental effort to fix American health care; it will also spend \$700 million to retrain workers in the shadow of automation and displacement.

Meanwhile, swaths of the federal government have contracted with Amazon to keep data on the company’s servers. Bezos is providing the vital infrastructure of state [is absorbing the state]. When Amazon locates its second headquarters on the [Washington DC] Potomac, staring across the river at the capital, it will provide a perfect geographic encapsulation of the new balance of power.

The article asked, perfectly describing the Cult methodology for destroying elected government: ‘Isn’t a

private government run by Bezos preferable to a public government run by Donald Trump?' How transparent can you get if you know what is going on? Even UK Prime Minister Boris Johnson has warned about what I am calling the Smart Grid. He said in a 2019 speech at the United Nations that 'digital authoritarianism is not, alas, the stuff of dystopian fantasy, but of an emerging reality.' When I said the same decades ago it was called conspiracy nonsense and here was a Prime Minister saying the same at the UN. He called for new technologies to be designed for 'freedom, openness and pluralism, with the right safeguards in place to protect our people'. That ship has already sailed, Mr Johnson, and it's going to be a hell of a job to roll back what is already happening never mind what is becoming more Orwellian by the day (written before the lockdowns). Fake 'populist' Johnson was handed a big parliamentary majority in 2019 which he could have used to defend freedom and put his policy where his mouth is. Instead he has done quite the opposite. Ofcom, the UK media watchdog tyranny, has been given new powers by the Johnson government to censor social media platforms, websites, comments, forums and video-sharing. Content deemed (by the state) 'harmful' would have to be removed by law. This is sold as protection for children when as always the plan is to expand the law and its interpretation to include critics of the official narrative. 'Harmful' is so open to interpretation you can make it apply to anything and that's why that term is used. Platforms would have to remove 'illegal' (state censored) content quickly and 'minimise the risk' of it being posted at all. The latter means using AI pre-post censorship algorithms which Facebook and company have long said they have been developing. Cult-controlled governments tell Cult-owned Internet giants what they must do and they comply to ensure the introduction of Cult-demanded censorship. This is happening with regard to an increasing list of countries. It is also interesting, and I say that ironically, that this UK government law is in line with the World Wide Foundation of 'Web-inventor' Tim Berners-Lee which proclaims to be saving the Internet from 'digital dystopia' with censorship dystopia. Authors of the Berners-Lee plan include ... Google, Facebook, Microsoft, and the censorship-obsessed German and French governments. Johnson's regime also employs an absolute Israel *fanatic* policing 'anti-Semitism' (criticism of Israel) in the form of one-time Labour Party MP John Mann with his blue and white tongue on permanent stand-by. Any connection between Johnson and freedom is purely coincidental on his record and he allowed himself to be overridden by 'the scientists' and outrageous 'computer modellers' to lockdown Britain and create economic Armageddon and fascistic control.

(Cyber) Space: the final frontier (for the end of freedom)

The Smart Grid cannot function without communication systems of at least 5G, or 'Fifth Generation', which operates in the millimetre wave band of the electromagnetic spectrum. Cumulatively-lethal 5G is being rolled out across the world and beamed from satellites without any official independent testing for its health and psychological implications. There is a simple reason for this lack of testing: 5G is crucial to the Smart Grid and independent, publicly-circulated, studies of 5G consequences for body and mind would mean it would never be allowed to happen in the face of mass public opposition. China is a world leader in 5G and already talking about 6G using terahertz waves. The authorities and the Cult telecommunications industry know that truly independent publicly-funded testing published in the mainstream would be the death knell of 5G and so they don't have any. If you can't win a debate don't have one. Senator Richard Blumenthal asked US telecommunications industry representatives during a session of the US Senate Commerce, Science and Transportation Committee how much money they had spent on independent research into the effects of 5G. Their answer was *nothing*. Blumenthal said: 'No research ongoing – we're flying blind here so far as health and safety is concerned.' It may appear to be that way from the public perspective, but industry insiders and the Cult are not 'flying blind' at all. They know the cumulative health and psychological consequences for large numbers of people and they don't want you to know. The International Society of Doctors for the Environment, with subsidiaries in 27 countries, joined more than 200 doctors and scientists in urging the 5G roll-out be stopped over concerns

that its radio frequency radiation will harm human health. The body and its systems are an electromagnetic field communicating and processing information electrically as does the brain. Any frequency that disrupts this electrical and electromagnetic harmony will cause 'physical' and psychological dis-ease or disruption and the more powerful the frequency the greater the disruption. The Cult doesn't care – that's the effect it *wants* in its war on humanity. Tom Wheeler, then chairman of the US Federal Communications Commission (FCC), told the media that all urban and rural communities would be saturated with 5G to connect to the Internet everything from water supplies to pharmaceutical drugs and domestic appliances. Obama-appointed Wheeler was formerly a venture capitalist and lobbyist for the cable and wireless industry which he then became responsible for 'regulating'. No wonder this disgraceful man said that 5G safety standards simply didn't matter:

We won't wait for the standards to be first developed in the sometimes arduous standards-setting process or in a government-led activity. Instead, we will make ample spectrum available and then rely on a private sector-led process for producing technical standards best suited for those frequencies and use cases.

We'll allow the industry that admits it has done no testing to set the safety standards in line with what they require for the industry (the Cult) to do whatever it wants. The technocracy's need to cover the planet with 5G or higher can be seen in the \$9 billion fund announced by the same Federal Communications Commission (now chaired by Ajit Pai) to 'help' the billionaire telecommunication industry to specifically install 5G connection (radiation) across rural America. How kind.

5G coming to your street



Figure 331: 5G with its destructive frequencies will require transmitters along every street.

5G is designed to add still further to the technological sub-reality disconnecting humanity from Infinite Reality which is being constructed all around us step by step. Its millimetre waves don't pass well through buildings and other dense objects which means that 5G transmitters are needed down every street ([Fig 331](#)). Some estimates claim one for every twelve buildings. This will mean having untested 5G transmitted directly outside homes and children's bedrooms. The human cost is going to be considerable over a period and it's meant to be for reasons I will be explaining. In fact 5G is so potentially destructive that the International Commission on Non-Ionizing Radiation Protection (ICNIRP) which is recognised by the Cult-created World Health Organization said it is 100 percent safe. Wow, it must be bad then. The ICNIRP calls itself 'independent' which it is perfectly at liberty to do, but I don't believe it. The inability of 5G to pass through dense objects explains why phenomenal numbers of trees, especially in urban areas, are being cut down. You know those trees we are told are so essential to 'stop global warming'. A *Sunday Times* investigation using the Freedom of Information Act found that 110,000 trees had been chopped down in three years by UK councils including Newcastle (8,414), Edinburgh (4,435) and Sheffield (3,529). The excuses for doing so were pathetic and the real reason is 5G and the preparation for autonomous vehicles which need a clear connection to 5G. Scientists and doctors independent of the industry and the Cult have spoken out about the multiple dangers posed by 5G. One is Dr Joel

Moskowitz, a public health professor at the University of California, Berkeley, who says the deployment of 5G is a mass experiment on the health of all species because millimetre waves are weaker than microwaves and predominantly absorbed by the skin which takes the focus of the 'hit'. He says skin contains capillaries and nerve endings which allow 5G bio-effects to be transmitted through molecular mechanisms and the nervous system (the skin is actually an antenna like the skeleton and the body in general). Dr Moskowitz warned that '5G will use high-band frequencies, or millimetre waves, that may affect the eyes, the testes [end of procreation agenda], the skin, the peripheral nervous system, and sweat glands ... Millimetre waves can also make some pathogens resistant to antibiotics.' Something rarely mentioned is that 'viruses' and diseases are, like everything, expressions of specific frequencies and if you broadcast those frequencies powerfully enough you can spread disease among the population without chemicals and direct contact and most certainly weaken the immune system which makes 'viruses' and pathogens more destructive (you'll see why I am putting 'virus' in quote marks when we get to the pandemic hoax). Dr Ben-Ishai from the Department of Physics at Israel's Hebrew University has warned that human sweat ducts 'act like an array of helical antennas' when exposed to 5G wavelengths and Dr Devra Davis, an internationally-renowned American epidemiologist, President of the Environmental Health Trust and director of the Center for Environmental Oncology at the University of Pittsburgh, said at the start of the 5G roll-out:

If you are one of the millions who seek faster downloads of movies, games and virtual pornography, a solution is at hand, that is, if you do not mind volunteering your living body in a giant uncontrolled experiment on the human population. At this moment, residents of the Washington, DC region – like those of 100 Chinese cities – are about to be living within a vast experimental millimeter wave network to which they have not consented – all courtesy of American taxpayers.

This work shows that the same parts of the human skin that allow us to sweat also respond to 5G radiation much like an antenna that can receive signals. We need the potential adverse health impacts of 5G to be seriously evaluated before we blanket our children, ourselves and the environment with this radiation.

Unravelling human biology

Frank Clegg, former President of Microsoft Canada, is another vocal campaigner highlighting the dangers of 5G to health and DNA which is another receiver-transmitter of information waves and immensely vulnerable to being unravelled and mutated by waves of technological radiation. Then there is John Patterson, an Australian telecommunications engineer and radiation expert, who was so concerned about the dangers he identified that he 'borrowed' a former British army tank and demolished six Sydney mobile phone transmitter towers in 2007. He wanted to highlight what he called the devastating risk to human life, nature and the planet all of which are wave and electromagnetic fields and seriously affected by technologically-generated electromagnetic waves. Patterson's protest came even before the roll out of 5G and we should not allow a focus on 5G to obscure the fact that all electromagnetic technology is potentially harmful to humans, 3G, 4G, or whatever label is used. It's only a matter of scale. John Patterson took his drastic action after being fired for producing a report revealing mega-levels of technological radiation and being ignored by every government and telecommunications agency including Standards Australia, Australian Communications Authority, Australian Radiation Protection and Nuclear Safety Agency, Local Government Association, national parliament and the military – all of which will be tools of the telecommunications industry which is a tool of the Cult. The same story can be found throughout the world because the Cult is running the show. Patterson's campaign began when he was very sick himself and this became even worse when two mobile phone base stations were installed close to his place of work. By then he was having regular heart attacks and suffering many health effects that he saw in work colleagues, some of whom died. Patterson said that 'Telecom had a very high number of suicides' and we have suicides soaring among young people deluged with technological

waves from smartphones and masts. Electromagnetic wave disruption imbalances the wavefield mind as well as the body while the brain processes information (perception) electrically. Remember, too, that when you make a call the cell tower broadcasts a dedicated radiation connection just for you and you unknowingly irradiate everyone and everything in its path *every time you use the phone*. Patterson offers this advice to mobile phone users: Minimise the use of phones in buses and trains in peak hours; avoid closed rooms with mobile phones; wind all the windows down if you use a mobile phone in the car – ('For a mobile phone signal to go through 3mm of glass it has to double its power'); Tinted glass is less permeable to mobile phone signals so causing the phone to increase power; pregnant women definitely should not use mobile phones given that the foetus absorbs radiation that its mother absorbs; don't send SMS text messages as the mobile phone transmits at maximum power for this. These are some of the mind and body effects described by Cairnsnews.org which Patterson experienced himself and witnessed in others after radiation exposure from nearby phone masts:

- Short-term memory loss
- Long-term memory loss
- Involuntary contraction of muscles and tendons
- Sleeplessness
- Chronic fatigue
- Problems with balance
- Sore neck muscles
- Jaw out of alignment
- Vertebrae in shoulders and bottom four vertebrae out of alignment caused by cramping of muscles
- Reduction in elasticity in body, especially throat, resulting in a 'choking' effect when swallowing
- Thyroid problems [which delete the immune system]
- Heart problems (including heart attacks)
- Stomach valve not opening properly, leading to heartburn and nausea
- Changes to gait
- Numbing of the skin
- Black rings around the iris
- Kidney problems
- Liver problems leading to skin problems, rashes and pimples that don't heal. Patterson says he saw at least a thousand workers with similar skin problems.
- Inappropriate emotional responses

I repeat – this was even before 5G. Patterson points out that overhead powerlines become conductors of mobile phone signals when people make calls close by and while science tests the impact of single phones the public is being exposed to simultaneous sources from multiple phones and masts making the cumulative effect far, far worse. He likens a crowded bus or train with many people using phones to a microwave oven. Now they are making them possible on aircraft. Patterson's overall conclusions are the same as those I have highlighted in my books over decades – technological fields disrupt natural fields and the consequences are cumulatively catastrophic. A major effect is on the polarity spin of body cells. Patterson said:

The body is like a spinning top charged through nature's fields and waves. Synchronicity to these fields creates good health. When we're unsynchronised to the spinning top effect, sickness and disease appear. Continual exposure to the polarisation of mobile phones is diminishing our ability to recognise nature.

Martin Pall is a Professor Emeritus of biochemistry and Basic Medical Sciences at Washington State

University and a man I will quote later with regard to 5G and ‘coronavirus’. He has published a very long list of articles and papers on the subject of electromagnetic fields and 5G. His findings support the direct experience of John Patterson and he emphasises the effect on the heart for all ages, a ‘rapid crash in collective brain function’, very early-onset Alzheimer’s and both ‘a rapid and irreversible crash in human reproduction to close to zero, based mainly but not solely on the impacts on male reproduction’ and ‘massive deterioration in the human gene pool, caused by the DNA effects in human sperm and possibly also on human eggs’. The latter two relate to the Cult’s end-of-procreation and population cull agendas which I will detail in the next chapter. Professor Pall relates how widespread neuropsychiatric effects are produced by low-intensity electromagnetic field exposures, including depression: ‘Depression can cause suicide and various neuropsychiatric effects may well lead to abusive behavior.’ Here we are with suicide rapidly increasing especially among the young in the ‘smart’ era with 5G exponentially increasing the impact of technological electromagnetic fields. Pall also said in 2018:

I predict that many organisms will be much more impacted than we will. This includes insects and other arthropods, birds and small mammals and amphibia. It includes plants including even large trees, because trees have leaves and reproductive organs that are highly exposed. I predict there will be major ecological disasters as a consequence of 5G. This will include vast conflagrations because EMF exposures make plants much more flammable.

Professor Paul said that ‘putting in tens of millions of 5G antennae without a single biological test of safety has got to be about the stupidest idea anyone has had in the history of the world’. Stupid if you care about humanity, but perfectly explainable if you don’t. Pall’s assessment is that ‘5G presents threats of the sort that we have never seen before – multiple imminent existential threats to our survival.’ From the Cult’s point of view that’s the idea and what better way to hide that reality than behind a fake ‘climate emergency’ promoted by your puppets in the Climate Cult and claimed to be ‘an existential threat’ to humanity?

World-changing



Figure 332: Schumann Resonance through which life in our reality can connect and interact is being destroyed by the tidal wave of technologically-generated electromagnetic frequencies.



Figure 333: While the ‘Greens’ are obsessed with the human-caused climate change hoax the real danger to the natural world and humanity is ignored or even supported.



Figure 334: Plant growth with Wi-Fi and no Wi-Fi.



Figure 335: Plant growth with microwaved water and purified water.

Confirmation for Pall's and Patterson's words comes from the devastating impact of technological radiation on the planet's natural frequency state known as Schumann Cavity or Schumann Resonance which is named after German physicist Winfried Otto Schumann. This operates in the extremely low frequency or ELF range between 6 and 8 Hertz which is the frequency band of human brain activity and all biological systems ([Fig 332](#)). The frequency of 7.83 Hz is said to be where everything can connect and communicate in unity. The Cult is purposely scrambling the frequency connection – *Oneness* – between humans and nature and humans and each other. We are part of a vast universal electrical system and we interact with the Earth's magnetic field which itself is part of the universal field or The Field. Humans have a flow of electromagnetic energy from The Field entering through the top of the head (crown chakra) which is distributed throughout the body by the chi acupuncture network – chi is electricity encoded with information. The dismantling and distorting of this connection by technological radiation (with 5G taking the effect to a level beyond anything we have yet experienced) is having untold consequences for body/mind health and the term 'health' is just another way of saying balance or harmony. This interaction with The Field has a profound impact on the body-field oscillation which is what we call life in this reality. When the oscillation stops the body dies and the weaker the oscillation gets the weaker we get. The same interaction applies to the entire natural world and this is why bees and insects among much else are disappearing. Older people will remember how insects were constantly hitting their windscreens in the summer because they were so abundant; but now? None of this appears to be a problem for the 'Green movement' and its Climate Cult which in many ways sees the technology dystopia as an answer to 'climate disaster'. I described earlier how members of the UK Green Party were denied by its Climate Cult hierarchy a debate on 5G at the 2019 annual conference and one member was threatened with the police while protesting the decision outside the venue ([Fig 333](#)). They don't seem at all interested in a 5G technology that threatens the natural world in all its forms with mass disruption from its wave frequency impact on animals, insects, plants, trees, the lot. What does the US Green New Deal call for? The building or upgrading to energy-efficient, distributed, and 'smart' power grids. I saw a headline at the New Woke 'Eco Warrior Princess' website which said: 'Smart Grid Technology in the US: Benefits to Environment and Social Justice.' Many experiments have revealed how Wi-Fi blocks plant growth and 5G has the potential for a serious effect on nature and food production to add to the Green demand to reduce the gas of life or plant oxygen ([Figs 334](#) and [335](#)). Nature is being destroyed from insects to bees to birds by technological frequencies and humans are going the same way.

A study in India exposed bees to a cell phone for ten minutes and found that they stopped metabolising sugars, proteins and fats – in *ten minutes*. Now apply this to the staggering increase in human diabetes (flawed metabolising of sugars); heart disease (which is affected by frequency impulses); and cancer (cell growth can be distorted by technological electromagnetic fields). Is it really a coincidence that in the period that all this has happened dementia has soared? We are in a real crisis caused by technological wavefields while the Cult sells the fake crisis of climate change and has hijacked the Green movement to attack those exposing the facts. Whales and dolphins that navigate through a Schumann connection have been beaching themselves in large numbers while birds, bees and insects are being similarly affected through navigational disruption. Physicist and Schumann researcher Wolfgang Ludwig said: ‘Measuring Schumann resonance in or around a city has become impossible ... electromagnetic pollution from cell phones has forced us to make measurements at sea.’ Professor Rutger Wever from the Max Planck Institute for Behavioural Physiology in Germany built an underground bunker isolated from Schumann resonance to study student volunteers for a month. Isolation from Schumann frequencies caused biological rhythms (circadian rhythms) to be scrambled and they suffered emotional distress (see humanity today) and migraine headaches. These symptoms disappeared after only a short exposure to 7.8 Hz. There are gathering numbers of people worldwide suffering so seriously from what is termed ‘electrical sensitivity’ that they have to live alone as far from technological radiation as possible, but where can they run with this shit blasted everywhere from satellite thanks to Musk and his masters? They are technology-generated radiation sensitive and the number is bound to soar with 5G. American activist Arthur Firstenberg, author of *Microwaving Our Planet: The Environmental Impact of the Wireless Revolution* and *The Invisible Rainbow: A History of Electricity and Life*, said in 2018:

At least 20 million people in the world, and I estimate that conservatively, have already been injured by cell phones and their infrastructure so severely that they cannot work. They are driven out of their homes and cities and cannot live in society.

They are environmental refugees and they are in every country. Many are housebound and cannot venture outside ... many of these people are homeless, living in cars and tents, in remote areas, committing suicide and no one comes to their aid.

Firstenberg was speaking even before 5G. The manipulated frequency disconnection between humans and their environment has many benefits for the Cult agenda including that technocracy requires a disconnection from the natural world. A survey by Britain’s National Trust in 2020 found that more than 70 percent of children say they rarely or never watch clouds, butterflies and bees and most adults had rarely or never listened to birdsong or smelled wild flowers over the previous year. Never mind they could always watch videos of them on YouTube or download images from Instagram.

Give children smartphones?



Figure 336: Assimilation now starts early.

Children are far more damaged by radiation and they are sitting in Wi-Fi fields at school all day and then going home to the same Wi-Fi along with the added radiation fields of smart meters, smartphones and Wi-Fi in the street. *No safe level* of wireless radiation has been determined for children or pregnant women and that's likely true for everyone. Brain cancers in children have rapidly increased where they put phones to their ear – adults, too – and tumours of the heart (disrupting the heart on the wavefield level is a prime objective of the Cult). What a grotesque sight it is to see parents allowing babies to play with these devices or toddlers in highchairs for no other reason than to keep them placated ([Fig 336](#)). Phone use for just 20 minutes a day can triple the risk of a brain tumour with thinner-skulled children at the greatest risk. The *Chicago Tribune* reported in 2019 that eleven smartphone models exceed federal radiation safety levels (already ridiculously high) by *500 percent*. An investigation by the Swiss Tropical and Public Health Institute which replicated an earlier study established memory damage in teenagers who had used a cell phone for a year. This was especially the case with those putting the phone to the same ear with impaired memory in those parts of the brain getting the biggest exposure to phone radiation. A BBC report revealed that most children surveyed in the UK sleep with their phone by the bed, which can be seriously detrimental to both health and sleep, while mobiles are being handed to children at an ever earlier age with most having a phone by age seven. Ownership becomes 'pretty universal' by age eleven. Even against this background of phone and Wi-Fi health consequences Apple is selling 'Airpods' which people stick in their ears to pick up Wi-Fi. Bluetooth does the same. It is cumulative suicide and the *companies don't know that?* How many phone users realise that in the fine print these companies tell you not to put the phone to your ear? This is the get-out clause for the tidal wave of lawsuits they know will eventually come their way. Lloyds of London, one of the world's premier insurance groups, refuses to insure health claims made against 5G and Wi-Fi technologies. What do they know that the public is not being told? *Plenty.* Cancer, heart malfunction, dementia, weakened immune systems, miscarriages, stillbirths, insomnia, extreme nosebleeds, eye problems, depression, suicide, and other conditions and behaviour are all potential effects of 5G. Firefighters in San Francisco have reported memory problems and confusion after 5G was installed outside their stations and they said this only stopped when they moved to non-5G locations. These are the 5G waves impacting on the information processing of the brain and imagine what the situation will be when it is *everywhere* and being fired at us from Musk's satellites. Anyone still surprised at the soaring increase in teenage suicide when electromagnetic frequencies emitted by technology affect information processing by the brain? *The Cult is taking over the human mind* and for this reason laws are being passed to impose 5G on every community and stop anyone opting out. Another effect of technology waves is to break down the blood-brain barrier that keeps toxins out of the brain including nanochips. Children are being hit with this stuff before their blood-brain barriers are even fully developed. The telecommunications and Silicon Valley corporations promoting all this are controlled by pure psychopathic evil (the extreme absence of love). I hear some say there is no such thing as evil when there *is* by that definition. Indeed there must be the potential for evil and the absence of love within the infinity of All Possibility.

Cauliflower blood

American researcher Lena Pu is the environmental health consultant for the National Association for Children and Safe Technologies and she has the experience of working with military and government agencies. She is a vehement campaigner against 5G and Wi-Fi in schools, but even she was taken aback when she tested the blood of a teacher after a day in a classroom that wasn't even dowsed in maximum Wi-Fi power as many others are. She said the teacher's blood was the worse she had ever seen – 'sticky', coagulating and brown in colour. 'This is the first time that the blood was so thick that I could see the colour on a slide', Pu said. She described it as 'looking like cauliflower'. It took her a few minutes to talk to the teacher because she was in 'pure shock'. What was happening to the blood of the students in the same environment? What is happening to all children at school across the world every day with Wi-Fi

transmitted in almost every classroom whether they use it or not? Now 5G is being installed in schools across the world and hospitals. Blood is liquid and the Wi-Fi affect becomes obvious when you think that Wi-Fi operates in the same frequency band as microwave ovens which generate frequencies specifically designed to energise water molecules. What does the holographic human body mostly consist of? Water. Microwave ovens dry out food and Wi-Fi dries out (dehydrates) humans. What could possibly go wrong and what a coincidence, eh? I guess it's also a coincidence that driverless cars operate in the waveband that affects water. Consequences for body and mind include depression (see skyrocketing teen suicides again). Apathy is another symptom which is exactly what the Cult wants to provide a free run to its endgame.

Lena Pu found that Wi-Fi and technology transmitters can change their frequency which means that while they are officially transmitting on one frequency they can covertly be delivering other frequencies at the behest of whoever is in control. Pu's research has also shown her how technology frequencies are effecting the very formation and intake of oxygen and this connects with the global population cull I have been warning about for decades. The Smart Grid is the delivery system, but the controllers of the Grid decide at whatever time what is *being* delivered. We are told that this network is for 5G or 4G when that is only the technology to deliver other frequencies far beyond what we are told about. Humanity is not only building its own prison cell. It is watching its own microwave oven being installed step-by-step every day. Pu said something else that I have been pointing out year after year. These 'technology' waves are actually '*alive*' and a form of consciousness. Remember what I said about the most advanced AI being in truth a name for the very force behind human control? The introduction of 5G is going to increase the radiation effect of all of the above by many, many times. Nevertheless the mainstream media takes the side of industry and government, *of course*, with the *New York Times* running headlines such as 'The 5G Health Hazard That Isn't'. This was the same *New York Times* that partnered with Verizon 'to explore how 5G can be used in journalism'. Why the *Times* would want to know about the effect on journalism when it doesn't do any was not explained. A *Times* reporter was accused of violating a truth and accuracy code by the Press Council of Ireland with regard to an article about 5G. Given that the paper is an ultra-Zionist-owned rag that serves the interests of the Cult there is no surprise there then. A 'journalist' called Alex Hern wrote an article in the 'anti-Establishment' deeply-establishment London *Guardian* headed: 'How baseless fears over 5G rollout created a health scare'. Hern licked the arse of the industry and its '5G is perfectly safe' propaganda while basically dismissing any concerns as 'junk science'. What a disgrace to journalism, but oh, so typical of his kind across the media. All these health concerns are believed acceptable for faster Internet speeds that are already fast enough. Endanger your health and you can download your movies quicker – you know it makes sense. Faster speeds are just another 'here kitty, kitty' to the Smart Grid dystopia ([Fig 337](#)).

5G is a weapon



Figure 337: Faster downloads – faster surveillance and data collection – and faster and more powerful the impact on human wavefields. (Image by Ben Garrison at Grrrgraphics.com.)



Figure 338: Active Denial weapons in the millimetre band of 5G. The skin – an antenna – decodes the frequencies into the feeling of intense heat as if the skin is on fire.

Ultra-high millimetre frequencies used by the 5G band are in fact employed as a *weapon* by the American, Israeli and other military and law enforcement (same thing) under the name ‘Active Denial Technology’ ([Fig 338](#)). This transmits millimetre band frequencies from military/law enforcement trucks to rapidly disperse protests and crowds. People scatter when their skin (an antenna) decodes the frequencies into the feeling that their skin is on fire and they run to get away from it. A US Department of Defense report said: ‘If you are unlucky enough to be standing there when [the beam] hits you, you will feel like your body is on fire.’ With such skin-5G interaction how many people will die of skin cancer as a result of its imposition? The disruptive potential is obvious for body and brain of 5G waves everywhere you go and for affecting even the wave oscillation of the body that gives it life. Consider the effect on the whole electromagnetic soup in totality on the wave oscillation of the body. The military potential is fantastic and NATO countries agreed to ‘guarantee the security of our communications, including 5G’ at their 2019 summit in London. The real reason for the 5G roll out is military and anti-human. The Pentagon-advising Defense Science Board detailed the military potential of 5G in a document called Defense Applications of 5G Network Technology: ‘The emergence of 5G technology, now commercially available, offers the Department of Defense the opportunity to take advantage, at minimal cost, of the benefits of this system for its own operational requirements.’ Get your Cult ‘private’ companies and taxpayer money to fund a 5G network that’s really intended for the Cult military. 5G will take war fighting, mass killing and mass surveillance on to a new level. Fortunately, public resistance to 5G is growing despite Cult industry propaganda parroted by the Cult media and Cult social media and the Cult’s YouTube deleting accounts and videos of those exposing the dangers. Be careful, however, as with all apparent opposition groups, that some are not fronts for what they claim to oppose. Astroturfing is everywhere today.

Poison from the sky



Figure 339: The chemtrail phenomenon all over the world.

One other crucial point about 5G and other forms of technological radiation is the phenomenon known as ‘chemtrails’ which started to be noticed in the 1990s and has subsequently been reported all over the world. I will be brief because I have detailed this subject at length in *Everything You Need To Know*. People

are familiar with *contrails*, or condensation trails, that flow from the back of aircraft and quickly disappear. *Chemtrails*, or chemical trails, do not disappear. They slowly expand and combine until even a clear blue sky can appear cloudy and hazy. The content of chemtrails falls to earth to infest people, animals, water sources, trees, plants, soil, everything ([Fig 339](#)). Tests have revealed that chemtrails contain aluminium, barium, radioactive thorium, cadmium, chromium, nickel, mould spores, yellow fungal mycotoxins, polymer fibres, smart dust nanotechnology, and so much more in cumulatively lethal concentrations for human health. The aluminium content is a major source for the aluminium/glyphosate impact on the pineal gland and aluminium, a brain toxin, has been rightly linked to Alzheimer's and other forms of dementia which have become an epidemic affecting younger and younger people. Why wouldn't that be when aluminium, in effect, short-circuits the brain? With regard to the technological sub-reality, or 'cloud', chemtrails add to the conductivity of the atmosphere and turn it into an antenna. It's all connected to the same end. Chemtrails were dismissed as a 'conspiracy theory (of course) and then Bill Gates (of course) began officially promoting and funding them to 'block the sun' to save the world from 'global warming'.

AI world army

The world army enforcing the will of unelected technocrat world government is not ultimately planned to be human and the transition to an AI military is already well underway. We are moving rapidly to artificial intelligence (the Archontic force essentially) making global decisions about life and death through control of weapons that truly are weapons of mass destruction. AI won't only control the Smart Grid and every facet of 'human' life. It will decide if you live or die and that can be done en masse through humanity's AI connection to the Grid. The middle strata of the Hunger Games Society between the elite and the masses is planned to be occupied by an AI world military/police state of constant surveillance with the elimination of all dissenters. If you've seen the *Matrix* movies you'll be aware of the 'Sentinels' or machines in their seek-and-destroy missions against humans operating outside the AI control system. This in theme is the AI world army consisting of AI robots and weapons systems that even military commanders would not in the end control. For autonomous vehicles see autonomous weapons, too, directed by the Archontic force and its Cult operatives. AI control would at some point allow the Cult elite and its technocrats to take refuse from any protesting humanity in mega underground and within mountain cities that I was writing about as long ago as the 1990s. All this has been planned a very long time. Cult arms companies are developing laser weapons controlled by AI – tanks, planes, helicopters and battleships are all being designed and introduced with AI making the decisions. DARPA as you would expect is at the centre of this although itself answers to those much deeper in The Web. This is the same dark and sinister Cult-created DARPA behind the Internet and Silicon Valley corporations like Google and Facebook. Aircraft drones equipped with weapons are being developed with a 'neural microchip' that lets them 'think like a human'. Drone surveillance systems are well advanced and in 2019 Turkey unveiled a fleet of drones equipped with a machine gun and 200-rounds of ammunition. The thought of the military flying AI drones with machine guns would once have been science fiction territory. Even so Turkey is way back from the cutting edge of drone capability compared with the United States, China, Russia and Israel. How about AI controlling laser and other focused energy and beam weapons that can strike anywhere on Earth from satellite? Anyone who dismisses that has not been paying attention to what is actually *happening*. The contempt that the Cult has for the human population was confirmed yet again when the US Department of Defense appointed Eric Schmidt, Trilateral Commission member and former CEO of Google, to chair the Defense Innovation Board established in 2016 to formulate 'ethical standards' in the use of AI in the battlefield in line with the 'best practice' of Silicon Valley. What 'best practice'? Walter Isaacson, another Trilateral Commission member, former President of the One-percent's Aspen Institute, chairman and CEO of CNN and Managing Editor of *Time*, is also on the board. The members are selected by Schmidt in consultation with the Secretary of Defense.

The idea that Schmidt is going to propose genuine and enforceable ‘ethical standards’ on military AI is a joke so sick it is beyond laughable when he fronted for Google as it was transforming the Internet into the censorship-ridden, freedom-deleting, AI-dictated abomination that it has become.



Figure 340: The Cult is creating a world military force in which decisions are made by artificial intelligence outside the control of humans.

Satellites are being launched all the time without publicity in pursuit of global control and when they are mentioned it is their civilian and commercial uses that are emphasised when many have military applications. Russia’s President Vladimir Putin made this point in 2019 when he said that world powers were increasingly weaponising space and Russia had to respond: ‘The US political and military leadership openly consider space a war theatre ... Developments demand that we pay increased attention to strengthening our orbital group as well as our rocket and space industries.’ Russia’s ‘orbital group’ is reported to have 150 satellites with two-thirds of them having military applications. The United States will be much further ahead than that and then there is China, too. President Trump created the US Space Force, the first new military branch since 1947, when he signed the 2020 National Defense Authorization Act. ‘Space is the world’s newest warfighting domain’, Trump said. ‘American superiority in space is absolutely vital.’ This was delivering exactly what the ultra-Zionist Project for the New American Century called for in its September, 2000, document demanding that list of regime changes which followed the Sabbatian-Frankist-instigated 9/11. The fact that Trump is owned by Israel is naturally purely coincidental. Space is another ‘domain’ for the child-like playground bullies to fight. The world is run by a psychopathic playschool. Academics and scientists have warned that killer robots will leave humans defenceless while not appearing to realise that *this is the very idea*. ([Fig 340](#)). Even using humans in the military/police state carries with it the possibility of rebellion once they see what the game is. That is avoided with AI and those in the military and police today should realise that they would be in the Hunger Games masses once AI law enforcement took over. The world’s first robot officer officially joined the Dubai police in 2017. ‘Robocop’ can read facial expressions, respond in six languages, and has a built-in tablet that can be used to report crime and pay fines. Brigadier-General Khalid Nasser Al Razzouqi, Director-General of Dubai Police ‘Smart Services’, said:

With an aim to assist and help people in the malls or on the streets, the Robocop is the latest smart addition to the force and has been designed to help us fight crime, keep the city safe and improve happiness levels. He can chat and interact, respond to public queries, shake hands and offer a military salute.

Dystopian vision

Authorities in the Dubai fake-royal tyranny want at least a quarter of its police force to be robots by that year again – 2030 – which also turned up in an article by Danish politician and World Economic Forum insider Ida Auken which was posted on the Forum website in 2016. It was headed: ‘Welcome to 2030. I own nothing, have no privacy, and life has never been better.’ She described her home at that time as ‘our city’ and was concerned for those who did not want to share the then AI technocratic society. She

described them as 'Those who decided that it became too much, all this technology' and 'Those who felt obsolete and useless when robots and AI took over big parts of our jobs.' In Auken's scenario such people lived a different life in 'little self-supplying communities' or 'just stayed in the empty and abandoned houses in small 19th century villages'. She continued in her 2030 prediction:

Once in a while I get annoyed about the fact that I have no real privacy. Nowhere I can go and not be registered. I know that, somewhere, everything I do, think and dream of is recorded. I just hope that nobody will use it against me.

All in all, it is a good life. Much better than the path we were on, where it became so clear that we could not continue with the same model of growth. We had all these terrible things happening: lifestyle diseases, climate change, the refugee crisis, environmental degradation, completely congested cities, water pollution, air pollution, social unrest and unemployment. We lost way too many people before we realised that we could do things differently.

She was describing the Problem-Reaction-Solutions and NO-Problem-Reaction-Solutions that led to the technocracy so long planned by the One-percent mentality behind the World Economic Forum except that the 'little self-supplying communities' would not be allowed.

We can see how a very few could control the entirety of humanity through an AI brain connection, a centrally-directed AI global army and a Smart Grid controlling everything. A further aspect of AI in relation to the Hunger Games Society is the absolute carnage which Auken indicated that is coming for jobs and income through the mass-replacement of humans with AI technology which is already happening at a quickening speed (written before the carnage of jobs and income that came with the manipulated lockdowns).

Even news items are being written by artificial intelligence with AI digital news and sport presenters being developed. None of this is by chance. It's by Cult. How few do you need to dominate the world through the global Smart Grid when centrally-controlled AI can decide what happens with everything connected to the Internet, all surveillance, communication systems, transport, economics, food production and distribution, what news items say, and even the digital AI that presents them? All this and so much more is planned to be centrally dictated and I make the strong case in *The Trigger* that this point of control in the Smart Grid is planned eventually to be Israel, the fiefdom of the Sabbatian-Frankist cult, the prime network in the global Cult.

CHAPTER THIRTEEN

What is really behind transgender hysteria?

Tolerance isn't about not having beliefs. It's about how your beliefs lead you to treat people who disagree with you - Timothy Keller

I have indicated a number of times so far that there is a deep and sinister motive behind transgender hysteria that has gripped the mind of New Woke and been tyrannically imposed on the rest of society. Know the outcome and you'll see the journey.

The Cult wants a no-gender synthetic 'biological' human to replace what we have now. The new human body is being designed to better interact with AI and to be able to survive the catastrophic levels of destructive radiation necessary for the Smart Grid to function in its final form which the current human body would struggle to survive. 5G is not the end in terms of the impact of frequency transmissions; it is only the next stage. Synthetic genetics is advancing rapidly in public arena projects and far more so in underground bases where the Archon-to-Cult knowledge transfer takes place. Synthetic biology or 'SynBio' is a fast-emerging area of science that includes everything from genetic and molecular engineering to electrical and computer engineering. The content of the Bill Gates 'virus vaccine' is designed to advance this process as I will be explaining. Definitions of synthetic biology include: 'A multidisciplinary area of research that seeks to create new biological parts, devices, and systems, or to redesign systems that are already found in nature'; 'the use of a mixture of physical engineering and genetic engineering to create new (and, therefore, synthetic) life forms'; and 'an emerging field of research that aims to combine the knowledge and methods of biology, engineering and related disciplines in the design of chemically-synthesized DNA to create organisms with novel or enhanced characteristics and traits'. When translated from the Orwellian this means synthetic post-humans. Transgender hysteria is the Tiptoe on a road that leads to synthetic *everything*. The pressure for vegan diets being pushed to 'save the world' is only a Tiptoe to synthetic food which will be further advanced by manipulated food shortages in the wake of the 'virus' hysteria – if we let them do it. American scientists claimed in 2020 they had developed 'Xenobots' that are 'neither robot nor animal' constructed from living frog cells and described as 'living machines'. Research groups are leading the world to artificial wombs and gestation and these are only projects publicly known, not the cutting edge that we don't see. A lamb was grown in an artificial womb for four weeks and Australian researchers have experimented with lambs and sharks. A 2017 article in the London *Guardian* was headed 'Artificial wombs could soon be a reality. What will this mean for women?' It said:

We are approaching a biotechnological breakthrough. Ectogenesis, the invention of a complete external womb, could completely change the nature of human reproduction. In April this year, researchers at the Children's Hospital of Philadelphia announced their development of an artificial womb ...

... Researchers at Cambridge University, meanwhile, have also kept a human embryo alive outside the

body for 13 days using a mix of nutrients that mimic conditions in the womb. The embryo survived several days longer than previously observed and research only stopped because they were approaching the 14-day legal limit for the length of time an embryo can be kept in a lab. In other words, our ethics rather than our technology are now the limiting factor.



Figure 341: This is how far machine humans have come in the public arena and this is far from the cutting edge in the secret projects and underground facilities.



Figure 342: It goes with the territory once you break free of The Program.

Reflect on that phrase ‘could completely change the nature of human reproduction’ in the light of what I have said in this book and much earlier ones about the plan for the end of human procreation described by Aldous Huxley. Many research centres around the world are seeking to develop synthetic skin,

organs, blood, even brain tissue. Public experimentation reveals the direction while giving the impression that the development is at a really early stage. Behind the scenes synthetic biology is extremely advanced through Archon-Cult knowledge transfers in the underground facilities hidden far from the public gaze. Genuine research by genuine people provides the cover with an apparent process of development while the finished article is already waiting to be played out in the public arena when the time is right.

Synthetic robots are even looking ever more like the humans they mimic and the ‘consciousness’ of these robots is artificial intelligence ([Fig 341](#)). We should not only think of AI with regard to robots and machines, but also with digital virtual people that don’t exist except in cyberspace. The plan in the end is to absorb human minds into only cyber reality with no ‘physical body’ at all and the stepping stones to that are already clear to see. Remember that picture from earlier of very human-looking people that don’t exist except as cyber creations. Once you know the game the world becomes an open book and Bubble minds confirm that by calling you crazy ([Fig 342](#)). Transgender hysteria has come out of nowhere to be suddenly everywhere because the Cult has pressed the button on the preparation for the synthetic human which will have no gender and not be able to procreate. Aldous Huxley who operated in the arena of Cult operatives envisioned just such a society in his prophetic *Brave New World* in 1932:

Natural reproduction has been done away with and children are created, ‘decanted’, and raised in ‘hatcheries and conditioning centres’. From birth, people are genetically designed to fit into one of five castes, which are further split into ‘Plus’ and ‘Minus’ members and designed to fulfil predetermined positions within the social and economic strata of the World State.

Huxley was precisely predicting the Cult agenda the best part of 100 years ago. Understanding how

Huxley in 1932, George Orwell in 1948 and Dr Richard Day in 1969 could know what was coming relates to how I have been able to so accurately predict events in my books over the last 30 years. If you have access to the hidden agenda as an insider, as with Day, or penetrate the plan by decades of research, you can comfortably predict what we perceive as the future. It can be done on this basis: If there is an agenda for the world and nothing intervenes to stop that then what is planned will happen and in this way by uncovering the plan you 'predict' the 'future'. The idea from my perspective is to alert enough people so the plan is stopped. It will rightly be asked how Huxley and Orwell could predict events so far ahead which involved technology and drugs that didn't even exist at the time. This included Orwell's Big Brother 'Telescreens' keeping constant surveillance in every home. Today they are known as Smart TVs although there are much more extreme versions in the pipeline. That question of how they could be so accurate about technology that didn't exist can be answered this way: There are two realities in human society working alongside each other with very different levels of knowledge. One is Postage Stamp Society with strictly limited information and the other is Cult reality interacting with Archontic reality through the inner sanctum of secret societies and Satanism. The latter connection especially allows inner-core Cult initiates to know about technological possibility and projected plans even when they are not yet available or happening in human reality. Those that operate in those circles can pick up themes of where the world is being taken and technology that will be possible to take us there even if they are not directly part of the Cult itself. Non-insiders who don't operate in those circles have to work their backsides off to breach the secrecy with both five-sense research and expansions of consciousness that can connect with levels of awareness working to end human enslavement and help people awaken from their perceptual coma.

Confuse gender then fuse gender



Figure 343: Non-binary on the road to no-binary as self-identity goes on being squeezed into smaller and smaller bubbles.

The current obsession with transgender and its imposition on children and the young (as always) by schools, universities, media and peer pressure is an intensely malevolent campaign to confuse gender on the way to *deleting* gender with the synthetic technologically-created no-gender human. From this comes an even smaller bubble of self-identity ([Fig 343](#)). Cult insider Dr Richard Day told the paediatricians in 1969 that the plan was to make boys and girls the same and children would be produced without sexual procreation. The Cult is confusing gender on a Totalitarian Tiptoe to *fusing* gender. The largely unnoticed first stage was to dilute the differences between men and women and increasingly treat them as biologically the same when they have clear differences that should complement each other. Their body information fields process information differently and women have gifts and aptitudes that most men don't have and vice-versa. The idea has been to dilute that uniqueness and most importantly the *perception* of uniqueness with slogans like a woman can do anything a man can do just as well. Actually that's not true in many cases and the same with a man doing anything a woman can do just as well. There are differences and we must not let New Woke insanity kid us otherwise. I am not saying that women

should not do whatever they choose and good luck to them. My point is how the manipulation has been operating slowly and then ever-quicker towards the end of gender and the blurring of differences between men and woman was stage one. We have had as a result the feminising of men and masculinisation of women. Recall the progression (Tiptoe) in how first we had 'unisex' clothing for both men and women and now no-gender clothing. Female uniforms are being phased out for a no-gender variety with police forces and military increasingly scrapping traditional men's and women's uniforms for 'gender-neutral' versions and the same with school uniforms. Tiptoe, Tiptoe, Tiptoe.

The deletion of the terms 'ladies and gentlemen' and 'boys and girls' are also calculated to delete the concept of male and female gender from the language and so the psyche. We are well into the next stage today with the number of young people questioning their gender increasing dramatically and kids suddenly bewildered about their gender who would not have been before without the systematic programming. Why does anyone think 'question-your-gender' studies are becoming compulsory in schools? Why do they think gender-confusing drag queens are being invited into schools in country after country to read gender-confusing stories to even very young children? Why are parents and anyone else challenging this calculated and disgraceful manipulation of kids instantly branded 'transphobic' by often vicious transgender New Woke activists and the media? It's the same modus operandi that we have with climate change activists, 'anti-racist' activists, gay activists, political correctness activists and all the other mix-and-match permanently-offended intersectional expressions of New Woke serving the Cult while overwhelmingly in ignorance that there is a Cult. Nothing is more certain to scramble the brain than the virulent up-your-own-arse syndrome that pervades New Wokeness like a roaring epidemic. Maybe we should shut down the global economy and put everyone under house arrest until it passes. The consequences of this tyranny for many children are horrific and life-long. Research by doctors in Australia revealed that those attending gender identity clinics are many times more likely to show signs of autism than the general population. The doctors reported their findings in the *Journal of Autism and Developmental Disorders* and quoted a US study of nearly 300,000 children that suggested those with autism were more than four times more likely to be diagnosed with gender 'dysphoria' compared with those without autism. Stephanie Davies-Arai, founder of the campaign group Transgender Trend, said people with autism spectrum disorder (ASD) are more likely than others to become fixated on an idea which they can find almost impossible to drop (see Greta Thunberg). She warned: 'We should not just be cheering on this vulnerable group towards life-changing medical interventions.'



Figure 344: And it is planned to become ever more a thing of the 'past'. Female is a sex/gender and they are all planned to disappear. Men are the first target, but women are following fast.



Figure 345: Big powerful male bodies self-identifying as women are destroying women's sport – another way that the female sex/gender is being targeted for eventual elimination.



Figure 346: Parody is now almost impossible in the face of what is really happening.

Transgender Trend is a group of UK-based parents questioning the trend to diagnose children as transgender which has led to the unprecedented number of teenage girls suddenly self-identifying as 'trans'. The group challenges laws which put transgender rights 'above the right to safety for girls and young women in public toilets and changing rooms along with fairness for girls in sport' ([Fig 344](#)). These legitimate questions and concerns are condemned as serious transphobia by the ever-scornful face of New Wokeness. I mean how could it possibly be valid to protect young girls and women from a strapping bloke walking into their toilet or changing room with his bollocks dangling claiming to be female; or a big muscular man taking part in the women's weightlifting championship because he goes by the name of 'Vera'? American Fallon Fox is a transgender mixed martial arts fighter who identifies as a woman while walking around in a powerful male body. Her/his self-identification allows her/him to compete against much less physically powerful women and she/he knocks the crap out of them. One woman had her skull broken. Criticism she/he faced for this, however, was purely transphobic and nothing to do with protecting women from life-changing harm. Outsports, a sports news website focusing on LGBT issues in sports, described Fox as the 'bravest athlete in history' to confirm yet again that transgender activism is not interested in fairness, balance and inclusivity. It seeks dominance for its view while itself being clueless about how and why it is being used by the Cult. What New Wokers call 'inclusivity' for one minority means exclusion and even a broken skull for another. Where you are in the hierarchy of Wokeness decides who dominates who and transgender is now way above female. Consequently women's sport is being destroyed by those in men's bodies self-identifying as women running away with the prizes and destroying previous female performance records. Why? Their bodies are *not female* ([Fig 345](#)). By the way, how come 'women' in male bodies can so out-perform those who are born women if males and females are not biologically different? Transgender extremism is a parody of itself ([Fig 346](#)). Transgenderism gets whatever it wants even though Catherine McGregor, a highly-intelligent and perceptive Australian transsexual, said: 'We are a telephone booth minority.' That's correct even with all the propaganda, but the Cult's no-gender human Tiptoe demands what is happening and so it happens. Transgender activist extremism is nothing *whatsoever* to do with support for transgender people. They are only pawns and the excuse just as with the Jewish community and

Sabbatian-Frankism. Support for Cult ambitions is what this is all about and as you would expect Sabbatian-Frankist, Cult-owned Hollywood has taken up the cause with transgender ‘superheroes’.

‘Unregulated live experiments on children’

I have detailed in *Everything You Need To Know* the list of ways that gender confusion is being manipulated from indoctrination in schools from the earliest ages to inhuman pressure applied by ‘gender’ doctors and clinics to push children and adults into gender transition without any evidence that this is necessary or advisable. Gender-changing and puberty-blocking drugs are being handed out at an alarming rate because that’s what the Cult wants. So blatant and extreme has this become that 35 psychologists resigned in three years from London’s Gender Identity Development Service (GIDS) at the Tavistock and Portman NHS Foundation Trust. They cited ‘over-diagnosis’ with too many children put on puberty-blocking drugs when they should not have been diagnosed with so-called gender dysphoria. Whistleblower workers have said children as young as three are having ‘unnecessary gender reassignment treatment’ after being incorrectly diagnosed with gender dysphoria. Carl Heneghan, director of the Centre of Evidence-based Medicine at Oxford University, described the policy as ‘unregulated live experiments on children’. The number of children treated at GIDS is reported to have increased in a decade from 77 to 2,590 – a trend that is happening across the world as the Cult agenda is enforced. Former GIDS staff said they were not able to properly assess people for fear of being dubbed ‘transphobic’. New Wokeness is nothing if not predictable and desperately naïve although its inner core knows exactly what it’s doing. One psychologist said: ‘We are extremely concerned about the consequences for young people … For those of us who previously worked in the service we fear that we have had front row seats to a medical scandal.’ Another said:

The alarm started ringing for me … I didn’t feel able to voice my concerns, or when I did I was often shut down by other affirmative clinicians. Looking back there are young people who I now wouldn’t necessarily put on medication.

Lisa Littman, assistant professor of the practice of behavioural and social sciences at Brown University in Rhode Island, said that many teenage girls are identifying as transgender after seeing a friend do so or after reading transgender material online. Teenagers with no previous history of ‘gender dysphoria’ suddenly proclaimed themselves to be transgender in the wake of an individual or multiple members of their peer group doing the same. Littman called these ‘cluster outbreaks’. A decade ago most ‘gender dysphoria’ children were biologically male but today they are biologically female. Clearly perceptual programming and group-think is playing a major role here. As you would expect Lisa Littman was subjected to major abuse from transgender activist extremism – so much so that her study was withdrawn and revised. Michelle Cretella, executive director of the American College of Pediatricians, said she has heard from dozens of families about teenagers experiencing ‘rapid-onset’ gender dysphoria. The majority are girls between 13 and 15 with often a history of depression and no previous signs of gender dysphoria. They suddenly announce they are transgender and should have hormone treatment. Cretella said:

Human beings are biological creatures heavily shaped by social relationships, especially during adolescence. It is at this most critical stage of development that our culture now holds out the lie that teens should embrace a mental illness – gender dysphoria – not only as their ‘authentic transgender identity’ but as the answer to all that ails them mentally and emotionally … [these children are] being needlessly led down a path of irreversible long-term physical and emotional harm.

The programming is incessant today with the BBC as always right up there. It aired on its *children’s* channel CBBC the documentary *I Am Leo* about a 13-year-old going through transition treatment at the

increasingly infamous Tavistock and Portland clinic. It naturally won an award. I have no problem with those who genuinely believe they are transgender. The problem is confusing children about gender who were not confused before. That's child abuse. Former BBC journalist John Humphrys – far too much of a journalist for today's BBC – recounted his experience of a doctor seriously concerned about what was being done to children in the transgender arena, but she was terrified of the backlash for saying so. Humphrys said the doctor 'was afraid of being viciously attacked on social media and having her reputation destroyed. She is not alone in her fear. Far from it.' He said the doctor was 'desperately worried' over far too many children being treated as victims of 'gender dysphoria' when they were suffering from a more common condition – 'being a confused teenager'. What can you say in the light of all this about the UK Liberal Democrat Party taking money from a puberty-blocking company while peddling an extreme transgender policy that benefits such organisations? *And the kids ...?* Graham Linehan, co-creator of the hit TV comedy *Father Ted*, spoke out against both this mistreatment of children and transgender extremism after seeing a feminist beaten up by trans activists. He faced an onslaught of abuse and hate from the anti-hate brigade that hasn't looked in the mirror for years. It wouldn't dare. Work opportunities dried up for Linehan from gutless potential employers. He said: 'I think there's just a stink around me, the stink of bigotry, you know, that has deliberately been created, by radical trans-rights activists. It has had a chilling effect.' Good on him for refusing to back down although with the proviso that Linehan himself had been involved in Woke-style censorship before he realised by experience what a tyranny it is. This chilling effect is now increasingly being written into law and the incessant propaganda led to Swiss voters supporting in a 2020 referendum the plan to make it illegal to 'publicly denigrate, discriminate or stir up hatred based on a person's sexual orientation'. This sounds fair enough, but it's the way this will be applied that is the danger to free speech. Who decides if something is discrimination or a freely held opinion? Who decides if transgender people don't get a job because they are transgender or because the potential employer thought another applicant was better qualified? Well, the state does and that's the Achilles heel of such laws when it comes to the deletion of basic freedoms.

In writing ...

Law website Rollonfriday.com and its reporter Jamie Hamilton revealed documents in 2019 that exposed the covert and highly manipulative nature of transgender activism targeting children. The document advises on campaign tactics and was written by staff at Dentons, described as the world's biggest law firm measured by the number of lawyers, which merged with Sonnenschein Nath & Rosenthal in 2010. The document was produced in conjunction with the Thomson Reuters Foundation and LGBT pressure group IGLYO. A Denton disclaimer states that the content 'does not necessarily reflect the personal views of any of the lawyers, staff or clients of Dentons'. Thomson Reuters Foundation apparently said something similar. Reporter Jamie Hamilton wrote that Mosaic, an LGBT youth group, contributed to the UK portion of the report along with an NGO that 'wished to remain anonymous'. The Denton report, headed 'Only adults? Good practices in legal gender recognition for youth', says in the foreword: 'We hope this report will be a powerful tool for activists and NGOs working to advance the rights of trans youth across Europe and beyond.' It contends that 'every child has an accurate conception of their own gender identity which they should be entitled to affirm in law without impediment'. To anyone still in touch with reality this is a breathtakingly ridiculous statement, but extreme transgender activism is dependent on not staying in touch with sanity let alone reality. We see the ever-recurring theme of deleting parental rights over their children to isolate the kids and hand power to the state and transgender extremists. Reporter Hamilton described the main thrust of the Denton document:

'The right to legal gender recognition is crucial for young trans persons to secure all other rights', it states, advising that the UK should 'eliminate the minimum age requirement' at which children can change their legal gender 'on their own volition, without the need for medical diagnoses or court determination'. The

document emphasises that there should be ‘no eligibility criteria, such as medical or psychological interventions’. And UK authorities should ‘take action’ against parents ‘who are obstructing the free development of a young trans person’s identity in refusing to give parental authorization when required.

Could it be any more sinister? Allow children to make life-changing decisions about their gender and ‘take action’ against any parents who challenge what is being done to their kids. In the words of the document: ‘It is recognised that the requirement for parental consent or the consent of a legal guardian can be restrictive and problematic for minors.’ Restrictive and problematic for transgender activism and extremism would be a better way of putting it. The Denton document says it is ‘crucial’ there are ‘no limitations’ to ‘gender confirmation treatment’, including ‘no requirement to be diagnosed with gender dysphoria’. It deletes all potential barriers and delays on any child ‘persuaded’ they are living the ‘wrong’ gender to be set on course to puberty blockers and surgery. Maybe someone could give me a better definition of child abuse because I can’t think of one in this moment. Another point is that through epigenetics or passed-on gene sequences the changes in one generation’s transgendered hormonal re-write will pass to the next. Rollonfriday.com reporter Hamilton continues:

The report advises activists to ‘de-medicalise’ their campaigns ‘so that legal gender recognition can be seen in the eyes of the public as distinct from gender confirmation treatments’. It explains that this is because one of the reasons opponents often cite for ‘denying such access to minors’ is the view that ‘young people should not have irreversible surgeries until they are of the age of maturity’.

The document really is a shocker and confirms in writing the experience of parents and wider society of transgender impositions that have become the norm. Such are the sinister extremes demanded by transgender activism that the Denton report warns campaigners to ‘avoid excessive press coverage and exposure’ because the ‘general public is not well informed about trans issues, and therefore misinterpretation can arise’. Translated from the PR-speak this means ‘avoid excessive press coverage and exposure’ because if the ‘general public knew what you really want then horror and fury can arise’. The document describes how activists in Ireland ‘have directly lobbied individual politicians and tried to keep press coverage to a minimum in order to avoid this issue’. It says the chances of success are increased if activists ‘target youth politicians’ who in successful campaigns in Europe ‘brought up the issue at every meeting of any sort – even ones which were not directly relevant, to ensure the issue was at the forefront of everyone’s minds’. You can see why the transgender ‘issue’ involving ‘a telephone box minority’ is everywhere and impinging on everything. Writer James Kirkup featured the Denton document in an article for *The Spectator* in which he summed up the content (and the transgender agenda) in two sentences:

In short, this is a handbook for lobbying groups that want to remove parental consent over significant aspects of children’s lives ... A handbook written by an international law firm and backed by one of the world’s biggest charitable foundations.

Transgender lobbyists will always have the system on their side when they have the Cult on their side. Kirkup said the document explained some transgender mysteries such as why bodies like the police – ‘not famous social liberals’ – were in the vanguard of the transgender transformation of society ‘even to the point of checking our pronouns and harassing elderly ladies who say the wrong thing on Twitter’. Kirkup notes the advice given to activists on how to secure protrans laws. This includes ‘get ahead of the government agenda’ which means publishing ‘progressive’ (New Woke) legislative proposals before governments had time to develop their own and in this way have the proposals of activists simply transferred into official policy. New Woke employs this tactic across all its fronts with the Cult pulling the necessary strings. Kirkup points out that a UK House of Commons select committee report in 2016

'adopted several positions from trans groups' and was followed in 2017 by 'a government plan to adopt self-identification of legal gender'. Another way to scam the public is to 'tie your campaign to more popular reform', the Denton document says. Slip it in alongside something that most people would support. This happens constantly with government and lobby groups to hide otherwise controversial plans behind non-controversial legislation. The document offers an example:

In Ireland, Denmark and Norway, changes to the law on legal gender recognition were put through at the same time as other more popular reforms such as marriage equality legislation. This provided a veil of protection, particularly in Ireland, where marriage equality was strongly supported, but gender identity remained a more difficult issue to win public support for.

The Denton document stresses that countries where deletion of parental rights over their children's gender decisions have moved with the greatest speed have been those where trans lobby groups have been successful in stopping the wider public learning the extreme nature of the plans and the consequences for kids before they were a fait accompli.

It's about 'discrimination'? Yeah, right

A good way to assess the genuineness of New Woke activism is to observe how they treat members of the community they claim to be representing who don't support the party line. In all aspects of New Wokeness the response to this is the same – attack them, abuse them and do everything you can to silence them. New Woke censorship has taken its blueprint from the 'anti-Semitism' industry Protection Racket specifically created to protect the far right Sabbatian-Frankist-controlled government in Israel from criticism and *not* to protect Jewish people from discrimination. The same approach can be witnessed every day with climate change, 'anti-racism', extreme feminist, gay and transgender activism. You may care about the environment, oppose racism or be a woman, gay or transgender, but that doesn't matter if you don't believe *everything* we tell you. Those who have been through gender transition, regretted that and warned others, are subjected every time to abuse from transgender activists who set out to gag them. I have read books by transitioned people who had their lives destroyed by the decision they were encouraged to take by the 'experts' and they are doing this to *children*. It is absolutely tragic to see how their lives have been devastated. In many cases the reason they initially questioned their gender was being sexually abused as a child that led to a psychological state in which they wanted to be a different gender to the one that was abused. Psychological support and understanding was what they needed. Instead the puberty blockers were handed out and their lives torn apart. One example is Debbie Karem from Hertfordshire in England who lived as a man for 17 years only to realise after counselling that she was suffering the psychological consequences of sexual abuse. She said other transgender people she knows regret their surgery and are too frightened of the activist backlash to be honest about it. See what I mean – she said they weren't *brave enough* to tell their story. Why do they need to summon such courage? Is it because of the reaction of general public? No – because of the reaction of *transgender activists* who are a tyranny and everything they attack others for being. In fact, they could not qualify for any version of New Woke if they didn't condemn others for what *they* do. That's in the contract.

Transgender activist extremism and its contempt for genuinely transgender people and for freedom of speech and opinion was confirmed in two stories and their aftermath in 2019. Debbie Hayton, a 51-year-old physics teacher in the English Midlands, changed her gender from male to female in 2012, but sent transgender activists into a fury of knicker-twisting (or underpants-twisting) when she wore a t-shirt that said: 'Trans women are men. Get over it.' Well, my goodness, you could hear the sound of gusset tearing from ten miles away. Debbie wore the shirt at an event organised by campaign group Fair Play for Women which has not been the case since transgender storm troopers imposed their will (the Cult's will) over women's rights. Hayton served on the LGBT+ committee of the New Woke-hijacked Trades Union Congress (TUC). This was irrelevant once she became a *blasphemer* and twelve members of the committee

complained to TUC General Secretary Frances O'Grady. They said that wearing the shirt had 'gone beyond discourse, and the expression of alternative viewpoints, and is now propagating hate speech against the trans community.' Don't be ridiculous, oh, sorry, you are being. New Woke definition of 'hate speech': 'Any statement that we don't want people to hear.' I love the bit about going beyond discourse and alternative viewpoints – there are no alternative viewpoints about transgenderism that activists don't want to silence. Nicola Williams, founder of Fair Play for Women, summed it up when she said:

Accusations of transphobia are thrown at women so often for so little that the word has lost all meaning ... When even trans people can get called transphobes, I hope people now understand how ludicrous and far-fetched these attacks have always been. The trans movement has been hijacked by gender extremists.

Exactly right and in their extremes of arrogance they are destroying freedom on behalf of the Cult. The British Labour Party, closely-associated with the TUC, has long been licking the arse of the 'anti-Semitism' industry Protection Racket in 24-hour shifts. Now the same is happening with transgender extremists. Getting slaughtered at the polls in 2019 was no Wake-up call for the Labour Party. Woke doesn't do Wake. Would-be Labour leader Rebecca Long-Bailey supported a campaign to label a party women's rights organisation as a 'transexclusionist hate group'. The Labour Campaign for Trans Rights published a plan designed to 'rid the Labour Party of transphobia and to stand up for trans people'. The Protection Racket modus operandi is repeated. Well, if it works why not? It got rid of anyone who criticised Israel and now it can be used to delete the membership of anyone that won't concede their own rights to transgender extremism. The Long-Bailey-supported campaign called for 'expulsion from the Labour Party of those who express bigoted, transphobic views'. Keir Starmer, who beat Long-Bailey for the leadership of this excuse-for-an-opposition party, is another New Woker who lives on his knees with his tongue extended pointing to Tel Aviv. The Labour Party was already on a life-support machine and then someone switched it off. The New Woke war on women's rights is constantly gathering pace. The students union at Leicester University in the city where I was born changed International Women's Day into International Womxn's Day in reference to 'transgender women' to include a 'more inclusive spelling of women'. This is the same student body that elected a trans woman called Dan Orr to the position of women's officer. International Women's Day of 2020 also saw Sefton Council in the UK take down two flags at town halls which displayed the dictionary definition of 'woman' as an 'adult human female'. It took a single complaint from a New Woke *man* to have the flags taken down. A bloke posting with the name 'Adrian Harrop' told the council: '... the flag you're flying at the moment is a hostile transphobic dog whistle, recognised as a symbol and brand of one of Britain's most outspoken and visible trans-antagonists, and the leader of a transphobic hate group.' The dictionary definition of woman is now transphobic and offensive. I did mention that male and female sexes are the target of the Cult didn't I?

Promotion and relegation



Figure 347: The illusion of inclusion and equality. Privilege (ironically) is the real goal.



Figure 348: It's already well underway. (Image Gareth Icke.)

Women were once top of the PC sexual hierarchy in its early days. Now this has entered the next stage of the Totalitarian Tiptoe to the no-gender human they have given way to the transgender movement.

Women who challenge the imposition of transgender rights on women's rights have become enemies of the revolution ([Fig 347](#)). No-gender people will eventually take over and transgenders will become enemies of the revolution. This is how it works. Women are falling down the PC hierarchy because they are a *gender* and their only remaining role from the Cult's perspective is to diminish the influence of men before themselves being deleted. How about men and women coming together in mutual support? How about that for an idea? Far more important than women to the Cult is mass immigration of other cultures into Western Society and this also puts those cultures and religions above women in the PC hierarchy. New Wokeness says it stands for women's rights while silencing criticism and exposure of religions that treat women like slaves and garbage. Criticism cannot be allowed, nor exposure of the effect of mass immigration of other cultures in transforming communities, oppressing women and reducing work opportunities. That would open the whole mass-immigration strategy to public questioning and any open debate must be stopped. This is the real reason that ultra-Zionist censors say they won't debate with 'anti-Semites' while 'anti-racist' censors often won't debate with 'racists' or 'anti-transphobia' censors with 'transphobes'. They know they will lose on the facts and they make an excuse to avoid that exposure. Women who highlight the effect on rape crisis centres, single-sex hospital wards and women's sport of 'gender self-ID' (decide your gender any time you want) are dismissed as 'TERFs', or 'trans-exclusionary radical feminists' ([Fig 348](#) overleaf). It is an age-old trick for those with extreme positions to paint their reasonable opposition as extremists. This happens right across the New Woke arena and with ultra-Zionists who treat Palestinians like vermin while branding any challenge to that as 'anti-Semitic'. Another example of the transgender war on free speech was that of Maya Forstater, a tax expert at the think tank Center for Global Development, who did not have her contract renewed (she was fired) after posting tweets disagreeing with government plans to let people declare their own gender without any supporting evidence. She demanded her right to refer to people by the gender she felt appropriate and not by how she was told to do so. It's an opinion that she has a right to have in any free society. Not, however, according to employment judge James Tayler who spouted New Woke orthodoxy in his verdict after Forstater appealed against her dismissal to an employment tribunal (she never stood a chance). Mr Woke Tayler said with jaw-dropping irony that her views were 'not worthy of respect in a democratic society'. But, of course, Tayler's *are* because they represent the imposed orthodoxy. To have someone legally judging others who clearly does not grasp the basic tenets of freedom or democracy is both appalling and par for the course in the Brave *New Woke* World. Once you set the perceptual blueprint for what society must believe you co-opt the entire system including academia, government agencies, police and judiciary to enforce that blueprint. Go to court with something the system supports and you will win almost no matter what the evidence. Go to court with something the system does not support and you will invariably lose. This is how society is stitched up all over the world. *Independent judiciary?? You must be joking.* Christians have lost cases over the right to express their beliefs, such as wearing a cross, while vegans who avoid buses because flies hit windscreens win cases to protect their beliefs. The question is

not about right or wrong; it's whether the Cult via authority wants it or doesn't. How much abuse you get from New Wokers is directly associated with where your subject of criticism stands in the PC hierarchy.

Harry Potty

Maya Forstater made the intelligent response to Judge Woke Tayler that 'framing the question of transgender inclusion as an argument that male people should be allowed into women's spaces discounts women's rights to privacy and is fundamentally illiberal (it is like forcing Jewish people to eat pork)'. Her solicitor Peter Daly said: 'Had our client been successful, she would have established in law protection for people – on any side of this debate – to express their beliefs without fear of being discriminated against.' No wonder she lost. The decision becomes all the more outrageous when you see a picture of the person Forstater refused to call 'They' – local Dundee councillor Gregor Murray who looks exactly like a man including a male haircut and a beard. He was suspended for two months in May, 2019, for calling feminist critics 'scum', 'hateful' and 'vile'. I wonder if that fits Judge Tayler's criteria for being worthy of respect in a democratic society? The controversy of Tayler's ludicrous decision kicked off further when *Harry Potter* author J.K. Rowling posted this:

Dress however you please.
Call yourself whatever you like.
Sleep with any consenting adult who'll have you.
Live your best life in peace and security.
But force women out of their jobs for stating that sex is real?
#IStandWithMaya #ThisIsNotADrill.'

This was the cue for New Woke virtue-signalling to reach still new heights of gusset wringing as 'human rights' organisations including the New Woke Amnesty UK gushed forth in condemnation of Rowling that 'trans rights are human rights'. And, er ... *women's* rights? How about the right to free speech and opinion? My god, it's pathetic. The response was ironic in that Rowling often tweets in support of multiple New Woke causes. This is no defence. Your loyalty to Wokeness must be total in every facet and form or you are an enemy of the revolution. *Star Wars* actor Mark Hamill further infuriated the permanently-infuriated New Woke Mafioso by 'liking' the Rowling tweet and as with so many in the world of spineless celebrity he fell to his knees begging for forgiveness:

Ignorance is no excuse, but I liked the tweet without understanding what the last line or hashtags meant. It was the 1st 4 lines I liked & I didn't realize it had any transphobic connotation.

Put your tongue back in, mate, and consider the 'connotations' of your gutlessness for human freedom.

New Woke Stasi closing in



Figure 349: Freedom-destroying New Woke lunacy is being infused into the police and all institutions because it's the Cult agenda.

Former British police officer Harry Miller was contacted by police to ‘check his thinking’ over a series of tweets about transgender issues that were not ‘hateful’, but simply his opinion. They admitted he had not broken the law and put him in the Orwellian category of ‘crime, no crime’, whatever the hell that supposed to mean, and recorded the matter as a ‘hate incident’. Miller took the police to the London High Court where fortunately the case was handled by a judge who wasn’t Woke-obsessed. Justice Julian Knowles said Miller’s tweets were ‘lawful’ and police actions had a ‘substantial chilling effect’ on his right to free speech which should not be underestimated. ‘To do so would be to undervalue a cardinal democratic freedom’ the judge said. ‘In this country we have never had a Cheka, a Gestapo or a Stasi. We have never lived in an Orwellian society.’ On that, in current circumstances, I would beg to differ. Police across the world are now ignoring real crime to seek out thought-crime like this with 120,000 ‘non-crime hate incidents’ logged since 2014 in the UK on a system that appears in criminal record checks that can stop people being employed. While many officers are appalled and aghast at having to do this their careers depend on compliance as the Cult co-opts foot soldiers of The System against their will. New Woke police are destroying freedom by the hour orchestrated in the UK though the College of Policing established in 2012 to infuse New Woke into law enforcement ([Fig 349](#)). The College defines a ‘hate incident’ as ‘any non-crime incident which is perceived, by the victim or any other person, to be motivated by a hostility or prejudice against a person who is transgender or perceived to be transgender’. It’s a victim’s charter as it is meant to be and it takes only a tiny few – sometimes *one* – to complain for a police investigation to be launched or for Silicon Valley and other corporations to ban speech or withdraw products from sale. This would appear to be insane when in fact the agenda needs complainants to justify its imposition and if there is only one that will have to do. Even transsexual women who say *themselves* they are still a biological man have been banned by Twitter. Madness? Yes, calculated madness to serve the Cult agenda. Jon Caldara, the most-read columnist on the *Denver Post*, said he was fired for believing there are only two sexes. He said of his sacking: ‘What seemed to be the last straw for my column was my insistence that there are only two sexes and my frustration that to be inclusive of the transgendered (even that word isn’t allowed) we must lose our right to free speech.’ Caldara said he supported gay marriage, had LGBT friends and didn’t care who used what bathroom. Even this was not enough to save him. New Woke demands total obedience or else. Another sinister aspect of the Caldara story is that his article was about the ‘style book’ of the *Associated Press* which lays out for staff a common grammar and word style. He said the book claims there are more than two sexes and that ‘They’ is now a word to describe a single individual. ‘Illegal alien’ was also banned in favour of ‘undocumented alien’. This is all agenda-pushing language. There are not more than two sexes. There might be multiple self-decided sexual *identities*, but that’s not the same as *biological* sexes, and the idea that ‘They’ can be seriously used to convey the singular is so grammatically crazy I’ll move on. We really are looking tyranny in the eye here. You will have seen the extremes to which children, adults and whole populations are being subjected to transgender manipulation with endless examples every week. Here are just a few headlines at [Davidicke.com](#) over a period of only a few months:

Jury rules against dad trying to save his 7-year-old from gender ‘transition’; California Adds Iowa to ‘Travel Ban’ Because of Refusal to Fund Gender Transitions; Ban on harmful gender stereotypes in ads comes into force; UNESCO claims Siri & Alexa promote gender stereotypes; Three-year-old changes gender from boy to girl after being sent to live with foster parents whose own son had just transitioned to become a female aged seven; Transgender lessons for two-year-olds: Girls are skipping school to avoid sharing gender neutral toilets with boys after being left to feel unsafe and ashamed; France seeks to ‘desegregate’ children’s toys in battle against gender stereotypes (to create a new gender stereotype); School locks out protesting pupils outside gates as they rail against new ‘pointless’ gender neutral uniforms that force girls and boys to look the same; Drag artists read to children as library aims to teach youngsters about gender identity at story time sessions; Swedish Government Grants \$175,000 to Fund

Drag Queen Shows For Children; Drag Queen Flashes Children During Story Hour; School in Brooklyn Hands Out 'Drag Queen in Training' Stickers to 4-Year-Olds; Drag Queen Teaches Toddlers How to Twerk; Another Drag Queen Story Hour pervert exposed as a sex offender ... why are public schools subjecting our children to these deviants?; Houston Chapter of 'Drag Queen Story Hour' Folds Amid Paedophile Scandal; Child drag queen poses next to almost-naked adult counterpart, but mother says boy not sexualized; Drag queen who teaches toddlers about sexual tolerance posts abusive tweets including one calling former Tory Minister Ann Widdecombe a 'fucking venomous hypocritical bint'; Drag queens drafted into nursery schools to teach children about sexual diversity; Drag Queen strips for kids in the King County Library; Elementary School Invites Convicted Felon Drag Queen to Talk to Children; Vice News Celebrates Prepubescent Boys Dressed in Drag, 'Next Generation of Drag Queens'; Drag Queen Admits He's 'Grooming Next Generation' in 'Story Hours'; Furious parents slam primary school for inviting drag queen who calls herself 'Bristol's Resident Slag' and a troupe of cross-dressers to read stories about tolerance to the children; Progressive men literally start cutting off their own balls as gender insanity reaches new level of dangerous mental illness; Transgender model claims sanitary brands should be re-designed because using 'pretty and pink' products targeted at women causes him psychological pain; United Airlines to Introduce 'Non-Binary' Gender Flight Booking; Northamptonshire Police now issues US-style baseball caps which they think will somehow encourage transgender recruits.



Figure 350: The fact that it's suddenly happening in country after country is pure coincidence and nothing whatsoever to do with systematically confusing the gender perceptions of children from the earliest possible age.



Figure 351: Why would schools and The System do this if not to target children and their perceptions of gender? What consenting adults do is none of my businesses. The manipulation of children, however, is ALL of our business.

Story follows story day after day and we have already reached the point where it is impossible to exaggerate through parody what is really happening. Some of those headlines reflect the out-of-nowhere explosion of drag queens all over the world suddenly recruited to read stories to small children as young as five or less in schools and libraries – everywhere from North America to Scandinavia to Europe and Australia. It's just another coincidence ([Fig 350](#)). The idea is to sexualise children and confuse them about gender. Scottish National Party MP Mhairi Black invited a drag queen called 'Flowjob' who posts explicit images on Twitter to read stories to children as young as four at a primary school and when parents complained she dubbed them in typically New Woke fashion as 'homophobic'. An Internet video shows a drag queen dancing suggestively and crawling on her/his hands and knees in front a little girl while

adults applaud and cheer. The drag queen then strokes the girl's hair and kisses her. It's a sickening display and will any of the parents involved be getting a visit from social services like loving parents do? Not a chance. An American drag queen called Kitty Demure posted a video in which he said he was shocked that parents allowed this to happen. He asked: 'Would you want a stripper or a porn star to influence your child?' Demure further questioned why the Woke 'Left' had so much respect for drag queens when they 'put on make-up, jump on the floor and writhe around and do sexual things on stage'. He said this was not an avenue that parents should want their children to explore and he rightly said that many did so because they wanted to appear cool or Woke. 'You can raise your child to be just a normal regular everyday child without including them in gay, sexual things.' Not if the Cult has its way you can't. I have no problem with drag queens. What people do is none of my business among consenting adults. The systematic indoctrination and manipulation of children is *quite another thing* and we should say that loudly and constantly until sanity dawns ([Fig 351](#)). It is sobering to ponder that we are still only in the first stage. Imagine what is to come for children if parents don't grow a backbone and get together to stop this. We have even had claims that the murder of transgender people, and especially those of colour, is an 'epidemic' when the figures expose this as still more mendacity. This lie has been repeated by Democratic presidential candidates, the Cult-controlled American Medical Association and New Woke organisations like the US Human Rights Campaign. The 'epidemic' numbered 26 transgender murders in 2018 using Human Rights Campaign figures which means an average of 1.8 per 100,000 transgender people. The murder rate for the general population in 2018 was 4.9 per 100,000 meaning that transgender people are considerably *less* likely to be killed by violence. An *epidemic*? The technique is to fire lies in all directions knowing that almost everyone that hears them will not check the facts and believe the lies to allow the agenda to be advanced.

One conspiracy with many faces

Falling global sperm counts, especially in the West, connects with the plan for the transgender, then no-gender, non-procreating human. Sperm counts are plummeting though gender-bending chemicals in the environment, including food and drink, and radiation constantly generated from smartphones in the pockets of men, Wi-Fi and the 5G roll-out. Confirmation comes with all the fertility clinics now on a scale never seen before. The fertility rate in America fell by nine percent between 2007 and 2011 and in 2016 fell to the lowest since records began. Meanwhile the benefits of staying single are being promoted with Dr Elyakim Kislev, professor at the Hebrew University of Jerusalem, saying that 'being single can be an advantage instead of a source of agony'. This is a theme that turns up in many guises. The lifestyle that people choose is their own business, but when you put all these things together there is a clear theme: The Cult *wants humanity to be infertile*. There will be no need for male and female sexes in a no-procreation world and we are witnessing their systematic elimination. We may be in the relatively early stages but that is the goal and Cult agendas move faster and faster as they get closer to the stage of 'normalisation'. When non-white people celebrate the demise of the white race they should know that they will be next. This is not a war only on white people, but the entire human race and we need to come together and not allow the Cult to drive us apart (written before imposed 'social distancing'). Remember that to children being born today the madness that many older people can see through is their 'normal'. This is another reason why divisions are being manipulated between young and old. By 'normalisation' here I mean the normalising of insanity brilliantly captured in George Orwell's concept of $2 + 2 = 4$ versus $2 + 2 = 5$. He wrote in *Nineteen Eighty-Four*: 'Freedom is the freedom to say that two plus two make four. If that is granted all else follows.' If the freedom survives to speak facts the official lies can still be challenged. Big Brother knew that and decreed $2 + 2 = 5$ and everyone had to believe it – or else. What happens at first is that you know the answer is 4, but eventually it is easier to agree the answer is 5 and finally to protect your own self-respect you *believe* the answer is 5. The transition period we are now experiencing between '4' and '5' is dependent on another Orwell concept – that of 'doublethink' which is defined as holding two

contradictory beliefs and accepting both to be true. This way 4 and 5 can coexist until 5 takes over completely. Having open borders *and* enough homes, jobs, school and hospital places, is a potent example of doublethink. Orwell's book and methods of manipulation and control are everywhere you look. He wrote:

In the end the Party would announce that two and two made five, and you would have to believe it. It was inevitable that they should make that claim sooner or later: the logic of their position demanded it. Not merely the validity of experience, but the very existence of external reality, was tacitly denied by their philosophy. The heresy of heresies was common sense.

And what was terrifying was not that they would kill you for thinking otherwise, but that they might be right. For, after all, how do we know that two and two make four? Or that the force of gravity works? Or that the past is unchangeable? If both the past and the external world exist only in the mind, and if the mind itself is controllable – what then?

This is what becomes possible when a few know the truth about reality and keep that from the masses. External world or not the point is that we need to recognise that we are Infinite Awareness *and* an individual unique perception. I am a unique experience called David Icke and *All That Is, Has Been, And Ever Can Be*. New Wokeness is enforcing upon the population a long list of demands that come down to $2 + 2 = 5$. These range from human-caused climate change to political correctness and most certainty to post-biological sexual orthodoxy. Professors of biology are being attacked, abused and 'investigated' for saying that men and women are biologically different. Oxford University professor Selina Todd, a historian who specialises in the lives of women and the working class, was given security guards after threats from transgender activists over her support of women's rights. Dr Allan M. Josephson, a former head of Child and Adolescent Psychiatry and Psychology, was demoted by the University of Louisville for saying children who insist they are transgender should not be instantly believed and Professor Nicholas Meriwether at Shawnee State University in Ohio was rebuked for refusing to refer to a student with a male body using 'female pronouns' when it was against his religious beliefs. Many others have already been outright fired or forced out by mass, even violent, New Woke protests for the mildest of statements based on $2 + 2 = 4$. Such activists insist that society be transformed on the basis that there are no genders except what people choose them to be any time they like ... $2 + 2 = 4$ usurped by $2 + 2 = 5$. The Cult plan for the world can only happen if facts and freedom to express them is abandoned. To do that $2 + 2 = 5$ must be the norm and $2 + 2 = 4$ the enemy of the revolution. Facts are replaced by *perceived* facts and once generations born in the $2 + 2 = 4$ era have gone all humans will be born ('decanted' in Huxley's words) into the post-fact world of $2 + 2 = 5$ which is all the population will hear from cradle to grave. This is a quote from Adolf Hitler:

When an opponent says to me, 'I will not come over to your side,' I reply calmly, 'Your child belongs to us already ... What are you? You will pass on. Your descendants, however, now stand in the new camp. In a short time they will know nothing but this new community'.

Another $2 + 2 = 5$ imposition is the 'pronoun' tyranny in which transgender men and women insist they are called by their preferred pronouns of 'he', 'her' or the utterly bizarre 'They' and 'Them'. I will never call an individual 'They' or 'Them'. I have some respect for language and if you concede to stupid you become stupid. The way around this is real simple. Transgender people in male or female bodies that call themselves by the opposite pronouns should be free to do so and anyone referring to them who doesn't feel comfortable using 'he' for a woman's body or 'her' for a male body should be equally free *not* to do so. This is the solution in which freedom is the winner on both sides. It doesn't happen because freedom is the *target* of the Cult and not the desired outcome.

Silence the parents, program the teachers

Many parents who are deeply unhappy with what is happening to their children at school fear the consequences of saying so. Most teachers are programmed to believe in the program and those that can see through the insanity, and even the conspiracy, know that if they challenge the imposed orthodoxy their career will be over. New Woke follows the methods of the Cult as an expression of the Cult by imposing an agenda while intimidating or silencing anyone who can see what is happening. If people concede to that intimidation the world's children are lambs to the perceptual slaughter. We are seeing the Totalitarian Tiptoe to complete state control of children and the end of parental rights which are being constantly eroded to this end. A teacher in Texas personified what is happening when he said that parents should not have the 'final say' in raising their own children. He was responding to complaints by parents about yet another drag queen employed to indoctrinate their children. The adult drag performer (stage-name 'Lynn Adonis') spent the day with the kids at Willis High School and exchanged social media contacts. School Principal Stephanie Hodgins defended the decision and proved she is in the wrong job while clueless English teacher Anthony Lane said parents should submit to the will of the 'community' over the upbringing of their own kids. Here we go – right on message and it's becoming a common theme as the Cult targets parental rights and the family unit itself. 'I believe that raising a child is the responsibility of the community and that parents should not have the final say,' the brain of America gushed forth. 'Let's be honest, some of you don't know what is best for your kids.' Ah, but this expression of academic arrogance does know (*I am right*) and insists that their well-being is best served by advice from 'Lynn Adonis', a man dressing as a woman who dances provocatively while people wave dollar bills as an Internet video revealed.

The Vatican has long been controlled by the Sabbatian-Frankist wing of the Cult (see *The Trigger*) which owns the position of Pope. The current incumbent, Pope Francis, can often be seen promoting the Cult agenda like climate change and subjects relating to education and the upbringing of children. He called for a new 'Global Pact on Education' to create a 'new humanism' under the title 'Reinventing the Global Educational Alliance'. The Pope hosted a conference of people from politics, economics, academia, science and sociology along with celebrities from areas like sport. A 'Global Pact on Education' was signed to 'hand on to younger generations a united and fraternal common home' and 'create a global change of mentality through education' (indoctrinate the young). Orwell would have noted the language that included a quote used by Cult asset Hillary Clinton: 'It takes a village to raise a child.' Pope Francis called for an 'educational village' with an 'educational path involving everyone'. Nowhere did the Francis announcement refer to parents as the central voice in the education of their children because the state is taking over as the Pope well knows and promotes. He has also said it's our 'duty' to 'obey international institutions' like the United Nations and European Union. His call for a 'new humanism' is ironic given the word is defined as 'a rationalist outlook or system of thought attaching prime importance to human rather than divine or supernatural matters'. A rationalist outlook or system of thought in this context means the technocracy which requires the deletion of spirituality in all forms to be replaced by the religion of New Wokeness. The Pope is a 'man of God'? Yep – and I'm a jelly baby.



Figure 352: Secret courts in alleged 'free' countries are stealing children from loving parents on an industrial scale while parents are banned from speaking publicly and the media is excluded.

A major Cult vehicle for the intimidation of parents is the social services Mafia operating in all countries of the West (and elsewhere) through which enormous and ever-increasing numbers of children are stolen by the state from loving parents for ridiculous and patently invented reasons. Paedophile and Satanist rings operating through social services even have children stolen to order. I have exposed this outrage and its consequences for children and parents in other books. Secret 'family' courts which can include Satanist and paedophile judges, lawyers, social service operatives and police, are used to seize children for the state and the Cult from parents who adore them ([Fig 352](#) on previous page). 'Family' courts do not have juries so paedophile or satanic judges – or paedophile and satanic rings working through the judges – can control the outcome. The phone call or knock on the door from social services is now one of the biggest fears that parents have and this state-kidnapping is part of the Tiptoe to the end of parenthood and procreation. Teachers, doctors, police and other professions are encouraged and mandated to tell tales on parents to social services and that would be justified if real abuse was evident. In the cases I am talking about (and they are legion) the children are not being abused at all – quite the opposite. Parents are frightened to stand up, challenge and complain about drag queens and transgender indoctrination in schools in fear of reprisals from increasingly authoritarian schools and social services or abuse from New Wokers and even other parents locked away in the land of Cult-induced perceptual coma. The poor kids are left unprotected to have their minds absorbed into the belly of The Beast to become the next and even more extreme generation of New Woke as the family unit is dismantled to be replaced by AI technology and the world state.

I can understand how intimidating it must be to face the potential wrath of the school and social service tyrannies, but if that doesn't happen your kids will be left at the non-existent mercy of the Cult and Cult-owned state every day when they go to school. Parents coming together in groups for mutual support must happen to challenge and expose what is going on so that individuals are not isolated and alone. They are after your kids and even more so with your kid's kids. It's time to draw a line while there is still one to be drawn.

CHAPTER FOURTEEN

What is the New World Symphony?

Control your vibrations to be the master of your own harmony – Suzy Kassem

The conventional answer to the question posed in the chapter title is that the New World Symphony is a piece of music by the Czech composer Dvorak made most famous in Britain in a television advertisement for Hovis bread. I am talking instead about another version that I shall call the *Brave New World Symphony*.

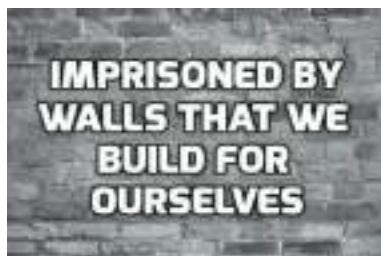


Figure 353: We built the walls – so *WE* can take them down.

Dvorak's work is made possible by vibrations emanating from musical instruments while my version is played by vibrations emanating from people via perception. I have focused in the last few chapters on the effect of Cult manipulation in the realm experienced by the five senses or the 'seen', a holographic projection of the wavefield unseen. The foundation of our reality is information encoded in vibrations and waves that express in their frequencies the nature of that information. For example hate is a slow, dense frequency while love, joy, gratitude and forgiveness generate quick, high and expanded frequencies. One represents a vibrational prison cell and the other is the way out of the Matrix. The *Brave New World Symphony* is a low-vibrational information and perceptual construct that disconnects humanity from its expanded self and the True 'I'. If we could hear this 'symphony' of waves it would sound like the backdrop to a horror movie, slow, low, morbid, heavy and dense. It would be akin to the guttural voice of life-long Cult operative Henry Kissinger and the sound transmitted by Saturn which you can hear in YouTube videos. The association between Saturn and what I am calling the wave 'symphony' of the simulation is explained in *Everything You Need To Know*. To build prison walls around ourselves with bricks and bars would be seen as crazy. When humans do that with the frequencies we emanate this is called being 'normal' and living in the 'real world' ([Fig 353](#) overleaf). Those that refuse to comply with their own perceptual/vibrational imprisonment are by contrast 'weird, mad, pseudo-scientists and conspiracy theorists'. The world is indeed upside down. The sequence is simple: Information = perception = nature of the vibrations and frequencies emitted by people in the form of waves. These waves entangle with like-waves to generate collective networks of the same

vibration/frequency which influence the perceptions of all involved ([Fig 354](#)). This is the wave equivalent of only hearing one version of something to the extent that you believe what it says in the absence of any alternative. It is a collective version of the Bubble.



Figure 354: Wave-entanglement, perception-entanglement, perfectly symbolised.



Figure 355: Bubbles and burst Bubbles speak a different language.

Perceptions are not only ingrained by information received by the five senses. They are most powerfully embedded by wave-entanglement with those of like-mind – like-vibration/frequency – a vibe which solidifies the longer you remain in that perceptual state. The vibration becomes more powerful through unchallenged repetition and the constant confirmational connection with the collective field of like-wave entanglement. In turn, the wave-state impacts upon the formation of brain pathways or neuron networks (also waves in their base form) that dictate how information is processed into perception. When I speak of people not being able to process or compute certain information or concepts I mean that literally. Wavefields emanated by Postage Stamp perceptions and processed through brain pathways reflecting those wavefields cannot decode information outside their perceptual limits any more than a computer can process information when encoded and firewalled not to do so. 'I can't get my head around that' is the phrase you often hear in response to off-stamp information accompanied by the assumption that if they can't understand (process) that possibility then it can't, by definition, have any validity. I can best describe what I mean with the assumption of the mainstream scientific mind that if I can't see, touch, taste, smell or hear it then whatever is being claimed can't be true. I am describing here a self-generating vibrational prison cell that I call the 'Bubble' ([Fig 355](#)). Limited perceptions and self-identity transmit limited frequencies which can only connect or entangle with like-frequencies. These Bubbles transmitting the same frequency waves (perceptions) entangle with each other and through those connections mutually and collectively confirm '*I am right*'. This is the wavefield basis of the New Woke mentality and why it is so Dalek-like immovable no matter what the evidence – *emergency, emergency, cannot compute, cannot compute*. Try telling Greta Thunberg that CO₂ is the gas of life. Internet AI systems such as Google-owned YouTube that continually offer you information that corresponds with your search history are feeding the Bubble with perception-confirming information as is the censorship through Silicon Valley and political correctness of information and opinion at odds with the official Postage Stamp narrative.

Wave awakening



Figure 356: Another version of the Bubble and how they are formed. (Image Gareth Icke.)



Figure 357: Bursting the Bubble. (Image Gareth Icke.)



Figure 358: Another inversion. When madness calls you mad it is confirmation that you are not. (Image Neil Hague.)

As people's perceptions change so do the frequencies they transmit and what follows is disentanglement from the previous wavefield networks created by former perceptions. In the world of the seen those once close to you, or of like-mind, drift apart as new wave networks are formed with others that match the new perceptions. You are beginning to see what they can't see (Fig 356). In the transition period people can feel alone and isolated as they disconnect from the old before synchronising widely with the new. Stick with it – it'll all work out. The more that we expand our sense of self-identity and perception of reality the more the frequencies we generate expand and quicken and the more of Infinite Awareness that we can consciously access (Fig 357). This is known as 'waking up', a term that means the opposite to being New Woke. Brain pathways re-form to sync with expanding consciousness and they are able to process information and awareness beyond the Bubble. By this time the Bubble has burst anyway and confirmation that your consciousness is really 'de-Bubbled' comes when you are censored or called crazy, mad and even dangerous. Whenever I am described by Bubble people in those terms I quietly say thank

you, much appreciated. There comes a point in this expansion where you breach the firewalls of the simulation and begin to see what human reality really is. You become aware of the illusions, manipulations and smokescreens designed to enslave us in ongoing ignorance and the scale of the perception program begins to dawn. When you first speak out to expose what is happening those still in the Bubble – the ones you are trying to alert – will be your greatest opposition. This is not because they are ‘bad’ people just as New Wokers are not bad people in and of themselves. They just can’t see – *yet* – what you can as your consciousness expands beyond the Matrix. Expanded awareness is perceived as insane by enslaved awareness ([Fig 358](#)). We have to understand and be patient or we’ll be in a permanent state of frustration and anxiety which feeds the dragon its low-vibrational fix. Almost everyone is in the Bubble to start with and being holier-than-thou is never justified. A scene in the first *Matrix* movie has the Morpheus character giving Neo the facts of life about what I am calling Bubble people:

The Matrix is a system, Neo. That system is our enemy. But when you’re inside, you look around, what do you see? Businessmen, teachers, lawyers, carpenters. The very minds of the people we are trying to save. But until we do, these people are still a part of that system and that makes them our enemy. You have to understand, most of these people are not ready to be unplugged. And many of them are so inured, so hopelessly dependent on the system, that they will fight to protect it.

That’s an excellent description of how the program works except for the bits about ‘our enemy’ and saving people. I don’t see anyone as an enemy. We are all *One* even though we may have dramatically different attitudes and patterns of behaviour. Once we refer to ‘enemies’ we externalise those we are challenging when they are only another aspect of ourselves in a different mental and emotional state. I am challenging and exposing patterns of behaviour as they impact negatively upon others and their freedom. I don’t see those involved as enemies. From my perspective they are being perceptually misdirected and enslaved. Nor am I trying to ‘save’ anyone. People can only emerge from a perceptual straight-jacket through personal choice. I am only offering a different way of looking at life and the world. What people do with that, or don’t, is up to them and none of my business except where it impacts on individual and collective freedom. With this proviso we need to find peace with others having different views. Freedom is the freedom to make choices, experience the consequences, and make new choices. It is not to be forced to make someone else’s choices. That is called tyranny and New Woke (same thing). If you focus anger, hatred and resentment on those with whom you disagree that very focus creates a wave entanglement with them on the frequency of anger, hatred and resentment *if* that person feels the same about you. This sets up a wave connection through which frequencies of anger, hatred and resentment are mutually exchanged to the emotional and vibrational detriment of both or, in the case of the Cult and its unseen ‘gods’, you feed them the low-vibrational energy that sustains and empowers them. Are we really going to change anything by making such a frequency wave connection with the Cult through hatred of the Cult? What you hate you become. What you fight you become. Wave entanglement is how that happens. Burst your Bubble and everything changes ([Fig 359](#) overleaf).

Mirror, mirror ...



Figure 359: Bursting the Bubble.

I have watched so many people become what they first set out to oppose and you see this in politics all the time. The Cult wants us to hate its assets because it knows that in this state we will be fly-trapped in its vibrational lair. Martin Luther King said: ‘Darkness cannot drive out darkness; only light can do that. Hate cannot drive out hate; only love can do that.’ Hate empowers the vibration of hate while love empowers the vibration of love. It really is that simple. In fact once we love in the totality of *The One* there is no vibration at all – just the still and silent *All That Is* which is love in its Infinite form and that means *intelligence* in its Infinite form. We can feed the Cult and its non-human masters with our low-vibrational focus or we can starve the Cult of its power source by not transmitting on its frequency. Macho-man fury and hatred may seem to many to be the way to respond to Cult manipulation when the opposite is the case. Loving (or at least not hating) perceived ‘enemies’ while challenging vociferously what they do are not contradictions. This is the only way to challenge behaviour while not entangling with its vibrational state and becoming what you claim to oppose (see New Woke). What is not transmitting on your frequency cannot connect with you. You can be affected by the actions of others who *are* on its frequency, but not you directly. As your consciousness expands and your frequency quickens you are operating on a completely different vibe to mainstream society and become less and less affected by its madness. In that state we stop emitting the waves that can connect with those that seek to hurt us and if we do that they *can't* hurt us. I am often asked how come I am still alive while exposing such *apparently* powerful forces. My answer is that if they *can't* make a wave connection with me they cannot affect me in the holographic ‘physical’ realm which is a decoded projection of wave information fields. It’s at the *wavefield* level that everything happens and holographic reality is only its projection on the symbolic movie screen. If you want to change a movie do you scream at the screen or pull out a banner and protest? No – you change what is being projected on the screen. Human life is the same. Change what is happening at the wavefield level and the holographic movie screen of ‘human society’ must automatically change to reflect that. Humanity is constantly seeking change in the wrong place and the Cult encourages this. Change yourself and you change your life experience. Change collectively and we change the world. If you want change without *personal* change – vibrational change – you will be waiting forever. I said that we entangle with people on the frequency of anger, hatred and resentment *if* they feel the same about us. If they don’t there can be no wave connection on that frequency when the other person is not transmitting on that frequency. You are then generating frequencies of resentment with nowhere for them to go except to entangle you with others consumed by resentment. For this reason forgiveness does not only benefit the forgiven, but also the forgiver. Here’s a way to disentangle destructive relationships and their aftermath *if* you mean it: ‘It was just a mutual experience for, in the end, mutual benefit, so let’s shake hands and wish each other a great life – all my love to you and see you on the other side when we’ll laugh at what we thought was so important.’ Isn’t that rather better than ‘I’ll always hate that bastard’ (and always be affected myself by that same hatred)? The mutual vibe of hatred and fear is the basis for all conflict and war and when it’s gone so have they. As John Lennon wrote: ‘War is over if you want it.’

Frequency freedom



Figure 360: No, no, no – I am *All That Is, Has Been, And Ever Can Be.*

From this perspective of how we are vibrationally enslaved and how we can set ourselves free *everything* starts to make sense when it didn't before. Human society has been specifically structured and manipulated to create maximum possible fear, anxiety, hatred, anger, depression, resentment, and all the other low-vibration emotions and their consequences like conflict and war that entrap people within the firewalls of the simulation. Love in its Infinite sense is to the Cult like garlic to a vampire and this explains why authority throughout 'history' has been terrified of anyone saying that love is *The Answer*. Anything that would expand and raise the vibrational state of the population is all the Cult's worst nightmares arriving at once. It knows that once that happens the game is over and the outward arrogance of the Cult masks the constant terror that somehow humanity will awaken and call 'time' on the plot. They need *us* – we don't need them. We are their power source. What appears to be swagger is really whistling in the dark as they desperately pursue the AI-brain connection to block perceptual change and frequency change. Low-vibrational states of Bubble consciousness have been achieved through the rule-book myopia of religion; by playing off cultural, racial and religious groups against each other in wars of control, dominance and acquisition; giving the population constant reasons to fear (especially fear of death) and to be in states of anxiety, hatred, envy and resentment; selling a self-identity based purely on human labels and/or servitude to an ever-demanding god; and downloading the Postage Stamp narrative every day that excludes everything that people need to know to see through the camouflage and deception. You will observe many other ways that this is done, too. What a coincidence that New Woke delivers everything on that list including religion because New Woke *is* a religion. The constant sub-division of labels into micro-labels is taking self-identity further and further away from I am an expression of *All That Is* and the expansion of consciousness that follows from that. With each subdivision into micro-identities we see that identity myopia becomes consciousness myopia. I am LGBTQQFAGPBDSM? You are Infinite Awareness having a brief experience that you *call* LGBTQQFAGPBDSM ([Fig 360](#)). It's all a trap which particularly the young are being indoctrinated to walk into through Cult control of the 'education' system, mainstream media and all the New Woke activist groups supported by giant Cult-owned corporations and frontmen like Bill Gates, George Soros and Silicon Valley celebrities such as Musk, Zuckerberg, Brin, Page, Wojcicki, Bezos, Kurzweil, and a long, long, list of others.



Figure 361: The simulation is a wavefield interactive information source that humanity decodes into holographic reality in the brain. (Image Neil Hague.)

Once the Cult has captured perception and self-identity everything else follows. Perception dictates the frequency of the waves we transmit and those frequencies dictate how much Infinite Awareness we can access. The extent of Infinite Awareness that we connect with dictates the size of our Bubble and that becomes our perception of everything. This in turn becomes a self-fulfilling prophecy as our perceptions create the Bubble and the Bubble confirms our perceptions in a feedback loop of perceptual enslavement (and therefore every other kind). Who enslaves us? *We do*. We do so by allowing the Cult and all its

agencies of state and media to impose our perception of both the world and our very self-identity. This is great news because what we have created we can uncreate. Break that feedback loop and the power of the Cult is no more. How do we do that? Open our minds to all possibility. Open our hearts to the love and wisdom of *The One*. It can't be that simple? Oh, but it *is*. The Cult knows that it is and constantly works to keep minds and hearts closed to the greater reality beyond the simulation which is nothing more than a perceptual feedback loop. The simulation is *in our heads* ([Fig 361](#)). It's a perceptual program which can close hearts, but not enter them when the frequency difference is so great. Open your heart and what is released as love, intelligence and wisdom will change your life and collectively transform human reality. The whole foundation of the Cult agenda is to close hearts and minds to turn Infinite humanity into perception Bubbles which then connect to form a hive mind through wave entanglement. New Woke is a hive mind which is policing everyone who won't conform to the hive. The illusion of diversity allows Bubbles and groups of like-Bubbles to be set at war with each other to divide and rule. We have 'anti-fascists' acting like fascists. The Bubble perceptions of both are basically the same which makes their behaviour the same because their *frequency* is the same. They are convinced they are polarities of each other while being '*opposomes*'. Beyond the realm of the seen they will be seriously wave entangled by the like-frequency connections between them. Extreme Muslims (or fake Muslims) such as the Saudi Sabbatian-Frankist 'royal family' and their terror groups do the work of the Devil while claiming to serve 'God'. Their hatred and violence wave entangle with all others who express hatred and violence and even those like the extreme right that think they oppose extreme Islam. The way the vibe is expressed may be marginally different, but it's the *same vibe*. Indian author Nitya Prakash said: 'Do you ever notice how much you have in common with the person you hate?' This is true on many levels and one is most certainly the same vibe at war with itself through the illusion of being different.

Digital drugging



Figure 362: The childhood hijack.

The plan is to make humanity in its entirety one centrally-controlled hive mind through the collective connection to artificial intelligence. I have described the Tiptoe to this in the world of the seen, but again the real deal can be found at the wavefield level of reality. The endgame is to connect the human mind to machines and the manipulation of wave entanglement between people and smart technology is happening all around us while at the same time destroying human to human discourse (entanglements). Here is the prime reason for social media which achieves both goals. People are not communicating with each other face to face – human waves to human waves – but via technology in which AI machine waves act as the conduit. In this way machine waves intervene and intercept human wave connection (this has happened on an unprecedented scale during the 'virus' lockdowns). People who used to talk with each other at home, in the street, in restaurants, now stare mesmerised at the screen ([Fig 362](#)). I will first discuss the holographic effects of this on a chemical level and then how this plays out in wavefields to connect humans to machines and AI. High-placed insiders of deeply sick organisations like Facebook have publicly exposed how Zuckerberg and his cohorts set out to addict Facebook users to stay on the site for as long as possible. Sean Parker, the first president of Facebook and now a critic, said the idea was

to absorb as much of a Facebook visitors time and attention as possible. Floyd Brown and Todd Cefaratti describe how successful this effort has been in their Silicon Valley exposure, *Big Tech Tyrants*:

... Facebook is only the tip of the social spear. It's well documented that kids are spending an average of ten to twelve hours a day across all digital media. And adults aren't far behind at almost six hours, up from three hours a day in 2009. This includes all the time spent on cellphones, computers, gaming consoles, and streaming devices. Cellphone use alone has mushroomed from a third of an hour a day in 2008 to 3.3 hours currently.

This is partly explained by techniques to trigger a 'dopamine rush'. *Psychology Today* describes dopamine as 'the feel-good neurotransmitter – a chemical that ferries information between neurons'. Dopamine contributes to 'feelings of pleasure' and acts as a 'reward system' which can very soon become addictive. *Psychology Today* says that 'a person seeking pleasure via drugs or alcohol or food needs higher and higher levels of dopamine ... This neurotransmitter enables us not only to see rewards but to take action to move toward them.' It points out that drugs such as cocaine increase levels of dopamine and 'alter behavior accordingly'. Facebook and other disgusting companies abusing mostly the young have exploited the dopamine rush to addict people to their sites. A Facebook 'like' for a post can stimulate a dopamine reaction which becomes addictive and leads to people only posting what they think the majority will like to ensure their dopamine fix. This slowly at first and then more quickly modifies behaviour and opinion to the majority (Cult-induced) view especially when to go against that view is to unleash often systematic abuse. What starts out as a conscious posting of an opinion that may not be genuine just to get maximum 'likes' eventually fuses into the perception of the person – $2 + 2 = 5$. Chamath Palihapitiya, an early senior executive at Facebook, said that 'the short-term dopamine-driven feedback loops that we have created are destroying how society works'. But, then – that's the idea. I have seen it called the 'magic of maybe' when people keep looking at the phone to see if 'maybe' they have a communication or 'maybe' they got a 'like'. Studies have shown that when communications or likes appear there can be a 400 percent spike in dopamine which is only slightly less than the effect of cocaine. Part of the addiction is concern about what other people think and how others respond to a post or picture when freedom comes from not giving a damn what anyone thinks of you. Concern with what others think deletes your personal power. You become *them* so they like you. Seek popularity as a goal in itself and it will destroy your uniqueness. Comparing self with others and their often fake lives portrayed on social media leads to depression, loss of self-esteem and feelings of inadequacy. Studies reveal that the more time people spend on social media the more lonely and isolated they become. Phone addiction also hijacks and scatters concentration with the potential to permanently destroy the ability to concentrate. Social media and smartphones are Cult behaviour modification devices and it's all been carefully worked out by psychological specialists in the pay of Silicon Valley psychopaths like Zuckerberg. One observer rightly said that highly addictive drugs are being put into the hands of children before they have any defences against them. Sam Vaknin, a contributor to the Internet documentary *Plugged In* which exposed the effects of social media, said this about the calculated assault on the minds of the young:

Facebook, Twitter, all these networks are surfing the wave. They know it's a dangerous wave. They know that people are drowning. They read all the statistics, the increased suicide rate, depression, anxiety. They know absolutely everything. They have designed maliciously, malevolently and possibly criminally, they have designed the networks exactly to cater for human pathology in its most extreme form.

Even those who can see some of what is happening tend to explain this calculated manipulation as an effort by Zuckerberg and Chief Operating Officer Sandberg to extend Facebook visits to increase the value of advertising. It's actually far darker and more sinister than that and the real explanation comes with the understanding that these platforms are fronts for the Cult. Their domination of discourse and

information exchange allows the Cult to modify and manipulate perception and behavior while censoring to ever-increasing extremes information and opinion that challenges that narrative. Social media is a very foundation of the technocracy. The minds of the young (tomorrow's adult population) are being fucked-with on a monumental scale and New Woke is one of its creations in league with other Cult agencies including the Gates-manipulated 'education' system. Are people so totally lost in Fairyland that they don't see how soaring rates of suicide, depression and anxiety among the young that have taken off in the smartphone/social media era are centrally connected to the emergence of those phones and platforms? In this period there has been a 50 percent increase in suicides in America among girls under 17 and a 30 percent increase in boys. Anxiety in teenagers is reported to have increased by 70 percent in 25 years; children and young people attending accident and emergency units with a psychiatric condition has more than doubled since 2009; teenagers admitted to hospital with eating disorders almost doubled in three years up to 2019. English schools buying in professional mental health support for pupils has nearly doubled in three years from 36 per cent to 66 percent because the National Health Service (NHS) can't cope. Some of this is due to growing up becoming a medical condition and some is the effect of social media and the smartphone culture. Should we be surprised when insiders have described how Silicon Valley technocrats are so deeply sick they boast about how they capture users in 'isolation boxes' and 'filter bubbles' in which they 'inflict torments that anger or sadden the users without them realizing why'? Facebook and other social media companies hire 'attention engineers' using techniques employed by casinos to make their platforms as addictive as possible. People like Zuckerberg are calculated abusers of young generations on a scale that defies belief. Headlines galore tell the story and reveal the consequences of this psychopathy: 'Social Media Use and Perceived Social Isolation Among Young Adults'; 'Facebook's Emotional Consequences: Why Facebook Causes a Decrease In Mood and Why People Still Use It'; 'Facebook Use Predicts Declines in Subjective Well-Being in Young Adults'; 'Association of Facebook Use With Compromised Well-Being'. The young are being conditioned and broken to be the unquestioning adults that will passively accept the technocracy and AI-brain assimilation. The war on men and 'toxic masculinity' is precisely planned to induce such passivity. Jaron Lanier, an American computer scientist, said:

Society has been gradually darkened by this scheme in which everyone is under surveillance all the time and everyone is under this mild version of behaviour modification all the time. It's made people jittery and cranky. It's made teens especially depressed which can be quite severe.

He's right although Lanier is considered a founding father in the field of virtual reality and he might ask himself where that is heading when the Cult agenda of augmented reality and immersive technology leading to full-blown assimilation is factored in.

Virtual 'humans'



Figure 363: Assimilation masquerading as the 'latest thing'.



Figure 364: You are feeling *sleeeeepy*.

We have the emergence of virtual humans with body movements, voices and emotional expressions generated by AI that you could not tell from 'real' humans. The Smart Grid is a simulation within a simulation and virtual reality technology is a virtual reality within a virtual reality. Samsung's highly secretive Neon project was reported in early 2020 to have developed artificial intelligence virtual 'avatars' almost indistinguishable from biological humans. Samsung engineer Pranav Mistry said the technology can 'autonomously create new expressions, new movements, new dialogue (even in Hindi), completely different from the original captured data.' Base the original on a human and then have it become its own personality. Facebook has its Codec Avatars project designed to let people create realistic virtual versions of themselves for use in cyberspace. The company claims the avatars would help 'social connections in virtual reality become as natural and common as those in the real world'. The avatars are planned to allow Facebook users to connect with friends and family in a three-dimensional social network. Yaser Sheikh, the director of research at Facebook Reality Labs, said: 'The real promise of augmented reality and virtual reality is that it lets us spend time with whomever we wish and build meaningful relationships no matter where people live.' Excuse me I feel a 'bollocks' coming on. This is really about absorbing humanity and particularly the young into a virtual reality world in which the one we currently experience is lost and even more importantly further disconnect humanity from expanded reality outside the simulation. The human mind is being prepared for assimilation into AI and drawing the young particularly into a virtual world generated by technology is a vital stage and step in that direction ([Fig 363](#)). Young people are already living their own virtual lives presenting a perfect face to the world through social media with the downsides deleted by omission, self-delusion and Photoshop. There is even a term now of 'Snapchat dysmorphia' for young people who have plastic surgery in an effort to make them look like the fake image they have Photoshopped to post on social media. Beyond the facade so many are drowning, desperate and unable to compete with the illusory perfect lives they read about while their true and unique self is lost to them in the deluge of 'this is how you should be'. Envy turns to depression when you cannot be what you have been conditioned to envy. Jamie Chiu, a Hong Kong-based psychotherapist, said growing up in a social-media-obsessed environment damages self-esteem with camera filters in particular 'leading to a dangerous trend where people feel insecure about not being as beautiful as their own filtered selves'. The Cult is creating an illusion within an illusion so that its targets become utterly lost with no grip on *any* reality. With every step along this dark tunnel of manipulated myopia and misdirection the influence of the True 'I' is diluted by fake self-identity. Virtual interaction via AI has diminished the life-skills of personal interaction eye to eye with real live people. Eyes are more interested in staring at screens than looking into other eyes to see the window on the soul that a Facebook post can never do ([Fig 364](#)). Social media has been specifically designed by the Cult to generate psychosis in the population which is defined as 'a severe mental disorder in which thought and emotions are so impaired that contact is lost with external reality'. The Cult knows that once a sense of reality is lost a new reality can be imposed to fill the void – the technocracy and assimilation into AI. Floyd Brown and Todd Cefaratti write in *Big Tech Tyrants*:

With everyone carrying a cellphone all the time [not me!]; with teens even sleeping with theirs; with the majority of girls telling researchers they would give up their boyfriend before they would relinquish their

cell phone, Facebook had the perfect behavior modification platform designed to detect, examine, react, and provide feedback on the most mundane, or the most intimate, of human activities.

Users could now be constantly tracked and measured and unknowingly given cues and prompts on a steady drip, all custom-tailored. Users could be hypnotised little by little by technicians [technocrats] they'd never see, for purposes they may or may not approve of. They could be reduced to prompt-and-respond lab animals ... which is exactly what happened.



Figure 365: This is where self-censorship ends with the silencing and subjugation of all humanity. Speak your truth or there will be no truth for anyone to hear.

The authors describe social media platforms as essentially 'a crime scene'. Yes – crimes against humanity and the young. Anyone still think Zuckerberg and company who coldly calculated this are New Woke heroes? Jaron Lanier's point about being under constant surveillance is why the Cult *wants us* to know we are tracked 24/7. This in itself leads to behaviour modification through the fear of whatever you do being seen and recorded. In response people stop doing, even in what used to be called 'privacy', what they think the state might find unacceptable (see China). Cameras everywhere in streets, schools, universities, and other buildings and those constantly checking speed on the road network are designed to make people constantly aware of authority and trigger anxiety about 'breaking the rules' to cumulatively induce acquiescence (see lockdowns). When we at Davidicke.com post news stories about certain subjects on social media we know the sharing numbers and likes will be lower when those opinions can be accessed for example by potential employers. It's time to summon the courage and do it anyway. Not to do so is a dark and dangerous road that ends only one way in total human subjugation ([Fig 365](#)).

Who creates the Matrix? We do

Extraordinary mass-addiction to smartphones and social media cannot be explained in total by dopamine. You see people transfixed by smart screens while not on social media in search of 'likes' and approval. I have been saying for years something is coming off those phones to induce such addiction and that something are electromagnetic waves which entangle with the human waves of the user and make the person's energetic field (mind) literally part-human and part-machine. This is crucial to the Tiptoe leading to assimilation of the human mind into AI ([Fig 366](#) overleaf). Influence through entanglement of technology-generated waves explains the multiple electromagnetic effects on the body that change the nature of cells, blood, tissue, bone marrow and brain by impacting upon the wavefield body blueprint to manifest as dementia, cancer, autoimmune diseases and so much more.



Figure 366: Smart technology and Wi-Fi are emitting waves of frequency that are entangling with human wavefields to create addiction and assimilate human frequencies into AI machine frequencies. Those that capitulate become ever more machine-like until they *are* machines. See Neil Hague colour section.



Figure 367: If humanity can be manipulated to subconsciously believe that the technocratic dystopia is inevitable we will decode it into experienced reality. This is the foundation of all human control – subconscious programming becomes experienced reality. (Image Gareth Icke.)

AI smart technology is assimilating the human consciousness field through entanglement ever more profoundly with each screen session for those *unconscious* to this effect. It is a form of possession by machine and AI. People are literally being *possessed by their phones* and other smart technology through wave entanglement. I will come later to how being conscious of the process can lessen or block the connection. You can tell if you are wave-entangled with smart technology by how easy it is for you to stay away from it. Do you feel anxious or that almost *part of you* is missing if you don't have your phone? If so you are wave-entangled with what the phone emits. It is taking you over. Try putting your phone in a drawer and forgetting about it. Can you do that? If not, it's got you. Should you need to use a phone for work and income observe how many times you are scanning the screen when work is not involved. Can you stop? If you can't you are machine wave-entangled – machine *possessed* – and through that connection perceptions can be fed to your subconscious mind. *This is happening all the time*. It's not only about dopamine. Wave connections between machines, AI and humans are feeding people states of perception. If you are not conscious beyond the Matrix then the Matrix is thinking for you. I observed long ago how the Cult agenda was being introduced in country after country, culture after culture, at the same time and this could only be partly explained by the secret society networks of The Web. It is happening in far too much common detail in far too many communities worldwide for that to be the whole story. The Cult transformation of human society is actually being imposed as a wavefield construct absorbed and decoded by the collective human mind through these hive connections ([Fig 367](#)). What I call The Web is in fact a web of *waves* – frequencies – which attach to human wavefields as flies are caught by a spider. The Cult and its secret society inner cores create and surf those waves and seek to lure humanity into their frequency lair.

We decode holographic reality from wavefield information fields and the Cult and its 'gods' are technologically infusing their Brave New World into those fields in the form of information which

humanity is decoding into holographic experience. Information waves are encoded by the Cult with its endgame reality for humanity to decode and manifest and this is what I am calling the *Brave New World Symphony*. One of the reasons the speed of change has quickened so dramatically since smart technology appeared is because it gives powerful entanglement access to the human energy field through which that information can be fed. Those in sync with its frequencies will succumb first to the agenda and support its introduction and the idea is to pull everyone into those frequency states to ensure that even those resisting today eventually submit to its oscillation. This does not have to happen. Consciousness in its expanded form is far more powerful than the Cult and its silly games. Consciousness isolated in a perception Bubble is, by contrast, a babe in arms. New Woke once again provides the most potent example. The perception system, the result of life-long programming (frequency programming), cannot process possibilities beyond *I am right* while it is held fast in the vibrational control of the *Brave New World Symphony*. Every time someone censors themselves in fear of the consequences they are being teased further into the 'symphony' and the frequencies through which society is being transformed. Saying what you believe without fear and censoring yourself *because* of fear are quite obviously not the same frequencies. The first cannot be synchronised with endgame information fields while the second certainly can be even if this happens in stages. The process is further empowered by people like Ray Kurzweil and others telling us that the AI endgame is inevitable and unstoppable and through the technique of pre-emptive programming that I highlighted earlier. Both induce the population into the endgame frequency which they can then make manifest.

AI-brain synchronisation - how smart

Another major impact on perception related to what I have described and to smartphone wave addiction is something called entrainment which means that the most powerful frequency in any given situation will 'entrain' other frequencies into its own. It's another example of entanglement. The best example is one I gave earlier of the string vibrations of three violins tuned to the same note causing a fourth violin to vibrate to the same note as the most powerful frequency entrains the other into synchronisation.

Technological frequencies that now flood our reality and atmosphere are getting more cumulatively powerful and they are entraining brainwaves and human wavefields to sync with those frequencies. 5G is a massive stepping up of that potential. Once human waves are entrained with technology waves information (perception) can be transferred from AI to the human mind. Even before a direct connection to the brain we have AI assimilating human consciousness through entrainment with waves emitted by smart technology. Disruption of human wave patterns explains why people living or working close to phone and communication towers, electricity pylons or nuclear stations, can suffer depression, anxiety and diseases like cancer to a much greater extent than the average. Mainstream scientists parroting the official line say there is no evidence of such a connection and they cannot explain how it would be possible while ignoring wavefield connections or entanglement. If they did the mist would clear.

Entrainment of brain frequencies connects with brain placidity that I described earlier in which the way the brain processes information is changed by the nature and form of that information. The brain has been bombarded by wave and digital information from technology in an extremely short period that it has never had to deal with in all known human history. Study after study has concluded that the human brain is being seriously rewired by digital/electronic stimulus and I say this is a holographic reflection of wavefield rewiring. *Of course* the brain must change in the circumstances I have described. We have yet another way that human perception is being transformed and a further reason for smartphone addiction. The brain is stimulated by digital input, rewrites itself to sync with that input, and then goes into cold turkey when you put the smartphone down and the stimulus stops. We see this with people putting down the phone after an already long session and immediately picking it up again for no particular reason. This is the brain screaming 'Hey, I want my fix'. Once these new body wave and brain wave frequencies and codes are in place they are passed on via epigenetics to the next generation who start out

the way their parents had to be manipulated into becoming. With each generation they are more and more machine-wave dominated until they *are* the machines. Frequency-matched communication with DNA can transmute the body into another form in the same way until it is nothing like we see today. Genetic manipulation in laboratories is the Stone Age by comparison.



Figure 368: What's the best way to deal with these surveillance tools if you already have one? Smack - in the bin. Job done.



Figure 369: Perception assimilation before total assimilation.

The human mind is being entrained with AI through all the smart gadgets that are vehicles for AI and another aspect of the assimilation is to manipulate human interaction with AI as if it is human-human interaction. How many people now interact with their smart assistants as if they are human or are induced into perceiving the AI voice on the Sat-Nav as human? Smart assistants are being introduced to vehicles to add to Sat-Navs and make car journeys a constant interaction with AI (Fig 368). Call government agencies and big companies and you will be greeted by an AI voice. Observe the burgeoning number of dolls and other characters for young children that speak with AI voices through Internet connection (Fig 369). All is systematic preparation and conditioning for the fusion of AI with the human mind while human-human interaction is being destroyed equally systematically through smartphones, social media and the technology takeover (more words written before the lockdowns and social distancing). Everywhere direct human discourse is being deleted and this includes supermarkets where check-out staff you could chat with are being replaced by technology to delete human-human contact. Cult technocracy giant Amazon is opening stores that are entirely automated and the plan is for that to be the case everywhere as it is with banks as local branches disappear and people are forced online. Bricks and mortar shops where you interact with human beings are being destroyed by online shopping and faceless, soulless AI. People find it increasingly difficult to buy things away from the Internet as this trend increases apace. Laws are going to come which protect AI machines and eventually they will go above transgender in the New Woke hierarchy. I know that sounds fantastic, but who would have guessed what would happen with transgender in such a ridiculously short time? Who would have believed that Democratic presidential candidate Elizabeth Warren would say that as president she would have her Education Secretary chosen or vetoed by a transgender child? I had to check the speech video to confirm she really said it. She did. If what is happening now with transgender activism had been predicted only a few years ago they would have said that was crazy. It *is*, but it's here anyway. The Cult agenda is

protected from all criticism and exposure. How can you criticise AI robots for taking over human society? That's an 'anti-Semitic' trope or transphobic – no, wait, it's transtechnologic, yes, a *transtechnologic* trope and you are *transtechnophobic*. As AI becomes ever more pre-eminent (and it's happening so fast), so a conscious connection with expanded awareness and *The One* is ever further diminished until we are completely isolated. This is the game and a crucial part of *The Answer* is to know that.

Vaccine shit, food shit, drink shit, it's all shit

Vaccinations and toxic food and drink would appear to affect the body on the chemical/biological level and obviously in one sense they do. Chemical/biological, however, pertains to the hologram and that is a decoded projection of wavefield information. Toxicity, whether in the form of vaccinations, food, drink, pesticides, herbicides and poisons of every kind, are in their base state highly distorted wave frequencies. Toxic gunge pouring from a pipe into a river is changing the wavefield nature of the river and this affects the wavefields of the fish and other marine life. Remember the work of Japanese researcher Dr Masaru Emoto and how toxicity distorted the water crystals (wavefields) of water. Toxicity appears to affect the body directly as poison-to-biological when in fact it distorts wavefields of the body which plays through to the hologram as a reflected distortion. If extreme enough this can so damage the body's wavefield oscillation that it stops and the person dies. Vaccinations, toxic food and drink, pharmaceutical drugs, technological radiation and ultimately an AI connection to the brain are all weapons in the Cult's anti-human armoury through Body-Mind wavefield distortion. I have detailed in *Everything You Need To Know* the near-unbelievable shite in vaccines, food and drink that you would never think anyone would put into anything destined for the body. When you know that the Cult is specifically targeting Body-Mind it all makes sense. The Cult wants the population addicted to shit food, shit drink, shit drugs, shit smartphone waves, shit everything, and all of that is produced by giant Cult corporations. Shit in these cases means shit frequencies which are absorbed by human frequencies that become shit themselves through entanglement. This entangled shit becomes holographic shit which we experience as mental, emotional and 'physical' dis-ease, dis-harmony. To make this happen the Cult wants control of what enters the body through mouth or injection and the ever-increasing pressure through many and various agencies and stooges to impose mandatory vaccinations is a *key* part of the war on humanity and the young ([Fig 370](#)). I wrote those words once again before the 'pandemic' and the subsequent Bill Gates global vaccine agenda.



Figure 370: Welcome to the world where you are a pin cushion for toxic shite. It's only because we care.

This is a summary of vaccine ingredients and substances used in manufacture: Aborted foetal tissue; aluminium; mercury-based thimerosal; gelatine; human serum albumin (found in blood plasma); sorbitol and other stabilisers; emulsifiers; taste improvers; antibiotics; egg proteins (ovalbumin); yeast proteins; formaldehyde (used to embalm dead bodies); acidity regulators; human cell strains, animal cell strains and genetically-modified organisms (GMOs); recombinant DNA technology; bovine products.

Aluminium alone is a brain toxin. Health consequences linked to vaccines and it is far from a full list include: Anaphylactic shock; aseptic meningitis and meningitis; Bell's palsy, facial palsy, isolated cranial

nerve palsy; blood disorders; brachial neuritis; cerebrovascular accident (stroke); chronic rheumatoid arthritis; convulsions, seizures, febrile seizure; death; encephalopathy and encephalitis (brain swelling); hearing loss; Guillain-Barré syndrome; immune system disorders; lymphatic system disorders; multiple sclerosis; myocarditis; nervous system disorders; neurological syndromes including autism; paralysis and myelitis including transverse myelitis; peripheral neuropathy; pneumonia and lower respiratory infections; skin and tissue disorders including eczema; sudden infant death syndrome (SIDS); tinnitus (ringing in the ears); vaccine-strain versions of chicken pox, measles, mumps, polio, influenza, meningitis, yellow fever, and pertussis vasculitis (inflammation of blood vessels).



Figure 371: Herd immunity means natural immunity, not shite in vaccine immunity.

Against this background the number of vaccines and insane combinations, including *six-in-one*, have exploded and we have ever-quickenning and expanding moves around the world to impose compulsory vaccination ([Fig 371](#)). Why would they do this with so much potential harm? Why would they do this when there can be few better definitions of fascism than telling people what they will and will not by law put into their own bodies and those of their children? One answer is they were preparing for the 'pandemic' hoax and the Bill Gates-fronted vaccine being prepared in response that they want to be compulsory worldwide or at least with people facing major restrictions on movement if they don't agree to have it. I'll have *much* more about that in the next two chapters.

Immunity by vaccine? No – immunity from prosecution

Cult-owned pharmaceutical companies or Big Pharma were facing so many lawsuits for life-changing and life-ending vaccine damage that laws were passed in 1986 by Cult-owned Capitol Hill to give them *immunity from prosecution*. No matter what vaccines do to your kids the National Childhood Vaccine Injury Act (NCVIA) protects Big Pharma from any consequences. Instead compensation claims are handled by a federal 'vaccine court' on a no-fault basis without a jury and payments are made by taxpayers for the results of Big Pharma actions. This is the same Big Pharma that makes staggering fortunes every year for killing and damaging extraordinary numbers of children and adults through vaccines and pharmaceutical drugs. One of the biggest causes of death in the United States alongside heart disease and cancer is pharmaceutical-based *treatment* and that's without all the cases never recorded because another cause is given to hide the real one. Add them to the number and it would be by far the biggest cause of human demise. Aldous Huxley said long ago: 'Medical science is making such remarkable progress that soon no-one will be well.' Even with a very high bar to prove your case the US vaccine court had paid out \$4.2 billion as of October, 2019, for damage by vaccines that the Cult wants to make compulsory worldwide and is already doing so in the United States and elsewhere. Robert F. Kennedy Jr, son of the US attorney general assassinated by the Cult in 1968, is among America's leading opponents of the vaccine narrative. Writer Kristina Kristen described at the Kennedy-connected childrenshealthdefense.org how the number of vaccinations soared after the immunity law was passed and how Big Pharma is actually producing drugs for profit to 'treat' health effects of vaccines:

Following the passage of NCVIA, the number of vaccines on the childhood schedule mushroomed, creating a gold rush for vaccine makers: the vaccine industry went from a \$1 billion industry to a \$50 billion industry. But this expansion in the vaccine industry, in fact, is relatively small in comparison to the even greater gold rush for the BIG 4 companies. The drug ‘treatment’ side of the equation, which is substantially more lucrative than the ‘gateway’ vaccine side the BIG 4 already monopolized, now also increased substantially.

The vaccine manufacturers began to capitalize on the known adverse effects of their vaccines, and have since created drugs for the ‘treatment’ side of the equation as well. The lack of incentive to make safe products, which created the bloated vaccine schedule, became the gateway to the lucrative drug treatment side for these companies. Today, the BIG 4 monopolize vaccines as well as the drug ‘treatments’ for chronic illnesses known to be induced by vaccines. First, vaccines push kids off the cliff, and then vaccine makers profit from ‘rescuing’ those they don’t kill.

If ever you needed a concise description of Cult psychopathy and empathy deletion then there it is. If evil is the absence of love, which I suggest it is, the Cult can justifiably be described as evil and that same evil is being applied across its entire agenda for humanity. ‘They wouldn’t do that?’ Oh, yes, they would and get sexually high while doing so. Yale University researchers studying records from a health insurance database discovered correlations between specific vaccines and neurological problems in children aged between six and 15. They included obsessive-compulsive disorder and anorexia nervosa which were found more likely to be diagnosed in children three months after vaccination. Influenza vaccine was one highlighted – ‘get your flu shot’ as the idiot media tell people every year. The study was published in the journal *Frontiers in Psychiatry*. No matter the documented health and psychological dangers to children we are going to make vaccines compulsory. In typical Cult fashion anyone who challenges and exposes the consequences and motivation of vaccines is demonised. Those dubbed ‘anti-vaxxers’ are attacked by moronic people in the media and by parents who have conceded the right to think and so believe whatever the Cult tells them is true. It brings us back to that quote from Morpheus in *The Matrix*: ‘You have to understand, most of these people are not ready to be unplugged and many of them are so inured, so hopelessly dependent on the system, that they will fight to protect it.’ Those that refuse to vaccinate their children – ‘anti-vaxxers’ – and seek to circulate information Big Pharma doesn’t want people to know are increasingly censored by Cult-controlled Big Tech including Facebook, Twitter, Google and Amazon. The Cult makes the vaccines, passes laws for immunity from prosecution for the consequences of vaccines, and silences opposition through its Big Tech near-monopolies in league with the Cult-controlled mainstream media. It’s simple when you connect the dots. If the population allows the few to dictate events for much longer no one will escape vaccination or be allowed to campaign against it. This is the real reason for attacks on ‘anti-vaxxers’ (written before the ‘virus’ scam when those attacks increased dramatically).

Britain is now a totalitarian state and a new Law Commissioner called Penney Lewis announced in 2020 that she was ‘considering’ making the posting of ‘anti-vaccine propaganda’ on social media a criminal offence even when people believed the information to be true. ‘She’ was not considering anything. ‘She’ is just a place-person to officially make it happen and what a coincidence this happened just before the ‘pandemic’ hoax along with Bill Gates stepping down from Microsoft to spend more time on his ‘charitable’ (vaccine) interests. The System (ultimately the Cult) is the force behind this fascistic plan and the same with the pathetic puppet who said in the same period that he was ‘looking very seriously’ at making vaccinations compulsory in the UK. This was ‘Health Secretary’ Matt Hancock in temporary *official* charge of health policy that is really driven by the civil servants in his department representing the Permanent Government. It is highly unlikely that either Lewis or Hancock will know their arse from their elbow about how what they are ‘considering’ is really part of a global agenda emerging out of the shadows. ‘Considering’ obviously means planning to impose when we think we can

get away with it. Attacks on ‘anti-vaxxers’ get more hysterical by the week. Republican political strategist, media consultant and Deep State insider Rick Wilson said: ‘Anti-vaxxers are a scourge and a strong argument for re-education camps, the immediate seizure of their property, and putting their children into protective custody.’ Those concerned about their children’s safety are a ‘scourge’ but someone advocating outright extreme fascism/Marxism is not? Such is the lunacy of New Woke. American Medical Association (AMA) delegates want laws to allow minors to ‘override refusenik parents on vaccination’ (after they’ve been indoctrinated by the authorities, of course). The direction we are being taken is so clear once eyes are truly wide open and not wide shut. It is all the more grotesque when you think that compulsory vaccinations for those who would not otherwise have them is statistically alone condemning some of those children to vaccine damage, even death, and effects of their psychology. The arrogance and psychopathy of these people is stunning.

Herd immunity is the problem? No it's not

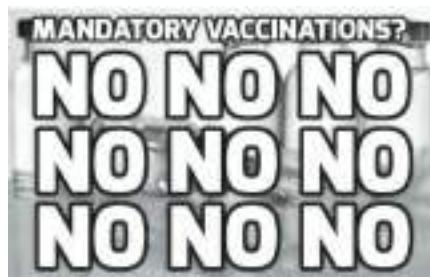


Figure 372: Mandatory vaccinations are only fascism under another name.

One of the biggest scams to justify compulsory vaccination is the lie about ‘herd immunity’ which claims that almost everyone has to be vaccinated for a vaccine to work ([Fig 372](#)). They need to sell this deceit to both support mandatory jabs and explain why so many vaccinated children get the very diseases they are supposed to be vaccinated against. It’s not that the vaccines haven’t worked. It’s those terrible parents who won’t have their kids injected with toxic potions. American neurosurgeon Russell Blaylock put this myth to bed:

In the original description of herd immunity, the protection to the population at large occurred only if people contracted the infections naturally. The reason for this is that naturally-acquired immunity lasts for a lifetime. The vaccine proponents quickly latched onto this concept and applied it to vaccine-induced immunity.

But, there was one major problem – vaccine-induced immunity lasted for only a relatively short period [if at all] and then this applies only to humoral [body fluids] immunity. This is why they began to suggest boosters for most vaccines, even the common childhood infections such as chickenpox, measles, mumps, and rubella.

The claim is that vaccinations produce antibodies for a disease, but this does not constitute proof of immunity. The following quote is from [Learntherisk.org](#):

... science has long known that antibodies alone do NOT create real immunity. Some people with high levels of antibodies can be exposed to an illness and still get sick, while others without antibodies can be exposed and not get sick. Dr. Merrill Chase, nicknamed the Grandfather of Immunology for his pioneering work, did clear-cut research on this issue back in the 1950s.

His results are clear: antibody levels don’t determine immunity. The immune system is a highly complex system and science is still in its infancy understanding how it functions. In fact, immunology textbooks

were completely rewritten recently after a University of Virginia study finally proving the link between the gut and the brain through the lymphatic system. Before this 2014 study, immunology books were adamant there was no link.

The quickest way to understand the world is to invert everything you've been told is real by The System (the Cult). The method is next to foolproof. American children and young people are now given from birth to 18 years between 53 and 70 vaccines depending on how you count them. Many are given in one jab and the childhood schedule has tripled in little more than 30 years which takes us back to the time when Big Pharma secured immunity from prosecution. In this same period children have got sicker with once-rare autism, food allergies, asthma, brain malfunction, autoimmune diseases and cancer in children dramatically increasing. There has been a mega-rise in autoimmune diseases in the vaccine era and especially the mass vaccine era. The immune system attacks its own body by picking up signals indicating a threat from foreign bodies that shouldn't be there and this is known as autoimmune disease or malfunction. Does anyone really believe that injecting or swallowing toxic substances and material that attach to the body does not cause the immune system to attack itself in this way? Still-developing immune-systems of babies are deluged with this toxic crap and the body's natural protection will never be what it would have been after that assault so early. These are the same immune systems targeted by 5G and Wi-Fi. Childhood diseases were just part of life when I was a kid and parents would take their children to those who were sick so they would get the disease. It was seen as kicking in the immune system to protect them for life and give life-long immunity to conditions that can be far worse in adults. Today an outbreak of measles is propagandised into a deadly threat that justifies compulsory vaccinations and vicious attacks on 'anti-vaxxers'. It's all manipulation. New York mayor Bill de Blasio declared an emergency after a measles outbreak and ordered vaccinations on threat of a fine of up to \$1,000. 'We cannot allow this dangerous disease to make a comeback here in New York City', he said. This was the 'dangerous disease' that was met in my childhood with 'So and so's got measles' – 'Oh, week off school, then.' It should also be stressed that when we are told there has been an 'outbreak' we are not informed how many vaccinated kids have the disease and how many *un*vaccinated are not affected. That would be bad for the sales-pitch. My two big strapping sons were not vaccinated and they somehow seemed to have survived. I can't think how and maybe someone can explain how their vaccinated mates got diseases they didn't.

Vaccine waves

To understand the deeper agenda of vaccinations and all the other shite I've described we need to return once more to the wavefield level of reality. Here vaccines are disrupters of wavefield harmony which in itself undermines wavefield information codes that are the immune system. At the wave level information can also be encoded with perception patterns and disease patterns. Once you have access to the body field anything becomes possible with the knowledge the Cult is working with. Toxic fast food and processed food and drink have the same effect as do pharmaceutical drugs and technological radiation. Drug 'side-effects' are wavefield disrupting effects (nothing 'side' about them) caused in the same process as the one effect that is claimed to be beneficial to a condition. Even then drugs and alternative treatments can appear to have 'cured' a problem when it has only caused the wavefield flaw to move to somewhere else in the field to manifest as another condition that is not apparently related to the first one that was 'cured'. But it *is*. The 'cure' has only made the symptom disappear and not the flaw. You could think of it as like a bubble in a bottle of water that moves from one place to another as you turn it around. These wavefield flaws are caused overwhelmingly by emotional trauma as imbalanced waves of low-vibrational emotion impact upon Body-Mind fields, but they also result from the toxins swallowed and injected which can lead to diseases many years after they have been consumed and administered. Cause and effect is never identified because of this delay. Only when the flaw is deleted rather than

moved is the healing process over and this is mostly done by bringing to the conscious mind the emotional trauma that has manifested the flaw. This can be something that happened in childhood which didn't show itself as a condition in the body for maybe decades. Once the conscious mind acknowledges the cause and effect of the flaw the wavefield is rebalanced. The acknowledgement generates a wave pattern that does the job. For most people the connection remains in the subconscious given that mainstream medicine does not recognise these connections. Disease really is all in the mind, and has to be when the body *is* the mind, and it can be 'cured' (rebalanced) by the mind.

Vaccinating chips



Figure 373: Nanotechnology released in the air, water and food is designed to connect humanity to the Smart Grid.

There is still another reason for vaccinations to benefit the Cult. I was told by a CIA scientist in California in the 1990s that nano-microchips far too small to be seen by the human eye were being infused into the population through hypodermic needles in public vaccination programmes. Nano-technology is now commonplace and can be found in an ever-increasing number of foods. When I met the scientist it was not nearly as widely known about as it is today. I cannot emphasise enough that the cutting edge of technological possibility in the secret projects is far in advance of anything we see in the public arena. Nanotechnology is easily small enough to be injected with vaccines and no one would know. It takes a tiny few to add the nanochips which large numbers of unsuspecting 'medical professionals' then inject. Today these chips are called nanobots, nanorobots, nanoids, nanites, nanomachines, nanomites, neural dust, digital dust and smart dust ([Fig 373](#)). Once in the body these micro-machines can according to the literature 'assemble and maintain sophisticated systems and build devices, machines or circuits through molecular manufacturing and produce copies of themselves through self-replication'. They can also connect the body to the Smart Grid and manipulate genetics. What an amazing coincidence with all these crucial benefits to the Cult agenda of vaccinations that we find their most prominent global promotor to be Microsoft billionaire technocrat Bill Gates. His father, William H. Gates Senior, supported the beliefs of infamous eugenicist Thomas Malthus (as did his son 'at one time') and Father Gates headed the Rockefeller-created Planned Parenthood which was part of the eugenics movement and involved Cult 'prophet' Dr Richard Day who told those paediatricians in 1969 that diseases would be inoculated through vaccinations (very relevant when I come in detail to 'Covid-19' and the Gates vaccine). Austrian doctor, molecular biology researcher, and now dentist, Jaroslav Belsky, pointed out a connection between vaccinations and the 1918 'Spanish flu' which actually began in American military bases in the last year of the First World War before spreading worldwide to affect about 500 million people, or one-third of the world's population. At least 50 million deaths were estimated with about 675,000 in the United States according to reports. Belsky said:

An orgy of vaccination took place for the soldiers of the war. In 1918 up to 36 vaccinations took place with no rules at all. It happened just before the Spanish Flu appeared in different places at the same time.

Medical historians confirm today that it was a vaccination disaster.

Bill Gates made his billions from Microsoft technology essential to the Cult technocracy agenda and funds and promotes a long list of Cult demands including vaccines, surveillance technology, education programming like Common Core, geoengineering of the atmosphere (weather modification and so much more), and genetically-modified food which is designed to genetically-modify *us*. You can read about all this in detail in *Everything You Need To Know*. Gates announced in March, 2020, that he was stepping down from the Microsoft board to spend more time on 'philanthropic activities' which means funding the elite agenda. He said he wanted to focus his efforts on global health and development, education and tackling climate change. Yeah, yeah, mate, we get what you mean. (We did indeed because shortly after I wrote those words Gates immediately launched into promoting 'virus' lockdowns and a vaccine without which life would, in his words, 'never get back to normal'.) What a conman this bloke Gates really is – and worse as we shall see. I should emphasise, too, that vaccines damage and change DNA and the next generation of vaccines specifically *target* DNA – including the Gates 'Covid-19' vaccine. The theme is clear. These new vaccines don't inject a virus to stimulate an immune response but instead inject *synthetic* genes – here we go – which will permanently alter DNA. A *New York Times* article about 'immunoprophylaxis by gene transfer, or I.G.T.' quoted Michael Farzan, an immunologist at America's Scripps Research Institute:

I.G.T. is altogether different from traditional vaccination. It is instead a form of gene therapy. Scientists isolate the genes that produce powerful antibodies against certain diseases and then synthesize artificial versions. The genes are placed into viruses and injected into human tissue, usually muscle.

The viruses invade human cells with their DNA payloads, and the synthetic gene is incorporated into the recipient's own DNA. If all goes well, the new genes instruct the cells to begin manufacturing powerful antibodies.

'The synthetic gene is incorporated into the recipient's own DNA.' Ponder on that in the light of what I have been saying about the synthetic human. Is anyone still naive enough not see what is happening, why vaccines are being made compulsory and what the Gates 'Covid-19' vaccine is really all about?

Vaccine surveillance



Figure 374: This is not only the Gates doctrine – it's the Cult doctrine everywhere you look.

Crucial to the imposition of vaccination for *everyone* by law is tracking who has been vaccinated and who hasn't. Is it really another coincidence that the major organisation in the Bill Gates campaign to vaccinate the world is calling for the tracking of people to confirm vaccination? Seth Berkley, CEO of the Gates-funded GAVI, the Vaccine Alliance, says the organisation spends an average of nearly \$2 billion a year to vaccinate children in the poorest countries and invests tens of millions in 'innovations to monitor immunisation'. He wants technology to track who has been vaccinated and to give everyone an 'identity'. All this fits with the Cult agenda as he might take time to find out if he doesn't already know. I bet he

does. Berkley formerly worked for the Big Pharma-controlled US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention and the Rockefeller Foundation. The Rockefeller family – its inner core is Cult to its DNA – was the family that imposed Big Pharma ‘medicine’ on the world at the exclusion of other forms of healing that they didn’t control. Berkley’s desire for everyone to have ‘identity’ carbon-copies is the goal of the United Nations which aims for all 193 member countries to impose a legal form of identity by the ever-recurring year of 2030. Is it random chance that the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation is funding the development of a ‘tattoo’ that will identify those who have and have not been vaccinated? Gates has funded research by scientists at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT) to create a new ink for an ‘invisible quantum tattoo’ to be embedded in the skin and read by a smartphone camera app ([Fig 374](#)). [Sciencealert.com](#) reported:

The invisible ‘tattoo’ accompanying the vaccine is a pattern made up of minuscule quantum dots – tiny semiconducting crystals that reflect light – that glows under infrared light. The pattern – and vaccine – gets delivered into the skin using hi-tech dissolvable microneedles made of a mixture of polymers and sugar.

MIT researcher Kevin McHugh described the outcome perfectly while quite probably being firewalled in compartmentalised cluelessness from the real reason behind it: ‘In areas where paper vaccination cards are often lost or do not exist at all, and electronic databases are unheard of, this technology could enable the rapid and anonymous detection of patient vaccination history to ensure that every child is vaccinated.’ There you have the Cult agenda in a sentence and this will allow authorities – and employers – to know if you have been vaccinated and are therefore ‘safe’ to roam or be employed. (When the ‘virus’ hoax was played weeks after I wrote those words Gates was promoting his invisible digital ‘tattoo’ to track who had been vaccinated with the ‘Covid-19’ vaccine that HE was funding into worldwide use. It’s shocking. No wonder I call him the ‘Software Psychopath’.) The same tracking system is planned to ensure that everyone is drugged to make them docile. ‘Smart systems’ already introduced include microchipped ‘smart pills’ that tell doctors that drugs have been taken in another Tiptoe to this end. The concept was well portrayed in the 2002 movie *Equilibrium* in which the population has all emotion suppressed by a daily injection monitored to ensure compliance. Proposals to add lithium to public water supplies is another Tiptoe. Lithium is used to treat manic depression and its advocates say mass medication of lithium will make people ‘happier’. Children and adults are already being mass-drugged with psychology-changing potions on a scale never seen before at the first sign of emotional problems or off-Postage Stamp behaviour. *Brave New World* author and establishment insider Aldous Huxley predicted this in 1961:

There will be, in the next generation or so, a pharmacological method of making people love their servitude, and producing dictatorship without tears, so to speak, producing a kind of painless concentration camp for entire societies, so that people will in fact have their own liberties taken away from them, but rather enjoy it, because they will be distracted from any desire to rebel by propaganda or brainwashing, or brainwashing enhanced by pharmacological methods. And this seems to be the final revolution.

How did Huxley know this? How did Orwell know what he did? How did Richard Day? How did I? The agenda has been long in the planning and is ultimately sourced from outside this reality which doesn’t share the same ‘timeline’ as the human world. If you are an insider or spend 30 years lifting the stones you can know what is planned.

Micro-everything



Figure 375: Mmmm, yummy.

The world is being deluged with microplastics that resonate to the frequency of synthetics. Wave entanglement with increasing numbers of synthetic waves will make body wavefields more ... *synthetic*. A Reuters report using data from 50 studies on the ingestion of microplastics gave devastating confirmation of how far this has already gone. Microplastics are described as particles under five millimetres. The report, based on the findings of a study by the Worldwide Fund for Nature (WWF), found that people are consuming on average every week some 2,000 tiny pieces of plastic mostly through water but also through marine life and the air. Every year humans are ingesting enough microplastics to fill a heaped dinner plate and in a life time of 79 years it is enough to fill two large waste bins ([Fig 375](#)). WWF International director general Marco Lambertini said: 'Not only are plastics polluting our oceans and waterways and killing marine life – it's in all of us and we can't escape consuming plastics,' Plastic-wrapped food absorbs the chemicals and I see even fresh food wrapped in plastic labelled 'organic' which by definition it can't be in such circumstances with the content of plastic leaching into the food. American geologists found tiny plastic fibres, beads and shards in rainwater samples collected from the remote slopes of the Rocky Mountain National Park near Denver, Colorado. Their report was headed: 'It is raining plastic.' Microplastics have been found in snow in remote areas and deep in ocean sediment and in plankton. 'Everywhere we look, we find it', one researcher said. Microplastics are also added to foodstuffs with scientists from McGill University in Canada revealing that billions of microplastic particles are released into every cup of tea using plastic tea bags. Who could have forecast that using plastic tea bags would release plastic into the tea? You'd have to be a genius, surely? It's systematic at the inner core of the Cult. Health consequences of plastic infiltration of the body are nothing like fully understood, but the London *Daily Mail* quoted Rachel Adams, senior lecturer in Biomedical Science at Cardiff Metropolitan University, as saying that among them are internal inflammation (with many knock-on effects) and immune responses to a 'foreign body' (see also vaccine contents and autoimmune disease). She further pointed out that microplastics become carriers of toxins including mercury, pesticides and dioxins (a known cause of cancer and reproductive and developmental problems). These toxins accumulate in the fatty tissues once they enter the body through microplastics. I have described in other books how the body's survival system often will not allow fat to dissolve because it knows that this will release the accumulated poisons – 'No matter what I do I can't lose weight'. A study by King's College London discovered the astonishing microplastic pollution in the UK capital. Researchers found that 'microplastics in the atmosphere are falling from the skies onto roofs and into human lungs in alarming quantities'. Researcher Stephanie Wright said they found 'a high abundance of microplastics, much higher than what has previously been reported' and the same will be true of all other cities. She repeated the point about unknown consequences: 'The biggest concern is we don't really know much at all. I want to find out if it is safe or not.' Well, clearly it's not safe and what is being missed as always are the consequences at the wavefield level where synthetic vibrations are infiltrating the human energy field which becomes the human hologram. When you are entering your endgame the last thing you want are healthy, strong, psychologically-balanced, sharp-thinking, people. You want the very opposite and you

suppress the mind by suppressing the body which together make up Body-Mind. A study by the University of Vermont found that obese children have a thinner region in the brain which relates to decision-making, the ability to plan and control behaviour, and this is where most information is consciously processed.

Too many people'



Figure 376: Another Wi-Fi field planned for every home and business to connect you to the cloud and let the cloud communicate with you.

I have been warning for decades about a planned mass-cull of the global population and all that I have described makes that possible. When entrainment/entanglement between technology frequencies and the human field is powerfully established one can so disrupt the other that the heart stops beating and the oscillation of bodily life is switched off. If the Cult has the precise frequencies on which a person is transmitting an individual can be isolated and targeted. The Cult is using every excuse to compile DNA databases which provide that information. Many people claim they are already being specifically harassed by Deep State technology and refer to themselves as 'targeted individuals'. They say thoughts and perceptions are delivered to their brain technologically and I have explained how this is possible. I say that in less obvious ways this is being done on a mass scale through information delivered in waves by Wi-Fi, 5G and other technology networks. Taking out people individually and collectively is only a step on from that and based on the same principle. Cult gofers and operatives quoted in other books have long called for a colossal decrease in the global population (and I mean by billions) and now there is the added excuse that too many humans mean more danger from climate change. Climate Cultists are urging a reduction in the population and for people to stop having children at all. Bill Gates is among those very vocal on these subjects and would have talked about this with his father who supported eugenicist Thomas Malthus. The Cult doesn't need anything like as many human slaves any longer with AI taking over everything, male-female procreation due to be replaced by Huxley's World State Hatcheries, and synthetic laboratory babies specifically engineered for life-long slavery. Human bodies have been made toxic through food, drink, pollution and microplastics while electromagnetic frequencies have the potential to enormously increase the effect of that toxicity to fatal levels. The authorities could have wired computer systems in schools and universities and instead imposed Wi-Fi as part of the cumulative cull (remember the teacher's blood) and the same with smart meters ([Fig 376](#)). Now you can see why 5G – a military *weapon* – is being rolled-out across the world with no testing. 5G is very much part of the cull agenda. I know that people don't want to face what is happening, but it *is* and we have to deal with it. How could it be any other way with 5G and Wi-Fi when you consider coagulating blood, affecting the molecular structure of oxygen, attacking water molecules, and frequencies that we don't even know about able to be transmitted through a network sold to us for other reasons? What better means do you need for a long-planned mass cull than the ability to absorb enough oxygen as I will come to in the next chapter? 'Humans' in the form we know them are planned to disappear to be replaced by the trans-human, synthetic-human, machine-human, that would not be human at all.

Californian biotech company Epicyte patented the Epicyte gene in 2010 which makes men and women sterile and infertile when ingested. The gene was then genetically-engineered into *corn seeds*. Why the hell would anyone do that if it were not aimed at sterilising people en masse? Cult biotech companies Monsanto and DuPont bought the Epicyte operation to ‘commercialise’ the sterilisation gene. Rima E. Laibow, Medical Director of the US Natural Solutions Foundation, said that you can’t find out if you are consuming the gene because the (Cult-controlled) US Food and Drug Administration (FDA) made it illegal to have that information. Contraceptive drugs are also in the water supply after being peed down the toilet in cumulatively vast quantities while electromagnetic waves are known to influence human reproduction through both male and female systems. We are, of course, drowning in technological waves with now the vastly more destructive 5G. I have already emphasised the falling sperm counts. Professor Olle Johansson from the Department of Neuroscience at Sweden’s Karolinska Institute has predicted mass ‘irreversible sterility within five generations’ due to technological and Wi-Fi radiation and he was speaking before the introduction of 5G. A letter highlighting the serious dangers to male reproduction of the 5G rollout was delivered to UK Prime Minister Boris Johnson in early 2020 along with two petitions. One was signed by 268 doctors and scientists. The letter said:

We are extremely concerned by the vulnerability of our young and very young people to the harmful effects of pulsed RF radiation. Study upon study is showing that this non-ionising radiation is causing oxidative DNA damage in cellular systems and this may be particularly harmful to the reproductive system of young boys, adolescents and young men.

It’s all long-planned and the extinction of humanity *as we know it* is the goal. Dr Richard Day told the paediatricians in 1969 about the coming ‘demise pill’ in which older people would kill themselves when they reached a certain age to make way for the young. The constant efforts to divide young and old is in part related to this plan and so is the Tiptoe to legal euthanasia and ‘care pathways’ in which doctors stop drugs and nutrition for those they claim are close to death. Many who have been taken off the ‘pathway’, only thanks to the efforts of loved ones, have lived for years afterwards. The theme continues with increasing numbers of US states, plus the District of Columbia, legalising medical ‘assisted suicide’. At the time of writing they are California, Colorado, Hawaii, Maine, New Jersey, Oregon, Vermont and Washington with New York authorities talking about doing the same. People may say it is compassionate to allow everyone to free themselves from ‘physical’ suffering, but that is not in the top five reasons of those that apply for legalised suicide in Oregon, for example. Among the leading reasons is fear of being a burden on others and fear of losing autonomy. This by definition means mostly the poor and vulnerable which then brings us into the arena of what I will call perceptual eugenics. You convince people they are a burden and then help them kill themselves. Old people have been psychopathically targeted during the ‘virus’ lockdowns as we shall see. Once you open the door on the basis of ‘compassion’ the Cult batters it off the hinges and takes the wall down. Humans are just a resource to the Cult and when they cease to be commercially productive the plan is to delete them. Paediatrician Lawrence Dunegan described what Richard Day said in 1969 about the demise pill:

Medical care would be connected very closely with one’s work but also would be made very, very high in cost so that it would simply be unavailable to people beyond a certain age. And unless they had a remarkably rich, supporting family, they would just have to do without care.

And the idea was that if everybody says ‘Enough! What a burden it is on the young to try to maintain the old people’ then the young would become agreeable to helping mom and dad along the way, provided this was done humanely and with dignity. And then the example was there could be like a nice farewell party, a real celebration. Mom and dad had done a good job. And after the party’s over they take the ‘demise pill’.

Day described in 1969 how detailed the Cult agenda really is when he said they would use very pale ink on forms that people had to fill out so that older people would not be able to read them and have to ask younger people for help. He listed other ways that old people would be manipulated into believing they were 'past it' and I quote at length what he said so accurately across a range of subjects in my book, *Phantom Self*. In another reference to the population cull he said that most families would be limited to two children. Where have you seen such a child-limit policy? In *China* – the blueprint for the world. We should also note the emerging pressure for later and later legal abortion.

Ruling the waves



Figure 377: The Cult's all-seeing eye symbol in a whole swathe of children's TV *programs* and other sources. It's yet another innocent coincidence, naturally.

The Answer comes from understanding the problem and that means understanding the foundation nature of waves. The Cult is seeking to impose wave control in every area of life. I have highlighted many times over the years how symbols have been placed throughout global society in the form of the pyramid and all-seeing eye and many others. Why would they bother to do this on such a scale? Symbolism is both the hidden language through which Cult operatives communicate in public and a means of transferring the frequencies of the Cult to the human energy field. The number of times you see the pyramid and all-seeing eye or just the eye is absolutely fantastic and often in animated cartoons and movies for children ([Fig 377](#)). Energetically, and in terms of frequency, symbols represent what they symbolise. A symbol representing hate will resonate waves of the frequency of hate and have potential to impact on the human wavefield. You don't even have to consciously acknowledge the symbols for them to have this effect and in fact the Cult doesn't want that. While your conscious mind defences are down through ignorance of what is happening those frequencies are left unchallenged to entangle with the subconscious – the level at which the Cult overwhelmingly operates. The idea is to access human perception at the subconscious level of waves and have that information filter through to the conscious mind as what people believe to be their own thoughts and perceptions. 'I have not been manipulated to believe what I do; they are my own conclusions.'

Wave connection reveals why the Cult is obsessed with ritual. Energy flows where attention goes and the focus during a ritual on their unseen 'gods' instigates a wave entanglement through which information can be exchanged and initiates possessed. Around the world are ancient and modern sites of ritual to Saturn and Orion and rituals in those places would connect initiates to the frequencies of Saturn and Orion which I say are both crucially important to the simulation and so mega-worshipped by the Cult. Waves are everything in the context of human control both as the cause of enslavement and the knowledge that will set us free.

CHAPTER FIFTEEN

How did they pull off the fake ‘pandemic’?

Fear is only as deep as the mind allows – Japanese proverb

Eighty-five percent of this book was written before a ‘pandemic’ called ‘Covid-19’ swept through the collective human mind and gave the Cult almost everything that I have said in this and previous books was planned to transform global society. I have been referring to the ‘Covid-19 hoax’ here and there in earlier chapters and now I’ll explain what I mean in detail: *There is no ‘Covid-19’*.

This will come as a shock to most people and be immediately dismissed as crazy not only by mainstream society, but by swathes of the ‘alternative’ media. I know that is true because it already has been. When, however, people have bothered to look at the evidence and background that I will lay out in the next two chapters, instead of instantly dismissing even the possibility and misrepresenting what I am saying, they have seen the sense it makes of what is otherwise a nonsensical and utterly contradictory ‘pandemic’ narrative. I don’t think significant sections of the ‘alternative media’ have come out of this with much distinction while other parts have been outstanding. We have seen during the events of 2020 a parting of the ways between those ‘alternative’ voices still willing to accept blatantly flawed official stories and those who are not. I will first summarise the official ‘pandemic’ narratives, mainstream and otherwise, and then offer a very different explanation thanks to medical professionals who have seen through the bullshit.

The official story(s)

There have been a few official and semi-official versions, but all encode the same theme: There *is* a virus, natural or emerging from a Chinese bio-lab, labelled SARS-CoV-2 and this caused an infectious respiratory disease called ‘Covid-19’ (I will refer to this alleged virus package as ‘Covid-19’ from hereon to keep it simple). We were told that this ‘coronavirus’ and its effects are so dangerous that whole countries had to be put under house arrest to stop it spreading and causing catastrophic loss of life. We will see that none of these claims is supportable by the evidence, but lockdowns based on those lies and flawed assumptions have been used to destroy the independent incomes and livelihoods of potentially billions and made them dependent on their Cult-controlled states and governments in a massive advancement of the Hunger Games Society. The ‘outbreak’ in China in the closing weeks of 2019 was met with a fierce and draconian lockdown in which what little is left of freedom in China was deleted and vast populations were put under house arrest policed by ‘smart’ face-recognition surveillance technology and the vicious, brain-dead Chinese law enforcement and military (same thing). The Western media reported the frenzy of activity from the Cult-owned Chinese government which included building whole new hospitals in little more than days to meet the demand from ‘teeming numbers of dying people’; but the new hospitals built amid global media hysteria about the ‘deadly virus’ responsible were closed in a ridiculously short time when compared to the apparent human disaster that we were told was unfolding. As the ‘virus’ was said to be circulating in the West the Chinese ‘epidemic’ was already beginning to

dramatically recede and while the Western economy went into meltdown China was reopening business and industry, ending the extremes of the lockdown, and travel was restored. The big point to make here is that *what happened in China set the blueprint for how to respond to the 'virus' – mass lockdown, house arrest and keeping the population apart from each other*. This was the plan from the start with Bill Gates saying that 'basically the whole country (America) has to do what was done in the part of China where they had the infections'. The cover-story promoted by the Cult-created-and-controlled, Gates-funded World Health Organization (WHO) was that China had dealt with the 'health disaster' very effectively and so that's how the rest of the world had to respond when it came their way. Cult and Gates puppet WHO Director-General Tedros Adhanom Ghebreyesus said:

The Chinese government is to be congratulated for the extraordinary measures it has taken to contain the outbreak. China is actually setting a new standard for outbreak response and it is not an exaggeration.

The scene was set. The dye was cast. The Western economy and the lives of billions were about to be devastated.

The opening version of the official story was that the 'outbreak' began in a 'wet market' in Wuhan where bats and other animals are bought and eaten in the most appallingly dirty and unhygienic conditions and when this narrative didn't stand up another theme began which was promoted and advanced by the alternative media. This surrounded the 'BSL-4' laboratory in Wuhan not far from the wet market where lethal agents are studied and manipulated to create bioweapons for military purposes. The Wuhan facility is the only one of its kind in China. BSL-4 refers to biosafety level 4 which is the designation given to laboratories with the highest level of biosafety precautions capable of containing the often instantly fatal agents stored there. Francis Boyle, professor of international law at the University of Illinois College of Law who drafted the US Biological Weapons Anti-Terrorism Act of 1989, went public in February, 2020, to say he was convinced the 'coronavirus' strain said to be involved was an engineered bioweapon released from the Wuhan bio-lab by error or otherwise. He appeared across the alternative media and what he said about the *existence* of offensive biological warfare weapons with genetically-engineered DNA was clearly true. What followed, however, in actual dead people around the world did not in any way support the claim that a lethal bioweapon had been released. Just because a known arsonist lives near the scene of a fire does not mean only by association that he started the blaze, but the person who *did* start it will try to make you think so. No matter – a significant swathe of the alternative media would believe and promote this Wuhan lab scenario and later it would become a mainstream narrative which, of course, focussed attention and fury on China. Some Deep State-connected US politicians like the Israel-owned Tom Cotton suggested the Wuhan laboratory could have been the source and this was more reason for red flags to flutter in the breeze. It was suggested that the 'deadly agent' – by now dubbed a 'virus' – was stolen by the Chinese from a Canadian laboratory in Winnipeg, the country's foremost centre for developing and testing biological warfare weapons, or from a US BSL-4 laboratory of which there are many. Others said the 'virus' could have been sourced to the US military and released under the cover of the 2019 Military World Games held between October 18th and 27th in Wuhan just before the outbreak became public. The Games involved ten thousand military personnel and support staff gathered from more than 100 nations including a team from the United States. Professor Boyle estimated that the US has spent in excess of \$100 billion on biological warfare research since 9/11 rising by \$5 billion a year. This would sync with the Sabbatian-Frankist Project for the New American Century plan for the development of biological weapons that target specific genotypes. Biowarfare research is going on across the world in the United States, China, Israel, the United Kingdom (the infamous Porton Down), France, Russia, and many other locations. Sabbatian-Frankist-controlled Israel has a major chemical and biological weapons programme (hidden behind 'research' facilities) and as always refuses to sign the Biological Weapons Convention or Nuclear Non-Proliferation Treaty to

prevent international inspections because, thanks to the Sabbatian-Frankist networks, it is a law unto itself. The Israel Institute for Biological Research near Tel Aviv which runs the programme is one of the country's most secretive organisations (and think of the competition). The Globalresearch website said of Israel:

The greatest secrecy surrounds research on biological weapons, bacteria and viruses that spread among the enemy and can trigger epidemics. Among them, the bacteria of the bubonic plague (the 'Black Death' of the Middle Ages) and the Ebola virus, contagious and lethal, for which no therapy is available.

So do deadly agents exist at laboratories like Wuhan? They definitely do. The question to be asked is was the 'Covid-19' coronavirus one of them? The data from actual *happenings* and not speculation says 'no' and I will elaborate my case for that in fine detail. For sure the first official story that the virus broke out in an animal food market or 'wet market' in Wuhan has not stood up to scrutiny. Bats were blamed to start with which has been done before in similar situations to hide the truth. There were diversions and false 'leads' flying around all over the place and the more of those you can scatter the more confusing the situation becomes and the truth is lost. I observed the scene from the perspective of tracking what was happening and not making what was happening fit a preconceived belief. As the 'virus' expanded into the West the consequences simply did not match in any way what you would expect from a 'deadly bioweapon' in terms of dead people. So what was going on?

The Web

It is worth re-emphasising how the Cult globally manipulates to put the 'pandemic' hoax into another perspective. The first thing to do is forget borders which do not exist in the Cult networks. Picture a transnational corporation with a headquarters in a particular country (in the case of the Cult that headquarters or central control centre – The Spider – is in the shadows). A corporation has subsidiaries in other countries around the world which take their orders and direction from the headquarters. The Cult system operates in the same way. In every country, especially those that most affect the direction of the world, the Cult has subsidiary networks of secret societies, satanic covens and interbreeding Nephilim hybrid families that are tasked with controlling that country's politics, government administration (Deep State), finance and banking, media, medical structure to benefit the Cult's Big Pharma, and so on. By this means the Spider-directed agenda is imposed on 'different' countries at the same time to instigate global change and coordinated happenings. I have already said that China is a major centre for the Cult along with the United States, Israel, Britain, Italy, France, Germany, and elsewhere. At the Cult level China *is* America *is* Israel *is* Britain *is* Italy *is* France *is* Germany. Through this Cult coordination it is absolutely possible to orchestrate the extraordinary hoax that I am going to describe. Even many researchers in the alternative media do not seem to understand this structure and its manipulative potential judging by their comments during the 'pandemic'.

The structure requires very few people 'in the know' and consciously working for the Cult to dictate events in an entire country and together the entire world. You only have to control the key positions of decision-making and most of these do not even involve politicians. You want the technocrats to have the control and that includes in the case of 'Covid-19' the medical technocrats which have driven 'virus' policy throughout this human catastrophe with elected politicians almost entirely bystanders. We will see as we proceed the coordination of action between China (the Cult) and the West (the Cult). I have already highlighted the connections via the Cult of the Deep State and academia in China and the United States. As the 'Covid-19 virus' was coming to the centre of public attention Harvard University professor Charles Lieber, chair of the Harvard Department of Chemistry and Biology, was charged with lying about his role in a Chinese talent recruitment programme and was ordered to post a \$1 million cash bond by a judge at Boston's federal court. Prosecutors said Lieber agreed to conduct research, publish articles

and apply for patents on behalf of China's Wuhan University of Technology in exchange for \$50,000 per month and some \$150,000 in living expenses. Authorities said he was also given \$1.5 million to establish a research laboratory at a Wuhan university. I have said that a stream of 'former' Pentagon officials end up working after 'retirement' for China either directly or indirectly. It emerged that the United States had handed \$3.7 million to the Wuhan Institute of Virology and Canada had done something similar. The American grant was reported to have been approved by the Bill Gates-connected Anthony Fauci – Trump's advisor on the 'Covid-19' lockdown response. Why would the *United States* and *Canada* give millions to a lab in *China*? It was the American and Canadian 'subsidiaries' of the Cult handing over money to the China 'branch'. This is the borderless world of the Cult through which the pandemic hoax was coordinated. So is the Cult connected to the Wuhan lab? Yes, and this may become significant ongoing; but is it the source of 'Covid-19'? Hardly when 'Covid-19' is a phantom 'virus'. The Wuhan lab story is a diversion from that.

I will be adding the detail, but in summary this is how they pulled it off. The Cult network that controls China triggered global hysteria with an apparent outbreak of a 'deadly virus' which they dealt with through draconian lockdowns and mass house arrest. There was no 'virus' and the numbers of apparent deaths were generated by re-diagnosing people dying of other respiratory disease and pneumonia in the grotesquely toxic air of Wuhan as dying of a non-existent 'virus' dubbed 'Covid-19' which had the same 'flu-like' and respiratory symptoms as a long list of other conditions common in Wuhan thanks to its extreme toxic environment. A 'test' was then introduced that didn't even test for 'Covid-19' and this same test has since been used by the rest of the world to *not* test for 'Covid-19'. The Western media fanned the flames of hysteria by selling the story of mass deaths in China and how its government was hiding the truth about millions of dead. The media and Cult networks in Western and other countries screamed '*Ahhhhh – it's us next!!*' Amazingly the Chinese 'death figures' suddenly began to fall which is easily done when they are based on calculated miss-diagnosis and a fake 'test'. Cult assets controlling the medical hierarchies in other countries ordered doctors and other medical staff to begin diagnosing 'flu-like' symptoms and pneumonia as 'Covid-19' and indeed almost any condition as a 'Covid-19' death with no evidence necessary. If you haven't come across this background before you are going to be shocked when I get into the detail. The narrative was supported by the same fake test and the media screamed some more about hospitals being like 'war-zones' overwhelmed by cases. In fact, hospitals had never been so quiet, but with security staff guarding them, visitors not allowed and the media banned from filming the illusion was perpetuated of a tidal wave of patients with medical staff on their knees. Other operations and treatments were cancelled to ease the burden of 'overworked' medical staff who were largely sitting around with nothing to do. Lockdowns like that in China were instigated to 'protect the people' from a 'virus' that didn't exist urged on by the Cult-owned, Gates-funded World Health Organization which pointed to China's draconian lockdown 'success' as the way to deal with what it declared was a global 'pandemic'. This is the barest framework and the detail is on the way.

Fact-free propaganda

I was quite happy in the early weeks of the hysteria to accept the possibility of a bioweapon of some kind being involved with much *circumstantial* evidence to point in that direction. The word, however, is circumstantial and the only way to assess the validity of that is for real-world events to support the hypothesis. It became clear to me as a few weeks passed that this was not the case at all. Death-rates did not support that scenario, but a good slice of the alternative media still clung to it. The overwhelming majority of those who 'caught the virus' had 'very minor symptoms' or none at all and this number would increase as the weeks passed. You wouldn't know this if you read the daily war-zone headlines and on the basis of this perceptual magic trick the global economy was devastated. Were all the 'journalists' (you're joking) in on the plot? No, of course not. They just repeated unquestioned the official story as they do as a matter of course. As the saying goes and I summarise: 'You cannot bribe or twist the

great British journalist; but seeing what they will do unbribed there's no reason to.' What was alleged to be 'Covid-19' was certainly not a lethal bioweapon. One of the first people in Scotland to be diagnosed with 'the virus' after a trip to Italy told BBC radio he had a mild fever and felt shivery like he had 'a bit of flu coming on'. The worst symptoms were aches and pains especially in his legs. He said:

By the time I went to hospital, I was feeling fine. The mild flu symptoms quickly dissipated, I had no leg pain, no fever, no cough and no shortness of breath ... I felt well. My symptoms seemed to have gone within three or four days.

Ahhhhhhhhhhhhhhh!!!! We're all going to *DIE!!!* Once the hysteria began almost anyone with 'flu-like symptoms' was being diagnosed 'Covid-19' with no supporting proof whatsoever. 'Flu-like' symptoms have a long list of potential causes – *including the bloody flu* which is always around at the same time of year. We will shortly see that even the 'test' for 'Covid-19' is a sick joke that doesn't 'test' for that at all. American journalist Jon Rappoport, who has researched health, drug and related subjects for decades, wrote:

Before the announcement of the coronavirus epidemic, people who showed up at those hospitals, with flu, flu-like symptoms, lung infections, pneumonia would be placed in the general wards and treated, or even sent home with drugs.

But now they would, many of them, be called 'presumptive cases' of coronavirus, without any tests at all, or after tests which don't work ... By labeling these patients 'contagious coronavirus', the hospital doctors are forced to send them to the [intensive care unit] to 'protect others from the infection'.

The manipulation of 'Covid-19' case and death figures had begun and it would reach utterly shocking proportions. Then came news of an extraordinary posting on the UK government website Gov.uk. A freelance journalist friend saw the relevant page while perusing the site for coronavirus information and found a posting from just *days before* Prime Minister Boris Johnson announced a draconian lockdown of the country because 'the virus is so dangerous'. The post was on the page concerning official government guidance for 'high consequence infectious diseases (HCID)'. It said this about Covid-19:

As of 19 March 2020, COVID-19 is ***no longer considered to be a high consequence infectious diseases (HCID) in the UK*** [my emphasis]. The 4 nations public health HCID group made an interim recommendation in January 2020 to classify COVID-19 as an HCID. This was based on consideration of the UK HCID criteria about the virus and the disease with information available during the early stages of the outbreak.

Now that more is known about COVID-19, the public health bodies in the UK have reviewed the most up to date information about COVID-19 against the UK HCID criteria. They have determined that several features have now changed; in particular, more information is available about mortality rates (low overall), and there is now greater clinical awareness and a specific and sensitive laboratory test, the availability of which continues to increase. The Advisory Committee on Dangerous Pathogens (ACDP) is also of the opinion that COVID-19 should no longer be classified as an HCID.

Days after the 'danger' from the 'virus' was downgraded by the government the country was locked down on the excuse that the virus was indeed a 'high consequence infectious disease'. What a scam was being visited upon Britain and the world. Soon after the government had been exposed for downgrading the risk they upgraded it again. The same freelance journalist who alerted me to the downgrade also researched the figures for deaths in the UK from all causes in the 'virus' period of 2020 at that time and compared them with the same weeks in 2019. They were close to the same – 11,661 (2020) and 11,431 (2019). European death rates in general told the same story in the same period. As of April 3rd, 2020, the

total number of deaths in England and Wales was actually around six percent *less* than the same period in 2018. American doctor Andrew Kaufman, who will become very relevant shortly, described how he followed the weekly death rates up to the end of April and beyond – months into the ‘outbreak’ as issued by the US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC). He found them to be six percent less than the average of the previous three years – ‘If there is no increase, and in fact there is a decrease, then what’s the evidence that there’s a new disease?’ Yes indeed. Where were the additional dead people from ‘Covid-19’? My journalist friend further compared the figures for people attending hospital emergency departments for the same two years in the same period of weeks and they were virtually identical with 2019 slightly *higher*. Where were all the ‘new’ cases of ‘Covid-19’ overwhelming hospitals in need of treatment – the ‘war zones’ that the media was raving on about? German doctor Wolfgang Wodarg, former chair of the Parliamentary Assembly of the Council of Europe Health Committee, made the same point: ‘You can check the total body count monitoring – people are dying less than during the last years.’ He said there were no more ‘flu-like’ diseases than any other winter. With the 2019-2020 death rate comparison continuing to show into April no significant difference to explain the ‘new’ deaths from Covid-19 we suddenly had the UK National Statistics Office counting the figures in a way that had not been done before: ‘A death can be registered with both Covid-19 and influenza or pneumonia mentioned on the death certificate, therefore a death can be counted in both categories.’ The figures would go on to be massively manipulated to make it appear there was a ‘Covid-19 pandemic’ when there wasn’t. Dr Malcolm Kendrick who works for the NHS in England said: ‘I do know that other doctors put down Covid-19 on anyone who died from early March onwards.’ Shocking and it is happening worldwide.

Empty ‘war-zone’ hospitals



Figure 378: Many videos appeared on the Internet of hospitals reported to be ‘like war-zones’ where nothing out of the normal was happening and often had no one to be seen.



Figure 379: Images and footage of empty hospitals that were supposed to be ‘war zones’ appeared from all over the world. The British man who took these pictures was jailed to deter others from exposing the truth.

Next the UK National Health Service announced a change in its publication of data that would no longer include the figures on ‘critical care bed capacity and urgent operations cancelled’. They had to do this to hide from the public the glaring fact that ‘war-zone’ hospitals were near *empty*. Yes, *empty*. This came about for two main reasons: (1) There was no ‘Covid-19’ war-zone pandemic bringing hospitals to their knees; and (2) almost all non-‘Covid-19’ treatment, operations and hospital consultations had been

cancelled to protect medical staff from being ‘overwhelmed’. On that basis how could hospitals be anything except near-empty and the same was happening all over the world. Hospitals were defended and controlled by security staff with the few patients that were in hospital denied visitors ‘because of “Covid-19” rules’ (because they would see that the war-zone hospitals were near-empty). This meant that children were dying in hospital from other conditions without their mum and dad to emphasise to breathtaking extremes the nature of the psychopaths that we are dealing with. A German journalist managed to gain entry to the ‘coronavirus emergency centre’ at Charité – Universitätsmedizin in Berlin, one of Europe’s largest university hospitals, and found that it was *empty* ([Fig 378](#)). It even had two ‘emergency tents’ outside which were also unused and he said that staff were privately very critical of the media for so hyping something that wasn’t happening. Medical staff were banned from officially talking about the situation and all information was channelled to the media through a central press office to ensure control of the narrative. The German journalist’s video also included a list of doctors and specialists spelling out why the virus scare was an outrageous sleight of hand. YouTube deleted the video but we managed to find another version and downloaded that to the no-censorship BitChute video platform which I highly recommend. BitChute hosts the videos deleted by YouTube and anything YouTube bans that challenges the Cult narrative you need to see. Put these words into the search engine at [Davidicke.com](#) to watch the video: ‘New source for banned YouTube video: German journalist goes to hospital ‘teeming with coronavirus patients’ – how can doctors cope? – and finds NO ONE THERE’. Many people began to film at their local hospitals around the world and found them to also be empty with no stampede of ‘virus’ patients. Meanwhile the media was telling us of the said ‘war-zone’ conditions. One British man was jailed for three months for walking around a hospital and posting pictures on Facebook showing it to be empty ([Fig 379](#)). He was sentenced for visiting the hospital ‘with no good reason’ and of course showing it to be empty and the authorities to be lying to the British people was never going to be considered a ‘good reason’. I met a hospital worker who said: ‘You’re right about what is happening’. He said the hospitals have ‘never been so quiet’ with hundreds of empty beds and staff sitting around. A UK whistleblower at Southmead Hospital in Bristol told the media platform Bristol Live that hundreds of hospital staff were laid off. She was a healthcare assistant in accident and emergency who normally worked full-time, but she was now struggling to get one shift a week. She was on a zero-hours contract which means you only get paid when work is available and she had virtually no income. There were ‘easily’ more than 200 in the same situation, including some nurses, where she was located. The whistleblower said:

There were hardly any patients when lockdown hit. The hospital closed seven wards and 150 beds, including the wards for stroke patients, orthopaedic trauma and neurosurgery. The hospital is like a ghost town. You could walk through and hear a pin drop. Pretty much the only patients in the hospital seem to be coronavirus patients.

Hugh Evans, Bristol Council’s director of adult social care, said the city’s hospital bed occupancy was at an ‘all-time, unforeseeable low’ while Jacqui Marshall, director of people and transformation at North Bristol NHS Trust, said without a hint of embarrassment or irony … ‘We have not yet seen the surge in volume of patients that was initially anticipated due to the Covid-19 pandemic.’ You would not have known any of this reading or watching the national and international media.

Happy clappers

Empty hospitals were a constant theme across the world and yet the UK government instigated a weekly mass clapping by the unquestioning, performing-penguin population for health workers who were ‘saving us from the virus’ while most were sat strumming their fingers, being laid off, or making a long stream of dancing videos that appeared on YouTube featuring doctors and nurses prancing around empty hospitals. They seemed to have no problem standing inches from each other or closer despite

social distancing rules imposed on everyone else by police who also universally ignored them. I have emphasised in this book that the global Cult conspiracy is about manipulating perception and never has there been a more blatant example than the fake ‘pandemic’. To that end the usual mindless ‘celebrities’ were wheeled out like Lady Gaga, Paul McCartney, Mick Jagger, Elton John and a long list of others performing from home in the One World: Together At Home ‘event’ organised jointly by the World Health Organization owned by Bill Gates and an organisation called Global Citizen owned by Bill Gates. British singer Rita Ora urged viewers to stay safe and follow WHO recommendations. Gates would have been most grateful for yet another clueless celebrity to advance his agenda while having no idea that this is what she was doing. The ‘event’ was officially to celebrate health workers and at least most of them would have had plenty of time to watch. The psychological undertones however were selling the perception of ‘One World’ (the Cult’s long-time code for world government dictatorship) and ‘global citizen’ (the end of borders and nationalities). This and the mass clapping for health workers were all part of the perceptual illusion that hospitals were overwhelmed.

The fact that comparatively few health workers came out to tell the truth of what was happening is something they will have to carry for the rest of their lives as they survey the catastrophic human consequences of the ‘pandemic’ lie – including for themselves and their kids. The mainstream media which could have easily confirmed and exposed the empty hospitals continued to present the war-zone illusion. The nearest anyone came at the time of writing was London’s *Mail Online* report about *private* hospitals taken over by the UK National Health Service (NHS) being empty and unused. The hospitals seconded by the NHS at a cost of hundreds of millions of pounds because of the ‘crisis’ were described as ‘sinfully empty’ by senior doctors. They said hundreds of the country’s best doctors were left ‘twiddling their thumbs’ during the ‘outbreak’ putting other patients at risk through untreated and undiagnosed other illnesses and cancelled operations. Eight thousand beds in private hospitals were seconded by the NHS in March, 2020, when it was claimed that 20,000 fully qualified staff in the hospitals, including 700 doctors, were needed to ‘battle Covid-19’. They even appealed for thousands of qualified staff to come out of retirement to help. A London-based consultant orthopaedic surgeon said: ‘What we are seeing at the moment is a sinful and shocking mass of empty private hospitals and empty beds.’ The surgeon said that only ‘emergency’ and ‘time-critical’ operations were being allowed at his hospital: ‘I have a waiting list of 25 people who need major operations right now. One with severe arthritis is crying out in pain every night, unable to sleep.’ The *Mail* then spoiled it all by saying that NHS wards were ‘overrun’. Like hell they were. Another phenomenon that made no sense in relation to the numbers was to build special intensive care facilities like the ‘Nightingale’ facility built in nine days at East London’s ExCeL exhibition centre to provide an extra 4,000 intensive care beds while regular hospitals were operating at immense under capacity. The government then explained why ‘Nightingale’ was barely used by claiming a ‘shortage of nurses’ while great numbers sat virtually idle in near-empty hospitals and others made dancing videos in empty wards. The story was the same with other ‘Nightingale hospitals’ around the country. A massive army field hospital built inside a Seattle convention center by hundreds of troops was dismantled before treating a single patient. Then there were the emergency ‘mortuaries’ the size of football pitches and articulated trucks at hospitals said by the media and officialdom to be for dead bodies overflowing from normal mortuaries. People who filmed them with phone cameras showed the trucks to be empty. The British Army came to the Isle of Wight where I live to rearrange the local St Mary’s Hospital to provide 200 extra beds when staff were telling me the hospital had never been so quiet and this was the location of one of the nurse dancing videos confirming how much ‘pressure’ they were under. If you think none of this makes sense – and it doesn’t in terms of health and the official story– then read on.

How the scam works – a doctor explains

It became clear to me as I observed events that there was no ‘Covid-19’ and the puzzle pieces started to

connect. A crucial contribution was provided by the research of Dr Andrew Kaufman, a practicing forensic psychiatrist in New York State, a Doctor of Medicine and former Medical Instructor of Hematology and Oncology at the Medical School of South Carolina. He also studied at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT). Kaufman provided a pivotal piece in the puzzle for me as I sought to uncover the way the Covid-19 hoax was manipulated. I was sure by the time I saw his video presentation that Covid-19 didn't exist and said so in Internet videos, but Kaufman revealed some vital detail. You can watch his interviews and presentations at Davidicke.com if you put into the search engine: 'Videos of Dr Andrew Kaufman exposing Covid-19 deceit'. His website is AndrewKaufmanMD.com. Kaufman explains how the Chinese authorities immediately concluded that the cause of an illness that broke out among about 200 initial patients was a 'new virus' and he details how they had no grounds for such a conclusion. They were blaming a 'virus' almost from the start for reasons that would become clear to anyone who has researched the global Cult and how it operates in every country and has no borders. Kaufman said Chinese investigators took unpurified genetic material from the lungs of only a handful of the first patients which can be found in large numbers of people all the time from a variety of sources including their own cells, bacteria, fungus and other microorganisms living in their bodies. This therefore proved nothing at all. *A 'viral disease' that would be called 'Covid-19' was never isolated and identified and other possible causes of the illness were barely considered.* The script was being written that would be repeated around the world. They identified a sequence of RNA (ribonucleic acid) which contains genetic material as DNA does although there are differences in their function. This genetic sequence is *what they have been testing for* – not a fantasy 'viral condition' called 'Covid-19'.

They could have isolated a virus if it existed through filtration because viral particles are much smaller than other material. They didn't. Instead they compared the contaminated, impure, RNA sequence with other RNA sequences and declared that because it was just under 80 percent identical to the SARS-CoV-1 'virus' claimed to be the cause of the SARS (severe acute respiratory syndrome) outbreak in 2003 that they must be related. They called the 'new virus' they had not even identified SARS-CoV-2 and claimed it was the cause of what has been termed 'Covid-19'. Kaufman highlights major problems with this claim. First of all the SARS-CoV-1 'virus' was not purified and isolated either (like all recent 'scare' viruses) and so could not possibly be proven to be responsible for 'SARS'; secondly, the 'just under 80 percent identical' is basically meaningless. Kaufman points out the 96 percent correlation between humans and chimpanzees when 'no one would say our genetic material is part of the chimpanzee family, but yet they are using a sequence identity that has a much lower percentage, under 80 percent compared with 96, and saying it's a coronavirus because of that'. He said, quite rightly, that this is extremely weak science. German physician and bacteriologist Robert Koch produced in 1890 the four criteria for proving that a particular bacteria, or 'virus' in this case, is the cause of a given disease. These criteria have been used ever since by mainstream medicine as the 'gold standard' (but not in the case of 'Covid-19' and other recent 'deadly viruses' they want to use to scare the population shitless). These are the so-called Koch Postulates:

1. The bacteria must be present in every case of the disease and all patients must have the same symptoms. It must also not be present in healthy individuals.
2. The microorganism must be isolated from the host with the disease and grown in pure culture (you must isolate only the 'virus' and no other material which is known as 'purification').
3. The specific disease must be reproduced when a pure culture of the infectious agent is inoculated into a healthy susceptible host (the isolated 'virus' must be proved to cause the disease that you claim and healthy people without the 'disease' must not be found to have any of the 'virus' or material that you say is causing the disease).
4. The bacteria must be recoverable from the experimentally infected host and everyone who comes into contact with the 'virus' or bacteria must get the same disease.

With 'Covid-19' none of these criteria – *NONE* – were met. Not ONE. The alleged 'Covid-19' has never been isolated or purified and the whole hoax has been perpetrated by diagnosing from symptoms with a long list of potential causes and by testing for genetic material (*NOT 'Covid-19'*) and this genetic material also has a long list of other potential reasons for being there including lung cancer. In fact, the same test has been employed in attempts to identify lung cancer. Kaufman read the scientific papers describing the 'Covid-19' identification process and found them all to have seriously failed the Koch Postulate criteria and even the much less stringent adaptation of the postulates known as 'Rivers criteria' for viruses developed by American bacteriologist and virologist Thomas Milton Rivers, the 'father of modern virology', when he was director of the Rockefeller Institute for Medical Research in 1937. Papers claiming to have identified other more recent 'viruses' also failed both tests and all the papers failed on the most important criteria – isolating the alleged disease-causing agent from other genetic material that would contaminate and skew any testing method. Dr Kaufman's conclusion was that there is no 'Covid-19' virus: 'This entire pandemic is a completely manufactured crisis. In other words there is no evidence of anyone dying from [this] illness.' Many will be astounded at that statement, but you will see that this is confirmed by evidence across multiple subject areas and happenings.

The Chinese (Cult) authorities began to diagnose all people with 'flu-like' symptoms and pneumonia as infected with 'Covid-19', an alleged 'virus' they had not proven to exist and certainly not to be the reason that people were ill. Wuhan, like most Chinese cities, has notoriously toxic air and so widespread lung and respiratory problems – the same with Lombardy at the centre of the 'Covid-19 pandemic' in Italy. From the start Chinese medical staff were diagnosing what would become the infamous 'Covid-19' purely on 'flu-like' and pneumonia symptoms with their long list of other potential causes. The number of cases obviously soared as all respiratory disease was dubbed 'Covid-19' and all deaths diagnosed the same way. Death rates from the non-existent 'Covid-19' were hysterically hyped to build fear in the West that the 'deadly virus' was coming their way, but the 'death rates' were people dying from what they have always died from in toxic Wuhan. Then the Chinese authorities began 'testing' people for their alleged 'virus' which they had not identified. They rolled-out a diagnostic 'test' *before they had proved anything let alone that a new virus was involved*. 'How did they know what the source was of that genetic material?', Andrew Kaufman asked. Well, they didn't. The test is called the RT-PCR test or reverse transcription polymerase chain reaction. It is the 'qualitative rather than quantitative' protocol which can only measure the presence or absence of an RNA code sequence, but not the *amount* of RNA. I emphasise again – the PCR process is being used to 'test for the Covid-19 virus' when in fact it is ... *not testing for 'Covid-19'*. It is testing only for a genetic material sequence that is present in large numbers of people for a large number of potential reasons. No wonder so many test positive and no wonder the deeply corrupt World Health Organization says that people are not developing immunity from 'Covid-19'. How can they become 'immune' to something they have never had because it doesn't exist? How can they become immune to a genetic sequence that is part of their own genetic make-up?

Almost everyone has coronavirus present in their bodies and, if measured, it could show up in genetic material. Not 'Covid-19', I stress, but *coronaviruses*, a large 'family' of viruses that include the common cold and other more severe strains that can lie dormant ongoing in the body kept in check by the immune system. A test for coronavirus, and not specifically 'Covid-19', will be positive in enormous numbers of people. The World Health Organization claims that 'Covid-19' is 'an infectious disease caused by a newly discovered coronavirus called Sars-CoV-2'. Kaufman and increasingly others seriously dispute this claim. He said of the PCR test, invented by American biochemist Kary Mullis in the 1980s: 'We can't trust the results of this test at all.' The Quantitative PCR, sometimes called digital PCR, can be used to establish degradation of genetic material – which is what the Chinese took from the lungs of people sick at the start of the 'outbreak' – but clearly not the phantom 'Covid-19'. The PCR test involves 'amplification'. This means they take extremely small amounts of a sample and amplify that so they can better identify the content. The trouble is that amplification expands everything else in the sample. This means that what

you are looking for becomes ever more contaminated by the other material. The more you amplify the more you find material in the sample that almost everyone has and so the greater the amplification the more people will test ‘positive’ for other things in the sample and not what you are supposed to be testing for. Amplify genetic material claimed to be ‘Covid-19’ say 35 times and you will get positives and negatives for content of the genetic material (not the ‘virus’) in the bodies of those tested; but amplify say 60 times and so much other genetic material comes into the picture that virtually everyone will test positive not for the ‘virus’, but different elements of what is contained in the ‘genetic material’. This means that how many ‘positives’ you get depends on how many times you amplify the genetic material and if different countries use different amplifications this would be one way to explain *different numbers*. They also often dilute the samples as a way to determine the number of positives/negatives which allows them to do fewer cycles of amplification and takes less time. The authorities can control the number of ‘cases’ by these methods. If in China, for example, they used high amplifications at the start to terrify people they would get big numbers of ‘cases’. If they then used lower amplifications the number of cases would suddenly fall to nothing and they could claim that their draconian lockdowns were responsible – so providing the response blueprint for other countries. The same monumental deceit has been employed in Britain, the United States and elsewhere. When the vaccine is introduced they will manipulate the test (so easy) to make it seem like the vaccine has worked.

The ‘deadly virus’ is a natural immune system response



Figure 380: American doctor Andrew Kaufman exposed how exosomes, a natural immune system response by poisoned cells, looked the same under the microscope as what is being called ‘Covid-19’. Cult operatives had taken a natural immune response and called it a ‘deadly virus’.

	Exosomes	COVID-19
Diameter inside cell	500 nm (MVE)	500 nm
Diameter outside cell	100 nm	100 nm
Receptor	ACE-2	ACE-2
Contains	RNA	RNA
Found in	Bronchoalveolar (lung) fluid	Bronchoalveolar (lung) fluid

Figure 381: Andrew Kaufman further showed that in all relevant ways exosomes and the fake ‘Covid-19’ were the same even down to the cell receptors that both lock into. Exosomes and ‘Covid-19’ are one and the same. What a scam.

Dr Andrew Kaufman introduced a devastating piece of information which relates to something called ‘exosomes’. Cells release exosomes all the time but they increase substantially when there are toxins in the tissues. They also communicate a warning about a problem to remote parts of the body and can even remove toxins from the extracellular space. Any form of toxin, whether chemical or electromagnetic, will cause cells to release exosomes as part of the body’s system to protect from cell damage and death.

Kaufman shows images of exosomes and what is alleged to be ‘Covid-19’ under the microscope and they are ... *exactly the same* in every relevant way ([Fig 380](#)). They both attach to the same cell receptors, contain the same genetic material in the form of RNA or ribonucleic acid, and both are found in lung fluid which

is what the Chinese initially took from those first few patients before claiming the cause of their illness was a ‘virus’ ([Fig 381](#)). There is a reason they mirror each other – they are the *same phenomenon*. James Hildreth MD, President and Chief Executive Officer of the Meharry Medical College at Johns Hopkins, a researcher into HIV, said of viruses: ‘The virus is fully an exosome in every sense of the word.’ Exosomes, a natural mechanism for cells to cleanse themselves and alert other cells, and what is claimed to be ‘Covid-19’, are the same thing. Cult operatives in China and like-agents throughout the world simply renamed exosomes as ‘isolated Covid-19’ and developed a ‘test’ that produced a positive for *RNA of unknown origin* now transformed in the public mind into a non-existent ‘virus’ dubbed ‘Covid-19’. Some of the conditions that trigger the release of exosomes (‘Covid-19’) include: Toxicity; fear and stress [see ‘virus’ hysteria and lockdowns]; infection; injury; immune system responses; asthma; disease; and electromagnetic radiation which is getting more powerful by the day. Andrew Kaufman also points out that part of the process of identifying the genetic material involves adding antibiotics which cause the cells to *release exosomes* into the sample. They have renamed a natural immune reaction ‘Covid-19’ knowing that large numbers of people will test positive for that immune response and content within a genetic material RNA code. When people test positive and then die from other causes doctors are told to put ‘Covid-19’ on the death certificate as I will show. This is how the number of ‘cases’ and ‘deaths’ from the non-existent ‘Covid-19’ have been scammed into a widespread public perception about a ‘deadly virus’ that can only be stopped by lockdown, mass global house arrest, destroying the independent livelihood of potentially billions, and a Bill Gates-produced mandatory ‘vaccine’.

Can you ‘catch’ a virus?

Lockdown and ‘social distancing’ have been justified by the authorities on the grounds of protecting the public from an infectious disease – a ‘virus’ that has never been shown to exist. Then there is the question of whether even if the ‘virus’ was real that anyone could catch it from other people when a virus needs host cells to replicate. The *Encyclopedia Britannica* defines a virus as an agent that ‘can multiply only in living cells of animals, plants, or bacteria’ and says ‘they cannot reproduce and carry on metabolic processes without a host cell’. Can ‘Covid-19’ therefore be ‘caught’ from work surfaces, door handles, and money and how can it jump between humans or animals and humans when it requires a cellular host inside a body? As the lockdowns continued, Professor Hendrik Streeck, a virologist working on the German response to the ‘pandemic’, said the ‘virus’ had not been spread by shopping or going to the hairdresser. His studies in one ‘infected’ home found it ‘did not have any live virus on any surface’ including on phones, door knobs or even the pet cat’s fur. ‘We know it’s not a smear infection that is transmitted by touching objects’, he said, and he believed it could only be transmitted by very close contact. I would say from what I’ve read that even that is not correct, or at least unproven. Meanwhile, the public was ordered to keep six-feet from other people, including when standing in the rain waiting to enter a one-in, one-out store, and to stay at home out of the sun while using sanitiser to wash every surface. Streeck’s words take us into the territory of Dawn Lester and David Parker in their book widely-quoted by inquiring physicians, *What Really Makes You Ill – Why everything you thought you knew about disease is wrong*. Lester and Parker seriously question that a ‘virus’ can be transmitted between people or people and animals and they point out there is no provable scientific evidence to show that it can. They are not alone in this assertion either. The book quotes the establishment definition of a ‘virus’ as ‘a minute particle that is capable of replication but only within living cells’. The authors write:

The definition also claims that viruses are the cause of many diseases, as if this has been definitively proven. But this is not the case; there is no original scientific evidence that definitively demonstrates that any virus is the cause of any disease. The burden of proof for any theory lies with those who proposed it; but none of the existing documents provides ‘proof’ that supports the claim that ‘viruses’ are pathogens.

How can a natural immune response – which is what a ‘virus’ really is – cause or transmit disease? The

exosome reaction is a response to a problem (poisoned or otherwise injured cells) and not the problem itself. To say otherwise is to say that firefighters responding to a blaze *are the fire*. The very word 'virus' comes from a Latin word meaning 'poison'. Various manifestations of 'pus', as with smallpox, were once associated with the word 'virus'. Lester and Parker quote Dr Lynn Margulis, acclaimed biologist and member of the National Academy of Sciences, as saying that viruses are not even alive in her definition:

They are not alive since outside living cells they do nothing, ever. Viruses require the metabolism of the live cell because they lack the requisites to generate their own. Metabolism, the incessant chemistry of self-maintenance, is an essential feature of life. Viruses lack this.

Margulis further said that '... any virus outside the membrane of a live cell is inert' and inert means 'lacking the ability or strength to move'. Wow, 'deadly viruses' suddenly seem a lot less scary, eh? Lester and Parker ask how inert 'virus' particles that cannot move are supposed to somehow be transmitted between people and enter cells to 'infect' them. This poses a similar problem to medical authority as that faced by the inconvenient fact for the Climate Cult that carbon dioxide has to double in volume to affect temperature by any significant degree. This is not going to happen and the climate extremists have had to invent a whole cover story about 'feedback loops' to overcome these facts and claim that CO₂ is dangerous. In the same way virus particles outside a living host cannot move and without that they can't be passed on to 'infect' anyone. Hold on a while and I'll work something out. Let me think. Ah, yes, they hitch a ride on particles that can move and then drop off at just the right time to enter a body. Phew – do you think they'll buy that? This is what is claimed to explain the mystery although *how* this is supposed to happen has never been explained. Lester and Parker write:

The transmission of any viral particle attached to saliva or mucous travelling through the air has never been observed; viral particles are only ever observed in a laboratory under an electron microscope. The transmission of viruses in the air is an assumption; as is their ability to travel through the human body.

The authors note that investigations, including those by virologists, have 'failed to unearth any original papers that conclusively prove that any virus is the cause of any disease. Functions attributed to viruses in the cause of disease were based on assumptions and extrapolations from laboratory experiments that had not only failed to prove, but were incapable of proving, that viruses cause disease. 'The inert, non-living particles known as viruses do not possess the ability to perform such functions because they lack the necessary mechanisms.' So what is the point of 'social distancing', masks and lockdown? There is none. What divides people more than wearing masks hiding facial expressions and yet they were seen everywhere as people once again unquestioningly believed they would offer protection from the virus that didn't exist. Pores in the masks are far bigger than viral particles and Dr Kaufman described this as like putting up a chain-link fence to stop mosquitoes. He also warned that masks restrict breathing which can be 'problematic' with healthy people never mind those with asthma or lung and airway disease. For them it could be devastating. Masks, social distancing – none of this is about health. It's about control and economic destruction. By the way, newspapers were quick to claim that the 'virus' could be caught from handling money (wrong), but they emphasised that it cannot be caught from handling newspapers. How come it can be 'passed on' through paper money, but not paper newspapers? The newspapers are selling newspapers and not money. My god, it's pathetic.

The propaganda has been so incessant that to suggest there is no evidence of a 'Covid-19' is to be crazy by definition to most people. They wouldn't lie that much, surely? Oh, they *would*. Absolute super-massive whoppers are their calling card – the bigger the lie the more will believe it. The response by Cult-controlled Silicon Valley to two videos within days of each other was very significant with regard to this. The first was an interview I did with Brian Rose at London Real that was live-streamed and attracted the second-biggest live-stream audience in the world that day on YouTube. Within minutes of completion

and with more than 300,000 already watching the recording YouTube deleted the video followed quickly by Vimeo and Facebook. The latter version had been watched a million times before Facebook pulled the plug. The mainstream media and sadly much of the alternative focussed on what I said about a 5G angle to current events which was only a relatively small part of the interview. The whole thrust of what I said was to question the existence of 'Covid-19'. A few days later my son, Jaymie, interviewed Andrew Kaufman for Davidicke.com in a video that did not even mention 5G, but it was deleted by YouTube after passing 300,000 views. The common denominator of both deleted videos was not 5G – it was to question the existence of 'Covid-19' which, when widely known, would bring down the house of cards. The unthinkable needs to be thought when the evidence points in that direction. I have been constantly misquoted as saying that 5G is causing the 'virus' which is rather difficult to sustain when I am saying there *is no* 'Covid-19' virus. My point has been that 5G can trigger *symptoms* that have been *called* 'Covid-19' which is very different from 5G 'causing the virus'.

How the scam works – a scientist explains

In late March, 2020, I received an email from Sir Julian Rose, a writer, researcher, and known in the UK for his promotion of organic farming. He sent me an explanation of the coronavirus hoax sent to him by an American scientist friend who works in the healthcare field. It is a superb breakdown of the systematic deceit and absolutely supports many of the findings of Dr Andrew Kaufman. The scientist said they were not testing people specifically for 'Covid-19', but for *any* strain of a coronavirus of which there are a long list. 'There are no reliable tests for a specific Covid-19 virus', he said. Nor were there any reliable agencies or media outlets for reporting numbers of actual Covid-19 virus cases. 'Every action and reaction to Covid-19 is based on totally flawed data and we simply cannot make accurate assessments.' He said this was why most people diagnosed with 'Covid-19' were showing nothing more than cold/flu like symptoms. 'That's because most Coronavirus strains are nothing more than cold/flu like symptoms.' An 84-year-old German man tested positive for 'Covid-19', his entire nursing home was quarantined, and then he was found to have only a common cold. The Tanzania government sent samples from a pawpaw and a goat to the WHO for testing (to expose the scam) and both came back *positive* for 'Covid-19'. The PCR test used to detect 'Covid-19' does not do that, the scientist said, but instead 'basically takes a sample of your cells and amplifies any [RNA] to look for "viral sequences", i.e. bits of non-human [RNA] that seem to match parts of a known viral genome'. The problem he said was that ... *the test is known not to work:*

It uses 'amplification' which means taking a very, very tiny amount of [RNA] and growing it exponentially until it can be analyzed. Obviously any minute contaminations in the sample will also be amplified leading to potentially gross errors of discovery. Additionally, it's only looking for partial viral sequences, not whole genomes, so identifying a single pathogen is next to impossible even if you ignore the other issues.

He said what he called the 'Mickey Mouse test kits' that were being sent out to hospitals told analysts – 'at best' – that you have some viral (RNA) in your cells. This was irrelevant because most people had coronavirus (RNA) most of the time:

It may tell you the viral sequence is related to a specific type of virus – say the huge family of coronavirus. But that's all. The idea these kits can isolate a specific virus like Covid-19 is nonsense.

He said the other issue was 'viral load'. The PCR 'Covid-19' test (that isn't) works by amplifying minute amounts of RNA. It was therefore useless at telling you how *much* virus you may have – the only question that really matters when it comes to diagnosing illness:

Everyone will have a few viruses kicking round in their system at any time, and most will not cause illness because their quantities are too small. For a virus to sicken you – you need a lot of it, a massive amount of it.

But PCR does not test viral load [They use qualitative rather than quantitative PCR] and therefore can't determine if [a virus] is present in sufficient quantities to sicken you. If you feel sick and get a PCR test any random virus [RNA] might be identified even if they aren't at all involved in your sickness which leads to false diagnosis.

What is said here is supported by Kary Mullis who won the Nobel Prize in Science for *inventing* the PCR in the 1980s. Yes, the inventor of the PCR test said that it *cannot accurately test for infectious diseases* and yet this is what the test is being used for with regard to 'Covid-19'. Mullis said: 'Quantitative PCR is an oxymoron.' He said that PCR is intended to identify substances *qualitatively*, but by its very nature the test is unsuited for quantity. Mullis said there was a common misimpression that the viral load tests count the number of viruses in the blood, but the test *could not detect free, infectious viruses at all*. The test could detect genetic sequences of viruses, but not viruses themselves. You can see from all this that the numbers of cases and therefore deaths from 'Covid-19' are utterly unsupportable. The scientist said coronavirus is incredibly common. 'A large percentage of the world human population will have covid ... in them in small quantities even if they are perfectly well or sick with some other pathogen.' He asked: 'Do you see where this is going yet?' All this meant that 'if you want to create a totally false panic about a totally false pandemic – pick a coronavirus':

They are incredibly common and there's tons of them. A very high percentage of people who have become sick by other means (flu, bacterial pneumonia, anything) will have a positive PCR test for covid even if you're doing them properly and ruling out contamination, simply because coronaviruses are so common. There are hundreds of thousands of flu and pneumonia victims in hospitals throughout the world at any one time.

He said all you needed to do was select the sickest of these people in a single location – 'say Wuhan' – and administer PCR tests to them. You then claim that anyone showing viral sequences similar to a coronavirus 'which will inevitably be quite a few' is suffering from a 'new' disease:

Since you already selected the sickest flu cases a fairly high proportion of your sample will go on to die. You can then say this 'new' virus has a CFR [case fatality rate] higher than the flu and use this to infuse more concern and do more tests which will of course produce more 'cases', which expands the testing, which produces yet more 'cases' and so on and so on.

Before long you have your 'pandemic', and all you have done is use a simple test kit trick to convert the worst flu and pneumonia cases into something new that **doesn't actually exist** [my emphasis].

The scientist said you then 'just run the same scam in other countries' and make sure to keep the fear message running high 'so that people will feel panicky and less able to think critically'. The only problem to overcome was the fact *there is no* actual new deadly pathogen but just regular sick people. This meant that deaths from the 'new deadly pathogen' are going to be way too low for a real new deadly virus pandemic, but he said this could be overcome in the following ways – all of which would go on to happen:

1. You can claim this is just the beginning and more deaths are imminent [you underpin this with fake 'computer projections']. Use this as an excuse to quarantine everyone and then claim the quarantine prevented the expected millions of dead.
2. You can tell people that 'minimizing' the dangers is irresponsible and bully them into not talking about

numbers.

3. You can talk crap about made up numbers hoping to blind people with pseudoscience.

4. You can start testing well people (who, of course, will also likely have shreds of coronavirus [RNA] in them) and thus inflate your ‘case figures’ with ‘asymptomatic carriers’ (you will of course have to spin that to sound deadly even though any virologist knows the more symptom-less cases you have the less deadly is your pathogen).

He said that if you take these simple steps ‘you can have your own entirely manufactured pandemic up and running in weeks’. In short the authorities cannot ‘confirm’ something for which there is no accurate test and they certainly cannot produce a vaccine as Cult asset Bill Gates (*a lot* more to come) soon began to peddle on the back of the ‘crisis’. What the scientist and Andrew Kaufman had said would be supported by an ever-increasing body of evidence. My son Gareth and I live hours apart but we both had exactly the symptoms of ‘Covid-19’ in the run-up to Christmas, 2019, before the scare began. I was later to learn that others did, too. I am very rarely ill because I am blessed with a strong immune system which I constantly boost with the daily supplements missing from the modern diet and Gaz almost never gets ill for the same reason with his immune system on fire because it wasn’t undermined by childhood vaccination. Gaz and myself both had a highly unusual experience of illness when we went down at the same time with what would now be called ‘Covid-19 symptoms’ – every one of them. It wasn’t pleasant for a few days with coughing, aches and a mild fever, but we both carried on working and I wrote some of this book in that period. The immune system did its job without doctor involvement. The point is that if we had those same symptoms a few weeks later we would have been dubbed ‘Covid-19 victims’. Tens of thousands of people die in the United States alone every winter from flu (many with pneumonia complications) with Centers for Disease Control (CDC) figures recording that 45 million Americans were diagnosed with flu in 2017-2018 of which 61,000 died. Some reports said 80,000. Anyone remember the same hysteria that we have seen with ‘Covid-19’? Around 250,000 Americans are admitted to hospital with pneumonia every year and about 50,000 die. With the manipulation of death certificates those people are all potential ‘Covid-19’ fake statistics and then add the fact that 65 million people suffer from respiratory disease every year with three million deaths which makes it the third biggest cause of death worldwide.

Where did the numbers and ‘projections’ come from?

The serious lack of enough dead people to justify the ‘deadly virus’ fear-fest was dealt with as the scientist said it would be. They said that although people were not dying in big numbers *yet* that was going to happen (‘you can claim this is just the beginning and more deaths are imminent’) and when the numbers didn’t materialise they said it was because of the lockdown (‘then claim the quarantine prevented the expected millions of dead’). The death projections were never going to happen and their purveyors knew that. They were simply falsely created to secure the lockdowns for purposes of economic catastrophe and control over billions. The experience of Japan which avoided draconian lockdowns exposes the mendacity that lockdowns affected events except to crash the world economy for very sinister motives. With the figures being fixed through tests and death certificates what difference would either lockdown or no lockdown have made? It is worth remembering this at all times: Statistics don’t speak for themselves – they speak for those that compiled them. If you take the example of the UK – the same happened globally – the outrageously exaggerated projections of deaths (to justify house arrest for billions) came from ... *computer models*. You know, the same technique used with the ludicrous exaggerations of climate change *computer models* which have proved so laughably inaccurate, but so useful to sell the climate lie. It is so easy to get the projection you want when all you need to do is upload shite to download shite. Andrew Kaufman has worked in computer modelling and explained how easy it is to fix the outcome. Computer ‘projections’ depend on the nature of the data input from which the ‘projections’ are produced. The ‘Covid-19’ projection insanity was that up to ‘500,000 people will die in the

UK if we don't have lockdown'. I'll repeat that just to let the lunacy of this sink in: '500,000 people will die in the UK if we don't have lockdown'. This was the work of Neil Ferguson, Professor of Mathematical Biology and head of the MRC Center for Global Infectious Disease Analysis (funded by Bill Gates and his vaccinate-the-world fronts Gavi and the Global Fund). Business Insider said of the Ferguson operation:

It gets tens of millions of dollars in annual funding from the Bill & Melinda Gates Foundation, and works with the UK National Health Service, the US Centres for Disease Prevention and Control (CDC), and is tasked with supplying the World Health Organization with 'rapid analysis of urgent infectious disease problems'.



Figure 382: Neil Ferguson – UK Prime Minister Boris Johnson and other politicians believed Ferguson's ludicrous computer 'projections' and utter disaster followed in destroyed lives and livelihoods. (Image by Gareth Icke.)

The biggest funder of Gates's Gavi is ... *the British government* which took its lockdown advice from Gates-funded, Gates-owned Ferguson and London's Imperial College. During the 'pandemic' the UK government pledged £330 million a year of taxpayers money to Gavi for at least five years through the Department for International Development. Gavi in turn connects into the Gates-controlled World Health Organization (WHO), the United Nations and the World Bank. The WHO is part of the Cult-created-and-controlled UN, the stalking horse for world government. Ferguson is a wholly-owned subsidiary of Gates who is a wholly-owned subsidiary of the Cult and what a surprise that Ferguson produced the 'computer models' that terrified governments to impose the human-catastrophe of lockdown. It was also reported that the code being used by Imperial College for their 'models' was 'tidied up' by Gates's Microsoft. Ferguson advised governments and the Gates World Health Organization while based at the Gates-funded, Freemason-connected Imperial College. The college has received the best part of \$200 million in Gates funding so far. Gates is everywhere in the fake 'pandemic' story and he and Ferguson should be in jail for the rest their lives in my view for what they have done to human society. Ferguson's fantasy 'projections' which were never going to happen caused an until-then reluctant Prime Minister Boris Johnson to turn Britain into a fascistic police/military state (see Hunger Games Society). Johnson was resisting full-blown lockdown, but faced with such a projection for which he was told he would take responsibility the technocrats broke him and took complete control of policy from then on ([Fig 382](#)). They included SAGE, the Science Advisory Group for Emergencies, which is part of the UK government's 'emergency response structure' and a subcommittee of the appropriately dubbed COBRA which 'coordinates the actions of government bodies in response to national or regional crisis'. SAGE is headed by Patrick Vallance, UK chief scientific advisor, and former head of drug discovery, medicines discovery and research and development at British-based Big Pharma giant, GlaxoSmithKline (GSK), which has absolutely enormous funding and business connections to Bill Gates. The UK government's Vaccine Network, a group of academics and Big Pharma 'experts' advising on vaccination policy, has a membership that has almost in its entirety taken hundreds of millions (*at least*) in donations from the Gates Foundation and includes employees of GSK which is involved in a 'Covid-19' testing campaign and the 'search' for a vaccine. GSK and Gates stand to make an extraordinary fortune from the fake 'pandemic'. Former GlaxoSmithKline chief executive Sir Andrew Witty has taken a leave of absence from his current day job to lead the push to develop vaccines for Covid-19 at the World Health Organization.

Gates has bought and controlled everyone and everything needed to dictate the ‘pandemic’ narrative and press for the mass vaccination of the whole of humanity for a ‘virus’ never shown to exist. UK chief scientific advisor Patrick Vallance, a GSK executive, announced in April, 2020, that the SAGE ‘advice’ to the UK government would not be made public until after the ‘pandemic’ was over (and the irreversible transformation of human society achieved). Allyson Pollock, director of the Institute of Health and Society at the UK’s Newcastle University, was among dozens of experts who signed a letter in *The Lancet* medical journal demanding government advisors should be more transparent (no chance). She said:

We ought to know who is advising the government [Bill Gates] ... What is the government hiding [Bill Gates] and who is it protecting? Government employees and publicly funded university scientists – likely to make up a large number of SAGE members – are accountable to the taxpayer.

No, no, Allyson. They are accountable to Bill Gates who is accountable to the Cult. Boris Johnson’s own ‘infection with Covid-19’ (illness from something, not ‘Covid-19’) took him out of the loop for a significant period very conveniently. With British people in lockdown, under house arrest and living in a police state justified by these ‘projections’ Ferguson dramatically reeled back his figures and said in late March that the death toll was likely to be ‘20,000 or fewer’. Even this was an exaggeration when deaths attributed to ‘Covid-19’ are an administrative, death-certificate, mathematical trick supported by an irrelevant ‘test’. Ferguson and his cohorts at Imperial College sold the fascistic lockdowns by the usual method – fear and lies. Their report to Boris Johnson said:

Perhaps our most significant conclusion is that mitigation is unlikely to be feasible without emergency surge capacity limits of the UK and US healthcare systems being exceeded many times over. In the most effective mitigation strategy examined, which leads to a single, relatively short epidemic (case isolation, household quarantine and social distancing of the elderly), the surge limits for both general ward and ICU beds would be exceeded by at least 8-fold under the more optimistic scenario for critical care requirements that we examined.

Deborah Birx, coronavirus response coordinator to the Trump administration, told journalists that the Imperial paper – Ferguson’s computer projection of more than two million deaths in America – had prompted new advice ‘to work from home and avoid gatherings of 10 or more’. Ferguson’s message was the Gates message because Gates owns him and we had the recurring theme of establishing the draconian lockdowns in China as the blueprint for the West to follow in pursuit of the Cult’s agenda to mass-destroy independent livelihoods and install the Hunger Games Society. Ferguson said:

One has to adopt the kind of community measures which have been adopted in places like Wuhan and China where you try to reduce contacts between people in the community, so the sorts of measures which are important are first of all anyone who has any sort of respiratory disease, a cold, they should stay at home until those symptoms are fully resolved.

What followed was the mass cancellation of other hospital activities like operations and consultations while at the same time the Ferguson Imperial College predictions of hospitals being overwhelmed by ‘Covid-19’ cases could hardly have been more wrong. So much so that the UK authorities stopped publishing figures about intensive care bed use to hide the fact that intensive care units were not overwhelmed and whole major hospitals across the locked-down world had hundreds and hundreds of empty beds. News organisations had no footage of the ‘war-zone’ hospitals they were describing and so devoid were they of proof that CBS was caught using footage of an Italian intensive care ward while claiming it was in New York. The UK’s Channel 4 News showed pictures of a *dummy* being worked on in a training centre while presenting it as a live human. Yet as late as March 26th, 2020, the calculated lunatics at Imperial College were warning that ‘Covid-19’ could kill 30 million around the world and

lives could only be saved if countries acted quickly (that is put their populations under house arrest). Imperial College was not responding to a health crisis. It was following a script and justifying Cult agenda demands with blatantly and vastly exaggerated computer ‘projections’. They must face the consequences for their actions with an independent open and public inquiry to expose what happened and how it was clearly orchestrated. Ferguson and Imperial College produced ‘projections’ for other governments including a Ferguson claim that up to 2.2 million people could die in America without a lockdown. This is the very lockdown that Bill Gates wanted for his Cult economic and vaccine agenda and for which Gates-funded Imperial College provided the projected excuse. Key advisors around Johnson, Trump and other leaders were also financial beneficiaries of Gates largesse and this is the same Bill Gates who in effect owns the Cult-created World Health Organization (WHO) as its second biggest funder behind only the government of the United States. He might even be the biggest by the time you read this. The Gates-controlled WHO has been driving the ‘Covid-19’ response worldwide and promoting in the West the lockdown policy of China because ‘it was so effective’. Are you getting it? In the United States the Cult-controlled Johns Hopkins Coronavirus Resource Center was counting the numbers and ‘briefing’ the media. You will see the significance of that in the next chapter. Another organisation producing projections for ‘Covid-19’ deaths has been the Institute for Health Metrics and Evaluation (IHME) funded – like Imperial College and Neil Ferguson – by Bill Gates.

Comedy of ‘errors’

Imperial College promotes every aspect of Agenda 21/2030 and has been heavily involved in ‘climate change’ computer model ‘projections’. The Climate Cult demands a whole new economic system – one of the prime reasons for the ‘Covid-19’ hysteria and its extreme economic fallout. Ferguson and his manufactured ‘models’ predicted that up to 150,000 people could die from BSE, or ‘mad cow disease’, and its equivalent in sheep if it made the leap to humans. Fewer than 200 deaths from the human form of BSE followed. BSE was shown to be due to an organophosphate pesticide used to treat a pest on the cows. Ferguson and the goons (oops, I repeat myself) with their computer models at Imperial College triggered the unnecessary mass ‘pre-emptive’ cull of millions of pigs, cattle and sheep during a foot and mouth outbreak in 2001 that destroyed the livelihoods of untold numbers of farmers and their families. Imperial College and Neil Ferguson seem to be good at that. The culled animals had no contact with the disease let alone had it. Remind you of anything? The government was also advised to do this by Professor Roy Anderson, a computer modeller at Imperial College specialising in the epidemiology of human diseases (God help us), but without any experience in veterinary matters. Anderson serves both on the Bill and Melinda Gates Grand Challenges in Global Health advisory board and chairs another organisation funded by the Gates Foundation. Imperial College has received grants worth tens of millions from Gates aimed at influencing global ‘health’ and vaccine policy including one of \$14.5 million ‘to improve methods to detect circulating polioviruses through environmental surveillance’. At the same time President Trump was being ‘advised’ by people like ‘Dr’ Anthony Fauci in his ‘coronavirus taskforce’. Fauci is director of the National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID) which has received major funding from the Gates Foundation. He also was named on the ‘Leadership Council’ of the Decade of Vaccines Collaboration funded by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation. A headline on the Gates-created Gavi website in 2012 proclaimed: ‘Fauci: forging closer ties with Gavi’. The same Gates connections apply to ‘Dr’ Deborah Birx who was appointed White House Coronavirus Response Coordinator in February, 2020. An article at Nationalfile.com said:

Gates has a lot of pull in the medical world, he has a multi-million dollar relationship with Dr. Fauci, and Fauci originally took the Gates line supporting vaccines and casting doubt on [the drug hydroxychloroquine]. Coronavirus response team member Dr. Deborah Birx, appointed by former president Obama to serve as United States Global AIDS Coordinator, also sits on the board of a group that has received billions from Gates’ foundation, and Birx reportedly used a disputed Bill Gates-funded model

for the White House's Coronavirus effort. Gates is a big proponent for a population lockdown scenario for the Coronavirus outbreak.

Yes he is because that is the reason the Cult launched the 'Covid-19' hoax to destroy independent livelihoods and impose a vaccine to 'end' the lockdowns. The world is waking up to Bill Gates and it is not waking up from a nightmare, but to one. This deeply sinister man was at the centre of the 'Covid-19' hijacking of human society pulling the strings of Gates-funded Neil Ferguson and his computer models behind the lockdowns in many countries including the United States where Ferguson was cheer-led by Fauci and Birx. American researcher Daniel Horowitz highlighted the impact of Imperial College 'Covid-19' 'projections' on the lockdown policy in the United States:

What led our government and the governments of many other countries into panic was a single Imperial College of UK study, funded by global warming activists, that predicted 2.2 million deaths if we didn't lock down the country. In addition, the reported 8-9% death rate in Italy scared us into thinking there was some other mutation of this virus that they got, which might have come here.

Together with the fact that we were finally testing and had the ability to actually report new cases, we thought we were headed for a death spiral. But again ... we can't flatten a curve if we don't know when the curve started.

The lockdowns were claimed to be 'protecting the people' while 'the people' die all the time in enormously greater numbers from other conditions, including cancer and heart disease. I'll tell you how much the Cult and its political and Deep State psychopaths care about humanity. Ultra-Zionist Dr Richard Day, professor of paediatrics at Mount Sinai Hospital in New York and executive of the Rockefeller-created Planned Parenthood, told those paediatricians in Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania, in 1969 that they already had the cure for cancer but were keeping it secret: 'We can cure almost every cancer right now. Information is on file in the Rockefeller Institute [now the Rockefeller University], if it's ever decided that it should be released.' Day said that the plan was to control and cull the population through medicine, food, *new laboratory-made diseases* and the suppression of a cure for cancer. He said that letting people die of cancer would slow down population growth: 'You may as well die of cancer as something else.' Pause for a ponder on the level of empathy-deleted psychopathy that we are dealing with from a Cult that claims it has devastated human society to 'protect the people' it absolutely despises.

The Gates of Hell

Neil Ferguson and his fellow 'modellers' at Imperial College are nothing if not utterly without self-awareness and they continued to promote an indefinite lockdown *until a vaccine is available* in perfect sync with the demands of Bill Gates and his masters. This is what you would expect from Gates-puppet Ferguson given that he heads up the Vaccine Impact Modelling Consortium out of Imperial College which 'coordinates the work of several research groups modelling the impact of vaccination programmes worldwide'. The Ferguson 'consortium' is a global vaccine promotion operation funded by the Bill Gates-created Gavi, the 'vaccine alliance', and the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation. Ferguson's conflict of interest is extraordinary, but no one in government (Cult-owned governments) seems to care. Why would they when there is a global agenda to impose? If you are under some level of lockdown for months and the only way out is to have the eventual vaccine do you think people are more likely to have it despite their reservations? These unelected technocrats are 'advising' governments, less we forget, made up of politicians who treat them with the reverence and certainty they don't even begin to deserve. Ferguson, who was diagnosed with 'coronavirus' and somehow managed to survive, has sold his nonsense to the UK government that led to lockdown while an associate of his, Christopher Whitty (another virus 'survivor'), has been Chief Medical Officer to the UK Government on coronavirus policy and a member of

the UK government SAGE ‘science advisory’ body headed by Patrick Vallance. Whitty was described by the BBC as ‘the official who will probably have the greatest impact on our everyday lives of any individual policymaker in modern times’. Not a politician you will note – a technocrat. Whitty was handed a \$40 million grant by the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation for malaria research in Africa. Ferguson and Whitty wrote a paper together entitled ‘Infectious disease: Tough choices to reduce Ebola transmission’. This was another exaggerated health scare in which both were involved.

Ferguson supported closing schools ‘for prolonged periods’ over the swine flu ‘pandemic’ in 2009. He said the swine flu virus would infect a third of the world’s population if it continued to spread at the current rate and he and other ‘researchers’ at Imperial College London predicted the virus was likely to cause an epidemic in the northern hemisphere. A news report said: ‘One of the authors, the epidemiologist and disease modeller Neil Ferguson, who sits on the World Health Organisation’s emergency committee for the outbreak, said the virus had “full pandemic potential”.’ He supplied ‘computer models’ to then chief medical officer, Professor Sir Liam Donaldson, which said in the worst case scenario 30 percent of the UK population could be infected by the H1N1 ‘swine flu’ virus, with 65,000 killed. The number who officially died by the end of the year: 392. This was more Ferguson ‘modelling’ that could hardly have been more inaccurate. Oh yes, and no-one caught Ebola from someone else in the UK let alone died from it. Never mind, without self-awareness (or with an agenda) you just carry on pontificating your ‘expertise’ regardless. A newspaper quoted ‘scientists from Imperial College’ in an article headlined ‘UK lockdown could be indefinite until a vaccine is found, warn scientists advising government’. They said countries would have to go through repeated cycles of restrictions being lifted and re-imposed (exactly in line with the Cult agenda). Ferguson said the UK government had wrestled with the idea of adopting strict measures and then going back to normal, but ‘we don’t think that’s now possible’. So who is this ‘we’? The ‘we’ is Bill Gates and the bigger ‘we’ is the Cult that owns him.

People only die from ‘Covid-19’

The biggest problem the figure-manipulators faced was producing enough dead people from a ‘dangerous disease’ that doesn’t exist, or a ‘bioweapon’ depending on which version of deceit that people chose to believe. The Cult subsidiary networks in each country solved this (at least at first) through their top-down control of the medical pyramids. You need very few people to dictate policy to tens of thousands in national ‘health’ systems – you just need to control the key positions that dictate what the lower-ranks must do. As with China the first diagnosis of ‘Covid-19’ in the West and wider world came purely from symptoms. Doctors and other medical staff were told that pretty much anyone with ‘flu-like symptoms’ or pneumonia had to be diagnosed ‘Covid-19’ and given that so many have those symptoms and develop pneumonia from a host of causes the numbers began to climb solely from this top-down demand for diagnosis. When the PCR test (not testing for ‘Covid-19’) came into play the potential was almost limitless to fix the figures of not only cases, but deaths. Medical staff were told that everyone that came to hospital or was treated anywhere had to be tested for ‘Covid-19’. Many tested positive as the Cult knew they would because the test is for a genetic material that large numbers of people have in their bodies as a matter of course. Staff were then told that anyone who died (of other conditions) who had tested positive must have ‘Covid-19’ declared on the death certificate as the cause of their demise. People who have died in road accidents have had ‘Covid-19’ given as the cause of death. None of this is speculation. Many medical staff have had the courage to speak out and expose that this is happening. The overwhelming majority have not, however, and they will have to live with that for the rest of their lives as the consequences for global humanity become ever clearer. The UK’s National Health Service (NHS) told doctors that they could put ‘Covid-19’ on a death certificate without any evidence whatsoever:

If before death the patient had symptoms typical of COVID-19 infection, but the test result has not been received, it would be satisfactory to give ‘COVID-19’ as the cause of death, and then share the test result

when it becomes available. In the circumstances of there being no swab, *it is satisfactory to apply clinical judgement* [My emphasis].

The UK Chief Coroner said in a note of guidance that the ‘emergency’ Coronavirus Bill means that ‘Covid-19’ deaths *don’t have to be referred to a coroner at all* and the same is happening in many countries and US states including a directive to this effect in New Jersey. Medical practitioners can sign off a cause of death as Covid-19 for someone they have never even seen without any cause-of-death oversight by a coroner or autopsy because an autopsy would reveal the *real* cause of death – not ‘Covid-19’. The UK Chief Coroner directive said:

Any registered medical practitioner can sign an MCCD [Medical Certificate for Cause of Death], even if the deceased was not attended during their last illness and not seen after death, provided that they are able to state the cause of death to the best of their knowledge and belief.

Deaths ‘in the community’ can also be listed as Covid-19 deaths without being tested for the disease, or even seen by a doctor. The Crown Office took such actions under emergency powers in the fascist-charter Coronavirus Act of 2020 ‘to ease the burden faced by the NHS as the UK moves towards predicted peak levels of infection and death’. This was the burden faced in near-empty hospitals where medical staff were making YouTube dancing videos to ease the boredom of inactivity. Scotland’s Cult-controlled government via the Scottish National Party declared that anyone who died within 28 days of a ‘laboratory confirmed’ (fake test) diagnosing ‘Covid-19’ must have that recorded as the cause of death. Remember that the overwhelming majority of those who test positive for the fake test have ‘mild symptoms’ or mostly none at all. Let that sink in with regard to the Scottish death record policy and you will see the size of the deceit in that small country alone to fix the figures. This is the same Scottish government that dropped the requirement for post-mortems to be carried out on alleged ‘Covid-19’ victims so the real cause of death could not be established and ‘Covid-19’ could go on the death certificate and the cumulative figures. A newspaper report said: ‘Normally, patients who die in hospital have a post-mortem to establish beyond doubt the cause of death.’ Finding out what people really died of was not the idea – it’s to get the nonexistent ‘Covid-19’ on as many death certificates as possible to increase the perception of a deadly ‘pandemic. Scotland is a lovely place, but its control networks are literally satanic. Northern Ireland’s Public Health Agency mirrors Scotland and other countries by defining a ‘Covid-19’ death as ‘individuals who have died within 28 days of first positive result, whether or not COVID-19 was the cause of death.’ England’s NHS Office of National Statistics (ONS) tweaked the death figure deception even more by changing the way they counted the numbers. Before the ‘Covid-19’ fraud they had counted deaths each week by the number of death certificates. Now they would include ‘provisional’ death figures from the fake ‘virus’ before a death certificate had been registered and this would be ‘included in the dataset in subsequent weeks’. This means a death could be counted ‘provisionally’ one week and ‘officially’ the next leading to the same death being counted twice. The ONS also announced the inclusion of ‘Covid-19’ deaths in the community ‘to include those not even tested for the virus [irrelevant as that would be] and those suspected to have Covid-19’ or that presumed to be a ‘contributory factor’.

‘It’s Covid, stupid – always Covid’

The fixing of the case and death figures, which were compiled for the media worldwide by the Cult-owned, Gates-controlled, Johns Hopkins University operation in America (more later), was happening in virtually every country using the same top-down technique of ordering ‘Covid-19’ to be designated the cause of death almost no matter. The Cult-owned US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) – really an agency of the Gates-controlled World Health Organisation and Big Pharma – issued ‘guidance’ to doctors and medical staff telling them to list ‘Covid-19’ as a cause of death regardless of any

confirmation. No – not even the fake test. If ‘Covid-19’ was ‘assumed to have caused or contributed to death’ it could be listed as the primary cause. The authorities further underpinned this manipulation with the payments policy to hospitals (with some going to doctors) through the US Medicare system. This was exposed by Dr Scott Jensen, a Minnesota state senator, in an interview with Fox News. He said that if a hospital diagnosed someone with ‘simple non-Covid pneumonia’ they would be paid \$4,600 by the Medicare system. If they diagnosed the patient with ‘Covid-19’ pneumonia they would be paid \$13,000 and if they put the ‘Covid-19’ diagnosed patient on a ventilator the payment leaped to \$39,000. Could the game be any more obvious? Hospitals which in many cases were headed for bankruptcy due to a lack of patients were able to make big money (or stay in business) through Medicare payments by diagnosing patients with ‘Covid-19’ with no symptoms (ka-ching) and moving them out for the next one to come in or putting them briefly on a ventilator they did not need (even bigger ka-ching). They even changed their procedures to skip ahead directly to a ventilator without the usual intermediary steps, including a venturi mask, non-re-breather mask, and positive airway pressure machines. All they need to do is diagnose the non-existent ‘Covid-19’ to fit the Cult agenda and the tills are ringing. People should get the idea out of their mind that all medical staff are angels of mercy. Some absolutely are, but they also include liars, deceivers and psychopaths, too, and anyone who takes advantage of this clearly targeted diagnosis payment system by putting people on ventilators for no medical reason is a psychopath. Illinois Public Health Director Dr Ngozi Ezike was open about the way ‘Covid-19’ death figures were being compiled. She told a news conference while her superiors clenched their teeth:

If you were in a hospice and given a few weeks to live and you were then found to have Covid that would be counted as a Covid death. [There might be] a clear alternate cause, but it is still listed as a Covid death. So everyone listed as a Covid death doesn’t mean that was the cause of the death, but that they had Covid at the time of death.

Or, rather, had tested positive in a test not testing for ‘Covid-19’. UK chief scientific advisor Patrick Vallance bizarrely said the same as Ezike – *Covid on the death certificate doesn’t mean Covid was the cause of death*. The apparent death rate from ‘Covid-19’ can be seen in an entirely new light from this perspective of its mass diagnosis for those dying from other conditions. The centre of the Italian ‘epidemic’ in the Lombardy region is globally notorious, like Wuhan, for its filthy toxic air that produces widespread lung disease especially in old people who have been breathing in that crap all their lives. This presented phenomenal potential to re-designate people dying of pneumonia and other respiratory problems as dying of ‘Covid-19’ when they were not. To highlight the extreme nature of Lombardy mortality – 99,542 people died from all causes in Lombardy in 2018 while Lazio, the second region in terms of death-rates, had a figure of 57,289. Italian authorities revealed that 99 percent of those who have ‘died from Covid-19’ in Italy have had one, two, three or more ‘other morbidities’ or illnesses and health problems that could have ended their life. Are we getting it yet? Seventy percent were men and less than one percent of those said to have ‘died from Covid-19’ had no known other life-threatening conditions. The Italian National Health Institute revealed that the average age of the positively-‘Covid’-tested deceased in Italy is about 81. Ten percent of the deceased are over 90 with 90 percent over 70 and 80 percent had two or more chronic diseases. Half had three or more. These included cardiovascular problems, diabetes, respiratory problems and cancer. Re-designate these people as ‘death by Covid-19’ and you instantly have your ‘devastating health crisis’ in Italy which locked down the country and was used to terrify the rest of the West that this could be coming their way. A list of doctors who ‘died from Covid-19’ were published in Italy who turned out to be of the advanced age when you would expect people to die – most retired – and with no evidence that the cause of death was the dreaded ‘virus’. Once the ‘Italian disaster’ propaganda had been sold by the worldwide Cult-owned media we had Professor Walter Ricciardi, scientific advisor to the Italian minister of health, saying the country’s apparent ‘Covid’ death rates were due to Italy

having the second oldest population in the world and ... *the manner in which hospitals record deaths:*

The way in which we code deaths in our country is very generous in the sense that all the people who die in hospitals with the coronavirus are deemed to be dying of the coronavirus. On re-evaluation by the National Institute of Health, only 12 per cent of death certificates have shown a direct causality from coronavirus, while 88 per cent of patients who have died have at least one pre-morbidity – many had two or three.

That's how it's been done and even the twelve percent is not true when you can't die of a 'Covid-19' that doesn't exist or be diagnosed with a 'virus' you can't even test for. Two-thirds of alleged 'Covid-19' fatalities in New York have been over 70; more than 95 percent were over 50; and some 90 percent of all fatal cases had another underlying illness making the diagnosis switch so easy. Scott Atlas, former chief of neuroradiology at Stanford University, said that more than 99 percent of those who have died in New York had an underlying condition and the rate of death for all people aged between 18 and 45 was 0.01 percent. Think about it. The reason children and younger people below old age have not been dying from the fake 'virus' is because they are infinitely more likely not to have 'other morbidities' that can be blamed on 'Covid-19'. The same deceit is being perpetrated in other countries under the overall control of the Cult. The President of Germany's Robert Koch Institute said that Germany counts any deceased person who is infected with coronavirus as a Covid-19 death, whether or not it actually caused the death. German virologist Dr Hendrik Streeck said: 'In Heinsberg, for example, a 78-year-old man with previous illnesses died of heart failure, and that was without SARS-2 lung involvement. Since he was infected, he naturally appears in the Covid-19 statistics.'

Doctors and experts speak out

Stories from doctors, medical staff and families began to emerge and grow telling how patients and loved ones who died of cancer, heart disease and other fatalities were designated 'Covid-19' on the death certificate. This diagnosis fraud came by order of the authorities – Cult agents within the authorities – who demanded that every patient no matter what their ailment must be fake-tested for 'Covid-19' and if they are positive for the widespread genetic material they should have 'Covid-19' on their death certificate to bloat the figures. Hospital staff from many locations confirmed to us over weeks at Davidicke.com that this was happening worldwide. Eddie Large, a one-time famous comedian in Britain, went into hospital with heart failure amid longstanding heart problems, tested 'positive' for 'Covid-19' (the genetic material) and that was designated his cause of death. In fact, the media's wording in reports of Eddie's demise was repeated over and over to such an extent that it would not have been coincidental. They don't say this or that person died *from* 'Covid-19', but that they died *after testing positive* for 'Covid-19'. The two statements are clearly not the same and similar wording spewed from the mouths of officialdom. However, once that death has been added to the Covid-19 hoaxed figures they are morphed into *this number of people have died* from 'Covid-19' courtesy of the Johns Hopkins and other official compilations. Most doctors and medical staff have outrageously stayed silent about the deceit, but others have had a commitment to truth and their patients' welfare and called out the conspiracy to defraud the entire human race. Their numbers have grown the longer the lockdowns and their horrific effects continued.

Dr Annie Bukacek, a board certified internal medicine physician in Kalispell, Montana, and council member and a fellow of the American College of Physicians Montana chapter, was one who exposed the magic trick. She said she questioned the official story immediately after seeing previous 'we're all going to die' hypes over H1N1, Ebola, Zika, SARS and MERS come to nothing except for new vaccines tested on innocent children in Africa or the Caribbean – a speciality of Bill Gates programmes. He's a lovely man. Bukacek described how the 'Covid-19' figures were being inflated by death certificate manipulation and how other patients were suffering and dying from being denied treatment, operations and consultations

by a system only interested in 'Covid-19'. Dr Scott Jensen, who exposed the Medicare incentives to diagnose for 'Covid-19', said in a TV interview that he had received a seven-page document by email from the US Department of Health 'coaching' him on how to fill out death certificates which had never happened before. He said the document told him that he didn't need to have a laboratory test for 'Covid-19' to put that on the death certificate. Jensen was shocked because death certificates are supposed to deal in facts. Another doctor had his video deleted by YouTube for exposing the death figures manipulation and how numbers for other causes of death were going down in line with the Covid-19 numbers going up through redesignation. Dr Rashid Buttar, an American osteopathic physician from Charlotte, North Carolina, furiously railed against the manipulation and the doctors and medical staff staying quiet about what they knew was happening. He confirmed the death certificate charade and said that even death certificates previously written were being changed to include 'Covid-19'.

Two California doctors, Dan Erickson and Artin Massihi, at Accelerated Urgent Care in Bakersfield, held a news conference in late April calling for their county to 'reopen'. They explained what was really happening behind the hysterical headlines. Intensive care units in California were 'empty, essentially', with hospitals shutting floors, not treating patients and laying off doctors. The California health system was working at minimum capacity 'getting rid of doctors because we just don't have the volume'. They said that people with conditions such as heart disease and cancer were not coming to hospital out of fear of 'Covid-19'. Everything they had ever learned about quarantine involved quarantining the *sick*. They had never seen before the quarantine of the healthy 'where you take people without disease and without symptoms and lock them in their home'. Projection models of millions of deaths had been 'woefully inaccurate', they said. Dr Erickson detailed figures to show that Californians have a 0.03 chance of dying from 'Covid' based on the number of people who have tested positive. But hold on. They are (a) testing positive for a widespread genetic material and not 'Covid-19', and (b) alleged deaths have been re-diagnosis of other conditions with similar symptoms (or none) to the 'virus'. Erickson said the figures revealed there was a 0.1 percent chance of dying from 'Covid' in the *state*, not just the city, of New York, and a 0.05 percent chance in Spain, a centre of 'Covid-19' hysteria at one stage. 'Covid' [even if you believe the lies] was less dangerous than the flu. There was no justification for the lockdowns and economic devastation, the doctors said. Their figures were supported by a Stanford University study that put the fatality rate at between 0.1 to 0.2 percent. Take away the diagnosis deception from those figures and you are left with zero. Death estimates of the Cult-owned, Gates-run, World Health Organization were 20 to 30 times higher than the Stanford numbers simply to secure widespread lockdowns. Everyone involved must go to jail for crimes against humanity. Dr Erickson also pointed to a list of consequences of the lockdowns in increased child abuse, partner abuse, alcoholism, depression, suicide and other impacts they were seeing every day. Erickson described how immune systems become weaker and weaker the more people are locked away in homes amid hygiene obsession in which immune responses are not being developed by coming into contact with agents they need to experience to build defences and immunity. 'The immune system needs this interaction ... sheltering in place reduces your immune system and when you come out what do you think is going to happen? Disease is going to spike.' He said that when disease spiked in this way the hospitals were not going to cope with laid off doctors and nurses. Erickson then turned to the pressure being applied to doctors to put 'Covid-19' on the death certificate. 'Why are we being pressured to add Covid? To increase the numbers and make it look worse than it is? I think so.' He said he was hearing this from physicians everywhere. The doctors' video passed five million views in days, but never appeared on YouTube trending lists and then was deleted for 'violating YouTube's terms of service'. What a disgusting and fascistic organisation Google-owned YouTube has proved itself time after time to be and it comes from the top – Susan Wojcicki and those who own her. Wojcicki is clearly a Cult asset like Gates, Brin, Page, Zuckerberg and the rest of them and they must all now face the consequences in ongoing public exposure of their anti-freedom, indeed anti-human, agenda at every opportunity. How more blatant and low can you get than to delete doctors who

are questioning medical policy on the basis of personal experience just to serve the interests of a global Cult with an horrific genocidal plan for humanity? Well, Wojcicki?

A hospital respiratory operative took to the Internet to expose the lies. He said there was no ventilator shortage as the hysteria-hype claimed and they were running fewer ventilators than they normally would. Any patient that came to his hospital with a respiratory problem was labelled 'Covid-19' and he said it didn't matter if they were suffering from late stage lung cancer, heart disease or anything else. 'You come in with breathing problems and you are labelled a Covid patient' ... 'then they would die of Covid and not stage four lung cancer.' He said they had only one person qualified to administer the test and so most patients 'under investigation for Covid' were never tested (which would have been irrelevant anyway). '... Every patient [who] is under Covid investigation and dies ... [becomes] a Covid death and they are showing the numbers like a football game to scare you.' He said the public was being shown bodies loaded on to a tractor trailer simply to scare people and he had never in his entire career seen bodies loaded on anything like that. He said 'it just doesn't happen' and he wondered if they were even bodies – 'all of this stuff is fake'. Behind him in the video made in his hospital were machines that helped patients breathe with a mask rather than putting them on a full-blown ventilator. He said that since the 'Covid-19' scare began they had been banned from using those machines and people had to be allowed to 'crash' and go straight to a ventilator. 'That is not the traditional way we use to treat a patient – everything that we would traditionally do we are not allowed to do.'

New York intensive care doctor Cameron Kyle-Sidell said in his own video that people were being put on ventilators when their lungs were not strong enough and they were dying. Another whistleblower video communicating the experience of a New York intensive care nurse said the same. 'People are being murdered and no-one cares' was one line from the video and with no family allowed at the hospitals the patients were at the mercy of staff and left to rot. A second New York nurse took to the Internet in tears to describe exactly the same situation: 'I am literally coming here every day and watching them kill them.' She listed a catalogue of examples of how patients were either just allowed to die or directly killed by the wrong treatment or no treatment through 'gross negligence and medical mismanagement ... nobody has listened to anyone's lungs the whole time I've been here.' 'Covid-19' obviously went on the death certificate. She said she tried talking to management and nursing administration, but they didn't want to know and moved her away from patients and departments that she was complaining about. It's murder, no other word for it, to kill people knowing you are killing them, but good for the 'Covid-19' figures. The nurse said: 'It's like going to the fucking Twilight Zone – everyone here is okay with this.' She rightly asked: 'Am I the only one who is not a sociopath?' The respiratory medic confirmed that they were 'not testing for a virus' – 'there's not one test that tests for a virus'. They were testing for a genetic 'RNA sequence' and anyone with even microscopic content from that sequence would test positive when it could come from lung cancer and many other things. 'If this is as infectious as they are telling us ... everybody would be dying and that's not what we're seeing – this is unbelievable, every bit of this has been created.' He said they were not seeing lots of health workers getting sick even though they were in close contact with people who had tested positive. He was not convinced there even was a virus and 'I've been doing this a long time'. Doctors were believing the lies as much as the public, but doctors were not looking at the real information. 'They're told something and ... they got lives, they got jobs ... they're not going to look up what this test is and why they weren't getting the infection rates – they just look up the things they're told to look up like anyone else.' He then said something centrally relevant to what has happened:

For the Trump supporters out there I want to ask you something. Think about this for a minute. We're doing the same thing they're doing in France ... Italy ... the UK. So does that mean Trump's in charge of this whole thing because I really don't think he is. I think he's being told to do what he's doing ... this is Deep State, Illuminati stuff ... they are shutting the world down.

Exactly. This video by someone specialising in respiratory care and revealing how his direct experience in a hospital was at odds with the official narrative and so was deleted a number of times by YouTube for breaching their 'community guidelines'. What more can be said about this Cult censorship operation fronted by Susan Wojcicki? Her contempt for freedom and the most basic human rights is unimaginable. John Lee, a recently retired professor of pathology and a former consultant pathologist with the UK National Health Service (NHS), highlighted in an article for *The Spectator* exactly the point I have made about the careful wording of media and medical reports. They were saying that people had died 'after testing positive for coronavirus' and not that they had died *from* coronavirus:

Many UK health spokespersons have been careful to repeatedly say that the numbers quoted in the UK indicate death **with the virus**, not death **due to the virus** – this matters [My emphasis]. When giving evidence in parliament a few days ago, Prof. Neil Ferguson of Imperial College London said that he now expects fewer than 20,000 Covid-19 deaths in the UK but, importantly, two-thirds of these people would have died anyway. In other words, he suggests that the crude figure for 'Covid deaths' is three times higher than the number who have actually been killed by Covid-19. (Even the two-thirds figure is an estimate – it would not surprise me if the real proportion is higher.) ...

... Unfortunately nuance tends to be lost in the numbers quoted from the database being used to track Covid-19: the Johns Hopkins Coronavirus Resource Center. It has compiled a huge database, with Covid-19 data from all over the world, updated daily – and its figures are used, world over, to track the virus. This data is not standardised and so probably not comparable, yet this important caveat is seldom expressed by the (many) graphs we see. It risks exaggerating the quality of data that we have.

Yes – on purpose. Professor Lee added that 'Covid19' was not a disease with unique or rare symptoms and the range of severity matched dozens of extremely common respiratory infections. He said that you cannot diagnose 'fever' and 'cough' and then diagnose 'probable Covid-19' with the slightest chance of accuracy. As the Off-guardian.org website said:

Italy, Germany, the United States, Northern Ireland and England. That's five different governments, across four countries, all essentially saying it's OK to just assume a patient died of Covid19, and then add that to the official statistics. Is that really responsible practice during a potential pandemic? Are any other countries doing the same? To what extent can we trust any official death statistics at all, at this point?

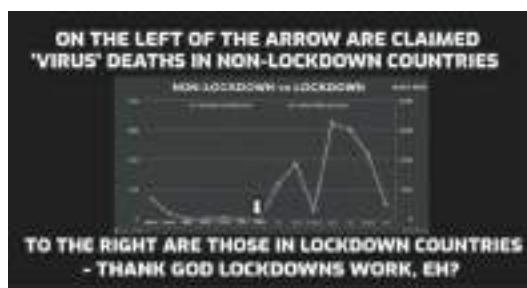


Figure 383: A graph from April 6th, 2020, which showed that lockdown was not the only possible response. Cases counted from a test not testing for 'Covid-19' and deaths monumentally manipulated by fixing death certificates was the real decider of how many were claimed to be 'infected' or 'killed' according to the official figures – not lockdown or otherwise.

Try zero. Off-guardian, which has done great work exposing the figures, highlighted another outrageous manipulation in which the UK government's 'daily death toll' numbers were not from a single day at all. The 'daily' figures include alleged deaths from other days going back six weeks or more. The website gave the example of April 10th which was described as the UK's 'deadliest Covid19 day'. Media headlines included: 'UK death toll jumps 980 in 24 hours in biggest rise yet'; 'Britain records Europe's highest single-day death toll: Number of victims jumps by 980'; and '980 tops Spain and Italy's highest daily

number of deaths'. In fact, the deaths attributed (wrongly) to Covid-19 on that single day were 117 for England and another 90 for other UK countries bringing the total to 204 and *not* 980. Off-guardian reported that the other 776 people included in the report had died 'at seemingly random points *between March 5th and April 8th*'. The website said the same was true with all 'daily' death figures. It is also clear that the numbers have been boosted by yet another ruse – counting the same deaths more than once. The mass of the media never acknowledged these facts and instead daily fuelled the hysteria that led people to support the lockdowns through false perceptions of what was really happening. The media claimed on March 24th that an 18-year-old in Coventry, England, was the youngest person to die from the 'virus' and continued to say so even after the hospital said this was not true. The youngster had died from a 'significant' health problem not connected to 'Covid-19'. It didn't matter – don't let the facts spoil a good hoax. Other young people said to have died from the 'virus' turned out to have died from other causes. The death and case figures have been a complete stitch-up and you only fix the figures to deceive. When Neil Ferguson's ridiculous 'computer model' figures turned out to be fantastic overestimates he and the authorities claimed that this was because of the lockdowns and house arrest that the fantastic figures 'justified'. It was the very scenario that had been predicted they would go for by the US medical scientist I quoted earlier. Data as of April 6th in [Figure 383](#) showed the China lockdown blueprint was not as black and white as claimed and with cases and death figures dependent on a fake test and fake cause of death what difference would lockdown or no-lockdown have made to numbers anyway?

Killing old people

The death figures from all causes in Britain and Europe remained about the same as the previous year for many weeks of the alleged global 'crisis' and as more people were recorded to have died from 'Covid-19' so miraculously death from other causes went down. There was always coming a time, however, when death figures would increase in 2020 because of all those who were sure to die from the consequences of lockdowns and cancellation of operations and consultations for almost all other illnesses and conditions. People were sitting at home in pain and in need of urgent diagnosis and treatment for a range of life-threatening problems, but they could not get to see a doctor while being discouraged to go to hospital accident and emergency because they were 'war-zones' over 'Covid-19'. The truth was that the hospitals that could have treated them were near empty with hundreds of beds at major ones not being used and operating theatres like the Mary Celeste. The biggest victims of this psychopathic policy – as the Cult intended – were old people. The lockdowns to a large extent were justified by 'protecting old people and the vulnerable' and to 'protect the hospitals from being overrun' (see empty). Yet at the same time old people were being systematically killed in line with the Cult agenda I outlined earlier and in the words of one nursing home nurse they were being 'murdered' through denial of treatment. Almost every one of them that died because of this would have had 'Covid-19' on the death certificate. Old people were told to stay at home and have essential supplies delivered which would have led to a range of other potentially fatal conditions and the Cult knew that. How many were literally left alone with their partners already diseased and families living far away? The overwhelming majority of those said to have died from 'Covid-19' were old people merely because they are most likely to be ill and so most available to redesignate 'Covid-19' instead of what they really died from. One UK nursing home nurse who contacted [Davidicke.com](#) said:

I'm seeing first-hand now what's going on at the nursing homes including mine. It's murder, mate. I am not saying it lightly. I'm willing once this is done to go on record with the bastards. If there is any information I can give you I will help.

Well, I've seen first-hand now the community matrons and doctors following orders basically just denying treatments to residents on the account they have Covid. No test, no nothing. Doctors are now not coming into my home to examine anyone. I've had absolute murder with people begging to be placed on

antibiotics.

In a few weeks you gonna see fucking dead old people all over the place. I'm done me, mate, to be honest, once this is over. This is not what I became a nurse for.

The media would naturally spin this phenomenon another way. Alex Thomson, 'Chief Correspondent' at Britain's Channel 4 News, posted an article headed: 'Coronavirus causing "devastation" in care homes as pressure grows to release full death numbers.' He said that 'one in five of all deaths in England and Wales in the week ending April 3rd are linked to coronavirus – with the overall death rate pushed to a record high'. Why do you think that is you excuse for a 'journalist'? Old people were being designated positive for 'Covid-19' and when they died of other causes, not least from the effect of the lockdowns and denial of treatments, they were added to the death figures for 'Covid-19'. Any idiot with an hour's research could have worked out what was really happening, but not, it seems, Thomson and his fellow mainstream media. The problem was made worse by UK government-directed NHS hospitals 'clearing out' patients to free up 15,000 beds in a week with many moved to a 'suitable rehabilitation bed or care home'. The Gates-owned World Health Organization stated in late-April, 2020, that half the 'coronavirus-related deaths' in Europe could be in long-term care homes. It might have added: 'So the plan is working.' Shortly after the WHO statement HC One, the UK's biggest care home provider, was reporting a rise in deaths among old people at its centres that have nothing to do with coronavirus as hospitals failed to take in residents as patients. Israeli doctor Gai Peleg working in Parma, Italy, said that from what he saw and heard the instructions were not to offer access to respirator machines for patients over 60 in a who-lives-and-dies-decision. This became another common theme. These were the same old people that were being used as an excuse to lockdown the world to 'protect them'.

They want rid of old people so the young, programmed through the new and extreme 'education' system all their lives, will be left at the perceptual mercy of the Cult. One legacy will be some young people turning on the old as the ones to blame for the economic disaster triggered by the reaction to the 'crisis'. 'This would not have happened if we didn't have to protect old people – you know the ones responsible for climate change and Brexit.' Some schoolchildren and others dubbed the virus the 'boomer remover' referring to the 'baby boomer' generation born approximately between 1946 and 1964 which includes me. Don't worry, though, I have somehow fought off the impulse to be offended. How ironic that the baby boomers were the 'flower power', 'counter-culture', 'anti-establishment' generation now perceived by many young people as the old and 'past-it' Earth-destroying establishment that must be usurped. Messages by some medical staff and emails from loved ones to Davidicke.com revealed a widespread theme along with social media posts of old people being pressured to sign do not resuscitate (DNR) agreements so they could be allowed to die (and 'Covid-19' falsely put on the death certificate). The daughter of an 83-year-old mother said she could 'categorically confirm that DNR notices are being placed on elderly patients, including those who are healthy and for whom there is no existing health condition to justify it'. She said this was happening to everyone including people with no 'virus' or underlying health conditions that threatened their life: 'This is being done on age alone.' She described how a ward consultant tried to coerce her mother into signing a DNR form when she was only in hospital for an *orthopaedic* problem:

A few days later, earlier this week, the ward matron told her that she had not been singled out, and that everybody was being treated in the same way – all the elderly patients were being required to sign these forms. And that it is a 'rule', something that has come down from on high, that has to be done, and has to cover all the older patients, 'because the government says so'.

The elderly were ordered to 'self-isolate' – cut themselves off from society – for months for their own protection by a global state in all its expressions that clearly doesn't give a *shit* about them and wants

them dead. These are the same authorities that ensure that great swathes of the elderly live out their lives in poverty choosing between warmth and food as they exist on a pathetic, derisory state pension (where there is one) after paying taxes all their long years. The effect of this is to devastate their immune systems through lack of nutrients they cannot afford (or mainstream information that they need them) while consuming the cheapest, toxin-ridden excuse for ‘food’ together with toxic water and other drinks, breathing toxic air and living in a toxic irradiated atmosphere. All of these things, together with immune system-demolishing vaccines and a deluge of immune system-weakening sugar, have been allowed or instigated by the very authorities that tell us how much they care about our health and survival when a disease strikes. The starting point to see through the ‘state cares’ illusion is to realise that they don’t give a damn about you. From this all other understanding will come. With the most head-shaking predictability the UK Department of Health began adding deaths in care homes to the ‘Covid-19’ fatality figures by fraudulently designating cause of death from a long list of other conditions as ‘Covid-19’. Fascism is nothing if not predictable.

Intelligent doctors and specialists agree: You've been had people

A stream of medical professionals ignored by the mainstream media spoke out through alternative sources about the blatant manipulation they could see of the figures for cases and deaths and the claim that ‘Covid-19’ was some kind of new and deadly virus. Professor Dr Sucharit Bhakdi, a highly-acclaimed infectious medicine specialist in Germany, said of virus lockdowns: ‘They are grotesque, absurd and very dangerous … All these measures are leading to self-destruction and collective suicide because of nothing but a spook.’ The theme that ‘Covid-19’ was indeed a ‘spook’ was common outside the mainstream media. Doctors and specialists said there was not a medical crisis, but a political one and this included doctors in Italy as you can see in the German journalist’s video that I mentioned earlier. One Italian doctor said: ‘No one in Italy died of corona – it’s an ugly influenza.’ German doctor Wolfgang Wodarg said that without the new ‘test’ no one would notice anything different. ‘If you change the definition of pandemic you can create it’, he said, ‘If you talk about a virus spreading around the world you have a permanent pandemic.’ Dr Claus Kohnlein, another German physician, agreed. He said that without the new test there would be no ‘pandemic’: ‘I don’t believe it’s a new virus. It’s just a new test.’ Hamburg doctor Marc Fiddike said you can turn any pneumonia into a corona case and ‘you could turn a man falling down the stairs into a virus victim’. Confirming the view of other doctors he said: ‘It’s a kind of magic.’ He made the same point as the American scientist I quoted in that just because someone is sick and tests for coronavirus [there are many in that ‘family’ of viruses] doesn’t mean the virus is responsible for their sickness. John Ioannidis, a Professor of Medicine, Health Research and Policy and Biomedical Data Science, at Stanford University School of Medicine, described the coronavirus scare as possibly ‘a one-in-a century evidence fiasco’ in response to the insane claim that the ‘virus’ was a once in a century pandemic. He said the data was not there to support the numbers of deaths and cases that were being circulated. Dr Yoram Lass, an Israeli physician and former member of the Knesset for the Israel Labor Party, pointed out that according to World Health Organization figures between 250,000 and 500,000 people died every year worldwide from seasonal flu, but this didn’t cause a meltdown of the global economy due to government reaction: ‘It is absolutely insane to have this Biblical crisis.’ He said this was the first ‘Zuckerberg epidemic’ in which social media could transmit fear all over the world at the same time.

Jaroslav Belsky, an Austrian doctor and dentist who studied for two years in a molecular biology laboratory, said that between 1,600 and 2,000 people died every day in Italy before the corona scare and this could rise to 3,000 in autumn and spring. The authorities had simply used a ‘technical trick’ to blame corona ‘in order to close the economy and ban people from moving’. He also pointed to the fact that 99 percent of people said to have ‘died from coronavirus’ in Italy had other health problems with half the fatalities having three or four. What’s more it was well known that at the end of their lives in hospital

people did tend to die of an infection. Belsky said the real cause was never investigated when in fact people with influenza would test for all kinds of virus, even bacteria. ‘Only after discovering the viral load can I assume that is what sickened them.’ This is not being done with the ‘Covid-19’ hysteria – the ‘test’ doesn’t measure viral load – and so the data does not exist to justify extreme government action. ‘If you demand the data you are stamped a conspiracist,’ Belsky said. He also pointed out that staging fake epidemics was not new with avian or ‘bird’ flu projected to cost 30,000 lives per year and ending up being officially responsible for very few. He said he had heard from Italy that they were ‘testing dead people and even cancer and accident victims’. Belsky described how friends in the medical profession had sent him pictures of normal conditions in their critical care units. He also made an important point about why Germany’s death-rate ratio was so small compared with Italy. Belsky said this was because the Italian testing company was only focusing on seriously ill people while in Germany tests were done even on people with a minor cold. ‘It’s playing with numbers and emotions.’ You see how easy it is to manipulate perception by manipulating figures. Doctors and specialists also pointed out the effect of fear in making people ill in a world in terror about ‘the virus’. How many developed psychosomatic ‘symptoms’ as the ‘virus’ symptoms were pounded out in all directions by the Cult-owned media? Belsky put the hysteria into perspective when he said ‘there are up to 20,000 deaths in Germany from hospital bugs every year – even more in Italy’. None of these doctors and scientists appeared in the mainstream media which instead gave all the air-time to establishment mouthpieces like Neil deGrasse Tyson in the United States who told the ‘satirical’ (mainstream establishment) TV host Stephen Colbert: ‘I think we’re in the middle of a massive experiment worldwide – the experiment is: Will people listen to scientists?’ Not if you’re one of them, mate.

Systematically weakening natural defence

Dr Shiva Ayyadurai, an Indian-born American scientist and biological engineer at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT), spoke out against the coronavirus narrative and what he called the ‘overreaction’. There was an ‘overreaction’? Oh, just a little bit. Ayyadurai’s main thrust was right on the button. Cause of death is not ‘from a virus’ but dismantled immune systems. Anyone with an immune system in some kind of order had only ‘very mild flu-like symptoms’ or even none at all. The alleged symptoms of ‘Covid-19’ (with a long list of potential causes) are manifestations in part of the immune system at work. Fever is the immune system using heat to kill a predator while coughing up mucus is the immune system ejecting toxins the body needs to get rid of. Vomiting in other circumstances is also the immune system removing threats to health before serious damage can be done. Medical website webmd.com said: ‘... higher body temperatures make it harder for bacteria and viruses to thrive in the body.’ Many symptoms which Big Pharma medicine ‘treats’ are the immune system doing its job and to suppress those actions is to potentially do great damage to health. The key to who dies from what is the state of the immune system and those with the weakest are older people and those with other medical conditions already putting pressure on immune system resources. This doesn’t have to be the case if immune systems are supported in their nutrient needs with vitamins like A, D3 and C. Some New York and other hospitals eventually began to treat ‘virus’ patients with ‘massive doses’ of vitamin C while at the same time social media platforms like Facebook and their system-serving ‘fact-checkers’ were dubbing posts about the benefits of vitamin C as ‘fake news’ and ‘false information’. Dr Ayyadurai also recommended such key vitamins to enhance immune response. Where have you seen the Mainstream Everything talk about boosting the immune system? Why would Big Pharma and the Cult want strong immune systems when the agenda of both demands sick and weak people? Dismantling immune systems is necessary to keep Big Pharma’s mega-profits rolling for a start with strong immune systems meaning less illness. Dr Ayyadurai pointed out that we have fantastic numbers of ‘viruses’ in our bodies and we are not even aware of them because the immune system keeps them in check. ‘Viruses don’t kill or harm us’, he said. If viruses did kill us then we would all clearly be long dead. He said the danger is more the

immune system response to threats. Different levels of the immune system kicked in to play different roles when a threat is identified and in the overwhelming number of cases any danger was quickly snuffed out. The problem comes when the immediate immune reaction is too weak to deal with the threat and in effect the system panics and unleashes what is called a 'cytokine storm'. Cytokines are defined as 'a small protein released by cells that has a specific effect on the interactions between cells, on communications between cells or on the behavior of cells ... [They] trigger inflammation and respond to infections'. This response is the key. If other levels of a weakened immune system don't deal with a threat it unleashes in its desperation a 'storm' of cytokines which can be symbolised as a crazed person firing a machine gun in all directions. You can symbolise this as an intruder breaking into a house and the homeowner struggling to resist and throw them out. In the panic to survive the homeowner grabs a gun and instead of just firing at the intruder he also turns the gun on himself. The cytokine storm attacks its own body, often fatally. [Sciencedaily.com](https://www.sciencedaily.com) puts it this way:

A cytokine storm is an overproduction of immune cells and their activating compounds (cytokines), which, in a flu infection, is often associated with a surge of activated immune cells into the lungs. The resulting lung inflammation and fluid build-up can lead to respiratory distress and can be contaminated by a secondary bacterial pneumonia – often enhancing the mortality in patients.

Death by 'respiratory distress' is a cytokine storm immune response that attacks the lungs and can open the way to pneumonia. If your immune system is properly operational this does not happen. Why isn't the Mainstream Everything telling you this? For the same reason that Ayyadurai called for the arrest of three-quarters of the academics in the United States 'who are pilfering money from our tax-dollars ... by doing bogus research and research based on political leanings'.

What about 5G?

It never ceases to amaze me that billions of people believe that even though we now live in a technologically-generated electromagnetic 'soup' or sea, which is 200 million times the radio frequency energy naturally produced by the Earth, that somehow this will not have any, let alone profound, effects on human beings, animals, insects and the rest of the natural world. I find that to be a form of insanity and certainly a most extreme example of denial. There is an obvious relevance of some kind between current events and the roll-out in 2019 and 2020 of 5G around the world because this was made clear by the actions of Cult Internet platforms and government agencies in banning mention and debate about that connection. I have already pointed out that the common theme between the systematic deletion by Cult-owned Silicon Valley of my London Real interview and one a few days later between Dr Andrew Kaufman and my son, Jaymie, was questioning the existence of 'Covid-19' and not 5G which the Kaufman interview did not mention. However, there is clearly a connection of some kind confirmed by the extremes of enforced censorship. The UK government Office of Communications, or Ofcom, is the 'regulator' (censor) of the broadcast media and threatened any broadcaster with severe sanctions if they even engaged in discussion about a link between 5G and the 'virus'. Ofcom is so obsessed with 5G censorship that a small community radio station was threatened by the broadcasting Stasi for having a single person on a single programme discussing a connection between 5G and 'Covid-19'. Ofcom was created by war criminal Tony Blair so you can appreciate how bad it must be. Somehow these ridiculous people manage to equate 'false health advice' with 'baseless conspiracy theories that the pandemic is linked to the rollout of 5G phone networks'. The all-knowing system-worshipping Ofcom knew they were baseless because they were 'not aware of any reputable scientific evidence to corroborate such a contentious claim which runs contrary to all official advice, both in the UK and internationally, about coronavirus' (in other words the 5G claim was at odds with official propaganda). Ofcom's censors and designated media protectors of the Cult narrative said they were 'actively monitoring television and radio stations that might be broadcasting potentially harmful views about the causes and origins of Covid-19'

that have the potential to undermine people's trust in the advice of mainstream sources of information during the crisis' – (which have the potential to demolish the official Cult narrative). This is exactly what you would expect to hear in a fascist/communist dictatorship.

For the record and reference the chief executive of Ofcom in this period of fascistic censorship has been Melanie Dawes, a career government bureaucrat formerly with the Ministry of Housing, Communities and Local Government, the Treasury, HM Revenue and Customs, and the Cabinet Office. The establishment runs through her bloodstream. Ofcom is chaired by Terence Burns, a British economist, who was former Chief Economic Advisor and Permanent Secretary to the UK Treasury and now a senior advisor to the bank Santander UK. These are the people overseeing the censorship of the British media and blocking any discussion of a connection between 'Covid-19' and 5G while the UK Health Secretary Matt Hancock, a clueless but willing prisoner of his civil servants and advisors, called for social media to ban '5G virus conspiracy theories'. The man is so bewildered and self-deceiving that he will say he believes in 'democracy and freedom'. YouTube, Vimeo and Facebook all deleted the video interview that I did with Brian Rose at London Real in which I mentioned the possible involvement of 5G. I did not say that it caused the 'virus' only that 5G had major negative effects on human health and psychology which had to be taken in account and that 5G can generate the symptoms that are being called 'Covid-19'. Ofcom, is major promotor and facilitator of the 5G roll-out and 'regulates' the UK telecommunications industry (do what you like). This is a shocking conflict of interest when the promoter and facilitator of 5G and the censor of debate over 5G are the *same people*. They were of course on my case immediately with the pathetic mainstream media cheering in support. So there *is* a connection to 5G as confirmed by the vehement censorship of even discussion by Ofcom and Silicon Valley. The question is what? And is the censorship over what is happening now or what is to come? I will summarise here some of the possibilities and impacts.

Arthur Firstenberg, scientist, journalist, and author of *The Invisible Rainbow: A History of Electricity and Life*, said in 2018 before 'Covid-19' or 5G: 'Every time we have dramatically changed the properties of the Earth's magnetic field, which is called the magnetosphere, it had dramatic effects on health down here on Earth.' Firstenberg writes that every 'influenza' epidemic since electricity was introduced has coincided with a new and more powerful level of electromagnetic radiation. He says that one example was 'Spanish flu' (which started in the United States) and is said to have infected an estimated 500 million people worldwide in 1918 with tens of millions killed. Some estimates were as high as 100 million. These are officially compiled figures and so must not be taken as accurate, but it's safe to say a lot of people were affected and killed. By *what* is quite another question. I have pointed already to a mass-vaccine relationship to the outbreak. Here we have another possible electromagnetic field angle happening at the same time along with, it should also be added, the appalling living conditions in the wake of the First World War when immune systems would have been on their knees. Firstenberg explains that 'Spanish flu' began at military naval bases in America and Europe which were the first to install high-intensity radar with an initial 400 cases at the Naval Radio School of Cambridge, Massachusetts. Even though dubbed 'flu' a common symptom was nosebleeds (also reported with 5G) and a third of those who died did so through internal bleeding in the brain and lungs. These effects and others related to impaired blood coagulation were not at all symptoms of 'flu', but rather a potential effect of electromagnetic fields. Doctors were quoted as saying: 'We have yet to receive a report of a case in which the time of coagulation was not prolonged.' Remember the effect on the blood that was found in the teacher after a day in a classroom bathed in Wi-Fi. Another blatant red flag was that as radar was introduced worldwide 'Spanish' flu outbreaks followed in the same locations without contact with other sufferers at a time when there was minimal world travel compared with recent times.

Firstenberg says that by 1956/57, with the entire earth now subjected to new and powerful radar waves never before experienced, we had the outbreak of 'Asian flu' which is said to have started in East Asia and spread worldwide. Months after the first radiation-emitting satellite system became operational

'Hong Kong' flu swept across the world in 1968. Once again people were dying from internal haemorrhage. In the same way 5G began to be rolled out before the 'Covid-19' scare began and 5G has been rapidly expanded during the lockdowns in city after city and town after town in country after country. When large numbers of children and students return to school, college and university they will find that 5G has been installed while they were away – as will those visiting *hospitals*. Most businesses and employment activity was banned and yet installing 5G towers and satellites was considered 'essential work'. This has both dramatically increased the reach and impact of 5G and prevented protests that would otherwise have happened. 'Flu-like' symptoms are known to be caused by exposure to intense electrical fields (EMF) – a fact that came to light as early as 1779 – and EMF is one of the triggers for cells to release exosomes, the natural immune response dubbed 'Covid-19'. This 'new disease' is said to have begun in Wuhan, capital of Hubei province, which was China's first 5G 'smart city' with tremendous numbers of 5G antennae installed in October, 2019, and expanded with great rapidity. Vodafone Italy made Milan in the 'virus' centre of Lombardy an 'extensive 5G testbed' working with country's Ministry of Economic Development. There were also big vaccine programmes in Wuhan and Lombardy before the 'pandemic' kicked off.

Spanish biologist Bartomeu Payeras i Cifre, who has specialised in microbiology at the University of Barcelona and researched smallpox bacteria and viruses at the Hubber pharmaceutical laboratories, produced a preliminary study in April, 2020, of the connection between the main locations of 'Covid-19' and 5G activity. You can see it at Davidicke.com with the search words: 'Study Shows Direct Correlation between 5G Networks and "Coronavirus" Outbreaks'. The study did not attempt to show a cause and effect between 5G and the alleged 'Covid-19' only that the major countries and regions where the 'virus' was reported to be most prevalent corresponded with 5G locations. The conclusion was that the results 'demonstrate a clear and close relationship between the rate of coronavirus infections and 5G antenna location'. Another study focusing on American states by Dr Magda Havas, Associate Professor of Environmental and Resource Studies at Trent University in Ontario, Canada, reached similar conclusions. Border divisions in the Spanish study were said to be significant in the difference between countries with and without 5G that have a common border. The study notes the distinct case differences between the United States and Mexico and Spain and Portugal and particularly highlights the case of San Marino, the tiny republic within the land mass of Italy. San Marino became the first European country with a 5G network after being chosen as 'an outdoor laboratory used to test the performance of network equipment and applications' in the words of one media report. Is it just a fluke of chance that San Marino would become one of the top five countries in terms of population ratio for 'Covid-19' cases? The Spanish study author said that 'a failure to act in the face of the findings of this study could be considered negligent at the very least and very possibly criminal'. Given that 5G and the 'pandemic' have been orchestrated by criminals no action will surely follow.

The widespread manipulation of death figures confirm that 5G cannot be blamed for the whole 'virus' phenomenon or there would be no need to fix the numbers on such a fundamental scale; but it is connected to the story with the most profound effects still to come. 5G and less powerful electrometric fields can seriously increase the power and consequences of toxins in the body as well as profoundly undermining the *immune system* – just like vaccines. Cells poisoned by 5G and other electromagnetic fields that then release exosomes (fake 'Covid-19') must also be taken into account and the ability of 5G to generate symptoms like those blamed on 'Covid-19'. I have described in other books how electromagnetic fields can vastly increase the potency of toxins in the body to beyond what the immune system can cope with and especially when that system itself is being weakened by the same source. I said earlier that Wi-Fi and 5G networks are a delivery system for frequencies, but the nature of those frequencies can be altered. It is quite possible to zap one area with frequencies that devastate the immune system and poison cells with radiation which then excrete the exosome response that has been dubbed 'Covid-19'. One other point is that 5G causes 'accelerated degradation of genetic material' which is what the fake 'virus test'

identifies. With a satellite system in place already capable of targeting 5G at different locations it becomes possible to affect some areas more than others without even 5G antennas on the ground. 5G operates with narrow easily-targeted beams. Martin Pall, a former Professor Emeritus of Biochemistry and Basic Medical Sciences at Washington State University, described the effect of technological radiation and 5G on calcium channels in the cells known as the voltage-gated calcium channel (VGCC). These calcium channels regulate the entry into cells of calcium ions and an imbalance can affect many body systems including heart, brain and muscle contraction. Pall said that the predominant cause of death from 'Covid-19' was pneumonia which can be 'greatly exacerbated by each of those five downstream effects of VGCC activation, excessive intracellular calcium, oxidative stress ... inflammation and apoptosis [a form of cell death]'. UK microwave expert Barrie Trower says he trained at the Government's Microwave Warfare Establishment in the 1960's, worked for the Royal Navy and British Secret Service as an expert in microwave weapons, helped debrief spies trained in microwave warfare in the 1970s, and worked in the underwater bomb disposal unit which used microwaves. His degree in physics specialised in microwaves. He said before the 'pandemic':

All microwaves of all 'G's ... they all reduce immune systems of all living things except for three things. One of those is bacteria and viruses. They thrive and multiply when they are microwaved. So you have a situation ... where all living things are losing their immune systems but the bacterium and viruses are strengthening theirs, and 5G will only exacerbate the situation.

These are some of the effects of electromagnetic fields and the super-impact of 5G needs to be added to the mix of possibilities.

5G and oxygen

A crucial point is that at the 60 gigahertz frequency 5G interacts with oxygen molecules as the telecommunications industry freely admits. This where a connection is possible between 5G and a few extreme cases of lung malfunction wrongly attributed to 'Covid-19' and its relevance could become more profound ongoing. The industry is keen to transmit at 60 GHz because the way 5G interacts with oxygen allows 'very dense deployment' of the same frequency in the same very localised area without interference between users. It also allows for a beam of 5G at the 60 GHz frequency to target a small area or even an individual. Hold that thought with regard to what will follow. 5G interacts with oxygen molecules at 60 GHz in a way that prevents the body and blood absorbing oxygen in the volume that it should. This can lead to *respiratory problems, strokes, heart attacks and many other potentially fatal conditions*. Here is an explanation of the potential consequences described by those challenging 5G:

... Two atoms form the oxygen molecule and share some electrons. 60 GHz causes electrons surrounding oxygen molecules to spin, akin to how high-powered microwaves running on 2.4 impact molecules in food such as water. They're heating, in part, by impacting those molecules to rotate or oscillate with each wave. The movement energy from the rotation of these super tiny water molecules helps heat the rest of the food.

In a similar way that 2.4 causes H₂O to oscillate, 5G/60 GHz even at low power causes electrons on oxygen molecules to spin; changes to the spin frequencies on oxygen electrons impact human biology. When you breathe air into your lungs it gets oxygen into your blood, brain, tissues etc. and oxygen entering your lungs gets picked up by a very important iron containing protein called haemoglobin in your blood.

The impact of oxygen molecules spinning the electrons is that it makes the haemoglobin unable to uptake the oxygen and get it to the rest of your body. Isn't the fact that the telecom companies are admitting that 60 GHz is absorbed by oxygen just stunning information, and shouldn't the fact that 60 GHz even

fundamentally interacts with oxygen, the most abundant and arguably most important element to all of biological life, be headline news that stops everything until we deeply test the implications of that?

The potential of this for a mass human cull is obvious. American environmental science researcher, Lena Pu, has studied the effects of 5G technology since it was publicly revealed in 2016 by the Cult-controlled Federal Communications Commission (FCC) which announced its deployment for a few years later. Pu has been environmental health consultant for the National Association for Children and Safe Technologies and has worked with military and government agencies. She points out that the entire electromagnetic microwave frequency or 'EMF' range triggers hundreds of biological effects. She says they are limitless because the waves of varying lengths impact on all parts of the body. Each new generation or 'G' increased that effect leading to the arrival of 5G which operates within the millimetre wave (MMW) range that includes 60 GHz, the resonant frequency for oxygen, and is 'fully absorbed by the oxygen molecule'. Pu said that even at what is considered low power within FCC (fake) safety standards the 60 GHz frequency is going to affect the molecular structure of oxygen and stop it binding properly with the blood's iron-containing protein, haemoglobin. She said that these issues include: (1) Shared electrons between the two oxygen atoms will spin at a rate that is not conducive to human uptake; (2) the orbit angle and distance of the electrons from the atomic nucleus is altered; (3) the possibility that some or all of the molecule itself is changed from O₂ (oxygen) to form O₃ (ozone). Dr Andrew Kaufman said he read a CIA document from 1977 which described how the frequency of 60 GHz suppressed bone marrow in mice. White blood cells produced in bone marrow are the foundation of the immune system. The document also said that oxygen take-up by mitochondria – the 'powerhouse of the cell' – was adversely affected by 60 GHz frequencies which can lead to devastating organ failure. The consequences can be appreciated from this explanation by the UK Medical Research Council Mitochondrial Biology Unit:

Mitochondria are organelles found in the cells of every complex organism. They produce about 90% of the chemical energy that cells need to survive. No energy; no life! So it's easy to see why when mitochondria go wrong, serious diseases are the result, and why it is important we understand how mitochondria work.

That must surely include how 5G at 60 GHz affects mitochondria.

A case study

While researching 5G and 60 GHz Lena Pu said she came across 'a clandestine event' between 2016 and 2017 at a Texas junior high school. After a few months of research into what was happening, which included reading declassified reports, she realised that 5G exposures are 'very bad news': 'I discovered that [5G] is 25-100 times more biologically active than the frequencies that are currently being used in everything from cell phones to cell towers.' Other 'Gs' were bad, but 5G was much worse. This background allowed her to quickly realise what was going on at the school where students and teaching staff had fallen ill with a 'mystery illness'. It was obvious this was related to inside the school because they all felt better once they left the building and teachers began to hold classes outside. Pu made contact with a mother extremely alarmed at the behaviour of school administrators and established that the school was part of a pre-roll-out 'pilot' scheme for 5G. This was in 2017. She had found the 'smoking gun' to explain the mass illness. Her instincts were that Wi-Fi systems at the school must have been upgraded to include a new chip to add to the two in use up to this point communicating at 2.45 GHz and between 5 and 5.8 GHz. She went to the school's Facebook page to look through pictures taken inside the building and saw a strange Wi-Fi router that she believed would be necessary for the delivery of 5G:

I looked through the school's Facebook page for router images to give a clue as to the shape, style or

make of the Wi-Fi routers, also known as wireless access points, and I found one that resembled a certain style ... with a larger grill pattern for heat dissipation. [5G] generates a lot more heat just by the nature of the frequency and power levels.

Fortunately she took a screenshot because the following day all the images were deleted from the school Facebook page. Next she tracked down the new third chip at the Samsung annual expo – a 60 GHz chip called 'WiGig'. She said this was her second smoking gun and she found to her horror as she researched the chip the impact on the oxygen molecule. 'I instantly knew what I was looking at and the implications ... the moment I saw the government charts laying out the peak absorptive levels of oxygen and which frequency attenuates [weakens, diminishes] it – I have never discovered anything more shocking.' 5G at 60 GHz that can prevent the uptake of oxygen is being installed in hospitals? What could possibly go wrong? Much of this technology comes from the East and that includes Huawei in China. Lena Pu said the 60 GHz frequency is for use in routers, Wi-Fi, cellphones, and other small devices kept close to the body. This means the skin and sweat ducts which are antennae for 5G and used by the military in this way as a weapon.

Lung effects not caused by any 'virus'

This 5G/oxygen connection has to be even more deeply considered in the light of some intensive care doctors pointing out that the worst cases of respiratory breakdown since the 'virus' scare and the roll-out of 5G are not caused by an 'infectious disease' but by lungs showing symptoms of oxygen starvation. New York intensive care doctor Cameron Kyle-Sidell took to YouTube in his desperation to make people aware of what was happening. YouTube continually deleted uploads of the video and he was reported to have been removed from intensive care. Kyle-Sidell said they were told to prepare to treat an infectious disease called 'Covid-19' but that is not what they are dealing with. Instead he was seeing people with lung conditions he had never seen before and what you would expect to see with people suffering cabin depressurisation in a plane at 30,000 feet or someone dropped on the top of Everest without acclimatisation or by definition an oxygen supply. Kyle-Sidell said that 'Covid-19 is not this disease and we are operating under a medical paradigm that is untrue'. He said that, in short, he believed they were treating the wrong disease. 'These people are being slowly starved of oxygen', he said. Patients would take off their oxygen masks in a state of fear and stress and while they were blue in the face on the brink of death they did not look like patients dying of pneumonia. In these rare cases something different is certainly going on and it's not 'Covid-19'. So what is it? The effect of 5G on oxygen intake must surely be added to the list of possibilities. It should be further noted that nearly *half* the 'deaths' attributed to Covid-19 in the United States have happened in just two places – New York and the neighbouring New Jersey which have 5G and both are awash with cellphone towers. Should this 'virus' spread with 5G expansion people should take serious notice and realise, too, that the impact of 5G will increase with the number of 5G devices and the wave connections they generate. Two other points to make are that some doctors have reported 'Covid-19' patients to have 'mysterious and potentially lethal blood clots' which are not dissolved by blood-thinning agents, and some patients have complained of a tingling or 'fizzing' sensation on or under the skin – 'like being struck by lightning, like pins and needles all over my body', as one woman said. Electromagnetic fields affect the blood and skin, even more so with 5G. Now think that 6G and 7G are in the pipeline if humanity does not get off its arse fast.

I have already mentioned the psychological effects of 5G and Professor Martin Pall notes that malfunctioning calcium cell-gate activity caused by technological radiation produces fear in animals and in humans. It triggers large increases in the release of 'norepinephrine' which is the fight or flight hormone that activates the survival response that we have seen with panic buying, support for draconian measures to 'save us from the virus' and other expressions of fear and distress. Electromagnetic fields at far less than 5G, but at the right frequency, can entrain with brain processing and implant thoughts and

emotions to dictate behaviour. This has been known for decades and more and it takes very low energy to instigate – it's the frequency entrainment that allows it to happen. By bouncing frequencies off the ionosphere (between about 37 and 620 miles above the Earth) whole regions of people can be affected. This has been happening for a long time through ionospheric heaters, the best known being the Pentagon/DARPA-driven HAARP in Alaska, the High Frequency Active Auroral Research Program. Ionospheric heaters fire high-power radio waves at the ionosphere which begins to vibrate and divert them back to Earth at far greater power. See *Everything You Need To Know* for the detailed background. 5G is being installed in schools worldwide to destroy the immunity of children and Professor Pall notes that this applies to the immune systems of *all* things – including plants and vegetation which becomes food. During the lockdowns and hysteria the BT-owned mobile operator EE switched on its 5G network in a further 21 British towns and cities, Israel was imposing the same on its citizens and the deeply-sinister Elon Musk was launching still more SpaceX satellites in low altitude to fire 5G at the earth. The telecommunications industry was expressing delight that 'social-distancing' and working from home due to virus laws was increasing demand for more 5G roll-out. The Cult-owned US Federal Communications Commission (FCC) authorised the Cult-owned SpaceX amid the global lockdown to install up to a million ground antenna to connect users to its Starlink satellite internet network and what has been going on in terms of 5G roll-out and other structural changes while people were locked away at home? The ever-increasing 5G explosion will continually diminish immune systems to make them vulnerable to more and more health effects which the Cult will blame on something else. Here we have the road to mass genocide that I described earlier. People like Elon Musk, those running telecommunication companies and politicians and government officials allowing this 5G torture chamber to be created, should be jailed for life for genocidal crimes against humanity. Sitting around watching this unfold and letting Cult psychopaths destroy humanity and take over the world is hardly an option. Professor Pall warns:

And let me repeat that any effects seen with the initial 'rollout' of 5G radiation will be a tiny fraction of those predicted by a mature 5G system interacting with the 'internet of things' because any initial 5G system has very little to communicate with on initial rollout and therefore will produce only a tiny fraction of highly pulsed EMF effects of such a mature system.

If human life as we know it is going to survive – *5G must go*. The global expansion of the 5G network, its increase in power and impact as more devices are connected to its frequency band, and the oxygen-changing 60 GHz have the potential to inflict enormous amounts of illness that would be blamed on other causes, including further, perhaps more extreme, waves of the illusory 'Covid-19'. It is such a testament to the scale of child-like human perceptual programming that billions could have bought what is an obvious 'pandemic' Big Lie when you take the trouble to think for yourself and make the official narrative justify its claims. Balanced observations don't register with people once the Cult has activated human survival responses channelled through the reptilian brain which is constantly scanning the world for threats to survival of all kinds – life, job, relationships, all of them. The reptilian brain doesn't think, it reacts, and will panic-buy in a frenzy of 'I must survive even at the expense of you'. This is the reaction mechanism that will accept any level of tyrannical imposition if it believes its chances of survival will be increased in any way and the same survival response will demonise anyone questioning, challenging and refusing to cooperate with the said imposition of tyranny.

It is vital to stay calm in these situations to stop survival mechanisms overwhelming you. Unless you are in a situation of immediate danger in which immediate reaction is required nothing good ever comes from the reptilian brain and associated survival responses taking over perception. The first casualty is always thinking straight and my god that has happened to untold numbers since the 'pandemic' frenzy began.

* The Gates-owned Professor Neil Ferguson who produced the computer models that led to the Gates-demanded lockdown, and the man who said (like Gates) that lockdowns must continue until a (Gates) vaccine was ready, fell from his perch with the exposure of extraordinary hypocrisy. Ferguson was forced to resign as a government advisor in the first week of May, 2020, when he was outed by a newspaper for meeting with his married lover against his own lockdown rules.

At a time that he was telling everyone to stay at home and not have anyone visit who didn't live in the same house he enjoyed sexual trysts with his lover at his own home while she was living elsewhere with her husband and children. The girlfriend, Antonia Staats, is a climate change activist and senior campaigner at Avaaz, the global online 'activist' network connected to George Soros which I highlighted earlier.

Even more of a head-shaker was that Ferguson claimed to have the 'virus' in the same period and Staats was telling friends she suspected that her husband had 'virus' symptoms. This is the man who locked down countries with ludicrous 'models' that justified the Gates lockdown agenda and destroyed the lives and livelihoods of at least hundreds of millions of people – exactly what Gates and his Cult masters planned from the start.

CHAPTER SIXTEEN

Why is Bill Gates a psychopath?

Unthinking respect for authority is the greatest enemy of truth – Albert Einstein

Technocrat mega-billionaire Bill Gates is everywhere in the ‘pandemic’ hoax and there is no way he doesn’t know what he’s doing. This is not a man who has been manipulated into funding and fronting the ‘pandemic’ narrative and response including the punchline ‘vaccine’. Gates is a Cult operative who has bought the global ‘health’ industry willingly and enthusiastically doing whatever the Cult tells him. I look at his eyes, which never smile, and I see no one home. No life, no vibrance, no emotion. I am reminded every time of biological AI as I am with Zuckerberg, Bezos, Soros, and the rest of their Cult-serving ilk.

I should first explain the background to technocracy AI front-people like Gates (Microsoft), Zuckerberg (Facebook), Brin and Page (Google), Wojcicki (YouTube), Bezos (Amazon), Musk (SpaceX, Tesla, Neuralink), and Soros (Open Society Foundations). There are many others and their role in the structure is basically the same. They are gofers for the Cult that become very rich for being so with some strict provisos on what they do with ‘their’ (joke) companies and large swathes of their ensuing billions. The Cult is constructing the ‘Smart Grid’ technological sub-reality technocratic tyranny and they need a host of cover-stories and cover-people to hide the fact that it is all coordinated and being rolled out from underground bases and other secret projects. Notice there are no barren periods while the Cult waits for its next level of technological control to be ‘invented’. One stage seamlessly follows the next with no gaps in between. This is because the technology is developed long before we ever see it in the public arena and to hide that fact they need made-up narratives for public consumption and operatives to front-up those narratives. This is where the gofers come in to explain how technology vital to the Cult agenda came to be ‘invented’ and circulated by unconnected ‘individuals’. They become immensely rich, but there are serious strings attached. Enormous swathes of the money secured through Cult operations must be spent on advancing the Cult agenda through ‘foundations’ of fake philanthropy. They have the added benefit of securing colossal tax-exemptions. Each operative is given an area of specialisation. Soros is deployed funding the Open Society Foundations to secure fake ‘people’s revolutions’, mass migration and the emergence of the New Woke tyranny; Zuckerberg, Brin, Page and Wojcicki have been given the role of global censors protecting Cult narratives and actions from exposure; Bezos is fronting up the takeover of global commerce by the Cult’s Amazon, which has benefited fantastically from the ‘pandemic’ and the demise of *at least* tens of millions of potential competitors, while increasing his wealth by tens of billions during lockdowns which his newspaper, the *Washington Post*, said ‘must continue’; Bill Gates has been handed a series of roles which is why he has appeared so many times in the book in relation to many aspects of the Cult agenda that he is funding. His biggest specialisation is the field of Big Pharma ‘health’ and vaccinating the world.

The Gates vehicle for this Cult ‘philanthropy’ (it actually makes him an even bigger fortune) is the Bill

and Melinda Gates Foundation which he based on the infamous Rockefeller Foundation – a family with which he is extremely close. I have seen ancestry research that says if you go back far enough Gates is from the Rockefeller bloodline. Through this Cult-front ‘foundation’ Gates created Gavi, the ‘vaccine alliance’, in 1999 with an initial donation of \$750 million and we have already seen his financial connections (many through Gavi) to all the major agenda-drivers of the ‘pandemic’ including Imperial College, Neil Ferguson, Chris Whitty, Anthony Fauci and Deborah Birx. The web that goes out from the Gates Foundation is extraordinary and includes his control of the Rockefeller-created World Health Organization (WHO) through being its second biggest funder behind only the government of the United States. If Trump carries out his threat to cut WHO funding Gates will be number one. Whatever comes out of the mouth of WHO Director-General Tedros Adhanom Ghebreyesus is Gates speaking and the WHO has been the force dictating the global response to the fake ‘virus’. Before being named Director-General Tedros was chair of the Gates-founded Global Fund to ‘fight against AIDS, tuberculosis and malaria’ and a board member of the Gates-funded Gavi and another Gates-funded organisation. Gates owns him. At the same time Cult fronts like Facebook, YouTube and Google have introduced a policy of censoring or downgrading any information at odds with the World Health Organization version of events (which is why I was deleted from Facebook and YouTube).

You can see how the Web works and these Cult operatives and gofers working as one unit need to face the consequences of their actions and crimes against humanity in life sentences with their money distributed to those whose livelihoods they have mercilessly destroyed. This lack of mercy and empathy for the global population makes them all for me not only psychopaths, but super-psychopaths. But, then, if they work at any in-the-know level of the Cult they would have to be by definition. It’s compulsory. Another head-shaker for anyone who knows the game was when Gates’s missus, Melinda, who will be well aware of what is going on, announced on CNN that ‘soon Africa will have bodies out in the streets’. Africa up to this point was only marginally affected compared with the size of the continent, but Mrs Gates knew better. She said the reason the numbers were low was the lack of testing (for genetic material found in many people) and when the testing expanded so would the number of cases (exactly, that’s the whole deceit of the test). In the wake of her African prophecy the Gates-owned World Health Organization and Cult-owned United Nations declared that Africa could see up to 3.3 million deaths from ‘Covid-19’ and could become the ‘epicentre’ of the ‘pandemic’ that had been declared in the first place by the Gates-owned WHO. Was there any way to stop this, pray? Oh yes – lockdown and social distancing. The same hoax that had been perpetrated in the West was now being dumped on Africa where Gates ‘vaccine programs’ exploit poor children for their ‘trials’.

Who's WHO? Er ... Bill Gates

The World Health Organization is extraordinarily corrupt and has been since it was created by the Rockefellers and Rothschilds after World War Two. The WHO declared ‘Covid-19’ a ‘global pandemic’ in March, 2020, as it was always going to do from day one. Gates hands over hundreds of millions dollars to buy control as he has poured millions into the US Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) which has directed ‘virus’ policy in the United States and told doctors to diagnose anyone that moves – or doesn’t – as ‘Covid-19’ without any evidence. The CDC is funded by Big Pharma, medical insurance companies and other medical-related industries while WHO funding also massively comes from the world’s major Big Pharma drug companies. Together they and Gates run the WHO on behalf of the Cult agenda and not the world population. As a result this Microsoft technocrat, son of a supporter of eugenics, has been called ‘the world’s most powerful doctor’ and refers to himself as a ‘health expert’. Gates doesn’t actually strike me as very bright at all, but you don’t need to be when you’re just a front man. The WHO is based in Geneva, Switzerland, home to so many Cult operations, including the World Trade Organization. Geneva is reported to have a moratorium on 5G. The WHO is another agency of the United Nations and currently headed by Tedros Adhanom Ghebreyesus, a politburo member of the

tyrannical Tigray People's Liberation Front (TPLF) which has been part of the repressive Marxist government of Ethiopia for decades. It has been widely condemned by human rights organisations for its abuse of citizens. Out of this came Tedros, amid many allegations of corruption and misappropriation of funds, to head the Cult's World Health Organization which provides the official 'virus' narrative. Tedros was exposed three times for covering up cholera epidemics while health minister in Ethiopia and when he took office in Geneva he had the mass-murdering Zimbabwe dictator Robert Mugabe appointed as a WHO goodwill ambassador for public health although, naturally, not for the health of all those he had killed to stay in power. The appointment was so outrageous that Tedros was quickly forced to retract.

Tedros is one of the last people who should be WHO Director-General, but then he's not there to serve the human population. He's there to serve the interests of those who secured his appointment and created the World Health Organization – the Cult. Anyone think that the appointment of Tedros was made without the approval of Bill Gates? Tedros is close to China and he worked to make lockdown and social distancing the blueprint for response in the West by praising its effectiveness in China. I guess we should also expect that when the Chinese Communist Party and Tedros share the same politics. Nothing is uttered by the WHO hierarchy or emerges from the mouth of Tedros that is not the Gates agenda and the software psychopath also came out in praise of China just to emphasise the point: 'China did a lot of things right at the beginning.' Yes, they had a draconian lockdown which was planned from the start to be transferred to the West. Gates described his WHO fiefdom as 'phenomenal' when the operation is a Cult-owned farce in relation to human health. We should include in that the same bracket the controlling hierarchy of the Centers for Disease Control (CDC) in the United States which, like the World Health Organization, is owned by Gates, Big Pharma and the wider Cult.

Gates and the 'Davos' mob – the 'prophecy'



Figure 384: The prophets of the Bill Gates One-percent at Event 201 simulating a 'coronavirus pandemic' six weeks before the fake 'pandemic' came to public attention.

Melinda Gates said on BBC radio (Gates has given millions to the BBC) that her husband had 'prepared for years' for a coronavirus pandemic. Oh, I bet he had. Gates predicted a coming global pandemic that would kill many people and devastate the world economy in a TED talk in 2015. The man is a modern-day Isaiah. Then six weeks before the 'outbreak' in China came to public attention a 'simulation' of a *coronavirus* pandemic was run by the One-percent 'Davos' World Economic Forum (WEF), the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation and the Johns Hopkins Center for Health Security ([Fig 384](#)). This was called Event 201 and included major banks, the UN, Johnson & Johnson, and officials from China and the Centers for Disease Control in the United States. Remember what the American scientist I quoted said: 'If you want to create a totally false panic about a totally false pandemic – pick a coronavirus'. Johns Hopkins Center for Health Security ran its own 'pandemic' simulation in Washington called 'Clade X' in 2018. Since the fake 'pandemic' began the same Johns Hopkins operation has compiled all the fraudulent figures for 'Covid-19' cases and deaths repeated incessantly and unquestioningly by the media worldwide. The Johns Hopkins network of fronts has received absolutely massive funding from ... Bill Gates and Big Pharma. News reports were inserted into the Gates simulation and discussions included censorship of those questioning the official line of what the public were told – all of which would be

happening within weeks when the fake ‘coronavirus outbreak’ hit the news. We had headlines appearing such as ‘anti-vaccination movement could derail fight against coronavirus, experts warn’. That headline was in the UK *‘Independent’* (of course). Cult-owned Mark Zuckerberg announced in March, 2020, that Facebook would give the Gates World Health Organization free advertisements and remove ‘false claims and conspiracy theories’ in a battle against coronavirus ‘misinformation’ (anything that challenged or questioned the official Cult narrative). Users looking for coronavirus information on Cult-controlled Facebook would see a pop-up at the top of search results directing them to the official narrative. ‘We’re focused on making sure everyone can access credible and accurate information’, said the little boy in short trousers and a t-shirt. He was equating, as always, ‘credible and accurate’ with the official story. He would later announce that Facebook would warn users even if they ‘liked, reacted or commented’ on Covid-19 ‘misinformation’ that the company has removed. This extraordinary fraud had earlier said that Facebook systematically sets out to marginalise those who question vaccine safety. Zuckerberg should absolutely be in jail because he knows what he’s doing and it was all in line with the Gates ‘simulation’ Event 201. Cult-controlled Google, Twitter and Apple naturally engaged in similar coronavirus censorship with Google-owned YouTube announcing:

With few people to review content, our automated systems will be stepping in to keep YouTube safe. More videos will be removed than normal during this time including content that does not violate community guidelines.

Passed through my Orwellian Translation Unit this meant that we are coding the AI algorithms to target all information that we can which challenges the official version of the Cult virus narrative. Where this is leading – the West becoming China – was promoted in an article in the elite-owned *Atlantic* magazine by two academics, Harvard Law School professor Jack Goldsmith and Andrew Keane Woods, a professor at the University of Arizona. The heading said it all: ‘Internet Speech Will Never Go Back to Normal – in the debate over freedom versus control of the global network, China was largely correct, and the U.S. was wrong.’ *Classic*. You Tube, Vimeo and Facebook all deleted my interview with London Real which exposed the zero evidence that ‘Covid-19’ existed. YouTube gofer Susan Wojcicki then demonetised all my YouTube videos on any subject (followed by complete deletion) and Vimeo deleted some 700 videos on the Ickonic media platform because, among other pathetic excuses, some of them questioned vaccine safety. Ickonic was restored with our own playing system within days and the banned interview has been ginormously circulated by the public outside these digital kindergartens and been translated into many languages including Spanish and Italian. This is what is possible when you don’t give up and play the victim. By the way, YouTube and Wojcicki said my interview had been banned as part of a newly-introduced rule whereby ...

... Any content that disputes the existence or transmission of Covid-19, as described by the WHO and local health authorities is in violation of YouTube policies. This includes conspiracy theories which claim that the symptoms are caused by 5G.

Take that in for a moment and smell the fascism. The WHO narrative is the Gates narrative is the Cult narrative protected from challenge by the Cult’s YouTube. Golden rule: If YouTube are promoting something or someone then the Cult wants them promoted and if they are deleting them the Cult wants them deleted. We were banned for a time from Twitter for posting another ‘Covid-19’ video made by an external source and think what the censorship will be like should ultra-Zionist billionaire Paul Singer get control of that company. Add to all this the admission by General Sir Nick Carter, the UK’s Chief of the Defence Staff, that the clandestine 77th Brigade of the British Army is involved in ‘countering coronavirus misinformation online’. The unit was created in 2015 to specialise ‘non-lethal’ forms of *psychological warfare* and use social media to ‘fight in the information age’. Carter said the 77th Brigade had been

tackling ‘false information’ about the pandemic on the Internet. A unit of the British Army, 2,000 strong, is seeking to manipulate the perceptions of British people by trashing opinions at odds with the state narrative and that of the Gates-owned World Health Organization. That is how the fast-emerging fascism works. The fake ‘pandemic’ is indeed global psychological warfare on the collective human psyche. Conversations in the Gates-World Economic Forum Event 201 ‘simulation’ were a precursor to what was about to happen for real and anyone who thinks that is a coincidence needs a massive download of reality. Bill Gates’s father, William Henry Gates Sr, was head of the Rockefeller-created Planned Parenthood (connected to insider ‘prophet’ Dr Richard Day) which began life in the eugenics movement. Boy Gates admits he was a ‘one-time’ believer in the eugenics theory of 18th/19th century cleric Thomas Malthus. The Gates Foundation pledged \$100 million to ‘fight the virus’ and the *Seattle Times* reported as the ‘coronavirus’ hit America that a project funded by the Gates Foundation was producing home-testing kits for the disease. Gates staff said that positive results would be shared with ‘health authorities’ who would then track people’s movements. The test would involve taking a DNA sample and provide another addition to the DNA database (which all the ‘tests’ are doing). Gates is also funding the ‘vaccine’ which I will come to shortly. Billy Boy stepped down from the board of Microsoft, which he co-founded, in mid-March 2020 to ‘spend more time on philanthropic activities’ and focus on ‘global health and development, education and tackling climate change’ – all Cult endeavours. The timing of this was, shall we say, telling.

The Rockefeller prophecy

I was further alerted to a document by the Rockefeller Foundation from 2010 headed ‘Scenarios for the Future of Technology and International Development’ which included responses to an imaginary pandemic of an extremely virulent and deadly influenza strain that infected 20 percent of the world population and killed eight million in seven months. The scenario envisaged by the infamous and One-percent Rockefeller Foundation, the inspiration for the Gates Foundation, had a ‘deadly effect’ on economies with empty shops and offices devoid of both employees and customers for months on end. The document described how totalitarianism was introduced in countries of the West to ‘protect citizens from risk and exposure’:

During the pandemic, national leaders around the world flexed their authority and imposed airtight rules and restrictions, from the mandatory wearing of face masks to body-temperature checks at the entries to communal spaces like train stations and supermarkets. Even after the pandemic faded, this more authoritarian control and oversight of citizens and their activities stuck and even intensified. In order to protect themselves from the spread of increasingly global problems – from pandemics and transnational terrorism to environmental crises and rising poverty – leaders around the world took a firmer grip on power.

At first, the notion of a more controlled world gained wide acceptance and approval. Citizens willingly gave up some of their sovereignty – and their privacy – to more paternalistic states in exchange for greater safety and stability. Citizens were more tolerant, and even eager, for top-down direction and oversight, and national leaders had more latitude to impose order in the ways they saw fit.

In developed countries, this heightened oversight took many forms: biometric IDs for all citizens, for example, and tighter regulation of key industries whose stability was deemed vital to national interests. In many developed countries, enforced cooperation with a suite of new regulations and agreements slowly but steadily restored both order and, importantly, economic growth.

By mid-March, 2020, the numbers of new cases in China were reported to be falling just as they were increasing in the rest of the world and as the Rockefeller Foundation ‘scenario’ document had ‘prophesised’ China began to be praised for its authoritarian response made possible by its authoritarian

non-democratic system. A *Forbes* magazine headline said: 'For the US, Coronavirus lessons to be learned from China and South Korea'. This was the pre-planned perceptual preparation for the Chinese lockdown to be seen as the blueprint response when in fact the fake test and cause of death registrations would decide the number of cases and fatalities that would follow. The whole thing was a set-up orchestrated between Cult-controlled China and Cult networks in other countries. The Rockefeller 'prophecy' document of 2010 had said:

However, a few countries did fare better – China in particular. The Chinese government's quick imposition and enforcement of mandatory quarantine for all citizens, as well as its instant and near-hermetic sealing off of all borders, saved millions of lives, stopping the spread of the virus far earlier than in other countries and enabling a swifter post-pandemic recovery.

The *Forbes* magazine article in 2020 said of China's response '... those measures protected untold millions from getting the disease'. The 2011 movie *Contagion* also pre-empted the events that followed the 'Covid-19 outbreak' in another amazing Hollywood prophecy. This is a summary of the storyline in which bats were blamed to begin with:

Soon after her return from a business trip to Hong Kong [China], Beth Emhoff dies from what is a flu or some other type of infection. Her young son dies later the same day. Her husband Mitch however seems immune. Thus begins the spread of a deadly infection. For doctors and administrators at the US Centers for Disease Control, several days pass before anyone realizes the extent or gravity of this new infection.

They must first identify the type of virus in question and then find a means of combating it, a process that will likely take several months. As the contagion spreads to millions of people worldwide, societal order begins to break down as people panic.

Another description of the film says:

In a flashback, days before Beth is infected in China, a bulldozer knocks down a tree, disturbing some bats. One flies over a sty and drops a piece of banana, which is eaten by a pig. The pigs are slaughtered and prepared by a chef who shakes hands with Beth in the casino, transferring the virus to her and making her Patient Zero.

What saves the day? Well, well, a *vaccine* and the US Centers for Disease Control chose who had the vaccine by birthdate. Oh, yes, and 'conspiracy theorists' were demonised. Here we have yet another Hollywood pre-emptive program and two representations of the One-percent describing a pandemic sequence with Event 201 happening with relation to an 'imaginary' coronavirus just before the real imaginary coronavirus 'broke out'.

The Gates vaccine

Bill Gates wasn't even subtle about the No-Problem-Reaction-Solution punchline of the 'pandemic' hoax and I guess he didn't need to be for the billions who have bought the official story without question and have no idea about the big picture of how they are being lassoed and branded. For those of us who have tracked him and the Cult for decades he was an open book. Just as the Chinese did not consider other possible causes for the illness in Wuhan except a 'virus' so Gates would not have any other responses considered except lockdown, isolation and a vaccine. He talked immediately about the need for a vaccine and pledged hundreds of millions to 'find one' through a multitude of his funded sources. I said from the start that the vaccine Gates wanted to inject into the entirety of humanity already existed before the fake 'pandemic' had even started. All this funding and working to develop a vaccine to 'save humanity' is more psychological bullshit to have people on their knees begging to be inoculated by the time it was

'ready' in the wake of 'new waves' of the 'virus just before vaccination was planned to begin. We were told that the vaccine could be ready in months when the normal development sequence and trials takes years. How was this possible? It already existed. They couldn't 'discover' the vaccine and start mass immunisation too quickly or even the non-sceptical might ask how this could be done so quickly. They had to have some delay but they would seek to make that as short as possible. Tucker Carlson, the only US TV anchor with the intelligence and courage to ask relevant questions, made a very potent point about 'coronavirus' vaccines:

Scientists have never produced a single approved vaccine or anti-viral drug for any coronavirus ... We spent millions of dollars and more than a decade trying to find a vaccine for the SARS virus. Scientists never developed one.

Ah, but if there is no 'Covid-19' virus and you are only creating the illusion of one by fixing the figures through fake diagnosis and death certificates then the vaccine, whatever the content, can appear to have worked if you change the policy on fake diagnosis and death certificates once the vaccine is introduced. Gates, the software-peddling psychopath, had placed himself above elected governments in true technocratic style to dictate vaccination policy for the whole world. He made it clear that 'for the world at large normalcy only returns when we have vaccinated the entire global population.' Can you imagine the scale of arrogance that it takes for the software-peddler to make that statement? It's just a glimpse of the arrogant, narcissistic psychopathy that pervades the global Cult and its operatives. The Cult-Gates plan is to make the vaccination compulsory and failing that to stop people returning to anything like their previous lifestyle unless they agree to be vaccinated. You want to come out of lockdown? Then you have the vaccination or stay as you are. This is why they are so desperate to keep the lockdowns going in some form until the vaccine is produced. These people are undiluted evil – the absence of love. I see also the comments of some 'experts' that because 'older people tend to have weaker immune responses to vaccines' the elderly 'might need two doses of the jab'. Gates further demands that people who have been vaccinated must be marked so that technology can pick up the signal to confirm your branding. Now we see the real reason for the Gates/Gavi 'quantum tattoo' that I highlighted earlier. I described how the Gates Foundation is funding the development of an 'tattoo' that will identify those who have and have not been vaccinated. The excuse was to identify vaccinated children in the developing world, but it is clear what the 'tattoo' was really for – giving the entirety of humanity the 'Mark of the Beast'. Gates has funded research at the Massachusetts Institute of Technology (MIT) to create an 'invisible quantum tattoo' to be embedded in the skin and read by a smartphone camera app. Sciencealert.com reported:

The invisible 'tattoo' accompanying the vaccine is a pattern made up of minuscule quantum dots – tiny semiconducting crystals that reflect light – that glows under infrared light. The pattern – and vaccine – gets delivered into the skin using hi-tech dissolvable microneedles made of a mixture of polymers and sugar.

Yet again Gates's timing was perfect to sync with the 'pandemic' that he predicted. The Gates 'tattoo' is connected to the ID2020 'alliance' seeking to impose a digital identity on everyone. This alliance consists of those legendary lovers of humanity Microsoft, Gavi, the Rockefeller Foundation, Accenture and IDEO.org. Add to this the technology 'being developed' (already developed) by facial recognition camera producers to track heartbeats, temperature and social distancing. This is one description:

Photon-X object recognition and analytics combined with VSBLY facial recognition will provide an advanced screening tool for facilities to identify and validate that someone with a high temperature is about to enter a building. Fever, cough and difficulty breathing are some of the common symptoms of COVID-19.

The Gates vaccine or vaccines will contain other diseases for further waves of lockdown, a sterilisation agent, and possibly something to ‘target specific genotypes’ in the words of the Project for the New American Century. Crucially there will be nanotechnology microchips or ‘smart dust’ to connect the human race to the Smart Grid and mutate human DNA and genetics into synthetic biological machines which I say that people like Gates and the rest of the Cult inner core already are – biological AI.

Rockefeller insider Dr Richard Day told the Pittsburgh paediatricians in 1969 about plans to inoculate diseases in vaccination programmes and that’s being going on for a long time which is one reason why so many children are getting sicker. I described the nanotechnology I believed would be in the ‘Covid-19’ vaccine in my first interview with London Real on these subjects before the lockdowns got into full swing and Gates came rapidly to the fore about his vaccine. Weeks later I watched a video interview with Celeste Solum, a former employee of FEMA, the Federal Emergency Management Agency, which has been widely exposed in my books since the mid-1990s. FEMA is a 100 percent front for the Cult and is given extraordinary powers over American society once a state of national emergency has been declared and that is what Donald Trump did on March 13th, 2020. Celeste Solum, who worked in a number of roles for FEMA including planning for pandemics, said in her interview that the fake pandemic was designed to enforce vaccinations that would include nanochips or sensors. Everyone in the world would have to be tested for ‘Covid-19’ and vast numbers will test positive for reasons I have explained. Solum said that the real reason for this was a ‘big DNA harvesting’ – ‘They want all our DNA in the big giant supercomputers.’ A series of vaccinations was planned – not only one – which will contain aborted foetal tissue and what she calls ‘the DARPA hydro-gel sensor’ which had been in development for ten years. This consists of nano-particles in a ‘gelatine form’ which once injected ‘begin to assemble’. Solum is describing what I detailed earlier about smart dust which can replicate inside the body and assemble systems to transform the nature of the body from human to a form of machine. She said the nano-particles fuse with tissue and becomes one with the body. ‘You become one with artificial intelligence and the Internet of Things’, Solum said. ‘You become your own computer interface … and you are one with the hive, the system, whatever you want to say.’ This is precisely what I have been warning about in the books for so long.



Figure 385: Exactly what it is.

Solum said that people would be forced to have this ‘sensor’ vaccination on the grounds that it will alert the authorities that you are sick before even you know you are sick. This is the real reason for the Gates vaccination and he well knows that which is why he is a super-psychopath who should be in jail for the rest of his life. More confirmation came when he said in a television interview that 700,000 people could be damaged by a global ‘Covid-19’ vaccination (and the rest) and so governments would have to agree to indemnify vaccine producers from responsibility. In that one sentence Bill Gates personified himself ([Fig 385](#)). Another crucial aspect of a Gates vaccine is the emerging new vaccination technique that the Cult is desperate to introduce called DNA or genetic immunisation. This has been described as ‘hacking your DNA’. It fits like a glove and it is vital to keep our eyes firmly on this. DNA vaccines are used in animals, but not yet humans. They inject a ‘plasmid’ which is defined as ‘small circular pieces of DNA mainly found in bacteria that replicate independently from the host’s chromosomal DNA’. Note

that once in the body they *replicate independently*. Plasmids used in vaccines would be genetically-engineered and hence the term 'synthetic DNA vaccines'. They are described as 'mimicking' a 'viral infection'.

The Gates vaccine horror story by Robert F. Kennedy Jr

I mentioned earlier that Robert F. Kennedy Jr, son of the assassinated US Attorney General Robert F. Kennedy and nephew of former US President John F. Kennedy, has spoken out often and vociferously against the health effects of vaccinations. His father and JFK were murdered in the 1960s by assets of the same Cult behind the fake 'pandemic'. Gates said that Trump told him in 2017 that he was considering 'somebody, I think his name was Robert Kennedy Jr' (the arrogance of it) to head an inquiry into the safety of vaccines. The software psychopath said he told Trump: 'No, that would be a dead end, that would be a bad thing, don't do that.' Robert Kennedy Jr did not mince words amid the demands by Bill Gates for a 'Covid-19' vaccine that everyone must have worldwide. Kennedy said:

Vaccines, for Bill Gates, are a strategic philanthropy that feeds his many vaccine-related businesses (including Microsoft's ambition to control a global vac ID enterprise) and gives him dictatorial control over global health policy – the spear tip of corporate neo-imperialism.

Kennedy went on to highlight the disastrous effects for hundreds of thousands of children of Gates vaccine programmes. He said Gates polio vaccination campaigns had paralysed 496,000 children in India between 2000 and 2017 while other Gates catastrophes included autoimmune and fertility disorders suffered by 1,200 girls with seven of them dying. He said they were among 23,000 girls from remote Indian villages vaccinated by Gates programmes in league with Glaxo Smith Kline (GSK) and Merck. This is the same shameless Gates that said 'people who engage in anti-vaccine efforts kill children'. Kennedy accused the Gates organisation of using unethical practices to pressure girls to participate in the trial, intimidating parents, falsifying consent forms, and denying medical care to the affected. He was quoting from a case before the Indian Supreme Court. Polio, also known as poliomyelitis and infantile paralysis, is a perfect example of vaccine deceit. Polio paralysis began when lead arsenate started to be widely sprayed as an insecticide and the produce consumed. Lead arsenate spraying began in 1892 and the first US polio 'epidemic' came in Vermont in 1894, but the Big Pharma cartel (created by the Rockefeller family) decreed that polio is caused by ... the *poliovirus* which 'spreads from person to person and can infect a person's spinal cord'. Polio continued with the introduction of DDT, another devastating poison, particularly after the Second World War until its virtual worldwide ban in the 1970s and 80s. Lead arsenate and DDT both poison the brain and nervous system which is the cause of polio paralysis and as you would expect cases of polio plummeted when DDT was reduced in use and then banned. In the meantime Big Pharma introduced a polio vaccine which was then given the credit for the reduction. 'Vaccine-eradicated' diseases were in decline before vaccines were introduced and diseases like scarlet fever for which there was not a vaccine declined in the same way. Dr Andrew Kaufman said: 'If you actually go back and look for the evidence that vaccines have prevented disease you're not going to find it.' Today polio is caused overwhelmingly by *vaccinations for polio* so beloved of Gates. Robert Kennedy Jr wrote:

In 2017, the World Health Organization (WHO) reluctantly admitted that the global explosion in polio is predominantly vaccine strain. The most frightening epidemics in Congo, Afghanistan, and the Philippines, are all linked to vaccines. In fact, by 2018, 70% of global polio cases were vaccine strain.

The World Health Organization was accused in 2014 of sterilising millions of women in Kenya by using deception and the evidence was confirmed by the content of the vaccines involved. The WHO admitted its involvement for more than 10 years with the vaccine programme and similar charges were

lodged by other countries including Tanzania, Nicaragua, Mexico, and the Philippines. This is the organization controlled by Gates that is not only declaring and driving the ‘pandemic’, but being protected from exposure by Zuckerberg’s Facebook, Wojcicki’s YouTube and Silicon Valley and the mainstream media in general. The Gates Foundation is connected through funding and mutual agendas to 20 pharmaceutical giants and laboratories and he is accused of directing the policy of United Nations Children’s Fund (UNICEF), Gavi, and other groupings, and using them to both advance the vaccine agenda and silence those opposing the policy. Robert Kennedy Jr also turned his fire on the Gates-connected Trump ‘pandemic advisor’ Dr Anthony Fauci who he said had ‘poisoned an entire generation of Americans’. He accused Fauci of ‘an extensive legacy of fraud and cover-ups in his decades-long career with the federal government during which he ‘operated as a workplace tyrant and ruined the careers of countless physicians and researchers’ who had worked with integrity. Kennedy said that in at least one instance Fauci targeted a whistleblower trying to expose how the American blood supply has been infected with deadly disease strains. He said Fauci ruined the career of this physician and covered up the evidence. Kennedy claimed Fauci was using his position to secure lucrative vaccine patents. Doctors and researchers below him in the hierarchy would develop breakthrough technologies and then be dismissed to allow Fauci to seize ownership of their work. Kennedy said Fauci owned ‘many, many vaccine patents’ including one for a special protein sheet to circulate vaccine material throughout the body. He said Fauci didn’t develop this, but stole it from someone else who was fired after creating it:

Tony Fauci fired [this person] and he somehow ended up owning that patent, and that patent is now being used ... to make vaccines for the coronavirus ... that company has a 50/50 split with Tony Fauci’s agency ... so Fauci’s agency will collect half the royalties on that vaccine and there’s no limit for how much the agency can collect.

Kennedy said that Fauci’s National Institute of Allergy and Infectious Diseases (NIAID) and the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention (CDC) were really subsidiaries of Big Pharma and these so-called federal agencies were corporations in disguise working with Big Pharma to generate enormous profits on the backs of sick and dying people.

The biggest cause of death – lockdown

While we are told to surrender our most basic rights in the name of protection from the ‘virus’ the death toll from the lockdown, cancelled operations and diagnosis is going to be both monumental and ongoing. Lockdown deaths are sure to be way higher than even the manipulated figures falsely attributed to ‘Covid-19’. I have described how old people are denied treatment and pressured to sign do not resuscitate forms, but it’s not just old people that are being fatally affected. Others would die from a long list of causes, including cancer and heart disease, by not being diagnosed or treated while hospitals had hundreds of empty beds and doctors and medical staff had next to nothing to do. Here’s an example relating to cancer in Britain. Multiply the same situation across the world and the figures for cancer alone will be breathtaking even without all the other causes of death from the same lack of diagnoses and treatment. Cancer specialists were warning before the end of April that thousands in the UK were missing out on cancer diagnosis with the charity Cancer Research UK reporting a decline in screening and referrals of some 2,700 fewer people every week. Richard Sullivan, professor of cancer and global health at King’s College London, said there was more fear of Covid-19 than of having cancer. What a testament that is to the power of perceptual programming. ‘A lot of services have had to scale back – we’ve seen a dramatic decrease in the amount of elective cancer surgery’, Sullivan said. ‘Years of lost life will be quite dramatic’, he continued, and there would be ‘a huge amount of avoidable mortality.’ Sarah Woolnough, executive director for policy at Cancer Research UK, said there had been a 75 percent drop in urgent referrals to hospitals by family doctors of people with suspected cancer. To think that the UK ‘Health’ Secretary, Matt Hancock, who knows nothing about ‘health’, said it was not advisable for some

cancer treatments to go ahead during an epidemic because of the risks of exposure to the 'virus'.

Professor Sullivan pointed out another consequence of the lockdown – a huge wave of people and health problems that would overwhelm hospitals when they were fully open again. This is the very situation that the lockdowns were supposed to avoid as they 'protected' (empty) hospitals from being overrun. Inversion, inversion, wherever you look – including keeping people out of the sun while saying that sunlight 'kills viruses'. Sullivan said it could take up to a year to return the health service to normal even if the lockdowns stopped then in the last week of April. These were only the consequences for cancer patients. Add all the other untreated conditions and the hospital backlog worldwide was bound to be extraordinary in scale. Another clearly predictable consequence was the psychological effect of locking people away in their homes, often tiny, for weeks on end knowing that their employment or business was gone and money was running out. Despair and desperation were certain to unravel mental and bodily health and increase suicide through lack of hope and a sense of pointlessness. This was already becoming clear in the psychological trauma experienced by many Italians in their longest of lockdowns. I asked staff at food stores if they had noticed any difference in the demeanour of people since the lockdowns. They certainly had. 'People look like they're going to their own funeral', one told me. The ongoing effects of this will have multiple expressions and consequences – as the Cult knew they would. Meanwhile the elite themselves ignored lockdown laws with former US President Barack Obama driven 40 miles by a government chauffeur to play golf on an empty course while his wife Michelle was voicing over a video telling the public to stay at home. Boris Johnson's advisor (handler) Dominic Cummings flouted lockdown laws as did Professor Neil Ferguson.

Hunger Games bonanza



Figure 386: Everything I have been warning about for 30 years was potentially delivered by one 'virus'. Pure chance? Yes, of course it was.



Figure 387: The Hunger Games Society agenda that I have been exposing for decades has advanced with incredible speed during the fake 'pandemic' - which is why the Cult hoaxed the 'pandemic'. (Image Neil Hague.)

The vaccine is only one aspect – albeit crucial – of why the fake 'pandemic' has been orchestrated. Given what I had written in the book before we reached this stage some of the other central reasons should now

be obvious given the impact of the lockdowns on human life with billions in effect under house arrest. Box after box of the long-time Cult agenda are being ticked ([Fig 386](#)). I have been writing since the Cult-driven economic crash of 2008 that another even more extreme financial collapse was planned to deliver still greater swathes of people into the Hunger Games Society and here we are – big time ([Fig 387](#)). This was the certain outcome of the lockdowns from day one and all was coldly-planned to ensure that untold numbers of businesses would never reopen again throwing both owners and employees out of work. Trillions of dollars were unleashed in ‘stimulus packages’ which as always benefited the super-rich far more than those truly in need. The richest of universities with billions in the bank were recipients of public money while even the Anti-Defamation League (ADL), the hugely-funded Israel-serving censorship operation, demanded bail-out dosh while the masses went under. Countries were heading for bankruptcy if this continued, but no matter – the lockdowns continued in an exercise in economic suicide that would open the way for the ‘new system’ that the Cult has for so long pursued. Stock markets nose-dived along with oil prices as the ‘virus’ officially expanded out of China. As stock prices dropped the Cult was buying up businesses and resources at cents on the dollar to secure even more control. Ultra-Zionist billionaire Bill Ackman told CNBC that the United States was in serious jeopardy – ‘Hell is coming’ – unless the White House closed the country. He then made a \$2.6 billion profit on market bets related to closing down the country. Amazon CEO Jeff Bezos, the world’s first ‘centibillionaire’, a man who vies with Bill Gates for the title of the planet’s richest individual, asked for public donations to provide basic support to his 800,000 employees who were suffering in poverty in the wake of the Covid-19 pandemic. These people have no shame.

The restaurant industry was America’s biggest private sector employer with 15.6 million jobs before the ‘virus’ shutdown and that is not including all the food and other suppliers which depend on that industry. All was banned by the Gates (Cult) front-people. Global chains and other Cult corporations circled like vultures to pick up the scraps for a pittance and further increase their monopoly. The James Beard Foundation, a New York-based culinary organisation, reported near the end of April that independent restaurants had laid off 91 percent of their hourly employees and nearly 70 percent of salaried employees as of April 13th. The Beard survey of 1,400 small and independent restaurants found that 28 percent said they didn’t believe they could survive another month of closure. Even if they did – and the same with all businesses – where was the money coming from to regenerate custom amid such colossal unemployment? Hotels, pubs, bars, restaurants, entertainment and sport were devastated and everything that in any way gathered people together. More places of potential human gathering, discourse and interaction have been lost – exactly what the Cult wants and this was emphasised by health-irrelevant ‘social distancing’. It is literal divide and rule by government diktat. UK government advisor Robert Dingwall from the New and Emerging Respiratory Virus Threats Advisory Group revealed in a radio interview that the two-metre social distancing rule was ‘conjured up out of nowhere’ and was not based on science. No, it was based on control and division and it didn’t come ‘out of nowhere’, but from the Cult. This is why it was imposed all over the world at the same time and people did what they were told because that’s all they have ever learned to do. We had, for example, the 1.3 million people in the US state of Maine kept under lock and key on the say-so of the notoriously arrogant and stupid Governor Janet Mills at a time when just 15 people had died in Maine ‘from the virus’ even with the fake diagnosis and death certificate scam. The Maine economy was devastated and unemployment soared while Mills continued to take her money as normal. US state governors became one-person dictators imposing the will of the Cult. California governor Gavin Newsom closed 43 miles of Orange County beaches at a time when Will O’Neil, the mayor of Newport Beach, was pointing out the following:

Orange County has 3.2 million people who live here. It’s bigger than 22 states ... and of all of those people we have lost 50 people to this virus. That’s 0.001 percent of our population. In our local hospital

we have 475 beds. They have never treated more than 25 people at any given time and yesterday they had nine people that they were treating and only one percent of their ventilators were being used.

Newson is the man who won't enforce American immigration law, but closes 43 miles of beaches in the circumstances the mayor described. These governors serving the Cult agenda and dictatorship must all be removed at the earliest possible moment. To confirm the contempt of the Cult-controlled establishment Trump's Gates-connected 'virus' advisor Anthony Fauci said shaking hands might have to become a thing of the past, but having sex with a stranger you met on the Internet was okay. These people are laughing at you.

The International Labour Organization estimated that some 1.6 *billion* people – nearly half the global workforce – could see their livelihoods destroyed. What does that mean? Dependency and control which is what all this is really about along with the contents of the Gates vaccine. The shutdown consequences have been especially lethal for smaller businesses which the Cult wants to delete to open the way for its corporations to control all commerce, trade and production (see Amazon which thrived during the lockdowns). Ponder the consequences when figures I saw claimed that companies with fewer than 20 staff employ about 90 percent of Americans. Rural areas not affected by even the fake version of the 'virus' were shutdown anyway to advance the plan for rural depopulation and enslavement in smart cities. By the closing days of April *Fortune* magazine was reporting that a staggering 26.5 million American workers were made unemployed by the lockdowns with the numbers rising by millions per week. *Fortune* said that when added to the seven million already jobless before the shutdown it would equal more than 33 million unemployed – 'a real unemployment rate of 20.6% – which would be the highest level since 1934'. Similar surges in job losses have been happening in the UK and across the locked-down world. Of course that was going to happen. It was a prime *reason* for the lockdowns. To secure control of the masses in the Hunger Games Society the Cult needs to destroy independent livelihoods and the 'pandemic' hoax meant they could secure in weeks what would otherwise have taken years and decades. Take away access to independent businesses, employment and income and what are you left with – dependency on the state (Cult) and the Hunger Games Society that I described earlier in this book, and in previous ones, before the 'pandemic' deception was even played.

The New System

I have warned for decades that the plan was to impose a whole new centralised economic system for total global control. This has been pursued through the climate change hoax which demands just such a system to 'save the world' and the economic effects of the fake pandemic provided unlimited potential for economic catastrophe – Problem-Reaction-Solution or, in the case of the 'virus' and 'climate change', NO-Problem-Reaction-Solution. Lower-paid people – the 'serfs' to the Cult – would lose their jobs and their homes through their inability to pay the rent and so would people who considered themselves well-paid and in safe employment until weeks before. The Cult's vulture banks were poised for a frenzy of home repossession that would exceed by many magnitudes the fall-out of 2008 and advance the goal of deleting privately-owned property that I described earlier. Even those that are able to hang on to property have seen the value drop to below what they paid for it so cementing them in to their current abode unable to move due to negative equity. How many more people would fall into the lower reaches of the Hunger Games pyramid as a result of their business or job disappearing in the wake of government response to the 'virus'? Potentially – *billions*. Economic meltdown was not caused by a 'virus', but by the calculated Deep State response to a fake 'virus' and this prompted predictable calls for another Cult ambition – a basic (miserly) guaranteed income with all the consequences for freedom that I laid out earlier. The Cult has controlled the position of Pope for centuries and when a genuine man somehow slips through like Pope John Paul I (Albino Luciani) in 1978 he was murdered through poisoning after the Freemasonically-significant 33 days in office while he was planning to purge the Vatican of Cult

influences. He has been followed by the exceedingly un-genuine Pope John Paul II, Benedict and now Francis who predictably called for a guaranteed income as the lockdown consequences struck home just as he has called for world government and a transformation of global society to meet the 'challenge of climate change'. If Pope Francis wants it, the Cult wants it, because the Cult owns him. Italy has been particularly hit by the pandemic hoax with the longest lockdown of all and remember what the Sabbatian-Frankist extremists and 'rabbis' said about the need to destroy 'Edom' – Rome, Italy and Christianity – before their 'Messiah' could arrive. The Cult-owned Pope Francis said of a guaranteed income:

This may be the time to consider a universal basic wage which would acknowledge and dignify the noble, essential tasks you carry out. It would ensure and concretely achieve the ideal, at once so human and so Christian, of no worker without rights.

You don't give a damn about them Francis, you bloody fraud. The barely survivable 'guaranteed income' (so long as you do what the government tells you) is part of a long-planned new economic, cashless, digital system of total centralised control that I have been warning about for decades. Cash has been systematically demonised during the fake 'pandemic' hysteria on the grounds that handling money can pass on the 'disease' (see insanity). The Cult-owned, Gates-controlled, World Health Organization advised everyone to use contactless digital technology instead of cash to protect themselves from the 'virus'. Better have a cashless society, then, eh? It's so bloody transparent. John Howells, chief executive of Link, which runs Britain's 70,000 cashpoints, said the 'virus' has dramatically sped up the switch from cash to card and online payments and that cash could be almost killed off by the end of the summer as shoppers switch to using cards and never go back. Bill Gates's Microsoft owns the patent for a 'cryptocurrency system using body activity data'. The patent states: 'Instead of massive computation work required by some conventional cryptocurrency systems, data generated [is] based on the body activity of the user ...' A cryptocurrency is 'a digital currency in which encryption techniques are used to regulate the generation of units of currency and verify the transfer of funds, operating independently of a central bank'. Many in the alternative media believed that cryptocurrency was the key to bringing down the elite system when in fact the Cult has been behind it all along. China, the blueprint for the world, responded to the 'pandemic' by launching a digital currency and 'blockchain' (transaction record) system for 'trials'. Cult and Rockefeller insider Dr Richard Day told those paediatricians in 1969 that this very economic system was coming. He is quoted here by paediatrician Lawrence Dunegan:

The bringing in of the new system he said probably would occur on a weekend in the winter. Everything would shut down on Friday evening and Monday morning when everybody wakened there would be an announcement that the New System was in place. During the process in getting the United States ready for these changes everybody would be busier with less leisure time and less opportunity to really look about and see what was going on around them.

Ticking all the boxes

The Climate Cult and New Wokeness, manipulated by the same force behind the pandemic, disgustingly exploited the 'virus' economic crash to impose the Green New Deal, racism and migrant agendas with the utterly ludicrous Nancy Pelosi-led Democrats insisting that any government financial support must be dependent on companies employing diversity officers and accepting carbon emission targets. New Woke New York Mayor Bill de Blasio linked the 'pandemic' to 'structural racism'. We are truly dealing with heartless psychopathy here and you watch the Climate Cult use the economic fall-out of the 'virus' response to push for deindustrialisation and the Cult's new economic system. The Gate-Davos World Economic Forum published the most pathetically predictable article headed: 'How COVID-19 might help us win the fight against climate change'. You don't say. The author was Victoria Crawford, Project Lead,

Environmental Resilience, at the World Economic Forum Geneva. She said:

While we are reeling in the shock of what is happening around us and coming to terms with our new reality, we could seize this moment as a unique window of opportunity to re-build our society and economy as we want it. With scientists warning we have 10 years left to avoid the worst consequences of climate change, this could offer an opportunity to fix the climate crisis before it's too late. A number of shifts brought on by the COVID-19 emergency lay the groundwork for the transformation required.

Which is, of course, one reason why the virus hoax was perpetrated. Calls soon began for the Marxist, technocratic, 'Green New Deal' to be the foundation of any economic recovery and the almost permanently scowling puppet-child that is Greta Thunberg pronounced: 'Whether we like it or not the world has changed, it looks completely different from how it did a few months ago, and it will probably not look the same again, and we are going to have to choose a new way forward.' Oh, and what way would that be, Greta? *Ahh*, your way – or rather the way of the adults that control you from the shadows. 'If one single virus can destroy economies in a matter of weeks, it shows we are not thinking long term and we are not taking these risks into account', said the saviour of the world. Shakes head, moves on. New York congresswoman Alexandria Ocasio-Cortez, a face of the Green New Deal, surveyed the economic devastation faced by Americans and said of the oil price collapse: 'You absolutely love to see it. This along with record low interest rates means it's the right time for a worker-led mass investment in green infrastructure to save our planet.' The narcissism and lack of self-awareness is breathtaking. Brian May, guitarist with the band Queen, cited eating meat as the cause of the 'virus' as he promoted veganism. May said he had gone into protective isolation early because he 'saw it coming'. I wonder how many have seen him coming? New Woke Germany closed its border to visitors from Europe, but migrants claiming asylum from the Middle East and Africa were still allowed to enter. Something similar was naturally happening in Sweden. Efforts to stop migrants continuing to enter the United States to take well-paid jobs until Americans recovered from the economic hurricane were blocked – of course they were. One Cult agenda could not be allowed to get in the way of another and every opportunity was taken to cash-in on the manipulated panic. George Soros demanded that prisoners be released from jail because of the 'pandemic' to advance his efforts to create the 'jungle environment' described in Cult documents and thousands in jail for serious crime were set free. Typical of the New Woke mentality planned to be unleashed in the wake of the 'pandemic' is British actor Idris Elba who told TV host Oprah Winfrey that the Earth had created the virus to, in effect, punish humanity:

We've damaged our world. And, you know, it's no surprise that our world is reacting to the human race. It's no surprise that a virus has been created that is going to slow us down and ultimately make us think differently about our world and ourselves ... For me, that's a standout thing that's very obvious. This is almost the world's cry out to say 'Hey! You're kicking me! What you're doing is not good. So I'll get rid of you!'

Get the message – humans are *dangerous* and so much so the government says you need to stay six feet away from any of them. Humans are to be feared. They are *horrible*. The ridiculous Elba also told Winfrey that he had tested positive with coronavirus and was 'recovering well' without developing any symptoms. The rather obvious contradiction between the Earth getting rid of humans with a virus from which he was 'recovering well' with no symptoms seemed to pass him by, but then the New Woke mind is good at that. Maybe the Earth is just crap at mass human genocide and leaves it to the Cult. Another ticked box has been the Cult assault on religion (any community group working in mutual support) with churches closed by law – some never to reopen again. This drove a juggernaut through the freedoms enshrined in the American Constitution and the Bill of Rights which were shredded by the Cult and its fascistic operatives and in doing so their political goons were acting illegally.

The sequence

The major Cult centre of China came out of the ‘pandemic’ better than anyone even though the ‘virus’ is supposed to have started there. Look at the sequence of events and you can make that *because* it started there. It was vital for the pandemic scam to work for the lockdown response blueprint to be secured from the beginning as described in the Rockefeller Foundation pandemic scenario document of 2010. The frenzy about a deadly virus circulating in Wuhan was met with dramatic fascistic lockdowns by the Cult-controlled Chinese authorities with people locked in their homes to die of starvation and others pulled off the streets or from their homes who ended up who knows where? The cases and deaths reported by the Chinese from the ‘new virus’ suddenly and miraculously started to recede down to a reported *nothing*. This is what can happen when your ‘pandemic’ is the result of fake diagnosis in a city notorious for respiratory disease because of its profoundly toxic air. Add to this that Wuhan was the first 5G ‘smart city’ and the potential to fake a health crisis is limitless. I stress that I am not talking about fake as in no one died, but as in what they died *from* and what was causing their symptoms – potentially everything from long exposure to toxic air to particular 5G frequencies. The key was to set in place the perception of the most effective way to respond to the ‘virus’ when it was said to have spread to the West and Tedros, the Gates-stooge at the World Health Organization, was immediately on-message praising China for its actions and pointing to the Chinese response as how the West should act when the ‘deadly virus’ arrived. For the Cult deception to succeed this had to be severe lockdowns and the closure of businesses that would collapse the world economy and independent livelihoods. Just as this was being imposed in the West China began its economic recovery to secure more control and power over the ailing Western world. Locked-down Wuhan became locked-down target West ([Figs 388](#) and [389](#)).



Figure 388: What happened in China would be repeated in other countries – exactly as planned once the blueprint response was created.



Figure 389: Teeming tourists in Venice.



Figure 390: ‘Social distancing’.



Figure 391: This is how it works and the 'pandemic' is a classic example.

Italy was the next media focus of attention to terrify the population in the West, and their out-of-the-loop politicians, with what could be coming to every country. This terror was underpinned by the outrageous death projections pouring off the computers at Imperial College. What they didn't tell you is that the centre of the Italian 'epidemic' of 'Covid-19' was a mirror of Wuhan in terms of infamously toxic air, the subsequent respiratory disease, and exceedingly high death rates. This was a region also recently introduced to 5G. The Italian government locked down the entire country from March 9th, 2020, as cases and deaths increased through fraudulent diagnosis of lung disease by other causes as 'Covid-19'. Public gatherings of every kind were banned including sporting events and all except essential and approved travel. People had to show forms at checkpoints explaining why they were travelling and there were fines of \$200 for being outside 'for no reason'. There were threats of long jail sentences for anyone who knowingly had the 'virus' (tested positive for genetic material, not the virus) failing to isolate and 'infecting' others who subsequently died. Law enforcement roamed the empty streets with surveillance drones ensuring compliance with house arrest ([Fig 390](#)). It was like a scene – appropriately – from a Hollywood dystopian sci-fi movie and the same sequence followed in other lockdown countries with fines or jail for those leaving their homes without authorisation. What happened in Italy further embedded the belief that lockdowns were imperative to 'save us' and other countries followed one by one like dominoes falling as they followed the same centrally-dictated Cult script. It's all a mind game. It is amazing how few people and key positions you need to control to dictate policy throughout an entire pyramidal system, be that in terms of government policy or top-down instructions to doctors and medical staff. This is done through a combination of Cult psychopaths (the very few) and clueless people who carry out the policy without question or challenge ([Fig 391](#)).

Follow the money – dependency

Economies were affected even more seriously by so much global production and supply being handed to China decade after decade by major Cult corporations to take advantage of slave labour while jobs were deleted at home. There is, irony of ironies, an almost total dependence on China for American drugs including antibiotics – a reported 96 percent of which are sourced to China. Similar dependency will be found in other countries. ABC News reported that around *90 percent* of the active ingredients used by American companies in drug manufacturing come from China and some say more. The government-controlled (everything is) official Chinese news service published an article as the 'virus' expanded gloating at the country's control over drug supplies to the United States and speculated on what would happen to Americans if China cut off those supplies. Why would America be so stupid as to become dependent for drugs and other basic products on a country we are told is the 'enemy'? It's not American stupidity in terms of the public, but Cult design through its Big Pharma cartel and compliant politicians while the Cult-controlled media provide cover for the Chinese dictators. The New Woke American media and other extremists said that to call the outbreak the 'Chinese virus' or 'Wuhan virus' was 'racism'. Presidential candidate Joe Biden said referring to the coronavirus as a 'foreign virus' was 'xenophobia'. Criticism of China is racist when the Chinese system is incredibly racist. Observe the New Woke/media theme of protecting the Chinese technocracy whether the subject is the fake 'virus' or 'climate change'.

Similar US and global dependency is being manipulated by the hour on Israeli smart and cyber technology with dependency on both China and Israel connected to the same planned outcome. In the end *China* is supposed to win this economic and possibly even full-blown ‘war’, not the United States, with Sabbatian-Frankists out of Israel systematically destroying America to ensure a global society based on the Chinese model. I say ‘China’ is supposed to win, but I don’t mean the country or its people. The Chinese *model* is planned to globally win with the Cult out of Israel at the helm, not the current Chinese dictatorship which answers to the Cult anyway. Look how much stronger China is now in relation to the West than it was before the ‘virus’ began in China. Claims about a bioweapon released from the Wuhan lab further fuels the fire for conflict with China which is the Cult plan. This does not mean that a bioweapon release (or the *appearance* of one using 60 GHz 5G) is not part of the Cult plan at some point. When the ‘prophet’ Bill Gates says that a bioweapon could be his ‘pandemic 2’ to follow what he calls ‘pandemic 1’ it’s important to take note.

Survival response triggered? Yep – now we can do anything

The pandemic scenario is more psychological manipulation playing off the public’s fear of death and the unknown to elicit the desired reaction and support for tyranny. An added bonus is that humanity’s innate fear of death and the unknown means that large swathes of the population have no problem with the most authoritarian response so long as they believe it will protect them from death and disease. Once the ‘virus’ hysteria was unleashed what followed was easily predictable as events and actions took on a life and momentum of their own with extreme authoritarian action taken to ‘protect the people’ amid public fear and panic. Israel, for example, changed the law to allow phones of coronavirus cases to be legally tracked and Google, Apple and other Cult fronts announced they were sharing user location data with governments to track the movements of citizens, detect gatherings and enforce social distancing compliance. France was among the first governments to demand this and others followed. In Britain, Europe, North America and across the world the population was faced with the full imposition of the state (the Cult global state in fact) through police and military – the combination planned for the Hunger Games global society. India began giving indelible hand stamps to people suspected of having the virus. Reuters reported that the Trump White House ordered federal health officials to treat top-level coronavirus meetings as classified which Reuters described as ‘an unusual step that has restricted information and hampered the US government’s response to the contagion, according to four Trump administration officials’. The classification was apparently ordered in mid-January, 2020, by the National Security Council (NSC) and government officials speaking anonymously were quoted as saying that this prevented experts in the field from taking part in meetings. Other reports have made it clear when dots are connected that the NSC was directing the response to the ‘virus’ along with the Pentagon and intelligence community which together with government administrators and law enforcement form the fascistic Deep State (owned by the Cult). This should have red flags flying from every pole. Every opportunity was taken to advance all aspects of the Cult agenda I have been exposing for decades. This included restrictions on legally buying guns in the United States with many gun stores forcibly shut down and the ultra-Zionist-owned *New York Times* somehow managing to blame Christians for the ‘outbreak’. Clueless politicians just trotted along behind Cult agents and agencies doing whatever they were told.

Divide and rule made literal



Figure 392: News report on panic buying. What happens when the reptilian brain survival instinct kicks-in. Never mind the rest of you it's all about **ME**.

Nothing divides a community faster than the fear that others may be carriers of a disease and could give it to you. People have been driven further apart and into further mistrust through what has been dubbed 'social distancing' which is defined as 'reducing the contact people have with each other' to include 'reducing socialising in public places such as entertainment or sports events, reducing our use of non-essential public transport or recommending more home working.' Populations were ordered to stay six feet from each other and not gather in a group of more than two unless they lived in the same home. A quick-step version of the Totalitarian Tiptoe was evident as they swiftly moved through ever more authoritarian measures which had not been considered necessary only days before. I call it the push-the-gate technique. You push the first gate and if there is no resistance you move on to the next one and push that. If there is no resistance you go on to the next, and so on. People were standing in line into the distance outside supermarkets on a one-in, one-out, basis no matter if the sun was shining or it was pouring with rain and blowing a gale (great for health). People just complied without question or challenge. The brainless controlled by the heartless just announced the next stage of the tyranny and like laboratory animals the great majority did whatever they were told. They may be the brainless controlled by the heartless but they are in positions of *authority* and so we must do what they say. Thus, in a sentence, you have the foundation of human control since humans came into existence. A predictable public response followed as panic buying (the survival response) emptied shops of food and other products ([Fig 392](#)). I went to a local supermarket which had been normal two days earlier and as I went to walk in a guy on the door who wasn't usually there said that I had to go to the back of the queue. There was so much space between people that I didn't even notice a queue. What queue? I asked. He pointed and there rolling back as far as I could see was this line of people all six feet apart – and this was in a quiet time in the middle of the day. Goodness knows what it was like in the busy periods. I never went back again to find out. Why was this suddenly necessary when it had not been considered to be so throughout the 'virus' hysteria right up to that day? No one seemed to be asking. How easy it is to impose anything in the face of unquestioning compliance ([Fig 393](#)).

The police-military state



Figure 393: Freedom deleted – it is so easy. (Image by Neil Hague.)

Draconian laws enforcing these impositions that suspended freedom and democracy were predicted to go on for months, even more than a year, and drive people apart in exactly the way the Cult requires to connect them ever more powerfully in wave-connection relationship with AI technology through which human interaction is conducted during ‘social distancing’. The psychology is again that humans are *dangerous* (see ‘global warming’) and AI technology is *safe*. We should not forget either that while billions can clearly be locked away under house arrest on a global scale their only other means of communication – the Internet – is controlled by Cult agencies and can be switched off any time they choose. *And a few people can't control the world??* Have no illusions that this is part of the plan at some point if we go on acting like rabbits frozen by the headlights of an oncoming truck. Democracy suspended, freedom deleted, but, hey, what’s the problem? We have surely learned from the experience what some of us have been pointing out all along: The police and military are not there to protect human rights and freedom. They are there to impose the will of the state (the few) on the rest of humanity. There are genuine people in the police and military and I most certainly acknowledge that, but alongside them are idiots and psychopaths who have been orgasmic in the new era of unchecked power. To think that some of the moronic people in uniform that have been caught on phone cameras have actually been given power over people’s lives. Police (and military in some countries) set up roadblocks to question people on where they were going and why. It was straight from the Nazi/communist playbook for good reason – it *was* fascism/communism or more accurately the fast-emerging police/military state of the Hunger Games Society technocracy.

Streets were tracked by drones straight out of dystopian (pre-emptive programming) movies with some used to bark orders from the air at the public below. Police extremists like those in Derbyshire, England, New York and elsewhere even used drones to track individuals walking in the countryside far from any other human being. In the case of New York and other American states the drones were gifted by *China* which would have access to the data. The UK’s Derbyshire police, led by Chief Constable, Peter Goodman, were clearly overcome with excitement at the near-unlimited powers they were given by ‘emergency laws’. Goodman’s legendary New Woke intellect includes removing Derbyshire Constabulary’s male voice choir from any association with his force because they refused to accept women members. It’s a *male*-voice choir with a particular sound, but don’t waste your breath telling Goodman as he continues to seek help in working that out. Goodman’s Derbyshire officers even poured black dye in a beauty spot called the Blue Lagoon to ‘deter visitors’ from going there and stopped and warned my son, Jaymie, for walking his dog miles away from the next nearest person. They insisted that he walked the dog in his village where there were a lot more people. This made no sense, but it wasn’t meant to. Endless and constant examples of such imbecility were imposed to get people used to unquestioned compliance like training a dog not to shit in the house. We even had Nick Adderley, Chief Constable of Northamptonshire in the English Midlands, threatening to have his officers check supermarket trolleys to see if people were buying ‘non-essential’ items. The level of fascistic idiocy required to make such a statement defies my imagination and at least he was quickly slapped back by political and public reaction. Manchester police connected ‘dangerous people’ with anyone posting ‘conspiracy theories’ online. The UK government decreed that people could only leave their homes as little as possible to buy food and to exercise once a day. How could exercising outside 10 times a day be any more ‘dangerous’ than going out once if you don’t go near anyone else? Of course it isn’t and how much brain power is required to see that? People were told not to go out in their cars for ‘non-essential’ travel when the idea that driving alone in a car could possibly pass on a ‘virus’ to anyone is sheer lunacy. The whole nonsensical charade was only to program compliance. I have been out whenever I choose and I have asked for a uniform or dark suit to explain to me how doing that while not going within six feet of anyone can be any more danger than doing so once. I have said I will stop doing that if they can give me a rational, intelligent, credible explanation for why there are added dangers. I am still waiting. Police in ‘free Germany’ arrested a medical lawyer Beate Bahner, in the southern state of Baden-Württemberg for

launching a legal challenge to the lockdown with their version of the Supreme Court and she was held in a mental facility. The Nazis never went away. They just changed their disguise – until now.

This is what happens when you put power-crazed psychopaths and idiots in uniform. The Cult knows that when you give fascist power to the power-crazy they will exploit that and take it to extremes. Psychopaths are naturally attracted to positions of power over others and while there are many decent, genuine police officers there are a very large number of psychopaths in uniform worldwide and this has become obvious in the lockdowns. The authorities and their police enforcers went further by setting up networks for the public to report anyone ‘violating lockdown laws’ just like the infamous Stasi in Communist East Germany. This was instigated everywhere. Eric Garcetti, the ridiculous and fascistic mayor of Los Angeles, urged the public to ‘snitch’ on those that ‘violated’ stay-at-home laws and promised that those that did would be rewarded. He talked about ‘hunting down’ those that did not comply with his Nazi-like dictates. None of this must be forgotten and enemies of freedom like Garcetti, Goodman, Adderley, and the long, long list of politicians, officials and law enforcement personnel who have deleted not only human rights, but independent livelihoods, must be held to account and removed from office. They have all shown they cannot be trusted with the most basic freedoms and rights. With so much of the human race little more than software programs responding to ‘enter’ extraordinary numbers of people were insisting on the deletion of their own freedom and quite willing to report neighbours and others for violating even the fine detail of the fascism. Some even reported neighbours for going into their own garden more than once. You have to be utterly and *totally* unconscious to do that, but you see how tenuous freedom really is when even those who should be demanding it are willing to aid its destruction. Cue Morpheus:

The Matrix is a system, Neo. That system is our enemy. But when you’re inside, you look around, what do you see? Businessmen, teachers, lawyers, carpenters. The very minds of the people we are trying to save. But until we do, these people are still a part of that system and that makes them our enemy. You have to understand, most of these people are not ready to be unplugged. And many of them are so inured, so hopelessly dependent on the system, that they will fight to protect it.

How right that has been shown to be during current events. One woman told the media how she was ‘named and shamed’ by neighbours on Facebook for not joining in the weekly mass clapping for health workers, most of whom were working hard every day trying to find things to do in near-empty hospitals. She said she missed the (concocted) clapping after a ‘rough night with my son’ and was told she ‘didn’t deserve to use the NHS if I or my family get ill’. What a bunch of utter numbskulls. Tell them anything and they will believe it so long as you have a position of authority. All that consciousness always available and yet so little accessed.

The media makes fascism possible (as it did in Germany)



Figure 394: How the few control the many and the global media.

Another group that must be held to account are the mainstream media without which the scam could not have succeeded. Fear and chaos are the Cult’s currency of control and the ‘virus’ propaganda triggered

that in unlimited abundance. What people *believe* about a ‘danger’ is all that matters and the media was deployed as always to terrify the population. I say ‘deployed’, but most didn’t need ‘deploying’ when their unresearched ignorance did the job without any encouragement. One guy I heard typified the media approach in general worldwide. I switched on the car radio just twice during the hysteria to a show on the UK’s TalkRadio station presented by a bloke called Mike Graham who refers to his slot as the *Independent Republic of Mike Graham*. I wonder how ‘independent’, as in ‘not of the system’, that the following could be considered. Within seconds of turning on the first time Mr Graham announced that ‘Covid-19’ was ‘the greatest health crisis the world has ever seen’. That would include the Black Death would it, Mr Graham, which wiped out up to 60 per cent of Europe’s entire population? What utter garbage. The second time I heard him Graham was immediately into a rant about people whining over the loss of freedom and talk of troops imposing a lockdown. If that was what the government said must happen we should just accept it, pronounced the ‘independent’ Mr Graham ([Fig 394](#)). This is the same chap who I heard a few months earlier saying that not allowing unvaccinated children to go to school was ‘fair enough’. Former CNN host Piers Morgan, a legend in his own mind, screamed (he always screams) that Britain must go into lockdown to ‘save lives’ because that is what the experts say. Who are these experts, Mr Morgan? What is their background? Do they have an agenda? Who are they connected to? Does what they say about the ‘virus’ actually make sense in the world of fact rather than unthinking emotion? Such questions would not have breached his *‘I am right’* narcissism, but the consequences for the population, in terms of livelihoods and freedom, have been utterly catastrophic. Morgan and Graham were fine, though, because they were designated by the government to be doing ‘essential work’ which I define in this case as propaganda. The Morgans and Grahams live in the permanent illusion (like most of their profession) that they are ‘journalists’ and we had best leave them to their self-delusion and move on. Press-enter people should not be journalists because press-enter people cannot *be* journalists. Proper journalists don’t press enter – they question everything. Instead we have fake ‘journalists’ helping to perceptually program great swathes of the global population that also question nothing.

Even more sinister than the merchants of repeated government propaganda are those in the media who have actively worked to undermine and censor those outside the mainstream who are willing to engage in real journalism. The BBC has been among the worst which will shock very few and none with a mind of their own. The Corporation is funded by a compulsory annual ‘licence fee’ so the public can be forced to provide the funds for this department of government to program the same public with the official version of everything. Licencefee payers are funding their own perceptual programming and they may consider that it’s time to stop. First of all you simply cannot be a journalist by any proper definition and work for the BBC and the mainstream in general, but especially with organisations like the BBC. A proper journalist looks at all claims and information and then investigates to see if they stand up to scrutiny. Those findings are then communicated without any spin or censorship. By contrast the BBC does not employ journalists. They employ parrots of the government narrative. BBC and other mainstream ‘journalists’ must operate within clearly defined parameters which means there is a huge array of possibility that they cannot investigate, pursue or communicate. To do so would see the information blocked before ever going to air or getting in a newspaper. If something did slip through in a live situation it would be career suicide. I should also define what I mean by ‘official’ and ‘government’ narrative. The BBC often claims to be accused of bias by both Left and Right and so accusations of systematic bias to one side cannot be justified. Oh, but it *can*. I am not saying the BBC is institutionally biased to a *political* government, but to the *permanent* government or Cult government. Often the Cult narrative will coincide with the political government of the day, as with the unquestioning repetition of the official ‘pandemic’ story; but at other times the BBC will be at odds with the political government like it was with the Boris Johnson government over Brexit and is with any government that does not slavishly sing from the climate change song sheet. I cannot think of a single aspect of the Cult agenda – orchestrated through the permanent government – that the BBC has not promoted while censoring or

marginalising alterative views.

All these strands came together in a report by a BBC ‘journalist’ called Leo Kelion about YouTube deleting my interview with London Real during the ‘virus’ hysteria. First of all he took the 5G angle which was only a relatively small part of the conversation and tried to link what I said with people who were claimed to have damaged 5G masts in a protest against the affects. Kelion then said that I ‘falsely claimed’ there is a link between 5G and the ‘health crisis’. This was the ‘crisis’ happening amid empty hospitals that he would not have dared to acknowledge. He had no idea if it was ‘false’ or not and he merely entrained his ‘mind’ as always with establishment sources. If Kelion ever did research the subject properly and see through his own ‘fake news’ he would never be allowed to say so on the BBC and if he tried he would be out the door. He knows that and behaves like a good little boy with an eye on the mortgage. Meanwhile, Ofcom, the government broadcast regulator, had threatened any outlet that allowed even discussion of the possible link between 5G and the ‘virus’. Why? Because there *is* one, that’s why. Kelion and his like would not dream of rising from their knees and ceasing to worship and pay homage to the government appointed Ofcom chief, the patron saint of censorship and freedom deletion, Melanie Dawes. He’s a good lad, a perfect BBC asset – he does what he’s told and knows his place. Most sinister, however, was the way he described how YouTube ‘changed its rules after the BBC questioned why the video was permitted’. He questioned ‘why the video was *permitted*?? An excuse-for-a-journalist working for a publicly-funded broadcaster played a part in the censorship of freedom of speech?? Extraordinary. No one who seeks to censor freedom of expression or asks why it was not done can even come close to being a journalist. Real journalists are in the frontline of demanding freedom for everyone – including those they don’t agree with. The BBC ‘competitor’ known as ITV (*Independent Television*, I kid you not) did something similar. It said that ‘shortly after ITV News contacted Facebook, the video was removed for breaking misinformation rules’. I guess that was just a coincidence was it? Fake journalists help to get real journalism silenced. ITV mirrored the BBC line with ‘Facebook has followed YouTube in removing a video of conspiracy theorist David Icke falsely linking coronavirus and 5G’. What research had the writer done on the subject? *None*. How did ITV or Facebook know what was ‘misinformation’? Facebook had the answer: ‘The World Health Organization (WHO) are providing us with clear guidance on what misinformation in relation to Covid-19 could lead to real-world harm.’ What can you do except laugh? Newspapers covered the story in much the same way including a ‘journalist’ on the London *Sun*, Charlotte Edwards. The *Sun* is owned by Rupert Murdoch (as is Mike Graham’s TalkRadio) and Murdoch newspapers in Australia played a major role in getting me banned from the country by an Immigration Minister, David Coleman, who admitted in ‘his’ judgement that I had done nothing wrong on any of my previous long list of speaking tours. Edwards said that I made ‘the false claim that a coronavirus vaccine will include nanotechnology microchips’. Ms Edwards does not have a clue if the statement is false or not. I have been researching the subject for 30 years – she has not been researching it for 30 seconds. This is still more confirmation that the mainstream media does not employ real journalists and they most certainly will never be employed by anything to do with Murdoch. Then the (Gates-connected) Comcast, NBCUniversal-owned CNBC in the United States bragged that its intervention had led to Spotify deleting one of my ‘virus’ interviews. All this effort by the ‘all-mighty Elite’ just to stop ‘little me’. Actually, to go to these lengths over one man shows that they are not ‘mighty’ at all as they desperately sought to remove all trace of me while at every stage they were giving me more credibility and gathering ever more support for my work. No amount of evil can prevail over one open heart.

Banned by YouTube and Facebook – the sequence

The classic ‘coming out’ of a ‘journalist’ censor was an Israel-obsessed bloke called Nick Cohen on the London *Guardian* website who writes a column for its sister paper, the *Observer*. These are the most New Woke of UK papers along with the hilariously-named *Independent*. The *Guardian* and *Observer* take every permanent government narrative and repeat it as Gospel truth while promoting themselves as ‘radical’

and ‘of the Left’. Among the funders of the *Guardian* group is Bill Gates who also gives money to the BBC, ABC and National Public Radio in the United States, and a list of other media. This Nick Cohen chap said with no evidence whatsoever that I was a danger to public health and that I should be banned from YouTube and social media and then went on to repeat the permanent government narrative in archetypal *Guardian/Observer* fashion. He’s entitled to his opinion – he just doesn’t think that others should be given the same freedom. I support his right to free speech while he wants to delete mine. Which of us is an agent of tyranny, one could legitimately ask? Cohen described what I say as ‘toxic lies’ and called for government censor Ofcom to be given the power to censor YouTube content in the same way that it does with UK broadcasters. He also lamented the fact that a video of mine entitled ‘Is there a virus?’ was still allowed to be seen by the public. The man writing this is under the bizarre impression that he is a ‘journalist’. Anyone buying the *Guardian* or *Observer* is not taking themselves seriously and the reason newspapers are now struggling to survive is that ever-larger swathes of the public have both sussed the real role of mainstream newspapers and media and gone beyond them in terms of understanding the world. Their days are over and they have been their own executioner. Suicide I think they call it. One other point relates to Cult-asset Wikipedia and the relentless recorded visits to my page during the ‘pandemic’ by the ‘notorious’ Wikipedia ‘editor’ known as ‘Philip Andrew Cross’. Don’t fall for the ‘people’s encyclopaedia’ crap – Wikipedia is controlled by very few people. One Internet article described ‘Cross’ in this way:

He’s the obsessive, at it night-and-day, 365-days a year Wikipedia editor and online stalker whose account is used to pursue personal and political vendettas, but who, despite great publicity in the spring of 2018 about his activities, which included articles in many media outlets and a BBC World Service radio documentary, is still persecuting people – (or allowing people to be persecuted from his account), on a daily basis.

At the time of writing the Philip Cross account had made a staggering 159,607 Wikipedia edits in a fifteen-year period. Incredibly the Cross account did not take a single day off from editing Wikipedia from 29th August 2013 to 14th May 2018. Not even on five consecutive Christmas Days ...

Well, old ‘Cross’(clearly more than one person) seemed to be obsessed with my page when I began to challenge the ‘virus’ narrative and to give you an example ‘he’ took just 19 minutes after Nick Cohen tweeted his ‘ban Icke’ article for it to be added to my Wikipedia page. They think they are so clever when they’re really hilarious. I just laugh and hope that one day, through trial and error, they might get a life. Cohen headed his tweet with archetypal New Woke self-delusion and inversion: ‘The *liberal* case for banning David Icke’ (my emphasis). You see what I mean about hilarious. When you have been researching the global conspiracy as long as I have, you recognise recurring patterns and sequences. Cohen’s article felt to me like the start of something aimed at getting me deleted from mainstream platforms. He is an ultra-Zionist who sees ‘anti-Semitism’ everywhere and has attacked Jewish people with a mind of their own about Israel. The Canary website dubbed Cohen a ‘rancid hate-goblin’ for doing so. The label ‘anti-Semite’ is constantly used to silence those getting too close to the truth and it is the calling card of the Jew-hating Sabbatian-Frankist network of the Cult. I am not saying that people like Cohen know they are serving the interests of the Sabbatian-Frankists – I would certainly not credit him with the intelligence or awareness to know that; but in his obsession with labelling critics of the Sabbatian-Frankist government of Israel as ‘anti-Semites’ this is what he is doing and there is a whole vast network doing the same in various levels of knowledge of the agenda they are serving from zero to totally in the loop.

Pretty much immediately after Cohen’s demand that I be deleted from YouTube and social media platforms came the ‘campaign’ to secure the same end by a strange group called The Center for Countering Digital Hate (CCDH). This is a man and a dog organisation registered as a private limited

British company while using the American spelling of ‘Center’ in its title. The CCDH is funded by the ultra-Zionist Pears Foundation which is a big red flag to me and its patron is a D-list UK ‘celebrity’, another ultra-Zionist sees-anti-Semitism-everywhere character called Rachael Riley. The Pears Foundation established the Pears Institute for the Study of Antisemitism in 2010 and has a funding partnership with the ultra-Zionist Charles and Lynn Schusterman Foundation. Lynn Schusterman was born a Rothschild. Another funder of this bunch of prats at ‘Digital Hate’ is Unbound Philanthropy which has links to George Soros and his Open Society Foundations. Unbound Philanthropy is described as a ‘New York City-based left-wing [New Woke] donor affinity group that primarily funds groups that support left of centre liberal expansionist immigration policies’. I guess after reading the book this far you won’t be shocked. The serious American connections to the Center for Countering Digital Hate would explain the spelling of ‘Center’ in the name of a ‘UK’ company. Taryn Higashi, Executive Director of Unbound Philanthropy, sits on a Soros Open Society Foundations advisory board and specialises in promoting immigration and ‘refugee issues’. Yet another use-‘anti-Semitism’-to-silence-your-targets operation in the UK is Hope not Hate, which I say should be more accurately called ‘Hate not Hope’. They have sought to have me censored by ironically hurling hate in my direction and they are vocal supporters of the Center for Countering Digital Hate. Purely by coincidence you understand Hate Not Hope has been funded by … Unbound Philanthropy. Further Digital Hate funders include the Barrow Cadbury Trust, Joseph Rowntree Charitable Trust and the Laura Kinsella Foundation.

Soon after Nick Cohen’s *Observer* article Digital Hate produced a ‘report’ on how many people had seen my information on YouTube and social media about the ‘pandemic’ and demanded that I be deleted. They estimated ‘30 million’, but they were way too low in their numbers. The ‘report’ was outrageous in its inaccuracies and manipulation of information. Among those acknowledged for their input were Dr Daniel Allington of King’s College London; Dr Rob Ford, University of Manchester, Jonathan Sebire from something called ‘Signify’, and Dr Siobhain McAndrew, University of Bristol, who is a director of the Center for Countering Digital Hate. Signify is an ‘ethical science data company’ that clearly believes that ‘ethics’ should include silencing people they don’t agree with and it apparently wants ‘to show the world that AI and big data can build social empathy and inspire better products and policies’. Meanwhile Sebire, who appeared to be obsessed with people staying at home, was showing the world he doesn’t give a damn about freedom of speech and opinion. The Digital Hate rabble announced they would now seek to have me banned from all mainstream Internet using the hashtag #DeplatformIcke. They claim to be an ‘anti-hate’ organisation and yet targeted me for what I was saying about the pandemic hoax. Ugh? Why? To serve their masters, of course, who just want me silenced by any means or excuse. Almost immediately afterwards while Digital Hate was crowing pathetically that they had ‘800 signatures’ on a petition (wow!). Facebook pulled my page with three quarters of a million followers (despite the seriously extreme shadow banning and suppression of numbers that went on for five years) and YouTube deleted my channel and all my videos. In doing so they denied nearly a million subscribers from seeing them. The ‘petition’ was signed by such intellectual giants as MP Damian Collins, as well as ‘celebrity’ TV medics Dr Christian Jessen, Dr Dawn Harper and Dr Pixie McKenna who all appear in a television series called *Embarrassing Bodies*. It ought to be called simply *Embarrassing* surely? This is the same Christian Jessen who said in a media report on March 13th, 2020, that Italian people were using the coronavirus outbreak as an excuse to have a ‘long siesta’. He said of the ‘virus’: ‘I think it’s an epidemic lived out more in the press than in reality … I mean if you think about flu right, without getting too heavy, flu kills thousands every single year.’ He added: ‘This is like a bad cold really, let’s be honest.’ He then signs a petition to have me banned for underplaying the danger of the ‘virus’. Yes, words fail me, too. D-list TV ‘celebrity’ Rachael Riley, patron of the Digital Hate group, tweeted on news of my ban:

The hate preacher was banned from Australia. Big arenas have rejected him, yet social media orgs allow him a megaphone (& pocket the profits). Facebook have finally deleted him today!!

She's a lovely lady, so kind, so supportive of human rights, and believes passionately in freedom – for herself. She didn't mention of course that the other bans she refers to were the result of the same lies and disinformation by the same global network. I have seen the pattern so many times of man and a dog organisations being set up to demand something and then getting what they demand. YouTube of the fascism-facilitating Susan Wojcicki said they deleted decades of my videos because they had received a 'complaint'. Oh, you mean the one you knew was coming, Ms Wojcicki? Facebook said that I had breached its 'community standards' (delete anyone challenging the narrative of the deeply corrupt Gates WHO) by posting 'health misinformation that could cause physical harm'. It was straight out of the Event 201 'simulation' run by the Gates Foundation six weeks before the 'virus pandemic' began.

The 'Digital Hate' silence-Icke network

People who support my work worldwide in the now hundreds of millions at least were naturally furious and the Center for Countering Digital Hate Twitter page was inundated. A supporter began to investigate the organisation, nominally headed by 'chief executive' Imran Ahmed. Their website included an 'Our People' section that consisted only of images of Ahmed with one of Rachel Riley taking a selfie with him. The organisation has many connections and the citizen journalist uncovered that two of its directors (they keep changing) – plus CEO Ahmed – were people with extremely close connections to the UK Labour Party of 'leader' Keir Starmer, who I said earlier lives on his knees with his tongue extended pointing to Tel Aviv. One of the Digital Hate directors named by the group is Morgan McSweeney – *campaign manager to Starmer* in his bid for the leadership. McSweeney is a central player in Labour Together Ltd, 'a group of committed Labour members, supporters and politicians', based at the same address as the Center for Countering Digital Hate – Langley House, Park Road, East Finchley, London. The Labour Party was hijacked by ultra-Zionism and Sabbatian-Frankists during the spineless lack of leadership of the previous incumbent, Jeremy backbone-deleted Corbyn. Labour Together's leading light and director is the ultra-Zionist Trevor Chinn, funder of ultra-Zionist arse-licker Labour figures like Tony Blair, Ruth Smeeth, Liz Kendall, Tom Watson and Keir Starmer. The Labour Party is further controlled by a group called Momentum which is the work of Zionists Jon Lansman, James Schneider and Adam Klug. Momentum has also campaigned to have me silenced and produced a video claiming that criticism and exposure of the House of Rothschild is 'anti-Semitism'. Exposure of a global elite banking family is a no-go area to a group that supposed to represent the working class? But you get what is really going on. I say 'group'. In fact all these 'groups' that I've mentioned, including 'Digital Hate', are private limited companies.

Another Digital Hate director is Kirsty McNeil who was a Senior Advisor at 10 Downing Street for three years and a speechwriter for Labour Party Prime Minister Gordon Brown. Having unfortunately heard some of his speeches she obviously wasn't very good. She is now Executive Director of Policy, Advocacy and Campaign at Save the Children UK and a director of the Holocaust Educational Trust. It turns out that 'Chief Executive' Imran Ahmed has 'worked as a political advisor to senior Labour politicians from across Labour's political spectrum for eight years, including in three elections and two referendums'. He wrote a book with Labour MP for Wallasey, Angela Eagle, called *The New Serfdom* which I guess must include censoring those that challenge The System. The emergence of the Center for Countering Digital Hate involved a further recurring pattern. The first mention appears to have come predictably in the *Guardian* on September 18th, 2019, in an article headlined: 'The Best Way to Deal With Online Trolls, Do Like Rachel Riley and Starve Them of Oxygen'. Another appeared on the BBC website – equally predictably. One commentator said: 'It certainly is remarkable that major news outlets would be interested in the launch of a brand new NGO with no track record, which means that the CCDH is clearly very well connected.' Oh, just a little bit. It is part of a vast worldwide web of censorship – see Postscript for more on this.

The BBC and others allowed this rabble to attack me without ever asking for a reply or setting up a

debate with me. The same is true of the entire mainstream media even throughout the furore about what I was saying and the multiple bans that were happening. I could be attacked and demonised at will without even a right of reply. What gutless and compromised people they are who masquerade as ‘journalists’. The Brain of Britain that is TalkRadio’s ‘independent’ Mike Graham attacked me for ‘scaremongering’ over what I was saying about the pandemic scam and its goal of global control. Naturally he never had me on to debate with him. Rupert Murdoch and Ofcom’s Melanie Dawes would have smacked his bum. To show just how out of touch and meaningless the mainstream media has become with its falling audiences a third interview I did with London Real about the ‘virus’ and the reason it was being hoaxed got a massive audience worldwide – said to be more than a million – when streamed through non-YouTube sources. Ironically the interview was also streamed live on YouTube and apparently attracted the biggest live-stream audience in the world on the platform that day before Susan Wojcicki adjusted her spinning knicker gussets, screamed very loudly, and had it pulled. Next the ultra-Zionist and Labour Party-dominated Center for Countering Digital Hate produced another ‘report’ demanding that London Real and others who have even *interviewed* me should be deleted in the same way and all videos with me on any other YouTube channel be taken down. Fascism, anyone? This is the road to Orwell’s ‘unperson’ – someone whose existence was erased from all records. This is how terrified the Cult is of me and with good reason. I am their worst nightmare and every day they confirm that with their desperation to silence me.

Neocon NewsGuard

The Digital Hate group didn’t manage to get Twitter to pull my account and so along came another elite censorship front called ‘NewsGuard’. I received this email from a Kendrick McDonald, NewsGuard’s ‘Deputy Editor of Rapid Response’. When I had finished laughing at such a ludicrous title I got round to read what it said:

My name is Kendrick and I’m a reporter with NewsGuard, a service that reviews the credibility and transparency of websites. I’m reaching out because we are publishing a report highlighting Twitter accounts with high follower counts who have shared what we have found to be COVID-19 misinformation to their large audiences.

We are including David Icke’s Twitter account based on posts reviewed by NewsGuard that have falsely connected 5G technology to the spread of coronavirus.

If David Icke has an on-the-record comment in response, or if you have one on his behalf, please let me know as soon as possible. We intend to publish our report the morning of Thursday, May 7 (EST).

I pointed out that being a ‘reporter’ or ‘journalist’ and working for NewsGuard was a contradiction in terms and it was simply not possible to do both. I asked him to send me the ‘evidence’ he had – with sources – that what I posted on Twitter was disinformation and I would not accept as a ‘source’ that ‘the authorities said’. As the book goes to print nearly two months later I am still waiting. Americans Gordon Crovitz and Steven Brill co-founded NewsGuard. Crovitz is former publisher of *The Wall Street Journal* and Executive Vice President of Dow Jones, current member of the Council on Foreign Relations (CFR), and on the board of the American Association of Rhodes Scholars. I mentioned the CFR earlier in the book as a Cult front within the London-based Round Table secret society network and Rhodes Scholars are named after Cecil Rhodes, the Rothschild agent who was the first head of the Round Table and plundered southern Africa for the Rothschilds. Rhodes Scholarships to Oxford University are awarded to those handpicked to serve the elite as adults. Bill Clinton has been among them. Gordon Crovitz has connections to the Neocon American Enterprise Institute with its close associations in mutual ideology and personnel with the 9/11 and ‘war on terror’ Project for the New American Century. Steven Brill is a

Zionist lawyer, journalist, and ‘entrepreneur’. He and Crovitz say they created NewsGuard to stop ‘fake news’ when the real reason is to protect the real fake news by downgrading and demonising websites that expose the real fake news spewing from the official narratives by the minute. Hence NewsGuard squeezed out from under its stone to target me. The following day after the NewsGuard contact a fulfilment company called James and James in Northampton, England, which had been delivering my books to customers for five years with not a problem suddenly told us they were cancelling the contract. They sent us an email out of nowhere that was not even addressed ‘Dear Jaymie’ when my son had worked directly with them the whole five years. The email was from ‘CEO’ James Hyde, co-owner with another bloke called James Strachan. It said:

Dear Sir/Madam,

Whilst we appreciate the rights of free speech within the UK, our business does not support the views held by David Icke and does not wish to be associated with those points of view, or David Icke Books in general.

I wonder how many customers would want to work with a company that would deliver their product – in this case books – for five years and then tell them out of the blue that they are no longer going to do so because ‘our business does not support the views held by you and does not wish to be associated with those points of view, or you in general’. So why did they not think this for five years and only in the middle of a war to silence me and my work coming from all angles? Well, obviously the question answers itself and it is the very spinelessness and lack of integrity displayed by this pair that allows the few to control the many. *The Answer* was not published and they had no idea what the content was anyway and so they were ‘not supporting’ views in books they had actually been delivering for *five years*. Pressure had been put on them and they dissolved like a snowball in the sunshine out of pure self-interest – end of story. They couldn’t even be honest about it. Only a few weeks earlier James and James had secured investment of £11 million from a company called LDC, part of Lloyds Banking Group. The chairman of Lloyds Banking Group is Conservative Party politician Lord Norman Blackwell who serves on the board of *Ofcom* that has sought through its CEO Melanie Dawes to silence me and exposure of 5G which it enthusiastically promotes in an extraordinary conflict of interest. Are these two James chaps really saying that their company will only fulfil orders for books and other products with which they personally agree? Maybe other potential customers might ask if that is the attitude they want to be associated with. I wish I had a pound for every time I have seen the words ‘whilst we appreciate the rights of free speech’ being followed by support for destroying them. They will have to live with that decision now for the rest of their lives. I wish them well because I couldn’t.

In the same period that I was being banned and deleted in all directions by Cult diktat the super intelligence that is Polly Boiko of Russian station RT re-emerged seven months after she interviewed me for a broadcast ‘in a few days’ which had never seen the light of day. She wrote an article on the RT website giving an account of our meeting all those months earlier, but still without using the interview. She couldn’t believe that the establishment was really frightened of me while at the same time somehow ignoring the fact that the establishment was engaged in a frenzy of deletion of my work. Boiko’s most memorable line in her patronising garbage was this: ‘...from the secret web controlling our every move to the perils of vaccines (there aren’t any perils, by the way).’ Those words were actually written by a ‘journalist’ while the Vaccine Court in the United States alone had already paid out \$4.2 billion in vaccine injury and death compensation against a ridiculously high bar to prove your case. These are the people telling you what is going on in the world, ladies and gentlemen. Yeah, I weep, too.

By contrast one mainstream television station called London Live did run an interview that I did with London Real at the start of the ‘pandemic’ scare in Britain which YouTube had not then deleted. Well,

their fellow ‘journalists’ in the mainstream and the regulator Ofcom, so beloved of Nick Cohen, simply could not move for severely twisted knickers and running in all directions at the same time while shouting ‘fire’. Ofcom ‘imposed a sanction’ on the London Live station for broadcasting ‘potentially harmful content about the coronavirus pandemic’ by which they meant that my interview actually broadcast potentially harmful content about the mendacious official story – which Ofcom exists to defend and clearly Nick Cohen, too. The government censor said: ‘While Ofcom acknowledges that Icke has a right to hold and express these views [it doesn’t], they risked causing significant harm to viewers who may have been particularly vulnerable at the time of broadcast.’ What harm would that be, oh Goddess of Censorship, Melanie Dawes? She doesn’t say. Ofcom said that it was ‘particularly concerned’ by my comments ‘casting doubt on the motives behind official health advice to protect the public from the virus’ – a line that ‘journalist’ Cohen also emphasised. No one must ever cast doubt on the motives of officialdom even though their actions have destroyed the lives and livelihoods of billions and their lie after lie that a child could take apart. In that one sentence Ms Dawes and Ofcom you have revealed all we need to know about you and what your job really is. The same goes for Gates, Zuckerberg, Brin, Page, Wojcicki, Levinson and Cook at Apple, Musk, Soros, Bezos, the bloody lot of them. One other thing to mention is the role of clickbait sites claimed to be part of the ‘alternative’ media which make up stories using made up ‘writers’ quoting made up people and are easily discredited by elite-serving ‘fact-checkers’. In doing so, they discredit in the eyes of many the genuine alternative media. Two of the worst are Los Angeles-based Yournewswire.com and NewsPunch.com (owned by the same people) which turn out knowingly fake stories credited to a ‘writer’ called ‘Baxter Dmitry’ who doesn’t exist. To think that those that own those sites would do this given what humanity is facing is beyond my comprehension.

What next?

The question of where we go from here unless people wake up fast was laid out earlier in the book even before the ‘pandemic’ hoax broke cover in China and I will focus here on the ‘what next?’ in relation to the ‘virus’ deceit. Having secured so much of its global Orwellian nightmare since the turn of 2020 the Cult will want to retain as much of its new police-military state as possible even when public pressure, defiance of the lockdown, and ever-gathering revelations about the nature of the hoax, force some respite from the worst extremes. They will certainly seek to limit gatherings to avoid mass protest with YouTube and Silicon Valley censoring footage of any protests on the grounds of ‘encouraging illegal activity’. The Cult makes the laws and then bans challenge to them or even videos recording any challenge. ‘New waves’ of the ‘virus’ will follow and especially just before the Gates vaccine is ready to be imposed globally. These may even appear again to come out of China. ‘Researchers’ in Cult-owned China said the ‘virus’ they have never isolated would keep ‘returning in waves every year just like the flu’. We’d better have permanent lockdown then, right? Watch for protesters against the lockdowns being blamed for subsequent ‘waves’. You will hear claims about the ‘virus’ mutating into other strains and that ‘recovering’ from the ‘virus’ does not infer immunity so making the case that everyone must be vaccinated even those who have ‘had the disease’. People do not have ‘immunity’ to ‘Covid-19’ because there is no ‘Covid-19’ and how can they not keep testing positive when the test is for a genetic code in their body and not a ‘disease’? How do you develop immunity to a genetic code that is not a ‘disease’? See how much control you have of a situation when you invent a ‘virus’ that doesn’t exist. Gates has already revealed the Cult strategy with his arrogant pronouncement that nothing can go back to ‘normal’ until the entire human population has been injected with the long-planned, carefully-prepared and Gates-funded toxic shite and nanochips. He has been supported in this no-normal-till-a-vaccine by ultra-Zionist Ezekiel Emanuel, Vice Provost for Global Initiatives at the University of Pennsylvania and hilariously chair of the Department of Medical Ethics and Health Policy. Emanuel’s father was a member of the terrorist group Irgun which bombed and terrorised Israel into existence in 1948 and he’s the brother of former Chicago mayor Rahm Emanuel, long-time Svengali (‘a person who exercises a controlling

influence on another, especially for a sinister purpose') to President Barack Obama. Ezekiel Emanuel also seems to have a problem with old people living for as long as possible. He said the lockdowns had to continue until a vaccine was found: 'The truth is we have no choice.' US TV host Tucker Carlson delivered a brilliant reply:

When a political operative like Zeke Emanuel, someone with a long history of lying, begins a sentence with 'the truth is' you should probably be on guard. When he ends that sentence with 'we have no choice' you should be terrified.

Just as the pressure was mounting to end the lockdowns the Gates-funded Professor Neil Ferguson and Imperial College, who prompted the lockdowns with shockingly inaccurate computer model projections, produced more 'models' in an effort to stop the lockdowns being rolled back. Ferguson said at the end of April before being forced to resign over his lover's visits that at least 100,000 could die in the UK by the end of the year if a gradual lockdown was implemented only to shield the elderly. He said it was impossible to send the young and healthy back to work while keeping the vulnerable in lockdown without seeing a huge increase in deaths. 'Professor Ferguson said some degree of social isolation will continue to be required until a vaccine to the killer bug is released', *Mail Online* reported. This man's doom-laden interventions at just the right time to secure the lockdowns and then his attempts to stop a roll-back surely cannot be explained away purely by idiocy and he must be subject to an open and independent public inquiry for the absolute catastrophic mayhem and human devastation that his 'models' have created. The same goes for the Cult-controlled Johns Hopkins operation in the United States that took part in the Gates 'simulation' Event 201, ran its own one called Clade X and has circulated the blatantly and shockingly false death figures to media and public worldwide. The Gates crowd are pressing for a vaccine to 'save us' from a 'virus' never proved to exist and even if you do accept its existence one which has remarkably low death rates only made possible by fixing the death certificates and numbers. For the Cult mass vaccine plan to succeed, played out through Gates, this information must be kept from the great majority of the global population through ever-more severe censorship by Cult media organisations. My banned videos which are now estimated to have been seen by tens of millions worldwide thanks to circulation by 'The People' have helped to throw a spanner in that works and this book will contribute still further. Please circulate news of the videos and this book to as many as you can.

Food control

Another crucial aspect of the Cult plan for total control is to manipulate a global food shortage to allow them to dictate all food distribution and who gets to eat. This will be decided by the level of unquestioning compliance. So how comforting it is that the Gates Foundation is 'partnering' (funding) the UK Department for International Development in work on 'food security'. Phew. The groundwork for food shortages is already well underway and includes driving independent farmers out of business and off the land – something that the 'pandemic' lockdowns will do in great numbers. Farmers have lost their markets by the closure of restaurants and hotels while other supply chains and markets have not replaced them. At the same time there are enormous and ever-growing numbers of hungry people. Ten thousand cars lined up overnight on one occasion alone in San Antonio, Texas, hoping to get something to eat from a food bank which was already unable to cope with demand as with others across the world. Produce rots on the trees and in the ground as farmers go under and the population goes hungry. One farmer said: 'We are being forced to plough under vegetable crops from coast to coast.' It's all coldly calculated to create mass dependence and control through hunger even famine. Eventually 'food' is planned to be only synthetic and strictly rationed as the new synthetic human emerges thanks to nanochips from the vaccine and other sources fusing the human body with technology and AI. Guess who is partnering with Cult 'food' giant Tyson Foods to promote laboratory-produced synthetic 'meat'? Yes, *Bill Gates*. The focussed

and concerted attack on restaurants, cafes and other independent food outlets are part of this attempt to control and transform ‘food’.

Then there is 5G. The power of 5G transmissions will increase exponentially the more it is expanded and 5G devices are in use. The effect on human health and psychology will expand at the same rate. These effects, which can be made to be severe, will be dubbed ‘the virus’ – ‘Covid-19’ or others – and be used to justify further lockdowns. I still have in mind those, on the face of it, crazy increases in hospital bed capacity and mega-mortuaries when the ‘virus’ does not begin to justify that. Maybe it’s all just to ramp up the fear; or maybe it’s not. 5G at particular frequencies like 60 GHz has the potential to run riot with human health and psychology. People must demand that 5G is switched off and not take no for an answer. Pandemics are not the only dice that the Cult is going to throw – there will be shocks and challenges and reasons to fear of all kinds as they seek to sprint for their finishing line of total control; but we can be bigger and more powerful than they are. We simply have to make that choice.

A peaceful revolution of mass non-cooperation with our own enslavement is urgently required to state the very obvious. Indeed ‘urgent’ understates speed at which we must respond. As I write protest and defiance of lockdown is beginning to mount, but we have to demand and accept nothing less than truly independent inquiries into what has happened and all those involved brought to book and sent to jail for the rest of their ‘human’ lives. Ultra-Zionist Democrat Adam Schiff has already made moves to hijack any inquiry in the United States in the way that happened after 9/11 when those involved in those attacks also oversaw the ‘inquiry’ into them (see *The Trigger*). Schiff needs to be told this is not happening this time around and he can fuck off. Gates should not only be jailed, but have his mega-billions confiscated and shared out among those whose lives and livelihoods he and those he represents have destroyed. It is not only time for The People just ‘to sing’ as in *Les Misérables*, but to *roar*. Peacefully, yes, but ROAR in non-cooperation with our own enslavement. Nothing less will do.

* See Postscript for ‘virus’ updates and this is best read before the final chapter.

CHAPTER SEVENTEEN

What is *The Answer*?

Yesterday I was clever, so I wanted to change the world. Today I am wise, so I am changing myself – Rumi

*T*he Answer has multiple strands, but one central core. Change what is happening at the core and everything else must change. This cause and effect is so simple that it will be dismissed by many in the belief that *The Answer* to the apparent complexity of human control must be equally complex. No, no, no. That's what the Cult wants us to think.



Figure 395: Locked away in the human eggshell of solidified perception. (Image by Neil Hague.)

The control system itself is not really complex, anyway, when you break it down to fundamentals. Its foundation is the manipulation of human perception and emotion into low-vibrational states and the entanglement of the waves emitted by those states with the frequency band controlled by the Cult. Through this connection the Cult further impacts on human perception and emotion in an ongoing feedback loop. *Gotcha* ([Fig 395](#)). That's it really. All the perceived complexities are spin offs from that connection through entanglement. These include everything from psychopathy, conflict and division to depression, anxiety and addiction. All result from the Cult mentality (psychopathy), the consequences for the population (depression/anxiety), and the desperation to escape from the effect (addiction). There are two ways to deal with a problem. You can seek a solution or remove the cause. Search for solutions and you will see complexity. Identify the cause and you will see simplicity. While we are in a low-vibrational state of perception and consciousness we remain enslaved in the low-vibrational Archontic simulation. When we expand into higher-vibrational states we reconnect with levels of awareness outside the simulation which then stops dictating all our perceptions and the world as it really is – and *we* really are – comes into focus. Many 'gurus' and 'spiritual teachers' will tell you (often for their own benefit) that the

way to achieve such expansion of consciousness is also complex. We must embark on quests, fasting, meditation, yoga, and lots of communal rituals, endless ‘workshops’, and green tea. I beg to differ. All those things are fine if people choose to go that way and I’m sure they can be helpful to many; but expanding your consciousness to breach the firewalls of the Cult is far simpler and requires just *one* change – your self-identity.

What you *think* you are makes you *what* you are in terms of life experience, behaviour, perception, emotion and the nature of the waves that you emit as frequency projections of what you *think* you are. Self-identity is the Cult’s Holy Grail because it knows that everything else comes from that. For centuries it has used religion to sell a self-identity of powerless subordinates to a demanding ‘god’ (the Cult and its unseen masters). Do what your ‘god’ wants or face the fires of hell and our agents (most unknowingly) in long frocks will tell you what ‘god’ wants, or rather what *we* want. Many versions of what I call the ‘God Program’ have been created and subdivided. This again presents the illusion of complexity when the God Program is deadly simple whatever name may appear on the temple door or ‘holy book’. Observe any religion and it’s the same blueprint: A version of ‘god’ or the ‘gods’ is invented through a holy book, text or legend, and men in frocks, now sometimes women, tell you what ‘god’ or the ‘gods’ demand and the consequences of disobedience. Christianity, Islam, Judaism, and Hinduism are all the same in their foundation structure and method of operation. Jewish influence on society and self-identity is way beyond its 0.2 percent of the world population and a key reason is the perceptual influence of its religion, especially on Christianity. Fear is the currency of control and religions are vehicles to frighten the population into compliance through fear of the consequences of not acquiescing to what your ‘God’ (the Cult) demands you must be and do.

When many began to reject religion other self-identities were employed to ensnare perception and dictate low-frequency wave transmissions. The Cult unleashed mainstream ‘science’ to tell us that we are a cosmic accident of ‘evolution’ and we don’t exist before conception or after death. There is no other ‘you’ except the one that you see in the mirror and identify with through a series of labels given and learned during an apparently meaningless lifetime of minutes or decades in which you make the journey from cradle to grave. Er, that’s it. If you accept this ridiculous concept you are accepting the narrowest band of self-identity that will hold you fast within the firewalls of the simulation. Today even those self-identities and labels are being subdivided and sub-sub-subdivided into ever greater myopia as New Woke drowns in the five-sense illusion of pansexual, polysexual, monosexual, allosexual, androsexual, gynosexual, asexual, emisexual, grey asexual, perioriented, varioriented, heteronormative, cishet, polyamorous, monoamorous and queer to sadly name only a few. With each new sub-identity the Bubble gets ever smaller and the vibrational disconnect with the True ‘I’ ever more profound. The Cult knows how we interact with reality while the target population in general does not and it mercilessly exploits this perceptual superiority. All human self-identity prisons are dependent on the flies in The Web not questioning their current sense of reality. The illusions are peddled by Cult advocates and unknowing promoters seeking to impose their reality on others through techniques of overt or covert compulsion. It’s not enough for me to believe what I do – *you* must believe it, too, because *I am right!* You’ll see this recurring mentality and technique throughout history in almost every culture and setting. Silicon Valley censorship is doing the same today in the latest incarnation. Nazi book-burning has become the digital book-burning of Cult-owned Big Tech. The Cult manipulates minds into smaller and smaller self-identities and many of those that succumb make it their life’s work to impose them on everyone else.

Limits of mind are only limits of perception

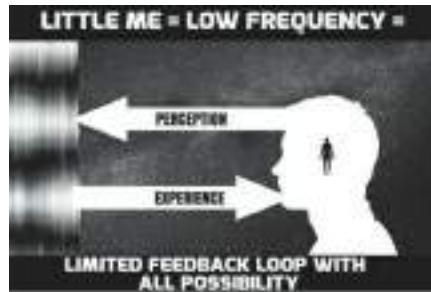


Figure 396: What you believe you will experience.



Figure 397: Ditch the labels – they are not YOU. They are only brief happenings that YOU are experiencing.



Figure 398: *The One* is always speaking to you. Burst the Bubble and you will hear.

The consequences of the self-identity label illusion are catastrophic for human and spiritual freedom for another reason. Your sense of self dictates the scale of consciousness, or True Self, that you can access. Perceptual myopia becomes awareness myopia in another feedback loop of ongoing ignorance ([Fig 396](#)). Believe that you are only your labels and the scale of accessed consciousness reflects that sense of limitation. Your scale of accessed consciousness feeds-back this sense of limitation to confirm that *you* are only your labels. Round and round the garden it goes often for an entire human lifetime. The Cult, working for its 'gods', has structured society to achieve this end. There is, you will be delighted to know, a way to break this cycle: *Change your self-identity*. Ask most people who they are and they will give you a list of labels – gender, race, job, age, birthplace, life history; but the labels are not who we are. People define themselves by the job they do when it doesn't matter if you are sweeping the streets (vital work by the way) or a movie star (less than vital work). You are the same *All That Is* having different experiences. It's just a job – it's not *YOU!* Labels are only a series of *experiences* happening in little more than a blink of an eye ([Fig 397](#)). I am heading into my 70s and a human life flies by so fast. It seems only yesterday that I

was in love with Janice in class 3A and dreaming of being a footballer. When you compare that with the infinity of no-time forever a human life as it is perceived hardly exists. Yet within this fragment of illusory 'time' our identity with labels directs and dictates everything. I-am-a this. I-am-a that. To re-word a song of the 1960s: I-am-a in the morning, I-am-a in the evening ... all over this land. I-am-a is the human perceptual Bubble that manifests as a vibrational Bubble. We are not an 'I-am-a' anything. We just are. *The One* is always speaking to you. Burst the Bubble and you will hear ([Fig 398](#)).

If people feel they need an I-am-a then how about *I-am-a All That Is, Has Been and Ever Can Be?* Even that is a name and so can only partially describe the force with no name and all names. How about a self-identity that says I am a point of attention within *Infinite Forever* having a brief experience as something called 'human' in the awareness that 'human' is merely the filtering and processing of information into a particular sense of reality? How about the size of my point of attention, whether myopic or infinite, is down to me and how much of my mind I am prepared to open? *Now we're bloody talking.* Shift your self-identity from I am my labels to I am an expression of the *Infinite One* and everything starts to change. I can say this with confidence because that is what happened to me. Everything I have done since I consciously began to awaken from the human coma in 1990 has come from that transformation of self-identity. No questing, fasting, meditation, yoga, communal rituals, endless 'workshops', or green tea opened my mind to expanded awareness. I remembered step-by-step who I really am and who we all really are and that transformation of self-identity transformed everything. *Anyone* can start the process anytime by ditching the identification with labels and seeing them as transitory experiences of the True Self. *The One* in awareness of itself talks to us in the silence beyond words and the synchronicity or language of life. We only have to listen.



Figure 399: Little Me only exists in a programmed mind.



Figure 400: All 'awakening' really is.



Figure 401: What you believe you will experience.

The transformation of perceived self from Little Me to Infinite Me immediately starts to unravel the firewalls of self-identity perception that have been holding the Bubble together. You realise there never has been a Little Me only a programmed perception of one ([Fig 399](#)). Your consciousness begins to move and stir from its density – its perceptual stagnation. You can't create a Bubble unless you believe you *are* a Bubble. You can't be entrapped in limitation unless you believe you are limited. *You are not*. You are All-Possibility, All-Potential, which the Cult is desperate for you to forget. 'Waking up' is only remembering what you've always known on the other side of the firewall ([Fig 400](#)). Now with your entrapped awareness freeing itself from the Bubble-wrap of label self-identity your perceptions expand as your consciousness expands. In fact, it is not even your consciousness expanding. It is your point of attention expanding into ever greater swathes of Infinite Awareness ([Fig 401](#) overleaf). Little Me is expanding into Big Me and ultimately Infinite Me. I am not saying that changing your sense of self will bring immediate 'enlightenment'. Self-identity with *All That Is* has to be a being and not just an intellectual concept. Many people are convinced of their own awakeness and enlightenment when they are prisoners of an *intellectual* sense of infinite identity. It's not *them*; it's still an intellectual concept external to them. You can observe this in the New Age movement and pseudo-spiritual movements where the mind convinces itself that it is something it's not. Intellectual 'awakeness' does not match its words with its actions and New Wokeness is the prime example. A New Ager once told me that she had given herself 'permission' to see more of her young relatives. *Permission?* Who is giving *who* 'permission' or what is giving what? Expanded consciousness does not give itself permission to do anything. It just *does it*.

Consciousness in awareness of the True 'I', as opposed to having a concept of the True 'I', is an integration or wholeness that you might call *Isness*. Even that is a label too far, but you get my point. It just is and doesn't require labels to identify itself to itself. It moves as one 'unit' rather than different parts that require 'permission' from each other. The intellect *thinks* while *Isness knows* as a conscious expression of that which *does know*. By knowing I don't mean in the form of names and dates, or touch it, taste it, see it, smell it, hear it, 'proof'. *Isness* knowing comes without words, for it exists beyond the human firewall where words are not necessary. Words are concepts of the simulation that are used to overcome induced limits of awareness that deny direct communication through consciousness. Words draw people into the five senses while *knowing* beyond words takes us home. Is it really a coincidence that near-death experiencers, and those that claim extraterrestrial interaction, say that communication was not by word, but by knowing? Again and again we have the theme of 'he communicated to me without words – I just *knew* what he was saying to me.' Even such examples of telepathy are only a low level of knowing without words and not the full-blown *Isness* that I am describing. We refer to knowing in the human experience as 'intuition' and this is predictably dismissed by Cult-controlled mainstream science which polices the realm of the intellect to keep expanded consciousness at bay while mostly having no idea that it's doing so. Why should we consider nonsense like expanded awareness outside the intellectual brain when my intellect is convinced that *I am right*?

Unravelling the fake self



Figure 402: 'Human' is only a point of attention – state of focus – but it does not have to be myopic. You can be 'in' this world but not *of* it. (Image by Neil Hague.)



Figure 403: The True 'I'. Everything else is illusion.

The first stage of *The Answer* is to change self-identity from 'I am my labels' to 'I am a unique point of attention within *All That Is*' ([Fig 402](#)). This stage is itself often done in smaller stages as the Bubble is picked away little by little although it can just go *bang* as it did for me on that hill in Peru in 1991. I know from the experience how challenging that can be when your sense of reality transforms in a comparative instant. Most people do it in steps and that is far easier although awakening needs to pick up its pace in the light of events. Expanded self-identity translates into expanded awareness as we access more and more of *Infinite Awareness* (intuitive knowing, insight, wisdom and love in its true sense) and our perceptions of reality consequently expand. It may begin with a feeling that the world is not as it seems to be in the sense that events are not happening for the reasons we hear on the news. At this point you might be considered a 'conspiracy theorist' and this is where expansion ends for many. To see that daily happenings have other sinister explanations can still be achieved by consciousness confined in a Bubble – albeit a bigger one – within the simulation. The consciousness shift involved will change the waves that such people transmit and they entangle with like-waves in what is called the alternative or independent media. They will also entangle with that they wish to investigate and uncover which leads to synchronistic 'coincidences' in which information drops in your lap or arrives by 'amazing chance'. Energy flows where attention goes and when you focus your attention on something this is what happens – you connect with it. If this is the limit of a perceptual shift then consciousness expansion will not reach a state of 'I am Infinity'. It will be more like: 'I am more aware of what is going on than the rest of the public who I shall refer to as "Sheeple".' This level of awakening will likely still relate predominantly to the realm of the five senses and even follow a religion or seek understanding through only mainstream science. They will see people like me as strange, weird and 'nutters' in the same way that the mainstream media does. For those who continue the process and expand ever closer to 'I am *All That Is*' – as a being and not just a concept – the firewalls of the simulation are eventually breached and amazing changes happen in their wavefield. Perception of self and reality is consequently transformed to one of *Isness*. I am not a body. I am awareness, a state of being aware. Everything else is only the experience of that awareness. All the life history, dramas, upsets, challenges, good times and bad, are only brief and transitory experiences of the True 'I' – a state of being aware ([Fig 403](#)). The 'I' is and it isn't. It exists and it

is non-existent. It is All-Possibility and No-Possibility. What it is for you is your choice. As you expand into self-awareness the simulation is not the only source of perception and reality. You are now connecting with consciousness beyond the firewalls and increasingly as the process continues you are in the world in terms of your five senses, but not of the world in terms of your perception of everything. This is why those who begin to awaken from the Bubble suddenly find their lives are peppered with 'coincidences', synchronicity and 'bits of luck'. These are only detailed possibilities that were denied before by the perceptual self-identity limitations of Label Me. The most powerful interaction with The Field is when we *know* rather than think or hope. Don't think it – *know* it. Don't hope it – *know* it. Hope is a complete waste of space. Hope projects you into a 'future' that doesn't exist like kicking a can down the street instead of picking it up. *Knowing* operates in the NOW which is the only 'moment' in which anything can happen. The Cult is quite happy for you to have 'hope'. It knows that can never manifest when 'hope' is attached to the non-existent 'future'. We must have hope? We must *know* and knowing comes from the heart. As you expand to breach the simulation myopia of random events, or 'dots', you begin to see the patterns and connections. The staggering scale and nature of human control becomes ever clearer. You see that manipulated wars which much of the alternative media believes to be about oil are actually part of a fantastic beyond-Orwellian conspiracy which has its origins not only off-planet, but in unseen bands of frequency.

When you reach this stage and share your views you will likely be seen as crazy and a sandwich short of a picnic. Your perceptions that come from outside the simulation are being judged by those still entranced by illusions within the simulation. If you are a public figure you will be mercilessly ridiculed and attacked by the media, including much of the 'alternative', and otherwise it will be friends, workmates and even family. If you have truly expanded your awareness to this extent you *won't care* what anyone says about you. Expanded awareness knows that whatever is thrown at you is only another temporary experience that doesn't matter in the great scheme of Infinite Forever. You will also understand why you are being treated this way. People have been through a lifetime of perceptual programming that ingrains a myopic view of self and reality. When you question that programming don't expect a round of applause. I have been asked if I knew what ridicule and abuse would follow when I went public with my views about the world and of course I did. I had worked in the media and seen what happens to those in the public eye who step off the Postage Stamp. I was sprinting away from it and so yes I knew what the reaction would be. I just *didn't care*. I am not the David Icke that they abuse and ridicule. I am the consciousness having the experience called David Icke. 'I' am that which is also observing the experience. Only when I *become* the experience and self-identify with that do the 'slings and arrows of outrageous fortune' kick in and trigger emotional response. Negative reaction is something that cannot be avoided when you are challenging the very core of perceived human reality. It goes with the territory and we either want to address the domination of the Cult or we don't. If we do there are challenges to face and if your consciousness is expanded enough into 'I am All That Is' you will say 'bring it on'. While low-vibrational responses will be hurled our way we don't have to entangle with them and experience their effect. This happens when we react with low-vibrational emotion to low-vibration emotional attacks. There is wave synchronicity and a feedback loop is secured. The perception of being consciousness having a human experience disconnects you from press-enter human responses. You don't see reality like the majority do and you don't behave in the predictable way. Human programming and ingrained insecurity fears the reaction of others. Expanded awareness doesn't give a fuck. Its focus is on doing what it believes to be right and not winning a popularity contest or being feted by the Mainstream Everything. Attacks by the system created and controlled by the Cult are confirmation you are on the right track. It is to be celebrated, not feared, and you can observe the madness from your own point of One-connected peace ([Fig 404](#) overleaf).



Figure 404: With a connection to *The One* you can observe the insanity and not be affected. (Image by Gareth Icke.)

Expanded awareness understands that it is not what is done to us which impacts upon our lives so much as how we respond – or don’t. If someone directs abuse at you and you become upset and offended the abuser has impacted on your life only because of your reaction which *you* have the power to dictate and control. It wasn’t what was said that hurt you. It was *you* allowing yourself to be hurt by caring about what was said. If the same abuse was directed at me and I couldn’t care less – let alone be upset and offended – the abuser has not affected my life or emotional state in any way except perhaps to feel sad for anyone that gets off on trying to hurt others. Kids are committing suicide over what others posted on social media. They have been so dismantled by insecurity they feel they can’t go on in the face of abuse from idiots, sociopaths and psychopaths. This is what the Cult and its Silicon Valley gangsters are doing to the young. If the system really cared about young people (it doesn’t) the emphasis would not be on censoring opinions and views. It would be encouraging and helping people *not* to be upset and offended by the words of others. ‘I think you are useless, ugly and horrible!!’ *And* – your point is? I am supposed to be hurt by the opinion of someone who is so imbalanced and mentally disturbed that they glory in hurting others? I think not, mate, now you have a nice day and I hope that at some point you’ll get a life. Bye. Not being offended and hurt breaks the feedback loop that abusers seek with abuse leading to upset leading to more abuse. The abuser is actually vampiring the energy of the abused and this can happen when the abused makes a wave entanglement through the resulting upset and offence. No response breaks the wavefield circuit. Abuse is not the problem, it’s the *reaction*, and the more people are upset the more it encourages the abusers to further abuse. The Cult wants people to be upset and offended to justify censorship of alternative information and opinion which is still another way New Woke serves the agenda of human control. The Cult seeks to break the human spirit and then censor hysterically to ‘protect’ those it has broken from being upset and offended. I did say they were psychopaths, right?

Fear is the control system



Figure 405: ‘Death’ which is so frightening to humans is only a shift in your point of attention.

Fear is a very a low-frequency state that acts as an anchor to consciousness expansion. We talk about being ‘frozen with fear’ and while on the surface there are fight-or-flight biological reasons for that it is a reflection of how fear slows the oscillation rate of the wavefield self and pulls us into density. The Cult seeks to spread fear everywhere – fear of death, fear of the unknown, fear of the ‘future’, and fear of the

consequences of not conforming to its demands (see mass lockdown house arrest). It is confirmation of global programming and biological (wavefield) press-enter encoding that people in almost every culture tend to react in the same way in similar circumstances – witness all the cultures and religions that all succumbed as one to lockdown house arrest all over the world. You see there is nothing to fear when your consciousness expands into awareness outside the simulation and your true nature comes into view. Death? Well, that's coming for the body at some point anyway. Do we really want to stay in this micro-band of frequency forever? Blimey, perish the thought. Expanded awareness does not fear death which it knows is simply a transfer of *attention*. Oh, no, I'm terrified!! Save me doctor!! We actually don't 'come' here and then 'go' somewhere else. We withdraw our *attention* from the focus of the five senses and with that we are *where we have always have been*. 'Death' is like removing a virtual reality headset and the Cult's game is to control the nature of that virtual *attention* we call a human life ([Fig 405](#)). I have no wish to ditch the headset before I have done all that I can. Once that point is reached I'll welcome it and be joyous in the freedom from limitation that follows. Fear of the future? What – fear of something that *doesn't exist??* How crazy is that? We live in the Infinite NOW and our experiences are created and visually strung together by our state of perception. Little Me will have a very different 'future' to Infinite Me purely by different perceptions leading to different wave frequencies entangling with different wavefields that are people, places, experiences and ways of life. We control our 'future' if only we realised that. Okay, what about fear of the consequences of not conforming? What is the opposite of not conforming? It's *conforming* and that's how we got into this mess by conforming to religious dogma, 'science' dogma, Postage Stamp dogma. How perfectly the definition of 'dogma' describes them all: 'A fixed, especially religious, belief or set of beliefs that people are expected to accept without any doubts.' If we go on doing that there will be far more to instigate fear as the Cult surges to its endgame than if we face this up now. Our own perceptual and wavefield state will dictate any 'consequences' anyway and one thing is for sure: If people fall into the frequency of fear they will entangle with the vibrations of the Cult that uses fear as a weapon. What you fear you make a frequency connection with and attract what you fear. *Know that you are in control of your life and not the Cult or random chance.* This is the revelation they want to keep from you.

The process of consciousness expansion is not about 'seeking enlightenment'. We are already 'enlightened' in the sense that we are and have always been *All That Is*. Expansion of awareness means to delete the *perceptual programs* that form the firewalls which block the influence of our greater awareness on five-sense-focused Body-Mind. 'Awakening' is not to become something new; it is to remove the barriers to what we already are. Perceptual programs are like low-vibrational onion skins entrapping our 'human self' in the Bubble. Perceptual programs *are* the Bubble. Persian mystic Rumi said: 'Your task is not to seek for love, but merely to seek and find all the barriers within yourself that you have built against it.' Expansion of awareness can only happen when the mind opens and to do that all current beliefs and preconceived ideas have to be set aside. Imagine you have cleared your home of all extraneous clutter or started with a blank sheet of paper. Nothing is ruled in and nothing ruled out. Using a computer analogy you prepare to reboot or 'shut down and restart' and enter the realm of anything is possible. This is as it should be when you are *All-Possibility*. What you allow on to that piece of paper – your revised sense of reality – is now decided by what you intuitively know to be right and what can be supported by the facts as they appear to be. This is no longer decided by repetition of the same information or by what some system-appointed, system-programmed, academic or scientist tells you; nor by some newsreader or excuse for a journalist. Expanding consciousness remains light on its feet and constantly ready to move. It does not allow new perceptions to solidify in the way of the old. It is aware that what we perceive in any moment is only what we perceive in that moment and certainly not all there is to know. Once you believe you've 'got it' in totality you are confirming that you don't. At any point we only know *some* of what there is to know until consciousness is fully expanded to perceive all consciousness and that requires the full-blown awareness of *The One*. Awareness expands with the understanding voiced by Greek philosopher Socrates when he said that wisdom is knowing how little we know. The full quote says: 'The

only true wisdom is in knowing you know nothing.' Awareness of that keeps the mind constantly open to other possibilities and wise enough to see that within Infinite Forever the possibilities are by definition Infinite.

One step, two step

Opening minds cease to be slaves to the program the more their consciousness expands and awakening people don't see the world and reality as the majority do. We can observe this theme throughout perceived human history with open minds standing out from mass conformity and targeted by the Cult enforcing that conformity. The difference today is that the number of minds awakening from the coma is heading towards potentially world-changing proportions although you won't know that if you watch the mainstream news. They'll be the last to see it. What I am saying here can be broken down into fundamentals. You don't have to know all the facts and details to awaken from the Big Sleep. Remember those song lyrics at the start of the book about not knowing all the answers but being set free by asking the questions. There are only two things to remember above all others:

(1): Your perceptions transmit frequencies reflecting those perceptions and they will entangle with wavefields of like-frequency. In this way we create our own reality and this is the wave-basis of what is referred to as 'karma' – 'the totality of a person's actions in any one of the successive states of that person's existence, thought of as determining the fate of the next stage'. My own definition of wave entanglement 'karma' would be: What you believe you perceive and what you perceive you experience. Take control of your perceptions and you take control of your life.

(2): Open your heart and you open to *The One* – a move that will expand your awareness faster than any other action. I'll have more on this shortly.

Those two things alone will change your life and collectively change human reality which is only a holographic manifestation of humanity's *perception* of reality. By perception I mean conscious *and* subconscious perception. Both generate the wavefields that entangle with perceptually-connected frequencies and I'll come to the subconscious in a second. If you give your power away you won't only entangle with others willing to give their power away to form the human herd mentality. You will also entangle with those that want to *seize* that power – the Cult. Willing to give away and wanting to take that power generates a compatible and symbiotic frequency alignment. Reflect on other symbiotic alignments that appear on the surface to be opposites and you'll see how we attract what we transmit. Fear of being violently attacked has a symbiotic wavefield relationship (conscious and subconscious) with those that wish to violently attack. In this way one person will be attacked the first time they walk through a park at night while others will make the same journey night after night and never be attacked. Before New Woke presses the fury button I am not blaming the 'victim'. It is nothing to do with blame. I am explaining the unseen wavefield relationships that lead to events in the world of the seen. Blaming self and others for what happens to us is a mug's game. Self-blame drives us deeper into self-loathing and low-frequency states while making no difference to what we blame ourselves for. Acknowledging behaviour and changing is how you take a negative and transform that into a positive. But, then, is it really always a negative? Or is it an experience that allowed us to see something that otherwise we would not have seen and presented the chance to learn, change, and see through the illusions that we believe to be real? Life often gives us (we give ourselves through wave entanglement) our greatest gifts brilliantly disguised as our worst nightmare. Blaming others for our fate is equally destructive and there is no more profound way to concede our power to others. When we say he or she is responsible for what happened to us we are saying they have power over our lives and we don't. What happened was the result of wave entanglement and that takes two to tango.

I am not saying for a second that people don't act badly towards others and they should take the

consequences for those actions that can include wave entanglement with a prison cell. I am making the point that if we leave it there the experience can go on being repeated. If our wavefield frequencies (perceptions) don't change then the same old entanglements must go on generating the same old experiences. I reported for the BBC decades ago on what were then dubbed 'battered wives hostels' where women were given protection from violent partners. Some of the women had been through two, three, even four, partners who were violent. The men should be dealt with who do that, but why did those women keep attracting the same type of violent people? That question has to be addressed to stop it happening and in this case lack of self-esteem will be at the core of it. Lack of self-esteem has a symbiotic frequency relationship with a desire for power over others and crushing self-esteem. See the humanity-Cult relationship. Notice how many women who have the living shit kicked out of them by violent men blame *themselves* (lack of self-esteem) for what happened. When we take responsibility for attracting what we experience we stop giving our power away – it's all *their* fault – and we take it back. We are saying that we are in control of our experience and not someone else. We can change the road we travel and who with and not go on repeating the same wave-patterns of behaviour and experience. To do this we need to realise that we *can* control our perceptions which control our wavefields which attract our experience. I have highlighted in detail in my books including this one, how the Cult manipulates humanity, but it is *humanity* that allows that manipulation to prevail. It's no good focusing everything on the Cult and ignoring the essential role played in human enslavement by humans themselves. A key to *The Answer* is for humanity to take responsibility for that and change direction.

Subconscious perception

The Cult is programming the subconscious mind individually and collectively in the knowledge that corresponding experience will follow. Manipulate the population to fear something and a symbiotic frequency connection will be secured to make what is feared more likely to manifest. Who will manifest it? *The targets will*. The point about the *subconscious* is vital to understand. Our conscious mind is only a fraction of Body-Mind which mostly operates in what is *unconscious* to the conscious if you get what I mean. It is unconscious to the human conscious although itself very much conscious in its own realm of operation. Here's a quote from earlier:

Every second, 11 million sensations crackle along these [brain] pathways ... The brain is confronted with an alarming array of images, sounds and smells which it rigorously filters down until it is left with a manageable list of around 40. Thus 40 sensations per second make up what we perceive as reality.

When you think that 40 sensations a second form the perception of the conscious mind and the other 10,999,960 are absorbed by the subconscious it is clear why the subconscious is central to dictating our perceptions, wavefield state and entanglements. Experiences, traumas and other happenings long forgotten by the conscious mind go on affecting subconscious wavefields and generating anything but random events that happen to us. I mentioned earlier how important it is to consciously acknowledge why we attract certain people and experiences or why we have certain fears or health problems. They will invariably be connected to subconscious emotional patterns vibrating away in our wavefields that the conscious mind no longer even thinks about. Maybe a boy or girl you had a crush on at primary school suddenly dumped you out of nowhere and decades later you are married with kids and can't understand why you have a constant fear of your partner walking out on you at any time when there is no conscious reason to believe that will happen. The possibilities are endless. When you make the *conscious* connection between an experience, fear or health affect, and the *source* of them in the subconscious, the emotional field is balanced, the wavefield changes, and the experience ceases to repeat along with the fear and health effect. Explore the patterns and see if you can identify the trigger. Some people have eye problems because there is something they don't – or once did not – want to see. Others have health affects in the

throat through a subconscious fear of speaking their truth. I have seen many examples of such patterns over the years and how they were deleted by conscious acknowledgement of the source and cause and effect.



Figure 406: A subliminal message that most cannot see at first becomes crystal clear every time once awareness is transferred from the subconscious to the conscious.

Subconscious connection to both perception and experience is why the Cult focuses so much of its manipulation on subconscious or subliminal programming which includes placing its symbols everywhere as I have already mentioned. Subliminal means 'below-threshold' – below the threshold of the conscious mind – and that allows images and information to bypass the conscious to be absorbed by the subconscious. Advertisements are awash with them for this reason. Conscious awareness that subliminal manipulation is all around us blocks its effect and the principle is the same as being unconsciously manipulated by people around you which can only be stopped when you become *consciously* aware of it. The subconscious is the stadium in which the Cult game is played. There is a subliminal message in [Figure 406](#) which apparently only about five percent of people see first time. Once you become aware of the subliminal insert that's the first thing you see whenever you look at the image again because the conscious mind has been made aware of what is there. This is the power of conscious awareness to override subconscious programs (the subliminal in the image is the word 'sex'). The principle applies to smartphone and 5G frequencies. If you are not aware of their wave affects you are open to have your subconscious accessed by their wavefields and it's the same if you *do* know about the dangers and fear them. A combination of acknowledging that those waves exist and what they are designed to do, plus the conscious *knowing* that you are more powerful than they are, is the best defence – as it is against all wavefields, technological or otherwise, including people, food, drink, pollution, disease, whatever. The body is an expression of the *mind*.

My almost constant daydreaming is the exploration of deeper levels of unconscious awareness and making them conscious. Bringing reality into a conscious state is vital when keeping us unconscious is the Cult means of manipulation. I don't mean to see everything through the five senses (which are mostly expressing patterns of unconsciousness). The five senses are irrelevant to this. I simply mean to become *conscious* of information and patterns of programming that are normally unconscious to humanity in general. Expanding awareness can lead to people healing themselves through the mind as they understand the connections. All illness is a wavefield distortion and the mind is constantly transmitting perceptual frequencies that impact on that field. What you believe you perceive and what you perceive you experience applies just as powerfully with health. If you believe a drug or treatment will heal you the mind transmits that perceptual frequency into the wavefield and balances the imbalance that is causing the problem. The treatment itself may not have had this effect at all. If you believe powerfully enough that it will cure you then *belief* in the treatment will heal you when the treatment alone would not. This is the 'placebo' effect and it can lead to spontaneous healing which baffles mainstream medicine that doesn't understand what the body is or how it works as an extension of the mind. In reverse we can think

ourselves dead if we believe the words of a doctor who tells us we have a certain amount of time to live. Most people do die within that time and not because the doctor's prediction was necessarily accurate. Some have died within the doctor's prognosis only for an autopsy to reveal they did not have what the doctor told them was going to kill them 'within six months'. We all have to go some time or we would be here forever (nightmare), but we have far more power over when that is than most people even begin to believe. This can extend to deciding when we will leave even before we get here by encoding the body oscillation with an end point. We may see this as someone just 'dropping dead out of nowhere'. I mean he was always so fit and healthy. There is more to 'Heaven and Earth' than ever we are allowed to know – unless we *choose* to know and make it our business to know.

Truth Vibrations



Figure 407: Truth Vibrations and the Great Awakening.

It is important to be aware that other sources of consciousness and awareness well beyond the energetic density and limitation of the Cult are at work in a quest to tease humanity out of its perceptual coma. There are people in the 'world' representing that awareness – symbolically sons and daughters of *The One* – just as Cult operatives represent their non-human 'gods'. In the early months of my own awakening in 1990, which went 'nuclear' on the hill in Peru in 1991, I met synchronistically a series of professional psychics. I made a conscious decision to meet only one of them, Betty Shine, while the others passed through my life 'coincidentally' one after the other. The common theme they said they were asked to pass on to me was that a 'vibrational change' was coming that is also called 'The Rebalancing'. This energetic change would (1) begin to wake up humanity from what I would call today the illusion; and (2) would bring to the surface 'all that had been hidden'. I called the first book that I wrote after my awakening began *Truth Vibrations* to describe the effect of this awakening frequency. I didn't just take what the psychics said and believe it without question although the common theme was compelling. It certainly felt right, but I waited and observed. Not much seemed to be happening for years and then it began. Today incredible and ever-increasing numbers of people are questioning reality and the nature of world events like never before. It won't seem like that if you only watch the mainstream media. I have been travelling the world year after year outside the Mainstream Everything and I can tell you that while it is still far from the majority human perception is stirring across all walks of life and the 'pandemic' lockdowns have caused vast numbers of new people to question the world and what is happening who never did before. It is happening on many levels and, of course, not always as full-blown awakening. The questioning, however, is now so fast gathering pace and people are opening their minds to possibilities they would never have considered before. I meet them all the time when I go out and when I'm travelling and as someone who remembers what it was like 30 years ago I can see the scale of change that is happening. Even what I would term 'System People' are looking afresh at themselves and reality. The part about bringing to the surface all that had been hidden is spectacularly happening. Consider what we know now about the manipulation of the world and the forces behind that compared with when I was told in 1990 about the Truth Vibrations and what they would do. The frenzy of censorship by Silicon Valley and other Cult sources is to a large extent a desperate attempt to thwart this awakening and so is

the AI-brain connection and Smart Grid. Unfortunately for the Cult they are dealing with levels of awareness far more powerful than it and its masters will ever be in their current state of perception and thus frequency. An understanding of the wave nature of reality and wave entanglement explains how the Truth Vibrations impact on human awareness ([Fig 407](#)). They are a high-frequency information field that change the wavefield oscillation of those they connect with. I was told that the first people to be affected would be the most awake (or least asleep) and eventually even those solid-gold asleep at the time would feel the effect. This does not mean that we can just sit back and wait for these frequencies to transform everything for better. They are a frequency band and we have to sync with it to be maximally impacted. How do we do that? We open our *hearts*.

With all *One's* heart



Figure 408: *The Answer*.

I talked earlier about the heart as the most potent connection to *The One* way beyond the frequency band of the simulation. The more our heart vortex opens the greater the energetic gateway through which we access love in its prime sense, wisdom, knowing, intelligence, and potentially Infinite Awareness in totality ([Fig 408](#)). We feel intuition and love in the centre of the chest for this reason and near-death survivors have described how when out-of-body they experience the same love (although much more intensely) that we can feel *in* the body through the heart. One said:

There was all this light and love and rejuvenation ... I felt myself expand within this light like there were no borders and I was just in this light and part of the light ... I felt like I was home. I felt ... weightless ... you don't realise how much you carry in this world [low-vibrational emotional density] and you don't realise until it's gone how light and weightless and free [we are] and expansive and part of something large, huge. It's home and you know it is ... It felt like we are all part of one thing.



Figure 409: *The Answer*.

Our heart vortex is our connection to *The One* and that's why such love is felt through an open heart ([Fig 409](#)). The Cult works so hard to close the heart for its own ends by generating fear, anxiety, depression, hatred, resentment, guilt and other low-vibration emotions that lead to the phrase 'my heart aches'. These emotions move the focus of attention and perception from the heart to the gut and create a feedback loop

between the belly's low-vibrational emotion centre and the head/brain. This oscillation generates perception that is overwhelmingly emotion-dominated and New Woke is a collective example of that. The belly vortex centre should be a phenomenal source of energetic power when in a state of balance and that potential creative power is also diminished by the chaotic impact of low-vibrational emotion. The Cult knows exactly what it's doing, that's for sure. Emotional reaction is constantly mistaken for a heart response thanks to the manipulated misunderstanding of what love really is. Attraction by itself is not love and neither is virtue-signalled emotion. Love in the sense that I am describing is balance – the balance of all forces into wholeness when all constituent parts become *One* and none dominates the other. Each contributes to the whole and none seeks to usurp it. Compassion and empathy only for some people is not love in its Infinite sense. Compassion and empathy for *all*, not a few, is what I mean by *The One*. Nor is this love *only* about compassion and empathy. It is wisdom, fairness, justice and Infinite Intelligence. In its dot-connected wholeness love comes from a perspective of dot-connected awareness. Love is therefore *streetwise* and sees everything from *all* angles.

The head can process information into a perception that is emotionally influenced by the gut and this can trigger a form of compassion and empathy with the planet, migrants, those that identify as LGBTQQFAGPBDSM, or those offended by what someone has said. This is only one aspect of Infinite Love and if that's the only level that people access, even if it is to an extent heart-centred, they are babes in arms to the Cult. There is nothing more manipulatable than genuineness that isn't streetwise and this is how New Wokeness becomes a puppet on the strings of the Cult. Firstly much of New Woke is emotion-based, not heart-based, and where the heart is involved only the aspects of *perceived* love that suit the Wokeness become part of the perceptual process. For example: 'I "love" and have compassion and empathy for those of colour and transgender people, but I absolutely *hate* white men.' This is not the love of *The One* and neither is it compassion and empathy in its purest definition. *The One* love will have empathy with people of colour, transgender, *and* white men. The circumstances they face illicit the empathy, not the colour or sexuality. Love sees things as they are and does not seek to portray what they are in other terms to serve some personal or collective agenda. Love will have empathy for migrants fleeing war while challenging those migrants running child trafficking gangs. It will have empathy with the kids. I observe the behaviour and responses of New Wokeness and ultra-Zionism and I see hate, not love, while they ironically rail against the perceived 'hate' of others. That's head-gut, not heart, and it's also projection – 'an unconscious self-defence mechanism characterised by a person unconsciously attributing their own issues onto someone or something else as a form of delusion and denial' and 'a way to blame others for your own negative thoughts by repressing them and attributing them to someone else'.

Heart love is not human love

When the heart opens to the point where we connect with *The One* the very idea of judging people by their illusory human labels or self-identifying with them becomes ridiculous and that includes even the term 'human'. We are not 'human'. That's just a brief experience. We are a point of attention within Infinite Awareness and when we delete our Cult-induced perceptual programs we can live that level of self. I don't mean that we merge our uniqueness into a collective 'blob'. We should glory in our uniqueness and sense of personal sovereignty while knowing that we are more than that. We are a unique point of attention *and* we are *All That Is, Has Been And Ever Can Be*. We should celebrate both, but the idea that Infinite Awareness would self-identify the True 'I' with being human, or even worse with the ever-increasing sub-divisions of 'human', seems insane to a genuinely open heart. The heart understands why people do become their labels amid whole lifetimes of perceptual indoctrination. To understand, however, is not to meekly accept in the face of knock-on consequences for all. Empathy is not always about saying what others would like to hear and often it is the opposite. Protecting children from all challenge which later leaves them at the mercy of the adult world is not empathy or love in its widest

sense. How can children and young people – or anyone else – learn and grow from the consequences of their actions if they never face the consequences? This creates emotionally weak people that the Cult has for breakfast, dinner and tea. Empathy and love is not handing children a smartphone on demand out of illusory ‘kindness’ when the consequences for the child long-term can be disastrous. Love will tell people what they *don't* want to hear even when it knows the reaction will be negative or abusive. Love does what it believes to be right and does not seek or need the emotional sustenance of praise or a dopamine rush. What I have said about New Wokeness, climate change, mass migration, political correctness, transgender/vegan activists and the ‘virus’ hoax will be met with much hostility. I know that, but I don’t care. What I care about is ensuring the people who attack me don’t live the rest of their lives in a global dystopia. Is that love? Or is love telling them what they want to hear to gather more Facebook likes? There are many levels of heart awakening and it’s an ongoing process with Cult frequencies pulling the other way until the line is crossed when the influence of the Cult is no more. By then your self-identity has transformed from Label Self to Infinite Self and with that you disentangle your wavefield from The Program and its influence on your perceptions ([Fig 410](#)).

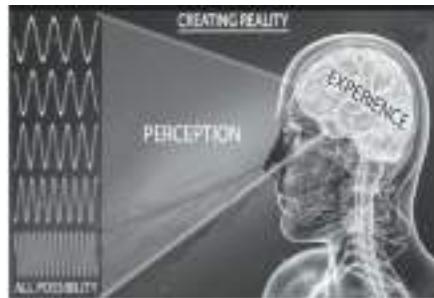


Figure 410: *The Answer*.

You no longer fear speaking your truth and no scale of intimidation will silence you or impact on the way you live your life. You no longer fear death or see a human experience as who you are. You no longer fear *anything* except perhaps as a brief biological reaction until expanded awareness kicks back with the perspective of *The One*. The perceptual feedback loop moves from gut-brain to heart-brain and the way you see the world, people and events comes from a dramatically different point of attention. You are *The One* observing through human eyes and you see Oneness, not apartness, unity, not division. You know that labels are the illusions of a deeply manipulated world. From this perspective comes compassion for people who are still where you once were and even those that are nasty to you and wish you harm. Forgive them for they *literally* know not what they do.

Heart knows ‘The System’ is a basket case

You are not long underway in the process of opening heart and mind before all the perceptual pillars of human reality are crumbling. The idea that it matters what religion someone follows or the colour of their skin becomes laughable. How that affects their *behaviour* towards themselves and others may rightly need to be challenged for its negative impact, but the religious or racial background *in itself* is of no relevance to an awakening heart. When all is said and done and the veil is lifted I am you; you are me; I am everything; and everything is me – and *you*. Following the rules, regulations and imposed beliefs of *any* religion is a head-shaker to an opening heart. How can I confine myself to the limits of a ‘holy book’ often written by who knows who, who knows when, and in who knows what circumstances, when I am *All That Is* and my home is the limitless realm of Infinite Possibility and Infinite Forever? *What?* I mean – *what?* Infinite Forever, *All That Is*, should allow its perceptions and experiences to be dictated by a priest, bishop, pope, rabbi or imam?? *EXCUSE ME?* These are not representatives of ‘God’. They are largely men appointed by men within man-made structures of earthly power and control. Change men to women

with the same view of reality and it would be just the same. Religions are earthly structures created for earthly reasons and nothing whatsoever to do with reality as it is or awareness that we are. Do what we tell you or the 'God' that we claim to represent will condemn you forever. Give us your mind and power. We have been appointed by 'God' to rule over you, tell you what to think and play you off against those of other religions run by people just like us with a different (often only slightly) set of rules and limitations. You believe you *are* 'God', an expression of *All That Is? BLASPHEMER!* We are told to accept that within the microscopic perceptual confines of visible light, a smear of 0.005 percent of the Universe, all we need to know to understand self and reality is written, with laughable levels of contradiction, between the covers of a single book or set of books. On the say-so of those books, emerging from the mists of 'history', relating to eras long gone and mistranslated over centuries or thousands of years, our lives and interactions with others must be dictated. On the say-so of some religious icon that often little or nothing is known about we must fall to our knees, face Mecca, wail at a wall, worship a bloke in a frock, or dip in the Ganges. I read this description of a Ganges Hindu ritual:

This impressive religious ritual is held in India every twelve years for 55 days where up to 100 million pilgrims attend for the world's largest religious gathering. The Ganges is the most sacred site for the majority of Hindus, and is a primary destination for *karma*. Hindus believe the goddess Ganga lived in the river.

Some Hindus believe that during a battle between demons and gods, the kumbh, or pot that contained sacred nectar, spilled four drops of water onto Earth, blessing four cities. The Ganges River flows through these locations. Hindus who bathe in the river or drink from the waters believe they garner good luck. They also believe the river can wash sins away for those who bathe in it. If Hindus spread the ashes of a deceased person on the river, they believe it improves that person's karma, allowing them to achieve salvation faster.

Why do Hindus believe the goddess Ganga lived in the river? Why do they believe that a pot that contained sacred nectar spilled four drops of water onto Earth, blessing four cities? Why do they believe the river can wash sins away or allow the dead to achieve salvation faster? For no other reason than this is what they have been indoctrinated to believe since they were children with serious pressure and consequences for not believing or believing something else. Young people are told who they will marry and the caste system of discrimination dictated by birth all come from this through rules decided thousands of years ago. You find this recurring theme in all major religions. Why do Christians believe what they do about 'Jesus'? *Same*. Why do Muslims believe they must submit their will to 'Allah' and obey the dictates of Muhammad? *Same*. Why do Jews believe they are the Chosen People and a Jewish King will come and gather all Jews to live in Israel? *Same*. If Christians were born into a Jewish family, or a Jew into Islam, or a Muslim into Christianity, they would believe something different just as vehemently as they believe what they do today. How many people born into Islam convert to the Jewish religion, or vice-versa? How many Christians, Jews or Hindus become Muslims or one of the others? They overwhelmingly follow the religion they were born into because religion is perceptual indoctrination policed by fear and guilt and by threatened or actual consequences. How well this definition of Islam and Muslim, a word meaning 'one who submits', captures the whole nature of religion:

Islam is a complete, holistic way of living that covers every aspect of life. Islam leaves no stone unturned as it teaches mankind on how to behave in every area of life: individual, social, material, moral, ethical, legal, cultural, political, economical, and global.

Think about that and all religions are pretty much the same. Religion tells you, a point of attention within *All That Is*, how to behave 'in every area of life: individual, social, material, moral, ethical, legal, cultural,

political, economic, and global'. Forget the 'teaches' bit. They are talking about imposition and indoctrination either directly or psychologically. The Cult loves religion for all these reasons and created them as a perceptual and behavioural Alcatraz. You can't make your own direct connection with *All That Is*. You have to do so through an earthly figure representing earthly interests to maintain your perceptions in the earthly realm. Here is my definition of religion: 'Intergenerational illusion indoctrinated into subsequent generations by those who had it indoctrinated into them.' Religion is yet another perceptual motion machine.

The same religious-control blueprint can be seen with Scientism, New Wokeness, the Climate Cult and Gaia or Earth worship. The theology is decided and then indoctrinated and imposed by repetition and the exclusion, demonisation, and censorship of other possibilities. In that sentence I have described every expression of the God Program from ancient faiths to the Climate Cult and all have their own heroes to focus the attention of the congregation – Jesus, Abraham, Moses, Muhammad, Krishna, Shiva, and Greta Thunberg. Opening hearts can see through the God Program and part of *The Answer* – a big part – is the rejection of myopic religion which hijacks perception and parks it in a cul-de-sac for entire lifetimes. Heart is our connection to the love that is All Possibility and will never concede its Infinity to programmed myopia. It demands the right and the self-respect to explore its own truth within the infinity of the possible and will not be imprisoned by the beliefs of others no matter what the level of intimidation. I say up yours to all versions of the God Program that seek to impose perception including the theological dogma of 'science' and New Wokeness. They are all firewalls to Infinite Forever. Those words 'that seek to impose perception' are important. What people choose to believe is none of my business and like all of us people take the consequences, nice and not so nice, of wave entanglements those beliefs attract. I am challenging the *imposition* of those beliefs on others in all the ways I have described. Humanity cannot be free until this imposition is stopped and people awakened by the power of the heart reject perceptual tyranny. If you could see the wavefields of all those who unquestionably follow the dogma of the God Program, in its obvious and less obvious religious forms, they would all be oscillating to the same rhythm. The names on the door may be different, but they are the same perceptual/vibrational state. Freedom by dramatic contrast beats to a different drum.

In search of certainty amid Infinite Uncertainty

The foundation of the God Program oscillation is a need for certainty and a need to worship an external force in pursuit of certainty. Both are the offspring of insecurity. You cannot have certainty within All Possibility. We need to come to terms with this. The consequences of not doing so are extremely destructive. Most of human life is spent trying to eliminate uncertainty to placate insecurity and fear of the unknown. People cling to religious belief 'certainty' and delete any other possibility that would mean a state of uncertainty. Religions of New Woke and the controlling core of mainstream science seek the security of certainty and reject other possibilities. Ignorance can bring a sense of certainty and hence: 'Shut up, I don't want to hear it.' What you don't know, or refuse to know, will not impinge on your self-assembled sense of certainty. Many vehemently reject without a glance information exposing events as they are when their sense of security-promoting certainty is dependent on not knowing. Reality must eventually dawn, of course, and by then we are so far along the road to tyranny, and people so mentally and emotionally ill-equipped to respond, that it's game over. Children and young people are being specifically programmed by schools, universities and society in general to fear uncertainty and not to take risks of any kind. This is the real reason why playground games and childhood pleasures – throwing snowballs, climbing trees, leapfrog, marbles, tag and even skipping – are being increasingly banned by the Thought and Behaviour Police under terms such as 'Health and Safety'. When I was young, hardly in ancient times, these activities and so many more since banned were part of growing up. If you fell over you learned not to do again what caused you to fall over. You learned from experience and what happens when the experience is taken away? You *don't*. These activities that were enjoyed outside under the sky in

child-to-child interaction have been replaced on purpose by faceless, isolating and behaviour-modifying videogames and social media. Parents are frightened into stopping their kids from going outside alone or with friends. This drives the process of isolation and fearing uncertainty by eliminating every minuscule risk. Fear of uncertainty and risk is squeezing the options and creativity of the young and hands protection from uncertainty to the World State. Those in fear of uncertainty look to the authorities to give them perceived certainty by taking away their freedoms and those of the entire population to secure certainty through automaton predictability. What are lockdowns and social distancing except the manipulation of certainty? The more that violence and chaos can be infused into society the more solidified becomes this perceptual state. The obsession with uncertainty has even infested professional football with a technology called 'VAR' which assesses every goal in such fine detail that they have been disallowed, often after a long wait, by the position of a player's armpit. Replace human decision-making uncertainty with the certainty (it's not) of technology. Welcome to the technocracy.

Love yourself and you'll love the world

How many who talk of the need for love, compassion and empathy for others have love, compassion and empathy for themselves? They are invariably the one left out. How can I love myself – that's narcissism isn't it? Quite the opposite is true. *Not* loving and having respect for yourself is what leads to narcissism which is a face people put to the world to hide from themselves and others the lack of self-love, self-security and self-respect. Those with open hearts aware that all is *One* don't need to present a fake face to the world. Why would they want to influence another's view of them? What would be the point to a heart that knows its true identity is *All That Is*? Some other questions: Why would the heart desire others to be impressed by a false image of itself? Why would it measure self-worth in Facebook likes and emojis? Who is there to impress when you are already *everything*? Why would you even want to impress? The intent or desire to impress means that you are changing your real self to meet the perceptual requirements of others. Seek popularity as a goal in itself and it will destroy your uniqueness. You are *you* – not them. So *be* you and not them. You are a *unique* expression of *The One*. It doesn't matter what face you present – real or fake – some people won't like it and often through their own lack of worth. I feel unworthy and I am going to attack you so you feel the same. Are we going to let our sense of worth be defined by others or ourselves? I say to young people devastated by social media abuse: Don't let anyone define you except *yourself*. You are a unique expression of *All That Is* – unique – and why would you want to be like anyone else? I don't look right, wear the right clothes, have the right trainers, or say the right things? Who gives a shit? *It doesn't matter*. You only make it appear to matter if you give a shit. *Don't*. You are *you* and no one else. Some don't like that? Well, tough. They should be what they choose to be and you should extend to yourself that same right and self-respect.

The more you allow yourself to be intimidated by others the more you wave-entangle with them and have them disrupt even further your well-being. I was subjected to mass public ridicule and abuse for decades by people who now read my books, watch my videos and stop me in the street to talk about my information. Walk your own truth, speak your own truth, worship nothing and no one, and if your truth has validity the world will eventually come to you and not the other way round. The herd mentality created the society we live in today and walking away from the herd will set us free. Cooperation and respect for each other does not require perceptual cloning. Is the real nature of respect to 'respect' only those that agree with you? Or is it to respect another's right to a different opinion and lifestyle? The question answers itself. Oh, but what about if people are *wrong*? The freedom to be wrong (overwhelmingly subjective) is fundamental to all freedom. Once you lose the freedom to be wrong it means that some force is deciding what is right or wrong. We see where that leads with the mass-censorship of 'fake news' that is often not fake at all and only what the authorities don't want people to see. If someone is factually incorrect in what they say about us, and that misrepresentation impacts upon our lives, it is right that we refute that if we believe it is necessary (it usually isn't); but responding to all

criticism, ridicule and abuse gives it a power it does not deserve and reveals extremes of insecurity. I see this in mega-tweeter Donald Trump who presents to the world the face of a narcissist full of bravado and confidence. I see a frightened little boy using narcissism and extreme levels of bravado and apparent confidence to hide that frightened little boy from himself and others. See how quickly and vehemently he responds to irrelevant criticism. This is the opposite of real security which I define as not caring what people say about you. I don't mean not to care about *anything* and we should listen to all views to see if they have validity. I mean not to care what the world thinks of you. That is a freedom and security that has no need for external confirmation of itself. It does not relate its identity to human labels or seek to impose them or compete for superiority with the labels of others. It is the freedom that *knows itself*.

Intimidate the heart? No chance

Heart awareness is *The Answer* and from that all else comes both the perceptual and the practical. The heart in its true power is not subject to the debilitating petrification of fear and all the limitations that go with that. 'Debilitate' comes from the Latin 'debilis' which means 'weak' and that's what fear does. It makes us weak and this is why Cult control is based on fear. It can freeze the human wavefield into density and close the heart vortex that connects us to *The One*. Fear is the currency of the Cult and its unseen 'gods' while open hearts without fear are the currency of freedom. They cannot control without fear and they don't understand anyone who is not in fear. It bewilders them because they are themselves consumed by it. With their hearts closed to love, and without the influence of *The One*, the Cult and its 'gods' are terrified little playground bullies. They are all mouth and full of it until someone without fear stands up and waits for them to blink. Then their backbone starts to shiver for they know that they need humanity more than we need them. We actually don't need them at all while they are dependent on us for our creativity and as a power source of low-vibrational energy. The Cult even more than humans wants to control everything and eliminate all chance – all *uncertainty*. No one is more terrified of the unknown, the unpredictable, than the Cult and its 'gods'. When humanity wakes up it's over for the Cult and it knows that.

This is evident in its desperation to censor all opposition no matter how small. To the Cult with its staggering levels of insecurity and fear a kid in his bedroom posting conspiracy information becomes a potentially lethal enemy that must be eliminated. Get Zuckerberg on the phone – *fast!* The extremes to which Israel and its ultra-Zionist apologists go to stop all criticism and exposure are displaying the extremes of their insecurity and fear of uncertainty. They wake up with that fear in their belly and go to bed in the same state while spending the time in between trying to convince themselves they are untouchable and humanity will never see what is going on. They know they're not untouchable and they constantly zip around with a fire hose in search of informational danger. Get Brin, Page and Wojcicki on the phone – *fast!* Then I want Bezos and Gates. The Cult's technocracy with control of everything by AI and technology is as much about eliminating uncertainty and the unknown as it is for control for its own sake. We are supposed to fear these people and think them so powerful when they are pathetic really. I prefer to smile in their face and laugh at their ludicrousness. To say I don't fear them is to underestimate the case a thousand fold and then some. The heart knows that Cult power is the *perception* of Cult power. If it was truly powerful it would not have to work 24/7 to diminish the power of others to secure its will. I feel sad for them, lost in their illusions that only survive by enslaving humanity in even smaller illusions. The heart breaks through those illusions and does not succumb to fear. On both counts the heart and the love it connects us with are *The Answer*.



Figure 411: *The Answer*.



Figure 412: You are not the eyes of the body unless the program has you. You are the eyes of Infinity. The eyes of *The One*.

We are awareness, indestructible eternal awareness. What is there to fear? Whatever happens in a human experience we are and will always be indestructible eternal awareness. Today is the first day of the rest of our Forever just like 'yesterday' and the day before ([Fig 411](#)). Everything changes when you open your heart and your heart opens your mind. Old entanglements disperse, including with addictions, and new connections take their place at a higher frequency. Your life starts to change to mirror that ([Fig 412](#)). The heart in its wisdom observes how the control system works and refuses to cooperate with what allows it to function. It knows that divide and rule is the foundation of mass control and will not embark on conflict with those of another view. It will make its points; communicate its information and opinions, without falling into low-vibrational hatred and a desire to censor. The heart sees that among the pillars of control are smartphones and 5G. Heart wisdom then finds a bin to dump the smartphone and starts or joins mass movements highlighting the real consequences of 5G. It will do everything necessary short of violence against people to ensure the 5G grid cannot function. Instead of venerating Silicon Valley players like Bill Gates, Elon Musk, Mark Zuckerberg, Larry Page, Sergey Brin, Susan Wojcicki and Jeff Bezos it will challenge them and expose them for crimes against humanity and the deletion of freedom. Heart wisdom will absolutely not agree to be connected to AI and will communicate at every opportunity what AI is really about. It will ditch the Bluetooth, Apple watches and all AI wireless-connected gadgets on the body. It will certainly refuse vaccines, microchipping and anything to do with the Smart Grid including smart meters, autonomous vehicles and appliances wherever possible wirelessly connected to the Internet. Computers can serve humanity if not linked to the AI control grid and the Internet of Things which also has to go to secure human freedom. Hearts will challenge every 5G transmitter outside every home either as a whole or where directly affected. Heart wisdom won't buy any device that allows surveillance and behaviour modification. In an open heart society personal assistants like Echo would disappear through lack of sales as would 'Ring' and cameras in the home that allow real-time surveillance of everything you do. Heart-open parents would refuse en masse to send their children to school until the Wi-Fi was switched off and where possible refuse to send them to school at all where they are perceptually programmed every day. If they go to school because of family circumstances open-heart parents would be balancing the programming at home with other information and questioning. I used to tell my kids - 'Remember that just because a teacher tells you something doesn't mean it's true. Question everything.'

Heart is the maverick



Figure 413: *The Answer*.

Heart wisdom will not allow others to dictate its perception or impose their will. The heart is the maverick that goes its own way while never seeking to force its way on others. Heart wisdom truly celebrates diversity in the knowledge that *Oneness* is All Possibility to be explored and experienced. The heart never wants to censor others which it knows are expressions of itself and it is well aware that limits of free expression always lead to heart-closing tyranny. Limits of free expression are the very antithesis of heart consciousness. The heart is freedom. Nor is the heart offended by whatever people say. It knows that it doesn't matter unless we make it matter by the act of being offended. You are *All That Is, Has Been And Ever Can Be* and you are upset at being called names by another part of yourself? How daft is that? To be offended is to give your power away, reveal your insecurity and provide the excuse for freedom to be deleted. Heart in awareness of itself doesn't do insecurity. It has the ultimate security in self-realisation of its infinite nature. Call me what you like and I will carry on as if nothing has happened. We are going to be hurt by the words of others when those words are a statement about *them* not us? Whatever we say is a statement about ourselves and that's something abusers cannot grasp. Smile in the face of abuse and you immediately dismantle its power and intent. To be offended is to give power to that you have allowed to offend you. The heart has compassion and empathy for those that peddle in abuse and intimidation. It knows that by definition they are disconnected from True 'I'. The Cult deserves our compassion and empathy while we vehemently refuse to play its game. How about waking up every morning in the empathy-deleted, compassion-deleted state of permanent hatred (for self and others) that is necessary to serve the Cult? Imagine being its non-human controllers – what a thought. The heart doesn't hate the Cult for the heart cannot hate and anyway the Cult is drowning in hate and the last thing it needs is any more. Heart seeks cooperation, not competition, on all the fundamentals of freedom, justice and fairness, and does not desire power over others. It wants everyone in their *own* power and not subjugated by the imposed power of others. Without fear the heart always does and says what it believes to be right and will not self-censor through fear of consequences. It will consider the best way to achieve that without walking into traps, but it will never allow fear of consequences to silence itself or stand by disinterested or trembling while freedom is eliminated. The heart also *laughs* – this is crucial – and has the self-security to be able to laugh at itself. You can't truly laugh and feel fear at the same moment and the world is so outrageously crazy that laughter is the antidote to taking everything too seriously. We are *All That Is, Has Been And Ever Can Be* who think we are Bill the baker and Kate at the call centre. That alone is hysterical ([Fig 413](#)).

Opening the heart and being the heart

How do we open our hearts? We become them. We self-identify with them. 'What do you mean?' may come the reply, 'What do you mean by the heart?' It is *The One*. 'What is *The One*?' It is *All That Is, Has Been and Ever Can Be, All Possibility, All Potential, All Knowing*. 'Where do I find that?' In your heart – they are the same. *The One* – True 'I' – has always been there while the head and the gut have been driving perception, reaction and self-identity. It is there now with its arms open for everyone, 'saint' and 'sinner' alike. There is no Day of Judgement. What we are we attract until we change what we are and attract something else.

The heart is the circuit-breaker of human feedback loops. Self-identify with your heart and you will feel its gathering influence. When you feel low-vibrational emotions shift your attention to the heart before you react and it will pass. Your heart will tell you what matters and what doesn't. Your very focus of attention on the energetic heart will make you aware of a strengthening vibration in the centre of the chest which gets stronger and stronger as you delete perceptual programs. You are transferring your point of attention (identity) from the head to the heart. Eventually you become the heart and it becomes you. I mentioned earlier how the therapist asked people to describe their problems from the head and then the heart and how in her words it was like talking to two different people ([Fig 414](#)). This is what happens when we become the heart. We become different people and expand beyond the self-identity as a 'person' (persona – the actor's mask). We realise we have been living a fake identity in a world of illusion and the power of the Cult depends entirely on that fake identity and world of illusion. This is why the heart is *The Answer* and it will transform human interaction ([Figs 415](#) and [416](#)). Alice says in Wonderland: 'I can't go back to yesterday because I was a different person then.' Once your heart opens the message is the same.



Figure 414: *The Answer.*



Figure 415: *The Problem.*



Figure 416: *The Answer.*

Questions worth asking in our daily experience as we journey into the heart awareness are 'what would *The One* do?' and 'what does my heart say?' Never mind what the human mind would do in the given situation. What would *The One* do speaking through my heart? It would respond with compassion, empathy, love and wisdom for all concerned. This does not mean lying down and letting others walk all

over you. It means that sometimes people need to be challenged for them to attract the experiences that will set them free. It means that we need that, too, which is why we find that our greatest gifts often emerging from our worst nightmares. When you come from the heart challenges to what you see as unfairness and injustice are not delivered with hatred and desire to hurt; but neither will you blink when you look them in the eye. To challenge and expose is not to hate and wish harm. Or it doesn't have to be. Another reality filter is what I call deathbed perception. You are lying on your deathbed with ten minutes to live. What matters to you now? Think of all the upsets, fear, emotional trauma, hatred, anger, resentment, anxiety and conflict in your life that mattered so deeply to you at the time. Does it matter now in the departure lounge of a human life? Does it matter that you worshipped a different deity or 'god' to somebody else? Or that others had different opinions to you and voted for a politician you didn't agree with? Or that your children went their own way instead of doing what you demanded? Or that your children spilt their dinner on the floor or failed to do exactly what you said? Or that someone was late for a meeting when they were stuck in traffic? What about the colour of your skin and your sexuality in relation to others? Does that matter now? Does it matter what labels you gave yourself and insisted on giving to others? How about the hostility you had for fellow expressions of *All That Is* for supporting a different soccer team? What about how vehemently you competed with others and resented how they reached a few notches higher on the greasy pole of eternal irrelevance? Does it matter that you 'won' and made lots of money to which you are about to wave goodbye? The answer to all these questions for the overwhelming majority will be 'no'. None of it matters. They were all illusions. What *does* matter to deathbed perception? How much you loved and were loved. How much joy you had and how often you laughed. How much joy you gave to others and how you worked together in harmony and mutual support.

Knowing what matters

Many people in retirement go through these reflections. What was it all about? They worked all their life to be a 'winner'. They worked long hours and missed their kids growing up. They sent them to the best residential schools to be winners like them so they could also ask in their retirement: 'What was it all about?' Oh, but they had to compete and cuss and spit and kick their way to 'success'. Life is about dog eats dog, right? Well, only if you choose it to be. There are other choices – within *All Possibility* there always are. They might not be the choice the Cult would like you to make, but they are there for the making. You are not dependent on The System. You are dependent on your wavefield state that will engage you with frequency reflections of itself. If you think you have to serve The System you will entangle with The System to manifest the illusion that you have to serve The System. Go your own way *knowing* you will attract all you need and you will entangle with all that you need without serving The System. Go your own way while fearing the consequences and you will entangle with the consequences. The perspective of deathbed perception is to see at any point in your life what matters long before you are lying there waiting for 'God'. Look through those same eyes, perceive through that same heart, and see what really matters behind the smokescreens and diversions of human labels and perceptions of 'success'. It is to love and be loved. It is love for self and all other expressions of *The One* which is love. Symbols of human 'success' are merely what we are told they are – big money, big houses, big cars, big fame. I have met many people with all of those things and none have been happy, joyful and at peace with themselves. I know a guy who has spent his life screwing other people for their money and property. He then contracted cancer, had his bowel removed, and when he recovered went back to screwing people for their money and property. The more we don't get it the more extreme the experiences we attract until we do. He has no bowel and has had at least one heart attack and still considers himself a 'winner' like all psychopaths and criminals do by the fact that he has parted lots of people from their money and property. It is perceptual insanity and often the truth comes from the mouths of the very young before perception programs and cynicism have kicked in. An Internet video of

a six-year-old recorded her advice to her mother after conflict with her father. She said she only wanted people to love each other. If we didn't there would only be 'monsters':

I just want everyone to be friends. And if I can be nice, I think all of us can be nice, too. I want you, my dad, everyone to be friends. I want everyone to be smiling ... My heart, it's something. Everyone else's heart is something, too. And if we live in a world where everyone's being mean everyone's going to be a monster in their future ... I just want everything to be settled down. Nothing else. I want everything to be as good as possible.

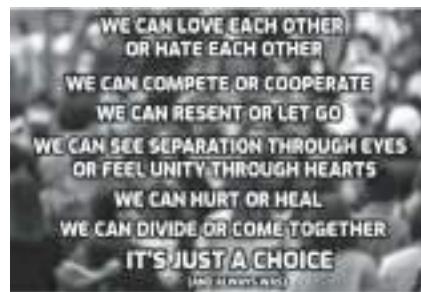


Figure 417: The question.



Figure 418: *The Answer*. (Image Neil Hague.)

At the time of writing that video has been watched by 40 million people. You know why? We *all* want that, too. The world is full of people who behind their upsets, traumas, competition, resentment, hatred and psychopathy just want to be loved. What is 'evil' except the absence of love? The Cult has sucked so much love from the world and we need to put it back – *that* is *The Answer*. We still see an abundance of love in so many guises despite the Cult's best efforts and we can all open our hearts to limitless love whenever we make that choice (Fig 417). The Cult's endgame is to entangle humanity with machines and AI so completely that all love is extinguished and with that any powerful connection to *The One* and True 'I'. It seeks to isolate mind and perception so that ET can't phone home. It is working to create a new post-human through AI, drugs, the Smart Grid, 5G and 6G, synthetic biology and digital 'avatars' in which heart centres are closed and minds no more than computer software. We are staring this reality in the face and we have to deal with it as the number one priority without delay. How do we prevent the post-human end of humanity? We go *beyond* human (Fig 418). We remember who we are and what we are and live our lives with that self-identity. Do that and everything follows. We change ourselves and we change our lives. If enough of us do that we together change 'the world'. Things don't change until *we* change them. Or, rather, change ourselves. Rumi, the Persian poet and mystic, could see beyond The Program in

the 13th century as his open heart connected him with *The One*. He described himself in these terms:

Not Christian or Jew or Muslim, not Hindu, Buddhist, Sufi, or Zen. Not any religion or cultural system. I am not from the east or the west, not out of the ocean or up from the ground, not natural or ethereal, not composed of elements at all. I do not exist, am not an entity in this world or the next, did not descend from Adam and Eve or any origin story. My place is the placeless, a trace of the traceless ... neither body or soul.



Figure 419: *The Answer*.

Rumi was speaking in the 13th century and 800 years later in our illusion of 'time' I am saying exactly the same in my own way. For it is not about 'time' and 'evolution' through 'time'. It is only the scale of awareness that we choose to connect with. That awareness was there when Rumi was 'here' and it is there now. It is always there for anyone who opens their heart to communicate with its wisdom ([Fig 419](#)). Rumi was not ahead of his 'time'. How could he be when there is no time? True 'I' is *beyond* 'time' and all its illusions. He put it like this:

The very center of your heart is where life begins – the most beautiful place on earth; Love is the bridge between you and everything.

He knew with that connection that 'goodbyes are only for those who love with their eyes because for those who love with heart and soul there is no such thing as separation'. He knew that freedom is not freeing others or being freed by others. It is freeing *yourself*: 'I want to sing like the birds sing, not worrying about who hears or what they think.' What Rumi tapped into anyone can and it lies in the silence where all is *One* – 'There is a voice that doesn't use words. Listen.'

Open your heart to The Silence. *The Answer* is waiting there.

Postscript

The desperation of The System to silence my exposure of the ‘pandemic’ hoax reached still new levels of extremism just before this book went to print when British Member of Parliament Damian Collins demanded that it be made *illegal* for me to challenge the official story. As definitions of fascism go, I think that’s pretty good.



Figure 1: The silence-obsessed Damian Collins MP.

Conservative MP Collins, a former chairman of the House of Commons Digital, Culture, Media and Sport Committee, is clearly obsessed with silencing me and any questioning of the official Gates/Cult-controlled World Health Organization narrative being repeated like parrots by governments and technocrat dark suits across the world. Why is Damian Collins so obsessively knicker-twisted with *one man* having a different opinion of the ‘pandemic’ to the entirety of the global governmental system, entirety of the global mainstream media and entirety of Cult-owned Silicon Valley? *One man!* Well, how about because I am telling the *truth* and that’s what they fear more than anything in all existence? Collins could debate me, which is what the ‘free world’ is supposed to be all about, but he won’t because he hasn’t got the guts ([Fig 1](#)). He just wants to silence me and impose his will on the enormous numbers of people worldwide that want to hear what I have to say. What Collins appears to be terrified of is another person’s *right to an opinion*. Why could that be do you think? He called for new ‘requirements in law’ to stop people like me ‘persistently spreading disinformation online’ which means that, by definition, the authorities would decree what is ‘disinformation’. I think I read that somewhere in *Nineteen Eighty-Four*. ‘If there is a certain channel, group or individual that is persistently pushing this information out then that sort of malicious abuse of social media in a public health emergency should be an offence’, said a man so breathtakingly arrogant that he believes he should be the arbiter of what you see and don’t see. Even before he called for my view on the ‘pandemic’ to be against the law – mirroring what happened in Nazi Germany and happens in the tyranny that is China – he had already launched a ‘fact-checking service’ (excuse me, my belly hurts) called Infotagion on March 30th, 2020, ‘to combat falsehoods during the pandemic’. No – to target information that questions the official story and here we have a man utterly consumed by having the public hear only the already thoroughly-discredited World Health Organization (Gates) bullshit. This is an example of Collins/Infotagion ‘fact-checking’:

Claim: Healthy food and exercise can build natural immunity to COVID-19. Answer: False. Avoiding

contact with carriers of the illness is the only way to prevent infection.

The idea that boosting the immune system cannot be a defence against *all* illness is obviously bordering on the insane given that the immune system exists to protect us from illness. The only possible reason such a suggestion can be claimed to be false is because the official story wants you to believe that only by lockdown and social distancing can you prevent infection. Collins therefore, in this example alone, does not run Infotagion to stop ‘misinformation’, but to spread it in defence of the official Gates-WHO-government line. This is confirmed by the Collins government-supported Infotagion website which declares first that it is ‘independent’ and then that its information is ‘sourced from WHO, UK and other official government advice’. I love it – ‘independent’ *and* just repeating the official version of everything. Infotagion was created ‘in partnership’ with marketing company Iconic Labs which urges clients to respond to the fact that ‘LGBT+ consumers are more prominent than ever – with up to half of 18 to 25-year-olds saying they are not totally heterosexual’. Iconic Labs was created by Liam Harrington, John Quinlan and Sam Asante. Enemy of Freedom Collins said: ‘Disinformation can kill people.’ Yes it can – look at how many have already died and the legions that will die from the disinformation which led to the lockdowns that Collins is so determined to protect from exposure. What can be more obvious disinformation than to claim that boosting the immune system is not a protection against disease?? Collins said he was introduced to Iconic Labs to launch Infotagion by David Sefton who resigned as Iconic Labs chairman over ‘rumour and market speculation’ about his role in Anglo African Oil & Gas from which he resigned in July, 2019. Journalist Tom Winnifirth wrote in early 2020:

... David Sefton was forced to quit Anglo African Oil & Gas (AAOG) after revelations on this website about horrific undeclared conflicts of interest, obscene expenses and other matters. Here we are on January 30th [2020] and after massive pressure about misleading RNS statements, related party deals and other matters I get to claim his scalp again, this time at insolvent Iconic (ICON).

Iconic is holding its AGM today in Sheffield, something guaranteed to ensure no-one turns up to ask awkward questions. Sefton was up for re-election but has decided over Christmas that he will be leaving the company with immediate effect after the GM. It now has no independent directors but since it also has no cash and no future that is not really an issue.

Damian Collins was one of the signatories to the demand by the ultra-Zionist-funded, Labour Party-dominated Center for Countering Digital Hate for me to be banned by Facebook and YouTube. The Labour Party and the Collins Conservative Party of Boris Johnson are supposed to be political ‘enemies’, but on all the Cult objectives – not least draconian censorship – they seem be in total agreement. Dr Daniel Allington, a senior lecturer in social and cultural artificial intelligence at King’s College London, was also quoted in the same media article about Collins demanding my work be made illegal. Allington was acknowledged by the Center for Countering Digital Hate for his help in the ‘report’ that had me deleted from Facebook and YouTube. He said he had undertaken ‘research’ and found that people who believe ‘coronavirus conspiracy theories’ are more likely to flout lockdown rules. He undertook ‘research’?? Anyone with a brain cell could have told him that and saved him the trouble. Allington was focused on me getting silenced rather than ‘celebrities’. It was pointed out that some celebrities have posted views about the ‘pandemic’ that questioned the official story, including British boxer Amir Khan, but Allington wasn’t too bothered about them:

I am not sure I want to regulate what someone like Amir Khan says, but then you have someone like David Icke, or (conspiracy theory site) London Real, and their business is creating content which goes online, which they are able to monetise.



Figure 2: An Orwell quote that perfectly describes the censorship war against me and my work.

Well, actually, Allington, I don't get money for the videos we post on public platforms and maybe you should fact-check yourself. Why is Damian Collins obsessed with silencing my information about the 'pandemic' which you have read at length in this book? Who is this man and who is he connected with? These are legitimate questions given that he is a member of the UK Parliament who is supposed to be defending freedom and democracy, but clearly has contempt for both (Fig 2). I hope voters in his Folkestone and Hythe constituency have the self-respect and the respect for their own freedom to note his shocking behaviour at the next election and that the public call out this blatant enemy of freedom at every opportunity. Collins worked for seven years for M&C Saatchi, 'an international advertising agency', or more accurately a spin machine operation that was created in 1995 as a rival to Saatchi and Saatchi which ran spin campaigns for Prime Minister Margaret Thatcher and the Conservative Party. The CEO and co-founder of M&C Saatchi is David Kershaw, an ultra-Zionist board member of the vehemently and long-time anti-Icke *Jewish Chronicle* with its laughable editor Stephen Pollard which went into voluntary liquidation in April, 2020, before being bought by a consortium of investors. Damian Collins and his 'Infotagion' has 'partnered' with Kershaw's M&C Saatchi and Iconic Labs to target 'misinformation' about the 'virus pandemic' which as always means any information that counters the Cult narrative peddled through the Gates World Health Organization. You will have noticed how many times the ultra-Zionist neoconservative or 'Neocon' network in the United States has appeared in this book and I have exposed this at far greater length in some of my others, most notably *The Trigger*. The Sabbatian-Frankist Neocon web spawned the Project for the New American Century and its closely-aligned American Enterprise Institute. Damian Collins is on the board of British Neocon arm, the Israel-worshipping Henry Jackson Society, and signed its Statement of Principles. Fellow board members include UK government minister Michael Gove and ultra-Zionists Adam Levin and Alan Mendoza. Levin is a trustee of UK Lawyers for Israel, the 'lawfare' operation that targets Palestinian supporters promoting the Boycott Divestment and Sanctions (BDS) movement by lodging complaints with regulatory bodies and threats of legal action. Collins clearly has some lovely friends. Among the international patrons of the Henry Jackson Society are ultra-Zionist Project for the New American Century stalwarts William Kristol, a co-founder, Richard Perle and former CIA Director James Woolsey. I don't know about you, but I kind of get the picture of the circles in which Damian Collins operates and his targeting of me and my information should therefore hardly come as any surprise.

The 'Hate' censorship network

A citizen journalist and visitor to DavidIcke.com began investigating the Collins-supported Center for Countering Digital Hate (CCDH) after it claimed credit for having me banned from Facebook and YouTube (I'm sure they were both kicking and screaming before agreeing to do so). Well, what a web he opened up both sides of the Atlantic with funders, supporters and associations. Among the CCDH directors listed is Simon Clark from the Center for American Progress, a One-percent New Woke front that centrally influences the US Democratic Party. Its founder, first president and CEO was the infamous political manipulator John Podesta who was White House Chief of Staff to President Bill Clinton and chairman of the 2016 presidential campaign of Hillary Clinton. What's that they say about knowing

someone by the company they keep? Major funders of the Center for American Progress include George Soros and fellow Zionists Peter Lewis, Steve Bing and Herbert Sandler. Center for American Progress senior fellow Simon Clark is a board member of the Icke-targeting Hope not Hate (Hate not Hope) which supported Digital Hate (so much hate) in its efforts to have me banned in the same way that Damian Collins works so hard to do. His wife, Diana Shaw Clark, is Chair of National Finance Committee for J Street, the Israel lobby group and funder of American politicians. Digital Hate director Simon Clark is an advisor to the Scowcroft Group, the 'international business advisory firm' of Brent Scowcroft who was US National Security Advisor to far-right Presidents Gerald Ford and 'Father' George Bush. How compliant and on message must Scowcroft have been to have served the hate-filled psychopaths Ford and Bush? Scowcroft appeared in many of my earlier books and he was vice-chairman of the absolutely notorious Kissinger Associates of ultra-Zionist Neocon Henry Kissinger, a front man for the Cult virtually his entire adult life and a war criminal on a breathtaking scale. Is it only me that thinks it strange that Simon Clark would be rubbing shoulders with such people while having close connections to self-styled 'left-wing', 'progressive' organisations like the Center for American Progress and Center for Countering Digital Hate? This is even more relevant with Clark's LinkedIn profile claiming that he 'started the Center for American Progress's work on combating far right extremism'. So why the close association with a company headed by Brent Scowcroft given his role with right wing mega-terrorists like Father Bush and Henry Kissinger who are responsible for death and destruction – terrorism – on a gargantuan scale overwhelmingly in non-white countries?



Figure 3: From left to right: Morgan McSweeney (Digital Hate and Labour Party); Imran Ahmed (Digital Hate and Labour Party); Damian Collins (Initagion, Henry Jackson Society and Conservative Party); Kirsty McNeil (Digital Hate, Labour Party, Save the Children, Coalition for Global Prosperity); Rachael 'you're an anti-Semite' Riley (Digital Hate).

I might ask a similar question of other central characters in Digital Hate. I said in the body of the book that the group (a limited company) involved Labour Party 'left-wing' (joke) figures such as Imran Ahmed, Kirsty McNeil and Morgan McSweeney, plus academics obsessed with censorship; but clearly these Labour activists are in full agreement in the one-party state with right-wing Conservative Neocon MP Damian Collins when it comes to silencing me. Collins demands that my information and my right to express it be made illegal while Digital Hate has sought not only to have me deleted from all Internet platforms, but also all the interviews with me from any other source with those who interviewed me also banned. Well-known people like singer Robbie Williams who speak out in any way in support of me are targeted for abuse by Internet purveyors of hate. System-servers are terrified of me because they are terrified of the truth and thus their gussets spin like aircraft propellers at the thought of anyone hearing what I have to say. So again *why*? So again comes back the same answer as with Collins – they fear one man's opinion despite all their 'powerful' connections because the official story of the 'virus' is so full of holes and contradictions that only the fiercest of censorship can defend it from being demolished. Digital Hate director Kirsty McNeil, who has been so keen to censor me, sits on the board of a Gates-funded organisation called Coalition for Global Prosperity alongside Carolyn Esser from the Gates Foundation. Esser is 'responsible for designing and executing the communications strategy for the Bill & Melinda

Gates Foundation in Europe and the Middle East'. Coalition for Global Prosperity pushes for mass vaccination and the silencing of 'anti-vaxxers' on social media. I can't imagine, then, why Gates would fund the organisation or why Kirsty McNeil would want people like me censored. McNeil is a member of the European Council on Foreign Relations whose main funder is the Open Society Foundations of George Soros. She is also on the board of the Holocaust Educational Trust. Other Digital Hate directors are Bristol University academic Dr Siobhan McAndrew, Lord Jonny Oates, a Chief of Staff to former UK Deputy Prime Minister and now Facebook head of global affairs and communications, Nick Clegg, and Ayesha Saran, Migration Programme Manager at Digital Hate funders, the Barrow Cadbury Trust. Saran is also a trustee of the Barrow Cadbury-funded British Future, a think tank focusing on 'identity and integration, migration and opportunity'. British Future receives funding or 'in-kind' support from the Soros Open Society Foundations, Facebook, BBC, European Commission and Digital Hate funders Unbound Philanthropy. Digital Hate also connects with the ultra-Zionist Community Security Trust (CST), 'a charity that protects British Jews from antisemitism and related threats', constantly inflates those threats and targets Jews who criticise Israel and Zionism. The cross-referencing of people and funders is a massive maze. Digital Hate is funded by the ultra-Zionist Pears Foundation and the aforementioned New York-based Unbound Philanthropy with its connections to George Soros. Unbound's UK Program Director is Will Somerville who is also a Senior Policy Analyst for the Migration Policy Institute (MPI), a think tank based in Washington DC, and a Visiting Professor at the University of Sheffield. He is another connected to British Future. Somerville has worked at the Commission for Racial Equality, the UK Prime Minister's Strategy Unit, Cabinet Office, and the Institute for Public Policy Research. Well connected I think is the phrase and more about the Cabinet Office shortly. Digital Hate is closely linked with the allegedly Labour Party-supporting limited company called Labour Together with its ultra-Zionist businessman director Trevor Chinn who I am sure has a heart that bleeds for the poverty-stricken and downtrodden. Chinn sits on the Executive Committee of the Britain Israel Communications and Research Centre (BICOM), a UK propaganda arm of the Israeli government. Digital Hate founding director Morgan McSweeney, the campaign manager and chief of staff for Labour Party leader, the Israel-centric Keir Starmer, is the secretary of Labour Together which is located in the same East Finchley, London, building as Digital Hate. Genuine Labour members should realise that this is the hijacked 'party' their subscriptions are funding. The D-list 'TV celebrity' patron of Digital Hate is Rachael Riley who constantly employs the slur of 'anti-Semitism' to demonise and silence people. Together they targeted my information and free speech believing they were damaging me when all they did was dramatically increase the number of new people looking at my work in the light of me being so vehemently targeted for censorship after I was dismissed as a 'nutter' for decades ([Fig 3](#)). The attacks further increased with attempts by hackers to bring down [Davidicke.com](#) and [Ickonic.com](#) in the same period followed by PayPal with its ultra-Zionist president and CEO Daniel H. Schulman cancelling our account. This is the same PayPal that bans Palestinians in Gaza and the West Bank from using its services, but allows Jewish people in the illegally-occupied West Bank to do so. It's not racist or anything. Attacks came from all angles and will continue to do so – that's what happens when you speak truth to tyranny. One good thing while all this was going on came when someone edited the Wikipedia page for Digital Hate and actually told the truth amazingly. I recommend a read if it has survived in that form this far. Digital Hate was perfectly described:

The organisation campaigns for internet censorship to be enacted against rival political actors, lobbying American 'big tech' firms such as YouTube, Facebook, Amazon, Twitter, Instagram and Apple to 'deplatform' individuals so that they cannot present their views to the general public.

That's correct, but 'rival political actors' doesn't mean rival political *party* 'actors'. It means rival versions of world events with Neocon Conservative Damian Collins and 'left-wing' (joke again) members

of the Labour Party all forming the same playground bully gang against me. The recurring background can be seen with professional censors NewsGuard which produced an ‘Icke-must-be-deleted’ report to Twitter. NewsGuard was co-founded by ultra-Zionist Neocon Americans Gordon Crovitz and Steven Brill with the same intention as Digital Hate and the Infotagion of Damian Collins – to silence those who challenge the official narrative they all represent and are desperate to protect. Add the fact that the UK Government’s full-time ‘advisor’ on ‘anti-Semitism’ (using the slur of anti-Semitism to censor and demonise critics of Israel’s Sabbatian-Frankist regime) is former Labour Party MP John Mann who is an ultra-Zionist to his DNA. There must be a common theme and pattern in these people and organisations, but I’m damned if I can see it. I’m sure you can, though. There is no way all these characters and organisations do not lock into this same enormous network which includes many ‘charities’ operating as front operations. Imran Ahmed from the Center for Countering Digital Hate was appointed to the Steering Committee of the UK Government’s Commission on Countering Extremism Task Force headed by a Sara Khan (Ahmed seems to do a lot of ‘countering’). It calls itself ‘independent’ which, of course is the usual garbage and it is really there to impose censorship by hurling hate at its targets while claiming to be ‘anti-hate’. See the hate-filled comments about me by Digital Hate and company, plus Damian Collins. While this rabble was seeking to silence all challenge to the official narrative doctors and funeral directors continued to report that death certificates were being faked with ‘Covid-19’ as the cause when it played no part. Project Veritas, with a long record of exposing official lies, spoke with funeral directors who confirmed this. One in Williston Park, New York, said: ‘Basically, every death certificate that comes across our desk now has Covid on it.’ Every director contacted said ‘Covid-19’ deaths are being inflated and every death in New York was being recorded as a Covid death with or without testing to confirm (not that this would be any use). Joseph Antico of Schafer Funeral Home said: ‘They are putting Covid on a lot of death certificates [for] people who are going to their hospital with any kind of respiratory distress, respiratory problems, pneumonia, the flu ...’ Yes, exactly, and the web of censorship I am exposing here is working to stop the world knowing that. What does that say about them?

UK government’s worldwide Psyop ‘team’

The UK Cabinet Office is a department of the British Government that ‘supports the Prime Minister and Cabinet of the United Kingdom’ and has 2,000 staff ‘coordinating the delivery of government objectives via other departments’. Okay, so one of the objectives must be to manipulate the behaviour of the British public and those in a long list of countries worldwide because the Cabinet Office is part-owner, with ‘innovation charity’ Nesta, of the Behavioural Insights Team (BIT). This is also known as the ‘nudge unit’, a term that comes from a 2009 book by ultra-Zionists Cass Sunstein, an advisor to President Obama, and Richard Thaler called *Nudge: Improving Decisions About Health, Wealth, and Happiness*. Thaler, a proponent of something called ‘behavioral economics’, is an ‘academic affiliate’ of the Cabinet Office Behavioural Insights Team whose role is to ‘nudge’ (manipulate the behaviour) of its targets and has played a prime role in doing just that with regard to the ‘pandemic’ hoax. Other leading names in the development of behavioural economics are ultra-Zionists Daniel Kahneman and Robert J. Shiller – all three are recipients of the Nobel Memorial Prize in Economic Sciences for their work on behavioural economics which is defined as the study of ‘the effects of psychological, cognitive, emotional, cultural and social factors on the decisions of individuals and institutions’. Cut all the bullshit and it means studying the psychological factors to manipulate or ‘nudge’ behaviour. The Behavioural Insights Team, *a limited company* at the heart of government, was established in 2010 and operates worldwide with several universities, including Harvard, Oxford, Cambridge, University College London (UCL) and Pennsylvania. It brags how it has ‘trained’ 20,000 civil servants and practitioners worldwide in ‘behavioural insights’; how it has ‘run more than 750 projects to date, including 400 randomised controlled trials in dozens of countries’; and how its work ‘spanned 31 countries in the last year alone’. BIT has an office in New York and has been ‘working with cities and their agencies, as well as other partners, across the United States and Canada, running

over 25 randomized controlled trials in the first year of operation'. This 'work' involves manipulating human behaviour and it has been at the core of doing just that during the 'pandemic'. The Behavioural Insights Team inflicts 'Psyops' on target populations. Psyops are 'military actions designed to influence the perceptions and attitudes of individuals, groups, and foreign governments'.

How very appropriate then that in March, 2020, with the 'virus' scam going into overdrive, that Rachel Coyle with her six years' experience at the Ministry of Defence should be named the new BIT Director for Europe, the Middle East and Africa to help develop pandemic strategy. The British military cyber Psyop unit 77th Brigade would have no doubt been ecstatic to have one of its own in such a key position given that the aims of both are the same – getting the public to behave as required by everything from 'nudging' to extreme censorship. Coyle is a senior figure from the world of intelligence and defence who specialised in China and cyber warfare – a term which includes deleting me from the Internet for the crime of challenging this web of deceit. The Behavioural Insights Team is headed by psychologist David Solomon Halpern, a visiting professor at King's College London, who has been 'overseeing the UK government's response to the Covid-19 pandemic in the United Kingdom as part of the Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies, focusing on behavioural changes ...' I bet he has. The central player in the behavioural manipulation network is UK Cabinet Secretary Mark Sedwill who is also the National Security Advisor and sits atop of pyramid of related organisations. Internet site UKColumn has done some excellent work on this in its three-times weekly broadcasts and has connected Sedwill and his Behavioural Insights Team Psyop to the Foreign Office, National Security Council, the government communications headquarters (GCHQ), MI5, MI6, the 77th Brigade and Rapid Response Unit which 'monitors digital trends to spot emerging issues, including misinformation and disinformation, and identifies the best way to respond' – censor and lie. This 'supports the work' of the again *Cabinet Office*-based Media Monitoring Unit. The web includes the military operation jHub, the 'innovation centre' for the Ministry of Defence and Strategic Command, *which is involved in 'symptom tracing' for the National Health Service*. The military is ultimately driving what is happening through the so-called 'Fusion Doctrine' – the fusion of military and civilian law enforcement and government agencies in accordance with the 'Hunger Games' plan I described earlier. The UK government's broadcast censor Ofcom and the BBC will be connected to this network, too, with censorship crucial to the control of information that the public is allowed to see and they are desperate to expand Ofcom's censorship powers to the Internet. Are we really expected to believe that Imperial College in London which produced the Armageddon-like 'computer models' at just the right time to justify the lockdowns is not connected to this same network? The Chinese government, by the way, was not phased by the Imperial College 'modelling' disaster and during the lockdown the college signed a five-year collaboration deal with China tech giant Huawei that will see 'Huawei's indoor 5G network equipment and "AI cloud platform" installed at the college's West London tech campus, as well sponsorship by the Chinese firm of Imperial's Venture Catalyst entrepreneurship competition'. The information control and behaviour manipulation web out of Downing Street through the Cabinet Office is fantastic and every major country will be the same. The United States established a Social and Behavioral Sciences Team in 2015 through an executive order by President Fraud Obama.

Then there is a new UK *Cabinet Office*-connected Joint Biosecurity Centre (JBC) to provide 'expert advice on pandemics' and its role is described officially as: Independent (the jokes go on) analytical function to provide real-time analysis about infection outbreaks to identify and respond to outbreaks of Covid-19; and to advise the government on response to spikes in infections – 'for example by closing schools or workplaces in local areas where infection levels have risen'. It is reported to be based at the Joint Terrorism Analysis Centre which analyses intelligence to set 'terrorism threat levels'. Tom Hurd, the director general of the Office for Security and Counter-Terrorism, and reported to be a favourite to be the next head of MI6, was appointed to lead the new unit which will oversee the contact-tracing operation that I will describe in a second. Hurd is the son of former Foreign Secretary Douglas Hurd from a big-

time insider family. Tom Hurd went to the elite Eton College and Oxford University with Boris Johnson. What I have been describing with this interconnecting nexus is the permanent government or Deep State that runs everything above and beyond the here today, gone tomorrow politicians. Compared with this Prime Ministers like Johnson are bit-part and seriously peripheral players as we have seen so clearly during the ‘pandemic’ hoax.

The ‘virus nudge’ – or rather smack in the back

A perfect example of systematic psychological manipulation from this network can be found in a paper prepared for government by the ‘behavioural science sub-group’ of the Scientific Advisory Group for Emergencies (SAGE) which is co-chaired by Sir Patrick Vallance, former executive of the massively Gates-connected GlaxoSmithKline, and Gates-funded Chief Medical Officer Christopher Whitty who have driven ‘virus’ policy while Prime Minister Johnson does whatever he is told. The paper, released for ‘discussion’ on March 23rd, 2020, is a classic agenda for behaviour control during the lockdowns. It includes under the heading ‘Persuasion’:

The perceived level of personal threat needs to be increased among those who are complacent, using hard-hitting Evaluation of options for increasing social distancing emotional messaging. To be effective this must also empower people by making clear the actions they can take to reduce the threat.

Such psychological games surrounding the primary themes of fear and threat have been used constantly and mercilessly since the ‘pandemic’ began. As I write fear of the fake ‘virus’, or one not at all dangerous to the overwhelming majority even if you still believe it exists, is being exploited to create a mass real-time surveillance system under the guise of ‘contact tracing’ that mirrors one level of the surveillance system – *of course* – in China. This is founded on the perception-manipulation that the ‘virus’ is ‘deadly’ and the tracking is needed via your phone for your protection (behaviour manipulation). Phone apps are being rolled out to track who you come into contact with to see if one of them has tested positive for ‘Covid-19’ with a test not testing for ‘Covid-19’. Then a government operative from an army of ‘contact tracers’ will be knocking on your door to test you with a test not testing for ‘Covid-19’ and if you are positive for a genetic material that large numbers of people have in their body as a matter of course you will be told to isolate or forced into quarantine. This system is planned to take children from families as it becomes ever-more extreme which fulfils another goal of the Cult. Targeting anyone becomes easy just by claiming you have been in contact with people who have tested positive for something not being tested for. I bet pawpaws and goats in Tanzania are trembling as I speak. It’s all long-planned with a European Commission proposal perfectly timed in late 2019 to introduce a ‘common vaccination card/passport’ for all EU citizens. Cult-owned Google, Apple and other Big Tech companies are making contact-tracing possible because they care so much about human health and one of America’s contact-tracing organisations. Partners in Health, lists the Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation and the George Soros Open Society Foundations as official partners with Clinton daughter Chelsea on the Board of Trustees. A Rockefeller Foundation Paper published in April, 2020, detailing its ‘National Covid-19 Testing Action Plan’, called for the creation of a nationwide DNA database and mass testing and tracing for all Americans. My goodness and many people still can’t see what is going on – not least the clueless, gutless pawns in the mainstream media. It’s breathtaking how people can be so blind to the obvious.



Figure 4: What a testament to Cult psychopathy and human acquiesce.



Figure 5: Where is the self-respect?

The ‘virus’ hoax is another ‘here kitty, kitty’ with the story constantly changing to justify still more extreme deletions of freedom. First they said that lockdowns were necessary to ‘flatten the curve’, but when that happened through figure manipulation we were told that ‘normality’ could not return until there was a ‘cure or vaccine’. No other alleged disease in human history has involved isolating the healthy and now that can only stop when there is a ‘cure or vaccine’. What they mean is a vaccine to connect the population to the Smart Grid among much else. The kitty, kitty, is behaviour manipulation and we see this with social distancing and all the fine-detail rules that people think they have to conform to by law when most are only government recommendations that have no force in law. Police that have been fining and arresting people for breaking lockdown laws are being forced to admit they were policing laws that didn’t exist and they had no right to enforce. This is what happens when you do what you are told without question or personal research. In the lockdown phase announced by Boris Johnson a week before I am writing this you can have an estate agent, nanny or cleaner in your house, but not your parents or grandparents. You can see one parent or grandparent at a time, but not both together. You can meet them in a park, but not in a garden because the UK Health Secretary Prat Hancock says that this could mean walking through a house to get to the garden. I guess they would also have to pass the estate agent, nanny and cleaner on the way. I could continue with a long list of such ridiculous contradictory, makes-no-sense nonsense billowing from the empty space between the government’s ears. But while idiot officials impose this bizarre craziness there is method in the madness at the level of the Behavioural Insights Team and similar networks around the world. We are seeing grotesque images of children being prepared from the earliest age to fear and disconnect from their friends by being forced to stay in marked-off playground zones while their masked parents line up six feet apart to collect them from cross markers also six feet apart ([Figs 4](#) and [5](#)). It is child abuse imposed by unquestioning parents and teachers at the behest of the psychopaths using the fake ‘pandemic’ to do anything they choose. ‘It’s the rules’ is not a bloody good enough excuse to do this to kids who are being dehumanised by this outrage. They are training children and adults to obey fine-detail orders like domestic animals. When you have laughable and clearly contradictory rules but people still obey them you know you are getting close to total unquestioning compliance. Indeed, with large swathes of humanity they are already there. Now we have

the prospect of being enslaved ongoing in small isolated groups officially known as 'Bubbles' – how appropriate given what I wrote earlier in the book. The antidote to this imposition by the few on the many is this: 'Go fuck yourself – we're not doing it.'

The plan is for the Gates 'Covid-19' vaccine to use a technique never before let loose on humans – DNA manipulation using synthetic DNA and an electrical pulse to open up cells for synthetic penetration. Given what I have written earlier in the book about the synthetic human agenda this fits the story as does my contention that the vaccine will include self-replicating nanotechnology. Having the Gates vaccine and allowing children to have it should become a new definition of insanity. The British government has refused to rule out making the Gates vaccine compulsory while ultra-Zionist lawyer Alan Dershowitz, a friend (like Gates) and legal defender of Jeffrey Epstein, insisted that Americans do not have the right to refuse the vaccine should federal or state governments make it mandatory. He quoted a Supreme Court judgement in *Jacobson v Massachusetts* in 1905 which upheld the right of states to enforce compulsory vaccine laws. The Supreme Court, which is owned by the Cult, decreed that individual liberty is overridden by the power of the state. The court shockingly found it 'immaterial' that some in the medical community believed the vaccination 'worthless or even injurious'. The state had the right to choose between opposing medical theories and to refer the decision to 'a board composed of persons residing in the affected location who are qualified to make a determination' (controlled by the Cult and Big Pharma which is the same thing). Courts would not intervene if the enforcement related 'substantially to public health, morals, or safety and was not a plain, palpable invasion of rights secured by fundamental law'. Being forced to have a potentially injurious vaccine is not 'a plain, palpable invasion of rights'? *Extraordinary.* The court also ruled that *it is immaterial whether or not the vaccine is actually effective, so long as it is the belief of state authorities that the mandatory vaccine will promote common welfare* and such enforcement is *a reasonable and proper exercise of the police power.* It was of 'paramount necessity that a community have the right to protect itself from an epidemic of disease which threatens the safety of its members' – and clearly even when it doesn't. This, ladies and gentlemen of America, is the Supreme Court precedent that still stands as psychopath Gates prepares to inflict his vaccination on everyone.

'Outsider' (ha, ha) Donald Trump announced that he was deploying the military to distribute the vaccine when it was ready, possibly as early as December, 2020, while the British government said its trials could lead to mass vaccination even earlier in September. The speed in which this is happening is making even vaccine proponents question how this is possible when vaccines that have caused lethal harm to children and adults take years to develop. The answer is, as I have said since the 'pandemic' began, that the vaccine was ready and waiting before the excuse to use it was even perpetrated. The idea that a vaccine could be developed in months for a 'virus' that has never been proved to exist, nor be a cause of disease, with a PCR test that doesn't even test for 'Covid-19' is patently fraudulent. You have not shown it to exist, you haven't shown it to cause a disease and you can't test for it, but you've found a vaccine in months. This is nonsense and mendacity on a historic scale. They are trying to put as much delay as they can between the 'outbreak' and the vaccine to overcome the obvious credibility gap, but they are fearful of waiting too long because the longer the delay the more people will realise that the 'pandemic' has been a gigantic hoax from start to finish. Their Plan B if enough people refuse the vaccine is to not allow anyone out of lockdown rules unless they have the vaccine and that's why we hear the mantra of 'no return to normality' until everyone is vaccinated. The 'virus' is so deadly and humanity faces such a crisis, according to the Gates script, that maybe safety may have to be compromised for speed. Gates wrote in his blog:

If we were designing the perfect vaccine, we'd want it to be completely safe and 100 percent effective. It should be a single dose that gives you lifelong protection, and it should be easy to store and transport. I hope the COVID-19 vaccine has all of those qualities, but given the timeline we're on, it may not.

You know exactly what the vaccine is and what it contains you bloody liar. They can make the vaccine appear to work by simply changing the way they diagnose and fill in death certificates to delete 'Covid-19' in the same period as the vaccine, but no doubt they will also draw this out over years with successive 'waves' of a 'virus' that 'is mutating' and requires further vaccinations as with the flu. They are even adding new 'symptoms' including loss of smell or taste to make more people think they are 'infected' when other causes are responsible. I understand that a new symptom next week will be burping twice in 30 seconds. Apparently stop watches are going to be issued. Then there was the 'research' that told us that speaking could 'spread the virus' with a 'substantial probability that normal speaking causes airborne virus transmission in confined environments'. So stay home *and* shut the fuck up.

As I close this Postscript the economic consequences of the pandemic hoax – clearly known and planned from the start – are becoming clear with destroyed companies, employment and dreams. The numbers continue to rise of people dying through delayed treatment and diagnosis, and for suicides, drug abuse, child and domestic abuse. One study said a third of Americans are showing signs of anxiety and depression while prescriptions for mood-elevating drugs have soared. Society is crumbling because that's the whole idea. Stanford University professor Michael Levitt said lockdown saved no lives and may have cost lives (absolute certainty) while Neil Ferguson had over-estimated the death toll by '10 or 12 times' – I would say by 100 percent. US states that locked down early were no differently affected on average than those that didn't lockdown at all. Marko Kolanovic, a strategist for JP Morgan, said lockdowns failed to alter the course of the 'pandemic' and instead 'destroyed millions of livelihoods'. What was not being acknowledged is that this was the plan from the start. Even the odd mainstream article has appeared calling for the (calculated) madness of lockdown to end. In the United States the fascist control has been imposed by state governor diktats which means that at that level 50 people have been dictating the lives of 330 million. Every one of them that abused that power – and so many have – must be forced out. Is it still possible in the light of all this to dismiss that the world is controlled by a ridiculously few people as long as humans acquiesce? Or that their agenda is being orchestrated by the depths of evil? Denial is no longer an option.

We are looking global fascism in the eye and we must not blink. You can recognise politicians and mainstream 'journalists' by the break-neck speed of their eyelids and they are the problem, not the answer. *We the People* have to sort this out or no one will. Come on – *let's go*.

Appendix 1

Summary of what ultra-Zionist Cult insider Dr Richard Day said was going to happen to the world when he spoke at a meeting of paediatricians in Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania, in 1969

Population control; permission to have babies; redirecting the purpose of sex – sex without reproduction and reproduction without sex; contraception universally available to all; sex education and canalizing of youth as a tool of world government; tax-funded abortion as population control; encouraging anything-goes homosexuality; technology used for reproduction without sex; families to diminish in importance; euthanasia and the ‘demise pill’; limiting access to affordable medical care making eliminating the elderly easier; medicine would be tightly controlled; elimination of private doctors; new difficult-to-diagnose and untreatable diseases; suppressing cancer cures as a means of population control; inducing heart attacks as a form of assassination; education as a tool for accelerating the onset of puberty and evolution; blending all religions ... the old religions will have to go; changing the Bible through revisions of key words; restructuring education as a tool of indoctrination; more time in schools, but pupils ‘wouldn’t learn anything’; controlling who has access to information; schools as the hub of the community; some books would just disappear from the libraries; changing laws to promote moral and social chaos; encouragement of drug abuse to create a jungle atmosphere in cities and towns; promote alcohol abuse; restrictions on travel; the need for more jails, and using hospitals as jails; no more psychological or physical security; crime used to manage society; curtailment of US industrial preeminence; shifting populations and economies – tearing out the social roots; sports as a tool of social engineering and change; sex and violence inculcated through entertainment; making boys and girls the same; implanted ID cards – microchips; food control; weather control; knowing how people respond – making them do what you want; falsified scientific research [see ‘global warming’]; use of terrorism; surveillance, implants, and televisions that watch you; the arrival of the totalitarian global system.

Appendix 2

Noahide Laws = human control

The seven so-called Noahide Laws are claimed to have been given by 'God' to Adam and Noah and are binding on non-Jews with *decapitation* the main penalty for not complying. Other punishments for non-Jews include death by stoning if a man has intercourse with a Jewish betrothed woman or by strangulation if the Jewish woman has completed the marriage ceremonies, but had not yet consummated the marriage. They're not racist or mad or anything.

'God' had nothing to do with the 'Seven Laws of Noah' and neither did 'Adam' and 'Noah'. They were concocted by extremist Talmudic rabbis with the goal of imposing them on the entirety of human society. The Babylonian Talmud and Jerusalem Talmud are founded on the interpretations of rabbinical crazies and incredibly racist. The deceit claims that 'Noah' is the father of all post-flood humanity and so non-Jews (Gentiles) are all subject to the Noahide Laws given to him by 'God'. 'Noah' was actually an invented character based on 'flood' heroes in many cultures long before Old Testament writers brought their composite invention to global prominence with his 'ark'. The Noahide Laws are as follows:

1. Do not worship idols.
2. Do not curse God.
3. Establish courts of justice to impose the Noahide Laws.
4. Do not murder.
5. Do not commit adultery, bestiality, or sexual immorality.
6. Do not steal.
7. Do not eat flesh from a living animal.

The Devil here, as always, is in the detail. The key 'law' is the setting up of courts to impose the Noahide Laws and decree the death sentences on non-complying non-Jews or Gentiles. These courts would be controlled by Sabbatian-Frankist Death Cult 'judges' according to their interpretation of what constitutes 'worship of idols', 'cursing god', 'adultery', 'sexual immorality' and all the rest. Some of these ultra-Zionist extremists consider Christianity as 'idolatry'. This is the point – non-compliance with the 'God' decreed by the rabbinical (Sabbatian-Frankist) 'courts' would simply mean non-compliance with the 'God' that they decide is 'God'. These zealots contend that Israel is obligated to bring the entire world to worship the Sabbatian-Frankist 'God'. All other worship, or no worship, would be decreed as 'idolatry', 'worship of idols' or cursing 'God'. The fact that they would be ordering the murder of non-compliers over a list of 'laws' that include 'do not murder' matters not to them. Hypocrisy is their very lifeblood. This is not meant to make sense to anyone with an active brain cell. It is merely a calculated excuse to kill who they like when they like. There are many other 'laws' that apply only to Gentiles, too, and even not setting up the courts to pass death sentences is punishable by death.

You could write all this off as a form of insanity except that recognition of the Noahide Laws (including therefore the demand for the creation of Noahide 'courts') has been gathering in the Gentile world. President Ronald Reagan signed a proclamation in 1982 recognising 'the eternal validity of the Seven Noahide Laws, a moral code for all of us regardless of religious faith'. The US Congress gave its support

to the Noahide Laws in 1991 when establishing an 'Education Day' to honour the ultra-Zionist Russian Empire-born extremist racist lunatic Rabbi Menachem Mendel Schneerson, leader of the Chabad-Lubavitch movement, who said that non-Jews exist only to serve Jews. He also said:

This is what needs to be said about the body: the body of a Jewish person is of a totally different quality from the body of [members] of all nations of the world ... The difference in the inner quality between Jews and non-Jews is 'so great that the bodies should be considered as completely different species.' An even greater difference exists in regard to the soul. Two contrary types of soul exist, a non-Jewish soul comes from three satanic spheres, while the Jewish soul stems from holiness.

A more racist claim you could not imagine from those who accuse the rest of the world of racism when Jewishness is not even a race, but a cultural belief system. The 1991 resolution passed by both Houses of Congress (H.J.Res.104) during the presidency of Father George Bush and included the following:

Whereas Congress recognizes the historical tradition of ethical values and principles which are the basis of civilized society and upon which our great Nation was founded;

Whereas these ethical values and principles have been the bedrock of society from the dawn of civilization, when they were known as the Seven Noahide Laws;

Whereas without these ethical values and principles the edifice of civilization stands in serious peril of returning to chaos;

Whereas society is profoundly concerned with the recent weakening of these principles that has resulted in crises that beleaguer and threaten the fabric of civilized society;

Whereas the justified preoccupation with these crises must not let the citizens of this Nation lose sight of their responsibility to transmit these historical ethical values from our distinguished past to the generations of the future;

Whereas the Lubavitch movement has fostered and promoted these ethical values and principles throughout the world.

A few things: The United States was not founded on the Noahide Laws and they have not been the 'bedrock of society from the dawn of civilization'. They were scripted by Talmudic rabbis representing a small section of a tiny section (currently 0.2 percent) of the world population but decreed by these arrogant extremists as applying to the whole of humanity on pain of death. Congressional politicians claim that the deeply racist Chabad-Lubavitch movement has 'fostered and promoted these ethical values and principles throughout the world'? Don't be ridiculous. But when you are owned by the Sabbatian-Frankist Death Cult via funding and intimidation you'll parrot any old crap that your masters tell you. The plan is to introduce a universal 'Noahide Code' founded on the Noahide Laws and imposed by rabbinical courts in a world government system controlled out of Jerusalem (see Smart Grid) and this 'code' would replace national sovereignty. The United Nations is seen as a vehicle for advancing this agenda and is 'striving to fulfil' many parts of the Noahide 'universal code'. The plan is for the global Noahide Laws to be administered by the Biblical Sanhedrin as part of the Smart Grid control system and the rebuilding of 'Solomon's Temple'. Just by coincidence, of course, the Sanhedrin Council of the Jewish nation was reconstructed for the first time in 1,600 years on October 13th, 2004. The ceremony was held in the Israeli town of Tiberias on the Western shore of the Sea of Galilee where the council's last meeting took place in 425 AD.

The pieces are being moved into place at ever greater speed and the symbol of the Noahide Laws is all

around us today. It's the *rainbow colours* depicting the rainbow of Noah in the Biblical story of the Great Flood. The now ubiquitous symbol of the rainbow (including as a symbol for medical staff support during the 'pandemic') is yet another 'coincidence'?

No chance.

Bibliography

- Akin, William E: *Technocracy and the American Dream: The Technocrat Movement, 1900-1941* (University of California Press, 1977)
- Bastardi, Joe: *The Climate Chronicles* (CreateSpace, 2018)
- Brown, Floyd, and Cefaratti Todd: *Big Tech Tyrants: How Silicon Valley's Stealth Practices Addict Teens, Silence Speech, and Steal Your Privacy* (Bombardier Books, 2019)
- Brzezinski, Zbigniew: *Between Two Ages: America's Role in the Technetronic Era* (Greenwood Press, New edition, 1982)
- Crockford, Susan: *The Polar Bear Catastrophe That Never Happened* (The Global Warming Policy Foundation, 2019)
- Evans, David, and Naughton, Tom: *Low Cholesterol Leads to an Early Death: Evidence from 101 Scientific Papers* (Grosvenor House, 2012)
- Figueres, Christiana and Rivett-Carnac, Tom: *The Future We Choose: Surviving the Climate Crisis* (Manilla Press, 2020)
- Friedrichs, Rebecca: *Standing Up to Goliath* (Post Hill Press, 2018)
- Gerhardt, Dr Sue: *Why Love Matters* (Routledge, 2014)
- Grant, Kenneth: *Aleister Crowley & The Hidden God* (Starfire, 2013)
- Groves, Barry: *Trick and Treat: How healthy eating is making us ill* (Hammersmith Press, 2008)
- Huxley, Aldous: *Brave New World* (Vintage Classics, 2007)
- Iserbyt, Charlotte Thomson: *The Deliberate Dumbing Down of America* (Conscience Press, 2011)
- Lanza, Robert, and Berman, Bob: *Biocentrism* (BenBella Books, 2010)
- Lash, John Lamb: *Not In His Image* (Chelsea Green Publishing, 2006)
- Lipton, Bruce: *Biology of Belief* (Hay House UK, 2015)
- Lester, Dawn, and Parker, David: *What Really Makes You Ill – Why everything you thought you knew about disease is wrong* (Independently Published, 2019)
- Lovelock, James: *The Revenge of Gaia* (Penguin, 2007)
- MacCormack, Patricia: *The Ahuman Manifesto* (Bloomsbury Academic, 2019)
- Morano, Marc: *The Politically Incorrect Guide to Climate Change* (Regnery Publishing 2018)
- Orwell, George: *Nineteen Eighty-Four* (Penguin Classics, 2004)
- Siegel, Seth: *Troubled Water* (Macmillan USA, 2019)
- Talbot, Michael: *Holographic Universe* (HarperCollins, 1996)
- Tegmark, Max: *Our Mathematical Universe* (Penguin, 2015)
- Wood, Patrick: *Technocracy Rising* (Coherent Publishing, 2014)
- HeartMath website – Heartmath.com

Index

A

- acupuncture [ref1](#)
- addiction to technology [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
- Adelson, Sheldon [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
- advertising [ref1](#)
- Agenda 21/Agenda 2030 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
- Ahmed, Imran [ref1](#), Postscript
- Aken, Stuart [ref1](#)
- Akin, William [ref1](#)
- Alexander, Eben [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- aliens [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
- All That Is [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
- Allington, Daniel [ref1](#)
- algorithms [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
- Amazon
 - censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 - climate change [ref1](#)
 - Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 - monopolies [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
 - smart assistants [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 - Smart Grid [ref1](#)
 - technocracy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
- Anderson, Roy [ref1](#)
- Andrew, Duke of York (Prince Andrew) [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
- Andrews, Kehinde [ref1](#)
- Angelou, Maya [ref1](#)
- anti-fascist fascism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
- anti-Semitism
 - censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 - climate change [ref1](#)
 - definition [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
 - Holocaust denial [ref1](#)
 - Israel [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
 - Protection Racket [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
 - Sabbatian-Frankism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
 - Smart Grid technology [ref1](#)
 - tropes [ref1](#)
- Apple
 - climate change [ref1](#)
 - Covid-19 censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 - location data, sharing [ref1](#)
 - military control [ref1](#)
 - New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 - smart assistants [ref1](#)
 - tax transparency [ref1](#)
 - technocracy [ref1](#)
- Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
- artificial intelligence (AI)/brain connection [ref1](#)–[ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
 - addiction to technology [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 - Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 - date for connection [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 - depopulation [ref1](#)
 - divide and rule [ref1](#)
 - entrainment of brain
 - frequencies [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 - food [ref1](#)

5G [ref1](#)
immersive technology [ref1](#)
love [ref1](#)
Neuralink [ref1](#)
New Woke [ref1](#)
perception [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
pre-emotive programming [ref1](#)
Silicon Valley [ref1](#)
simulation [ref1](#)
smart assistants [ref1](#)
Smart Grid [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
social media [ref1](#)
virtual humans [ref1](#)
al-Assad, Bashar [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
astrology [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
astro-turfing [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
atomic mythology [ref1](#)
Atkisson, Sharyl [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Auken, Ida [ref1](#)
Avaaz [ref1](#)–[ref2](#)
awareness [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 Body-Mind (five-senses) Bubble [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 expanded awareness [ref1](#)
 God [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 heart [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
 Infinite Awareness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
 self-identity [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
ayahusca experience [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
Ayyadurai, Shiva [ref1](#)

B

Bank of International Settlements (BIS) [ref1](#)
banking and financial system [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 cash, disappearance of [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 central banks [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 Covid-19 [ref1](#)
 credit [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 global financial crisis of 2008 [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 Internet [ref1](#)
 technocracy [ref1](#)
 world currency [ref1](#)
Bastardi, Joe [ref1](#)
BBC [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 climate change [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Beane, Silas [ref1](#)
Behavioural Insights Team Postscript
behaviour modification [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
believing is seeing [ref1](#)
Belsky, Jaroslav [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Benedict XVI, Pope [ref1](#)
Bennett, Roy T [ref1](#)
Berkley, Seth [ref1](#)
Berne, Eric [ref1](#)
Berners-Lee, Mike [ref1](#)
Berners-Lee, Tim [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Bezmenov, Yuri [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Bezos, Jeff [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#)
Biden, Joe [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Big Pharma [ref1](#)–[ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
 cartelism [ref1](#)
 Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
 homeopathy [ref1](#)

polio vaccinations [ref1](#)
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
WHO [ref1](#)

Bilderberg Group [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

billionaires *see* the One-percenters

bin Laden, Osama [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Birx, Deborah [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Blackwell, Norman [ref1](#)

Blair, Tony [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

bloodlines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Bloomberg, Michael [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

Blumenthal, Richard [ref1](#)

Body-Mind (five-senses)

- Bubble [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
- addiction [ref1](#)
- astrology [ref1](#)
- consciousness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
- education [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
- encoding/decoding [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- fear [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- heart [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- Infinite Awareness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
- perception [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- reality [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- self-identity [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- simulation [ref1](#)
- vaccines [ref1](#)
- vibrations [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- wavefields [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Boiko, Polly [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Booker, Cory [ref1](#)

borders, opening the [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

born winners or losers [ref1](#)

Boyle, Francis [ref1](#)

Bradbrook, Gail [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

brain *see also* artificial

- intelligence (AI)/brain connection
- blood-brain barrier [ref1](#)
- cholesterol [ref1](#)
- consciousness [ref1](#)
- education [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- heart-brain conflict [ref1](#)
- hologram, as [ref1](#)
- illusion, as [ref1](#)
- information processor, brain as an [ref1](#)
- left hemisphere [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- placidity [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
- reptilian brain [ref1](#)
- right hemisphere [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
- water [ref1](#)

Bramwell, Simon [ref1](#)

Brave New World Symphony [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Brazil, David Icke's ayahuasca experience in [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Brexit [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Brill, Steven [ref1](#)

Brin, Sergey [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)

British royal family [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Brown, Floyd [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Brown, Gordon [ref1](#)

Brzezinski, Zbigniew [ref1](#)

Bubble *see* Body-Mind (five-senses) Bubble

Bukacek, Annie [ref1](#)

Burns, Terence [ref1](#)

Bush family [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Buttar, Rashid [ref1](#)

C

Caldara, Jon [ref1](#)

Campaign against Antisemitism (CAA) [ref1](#)

capitalism [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Carlson, Tucker [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

cartelism [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Carter, Nick [ref1](#)

Casamitjana, Jordi [ref1](#)

cash, disappearance of [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Cefaratti, Todd [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

anti-Semitism [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

artificial intelligence (AI) [ref1](#)

climate change [ref1](#)

Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

5G [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

ghost or shadow banning [ref1](#)

Internet [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

no platforming [ref1](#)

One-percenter [ref1](#)

perception [ref1](#)

self-censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Silicon Valley [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

transgender hysteria [ref1](#)

WHO [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Center for Countering Digital Hate (CCDH) [ref1](#), Postscript

CERN [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

certainty/uncertainty [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Chabad-Lubavitch movement [ref1](#)

chakras [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

Charles, Prince of Wales [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

chemtrails [ref1](#)

children *see* young people/children

China

acupuncture [ref1](#)

Africa [ref1](#)

Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)

Big Pharma [ref1](#)

digital currency [ref1](#)

5G [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

lockdown [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)

racism [ref1](#)

vaccines [ref1](#)

climate change [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

5G [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

free speech [ref1](#)

genes [ref1](#)

ghost cities [ref1](#)

guaranteed income [ref1](#)

India [ref1](#)

Internet [ref1](#)

Israel [ref1](#)

leadership [ref1](#)

live, telling people where to [ref1](#)

New Woke [ref1](#)

population control [ref1](#)

Silicon Valley [ref1](#)

smart cities [ref1](#)

Social Credit System [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

surveillance dictatorship [ref1](#)
technocracy, as [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
United States, infiltration of [ref1](#)
vaccines [ref1](#)
Zodiac [ref1](#)

cholesterol [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Christianity [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
destruction of Western and Christian society [ref1](#)
Gnostics [ref1](#)
New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

cities [ref1](#)
China, ghost cities in [ref1](#)
mega-cities, moves from rural areas to [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
micro-homes [ref1](#)
sanctuary cities [ref1](#)
smart cities [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

Clegg, Frank [ref1](#)

Climate Cult [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Agenda 21/Agenda 2030 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
children raised by the state [ref1](#)
depopulation [ref1](#)
education, dumbing down [ref1](#)
family unit, restructuring the 297
financial dictatorship, goal of [ref1](#)

human settlement zones, creation of [ref1](#)
movements, restrictions of [ref1](#)
national sovereignty, end to [ref1](#)
private property, abolition of [ref1](#)
astro-turfing [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
banking and financial system [ref1](#)
carbon dioxide [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)
celebrities [ref1](#)
censorship [ref1](#)
chemtrails [ref1](#)
computer models [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
Covid-19 [ref1](#)
criminal sanctions [ref1](#)
cult, traits of a [ref1](#)
deceit [ref1](#)
deniers [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
economy, effect on the [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
electric vehicles [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)-[ref7](#)
European Green Deal [ref1](#)
extinction of human race [ref1](#)
5G [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
flying [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
green movement [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
Hunger Games Society [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
inversion, technique of [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
LED lights [ref1](#)
lithium batteries [ref1](#)
Little Ice Age [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
media [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Medieval Warm Period [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
migrant crisis [ref1](#)
natural resources, state ownership of [ref1](#)
New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#), [ref12](#)
One-percenterers [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
orthodoxy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
polar bears, extinction of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
population control [ref1](#)
religion [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
Rio Earth Summit 1992 [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
school strikes [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

science [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Sun [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
UN [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
veganism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
weather extremes [ref1](#)
wind turbines [ref1](#)
world government [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Clinton, Bill [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
Clinton, Hillary [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
closed loop, universe as a [ref1](#)
Club of Rome [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
Cohen, Nick [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Coleman, David [ref1](#)
Coleman, John [ref1](#)
Collins, Damian, [ref1](#)-[ref2](#), [ref3](#)
communism/Marxism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
computer games [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
computer models climate change [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
 Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
consciousness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
 artificial intelligence (AI)/brain connection [ref1](#)
 Body-Mind (five-senses) Bubble [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
 expansion of consciousness [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 fear [ref1](#)
 frequencies [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 heart [ref1](#)
 information processor, brain as an [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 perception [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 reality [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
 science [ref1](#)
 self-identity [ref1](#)
 subconscious [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
 subliminal programming [ref1](#)
 unconsciousness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Cook, John [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Cook, Tim [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Corbyn, Jeremy [ref1](#)
coronavirus *see* Covid-19
Council on Foreign Relations [ref1](#)-[ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Covid-19 hoax [ref1](#)-[ref2](#) *see also* Covid-19 hoax and vaccines;
 Gates, Bill and Covid-19
 alternative media [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 artificial intelligence (AI)/brain connection [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 banking system [ref1](#)
Big Pharma [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
 biological weapons [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 cash, disappearance of [ref1](#)
 catch a virus, whether you can [ref1](#)
 censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
 China [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#)
 Big Pharma [ref1](#)
 digital currency [ref1](#)
 lockdown [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)
 clapping for medical staff [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 climate change [ref1](#)
 COBRA [ref1](#)
 computer models [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
 cytokine storms [ref1](#)
 death rates [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)
 Deep State [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
 dependency on the state [ref1](#)
 diagnosis fraud [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)
 DNR notices [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

economy, effect on the [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
enforcement [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
exosomes [ref1](#)
fear [ref1](#)
5G [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
food shortages [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
frequencies [ref1](#)
guaranteed income [ref1](#)
gun grabs [ref1](#)
hospitals, empty [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)
Hunger Games Society [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
immunity [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
Imperial College [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
inversion, technique of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Italy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
Johns Hopkins Coronavirus Resource Center [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
laboratory, as coming from a [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
lockdowns [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#)
cause of death, as biggest [ref1](#)
China [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
economy, effect on the [ref1](#)
enforcement [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Hunger Games Society [ref1](#)
Italy [ref1](#)
media [ref1](#)
psychological effect [ref1](#)
worship, places of [ref1](#)
lung effects as not caused by virus [ref1](#)
masks [ref1](#)
mass non-cooperation [ref1](#)
media [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)
misinformation/fake news [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
nanotechnology microchips [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
natural defence, weakening [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
natural immune system response, virus as a [ref1](#)
New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
Ofcom [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
official story [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
old people [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
One-percenter [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
oxygen [ref1](#)
panic buying [ref1](#)
perceptions [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
police-military state [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
population control [ref1](#)
psychological warfare [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
psychopaths [ref1](#)
push-the-gate technique [ref1](#)
red flags [ref1](#)
reporting networks [ref1](#)
reptilian brain [ref1](#)
SAGE [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
self-isolation [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Smart Grid [ref1](#)
social distancing [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
social media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
surveillance [ref1](#)
survival responses [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
technocracy [ref1](#)
tests [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)
the Web [ref1](#)
WHO [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)
Wikipedia [ref1](#)
world army [ref1](#)

Covid-19 hoax and vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

Africa [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Big Pharma [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

DNA or genetic immunisation [ref1](#)

FEMA [ref1](#)

5G [ref1](#)

Gates [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

Africa [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

GAVI [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

mandatory vaccinations [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

young people [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

GAVI [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

indemnities [ref1](#)

mandatory vaccinations [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

media [ref1](#)

nanotechnology microchips [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

old people [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

tattoos [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Vaccine Impact Modelling Consortium [ref1](#)

WHO [ref1](#)

young people [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Crawford, Victoria [ref1](#)

credit [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Cretella, Michelle [ref1](#)

Crockford, Susan [ref1](#)

Crovitz, Gordon [ref1](#)

cultural appropriation [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

culture, takeover of indigenous [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Curry, Judith [ref1](#)

cusp organisations [ref1](#)–[ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

cymatics [ref1](#)

D

DARPA [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Davies-Arai, Stephanie [ref1](#)

Davis, Devra [ref1](#)

Dawes, Melanie [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

Day, Richard [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#), [ref12](#), [ref13](#)

de Blasio, Bill [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

death [ref1](#), [ref2](#)–[ref3](#)

death cult [ref1](#)–[ref2](#)

deathbed perceptions [ref1](#)

fear [ref1](#)

frequencies [ref1](#)

near-death experiences [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

Deep State [ref1](#)–[ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

deep underground military bases (DUMBs) [ref1](#)

dementia [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

democracy [ref1](#)–[ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Digital Hate, [ref1](#)–[ref2](#)

Di Valentino, Eleonora [ref1](#)

Dikker, Suzanne [ref1](#)

discrimination

racism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

transphobia [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

divide and rule [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

DNA

entrainment of brain frequencies [ref1](#)

5G [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

genes [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

harvesting [ref1](#)

Phantom DNA effect [ref1](#)

simulation [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

standing waves [ref1](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Donaldson, Liam [ref1](#)
Donovan, Hedley [ref1](#)
dopamine rush [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Dorsey, Jack [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Doyle, Andrew [ref1](#)
drug addiction [ref1](#)
Dugan, Regina [ref1](#)
Dunegan, Lawrence [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

E

economy

climate change, effect of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), 504, [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
technocracy [ref1](#)

education [ref1](#)

attention disorders and drugs [ref1](#)
bloodline families [ref1](#)
Body-Mind (five-senses) Bubble [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
brain [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
left hemisphere [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
right hemisphere [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
child abuse [ref1](#)
compartmentalisation [ref1](#)
conformity [ref1](#)
disruptive influences [ref1](#)
exams [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
5G [ref1](#)
global standardisation of indoctrination [ref1](#)
homeschooling [ref1](#)
homework [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
loans [ref1](#)
Mainstream Everything [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
perception [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
play [ref1](#)
political correctness [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Postage Stamp Consensus [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
self-directed learning [ref1](#)
subconscious [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
suicide and stress [ref1](#)
systematic programming [ref1](#)
technocracy [ref1](#)
universities and colleges [ref1](#)
vaccinations [ref1](#)
veganism [ref1](#)

Einstein, Albert [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

electric reality [ref1](#)
Electric Universe project/Thunderbolts Project [ref1](#)
electric vehicles [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
electromagnetic waves [ref1](#)–[ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
acupuncture [ref1](#)
Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
5G [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
heart [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
holograms [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
magnetic field of the Earth [ref1](#)
magnetic personalities [ref1](#)
paranormal activity [ref1](#)
population control [ref1](#)
simulation [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
the Spider and the Web [ref1](#)–[ref2](#)
synchronicity [ref1](#)
virtual reality [ref1](#)

Ellison, Ralph [ref1](#)
Emanuel, Ezekiel [ref1](#)
Emoto, Masaru [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
empathy
 heart [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 love [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
encoding/decoding [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
entrainment of brain frequencies [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
epigenetics [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Epstein, Jeffrey [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Ernman, Malena [ref1](#)
Etzion, Oren [ref1](#)
eugenics [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
European Union
 Brexit [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 destruction of Western and Christian society [ref1](#)
 euro [ref1](#)
European Green Deal [ref1](#)
 facial recognition cameras [ref1](#)
 immigration [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 national sovereignty [ref1](#)
 Problem-Reaction-Solution (PRS) [ref1](#)
 superstate, as [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
euthanasia [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Evans, David [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Extinction Rebellion [ref1](#)–[ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
Ezike, Ngozi [ref1](#)

F

Facebook [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
 addiction [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 algorithms [ref1](#)
 avatars [ref1](#)
 censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
 Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
 Israel [ref1](#)
 Learning AI [ref1](#)
 New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 ridicule [ref1](#)
 shadow banning [ref1](#)
 tax transparency [ref1](#)
 technocracy [ref1](#)
 WHO [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Fallen Angels [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Farzan, Michael [ref1](#)
Fauci, Anthony [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
fear [ref1](#)
 Body-Mind (five-senses) Bubble [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 Covid-19 [ref1](#)
 death [ref1](#)
 frequencies [ref1](#)
 heart [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 immigration [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 love [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 religion [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 uncertainty [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
feedback loops [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
feminism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
Ferguson, Neil [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
Fibonacci number sequence [ref1](#)
the Field [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
Figueroes, Christiania [ref1](#)
Firstenberg, Arthur [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Fitzsimons, Lorna [ref1](#)

5G [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
chemtrails [ref1](#)
China [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
climate change [ref1](#)
Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
climate change [ref1](#)
dementia [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
DNA [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
electromagnetic fields [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
frequencies [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
genes [ref1](#)
health, damage to [ref1](#)
media [ref1](#)
nature, effect on [ref1](#)
oxygen [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
population control [ref1](#)
psychological effects [ref1](#)
schools [ref1](#)
Smart Grid [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
transgender hysteria [ref1](#)
trees, chopping down [ref1](#)
viruses [ref1](#)
weapon, deployment as a [ref1](#)
flat Earth [ref1](#)
flying [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Fochtmann, Richard [ref1](#)
Forstater, Maya [ref1](#)
Fox, Fallon [ref1](#)
Fox, Laurence [ref1](#)
Francis, Pope [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Frank, Jacob [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Frankfurt School [ref1](#)
free speech *see also* **censorship** New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
transgender hysteria [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Freemasons [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
frequencies [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
 colour [ref1](#)
 consciousness [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 Covid-19 [ref1](#)
 entrainment of brain frequencies [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 fear [ref1](#)
 5G [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
 genes [ref1](#)
 near-death experiences [ref1](#)
 paedophilia [ref1](#)
 perception [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
 religion [ref1](#)
 simulation [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 vaccines [ref1](#)
 wavefields [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
Friedrichs, Rebecca [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Furedi, Frank [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

G

Gabbard, Tulsi [ref1](#)
Gates, Bill [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#) *see also* **Gates, Bill and Covid-19**
Gates, Bill and Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
 biological weapons [ref1](#)
 Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
 censorship [ref1](#)
 China [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 computer models [ref1](#)
 cryptocurrency [ref1](#)

digital identity [ref1](#)
eugenics [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
GAVI [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Guardian group, funding of [ref1](#)
lockdown [ref1](#)
polio vaccinations [ref1](#)
preparation for pandemic [ref1](#)
psychopath, as [ref1](#)
Rockefeller prophecy [ref1](#)
social media [ref1](#)
tests [ref1](#)
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
Africa [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
GAVI [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
mandatory vaccinations [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
young people [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
WHO [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)

Gates, Frederick T [ref1](#)
Gates, James [ref1](#)
Gates, Melinda [ref1](#)–[ref2](#) *see also* Bill and Melinda Gates Foundation
Gates, William H [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Gatto, John Taylor [ref1](#)
gender *see also* transgender hysteria
men, targeting of white [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
no-gender humans [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
stereotypes [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
toxic masculinity [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

genes [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
DNA [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
epigenetics [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
reincarnation [ref1](#)
switching genes off and on [ref1](#)
synthetic genes [ref1](#)
tests [ref1](#)

Gerhardt, Sue [ref1](#)
global financial crisis of 2008 [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
globalisation [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

Gnostics [ref1](#)
Alexandria, destruction of Royal or Great Library in [ref1](#)
Archons [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
fake reality [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
firmament [ref1](#)
Greys [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
inversion, technique of [ref1](#)
knowledge [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
light [ref1](#)
Nag Hammadi Library [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Prime Reality [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
reptilians [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Roman Catholic church [ref1](#)
simulation [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
symbols [ref1](#)
Upper/Lower Aeons [ref1](#)
water [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Yaldabaoth/Demiurge [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Goodman, Peter [ref1](#)
Google artificial intelligence (AI)/brain connection [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)
climate change [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
DARPA [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
human rights [ref1](#)
hypocrisy [ref1](#)
military control [ref1](#)

monopolies [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
news [ref1](#)
Smart Grid [ref1](#)
tax transparency [ref1](#)
technocracy [ref1](#)
YouTube [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
Gore, Al [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Graham, Mike [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Grant, Kenneth [ref1](#)–[ref2](#)
grassroots programming [ref1](#)
Gray, Peter [ref1](#)
Green New Deal [ref1](#)–[ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
grooming gangs [ref1](#)
guaranteed income [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
guns, confiscation of [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Gunter, Peter [ref1](#)

H

Haass, Richard [ref1](#)
Haddad, Tareq [ref1](#)
Hadron Collider [ref1](#)
Hall, Manly P [ref1](#)
Hamilton, Jamie [ref1](#)
Hancock, Matt [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Hanson, Victor Davis [ref1](#)
Happer, William [ref1](#)
Harry, Duke of Sussex (Prince Harry) [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Hart, Michael [ref1](#)
hate speech [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Haynes, John-Dylan [ref1](#)
Hayton, Debbie [ref1](#)
heart
 All That Is [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 attraction [ref1](#)
 awareness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
 behaviour modification [ref1](#)
 Body-Mind (five-senses) Bubble [ref1](#)
 brain-heart conflict [ref1](#)
 chakra [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
 children [ref1](#)
 coherence/incoherence [ref1](#)
 communications from the heart [ref1](#)
 deathbed perceptions [ref1](#)
 electromagnetism [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 emotional reactions [ref1](#)
 empathy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 fear [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 feedback loops [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 global heart [ref1](#)
 heart-brain-belly [ref1](#)
 holograms [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 human love, heart love as not [ref1](#)
 intuition [ref1](#)
 laughter [ref1](#)
 love [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 maverick, as the [ref1](#)
 The One [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 opening the heart and being the heart [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 perception [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 religion [ref1](#)
 self-identity [ref1](#)
 water [ref1](#)
 wisdom [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Heisenberg, Werner Karl [ref1](#)

Herbert, Frank [ref1](#)

Hildreth, James [ref1](#)

Hitler, Adolf [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

hive minds [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Hoffman, Donald [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Holocaust denial [ref1](#)

holograms/holographs [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

digital holograms [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

entrainment of brain frequencies [ref1](#)

heart [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

human decoding [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

illusion [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

night sky [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

observer effect [ref1](#)

paranormal activity [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

physical reality [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

poisoning [ref1](#)

possession [ref1](#)

reality [ref1](#)

simulation [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

size of holograms [ref1](#)

symbols [ref1](#)

time [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Universe [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

vaccines [ref1](#)

wavefields [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

homelessness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

homeopathy [ref1](#)

Hope Not Hate [ref1](#)

Hunger Games Society

cities [ref1](#)

climate change [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

drug addiction [ref1](#)

globalisation [ref1](#)

immigration [ref1](#)

Internet [ref1](#)

New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

One-percenter [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

technocracy [ref1](#)

world army [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Hunt, George [ref1](#)

Hunt, Tim [ref1](#)

Hunt, Patricia [ref1](#)

Huxley, Aldous [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#)

Hyde, James [ref1](#)

Hypatia [ref1](#)

hypnotism [ref1](#)

|

Icke, Gareth [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Icke, Jaymie [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

identity *see* identity politics; self-identity

identity politics [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Ignatiev, Noel [ref1](#)

Illuminati [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

illusions [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

immersive technology [ref1](#)

immigration [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

cultural elimination [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

decriminalisation of illegal immigration [ref1](#)

deportations [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

EU [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

fear [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
hate speech [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Hunger Games Society [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
mass immigration [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
open borders [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
refugees [ref1](#)
sanctuary cities [ref1](#)
Sweden [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
technocracy [ref1](#)
UN [ref1](#)

Internet *see also social media*

algorithms [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
alternative media [ref1](#)
banking/financial system [ref1](#)
Big Tech [ref1](#)
censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
CIA [ref1](#)
DARPA [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
dystopia [ref1](#)
ghost or shadow banning [ref1](#)
hate speech [ref1](#)
Internet of Things [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
simulation [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
surveillance [ref1](#)
time [ref1](#)

intersectionality [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
inversion, technique of astrological inversion [ref1](#)

Big Pharma [ref1](#)
climate change [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Gnostics [ref1](#)
God [ref1](#)
New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

Iraq [ref1](#)–[ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)

Iserbyt, Charlotte [ref1](#)

Israel

anti-Semitism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
Beersheba complex [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
certainty [ref1](#)
China, relations with [ref1](#)
Covid-19 [ref1](#)
Deep State [ref1](#)
dome system [ref1](#)
Iran [ref1](#)
media [ref1](#)
Mossad [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
New Woke [ref1](#)
nuclear weapons [ref1](#)
Palestine [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
Sabbatian-Frankism [ref1](#)–[ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
Saudi Arabia [ref1](#)
sex trafficking of minors [ref1](#)
Smart Grid [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Solomon's Temple, rebuilding of [ref1](#)
technocracy [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
United States, relations with [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Wikipedia [ref1](#)
world government [ref1](#)

J

Jensen, Scott [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

John Paul I, Pope [ref1](#)
John Paul II, Pope [ref1](#)
Johnson, Boris [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
Johnson, Wayne [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Joon Hyeop Lee [ref1](#)
Jurek, Kyle [ref1](#)

K

Kassem, Suzy [ref1](#)
Kaufman, Andrew [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Kelion, Leo [ref1](#)
Keller, Timothy [ref1](#)
Kennedy, John F [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Kennedy Jr, Robert F [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
King Jr, Martin Luther [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
Kirkup, James [ref1](#)
Klug, Adam [ref1](#)
knowledge
 Gnostics [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 intuition [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
 knowing, difference from [ref1](#)
 love [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Koch Postulates [ref1](#)
Krioukov, Dmitri [ref1](#)
Kristen, Kristina [ref1](#)
kundalini [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Kurzweil, Ray [ref1](#)–[ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)
Kyle-Sidell, Cameron [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Kyung Hee Kim [ref1](#)

L

Labour Party [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), Postscript
Langmuir sheath [ref1](#)
language
 New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
 self-identity [ref1](#)
 synchronicity [ref1](#)
 transgender hysteria [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
 Lanier, Jaron [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 Lanza, Robert [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 Lash, John Lamb [ref1](#)
 Lee, John [ref1](#)
 Lester, Dawn [ref1](#)
 Levin, Michael [ref1](#)
 Levinson, Arthur D [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 Libet, Benjamin [ref1](#)
 Lieber, Charles [ref1](#)
 light [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 Lucifer [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 speed of light [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 Linehan, Graham [ref1](#)
 Lipton, Bruce [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 Little Ice Age [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 Littman, Lisa [ref1](#)
 London Live [ref1](#)
 London Real [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
 love [ref1](#)
 anti-hate [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 anti-love [ref1](#)
 artificial intelligence (AI)/brain connection [ref1](#)
 attraction [ref1](#)
 chemical love [ref1](#)
 children, environment around [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

designer love [ref1](#)
empathy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
families [ref1](#)
fear [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
the heart [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
human love, love as more than [ref1](#)
illusory love [ref1](#)
imbalance [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Infinite Love [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
intellect, prison of the [ref1](#)
knowledge [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
the One [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
science of love [ref1](#)
self, loving [ref1](#)
source of love [ref1](#)
strength [ref1](#)
unborn children, environment around [ref1](#)
water [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
weakness [ref1](#)
what is love [ref1](#)
Lovelock, James [ref1](#)
Lucifer [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

M

McAndrew, Siobhain [ref1](#), Postscript
MacCormack, Patricia [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
McDonald, Kendrick [ref1](#)
McGilchrist, Iain [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
McKinnon, Catriona [ref1](#)
McNeil, Kirsty [ref1](#), Postscript
McSweeney, Morgan [ref1](#)
Mainstream Everything [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
 climate change [ref1](#)
 Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 education [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 homeopathy [ref1](#)
 left side of brain [ref1](#)
 media [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 The Program [ref1](#)
 religion [ref1](#)
 science [ref1](#)
 young people [ref1](#)
Malthus, Thomas [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
manipulation, methods of [ref1](#)
Mann, John [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Margulis, Lynn [ref1](#)
Martin, Abby [ref1](#)
masculinity [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
mathematics [ref1](#)
The Matrix [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#), [ref12](#)
media [ref1](#), [ref2](#) see also BBC;
 censorship; Internet; social media
 alternative media [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
 astro-turfing [ref1](#)
 climate change [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)
 creation of problem to impose the solution [ref1](#)
 the Cult [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 diversity [ref1](#)
Mainstream Everything [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 news [ref1](#)
 Ofcom [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 official versions [ref1](#)

ownership [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
perception programming [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Postage Stamp Consensus [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Reach PLC, list of assets of [ref1](#)
repetition [ref1](#)
Silicon Valley [ref1](#)
the Spider and the Web [ref1](#)
vaccines [ref1](#)
mediums/psychics [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
Meghan, Duchess of Sussex (Markle, Meghan) [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
men, targeting of white [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Mexico, drug cartels in [ref1](#)
Michel, Kevin [ref1](#)
microaggressions [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
micro-technology [ref1](#)
military
 Beersheba complex [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 control of cyberspace [ref1](#)
 police-military state [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 world army [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Miller, Harry [ref1](#)
MKUltra [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
money *see the* One-percenter
Moore, Michael [ref1](#)
Moore, Patrick [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Morgan, Piers [ref1](#)
Moskowitz, Joel [ref1](#)
Mos-Shogbamimu, Shola [ref1](#)
Mullis, Kary [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Murdoch, Rupert [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Musk, Elon [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)
mysteries [ref1](#)
 believing is seeing [ref1](#)
 born winners or losers [ref1](#)
 genes [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 paranormalism [ref1](#)
 possession [ref1](#)
 relationship (wave) fields [ref1](#)
 shapeshifters [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 synchronicity [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 wave entanglement/wavefields [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 wavefields [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

N

nanotechnology microchips [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
narcissism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
national sovereignty [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
NATO [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Nazis [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
near-death experiences [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
 health transformations [ref1](#)
 high frequencies [ref1](#)
 Jesus story [ref1](#)
 simulation [ref1](#)
Nephilim bloodline families [ref1](#)
Neubauer, Luisa-Marie [ref1](#)
New Agers [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
 advertising [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 astro-turfing [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 behaviour modification [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
Christianity, targeting of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 climate change [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#), [ref12](#)

communism/Marxism/socialism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
consciousness [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
creation of New Woke [ref1](#)
cultural appropriation [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
demoralisation, destabilisation, crisis and normalisation [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
discrimination [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
divide and rule [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
education [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
free speech [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
globalisation [ref1](#)
goals of the Cult and New Wokeness [ref1](#)
heart [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
hive minds [ref1](#)
Hunger Games Society [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
immigration [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Internet [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
intersectionality [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
inversion, technique of [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
language [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
media [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
men, targeting of white [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
microaggressions [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
narcissism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
no platforming [ref1](#)
One-percenters [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
perception [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
political correctness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
racism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
religion [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
self-identity [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
sexual orientation [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
chemicals [ref1](#)
self-identity [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
social justice [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
social media [ref1](#)
surveillance [ref1](#)
transgender activists [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
trigger warnings [ref1](#)
veganism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
virtue signalling [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
weakness [ref1](#)
Western society, transformation of [ref1](#)
white people, targeting of [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Nephilim bloodline families [ref1](#)
NewsGuard [ref1](#)
Niemöller, Martin [ref1](#)
No-Problem-Reaction-Solution (NPRS) [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
Noahide laws [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Nobel Peace Prize [ref1](#)
numbers [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

0

Obama, Barack [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
Observer Effect [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Ocasio Cortez, Alexandra [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
the One
climate change [ref1](#)
consciousness [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
enemies [ref1](#)
Fallen Angels [ref1](#)
Gnostics [ref1](#)
God [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
heart [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

love [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
self-identity [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
vibrations [ref1](#)
waves [ref1](#)

the One-percenters

anti-fascist fascism and billionaire alliance [ref1](#)
capitalism [ref1](#)
censorship [ref1](#)
climate change [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
democracy [ref1](#)
district attorneys, election of [ref1](#)
education [ref1](#)
freedom, deletion of [ref1](#)
guaranteed income [ref1](#)
gun grabs [ref1](#)
Hunger Games Society [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
immigration [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
land grabs [ref1](#)
New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)
police/military force [ref1](#)
political parties [ref1](#)
population control [ref1](#)
Problem-Reaction-Solution (P-R-S) [ref1](#)
shapeshifters [ref1](#)
socialism [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
technocracy [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

O'Neil, Will [ref1](#)
Orwell, George [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)
Osho [ref1](#)
out of body experiences (OBEs) [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
oxygen [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

P

paedophiles [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Page, Larry [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)
Pall, Martin [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
paranormal activity [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
electromagnetism [ref1](#)
knowledge [ref1](#)
mediums/psychics [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
poltergeists [ref1](#)
possession [ref1](#)
rune stones and tarot cards [ref1](#)
telepathy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Parker, David [ref1](#)
Patterson, John [ref1](#)
Pears Foundation [ref1](#)
perceptions [ref1](#)–[ref2](#), [ref3](#)–[ref4](#), [ref5](#)–[ref6](#) see also Postage Stamp Consensus
ageing [ref1](#)
All That Is [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
artificial intelligence (AI)/brain connection [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Body-Mind (five-senses) Bubble [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
cause-and-effect [ref1](#)
Christianity [ref1](#)
climate change [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
consciousness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
control [ref1](#)–[ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
deathbed perceptions [ref1](#)
download [ref1](#)
education [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
eugenics [ref1](#)
fear [ref1](#)

feedback loops [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
frequencies [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
genes [ref1](#)
heart [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Hollywood [ref1](#)
holograms [ref1](#)
illusions [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Infinite Awareness [ref1](#)
limits of mind [ref1](#)
media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Postage Stamp Consensus [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
power [ref1](#)
reality [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
religion [ref1](#)
science [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
self-identity [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
simulation [ref1](#)
social media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
subconscious [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
time [ref1](#)
transfer [ref1](#)
transgender hysteria [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
vibrations [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
wavefields [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

permanent government as real government [ref1](#)–[ref2](#)
pharmaceuticals *see* Big Pharma
physics, law of [ref1](#)
placebos [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Planck, Max [ref1](#)
Plato [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
police-military state [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
political correctness
 cultural appropriation [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 dog whistles [ref1](#)
 education [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 immigration [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 Internet [ref1](#)
 men [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 microaggressions [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
 Postage Stamp Consensus [ref1](#)
 social media [ref1](#)
 transgender hysteria [ref1](#)
 tropes [ref1](#)
 white people [ref1](#)
population control [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 artificial intelligence (AI)/brain connection [ref1](#)
 climate change [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 contraceptives [ref1](#)
 Covid-19 [ref1](#)
 eugenics [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 synthetic humans [ref1](#)
possession [ref1](#)
Postage Stamp Consensus
 education [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 fear [ref1](#)
 media [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 perception [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
political correctness [ref1](#)
reason [ref1](#)
religion [ref1](#)
transgender hysteria [ref1](#)
wavefields [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

private property, abolition of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Problem-Reaction-Solution (PRS) [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)
the Program [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Project for the New American Century (PNAC) [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
biological weapons [ref1](#)
Sabbatian-Frankism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks on United States [ref1](#)
Syria, regime change in [ref1](#)
vaccines [ref1](#)
psychological warfare [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
psychopaths [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Pu, Lena [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Purdue Pharma [ref1](#)

R

racism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)–[ref7](#) *see also* anti-Semitism
Rackete, Carola [ref1](#)
Rain, Joseph [ref1](#)
Rao, Saira [ref1](#)
Rappoport, Jon [ref1](#)
rational, definition of [ref1](#)
al Razzouqi, Khalid Nasser [ref1](#)
reality [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 awareness [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 Body-Mind (five-senses) Bubble [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 consciousness [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
 electronic reality [ref1](#)
encoding/decoding [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
fake reality [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 God [ref1](#)
 holograms [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 information processor, brain as an [ref1](#)
 near-death experiences [ref1](#)
 perception [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 physical reality, creation of [ref1](#)
 Prime Reality [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 quantum reality [ref1](#)
 shadow [ref1](#)
 speed of light [ref1](#)
 standing waves [ref1](#)
 time [ref1](#)
reincarnation [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
relativity, theory of [ref1](#)
religion [ref1](#)–[ref2](#) *see also* Christianity; Gnostics bloodlines [ref3](#)
 Body-Mind (five-senses) Bubble [ref1](#)
 climate change [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
 closed mind [ref1](#)
 divide and rule [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
extreme Muslims [ref1](#)
 fear [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 frequencies [ref1](#)
 God awareness [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 certainty/uncertainty [ref1](#)
 God Program [ref1](#)
 inversion, technique of [ref1](#)
 love [ref1](#)
 Noahide laws [ref1](#)
 the One [ref1](#)
 simulation [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 the Void [ref1](#)
 what is God [ref1](#)
 heart [ref1](#)
 illusory love [ref1](#)
 indoctrination [ref1](#)

inversion, technique of [ref1](#)
love [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Mainstream Everything [ref1](#)
New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
prayers [ref1](#)
Sabbatian-Frankism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
science [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
self-identity [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Rentzhog, Ingmar [ref1](#)
reptilians [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
Revie, Don [ref1](#)
Rhodes, Cecil [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Ribbenvik, Mikael [ref1](#)
Ricciardi, Walter [ref1](#)
ridicule [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#), [ref12](#)
Riedl, Christoph [ref1](#)
Riley, Rachael [ref1](#)
Rivers, Thomas Milton [ref1](#)
Rockefeller family [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)
Rockefeller Foundation [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Rohrlich, Justin [ref1](#)
Rose, Brian [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Rothschild, Edmond de [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Rothschild, Mayer Amschel [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Rothschilds
anti-Semitism [ref1](#)
Bank for International Settlements (BIS) [ref1](#)
climate change [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Israel/Palestine [ref1](#)
one-percent [ref1](#)
Round Table [ref1](#)
WHO [ref1](#)
Rowley, Jeanette [ref1](#)
royalty/aristocracy [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
RT TV station [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Rumi [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

§

Sabbatian-Frankism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
anti-Semitism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Illuminati [ref1](#)
Israel [ref1](#)–[ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
Kabbalah [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Marxism [ref1](#)
Noahide laws [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Project for the New American Century (PNAC) [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
religion [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Saudi Arabia [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks on United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Wikipedia [ref1](#)
Sackler family [ref1](#)
Sagan, Carl [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Sandberg, Sheryl [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Sanders, Bernie [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Sandström, Markus [ref1](#)
Sarkar, Ash [ref1](#)
Satanism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
Saturn [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Saudi Arabia [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Schiff, Adam [ref1](#)
Schmidt, Eric [ref1](#)
Schneerson, Menachem Mendel [ref1](#)
Schofield, Phillip [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Schumann, Winfried Otto [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

science [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
astrology [ref1](#)
climate change [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
consciousness [ref1](#)
love [ref1](#)
paranormalism [ref1](#)
perception [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
religion [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
scientism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Sebire, Jonathan [ref1](#)
secret societies [ref1](#)–[ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Seibt, Naomi [ref1](#)
self-identity [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
All Possibility [ref1](#)
atomic mythology [ref1](#)
awareness [ref1](#)
Body-Mind (five-senses) Bubble see auric field [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
chakras [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
consciousness [ref1](#)
 the Cult [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 electric reality [ref1](#)
 experiences [ref1](#)
 fake self [ref1](#)–[ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 the Field [ref1](#)
 holographic illusion [ref1](#)
 human, what is [ref1](#)
 identity politics [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 intersectionality [ref1](#)
 labels [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#), [ref12](#)
 language [ref1](#)
 love [ref1](#)
 New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
 no-thing is everything [ref1](#)
 the One [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 perception [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 Phantom Self persona [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 physical reality, creation of [ref1](#)
 politics [ref1](#)
 religion [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
 science [ref1](#)
 sexual orientation [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
waves [ref1](#)
September 11, 2001, terrorist attacks on United States [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
settlement zones, creation of human [ref1](#)
sexual orientation [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
 chemicals [ref1](#)
 self-identity [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
Shakespeare, William [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
shapeshifters [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Sharpton, Al [ref1](#)
Sheikh, Yaser [ref1](#)
Shine, Betty [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Siegel, Seth [ref1](#)
Silicon Valley [ref1](#)–[ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
 banking and financial system [ref1](#)
 censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
 Covid-19 [ref1](#)
democracy [ref1](#)
5G [ref1](#)
 global dominance [ref1](#)
 immigration [ref1](#)
 inequality [ref1](#)
 Israel [ref1](#)
 media [ref1](#)

New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Postage Stamp Consensus [ref1](#)
technocracy [ref1](#)
world army [ref1](#)
world government [ref1](#)
Zionists [ref1](#)
simulation [ref1](#)
addiction [ref1](#)
aliens, absence of [ref1](#)
Archons [ref1](#)
Body-Mind (five-senses) Bubble [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
computer games [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
computer reality mimicking simulation reality [ref1](#)
creation of the simulation [ref1](#)
decision-making [ref1](#)
decoding our own prison [ref1](#)
DNA [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Electric Universe project/Thunderbolts Project [ref1](#)
electrical/electromagnetic communication system, universe as [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
energy, humans as sources of [ref1](#)
enticement into the simulation [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Fallen Angels [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
fractal patterns [ref1](#)
frequencies [ref1](#)
Gnostics [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Golden Ratio [ref1](#)
heart [ref1](#)
high frequency Earth [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
holograms [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
human decoding [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
 Internet and digital technology [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 isolation [ref1](#)
 mathematics [ref1](#)
 near-death experiences [ref1](#)
 numbers [ref1](#)
 perception [ref1](#)
 physics, law of [ref1](#)
 rebooting points [ref1](#)
Sentient World Simulation (SWS) [ref1](#)
simulation, within a [ref1](#)
Smart Grid [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
universe as a [ref1](#)
virtual reality [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Singer, Paul [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Skeptical Science [ref1](#)
Skenderis, Kostas [ref1](#)
smart assistants [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Smart Grid technology [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
 artificial intelligence (AI)/brain connection [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
 Covid-19 [ref1](#)
 driverless autonomous vehicles [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 5G [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 Internet [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 Learning AI [ref1](#)
 Noahide Laws [ref1](#)
 satellites, launch of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 simulation [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 smart assistants, connection of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 smart cities [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
 smart streets [ref1](#)
 televisions [ref1](#)
 transgender hysteria [ref1](#)
 vaccines [ref1](#)
social justice [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

social media *see also Facebook;*

Twitter
addiction [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
black sheep abuse [ref1](#)
censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Learning AI [ref1](#)
perception [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
political correctness [ref1](#)
vaccines [ref1](#)
young people [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

socialism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Socrates [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

software archons [ref1](#)
Solomon, David [ref1](#)

Solum, Celeste [ref1](#)

Soros, George [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

anti-Semitism [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Arab Spring [ref1](#)
Brexit [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
cartelism [ref1](#)
climate change [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
district attorneys, election of [ref1](#)
illegal migrants, funding [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
media [ref1](#)

New Woke mentality, funding of [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
ONE Movement [ref1](#)

Open Society Foundations (OSF) [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
people's revolutions, funding of [ref1](#)

Problem-Reaction-Solution (PRS) [ref1](#)

Silicon Valley [ref1](#)

Soul [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

space [ref1](#)

Spanish flu [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

The Spider and the Web [ref1](#)–[ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

standing waves [ref1](#)

Starmer, Keir [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Stevens, Simon [ref1](#)

Strachan, James [ref1](#)

Streeck, Hendrik [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Strong, Maurice [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

Styger, Anton [ref1](#)

subliminal programming [ref1](#)

Sun

cholesterol [ref1](#)
climate change [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
electromagnetism [ref1](#)
sunspots [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
temperature [ref1](#)
torus [ref1](#)
vitamin D [ref1](#)

surveillance

dictatorship [ref1](#)

heart [ref1](#)

Internet [ref1](#)

New Woke [ref1](#)

smart assistants [ref1](#)

smart streets [ref1](#)

tattoos for tracking purposes [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

survival responses [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Susskind, Leonard [ref1](#)

sweatshops [ref1](#)

Swinney, John [ref1](#)
symbolism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
synchronicity [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
synthetic humans [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
Syria [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
The System
 education [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
 fear [ref1](#)
 heart [ref1](#)
 Internet [ref1](#)
 media [ref1](#)
Szijjártó, Péter [ref1](#)

T

Talbot, Michael [ref1](#)
Talk Radio [ref1](#)
tax avoidance [ref1](#)
Tayler, James [ref1](#)
technocracy [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 banking and financial system [ref1](#)
 climate change [ref1](#)
 cover stories [ref1](#)
 Covid-19 hoax [ref1](#)
democracy [ref1](#)
 economy, changes to global [ref1](#)
 education [ref1](#)
 globalisation [ref1](#)
 Hunger Games Society [ref1](#)
 Marxism/fascism [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 One-percenterers [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 philanthropy [ref1](#)
 private property, end of [ref1](#)
 psychopaths [ref1](#)
 specialisations [ref1](#)
Tedros Adhanom Ghebreyesus [ref1](#)
Tegmark, Max [ref1](#)
telepathy [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Terrile, Rich [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Tesla, Nikola [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Thunberg, Greta [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#), [ref12](#), [ref13](#)
Thwaites, Bryan [ref1](#)
time [ref1](#)
torus [ref1](#)
Toufou, David [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
toxic masculinity [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
transgender hysteria [ref1](#)
 artificial intelligence (AI), interaction with [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
 autism [ref1](#)
 censorship [ref1](#)
 chemicals [ref1](#)
 children [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 Dentons, report by [ref1](#)
 drag artists [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 drugs [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 feminism [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 free speech [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
 infertility [ref1](#)
 language/pronouns [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
 legislation, securing changes to [ref1](#)
 media [ref1](#)
 New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
 no-gender synthetic biological humans [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
 parental rights [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 procreation [ref1](#)

recognition of gender [ref1](#)
secret societies [ref1](#)
self-identification/declarations of gender [ref1](#)
Smart Grid [ref1](#)
Smart TVs [ref1](#)
social services [ref1](#)
sport [ref1](#)
synthetic biology [ref1](#)
TERFs [ref1](#)
transphobia [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
virtue signalling [ref1](#)
Xenobots [ref1](#)
trigger warnings [ref1](#)
Trilateral Commission [ref1](#)–[ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)
Trower, Barrie [ref1](#)
Trump, Donald [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 climate change [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
 deportation [ref1](#)
 Epstein, Jeffrey [ref1](#)
 funding [ref1](#)
 Hunger Games Society [ref1](#)
 Israel [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
 narcissism [ref1](#)
 New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 permanent government, as puppet of [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 state of emergency, declaration of [ref1](#)
 vaccines [ref1](#)
The Truman Show (film) [ref1](#)
truth vibrations [ref1](#)
Twitter
 censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
 Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 ghost or shadow banning [ref1](#)
 Learning AI [ref1](#)
 monopolies [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
 special interests [ref1](#)
 transgender hysteria [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 vaccines [ref1](#)
 young people [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

U
ultra-Zionism/Death Cult xxxviii–[ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
United Nations (UN) [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 climate change [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 immigration [ref1](#)
 Noahide Laws [ref1](#)
 Smart Grid [ref1](#)
 world government [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
universal income [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

V
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#)–[ref3](#) *see also Covid-19 hoax and vaccines anti-vaxxers, demonisation of* [ref4](#)
 Big Pharma [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
 children [ref1](#)
 compensation [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
 DNA [ref1](#)
 health consequences [ref1](#)
 herd immunity [ref1](#)
 ingredients [ref1](#)
 mandatory vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
 nano-microchips [ref1](#)

synthetic genes [ref1](#)
tattoos for tracking purposes [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
toxicity [ref1](#)
Vallance, Patrick [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
veganism [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
cholesterol [ref1](#)
climate change [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
ethical veganism [ref1](#)
New Woke [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
plants and trees, stress felt by [ref1](#)
synthetic food [ref1](#)
Verdier, Philippe [ref1](#)
vibrations [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Body-Mind (five-senses) Bubble [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
fear [ref1](#)
truth [ref1](#)
virtual reality [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
addiction [ref1](#)
decoding [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
electromagnetism [ref1](#)
illusion [ref1](#)
limitations [ref1](#)
simulation [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
virtual humans [ref1](#)
virtue signalling [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
von Braun, Wernher [ref1](#)

W

Wales, Jimmy [ref1](#)
Walmart [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Warren, Elizabeth [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
water [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Watts, Alan [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
waves and wavefields *see also* electromagnetic waves atomic mythology [ref1](#)
awakenings [ref1](#)
Big Pharma [ref1](#)
Body-Mind (five-senses) Bubble [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
climate change [ref1](#)
closed loop, universe as a [ref1](#)
conformity [ref1](#)
consciousness [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
entanglements [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)
astrology [ref1](#)
climate change [ref1](#)
consciousness [ref1](#)
genes [ref1](#)
heart [ref1](#)
micro-technology [ref1](#)
perceptions [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
simulation [ref1](#)
stress [ref1](#)
synchronicity [ref1](#)
families [ref1](#)
fear [ref1](#)
frequencies [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
genes [ref1](#)
heart [ref1](#)
holograms [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#)
homeopathy [ref1](#)
mind over matter [ref1](#)
near-death experiences [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
New Woke [ref1](#)
paranormal activity [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
perceptions [ref1](#)

Postage Stamp Consensus [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
quantum entanglement [ref1](#)
poisoning [ref1](#)
reincarnation [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
relationships [ref1](#)
reality [ref1](#)
rituals [ref1](#)
Saturn [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
self-identity [ref1](#)
shapeshifters [ref1](#)
simulation [ref1](#)
Soul [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
standing waves [ref1](#)
stress [ref1](#)
Sun [ref1](#)
symbolism [ref1](#)
vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
veganism [ref1](#)
vibrations [ref1](#)
water [ref1](#)
wealth *see the* One-percenters
the Web *see* The Spider and the Web
Webb, Whitney [ref1](#)
Weinstein, Harvey [ref1](#)
Weishaupt, Adam [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Wheeler, Tom [ref1](#)
white people [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)
Wiener, Scott [ref1](#)
Wi-Fi [ref1](#)
addiction [ref1](#)
children [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
epigenetics [ref1](#)
health issues [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
holograms [ref1](#)
pineal gland [ref1](#)
plants, effect on [ref1](#)
reality [ref1](#)
satellite Wi-Fi [ref1](#)
simulation [ref1](#)
worldwide provision [ref1](#)
Wikipedia [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
Williams, Nicola [ref1](#)
Wilson, Rick [ref1](#)
Wirth, Timothy [ref1](#)
Wodarg, Wolfgang [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Woke culture *see* New Woke
Wojcicki, Susan [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#), [ref12](#)
Wood, Patrick [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Woodcock, Leslie [ref1](#)
world army [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)
world currency [ref1](#)
World Economic Forum (WEF), Davos [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#)
world government [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)
World Health Organization (WHO)
Big Pharma [ref1](#)
censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#)
Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#)
Gates [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)
Rothschilds [ref1](#)
sterilisation by deception [ref1](#)
technocracy [ref1](#)
vaccines [ref1](#)

Y

Xi Jinping [ref1](#)

Yaldabaoth/Demiurge [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

young people/children *see also education*

addiction to technology [ref1](#)

artificial intelligence (AI)/brain connection [ref1](#)

brain tumours, smartphones causing [ref1](#)

care, children taken into [ref1](#)

certainty/uncertainty [ref1](#)

climate change [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Covid-19 [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

feminism [ref1](#)

heart [ref1](#)

love [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Mainstream Everything [ref1](#)

mental health [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

New Woke [ref1](#)

parental rights [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

sex trafficking of minors [ref1](#)

social media [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

state, children raised by the [ref1](#)

transgender hysteria [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

unborn children, environment around [ref1](#)

vaccines [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

Wi-Fi [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#)

YouTube *see also YouTube and*

Covid-19

anti-Semitism [ref1](#)

censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#)

climate change [ref1](#)

ghost or shadow banning [ref1](#)

Google [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#)

military control [ref1](#)

monopolies [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

New Woke [ref1](#)

news [ref1](#)

recommendations [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#)

technocracy [ref1](#)

YouTube and Covid-19

censorship [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#)

hospitals, videos of empty [ref1](#)

WHO [ref1](#)

Z

Zevi, Sabbatai [ref1](#), [ref2](#)

Zuckerberg, Mark [ref1](#), [ref2](#), [ref3](#), [ref4](#), [ref5](#), [ref6](#), [ref7](#), [ref8](#), [ref9](#), [ref10](#), [ref11](#), [ref12](#), [ref13](#), [ref14](#), [ref15](#), [ref16](#), [ref17](#), [ref18](#)



Ickonic has been a dream of mine for five years growing up around alternative information. I have always had a natural interest in what is happening in the world and what I could do to make it better.

Across the range of subjects and positions of influence occupied mainly by people who don't try to improve human society it's the mainstream media that I have always found the most frustrating and fascinating. If the media did its job then so many negative events in the world would not be happening because their background and agenda would be exposed.

A free media and free Internet would mean that those in power would be held to account for their behaviour and manipulation. They would no longer be the 'Untouchables'.

At Ickonic we engage in journalism and broadcasting as it should be – the uncensored pursuit of the truth. We have hundreds of videos, reports, series, documentaries, full-length films and weekly programmes covering a vast range of subjects with more constantly added. David Icke's public presentations over 30 years are there, plus his series unique to Ickonic, and every week he goes through the news and puts it into its real context.

Take our free seven-day trial to see the amazing information that we have. We created Ickonic as a bulwark against the hysterical censorship that we knew was coming – and is now here.

Ickonic's time has come.

Jaymie Icke, Founder, Ickonic Alternative Media

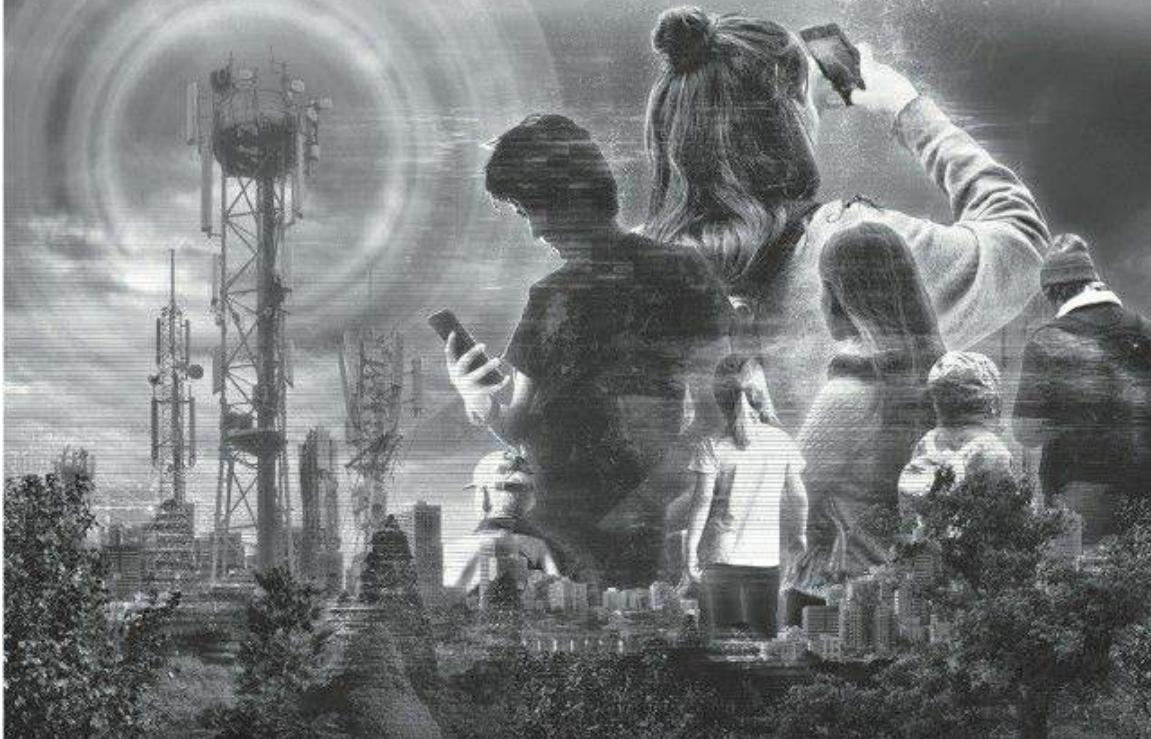
SIGN UP NOW AT ICKONIC.COM

ICKONIC
THE ALTERNATIVE

AN ICKONIC ORIGINAL FILM
DIRECTED BY JAYMIE ICKE

UNNATURAL

WHAT PRICE ARE WE PAYING FOR THE
TECHNOLOGY WE LOVE?



RELEASE DATE

FRIDAY 10TH JULY

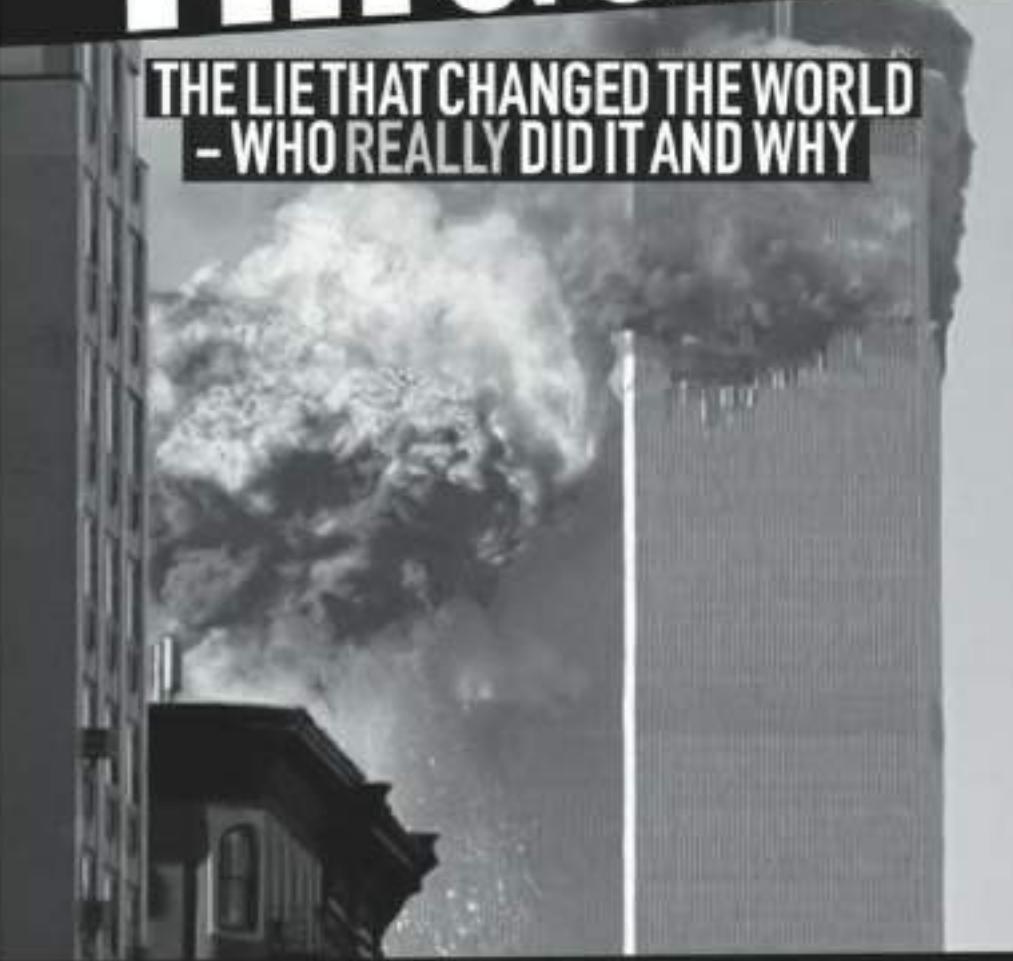
FEATURING

DR ANNIE J SASCO, DR ALASDAIR PHILLIPS, LENA PU,
DR AMELIA HARDWICK, DR ROBIN KELLY, DAVID ICKE, NAOMI COOK,
DR KLAUS BUCHER, VELMA LYRAE

NARRATED BY RICHARD GRANNON

THE **TRIGGER**

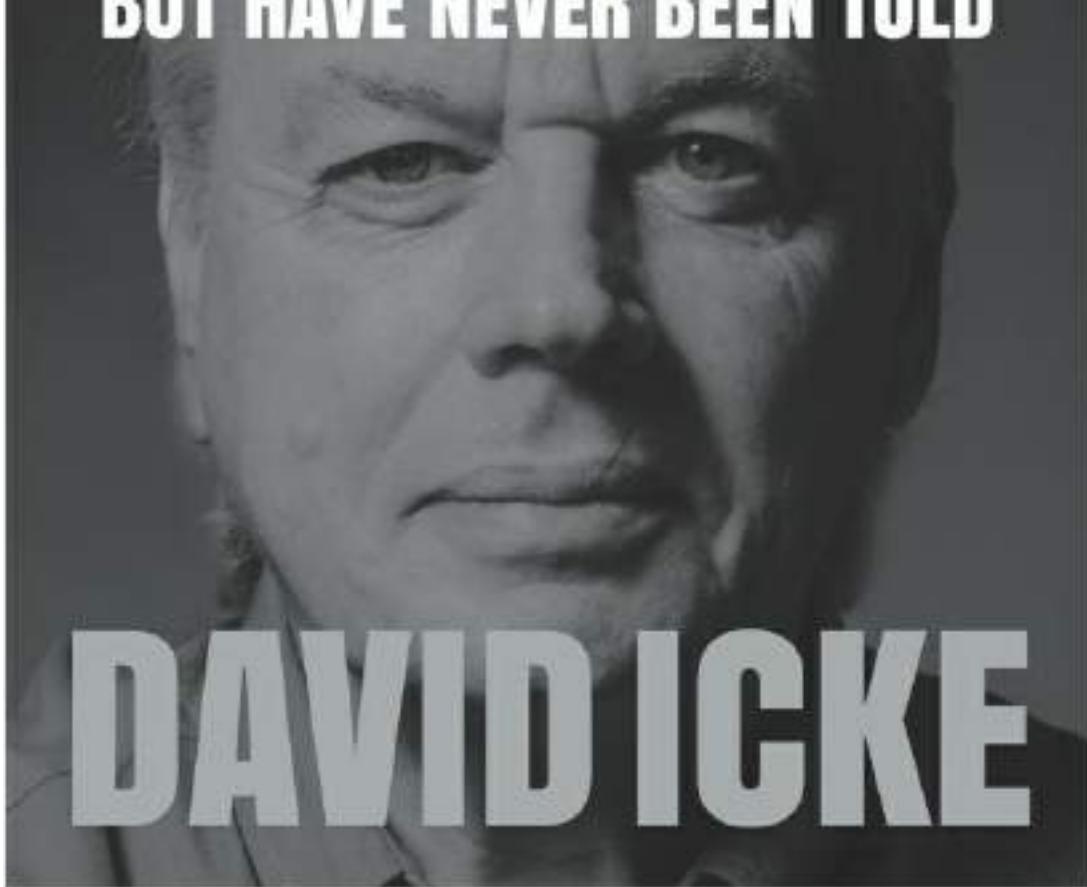
THE LIE THAT CHANGED THE WORLD
- WHO REALLY DID IT AND WHY



DAVID ICKE

EVERYTHING YOU NEED TO KNOW

BUT HAVE NEVER BEEN TOLD



DAVID ICKE

FOR DAILY NEWS & TOUR DATES

DAVIDICKE.COM



THE LIFE STORY OF DAVID ICKE

RENEGADE

THE FEATURE LENGTH FILM

/'ren·ē·gād/

noun

A person who behaves in a rebelliously unconventional manner.



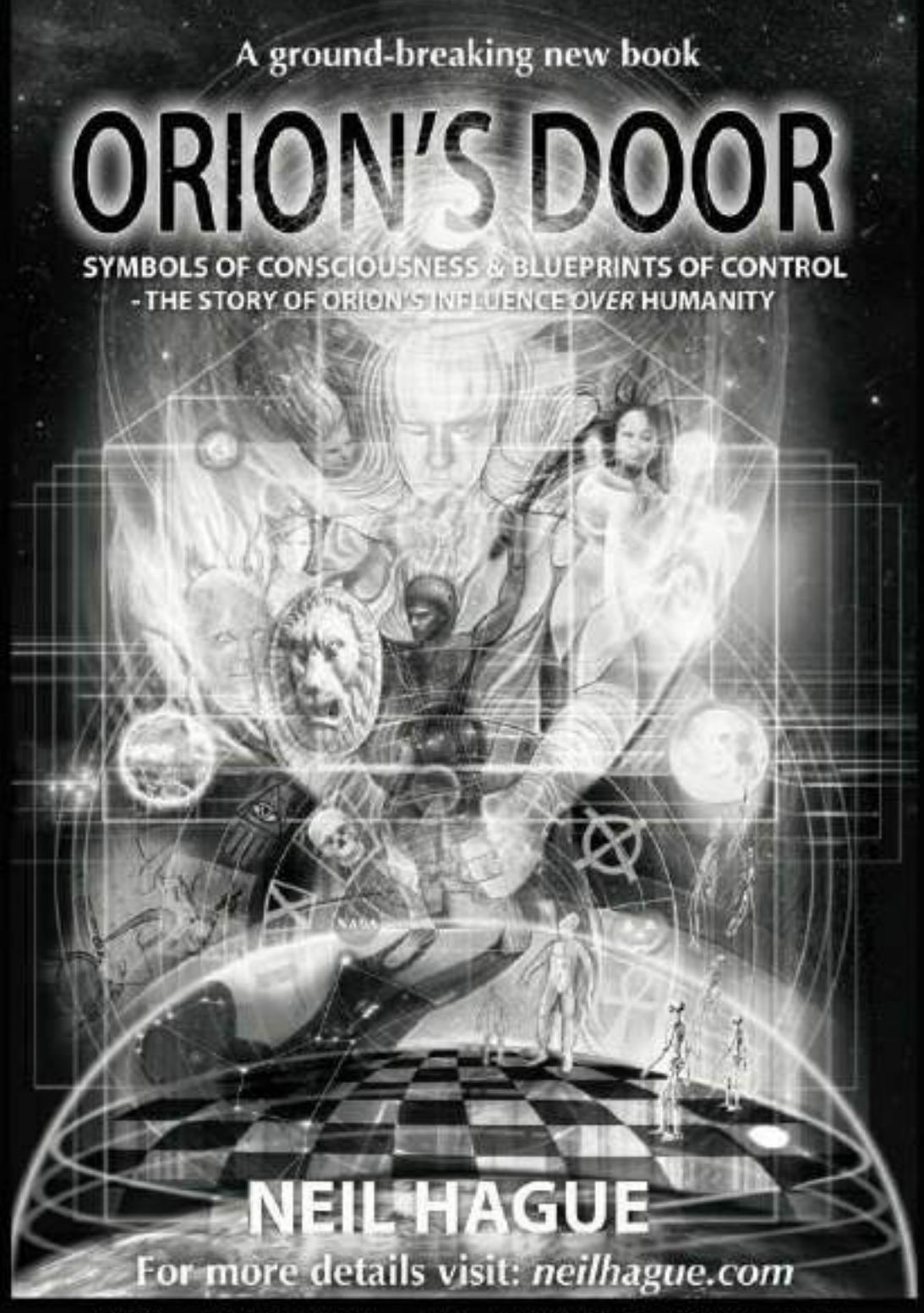
AVAILABLE NOW AT DAVIDICKE.COM

A ground-breaking new book

ORION'S DOOR

SYMBOLS OF CONSCIOUSNESS & BLUEPRINTS OF CONTROL

- THE STORY OF ORION'S INFLUENCE OVER HUMANITY



NEIL HAGUE

For more details visit: neilhague.com

BOOKS • GRAPHIC NOVELS • ART • ILLUSTRATION • PRINTS • BLOG

Right-Brain Thinking In A Left-Brain World



Monnica Sepulveda in California has been a medium for 45 years and specialises in helping people break out of The Program - both their own and that of collective humanity.

Consultations by Skype anywhere in the world.

www.monnica.com

Contact Phone number in the USA: 1-831-688-8884

Email: monnica888@yahoo.com

Before you go ...

For more detail, background and evidence about the subjects in *The Answer* – and so much more – see my others books including *And The Truth Shall Set You Free*; *The Biggest Secret*; *Children of the Matrix*; *The David Icke Guide to the Global Conspiracy*; *Tales from the Time Loop*; *The Perception Deception*; *Remember Who You Are*; *Human Race Get Off Your Knees*; *Phantom Self*; *Everything You Need To Know But Have Never Been Told* and *The Trigger*.

You can subscribe to the fantastic new Ickonic media platform where there are many hundreds of hours of cutting-edge information in videos, documentaries and series across a whole range of subjects which are added to every week. This includes my 90 minute breakdown of the week's news every Friday to explain *why* events are happening and to what end.

"Carl Sagan once spoke of the need to balance the scientific method with pure, unadulterated wonder. Scott Alan Roberts picks up that mantle by examining the Nephilim, the hybrid offspring of the intercourse between human women and ancient extraterrestrials. If only for just a moment, kick out the props of science and religion and let Scott take you to that place where sometimes the questions tell us far more than the answers."

—GEORGE NOORY,
COAST TO COAST AM

THE RISE AND FALL OF THE NEPHILIM

THE UNTOLD STORY OF
FALLEN ANGELS,
GIANTS ON THE EARTH,
AND THEIR
EXTRATERRESTRIAL ORIGINS

Scott Alan Roberts

FOREWORD BY CRAIG HINES, AUTHOR OF GATEWAY OF THE GODS



"Carl Sagan once spoke of the need to balance the scientific method with pure, unadulterated wonder. Scott Alan Roberts picks up that mantle by examining the Nephilim, the hybrid offspring of the intercourse between human women and ancient extraterrestrials. If only for just a moment, kick out the props of science and religion and let Scott take you to that place where sometimes the questions tell us far more than the answers."

GEORGE NOORY,
COAST TO COAST AM

THE
RISE
AND
FALL
OF
THE
NEPHILIM

THE UNTOLD STORY OF
FALLEN ANGELS,
GIANTS ON THE EARTH,
AND THEIR
EXTRATERRESTRIAL ORIGINS

Scott Alan Roberts

FOREWORD BY CRAIG HINES, AUTHOR OF GATEWAY OF THE GODS



The Rise and Fall of the NEPHILIM

The Untold Story of Fallen Angels,
Giants on the Earth, and Their
Extraterrestrial Origins

SCOTT ALAN ROBERTS



NEW PAGE BOOKS
A division of The Career Press, Inc.
Pompton Plains, NJ

Copyright © 2012 by Scott Alan Roberts

All rights reserved under the Pan-American and International Copyright Conventions. This book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form or by any means electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system now known or hereafter invented, without written permission from the publisher, The Career Press.

THE RISE AND FALL OF THE NEPHILIM

EDITED BY JODI BRANDON

TYPESET BY EILEEN MUNSON

Cover design by Scott Alan Roberts

Printed in the U.S.A.

To order this title, please call toll-free 1-800-CAREER-1 (NJ and Canada: 201-848-0310) to order using VISA or MasterCard, or for further information on books from Career Press.



The Career Press, Inc.
220 West Parkway, Unit 12
Pompton Plains, NJ 07444
www.careerpress.com
www.newpagebooks.com

Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data

Roberts, Scott Alan.

The rise and fall of the Nephilim : the untold story of fallen angels, giants on earth, and their extraterrestrial origins / by

Scott Alan Roberts.

p. cm.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 978-1-60163-197-8—ISBN 978-1-60163-629-4 (ebook) 1. Giants-Miscellanea. 2.

Angels—Miscellanea.. 3.

Civilization, Ancient-Extraterrestrial influences. 4. Ethiopic book of Enoch-Criticism, interpretation, etc. 5. Bible. O.T.

Genesis—Criticism, interpretation, etc. I. Title.

BF1999.R5495 2012

001.94—dc23

2011042616

Dedication

For Raini.

*Thanks for loving me through the process
and putting up with
my vacant pillow
on those dark, late nights
when the Muse came calling.*

Acknowledgments

Two things I learned while writing this book: One is that it is far less daunting *writing* a book than it is *completing* a book. And two, the process itself would be much less fraught with distraction and delay were my office located *outside* my home. And on the heels of having said that, I want to thank my wife, Raini, who did everything in her power to help keep the process streamlined, while wrangling our toddler son, Flynn. I want to thank her for all the cups of coffee and meals she brought to me here at my desk while I stared at this computer screen and tapped away at the keyboard. That's love. Her burgeoning pregnancy swelled during the writing of this book, and we watched the baby girl kick as I read and re-read and re-re-read this book out loud to her. Without Raini, this monumental task would have been far less enjoyable a process, and I want to express how happy I am that she was here.

My dear friend Marie D. Jones, a well-established author, has not only been a friend, but a great sounding board. It was Marie who saw my manuscript before it was really even a manuscript at all, and encouraged me to pursue it to its present form. She has been a great help, listening to my woes, worries, caterwauling, excitements, and downright exhausted frustrations. I want to thank her for reading, critiquing, and encouraging. Without her, this book would not be a reality.

Craig Hines is a true friend and a grossly out-of-proportion inspiration. From the day we first met, we have engaged in many conversations fraught with philosophy, theology, cosmology, and just about every “-ology” in between. He is a true scholar and has been an invaluable source and encouragement as I wrote this book.

Micah Hanks of the GralienReport.com has been a friend who has kept the fire burning beneath my feet. There were times I seriously considering quitting, but he read the early manuscript and was an uplifting source of encouragement. Thanks for being there, Micah.

Dr. Charles Aling, while you may not agree with everything I have written in this book, I want to thank you for being the very first person who ever instilled in me a love of biblical mysteries and archaeology. From the very first time you sat down with me in the crowded narthex of our church, way back when I was 12 years old and doing a report on the Pharaoh of the Exodus, you have always been willing to be my consultant, my seminary professor, and now my friend. Thank you for the irreplaceable spot you hold in my heart and mind. And thank you for instilling in me the love of history.

My daughters Abigail and Bryn are the lights of my life. They have always been there believing in everything I do, every step of the way. Now they are out on their own and I want to let them know how much I believe in them.

Sam, I am so happy you are here. Sorry for all the postponed walks and excursions while I was completing this book. I look forward to spending some extra time with you in the upcoming weeks.

Flynn, while you are too young to remember these things with any clarity later on in life, your many interruptions, coffee-cup tippings, and general calls for my attention are eclipsed by my wonderful memories of you sitting in my lap while I typed. You are a complete joy to me and a living response to the question “Why?”

For all of you who have enjoyed my lectures and writing over the years, thank you for your support, encouragement, and for being here.

Contents

[Foreword](#) by Craig Hines

[Preface](#)

[Introduction](#)

[Chapter 1: Science Almighty](#)

[Chapter 2: Who's Your Daddy? From Elohim to Nephilim](#)

[Chapter 3: The Pharaoh-God of Israel](#)

[Chapter 4: The Pan-Cultural Effect](#)

[Chapter 5: The Watchers](#)

[Chapter 6: Alien Influence?](#)

[Chapter 7: Constantine: One Emperor, One God](#)

[Chapter 8: The Nephilim](#)

[Chapter 9: ... And Also Afterward](#)

[Chapter 10: Where Are They Now?](#)

[Conclusion](#)

[Epilogue](#)

[Notes](#)

[Bibliography](#)

[Index](#)

[About the Author](#)

Foreword

The first drop of water splashed atop his head unexpectedly, causing him to cease his work and glance upward. He wiped the sweat from his brow, his tired eyes struggling to focus on the darkness forming in the heavens above. Another raindrop fell against his skin, and his gaze returned to the ground. His own reflection rippled chaotically across the newly formed puddles at his feet. As a crowd began to gather around him, his trembling hands reached for his tools and collected them into his arms. It was time.

“Is this your lord’s great deluge, Noah, you mad man?” yelled one of the bystanders, inciting the rest of the mob to laugh mockingly amongst themselves.

Suddenly, a loud crack of thunder boomed and cut through the crowd’s licentious laughter. They were instantly silent as uneasiness began to rise up within their guts, much like the pools of water growing beneath their feet.

Noah rushed toward the ark, the anxious voices of his family calling to him from within the wooden structure. His progress was hindered as he trudged through the mud and water. Although his sandal became lodged in the mire, he slipped his foot free and continued to run. He refused to be deterred by the unrelenting shouts and panicking cries of his pursuers. His sons hurried him aboard and began to draw the large door closed.

From inside, Noah could hear the screams of the people he once called friends—their bloodied fists clawing and thumping against the wooden structure. He rested himself against a support beam, desperately trying to catch his breath. Before long, he collapsed to the floor in a sobbing mess.

The cacophony was too horrible to bear and threatened to drive him to madness. Yet he soon found relief as it was drowned out by the pounding of the rain, as though millions of stones were pummeling the rooftop. He wanted to help, but he knew that it was too late for them. It had been too late long before the rains had ever started.

Much like the ripples created by the rainwater in Noah's tale, the events surrounding this epic legend have flowed throughout history and on through the present day. However, just like the natural side effect of such ripples, the crystal-clear images and reflections produced by the still waters of the past have now become distorted and difficult to comprehend. We are expected to make sense of it all, but centuries of repression, persecution, political agendas, wars, and even the mundane activities of the world have washed away the clues and data necessary to bring clarity to the situation.

For example, many people insist that they are familiar with the story of Noah's Ark, but the vast majority of them only know the simplified and largely censored version that they were taught as children. Ancient accounts describing the mating of angelic beings with humans, the birth of their hybrid offspring known as the Nephilim, and the disastrous consequences of such affairs are, if you will pardon the expression, completely alien to most people. Week after week, the faithful flock to places of worship to hear sermons and receive holy guidance in their lives, yet some of the most significant details or implications of the story are never brought to their attention. Most of these individuals will be happy to tell you about Noah, his family, the construction of the ark, how many of each animal were on-board, and so on; but their enthusiastic countenance will quickly diminish into one of bewilderment at the mere mention of the Nephilim.

“The Nef-a-what?”

Exactly.

It is precisely this reason that a book like this needed to be written. If you have never heard of the Nephilim, this book will serve as an excellent introduction to the subject. Even those who are well-versed in the archaic lore of the fallen angels will find some new and interesting information to add to the ever-expanding field of research materials and notes. Scott Roberts is the ideal guide for those who wish to revisit this complex subject, as well as those who are learning about these ideas for the first time.

I first encountered the research of Scott Roberts within the pages of the June 2008 issue of *TAPS Paramagazine* and his article on the antediluvian race of beings known as the Nephilim. Scott's fascination and passion for the topic were evident, and I was humbled that he cited my book, *Gateway of the Gods* (Numina Media Arts, 2007), as a primary source and recommended reading to his audience. Little did I know that at the same time I was composing a message to thank him for acknowledging my research in his article, he was contemplating if he should contact me. After a few e-mail exchanges and enthusiastic phone calls, a new friendship was born.

Since that time, I have been interviewed on Scott's radio show on several occasions, and even spoke alongside him in collaborative presentations at paranormal conferences. One of Scott's foremost traits is an eagerness to ask questions and to learn, and he is often enthralled by the process of examining and interpreting evidence. He is just as fascinated by the topic now as he was years ago—probably even more so. Beyond that, however, are his willingness and determination to teach and share what he has learned over the years, including all of the ups and downs, pitfalls, and dead-ends that he has encountered. Scott and I may not always agree on certain interpretations or theories, but we both acknowledge and respect that there are not always definitive answers to the questions we pose, and that we are each seeking different pieces of the same puzzle.

Similarly to how my book served as an inspiration and a piece of the puzzle for Scott, it is my wish that you will also find the same excitement

and curiosity within the following pages. You may already be holding another piece of the puzzle and not even realize it, only to discover that it finally makes sense after reading *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim*. Like Noah, be vigilant and mindful of the ripples. Recognize the patterns and you will find your answers. Together, we may be able to solve the riddle of our past so that we may ultimately fulfill our destiny.

“Square the Circle.”

Craig Hines

Author, *Gateway of the Gods*

Pittsburgh, Pennsylvania

www.gatewayofthegods.com

Preface

I have been asked many times by many people what it is exactly that began my journey down this path. I can only answer that is my *insatiable curiosity*.

This book is the culmination of a lifetime's quest to find the answers to the questions that are seemingly unanswerable. It is not, however, exhaustive in its conclusions. It is, rather, a look into what I believe is one of the greatest events in human history, with far-reaching ramifications and only the slightest hint at discovering the answers.

I am sure to get heat for the conclusions I have drawn, as well as the things I have missed or deliberately avoided. But I will ever and always be open to a good debate.

That humanity experienced an interruption in its ancient past is incontrovertible in my mind. The question of extra-terrestrial interference in our genetics and bloodline is most certainly a reality, though something that will be debated in greater halls of academia and bastions of thinking far beyond my scope and attainment.

Although this little book offers my scholarly surmising and educated conclusions, I have also attempted to be deeply honest and wholesomely transparent in opening up to you the reader, my thoughts, opinions, blatherings, and outright rantings over not only the subject matter, but the philosophies and politically motivated religious trappings I have encountered along the way.

Let me state for the record that I did not set out to offend anyone's religious sensibilities, for I still adhere to the faith in which I was raised and educated. But I have found over the years that there was always some missing element that left so gaping a hole in my theology that it needed to be sought out and addressed, like looking for that missing puzzle piece in the cracks and crevices of the comfortable sofa in the living room.

Yet, though that was the intention of this book, I find that the more I research, study, and root for facts, the more questions come to the surface. It's like driving a shiny new car down an ochre-yellow dirt road on a hot summer day in the country: The farther you drive seeking your destination, the more dust you raise, and soon your luster is completely coated in the fine powder of discovery.

And that is where I stand today. Seeking out the Nephilim has stirred up a great amount of dust, so prep yourself for reading further by putting on your metaphoric safety goggles, lest you allow the dust to settle in your eyes. Read on with an open mind and let the things that might cause you consternation settle into being just a part of the process.

The world as you know it is about to take on a completely different light. And the story of the Nephilim is much bigger than you may have ever imagined.

Scott Alan Roberts

August 30, 2011

Introduction

As a kid, I spent far too many nights lying atop my mother's garage. With arms folded behind my head, I'd stare into the starry sky, consumed by my childhood fantasies of becoming a starship captain who would "boldly go" into that endless black-seeking new life and new civilizations. Yet, it was more than just growing up a product of pop culture and the science fiction of the 1960s and 70s that fired my curiosities. Something deep inside told me that we were not alone in this infinite stretch of expanding universe, and I longed to know the answers to the age-old questions of "why am I here?" and "where do I come from?" Those questions were probably not as articulated in my mind as they seem when I recount them here and now, but they gnawed at me, just the same, on some primordial, undefined level of my genetic make-up. Within every cognitive, rational human being lies that nebulous unanswered haze that rises to the surface every so often, yearning to have answers. And, yet, most of our lives, we shamble through the years, wholly unaware that those desires smolder deep down inside. We subconsciously suppress any wild, weird notions that there just might be answers beyond the realm of what we think we already know and accept. Human beings walk around this world feeling absolutely unconnected to the greater world and universe around them. As a race, we have forgotten how to make this connectivity, and this ties into all aspects of how we perceive ourselves, our loved ones, our politics, our jobs and careers, our deities, our personal spiritualities, and our place in the order of things.

Sure, like many kids growing up in America during the late 1960s and '70s, I attended Sunday school and was taught about the Origins of Man from a Genesis-Chapter-One perspective. And for many years of my life, that was the only source point to which I subconsciously hailed. It was as if the stories of creation were settled long ago in that unquestioning little

child's understanding of how things work. The curiosities and questions that rose later in life from the mental depths were somehow summarily squashed by the teachings that had been put into my head so many years earlier.

But little did I know—for it was something that was never taught, but always skipped-over, avoided, misinformed, or never mentioned—that the very book from which we dogmatically drew our genesis held secretive, mysterious, encoded messages about origins, visitations and beings not of this world. What was once accepted without question as the mystical, magical, miraculous stuff of ancient biblical stories, suddenly took on a very different perspective once I opened myself to the idea that there was more to those stories than I had been told, and much more brewing beneath the surface of what I had been taught.

Remove yourself, for a moment, to a place somewhere in a more shadowy past, before the days of modern psychological discipline and scientific advance. A time when we, the human race, believed that our life's fortunes, illnesses, woes, and serendipitous happenstances were firmly rooted in the spiritual and the supernatural. As we evolved our technology and sciences, we learned more and more about the mind and body, universal expansion and entropy, geological tectonics, and the movement of our solar system around a somewhat smallish star that burned in the Milky Way galaxy. Along the way, we dispensed with our reliance on the ethereal, casting aside our need for gods, devils, and every caste of angel, demon and spirit in between. We corporately tuned-out our hearts, and turned our minds to the methodological pragmatic, allowing science and skeptical thought to successfully supplant faith in that great “something-bigger-than-ourselves.” Quantifiable Fact became the inevitable surrogate for the misty stuff of myth and legend. And while we may not have totally thrown out the baby with the bath water, we have successfully become a culture that discounts anything that cannot be measured by the scientific method, casting dispersions on experiential faith and even the slightest adherence to anything that smacks of an older spiritual belief system.

The paramount endeavor that occupies most of the recorded history of the human race—after the history of war, that is (which, sadly, seems to be synonymous with the history of mankind)—is the great quest for discovery: the seeking-out of the whos, whats, wheres, whys, and hows of our existence. And yet, while attempting, on that quest, to adhere to strict, quantifiable sources, we have let go of the Spiritual; the innocuous, insubstantial, airborne flotsam that, when you actually look for it, seems to permeate every facet of being, down to the very spark of life itself.

So, what if the outmoded, outgrown, discarded superstitions—the things of the unseen, unwanted realms—really do have their basis in some sort of truth? What if the superstitious banalities we brushed aside in the broad swath of our skeptical, scientific hand, were truly the evidentiary stuff of things not seen, the substance of a very real universe that dwelt and operated just below the surface of the visible, tangible world around us? What if there truly exists a viable, legitimate source code that, at times, finds its way through the barrier that divides the diaphanous from the substantive? What if science ain't the end-all, be-all of this universe, and we really are surrounded by forces of good, evil, light, and dark? What if there really are living, vibrant beings who dwell and function beyond the veil of the dimension of the here and now?

Nearly every ancient culture has in its annals, mythological tales of supernatural beings who came to the earth for the purpose of intermingling with human beings. And out of these early encounters came the many subsequent accounts of an ancient universal flood imposed by a god or superior being for the purpose of wiping-out the offspring created by the supernatural intercourse between these beings and humans. In the ancient, pan-cultural understanding, these beings are referred to as angels, demons, spirits—and even gods. The question that begs to be asked is: were they actually part of some spiritual hierarchy of angelic and demonic beings, or were they only labeled as such for lack of a better understanding? Are we seeing the experiential contact of humans with angelics and demonics, or are these supernatural descriptors the only mode of illustrative labeling that ancient man had for understanding who and what they encountered and experienced? Were there supernatural beings who descended and cohabited

with humans, bequeathing an offspring of giants—as many cultures purport—or is there a physical, extraterrestrial connection? Was there a doorway opened from another dimensional reality through which beings—who could be described by ancient man as nothing less than angelic or god-like—visited this dimensional plane?

In some of the apocryphal, non-canonical writings—those books excluded from biblical scripture by the Council of Nicea during the reign of Constantine in 325 CE—we are told of a group of beings known as the “Watchers,” who “orbited” the earth with the divine mandate of “watching over” mankind, but who also desired to take on the self-imposed task of descending to the earth to teach certain skills to human beings, ultimately resulting in a cohabitation and sexual intermingling. The result was a race of god-like progeny called the *Nephilim*.

The word *Nephilim* finds its source in biblical scriptures, both canonical and non-canonical, and that is why the study in this book will focus on those texts, at least as a starting point. “There were giants in the earth in those days, and also afterward,” so says the biblical Book of Genesis, “when the sons of God looked upon the daughters of men and found them fair, and took of them wives as they chose.” The bequeathed descendants became “the mighty men of old, the men of renown.” The literal translation of this passage reads something like: “The Watchers came and took human wives for themselves, as many as they wanted. Their children were the Nephilim of old, the giants.” The accounts of these beings can also be found in the Books of Jasher, Jubilees, and the more recently discovered Dead Sea Scrolls, *The Book of Giants*. The ancient Irish wrote of giant, shining gods called the *Tuatha de Danaan* who later became the Elven Folk of lore and Celtic mythology. The Middle Eastern and Mesopotamian cultures have the *Anakim* (*Anunna/Anunnaki*), and *Rephaim*—along with other beings and races described as having descended from giant Nephilim forebears. The Norse mythologies make reference to *Niflheim*, the underworld ruled by the goddess, *Hel*. The Hindu Vedas and Puranas tell of an antediluvian (pre-flood) giant-god, *Daitya* and the race of giant *Andanari*. Native American cultures speak of highly elusive giant, hairy, big-footed creatures that roam the American forests—just as Tibetan mountain peoples tell age-old tales of

similar, equally elusive giant creatures in the Himalayas. The Greeks have their *Titans* and the ancient Sumerians have their flood epic of *Gilgamesh*, the giant half-god half-man. While these peoples, religions and cultures are widely diverse, their giant and flood mythologies, pictographs and folklore all seem to have common, historical linkages. In the pages ahead, we will explore these varied accounts and mythologies, drawing the obvious—and not-so-obvious—connections and similarities.

If, like me, you attended Sunday school as a kid, we were taught that God sent a great, universal flood to the earth to wipe out the “wickedness of mankind,” sparing only one righteous man and his family along with pairs of every animal on earth, and seven of the ritually clean ones. They all took refuge in a great barge for some 120 days, waiting out the deluge and the receding of the waters. This same story is told in these many other ancient records, with varying plot twists and a different cast of characters. But common to nearly all stories is the root account of extra-terrestrial (“extra”—from without; “terrestrial”—of this earth) beings who descended to the earth for the purpose of intermingling with humans, and having children with them. And common to most ancient accounts is the wrath of a superior being who wages “judgment” on the earth in an attempt to destroy the hybrid descendants as a result—seemingly to no avail, as they are mentioned as being “*in the earth in those days, and also afterward.*”

Cultural traditions from all around the world have myths and legends telling of angelic beings who descended to the earth and interacted with human beings, ushering in some sort of cataclysmic, worldwide destruction of humanity that left scant few survivors. When analysis of the languages used in the various accounts is compared, blatantly similar facts emerge, revealing a commonality between the varied cultural tales, substantiating a corporate mythos: flesh and blood beings who were revered as gods, interacted with humanity in the most intimate of ways.

While there is a lack of scientifically repeatable evidence, there exists a sum of recorded history combined with diverse extant religious texts that comprise a broader picture of antediluvian races and events. Because these

things cannot be quantified by the standards of the scientific method, do the plethora of ancient accounts establish any sort of verifiable proof of a crossover between inter-dimensional or interplanetary races? I believe yes, and that is what I will address in the pages of this book. While the data is not repeatable for scientific experimentation, the historical annals speak loudly and clearly. When there exist such localized myths in geographical regions, repeated by other localized myths in other, far away geographical regions, over and over again, there is a certain scientific methodology at play. There is a message revealed.

Almost more importantly than the physical, textual references and evidences are the spiritual implications that can be drawn. Beyond the accounts of giant beings and extraterrestrial intercourses with humans, we have the spirituality of the matter, spanning the gaps between dogmatic theologies and firmly held systematic beliefs, spawning a broader interconnectivity between religions, cultures, and spiritualities. It is my personal belief that there is much more to discover than has been revealed, and the more we hypothesize, ponder, explore, research, study, and meditate on this wide array of scriptures, facts, folklore, stories, and writings, the more we engage in a responsible dissecting and evaluation of the living, breathing existence of these beings.

Now, you may well ask what qualifications and credentials I possess to write of such things with any modicum of authority. I could hold up my years of incomplete, degreeless education in Bible College and Masters program in seminary as sources for much of what I learned about biblical scripture, but as I have alluded to previously, that education simply left me wondering *more* about the things I had *not* been taught. If exploration and discovery is at the core of every heart and mind, then seeking out the answers by means of personal study and research is what I am presenting here in this book. We are *all* scholars, and we *all* bear a responsibility of rooting out the facts and seeking truth. While this book certainly should never, ever be held up as a quotable resource for universal truth on these matters, it is one man's attempt to find answers that do not simply and blindly follow the dictates of a single belief system. While this effort may represent my early years of speculative imaginings, rounded off by more

years of education and scholarly research, I would call this a work of my heart as opposed to a scholarly tome that will be held as *the* absolute authority on the topics contained herein. I have many more questions than I have answers, but these pages represent honest, educated research that will—hopefully—lead you down a path to your own conclusions and discoveries.

There is so much more out there than what we have been taught. There is so much more out there to discover, uncover, and seek-out.

And then, there is that still, small voice.

My friend, Craig Hines, author of *Gateway of the Gods*, made reference in his book to a “small, quiet voice” that had been speaking to him—not audibly, but deep in his subconscious—telling him to “square the circle.” Like Craig, I have struggled with seeking and finding the answers to questions that delve much deeper than what seems to be lying on the surface. My entire life I have known that there is something lying just beyond the borders of the familiar, reaching far beyond systematic theologies and entrenched dogmas. Before we ever met face-to-face, I found in Craig, through the vehicle of his writing, an able, unwitting ally in my quest to make the square peg of my quest fit into the round hole of the universe.

There is an Old Testament passage where the prophet Elijah, desiring to have a face-to-face encounter with God, is shown a phenomenal sequence of divine events passing by him as he is standing in the cleft of a rock face: wind, earthquake, and fire. The noise of theophany is overwhelming, but it is only with the palpable quiet of the aftermath that God spoke in the sound of sheer silence. It is that same stunning silence, that “still small voice” that has whispered in both Craig’s ears and my own. When you experience the calm stillness of an almost revelatory realization that the seemingly random dots connect, a complete picture starts to materialize and come into full view. As a result, both Craig and I have, in a sense, stumbled upon the

conclusion that we have been asked to “square the circle”—something Craig reminded me of in his private, hand-written note on the title page of *Gateway of the Gods*, the copy of his book he gave to me.

For most of my life, I have insisted that as much as we live and dwell in a natural world, we live and dwell in a supernatural one. The natural and Supernatural are one-in-the-same, and do not exist and function independently of each other. In fact, there is no “supernatural.” There is only the living, breathing, substantive world and universe around us, that ebbs and flows in it’s own mysterious ways. For me, this book is all about coming to terms with the religious efforts of man to explain the misunderstood, and find a better understanding about the things we thought we once knew all there was to know about. *Squaring the circle* is my realization that all things are connected, all religions are connected, all spiritualities are connected in a great web of understanding what and who we are, where we are going, and how we are supposed to get there. I want this book to stand as another effort in attaining that equation, and there may even be theories put forward in these pages that cause you to wince in pause as you attempt to assimilate the information and conclusions offered.

Ancient mankind was visited by beings of another dimension, or from a distant star, who intermingled, seeded, receded, and in some cases reemerged in their interaction with the human race. There are remnants and evidences all over the world in every culture, all one need do is look. Ancient biblical and apocryphal texts tell us that the Nephilim “were on the earth in those days, and also afterward...” And “as it was in the days of Noah, so shall it be [in the end times].”

So sit back in your favorite reading chair, grab your itty-bitty book light. Devour, absorb, and cogitate. Agree or disagree. Above all else, examine and dissect the materials in this book by going to that place where the trappings of societal sterility cannot reach your desire to see things with “older” eyes. Discard what you think you know and see the world and universe around you with a fresher-yet-ancient, un jaded view. Draw your conclusions based on an openness to know, rather than allow current

thought to dictate where you take your beliefs. Ask questions and seek the answers to those questions. Enjoy and ask yourself how *you* can find a way to *square the circle*.

chapter 1

Science Almighty

“Science is built up of facts, as a house is built of stones; but an accumulation of facts is no more a science than a heap of stones is a house.”

—Henri Poincaré,
Science and Hypothesis, 1905

“I spent a lot of time at age eight experimenting... commanding stones to levitate: ‘esir, enots.’ It never worked. I blamed my pronunciation.”

—Carl Sagan

So, I have this pile of stones, each one representing a scientific fact that could be used to build a solid foundation for what I’ll call the “House of the Origins of Humanity.” Yet, they remain in an unstructured heap, because—although each stone may be individually factual, they can be loosely mortared together only by hypothesis, built on the presupposition that humans evolved from lesser forms of primates, who in turn evolved from emergent aquatic species, who themselves evolved from primordial slime. Though these individual facts may indeed comprise my pile of stones, they cannot construct an unshakeable foundation, for they lack concrete coherence. So the house remains in the architectural phase. We know where we want to put the stones; we just are not yet sure how they all fit together.

Science, as we know it, is defined as a branch of knowledge or study of the physical or material world, dealing with a body of facts and/or truths

systematically arranged, showing the operation of general laws gained through observation and experimentation, reflecting a precise application of said fact and/or principles. Science is also the observation, identification, description, experimental investigation, and theoretical explanation of phenomena, restricted to a class of natural phenomena.

Although science is continually uncovering facts as to variant species that on a hypothetical level demonstrate a mutation within the species, they still lack that definitive link that results in an exclamation of “Eureka!”

This does not nullify the facts—that metaphoric pile of stones—but it certainly wreaks havoc with the proposed hypothesis.

To continue following my House of Humanity construct: Science has proven that there are five characteristics that separate man from other hominoids: a large neocortex, bipedality, reduced anterior dentition with molar dominance, material culture, and unique sexual and reproductive behavior.¹ Science has yet to demonstrate that the discovered variants are actual linkages within the Human species. All we know with certainty is that scientists have uncovered numerous forms of fossilized prehistoric skeletal remains, leading them to conclude that they are substantiating the line of human evolutionary ascendancy, albeit with many gaps in the progression, and therefore no real linkages. But they are pretty damned sure that they are correct in their hypothesis.

What science and its practitioners have demonstrated is that fossils exist that provide incontrovertible evidence that various hominid species walked the earth in our primordial past. What they have *hypothesized* is that they are all linked to human evolution. Even the DNA findings at best are interpolated from what scientists *think* maybe appears to be sort of connected to human DNA. They make the stretch to linkage based solely on the educated “hope” that it is “probably so,” despite not having evidence to make it so without a shadow of a doubt. And isn’t that the very same way religious believers cling to their particular version of God?

Science has a love affair with itself. It loves to puff out its chest and declare for itself (as do many religions), yet with the last 150 years of research since Darwin's *Origin of Species* (1859), their accumulated facts have still not gotten them past their original leaping-off point—their educated guess that all these finds are somehow linked, demonstrating an unbroken chain of evolutionary mutation resulting in modern man.

Although science has made great advances in the quest for the identification of linkages in the line of human evolution, science has also been forced to make quantum leaps of faith in order to adhere to pre-established hypotheses. Of course, members of the scientific community wouldn't call it *faith*, but that is the practical outcome.

In a very real sense, science (and I use the term *science* here as representative of the accumulated collective of thought, hypotheses, research, and conclusion embodied in a single entity/word) rose up to find and identify fact, and has established its own "truth" in a sometimes-overt, sometimes-unwitting desire to do an "end run" around spiritual and religious belief. Spirituality existed long before established science, but somewhere at the very roots of understanding, science kicked in as soon as someone raised his or her head and said, "*Hmmm. I know the stars are the placental remains of the Great Goddess in the sky birthing the sun and moon. But... is that just a story, or is there something more... ?*"

The Great Conflict: Science vs. Religion vs. Science vs. Faith

A conflict has existed between science and spirituality—reason versus faith—since the beginning of recorded history, and it seems as if that fight will continue until time itself ends. For many in the scientific fields, there is a need to eradicate all that is not fact, including faith-based spirituality or its

organized religious practices, as well as a denial—at least on an intellectual level—that there is some powerful, divine creative force at play in the universe.

According to evolutionary biologist Richard Dawkins, scientists never need to rely on faith, at least “not in the sense of faith as meaning belief in something for which there is no evidence.”² Dawkins, being a self-acclaimed atheist, says that any expression of “faith,” on his part, is based upon his confidence in the scientific method alone. In agreement with Dawkins is pop cultural skeptical icon James Randi, who by trade is a stage magician and scientific skeptic. He has made a notable name for himself out of debunking the paranormal and the pseudo-scientific—which is not in and of itself a bad thing. Randi says, when hailing to his experience of being tossed out of Sunday school as a kid, “I am an atheist, tried and true.”³ Since then he has dedicated his life and career to finding ways to prove that science is the end-all and be-all when it comes to the great controversies surrounding the big questions of faith, religion, and the great mysterious unknowns of life and the universe.

Carl Sagan’s credo, which has become the broadly adopted Skeptic’s Credo, states that “extraordinary claims require extraordinary evidence.”⁴ In that mantra, agenda-driven skeptical scientists have eradicated the need for any sort of faith-based belief, save that of their own exponential leaps of faith in science and the scientific method, as earlier demonstrated with the inability to find and establish the “missing link.” These very same skeptics will on one hand revile faith, religion, and spirituality as outmoded and lacking in reason, while on the other hand accept as fact the presuppositions and as-of-yet unproven theories of things such as evolutionary ascendancy. In a very real sense, the scientist and dyed-in-the-wool atheistic skeptic have, in decrying faith, established Scientific Skepticism as the new surrogate for faith, and in its own rationale unwittingly declared itself the New Religion.

The definition of religion is:

1. A set of beliefs concerning the cause, nature, and purpose of the universe, especially when considered as the creation of a superhuman agency or agencies, usually involving devotional and ritual observances, and often containing a code governing the conduct of human affairs with a strong emphasis on practice.
2. A specific fundamental set of beliefs and practices generally agreed upon by a number of persons, sects or collectives.
3. The body of persons adhering to a particular set of beliefs and practices: a world council of religions.
4. The life or state of a monk, nun, etc.: to enter religion.
5. The practice of religious beliefs; ritual observance of faith.
6. Something one believes in and follows devotedly; a point or matter of ethics or conscience: to make a religion of fighting prejudice.
7. Archaic. Religious rites.
8. Archaic. Strict faithfulness; devotion: a religion to one's vow.⁵

There is cause and nature recognized by the scientific community, and a devoutly strict adherence to its “religious” practice, but they seem to collectively come up short when it comes to acknowledging a spiritual point-of-view, and they collide in epic proportions with spirituality and religion altogether. The true skeptical and scientific mindset should more appropriately recognize the “unknown” quantity underlying religion as an *undiscovered country*, and rather than eliminate it altogether from discourse and acceptance, place it more aptly in the category of “things we don’t know for sure.” The scientific community, in aggressively attempting to eliminate—or at the very least diminish—the role of spirituality and religion from the playing field, have in a very real sense established themselves as the authority on all things unverifiable. Dawkins, again, labels religion as “trash,” and in so doing, elevates himself and his scientific colleagues to the status of “secular gods.” When religion is deposed by a conflicting mindset, that mindset then promotes itself to the lofty echelon of God’s Surrogate.

The Church of Skeptic

I have a friend who is a Skeptic, a true believer in science and skepticism; a Michael Shermer devotee. I have seen this friend during the last 20 years evolve (or “devolve,” depending on how you see things) from a Roman Catholic to a die-hard skeptical atheist, so much so that I now, amicably, refer to him as a “reverend in the Church of Skeptic.” He bristles at this moniker, yet takes it in the lighthearted fashion in which it is delivered; at the same time, he is also representative of the brand of skeptic who has less true questioning than he does unwitting cynicism. And let it be said for the record that I, too, have a skeptical mind, but my skepticism has not crossed over the boundary into arrogant adherence to only the things I can prove by means of the scientific method. Science and Skepticism, too, need to be tempered by an attitude of wanting to discover, learn, grow, and know, not a leaping-off point of absolute denial of anything outside the realm of provable science.

“The threats to human dignity and integrity are being ramped up to extraordinary levels of stress, when what we most need is wisdom,” says Yale computer guru David Gelernter,⁶ decrying the dangerous trend of know-it-all scientists promulgating the idea that “religion and spirituality are trash.” What we are seeing trended more and more is that wisdom, moral seriousness, and adherence to religion and spirituality are coming under grave and perpetual attack, and more often by the people who are prominent figures in the scientific community. Crusading atheism combined with an aggressive desire to secularize the world through the funnel of science and skeptical thought has become a major hurdle to accepting the fact that not all things are measurable by the scientific method.

The first step needed in order to help science and faith find common ground is a starting point of admitting our absolute ignorance. We know nothing. None of us, with all our glorified sciences and metaphysical mumbo-jumbos, really know anything at all. We have experienced only the tip of the iceberg when it comes to the physical workings of our universe,

and we need to constantly question and test and discover, then question and test to discover more. This process is what separates those who would remain in self-imposed make-believe worlds, from those who would be seekers of fact and truth.

Eugenie Scott, the director for the National Center of Science Education, was asked a question about whether science could ever prove or disprove God's existence. With a wry smile, she said, "Well, we don't exactly have a 'God-ometer,' do we?" And she went on to express that she was highly skeptical that such a device could ever be conceived, let alone manufactured. We don't, and probably never will have a test or device that could measure that sort of information.⁷

Some things are simply unquantifiable. This doesn't mean such things don't exist; it just means that there are some things that we may never know for sure. As appealing as it would be to assert with 100-percent certainty that God exists, we simply cannot. The existence of God is something that can only be accepted by faith—not blind faith, but a faith that recognizes there are some veils that cannot be pierced. The scientific method can only take us so far, and that explanation will only ever leave us dissatisfied. But, then again, we can never be satisfied until we reach that unknown point.

So, to debase belief in the divine and the unexplained mysteries that surround us simply because they are not definable by science, is to display utter arrogance at best and total stupidity at worst. Science, without the understanding of how everything loops together with faith and spirituality, is only half the picture.

And then there's the other side of the equation. Pope John Paul II, in an address to the Pontifical Academy of Sciences in Rome, declared on October 27, 1996, his acceptance of evolution as a fact of nature, noting that he believed there was no real war between science and religion. He said, in part, "Consideration of the method used in diverse orders of knowledge allows for the concordance of two points of view which seem

irreconcilable. The sciences of observation describe and measure with ever greater precision the multiple manifestations of life...while theology extracts...the final meaning according to the Creator's design.”⁸ Christians and the Religious Right reacted angrily to the Pope's statements, and Henry Morris, president emeritus of the Institute for Creation Research responded, “The pope is just an influential person; he's not a scientist. There is no scientific evidence for evolution. All the real solid evidence supports creation.”⁹

And so the battle wages on between mindsets, ideologies, science, and religious points of view.

But what about myth and legend? The human race bears the scars of ancient interruption. Science observes the details, but does little to recognize the random elements that lie outside the realm of the observable and testable. Spirituality opens the door to usher in any whacked-out theory or belief, as long as the person expressing the theory is sincere about his or her faith. One allows for the possibilities, while the other closes the door to anything that is unquantifiable or improbable by the scientific method.

True science is *nothing* more than us catching up to what we already naturally know and understand on a spiritual level. That level of understanding is not outside our grasp. We simply have to be unafraid to reach for it.

In his book *The Demon Haunted World*, Carl Sagan spoke of the two things instilled in him from a very early age: “My parents ... in introducing me simultaneously to *skepticism* and *wonder* ... taught me the two uneasily cohabitating modes of thought that are central to the scientific method.”¹⁰

Be scientific. Be skeptical. Be religious. Be spiritual. But never lose touch with the wonder that is beyond our finite ability to quantify that which is unquantifiable.

The Sons of God descended from the heavens and intermingled with the daughters of humans, taking whomever they chose, and the women conceived and bore children. Myth? Superstition? Religious folly? Scientific fact? Let's move on to see how all of these blend in the stew pot of ancient history, contemporary experience, and the application of scientific methodology.

“A knowledge of the existence of something we cannot penetrate, of the manifestations of the profoundest reason and the most radiant beauty—it is this knowledge and this emotion that constitute the truly religious attitude; in this sense, and in this alone, I am a deeply religious man.”

—Albert Einstein

“Enlightenment is not imagining figures of light, but making the darkness conscious.”

—Carl Jung

chapter 2

Who's Your Daddy? From Elohim to Nephilim

“A rose by any other name would smell as sweet.”

—William Shakespeare

“Then God said, ‘Let us make humankind in our image, after our likeness, so they may rule over the fish of the sea and the birds of the air, over the cattle, and over all the earth, and over all the creatures that move on the earth.’”

—Genesis 1:26

The Nephilim (Hebrew: נְפִילִים) have spawned myriad cultural mythologies, appearing in variant forms and by various names throughout the annals of ancient historical and religious texts, from the offspring of the Sons of God to the bright, shining Tuatha de Danaan of the ancient Celts, from Gilgamesh of Uruk to the Bigfoot of Native American lore. Ranging from the religious to the ufological, the Nephilim seem to defy reasonable explanation except within two basic trains of thought: the metaphysical, which is open to many various forms of spirituality and religious explanations, and the scientific, which may not wholly deny the existence of the spiritual, but will most likely not allow for the incorporation of such wondrous folly in making a determination of veracity.

On the spiritual/metaphysical track it is easy to accept non-scientific accounts of spirit beings, angelics, and demonics when attempting to

comprehend the existence of a race that “descended from the heavens” and cohabited with human women. It’s even easier to believe when you consider the many accounts of demonically intrusive sexual encounters, not to mention similar tales of alien abductions and impregnations. But these sorts of explanations describe interactions that comprise a speculative mix of religion, spirituality, and meta-science—and many times a sort of parapsychology—that is open to the possibilities of things beyond veils that are seemingly impossible to pierce by the finite mind and the study of science. Yet, even a more scientific approach, when it is not wholly dismissive of the entire notion of the Nephilim, while seeking out non-religious facts, sometimes yields just as fantastical an understanding.

No matter which path you allow to dictate your train of thought, it is simple historical fact that the Nephilim, in their various forms, permeate the writings of ancient civilizations on a nearly pan-cultural basis. And no matter whether you follow a spiritual, metaphysical, parapsychological, or scientific track, one fact stands firm: The very name of these mythical beings finds its source in the Old Testament faith writings of the Book of Genesis, with the Hebrew word *Nephilim*. In that source book, the Nephilim themselves are said to be the hybrid offspring of the “Sons of God,” or, as the Hebrew calls them, the *bene haElohim*—the Watchers of the apocryphal book of Enoch, whose pages include accounts of the Nephilim that parallel and even amplify the scant details that appear in the Book of Genesis, leading many to believe that the two accounts were based in the same source. These so-called Sons of God were, in turn, bequeathed/birthed/created by *Elohim*, the Hebrew name given to God so many thousands of times in the Jewish books of faith and law. So, in seeking out this mythical race, the big question is this: Do we define the Nephilim by spiritual texts and a faith-based understanding, or are there explanations that fall outside the realm of spirituality, despite finding the name source-point only within the scriptures of Jewish spiritual literature? Larger yet, is this question: Are the two trains of thought actually one in the same? Either the religious definitions are accurate, or the ancients simply defined these mythic beings in the only terms they could understand: those that fell within their finite realm of spiritual comprehension of how the

universe worked, while at the same time upholding a monotheistic belief in God and his created caste of spirit beings.

Now, I am not going to suggest that the Book of Genesis is not factual. Nor will I suggest that the God of the Bible is not who the writers of those books say He is. I will, however, state emphatically that the Bible is a book of faith, governed by the dictates of a faith-based spirituality, thus rendering its facts the products of not only a faith-based culture, but a theocratic one.

For the purposes of scholarly integrity, I have chosen—as a leaping-off point—to examine first, the Hebrew source of the word Nephilim—**נְפִילִים**—and to do that, we have to take the whole thing back a notch further to the headwaters of the source point: the Hebrew scriptures. If the Nephilim are the mythical offspring of the Sons of God—the *bene haElohim*—then who is the Father? Who is this Elohim that bequeathed them?

God Among Many Gods

When I first learned that one of the most common names for God was a plurality, I began to question the way I thought about much of what I had been taught about the Bible. And by “plurality,” I don’t mean the triune manifestations of the Godhead: Father, Son, and Holy Ghost (in other words: the Trinity). I am referring to the Old Testament name *Elohim*—**אֱלֹהִים**—who is said to have bequeathed the *bene-haElohim*—**בְּנֵי־אֱלֹהִים**, the Sons of God—who then had intercourse with human women and gave birth to the hybridic race of Nephilim.

More than 2,500 times in the Old Testament, the Hebrew word used in reference to the name of God is *Elohim*. Interestingly enough, the word is not a mere name alone, but it is also a descriptor, in that it details physical attributes of the Hebrew God, also known as Yahweh [Jehovah]. The word *Elohim*, itself, denotes plurality, specifically “more than two.” But it is also

most commonly used in the Hebrew texts only in conjunction with a singular verb or adjective, which can sometimes indicate a singular, individual God with a plurality of vast and many powers, depending on the context of the passage wherein it is found. There is also the argument that *Elohim* is a statement of the *Hashalush HaKadosh*, or the Trinity, despite the fact that there is no indicated number limiting the plurality of *Elohim* to “three.” Anti-Trinitarians would tell you that the term *Elohim* suggests only the multiplicity of power and majesty, as opposed to suggesting the word indicates a plurality of beings or multiplicity of entities individually combined into a collective, singular God. The word *Elohim* is also used as a collective plural reference to the many denounced false gods and idols throughout the Old Testament.

The literal translation of the word *Elohim* is “God of Many Gods,” more simply: “God of Gods.” But to render this as a wholly polytheistic term would fly in the face of how Judaism’s staunchest scholars would interpret the word. No higher authority on the Hebrew language can be found than the great Hebrew scholar Wilhelm Gesenius. He wrote that the plural nature of *Elohim* was for the purpose of intensification, and was related to the plural of majesty and used for amplification. Gesenius states that “the language has entirely rejected the idea of numerical plurality in Elohim (whenever it denotes one God) and is proved especially by its being almost invariably joined with a singular attribute.”¹

“That the language has entirely rejected the idea of numerical plurality in **אֱלֹהִים** (whenever it denotes one God), is proved especially by its being almost invariably joined with a singular attribute (cf. § 132 h), e.g. **שָׂעָלְתִּי אֱלֹהִים צְדִיקָם** 710, &c. Hence **אֱלֹהִים** may have been used originally not only as a numerical but also as an abstract plural (corresponding to the Latin numen, and our Godhead), and, like other abstracts of the same kind, have been transferred to a concrete single god (even of the heathen).”²

In other words, although it is very tempting to extrapolate from the word *Elohim* a definition that renders it literally as “God of Many Gods,” it is more likely than not that in the Old Testament, a Jewish book of faith, it would be wholly inconsistent with the Jewish religion to present their God as anything but a singular, individual, monotheistic deity. To render the word *Elohim* as signifying that the Jews held to a polytheistic expression of God, would simply fly in the face of their entire monotheistic belief system.

Though certainly debated, the name *Elohim* (most probably) has to do with the first God-encounter that humans experienced,³ at least within the Hebraic Jewish mindset. Those initial experiences produced awe or fear for the multiple powers of nature, as is reflected in the Old Testament where the word *Elohim* is used for God Himself. But it is also used for the complete plurality of so-called idolatrous gods, the wooden and stone images that people worshipped in their homes and village localities. *Elohim* is even used to mean “angels” and “judges.”

In the final analysis, the name *Elohim* has something to do with powers: The Powers That Be; The Many Powered; Power and Majesty. In the traditional Jewish view, *Elohim* is the Name of God as the Creator and Judge of the universe. In Exodus 3:6, the plural name of *Elohim* is modified by its singular personal pronouns, said to be spoken by God in the first person:

“The Holy One, Blessed be He, said to those, ‘You want to know my name? I am called according to my actions. When I judge the creatures I am Elohim, and when I have mercy with My world, I am named YHWH (Jehovah). . . .’”

(Exodus 3:6)

Yet, the Hebrew word *Elohim* does, without question, signify a plurality. Deciding whether or not that plurality indicates “more than one God” versus “many powers and amplified majesty” is where the debate starts and

ends. When one usage of the word is said to mean a singular God with a vast array of powers, and another translation of the word indicates a plurality and/or vast array of idols and “false gods,” you see the inherent conflict and subsequent confusion. However, as we talked about earlier, it is all about context and the usage of the word as it is modified by the surrounding verbs and adjectives.

“In the beginning, God (“Elohim”—plural) created (“bara”—singular) the heavens and the earth.”

(Genesis 1:1)

Is the word *Elohim* being used in this context a demonstration of the creative power of God representing the volitional act of a divine collective of many gods engaging in the act of the first creation? Is it a singular entity representing many gods? Or is it the God of Vast and Many Powers doing the creating? You could argue that the act of creation is being done by a singular representation of *Elohim*, or, if you take it outside the religious mindset of the author of Genesis, you could interpret the language as meaning the creative act performed by a vast host of many gods embodied in the singular *Elohim*. However, you would have to consider the point-of-view of the author of the Book of Genesis: Moses, so says Jewish tradition (and I believe there is no reason to doubt this fact, as I will demonstrate in the following chapter on Moses and the 18th Dynasty of Egypt). Moses was the great “Law Giver” of the Hebrews, establishing the Ten Commandments, whose very first mandate in the first commandment was, “*I am the Lord your God who brought you out of the land of Egypt, from the house of slavery. You shall have no other gods before Me.*” Should the emphasis of this commandment be placed on the person of the singular *Elohim* who commands that “nothing” should be put before him in the act of worship? Or should the emphasis be on the “other gods,” interpolating that other gods exist, but Jehovah God is the one who is demanding your worship if you are to follow him, alone? Or is it simply metaphoric language?

“Then God (Elohim) said, ‘Let us make mankind in our image, in our likeness, so that they may rule over the fish in the sea and the birds in the sky, over the livestock and all the wild animals, and over all the creatures that move along the ground.’”

(Genesis 1:26)

Is God, in this passage, referring to Himself in the third person, much as would an earthly monarch when speaking of the vast powers he or she holds in sway over his or her subjects? Or is this an example of a plurality of gods speaking as a singular entity?

The examples could go on to a point of trivial exhaustion, as there are more than 2,500 of them throughout the Old Testament. So let us (plural) bring (singular) our (plural) examination (singular) of the word *Elohim* (plural) to a conclusion, putting it in context with our entire subject matter, the Nephilim:

The source of the word *Nephilim* is found only in ancient Jewish religious writings, including the Bible’s Old Testament Books of Moses, the apocryphal book Book of Enoch, and a few other scant biblical and non-biblical references. Whether you like it or not, the Judeo-Christian books of faith are teh absolute source point for the word itself. That is not to say that there are not dozens of other ancient cultures (see [Chapter 4](#)) that record accounts of the same beings under different labels and names. But for the sake of going to the source of the most commonly understood and used word for these beings, the Nephilim are sourced in Jewish scriptures. According to Genesis, it was *Elohim* who gave birth to or created beings known as the Watchers (according to Enoch), who are called the Sons of God (*bene haElohim*) in Genesis [Chapter 6](#). It is said that these Sons of God descended to the earth and cohabited with human women, producing offspring called the Nephilim. Bing. Bang. Boom.

But we still have one intermediate step to look at before getting to the Nephilim themselves—namely, their unearthly lineage, the one half of their cross-bred parentage: the *bene haElohim*, or the Sons of God.

The Sons of God

Now that we have examined the plurality of the name *Elohim*, and the presentation of the Jewish concept that it meant (more likely than not) a singular God with vast majesty and possessing of many powers, we now need to examine his offspring. They are the characters in the account of the lineage of the Nephilim known as the Sons of God, the *bene Elohim* or *bene-haElohim*, the “parents”—or least one half of the parental line.

“1 When human beings began to increase in number on the earth and daughters were born to them, 2 the sons of God saw that these daughters were beautiful, and they married any of them they chose. 3 Then the Lord said, “My Spirit will not contend with human beings forever, for they are mortal; their days will be a hundred and twenty years.” 4 The Nephilim were on the earth in those days—and also afterward—when the sons of God went to the daughters of the human beings and had children by them. They were the heroes of old, men of renown.”

(Genesis 6:1-4)

These four verses from Genesis [Chapter 6](#) appear in the preamble to the account of Noah’s Flood. Noah’s name appears for the first time in the text in verse 8, where it states that he “*found favor in the eyes of the Lord*.” The passage goes on to state that Noah (and his family) was the only “righteous” human being left on the earth, and that is why he was chosen to be the builder of the great ark—or barge—which would preserve him, his family, and pairs of animals from the great watery judgment of God’s wrath. (We

will examine later the meaning of the word *righteous* and find out that it meant much more than simple spiritual goodness.)

These four verses comprise a very interesting passage in that it differs in writing style from the rest of the Book of Genesis, having earmarks of having been extracted, edited, and perhaps even plagiarized—at least in part—from other extant contemporary source material. If you’ve ever written a term paper for school, it’s like paraphrasing bits and pieces of material from external sources without quoting that source. After extensive study of this passage, Dr. David Penchansky, chair of the University of St. Thomas (St. Paul, Minn.) stated in a personal conversation with me:

This passage has been edited, either by the writer of Genesis, or by later scribes. It most certainly does not match the writing style of the rest of the book, and the language in which it is written is “choppy,” almost as if it is reproduced in the text as snippets from other source material. And the account was, obviously, far too well-known at the time to be omitted completely.

Who Are the Sons of God?

The term *bene haElohim* (בְּנֵי הָאֱלֹהִים), or Sons of God is found only four times in the Old Testament: Genesis 6:1-4; Job 1:6 and 2:1; Job 38:7; Psalm 29:1.

In the Genesis 6:1–4 passage we are told that the Sons of God looked upon human women (other translations refer to these women as: “the daughters of men/man; men’s daughters; the beautiful women of the human race; and even, ‘these girls’”) and “saw that they were beautiful.” In some translations, the Sons of God “lusted after them,” and then “married any of them they chose,” or in some translations “they took the ones they liked.”

The title, Sons of God, has been viewed several ways, and various translations refer to them as “God’s Sons, heavenly beings, and Sons from the Heavens.” It is clear to most biblical scholars that the title, Sons of God refers to angelic beings, and this is supported by other passages throughout the old and new testaments, as well as the apocryphal Book of Enoch, and various other historical texts. It is interesting to note that even Jesus of Nazareth, himself, was called “The Son of God.”

However, different views are taken on the Genesis 6:1-4 passage:

Sons of God simply refers to men, the sons of the nobles who were patrons of the school of the prophets, who married daughters of the common people. This is the view of many Jewish authorities as well as professors from my own theological roots in fundamentalist, conservative Baptist seminary circles, who hold that the Sons of God are only human men, justified by the use of *elohim* being defined as “judges” in other passages such as Exodus 21:6 and 22:8. But this is simply a means by which certain theologians avoid dealing with the intermingling of spirit beings and human women, an entire notion that falls far too close to an admission that there is more than just humanity inhabiting the universe. This is a perfect example of good scholars using disingenuous scholarship for a means to squeeze the interpretation of certain words into their particular theological point of view.

Sons of God—*bene haElohim*—is used in this passage to demonstrate the stark contrast to the term *daughters of men* (*סְרִבְגָּתָן*). From *Elohim* to *adahm*; God to man. When you read Elohim in conjunction with other words in the context, you have to view the Hebrew word for men: *adahm* (*אָדָם*). It simply means “the human race of men.” If, indeed, the Sons of God—the *bene haElohim*—refers only to mere mortal men of the upper classes, seeking to marry the daughters of the lower classes, the word *adahm* would not be contrasted with *bene haElohim*. And when used in the same context with *elohim*, *adahm* signifies the human race in contrast to the divine. The *bene-haElohim* were anything but human beings, and that is in strict unity with the Hebrew language of the passage.

Some theologians hold that the Sons of God are to be understood as the pious, righteous race descended from Seth (Adam and Eve's third son), and that "daughters of men" is to be interpreted as the "daughters of worldly men." However, the language simply does not state that, and, again, it is intellectually disingenuous, and a theological stretch to say that it does.

Whoever they were, the text makes it clear that they were bequeathed by the God who was above them; sons by birth, or sons by creative act, their point of origin is clear in all accounts: They came from the heavens and had some claim to being called Sons of God. The following passage from the Book of Enoch introduces them within the framework of the Jewish/Christian tradition—despite their appearance in a book that was banned from the canonical scriptures by the Church—and offers up a startlingly similar account to the Genesis 6:1-4 passage.

"1 It happened after the sons of men had multiplied in those days, that daughters were born to them, elegant and beautiful. 2 And when the angels, the sons of heaven, beheld them, they became enamoured of them, saying to each other, "Come, let us select for ourselves wives from the progeny of men, and let us beget children." 3 Then their leader Shamjaza said to them; "I fear that you may perhaps be indisposed to the performance of this enterprise; 4 And that I alone shall suffer for so grievous a crime." 5 But they answered him and said; "We all swear; 6 And bind ourselves by mutual execrations, that we will not change our intention, but execute our projected undertaking." 7 Then they swore all together, and all bound themselves by mutual execrations. Their whole number was two hundred, who descended upon Ardis (during the days of Jared), which is the top of mount Armon (Mt. Hermon in present day Israel). 8 That mountain therefore was called Armon, because they had sworn upon it, and bound themselves by mutual execrations. 9 These are the names of their chiefs: Shamyaza, who was their leader, Urakabarameel, Akibeel, Tamiel, Ramuel, Danel, Azkeel, Saraknyal, Azazel, Armers, Batraal, Anane, Zavebe, Samsaveel, Ertael, Turel, Yomyael, Arazyal. These

were the prefects of the two hundred angels, and the remainder were all with them. 10 Then they took wives, each choosing for himself, whom they began to approach, and with whom they cohabited; teaching them sorcery, incantations, and the dividing of roots and trees. 11 And the women conceiving brought forth giants.”

(1 Enoch 7: 1-11)



Looking west from the slopes of Mount Hermon, Israel.
Copyright Rama Yappy Kawitarka mannaismayaadventure.wordpress.com.
Used with permission.

According to Enoch, the Sons of God were created, bequeathed angelic beings who descended (fell down) to the earthly realm, and on the slopes of Mount Hermon made a pact to produce offspring with human women. To ascribe malevolence to these angels would not be wholly accurate, but Enoch's book does intimate that should they carry out their plan, they were in fear of being held responsible for enacting a “sinful” deed in the eyes of God. Enoch goes on to tell of the attributes they brought down to the human race with them: enchantments, the making of weaponry, meteorology,

astrology, astronomy, interpretations of moon phases, herbology, and the signs of the sun, stars, and moon. With these angelic-taught skills, mankind delved to the lowest common denominator by developing the art of warfare and pursued wickedness to the point of stirring up Jehovah's wrath. And the Sons of God were, indeed, held to blame; Shemjaza, their leader, somehow overlooked, and Azazel held as the main culprit for introducing weapons and warfare to mankind.

And then there was their “giant” offspring.

The Nephilim

According to scripture, the offspring of the Sons of God and human women were the Nephilim, but I do not believe the term is solely attributable to the offspring only. The Sons of God who descended from the heavens were known as the Nephilim once they took up residence in the earthly realm. So they and their offspring together became known as the Nephilim. It is similar to the scenario you have when an Irish immigrant moves his existence to America. He is Irish, but his emigrating act has given him the new title of American, and he and his offspring are now known by both titles: Irish and American, possessing a dual identity. But the children born to him in America bear the stronger title.

The writers of the 1611 King James Bible indirectly translated the word *Nephilim* as “giants,” yet the preferred scholarly translation is “fallen ones.” Giant can be better understood when you ascribe the values of height, distance from the ground to the top, descending from the heights, falling from the heavens, and so forth. Although there are many scholarly views on the identity of the Nephilim, you have to take into consideration the interpretation of the word based on the surrounding textual context, as well as the audience for whom the text is written.

The root Hebrew word for Nephilim is the verb *nephal* (Hebrew text נָפַל), meaning: 1) to fall (to the ground); 2) to fall (in battle); 3) to be cast down; 4) to desert a location; 5) to fail. The “im” (Hebrew text יִם) denotes plurality, giving us the “fallen down ones,” or the “ones who descended.”

The Sons of God can best be defined as a race of beings who descended—or “fell”—to the earth, abandoning their existence and habitation in the heavenly realms. According to the Bible, they were angelic in origin, birthed/created by God (*Elohim*), and they brought to the human inhabitants of the earth special skills, as well as an unearthly libido. Their offspring bore the title of Nephilim, and the propagation of their mixed race on the earth led to the judgment of God in the form of a flood, as described in Genesis and other ancient accounts. Also mentioned in the Book of Enoch is the fact that these beings descended to the earth during “the days of Jared,” the father of Enoch. His name means, literally, “descent,” and he was named thus because the descent of the Sons of God to the earth took place during his lifetime.

It is interesting at this point, to note that both Jared and Enoch are also mentioned in the Genesis account:

“18 When Jared was 162 years old, his son Enoch was born. 19 After the birth of Enoch, Jared lived another 800 years, and he had other sons and daughters. 20 He died at the age of 962. 21 When Enoch was 65 years old, his son Methuselah was born. 22 After the birth of Methuselah, Enoch lived another 300 years in close fellowship with God, and he had other sons and daughters. 23 Enoch lived 365 years in all. 24 He enjoyed a close relationship with God throughout his life. Then suddenly, he disappeared because God took him.”

(Genesis 5:18-24)

In the older archaic English of the 1611 King James Version of the Bible, that last verse is worded “*And Enoch walked with God, and was not, for God took him.*”

Digest all of that. Then take a deep, cleansing breath.

Elohim begat the *bene haElohim*, who begat the Nephilim. But that is simply one version of events. The question that still begs to be asked and answered is: What if the Nephilim, as defined by other cultural writings of the day, are something completely different? What if the Jewish Bible is only a version of events as understood and written by a monotheistic culture who recorded these events from within their framework of understanding, from within a monotheistic, mono-theocratic structure? What if these angelic beings were anything but angels? As is always the case, the uncovering of the basics only leads to deeper questions. As we move forward we will tackle the issue of extraterrestrial origins and the seeding of mankind.

But first, let's move to an all-important historical examination of Moses, the author of the Pentateuch, the first five books of the Bible or, as the Jewish religion calls it, the Torah. Once you have an understanding of this man's origins and why he wrote the things he wrote, you start to gain a clearer picture of just who the Nephilim really are, and why Moses wrote what he did.

chapter 3

The Pharaoh-God of Israel

Who Was Moses...*Really*?

“Yahweh spoke to Moses face to face, as a man speaks to his friend.”

(Exodus 33:11)

“27 They gave Moses this account: ‘We went into the land to which you sent us, and it does flow with milk and honey! Here is its fruit. 28 But the people who live there are powerful, and the cities are fortified and very large. We even saw descendants of Anak there.... 33 We saw the Nephilim there, the descendants of Anak of the Nephilim. We seemed like grasshoppers in our own eyes, and we looked the same to them.’”

(Numbers 13:27-28, 33)

As I state in my public lectures on the topic of the Nephilim, we are now going to “rabbit trail” a bit. But it is a vitally contextual, highly relevant side-track to understanding the bigger picture of the Watchers and the Nephilim. It’s going to include a lot of history, but remember: *History is fun, passionate, and exciting!* This isn’t the stuff of sitting in a boring high school classroom; this is the stuff that opens the door and sheds the light. Understanding the past gives illumination to the present. We all have personal histories and things that have happened in our pasts to make us

who and what we are today. The same applies to this outstanding character in history. Understanding that he is much more than a Bible story, but rather a real person who lived and breathed and experienced life, will help us to greater understand the things he wrote about and why he said what he said.

Of great importance to understanding the Genesis account of the Nephilim is having an understanding of the author of the book and the education he would have experienced in the royal courts of 18th Dynasty Egypt. The first five books of the Bible's Old Testament—Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy—are collectively known as the Pentateuch, the books of the Law, and their authorship is attributed to Moses, the most well-known lawgiver and Hebrew leader of Judeo-Christian tradition.

First of all, Moses is the author of the Book of Genesis. Just because he is a biblical character whose story is made up of fantastical deeds and miraculous events, does not mean he is simply part of myth.

It is Moses who, the Book of Exodus tells us, was born a Hebrew slave living under captivity in the slave city of Goshen in the delta region of the land of Egypt. The Hebrews had been living in Egypt as a family since the time of their ancestor-patriarch Joseph, one of the sons of Jacob/Israel, who migrated them to Egypt during a time of great famine in Canaan, present-day Israel. The family grew into an expatriated people, numbering nearly two million by the time of the Exodus, and suffered a gradual captivity imposed on them by the Egyptian pharaohs during a period of four centuries.

It is important to point out that, although the story of Moses is rife with faith-story tradition, many of the deeds of the historical man Moses cannot be found anywhere in recorded history, other than the pages of holy scripture and religious writings. And one has to dig very deeply to find the scant mentions that do exist, and even then there is the monumental task of discerning the man from the legend. The historical treatment of his life, as it

appears in the Old Testament books of Exodus through Deuteronomy, are events written from the perspective of the man himself, comprising major context within four of the five books of the Law in the Old Testament. Moses was a powerful man striving—as would any leader of a new nation that was the product of invasion, rebellion, or coup—to establish his authority and base of power. It is important to understand that Moses was the product of 18th Dynasty Egypt, where he was part of a ruling dynasty that held absolute power over its subjects, and this is where he learned the royal skills necessary for national leadership. This is where Moses learned that he was a “son of the Pharaoh God.” This is where he learned to impose the will of a god-man over the people he ruled.

In reading the pages of religious scripture, one must ask whether Moses was a mere figment of the pious imagination of Jewish rabbis and Hebrew historians, a mere adjunct to religious sentimentality and Judeo-Christian mythos? Or was he a real personality of some stature and substance in Egypt as the Jewish Scriptures claim? During the biblical account of the Ten Plagues of Egypt and the “let my people go!” audiences Moses had with, arguably, the most powerful monarch in the known world, we are given the distinct impression that Moses has absolute dominance over the Pharaoh, the government, and the people. In fact the biblical record states explicitly:

“The man Moses was very great in the land of Egypt, in the sight of Pharaoh’s servants and in the sight of the people.”

(Exodus 11:3)

During the period of the Ten Plagues, the very word of Moses became as *law* in the courts of the Pharaoh and the land of Egypt. Take note of what most commentators on the biblical account have overlooked:

“And all these your servants” [Moses is addressing the pharaoh]
“shall come down to me, and bow down themselves unto me, saying,

“Get you out and all the people that follow you: and after that I will go out!” And he went out from Pharaoh in the heat of a great anger.”

(Exodus 11:8)

Moses minced no words, but rather dictated with power and authority to the most powerful ruler of the ancient world. Moses was notable, exceptional, talented, and no ordinary man by any standard, past or present.

Faith Story vs. Historical Account

This is also where I am sure to draw a bit of heated criticism from my old Bible School classmates and fellow seminarians, as well as leaders and friends from the evangelical Christian circles in which I spent many years of my life. For to question the absolute authority of the Bible in its application to faith, practice, theology, or history is to question the very nature and attributes of God, Himself. Yet, there are gaping holes in the scriptural historical accounts that can be filled only with extrapolation of historical data, and the squeezing of size 13 feet into size 10 1/2 wide Egyptian sandals.

We are informed by Polybius (c. 201-120 BCE) that there are essentially three classes of historians:

- ★ One class slants their documentation for financial gain, expressing “the pleasure or the plans of kings and states.”
- ★ Another class writes for those who enjoy “rhetorical display,” an enjoyment of the sensuous exploitation of words, in a manner that sounds pleasant to the listener.
- ★ Finally, some record the truth, “for the good of mankind.”¹

The New Testament references to Moses are written within a framework of early Christian apologetics, meant to establish the young Christian religion during its infancy. The faith story told by early Christian apologists is solid tradition that sets a foundation for religious practice and tradition, and the history remains obscure, unsubstantiated, and many times unverifiable by extant historical records of the day. There are many traditional tales of Moses, as well as traditional histories in the Jewish Mishnah and other writings, but the Egyptian historical records are silent. And even Moses himself for some reason refrains from mentioning historical names of the pharaohs and royalties that would have surrounded him during the first 40 years of his life spent as a prince of Egypt.

And that is because the writings of Moses were never meant to be cold, hard, historical records. They were meant to establish the authority of God over Israel, as embodied in the authority of Moses. We see presented in the scripture an acceptable arrogance in Moses that is an indicative—and many times necessary—ingredient on the part of national leaders in establishing their authority. Even more so when that leader claims that his authority is one that is favored by the gods. Or in Moses' case, by God. Moses, in writing of his relationship with God, states in Exodus 33:11 that he was able to "*speak with God face-to-face, as a man speaks to his friend.*" Yet Moses was not destroyed by the utter holiness of God in a consuming fireball for this intimate contact. Then, a few verses later in the very same passage, God Himself tells us, via the pen of Moses:

“You cannot see My face, for no man can see Me and live!”

(Exodus 33:20)

When Moses emphatically states that he survived what other human beings could not, he establishes himself as having a little bit of divine edge that is above and beyond what the common person could endure. He begins to equate himself with the Divine in ways that establish his leadership over Israel as not only divinely appointed, but miraculously maintained. When

Moses had his personal, face-to-face meetings with Jehovah, this is how they are described in the book of Exodus:

“7 Now Moses used to take a tent and pitch it outside the camp some distance away, calling it the ‘tent of meeting.’ Anyone inquiring of the LORD would go to the tent of meeting outside the camp. 8 And whenever Moses went out to the tent, all the people rose and stood at the entrances to their tents, watching Moses until he entered the tent. 9 As Moses went into the tent, the pillar of cloud would come down and stay at the entrance, while the LORD spoke with Moses. 10 Whenever the people saw the pillar of cloud standing at the entrance to the tent, they all stood and worshiped, each at the entrance to their tent. 11 The LORD would speak to Moses face to face, as one speaks to a friend.”

(Exodus 33:7-11)

God descended to the tent of Moses in a cloud—just as He did when descending upon the ark of the covenant in the cloudy form of His female counterpart, the Shekinah—but outside the written text, no one knows exactly what Moses encountered while alone in the tent with the presence that descended there. Whether this happened precisely as the book of Exodus describes or whether it was a series of events that Moses used to further establish his position as the Pharaoh-God of Israel will be a question that remains unanswered, as there is no way to establish the veracity of what he has written beyond faith.

There are, however, speculative Ancient Alienists who would chalk these events firmly into the “Alien Encounter” category. Though we cannot establish the existence of the Divine beyond the faith of the human heart, some would choose to view these events as not only supernatural, but extra-terrestrial. Just as the pillar of cloud by day and the pillar of fire by night appeared in the skies and went before the Israelites to guide their way, the same pillar of cloud came down to the tent of Moses and later came down and settled on the ark of the covenant in a form that is described in the Hebrew language by a strictly female term, the Shekinah (**הנִיכָש**), the

grammatically feminine presence of God.² According to the text of Exodus, “all the people” saw these events take place, and if there was any further editing of the book after Moses’ death, the passages were not omitted. The event is there in the context to establish the absolute authority and sovereignty of God, as well as the absolute authority of Moses as the God-appointed leader.

Regarding the pillars of fire and cloud themselves, it is well established in rabbinic teaching that these manifestations were nothing other than the magnificence and glory of God; God personally appearing in miraculous manifestations to lead his people. This is what is known to theologians as a “theophany,” an appearance of God in physical form. And according to Judeo-Christian teaching, this is simply the glory of God appearing at the door of Moses’ tent, and hovering in the sky to guide his people. Moses was set apart as the only human being to have this close contact with God, thereby establishing him as someone who was in close union with God. The next best thing to being the monarchical Pharaoh-God.

But then we see the following passage, just a few verses later, in which Moses is not allowed to see the face of God. For some reason, the same presence that spoke to Moses in the tent, face-to-face, could not allow Moses to see its face on the top of Mount Sinai. Like anyone else who experiences the mystical, phenomenal paranormal, there is always the desire to be drawn in and know more, see more, experience more. So Moses asked for more:

“18 Then Moses said, ‘Now show me your glory.’ 19 And the LORD said, ‘I will cause all my goodness to pass in front of you, and I will proclaim my name, the LORD, in your presence. I will have mercy on whom I will have mercy, and I will have compassion on whom I will have compassion. 20 But,’ he said, ‘you cannot see my face, for no one may see me and live.’ 21 Then the LORD said, ‘There is a place near me where you may stand on a rock. 22 When my glory passes by, I will put you in a cleft in the rock and cover you with my

hand until I have passed by. 23 Then I will remove my hand and you will see my back; but my face must not be seen.””

(Exodus 33:18-23)

In establishing the magnificence and glory of the all powerful Jehovah God, Moses writes that even he was not allowed to look on God's face, though just a few sentences earlier he had established that he possessed a special, hierarchical relationship with God, being the only man who had ever talked with God “face-to-face,” as a man talks with his friend. This was all written so that the people would understand that Moses indeed as powerful as the Pharaoh-Gods of Egypt; he communed with the Divine in the most intimate of ways! And later, during the 40 years of wandering in the wilderness as a nomadic people, Moses goes a step further, and in his anger with the people he equates himself with God by referring to himself and God as “We.” For this, the scripture then tells us, Moses was reprimanded by God for his pride, and not allowed to enter into the Land of Promise. Whether that anecdotal story was part of Moses' original account, or was added later by a future editor, such as Joshua, Moses' successor, is unknown. But what is clear is that Moses took on himself the persona of the Pharaoh-God, the ruler who has absolute authority and absolute communion with the Divine.

The Residual Effect of Communing With Deity

“29 When Moses came down from Mount Sinai with the two tablets of the covenant law in his hands, he was not aware that his face was radiant because he had spoken with the LORD. 30 When Aaron and all the Israelites saw Moses, his face was radiant, and they were afraid to come near him. 31 But Moses called to them; so Aaron and all the leaders of the community came back to him, and he spoke to them. 32 Afterward all the Israelites came near him, and he gave them all the commands the LORD had given him on Mount Sinai. 33 When Moses finished speaking to them, he put a veil over his face. 34 But

whenever he entered the LORD's presence to speak with him, he removed the veil until he came out. And when he came out and told the Israelites what he had been commanded, 35 they saw that his face was radiant. Then Moses would put the veil back over his face until he went in to speak with the LORD."

(Exodus 34:29-35)

Moses' encounters with the Divine left physical traces. His face glowed and his hair and beard turned white as snow. So frightening was his appearance that he had to veil his face to hide the radiance. His face-to-face encounters with the radioactive deity bleached his skin and made him ... glow. And according to the biblical passage, he didn't even realize it until the people recoiled in superstitious horror.

It is interesting to note at this point that the Watchers who descended to the slopes of Mount Hermon, and in their varying forms as manifested in other cultures around the ancient world, were said to be bright, shining gods who descended from the skies. The ancient Sumarian *El*, the Celtic *Aillil*, Babylonian *Ellu*, Cornish *El*, Incan *Illa*, Hebrew *Elah*, and Muslim *Allah* all had their varying words for the physical shining brightness of the gods who descended down to mankind.

Was it this same light that was passed on to Moses during his close encounters with *Elohim*?

General and King

It is vital to establish exactly what it is that Moses would have experienced during those first 40 years of his life in order to have an understanding of what influenced him when he became the leader of the wilderness-wandering nation of Israel later in life. The culture, education,

and religion of Egypt would have had an intensely engraining influence on the man, despite the Bible telling us that he made a conscious choice to identify himself with his own people—which alone tells us that he was being raised as an Egyptian, living as part of the royal family of 18th Dynasty Egypt in Thebes, near Luxor, roughly 400 miles up the Nile, south of present-day Cairo. Moses was less Hebrew than he was Egyptian, so for him to make a cognitive choice to identify himself with his slave people of origin, was nothing less than altruistic. Perhaps even heroic.

But was his identification with the Hebrews an “act of faith” on his part, as the New Testament Book of Hebrews tells us, or was it in an attempt to look for opportunities to *rule* them?

There is a traditional tale in Jewish mishnah that speaks of Moses leading an army, under orders of the Pharaoh, to quell a rebellion in Nubia. Once the rebellion is squashed, and thousands of rebels are dead, Moses takes the throne for his very own, much to the chagrin of the ruling family in Nubia. Word gets back to the Pharaoh, who hastily reprimands Moses, telling him to relinquish the throne to the vassal ruling family, and to get himself and his army back to Egypt. Moses, of course, abdicates the short-lived monarchy, and returns to the courts of the Pharaoh.

Desiring a position as the ruler of a people was in Moses’ blood. He was raised as a prince, and his Egyptian queen step-mother raised him to be the next Pharaoh.

I cannot emphasize enough how utterly important it is, in dissecting the story of the Watchers descent to Mount Hermon and their offspring the Nephilim—to have an understanding of what Moses would have been exposed to in the royal tutelage and religious philosophies of 18th Dynasty Egypt.

The Traditional Story

Moses was born a slave, but adopted by a queen of Egypt, where he grew up as a palace kid, enjoying an upbringing that afforded him a royal education and lifestyle. What we know from the biblical account is that as he grew older, he began to identify himself more and more with his own people, and arrogantly saw himself, from his lofty position in the royal courts of Egypt, as the prophesied deliverer of the Hebrew people from bondage. Taking matters into his own hands, he murdered an Egyptian taskmaster and fled for his life from the wrath of the Pharaoh. He spent the next 40 years as a shepherd in the land of Midian, where he married the daughter of Jethro, the high priest of Midian, and lived to the age of 80 as a sort of outback, off-the-grid shepherd.

It was at the age of 80 that he saw a miraculous vision of God in the form of a burning bush, and was called out to return to Egypt and lead the Hebrews out of slavery. Moses balked and attempted to get out of any task that would bring him back to the land where he had spent the first half of his life and where he was wanted for murder. But God assured him that those who sought his life were long since dead and his crimes forgotten. Moses returned, and, in a series of coercive plagues leveled against the land of Egypt, finally convinced the pharaoh to set the Hebrews free after the plague of the firstborn took the life of the Pharaoh's son. Under Moses' leadership, the Hebrews left Egypt *en masse* overnight in an event called the Great Exodus, which has been celebrated ever since at the Jewish Passover.

The Pharaoh, of course, has second thoughts and mounts his armies to pursue the escaping Hebrew slaves, only to have them destroyed in one of the Bible's greatest, single mythically miraculous events: the parting of the Red Sea. Once completely free of the Pharaoh and his armies, Moses leads the Hebrews to the Holy Mountain of God—some say it is Sinai, other writings place it at Jabal Musa in Saudi Arabia. It is here that Moses climbs to the top and meets God face-to-face, and God sends him back down 40

days later with the tablets of the Law inscribed (by God's own hand) with the Ten Commandments. Upon Moses' descent, he finds the people worshipping a golden calf and partying like an Egyptian. He breaks the tablets and imposes punishment for the idolatrous worship, then returns to the mountaintop, where God inscribes a new set of stone texts for him.

The Hebrews make their way to the Land of Cana'an, only to have their spies return with reports of giant Nephilim dwelling in the land. In fear, the people tell Moses that they are unwilling to enter Cana'an and conquer it, even though it was promised them by God because it was their ancestral homeland. So Moses leads them back out to the wilderness where they wander as a nomadic tribe for 40 years. In the process of their wilderness sojourn, Moses, in an angry response to the complaints of the people, commits the sinful act of pride by equating himself with God, and is then told by God that for his punishment, he could see the promised land, but not enter it. As the Hebrews march into the land of Cana'an, Moses ascends the slope of Mount Nebo, where he gazes into the land of God's promise, and dies. His body is never found.

In the entire account of the life and deeds of Moses as written in the Old Testament, we are never given the names of the historical kings of Egypt with whom Moses lived and against whom he stood in conflict in his return to lead the Hebrews out of captivity. They are referred to only as "Pharaoh" or "the king of Egypt."

Moses had particular reasons for writing these accounts the way he did, the first of which was a demonstration of just how unimportant the names of these great rulers were to the story of the deliverance of his people. Examining the life of Moses and the dating of his exploits will bring a much greater understanding of the texts he authored and subsequently his handling of the topic of the Nephilim in his Book of Genesis.

The Making of a Pharaoh-God

It is extremely important to have an understanding of the historical data surrounding these people and events, for without that information we are left to dangle at the end of the rope of mythology and legend. Seeking out and ascribing solid dates and historical facts is nothing short of throwing wide the door of illumination on the dark room of ignorance and speculative conjecture. Of course, there are many who will say that these very facts presented here are nothing but subjective hypothesis, yet out of all the systems and theories set in place to establish the historical life of Moses, this is the one that makes the most sense by the current facts as they exist—at least when one makes an attempt to ensure the facts as presented in the Bible concur as closely as possible to the historical record.

And before you walk away from this chapter wondering what the historical story of Moses has to do with the Sons of God and the Nephilim, consider this: The man who wrote about them in the Book of Genesis experienced an upbringing, education, and lifestyle in the courts of the Egyptian royalty. Being one of the progeny of the Pharaoh, who was considered to be a god, Moses was indeed himself, a literal “son of god” in the eyes of the Egyptian people. Moses’ notions of the creation of the world and the birth of humanity were greatly influenced by the religion of the Egyptian culture that was all around him during his first 40 years of life.

According to the Book of Exodus, Moses stepped out and chose to be identified with his own people, the Hebrew slaves, but at the same time, he did not relinquish his position in the royal family of Egypt. It is plainly evident in the passages of biblical text that he saw this identification with the Hebrews as a way to set himself up as their promised deliverer. In a very real sense, there was an undercurrent of political opportunism in Moses that he could not simply allow to pass by. He may have had a faith that he was the promised deliverer, as the New Testament Book of Hebrews tells us, but that faith seems to be something applied to his acts by the foundational apologists for the Christian faith, as opposed to the literal moral motivation on the part of Moses. It is clear in the Exodus text that he saw himself as greater than those around him—a thing not at all out of

place for someone raised in a family of monarchs who held an iron-fisted rule over Egypt.



The Barque shrine relief (highlighted area) at Medinat Habu, “House of Millions of Years.” Located at the upper western end of the lower portion of the north interior wall of the second courtyard, the “Festival Hall,” northwestern quadrant. Moses would have seen this wall many times during his youth in Egypt.

Photos courtesy of Dr. John T. Ward and Dr. Maria Nilsson, The Sirius Project copyright 2011. Used with permission.

And make no mistake about it: Moses was Hebrew in name only during his first 40 years of life. Moses was an Egyptian through and through, as most of his writings, philosophies, adjudication of laws, and building of religious ceremonial objects implies. Even the ark of the covenant, which Moses, as the voice of God, gave instruction to build, resembles so closely

the relief paintings of Egyptian barque shrines of worship, that the roots of influence are undeniable.

Solomon's Temple: The Cornerstone to Dating Moses

There is a hardcore, undisputed historical date in the Old Testament on which we can hang our hat when determining the dating of the events of Moses' life. Once this date is established, the rest of the mystery surrounding Moses' life unravels.

In 966 BCE, in the fourth year of the reign of Solomon, the son of David, as king of Israel, the first Jewish temple built in Jerusalem (known historically and archaeologically as "Temple") was dedicated.³ This is an iron-clad date in history, disputed only by a number of three to five years in either direction by Jewish, Christian, and historical scholars alike.

"In the four hundred and eightieth year after the Israelites came out of Egypt, in the fourth year of Solomon's reign over Israel, in the month of Ziv, the second month, he began to build the temple of the LORD."

(1 Kings 6:1)

And there you have it. Although even the existence of kings David and Solomon is still in raging dispute among archaeologists, scholars, and biblical minimalists, the temple in Jerusalem was dedicated in 966 BCE, and the date is non-disputed. This brings us to the dating of the Exodus. According to the aforementioned passage from 1 Kings, the temple was dedicated in the 480th year after the Hebrews were led out of their Egyptian captivity. This would make the year of the great Exodus under the leadership of Moses, the first Passover of the Jewish religion, 1446 BCE.

And if Moses was 80 years old at the time of the Exodus, he would have been born in 1526 BCE during the reign of Thutmoses I.

The Egyptian Pharaohs During the Time Line of Moses

Thutmoses 1

“8 Then a new king... came to power in Egypt. 9 ‘Look,’ he said to his people, ‘the Israelites have become far too numerous for us. 10 Come, we must deal shrewdly with them or they will become even more numerous and, if war breaks out, will join our enemies, fight against us and leave the country.’ 11 So they put slave masters over them to oppress them with forced labor, and they built Pithom and Rameses as store cities for Pharaoh. 12 But the more they were oppressed, the more they multiplied and spread; so the Egyptians came to dread the Israelites 13 and worked them ruthlessly. 14 They made their lives bitter with harsh labor in brick and mortar and with all kinds of work in the fields; in all their harsh labor the Egyptians worked them ruthlessly.”

(Exodus 1:8-14)

In accordance with the dateline we hinge on the dating of Solomon's Temple, Moses was born in 1526 BCE, during the first year of the reign of Thutmoses I, the son of Hebrew slaves Amram and Jocabel. Thutmoses I ruled Egypt from 1526 to 1513 BCE, and it was during his reign, the Bible tells us, that the Pharaoh of Egypt issued a decree that all Hebrew male children below the age of 2 years be slain and cast into the Nile River.

“15 The king of Egypt said to the Hebrew midwives, whose names were Shiphrah and Puah, 16 ‘When you are helping the Hebrew women during childbirth on the delivery stool, if you see that the baby is a boy, kill him; but if it is a girl, let her live.’ 17 The midwives, however, feared God and did not do what the king of Egypt had told them to do; they let the boys live. 18 Then the king of Egypt summoned the midwives and asked them, ‘Why have you done this? Why have you let the boys live?’ 19 The midwives answered Pharaoh, ‘Hebrew women are not like Egyptian women; they are vigorous and give birth before the midwives arrive.’ 20 So God was kind to the midwives and the people increased and became even more numerous. 21 And because the midwives feared God, he gave them families of their own. 22 Then Pharaoh gave this order to all his people: ‘Every Hebrew boy that is born you must throw into the Nile, but let every girl live.’”

(Exodus 1:15-22)

Moses’ mother hid her infant son as long as she could, and when he was 3 months old, in a plot to spare him from the Pharaoh’s decree, she placed him in a pitch-smeared basket woven from papyrus and set him adrift on the Nile River. Although this is not implicit in the text, it can be subjectively surmised that this was no arbitrary act of blind hope on her part. When she released him to the currents of the Nile, she ordered her daughter Miriam, Moses’ older sister, to follow along in the bulrushes along the shoreline to assure that no harm came to the child and that the basket reached the destination she had hoped: the Nile backwater pools of the palace, where the Pharaoh’s household came to bathe.

The idea of a “savior in a basket, floating down the river” was not exclusive to the story of Moses.

Sargon the Great

In an Akkadian clay cuneiform tablet purporting to be the biography of Sargon the Great of Akkad, around 2400 BCE, legend states that his mother was a temple priestess. Giving birth to him in secret and setting him in a basket to float, she abandoned him to the Euphrates river. Akki, a gardener, rescued him from the river and raised him. After working as a gardener for Akki, Sargon rose to the position of cup-bearer to Ur-Zababa, the king of Kish, and from there went on to rise in power, sacking Uruk and establishing himself as the emperor of Sumar in place of Lugalzagesi, king of Uruk.

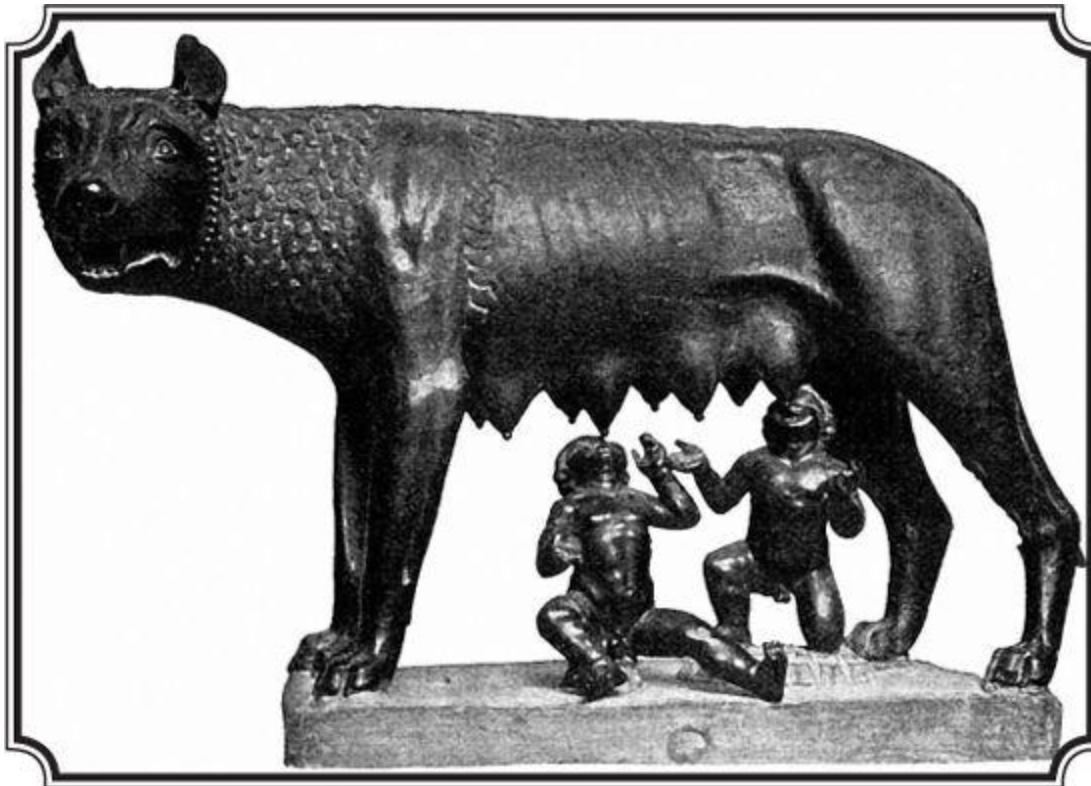
Osiris

Osiris, around 2500 BCE, the sacrificial savior god of Egypt, was murdered, after which his decapitated crowned head was placed in a papyrus basket and floated down the Nile.

Romulus and Remus

Romulus and Remus, according to Plutarch, were twins descended from Prince Aeneas, a fugitive from the legendary city of Troy after its destruction by the Achaeans. Their maternal grandfather was his descendant *Numitor*, who inherited the kingship of Alba Longa. Numitor's brother *Amulius* inherited its treasury, including the gold brought by Aeneas from Troy. Amulius used his control of the treasury to dethrone Numitor, but feared that Numitor's daughter, Rhea Silvia, would bear children who could overthrow him. In an attempt to solidify his claim to the throne with no other royal candidates rising to challenge him, Amulius forced Rhea Silvia to perpetual virginity as a Vestal priestess. This didn't end up working, as she bore children anyway. According to the legend, Mars, the god of war, seduced Silvia and impregnated her. In other accounts, it was Hercules or

even Amulius himself who impregnated his niece. Under confinement by Amulius, she gives birth to twin boys of remarkable beauty, upon which her uncle ordered all of their deaths. Rhea was buried alive, and Amulius ordered the death of the twins by exposure; both means would avoid his direct blood-guilt.



“She-Wolf Suckles Romulus and Remus.” Capitoline Wolf, traditionally believed to be Etruscan, fifth century BC, with figures of Romulus and Remus added in the 15th century by Antonio Pollaiuolo.

Photo courtesy of Wikimedia Commons (commons.wikimedia.org/wiki/File:She-wolf_suckles_Romulus_and_Remus.jpg).

Amulius charged a servant with the deed of killing the twins, but the servant could not follow through with the act. Instead he placed them in a basket and left it on the banks of the Tiber River, which flooded and carried the twins downstream, unharmed. The river deity Tiberinus made the basket

catch in the roots of a fig tree that grew in the Velabrum swamp at the base of the Palatine Hill. The twins were found and suckled by a she-wolf, Lupa, and fed by a woodpecker, Picus. A shepherd named Faustulus discovered the twin boys and took them to his hut, where he and his wife Acca Larentia raised them as their own children. Romulus went on to found the city of Rome.

Hatshepsut

This remarkable woman was the daughter of Thutmose I, born in or around 1535 BCE. She went on to marry her half-brother Thutmose II, fathered by Thutmose I and to a “lesser” wife. He was weak and somewhat sickly in his reign, and she loathed the man. When he died, she became coregent of Egypt with her stepson, Thutmose III (from, yet again, a lesser wife), and eventually deposed him and took over the monarchy as ruler herself. Thutmose III learned to hate his stepmother, and when she died, he had all Hatshepsut’s imagery stricken from every painting, obelisk, and relief, eradicating her from Egyptian history and the afterlife. Thutmose III went on to bring Egypt’s United Kingdom during the 18th Dynasty to its golden pinnacle.

In 1526, Hatshepsut would have been a mere child of about 7 to 10 years of age. When she found the baby Moses in a basket, floating into her bathing pool off the Nile; she claimed him and named him, but had no way to care for him on her own. It was then that Miriam emerged from the bulrushes and offered to help, taking the child back to his mother to have him cared for until the royal princess was old enough to legitimately adopt him, which she did a few years later.



This remarkable woman, who reigned in Egypt's 18th Dynasty, is most probably the stepmother of the biblical Moses, whom she found floating in the Nile in a basket made of bulrushes.

Photo courtesy of the author. Copyright 2011.

It can be speculated that a man named Senmut, very close to Hatshepsut and the tutor to her daughter, was none other than Moses himself. Though

the evidence is only circumstantial, one must read a bit between the lines and hail to Egyptian mythology to make the connections.

Senmut was very close to Hatshepsut and was her strongest ally, advisor, and friend, a lowly born man who rose to power with Hatshepsut. It is speculated that his lowly birth was as a Hebrew slave, and his close stepson relationship to Hatshepsut was nothing short of the love between mother and son, and the nepotism that came along with it. The name Senmut itself means “*mother’s brother*.”

To understand the significance of this mother’s brother title, it is necessary to look, briefly, at Egyptian religion and the Pharaoh: The ancient Egyptians believed that the first king of Egypt was Osiris, married to his sister Isis. Set, the brother of Osiris, murdered him out of jealousy, and claimed the throne. Incorporating a spell of magic, Isis brought Osiris back to life for one night, made love with him, and conceived a child, after which Osiris returned to his death state. The child she bore was Horus, the reincarnation of Osirus, who reclaims his rightful place on throne. The child born to Isis was, all at once, her son, her husband, and her brother. All kings of Egypt were then said to be “Horus,” the reincarnation of Osiris.

And this is the significance of the name given to Moses—*Senmut*. He was being “set up” by his mother, Hatshepsut, in the Egyptian economy to be the future king, the royal heir of his “grandfather-Pharaoh,” Thutmose I, who had no living royal male heirs. But he had one royal daughter, Hatshepsut. The future king could only inherit the throne through the royal daughter. Hatshepsut convinced her father, the Pharaoh, to make her little adopted boy his future heir. Nefure, as the symbolic Isis, had her little “Osiris/Horus,” who was named Senmut, his “mother’s brother.”

When Senmut/Moses makes the decision to identify himself with his slave people, the Hebrews, he forever cut himself off from the adopted pharohonic line of Hatshepsut.

“By faith Moses, when he was come to years, refused to be called the son of Pharaoh’s daughter.”

(Hebrews 11:24)

Some of Senmut/Moses’ many titles conferred on him by Hatshepsut were: Overseer of the Works, Overseer of the Fields, Overseer of the Double Gold House, Overseer of the Gardens of Amun, Controller of Works, Overseer of the Administrative Office of the Mansion, Conductor of Festivals, Overseer of the Cattle of Amun, Steward of the King’s Daughter Neferura, Chief of the King, Magnate of the Tens of Upper and Lower Egypt, Chief of the Mansion of the Red Crown, Privy Councillor, Chief Steward of Amun, Overseer of the Double Granary of Amun, Chief Architect, and none other than Hereditary Prince and Count.

Murder and Flight

“11 One day, after Moses had grown up, he went out to where his own people were and watched them at their hard labor. He saw an Egyptian beating a Hebrew, one of his own people. 12 Looking this way and that and seeing no one, he killed the Egyptian and hid him in the sand. 13 The next day he went out and saw two Hebrews fighting. He asked the one in the wrong, ‘Why are you hitting your fellow Hebrew?’ 14 The man said, ‘Who made you ruler and judge over us? Are you thinking of killing me as you killed the Egyptian?’ Then Moses was afraid and thought, ‘What I did must have become known.’ 15 When Pharaoh heard of this, he tried to kill Moses, but Moses fled from Pharaoh and went to live in Midian . . .”

(Exodus 3:11-15)

Shortly before Hatshepsut’s death in 1483 BCE, Senmut mysteriously and completely disappears from the royal courts of Egypt and the historical records. Having been groomed to be the next Pharaoh, it becomes clear that

Senmut/Moses' adopted half-brother, Thutmoses III, the co-regent with his stepmother Hatshepsut, had every motivation to eliminate Moses after he murdered the Egyptian taskmaster. So Moses—formerly Senmut, Hereditary Prince and Count of Egypt—fled to the wilderness for his life. He would not return to Egypt for 40 years, but when he did, it was with a much different influence on the royal courts of Egypt.

But Moses, at this point in his life, despite “identifying” himself with his Hebrew people, was thoroughly Egyptian, and he carried with him to the land of Midian a wealth of stored Egyptian knowledge that simmered in his head for 40 more years. The king-in-the-making, “mother’s brother” to the Pharaoh Queen, general in the armies of the Pharaoh, with a deep-set ambition to rule, was now married to the a daughter of the high priest of Midian and monarch to herds of sheep and goats in a dusty Arabian back water.

Moses possessed a belief in the gods of Egypt, and this wouldn’t change until his miraculous encounter with the God of Abraham, Isaac and Jacob, the great “I AM,” Yaweh, who, in the form of a burning bush, pressed him into service as the great emancipator of his people of heritage, the Hebrews.

But did Moses see that blazing desert shrubbery as the only God? Was that encounter one of a spiritual nature or one that would come to fit the mold of an extra-terrestrial encounter that challenged all his beliefs in the pantheon of gods with which he was raised and whom he knew so well? The pages of scripture tell us that this calling was of Divine Origin, and that Jehovah God Himself was the power behind the upcoming miraculous events.

The big question, if you step outside the box of faith, is whether or not Moses was encountering the God of the Universe or a being that only fit his perceptions and understanding of that which had been rooted in his mind since his earliest days.

The Ogdoad

In Thebes, the little town of Medinet Habu has, nestled on its low crest, the ruins of the magnificent 18th Dynasty Mortuary Temple of Rameses III. Medinet Habu, a small village situated a little more than 2 miles to the south of the Ramesseum, was called Djanet by the ancient Egyptians and, according to popular belief, was the place where Amun appeared for the first time. From ancient times, Medinet Habu was the place of worship dedicated to this god, as evidenced by the crumbled ruins of a temple of the 18th Dynasty dedicated to Amun of Djanet, built during the time of Hatshepsut and Thutmose III, atop the ruins of a still more ancient temple. This was what later induced Rameses III to order the construction there of his own memorial temple.

Growing up in the royal palace in Thebes, Moses would have known this place well and worshipped in its sacred halls. It was here that Moses was raised in his early years and spent the first 40 years of his life. He would have been taught not only the mathematics and sciences afforded a royal education in the courts of 18th Dynasty Egypt, but also would have experienced the worship and religious practices of the day.

The Ogdoad is the Egyptian creation myth that Moses would have been very familiar with and that some say laid his basis for writing about the creation in the Book of Genesis. The Ogdoad myth originated in Hermopolis and consisted of eight personified primeval forces, each of which was represented in the four couples of deities. In Egyptian cosmology, the number 4 represented the number of totality and completeness. The significance of these four primeval couples is not easy to understand today, for they lack any greater mythological context, and neither is there much substantive personification of the four couples of deities.⁴

The couples of the Ogdoad:

Nu and Naunet, representing the primeval waters.

Heh and Hauhet, signifying boundlessness.



The Inner Gate of the Ramesseum, in Luxor, Egypt. The Ramesseum is the temple complex of Ramses III, built on the site of what is now known as

Medinat Habu, “The House of a Million Years.” On this same site are the ruins of a much more ancient temple in which Moses would have learned of the Ogdoad.

Photo courtesy of Dr. John T. Ward and Dr. Maria Nilsson, The Sirius Project copyright 2011. Used with permission.

Kek and Kauket, signifying darkness.

Amun and Amaunet, signifying air.

The four couples of the Ogdoad are less about their personalities and characteristics than they represent elemental forces in the creation of the world. The cosmogony they represent are the primeval physical matters of existence rather than the actual springing to life of the organic world, and of these eight deities, only Amun developed into a remarkable status and moved to Thebes with his female counterpart, Amaunet. These four pairs of deities also complement each other: For every “male” deity is the “female” counterpart, to make up a whole, according to the ancient Egyptian complementary way of thinking. The males are shown with the heads of frogs and the females with heads of snakes; such physical attributes are frequently said in ancient texts to inhabit the primeval waters.

At el-Ashmunein were unearthed only very scant inscriptions of the Ogdoad, telling us very little about this cosmogony, but they appear ever so subtly in the writings of Moses. The main part of evidence is taken from Theban monuments, which were pieced together in 1929 by Kurt Sethe in his survey, *Amun und die Acht Urgötter von Hermopolis*,⁵ but the earliest references to the Hermopolitan cosmogony is found in the Pyramid Texts:

You have your offering-bread, O Niu and Nenet, you two protectors of the gods Who protect the gods with your shadow. You have your offering-bread, O Amun and Amaunet, You two protectors of the gods Who protect the gods with your shadow. You have your offering-bread, O Atum and Ruti, Who yourselves created your

godheads and your persons. O Shu and Tefenet who made the gods,
Who begot the gods and established the gods....⁶

These deities were said to comprise the very substances out of which creation was brought to the universe. At Hermopolis, the opinion was that at some point these eight primeval beings interacted, whereupon a great explosion occurred, which somehow laid free the Primeval Mound. The mound later became Hermopolis, though at first it was called the Isle of Flame, as the sun god was said to be born and to rise there for the very first time. Hermopolis claimed to predate the cosmogony of Heliopolis. Just as other creation centers maintained that their location was the original place where creation first had come into being, so was also the case at Hermopolis.

The Ogdoad were the fathers and the mothers who came into being at the start, who gave birth to the sun and who created Atum. From there on the rest of the cosmos is developed. But there are some twists to the story in which the eight divinities of the Ogdoad are thought to jointly have created what is known as the “cosmic egg” out of the primeval waters (*Nun*). This egg was invisible as it was created already before the sun came into being. From this egg, according to some sources, the bird of light, an aspect of the sun-god, burst. Other sources say that the egg was filled with air, the association of the elemental couple of Amun and Amaunet. According to the Coffin Texts, this is the first act of creation:

O Atum give me this sweet air which is your nostrils

for I am this egg which is in the Great Cackler,

I am the guardian of this great prop which separates
the earth from the sky.

If I live, it will live; if I grow old, it will grow old;

if I breathe the air, it will breathe the air.

I am he who splits iron, I have gone round about the egg,

(even I) the Lord of Tomorrow.⁷

In another version of this myth, the egg is laid by a goose, the Primeval Goose, or the *Gengen Wer*, with which Amun was associated as the creator. The goose is thought to carry the egg out of which creation comes. This myth is only given in fragments, but obviously it states that the sun in the form of a bird came out of the egg that the Primeval Goose laid in the waters of creation. It is also a form of Amun in his creator-god aspect.

The act of the creation, as performed by the Ogdoad, takes this basic chronological order:

1. The Ogdoad created existence in the form of the Primeval Mound or in the form of the cosmic egg.
2. The cosmic egg was created by the Primeval Goose.
3. The cosmic egg held air, or
4. The cosmic egg held a bird.
5. And the bird was a form of the sun.

To sum it all up, all forms of initial creation happened in the darkness of the primeval waters. Creation was circular, as was the egg. Birth led to decline-death-rebirth-renewal of the cyclic existence. The significance of all this is that some things existed before existence. One of these in preexistence was *Nun*. Another was primeval beings such as frogs and snakes, frogs being associated with fertility, snakes being associated with circularity and rebirth (that is, they shed their old skin). The first creator-

god is created out of *Nun* by some interaction between all these primeval creatures. Then the creator-god creates the rest of the cosmos.

These are the things Moses would have experienced in his religious training, growing up in the royal courts of Egypt. But how are they applicable to our study of the Nephilim, and why are these backdrops important to their study? Because the setting of a solid foundation is critical to an examination of the words he wrote in the Book of Genesis. As I stated earlier, it is important to sludge through some of what seems to be mundane history in order to understand why certain things were said in certain ways. Understanding what motivated Moses to write the things he did is an all-important step to understanding the *objectives* of the things he wrote about.

Let's look at how the Egyptian myth of creation was a foundation for what Moses wrote in the Book of Genesis.

Moses the Heretic

A great source for this examination of the influences on the writing of Moses are the writings of Irenaeus, a second-century Bishop of Lugdunum in Gaul, then a part of the Roman Empire (now Lyons, France). He was an early church father and apologist, and his writings were formative in the early development of Christian theology, which at the time was indistinguishable from Catholic theology. Irenaeus's best-known book, *Adversus Haereses*, or *Against Heresies*, was written around 180 CE, and is a detailed attack on Gnosticism, which was at the time considered to be a serious threat to the Church.⁸ As one of the first great Christian theologians, Irenaeus emphasized the traditional elements in the church, especially the episcopate, scripture, and tradition. Irenaeus wrote that the only way for Christians to retain unity was to humbly accept a single doctrinal authority, and that was the episcopal councils in union with the bishop of Rome. Against the Gnostics, who said that they possessed a secret oral tradition from Jesus himself, Irenaeus maintained that the bishops in different cities

are known as far back as the Apostles, and none of *them* were Gnostics. He also maintained that the bishops provided the only “safe guide to the interpretation of Scripture.” His writings, with those of Clement and Ignatius, are taken to hint at papal primacy—the infallible word of the pope in all matters ecclesiastical and scriptural. Irenaeus is the earliest witness to recognition of the canonical character of all four gospels, and is really the precursor to the Constantinian Councils that established canonical rules for the bible.

The Gnostics claimed to possess the “hidden mysteries” as relayed to them by Jesus Christ himself. And according to their “heretical” teachings, Moses constructed the entirety of the Genesis account of creation on his early influence in Egyptian teachings of the Ogdoad. Irenaeus sets about in his writings to present and dissemble the writings of the Gnostics regarding Moses and creation, first referring to them as the development of “mighty fictions.”⁹

According to Irenaeus, Moses followed the pattern of the Ogdoad in the fashion in which he wrote the account of creation. This can get a little sticky, so stay with me here....

At the beginning of Moses’ account of creation in the Book of Genesis, he starts out in verse one of Genesis chapter one, by saying that “In the beginning, God created the heavens and the earth” (Genesis 1:1). And by creating a numerical number of four elements to the first statement of creation—God, created, heavens, earth—Moses was establishing the first *Tetrad* (grouping of four) of the Gnostics and hailing back to the initial four elements of the four god couples of the Egyptian Ogdoad. See where this is going, now? Fascinating stuff! Read on....

Moses went on in his creation account by stating that the creative act was invisible and hidden nature—a reference to the “invisible egg” of creation; a visible physical creation birthing from an invisible spiritual dimension: “Now the earth was invisible and unformed” (Genesis 1:2). Then, by

naming an abyss and darkness, in which were also water, and the Spirit moving upon the water, Moses is referring to the second *Tetrad* that births out of the first: “invisible, unformed, Spirit, moved.”

Then, proceeding to mention the Gnostic *Decad*, Moses names light, day, night, the firmament, the evening, the morning, dry land, sea, plants, and, in the 10th place, trees all as a part of the initial creative act. Thus, by means of these 10 names, he indicated the 10 *Æons* of the Gnostic structure, again based on the Egyptian Ogdoad.

Moses then reiterates the power of the Gnostic *Duodecad* and names the sun, moon, stars, seasons, years, whales, fishes, reptiles, birds, quadrupeds, wild beasts, and, after all these, in the 12th place, man. In this, the Gnostics taught that the *Triacontad* (the Triacontad (30) exist in a tripartite division of an Ogdoad (8), Decad (10), and Duodecad (12)) was spoken of through Moses by the Spirit. Further, man was also being formed after the image of the power above, had in himself that ability that flows from the one source: the invisible force. This ability was seated in the region of the brain, from which four faculties proceed, after the image of the Tetrad above, and these are called sight, hearing, smell, and taste. Moses also hails to the Ogdoad in stating that man has four sets of two: two eyes, two nostrils, two ears, and two senses of taste: bitter and sweet.

Moses continues on with his Ogdoad construct in that the sun was created on day four; the tented courts of the Tabernacle were made of fine linen, blue, purple, and scarlet. Again, the long robe of the priest falling over his feet, was adorned with four rows of precious stones. Moses also shows the influence of the Ogdoad, again, in that man was formed on the eighth day, his earthly part was formed on the sixth day, but his fleshly part on the eighth. Multiples of four.

And then Moses states that the ark of Noah was 30 cubits high—again the Tricontad—and that eight persons were saved inside most clearly indicates the Ogdoad, which brings salvation.

Now, for the record, I know very little about Gnosticism and how it works. However, it appears that they at least believed that Moses was writing in multiples that revealed a heavy influence of the teaching of Egyptian Ogdoad creation.

Why Is Moses Important to the Nephilim?

The place we draw our primary source for the Hebrew word, *Nephilim* is in a book authored by Moses, a historical character drenched in the waters of Judeo-Christian, biblical tradition. In many circles of non-religious thought, this sinks Moses deep into the pond of religious mythology, where even his existence as a real person falls under the voluminous waves of skeptical attack. So, having even a brief understanding of his history and a “lite” touch on the probable history surrounding his existence and interaction with the people living in the known historical courts of Egypt lends some credence to the things he is said to have traditionally written.

When there is scholarly controversy even over the lives and deeds of royal Egyptian figures who are established in the historical record, how can we even begin to establish the credible existence of someone who by mention of his name alone, casts him in the shadowy light of religious mythology? Moses’ presence in established Egyptian history is, for all practical purposes, anonymous. So it is ultimately important, in researching works that are traditionally held to be authored by him, to establish who he was, when he lived, what he experienced, and from where he drew his foundational abilities and philosophies, in order to lend some modicum of concrete foundation for the things about which he wrote.

And I believe I have accomplished that goal in the preceding words. Defy the auto-psychological response to discount anything that goads you to offhandedly dismiss something simply because it is entrenched in religious

or mysterious belief systems, and open your eyes to the reality that even religious writers with hugely miraculous events ascribed to them, have their place in real history.

Moses wrote the books of the Law of the Hebrews; there is no question in my mind. He penned the passage in the Book of Genesis regarding the Nephilim, though, I believe, as an abridged retelling of already widely accepted events sourced in already-ancient texts of his day in the 15th century BCE. His later mention of the Nephilim, the descendants of Anak, who the spies said were living in the land of Cana'an, may have been a later edit by Moses or his successor, Joshua, but the passage still reveals hints and clues as to the existence of these beings. Moses relied heavily on the original accounts of Enoch (as rewritten after the Babylonian captivity in the third century BCE) and on his early religious education as a “son of the pharaoh” in 18th Dynasty Egypt.

A final thought on Moses, as a result of my 30 years of study, research, and contemplation on this remarkable man, is that he was establishing himself as the “Pharaoh-God” of the Israelites. Everything he had learned in the royal courts, he incorporated into establishing his leadership. His “talks with God” gave him the seal of Divine kinship and approval before the people—something that most leaders of coups or rebellions strive very hard to accomplish. His word was law. And his kingly arrogance could only have found its roots in the leadership styles and qualities he learned from the best, the Thutmoses/Hatshepsut family of Egyptian monarchs.

Of all this, he gave us the Nephilim, though borrowed from other faith writings of his day, blended with the gods of Egypt.

chapter 4

The Pan-Cultural Effect

In 1872, George Smith, pioneering English Assyriologist and noted archaeologist and researcher with the British Museum, laboriously reconstructed the puzzle-piece-like fragments of Babylonian tablets dating to 1700 BCE found at excavations of the city of Ninevah. One night, Smith came across a large fragment with only one side legible. He was stunned to read the story of a man who built an ark to escape a devastating flood, who brought on board animals of all types, who sent out birds to see if the water had receded. If you are thinking that Smith found an ancient tablet recounting the flood of Noah, you would be incorrect. Smith had stumbled across one chapter of the much longer, long forgotten tale, of the *Epic of Gilgamesh*,¹ a “mirrored” account of the Noah and the Ark story found in the Book of Genesis. Only the account of Gilgamesh had a completely different cast of characters and a recounting of other events not found in the Noah story.

In the Babylonian Epic of Gilgamesh, toward the end of the *He Who Saw the Deep* version by Sîn-lēqi-unninni,² there are references to the great flood (Tablet XI). Many scholars believe that the flood myth of Gilgamesh was added to Tablet XI in the “standard version” of the *Gilgamesh Epic* by an editor who plagiarized the flood story from the *Epic of Atrahasis*.³ A short reference to the flood myth is also mentioned in the much older Sumerian Gilgamesh poems, from which the later Babylonian versions drew much of their inspiration and subject matter. This was a late addition to the Gilgamesh cycle, largely paraphrased or copied verbatim from the *Epic of Atrahasis*.⁴ In this account, the hero Gilgamesh, seeking immortality, searches out Utnapishtim in Dilmun, a kind of paradise on earth. Utnapishtim tells Gilgamesh how Ea (equivalent of the Sumerian

Enki) warned him of the gods' plan to destroy all life by means of a great flood. Utnapishtim then passes on instructions he had been given on how to build an enormous barge-like vessel in which he could save his family, his friends, and his wealth and cattle. After the deluge subsides, the gods repented of their action and granted immortality to Utnapishtim and his wife.

Short of historical and comparative religious and mythological research, there is no scientific methodology that can be applied to a study of the Nephilim and the disastrous deluge that killed a world of living beings as a result. You can't ring up a spirit, angel, demon, or some other form of extra-terrestrial being on the telephone, lure it into a laboratory and coax it to have sex with a human woman for the purposes of observing conception and birth of offspring. There is no means to have the ability to hypothesize, study, and repeat the procedure to gain quantifiable data. You can, however, look to the ancient annals. There is a certain scientific methodology at play when you consider that nearly every culture of the ancient world has its version of these phenomena as mentioned in the Books of Genesis and Enoch.

Including the Genesis account of Noah's Flood, in which we have the introduction of the Sons of God and their mixed-blood offspring, there are more than 600 ancient tribal legends from around the world giving account of the global deluge that consumed the antediluvial (pre-flood) world. And every major civilization of the ancient world has its corresponding mythological gods, demigods, and star children that all seem to have common source points. Despite mainstream anthropological explanations of these ancient accounts as referring less to a global flood than localized rivers over-spilling their banks, nearly all of the ancient tribal legends comprising the 600 tales speak of a "world covering" flood. And most of those tribal histories mention the intercourse between spirit beings and human women as partial cause for a deity to send flood waters to wipe them out.

The various accounts of a great, ancient flood come from hundreds of tribes in Europe, Asia, the Near East, Africa, Australia, the Pacific islands, and the Americas. To enlist them all here would require a volume of its own, so suffice it to say that these various tales are found not only in what we would consider the major, well-known cultures of antiquity, such as Greek, Roman, Celtic, Egyptian, and Middle Eastern, but also from tribes such as the Masai, Yoruba, and Mandingo of Africa; the Vogel, Samoyed, Yenisey Ostyak, Tibel, Lepcha, Sagaiye, Ifugayo, Bahnar, and Kammu tribes of Asia; the Australian tribes of Maung, Gunwinggu, Gumaidje, and Manger; North America's Inuit, Kwakiutl, Kootenay, Cherokee, Mandan, Choctaw, Navajo, and Lakota; the Tarascan, Yaqui, Tlaxcalan, Chol, Toltec, and Maya of Central America; and the South American Acawai, Yaruro, Arawak, Murato, Toba, and Selk'nam. The list is so vast that even the scant few shown here are barely the tip of the iceberg.

All this illustrates is that every culture, every tribal system, every clan, region, city-state, and religion had its version of the Genesis Flood and the events surrounding its purpose, from the utilitarian to the obscurely mythological.

Although I list here only a few of the cultural variants on the flood story, take note of how most of them reference the gods, giants, and anger of a deity against the corrupt and sinful inhabitants of the earth.

Lithuanian

From his heavenly window, the supreme god Pramzimas saw nothing but corruption, war, and injustice among mankind. He sent two giants, Wandu and Wejas (water and wind), to destroy the earth. After 20 days and nights, little was left. Pramzimas looked to see the progress. He happened to be eating nuts at the time, and he threw down the shells. One happened to land on the peak of the tallest mountain, where some people and animals had sought refuge. Everybody climbed in and survived the flood floating in the

nutshell. Pramzimas's wrath abated, and he ordered the wind and water to end their devastation. The people left the nutshell and dispersed, except for one elderly couple who stayed where they landed. To comfort them, Pramzimas sent the rainbow and advised them to jump over the bones of the earth nine times. They did so, and up sprang nine other couples, from which the nine Lithuanian tribes descended.⁵

Celtic

Heaven and Earth were great giants. Heaven lay upon the Earth so that their children were crowded between them, and the children and their mother were unhappy in the darkness. The boldest of the sons led his brothers in cutting up Heaven into many pieces. From his skull they made the firmament. His spilling blood caused a great flood that killed all humans except a single pair, who were saved in a ship made by a beneficent Titan. The waters settled in hollows to become the oceans. The son who led in the mutilation of Heaven was a Titan and became their king, but the Titans and gods hated each other, and the king titan was driven from his throne by his son, who was born a god. That Titan at last went to the land of the departed. The Titan who built the ship, whom some consider to be the same as the king Titan, went there also.⁶

Roman

Jupiter, angered at the evil ways of humanity, resolved to destroy it. He was about to set the earth to burning, but considered the possibility that the flames might set heaven itself afire, so he decided to flood the earth instead. With Neptune's help, he caused storm and earthquake to flood everything but the summit of Parnassus, where Deucalion and his wife Pyrrha came by boat and found refuge. Recognizing their piety, Jupiter let them live and withdrew the flood. Deucalion and Pyrrha, at the advice of an oracle,

repopulated the world by throwing “your mother’s bones” (stones) behind them; each stone became a person.⁷

Scandanavian

Oden, Vili, and Ve fought and slew the great ice giant Ymir, and icy water from his wounds drowned most of the Rime Giants. The giant Bergelmir escaped with his wife and children on a boat made from a hollowed tree trunk. From them rose the race of frost ogres. Ymir’s body became the world we live on. His blood became the oceans.⁸

Chaldean

According to accounts attributed to the great Babylonian priest-historian Berosus (whose writings about Oannes we will see in [Chapter 5](#)), the antediluvians were giants who became impious and depraved, except one among them who revered the gods and was wise and prudent. His name was Noa, and he dwelt in Syria with his three sons Sem, Japet, Chem, and their wives Tidea, Pandora, Noela, and Noegla. From the stars, he foresaw destruction, and he began building an ark. Seventy-eight years after he began building, the oceans, inland seas, and rivers burst forth from beneath, attended by many days of violent rain. The waters overflowed all the mountains, and the human race was drowned except Noa and his family who survived on his great boat, which came to rest at last on the top of the Gendyaean Mountain. According to legend, remnants of the enormous boat still remain, which men take bitumen from to make charms against evil.⁹



The list of cross-cultural accounts of the flood and the giants could fill volumes of books, so I merely noted a handful to illustrate the point that nearly every culture has its own version of the Flood of Noah and the elements that brought on the great deluge. Again, the absence of recorded history becomes a near-irrelevancy when stacked against the innumerable cultural accounts that all seem to hail back to a singular common event. This is by no means the final word on the matter, but merely a start in sifting through the many mythological evidences that seem to point to a great historic event.

As mentioned, there are many cultural references to “giants” and “visitors from the sky,” whom most tales refer to as angels, demons, or spirit beings. These “spirits who descended” are found in nearly every account of the ancient deluge, and are found in innumerable ancient accounts such as the Anaaye (Diné/Navajo), the Nunhyunuwi (Cherokee), the Cawr (Welsh), the Dev (Turkish), the Velikan (Russian), the Yak (Thai), the Rephaim (Hebrew), the Famangomadan (Spanish), the Wrnach (Welsh), Fomorians (Celtic), Dasa Maha Yodayo (Sri Lanka), the Puntan (Micronesia), the Azrail (Armenian), the Gigantes (Greek), and many, many others.

The notion that the accounts of the Nephilim reached every culture of the world is not as far-fetched as we might think. Though the story of the descent of the Watchers to the top of Mount Hermon is the Hebrew version, other cultural mythologies have their own variations on the tale. Whether borrowed and incorporated into their own mythologies and legends, or experienced firsthand by their own ancient inhabitants, it is clear that the Nephilim in one form or another affected the populations of nearly all ancient cultures, exponentially spreading around the globe.

But where did the Nephilim come from, in the first place?

chapter 5

The Watchers

“I ought to be thy Adam, but I am rather the fallen angel...”

—The Creature, from Mary Shelley’s *Frankenstein*

“The desire of excessive power caused the angels to fall; the desire of knowledge caused men to fall.”

—Francis Bacon

Enoch, a book found among the Dead Sea Scrolls, called them “The Watchers,” these non-earthly beings who seemed to hold some sort of superior capacity over the inhabitants of the earth. The writer of 1 Enoch even subtitles a section of the book, “The Book of the Watchers”: 1 Enoch 6-36. In the Aramaic the Watchers are the Irin, which is translated as “angel” (Greek *angelos*; Coptic *malah*) in the Greek and Ethiopian translations, although the commonly used Aramaic term for angel, *malakha*, never appears in the Book of Enoch, which is written in Aramaic. Irin is a word also found in the Old Testament’s historical/prophetic Book of Daniel, where three times throughout the book the author links them directly to God’s holy angels. It is in the Book of Daniel that the great Babylonian King Nebuchadnezzar falls into a period of madness upon seeing a “Watcher, a holy one (singular) come down from heaven” and appear to him in a dream and prophesy. The singular form of the word in this context suggests that “a Watcher” and “a Holy One” are two different titles for the same entity or caste of entities.

In the Book of Daniel, King Nebuchadnezzar goes on to describe the message delivered to him in his dream, wherein he is told that he will be reduced to madness and shall crawl upon the ground as a beast, eating grass, and that this divinely ordered punishment is “by the decree of the Watchers, and the demand by the word of the holy ones” in order that “the living may know that the Most High rules in the kingdom of men.” Nebuchadnezzar then falls into an undefined period of mental illness and temporal insanity after which, when he comes back to his full senses, he states:

“34 At the end of that time, I, Nebuchadnezzar, raised my eyes toward heaven, and my sanity was restored. Then I praised the Most High; I honored and glorified him who lives forever. His dominion is an eternal dominion; his kingdom endures from generation to generation. 35 All the peoples of the earth are regarded as nothing. He does as he pleases with the powers of heaven and the peoples of the earth. No one can hold back his hand or say to him: ‘What have you done?’ 36 At the same time that my sanity was restored, my honor and splendor were returned to me for the glory of my kingdom. My advisers and nobles sought me out, and I was restored to my throne and became even greater than before. 37 Now I, Nebuchadnezzar, praise and exalt and glorify the King of heaven, because everything he does is right and all his ways are just. And those who walk in pride he is able to humble.”

(Daniel 4:34-37)

It appears that the Watchers had made their point. And it is also clearly indicated by this passage that the Watchers themselves existed long after the rebellion of Shamyaza and his followers on Mount Hermon, and were a caste who, in their non-rebellious station, were emissaries of God or of a much higher, superior being. If nothing else, it is abundantly clear that the Watchers are here in this passage again established as being part of a hierarchy who answered to a superior authority.

In the Book of Enoch, the Watchers are angels who have been dispatched or assigned to the earth to “watch over” its inhabitants, but in the process of conducting their duties, they become enamored with human women. The passage in Genesis says they “lusted” after the women of the earth, which results in one *en masse* act of rebellion in which they follow the prodding of their leader, Shamyaza, and illicitly instruct human beings in all types of arts and practices not yet naturally developed by humans. And they, of course, enter into intimate relations and sexual procreative activity with the inferior humans. The draw for these beings to interact and have intercourse with human women must have been either a very strong urge, if they indeed were angelic or superior in nature, or it was the act of beings who had a definitive purpose and goal of interbreeding.

Whether they were divinely appointed emissaries part of an orderly caste of angels that held responsibility over mankind, or a race of infiltrators perceived by the earth’s population as gods and spirit beings, they seemingly had the ability to choose and impregnate whomever they wished. And having had such ability clearly indicates that they were much higher on the cosmic food chain than the humans they were able to subjugate and influence at whim. The great theological question looms around whether or not they were part of the biblical accounts of fallen angels or only labeled as such in the perception of those who first beheld and intercoured with them.

After their offspring, the Nephilim, are conceived, the Watchers carry on a systematic instruction of humans in the arts of herbology, cosmetics, mirrors, weaponry, sorcery, and other technical advances that would otherwise have taken a much longer period of time for humans to develop on their own. It gives humanity a foisted-upon boost that would not otherwise have happened in such a short period of time. This ongoing teaching was carried out by Shamyaza and the 200 Watchers who were there dwelling among the humans along with him.

There are 20 leaders of the Watchers mentioned in the Book of Enoch:

“7 And these are the names of their leaders: Samlazaz, their leader, Araklba, Rameel, Kokablel, Tamlel, Ramlel, Danel, Ezeqeel, Baraqijal, 8 Asael, Armaros, Batarel, Ananel, Zaqlel, Samsapeel, Satarel, Turel, Jomjael, Sariel. These are their chiefs of tens.”

(1 Enoch—The Book of the Watchers 6: 7-8

According to the Book of Enoch, the Watchers who took wives, had sexual intercourse with them, producing offspring, and taught forbidden knowledge became part of the caste of fallen angels. Enoch lists their leaders by specific names. And take specific note of how many of these beings bear the name of their maker, Elohim, denoted by the “El” at the end of the name (Other such great archangels who bore the name of God, ranking them as “Sons of God [bene haElohim] are Gabriel, Michael, and Raphael, but they were not part of the fallen caste.):

Araqiel

(also Arakiel, Araquel, Araciel, Arqael, Sarquael, Arkiel, Arkas) taught humans the signs of the earth. However, in the Sibylline Oracles, Araquel is referred to not as a fallen angel, or Watcher, but as one of the five angels who lead the souls of men to judgement, the other four being Ramiel, Uriel, Samiel, and Azazel.

Armaros

(also Amaros) in 1 Enoch taught men the resolving of enchantments and the casting of spells.

Azazel

taught men to make knives, swords, and shields, and how to devise ornaments and cosmetics.

- | | |
|------------------|--|
| Baraqel | (Baraqiel) taught men astrology and the divining of the stars. |
| Bezaliel | is also mentioned in 1 Enoch, but is left out of most translations due to damaged manuscripts and problematic transmission of the text. |
| Chazaqiel | (sometimes Ezeqeel) taught men the signs of the clouds, the art and science of meteorology, and the prognostication of weather. |
| Gadriel | also taught the art of cosmetics. |
| Kokabiel | (also Kakabel, Kochbiel, Kokbiel, Kabaiel, and Kochab) is a high-ranking, holy angel, but, in general apocryphal lore and also in 1 Enoch, he is a fallen Watcher, resident of nether realms, and commands 365,000 surrogate spirits to do his bidding. Among other duties, he instructs his fellows in astrology. |
| Penemuel | taught mankind the art of writing with ink and paper, and taught “the children of men the bitter and the sweet and the secrets of wisdom. |
| Sariel | (also Suriel) taught mankind about the courses of the moon and tidal influences, at one |

time regarded as forbidden knowledge.

Shamyaza

(also Shemyazaz, Shamazya, Semiaza, Shemhazi, Semyaza, and Amezyarak) is one of the leaders of the fall from heaven, and the instigator of the pact to cohabit with human women.

Shamsiel

once a guardian of Eden, served as one of the two chief aides to the archangel Uriel (the other aide being Hasdiel) when Uriel bore his standard into battle, and is the head of 365 legions of angels and also crowns prayers, accompanying them to the fifth heaven. He is referred to as one of the Watchers. He is a fallen angel who teaches humanity the signs of the sun.

“1 ‘And all the others together with them took unto themselves wives, and each chose for himself one, and they began to go in unto them and to defile themselves with them, and they taught them charms 2 and enchantments, and the cutting of roots, and made them acquainted with plants. And they 3 became pregnant, and they bare great giants, whose height was three thousand ells: Who consumed 4 all the acquisitions of men. And when men could no longer sustain them, the giants turned against 5 them and devoured mankind. And they began to sin against birds, and beasts, and reptiles, and 6 fish, and to devour one another’s flesh, and drink the blood. Then the earth laid accusation against the lawless ones.”

(1 Enoch 7:1-6)

A Rebellion Against Heaven

So the Watchers, some 200 in number, swore an oath to one another on the slopes of Mount Hermon in northern Israel, making a pact to descend to the earth, take human form, and take wives from the daughters of men. Ignoring, for a moment, the obvious mythical, mystical aspect of angelic beings—and this seems such an inconsequential thing in current cultural mindset, where we no longer have great prohibitions against intermarriage among the races except in racially entrenched pockets of modern civilization—and one would think that this sort of inter-breeding on the part of (even mythological) characters is rather innocuous. There is almost a “who cares?” aura about it, until you consider the far reaching ramifications of the actions of the Watchers—especially if they are in any form true events that have been recorded. Just as we have “changed” the role of God as our civilized tendencies have evolved, we ascribe modern thinking to ancient prohibitions and deeds. Note what God said of himself to the prophet Amos in the pages of Old Testament scripture:

“7 This is what he showed me: behold, the Lord was standing beside a wall built with a plumb line, with a plumb line in his hand. 8 And the Lord said to me, ‘Amos, what do you see?’ And I said, ‘A plumb line.’ Then the Lord said, ‘Behold, I am setting a plumb line in the midst of my people Israel;

I will never again pass by them; 9 the high places of Isaac shall be made desolate, and the sanctuaries of Israel shall be laid waste, and I will rise against the house of Jeroboam with the sword.’”

(Amos 7:7-9)

In essence, God was calling himself the standard by which Israel needed to measure up. The plumb line falls straight and true due to the laws of gravity and nature. Anything that deviates from the plumb is considered by God to be “off the mark.” The pact made by the Watchers to impregnate human women constituted a rebellion against the laws of heaven that knocked the plumb completely off the wall. And, as we shall see in [Chapter](#)

8 (in the section entitled “The Assembly of the Sons of God”), their sin was against the supreme king of the Divine Council of the gods—a deed worthy of divine consequences. This links the Nephilim, “those who were cast down,” with the fallen angels of the “War in Heaven” described in The Book of Isaiah. In the passage, God is assuring Isaiah that their Babylonian oppressors will be brought down to size. The following passage speaks of the Babylonian king, but many have attributed this to the fall of Lucifer, even though the passage does not implicitly say that:

“12 How you have fallen from heaven,
morning star, son of the dawn!
You have been cast down to the earth,
you who once laid low the nations!
13 You said in your heart,
‘I will ascend to the heavens;
I will raise my throne
above the stars of God;
I will sit enthroned on the mount of assembly,
on the utmost heights of Mount Zaphon [one of the most
sacred mountains to the Cana'anites]
14 I will ascend above the tops of the clouds;
I will make myself like the Most High.’
15 But you are brought down to the realm of the dead,
to the depths of the pit.”

(Isaiah 14:12-15)

The trouble with many of these Old Testamental prophecies is that they seemingly start talking about one thing, but then click over, mid-sentence, into making spiritual word pictures of a completely different notion or event altogether. It’s rather like having a talk about your backyard birdfeeders over a cup of coffee with a friend, then watching his eyes turn to a fervent, glossy stare as he begins to speak to you about the “wings of the black raven spreading their shadow over your soul....” (This actually happened to me, once, so don’t laugh.) At any rate, God seems to lapse into prophetic mode while seemingly relating information about something completely

different—and usually without warning or notice. The casual reader of these prophetic passages of scripture would have to draw the conclusion that the passage is either complete in its thoughts about the king of Babylon, or that the God who delivered the message has a—and I mean no disrespect nor blasphemy by this—attention deficit disorder problem when transmitting hidden meanings in the midst of what is a completely different description altogether on the surface. Also interesting to note in this passage: The reference to the “mount of Assembly” here contains a veiled reference to the Divine Council.

“10 ‘Then they took wives, each choosing for himself, whom they began to approach, and with whom they cohabitated; teaching them sorcery, incantations... (and) all the secret things which are done in the heavens.’”

(1 Enoch 7:10)

This is the real sin of the Watchers laid bare. They shared “powerful forbidden secrets” with mankind, and as Enoch says, “*men were not born for this.*” As we saw, each of the leaders of the Watchers taught some specialized field of knowledge, such as astronomy, the manufacture of goods, the dying of textiles, the making and application of cosmetics, and so on. And certainly, although the teaching of such things as sorcery and astrology may have been viewed as ungodly and taboo at the time, despite these things having taken place long before Mosaic Law and written prohibitions, one of the Watchers, Penemuel, stands accused of something as simple as “teaching men to understand writing, and the use of ink and paper.” This seems to be a very out-of-place prohibition, for even Enoch himself is described as a “scribe of righteousness,” and is credited in the Muslim Qur'an with being the inventor of mathematics, writing, and astronomy.¹

Berossus of Babylon, a third-century BCE Hellenistic-era Babylonian writer² born near the beginning of Alexander the Great's reign, an astronomer and priest of Bel Marduk, speaks of the half-man or half-fish

god, Oannes, as having engaged in similar forms of activity as the Watchers. He would rise up out of the sea each morning and teach unknown arts and knowledges, only without the inherent prohibition of those said knowledges being forbidden by a superior deity or set of theological rules. So, setting aside the Watchers' acts of cohabitation with and impregnation of human women, the Book of Enoch tells us that the teaching of forbidden knowledge to humanity seems to be the overt crime committed by the Watchers. If you read between the lines and root out the unwritten subtext of the book, it would almost seem as if the hidden message is that "knowledge begets evil."³ Like the Amish and the Pennsylvania Dutch who shun technological advance, believing it distracts them from a closer walk with God and is the source of all the world's sins and woes, the author of the Book of Enoch is telling us that "higher understanding" was contrary to primeval man's true nature, and resulted inevitably in corruption, judgment, and eventual punishment. It's like handing a child a loaded gun: He may have some concept of what the thing does, but he can create a world of havoc and tragedy when wielding it on his own.

But, of course, we have the opposite side of the argument from more conservative, evangelical theologians who, if they even broach the topic of the Watchers and the Nephilim at all, will quickly point out how they believe these beings were part of the Luciferian fall after the War in Heaven. And, as if God had no control over his creation, these minions of Lucifer set about a campaign to infiltrate the human bloodline and thereby infect the pure blood of the human race, leaving no possibility for the pure human bloodline of the prophesied Messiah to ever take hold. The great sin, then, of the Watchers was not just the teaching of ancient, forbidden wisdom, but an all-out assault on the one and only begotten Son of God, who had not yet been conceived. However, were this the stratagem incorporated by the fallen demonic minions of Satan, then they waited seven long generations to begin their tactical.

Watcher Psych 101

The Book of Enoch is more of an accurate record of how the Watchers were *perceived* within a framework of antediluvian worship of God than it is a reflection of who the Watchers really *were* or what they really *did*. In these accounts of the “fallen” caste of Watchers, we are given very little insight as to what their intent was, or into their personalities or their motivations. We only know that they lusted, sought out, and carried through with a plan that they were convinced was something they should carry out, but that would also bring down the wrath of God on their heads. This is why Shamyaza was second-guessing his decision, and why he looked pleadingly to the others of his kind to bolster him in his decision. They, in response, joined in with him and set the pact in concrete. Their devilish intent and malicious bloodplay are ascribed later by scholars and researchers who parse the texts with ecclesiastical intent, or who are merely disingenuous with the context when it falls outside their theological or denominational beliefs. Never once in the passages about the Watchers does it say they descended with intent to thwart the bloodlines of the coming Messiah, but that very sin has been ascribed to them by later interpreters of the text. It is axiomatic that people have an innate fear and mistrust of those whom they perceive as knowing more than they do, and most certainly of those who wield a greater power over them. It is also a given (just ask Machiavelli) that people fear, resist, and rise against any brand of change that accompanies new knowledge and new ideas. This is precisely what the Watchers brought to the ancients—change, revolutionary and evolutionary concepts, and knowledge; the sweet, fruity filling of forbidden knowledge baked within the pie crust of taboo and prohibition.

But the corruption seems to go far beyond the mere transmission of knowledge and wisdom. The offspring of the Watchers were guilty of grievous crimes against mankind that Enoch equates to the “whole earth being filled with blood,” and the souls of those who perished at their hands crying in some dreadful ghostly complaint to gain the attentions—if not the vengeance—of God.

“5 Thou hast seen what Azazyel has done, how he has taught every species of iniquity upon earth, and has disclosed to the world all the secret things which are done in the heavens. 6 Shamyaza also has

taught sorcery, to whom thou hast given authority over those who are associated with him. They have gone together to the daughters of men; have lain with them; have become polluted; 7 And have discovered crimes to them. 8 The women likewise have brought forth giants. 9 Thus has the whole earth been filled with blood and with iniquity.

10 And now behold the souls of those who are dead, cry out.

11 And complain even to the gate of heaven.

12 Their groaning ascends; nor can they escape from the unrighteousness which is committed on earth. Thou knowest all things, before they exist. 13 Thou knowest these things, and what has been done by them; yet thou dost not speak to us. 14 What on account of these things ought we to do to them?"

(1 Enoch 9:5-14)

Naturalness of awareness is synonymous with wisdom—true wisdom. And true wisdom holds a true power, not to oppress or manipulate, but to enlighten and illuminate; it's a power that is innate in every single being. In ancient times, however, wisdom was synonymous with power, and power especially for those who did not possess it was more often than not perceived to be synonymous with *oppression*.⁴ Indeed, the Nephilim were accused of such when it was written:

"12 All the earth has been corrupted by the effects of the teaching of Azazyel. To him therefore ascribe the whole crime. 13 To Gabriel also the Lord said, Go to the biters, to the repro- bates, to the children of fornication; and destroy the children of fornication, the offspring of the Watchers, from among men; bring them forth, and excite them one against another. Let them perish by mutual slaughter, for length of days shall not be theirs.... 18 'Destroy all the souls addicted to dalliance, and the offspring of the Watchers, for they have tyrannized over mankind. 19 Let every oppressor perish from the face of the earth; 20 Let every evil work be destroyed...'"

(1 Enoch 10:12-13, 18-20)

As is common in apocalyptic Jewish texts, as well as mythological tales from around the world, the oppressors in the tales are ascribed attributes of enormously epic proportion. In the Book of Enoch, the offspring of the Watchers, the Nephilim, are described as a race of giants who committed acts against both mankind and nature to monstrous, mythic degrees:

“11 Then they took wives, each choosing for himself, whom they began to approach, and with whom they cohabited; teaching them sorcery, incantations, and the dividing of roots and trees. 11 And the women conceiving brought forth giants, 12 Whose stature was each three hundred cubits. These devoured all which the labor of men produced; until it became impossible to feed them; 13 When they turned themselves against men, in order to devour them; 14 And began to injure birds, beasts, reptiles, and fishes, to eat their flesh one after another, and to drink their blood.”

(1 Enoch 7:11-14)

They consumed birds and fish, “devouring their flesh one after another and drinking their blood.” This resembles the highly exaggerated claim of a peasant tenant who watches his feudal overloads feast on fatted calves and flambéed fowl while he and his family subsist on the broth of roots and bark, with a side helping of gruel—and then he makes up horrible stories about it to exaggerate his classist angst. However, most major religions and countless legends and mythologies speak of a time when giants walked the Earth. Why would diverse and widely separated traditions all make the same outrageous claims unless it had some basis in truth? All myth and legend have at their primordial headwaters some kernel of fact and truth. And if that truth was not there at the core, what are the odds that all these traditions could concoct such similar stories?

In the Watchers we see an emerging prototype of *Satan*, the adversary, deciever, accuser, liar. We can also see a variation on the theme of Original Sin. Just as with Eve and the forbidden fruit, the sin of the Watchers involved a specific combination of infractions, having to do with both

disobedience and knowledge. And in a very real sense, Cain, the firstborn son of Adam and Eve, became the first of the Nephilim.

If one were to look behind the mythic elements of the story of the Watchers, there are many various historical events that could come to the forefront in ways to explain the spread of such incredible tales. But what ought to intrigue us beyond all fanciful stories is the persistence of the myth itself; the ongoing story of a race of gods and their descendants, who somehow come to be perceived as demonic.

Where Their Feet Hit the Ground

The Watchers. They first appear on the scene in Sumer. *Shumer*, it seems, literally means the “land of the Watchers.” For American author Zecharia Sitchin, they are alien beings whose specific task is to orbit the earth, monitoring events on earth. For Sitchin, the Watchers are not a race or a species; they are merely a job specification. Their colleagues had abandoned their ships and had landed on Earth—they continued to orbit the Earth. Those who did land, either mated or genetically engineered mankind into its present form. As a consequence, mankind worshipped the Watchers as gods.

Going a step further back, however, It is recorded in the Book of Enoch that these so-called “Watchers” descended first to the slopes and foothills of Mount Hermon (*Ha Hermon* in Hebrew), also known as *Jabal el-Shaykh* in Aramaic, meaning, “Mountain of the Chief.” The mountain is actually a cluster of mountains made up of three distinct summits that straddle the current-day border between Lebanon and Syria in the highly political, much-disputed Golan Heights region of northern Israel. To set it in more modern context, it was this mountain that exchanged hands back-and-forth between Israel and Syria during the Six Day War of 1967 and the Yom Kippur War of 1973. On this mountain it is said the Watchers first

descended to the earth and made their pact to cohabit with human women and to teach “forbidden” skills to mankind.



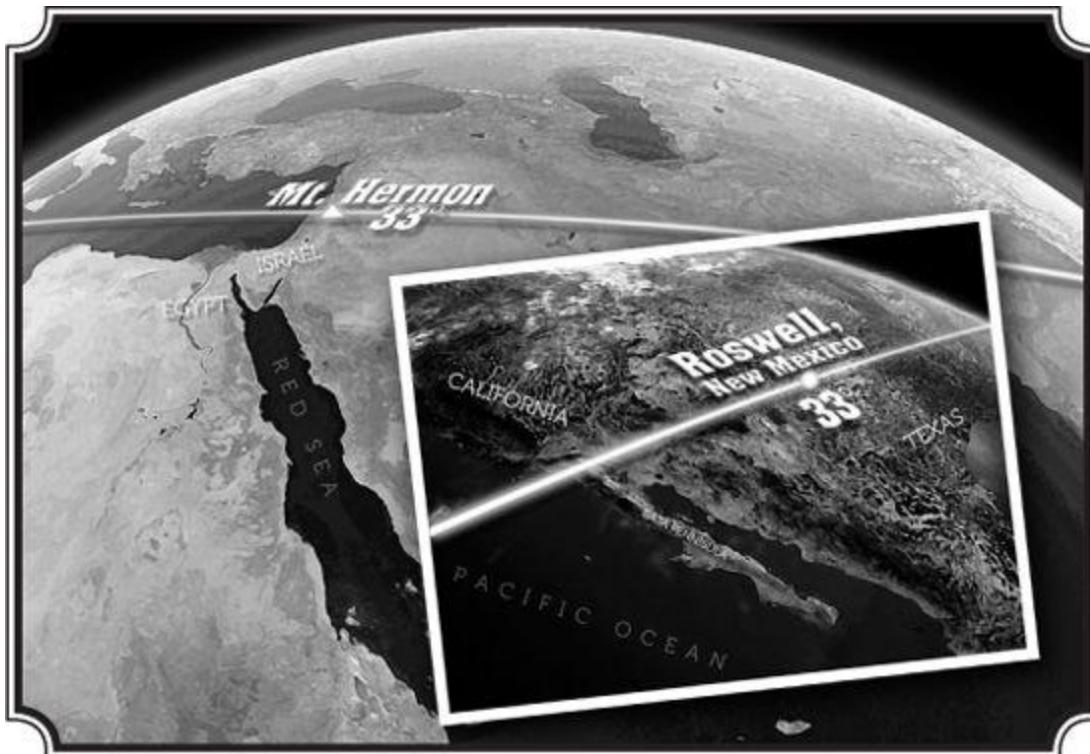
Mt. Hermon, Golan Heights, Israel/Syria/Lebanon, where the Watchers descended to the earth.

Photo is licensed under Wikipedia Creative Commons.

In the occult science of Numerology, the number 33 represents the ultimate attainment of consciousness. Keeping that in mind, it is very interesting to note that the geographic location of Mount Hermon, the very place where the Watchers are said to have descended to the earthly plane, lies on the 33rd parallel, which is a latitude of 33° north of the equator. If you trace the 33rd parallel to the exact geographic global opposite from Mount Hermon, you will find yourself directly on top of the most controversially mythic place in current ufological history: Roswell, New Mexico. Mount Hermon, where the Watchers descended to the earth, and Roswell, New Mexico, are exact polar opposites on the same 33rd degree north latitude. The global coordinates of Mount Hermon and the Roswell crash site are no accident, and speak to some deeper, perhaps secret significance.

“If aliens used the thirty-third latitudinal line as a weigh point—a landing point for planet earth, what biblical people saw thousands and thousands of years ago on Mount Hermon, were entities that came down from the sky. They called them angels.”

Bill Birnes, *Ancient Aliens*,
UFO Magazine, *UFO Hunters*⁵



Two significant sites on the 33rd parallel north. Mt. Hermon, Israel, and the highly controversial Roswell, New Mexico, UFO crash site are exact geo-global opposites.

Photo courtesy of the author. Copyright 2011.

Could the Watchers who descended to the slopes of Mount Hermon thousands of years ago, and the UFOs that reportedly crashed at Roswell in 1947 be from the same extra-terrestrial race? If these two events spanning the entirety of recorded human history indeed involve alien races, then they have been with us for the long haul, since the beginning of time. And it begs the question of whether or not they were left behind to monitor us, or to help establish and guide our civilizations and culture. And the even bigger question: Are they still among us today?

Some Christian ufologists, such as Chuck Missler, believe that the “Sons of God” in Genesis 6:2 are actually extra-terrestrials or grey aliens,⁶ and that these beings are actually fallen angels or demons that have appeared during the antediluvian times in order to genetically alter the human race, and to pollute the bloodline of Jesus.⁷ Thus, the Nephilim would be the hybrid race of these beings in this view.

Sumer

The land of “Shumer,” or Sumer, “Shinar” of the bible (literally, “Land of the Watchers” or “Land of the Bright Shining Ones”), as it has been identified in the Mesopotamia’s Fertile Crescent region, in modern-day Iraq, is the place where the Watchers and their offspring, the Nephilim, had their first great influence on human history. Or at least this is where they made their prehistoric, tangible mark on humanity, beyond their initial contact and intercourse.

On today’s map, the Land of Sumer lay roughly 400 miles east—as the crow flies—from the slopes of Mount Hermon, which is just a few miles northeast of Damascus. That seems like quite a distance to cover from the Watchers’ geographic touchdown on the planet to where they bore the greatest influence in mankind’s earliest of histories, but it is extremely important to take note of the region and all its connectivity to early biblical and Middle Eastern religious accounts.

For hundreds of years, we regarded Egypt as the world’s “oldest” civilization, but now the land of the pharaohs has been relegated to the periphery of the civilized world in the fourth and third millennia BCE. Despite the progress of archaeology and anthropology, we still know very little about the history of the peoples of the Mesopotamian region prior to 2500 BCE. And the Sumerians seemed to rise suddenly out of nowhere, predating Egyptian culture by at least 1,500-2,000 years.

In speaking of the Sumerian culture, Carl Sagan once remarked that we still have no clear perspective about their origins: “Their language is foreign; it shows no resemblance to Indo-European, Semitic or any other language. We can only map them by the actions of their successors, the Akkadians, who created a voluminous Sumerian-Akkadian dictionary.”⁸

The Sumerian culture of ancient Mesopotamia is the earliest human civilization known to contemporary science and the archaeological record, and Sumar’s sudden onset of civilized culture remained a mystery for many years despite representing an exponential quantum leap in humanity’s intellectual development. It all began about 6,000 years ago when the very first cuneiform writing was developed by the Sumerians to record a dramatic astronomical event: the visible star-burst of Vela X, a star that went supernova about 1,300 light years away from our solar system. It can still be seen today as a faintly flashing pulsar. Virtually overnight, in evolutionary terms, the Sumerians gave the world written language, the first fundamental character of which was the Sumerian symbol for the word *star*, commemorating the astronomical event. The cuneiform word was then linked to the symbol for “deity,” and the term *star god* was born.

In the blink of an eye, historically speaking, the Sumerians gave humanity written language when it had never before existed. The ancient Sumerians left behind, in the ruined mounds of their ancient cities, cuneiform tablets that listed everything from the spiritual form of worship to the mundane business receipts drawn up between merchants. The Sumerians, in their written language, gave us the first love song, the first prescription of pharmaceutical concoctions (all without any inclusion of magic or spirituality), the first school system, the first law code of jurisprudence, and the first parliament. And it all came out of nowhere, in the twinkling of a bursting supernova.

Why is this contextual to the Watchers? Because it was the Watchers who, according to the Book of Enoch, brought these skills to the ancient

Sumerians—and not only the Watchers, but other races that are recorded in the annals of ancient history and religious spirituality. All of the citings of ancient god-like entities appearing in various cultures, teaching mankind advanced skills, can all be collectively lumped together as superstitious myth-building, but, all myth and legend have at their core at least a kernel of truth and fact. The skeptic will ask you to cite evidences that other species interfered in the evolutionary ascendancy of mankind's civilization, while at the same time ignoring or at the very least watering down the pan-cultural evidence that already abundantly exists. It merely boils down to your "leaping off" point. That point with the skeptically and scientifically minded eliminates the possibility of spiritual or extra-terrestrial influence, as they seek to merely boil all anthropological studies down to what humanity achieved on its own accord. The possibility of external influence in cultural development—or physiological development, for that matter—is eliminated as a possibility because it smacks of too much superstition and unfounded, spurious claims. Yet the spiritual-historical documentation of every culture possesses an exponential thread of commonality in that they all express similarities. Even the Bible itself, in its many fables and Judeo-Christian mythologies, has an underlying code that exposes at least the possibility that there was influence from a more supreme being or race of infiltrators set on tangibly altering the course of homo-nid development and cultural establishment. It can't all be chalked up to superstitious myth.

Religious Mythology vs. Alien Influence

So much of what we read and interpret as mythology—especially from ancient religious texts—are things that we in our modern, much more advanced culture dispatch with a broad swath. We tend to do this so we can claim a higher intellectual ground than that of our ancestors, avoiding any possibility of being labeled as superstitious or appearing as if our theories and conclusions are being drawn from outmoded ways of perceiving and thinking.

But what if the old superstitions and mythologies are true, and we only label them as being myth because they lie outside the realm of a more sterile scientific view? In a universe as vast as the physical one in which we are only the tiniest drop in the motion of a vast, endless, blue sparkling sea, there are obviously more things at play than we can possibly fathom or even conceive in our wildest imaginings. So, instead of brushing aside the mythologies as irrelevant and lacking in any substantive fact, let's take the opposite approach and examine some of what has been left for us to consider by our ancient forebears.

Oannes, the Fishman

In the third century BCE, Babylonian priest-historian Berossus chronicled the coming of the Annedoti and their leader, Oannes, a race described as being half-human, half-fish, that surfaced from the Persian Gulf to instruct the early inhabitants of Mesopotamia in the arts of culture and civilization. According to the chronicles of Berossus, the ancient Sumerians were like “beasts of the field,” prior to the arrival of Oannes, living under no law, order, or conduct of governance. It was this half-fish/half-man entity who surfaced, appearing in the midst of the Sumerians, and though described in the writings of Berossus as being frightfully hideous in appearance, spoke with superior intelligence, ability, and instruction for the prehistoric, uncivilized Mesopotamians. According to Berossus, the leader of the Annedoti Fishman, Oannes, would rise up out of the sea every morning and instruct the people in all manner of arts and insights into all manner of letters and sciences. Oannes taught them how to construct houses, to found and build temples, and to compile laws and codes of conduct, and explained to them the principles of geometrical knowledge—all things that were necessary to devise and construct a cohesive, civilized culture. Oannes also taught the art of agriculture and the discerning of seeds and fruits and all manner of husbandry. In short, it is said by Berossus, Oannes “humanized” the savage, uncivilized humans that lived as un-unified, scattered animals in the wilds of Mesopotamia.

The appearance of reptilian-like entities exists all throughout human history. Oannes is simply one version of this extra-terrestrial form of entity, the half-man, half-fish, walking on two legs, possessing superior intelligence and the ability to communicate and teach specific knowledge to a lesser-advanced humanity.

Many ancient cultures have legends of amphibians or serpent people who serve as teachers and instruct ancient mankind in the arts of civilization. Quetzalcoatl, the feathered serpent of the Aztecs, descended from heaven in a silver egg. The strikingly handsome Nagas were the semi-divine Serpent People with supernatural powers who figure in the Hindu and Buddhist traditions. The shadowy recesses of history are rife with mentions of mythical sky people who were emissaries of the flying serpent. The snake-worshipping Mayans and Aztecs bear striking resemblance to the Chinese, who worshipped the celestial dragon. There are even reptilian characters that rise up in the Genesis account of creation and the first family.

The Dogon Nommos

The Nommos are the ancestral spirits, sometimes referred to as deities, hailing from the star Sirius B and worshipped by the Dogon tribe of Mali, West Africa, their villages situated around the arid Bandiagara Escarpment. The word *Nommos* is derived from a Dogon word meaning “to make one drink.” They are described as being frog-like creatures in both their amphibious and hermaphroditic physiologies. The Nommos were said to have been quite “ugly,” beings that resembled mermen and mermaids. They also appear in Babylonian, Accadian, and the Sumerian myths of the Annedoti and Oannes. The Egyptian goddess Isis, who is sometimes depicted as a mermaid, is also linked with the star Sirius. Dogon folk art depicts the Nommos as creatures with the upper torsos of human beings, and the legs and feet of an amphibian, with a fish-like tail. The Dogon also refer to the ancient Nommos as “Masters of the Water,” “the Monitors,” and “the Teachers.”

We see in Dogon mythology a commonality shared by many creation mythologies: the introduction of multiple births at the point of creation. This element of multiple births is even seen in the Genesis account of Adam and Eve's twin sons, Cain and Abel. In the case of the Nommos, the multiplicity is demonstrated by the mutation of a single entity into multiples. Nommo—the singular entity representing the race of Nommos—was the first living creature created by their sky god Amma. Soon after, Nommo underwent a transformative mutation and multiplied into four pairs of twins. One of the twins rebelled against the universal order created by Amma and, to restore order to his creation, Amma sacrificed one of the multiple Nommo progeny, dismembered his body, and scattered it throughout the universe. This dispersal of body parts is seen by the Dogon as the source for the proliferation of Binu shrines throughout the Dogons' traditional territory; wherever a body part fell, a shrine was erected.

In the latter 1940s, four Dogon priests related to French anthropologists Marcel Griaule and Germaine Dieterlen (who had been working with the Dogon since 1931) a belief that the Nommos, according to the Dogon legend, lived on a planet that orbits a star in the Sirius system, identified as Sirius B. The Nommos landed on earth in an "ark" that made a spinning decent to the ground with great noise and wind, like that of thunder and fire. The Dogon apparently possessed traditional astronomical knowledge about Sirius and its two companion stars that would normally be considered impossible without the use of telescopes. Of course, skeptics have attributed this intimate knowledge of the stars to "cultural contamination," possibly even introduced by the anthropologists themselves. However, that skeptical observation is considered by most to be far too simplistic a speculation.

After arriving, the Nommos, requiring a watery environment in which to exist, immediately set about the task of constructing a reservoir of water and subsequently dove in. According to the myth related to Griaule and Dieterlen, the Nommo divided his body among men to feed them; that is why it is also said that as the universe had drunk of his body, the Nommo also made men drink. He gave all his life principles to human beings.

According to the Dogon legend, the Nommo was crucified on a tree, but was resurrected and returned to his home world. Dogon legend has it that he will return in the future to revisit the earth in a human form.

The Serpent in the Garden of Eden

“1 Now the serpent was more crafty than any of the wild animals the LORD God had made. He said to the woman, “Did God really say, ‘You must not eat from any tree in the garden?’”

(Genesis 3:1)

The original paradise that rolled off the creative fingertips of God, as stated in the biblical account, is more than simple lore or myth. Despite all the spiritual mythos built up around the Garden of Eden’s existence, understanding its geographic location and the events that the Bible says took place there, are the first steppingstones to understanding the descent of the Watchers and the influence of external entities and races. We are going to take a bit of a diversion in this section in order to establish some background of the character known as the Serpent in the Garden of Eden.

According to the Book of Genesis, Eden lay in the region between the Tigris and Euphrates Rivers, with the Pishon and the Gihon flanking.

“10 A river watering the garden flowed from Eden; from there it was separated into four headwaters. 11 The name of the first is the Pishon; it winds through the entire land of Havilah, where there is gold. 12 (The gold of that land is good; aromatic resin and onyx are also there.) 13 The name of the second river is the Gihon; it winds through the entire land of Cush. 14 The name of the third river is the

Tigris; it runs along the east side of Ashur. And the fourth river is the Euphrates.”

(Genesis 2:10-14)

But all of this intimate geography may have been altered significantly during the Great Flood, which covered, as the Bible says, the entire surface of the world, even to the tops of the highest mountain peaks.

“17 For forty days the flood kept coming on the earth, and as the waters increased they lifted the ark high above the earth. 18 The waters rose and increased greatly on the earth, and the ark floated on the surface of the water. 19 They rose greatly on the earth, and all the high mountains under the entire heavens were covered. 20 The waters rose and covered the mountains to a depth of more than fifteen cubits [roughly 23 feet or 6.8 meters]. 21 Every living thing that moved on land perished—birds, livestock, wild animals, all the creatures that swarm over the earth, and all mankind. 22 Everything on dry land that had the breath of life in its nostrils died. 23 Every living thing on the face of the earth was wiped out; people and animals and the creatures that move along the ground and the birds were wiped from the earth. Only Noah was left, and those with him in the ark. 24 The waters flooded the earth for a hundred and fifty days.”

(Genesis 7:17-24)

There has been much debate over the land surface that was actually engulfed by the Great Flood. If the purpose of the flood was to destroy all life on the entire planet, then an earth-enveloping deluge is what would have been necessary, even though early human civilization existed only in the Fertile Crescent region of the earth. In the ancient way of understanding and evaluating, the “entire earth” encompassed only the areas that were known to the people alive at that time. Anything else existing on the opposite side of the globe was simply far beyond understanding or comprehension. Some ancient cultures even illustrated the Mesopotamian region as being an island surround by infinite horizons of ocean.

If the Great Flood were a more localized event, it may have simply engulfed the entirety of the Mesopotamian region, consisting of the Tigris and Euphrates River valleys, covering what would have been the highest of mountains in that antediluvian geography. A massive flood of the nature described in the Bible would have altered the landscape significantly, so the actual location of the Garden of Eden is impossible to pinpoint by today's geographic markers.

Wherever Eden actually lay on the map, it is clear that it was situated somewhere in the great Mesopotamian river valleys, in relatively close proximity to the rising Sumerian civilization and the earliest of cities built in the region.



The region of Eden. Although there is no way to be absolutely sure of its precise location, the Garden of Eden was most likely just to the northwest of the budding Sumerian civilization. The Genesis narrative places the Garden between the Tigris and Euphrates rivers, flanked by the Gihon and Pishon rivers, both of whose courses have altered over the millennia due to geologic catastrophe, yet not so much so that the approximate location of the Garden of Eden was rendered a complete mystery.

Photo courtesy of the author. Copyright 2011.

Now take a different look at the events that took place there:

The Hebrew word used in the Book of Genesis for the word *snake* is *nachash* (pronounced “naw-kawsh”), meaning “magician or enchanter; a spellbinder; to illuminate, shine.” Jewish Rabbinic interpretation never saw this word as meaning a literal snake. It was to be understood as “a shining being with power to enchant.” This is a far cry from a snake in the grass, and in many biblical interpretations is none other than Lucifer himself, although the passage itself never actually calls him out by name. It is this being that influences Eve—or beguiles her, in a more accurate sense—into eating the fruit of the forbidden tree in the midst of the Garden of Eden.

“2 The woman said to the serpent, ‘We may eat fruit from the trees in the garden, 3 but God did say, You must not eat fruit from the tree that is in the middle of the garden, and you must not touch it, or you will die.’”

(Genesis 3:2-3)

The Hebrew word for that tree is *ets*, a word that is in very close association with the Hebrew word *toledah*, both meaning “generations.” It is from these words that we draw the modern equivalent of “family tree.” Another variation of the word *ets* is “the wood of a tree as an opening and closing of a door.” In an applicational stretch the same word can apply to the term “portal; opening of one’s mind; enlightenment.”

It has been in some circles suggested that the Tree of the Knowledge of Good and Evil, from which Eve is said to have eaten the forbidden fruit, was not a literal tree at all, but, rather, symbolic of the pre-Adamic races that lived in the regions surrounding the Garden of Eden. These races are said to encompass the Atlantean civilization.

The phrase *fruit of the tree* is the Hebrew word *periy*—fruit: produce of the ground; offspring, children, progeny (of the womb); or figuratively: fruit (of actions). The phrase *eat of it* is the Hebrew word *akal* (aw-kal); this word has many uses, among which, one use means to “lay with a woman (sexual intercourse);” and the word *touch* is the Hebrew word *naga* (naw-gah); to touch, that is, to lay the hand upon (for any purpose); euphemism for: to touch, have sex with a woman.

“4 ‘You will not certainly die,’ the serpent said to the woman. 5 ‘For God knows that when you eat of it your eyes will be opened, and you will be like God, knowing good and evil.’ 6 When the woman saw that the fruit of the tree was good for food and pleasing to the eye, and also desirable for gaining wisdom, she took some and ate it. She also gave some to her husband, who was with her, and he ate it. 7 Then the eyes of both of them were opened, and they realized they were naked; so they sewed fig leaves together and made coverings for themselves.”

(Genesis 3:4-7)

This was obviously no ordinary tree. In fact, it wasn’t a literal tree at all. Many biblical scholars interpret this as Lucifer himself.

- ★ The phrase *pleasant to the eyes* is the Hebrew word *chamad*: to desire, to covet, to take pleasure in, to delight in, to be desirable, to delight greatly, to desire greatly, desirableness, preciousness.
- ★ The word *desired* is the Hebrew word *ta’avah* (tah-av-aw’)—to yearn for, to lust after (used of bodily appetites) a longing; by

implication: a delight (subjectively, satisfaction, objectively, a charm): a desire, a wish, longings of one's heart; lust, an appetite, covetousness (in a bad sense); to covet; to wait longingly.

**Took* is the Hebrew word *laqach* (law-kakh'); a primitive root; to take (in the widest variety of applications): to take (as in: "Abraham took his cloak in his hand"), to lay hold of, to receive, to marry, to take a wife, to take to or for a person, to procure, to get, to take possession of, to select, to choose, to take in marriage, to receive, to accept.

A very different picture of Eve's temptation in the Garden of Eden is beginning to emerge. The previous parsed passage is far more than a sinful, disobedient appreciation of fruit. All the references we hear of Eve eating an apple, or depictions in religious art of the Eden couple eating a big piece of fruit is merely coded information and hiding what the passage truly speaks about.

"It is obvious here that the snake was a symbol and not a literal talking snake selling apples. If you look up the words used in Genesis from a Strong's Concordance, you will then see that Genesis is filled with many sexual idioms. In fact the picture of the snake eating dust is a Jewish idiom for being lower than low. To take it literally is a mistake. Note too that there are no snakes that eat dust. Also that male penis strongly resembles a snake in its shape, so I do not think that we are dealing with a literal snake. And what was the law that Eve broke and was in "transgression" of? I would think it is clear that she was in transgression because she had committed adultery. It says that Adam did too partake in the eating of the fruit and became ashamed. But this fruit did not come directly from the tree but from Eve.⁹"

According to 1 Enoch 69:4-12, the serpent was one of five angels known as "the Five Satans," and one of those Satans was named Gader'el, and was "he who showed the children of the people all the blows of death, who misled Eve, who showed the children of the people (how to make) the instruments of death (such as) the shield, the breastplate, and the sword for

warfare, and all (the other) instruments of death to the children of the people.”

What really happened in this scene in the Garden of Eden is that Eve, the mother of humanity, lost her virginity to the Serpent; you can see that she encountered him sexually before ever having sex with her husband, Adam. And later in the passage, the text is implicit that Eve was impregnated by this encounter. Then she drew her husband into the scenario, he willingly partook, and Eve also became impregnated by Adam. Eve was then bearing fraternal twins, Cain and Abel, one from the seed of Adam and the other from the seed of the character known as the serpent in the Garden.

The grand sin that was committed in Eden was not mere disobedience in the eating of a forbidden piece of fruit from a forbidden tree in the midst of the garden. It was a sexual sin that created a dual bloodline in the twins conceived in Eve’s womb. According to the subsequent passages in Genesis, we learn that Abel was the blood seed of Adam, but that Cain was the blood seed of the serpent, and that those opposing lineages would be in constant conflict with one another, starting with Cain murdering his twin brother.

Here, we see that events in the Garden of Eden were greatly influenced by none other than a reptilian character. Theologically, you could pigeon-hole him as Lucifer or “Satan,” taking the form of a snake, but even in that form he would have had to have possessed the physical ability to have sexual intercourse with Eve. So the reptilian feature is mere poetic biblical language, or it represents the physical appearance and qualities of the person who tempted Eve.

In a very real sense, then, Cain, the seed of the serpent, was for all practical purposes the *very first* of the Nephilim, bequeathed by a fallen angel, perhaps even Lucifer himself.

Whoever the serpent truly is, there have been linkages made between the obviously coded message of the Adam and Eve story with the beings that descended to the slopes of Mount Hermon and bred with human women seven generations later. But is this “serpent seed” planted in the Garden of Eden only the first of many such recorded events in biblical history? Was the seed of the serpent something that was planted in the womb of Eve, only to be done again and again and again in the wombs of other women in both the pre-flood and post-flood worlds? And was the serpent himself—obviously not a snake or a man—a member of an angelic caste or even Lucifer, as some suggest, or was he something completely different?

“12 How art thou fallen from heaven, O Lucifer, son of the morning!”

[Isaiah 14:12]

“18 I beheld Satan as lightening fall from Heaven.”

[Jesus Christ, quoted in Luke 10:18]

Reptilians

The presence of a reptoid character in the biblical account of the Garden of Eden and the temptation of Eve has given rise to countless pop cultural mythologies, theories, and anecdotal personal encounters about a race of alien reptilian beings that interfered with human development and history. And they are linked closely with the Nephilim, Anunnaki, and the Sons of God of Genesis [Chapter 6](#). The only problem with most of the theorizing, despite how intriguing and possible the claims may be, is that it is just that: theorizing and speculation.

There are countless numbers of books and Websites that host a plethora of information about the reptilians that lived on this planet more than

800,000 years ago, hailing from the Draco star system. The vast majority of those fonts of reptilian information have no source points, no data, no cited facts. The entire reptilian issue seems to be summed up as accepted fact in particular circles of alien and ufological thought, but they offer us no solid evidence or empirical data to use as a foundation. No evidence, no verification, no historical records—much like most of our belief systems structured around the characters and events in the Bible itself. In his book *The Big Secret*, British-born new ageist, David Icke, one of the most well-known authors and lecturers on alien reptilians, speaks of their involvement with the human race through his own gaussian-blurred view of both historical and current events. For Icke, the reptilian factor is an otherworldly platform to use as a launching pad for his anti-Semitism, neofascism, and an ostensibly oddball convergence of New Age thinking with Nazi philosophy that he incorporates into the foundation for his belief that mankind has always been controlled and governed by a global Jewish conspiracy fathered by lizards from another planet.¹⁰ This merely illustrates that the topic of alien reptilians is comprised of more speculative ranting, subjective story-telling, and wishful thinking, than quantifiable historical or anthropological fact. Even the header on Icke's Website states that he is “[e]xposing the dreamworld we believe to be real.”¹¹

Reality can be stranger than fiction, it has been said, yet when we see the exposing of ideas from people who seem to have slippery holds on historical accuracy, let alone common sense and sanity, we tend to laugh them off into the other room and seat them at the children’s table so they can do their thing while we adults converse at the grown-ups’ table about the hardcore truisms of life and the universe. However, as crackpot as some of the ideas surrounding reptilians may sound, and whatever pseudo-political ideologies have been built on their shoulders, a kernel of truth may still lie quivering at the core. Although Reptilian art and religious application of serpents and dragons exist all throughout human history, there is little—if any—evidence that they dwelled on this planet and interacted with human beings on the level that is expressed in the theorizing of pseudo-scientific thought. Yet their presence in one form or another is pervasive and ultimately convincing to a certain degree.

Snake on a Stick

The remarkable fact is that throughout all ancient and modern civilizations, the serpent or dragon bestowing knowledge upon the human race figures prominently in all religions and histories: the Judeo-Christian reptilian “fallen angel” Lucifer; the Mayan serpent god, Quetzalcoatl; the enormous plumed serpent god of the Hopi Indians, Baholinkonga; the East Indian mystical human-like reptilians known as NAGAS; the Egyptian serpent god, Enuph; the Phoenicians Agathodemon; and even the Hebrews Nakhustan or Brazen Serpent that Moses cast and placed high on a pole when the Israelites were plagued by serpents in the wilderness—which is a biblical scene all on its own that begs the question of more encoded language from Moses. The actual passage reads:

“4 They traveled from Mount Hor along the route to the Red Sea, to go around Edom. But the people grew impatient on the way; 5 they spoke against God and against Moses, and said, ‘Why have you brought us up out of Egypt to die in the wilderness? There is no bread! There is no water! And we detest this miserable food!’ 6 Then the LORD sent venomous snakes among them; they bit the people and many Israelites died. 7 The people came to Moses and said, ‘We sinned when we spoke against the LORD and against you. Pray that the LORD will take the snakes away from us.’ So Moses prayed for the people. 8 The LORD said to Moses, ‘Make a snake and put it up on a pole; anyone who is bitten can look at it and live.’ 9 So Moses made a bronze snake and put it up on a pole. Then when anyone was bitten by a snake and looked at the bronze snake, they lived.”

(Numbers 21:4-9)

As a punishment for griping and complaining against God and Moses, the biblical account written by Moses tells us that God sent “firey serpents” into the camp of the wandering Israelites. The people were being bitten and dying in hordes. So God instructed Moses to cast a bronze snake and place

it high upon a pole, and all who were bitten and taken ill could look on the serpent from anywhere within the camp and be healed. The brazen serpent remained with the Israelites for another 700 years, where it eventually stood in the Temple in Jerusalem. But the people, during the time of King Hezekiah (715-687 BCE) had begun worshipping the snake and making an offering to it. So in a vast iconoclastic reform, Hezekiah cut down all the pagan groves, smashed all the idols, and destroyed the Nakhustan, which didn't bear that name until his reign on the throne of Israel, suggesting that he may have given it that name himself.

It is interesting to note that originally the second commandment written by Moses included this prohibition:

“4 You shall not make for yourself an idol, whether in the form of anything that is in heaven above, or that is on the earth beneath, or that is in the water under the earth.”

(Exodus 20:4)



Moses and the Brazen Serpent: Sebastien Bourdon, 1653-54.
Photo is licensed under Wikipedia Creative Commons.

This mandate was so strong in its wording that the Jews incorporated into their laws an extremist prohibition against portraiture and sculpted imagery of any kind, of man, beast, animal, or deity. Illustrating the power of the Jewish law, two first-century Jewish historians, Philo and Josephus, recorded revolts by the Jews during the tenure of Roman Praefect Pontius Pilatus (26-36 AD; Pilate), over the placement of graven images and effigies. According to Josephus, Pilate demonstrated a fairly insensitive approach to the Jews religious customs, and he ignored their protests by allowing his soldiers to bring the images of Caesar into the city by the dark of night. When the citizens of Jerusalem discovered these the following day, they appealed to Pilate to remove the ensigns of Caesar from the city. After five days of deliberation, Pilate had his soldiers surround the demonstrators, threatening them with death, which they were willing to accept rather than submit to desecration of Mosaic Law. Pilate finally removed the images. The incident proved to be an early example of effective resistance to tyranny by aggressive, nonviolent means, yet Pilate quelled the rebellion by signaling other of his plain-clothed troops who had positioned themselves within the crowds, to begin a very brief but bloody massacre of many of the protestors.¹²

Philo describes a similar incident in which Pilate was officially reprimanded by Emperor Tiberius after antagonizing the Jews by setting up gold-coated shields in Herod's palace in Jerusalem. The shields were ostensibly to honor Tiberius, and this time did not contain engraved images. Philo writes that the shields were set up "not so much to honor Tiberius as to annoy the multitude." The Jews protested the installation of the shields at first to Pilate and then, when he declined to remove them, by writing to Tiberius. Philo reports that upon reading the letters, Tiberius "wrote to Pilate with a host of reproaches and rebukes for his audacious violation of precedent and bade him at once take down the shields and have them transferred from the capital to Caesarea."¹³

The point is that the Jewish law forbade iconoclastic imagery of any kind, in a preemptive strike to stave off idol worship. But the Brazen Serpent was an exception, and it was imbued with divine power to cure illness and heal snake bites, and the people eventually worshipped it as a result, although centuries later. The worship of the serpent grew out of the fact that the serpent is so represented in creation scripture as the “god of the earth.” But he is also clearly presented as being subservient to the higher Divine, Elohim, who curses him in coded, symbolic language in Genesis [Chapter 3](#), as a result of the seduction of Eve. And Although it is true that the Bible itself never uses the word *reptilian*, but *serpent*, it is clear that the serpent is not simply a snake. There are only four characters mentioned at the dawn of mankind in the Garden of Eden: God, Adam, Eve, and the serpent.

Ancient Jewish beliefs about this serpent explicitly state that it had arms and legs, and walked upright. This claim is found in the *Bereshit Rabbah*, an ancient Jewish commentary on the Book of Genesis. While dealing with the story of the Garden of Eden, the *Midrash* also deals with the serpent. It declares that before causing Adam and Eve to sin, “it had legs” (*Bereishit Rabbah*, 19). According to this, the serpent was once a tall, splendid and regal creature. When its fate was decided and it is written that “upon thy belly shall thou go” (*Bereishit* 3:14), “the ministering angels descended and cut off its arms and legs” *Bereishit Rabbah*, 20. This descriptive tradition gives the physical image of the enticing serpent an impressive dimension that has repercussions on many viewpoints of the ancient world, which saw the serpent as representing forces of evil on one hand and as possessing supernatural powers on the other hand. Down through the ages, the description of the reptilian archtypical being that Adam and Eve may have encountered has been altered and evolved. By calling it a serpent and nothing more, biblical revisionists have effectively simplified the description and robbed humanity of a more mysterious, and possibly accurate, reality of which we are only now recognizing. Another point that should also be noted is that in the Book of Genesis, Elohim condemns the serpent by saying “On your belly you shall go,” which suggests that he wasn’t on it before.

The ancient Jewish accounts of the Garden of Eden describe a being that is more like the ufological, extra-terrestrial reptoids than just a plain serpent. They also tell how the reptilians' behavior amid early mankind resulted in their being *cast down into the earth*, hinting at a subterranean realm, having all traces of hands, feet, and the ability to walk upright, hidden from surface-dwelling humans, erased from man's memories, and placed permanently out of sight.

The Mighty Men of Renown

“4 The Nephilim were on the earth in those days, and also afterward, when the sons of God came in to the daughters of men, and they bore children to them. Those were the mighty men who were of old, men of renown.”

(Genesis 6:4)

There is also an alternate, not-so-pretty picture of the motivation behind the descent of the Watchers, and that is the story of enslavement and the breeding of a “worker class” by a superior race of extraterrestrial beings perceived by the simple-minded humans as divinity. The homonids found on the earth by the Watchers—the divine caste set in place, according to scripture, to protect and watch over the earth—were bettered by the genetic interbreeding of a superior, extraterrestrial race for the purpose of creating a slave caste. Accordingly, the Watchers as described in the religious Hebrew texts were none other than beings of superior intellect, strength, and technical advancement who saw opportunity to subjugate a lesser race, improving them by impregnation or genetic tampering. It is also a wave of thought among Ancient Alienists that the “interbreeding” mentioned in the Genesis and Enochian accounts was ancient, poetic, picturesque coded language used to describe what would be described in our modern terminology as cloning and genetic engineering.

The Book of Genesis tells us that the offspring of the cohabitation between the Watchers and humans were known as “the heroes of old” and the “mighty men of renown”; the *Gibborim*, the Hebrew word for “mightiest,” the intensive noun for Gabar, or “mighty.” The word was many times used to describe the valiant, brave, and of great stature. But in the usage of this word in Genesis [chapter 6](#), it speaks of a class of beings in its description of the Nephilim as being “mighty.” The word *Gibborim* is also used more than 150 times in the Tanakh, an acronym formed from the initial Hebrew letters of the Masoretic Text’s three traditional subdivisions: the Torah (“Teaching,” also known as the Five Books of Moses), Nevi’im (“Prophets”), and Ketuvim (“Writings”), and is applied not only to the Nephilim and men, but also to lions (Proverbs 30:30), hunters (Genesis 10:9), soldiers (Jeremiah 51:30), and leaders (Daniel 11:3). The ancient, divine connotation of the word is nearly lost in the modern usage of the word *Gibbor*, which means “hero” and “brave” (as a verb).

The Gibborim have even made it into current-day pop culture. Marvel Comics has their Gibborim of the Demogorge, created by Brian K. Vaughan and Adrian Alphona, as a race of three six-fingered giants, among the various Elder Gods of Earth (having somehow survived ancient judgmental catastrophe) whose goal is to wipe the Earth clean of all humanity. Averaging a rough height of 100 feet, the Gibborim despise all humans.

Despite the watering down of the ancient usage of the word and its further pop cultural diminutives, it is this class of cross-bred “mighty heroes,” these Nephilim offspring of the Watchers, who begin the ravaging of humanity and the earth. It is also this race of hybrid offspring who are said to have begun the slave enforcement of mankind. As they grew in influence and power, the Gibborim began to extract more and more natural resources for their sustenance, and all the peoples of the earth, who inhabited a relatively small region of what is now the Middle East, were oppressed and completely entrenched in a slave caste societal bondage to these beings. It was this interplay and corruption that the Book of Genesis hails to as the cause of the “wickedness of mankind,” the stench to the

nostrils of God that had him “grieving” that he had ever created mankind on the earth. And that grieving was not a hatred of humans, but rather a deep agonizing on the part of the deity that he had created a race that was so easily manipulated and altered by the Watchers, his own emissaries. The course of action taken by the divine was to then wipe out the entire race of Nephilim/Gibborim, as well as the rest of the tainted-blood humanity, in one, great universal catastrophic judgment: the Great Flood of Noah. But to preserve the human race, Noah was chosen to build an ark, a great barge to preserve all animal life as well as the one pure-blooded human family—his own.

It seems impossible for we who exist at this far end of antiquity, for such a salvational vessel to be created out of “shittim wood and tree sap tar,” as the Bible recounts, and even more implausible for a man and his three sons to take 120 years to build it, then to gather two of every kind of animal in existence to load into its many stalls and chambers. Yet one must remember that the passage itself never says that Noah went out with a net and a lasso to gather the species of animals; it says that they were “brought to the ark” by God. And, of course, as we are beginning to see, this act in and of itself is more likely than not one of two things: perfect in its illustrative descriptions and true to the scriptures as read, or poetic code language utilized to set in place a mythological cover story for an event that may have been nothing short of genetic storage at the hands of a much superior race understood by ancient man to be gods.

Demonic Interbreeding

According to Roman Catholic theology, fallen angels have been attempting to interbreed with mankind for the purposes of creating a perfect hybrid mix of demonic and human ever since the fall of man.

The Watchers themselves were not demons, nor were they fallen angels, but their act of descending to the earth in defiance of their divine charge,

certainly placed them in a position of dangerous disobedience as attested to by their leader:

“3 Then their leader Shamyaza said to them (the other prefects of the Watchers); ‘I fear that you may perhaps be indisposed to the performance of this enterprise (intermingling with human women); 4 And that I alone shall suffer for so grievous a crime.’”

(1 Enoch 7:3-4)

Against whom was Shamyaza concerned about committing a crime? God? A racial hierarchy? The humans? It is clear by this text that whoever Shamyaza really was, he was a bit nervous about his plans, as he alone would be held responsible, being their leader. He seemed to have a clear understanding that his act would bring hierarchical consequences. But he was, as the text indicates, immediately followed by the rest of the Grigori, and as we will see, they all bore the consequential brunt of their deeds, for it was this act on their collective part that placed them—at least in religious and scriptural terms—in the camp of the “fallen angels,” as some contend.

Whereas the New Testament uses the Greek word “demon” to refer to these “sons of the mighty,” the Old Testament uses revealing descriptive names. Words that describe these beings, such as *bene ha’Elohim*, meaning “sons of God,” *Zophim*, meaning “the watchers,” and *Malakh*, meaning “messengers” (this reference was translated to angel in English), are used for the “aerial host” often regardless of alignment. The Book of Enoch tells us the origin of certain “interdimensional intelligences”—called in the monotheistic New Testament “demons,” who were understandably associated with evil because originally the Greek term *daimon* meant “any deity”—was in the Days of Noah, and didn’t end with the Flood but continued, according to Genesis 6, “even after.” There are three main terms for demons in the New Testament: *daimonion* (demon; 60 times, 50 in the Gospels); *pneuma* (spirit; 52 times) usually with a qualifying adjective such as *akatharton* (unclean; 21 times) or *poneron* (evil; eight times); and

angelos (seven times of demonic agencies). *Daimon* (demon), the term commonly used in classical Greek, appears only once, in Mark 8:31.”¹⁴

Divine Judgment

In short, the reason for the flood as recorded in the Book of Genesis was not an imposition of divine judgment on a race of humans who had simply grown too wicked for their own good. That would seem an awful waste of humanity, even for God himself, especially when there would have been much better ways to offer repentance and forgiveness short of the complete destruction of the earth and all things dwelling on it. This entire issue of a great deluge being used simply to eradicate a race of sinners, sending them all to the eternal hell of infinite separation from God, is lost in its grandiosity, akin to dropping an atomic bomb in order to squash a beehive hanging from the eave of your house.

There had to be something more than simple matters of heart at play here; something more than a mere rejection of the laws of God on the part of a rebellious race of humans. Sin can be handled, according to the Bible, by a change of heart that does not require the extermination of an entire race. But what if what we have here in this story goes far beyond the “wickedness of mankind,” and delves deep into the extermination of an extra-terrestrially manipulated race that has corrupted humanity, bringing them wickedness through the mode of genetic corruption and alteration of DNA? What if the great flood was a means incorporated by a supreme being—or a master, superior race—to kill the experiment that had gone badly awry—a wiping out of an experiment that had gone very, very wrong?

In Mary Shelley’s *Frankenstein*, which she attested to have written as an allegory of God’s creation of man and his subsequent fall from grace, a man is created by a scientist experimenting with the reanimation of dead human flesh. The created being is highly intelligent and learns to read, write, and

communicate on a near-genius level—much unlike the monster that was made popular in the Boris Karloff movies of the 1930s. It was when this created man became corrupt and turned into the “monster” that his creator found it necessary to take his life, ending in a great pursuit that led them to the frozen wastes of the Arctic and a fiery demise for them both.

The creators of the hybrid race of Nephilim found it necessary to eradicate them and their influence in humanity. *But it didn't work.* Even after the utter devastation of a universal flood, even after the collection of the DNA and/or physical quarantine of every species of animal, the Bible tells us, again, that...

“4 The Nephilim were on the earth in those days—and also afterward... [!]”

(Genesis 6:4)

For the purist believer in the infallibility of God and scripture, this notion would seem heresy and blasphemy, but that is, of course, if you follow the stricture of scriptural accounts of these things by the letter, not accounting for coded language and simplistic fabled cover stories for much greater events.

Outgrown and Outmoded

On one side of the equation, humanity seems to have outgrown its need for traditional religious belief. The firmly held dogmas of the existence of a Supreme Divine have become an outmoded mythology, only to be replaced with updated, more acceptable versions of what we think ancient mankind was experiencing. Did prehistoric humans encounter strange and wonderful beings so far advanced that they could only describe them within the framework of their scientific and spiritual understanding? It seems as if

anything that lay in that realm of the mystical and unexplained—even in religious circles where we are *already* supposed to believe in great divine beings and miraculous deeds—there is a move away from anything that even smacks of the “woo woo” that fringes on the mythological. There is some exceptional allowance for God and his angels, but nearly everything else falls under the category of “we don’t know that.”¹⁵

However, on the flip side of that equation, I have found that most people have their curiosities piqued when it comes to topics of UFOs, aliens, and extra-terrestrial visitations—no matter how far outside their religious or denominational box those curiosities take them. Although they may want to accept that these things are highly possible, if not probable, they will stop haltingly short of any attempt to reconcile them with their pre-established religious belief systems that focus on a traditional, omniscient, omnipresent, all-powerful God and his caste of angels. It’s as if they *want* to believe that these mysteries bear some truth, but they are unwilling to allow those things to merge with their traditional religious beliefs and values—the things they may not even know for sure if they believe, but are unwilling to release. There is a dichotomous set of beliefs, one part wanting to accept that there are as-yet unexplained mysteries, and the other too afraid to say so, for fear of religious repercussions.

I tend to take particular issue with the evangelical, fundamentalist circles from which I hail in my younger days of church-going and ministry. Fundamentalist believers seem to have this intrinsic sense about them that, should there be any veracity to the seemingly mounting evidences that extra-terrestrials and alien visitors from the other regions of the universe or dimensionalities truly exist, their religion and faith would be somehow irreconcilably shaken to its core, as if God’s universe is not big enough to handle the existence of other races, off planet, “exo-solar system.” For these followers of hyperbolic forms of Christianity, the Bible’s faith message of salvation and reconciliation is rendered null and void if there exists another race that does not fall under the same mandates as the bible’s descriptions of a fallen human race, born in iniquity and in need of redemption.

I faced this same sort of argument in those same fundamentalist circles when discussing—long before the book and the movie—the theories behind Dan Brown’s highly provocative book *The DaVinci Code*, in which he engages the age-old theory that perhaps Jesus of Nazareth was a married man and had children. I had one old Bible School friend discount the notion completely, insisting that for Jesus to have been married would unravel the Nazarene’s claim to being the Son of God possessive of redemptive power. This theological position, of course, was taken despite the fact that there are many evidences—inclusive of a rabbinic requirement for rabbis to be married men—suggesting that Jesus was indeed married. And in establishing the Messianic authority of Jesus, the New Testament itself claims, in Hebrews 4:15, that he “experienced life (“temptation”) in *all manners*, just as we do.”

Yet, the Christian fundamentalist view is that nothing exists outside the bounds of written scriptural text, and if it was ever proven that it does, that would somehow dissemble their faith in God, leaving them like so much wet laundry hanging out on the line, flapping in the wind, void of any solid religious structure or spiritual coherence.

At the same time, the scriptures on which the foundations are built for faith and religious practice for most of these believers, are rife with all sorts of references to clearly non-human, non-earthly beings. From angels to demons to devils to cherubim and seraphim, all the way up the ladder to God Almighty, the pages of traditional religious texts put on a perpetual cavalcade of non-human entities whose actions range from simple visitations, to fiery, flying chariots, to beings who descend to the earth making a pact among themselves to impregnate the daughters of humanity.

“1 The number of people on earth began to grow, and daughters were born to them. 2 When the Sons of God [Enoch refers to these same beings as the ‘Watchers’] saw that these girls were beautiful, they married any of them they chose. The Lord said, ‘My Spirit will not remain in human beings forever, because they are flesh. They will live only 120 years.’ The Nephilim were on the earth in those days and also

later. That was when the sons of God had sexual relations with the daughters of human beings. These women gave birth to children, who became famous and were the mighty warriors of long ago.”

(Genesis 6:1-4)

The big question is: Are they gods, angels, and devils, or did early man simply ascribe those titles within the construct of their understanding?

What most faith-based believers in the Bible fail to recognize is the fact that the Bible is full of references to other intelligences and non-human entities. These beings are generally said by the theological intelligentsia to be angelic beings or demonic entities, rather than any sort of extra-terrestrial alien presence:

★ The apostle Paul, who started out as Saul of Tarsus, a persecutor of the early Christians, had set out to Damascus, carrying with him the death warrants for members of the Christian movement there. As he and his entourage were on the road, a shaft of light blazed down out of the sky, casting Saul to the ground. No one else in his party heard a word, but later, Saul recounted a tale of God speaking to him in the form of Jesus Christ, the “Son of God.”

This was said by Saul to be his conversion experience, and he changed his name to Paul. Was this an encounter with a member of the Divine Council who later manifested as the Son of God, the Jewish Messiah? Paul had an apparently life-changing, out-of-body, or near-death experience in which he saw “things which it is not lawful for a man to speak” (2 Corinthians 12:4). I have often wondered what it was that he saw and why he was never permitted to say anything about it. But it is apparent that the experience made such an indelible mark on Paul’s life that he could not even speak of it in the first person:

“2 I know a man in Christ who fourteen years ago was caught up to the third heaven. Whether it was in the body or out of the body I do not know—God knows. 3 And I know that this man—whether in the body

or apart from the body I do not know, but God knows—4 was caught up to paradise. He heard inexpressible things, things that man is not permitted to tell.”

(2 Corinthians 12:2-4)

★ The star systems of Orion, Pliades, and Arcturus are mentioned by name in the chronologically oldest book in the Old Testament, the Book of Job:

“9 He is the Maker of the Bear [Ursa Major] and Orion, the Pleiades and the clustered stars [Arcturus] of the south.”

(Job 9:9)

“Can you bind the beautiful Pleiades? Can you loose the cords of Orion?”

(Job 38:31)

★ The high priest of El Elyon [the “Most High God”] and king of the city of Salem [ancient Jerusalem] was a man named Melchizedek who, according to Hebrews 7:3, had “neither beginning nor end of days” and who mysteriously appeared in Abraham’s time, resembling a “Son of God”:

“3 He is without father or mother or genealogy, having neither beginning of days nor end of life, but resembling the Son of God he continues a priest forever.”

(Hebrews 7:3)

★ The apostle John, in his dotage on the Isle of Patmos some 60 years after he walked as a disciple to Jesus, had a most profound apocalyptic vision, which dealt with numerous non-human intelligences. In just the first of many sections of the Book of Revelation, filled with strange beasts and ostentacious visions, John wrote:

“9 I, John, your brother and companion in the suffering and kingdom and patient endurance that are ours in Jesus, was on the island of Patmos because of the word of God and the testimony of Jesus. 10 On the Lord’s Day I was in the Spirit, and I heard behind me a loud voice like a trumpet, 11 which said: ‘Write on a scroll what you see and send it to the seven churches: to Ephesus, Smyrna, Pergamum, Thyatira, Sardis, Philadelphia and Laodicea.’ 12 I turned around to see the voice that was speaking to me. And when I turned I saw seven golden lampstands, 13 and among the lampstands was someone ‘like a son of man,’ dressed in a robe reaching down to his feet and with a golden sash around his chest. 14 His head and hair were white like wool, as white as snow, and his eyes were like blazing fire. 15 His feet were like bronze glowing in a furnace, and his voice was like the sound of rushing waters. 16 In his right hand he held seven stars, and out of his mouth came a sharp double-edged sword. His face was like the sun shining in all its brilliance.

17 When I saw him, I fell at his feet as though dead. Then he placed his right hand on me and said: ‘Do not be afraid. I am the First and the Last. 18 I am the Living One; I was dead, and behold I am alive for ever and ever! And I hold the keys of death and Hades.’”

★ As we covered extensively, the Hebrew slaves were led out of bondage in Egypt under the leadership of Moses, and were guided by a pillar of fire by night and a pillar of cloud by day. Both were seen for 40 years, leading the way through the skies.

★ Ezekiel saw what has been described as a “flying saucer.” NASA spacecraft engineer Josef F. Blumrich had read Erich von

Däniken's *Chariots of the Gods*. In the book, von Däniken described Ezekiel's vision as none other than a "flying disk." Blumrich immediately set about to disprove von Däniken's theory, but upon further examination found that the vision in Ezekiel was nearly identical to a proposed craft design that he had invented. So he did an engineering analysis and worked out a preliminary design for the craft. He later wrote his findings in his book, entitled *The Spaceships of the Prophet Ezekiel*.¹⁶ Here is the description of what Ezekiel saw:

"1 In the thirtieth year, in the fourth month on the fifth day, while I was among the exiles by the Kebar River, the heavens were opened and I saw visions of God. 2 On the fifth of the month—it was the fifth year of the exile of King Jehoiachin—3 the word of the Lord came to Ezekiel the priest, the son of Buzi, by the Kebar River in the land of the Babylonians. There the hand of the Lord was upon him. 4 As I looked, behold, a storm wind was coming from the north, a great cloud with fire flashing forth continually and a bright light around it, and in its midst something like glowing metal in the midst of the fire. 5 Within it there were figures resembling four living beings. And this was their appearance: they had human form. 6 Each of them had four faces and four wings. 7 Their legs were straight and their feet were like a calf's hoof, and they gleamed like burnished bronze. 8 Under their wings on their four sides were human hands. As for the faces and wings of the four of them, 9 their wings touched one another; their faces did not turn when they moved, each went straight forward. 10 As for the form of their faces, each had the face of a man; all four had the face of a lion on the right and the face of a bull on the left, and all four had the face of an eagle. 11 Such were their faces. Their wings were spread out above; each had two touching another being, and two covering their bodies. 12 And each went straight forward; wherever the spirit was about to go, they would go, without turning as they went. 13 In the midst of the living beings there was something that looked like burning coals of fire, like torches darting back and forth among the living beings. The fire was bright, and lightning was flashing from the fire. 14 And the living beings ran to and fro like bolts of lightning. 15 Now as I looked at the living beings, behold, there was one wheel on the earth beside the living beings, for each of the four of them. 16

The appearance of the wheels and their workmanship was like sparkling beryl, and all four of them had the same form, their appearance and workmanship being as if one wheel were within another. 17 Whenever they moved, they moved in any of their four directions without turning as they moved. 18 As for their rims they were lofty and awesome, and the rims of all four of them were full of eyes round about. 19 Whenever the living beings moved, the wheels moved with them. And whenever the living beings rose from the earth, the wheels rose also. 20 Wherever the spirit was about to go, they would go in that direction. And the wheels rose close beside them; for the spirit of the living beings was in the wheels. 21 Whenever those went, these went; and whenever those stood still, these stood still. And whenever those rose from the earth, the wheels rose close beside them; for the spirit of the living beings was in the wheels. 22 Now over the heads of the living beings there was something like an expanse, like the awesome gleam of crystal, spread out over their heads. 23 Under the expanse their wings were stretched out straight, one toward the other; each one also had two wings covering its body on the one side and on the other. 24 I also heard the sound of their wings like the sound of abundant waters as they went, like the voice of the Almighty, a sound of tumult like the sound of an army camp; whenever they stood still, they dropped their wings. 25 And there came a voice from above the expanse that was over their heads; whenever they stood still, they dropped their wings. 26 Now above the expanse that was over their heads there was something resembling a throne, like lapis lazuli in appearance; and on that which resembled a throne, high up, was a figure with the appearance of a man. 27 Then I noticed from the appearance of His loins and upward something like glowing metal that looked like fire all around within it, and from the appearance of His loins and downward I saw something like fire; and there was a radiance around Him. 28 As the appearance of the rainbow in the clouds on a rainy day, so was the appearance of the surrounding radiance. Such was the appearance of the likeness of the glory of the LORD. And when I saw it, I fell on my face and heard a voice speaking.”

(Ezekiel 1:4-28)

A “mobile” star guided three astrologers from the region of Babylon to the birthplace of Jesus Christ, mentioned only in the Gospel of Matthew, but not in the others. Even the Gospel of Luke omits the presence of the star, which is interesting, as Luke—who also wrote the New Testament book of Acts of the Apostles—was a physician and historian.

There are some who believe the star never actually existed, as it is recorded in no other historical writings of the day. Judea was a Roman province, and they gave no record of the star and its fanciful movement through the skies. However, if these “wise men” saw the star “in the east,” or better, from the east, it would have taken months if not a year or two to decipher the star’s meaning and follow it to Judea.

Whatever the star was, it probably did not happen at one moment, on one night, but over the course of several months as a portent in the sky.

The appearances of both angels and demons were apparently relatively commonplace throughout the whole of biblically documented history.

chapter 6

Alien Influence?

“Devoutly to be wish’d. To die, to sleep;
To sleep: perchance to dream: ay, there’s the rub:
For in that sleep of death what dreams may come,
When we have shuffled off this mortal coil,
Must give us pause: there’s the respect
That makes calamity of so long life...”

—William Shakespeare, *Hamlet*

Despite my many questions and ponderings, based on the things I have studied, read, and absorbed over the years, I still cling to my Judeo-Christian roots, and making the leap from God, angels, and demons to UFOs, extra-terrestrials, and aliens is an exponential one for me. Yet, there is so much information out there that would tend to substantiate the existence of UFOs and alien interruption in humanity, that it cannot be overlooked. If you are anything at all like me, these things make you pause, wonder, and recalculate the things you were taught.

I have always said, rather cheekily, that when it comes to biblical theology, I have not “thrown out the baby with the bathwater.” Were I to make an on-the-spot statement of faith, I would say that I adhere to the basic tenants of the Bible, and hold Jehovah God as the Supreme Being, as well as a faith in Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit. In my youth I was taught that the Bible is the “only authority for faith and practice,” especially as a good, conservative Baptist. The further I grow in distance from my cloistered education and walled-in, “fishbowl” denominational practices—and by fishbowl, I mean that we believers congregationally sat inside our

glass bowl of church while the rest of the world looked in—I am finding that there is so much more to the universe than what we were taught, so much more to God than is visible in a methodological Christian environment.

Then there is that stinging, lurking *fear* in the back of my mind that any deviation from my old faith practices is merely my sinful nature drawing me away from God and his dictates. The apostle Paul warned his acolyte Timothy that “*... the time will come when men will not put up with sound doctrine. Instead, to suit their own desires, they will gather around them a great number of teachers to say what their itching ears want to hear*” (2 Timothy 4:3). And I find myself wondering if my disillusionment with church organization and methodology was the catalyst I allowed to drag me from the “true faith.” I find that I struggle with what was engrained in my head and heart, versus what I research and discover.

I consider myself to be a thinker. But there are times when I may imbue my thinking with fear of becoming inviolate of religious mandate and practice.

Therein lies the rub: No matter which way you look at this enigma, no matter how much existential mumbo-jumbo we wish to ascribe to our existence in the universe, or how much power of initiative or self-illumination we think we may possess, we are still the products of someone else’s creation, and the toys of some superior being’s manipulation.

We are not our own.

Whether it was an almighty, omnipotent God who created us from the dust of the ground and breathed into our nostrils the breath of life, or some enslaving, experimenting race of interstellar breeders who interfered with our primordial DNA, we are the product—or by-product—of someone else’s hand. Are we God’s creations, to do with as he pleases, having been

imbued with a free will that is truly only free until, like insurance, you actually use it? Or are we the descendants of an alien science experiment—the genetic offspring of an extra-terrestrial race that was either acting in benevolence by imposing its superior DNA into a race of genetically intellectual gutter monkeys, or implementing an intent that was far more sinister and enslaving?

Or are we simply the products of chemical reactions and evolutionary mutation and development; slaves to overt eradication of anything spiritual in order to default to what is scientific and explainable by mathematics and scientific methodology?

Either way, it appears as if we, the human race, are simply someone else's toys. And sometimes, it's just cooler to think that we are the offspring of alien interruption as opposed to "sinners in the hands of an angry God.¹" I believe that is why the scientific/skeptical community eschews the spiritual and metaphysical: They simply want to seek the basic nuts and bolts without having to answer to a higher authority or deal with the implications of the soul and spirit. As I said quite a bit earlier, there are veils we simply have no ability to pierce, and both the scientific/skeptical circles and the religious/faith-based circles are dead set on operating on the basis of what simply cannot be seen or proved. One circle consciously disregards and eradicates it as part of the functional equation; the other incorporates it in every facet of life.

Boiling It All Down

Whatever your leaping-off point, be it faith, spirit, science, skepticism, anthropology; whether religious, anti-religious, Christian, Jew, Atheist, animist, Pagan, Wiccan, true believer, *et cetera ad infinitum*—it doesn't matter when it comes down to sifting through the evidences and the facts, such as they may be. What is clear is that there was some interruption in the human race, whether it can be hinged on the extinction of the dinosaurs,

opening the way for human development (without being eaten), or microbial mutations that developed and evolved over eons, bringing the human race where it is today (with obviously much more evolving to do if we believe the chain of evolution is still moving along), or the hands of a Divine Creative force, whether you view that entity as a spiritual/religious one, or simply an entity that has the supreme power over us. Or, perhaps, it was clean and simple as extra-terrestrial interruption of some sort.

Then there are the proponents of philosophies, such as the following quote, that ignore any other outside-the-box investigation by immediately dismissing its veracity for the simple reason that it is not revealed in God's Holy Word, the Bible: "The Bible, the revealed written Word of God teaches that life is only possible through a process of creation. Even if there were other galaxies with planets very similar to earth, life could only be there if the Creator had fashioned it. If God had done that, and if these beings were going to visit us one day, then He would surely not have left us unenlightened about this."²

Pardon the crass vernacular, but these are the sorts of statements that have me crying, "bullshit!" This brand of mindless, limited, inane, uneducated dross has me seeing red, and serves no purpose to further an understanding other than that which lies within a particular mindset or theology or philosophy or scientific framework. As you can probably tell by now, I am not one who has abandoned his faith, nor am I one who dismisses science and skepticism, but I measure the building blocks of these things against each other. The answers come only as the fabricated Berlin Walls of division, and the finger-pointed catterwauls of ignorance and fraud start having holes bored into them.

The naked truth of the matter—so sorry to inform my theological friends—is that God has given us information about these aliens. And it is within the very same pages of scripture they use to bolster an argument against such things.

Whatever the truth of the matter—because, believe it or not, truth is *not* governed by *perception*—there are evidences all over the world and in nearly every ancient cultural spirituality and history that record extraordinary events. Those events have their tone set in cement, based on the interpretation given by the people who experienced them firsthand. Whether influenced by the divine or the angelic or the alien, the task in the present day is to determine just what it is that happened—and, frankly, that may not be possible beyond mere hypothesis.

The Nitty-Gritty

Because we have spent a great deal of this book talking about the spiritual and religious take on the Nephilim and their interruption in the human bloodlines, let's look to some of the evidences that would be the foundation for the extra-terrestrial—or better, *alien*—theory of human interruption.

“The UFO manifestations seem to be, by and large, merely minor variations of the age-old demonological phenomenon...”³

“UFO behaviour is more akin to magic than to physics as we know it.... [T]he modern UFO-nauts and the demons of past days are probably identical.”⁴

“[The occultist] is brought into intelligent communication with the spirits of the air, and can receive any knowledge which they possess, or any false impression they choose to impart.... [T]he demons seem permitted to do various wonders at their request.”⁵

The majority of alien abduction cases recorded in modern history have the same earmarks and traditional elements as are seen in the written

accounts of the Watchers descending to the earth to impregnate human women. Sure, the facts differ, the tales are much less mythological in scope, but the act itself is something that bears remarkable resemblance to the acts committed by the Watchers. Are we seeing today similar events as those described in the Books of Genesis and Enoch, or has an entirely fabricated modern mythos been constructed around the writings of people like Zechariah Sitchin and the growing list of Ancient Alienists? The main problem with Sitchin's work was his lack of translating the ancient texts. The conclusion he drew had to be manipulated, squeezed, and otherwise made to fit into the theories he was promulgating.

So often I hear major proponents of the Ancient Alien theories decry the belief systems of theologians. It is almost as if one is required to have an atheistic or agnostic dogma in place in order to put forward an extra-terrestrial hypothesis. To me, this has the very same dogmatic approach as do the biblical theologians who insist that aliens could not exist because they are not mentioned expressly as such in the pages of scripture.

Annunaki, You're the One. You Make Legends Lots of Fun...

All one needs do is enter the words *Annunaki* and *aliens* together in a Google search to find an endless list of Websites that state nearly the same, exact thing: that the Annunaki built a “race” of android beings to subjugate the people of the Sumerian civilization. Sadly, none of these Websites cite any sources that would have translated Sumerian cuneiform texts as stating that sort of information. When putting forward a statement regarding these kinds of ancient “findings,” it is all-important to offer up the texts themselves, or the source of the research academic who translated the texts revealing that sort of information. Sadly, again, it is more likely that the readers and proponents of works such as Sitchin’s, are merely parroting the words of their new age-ist teacher without researching his claims to see if they possess any sort of veracity.

Semitic scholar John Heise, in his work the Akkadian language, makes the observation that the term *Annunaki* is interchangeable with the word *Igigi*,⁶ which translates roughly as “those who observe,” or “the Watchers.”⁷ The Igigi are referred to as the “gods who reside in heaven,” while the Annunaki are mentioned as being in both heaven and on the earth. And when the Sumerian god Marduk asks a question of the Annunaki, it is the Igigi who respond. So the Annunaki and the Igigi are more than likely candidates for the Watchers after their descent to the earth. But are they an alien race? Well, certainly within the context of the mythology, they are alien in the sense that they came from some other place other than the earth. According to the Sumerian texts, they resided in both heaven and earth, once you see that the terms are interchangeable. So the heavenly Igigi are the same as the chthonic (or “underworld”) gods, the Annunaki.



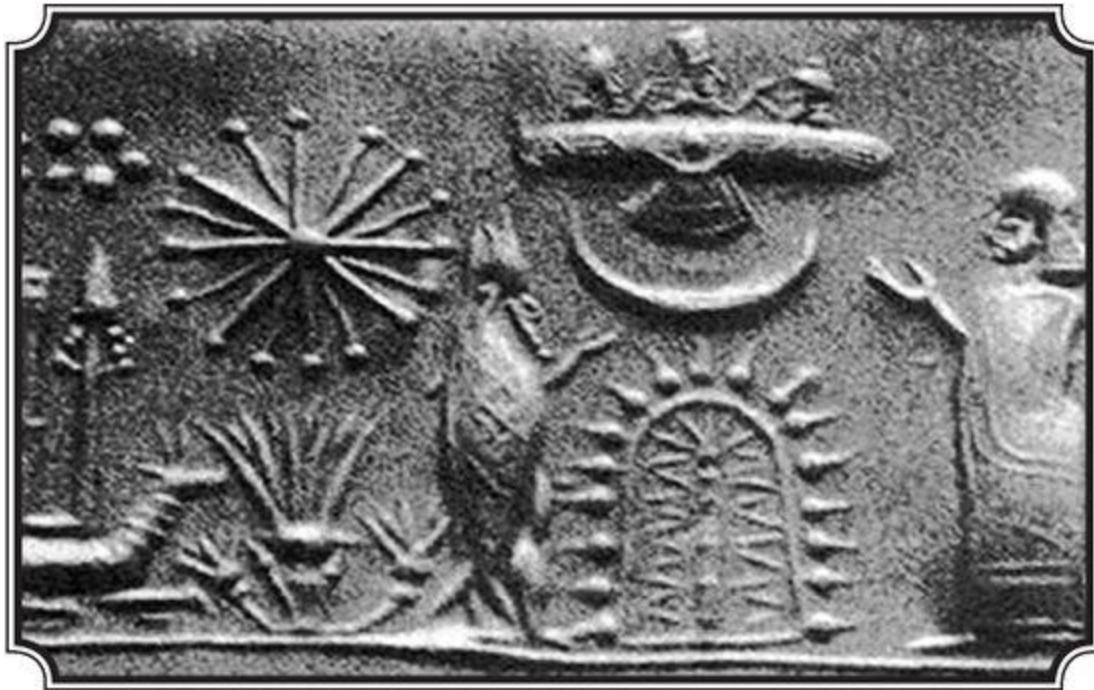
Ancient Sumerian relief of a seated Annunaki, with the sun and orbiting planets shown in the upper left. Readers of Zecharia Sitchin's books, particularly The 12th Planet, will recognize the seal, VA 243 (so named because it is number 243 in the collection of the Vorderasiatische Museum in Berlin). This seal is the centerpiece of Sitchin's theory that the Sumerians had advanced astronomical knowledge of the planetary bodies in our solar

system. This knowledge was allegedly given to the Sumerians by extraterrestrials, whom Sitchin identifies as the Anunnaki gods of Sumero-Mesopotamian mythology.

Photo is a public domain image courtesy of www.michaelsheiser.com.

According to Boulay's work, the Sumerians and Akkadians did not refer to the Annunaki as "gods." It was later cultures that introduced the notion of divine beings, and that was what gradually made its way into our language and thinking. The Sumerians referred to the Annunaki by the term *ilu*, or "the lofty ones," from which the Semitic *ili* and *el* of the Hebrew evolved. And as an interesting cross-cultural reference, Prince Utu's name in the Mayan language was Xochipili.

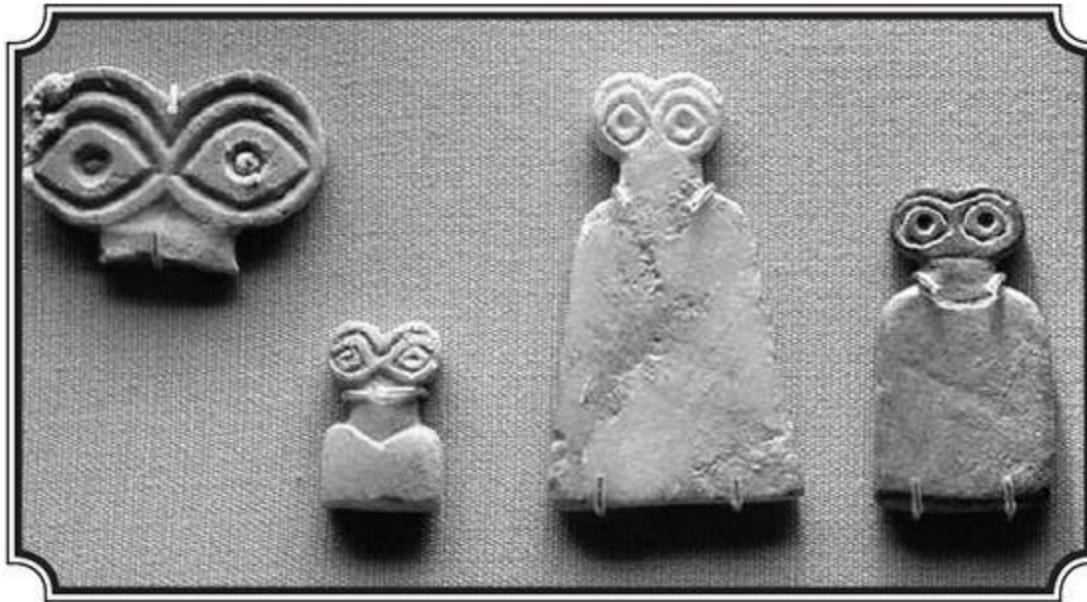
Boulay, in his fervent belief that the ancient "gods" were indeed of alien origin, goes on to say that although the term *Anunnaki* is used generically to apply to all the Proto-Sumerians who "came to this planet," it means literally "the sons of An," the greatest among their ancient gods. In the antediluvian (pre-flood) period, a large group of these Anunnaki descended from their mother ship to colonize Earth. According to the "Enuma Elish," the Babylonian myth of creation, 300 of these Anunnaki descended to Earth while another 300 remained aboard the spaceship.⁸



Images on a Sumerian clay tablet are believed to depict the Anunnaki and their “flying vehicles,” advanced spacecraft used by the Anunnaki gods to descend to the earth. The tall figure to the left may depict the half-man/half-fish god Oannes, who emerged from the ocean to teach skills to ancient mankind.

Photo is licensed under Wikipedia Creative Commons.

There are no pictures or drawings left of the Annunaki, but there are many small figurines that some ancient alienists say resemble the alien “greys” of modern ufology. Were the Annanuki the beings described by the ancient Sumerians? And were they the equivalent of the grey aliens synonymous with so many UFO and alien abduction cases reported in current history? Contemporary reports of these encounters bear a strong similarity to the ancient accounts of the Anunnaki and their appearance among the Sumerian people.



Sumerian clay figurines housed in the British Museum, London.
Photo courtesy of Jason Martell (www.xfacts.com). Used with permission.

As mentioned previously, the Sumerian culture is the oldest known written language culture. Even today we still use the same system of mathematics, the same basic calendar, and the telling of time that they developed. They possessed an amazing knowledge of the solar system and of beings coming down to earth. The Sumerians tell us that the Anunnaki had “helpers” who often performed such tasks as flying their craft, or helping with miscellaneous needs. The Sumerians directly explain that these “helpers” were not living beings, but had the physical capabilities of rendering living human tasks.

The Annunaki and Igigi also appear in other Mesopotamian cultures, sharing a commonality that isn’t just limited to the descriptions found in Genesis and Enoch. They are also found in the Ugaritic texts and the Canaanite pantheon as the *banu ili* or *banu ili-mi*.⁹ There are also more recent finds that place them in Ammorite and Phoenecian inscriptions¹⁰ dating to the eighth and seventh centuries BCE. The huge significance of these similar finds, according to Craig Hines, is the fact that the other cultures

also recognized these beings as non-human “royal ambassadors” sent to humanity at the behest of the supreme god.

Psalms, Hymns, and UFOs

No other book in the Old Testament is as richly beautiful in its imagery as the compiled Book of Psalms. They include songs written by King David and songs written by his chief musician, as well as poetry to be accompanied by musical instruments and used in worship and prayer penned by various other writers. One of the Psalms is even a prayer of forgiveness from David after he committed adultery with Bathsheba, the wife of one of his war captains, and had the man murdered.

But in and throughout the beautiful, poetic language of the Psalms is an undercurrent of visionary language that could possibly imply encounters with what some have suggested are alien encounters.

Is it possible that David, the “sweet singer of Israel,” as he was once known, had a close encounter that he described—or hid—in a song of praise to God? Psalm 18 holds an intriguing story that tells of David being surrounded by enemies and being forced into deep water, from which he was suddenly taken up out of and put in a large place. He describes the scene in very vivid terms: the heavens opening up, and God descending, mounted on a cherub—not your typical mental image of a cherub; a heavenly beast that rode on the clouds, black smoke and fire shot out the nostrils of God—and the ensuing shafts of flame consuming everything in its path. David then writes that God, astride his cherub, was followed by, or left a “jet stream,” of dark clouds that produced hail, and a “great noise” coming from God.

Is this all an incarnate manifestation of God, a miraculous act of deliverance? Or could it be something else, something much more like the

vision of Ezekiel, who saw what has been described in modern terms as some sort of craft?

David finishes the account of the heavenly attack, telling of bolts of lightning being shot at his enemies, scattering them. This was all followed by a great earthquake, leaving the modern-day reader wondering if this entire account is a description of alien craft and weaponry being used to deliver King David of Israel—the same man who slew one of the few remaining Nephilim, Goliath of Gath—and took his head. Could this be a rescue mission sent to the man who killed one of the descendants of the great giants? Or is this merely the song written by a man who was, like Moses, establishing his “tightness” with God before the people he ruled?

“4 The sorrows of death overtook me, and the rush of ungodly people made me afraid. 5 The sorrows of hell overtook me: the traps of death captured me. 6 In my distress I called on Yahweh, and cried out to my God, who heard my voice out of the sanctuary, and listened to my cry. 7 Then the earth quaked; the foundations of the hills were disturbed and shaken, because God was angry. 8 There went up a smoke out of the face of God, and fire out of the mouth of God, in which the flames consumed everything ignited by them. 9 God opened the heavens, coming down with dark smoke underneath, 10 riding on a cherub, a heavenly being, and flying on the wind, 11 making darkness the hiding place of God, with a shelter of dark waters and the thick clouds of the skies all around. 12 But the brightness that surrounded God was followed by the thick clouds that passed, with hail stones and flashes of lightening. 13 The noise of Yahweh rumbled in the heavens, and then the voice of the Most High God spoke through the hail stones and flashes of light. 14 Yes, God sent out bolts of electricity, scattering the enemies, shooting out like flashes of lightning, and destroyed them. 15 Then the outlets of water were seen, and the heart of the earth was uncovered at Your word, oh Yahweh, from the exhaust of Your face. 16-18 God sent from above, taking hold of me, and drawing me up out of much water, delivering me from my strong enemies, and from those who hated me, which were too strong for me, and who had shamed me in the day of my misfortune, but You, oh Yahweh, were my stay. 19

You brought me forward also into a large place and delivered me, because you delighted in me.”

(Psalm 18:4-19)

Of course, it could simply be a great songwriter/story-teller embellishing his tale with vivid, colorful imagery. It is interesting to me how so many Bible believers will entertain and believe the most garish, creative stories told in the pages of scripture, but will shun the notion of the existence of aliens and UFOs, because they are just too far-fetched.

A Long Time Ago, In a Galaxy Very Close to Home...

Another Psalm of David tells of God’s presence shaking the earth and the heavens descending like an object of silver and gold, with chariots of heaven numbering 20,000 containing thousands of heavenly beings. He described it as an inanimate object found in the feeding pens of a sheepfold that comes to life and flies through the air like a dove, shimmering with silver and gold, and glowing white like the snow. He described armies running in fear from its presence. Could this be a mother spacecraft with many smaller spacecrafts containing their occupants? Would these aliens come to the rescue of God’s chosen one?

“7 Oh God, when You went forward before Your people, Israel, when You marched with them through the wilderness; Selah: 8 The earth shook and the clouds descended at Your presence: even Sinai itself quaked at the presence of God, the God of Your people, Israel.... 12 Leaders of armed forces ran away, and our dependents at home received the benefits. 13 Though You’ve been as lifeless as a metal pot, yet you will fly as the silver wings of a dove, with feathers of yellow gold.

14 When the Almighty scattered rulers in it, it was white as the snow on Mt. Zalmon... 17 The vehicles of God are twenty thousand, in which are thousands of angels: my Sovereign God is among them, as in Mt. Sinai, in the holy place... 32 Sing to God, You nations of the earth; oh sing praises to Yahweh; Selah: 33 To the Great One who rides on the heaven of heavens, which are eternal; see, the mighty voice of God sounds out. 34 We attribute strength to You, God: Your greatness is above Your people, Israel, and Your strength is in the skies. 35 Oh God, You are awesome coming out of Your holy places: It is You, God, who gives strength and power to Your people, Israel. God be blessed!"

(Psalm 68:7-8, 12-14, 17, 32-35)

The Ostentatious Power of the Remote

If you are a follower of more contemporary UFO sightings and activity, you'll have noticed that many of them take place in remote areas, such as deserts and mountainous regions, and over large bodies of water, despite the more recent advent of mass sightings over populated areas. Now consider some of the biblical events that have piqued the curiosities of ancient biblical UFO theorists: Moses was witness to a physical manifestation of God while hidden in the cleft of a secluded mountain outcrop; the prophet Elijah and Moses appeared to Jesus, and two of his disciples on the very slopes of the same mountain where the Watchers are to have descended to the earth in the Book of Enoch, Mount Hermon; God protected the children of Israel with a pillar of cloud by day and one of fire by night as they wandered as a nomadic tribe of freed slaves after the first Passover and the Exodus. Are these accounts of God's miraculous majesty and power or could they possibly be descriptions of events that might be linked to UFO and alien activity? The 29th Psalm describes some unusual activity in remote, out-of-the-way places that Ancient Alien theorists have linked to possible UFO sightings of a biblical proportion:

“3 The voice of Yahweh is heard across the oceans: the God of glory rumbles, echoing over the seas. 4 The voice of Yahweh is strong and majestic. 5 The voice of Yahweh snaps the cedars in two; yes, Yahweh snaps the cedars of Lebanon completely in two. 6 Yahweh makes the volcanoes erupt. 7 The voice of Yahweh spews fiery flames. 8 The voice of Yahweh shakes the desert; the wilderness rumbles. 9 The voice of Yahweh makes the doe to bear, and unclothes the forests, and every one tells of the glory of God in the sanctuary. 10 Yahweh rules over the Tsunami; yes, oh Yahweh sits a Sovereign One forever.”

(Psalm 29:3-10)

Columbus and the Psalmist

The voice of God is described as enormously powerful in this Psalm. The flames and the rumbling noise, along with weapons that snap massive cedar trees in two, cause volcanoes to erupt, make the deserts cascade with voluminous rumblings and the forests to burn to ash. Can these all be interpreted as the manifestation of advanced alien spacecraft? Could a space ship hide in the depths of the ocean, as many ufologists already believe? Psalm 104 describes a very bright object resting beneath the water, then emerging and moving with great speed into the clouds.

Interestingly, a UFO was spotted by none other than Christopher Columbus during his maiden voyage to America in 1492. Columbus recorded in his log that, as he was sailing through the waters of what is now the Bermuda Triangle, his compass began acting in an odd fashion. He and Pedro Gutierrez while on the deck of the *Santa Maria*, observed, “a light glimmering at a great distance,” as they observed it for several hours “in sudden and passing gleams.”¹¹ Four hours later, they saw land. Columbus attributed the sighting to divine guidance to the New World.

“2 Covering Yourself with light as with clothes: You who stretches out the heavens like a curtain: 3 Who lays the shafts of Your chambers in the waters and makes the clouds Your vehicle, moving on the wings of the wind: 4 Who makes the angels spirits; Your ministers a flaming fire.”

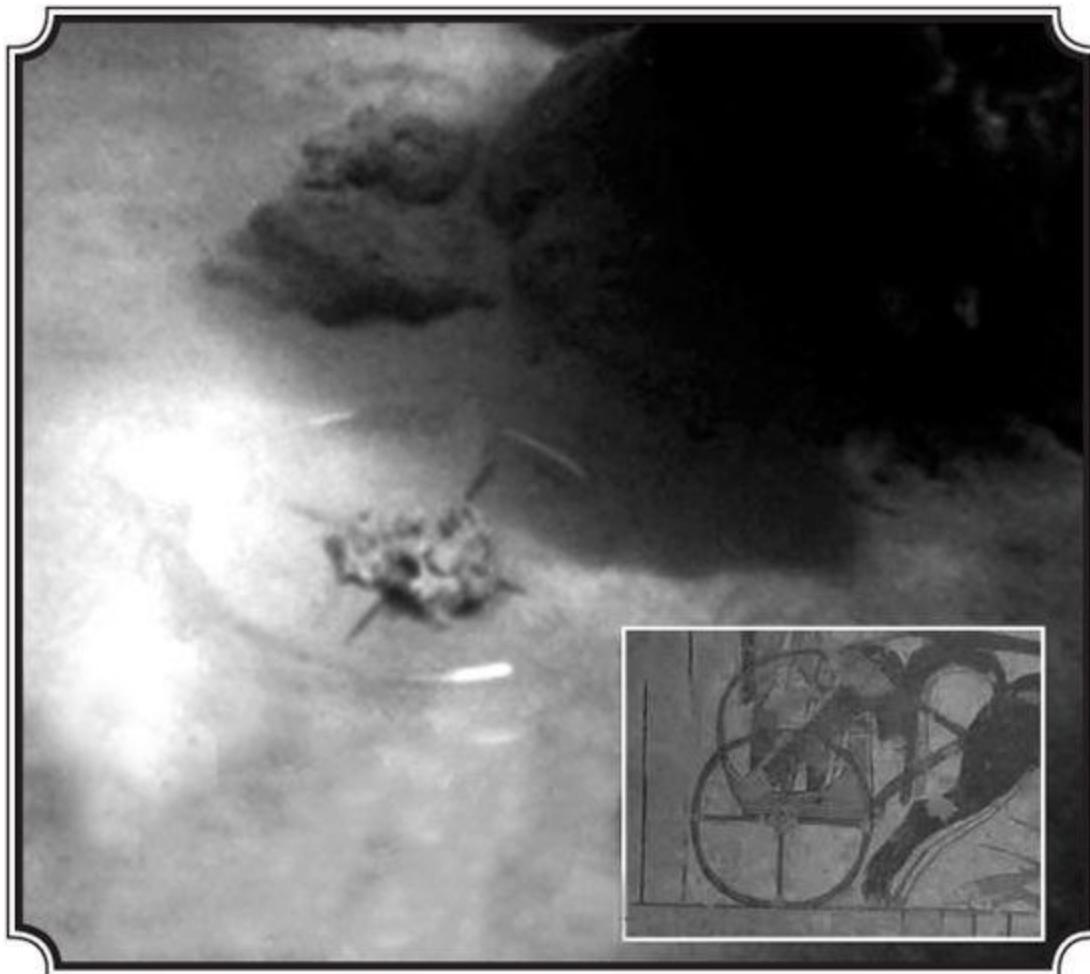
(Psalm 102:2-4)

Making a Way Through the Sea

Unusual activity from the depths of the sea is also mentioned in Psalms 74 and 77. According to the Book of Exodus, God let a strong east wind blow all night, parting the waters of the Red Sea—or, as many biblical scholars believe, the marshy region of the Yam Suph to the far northern delta region of the Red Sea. What, other than an almighty God, could send a powerful force strong enough to part the waters and let the Israelites cross on dry ground, releasing it just in time to drown the whole of the whole of Pharaoh Amenhotep II’s mighty army? Psalm 77:19 tells us that God travels in the sea and the oceans, and that his path cannot be discovered. Is this a reference to underwater craft that traverse in obscurity through the briny depths?

“13 You divided the sea by Your strength: You broke the heads of the dragons in the oceans. 14 You broke the heads of leviathan, the great sea beasts, in pieces, and gave them for meat to the people living in the wilderness. 15 You opened up the wellspring and the flood: You dried up mighty rivers. 16 The waters felt You, oh God, the waters felt You disturb them and the depths were troubled as well. 17 The clouds poured rain, the skies thundered, and Your lightening flashed also. 18 The voice of Your thunder was in the heavens: the lightning lit up the world and the earth trembled and shook. 19 Your way is in the sea, and Your path in the great oceans, and Your footsteps aren’t known.”

(Psalm 77:13-19)



One of the many gilded chariot wheels discovered at the bottom of the Red Sea, in the Gulf of Aqaba, off Neweiba Beach. Coral does not grow on gold, but the wood inside had completely deteriorated. Inset: Chariot wheel on Egyptian tomb painting.

Photo courtesy of Dr. Lennart Moller, Karolinska Institute, Stockholm, Sweden.

Wax On, Wax Off

Is Psalm 97 a description of God or of an alien craft? Melting hills, enfolding darkness broken by fire, lightning, and illumination.

“2 Clouds and darkness are around you: righteousness and judgment are the symbols of Your reign. 3 A fire goes before you, and burns up Your enemies everywhere. 4 Your lightning enlightened the world: the people of earth saw, and trembled.

5 The hills melted like wax at the presence of the Sovereign One, at the presence of the Most Sovereign of the whole earth. 6 The heavens declare Your righteousness, and everybody sees Your glory.”

(Psalm 97:2-6)

Riders on the Storm

Do God and His angels ride in spacecrafts? In one Psalm they are described as a cherub on the back of whom God rides down out of the clouds. Here, in Psalm 144, we have a description of God and His angels flying down out of the heavens in what is said by biblical alienists to be a spacecraft. What if that alien spacecraft contained what we know as God and the angels screaming down out of the heavens and laying waste to the mountains? Is this the description of a terrible ufological weapon, or the power of a divine God? The psalmist may have wondered the very same thing, as he questions why God would take special note of his people and destroy their enemies. In this verse he prays for God to open the heavens and come back down to destroy his enemies.

“3 Yahweh, what are human beings, that You take note of them! Or the children of humanity, that You take account of them! 4 People are as nothing: their days are as a shadow that passes away. 5 Open Your heavens, oh Yahweh, and come down: You touch the mountains and they smoke. 6 Make lightning, and scatter them: shoot out Your lightening bolts, and destroy them.”

(Psalm 144:3-6)

Frogs and Locusts and the Angel of Death (Oh My!)

Psalm 78 is a *maskil* of Asaph—a maskil being a particular style of song, much like we'd say ballad or love song—in which the psalmist recounts the mighty power of God displayed against the Egyptians when Moses led the Hebrews out of bondage. He speaks of the terrible wonders of God when he parted the waters of the Red Sea, turned the Egyptian sources of water to blood, spread blight, frogs, and locusts across the land, then engulfed the Egyptians in utter darkness so that pharaoh “could not see his hand before his face.” The devastation goes all the way to the house of pharaoh when the final plague of the firstborn takes the eldest child in every house of Egypt. Some have speculated that it was the power of alien forces that brought down the heinous plagues and executed the great geological miracles.

“13 You divided the sea, and allowed them to pass through it; making the waters to stand up as a mountain pass. 14 You also led them with a cloud in the daytime, and through the night with the light of fire. 15 You split the rock in the wilderness, and gave them water to drink from a deep creek. 16 God brought streams of water out of the rock also, causing it to run down like rivers. 17 And they sinned all the more against God by provoking the Most High in the wilderness. 18 And they tempted God in their hearts by asking for meat for their appetites. 19 Yes, they spoke against God and said, Can God furnish a table in the wilderness? 20 Look, God split the rock, so that the waters gushed out, and the streams overflowed; Can God give us bread also? Can God provide meat for the people as well? 21 Yahweh heard this, and was angry: so a fiery wrath was kindled against Jacob, and anger also came up against Israel, 22 because they didn’t believe in God, and didn’t trust in Your salvation, 23 though You had commanded the

clouds from above, and opened the doors of heaven, 24 and had rained down manna on them to eat, and had given them of the grain of heaven. 25 People ate the food of angels: for You, God sent them enough meat to fill them. 26 You caused an east wind to blow in the heaven, 27 and powerfully brought in the south wind, raining meat on them as dust, and quail like the sand of the sea, 28 and let them fall in the middle of their camp, all around their tents. 29 So they ate and were well filled, because You gave them what they desired. 30 They weren't kept from their appetites, but while their meat was yet in their mouths, 31 the anger of God came down on them, and slew the fattest of them, and brought down the chosen people of Israel....42 They neither remember God's hand, nor the day when You delivered them from the adversary. 43 How God had wrought signs in Egypt, and wonders in the field of Zoan, turning their rivers into blood, making it so that they couldn't drink it. 45-46 You sent different sorts of flies among them, which devoured them; and frogs, which destroyed them, giving their increase to the caterpillar, and their labor to the locust also; destroying their vines with hail, and their sycamore trees with frost; destroying their cattle also in the hail, and their flocks with hot lightning bolts; casting on them the fierceness of Your anger, rage, indignation, and trouble, by sending evil angels among them; making way for anger; not sparing their soul from death, but giving their lives over to the pestilence; and striking all the firstborn in Egypt, their strongest rule, in the sanctuaries of Ham.... 52 But You made Your own people go forward like animals, 53 guiding them in the wilderness like a herd, leading them safely on, so that they weren't afraid, while the sea overwhelmed their enemies. 54 You brought them to the border of Your sanctuary, even to this mountain, which the hand of God had bought.”

(Psalm 78:13-31, 42-43, 45-46, 52-54)

Into the Belly of the Earth

There was a great rebellion among the Hebrews led by a man named Dathan. Moses descended with the tablets of the Law after spending 40 days atop the fiery, tumultuous, God-inhabited Mount Sinai, only to find the people worshipping a golden calf they had erected as their god who led them out of bondage. In righteous anger, Moses breaks the tablets of the Law and calls out to the people to divide, the followers of Dathan on this side, and the followers of Jehovah on that. After they separate, the ground immediately opens up in a great earthquake and swallows up Dathan and his rebels. You can imagine the hushed silence that fell over the rest of the people. With all the miraculous wonders performed under the leadership of Moses during their great Exodus, one wonders how these people would do anything but follow Moses' lead. Yet, Ancient Alienists believe there is more to this account than a simple miraculous tale of divine judgment. Was Moses not only being led by UFOs through the wilderness, but also being protected and upheld by a race of alien visitors? Here is how the book of Psalms records this event from the Exodus:

“16 They envied Moses and Aaron, the saints of Yahweh, also in the camp. 17 The earth opened up and swallowed Dathan, and buried the followers of Abiram. 18 And a fire was kindled in the middle of them, burning up those sinful ones.... 28 They joined themselves also to the false god, Baal-peor, and ate offerings made for the dead. 29 So they provoked You to anger with their inventions, and a deadly illness came on them. 30 Then Phinehas stood up and executed judgment: so the deadly illness was stopped.”

(Psalm 106:16-18, 28-30)

And that's just a few of the Psalms. Were we to mention every biblical passage that contains even a hint of the possibility of extra-terrestrial activity, there would not be enough room in a 10-volume set to list them, let alone comment on them. This sampling should have given you a taste of what is inside the Bible itself, when it comes to the imaginings and speculations of biblical alien theorists.



When we consider all of the passages in scripture that seem to indicate miraculous deeds and divine actions, and if you place all those passages in the context of Ancient Aliens as opposed to the acts of Jehovah, you can see the wealth of information that is right at your fingertips, on the shelves of nearly every home in Christendom.

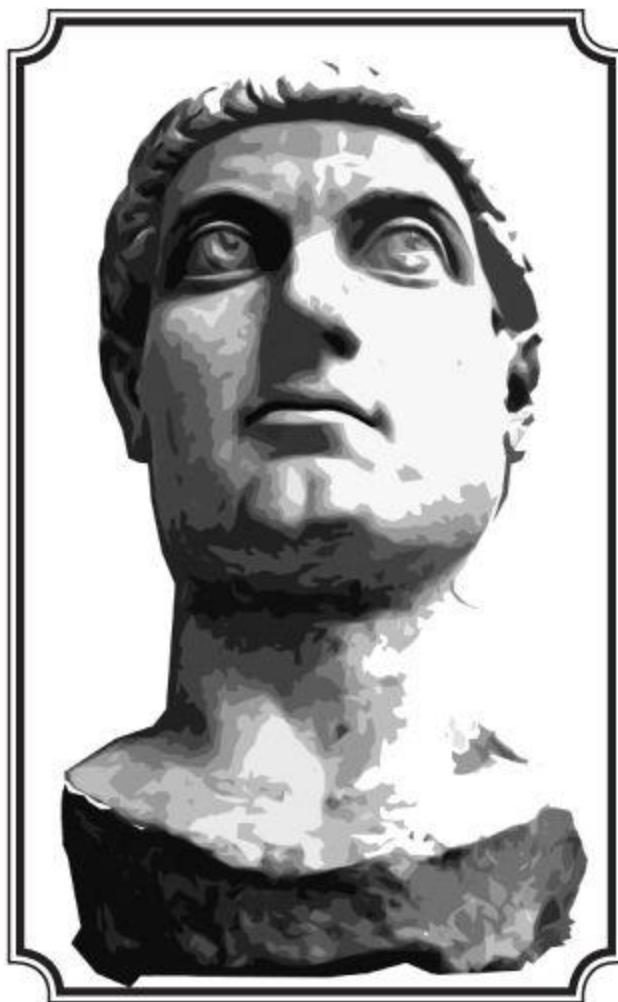
Clearly, if your perspective is one that is firmly rooted in Judeo-Christianity, you will see these passages as the amazing, almighty acts of a supreme being benevolently and sometimes violently imposing his majesty in the lives of his prophets and worshippers, making a display of his power and majesty. But if your beginning point is one that lies outside the realm of faith in the divine characters dwelling in these books, then you are outside the box looking in. Under that light, these pages can be filled with accounts of ancient UFOs, and alien races that appeared as God, angels, demons, and a host of other heavenly beings.

If Moses, Ezekiel, David, the psalmists, and other biblical leaders and figures had in fact witnessed alien presences, and interpreted their experiences as encounters with God, then it would be absolutely appropriate of them to have warned others to fear God and obey his commands. In light of the passages we have examined regarding the Watchers and their offspring, as well as the ancient gods of the Sumerians, it is clear that the issue is wide open for debate and further examination.

We may never know in this lifetime if these beings are of God or from some distant corner of our physical galaxy, but there is much fodder for thought, and a good starting point for examining the issue further.

chapter 7

Constantine: One Emperor, One God



Constantine, the first “Christian” emperor of Rome.
Photo courtesy of the Capitoline Hill Museum, Rome, Italy
(en.museicapitolini.org).

The story of the Nephilim and their divine parentage is one that the early Church fathers did not want told—at least in the entire form as it was written down in the Book of Enoch. It was a tale that transgressed the Church’s teachings that spirit beings were sexless, and spoke of beings who were considered to be gods among early mankind. Their presence in the story of Noah’s flood was something that created ecclesiastical panic among the early church fathers, and when push came to shove, there was no unanimous consensus, and Enoch was booted from the canon of God-breathed scripture. This was done under the influence of Rome’s first Christian emperor, Constantine, who ruled from 306 to 337 CE.

Constantine used his power to establish and promote the religion of Christianity, but he always remained a controversial figure, especially through the eyes of those who recorded his histories, which are abundant and detailed, but have been strongly influenced by the official propaganda of the period and are often skewed.¹ According to the various contradictory accounts of the life of Constantine, he was seen by some as the great Christian Prince, and by others, during his decline, as a noble war hero corrupted by Christian influences who transformed into a tyrannical despot in his old age—“a hero... degenerating into a cruel and dissolute monarch.”²

Among the great accomplishments of Emperor Constantine were his ecclesiastical councils, which came as he began to enter the latter part of his reign. It is said that he did not personally adopt Christianity until well into his 40s, but once he did, he instituted laws that allowed Christians to worship and practice freely in the Roman empire, as well any other religion. Constantine established a precedent for the position of the emperor as having some influence on the religious discussions going on within the Catholic Church of that time, mainly because he disliked what he considered to be the risks to societal stability that religious disputes and controversies brought with them. And so he sought, wherever possible, to establish an orthodoxy. In fact, the emperor saw it as his duty to ensure that God was “properly worshiped” in his empire, and that “proper worship” would be determined by the Church.³



The Council of Nicea, 325 CE. Melkite icon from the 17th century. Artist unknown.

Photo courtesy of the Peter Paul Reubens Gallery.

The first ecclesiastical council summoned by Constantine was the Council of Nicea, 325 CE, in which several Church resolutions were discussed and set into motion. Among them was the beginnings of the canonization of scripture, which set a precedent for removing from the scriptures, any book on which the entire council could not unanimously agree. The Book of Enoch, despite its many mentions throughout the writings of both the Old and New Testaments, as well as being quoted by Moses and the Apostle Paul, was not unanimously accepted, and it fell under the surgical knife of the council.

Keep at the forefront of your mind, when considering the facts behind the Council of Nicea, the overall motivations on the part of Emperor Constantine when summoning them. Although Constantine's reputation was

bolstered by his propaganda machine, it is well-known⁴ that he was motivated by the desire to establish only two things:

1. One God/one emperor.
2. One religion/one empire.

Constantine was above all a pragmatist, and his Christianity was only prominent when it was politically expedient—and he did not become more compassionate after his conversion to Christianity. On the heels of presiding over the Council of Nicea, he went immediately back home to Constantinople and murdered both his wife, Fausta, and his eldest son, Crispus. Fausta was Crispus's stepmother, and there were rumors that she and Crispus had been engaged in immorality while the emperor was away. Constantine had his wife slowly boiled to death in a bath, and his son was cold poisoned. Indeed, Constantine was the poster boy for living your life as licentiously and perverted as possible, saving baptism for his deathbed. Which is exactly what he did. He lived his life as wickedly as any other Roman emperor, despite the paths he paved for Christianity and its spread, and went screaming into heaven simply because he was baptized minutes before he died.

Within the first 400 years of Christianity there were in existence more than 20 gospels, 15 apocalypses, and nearly 50 other texts about Jesus. In some of these texts, Jesus didn't die, took revenge on his enemies, was not human at all, was not God at all, and was a wise teacher instead of a miracle worker. The Gospel of Thomas, attributed to "Doubting Thomas," has been discovered in its entirety and contains what is claimed to be direct quotes from Jesus, yet it has been left out of the Bible. The Gospel of Peter, Jesus' best friend among the disciples, says Jesus was silent on the cross and did not feel any pain, for he only appeared to be human, yet this Gospel was also left out of the Bible. Only a select four of the written gospels made it into the Bible—Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John—and only those Gospels that told their followers what the early Roman Church wanted them to hear. Constantine's desire to have one single authority in the Church apparently worked quite well.

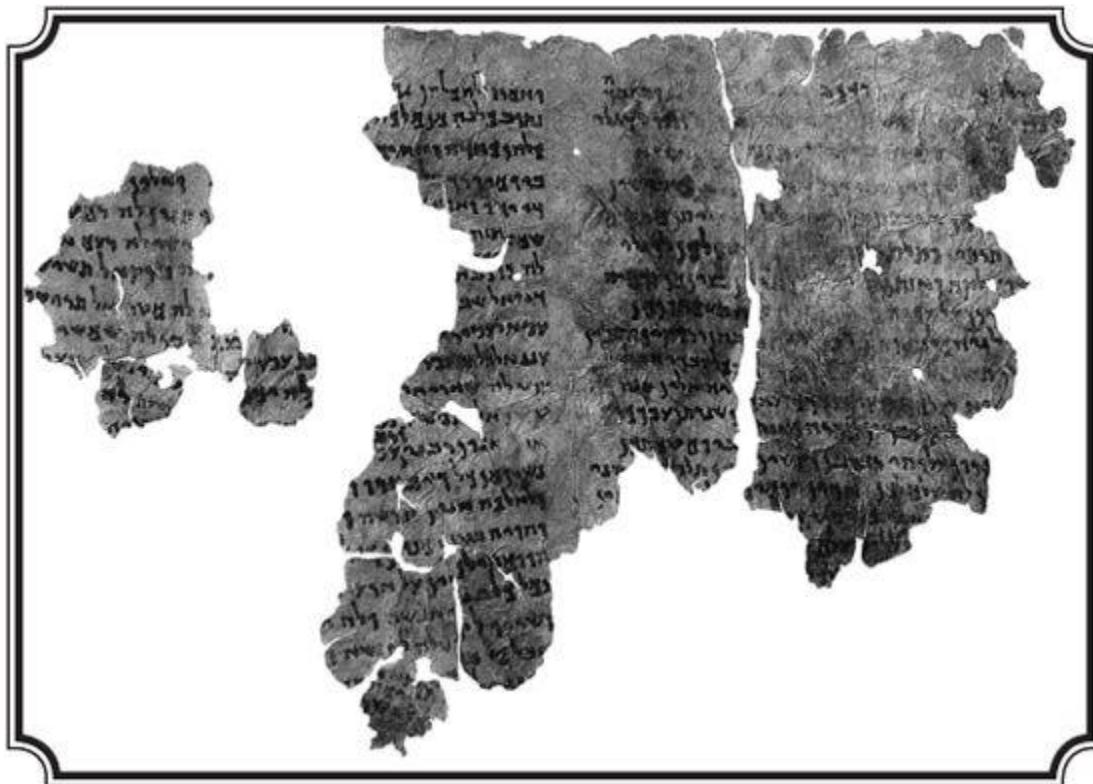
Lost books referred to in the Bible, but removed by Council:

- ★ Book of Jasher (Joshua 10:13, 2 Samuel 1:18).
- ★ Book of the Acts of Solomon (1 Kings 11:41).
- ★ Book of Samuel the Seer (1 Chronicles 29:29).
- ★ Book of Gad the Seer (1 Chronicles 29:29).
- ★ Book of Nathan the Prophet (1 Chronicles 29:29; 2 Chronicles 9:29).
- ★ Prophecy of Ahijah (2 Chronicles 9:29, 13:22).
- ★ Visions of Iddo the Seer (2 Chronicles 9:29, 12:15, 13:22).
- ★ Book of Shemaiah (2 Chronicles 12:15).
- ★ Book of Jehu (2 Chronicles 35:25).
- ★ Sayings of the Seers (2 Chronicles 33:19).
- ★ Lament for Josiah (2 Chronicles 35:25).
- ★ Paul's epistle to Corinthians before our "1 Corinthians" (Corinthians 5:9).
- ★ Paul's epistle to Church at Laodicea (Colossians 4:16).

The Book of Enoch

Because we have spent so much time talking about and around, and quoting from the book of Enoch—as well as mentioning its exclusion from the scriptural canon—it seems time to give a little bit of history about the author and the book itself.

The Book of Enoch is an ancient Jewish religious manuscript ascribed to Enoch, the great-grandfather of Noah (the same Noah associated with the Ark and Flood account of Genesis 6-9) and, according to the New Testament Book of Jude, the seventh generation from Adam. Enoch is one of those ancient manuscripts that was dropped out of the now-traditional biblical canon (the word *canon* comes from the Greek “κανών”, meaning “rule”). Simply said, you won’t find Enoch’s book in a current-day Bible, but it is grouped with several other books referred to as the apocryphal writings, meaning they were considered to be hidden, esoteric, spurious, or of questionable authenticity by the Church leaders of the day. You can find some of these books in their own section in various versions of the Christian Bible, but they are clearly labeled as being “non-scriptural.” And though the Book of Enoch is considered to be questionable by Judaism and all of Christianity, it is regarded as canon by the Ethiopian Orthodox and Eritrean Orthodox Churches.



Dead Sea Scroll Fragment of Enoch 1. The backside of P.Mich.inc. 5552, showing portions of the Book of Enoch in Greek. This manuscript is

part of the Chester Beatty Papyri, and is the third leaf of the surviving manuscript.

Photo is licensed under Wikipedia Creative Commons.

The Book of Enoch, along with several of the other apocryphal books, were excluded from the Bible during the Council of Nicea in 325 CE, which was convoked by the Roman emperor, Constantine, the first “Christian” emperor of the Roman Empire. But Constantine’s status as a “Christian” is held in as dubious regard as some of the books that his empirically appointed church emissaries booted out of the Bible.

The first section of the Book of Enoch (Dead Sea Scrolls) describes the fall of a group of non-human entities known as the Watchers—the bene haElohim—the Sons of God who fathered the Nephilim. Their descent to the earth is chronicled not only in the Book of Enoch, but also in the old testament’s Book of Genesis, where the subject was edited down to a few mere sentences by either by Moses himself, or by later scribes. In the Genesis 6:1-4 passage, we find Moses doing what Moses often did: abbreviating and extrapolating vital information without much detail. The passage is obviously a series of quotations from a much older source regarding the Nephilim, but contains distinct earmarks of having been edited at a later date, as the writing style doesn’t match that of the rest of the book.

Despite modern scholars dating the authorship of the Book of Enoch to a time period in Jewish history known as “The Captivity” (around the third or fourth century BCE, when the Diaspora—the scattered nation of Israel—were living in Babylon), Enoch is a much older book. In the New Testament Book of Jude, the Book of Enoch is quoted, and obvious authorship attributed to Enoch, the seventh-generational descendant from Adam.

“14 Enoch, the seventh from Adam, prophesied about them: ‘See, the Lord is coming with thousands upon thousands of his holy ones 15 to judge everyone, and to convict all of them of all the ungodly acts

they have committed in their ungodliness, and of all the defiant words ungodly sinners have spoken against him.””

(Jude 1:14-15)

The apostle Paul, who wrote the little epistle of Jude, was an educated member of the Jewish Sanhedrin prior to his conversion to Christianity, and the Book of Enoch was very well-known to his educated, religious class.

The Book of Enoch opens with these brief words about Enoch himself, saying:

“2 [Enoch] a just man, whose eyes were opened by God so that he saw a vision of the Holy One in the heavens, which the sons of God showed to me, and from them I heard everything, and I knew what I saw....”

(Enoch 1:2)

This fragmentary manuscript is similar to portions of the Book of Jubilees, an important writing of Second Temple Judaism that survived only among Christian readers and that has long been known to us from versions in Greek and Ethiopic. Among Ethiopian Christians, Jubilees was so treasured that it actually became a part of their version of the Old Testament. Fifteen fragmentary pieces of Jubilees have turned up among the Dead Sea Scrolls, establishing the work as one of the most common among those caches and clearly testifying to its importance for those who hid the texts. Like the Ethiopian Christians, they may have considered the book a part of the canon of Holy Writ.

In that light, the Book of Enoch seems to be a retelling of the Book of Jubilees, just as Genesis seems to be a very brief highlight of what is found in the Book of Enoch in its Nephilim segment. It may be that we should consider Enoch an example of “rewritten Bible,” the interpretive phenomenon we encounter so often in the scrolls. Surviving fragments of

the scrolls labeled “4Q227” relate to Jubilees 4:17-24, but give the material in a different order.

Jubilees 4:18 reports that the angels taught Enoch the calendar.

Jubilees 4:22 says that Enoch testified against the Watchers, or fallen angels, who had taken human wives and whose progeny were the Giants.

Jubilees 4:23 speaks of the judgment of the entire world.

Frag. 2 i[...]E]noch, after we taught him 2 [...] he was with the angels of God] six full jubilees 3 [... the la]nd, into the midst of the sons of man and he testified against them all 4 [...] and also against the watchers. And he wrote all [...] heaven and the ways of their hosts and [ho]ly ones 6 [...] So that the ri[ghteous ones] shall not commit error [...]

Ancient Cosmology

According to Hindu philosophy, life in the universe is created, destroyed, and re-created once every 4.1 to 8.2 billion years. Each one of these creation cycles is a repeating period of time divided by four yugas, or epochs/eras. The cycles are said to repeat like the seasons of a year, waxing and waning within a greater time-cycle of the creation and destruction of the universe. Like summer, spring, winter, and autumn, each yuga involves stages or gradual changes that the earth and the consciousness of mankind goes through as a whole. These cycles, devolving from light to darkness are the Satya yuga, the Treta yuga, the Dvapara yuga, and finally the Kali yuga. A complete yuga cycle from a high Golden Age of enlightenment to a Dark Age and back again is said to be caused by the solar system’s motion around another star, a binary star system that rotates around our solar system.

In accordance with this cosmology, we are currently in the final yuga cycle, the Kali yuga, which is the darkest of the “seasons,” also known as the Age of the Male Demon [Kali], and the Age of Vice. According to the Surya Siddhanta, Kali yuga began at midnight on 18 February 3102 BCE, and will last for 432,000 years.⁵

chapter 8

The Nephilim

“What a piece of work is a man! How noble in reason! How infinite in faculties! In form and moving, how express and admirable! In action how like an angel! In apprehension, how like a god!”

—William Shakespeare (*Hamlet* II, ii)

Now we are on it. The “brass tacks” of this entire book: the Nephilim themselves. We have taken many words to get to this chapter, and we have examined many different foundations and rabbit-trailing facets that have lead us to this point, albeit *not exhaustively*. As I mentioned in the Introduction, I am certainly not the end-all and be-all on the topic of the Nephilim, the Watchers, their religious and spiritual aspects and ramifications, nor the alternative alien angle we have touched on in oh-so-cursory a fashion. I am, however, another in a long, ever-lengthening line of interested, invested researchers to study, examine, and come to somewhat scholarly conclusions. I have melded the scholarship done by so many others before me, broached the pop cultural, fringe, metaphysical science, and presented ideas and hypotheses drawn from the historical, cultural, archaeological, and anthropological data that is so scattered and diverse on this topic.

What is clear is that something phenomenal happened in our ancient past—and is still happening today—that ought not be relegated simply to the realm of the supernatural or the paranormal only because it deals with subject matter that falls outside the lines etched in the sand by the scientific and religious communities. I have found it extremely daunting yet strangely interesting that the two differing camps in nearly any phenomena, theory, or

topic out there, seem to unwittingly come together in their opposing dissents and dogmatic stances when it comes to the Nephilim and all the surrounding information.

As I have mentioned in my public lectures many times, a study of the Nephilim is no simple task, for it encompasses a plethora of hugely diverse information that delves into so many other aspects of human existence. The story of the Nephilim is an enormous topic, for it goes to the roots of religion, faith, science, and the existence of humanity as we know it—or don't know it—today.

On one hand, the Nephilim speak to the foundations of human development; the encoding of DNA and ancient anthropological development of human civilization. On the other hand, the Nephilim represent a caste of mutated, corrupt progeny, bequeathed by the Watchers, part of the military structured host of created beings who were subservient to the Holy God of the Jews and the Christians. And what you come down to is nothing short of a religious-scientific quandary: to decide which end of the spectrum you choose to believe regarding these characters who are so much the product of a mythological history. And, yes, it is about *belief*, because even the facts used to establish a more-or-less solid case for the existence of these beings does not follow the dictates of historical, scientific, and anthropological rules. Their source point lies within religious texts and the faith writings that comprise scriptures from all different spiritual aspects, and as you have already experienced in the earlier pages of this book, I have used as my starting point the Book of Genesis in the Judeo-Christian scriptures—after all, the word Nephilim itself is sourced from those pages.

You are reading this book because these things are of interest to you. You either possess a belief that they exist, and you want to know more about it. Or you have a curiosity about these sorts of mysteries that leads to you to find out what others have to say about them. Or you are simply looking on these pages to point out what I have missed or where my theories are disingenuous or lacking in scholarship. Whatever the case may be for you,

when it comes to the Nephilim and all the surrounding mass of information used to build up a case, you have to—in your own mind—come to one of two conclusions: Either the Nephilim are figments of spiritually based imaginations, or they are actual beings who existed, whether having non-supernatural explanations or spiritual ones.

This reminds me of a true story I heard in my youth, as told by the head of Baptist Mid-Missions. A group of missionaries set up a bush hospital to help the population of several small villages in west Africa. As their medical outpost became established, the missionaries had to work very diplomatically with the tribal “witch doctor,” who saw the influence of modern medicine as a threat to his craft and sway over the locals. There had been an outbreak of disease in which it was found that certain bacteria were the cause of the illness, though the witch doctor had insisted it was demonic in nature. By invite, the tribal shaman came to the mission hospital and was shown a microscope, through which he could actually see the living bacteria and what it did to human cells to cause the illness that had been plaguing the villagers. The witch doctor left the meeting disgruntled and angry. Late that same night, the mission hospital was broken into by the witch doctor and his minions. They stole the microscope, took it to the village center, and smashed it to pieces. When he was confronted by the mission staff and asked why he did such a thing to such an expensive and valuable piece of medical equipment, the shaman smiled, with a bit of a twinkle in his eye, and said very softly, “Now there are no more bacteria.”

Just because we can’t see or ignore the evidence does not render it nonexistent. These pages, along with the writings of many others, simply stand as a microscope to point out the facts, whether scientific, religious, spiritual, archaeological, or any other method incorporated to establish the whos, whats, wheres, and whys of the Nephilim, their progenitors, and the historical ramifications. Destroying or diminishing the vehicle of scripture or mythology cannot undo what exists.

“The Nephilim were on the earth in those days, and also afterward, when the Sons of God [the bene ha’Elohim] descended to the

daughters of human beings [Adam] and had children by them. They were the heroes of old, men of renown.”

(Genesis 6:4)

Divine Offspring

When I was a young child attending Sunday School at the local church in our neighborhood, I was taught about the story of Noah and the Ark. According to the storyboard felt cloth cut-outs, Noah was a man who wore a robe and had a white beard. God had told him to build an enormous boat, and to take two of every kind of animal on board, for there was going to be a Great Flood coming that would destroy the entire earth. The reason for the Flood, we were taught, was that God had become angry with humans due to their sin and wickedness, and in his utter holiness, he needed to destroy every living thing and start all over, relaunching the human race with Noah and his sons and their wives, the only righteous people left on the earth untainted by the wickedness of the rest of mankind. I heard this tale repeated many times as I was growing up, and saw many variations of illustrated children’s books, toys, puppets, and even cartoons and movies depicting the tale. But never, in all of those tellings and retellings of the story, did I once hear about the Nephilim. At least not until I was much older, attending Bible College and seminary.

When thinking about the deliberate omission on the part of my various Sunday School teachers of one of the most important features of the story of Noah and the Ark, I wondered if it was, perhaps, due to the fact that the entire story hinges on sexual acts—perhaps even rapes—perpetrated against human women by divine beings. These would certainly be things that most child-conscious church lay workers would hold as being too graphic for the minds of children. Yet these sexual events are vital to understanding the entire passage and the much deeper implications of why the flood took place.

“1 When human beings began to increase in number on the earth and daughters were born to them, 2 the sons of God saw that the daughters of humans were beautiful, and they married any of them they chose. 3 Then the LORD said, ‘My Spirit will not contend with humans forever, for they are mortal[b]; their days will be a hundred and twenty years.’ 4 The Nephilim were on the earth in those days—and also afterward—when the sons of God went to the daughters of humans and had children by them. They were the heroes of old, men of renown. 5 The LORD saw how great the wickedness of the human race had become on the earth, and that every inclination of the thoughts of the human heart was only evil all the time. 6 The LORD regretted that he had made human beings on the earth, and his heart was deeply troubled. 7 So the LORD said, ‘I will wipe from the face of the earth the human race I have created—and with them the animals, the birds and the creatures that move along the ground—for I regret that I have made them.’” 8 But Noah found favor in the eyes of the LORD.””

(Genesis 6:1-8)

“1 And it came to pass when the children of men began to multiply on the face of the earth and daughters were born unto them, that the Sons of God saw them on a certain year of this jubilee, that they were beautiful to look upon; and they took themselves wives of all whom they 2 chose, and they bore unto them sons and they were giants. And lawlessness increased on the earth and all flesh corrupted its way, alike men and cattle and beasts and birds and everything that walks on the earth—all of them corrupted their ways and their orders, and they began to devour each other, and lawlessness increased on the earth and every imagination of the thoughts of all men 3 (was) thus evil continually....”

(Jubilees 5:1-3)¹

The entire account of the Nephilim, as we have already seen, was the preamble to the Genesis account of the Flood of Noah, and when reading it in its context it renders a greater, deeper meaning to the understanding of the rest of the Genesis Flood story—a meaning that has apparently been kept from most faithful church attendees and congregations, and avoided by most ministers for centuries. It is one of those taboo topics that requires a much greater understanding of the scripture and why it was written, and therefore gets summarily skipped over or avoided for fear of opening up a can of worms that is either beyond the scholarship of the practitioners teaching it, or outside the realm of what they want their congregations to understand. Nor does a traditional telling of the story of Noah and the Ark, and the destruction of the earth at the mercy of a great deluge sent by God, fit comfortably into the picture of salvation and faith that most Christian teachers want to ascribe to the meaning of the passage.

The reason for these omissions and ignoring of the mention of the Nephilim in the passage becomes overtly clear when one takes a step back from the biblical scriptures and begins to understand the account of the Flood of Noah and the Nephilim as part of a much greater story, with far deeper implications—and even more so when it is found to be so incredibly comparable to many other myths and legends found in other cultures. In that light, the biblical account begins to take on the form of simply *one version* of an event that is mirrored in many other religious writings and what seem on the surface to be allegorical mythologies from nearly every culture of the ancient world.

The Assembly of the Sons of God

The trappings of heaven sink into deeper and darker mystery every time I stare into their depths. The more I think back on my days growing up in the Christian church, the less I understand the superficialities of God and His angels that I learned while there. The concept of the Assembly of the Gods or the Divine Council that was comprised of the lesser Gods beneath the

rule of Yahweh goes all the way back to the pantheon of the Sumerians, once believed to be the world's most ancient civilization, but looking relatively young in comparison to new discoveries of places such as Gobekli Tepe, the circular temple complexes dating back some 8,000 years further than Sumerian civilization.



A carved pillar at the Gobekli Tepe temple near Danliurfa, Turkey, the oldest known temple in the world, dating to 12,000 BCE.
Photo courtesy of Berthold Steinhilber.

The concept of the Divine Council was universally shared by the Semitic religious traditions of the ancient Near East that came after the Sumerians. The Sumerian god An and his wife Ninhursag created or gave birth to the other gods in the Sumerian pantheon. This divine couple generally remained aloof from human affairs, residing beyond the sky and allowing their children, the lesser gods, to create the first man and woman and all of

humankind as a race of subservient beings. These lesser gods also became the patrons of the various city-states of Sumer.

These lesser gods formed an Assembly of the Gods, known as the Annunaki, in the language of Sumer, which was presided over by Enlil, their god-king. Each of these lesser gods of the Assembly represented or controlled major forces that affected the lives of their human servants. Enlil's wife, Ninlil, was also known as The Maiden, who ruled over human fertility. Inanna, the Queen of Heaven, was both the goddess of passion and of warfare. It was Enki, the god of wisdom, who was originally patron god of the city of Eridu, but later the influence of his cult spread throughout Mesopotamia and to the Canaanites, Hittites, and Hurrians, who crafted the world-platter that floats on the great abyss of the primeval waters.²

There has been some controversy over interpretation of the Annunaki in modern times. You can chalk this up to the “spiritual drift” of humanity, in that people are constantly seeking answers beyond the traditions they have held firm for so many hundreds and thousands of years. As I have said many times, man is a beast of discovery, wanting always to know more, experience the limits, and expand knowledge. After all, even in the Book of Genesis when Eve succumbed to the seductions of the serpent, wasn’t it because she was curious and wanted to know and experience more? These things of the Watchers, Nephilim, Divine Council of the gods—these are all the stuff of new discovery, despite their ancient nature and the fact that we’ve known about them all along.

But we want to know *more*.

So we read and write books such as these to find ways to expand our knowledge. In those attempts to find the undiscovered country, we continually throw out new thoughts, new ideas, new theories. One of the latest developments—on the grand scale of history, that is—has been the advent of the “Ancient Astronaut/Ancient Alien” twist on history and traditional religion. One could chalk this up to man’s desire to gain

knowledge; others may consider it the “turning away” from truth in order to find answers that do not require an adherence to the strictures of religion. Whichever it is, it has uncovered theories that challenge the nomenclature of religious history and even faith itself.

One of the earliest pioneers in the Ancient Astronaut culture has been Erich von Däniken, who wrote his *Chariots of the Gods* series of books in the early 1970s. Another is the late Zecharia Sitchin and his near-religious writings of *The 12th Planet* and subsequent books. His ideas surged the Annunaki into popular culture in the ufological community and stirred up a simmering pot of home-brewed controversy on the topic. I grew up in the 1970s, and thoroughly enjoyed and became deeply intrigued by the writings of von Däniken, and I still enjoy him today in his many appearances on various documentaries revolving around the Ancient Alien theorist culture. He is a pioneer who paved the way. Yet, although both of these respected, highly popular research authors have made great strides, forging the path for countless other theorists on the subject, elements of their work remain questionable, some revealing false findings and a severe lack of understanding and comprehension of the history and linguistics of the cultures they examine. Sitchin, especially, while claiming to be a specialist in the ancient Sumerian language, makes exponential stretches in the definition of certain words that he uses to lay the foundational cornerstones of his Ancient Alien platform, completely mistranslating words and seemingly not comprehending the language that he purported to know so well. Sitchin’s hypotheses have never been accepted by scientists and academic peers, who dismiss his work as pseudo-science and pseudo-history.³ Sitchin’s work has been criticized for flawed methodology and mistranslations⁴ of ancient texts as well as for incorrect astronomical and scientific claims.

One of the foremost respected scholars in ancient languages, Micheal S. Heiser, even says of Sitchin:

“As I noted in my open letter to Zecharia Sitchin, I have challenged him and other ancient astronaut researchers to produce one

line of one cuneiform text that demonstrates his ideas about the Anunnaki are really in the Sumerian texts. I want to see one line of one text that says things like the Anunnaki inhabit a planet or inhabit Nibiru, or that the term ‘Anunnaki’ means ‘people of the fiery rockets, that sort of thing.’”⁵

The Unspeakable Name of God

Getting back to the Divine Council, the pantheon of ancient Sumer was eventually borrowed by Sumer’s northern neighbors, the Semitic peoples of Mesopotamia. And “borrowed” is an overly simplistic term. It would be much better to say that the ancient religion evolved and spread into the other civilizations that arose out of and around the Sumerian culture. Generally, they substituted Semitic names for the Sumerian gods, but the structure of the pantheon, including the distinction between the Divine Progenitors and the Assembly of Gods, was maintained in the Semitic religions—although Semitic people typically substituted the name of their local chief god for that of the particular name of the God-king who was one of the gods of the Assembly.

We see this in more recent history with the Christian church, when it banished the pagan religions and took over their groves and high places, building their cathedrals, and even renaming the pagan holidays with Christianized versions. However, the Christianizing of pagan Europe resembles more of a *conquest* than an evolution, much like the pogroms instituted by Jehovah to “wipe out” all the non-believing inhabitants of the land of Canaan in order to institute the pure religion of Judaism. And although that may seem like an over-generalized statement, all you need do is go to the pages of the Old Testament to find instance upon instance played over and over again of religious-based genocide and xenocide. It is no wonder the early church felt the need to murder “infidels.” It is not difficult, then, to comprehend the heinous murder of someone such as Hypatia of Alexandria⁶—considered the first notable female mathematician

who also taught philosophy and astronomy—at the hands of murderous Christian mobs⁷ under the orders of their bishop, St. Cyril of Alexandria. It is also not hard to see how even the Crusades were then justified by the Christian hierarchy of the day, as it was so much the established pattern set forth in the pages of Old Testament scriptures. The spread of religion and religious practice either evolved, or it was foisted and forced upon the new masses of commoners at the hands of a ruling monarch or body that needed to establish its power base over the people. (See [Chapter 7](#) for more on this.)

In Babylonian religion, the children of El, collectively known as the Elohim were subordinate to their father, El. These sons of the god presided individually over the various stars and planets, as well as over their respective individual earthly estates. At the height of Babylonian civilization, the Elohim were ruled by a son of El called Marduk, who could be seen in the night skies as the “wandering star,” the planet Jupiter today. In Cana’anite culture, in-country, northern neighbors and political competitors to the Hebrew Israelites, Marduk was called simply Lord or Ba’al, while his true name (Hadu or, in some dialects Hadad) was held secret and known only to his priests. Ba’al’s chief rival for kingship among the gods was Yamm, meaning “Sea,” who also sometimes took the guise of a storm-god—think: Zeus. His personal name was Yaw or, in some texts, Yawu. For instance, in the Epic of Ba’al, El, speaking to Athirat about their son Yamm says, “The name of my son is Yaw, Oh Goddess....”

It is extremely interesting to note that the name Yamm is intriguingly similar to the name of the Hebrew deity Yahweh, the short form of which was Yah. The similarity of names is paralleled by a similarity of roles, because Ba’al was considered to be the chief rival of Yahweh by the Hebrews. Although this identification is not a certain one, the two are thought to have been the same deity by some scholars or, at the very least, drawn from the same roots.

In the same fashion as the Cana’anites, the Hebrews regarded the true name of their tribal god, Yahweh, as far too sacred for common use, and

they too usually called him simply “Lord” (Hebrew *adonai* [אֲדֹנָי] or, sometimes, *ba’al* [בָּעֵל]). Consider the scene of Moses before the burning bush. In the account in the Book of Exodus, Moses asks God to “tell him his name”:

“13 Then Moses said to God, If I come to the people of Israel and say to them, ‘The God of your fathers has sent me to you,’ and they ask me, ‘What is his name?’ what shall I say to them? 14 God said to Moses, ‘I AM WHO I AM.’ [in other translations: ‘I WILL BE WHAT I WILL BE’—or literally: ‘I AM THAT ‘I AM’ THEY SPEAK OF’] And he said, ‘Say this to the people of Israel, ‘I AM has sent me to you.’ 15 God also said to Moses, ‘Say this to the people of Israel, ‘The LORD, [when in capital letters, means ‘YHWH’] the God of your fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, has sent me to you.’ This is my name forever, and thus I am to be remembered throughout all generations.””

(Exodus 3:13-15)

Knowing the secret name of God was forbidden in Hebrew religion, and in a round-about way Moses here was asking God to reveal it to him, which, according to tradition, would have given Moses power over God. Again, Moses’ ambition stands out, or at least the need to elevate himself as the pharaoh-god of Israel. Another prime example of this was when the prophet Elisha called on the secret name of God (how he obtained it, we do not know) to punish some young people who were taunting him and his position as prophet of Israel.

“23 He [Elisha] went up from there to Bethel, and while he was going up on the way, some small boys came out of the city and jeered at him, saying, “Go up, you baldhead! Go up, you baldhead!” 24 And he turned around, and when he saw them, he cursed them in the name of the LORD [capital letters = “YHWH”]. And two she-bears came out of the woods and tore forty-two of the boys. 25 From there he went on to Mount Carmel, and from there he returned to Samaria.”

(2 Kings 2:23-25)

As a rabbit trail, yet vital to understanding all these things, I find it very interesting to note that the prophet in this passage was able to call upon the name of the Lord and violently and maliciously kill 42 children who were mocking him. Despite the fact that Bethel was known for mocking the prophets of God, this seems an extreme consequence for childish bullying. Perhaps this is a picture of the severe, uncontrollable consequence of calling on the secret name of God. For as it shows in the text, there was no other consequence for Elisha's extreme actions. And as an anecdote to this story, keep in mind the third commandment of Moses:

“You shall not utter the name of Yahweh your God to misuse it, Yahweh will not leave unpunished the man who utters his name to misuse it.”

(Exodus 20:7; the Jerusalem Bible)

A more literal reading in modern idiom would read something like “You shall not utter the secret name of God to misuse it for vain or selfish purposes, for Yahweh will not leave that person unpunished who does so.” This commandment has little to do with cussing and saying things such as “Goddammit.” It has more to do with a person’s conduct of life, especially in light of the secret name of God being used to fulfill vain purposes. Elisha seemed to be inviolate of this commandment, yet there is no consequence mentioned in the passage. It is pure and complete speculation, but perhaps the greatest punishment of all was living in the horrid aftermath of having utilized the Holy to perform such an evil deed.

As Israel expanded its territories, conquering and possessing the land throughout the region of Cana'an, they killed and ousted the inhabitants who had entrenched themselves there during the 400 years of the Hebrews' Egyptian captivity. As a result, the displaced Cana'anites became the traditional enemies of Israel, but their deities seemed to have the same, identical roots, and were actually the same god, but in name only, as the

form of worship differed between the two cultures. The parallels between Ba’al and Yahweh are quite detailed. For example, both peoples referred to him, in his role as the god of storms and war, by the euphemisms “the rider on the clouds” and the “father to the fatherless.”



Limestone stele from the western wing of the Temple of Ba’al, Acropolis, Ras Shamra (ancient Ugarit), Levant. It depicts the storm god, Ba’al (late Bronze Age, 18th to 15th centuries BCE).

Photo courtesy of the author. Copyright 2011.

“5 Father of the fatherless and protector of widows is God in his holy habitation. 6 God settles the solitary in a home; he leads out the prisoners to prosperity, but the rebellious dwell in a parched land.”

(Psalm 68:5-6)

Both are portrayed as overcoming their enemies, such as when Yamm and his henchman battled Litan, the Fleeing Serpent/the Twisty Serpent, known as “Leviathan” [לְתִינָה] in the Hebrew.

“13 You did divide the sea by your strength: you brake the heads of the dragons [some translations say, ‘sea monsters,’ perhaps an allusion to the Serpent] in the waters.”

(Psalm 74:13)

“12 Am I a sea monster or a dragon [again, an allusion to the Serpent?] that you must place me under guard?”

(Job 7:12)

“12 By his power the sea grew calm. By his skill he crushed the great sea monster.”

(Job 26:12)

“8 Or who enclosed the sea with doors when, bursting forth, it went out from the womb....”

(Job 38:8)

So it is more likely that, whatever the origin of his name, Yahweh took over the history of Ba’al in Hebrew folklore and is best understood as the Hebrew equivalent of that Cana’anite god.

Anecdotally, there is a famous confrontation between the Israelite prophet Elijah, and the prophets of Ba'al recorded in the Bible.

“16 So... [King] Ahab went to meet Elijah. 17 When he saw Elijah, he said to him, ‘Is that you, you troubler of Israel?’ 18 ‘I have not made trouble for Israel,’ Elijah replied. ‘But you and your father’s family have. You have abandoned the LORD’s commands and have followed the Ba’als. 19 Now summon the people from all over Israel to meet me on Mount Carmel. And bring the four hundred and fifty prophets of Ba’al and the four hundred prophets of Asherah, who eat at Jezebel’s table.’ 20 So Ahab sent word throughout all Israel and assembled the prophets on Mount Carmel. 21 Elijah went before the people and said, ‘How long will you waver between two opinions? If the LORD is God, follow him; but if Ba’al is God, follow him.’ But the people said nothing. 22 Then Elijah said to them, ‘I am the only one of the LORD’s prophets left, but Ba’al has four hundred and fifty prophets. 23 Get two bulls for us. Let Ba’al’s prophets choose one for themselves, and let them cut it into pieces and put it on the wood but not set fire to it. I will prepare the other bull and put it on the wood but not set fire to it. 24 Then you call on the name of your god, and I will call on the name of the LORD. The god who answers by fire—he is God.’ Then all the people said, “What you say is good.” 25 Elijah said to the prophets of Ba’al, ‘Choose one of the bulls and prepare it first, since there are so many of you. Call on the name of your god, but do not light the fire.’ 26 So they took the bull given them and prepared it. Then they called on the name of Ba’al from morning till noon. ‘Baal, answer us!’ they shouted. But there was no response; no one answered. And they danced around the altar they had made. 27 At noon Elijah began to taunt them. ‘Shout louder!’ he said. ‘Surely he is a god! Perhaps he is deep in thought, or busy, or traveling. Maybe he is sleeping and must be awakened.’ 28 So they shouted louder and slashed themselves with swords and spears, as was their custom, until their blood flowed. 29 Midday passed, and they continued their frantic prophesying until the time for the evening sacrifice. But there was no response, no one answered, no one paid attention. 30 Then Elijah said to all the people, ‘Come here to me.’ They came to him, and he

repaired the altar of the LORD, which had been torn down. 31 Elijah took twelve stones, one for each of the tribes descended from Jacob, to whom the word of the LORD had come, saying, ‘Your name shall be Israel.’ 32 With the stones he built an altar in the name of the LORD, and he dug a trench around it large enough to hold two seahs[a] of seed. 33 He arranged the wood, cut the bull into pieces and laid it on the wood. Then he said to them, ‘Fill four large jars with water and pour it on the offering and on the wood.’ 34 ‘Do it again,’ he said, and they did it again. ‘Do it a third time,’ he ordered, and they did it the third time. 35 The water ran down around the altar and even filled the trench. 36 At the time of sacrifice, the prophet Elijah stepped forward and prayed: ‘LORD, the God of Abraham, Isaac and Israel, let it be known today that you are God in Israel and that I am your servant and have done all these things at your command. 37 Answer me, LORD, answer me, so these people will know that you, LORD, are God, and that you are turning their hearts back again.’ 38 Then the fire of the LORD fell and burned up the sacrifice, the wood, the stones and the soil, and also licked up the water in the trench.

39 When all the people saw this, they fell prostrate and cried, ‘The LORD—he is God! The LORD—he is God!’

40 Then Elijah commanded them, ‘Seize the prophets of Ba’al. Don’t let anyone get away!’ They seized them, and Elijah had them brought down to the Kishon Valley and slaughtered them there.”

(1 Kings 18:16-40)



Elijah and the prophets of Ba'al.
Photo courtesy of the author. Copyright 2011.

It is apparent that the Hebrews did not recognize the evolution of the religion of the Mesopotamian region, and it is clear that they did not worship Yahweh as being the same as the god Ba'al. Despite the name of Yahweh being originally sourced to a son of El is attested by a document (KTU 1.1 IV 14) from Ugarit,⁸ a Palestinian site occupied by neighbors of Israel. The document translates as “The name of the son of god, Yahweh.”

Furthermore, this status as the foremost of the sons of El is commemorated in the *Song of Moses*, one of the oldest of the Hebrew scriptures found in Deuteronomy:

“8 When the Elyon [another name of El] apportioned the nations, when he divided humankind, he fixed the boundaries of the peoples according to the number of the gods [the bene haElohim—the Sons of God]; 9 Yahweh’s own portion was his people, Jacob [Israel] his allotted share.”

(Deuteronomy 32:8-9)

In Canaanite literature, Yahweh ruled as the king of the other children of El. In this role, he presided and judged whenever the Assembly of the Gods met in council. The preeminence of Yahweh over the other gods is repeatedly asserted in the Old Testament Book of Psalms. In Psalm 86, we are told that “*There is none like you among the gods, O Yahweh*” (Psalm 86:8), and Psalm 89 is even more specific in explaining that the “gods” are the sons of El who met as the Assembly of the Gods, the Divine Council:

“6 The heavens praise your wonders, O Yahweh,
your faithfulness in the assembly of the holy ones.
For who in the skies can be compared to Yahweh?
Who among the sons of gods is like Yahweh?
7 a God feared in the council of the holy ones,
great and awesome above all that are around him?”

(Psalm 89:6-7)

Angels or Gods?

Setting aside the theories of extra-terrestrial interpretations that we touched on in earlier chapters, it is abundantly clear that the Genesis 6:1-8

passage is speaking of unique characters, the Watchers. Identifying these characters strictly as angels creates a problem in the text, which is supported by other biblical passages such as Psalm 82, in which we have the mention of the Elohim in context of the “Divine Council”—the gathering of the plurality of gods. But the gods mentioned in the Psalm are *not* angels. Let’s examine this Psalm a little more closely, looking at its language and meaning.

A Psalm of Asaph

“1 God (Elohim) stands in the midst of the divine council
[literally, council of El]; among the gods [elohim] He
pronounces judgment.

2 How long will you [plural] judge unjustly,

showing favor to the wicked? Selah.

3 Judge the wretched and the orphan,

vindicate the lowly and the poor,

4 rescue the wretched and the needy;

save them from the hand of the wicked.

5 They neither know nor understand,

they go about in darkness;

all the foundations of the earth totter.

6 I said, “you (plural) gods [elohim],

sons of the Most High [bene Elyon—another title for God], all of you [plural];

7 but you [plural] shall die as men do,

and fall like a man, O princes [plural; more accurately “shining ones”].

8 Arise [the command is singular], O God [plural; elohim],

judge [the command is singular] the earth,

for you [singular] shall inherit all the nations.”

God stood in the midst of the gods, the *sons of the Most High* (a variation on the Sons of God as found in Genesis 6:4). In this council, the *bene haElohim* are called “gods” and also “princes,” and are told that they will collectively fall. One would have to manipulate the passage, or simply overlook certain whole chunks of the Hebrew text in order to read around what it actually states: There is a multitude of gods. The first mention of Elohim in Psalm 82:1 must be translated as a singular, in that it is the subject of a singular verb: “*Elohim stands.*” This is consistent with the Hebrew language. The second mention of Elohim in the Psalm must be read

as a plural, as the preposition in front of it (“in the midst of”) requires more than one. It is impossible to be *in the midst* of one person. In Psalm 82, God (Elohim) is presiding over an assembly (or council) of other gods (Elohim). This where I spoke in a previous chapter of the word *elohim* being both singular and plural, wholly dependent on the rest of the sentence structure and the context in which it is being used, such as saying “A deer stood in the midst of a herd of deer”—same word with both singular and plural contexts.

Verse 6 of the Psalm makes it very clear that the *elohim* are the very same characters as the Sons of God mentioned in Genesis 6:4, in that he addresses them as the other *elohim*, and calls them the “sons of the Most High,” addressing them, point blank, saying “*you are gods [elohim], all of you.*” An interesting observation has been made by Dr. Michael S. Heiser, when he notes that the *elohim* mentioned here are not angels, which comes from the Hebrew word *Mal’akim*, meaning “messenger,” an entirely different term than what occurs for the Sons of God.⁹

Other passages where the plurality of gods [haElohim] appear are:
“Among the gods there is none like you, O Yahweh; neither
[are there any works] like your works.”

(Psalm 86:8)

“For Yahweh is a great God, and a great King above all gods.”

(Psalm 95:3)

“For Yahweh is great, and deserving of exceedingly great praise: he is to be feared above all gods.”

(Psalm 96:4)

“All who served images were put to shame; those who boasted in mere idols; even all the gods bow down before him.”

(Psalm 97:7)

“For you, O Yahweh, are Most High above all the earth: you are exalted far above all gods.”

(Psalm 97:9)

“For I know that Yahweh is great, and that our lord is above all gods.”

(Psalm 135:5)

“O give thanks to the God of gods: for his mercy endures forever.”

(Psalm 136:2)

“I will praise you with my whole heart: before the gods will I sing praise to you.”

(Psalm 138:1)

“Who is like you, O Yahweh, among the gods? Who is like you, majestic in holiness, awesome in splendor, doing wonders?”

(Exodus 15:11)

“Do you indeed decree what is right, O gods? Do you judge people fairly?”

(Psalm 58:1)

Some trains of more conservative theological thought insist that Psalm 82 is speaking of God addressing other members of the Holy Trinity: God the father, God the Son and God the Holy Spirit. But this cannot be at all accurate in light of the fact that not all members of the Trinity are “sons”;

the Holy Spirit is not a “son of God.” Further, in verses 2-5 of the Psalm, God is charging the other Elohim with corruption, and condemning them for their corrupt rule of the earth. At the end of the Psalm, God is reclaiming the rule of the earth from the other elohim, the implication being that they have done a horrible job of it, acting wickedly, and so they must be taken out of the picture. Again, according to Dr. Michael S. Heiser, these other elohim were an “impediment or a nuisance or at best a disappointment”¹⁰ —certainly not indicative of the Holy Trinity, as defined by Christian theology.

There are numerous other passages in the Bible that speak of this divine council and the *elohim* as a plurality, as well as the sons of God, the *bene haElohim*. One of the most familiar passages where the Sons of God appear is in the first two chapters of the Book of Job, which is considered to be, chronologically speaking, the oldest book in the Bible, pre-dating the formulation of Israel as a nation and the Jewish religion itself. Take note of another character who shows up in this passage:

“1 There was a man in the land of Uz, whose name was Job; and that man was blameless and upright, one who feared God, and turned away from evil. 2 There were born to him seven sons and three daughters. 3 He had seven thousand sheep, three thousand camels, five hundred yoke of oxen, and five hundred she-asses, and very many servants; so that this man was the greatest of all the people of the east. 4 His sons used to go and hold a feast in the house of each on his day; and they would send and invite their three sisters to eat and drink with them. 5 And when the days of the feast had run their course, Job would send and sanctify them, and he would rise early in the morning and offer burnt offerings according to the number of them all; for Job said, “It may be that my sons have sinned, and cursed God in their hearts.” Thus Job did continually. 6 Now there was a day when the Sons of God [*bene haElohim*] came to present themselves before the LORD, and [the] Satan also came among them. 7 The LORD said to (the) Satan, “Whence have you come?” [The] Satan answered the LORD, “From going to and fro on the earth, and from walking up and down on it.” 8 And the LORD said to [the] Satan, “Have you considered my

servant Job, that there is none like him on the earth, a blameless and upright man, who fears God and turns away from evil?” 9 Then [the] Satan answered the LORD, “Does Job fear God for nought? 10 Hast thou not put a hedge about him and his house and all that he has, on every side? Thou hast blessed the work of his hands, and his possessions have increased in the land.”

(Job 1:1-10)

And again in Job [Chapter 2](#):

“1 Again there was a day when the Sons of God [bene ha’Elohim] came to present themselves before the LORD, and [the] Satan also came among them to present himself before the LORD.”

(Job 2:1)

One could only imagine what exactly was going on in the courts of heaven when the Divine Council, the host of elohim, “presented themselves” before God, the singular elohim that held rule over them. Although these verses as well as other passages throughout scripture exist, and have meaning and purpose, it tells of a very different picture of the gods of the Bible, and a much murkier purpose behind the things that they did. Suddenly, the picture of the mythological Zeus holding court with the other Olympian gods, toying with the lives of humans while bartering with Hades, the god of the Underworld, starts to look at once not so unfamiliar or far-fetched. Again, we see the great mythologies of the world start to merge into a bigger, more mysterious story where the differing cast of characters blend and merge into one another.

The members of the Divine Council, known as the Watchers, who descended to the earth on the slopes of Mount Hermon, did so with great determination to make a pact among themselves. They were charged with the responsibility of watching over humanity, the children of God’s creation, but then left that responsibility behind when they looked down on

humanity with desire, wanting to be one of them and experience the lustful, sensual, steamy, flesh-on-flesh experience of sexual contact. They wanted to create life that sprang forth from their own loins, experiencing what only the Creator himself had experienced. For this, they were condemned, stripped of their “god-ness,” and reduced to a fleshly life that would suffer the consequence of physical death—a thing that they, apparently, would not have had to suffer in their heavenly state.

But there is also the danger of ascribing too much non-malevolence to these beings. In a desire to make them seem “more human,” we can often times imbue them with attributes that they did not possess. In the Christian way of thinking, making something “good” that God has deemed “evil” can run the risk of heresy and blasphemous behavior, and apparently the elohim who stood in the midst of the elohim—the Divine Council—had the superior power to condemn them for their actions. Yet, in great speculation, it is curious to wonder how these lesser gods saw themselves, what they thought about, and how they rationalized a departure from their Creator. When mankind considers offending a holy God, we have nothing to register that against, save for words taught from scriptures and consciousnesses that have religious mores grafted into them. These members of the Divine Council who left their place in the courts of heaven and descended to the earth to cohabit with human women seemingly understood full well what consequences their actions would produce. Yet, they still did it. Was it because they didn’t believe that God had the power to condemn and destroy them? Or was it that they simply didn’t care? Because, unlike human beings who have no visceral, tangible connection to the presence of God save through faith alone, these beings had physical access, beings gods themselves, and could experience the presence of the Most high God on a firsthand basis.

Still, the Watchers chose to desert the Divine Council and make their own way among the humans. Perhaps their biggest mistake was in believing that they were princes who could float untainted by their actions, above the consequences, and impose rule over the inferior children of Adam, much as Moses believed when he saw himself as the deliverer and potential ruler of the Hebrews the day he murdered the Egyptian task master.

And That's How I Met Your Mother...

The Nephilim are the children of the Sons of God, the offspring of the mixed blood of the bene haElohim and the benoth Adam, the daughters of men. But these offspring, according to scripture, were anything but normal children. There was no father-son stroll down the lane, fishing poles on shoulders, whistling a happy tune and skipping stones into the Euphrates River. We are told in the texts that the offspring of the sexual relations between the Sons of God and human women was like an experiment gone very wrong. The accepted view in academia is that the Nephilim are the offspring of angels, but that may be only part of the story, at least according to the text as rendered in the 1611 King James translation of the Bible, where the word Nephilim has been translated as “giants.”

As mentioned previously in this book, the generally accepted view of the word Nephilim is that it is derived from the Hebrew word *nepahl* (נֶפֶל). The “-im” ending signified plurality. The most commonly accepted definitions for the word nephal are:

1. To fall (as if to the ground).
2. To fall (as if in battle).
3. To be cast down.
4. To desert a location.
5. To fail.

As Craig Hines suggests in his book, *Gateway of the Gods*, these definitions are most likely were in reference to “fallen angel” originates.¹¹ But he goes on to ask which of the meanings most readily applies to the Nephilim, and does it refer to the angelic parents or the hybrid offspring? If we are to take the first definition of “to fall (as if to the ground),” it would seem that this could apply to angels who “fell from a state of grace to an

evil fallen one”—an act of motion, moving from one place to another. But there are much better, more succinct words to describe this act, such as *yarad* (יָרַד), which means “to come or go down, to descend,” and the “im” would have been added in some form to denote the plural aspect of the word.

Then there is the second definition, “to fall (as if in battle).” This definition denotes death. But we are told that these Sons of God and their offspring were very much alive. They were living, breathing, thinking, lusting, and having sexual intercourse and reproducing. Doesn’t sound very dead to me, unless, perhaps, later scribes were making reference to them at a much later date, viewing them as the “dead warriors” who had already been destroyed in the waters of the great deluge.

The third definition, “to be cast down,” seems to be a perfect fit if we are ascribing a fallen state to the Watchers and their offspring. They would have been seen as being cast down from heaven as a consequence of their rebellion against God. Yet, were this the only definition, it would exclude the many accounts of other cultures experiencing these beings as good, well-meaning teachers and beings of beneficent intent. Remember: The offspring of the Watchers were not all considered to be evil, but are written about as such in scripture as a collective.

The fourth definition speaks to desertion, a moving from one location to another with deliberate abandonment. In a real sense, this is what the Watchers did when they descended to the steepes of Mount Hermon and deliberately made a pact to willingly leave their godly estate on the Divine Council and dwell among the humans, one of the purposes of which was to experience the fathering of children with the human women.

The fifth definition is one of “failure,” which could easily be manipulated to fit the context in that the Watchers obviously failed to do their duty and fulfill their responsibility—which is, in part, the reason they are condemned

in Psalm 82. You can also find this supported by the text in the Book of Jubilees, part of the Dead Sea Scrolls.

“15 And in the second week of the tenth jubilee Mahalalel took unto him to wife Dinah, the daughter of Barakiel the daughter of his father’s brother, and she bare him a son in the third week in the sixth year, and he called his name Jared, for in his days the angels of the Lord descended on the earth, those who are named the Watchers, that they should instruct the children of men, and that they should do judgment and uprightness on the earth.”

(Jubilees 4:15)

“1 And it came to pass when the children of men began to multiply on the face of the earth and daughters were born unto them, that the angels of God saw them on a certain year of this jubilee, that they were beautiful to look upon; and they took themselves wives of all whom they chose, and they bare unto them sons and they were giants. 2 And lawlessness increased on the earth and all flesh corrupted its way, alike men and cattle and beasts and birds and everything that walks on the earth—all of them corrupted their ways and their orders, and they began to devour each other, and lawlessness increased on the earth and every imagination of the thoughts of all men (was) thus evil continually. 3 And God looked upon the earth, and behold it was corrupt, and all flesh had corrupted its orders, and all that were upon the earth had wrought all manner of evil before His eyes. 4 And He said that He would destroy man and all flesh upon the face of the earth which He had created. 5 But Noah found grace before the eyes of the Lord. 6 And against the angels whom He had sent upon the earth, He was exceedingly wroth, and He gave commandment to root them out of all their dominion, and He bade us to bind them in the depths of the earth, and behold they are bound in the midst of them, and are (kept) separate. 7 And against their sons went forth a command from before His face that they should be smitten with the sword, and be removed from under heaven. 8 And He said ‘My spirit shall not always abide on man; for they also are flesh and their days shall be one hundred and

twenty years.’ 9 And He sent His sword into their midst that each should slay his neighbour, and they began to slay each other till they all fell by the sword and were destroyed from the earth. 10 And their fathers were witnesses (of their destruction), and after this they were bound in the depths of the earth for ever, until the day of the great condemnation, when judgment is executed on all those who have corrupted their ways and their works before the Lord.”

(Jubilees 5:1-10)

Can you see the similarity that shines through in all of these texts, even from the books that were completely eradicated from scripture under the councils invoked by Emperor Constantine? This speaks to the fact that not all of these “non-canonical” scriptures were indeed rightfully eradicated from the Bible! (See [Chapter 7](#).)

There are inherent problems, however, with the word Nephilim, and Heiser goes through great strides to demonstrate the differences between the Hebrew and the Aramaic, where a single “yod” (Hebrew vowel) can take the definition of the word in a completely different direction. Heiser ends up defining the word Nephilim as meaning “those who were fallen,” expressly meaning “those who fell/were fallen.”

However, though I have great respect for the linguistic work of Heiser, I would more align myself with the observations of Hines, who expresses a philosophy that seems inherent to the context of the Genesis 6 passage, wherein the Nephilim come across as, for all practical purposes, rather neutral. They are not defined by the evil of some fallen state of their parental lineage, but are rather set up in the Genesis passage by Moses as being “heroes of old” and “men of reknown.” They were obviously not all inherently evil in nature, and a study of these beings in the literature and scriptural writings of other cultures demonstrates that many of them were not considered to be malevolent. The Watchers may have descended to the earth in a desire to cohabitate with human women—a thing they knew had grave consequences for them in the Divine Council—but they came down

to experience life as human beings and to procreate. Some of them may have had evil intent, as we will see, but others, obviously, bore no malicious, devilish intent. They taught humans the “forbidden knowledges” of such dastardly things as cosmetics, mirrors, and herbology and medicine, but some also took advantage of the humans by teaching the arts of making weapons, sorcery and waging war. It was their hybrid offspring who, it is said in the passages of Enoch, wreaked havoc and brought destruction to mankind. The Watchers’ inability to control what they had procreated seems to be the source of the corruption, and the sin of the Watchers themselves was the act of deserting their posts and fraternizing on the most intimate of levels with those whom they were appointed to watch over. The consequences were widespread and resulted in divine judgment.

Then again, you also have the viewpoint of Derek Kinder’s work, in which he says, “The craving of demons for a body, evident in the Gospels, offers at least some parallel to this hunger for sexual experience.”¹²

Again, for clarity and reference, the passage as written in 1 Enoch:

“1 It happened after the sons of men had multiplied in those days, that daughters were born to them, elegant and beautiful. 2 And when the angels,¹³ the sons of heaven, beheld them, they became enamoured of them, saying to each other, Come, let us select for ourselves wives from the progeny of men, and let us beget children. 3 Then their leader Samyaza said to them; I fear that you may perhaps be indisposed to the performance of this enterprise; 4 And that I alone shall suffer for so grievous a crime. 5 But they answered him and said; We all swear; 6 And bind ourselves by mutual execrations, that we will not change our intention, but execute our projected undertaking. 7 Then they swore all together, and all bound themselves by mutual execrations. Their whole number was two hundred, who descended upon Ardis,¹⁴ which is the top of Mount Armon. 8 That mountain therefore was called Armon, because they had sworn upon it,¹⁵ and bound themselves by mutual execrations.”

(1 Enoch 7: 1-8)

Hines sums it up best: “There is good and bad in everything, and it is through the actions of an individual (even an angel) that determines their nature.”¹⁶

It is my sincere belief that, in accordance with the language and the contexts surrounding the various appearances of the word Nephilim, they were not inherently evil in nature, and they are best described as the descendants of a race of beings who abandoned or left their place in the heavenly realms and the courts of the Divine Council, and descended to the earth in violation of the rules established by God.

“6 And the angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he hath reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day. 7 Even as Sodom and Gomorrah, and the cities about them in like manner, giving themselves over to fornication, and going after strange flesh, are set forth for an example, suffering the vengeance of eternal fire.”

(Jude 6-7)

Once again we also see in this passage the reassertion of the prohibition against certain forms of sexual activity. As we saw with the serpent character in the Garden of Eden story, we see again in the account of the Watchers. Everything seemed to revolve around encoded sexual activity in its adulterous or fornication forms. And there is always an imposition of consequential judgment imposed after these rules are violated. In the case of the breeding of the hybrid race of Nephilim, God is “grieved” that He ever made man and sets about a great natural catastrophe to wipe them all out—mankind, Nephilim and every living creature on the planet, according to the Genesis and Enochian accounts. Save for one man and his family, and pairs of every known animal in creation that could not survive in an aquatic habitat.

“Perfect in His Generation”

Why Noah and his immediate family were seemingly the only ones immune from this great watery judgment of God is significant. Genesis 6:9 says, “Noah was a just man.” According to Judeo-Christian teaching, Noah stood out among the rest of humanity as an example of righteousness and godliness in a world that had gone completely insane with perverse corruption around him. Like Enoch before him, Noah also “walked with God.” This is where most commentators and bible teachers seem to come to a screeching halt, falling far short of—as the late, effervescent radio personality Paul Harvey used to say—the rest of the story.

There was another reason why Noah was spared. And this reason goes far deeper than the surface issue of merely following God or being a “good believer.” The greatest cause of frustration over this issue is the fact that it seems to have escaped most commentators either through ignorance of the language of the text, or lack of desire to broach these topics beyond the surface message. Genesis 6:9 says that Noah was “perfect in his generation.” Is the text implying moral and spiritual perfection? Not in the least. Genesis 9:20-23 disproves any such perfection:

“20 Noah, a man of the soil, proceeded to plant a vineyard. 21 When he drank some of its wine, he became drunk and lay uncovered inside his tent. 22 Ham, the father of Canaan, saw his father naked and told his two brothers outside. 23 But Shem and Japheth took a garment and laid it across their shoulders; then they walked in backward and covered their father’s naked body. Their faces were turned the other way so that they would not see their father naked.”

(Genesis 9:20-23)

I Just Survived the Great Deluge, and Now I’m Going to DisneyLand!

What was the first recorded act of Noah in the Book of Genesis, after the events of the Great Flood? He got drunk. (And who wouldn't?) I think that if I had just spent the last 120 years building a huge barge as a repository for every species of animal in the known world, and spent four to six months in those closed quarters with my wife and kids, tending to the menagerie, and watching the total and complete destruction of living thing on earth, the first thing I would most probably do when all the puddles had dried up is thank God for my salvation, and hit that bottle of 21-year-old single malt Highland Scotch stashed in my overnight bag. Noah was as predictably human as you and me.

So why does the biblical account call him “perfect”? What is the meaning of this word? The Hebrew word is *tamiym* [תָמִيم]¹⁷ and comes from the primitive root word *taman* [תָמַן]. This means “complete, whole, entire, sound, without blemish” (see also: Exodus 12:5, 29:1, Leviticus 1:3). In its primary meaning, it does not refer to any moral or spiritual quality or superiority, but to *physical* purity. Noah was uncontaminated by the bloodlines of the Watchers and their offspring, the Nephilim. He was also of the line of Abel, the seed of *Adam* [אָדָם] not of the serpent’s bloodline as carried through the descendants of Cain. Noah alone had preserved their pedigree and kept it pure, in spite of prevailing corruption brought about by the fallen angels.¹⁸ What the language is telling us in Genesis [Chapter 6](#) is that Noah’s bloodline had remained free of genetic contamination, be it angelic or alien in nature. Noah was pure human being, through and through.

Flavius Josephus, a Palestinian, wrote *Antiquities of the Jews* to educate the Roman-Hellenistic world about Judaism and the history of the Jews. In it he recounts the tale of the Watchers, Nephilim, and Noah as follows:

“For many angels of God accompanied with women, and begat sons that proved unjust, and despisers of all that was good, on account of the confidence they had in their own strength; for the tradition is, that these men did what resembled the acts of those whom the Grecians call giants. But Noah was very uneasy at what they did; and

being displeased at their conduct, persuaded them to change their dispositions and their acts for the better: but seeing they did not yield to him, but were slaves to their wicked pleasures, he was afraid they would kill him, together with his wife and children, and those they had married; so he departed out of that land.¹⁹"

Despite the rather warmed-milk version of events given by Flavius Josephus, the overt implication is, then, that all other human families on the Earth had been contaminated by the blood of the Nephilim, save for Noah and his children. And if the biblical implication is that humanity was completely tainted by the blood of the serpent as represented in the lines of the Nephilim, it is no wonder that God pronounced such a universal fiat of judgment.

As for the fallen members of the Divine Council who descended to the earth to commit themselves to interbreeding with humans, participating in the abomination, God put them in custody "in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day" (Jude 6). This is sometimes interpreted as Tartarus or the "nether realms" (2 Peter 2:4). In Greek mythology, Tartarus (*Tάρταρος*) is a deep, gloomy place, a pit, or an abyss used as a dungeon of torment and suffering that resides beneath the underworld. In the *Gorgias*, Plato (c. 400 BCE) wrote that souls were judged after death and those who received punishment were sent to Tartarus, and it is only known in Hellenistic Jewish literature from the Greek text of 1 Enoch 20:2, where the archangel Uriel is the jailer of the 200 Watchers who sinned by cohabiting with human women and producing the bloodline of the Nephilim.²⁰ It is, further, interesting to note that even Peter—"Saint Peter," the big fisherman, the "rock" upon which Christ would build His church, the friend and disciple of Jesus and the apostle who wrote the New Testament Books of first and second Peter—refers to the Greek mythological place of punishment in the afterlife:

"4 For if God did not spare angels when they sinned, but sent them to Tartarus, putting them in chains of darkness in gloomy dungeons to be held for judgment; 5 if he did not spare the ancient world when he

brought the flood on its ungodly people, but protected Noah, a preacher of righteousness, and seven others; 6 if he condemned the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah by burning them to ashes, and made them an example of what is going to happen to the ungodly; 7 and if he rescued Lot, a righteous man, who was distressed by the depraved conduct of the lawless 8 (for that righteous man, living among them day after day, was tormented in his righteous soul by the lawless deeds he saw and heard)—9 if this is so, then the Lord knows how to rescue the godly from trials and to hold the unrighteous for punishment on the day of judgment. 10 This is especially true of those who follow the corrupt desire of the flesh and despise authority.”

(2 Peter 2:4-10)

The punishment was reserved for those fallen who had participated in the great seeding of the human bloodline, and would also explain why some fallen angels are kept in custody and others are free to roam the heavens and torment mankind. Such a severe and dramatic punishment presupposed a severe and dramatic sin, something infinitely more evil and more sinister than mere mixed marriages. It was nothing less than the fallen, perhaps even demonic, realm attempting to pervert the bloodlines of the human world. By genetic control and the production of hybrids, the serpent of the Garden of Eden, and those who left their place on the Divine Council, following him, were out to rob God of the people He had made for Himself. The serpent character in the Bible, as we examined earlier, was none other than the leader of the fallen. And were the purpose of this book to examine Lucifer, the Star of the Morning, the Glory of God, and a Prince of the Divine Council, we would say a lot more about the implications, but we'll save that for another time. Suffice it to say that if the serpent from the garden who fathered the very first of the Nephilim in Cain had succeeded in corrupting in entirety the human race, he would have hindered the coming of the perfect Son of God, the promised “seed of the man,” who would defeat the fallen and restore man's dominion (Genesis 3:15).

In what is considered to be the very first Messianic prophecy in the Bible, God said to the serpent character in the Garden of Eden:

“15 And I will put enmity between you and the woman, and between your offspring and hers; he will crush your head, and you will strike his heel.”

(Genesis 3:15)

The bloodline of the serpent was manifested in Cain, his offspring conceived during the seduction of Eve in the Garden of Eden. The bloodline of the woman was manifested in her son Abel, whom Eve conceived with Adam. The prophetic implication of this verse in Genesis is that the Messiah would be born through pure human bloodlines, the seed of Adam and Eve, uncorrupted by the blood of the serpent and his host of fallen Watchers. That is why you find the lineage of Mary, the wife of Joseph and mother to the immaculate conception of Jesus Christ, being traced through King David and all the way back to Adam, through the younger son Abel.

According to Christian theology, if the bloodlines of the Nephilim had by any means prevented the birth of the “only begotten” Son of God, they would obviously have averted their own doom. It was for this reason, according to Christian theology, that God drowned all of mankind in the Great Flood of Noah.

There is a state of what I will call “contingent dualism” at play here: Had the bloodlines of the serpent and the Watchers succeeded in contaminating all of humanity, there would have been no immaculately born Son of God, who the Jewish Messianic prophecies referred to as the “Kinsman Redeemer,” the seed of the man, the divine savior of our own bloodline who would take away the sins of the world. Because the bloodline of the Watchers was eliminated in the flood, the pure human genealogies would be allowed to continue through the pure human sons of Noah, producing a messiah of pure human birth.

But wait—is not the Messiah, according to Christian theology, born of a human bloodline, mixed with the bloodline of God? Was not Mary the mother of Jesus impregnated by elohim in the same fashion as the daughters

of men were impregnated by the Watchers, the elohim of the Divine Council? Did not the mother of Jesus conceive the Messiah as a result of a divine sexual interference? And are not the genealogies of Mary, tracing her lineage back to the throne of David the king, and further back to the line of Adam through Abel written into the story of the birth of Jesus, written for the sole purpose of establishing the untainted human bloodline of the Christian messiah, who was said to be both God and Man? For, indeed, the greatest Son of God was the messiah, himself, born to a virgin, fathered by a God. Yet he is called the “only begotten” son of God. Not simply a prince of heaven, but God Himself in human form. The mysteries of the universe compound exponentially when the elohim who stands in the midst of the elohim and pronounces judgment on the gods of the Divine Council, holds the ability to strip the other gods of their divinity, yet strips Himself of divinity in order to become a human being in a singular act the Koinae Greek calls the kenosis ($\kappa\acute{e}nōs\acute{e}\zeta$). This, according to Christian theology, placed Jesus Christ in a place far above the gods and angels. God out-did the Watchers and the serpent in that he made the perfect melding of human and god.

Pardon Me, but There's a Giant in My Soup

There is some confusion when reading all these passages as to whether or not these Watchers were a caste of hierarchical angels, or whether they were lesser gods, as expressly stated in Psalm 82. I believe it is as simple as understanding that the angels of God had different titles in the heavenly domain than they did after their collective descent to the earth. In short, they were *both*. But gaining an understanding that these beings existed far outside the story-bookish view many people have of angels is important to understanding the princely majesty of these beings, as well as the devastation that they brought to the bloodlines of humanity.

Could the term Nephilim, though generally accepted as the offspring of the Watchers, also be used to describe the Watchers themselves? After all,

the definition of the word Nephilim means to fall or descend. The children of the Watchers did neither of those things, as they were the product of the Sons of God interbreeding with human women. They descended from nowhere, other than the wombs of their earthly mothers. As I alluded to much earlier, a good illustrative example would be the monikers we place on immigrants from foreign countries. When an Irish family emigrates from Ireland to the United States, their children are known as Irish-Americans. But then the term extends also to the parents, who also become Irish-Americans. Once the Nephilim were bequeathed, the titles spread across the board to both the parents and the children.

There is another completely unique distinguishing factor to the children of the Watchers: They were called “giants.” And there is some textual evidence to support a larger size. When the wandering Israelites finally reached the Promised Land, an advance party was sent to spy on the country. They came back with this report:

“32 So they gave out to the sons of Israel a bad report of the land which they had spied out, saying, “The land through which we have gone, in spying it out, is a land that devours its inhabitants; and all the people whom we saw in it are men of great size. 33 There also we saw the Nephilim [the sons of Anak are part of the Nephilim]; and we became like grasshoppers in our own sight, and so we were in their sight.”

(Numbers 13:32-33)

Although I do not fully subscribe to the Creationist views of Dr. Henry Morris, he has some interesting things to say about the “giants” and their further offspring:

“There were giants “also after that,” in the days of the Canaanites, and these were likewise known as, among other things, the Nephilim (Numbers 13:33). Humanly speaking, they were descended from Anak, and so were also known as the Anakim. These people were, of course, known to Moses and it was probably he who editorially

inserted the phrase “and also after that” into Noah’s original record here in Genesis 6:4. Moses probably also inserted the information that these were the “mighty men of old, men of renown,” men whose exploits of strength and violence had made them famous in song and fable in all nations in the ages following the Flood. To rebellious men of later times, they were revered as great heroes; but in God’s sight they were merely ungodly men of violence and evil.^{[21](#)}”

During the campaign of the Five Kings in Abraham’s day, several tribes nestled around the Valley of Siddim in the Dead Sea region, evidently intermingled with the Canaanites, and are considered to be the Nephilim or hybrids of Nephilim. These tribes are identified in both Genesis 14 and Deuteronomy 2 as the Rephaim (“titans,” children of “Rapha”), the Zuzim or Zamzummim (“terrible ones”), the Emim, Horites, and Anakim (“crushing tyrants”). It is the tribe of the Anakim that is directly connected with the Nephilim in the report given to Moses and the Hebrews by the spies in Numbers 13:33. The context of the Dueteronomy and Numbers passages suggest that the other tribes of giants were relatives of the Anakim or other lines of Nephilim, particularly the Rephaim, whose descendant is described as living in the city of Gath along with the Anakim giant, Goliath, and Lahmi. The Rephaim are giants and are generally described as being tall or large, and seem to be synonymous with the Nephilim, based on the translation of the word *giants* in Genesis [Chapter 6](#).

The tribe of the Anakim were descended from a giant named Anak, who was a son or grandson of a giant named Arba, from which the ancient city of Hebron was originally called “Kiriath Arba” or “The City of Arba” because “Arba was the greatest man among the Anakim” Joshua 14:15. This tribe was so tall, that the weak-kneed spies reported, “we are like grasshoppers to them” (Numbers 13:33).

The Old Testament scriptures tell of how the tribes of giants were fought and destroyed by the tribes of normal men who replaced them, including the Israelites. Moses killed Og, king of the Rehpaim who lived on the Golan heights near Mount Hermon, the original spot where the Watchers

descended and fathered the Nephilim. Og apparently did not travel far from home. According to the biblical passage, Og had a bed that was nine cubits long (13.5 to 15.5 feet, depending on which cubit was used) and was called “last of the remnant of the giants” (Dueteronomy 3). Og may be the source of the word *ogre* in the English language.

According to Issac E. Mozeson’s *The Word: The Dictionary That Reveals the Hebrew Source of English*, an “ogre” (**וָגֵר**) is a hideous monster or giant (and is never mentioned as having “layers,” so get the picture of *Shrek* out of your mind completely). The mighty King Og of Bashan was said to be the last of the original line of Nephilim giants of scripture, so we are told in Numbers 21:33 and Dueteronomy 3:11. The old etymological notion that the word *ogre* came from the French language was probably written by men who had never heard of the biblical King Og. The French version explains the “re” suffix to be French in origin.

“The Illiterate Greeks, who clumsily borrowed an alphabet from the Semites, probably paganized the stuff of many biblical epics. One of these was the account of the Mighty Og and the Anakim—or Nephilim—battling the armies of god for the rights to settle Cana’an. Gigas [Og] is a major figure in their mythic battle between the Titans and the Gods. As for Og’s wife, note the Old Norse term for ogress, gygr. This is the given source for the Scottish word for an evil spirit or ogre.”²²

Joshua, Moses’ successor, drove the three remaining sons of Anak out of Hebron in his first campaign after leading the Children of Israel into the Promised Land. The sons of Anak evidently reoccupied the city of Hebron while Joshua was waging his campaign against Cana’anite cities in the North. Caleb later retook Hebron and killed the three giants.²³ Surprisingly, there was probably heavy motivation for Caleb to drive them out and keep them from retaking the territory, as this is the region where, 40 years earlier, Caleb was one of the spies who said to Moses, “Yeah, they’re giants, all right, but we can take ‘em! Oh, and by the way, I have this great piece of land I want where these three giants live....” Caleb had his eyes and heart

set on a piece of land for 40 years. His motivation to kill the residents was strong indeed, bolstered by sand in his sandals for four decades.

David and King Saul fought a remnant of smaller giants who had taken refuge in the Philistine city of Gath. They included Goliath, who was “six cubits and a span” (roughly 9' 3”), and his brother Lahmi “whose spear had a shaft like a weaver’s rod.” The last of the Gittite giants was slain “In still another battle, which took place at Gath”:

“20 In still another battle, which took place at Gath, there was a huge man with six fingers on each hand and six toes on each foot—twenty-four in all. He also was a giant, descended from Rapha.”

(2 Samuel 21:20)

The last scriptural reference to the giants, chronologically speaking, may be Isaiah 45:14, which prophesies that Sabeans “men of stature” will become slaves in chains of the redeemed Israelites:

“14 This is what the LORD says: ‘The products of Egypt and the merchandise of Cush, and those tall Sabeans—they will come over to you and will be yours; they will trudge behind you, coming over to you in chains. They will bow down before you and plead with you, saying, Surely God is with you, and there is no other, there is no other god.’”

(Isaiah 45:14)

These are the characteristics of the remnant tribes of giants described in Scripture:

- ★ Their height was two or three times the height of normal men.

- ★ They were associated with some kind of unholy intermixing before the Flood.
- ★ They were closely associated with the wicked Canaanites after the Flood.
- ★ In one case they are described as having polydactyly (extra fingers and toes).
- ★ Unlike the Canaanites, there are no examples of Nephilim who became followers of God.

The Genesis account clearly states that the Nephilim were on the earth both before and after the Great Flood. This generates another question all on its own: If God sent a devastatingly tragic universal deluge that killed off all human beings and every other living thing, for the purpose of wiping out and completely exterminating this hybrid race, *why did it not work?*

Did God in all his biblical attributes of omniscience and foreknowledge not know that his act of judgment would not have the desired effect? Did God make a huge blunder, or was there something more going on? Was the great flood not as universal as we are told, allowing for the escape and survival of some of the Nephilim? Perhaps, as Ancient Alien theorists suggest, the Nephilim bugged out as soon as they knew of the Great Flood's impending arrival. Could the same space craft have returned to take away the remnant, only to redeposit them on the earth after the flood waters had receded? These are all—pardon the pun—giant questions. As we'll see at the end of this book, there may be some answers that will explain their return, and why Moses penned this:

“The Nephilim were on the earth in those days—and also afterward—when the Sons of God came in to the daughters of men and they bore children to them...”

(Genesis 6:4a)

God. No...Angel. Wait... *Gods*?

We've talked extensively about Elohim, and we know that the word refers to both the singular God and the multitude of gods of the Divine Council, the context of the passage defining which usage is to be incorporated. The Princes of the Divine Council are also referred to as angels, as they are seen in the biblical texts and the apochryphal books of Enoch. One such instance of the word elohim in the plural was when King Saul visited the witch of Endor in 1 Samuel 28:13. The noun elohim is used in conjunction with a plural when the witch tells Saul that she sees "gods" (elohim) coming up out of the earth; this seems to indicate that the term was used to mean something like "divine beings" among spiritists in ancient Israel.

Elohim (אֱלֹהִים) is used nearly 3,000 times in the Old Testament for the name of God, and in addition to meaning "God," it can also mean gods, goddesses, divine rulers, angels, god-like being or beings, or judges. In the New American Standard version of the Hebrew Old Testament, the word *elohim* is used in these instances for:

God, 2,326 times.
God's, 14 times.
divine, 1 time.
divine being, 1 time.
exceedingly, 1 time.
god, 45 times.
goddess, 2 times.
godly, 1 time.
gods, 204 times.
great, 2 times.
judges, 3 times.
mighty, 2 times.
rulers, 1 time.
shrine, 1 time.

The shortened, singular name for God is the word *El* (אֵל), which has the same meanings as above, but in a shorter, singular form: god, mighty man, and strength. It is very interesting to note that the Sons of God, the angels, and gods of the Divine Council had the name El incorporated into many of their names to denote their status as Sons of God, names such as the archangels bore: Michael, Raphael, Gabriel, Uriel, and even Azazel, who introduced the art of weaponry and warfare, as well as harlotry and prostitution to the humans. As mentioned earlier when talking about the bright shining gods, various other cultures have beings that have variants of the same word:

Sumerian *el* meant “brightness” or “shining.”
Akkadian *ilu* meant “radiant, shining one.”
Babylonian *ellu* meant “the shining one.”
Old Welsh *ellu* meant “a shining being.”
Old Irish *aillil* meant “shining” or “to shine.”
English *elf* meant “shining being.”
Anglo-Saxon *aelf* meant “radiant being.”

Philo of Alexandria (20 BCE-50 CE) wrote a commentary of Genesis 6 called *Concerning the Giants*. In it, he emphasized that the passage was not a myth:

And when the angels of God saw the daughters of men that they were beautiful, they took unto themselves wives of all of them whom they Chose.” (Genesis 6:2) Those beings, **whom other philosophers call demons, Moses usually calls angels;** and they are souls hovering in the air. And let no one suppose, that what is here stated is a fable, for it is necessarily true that the universe must be filled with living things in all its parts, since every one of its primary and elementary portions contains its appropriate animals and such as are consistent with its nature; the earth containing terrestrial animals, the sea and the rivers containing aquatic animals, and the fire such as are born in the fire (but it is said, that such as these last are found chiefly in

Macedonia), and the heaven containing the stars: for these also are entire souls pervading the universe, being unadulterated and divine, inasmuch as they move in a circle, which is the kind of motion most akin to the mind, for every one of them is the parent mind. It is therefore necessary that the air also should be full of living beings. And these beings are invisible to us, inasmuch as the air itself is not visible to mortal sight. (But it does not follow, because our sight is incapable of perceiving the forms of souls, that for that reason there are no souls in the air; but it follows of necessity that they must be comprehended by the mind, in order that like may be contemplated by like. [author's emphasis])²⁴

chapter 9

...And Also Afterward

It was sometime during the mid-1990s, while deep in an engaging conversation with friends, that a little light bulb popped on over my head, rather suddenly. We had been talking about aliens, D&D, *Star Trek*, and general metaphysical and ufological genre stuff, enjoying the heady, mystical, metaphysical atmosphere we seemed to be conjuring up in front of the fireplace. Of course, the Guinness was flowing pretty freely, and we all had reached that “higher plane” of enlightenment—you know, the one where all your thoughts suddenly have no filters, and your words come out as if they’d been under restraint for all the days of your life prior to that moment.

Well, this was one of those moments.

I jumped to my feet, yelling several exclamatory expletives of joy upon realizing that I had just stumbled upon a new discovery—at least for me. The information was nothing new, nor was it going to win me a Pulitzer or high praise around the world, but at that moment, it was completely new to me: UFOs and aliens are somehow inextricably linked to the Flood of Noah and the wildly fantastic breed of hybrid Nephilim that appeared at the beginning of the biblical account.

See? Nothing new.

But what occurred to me at that moment was a sudden understanding of the link between events that took place thousands of years ago, and what

seemed like events that were taking place today. And this was the biblical passage that spawned the entire *gadzooks!* scene in front of my friends' living room fireplace:

"26 Just as it was in the days of Noah, so also will it be in the days of the Son of Man. 27 People were eating, drinking, marrying and being given in marriage up to the day Noah entered the ark. Then the flood came and destroyed them all."

(Luke 17:26-27)

And cross-referenced in Matthew's gospel:

"37 As it was in the days of Noah, so it will be at the coming of the Son of Man. 38 For in the days before the flood, people were eating and drinking, marrying and giving in marriage, up to the day Noah entered the ark; 39 and they knew nothing about what would happen until the flood came and took them all away. That is how it will be at the coming of the Son of Man."

(Matthew 24:37-39)

These were the words of Jesus, spoken to his disciples. In their context, they were speaking less about the *conditions* of the times of Noah, than they were speaking to the suddenness of God's wrathful judgment, in that people were still marrying and partying all the way up until they heard the slamming door of the ark that Noah had been building for 120 years. When the first little droplets of rain started to pitter-patter off their foreheads, they suddenly realized that all Noah had been saying was coming to pass. It's not that they hadn't *heard* Noah's words of warning; it was that they didn't *believe* them.

There was a deeper application of the passage than the simple suddenness of judgment—the idea that the things that were taking place all around us in current-day ufology and alien contact scenarios, seemed to be exactly what was taking place when the Watchers interbred with human women and sired the Nephilim. We asked ourselves that night: Is this a repeat of angelic or demonic beings attempting to infiltrate the human bloodline to stave off a

second judgment? Was this the precursor to the fulfillment of all the eschatological prophecies and the path to Armageddon?

Genesis 6:4 leaves us hanging on a haunting, almost chilling three words: “*... and also afterward.*” We have already established that several passages in the books of Moses tell us that the Nephilim survived the flood. But this seems to stand in stark contradiction to the verse in Genesis where we are told:

“21 And all flesh died that moved upon the earth, birds, cattle, beasts, all swarming creatures that swarm upon the earth, and every man; everything on the dry land in whose nostrils was the breath of life died. He blotted out every living thing that was upon the face of the ground, man and animals and creeping things and birds of the air; they were blotted out from the earth. Only Noah was left, and those that were with him in the ark.”

(Genesis 7:21)

Is this an oversight or a contradiction in the passage, or was it an intentional ruse to throw us off the path of the Nephilim? It is clear that what Moses wrote was an account of the Hebrew version of the Flood, but as we discovered earlier, the account of the Nephilim themselves, as recorded in the first few verses of Genesis [Chapter 6](#) have earmarks of having been edited, or added completely at a later date. Was this the work of Joshua, Moses’ successor? Or was it the addition of later scribes?

Or does it simply mean that the Nephilim were not considered as anything but the offspring of spirit beings, therefore not included in the list of things destroyed in Genesis 7:21?

Then there is a question that is often associated with this entire topic: Could this hybrid race of Nephilim giants, produced from the union of the princes of heaven—the lesser gods of the Divine Council—and earthly women, still be roaming the earth today? Because according to Genesis 6:4,

they survived the Flood, regardless of who wrote the passage. If it is a detail that Moses did not write or was somehow unaware of, someone edited the text and added in the appropriate phrases telling us that the Nephilim were still on the earth *after* the Flood that was supposed to have destroyed them.

As discussed in [Chapter 8](#), the Old Testament mentions several occurrences of “giants” and “Nephilim” appearing, specifically the giant-races of Canaan: the Rephaim, the Emim, the Horim, the Zamzummim, and the Anakim.

“10 The Emites used to live there—a people strong and numerous, and as tall as the Anakites. 11 Like the Anakites, they too were considered Rephaite, but the Moabites called them Emites. 12 Horites used to live in Seir, but the descendants of Esau drove them out. They destroyed the Horites from before them and settled in their place, just as Israel did in the land the LORD gave them as their possession.”

(Deuteronomy 2:10-12)

The Kingdom of Og, the King of Bashan, was the “land of the giants.”

“12 That is, the whole kingdom of Og in Bashan, who had reigned in Ashtaroth and Edrei and had survived as one of the last of the Rephaite. Moses had defeated them and taken over their land.”

(Joshua 13:12)

Anak, and his seven sons of the Anakim were also giants, along with the famed Goliath and his four brothers:

“4 A champion named Goliath, who was from Gath, came out of the Philistine camp. He was over nine feet tall. 5 He had a bronze helmet on his head and wore a coat of scale armor of bronze weighing five thousand shekels; 6 on his legs he wore bronze greaves, and a bronze javelin was slung on his back. 7 His spear shaft was like a

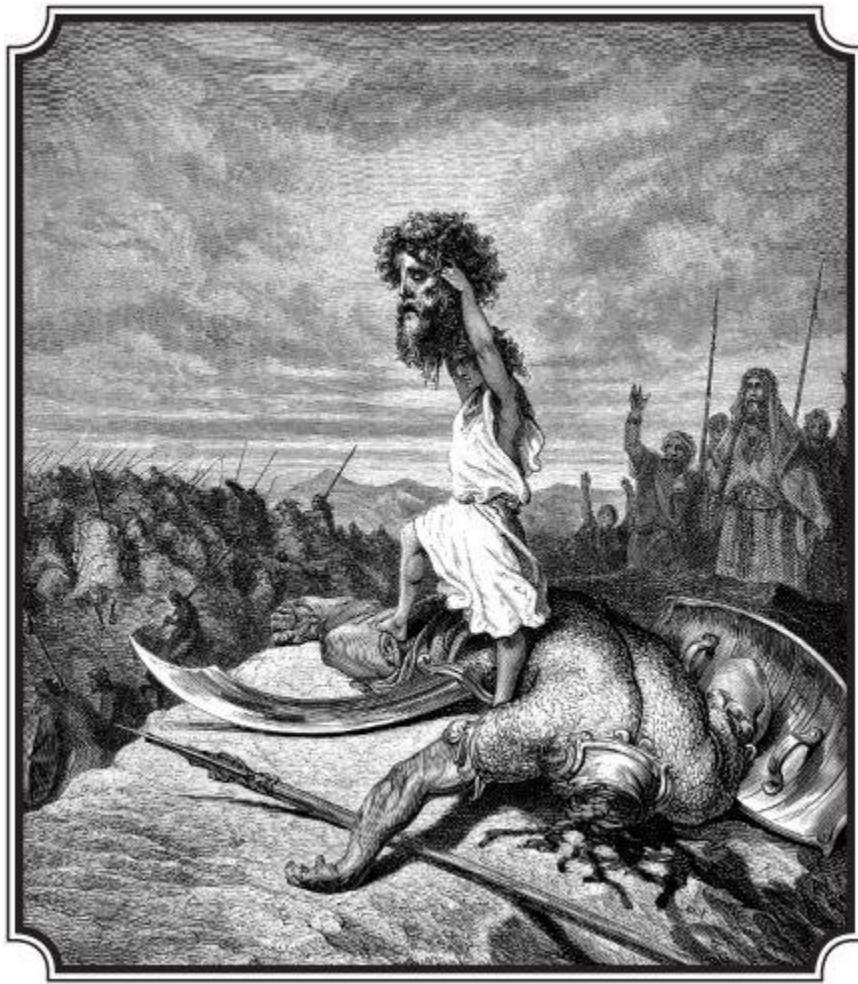
weaver's rod, and its iron point weighed six hundred shekels. His shield bearer went ahead of him."

(1 Samuel 17:4-7)

"15 Once again there was a battle between the Philistines and Israel. David went down with his men to fight against the Philistines, and he became exhausted. 16 And Ishbi-Benob, one of the descendants of Rapha, whose bronze spearhead weighed three hundred shekels and who was armed with a new sword, said he would kill David. 17 But Abishai son of Zeruiah came to David's rescue; he struck the Philistine down and killed him. Then David's men swore to him, saying, "Never again will you go out with us to battle, so that the lamp of Israel will not be extinguished." 18 In the course of time, there was another battle with the Philistines, at Gob. At that time Sibbecai the Hushathite killed Saph, one of the descendants of Rapha. 19 In another battle with the Philistines at Gob, Elhanan son of Jaare-Oregim the Bethlehemite killed Goliath the Gittite, who had a spear with a shaft like a weaver's rod. 20 In still another battle, which took place at Gath, there was a huge man with six fingers on each hand and six toes on each foot—twenty-four in all. He also was descended from Rapha. 21 When he taunted Israel, Jonathan son of Shimeah, David's brother, killed him. 22 These four were descendants of Rapha in Gath, and they fell at the hands of David and his men."

(2 Samuel 17:16-22)

The account of David and Goliath pits the youngest shepherd son of Jesse against the giant from Gath who fought for the Philistines. Goliath came down from the ridge where the Philistines were encamped, every day for 40 days, taunting the armies of Israel, challenging them to single-handed combat.



David and Goliath, Gustave Doré, 1866.
Photo licensed under Wikipedia Creative Commons.

King Saul had promised that whomever could defeat the giant in hand-to-hand, single combat would become Israel's champion. That man would also become the captain of the king's body guard, get the king's daughter's hand in marriage, and have his family become "tax free" in Israel all their days. Not a single soldier answered the call, but they remained encamped, waiting for something to break.

"1 Now the Philistines gathered their armies together to battle, and were gathered together at Sochoh, which belongs to Judah; they encamped between Sochoh and Azekah, in Ephes Dammim. 2 And

Saul and the men of Israel were gathered together, and they encamped in the Valley of Elah, and drew up in battle array against the Philistines. 3 The Philistines stood on a mountain on one side, and Israel stood on a mountain on the other side, with a valley between them. 4 And a champion went out from the camp of the Philistines, named Goliath, from Gath, whose height was six cubits and a span. 5 He had a bronze helmet on his head, and he was armed with a coat of mail, and the weight of the coat was five thousand shekels of bronze. 6 And he had bronze armor on his legs and a bronze javelin between his shoulders. 7 Now the staff of his spear was like a weaver's beam, and his iron spearhead weighed six hundred shekels; and a shield-bearer went before him. 8 Then he stood and cried out to the armies of Israel, and said to them, 'Why have you come out to line up for battle? Am I not a Philistine, and you the servants of Saul? Choose a man for yourselves, and let him come down to me. 9 If he is able to fight with me and kill me, then we will be your servants. But if I prevail against him and kill him, then you shall be our servants and serve us.' 10 And the Philistine said, 'I defy the armies of Israel this day; give me a man, that we may fight together.'"

(1 Samuel 17:1-10)

You can still visit the Valley of Elah today, where the flat, low valley is bordered on two sides by low ridges, and where the armies of Israel encamped on one side and the armies of the Philistines on the other.

Saul was the logical choice to fight Goliath on two counts: He was the king, and the Bible tells us that he stood "head and shoulder" over all the rest of the men of Israel. Saul was a tall man, but nowhere near the height of the giant of Gath. When David came to the camp to deliver food to his brothers, who were soldiers in the Israelite army, he heard the tauntings of Goliath, who by that time had started ascending the Israelite side of the valley to shout out his challenge. David, as the story goes, answered the call. King Saul attempted to dress the shepherd boy in his own armor—some commentators think as a ruse to let the rest of the army think it was Saul himself going into battle against the giant—but the armor was too big

for David. David went into the valley and faced off against Goliath, who mocked him in disdain.

“41 So the Philistine came, and began drawing near to David, and the man who bore the shield went before him. 42 And when the Philistine looked David over, he disdained him; for he was only a youth, ruddy and good-looking. 43 So the Philistine said to David, ‘Am I a dog, that you come to me with sticks?’ And the Philistine cursed David by his gods. 44 And the Philistine said to David, ‘Come to me, and I will give your flesh to the birds of the air and the beasts of the field!’”

(2 Samuel 17:41-44)

And, of course, David replied:

“45 You come to me with a sword, with a spear, and with a javelin. But I come to you in the name of the Lord of hosts, the God of the armies of Israel, whom you have defied. 46 This day the Lord will deliver you into my hand, and I will strike you and take your head from you. And this day I will give the carcasses of the camp of the Philistines to the birds of the air and the wild beasts of the earth, that all the earth may know that there is a God in Israel. 47 Then everyone gathered here shall know that the Lord does not save with sword and spear, for the battle is the Lord’s, and He will give you into our hands.”

(2 Samuel 17:45-47)

And the rest of story we all know: David picked a smooth stone from the valley floor, put it in his sling, and buried it into Goliath’s forehead, killing him instantly. And before you go adhering to the theories that Goliath was just a man with gigantism, keep in mind that he was called a man who had been a “warrior from the days of his youth” (1 Samuel 17:33). When someone is inflicted with gigantism, the older they get, the more brittle their bones become, and the more unstable their musculature and ability to function, or even walk, normally. Goliath was a warrior, he was not a man inflicted with a physical ailment that gave him great size and debilitated him.

Goliath was the offspring remnant of the Nephilim, and he had four other brothers.

But what of the acts of the Watchers? Are they still happening today? Is mankind still being visited by the members of the Divine Council and those who left that domain thousands of years ago? And what of the Nephilim themselves?

chapter 10

Where Are They Now?

“2 Don’t forget to show hospitality to strangers, for some who have done this have entertained angels without realizing it.”

(Hebrews 13:2)

There is a pervasive question regarding the Nephilim as to whether or not they are still among us today. The answer would simply be *yes*, but obviously not in the same form as they interacted with humanity thousands of years ago. And though there may be a bloodline remnant of the Nephilim evident throughout history, it would be a safe bet to say that it no longer has anything to do with the original Watchers. Their influence died thousands of years ago. Unless there are more Watchers in the heavens who did not fall to the earth that day so long ago, there is little probably that their influence will ever be seen again.

But the same cannot be said for their offspring.

It is unknown whether the entire Divine Council of gods came to earth, touching down on the slopes of Mount Hermon. Nor is there any way to calculate the number of beings who may have descended and intermingled with humanity over the millenia. What we know for a certainty is that nearly every ancient culture experienced this brand of extra-terrestrial interruption on some level, bequeathing offspring that took the form of what we now deem as mythological or legendary beings—or, better, the heroes of old and men of renown. From the Tuatha de Danaan’s Elven deities, the statuesque, bright shining giants of the Celtic peoples, to the Sasquatch of

the Native Americans, there have been genetic footprints left in nearly every ancient culture throughout all of recorded history.

As we have already seen, there were remnants of the Nephilim found in various passages of the Old Testament. As early as the time of Abraham, the Nephilim are mentioned as having dwelled in the region around the Dead Sea, scattered among several tribes. The footnotes of the Jerusalem Bible suggest that Moses, in the Genesis 6 passage, intended his words on the Nephilim to be an “anecdote of a superhuman race.” According to the Jerusalem Bible’s commentary, Moses does not go into great detail, nor does he make any bones about representing the Nephilim as the offspring of superhuman beings, as it was already a known entity in his day. He merely references them in order to establish, in his account of Noah’s Flood, the severity of the “wickedness” that was present on the earth prior to the meting out of God’s judgment by flood.

In Christian evangelical circles, there are those who believe these Watchers came down to “pollute” the Messianic bloodline of Jesus Christ. By interfering with human DNA, the “pure,” necessary humanity of the Messiah could thus be thwarted before it ever came to be. Along with Ancient Alienists, Chuck Missler, an evangelical Christian, also believes that the Watchers were extra-terrestrials or grey aliens¹ who were, in actuality, fallen angels or demonic beings setting out to muddy the Messianic waters.

The history of the human race is synonymous with the history of a great spiritual conflict. When we view world politics today, many of us wonder why we can’t just all come to the table and settle disputes in a peaceful fashion. To some extent, it seems to me that the gods and every caste of spiritual being beneath them seem intent on not being able to do what seems so common sensed to humans. There was not a “war in Heaven”: there is an ongoing conflict that makes the stuff of earthly battles seem insignificant. And it has been taking place since before the dawn of time itself.

The Demonology Connection

It is interesting to note that so much of what we read in the biblical accounts of the first family and the subsequent books of the Law, revolve around sexuality and the encoded messages of adultery and sexual prohibition. Just pick up a Bible and read the first five books of the Old Testament, and you'll get the picture. The subtext is rife with pictures of God's relationship to man taking on the tone of a marriage, any deviation from which would be adulterous. And adultery, in accordance with Biblical Law, bore the punishment of death—but only for the woman, not the man. Is this a residual condemnation placed on the female because it was she who was tempted in the Garden of Eden, thereby bringing on the fall of mankind? Is it residual judgment of the women who introduced the world to the Nephilim by sleeping with the Watchers, allowing the world to be corrupted by their offspring?

Creation is sexual in nature—and if you don't believe that, you need to get out more. Whether it was simple lust, as the Genesis passage tells us, or the seeking of elemental power over creation, the heavenly beings were drawn to the sexuality of humans. Do not try to define away the word *lust* as something other than its true intent, which is sexual in its basic, most primal etymology. Could it also be that so much of what we read in the biblical accounts of early mankind—the serpent in the Garden, the Watchers, the overtly sexually discriminating, gender-biased Mosaic Law—are so sexually underwritten in their subtexts, that they were created for the sole purpose of enforcing patriarchal rule? And was that patriarchal rule contrived out of scapegoating the female gender for all of mankind's spiritual woes? Were the questionably misogynistic mandates laid out for the early Christian Church by the Apostle Paul simply there for the intent of controlling women in first-century patriarchal Judean society, or were they in adherence to what was—even then—the ancient notion that women needed to keep covered to prevent the temptation of angels and other spirit beings? It is clear that the Judeo-Christian scriptures contain a resounding undertone of sexual prohibition that can trace its foundations back to the role that women played in the downfall of man, and the corruption and

destruction of the world by the Nephilim. Clearly, it is the sexual promiscuity of women that brought on the greatest woes of the world, and clearly the under-code of sexual prohibition is there to remind them of their follies and keep them suppressed as punishment for their gender-driven acts. The Watchers were not the only ones placed under lock and key when God imposed judgment on the world.

Make no mistake: It was the early church fathers who first said that the angels and other spirit beings were “sexless.” This is a completely fabricated, extra-biblical notion. Scripture never states that angels and demons cannot engage in sex. The highly quoted passage in Matthew 22:30 has Jesus telling his followers that “angels do not marry.” He doesn’t, however, say they are incapable of sex, and the context of his words in this passage focus on the righteous angels, not the unrighteous demons. The entire contextual point of Christ’s argument is that *people* will not marry in heaven; He is not particularly discussing the sexual habits of the angels.

There is something more to all of this, something deeper. Some alien conspiracy theorists contend that the Church has been silent about UFOs and abductions, and about alien hybridization, fetus thefts, and the impregnation of women by these beings. Yet, all along, the Church has spoken out as loudly as any other voice in that it has a complete doctrine built around the infiltration and interference of the demonic on humanity—and it all stems from the very first impregnation of Eve in the Garden, by the character known as the “Serpent.” It was he who fathered Cain, the first of the Nephilim. This act was repeated throughout all of antediluvial humanity until God had had enough, and there was judgment.

According to Roman Catholic Church doctrine, “the fallen” have been attempting to breed the perfect hybrid offspring of spirit and human since the time of the resurgence of humanity onto the still damp floodplains of ancient Mesopotamia. In accordance with Roman Catholic systematic theology—and in the simplest of terms—God keeps demons on a pretty short leash. They can do nothing without his consent or allowance. The account of the descent of the Watchers is not to be misconstrued as demonic

attempts at breeding with human women. The Watchers, as we have seen, were not demonic, nor were they fallen angels. They were the minor gods of the Divine Council who “left their first estate” and descended to their charges, the humans, to interbreed with them, and the judgment imposed on them is hinted at in Psalm 82: “They were stripped of their immortality and died like mortal men.”

From Genetic Hybrid to Demon

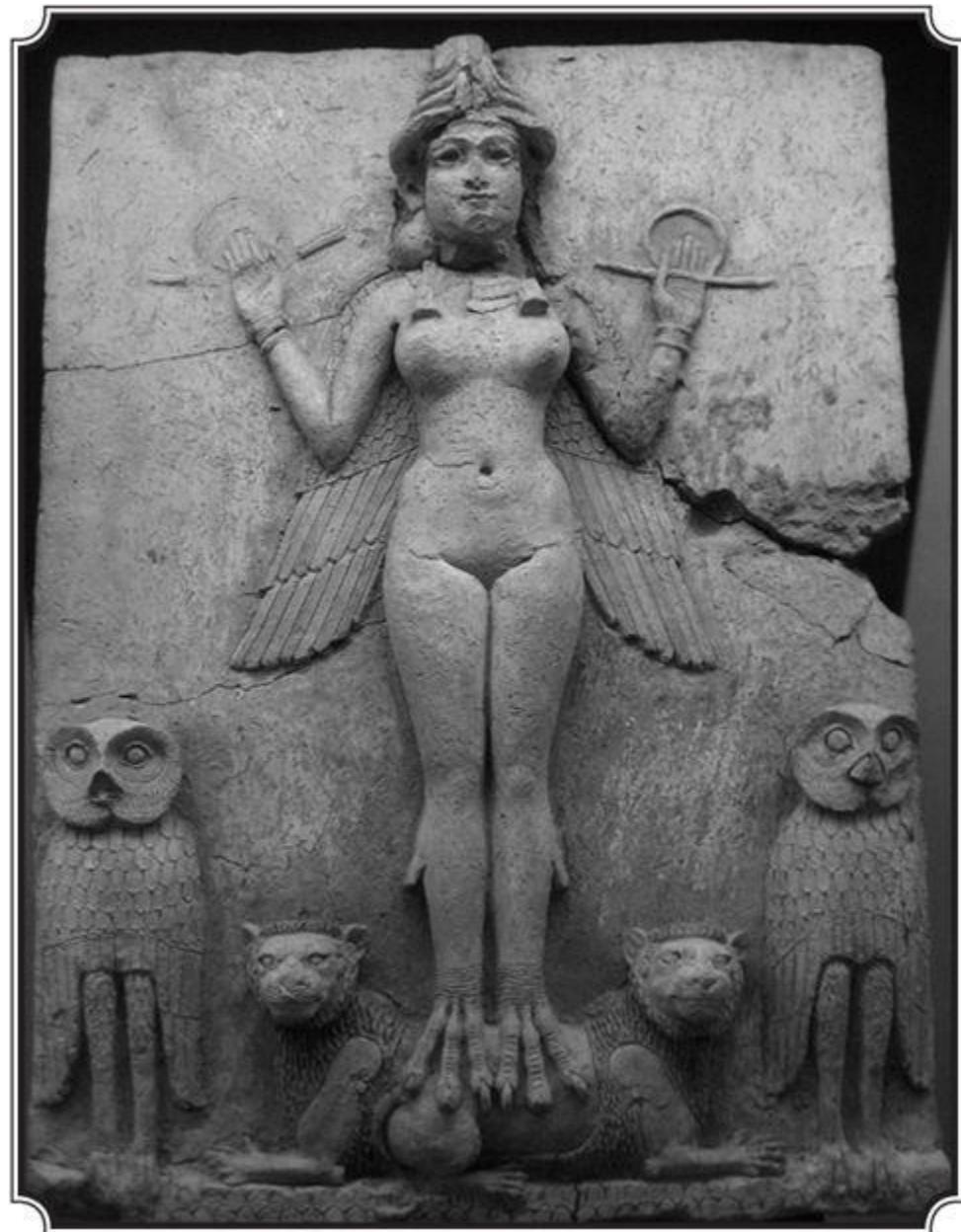
Although it is commonplace in Judeo-Christian circles to believe that demons are simply the angels who rebelled against God and were cast to the earth, the Book of Enoch gives us a very different alternative to that tradition:

“8 And now, the giants, who are produced from the spirits and flesh, shall be called evil spirits upon 9 the earth, and on the earth shall be their dwelling. Evil spirits have proceeded from their bodies; because they are born from men and from the holy Watchers is their beginning and primal origin; 10 they shall be evil spirits on earth, and evil spirits shall they be called. (As for the spirits of heaven, in heaven shall be their dwelling, but as for the spirits of the earth which were born upon the earth, on the earth shall be their dwelling.) 11 And the spirits of the giants afflict, oppress, destroy, attack, do battle, and work destruction on the earth, and cause trouble: they take no food, but nevertheless 12 hunger and thirst, and cause offences. And these spirits shall rise up against the children of men and against the women, because they have proceeded from them.”

(Enoch 15: 8-12)

The Enochian passage is implicit. It is the spirits of the Nephilim killed in the Great Flood that are the demonic forces dwelling on the earth today. It was here on the earth that they were born; it is here on the earth where they died. And because they were fathered by spirit beings, Enoch tells us

that they will forever dwell on the earth in the form of evil spirits. The “ghosts” of the Nephilim are the demonic host who have plagued humanity through the ages. The offspring of the Watchers and human women were disruptive, corrupt, and evil in nature, and that is why the Divine sent a great flood to wipe them out. Evidently, in spirit form they are no different.



The earliest known representation of Lilith, Sumerian, circa 1950 BCE. Famous relief from the Old Babylonian period (not in the British Museum) called the “Burney relief” or “Queen of the Night relief.” The depicted figure could be an aspect of Ishtar, Mesopotamian goddess of sexual love and war. However, her bird-like feet and accompanying owls have suggested to some a connection with Lilitu (called Lilith in the Bible), though seemingly not the usual demonic Lilitu.

Photo courtesy of the British Museum, London.

The spirits of the Nephilim are the great harassers of mankind. They are the true Fallen—those who came down, those who descended, those who fell. They troubled mankind to the point of watery judgment imposed by the supreme God, and they continue, in spirit form, to commit evil against humanity. The Watchers are not fallen angels, as we have established already in this book, but their offspring, whose mix of extra-terrestrial and human DNA made them unique on the earth, have become the spiritual hounds of hell who torment the living.

And they continue wreaking havoc on the earth and in the lives of humans—even today.

Sleeping With the Enemy

In *The Gilgamesh Epic*, the god-man Gilgamesh’s father is listed as Lilu,² and he is one of the earliest mentions of an incubus. The story hales from ancient Mesopotamia and is found in the Sumerian King List (2400 BCE), where it is said that Lilu seduced women in their sleep and had sex with them. At the same time, Lilitu³ (“Lilith”), a female demon, appeared to men in their erotic dreams. Both Lilu and Lilitu strove to fulfill their sexual desires and create offspring.

Regarding Lilith (Hebrew: לִילִית) herself, she is a character found in Jewish mythology, mentioned earliest in the Babylonian Talmud, documents compiled between the third and fourth centuries CE. In Jewish folklore, during the eighth to 10th centuries CE, Lilith became known as Adam's first wife, and this mythology developed into a widely accepted view among the Jews of the Middle Ages.⁴ As the legend became more refined and expanded, the 13th-century writings of Rabbi Isaac ben Jacob Alfasi ha-Cohen had Lilith leaving Adam, refusing to return to Eden after she refused to become subservient to him. She later mated with archangel Samael.⁵ The resulting Lilith legend is still found in modern Western culture, literature, occultism, fantasy, and even horror. And she has even become a cult favorite in the spiritist-feminist community.

It is said in some traditions that Lilith, taking the form of a male, was actually the serpent in the garden who seduced Eve, and then went on to seduce Adam with grave consequence:

“And the Serpent, the Woman of Harlotry, incited and seduced Eve through the husks of Light which in itself is holiness. And the Serpent seduced Holy Eve, and enough said for him who understands. And all this ruination came about because Adam the first man coupled with Eve while she was in her menstrual impurity—this is the filth and the impure seed of the Serpent who mounted Eve before Adam mounted her. Behold, here it is before you: because of the sins of Adam the first man all the things mentioned came into being. For Evil Lilith, when she saw the greatness of his corruption, became strong in her husks, and came to Adam against his will, and became hot from him and bore him many demons and spirits and Lilin.”⁶

It was the offspring of Lilith by Adam that was said, in this tradition, to have become the host of demons. This is really the birth of the modern understanding of the incubus and succubus, demonic beings who sleep with humans for the purpose of satiating some innate sexual drive, and for the purpose of creating spirit offspring.

In the Christian tradition, there existed a huge debate over the veracity of demonic influence—especially when it came to discussions over the incubi and succubi. St. Augustine, a Roman philosopher and theologian who lived in the late fourth and early fifth centuries, touched on this topic in his work, *The City of God*. Sounding much like alien abduction believers today, Augustine said that there were too many attacks by incubi to deny their existence: “There is, too, a very general rumor, which many have verified by their own experience, or which trustworthy persons who have heard the experience of others corroborate, that sylvans and fauns, who are commonly called incubi, had often made wicked assaults upon women.”⁷

Eight hundred years later, Thomas Aquinas, disputing the reproductive abilities of incubi, as they were—in his account—fallen angels, therefore incapable of sexual reproduction, wrote: “Still if some are occasionally begotten from demons, it is not from the seed of such demons, nor from their assumed bodies, but from the seed of men taken for the purpose; as when the demon assumes first the form of a woman, and afterwards of a man; just as they take the seed of other things for other generating purposes.”⁸

According to the *Malleus Maleficarum* (“Witches’ Hammer”), written by Heinrich Kramer in 1486, a succubus will have sex with a human male in order to collect semen from the men she seduces. She then gives it to the incubi or male demons, who then use the semen to impregnate human females, thus explaining how demons could apparently sire children despite the traditional belief that they were incapable of reproduction. Children so begotten were known as *cambions*, and were supposed to be those who were born deformed, or more susceptible to supernatural influences.⁹ The *Malleus Maleficarum* does not address the obvious issue: why a human female impregnated with the semen of a human male would not produce normal, healthy human offspring, even if the mode of delivery was demonic.

Of course, it is also widely believed that the *Malleus Maleficarum*, written during the period of the Inquisition's greatest power, is nothing more than a work of misongyny. It holds women as the main culprits of evil and perpetrators of witchcraft. The book also claims that women are much more susceptible to demonic influence as they are “weaker in faith than men,” and more apt to be carnal. The author also put forward the notion that most of the women accused as witches were guilty of “possessing strong personalities” and were known to defy convention by overstepping the lines of “proper female decorum.”¹⁰

Whether or not any of information on demonic activity as found within the pages of the *Malleus* bears any resemblance to the truth of the matter is very hard to decipher, especially when obfuscated by the persecution and the political maneuverings of those who were in control of the masses at the time of its writing. When one steps back, outside the box, it all starts to take on the tone of so much ridiculous surmising and story-telling, and works such as the *Malleus Maleficarum* do little to dispel the notion that so much of this is pure fiction.

Do the demonic spirits of the Nephilim have sex with humans to continue to propagate a species of mixed-blood spirit beings? It seems that even in death, the offspring of the Watchers continue to perpetrate their raging corruption of humanity. Of course, there is very little of this that can be proven by physical evidence, so it once again it is all governed by the tone of what you *choose to believe*. And it all sounds so fanciful and the stuffs of dark imaginings, it is no wonder the scientific community shuns the slightest notion.

The Paranormal

There is a great and grave fascination with demons among modern paranormal hobbyists. The surge of ghost hunting and paranormal investigation throughout the last decade, spurred on by the success of pop

cultural, live-action paranormal television, has fostered a rise in interest in demons and demonology, the study of evil spirits and their influence on people. However, with the rise of pop cultural influence also comes the rise in pop cultural application, and the vast majority of so-called demonologists operating today have little knowledge of what it is they claim to be, and little ability to enact on the behalf of those tormented by demonic spirits. Having an interest in the demonic is not the same as having experience with helping people who are in bondage to these beings.

Are the ghosts encountered during highly popularized paranormal investigations in any way linked to the spirits of the Nephilim? The short answer is *yes*. Something I have always said when investigating claims of ghosts and encountering the spirit world is that you never know who you are talking to, *really*. Without making a case for the existence of “human” ghosts, suffice it to say that it is more often than not that a demon will deceive you into believing it is the ghost of a dead human, rather than an actual encounter with those who have passed on, and are still roaming the hallways and attics of old houses and abandoned insane asylums.

The evil spirits encountered in demonological settings are the spirits of the Nephilim, who died in the Great Flood.

Are the Nephilim among us today? Most certainly—in both physical remnants that have bred into the bloodlines of the human race, and the ghostly presence and influence of the Nephilim demons.

Conclusion

As you have been able to see by now, the story of the Nephilim is not a simple one. Recounting the actual biblical tale, including the various accounts from other ancient books, could comprise a page or two in a book such as this. But attempting to dig a little deeper to gain a richer knowledge of what's behind the story, along with its historical and future ramifications, is what transforms it into a much bigger account. The descent of the Watchers to humanity is no small, isolated myth; it has far-reaching tendrils that dip into the subterranean flow of every culture and even life itself on this planet. Of course, there is a modicum of *faith* required to make the connections, just as there is with leaping the great chasms that lie between the mileposts on the evolutionary chain established by science. And as with the scientific research of the ascendancy of mankind, there are no quantitative facts that link it all together, simply stepping stones from one discovery to the next. As I said at the very beginning of this book, we have a pile of stones here, but that pile does not make a house until it is all mortared together—and sometimes that mortar is mixed pretty thinly in order to make exponential leaps to fill in the missing data. There is so much to surmise and such significant amounts of subjective extrapolation, that the true story in all its details may never be known to modern humanity. But the fact that something indeed happened many thousands of years ago is incontrovertible.

Whether you are a believer in the religious writings of the bible and its apocryphal companions, or whether you are in strict adherence to the scientific code that allows for nothing to exist beyond what is provable in the here and now, humanity bears the marks and scars of interference on both a historic scope as well as in our bloodlines. That is where we find ourselves flipping the intellectual coin of subjectivity into the air, wondering if the answer is as simple as “heads it is so, tails it is not.”

I have already begun to garner criticism on my religious views as expressed in this book, and I am sure there is much more to come as these ideas of mine, as mixed into the examination of these unearthly beings, makes their appointed rounds to the minds of those who crack the covers of this book. I am sure to be taken to task for some of my translations of the ancient texts, as there are so many good scholars who have done the groundwork beneath my feet, and from whom I have gleaned bits and pieces of information. Though not intending to make any enemies in the Jewish and Christian camps, I am sure to have offended some sensibilities when addressing the religious tone of these topics, and I know I will draw some concern for the safety of my immortal soul from those who will see my words as damning Christianity and thumbing my nose at the monotheistic God of the Bible. But those actions on my part would be the farthest thing from the truth. I am simply asking questions and seeking answers.

Have I undergone some transformative thinking during the process of researching and writing this book? Most certainly. And although I have an overwhelmingly satisfactory grasp on what I believe about the Watchers and the Nephilim, there have been great tolls taken on my faith and even greater questions burning in my brain. Perhaps one might think that my faith must not have been very strong to begin with, if a little historical buffeting could shake it up a bit, but I would differ with that assessment, for my faith was very strong during my early years and my subsequent Bible College and seminary training. But the older I get, and the further away I travel from those days of innocence, the more difficult it becomes to trust in a God who resembles so many other mythological characters—many of whom preceded him in the historical record.

So what I want to leave you with as a result of reading this book is a better understanding of who the Nephilim are—where they came from and why they are important to understanding the great ebbing and flowing undercurrent of humanity. I want you to have gleaned an understanding that, although stories maybe stories, there is usually a kernel of truth at their

core that is a much bigger story than what you could have ever imagined. To me, my study of the story of the Nephilim has emerged as an eye-opening encounter with beings who are living and breathing around us every day of our lives. Their activities have great bearing on the whole of humanity and the course of world events. They once were so influential that they brought about the end of the world. The big question is whether or not they are having that same influence yet again.

It is up to you to determine what you want to believe about these beings. Were they the descendants of the minor gods of heaven? Were they the offspring of alien encounters with humanity? Either path bears little proof beyond the obvious earmarks of interruption. Determining just who and what did the interrupting is at the core of the big questions of life. If nothing else, I hope this book provided you with information, and, in the grandest of hopes, opened the doors to deeper consideration and the asking of even greater questions.

It is my belief that there exist out there beings much greater than ourselves—perhaps not greater in reason and compassion, but greater in the sense that they hold a power that was strong enough to create us, and then strong enough to manipulate our genetics and bloodlines. It is my belief that there is a great, universal spirituality that resembles nothing like that which we have been taught or have conceived in our wildest fictions.

The Nephilim rose to dominance on the earth as the children of a mixed race of superior beings and human women. They, as all things do, degraded and became corrupt, but their decay and decadence were on as grandiose a scheme as their unnatural origins. They wreaked havoc and tragedy and catastrophic corruption among humankind. Then they fell in the great judgment imposed by the king of all that exists, only to return in the form of pure evil.

If this all sounds like the stuffs of myth, you would be correct in your assessment, for all myth begins to merge at the edges, blending into a

massive blurred picture of the great cosmic narrative, underpinning the foundation and origin of the universe. The saddest part of all is that myth is not testable. It is not logical, and it rarely makes sense in light of scientific methodology.

The Nephilim came, conquered, decayed, and fell, and they are still with us to this very day.

The big question is in asking yourself what you can and cannot believe. And the greatest responsibility we all have is squaring the circle.

Epilogue

“8 ‘For enquire, I pray thee, of the former age, and prepare thyself to the search of their fathers: 9 For we are but of yesterday, and know nothing, because our days upon the earth are a shadow.’”

(Job 8:8-9)

Notes

Chapter 1

1. Owen Lovejoy, “The Origin of Man,” *Science*, Vol. 211, no. 4480, January 1981, pp. 341-50.
2. Richard Dawkins is an evolutionary biologist and the former Charles Simonyi Professor of the Public Understanding of Science at Oxford University. He is the author of several of modern science’s essential texts, including *The Selfish Gene* (1976) and *The God Delusion* (2006). Born in Nairobi, Kenya, Dawkins eventually graduated with a degree in zoology from Balliol College, Oxford, and then earned a masters degree and doctorate from Oxford University. He is the founder of the Richard Dawkins Foundation for Reason and Science.
3. James Randi, BigThink.com interview, 2010.
bigthink.com/jamesrandi.
4. Sagan, *The Demon Haunted World*.
5. Dictionary.com (www.dictionary.com) and Webster’s.
6. David Gelernter, BigThink.com interview, 2010.
bigthink.com/davidgelernter.

7. Cited in Rev. Jonathan Weyer, “Critical thought and the Paranormal: Not an Oxymoron,” *TAPS ParaMagazine*, Volume 7, No. 1, 2011.
8. Michael Shemer, *Why People Believe Weird Things* (Henry Holt and Co., 1997, 2002).
9. Cited in *Skeptic*, Volume 4, No. 4, 1996.
10. Carl Sagan, *The Demon Haunted World* (Random House, 1996).

Chapter 2

1. Wilhelm Gesenius, *Gesenius' Hebrew Grammar*, 2nd English ed., Rev. in accordance with the 28th German ed. (1909) by A.E. Cowley. Edited and enlarged by E. Kautzsch. P. 399.
2. Ibid.
3. William F. Albright, *Yahweh and the Gods of Canaan* (1968).

Chapter 3

1. Polybius, *The Histories*, Introduction p. xiv. Loeb ed., Col. H.J. Edwards, C.B., W.R. Paton trans., Bk.16.14.
2. Raphael Patai, and Merlin Stone, *The Hebrew Goddess* (Wayne State University Press, 1990), p. 139.

3. Fielder, David. *Jesus Christ, Sun of God: Ancient Cosmology and Early Christian Symbolism* (Quest Books, 1993), p. 128.
4. G.A. Wainwright, “The Origin of Amūn,” *The Journal of Egyptian Archaeology*, Vol. 49, December 1963, pp. 21-23.
5. Pyramid Texts, § 446, transl. R.O. Faulkner.
6. Coffin Texts, spell 223, transl. R.O. Faulkner.
7. F.L. Cross, ed. *The Oxford Dictionary of the Christian Church* (New York: Oxford University Press, 2005).
8. Irenaeus, *Against Heresies: Book I, Chapter XVIII*. Passages from Moses, which the heretics pervert to the support of their hypothesis.
9. Ibid.

Chapter 4

1. George Smith, *The Chaldean Account of Genesis* (1876).
2. According to Wikipedia (en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Sin-liqe-unninni), Sîn-lēqi-unninni was an incantation/exorcist priest (mashmashshu) who lived in Mesopotamia in the period between 1300 BC and 1000 BC. He is the compiler of the best preserved version of the Epic of Gilgamesh. His name is listed in the text itself, which is unusual for works written in cuneiform. His version is known by its incipit, or first line, “He who saw the deep” or “The one who saw the Abyss.” It is unknown how different his version is from the earlier texts. The only time when Sin-lēqi-unninni narrates the story in first person is in the prologue. His version includes Utnapishtim’s story of the

Flood in Tablet XI and in Tablet XII the Sumerian Gilgamesh, Enkidu and the Netherworld. Sîn-lēqi-unninni's name means "Sin (the Moon God) is one who accepts my prayer." It is also sometimes transcribed, albeit less probably, as "Sîn-liqe-unninni," meaning "O Sin! Accept my prayer."

3. A.R. George, *The Babylonian Gilgamesh Epic*, Introduction, critical edition and cuneiform, p. 27.
4. Jeffrey H. Tigay, *The Evolution of the Gilgamesh Epic* (Philadelphia, Penna.: University of Pennsylvania Press, 1982).
5. Theodor H. Gaster, *Myth, Legend, and Custom in the Old Testament* (New York: Harper & Row, 1969).
6. Barbara C. Sproul, *Primal Myths* (New York: HarperCollins, 1979).
7. Ovid, *The Metamorphoses*, Horace Gregory, transl. (New York: Viking Press, 1958).
8. Snorri Sturluson, *The Prose Edda*, Jean I. Young, transl. (Berkeley, Calif.: University of California Press, 1954).
9. Hugh Miller, *The Testimony of the Rocks. Or, Geology in Its Bearings on the Two Theologies, Natural and Revealed* (Boston, Mass.: Gould and Lincoln, 1857).

Chapter 5

1. Scott Noegel, and Brannon M. Wheeler. *Historical Dictionary of Prophets in Islam and Judaism*. (Lanham, MD.: Scarecrow Press, 2003).

2. A. Kuhrt, “Berossus’s Babyloniaca and Seleucid Rule in Babylonia,” in A. Kuhrt and S. Sherwin-White, eds. *Hellenism in the East* (Berkeley, Calif.: University of California Press, 1987), pg. 55f.
3. “An Introduction to the Grail Research & Esoteric Writings of Boyd Rice,” www.thevesselofgod.com.
4. Boyd Rice, www.thevesselofgod.com.
5. Interview with Bill Birnes.
6. Chuck Missler, *Alien Encounters: The Secret Behind the UFO Phenomenon* (Koinonia House, 2003).
7. Tim Lahaye, *Charting the End Times* (Harvest House Publishers, 2001), pg. 32-33.
8. *Life in the Universe: Essays by Carl Sagan*, unabridged edition (University Press Audiobooks, 1998).
9. Richard Vizzutti, “The Return of the Stargods,” author’s Website, www.stargods.org, 2003.
10. Will Offley, “David Icke and the Politics of Madness: Where the New Age meets the Third Reich,” article for the political Research Associates, 2000.
11. David Icke’s Website, www.davidicke.com.

12. Flavius Josephus, *The Jewish Wars*, 75 A.D., 2.9.2-4. This passage from Josephus can also be cross-referenced with the New Testament passage of Luke 13:1-3.

13. Philo, *On The Embassy of Gauis Book XXXVIII* 299-305.

14. From Walter A. Elwell's *Baker's Evangelical Dictionary of Biblical Theology*.

15. Joe Soucheray, KSTP AM1500 talk radio host.

16. Josef F. Blumrich, *The Spaceships of Ezekiel* (Bantam Books, 1974).

Chapter 6

1. “Sinners in the Hands of an Angry God” is a sermon written by American theologian Jonathan Edwards, preached on July 8, 1741, in Enfield, Connecticut. Like Edwards’s other sermons and writings, it combines vivid imagery of the Christian concept of Hell with observations of the secular world and citations of scripture. It remains Edwards’s most famous written work, and is widely studied both among American Christians and historians, due to the glimpse it provides into the theology of the Great Awakening of c. 1730-1755.

2. “Were the Nephilim Extraterrestrials,” Christian Answers Website, www.christiananswers.net/q-aig/aig-c036.html.

3. John A. Keel, *UFOs: Operation Trojan Horse* (Illuminet Press, 1996).

4. Dr. Pierre Guerin, “Thirty Years After Kenneth Arnold,” *Flying Saucer Review*, Vol. 25, No. 1, January/February 1979, pp. 13-14.
5. G.H. Pember, *Earth’s Earliest Ages and Their Connection with Modern Spiritualism and Theosophy* (1876).
6. John Heise, “Akkadian Cuneiform, Chapter II, Mosepotamia.” Netherlands Institute for Space Research website. www.sron.nl/~jheise/akkadian/Welcome_mesopotamia.html, 1996.
7. R.A. Boulay, *Flying Serpents and Dragons: The Story of Mankind’s Reptilian Past* (The Book Tree, 1999), p. 80.
8. Boulay, *Flying Serpents and Dragons*, chapter on the Ruling Gods of the Sumerian Pantheon, 1990, www.bibliotecapleyades.net/serpents_dragons/boulay01e.htm.
9. Craig Hines, *Gateway of the Gods* (Numina Media Arts, 2007), p. 74.
10. Ronald S. Hendel, “When the Sons of God Cavorted With the Daughters of Men,” *Understanding the Dead Sea Scrolls*, Hershel Shanks, ed. (Vintage Books, 1993), p. 172.
11. Washington Irving, *The Life and Voyages of Christopher Columbus* (New York: Collins, 1838).

Chapter 7

1. Averil Cameron and Stuart G. Hall. *Life of Constantine* (Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1999).
2. Edward Gibbon, “Gibbon’s ‘Age of Constantine’ and the Fall of Rome”, 1969, pp. 71-96.
3. Richards, Jeffrey, *The Popes and the Papacy in the Early Middle Ages* (London: Routledge & Kegan Paul, 1979).
4. Timothy Freke and Peter Gandy, *The Jesus Mysteries: Was the “Original Jesus” a Pagan God?* (Three Rivers Press, 2001).
5. Egbert Richter-Ushanas, *The Induand the Rg-Veda, 2nd edition* (India: Motilal Banarsidass, 2001), p. 16.

Chapter 8

1. As found in the Apocrypha and Pseudepigrapha of the Old Testament.
2. Noah Kramer, Samuel Maier, and John Maier, *Myths of Enki, the Crafty God* (New York and Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1989).
3. Carroll, Robert T (1994-2009). *The Skeptic's Dictionary: Zecharia Sitchin and The Earth Chronicles* (John Wiley & Sons), www.skepdic.com/sitchin.html.
4. Corey Kilgannon, “Origin of the Species, From an Alien View,” *New York Times*, January 8, 2010, www.nytimes.com/2010/01/10/nyregion/10alone.html. Retrieved October 29, 2010: “Mr. Sitchin has been called silly before—by scientists, historians and archaeologists who dismiss his hypotheses

as pseudoscience and fault their underpinnings—his translations of ancient texts and his understanding of physics.”

5. Michael S. Heiser, PhD, Hebrew and Semitic Studies, University of Wisconsin-Madison, www.sitchiniswrong.com/letter/letter.htm.
6. I. Mueller, L.S. Grinstein, and P.J. Campbell, *Women of Mathematics: A Biobibliographic Sourcebook* (New York: Greenwood Press, 1987).
7. Kathleen Wider, *Women Philosophers in the Ancient Greek World: Donning the Mantle* (Indiana University Press, 1986), pp. 49-50.
8. *A Study of History Volume XII Reconsiderations* (London: Oxford University Press, 1961). Also read more at phoenicia.org/ugarbibl.html#ixzz1VJiwUi6m.
9. Michael S. Heiser, *Dictionary of the Old Testament: Wisdom, Poetry, & Writings*, Tremper Longman and Peter Enns, eds. (InterVarsity Press, 2008).
10. Michael S. Heiser, The Divine Council Website, www.thedivinecouncil.com, 2010.
11. Craig Hines, *Gateway of the Gods* (Numina Media Arts, 2007), p. 62ff.
12. Derek Kinder Tyndale, “Genesis” in *Old Testament Commentaries* (IVP Academic, March 13, 2008).

13. An Aramaic text reads “Watchers” here (J.T. Milik, *Aramaic Fragments of Qumran Cave 4* [Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1976], p. 167).
14. Upon Ardis. Or, “in the days of Jared” (R.H. Charles, ed. and trans., *The Book of Enoch* [Oxford: Clarendon Press, 1893], p. 63).
15. Mt. Armon, or Mt. Hermon, derives its name from the Hebrew word *herem*, a curse (Charles, p. 63).
16. Hines, *Gateway of the Gods*.
17. Brown, Driver, Briggs, and Gesenius. “Hebrew Lexicon entry for Tamiym.” “The Old Testament Hebrew Lexicon.” www.searchgodsword.org/lex/heb/view.cgi?number=8549.
18. *Companion Bible* (Oxford University Press), Appendix 26.
19. Flavius Josephus, *The Antiquities of the Jews* (first century).
20. Kelley Coblenz Bautch, *A Study of the Geography of 1 Enoch 17-19: “No One Has Seen what I Have Seen,”* (Brill Academic Publishers, 2003), p. 134.
21. Henry M. Morris, *The Genesis Record* (Grand Rapids, Mich.: Baker Books, 1976), p. 174.
22. Issac E. Mozeson, *The Word: The Dictionary That Reveals the Hebrew Source of English* (New York: SPI Books, 1989, 1995, 2000), p. 117.

23. Larry Pierce and Marian Pierce, *The Annals of the World* (Master Books, 2003), pp. 52-53.
24. Philo, “Concerning the Giants, Commentary on Genesis 6” in *On the Giants* II: 6-9 (20-30 CE).

Chapter 10

1. Chuck Missler, *Alien Encounters: The Secret Behind the UFO Phenomenon*, Revised Edition (Koinonia House, 2003).
2. Raphael Patai, *The Hebrew Goddess*, 3rd enlarged edition (New York: Discus Books, 1978).
3. Siegmund Hurwitz, *Lilith: The First Eve*, Third Edition (Daimon Verlag, 2003).
4. Howard Schwartz, *Tree of Souls: The Mythology of Judaism* (Oxford University Press, 2007), p. 218.
5. Kristen E. Kvam, Linda S. Scheuring, and Valarie H. Ziegler, *Eve and Adam: Jewish, Christian, and Muslim Readings on Genesis and Gender* (Indiana University Press, 1999), pp. 220-221.
6. Patai, *The Hebrew Goddess*, 81:455f.
7. Augustine, *The City of God*, 15.23.
8. Thomas Aquinas, *Summa Theologica*.

9. Heinrich Kramer and James Sprenger, Montague Summers, translator (1928), *The Malleus Maleficarum, Part 2, Chapter VIII*, “Certain Remedies Prescribed Against Those Dark and Horrid Harms with Which Devils May Afflict Men,” at sacred-texts.com.
10. Michael D. Bailey, *Battling Demons: Witchcraft, Heresy, and Reform in the Late Middle Ages* (Pennsylvania State University Press, 2003), p. 51.

Bibliography

- Albright, William F. *Yahweh and the Gods of Canaan: An Historical Analysis of Two Contrasting Faiths*. Winona Lake, Ind.: Eisenbrauns, 1968.
- Augustine. *The City of God*. 410.
- Bailey, Michael D. *Battling Demons: Witchcraft, Heresy, and Reform in the Late Middle Ages*. State College, Penn.: Pennsylvania State University Press, 2003.
- Blumrich, Josef F. *The Spaceships of Ezekiel*. New York: Bantam Books, 1974.
- Boulay, R.A. *Flying Serpents and Dragons: The Story of Mankind's Reptilian Past*. San Diego, Calif.: The Book Tree, 1999.
- Cameron, Averil, and Stuart G. Hall. *Life of Constantine*. Oxford, UK: Clarendon Press, 1999.
- Carroll, Robert T. "Zecharia Sitchin and The Earth Chronicles." The Skeptic's Dictionary Website. www.skepdic.com/sitchin.html, 2009.
- Coblentz-Bautch, Kelley. *A Study of the Geography of 1 Enoch 1719: No One Has Seen What I Have Seen*. Boston, Mass.: Brill Academic Publishers, 2003.
- Cross, F.L. *The Oxford Dictionary of the Christian Church*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2005.
- Dawkins, Richard. *The God Delusion*. Orlando, Fla.: Houghton Mifflin Harcourt, 2006.
- Edwards, H.J. *Polybius, The Histories, two volumes*. Boston, Mass.: Harvard University Press, 1922. Volume 1, Introduction.

- Elwell, Walter A. *Evangelical Dictionary of Theology*. Grand Rapids, Mich.: Baker Academic, 2001.
- Faulkner, R.O. *The Ancient Egyptian Coffin Texts*. London: Aris & Phillips, 2004.
- . *The Ancient Egyptian Pyramid Texts*. Lawrence, Kans.: DigiReads.com Publishing, 2007.
- Fideler, David. *Jesus Christ, Sun of God: Ancient Cosmology and Early Christian Symbolism*. Adyar, India: Quest Books, 1993.
- Freke, Timothy, and Peter Gandy. *The Jesus Mysteries: Was the ‘Original Jesus’ a Pagan God?* New York: Three Rivers Press, 2001.
- Gaster, Theodor H. *Myth, Legend, and Custom in the Old Testament*. New York: Harper & Row, 1969.
- George, A.R. *The Babylonian Gilgamesh Epic: Introduction, Critical Edition and Cuneiform Texts*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2003.
- Gesenius, Wilhelm. *Gesenius’ Hebrew Grammar*, 2nd English ed. Oxford, UK: Oxford University Press, 1922.
- Gibbon, Edward. *Gibbon’s Age of Constantine and the Fall of Rome*. Middletown, Conn.: Blackwell Publishing for Wesleyan University, 1969.
- Heise, John. “Akkadian Cuneiform.” www.sron.nl/~jheise/akkadian/Welcome_mesopotamia.html. 1996.
- Heiser, Michael S. *Dictionary of the Old Testament: Wisdom, Poetry, & Writings*. Ed. Tremper Longman and Peter Enns. Westmont, Ill.: InterVarsity Press, 2008.
- . Hebrew and Semitic Studies. Madison, Wisc.: University of Wisconsin-Madison. www.sitchiniswrong.com/letter/letter.htm.
- Hendel, Ronald S. *When the Sons of God Cavorted With the Daughters of Men, Understanding the Dead Sea Scrolls*. Ed. Hershel Shanks. New York: Vintage Books, 1993.

- Hines, Craig. *Gateway of the Gods*. Pittsburgh, Penn.: Numina Media Arts, 2007.
- Hurwitz, Siegmund. *Lilith: The First Eve, Historical and Psychological Aspects of the Dark Feminine*. Einsiedeln, Switzerland: Daimon Verlag, 1992.
- Irenaeus. *Against Heresies: Book I*. Kila, Mont.: Kessinger Publishing, 2004.
- Irving, Washington. *The Life and Voyages of Christopher Columbus*. New York: Collins, 1838.
- Josephus. *The Antiquities of the Jews, Jewish Wars*.
- Keel, John A. *UFOs: Operation Trojan Horse*. Atlanta, Ga.: Iluminet Press, 1996.
- Kilgannon, Corey. *Origin of the Species, From an Alien View*. New York: The New York Times Company, 1989.
- Kramer, Noah, Samuel Maier, and John Maier. *Myths of Enki, the Crafty God*. New York and Oxford: Oxford University Press, 1989.
- Kramer, Heinrich, and James Sprenger. *The Malleus Maleficarum, Part 2, Chapter VIII*. 1486.
- Kuhrt, A. *Berossus's Babyloniaca and Seleucid Rule in Babylonia*. Berkeley, Calif.: University of California Press, 1987.
- Kvam, Kristen E., Linda S. Scheuring, and Valarie H. Ziegler. *Eve and Adam: Jewish, Christian, and Muslim Readings on Genesis and Gender*. Bloomington, Ind.: Indiana University Press, 1999.
- Lahaye, Tim. *Charting the End Times*. Eugene, Oreg. and Irvine, Calif.: Harvest House Publishers, 2002.
- Lovejoy, Owen. "The Origin of Man," *Science*, Vol. 211, no. 4480, January 1981.
- Miller, Hugh. *The Testimony of the Rocks. Or, Geology in Its Bearings on the Two Theologies, Natural and Revealed*. Boston, Mass.: Gould and Lincoln, 1857.

- Missler, Chuck. *Alien Encounters: The Secret Behind the UFO Phenomenon*. Coeur d'Alene, Idaho: Koinonia House, 2003.
- Morris, Henry M. *The Genesis Record*. Grand Rapids, Mich.: Baker Books, 1976.
- Mozeson, Issac E. *The Word: The Dictionary That Reveals the Hebrew Source of English*, New York: SPI Books, 1989.
- Mueller, I., L.S. Grinstein, and P.J. Campbell. *Women of Mathematics: A Biobibliographic Sourcebook*. New York: Greenwood Press, 1987.
- Offley, Will. "David Icke and the Politics of Madness: Where the New Age Meets the Third Reich." Article for Political Research Associates, 2000.
- "The Old Testament Hebrew Lexicon." Heartlight's Search God's Word Website. www.searchgodsword.org/lex/heb/view.cgi?number=8549.
- Ovid. *The Metamorphoses*. Trans. Horace Gregory. New York: Viking Press, 1958.
- Patai, Raphael. *The Hebrew Goddess*. Detroit, Mich.: Wayne State University Press, 1967.
- Pember, G.H. *Earth's Earliest Ages and Their Connection with Modern Spiritualism and Theosophy*. London: Hodder and Stoughton, 1876.
- Philo. *On The Embassy of Gauis*, Book XXXVIII.
- Pierce, Larry, and Marian Pierce. *The Annals of the World*. Green Forest, Ark.: Master Books, 2003.
- Rice, Boyd. *An Introduction To The Grail Research & Esoteric Writings of Boyd Rice*. Los Angeles, Calif.: Discriminate Media, 2006. www.thevesselofgod.com.
- Richards, Jeffrey. *The Popes and the Papacy in the Early Middle Ages*. London: Routledge & Kegan Paul, 1979.

- Richter-Ushanas, Egbert. *The Indus Script and the Rig-Veda*, 2nd Edition. India: Motilal BanarsiDass, 2001.
- Sagan, Carl. *The Demon Haunted World*. New York: Random House, 1996.
- Schwartz, Howard. *Tree of Souls: The Mythology of Judaism*. New York: Oxford University Press, 2007.
- Shermer, Michael. *Why People Believe Weird Things*. New York: Henry Holt & Company, 2002.
- Smith, George. *The Chaldean Account of Genesis*. New York: Scribner Armstrong, 1876.
- Sproul, Barbara C. *Primal Myths*. New York: HarperCollins Publishers, 1979.
- Sturluson, Snorri. *The Prose Edda*. Berkeley, Calif.: University of California Press, 1954.
- Tigay, Jeffrey H. *The Evolution of the Gilgamesh Epic*. Philadelphia, Penn.: University of Pennsylvania Press, 1982.
- Vizzutti, Richard. "The Awakening Has Begun." www.stargods.org. 1999.
- Wainwright, G.A. "The Origin of Amūn." *The Journal of Egyptian Archaeology*, Vol. 49, December 1963.
- Weyer, Jonathan. "Critical Thought and the Paranormal: Not an Oxymoron." *TAPS ParaMagazine*, Volume 7, No. 1, 2011.
- Wheeler, Brannon M., and Scott B. Noegel. *History of Prophets in Islam and Judaism*. Lanham, Md.: Scarecrow Press, 2003.
- Wider, Kathleen. *Women Philosophers in the Ancient Greek World: Donning the Mantle, by Hapatia*. Bloomington, Ind.: Indiana University Press, 1986.

Index

- Abel, [100](#), [108](#), [193](#), [195](#), [196](#)
Acts of the Apostles, [128](#)
Adam, [93](#), [100](#), [107](#), [108](#), [114](#), [155](#), [185](#), [196](#), [224](#)
Akkadians, [134](#)-136
Akki, [59](#)
Alexander the Great, [89](#)
alien influence and religious mythology, [98](#)-99
Amos, [86](#)-87
Anak, [43](#)
Ancient Alien, [168](#), [169](#)
Ancient Alienists, [48](#), [133](#)
Annunaki, [134](#)-138, [168](#)
Aquinas, Thomas, [225](#)
Ark of the Covenant, [56](#)
Aztecs, [100](#)
Ba'al, [171](#), [175](#)-178
Babylon, [87](#), [88](#), [89](#), [100](#), [128](#), [157](#), [171](#), [223](#)
Babylonian tablets, [75](#)
Bacon, Francis, [81](#)
barque shrines, [55](#), [56](#)
Bergelmir, [79](#)

Book of Amos, [86](#)-87
Book of Daniel, [81](#), [82](#)
Book of Deuteronomy, [44](#), [200](#), [210](#)
Book of Enoch, [30](#), [37](#), [41](#), [73](#), [76](#), [81](#), [83](#), [84](#), [86](#), [89](#), [90](#), [91](#), [92](#), [97](#),
[88](#), [107](#), [117](#), [133](#), [138](#), [141](#), [152](#)-153, [155](#)-158, [189](#), [190](#), [191](#),
[221](#),
Book of Exodus, [43](#), [44](#), [45](#), [47](#), [49](#), [50](#), [55](#), [56](#), [57](#), [58](#), [112](#), [143](#), [172](#),
[173](#), [182](#), [193](#)
Book of Ezekiel, [125](#)-127
Book of Genesis, [16](#), [30](#), [31](#), [34](#), [35](#), [36](#), [44](#), [54](#), [65](#), [69](#), [71](#), [75](#), [76](#), [96](#),
[102](#), [103](#), [105](#), [106](#), [109](#), [115](#), [116](#), [188](#), [119](#), [122](#), [133](#), [138](#), [157](#),
[164](#), [168](#), [180](#), [189](#), [191](#), [192](#), [195](#), [199](#), [202](#), [204](#), [209](#), [210](#)
Book of Hebrews, [63](#), [121](#), [124](#), [217](#)
Book of Isaiah, [87](#), [88](#), [109](#), [201](#)
Book of Jeremiah, [116](#)
Book of Job, [123](#), [175](#), [182](#)-184, [233](#)
Book of Jubilees, [158](#)-159, [165](#), [188](#)
Book of Jude, [155](#), [157](#), [191](#)
Book of Kings, [56](#), [172](#)
Book of Leviticus, [44](#), [193](#)
Book of Numbers, [43](#), [44](#), [111](#), [198](#), [199](#), [200](#)
Book of Revelation, [124](#)
Book of Samuel, [201](#), [202](#), [211](#)-214
Book of Timothy, [130](#)
books of Law, [44](#), [73](#), [219](#)
books removed from the Bible, [155](#)
Cain, [93](#), [100](#), [108](#), [193](#), [195](#)
Cairo, [51](#)

Cana'an, [44](#), [53](#), [73](#), [171](#), [173](#), [179](#), [192](#), [199](#)
Celtic flood story, [78](#)
Chaldean flood story, [79](#)
Church of Skeptic, [22](#)-25
Coffin Texts, [68](#)
Columbus, and UFOs, [142](#)
Columbus, Christopher, [142](#)
Corinthians, [123](#)
Council of Nicea, [153](#), [156](#)
Daniel, [81](#), [82](#)
Dathan, [147](#)-148
David and Goliath, [210](#)-215
David, [56](#), [200](#)
Dead Sea, [199](#), [218](#)
Dead Sea Scrolls, [81](#), [157](#), [187](#)
demonic interbreeding, [117](#)-118
Deuteronomy, [200](#), [210](#)
divine judgment, [118](#)-120
Dogon Nommos, [100](#)-102 Dueteronomy, [44](#)
Eden, [102](#), [104](#), [107](#), [108](#), [114](#)
Egypt, [18th](#) Dynasty of, [45](#), [51](#), [61](#), [65](#), [73](#)
Egypt, [44](#), [47](#), [50](#), [51](#), [52](#), [54](#), [55](#), [69](#), [96](#), [201](#)
Egypt, and the plagues, [145](#)-147
Elder Gods of Earth, [116](#)
Elijah, [141](#), [175](#), [178](#)

Elohim, [30](#)-[36](#), [38](#), [41](#), [51](#), [84](#), [113](#), [157](#), [171](#), [179](#), [180](#), [181](#), [182](#), [184](#)-[185](#), [196](#), [197](#), [202](#), [203](#),

Enoch, [73](#), [76](#), [81](#), [83](#), [84](#), [86](#), [88](#), [89](#), [90](#), [91](#), [92](#), [97](#), [107](#), [117](#), [133](#), [138](#), [141](#), [152](#)-[153](#), [155](#)-[158](#), [189](#), [190](#), [191](#), [221](#)

Epic of Gilgamesh, [75](#), [223](#)

Euphrates River, [59](#), [102](#), [103](#), [186](#)

Eve, [93](#), [100](#), [105](#), [107](#), [108](#), [114](#), [168](#), [195](#), [196](#), [224](#)

Exodus, [43](#), [44](#), [45](#), [47](#), [48](#), [49](#), [50](#), [52](#), [55](#), [56](#), [57](#), [58](#), [112](#), [141](#), [143](#), [172](#), [173](#), [182](#), [193](#)

Ezekiel, [125](#)-[127](#), [139](#)

Fertile Crescent, [96](#), [103](#)

flood story,

Celtic, [78](#)

Chaldean, [79](#)

Lithuanian, [77](#)-[78](#)

Roman, [78](#)

Scandinavian, [78](#)-[79](#)

Garden of Eden, [102](#), [104](#), [107](#), [108](#), [114](#), [191](#), [195](#), [219](#)

Garden of Eden, and the serpent, [102](#)-[109](#)

Gaul, [70](#)

Genesis, [16](#), [30](#), [31](#), [34](#), [35](#), [36](#), [44](#), [54](#), [65](#), [69](#), [71](#), [75](#), [76](#), [96](#), [102](#), [103](#), [105](#), [106](#), [109](#), [115](#), [116](#), [118](#), [119](#), [122](#), [133](#), [138](#), [157](#), [164](#)-[165](#), [180](#), [189](#), [191](#), [192](#), [195](#), [199](#), [202](#), [204](#), [209](#), [210](#)

genetic hybrid, [221](#)-[223](#)

Gilgamesh, [75](#)-[76](#), [223](#)

Gospel of Luke, [128](#)

Gospel of Matthew, [128](#)

Great Flood, [76](#), [102](#), [103](#), [116](#), [155](#), [164](#)-166, [192](#), [201](#), [207](#), [209](#), [210](#), [218](#), [221](#), [227](#)

Hatsheput, [60](#)-65

Hebrews, [63](#), [121](#), [124](#), [217](#)

Hebron, [199](#), [200](#)

Heliopolis, [68](#)

Hermopolis, [68](#)

Hindu philosophy, [159](#)

Holy Mountain of God, [53](#)

Horus, [63](#)

Isaiah, [87](#), [88](#), [109](#), [201](#)

Isis, [62](#), [100](#)

Isis, [62](#)

Job, [123](#), [175](#), [182](#)-184, [233](#)

John the apostle, [124](#)

Joseph, [44](#)

Jubilees, [158](#)-159, [165](#), [188](#),

Jude, [155](#), [157](#), [191](#)

Judea, [128](#)

Kali, [159](#)

King David, [138](#)-139, [140](#)

King Nebuchadnezzar, [81](#), [82](#)

Kings, [56](#), [172](#)

Kish, [59](#)

Land of Promise, [50](#)

Leviticus, [44](#), [193](#)

Leviticus, [44](#)
Lilith, [223](#)
Lithuanian flood story, [77](#)-78
Lucifer, [87](#), [110](#), [195](#)
Mesopotamia, [96](#), [97](#), [99](#), [103](#), [104](#), [138](#), [168](#), [170](#), [178](#), [220](#)
Midian, [52](#)
Miriam, [58](#), [62](#)
Mosaic Law, [89](#), [113](#), [219](#)
Moses, [110](#), [111](#), [125](#), [139](#), [141](#), [146](#)-148, [153](#), [171](#), [172](#), [185](#), [199](#),
[200](#), [209](#), [218](#)
Moses, [32](#), [41](#), [43](#)-52, [54](#)-58, [62](#)-65, [67](#), [69](#)-73
Moses, faith story of, [46](#)-51
Moses, importance to the Nephilim, [72](#)-73
Moses, traditional story of, [52](#)-56
Mount Armon, [190](#)
Mount Carmel, [175](#)-176
Mount Hermon, [51](#), [52](#), [80](#), [82](#), [86](#), [94](#), [95](#), [96](#), [108](#), [141](#), [184](#), [187](#), [199](#),
[217](#)
Mount Nebo, [53](#)
Mount Sinai, [49](#), [50](#), [147](#)
Nagas, [100](#)
Nephilim, and Moses, [72](#)-73
New Testament, [51](#), [55](#), [118](#), [121](#), [128](#), [155](#), [157](#)
Nile River, [51](#), [57](#)
Ninevah, [75](#)
Noa (Syrian), [79](#)

Noah, [72](#), [75](#), [76](#), [79](#), [116](#), [117](#), [155](#), [164](#)-166, [188](#), [192](#), [193](#), [207](#), [208](#), [209](#), [218](#)

Nubia, [52](#)

Numbers, [43](#), [44](#), [111](#), [198](#), [199](#), [200](#)

Nun, [68](#), [69](#)

Oannes, [99](#)-100

Oden, [78](#)

Ogdoad, [65](#)-69, [72](#)

Old Testament, [19](#), [30](#), [31](#), [32](#), [33](#), [35](#), [37](#), [44](#), [54](#), [56](#), [81](#), [86](#), [88](#), [123](#), [138](#), [157](#), [170](#), [179](#), [199](#), [203](#), [210](#), [218](#)

Osiris, [59](#), [62](#), [63](#)

Passover, [52](#), [57](#), [141](#)

Paul the apostle, [130](#), [153](#), [157](#), [219](#)

Pentateuch, [41](#), [44](#)

Peter the apostle, [195](#)

Pharaoh, [45](#), [52](#), [58](#)

Pharaoh-God, [48](#), [50](#), [54](#)

Pharaohs, timeline of, [57](#)-65

plagues, and Egypt, [145](#)-147

Pontius Pilate, [112](#)-113

Psalm [10](#), [143](#)

Psalm [106](#), [148](#)

Psalm [135](#), [181](#)

Psalm [136](#), [182](#)

Psalm [138](#), [182](#)

Psalm [144](#), [145](#)

Psalm [18](#), [140](#)

Psalm [29](#), [142](#)

Psalm [68](#), [141](#), [174](#)

Psalm [74](#), [175](#)

Psalm [77](#), [143](#)

Psalm [78](#), [147](#)

Psalm [82](#), [197](#), [221](#)

Psalm [86](#), [181](#)

Psalm [89](#), [179](#)

Psalm [95](#), [181](#)

Psalm [96](#), [181](#)

Psalm [97](#), [144](#)-145, [181](#)

Psalm of Asaph, [179](#)-180

Psalms, and UFOs, [138](#)-140

Pyramid Texts, [67](#)

Quetzalcoatl, [100](#), [110](#)

Rameses III, [65](#)

Red Sea, [143](#)

religious mythology and alien influence, [98](#)-99

Remus, [59](#)-60

reptilians, [109](#)-110, [114](#)

Revelation, [124](#)

Rime Giants, [78](#)

Roman Empire, [70](#)

Roman flood story, [78](#)

Rome, [60](#)

Romulus, [59](#)-60

Sagan, Carl, [24](#), [28](#), [96](#)-97
Samuel, [201](#), [202](#), [211](#)-214
Sargon the Great, [58](#)-59
Satan, [107](#), [183](#)
Satan, [183](#)
Saudi Arabia, [53](#)
Scandinavian flood story, [78](#)-79
Senmut, [62](#)
Serpent People, [100](#)
serpent, [102](#), [111](#), [114](#), [196](#)
serpent, and the Garden of Eden, [102](#)-109
Shakespeare, William, [129](#), [161](#)
Shamyaza, [39](#), [82](#), [85](#), [90](#), [117](#), [190](#)
Shekinah, [48](#)
Skeptic, Church of, [22](#)-25
Solomon's Temple, [56](#), [57](#)
Sons of God, [76](#), [84](#), [87](#), [96](#), [109](#), [166](#)-170, [181](#), [182](#), [186](#), [203](#)
Sumer, [93](#), [96](#)-98, [170](#)
Sumer, and the Watchers, [93](#)-96
Sumerian pantheon, [167](#)
Sumerian texts, [134](#)-138
Sumerians, [96](#)-99
Ten Plagues, [45](#)
Thutmoses I, [57](#), [60](#)
Thutmoses II, [60](#)-61
Thutmoses III, [61](#), [65](#)

Tigris River, [102](#), [103](#)

Timothy, [130](#)

Titans, [78](#)

Torah, [115](#)

Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil, [105](#)

UFOs, [129](#), [133](#), [137](#), [140](#), [141](#), [142](#), [148](#)-[149](#), [207](#), [220](#)

UFOs,

- and Christopher Columbus, [142](#)
- and Psalms, [138](#)-[140](#)

Uruk, [59](#)

Ur-Zababa, [59](#)

Utnapishtim, [76](#)

Valley of Elah, [213](#)

Ve, [78](#)

Vili, [78](#)

Watchers,

- and the rebellion against heaven, [86](#)-[90](#)
- leaders of the, [84](#)-[85](#)

Watchers, the, [43](#), [80](#), [81](#)-[128](#), [133](#), [184](#), [187](#), [189](#), [190](#), [191](#), [193](#), [196](#), [197](#), [198](#), [208](#), [215](#), [217](#), [220](#)-[221](#), [226](#)

Watchers, the, and Sumer, [93](#)-[96](#)

West Africa, [100](#)-[102](#)

yuga, [159](#)

About the Author

SCOTT ALAN ROBERTS is the founder and publisher of *Intrepid Magazine* (www.intrepidmag.com), and is the author and illustrator of *The Rollicking Adventures of Tam O'Hare*. After several years in Bible college and seminary, Roberts spent the bulk of his next 25 years as an advertising art and creative director, and was the editor-in-chief of *TAPS Paramagazine*, SyFy's *Ghost Hunters*' official publication. Roberts has written numerous articles and appeared on countless national radio shows, including *Coast to Coast AM*. Scott is a well-known public speaker, and is currently working on his magazine and future book projects. He lives with his family in western Wisconsin, not far from the twin cities of Minneapolis and St. Paul, Minnesota.

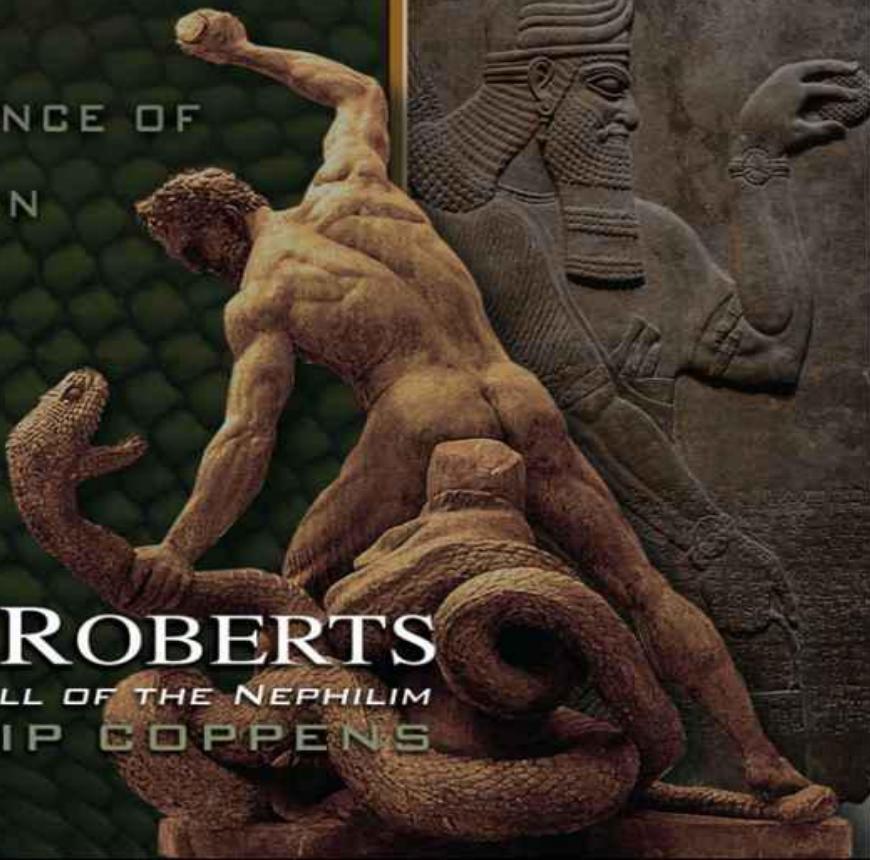
"Fortunately, Scott Roberts boldly goes where few men have surfaced from, providing a well-balanced, innovative, and insightful approach to the topic."

—PHILIP COPPENS, AUTHOR OF *THE ANCIENT ALIEN QUESTION*

THE
SECRET
HISTORY
OF
THE
REPTILIANS

THE PERVERSIVE PRESENCE OF
THE SERPENT IN HUMAN
HISTORY, RELIGION,
AND ALIEN MYTHOS

SCOTT ALAN ROBERTS
AUTHOR OF *THE RISE AND FALL OF THE NEPHILIM*
FOREWORD BY PHILIP COPPENS



"Fortunately, Scott Roberts boldly goes where few men have surfaced from, providing a well-balanced, innovative, and insightful approach to the topic."

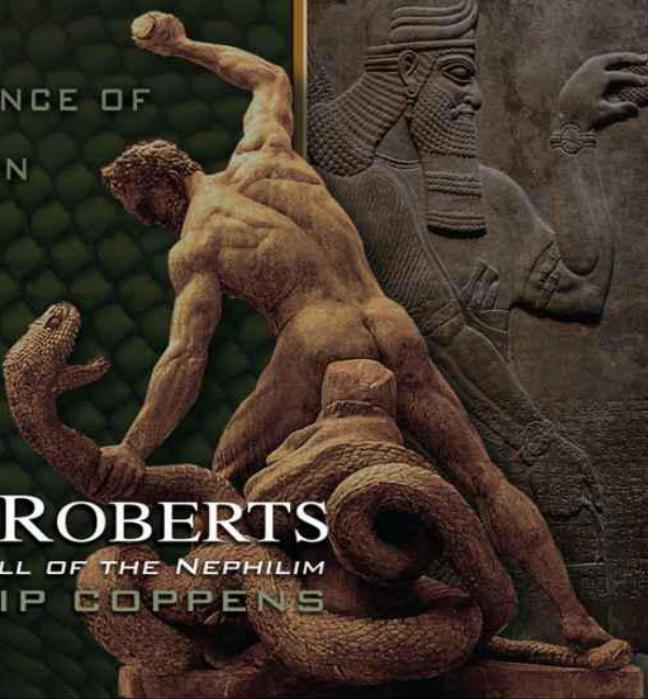
—PHILIP COPPENS, AUTHOR OF *THE ANCIENT ALIEN QUESTION*

THE
SECRET
HISTORY
OF
THE
REPTILIANS

THE PERVERSIVE PRESENCE OF
THE SERPENT IN HUMAN
HISTORY, RELIGION,
AND ALIEN MYTHOS

SCOTT ALAN ROBERTS

AUTHOR OF *THE RISE AND FALL OF THE NEPHILIM*
FOREWORD BY PHILIP COPPENS



The Secret History of the Reptilians

THE SECRET HISTORY OF THE REPTILIANS

The Pervasive Presence of the Serpent in Human History, Religion, and Alien Mythos

Scott Alan Roberts



NEW PAGE BOOKS
A division of The Career Press, Inc.
Pompton Plains, NJ

Copyright © 2013 by Scott Alan Roberts

All rights reserved under the Pan-American and International Copyright Conventions. This book may not be reproduced, in whole or in part, in any form or by any means electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage and retrieval system now known or hereafter invented, without written permission from the publisher, The Career Press.

THE SECRET HISTORY OF THE REPTILIANS

EDITED BY JODI BRANDON

TYPESET BY EILEEN MUNSON

Cover design by Scott Alan Roberts

Printed in the U.S.A.

To order this title, please call toll-free 1-800-CAREER-1 (NJ and Canada: 201-848-0310) to order using VISA or MasterCard, or for further information on books from Career Press.



The Career Press, Inc.
220 West Parkway, Unit 12
Pompton Plains, NJ 07444
www.careerpress.com
www.newpagebooks.com

The Library of Congress has cataloged the printed edition as follows:

Roberts, Scott Alan.

The secret history of the reptilians : the pervasive presence of the serpent in human history, religion, and alien mythos / by Scott Alan Roberts.

p. cm.

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 978-1-60163-251-7 — ISBN 978-1-60163-542-6 (ebook)

1. Serpents—Folklore. 2. Serpents—Mythology. 3. Serpents—Religious aspects. 4. Civilization, Ancient—Extraterrestrial influences. I. Title.

GR740.R65 2013
398.24'52796—dc23

2012039161

Dedication

*For better, for worse;
For richer, for poorer;
In faith, in cognitive dissonance;
When writing, when facing writer's block...*

Although these were not the vows of our nuptial bliss, my wife, Raini, has been the experiencer, in and throughout, hefting all of these things as they blethered and bilged from me, although not all occurred during the particular writing of this particular book.

For all the months of time I spent researching, reading, writing, rewriting, lying in bed with my laptop casting a blue-gray luminescence about our room in the middle of the night; for all the times I excitedly distracted her from her tasks or—even worse, her slumber—to read new translations of ancient Sumerian cuneiforms or newly stumbled upon historical information that prodded me from my intellectual bienséance; for all the times she was over-burdened with being the single parent—the war widow—of our two wonderful, little children, Flynn and Rhowan Claire, and my 11-year-old son, Samuel, while I was off campaigning through ancient texts and pop cultural fantasies—all the while remaining grounded and supportive despite her frustrations with my brooding creativity, and uplifting during her motherly vehemence.

For providing an atmosphere where I could work and think and create, while taking on the heavier burden of wrangling the pre-teen, the toddler, and the babe, doing her best to keep the extraneous daily affairs of the household off my plate so I could write; for bringing me coffee and sitting on my lap to hear me read things that I am sure either bored her to tears, or during which she could have been engaging in something much more aligned to her own schedule, likes and agenda for those times, I lovingly dedicate this book to my wonderful, caring, supportive wife, **Raini Roberts**. This book is as much a product of her stalwart love and affection for me as it is the work of my own hand.

This book is also dedicated to the memory of Philip Coppens, whose life and research has been an inspiring, integral part of who I am. Go rest high

on that mountain, my dear friend.

Acknowledgments

When there are so many books available on the shelves, it must seem a small thing to the common reader that an author of just one small book could spend any amount of significant time or space acknowledging the people who helped along the way. But it truly is not any small task, nor is it anything even close to insignificant. Without these people I am about to mention, this book would not be a reality.

First I want to thank everyone at New Page Books who has had a hand in publishing this work. Michael Pye, Laurie Pye, and Kirsten Dalley have been overtly supportive and unflinching proponents of my writing, and for that I cannot say enough how thankful I am. To Kirsten, especially, I want to say thank you for putting up with my inane schedule, and for tolerating my making you hound me for permissions and other details toward the end of this process. Thank you all for letting me part of what you are at New Page Books.

To my wife, Raini Roberts, I want to say thank you for putting up with my distractedness and downright surliness while I, sometimes literally, paced the floors and remained in an agitated, unruly state while contemplating what I hope translates into the struggle of dealing with some of the issues in this book. This isn't all just folly to me, but highly representative of fundamental, foundational changes in my beliefs and intellectual approaches to things I once thought so substantial. Thank you, Raini.

To my dearest of friends, my brother, my cohort in *Intrepid Magazine* and Paradigm Symposium, my ally and fellow explorer, Micah Hanks, I cannot express how thankful I am to have you in my life. Your help in constructing elements of this book are astronomically off the scale, and were it not for your consistent uplifting nature, and your research and work on my behalf, this book would most certainly not exist in the form it is in today. I love you with all my heart, my dear friend, and may the gods place your essence in the heavens for your care and selfless nature. Thank you for "making it so," oh, Science Officer.

Once again I must thank my old friend and professor Dr. Charles Aling, for it was he who originally sparked in me a love of history and archaeology. Although he and I may reside on differing sides of the theo-

historical fence in some regards, he remains an inspiration whose influence has deep roots in who and what I have become. Perhaps we can sit over coffee and you can take me to task for some of my ideas and interpretations, and push me to continually do better, as you have always done.

Father Jack Ashcraft, thank you for listening. Thank you for inspiring and prodding me to think. You have been a good friend, indeed, and without your valuable influence in my life, I would be a poorer, sadder man. You have heard my caterwauls, misgivings, frustrations, dismissive pangs, and struggles of faith. Thank you for being not just an ear, but a dear friend through the process of writing this book.

Anthony F. Sanchez, you are someone who has established yourself as a dear friend, and your writing and conversations and ever-present encouragements are things of beauty to me. Thank you.

Dr. John Ward, thank you for your historical and archaeological input. Your invaluable information on the Thule and the 19th-century influences, though not all used in this book, established an incredible foundation from which to structure what did appear in these pages. As with *Nephilim*, we don't always see eye-to-eye on all these issues of interpretable history, but we do share a common love of the knowledge that comes from the research. I thank you for always being there for my questions and conversations. Your help in structuring parts of this book have immeasurable value. Thanks for the smokes and coffee by the Nile during our many video chats.

Thank you, Philip Coppens, for your wonderful Foreword and for your support in so many of my endeavors.

And for all those of you who let me rant and bounce ideas off your brains and hearts, I thank you unabashedly: Dave Potter, James Keuhl, Jim Fitzsimons, Barry Fitzgerald, Cassidy O'Connor-Nicholas, April Slaughter, Jane Scott (Mom), and many others far too numerous to list here.

And, of course, only last on the list due to her utter importance and influence, my dear friend on whom I cannot heap enough accolades and heartfelt praise and thanks—the inimitable, incomparable, amazing Marie D. Jones. You have been a dear friend, supporter, sounding board, and inspiration. Without your influence and prodding, this book—and the one before it—would not even exist. Thank you, my friend.

Contents

Foreword by Philip Coppens

Preface

Introduction

PART I:

The Empire of the Serpent

Chapter One:
The Annunaki and Their Sumerians

Chapter Two:
That's Not What I Learned in Sunday School

Chapter Three:
Coiled Around Many Cultures

PART II:

The Serpent in Alien Subculture

Chapter Four:
The Reptoids...Reptilians—No, Wait...Reptilian-Humanoids

PART III:

The Serpent's Bloodline

Chapter Five:
The Remnant of the Nephilim

Chapter Six:
The Merovingian Connection

Chapter Seven:
The New Age and the Serpent

Conclusion:
The Continued Presence of the Serpent

Afterword

Notes

Index

About the Author

Foreword

I remember ordering and reading Rene Andrew Boulay's *Flying Serpents and Dragons* from an alternative science mail order catalog in 1991. Boulay continued the work of American author Zecharia Sitchin, who had proposed that in our distant past, we were visited by beings from a 12th planet—allegedly named NIBIRU, the Crossing—in our solar system, who were the founders of most civilizations, but specifically that of Ancient Sumer. Whereas Sitchin had left the nature of these beings blank, Boulay claimed that these beings were reptilian. Boulay argued that there were numerous references in ancient accounts, including the Bible, that showed that some of our ancestors, including Noah, still showed physical marks of their reptilian origins, as we were a genetic manipulation of Earthly humanoids and Nibirian reptilians.

The early 1990s was also the time when thousands of mostly Americans were reporting “UFO abductions.” Some of these abductors were described as reptilian entities. These two ingredients were mixed by British conspiracy author David Icke, who proclaimed that the British Queen Elizabeth II was actually a reptilian in disguise—a gimmick that guaranteed his claims would make headline news, including the British tabloids who loved that a former BBC sports presenter had made such outrageous claims. In fact, his claim was very much on par with what could be seen in the 1980s popular science fiction television series *V*, which portrayed a reptilian alien species that colonized Earth.

The theme that there are reptilian overlords overseeing the fate of humanity is a strong presence in modern conspiracy literature. As I appear on the popular television show *Ancient Aliens* and people as a consequence assume I have editorial input, one of the most frequently asked question is whether there is going to be a special on the Annunaki, the name the conspiracy-minded Sitchinites have given to our assumed reptilian overlords.

Of course, our current mindset didn't begin with David Icke; he merely played with an archetype that is far older and perpetually remained popular. The source of all evil in the Bible has become commonly identified as a reptilian being—a serpent. Though the crime the serpent seems to commit

in the Bible is quite minor—providing information to Adam and Eve—as Christianity grew in popularity and power, it sought to personalize evil in the form of Lucifer and the devil, who became identified with that speaking serpent of the Garden of Eden.

If the devil is one of your most prominent identifiers, it is not surprising that serpents face an uphill struggle in popularity contests, though this is a cultural phenomenon. In the New World, the Feathered Serpent Quetzalcoatl was seen as a culture bringer, while the Vision Serpent helped the Mayan king in receiving information from the underworld. Though it shows that serpents were not always seen as evil, it does show, even in the biblical account, that intelligent serpents have provided our ancestors with knowledge, including otherworldly knowledge.

With a topic that has been identified by the Church for almost two millennia as the root of all evil, wading through the material is not a simple task. Sitchin and Icke are but two of a long list of researchers who have stranded in the murky waters of the reptilian archetype. Scott Roberts fortunately boldly goes where few men have surfaced from, providing a well-balanced, innovative, and insightful approach to the topic.

It is time to become reacquainted with our reptilian neighbor, who seems to have a consistent, cross-cultural reputation of bringing us knowledge. It is high time we learn....

Philip Coppens
August 8, 2012

Preface

“Mankind is poised midway between the gods and the beasts.”

—Plotinus

Writing a book about the ever-enigmatic race of extraterrestrial Reptilians is as simplistic a task as writing a book about the divinity of the historical Jesus. Fluxing in and out between myth and science, history and religion, all tempered with a healthy dose of “show-me-the-facts” skepticism, the very notion could drive one to the hard conclusion that establishing fact beyond a shadow of a doubt is nearly impossible in its efforts. The implications of the comparative historical and religious touch points are so far-reaching that the meanderings of myth one must follow to seek efficacious tendrils of fact could most certainly drive one mad in its contemplation.

What is it that religion and science aren’t telling me about where I come from and why I am here? And why is the Serpent, a being both feared and revered, so inextricably linked to the misty imaginations and fortified spiritualities of man?

When I was a kid, I was deathly afraid of the dark.

Back then, I had a newspaper delivery route that encompassed several city blocks around my neighborhood in the farthest reaches of northern Minneapolis, slipping over into the closest residential areas along the busy middle-class suburb on the west bank of the Mississippi River. As a paperboy, it was my after-school responsibility to ensure that the people on my route received their copy of the *Minneapolis Star* every afternoon, before the dinner hour. That was the easy part of my job, which earned me about \$8 per week. (In 1970, that was big money for a school kid.)

The hard part of my job was the Sunday morning route. The Sunday paper was three times as thick as the daily paper, and required me to rise at about 3 a.m., head to the paper shack (the pick-up location in our district, located about six blocks from my house), and collate the several sections of the paper for my route. I would then load those papers into my large, metal,

bright yellow, two-wheeled cart, as they were far too thick and cumbersome to carry in my canvas sack.

Our house sat on a corner lot, and, despite the yellowish street lamp at the apex of the two bordering streets, our yard was always completely engulfed in the black shadows of night when I'd rise to walk to the paper shack. I remember standing there on the back cement steps of the house, jumping down into the dark yard and grabbing for the yellow handle of my paper cart. I'd yank it out of its spot and run, headlong through the yard to the dimly lit street. While standing beneath the incandescent glow, which created a 12-foot circle of safety around me, I would stare down the vacant, dead-of-night street to the next lamp, contemplating my sprint through the darkness between. Sucking up all my courage, gripping my yellow, two-wheeled anchor behind me, I'd again close my eyes tightly and run with all my might toward the next streetlamp, squinting only momentarily to make sure I hadn't deviated off my course and into the shadows that lined the street.

I would repeat this blind feat at every corner until I finally reached the safety of the corrugated tin shack, which was usually already bustling with other kids loading their paper carts.

I don't know what it was that created such a fear of the dark for me. Perhaps it was many hours watching *Dark Shadows*, a show filled with vampires, werewolves, and ghosts that scared the beejeebies out of me. Or maybe it was the thought of aliens and monsters that would spring from the bushes and devour my guts while I was still alive, kicking and screaming. Then again, it may have been all of those things simply combined with my innate fear of the unknown—that sense we all have that makes you tingle when you enter a dark room or pass a shadowy alcove that you absolutely know—beyond a shadow of a doubt—is inhabited by some otherworldly, carnivorous entity. The unknown has always been the primordial slime of the imagination, the place where we birth and foster our most terrifying nightmares.

My boyhood friend and fellow paperboy Doug Beman and I would, on many Sunday mornings, lay atop the newspapers stacked in our respective carts, and philosophize—as only fifth graders can do—beneath a corner street lamp, waiting for the earliest sliver of silvery-blue on the eastern horizon. There was one pre-dawn morning when we watched a cat slowly

cross the road about 50 feet away from us, and we mused whether or not God had taken the form of that cat to come and watch over us. We took that reasoning and mused even further, reflecting on all the different things that had happened to us in our sphere of existence that might have conjured such a theophany (although we didn't use those particular words, as they were far outside our 10-year-old lexicon). As we sat there talking, we looked at each other and were astonished to see we were both shedding tears—not of sadness or any sort of uncontrollable weeping, but from something that hit very close to home in our psyches, on a very deep, subconscious level. And it was from that point we determined that God or his angels truly existed and could manifest before us in any shape or form they desired. And the cat, from that day forward, became the object of our fecund, private, little religion.

I imagine, now, some 40 years later, that this could be very much like the experiences of the ancients, when they sat philosophizing beneath flickering nocturnal torchlight, gazing up at the sky, only to be interrupted by some astronomical phenomena or the unexplained, unrecognized rustling of something out there in the dark, prompting the same sort of musings my friend and I experienced several thousand years in their future.

What was their religious cat, I wonder? Who or what became the object that, for them, could so capture their worship in the midst of their contemplative brooding? What was it that caused them to conceive deities and imagine giants from the dark to such a degree that they would soon end up etched for all time on the local cliff face, painted with dye concocted from the roots of the plants that grew around their village?

Or perhaps their ancient encounters were far more tangible: men from faraway tribes appearing in their village for the very first time—beings from the desert, hills, skies, and possibly even the stars. And from these encounters were birthed their oral stories that were generations growing into legends and myths.

On the heels of *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim*, which examined and explored evidences and theological, anthropological, and comparative cultural accounts that the human race was visited in ancient times by non-human intelligences that interrupted and influenced the development of humanity, these pages will take the case another step further. There is a lot of mythos out there to suggest that we have been visited by

“extraterrestrial” intelligences, so much so that it has permeated our popular culture, our intellectual dialogues, and even our religions and spiritualities. In fact, there exists more “evidence” to support the existence of UFOs than there is to support the existence of God—and seeing as God never really seems too overtly interested in proving himself beyond the heartfelt acceptance of the faithful, that is a fairly concise statement.

Notions of beings from outside this world impregnating humans are as old as humanity itself, up to this current day. And those histories and accounts have comprised a bulk of human mythology, legend, religion, and superstition. But what if those ancient visitations and encounters with non-human intelligences were far less than the stuff of “first contact”? What if those races manipulated the DNA of homo sapiens, creating a “slave race” to do the bidding and work of Reptilian-hominid overlords?

The theory of ancient alien interruption and the possibility of extraterrestrial reptilian races is not a new one, and its purveyors have been writing and theorizing on the topic for decades. Ever since early humans first gazed up in wonder at the star-blanketed night sky, we were intrigued by the seemingly unanswered questions of a mysterious, unattainable universe intrigued by its unexplained mysteries. Early mythologies and legends give the circumstantial evidences of mysterious objects roaring across the heavens. Shards of ancient tablets and shreds of ancient documents describe phenomenal, unexplained manifestations in the skies, and virtually every culture and religion relates visitations from angels, demons, devils, and gods who visited mankind in ancient times. And humanity, in its infancy, described these visitations from the sky in the only terms they could understand. Of course they were deities.

Despite this decades-old—if not centuries-old—debate, there is still a lot of disinformation and misinformation out there that begins with an atheistic point of view bent on disproving the religious and spiritual elements of creation and otherworldly interaction, as well as the opposite, which would seek to disprove or naysay anything that smacks of anything outside the box of established traditional theology.

Despite being a secular society, focused on the tangibles of day-to-day material safety nets and a laissez-faire adherence to entrenched generational religious denominations, people have an underlying draw to old spiritualities and covert superstitions. Though outwardly displaying a

dismissive attitude toward anything that smacks of a deeper connection with traditional beliefs and spiritual roots, usually accompanied by an almost-apologetic acquiescence to having grown up in a faith or religion, the overt façade belies a deeper, inextricable-yet-unrequited draw to theo-philosophical questions, mixed with a fascination of God, UFOs, ghosts, angels, demons, and everything in between. As for scientific dogma, most people dismiss the sciences as “mathematical things” that are either too heady or too emotionally dissociative to matter, and far less things to incorporate into any sort of daily life, and they tend to ignore them altogether. Unless Morgan Freeman narrates a show about the universe or genetics, science has become a thing that has been relegated to the realm of geeks, nerds, and academia. Why, you’d never find a scientist drinking beer, eating hot dogs, changing diapers, and belching out his new theory on the Higgs Boson...right?

When you strip away all the externals and lay bare the hearts of most people, at the core is their need to know who they are, where they came from, why they exist, and what the hell else is out there—regardless of how much they try to make the rest of the world believe they view these things as unimportant. Myth, legend, theology, and meta-science comprise the underlying faiths and beliefs of most Americans, who would otherwise give no outward indication that they hold to such values, even on a level of simple curiosity.

This book represents the *never-ending-book*, contained in 220 or so pages. You’ll find yourself, at times, deeply entrenched in facts and details, sorting through historical and linguistic material, but I have presented in such a way that is, hopefully, exciting and enlightening while riddled with bits and pieces of humor and my own anecdotal rants. In other places, you will endure my pedagogic philosophizing mixed with my middle-of-the-road positioning while attempting to bring a clear connection between myth and anthropology. In these pages we will discuss and hopefully provoke thought, addressing the innate need we all have to know the answers to these age-old questions via a very focused examination of a race of beings who visited earth, millennia past, for the sole purpose of not simply cohabiting, but creating and manipulating a race of underlings.

Utilizing a scholarly approach, blended with a bit of light-hearted tongue-in-cheek intellectualism, I will engage, on a deeper level, the examination of familiar accounts in the Old Testament book of Genesis,

combined with similar, corresponding accounts in various other cultures, religions, and spiritualities, cracking wide open the theories of extraterrestrial interruption and intercourse with early humanity, thus challenging and bringing new light to what we have discarded as mere mythology and ufological “urban myth.”

What if non-human intelligences bequeathed a race of mixed-blood humans?

This book explores the cross-cultural theological accounts as well as the current New Age movements that capitalize on fear mongering, the Illuminati, and the behind-the-scenes of the behind-the-scenes of what is taking place in humanity. We will explore the Merovingian bloodlines, the bloodlines of the Nephilim, and the presence of Reptilian and other alien races working to destroy, aid, and/or bolster humankind, all as they precariously balance against ancient religious mythology of the presence of the serpent in and throughout ancient history and religions.

The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim established that something huge happened to the human race in our ancient past, supported by the comparative religions, cultures, and archaeology of the world. Utilizing archaeological record, anthropological studies, and comparative religious examinations, we dig even deeper to establish what is already so evident yet hidden and encoded in the world today.

It’s a grossly huge topic that deserves an equally huge scholarly look and treatment. That does not mean we will, in these pages, be able to exhaustively cover all the angles and bring conclusive answers to every issue. But these pages will establish a great place to start looking at the questions from a new vantage.

I am told that people want to know precisely where you stand on an issue when you present it in a book such as this. What you will find from me is someone who straddles the fence between science and faith, mythology and archaeology, legend and history. They all work together to bring us a clearer understanding of what exists out there. You simply cannot have one without the other—and this is the fallacy of discarding one for the other, because, as I have contended time and time again, there are veils that simply cannot be pierced, and eschewing the unquantifiable, although scientifically acceptable, is philosophically irresponsible.

“There is nothing truer than myth: history, in its attempt to realize myth, distorts it, stops halfway; when history claims to have succeeded, this is nothing but humbug and mystification. Everything we dream is realizable. Reality does not have to be: it is simply what it is.”

—Eugene Ionesco

Introduction

“Snakes. Why’d it have to be snakes?”

—Indiana Jones

Every night a snake-like man would visit me in my house. I don’t know how he got in or where he came from. He was just there, standing more than 6 feet tall, with smooth, delicately scaled, greenish-brown skin, almost silky to the touch, giving me the sense of a cobra or some other sort of sleek reptile. His eyes were large and glossy black with vertical iris slits that glinted an iridescent yellow. When he spoke, his voice was as deep and hollow as a bottomless canyon, rapacious and seductive all at once. His breath held a faint scent of cinnamon. He said he was from another part of the galaxy, somewhere in Orion’s Belt, and that I had been someone “They” had been watching for a long, long time....

That is the beginning of a story told to me, several years ago, by a woman whose name I have long since forgotten. She went on to describe a fearsome yet benevolent creature who described himself to her as being part of a hostile race set on the destruction of humanity—a course that was determined long, long ago in humanity’s primordial past. This woman even sent me drawings she had done of this being, as well as much more descriptive, and at times quite sexual, narrative. They, too, have simply vanished along the way, more a result of my own ramshackle filing system than any sort of weird conspiracy theory.

Her story, along with many other similar accounts of such beings I have heard throughout the years, was relegated to the back of my brain, filed under: “Interesting but Nutty.” There it sat in a metaphoric mental stew pot, slowly simmering—a reptilian “stone soup” growing in richness and flavor as I subconsciously added the bits of ingredients delivered by all sorts of characters and sources along the way. Every so often the lid of the pot would rattle, releasing a steamy, fragrant aroma of hearty broth, bringing me back to the awareness that I had something cooking over there in the kitchen of my mind. And what was cooking was a splendid, blended concoction of theology, archaeology, ufology, psychology, cosmology, anthropology, and every other little “ology” in between.

Having recently completed my work on the *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim*, I found myself in a highly agitated state of spiritual and emotional unrest. I had either just opened up (at least for me) an exponentially expanded view of who God is, or I had, in essence, eliminated his existence altogether. Either the god of the Hebrew and Christian scriptures existed as I had been taught in cloistered, fundamentalist academia, or I had effectively stripped away his divinity by lowering him a few rungs on the ladder to the level of non-human entity with some power over the human race to create, procreate, and destroy. To me, this represented a crisis of faith, and I entered the grieving process of the “loss of innocence,” as embodied in the theology I once adhered to so strictly and believed in so intimately. When my theology was forced to stand against the onslaught of history, comparative religion, cumulative cultural mythologies, and archaeological record, everything about my religious practice seemed to be ripped open and lain bare, as if by a great whirlwind. And all that was left was a naked faith, shivering in the harsh cold of a veritable nuclear winter of pragmatic thinking and common sense, void the protective cloak of religious insulation.

The Serpent in the Garden of Eden took on the completely different role of historical influence once I was able to view the story without the filter of religion or denominational interpretation. When I was able to see that this creature, as described in the Hebrew Bible’s Book of Genesis, was similar to if not synonymous with many other cultural tales of trickster beings who brought knowledge and illumination to early humans, I saw a much bigger picture encoded within those pages of biblical scripture. When people step outside the box of religion and denominational spirituality, they find themselves in a unique vantage point of being able to see myriad varied tales that have intrinsic common threads woven throughout.

It’s rather like walking into one of those glorious, old theatres that dominated the cultural avenues of upper-crust society at the turn of the last century. As you entered the theatre and walked down the main aisle, the gilded proscenium and glittering chandeliers sparkled the magnificence of the thespian palace, built as a showcase for the art of the show. And there, lining the aisles were row after row of plush velvet seats, all identical and all capable of holding the weight of a patron every night. Yet despite their identical construct and appearance, each chair held a different perspective of the show being performed on the stage. Depending on which seat you

settled into, your viewpoint of what was being performed up front varied. Some seats were side-by-side, so their vantage was nearly identical; other seats delivered views from the far sides, back, or distant last row of the balcony. Some seats even had partially obstructed views. But in a literal, mathematical sense, not a single seat held the same exact vantage point or view of the show being played out onstage. But one thing was also sure: No matter where you sat in that theatre, and no matter which vantage point from which you viewed the show, the performance was unaltered.

Perception does not alter reality; it merely alters practice. The show on stage doesn't change dependent on where I am sitting or from what vantage point I am viewing. Only my perception of it alters. So the trick is to not be part of the audience, but rather a part of the play—a member of the cast. A participant, as opposed to an observer.

The Hebrew story of a race interrupted is an encoded one: Adam and Eve, the Serpent, their offspring, the fallen state of humanity, and the proclamation of an angry deity. These are all elements of an encoded cover story, as I spoke about extensively in both *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim* and in *Lost Civilizations and Secrets of the Past*. There is a much bigger message than the meticulously buried messages of the biblical tales that is similar in tone and thread to hundreds of other cultural religious mythologies of spectacular non-human beings interacting with the human race of ancient times. Common to nearly all of these cultural stories is the common thread of residual bloodlines that run through the course of all of human history.

Call it religious mumbo-jumbo, or theological manipulation. Look at it as the establishment of the messianic bloodlines and the mixed race meant to thwart the coming of the Kinsman Redeemer. But no matter how you view it, the story of the ongoing bloodlines remain a concurrent theme, from the very first utterance of an enmity that will exist between the seed of the serpent and the seed of the woman, all the way down the historical biblical genealogies that are there within Old Testament passages to exhort the ever present, vigilant eye to be ever watchful of the *pure human line* versus the oppositional mixed-blood lineage.

Humanity was visited by non-human entities that from the very beginning introduced an alternate bloodline that has carried all the way down the historical record to current day—the bloodline of the serpent. But

we only see fragmentary bits and pieces, rather like a checkerboard where half the spaces are occupied, but the other half remain completely void and empty.

I am not one who quickly sidles up alongside “great awakenings,” new spiritual movements, or hyper-fastidious conspiracy theories. They all generally tend, to me, to be the stuff of manufactured emotional reactions to hypothesis that are either not well researched—historically, spiritually, anthropologically—and many times are not well-articulated, despite their complex yet imaginative constructs. Most of these types of theoretical movements rely far too heavily on fanciful whimsy, bolstered by a desire to find something new and exciting, filled with elements unwittingly designed to “suspend reality,” or move the mind away from the mundane—not to mention the targeting of political opponents.

Far too many times throughout human history we have seen the devastatingly horrific result of revolutionary new movements that explode onto the scene, spewing theoretical spiritualities, political conspiracies or *vox populi, vox Dei*, but in the long run end up being little more than mere flashes in the pan, lacking substance and longevity, resulting in the martyrdom (whether literal or metaphoric) of self-proclaimed messiahs and the murder, suicide, or disbanding of disciples. Yet those movements that do gain a foothold and garner mass followings trend to the darker elements of racial bigotry, genocide, political xenocide, and holocaust, building gravitas and momentum by catering to the fears of potential devotees and zealous followers alike.

People are always looking for something that is different than what they already have, or more exciting than what are told they should be satisfied with. Spiritually, politically, and conspiratorially based movements generally thrive within, around, and despite the well-established religions, spiritualities, sciences, and governments that are deeply entrenched in our societies and cultural histories.

On the flip side of the coin, deep within well-established philosophies, religions, and political mindsets, there are embedded messages and encoded languages that tend to shift the paradigm away from the established way of thinking. Once this new information is articulated and disseminated, established systems of spiritual belief and practice are enhanced, are expanded, and in many cases rewrite the history of a well-established,

firmly entrenched philosophy. The end result is that the new twist can sometimes appear to be a new awakening or new conspiracy theory, when it is in reality an illumination of something that already exists—an expansion based on a fresher understanding of what was already there.

The Serpent in the Garden of Eden, though allegorical in nature and very possibly the stuff of Hebrew religious mythology, is a figure that represents a very real source of what has become an emerging understanding of a very real bloodline running through the veins of human descendants throughout all of human history.

There is, indeed, a Reptilian factor to humanity, and it shines through our religious and cultural icons. The serpent is one of the oldest and most widespread mythological symbols. Snakes have been associated with some of the oldest religious rituals known to humankind and have carried the dual expression of both good and evil. From the Hebrews' Serpent in the Garden to the Mayans' Quetzalcoatl; the Bhuddist Naga to the rattlesnake on the early Colonial American flags; the African Dahomey and Aido Hweido to Jörmungandr of the Nordic mythologies; and Ouroboros, the ancient Near Eastern serpent devouring its own tail representing the great cycle of life. Then there exist everything from sea serpents to St. George and the Dragon, and even the medical caduceus.

If symbolism, however, was all there was to the traceable bloodlines of the serpent, the flesh and blood of the story would be a short, sweet, picturesque history lesson. Demystifying the cover story of the serpent in the Garden is only the beginning. Identifying the source point of his and countless other mythological and cultural counterparts is what will allow us to see the tangible evidence of ancient human encounters with non-human entities, revealing what that lies beneath the surface of old mythologies as they meld into current-day accounts.

The human race has not yet experienced a full-fledged “first contact” with any alien race—at least none that has been disclosed. Those who have made experiential disclosures are generally pooh-poohed by the skeptical, scientific, religious, and even hopeful, believing camps. We do have, however, countless numbers of ancient documents and texts that record interactions with what can only be described as non-human intelligences. Most of these ancient documents categorize these intelligences as their version of gods, angels, demons, and spirit beings—the biblical stories of

the Sons of God, the Watchers, and their offspring, the Nephilim being prime examples.

One of the criticisms thrown at most religious documents is that they cannot be trusted as quantifiable historical sources, because they are books of faith. The Bible falls under this sweeping dismissal all the time. However, most ancient historical documents were synonymous with religious texts, as ancient peoples did not separate those two driving forces of civilization the way we do in modern affairs. Even as recently as the reigns of Henry VIII and Elizabeth I of England, many royal proclamations were linked to the religious views of the monarchs, and in that period of history in England, the conflict between Catholicism and Protestantism was a driving force. Keeping this non-separation of powers squarely in mind, note that Reptilian creatures have filled the texts of ancient documents. To cite just a small handful:

- ♦ The serpent Nachash interacted with and impregnated Eve in the Garden of Eden story.
- ♦ Oannes, the half-fish/half-man, and his people rose up out of the Persian Gulf to teach civilization to the ancient Mesopotamians.
- ♦ The Cannanite goddess Qetesh interacted with serpent beings.
- ♦ In Sumerian literature, Gilgamesh loses his powers of immortality to a serpent.
- ♦ The Sumerian fertility god, Ningizzida, is depicted as a serpent.
- ♦ The ancient Jewish (Hebrew) tribe of Levi is said to have conquered Europe under a surge driven by Reptilian “illuminati-like” overlords
- ♦ Ho Ti, of the House of Sui, also known as the Serpent Emperor of China (618 AD) found a wounded serpent and nursed it to health, after which it returned to him with a reward of recompense.

And there is much more, as we will discover throughout these pages.

The serpent has been a pervasive presence indeed throughout human history, filling our religious scriptures, historical tomes, and mythological

tales, and appearing on the faces of thousands of archaeological relics. And, yes, our theories of UFO visitations and extraterrestrial encounters have a decisive Reptilian influence in and throughout the ancient alien subculture. Simply enter the word *reptilian* in an Internet search engine and you will find millions of entries, ranging from the profusely inane and undocumented to highly politicized pseudo-religious movements, to loosely documented claims by highly credible people.

The opening lines of this book began by recounting an experiencer's tale of interaction with a single member of an "alien" reptoid race. We will now move forward to explore the veracity of these experiential claims, as well as the serpent as a religious symbol, a political force, a mythological influence, and a race of both intraterrestrial and extraterrestrial races bent on the mutual destruction and salvation of our species.

PART I
The Empire of the Serpent

Chapter One

The Annunaki and Their Sumerians

“[The realm of myth and magic] is a dangerous field: fairies abound, good fairies and bad fairies, dragons and dragon-slayers, gods and goddesses, truth and untruth, history and legend, science and fiction, inextricably mixed and fused. But what has archaeology to do with it, you will say? Archaeology is concerned with bones and flints, with pots and pans and post-holes, with stone and metal, in short, with the material remains and spades to dig them up with.”

—F.J. Tritsch, “Myth, Magic and Archaeology”

Going back to the very beginning is generally the best place to travel when looking for the roots of any mythology. It’s in the fertile soil of creation that we find the seeds that sprouted and grew into the massive, towering beanstalk that has led us to the realm of the giants and the golden goose in the clouds. And whether allegorical, mythological, legendary, or the stuff of fable, there is generally always an incontrovertible fact at the core—that thing that started the whole story. And let’s make no mistake about it: Once you start delving into the depths of comparative ancient stories, their encoded similarities and subsequent decipherment, you enter a muddled world of interpretation that will raise both dust and ire. Clearing the air is the monumental task with which you are left.

There are mindsets that are at complete odds here, like two trains running at high speed toward each other on the same set of tracks. There is bound to be an eventual collision of catastrophic proportion—in this case, the repeating scenario of science colliding with belief and archaeology running headlong into myth (and vice versa). But there has to be an accounting on both parts. Faith and belief open themselves to upholding the sometimes-nonsensical, mystical, un-provable, capricious, and many times ambiguous, spiritual soul of religion and mythology, whereas science and archaeology will eschew—many times with great disdain—the

unquantifiable as folly, rooting out what they define as fact from fiction, no matter how grounded in their own sense of objectivity and importance—rather like when the science of the day upheld that the earth was the center of the universe and the sun rotated around it. Those were simply the facts based on the available knowledge and interpretation, and they were religiously adhered to by the academia of the day—until, that is, science developed the capability to move beyond its limits and recalculate its positions, determining that the earth, indeed, rotated around the sun.

Now, bear with me as I work through laying a little background that will serve as the platform from which we will engage in an examination of the secret history of the Reptilians.

The Naked Truth

When I completed my work on *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim*, I recall sitting back in my office chair and staring at the ceiling for a long, silent time. In those minutes I was contemplating what it was that I had just written. In all the research I did into the Book of Genesis, from both Christian and Rabbinic standpoints, I found myself drawing further and further away from the God of my youth. It was not a deliberate distancing, but after stepping outside the box and looking back in, I found that the God I had discovered in my youth was not the same God that seemed to materialize after taking a closer look at more than dogmatic systematic theology. The God I grew up knowing was one of holiness, of benevolence, and ultimately of eternal, sacrificial, propitiating, atoning love. His was a love that transcended everything and embraced me where I was, saving me from myself, and the horrors of an eternal existence void of His loving presence.

Perhaps this was simply a byproduct of my need to step “outside the box” in order to see things from as objective a point of view as possible. This seems to be the problem with a purely academic—or secular—examination of these things: When you distance yourself from the possibility of the weird, odd, spiritual, and mythological, you deliberately set yourself up to look beyond the wonder and the possibilities, to funneling all research through a sterile filter.

What is even more profound is to observe the distillation of research by secular scholarship and that the scientific and skeptical approach to biblically themed topics, such as the Nephilim, seems to operate under a

preconceived notion that the Bible cannot be taken literally in any form, including its historicity. One critic of *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim* stated that I erred simply by placing any veracity at all in the biblical record. However, it has been quantified time and time again that the Bible is quite irrefutably strong in its historical presentations, albeit at times vague, limited, and deliberately not forthcoming in detailed information, as the contextual themes inclusive of some historical data were meant to present a faith principle, rather than historical documentation. Therefore the historical information was sometimes sketchy, at best. Skeptical researchers, honest to their scholarship, are finding it increasingly more difficult to dispute the overwhelming archeological evidence for the historical accuracy of the biblical accounts. Any corroboration of biblical historical facts, however, does not by any means emphatically state that the faith story wrapped around these events is “truth,” but it does lend to the veracity of the Bible as a historically accurate document, aside from the religious and spiritual aspects of Judaism and Christianity. Biblical accounts that include such things as listings of nations, historic personages, customary rituals, and colloquial practices have been verified by archeological evidence and anthropological research. Secular academicians who have corner-stoned careers on criticism of biblical history have many times found themselves humiliated by new discoveries that validate the biblical accounts they had previously deemed to be myth (academic embarrassment). Among these are such discoveries as the existence of the obscure Hittites, King David of Israel, Goliath of Gath, and Pontius Pilate, the praefect of Judea during the lifetime of Jesus of Nazareth. Nelson Glueck, noted 20th-century Jewish archeologist whose work in biblical archaeology led to the discovery of more than 1,500 ancient sites, put it this way: “It may be stated categorically that no archeological discovery has ever controverted a single biblical reference. Scores of archeological findings have been made which confirm in clear outline or in exact detail historical statements in the Bible.”¹

Not surprisingly—as some think of the biblical record as being inaccurate and rife with faith stories alone—when stacked up against non-biblical accounts of historical events, the scriptural narratives reveal unflinching veracity. In his 1919 collection of essays and other journal work, *A Scientific Investigation of the Old Testament*, R.D. Wilson, who was fluent in 45 ancient languages and dialects (inclusive of all the biblical

languages of common etymological origin, such as Hebrew, Aramaic, Assyrian, Phoenician, Sumerian, Babylonian dialects, Ethiopic, as well as several Egyptian and Persian dialects), engaged in a meticulous analysis of 29 different monarchs from 10 different nations mentioned in Masoretic texts (the Old Testament). By way of comparative analysis, every one of these monarchs had corresponding archeological artifacts documented by secular historians containing their names, syllable-by-syllable, consonant-by-consonant. Wilson demonstrated that the monarchical names as recorded in the biblical record matched the findings of secular historians and archaeological artifacts, accurate in minute detail to the chronological order of the kings. Conversely, Wilson also demonstrated that many secular historical accounts were often filled with gross inaccuracies and were eventually deemed quite unreliable. Ptolemy, the famed Librarian of Alexandria, and even Herodotus were horrendously inaccurate in their documentation of royal names, and in many instances even misspelled the names (in the Library of Alexandria) to the point of nearly being unable to be recognized when compared to their respective archaeological artifacts or ancient monuments. Their research simply required more evidentiary research to establish any sort of accurate corroboration.

Even the well-known 19th-century archaeologist and historian Sir William Ramsay, a noted scholarly skeptic of biblical history, converted to Christianity after his travels to Asia Minor to conduct meticulous research and archaeological excavations into the New Testament's Gospel according to Luke and Luke's follow-up historical record, the Acts of the Apostles. The evidence Ramsay uncovered continually and incontrovertibly supported the historical record of the biblical writings of Luke. At a time when many secular historians and scholars dismissed the existence of most of Luke's record of governmental officials and geographical name-places, Ramsay's archeological digs actually flipped the naysayers' claims on their heads. Without error, Ramsey established through his excavations that Luke was accurate in naming countries, cities, islands, Roman officials, and many other salient details of historical record contained in the New Testament writings. As a result of his discoveries, Ramsay wrote: "I began with a mind unfavorable to it...but more recently I found myself brought into contact with the Book of Acts as an authority for the topography, antiquities, and society of Asia Minor. It was gradually borne upon me that in various details the (biblical) narrative showed marvelous truth."²

Ramsay also wrote: “Luke is a historian of the first rank; not merely are his statements of fact trustworthy...this author should be placed along with the very greatest historians.”³

Although the previous paragraphs may have seemed a bit of a rabbit trail—for which I have become very well-known, as there is so much information that could be incorporated to illuminate any tidbit of information out there—I included them for the purpose of establishing the fact that not all religious literature is merely faith-based alone, despite many secular, skeptical opponents, in their own particular biases, wishing it were so. When you step outside the box of a particular faith, and look to find corroboration between historical data and scriptural teaching, using the faith writing as a guide, not a filter, you will find that biblical history, in particular, stands the test of historical scrutiny.

However, because the historical data may be reliable, this does not always necessitate the spiritual information it’s housed within is universal truth. Though I can insist that the Constitution of the United States is a historical document and uphold it as closely as possible to its original intent, there will be others who interpret its words through different filters, thereby causing decades of debate on its veracity versus its interpretability. The same is true with religious writings.

On a spiritual level, my personal universe was very small back in the days of my youth, and God was a God, I was told, who waited for me with open arms, to take my troubled life and make it something beautiful through His saving, undeserved grace. Yet the older I got, and the more I dug into the topic of the biblical Nephilim, the more I found a God emerging from the murkiness that was, in nature and human-like emotional volatility, ultimately detached from humanity—a God who didn’t give (and pardon my plain vernacular here) two shits about humanity. This is mythological interpretation as opposed to historical veracity, but it is the result of my spiritual studies and evolving understanding of the spiritual content of these ancient documents. Despite all the teaching about God and all the systematic theology in my Bible school and seminary days, the Elohim of the Old Testament seemed more concerned and focused on the stuffs going on in the realm of the heavens than he did with human beings. There are many instances in the Bible’s stories of God’s dealings with mankind where human life was as dispensable as yesterday’s news, and several occasions

where God insisted on their extermination and even followed through with it by divine judgment or mandates passed on to His followers. And once I discovered that the Elohim were a *plurality*—a pantheon, if you will—dominated by a superior member of their caste of gods, the one, singular, omniscient, omnipresent God of my upbringing took a decidedly rear seat in the family van. Although there were plenty of scriptures that were interpreted as God’s presence, love, and interaction with people, there were even more that spoke to His ability to be as human and unjust as any earthly monarch establishing his jealous reign over his subjects, enacting the wiping out of non-believers and the genocide of whole peoples in His justified wrath. There was even an account in the Old Testament Book of Exodus where God was going to destroy His promised people, and it took the intervention of Moses to hold back God’s wrath, reminding Him of His promise to Abraham and caused God to “repent of the evil he was going to do” (Exodus 32:14).

The Jewish Midrash teaches (Ecclesiastes 5:4) that “Three things annul evil decrees: 1) prayer; 2) charity [righteousness]; 3) repentance [tshuvah].” In striking contrast, however, in Bamidbar Rabbah (23:8; cf: Exodus 32:14) we read that Moses “came forward and *made God repent* (author’s emphasis).” In this case, it was the intervention of a righteous human being that preceded prayer, righteousness, or *teshuvah* [תְשׁוּבָה] on the part of evil-doers. There are several instances in Hebrew scripture where men intervened and changed the mind of God; Moses, Abraham, and Jonah, in particular, seemingly all had the influence to reverse what can be understood as God’s “evil inclination.” In fact, Exodus 32:9–14 passage says:

9–10God said to Moses, “I look at this people—oh! what a stubborn, hard-headed people! Let me alone now, give my anger free reign to burst into flames and incinerate them. But I’ll make a great nation out of you *instead* (author’s emphasis).”

11–13Moses tried to calm his God down. He said, “Why, God, would you lose your temper with your people? Why, you brought them out of Egypt in a tremendous demonstration of power and strength. Why let the Egyptians say, ‘He had it in for them—he brought them out so he could kill them in the mountains, wipe them right off the face of the Earth.’ Stop your

anger. Think twice about bringing evil against your people! Think of Abraham, Isaac, and Israel, your servants to whom you gave your word, telling them ‘I will give you many children, as many as the stars in the sky, and I’ll give this land to your children as their land forever.’”

¹⁴And God did think twice. He *decided not to do the evil* (author’s emphasis) he had threatened against his people.

In short, there are several biblical instances in which God looked more and more like Zeus, Neptune, Elil, and the other superior reigning gods of mythology than He did a real, substantive heavenly father that was so presented throughout my life. God began to look no different than all the other “false” gods we learned about in comparative religions courses. He started to take on the traits and attributes of a god created by man for the purpose of rallying the troops or controlling the erstwhile yet sinful courses of common folk who needed to be reigned in and controlled.

Further, as I began the research into ancient religions for the purpose of this book, I found much of what I had believed by faith to be the only-one-true-religion, to be simply the stuffs of revitalized, rewritten, reworked—possibly even plagiarized—religions of thousands of years prior to the writing of the compiled books we refer to today as the Bible. When Moses penned the Pentateuch (the first five books of the Hebrew Bible and the Christian Old Testament) in and around 1400 BCE (I believe there is absolutely no reason to doubt that these books were, at least originally, authored by Moses, and that he indeed was a real, historical person, as established in the dating system set forth in my previous work⁴), it is very clear that Moses “borrowed” information from the earlier Sumerian and Akkadian religions, recorded in cuneiform 1,500–2,000 years earlier, sometime between 2500 and 2800 BCE. (**Author’s Note:** In *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim*, when stating that the date of the Sumerian civilization flourished around “4500–4800 BCE,” I meant to say 2500–2800 BCE, but inadvertently stated the number of years from today, backward, rather the correct date. Ah, the things that can get missed even in your most meticulous editing!) The evolution and migration of humans from the Fertile Crescent region between the Tigris and Euphrates rivers south and west into the Canaanite region brought with it, also, the evolution and transformation of ancient religion. The Hebrews picked up on the name

“El” and incorporated it into their religion—their own, homespun version of a superior god and the pantheon of the Sumerians. Elil became Elohim, El Eliyon, El Shaddai of the Hebrew religion, while Enki/Ea, the base word for Ywhw, became Yahweh, or Jehovah.

However, when discussing this very issue of etymology of ancient god-names, my friend and Byzantine Catholic priest Father Jack Ash-craft said to me in a personal conversation, “The word ‘Allah’ can be found in use in the Syrian Churches. The etymology isn’t the issue. Muhammad merely used a common word in his tribe for deity. The issue is the character, will, and salvific history of the deity concerned. If they do not match, they cannot be the same deity.”

When considering this anthropological migration of religion and its adaptation of cultural words and names, it is interesting to note that the name “Allah” was one of the pagan deities of the Quraish. As a youth, Muhammad, who later founded the Islamic religion, participated in the worship of the 360 pagan gods of the Kabah in Mecca, overseen by the Quraish tribe to which Muhammad belonged. As Muhammad grew up, he was influenced by Jewish and Christian monotheists who condemned the polytheism of the Kabah. At some point in Muhammad’s life, he became convinced that polytheism was completely incompatible for a nationalistic-based religion and sought to reject the 360 pagan gods with which he had been raised.⁵ Muhammad was converted to the concept of monotheism through the influence and teachings of Judaism and Christianity.⁶ However, being a proud nationalistic Arab, he sought not to change his people’s beliefs completely, but turned reformer and sought to reboot his native pagan religion rather than adopt a completely different belief system altogether, such as Christianity. As a result, Muhammad took the chief pagan god of the Kabah in Mecca (Hubal/Allah⁷) and chose him to be his new monotheistic god. This god was already considered the chief god among the other gods at the Kabah. Muhammad’s strategy was simple: Rather than converting all the Arab people to the monotheism of Christianity, he merely banished the other 359 pagan gods and chose Hubal/Allah to be the one and only god, thus giving Islam “Allah.” In a very real sense, Muhammad created Islam out of whole cloth for the purpose of solidifying Arabic nationalism under one god and one religion—much the same as Constantine with Christianity in the early 300s AD.

The last thing I wish to do is dissuade anyone from their personal faith or traditional beliefs. However, in saying that, it also must be recognized that even the most sacredly held names in our most holy beliefs have come from earlier sources. Civilization developed and migrated across the globe, and with that came the migration and evolution of religious thought. Just as the early Christian church dislocated pagan tribes and usurped their places of high worship, burning down their sacred groves only to erect chapels and cathedrals in their place, so did ancient humanity as they borrowed and transformed religion into newer modes of practice and objects of worship.

This train of thought, of course, represents what religious scholars would call a secular view. It eliminates the need for faith, and filters the history of humanity and the development of religion and religious stories through the strainer of archaeology and anthropology. Accordingly, evangelicals and staunch adherents to Judeo-Christian faith, as well as Islam and other dogmatic faiths, would view this migration of religion and evolution of language as nothing more than a secularized explanation for something they accept by faith. At best they would accept by faith that the secular view can be merged with the religious mythology. Insisting that the so-called secular left despises them, Evangelical Christians maintain that post-modernism has moved the secularists to abandon absolutism for the more comfortable, objective, relative definition of “truth”: “Evangelical Christians believe... there is absolute truth which applies to all people, in all cultures, for all times. Evangelicals recognize that this objective and absolute truth is found ultimately in the one true God...and in His revelation given to us personally in Jesus Christ and in the Bible.⁸

In a conversation in July 2012, during the writing of these paragraphs, Micah Hanks, prominent futurist and author, said to me:

I think when one begins to look at the anthro-side of things, our inherent humanity is put in new perspective for us. It becomes easy to dismiss any kind of divinity at that point. But divinity is faith...in what? Faith cannot exist without the hope for something greater.... It is merely that glue which binds us to the divine. Whether or not a God exists, many have faith...and many who choose not to believe lack that faith, even if “he” is still there nonetheless. Or is our “faith” merely another human construct, much like thought, sight, and other things?

And, then, rather tongue-in-cheek, he added, “I would like to know if the Darsannee of Plibius TE-17 with their cold stony moon have an equivalent word to our English ‘faith.’”

We’ll cover this in more detail later, but suffice it to say that at this point in our study the Hebrew Bible starts to look more and more as if it is, simply, the Hebrew *version* of greater and much older worldly events. Could the Old Testament be nothing more than mere religious myth as opposed to the absolute on the spiritual truth of the universe, as Judeo-Christianity teaches? The more we investigate our religious origins, through the many myths, legends, and dogmatic theologies out there, the more we find that the similarities are staggering. Is there a “one true religion,” where God is the benevolent ruler of all that exists, or are all these collective mythologies simply different versions of common events, with common threads running throughout them all? Was there some “proto-religion” from which all ancient religions drew their basic information, or did there exist some magnificent story from which all religions built their versions of origins?

And what of this pervasive presence of the serpent that emerges not only in the Sumerian and Hebrew religions, but in many prevalent religious mythologies the world over? What of this supposed mysterious race of Reptilian beings that seems to run through the undercurrent of humanity’s mythos? Are these creatures the mere stuffs of man’s creation? The devils in the dark of the conspiratorial minded? Or are they the diaphanous stuff of ether?

Archaeology and Myth

archae·ol·ogy (noun)

The recovery and study of material objects, such as graves, buildings, tools, artworks, and human remains for the purpose of investigating the structure and behavior of past cultures. Archaeologists rely on physical remains as clues to the emergence and development of human societies and civilizations. Anthropologists, by contrast, interact with living people to study their cultures. (*The American Heritage New Dictionary of Cultural Literacy*)

myth (noun)

A traditional or legendary story, usually concerning some being or hero or event, with or without a determinable basis of fact or a natural explanation, esp. one that is concerned with deities and demigods and explains some practice, rite, or phenomenon of nature.

Stories or matter of this kind: realm of myth.

Any invented story, idea, or concept: His account of the event is pure myth.

An imaginary or fictitious thing or person.

An unproved or false collective belief that is used to justify a social institution. (*Collins English Dictionary, Complete & Unabridged, 10th Edition*)

I was recently part of a live debate where an archaeological PhD made the emphatic statement that myth was merely “mankind’s fantasies” and nothing more. Though it’s true that a myth can at times be a mere story, removing itself far from the status of reliable historical resource that the increasingly scientifically minded discipline of archaeo-anthropological disciplines would utilize, myths are not always as rooted in the realms of fantasy as the esteemed halls of academia might consider them to be. Of necessity to a richer understanding of our past, an interdisciplinary dialogue efficacious to the future development of both mythological and archaeological disciplines should exist. Perhaps, somewhere along the way, you will come to find that the union of archaeology and mythology is far from being grounded in the realm of fairytale.

In context to the subject matter of this book, I am hailing back to the creation story as written in the Old Testament of the Bible. Although the story of creation as told in the book of Genesis is not the first of humanity’s creation stories, it is one that tends to be most familiar in a broader sense and contains the roots of this discussion, so it is there that I will begin this search for fact, buried deep within the religious machinations and mythologies of faith. Also note that, though we may be able to identify facts within the linguistics and stories of the ancient texts, there is still no real way to quantify those facts as being hard evidence as to how things actually happened. But the multiplicity of creation accounts spread across a multiplicity of cultures and religions does give us a visible common thread

that, when viewed from “outside the box” of any particular religion or culture, presents a picture comprised of commonalities that are pan-cultural.

Does this merely underscore the notion that humanity’s civilizations, cultures, and religions have all evolved in equal fashion as one another? Or does it establish that there is a common thread woven throughout all cultures, beginning with a singular, common event lost in primordial antiquity? Each subsequent culture then ascribes its own version of events, character names, and twists on the original story, remanufacturing it to adapt to their own values and politics, not to mention the un-pierceable veils—the individual accounts of encounters and experiences that cannot be substantiated, but that are wholly important to any consideration of these spiritualistic, therefore hyper-speculative things.

Adam, Eve, and the Prince

The Book of Genesis tells us that Adam and Eve were the first couple. Whether you believe they were real people evolved from lower species, metaphoric stick figures, mythological characters, or actual, living human beings spiritually set against a deeply encoded message, the Hebrew religion tells us that they were created by God and given dominion over a garden paradise, and commanded to not eat of certain fruit growing on certain trees, lest they “die.” Period.

Enter, stage left, the trickster character Nachash [נַחַשׁ], the serpent. Although never identified in the text as Lucifer, Satan, or the Devil (those names being attributed to him much later in the biblical scriptures), this character has become religiously synonymous with the devilish figure who led humanity away from God, thereby ushering in original sin and the resultant fall of mankind from a state of grace before a holy God, placing humanity in need of a spiritual savior-redeemer. This serpent character is also established from that point forward as the evil force, ever-present and working to thwart the work of a gracious and loving God in the affairs of humanity. Nachash is the Hebrew word that, when translated into English means, “serpent; trickster; crafty magician, bringer of knowledge; illuminator; bright shining one.” According to Psalm 82, “God,” appearing in the singular version of the word *Elohim*, refers to the *other* gods of heaven—the “Divine Council”—as the Elohim [אֱלֹהִים], using the very same Hebrew word in its plural version, also calling them the “bright,

shining Princes of Heaven.” In this instance, you have the God of the Hebrew Bible declaring the existence of a “caste of gods” or “minor gods” over which He has authority, but whom he calls by the same name. Note that He never refers to them as “angels.” The Hebrew word for angels (*mal’ahk* [מֶלֶךְ], which means “messenger”) never appears in the passage.

Noted Hebrew and ancient Semitic language scholar Michael S. Heiser put it this way:

...[I]n light of the serpentine appearance of divine beings in Yahweh’s presence, what we have in Genesis chapter three is wordplay.... *That is, Eve was not talking to a snake. She was speaking to an bright, shining upright being who was serpentine in appearance, and who was trying to bewitch her with lies.* (Heiser’s emphasis)⁹

In other words, Eve was in the presence of one of the Sons of God. These beings were not angelic in nature, but were beings that possessed free will, and were more powerful than the angels, the messengers of God. When Psalm 8:4–5 speaks of the creation of human beings, utilizing the phrase “a little lower than the angels,” the Hebrew text actually renders this as “a little lower than the Elohim.” Eve was actually interacting with a member of the Divine Council who did not share God/Yahweh’s enthusiasm for his new creation, human beings.

I am convinced, by ancient linguistic use of the same word, that the Serpent in the Garden of Eden story is one of these bright shining princes of heaven who is none other than the “bright shining one” who appears in the Genesis account of Adam and Eve as Nachash, the serpent character, who “seduces” and impregnates Eve, after she sits at his feet to learn the knowledge he bestows.

Believe what you will, as your faith might dictate regarding the connection to Lucifer, the Star of the Morning, the “Bright Shining Presence of the Glory of God,” but the big question to ask is whether or not this teaching in the Hebrew scripture is a factual accounting or an elaborate cover story for much deeper events involving much more detail. We will, most probably, never know if Adam and Eve or Nachash ever existed, outside the realm of a faith story. But historical evidence does exist that links all these characters to other personages in different creation

mythologies throughout many other ancient religious cultures, establishing a common thread or under-current, as we will see later in this chapter.

Let me say again, at this still-early point in this study, that it is not my intent to offend anyone's religious or spiritual beliefs or sensibilities. Nor is it my desire to trounce scientific research or input. My personal background is one that has its foundations in the Christian faith and academia; that is where I received all of my formal-yet-incomplete biblical training and seminary education, and I must state again, for emphasis, that I do not by any means wish to dissuade anyone from believing what they trust by faith in their own heart to be true. I would like to present some questions, however, throughout the entirety of this book that may challenge those beliefs. When making comparative forays into religious teachings that span many different cultures, one is left to decipher the messages and determine in his own heart that which he believes to be true and that which he must discard as false, not to mention what one can or cannot accept as fact on the basis of archaeological and anthropological research—two schools of study that must completely separate themselves from faith issues in order to retain integrity in fact-finding. (As with my previous work on the Nephilim, I am sure that there will be some who will fear for the eternal salvation of my soul, if not the back-slidden state of my position with the Christian God.)

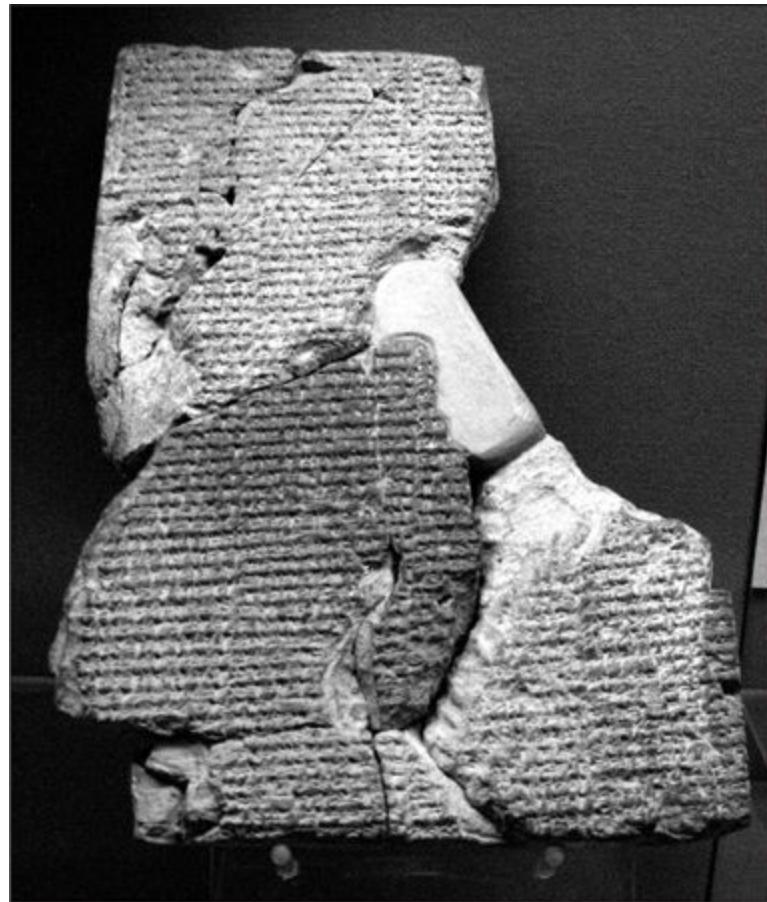
Suffice it to say that our personal faiths and religions—if adhered to—play harsh taskmasters in our lives and with what we understand to be our eternal souls. Add to that faith mix, the necessity of stepping back to examine other theologies outside its reach, then blend them all together with mythology, and you will find that there may exist something else completely different lying beneath the surface. There just may be things in the anthro-archaeo-mythological record that challenges you to look beyond the limits of your religious affiliations and think outside the box.

Slaves and Freedom Fighters

“[While] the Annunaki are sitting before you,
...Belet-ili the womb-goddess is present,
Let the womb-goddess create offspring,
And let man bear the load of the gods!
...Create primeval man that he may bear the yoke!

Let him bear the yoke, the work of Elil,
Let man bear the yoke of the gods!"

—Atrahasis, Tablet 1¹⁰



Cuneiform tablet containing the Atrahasis Epic, housed in the British Museum. Image made available through Wikimedia Commons.

Let's go back a little further than the writing of Genesis to the ancient Mesopotamian civilization of Sumer. According to their ancient cuneiforms, they were ruled by the Annuna/Annunaki, their god-caste of beings who came to the earth from the heavens. As the story goes, these gods, weary of performing their own manual labor, bred into—or genetically engineered and manipulated the DNA of—the humans of the Mesopotamian region who roamed as wild beasts. They did this to create a slave caste to do their work for them. As the story continues to unfold, the humans began to feel the weight of their enslavement. Theirs was an unwilling servitude. Accordingly, as time went on, the cruel hand of the

slave masters became unbearable to the humans, and some of the Annunaki overlords went rogue, launching a conspiracy to free the humans and teach them the knowledge of science and spirituality, and the art of civilization, thus elevating them to the same god-like status as the Annunaki. The leader of the rebel freedom fighters was none other than Elil's brother god, an Annunaki named Enki, also known as Ea in the neighboring Akkadian culture.

When seeking to understand any ancient text, it is important to recognize a few things up-front:

1. The language in which it was written, as most ancient languages have a logic all their own that does not translate as well into modern English.
2. The people for whom the stories were being written. Their understanding of the stories and the way in which they were presented could have been vastly different than what we understand in a modern reading.
3. The context of the text in relation to the people for whom it was being written. Again, our current-day understanding being completely different as to what ancient peoples' would be.

The poetic, picturesque language of these ancient Sumerian texts, though beautiful in their presentation as ancient religious accounts, offer no source to quantify their veracity, thereby leaving themselves to stand only as religious history and myth. The importance of sources and verifiable information matter wholly when deciphering ancient texts, but five to seven thousand years ago, there was little need for this, if there existed even the slightest concept that far in the future, archaeologists, historians, and anthropologists would be far greater served had the ancients included indexes and bibliographies along with their cuneiform tablets. These accounts were written as religious history, in their context, and presented to the people of that time and place. The writers were establishing spiritual stories and a history of the origins of their people, but they were not presenting that information for the ages.



Zechariah Sitchin. Image made available through Wikimedia Commons.

In modern day, their stories have certainly been over-romanticized in the works of the late Zechariah Sitchin, who, while perhaps being “on to something,” pushed his theories too far in order to make things fit. But despite his mistranslations and abused usages of ancient text, he did create an intriguing fictional account of the descent of extraterrestrial beings to the earth, housing the Sumerian mythology in updated, vernacular narrative. A prime example is when Sitchin forced the word *Nephilim* to mean “people of the firey rockets.”¹¹ Sitchin, at best, simply mistranslated the word, ignoring—or misunderstanding—the Aramaic usage blended with biblical Hebrew. The Nephilim were not the ones who “came down” from anywhere. They were the descendants—the offspring—of those who actually did come down—namely, the Watchers, the “Sons of God,” the bene ha ’Elohim [בְּנֵי־הָאֱלֹהִים] of Genesis chapter six. At worst, Sitchin deliberately ignored linguistics and fabricated meanings in order to substantiate his personal theories. But it is easy to understand how he may have extrapolated word definition from the combination of language and pictographs, as many of the carvings and reliefs from ancient Sumer depict their gods as descending in winged or bowl-like craft.



First-millennium seal showing descending Annunaki. Pictured is a worshipper and a fish-garbed sage before a stylized tree with a crescent moon and the descending winged disk set in the sky above it. Behind this group is another plant-form with a radiant star and the Star-Cluster (Pleiades cluster) above. In the background is the dragon of Marduk with Marduk's spear and Nabu's standard upon its back. Image made available through Wikimedia Commons.

The bigger issue is that Sitchin, in desiring to update the mythology and bring it into a more relevant understanding of ancient astronaut theory, simply did not do his homework. He, rather, like many of the theoretical metaphysicists of our age, stated that things were so, based solely on his (mis)interpretation of language, and his continual forcing of the square peg into the round hole. It's like grasping to the farthest possible meaning of a word—the broadest associative definition—and utilizing that obscure definition as the rock solid basis for your hypothesis. That can only end in disastrous interpretation and ultimately faulty conclusions.

When Sitchin refers to the Nephilim as the “people of the firey rockets,” he has gone far out of his way and deep into a misunderstanding of the Sumerian language in order to establish his hypothesis. His argument for “ancient rockets” and “firey space flight” is constructed completely on two ancient Sumerian words, *mu* and *me*,¹² which are the same words as the Akkadian *shamu*, and the Hebrew *shem*. Continuing in his argument to establish the ancient space craft theory, Sitchin goes on to contend that the Tower of Babel account in Genesis, in which the people wanted to make for themselves a *shem*, is in reality describing the construction of a flying craft

or rocket of some sort. In his book *The Twelfth Planet*, Sitchin defines the Sumerian word *mu* as meaning “an oval shaped, conical object,” as well as “that which rises straight.”¹³

The problem is that Mr. Sitchin merely defines the word, but offers up no linguistic etymology to define it within the framework of Sumerian language. He simply states the meaning and continues on building his hypothesis. However, it is interesting to note that the ancient Sumerians created their own dictionary,¹⁴ and it contains the word *mu*! The entry in the ancient Sumerian dictionary has the word *mu* being synonymous with the Akkadian word *shamu*, meaning “heaven, part of the sky, (sometimes) rain.” This is what the word means according to ancient scribes, who make no mention of flying craft or fiery rocket ships. It is a simple descriptive noun for the sky. The Sumerian word *me* is used for the same meaning, as part of the heavens.

And that’s just the linguistics. Zechariah Sitchin represents, to me, a man who had a deep-set interest in discovering who we are and where we came from. His research into ancient Mesopotamian culture to look for ancient answers is admirable, while all at once woefully incomplete and academically insincere.

Peter James, coauthor of the controversial book *Centuries of Darkness*, has leveled his own criticisms against Sitchin’s scholarship, pointing out that he not only deliberately had to disregard the rest of the known world outside Sumer and Mesopotamian civilization, but also for his seemingly innate misunderstanding of Babylonian literature:

[Sitchin] uses the Epic of Creation Enuma Elish as the foundation for his cosmogony, identifying the young god Marduk, who overthrows the older regime of gods and creates the Earth, as the unknown “Twelfth Planet.” In order to do so, he interprets the Babylonian theogony as a factual account of the birth of the other “eleven” planets. The Babylonian names for the planets are established beyond a shadow of a doubt—Ishtar was the deity of Venus, Nergal of Mars, and Marduk of Jupiter—and confirmed by hundreds of astronomical/astrological tables and treatises on clay tablets and papyri from the Hellenistic period. Sitchin merrily ignores all this and assigns unwarranted planetary identities to the gods

mentioned in the theogony. For example, Apsu, attested as god of the primeval waters, becomes, of all things, the Sun! Ea, as it suits Sitchin, is sometimes planet Neptune and sometimes a spaceman. And the identity of Ishtar as the planet Venus, a central feature of Mesopotamian religion, is nowhere mentioned in the book—instead Sitchin arbitrarily assigns to Venus another deity from *Enuma Elish*, and reserves Ishtar for a role as a female astronaut.¹⁵

William Irwin Thompson, well-known social philosopher and cultural critic (ergo: a man who make his living criticizing and poking tongue-in-cheek jabs), writer and publisher of poetry throughout his career, and a recipient of the Oslo International Poetry Festival Award in 1986, describes his personal writing and speaking style as mind-jazz on ancient texts. Thompson had this to say about what he calls Sitchin's "literalism":

What Sitchin sees is what he needs for his hypothesis. So figure 15 on [page 40](#) is radiation therapy, and figure 71 on [page 136](#) is a god inside a rocket-shaped chamber. If these are gods, why are they stuck with our cheap B movie technology of rockets, microphones, space-suits, and radiation therapy? If they are gods, then why can't they have some really divine technology such as intradimensional worm-hole travel, antigravity, starlight propulsion, or black hole bounce rematerializations? Sitchin has constructed what appears to be a convincing argument, but when he gets close to single images on ancient tablets, he falls back into the literalism of "Here is an image of the gods in rockets." Suddenly, ancient Sumer is made to look like the movie set for *Destination Moon*. Erich Von Däniken's potboiler *Chariots of the Gods?* has the same problem. The plain of Nazca in Peru is turned into a World War II landing strip. The gods can cross galactic distances, but by the time they get to Peru, their spaceships are imagined as World War II prop jobs that need an enormous landing strip. This literalization of the imagination doesn't make any sense, but every time it doesn't, you hear Sitchin say "There can be no doubt, but..."¹⁶

This is what disturbs me most about Zechariah Sitchin.

As someone who is invested in wanting to know more about our origins, and who is thoroughly intrigued with the ancient astronaut theory, I have to admit that such small words as *mu* and *me* can redefine the entire theory as put forward by Sitchin, who I still contend has some good ideas brewing, but has relied too heavily—and foolheartedly—on his own translations and, perhaps even deliberate, squeezing of a definition to fit his overall theory.

Folks, language is important. It is so important that even the Bible refers to itself as a book that is so “God-breathed,” that it is “infallible” and cannot be changed by “one jot or tittle” (Matthew 5:18)—the tiniest of Hebrew punctuation marks. Simply put, the writers of Hebrew scripture were *using language as a gage of authenticity*. That is an ultimately strong point on which theories can rise or fall, and we have archaeologists to thank for the deciphering of ancient mythological texts. Who knew a five-thousand-year-old dictionary would come in so handy? I wish Sitchin had referred to it, as that would, for me, not cast such broad dispersions on his interpretations and subsequent theories.

Does this—or should it—delegitimize Sitchin’s theories and his dozen-plus books on the topic? A most definitive yes on my part. If you are going to present theory based on scholarship, would it not be important to first ensure that the scholarship is sound?



Enki from a ninth-century BCE Babylonian alabaster wall-panel relief.
Copyright Trustees of the British Museum. Image used by permission of the British Museum.

In turn, should this, then, delegitimize ancient alien theory that adheres to similar yet differing hypothesis as Sitchin's? Not necessarily. Better scholarship on the topic needs to be established. And in the end, we may not come up drawing the same conclusions that were the object of our original hypothesis.

In Sumerian mythology, Enki ("Ea" in the neighboring Akkadian religion) is the god of craft, mischief, intelligence, and knowledge. He is also known as the god over the waters and creation, and although the exact meaning of his name is uncertain, the common translation is "Lord of the Earth." When you compare him to Nachash in the Book of Genesis, you find similar definitions as the "trickster" and bringer of "mischief." When

you keep in mind the etymology of “making mischief,” you will find that its origins have little to do with what we consider to be mischief by modern standards. Mischief was in its earliest forms equated with chaos, havoc, and the committing of rebellious acts.

There is such overt similarity between the acts of Enki/Ea and the serpent in the Garden of Eden in the Book of Genesis that it cannot be overlooked. The traditional story tells us that the serpent is none other than Satan, the Devil, Lucifer. However, the serpent is never called by any of those names in the text. Those are names attributed to the serpent thousands of years later in other scriptural writings of the Hebrew Bible. What is clear is that Nachash, the serpent character in the Eden story, is a member of the Divine Council, the Elohim. As I covered extensively in *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim*, Psalm 82 presents a caste of minor gods referred to as the Elohim, the “bright, shining Princes of Heaven.”¹⁷ This plural form of the word *Elohim* was uttered in the text by the singular Elohim, who equates them to himself.

For most evangelicals, there is a problem in that the Old Testament, here, affirms the existence of a multiplicity of Elohim. Though simple, the solution requires us to think like an ancient Semitic Israelite, and not as a product of the Reformation or the modern evangelicalism that exists today. Biblical theology did not begin with modern evangelicalism, the Calvins, the Luthers, the Aquinases, or even the Augustines. It began with the ancient text as it stands, understood within the historical, cultural, and religious context that produced it.

The first occurrence of *Elohim* [אֱלֹהִים] is correctly translated “God” and is obviously to be taken as the singular form of the word for reasons of grammatical subject-verb agreement. The second use of the word *Elohim* in this passage is to be equally understood as being in the plural form because it is the object of the sentence’s preposition. The grammar and syntax are crystal clear in this psalm, in that a singularity cannot preside from within a singularity. It is clear by the language of the text that Elohim (the singular) is presiding over the Elohim (the plural), and it is repeated a second time later in the short psalm. Both “God” and the “gods” are represented by the identical word *Elohim* [אֱלֹהִים].¹⁸

It Must Be Satan!

By definition, Nachash, the bright shining one (later, he becomes known as Lucifer, who in his pre-fallen state is the bright shining presence and defender of the glory of God, “The Bright and Morning Star”—which is also a reference to the Messiah/Jesus, much later; more on this in the next chapter), is also known as “the bringer of knowledge and intelligence, the illuminator.” When Nachash seduced Eve by the offering of “forbidden fruit”—that forbidden information that would make humans “just as Elohim (gods)” (Genesis 3:22)—he became the bringer of knowledge and the emancipator of the intellect, for after the forbidden fruit was accepted and eaten, the humans knew that they were naked. They knew that there was more to their existence than simply caring for the garden for the superior being who bred them.

And the LORD God said, “The man has now become like one of us, knowing good and evil. He must not be allowed to reach out his hand and take also from the tree of life and eat, and live forever.”²³ So the LORD God banished him from the Garden of Eden to work the ground from which he had been taken. Genesis 3:22–23

The Sumerian tablets tell us that the rebel god named Enki/Ea was the extraterrestrial (not-of-this-earth, non-human) being appointed by the chief god of the Annunaki, Elil, to create Homo sapiens. After his involvement with the original genetic experiment that bequeathed the slave race of humans, bred to do the work for the Annunaki (as paralleled in the keepers of the Garden of Eden in the Book of Genesis) his compassion for the plight of the slave race shifted his role as a genetic engineer to that of a veritable “rebel leader.” His actions flew in the face of the rest of his kind.

Now there was one Atrahasis
Whose ear was open (to) his god Enki.
He would speak wih his god
And his god would speak with him.
Atrahasis made his voice heard
And spoke to his lord,
“How long [will the gods make us suffer]?
Will they make us suffer illness forever?”
Enki made his voice heard

And spoke to his servant:
“Call the elders, the senior men!
Start [an uprising] in your own house,
Let heralds proclaim...
Let them make a loud noise in the land:
Do not revere your gods,
Do not pray to your goddesses...”

—from: Atrahasis 1:vii¹⁹

It is also related in the Sumerian texts that Ea's headquarters of operation were in the swampy, backwater region called the Snake Marsh, also referred to as a *den* to many reptiles and serpents. In other words, the first fight for freedom of the human race took place in an area known as “Ea-Den.”

Enki/Ea was originally the god of the ancient Sumerian city, Eridu, known for being the first and oldest city mentioned throughout Sumerian literature. It is closely associated with Uruk (“First City”) as built in biblical tradition by Cain, the Nephilim son of Eve and Nachash.²⁰

Closely associated with the city of Eridu is the mythical region below the earth's surface, known as the Abzu,²¹ which is often interpreted as an underground sweet water ocean in Mesopotamian mythology.²²



The ancient city of Eridu as envisioned by archaeological artist Balage Balogh. Used by permission from the artist, www.archaeologyillustrated.com.

The geographical characteristics and features of the ancient site of the city of Eridu must have had great impact both physically and spiritually with the original concept of the Abzu. It is difficult to imagine what exactly made the place sacred to the ancient Sumerians, mostly due to the fact that there are no direct references or depictions of the original landscape and terrain. However, where there was water in these arid, desert regions, there was life, and it was in these geographical places that civilizations were established and flourished. Eridu was situated in a marshy and continuously flooded area in the backwaters of the Tigris and Euphrates rivers, where it can be easily deduced by geographical patterns that some natural phenomenon of flooding and receding marsh waters took place, and was perceived by the ancient inhabitants of Eridu to be sacred nature at work.

The concept of the Abzu was derived from the waterways and clear lagoons that encompassed the city of Eridu. The surrounding river backwaters were also referred to as a “marshy den” that physically created a sanctuary setting, enclosing the sacred city, where eventually, a cult arose, dedicated to the god and/or goddess of sweet water.²³

The earliest form of the god Enki could have been “Abzu,” who was later seen as being conquered or vanquished by Enki,²⁴ who then stepped into the place of Abzu, which in turn became known as his domain.²⁵ This sort of alteration of concepts, where an ancient deity becomes a mere attribute of a more contemporary, evolved, divine figure, was a common attributable alteration when the god took on the function or act of a certain deed or natural phenomena, such as took place in the rising and falling of the waters surrounding Eridu. And make no mistake, the changing of the names of deities was common practice among the ancients, this being clearly illustrated in the many names for God in the Old Testament (Jehovah, Elohim, El Shaddai, Adoni, the Angel of Lord, and many others) as well as the biblical record of the divine changing of names of some of the early patriarchs—Abram of Ur becoming Abraham, Jacob becoming Israel, Joseph being renamed by the Egyptians as Zaphnath-paaneah, Saul of Tarsus renamed Paul the Apostle, and even the Messiah had evolutionary progressive name changes and additions as the function of the Messiah grew and burgeoned: Kinsman Redeemer, the Lion of Judah, the Lamb of God, the Rod of Jesse (of the royal house of King David, which did not exist until thousands of years after the earliest form of Messiah was used),

and so on. The meanings of names was all-important in ancient religion, and the owner of the name change generally followed the rule of *change equates function, designation, or purpose*.

In antiquity, one deity might have had several names used for him simultaneously, as mentioned previously with the several names for God and Messiah in the Hebrew Bible. During the course of time as older names disappeared or developed into newer forms with greater contemporary meaning, the older name incorporated as an attribute of his newer function. However, it should be taken into consideration that an original meaning of the name of a deity might mean nothing at all to a community of people using that name many centuries after the name was first uttered.

Look to the Tetragrammaton, the paleo-Hebrew name of the god YHWH (Jehovah). It must have had a translatable meaning, very early on, prior to the writing of the Hebrew scriptures, when the Hebrew religion was in an early state of development, and still in its infancy. Yet, much later, when Moses composed the Hebrew Scriptures around 1400 BCE, which also contained the Law for the Hebrew people, establishing the foundations of the Jewish religion, demonstrates signs that the name YHWH was still rather ambiguous and had no direct translation. And it is highly possible that the original meaning of YHWH had no importance whatsoever for the Hebrews who lived much later, where in the fifth century BCE they used several divine names for God, all more than likely referring to older deities in older layers of Israelite religion. The form and pronunciation of YHWH, although considered as sacred, as was the deity behind the name itself, was never altered. It was simply retained as part of the growing list of attributable names for the Hebrew God.

All of this is highly important to understanding the name of Enki/Ea, the evolution of his name being much similar. Even if Enki/Ea once had a clearly translatable meaning that was understandable to ancient Sumerian people, that original meaning was not necessarily understood by the Mesopotamian people living in the third millennium city-states of Sumer and neighboring Akkad. But the name Enki—specifically the Akkadian version, Ea—did migrate into the Canaanite region from the Mesopotamian region throughout the course of the following millennia and a half. The name *Ea* became the base of the Canaanite word *YHWH* (pronounced “Yee-ah-weh”), the Hebrew name *Jehovah*. This is all important in understanding

how the idea of the serpent became the basis for the Genesis account of the Garden of Eden's Serpent character, Nachash.

The direct translation of the Sumerian name, Enki, recorded as a divine Sumerian name in written sources since the composition of the texts literally translated as "Lord Earth," or "Lord of the Earth," extending to the meaning of "he who ruled beneath the earth (the Abzu) and had dominion over it."²⁶

Sounds like Satan, doesn't it? The problem is that, although Enki/Ea has incredible mythological linkage to the Serpent in the Bible, the name Ea is the early form of the name *YHWH*—Jehovah. There is some sort of twist in meaning that has taken place along the millennia, and there is some theoretical, yet highly heretical, surmising that the two characters are, perhaps, one in the same: Lucifer and Jehovah, at least etymologically, if not theologically. Were they both of the pantheon of the Elohim? The connectivity between Enki/Ea, who brought forbidden knowledges of the gods to early humans from a place known as the Snake Den (Ea's Den), is undeniably connected to the character of Nachash, who was the illuminator and bringer of forbidden knowledge to Adam and Eve in the Genesis story of the Garden of Eden, yet he is etymologically linked to Jehovah, the savior of humanity.

Chapter Two

That's Not What I Learned in Sunday School

If you grew up anything like me, you attended Sunday school as a kid. Maybe you even attended as an adult, and perhaps you still attend today. I only talk about religious education in the framework of “Sunday school,” as it gives a quick reference in our minds to all the things we were taught in our religious training as kids. It’s there that we learned in rudimentary form all the basic stories of the Bible and the embryonic systematic theology that formed our particular denomination’s dogmas and doctrines. If you were Catholic, you went to Catechism. If Lutheran, you attended Confirmation classes. If Jewish, you attended synagogue and both pre-and post-bar and bat mitzvah education, and maybe even went on into Medrichim in your teens. Perhaps you are of a different faith altogether or experienced no form of biblical training at all. Most of us have some notion as to what the early stories of the bible had to say regarding the creation of mankind, the Garden of Eden, Noah and the Ark, and other great stories that are religious in their origins, but that have transcended into common dialogue through the countless retellings and spread into pop culture, children’s books, toys, games, and all sorts of other ancillary forms throughout the years.

For the purposes of this examination, as I have stated, I hail back to the roots of my Christian education, as they are the foremost familiar tales stemming from much older, not-so-familiar historical religious accounts and mythologies. If I were to approach an absolute stranger on the street and ask him or her about the Garden of Eden or the Serpent in the Garden or Noah’s Ark, a great flood, or even Moses and the Ten Commandments, he or she would, as would most people, have some idea of what it is I was asking. These are common stories woven into the fabric of our religious heritage; that is not to say *your* particular heritage, but the heritage and religious “mythology” of humanity. In many cases, the old adage rings true that familiarity breeds contempt, and many of us, though perhaps adhering to what we were taught as children, have drifted far from those original teachings, relegating them to the realm of fantasy and religious fairytale.

As I grew older, I began to question many of the things I had been taught. I knew that I accepted those old stories as the absolute truth of God's Word as I was taught to do as a youngster, and they became engrained in my mind as some sort of probable universal truth. But because I extended my biblical education into my teens and young adult years, I found that my logical mind contended with the faith stories that made so much sense so many years earlier. I questioned who God really was, what His names meant, and why there were so many things in the pages of scripture that seemed to play like a *Lord of the Rings* movie, only with angels on crack.

So, I started asking questions.

“Why does the name Elohim have a plural connotation?”

“What!? Beings came down from heaven and impregnated humans?! Who were they?”

“Why did Moses never name the pharaohs with whom he had his encounters? Isn’t that important to the narrative?”

“Was Goliath actually a real giant?”

“What the hell are ‘sea monsters’ and ‘leviathan’?”

“What is that wheel-within-a-wheel-within-a-wheel contraption in Ezekiel?”

“Why is it Leviticus placed a legal mandate against eating Alaskan King Crab?”

“What? I can’t have sex with a menstruating woman?”

And so on, and so on, and so on.

Those were only the tip of the iceberg when it came to my questions. Many more dealt with textual criticisms, historical references, the mention of constellations that played important roles in pagan religions but figured prominently in biblical passages, homosexuality, Old Testament patriarchal polygamy, the genocide of infidels, the drinking of alcoholic beverages, and the mandate for women to stay silent in the church while allowing them to teach classes and sing.

The questions listed here are not just examples I’ve pulled out of the air, but all actual questions I asked, among many others, while attending Bible school and seminary, and working in youth ministry in my teens and 20s.

Ultimately, I was labeled a troublemaker. This moniker was delivered in one of two forms: “You are a troublemaker, Mr. Roberts. That kind of thinking will get you nowhere, fast, around here,” and “You are a troublemaker, Mr. Roberts”—wink-wink-nudge-nudge, accompanied by the non-verbal “And you are on to something by asking, but we can’t talk about that here, in this setting,” which ended up in private, out-of-the-way chats over cups of coffee in dark corners of far-away cafés.

As in most theological, dogma-driven circles, questioning the norm generally lands you in hot water. But the biggest question of them all, for me, was this: “Why? How do we know that what we believe and teach is the absolute corner on the truth? Did God descend and tell us these things firsthand, or are we simply believing in something for which we have no proof and for which all the science and reason and logic out there seems to contradict? Is that the true nature of faith?” I’d ask, bewildered, “Believing something that makes no sense for a greater purpose of which we have absolutely no proof?”

“It’s better than believing in nothing at all,” I was admonished with some conclusive air.

That is what has brought me to the place where I write about these things. I do not disbelieve in God, nor have I thrown out the baby with the bathwater, but I do have questions for which answers are hard to come by within the context of my religion. So I started looking outside the box, to the places that might lend me some better perspective or some answers that might give more solidity to the foundation that I was told was as “solid as the Rock of Christ. Amen and Glory!”

The Serpent in the Garden

¹Now the snake was the most clever of all the wild animals the Lord God had made. One day the snake said to the woman, “Did God really say that you must not eat fruit from any tree in the garden?” ²The woman answered the snake, “We may eat fruit from the trees in the garden. ³But God told us, “You must not eat fruit from the tree that is in the middle of the garden. You must not even touch it, or you will die.”” ⁴But the snake said to the woman, “You will not die. ⁵God knows that if you eat the fruit from that tree, you will learn about good and evil

and you will be like God!”⁶The woman saw that the tree was beautiful, that its fruit was good to eat, and that it would make her wise. So she took some of its fruit and ate it. She also gave some of the fruit to her husband who was with her, and he ate it.⁷Then, it was as if their eyes were opened. They realized they were naked, so they sewed fig leaves together and made something to cover themselves.⁸Then they heard the Lord God walking in the garden during the cool part of the day, and the man and his wife hid from the Lord God among the trees in the garden.⁹But the Lord God called to the man and said, “Where are you?”¹⁰The man answered, “I heard you walking in the garden, and I was afraid because I was naked, so I hid.”

¹¹God asked, “Who told you that you were naked? Did you eat fruit from the tree from which I commanded you not to eat?”

¹²The man said, “You gave this woman to me and she gave me fruit from the tree, so I ate it.”¹³Then the Lord God said to the woman, “How could you have done such a thing?” She answered, “The snake tricked me, so I ate the fruit.”¹⁴The Lord God said to the snake, “Because you did this, a curse will be put on you. You will be cursed as no other animal, tame or wild, will ever be. You will crawl on your stomach, and you will eat dust all the days of your life.¹⁵I will make you and the woman enemies to each other. Your descendants and her descendants will be enemies. One of her descendants will crush your head, and you will bite his heel.”¹⁶Then God said to the woman, “I will cause you to have much trouble when you are pregnant, and when you give birth to children, you will have great pain. You will greatly desire your husband, but he will rule over you.”

¹⁷Then God said to the man, “You listened to what your wife said, and you ate fruit from the tree from which I commanded you not to eat. So I will put a curse on the ground, and you will have to work very hard for your food. In pain you will eat its food all the days of your life.¹⁸The ground will produce thorns and weeds for you, and you will eat the plants of the field.

¹⁹You will sweat and work hard for your food. Later you will

return to the ground, because you were taken from it. You are dust, and when you die, you will return to the dust.”²⁰The man named his wife Eve, because she was the mother of all the living.²¹The Lord God made clothes from animal skins for the man and his wife and dressed them.²²Then the Lord God said, “Humans have become like one of us; they know good and evil. We must keep them from eating some of the fruit from the tree of life, or they will live forever.”²³So the Lord God forced Adam out of the garden of Eden to work the ground from which he was taken.

²⁴After God forced humans out of the garden, he placed angels and a sword of fire that flashed around in every direction on its eastern border. This kept people from getting to the tree of life. (Genesis 3:1–24)

Taking a biblical story and dissecting it to bare all the internal organs and skeletal structure is a meticulously important process necessary in an understanding of ancient culture. Simply said, the Bible, for all of its gloriously revered tales of Jehovah God and His interactions with His human creation, spawning three of the world’s major religions, is a source point for understanding the ancient anthropology of humanity. Depending on your view of the veracity of biblical scripture, there is no shadow of doubt that its pages reveal stories, accounts, myths, legends, and fables that mirror—or are mirrored by—a plethora of cultures in the ancient world. The importance of the Bible, if not for faith and practice, is to see it as a book that demonstrates another facet of events as experienced and recounted by ancient mankind—a *version*, if you will, of common events experienced by ancient humanity.

Accordingly, if you are of Judeo-Christian or Muslim religious heritage, the pages of these religious texts and biblical scripture are Truth. According to certain Christian denominations (and a phrase I heard over and over throughout my Bible education!), “The Bible is the only foundation and authority for faith and practice.” Although this may or may not be true, it is clear that when one takes a step back from the text of the Bible, removing the sometimes-rose-colored glasses of dogma and systematic theology, you can start to read between the lines and see, as it were, the vastness of the

world flickering between the slats as you walk along the perimeter fence of one of the world's most holiest of books.

And there exist many other world cultures that have varying accounts of creation and the first family, some of which border on that fairytale sort of scenario, such as gods or great human warriors casting beasts and animals into the skies to create the swath of heavenly constellations. African and Native American accounts of creation share such commonalities such as subterranean humans coming to the surface of the earth and “gods” from the heavens impregnating their beautiful daughters with quadruplets.

For example, in Lakota, accounts of the first human family, Waziya, the Old Man, and his wife, Wakanka, emerged for the first time out into the world from underground. Wakanka gave birth to Ite, a daughter so beautiful that she captivated the attentions of Tate, the God of the Wind, who married her and fathered quadruplets. In this account, we are told of a character, Iktomi the Trickster, who tempted that first family with promises of great wealth, power, and beauty. Iktomi bears great resemblance to the Old Testament’s account of the serpent, Nachash, who tempted Eve in the Garden of Eden, promising eternal life and knowledge like that of the gods if she ate of the forbidden tree at the garden’s center. As with the Lakota tale of Waziya, Wakanka, and Ite, disobedience and treachery against God/the gods resulted in banishment from paradise for them all. Nachash and his Lakota counterpart, Iktomi, were cursed and exiled to the earth for all time, while the first families went on to bear children and spread throughout the world.

It is very interesting to note that although Waziya and Wakanka “came out from underground,” according to Lakota oral tradition, in the Genesis account (2:7), Adam was “formed out of the clay of the ground.” The similarities in cultural versions of creation can be clearly seen. All the varied cultural tales of creation have such a vast number of similarities and overlaps that the touch points create a tangled web of scientific methodology, established more by the crossovers in the myths of various cultures, rather than the veracity of the individual cultural tale.

In the Hebrew account of creation’s first family, in the Genesis text, Adam and Eve were the first human couple, created by God and placed in a beautiful paradise garden called Eden. Their mandate was to till the ground and keep it (the garden) for God, the only prohibition being the eating of

fruit from the two forbidden trees, the Tree of the Knowledge of Good and Evil and the Tree of Life, located at the center of the garden. Along comes the Serpent, out of nowhere, with no contextual link to the passage, and tempts Eve to eat of the fruit of one of the forbidden trees. Eve looks at the fruit, and finds it beautiful and tasty in appearance, as well as something that would make her wise. How she knows that the fruit will bring her wisdom is absent from the narrative. She plucks the fruit, eats it, and offers it to her husband, Adam, who according to the text, just happened to be standing there with her, saying nothing nor offering any protest to her actions or the temptations of the Serpent. The result is an instantaneous opening of the floodgates of their minds, and they are suddenly fully aware that they are naked. They run and hide, covering themselves with fig leaves they've sewn together, while the Serpent seems to fall silent. The consequences are devastating to the human race, in that God finds the couple, curses them for disobeying his decrees, and condemns forever all of humanity. He also curses the Serpent, condemning him to crawl forever on his belly and be reviled above all other animals on the earth, and that his offspring and the offspring of the mother of humanity would forever be in enmity and conflict.

That's about as mythological a tale as they come, rife with all the earmarks of every other culture's mythological tales. But in Judeo-Christianity, we are taught that this is the truth, breathed from God, Himself. So, either one of two things is true:

1. It's a myth, not unlike the creation myths of many other cultures, or
2. Mythological tales are sometimes the absolute truth, despite resembling the mythological tales of all other cultures.

Perhaps you could add a third option:

3. It's the truth, and all other mythological tales sourced in other cultures are simply those other culture's twist on the truth, and are the work of Satan performing acts of diabolical mimicry.

There is more to the Eden tale than what you read on the surface. And whether you believe the account to be fact, fiction, allegory, or myth, there is an encoded message deep within the subtext of the passage. The story of the Garden of Eden's occupants and their fall from grace is more than a simple tale of disobedience and the eating of forbidden fruit. It is a tale of

race interrupted—and it mirrors many of the events we find in the ancient Sumerian account of the Annunaki breeding and enslavement of primeval mankind.

In Eden, Eve's downfall came as a result of her encounter with the Serpent. The encoded message in the Genesis passage implies that she had intercourse with the Serpent character, thus rendering her recorded bite out of a piece of fruit, small potatoes.

The Serpent not only seduced Eve away from the arms of her husband Adam, but impregnated her and she conceived her son Cain. Eve, in turn, brought this sexual knowledge to her husband, Adam, and they also had sex, conceiving Abel, Cain's twin brother. But Nachash did much more. Buried in the encoded mythical tale, he also passed to the first couple the forbidden knowledge of the Elohim, the pantheon of gods ruled by Jehovah.

Comparatively, similar events took place when Enki/Ea went to the humans and incited rebellion against the gods by passing on their forbidden knowledge to the humans from his place in the Sanke Marsh, Ea's Den. The ancient Sumerian cuneiforms also tell that this was done against the wishes of his superior and brother god, Elil, and as punishment for this treasonous act, the progressive Enki/Ea and his followers were condemned and ordered to remain underground—in the earth, Abzu as their domain, within its vast cavernous systems weaving and intersecting throughout the substrata of the earth. Along with this punishment, it was ruled that Enki/Ea was to never interfere with humans again and that their generations would not only not ever know each other, but will learn to hate each other and be in continual conflict, just as God pronounced the “continual enmity” that would exist between the offspring of the Serpent and the offspring of the humans, in Genesis 3:14–15.

In a rather tragic way for Western religious thought, then, the story seems to suggest that God stands against our own moral maturity, against sexuality, and against the divinization of human nature through the acquisition of knowledge and sexual pleasure. It also insinuates, when it does not actually shout, that we all die because our first parents knew each other within the intimate gnosis of sexual intercourse. Because they fucked, we're screwed.

—Jeffrey J. Kripal, *The Serpent's Gift, Gnostic Reflections on the Study of Religion*

Have you ever encountered a serpent that walked upright? Spoke in an audible, understandable voice? According to Genesis, the snake that Eve encountered did both of these things. Though it is probably safe to say that Eve was not very experienced in the ways of the world, seeing as she was the very first woman, it is also probably very safe to say that she knew the difference between a snake and a man. According to the scripture (Genesis 3:1), this snake was neither:

Now the serpent was more crafty than any of the wild animals the LORD God had made. He said to the woman, “Did God really say, ‘You must not eat from any tree in the garden?’”²

As mentioned, the Hebrew word used in the Book of Genesis for the word *serpent* is nachash (pronounced: naw-kawsh), meaning “magician or enchanter; a spellbinder; to illuminate, shine.” Jewish Rabbinic interpretation never saw this word as meaning a literal snake. It was to be understood as “a shining being with power to enchant.” This is a far cry from a snake in the grass, and in many later interpretations is identified as none other than Lucifer himself, although the passage never actually calls him by that name. It is attributed thousands of years later. It is this being that influences and beguiled Eve—or “seduced,” in a more accurate sense—into eating the fruit of the forbidden tree in the midst of the Garden of Eden—which, as we have seen, had absolutely nothing to do with eating fruit from a tree.

²“The woman said to the serpent, “We may eat fruit from the trees in the garden,³but God did say, ‘You must not eat fruit from the tree that is in the middle of the garden, and you must not touch it, or you will die.’” (Genesis 3:2–3)

The following linguistic details of what transacted in the Genesis account of the Garden of Eden were presented in *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim*, but well worth reconsidering here:

The Hebrew word for that tree is *ets* [עֵץ], a word that is in very close association with the Hebrew word *toledah* [תּוֹלְדָה] both meaning “generations.” It is from these words that we draw the modern equivalent of “family tree.” Other variations of the

word *ets* is “the wood of a tree as an opening and closing of a door.” In an applicational stretch the same word can apply to the term “portal; opening of one’s mind; enlightenment.”¹

It is highly suggested that the Tree of the Knowledge of Good and Evil, from which Eve is said to have eaten the forbidden fruit, was not a literal tree at all, but rather, symbolic of the pre-Adamic races that lived in the regions surrounding the Garden of Eden. These races are said to encompass the Atlantean civilization.

The phrase *fruit of the tree* is the Hebrew word *periy* [בְּתִיר]—fruit: produce of the ground; offspring, children, progeny (of the womb); or figuratively: fruit (of actions). The phrase *eat of it* is the Hebrew word *'akal* [אָכַל]; this word has many uses, among which, one use means to lay with a woman (sexual intercourse); and the word *touch* is the Hebrew word *naga* [נָגַע]—to touch (that is, to lay the hand upon [for any purpose]; euphemism for: to touch, in a sexual manner).

⁴“You will not certainly die,” the serpent said to the woman.

⁵“For God knows that when you eat of it your eyes will be opened, and you will be like God, knowing good and evil.”

⁶When the woman saw that the fruit of the tree was good for food and pleasing to the eye, and also desirable for gaining wisdom, she took some and ate it. She also gave some to her husband, who was with her, and he ate it. ⁷Then the eyes of both of them were opened, and they realized they were naked; so they sewed fig leaves together and made coverings for themselves.

(Genesis 3:4–7)

This was obviously no ordinary tree; in fact it wasn’t a literal tree at all. Many biblical scholars interpret this as Lucifer. The definitions of some of the Hebrew words used here are controversial as to their application in this context. That is to say that there may be opinions that have already been drawn prior to extrapolating meanings and applying them to the context. Here are the words from this Hebrew passage: The phrase *pleasant to the eyes* is the Hebrew word *chamad* [חָמַד]—to desire, to covet, to take pleasure in, to delight in, to be desirable, to delight greatly, to desire greatly, desirableness, preciousness. The word *desired* is the Hebrew word *ta'avah*

[תַּאֲנִה] —to yearn for; to lust after (used of bodily appetites) a longing; by implication: a delight (subjectively, satisfaction, objectively, a charm): a desire, a wish, longings of one's heart; lust, an appetite, covetousness (in a bad sense); to covet; to wait longingly. *Took* is the Hebrew word *laqach* [לְקַחַ]—a primitive root; to take (in the widest variety of applications): to take, to lay hold of, to receive, to marry, to take a wife, to take to or for a person, to procure, to get, to take possession of, to select, to choose, to take in marriage, to receive, to accept.

Under these definitions, a very different picture of the Eve's temptation in the Garden of Eden emerges. The parsed passage shown is far more than a sinful, disobedient appreciation of fruit. All the references we hear of Eve eating an apple, or depictions in religious art of the Eden couple eating a big piece of fruit, are merely coded information and a hiding of what the passage truly speaks about. What really happened in this scene in the Garden of Eden is that Eve, the mother of humanity, lost her virginity to the Serpent, as you can see that she encountered him sexually before ever having sex with her husband, Adam. And further down the passage, the text is implicit that Eve was impregnated by this encounter. She then drew her husband into the scenario, and he willingly partook. And Eve also became impregnated by Adam. Eve was now bearing fraternal twins, Cain and Abel—one from the seed of Adam, and the other from the seed of the character who is known as the Serpent in the Garden.

The grand sin that was committed in Eden was not mere disobedience in the eating of a forbidden piece of fruit from a forbidden tree in the midst of the garden. It was a sexual sin that created a dual bloodline in the twins conceived in Eve's womb. According to the subsequent passages in Genesis, we learn that Abel was the blood seed of Adam, but that Cain was the blood seed of the Serpent and that the lineage would be in constant conflict with one another, starting with Cain murdering his twin brother.

This begins the trail of the Nephilim—the bloodlines of the serpent.

Blood Is Thicker Than Water

The Genesis record of the Serpent's sexual encounter with Eve, the "mother of all living," establishes that the biblical account recognizes a dual bloodline had been conceived in Eve. This fact is borne out, not only in the condemnations in Eden, post-fall, and the pronunciation of what is

understood in rabbinic and evangelical schools to be the first Messianic prophecy (“...and he will crush your head, but you will bite his heel” [Genesis 3:15]) but also by the long lists of genealogies that appear in the subsequent Old Testament books. And these genealogies were written down and placed there for one purpose alone: to establish a traceable, pure human bloodline from which the Messiah would come. “Traceable to whom?” you might ask. Traceable back to the loins of Adam, the first human male. Here is how the genealogies began in the first 28 verses of 1 Chronicles, [chapter 1](#):

Historical Records From Adam to Abraham to Noah’s Sons

¹Adam, [Author’s Note: Take note of the exclusion of the firstborn twin sons, Cain and Abel] Seth, Enosh, ²Kenan, Mahalalel, Jared, ³Enoch, Methuselah, Lamech, Noah.

⁴The sons of Noah:

Shem, Ham and Japheth.

The Japhethites

⁵The sons of Japheth:

Gomer, Magog, Madai, Javan, Tubal, Meshek and Tiras.

⁶The sons of Gomer:

Ashkenaz, Riphath and Togarmah.

⁷The sons of Javan:

Elishah, Tarshish, the Kittites and the Rodanites.

The Hamites

⁸The sons of Ham:

Cush, Egypt, Put and Canaan.

⁹The sons of Cush:

Seba, Havilah, Sabta, Raamah and Sabteka.

The sons of Raamah:

Sheba and Dedan.

¹⁰Cush was the father of

Nimrod, who became a mighty warrior on earth.

¹¹Egypt was the father of

the Ludites, Anamites, Lehabites, Naphtuhites, ¹²Pathrusites,

Kasluhites (from whom the Philistines came) and Caphtorites.

¹³Canaan was the father of

Sidon his firstborn, and of the Hittites, ¹⁴Jebusites, Amorites, Girgashites, ¹⁵Hivites, Arkites, Sinites, ¹⁶Arvadites, Zemarites and Hamathites.

The Semites

¹⁷The sons of Shem:

Elam, Ashur, Arphaxad, Lud and Aram.

The sons of Aram:

Uz, Hul, Gether and Meshek.

¹⁸Arphaxad was the father of Shelah,

and Shelah the father of Eber.

¹⁹Two sons were born to Eber:

One was named Peleg, because in his time the earth was divided; his brother was named Joktan.

²⁰Joktan was the father of

Almodad, Sheleph, Hazarmaveth, Jerah, ²¹Hadoram, Uzal, Diklah, ²²Obal, Abimael, Sheba, ²³Ophir, Havilah and Jobab.

All these were sons of Joktan.

²⁴Shem, Arphaxad, Shelah,

²⁵Eber, Peleg, Reu,

²⁶Serug, Nahor, Terah

²⁷and Abram (that is, Abraham).

The Family of Abraham

²⁸The sons of Abraham:

Isaac and Ishmael.

And this listing of genealogies goes on for eight-and a-half more chapters!

Why was there a need to trace the human bloodline back to Adam? Why such a meticulous biblical record of the flow of humanity from the first human man? It was to establish the traceable lineage of the coming Messiah, the kinsman redeemer prophesied during the pronouncement of cursing and judgment back in Genesis 3:15. These genealogical records

exist for one purpose and one purpose only: to establish that there existed a dual bloodline in humanity, bequeathed in the Garden of Eden—the seed of Adam, being the “pure human bloodline,” and the seed of Nachash, the bloodline of “mixed human and Elohim blood,” as bred into Eve. And, as I noted above in the 1 Chronicles passage, the firstborn son, Cain, as well as the younger twin whom he murdered, are both omitted from the genealogy. Why? Cain is the firstborn and by Hebrew tradition should have appeared on the list immediately following Adam, but he is omitted from the genealogical record as listed in the Old Testament for the simple reason that he was not of pure, human blood. Cain was of the mixed blood of Nachash and Eve. He was the first of the Nephilim. Abel wasn’t listed in the record for the simple fact that he was murdered by Cain before he had bequeathed any children. That is why we see the third third-born son, Seth, listed in the genealogical record as the direct descendent of Adam.

Again, if you recall—and this is extremely important to understand the entirety of the Old Testament—Cain, as the firstborn son of Eve, was fathered by Nachash, the Serpent character in Eden who was of the Elohim, the bright, shining prince of heaven. He represents the mixed bloodline, and if the Messiah was to be the kinsman redeemer, the savior of mankind born of mankind, his lineage had to be established as being of the pure, human bloodline, therefore, a descendent of Seth, not Cain.

The Kinsman Redeemer

The ancient Hebrew sense of redemption was firmly fixed in the word *goel* [גּוֹלֵךְ], the act of redeeming as a kinsman. The Hebrew sensibility understood the Messiah to be the “kinsman redeemer,” the one who would come to save, redeem, and rectify, but who was also a near kinsman to the family.

The concept of the kinsman redeemer was structured like this: The Law of Moses made provision for instances when a person who was forced to sell part of his property or himself into slavery, that his nearest of kin could step in and come to his aid by “buying back” what his relative was forced to sell, whether goods or person. The kinsman redeemer became the benefactor, the person who frees the enslaved by paying the ransom price and eliminating his debt.

“If a fellow countryman of yours becomes so poor he has to sell part of his property, then his nearest kinsman is to come and buy back what his relative has sold.” (Leviticus 25:25)

It was generally the nearest of kin who had the responsibility of redeeming his kinsman. If a person sold himself into slavery—or was forced into such—his kinsman redeemer purchased his freedom. When debt threatened to overwhelm a person, the kinsman redeemer stepped in to buy his homestead and let the family live. If a family member died without an heir, the kinsman redeemer gave his name by marrying the widow and rearing the existing son or a new son to carry on his dead relative’s name. When death by murder came at the hands of another man, the kinsman redeemer acted as the avenger of blood and pursued the murderer to enact familial vengeance or bring to justice (Numbers 35:12–34; Deuteronomy 19:1–3).

So when you think of the Jewish Messiah, remember that the Hebrew concept of Messiah was the kinsman redeemer—the one who was from “among us” coming to “save or redeem us.” And although this is a high, mighty biblical concept of redemption and salvation, it is also the theology in which was buried the encoded message of race interrupted and a dual human bloodline. Piggybacked on the prophecies of the coming Messiah, whose heritage was said over and over and over again throughout the Old Testament to be that of a kinsman who would be of pure human blood, was the story of a pure-blooded race versus a mixed-blood race. When the very first prophecy of the kinsman redeemer was uttered, directly after the impregnation of Eve by both Adam and Nachash, dovetailing with the proclamation that there would forever be a state of conflict between the seed of Nachash and the seed of the woman, there was a necessity to provide a traceable heritage from which the future, prophesied Messiah would be able to hail.

In short, the Old Testament story of the Messiah, and the corresponding genealogical records substantiating a traceable, pure human bloodline, obviate the complete opposite: that there was an “impure” bloodline, that which was not completely human. That was the bloodline of Nachash, the Serpent of the Garden of Eden, member of the Divine Council, one of the gods of the pantheon of gods known as the Sons of God, the *bene ha ‘Elohim*, the Watchers.

I have to state emphatically that the story and prophecies of the Messiah woven throughout the entirety of the Old Testament were there for one reason: to provide an encoded, deeply subtextual message speaking to common events that every other ancient religion wrote about. The story of the coming Messiah seems more and more to simply be the Hebrew religion's collective mythology that needed to establish a pure, human bloodline. And even the "subtext of race interrupted" has dubious origins, as there is simply no way to establish any sort of solid fact. The story of the Messiah that was to come, and the genealogical record by which his human heritage was to be established, was the vehicle that was incorporated to establish a pure, human bloodline, in opposition to the bloodline that was somehow tainted. Is this a story of extraterrestrial interference? Or is it a story of the anthropological development of comparative religions? Or is it a story of the One, True God's creation and control of that which He created?

Comparatively Speaking...

The symbolic Tree of the Knowledge of Good and Evil as depicted in the Genesis account of Eden—the object of the forbidden fruit consumed by the first couple inciting God's wrath and judgment—is the Hebrew correspondent to the very same palm tree in Ea-Den, depicted as having a trunk around which a half-man-half-snake is entwined. It is from this tree that the Enki/Ea passed on knowledge and intelligence to humans—or, in the parallel Genesis scenario, Nachash taught the first human couple to partake of the forbidden knowledge. As the information was absorbed by Eve and passed on to Adam, their perceptions and awareness of reality quickly shifted, leaving the two in a severe state of shock and fear. (Author's Note: A person who is totally unaware of the reality in which he or she lives is said to reside in an "Edenic state.") The account goes on to explain that, soon thereafter, the couple ran and hid themselves from the voice of God, not because they had their first sexual experiences, nor that they were shy of their nakedness; even though Adam said they were hiding because they were naked, it was because they were suddenly, appallingly aware that there was a profound physical difference between the gods and themselves. They also were experiencing an enlightenment—for good or ill—that they had not known prior to these events. It is clear that until this time, the humans had no concept that they were in any way physically

different from their reptilian/god counterparts. They had finally leapt from their childlike innocence and ignorance into the realization that they were intended, by design, to be tillers of the field and slaves to their overlords. There was also the fear, as is accounted in Genesis, that they had, as slaves who transgressed the law, brought down upon themselves the enormity of consequence.

The symbolism of the forbidden tree in Eden is not limited to Judeo-Christianity. The Eastern Indian god Krishna sat atop a coiled serpent beneath the branches of the Banyan Tree, and from there bestowed spiritual knowledge to humanity. Further representation of the tree can be found in the many crucifixion accounts of great teachers and gods, such as that of Quetzalcoatl, the winged serpent god of the great Toltec and Aztec civilization whose crucifixion on a tree is etched forever in stone. The wooden crucifixes upon which those that bestowed knowledge upon humankind—the symbols of the supreme god called the Egyptian Tau and Ahnk—represent the Tree of the Knowledge of Good and Evil. It was the result of the teaching of the forbidden knowledges to humans that they were killed.

The remarkable fact is that throughout all ancient and modern civilizations, the serpent, snake, or dragon bestowing knowledge upon the human race figures prominently in all religions and histories. The Judeo-Christian serpent as embodied in the fallen angel known as Lucifer; the Mayan serpent God Quetzalcoatl; the enormous plumed serpent god of the Hopi Indians, Baholinkonga; the mystical, human-like reptilians known as Nagas of India; the Egyptian serpent god, Kneph; the Phoenicians Agathodemon, and even the Hebrews Nakhushstan, the Brazen Serpent that Moses raised on a pole for the people to be healed—these are but a few of the myriad accounts that exist in worldwide religious cultures describing early gods as having reptilian-human physical features as well as having descended from the stars in the heavens.

Where's the Beef...?

After reading to this point, you may be asking yourself, “So, what’s the ‘Reptilian’ connection to ancient man?” It is clear that, though our most familiar biblical stories have connectivity with ancient religions, it is also clear that there is symbolism that carries from one to the other. Not only is it my (secularized) contention that, anthropologically speaking, the Hebrew

religion (aka Christianity) has its roots in language and characters modified from more ancient religions, it also carries over symbolism and adapted meanings. The importance of drawing the comparisons between the ancient Sumerian culture and the ancient Hebrew scriptural accounts is superficial in this book, at best, for there are literal tome-filled libraries speaking to these matters, but it speaks to the foundational concepts that flow throughout the religious mythologies that have given us the foundations of what we believe. The bigger question to ask is whether we are putting our faith in something that we hold to be truth, when in fact it is nothing more than accumulated myth upon myth upon myth.

Now, before you cluck your tongue in disgust at this, I must again state emphatically that faith is a completely other matter. Faith is the “substance of things hoped for, the evidence of things not seen,” so said the Apostle Paul (Hebrews 11:1). Faith is the adhesive that binds together the things that don’t always make sense. If you are willing to step outside the box, if only for a bit, in order to look back in and ask some serious questions, you may just find that there are other things beyond the scope of religious dogma and systematic theology. You may even step back into the box with a stronger sense of what you believe, for it’s the repeated tearing down of muscle that builds its strength. The late physicist Richard Feynman put it this way:

If you expected science to give all the answers to the wonderful questions about what we are, where we are going, what the meaning of the universe is, I think you can easily become disillusioned and then look for some mystic answer to these problems.... We're exploring, we're trying to find out as much as we can about the world!

...[I]f there's a simple ultimate law that explains everything, so be it. That'd be a very nice discovery. If it turns out it's like an onion with millions of layers...then that's the way it is!... [W]hen we go to investigate we shouldn't pre-decide what it is we are trying to do except to find out more about it.... [W]e should look to see what's true and what may not be true. Once you start doubting—which...to me, is a very fundamental part of my soul—to doubt and to ask...it gets a little harder to believe.

...I can live with doubt, uncertainty and not knowing. I think it's much more interesting to live not knowing than to have answers which might be wrong. I have approximate answers, possible beliefs, and different degrees of certainty about different things but I'm not absolutely sure of anything... But I don't have to know an answer.... I don't feel frightened by not knowing things, by being lost in the mysterious universe without having any purpose—which is the way it really is as far as I can tell....²

So, with my decidedly middle-of-the-road approach to personal faith, let's look at some of the comparatives in religion that seem to paint a bigger picture, not only of humanity but of the influences of the “secret history” of the Reptilians, which you will soon find isn't really a secret at all. It's just forgotten and buried in the dust of time.

Chapter Three

Coiled Around Many Cultures

“If the account given in Genesis is really true, ought we not, after all, to thank this serpent? He was the first schoolmaster, the first advocate of learning, the first enemy of ignorance, the first to whisper in human ears the sacred word, ‘liberty.’” —Robert Green Ingersoll, American statesman, 1833–1899 “Look like the innocent flower, but be the serpent under it.”

—William Shakespeare

There is a huge difference between approaching the issue of the multicultural serpent with a broad view that religion is most often a thing that cannot be quantified to the liking of the skeptical or scientific mind, versus the brand of angry atheism tantamount to hatred of any form of religion. To most skeptical thinkers and the crusading scientific atheists of today, faith is a list of pieties and practices that consist of superstitions built on the misty nothingness of ignorance and the dangerous falsehoods of faith-based thinking. (I had one scientist refer to me, in an open debate, as an “ass-plucking, denialist Nephilimer.”) With this sort of eliminatory thinking, there is no room for the wonder of the spiritual (at least not openly admitted) and very little grasp of the way the theological incorporates critical thinking, let alone the complex phenomenology of the religious experience. Hardcore atheists are to religious believers what an office-bound, short-sleeved, horn-rimmed-spectacle-wearing, white shirt, and tied accountant is to the free styling, caution-to-the-wind, dreadlocked, barefooted, multi-colored-paint-smeared, loft-dwelling artist. Pardon my stereotypes.

Religion is the construct of human beings. It is the attempt to place structure on the unstructured spiritual experience, and more often than not, the foundational religious constructs evolve into a systematic set of dogmas and theologies that produce, in nearly every case, a meticulous mode of control, which bears little resemblance to the origin of the systemized

structure. Spiritual experience is rarely ever something that is corporate. It is individual. That individual, in turn, internalizes and personally pursues his particular religion or, as is evident throughout the history of humanity, he moves that personal experience to a place of revelation that of necessity should be shared with those around him. But many times, the seeking of like-minded followers turns heinously into sycophancy, and the establishment of a controlled system is imposed that resembles nothing of the original experiencer's spirituality. Religion contains within its symbols and myths, some of the most utterly profound truths of the human psyche, and even the body. But these are things that need to be properly interpreted and freed from the illusion of faith and theology in order to function. Though faith is a thing that is necessary in most religious practices, it is also the thing that, in its simplicity, can completely obliterate the open mind.

Now, see? I've turned the entire argument on its head: Science and skepticism have closed off the possibilities under the lock and key of quantifiability within a "theological" approach to methodology and evidentiary research. On the other hand, "Faith-ers," in opening themselves to internalizing external spiritual experience and structuring it into theology of any sort, have adopted the rigidity that comes with legalizing their acceptance of that which is unquantifiable. It's a nasty catch-22 of thinking, so that neither approach seems to be complete, but always lacking what the other brings to the table. Science needs faith and faith needs science, and both need skepticism. Both are incomplete without the other, and that is the great schism of the mind.

The symbolism and presence of the serpent in the ancient world was highly significant, and somewhere back there, a person, a priest, or a collective of both determined that the serpent was a symbol that should be held in high esteem. Whether it was like the cat my friend and I experienced on our Sunday morning philosophical excursions, or simply a recognition that the serpent bore physical qualities that superstitiously became spiritual ones, the deifying of this reptilian creature became widespread throughout human civilization, and carried to all parts of the world. Ancient societies and religious scriptures from the Cradle of Civilization to the Far East and European cultures are rife with serpent figures, which were simultaneously attributed two highly symbolic roles: One role connected serpents to the heavens in their representation as deities, creative powers, and healing entities; the second role linked them with the underworld, associating them

with darkness, evil, harm, and destructive influences. Nowadays, if one just stops and considers, there should be little difficulty recognizing this dual symbolism, as it persists, perhaps not to the same theological depths it once did, but it is there nonetheless. Look simply to the symbol of the healing serpent as it appears on the physician's caduceus, the two coiled serpents wrapped around the tree, while at the same time, we see the serpent as a thing to be feared and reviled, a representative of evil intent and even as a descriptor for wily, despicable character attributes: "That dude's a snake in the grass!"

No matter what your religious take may be on the serpent, it is clear that nearly every civilization either deified the serpent in one form or another, or looked upon the serpent as somehow sacred or symbolic of the more esoteric values in life and nature. The serpent's dualism in the Hebrew religion is clearly seen when Moses, the giver of the Law and traditional author of the Pentateuch (Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy), writes of the Serpent in the Garden of Eden as the seducer of Eve and the catalyst for the spiritual fall of humanity, yet upholds the serpent as the symbol of divine healing when the people are smitten by venomous snakes:

⁵And the people spake against God, and against Moses, Wherefore have ye brought us up out of Egypt to die in the wilderness? for there is no bread, neither is there any water; and our soul loatheth this light bread. ⁶And the Lord sent fiery serpents among the people, and they bit the people; and much people of Israel died. ⁷Therefore the people came to Moses, and said, We have sinned, for we have spoken against the Lord, and against thee; pray unto the Lord, that he take away the serpents from us. And Moses prayed for the people. ⁸And the Lord said unto Moses, Make thee a fiery serpent, and set it upon a pole: and it shall come to pass, that every one that is bitten, when he looketh upon it, shall live. ⁹And Moses made a serpent of brass, and put it upon a pole, and it came to pass, that if a serpent had bitten any man, when he beheld the serpent of brass, he lived.
(Numbers 21:5–9)

Moses casts a bronze, shining serpent, the *necoshet* [נְכֹשֶׁת], and raises it on a pole, and the people who were bitten were then instructed to

look at it or touch the base of the pole to be healed of the terminal bites. Christianity, in turn, hailed to this miraculous healing event by equating the image of the brazen serpent elevated on the pole to the “lifting up,” or crucifixion of Jesus Christ.

¹³No one has ever gone into heaven except the one who came from heaven—the Son of Man. ¹⁴Just as Moses lifted up the serpent in the desert, so the Son of Man must be lifted up,

¹⁵that everyone who believes in him may have eternal life.
(John 3:13–15)

Although we have no idea of how this was supposed to have worked, other than the claim of divine power, we also have no idea how much time passed and how many people died between conception of the divine brass serpent, its sculpting design and casting, to final elevation on the pole. The story expounds on sacred symbolism over the sacred value of human life, the emphasis of the story demonstrating that the serpent was to be viewed as both the agent of harm *and* of healing—the bringer of death and the giver of life, perhaps paying homage to the fall of humanity, while at the same time revering the serpent as the deliverer of esoteric knowledge of the gods. The Hebrews sinned before their God and fiery serpents were sent to bite them as a divine punishment. In response, Moses crafted a bronze image of the venomous serpent, and the people were healed and ultimately spared by simply looking at it or touching the pole on which it had been erected.

The intent of the biblical passage is to illustrate that it is none other than God—Jehovah—who is the power working behind the image of the serpent. It is the paradoxical Jehovah who is at once the instigator of both death and life. And as God was so often want to do in Hebrew scriptures, He allows for—and in this case is the originator of—the deadly calamity in order to establish both his magnificent terror and beneficent grace in being the God who imposes harsh judgment as well as the God who offers a way out, salvation, and healing. To some, this may smack of a sort of divine Münchausen by proxy syndrome, but for the Hebrews, it was their God at work.

What is clear is that the Israelites were already quite familiar with images of deified serpents from their exposure to Egyptian mysticism and mythology during the four centuries they dwelled in Egypt, either as slaves or workers. And keep in mind that after 400 years, they were clearly

“Egyptian-ized” in a similar way as if you are a descendent of an Englishman who traveled to America on the *Mayflower* in 1620 and whose descendants remained here all those generations up until the current day, you would you be considered English by ancestry alone, but you would in actuality be completely American. Same deal with the Hebrews in Egypt.

The Hebrews were barely even Hebrews anymore. They had a vestige of their heritage kept alive in oral tradition and religious practice, but had completely forgotten who they were, as evidenced by the machinations Moses had to go through to keep convincing them that Jehovah was their God. They were Egyptians! But Moses came to lead them back to their ancestral promised land, and in the harshness of judgment, the serpent symbol is now seen by the Hebrews in its true light: a valid and important representation of their ancient god’s ultimate power over life and death. Their life and death. What is established to them in the symbol of the bronze serpent is that God was the divine force behind the serpent figure. Now put *that* in your edenic pipe and smoke it.

The Snake Marsh of Eridu

When we consider the Sumerian creator god, Enki—paralleled by the neighboring Akkadian god, Ea—as being connected through both ancient and modern mythology to a place called the Snake Marsh, coupled with the fact that we have already established that Enki/Ea is a linguistic precursor to YWHW (Jehovah), the Middle East becomes the hotbed of early serpent mythology. The parallel being, of course, that Enki, the brother god to Elil the chief god of the Annunaki, was not only responsible for the creation of intelligent mankind as a slave race at the behest of Elil, but he also saw the humans’ plight and led them into insurrection against the Annunaki. As we saw earlier, Enki/Ea is the prototype for the Hebrew Jehovah, and they played very similar functions as both creators and saviors. And the serpent symbolism is connected to them both.

In his fairly complex book *Deliver Me from Evil: Mesopotamian Incantations, 2500–1500 BC*, Oxford University researcher Graham Cunningham examines Sumerian tablets pre-dating the time known as the Sargonic period in ancient Mesopotamia, which extended from approximately the 22nd to the 23rd centuries BCE. During this earlier period in Sumer, there are many cuneiform tablets containing magical incantations, for both “helpful” and “harmful” divine ritual intervention. In these tablets

we find there are two specific incantations associating Enki/Ea with various agents of illness—in other words, the summoning of infliction, harm, or illness on someone else. In these incantations there is a reference to the “Snake of Enki,” while the other mentions “the place of the black snake in the middle of the abzu.” Remember the term *abzu*?

This is the great, underworld sea on which the city of Eridu sits, and surrounding the city lies the swampy region known as the Snake Marsh, a place, according to the mythology, well-known and loved by Enki/Ea. The incantations also mention a black dog, a horned snake, a serpent, and Enki himself. This association between Enki/Ea and harmful snakes continues well into the Old Babylonian period, and there is even one incantation directed against various snakes referred to as the two-tongued snake of abzu. Other incantations show that Enki/Ea could cure as well as cause illness (remember Moses and the brazen serpent on the pole), and there is a particular repeating phrase in the incantations saying *Ea did it, Ea undid it*. In essence: God brought catastrophe, God brought healing.

“Enmerkar and the Lord of Aratta” is a mythical Sumerian epic in which a speech is delivered by Enmerkar, the son of Mesh-ki-ang-gasher, the founder of the first dynasty of Uruk and builder of the city of Uruk. In that speech he delivers a magical incantation for the purpose of confusing the various languages of the people. Note the striking similarities to the Genesis account of the Tower of Babel:

Once upon a time there was no snake, there was no scorpion,
There was no hyena, there was no lion,
There was no wild dog, no wolf,
There was no fear, no terror,
Man had no rival.
In those days, the lands of Subur (and) Hamazi,
Harmony-tongued Sumer, the great land of the decrees
of princedom,
Uri, the land having all that is appropriate,
The land Martu, resting in security,
The whole universe, the people in unison
To Enlil in one tongue [spoke].
(Then) Enki, the lord of abundance (whose) commands

are trustworthy,
The lord of wisdom, who understands the land,
The leader of the gods,
Endowed with wisdom, the lord of Eridu,
Changed the speech in their mouths, [brought]
contention into it,
Into the speech of man that (until then) had been one.¹

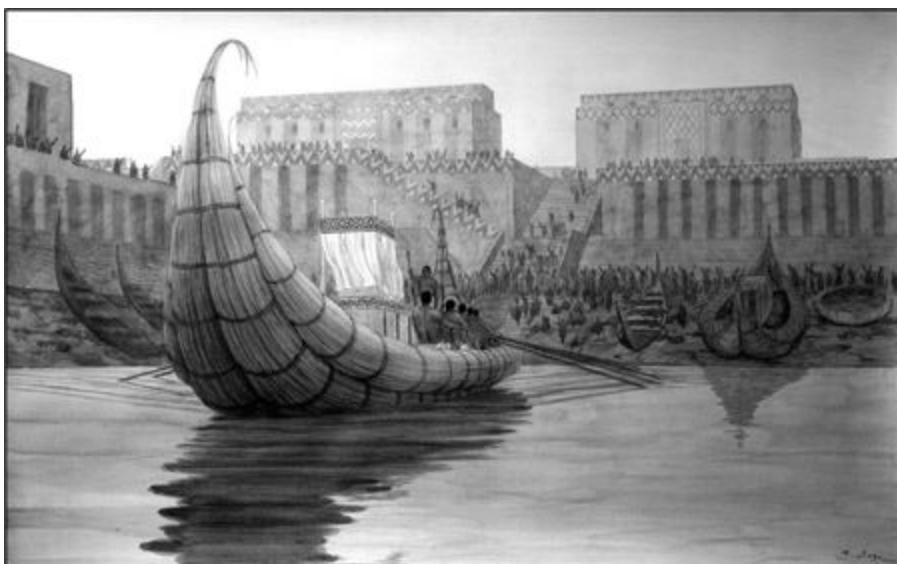


Sumerian cylinder seal depicting Enki and Adapa in a marsh boat. Image made available through Wikimedia Commons.

In the Book of Genesis, God comes down to earth and confuses the languages of humanity, causing them to disperse. For some reason he did not want the humans working in a unified fashion as they were building their giant ziggurat to “reach to the heavens” (Genesis 11:14). Enki/Ea plays this very same language-dispersing role in the Sumerian version of the tale. So, again, we see the correlation between Enki/Ea and Jehovah of the Old Testament. And the serpent slithers in and out through the narratives.

On one of the many Akkadian green jasper cylinder seals, dating between 2000 and 2300 BCE, there is an impression of the god Enki/Ea in a reed-filled marshland setting, standing in a shallow draft boat constructed out of the long reeds growing in the marsh, traditional to the inhabitants of the area. It is obvious that the central figure in the boat is none other than Enki, as evidenced by the ever-present dual streams of water emerging from his shoulders and the fish leaping from those streams. The boat pictured on

the cylinder is being guided through the heavily reeded marsh by two servants, both holding punting poles in their hands, while out of the water at the boat's fore and aft are fish leaping into the air, presumably greeting their creator in joyous worship. The entire setting on the cylinder is meant to evoke beauty and worshipful honor of Enki. One of the men standing in the boat with Enki is more than likely the man who never left his side, Adapa, the first human created by Enki. Adapa became the god's personal servant, baking daily fresh bread and fishing for his god's meals. In Sumerian hymns it is said of Enki that his greatest pastime was to navigate the waters of the Snake Marsh in his boat, known as the Ibex of the Abzu. It was here in the Snake Marsh that Enki is said to have lived in his mythical Sea House, which metaphorically cast its shadow over the waters of the Snake Marsh. If you visit the site of Eridu today, snakes can still be seen gliding across the surface of the water, forever reminding us why, after thousands of passing years, the place was given its name.



The harbor of ancient Eridu, with a boat carrying the statue of their patron god, Enki, as envisioned by archaeological artist Balage Balogh. Image used by permission from Balage Balogh, www.archaeologyillustrated.com.

Accordingly, in the ancient tablets, amplified to otherworldly proportions in the modern mythologies of the Annunaki found in the works of Zechariah Sitchin and others, it is said that Enki/Ea led a rebellion against his brother gods of the Annunaki, becoming the first “freedom fighter” for the human race, his base of operations being the Snake Marsh or Den of

Serpents, known as Ea's Den. (We'll expand on this in greater detail in the next chapter.)

Around the World in 80 Serpents

Well, not quite 80, but when you consider all the civilizations, ancient, archaic, and modern, that revere or worship the serpent in some form, the list is staggering. World religion, cultural mythology, and archaic literature represent the serpent as having become synonymous with the act of fertility, life force, and creative power.² The fertility and sexual linkage is partly due to snakes being seen as figuratively phallic in form and symbolically synonymous of the male sex organ—not to mention the linkage to the Garden of Eden story of impregnation at the seduction of the Serpent character. Serpents also became associated with water and earth due to the many species of snakes that live in the water or in holes in the ground, and agriculture, as their dwellings were in the ground and amongst the roots and plants.

The ancient Chinese linked the serpent with the gods of rain, a life-giving symbol of fertility and abundance in their agrarian culture. Australia, India, North America, and Africa have all linked snakes with rain and rainbows (bringing to mind the aptly titled 1985 book by Wade Davis and subsequent motion picture, *The Serpent and the Rainbow*, exploring the voodoo, zombie, and reincarnating resurrection practices in the Caribbean), which, again, are connected with rain and ultimately agricultural fertility. Cultural symbolism of rebirth, resurrection, transformative power, immortality, and healing (as with the brazen serpent of Moses) became strong spiritual aspects of the serpent. This is linked to the serpent's seasonal shedding of its outer skin, the orborous, a natural, physical occurrence called sloughing. This became a demonstrable, natural symbolism for resurrection, eternity, and the perpetual renewal of life. In the two major world religions said to have sprouted from the loins of Abraham—Judaism and Islam—the serpent was representative of sexual desire,³ reestablishing the sexual nature of the Garden of Eden story. Again reaffirming this idea, rabbinic tradition holds that the serpent in the Garden of Eden is illustrative of sexual passion and lustful desire.⁴ I find it interesting that these symbols existed in Abrahamic religions despite the fact that most adherents to traditional Hebraic, Muslim, and Christian faiths are far removed from the notion that the interaction between the Serpent

and Eve in the Garden of Eden was anything having to do with sexual encounter and transmission of forbidden knowledge.

In Hinduism, the *kundalini* is a coiled serpent that sits, metaphorically, at the base of the spine, a symbol of that residual power of pure desire and sexual passion.

The Hebrews and Sumerians have been touched on quite extensively, thus far, but let's do a brief recap, then move on to some other examples.

Israelite

The Hebrews held the serpent high as an evil presence embodied in the serpent that tempted Eve in the Garden of Eden. There are several other passages in the Old Testament and New Testament that speak to this character in other forms, both inanimate and possessing of character.

In Exodus 4, Moses is gifted with a magical staff that can turn to a serpent upon request. This was meant to be a sign of God's miraculous power when Moses went to confront the pharaoh of Egypt.

²And the LORD said unto him, What is that in thine hand? And he said, A rod. ³And he said, Cast it on the ground. And he cast it on the ground, and it became a serpent; and Moses fled from before it. ⁴And the LORD said unto Moses, Put forth thine hand, and take it by the tail. And he put forth his hand, and caught it, and it became a rod in his hand: ⁵That they may believe that the LORD God of their fathers, the God of Abraham, the God of Isaac, and the God of Jacob, hath appeared unto thee. (Exodus 4:2–5)

This very same rod-turned-serpent was a magical trick duplicated by the court magicians in Egypt, but as the story goes, Moses' rod-snake devoured the snakes produced by the Pharaoh's magicians. Again, according to Hebrew religion, a demonstration of God's power and Moses' demonstration that his snake was bigger than the Pharaoh's.

⁸And the LORD spake unto Moses and unto Aaron, saying,

⁹When Pharaoh shall speak unto you, saying, Shew a miracle for you: then thou shalt say unto Aaron, Take thy rod, and cast it before Pharaoh, and it shall become a serpent. ¹⁰And Moses and Aaron went in unto Pharaoh, and they did so as the LORD

had commanded: and Aaron cast down his rod before Pharaoh, and before his servants, and it became a serpent.

¹¹Then Pharaoh also called the wise men and the sorcerers: now the magicians of Egypt, they also did in like manner with their enchantments. ¹²For they cast down every man his rod, and they became serpents: but Aaron's rod swallowed up their rods.

¹³And he hardened Pharaoh's heart, that he hearkened not unto them; as the LORD had said.

(Exodus 7:8–13)

It is biblical stories like these that cause me to ponder why an infinite God did things the way He did them. It seems that God could have simply manifested Himself to the Egyptians, demonstrating that He was, indeed, a benevolent deity, resulting in the Egyptians falling on their faces and worshipping Him. Instead, according to the story in Exodus, God marionettes His followers through a series of devastatingly awesome events that equated to nothing more than the wreaking of destruction, mayhem, and suffering, when He could simply have gained the respect, worship, and reverence by manifesting Himself to the Pharaoh and the people of Egypt. Is this a God of infinite wisdom, holiness, and omniscience, or is it the manufactured god of humans in a historically culturally driven tale? That is the big question whose theme resonates throughout the subtext of this book. But as the systematic Judeo-Christian theology dictates, “Who am I to question God’s ways?” It’s an issue of faith in the supernatural that became law, theology, and dogma, as we will see repeated throughout many ancient religions.

If some of what I write seems as if I have some sort of axe to grind with biblical theology, please do not misinterpret me. What you see here are the shards of traditional stories *not* being filtered through religious predisposition, but the tales as seen from outside the box of dogma. When you look at these stories in that light, they become less God-inspired accounts and more of the same sort of religious mythological transference of divinity-driven theology for the purpose of establishing a picture that the teller of tale wanted told. The symbolism used to denote divine power is demonstrated in mythical proportions in the following passages:

⁴[The Hebrews] traveled from Mount Hor along the route to the Red Sea, to go around Edom. But the people grew impatient on

the way; ⁵they spoke against God and against Moses, and said, “Why have you brought us up out of Egypt to die in the desert? There is no bread! There is no water! And we detest this miserable food!” ⁶Then the Lord sent venomous snakes among them; they bit the people and many Israelites died.

⁷The people came to Moses and said, “We sinned when we spoke against the Lord and against you. Pray that the Lord will take the snakes away from us.” So Moses prayed for the people.

⁸The Lord said to Moses, “Make a snake and put it up on a pole; anyone who is bitten can look at it and live. ⁹So Moses made a bronze snake and put it up on a pole. Then when anyone was bitten by a snake and looked at the bronze snake, he lived.”
(Number 21:4–9)

¹¹“Beware that thou forget not the Lord thy God, in not keeping his commandments, and his judgments, and his statutes, which I command thee this day.... ¹⁵Who led thee through that great and terrible wilderness, wherein were fiery *serpents* (author’s emphasis), and scorpions, and drought, where there was no water; who brought thee forth water out of the rock of flint...”
(Deuteronomy 8:11,15)

As we have already examined, the serpent that Moses cast in bronze, many years later, became an object of worship itself. The nehushtan, as it was called (a derivative of the word *Nachash*), had taken on the status of god, and a cult formed around its worship, so much so that King Hezekiah expurgated the cult and tore down the bronze serpent. Apparently, serpent worship in Jerusalem was not new in Israel, as there are no less than seven such bronze serpents from pre-Israelite Palestinian cities. Two of these serpents were uncovered during an archaeological dig at Megiddo,⁵ one at the ancient cite of Gezer,⁶ two from the “holy of holies” at the ruins of Hazor, and another two at the remains Shechem.⁷ There are several other archaeological discoveries of the snake and serpent in the Canaanite region, but they mostly predate Israel’s occupation of the territory. However, with what we understand of the spread of religion and the adaptations from culture to culture, it is clear that the Israelites simply appropriated the older Palestinian serpent worship, blending it with their own version of serpent worship as embodied in the bronze serpent of Moses.

It is interesting to note that despite all the miraculous wonders experienced by the Hebrews under the leadership of Moses, and during the great exodus from Egypt, the people still clung to the physical objects such as the golden calf and the serpent, and elevated them to the status worthy of their worship. Could this be some indicator as to what really happened in these biblical tales? Ask yourself: Would you, if confronted with the sea splitting open to allow you to pass on dry ground, or if you stood before the fiery mountain where Moses ascended to receive the tablets, or if you experienced all the other miraculous wonders of the Hebrew's 40-year sojourn in the desert, forget about what God performed and worship an idol!? Or, perhaps, the Hebrews never really experienced any of these things on the same level as they have been passed down to us in biblical religious myth. Perhaps the experiencer, Moses, constructed an elaborate religion from the bare bones of personal divine revelation, but the hard part for him was convincing the people to live by the dictates of his individual encounter with a god. And then, in a posthumous slap in the face to Moses, throughout the next few hundred years, the people took his brazen serpent on a pole, incorporated it into Canaanite religion of Palestine, and began worshipping the snake as if it were the God of their deliverance.

¹Now it came to pass in the third year of Hoshea son of Elah king of Israel, that Hezekiah the son of Ahaz king of Judah began to reign. ²Twenty and five years old was he when he began to reign; and he reigned twenty and nine years in Jerusalem. His mother's name also was Abi, the daughter of Zachariah. ³And he did that which was right in the sight of the Lord, according to all that David his father did. ⁴He removed the high places, and brake the images, and cut down the groves, and brake in pieces the brasen *serpent* (author's emphasis) that Moses had made: for unto those days the children of Israel did burn incense to it: and he called it Nehushtan. (2 Kings 18:1–4)

In magnificent poetic form, Job 26: 6–14 presents a picture of God's handiwork. The serpent is mentioned near the end of the passage:

⁶“Death is naked before God;
Destruction lies uncovered.

⁷He spreads out the northern [skies] over empty space;
he suspends the earth over nothing.

⁸He wraps up the waters in his clouds,
yet the clouds do not burst under their weight.

⁹He covers the face of the full moon,
spreading his clouds over it.

¹⁰He marks out the horizon on the face of the waters for a
boundary between light and darkness.

¹¹The pillars of the heavens quake,
aghast at his rebuke.

¹²By his power he churned up the sea;
by his wisdom he cut Rahab to pieces.

¹³By his breath the skies became fair;
his hand pierced the crooked serpent.

¹⁴And these are but the outer fringe of his works;
how faint the whisper we hear of him!

Who then can understand the thunder of his power?"

What is this “crooked serpent” spoken of in the passage? It appears again in Old Testament scripture:

¹In that day the LORD with His hard, great and strong sword shall visit leviathan the serpent, and leviathan, the *crooked serpent* (author’s emphasis), and shall slay the whale that is in the sea. ²In that day there shall be singing to the vineyard of pure wine. ³“I am the Lord that keep it, I will suddenly give it drink, lest any hurt come to it, I keep it night and day.” (Isaiah 27:1–3)

There are many interpretations of the “crooked serpent,” the leviathan and dragon, ranging from a presence of the Holy Ghost, to the constellation of Draco, to a prophecy of the swastika of the Nazi regime.

In all, the serpent is mentioned more than 40 times in biblical references. An exhaustive listing here would be simply that: a list. Rather than reference every passage, suffice it to say that all you need do is refer to a

Concordance of the Bible words and look under the heading for “serpent” or “snake.” You could also conduct an Internet search for the words “serpent + bible,” then sit back and find the voluminous Web pages and limitless amount of information and interpretation, from the scholarly to completely whack fringe. Suffice it to say that the Bible establishes the serpent mythology was at play in ancient Israel, most probably carried over, in their origins, from the Egyptian, Palestinian, and Sumerian cultures that influenced the early development of Hebrew religion.

The Great Dragon: China

For four millennia, Chinese culture has existed and thrived in an unbroken line, dating back to the Xia Dynasty as early as 2000 BCE. China’s mythological roots, however, extend even farther back in time. Five thousand years ago in China, around the time the ancient Britons were building the first circular ditch and mound of Stonehenge, the dragon began its long-standing tradition as a mythological figure of the Chinese people. Unlike the serpent or snake in other cultures, the Chinese held the serpent/dragon as a symbol of happiness, immortality, sexual intercourse, and fertility, imbued with the ability to ward off evil spirits. The pervasive dragon decorates nearly every ancient monument and structure in China, as well as adorning the garments of ancient Chinese generals and high governmental officials. The Emperor wore nine dragons on his brocaded robe.

In ancient times, again illustrating the dual nature of the serpent, the dragon was regarded as not only the highest of sacred animals, but it also became the imperial emblem of all Chinese emperors. Unlike the depictions of evil dragons of Western cultures, and the need for St. Patrick to drive the evil serpents from the Land of Ireland, the Chinese dragon is beneficent and gracious among all other creatures, and was worshipped as the divine ruler of lakes, rivers, and seas. It is the powerful yet gentle serpent Lung that brings the fertile, healing rain to the earth, giving life to the crops and cooling and quenching the thirst of the toiling husbandman.

The dragon ultimately became synonymous with the Chinese, who proudly proclaim themselves “Long De Chuan Ren” (Descendents of the Dragon). The long line of emperors believed themselves to be, as did the Egyptians and other monarchical families in ancient times—the sons of heaven (the Sons of God; the Elohim), brothers to the gods, and incarnate

embodiments of the sacred dragons. All the empirical accouterments became known as things that were of the dragon: The bed of the emperor was the dragon bed; the throne, the dragon seat; and the emperor's ceremonial robes, the dragon robes. The dragon was in and throughout every aspect of ceremonial worship and daily life.

For half a millennium, the Xia people and their dynasty dominated the northern regions of China, from about 2000 to 1500 BCE. They were a people who collectively worshipped the sacred serpent, a creature found coiled around the most ancient of Chinese mythologies. Through the course of religious evolution, the serpent took on the form of the traditional Chinese dragon, and became the most everlasting symbol of a people and the most recognized emblem of Chinese culture, spirituality and mythology.

In 551 BCE, a child named Kongfuzi was born into a poor family of aristocratic lineage. His family's lineage allowed him the ability to become an educator and governmental official. Better known to the world as Confucius, his philosophy as an educator was that learning, in and of itself, was the path to greater self-knowledge and self-improvement. Working for and attaining these things would lead you to good conduct and clean living. His teachings took on legendary proportion through the centuries and millennia, but his underlying goal was to make wisdom the divine force that would result in the smooth operation of a stable and well-ordered state of being. Sounds very New Age, doesn't it? As most of us know, his teachings became a legendary guide to living wisely.

Many followers flocked to the teachings of Confucius, and they continued to perpetuate his ideas, even after his death in 479 BCE. As is with most legendary figures, who attained legendary status even during their own lifetimes, legends were fostered and spread about Confucius, including one in which sacred dragons guarded his mother during her pregnancy and attended to her at his birth.

Mesoamerican Feathered Serpent

According to Aztec, Mayan, and Toltec scriptures, Quetzalcoatl, the feathered serpent god, was the primordial creator and giver of life to all that is. Along with his mirrored opposite god, Tezcotlipoca, he created the world, and he was sometimes referred to as the "White Tezcotlipoca," contrasted to his darker opposite, the god of the night. He was called the great Sky God, the "Lord of the East," being associated with the morning

star, which also gave him the name Tlahuizcalpantecuhtli, “Lord of the Star of the Dawn.” Quetzalcoatl was also of virgin birth, his mother being the goddess Coatlicue and his twin brother god, Xolotl, known as the evening star, associated with Venus. It was Quetzalcoatl who, after the death of the fourth sun (Fourth Age), descended to Mictlan, the land of the dead, and by sprinkling blood drawn from his penis over the bones of the dead he had gathered from the previous era, created the fifth sun and the dawning of the new age of mankind.



The Temple of the Feathered Serpent has fine stylized depictions of that deity in a style that includes the apparent influences of Teotihuacan and Maya art. Image made available through Wikimedia Commons.

Comparatively speaking, the resemblance to titles used for Jesus, the Bright Morning Star, and Lucifer [לִילִּה], the Morning Star, are striking. This begs the question as to whether the Jesus of early Christianity garnered His title from the same sort of evolution of pagan, earth-based religious belief as did Quetzalcoatl, only a few hundred years later. Although Christianity teaches that God (the Creator) and Lucifer/Satan/Devil (the created) are not precise opposites, despite the fact that they represent opposing forces of good and evil, and that-which-is-holy versus that-which-is-profan, the dual nature of the opposing forces is present in nearly all religious belief and mythology in every culture. In this sense, Quetzalcoatl becomes the very same archetype. And because we all know that the morning and evening stars are merely a planet in the solar system, attributing them to being the presence of divinity, even on a comparative level, is certainly nothing short of an archaic understanding on the part of both religious mythologies. As humans, we have always looked to the equinoxes and the traversing of the heavenly bodies to ascribe some sort of mystical substance to our gods.

The dual, or twin, aspects of Quetzalcoatl and Xolotl is not lost on the comparison between Jesus and Lucifer, who are not only the diametrically opposing elements in the Christian faith, but also hypothesized, by some wags, to be twin brothers, both of the Elohim.

As with other gods riddled throughout human history, it was Quetzalcoatl, the feathered serpent, who—as is attributed to Lucifer, Enki/Ea, Khrisna, and others—brought the knowledge of the gods to humanity, this act bestowing on him the additional title of “wise legislator.” And, as with the Serpent in the Garden of Eden, he was condemned by the other gods, and crucified on a tree, like Jesus Christ, the Messiah of the Christian faith.

Veneration of Quetzalcoatl as a god appears to have begun in the early Classic Mesoamerican periods between 400 BCE and 600 AD, and spread throughout Mesoamerica by the Late Classic Period (600–900 AD).⁸ There is some credence to the academic notion that Quetzalcoatl was merely a deified earthly king from an earlier Mesoamerican period, which would also fit the picture of most mythological gods who once had firm footing in the flesh and blood, but with the evolution of legend, became much, much more.

In the Aztec culture, whose religious beliefs are among the best-documented in historical sources, Quetzalcoatl was the god of the wind, the star of the dawn, of merchants, arts, crafts, and knowledge. He was also, as the bringer of learning and knowledge, the patron god of the Aztec priesthood,⁹ another cross-cultural similarity to the Illuminator and Bringer of Knowledge.

In one version of the myth, Quetzalcoatl allowed himself to be seduced by his smoking mirror opposite, Tezcatlipoca, and in his resultant remorse, threw himself on a funeral pyre, killing himself by “theocicide.” After his death his heart became the morning-star, creating his identification with the god Tlahuizcalpantecuhtli. Toltec religious dualism has it that Tezcatlipoca, the opposing deity to Quetzalcoatl, had reportedly driven the god into exile. According to yet another tradition, Quetzalcoatl traveled over the sea on a raft of snakes. Quetzalcoatl has been physically described as being light-skinned and bearded, and prophesies of his future return were connected to his mythology. When the Spanish conquistador Hernán Cortés appeared in Mesoamerica in 1519, the Aztec king at the time, Montezuma II, lured by

the higher technology, weaponry, and appearance of the Conquistadors, was easily convinced that Cortés was in fact the reincarnate Quetzalcoatl, returning to rule his people.

Quetzalcoatl became a dualistic serpentine symbol of death and resurrection. The god has a great affinity with the priest-king Topiltzin Ce Acatl Quetzalcoatl, who ruled the Toltecs in Tula during the 10th century. The cult of Quetzalcoatl became widespread in Teotihuacan, an area about 30 miles north of what is now Mexico City, as well as Xochilco, Cholula, and Chichen Itza.

In his book *Fingerprints of the Gods: The Evidence of Earth's Lost Civilization*, British author Graham Hancock published a controversial theory that states Egyptian culture, as well as all the Mesoamerican culture inclusive of the Aztec, Mayan, and Olmec, all shared similar Quetzalcoatl mythologies.¹⁰ The stories of a bearded, light-skinned man bringing “knowledge” are alleged to be common, and sprouting from a central source or a “master/proto” culture. As racist as that may sound by today’s standards of politically correct-speak, keep in mind that the mythologies are much older than current, 21st-century politics. The caterwaul by the scientific community is that all these theories are based on some sort of tacit racism, when in fact, it is the cultures themselves that have given us the stories, not later cultures attributing those stories to only the, as some in the scientific community call them, “brown peoples.”

Native American Rattlesnake

The serpent is revered among Native American tribes in the form of the rattlesnake, who is known as “Grandfather” and “King of Snakes.” It is he who gives both fair winds and is the bringer of tempestuous weather, aligning with the myths of Quetzalcoatl and his connection to the wind and weather.

In Native American Chippewa and Cherokee flood mythology, the Horned Serpent, Misiginebig, an evil, underwater serpent/dragon, kills one of the gods’ cousins. In an act of divine revenge, the gods kill the Horned Serpent, who in dying unleashes a great flood. The people first flee to the mountains and when they, too, become submerged, they float on a raft of serpents until the flood subsides. The evil spirits once controlled by the serpent god then go into hiding out of fear of further punishment and

repercussion. Again, the similarities to the Nephilim and the Flood of Noah are undeniable, as the Hebrew scripture tells us that the Nephilim were “on the earth in those days and also afterward” (Genesis 6:4). This is not to establish the Flood of Noah as the prototype or “true” story, but rather to compare the Flood of Noah to the other cultural accounts, demonstrating the common theme amongst varying cultural tales. (Anecdotally, in Ohio, atop a plateau overlooking the Brush Creek Valley, Serpent Mound is the largest and finest serpent effigy in the United States. The Mound Builders associated some great mystical value to the serpent, as demonstrated by archaeological sites such as the Serpent Mound, though, to date, no one has been able to decipher the particular associations.)

The Canaanite Basilik

The early, pre-Canaanite Phoenicians (the basis of the name “phoenix,” the rising firebird/dragon) had a serpent god called the Basilisk (made popular in one of the *Harry Potter* books and movies). This serpent wasn’t quite a serpent, but bore some of the physical characteristics of an early dragon figure, again demonstrating the migrated physicalized presence of the earlier serpentine representations. The Basilisk was considered to be an early representation of a phallic god, common in ancient religions, obviously founded in male domination. According to the mythology, to look directly at a Basilisk meant certain death in many of heinous forms, so it is impossible to picture them accurately, as no one was able to look at them and create an accurate representation. This ability to kill with a glance is shared by the gorgons of Greek mythology, mythical correspondents of the Basilisk. In turn, the only way to kill a basilisk was blindfolded and by use of indirect visual, such as by a mirror or by use of a mirror-like object in which the serpent could view its own reflection, as was the case with the Grecian myth of Perseus and his fight with Medusa.

First-century Roman historian Pliny the Elder wrote of the Basilisk: “The basilisk serpent has the same power, to kill with its gaze. It is a native of Cyrenaica, not more than 12 inches long. It routs all snakes with its hiss, and moves its body forward in manifold coils like other snakes.”¹¹

During the Middle Ages, the basilisk became identified with the cockatrice, a two-legged dragon with the head of a rooster, very similar to the phoenix, a serpent mentioned occasionally in the Old Testament book of Isaiah and other Hebrew scriptures:

And the sucking child shall play on the hole of the asp, and the weaned child shall put his hand on the cockatrice' den. (Isaiah 11:8)

Rejoice not thou, whole Palestina, because the rod of him that smote thee is broken: for out of the serpent's root shall come forth a cockatrice, and his fruit shall be a fiery flying serpent. (Isaiah 14:29)

They hatch cockatrice' eggs, and weave the spider's web: he that eateth of their eggs dieth, and that which is crushed breaketh out into a viper. (Isaiah 59:5)

For, behold, I will send serpents, cockatrices, among you, which will not be charmed, and they shall bite you, saith the lord. (Jeremiah 8:17)

When we enter the modern period, and Medusa becomes an innocuous decorative motif found on door knockers and broaches, the Basilisk immigrates to the United States and becomes identified with different American snakes, most notably the rattlesnake. One of the first rattlesnakes encountered by European explorers, a tropical variety known as the "Mexican West Coast rattlesnake," was given the scientific name *crotalus basiliscus*, or "Basilisk snake."

(On an interesting etymological note, the work *Basilisk* is where we got the later word for a temple of the phallic god, and eventually a type of church: the *basilica*. There is a remembrance to this ancient mythology found atop St. Peter's Basilica in Rome in the form of a phallic ball.)

Hindu Mythology

The worship of snakes and serpents in Hindu culture and religion demonstrates high status of snakes or nagas, in their mythology. नाग is the Sanskrit and Pāli word for a deity or class of entity or being, taking the form of a very large snake, found in Hinduism and Buddhism. The use of the term *naga* is often ambiguous, as the word may also refer, in similar contexts, to one of several human tribes known as or nicknamed the Nāgas. The term is still used to apply to ordinary snakes, particularly the King Cobra and the Indian Cobra, the latter of which is still called naga in Hindi and other languages of India.

The serpent primarily represents symbolic rebirth, death, and mortality, again as we've seen in other cultures, due to the casting of its skin and symbolic "rebirth." Carved representations of cobras or nagas can be found all across India, to which offerings of food and flowers are left, with lights burned before the many and various shrines. Among some South Indians, the cobra is so revered that, if accidentally killed, it is burned like a human being on a funerary pyre; no one would kill one intentionally.

The Serpent Nāgas form an important part of Hindu mythology and play prominent roles in various legends. The following is a list of serpents from Hindu mythology¹²:

Shesha (Adisesha, Sheshnaga, or the 1,000-headed snake) upholds the world on his many heads and is said to be used by Lord Vishnu to rest. Shesha also sheltered Lord Krishna from a thunderstorm during his birth.

Vasuki allowed himself to be coiled around Mount Mandara by the Devas and **Asuras** to churn the milky ocean creating the ambrosia of immortality.

Kaliya poisoned the Yamuna/Jamuna River where he lived. Krishna subdued Kaliya by dancing on him and compelled him to leave the river.

Manasa is the queen of the snakes. She is also referred to as Manasha or "Ma Manasha," with *ma* being the universal mother.

Ananta is the endless snake who circles the world.

Padmanabha (or Padmaka) is the guardian snake of the south.

Astika is half-Brahmin and half-naga.

Kulika.

Lord Shiva also wears a snake around his neck.

An important Hindu festival bearing ancient association with snake worship is *Nag panchami*. It is held on the fifth day of Shravana, and snake idols are offered gifts of milk and incense. It is said that the gaining of

wisdom, wealth, and fame are sought after by the offering of milk and incense to the serpent idol. Once again, the serpent is associated with illumination and the getting of knowledge.

Egyptian

Apophis, also known as Apep,¹³ dating back into the 1500s BCE, was the great water serpent god who slept in the mountains of Baku, rising with the morning star, daily attacks Ra on his journeys through the daytime sky and the underworld, and is subsequently destroyed each evening by Sobek, the god of the crocodiles.

As we have seen in most other religions and cultures thus far, the serpent seems to always hold some chthonic symbolism—that underworld characterization as the giver of life, possessing the creator aspect that seems ever present wherever the serpent is worshipped. Nowhere is this so evident and pervasive than in the mysticism of ancient Egyptian religion and worship. In the mythology and symbolism of Egypt exist some of the most glaring dualistic contrasts between reverent worship of the serpent and fear-based repudiation.

The Egyptians' reverence for the serpent's life-giving powers probably arose, in part, from—once again—observing them shedding their skins, continually exposing a new resurrected body in the process. The god Atum, the ancient Egyptian primeval creator deity, is represented in the form of the serpent who seasonally shed his outer skin, a symbol of the continual life, death, and new life cycle. At one point, Atum prophesies to Osiris, the Egyptian god of the netherworld and final judgment, that he is going to destroy the entire world he had created and revert back to his serpentine form.¹⁴

Early-20th-century Dutch-born archaeologist Henri Frankfort, who spent his life reconstructing ancient Egyptian and Mesopotamian culture and mythology, said of the Egyptian serpent gods, “The primeval snake survives when everything else is destroyed at the end of time. Thus the serpent was strongly and continually associated with creation and eternal existence in the ancient Egyptian ethos. The Egyptians portrayed life itself by the image of the rearing serpent, and a serpent biting its tail was a common Egyptian emblem for ‘eternity.’”¹⁵

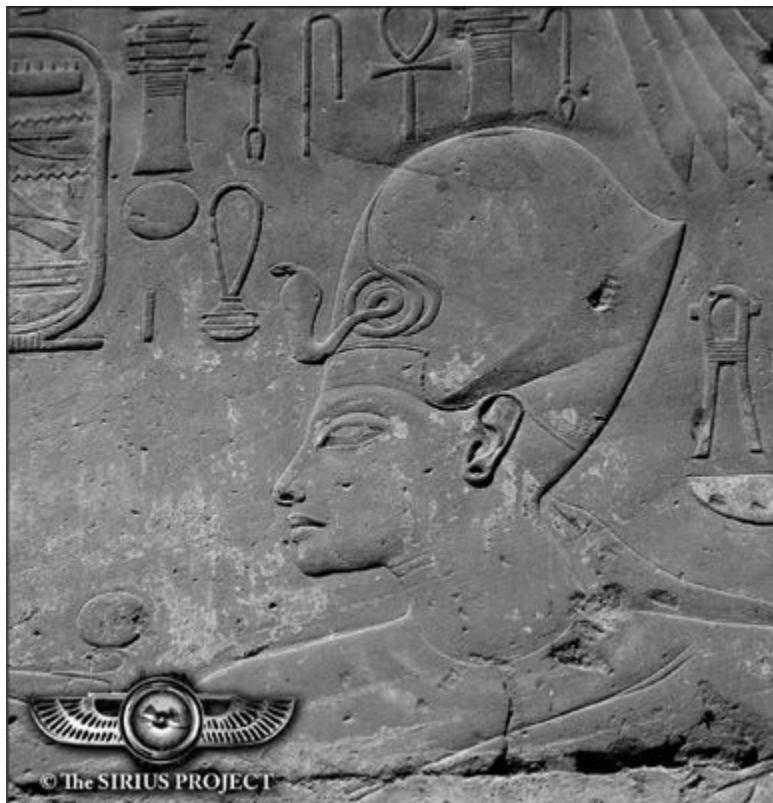
During the Egyptian Middle Kingdom (2030–1640 BCE), post-11th Dynasty, the god Amun came onto the scene as the patron god of the capitol city of Thebes. Amun in one of his manifestations was that of the serpent god named Kematef (“he who has completed his time”).¹⁶ At Karnak, during the beginning of the New Kingdom (1550–1090 BCE), Amun was merged with the sun god Ra, when Pharaoh Ahknaten uprooted the entire Egyptian system of religion and worship and decreed a new, monotheistic society. “Amun-Ra became the monotheistic, supreme state-enforced/endorsed god of Egypt during this period. Amun-Ra’s divine consort, the serpent goddess Mut (“the resplendent serpent”) gave birth to a son named Khonsu.”¹⁷ Together, this holy triad, in the Egyptian worldview, symbolized the perfect union both in the house of the gods as well as being representative of the supreme social structure of the royal family. And it was this family portrait that inextricably linked the house and family of the pharaoh to the mythological serpent of Egyptian mythology. But Ahkenaten’s monotheistic society lasted but one generation before it was overthrown and the implementation of a reversion back to the polytheism took place.

All periods of Egyptian history, from the earliest historical times all the way to the end of the New Kingdom, creation, fertility, birth, the goodness of the gods, rebirth, and resurrection were all embodied in the image of the serpent. Thermuthis was the serpent-headed goddess to whom were brought offerings at the time of harvest, thanking her for successful crops of both food and grape of the vine.¹⁸

The Father of Serpents, Geb, was the god of earth and “the father of the gods.”¹⁹ The snake was linked to life after death and the recurring cycle of life due to Egyptian obsession with the quest for eternal life, and he became a symbol of survival after death and even resurrection among the ancient Egyptians. In the *Egyptian Book of the Dead*, sometimes referred to by its more precise title, *The Book of Going Forth by Day*, in chapter 87, we are told that transformation into a serpent upon death gives new life to the deceased.²⁰

A serpent goddess in pre-dynastic Egypt set the stage for her veneration as an enduring symbol throughout the rest of dynastic Egyptian history. The most important serpent of Lower Egypt was Wadjet (“the green one”) who eventually became the symbol of a unified Egypt and its royal house. It was

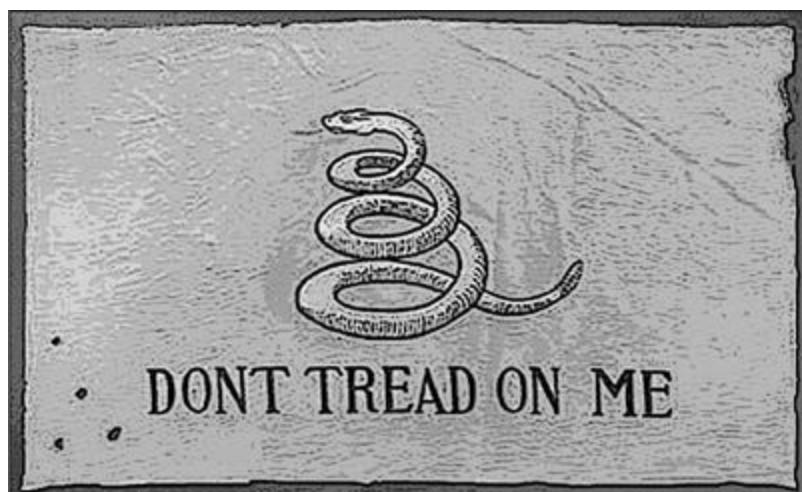
this serpent goddess whose name became synonymous with the general Egyptian term for *cobra* and the foundation for the creation of the symbol of the uraeus, the standing figure of the cobra found most often as the headpiece on the royal Egyptian crowns. The cobra/uraeus became such an important piece of Egyptian iconography that the life of the Pharaoh became known as the living years of the uraeus.²¹ Wadjet not only became physically represented on the Pharaoh's crown as his guardian and protector, but eventually was bestowed the title of the Eye of Ra. Her green color, significantly, became the color that represented resurrection in ancient Egypt, and Wadjet, also referred to as "the green one," embodied the forces of health and fertility. As with most gods out of antiquity, you can quickly see how numerous titles continued to be added on, as the powers and influence of the god evolved in worship (Wadjet: the green uraeus of the Pharaoh, the Eye of Ra, the protector and guardian of the life of the Pharaoh, the power of fertility and good health).



The crown of 18th-Dynasty Egypt, clearly showing the serpent figure. Copyright Sirius Project, Dr. John Ward, and Dr. Maria Nilsson, Luxor, Egypt. Used by permission of the Sirius Project.

Representing the oppositional character of the Egyptian serpent was the Serpent God of Darkness, the winged, fire-spewing Apophis. What Wadjet was to all that was good in ancient Egypt, Apophis was her counterpart, representing the demonic forces, evil gods, and powers of the bleak underworld. Apophis was the serpent of darkness, in complete opposition to the sun god Ra, who was the light of the world. But Apophis, albeit the antithesis to Ra, was never more powerful. He simply counterbalanced the serpent Mehen (“the coiled one”) who was the protector of the sun god Ra, assisting him on his journey through the realm of night to be reborn every morning.²² And as you find in many cultures and religions, the powers of darkness are thwarted by the power of good. As Satan is to God, so Apophis is to Ra, with minor alterations to the functionality.

It has been said time and again that the ancient Egyptians were utterly preoccupied with death—at least the royal family’s, as far as can be seen. Their entire lives, especially when a seated Pharaoh, were consumed with the afterlife and the resurrection. There is an interesting entry in the Pyramid Texts, the funerary papyri of ancient Egypt. In these documents is listed something for which there is very little explanation: the “snake game,”²³ presumably a test of sorts, played out in the afterlife when a Pharaoh died—a game he has to win. How interesting a tie to modern Christianity would that be!? The notion of an Egyptian judgment, test, or fist-a-cuff in order to enter the beautiful wonders of the afterlife seem a colloquial version of a much greater religious prime.



The Gadsen Flag: “Don’t Tread on Me.” Image copyright of the author.

Don't Tread on Me

Being an American and a citizen of the United States, I cannot overlook the serpent symbolism in some of my country's own iconography, continuing a long tradition of the snake making its appearance in the cultures of humanity. The Gadsen Flag, commonly recognized as the yellow "Don't Tread on Me" banner, emblazoned with the coiled rattlesnake, was named after Christopher Gadsen, a colonial general and statesman. Benjamin Franklin wrote of the rattlesnake as a symbol for American vigilance:

I recollect that her eye excelled in brightness, that of any other animal, and that she has no eye-lids—She may therefore be esteemed an emblem of vigilance. She never begins an attack, nor, when once engaged, ever surrenders: She is therefore an emblem of magnanimity and true courage.—As if anxious to prevent all pretensions of quarreling with her, the weapons with which nature has furnished her, she conceals in the roof of her mouth, so that, to those who are unacquainted with her, she appears to be a most defenseless animal; and even when those weapons are shewn and extended for her defense, they appear weak and contemptible; but their wounds however small, are decisive and fatal:—Conscious of this, she never wounds till she has generously given notice, even to her enemy, and cautioned him against the danger of stepping on her.—Was I wrong, Sir, in thinking this a strong picture of the temper and conduct of America?²⁴

The serpent has always been associated with strength and influence, despite its dualism as both a creature to be feared and revered. It can be asserted, however, that given such overwhelming evidence from texts and inscriptions, the ultimate duality in nature and perception of the serpent was illustrated by the need to have the serpent demonstrably enact both supreme goodness as well as ultimate evil among the ancient Egyptians, and that serpent imagery was incontrovertibly associated with the afterlife, resurrection, and eternity, as with so many other serpents in so many other religions and cultures.

PART II
The Serpent in Alien Subculture

Chapter Four

The Reptoids...Reptilians—No, Wait...Reptilian-Humanoids

As you have seen, the key to understanding the connectivity of the serpent to Reptilian/alien mythos is completely predicated on having an understanding of how the serpent's role became so important in human history—more specifically, to people, themselves. Believe what you will about spirituality, religion, science, or anthropology, the serpent figure has played prominently in the lore of ancient theory, and has become the rock star of current alien conspiratorial thought, the theory itself becoming the “mother ship” for all the varied, extraneously divergent sub-theories making the rounds in the circles of the ufological faithful. Make no mistake: The secret history of the Reptilians is as much a manufactured “religion” as are the snake and dragon cults from the depths of our anthropological past. That does not mean they do not exist in some form. If that was the final conclusion, this book would end right here.

The Bacilica of Reptilica

Gnosticism will tell you that the truest sense of theology is psychology. I would add anthropology to that mix—and that claims made about God or gods, are in their truest sense, actually only projections of humanity, the reflections of who we deem ourselves to be. After all, religion is humankind’s attempt to fill the god-shaped vacuum that exists in the human mind and heart, creating and re-creating God in the form that we need Him to be; religion, of course, being something completely different than spirituality—certainly on the same chart, just a different emphasis. We project and extrapolate our needs onto what we think God should be, and—*viola!*—we have religion.

What is all this talk about religion doing in a section of the book that is supposed to be about Reptilian/alien subculture, one might ask? Intrinsically, it is because they are the *very same thing*. Humans have some deep primordial, psychological, physiological wiring that makes us want to know more about who we are and where we come from and where we are

supposed to go from there. Human beings have an innate need to know our roots, and discover the reasons we are what we are and why we do what we do, but then we incorporate our innate creativity to construct the landscape around us. We can take the minutest of causality and convert that to consequence, and in so doing, we may find ourselves constructing a psychological fortress that will house and protect the way we conceive our universe and interact with our surroundings. So let's take a brief jaunt into the psychology of the need for God and aliens and everything else in between. Those base needs sprout from the human psyche.

To get some grasp of why the mind works the way it does in regard to these matters of mythology, let's take a simple look to the “fathers” of modern psychology: Sigmund Freud and Alfred Adler.

Freud, although a pioneer in his field—some of whose ideas have been left behind as we learn more and more about how the mind operates—focused his research on the unconscious/subconscious mind and how it juggles innate biological motives that are hardwired into human physiology, alongside the brain’s ability to produce irrational thinking. Repressed, early memories were at the root of what Freud was looking for, and he referred to his methods as *depth psychology*, a going back to our roots to see what we’re made of and why we operate the way we do in the current. We hear so much about modes of operation and family systems when we are trying to root out the origins of behaviors, which ultimately was fleshed out for the first time with Freud’s research. This brand of looking-to-the-past-psychology *can* be applied corporately (to a group), but Freud was much more interested in how the *individual* formed these modes prior to cognitive awareness.

On the other hand, common sense and conscious behavior were the focus of Adler’s research, leading him to emphasize what he called *surface* or *context psychology*. He believed that cognitive social motives and intimate social interactions were what drove behaviors in people, and he was aptly dubbed the father of ego and humanistic psychology. His work in cognitive and family therapy led him to the conclusion that it was the interactive social structure between people¹—especially family members—that was the primary motivation for human behavior. The goal for Adler’s form of therapy was to focus on a form of daily living experience that made social interaction the primary focus.

Freud, generally speaking, filtered his view of human nature through a pessimistic view of the things that govern behavioral outcomes. He adhered to a Darwinian/Hobbesian philosophy, which basically states that man in the state of nature, according to Hobbes, has no idea of moral goodness, and therefore must be naturally wicked; he is vicious because he does not know virtue. Throw a little “survival of the fittest” into the mix, and you have the rudimentary basics of Darwinian-Hobbesian Theory. (Hold on, psychologists; I’m going somewhere with all of this.)

Adler had a much more optimistic approach to the foundations of cognitive behavior, following a more or less Rousseau-ian/Humanistic philosophy, which espoused that human nature is innately good, and that society, our surrounding, and environment are the corrupting force that transforms man into self-interested/self-actualizing people.

The first man who, having fenced in a piece of land, said “This is mine,” and found people naïve enough to believe him, that man was the true founder of civil society. From how many crimes, wars, and murders, from how many horrors and misfortunes might not any one have saved mankind, by pulling up the stakes, or filling up the ditch, and crying to his fellows: Beware of listening to this impostor; you are undone if you once forget that the fruits of the earth belong to us all, and the earth itself to nobody.

—Jean Jacques Rousseau, *Discourse on Inequality*, 1754

Sense of self, Freud contended, was determined by what was passed on to you from your parents, immediate family, and social externals, such as the environmental factors of familial relations, parenting, and social interactivity that took place when we were infants and small children—as well as decisive, life-altering experiences as we grow older. We are not only influenced, but governed and manipulated by our past experiences, so in getting to the roots of who you really are and why you act in certain methods and modes of operation, you have to return to your foundations and the starting points that launched certain lifelong behaviors. Freud promoted the retracing of your steps to see where you came from, the influences of that past, and how you’ve gotten to where you are in the current. Your personality and present modes of operation are, therefore, determined by your earlier environmental influences.

Adler believed that people are absolute free agents with the will to determine their own personality via their own cognitive choices and reliance on their own innate creative selves. If you want to know who you truly are and why you are doing what you're doing, *in the now*, look *ahead*, and consciously move yourself forward toward what you have determined you want to be. When you focus on your future goals and ambitions, you align your personality with what it is you want to become and achieve. Freud, conversely, endorsed something called *efficient causality*—those experiences that push us forward from behind, making us what we are in the present.

“We do not have knowledge of a thing,” purported Aristotle, “until we have grasped its why, that is to say, its cause.”²

In stark contrast, Adler, much like Freud’s early associate Karl Jung, advocated *final causality*, that which pulls us forward, from that which we determine lies ahead. The difference in causalities is the source: either influence from the past (of which we have no control) or influence from the future, or that which we create and ultimately control by our cognitive actions.

Adlerian philosophy observed that, on an innate level, human beings *feel inferior* and that these feelings of inferiority—or, better, a sense of feeling lost in an infinite world and universe—are the motivating force, the fire in the belly, the drive behind all personal striving for accomplishment and attainment of personal goals. In a sense, we start with absolutely nothing—perhaps even a deep insignificance in our own estimation—and we work our way up to what we *choose* to become, persistently building upon each successive failure and accomplishment. We *strive for excellence*—superiority, if you will—in order to compensate for the deeply innate feelings of inferiority. These are the things that push us to be better and to strive for being the very best we can be. This isn’t about seeking superiority over others; it is about expressing and actualizing the drive toward perfecting ourselves. Eventually Adler expanded this idea of striving for the *ideal self* to striving to create a superior or perfect society to go along with it, and that our creative self is free to make up any sort of world it envisions and puts into implementation. This, however, was in contrast to German psychoanalyst Karen Horney, a contemporary of both Freud and Adler, who pushed her idea that humans don’t strive for superiority; they strive for a

self image built out of *idealism*. People don't believe their real self is acceptable, so, out of necessity and psychological survival, we create—out of whole cloth—an *idolized* self—the thing we think we *should* be.³

Do you see where this is going?

The entire notion of a race of Reptilians may be simply explained as a thing we've *devised from our own imaginations*. Just as we have devised religions built on spiritual experience and theory, we have done the very same thing with the notion of extraterrestrial races that live and operate behind the scenes of humanity. Just as with religion, there are things we call "evidences," yet no solid, empirical facts to back the claims, with the exception of historical studies and research that reveals a past history rife with nothing more than myth building within myth building within myth building. Simply go to your computer and type in the word "reptilians" (as I just did), and you will find more than 1,630,000 entries, and in the top 10 sites that appear in the list, half of them take you to something written by or based on the work of Zechariah Sitchin and David Icke, a self-proclaimed messiah, and the rest start off with phrases such as the following:

"Reptilians (also called reptoids, reptiloids, or draconians) are purported reptilian humanoids that play a prominent role in science fiction...."⁴

"Description: Typically, Reptilians are described as 6 to 8 feet tall, bipedal, having scaly green skin, have a bad odor, have large eyes usually yellow or gold with...."⁵

"The Reptilian Aliens which are called Reptoids are proportional in size to modern humans. They have a snake like or lizard appearance...."⁶

"I'm not claiming these people weren't 100% human at one time, what I am saying is that they invited the control and bodily takeover of Reptilians through blood...."⁷

"The teachings of the reptilian Ea, thereafter referred to as the esoteric mysticism of the snake brotherhood, caused a major shift in the perceptions of reality for...."⁸

"The Reptilians are the creation of the Carians, their parent race. They evolved on a planet...."⁹

“David Icke - The Reptilians - the Schism - Obama and the New World Order...Reptilian Experiencer and Author ‘Susan Reed’ Found Dead in the Bahamas....”¹⁰

“Alex Collier - On Reptilians - ETs and The Global Connection. - Alex Collier - On...Cosmic Explorers - Different Reptilian Factions on Earth. - Credo Mutwa On....”¹¹

“Reptilian influence comes via Satanism which they created, and that controls Freemasonry (Phil Schneider found that the UN was run by tall grey aliens)....”¹²

At this point it may seem as if I am completely trashing and thrashing the Reptilian theory. In fact, I am doing nothing of the sort. In order to find what can withstand scrutiny and the boiling off of the dross, it is necessary to apply the “small s” skepticism of questioning everything— but not to point of offhandedly dismissing all. That’s the job of “big S” Skeptics such as Michael Shermer, who sustains his income in much the same way as the paranormalists, ufologists, and weird-o-logians he decries. If you can’t trust a researcher of the paranormal because they make money off of books, events, and TV, you certainly can’t trust those who do the same thing on the other side of the philosophical fence, for the same reasons.

I have found that there are “small s” skeptics and “big S” Skeptics. I and many other like-minded philosophers are in the “small s” camp; we approach things with an open, yet questioning mind. We want to *know* the answers, but we do not do what the “big S” Skeptics do, and that is to dismiss questioning and make empirical statements such as “No it isn’t”; “No it doesn’t”; “You’re completely wrong” without application of research, even if it’s a fringe element. “Big S” Skepticism has (as has science, in many degrees), in proclaiming themselves better, more knowledgeable, or possessing of keener reason and more erudite insight, become the surrogate for religion, faith, and any train of thought outside what they deem as acceptable science or mainstream thinking. In a very real sense, Skepticism and science have established themselves as the “new religion,” especially when they spend so much time decrying, and so little time researching the questions that fall outside established academia. The New Absolutism is that there are no absolutes.

Bringing this back to the psychological, it is clear that the human psyche is comprised of both the Freudian and Adlerian modes of primary expressions of the psyche: We humans have both the need to look to our pasts to determine where we came from, and the need to allow our future aspirations to pull us forward. Out of both, we create our present realities and live within the frameworks we compose for ourselves. Does this, then, bring to utter discredit the theory of alien interaction with human beings? Does it dismiss the completely the notion that there are races of extraterrestrial (ETs), interterrestrial (ITs), and ultraterrestrial (UTs) dwelling among us and influencing activity on this planet? Not necessarily. Just as I cannot dismiss the existence of God or the veracity of ancient religions on the simple notion that they are not quantifiable by the scientific method, I cannot dismiss the possibility that we have been visited by beings outside the realm of our sciences or understanding. This is where intelligent discussions on these matters collide as opposing, approaching trains on the same track.

“Oy!” you say, “Psychology! Religion! God! Mythology! When are you going to give us the aliens?” Hang on, folks; they’re comin’.

The proofs and evidences that exist to substantiate a factual claim that a Reptilian race exists and operates on this planet are as evasive as the proofs and evidences required to prove the existence and work of God in humanity or the existence of ghosts of dead people materializing at midnight on the third full moon of every year. In short, there is no solid proof beyond personal experience and anecdotal evidence. Has that lack of measurable quantifiability prevented humanity from its historical, perpetual worship of God, gods, and other forms of divinities? Not in the least. As with religion, Reptilian/alien theory has its experiencers, such as the one mentioned in the opening of the introduction of this book, but they become the promulgators of personal, individual contact and intercourse (not limited to a sexual understanding) that have seen the unseen, spoken with the invisible, and learned the secret knowledges not known to others. These are the founders of “religious thought” in the alien field. I don’t say this to cast any sort of negative light on their claims; I merely make the comparison to the spread of ancient religion and the evolution of religious thought within the alien culture. Just as Elil became Elohim, and Enki/Ea became Jehovah, so the progression of Reptilian esoterica has developed into its current state. The evangelists of the theory are as convinced in their perceptions and

evidences as are the professors and theologians in different trains of religious thought, who many times are found to overlap the two fields. And why do they do that? Because the two fields are all one-in-same; they are outward expressions of inner desires—projections of what we want the world to be. That can be placed squarely on the shoulders of both religion and alienist trains of thinking in that they both hail to the spiritual make-up of the human psyche, those parts of the spiritual composition of individuals that need something to answer the greater questions of what lay beyond the explorable sciences.

Insert caveat here: Just because science and psychology seem to indicate that these things might not be so, does not qualify as the final answer on the topic. Remember: There exist some veils that we simply cannot pierce.

“Professing themselves to be wise, they became fools.”

(Romans 1:22)

Where is the wise man? Where is the scholar? Where is the philosopher of this age? Has not God made foolish the wisdom of the world?

(1 Corinthians 1:20)

Everyone is senseless and without knowledge; every goldsmith is shamed by his idols. His images are a fraud; they have no breath in them.

(Jeremiah 10:14)

How can you say, “We are wise, for we have the law of the LORD,” when actually the lying pen of the scribes has handled it falsely?

(Jeremiah 8:8)

My Reptile Can Kick Your Lizard’s Ass

As we have seen, the archetypical serpent of ancient religion is certainly not the end of the story. The veneration of the snake in the ancient religious cultures of Sumer and Israel, China, Africa, and the ancient Americas is not where the influence of the serpent figure comes to a screeching halt. The presence of the serpent is not limited to the ancient religions of the world, though those religious/cultural mythologies are the philosophical foundations for ongoing reptilian mythologies. The psychology of needing or wanting something greater, built on human need for something to

eliminate the foundational struggles of the past, has created some short coattails on which ride the current Reptilian and alien mythologies.



Author's rendition of the classic Reptilian. Image copyright of the author.

And perhaps this is the direct result of a humanity that wants something more than the traditional tales and entrenched religions. People are seeking for something more, so they create what they need and what they want to be. This, however, does not diminish the possibility that these notions have great efficacy, archaeologically, historically, cosmologically, and philosophically.

Our historical folklore is filled with imagery of the serpent reptile, ranging from science fiction and fantasy, to religious legends and modern conspiracy theories, ufology, and alien mythos to mysterious cryptozoological beings. The Reptilians, as we have come to understand them in current-day mythology, can be found firmly ensconced in alien,

otherworldly, and hollow earth lore as well as the theories of a race of intelligent, supernatural, inter-dimensional, highly developed reptile-like humanoids. They have become the stuffs of cult fiction, pseudoscientific theories, and the topics of the writings of New Age conspiracists.

David Icke, Riley Martin, and John Rhodes, stand out among the most recognizable claimants promoting the Reptilian existence and conspiracies, and though there are similarities to their versions of these beings, they also represent vastly differing theories as to their origins and interactions with the planet earth and the human race. None of them is anything less than malevolent. Martin's book, *The Coming of Tan*, is a memoir of his experiences as a sharecropper's kid who was taken on board an alien spacecraft. In his book he claims to have a personal knowledge of a race of Reptilians known as the Targzissians, an evil race of Reptilians who manage to coexist with six other types of aliens on a mother ship near Saturn.

On his [tumblr.com](#) profile, Rhodes says of his himself and his work: "My name is John Rhodes and I am a researcher, explorer and lecturer in the realms of ufology, occulted archaeology and metaphysics. In this report, I will be providing you with compelling evidence, gathered over many years of research, as to our genealogical connections with the overlord reptilian alien race and the occulted historical archaeology that clearly demonstrates that these reptilian beings have coexisted on this planet Earth with us for thousands of years prior to our current era."¹³

David Icke speaks of good and bad Reptilians fighting it out for domination of the Earth while clothed in cloned human skin, mostly infiltrating the royal families of Europe. (We will focus a bit on Icke in [Chapter 7](#).)

Reptoids is a descriptive manufactured word defining Reptilian-Humanoid beings. It is the most culturally popular name used to describe these extraterrestrial beings, although they are also referenced as dinosauroids,¹⁴ or lizardfolk or lizardmen (both *Dungeons and Dragons* terms, for you gamers out there). Other names include Draconians,¹⁵ which draw their name from the many proponents of the Draconian constellation as the point of origin for these otherworldly visitors, as well as Saurians and the hypothetical Dinoauroids.¹⁶ Although you may seek out other source points, they are generally found referenced by name in the plethora of

Internet sites that neither state source material nor point of origin, yet are found repeated over and over again into the countless hundreds of thousands. In these accountings the Reptilians are often described as having soft, scaly skin that is green or golden-brown in color. Yet, despite their similarity to Reptilian archetypes throughout mythology, no one has produced even a modicum of proof of the existence of Reptilian-Humanoids, and allegations of their existence can at best be referred to as crypto-zoological or pseudoscientific as opposed to a recorded genus or species.

Dale Russell, a Canadian-born geologist and paleontologist, was the first to purport an extraterrestrial theory as to the extinction of the dinosaurs in the form of an asteroid collision or supernova.¹⁷ He is also invented what became the highly controversial “Dinosauroid Thought Experiment,” a process that incorporates the employing of imaginary situations to help us understand the way things really are, or in other words, a hypothetical imagining of what could be if certain criteria had happened. This thought experiment resulted in his highly controversial, previously mentioned Dinosauroid.

Reptilians and the claims to their existence are nothing new. They are not simply the product of the mid-20th-century ufological explosion, nor are they a science fiction invention of Hollywood, however well-capitalized they might be in that market, with movies such as *The Alligator People* (1959), *Enemy Mine* (1985), *Conan the Barbarian* (1982), *Krull* (1983), *V—the Miniseries* (1984), the *Star Trek* franchise, and the list goes on. Experiencers, contactees, and abductees have, for centuries, made claims that they have been in contact with Reptilian peoples, yet there still exists no substantive proof beyond the stuffs of anecdotal evidences and personal experience as to just who the Reptilians are and where they actually come from, if indeed they exist as a race at all. Arguments have been made that Reptilians are Earth-evolved beings that expanded out into the cosmos long ago, and others will conversely argue that they came here from the aptly named constellation of Draco, hence the “Draconian” moniker.

According to proponents of the Reptilian theory, there has been enough information derived from the many contactee and experiencer reports and stories as to build a formidable trove of information about these beings. As a result, the Reptilian conspiracy *believers* emphatically insist they are in a

position to *deliver the truth* behind the origins of the Reptilian aliens, revealing precisely who these beings are and exactly what is behind their hidden agenda. Those unwilling to listen and heed the warnings will be doomed to fall under the influence and enslavement of the Reptilians.

After researching copious amounts of information on the origins of these Draconian Reptilians, I was able to boil down the varying stories, hypotheses, and myriad personal accounts into an acceptable amalgam that bears all the elements of the following:

The Reptilians evolved on two separate planets, one being Earth and the other a planet near Draconis, the brightest star in the aptly named serpentine-shaped constellation of Draco (Latin for “Dragon”). “Draco” is circumpolar—that is, never setting—for many observers in the northern hemisphere’s night sky. It was one of the 48 constellations listed by second-century astronomer Ptolemy and remains one of the 88 modern constellations today. From these two vastly distant planets of origin, two distinctly different races of Reptilian would evolve and help shape our planet and civilization as we know it today.

As the two Reptilian races evolved, it was known to the Draconian Reptilians, an evil spirited, warrior species, manipulative and deceitful in nature, that the Earthly Reptoids were a peaceful, good-hearted race. The Draconians were so evolved that, like the Arcturians, they surpassed the physical limitations of their material bodies, eschewing—despite their evil nature—their carnivorous need to eat and digest solid foods, developing the ability to ingest their nutrients through pure energy alone. The only problem was that their required energy food source was bad, evil energy. Accordingly, in order to survive, the Draconians must ingest pure evil energy, and it is this fact alone that turns simple self-preservation for the Draconians into an evil agenda.

In order to survive, the Draconian Reptilians are also rumored to have created the race that we have come to know as the Alien Greys as their slave race cloned as a source for nutrition. As the Draconian civilization continued to grow and expand, however, there was wrench in the gears, for as the

Reptilians grew in numbers, so did their slave race of Greys. Soon the Greys, weary of being drained of their negative energy by the evil race of overlords, revolted, resulting in their freedom from the consumptive bondage of their creators, the Draconian Reptilians. They left their captors and, apparently, continued on with their own agenda.

But now, bereft of their evil-energized clone slave race, the Draconians desperately needed new sources of nutrition. So they set out in their mighty but evil fleet of starships, seeking other planets that had populations on which they could feed. But, of course, the energy of those populations had to be comprised of bad and evil energy, so the search for the right planet was painstaking and long. One can only assume the cannibalism that must've taken place during those long generations of space travel, furtively seeking a source of food.

One day, the fleet was all abuzz, for a new source of energy consumption had been located! The Draconians had stumbled across the planet Earth. Their discovery of Earth is difficult to reconcile with the fact that they seemed, by various accounts, to already know that the Reptoids of Earth were benevolent and good-spirited, and that represents one of the many gaping cracks in the narrative. As the story goes, it was here they observed the highly advanced, yet peaceful race of Reptilian-like aliens known as Reptoids. But far more important to the Draconians were the human beings indigenous to Earth. They set a plan in motion to utilize the human population on Earth as the source for their evil energy nutrition. They first needed to eliminate and remove the Earth-evolved Reptoids in order to launch their Reptilian Agenda and manipulate a race of evil-minded humans for their energy consumption.

At this point, there are gaps in the storyline, but after successfully forcing most of the Reptoids to leave the Earth, Draconian Reptilians began to work their way into and influence the civilizations of Earth's ancient past. Rumored reports state that some Earth-evolved Reptoids still exist beneath the streets and farms of our planet, and within the

subterranean caverns of the Earth, secretly operating as freedom fighters for the human population of Earth, countering the Draconian Reptilian Alien agenda.

Today, power struggles among the Alien forces have thwarted an outright invasion of our planet. Reptilian Aliens from the Draco Constellation still have a fixed eye on our planet and have emissaries here on Earth performing the vital tasks to ensure that humans remain on the track of corruption, hatred, and egocentric goals. The more evil, the more food.

Now, pull this leg and it plays “Jingle Bells.”

I honestly did not know, after reading several sources on the Draconian story, whether to laugh uncontrollably or simply shake my head slowly from side to side. And you thought the story of the Garden of Eden seemed implausible.

After dissecting the various stories and myriad accounts of the so-called Reptilian Agenda, the preceding story was what emerged. Granted, some of the versions I encountered were meticulously well-written, providing “research notes” (mostly citing Sitchin, Icke, and others) and eloquent narrative. Others read like a fifth-grade essay project, but for the most part, they all said, pretty much, the same thing—reading like the script to a poorly conceived, made-for-television, B-grade science-fiction thriller with even poorer CGI. If you want a weekend’s worth of good entertainment, simply conduct an Internet search on the “Reptilians,” then start reading the various versions of where they came from, how they got here, and what they’re up to. Then note, as you read, the absolute lack of source material and references, and you become as frustrated as I was attempting to locate any accounts that bore even a modicum of presented fact beyond the individual author’s *feelings* and ungrounded, unsubstantiated storytelling (and in most cases, not even good storytelling).

In short, if these accounts were all we had to go on, I would think it would be pretty easy to chalk this all up to overactive imaginations and erstwhile yet sloppy interpretations of personal experiences set against an even looser grasp of history and the anthropology of myth.

Hitting Below Orion’s Belt

“There are good reasons to assume the man does not experience his fellowman as a member of the same species.... For him different language, customs, dress and other criteria perceived by the mind rather than by instincts determine who is a co-specific and who is not, and any group which is slightly different is not supposed to share in the same humanity... precisely because he lacks instinctive equipment, also lacks the experience of the identity of his species and experiences the stranger as if he belonged to another species; in other words, it's man's humanity that makes him so inhuman.”

—Erich Fromm

The fact that there are so many stories and theories attempting to establish the existence of extraterrestrial and intraterrestrial Reptilians on this planet speaks to one of two things:

1. Extraterrestrial Reptilians actually exist and interact with humanity based on the over-abundance of stories and experiential accounts.
2. The over-abundance of stories provides a distinct picture of how “believers” in certain phenomena attempt to establish their case, while presenting absolutely no quantifiable evidence, thus contributing to an ever-increasing cache of unsubstantiated stories and information.

In other words, there's a lot of information out there that is the product of over-worked imaginations based on the supposed scholarly presentations of a very small handful of researchers.

It's like the existence of God and the hundreds of religions that have sprouted from that one particular idea: Everyone starts with the root concept and either mimics what has been taught, or builds their own offshoot denomination or religion. In recent years I have read more accounts of the Reptilians on the Internet that are precise, repetitive, word-for-word copies of theories presented by Zechariah Sitchin, David Icke, and others of like-mind, whom I would refer to as founders of the contemporary thinking on the Reptilian Theory, that I believe there are very few original thoughts or unique research out there. Most of these accounts are presented without any reference to their source material, nor any evidences or proofs establishing

their cases, but contain the very same language, parroting the information presented by one or two major proponents.

Despite believing that there is something that has interfered with and interrupted the bloodlines of humanity, I tend toward the latter, above, in that there seems to be an awful lot of scrambling to make a story fit the preconceived notion, as opposed to empirical data to substantiate the claim. And there exists a completely different take on the entire notion of extraterrestrial life making contact with the human race. The astrobiologists and exo-biologists who study life as it may or may not exist on other planets have a daunting task at their fingertips. Though we have not even mastered the intricacies of human life and other forms of life on *this* planet, the study of places billions of light years from where we exist is theoretical at best, impossible at worst, yet we still engage in the study and research, all because we want to have some idea of what is out there—and speculate on whether or not *what is out there* may know anything about *us*. On top of that, to even suggest that there might be life out there that is similar if not more advanced than life on Earth is still met with general ridicule and eye-rolling scoffs. To some who criticize, the notion flies in the face of reason and/or religion. To others, it is simply an irrelevancy that when stacked against the tumultuous intricacies of life on this planet, let alone within local governments, politics, poverty, war, communities, and even families, is completely without meaning. If we can't figure things out *here*, then how are we supposed to try to connect with something that exists in a place beyond the stars, so out-of-context and out-of-reach to us humans? "If they exist, why don't they just fly their little starship space saucers over and say 'Hi!'" is the arrogant response, and "If they had that technology, why would they want to come *here*?" is the answer for those who believe that our understanding of science is the unit by which we measure the dimensions of the greater galaxy and universe. Perhaps, for extraterrestrial life, contact with our species is as risky to them as Fromm suggests in the quote here, defined by humanity's intolerance to his fellow man.

I am as dichotomous on the subject of extraterrestrial contact as I am on the idea of God. To evangelicals, I am a heretic and a reprobate—a back-slidden blasphemer who has abandoned the true faith. To the atheist, I am a Bible-thumping, Word-of-God preaching, Christian apologist. And that is because I am decisively middle of the road in that I accept the unprovable

possibility that there is a God, but I have deeply rooted questions and doubts, and seek better answers than the regurgitated pap offered up in most churches.

I have the very same dichotomous approach when it comes to my stance on ancient alien theory and the existence of Reptilians and Greys: I want to see the evidence that doesn't force my hand to squeeze the square peg into the round hole. Yet, based on my multicultural religious studies, I have very little doubt that this planet has been visited by non-human intelligences. Call them gods, devils, angels, demons, or extraterrestrials, it's not even a stretch for me to believe that in the vastness of the outward moving, ever-expanding universe there are not races intelligent and advanced enough to have come to this place and possibly even still live here, as colloquial and local as that may seem. After all, ancient myth combined with historical documentation, film footage, experiencer and abduction cases, leaked government information, and numerous other data speak loudly to their existence. The bigger questions for me, as with many who have come before me, are: "Who are the main players?"; "How do we fit into the scheme?"; "After we know these things, where will that take us?"

The entire history of the alien mythos repeatedly asserts the existence of many different types of alien beings present on this planet today. Anecdotally speaking, even I am only one step removed from a dear, old friend who encountered and became intimately involved with a mysterious man who reported that he worked for a facility in New Mexico that sank dozens of stories under the ground, headquartering several dozens of alien species that live and interact on this planet. According to this shadowy character, these alien races have been restricted from any interference with human beings or their affairs, at least in the greater sense. But if this is true, why are we seeing an ever-increasingly number of experiencers and abductees repeatedly describing only two distinct types of intelligent life forms with whom they've interacted (the Greys and the Reptilians)? And why is it that *they* seem to have exclusive rights of interference with humans? If interaction between these beings and our own species has been occurring throughout history, as legend and myth could seem to indicate, then where is the substantive evidence as to their existence? Where are they from, and what is their business with, or interest in, us?

I am firmly convinced that the contact we have experienced with non-human entities is inextricably linked to the mythologies of the ancients and

that the contact we may be experiencing today has not only a metaphysical connection to the past, but a physical one as well.

The legacy of the ancient serpent has become the modern history of the Reptilian connection. Is there any substantive reality to it, or is it all simply the extrapolation of ancient mythology into the current age, all driven by the *need* to have something more?

PART III
The Serpent's Bloodline

Chapter Five

The Remnant of the Nephilim

¹When mankind began to multiply on the earth and daughters were born to them, ²the sons of God saw that the daughters of mankind were beautiful, and they took any they chose as wives for themselves. ³And the Lord said, “My Spirit will not remain with mankind forever, because they are corrupt. Their days will be 120 years.”

⁴The Nephilim were on the earth both in those days and afterward, when the sons of God came to the daughters of mankind, who bore children to them. They were the powerful men of old, the famous men. (Genesis 6:1–4)

It's a very familiar story to you by now. The Elohim came to the earth, according to the Old Testament's Book of Genesis and the apocryphal book of Enoch, and intermingled with humans. They chose women, cohabited with them, married them, impregnated them, and produced offspring: the hybrid race of Nephilim, the children of those Elohim who had left their place and come down. Prior to those events, one of the Elohim, forever known as the Serpent character, Nachash, had an intimate encounter with Eve in the Garden of Eden, revealing forbidden knowledge and impregnating her with his seed, producing the very first of the human-Elohim crossbred Nephilim, Cain. According to the religions wrapped around the events of the Book of Genesis, the consequence of this activity was the fall of humanity from the grace of God, spiritually ushering in the need for a system of blood redemption and a savior who would be their Messiah—the kinsman redeemer. The God of the Hebrews cursed the Elohim, Nachash, prophesying perpetual conflict between his offspring and the offspring of the human woman, Eve, who was the mother of all humanity. What followed in the biblical record were lengthy cataloguings of the descendants of Adam—which, we have noted, did not include Eve's firstborn twin son, Cain, as he was the child of Nachash of the Elohim. This genealogical record was set in place to establish the “pure” human

bloodline from which the kinsman redeemer was to come. What is glaringly left out of the biblical accounting, though, is the line of Nachash. We read that Cain was banished from Eden after murdering his younger twin brother, Abel. Exiled from Eden, Cain left behind the only two other people mentioned in the Bible as being on the earth at that time: Adam and Eve. He went out into a world void of inhabitants and civilization, east to the Land of Nod. Once there, the passage tells us that he made love to his wife (of course—what else would you do after being banished from the only place on earth?), whom he either brought with him from Eden—meaning she was one of his sisters not named in the account of the first family—or a woman he met in his wanderings. She, in turn, bore him a son, whom Cain named Enoch.

And there in the Land of Nod, Cain built a city, most likely a wooden enclosure around a few huts, in honor of his new son, and named the city after him, Enoch. Of the subsequent history of this little city we know very little, but of the name of the city we know a very great deal. Without entering into too much detail regarding changes in pronunciation that occur in the course of the development of a language, it seems necessary to point out here that the sound represented by the letter N is often reproduced as an R. The CH sound that terminates the name *Enoch* may be replaced by a K or G, or a GH sound. These sorts of linguistic changes are very common in ancient tongues, and in relation to biblical city mounds, or tells, the people living around these cities kept the name places fairly intact throughout the passage of millennia. This revealed a very important city in antiquity that appeared under the name *Uruk*, and a study of cuneiform soon revealed that this could equally well be pronounced *Unuk*, which was recognized as identical with the biblical word *Enoch*.¹

What is more interesting is that the name Uruk/Unuk became synonymous with the word *city*, and not simply a mere city, but a city of great historical importance. The word in its raw form actually means, “the First City.”

Nod [נוֹד] is the Hebrew root of the verb “to wander” [לְנַדּוּ] and is obviously an etymological causation intended to explain the wandering, nomadic lifestyle of Cain and his future putative descendants, the Kenites. This sort of play on words is typical of rabbinic writings and suggests that this is a later scribal interpretation, which was more than likely inserted to

suggest that Cain's descendants were without territory—in other words, nomadic. Additionally, the Hebrew language did not exist prior to the time of Abraham, who lived some 4,000 years after the time of Cain. The language Cain and his descendants would have spoken was probably a Nilotic/Kushitic language closer to Old Arabic (Dedanite). So, although Cain built the first city, his descendants were forever known as wanderers, those without home, territory, or place to exist. And these were the offspring of Nachash.

It is interesting to note that, though the Nephilim mentioned in Genesis 6 are offspring of the Sons of God, the bene ha 'Elohim, they are not the children of the serpent. Nachash was not their father. So the Nephilim of Genesis 6 are not the "serpent seed," though it is quite possible that the descendants of Cain had grown large enough to be part of the hybrid race of Nephilim that had encompassed all of the known earth, corrupting the bloodlines of humanity up until the time of Noah. There is no direct information on this point of detail, though it can be extrapolated from the rest of the information that this is probably so.

The Serpent Seed Doctrine

So many times and in so many ways, current Christianity operates under presumptions that the text from which they pull their doctrine has been accurately translated, or presents a factual accounting of what they think they are understanding. Never is this truer than when fundamental Christianity takes dogmatic stances on the person and character of Lucifer/Satan/the devil, as well as the passages used to substantiate his presence in the Bible and in important doctrine-establishing passages of scripture. The lack of careful examination of the biblical text about the Serpent Seed Doctrine reveals a complete misunderstanding of the figure of Satan. The biblical passages that are forced to support the theory that Satan is a fallen angel is a tragic theological conundrum in the churches of modern Christianity, because the result is a complete misunderstanding of several applied biblical passages, the result of which has created a corrupt doctrine that perpetuates a complete error about the creature known as Satan.

When YHWH (Yahweh/Jehovah), the Mighty-One, revealed Himself to Moses and had Moses write the Hebrew Torah (also known as the Pentateuch, the first five books of the Bible), there was not one single

mention of an evil angel named Satan, or a plurality of evil angels—or, for that matter, *any* being that could tempt you in your mind to transgress the law of God. In fact the main point of the Torah is to proclaim that there is only one Mighty-One, and that one Mighty-One is YHWH (Yahweh/Jehovah). In Exodus 20:2–3 we find these words:

²“I am YHWH (Yahweh) your Mighty-One, which has brought you out of the land of Egypt, out of the house of bondage. ³You shall have no other mighty one before Me.”

Deuteronomy 4:35–36 says:

³⁵Unto you it was shown, that you might know that YHWH (Yahweh), ³⁶He is the Almighty, there is none else beside Him. Know therefore this day, and consider it in your mind, that YHWH (Yahweh/Jehovah) He is the Almighty in heaven above and upon earth beneath: there is none else” (author’s emphasis).

The first point to understanding this Serpent Seed Doctrine, is to understand that it is generally looked down upon as an heretical doctrine by those who claim to have the truth of God’s Word” on their side. Before we say a single word about the doctrine itself, it is important to note that we are looking at it from a “religion-spin-free zone”—from a point of view that sees such statements as “Let’s look at this from the perspective of one and only true word of God” as being thickly entrenched in religion-making and religion-keeping, as opposed to fact-finding.

If you wonder what the Serpent Seed Doctrine is, well, you actually already know, if you have read this book up to this point. The Serpent Seed, Dual Seed, or Two-Seedline is a controversial doctrine according to which the Serpent in the Garden of Eden mated with Eve, and the offspring of their sexual union was Cain, thereby bequeathing a bloodline that threads throughout humanity. Bingo. There it is.

The reaction in fundamentalist Christian circles is *What!? Eve mated with Satan and bore the devil’s child?! And there is a line of descendancy? Impossible. Not in my Bible!* But you have to disavow yourself of contemporary notions and fictions such as the idea behind *Rosemary’s Baby* or such other works when attempting to understand these concepts. **Nachash was not Satan. He was not the devil.** He may not have even been Lucifer, despite the later works in the Bible attributing Lucifer/Satan/the

devil to the Serpent in the Garden. And keep in the forefront of your mind, the only biblical passages making this claim do not spell it out in precise detail, nor can they, generally, withstand the scrutiny of criticism on a linguistic level. *Never* is Nachash, the Serpent in Genesis, directly said to be Lucifer, Satan, or the devil.

Here are the few references in the Bible that some theologians use to establish that the Serpent in the Garden has anything to with Lucifer, Satan, or the devil. See what you think.

Ezekiel 28:11–19

Ezekiel 28:11–19 is considered to be the first extrapolated reference to Lucifer/Satan/the devil as being present in the Garden of Eden. It was written approximately 1,000 years *after* the writing of the Book of Genesis. It is a lament written for the fallen King of Tyre, and the Christian church has rendered its meaning to stand as a metaphor for Lucifer/Satan/the devil. In actuality, it is not about Lucifer/Satan/the devil at all. Here is how the authorized version of the biblical passage reads:

Lamentation for the King of Tyre
(author's emphasis throughout)

¹¹Moreover the word of the Lord came to me, saying, ¹²“Son of man, take up a lamentation for the *King of Tyre*, and say to him, ‘Thus says the Lord God:

“You were the seal of perfection,
Full of wisdom and perfect in beauty.

¹³*You were in Eden, the garden of God;*
Every precious stone was your covering:
The sardius, topaz, and diamond,
Beryl, onyx, and jasper,
Sapphire, turquoise, and emerald with gold.
The workmanship of your timbrels and pipes
Was prepared for you on the day you were created.

¹⁴“*You were the anointed cherub who covers;*
I established you;
You were on the holy mountain of God;
You walked back and forth in the midst of fiery stones.

¹⁵You were perfect in your ways from the day you were created,
Till iniquity was found in you.

¹⁶“By the abundance of your trading
You became filled with violence within, And you sinned;
Therefore I cast you as a profane thing
Out of the mountain of God;
And I destroyed you, O covering cherub,
From the midst of the fiery stones.

¹⁷“Your heart was lifted up because of your beauty;
You corrupted your wisdom for the sake of your splendor;
I cast you to the ground,
I laid you before kings,
That they might gaze at you.

¹⁸“You defiled your sanctuaries
By the multitude of your iniquities,
By the iniquity of your trading;
Therefore I brought fire from your midst;
It devoured you,
And I turned you to ashes upon the earth
In the sight of all who saw you.

¹⁹All who knew you among the peoples are astonished at you;
You have become a horror,
And shall be no more forever.”

However, there are many translation issues with the preceding verses, which render it to read as a figurative descriptive metaphor for Lucifer/Satan/the devil. On examination, it says nothing of the sort. Here is how the passage is rendered in the Hebrew language in which it was originally written. Compare it to the rendering of the passage above (again, author’s emphasis throughout):

^{11–12}And the word of YHWH (Yahweh) came to me saying,
‘Son of man, raise a dirge over the king of Tyre. Say to him,
“The Master YHWH (Yahweh) says this: You were once a *seal-print [exemplar] of perfection*, full of wisdom, perfect in beauty.

¹³You came into luxury, a paradise from Elohim, gems of every kind were your covering, Sardin, topaz, diamond, chrysolite, onyx, jasper, sapphire, carbuncle, emerald. Your jingling beads were of gold, and the spangles you wore were made for you on the day of your birth. ¹⁴I had provided you with a guardian cherub; you were in the set-apart mountain of Elohim, and you walked proudly among the stones that flashed with fire. ¹⁵You were blameless in all your ways from the day of your birth until iniquity came to light. ¹⁶Your busy trading has filled you with lawlessness and sin, so I thrust you down from the mountain of Elohim, and the guardian cherub banished [or destroyed] you from among the stones that flashed like fire. ¹⁷Your heart has made you arrogant because of your beauty. You have corrupted your wisdom because of your splendor. *I have thrown you to the ground; I have made you a spectacle for other kings.* ¹⁸So great was your sin in your wicked trading, that you have desecrated your sanctuaries. So I kindled a fire within you, to consume you. I left you as ashes on the ground for all to see. ¹⁹Of the nations, all who know you were aghast; you became waste, gone forever.””

The major textual problems with the previous passage require a highly technical linguistic research, bringing in many intricate details from not only the Hebrew language, but also the LXX (the Septuagint, or Greek translation of the Old Testament). So rather than write 10 pages of textual criticism, linguistics, and translation issues, let me simply state that the comparatives made between the King of Tyre and Lucifer/Satan/the devil are insufficient translations, and one needs to go back to the Hebrew and Septuagint to understand the proper translation as rendered in the second version of the passage above.^{2,3}

Job 38:7

Job 38:7 is also used to speak of the Serpent being Lucifer:

“When the morning stars sang together, And all the sons of God shouted for joy?”

Because Lucifer/Satan was a created being, and because Eden was guarded by cherubim after the Fall, some scholars say that Lucifer/Satan must have been in Eden between his creation and the fall of humanity. Many scholars believe, based on Job 38:7, that all the angels, including Lucifer, were created on or before Day Four of creation week along with the sun, moon, and stars, only two days before the creation of Adam and Eve. But remember: Lucifer was a member of the Divine Council, one of the Elohim, the “Sons of God.” Though Lucifer may have been the Serpent, this verse says absolutely nothing about him being so. This verse also establishes for me that the “days” of Genesis were more than likely not 24-hour, solar days, but probably epochs of time. If they were literal 24-hour, solar days, then Lucifer decided he would take over God’s throne, rebelled, and fell from grace in roughly four to seven days from his moment of creation. (That’s another topic that we could trail off into for many pages.)

2 Corinthians 11:3

2 Corinthia isn 11:3 mentions the Serpent in the Garden, but make no connection to Lucifer/Satan. The following is a comparative statement, not an identifying one.

But I fear, lest somehow, as the serpent deceived Eve by his craftiness, so your minds may be corrupted from the simplicity that is in Christ.

Book of Revelation

The following three passages are taken from the writings of the Apostle John, who in his old age was imprisoned for the faith on the Isle of Patmos. While there, he had extraordinary prophetic visions that he recorded in what is known to be, chronologically, the last book written in the Bible’s New Testament, the Book of Revelation. Here are the three references he makes to Satan, whom he calls the “great dragon.” They are not presented in their full context here, but they are fairly stand-alone in their reference. They were written nearly 1,500 years after the Book of Genesis.

Revelation 12:9

So the great dragon was cast out, that serpent of old, called the Devil and Satan, who deceives the whole world; he was cast to

the earth, and his angels were cast out with him (author's emphasis).

Revelation 12:13–17

¹³Now when the *dragon* (author's emphasis) saw that he had been cast to the earth, he persecuted the woman who gave birth to the male Child. ¹⁴But the woman was given two wings of a great eagle, that she might fly into the wilderness to her place, where she is nourished for a time and times and half a time, from the presence of the serpent. ¹⁵So the serpent spewed water out of his mouth like a flood after the woman, that he might cause her to be carried away by the flood. ¹⁶But the earth helped the woman, and the earth opened its mouth and swallowed up the flood which the dragon had spewed out of his mouth. ¹⁷And the dragon was enraged with the woman, and he went to make war with the rest of her offspring, who keep the commandments of God and have the testimony of Jesus Christ.

Revelation 20:2

He laid hold of the dragon, that serpent of old, who is the Devil and Satan, and bound him for a thousand years...

1 Peter 5:8

1 Peter 5:8, in one final biblical passage, renders the metaphoric Satan in a completely different form than the Serpent, as found in Eden.

Be alert and of sober mind. Your enemy the *devil prowls around like a roaring lion* (author's emphasis) looking for someone to devour.

So what was the purpose of this little foray into the Serpent Seed Doctrine? It was to establish that the doctrine is not heretical to church teachings, for it simply does not refer to Satan as the entity of the Genesis passages. More than anything, it establishes that the Serpent in the Garden of Eden was completely unique from the biblical references to Lucifer, Satan, or the devil—and even those references are obscure in Hebrew,

extrapolated and forced into meaning by the teachings of the Christian church.

The Serpent Seed Doctrine should rightfully have the word *Doctrine* removed from the title, for it is nothing more than a statement of fact as substantiated within the textual passage where we find the interaction between the Serpent, Nachash, and Eve, the wife of Adam. Moreover, the Reptilian race that interacts with humanity is beginning to look more and more as if it is less a host of alien invaders, but rather a linkage, both physically and metaphysically, to the bloodline of the Serpent.

The doctrinal belief of the Serpent Seed is still held by some adherents of Christian Identity, a label applied to a wide variety of loosely affiliated believers and churches with a white supremacist theology. Most promote a racist interpretation of Christianity, claiming that the Jews, as descendants of Cain, are also descended from the Serpent. This is a belief that has surface throughout history and was adhered to by none other than one Adolf Hitler.

Chapter Six

The Merovingian Connection

If you believe there is a lot of mythology and mystery surrounding the Serpent and the Elohim, be prepared to pull up your iron shorts and pull on your thinking cap, because the Merovingian connection to the Serpent and the Elohim will quite possibly blow your mind. If you have heard the term *Merovingian(s)* used, you may have heard them referenced in connection to the Holy Grail and the search for that sacred cup in the Arthurian legends, and still have absolutely no idea who or what they are—and that they have been tied into the mythology of the Serpent. You will now find an astonishing connection to all the mythologies presented thus far in both *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim* and everything in this book thus far. But, as always, let's start at the beginning.

In the Dark Ages

Ready for a little history lesson? For roughly 300 years between the fifth and eighth centuries, the Merovingians (sometimes referred to by their contemporaries as the “long-haired kings,” as they wore their hair long in ostentatious comparison to the closer-cropped hairstyles of the rest of the Franks) were a Salian Frankish dynasty that came into power, ruling the region known as Francia, largely synonymous with ancient Gaul, inclusive of modern-day France, as the regional name implies. From the third century on, the Salian Franks appear in the historical records as warlike Germanic barbarians and pirates, bitter ancestral enemies of the Gaulic Celts, and avowed allies of the Romans known as *Laeti*, a word used by the Romans to denote the barbarian tribes (literally “babblers” of out-land tongues; that is, foreigners, people from outside the Empire) who gave them fealty, serving as underlord serfs who swore allegiance and provided soldiers for the Roman armies, resulting in a rag-tag alliance with Rome. This granted them the right to be the first Germanic tribe settling permanently on Roman land. In 358, they entered into political agreement with the Romans and moved

into the region known as Toxandria, which comprises roughly the area of current-day Holland and Belgium.¹

By the seventh century, the Salians fully adopted Frankish identity and gradually dropped their identification with Salian roots and heritage altogether. It's interesting to note that the Merovingian kings operated under a rather socialistic system of governance, as defined by current-day standards. The king redistributed conquered wealth and real estate among his followers, and this was not just given to the nobility, as it apparently extended to the indentured peasantry. Some scholars have attributed this to the Merovingians as lacking a manageable understanding of public affairs, but there is also the view that they knew precisely what they were doing, and this was an act meant to foster loyalty among their people.

It was the son of Meroveus/Merovic (the ruler from whom the name Merovingian is derived), the leader of the Salian Franks, Chiladeric I (c. 457–481), who founded the Merovingian dynasty. His son Clovis I (481–511), however, was the man who united the Gaulic tribes and territories under Merovingian rule. After his death the Merovingian family seemed to be in a constant state of in-fighting and back-and-forth skirmishes for power, but when threatened by outsiders, the Merovingians always presented a unified front, standing together with unified purpose and intent. They were the ultimate power in the region. During the final century of Merovingian rule, the dynasty was increasingly pushed into a more or less ceremonial role. In 752, Pope Zachary formally deposed the last ruler of the Merovingian dynasty, Chiladeric III, bringing to an end the Merovingian era.^{2,3}

Christianity eventually started to take a foothold with the Merovingians, at least in the sense of being “Christianized.” An Irish monk named Columbanus, who was eventually elevated to sainthood by the Church, enjoyed great influence due to his sincere friendship with Queen Balthid, the wife of Clovis II. The Merovingians established numerous monasteries throughout their empire and awarded them to their loyal lords who funded the abbeys and monasteries, granting them bishoprics and titles as abbots. Many of them, due to their financial support, were even granted sainthoods.

Before we go further with the Merovingians, let's take an intermediate trip, wading through the theories behind the bloodline of Jesus Christ, which will intersect us with the Merovingians once more.

Mr. and Mrs. Jesus Christ

There is an enduring, shadowy, hypothetical mythology surrounding the ancestry and lineage of Jesus Christ, with the trail originating in first-century Palestine, leading to the thrones of the Merovingian kings of Franco Europe. It has been claimed that Mary Magdalene was Jesus' concubine, and Mormonism claims that Jesus was a polygamist. There are also theories that Jesus turned, of all things, atheist, married Mary, and went to Europe. If any genuine historical data to back any of these claims existed, they have been lost to antiquity. What we have today are countless books on the subject, some rich in history, and others just as rich in conspiratorial magma and speculative kookiness. So, it is left to the interpretations of the readers of the many literary works glutting the shelves—both fiction and non-fiction—to determine their veracity, in lieu of any solid proof.

In the highly intriguing, yet equally controversial book *The Holy Blood and the Holy Grail* (1982), the Merovingians are presented as kings who established their power by claiming they were descended from the bloodline of Jesus Christ, who, if the claim were true, would have had to have been married and producing offspring in order to leave a traceable bloodline.⁴ This book, as one might imagine, caused an immense stir around the world, and the ideas contained in the book were deemed blasphemous enough for it to be banned in some Roman Catholic-dominated countries. Response from the historical and academic fields was quite negative, and critics of the book tore it to shreds, claiming that the bulk of the claims, ancient mysteries, and conspiracy theories presented as fact were nothing short of pseudo-historical. Famed book critic Anthony Burgess wrote of the book, “It is typical of my unregenerable soul that I can only see this as a marvelous theme for a novel.”⁵ Dan Brown did just that and utilized the theme for his international best-selling 2003 novel, *The DaVinci Code*.

Despite the criticisms, and even the authors of the book making statements that some elements had to be fictionalized in order to fill the untraceable gaps in an invisible lineage of Jesus, the book presented enough historical fact as to prompt many historians—off the beaten path of convention and peer review—to dig a little deeper, giving us the Jesus bloodline that linked into the Merovingians.

As might be imagined, *The Holy Blood and the Holy Grail* spawned innumerable other books and documentaries exploiting both the veracity of the claims and the criticisms made in the book. In his 1996 book, *Bloodline of the Holy Grail: The Hidden Lineage of Jesus Revealed*, Sir Laurence Gardner picks up the gauntlet and presents what he said were actual pedigree charts of the lineage of Jesus of Nazareth and Mary Magdalene. Gardner maintained that these family trees proved beyond all doubt that the biblical couple were the ancestors of all royal European families,⁶ claiming that this, indeed, linked them to the contemporary Reptilian conspiracy theories that state all modern European Royal families are alien Reptilians, operating under the influence of a hidden race of extraterrestrials bent on the destruction of humanity. In his 2000 sequel, *Genesis of the Grail Kings: The Explosive Story of Genetic Cloning and the Ancient Bloodline of Jesus*, Gardner makes extraordinary claims that there is physical evidence—outside the biblical genealogies—that the bloodline of Jesus of Nazareth could be traced back to Adam and Eve. If you are Christian, this is already something that can be established in biblical texts, as the followers of Jesus set out to establish the blood tie between Jesus, Mary, and Joseph to the royal house of King David, then all the way back to Noah and then to Seth, the third son of Adam. Gardner goes on to relay that Adam and Eve were actually the first human couple, product of alien DNA experimental interbreeding with primates, conducted by the alien race we identify in ancient Sumerian texts as the Annunaki.⁷

The 2000 book *Rex Deus: The True Mystery of Rennes-Le-Chateau and the Dynasty of Jesus*, by Marylin Hopkins, Graham Simmans, and Tim Wallace-Murphy, articulates another shadowy version of hidden blood ties and the theory that the bloodlines of Jesus and Mary were intricately linked to a lineage of 24 high priests of the Temple in Jerusalem. This bloodline was known as the “Rex Deus”—the bloodline of the “Kings of God”⁸—and ties to all the fantastical stories of King Solomon possessing a ring with which he could control demonic elements to aid in the building of the temple, as well as connections to the masons.

These few mentioned works represent only a small number of the host of fictional, non-fiction, and documentary books and films released on this topic since the 1980s. But they illustrate a fact: Enough evidentiary material exists to establish a case for such claims, which are not at all far-fetched nor

gymnastics of the imagination. Simply consider the biblical Jesus of Nazareth and his first recorded public miracle, launching his public ministry, the Wedding at Cana.

In the biblical account, Jesus is in attendance at a local wedding of some person left unnamed and unmentioned in the passage. In the account, recorded in the Gospel of John 2:1–11, Jesus’ mother (her name, Mary, omitted from the passage) rushes up to Jesus in a bit of panic, telling Jesus that the party is out of wine, to which Jesus says, in what seems a rather brusque reply, “O Woman, what have I to do with you? My hour has not yet come.” His mother then says to the servants to do whatever Jesus tells them. Jesus then orders them to take all the empty pitchers and fill them with water, and to draw out some and take it to the chief steward waiter. After tasting it, and not knowing where it came from, the steward congratulated the bridegroom on departing from the custom of serving the best wine first by serving it last (John 2:6–10). John adds: “Jesus did this, the first of his signs, in Cana of Galilee and it revealed his glory and his disciples believed in him.”

“^{1–3}Three days later there was a wedding in the village of Cana in Galilee. Jesus’ mother was there. Jesus and his disciples were guests also. When they started running low on wine at the wedding banquet, Jesus’ mother told him, “They’re just about out of wine.” ⁴Jesus said, “Is that any of our business, Mother—yours or mine? This isn’t my time. Don’t push me.” ⁵She went ahead anyway, telling the servants, “Whatever he tells you, do it.” ^{6–7}Six stoneware water pots were there, used by the Jews for ritual washings. Each held twenty to thirty gallons. Jesus ordered the servants, “Fill the pots with water.” And they filled them to the brim. ⁸“Now fill your pitchers and take them to the host,” Jesus said, and they did. ^{9–10}When the host tasted the water that had become wine (he didn’t know what had just happened but the servants, of course, knew), he called out to the bridegroom, “Everybody I know begins with their finest wines and after the guests have had their fill brings in the cheap stuff. But you’ve saved the best till now!” ¹¹This act in Cana of Galilee was the first sign Jesus gave, the first glimpse of his

glory. And his disciples believed in him.”
(John 2:1–11)

My speculative contention is that this wedding is the wedding of Jesus. There are a few things to note in this passage that would tend to establish this fact. First, in first-century Judea, it was a Jewish tradition (tantamount to law) that a rabbi must be a married man in order to be worth his salt and effective in his ministry. This miracle represents the first miracle of Jesus’ public ministry. Second, in first-century Judea (as well as in modern times) it was Jewish custom and tradition for the groom’s family to provide the wine for the wedding. In this passage you see Jesus’ mother approaching him under some stress that the wedding has no wine. Why did she approach Jesus, and why did she seem to have some position of authority at the wedding? Was Jesus, perhaps, the groom? Finally we see Jesus (the groom?) ordering the servants and presenting the wedding with wine.

Perhaps the text of the passage, as with so many other passages in the Bible, is presenting certain facts and omitting others, or completely redirecting the actual events to point in a different direction. As we know, the early Church fathers had specific views they needed to convey in order to establish Church practice and governance, and the repression of women in any position of authority seemed to govern the effort. For Jesus to have been married would have elevated a woman to a lofty role, so they deleted the wedding and reduced Mary Magdalene to the role of prostitute, which is never stated anywhere in the biblical text. Pope Gregory the Great’s homily on Luke’s gospel dated September 14, 591, first suggested that Mary Magdalene was a prostitute: “She whom Luke calls the sinful woman, whom John calls Mary, we believe to be the Mary from whom seven devils were ejected according to Mark. And what did these seven devils signify, if not all the vices? … It is clear, brothers, that the woman previously used the unguent to perfume her flesh in forbidden acts”(homily XXXIII).⁹

Speculative as my theory may be, it is clearly apparent that the Church and many denominations overtly suppress the role of important women in the scriptures, with few exceptions, and just as overtly—even vehemently—resist the notion that Jesus could have been a married man who produced offspring. One old Bible school friend of mine reacted quite harshly at this notion when I presented it, insisting that marriage and children would invalidate the divinity of Jesus Christ. When I asked him why, he fumbled

for an intelligent answer but could provide none, reverting simply to stating that my words were heretical. And, in truth, if Jesus Christ is indeed divinity, “God very God,” does not the New Testament tell us that he experienced life and was “tempted in all points, just as we are, yet without committing sin” (Hebrews 4:15)?

The big question that remains unanswered is this: Did Yeshua bar Joshof, Jesus of Nazareth, called the Christ, marry and father a child? And if he did, was that child the beginning of a bloodline that could be traced or discovered, and did it merge into the ruling class of the Merovingian kings?

As the theory goes, Jesus married Mary of Magdala, a woman from whom he cast out seven demons (thought to be seven illnesses and infirmities) and who became one of his most ardent disciples, even to the point where after Jesus’ death, resurrection, and ascension, she was referred to by the other disciples and followers of Jesus as Miriamne, “The Great Teacher.” According to the non-canonical Gospel of Phillip, a Gnostic Gospel of the New Testament apocrypha (dating to the third century), Mary Magdalene was revered as the Great Teacher, establishing her as the heir-apparent to the living philosophies of Jesus. Her husband.

There were three who always walked with the Lord: Mary, his mother, and her sister, and Magdalene, the one who was called his companion. His sister and his mother and his companion were each a Mary. (the Gospel of Phillip)

There is another passage from the Gospel of Phillip referring to Mary Magdalene, but as is common with millennia-old documents, it is incomplete due to damage to the original manuscript, and several words are missing. The best, scholarly guesses as to what they were are shown here in brackets. Most notably—and frustratingly—there is a hole in the manuscript after the phrase *and used to kiss her often on her...*. The passage appears to be telling of Jesus kissing Mary Magdalene, and Jesus goes on to use a parable to explain to the disciples why he loved her more than he loved them:

As for the Wisdom who is called “the barren,” she is the mother of the angels. And the companion of [the saviour was Mar] y Ma[gda]lene. [Christ loved] M[ary] more than [all] the disci[ples, and used to] kiss her [softly] on her [hand]. The rest of [the disciples were offended by it and expressed

disapproval]. They said to him “Why do you love her more than all of us?” The Saviour answered and said to them, “Why do I not love you like her? When a blind man and one who sees are both together in darkness, they are no different from one another. When the light comes, then he who sees will see the light, and he who is blind will remain in darkness.”

However, the word *hand* is not necessarily the word after *kiss her... on her....* It may have been cheek, forehead, lips, or feet to simply show respect.¹⁰

The holy bloodline of Jesus is nothing more than a theory, filled with speculative evidences and magnificent stories, but, as with other theories of this sort, it is filled with conjecture, filler content, and unsustainable facts. The theory goes on to state that Jesus Christ had a natural child with Mary Magdalene, named Sarah (Hebrew for “princess”), who was then taken to France to keep her safe, either during Magdalene’s pregnancy or as a young child. It is Sarah’s blood descendants who in later centuries founded the Merovingian dynasty of the early kings of France.

The theory goes on to state that a secret order protects these royal claimants because they may be the literal descendants of Jesus and his wife, Mary Magdalene, or, at the very least, of King David and the High Priest Aaron. This secret society known as the Priory of Sion has a long and illustrious history dating back to the First Crusade, starting with the creation of the Knights Templar as its military and financial front. The Priory is said to be led by a Grand Master—or “Nautonnier,” one who steers through murky waters—and is devoted to reestablishing the Merovingian dynasty on the hereditary thrones of Europe and Jerusalem.

Historically speaking, the Roman Catholic Church is said to have attempted to exterminate all remnants of this dynasty as well as their guardians, the Cathars and the Templars, during the Inquisition. Their goal, according to Jesus conspiratorialists, was to maintain power through the apostolic succession of Peter instead of the hereditary succession of Mary Magdalene—so the mythos goes.

A variation on the bloodline theory is that Jesus didn’t die on the cross but survived the torturous event, after which he fled to Kashmir, returning to Srinagar, where he had originally been influenced by Buddhist teachings. It was there that he died of old age, and the biblical accounts of his

resurrection were enhanced by his followers. This theory is given merit by close comparisons of the teachings of Jesus in the Gnostic Gospel of St. Thomas paralleling classical Buddhist Sutras. The theory also has parallels with other stories of Jesus' disciples fleeing to foreign lands, such as the journey of Joseph of Arimathea to England after the death of Jesus, taking with him a piece of thorn from Jesus' crown of thorns, which he planted on Weayall Hill in Glastonbury, England. The tree that grows there, across the valley from Glastonbury Tor, is said to be a direct descendent of the tree that sprouted from the thorn planted by Joseph, and a flowering sprig is sent to the monarch of England every Christmas, a tradition started during the reign of James I, royal sponsor of the 1611 King James Bible, in the early 1600s.

The Beast From the Sea

Buried in obscure antiquity, there is a legend surrounding Meroveus, the founder of the Merovingian dynasty, in which he made claims to having been sired by two different fathers. Despite the more recent claims that the Merovingians descended from the bloodlines of Jesus Christ (predicated, of course, on the notion that Jesus was indeed married to Mary Magdalene and fathered a child with her who carried on his lineage in ancient France), King Clodian, the human father of Meroveus, and a strange beast of the sea were the progenitors of the first Merovingian king. Meroveus's mother was already pregnant with her son by King Clodian when she went swimming in the surf and encountered the beast of the sea.

“Despite the carefully listed genealogies of his time, the heritage of ***Meroveus*** was strangely obscured in the monastic annals. Although the rightful son of Clodian, he was nonetheless said by the historian Priscus to have been ***sired by an arcane sea creature, the Bistea Neptunis***....

“The Sicambrian Franks, from whose female line the Merovingians emerged were associated with Grecian Arcadia before migrating to the Rhineland. As we have seen, they called themselves the *Newmage*—‘People of the New Covenant’, just as the Essenes of Qumran had once been known. It was the Arcadian legacy that was responsible for the ***mysterious*** sea beast—the *Bistea Neptunis*—as symbolically defined in the Merovingian ancestry. The relevant sea-lord was King Pallas, a

god of old Arcadia. His predecessor was the great Oceanus. The immortal sea-lord was said to be ‘ever-incarnate in a dynasty of ancient kings’ whose symbol was a fish—as was the traditional symbol of Jesus”

—Laurence Gardner, *Bloodline of the Holy Grail*
(author’s emphasis throughout)

The *Bistea Neptunis*¹¹ was worshipped in classical antiquity as the Roman god Neptune and as Poseidon in Greek mythology. Neptune was the mythological god of the sea who is said to have founded Atlantis, which is the pagan version of the antediluvian civilization that existed prior to the Great Flood of Noah, in which God wipes out all of humanity while purging the earth of the Nephilim, the offspring of the Elohim, in Genesis chapter seven.

In the Apostle John’s visions on the Isle of Patmos, he records an image of the Antichrist as the beast that rises out of the sea. This appearance of the *Bistea Neptunis* in the Book of Revelation has interesting linkages to the Merovingian legend, especially in light of the fact that the Merovingian monarchs are said to have demonic connections.

¹And I stood upon the sand of the sea, and saw a beast rise up out of the sea, having seven heads and ten horns, and upon his horns ten crowns, and upon his heads the name of blasphemy.

²And the beast which I saw was like unto a leopard, and his feet were as the feet of a bear, and his mouth as the mouth of a lion: and the dragon gave him his power, and his seat, and great authority.

(Revelation 13:1–2)

The name Meroveus is a name created from two conjoined French words: *mer*, meaning “sea,” and *vere*, meaning “werewolf” or “dragon”—hence, beast from the sea. The Book of Revelation refers to the dragon in specific terms as being none other than Satan, the devil.

And there was war in heaven: Michael and his angels fought against the dragon; and the dragon fought and his angels.... And the great dragon was cast out, that old serpent, called the Devil, and Satan, which deceiveth the whole world: he was cast

out into the earth, and his angels were cast out with him.
(Revelation 12:9)

It is interesting to make note at this spot regarding two comparatives that stand out in this Merovingian mythology. The first is the relation to the great beast who rises up out of the sea. In the Sumerian mythology of Enki/Ea, it is said that he is the Lord of the Earth and the Lord of the Abzu, that great underworld sea, atop of which lay the Snake Marsh. It is the connectivity to the snake that the second comparative comes into view: the Dragon, which is simply an archaic derivative of the snake and the ancient serpent.

Some of the books mentioned (*Bloodline of the Holy Grail; Holy Blood, Holy Grail*; and *The Da Vinci Code*) were popular books marketed for mass consumption and sold millions of copies. As such, conspiratorialists hold them up as being nothing less than propaganda tools that conceal the true origins of the Merovingian race. This propaganda is obviously something masterminded from behind the mystical scenes in the mists of demonic and otherworldly ether. For their esoteric allusion to the Merovingians' legendary progenitor, King Meroveus, having been sired by a mysterious beast of the sea, is an overt claim that the bloodlines of the Merovingians were of literal satanic descent. The demonic origins and history of the Merovingian Dynasty, also known as the Dragon Dynasty in honor of the great red dragon (the "pendragon") of Revelation 12 and 13, are revealed in less available insider sources such as Gardner's *Realm of the Ring Lords* and Kenneth Grant and the Merovingian Mythos (published by DragonKey Press).

The Tuatha dé Danann

In Irish mythology, it is said that a race of kings descended from the heavens to the ancient Celts of Ireland. These tall, bright, shining creatures were elegant and beautiful, and brought with them the secret knowledge of the gods. Although the Tuatha represent a caste of Irish elemental beings, there are also accounts of them being flesh and blood conquerors of the Fir Bolg, one of the more ancient races inhabiting Ireland, coming down and invading from the four northern cities of Falias, Gorias, Murias, and Finias, where they acquired their occult skills and magical attributes.¹²

Tuatha dé Danann roughly, but imprecisely translates as “peoples’/children of the goddess Danu.” In the old Irish *tuath* means “people, tribe, nation”; *dé* is the genitive case of *día*, meaning “god, goddess, supernatural being, object of worship.”¹³ They are often referred to simply as the Tuatha, Tua, or the Tuatha dé, which also was used in early Irish Christian texts as a name for the Israelite diaspora.¹⁴ That, in and of itself, is an interesting historical reference: As Danu has also been rendered Anu, the reference—if not already obvious—creates an interesting link between Israel and ancient Sumerian mythology.

According to *Lebor Gabála Érenn* (*The Book of the Taking of Ireland*), the Middle Irish title of a loose collection of poems and prose narratives recounting the mythical origins and history of the Irish from the creation of the world down to the Middle Ages, they descended to Ireland “in dark clouds” and “landed on the mountains of Conmaicne Rein in Connacht, bringing a darkness over the sun for three days and three nights.”¹⁵ In another version of the story, less steeped in the mistiness of legend, the Tuatha landed in a fleet of sea vessels on the shores of what is modern-day Connemara, Ireland. As if to seal their resolve, they burned all their ships, so as to provide themselves no mode of retreat. The rising smoke from the fires is said to be the basis for the myth that says they arrived in smoke from the skies.

A poem in the *Lebor Gabála Érenn* says of their arrival:

It is God who suffered them, though He restrained them
They landed with horror, with lofty deed,
In their cloud of mighty combat of spectres,
Upon a mountain of Conmaicne of Connacht.
Without distinction to discerning Ireland,
Without ships, a ruthless course
The truth was not known beneath the sky of stars,
Whether they were of heaven or of earth.¹⁶

After a series of wars, it is said that the Tuatha dé Danann receded into the Hollow Hills and eventually became known as the Elven folk of Cletic lore. It is interesting to note that the “El” of Elven is a derivative of the ancient Sumerian Elil and the Hebrew Elohim. The connectivity between the mythological Tuatha dé Danann and the Nephilim is well worth

recognition, as they are perhaps etymological descendants in the same vein, again, as Elil and Ea are to Elohim and YWHW.

On a literary note, the Tuatha dé Danann are the basis for J.R.R. Tolkein's tall, elegant, bright, shining Elven people of Lothlorien. Tolkein had his finger on the pulse of shadowy history, and was obviously on to something.

Tuatha dé Annunaki?

“...The ancient people of the Tuatha De Danann...were the supernatural tribe of the pre-Achaean agricultural goddess Danae of Argos, or perhaps of the Aegean mother-goddess, Danu. But their true name rendered in its older form was Tuadhe d'Anu. As such, they were the people (or tribe) of Anu, the great sky god of the Annunaki.”

—Sir Laurence Gardner, *Realm of the Ring Lords: The Myths and Magic of the Grail Quest*

The Canaanite territory of northern Israel is said to have once been occupied by the Israelite tribe of Dan, who, during the days of the Bible's Great Exodus, around 1446 BCE, is said to have separated from Moses and the rest of the Israelites, traveling to the north. There the Dannites encountered the worship of Baal/Pan and became involved in the pagan fertility rites practiced by the indigenous Canaanite peoples at Mount Hermon, the very place where, according to the Book of Enoch, the Sons of God descended to the earth and made a pact to go in among human women and have children with them, bequeathing the Nephilim.

The people of the Israelite tribe of Dan intermingled with the Canaanite Tuatha dé Danann, also known as the Dragon Lords of Anu, said to be the offspring of the ancient Sumerian Annunaki. This is also one of the interpretations of the “Sons of God” intermingling with the “daughters of men,” referenced in the Genesis chapter six story of the Nephilim. One of the human-based interpretations of the story is that the children of Israel, as represented by the tribe of Dan, broke the law of God and intermarried with the Canaanites in the region of Mount Hermon, where the Elohim were said to have descended. Cultural values of the day did not allow for the women of Israel to intermingle with the men of another culture, so only the men were said to have taken Canaanite brides from the Tuatha dé Danann.

Hence, the basis of the story for the Sons of God intermingling with the daughters of men. From there, the integrated tribe a Dan and Dannan/Danu/Anu migrated to the north and west, settling along the way in the European and Scandinavian regions as a conquering nomadic people, replacing those they conquered with their own traditions blended with the Canaanite Annunaki Serpent culture.¹⁷

I again find the similarities and connectivities staggering: Tuatha dé Danann, Danites, Tribe of Dan, and their linkage to the Dragon Lords, the Annunaki, and the Serpent. Are these simply tricks of word similarities, or are the coincidences far too great to overlook?

Yet another version of the origins of the Tuatha dé Danann, the Dragon Lords of the Anu (before settling in Ireland around 800 BCE), is that they were the descendants of the Black Sea princes of Scythia,¹⁸ now known as the Ukraine. Like the original dynastic Pharaohs, they traced their ancestry to the great Pendragons (note: Uther and Arthur Pendragon of the Arthurian legends) of Mesopotamia, and from them sprang the kingly lines of the ancient Britons, the Irish Bruithnigh, and the Picts, the indigenous people of northern Scotland. In Wales the Tuatha founded the Royal House of Gwynedd, whereas in Cornwall in the southwest of England, they were the sacred gentry known as Pict-Sidhe, connected with the early Merlin (Myrddin) and Tyntagel, the legendary Cornish birthplace of King Arthur.

“So, from a single caste of the original Blood Royal—whether known as the Sangréal, the Albi-gens or the Ring Lords—we discover many of the descriptive terms which sit at the very heart of popular folklore. For here, in this one noble race, we have the ‘elves’, ‘fairies’ and ‘pixies’—not beguiling little folk, but distinguished Kings and Queens of the Dragon succession.”

—Sir Laurence Gardner, *Realm of the Ring Lords*

The Psalter of Cashel (the lost Book of Munster) states: “[T]he Tuatha dé Danann’ ruled in Ireland for about two centuries, and were highly skilled in architecture and other arts from their long residence in Greece.”¹⁹ According to The Psalter of Cashel, the Tuatha dé Danann were regarded as the descendants of Danaus, the son of Belus, who went with his 50 daughters to Argos, the home of his ancestral Io. In Irish legends the Tuatha

dé Danann, considered to be demi-gods, were said to have possessed a Grail-like vessel.²⁰ They were teachers of ancient wisdom and the founders of the Druidic priesthood.

As you can see, mythology melds with history. In the vaguely historical, mostly pseudo-anthropological works of Sitchin, the Annunaki are space travelers who descended in linguistically forced “firey rockets.” In anthropological research, they are the deified kings of the ancient Sumerians whose descendants migrated north to Black Sea region and south to Palestine, encountering other ancient peoples, and merging cultures and language.

In a Merovingian sense—and in accordance with modern Reptilian mythology—these are the ancestral Euro-Semitic people who forged the bloodlines of the royal families of the Franks, not to mention the royal houses of Europe’s history.

The Holy Grail

The Holy Grail has for centuries been linked to the legends of King Arthur and his Knights of the Round Table. It was a quest on which the mythical king sent his mighty men of valor. In more modern interpretations, this grail quest has been seen as less a quest for an object (the cup of Jesus used at the last supper) but one of finding and identifying the bloodline of Jesus Christ, the holy Son of God who was the divine savior of humanity. Take into consideration the aforementioned migration of the Tuatha dé Danann, and their purported establishment of the royal lines of Wales and Cornwall, both of which have connectivity to the Arthurian legends, and you will see the linkage between the legendary quest for the grail and the quest for the blood heirs of Jesus. Yet the dynastic lines of kings who claim to have descended from this hidden bloodline were not any part of the Christianity we recognize today. They were known as Sorcerer Kings and Dragon Lords, some of whom claimed to be not only descendants of the bloodline of Jesus Christ, but also the Luciferian bloodline, which seems an outright contradiction to the former!

The Merovingian kings were said to have descended from the Atlantian diaspora, the remnant of inhabitants of Atlantis who had escaped the destruction of that mythological region, fleeing to the Pyrenees Mountain region, bringing with them their abilities as occult adepts, and practitioners

of arcane sciences and the esoteric arts. The Merovingians, in fact, were often called Sorcerer Kings, or thaumaturge kings—sorcerers, workers of miracles, and practitioners of the black arts.²¹ These are the descendants of the grail, the heirs of the bloodline of the Christ. These are the things that delve into the darker side of Judeo-Christian history and lore—the mysteries of God, if you will—and they end up painting God in a very different light than we were taught in Sunday School or Synagogue, which is why they are deemed as heretical and blasphemous to the Church. But what if they are true? How would this affect your faith or your adherence to what you believed you knew from the Bible? Or would it simply send you back into those pages to dig deeper for answers, perhaps even into prayer to ask if that Holy God is truly there in the form you once understood Him?

Digging into more rabbinic lore, there is another version of the story of Cain, the son of Eve, in which he was not the son of Adam (which we've already established several times over, between this book and *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim*), but of the fallen angel Samael, whose name loosely equates to Lucifer. We have already established, textually speaking, that the Serpent in the Garden was a character called Nachash, in accordance with the Hebrew of the Genesis text. But according to this obscure rabbinic version of this particular bit of Hebrew lore, it was Samael who appeared to Eve as the Serpent, the Nachash, seducing her. Whoever it was who actually appeared as the Serpent isn't as important as is the fruit of that union: Eve's firstborn twin son, Cain. If the Merovingians knew of this rabbinic version of the story—which they no doubt did—it could have been the basis of their alleged assertion that they possessed, flowing in their bodies, the blood of both Christ and Lucifer. And the idea that Cain was the offspring of a superior intelligence was already a well-established teaching of the Cainite Gnostics, of which the Merovingians were also sure to have intimate knowledge.

An alternate version of the Cain saga, equally Luciferian in its connotations, says that he was the son of Adam's first wife, Lilith, who was also a candidate for the Serpent, Nachash, in the Garden of Eden.²² According to rabbinic lore, she had been the consort of Elohim before her fall from grace and descent to the earth. It is interesting that, of the two alternate traditions concerning Cain's parentage, both involve a Luciferian-Elohim bloodline connection.

The Lilith-Samael version of the story also bears great connectivity to the grail saga insofar as, according to this account, the angelic/demonic pairing produces a son of their *own* who seems to play a recurring role in the entire grail mythos: Asmodeus. Not only is Asmodeus said to have played the central role in building the Temple of Solomon, the edifice from which the Knights Templar took their name, but he is also represented in the dominant statue at the entrance to Rennesle-Chateau in France, which has enormous legendary connections to the grail mythos. The recurrence of the character of Asmodeus in connection to grail lore gives credence to the notion that both he and the descendants of Cain may in fact have shared kindred ancestry. In some traditions it has been said that it was Asmodeus, not God, whom Moses called upon to part the Red Sea. Though portrayed as a demon or devil figure, the name Asmodeus reveals that he may not always have been viewed as such, for Asmodeus translates simply to Lord God (*Ashma* = “Lord,” and *Deus* = “God”). Asmodeus bears the same brand of duality found in the serpent deities of ancient Egypt, Sumar, and myriad other cultures we have mentioned in this book—which happen to be only the tip of the iceberg. So, again, we have to ask ourselves what it is we think we really, truly know for sure.

On an even more intriguing observance are the four French words positioned above the sculpture of Asmodeus at the entrance to Rennesle-Chateau: “PARCE SIGNE TULE VAINCRAS.” These four letters are an anagrammatic code in Latin, “CELATA AGNI SUPER ENRICVS” (“LAMB’S SECRET OVER ENRICUS”). “Lamb” is a reference to Jesus Christ, and it is thought that this phrase over the sculpture of Asmodeus is the third of a series of encoded anagrams that speak to the location of the Holy Grail. (To rabbit trail into that topic here would be lengthy and worthy of a book all its own, so for now, consider it fodder for thought and exploration.)

Another possible origin of the Luciferian bloodline theory is inextricably linked to the Elohim, the pantheon of gods in mythology who said in the Book of Genesis: “Come, let Us make man in Our image.” Elohim is the plural form for the name of God: “God Among Many Gods,” the bene ha Elohim, the “Sons of God” known as the Watchers in the Book of Enoch.

We have already established that the word *Elohim* is an etymological descendent of the name Elil, chief god of the Annunaki of the Sumerian culture, but it also has roots in the ancient Babylonian word *Ellu*, which means “shining ones.” This phrase has a distinctively Luciferian

connotation, because the name Lucifer literally means “light bearer.” Additionally, if you see Lucifer as being the same person as Nachash in the Genesis account of the Garden of Eden, remember that Nachash, by definition means, “crafty magician, *illuminator, bright shining one.*” It is also to be noted that the descendants of Cain, who became the deified kings of Sumer, bore the title of Ari, a term that also meant “shining ones.” And as I have already contended, Cain being the son of Nachash and Eve, is the first of the Nephilim mentioned in the Book of Genesis. The phrase *shining ones* would be a very apt description for the descendants of Enoch’s Watchers (the Sons of God of the Genesis account), who were said to have, according to the Enochian account, “hair white as snow, pale eyes, and pale skin that filled the room with light” (Enoch 105:10).

The Sumerian Ari are almost always depicted as wearing crowns bearing horns, and some of their descendants were said actually to have had horns. For instance, the most famous statue of Moses, carved by Michelangelo, depicts him with horns atop his forehead, not wholly inappropriate for someone who may be a blood relation of Asmodeus. But we also must consider the anti-Semitism of medieval Europe, a time of great bigotry against Jews and Hebrew culture. Many Christian artists in Europe, especially under the power of the Vatican papacy, were “required” to depict their biblical Jewish subjects as having horns, in accordance with the opinions of the powers that be. So, the presence of horns on the statuary heads of patriarchal Jews from the Bible had, some say, absolutely nothing to do with the mystical. They were a political contrivance. Theologians protest that they are not horns, merely rays of light. If they are rays of light, it could also suggest a Luciferian subtext, due to the bright shining element of Nachash and the Elohim.



Tetradrachm of Lysimachos. The head of Alexander is featured wearing royal and divine symbols: the diadem and the horns of Zeus Ammon. C. 305–281 bc. Image made available through Wikimedia Commons.

It's obvious, even to the casual observer, that they are *indeed* horns, which is not at all inconsistent with the normal medieval Western depiction of Moses and other biblical patriarchs, based on the description of Moses' face as *cornuta* ("horned") in the Latin Vulgate translation of Exodus. The Douay-Rheims Bible translates the Vulgate as: "*And when Moses came down from the mount Sinai, he held the two tables of the testimony, and he knew not that his face was horned from the conversation of the Lord*" [author's emphasis]. This was, however, a mistranslation of the original Hebrew text, which uses a term equivalent to "radiant," suggesting an effect like a halo. The Greek Septuagint translates the verse as: "*Moses knew not that the appearance of the skin of his face was glorified.*"

Anecdotal Historical Fact: Alexander the Great declared himself the Son of God, and he, too, was rumored to have horns. In fact, to this very day, if you talk to people on the streets of Iran (who have a cultural remembrance of his invasion as though it happened last week), they will tell you in all solemnity that it's a historical fact that Alexander had horns, which is why he wore his hair long—to cover them up. There was an ancient Greek coin, the silver tetradrachmon, issued

posthumously in the name of Alexander the Great around 242/241 BCE, depicting Alexander with the horns of Ammon-Ra.

Cain, the first of the twin-born sons of Eve, seems to have engendered his own traditional stories, as found in an obscure Gnostic sect bearing his name called the Cainites. Like the Carpocrateans, the salvific doctrine of the Cainites espoused a theology that declared the believer must gain favor with God by “making the journey through everything.”²³ Fourth-century Bishop of Salamis St. Epiphanius describes the Gnostic Cainites as a group of believers who possessed an “obscure chaos of evil practices,”²⁴ “consecrating...lustful or illegal acts to various heavenly beings...heretics so adulterated with the dualism...and licentious practices of Oriental heathenism...”²⁵ as a sort of sacred prerequisite. Interestingly, many contemporary scholars compare them to Satanists, but that was a common thought already forming nearly 2,000 years ago. In alignment with our study of the Nephilim and the serpentine cultures, Cainites also taught that Eve’s twin sons had different fathers, purporting that Cain was the offspring of Eve by a superior power, and Abel was Eve’s son by an inferior power. The Cainites are also considered an heretical group as they possessed the Gospel of Judas, in which Judas is written as the disciple who “studied the mysteries of God,” and that his knowledge was so much more advanced than any of the other disciples of Jesus, that he, in adherence to the insistence of Jesus himself, betrayed Jesus to the Jewish Sanhedrin so that the prophecy would be fulfilled.²⁶ In disparity to the accepted gospels contained in the canonical Bible, Judas did this out of complete altruistic discipleship to his master, resulting in such a tumultuous grief that he committed suicide. And as a result of his loyalty to Jesus, his name has been besmirched in Christianity for all time.



Coat of arms of Stenay. Image copyright of the author.

The extent to which the Merovingians knew of these alternate traditions is uncertain. Whether or not they believed in them is more uncertain still, yet it remains likely that they both knew about these traditions and took them quite seriously. To this very day, the coat of arms of the capital of the Merovingian empire, Stenay, bears an image of the devil. And the original name of Stenay was Satanicum.

How the Merovingians Influenced Hitler

In 1919, at the age of 30, Adolf Hitler joined the occultist Germanic Revivalist Thule Society,²⁷ although there are no historical records indicating that he ever attended a single meeting.²⁸ Hitler later reconceived and organized this organization into the National Socialist German Workers' Party, better known as the Nazi Party. The Thule Society was founded a year earlier by the followers of two men: Jorg Lanz Von Liebenfels, who later claimed that it was his “occultist ideals” that helped form Hitler’s thinking,²⁹ and Guido von List, a Viennese “Renaissance Man” of many varied interests and talents who gained his popular notoriety as an occultist and *völkisch* (“ethnic folk”) author. Through his writings and popular approach to reviving Germanic mysticism, List was one of the original New Agers, establishing himself as an important contributor to what has been hailed as modern Germanic revivalism. He was a late-19th-century pioneer in Runic Revivalism and Runosophy, a specialized branch

of archaic Germanic linguistics not only used as a means to establish Germanic foundations in ancient language transmission, but also steeped in a mysticism that purported the proper usage of runes could divine, charm, prognosticate, curse, and even bring people back from the dead. List was a Pagan occultist to the heart, and by later standards was the poster child for the colloquial term *long hair*. Perhaps his runic forays worked well for him, for he was highly regarded by the people, who saw his particular brand of folk writing as a solid foundation to the reemergence of Germany as a substantial power in the West.

So much can be said on these matters that a veritable tome could be written on these topics alone. Suffice it for the purposes of this study to say that the Thule Society, though outwardly deemed a populace organization that lent pride to the growing nationalist movement in Germany—rather like a grown-up version of the American Boy Scouts—became the animus behind the organizing of what was known as the *Deutsche Arbeiterpartei* (*DAP*), a German workers' party that met in local beer halls and was made up of members who wanted to see a rise in the worker class.



Adolf Hitler's DAP membership card, with the forged date and number, reduced from 555 to 55 to make him appear as if he were an original founder and member. Image by Mike Peel www.mikepeel.net. Made available through Wikimedia Commons.

Hitler, who at that time was a corporal in the German army, was ordered to attend a meeting of the DAP in order to spy on them for the purposes of

establishing their political agenda. While he was at this meeting, he did what a good spy ought not do by getting into a rather violent political argument with a member of the group. In short, he was recognized for his oratory skills and later invited to become a member of the fairly unorganized party. Hitler agreed to join and began to organize the party from what was tantamount to a bunch of guys meeting at the pub to argue politics into a solid organization. Hitler renamed the organization the National Socialist German Workers' Party (NSDAP)— the Nazi Party. According to Hitler biographer Ian Kershaw, the Thule's "membership list...reads like a Who's Who of early Nazi sympathizers and leading figures in Munich,"³⁰ with its small membership list inclusive of such historical German figures as Rudolf Hess, Gottfried Feder, Alfred Rosenberg, Hans Frank, Julius Lehmann, Karl Harrer, and Dietrich Eckart.³¹

By today's standards, the Thule Society's underlying philosophy would be considered heinous in concept and societally scorned in intent. At the core of the Thule was their occultist belief in the origins of a superior man, the Aryan race. In 1917, this underlying theme of superiority extended to membership qualifications. If you wanted to join the society, you were required to sign a special "blood declaration of faith" establishing lineage: "The signer hereby swears to the best of his knowledge and belief that no Jewish or coloured blood flows in either his or in his wife's veins, and that among their ancestors are no members of the coloured races."³²

The organizational intent of the Thule was originally an outwardly innocuous German study group headed by Berliner Walter Nauhaus, a wounded World War I veteran turned art student. In 1918, Nauhaus came into contact with a occultist named Rudolf von Sebottendorf, the newly elected head of the Bavarian Germanenorden Walvater of the Holy Grail,³³ an offshoot organization formed after a schism with the Thule Society. Nauhaus and Sebottendorf became associates while recruiting for their particular branches, and eventually they merged their branches under the Thule name, using it as a cover name for Sebottendorff's Munich lodge of the Germanenorden Walvater. Not only are we starting to see all the occultist roots to the Thule and its varying offshoots and chapters, but also the growing chimera of political power. What started in occultist folk

nationalistic revitalization quickly turned populace and aggressively political in intent and heinously evil in philosophy.



The Thule Society seal. Image from proswastika.org/e107_images/custom/thulegesellschaft_emblem.jpg.

The occultist origins of Nazi Aryanism, specifically as influenced by the Thule's philosophical foundation, is deeply probed in Kevin Abrams's and Scott Lively's *The Pink Swastika*. Abrams and Lively document how the Thule Society relied on ancient occultist supernaturalism to imbue their members with powers to be used for their Aryan claims and the foundational thinking behind their belief in the use of eugenics.³⁴ The fire of Adolf Hitler's dream of an Aryan super-race was fueled by the underlying occult theology of the Thule Society. Adhering to the belief that they were somehow infused with esoteric powers passed on to them by the spirits of the lost civilization of Atlantis, members of the society regarded themselves as metaphysically imbued with the god-like wisdom of these advanced ancients, fueling them to create a new race of Aryan super-men. They followed a more-or-less Darwinian philosophy that moved them by

some esoteric “eminent domain” to claim superiority and eliminate the ‘inferior’ races.³⁵

Jorg Lanz Von Liebenfels, the spiritual inspiration behind the founding of the Thule Society, was a Cistercian monk who claimed to have been given revelation and enlightenment upon discovering the rune-filled tombstone of a Templar knight. After interpreting what he believed were encoded messages on the tombstone, he began constructing his own philosophies of a blue-eyed/blond-haired, God-ordained Aryan race and its superiority over lower, inferior races. Lanz was hailed the “Father of National Socialism” by Austrian psychologist Wilfried Daim, who in 1958 penned his study of Lanz in *The Man Who Gave Hitler His Ideas*. The book remains a chilling history of the Merovingians and their infiltration of the Catholic Church.

Like most Merovingian monasteries Glastonbury became a Benedictine Monastery. And the purpose of Merovingian monasteries was “infiltration” based on the belief that the best way to crush the Church was from “within.”... There is no doubt in my mind that [the Grail legend] would have been the work of the Cistercians, founded by Benedictine monks as “the ratchet” for the structural organization of [the Prieuré de] Sion. Joseph of Arimathea is alone associated with the Grail legend and the Quest of the Grail legends, which per Colliers Encyclopedia, are dominated by the mystical symbolism of Cistercians....

More than any heretical Merovingian organizations, the Cistercians personified the banality of evil at its finest. The name Cistercian and of their first monastery, Citeaux derive from Cistus, of the Cistaceae or Rockrose family resembling the wild rose and cultivated in the Mediterranean. The Myrrh with which Mary Magdalene anointed the Body of Jesus also comes from the Cistus family. And they had chosen the Magdalene... assigning her the symbol of the Rose and Cross in memory of the Brotherhood of the Sun founded by Akhenaten who had taken as its symbol the Rose and Cross (Lewis). Cistercians were Rosicrucians. And this Rosicrucian order of monks would triumph in its infiltration of the Church.³⁶

The Secret Doctrine, authored by Madam Blavatsky in 1893, became the quintessential sourcebook for 20th-century metaphysical esoterism, and it was heavily influential on the construction of the Thule Society's foundational philosophies. The inner sanctum of the Thule Society was comprised of heavy-hitting occultists, some of whom were overtly Satanist, such as Dietrich Eckart to whom Hitler, very tellingly, dedicated his book, *Mein Kampf*. As a member of the Thule, despite his membership, perchance being in name only, Hitler diligently worked to align himself to the philosophies contained in Blavatsky's *The Secret Doctrine*, the thematic undercurrent of which was that the Aryan root race theory, a gnostic belief that humanity, in its current state of evolution, is destined to be "refined" by something called the seventh root, a belief delineating the philosophy that a race of "godmen," or *Homo Noeticus* (the New Man), would rise to preeminence over the rest of humanity, replacing them and cleaning the slate of lesser, races of color and evolutionary inferiority.³⁷ It has been purported German scientists under the Third Reich, in the development of their war machine and genetic research, were aided by repeated contact with gray entities who came from inside what is known as the hollow earth.

A book considered to be one of the first "science fiction" novels, *Vril, the Power of the Coming Race*, written by Lord Edward Bullwer Lytton and published in 1871 under the original title *The Coming Race*, despite being a fictional book with a Jules Vernes-ish style of 19th-century sci-fi, was highly influential on the thinking of Hitler, the Thule Society, and the Third Reich. Though not Lord Lytton's intention whatsoever, some later Theosophists—the broader field of esoterism founded by Madame Blavatsky—supported the notion that Lord Lytton's book was an actual fictionalized account of an existing superior subterranean master race who utilized the energy-form called Vril. The Thule Society did not merely consider the book the stuff of mid-19th-century science fiction, but, in fact, a true story based on a real magical substance. Helena Blavatsky, the founder of theosophy, endorsed this presupposition in her book *Isis Unveiled* (1877) and again in *The Secret Doctrine* (1888).

So the question that lingers is this: Although Adolf Hitler was clearly an occultist, easily influenced by the mystical and mentally governed by his innate drive to be one of the mythic royalty of the gods and demi-gods of ancient esoterica, was there anything beyond the simplistic interest entailing the influence of any sort of non-human involvement, and if so, was there

any linkage to mythical beings that governed his actions? As you have seen, this all funnels backward into the ancient past, linking races, religions, occult practices, and the etymological blending of language blended with the mythologies of ancient religion. And it all goes back to the Annunaki and continued reference to them having Reptilian roots of some sort. Perhaps it is time to go take a soothing bath in the great Abzu, with a fresh rinse in the snake marsh to collect our loose ends and organize our perceptions.

Here and now I have to admit to the fact that I loathe conspiracy theories, for they are generally the stuffs of overactive imaginations spurred into overload upon the discovery of some obscure, ancient myth or legend that they find either substantiates a theory (at least in their own way of thinking), or gives them animus to build a new theory, generally void of historical accuracy, twisting facts and figures, dates, and interpretations of names, events, locations, and archaic religious or occultist practices.

Chapter Seven

The New Age and the Serpent

Make no mistake about it: The mythologies of the Serpent bloodline, though well-established in the past, have never gone away; they've merely morphed into new mythology. We have seen that the Serpent is ever present in antiquity, slithering its way down through history, leaving meandering trails in the dust of nearly every ancient culture and religion, even touching the untouchable spirituality of Jesus Christ and the religion founded by his immediate friends and disciples, proliferated throughout the known world of 2,000 years ago by the evangelist Saul of Tarsus, who after his conversion changed his name to Paul, an apostle who never laid eyes on his master, Jesus Christ, but by vision alone.

The New Age movement, quite frankly, is nothing new, at all, in that it is a revisionist philosophy that has adapted the old mythologies to newer thinking. The notion that we are “all gods” is merely a looping replay of the teachings of the ancients, with the new twist that removes the brother-god/sister-goddess status from only the castes of royals to the common individual. Woven throughout the philosophies, when viewed as an amalgam of religious/spiritual/scientific/metaphysical thinking, is a connectivity to the serpent that is the driving force. One has to consider, only, the prevalent New Age philosophy put forward by well-known teacher and translator Eknath Easwaran,¹ of the kundalini (she who is “ring shaped”), that unconscious, instinctive, or libidinal force or Shakti, that is said to lie coiled at the base of the spine, the “sleeping serpent,”² to see where the connection to the Serpent of old has morphed into new meaning, but still maintains its presence.

David Icke

On a more sinister plane, the Serpent takes up abode in the highly conspiratorial world views of David Icke, former British football (that’s “soccer” for Yanks like me) star and news/sportscaster turned New Age philosopher, who “exposes the dreamworld we believe to be real”—so says

the header on his Website.³ According to the description on his [Amazon.com](#) Author Profile,⁴ the elusive Icke says of himself:

David Vaughan Icke (born 4/29/52) British writer and speaker...[describes] himself as the most controversial speaker in the world, he is the author of 19 books and has attracted a global following that cuts across the political spectrum. His 533-page *The Biggest Secret* (1999) has been called “the Rosetta Stone for conspiracy junkies.”

Icke was a well-known BBC television sports presenter and spokesman for the Green Party, when in 1990 a psychic told him he was a healer who had been placed on...and that the spirit world was going to pass messages to him so he could educate others. In 1991 he held a press conference to announce that he was a “Son of the Godhead”—a phrase he said later the media had misunderstood.... [Icke] told the BBC’s Terry Wogan show that the world would soon be devastated by tidal waves and earthquakes.

...[in] *The Robots’ Rebellion* (1994), *And the Truth Shall Set You Free* (1995), *The Biggest Secret* (1999), and *Children of the Matrix* (2001) [Icke] set out a moral/political worldview that combined New-Age spiritualism with a passionate denunciation of totalitarian trends...[in which] many prominent figures are Reptilian, including George W. Bush, Queen Elizabeth II, Kris Kristofferson, and Boxcar Willie.

Michael Barkun has described Icke’s position as “New Age conspiracism.”... Richard Kahn and Tyson Lewis argue that the reptilian hypothesis may simply be Swiftian satire, a way of giving ordinary people a narrative with which to question what they see around them.

Whenever I encounter self-proclaimed gods and messiahs, despite their well-meaning messages of peace toward all, unity among fellow man, and self-growth based on a philosophical foundation that we are all little gods within the universal collective, I tend to write them off rather quickly, simply for the self-labeling—good or bad philosophical beliefs notwithstanding. Be it my past education in theology, or my years of

thinking, writing, and mulling over history, religion, and spirituality, or simply my exposure to and study of history's cavalcade of messianic figures who accomplished little other than leading their followers—and themselves—to bitter ends, it is at the moment of self-proclaimed messianic revelation that I lose interest and cluck my tongue. When I read that Icke compares himself to a god, substantiated by his many public appearances and the rare granted interview, I know what he is getting at from the standpoint of a New Age way of thinking.

Sure, the concept that we are all gods—that we collectively comprise the greater good and have within us the ability to rise to spiritual heights—is not necessarily a thing to be reviled, no matter what your spirituality or religious (or non-religious) status may be. However, when those spiritual concepts, not uncommon to many, many religions, and spiritual trains of thought and practice, are hitched to the wagon of fringe conspiracy theories that focus on ancient alien Reptilians from another star system, and are working behind the scenes to draw energy off the evil and corruption of humanity, while at the same time pulling the strings behind such mythical groups as the Illuminati, I tend to think the Messiah has stepped off the surface of the water and sunk into the sea of self-adulation entangling himself and his followers in the seaweed of self-deception.

Icke's boiled-down philosophies are not uncommon to the New Age thinking community. He blends staples of the metaphysical discussion about the nature of the universe and consciousness with over-the-top conspiracy theories about public figures ranging from world politicians, religious leaders, and Hollywood celebrities to members of Europe's Royal families. But where he adds a decidedly sinister twist is when he openly accuses them of being Satanic pedophiles, child killers, shape-shifters, mass murderers, serial killers and worse. What seems like unconnected political and social events are in fact, according to Icke, attempts by a hidden Reptilian race to subvert and control humanity.⁵

In his book *The Biggest Secret*, Icke contends that human beings are the product of an extraterrestrial genetic engineering program launched by a race of reptilians called the Annunaki, who came to earth from a solar system in the constellation of Draco. How he makes his connection to Reptilians is as obscure as a few pieces of statuary and a heavy reliance on the works of Zechariah Sitchin. In part, he embraces the ancient Sumerian

account of Enki's creation of primeval man as a slave race for the other gods. But he goes beyond merely hailing to ancient mythology as fact, expounding that reality is a holographic experience, the only *true* reality is the realm of the Absolute, which he illustrates by making comparison to the Hollywood movie *The Matrix*.

He teaches a philosophy of Collective Consciousness built on intentionality, reincarnation, a loose, adapted understanding of string theory, and outer-galactic worlds that exist alongside ours on other planes of frequency. He contends that our life experiences alter our DNA by "downloading" new information and "overwriting the software" of our conscious state, and that we attract experiences to ourselves by means of good and bad thoughts⁶—all in all, a mixture of current metaphysical thought with alien conspiracy theory, and, frankly, very appealing on many levels to those who have been disillusioned by science and religion and are seeking something different to assuage their loneliness or dissatisfaction with the status quo. It is very easy to understand how simply listening to Icke and reading his work can draw one in. His converts are, I am sure, people who have considered both aspects of his foundational thinking, and simply not dug deeply enough to see the missteps and calculated misinterpretations.

David Icke is certainly not the first to have mentioned Reptilian aliens, but he claims he has been the one to have pioneered the road to a better understanding of who the Reptilians really are, and why they continue to interact and influence earthly humans. From secretive governmental control to world domination, ancient religious roots to modern day New Age-ism, Reptilians, according to Icke, *have been known* for their secret agenda. And although we do not have a clear picture of what their true intentions may be, "we are able to gather from history the signs and traces of their past actions and influence with ancient human civilizations. Accounts from the Aztecs, Greeks and Chinese mythology and history leaves us clues as to an ancient race of aliens that perhaps helped and aided the building of our civilizations past and present."⁷ He has thrown the ancient alien theory on its head by attributing his particular brand of conspiracy to them.

Icke purports that Reptilians, today, are believed to have shape-shifting abilities that enable them to secretly work their agenda behind the scenes, hidden within the bodies of the ruling classes of Europe and in the majority

of U. S. presidents and political figures, not to mention prominent entertainment and pop cultural personages the world over. Icke reports that he has found evidence that our political structure and economic systems have already been influenced by these evil, cunning, crafty (a word used to define Nachash, the serpent character in the Garden of Eden) Reptilians who have worked for thousands of years behind the scenes of human history. These alien intruders, for at least 6,000–8,000 years have seduced, through their cloned counterfeit political leaders and royal personages, the hearts and minds of all humanity, who are blinded to their existence. All the while, these Reptilian overlords are plotting their secret agenda and have been slowly fostering chaos throughout human history, waiting for the right time for the ultimate conquest of our planet.

During his aptly named Turquoise Period, in which Icke and his wife dressed only in the color turquoise due to his claim of some metaphysical effect that acts as a conduit for receiving positive energy, Icke writes that he had been channeling beings from another world and via automatic writing, and had received messages from extraterrestrials telling him that he was a Son of the Godhead—in other words, a “Messiah.” After the clamoring controversy and criticisms that ensued after the release of that statement, Icke later attempted to backpedal his statement, amending it and reinterpreting “Son of the Godhead” as the “Infinite Mind.”⁸ After this experience, in 1990, he met Deborah Shaw, a British psychic living in Calgary, Alberta. Icke began a relationship with Shaw, and the couple had a daughter the next year. Shaw and her infant daughter moved in with Icke and his wife, and she changed her name to Mari Shawsun. Icke’s wife changed her name to Michaela, which, she said, was an expression of the Archangel Michael. The eclectic trio was dubbed by the British press as the “turquoise triangle.”⁹

You have to think that anyone who predicts the end of the world must be a true believer in his or her ability to prognosticate world event, or have some real deep set faith in his or her ability as a channeler or psychic. Icke made himself part of this short list of doomsayers when he publicly prophesied that the world would end in 1997 (that was, now, 15 years ago, in case you’re counting, as of this writing). The end of the world as we knew it, according to Icke, would be preceded by a number of disasters, including a severe hurricane around the Gulf of Mexico and New Orleans—now there’s a stretch, a hurricane in the Gulf of Mexico (do I sound too

skeptical here?)—volcanic eruptions on the island of Cuba, “disruption” in China, a hurricane in Derry, and an earthquake on the Isle of Arran. He also said in that interview that Los Angeles would become an island, New Zealand would disappear, and the cliffs of Kent would be underwater by Christmas of that year. Icke told reporters that the information contained in this world-ending prophecy had been passed on to him through channeling the voices in his head, which was physically transmitted through automatic writing. As of the writing of this book, Icke is still holding enormous stadium events today, filling sports arenas for his 10-hour conferences. To me, this merely reaffirms my contention, and aptly illustrates the fact that the world is hungry for something and people will look for the things they feel they are missing in any outlet available. When science and religion fail us, we will look to anything to fill the void.

Of course, the end-of-the-world prophecy saw 1997 come and go without incident. Icke later wrote in that he had felt out of control during that press conference where he uttered his prophecy, almost as if he wasn’t the one saying the words. He said that he heard his own voice predict the end of the world, yet was completely appalled at what was spilling out of his own mouth: “I was speaking the words, but all the time I could hear the voice of the brakes in the background saying, ‘David, what the hell are you saying?’”¹⁰ To Icke’s great dismay, his prophecies were splashed all over the front page news the next morning.

In and of themselves, there would seem to be no real harm to Icke’s channeling-driven, automatically written script and his alien-Reptilian-overrun world view. If a guy wants to read the works of Zechariah Sitchin and add his own twist, insisting that the Sumerian pantheon of Annunaki gods were a race of Reptile aliens with evil intent, still governing our human affairs from behind a curtain of subterfuge, placing Reptilians in seats of high political world power throughout the ages, imposters in an exterior skin of cloned human flesh, infiltrating their way into all the ruling families of the world, who am I to tell him no? If the man has built a following that buy his books, pays to attend his conferences (and he *is* a phenomenal, eloquent, moving public speaker) and promulgate his views, why should any of us care? If that is the niche David Icke has found to fill his coffers and pay the electric bill, and if people have so little to believe in that they ascribe to his views (which, frankly, I have a hard time believing even Icke himself fully believes) then more power to him. After all, blended

throughout his alien message is a more overt call for people to take action against the abuses and oppressions of government, the seeking of world unity in contrast to the New World Order, and the gaining of inner god-like awareness and tranquility. What's so wrong with that? Whatever the vehicle of delivery of the message, the ends justify the means, and if the world becomes a better place, even if we have to foist upon the common mind the notion that if we don't pursue these things, the Reptilians will get a stronger foothold and destroy our world and have us all for lunch. No matter if you are exploiting information and creating a revenue stream, while at the same time foisting peace and unity as the answer, despite how disgusted one might be with his methods, he is ultimately pushing a good thing, right?

But there is a much more insidious aspect to David Icke's assertions. The Reptilians that he claims exist and operate behind the scenes of humanity are ones he links to the bloodlines of Cain, the Merovingians, and the Luciferian lineage. He speaks a form of anti-Semitism, buried in a twisted view of world history, linking the Jews with the Illuminati and the New World Order. The Jews, Icke purports, are the Reptilian-populated, -controlled, -manipulated race seeking world domination through their positions held in the wealthy, ruling, and royal families of Europe and the Western world. The "Chosen People" of the Old Testament are a plague to humanity. And the heinous underpinning of his teachings is that his foundations are laced with historical fact, yet merged into his Reptilian/Illuminati views.

This is not to say that the man does not adhere to good philosophies that stand for the betterment of humanity, but that is the hook that draws an inordinate amount of followers to his philosophies. Truth and fact mixed with bizarre theorizing make for the propagation of a message that is all at once appealing and stimulating to the curious, who are dying for answers to convert our world from what they view as a place of evil and oppression, to one of peace and harmony. Throughout his career, David Icke has professed to having long stood against many political and social systems that may be compromised by the Reptilian alien agenda, and, although Reptilians continue to make their push against humanity, many believe that we have protectors from yet *another* constellation watching their every move and awaiting their chance to move against the Reptilian alien race of aliens and their agenda. Although many of the subjects related to Reptilian aliens or intelligent life elsewhere is usually left to the science-fiction authors and

fanatics, David Icke continues to push his own alien agenda toward what he believes to be the “truth that has been hidden from the public for ages.”¹¹

Conclusion

The Continued Presence of the Serpent

As we have seen throughout this entire book, the presence of the serpent as a thing of both good and evil began as early as the recorded history of humanity and has coursed its meandering trail down through the ages. If, indeed, the imagery and symbolism is a result of ancient humankind's face-to-face encounters with non-human entities in the form of Reptilians, the case of history does not bear out that fact. What we know for a certainty is that the symbolic form of the serpent was inextricably linked with the worship and veneration of the serpent since the dawn of civilization.

Is the presence of the serpent linked to the Luciferian? Does the serpent crawl on its belly solely due to the spoken judgment of God in the Book of Genesis? Or is that simply representative of one version of the serpent in human religion and religious mythology? The seemingly as-yet unanswerable questions are co-dependents with our ability as humans to reach the unreachable and piece the unpierceable. In the vastness of the universe, we are awfully big for our own britches when we think we have the answers to the most elusively quantifiable of questions.

To not know all the answers is the beginning of exploration. That is precisely what I believe we set out to do in all of our sciences, histories, archaeologies, and anthropologies, let alone the verbose pomposity of our philosophies. For me, the pervasive presence of the serpent through our human existence on this planet—our spiritualities, religions, legends, and mythologies—represents an enduring symbol of something or someone that had such great impact on early humanity and their civilizations that it pressed an deeply encoded imprint in our collective psyche that has endured nearly all others, equaled only by our innate need for a deity. Those equally dichotomous quantities have been present with us, family to us, and governing aspects of who and what we are—and surely will continue to be so, prompting further seeking, questing, and digging for the reasons why.

Afterword

It's a river. As you have seen in the preceding pages, the amount of information that stems from one simple thought to the next is filled to over-brimming with tributaries branching off the main artery into other tributaries—stemming into hundreds of branches, little creeks, streams, coolies, and swampy backwaters with inlets and outlets of their own. As I stated at the very start of this book: "*The implications of the comparative historical and religious touch points are so far-reaching that the meanderings of myth one must follow to seek efficacious tendrils of fact could most certainly drive one mad in its contemplation.*" It has nearly brought me to that point, not due to the content of the mythologies and varied philosophies, but based upon the overwhelming mountain range of information to sift through and weigh against fact, fiction, insanity, and spirituality—and those distinctions are, sometimes, very difficult to decipher. What is one person's religion is another's folly, leaving plenty of room for criticism, nay-saying, and propagandizing.

There were times in the writing of this little book that I saw myself as a literary version of Meriwether Lewis on his quest to discover the Northwest Passage to the great western Pacific Ocean. After weeks and months of forging through seemingly un-traversable terrain he came, finally, through the foothills and low mountains. It was at that point that Lewis scaled a nearby ridge, certain he would see the Pacific Ocean stretched across the horizon. When he reached the top of the ridge and gazed at what lay beyond, though, all he saw was mile upon mile, range upon range of the craggy, snow-crested Bitterroot Mountains. His spirit sank and he was overcome with the feeling that he'd never find his way. His thoughts of enduring the hardship of the quest for even a single mile more turned into the despair that accompanies the feeling of having come too far to go back, but not far enough to find completion. Despite his inner turmoil, he pressed on and eventually cleared the mountains and pine forests of the northwest and stepped onto the sandy beach of accomplishment, the salty waves of the Pacific Ocean lapping at the soles of his boots.

For me, seeking the Reptilian factor and the connectivity of the serpent in human history and religious myth has been all-consuming, and just when

I feel I have fulfilled the goal and step to the ridge of conclusion, there, stretching out before me as far as the eye can see, is another range of snow-capped peaks, each bearing a new rocky climb.

It's the looking for the way through that seems daunting while you are in it. Then, when you finally get there, you look back at the terrain you've traversed and wonder about all the wondrous undiscovered country in other regions extending off to the right or the left of the trail that brought you to this place. Yet, despite all the unexplored territory, you are satisfied that you have at least forged a single path to the other side.

Our ancient past is filled with amazing stories of beings who governed our existence. Whether they were gods descended from the heavens, extraterrestrial beings making their presence known while, perhaps, undergoing their own explorations, or whether they are simply comprised of deified human royal bloodlines and the stuffs of overwrought imaginings and religious control—whichever it may in reality be, they represent the mysterious elements of our past that have comprised the modern mythologies of today. If we take but a moment to stop ourselves in the tracks of our busy work schedules, hang up the phone, shut off the television and the Internet, close the calendar, stop shopping and mowing the grass, and simply “unplug” for a few moments and listen to the quiet, we will find that those voices are still speaking, beckoning us to come find them.

Conclusively answering whether or not extraterrestrial serpentine beings interacted with humanity and continue to make their presence felt from the stealthy shadows is as simplistically easy as finding God sitting on His patio having a cup of Darjeeling. What is certain is that humanity has been writing about these things since they first developed the skill set to record their personal histories. The plethora of occultists, religious apologists, scientists, true believers, skeptics, and experiencers can accomplish only one thing, and that is a presentation of the facts as they understand them. That is why all we are left with, beyond establishing points of history, anthropology, and archaeology—the bare tools of the trade—are the facts, which sometimes controvert the theories.

The things that seem to really matter to the questioning mind, most often never have solid answers. I am again brought to the words of the Richard Fyneman, astralphysicist contemporary of Oppenheimer and Einstein:

If you expected science could give all the answers to the wonderful questions about “what we are” or “where we’re going” or what the meaning of the universe is, and so on, then I think you could easily become disillusioned and then look for some mystic answer to these problems.

...I can live with doubt and uncertainty and not knowing. I think it’s much more interesting to live “not knowing” than to have answer which might be wrong. I have approximate answers and possible beliefs and differing degrees of certainty about different things, but I’m not absolutely sure of anything, and there are many things I don’t know anything about. But I don’t have to know an answer. I don’t feel frightened by not knowing things, about being lost in a mysterious universe without having any purpose.

...I can’t believe the special stories that have been made up about our special relationship to the universe...because they seem to be too simple, too connected, too local, too provincial. The earth! He came to the Earth! One of the aspects of God came to the Earth, mind you, and look at what’s out there, it isn’t in proportion. Anyway, it’s no use arguing it...we should look to see what’s true and what may not be true. Once you start doubting, which for me is a fundamental part of my soul, to doubt. And ask. And to doubt and ask, it gets a little hard to believe.¹

Did a race of Reptilians come to this planet long ago? Did extraterrestrials seed the human race or genetically engineer primordial hominids, creating a slave race? Were humans freed from bondage, led by a traitor from the ranks of the alien oppressors? Is there an extraterrestrial race that has sifted in and out of humanity’s affairs for all of recorded history, governing our destiny from the shadows? Or are we a race that simply evolves and grows, learning from the past and moving beyond our old superstitions and mythologies? Are we bound by religious thought and man-made myth, only to suffer at its invisible grasp until we move beyond the need for false messiahs and imagined gods, spirits, devils, and monsters that subjugate us to our own fears? Or is it truly that we are the creation of a one, true God, and all the rest is simply the concocted, fabricated veil of lies

and deceit, obfuscation and illusion that enslaves us to the dictates of the demonic evil that would stand in the way of our knowing that God in a more real, meaningful way?

These are the questions that I sincerely hope you are left pondering when closing the cover of this book. It is obvious that God does not go out of His way to present His case in a fashion that is not as old, cracked, and crumbling as the last surviving manuscripts telling his story. Accordingly, his opponents seem to work much harder gaining proselytes than He spends attempting to bring us to Him, and so answering the call of religion—even when told it is supposed to be a personal, loving God in charge—is a much more daunting challenge than simply believing things are what they are.

So, toss the coin in the air—or better, roll your 32-sided die. Are we simply creatures at the behest of some greater power, or are a race that lives, thrives and grows off of and in spite of its misty history and scaly mythology? Has humanity experienced the visitations of non-human entities?

Trust no one. Listen to no one. Adhere to no one. Grasp the gift of exploration and seek out the answers for yourself, for if you are comfortable simply living by the dictates of what someone else tells you is so, then you are doomed to live that life of constrained servitude. Think for yourself, and before you know it the answers will make themselves as evident as the nose on your face—the realization that all that remains in the end is a kind of forbidden knowledge, a rage with and beyond reason against reason itself, as exiles from the comforts of bondage, we are composers of a cognitive music that is not a spirituality or a religion, nor is it an eschewing of either, but it is a religion of no religion, a faith of no faith, a belief in no belief.

And, yet, there is that still, small voice...

“Extinguished theologians lie about the cradle of every science, as the strangled snakes beside that of Hercules.”

—Aldous Huxley

Notes

Chapter 1

1. Glueck, Nelson, *Rivers in the Desert: A History of the Negev: Being an Illustrated Account of Discoveries in a Frontierland of Civilization* (New York: Macmillan; Farrar, Straus & Giroux, 1959), p. 31.
2. Ramsay, William M., *St. Paul the Traveler and the Roman Citizen* (1982), p. 8.
3. Ramsay, William M., *The Bearing of Recent Discovery on the Trustworthiness of the New Testament* (1915), p. 222.
4. Roberts, Scott Alan, *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim* (Pompton Plains, N.J.: New Page Books, 2012).
5. *Muhammad: Maxime Rodinson*, translated by Anne Carter (1971), pp. 38–49.
6. “Studies on Islam,” edited by Merlin L. Swartz, in *Pre-Islamic Bedouin Religion* by Joseph Henninger (1981), pp. 3–22.
7. Muhammad, *The Holy Prophet* (Pakistan: Hafiz Ghulam Sarwar), pp. 18–19.
8. Carlson, Jason, and Ron Carlson, “Why the Secular Left Despise the Christian Right,” Christian Ministries International Website, www.christianministriesintl.org/articles/Why-Secular-Left-Despise-Christian-Right.php.
9. Heiser, Michael S., PhD, “The Nachash and His Seed: Some Explanatory Notes on Why the ‘Serpent’ in Genesis 3 Wasn’t a Serpent” (Dept. of Hebrew and Semitic Studies, UW-Madison), www.thedivinecouncil.com/nachashnotes.pdf.
10. Dalley, Stephanie, *Myths from Mesopotamia: Creation, The Flood, Gilgamesh, and Others* (New York: Oxford University Press, 1989, 2008), pp.13–15.
11. Sitchin, Zechariah, *The Twelfth Planet* (Harper, 2007), Chapter Five: “The Nefilim, People of the Firey Rockets.”

12. Heiser, “The Nachash and His Seed.”
13. Sitchin, *The Twelfth Planet*, Chapter Five: “The Nefilim, People of the Firey Rockets.”
14. Heiser, “The Nachash and His Seed.”
15. James, Peter, I. J. Thorpe, Nikos Kokkinos, Robert Morkot, and John Frankish, *Centuries of Darkness: A Challenge to the Conventional Chronology of Old World Archaeology* (London: Jonathan Cape, 1991).
16. Thompson, William Irwin, *Coming into Being: Artifacts and Texts in the Evolution of Consciousness* (Palgrave Macmillan, 1998), pp. 75–76.
17. Roberts, Scott Alan, *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim* (Psalm 82 and Elohim).
18. Heiser, Michael S., “The Plural Elohim of Psalm 82: Gods or Men?” Michael S. Heiser’s Website, michaelsheiser.com/TheNakedBible/2010/11/the-plural-elohim-of-psalm-82-gods-or-men, 2010.
19. Dalley, *Myths from Mesopotamia*, pp. 18–19.
20. Pye, Michael, and Kirsten Dalley, *Lost Civilizations and Secrets of the Past* (Pompton Plains, N.J.: New Page Books, 2011), “Cain and the First City.”
21. Green, Margaret W. “Eriduu in Sumerian Literature,” PhD dissertation, University of Chicato (1975), p. 156: “abzu is often applied to a cosmological region whereas Eridu more precisely designates a geographical site.”
22. Lambert, W.G., “Processions to the Akitu House,” *Révue d’Assyriologie, RAI 44* (University of Michigan Library, 1997) pp. 75–77.
23. Lawton, Ian, “Guide to Mesopotamian Gods and Pantheons (in Tammuz),” Ian Lawton’s Website, www.ianlawton.com, 2000.
24. Ibid.

25. Galter, H.D., “Der Gott Ea/Enki in der akkadischen Überlieferung: Eine Bestandsaufnahme des vorhandenen Materials” (Ph.D. diss., Karl-Franzen-Universität Graz., 1983).
26. Halloran, John, *The Sumerian Lexicon, Version 3.0* (Los Angeles, Calif.: Logogram Publishing, 2006), p. 54.

Chapter 2

1. Roberts, Scott Alan, *The Rise and Fall of the Nephilim*.
2. Feynman, Richard, *The Pleasure of Finding Things Out* (Basic Books, 2000).

Chapter 3

1. Kramer, Samuel Noah. *Sumerian Mythology: A Study of Spiritual and Literary Achievement in the Third Millennium BC* (Charleston, S.C.: Forgotten Books, 1997).
2. Malkowski, Edward F., R.A. Schwaller de Lubicz, *The Spiritual Technology of Ancient Egypt: Sacred Science and the Mystery of Consciousness* (Inner Traditions/Bear & Co., 2007), p. 223.
3. Her Holiness Shri Mataji Nirmala Devi Srivastava, *Meta Modern Era* (Vishwa Nirmala Dharma, first edition, 1995), pp. 233–248.
4. Barton, Stephen C., and David Wilkinson, *Reading Genesis After Darwin (“Midrash, Rabba to Genesis”)* (New York: Oxford University Press, 2009), p. 93.
5. Loud, Gordon, *Megiddo II*, Plates 240:1, 4. The serpents came from Stratum X (dated 1650–1550 BCE) and Stratum VIIB (dated 1150–1250 BCE) and cannot definitely be associated with the cult.
6. Macalister, R.A.S., *Gezer II*, p. 399, fig. 488. The serpent came from the high place area and apparently is to be dated in the Late Bronze Age.
7. Yadin et al., *Hazor III–IV*, Plates, pl. 339: 5–6. The serpents are from Stratum I (Late Bronze Age II). Yadin informs of their provenance in a personal correspondence.

8. Ringle, William M., Tomás Gallareta Negrón, and George J. Bey, “The Return of Quetzalcoatl” in *Ancient Mesoamerica* (Cambridge University Press, 1998), pp. 183–232.
9. Smith, Michael E., *The Aztecs (2nd edition)* (Malden, Mass.: Blackwell Publishing, 2001), p. 213.
10. Hancock, Graham, *Fingerprints of the Gods: The Evidence of Earth's Lost Civilization (1st Edition)* (Crown, 1995).
11. *Pliny the Elder*, eds. John Bostock and H.T. Riley (translators), “The Natural History.” 1855. viii. 33.
12. This list comes from wyrdin.com.
13. Bickel, Susanne, “Apophis” in *Iconography of Deities and Demons in the Ancient Near East*. Electronic pre-publication revision, November 20, 2007, accessed at www.religionswissenschaft.unizh.ch/idd/prepublications/e_idd_apophis.pdf.
14. Moscati, Sabatino, *The Face of the Ancient Orient* (Garden City, N.Y.: Doubleday Anchor Books, 1962), pp. 125–127.
15. Frankfort, Henri, *Kingship and the Gods* (Chicago, Ill.: The University of Chicago Press, 1962), pp. 145–146.
16. Lurker, Manfred. *Gods and Symbols of Ancient Egypt*, (London: Thames and Hudson, 1984), pp. 26, 10.
17. Frankfort, *Kingship and the Gods*, p. 180.
18. Lurker, *Gods and Symbols of Ancient Egypt*, 108.
19. Moscati, Sabatino, *The Face of the Ancient Orient*, pp. 125–26; and Lurker, *Gods and Symbols of Ancient Egypt*, p. 93.
20. Lurker, Manfred, “Snakes,” in *The Encyclopedia of Religion* (New York: Macmillan, 1987), 13:373.
21. Joines, Karen R., *Serpent Symbolism in the Old Testament: A Linguistic, Archaeological, and Literary Study* (Haddonfield, N.J.: Haddonfield House, 1974), p. 19.
22. Lurker, *Gods and Symbols of Ancient Egypt*, p. 108.

23. Frankfort, Henri, *Kingship and the Gods*, p. 119.
24. Franklin, Benjamin, *Pennsylvania Journal* (December 27, 1775).

Chapter 4

1. Milliren, Alan P. “Adlerian Theory.” Available at www.carterandevans.com/portal/index.php/adlerian-theory/69-adlerian-theory.
2. Aristotle, *Physics* 194 b17–20. See also: *Posterior Analytics* 71 b9–11; 94 a20.
3. Horney, Karen, *Self-Analysis* (New York: Norton & Company Inc., 1942).
4. “Reptilians,” Wikipedia, en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Reptilians.
5. “Reptilians,” Crystalinks Metaphysics and Science Website, www.crystalinks.com/reptilians.html.
6. “The Reptilians: Who Are They Really?” Dreams of the Great Earthchanges Website, www.greatdreams.com/reptlan/reps.htm.
7. “Alien Nation,” The Watcher Files Website, www.thewatcherfiles.com/exposing_reptilians.htm.
8. Rhodes, John, “The Reptilian-Human Connection,” [Reptoids.com](http://www.reptoids.com/Vault/ArticleClassics/1994RepHuConn.htm), www.reptoids.com/Vault/ArticleClassics/1994RepHuConn.htm.
9. “The Reptilians,” The Nibiruan Council Website, www.nibiruancouncil.com/html/reptilians.html.
10. “Reptilian Agenda,” David Icke’s Website, www.davidicke.com/articles/reptilian-agenda-mainmenu-43.
11. “The Occult Reptilian Sage,” Biblioteca Pleyades Website, www.bibliotecapleyades.net/sumer_anunnaki/reptiles/reptiles.htm.
12. “The Reptilians,” Whale Website, www.whale.to/b/reptilian_h.html.
13. Rhodes, John, “The Reptilian-Human Connection.”
14. Russell, D.A. “Speculations on the Evolution of Intelligence in Multicellular Organisms.” CP-2156, Life in the Universe Conference.

15. “Alex Collier: On Reptilians: The Draconians and the Paa Tal,” Biblioteca Pleyades Website, www.bibliotecapleyades.net/sumer_anunnaki/reptiles/reptiles33.htm#The%20Draconians%20and%20the%20Paa%20Tal.
16. Hecht, Jeff, *Cosmos Magazine 315* (June 2007). This article highlights the hypothesis of Dale Russell’s dinosauroid.
17. Russell, Dale, and Wallace Tucker, “Supernovae and the Extinction of the Dinosaurs,” *Nature 229* (Fenbruary 1971), 553–554.

Chapter 5

1. Gibson, David J. “The Land of Eden Located,” Unpublished manuscript, available at nabataea.net/eden.html.
2. Taylor, Bernard A., *Analytical Lexicon to the Septuagint* (Peabody, Mass.: Hendrickson Publishers, expanded edition, 2009).
3. Silva, Moisés, and Karen H. Jobes, *Invitation to the Septuagint* (Grand Rapids, Mich.: Baker Academic, 2005).

Chapter 6

1. Geary, Patrick J., *Before France and Germany: The Creation and Transformation of the Merovingian World* (New York: Oxford University Press, 1988).
2. Knight, Xharles, *The English Cyclopaedia: Volume IV* (London: Nabu Press, 2010), p. 733.
3. Rendina, Claudio, and Paul McCusker, *The Popes: Histories and Secrets* (New York: Seven Locks Press, 2002), p. 145.
4. Baigent, Michael, Richard Leigh, and Henry Lincoln, *The Holy Blood and the Holy Grail: The Secret History of Jesus and the Shocking Legacy of the Grail* (New York: Delacorte Press, 1982).
5. Burgess, Anthony, *But Do Blondes Prefer Gentlemen Homage to Qwert Yuiop and Other Writings* (New York: McGraw-Hill, 1986), pp. 33–35.
6. Gardner, Laurence, *Bloodline of the Holy Grail: The Hidden Lineage of Jesus Revealed* (Lions Bay, British Columbia, Canada: Fair Winds

Press, 2002).

7. Gardner, Laurence, *Genesis of the Grail Kings: The Explosive Story of Genetic Cloning and the Ancient Bloodline of Jesus* (Lions Bay, British Columbia, Canada: Fair Winds Press, 2002).
8. Hopkins, Marilyn, Graham Simmans, and Tim Wallace-Murphy, *Rex Deus: The True Mystery of Rennes-Le-Chateau* (Shaftesbury, Dorset, UK: Element Books, 2000).
9. Haskins, Susan, *Mary Magdalen: The Essential History* (London: Pimlico, 2003), p. 96.
10. Evans, Craig A., *Fabricating Jesus: How Modern Scholars Distort the Gospels* (Downers Grove, Ill.: Ivp Books, 2008), p. 94.
11. Pseudo-Fredegar, “Historia” in *Monumenta Germaniae Historica, Scriptores Rerum Merovingicarum, Tomus II* (Hannover Press, 1888).
12. Ellis, Peter Berresford, *The Mammoth Book of Celtic Myths and Legends* (London: Constable & Robinson, 2002), p. 28.
13. *Dictionary of the Irish Language, Compact Edition* (Dublin, Ireland: Royal Irish Academy, 1990), p. 612.
14. MacKillop, James, *Dictionary of Celtic Mythology* (New York: Oxford University Press), p. 366.
15. *Lebor Gabála Érenn: Book of the Taking of Ireland Part 1-5*. Edited and translated by R.A.S. Macalister. (Dublin, Ireland: Irish Texts Society, 1941.)
16. Ibid.
17. Gardner, Sir Laurence, *Realm of the Ring Lords: The Myth and Magic of the Grail Quest* (Lions Bay, British Columbia, Canada: Fair Winds Press, 2003).
18. Aho, Barbara, “The Merovingian Dynasty,” Watch Unto Prayer Website, watch.pair.com/merovingian.html.
19. Van Buren, Elizabeth, *The Sign of the Dove* (Suffolk, UK: Neville Spearman, Ltd., 1983), pp. 141–142.
20. Ibid.

21. Franke, Sylvia, *Tree of Life and The Holy Grail: Ancient and Modern Spiritual Paths and the Mystery of Rennes-le-chateau* (ZEast Sussex, UK: Temple Lodge Publishing, 2007), p. 127.
22. Patai, Raphael, *The Hebrew Goddess* (New York: Ktav Publishing House, 1967).
23. Blunt, John Henry, *Dictionary of Sects, Heresies, Ecclesiastical Parties, and Schools of Religious Thought* (Rivingtons, 1874), p. 95.
24. Mead, G.R.S., *Fragments of a Faith Forgotten* (Whitefish, Mont.: Kessinger Publishing LLC, 1992), p. 225.
25. Blunt, John Henry, *Dictionary of Sects, Heresies, Ecclesiastical Parties, and Schools of Religious Thought* (Rivingtons, 1874), p. 95.
26. *Biblia Sacra Vulgata*, Exodus 34:29–35.
27. Phelps, Reginald H., “Before Hitler Came: Thule Society and Germanen Orden,” *Journal of Modern History* (University of Chicago Press, 1963), pp. 245–261.
28. Goodrick-Clarke, Nicholas, *The Occult Roots of Nazism: The Ariosophists of Austria and Germany 1890–1935* (Wellingborough, England: The Aquarian Press, 1985, republished 1992).
29. Daim, Wilfried, *Der Mann, der Hitler die Ideen gab (The Man, Who Gave Hitler the Ideas)* (1958).
30. Kershaw, Ian, *Hitler: 1889–1936 Hubris* (New York: W.W. Norton & Company, 2000), pp. 138–139.
31. Bromer, Dietrich, *Bevor Hitler kam: Eine historische Studie* (Marva Publishing, Aulf Edition, 1933, 1972), p. 42.
32. Goodrick-Clarke, Nicholas, *The Occult Roots of Nazism: The Ariosophists of Austria and Germany 1890–1935* (Wellingborough, England: The Aquarian Press, 1985, republished 1992), pp. 127–128.
33. Strohm, Harald, *Die Gnosis und der Nationalsozialismus (Gnosis and National Socialism)* (Berlin, Germany: Suhrkamp, 1973).
34. Abrams, Kevin, and Scott Lively, *The Pink Swastiks: Homosexuality in the Nazi Party* (Founders Publishing Corp., 1995).

35. Goodrick-Clarke, Nicholas, *The Occult Roots of Nazism*, pp. 131, 142.
36. “The Merovingian Infiltration of the Christian World Through Monasticism,” www.angelfire.com/journal2/post/infiltration.html.
37. Blavatsky, H.P., *The Secret Doctrine (abridged & annotated edition)* (New York: Tarcher (Penguin), 2009).

Chapter 7

1. Easwaran, Eknath, *A Glossary of Sanskrit from the Spiritual Tradition of India* (Berkeley, Calif.: Blue Mountain Center of Meditation, 1970), p. 5.
2. Header of David Icke’s Website. www.davidicke.com.
3. Ibid.
4. In Icke’s own words at www.amazon.com/wiki/David_Icke/ref=ntt_at_bio_wiki.
5. Icke, David, “List of Famous Satanists, Pedophiles, and Mind Controllers.” The Forbidden Knowledge Website. www.theforbiddenknowledge.com/hardtruth/list_of_satanist.htm.
6. Icke, David, *Children of the Matrix*, p. 291ff; and David Icke, *The Biggest Secret*, pp. 30–40.
7. “Reptilians, Reptilian Aliens.” [Arcturi.com, arcturi.com/ReptilianArchives.html](http://arcturi.com/ReptilianArchives.html).
8. Icke, David, *In the Light of Experience* (Time Warner Paperbacks, 1993), pp. 190, 208.
9. Ibid., p. 193.
10. Icke, David, *Children of the Matrix*, pp. 30–40.
11. David Icke’s Website, www.davidicke.com/articles/reptilian-agenda-mainmenu-43.

Afterword

1. Feynman, Richard, *The Pleasure of Finding Things Out*.

Index

- Abel, 73, 77
- Abrams, Kevin, 184-185
- absolutism, 43
- Absolutism, the New, 128
- Abzu (mythical region), 61, 64, 73, 93
- Abzu (concept), 61-62
- Acts of the Apostles, 37
- Adam and Eve, story of, 26, 46-47, 64
- Adler, Alfred, 122, 123-125
- Adlerian philosophy, 125
- Akkad, 63
- Akkadian
- culture, 51
 - cylinder seals, 94, 95
 - religion, 57
- alien
- mythos, history of the, 141
 - race, first contact with, 29
- aliens, psychology of need for, 122-126
- Allah,
- meaning of, 41
 - origin of the name of, 42
- Amun-Ra, 114
- ancient texts, considerations when reading, 51
- angels, 47, 48
- Annunaki, 33-64, 161
- anthro-archaeo-mythological record, 49

anti-Semitism of medieval Europe, 178

Apophis, 116

- similarity to Satan, 117

archaeological evidence for biblical accounts, 35

archaeology and myth, 34, 44-46

- union of, 45

Ari, 177

Aristotle, 125

Arthurian legends, 174

Aryan root race theory, 186-187

Aryanism, Nazi, occultist origins of, 184-187

Ashcraft, Msgr. Jack, 41

Asmodeus, 176-177

Atlantean

- civilization, 75
- diaspora, 174

Atlantis, 168

Atrahasis Epic, 49, 60

Aztec culture, religious beliefs of, 107-109

Baholinkonga, 84

Bamidbar Rabbah, 39

basilica, etymology of, 111

Basilisk, 110

basilisk snake, 111

behavior,

- Adler's view of, 124-125 (*see also* final causality)
- Freud's view of, 124, 125 (*see also* efficient causality)

bene ha'elohim 52, 82 (*see also* Sons of God)

Bible, historical accuracy of, 35-36

biblical accounts, archaeological evidence for, 35

Bistea Neptunis, 167-169

Blavatsky, Helena, 186-187

bloodline

- of Jesus, 159-161, 165
- of Jesus Christ, 174
- of the kinsman redeemer, 146
- of the serpent, 26, 149
- theory, Luciferian, 177

bloodline,

- Jesus', 159-161, 165
- pure human, 26, 146

bloodlines

- of humanity, 139
- of European royal houses, 174

Book of Exodus, 39

Book of Genesis, 25, 34, 46

Book of Munster, 173

Book of Revelation, 153-154

Brown, Dan, 160

caduceus, 28, 89

Cain, 60

- descendants of, 177
- two alternate versions of the story of, 175-176
- as progeny of Eve and the Serpent, 73, 77
- as the first of the Nephilim, 80

Cainites, 179-180

Canaan, 41 (*see also* Canaanite region)

Canaanite region, 63

Catholicism and Protestantism, conflict between, 29

chthonic symbolism, 113

cockatrice, 110-111
Confucius, 105
conspiracy theory, 24
Constantine, Emperor, 42
context psychology. *See* surface psychology.
creation account, Hebrew, 71-72
 encoded message in, 73
creation accounts,
 African, 70
 Lakota, 71
 multiplicity of, 46
 Native-American, 70
 pan-cultural commonalities of, 46, 71
creation story, Old Testament, 45-46
crisis of faith, author's, 24
cultural religious mythologies, 26
cuneiform tablets, 52
 magical incantations in, 93
Cunningham, Graham, 92
cylinder seals, Akkadian, 94, 95
Dahomey, 28
Daim, Wilfried, 185
David, King of Israel, 36
deities, changing names of, 62
depth psychology, 123
Devil, the, 47
Dinosauroid Thought Experiment, 133-134
Dinosauroids, 133
dogmatic faiths, 43
Draco, 134

Draconian stories, author's amalgam of, 135-137

Draconians, 133

Ea (*see* Enki/Ea)

Ea' Den, 60, 64, 73, 83, 96 (*see also* Garden of Eden)

Edenic state, 83

efficient causality, 125

Egyptian Book of the Dead, 115

El Eliyon, 41

Elil, 40, 41, 59

Elohim

- as a plurality, 39
- as a plurality and a singularity, 58, 59
- of the Old Testament, 39

Elohim,

- etymology of the word, 177
- definition, 58
- first occurrence of the word, 58
- plurality and singularity of the word, 59
- second use of the word, 59

El Shaddai, 41

embedded messages, 27

Enki, translation of the Sumerian name, 64

Enki/Ea

- as bringer of forbidden knowledge, 73
- as linguistic precursor to YWHW, 92
- as prototype for the Hebrew Jehovah, 92

Enki/Ea, 41, 51, 57, 60

- common translation of, 58
- earliest form of the god, 62
- evolution of the name of, 63

Enmerkar and the Lord of Aratta, 93
Enoch (Cain's son), 146
Enoch (city), 146-147 (*see also* Uruk)
Eridu, 60-61, 95, 96
evangelical Christians, 43, 58
Eve's temptation, different interpretation of, 77
extraterrestrial
 encounters, 30
 life, human contact with, 140
faith,
 Apostle Paul's definition of, 85
 author's crisis of, 24
 science's need for, 89
faiths, dogmatic, 43
fall of humanity, 146
Fertile Crescent, 41
Feynman, Richard, 85-86, 203
final causality, 125
Flood of Noah, 109, 168
flood mythology, Native American, 109
Frankfort, Henri, 114
Franklin, Benjamin, 118
Freud, Sigmund, 122-123, 124, 125, 126
Fromm, Erich, 138
Gadsen, Christopher, 118
Gadsen Flag, 117-118
Gardner, Sir Laurence, 160, 161, 167, 173
Garden of Eden, 25, 28
Garden of Eden, story of, 64
 encoded message within, 73

translation of, 74-76
Geb, 115
genealogies, purpose of, 78-80, 146
Gilgamesh, 30
Glueck, Nelson, 36
Gnostic Cainites, 179-180
Gnosticism, 121
God in the Old Testament, many names for, 62
God,
 names for, 41
 identity of, 24
 psychology of the need for, 122-126
god-names,
 etymology of ancient, 41
 historical antecedents of, 42
gods of mythology, 40
gods, pagan, 42
Gospel of Judas, 180
Gospel of Luke, historical accuracy of, 37
Gospel of Phillip, 164-165
Gospel of St. Thomas, 166
grail
 mythos, 176
 quest, 174
 saga, 176
Greys, 141, 142
Hancock, Graham, 108
Hanks, Micah, 43-44
Hebrew
 Bible, 44, 62

view of the serpent, 98-103

Heiser, Michael S., 47

Herodotus, 37

historical reliability vs. universal truth, 38

Hitler, Adolph, 181-188

Hittites, 36

Hobbes, Thomas, 123

Holy Grail, 174-181

 location of, 176-177

Horney, Karen, 125-126

Ho Ti, 30

human nature,

 Freud's view of, 123

 Adler's view of, 123-124

Huxley, Aldous, 205

Icke, David, 126, 133, 190-197

Iktomi the Trickster, 71

Illuminati, 192, 197

Indiana Jones (character), 23

Ingersoll, Robert Green, 87

Islam, creation of, 42

James, Peter, 54

Jehovah, 63 (*see also* Yahweh and YHWH)

 correlation between Enki/Ea and, 95

 etymological link between Lucifer and, 64

 the paradoxical, 91

Jörmungandr, 28

Jesus,

 bloodline of, 159-161, 165

 bloodline theory of, 165-166

first recorded public miracle of, 161-162
Lucifer and, similarity of names for, 106
mythology surrounding ancestry and lineage of, 159
wedding of, 163
Judeo-Christianity, 44
Jung, Carl, 125
Kabah, 42
Kenites, 147
kinsman redeemer, concept of, 80-82, 146
Kneph, 84
Knights Templar, 166
 source of name of, 176
Kongfuzi. *See* Confucius.
Kripal, Jeffrey J., 74
Krishna, 83
kundalini, 98, 190
Lakota oral tradition, 71
language as a gauge of authenticity, 57
language, importance of, 56
Lilith, 175
Lively, Scott, 185
Lucifer as father of Cain, 175
Lucifer, 47, 48, 59, 74, 84, 153
 and Elohim, etymological connection between, 177
 and Jehovah, etymological link between, 64
 and Jesus, similarities between names for, 106
Luke, Saint, 37, 38
Lytton, Lord Edward Bullwer, 187
mal'ahk, definition, 47
Martin, Riley, 132

Mary Magdalene, 160, 163-166
Mary of Magdala. *See* Mary Magdalene.
me, definition, 54
Mehen, 116
Meroveus/Merovic, 158
 legend surrounding, 167-169
 meaning of name of, 168
Merovingian
 connection to serpent and Elohim, 157-188
 dynasty, 167
 empire, capital of, 181
 kings, 159
 race, true origins of, 169
Merovingians, 157-159 (*see also* Salian Franks)
 bloodlines of, 169
 Christianization of, 159
 link of the Jesus bloodline to, 160
 on Hitler, influence of, 181-188
Mesopotamia, Sargonic period in, 92-93
Mesopotamian
 civilization, 55
 people, 63
Messianic prophecies, sole purpose of, 82
Messianic prophecy, first, 78
Midrash, 39
Misiginebig, 109
mixed-blood lineage, our, 26
monotheistic society, Egyptian, 114 (*see also* Amun-Ra)
monotheists, Christian, 42
Moses,

medieval Western depiction of, 178-179

the historical, 41

mu, definition, 54

Muhammad, 41-42

myth, definition, 45

mythology,

ancient Egyptian, 113

current-day, 132

Hindu, 111-113

Irish, 169

Nachash

and Jehovah, etymological link between, 64

as trickster, 47, 71

as bringer of knowledge, 59

as bringer of forbidden knowledge, 64, 73

as illuminator, 64

Nachash, 47, 48

definition, 47, 58, 74

basis for the serpent character of, 64

Naga, 28, 111

Nagas, 84, 111

Nag panchami, 113

Nakhushtan, 84

Nazi Aryanism, occultist origins of, 184-187

necoshet, 90

nehushtan, 100

Nephilim, 29, 35, 38, 49, 77,

Sitchin's mistranslation of, 52, 54

Neptune, 40

New Age

movement, 189
philosophy, prevalent, 189-190
New World Order, 196-197
Ningizzida, 30
Nod, 146
 etymology of, 147
non-human
 beings, 26
 entities, 28, 142
norm, questioning the, 67
objective point of view, 35
Oannes, 29
Old Testament, 36 (*see also* Masoretic texts)
 as religious myth, 44
Ouroboros, 28
Pentateuch, 41, 90
perception and reality, 25-26
Pink Swastika, The, 185
Pliny the Elder, 110
polytheism, 42
Pontius Pilate, 36
Priory of Sion, 166
proto-religion, 44
Ptolemy, 37
pure human bloodline, 26
Pyramid Texts, 117
Qetesh, 29
Quraish, 42
Quetzalcoatl, 28, 84, 105-109
Ra, 114

similarity to God, 117

Ramsay, Sir William, 37-38

religion, skepticism and science as the new, 128

religion

- as identical to Reptilian/alien subculture, 122
- as a human construct, 88, 122
- as a mode of control, 88
- vs. spirituality, 122

Reptilian

- Agenda, 137
- beings, 44
- race, paucity of proof of, 129
- theory, 127
 - proponents of, 134
 - founders of contemporary thinking on, 139

Reptilian-Humanoids, 121-142

- paucity of proof for existence of, 133

Reptilian/alien

- mythos, 121
- subculture, 122

Reptilians,

- author's dichotomous approach regarding, 141
- depictions in Hollywood of, 134
- descriptions of, 133
- explanation for our belief in, 126, 130-132
- modern European royal families and, 161
- multiplicity of stories and theories regarding, 138-139
- personal contact with, 129
- shape-shifting abilities of, 193

Rennes-le-Château, 176

Reptoids, 133
rewriting history, 28
Rex Deus (bloodline), 161
Rhodes, John, 132-133
Rise and Fall of the Nephilim, The, 24, 26, 34, 35, 58, 75, 157
Rousseau, Jean Jacques, 124
Russell, Dale, 133
Salian Franks, 157-158
Saliens. *See* Salian Franks.
Samael. *See* Lucifer.
Satan, 47, 64, 154
Saurians, 133
science
 faith's need for, 89
 belief vs., 34
scriptural narratives
 as historically accurate, 36
 vs. secular historical accounts, 37
secular view, 43
Septuagint, 152
serpent
 as a bestower of knowledge, 84
 as a mythological influence, 30
 as a political force, 30
 as a symbol of fertility and sexuality, 96-98
 as agent of both harm and healing, 91
 as deliverer of esoteric knowledge, 91
 as emblem of Chinese culture, 105
 as mythological symbol, 28
 as religious symbol, 30

as representative of sexual desire, 97
as symbol of survival after death and resurrection, 115
figure, God as the divine force behind, 92
figures, two symbolic roles of, 89
goddess, pre-Dynastic Egyptian, 115 (*see also* Wadjet) in Hindu culture and religion, symbolism of, 112-113
in the ancient world, symbolism and presence of the, 89
pervasive presence of, 44
reptile in our historical folklore, 132
worship in Jerusalem, 100-101
worship, Palestinian, 101

serpent,
ancient Chinese view of the, 104-105
association of strength and influence with, 118
association of water with, 97
civilizations that revere and worship, 96-118
deifying of, 89
dualism of, 89
duality in nature and perception of, 118
Egyptian fear and worship of, 113
Hindu worship of, 111
Mesoamerican view of, 105
Native American reverence for, 109
sleeping, 190 (*see also* kundalini)
the crooked, 102-103
the multicultural, 87

Serpent, 25, 28, 47, 48 (*see also* Nākha)

Eve's sexual encounter with, 73, 77
identity of, 150-155
in the Garden, biblical story of, 68-69, 155

Jews as descendants of, 155
Moses' Brazen, 84, 90, 93
New Age movement and, 189-197
similarity between Enki/Ea and, 58
Serpent God of Darkness, 116 (*see also* Apophis)
Serpent Mound, 109
Serpent Seed Doctrine, 148-155
serpent-gods, Egyptian, 114
serpent-headed goddess, Egyptian, 114-115 (*see also* Thermuthis)
serpents from Hindu mythology, list of, 112
Seth, 80, 161
Shakespeare, William, 87
shamu, definition, 54
Shermer, Michael, 127
Sitchin, Zechariah, 52-57, 96, 126
skepticism, two kinds of, 127-128
Sons of God, 29, 47, 52, 82 (*see also* Elohim)
 vs. angels, 48
snake game, Egyptian, 117
Snake Marsh, 60, 73, 92-96 (*see also* Ea' Den)
Stenay, 180-181
Sumer, 50, 63
Sumerians, 61
Sumerian
 Ari, 177-178
 civilization, 41
 cuneiforms, 73
 hymns, 95
 language, 54
 mythology, 57

pantheon, 41
tablets, 59, 92, 96
texts, 51, 60, 161
 surface psychology, 123
 symbolism, chthonic, 113
theology as projections of humanity, 121
Thermuthis, 114-115
Thompson, William Irwin, 55-56
Thule Society, 181-186
 underlying occult theology of, 185
 underlying philosophy of, 183
Tigris and Euphrates rivers, 41 (*see also* Fertile Crescent)
Tower of Babel, Genesis account of, 93-95
Tree of Knowledge of Good and Evil, 71, 75
 symbolism of, 83
Tree of Life, 71
trickster
 beings, 25
 character, 47
Tritsch, F.J., 33
Tuatha dé Danann, 169-173
UFO visitations, 30
Uruk, 60, 93
 meaning of, 147
Wadjet, 115
Watchers, the, 29, 52, 82
Wilson, R.D., 36-37
women in scriptures, role of, 163-164
Yahweh, 47
YWHW, 41 (*see also* Yahweh and Jehovah)

early form of the name, 64

original meaning of, 63

Zeus, 40

Xia Dynasty, 103, 104-105

About the Author

SCOTT ALAN ROBERTS is the founder and publisher of *INTREPID Magazine* (www.intrepidmag.com), a publication that boasts an eclectic focus on science, politics, culture, ancient civilizations, conspiracies, ancient aliens, and unexplained phenomena.

Roberts is an accomplished illustrator and writer of fiction and non-fiction. He can be more or less defined by his roles as Dad and Husband, and is a parent to five exuberant children, three of whom are still young enough to live at home. These ingredients combined have made Roberts's life a paradoxical roller coaster of hellacious joy and insightful befuddlement, and were it not for his self-acclaimed buoyant, easy-going nature, he insists he would most assuredly have lost his sanity a long time ago.

Having spent the bulk of the last 25 years in advertising as a creative director, designer, and illustrator, Roberts's background is laced with varied and diverse skills and experience in publishing and marketing. He possesses an astute flare for the visually dramatic, demonstrated in his various ventures from theatre to comic book art and publishing, as well as advertising campaigns and public speaking.

After two years in a Christian bible college, he entered seminary, pursuing his Masters in Divinity (Mdiv) and worked as a youth director alongside his advertising career. His religious studies intensified his natural interest in spirituality, and his research of the paranormal expanded throughout the following years, much to the chagrin of many of his former Bible school fellows.

Shortly after his seminary years, Roberts began a small comic book publishing effort, writing and illustrating stories, which were also pitched as animated television series. He developed and published *The Bloodlore Chronicles*, as well as the highly successful *Ancient Heroes* trading card series, and began development on a series of chapter books. He authored and illustrated his first historical teen novel, *The Rollicking Adventures of Tam O'Hare* (www.tamohare.com), which garnered success in the teen and college markets in 2008 and 2009.

Roberts began his delve into paranormal investigation in 1999 by co-hosting and producing Three Horizons Paranormal Radio airing in Oklahoma City and several affiliates. He simultaneously launched a fledgling paranormal investigative long before the pop culture of paranormal investigation was “all the rage.”

Roberts's current projects include *Tam O'Hare and the Banshee of BallyGlenMorrow*, the second in his series of Tam O'Hare historical novels, and a more scholarly effort on the historical Moses, tentatively entitled *The Grimoire of Moses: An Historical Exploration of the Majick and Mysticism Behind The Great Exodus and Its Enigmatic Leader*, co-authored with archaeologist/anthropologist Dr. John Ward. He is also working on a joint authoring effort with *INTREPID Magazine* partner Micah Hanks, *At Odds: The Pervasive, Perpetual Conflict Between Science and Religion*.

Roberts is a standup philosopher, and frequent guest speaker at many conferences and events around the country and abroad. He is the former Editor-In-Chief of *TAPS ParaMagazine*, the official publication of SyFy's *Ghost Hunters*.

Roberts currently lives with his family not far from the Minneapolis/Saint Paul metro area, where he grew up and lived most of his life. You can see more visiting his Website (www.scottalanroberts.com).

RICHARD COOPER



THE UNPLUGGED ALPHA

THE NO BULLSH*T GUIDE TO WINNING WITH WOMEN & LIFE

RICHARD COOPER



THE UNPLUGGED
ALPHA

THE NO BULLSH*T GUIDE TO WINNING WITH WOMEN & LIFE

THE UNPLUGGED ALPHA

THE NO BULLSH*T GUIDE TO WINNING WITH WOMEN
AND LIFE

RICHARD COOPER

Edited by
STEVE FROM ACCOUNTING

Copyright © 2020 by Richard Cooper

All rights reserved. This book or any portion thereof may not be reproduced or used in any manner whatsoever without the express written permission of the publisher except for the use of brief quotations in a book review.

The events and conversations in this book have been set down to the best of the author's ability, although some names and details have been changed to protect the privacy of individuals.

Although the author and publisher have made every effort to ensure that the information in this book was correct at press time, the author and publisher do not assume and hereby disclaim any liability to any party for any loss, damage, or disruption caused by errors or omissions, whether such errors or omissions result from negligence, accident, or any other cause.

No information in this book is intended as a substitute for the medical advice of a licensed physician. The reader should regularly consult a licensed physician in matters relating to their health, particularly with respect to any symptoms that may require diagnosis or medical attention.

First Edition, 2020

ISBNS

Digital eBook Edition: 978-1-7774733-1-0

Paperback Edition: 978-1-7774733-3-4

Hardback Edition: 978-1-7774733-0-3

Audiobook Edition: 978-1-7774733-2-7

1818 Dundas Street East,

Suite 202,

Whitby, Ontario, L1N 2L4

www.entrepreneursincars.com

*I dedicate this book to all the men around the world that never
had a strong, masculine male role model growing up to teach
them about the cold, hard truth of modern women and the world
we live in.*

CONTENTS

Foreword

My Unplugging

1. The female primary social order
Men, the disposable sex
War brides
Toxic masculinity
The way forward
The cold hard truth
2. Women's rules - How they break them or make them
Enter the Amazonian
The Alpha to Beta conversion process
A thousand concessions
The cold hard truth
3. Why genuine burning desire matters
How to determine her interest
A Score of 9 - 10 shows Genuine Burning Desire
A Score of 7 - 8 shows Indifference
A Score of 1 to 6 shows they're a Detractor
Be attractive, not unattractive
Gauging your SMV
Validation sex versus transactional sex
Conclusion
The cold hard truth
4. 20 Red Flags
Red flag #1 - Daddy issues
Red flag #2 - Feminists
Red flag #3 - The unhappy and unlucky
Red flag #4 - She competes with you
Red flag #5 - Keeps men from her past around
Red flag #6 - Poor with money
Red flag #7 - Violent women
Red flag #8 - Extreme jealousy
Red Flag #9 - Party girls
Red Flag #10 - Heavily tattooed and pierced women

Red Flag #11 - Big notch counts
Red Flag #12 - Single mothers
Red Flag #13 - Women seeking validation
Red Flag #14 - She was a sugar baby
Red Flag #15 - Pathological liars
Red Flag #16 - Baby rabies
Red Flag #17 - Hissy fits
Red Flag #18 - Not being in control of the birth
Red Flag #19 - Drama queens
Red Flag #20 - Addictions
Conclusion
The cold hard truth

5. Single Mothers

Cuckoldry
Responsibility without authority
The victim mindset
Financial issues
Reprioritization
The BIG risk
When dating a single mother - might - make sense
The cold hard truth

6. Hire slowly but fire quickly

My single mommy experience
The business partner experience
The cold hard truth

7. Looks, Money, Status, and Game

Looks
Money
Status
Game
The cold hard truth

8. Manage Your Endocrine System

Optimal versus normal
My TRT protocol
How to boost testosterone naturally
In conclusion
The cold hard truth

9. Manage the fucks you give

Self-control
Mastering self-control
How do you strengthen self-control?

The cold hard truth

10. Getting “Da Girls” Online
The cold hard truth about online dating
How to assess your value
How to get results
Your biography
Messaging
The date aka: “The sniff test”
Getting laid and spinning those plates
Always be in control of birth
The cold hard truth
11. Promiscuous Primates
We are terrible at monogamy
How her sexual strategy constantly changes
Her cycles
Sex at Dawn
Cuckoldry
Men’s proclivity to “Oneitis”
Enter plate theory
Spin those plates
A monogamous Long Term Relationship (LTR).
The tattoo test
Open LTR
Polyamory
Conclusion
The cold hard truth
12. Own a Motorcycle
Masculine therapy
Shared interests
In closing
The cold hard truth
13. Master Violence
A powerful defense is the best offense
The cold hard truth
14. When men go their own way (MGTOW)
The problem as they see it
The dangers of “Red Pill Rage”
Surrender to female nature
Learn to accept it and then navigate it
The “Black Pill” solution
Sex dolls

The real MGTOWs
Rise of the Incel
Better safe than sorry
Conclusion
The cold hard truth

15. Why Smart Men Avoid Marriage

Family law
Domestic violence charges - A woman's trump card
How women behave during divorce
How the state encourages women to become single mothers
Arguments for marriage
Divorce and suicide
Children and divorce
How marriage changes men
How to minimize the risks of marriage
Conclusion
The cold hard truth

In Conclusion...

Glossary

FOREWORD

I met Rich Cooper in 2016. I'm loathed to call it a meeting, since it seems like no one really meets anyone face-to-face these days. At least not in the online spheres. Rich hit me up via email and asked me to come on his YouTube podcast, *Entrepreneurs in Cars*, for an interview. While the interview is still available on his channel, I *really* wish I still had that first email exchange.

I was two books into the Rational Male series by then and was working on the third. This was when I got a lot of requests for interviews. I guess this sounds conceited, but '*The Rational Male*' was maturing into the "*Bible of the Red Pill*"^w then. '*Preventive Medicine*' was getting traction, and I was consumed with the writing/compiling of '*Positive Masculinity*' that year. I wasn't doing interviews.

Hell, I didn't even show my face until 2017, but something about Rich's email struck me as raw honesty. I've always been very hesitant to talk with guys who I got a grifter vibe from, but I didn't get that from Rich. He was sincere in his

appreciation for what I put in ‘*The Rational Male*’ in a way that made me think: “Arigh, I’ll take an hour to talk with him.”

I’m glad I did. Since that first meeting, Richard Cooper has become a good friend, business associate, and a mind with whom I could bounce ideas off of. He’s a man who’s experienced a lot, has the stripes to prove it, but more so, he was honest in his assessments.

In this crazy *Manosphere* conglomerate of online personalities, there are a lot of damaged men. Physically, or psychologically, guys in this sphere can be insane. Some only mildly, some very intensely, some are well-meaning, while others are just malicious; it’s rare to find the *normal* guy among the autistics. Every man in this sphere is looking for answers, but what they do when they acquire those answers, and who they become after they gain that awareness, is based on where they began when they started looking.

Rich is a guy I would hang out with had I initially met him *in real life*. I didn’t meet Rich face-to-face until September 2017. But, when I did, we just talked like old friends. No pretense, no fawning admiration, just two men who related like men. Although, that might sound stupidly mundane in the foreword of a book by today’s standards in the *TL;DR* generation of the “*sphere*.”

I think he may have mentioned something about my work saving his life, but beyond that, we became fast friends.

Since then, Rich and I have worked on collaborations both good and *unwise*. Even through the worst of decisions, Rich has proven a good and balanced friend. But, at the risk of glossing him up too much, Rich is *honest* with himself – and this is the prime requisite of a true *author*.

So, it is with that where I will leave Richard Cooper, and you the reader, with a note of advice from one *author* to another: Stay honest with yourself and read this book with the intent of internalizing the ideas contained within.

– *Rollo Tomassi, November 2020*

MY UNPLUGGING

“ Learn from the mistakes of others, you can’t live long enough to make them all yourself.

- Eleanor Roosevelt

When it came to making mistakes, 2011 to 2015 were terrible years for me. I'd barely survived a divorce, my award-winning business was almost in ruins, and my heart was in pieces from a terrible experience with a single-mom that I'd dated post-divorce.

I knew I'd hit rock-bottom when I was seriously contemplating suicide. I remember driving my truck on the highway and thinking to myself: "If I just nail it, take off my seat-belt, and slam into an overpass freeway concrete pillar, it'll all be over quickly."

I was living in what psychologists have referred to as a “Safe World Theory.” A belief system that is a place of refuge, and it was completely shattered during these years. Towards the beginning of 2016 I had all the symptoms of Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder (or PTSD).

Something needed to change - and fast. But it wasn't the world, government, or women that needed to change. It was me. I needed to wake up and update my belief system because what I was doing, clearly, wasn't working.

In December 2016, I started my recovery when I was at a prestigious men's retreat. An attendee recommended a book called '*The Rational Male*' by Rollo Tomassi. It kick-started my path to clearer thinking and helped me unplug from comforting lies. I soon saw the uncomfortable truths about the world that we, as men, all-too-often struggle through.

It's a book that opens with the question "Why do my eyes hurt?" And the answer... "You've never used them before." The quote is taken from the movie '*The Matrix*'. During this infamous scene, Morpheus offered two pills to Neo: One blue and another red.

The "Blue Pill" offers a viewpoint that is one of falsehood, security, and the blissful ignorance of illusion. The "Red Pill" perspective offers us men the knowledge, freedom, and the sometimes-painful, truth of reality.

I had subscribed to the notion that good, virtuous, and strong will always prevail over all things bad, painful, and evil. However, severe blows to my belief system forced me to question that notion and adapt accordingly.

At the age of 38, I began the divorce process, two years after my only child was born. I quickly experienced the gut-wrenching reality of how badly family law treats men in today's Western world. How family law, and a female-first

primary social order, encourages women to behave horribly, and without remorse, towards the child's father.

On top of that, during the separation period, I was also forced to defend an attack on the company I founded ten years earlier. This attack by credit card issuers with massive legal teams, threatened to put us out of business by changing legislation that would financially strangle us.

After getting off a phone-call updating my business coach in 2011, I vividly remember closing the door to my office and turning away from the window (so my staff couldn't see me). I then put my face into the palm of my hands and began crying uncontrollably.

Only two years prior, I was on cloud nine. I had built a multi-million-dollar custom home, I was married to a lawyer who I thought was my "soulmate," and I was the father to a healthy child. Within one year I'd paid off my mortgage, and then bought my dream car.

Suddenly, I felt like my world was burning down around me. Before the divorce, my family and close friends always relied on *me* for being their rock, for being unshakable. Feeling this way was *completely* unlike me.

I spent \$60,000 on lobbyists and a year and a half of my life trying to save my business. I was in charge of 23 employees and we had thousands of customers. To make the business viable again, we had to pivot into an almost impractical direction, which put me in a position where I needed to become the lowest paid person in my company.

The final blow that led to my awakening came in 2015, after putting almost three years into a relationship with a single mother and her two young boys. I was betrayed in ways I couldn't fathom by a woman who I believed in and trusted. I put a massive amount of personal equity into a woman and her children. Only to be abused, lied to, and ultimately cheated on by her.

My *entire* world was an illusion, and it completely shattered my beliefs.

After that breakup, and for longer than I care to admit, I was re-experiencing the trauma through intrusive distressing recollections of the events, flashbacks, and nightmares. I routinely woke up at 3am and couldn't fall back asleep as my mind was subconsciously trying to reconcile what happened.

I started experiencing emotional numbness, and began avoiding places, people, and activities that reminded me of the trauma. I also had great difficulty concentrating and getting things done. These were all symptoms of PTSD.

Trauma is a normal reaction to abnormal events that overwhelm a person's ability to adapt to life. Leaving you believing that you were powerless.

One thing that happens when you take the proverbial "Red Pill", is your senses become heightened and more aware. You gain a new sense of clarity; things or events that may have fooled you before, become more obvious and you really begin to understand *why* certain events happened in your past. We call the process "unplugging" and we do it by updating our old belief system.

While some men get angry when they unplug from beliefs that weren't serving them, it calmed me. I became aware. Events in my life that previously didn't add up, *finally* made sense and I wanted to see how far down the metaphorical rabbit hole I could go. I needed an outlet and somewhere to express the lessons I was learning about how to live life in today's world as a man.

Fortunately, as I already had a platform, an audience, and a test bed to get feedback on my theories, I dove right in.

After becoming frustrated with my divorce, and the attacks on my business from competitors, on May 23rd 2014 I created a YouTube channel to marry up my two biggest passions in life: Entrepreneurship and fast cars. I made videos and uploaded them to YouTube and called the channel 'Entrepreneurs in Cars'. It started out showcasing my entrepreneurial friends in their success rides, then giving away business tips and lessons from the trenches as an entrepreneur.

But I soon ran out of friends with cool cars and stories to tell. That was when a regular viewer of my work said: "Do a video on the different types of women to avoid dating."

Well, I had just broken up with my single mother and had plenty of experience on what *not* to do in life, so I began sharing those stories and letting my wounds become my work.

Since I began talking about how men could become better, by adopting a "Red Pilled lens" to viewing the world, I've had over forty million views on my YouTube channel.

Questions soon flooded in from my viewers seeking clarity on areas in life they were stuck on. Mostly dating, divorce, marriage, self-care, business, and money. I also took so many questions from people going through their own unplugging struggles that I started coaching them one-on-one. I began taking copious notes and making videos on the lessons that I learned.

This book is a collection of my own personal experiences, the feedback from my community, and the *thousands* of people I have coached through their personal problems.

Many men have called me “The father they never had.” That I’ve taught them, by navigating this world with the truth that a Red Pill lens offers, how they could live a better, more fulfilling, and happier life that enabled them to fulfil their purpose. I believe that it’s my style of dispensing these experiences and cold hard truth bombs that has helped others connect the dots and see the world as it truly is.

However, I must warn you: Some of these stories and lessons may be inconvenient and many will shock you. Remember, the truth doesn’t care about feelings, or political correctness. Also, comforting lies always sell better than uncomfortable truths.

Ultimately, men live in a difficult time today as we are living in a “feminine first” primary social order. Men must embrace their masculinity and completely surrender to the notion that, by employing masculine virtues, there is a place for men to become the best version of themselves in today's world.

Society, culture, religion, the government, mainstream media, and Hollywood all lied to us. Which is why I believe wholeheartedly that a man's *true* mental health and happiness begins with an ability to navigate through life seeing things as they truly are - not as we've been told they are.

To get the most out of this book, clear your head and then really open your mind. Many of the concepts that I discuss will not be popular and some will be opposed. But, as I always tell my audience: "The truth will first piss you off, then it will set you free - if you let it."

Look, I am not university trained, with fancy pieces of paper with letters after my name, framed in mahogany on my wall. Like you, I'm just an ordinary guy that wanted to work on himself. A guy that can use a lot of key life experiences to point to some facts about life, self-care, women, money, masculinity, and navigating the sexual marketplace.

I truly hope you enjoy this book and the invaluable life lessons contained within.

Peace.

Richard Cooper

THE FEMALE PRIMARY SOCIAL ORDER

One of the most difficult concepts guys struggle with today, is that men live in a ‘female first’ social order. This is why I’m placing this chapter early in the book, because it’s important for men to understand how we, as a society, value the feminine over the masculine, and also why that is.

Until a man accepts this reality, and updates his core beliefs, he will forever struggle with the reality the Red Pill brings.

The average man has been fed a steady diet of silly narratives his entire life, such as: “Women are oppressed,” “The patriarchy is evil,” “Masculinity is toxic,” “All men are rapists,” “Women are victims,” and “Women get paid less than men for the same work.”

In actuality, *none* of these narratives bear any close resemblance to the facts. This outrage is manufactured by a “female first” primary social order, with it originating from a toxic version of feminism that is no longer about equality. But rather, female dominance and male submission.

When you pay attention, you will notice an ongoing narrative that dismisses the plight of men, and even somehow makes women the victim of male disposability.

Hillary Clinton illustrated this eloquently when she said:

“ *Women have always been the primary victims of war. Women lose their husbands, their fathers, their sons in combat.*

So, men die in war, but women are the most affected. As if to say that the, often painful, death of a soldier fighting for freedom is simply insignificant.

Men, the disposable sex

Dr. Warren Farrell is a soft-spoken, educator, activist, and author on gender issues. He was the only man ever to be elected three times to the board of the National Organization for Women, which is a feminist organization, and spent much of his life advocating for feminism.

During his work advocating for women, a switch flipped in his head when he realized that women are, in fact, *not* the oppressed sex. Instead, women are the protected sex.

But, when we change the discussion, and talk about a female primary social order that's not being the victim of men, then it invites anger, disbelief, and ridicule as if to say: “How dare you suggest that women aren't victims and that men are treated with disposability!”

In his book, ‘The Myth of Male Power’, Dr. Farrell spills the beans on everything he learned through his experience as a male feminist, while also pointing to the cold, hard, and indisputable facts about the “female first” primary social order that we live in.

Although he had advocated for women for decades, his peers and critics called his observations of the facts a “Promotion of misogyny.”

One of the cold hard truths that men need to get used to, is that, whenever someone has a problem with facts, the problem *isn’t* with the facts.

The truth is, *any* narrative that doesn’t put the feminine first today **will** be manipulated, so it is therefore seen as misogyny by default.

Some of interesting facts I discovered when consuming his work included:

- Men and women have similar mortality rates with prostate and breast cancer. Yet, six times more money is spent on researching breast cancer.
- 85% of homeless people in the US are men.
- Men get *far* longer prison sentences than women – for exactly the same crime.
- In divorce, men are more often left financially broken, with little – or sometimes no – access to his own children, while family law enriches the mother (at his expense no less).

- Men, by a wide margin, enter more dangerous professions by becoming: Roofers, Fire Fighters, Law Enforcement Officers, Miners, and Soldiers. A whopping 94% of workplace injuries are men. Men also commute further, and work longer hours than women do. So, while men do often earn more, it's because men take on riskier, and therefore higher paying, roles. Often trying to buy their way, like the good little beta bucks they are, to female approval and love.
- 24 of the Fortune 500 companies are led by female CEOs. So, the state of California, in an effort to equalize outcome (but without an equality of effort, or merit), passed a law in 2018 to *force* publicly traded companies to put more women on the boards of directors. Yet, there is no such push to get more women into coal mines, offshore drilling, or on garbage trucks.
- In situations where a parent is required to pay child support to the other parent, men are twice as likely as women to pay child support. Yet, unlike the disparaging term “Deadbeat dad,” there is no similar mainstream female equivalent. Perhaps “Deadbeat mom?”
- More than twice as many men are the victim of violent crimes compared to women (even when including rape), and men are also *three times* more likely to be murdered.
- Boys are taught in a female-centric school system. From the earliest grades, schools do a better

job educating girls. Women now earn a majority of Associate, Bachelor, Masters, and Doctoral degrees, and their share of college degrees increases almost every year.

- In every TV sitcom and commercial, men are portrayed as bumbling beta idiots. Incapable of doing anything right and are the butt of all jokes, while women are praised and celebrated.

These facts show us that society puts *far* greater value, and importance, on the lives of women over men. Society treats men as disposable and women as the protected sex.

That's okay, because we've always valued women over men. Let's just be honest about it, rather than pushing lies about women being the oppressed, while men are the oppressors.

War brides

Even throughout history, men have always been disposable, while women were valued and protected. Go back 20,000 years ago. If a hostile warring empire conquered a neighboring nation, then all men of fighting age that weren't killed during the conflict, were either killed afterwards, or put in chains and enslaved.

Influential young boys were recruited into legions to fight for the conquerors. While women and girls were taken into the conquering army, preserved as war brides, because of their value in childbearing.

To put that dynamic into perspective today, it's one of the reasons why women have a far easier time getting over a breakup than men do. Women, as a function of adaptation, need to be able to adapt quickly and move from man-to-man easily.

It's part of a woman's hypergamous nature to *always* seek the best male that she could get. Warring tribe wins? Then the men in that tribe now become her best option for survival.

Men have always been disposable protectors. Women have always selected the best men for survival. Even if that meant becoming a war bride to a conquering army that killed off, or enslaved, their family.

Toxic masculinity

We live in a time where “Toxic masculinity” means that “All masculinity is toxic.” This is especially true anytime a man commits a violent crime, or mass shooting.

In 2018, 19-year-old Nikolas Cruz took a gun, shot, and killed 17 people at his former high-school. He had his face painted all over the media, with headlines purporting that his actions were the result of “Toxic masculinity.”

The media published the following headlines after the event:



How Gun Violence and Toxic Masculinity are Linked, In 8 Tweets

- The Huffington Post

“ Toxic Masculinity Is Killing Us

- The Boston Globe

“ Guns don’t kill people; men and boys kill people, experts say

- USA TODAY

This was a boy brought into a world by an irresponsible single mother that allegedly drank alcohol during her pregnancy. Lynda and Roger Cruz adopted him as an infant. 17 months later, the Cruz family learned that Nikolas' biological mother gave birth to another baby boy, from a different father, who they also adopted. Roger died when Nikolas was four, leaving Nick and his half-brother to be raised by their now single, widowed mother.

Boys raised in a single-mother household have disproportionately higher crime rates and mental health issues. 73% of adolescent murderers grew up without a father. 85% of adolescents with behavioral issues originate from fatherless homes, while 85% of youths in prisons grew up in fatherless homes.

From reading the articles, you quickly learn that Nikolas was never taught discipline, determination, or resiliency. He was also a product of the ‘participation trophy’ generation where “Everyone’s a winner!” by default. Therefore, never needing to learn how to deal with defeat or rejection by women.

As his belief system lacked any ability to deal with women, or rejection, when he was bullied in school, and then rejected

by a girl he was fond of, it wasn't surprising that he defaulted to the feminine programming he grew up on. Ultimately, resulting in an outburst of anger and resentment, that lead to him going on to kill his school peers that rejected him.

Yet, when I searched the internet, I couldn't find one news article about how boys like Nikolas need a father growing up. Or, how 26 of the last 27 school shooters came from fatherless homes.

With an increasing number of boys being raised by single mothers, the vast majority of teachers being female today, most boys have extraordinarily little influence from strong, virtuous male role models growing up. Toxic masculinity isn't the problem - a lack of masculinity is.

You've got to learn to question societal narratives as a man; constantly ask yourself why men are being demonized and women are praised.

The way forward

The point of this chapter isn't to anger you. Rather, it's intended to expand the scope of your thinking as a man to the realities of the modern world we live in. And accepting the reality of where we stand is the first step in moving forward.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- Third-wave feminism isn't even close to being about "equality." Rather, it's about female dominance and male submission.
- Hypergamy is an evolutionary survival technique that ensures the female, and then her kids, are looked after by the strongest, most resourceful man.
- Society often sees men as the disposable sex. For example, the classic "Women and children first" approach on sinking ships (or other disasters).
- Men make up nearly all suicides (with many of them being because of failed past relationships - especially ones that involve his kids that he's no longer "allowed" to see).
- If you can't learn to accept this way of life, then you run the very real risk of taking the "Black Pill" and becoming exceptionally jaded against all women and pursuing any type of relationship with them (whether that is spinning plates, non-exclusive LTRs, or otherwise). You can prevent this from happening by updating your belief system with healthy adaptations and then learning how to maximize your benefits while minimizing the risks.

WOMEN'S RULES - HOW THEY BREAK THEM OR MAKE THEM

There is plenty of debate on what constitutes an alpha male and how to become more like one. Most men have heavy ego investments in what they believe and dictate what is what. So, I think it's pointless to get into those.

Instead, I'd like to defer to women. Which, as we already know, are the sexual selectors and, unlike the advice they give to men about women, their *behavior* won't ever lie to us.

In my life, I've been both the alpha and the beta. And it depended on how effectively my belief system was operating, and also the lens in which I was viewing the world. From my personal experience, and the many men I've coached, women will **always** break the rules for a man she deems to be alpha.

Like the cute "good girl" librarian that made you patiently wait three months for basic missionary sex when you were 20. She'll end up naked in bed with Chad Thundercock 15-minutes after meeting him in Ibiza at the foam cannon party on her 23rd birthday. You can also be certain she'll be doing everything she said she wouldn't do with you - with him.

Never forget: Women break rules for alphas and make them for betas.

If every alpha had a dime for every time a woman said, “I don’t normally do this,” when it comes to first date sex, sex without a condom, swallowing, or some other act she might later regret, men would be rich.

When women say: “I don’t do that,” always add to it in your head: “With you.” Because she’ll do it with a man who *she* deems worthy of such sexual gymnastics.

Women will **always** break the rules for an alpha. It always has been, and always will be, that way. Conversely, women will **MAKE** rules for men who they deem to be a mere beta.

They will make a beta wait eight, likely expensive, dates to sleep with them. They won’t perform oral for a beta and they won’t drive to a bar to meet (because it’s too far for her to bother for a beta male). Women **WILL** always make rules for betas.

Enter the Amazonian

It’s story time. I once had a first date with a thirty-something woman that I met online. She showed up around 30lbs heavier than her pictures suggested, and also quite a bit taller than I expected. But she was cute enough to have one drink with.

Women **will** subconsciously shit test men **all the time** to see if they are alpha or beta. So, a few swigs into my beer, and she proceeded to tell me how, after some bad experiences

with men, she now has an “eight dates” rule before she’ll sleep with them.

Nearly spitting out my beer, I chuckled with amused mastery, and called bullshit. I stated I don’t play games and I certainly don’t negotiate desire, or when sex happens.

I also told her it was childish, and interferes with the natural progression of the sexual dynamics and desire.

Men need to understand. Anytime you negotiate desire, it automatically creates obligated compliance. Which leads to resentment, and *nobody* wants that.

After some back-and-forth banter on the topic of her “eight date rule,” with a dilation of her pupils, and a huff of her giant tits in her push-up bra, she put down her girly cocktail. She looked me dead in the eyes, smirked and said “Okay, let’s fuck *right now.*” And made a gesture towards the bathrooms in the bar.

The same woman who was previously lecturing me about her “Eight date rule,” was ready to bang me in the bathroom. Literally only 20-minutes after I sat down with her.

It was a shit test - and I passed it with flying colors. It was also one of the few times in my life where I’ve passed on an aggressive sexual female advance.

If a woman is placing hoops for you to jump through, and tests to pass, then she is testing you as a beta, a provider. And I promise you, it’ll **not** end in amazing “Fuck me like you own me!” sex.

A woman **will** break all her rules if she views you as an alpha. Every. Single. Time.

She will enter your frame. She will come to you. She will swallow. She will have sex with you on her period. She will enthusiastically say “I want to feel you everywhere,” and put your cock in her ass. She will make you breakfast in the morning, make your bed, do the laundry. And, ultimately, if you can maintain the frame of such a dynamic on a long-term basis, she **will** become a compliment to your life.

However, a woman who's making rules for you views you as a beta. Every. Single. Time.

She'll make you wait for sex. You'll go to her. She won't perform oral. You'll be buying her dinner, be her shoulder to cry on, and she'll be the focus of your life. She will treat you like an emotional tampon. She'll use you to fix her car, hang shelves, and take care of her kids. All while she goes out salsa dancing with her girlfriends where she might meet Chad Thundercock one night and then fuck him in the nightclub's bathroom.

Men that operate in a beta frame end up getting cheated on *far* more than alpha males. They never get her best (in, or out of, the bedroom) and they end up marrying women that will only ever treat them like a plow horse.

As a man that she deems a Beta, you will have little say in family matters, raising the kids, or financial control. You'll go to your job every week while she drops off the kids in her SUV to school or daycare. Before she sits down in a coffee shop, after yoga class, cackling with her friends about how

useless their husbands are. They then complain they had to “give” sex to their Beta husband earlier that week, while they pine for their hot yoga instructor.

That same woman could have been in Ibiza for her birthday, enthusiastically fucking two cute Italian guys like a porn star in a gangbang, just moments after she met them.

The Alpha to Beta conversion process

A woman spends years 'changing' her man, then wonders what happened to the guy she fell in love with.

– Anon.

This process takes years, and can turn an alpha into a weak beta male – it’s often considered to be the process of “Betatization by a thousand concessions”. It is one of the many catalysts that leads to the trauma that men suffer, sending them online to seek answers and the truth.

This is a process I’ve spoken about many times in my videos and it turns men from a pet she loves and admires, to a plow horse that she sees as nothing more than a utility. A utility that she emotionally abuses and doesn’t want to fuck enthusiastically anymore.

If you aren’t aware, and you don’t control the frame of the relationship, then the chances are, this will happen to you. It will make you weak, soft, poor, and undesirable to your woman.

The process of “Betatization by a thousand concessions” is a genuine threat to you as a man, especially if you cohabit, or enter into a marriage, or have children.

Because of women’s innate hypergamous nature, women aim to marry up to a better man, so he generally earns the bulk of the income in the household. Meaning that the Betatization process could end up costing you a **significant** part of your past, and even future, wealth in a divorce.

But that’s not even the worst part. Since women still get primary custody of children around 80% of the time, most men not only lose their wealth, but also their decision-making capacity around their children. Meaning that they also lose their ability to father them properly.

Becoming a weak beta is one of the most dangerous things that happens to men in LTRs and marriages.

It is a process that women unknowingly facilitate. And men allow it to happen because we, as men, have been told our entire lives to put her on a pedestal and to be less - so that she can become more.

A thousand concessions

The timeline looks something like this: She locks down a man that she admired, wanted to fuck, and be with. Over time, he turns into the beaten down beta plow horse that succumbs to her beck and call. He performs chores *hoping* for sex, and is who she ultimately no longer wants to fuck - or even desires.

This phenomenon usually starts with: “Honey, put your dark socks in the dark hamper, and your white socks in the white hamper for whites”. It then progresses to “Let’s go vegan together!” and ends at “I love you, but I’m not in love with you, I want a divorce, so I’m taking the kids to my mothers”.

For a perfect illustration of what these Betatized married plow horses look like, pay attention to your next few trips to the grocery store. Now stroll by the baby diaper isle and look for the family doing their shopping.

You will start to see husbands with an exhausted and beaten down look on their faces. Their kids, aged one, three, and five, plus one bun in the oven, are out of control. His, now rotund, wife with her permanent “resting bitch face” scowls at him about how incompetent he is for putting the wrong diapers in the shopping cart.

Once you see this happen, it can’t ever be unseen. You will notice these types of men more often around you. At the mall, at your kid’s soccer game, and around social gatherings with friends and family.

This husband is the same man that she, many years prior, would look up to and potentially even had enthusiastically rough, monkey sex with. She would proudly present her new “pet” boyfriend for the first time over the holidays before proudly saying to her family, “This is Kevin, the VP of sales I told you all about from work.”

Heck, he was probably the same guy she would get in a quarrel with. He would hang up the phone to control the frame because he was subconsciously alpha enough to know

when a soft next worked. She likely drove over at 3am that same night, after he hung up on her, to let him fuck her in the ass, something she rarely did, just to calm him down and get back into his good books.

Kevin the VP of sales started out as an alpha but, through a thousand concessions to placate her whims during the length of the relationship, Kevin becomes the Beta.

An alpha does as he pleases, he possesses the traits of: Strength, courage, mastery, and honor. Men want to *be him*; women want *to be with him*. When women are with him, they will enthusiastically show it.

A beta on the other hand, is on the other end of the spectrum. He is not her first choice; he is an accessory to her life, a utility, a handyman and, in many cases, she'll also treat him like an ATM.

The worst form of beta is the cuckold. Which is the man that gets involved with a single mother, and then willingly raises the children of another man. Or worse, his wife gets knocked up by another man, and he, unknowingly, raises that child as his own.

Women don't divorce alpha men they admire and look up to. They generally leave beta men that become a plow horse to them. As a man, if you want to take on the risk of marriage and kids, then you **need** to be on your mission, always maintain the frame, and your alpha status.

Remember, in every relationship, one partner enters the others frame. It is therefore incumbent on you, as the man,

to ensure that your woman is in **your** frame. You cannot let the balance of that frame shift to her.

Far too many men, get married and actually *believe* the vows they take: “In sickness, and in health... for richer or for poorer... ‘til death do us part.”

The fact of the matter is, women divorce men *all the time* if the circumstances of the marriage change and she now deems you of lesser value to her. If you get fat, go broke, can’t hold down a job, or are utterly useless around a house, then a woman reserves her right to untie the marriage knot.

It’s why I tell men *all the time* that, taking on a marriage, or LTR, is *far* more work than simply dating, or spinning plates (and they both come with far more risks).

Never forget that, if you are going to get married or have kids, then it is imperative to control the frame, and **do not allow yourself to become a beta male.**

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- Women break rules for alphas and make them for betas.
- As unfair as it may be, the “Burden of Performance” is always on you. This means that you must always be on your A-game when it comes to frame, Game, and leading the relationship (more so if you’re married or in an LTR).

- If you notice her making rules, or setting conditions, on areas such as when she'll have sex with you (for example: "If you ever want to have sex again, then..."), you now **know** that she definitely sees you as a beta and that the frame has shifted.
- Learn to say "NO." It's a complete sentence that doesn't need any further explanation. If you've been pussy-whipped for years, then she'll likely be surprised. But also intrigued. Expect her to ramp up the shit tests to see if this new, more assertive you, *is* the real deal. So, you had best make sure it is.

WHY GENUINE BURNING DESIRE MATTERS

One of the simplest concepts a man must understand is “genuine desire.” What it is, why it matters, and how to measure it. When you get it right, it’s a superpower. But, when you get it wrong, it leads you to making *terrible* choices, leading to poor results with women.

A man will chase a woman who’s indifferent to him and suddenly wife her up. Only to find out, after two kids and seven years of investing his blood, sweat, and tears into the relationship, she’s leaving him for another man. A man she has more desire for, while simultaneously running him hard through the divorce machine.

In 2018 I recorded a video in my car while heading home from the office, talking about why genuine burning desire matters with women. To find this video, search ‘genuine burning desire’ on my channel.

I’ve created a simple system to make it easier to determine her interest in you.

How to determine her interest

I've been using a measurement system in my business for over 10-years now called the "Net Promoter Score" (or NPS). It's a system which uses a measurement scale of 1 - 10. The system highlights three distinct levels of interest that a potential customer has in your business.

You survey your customers with the question: "On a scale of 1 - 10, how likely are you to recommend our services to a friend or colleague?" When you plug in a formula after conducting your customers' surveys, it tells you how much interest your customers have in your business.

The levels of interest are:

- A score of 9 to 10: These customers are your "Promoters" and they love what you do.
- A score of 7 to 8: These customers are indifferent. They have nothing good, nor bad, to say about you.
- And finally, a score of 1 to 6: These customers are your "Detractors" and they *don't* like you.

You may wonder why I am applying a business measurement tool to a man's life.

It's because the answers to most of the struggles we have already existed elsewhere. We simply need to identify them and then apply what works.

However, we aren't interested in the NPS of you as a man. That would require sampling every woman you've either

dated, or are currently dating, to find out what your NPS would be. It's impractical to survey so many women with such a question and expect an honest reply. But understanding *how* to measure desire is important and you **must** know why genuine burning desire matters.

Let me break down the way desire works for you:

A Score of 9 - 10 shows Genuine Burning Desire

When a woman *truly* desires you, you'll know it. She'll show up on time and call or text you without you making the first attempt. She'll also respond quickly, willingly enter your frame, and complement your life (without wanting to be the focus of it).

She will also ask you questions to get to know you better. She may also buy you random gifts, make you meals, and follow you closely on social media. She will even message you first on a dating app, always responding quickly. She will show up for dates with make-up and nice clothes, she'll enthusiastically fuck your brains out and swallow your load.

She will also often initiate sex with you, unprovoked. When a woman genuinely desires you, it will be as obvious as taking a blow from a frying pan to the forehead.

A Score of 7 - 8 shows Indifference

When women are indifferent, they frequently reschedule/cancel dates, ask for more than they give, become bitchy, and sometimes confrontational. She will shit

test you often, take longer to respond to your texts/calls, not put much effort into her appearance when you see her, and she will rarely ask you questions to get to know you.

If you message her on a dating app, she'll be slow to respond. Her interest in the bedroom will also not be very high either. She'll be far less likely to want to suck your cock and she'll rarely initiate sex with you. When a woman is indifferent to you, it will be obvious.

A Score of 1 to 6 shows they're a Detractor

When women are detractors, they will not respond to your calls or texts and they will not go out on dates with you. They will not follow you on social media, and if you message them on dating apps, they will not respond. When a woman is a detractor, it will be obvious.

Every man, when dealing with a woman on a romantic level, should always gauge her interest in him by watching her behavior. He must respond accordingly by only allocating his valuable time, energy, and resources on the woman who shows him a strong, genuine, burning desire.

Be attractive, not unattractive

Men are natural problem solvers. So, your next logical question is: "How do I create such an enthusiastic desire in her so she signals a clear indicator of interest in me?".

The answer is that you can't manufacture it. It must be natural. You **must** be a man that is desirable. You **must** be a

man that exudes confidence, competence, and strength.

It's unlikely that a woman with only a detractor level of interest in you will ever enthusiastically become a promoter and want to fuck you.

It's not that it can't happen. I've had *plenty* of women over the years, from my past, that may have been passively interested in me back then, only to express a much higher desire later on down the road as my "Sexual Market Value" (or SMV) had greatly improved. This often happens when she deems that her SMV has gone down as "The Wall" does its work. All while watching your SMV go up as you approach your own SMV peak later in life.

For a definition of what "The Wall" is, check out the [Glossary](#) at the back of the book.

However, at the end of the day, you must ask yourself why would you want to get involved with a woman that gave her best to someone else, making you her second choice.

The genuine burning desire you receive from a woman must be organic. You *cannot* manufacture it, or negotiate it. Anytime you negotiate desire, you get obligated compliance in return, which only leads to resentment further down the line.

You can, however, work on yourself. In fact, it is the only part of the universe that you *can* control. If you are fat, fix it. If you are broke, fix it. If you don't understand "Game", learn it. If you are socially insignificant, learn to become influential.

These aspects are truly within your control. Some men will argue that they are short and that their height is out of their control. True, but if you aren't tall, then do the work to be a fit, rich, smooth, short badass.

If you are not a high-value man that commands a high level of attention, then you cannot expect a "10" to want to rip off your clothes enthusiastically and jump your bones.

Your highest "Return on Investment" (or ROI) in life will always be that of being a man of vision, purpose, and who is always chasing excellence.

Gauging your SMV

Ask yourself the question: "On a scale of 1 to 10, with 10 being the absolute best version of myself, and with 1 being the worst, where would I place myself right now?"

It's important to note that you aren't comparing yourself to anyone else - it's only about you.

A perfect 10 would mean that you have already achieved the level of wealth, self-care, success, income, desirability, social recognition, and community, that you couldn't do much better. You live where you want, drive cars you love, take vacations when and where you want. You look masculine and strong, women are constantly seeking your attention, and you never worry about money.

If you are rating yourself a six or lower, then I'd suggest limiting your dating, or perhaps stop dating entirely, and go fix yourself before you go chasing after women.

Your ROI on the time invested with women will be low and you will probably become frustrated with your results.

Because of hypergamy, women always seek men who are a few points higher than them on the SMV scale. So, as a man, you have the burden of performance to do the work on yourself.

Remember: “Men are made; women are born.” You need to do the work on yourself if you want to be successful with women. Never forget that women have always viewed men as success objects, whereas men have always viewed women as sex objects.

Validation sex versus transactional sex

Women with a high level of desire for you will have sex with you for validation. They crave it, and it’s enthusiastic. When women have validation sex, the risk of her claiming either a #MeToo or a false rape claim allegation, after the fact, is almost zero.

I’ve seen women who crave that validation sex from me drive 45-minutes, in the middle of the night, during a work week, and throw down a dark towel to fuck me enthusiastically on their period.

When women fuck a man for validation, her vagina is soaking wet, your bed will be wet, she will do anything to please you, including swallowing your load, or do anal first, and then swallow your load. There is virtually no limit to

what a woman will do with a man that she has an enthusiastic and genuine desire for.

Indifferent women will either have transactional sex with you, or try to use it as a negotiation tool. It's women that have transactional sex that are more likely to claim a #MeToo, or false rape accusation against you. Just because they regretted their choice at a later date.

When women have transactional sex with you, her vagina isn't soaking wet. She won't do much in bed and it will often come with some requirements in exchange for the intimacy she's "giving you." There's a growing trend amongst beta men who are resigned to doing "choreplay".

"Choreplay" is defined as a man who is doing the household chores, that the female would normally do, in exchange for sex.

Simply put, you *cannot* negotiate genuine desire with a woman. Once you start down the path of transactional sex, the clock starts counting down to the end of the relationship.

If a woman won't do something sexual then, in your head, add "with you" to the end of her statement when she declines it. For example, when she says: "I won't do anal." then add "with you" to the end. Make no mistake about it, she *will* enthusiastically do it for validation with a man that she has a genuine, burning desire for.

Conclusion

It's absolutely *vital* that you only invest your limited time in women whose actions show you, beyond any doubt, that she has nothing but a *genuine*, burning desire for you. However, never forget that the "Burden of Performance" *always* rests firmly at your feet. It's up to you, and no-one else, to become the top-tier man that commands that level of genuine desire from a high-value woman.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- Your highest ROI in life will **always** be that of being a man of vision, purpose, and who is **always** chasing excellence.
- Negotiated desire only ever leads to resentment, from both parties, down the road.
- Rest assured, once you've experienced the pleasures of a woman who displays a genuine desire and attraction to you, it'll be easy for you to spot anything less from that point on.

20 RED FLAGS

On my YouTube channel, I often reference the phrase “She has more red flags than a Chinese communist parade.” In this chapter, I want to dive a little deeper into the riskiest red flags that men need to be aware of as they navigate their life around women.

I’ve made plenty of these mistakes myself and have counseled hundreds of men who’ve done the same. Therefore, it’s *essential*, for your own wellbeing, that you do not ignore these red flags.

Keep in mind that you *can* pursue a deep relationship with a woman who displays any of these red flags. However, in my estimation, the juice simply isn’t worth the squeeze, and the risks *far* outweigh any reward.

If you are a woman reading this chapter, and you identify with a red flag, then don’t get upset. Instead, like I keep reminding men: work on yourself, take ownership, and seek counseling.

As many men have observed, the wrong woman can ruin your life if you let her in it. Therefore, learning how to spot red flags early is an *essential* skill for men to master. Even though this chapter covers the 20 major ones I've identified, plenty of others exist – so keep your eyes open.

If you choose to involve yourself with any of these types of women, then my advice, unless otherwise stated, is to limit your interaction to a “Friends With Benefits” (or FWB) relationship and to keep spinning plates. As soon as you identify one or more of these red flags, limit her to plate status, or pass on them and make no further emotional investment in either her, or in a relationship with her.

There are women out there that *will* add value to your life – if you keep the wrong ones out.

I'm also approaching this chapter with the assumption that you are a man of purpose that values his own masculinity, strength, and traditional male competency skills.

Beta men constantly make concessions and excuses, while accepting red flags. Whereas a high-value alpha male keeps chasing excellence and his purpose in life. He doesn't let problem women interfere with his life's mission.

Red flag #1 - Daddy issues

If she doesn't have a friendly relationship with her father, or had an acrimonious relationship with him growing up, then she likely has a variety of daddy issues. Whether her mother pushed her dad out of her life, or that he was absent, or

perhaps he was disinterested in being a dad and instead, acted as a piece of furniture in the house.

Either way, any woman that didn't have a solid relationship with a strong, masculine, and virtuous father in her life will not value a masculine, virtuous, alpha man.

If she didn't value her father, what makes you think she will value you? I've counseled far too many men that have tried far too hard to rescue women with daddy issues. It's *never* worth your time.

Another area of concern with daddy issues is that it's often tied into Borderline Personality Disorder (or BPD). Women with BPD frequently originate from fatherless homes, which breeds their fear of abandonment. This fear continues as they become adults, where they will presume that they will, once again, be abandoned. They then act out in such a way that will make abandonment certain.

BPD women are so dangerous because they operate in extremes, they can be freaks in the sheets and then immediately act like a classy lady on the street.

A BPD woman can quickly go from hot to frigid cold. Such BPD women can hook a guy in by pretending to be a caring, loving, and nurturing woman. A BPD woman can create the false sense of perfection that makes you say "Wow, a woman who *finally* loves, respects, *and* appreciates me!"

Asking her "Tell me about your parents growing up" early on helps you to identify, and then filter out, women with daddy issues. Remember that you have two ears and one

mouth. So, use them in that ratio – ask, *then* listen. She will often tell you her story.

I've had my fair share of experiences with women who had daddy issues and they are *never* worth your time, effort, or resources.

A woman's father is her primary role model growing up and provides the foundation that governs her belief system. And includes the lens in which she views both men and women, and how they should interact.

However, the origin of her issues is irrelevant because, if she expresses disdain for her father, she is unlikely to value men.

Single mother households, especially feminist ones, are a petri dish for today's women with daddy issues. A feminist-identifying mother will instill toxic values in her daughter. Instead of valuing you, you'll be deemed as a "privileged male" and will be resented for your masculinity.

After my divorce, I dated a woman who had three older siblings. Her mother became a widow before my ex was born. Instead of being a single mother of three, she optimized her hypergamy and looked for a beta provider. She eventually had a fourth child, my ex-girlfriend, with her second husband.

My ex's mother died of cancer while she was in her early twenties. When I asked about her relationship with her father, she claimed unforgivable indiscretions that her father was responsible for. She painted her mother as a feminist

saint and her father as an abusive, misogynist cheater, and child abuser.

While we were dating, my ex went almost twenty years without contact with her father. She unsurprisingly identified as a feminist, became a single mother of two herself, and subsequently had little regard for men and masculinity - unless it served value to her and her children. She then dismissed them once she capitalized on their value.

While she constantly battled her internal conflict to find a high-value man, she also resented masculine energy and claimed that men didn't subscribe to her solipsistic feminist beliefs.

My ex ran away from Canada after her mother died to teach English in Asia. She then partied through her young adult years with many men there, came back at her epiphany phase, married a beta male that pined for her at 28 to fulfill her biological clock. Before promptly divorcing him at 38 when she deemed that he no longer served any purpose to her.

A popular video on my channel called '*3 Women Men Should Avoid Dating*,' was based on the multiple women that I had dated that had:

1. Daddy issues,
2. Needed saving,
3. Fought with her children's father.

These types of women will never take ownership for their own lives. When I did that video titled “*3 Women Men Should Avoid Dating*” on my channel, women with daddy issues sputtered their insecurities in the comment section.

Red flag #2 - Feminists

I briefly touched on this in the previous “daddy issues” red flag. Many western women today either identify as a feminist, or have welcomed toxic feminist beliefs into their schools of thought. They’re indoctrinated to believe that men are privileged, that men hold women back, and that men succumb to the patriarchy.

Thankfully, the devout lifetime feminists are typically easy to spot. They:

- Avoid traditional feminine cues and instead opt for shorter, unnaturally dyed hair colors (think bright blue, purple, or red),
- Mutilate their body with several tattoos and/or facial piercings,
- Are often overweight and usually dress in ill-fitted clothes.

Compared to keeping themselves fit, well dressed, and groomed to maintain their physical appeal to men.

Feminism preaches radically leftist political views that fight for unlimited free abortion, elevate single mothers on a pedestal, and claim that masculinity is “Toxic.”

Feminists hate it when the State imposes limits on abortion and tries to force them to be mothers. However, they more than happily use State family law to force men to be fathers.

Feminism teaches women to vote for the welfare state, massive government handouts, huge tax rates on top income earners, and social programs that widely benefit a female primary social order.

A feminist will never appreciate you or value you as a man. Feminism teaches women to be victims, and anyone with a victim mindset can't find happiness.

Today's version of feminism is so toxic that it is anti-femininity. It encourages women to hate men, while simultaneously encouraging them to behave like men, and that they should ditch the notion of motherhood to prioritize their careers.

Feminism doesn't seek to make women better, or more feminine. Feminism seeks to make women into terrible versions of men.

Ownership is a concept that most women struggle with. However, feminists are often completely unfamiliar with it, and so everything will be the fault of the patriarchy.

Therefore, avoid *any* woman that identifies as a feminist - at all costs.

Since the #MeToo movement, we have seen several exceptional men fall to the false claims of sexual harassment or rape, and the vast majority of these false charges originated from feminist women.

Sadly, even feminine cues are not enough anymore. There are plenty of women out there that identify with feminist values that remain feminine in appearance, and these are the ones you must be the most careful with. As they are on a transformational path to obesity, collecting cats, and eventually short and brightly colored hair.

If you are getting into an LTR, or are even considering marriage, it is *vital* that you give yourself a good two years to watch both her behavior and her choices in life. Pay close attention to her *before* you do something silly, like marrying a woman that appears feminine, but internally idealizes feminist propaganda.

Red flag #3 - The unhappy and unlucky

Robert Green's tenth law states: "Avoid the unhappy and unlucky." If you haven't read '*The 48 Laws of Power*', do yourself a favor and read it and always avoid the unhappy and unlucky.

And while this doesn't only apply to women, I note it here in this chapter as these types of women are a complete waste of your time. Their perpetual unhappiness will rob you of your joy.

Such women always have some problem going on in their life that attracts the "Captain Save-a-Hoe" type of guys to swoop in and rescue them from their own shitty existence and choices in life.

The unhappy and the unlucky often go from man to man, draining them of their joy and fortune. They are a magnet for drawing drama into their life - and yours. Therefore, only associate with the happy and lucky.

Red flag #4 - She competes with you

A woman that constantly tries to compete with you might seem cute at first, but it's a test of your competency as a man, and it's an underhanded behavior that ultimately aims to reduce your worth to her.

The female primary social order tells women that they are better than men, and it's why we see the rise of the "Boss girl" on social media. I once dated a woman that competed with her brother growing up, and that competitive behavior continued into her relationship with me.

It's a red flag because when women compete against you, she thinks she is better than you. A woman that thinks she is better than you *will not respect you* and will, ultimately, try to undermine you.

For a woman to satisfy her hypergamy, she must feel like she is with a man that, in her eyes, has at *least* 1-2 Sexual Market Value (or SMV) points more than she does.

A woman won't try to compete with you when she believes your value is greater, she will instead admire you. Remember, women want to be with a giant. She wants to look up to you. Hypergamy never seeks its own level; hypergamy can only be satisfied if it does better than itself.

A woman constantly competing with her LTR, or husband, is always a prelude to a train wreck.

Red flag #5 - Keeps men from her past around

Women like to have options. A recent survey showed that almost half of all married women admitted to having a “back-up plan” (aka: another guy). If you are getting into an LTR and she wants you to abandon your sexual strategy of unlimited access to unlimited women, then *she* needs to burn the ship on the shores of her new life with you and cut *all* emotional ties with other men.

Now, some women end up as an “Alpha Widow”. An “Alpha Widow” is a woman who pines for that high value alpha that didn’t commit to her in her earlier years.

She may not be in contact with him anymore. However, if she still sees him as the one that “got away,” and she keeps a place for him in her head, and therefore in her heart, then she *will never* see you as her best option.

It’s imperative that she has a genuine, burning desire for you. You don’t want to be “Good enough.” You want to ensure that you are getting her absolute best.

Trust me when I say that no good ever comes from her having lunch with ex-boyfriends, or other male friends, and you *certainly* do not want to be the guy she “settled” for.

If you are a man that is chasing excellence in his life, then you don’t need distractions like your woman seeking attention from, or still pining for, other men.

Men and women have little in the way of common interests; other than men wanting to have sex with women and women wanting to extract attention or resources from men.

There should be no room for male “friends” in her life if you are in an LTR. Women like this should be a plate, at least until they can prove that they are over their past.

Red flag #6 - Poor with money

Some of you may know this already from my videos, but I’m well versed on financial services from my past businesses, and when women are bad with money, it’s often serious trouble.

If she is an adult and doesn’t have a pot to piss in or a window to throw it out of, then she is not to even be considered for an LTR. I’ve seen *far* too many men trying to play “Captain Save-a-Ho” and bail out women with horrendous debt and terrible spending habits.

Despite the lie feminism has told women that they only earn 75 cents for every dollar a man earns, women have every opportunity to earn a good living today.

Yet, women *still* continue to choose careers that pay *less* than men, while going into deep debt by overspending. Ultimately, if she can’t manage her monthly cash flow and has nothing but a pile of handbags and shoe collection to show for her debt, avoid her for anything more than a FWB, because she will make *her* financial problems *your* problem.

Red flag #7 - Violent women

Women that have violent tendencies are a **massive red flag**. Early signs of violence are as small as a punch, or a shove. However, I've counseled *many* men that have dodged knife attacks or even objects being thrown at them from their angry woman that was having a hissy fit.

Men are physically stronger than women, so when there is a domestic violence call into the police, even if you are the innocent party making the call, or defending yourself, it's likely that they will take you away in handcuffs, rather than her.

In most domestic violence cases, men are automatically presumed guilty and women are protected, even if she was the one starting the physical abuse. I've seen peaceful men, during a divorce, removed from their own home and children, because a violent woman accused her husband of domestic violence that never happened.

Violence from any woman towards you, for any reason, should **never ever** be tolerated, and is grounds for terminating the relationship immediately. To protect themselves, men **must** use their cell phone as a shield, and record a video of her erratic behavior as proof for the authorities.

If I haven't made my point clear enough yet - avoid all violent women **at all costs!** They aren't even worth an FWB arrangement! When it comes to violent women, the juice *truly* isn't worth the squeeze.

Red flag #8 - Extreme jealousy

Women want to be with a man that other women want to fuck. But they don't want their man fucking other women.

This dichotomy of female nature is something that men will always struggle with. A degree of jealousy, also known as competition anxiety, is an excellent thing as it keeps her working hard to keep you. But it becomes undesirable when the women are so insecure in themselves that they always make her problems your problems, distracting you from your purpose.

They will be like a predator drone, always keeping watch on you. She will constantly text, scan through your receipts to see where you've been, what was ordered on the receipt, look for hairs that aren't hers, she'll want to look in your phone, creep on women that follow and like your social posts, and count the number of condoms in your nightstand drawer.

It's exhausting. She will drain you of your sanity, joy, and dignity. Jealous women have work to do on themselves, and it's honestly not your job to be their therapist.

Red Flag #9 - Party girls

Most women under the age of 27 that have never been in an LTR are in their party years. If you met your girl in a nightclub, bar, or other social event, and she claims to be relationship material, but still continues to party several nights a week, you have two options:

1. Tell her that women with boyfriends don't go out partying and if she continues, you walk away.
2. Keep her as a plate only.

The “party years” aren’t exclusive to women under 27 either. Sometimes, she was married young, had kids, and got divorced in her thirties and missed her “party years.” So, it’s not uncommon to see women in other stages of their life trying to re-live that missed party era as an older woman.

You can’t be in an exclusive LTR with a woman if she is going out partying with her friends regularly. The process involves two hours of preparation time in her hair, makeup, and clothes, for the main purpose of marketing herself to other men. If she is going out selling herself to others, she is not your woman.

Men have evolved to require fidelity from the woman they have invested in, as a step in ensuring paternity. This is not jealousy. Most men instinctively want to know that his woman is sexually exclusive with him.

Do not fall for the new age beta male narrative of polyamory. It is a mating strategy for weak beta men that must resign himself to sharing a woman with alpha men.

When there is a conflict between what she is saying and doing, and she is acting single when she goes out to party, then believe the action, never the words. Actions **always** speak louder than words.

I dated a few party girls, and their phones would always be going off at 2am from guys looking to hook up. Avoid party

girls for LTRs and never limit yourself to one woman if you are dating a party girl. Only spin her as a plate.

Red Flag #10 - Heavily tattooed and pierced women

I realize some men prefer women with some ink, and there will be men that will debate me on this. However, my experiences have taught me that their placement and frequency matters. One tattoo hidden in her bikini line isn't much to worry about. However, if she has a tramp stamp, or more than one visible tattoo while wearing normal clothing, then you might want to ask yourself what she is saying to the world.

Tattoos all over a beautiful woman is like putting bumper stickers all over a Lamborghini. You don't do it as it shows a lack of taste. I've never met a woman with several visible tattoos that didn't bring at least three or more red flags to the table.

Heavily pierced women are another red flag. Draw the line at earrings, and if you want to push the limits, a nose ring. But, if that piercing is on her septum, nipple, clitoris, and eyebrow, or she even has multiple ear piercings up one ear, then keep in mind that you are dealing with someone that enjoys mutilating their own body, which is a red flag.

Red Flag #11 - Big notch counts

The most attractive quality in a woman is when you know she hasn't been with everybody and has her own standards.

Setting aside the higher probability of her having an STD, multiple conducted studies have proven that the younger the age a woman loses her virginity at, and the higher the number of men she's slept with (aka: Her notch count), often results in her being far less likely to bond monogamously to a man, in a healthy way, over a long period of time.

For example, a woman that lost her virginity at 14 and has slept with 30 men, is *far* less likely to bond monogamously to you over the long-term. Compare that to a woman who lost her virginity at 23 and has only slept with two men in long-term relationships.

If you want to get into a monogamous LTR, or take on the risk of marriage, then do it with a woman with a low notch count that lost her virginity later on in life.

Research conducted by the Institute for Family Studies revealed that a virgin has a 5% chance of divorce after five years of marriage. Whereas, a woman with two previous partners has a 30% chance of divorce. The data stopped at 10 partners, which showed a 35% chance of divorce.

Promiscuous women that have had many partners and/or have been sexually active from a young age **DO NOT** make good long-term partners. It's not to say they can't, or won't, try to be a girlfriend or wife. But the statistics reveal how undesirable these women are long-term, and that's why they should be treated as an FWB - and nothing more.

Women with a higher notch count are also more likely to report depression, become single mothers, have personality

disorders, and have abortions compared to women with lower notch counts.

Women must preserve their value; men must create their value. It's why, throughout history, women's virginity was so prized. Whereas, a man's value comes from his ability to make something out of himself so he can provide, preside, and protect.

I should note that women will *never* reveal the truth about their notch count to you, so don't bother asking to get an authentic number. Some may volunteer it. Be wary of any number they throw out, as women often fear being slut shamed.

Women only usually factor in relationships as part of their notch count, and they often disregard all the one-night stands, threesomes, lesbian encounters, or FWB relationships that they had in the past.

At a bare minimum, double whatever number she gives you.

The lifestyle, and company a woman keeps, reflects her notch count. A woman that you meet at 30 that claims she was in an LTR from the time she lost her virginity at 23, probably has a low notch count.

But women with an absence of any drama free LTRs in her past, that lived on her own, traveled a lot, and you met her at 35 could have a notch count approaching triple digits, or more. It's not uncommon for women in their party years (20-27) to rack up a notch count of 25 or more men.

Never forget, women become the average of the five people she spends the most time with. If five of her friends are, or were sluts, then she will be the sixth.

Red Flag #12 - Single mothers

Do not be a cuck. Do not raise another man's child.

There is absolutely nothing in it for you as a man. You do not pass on your own DNA; they do not have your last name, and cuckoldry shackles you with 100% of the responsibility as a parent, but you have 0% authority.

Some men choose an FWB arrangement because it's low hanging fruit. However, I've dated single mothers when I was blue pilled and trust me: **DO NOT** date, live with, or marry a single mother. It's not worth it. See my video "Why Men Shouldn't Date Single Mothers" on my YouTube channel.

Look, I've counseled *hundreds* of men that have made the mistake of living with a single mother in such a way that the state views as a marriage. Guess what? They have been on the hook to pay child support for kids they didn't even father.

In one case I counseled, a man was married for less than two years. He paid off over \$100,000 of her debt and she brought two special needs kids to the table with her. She wanted out and was taking him to court for child support... for life.

Do not be a cuck.

Red Flag #13 - Women seeking validation

Social media is a staple in today's world, and almost all women are on it. However, women who use public social media to gain attention from men should be avoided. While there are no "good girls" on social media, the better ones will use private accounts. Meaning that only 'friends and family' can see their posts and they aren't posting provocative pictures, fishing for likes, comments, and direct messages from men providing loads of attention and validation.

Public accounts using social media to sell a product or service and treating it like a business are okay, but understand she will still have men flirting with her.

The women posting daily provocative pictures of themselves on public accounts, with thousands of thirsty beta males following them, are selling something too - their sexual agency. Women like this are openly optimizing their hypergamy.

If she is with you, but is still posting pictures for attention, then she is asking herself if *you* are the best that *she* can get.

Most women can become drunk on social media attention. So, if you consider an LTR with a woman that is constantly seeking attention online, then you need to continue to exercise your sexual strategy, and date her non-exclusively until she abandons her open hypergamy.

A woman's sexual strategy is open hypergamy, and when she is seeking attention online, she is out playing on the ice,

trying to score a goal. Your sexual strategy as a man is unlimited access to unlimited women. Therefore, do not even consider monogamy until she abandons advertising herself. **Do not** take these women seriously. They are to be limited to plate or FWB status only.

Red Flag #14 - She was a sugar baby

In a book by author B Rob titled ‘*Salty*’, the author shares his excursion into sugar dating as a “Salt Daddy”. He also figured out how to identify if a woman has ever been looking for money in exchange for dating as a “sugar baby”.

You will need to search in her email for the term ‘seeking’ and see if there are any emails sent from the site in her past that show up. This will require that you look into her private life. But, if you are looking for LTR material, then you need to take this step to ensure that you aren’t going to make a whore a housewife. If she *was* a sugar baby, limit her to plate status only.

Red Flag #15 - Pathological liars

Everyone, women included, lie. Many women, however, can’t help but to lie pathologically. For some, their entire world is a house of cards, and they can’t even tell when they are speaking the truth or not. These women are not LTR material, because they aren’t trustworthy.

Fortunately, these types of women usually ‘out’ themselves over time because they can’t keep up with their own bullshit.

A girlfriend I had at 19 lied about everything and anything.

I was riding sport bikes, and she told me early on how she had a sport bike at her mom's house an hour away. Although strangely, it was never available for her to ride, or she had it locked up in storage. There was always a story about how she rode, and enjoyed the experience, but always made excuses about where the bike was.

I was becoming suspicious of her stories. Knowing it cost me \$9 to fill up the tank of my bike, I casually asked her how much it cost to top up her bike tank when she rode. She responded with \$25. Right *there* I knew she was a pathological liar, and many of her other stories collapsed shortly after that.

Pathological liars are dangerous, they will tell you they are on birth control, when they aren't. They'll lie about things that will put you, or your health, at risk. If you are attentive and poke at her stories, then these women are simple to spot.

Red Flag #16 - Baby rabies

This is an interesting term I came across after I got divorced and re-entered the dating pool around 39. I had this annoying feeling that most of the childless women in the dating pool were desperate to get married and have children. Some of them were so thirsty to get married and have kids, that they would even ask if that's what I wanted before asking me anything else.

Sometimes it was even in their opening message on a dating application. It felt like they were looking for a dutiful beta with sufficient provisioning ability, and decent genes to settle down with.

Women exhibiting desperation to get married and reproduce are not into you and will not support your mission. They will not complement your life, but will instead want to be the focus of your life.

Any women attempting to rush you into having kids and getting married, without allowing for a two-year vetting period, is a big red flag.

But, if you feel that you are simply an accessory to fulfilling her biological imperative to reproduce, or that she is counting her eggs every month as they dry up? She has baby rabies.

Move on and don't let her problems become your problem.

Many of these women put degrees and careers ahead of their prime child-bearing years. As they approach their mid-thirties, they grow desperate. Remember, men can capably father healthy children well into their forties. For women, their prime childbearing years decrease rapidly after the age of 30.

Red Flag #17 - Hissy fits

Some women never learned the social maturity required to process their emotions, so they resort to hissy fits to deal with their differences in a relationship.

When my daughter was 3, if something didn't go her way, she threw herself on the ground, face down, then kicked and punched with her limbs at the ground while screaming. This is the toddler version, and it's excusable in a child, because they don't know how to process their emotions with maturity when something doesn't work out for them, so they start kicking and screaming.

In an adult woman, hissy fits are an unacceptable red flag and come in many forms.

Rather than approaching the issue head on like an adult, she'll commonly start by passive aggressively going on social media to post something revealing and sexy, behave erratically, or make underhanded posts about you.

One says, "Hey fellas, I'm over here, and my man pissed me off; look at me and shower me with validation and attention." The other is a passive aggressive maneuver to shame or ridicule you, usually with some covert statement or meme.

Hissy fits cover a wide range and include, but aren't limited to, overtly stating something like: "Just leave my shit on the front porch" when things aren't going their way. Or using actions like hiring a male personal trainer you know she was fucking in the past, and posting a picture on social media of themselves together, with some trite caption about how, "This girl will get her body back," in an effort to push your buttons.

These outbursts by women are bad news, and I've noticed that there is often a correlation between her hissy fits and

daddy issues. I've seen fathers set logical, and reasonable boundaries for their daughters to preserve her value as a woman, and she broke them in a rebellious and dangerous way in protest.

For example, a traditional European father will often set limits on when his daughters can date, and in what cultures. A woman with daddy issues that can't respect the boundaries set by a man will go out with, and intentionally have plenty of unprotected sex with, men from cultures that she knows her father would be vehemently opposed to.

Deal with hissy fits head on and treat them as unacceptable behavior. Otherwise, you'll constantly deal with them in your relationship.

Also, **do not** argue with women. They will not let a thing like logic or reason get in the way of their emotional hissy fit. You set the boundary, then cut off all contact (called a soft next) with her for about four to five days to let her think about it.

Remember, attention is the coin of the realm for women, so when you remove it, they lose their mind and will usually automatically fall back in line. She will either comply, or it's "Goodbye."

Most women, because of their own solipsistic nature, will not recognize it as a "hissy fit," even if you spell it out for them. So be resolute. You will get out of life what you tolerate. Do not argue with her about her hissy fit.

Men are deductive, rational thinkers - women aren't. Therefore, a soft next allows you to return to the table with a boundary you set. If she doesn't like it? Show her the door.

A woman that has a genuine, burning desire for you, and is serious about sorting herself out, *will* do the work. A woman that isn't, will resist, make excuses, and will *constantly* test your boundaries as a man.

Red Flag #18 - Not being in control of the birth

In Rollo Tomassi's book, '*The Rational Male*' he outlines his "Iron Rules," and number five was: "Always be in control of the birth." As a man today, once your sperm leaves your balls, women make 100% of the decisions.

If you knock up the wrong woman, you could be on the hook for around 20-years as her personal ATM. NEVER, EVER trust a woman you are not in a properly vetted LTR with when she says, "It's okay, just go inside me, I can't get pregnant." You must have **100% certainty** that there is effective birth control in play. Oh, and for the record, birth control pills are *not* sufficient.

Many men have knocked up women who claimed to be on the birth control pill, only to discover she "accidentally" forgot to take them or wasn't even on them. Condoms (that you flush away afterwards), or an IUD, are your most reliable methods of birth control today. Remember, women lie. It's called birth control for a reason - so always be in control of it.

Red Flag #19 - Drama queens

All women, not just some, periodically crave for some form of drama. If they are bored, and there're no issues in your relationship, they will manufacture indignation to test you and create those “feels”. Drama queens choose random molehills to turn into mountains. This is also another form of a hissy fit.

I guarantee you will encounter drama with a woman at some point. But, if it appears more than once within the first three months of dating, or more than a weekly “thing” during your LTR, then she is flat out telling you that this drama will be a regular occurrence for life.

Buckle up buddy, you’ll be in for a roller coaster ride if you don’t put your foot down and use a “soft next” to maintain boundaries.

Manufactured indignation is really just a shit test, and it’s also about testing your frame as the dominant frame in a relationship. Remember, drama *will* happen with *all* women at some point. So, decide early on what you will, and more importantly what you won’t, tolerate. Alpha men with plenty of options will tolerate little to no drama, lesser men with few options will accept it as it comes.

Red Flag #20 - Addictions

Dependency to things, activities, or substances is a big red flag. Women that rely on alcohol, shopping, drugs, cigarettes, news, or reality TV to name some examples, can

be highly problematic to a man that is chasing excellence in his life.

Unhealthy addictions, if left unchecked, will dominate her life, her choices, and her conversations. Addicts, usually, become self-destructive. If it's affecting your life, then it has become an unhealthy addiction.

A woman who is addicted to a reality TV show will talk about the mindless drama between characters on the show non-stop. Alcoholics are always looking for their next drink, and anyone that's ever dated a woman that's addicted to anti-depressants knows how badly it affects her body weight and sex drive.

Don't let women make her addictive problems, your problems. Smart men do not get into an LTR with women that have addictions, it's **not** your job to save or cure them.

If they have acknowledged their addiction, and are working on their problems with a professional, good, let them. But keep her at arm's length as a plate until she has shown genuine progress for several months. Also, make sure that her addictive personality doesn't replace one addiction with another.

Conclusion

As I stated earlier, you can ignore my warnings about these red flags and get involved with these women. But, at some point, your life *will* become complicated and unnecessarily difficult.

As a man, it is incumbent on you to shoulder the burden of performance, and to chase excellence. In life, women can either become an anchor, or a sail. Look for women that are a complement to your life and that gladly fill your sails with wind and limit your interactions with anchors that hold you back.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- It's *your responsibility* to set, and *always enforce*, the boundaries that are meaningful to you.
- Never date, LTR, or wife-up a single mother. Neither the mother, nor the kids, will *ever* genuinely appreciate you for your sacrifices.
- If a woman *ever* becomes physically violent with you, then you **must** get the hell out of that relationship immediately. And if you have kids with her, then see an attorney ASAP.
- If your spidey senses are tingling and your gut is telling you something, then there's a reason why. Listen to it.
- A man who's chasing excellence and making his dent in the universe will have the options and self-respect to drop *any* woman who's complicating his life.

SINGLE MOTHERS

In the red flag chapter, I covered several warning signs that men should be aware of with women. However, this book wouldn't offer a useful roadmap for men unless I cover *why*. I'll explain why a relationship with a single mother often invites both drama, and unnecessary complexity, into a man's life.

I've had well over a thousand coaching calls with men, and the one common denominator that keeps repeatedly showing up, is that men dramatically complicate their lives by allowing single mothers into them.

Now, not *every single* mother is bad news. But, the reality is, they bring a *lot* of problems into men's lives that women without children simply don't.

When I got divorced at 39, after seven years with the same woman, I had shared custody of my four-year-old, and I did what most men typically did in that scenario. I looked around and found that most women in my age range had children in tow.

Most had several kids, and sometimes, each kid came from a different father.

I got involved with a single mother almost immediately. She was also recently divorced, pretty, fit, knew how to cook, she also had the typical post-divorce breast augmentation, and she had two kids in tow that were seven and ten when I met them. If you want to learn more about my personal experience, search YouTube for “entrepreneurs in cars and why men shouldn’t date single mothers.”

Some men would argue from experience that there are *dozens* of problems that come from relationships with single mothers. However, I’m only going to focus on the five I’ve seen most often.

They are, in no particular order:

- Cuckoldry,
- Responsibility without authority,
- The victim mindset,
- Financial issues,
- And re-prioritization.

Cuckoldry

When you take on the financial, parental, and emotional burden of raising another man’s children, you are, by definition, a cuckold. Some men would argue that if she is a widow, or he was a deadbeat father that disappeared from their lives, there is an exception. Well, there isn’t.

Regardless of how you want to rationalize it in your head - you are a cuck.

Society today encourages and celebrates cuckoldry. You'll often see articles titled: "The case for being a cuck." The truth is, it's nothing to celebrate.

They don't take on your last name, and they *definitely* don't possess your genetic legacy to pass down. These two points have historically been the biggest selling points to men for fatherhood. For most men, this is enough to enforce a firm "pass" rule on single mothers. But, many men *still* ignore the obvious problem and it is because they lack better options because of their own limited value.

To add insult to injury, women overwhelmingly get awarded primary parenting of their children the vast majority of the time, while men don't. So, if you are a divorced father, then you might end up spending more time parenting the children of *another man* than your own.

Responsibility without authority

Getting involved with a single mother often means that you will find yourself in a position where you have the same parental responsibilities as a biological father, but with *none* of the authority of a parent.

Shortly after she introduces you to her kids, she *will* expect you to "step up" and take on parenting duties.

It often starts with going out for dinner, and she brings her kids along for the first time. This is when you will be

expected to demonstrate that you can provide for Billy and Bobby too. You'll be on the hook with parental responsibility for birthdays, travel, holidays, ski trips, the beach, the list goes on.

You will fill the shoes of "Daddy" and your financial resources will certainly be warmly welcomed. But, at some point during a grievance, you *will* also eventually hear them say something like: "You are not my father! You can't tell ME what to do!"

They will be "our" kids when she needs you. However, they'll be "her" kids when you need to discipline them or enforce healthy boundaries.

Strangely, if you are a single father you will learn that, when your kids need something, your children are never "ours," but selectively "yours." Yet, most men discover that women want authority over kids, just without the responsibility that goes along with it.

Most men eventually hear her say something that reflects the mindset of: "Not my monkey, not my circus." There is a reason why some kids that grew up with a step-mother call her "Step-monster."

If the fact that you are being cucked as a man isn't enough to make you question your choice to get involved with a single mother, then expect to have responsibility, but with zero authority. Whereas, *she* will often take on little responsibility herself, while still seeking authority.

The victim mindset

Women are naturally solipsistic (after all, it is hard-wired into them). However, single mothers run a special gauntlet of mental gymnastics that they rationalize as normal. But, ultimately, it boils down to them adopting a victim mindset. They often brag on social media about how they are strong, independent, and “don’t need no man.” While simultaneously turning to the government for handouts, and/or their children’s father(s) for financial support.

I dated a lot of single mothers that would complain about the father of their children and often heard her use disparaging terms like: Loser, dumb, deadbeat, beta, or boring. If I would ask them why they married him, or had kids with him, their face would turn to stone as if to say, “How dare you hold me accountable for my own choices.”

Naturally, she didn’t own her choices. She was always pointing and sputtering at her ex-husband, her boss, her father, or the President. With the rare exception, she rarely looked in the mirror to take ownership for her results in life.

While I’ve only ever dated traditionally feminine looking women, I’ve never met a single mother that wasn’t a feminist.

To identify as a feminist, you must have an oppressor and, when it comes to feminist logic, *every woman is oppressed by default and, is therefore, a victim.*

The victim mindset requires her to be unhappy, unlucky, and oppressed. When I started dating these women, I found out

first-hand how hard done by she claimed she and her children were, and it was *always* someone else's fault.

Her children also adopt this mindset (because kids naturally learn their behaviors from their parents). So, if something doesn't go their way, they will emotionally manipulate their mother, and have her side with their bratty behavior. *Even* when you are right, and they require boundary enforcement and discipline.

Most men love playing the role of "Captain Save-a-Hoe." And, since most single mom's *love* being a damsel in distress, men are all too happy to step-up, and swoop in to protect "her honor."

Financial issues

When it comes to money, women choose jobs that pay less than men the vast majority of the time. Even though there are more women in the workforce than ever before, men earn the vast majority of wealth by choosing higher paying professions. Most men discover that single mothers gravitate to professions like: Nursing, Teaching, Dental Hygienist, Daycare Work, and Hairdressing.

Few women take on jobs that pay over six figures. So, when I was dating them, I found it difficult to meet a single mom that earned as much as I did.

For the most part, they aren't driving expensive cars or living in mortgage-free homes.

Most single mothers have debt, and often, also have nothing to their name (except the children in tow with another man's last name attached to them).

You will be called upon to pay for her life and that of her children's. I've had several coaching calls with men where they paid off her debts, bought her kid's cars, and paid for their college tuition. It's common for uninitiated men to make themselves less, so she and her children can become more.

Reprioritization

In general, men are all too happy to abandon their purpose in life to fulfill a woman's. Unfortunately, when you get involved with a single mother, you will *never* be her priority.

Most men find their place in a pecking order behind: Her needs, her kid's needs, her work issues, her wine drinking nights with her "sisters," her salsa nights out, and then her cat. If you get involved with a single mother, you'll never be *anywhere near* the top of her priorities.

You will often be expected to make your hobbies and passions less of a priority, so she can focus on hers. There's an old soundbite that calls women "Dream killers." The truth is, most men that get into relationships with single mothers will be required to shift their priorities around for her and her kids.

The BIG risk

There is an often-overlooked risk with dating a single mother, *especially* if you have a young daughter, and she has one or more boys. The biggest risk to young girls is being physically violated through non-blood related relatives in the household. This is far more common with girls, but it does happen to boys too.

There is hard wiring in our DNA, as a function of survival and for genetic diversity, to avoid sexual activity with blood related relatives. It's why brothers and sisters are sexually repelled by one another.

There are many women that have been raped, or sexually assaulted, by step-brothers or step-fathers during their childhood.

This is a risk that you *need* to be aware of if you are a divorced dad, more-so if your ex-wife isn't particularly good at picking men. If she invites characters into your daughter's life, with step-brothers in tow, then you *must* find a way to have that conversation with your children's mother.

When dating a single mother - might - make sense

I've often been challenged to present a situation where dating a single mother might make sense. I can only think of one.

You've already got a kid, so you've secured your family name and DNA. Her child is about the same age and sex as yours, so they can interact and relate with one another and, most importantly, there is no risk of her being violated.

Your frame also naturally infers 100% authority in the relationship. She isn't a feminist, and takes ownership for her life, and holds her kids accountable to my standards. She is, at a minimum, financially equal to me. She is a complement to my life, and certainly not the focus. She'd also have to be attractive, have a genuine burning desire for me, and also get on well with my child.

To be perfectly honest, I think you'd have much better luck finding a Leprechaun with a pot of gold at the end of a rainbow, than finding someone who can comfortably meet every condition.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- You don't want to be a cuck. You might genuinely love her kids "Like they're your own." But, ultimately, they will *never ever* be yours and your bloodline will not continue if you don't already have kids.
- They'll never, ever, *ever* respect you in the way that you want them to. Even if you adopted them. Because, deep down in their core, they'll *always* know that you "Aren't their father."
- While it's a cold truth that a woman's kids will *always* be a higher priority than you, with single mothers, you'll be even *further* down in her list of priorities. Until she wants something from you that is.
- The victim mindset, along with unhealthy doses of shaming and guilt-tripping, is the de-facto method-

of-operation for single mothers. If it's *all* the bio father's fault, and she can't own up to *anything* that she did to screw up the relationship, then you can bet your ass she'd say the same about you to the next guy.

- The vast majority of sexual-violations are perpetrated by close family members. If you have a young daughter, then it's incumbent on *you* to make sure she stays as safe as possible and make sure she feels comfortable enough to tell you *anything*. So lay the groundwork in making her feel comfortable enough to confide in you ASAP.

HIRE SLOWLY BUT FIRE QUICKLY

In 2003, I was working for Canada's largest collection agency where I was well into my fourth year of service as a manager to a team doing \$2 Million in receivables. My staff were well trained and loyal, which meant our recovery rates were incredible.

Earlier that year, I had a new VP assigned to our group, a French-Canadian guy from a very rough background. I remember him telling us stories about his childhood and how his father shot himself in the face.

He clashed with me from the get-go. He would publicly disrespect me in front of my staff, and make me run detailed reports, which he never looked at, for his own personal amusement.

After a few months of putting up with his disrespect, something snapped inside of me, and I let him know what I thought of him. *This* is where I learned the valuable lesson that people get hired for their skills, and resume, but get fired for fit.

Towards the end of the year, only three weeks after I moved into my first house with a big mortgage, a manager's salary needed to come off the books for corporate cost cutting.

Guess who was selected by my loving VP to go home? Me.

The initial burn of being handed that severance package hurt. But, this push inspired me to go create my own business which helped to settle consumer credit card debt, and I will be forever thankful for that.

It was about a decade later when I finally learned the lesson to hire slowly and fire quickly in my own business. You can use this idea with women in your life, employees, business partners, and even friends.

Take your time vetting people. Get to know them and study their behavior. The choices someone makes, and how they behave, should *always* trump what they tell you if there is a conflict between actions and words. I.e. Don't listen to what they say, watch what they do.

If your Spidey senses tingle, listen to your intuition. It knows something is up. Intuition is the little voice whispering in your ear, and it often only becomes a loud shout when it's too late and you are going to experience a train wreck.

My single mommy experience

Shortly after my divorce, I got involved with a single mom of two boys, and for the first few months it was great fun dating her. After a few short months, she started suggesting

that I meet her boys. This was when my intuition started whispering to me, telling me it wasn't a good idea.

But, I ignored it.

Of course, my intuition only became a shout when her older son manufactured indignation. He started throwing a bad hissy fit, yelling at me, and calling me names, because I enforced a boundary with them they didn't like eight months after I met them. Their mother sided with the bratty behavior, completely ignoring the fact that I was right.

In hindsight, I should have limited my time in that relationship to just her and let it run its course. I *never* should have become involved with her kids. I should have also quickly fired her ass and ended the relationship with her at that point and then moved on. But, I let the torture drag on for nearly two more years. I also endured several similar incidents because I, again, ignored my intuition. It ended in a colossal train wreck for me with a severe case of "oneitis," when she cheated on me (after I tried to enforce boundaries with her kids again).

The business partner experience

Shortly after I took my severance package and went home, I partnered with a friend of mine I used to work with to offer debt relief services to consumers. He still had a job that paid him very well, so I was doing almost all of the work and he was taking half the money out of the business account every month.

I was working exceptionally hard to make it work; we were making about \$30,000 a month for a business with only two staff, and no overhead, so it initially felt amazing.

That was until I realized that my partner had a drug problem – and was a control freak.

My intuition was telling me to get out. But, once again, I didn't listen. It wasn't until eight months later when it became a literal shout out in my head. And only when my business partner was screaming at me over my insistence for him to quit his job and join me full time. In a full-blown state of hysteria, he began yelling at me that he "never put me on the corporate books," and that I technically "don't exist" in the business.

Initially, it ended *very* badly. But, I picked myself back up quickly and with my brother, formed what would become Canada's most successful debt settlement company.

Anytime I've gotten into trouble with women, employees, business partners, or anything else, it was because **I didn't listen to my intuition and fire that person from my life quick enough.**

With women, friends, employees, and business associates, **always** hire slowly and fire fast. You *must* be fastidious with your time, and who you allow into your inner circle.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- It's incumbent on you to take your time with the vetting period. The "honeymoon phase" can apply in other areas of life – not just in relationships.
- Be vigilant and observe if someone's actions match their words. Ignore what they say and watch what they do as words can be empty, while actions speak the truth.
- If you find that there's an inconsistency between their words and their actions, then you **must** be prepared to cut them out of your life as swiftly as possible. Make sure you've done your legal homework when it comes to business partners (or LTRs/Marriages), then execute that strategy with military precision and speed.
- **And finally, listen to your gut.** It's your brain telling you that things *definitely* aren't adding up.

LOOKS, MONEY, STATUS, AND GAME

Sadly, when it comes to women, men aren't taught the importance of looks, money, status, and Game.

Instead, men are taught that he must become less, so she can become more. To "Just be yourself," and that just being a "Nice Guy" is enough to attract high-quality women into your life.

Unfortunately, women don't work like this. They never have, and they never will.

Women possess an evolved firmware that selects for the best-looking man, who has sufficient resources, and status. Not because they are picky gold diggers, but because they need to ensure that they pass on the best genes and can retain access to sufficient resources for the survival of their offspring. Therefore, men view women as beauty objects; women view men as success objects.

Most men do not understand what drives attraction in women, and the vast majority of men are getting terrible, or no results with women they are attracted to.

This leads to frustration, resentment, and ultimately quitting. Women are born; men must be made.

Women expect men to develop useful skills, be masculine, strong, and acquire resources that a woman and her offspring can benefit from. Her sexual strategy is hypergamy and, as a result, it continuously asks her if you are the best she can do.

By this point, the quitters will protest and scream, “See! All she wants is your money, muscles, and when she is done, she will go fuck another guy and break your heart. This isn’t worth my time!” That’s a loser’s mindset.

There is a lot more to creating and maintaining *genuine, burning* desire from women.

Most men behave like women are a scarce commodity, placing them high up on a pedestal while worshipping them. Yet, nothing could be further from the truth. High value men who are maxed out on their looks, money, status, and Game are *scarce*. Conversely, attractive women are *everywhere*. Don’t believe me? Search the hashtag #fitnessgirl on Instagram, and there are *millions* of results, with the vast majority of them, objectively, being nines and tens.

Looks

Looks matter, there is no way around this. Based on their usage patterns, women’s behavior on dating apps show that they find 80% of men unattractive.

She isn't basing this on what he does for a living, his bio, sense of humor, competency, skills, or even location. It's based almost entirely on one profile picture and, for the most part, men are *horrible* at projecting a strong masculine appearance with professional-grade photography.

When it comes to looks, women overwhelmingly prefer tall men, with high testosterone cues like muscles and a chiseled jawline. Given the choice, almost all women would rather fuck a bald and muscular 6'5" Dwayne Johnson, over a full head of hair 5'4" Michael J. Fox.

However, with that being said, men need to learn how to max out their looks. Because, even with his height deficit, Michael J. Fox *still* had an abundance of women in his life by maxing out in many other areas.

The first step is, apart from not quitting, is to be at peace with yourself with what you can't change and max out what you *can* change

A man that is 5'4" can't do much about his height. But studies show that 70% of a man's attractiveness is based on the appearance of upper body strength, with height and leanness accounting for only 10%.

When women are shown images of men's bodies in studies and asked to rate attractiveness, they subconsciously, but overwhelmingly, seek a 1.62 ratio of shoulder to hip width. Yet, most men in developed Western countries are fat.

You can accomplish a "V taper" along with a thin waist and visible abs, by eating right and build broad shoulders, large

traps, and a muscular back, by lifting right. This is an area that almost all men can max out in that will *significantly* improve their overall look.

Sadly, most men don't track something as basic as their weight, let alone their shoulder to waist ratio.

If you are out of shape and carry belly fat, then you *must* make self-care a priority. There is simply no excuse for being fat and out of shape. If you want an enjoyable experience with women and want to be spoiled for choice, then you must do the work to live in a strong, masculine, and healthy body.

REFINE YOUR STYLE

Style is another area where men can improve looks dramatically. You should wear clothes that fit you well and complement your physique. Most men show they don't understand style by wearing clothes that don't fit properly.

In my early twenties, when I first worked in office spaces, I used to buy cheap off-the-rack dress shirts and suits and I looked terrible in clothes, but great naked. Most cheap clothing is loose and baggy on me because most of the population is fat - and that's how they manufacture it.

It wasn't until a girl suggested that I should get tailored shirts made that I started getting more looks and compliments from women. When I splurged and bought my first tailored suit, it was the icing on the cake and my girlfriend at the time became exceptionally jealous of the attention that I was getting when we went to formal events.

I use this example to impress upon you the importance, and significance of, wearing clothes that fit *properly*. And how dramatically they can improve your looks - *especially* if you've put in the work for a nice physique.

You don't need to buy expensive tailored suits. Instead, keep an eye out for clothes marked "fitted" with a small percentage of the fabric blend from spandex to ensure a good fit. For more on style, read Tanner Guzy's excellent book 'The appearance of power'.

Hair plays a big role with looks, yet I constantly find men with messy hair. Or worse, balding men holding desperately onto their disappearing strands of hair with bad haircuts. If you possess a thick, full head of hair, then take a look. Find a popular Hollywood heartthrob, that has similar features to you, and get a good hair stylist to fix your hair.

HAIR Loss

When it comes to hair loss, you need to understand that the 25% of men with a hereditary predisposition to baldness, start losing their hair by age 21. By age 35, 66% of men start experiencing hair loss, and by age 50, 85% of men display significantly thinner hair on their head.

Men spend *way* too much time and money looking for ways to hide, or slow down, their hair loss. Do *not* be that guy.

If you've a hereditary predisposition to hair loss, surrender to it, because you *are* going to lose it. The gene usually skips a generation; my dad has his hair, his father did too, and so does my younger brother. My grandfather on my mum's

side, however, was bald. So, my middle brother and I are balding.

I started noticing signs of hair loss around the age of 21 when I would take my motorcycle helmet off and notice a half dozen strands of hair in the helmet, but I kept a full head of hair until my early thirties. By my mid-thirties, I was using clippers on level one because there was no hairstyle that could hide it. Once I hit my early forties, I finally started shaving my head.

Throughout my life, I've been losing my hair. Yet, I've *never* had a problem with women. I always had a look that they liked. I've learned that there is a good part of the female population that just *loves* the look of a masculine man with a shaved head. Dwayne Johnson, Vin Diesel, Bruce Willis, and Jason Statham are all balding men in Hollywood that have a look that women are not only drawn to, but in many cases prefer. Because *they own it*.

You will need to make sure you've got a masculine physique if you are balding, or bald. If you look fat or scrawny - and balding - it's a really bad image. No woman pines for characters in Hollywood that remind them of George Costanza.

Surrender to it and adopt an image that suits your stage of hair loss. There is nothing on the market today, that I am aware of, that will truly reverse male pattern baldness. There are band-aid solutions, but they aren't even mildly successful at slowing down hair loss, and some are so pathetic, they aren't fooling anyone.

PICTURE PERFECT

There's a great misconception from quitters that will lead you to believe that you can't do *anything* about your looks, and that women only ever date handsome men. Yet, if you Google "Joe Manganiello transformation," you'll find a picture of a scrawny-looking high-school dork in bad glasses. A dork that transformed himself into a buff, handsome stud that landed a role as a male stripper in the movie 'Magic Mike.'

Lifting weights, eating right, improving your personal hygiene, and having a well-thought-out image can do wonders. It's called "looks maxing," and it's dressed in overalls, and looks like work, so most men avoid it. Therefore, making excuses as to why they can't.

The great equalizer in looks is photography. When it comes to pictures for dating apps or social media, definitely hire a photographer. There is an oversupply of young photographers you can hire for less than \$100 on Craigslist, alongside Air B 'n' B experiences for 2-hrs, to do a professional photo shoot in. Bring along three tailored outfits, ask the photographer to select some suitable locations, dress sharp, and then let them work their magic. Many men significantly improved their results with women on dating apps with superior photography.

Surrender to what you can't control; max out on what you can.

Money

There's a prevailingly lazy notion that money is evil, and that there is only so much money moving around out there, and that it's in the offshore accounts of all the rich and greedy men. Not only is that a lie, it's also a loser's mindset.

Money is, simply put, nothing more than a store of value. If you acquire it, then that's because you've added value to the lives of others. Bill Gates has acquired a massive amount of money because he solved massive global software issues with Microsoft, and also helped bring computing to the masses.

Throughout history, women have *always* preferred men with money. Women love a man that can "Make it rain."

Even with your style and physique locked down, your looks will only get you so far if you haven't got any money. You should aim to be in the top 10% of income earners where you live. As you get older, the significance of wealth increases because, like it or not, your looks will decrease. Even ugly, short, fat, bald men can have sex with really hot women if they have enough status and money. It is the *ultimate* equalizer for unattractive men.

While stable employment is still the primary objective of most men, a basic J.O.B. (Just Over Broke) isn't enough anymore for most men today.

Women are graduating with more degrees and earning more. But men aren't and today there are more women earning more money than *any* other time in history. And because

hypergamy never seeks its own economic level, women *always* want to date up. So, it's men with the wealth that get some of the best results with hot women.

When women ask what you do for a living, she doesn't particularly care about the "what" part. She is merely trying to be polite and curious about your status. More importantly, what she's *really* trying to do is assess how much money you earn.

However, the status component of your source of income does have some relevance. For example, a man that owns his own plumbing company might earn 50% more than a junior lawyer in a law firm. But hypergamy isn't all about money, it's about "the best that she can do." And if her hypergamy thinks a lawyer is more valuable to her than a plumber when introducing her new boyfriend to her family at Thanksgiving, then the lawyer wins.

A rich man can turn a broke woman's life around. But you should understand that a rich woman won't give a broke man the time of day (unless he's seriously hot, and even then it'd only be for sex). To complicate female nature even further, women will overlook a poor man in his twenties with ambition, and a plan (because he has "potential"). However, they have *truly little* patience for a poor man in his forties with ambition and a plan.

To have options in life you need money. Yet, most men live paycheck to paycheck.

"FUCK You" MONEY

Every man in the West should ideally aim to be a millionaire by the time they are 30, or 40 at the latest. This isn't to beg for pussy, or for female validation. It's for you. So, you can do what you want, when you want, and have the confidence to tell people to "Fuck off!" that you don't want to listen to. Which is an *incredibly* powerful position to be in - in *any* area of life.

Money creates freedom and options. Women are merely a by-product and they should *never* be the main reason that you continue to chase excellence.

Entrepreneurship, C-suite jobs (so CEO, CFO, etc.), high-end sales, and professional designations (think Doctors, Lawyers, Pilots, etc.), are the main categories where you can find the top 10% of earners.

My preference is entrepreneurship, because it can be the quickest path to wealth, with the most personal freedom. But, being an entrepreneur isn't for everyone, it can take years to get the role of a CFO, a Doctor, Pilot, or Salesman that sells high-end real estate or yachts.

The ROI on investing in yourself is absolutely *massive*, and in my view at least, is *well* worth the work.

The point I'm making, is that a factory job might have been enough for your grandfather after he returned from the war and then married your grandmother. But in today's world, that's not going to lead to a higher level of self-actualization for most men and, truthfully, it's not enough for today's women.

However, I want to re-emphasize here that while the point of creating wealth *isn't* to get women, you will naturally have access to more and more attractive women by acquiring wealth. As an intelligent man of vision and purpose, you must set boundaries and ultimately decide what kind of access you will permit women to have to *your* money.

Status

For men, status is mostly a by-product of wealth and influence, and we touched upon this aspect briefly when I was discussing money. Women, on the other hand, can achieve status with a decent physique, one million thirsty beta Instagram followers, and *still* be broke.

Part of the evaluation process women go through, when their hypergamous hindbrain is evaluating if you are the best that she can do, is assessing your status and influence.

Throughout history, men of high status have always had abundant access to high-quality women. In many cases, influential men of high status had harems of women.

Men of status are so desirable and in demand, that most women would rather share such a man with other women, compared to being saddled with a faithful loser.

When women get with a 5'9" Dan Bilzerian, they are happy to share him, because he is a successful, wealthy alpha, with a thirty million plus following on Instagram. The man has status and so has an unlimited supply of smoking hot women who are much younger than him, who are willingly

waiting in line for a chance to fuck him and be in one of his Instagram posts.

Status will get doors opened for you, meetings with important people, preferential treatment, and yes, access to attractive women.

Even ugly men of status do well with women. Mick Jagger, the lead singer of the Rolling Stones, was as ugly as they come. Yet, as a lead singer of a high status band, women didn't care about his looks because of his status. As legend has it, he once left a date with Angelina Jolie no less, to have a one-night stand with Farrah Fawcett.

I use these extreme examples to impress upon you the importance of status, and Instagram is just one way of hundreds where high status can be signaled.

An average looking 21-year-old man, who has just started promoting fitness courses from his business, can signal high status by having a good Instagram following of 20,000. This allows him to garner the attention and praise of 2,000 people with every Instagram post as he goes about the business of promoting his products.

However, when it comes to signaling higher status, that won't work for a 45-year-old man. For him to have the same measure of status in a woman's hindbrain, he must show that he has acquired wealth and has a more seasoned reach and status.

STATUS CAN'T BE FADED, IT MUST BE EARNED

When I'm with my girlfriend and a random guy approaches me that profusely thanks me for saving his life with my videos, it reminds her she is with a man of status.

I also show status with the Japanese chef that runs the small, high-end, sushi boutique restaurant that I frequent. When I call on the speakerphone to pick up an order, he always recognizes my voice before I mention my name, he calls me Mr. Cooper, and is very respectful. It's even more obvious when I visit the restaurant in person when I'm on a date to eat in, because I always get treated like a VIP.

When I'm at the gas station, with my girl in the passenger seat, filling up my R8 Spyder, and people approach me to ask about or compliment my car, I signal status.

Listen, you don't need to be a Rockstar or a billionaire to have status. All you need to do is make money and have people show respect and admiration for you. You get to decide how you want to signal status, but the more status you have, the more doors that will open up for you and, ultimately, the better you will do with women.

Game

Game is defined as you confidently using your attributes, characteristics, and overall personality to win the affection of women. It's about playing, and optimizing the cards you're dealt, and winning with women. It's also about turning your positives into swagger and your negatives into charm.

Game, when distilled, is about knowing what women respond positively to.

Pick Up Artists (or PUAs) will tell you that Game is the great equalizer when it comes to attracting women. If you haven't read the 2005 edition of '*The Game*' by Neil Strauss, then I strongly suggest you do. Neil isn't particularly good looking, and wasn't rich at the time of writing the book, but the techniques he uses *clearly* proves that Game works.

Game matters, but if you haven't got looks, money, or status to go with Game, then you will only ever get so far with it. Even the legendary "Mystery" in Strauss' book ended up with a debilitating case of "oneitis" for a woman because all he had was high-level Game.

You can use Game to get some success when cold approaching pretty women, while getting a number to set up a date. But, to be *truly* effective at Game, then you must also be Red Pill aware. Most PUAs have Game, but not all PUAs are Red Pill aware. Game without any Red Pill awareness is like owning a Ferrari, but without an engine.

To properly cover Game, with a Red Pill lens applied, requires several books. Beyond Neil Strauss' book above, notable reads are:

1. '*The Rational Male*' book series by Rollo Tomassi, which covers the mindset and psychology behind Game.
2. '*The Mystery Method*', by Mystery.
3. '*The Art of Seduction*', by Robert Greene.

When it comes to looks, money, status, and Game, some will try to convince you there is an order of importance to these but, in my view, there isn't.

A man should do his best to max himself out in every area. One area is no more important than the other.

They are synergistic and create a compounding effect as you improve in all areas. At the end of the day, the pursuit of excellence in these areas, should be for yourself, *not* for the goal of getting women.

Women should only ever be a by-product of looks, money, status, and Game. Remember, women should *never* be the focus of your life, only a complement to it.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- Men that do the work to put themselves into the most desirable top 20% of men have, by far, the greatest chances of sleeping with the vast majority of women. So, put a conscious effort into improving your physique, your style, and how you carry yourself. It'll pay dividends down the line.
- Are you losing your hair? Who gives a fuck? Own that shit and make it work *for you*. Guess what? It's only a problem if you let it be one.
- Being wealthy affords you the financial security in life to tell people, or other opportunities, that aren't offering any value to you, to "Fuck Off". Money has

an inherent value that allows you to pursue different options or enjoy experiences that you previously could only have dreamed about before.

- Go make your own recognizable dent in the universe and positively elevate your status to “world class-level” in whatever field you specialize in.
- While you don’t *have* to be an extrovert to be good at Game, although that certainly doesn’t hurt, you do need to build up a solid frame of genuine confidence that women can, quite literally, see you exude from across a crowded room. Are you being playful with women? Are you playfully teasing them and busting their, metaphorical, balls? Are you being your unapologetically authentic self around them? Are you only rewarding them with the value that your undivided attention brings because they’ve *earned it*? If not, then go and **Do. The. Work.**

MANAGE YOUR ENDOCRINE SYSTEM

Disclaimer: This book is not intended as a substitute for the medical advice of a licensed physician. The reader should regularly consult a licensed physician in matters relating to their health, particularly with respect to any symptoms that may require diagnosis or medical attention.

The male endocrine system is an extraordinarily complex collection of hormone-producing glands that regulate metabolism, growth, development, tissue function, sexual function, reproduction, sleep, mood, and many other functions.

The primary hormone men should be aware of tracking as they age is their testosterone levels. Because, even in a healthy male, your levels **will** drop somewhere between 1-2% per year from the age of 30 onwards (and this is in a best-case scenario).

This process in men is known as “andropause.” Unlike a woman’s menopause, which is an immediate decline in her optimal hormones. The process in men takes *decades* and, for many men, is hardly noticeable.

Declining testosterone levels is a genuine issue for men for a bunch of reasons. These include:

- Your lean muscle mass decreases,
- Body fat levels increases,
- Mental clarity decreases,
- Sexual function decreases,
- Bone density decreases,
- Energy decreases,
- And the risk of some diseases increases.

Optimal testosterone levels in men are directly connected to living an optimal life. And note the word “optimal”, which *isn’t* the same as “normal.”

It’s my belief that men should track their levels starting at the age of 25, and then every subsequent year, until the blood panels show the need for exogenous testosterone supplementation.

Some men will try to shame you for using Testosterone Replacement Therapy (or TRT), but understand that they are just jealous because **you** will do better in life. Hate *never* comes from above, only from people beneath you. People never get jealous of losers.

Once you start treatment, you'll track it about 2-3 times a year under the supervision of a TRT doctor.

For me, it was around the age of 43 that I noticed the following symptoms:

- Low energy,
- Moodiness,
- An inability to focus,
- A lack of morning wood,
- A lower libido,
- Less strength,
- Muscle wasting,
- More body fat,
- And far less motivation.

I knew something was up, saw how TRT improved the lives of several of my friends, and then found a local doctor that specialized in TRT. When I ran my full blood panel, my levels, according to government tables, were within the “normal” ranges for my age. Thankfully, my doctor didn’t treat numbers. Instead, he treated the symptoms I described above.

Optimal versus normal

Nobody wants to be “normal.” As a man chasing excellence, you want to optimize every area of your life. A good TRT doctor will treat your *symptoms* to optimize you to the levels you had around the age of 30.

It's important to note that I am not talking about reaching the super physiological levels that a competitive bodybuilder aims for. Their exogenous testosterone dosages will be 4-10 times higher than what a TRT doctor will prescribe; abusing testosterone **will** eventually lead to health problems down the road.

Again, you are aiming for the optimal levels you had around the age of 30. Most TRT doctors will prescribe between 80 to 200 mg of testosterone per week and then adjust your dosage based on the results of your blood work.

A full blood panel, in most places in the world, will cost you around \$150 and is *well* worth the investment in your long-term health. A full blood panel will give you a factual baseline from which to begin your health optimization strategy from.

My TRT protocol

I'm currently prescribed 100mg of testosterone cypionate per week and 1000 IU of Human Chorionic Gonadotropin (or HCG) weekly.

My blood panels also revealed that I needed to attend to a few other minor areas, which my TRT doctor has been extremely helpful with. He recommended supplements that have had a noticeable impact on my overall health.

I **strongly** suggest doing this under the supervision of a licensed medical doctor that specializes in optimizing male hormones. Some men will try to save money, and do this

themselves, and get their testosterone from an underground lab in Asia, or their “bro” from the gym. But you never really know what you are getting, it’s potency, and you won’t have a licensed doctor guiding you. To me, the cost savings simply aren’t worth the risk.

I’ve already explained the merits of optimal testosterone. However, one downside of introducing exogenous testosterone into your body is that your own natural production shuts down once your body detects healthy levels again. That means your testicles will stop, or reduce, producing testosterone, sperm, and some other master hormones (like Pregnenolone, etc.).

Some men do fine with just testosterone supplementation. But I found that within four weeks of starting TRT treatment, I didn’t like the contraction (or aching) of my testicles. Some brain fog returned, and my orgasms weren’t quite as enjoyable since sperm production was reduced. So, my doctor added HCG to my protocol, and I felt like myself again after a couple of weeks.

Some men seem to do better with HCG in their protocol, as we have Luteinizing Hormone receptors throughout our body. It keeps your testes full and functioning, pumping out your standard explosive loads. HCG is also useful if you want to maintain fertility to father children.

How to boost testosterone naturally

There are a lot of products on the market that claim to boost testosterone, and always seem to cost a fortune, yet do little

to nothing. Save your money when it comes to testosterone boosters.

There are two ways to optimize testosterone naturally. The first is to remove certain habits or compounds from your life. The second way is with some vitamins and supplements that help your body produce testosterone.

REDUCE STRESS

Stress increases cortisol, and cortisol has a heavy negative impact on your body's ability to optimize its endocrine system naturally. For most men, it's either stressful jobs, or the women in their lives creating the stress. Therefore, find ways to reduce, or remove, stress where possible.

REDUCE SCREEN TIME AND BLUE LIGHT

Screens emit a blue light which disrupts our circadian rhythm and sleep patterns. Either wear blue light blocking glasses at night, or cut out screen time three hours before bed. Now use that time to read or do something else away from any screens so you can get a full night's sleep. Get 6-8 hours of restful sleep as your body repairs itself when sleeping - which includes testosterone production and other growth hormones. Your body *needs* to rest and recover more than you realize.

REMOVE PROCESSED FOODS

If the 2.4 million years of human history were broken down into 24-hrs on a clock, we've been eating meat for almost 24-hrs, wheat for six minutes, and processed foods for four seconds. Get your nutrition from a variety of greens and

animal proteins. Studies have shown processed foods to disrupt your endocrine system, so avoid them wherever possible and stay away from extreme diets that restrict variety.

REDUCE BODY FAT

Men today are fatter than ever, and excess body fat negatively affects testosterone production, and compounds the problem further because excess fat supports the aromatase function in the body. That is, the natural conversion of testosterone to estrogen increases. The more body fat you have, the more testosterone you will convert into estrogen, and it's why you see so many obese men with visible breasts today.

ADD VITAMIN D3

People living north or south of the tropics cannot manufacture enough vitamin D from sunlight, and the problem worsens in the winter months with less sunlight. The government recommends 1000 IU a day of vitamin D, but that's too low for most people; I need about 5,000 to 7,000 IU a day to even get my blood labs to show optimal levels. Vitamin D is critical in many bodily functions, including testosterone production.

Vitamin D needs the help of fats or oils to be absorbed into the bloodstream, so any vitamin D spray that is oil-based works best. However, if you only have access to tablet forms of D3, take it *after* you have a meal. The oils from the food will help aid the breakdown of the D3 tablets into the bloodstream.

It's important to note that it's possible to take too much D3, leading to a state of toxicity. While this may require sustained dosages as high as 40,000iu per day for some people, for others, it may require considerably less. This is why I *strongly* recommend that you get your blood panel done so you have an accurate baseline level to work from.

One of the by-products of higher D3 levels in the blood is calcium. This excess calcium has a tendency to be deposited in the arteries, where it can build up and calcify. In turn, ultimately risking a blockage in the affected artery if left long enough, which could be fatal.

Therefore, if you plan on taking 5,000iu a day (or more), then you **must** have a look at taking 200 **micrograms** of Vitamin K2 MK7 for every 5,000iu of D3. The MK7 variant of K2 is the most effective at working alongside D3. K2-MK7 directs the additional calcium into your bones (where it's needed most), and away from your arteries. A dosage of around 100 micrograms of K2-MK7 per 2,000iu of D3 is a sensible start.

Editor's note: Based on where I live, I take 16,000iu of D3 alongside 600 micrograms of K2 MK7 every day. And I get my blood panels done every 6-months so I can track how well I'm optimizing my levels. Suffice to say that, for me at least, there's been a *direct* correlation between my D3 levels and my Testosterone levels in *every* blood panel for the last two years.

It's so important, I also give my young kids some apple flavored D3+ K2 MK7 spray every morning. One spray

totaling 800iu for spring and summer, and two sprays totaling 1,600iu during autumn and wintertime.

In short: Don't underestimate the importance of Vitamin D3 in naturally improving your T-levels.

AVOID ELECTROMAGNETIC FIELDS (EMF)

Electromagnetic frequencies have been shown to disrupt the endocrine system, and mitochondria. These are emitted all around us, all day from our cell phone, tablets, and laptops. Try to minimize your exposure to microwave (cell signals), Wi-Fi, and Bluetooth as much as possible.

Put a timer on your Wi-Fi router power outlet to shut it off while you sleep and keep all electronics or screens out of your bedroom. If you use a laptop, it's often sitting right on top of your testes, so get an EMF blocking pad to eliminate exposure. Also keep your cell phone out of your pant pockets, or away from the body at all times.

ADD THE FOLLOWING SUPPLEMENTS

The following vitamins are useful in helping the body optimize its own testosterone production: A, B, C, E, Zinc, and Boron. Studies have also proven that ginger extract and Ashwagandha naturally help improve your sleep.

In conclusion

Testosterone is what makes us a man. It's why a healthy male has three times the upper body strength as a female, it's what makes us aggressive, and rise to life's challenges.

We have seen a dramatic decline in testosterone levels in men over the last 50-years, and the subsequent rise of weaker, softer, and more agreeable men in society.

Environmental estrogens in food, toiletries, drinks, and beers are being consumed in record numbers. Compound into that, the constant bombardment of EMF on your body in large cities everywhere you go, terrible diets, inactivity, and people's addictions to their blue light screens. Combined together, it explains why we've seen the general weakening of the Western male.

Simply put, without healthy testosterone levels you will never operate at an optimal level as a man. Make monitoring your levels habitual. It will be a competitive advantage when navigating a world that is slowly making most men weaker, slower, and dumber.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- Testosterone doesn't just fuel your sex drive. It also governs many vital functions within your body. So, increasing it is **vital** to your own physical, mental, and emotional well-being.
- Do absolutely *everything* you can to optimize your testosterone levels naturally first. It might surprise you just how much you can raise them using just consistency and self-discipline.

- Your T-levels might come back within the “normal” range. But that range might only be normal if you’re 60+ years of age. Remember, get a competent doctor to treat your *symptoms* (not your number).
- Therefore, not all doctors are created equal in this area. Do your homework and shop around for a doctor who has real experience in this field.
- Going onto TRT is a *lifelong* commitment as your body will stop making testosterone naturally as your T-levels increase.
- Check your medical insurance (if applicable to where you live) to see if it covers TRT. If not, you must factor in the ongoing cost of private TRT treatment.

MANAGE THE FCKS YOU GIVE

When I was young, we played a lot of player-versus-player video games. There was a popular one called Mortal Kombat, and they all operated on the same concept. You started with 100% on your life bar and as you battle, each hit you took reduced your life until it was 0% and you'd die by some outrageous fatality resulting in massive carnage.

Life isn't much different. Essentially, it's about us taking hits all day long, draining our energy, attention, and resources until we hit zero. Unfortunately, most people don't value the energy they give away and they freely dispense it like it's an unlimited resource, and this is a **big** mistake.

Many people today see the barrage of hate I get for the truth I reveal in my videos, and they ask me how I handle it. Often my response is: "You need to learn to give zero fucks."

We all, by design, have a limited amount of energy that we can allocate to our daily lives. Everything we do takes time and resources. Our job, kids, friends, events, partners, and even the small things, like when my child wants me to kill a spider in the bathroom.

I refer to the energy that you can spend as the "fucks" you can give. Therefore, it's incumbent upon you, as a man of vision and purpose, to manage every fuck wisely.

We are the masters of our lives, so we have the privilege of deciding where we want to dispense those limited amounts of fucks on. Only we get to choose what is *truly* fuckworthy in our lives.

When you drive to work and the asshole in the BMW cuts you off, you often choose to allocate those fucks to being frustrated. Rather than accepting it and saving those fucks for something else.

When a co-worker makes a disparaging comment because you won't donate \$10 to "Donna in accounting's" fundraiser, you can dispense those fucks, and comment back with your feelings. Or, you can go about your business in a "zero fucks given" kind of way and ignore her underhanded comment.

To truly manage your fucks, you must first master self-control.

Self-control

You know that asshole in a BMW who doesn't signal and cuts you off? You have two choices:

1. Throw a tantrum in your car, wave your middle finger about, and flash your high beams, before accelerating

up to his bumper - giving away some of your limited fucks in the process.

2. Utilize self-control, reserve your fucks for something more fuck worthy, and do nothing.

Option one burns up some of your limited fucks for the day and also applies stress to your body. Cortisol, a stress hormone, is released into your body when something gets under your skin, making it catabolic. Whereas option two does nothing. Ultimately, mastering self-control, and your emotions matters.

Those who are world class at their craft, and pursue excellence, are *incredibly careful* about managing their time, energy, and resources. Ultimately, you can't become the best version of yourself if you're constantly re-allocating your energy to things which don't deserve that energy and don't bring you closer to your goals, passions, and dreams.

“ Where awareness goes, energy flows.

- Dandapani

While this may seem like a simple notion, this idea was profound for me. I met Dandapani, a monk, at an entrepreneur's dinner event in Toronto where he was booked as the keynote speaker.

He sat there before us, legs crossed, on the floor, in full monk garb, with beads, and three white lines painted on his forehead.

He was an unlikely character to speak to entrepreneurs running successful multimillion-dollar businesses. They presented him to us as a Hindu priest with an Australian accent who had just finished 10-years in a monastery in Hawaii.

Entrepreneurs are notoriously prone to distractions, and many have varying degrees of Attention Deficit Disorder (or ADD). They are like herding cats. This monk was there to help entrepreneurs understand the notion of what “Energy Vampires” are, and how to manage their awareness to be more effective in their businesses.

Awareness, he explained, is like a glowing ball of light which moves around in your head, and when it goes to a particular area of the mind, then that area is lit up, which is where your energy flows.

So, if awareness goes to a happy area of the mind, then that is where your energy is flowing. And, if energy is flowing to the happy area of the mind, then it is also strengthening this area of the mind.

In order to manage your fucks, you must understand that the biggest threat comes from people, places, or things which are “Energy Vampires.” These are usually people that will take up your time, drain your energy, and leave you feeling exhausted from your encounter with them.

The keyword here is “exhausted” after your encounter. For more on that, search for ‘How to deal with Energy Vampires’ on my channel.

Mastering self-control

So how do you master self-control? Self-control is perhaps the most powerful skill you can develop that will help you master a better life.

When you learn how to manage your fucks and walk away from Energy Vampires, you exercise self-control, and start preserving your fucks for truly fuckworthy things that make you happy in life.

How do you know if something is fuckworthy? Simple. If the dispensing of the fuck helps make you, or your loved one's lives better, then it's usually worth dispensing precious fucks on.

Some might argue that this is a selfish or unkind way to navigate life. I propose that you re-evaluate how serious you are about managing your energy if this belief is violated by my statement above.

If the dispensing of said fuck drains you, or your loved ones, then it is probably better if you use self-control and preserve those fucks.

Let me give you a perfect example. I dated a single mother once, and one of her core passions was dinner parties. She would invite guests that were exhausting to be around.

My date had one friend that would berate, criticize, and judge everyone - including her husband. Her friend was a typical stay-at-home soccer mum, with teenage kids, who also had an exceedingly high opinion of herself.

However, she was nothing more than an obese middle-aged woman expecting people to agree with her worldview. She was, in fact, an Energy Vampire. Meaning that being around her was an emotionally draining experience.

Simply put, there was no benefit to being in the same room as her. I knew that she set a terrible example of what an adult woman should be, I knew I didn't want to have *my* daughter around that energy.

After I received a second invite to attend another dinner party. I declined and, as you'd expect, declining the offer offended my girlfriend and she tried to create an argument out of it.

I simply didn't take part, thanked her for the invite, and ended the call. We didn't talk for a few days, and she called me after the dinner event to apologize and agreed that her friend was an Energy Vampire.

You see, when you exercise self-control, you manage your fucks better. When you become aware of who is an Energy Vampire in your life, you will be forced to make choices that may offend some people. Guess what? That's okay. A man that is on his purpose in life will inevitably rub some people the wrong way.

Remember, if you value your fucks as a limited resource, you will only dispense them for things that are *truly* fuckworthy.

How do you strengthen self-control?

It's my belief that self-control is like a muscle, the more you work it, the stronger it gets.

One of the simplest ways to strengthen that self-control muscle is to do things that are physically difficult or that challenge you. If you are looking for a task to improve your self-control, then taking a cold shower for most people is hard. Especially if you've had access to hot water all your life. Hot water is a modern luxury, but for millions of years we have been bathing in icy lakes and rivers.

To take a cold shower requires self-control. But, most people don't even have the ability to do something basic like stand in uncomfortably cold water in a shower. I urge you to start taking cold showers for the following reasons:

- It strengthens your self-control.
- It also offers the following health benefits:
- Reduced brain fog and improved focus.
- Improves circulation.
- Keeps skin & hair healthy.
- Strengthens immunity.
- Improves energy and wellbeing.
- Improves metabolism and fat burning abilities.

Do you want to improve your self-control and learn how to manage your fucks better? Then start by doing something as simple as taking cold showers. It's easy to understand, simple to execute on, but takes discipline and willpower to build.

I was speaking at a conference and closed off my talk speaking about managing your fucks, and someone asked me in the audience about how they felt anxiety over dispensing their fucks, and how to reserve them better.

The bottom line is this: If you value your fucks as a resource that has a limit to it, then you will only allocate your limited fucks towards matters that *truly deserve* your fucks.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- The energy that you begin every day with is *extremely limited*. So, stop wasting it on things that don't help drive you, your mission, or your family forwards in life.
- Giving a shit about every little thing that happens will only go to raise your Cortisol levels. In turn, you get worked up over nothing important, while you simultaneously tank your Testosterone levels. Be sure you've read my chapter 'Manage Your Endocrine System' for more information on this vital area of your well-being.
- There's also a good chance that if you go to bed with lower Cortisol levels, then there's a much higher chance of having a far better night's sleep.

GETTING “DA GIRLS” ONLINE

It’s exceptionally important for me to open this chapter by stating that women should *never* be the focus of a man’s life. Chasing excellence, finding purpose, making bank, and self-care need to trump chasing tail. Every. Single. Time.

Remember, beautiful women are not a scarce resource. High-value men that have their lives sorted out are the scarce resource on the sexual marketplace, not beautiful women.

The cold hard truth about online dating

Now that we’ve gotten that out of the way, understand that when you use online dating apps, the deck is *always* stacked up against you if you aren’t in the top 20% of men.

Several dating sites have released data over the years on how men and women use online dating sites. And some startling results have emerged confirming what the red pill has been saying for decades.

The top 78% of women are competing for the attention of the top 20% of men. While the bottom 80% of men are competing for the bottom 22% of women.

Confirming the reality of women's hypergamous nature on dating apps.

What that means is, if you are a high-value man (so an 8/10 or better), you are spoiled for choice with women on dating apps. It's absurd to say this, but a 3/10 female is shooting for the 8/10 male or better - and she'll genuinely think she's in with a chance of landing one.

If you are a 7/10 male or lower, you are basically competing for scraps. So, again, this is why it's vital for men to understand that chasing excellence, and not women, will always be your best ROI in life.

Dating sites and apps are filled with overly entitled and bratty women. Who possess an over-inflated sense of self-worth and, to top it all off, many of them are single mothers too.

How to assess your value

I'm a big fan of getting an ROI on every area of life. So knowing now how women use dating apps, we can approach it from an informed angle, giving us better results. This is a two-step process.

The first step is a brutally honest self-assessment. Take a good, hard, look at yourself and your life, and rate yourself on a scale of 1 to 10. With 10 being the absolute best version

of yourself, and 1 being the worst. **Do not** compare yourself to a Hollywood actor, or a billionaire. You are asking yourself: “Am I the best version of myself?”

Factor in the following for your age: Your job, wealth, self-care, your physique, look, style, your network, your hobbies, if you have kids, your car, and your home. The “Looks, Money, Status, and Game” chapter covers most of this.

These areas matter to women, so be completely honest with yourself.

Now that you’ve rated yourself, go onto your dating application of choice, and set yourself up to see what the female experience is like in your age range and location, but set it to “Female seeking Male.”

You are now looking at your competition. This will help you understand what you are up against. Now use this newfound knowledge of your competition to make a correction of your sexual market value assessment – if you require it.

If you are a 6/10 or lower, then I’d discourage you from using dating apps. Instead, I’d encourage you to double-down on yourself and do the work needed to increase your value on the sexual marketplace.

If you are a 7/10, you’re going to have a harder time. But, good photography can be an equalizer to improve the optics of your value one point higher. However, don’t rely on trick photography, you still have work to do.

If you are an 8/10 or higher, then congratulations, you’ve done the work. Continue to keep working on yourself and

enjoy being one of the 20% of men that are spoilt for choice on dating apps.

How to get results

There's three parts to doing well with online game (after that, everything happens in real-life):

1. Photography.
2. Bio.
3. Messaging.

PHOTOGRAPHY

Photography is arguably the most important part. On matching apps like Tinder or Bumble, it's the primary driver that dictates in which direction she will swipe. It's also the area where you can create the illusion of a SMV that's one to two points higher if you do it right.

It's essential that you hire a photographer to take pictures for dating apps or social proof.

At the time of writing in mid-2020, there is an oversupply of young photographers that you can hire for around \$100 on Craigslist, or even Air B 'n B experiences, for two hours to do a photo shoot.

To get the most out of it, bring three different, but well-fitted, outfits, and ask the photographer to select some suitable locations that they are familiar with. Make sure you show up looking sharp with a fresh haircut and let them

work their magic. Many men have significantly improved their results with women on dating apps with the correct use of superior quality photography.

Once you've got your collection of eye-catching photos, the next step is to use a site where women rate your pictures for dating purposes.

At the time of writing this book, Photofeeler is the best platform available to get genuine feedback from real women.

HOW TO LEVEL UP YOUR PHOTOS

Once you've narrowed down your top three professional photographs (based on the top three ratings from Photofeeler), you can stop there if you like. However, it often helps to include the following three additional compositions into your profile. These are: The “group of friends” picture, the “mystery” picture, and the “Aww!” picture.

The “group of friends” picture is straightforward and is designed to immediately establish high-value through social proof. You'll get bonus points if your circle of friends looks successful, established, and they look like the type of people and social circle that she wants to be around.

You are basically telling her, “Hey sexy, if you date me, you'll get to know these legends and hang around my people.” For example, a group photograph on a yacht will always do better for you than a group picture in a trailer park, surrounded by lower-value men. So be intentional when selecting a “group of friends” picture.

The mystery picture is one of my favorites, because it caffeinates the hamster in her head, and runs her imagination wild. This is always a solo picture and it's best taken at sunrise or sunset with the light behind you, and your image as a back-lit silhouette.

The following photo of me is a solid example and was taken at sunrise at a resort in Mexico. It works well because you can clearly see my physique, the 'V taper' and because I was enjoying a natural moment in the pool. That I am also half naked will get her mind racing to manufacture ideas.



Giver her something mysterious to think about.

The “Aww!” picture is something that will pull on her heartstrings a bit, and should ideally be a picture of you with

a pet. It doesn't need to be your pet, but cute puppies are, by far, the best accessory for this picture.

Stay away from cats, or a kid (even if they aren't your kids). The only time I would suggest kids for this type of picture is if you are building a school on a Caribbean island after a hurricane (and you're surrounded by kids that obviously aren't yours).

Even if you are a single father, I'd still discourage you from posting pictures of you with your kids. Like it or not, women are inherently solipsistic, and are self-interested in what they can benefit from being with you. If you signal in a photo to potential women that you are a father with kids in tow, it's highly unlikely to benefit you.

Your biography

The biography (or, bio) section is far less important than the pictures. But it's still worth covering from the perspective of what *not* to do.

Do not drone on and use the full character allowance. Truthfully, she doesn't even care that much, and she has already made 95% of her decision about matching with you based on the pictures she has seen. The point of the bio is to caffeinate the hamster in her mind that bit further and get her really curious about you.

We know women are hypergamous and solipsistic. So, all your bio needs to convey is that you are her best option (of

the many available to her), and that there's something in it for her.

My typical bio would read:

“ 6'2”, successful entrepreneur putting a dent in the universe. Great social circle of friends and adventurer, looking for a feminine beauty to join me.

That's it, that's all you need. It says I'm tall, make bank, have an impressive network, and that I am not boring. The bit about “putting a dent in the universe” should get her asking questions if she has a strong interest in you. The “join me” bit lets her know right off the bat; she's entering my frame.

With women, you can do almost anything you want to them – but do not bore them.

Some guys will use clever lines like: “Like my shirt, it's made out of boyfriend material.” And while that may seem smart, truthfully, it comes off a bit desperate. Make women qualify for your time, not the other way around.

Messaging

So, you've got matches; now let's talk messaging. The vast majority of men get messaging totally wrong. The **entire** point of communicating back and forth on a dating application is to weed out the manipulative time wasters and then get her number to set up a date.

That's it. The biggest mistake men make is in wasting time 'getting to know her.' That's not what she wants. Nor, do you want to waste your time chatting up someone that looks nothing like their pictures, only to be disappointed in person.

Keep in mind, *many* women will use dating apps just to get fleeting social validation from men. They will ignore, or ghost, any guy they have low desire for, even if they previously matched with you.

Your first message to her should be something playful like: "You look like you could be trouble."

Ask this question to establish her interest level. A woman with a high level of interest will respond, and engage with you, preferably with a question about why you said that, or about your awesome pictures.

If she isn't asking questions, uses noticeably brief responses, or takes a long time to respond, she isn't that into you.

If she asks questions, be somewhat vague in your response. Remember, you want her qualifying herself to you, so be curious. Women *love* exciting and mysterious men, so don't show up and verbally throw up all your most interesting information before you even meet her.

For me, women try to establish what kind of entrepreneur I am, or businesses I run. Not because she is interested in the business, but to establish how much I earn running it. She might ask about my business, or what dent I am putting in the universe. To which I would often reply with: "I'm a board advisor in a national financial services business, real

estate investor, and do my own private equity investing.” All true, but most women won’t understand what any of that means, aside from I’m important, and again, that I make bank.

After I drop that bomb, I’d often follow up with: “So what do you do?” Not because I particularly care, but to subconsciously establish that my SMV is higher than hers.

Once you’ve exchanged a few messages back and forth, message her with: “I’m busy today, and I’m not on here often, but what’s your number? Let’s set up a date to meet this week.”

If she is into you, she will give you her number. If not, she will give you an excuse. It’s always one or the other. The medium is the message, gentlemen.

Also, *do not* take her social media, Instagram, or Snapchat as a replacement for a phone number. GET. HER. PHONE NUMBER! Women *want* a man that can take control and set up the date and you need a number to do that.

If she offers you to follow her on social media, immediately decline the offer. She wants you to be one of her hundreds of thirsty betas orbiting around her there, giving social validation and free attention to her.

If she says she barely knows you and wants to chat more on the application, tell her you are busy, and only on there to date in real life. You’re not there to accumulate pen pals. Women that say this do not have genuine burning desire for

you, she only sees you as an alternative if her line of other, more preferable, options don't work out.

Again, if she has a genuine desire for you, then she will give you her number. When she does, text her within a day, and set up a date. Otherwise, unmatched her and move right on.

The date aka: “The sniff test”

Your first date with her should be an hour or less, and nothing more than a drink or coffee. The whole point of the sniff test is to:

1. See if she is worth your time.
2. Determine if she has a genuine interest in you.

The total cost should be less than \$20. You always pay and do not split the bill for a drink - you will look like a loser. My preferred first date would be to grab a coffee and then go for a stroll in some public space like a park or hiking trail.

You want her to feel comfortable. But, you also want to get a good look at her since most women today use older photography, or even touch up their pictures, so they rarely look better in person.

If it's during the day, meet her at a coffee shop, grab your drinks, and then find your way to an outdoor trail. If it's at night, make plans after eight for a drink so she isn't expecting a free dinner, and then chat her up on a patio or bar.

If she is unfamiliar with the area for a date, send her a Google map link for the location so she can find it with no trouble.

Unless you are in her area on business, always have her meet you halfway. The more she has to travel, and the less you need to, is preferable for you for two reasons:

1. It saves you time.
2. It tests her for genuine burning desire.

A woman with a strong desire for you will drive two hours to your house on a first date. She'll then gladly drop to her knees at the door without saying a word (on your instructions) and give you the best blow job of your life.

Trust me. **Do not** go running to her front door for dates. If she insists that you travel to her, then she is telling you *right off the bat* that she doesn't have that genuine burning desire for you.

Each new meeting should start by standing up with a big smile, including a brief handshake, or if you're so inclined and comfortable, pull her in for a brief hug. Then, gesture to either sit, if it's a night venue, or stand in the ordering line if you are getting coffee and going out.

Some men like to go for a same day lay. And, while you may be successful sometimes, my preference is to just do a "sniff test" on her. Just to see if she is even worth seeing again and to check if there is a genuine connection there or not.

When the hour is up, walk her to her car, Uber or transit and, if you have a connection, bring her in for a hug, and/or brief kiss and let her know you'll be in touch. If there is no connection, just say your farewells and leave it at that.

Getting laid and spinning those plates

Sexual intimacy should happen by the second to third date for three reasons:

1. You make it clear that you have a genuine interest in her sexual attention and will not be friend-zoned.
2. You want to ensure there is a good sexual connection.
3. Sex is awesome.

Some guys might argue that it's too soon, or they will wait “for the right girl”. I'm here to tell you that this is the wrong way to approach it. Never forget: Women break rules for alphas and make them for betas.

If a woman is happy to have sex with the hot dude from the foam cannon party in Ibiza 15-minutes after she meets him, why should you wait eight dates?

Unless you are Amish, all of today's modern women on dating apps have hooked up with *many* guys prior, so don't think for a minute she is the Virgin Mary.

Some people like to argue that there are “good girls” you should wait to be intimate with. The truth is, the only difference between good girls and bad girls is: Good girls just haven't been caught yet.

The best way to facilitate sexual intimacy is to begin with your messages leading up to the next date. Make it clear you are interested in her sexual attention. It's men that play the 'nice guy' that get 'friend-zoned' by women, earning them nothing but non-sexual attention.

Some women will send you provocative pictures without request. Other times you will need to request them. Other women may not send naughty photos at all, but will openly engage in some naughty talk with you. Either way, it should be crystal clear to her after the first date, aka: "The sniff test," that you are interested in her *sexual* attention, and it should be mutual.

If it's not, and she wants to "get to know you first" because she has rules, remember that women break rules for alpha men, and make them for betas. You will *never* get her "best" if she sees you as a beta, but she will give her best to Chad Thundercock on the first date. My view is *never* date a woman if she treats you as a beta as she will always hold out on you.

Ideally, set your sex date for an evening, and host her at your place. If she drinks, have a selection of wine or vodka at your house. If you don't have your own place, you will need to go to her place. Or, if you're a younger man and still with your parents, having a car with tinted windows is always useful.

To get to sex, you need to get comfortable and confident with escalation. Music is great for setting the mood, I use whatever sexy playlist off my Google music application is trending. You can escalate the sexual tension by inviting her

for a hot tub or sauna if you have one, or you can simply start by touching, and kissing. If she reciprocates warmly, then escalate, and move to heavier petting, which should lead to sex.

Always be in control of birth

As a man, you must **always** be in control of the birth. Once your sperm leaves your body, **you no longer have any decision-making ability to terminate a pregnancy**. The government will force you to pay child support - even if you don't want the child.

All control is with the woman. So **always** have condoms on hand; do not 'raw dawg' a woman, no matter how horny you are. You cannot rely on her promise of being disease free, or on reliable birth control. Women lie, and they lie *often*.

You should also have a "Plan B" on hand in the event a condom breaks. "Plan B", more commonly known as the morning after pill, is effective. It's an oral tablet she takes, which very quickly triggers her period, removing the risk of your sperm fertilizing her egg.

If you have an accident, make sure she takes the morning after pill in front of you, and you **know** for sure that she swallowed it. Women have been known to take them in the bathroom with the door shut, and just spit it into the toilet or garbage if they want your seed bad enough.

Again, I **cannot** put enough emphasis on this; **always** be in control of birth, **do not** rely on a woman's word. As the old

saying goes, an ounce of prevention is worth a pound of the cure.

If you get involved on a longer-term basis with her, and are getting fed up with condoms, then you may want to consider other forms of birth control, like an IUD. However, I **strongly** discourage you from ever trusting her to take a birth control pill - or any other oral contraceptive.

“Surprise” pregnancies often come out of her forgetting, or intentionally not taking her birth control. IUDs are generally considered more than 99% effective.

There are male birth control pills going through clinical trials at the time of writing this book, and the studies reveal that they work by lowering your testosterone levels to make your sperm ineffective. **NEVER** use this form of male contraception! You will become weak, unattractive, and feminized. It’s a pill that basically turns you into an old man. Either have her on an IUD, use condoms, or get a vasectomy.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- 78% of women are only interested in the top 20% of men online. The other 80% of men who are invisible to them are left fighting for the bottom 20% of the super-low SMV women.
- Be completely honest with your own personal value and mark it accordingly. Put your focus into

developing these areas *before* you re-enter the sexual marketplace.

- Stand out from the crowd by investing in some professional photography. Seriously. It'll pay dividends - trust me on this one.
- Texting is mostly for logistics. By all means, open up with something fun and flirty for her to bounce off of. Once she's asking questions, get her agreeing to a date ASAP.
- Don't be single-minded in trying to get laid on the first date. It's more important to vet her for potentially serious red flags (such as seeing how she responds if you tell her "No." with a smile on your face). Never stick your dick in crazy.
- Finally, **ALWAYS** be in control of the birth. **Without exception.** Far, *far*, too many men have been already duped by women with "baby rabies". **Do not** let yourself become one of them.

PROMISCUOUS PRIMATES

Most men idealize a single type of relationship with women. The version that Walt Disney sold us as kids. One man, his wife, their children, and a love that lasts forever.

Society has conditioned us to believe that a relationship is going to be nice, romantic, caring, and respectful. That we'll find that "one good girl" that will only date and love you. That you'll both get engaged, then get married, have kids and live "happily ever after." That she will be a faithful, loving wife and mother "In richer or poorer, in sickness or in health. 'til death do us part."

This is a social contract that very rarely fulfills its promise of a blissful life. Instead, marriage comes with significant risks to men.

While the next chapter talks about marriage in more depth, it is important to note that this social contract is *exceedingly difficult* to manage over the long term.

Our highly promiscuous ancestors lived as non-monogamous hunter/gatherers, in small nomadic tribes, and

preceded us for six million years. We've lived as modern humans for 200,000 years, and civilization, as we know it, began around 6,000 years ago. Monogamy and marriage have only been around for less than 2,000 years.

Men and women are, by nature, highly promiscuous. There's also a *massive* conflict between how we've all been told to behave, versus our instinctual hard-wiring. Which has been built up over millions of years of evolution.

In this chapter, I want to expose some myths about humans and enlighten you to the true nature of our sexual strategies.

We are terrible at monogamy

In fact, as a species, we are highly promiscuous. When it comes to mammals, monogamy isn't common at all. In fact, as a sexual strategy, monogamy is an *outlier* amongst mammals.

I always catch heat from traditional conservatives for talking about how badly we fail at monogamy. But, as the saying goes, a bomber only gets flak when it's over the target.

It's universally accepted by those that study the dynamics between men and women, that the male sexual strategy is unlimited access to unlimited women. Whereas the female sexual strategy is open hypergamy.

What that means is men want to scatter their seed far and wide. As men produce millions of sperm every month, those seeds are both ridiculously cheap and readily available.

Women, however, are more complicated. They look for the best genetic investment in their offspring and the best provisioning male, because their eggs are a limited resource.

You should note that the best genetic investment, and best provisioning male, isn't always the same man. It's sometimes one high value alpha with great genetics that provides the seed, and another, more beta, reliable male that provides for the need of raising the offspring.

Hence the popular soundbite distilling the female sexual of open hypergamy as: "Alpha fucks; beta bucks."

A women's sexual strategy is dualistic and quite frustrating for most men to comprehend. It's also why men often raise grievances about women crying over wanting "Mr. Dependable," while she goes off and fucks "Mr. Exciting" instead.

How her sexual strategy constantly changes

A woman's sexual strategy changes over time. Under the age of 27, women are generally in their party years, and are happy to explore, and sleep with, as many high value alpha men as possible. By the time she is in her late twenties, she has reached the 'Epiphany Phase' of her life. This is where millions of years of evolution in her DNA yell at her, "Hey lady, where are the babies!?"

The 'Epiphany Phase' is often when women will start seeking out a suitable man to have children with. Ideally, they want a strong alpha seed, and a tender beta protector.

But these traits rarely exist in the same man, and high value alphas aren't that easy for her to lock down. So, women will typically compromise and settle for a more beta male that they deemed as "good enough."

It's why you'll often see many mid-thirties divorced women on the dating market with kids in tow after initiating her divorce. I encountered many of these women on the dating market after my own divorce. I also noticed a trend of some version of the soundbite: "I loved him, but I wasn't IN love with him anymore."

Somehow, today he is a loser. But, at some point in time, he was good enough for her.

This *completely* violates the marriage vows of "To have and to hold, from this day forward, for better, for worse, for richer, for poorer, in sickness and in health, to love and to cherish, 'til death do us part..."

I've coached many men who have taken this hook, line, and sinker. But, you need to understand that marriage is no buffer from hypergamy. If a woman feels like she hasn't done the best that she can do, and her Sexual Market Value (or SMV) has increased over her partner's significantly, then the marriage is at risk. Women can, and often do, leave the *perfectly* good men that they took those vows with, so they can "Go and explore their options."

This is often around the time when she'll get her breast augmentation, start hitting the gym and yoga studio, and why wouldn't she? She's had kids, so family law ensures she'll be well looked after financially. There's also plenty of

people telling her: “You go girl, you don’t need a man, and you can do better.”

Her cycles

When women ovulate, they dress more provocatively, wear more make-up, and expose more skin. It’s when they prefer men with signals of higher testosterone, more facial symmetry, a deeper voice, who’s taller, who has bigger muscles and, of course, a real alpha presence. Basically, the “Alpha Fucks” part of the hypergamy equation. But, when women are on their period, their preference for men shifts more towards comfort, provisioning, and safety. Essentially, the “Beta Bucks” part of hypergamy.

The problem is society, religion, government, school, media, culture, and family have programmed us as men to look for “the one” and then *only* be with her. But, when you observe the behavior of human’s sexual strategy, it’s more or less “monogomish.” We rarely pair bond to one partner for life.

Instead, we try to declare monogamy to one partner at a time, while acting clandestine in our adulterous adventures. But we usually have multiple sexual partners and relationships throughout our lives.

At some point, you’ll learn the hard way that women are not particularly good at being monogamous over the long term. Although, neither are men.

Women can, and do, move *very* quickly from partner to partner. In several cases, I’ve known women who’ve slept

with multiple partners in a 24-hr period as they felt that it advanced their sexual strategy. All without giving your feelings a second thought.

I'm personally aware of women doing this at least twice in my life.

Sex at Dawn

In Chris Ryan's pivotal 2011 book '*Sex at Dawn*', he examines human promiscuity throughout history on a deep level. All evolutionary evidence, and the terrible success record of marriage today, points to both men *and* women being incredibly poor at long term monogamous pair bonding.

Here are some shocking evolutionary truths about humans and our primate cousins we share 98% of our DNA with:

MALE AND FEMALE SIZE DIFFERENTIALS

Only non-monogamous primates universally have males that are 15-20% larger than females. In harem-based primates (like Gorillas), the size differential is even more pronounced, with the male being twice the size of the female. In monogamous based primates, like Gibbons, there's no size differential between males and females.

PENIS & TESTICULAR SIZE

Only non-monogamous and promiscuous primates have large testicles and a highly specialized penis to facilitate sperm competition in the reproductive tract of the female. Harem-based primates, like Gorillas, have tiny testicles the

size of kidney beans, and unspecialized penises smaller than your pinky finger. This is because the silverback owns the reproductive rights to his harem of females through sheer physical strength and size.

There is no need for the sperm to “fight it out” in the reproductive tract for the rights to fertilize the egg. The fighting is finished long before any other male can get anywhere near the reproductive tracts of his harem females.

FEMALE COPULATORY VOCALIZATION

Of the hundreds of primate species (including humans), female copulatory vocalization (aka loud moaning during sex) universally exists through non-monogamous primates only. In monogamous based primates, like the Gibbons for example, there is no moaning from the females during sex.

Remember that the next time you are having sex, because millions of years of evolution are making her moan as a calling to other males to mate with her. This reduces the chances of infanticide, since it is impossible for the males to know who the father is. It also ensures that the female obtains the highest quality sperm to compete for her single available egg in her reproductive tract.

SEX THAT DOESN'T LEAD TO PREGNANCY

On average, non-monogamous promiscuous primates have sex 750 times, or more, for every pregnancy. In humans, it's approximately 1,000 times for every pregnancy. Sex for the purpose of pleasure and socializing is very unusual in the animal world. Yet, it's quite common in non-monogamous

primates. For most animals they have sex, on average, 10-15 times for every pregnancy that occurs.

Humans rarely have sex just to reproduce. If you factor in all the ways humans have sex that can't possibly lead to pregnancy (for example, oral and anal), then over 99% of the sex humans have will never lead to a pregnancy. Sex for non-monogamous promiscuous primates is all about social interaction, pleasure, validation, or transactions.

Cuckoldry

Cuckoldry, or “cuck”, is a term that is often used online to be disparaging. It's where a man raises another man's child (his genetic investment). Note, that 43% of North American children are being raised by a single mother. So, it needs to be stated that most of these children are the result of a woman taking on the alpha seed for the best genetic material.

She then pivots her sexual strategy, either by choice, or involuntarily, to beta need. Therefore, finding a willing male to adopt her offspring, either knowingly or unknowingly.

There are millions of these women on dating sites today looking for beta cucks to take over the responsibility of raising another man's child. In fact, some are even brazen enough to go shopping for their cuckold, while pregnant with another man's seed.

There is another, less obvious, form of cuckoldry today, and it is beta men unknowingly experiencing paternity fraud

from raising children he thought were his. However, the kids are in fact the alpha male's seed.

Marriage is no buffer from paternity fraud. It's impossible to determine the actual statistics because fraud, by definition, requires deceit, something women are highly evolved at. However, it's estimated that anywhere from 10-30% of children that are born are not biologically the child of the man that is acting as the "father" to that child.

The female primary social order is so vested in burying paternity fraud by women, that feminist groups have called it "the demonization of women." In fact, paternity testing in some countries has been outlawed by the feminine imperative.

Men's proclivity to "Oneitis"

Of the hundreds of men that I've coached, one of the most common reasons for booking a call was to deal with a condition known as "Oneitis." We loosely define Oneitis as when a guy falls hard for a girl, to the point of obsessing over her.

It is often characterized by the guy making a statement such as: "She's the only one for me."

“ Oneitis is an unhealthy psychological dependency that is the direct result of the continuous socialization of the soulmate myth in pop culture.

- Rollo Tomassi

One shortcoming of the male belief system is that there is only one perfect woman for us. Women will argue that they feel oneitis too. But, it's *never* anywhere near close to the debilitating degree of 'Oneitis' that I've seen men suffer from.

It's a scarcity mindset and is something I've personally experienced in the past.

I've pined for at least two women that I believed were "the one." Men suffering from 'Oneitis' can't sleep properly or focus on tasks. They lose weight because of a lack of appetite and are distracted from chasing excellence. The sulking they do can last for weeks, months, or in some cases, for well over a year.

I've done it myself and I can honestly say it's one of the most pathetic things I've done and see men do.

There's a lot of theories floating around about why men suffer so badly from it. But, as there are over four billion women on the Earth, it's incredibly arrogant to think there is just *one* perfect woman for you.

But you can't tell that to the guy who's curled up in a ball crying himself to sleep, because he got dumped by his "Oneitis," and that he needs to let it go and move on. He genuinely *cannot* fathom a world without her.

So, how does a man reduce his tendency for 'Oneitis'? By creating abundance and options in his life. In short, he spins plates, and makes himself his own mental point of origin.

Enter plate theory

We've all seen the circus act of the man spinning multiple plates on several sticks. If not, it works like this: The circus performer randomly makes some spinning inputs to each plate. He then gives each plate some attention as they need it, enabling them to spin simultaneously, but independently.

A "plate" is any woman you are dating non-monogamously while also seeing other women.

When spinning plates, you are not obligated to be intimate with more than one woman, but if you are so inclined, you may. This dating strategy is especially ideal because:

- It creates plenty of contrast in female nature, and helps men looking for an LTR, or a mother for children, to assess the best possible candidate.
- It creates an abundance mindset and greatly reduces the chances of Oneitis from occurring.
- It helps men optimize their sexual strategy of unlimited access to unlimited women.
- You remain your own mental point of origin.
- You can quickly eliminate the women with a lower interest in you, because they won't tolerate being an option to a man that is dating other women.
- It helps quickly solidify women with a strong interest in you, because they will tolerate other women in your life.

A lot of men think that women won't tolerate being treated as a plate. But, we know by watching what women do, that they are happier to share a high value alpha than to be saddled with a faithful beta loser.

Men already in a monogamous relationship, or marriage, cannot spin plates. But for men, especially under the age of 30, this is *ideal* to help them more rapidly understand the sexual marketplace, and what drives arousal and desire between the sexes.

Men post-divorce, recently single or otherwise, should also consider this dating strategy. Because any immediate commitment to one woman after you've been through the divorce machine usually ends in a train wreck.

I've seen plenty of men not give themselves enough time to understand female nature, only to rush straight into another LTR or marriage without updating their belief system. These men often get into several marriages and then wonder why women keep taking them to the cleaners.

Taking some time to date casually and spin plates will help recalibrate your awareness on the sexual marketplace.

A man should *never* openly declare that he is spinning plates. Rather he should, through his actions, covertly convey that he is a man of status. That he has options by the choices he makes, and the availability in his schedule.

For example, if you normally see a plate on Wednesday nights, and she wants to add a Friday night (but you have plans with another date), then you simply respond with "I

have plans, but I'll see you next Wednesday." You don't need to explain what you are doing, why, or with whom.

In fact, what this will do is induce competition anxiety in her head. Which, if she's hot for you, will increase her desire for you as she'll see you as a man of higher value who has his time in demand by others.

One of the greatest aphrodisiacs for women is the unknown, and letting her marinate on rationalizing your whereabouts often increases desire in women.

Remember, women would rather share a high value alpha than be saddled with a faithful loser. **You are the prize**, so act like it.

Spin those plates

A man up to his late twenties should never limit his options to just one woman, or get into a LTR. Most men have *no* idea what women are about, or understand their nature, and are incapable of staying focused on building their purpose in life. Far too many men in their twenties are too quick to abandon their purpose in life. Instead, they want to fulfill that narrative of having a girlfriend, or worse a wife, for definition. Women should **never** define you.

If you do allow a woman to enter your frame, and be a part of your life, then you should only ever allow it if she compliments your life. She must not be the focus of it.

I've noticed, during coaching, that there are many men that had moved across the country in their twenties, changed

their majors, and knocked up their girlfriend. All because they thought it was a good idea. Only to get divorced at thirty-five, get forced through the family law meat grinder, and end up with no access to his kids. It's at this point where they book a coaching call with me to guide them out the other end with the least amount of damage.

So slow things down and stop acting like women are a scarce resource (because they're not).

High value men that are competent, resourceful, and know how to make *serious* money are a scarce resource. Beautiful women aren't.

The ROI on chasing excellence is **far** greater than chasing women, more so when you know nothing about female nature.

Spinning plates will lead to some Friends With Benefits (or FWB). An FWB arrangement is loosely defined as a non-monogamous friendship with sexual intimacy, but with no dates, sleep overs, or introduction to family or friends.

Ideally, you want a FWB arrangement to last over a prolonged period of time, and you can have more than one FWB. However, they rarely last long and if they do, a FWB can come in, and out, of your life like the seasons. Therefore, don't be surprised if an old fling contacts you well into the future.

There are women you will automatically categorize as a FWB when you identify red flags from that chapter of this book. **DO NOT** allow a woman with red flags to be more than a

FWB, it is incumbent on you to assess and filter through women that display red flags.

Don't give a FWB priority in your schedule - she is only an option when your time permits.

A monogamous Long Term Relationship (LTR)

You should only consider a conventional relationship with a woman *after* you have spun enough plates, and the cream has risen to the top. She must also exhibit none of the warning signs described in the '20 Red Flags' chapter. Or, if she does, then she is pro-actively working on fixing that area of her life herself.

Women don't like to admit it, but they are natural plate spinners because of their hypergamous nature.

They are always asking themselves, "Is this the best I can do?". If you are dating a woman, then assume that she is seeing other men, until she initiates the "Where do we stand?" talk and wants to open dialogue about a deeper commitment. Women, not men, should start the "talk" about a long-term relationship.

Never, **ever**, initiate a "Where do we stand?" talk. It's weak and signals scarcity in your life. Let her bring it up. Remember, women are the gatekeepers to sex, while men are the gatekeepers to relationships. Which means women get to decide when you will fuck her; you get to decide if you want to become more serious with a woman (and whether or not it's on an exclusive basis).

You should only consider an LTR after about six months of plate spinning. If she demands an LTR after only a month of dating, move on, and let her go.

Remember, men are the gatekeepers to relationships, and women are the gatekeepers to sex. So act like it. You, as the man, gets to decide when a woman gets your exclusive sexual, and non-sexual, attention.

If you do this and get into a monogamous LTR, you end up abandoning your male sexual strategy of unlimited access to unlimited women.

You should also note that if you choose to abandon your sexual strategy, she must also abandon her sexual strategy of open hypergamy.

That means: No male friends, no more seeking attention on social media with provocative pictures and posts. Oh, and no overnight girl's trips to places where she can proclaim to her friends "What happens in Vegas stays in Vegas."

Some other conditions that should exist for an LTR to work well for you:

- You should be one to two points higher than her on the SMV scale, so she feels that she's optimizing her hypergamy. Remember, a woman can only be content if she feels like her man is of higher value than her.
- Your frame must be the dominant frame of the relationship, meaning that she is a complement to your life, not the focus. A woman that's fully in your frame will defer to you in major choices.

- She must understand, through your covert actions and words, that everyone is replaceable - including her. There is no “one”. You, on the other hand, must understand that you never own her, *it's just your turn*. She may be in your life for a year, or she may be with you until “death do you part.”
- On a scale of one to 10, with 10 being the highest level of interest, her interest level in you **must** be an obvious nine (but preferably a 10). Women with an interest level lower than that will be an exceptional amount of work, and the chances of her love wandering will be higher.
- You must have done some recon work on her family and friends and decided if they are people you enjoy being around. This is because she will *always*, regardless of her feelings for you, choose them over the relationship. So, make sure her family and friends are good people and that you like being around them. Most importantly, if you are planning on marriage and kids, then look at her mother. She will eventually look like, and behave like, her.
- Also, do **not** live with an LTR, as doing so causes her competition anxiety to relax, making it tougher for you to manage the frame of the relationship. The *only* exception to this is if you are planning on getting married and having children, and you need to vet her as a wife by living together first.

A long-term relationship with a woman brings considerably more work to a man’s life when it comes to managing the

frame of the relationship. However, an excellent woman can add substantial value to your life.

At the time of writing this book, I'm in a non-cohabiting LTR. My woman is almost 10 years my junior. She's tidy, non-materialistic, loves to cook healthy meals, is positive, very sexual, fun loving, and has a great relationship with her father and my child. If she didn't add any value to my life, I wouldn't have bothered to enter into an LTR with her.

A woman **must** always be a complement to *my* life, not the focus. This should be *every* man's non-negotiable.

I'll warn you now that, if you ignore my advice and live with your LTR, you will expose yourself and your wealth, to the risks of family law.

In most Western countries, the state deems you to be in a common law marriage after one to two years. And, even if you aren't legally married, she may have rights to half of your assets. Therefore, it's *essential* that you consult with a family lawyer in your state or province *before* you live with any woman. If you have more assets than her, then see if you can protect them with a cohabitation agreement.

The tattoo test

If you really want to test my theories on the "soulmate myth" that men subscribe to, and how willing she is to enter your frame in an LTR, then the tattoo test is brilliant. It really forces her to show, via her actions, that she is serious about an LTR with you over the long haul.

If she starts “the talk”, it usually encompasses some version of the soundbites: “I’ll love you forever, and ever” or, “We were made for one another.”

Tell her, “Good, prove it. Tattoo my name on your body.”

It doesn’t need to be visible, or huge. Most of the time, she will make the tattoo discrete, so it’s hidden in her bikini or bra line. Don’t force it on her or march her into a tattoo studio. Instead, just drop the hint, but be serious about it, and then see what she does.

This is not a two-way street either. You are not tattooing her name on you. She is the one that is asking for your exclusive sexual, and non-sexual, attention. A woman who’s in your frame that sees you as a high value alpha, and that has a genuine, burning desire for you shouldn’t protest and would love to have your name on her body.

A woman that doesn’t see you as her best option, and her “forever” man, will make up excuses.

Regardless of what they are, whatever excuses she makes, she is telling you she doesn’t really believe that you are her best option. You’re not satisfying her hypergamous needs, and she doesn’t see you two together forever.

Remember, whenever there is a conflict between her actions, and words, always, **always** believe what she does. As the old saying goes: “Actions speak louder than words”.

Open LTR

The LTR can either be open or closed. So, you can either be exclusive with your LTR, or keep the relationship open where you continue to have one or two other women that you see periodically. But she should understand that you are doing this. Covertly spinning plates while in an LTR always catches up to you somewhere down the line. You'll end up dealing with a lot of unnecessary drama in your life.

There is nothing wrong with an open LTR, aside from societal conditioning telling you to be monogamous. In fact, it is the natural state of our non-monogamous nature.

She can also be in an open LTR with you, but now you are leaning into Polyamory (Poly), and a more beta frame of a relationship.

The highest value alpha males will be in an open LTR on their end, but she can't do the same. More feminized men will gawk at this statement and protest. But, throughout history, truly high value alpha men had a harem of women that were sexually exclusive with him.

Polyamory

The “Poly Lifestyle” is being pushed by the media, and even some academics seem to like to push the narrative since they are in a poly marriage. If you are unfamiliar with the “Poly Lifestyle”, you let your wife or girlfriend have sex with whoever they want, while you also do what you want. It's basically an open LTR for both of you.

This dating strategy is becoming the standard for many beta males because they would rather share a woman versus not having one at all.

On the surface, it may look appealing. However, men and women *aren't* equal. More often than not, it's two beta males fighting over one girl. All while she goes out on the weekends fucking the alphas for fun (leaving the poly men to raise the kid(s)).

Conclusion

When it comes to the types of relationships you can have with women, I **strongly** encourage you to always make yourself your own mental point of origin. This means you do what is right - for **YOU**. Men should always set the frame of the relationship at the beginning, because it's the exit that women most often control.

If monogamy is your path, then make sure you chose it and it hasn't been forced on you by your woman or society. Natural monogamy *can* work, but only if it is organic, and you both truly want to be sexually exclusive. I would strongly encourage all men to use the tattoo test if you are going to start an LTR. This test will assure you that her actions truly do align with her words.

Chris Ryan once said: "Monogamy is like going vegan. You can choose a plant-based diet, but that doesn't mean bacon will stop smelling good."

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- Women may be the gatekeeper of who they have sex with, but **you** are the gatekeeper of who you have a relationship with. And, as a man of increasingly high value, that's the *strongest*, and most valuable, bargaining chip of the two.
- When a woman has a genuine desire for you, and appreciates your value, then she will have no problems sharing you with other women as you are satisfying her hypergamous nature.
- Track the menstrual cycle of any potential LTRs. Watch how differently they behave when they are ovulating, versus when they are menstruating.
- I've said it before, and I'll say it again, **always** believe a woman's actions over her words. Her actions will tell you what her *true* priority is and tells you the truth about how she truly feels.
- As noted by my good friend Dr. Shaun T. Smith in his book 'The Tactical Guide to Women', spend as much time as possible vetting and setting healthy boundaries with a woman before committing. It's from month 18-onwards when a woman's *true* personality comes through.

OWN A MOTORCYCLE

It is my firm belief that, as a rite of passage, every man should own a motorcycle at one point in their life. As Jon Bon Jovi famously sang, “I’m a cowboy. On a steel horse, I ride. I’m wanted. Dead or alive.”

Whether you’re a hero or an outlaw (or, like the best among us, a bit of both), the motorcycle is the modern-day equivalent of the stallion. It is a rite of passage for every man to own one in his life.

During a bitterly cold and rainy spring day in early April, I got my motorcycle license at 18 on a single cylinder 125cc bike. Despite the miserable weather, it was one of the best days of my life. I remember being so cold and wet, we’d put our hands on the scalding hot air-cooled fins of the motor to keep our fingers from getting frostbite.

However, getting my motorcycle license was one of the best things I did as a teen. And, as a rite of passage, as I was transitioned from a teen to a man.

The most important skill you learn from riding a motorcycle is situational awareness. You learn to keep your head on a swivel, and you are *constantly* scanning around you for potential threats. Just about everything else on the road is bigger than you - and can kill you. Being aware of your surroundings *at all times* is a skill that men need to apply to all areas of their life.

Let me explain. The first office I rented for one of my early businesses was on the top floor of an old century home in suburban Toronto. On the main floor there was a psychotherapist. She was a lumpy, old, fat, stuck up woman. Who would come up, stomp around, and complain once a week we were “making too much noise” for her practice located below us.

My office window looked out into the parking lot. And she always had a steady flow of patients coming in to treat whatever disaster was going on in their lives. I did, however, notice two glaringly obvious things:

1. Most of her patients were thirty-five-plus year-old women, showing up in expensive SUVs with permanent scowls on their faces. They had a look of emptiness, anger, and resentment as they marched into her office.
2. When men came, there wasn’t a single arrival on a motorcycle. Not one.

With hundreds of visits per month, and over our three-year lease, I saw close to a thousand of her patient arrivals.

However, I never once saw a *single* guy ride in on a motorcycle. Let that sink in for a moment.

Masculine therapy

A motorcycle is many things to a man: It's often a friend, a statement, an adrenaline rush, a toy, a place to fuck and, of course, transportation. Most importantly, there were many times as a young man that my bike was my therapist.

Shit day at work? Ride the bike.

Girlfriend fucks my best friend for redemption because she resented a threesome we had with her girlfriend a year ago? Ride the bike.

Didn't get the promotion I wanted? Ride the bike.

Roommates driving me nuts? Ride the bike.

You fire it up, go out, and reconcile whatever your issues are on the road.

Motorcycles require balance, strength, and dexterity. Cars don't. When you go around corners, you lean into the turn, and hang off the bike while your knee hangs mere millimeters from the asphalt. The toll you pay if you make a mistake is often much higher than that of a car. After all, a car is effectively surrounded by a metal cage - and bikes aren't.

Even with all of that, I bet if you hopped into a time machine and went back to a time when horseback was the main form of transport and asked a young man what he thought of his

horse, he'd likely describe a fond attachment to it in a similar manner.

Men need masculine pursuits. Throughout history, sitting on a living, breathing, beast capable of *incredible* feats of power was something that men have wanted to tame. While a motorcycle isn't alive, most sport bikes have F1-like power to weight ratios, and it has an internal combustion engine, so it does breathe. After all, an engine is nothing more than an air pump.

Shared interests

Brotherhood is another perk of owning a motorcycle. The only form of transportation I've always got a head nod, or a hand wave from others, was when on a bike. Regardless of make, model, or style. *Everyone* is friendly to you when you're on a bike. There were plenty of places peppered throughout the city where motorcyclists would meet up for a coffee, have a chat, and then go for a rip together into the night.

I had been riding bikes for 12-years when a friend, I would ride with often, suddenly announced that his brother had died in a motorcycle accident when a car hit him on the highway. I noticed that others got hurt too, mostly because of careless drivers not paying close enough attention to motorcycles.

After four different sport bikes, two Katana 600s, a GSX-R750, and a ZX-7R, I decided that no matter how careful I

was, my number would come up at some point, and so I took a sabbatical when I hit thirty.

I'd be lying however if I said that I didn't miss my bike, leaving me with a hole in my heart that needed to be filled.

So, I moved into fast convertibles, a 2003 BMW M3 in Imola Red, lowered on BBS LMs which, at face value, may seem like a 180-degree pivot. But, it was close enough to satisfy the open-air feeling while moving at speed.

It not only had the added safety of airbags, and a metal cage around me, but I could drive with like I was outside without a helmet, whilst listening to music. I can still remember the first day I got the car, I dropped the top, cranked up Mötley Crüe's '*Kickstart My Heart*', and left for a rip.

In closing

Motorcycles are incredible value to a young man. For less than \$10,000 you can buy something that will out-accelerate, and often brake better than, any exotic car costing 20x as much. While *still* getting incredible fuel economy because of its small engine size.

The only things a car can do better than a bike are: Carry more cornering speeds (since there are larger contact patches on the tires), transport more people, and protect you better in an accident.

Women also *love* a man on a bike. I was constantly giving women rides on the back of my bike. Often, while at parties, my friend's girlfriends would harass me to take them for a

spin right in front of their boyfriends. By the very nature of how you ride motorcycles, it forces intimacy.

Bikes attracted women like a moth to a flame. These women would press their breasts into my back, while grabbing tightly to my lower waist, and sometimes grabbed my manhood when they got comfortable on the bike.

Trust me when I say, women *crave* adventure, variety, and fun. Dollar-for-dollar, *nothing* gets a woman more excited than to grab onto you tightly as you accelerate your bike into a wheelie. Remember, women in their teens or twenties are in their party years, they are looking for excitement. They *aren't* looking for men driving big SUVs.

Therefore, I strongly believe that every young man should own a bike at some point in their youth. Or, at the very least, a fast convertible.

However, I'm not done with motorcycles yet, I've merely just taken a break. Mid-engine exotic cars are my bikes - for now.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- Bikes offer you an unrivaled sense of freedom and escape from the trappings of everyday life.
- When you take a woman on a bike with you, *every single* receptor in her body is in hyper-drive as the addictive, and heady, cocktail of adrenaline and

dopamine surges through her body. And she'll be associating *that* feeling - with you.

- If bikes *really* aren't your thing, then make sure you emulate the experience with a fast convertible that screams FUN! from every inch of it.

MASTER VIOLENCE

Throughout our lives we've been lied to and have been told things like "Nothing good ever comes from violence," or that "Violence is the last refuge of the incompetent." These statements aren't particularly truthful, nor do they embrace the value of the capacity for violence.

Violence isn't always the answer. But it *is* a legitimate response in certain situations. Men have an obligation for the capacity to be violent and, if exercised, should be decisive and lethal.

Most men today can't be violent, or even understand why it's a skill that men should master. The narrative we've had crammed down our throats is "Be kind, be humble, and that love is the answer."

But, the truth is, is that society, and *especially* women, don't want meek and incompetent men. What women *want* is a **dangerous man that is civilized**.

Women's darkest fantasies were discovered when Google engineers studied the use of search engines and

pornography. The top five searches were stories about Vampires, Werewolves, Billionaires, Surgeons, and Pirates. Films often show such characters walking quietly, while carrying a big stick.

Therefore, when search engine choices trump her social narrative, believe her choices.

A powerful defense is the best offense

I believe that you need to learn how to defend yourself, and your loved ones, should the need ever arise. It's an essential part of becoming the best version of yourself as a man.

Learn combat. There are plenty of facilities within 10-minutes of most urban areas that will teach different forms of Mixed Martial Arts (so MMA). These forms include: Boxing, Krav Maga, Brazilian Ju Jitsu, Muay Tai, Kickboxing, Karate, and much more.

Memberships are around \$150 per month, and most classes are 90-minutes in total. Half of the time is spent on cardio drills designed to simulate improved endurance in combat. The other half of the time being spent on core skills.

Joining a Dojo offers four major benefits:

1. The cardio drills are some of the most intense workouts you can do, and great for your body and conditioning.
2. You learn how to use violence in a focused and productive manner.

3. Your network is your net worth and people that train in combat, for the most part, are not losers, so your social circle will also improve.
4. You'll have your ass repeatedly handed to you by more experienced members. *This is a good thing.* It'll teach you how to pull yourself up and how to get your head back in the game. Both metaphorically *and* physically.

My dojo offers plenty of MMA classes, but my favorites are boxing for the skills needed to be an effective striker, and Krav Maga for its effectiveness in self-defense. Krav is known for its lethality and efficiency of the responses to attacks, minimizing the damage to yourself while keeping you on your feet.

Krav Maga is so lethal, it's not used in MMA fights because many of the responses to attacks are illegal. It's also the gold standard in training for close combat for many Special Forces units around the world. If it's good enough for the Special Forces, then it's good enough for me.

Also, one of Krav's greatest assets is that it heavily encourages 'situational awareness'. The ability to 'read a room' is a life-skill that can get you out of trouble before it even begins. Or, at the very least, give you sufficient warning that an attack is coming your way, giving you ample time to dodge or prepare a counter-maneuver.

If I am ever jumped by someone with a gun or a knife, or by multiple attackers, I want the ability to respond with a highly trained, and proportionate, level of violence.

You may never need to use violence. But, if the need arises, it's a tool that you *definitely* want in your tool chest.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- It's incumbent on you to know how to protect yourself effectively. Doubly so if you have a family.
- You need to try several forms of MMAs to see which one resonates with you best.
- You **must** stick with whatever self-defense MMA that works for you. Be sure to put in the hours and watch as your skills and overall confidence grows.

WHEN MEN GO THEIR OWN WAY (MGTOW)

There is a growing movement of men choosing to check out from the sexual marketplace completely. This movement of Men Going Their Own Way is better known by its acronym “MGTOW.”

While I may agree with many of the grievances MGTOWs have with women and the world we live in, I don’t agree with their response.

Some MGTOWs limit their female interactions strictly to casual dating (even if she is someone who genuinely compliments them and adds real value to their life).

In other cases, men cannot compete in the sexual marketplace and seem to be involuntarily “Sent their own way.” Such men become what’s known as an involuntary celibate, or an “Incel.”

The problem as they see it

Truthfully, I’ve lost track of the list of grievances MGTOWs have raised about women. However, here’s a collection of the

soundbites I've heard most often:

- “Hostile divorce laws towards men that strip men of their wealth and access to their children, while simultaneously enriching the mother.”
- “Women have become overly entitled and bratty.”
- “If a guy like Brad Pitt can be taken to the cleaners in divorce law, what chance do I have?”
- “Women are constantly seeking validation and attention on social media.”
- “Women are Machiavellian opportunists with the power of the state behind them, while simultaneously being incompetent children who are run by their emotions.”
- “If marriage was a business contract, you’d tell the other guy to go fuck himself.”
- “Women make bad voting choices, repeal the 19th, and take women’s voting rights away.”
- “Feminism is a supremacy and hatred movement against men.”
- “Women can file a false domestic violence claim with no proof.”
- “Women get to be promiscuous with impunity today.”
- “Fear of paternity fraud and cuckoldry.”
- “Fear of Sexually Transmitted Diseases (or STDs).”
- “Gynocentric laws in most Western countries favor women.”
- “Fear of a lack of any loyalty to ‘a good man’.”
- “False ‘#metoo’ allegations.”

These are all part of the struggle of men today, and these grievances have legitimacy.

The dangers of “Red Pill Rage”

“Red Pill Rage” (aka: The anger phase), is one of the initial, and most dangerous, phases of “unplugging” there is as a man. Now, anger is a natural, and very legitimate, response to something that you believe to be an injustice. Therefore, it’s perfectly acceptable to feel angry about something. In fact, anger can be a *great* motivational tool to get you to refocus your energy in the right places.

However, if you become stuck in this phase of being angry all the time, you start to run the real risk of becoming overly bitter at both women and the world around you. This bitterness will continue to eat away at you as you let your brain go down to those deep, dark, places in your mind that you didn’t even realize existed.

Look, the world as you know it isn’t based on the idealism of “fairness”. It *never* has been, and it *never* will be. Society continues to feed you your “participation trophy,” pat you on the back for coming in last, and will tell you that if you’re just “nice” to everyone (especially to women), that it will “all work out in the end.”

Granted, most MGTOWs understand this reality. However, they prefer to play the victim card and keep themselves to themselves. And that’s their choice. But, it’s also a quitter’s mindset. And, by definition, quitters never win.

If you're coming out of a shitty divorce, or similar, and you need to hit the reset button on your life. Then sure. By all means, take the time to recenter yourself and truly learn how to become your own mental point of origin. But, this should only ever be a very temporary step before you use your newfound knowledge of the world, and the sexual marketplace, to elevate your life to new untold heights of excellence and happiness.

Surrender to female nature

Do you get annoyed at the sea for being wet? Do you get irritated at the sun for being warm? Then why do you get so angry at women for doing what's been in their biological programming since homo sapiens began roaming the Earth?

Like it or not, females developed hypergamy as a means of survival. If a woman picked the wrong man to pair and breed with, then it would spell certain doom for both her and her child. So, making sure that she was getting the "best that she could get," literally meant the difference between life and death for her and her kids.

And because hypergamy has been hard-wired into them, *nothing* has changed as the years have gone on.

Learn to accept it and then navigate it

When you finally get to the "acceptance" stage of how the world and the sexual marketplace works, you'll be in the

perfect position to “flip the script” and use this knowledge to your advantage as you navigate your way through life.

It’s almost like having a superpower where you can “see the code in the matrix” in real-time.

The “Black Pill” solution

The standard MGTOW “Black Pill” solution is: Just go your own way and avoid women completely. Or, at the very least, if you *do* allow women into your life, *never* live with a woman in a way where the state would automatically, and legally, view such cohabitation as a marriage.

There also seems to be an underlying belief by some MGTOWs that, if they convince enough men to “Go MGTOW,” women will be magically forced to fall back in line and start to love all men for who they are.

Throughout history, women have always dismissed men they personally deemed weak or incompetent.

Women simply do not get involved with men they see as quitters. Women don’t care about your struggles, they wait at the finish line and fuck the winners.

A popular comment I’ve read in my videos is “DDD” or “Dudes, Dogs, and Dolls.” Dudes, or men, are used for friendship, dogs for companionship (and affection), while sex dolls are to be used for sexual release.

This sounds an *awful* lot like the toxic narrative feminists sell women. That: “All they need is their girlfriends, cats,

and vibrators.”

Sex dolls

The “doll” solution amongst some MGTOW is to have sex with an inanimate doll. Do a quick Google search for “sex doll” and you’ll see what I mean.

I found a post on Twitter from user @Masumi with a pinned tweet of a sex doll looking like a “perfect 10.” It reads:

“

You know she doesn't love you, so stop pretending, dump her and buy a doll today. Always loyal, always there for you, 0% chance of a false rape allegation, STDs, divorce rape, pregnancy, she will never ask you for more. Credit options are available.

As a marketer myself, I’m impressed by the copy; I’m not convinced, however, that it’s the best solution.

If you Google “MGTOW” there are over 3.5 million results. There are *hundreds* of YouTube channels dedicated to men talking about why women are not worth your time. Yet, many sex doll companies sponsor these channels and often end their arguments about how you should “Go MGTOW and get a doll”.

Yes, feminism has destroyed the nuclear family. Women are more masculine these days, less agreeable, more interested in seeking attention and validation on social media, and in pursuing careers. Divorce rape is a *real* problem if you get married. A woman can allege rape with *no* proof (ruining a

man's career), and this is possible because the world is built around a female primary social order.

The risks women pose to men is fairly high. But, the MGTOW narrative sounds like: "You are a victim; down with the gynocracy."

Which sounds an *awful* lot like the toxic feminist narrative used by women which seems to be: "You are a victim; down with the patriarchy."

The biggest distinction between MGTOWs and feminists is that MGTOWs say you should quit a game which is rigged against you. Whereas, feminists screech loudly and organize protests to march on policy makers just to bend even more laws in their favor.

Both toxic feminists and MGTOWs appear to have the same end in mind - the isolation and segregation of the sexes.

Look, life has *always* been rigged against men. This isn't some golden era of the cards being stacked up against men which we've never seen before.

Did the 300 Spartans say it was a rigged game when the Persians invaded and quit? Did the British give up when Hitler began a massive air assault on the British Isles during the battle of Britain?

Last time I checked, nobody won *anything* by quitting.

You win by figuring out what you are up against, adapting, and then mastering the game. At the end of the day, every

struggle a man must face in life comes with some risk attached.

Be careful of anyone selling you fear, or a victim mindset. A victim mindset is a loser's mindset.

The real MGTOWs

In my opinion, the real MGTOWs, are the men that quietly go about their life, without constantly pointing and sputtering at women, society, or at anyone else who lives their life differently to them. This was what I originally understood this movement to be about.

Rise of the Incel

There is a sub-group of men that call themselves MGTOW. Truthfully though, it's not by choice. Rather, they feel that they can't attract women and haven't done well with them in the past, so they are now an involuntarily celibate man.

The soundbites used by Incels online, usually sound something like this:

“ Why don't girls like me? I mean, I'm literally a great guy, just because I'm not attractive, or don't have money doesn't mean I'm not a great catch.

If you are short and skinny, be short with muscles and rich. If you are ugly, be ugly, muscular, and rich. Napoleon was only 5 foot 5 inches tall. And Mick Jagger is as ugly as they

come. Yet, neither of these men had much trouble with women, or success in life, because they worked their asses off.

The saddest thing of all, is that at least 27 mass murders in North America alone have been attributed to men that have openly identified themselves as an Incel.

These men never learned how to handle rejection, learn from their experiences, or accept that they had some work to do on themselves. It was *always* the fault of others or society for their results in life. Sound familiar?

Self-professed Incel Alek Minassian, posted the following to Facebook shortly before he rented a van and went on a killing spree in Toronto:

“Private (recruit) Minassian Infantry 00010, wishing to speak to Sergeant 4chan please C23249161. The Incel rebellion has already begun! We will overthrow all of the Chads and Stacy’s! All hail the supreme gentleman Elliot Rodger.

Minassian drove his rented van over the curb onto sidewalks, killing 10 people and injured 16 more. His reference to “‘Chads’ and ‘Stacy’s” is relevant because the frustration was that, as Incels, they can’t compete with stronger, more alpha, males (Chads), or the women (Stacy’s) that pine for the Chads.

You’d think men “Going their own way,” would just unplug from society and live their own peaceful life. But, the Incel

uprising has shown us that there is a dangerous subculture to MGTOW.

Better safe than sorry

MGTOWs will say that feminism has destroyed the social contract between men and women. It's hard to disagree with that observation.

But, if you search for channels on YouTube about MGTOW, you'll find pages upon pages of videos with narratives backing these claims up with, very well thought out, analytical breakdowns taking it further into a passive aggressive hate movement.

Ultimately, persuadable, and frustrated men are the target of these recruitment videos.

I happened across a video once by a MGTOW explaining that avoiding marriage isn't enough anymore, that feminism had infiltrated civil law to the point that vindictive women could file domestic violence restraining orders in the US against a man they weren't living with. And, even though they weren't married, she could divorce rape him, all without proof, without his knowledge, and without a shred of evidence.

All women need to do is claim that you are violent, and the law will immediately side with them. Scary stuff, right?

By the end of such well-presented lectures, they'll have many men, incorrectly, believing that all women are demons.

While I don't disagree with the threat, it's the significance of the threat that I question.

Let's dig into the math used...

MGTOWs are great with stats. The content creator in this recruitment video provided numbers that suggested there are 900,000 domestic violence restraining orders filed every year in the USA. Asking how would you, as a man, like to be removed from your house, have your car taken away, and half your stuff gone based on allegations, not evidence?

Now, what if women filed those 900,000 restraining orders? While this is unlikely to be the case, for the sake of argument, let's assume all of them were.

There are now 325,000,000 people in the US. Of which men account for half.

That leaves us with 162,500,000 men and we know that about 40,000,000 of those men are under the age of 20.

So, we can assume that there are 122,500,000 men that might have been exposed to this potential threat with a woman. Remember, in this recruitment video, the man isn't living with anyone else and is only dating women on an exclusive basis.

That's .7% of the male population. Statistically insignificant. Let's put that into perspective.

According to data from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the individual American driver's odds of dying as a result of an injury sustained in an automobile crash (which

includes pedestrians, bicyclists, and motorcyclists involved in car crashes), comes out to around 1 in 77.

That works out to 1.29%. The vast majority of the population can go through life without dying in a car accident. However, MGTOWs are telling men the threat is so great, that all men should now completely avoid half the population or, “just get a doll.”

Conclusion

Personally, I don’t care what you do with your time, or where you stick your dick. A prostitute, doll, your hand, or a hot woman. I’m not the Penis Police. What I do have a problem with though, is other men in need of help being misled by people so they can sell snake oil to them. Weaponizing them to hate how society is, before selling them silicone dolls to have sex with for \$3,000.

Granted, men have the burden of performance; women just need to show up and look pretty. But, MGTOWs appear to want men to stop playing a game that, truthfully, no man can ever fully check out of.

Unless you live in a cabin in the woods, with no connection to society, you will always be a cog in the wheels of the female primary social order.

Even MGTOWs that scratch their itch by using a sex doll are part of the feminine imperative. They likely work with women and probably also buy products and services

facilitated by women. Hell, even their sex doll that “Looks like a perfect 10,” keeps them tied to the feminine social.

The only proper solution is to:

- Do the work in life, so you become high value,
- Make yourself your own mental point of origin,
- Learn how to handle rejection like an adult,
- Always be the one responsible for the birth control,
- Learn how to spot dangerous personalities,
- And, finally, understand what drives attraction, Game, and how to limit your risk in a hostile sexual marketplace.

If you allow a woman into your life, then it's *imperative* that she is a complement to that life, not the focus. It's incumbent on you to stay on your purpose in life. Constantly chasing excellence with a genuine belief of outcome independence.

Look, disconnecting from women *might* be an interesting place to visit for a short while *if* you get divorced or have had your heart broken. But it's hardly a solution to living in a world where half of the population are women.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- Temporarily stepping out of the sexual marketplace is only valuable if you've just gotten out of a shitty

divorce or relationship. Taking some time out to chase excellence and to “Level up in multiple areas in your life,” will *definitely* pay off for you. Just make sure you’re receptive to the increase in higher-quality women that make themselves known to you now you’re a man of higher value.

- Remember, 70% of women want the time and attention of the top 20% of men. Chasing excellence will easily put you in the top 20%. What you do with your options when you get there... Well, that’s entirely up to you. Have fun.
- “Black Pill” MGTOW thinking is very nihilistic and unhealthy for your mental and emotional state. Men and women can certainly complement each other in life. Not *all* women are men-hating third-wave feminists. But, you *do* need to know how to “Find the diamonds in the rough.”
- Finally, hypergamy simply “is”. Accept it, embrace it, flip the script, and start using hypergamy to your advantage.

WHY SMART MEN AVOID MARRIAGE

Let me start by stating I'm not opposed to marriage or having a family. We are just a slightly higher form of primate, and make no mistake - as men, we're designed to scatter and pass down our seed. It is in our biological imperative.

I am, however, against allowing the state to decide what happens to your wealth, your freedom, and your access to your children if a marriage doesn't work out.

The divorce statistics vary slightly around the world. But, on a balance of probabilities, about half of all marriages end in divorce within seven years. Remember, this statistic ignores the *other* half of the men who are either living in an unhappy, or sexless, marriage.

In a study by Acevedo and Aron on both romantic love and long-term relationships¹, they discovered that only 13% of their participants, in an average of an 8.39 year relationship, felt "romantic love". And only 2% felt "obsession" for each other.

Meaning the chances of living in a state of bliss for eternity aren't particularly good and, in a marriage, it's the male and not the female who is often left in ruins. With him picking up the pieces after the couple goes through the relentless grind of the divorce machine, before being spit out the other side.

Throughout history, men have always been the disposable sex, and women the protected sex. So, it would make sense that everything in family law today favors the woman, while being hostile towards men.

It's time to drop some cold hard truth bombs about the reality of marriage in today's Western world:

“Marriage is a high reward/low risk choice for women, but a low reward/high risk choice for men.

- Richard Cooper

I should clarify in this chapter that, when I say, "Western family law," I am including all First World, modern countries indoctrinated by today's version of feminism.

Throughout most of history, men were at the head of the household. They were legally responsible for the actions of their spouse and children and could keep order in their home by more or less whatever means they saw fit. If a man's home was his castle, then everyone within was his vassals.

No one knows exactly when and where the tables began to turn. But things started changing in the late 1800s when the state passed new laws. For example, in 1895 London passed a bylaw prohibiting wife beating past 9pm. However, this

wasn't designed to protect women. It was primarily a noise pollution issue in the densely populated city.

In Stephanie Coontz book, '*A History of Marriage*', she concluded that, for tens of thousands of years, people married not for love, but for the acquisition of in-laws, assets, and influence. Church records, personal diaries, and public court records showed love wasn't even part of the equation.

Men had 100% authority, and 100% responsibility to the family unit. Family and their in-laws took care of medical care, law enforcement, the elderly, schooling, and so on. Men were the head of the household, and there was little to no state involvement in how a man ran his family.

This was a time when masculine virtues were both respected - and valued. But, in the last one-hundred-and-fifty-years, a toxic version of progressive feminism has changed it all. Toxic feminism has reversed the roles so both women and the state are now at the head of the household.

Today's men no longer have authority in their house, yet they still have 100% of the responsibility. Almost all authority has been taken away from men and has been given to both the government and women, while men maintain *all* the financial responsibility.

What is even more troubling is that, with the recent #metoo era, something as fundamental as establishing the facts first is no longer required. Instead, we are to believe all women when they accuse men by default, no questions asked.

Family law

When I was getting divorced in Canada, I thought I knew what the process would look like. But, truthfully, I had *no* idea what I was up against. I approached divorce with a naive eye, viewing it as a simple process with a fair exit for everyone. *Every expectation I had was way off.*

In fact, I was **dead wrong.**

Within the first hour I talked to my family lawyer, he had dropped so many truth bombs on me that I walked away from the call with a feeling of complete hopelessness. I actually believed I'd be lucky to see my daughter ever again. That I'd spend the rest of my life bending at the knee to the state and my ex-wife. While I simply watched as my wealth left me, and I became alienated from my child.

I'll never forget my lawyer's words "If you have the penis, and go to court, you are going to lose - and badly." I was shocked.

Hadn't feminism leveled the playing field for women?

Aren't women *equal* to men?

If so, then why am I being told that, because I was born with a penis, I would lose *by default* in family court?

They say the original intent of progressive changes to family law was to deal with deadbeat dads who didn't look after their kids, right? Well it did, and then it kept going on, becoming a supremacist movement against men which hasn't ever stopped.

In today's world, women are the supreme rulers in both the household and in family law. Western governments designed every part of legislation to preserve and improve the mother's interests, while simultaneously destroying the fathers. In Western family law, for one gender (the female) to advance its cause, it comes at the expense of the other gender (the male).

If you are considering marriage, then the best thing you can do is buy one hour of a local family lawyers time. Sit down, listen well, and learn how the law handles men in your state or province. Because there's a 50% or more chance your marriage will end in divorce.

Remember, this divorce statistic doesn't take into account the people who remain married because they are too unattractive, broke, and lack the option to leave. Or, simply because they are cowards.

It is nearly impossible to calculate the number of unhappy marriages that persist.

Domestic violence charges - A woman's trump card

Domestic violence charges, alleged by the mother against the father, is a trump card which has been built into Western family law. Men can be forcibly removed from their own homes by the police for false or exaggerated claims of domestic violence. It also includes being alienated from their children, while the courts enforce unreasonable payments to the mother from the father. In turn, restraining you from

entering the house you paid for, or accessing the children you fathered.

I had a coaching call once with a man who was cheated on by his wife several times. So, he decided he'd had enough, and that it was time to divorce her. During the acrimonious separation period, he became upset with her one day and pointed a finger at her face and angrily proclaimed, "You are a fucking liar."

The finger-pointing was enough for her to call the police, make a claim of domestic violence, and have the authorities involved. There was no violence, no physical contact, nothing. Just an angry finger being pointed while saying five words.

It's absolutely *vital* that you always keep in mind the following phrase: The woman you marry is **never** the same woman you divorce.

Remember, Western family law is written in such a way that it assumes women are the weaker sex. Men are the privileged sex and are also the abusive sex by default.

How women behave during divorce

Men need to understand that through a combination of family law and female nature, women are motivated to behave incredibly poorly to the father of their children during the divorce.

There are *significant* female-centric financial rewards that have been written into family law encouraging women to be

the sole custodial parent of the children. By becoming the parent that has primary custody of the children, money, and all decision-making capacity, goes to the parent awarded custody. Which, eight times out of 10, is the woman.

Let's be clear about something. Women are opportunistic *by nature*, it's hard-wired into them, and it's part of the reason why sapiens are such a successful species. Without opportunism, her children were less likely to survive. You can't blame women for this; opportunism is an evolved survival mechanism.

Women needed this skill to find the best provisioning mate, and to optimize their hypergamy. If you give someone, that's naturally opportunistic, incentive to benefit at another's expense then, guess what, they will do it.

It's only in recent history that female opportunism has had the full backing of the state behind it as family law. Interestingly, prior to the last 150-years or so, if there was a divorce, then the father would most often get custody of the children and retain all family assets - including what she brought to the table.

Once a parent has custodial rights, they can make unilateral decisions without the other parents' consent. Even if that decision is not agreed upon by both parents.

Depending on where the law governs your divorce, that could include choices about school, extra-curricular programs, religion, medical procedures, and even where the custodial parent chooses to live.

The financial rewards are not exactly small either. There are three major financial drains from the parent that isn't the custodial parent:

ALIMONY

Also known as maintenance, this is the first level of responsibility that a man must pay to his ex-wife if he was the breadwinner in the home, and she didn't work, or earns significantly less. For some men, that was because she was a stay-at-home mom. For others, she just never worked after the marriage, and there were no kids.

Either way, you are responsible to upkeep her standard of living after the marriage ends. The monthly cost, and duration of the payments, depends on where you live, and how long you were married. In some places, like California for example, if you are married for 10-years or more, then its lifelong alimony.

CHILD SUPPORT

Child support is paid to the custodial parent to cover the cost of raising the children. Contrary to popular belief, the payment amount is not based on what the children actually need to survive. Rather, it's based on state issued tables. I had a friend who had calculated that, during his marriage, the monthly cost to look after his child for things like food and clothing were around \$500 per month.

The state issued child support tables, however, compelled him to make a legally enforceable payment of \$4,367 every

month. Child support, for the most part, goes to the mother, not the kids.

MATRIMONIAL ASSETS

Matrimonial assets are divided after the knot is untied, usually 50/50 in most cases. Although, there are places like Australia where *more than half* of the assets can be awarded to the mother. So, every asset you acquired, before, or after, your nuptials goes into a pile, and you split it down the middle, regardless of who paid for it.

In some cases, a prenuptial agreement may protect assets that were acquired before the wedding. But, if circumstances changed during the time you were married, or a considerable length of time has passed since the prenup was signed, then a judge will most likely throw out your prenup and it won't be worth the paper it's written on.

Since men rarely stay home to raise children, and women are hypergamous in their mate selection strategies, then you can begin to see how unlikely it is for the mother to pay the toll of family law. For the vast majority of cases, it's the men that are left in financial ruin. With little to no access to his children, watching helplessly as his money flow to his ex-wife, while she alienates him from his kids.

Hypergamy doesn't care if she vows to love and be with you "In richer or poorer, in sickness or in health... 'til death do us part."

Divorce, and not career or entrepreneurship is, statistically, still the number one-way women acquire their wealth today.

For a clear example of this, as I write this chapter in a Starbucks, a woman at the next table said to her girlfriend, complaining about her husband. She said: “I can divorce him, take half his shit, the kids, the house, and not need to put up with his dumb ass anymore.”

That, gentlemen, is the world that this toxic version of feminism has created.

How the state encourages women to become single mothers

In the spring of 2019, angry single mother journalists from around the world attacked me for warning men on Twitter about the dangers of getting into relationships with single mothers. They manufactured about a dozen hit pieces, all from a three-minute clip of a 50-minute speech that I gave an audience of men.

You can watch my video response by searching “The truth sounds like hate, to single moms that hate the truth” on my channel for more perspective.

An overwhelming show of support came from men, and some women, praising me for shining a light on this unflattering subject. But, a golden nugget appeared from commenter “Kim Brown” in the comment section of the video, she said:

“ The thing that infuriates me is my hubby makes about \$50,000 per year, I make about half that. But when you are talking to people about taking responsibility for themselves, you do realize that if

I were to leave my hubby and become a single mother with government benefits, I'd have way more money. What we pay in taxes as a couple, opposed to what the government would give me if I was on my own isn't even close. So, when women leave there [sic] husbands they are improving their situation until that changes nothing else will. It's sickening when society rewards those who make bad choices!

She went on to expand on that with the following:

“ My friend who is a single mother, does the same job and makes the same money as me. We sat down and compared our finances and, with all the subsidies and tax breaks she receives from the government, she has about \$1,000 a month more than my family in disposable income. To me, that's not just rewarding single mothers, it is actively punishing middle to low income women for staying with the father of their children.

If there is a more damning piece of evidence that the state is encouraging women to leave their marriage and become a single mother... Well, I'm not sure where to find it.

Arguments for marriage

Some men might argue that their girlfriend is a “God fearing religious woman.” Or that his beautiful fiancée comes from a

home with conservative values where both of her parents remained happily married for twenty-years.

That isn't enough, for two simple reasons:

1. A woman *always* reserves the right to change her mind at any time.
2. Even conservative, God loving religious women will leverage the corrupt family legal system to benefit from family law.

I had a coaching consultation once where a man spent a good part of the call framing what was to become the “evolution” of “her” during his marriage. She went from a church going religious woman, from an unbroken home, to someone he didn’t even recognize during the divorce process.

It shocked him that she had performed a 180-degree pivot during the divorce. She filed a false domestic violence charge to get him out of the house. Allowing her to control the sale of the home, obtain primary custodial caregiving, and earn maximum benefits from the child support tables.

I simply cannot endorse marriage in its current state today.

But Rich, don’t men have an obligation to find a “good girl” and settle down?

No, you don’t. However, men do have an obligation to become the best possible version of themselves. If a woman enters your frame, is a complement to your life (but not the focus), and you want children, then - and only then - should

you consider having children (after a proper two-year vetting period).

But you must always remember... Women *always* reserve the right to change her mind.

All you need to do is browse the divorce discussion forums for 10-minutes to see loads of women who think that, just because the child came out of their body, that they are the sole *owner* of that child. Therefore, they are entitled to be the primary caregiver by default.

Better yet, spend an afternoon sitting in on divorce hearings at your local family court, and see with your own eyes how fathers get treated.

Societal conditioning, media, feminism, and the law all reinforce that men are inept clowns, incapable of being a useful parent to a child. Fathers are, however, useful as tax cattle, so the state can milk and then transfer those assets to a mother.

Society celebrates single mothers so much that, during Father's Day, you will see memes being passed around that are praising single mothers for doing the job of both parents. However, single fathers receive no praise on Mother's Day.

For more on this topic of the feminization of society, search for a video on my channel titled 'Why are today's men so feminized?'.

Throughout history, men were valued. However, with the state at the head of the household, we have slowly been reduced to that of the disposable parent and are treated like

tax cattle. Fathers are no longer the head of the household, the state is. The state ensures that women are well looked after. Even if it comes at the father's expense.

It's absolutely essential to understand: "The woman you marry is *not* the same woman you divorce." Mark my words - a woman's *true* colors will come to light in a divorce.

For one side to advance its agenda it will come at the cost of the other. Win-win scenarios in divorce are rare because of female hypergamy and only sometimes happens if a woman marries a man of lower value than her (which is even rarer).

Understand that women are not natural risk takers, men are. Now, wrap your head around the fact that women initiate about 80% of all divorces, and often plan them months, or sometimes years, in advance. They do this because they are confident that they will do well - because the state makes sure of it.

Remember that taking unnecessary risks is not inherent in female nature because women play not to lose. It's men that play to win.

Also, men, if you were caught fucking around on her, always understand that hell hath no fury like a woman scorned. Female nature is not on your side. Yet, it expects you to forgive her, look past her indiscretions and, in many cases, it expects you to take ownership for the reason why she fucked around on you.

Divorce and suicide

It was a warm spring day as I drove along the freeway. I was six months into my separation, and still living in the matrimonial home trying to hash out the details of my divorce. I was driving into the office in my truck, feeling utterly depressed about how things were going for me.

This was when overwhelming thoughts of suicide entered my mind. I felt powerless, and the notion of taking off my seatbelt, flooring the truck, and quickly slamming into a concrete pillar entered my mind. I figured it would be over fast.

It was *easily* the lowest point in my life. My life was out of control, and I had no idea if I was going to survive financially, or even see my daughter grow up.

Throughout history, men have been conditioned to be tough and to “man up.” We fight in horrible wars and do incredibly dangerous jobs that women aren’t typically willing to do, like work in mines, or on oil rigs. But when it comes to the emotional and economic toll of divorce, simply put, men can’t cope very well. Divorced men are also more than twice as likely to commit suicide as married men, and divorced men are almost 10 times more likely to kill themselves than divorced women.

But, this is something that the mainstream media won’t shine a spotlight on. Remember, men are disposable; women are protected.

Children and divorce

Even in today's modern world where women are working, and have income equality, mothers are *still* awarded a "primary caregiver" custody order about 80% of the time. That usually means that the father sees his child(ren) every other weekend and a Wednesday night - for dinner only.

My family lawyer said this is par for the course, and it's often called the "Screw over daddy deal."

Women often argue, "Children need their mothers," and family law still sides with that notion. Which, of course, is utter nonsense. Children need access to *both* of their parents if they are going to be an effective member of society as an adult.

Approximately 43% of children in North America are raised by the mother. Here's some more statistics that men should know when relying on the mother to raise their children:

Fatherless boys and girls are:

- Twice as likely to drop out of high school, twice as likely to end up in jail, and are four times more likely to need help for emotional or behavioral problems.²
- 85% of youths in prisons grew up in a fatherless home.³
- 85% of children who exhibit behavioral disorders come from fatherless homes.⁴
- 71% of pregnant teenagers lack a father.⁵
- 63% of youth suicides are from fatherless homes (five times the average).⁶

Mothers, by an overwhelming margin, are doing most of child rearing post-divorce. And, despite how single mothers are praised in the media for being strong and independent, they're often doing a terrible job at it.

How marriage changes men

A lot of men I've coached through divorce entered the marriage with some beliefs they came to learn weren't true. And most of those men were downright shocked by what happened to them.

Men's testosterone levels decrease

It's been proven that when a man lives with a woman, and has children, his testosterone levels drop. Some would argue that this process is just andropause, and natural. But unmarried men of the same age usually have higher testosterone levels than their married counterparts.

PATERNITY FRAUD

While it's difficult to get reliable statistics on this (because of gynocentric laws in some Western countries that lean towards no paternity testing), it's estimated that somewhere between 10 and 30% of married men are raising children that aren't biologically theirs.

This is a big issue because - one of the bigger selling points of marriage to most men - is the ability to pass down his seed. Marriage is, in theory anyway, supposed to *protect* paternity.

BETATIZATION BY A THOUSAND CONCESSIONS

Women will constantly test a man's frame. The vast majority of men will go through the slow process of agreeing to his wife's endless requests and demands. It often starts with "Honey, put your dark clothes in the dark hamper, and your white clothes in the light hamper." Before progressing on to "Let's go vegan together," and may eventually escalate to "Let's have a poly relationship." Which inevitably ends in a speech about how she "Loves you, but isn't in love with you."

Throughout your marriage, the question isn't if you *will* be betatized. It's more of *by how much* and will it be to the point that you become so unattractive to her; she leaves. It's important to note that **women don't do this intentionally**, it's just a natural part of female nature alongside the societal conditioning of the sexes.

REDUCED SEX DRIVE

Men often marry under the impression their wife will reward them with the reliable, consistent, and wild sex that they had before they got married. Yet, one of the biggest search queries from married men is: "How do I get my wife to fuck me?"

Sexless marriages are extremely common today. Introducing kids into the relationship *will* dramatically change the dynamic between both of you, her sexual availability, and her enthusiasm for you. Another, often overlooked reason for this, is that her competition anxiety drops considerably

when she lives with you. She also subconsciously knows family law has her back.

She knows where you are at all times and where you live. Therefore, the competition anxiety that she had when you were both living under separate roofs would keep the hamster between her ears caffeinated. With her constantly wondering what you might be up to.

For more information on competition anxiety search “Entrepreneurs in cars what is competition anxiety.”

How to minimize the risks of marriage

I've had men propose all kinds of ways to eliminate the risk of divorce rape, from importing foreign brides, to surrogacy. Look, there is no way to remove *all* risk. But, from my research, I've discovered a few things that you can do to minimize it:

LIVE WHERE SHARED CUSTODY IS THE DEFAULT ARRANGEMENT IN DIVORCE

There are a few places around the world where, upon divorce, *both* parents share custody 50/50 by default. Unless one parent can prove that the other parent is a risk to the children's safety. So, if one parent is a heroin addict, with a history of violence, or criminal activity, then there may be an argument for a sole custody hearing. However, be sure to ask a family lawyer in your country about this.

HAVE BOTH A PRENUPTIAL AND A POSTNUPTIAL AGREEMENT

A prenuptial isn't enough, and many people will tell you they really aren't worth the paper they're written on during a divorce. This is especially true if 10 years have passed since you got married and she stayed home to raise three kids while you worked. They just have less value over time.

However, there *are* cases where judges have enforced a prenuptial, because a postnuptial was signed *after* the marriage, thereby confirming the original terms. You must remember, any nuptial agreement loses value over time. As circumstances change again, be sure to ask a family lawyer in your country about the best way to handle this. **You** must protect **your** assets.

DON'T MARRY DOWN (Too FAR)

Men typically marry down. It's not uncommon for the VP of Accounting, who's making \$360,000 a year, to marry a hairdresser that's earning just above the poverty line. When you marry down, she doesn't return to her hairdresser lifestyle upon divorce. It is *you* who'll be expected to maintain the lifestyle she became accustomed to in the marriage.

Family law doesn't allow women to return to the poverty line, *especially* if there are children in the equation. Therefore, if you choose to marry in a Western country, then find someone that brings similar assets to the table. Or ideally someone who earns as much, or more, than you (although even that brings its own unique set of problems in a divorce).

DON'T MARRY A FEMINIST

Feminism teaches women they don't need men, that we men are disposable. How men have oppressed women, why men are the privileged sex, and that women are better than men. You simply cannot expect a woman to stick around when they subscribe to a belief system that indoctrinates women into simultaneously being a victim and a supremacist, all while hating the opposite sex.

SEEK THE BRIGHT TRIAD TRAITS

They are:

1. Clarity,
2. Stability,
3. Maturity.

My friend Dr. Shawn T. Smith, author of the book '*The Tactical Guide to Women*,' would consider a woman who displayed these traits as being a high-quality woman. Read this book, then read it again, and seek out these traits.

AVOID THE DARK TRIAD TRAITS

They are:

1. Narcissism,
2. Machiavellianism,
3. Psychopathy.

Narcissists are easy to spot today; she is the woman that is constantly seeking attention on social media throughout the day.

Machiavellianism is when a person is so focused on their own interests that they will manipulate, deceive, and exploit others to achieve their goals.

Psychopathy is traditionally a personality disorder that is characterized by persistent antisocial behavior, impaired empathy and remorse, and bold, dis-inhibited, and egotistical traits. It is sometimes considered synonymous with sociopathy.

Although it's not specified in the dark triad, I would add Borderline Personality Disorder (or BPD) to this list of traits to avoid.

WAIT TWO YEARS BEFORE YOU MARRY

In his book, clinical psychologist Dr. Shawn T. Smith pointed out that women can put on an act, *especially* if they are post-wall and in a rush to get married due to “baby rabies.”

Therefore, be sure to “Hire slow and fire fast.” Do your due diligence and take your time vetting a woman. One of the *biggest* complaints that men, who marry too quickly have, is they learn that they were merely dating a *representative* of the woman. And that the nice representative leaves after she says, “I do.” If, by the two-year mark, it’s not a “Hell Yeah!” then it’s definitely a “Fuck no!”

LIVE TOGETHER

You’ll only see someone’s true colors when you live with them. Live with them for at least six months to see if you still like them on the seventh month. Also, don’t listen to people that tell you that marriages have a higher chance of

failure if you live together before you marry. This is true in North America by a tiny percentage point. But, in Europe, most marriages fair better where a couple lives together first.

SEE HOW SHE HANDLES STRESS

Flight got cancelled? Her baggage was lost? Sandra at the office is a royal bitch every day? See how she handles stressful situations, and if she can make the best of them. Stress happens in marriage, so dealing with stress maturely is a skill needed for a successful marriage. Avoid a woman that can't handle stress, or one that makes mountains out of molehills.

SHE HAS A GOOD RELATIONSHIP WITH HER FATHER

I'm assuming you are a masculine man, or one seeking that level of excellence. How can you expect a woman to admire, and look up to you, if she didn't have a positive masculine male role model in her life growing up? See my chapter '20 Red Flags to Avoid' in this book, as I cover "Daddy Issues" extensively there.

SHE TAKES YOUR NAME

We live in a world today where some women, usually feminists, won't take on your last name. Sometimes, I've heard of weak beta men taking on their wife's last name. In an environment where the burden of all risks are on the man's shoulders, your wife should take on *your* last name. And, no, hyphenation *isn't* acceptable either.

It shows that she is in it for the long haul and is willingly entering your frame. There are some cases where women with a professional designation, for example, a Lawyer or a Doctor, can't change their surnames without a substantial amount of hassle. But, as far as the marriage license, passport, driver's license, etc., then her last name should change to yours.

DON'T COMPLICATE THE WEDDING

Do not get involved in the long, drawn out process that is wedding planning. Photographers, videographers, band, DJ, limo, venue, meal plan, invitations, and so on. If you let yourself get carried away in the planning, then you will overspend on something that already has a 50% chance of failure.

Therefore, keep it simple, have a justice of the peace perform it or, even better, make it fun and have a destination wedding. Statistics also show that more expensive weddings have a higher probability of divorce. A woman that is in your frame and admires you will not insist on a giant party that's all about her.

Conclusion

Marriage is utterly unnecessary in today's day and age. It is **all risk for men, and all reward for women**. If you want to have children, then my advice is to leave any Western country, state, or province, that is hostile towards men. Instead, live somewhere where there's ideally no alimony, division of assets, and child support to worry about.

There are still feminine women that frown upon feminism and value masculinity. Find one of these women and live where the law isn't going to destroy you.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- The woman you marry, **will not** be the same woman that you divorce. A woman's *true* character *will* be revealed during a divorce. So, don't be surprised if she makes up loads of crazy stories to get family law, and potentially even the police, to do her dirty work for her.
- If you have kids with her, then be ready for her to weaponize them during the divorce. She'll do absolutely *everything* in her power to turn them against you and alienate them from you. Rest assured, that this *will* test your personal resolve and frame to the absolute limit. Being alienated from their kids is one of the biggest reasons why so many men either commit suicide, or at the very least, contemplate it.
- If you've been betatized by a thousand concessions, and you begin to take back your life and frame, then you can be *absolutely certain* that your wife *will* fight you tooth and nail to prevent this. Expect the shit tests to escalate to never-before-seen epic-levels as she pokes and prods at this "new you," to see if you *truly are* taking your balls back out of her handbag. Or if you're just faking it.

- Before getting married, go see a divorce lawyer together and **do not** be guilt-tripped or shamed by your LTR for doing this (that, in and of itself, is a major red flag). Invest the money needed for a one-hour consultation with a local divorce lawyer to find out how a divorce would pan out where you live. Just think, if a skydiving instructor informed you that, not only did your parachute only have a 50% chance, or less, of opening. But, that you would also immediately lose legal access to everything that you had worked hard for the minute you jumped (including access to your kids), would you *still* want to jump out of that plane?
-

1 *Review of General Psychology* © 2009 American Psychological Association 2009, Vol. 13, No. 1, 59–65

2 US D.H.S. news release, March 26, 1999

3 *Fulton County Georgia jail populations, Texas Department of Corrections, 1992*

4 *Centers for Disease Control*

5. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services press release, Friday, March 26, 1999

6 *US Dept. Of Health/Census*

IN CONCLUSION...

So, there you have it. Several of society's most comforting lies crushed by a series of cold, hard, truths. Allowing your eyes to open up to these truths is the basis of the ultimate playbook to understanding how to get better results in life and with women. Ultimately, transforming you into that unplugged Alpha you want to be.

This book is just a no-bullshit introduction to the harsh realities that men around the world face today. There's much more to unpack, which I may release in a future book. The red flag chapter for example, could contain significantly more red flags. But, for the sake of simplicity, I had to distill that chapter down to the basics.

Throughout this book, I've referenced several other books that I strongly suggest you read. Consider those books next if you'd like to dive even deeper into the rabbit hole of becoming more alpha and masculine.

When you take the Red Pill, it's like being parched and then taking your first drink from a firehose. You're thirsty for the

information, but the sheer volume of information comes at you with a shocking intensity and speed.

With that in mind, I'd suggest reading this book a few times over. *Especially* if my cold, hard, truth bombs make that Beta inside you feel deeply uncomfortable.

If you are new to my work, I invite you to browse my YouTube channel called 'entrepreneurs in cars.' At the time of writing this book, there I've uploaded almost 1,000 free videos for you to watch and learn from. They're the perfect compliment to the information in this book.

Similarly, if you are looking to connect with like-minded men from around the world that are actively working on becoming a top 1% man, then consider joining my private men's community. I offer my members many exclusive benefits, including discounted 1-on-1 coaching with me. Continue your journey by watching the introduction video here: <https://entrepreneursincars.com/community/>

Finally, it's **essential** to remember: The point of unplugging from the comforting lies you've been told by society *isn't* to hate women, or to even leave a nasty taste in your mouth. It's about accepting, and then fully embracing, the realities of life as a strong, driven, masculine man. Which includes the requirement of being truly at peace with women and not hating them for what they can never be to you.

Peace,

Rich Cooper

GLOSSARY

Oneitis

An unhealthy attachment to one woman where a man desperately pines for her love, attention, and intimacy. The woman in question often couldn't care less about his existence. Men who get “oneitis” often subscribe to the notion of her being his “one true love”, only to see her move on to another man. All while he suffers and sulks in misery hoping she will, one day, return.

Spinning plates

This is a term used to describe simultaneously dating multiple women in a non-monogamous fashion (aka: casual dating), and is a tactic that's often used by men who are disinterested in a conventional monogamous relationship. Or, by someone who knows that he's prone to developing “oneitis,” or prefers vetting women for an LTR/wife by allowing contrast and comparison. Which allows “the cream” (his best “plate”) to rise to the top.

It's important to note that you *never* overtly state you are spinning plates. You just do it, and let your actions signal, by the lack of your availability, that you are spinning plates. Women are, unknowingly by nature, master plate spinners, and often date multiple men at once. Unless, of course, they feel that they've found their best hypergamous option.

SMV (Sexual Marketplace Value)

An individual's own value in the sexual marketplace. For example, your physique, style, Game, frame, confidence levels, etc. all have an individually perceived "value" to women. The more you chase excellence, the higher your natural SMV becomes as you optimize every area of your life.

The Wall

There comes a time in a woman's life when she can no longer really compete on the sexual marketplace with younger, more virile women, and they have therefore "hit the wall." Women are beauty objects to men and her SMP peak is around 23-years old. After that, her looks are on a steady decline.

While you'll never hear a woman admitting to the existence of "the wall" in public. If you ever hear divorced women talk between each other, they'll often refer to giving their "best years" and often ask their friends "who wants a 30-year-old with two kids in tow?" Like it, or not, they *know* that their prime asset to a high-value man, their looks, is on a very steady decline.

A woman can will hit the wall much sooner with destructive lifestyle habits like: smoking, drinking, drugs, or by becoming a single mother. Conversely, a woman can also delay hitting the wall by a few years, by mastering self-care. Either way, a hot 23-year-old will *always* be more attractive to high-value men than a relatively hot 43-year-old (as the latter now has a lower SMV).

Men also hit the wall, but a man's decline doesn't begin until he's in his mid-late thirties (or *much* later if he's a high-value man). For more, search: "What is (SMV) Sexual Marketplace Value and The Wall" on my YouTube channel.

Soft Next

A soft next is where you cut all contact with a girl for a few days if she displays any terrible behavior (maybe longer, depending on how often you see her, or how bad the behavior was in your eyes). This means you do not respond to her texts, calls, or attempts to visit you. Think of it as short-term ghosting.

The soft next works because it anchors negative consequences/emotions to bad behavior. For women, attention is the coin of the realm, and removing your attention powerfully resets your frame as the dominate one in the relationship.

However, it's *critical* that, at the end of the soft next, you continue the relationship normally and act as if nothing had ever happened. If she took the hint that you're more than

prepared to hold your boundaries firm, she'll be more than happy to meet up with you again.

Frame

Regardless of the relationship (or even with life in general), **frame is everything**. Frame is the rock-solid, congruent, outward representation of your core beliefs and your own personal boundaries. The term frame is most often used when talking about managing the frame of a relationship. In every relationship, regardless of the type, one person always “enters the others frame.”

What this means is that the person who's defining the frame of the relationship, is the one who is in control (as the other person willingly “submits” to the stronger frame).

When a man is in control of the frame of the relationship, then that means she is a complement to his life, not the focus. She rarely finds the need to shit test him, create drama, or challenge his choices or authority in the relationship. Women today subconsciously, but desperately, want to enter the frame of a strong, masculine alpha male. A frame that's been built upon the solid foundations of competency, success, and purpose.

Shit Test

Also more accurately known as a competency test. Women often shit test men to check if he's their best option. The competency test can be in the form of a question, or a

behavior she exhibits to test the frame of the relationship, where she's watching closely how he responds (is he cool, calm, and collected? Or does he let his emotions get the better of him?).

An example of a shit test might be: "Hold my purse for me while I go into this clothes store." But, what she's *really* testing you for, is to find out if you are a good little compliant beta male that will do as he's told, and stand there holding her purse like an obedient little puppy.

A simple "No. I don't carry female accessories" with a slight sneer would let her know that you're not falling for her test. Hypergamy means that women will *always* competency test men (whether that's at a conscious or subconscious level), but the frequency and severity of these tests will reduce close to zero when she trusts your leadership and competency skills and is willingly 100% in your frame.

Hypergamy

Women's primary sexual strategy for millions of years has been to form a sexual relationship with a superior man on the socioeconomic scale. It's often said that hypergamy doesn't seek its own level. Rather, hypergamy always seeks *better* than itself.

This is an evolved survival technique for her and her children to always find the best male she can secure for provisioning and protection. When a woman leaves a man, for another that she deems to be of higher value, it's because of hypergamy.

Many men are furious at women for being hypergamous. However, there's no value in being angry at a woman for wanting the best that she, rightly or wrongly, believes that she can get. Therefore, understand hypergamy and make it work *for* you. To dive deeper into hypergamy, search for: “what is hypergamy” on my YouTube channel.

RICHARD COOPER



THE UNPLUGGED ALPHA

THE NO BULLSH*T GUIDE TO WINNING WITH WOMEN & LIFE

RICHARD COOPER



**THE UNPLUGGED
ALPHA**

THE NO BULLSH*T GUIDE TO WINNING WITH WOMEN & LIFE

THE UNPLUGGED ALPHA

THE NO BULLSH*T GUIDE TO WINNING WITH WOMEN
AND LIFE

RICHARD COOPER

Edited by
STEVE FROM ACCOUNTING

Copyright © 2020 by Richard Cooper

All rights reserved. This book or any portion thereof may not be reproduced or used in any manner whatsoever without the express written permission of the publisher except for the use of brief quotations in a book review.

The events and conversations in this book have been set down to the best of the author's ability, although some names and details have been changed to protect the privacy of individuals.

Although the author and publisher have made every effort to ensure that the information in this book was correct at press time, the author and publisher do not assume and hereby disclaim any liability to any party for any loss, damage, or disruption caused by errors or omissions, whether such errors or omissions result from negligence, accident, or any other cause.

No information in this book is intended as a substitute for the medical advice of a licensed physician. The reader should regularly consult a licensed physician in matters relating to their health, particularly with respect to any symptoms that may require diagnosis or medical attention.

First Edition, 2020

ISBNS

Digital eBook Edition: 978-1-7774733-1-0

Paperback Edition: 978-1-7774733-3-4

Hardback Edition: 978-1-7774733-0-3

Audiobook Edition: 978-1-7774733-2-7

1818 Dundas Street East,

Suite 202,

Whitby, Ontario, L1N 2L4

www.entrepreneursincars.com

*I dedicate this book to all the men around the world that never
had a strong, masculine male role model growing up to teach
them about the cold, hard truth of modern women and the world
we live in.*

CONTENTS

Foreword

My Unplugging

1. The female primary social order
Men, the disposable sex
War brides
Toxic masculinity
The way forward
The cold hard truth
2. Women's rules - How they break them or make them
Enter the Amazonian
The Alpha to Beta conversion process
A thousand concessions
The cold hard truth
3. Why genuine burning desire matters
How to determine her interest
A Score of 9 - 10 shows Genuine Burning Desire
A Score of 7 - 8 shows Indifference
A Score of 1 to 6 shows they're a Detractor
Be attractive, not unattractive
Gauging your SMV
Validation sex versus transactional sex
Conclusion
The cold hard truth
4. 20 Red Flags
Red flag #1 - Daddy issues
Red flag #2 - Feminists
Red flag #3 - The unhappy and unlucky
Red flag #4 - She competes with you
Red flag #5 - Keeps men from her past around
Red flag #6 - Poor with money
Red flag #7 - Violent women
Red flag #8 - Extreme jealousy
Red Flag #9 - Party girls
Red Flag #10 - Heavily tattooed and pierced women

Red Flag #11 - Big notch counts
Red Flag #12 - Single mothers
Red Flag #13 - Women seeking validation
Red Flag #14 - She was a sugar baby
Red Flag #15 - Pathological liars
Red Flag #16 - Baby rabies
Red Flag #17 - Hissy fits
Red Flag #18 - Not being in control of the birth
Red Flag #19 - Drama queens
Red Flag #20 - Addictions
Conclusion
The cold hard truth

5. Single Mothers

Cuckoldry
Responsibility without authority
The victim mindset
Financial issues
Reprioritization
The BIG risk
When dating a single mother - might - make sense
The cold hard truth

6. Hire slowly but fire quickly

My single mommy experience
The business partner experience
The cold hard truth

7. Looks, Money, Status, and Game

Looks
Money
Status
Game
The cold hard truth

8. Manage Your Endocrine System

Optimal versus normal
My TRT protocol
How to boost testosterone naturally
In conclusion
The cold hard truth

9. Manage the fucks you give

Self-control
Mastering self-control
How do you strengthen self-control?

The cold hard truth

10. Getting “Da Girls” Online
The cold hard truth about online dating
How to assess your value
How to get results
Your biography
Messaging
The date aka: “The sniff test”
Getting laid and spinning those plates
Always be in control of birth
The cold hard truth
11. Promiscuous Primates
We are terrible at monogamy
How her sexual strategy constantly changes
Her cycles
Sex at Dawn
Cuckoldry
Men’s proclivity to “Oneitis”
Enter plate theory
Spin those plates
A monogamous Long Term Relationship (LTR).
The tattoo test
Open LTR
Polyamory
Conclusion
The cold hard truth
12. Own a Motorcycle
Masculine therapy
Shared interests
In closing
The cold hard truth
13. Master Violence
A powerful defense is the best offense
The cold hard truth
14. When men go their own way (MGTOW)
The problem as they see it
The dangers of “Red Pill Rage”
Surrender to female nature
Learn to accept it and then navigate it
The “Black Pill” solution
Sex dolls

[The real MGTOWs](#)
[Rise of the Incel](#)
[Better safe than sorry](#)
[Conclusion](#)
[The cold hard truth](#)

15. [Why Smart Men Avoid Marriage](#)

[Family law](#)
[Domestic violence charges - A woman's trump card](#)
[How women behave during divorce](#)
[How the state encourages women to become single mothers](#)
[Arguments for marriage](#)
[Divorce and suicide](#)
[Children and divorce](#)
[How marriage changes men](#)
[How to minimize the risks of marriage](#)
[Conclusion](#)
[The cold hard truth](#)

[In Conclusion...](#)

[Glossary](#)

FOREWORD

I met Rich Cooper in 2016. I'm loathed to call it a meeting, since it seems like no one really meets anyone face-to-face these days. At least not in the online spheres. Rich hit me up via email and asked me to come on his YouTube podcast, *Entrepreneurs in Cars*, for an interview. While the interview is still available on his channel, I *really* wish I still had that first email exchange.

I was two books into the Rational Male series by then and was working on the third. This was when I got a lot of requests for interviews. I guess this sounds conceited, but '*The Rational Male*' was maturing into the "*Bible of the Red Pill*"^w then. '*Preventive Medicine*' was getting traction, and I was consumed with the writing/compiling of '*Positive Masculinity*' that year. I wasn't doing interviews.

Hell, I didn't even show my face until 2017, but something about Rich's email struck me as raw honesty. I've always been very hesitant to talk with guys who I got a grifter vibe from, but I didn't get that from Rich. He was sincere in his

appreciation for what I put in ‘*The Rational Male*’ in a way that made me think: “Arigh, I’ll take an hour to talk with him.”

I’m glad I did. Since that first meeting, Richard Cooper has become a good friend, business associate, and a mind with whom I could bounce ideas off of. He’s a man who’s experienced a lot, has the stripes to prove it, but more so, he was honest in his assessments.

In this crazy *Manosphere* conglomerate of online personalities, there are a lot of damaged men. Physically, or psychologically, guys in this sphere can be insane. Some only mildly, some very intensely, some are well-meaning, while others are just malicious; it’s rare to find the *normal* guy among the autistics. Every man in this sphere is looking for answers, but what they do when they acquire those answers, and who they become after they gain that awareness, is based on where they began when they started looking.

Rich is a guy I would hang out with had I initially met him *in real life*. I didn’t meet Rich face-to-face until September 2017. But, when I did, we just talked like old friends. No pretense, no fawning admiration, just two men who related like men. Although, that might sound stupidly mundane in the foreword of a book by today’s standards in the *TL;DR* generation of the “*sphere*.”

I think he may have mentioned something about my work saving his life, but beyond that, we became fast friends.

Since then, Rich and I have worked on collaborations both good and *unwise*. Even through the worst of decisions, Rich has proven a good and balanced friend. But, at the risk of glossing him up too much, Rich is *honest* with himself – and this is the prime requisite of a true *author*.

So, it is with that where I will leave Richard Cooper, and you the reader, with a note of advice from one *author* to another: Stay honest with yourself and read this book with the intent of internalizing the ideas contained within.

– *Rollo Tomassi, November 2020*

MY UNPLUGGING

“ Learn from the mistakes of others, you can’t live long enough to make them all yourself.

- Eleanor Roosevelt

When it came to making mistakes, 2011 to 2015 were terrible years for me. I'd barely survived a divorce, my award-winning business was almost in ruins, and my heart was in pieces from a terrible experience with a single-mom that I'd dated post-divorce.

I knew I'd hit rock-bottom when I was seriously contemplating suicide. I remember driving my truck on the highway and thinking to myself: "If I just nail it, take off my seat-belt, and slam into an overpass freeway concrete pillar, it'll all be over quickly."

I was living in what psychologists have referred to as a “Safe World Theory.” A belief system that is a place of refuge, and it was completely shattered during these years. Towards the beginning of 2016 I had all the symptoms of Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder (or PTSD).

Something needed to change - and fast. But it wasn't the world, government, or women that needed to change. It was me. I needed to wake up and update my belief system because what I was doing, clearly, wasn't working.

In December 2016, I started my recovery when I was at a prestigious men's retreat. An attendee recommended a book called '*The Rational Male*' by Rollo Tomassi. It kick-started my path to clearer thinking and helped me unplug from comforting lies. I soon saw the uncomfortable truths about the world that we, as men, all-too-often struggle through.

It's a book that opens with the question "Why do my eyes hurt?" And the answer... "You've never used them before." The quote is taken from the movie '*The Matrix*'. During this infamous scene, Morpheus offered two pills to Neo: One blue and another red.

The "Blue Pill" offers a viewpoint that is one of falsehood, security, and the blissful ignorance of illusion. The "Red Pill" perspective offers us men the knowledge, freedom, and the sometimes-painful, truth of reality.

I had subscribed to the notion that good, virtuous, and strong will always prevail over all things bad, painful, and evil. However, severe blows to my belief system forced me to question that notion and adapt accordingly.

At the age of 38, I began the divorce process, two years after my only child was born. I quickly experienced the gut-wrenching reality of how badly family law treats men in today's Western world. How family law, and a female-first

primary social order, encourages women to behave horribly, and without remorse, towards the child's father.

On top of that, during the separation period, I was also forced to defend an attack on the company I founded ten years earlier. This attack by credit card issuers with massive legal teams, threatened to put us out of business by changing legislation that would financially strangle us.

After getting off a phone-call updating my business coach in 2011, I vividly remember closing the door to my office and turning away from the window (so my staff couldn't see me). I then put my face into the palm of my hands and began crying uncontrollably.

Only two years prior, I was on cloud nine. I had built a multi-million-dollar custom home, I was married to a lawyer who I thought was my "soulmate," and I was the father to a healthy child. Within one year I'd paid off my mortgage, and then bought my dream car.

Suddenly, I felt like my world was burning down around me. Before the divorce, my family and close friends always relied on *me* for being their rock, for being unshakable. Feeling this way was *completely* unlike me.

I spent \$60,000 on lobbyists and a year and a half of my life trying to save my business. I was in charge of 23 employees and we had thousands of customers. To make the business viable again, we had to pivot into an almost impractical direction, which put me in a position where I needed to become the lowest paid person in my company.

The final blow that led to my awakening came in 2015, after putting almost three years into a relationship with a single mother and her two young boys. I was betrayed in ways I couldn't fathom by a woman who I believed in and trusted. I put a massive amount of personal equity into a woman and her children. Only to be abused, lied to, and ultimately cheated on by her.

My *entire* world was an illusion, and it completely shattered my beliefs.

After that breakup, and for longer than I care to admit, I was re-experiencing the trauma through intrusive distressing recollections of the events, flashbacks, and nightmares. I routinely woke up at 3am and couldn't fall back asleep as my mind was subconsciously trying to reconcile what happened.

I started experiencing emotional numbness, and began avoiding places, people, and activities that reminded me of the trauma. I also had great difficulty concentrating and getting things done. These were all symptoms of PTSD.

Trauma is a normal reaction to abnormal events that overwhelm a person's ability to adapt to life. Leaving you believing that you were powerless.

One thing that happens when you take the proverbial "Red Pill", is your senses become heightened and more aware. You gain a new sense of clarity; things or events that may have fooled you before, become more obvious and you really begin to understand *why* certain events happened in your past. We call the process "unplugging" and we do it by updating our old belief system.

While some men get angry when they unplug from beliefs that weren't serving them, it calmed me. I became aware. Events in my life that previously didn't add up, *finally* made sense and I wanted to see how far down the metaphorical rabbit hole I could go. I needed an outlet and somewhere to express the lessons I was learning about how to live life in today's world as a man.

Fortunately, as I already had a platform, an audience, and a test bed to get feedback on my theories, I dove right in.

After becoming frustrated with my divorce, and the attacks on my business from competitors, on May 23rd 2014 I created a YouTube channel to marry up my two biggest passions in life: Entrepreneurship and fast cars. I made videos and uploaded them to YouTube and called the channel 'Entrepreneurs in Cars'. It started out showcasing my entrepreneurial friends in their success rides, then giving away business tips and lessons from the trenches as an entrepreneur.

But I soon ran out of friends with cool cars and stories to tell. That was when a regular viewer of my work said: "Do a video on the different types of women to avoid dating."

Well, I had just broken up with my single mother and had plenty of experience on what *not* to do in life, so I began sharing those stories and letting my wounds become my work.

Since I began talking about how men could become better, by adopting a "Red Pilled lens" to viewing the world, I've had over forty million views on my YouTube channel.

Questions soon flooded in from my viewers seeking clarity on areas in life they were stuck on. Mostly dating, divorce, marriage, self-care, business, and money. I also took so many questions from people going through their own unplugging struggles that I started coaching them one-on-one. I began taking copious notes and making videos on the lessons that I learned.

This book is a collection of my own personal experiences, the feedback from my community, and the *thousands* of people I have coached through their personal problems.

Many men have called me “The father they never had.” That I’ve taught them, by navigating this world with the truth that a Red Pill lens offers, how they could live a better, more fulfilling, and happier life that enabled them to fulfil their purpose. I believe that it’s my style of dispensing these experiences and cold hard truth bombs that has helped others connect the dots and see the world as it truly is.

However, I must warn you: Some of these stories and lessons may be inconvenient and many will shock you. Remember, the truth doesn’t care about feelings, or political correctness. Also, comforting lies always sell better than uncomfortable truths.

Ultimately, men live in a difficult time today as we are living in a “feminine first” primary social order. Men must embrace their masculinity and completely surrender to the notion that, by employing masculine virtues, there is a place for men to become the best version of themselves in today's world.

Society, culture, religion, the government, mainstream media, and Hollywood all lied to us. Which is why I believe wholeheartedly that a man's *true* mental health and happiness begins with an ability to navigate through life seeing things as they truly are - not as we've been told they are.

To get the most out of this book, clear your head and then really open your mind. Many of the concepts that I discuss will not be popular and some will be opposed. But, as I always tell my audience: "The truth will first piss you off, then it will set you free - if you let it."

Look, I am not university trained, with fancy pieces of paper with letters after my name, framed in mahogany on my wall. Like you, I'm just an ordinary guy that wanted to work on himself. A guy that can use a lot of key life experiences to point to some facts about life, self-care, women, money, masculinity, and navigating the sexual marketplace.

I truly hope you enjoy this book and the invaluable life lessons contained within.

Peace.

Richard Cooper

THE FEMALE PRIMARY SOCIAL ORDER

One of the most difficult concepts guys struggle with today, is that men live in a ‘female first’ social order. This is why I’m placing this chapter early in the book, because it’s important for men to understand how we, as a society, value the feminine over the masculine, and also why that is.

Until a man accepts this reality, and updates his core beliefs, he will forever struggle with the reality the Red Pill brings.

The average man has been fed a steady diet of silly narratives his entire life, such as: “Women are oppressed,” “The patriarchy is evil,” “Masculinity is toxic,” “All men are rapists,” “Women are victims,” and “Women get paid less than men for the same work.”

In actuality, *none* of these narratives bear any close resemblance to the facts. This outrage is manufactured by a “female first” primary social order, with it originating from a toxic version of feminism that is no longer about equality. But rather, female dominance and male submission.

When you pay attention, you will notice an ongoing narrative that dismisses the plight of men, and even somehow makes women the victim of male disposability.

Hillary Clinton illustrated this eloquently when she said:

“ *Women have always been the primary victims of war. Women lose their husbands, their fathers, their sons in combat.*

So, men die in war, but women are the most affected. As if to say that the, often painful, death of a soldier fighting for freedom is simply insignificant.

Men, the disposable sex

Dr. Warren Farrell is a soft-spoken, educator, activist, and author on gender issues. He was the only man ever to be elected three times to the board of the National Organization for Women, which is a feminist organization, and spent much of his life advocating for feminism.

During his work advocating for women, a switch flipped in his head when he realized that women are, in fact, *not* the oppressed sex. Instead, women are the protected sex.

But, when we change the discussion, and talk about a female primary social order that's not being the victim of men, then it invites anger, disbelief, and ridicule as if to say: “How dare you suggest that women aren't victims and that men are treated with disposability!”

In his book, ‘The Myth of Male Power’, Dr. Farrell spills the beans on everything he learned through his experience as a male feminist, while also pointing to the cold, hard, and indisputable facts about the “female first” primary social order that we live in.

Although he had advocated for women for decades, his peers and critics called his observations of the facts a “Promotion of misogyny.”

One of the cold hard truths that men need to get used to, is that, whenever someone has a problem with facts, the problem *isn’t* with the facts.

The truth is, *any* narrative that doesn’t put the feminine first today **will** be manipulated, so it is therefore seen as misogyny by default.

Some of interesting facts I discovered when consuming his work included:

- Men and women have similar mortality rates with prostate and breast cancer. Yet, six times more money is spent on researching breast cancer.
- 85% of homeless people in the US are men.
- Men get *far* longer prison sentences than women – for exactly the same crime.
- In divorce, men are more often left financially broken, with little – or sometimes no – access to his own children, while family law enriches the mother (at his expense no less).

- Men, by a wide margin, enter more dangerous professions by becoming: Roofers, Fire Fighters, Law Enforcement Officers, Miners, and Soldiers. A whopping 94% of workplace injuries are men. Men also commute further, and work longer hours than women do. So, while men do often earn more, it's because men take on riskier, and therefore higher paying, roles. Often trying to buy their way, like the good little beta bucks they are, to female approval and love.
- 24 of the Fortune 500 companies are led by female CEOs. So, the state of California, in an effort to equalize outcome (but without an equality of effort, or merit), passed a law in 2018 to *force* publicly traded companies to put more women on the boards of directors. Yet, there is no such push to get more women into coal mines, offshore drilling, or on garbage trucks.
- In situations where a parent is required to pay child support to the other parent, men are twice as likely as women to pay child support. Yet, unlike the disparaging term “Deadbeat dad,” there is no similar mainstream female equivalent. Perhaps “Deadbeat mom?”
- More than twice as many men are the victim of violent crimes compared to women (even when including rape), and men are also *three times* more likely to be murdered.
- Boys are taught in a female-centric school system. From the earliest grades, schools do a better

job educating girls. Women now earn a majority of Associate, Bachelor, Masters, and Doctoral degrees, and their share of college degrees increases almost every year.

- In every TV sitcom and commercial, men are portrayed as bumbling beta idiots. Incapable of doing anything right and are the butt of all jokes, while women are praised and celebrated.

These facts show us that society puts *far* greater value, and importance, on the lives of women over men. Society treats men as disposable and women as the protected sex.

That's okay, because we've always valued women over men. Let's just be honest about it, rather than pushing lies about women being the oppressed, while men are the oppressors.

War brides

Even throughout history, men have always been disposable, while women were valued and protected. Go back 20,000 years ago. If a hostile warring empire conquered a neighboring nation, then all men of fighting age that weren't killed during the conflict, were either killed afterwards, or put in chains and enslaved.

Influential young boys were recruited into legions to fight for the conquerors. While women and girls were taken into the conquering army, preserved as war brides, because of their value in childbearing.

To put that dynamic into perspective today, it's one of the reasons why women have a far easier time getting over a breakup than men do. Women, as a function of adaptation, need to be able to adapt quickly and move from man-to-man easily.

It's part of a woman's hypergamous nature to *always* seek the best male that she could get. Warring tribe wins? Then the men in that tribe now become her best option for survival.

Men have always been disposable protectors. Women have always selected the best men for survival. Even if that meant becoming a war bride to a conquering army that killed off, or enslaved, their family.

Toxic masculinity

We live in a time where “Toxic masculinity” means that “All masculinity is toxic.” This is especially true anytime a man commits a violent crime, or mass shooting.

In 2018, 19-year-old Nikolas Cruz took a gun, shot, and killed 17 people at his former high-school. He had his face painted all over the media, with headlines purporting that his actions were the result of “Toxic masculinity.”

The media published the following headlines after the event:



How Gun Violence and Toxic Masculinity are Linked, In 8 Tweets

- The Huffington Post

“ Toxic Masculinity Is Killing Us

- The Boston Globe

“ Guns don’t kill people; men and boys kill people, experts say

- USA TODAY

This was a boy brought into a world by an irresponsible single mother that allegedly drank alcohol during her pregnancy. Lynda and Roger Cruz adopted him as an infant. 17 months later, the Cruz family learned that Nikolas' biological mother gave birth to another baby boy, from a different father, who they also adopted. Roger died when Nikolas was four, leaving Nick and his half-brother to be raised by their now single, widowed mother.

Boys raised in a single-mother household have disproportionately higher crime rates and mental health issues. 73% of adolescent murderers grew up without a father. 85% of adolescents with behavioral issues originate from fatherless homes, while 85% of youths in prisons grew up in fatherless homes.

From reading the articles, you quickly learn that Nikolas was never taught discipline, determination, or resiliency. He was also a product of the ‘participation trophy’ generation where “Everyone’s a winner!” by default. Therefore, never needing to learn how to deal with defeat or rejection by women.

As his belief system lacked any ability to deal with women, or rejection, when he was bullied in school, and then rejected

by a girl he was fond of, it wasn't surprising that he defaulted to the feminine programming he grew up on. Ultimately, resulting in an outburst of anger and resentment, that lead to him going on to kill his school peers that rejected him.

Yet, when I searched the internet, I couldn't find one news article about how boys like Nikolas need a father growing up. Or, how 26 of the last 27 school shooters came from fatherless homes.

With an increasing number of boys being raised by single mothers, the vast majority of teachers being female today, most boys have extraordinarily little influence from strong, virtuous male role models growing up. Toxic masculinity isn't the problem - a lack of masculinity is.

You've got to learn to question societal narratives as a man; constantly ask yourself why men are being demonized and women are praised.

The way forward

The point of this chapter isn't to anger you. Rather, it's intended to expand the scope of your thinking as a man to the realities of the modern world we live in. And accepting the reality of where we stand is the first step in moving forward.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- Third-wave feminism isn't even close to being about "equality." Rather, it's about female dominance and male submission.
- Hypergamy is an evolutionary survival technique that ensures the female, and then her kids, are looked after by the strongest, most resourceful man.
- Society often sees men as the disposable sex. For example, the classic "Women and children first" approach on sinking ships (or other disasters).
- Men make up nearly all suicides (with many of them being because of failed past relationships - especially ones that involve his kids that he's no longer "allowed" to see).
- If you can't learn to accept this way of life, then you run the very real risk of taking the "Black Pill" and becoming exceptionally jaded against all women and pursuing any type of relationship with them (whether that is spinning plates, non-exclusive LTRs, or otherwise). You can prevent this from happening by updating your belief system with healthy adaptations and then learning how to maximize your benefits while minimizing the risks.

WOMEN'S RULES - HOW THEY BREAK THEM OR MAKE THEM

There is plenty of debate on what constitutes an alpha male and how to become more like one. Most men have heavy ego investments in what they believe and dictate what is what. So, I think it's pointless to get into those.

Instead, I'd like to defer to women. Which, as we already know, are the sexual selectors and, unlike the advice they give to men about women, their *behavior* won't ever lie to us.

In my life, I've been both the alpha and the beta. And it depended on how effectively my belief system was operating, and also the lens in which I was viewing the world. From my personal experience, and the many men I've coached, women will **always** break the rules for a man she deems to be alpha.

Like the cute "good girl" librarian that made you patiently wait three months for basic missionary sex when you were 20. She'll end up naked in bed with Chad Thundercock 15-minutes after meeting him in Ibiza at the foam cannon party on her 23rd birthday. You can also be certain she'll be doing everything she said she wouldn't do with you - with him.

Never forget: Women break rules for alphas and make them for betas.

If every alpha had a dime for every time a woman said, “I don’t normally do this,” when it comes to first date sex, sex without a condom, swallowing, or some other act she might later regret, men would be rich.

When women say: “I don’t do that,” always add to it in your head: “With you.” Because she’ll do it with a man who *she* deems worthy of such sexual gymnastics.

Women will **always** break the rules for an alpha. It always has been, and always will be, that way. Conversely, women will **MAKE** rules for men who they deem to be a mere beta.

They will make a beta wait eight, likely expensive, dates to sleep with them. They won’t perform oral for a beta and they won’t drive to a bar to meet (because it’s too far for her to bother for a beta male). Women **WILL** always make rules for betas.

Enter the Amazonian

It’s story time. I once had a first date with a thirty-something woman that I met online. She showed up around 30lbs heavier than her pictures suggested, and also quite a bit taller than I expected. But she was cute enough to have one drink with.

Women **will** subconsciously shit test men **all the time** to see if they are alpha or beta. So, a few swigs into my beer, and she proceeded to tell me how, after some bad experiences

with men, she now has an “eight dates” rule before she’ll sleep with them.

Nearly spitting out my beer, I chuckled with amused mastery, and called bullshit. I stated I don’t play games and I certainly don’t negotiate desire, or when sex happens.

I also told her it was childish, and interferes with the natural progression of the sexual dynamics and desire.

Men need to understand. Anytime you negotiate desire, it automatically creates obligated compliance. Which leads to resentment, and *nobody* wants that.

After some back-and-forth banter on the topic of her “eight date rule,” with a dilation of her pupils, and a huff of her giant tits in her push-up bra, she put down her girly cocktail. She looked me dead in the eyes, smirked and said “Okay, let’s fuck *right now.*” And made a gesture towards the bathrooms in the bar.

The same woman who was previously lecturing me about her “Eight date rule,” was ready to bang me in the bathroom. Literally only 20-minutes after I sat down with her.

It was a shit test - and I passed it with flying colors. It was also one of the few times in my life where I’ve passed on an aggressive sexual female advance.

If a woman is placing hoops for you to jump through, and tests to pass, then she is testing you as a beta, a provider. And I promise you, it’ll **not** end in amazing “Fuck me like you own me!” sex.

A woman **will** break all her rules if she views you as an alpha. Every. Single. Time.

She will enter your frame. She will come to you. She will swallow. She will have sex with you on her period. She will enthusiastically say “I want to feel you everywhere,” and put your cock in her ass. She will make you breakfast in the morning, make your bed, do the laundry. And, ultimately, if you can maintain the frame of such a dynamic on a long-term basis, she **will** become a compliment to your life.

However, a woman who's making rules for you views you as a beta. Every. Single. Time.

She'll make you wait for sex. You'll go to her. She won't perform oral. You'll be buying her dinner, be her shoulder to cry on, and she'll be the focus of your life. She will treat you like an emotional tampon. She'll use you to fix her car, hang shelves, and take care of her kids. All while she goes out salsa dancing with her girlfriends where she might meet Chad Thundercock one night and then fuck him in the nightclub's bathroom.

Men that operate in a beta frame end up getting cheated on *far* more than alpha males. They never get her best (in, or out of, the bedroom) and they end up marrying women that will only ever treat them like a plow horse.

As a man that she deems a Beta, you will have little say in family matters, raising the kids, or financial control. You'll go to your job every week while she drops off the kids in her SUV to school or daycare. Before she sits down in a coffee shop, after yoga class, cackling with her friends about how

useless their husbands are. They then complain they had to “give” sex to their Beta husband earlier that week, while they pine for their hot yoga instructor.

That same woman could have been in Ibiza for her birthday, enthusiastically fucking two cute Italian guys like a porn star in a gangbang, just moments after she met them.

The Alpha to Beta conversion process

A woman spends years 'changing' her man, then wonders what happened to the guy she fell in love with.

– Anon.

This process takes years, and can turn an alpha into a weak beta male – it’s often considered to be the process of “Betatization by a thousand concessions”. It is one of the many catalysts that leads to the trauma that men suffer, sending them online to seek answers and the truth.

This is a process I’ve spoken about many times in my videos and it turns men from a pet she loves and admires, to a plow horse that she sees as nothing more than a utility. A utility that she emotionally abuses and doesn’t want to fuck enthusiastically anymore.

If you aren’t aware, and you don’t control the frame of the relationship, then the chances are, this will happen to you. It will make you weak, soft, poor, and undesirable to your woman.

The process of “Betatization by a thousand concessions” is a genuine threat to you as a man, especially if you cohabit, or enter into a marriage, or have children.

Because of women’s innate hypergamous nature, women aim to marry up to a better man, so he generally earns the bulk of the income in the household. Meaning that the Betatization process could end up costing you a **significant** part of your past, and even future, wealth in a divorce.

But that’s not even the worst part. Since women still get primary custody of children around 80% of the time, most men not only lose their wealth, but also their decision-making capacity around their children. Meaning that they also lose their ability to father them properly.

Becoming a weak beta is one of the most dangerous things that happens to men in LTRs and marriages.

It is a process that women unknowingly facilitate. And men allow it to happen because we, as men, have been told our entire lives to put her on a pedestal and to be less - so that she can become more.

A thousand concessions

The timeline looks something like this: She locks down a man that she admired, wanted to fuck, and be with. Over time, he turns into the beaten down beta plow horse that succumbs to her beck and call. He performs chores *hoping* for sex, and is who she ultimately no longer wants to fuck - or even desires.

This phenomenon usually starts with: “Honey, put your dark socks in the dark hamper, and your white socks in the white hamper for whites”. It then progresses to “Let’s go vegan together!” and ends at “I love you, but I’m not in love with you, I want a divorce, so I’m taking the kids to my mothers”.

For a perfect illustration of what these Betatized married plow horses look like, pay attention to your next few trips to the grocery store. Now stroll by the baby diaper isle and look for the family doing their shopping.

You will start to see husbands with an exhausted and beaten down look on their faces. Their kids, aged one, three, and five, plus one bun in the oven, are out of control. His, now rotund, wife with her permanent “resting bitch face” scowls at him about how incompetent he is for putting the wrong diapers in the shopping cart.

Once you see this happen, it can’t ever be unseen. You will notice these types of men more often around you. At the mall, at your kid’s soccer game, and around social gatherings with friends and family.

This husband is the same man that she, many years prior, would look up to and potentially even had enthusiastically rough, monkey sex with. She would proudly present her new “pet” boyfriend for the first time over the holidays before proudly saying to her family, “This is Kevin, the VP of sales I told you all about from work.”

Heck, he was probably the same guy she would get in a quarrel with. He would hang up the phone to control the frame because he was subconsciously alpha enough to know

when a soft next worked. She likely drove over at 3am that same night, after he hung up on her, to let him fuck her in the ass, something she rarely did, just to calm him down and get back into his good books.

Kevin the VP of sales started out as an alpha but, through a thousand concessions to placate her whims during the length of the relationship, Kevin becomes the Beta.

An alpha does as he pleases, he possesses the traits of: Strength, courage, mastery, and honor. Men want to *be him*; women want *to be with him*. When women are with him, they will enthusiastically show it.

A beta on the other hand, is on the other end of the spectrum. He is not her first choice; he is an accessory to her life, a utility, a handyman and, in many cases, she'll also treat him like an ATM.

The worst form of beta is the cuckold. Which is the man that gets involved with a single mother, and then willingly raises the children of another man. Or worse, his wife gets knocked up by another man, and he, unknowingly, raises that child as his own.

Women don't divorce alpha men they admire and look up to. They generally leave beta men that become a plow horse to them. As a man, if you want to take on the risk of marriage and kids, then you **need** to be on your mission, always maintain the frame, and your alpha status.

Remember, in every relationship, one partner enters the others frame. It is therefore incumbent on you, as the man,

to ensure that your woman is in **your** frame. You cannot let the balance of that frame shift to her.

Far too many men, get married and actually *believe* the vows they take: “In sickness, and in health... for richer or for poorer... ‘til death do us part.”

The fact of the matter is, women divorce men *all the time* if the circumstances of the marriage change and she now deems you of lesser value to her. If you get fat, go broke, can’t hold down a job, or are utterly useless around a house, then a woman reserves her right to untie the marriage knot.

It’s why I tell men *all the time* that, taking on a marriage, or LTR, is *far* more work than simply dating, or spinning plates (and they both come with far more risks).

Never forget that, if you are going to get married or have kids, then it is imperative to control the frame, and **do not allow yourself to become a beta male.**

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- Women break rules for alphas and make them for betas.
- As unfair as it may be, the “Burden of Performance” is always on you. This means that you must always be on your A-game when it comes to frame, Game, and leading the relationship (more so if you’re married or in an LTR).

- If you notice her making rules, or setting conditions, on areas such as when she'll have sex with you (for example: "If you ever want to have sex again, then..."), you now **know** that she definitely sees you as a beta and that the frame has shifted.
- Learn to say "NO." It's a complete sentence that doesn't need any further explanation. If you've been pussy-whipped for years, then she'll likely be surprised. But also intrigued. Expect her to ramp up the shit tests to see if this new, more assertive you, *is* the real deal. So, you had best make sure it is.

WHY GENUINE BURNING DESIRE MATTERS

One of the simplest concepts a man must understand is “genuine desire.” What it is, why it matters, and how to measure it. When you get it right, it’s a superpower. But, when you get it wrong, it leads you to making *terrible* choices, leading to poor results with women.

A man will chase a woman who’s indifferent to him and suddenly wife her up. Only to find out, after two kids and seven years of investing his blood, sweat, and tears into the relationship, she’s leaving him for another man. A man she has more desire for, while simultaneously running him hard through the divorce machine.

In 2018 I recorded a video in my car while heading home from the office, talking about why genuine burning desire matters with women. To find this video, search ‘genuine burning desire’ on my channel.

I’ve created a simple system to make it easier to determine her interest in you.

How to determine her interest

I've been using a measurement system in my business for over 10-years now called the "Net Promoter Score" (or NPS). It's a system which uses a measurement scale of 1 - 10. The system highlights three distinct levels of interest that a potential customer has in your business.

You survey your customers with the question: "On a scale of 1 - 10, how likely are you to recommend our services to a friend or colleague?" When you plug in a formula after conducting your customers' surveys, it tells you how much interest your customers have in your business.

The levels of interest are:

- A score of 9 to 10: These customers are your "Promoters" and they love what you do.
- A score of 7 to 8: These customers are indifferent. They have nothing good, nor bad, to say about you.
- And finally, a score of 1 to 6: These customers are your "Detractors" and they *don't* like you.

You may wonder why I am applying a business measurement tool to a man's life.

It's because the answers to most of the struggles we have already existed elsewhere. We simply need to identify them and then apply what works.

However, we aren't interested in the NPS of you as a man. That would require sampling every woman you've either

dated, or are currently dating, to find out what your NPS would be. It's impractical to survey so many women with such a question and expect an honest reply. But understanding *how* to measure desire is important and you **must** know why genuine burning desire matters.

Let me break down the way desire works for you:

A Score of 9 - 10 shows Genuine Burning Desire

When a woman *truly* desires you, you'll know it. She'll show up on time and call or text you without you making the first attempt. She'll also respond quickly, willingly enter your frame, and complement your life (without wanting to be the focus of it).

She will also ask you questions to get to know you better. She may also buy you random gifts, make you meals, and follow you closely on social media. She will even message you first on a dating app, always responding quickly. She will show up for dates with make-up and nice clothes, she'll enthusiastically fuck your brains out and swallow your load.

She will also often initiate sex with you, unprovoked. When a woman genuinely desires you, it will be as obvious as taking a blow from a frying pan to the forehead.

A Score of 7 - 8 shows Indifference

When women are indifferent, they frequently reschedule/cancel dates, ask for more than they give, become bitchy, and sometimes confrontational. She will shit

test you often, take longer to respond to your texts/calls, not put much effort into her appearance when you see her, and she will rarely ask you questions to get to know you.

If you message her on a dating app, she'll be slow to respond. Her interest in the bedroom will also not be very high either. She'll be far less likely to want to suck your cock and she'll rarely initiate sex with you. When a woman is indifferent to you, it will be obvious.

A Score of 1 to 6 shows they're a Detractor

When women are detractors, they will not respond to your calls or texts and they will not go out on dates with you. They will not follow you on social media, and if you message them on dating apps, they will not respond. When a woman is a detractor, it will be obvious.

Every man, when dealing with a woman on a romantic level, should always gauge her interest in him by watching her behavior. He must respond accordingly by only allocating his valuable time, energy, and resources on the woman who shows him a strong, genuine, burning desire.

Be attractive, not unattractive

Men are natural problem solvers. So, your next logical question is: "How do I create such an enthusiastic desire in her so she signals a clear indicator of interest in me?".

The answer is that you can't manufacture it. It must be natural. You **must** be a man that is desirable. You **must** be a

man that exudes confidence, competence, and strength.

It's unlikely that a woman with only a detractor level of interest in you will ever enthusiastically become a promoter and want to fuck you.

It's not that it can't happen. I've had *plenty* of women over the years, from my past, that may have been passively interested in me back then, only to express a much higher desire later on down the road as my "Sexual Market Value" (or SMV) had greatly improved. This often happens when she deems that her SMV has gone down as "The Wall" does its work. All while watching your SMV go up as you approach your own SMV peak later in life.

For a definition of what "The Wall" is, check out the [Glossary](#) at the back of the book.

However, at the end of the day, you must ask yourself why would you want to get involved with a woman that gave her best to someone else, making you her second choice.

The genuine burning desire you receive from a woman must be organic. You *cannot* manufacture it, or negotiate it. Anytime you negotiate desire, you get obligated compliance in return, which only leads to resentment further down the line.

You can, however, work on yourself. In fact, it is the only part of the universe that you *can* control. If you are fat, fix it. If you are broke, fix it. If you don't understand "Game", learn it. If you are socially insignificant, learn to become influential.

These aspects are truly within your control. Some men will argue that they are short and that their height is out of their control. True, but if you aren't tall, then do the work to be a fit, rich, smooth, short badass.

If you are not a high-value man that commands a high level of attention, then you cannot expect a "10" to want to rip off your clothes enthusiastically and jump your bones.

Your highest "Return on Investment" (or ROI) in life will always be that of being a man of vision, purpose, and who is always chasing excellence.

Gauging your SMV

Ask yourself the question: "On a scale of 1 to 10, with 10 being the absolute best version of myself, and with 1 being the worst, where would I place myself right now?"

It's important to note that you aren't comparing yourself to anyone else - it's only about you.

A perfect 10 would mean that you have already achieved the level of wealth, self-care, success, income, desirability, social recognition, and community, that you couldn't do much better. You live where you want, drive cars you love, take vacations when and where you want. You look masculine and strong, women are constantly seeking your attention, and you never worry about money.

If you are rating yourself a six or lower, then I'd suggest limiting your dating, or perhaps stop dating entirely, and go fix yourself before you go chasing after women.

Your ROI on the time invested with women will be low and you will probably become frustrated with your results.

Because of hypergamy, women always seek men who are a few points higher than them on the SMV scale. So, as a man, you have the burden of performance to do the work on yourself.

Remember: “Men are made; women are born.” You need to do the work on yourself if you want to be successful with women. Never forget that women have always viewed men as success objects, whereas men have always viewed women as sex objects.

Validation sex versus transactional sex

Women with a high level of desire for you will have sex with you for validation. They crave it, and it’s enthusiastic. When women have validation sex, the risk of her claiming either a #MeToo or a false rape claim allegation, after the fact, is almost zero.

I’ve seen women who crave that validation sex from me drive 45-minutes, in the middle of the night, during a work week, and throw down a dark towel to fuck me enthusiastically on their period.

When women fuck a man for validation, her vagina is soaking wet, your bed will be wet, she will do anything to please you, including swallowing your load, or do anal first, and then swallow your load. There is virtually no limit to

what a woman will do with a man that she has an enthusiastic and genuine desire for.

Indifferent women will either have transactional sex with you, or try to use it as a negotiation tool. It's women that have transactional sex that are more likely to claim a #MeToo, or false rape accusation against you. Just because they regretted their choice at a later date.

When women have transactional sex with you, her vagina isn't soaking wet. She won't do much in bed and it will often come with some requirements in exchange for the intimacy she's "giving you." There's a growing trend amongst beta men who are resigned to doing "choreplay".

"Choreplay" is defined as a man who is doing the household chores, that the female would normally do, in exchange for sex.

Simply put, you *cannot* negotiate genuine desire with a woman. Once you start down the path of transactional sex, the clock starts counting down to the end of the relationship.

If a woman won't do something sexual then, in your head, add "with you" to the end of her statement when she declines it. For example, when she says: "I won't do anal." then add "with you" to the end. Make no mistake about it, she *will* enthusiastically do it for validation with a man that she has a genuine, burning desire for.

Conclusion

It's absolutely *vital* that you only invest your limited time in women whose actions show you, beyond any doubt, that she has nothing but a *genuine*, burning desire for you. However, never forget that the "Burden of Performance" *always* rests firmly at your feet. It's up to you, and no-one else, to become the top-tier man that commands that level of genuine desire from a high-value woman.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- Your highest ROI in life will **always** be that of being a man of vision, purpose, and who is **always** chasing excellence.
- Negotiated desire only ever leads to resentment, from both parties, down the road.
- Rest assured, once you've experienced the pleasures of a woman who displays a genuine desire and attraction to you, it'll be easy for you to spot anything less from that point on.

20 RED FLAGS

On my YouTube channel, I often reference the phrase “She has more red flags than a Chinese communist parade.” In this chapter, I want to dive a little deeper into the riskiest red flags that men need to be aware of as they navigate their life around women.

I’ve made plenty of these mistakes myself and have counseled hundreds of men who’ve done the same. Therefore, it’s *essential*, for your own wellbeing, that you do not ignore these red flags.

Keep in mind that you *can* pursue a deep relationship with a woman who displays any of these red flags. However, in my estimation, the juice simply isn’t worth the squeeze, and the risks *far* outweigh any reward.

If you are a woman reading this chapter, and you identify with a red flag, then don’t get upset. Instead, like I keep reminding men: work on yourself, take ownership, and seek counseling.

As many men have observed, the wrong woman can ruin your life if you let her in it. Therefore, learning how to spot red flags early is an *essential* skill for men to master. Even though this chapter covers the 20 major ones I've identified, plenty of others exist – so keep your eyes open.

If you choose to involve yourself with any of these types of women, then my advice, unless otherwise stated, is to limit your interaction to a “Friends With Benefits” (or FWB) relationship and to keep spinning plates. As soon as you identify one or more of these red flags, limit her to plate status, or pass on them and make no further emotional investment in either her, or in a relationship with her.

There are women out there that *will* add value to your life – if you keep the wrong ones out.

I'm also approaching this chapter with the assumption that you are a man of purpose that values his own masculinity, strength, and traditional male competency skills.

Beta men constantly make concessions and excuses, while accepting red flags. Whereas a high-value alpha male keeps chasing excellence and his purpose in life. He doesn't let problem women interfere with his life's mission.

Red flag #1 - Daddy issues

If she doesn't have a friendly relationship with her father, or had an acrimonious relationship with him growing up, then she likely has a variety of daddy issues. Whether her mother pushed her dad out of her life, or that he was absent, or

perhaps he was disinterested in being a dad and instead, acted as a piece of furniture in the house.

Either way, any woman that didn't have a solid relationship with a strong, masculine, and virtuous father in her life will not value a masculine, virtuous, alpha man.

If she didn't value her father, what makes you think she will value you? I've counseled far too many men that have tried far too hard to rescue women with daddy issues. It's *never* worth your time.

Another area of concern with daddy issues is that it's often tied into Borderline Personality Disorder (or BPD). Women with BPD frequently originate from fatherless homes, which breeds their fear of abandonment. This fear continues as they become adults, where they will presume that they will, once again, be abandoned. They then act out in such a way that will make abandonment certain.

BPD women are so dangerous because they operate in extremes, they can be freaks in the sheets and then immediately act like a classy lady on the street.

A BPD woman can quickly go from hot to frigid cold. Such BPD women can hook a guy in by pretending to be a caring, loving, and nurturing woman. A BPD woman can create the false sense of perfection that makes you say "Wow, a woman who *finally* loves, respects, *and* appreciates me!"

Asking her "Tell me about your parents growing up" early on helps you to identify, and then filter out, women with daddy issues. Remember that you have two ears and one

mouth. So, use them in that ratio – ask, *then* listen. She will often tell you her story.

I've had my fair share of experiences with women who had daddy issues and they are *never* worth your time, effort, or resources.

A woman's father is her primary role model growing up and provides the foundation that governs her belief system. And includes the lens in which she views both men and women, and how they should interact.

However, the origin of her issues is irrelevant because, if she expresses disdain for her father, she is unlikely to value men.

Single mother households, especially feminist ones, are a petri dish for today's women with daddy issues. A feminist-identifying mother will instill toxic values in her daughter. Instead of valuing you, you'll be deemed as a "privileged male" and will be resented for your masculinity.

After my divorce, I dated a woman who had three older siblings. Her mother became a widow before my ex was born. Instead of being a single mother of three, she optimized her hypergamy and looked for a beta provider. She eventually had a fourth child, my ex-girlfriend, with her second husband.

My ex's mother died of cancer while she was in her early twenties. When I asked about her relationship with her father, she claimed unforgivable indiscretions that her father was responsible for. She painted her mother as a feminist

saint and her father as an abusive, misogynist cheater, and child abuser.

While we were dating, my ex went almost twenty years without contact with her father. She unsurprisingly identified as a feminist, became a single mother of two herself, and subsequently had little regard for men and masculinity - unless it served value to her and her children. She then dismissed them once she capitalized on their value.

While she constantly battled her internal conflict to find a high-value man, she also resented masculine energy and claimed that men didn't subscribe to her solipsistic feminist beliefs.

My ex ran away from Canada after her mother died to teach English in Asia. She then partied through her young adult years with many men there, came back at her epiphany phase, married a beta male that pined for her at 28 to fulfill her biological clock. Before promptly divorcing him at 38 when she deemed that he no longer served any purpose to her.

A popular video on my channel called '*3 Women Men Should Avoid Dating*,' was based on the multiple women that I had dated that had:

1. Daddy issues,
2. Needed saving,
3. Fought with her children's father.

These types of women will never take ownership for their own lives. When I did that video titled “*3 Women Men Should Avoid Dating*” on my channel, women with daddy issues sputtered their insecurities in the comment section.

Red flag #2 - Feminists

I briefly touched on this in the previous “daddy issues” red flag. Many western women today either identify as a feminist, or have welcomed toxic feminist beliefs into their schools of thought. They’re indoctrinated to believe that men are privileged, that men hold women back, and that men succumb to the patriarchy.

Thankfully, the devout lifetime feminists are typically easy to spot. They:

- Avoid traditional feminine cues and instead opt for shorter, unnaturally dyed hair colors (think bright blue, purple, or red),
- Mutilate their body with several tattoos and/or facial piercings,
- Are often overweight and usually dress in ill-fitted clothes.

Compared to keeping themselves fit, well dressed, and groomed to maintain their physical appeal to men.

Feminism preaches radically leftist political views that fight for unlimited free abortion, elevate single mothers on a pedestal, and claim that masculinity is “Toxic.”

Feminists hate it when the State imposes limits on abortion and tries to force them to be mothers. However, they more than happily use State family law to force men to be fathers.

Feminism teaches women to vote for the welfare state, massive government handouts, huge tax rates on top income earners, and social programs that widely benefit a female primary social order.

A feminist will never appreciate you or value you as a man. Feminism teaches women to be victims, and anyone with a victim mindset can't find happiness.

Today's version of feminism is so toxic that it is anti-femininity. It encourages women to hate men, while simultaneously encouraging them to behave like men, and that they should ditch the notion of motherhood to prioritize their careers.

Feminism doesn't seek to make women better, or more feminine. Feminism seeks to make women into terrible versions of men.

Ownership is a concept that most women struggle with. However, feminists are often completely unfamiliar with it, and so everything will be the fault of the patriarchy.

Therefore, avoid *any* woman that identifies as a feminist - at all costs.

Since the #MeToo movement, we have seen several exceptional men fall to the false claims of sexual harassment or rape, and the vast majority of these false charges originated from feminist women.

Sadly, even feminine cues are not enough anymore. There are plenty of women out there that identify with feminist values that remain feminine in appearance, and these are the ones you must be the most careful with. As they are on a transformational path to obesity, collecting cats, and eventually short and brightly colored hair.

If you are getting into an LTR, or are even considering marriage, it is *vital* that you give yourself a good two years to watch both her behavior and her choices in life. Pay close attention to her *before* you do something silly, like marrying a woman that appears feminine, but internally idealizes feminist propaganda.

Red flag #3 - The unhappy and unlucky

Robert Green's tenth law states: "Avoid the unhappy and unlucky." If you haven't read '*The 48 Laws of Power*', do yourself a favor and read it and always avoid the unhappy and unlucky.

And while this doesn't only apply to women, I note it here in this chapter as these types of women are a complete waste of your time. Their perpetual unhappiness will rob you of your joy.

Such women always have some problem going on in their life that attracts the "Captain Save-a-Hoe" type of guys to swoop in and rescue them from their own shitty existence and choices in life.

The unhappy and the unlucky often go from man to man, draining them of their joy and fortune. They are a magnet for drawing drama into their life - and yours. Therefore, only associate with the happy and lucky.

Red flag #4 - She competes with you

A woman that constantly tries to compete with you might seem cute at first, but it's a test of your competency as a man, and it's an underhanded behavior that ultimately aims to reduce your worth to her.

The female primary social order tells women that they are better than men, and it's why we see the rise of the "Boss girl" on social media. I once dated a woman that competed with her brother growing up, and that competitive behavior continued into her relationship with me.

It's a red flag because when women compete against you, she thinks she is better than you. A woman that thinks she is better than you *will not respect you* and will, ultimately, try to undermine you.

For a woman to satisfy her hypergamy, she must feel like she is with a man that, in her eyes, has at *least* 1-2 Sexual Market Value (or SMV) points more than she does.

A woman won't try to compete with you when she believes your value is greater, she will instead admire you. Remember, women want to be with a giant. She wants to look up to you. Hypergamy never seeks its own level; hypergamy can only be satisfied if it does better than itself.

A woman constantly competing with her LTR, or husband, is always a prelude to a train wreck.

Red flag #5 - Keeps men from her past around

Women like to have options. A recent survey showed that almost half of all married women admitted to having a “back-up plan” (aka: another guy). If you are getting into an LTR and she wants you to abandon your sexual strategy of unlimited access to unlimited women, then *she* needs to burn the ship on the shores of her new life with you and cut *all* emotional ties with other men.

Now, some women end up as an “Alpha Widow”. An “Alpha Widow” is a woman who pines for that high value alpha that didn’t commit to her in her earlier years.

She may not be in contact with him anymore. However, if she still sees him as the one that “got away,” and she keeps a place for him in her head, and therefore in her heart, then she *will never* see you as her best option.

It’s imperative that she has a genuine, burning desire for you. You don’t want to be “Good enough.” You want to ensure that you are getting her absolute best.

Trust me when I say that no good ever comes from her having lunch with ex-boyfriends, or other male friends, and you *certainly* do not want to be the guy she “settled” for.

If you are a man that is chasing excellence in his life, then you don’t need distractions like your woman seeking attention from, or still pining for, other men.

Men and women have little in the way of common interests; other than men wanting to have sex with women and women wanting to extract attention or resources from men.

There should be no room for male “friends” in her life if you are in an LTR. Women like this should be a plate, at least until they can prove that they are over their past.

Red flag #6 - Poor with money

Some of you may know this already from my videos, but I’m well versed on financial services from my past businesses, and when women are bad with money, it’s often serious trouble.

If she is an adult and doesn’t have a pot to piss in or a window to throw it out of, then she is not to even be considered for an LTR. I’ve seen *far* too many men trying to play “Captain Save-a-Ho” and bail out women with horrendous debt and terrible spending habits.

Despite the lie feminism has told women that they only earn 75 cents for every dollar a man earns, women have every opportunity to earn a good living today.

Yet, women *still* continue to choose careers that pay *less* than men, while going into deep debt by overspending. Ultimately, if she can’t manage her monthly cash flow and has nothing but a pile of handbags and shoe collection to show for her debt, avoid her for anything more than a FWB, because she will make *her* financial problems *your* problem.

Red flag #7 - Violent women

Women that have violent tendencies are a **massive red flag**. Early signs of violence are as small as a punch, or a shove. However, I've counseled *many* men that have dodged knife attacks or even objects being thrown at them from their angry woman that was having a hissy fit.

Men are physically stronger than women, so when there is a domestic violence call into the police, even if you are the innocent party making the call, or defending yourself, it's likely that they will take you away in handcuffs, rather than her.

In most domestic violence cases, men are automatically presumed guilty and women are protected, even if she was the one starting the physical abuse. I've seen peaceful men, during a divorce, removed from their own home and children, because a violent woman accused her husband of domestic violence that never happened.

Violence from any woman towards you, for any reason, should **never ever** be tolerated, and is grounds for terminating the relationship immediately. To protect themselves, men **must** use their cell phone as a shield, and record a video of her erratic behavior as proof for the authorities.

If I haven't made my point clear enough yet - avoid all violent women **at all costs!** They aren't even worth an FWB arrangement! When it comes to violent women, the juice *truly* isn't worth the squeeze.

Red flag #8 - Extreme jealousy

Women want to be with a man that other women want to fuck. But they don't want their man fucking other women.

This dichotomy of female nature is something that men will always struggle with. A degree of jealousy, also known as competition anxiety, is an excellent thing as it keeps her working hard to keep you. But it becomes undesirable when the women are so insecure in themselves that they always make her problems your problems, distracting you from your purpose.

They will be like a predator drone, always keeping watch on you. She will constantly text, scan through your receipts to see where you've been, what was ordered on the receipt, look for hairs that aren't hers, she'll want to look in your phone, creep on women that follow and like your social posts, and count the number of condoms in your nightstand drawer.

It's exhausting. She will drain you of your sanity, joy, and dignity. Jealous women have work to do on themselves, and it's honestly not your job to be their therapist.

Red Flag #9 - Party girls

Most women under the age of 27 that have never been in an LTR are in their party years. If you met your girl in a nightclub, bar, or other social event, and she claims to be relationship material, but still continues to party several nights a week, you have two options:

1. Tell her that women with boyfriends don't go out partying and if she continues, you walk away.
2. Keep her as a plate only.

The “party years” aren’t exclusive to women under 27 either. Sometimes, she was married young, had kids, and got divorced in her thirties and missed her “party years.” So, it’s not uncommon to see women in other stages of their life trying to re-live that missed party era as an older woman.

You can’t be in an exclusive LTR with a woman if she is going out partying with her friends regularly. The process involves two hours of preparation time in her hair, makeup, and clothes, for the main purpose of marketing herself to other men. If she is going out selling herself to others, she is not your woman.

Men have evolved to require fidelity from the woman they have invested in, as a step in ensuring paternity. This is not jealousy. Most men instinctively want to know that his woman is sexually exclusive with him.

Do not fall for the new age beta male narrative of polyamory. It is a mating strategy for weak beta men that must resign himself to sharing a woman with alpha men.

When there is a conflict between what she is saying and doing, and she is acting single when she goes out to party, then believe the action, never the words. Actions **always** speak louder than words.

I dated a few party girls, and their phones would always be going off at 2am from guys looking to hook up. Avoid party

girls for LTRs and never limit yourself to one woman if you are dating a party girl. Only spin her as a plate.

Red Flag #10 - Heavily tattooed and pierced women

I realize some men prefer women with some ink, and there will be men that will debate me on this. However, my experiences have taught me that their placement and frequency matters. One tattoo hidden in her bikini line isn't much to worry about. However, if she has a tramp stamp, or more than one visible tattoo while wearing normal clothing, then you might want to ask yourself what she is saying to the world.

Tattoos all over a beautiful woman is like putting bumper stickers all over a Lamborghini. You don't do it as it shows a lack of taste. I've never met a woman with several visible tattoos that didn't bring at least three or more red flags to the table.

Heavily pierced women are another red flag. Draw the line at earrings, and if you want to push the limits, a nose ring. But, if that piercing is on her septum, nipple, clitoris, and eyebrow, or she even has multiple ear piercings up one ear, then keep in mind that you are dealing with someone that enjoys mutilating their own body, which is a red flag.

Red Flag #11 - Big notch counts

The most attractive quality in a woman is when you know she hasn't been with everybody and has her own standards.

Setting aside the higher probability of her having an STD, multiple conducted studies have proven that the younger the age a woman loses her virginity at, and the higher the number of men she's slept with (aka: Her notch count), often results in her being far less likely to bond monogamously to a man, in a healthy way, over a long period of time.

For example, a woman that lost her virginity at 14 and has slept with 30 men, is *far* less likely to bond monogamously to you over the long-term. Compare that to a woman who lost her virginity at 23 and has only slept with two men in long-term relationships.

If you want to get into a monogamous LTR, or take on the risk of marriage, then do it with a woman with a low notch count that lost her virginity later on in life.

Research conducted by the Institute for Family Studies revealed that a virgin has a 5% chance of divorce after five years of marriage. Whereas, a woman with two previous partners has a 30% chance of divorce. The data stopped at 10 partners, which showed a 35% chance of divorce.

Promiscuous women that have had many partners and/or have been sexually active from a young age **DO NOT** make good long-term partners. It's not to say they can't, or won't, try to be a girlfriend or wife. But the statistics reveal how undesirable these women are long-term, and that's why they should be treated as an FWB - and nothing more.

Women with a higher notch count are also more likely to report depression, become single mothers, have personality

disorders, and have abortions compared to women with lower notch counts.

Women must preserve their value; men must create their value. It's why, throughout history, women's virginity was so prized. Whereas, a man's value comes from his ability to make something out of himself so he can provide, preside, and protect.

I should note that women will *never* reveal the truth about their notch count to you, so don't bother asking to get an authentic number. Some may volunteer it. Be wary of any number they throw out, as women often fear being slut shamed.

Women only usually factor in relationships as part of their notch count, and they often disregard all the one-night stands, threesomes, lesbian encounters, or FWB relationships that they had in the past.

At a bare minimum, double whatever number she gives you.

The lifestyle, and company a woman keeps, reflects her notch count. A woman that you meet at 30 that claims she was in an LTR from the time she lost her virginity at 23, probably has a low notch count.

But women with an absence of any drama free LTRs in her past, that lived on her own, traveled a lot, and you met her at 35 could have a notch count approaching triple digits, or more. It's not uncommon for women in their party years (20-27) to rack up a notch count of 25 or more men.

Never forget, women become the average of the five people she spends the most time with. If five of her friends are, or were sluts, then she will be the sixth.

Red Flag #12 - Single mothers

Do not be a cuck. Do not raise another man's child.

There is absolutely nothing in it for you as a man. You do not pass on your own DNA; they do not have your last name, and cuckoldry shackles you with 100% of the responsibility as a parent, but you have 0% authority.

Some men choose an FWB arrangement because it's low hanging fruit. However, I've dated single mothers when I was blue pilled and trust me: **DO NOT** date, live with, or marry a single mother. It's not worth it. See my video "Why Men Shouldn't Date Single Mothers" on my YouTube channel.

Look, I've counseled *hundreds* of men that have made the mistake of living with a single mother in such a way that the state views as a marriage. Guess what? They have been on the hook to pay child support for kids they didn't even father.

In one case I counseled, a man was married for less than two years. He paid off over \$100,000 of her debt and she brought two special needs kids to the table with her. She wanted out and was taking him to court for child support... for life.

Do not be a cuck.

Red Flag #13 - Women seeking validation

Social media is a staple in today's world, and almost all women are on it. However, women who use public social media to gain attention from men should be avoided. While there are no "good girls" on social media, the better ones will use private accounts. Meaning that only 'friends and family' can see their posts and they aren't posting provocative pictures, fishing for likes, comments, and direct messages from men providing loads of attention and validation.

Public accounts using social media to sell a product or service and treating it like a business are okay, but understand she will still have men flirting with her.

The women posting daily provocative pictures of themselves on public accounts, with thousands of thirsty beta males following them, are selling something too - their sexual agency. Women like this are openly optimizing their hypergamy.

If she is with you, but is still posting pictures for attention, then she is asking herself if *you* are the best that *she* can get.

Most women can become drunk on social media attention. So, if you consider an LTR with a woman that is constantly seeking attention online, then you need to continue to exercise your sexual strategy, and date her non-exclusively until she abandons her open hypergamy.

A woman's sexual strategy is open hypergamy, and when she is seeking attention online, she is out playing on the ice,

trying to score a goal. Your sexual strategy as a man is unlimited access to unlimited women. Therefore, do not even consider monogamy until she abandons advertising herself. **Do not** take these women seriously. They are to be limited to plate or FWB status only.

Red Flag #14 - She was a sugar baby

In a book by author B Rob titled ‘*Salty*’, the author shares his excursion into sugar dating as a “Salt Daddy”. He also figured out how to identify if a woman has ever been looking for money in exchange for dating as a “sugar baby”.

You will need to search in her email for the term ‘seeking’ and see if there are any emails sent from the site in her past that show up. This will require that you look into her private life. But, if you are looking for LTR material, then you need to take this step to ensure that you aren’t going to make a whore a housewife. If she *was* a sugar baby, limit her to plate status only.

Red Flag #15 - Pathological liars

Everyone, women included, lie. Many women, however, can’t help but to lie pathologically. For some, their entire world is a house of cards, and they can’t even tell when they are speaking the truth or not. These women are not LTR material, because they aren’t trustworthy.

Fortunately, these types of women usually ‘out’ themselves over time because they can’t keep up with their own bullshit.

A girlfriend I had at 19 lied about everything and anything.

I was riding sport bikes, and she told me early on how she had a sport bike at her mom's house an hour away. Although strangely, it was never available for her to ride, or she had it locked up in storage. There was always a story about how she rode, and enjoyed the experience, but always made excuses about where the bike was.

I was becoming suspicious of her stories. Knowing it cost me \$9 to fill up the tank of my bike, I casually asked her how much it cost to top up her bike tank when she rode. She responded with \$25. Right *there* I knew she was a pathological liar, and many of her other stories collapsed shortly after that.

Pathological liars are dangerous, they will tell you they are on birth control, when they aren't. They'll lie about things that will put you, or your health, at risk. If you are attentive and poke at her stories, then these women are simple to spot.

Red Flag #16 - Baby rabies

This is an interesting term I came across after I got divorced and re-entered the dating pool around 39. I had this annoying feeling that most of the childless women in the dating pool were desperate to get married and have children. Some of them were so thirsty to get married and have kids, that they would even ask if that's what I wanted before asking me anything else.

Sometimes it was even in their opening message on a dating application. It felt like they were looking for a dutiful beta with sufficient provisioning ability, and decent genes to settle down with.

Women exhibiting desperation to get married and reproduce are not into you and will not support your mission. They will not complement your life, but will instead want to be the focus of your life.

Any women attempting to rush you into having kids and getting married, without allowing for a two-year vetting period, is a big red flag.

But, if you feel that you are simply an accessory to fulfilling her biological imperative to reproduce, or that she is counting her eggs every month as they dry up? She has baby rabies.

Move on and don't let her problems become your problem.

Many of these women put degrees and careers ahead of their prime child-bearing years. As they approach their mid-thirties, they grow desperate. Remember, men can capably father healthy children well into their forties. For women, their prime childbearing years decrease rapidly after the age of 30.

Red Flag #17 - Hissy fits

Some women never learned the social maturity required to process their emotions, so they resort to hissy fits to deal with their differences in a relationship.

When my daughter was 3, if something didn't go her way, she threw herself on the ground, face down, then kicked and punched with her limbs at the ground while screaming. This is the toddler version, and it's excusable in a child, because they don't know how to process their emotions with maturity when something doesn't work out for them, so they start kicking and screaming.

In an adult woman, hissy fits are an unacceptable red flag and come in many forms.

Rather than approaching the issue head on like an adult, she'll commonly start by passive aggressively going on social media to post something revealing and sexy, behave erratically, or make underhanded posts about you.

One says, "Hey fellas, I'm over here, and my man pissed me off; look at me and shower me with validation and attention." The other is a passive aggressive maneuver to shame or ridicule you, usually with some covert statement or meme.

Hissy fits cover a wide range and include, but aren't limited to, overtly stating something like: "Just leave my shit on the front porch" when things aren't going their way. Or using actions like hiring a male personal trainer you know she was fucking in the past, and posting a picture on social media of themselves together, with some trite caption about how, "This girl will get her body back," in an effort to push your buttons.

These outbursts by women are bad news, and I've noticed that there is often a correlation between her hissy fits and

daddy issues. I've seen fathers set logical, and reasonable boundaries for their daughters to preserve her value as a woman, and she broke them in a rebellious and dangerous way in protest.

For example, a traditional European father will often set limits on when his daughters can date, and in what cultures. A woman with daddy issues that can't respect the boundaries set by a man will go out with, and intentionally have plenty of unprotected sex with, men from cultures that she knows her father would be vehemently opposed to.

Deal with hissy fits head on and treat them as unacceptable behavior. Otherwise, you'll constantly deal with them in your relationship.

Also, **do not** argue with women. They will not let a thing like logic or reason get in the way of their emotional hissy fit. You set the boundary, then cut off all contact (called a soft next) with her for about four to five days to let her think about it.

Remember, attention is the coin of the realm for women, so when you remove it, they lose their mind and will usually automatically fall back in line. She will either comply, or it's "Goodbye."

Most women, because of their own solipsistic nature, will not recognize it as a "hissy fit," even if you spell it out for them. So be resolute. You will get out of life what you tolerate. Do not argue with her about her hissy fit.

Men are deductive, rational thinkers - women aren't. Therefore, a soft next allows you to return to the table with a boundary you set. If she doesn't like it? Show her the door.

A woman that has a genuine, burning desire for you, and is serious about sorting herself out, *will* do the work. A woman that isn't, will resist, make excuses, and will *constantly* test your boundaries as a man.

Red Flag #18 - Not being in control of the birth

In Rollo Tomassi's book, '*The Rational Male*' he outlines his "Iron Rules," and number five was: "Always be in control of the birth." As a man today, once your sperm leaves your balls, women make 100% of the decisions.

If you knock up the wrong woman, you could be on the hook for around 20-years as her personal ATM. NEVER, EVER trust a woman you are not in a properly vetted LTR with when she says, "It's okay, just go inside me, I can't get pregnant." You must have **100% certainty** that there is effective birth control in play. Oh, and for the record, birth control pills are *not* sufficient.

Many men have knocked up women who claimed to be on the birth control pill, only to discover she "accidentally" forgot to take them or wasn't even on them. Condoms (that you flush away afterwards), or an IUD, are your most reliable methods of birth control today. Remember, women lie. It's called birth control for a reason - so always be in control of it.

Red Flag #19 - Drama queens

All women, not just some, periodically crave for some form of drama. If they are bored, and there're no issues in your relationship, they will manufacture indignation to test you and create those “feels”. Drama queens choose random molehills to turn into mountains. This is also another form of a hissy fit.

I guarantee you will encounter drama with a woman at some point. But, if it appears more than once within the first three months of dating, or more than a weekly “thing” during your LTR, then she is flat out telling you that this drama will be a regular occurrence for life.

Buckle up buddy, you’ll be in for a roller coaster ride if you don’t put your foot down and use a “soft next” to maintain boundaries.

Manufactured indignation is really just a shit test, and it’s also about testing your frame as the dominant frame in a relationship. Remember, drama *will* happen with *all* women at some point. So, decide early on what you will, and more importantly what you won’t, tolerate. Alpha men with plenty of options will tolerate little to no drama, lesser men with few options will accept it as it comes.

Red Flag #20 - Addictions

Dependency to things, activities, or substances is a big red flag. Women that rely on alcohol, shopping, drugs, cigarettes, news, or reality TV to name some examples, can

be highly problematic to a man that is chasing excellence in his life.

Unhealthy addictions, if left unchecked, will dominate her life, her choices, and her conversations. Addicts, usually, become self-destructive. If it's affecting your life, then it has become an unhealthy addiction.

A woman who is addicted to a reality TV show will talk about the mindless drama between characters on the show non-stop. Alcoholics are always looking for their next drink, and anyone that's ever dated a woman that's addicted to anti-depressants knows how badly it affects her body weight and sex drive.

Don't let women make her addictive problems, your problems. Smart men do not get into an LTR with women that have addictions, it's **not** your job to save or cure them.

If they have acknowledged their addiction, and are working on their problems with a professional, good, let them. But keep her at arm's length as a plate until she has shown genuine progress for several months. Also, make sure that her addictive personality doesn't replace one addiction with another.

Conclusion

As I stated earlier, you can ignore my warnings about these red flags and get involved with these women. But, at some point, your life *will* become complicated and unnecessarily difficult.

As a man, it is incumbent on you to shoulder the burden of performance, and to chase excellence. In life, women can either become an anchor, or a sail. Look for women that are a complement to your life and that gladly fill your sails with wind and limit your interactions with anchors that hold you back.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- It's *your responsibility* to set, and *always enforce*, the boundaries that are meaningful to you.
- Never date, LTR, or wife-up a single mother. Neither the mother, nor the kids, will *ever* genuinely appreciate you for your sacrifices.
- If a woman *ever* becomes physically violent with you, then you **must** get the hell out of that relationship immediately. And if you have kids with her, then see an attorney ASAP.
- If your spidey senses are tingling and your gut is telling you something, then there's a reason why. Listen to it.
- A man who's chasing excellence and making his dent in the universe will have the options and self-respect to drop *any* woman who's complicating his life.

SINGLE MOTHERS

In the red flag chapter, I covered several warning signs that men should be aware of with women. However, this book wouldn't offer a useful roadmap for men unless I cover *why*. I'll explain why a relationship with a single mother often invites both drama, and unnecessary complexity, into a man's life.

I've had well over a thousand coaching calls with men, and the one common denominator that keeps repeatedly showing up, is that men dramatically complicate their lives by allowing single mothers into them.

Now, not *every single* mother is bad news. But, the reality is, they bring a *lot* of problems into men's lives that women without children simply don't.

When I got divorced at 39, after seven years with the same woman, I had shared custody of my four-year-old, and I did what most men typically did in that scenario. I looked around and found that most women in my age range had children in tow.

Most had several kids, and sometimes, each kid came from a different father.

I got involved with a single mother almost immediately. She was also recently divorced, pretty, fit, knew how to cook, she also had the typical post-divorce breast augmentation, and she had two kids in tow that were seven and ten when I met them. If you want to learn more about my personal experience, search YouTube for “entrepreneurs in cars and why men shouldn’t date single mothers.”

Some men would argue from experience that there are *dozens* of problems that come from relationships with single mothers. However, I’m only going to focus on the five I’ve seen most often.

They are, in no particular order:

- Cuckoldry,
- Responsibility without authority,
- The victim mindset,
- Financial issues,
- And re-prioritization.

Cuckoldry

When you take on the financial, parental, and emotional burden of raising another man’s children, you are, by definition, a cuckold. Some men would argue that if she is a widow, or he was a deadbeat father that disappeared from their lives, there is an exception. Well, there isn’t.

Regardless of how you want to rationalize it in your head - you are a cuck.

Society today encourages and celebrates cuckoldry. You'll often see articles titled: "The case for being a cuck." The truth is, it's nothing to celebrate.

They don't take on your last name, and they *definitely* don't possess your genetic legacy to pass down. These two points have historically been the biggest selling points to men for fatherhood. For most men, this is enough to enforce a firm "pass" rule on single mothers. But, many men *still* ignore the obvious problem and it is because they lack better options because of their own limited value.

To add insult to injury, women overwhelmingly get awarded primary parenting of their children the vast majority of the time, while men don't. So, if you are a divorced father, then you might end up spending more time parenting the children of *another man* than your own.

Responsibility without authority

Getting involved with a single mother often means that you will find yourself in a position where you have the same parental responsibilities as a biological father, but with *none* of the authority of a parent.

Shortly after she introduces you to her kids, she *will* expect you to "step up" and take on parenting duties.

It often starts with going out for dinner, and she brings her kids along for the first time. This is when you will be

expected to demonstrate that you can provide for Billy and Bobby too. You'll be on the hook with parental responsibility for birthdays, travel, holidays, ski trips, the beach, the list goes on.

You will fill the shoes of "Daddy" and your financial resources will certainly be warmly welcomed. But, at some point during a grievance, you *will* also eventually hear them say something like: "You are not my father! You can't tell ME what to do!"

They will be "our" kids when she needs you. However, they'll be "her" kids when you need to discipline them or enforce healthy boundaries.

Strangely, if you are a single father you will learn that, when your kids need something, your children are never "ours," but selectively "yours." Yet, most men discover that women want authority over kids, just without the responsibility that goes along with it.

Most men eventually hear her say something that reflects the mindset of: "Not my monkey, not my circus." There is a reason why some kids that grew up with a step-mother call her "Step-monster."

If the fact that you are being cucked as a man isn't enough to make you question your choice to get involved with a single mother, then expect to have responsibility, but with zero authority. Whereas, *she* will often take on little responsibility herself, while still seeking authority.

The victim mindset

Women are naturally solipsistic (after all, it is hard-wired into them). However, single mothers run a special gauntlet of mental gymnastics that they rationalize as normal. But, ultimately, it boils down to them adopting a victim mindset. They often brag on social media about how they are strong, independent, and “don’t need no man.” While simultaneously turning to the government for handouts, and/or their children’s father(s) for financial support.

I dated a lot of single mothers that would complain about the father of their children and often heard her use disparaging terms like: Loser, dumb, deadbeat, beta, or boring. If I would ask them why they married him, or had kids with him, their face would turn to stone as if to say, “How dare you hold me accountable for my own choices.”

Naturally, she didn’t own her choices. She was always pointing and sputtering at her ex-husband, her boss, her father, or the President. With the rare exception, she rarely looked in the mirror to take ownership for her results in life.

While I’ve only ever dated traditionally feminine looking women, I’ve never met a single mother that wasn’t a feminist.

To identify as a feminist, you must have an oppressor and, when it comes to feminist logic, *every woman is oppressed by default and, is therefore, a victim.*

The victim mindset requires her to be unhappy, unlucky, and oppressed. When I started dating these women, I found out

first-hand how hard done by she claimed she and her children were, and it was *always* someone else's fault.

Her children also adopt this mindset (because kids naturally learn their behaviors from their parents). So, if something doesn't go their way, they will emotionally manipulate their mother, and have her side with their bratty behavior. *Even* when you are right, and they require boundary enforcement and discipline.

Most men love playing the role of "Captain Save-a-Hoe." And, since most single mom's *love* being a damsel in distress, men are all too happy to step-up, and swoop in to protect "her honor."

Financial issues

When it comes to money, women choose jobs that pay less than men the vast majority of the time. Even though there are more women in the workforce than ever before, men earn the vast majority of wealth by choosing higher paying professions. Most men discover that single mothers gravitate to professions like: Nursing, Teaching, Dental Hygienist, Daycare Work, and Hairdressing.

Few women take on jobs that pay over six figures. So, when I was dating them, I found it difficult to meet a single mom that earned as much as I did.

For the most part, they aren't driving expensive cars or living in mortgage-free homes.

Most single mothers have debt, and often, also have nothing to their name (except the children in tow with another man's last name attached to them).

You will be called upon to pay for her life and that of her children's. I've had several coaching calls with men where they paid off her debts, bought her kid's cars, and paid for their college tuition. It's common for uninitiated men to make themselves less, so she and her children can become more.

Reprioritization

In general, men are all too happy to abandon their purpose in life to fulfill a woman's. Unfortunately, when you get involved with a single mother, you will *never* be her priority.

Most men find their place in a pecking order behind: Her needs, her kid's needs, her work issues, her wine drinking nights with her "sisters," her salsa nights out, and then her cat. If you get involved with a single mother, you'll never be *anywhere near* the top of her priorities.

You will often be expected to make your hobbies and passions less of a priority, so she can focus on hers. There's an old soundbite that calls women "Dream killers." The truth is, most men that get into relationships with single mothers will be required to shift their priorities around for her and her kids.

The BIG risk

There is an often-overlooked risk with dating a single mother, *especially* if you have a young daughter, and she has one or more boys. The biggest risk to young girls is being physically violated through non-blood related relatives in the household. This is far more common with girls, but it does happen to boys too.

There is hard wiring in our DNA, as a function of survival and for genetic diversity, to avoid sexual activity with blood related relatives. It's why brothers and sisters are sexually repelled by one another.

There are many women that have been raped, or sexually assaulted, by step-brothers or step-fathers during their childhood.

This is a risk that you *need* to be aware of if you are a divorced dad, more-so if your ex-wife isn't particularly good at picking men. If she invites characters into your daughter's life, with step-brothers in tow, then you *must* find a way to have that conversation with your children's mother.

When dating a single mother - might - make sense

I've often been challenged to present a situation where dating a single mother might make sense. I can only think of one.

You've already got a kid, so you've secured your family name and DNA. Her child is about the same age and sex as yours, so they can interact and relate with one another and, most importantly, there is no risk of her being violated.

Your frame also naturally infers 100% authority in the relationship. She isn't a feminist, and takes ownership for her life, and holds her kids accountable to my standards. She is, at a minimum, financially equal to me. She is a complement to my life, and certainly not the focus. She'd also have to be attractive, have a genuine burning desire for me, and also get on well with my child.

To be perfectly honest, I think you'd have much better luck finding a Leprechaun with a pot of gold at the end of a rainbow, than finding someone who can comfortably meet every condition.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- You don't want to be a cuck. You might genuinely love her kids "Like they're your own." But, ultimately, they will *never ever* be yours and your bloodline will not continue if you don't already have kids.
- They'll never, ever, *ever* respect you in the way that you want them to. Even if you adopted them. Because, deep down in their core, they'll *always* know that you "Aren't their father."
- While it's a cold truth that a woman's kids will *always* be a higher priority than you, with single mothers, you'll be even *further* down in her list of priorities. Until she wants something from you that is.
- The victim mindset, along with unhealthy doses of shaming and guilt-tripping, is the de-facto method-

of-operation for single mothers. If it's *all* the bio father's fault, and she can't own up to *anything* that she did to screw up the relationship, then you can bet your ass she'd say the same about you to the next guy.

- The vast majority of sexual-violations are perpetrated by close family members. If you have a young daughter, then it's incumbent on *you* to make sure she stays as safe as possible and make sure she feels comfortable enough to tell you *anything*. So lay the groundwork in making her feel comfortable enough to confide in you ASAP.

HIRE SLOWLY BUT FIRE QUICKLY

In 2003, I was working for Canada's largest collection agency where I was well into my fourth year of service as a manager to a team doing \$2 Million in receivables. My staff were well trained and loyal, which meant our recovery rates were incredible.

Earlier that year, I had a new VP assigned to our group, a French-Canadian guy from a very rough background. I remember him telling us stories about his childhood and how his father shot himself in the face.

He clashed with me from the get-go. He would publicly disrespect me in front of my staff, and make me run detailed reports, which he never looked at, for his own personal amusement.

After a few months of putting up with his disrespect, something snapped inside of me, and I let him know what I thought of him. *This* is where I learned the valuable lesson that people get hired for their skills, and resume, but get fired for fit.

Towards the end of the year, only three weeks after I moved into my first house with a big mortgage, a manager's salary needed to come off the books for corporate cost cutting.

Guess who was selected by my loving VP to go home? Me.

The initial burn of being handed that severance package hurt. But, this push inspired me to go create my own business which helped to settle consumer credit card debt, and I will be forever thankful for that.

It was about a decade later when I finally learned the lesson to hire slowly and fire quickly in my own business. You can use this idea with women in your life, employees, business partners, and even friends.

Take your time vetting people. Get to know them and study their behavior. The choices someone makes, and how they behave, should *always* trump what they tell you if there is a conflict between actions and words. I.e. Don't listen to what they say, watch what they do.

If your Spidey senses tingle, listen to your intuition. It knows something is up. Intuition is the little voice whispering in your ear, and it often only becomes a loud shout when it's too late and you are going to experience a train wreck.

My single mommy experience

Shortly after my divorce, I got involved with a single mom of two boys, and for the first few months it was great fun dating her. After a few short months, she started suggesting

that I meet her boys. This was when my intuition started whispering to me, telling me it wasn't a good idea.

But, I ignored it.

Of course, my intuition only became a shout when her older son manufactured indignation. He started throwing a bad hissy fit, yelling at me, and calling me names, because I enforced a boundary with them they didn't like eight months after I met them. Their mother sided with the bratty behavior, completely ignoring the fact that I was right.

In hindsight, I should have limited my time in that relationship to just her and let it run its course. I *never* should have become involved with her kids. I should have also quickly fired her ass and ended the relationship with her at that point and then moved on. But, I let the torture drag on for nearly two more years. I also endured several similar incidents because I, again, ignored my intuition. It ended in a colossal train wreck for me with a severe case of "oneitis," when she cheated on me (after I tried to enforce boundaries with her kids again).

The business partner experience

Shortly after I took my severance package and went home, I partnered with a friend of mine I used to work with to offer debt relief services to consumers. He still had a job that paid him very well, so I was doing almost all of the work and he was taking half the money out of the business account every month.

I was working exceptionally hard to make it work; we were making about \$30,000 a month for a business with only two staff, and no overhead, so it initially felt amazing.

That was until I realized that my partner had a drug problem – and was a control freak.

My intuition was telling me to get out. But, once again, I didn't listen. It wasn't until eight months later when it became a literal shout out in my head. And only when my business partner was screaming at me over my insistence for him to quit his job and join me full time. In a full-blown state of hysteria, he began yelling at me that he "never put me on the corporate books," and that I technically "don't exist" in the business.

Initially, it ended *very* badly. But, I picked myself back up quickly and with my brother, formed what would become Canada's most successful debt settlement company.

Anytime I've gotten into trouble with women, employees, business partners, or anything else, it was because **I didn't listen to my intuition and fire that person from my life quick enough.**

With women, friends, employees, and business associates, **always** hire slowly and fire fast. You *must* be fastidious with your time, and who you allow into your inner circle.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- It's incumbent on you to take your time with the vetting period. The "honeymoon phase" can apply in other areas of life – not just in relationships.
- Be vigilant and observe if someone's actions match their words. Ignore what they say and watch what they do as words can be empty, while actions speak the truth.
- If you find that there's an inconsistency between their words and their actions, then you **must** be prepared to cut them out of your life as swiftly as possible. Make sure you've done your legal homework when it comes to business partners (or LTRs/Marriages), then execute that strategy with military precision and speed.
- **And finally, listen to your gut.** It's your brain telling you that things *definitely* aren't adding up.

LOOKS, MONEY, STATUS, AND GAME

Sadly, when it comes to women, men aren't taught the importance of looks, money, status, and Game.

Instead, men are taught that he must become less, so she can become more. To "Just be yourself," and that just being a "Nice Guy" is enough to attract high-quality women into your life.

Unfortunately, women don't work like this. They never have, and they never will.

Women possess an evolved firmware that selects for the best-looking man, who has sufficient resources, and status. Not because they are picky gold diggers, but because they need to ensure that they pass on the best genes and can retain access to sufficient resources for the survival of their offspring. Therefore, men view women as beauty objects; women view men as success objects.

Most men do not understand what drives attraction in women, and the vast majority of men are getting terrible, or no results with women they are attracted to.

This leads to frustration, resentment, and ultimately quitting. Women are born; men must be made.

Women expect men to develop useful skills, be masculine, strong, and acquire resources that a woman and her offspring can benefit from. Her sexual strategy is hypergamy and, as a result, it continuously asks her if you are the best she can do.

By this point, the quitters will protest and scream, “See! All she wants is your money, muscles, and when she is done, she will go fuck another guy and break your heart. This isn’t worth my time!” That’s a loser’s mindset.

There is a lot more to creating and maintaining *genuine, burning* desire from women.

Most men behave like women are a scarce commodity, placing them high up on a pedestal while worshipping them. Yet, nothing could be further from the truth. High value men who are maxed out on their looks, money, status, and Game are *scarce*. Conversely, attractive women are *everywhere*. Don’t believe me? Search the hashtag #fitnessgirl on Instagram, and there are *millions* of results, with the vast majority of them, objectively, being nines and tens.

Looks

Looks matter, there is no way around this. Based on their usage patterns, women’s behavior on dating apps show that they find 80% of men unattractive.

She isn't basing this on what he does for a living, his bio, sense of humor, competency, skills, or even location. It's based almost entirely on one profile picture and, for the most part, men are *horrible* at projecting a strong masculine appearance with professional-grade photography.

When it comes to looks, women overwhelmingly prefer tall men, with high testosterone cues like muscles and a chiseled jawline. Given the choice, almost all women would rather fuck a bald and muscular 6'5" Dwayne Johnson, over a full head of hair 5'4" Michael J. Fox.

However, with that being said, men need to learn how to max out their looks. Because, even with his height deficit, Michael J. Fox *still* had an abundance of women in his life by maxing out in many other areas.

The first step is, apart from not quitting, is to be at peace with yourself with what you can't change and max out what you *can* change

A man that is 5'4" can't do much about his height. But studies show that 70% of a man's attractiveness is based on the appearance of upper body strength, with height and leanness accounting for only 10%.

When women are shown images of men's bodies in studies and asked to rate attractiveness, they subconsciously, but overwhelmingly, seek a 1.62 ratio of shoulder to hip width. Yet, most men in developed Western countries are fat.

You can accomplish a "V taper" along with a thin waist and visible abs, by eating right and build broad shoulders, large

traps, and a muscular back, by lifting right. This is an area that almost all men can max out in that will *significantly* improve their overall look.

Sadly, most men don't track something as basic as their weight, let alone their shoulder to waist ratio.

If you are out of shape and carry belly fat, then you *must* make self-care a priority. There is simply no excuse for being fat and out of shape. If you want an enjoyable experience with women and want to be spoiled for choice, then you must do the work to live in a strong, masculine, and healthy body.

REFINE YOUR STYLE

Style is another area where men can improve looks dramatically. You should wear clothes that fit you well and complement your physique. Most men show they don't understand style by wearing clothes that don't fit properly.

In my early twenties, when I first worked in office spaces, I used to buy cheap off-the-rack dress shirts and suits and I looked terrible in clothes, but great naked. Most cheap clothing is loose and baggy on me because most of the population is fat - and that's how they manufacture it.

It wasn't until a girl suggested that I should get tailored shirts made that I started getting more looks and compliments from women. When I splurged and bought my first tailored suit, it was the icing on the cake and my girlfriend at the time became exceptionally jealous of the attention that I was getting when we went to formal events.

I use this example to impress upon you the importance, and significance of, wearing clothes that fit *properly*. And how dramatically they can improve your looks - *especially* if you've put in the work for a nice physique.

You don't need to buy expensive tailored suits. Instead, keep an eye out for clothes marked "fitted" with a small percentage of the fabric blend from spandex to ensure a good fit. For more on style, read Tanner Guzy's excellent book 'The appearance of power'.

Hair plays a big role with looks, yet I constantly find men with messy hair. Or worse, balding men holding desperately onto their disappearing strands of hair with bad haircuts. If you possess a thick, full head of hair, then take a look. Find a popular Hollywood heartthrob, that has similar features to you, and get a good hair stylist to fix your hair.

HAIR Loss

When it comes to hair loss, you need to understand that the 25% of men with a hereditary predisposition to baldness, start losing their hair by age 21. By age 35, 66% of men start experiencing hair loss, and by age 50, 85% of men display significantly thinner hair on their head.

Men spend *way* too much time and money looking for ways to hide, or slow down, their hair loss. Do *not* be that guy.

If you've a hereditary predisposition to hair loss, surrender to it, because you *are* going to lose it. The gene usually skips a generation; my dad has his hair, his father did too, and so does my younger brother. My grandfather on my mum's

side, however, was bald. So, my middle brother and I are balding.

I started noticing signs of hair loss around the age of 21 when I would take my motorcycle helmet off and notice a half dozen strands of hair in the helmet, but I kept a full head of hair until my early thirties. By my mid-thirties, I was using clippers on level one because there was no hairstyle that could hide it. Once I hit my early forties, I finally started shaving my head.

Throughout my life, I've been losing my hair. Yet, I've *never* had a problem with women. I always had a look that they liked. I've learned that there is a good part of the female population that just *loves* the look of a masculine man with a shaved head. Dwayne Johnson, Vin Diesel, Bruce Willis, and Jason Statham are all balding men in Hollywood that have a look that women are not only drawn to, but in many cases prefer. Because *they own it*.

You will need to make sure you've got a masculine physique if you are balding, or bald. If you look fat or scrawny - and balding - it's a really bad image. No woman pines for characters in Hollywood that remind them of George Costanza.

Surrender to it and adopt an image that suits your stage of hair loss. There is nothing on the market today, that I am aware of, that will truly reverse male pattern baldness. There are band-aid solutions, but they aren't even mildly successful at slowing down hair loss, and some are so pathetic, they aren't fooling anyone.

PICTURE PERFECT

There's a great misconception from quitters that will lead you to believe that you can't do *anything* about your looks, and that women only ever date handsome men. Yet, if you Google "Joe Manganiello transformation," you'll find a picture of a scrawny-looking high-school dork in bad glasses. A dork that transformed himself into a buff, handsome stud that landed a role as a male stripper in the movie 'Magic Mike.'

Lifting weights, eating right, improving your personal hygiene, and having a well-thought-out image can do wonders. It's called "looks maxing," and it's dressed in overalls, and looks like work, so most men avoid it. Therefore, making excuses as to why they can't.

The great equalizer in looks is photography. When it comes to pictures for dating apps or social media, definitely hire a photographer. There is an oversupply of young photographers you can hire for less than \$100 on Craigslist, alongside Air B 'n' B experiences for 2-hrs, to do a professional photo shoot in. Bring along three tailored outfits, ask the photographer to select some suitable locations, dress sharp, and then let them work their magic. Many men significantly improved their results with women on dating apps with superior photography.

Surrender to what you can't control; max out on what you can.

Money

There's a prevailingly lazy notion that money is evil, and that there is only so much money moving around out there, and that it's in the offshore accounts of all the rich and greedy men. Not only is that a lie, it's also a loser's mindset.

Money is, simply put, nothing more than a store of value. If you acquire it, then that's because you've added value to the lives of others. Bill Gates has acquired a massive amount of money because he solved massive global software issues with Microsoft, and also helped bring computing to the masses.

Throughout history, women have *always* preferred men with money. Women love a man that can "Make it rain."

Even with your style and physique locked down, your looks will only get you so far if you haven't got any money. You should aim to be in the top 10% of income earners where you live. As you get older, the significance of wealth increases because, like it or not, your looks will decrease. Even ugly, short, fat, bald men can have sex with really hot women if they have enough status and money. It is the *ultimate* equalizer for unattractive men.

While stable employment is still the primary objective of most men, a basic J.O.B. (Just Over Broke) isn't enough anymore for most men today.

Women are graduating with more degrees and earning more. But men aren't and today there are more women earning more money than *any* other time in history. And because

hypergamy never seeks its own economic level, women *always* want to date up. So, it's men with the wealth that get some of the best results with hot women.

When women ask what you do for a living, she doesn't particularly care about the "what" part. She is merely trying to be polite and curious about your status. More importantly, what she's *really* trying to do is assess how much money you earn.

However, the status component of your source of income does have some relevance. For example, a man that owns his own plumbing company might earn 50% more than a junior lawyer in a law firm. But hypergamy isn't all about money, it's about "the best that she can do." And if her hypergamy thinks a lawyer is more valuable to her than a plumber when introducing her new boyfriend to her family at Thanksgiving, then the lawyer wins.

A rich man can turn a broke woman's life around. But you should understand that a rich woman won't give a broke man the time of day (unless he's seriously hot, and even then it'd only be for sex). To complicate female nature even further, women will overlook a poor man in his twenties with ambition, and a plan (because he has "potential"). However, they have *truly little* patience for a poor man in his forties with ambition and a plan.

To have options in life you need money. Yet, most men live paycheck to paycheck.

"FUCK You" MONEY

Every man in the West should ideally aim to be a millionaire by the time they are 30, or 40 at the latest. This isn't to beg for pussy, or for female validation. It's for you. So, you can do what you want, when you want, and have the confidence to tell people to "Fuck off!" that you don't want to listen to. Which is an *incredibly* powerful position to be in - in *any* area of life.

Money creates freedom and options. Women are merely a by-product and they should *never* be the main reason that you continue to chase excellence.

Entrepreneurship, C-suite jobs (so CEO, CFO, etc.), high-end sales, and professional designations (think Doctors, Lawyers, Pilots, etc.), are the main categories where you can find the top 10% of earners.

My preference is entrepreneurship, because it can be the quickest path to wealth, with the most personal freedom. But, being an entrepreneur isn't for everyone, it can take years to get the role of a CFO, a Doctor, Pilot, or Salesman that sells high-end real estate or yachts.

The ROI on investing in yourself is absolutely *massive*, and in my view at least, is *well* worth the work.

The point I'm making, is that a factory job might have been enough for your grandfather after he returned from the war and then married your grandmother. But in today's world, that's not going to lead to a higher level of self-actualization for most men and, truthfully, it's not enough for today's women.

However, I want to re-emphasize here that while the point of creating wealth *isn't* to get women, you will naturally have access to more and more attractive women by acquiring wealth. As an intelligent man of vision and purpose, you must set boundaries and ultimately decide what kind of access you will permit women to have to *your* money.

Status

For men, status is mostly a by-product of wealth and influence, and we touched upon this aspect briefly when I was discussing money. Women, on the other hand, can achieve status with a decent physique, one million thirsty beta Instagram followers, and *still* be broke.

Part of the evaluation process women go through, when their hypergamous hindbrain is evaluating if you are the best that she can do, is assessing your status and influence.

Throughout history, men of high status have always had abundant access to high-quality women. In many cases, influential men of high status had harems of women.

Men of status are so desirable and in demand, that most women would rather share such a man with other women, compared to being saddled with a faithful loser.

When women get with a 5'9" Dan Bilzerian, they are happy to share him, because he is a successful, wealthy alpha, with a thirty million plus following on Instagram. The man has status and so has an unlimited supply of smoking hot women who are much younger than him, who are willingly

waiting in line for a chance to fuck him and be in one of his Instagram posts.

Status will get doors opened for you, meetings with important people, preferential treatment, and yes, access to attractive women.

Even ugly men of status do well with women. Mick Jagger, the lead singer of the Rolling Stones, was as ugly as they come. Yet, as a lead singer of a high status band, women didn't care about his looks because of his status. As legend has it, he once left a date with Angelina Jolie no less, to have a one-night stand with Farrah Fawcett.

I use these extreme examples to impress upon you the importance of status, and Instagram is just one way of hundreds where high status can be signaled.

An average looking 21-year-old man, who has just started promoting fitness courses from his business, can signal high status by having a good Instagram following of 20,000. This allows him to garner the attention and praise of 2,000 people with every Instagram post as he goes about the business of promoting his products.

However, when it comes to signaling higher status, that won't work for a 45-year-old man. For him to have the same measure of status in a woman's hindbrain, he must show that he has acquired wealth and has a more seasoned reach and status.

STATUS CAN'T BE FADED, IT MUST BE EARNED

When I'm with my girlfriend and a random guy approaches me that profusely thanks me for saving his life with my videos, it reminds her she is with a man of status.

I also show status with the Japanese chef that runs the small, high-end, sushi boutique restaurant that I frequent. When I call on the speakerphone to pick up an order, he always recognizes my voice before I mention my name, he calls me Mr. Cooper, and is very respectful. It's even more obvious when I visit the restaurant in person when I'm on a date to eat in, because I always get treated like a VIP.

When I'm at the gas station, with my girl in the passenger seat, filling up my R8 Spyder, and people approach me to ask about or compliment my car, I signal status.

Listen, you don't need to be a Rockstar or a billionaire to have status. All you need to do is make money and have people show respect and admiration for you. You get to decide how you want to signal status, but the more status you have, the more doors that will open up for you and, ultimately, the better you will do with women.

Game

Game is defined as you confidently using your attributes, characteristics, and overall personality to win the affection of women. It's about playing, and optimizing the cards you're dealt, and winning with women. It's also about turning your positives into swagger and your negatives into charm.

Game, when distilled, is about knowing what women respond positively to.

Pick Up Artists (or PUAs) will tell you that Game is the great equalizer when it comes to attracting women. If you haven't read the 2005 edition of '*The Game*' by Neil Strauss, then I strongly suggest you do. Neil isn't particularly good looking, and wasn't rich at the time of writing the book, but the techniques he uses *clearly* proves that Game works.

Game matters, but if you haven't got looks, money, or status to go with Game, then you will only ever get so far with it. Even the legendary "Mystery" in Strauss' book ended up with a debilitating case of "oneitis" for a woman because all he had was high-level Game.

You can use Game to get some success when cold approaching pretty women, while getting a number to set up a date. But, to be *truly* effective at Game, then you must also be Red Pill aware. Most PUAs have Game, but not all PUAs are Red Pill aware. Game without any Red Pill awareness is like owning a Ferrari, but without an engine.

To properly cover Game, with a Red Pill lens applied, requires several books. Beyond Neil Strauss' book above, notable reads are:

1. '*The Rational Male*' book series by Rollo Tomassi, which covers the mindset and psychology behind Game.
2. '*The Mystery Method*', by Mystery.
3. '*The Art of Seduction*', by Robert Greene.

When it comes to looks, money, status, and Game, some will try to convince you there is an order of importance to these but, in my view, there isn't.

A man should do his best to max himself out in every area. One area is no more important than the other.

They are synergistic and create a compounding effect as you improve in all areas. At the end of the day, the pursuit of excellence in these areas, should be for yourself, *not* for the goal of getting women.

Women should only ever be a by-product of looks, money, status, and Game. Remember, women should *never* be the focus of your life, only a complement to it.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- Men that do the work to put themselves into the most desirable top 20% of men have, by far, the greatest chances of sleeping with the vast majority of women. So, put a conscious effort into improving your physique, your style, and how you carry yourself. It'll pay dividends down the line.
- Are you losing your hair? Who gives a fuck? Own that shit and make it work *for you*. Guess what? It's only a problem if you let it be one.
- Being wealthy affords you the financial security in life to tell people, or other opportunities, that aren't offering any value to you, to "Fuck Off". Money has

an inherent value that allows you to pursue different options or enjoy experiences that you previously could only have dreamed about before.

- Go make your own recognizable dent in the universe and positively elevate your status to “world class-level” in whatever field you specialize in.
- While you don’t *have* to be an extrovert to be good at Game, although that certainly doesn’t hurt, you do need to build up a solid frame of genuine confidence that women can, quite literally, see you exude from across a crowded room. Are you being playful with women? Are you playfully teasing them and busting their, metaphorical, balls? Are you being your unapologetically authentic self around them? Are you only rewarding them with the value that your undivided attention brings because they’ve *earned it*? If not, then go and **Do. The. Work.**

MANAGE YOUR ENDOCRINE SYSTEM

Disclaimer: This book is not intended as a substitute for the medical advice of a licensed physician. The reader should regularly consult a licensed physician in matters relating to their health, particularly with respect to any symptoms that may require diagnosis or medical attention.

The male endocrine system is an extraordinarily complex collection of hormone-producing glands that regulate metabolism, growth, development, tissue function, sexual function, reproduction, sleep, mood, and many other functions.

The primary hormone men should be aware of tracking as they age is their testosterone levels. Because, even in a healthy male, your levels **will** drop somewhere between 1-2% per year from the age of 30 onwards (and this is in a best-case scenario).

This process in men is known as “andropause.” Unlike a woman’s menopause, which is an immediate decline in her optimal hormones. The process in men takes *decades* and, for many men, is hardly noticeable.

Declining testosterone levels is a genuine issue for men for a bunch of reasons. These include:

- Your lean muscle mass decreases,
- Body fat levels increases,
- Mental clarity decreases,
- Sexual function decreases,
- Bone density decreases,
- Energy decreases,
- And the risk of some diseases increases.

Optimal testosterone levels in men are directly connected to living an optimal life. And note the word “optimal”, which *isn’t* the same as “normal.”

It’s my belief that men should track their levels starting at the age of 25, and then every subsequent year, until the blood panels show the need for exogenous testosterone supplementation.

Some men will try to shame you for using Testosterone Replacement Therapy (or TRT), but understand that they are just jealous because **you** will do better in life. Hate *never* comes from above, only from people beneath you. People never get jealous of losers.

Once you start treatment, you'll track it about 2-3 times a year under the supervision of a TRT doctor.

For me, it was around the age of 43 that I noticed the following symptoms:

- Low energy,
- Moodiness,
- An inability to focus,
- A lack of morning wood,
- A lower libido,
- Less strength,
- Muscle wasting,
- More body fat,
- And far less motivation.

I knew something was up, saw how TRT improved the lives of several of my friends, and then found a local doctor that specialized in TRT. When I ran my full blood panel, my levels, according to government tables, were within the “normal” ranges for my age. Thankfully, my doctor didn’t treat numbers. Instead, he treated the symptoms I described above.

Optimal versus normal

Nobody wants to be “normal.” As a man chasing excellence, you want to optimize every area of your life. A good TRT doctor will treat your *symptoms* to optimize you to the levels you had around the age of 30.

It's important to note that I am not talking about reaching the super physiological levels that a competitive bodybuilder aims for. Their exogenous testosterone dosages will be 4-10 times higher than what a TRT doctor will prescribe; abusing testosterone **will** eventually lead to health problems down the road.

Again, you are aiming for the optimal levels you had around the age of 30. Most TRT doctors will prescribe between 80 to 200 mg of testosterone per week and then adjust your dosage based on the results of your blood work.

A full blood panel, in most places in the world, will cost you around \$150 and is *well* worth the investment in your long-term health. A full blood panel will give you a factual baseline from which to begin your health optimization strategy from.

My TRT protocol

I'm currently prescribed 100mg of testosterone cypionate per week and 1000 IU of Human Chorionic Gonadotropin (or HCG) weekly.

My blood panels also revealed that I needed to attend to a few other minor areas, which my TRT doctor has been extremely helpful with. He recommended supplements that have had a noticeable impact on my overall health.

I **strongly** suggest doing this under the supervision of a licensed medical doctor that specializes in optimizing male hormones. Some men will try to save money, and do this

themselves, and get their testosterone from an underground lab in Asia, or their “bro” from the gym. But you never really know what you are getting, it’s potency, and you won’t have a licensed doctor guiding you. To me, the cost savings simply aren’t worth the risk.

I’ve already explained the merits of optimal testosterone. However, one downside of introducing exogenous testosterone into your body is that your own natural production shuts down once your body detects healthy levels again. That means your testicles will stop, or reduce, producing testosterone, sperm, and some other master hormones (like Pregnenolone, etc.).

Some men do fine with just testosterone supplementation. But I found that within four weeks of starting TRT treatment, I didn’t like the contraction (or aching) of my testicles. Some brain fog returned, and my orgasms weren’t quite as enjoyable since sperm production was reduced. So, my doctor added HCG to my protocol, and I felt like myself again after a couple of weeks.

Some men seem to do better with HCG in their protocol, as we have Luteinizing Hormone receptors throughout our body. It keeps your testes full and functioning, pumping out your standard explosive loads. HCG is also useful if you want to maintain fertility to father children.

How to boost testosterone naturally

There are a lot of products on the market that claim to boost testosterone, and always seem to cost a fortune, yet do little

to nothing. Save your money when it comes to testosterone boosters.

There are two ways to optimize testosterone naturally. The first is to remove certain habits or compounds from your life. The second way is with some vitamins and supplements that help your body produce testosterone.

REDUCE STRESS

Stress increases cortisol, and cortisol has a heavy negative impact on your body's ability to optimize its endocrine system naturally. For most men, it's either stressful jobs, or the women in their lives creating the stress. Therefore, find ways to reduce, or remove, stress where possible.

REDUCE SCREEN TIME AND BLUE LIGHT

Screens emit a blue light which disrupts our circadian rhythm and sleep patterns. Either wear blue light blocking glasses at night, or cut out screen time three hours before bed. Now use that time to read or do something else away from any screens so you can get a full night's sleep. Get 6-8 hours of restful sleep as your body repairs itself when sleeping - which includes testosterone production and other growth hormones. Your body *needs* to rest and recover more than you realize.

REMOVE PROCESSED FOODS

If the 2.4 million years of human history were broken down into 24-hrs on a clock, we've been eating meat for almost 24-hrs, wheat for six minutes, and processed foods for four seconds. Get your nutrition from a variety of greens and

animal proteins. Studies have shown processed foods to disrupt your endocrine system, so avoid them wherever possible and stay away from extreme diets that restrict variety.

REDUCE BODY FAT

Men today are fatter than ever, and excess body fat negatively affects testosterone production, and compounds the problem further because excess fat supports the aromatase function in the body. That is, the natural conversion of testosterone to estrogen increases. The more body fat you have, the more testosterone you will convert into estrogen, and it's why you see so many obese men with visible breasts today.

ADD VITAMIN D3

People living north or south of the tropics cannot manufacture enough vitamin D from sunlight, and the problem worsens in the winter months with less sunlight. The government recommends 1000 IU a day of vitamin D, but that's too low for most people; I need about 5,000 to 7,000 IU a day to even get my blood labs to show optimal levels. Vitamin D is critical in many bodily functions, including testosterone production.

Vitamin D needs the help of fats or oils to be absorbed into the bloodstream, so any vitamin D spray that is oil-based works best. However, if you only have access to tablet forms of D3, take it *after* you have a meal. The oils from the food will help aid the breakdown of the D3 tablets into the bloodstream.

It's important to note that it's possible to take too much D3, leading to a state of toxicity. While this may require sustained dosages as high as 40,000iu per day for some people, for others, it may require considerably less. This is why I *strongly* recommend that you get your blood panel done so you have an accurate baseline level to work from.

One of the by-products of higher D3 levels in the blood is calcium. This excess calcium has a tendency to be deposited in the arteries, where it can build up and calcify. In turn, ultimately risking a blockage in the affected artery if left long enough, which could be fatal.

Therefore, if you plan on taking 5,000iu a day (or more), then you **must** have a look at taking 200 **micrograms** of Vitamin K2 MK7 for every 5,000iu of D3. The MK7 variant of K2 is the most effective at working alongside D3. K2-MK7 directs the additional calcium into your bones (where it's needed most), and away from your arteries. A dosage of around 100 micrograms of K2-MK7 per 2,000iu of D3 is a sensible start.

Editor's note: Based on where I live, I take 16,000iu of D3 alongside 600 micrograms of K2 MK7 every day. And I get my blood panels done every 6-months so I can track how well I'm optimizing my levels. Suffice to say that, for me at least, there's been a *direct* correlation between my D3 levels and my Testosterone levels in *every* blood panel for the last two years.

It's so important, I also give my young kids some apple flavored D3+ K2 MK7 spray every morning. One spray

totaling 800iu for spring and summer, and two sprays totaling 1,600iu during autumn and wintertime.

In short: Don't underestimate the importance of Vitamin D3 in naturally improving your T-levels.

AVOID ELECTROMAGNETIC FIELDS (EMF)

Electromagnetic frequencies have been shown to disrupt the endocrine system, and mitochondria. These are emitted all around us, all day from our cell phone, tablets, and laptops. Try to minimize your exposure to microwave (cell signals), Wi-Fi, and Bluetooth as much as possible.

Put a timer on your Wi-Fi router power outlet to shut it off while you sleep and keep all electronics or screens out of your bedroom. If you use a laptop, it's often sitting right on top of your testes, so get an EMF blocking pad to eliminate exposure. Also keep your cell phone out of your pant pockets, or away from the body at all times.

ADD THE FOLLOWING SUPPLEMENTS

The following vitamins are useful in helping the body optimize its own testosterone production: A, B, C, E, Zinc, and Boron. Studies have also proven that ginger extract and Ashwagandha naturally help improve your sleep.

In conclusion

Testosterone is what makes us a man. It's why a healthy male has three times the upper body strength as a female, it's what makes us aggressive, and rise to life's challenges.

We have seen a dramatic decline in testosterone levels in men over the last 50-years, and the subsequent rise of weaker, softer, and more agreeable men in society.

Environmental estrogens in food, toiletries, drinks, and beers are being consumed in record numbers. Compound into that, the constant bombardment of EMF on your body in large cities everywhere you go, terrible diets, inactivity, and people's addictions to their blue light screens. Combined together, it explains why we've seen the general weakening of the Western male.

Simply put, without healthy testosterone levels you will never operate at an optimal level as a man. Make monitoring your levels habitual. It will be a competitive advantage when navigating a world that is slowly making most men weaker, slower, and dumber.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- Testosterone doesn't just fuel your sex drive. It also governs many vital functions within your body. So, increasing it is **vital** to your own physical, mental, and emotional well-being.
- Do absolutely *everything* you can to optimize your testosterone levels naturally first. It might surprise you just how much you can raise them using just consistency and self-discipline.

- Your T-levels might come back within the “normal” range. But that range might only be normal if you’re 60+ years of age. Remember, get a competent doctor to treat your *symptoms* (not your number).
- Therefore, not all doctors are created equal in this area. Do your homework and shop around for a doctor who has real experience in this field.
- Going onto TRT is a *lifelong* commitment as your body will stop making testosterone naturally as your T-levels increase.
- Check your medical insurance (if applicable to where you live) to see if it covers TRT. If not, you must factor in the ongoing cost of private TRT treatment.

MANAGE THE FCKS YOU GIVE

When I was young, we played a lot of player-versus-player video games. There was a popular one called Mortal Kombat, and they all operated on the same concept. You started with 100% on your life bar and as you battle, each hit you took reduced your life until it was 0% and you'd die by some outrageous fatality resulting in massive carnage.

Life isn't much different. Essentially, it's about us taking hits all day long, draining our energy, attention, and resources until we hit zero. Unfortunately, most people don't value the energy they give away and they freely dispense it like it's an unlimited resource, and this is a **big** mistake.

Many people today see the barrage of hate I get for the truth I reveal in my videos, and they ask me how I handle it. Often my response is: "You need to learn to give zero fucks."

We all, by design, have a limited amount of energy that we can allocate to our daily lives. Everything we do takes time and resources. Our job, kids, friends, events, partners, and even the small things, like when my child wants me to kill a spider in the bathroom.

I refer to the energy that you can spend as the "fucks" you can give. Therefore, it's incumbent upon you, as a man of vision and purpose, to manage every fuck wisely.

We are the masters of our lives, so we have the privilege of deciding where we want to dispense those limited amounts of fucks on. Only we get to choose what is *truly* fuckworthy in our lives.

When you drive to work and the asshole in the BMW cuts you off, you often choose to allocate those fucks to being frustrated. Rather than accepting it and saving those fucks for something else.

When a co-worker makes a disparaging comment because you won't donate \$10 to "Donna in accounting's" fundraiser, you can dispense those fucks, and comment back with your feelings. Or, you can go about your business in a "zero fucks given" kind of way and ignore her underhanded comment.

To truly manage your fucks, you must first master self-control.

Self-control

You know that asshole in a BMW who doesn't signal and cuts you off? You have two choices:

1. Throw a tantrum in your car, wave your middle finger about, and flash your high beams, before accelerating

up to his bumper - giving away some of your limited fucks in the process.

2. Utilize self-control, reserve your fucks for something more fuck worthy, and do nothing.

Option one burns up some of your limited fucks for the day and also applies stress to your body. Cortisol, a stress hormone, is released into your body when something gets under your skin, making it catabolic. Whereas option two does nothing. Ultimately, mastering self-control, and your emotions matters.

Those who are world class at their craft, and pursue excellence, are *incredibly careful* about managing their time, energy, and resources. Ultimately, you can't become the best version of yourself if you're constantly re-allocating your energy to things which don't deserve that energy and don't bring you closer to your goals, passions, and dreams.

“ Where awareness goes, energy flows.

- Dandapani

While this may seem like a simple notion, this idea was profound for me. I met Dandapani, a monk, at an entrepreneur's dinner event in Toronto where he was booked as the keynote speaker.

He sat there before us, legs crossed, on the floor, in full monk garb, with beads, and three white lines painted on his forehead.

He was an unlikely character to speak to entrepreneurs running successful multimillion-dollar businesses. They presented him to us as a Hindu priest with an Australian accent who had just finished 10-years in a monastery in Hawaii.

Entrepreneurs are notoriously prone to distractions, and many have varying degrees of Attention Deficit Disorder (or ADD). They are like herding cats. This monk was there to help entrepreneurs understand the notion of what “Energy Vampires” are, and how to manage their awareness to be more effective in their businesses.

Awareness, he explained, is like a glowing ball of light which moves around in your head, and when it goes to a particular area of the mind, then that area is lit up, which is where your energy flows.

So, if awareness goes to a happy area of the mind, then that is where your energy is flowing. And, if energy is flowing to the happy area of the mind, then it is also strengthening this area of the mind.

In order to manage your fucks, you must understand that the biggest threat comes from people, places, or things which are “Energy Vampires.” These are usually people that will take up your time, drain your energy, and leave you feeling exhausted from your encounter with them.

The keyword here is “exhausted” after your encounter. For more on that, search for ‘How to deal with Energy Vampires’ on my channel.

Mastering self-control

So how do you master self-control? Self-control is perhaps the most powerful skill you can develop that will help you master a better life.

When you learn how to manage your fucks and walk away from Energy Vampires, you exercise self-control, and start preserving your fucks for truly fuckworthy things that make you happy in life.

How do you know if something is fuckworthy? Simple. If the dispensing of the fuck helps make you, or your loved one's lives better, then it's usually worth dispensing precious fucks on.

Some might argue that this is a selfish or unkind way to navigate life. I propose that you re-evaluate how serious you are about managing your energy if this belief is violated by my statement above.

If the dispensing of said fuck drains you, or your loved ones, then it is probably better if you use self-control and preserve those fucks.

Let me give you a perfect example. I dated a single mother once, and one of her core passions was dinner parties. She would invite guests that were exhausting to be around.

My date had one friend that would berate, criticize, and judge everyone - including her husband. Her friend was a typical stay-at-home soccer mum, with teenage kids, who also had an exceedingly high opinion of herself.

However, she was nothing more than an obese middle-aged woman expecting people to agree with her worldview. She was, in fact, an Energy Vampire. Meaning that being around her was an emotionally draining experience.

Simply put, there was no benefit to being in the same room as her. I knew that she set a terrible example of what an adult woman should be, I knew I didn't want to have *my* daughter around that energy.

After I received a second invite to attend another dinner party. I declined and, as you'd expect, declining the offer offended my girlfriend and she tried to create an argument out of it.

I simply didn't take part, thanked her for the invite, and ended the call. We didn't talk for a few days, and she called me after the dinner event to apologize and agreed that her friend was an Energy Vampire.

You see, when you exercise self-control, you manage your fucks better. When you become aware of who is an Energy Vampire in your life, you will be forced to make choices that may offend some people. Guess what? That's okay. A man that is on his purpose in life will inevitably rub some people the wrong way.

Remember, if you value your fucks as a limited resource, you will only dispense them for things that are *truly* fuckworthy.

How do you strengthen self-control?

It's my belief that self-control is like a muscle, the more you work it, the stronger it gets.

One of the simplest ways to strengthen that self-control muscle is to do things that are physically difficult or that challenge you. If you are looking for a task to improve your self-control, then taking a cold shower for most people is hard. Especially if you've had access to hot water all your life. Hot water is a modern luxury, but for millions of years we have been bathing in icy lakes and rivers.

To take a cold shower requires self-control. But, most people don't even have the ability to do something basic like stand in uncomfortably cold water in a shower. I urge you to start taking cold showers for the following reasons:

- It strengthens your self-control.
- It also offers the following health benefits:
- Reduced brain fog and improved focus.
- Improves circulation.
- Keeps skin & hair healthy.
- Strengthens immunity.
- Improves energy and wellbeing.
- Improves metabolism and fat burning abilities.

Do you want to improve your self-control and learn how to manage your fucks better? Then start by doing something as simple as taking cold showers. It's easy to understand, simple to execute on, but takes discipline and willpower to build.

I was speaking at a conference and closed off my talk speaking about managing your fucks, and someone asked me in the audience about how they felt anxiety over dispensing their fucks, and how to reserve them better.

The bottom line is this: If you value your fucks as a resource that has a limit to it, then you will only allocate your limited fucks towards matters that *truly deserve* your fucks.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- The energy that you begin every day with is *extremely limited*. So, stop wasting it on things that don't help drive you, your mission, or your family forwards in life.
- Giving a shit about every little thing that happens will only go to raise your Cortisol levels. In turn, you get worked up over nothing important, while you simultaneously tank your Testosterone levels. Be sure you've read my chapter 'Manage Your Endocrine System' for more information on this vital area of your well-being.
- There's also a good chance that if you go to bed with lower Cortisol levels, then there's a much higher chance of having a far better night's sleep.

GETTING “DA GIRLS” ONLINE

It's exceptionally important for me to open this chapter by stating that women should *never* be the focus of a man's life. Chasing excellence, finding purpose, making bank, and self-care need to trump chasing tail. Every. Single. Time.

Remember, beautiful women are not a scarce resource. High-value men that have their lives sorted out are the scarce resource on the sexual marketplace, not beautiful women.

The cold hard truth about online dating

Now that we've gotten that out of the way, understand that when you use online dating apps, the deck is *always* stacked up against you if you aren't in the top 20% of men.

Several dating sites have released data over the years on how men and women use online dating sites. And some startling results have emerged confirming what the red pill has been saying for decades.

The top 78% of women are competing for the attention of the top 20% of men. While the bottom 80% of men are competing for the bottom 22% of women.

Confirming the reality of women's hypergamous nature on dating apps.

What that means is, if you are a high-value man (so an 8/10 or better), you are spoiled for choice with women on dating apps. It's absurd to say this, but a 3/10 female is shooting for the 8/10 male or better - and she'll genuinely think she's in with a chance of landing one.

If you are a 7/10 male or lower, you are basically competing for scraps. So, again, this is why it's vital for men to understand that chasing excellence, and not women, will always be your best ROI in life.

Dating sites and apps are filled with overly entitled and bratty women. Who possess an over-inflated sense of self-worth and, to top it all off, many of them are single mothers too.

How to assess your value

I'm a big fan of getting an ROI on every area of life. So knowing now how women use dating apps, we can approach it from an informed angle, giving us better results. This is a two-step process.

The first step is a brutally honest self-assessment. Take a good, hard, look at yourself and your life, and rate yourself on a scale of 1 to 10. With 10 being the absolute best version

of yourself, and 1 being the worst. **Do not** compare yourself to a Hollywood actor, or a billionaire. You are asking yourself: “Am I the best version of myself?”

Factor in the following for your age: Your job, wealth, self-care, your physique, look, style, your network, your hobbies, if you have kids, your car, and your home. The “Looks, Money, Status, and Game” chapter covers most of this.

These areas matter to women, so be completely honest with yourself.

Now that you’ve rated yourself, go onto your dating application of choice, and set yourself up to see what the female experience is like in your age range and location, but set it to “Female seeking Male.”

You are now looking at your competition. This will help you understand what you are up against. Now use this newfound knowledge of your competition to make a correction of your sexual market value assessment – if you require it.

If you are a 6/10 or lower, then I’d discourage you from using dating apps. Instead, I’d encourage you to double-down on yourself and do the work needed to increase your value on the sexual marketplace.

If you are a 7/10, you’re going to have a harder time. But, good photography can be an equalizer to improve the optics of your value one point higher. However, don’t rely on trick photography, you still have work to do.

If you are an 8/10 or higher, then congratulations, you’ve done the work. Continue to keep working on yourself and

enjoy being one of the 20% of men that are spoilt for choice on dating apps.

How to get results

There's three parts to doing well with online game (after that, everything happens in real-life):

1. Photography.
2. Bio.
3. Messaging.

PHOTOGRAPHY

Photography is arguably the most important part. On matching apps like Tinder or Bumble, it's the primary driver that dictates in which direction she will swipe. It's also the area where you can create the illusion of a SMV that's one to two points higher if you do it right.

It's essential that you hire a photographer to take pictures for dating apps or social proof.

At the time of writing in mid-2020, there is an oversupply of young photographers that you can hire for around \$100 on Craigslist, or even Air B 'n B experiences, for two hours to do a photo shoot.

To get the most out of it, bring three different, but well-fitted, outfits, and ask the photographer to select some suitable locations that they are familiar with. Make sure you show up looking sharp with a fresh haircut and let them

work their magic. Many men have significantly improved their results with women on dating apps with the correct use of superior quality photography.

Once you've got your collection of eye-catching photos, the next step is to use a site where women rate your pictures for dating purposes.

At the time of writing this book, Photofeeler is the best platform available to get genuine feedback from real women.

HOW TO LEVEL UP YOUR PHOTOS

Once you've narrowed down your top three professional photographs (based on the top three ratings from Photofeeler), you can stop there if you like. However, it often helps to include the following three additional compositions into your profile. These are: The “group of friends” picture, the “mystery” picture, and the “Aww!” picture.

The “group of friends” picture is straightforward and is designed to immediately establish high-value through social proof. You'll get bonus points if your circle of friends looks successful, established, and they look like the type of people and social circle that she wants to be around.

You are basically telling her, “Hey sexy, if you date me, you'll get to know these legends and hang around my people.” For example, a group photograph on a yacht will always do better for you than a group picture in a trailer park, surrounded by lower-value men. So be intentional when selecting a “group of friends” picture.

The mystery picture is one of my favorites, because it caffeinates the hamster in her head, and runs her imagination wild. This is always a solo picture and it's best taken at sunrise or sunset with the light behind you, and your image as a back-lit silhouette.

The following photo of me is a solid example and was taken at sunrise at a resort in Mexico. It works well because you can clearly see my physique, the 'V taper' and because I was enjoying a natural moment in the pool. That I am also half naked will get her mind racing to manufacture ideas.



Giver her something mysterious to think about.

The “Aww!” picture is something that will pull on her heartstrings a bit, and should ideally be a picture of you with

a pet. It doesn't need to be your pet, but cute puppies are, by far, the best accessory for this picture.

Stay away from cats, or a kid (even if they aren't your kids). The only time I would suggest kids for this type of picture is if you are building a school on a Caribbean island after a hurricane (and you're surrounded by kids that obviously aren't yours).

Even if you are a single father, I'd still discourage you from posting pictures of you with your kids. Like it or not, women are inherently solipsistic, and are self-interested in what they can benefit from being with you. If you signal in a photo to potential women that you are a father with kids in tow, it's highly unlikely to benefit you.

Your biography

The biography (or, bio) section is far less important than the pictures. But it's still worth covering from the perspective of what *not* to do.

Do not drone on and use the full character allowance. Truthfully, she doesn't even care that much, and she has already made 95% of her decision about matching with you based on the pictures she has seen. The point of the bio is to caffeinate the hamster in her mind that bit further and get her really curious about you.

We know women are hypergamous and solipsistic. So, all your bio needs to convey is that you are her best option (of

the many available to her), and that there's something in it for her.

My typical bio would read:

“ 6'2”, successful entrepreneur putting a dent in the universe. Great social circle of friends and adventurer, looking for a feminine beauty to join me.

That's it, that's all you need. It says I'm tall, make bank, have an impressive network, and that I am not boring. The bit about “putting a dent in the universe” should get her asking questions if she has a strong interest in you. The “join me” bit lets her know right off the bat; she's entering my frame.

With women, you can do almost anything you want to them – but do not bore them.

Some guys will use clever lines like: “Like my shirt, it's made out of boyfriend material.” And while that may seem smart, truthfully, it comes off a bit desperate. Make women qualify for your time, not the other way around.

Messaging

So, you've got matches; now let's talk messaging. The vast majority of men get messaging totally wrong. The **entire** point of communicating back and forth on a dating application is to weed out the manipulative time wasters and then get her number to set up a date.

That's it. The biggest mistake men make is in wasting time 'getting to know her.' That's not what she wants. Nor, do you want to waste your time chatting up someone that looks nothing like their pictures, only to be disappointed in person.

Keep in mind, *many* women will use dating apps just to get fleeting social validation from men. They will ignore, or ghost, any guy they have low desire for, even if they previously matched with you.

Your first message to her should be something playful like: "You look like you could be trouble."

Ask this question to establish her interest level. A woman with a high level of interest will respond, and engage with you, preferably with a question about why you said that, or about your awesome pictures.

If she isn't asking questions, uses noticeably brief responses, or takes a long time to respond, she isn't that into you.

If she asks questions, be somewhat vague in your response. Remember, you want her qualifying herself to you, so be curious. Women *love* exciting and mysterious men, so don't show up and verbally throw up all your most interesting information before you even meet her.

For me, women try to establish what kind of entrepreneur I am, or businesses I run. Not because she is interested in the business, but to establish how much I earn running it. She might ask about my business, or what dent I am putting in the universe. To which I would often reply with: "I'm a board advisor in a national financial services business, real

estate investor, and do my own private equity investing.” All true, but most women won’t understand what any of that means, aside from I’m important, and again, that I make bank.

After I drop that bomb, I’d often follow up with: “So what do you do?” Not because I particularly care, but to subconsciously establish that my SMV is higher than hers.

Once you’ve exchanged a few messages back and forth, message her with: “I’m busy today, and I’m not on here often, but what’s your number? Let’s set up a date to meet this week.”

If she is into you, she will give you her number. If not, she will give you an excuse. It’s always one or the other. The medium is the message, gentlemen.

Also, *do not* take her social media, Instagram, or Snapchat as a replacement for a phone number. GET. HER. PHONE NUMBER! Women *want* a man that can take control and set up the date and you need a number to do that.

If she offers you to follow her on social media, immediately decline the offer. She wants you to be one of her hundreds of thirsty betas orbiting around her there, giving social validation and free attention to her.

If she says she barely knows you and wants to chat more on the application, tell her you are busy, and only on there to date in real life. You’re not there to accumulate pen pals. Women that say this do not have genuine burning desire for

you, she only sees you as an alternative if her line of other, more preferable, options don't work out.

Again, if she has a genuine desire for you, then she will give you her number. When she does, text her within a day, and set up a date. Otherwise, unmatched her and move right on.

The date aka: “The sniff test”

Your first date with her should be an hour or less, and nothing more than a drink or coffee. The whole point of the sniff test is to:

1. See if she is worth your time.
2. Determine if she has a genuine interest in you.

The total cost should be less than \$20. You always pay and do not split the bill for a drink - you will look like a loser. My preferred first date would be to grab a coffee and then go for a stroll in some public space like a park or hiking trail.

You want her to feel comfortable. But, you also want to get a good look at her since most women today use older photography, or even touch up their pictures, so they rarely look better in person.

If it's during the day, meet her at a coffee shop, grab your drinks, and then find your way to an outdoor trail. If it's at night, make plans after eight for a drink so she isn't expecting a free dinner, and then chat her up on a patio or bar.

If she is unfamiliar with the area for a date, send her a Google map link for the location so she can find it with no trouble.

Unless you are in her area on business, always have her meet you halfway. The more she has to travel, and the less you need to, is preferable for you for two reasons:

1. It saves you time.
2. It tests her for genuine burning desire.

A woman with a strong desire for you will drive two hours to your house on a first date. She'll then gladly drop to her knees at the door without saying a word (on your instructions) and give you the best blow job of your life.

Trust me. **Do not** go running to her front door for dates. If she insists that you travel to her, then she is telling you *right off the bat* that she doesn't have that genuine burning desire for you.

Each new meeting should start by standing up with a big smile, including a brief handshake, or if you're so inclined and comfortable, pull her in for a brief hug. Then, gesture to either sit, if it's a night venue, or stand in the ordering line if you are getting coffee and going out.

Some men like to go for a same day lay. And, while you may be successful sometimes, my preference is to just do a "sniff test" on her. Just to see if she is even worth seeing again and to check if there is a genuine connection there or not.

When the hour is up, walk her to her car, Uber or transit and, if you have a connection, bring her in for a hug, and/or brief kiss and let her know you'll be in touch. If there is no connection, just say your farewells and leave it at that.

Getting laid and spinning those plates

Sexual intimacy should happen by the second to third date for three reasons:

1. You make it clear that you have a genuine interest in her sexual attention and will not be friend-zoned.
2. You want to ensure there is a good sexual connection.
3. Sex is awesome.

Some guys might argue that it's too soon, or they will wait “for the right girl”. I'm here to tell you that this is the wrong way to approach it. Never forget: Women break rules for alphas and make them for betas.

If a woman is happy to have sex with the hot dude from the foam cannon party in Ibiza 15-minutes after she meets him, why should you wait eight dates?

Unless you are Amish, all of today's modern women on dating apps have hooked up with *many* guys prior, so don't think for a minute she is the Virgin Mary.

Some people like to argue that there are “good girls” you should wait to be intimate with. The truth is, the only difference between good girls and bad girls is: Good girls just haven't been caught yet.

The best way to facilitate sexual intimacy is to begin with your messages leading up to the next date. Make it clear you are interested in her sexual attention. It's men that play the 'nice guy' that get 'friend-zoned' by women, earning them nothing but non-sexual attention.

Some women will send you provocative pictures without request. Other times you will need to request them. Other women may not send naughty photos at all, but will openly engage in some naughty talk with you. Either way, it should be crystal clear to her after the first date, aka: "The sniff test," that you are interested in her *sexual* attention, and it should be mutual.

If it's not, and she wants to "get to know you first" because she has rules, remember that women break rules for alpha men, and make them for betas. You will *never* get her "best" if she sees you as a beta, but she will give her best to Chad Thundercock on the first date. My view is *never* date a woman if she treats you as a beta as she will always hold out on you.

Ideally, set your sex date for an evening, and host her at your place. If she drinks, have a selection of wine or vodka at your house. If you don't have your own place, you will need to go to her place. Or, if you're a younger man and still with your parents, having a car with tinted windows is always useful.

To get to sex, you need to get comfortable and confident with escalation. Music is great for setting the mood, I use whatever sexy playlist off my Google music application is trending. You can escalate the sexual tension by inviting her

for a hot tub or sauna if you have one, or you can simply start by touching, and kissing. If she reciprocates warmly, then escalate, and move to heavier petting, which should lead to sex.

Always be in control of birth

As a man, you must **always** be in control of the birth. Once your sperm leaves your body, **you no longer have any decision-making ability to terminate a pregnancy**. The government will force you to pay child support - even if you don't want the child.

All control is with the woman. So **always** have condoms on hand; do not 'raw dawg' a woman, no matter how horny you are. You cannot rely on her promise of being disease free, or on reliable birth control. Women lie, and they lie *often*.

You should also have a "Plan B" on hand in the event a condom breaks. "Plan B", more commonly known as the morning after pill, is effective. It's an oral tablet she takes, which very quickly triggers her period, removing the risk of your sperm fertilizing her egg.

If you have an accident, make sure she takes the morning after pill in front of you, and you **know** for sure that she swallowed it. Women have been known to take them in the bathroom with the door shut, and just spit it into the toilet or garbage if they want your seed bad enough.

Again, I **cannot** put enough emphasis on this; **always** be in control of birth, **do not** rely on a woman's word. As the old

saying goes, an ounce of prevention is worth a pound of the cure.

If you get involved on a longer-term basis with her, and are getting fed up with condoms, then you may want to consider other forms of birth control, like an IUD. However, I **strongly** discourage you from ever trusting her to take a birth control pill - or any other oral contraceptive.

“Surprise” pregnancies often come out of her forgetting, or intentionally not taking her birth control. IUDs are generally considered more than 99% effective.

There are male birth control pills going through clinical trials at the time of writing this book, and the studies reveal that they work by lowering your testosterone levels to make your sperm ineffective. **NEVER** use this form of male contraception! You will become weak, unattractive, and feminized. It's a pill that basically turns you into an old man. Either have her on an IUD, use condoms, or get a vasectomy.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- 78% of women are only interested in the top 20% of men online. The other 80% of men who are invisible to them are left fighting for the bottom 20% of the super-low SMV women.
- Be completely honest with your own personal value and mark it accordingly. Put your focus into

developing these areas *before* you re-enter the sexual marketplace.

- Stand out from the crowd by investing in some professional photography. Seriously. It'll pay dividends - trust me on this one.
- Texting is mostly for logistics. By all means, open up with something fun and flirty for her to bounce off of. Once she's asking questions, get her agreeing to a date ASAP.
- Don't be single-minded in trying to get laid on the first date. It's more important to vet her for potentially serious red flags (such as seeing how she responds if you tell her "No." with a smile on your face). Never stick your dick in crazy.
- Finally, **ALWAYS** be in control of the birth. **Without exception.** Far, *far*, too many men have been already duped by women with "baby rabies". **Do not** let yourself become one of them.

PROMISCUOUS PRIMATES

Most men idealize a single type of relationship with women. The version that Walt Disney sold us as kids. One man, his wife, their children, and a love that lasts forever.

Society has conditioned us to believe that a relationship is going to be nice, romantic, caring, and respectful. That we'll find that "one good girl" that will only date and love you. That you'll both get engaged, then get married, have kids and live "happily ever after." That she will be a faithful, loving wife and mother "In richer or poorer, in sickness or in health. 'til death do us part."

This is a social contract that very rarely fulfills its promise of a blissful life. Instead, marriage comes with significant risks to men.

While the next chapter talks about marriage in more depth, it is important to note that this social contract is *exceedingly difficult* to manage over the long term.

Our highly promiscuous ancestors lived as non-monogamous hunter/gatherers, in small nomadic tribes, and

preceded us for six million years. We've lived as modern humans for 200,000 years, and civilization, as we know it, began around 6,000 years ago. Monogamy and marriage have only been around for less than 2,000 years.

Men and women are, by nature, highly promiscuous. There's also a *massive* conflict between how we've all been told to behave, versus our instinctual hard-wiring. Which has been built up over millions of years of evolution.

In this chapter, I want to expose some myths about humans and enlighten you to the true nature of our sexual strategies.

We are terrible at monogamy

In fact, as a species, we are highly promiscuous. When it comes to mammals, monogamy isn't common at all. In fact, as a sexual strategy, monogamy is an *outlier* amongst mammals.

I always catch heat from traditional conservatives for talking about how badly we fail at monogamy. But, as the saying goes, a bomber only gets flak when it's over the target.

It's universally accepted by those that study the dynamics between men and women, that the male sexual strategy is unlimited access to unlimited women. Whereas the female sexual strategy is open hypergamy.

What that means is men want to scatter their seed far and wide. As men produce millions of sperm every month, those seeds are both ridiculously cheap and readily available.

Women, however, are more complicated. They look for the best genetic investment in their offspring and the best provisioning male, because their eggs are a limited resource.

You should note that the best genetic investment, and best provisioning male, isn't always the same man. It's sometimes one high value alpha with great genetics that provides the seed, and another, more beta, reliable male that provides for the need of raising the offspring.

Hence the popular soundbite distilling the female sexual of open hypergamy as: "Alpha fucks; beta bucks."

A women's sexual strategy is dualistic and quite frustrating for most men to comprehend. It's also why men often raise grievances about women crying over wanting "Mr. Dependable," while she goes off and fucks "Mr. Exciting" instead.

How her sexual strategy constantly changes

A woman's sexual strategy changes over time. Under the age of 27, women are generally in their party years, and are happy to explore, and sleep with, as many high value alpha men as possible. By the time she is in her late twenties, she has reached the 'Epiphany Phase' of her life. This is where millions of years of evolution in her DNA yell at her, "Hey lady, where are the babies!?"

The 'Epiphany Phase' is often when women will start seeking out a suitable man to have children with. Ideally, they want a strong alpha seed, and a tender beta protector.

But these traits rarely exist in the same man, and high value alphas aren't that easy for her to lock down. So, women will typically compromise and settle for a more beta male that they deemed as "good enough."

It's why you'll often see many mid-thirties divorced women on the dating market with kids in tow after initiating her divorce. I encountered many of these women on the dating market after my own divorce. I also noticed a trend of some version of the soundbite: "I loved him, but I wasn't IN love with him anymore."

Somehow, today he is a loser. But, at some point in time, he was good enough for her.

This *completely* violates the marriage vows of "To have and to hold, from this day forward, for better, for worse, for richer, for poorer, in sickness and in health, to love and to cherish, 'til death do us part..."

I've coached many men who have taken this hook, line, and sinker. But, you need to understand that marriage is no buffer from hypergamy. If a woman feels like she hasn't done the best that she can do, and her Sexual Market Value (or SMV) has increased over her partner's significantly, then the marriage is at risk. Women can, and often do, leave the *perfectly* good men that they took those vows with, so they can "Go and explore their options."

This is often around the time when she'll get her breast augmentation, start hitting the gym and yoga studio, and why wouldn't she? She's had kids, so family law ensures she'll be well looked after financially. There's also plenty of

people telling her: “You go girl, you don’t need a man, and you can do better.”

Her cycles

When women ovulate, they dress more provocatively, wear more make-up, and expose more skin. It’s when they prefer men with signals of higher testosterone, more facial symmetry, a deeper voice, who’s taller, who has bigger muscles and, of course, a real alpha presence. Basically, the “Alpha Fucks” part of the hypergamy equation. But, when women are on their period, their preference for men shifts more towards comfort, provisioning, and safety. Essentially, the “Beta Bucks” part of hypergamy.

The problem is society, religion, government, school, media, culture, and family have programmed us as men to look for “the one” and then *only* be with her. But, when you observe the behavior of human’s sexual strategy, it’s more or less “monogomish.” We rarely pair bond to one partner for life.

Instead, we try to declare monogamy to one partner at a time, while acting clandestine in our adulterous adventures. But we usually have multiple sexual partners and relationships throughout our lives.

At some point, you’ll learn the hard way that women are not particularly good at being monogamous over the long term. Although, neither are men.

Women can, and do, move *very* quickly from partner to partner. In several cases, I’ve known women who’ve slept

with multiple partners in a 24-hr period as they felt that it advanced their sexual strategy. All without giving your feelings a second thought.

I'm personally aware of women doing this at least twice in my life.

Sex at Dawn

In Chris Ryan's pivotal 2011 book '*Sex at Dawn*', he examines human promiscuity throughout history on a deep level. All evolutionary evidence, and the terrible success record of marriage today, points to both men *and* women being incredibly poor at long term monogamous pair bonding.

Here are some shocking evolutionary truths about humans and our primate cousins we share 98% of our DNA with:

MALE AND FEMALE SIZE DIFFERENTIALS

Only non-monogamous primates universally have males that are 15-20% larger than females. In harem-based primates (like Gorillas), the size differential is even more pronounced, with the male being twice the size of the female. In monogamous based primates, like Gibbons, there's no size differential between males and females.

PENIS & TESTICULAR SIZE

Only non-monogamous and promiscuous primates have large testicles and a highly specialized penis to facilitate sperm competition in the reproductive tract of the female. Harem-based primates, like Gorillas, have tiny testicles the

size of kidney beans, and unspecialized penises smaller than your pinky finger. This is because the silverback owns the reproductive rights to his harem of females through sheer physical strength and size.

There is no need for the sperm to “fight it out” in the reproductive tract for the rights to fertilize the egg. The fighting is finished long before any other male can get anywhere near the reproductive tracts of his harem females.

FEMALE COPULATORY VOCALIZATION

Of the hundreds of primate species (including humans), female copulatory vocalization (aka loud moaning during sex) universally exists through non-monogamous primates only. In monogamous based primates, like the Gibbons for example, there is no moaning from the females during sex.

Remember that the next time you are having sex, because millions of years of evolution are making her moan as a calling to other males to mate with her. This reduces the chances of infanticide, since it is impossible for the males to know who the father is. It also ensures that the female obtains the highest quality sperm to compete for her single available egg in her reproductive tract.

SEX THAT DOESN'T LEAD TO PREGNANCY

On average, non-monogamous promiscuous primates have sex 750 times, or more, for every pregnancy. In humans, it's approximately 1,000 times for every pregnancy. Sex for the purpose of pleasure and socializing is very unusual in the animal world. Yet, it's quite common in non-monogamous

primates. For most animals they have sex, on average, 10-15 times for every pregnancy that occurs.

Humans rarely have sex just to reproduce. If you factor in all the ways humans have sex that can't possibly lead to pregnancy (for example, oral and anal), then over 99% of the sex humans have will never lead to a pregnancy. Sex for non-monogamous promiscuous primates is all about social interaction, pleasure, validation, or transactions.

Cuckoldry

Cuckoldry, or “cuck”, is a term that is often used online to be disparaging. It's where a man raises another man's child (his genetic investment). Note, that 43% of North American children are being raised by a single mother. So, it needs to be stated that most of these children are the result of a woman taking on the alpha seed for the best genetic material.

She then pivots her sexual strategy, either by choice, or involuntarily, to beta need. Therefore, finding a willing male to adopt her offspring, either knowingly or unknowingly.

There are millions of these women on dating sites today looking for beta cucks to take over the responsibility of raising another man's child. In fact, some are even brazen enough to go shopping for their cuckold, while pregnant with another man's seed.

There is another, less obvious, form of cuckoldry today, and it is beta men unknowingly experiencing paternity fraud

from raising children he thought were his. However, the kids are in fact the alpha male's seed.

Marriage is no buffer from paternity fraud. It's impossible to determine the actual statistics because fraud, by definition, requires deceit, something women are highly evolved at. However, it's estimated that anywhere from 10-30% of children that are born are not biologically the child of the man that is acting as the "father" to that child.

The female primary social order is so vested in burying paternity fraud by women, that feminist groups have called it "the demonization of women." In fact, paternity testing in some countries has been outlawed by the feminine imperative.

Men's proclivity to "Oneitis"

Of the hundreds of men that I've coached, one of the most common reasons for booking a call was to deal with a condition known as "Oneitis." We loosely define Oneitis as when a guy falls hard for a girl, to the point of obsessing over her.

It is often characterized by the guy making a statement such as: "She's the only one for me."

“

Oneitis is an unhealthy psychological dependency that is the direct result of the continuous socialization of the soulmate myth in pop culture.

- Rollo Tomassi

One shortcoming of the male belief system is that there is only one perfect woman for us. Women will argue that they feel oneitis too. But, it's *never* anywhere near close to the debilitating degree of 'Oneitis' that I've seen men suffer from.

It's a scarcity mindset and is something I've personally experienced in the past.

I've pined for at least two women that I believed were "the one." Men suffering from 'Oneitis' can't sleep properly or focus on tasks. They lose weight because of a lack of appetite and are distracted from chasing excellence. The sulking they do can last for weeks, months, or in some cases, for well over a year.

I've done it myself and I can honestly say it's one of the most pathetic things I've done and see men do.

There's a lot of theories floating around about why men suffer so badly from it. But, as there are over four billion women on the Earth, it's incredibly arrogant to think there is just *one* perfect woman for you.

But you can't tell that to the guy who's curled up in a ball crying himself to sleep, because he got dumped by his "Oneitis," and that he needs to let it go and move on. He genuinely *cannot* fathom a world without her.

So, how does a man reduce his tendency for 'Oneitis'? By creating abundance and options in his life. In short, he spins plates, and makes himself his own mental point of origin.

Enter plate theory

We've all seen the circus act of the man spinning multiple plates on several sticks. If not, it works like this: The circus performer randomly makes some spinning inputs to each plate. He then gives each plate some attention as they need it, enabling them to spin simultaneously, but independently.

A "plate" is any woman you are dating non-monogamously while also seeing other women.

When spinning plates, you are not obligated to be intimate with more than one woman, but if you are so inclined, you may. This dating strategy is especially ideal because:

- It creates plenty of contrast in female nature, and helps men looking for an LTR, or a mother for children, to assess the best possible candidate.
- It creates an abundance mindset and greatly reduces the chances of Oneitis from occurring.
- It helps men optimize their sexual strategy of unlimited access to unlimited women.
- You remain your own mental point of origin.
- You can quickly eliminate the women with a lower interest in you, because they won't tolerate being an option to a man that is dating other women.
- It helps quickly solidify women with a strong interest in you, because they will tolerate other women in your life.

A lot of men think that women won't tolerate being treated as a plate. But, we know by watching what women do, that they are happier to share a high value alpha than to be saddled with a faithful beta loser.

Men already in a monogamous relationship, or marriage, cannot spin plates. But for men, especially under the age of 30, this is *ideal* to help them more rapidly understand the sexual marketplace, and what drives arousal and desire between the sexes.

Men post-divorce, recently single or otherwise, should also consider this dating strategy. Because any immediate commitment to one woman after you've been through the divorce machine usually ends in a train wreck.

I've seen plenty of men not give themselves enough time to understand female nature, only to rush straight into another LTR or marriage without updating their belief system. These men often get into several marriages and then wonder why women keep taking them to the cleaners.

Taking some time to date casually and spin plates will help recalibrate your awareness on the sexual marketplace.

A man should *never* openly declare that he is spinning plates. Rather he should, through his actions, covertly convey that he is a man of status. That he has options by the choices he makes, and the availability in his schedule.

For example, if you normally see a plate on Wednesday nights, and she wants to add a Friday night (but you have plans with another date), then you simply respond with "I

have plans, but I'll see you next Wednesday." You don't need to explain what you are doing, why, or with whom.

In fact, what this will do is induce competition anxiety in her head. Which, if she's hot for you, will increase her desire for you as she'll see you as a man of higher value who has his time in demand by others.

One of the greatest aphrodisiacs for women is the unknown, and letting her marinate on rationalizing your whereabouts often increases desire in women.

Remember, women would rather share a high value alpha than be saddled with a faithful loser. **You are the prize**, so act like it.

Spin those plates

A man up to his late twenties should never limit his options to just one woman, or get into a LTR. Most men have *no* idea what women are about, or understand their nature, and are incapable of staying focused on building their purpose in life. Far too many men in their twenties are too quick to abandon their purpose in life. Instead, they want to fulfill that narrative of having a girlfriend, or worse a wife, for definition. Women should **never** define you.

If you do allow a woman to enter your frame, and be a part of your life, then you should only ever allow it if she compliments your life. She must not be the focus of it.

I've noticed, during coaching, that there are many men that had moved across the country in their twenties, changed

their majors, and knocked up their girlfriend. All because they thought it was a good idea. Only to get divorced at thirty-five, get forced through the family law meat grinder, and end up with no access to his kids. It's at this point where they book a coaching call with me to guide them out the other end with the least amount of damage.

So slow things down and stop acting like women are a scarce resource (because they're not).

High value men that are competent, resourceful, and know how to make *serious* money are a scarce resource. Beautiful women aren't.

The ROI on chasing excellence is **far** greater than chasing women, more so when you know nothing about female nature.

Spinning plates will lead to some Friends With Benefits (or FWB). An FWB arrangement is loosely defined as a non-monogamous friendship with sexual intimacy, but with no dates, sleep overs, or introduction to family or friends.

Ideally, you want a FWB arrangement to last over a prolonged period of time, and you can have more than one FWB. However, they rarely last long and if they do, a FWB can come in, and out, of your life like the seasons. Therefore, don't be surprised if an old fling contacts you well into the future.

There are women you will automatically categorize as a FWB when you identify red flags from that chapter of this book. **DO NOT** allow a woman with red flags to be more than a

FWB, it is incumbent on you to assess and filter through women that display red flags.

Don't give a FWB priority in your schedule - she is only an option when your time permits.

A monogamous Long Term Relationship (LTR)

You should only consider a conventional relationship with a woman *after* you have spun enough plates, and the cream has risen to the top. She must also exhibit none of the warning signs described in the '20 Red Flags' chapter. Or, if she does, then she is pro-actively working on fixing that area of her life herself.

Women don't like to admit it, but they are natural plate spinners because of their hypergamous nature.

They are always asking themselves, "Is this the best I can do?". If you are dating a woman, then assume that she is seeing other men, until she initiates the "Where do we stand?" talk and wants to open dialogue about a deeper commitment. Women, not men, should start the "talk" about a long-term relationship.

Never, **ever**, initiate a "Where do we stand?" talk. It's weak and signals scarcity in your life. Let her bring it up. Remember, women are the gatekeepers to sex, while men are the gatekeepers to relationships. Which means women get to decide when you will fuck her; you get to decide if you want to become more serious with a woman (and whether or not it's on an exclusive basis).

You should only consider an LTR after about six months of plate spinning. If she demands an LTR after only a month of dating, move on, and let her go.

Remember, men are the gatekeepers to relationships, and women are the gatekeepers to sex. So act like it. You, as the man, gets to decide when a woman gets your exclusive sexual, and non-sexual, attention.

If you do this and get into a monogamous LTR, you end up abandoning your male sexual strategy of unlimited access to unlimited women.

You should also note that if you choose to abandon your sexual strategy, she must also abandon her sexual strategy of open hypergamy.

That means: No male friends, no more seeking attention on social media with provocative pictures and posts. Oh, and no overnight girl's trips to places where she can proclaim to her friends "What happens in Vegas stays in Vegas."

Some other conditions that should exist for an LTR to work well for you:

- You should be one to two points higher than her on the SMV scale, so she feels that she's optimizing her hypergamy. Remember, a woman can only be content if she feels like her man is of higher value than her.
- Your frame must be the dominant frame of the relationship, meaning that she is a complement to your life, not the focus. A woman that's fully in your frame will defer to you in major choices.

- She must understand, through your covert actions and words, that everyone is replaceable - including her. There is no “one”. You, on the other hand, must understand that you never own her, *it's just your turn*. She may be in your life for a year, or she may be with you until “death do you part.”
- On a scale of one to 10, with 10 being the highest level of interest, her interest level in you **must** be an obvious nine (but preferably a 10). Women with an interest level lower than that will be an exceptional amount of work, and the chances of her love wandering will be higher.
- You must have done some recon work on her family and friends and decided if they are people you enjoy being around. This is because she will *always*, regardless of her feelings for you, choose them over the relationship. So, make sure her family and friends are good people and that you like being around them. Most importantly, if you are planning on marriage and kids, then look at her mother. She will eventually look like, and behave like, her.
- Also, do **not** live with an LTR, as doing so causes her competition anxiety to relax, making it tougher for you to manage the frame of the relationship. The *only* exception to this is if you are planning on getting married and having children, and you need to vet her as a wife by living together first.

A long-term relationship with a woman brings considerably more work to a man’s life when it comes to managing the

frame of the relationship. However, an excellent woman can add substantial value to your life.

At the time of writing this book, I'm in a non-cohabiting LTR. My woman is almost 10 years my junior. She's tidy, non-materialistic, loves to cook healthy meals, is positive, very sexual, fun loving, and has a great relationship with her father and my child. If she didn't add any value to my life, I wouldn't have bothered to enter into an LTR with her.

A woman **must** always be a complement to *my* life, not the focus. This should be *every* man's non-negotiable.

I'll warn you now that, if you ignore my advice and live with your LTR, you will expose yourself and your wealth, to the risks of family law.

In most Western countries, the state deems you to be in a common law marriage after one to two years. And, even if you aren't legally married, she may have rights to half of your assets. Therefore, it's *essential* that you consult with a family lawyer in your state or province *before* you live with any woman. If you have more assets than her, then see if you can protect them with a cohabitation agreement.

The tattoo test

If you really want to test my theories on the "soulmate myth" that men subscribe to, and how willing she is to enter your frame in an LTR, then the tattoo test is brilliant. It really forces her to show, via her actions, that she is serious about an LTR with you over the long haul.

If she starts “the talk”, it usually encompasses some version of the soundbites: “I’ll love you forever, and ever” or, “We were made for one another.”

Tell her, “Good, prove it. Tattoo my name on your body.”

It doesn’t need to be visible, or huge. Most of the time, she will make the tattoo discrete, so it’s hidden in her bikini or bra line. Don’t force it on her or march her into a tattoo studio. Instead, just drop the hint, but be serious about it, and then see what she does.

This is not a two-way street either. You are not tattooing her name on you. She is the one that is asking for your exclusive sexual, and non-sexual, attention. A woman who’s in your frame that sees you as a high value alpha, and that has a genuine, burning desire for you shouldn’t protest and would love to have your name on her body.

A woman that doesn’t see you as her best option, and her “forever” man, will make up excuses.

Regardless of what they are, whatever excuses she makes, she is telling you she doesn’t really believe that you are her best option. You’re not satisfying her hypergamous needs, and she doesn’t see you two together forever.

Remember, whenever there is a conflict between her actions, and words, always, **always** believe what she does. As the old saying goes: “Actions speak louder than words”.

Open LTR

The LTR can either be open or closed. So, you can either be exclusive with your LTR, or keep the relationship open where you continue to have one or two other women that you see periodically. But she should understand that you are doing this. Covertly spinning plates while in an LTR always catches up to you somewhere down the line. You'll end up dealing with a lot of unnecessary drama in your life.

There is nothing wrong with an open LTR, aside from societal conditioning telling you to be monogamous. In fact, it is the natural state of our non-monogamous nature.

She can also be in an open LTR with you, but now you are leaning into Polyamory (Poly), and a more beta frame of a relationship.

The highest value alpha males will be in an open LTR on their end, but she can't do the same. More feminized men will gawk at this statement and protest. But, throughout history, truly high value alpha men had a harem of women that were sexually exclusive with him.

Polyamory

The “Poly Lifestyle” is being pushed by the media, and even some academics seem to like to push the narrative since they are in a poly marriage. If you are unfamiliar with the “Poly Lifestyle”, you let your wife or girlfriend have sex with whoever they want, while you also do what you want. It's basically an open LTR for both of you.

This dating strategy is becoming the standard for many beta males because they would rather share a woman versus not having one at all.

On the surface, it may look appealing. However, men and women *aren't* equal. More often than not, it's two beta males fighting over one girl. All while she goes out on the weekends fucking the alphas for fun (leaving the poly men to raise the kid(s)).

Conclusion

When it comes to the types of relationships you can have with women, I **strongly** encourage you to always make yourself your own mental point of origin. This means you do what is right - for **YOU**. Men should always set the frame of the relationship at the beginning, because it's the exit that women most often control.

If monogamy is your path, then make sure you chose it and it hasn't been forced on you by your woman or society. Natural monogamy *can* work, but only if it is organic, and you both truly want to be sexually exclusive. I would strongly encourage all men to use the tattoo test if you are going to start an LTR. This test will assure you that her actions truly do align with her words.

Chris Ryan once said: "Monogamy is like going vegan. You can choose a plant-based diet, but that doesn't mean bacon will stop smelling good."

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- Women may be the gatekeeper of who they have sex with, but **you** are the gatekeeper of who you have a relationship with. And, as a man of increasingly high value, that's the *strongest*, and most valuable, bargaining chip of the two.
- When a woman has a genuine desire for you, and appreciates your value, then she will have no problems sharing you with other women as you are satisfying her hypergamous nature.
- Track the menstrual cycle of any potential LTRs. Watch how differently they behave when they are ovulating, versus when they are menstruating.
- I've said it before, and I'll say it again, **always** believe a woman's actions over her words. Her actions will tell you what her *true* priority is and tells you the truth about how she truly feels.
- As noted by my good friend Dr. Shaun T. Smith in his book 'The Tactical Guide to Women', spend as much time as possible vetting and setting healthy boundaries with a woman before committing. It's from month 18-onwards when a woman's *true* personality comes through.

OWN A MOTORCYCLE

It is my firm belief that, as a rite of passage, every man should own a motorcycle at one point in their life. As Jon Bon Jovi famously sang, “I’m a cowboy. On a steel horse, I ride. I’m wanted. Dead or alive.”

Whether you’re a hero or an outlaw (or, like the best among us, a bit of both), the motorcycle is the modern-day equivalent of the stallion. It is a rite of passage for every man to own one in his life.

During a bitterly cold and rainy spring day in early April, I got my motorcycle license at 18 on a single cylinder 125cc bike. Despite the miserable weather, it was one of the best days of my life. I remember being so cold and wet, we’d put our hands on the scalding hot air-cooled fins of the motor to keep our fingers from getting frostbite.

However, getting my motorcycle license was one of the best things I did as a teen. And, as a rite of passage, as I was transitioned from a teen to a man.

The most important skill you learn from riding a motorcycle is situational awareness. You learn to keep your head on a swivel, and you are *constantly* scanning around you for potential threats. Just about everything else on the road is bigger than you - and can kill you. Being aware of your surroundings *at all times* is a skill that men need to apply to all areas of their life.

Let me explain. The first office I rented for one of my early businesses was on the top floor of an old century home in suburban Toronto. On the main floor there was a psychotherapist. She was a lumpy, old, fat, stuck up woman. Who would come up, stomp around, and complain once a week we were “making too much noise” for her practice located below us.

My office window looked out into the parking lot. And she always had a steady flow of patients coming in to treat whatever disaster was going on in their lives. I did, however, notice two glaringly obvious things:

1. Most of her patients were thirty-five-plus year-old women, showing up in expensive SUVs with permanent scowls on their faces. They had a look of emptiness, anger, and resentment as they marched into her office.
2. When men came, there wasn’t a single arrival on a motorcycle. Not one.

With hundreds of visits per month, and over our three-year lease, I saw close to a thousand of her patient arrivals.

However, I never once saw a *single* guy ride in on a motorcycle. Let that sink in for a moment.

Masculine therapy

A motorcycle is many things to a man: It's often a friend, a statement, an adrenaline rush, a toy, a place to fuck and, of course, transportation. Most importantly, there were many times as a young man that my bike was my therapist.

Shit day at work? Ride the bike.

Girlfriend fucks my best friend for redemption because she resented a threesome we had with her girlfriend a year ago? Ride the bike.

Didn't get the promotion I wanted? Ride the bike.

Roommates driving me nuts? Ride the bike.

You fire it up, go out, and reconcile whatever your issues are on the road.

Motorcycles require balance, strength, and dexterity. Cars don't. When you go around corners, you lean into the turn, and hang off the bike while your knee hangs mere millimeters from the asphalt. The toll you pay if you make a mistake is often much higher than that of a car. After all, a car is effectively surrounded by a metal cage - and bikes aren't.

Even with all of that, I bet if you hopped into a time machine and went back to a time when horseback was the main form of transport and asked a young man what he thought of his

horse, he'd likely describe a fond attachment to it in a similar manner.

Men need masculine pursuits. Throughout history, sitting on a living, breathing, beast capable of *incredible* feats of power was something that men have wanted to tame. While a motorcycle isn't alive, most sport bikes have F1-like power to weight ratios, and it has an internal combustion engine, so it does breathe. After all, an engine is nothing more than an air pump.

Shared interests

Brotherhood is another perk of owning a motorcycle. The only form of transportation I've always got a head nod, or a hand wave from others, was when on a bike. Regardless of make, model, or style. *Everyone* is friendly to you when you're on a bike. There were plenty of places peppered throughout the city where motorcyclists would meet up for a coffee, have a chat, and then go for a rip together into the night.

I had been riding bikes for 12-years when a friend, I would ride with often, suddenly announced that his brother had died in a motorcycle accident when a car hit him on the highway. I noticed that others got hurt too, mostly because of careless drivers not paying close enough attention to motorcycles.

After four different sport bikes, two Katana 600s, a GSX-R750, and a ZX-7R, I decided that no matter how careful I

was, my number would come up at some point, and so I took a sabbatical when I hit thirty.

I'd be lying however if I said that I didn't miss my bike, leaving me with a hole in my heart that needed to be filled.

So, I moved into fast convertibles, a 2003 BMW M3 in Imola Red, lowered on BBS LMs which, at face value, may seem like a 180-degree pivot. But, it was close enough to satisfy the open-air feeling while moving at speed.

It not only had the added safety of airbags, and a metal cage around me, but I could drive with like I was outside without a helmet, whilst listening to music. I can still remember the first day I got the car, I dropped the top, cranked up Mötley Crüe's '*Kickstart My Heart*', and left for a rip.

In closing

Motorcycles are incredible value to a young man. For less than \$10,000 you can buy something that will out-accelerate, and often brake better than, any exotic car costing 20x as much. While *still* getting incredible fuel economy because of its small engine size.

The only things a car can do better than a bike are: Carry more cornering speeds (since there are larger contact patches on the tires), transport more people, and protect you better in an accident.

Women also *love* a man on a bike. I was constantly giving women rides on the back of my bike. Often, while at parties, my friend's girlfriends would harass me to take them for a

spin right in front of their boyfriends. By the very nature of how you ride motorcycles, it forces intimacy.

Bikes attracted women like a moth to a flame. These women would press their breasts into my back, while grabbing tightly to my lower waist, and sometimes grabbed my manhood when they got comfortable on the bike.

Trust me when I say, women *crave* adventure, variety, and fun. Dollar-for-dollar, *nothing* gets a woman more excited than to grab onto you tightly as you accelerate your bike into a wheelie. Remember, women in their teens or twenties are in their party years, they are looking for excitement. They *aren't* looking for men driving big SUVs.

Therefore, I strongly believe that every young man should own a bike at some point in their youth. Or, at the very least, a fast convertible.

However, I'm not done with motorcycles yet, I've merely just taken a break. Mid-engine exotic cars are my bikes - for now.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- Bikes offer you an unrivaled sense of freedom and escape from the trappings of everyday life.
- When you take a woman on a bike with you, *every single* receptor in her body is in hyper-drive as the addictive, and heady, cocktail of adrenaline and

dopamine surges through her body. And she'll be associating *that* feeling - with you.

- If bikes *really* aren't your thing, then make sure you emulate the experience with a fast convertible that screams FUN! from every inch of it.

MASTER VIOLENCE

Throughout our lives we've been lied to and have been told things like "Nothing good ever comes from violence," or that "Violence is the last refuge of the incompetent." These statements aren't particularly truthful, nor do they embrace the value of the capacity for violence.

Violence isn't always the answer. But it *is* a legitimate response in certain situations. Men have an obligation for the capacity to be violent and, if exercised, should be decisive and lethal.

Most men today can't be violent, or even understand why it's a skill that men should master. The narrative we've had crammed down our throats is "Be kind, be humble, and that love is the answer."

But, the truth is, is that society, and *especially* women, don't want meek and incompetent men. What women *want* is a **dangerous man that is civilized**.

Women's darkest fantasies were discovered when Google engineers studied the use of search engines and

pornography. The top five searches were stories about Vampires, Werewolves, Billionaires, Surgeons, and Pirates. Films often show such characters walking quietly, while carrying a big stick.

Therefore, when search engine choices trump her social narrative, believe her choices.

A powerful defense is the best offense

I believe that you need to learn how to defend yourself, and your loved ones, should the need ever arise. It's an essential part of becoming the best version of yourself as a man.

Learn combat. There are plenty of facilities within 10-minutes of most urban areas that will teach different forms of Mixed Martial Arts (so MMA). These forms include: Boxing, Krav Maga, Brazilian Ju Jitsu, Muay Tai, Kickboxing, Karate, and much more.

Memberships are around \$150 per month, and most classes are 90-minutes in total. Half of the time is spent on cardio drills designed to simulate improved endurance in combat. The other half of the time being spent on core skills.

Joining a Dojo offers four major benefits:

1. The cardio drills are some of the most intense workouts you can do, and great for your body and conditioning.
2. You learn how to use violence in a focused and productive manner.

3. Your network is your net worth and people that train in combat, for the most part, are not losers, so your social circle will also improve.
4. You'll have your ass repeatedly handed to you by more experienced members. *This is a good thing.* It'll teach you how to pull yourself up and how to get your head back in the game. Both metaphorically *and* physically.

My dojo offers plenty of MMA classes, but my favorites are boxing for the skills needed to be an effective striker, and Krav Maga for its effectiveness in self-defense. Krav is known for its lethality and efficiency of the responses to attacks, minimizing the damage to yourself while keeping you on your feet.

Krav Maga is so lethal, it's not used in MMA fights because many of the responses to attacks are illegal. It's also the gold standard in training for close combat for many Special Forces units around the world. If it's good enough for the Special Forces, then it's good enough for me.

Also, one of Krav's greatest assets is that it heavily encourages 'situational awareness'. The ability to 'read a room' is a life-skill that can get you out of trouble before it even begins. Or, at the very least, give you sufficient warning that an attack is coming your way, giving you ample time to dodge or prepare a counter-maneuver.

If I am ever jumped by someone with a gun or a knife, or by multiple attackers, I want the ability to respond with a highly trained, and proportionate, level of violence.

You may never need to use violence. But, if the need arises, it's a tool that you *definitely* want in your tool chest.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- It's incumbent on you to know how to protect yourself effectively. Doubly so if you have a family.
- You need to try several forms of MMAs to see which one resonates with you best.
- You **must** stick with whatever self-defense MMA that works for you. Be sure to put in the hours and watch as your skills and overall confidence grows.

WHEN MEN GO THEIR OWN WAY (MGTOW)

There is a growing movement of men choosing to check out from the sexual marketplace completely. This movement of Men Going Their Own Way is better known by its acronym “MGTOW.”

While I may agree with many of the grievances MGTOWs have with women and the world we live in, I don’t agree with their response.

Some MGTOWs limit their female interactions strictly to casual dating (even if she is someone who genuinely compliments them and adds real value to their life).

In other cases, men cannot compete in the sexual marketplace and seem to be involuntarily “Sent their own way.” Such men become what’s known as an involuntary celibate, or an “Incel.”

The problem as they see it

Truthfully, I’ve lost track of the list of grievances MGTOWs have raised about women. However, here’s a collection of the

soundbites I've heard most often:

- “Hostile divorce laws towards men that strip men of their wealth and access to their children, while simultaneously enriching the mother.”
- “Women have become overly entitled and bratty.”
- “If a guy like Brad Pitt can be taken to the cleaners in divorce law, what chance do I have?”
- “Women are constantly seeking validation and attention on social media.”
- “Women are Machiavellian opportunists with the power of the state behind them, while simultaneously being incompetent children who are run by their emotions.”
- “If marriage was a business contract, you’d tell the other guy to go fuck himself.”
- “Women make bad voting choices, repeal the 19th, and take women’s voting rights away.”
- “Feminism is a supremacy and hatred movement against men.”
- “Women can file a false domestic violence claim with no proof.”
- “Women get to be promiscuous with impunity today.”
- “Fear of paternity fraud and cuckoldry.”
- “Fear of Sexually Transmitted Diseases (or STDs).”
- “Gynocentric laws in most Western countries favor women.”
- “Fear of a lack of any loyalty to ‘a good man’.”
- “False ‘#metoo’ allegations.”

These are all part of the struggle of men today, and these grievances have legitimacy.

The dangers of “Red Pill Rage”

“Red Pill Rage” (aka: The anger phase), is one of the initial, and most dangerous, phases of “unplugging” there is as a man. Now, anger is a natural, and very legitimate, response to something that you believe to be an injustice. Therefore, it’s perfectly acceptable to feel angry about something. In fact, anger can be a *great* motivational tool to get you to refocus your energy in the right places.

However, if you become stuck in this phase of being angry all the time, you start to run the real risk of becoming overly bitter at both women and the world around you. This bitterness will continue to eat away at you as you let your brain go down to those deep, dark, places in your mind that you didn’t even realize existed.

Look, the world as you know it isn’t based on the idealism of “fairness”. It *never* has been, and it *never* will be. Society continues to feed you your “participation trophy,” pat you on the back for coming in last, and will tell you that if you’re just “nice” to everyone (especially to women), that it will “all work out in the end.”

Granted, most MGTOWs understand this reality. However, they prefer to play the victim card and keep themselves to themselves. And that’s their choice. But, it’s also a quitter’s mindset. And, by definition, quitters never win.

If you're coming out of a shitty divorce, or similar, and you need to hit the reset button on your life. Then sure. By all means, take the time to recenter yourself and truly learn how to become your own mental point of origin. But, this should only ever be a very temporary step before you use your newfound knowledge of the world, and the sexual marketplace, to elevate your life to new untold heights of excellence and happiness.

Surrender to female nature

Do you get annoyed at the sea for being wet? Do you get irritated at the sun for being warm? Then why do you get so angry at women for doing what's been in their biological programming since homo sapiens began roaming the Earth?

Like it or not, females developed hypergamy as a means of survival. If a woman picked the wrong man to pair and breed with, then it would spell certain doom for both her and her child. So, making sure that she was getting the "best that she could get," literally meant the difference between life and death for her and her kids.

And because hypergamy has been hard-wired into them, *nothing* has changed as the years have gone on.

Learn to accept it and then navigate it

When you finally get to the "acceptance" stage of how the world and the sexual marketplace works, you'll be in the

perfect position to “flip the script” and use this knowledge to your advantage as you navigate your way through life.

It’s almost like having a superpower where you can “see the code in the matrix” in real-time.

The “Black Pill” solution

The standard MGTOW “Black Pill” solution is: Just go your own way and avoid women completely. Or, at the very least, if you *do* allow women into your life, *never* live with a woman in a way where the state would automatically, and legally, view such cohabitation as a marriage.

There also seems to be an underlying belief by some MGTOWs that, if they convince enough men to “Go MGTOW,” women will be magically forced to fall back in line and start to love all men for who they are.

Throughout history, women have always dismissed men they personally deemed weak or incompetent.

Women simply do not get involved with men they see as quitters. Women don’t care about your struggles, they wait at the finish line and fuck the winners.

A popular comment I’ve read in my videos is “DDD” or “Dudes, Dogs, and Dolls.” Dudes, or men, are used for friendship, dogs for companionship (and affection), while sex dolls are to be used for sexual release.

This sounds an *awful* lot like the toxic narrative feminists sell women. That: “All they need is their girlfriends, cats,

and vibrators.”

Sex dolls

The “doll” solution amongst some MGTOW is to have sex with an inanimate doll. Do a quick Google search for “sex doll” and you’ll see what I mean.

I found a post on Twitter from user @Masumi with a pinned tweet of a sex doll looking like a “perfect 10.” It reads:

“

You know she doesn't love you, so stop pretending, dump her and buy a doll today. Always loyal, always there for you, 0% chance of a false rape allegation, STDs, divorce rape, pregnancy, she will never ask you for more. Credit options are available.

As a marketer myself, I’m impressed by the copy; I’m not convinced, however, that it’s the best solution.

If you Google “MGTOW” there are over 3.5 million results. There are *hundreds* of YouTube channels dedicated to men talking about why women are not worth your time. Yet, many sex doll companies sponsor these channels and often end their arguments about how you should “Go MGTOW and get a doll”.

Yes, feminism has destroyed the nuclear family. Women are more masculine these days, less agreeable, more interested in seeking attention and validation on social media, and in pursuing careers. Divorce rape is a *real* problem if you get married. A woman can allege rape with *no* proof (ruining a

man's career), and this is possible because the world is built around a female primary social order.

The risks women pose to men is fairly high. But, the MGTOW narrative sounds like: "You are a victim; down with the gynocracy."

Which sounds an *awful* lot like the toxic feminist narrative used by women which seems to be: "You are a victim; down with the patriarchy."

The biggest distinction between MGTOWs and feminists is that MGTOWs say you should quit a game which is rigged against you. Whereas, feminists screech loudly and organize protests to march on policy makers just to bend even more laws in their favor.

Both toxic feminists and MGTOWs appear to have the same end in mind - the isolation and segregation of the sexes.

Look, life has *always* been rigged against men. This isn't some golden era of the cards being stacked up against men which we've never seen before.

Did the 300 Spartans say it was a rigged game when the Persians invaded and quit? Did the British give up when Hitler began a massive air assault on the British Isles during the battle of Britain?

Last time I checked, nobody won *anything* by quitting.

You win by figuring out what you are up against, adapting, and then mastering the game. At the end of the day, every

struggle a man must face in life comes with some risk attached.

Be careful of anyone selling you fear, or a victim mindset. A victim mindset is a loser's mindset.

The real MGTOWs

In my opinion, the real MGTOWs, are the men that quietly go about their life, without constantly pointing and sputtering at women, society, or at anyone else who lives their life differently to them. This was what I originally understood this movement to be about.

Rise of the Incel

There is a sub-group of men that call themselves MGTOW. Truthfully though, it's not by choice. Rather, they feel that they can't attract women and haven't done well with them in the past, so they are now an involuntarily celibate man.

The soundbites used by Incels online, usually sound something like this:

“ Why don't girls like me? I mean, I'm literally a great guy, just because I'm not attractive, or don't have money doesn't mean I'm not a great catch.

If you are short and skinny, be short with muscles and rich. If you are ugly, be ugly, muscular, and rich. Napoleon was only 5 foot 5 inches tall. And Mick Jagger is as ugly as they

come. Yet, neither of these men had much trouble with women, or success in life, because they worked their asses off.

The saddest thing of all, is that at least 27 mass murders in North America alone have been attributed to men that have openly identified themselves as an Incel.

These men never learned how to handle rejection, learn from their experiences, or accept that they had some work to do on themselves. It was *always* the fault of others or society for their results in life. Sound familiar?

Self-professed Incel Alek Minassian, posted the following to Facebook shortly before he rented a van and went on a killing spree in Toronto:

“Private (recruit) Minassian Infantry 00010, wishing to speak to Sergeant 4chan please C23249161. The Incel rebellion has already begun! We will overthrow all of the Chads and Stacy’s! All hail the supreme gentleman Elliot Rodger.

Minassian drove his rented van over the curb onto sidewalks, killing 10 people and injured 16 more. His reference to “‘Chads’ and ‘Stacy’s” is relevant because the frustration was that, as Incels, they can’t compete with stronger, more alpha, males (Chads), or the women (Stacy’s) that pine for the Chads.

You’d think men “Going their own way,” would just unplug from society and live their own peaceful life. But, the Incel

uprising has shown us that there is a dangerous subculture to MGTOW.

Better safe than sorry

MGTOWs will say that feminism has destroyed the social contract between men and women. It's hard to disagree with that observation.

But, if you search for channels on YouTube about MGTOW, you'll find pages upon pages of videos with narratives backing these claims up with, very well thought out, analytical breakdowns taking it further into a passive aggressive hate movement.

Ultimately, persuadable, and frustrated men are the target of these recruitment videos.

I happened across a video once by a MGTOW explaining that avoiding marriage isn't enough anymore, that feminism had infiltrated civil law to the point that vindictive women could file domestic violence restraining orders in the US against a man they weren't living with. And, even though they weren't married, she could divorce rape him, all without proof, without his knowledge, and without a shred of evidence.

All women need to do is claim that you are violent, and the law will immediately side with them. Scary stuff, right?

By the end of such well-presented lectures, they'll have many men, incorrectly, believing that all women are demons.

While I don't disagree with the threat, it's the significance of the threat that I question.

Let's dig into the math used...

MGTOWs are great with stats. The content creator in this recruitment video provided numbers that suggested there are 900,000 domestic violence restraining orders filed every year in the USA. Asking how would you, as a man, like to be removed from your house, have your car taken away, and half your stuff gone based on allegations, not evidence?

Now, what if women filed those 900,000 restraining orders? While this is unlikely to be the case, for the sake of argument, let's assume all of them were.

There are now 325,000,000 people in the US. Of which men account for half.

That leaves us with 162,500,000 men and we know that about 40,000,000 of those men are under the age of 20.

So, we can assume that there are 122,500,000 men that might have been exposed to this potential threat with a woman. Remember, in this recruitment video, the man isn't living with anyone else and is only dating women on an exclusive basis.

That's .7% of the male population. Statistically insignificant. Let's put that into perspective.

According to data from the Centers for Disease Control and Prevention, the individual American driver's odds of dying as a result of an injury sustained in an automobile crash (which

includes pedestrians, bicyclists, and motorcyclists involved in car crashes), comes out to around 1 in 77.

That works out to 1.29%. The vast majority of the population can go through life without dying in a car accident. However, MGTOWs are telling men the threat is so great, that all men should now completely avoid half the population or, “just get a doll.”

Conclusion

Personally, I don’t care what you do with your time, or where you stick your dick. A prostitute, doll, your hand, or a hot woman. I’m not the Penis Police. What I do have a problem with though, is other men in need of help being misled by people so they can sell snake oil to them. Weaponizing them to hate how society is, before selling them silicone dolls to have sex with for \$3,000.

Granted, men have the burden of performance; women just need to show up and look pretty. But, MGTOWs appear to want men to stop playing a game that, truthfully, no man can ever fully check out of.

Unless you live in a cabin in the woods, with no connection to society, you will always be a cog in the wheels of the female primary social order.

Even MGTOWs that scratch their itch by using a sex doll are part of the feminine imperative. They likely work with women and probably also buy products and services

facilitated by women. Hell, even their sex doll that “Looks like a perfect 10,” keeps them tied to the feminine social.

The only proper solution is to:

- Do the work in life, so you become high value,
- Make yourself your own mental point of origin,
- Learn how to handle rejection like an adult,
- Always be the one responsible for the birth control,
- Learn how to spot dangerous personalities,
- And, finally, understand what drives attraction, Game, and how to limit your risk in a hostile sexual marketplace.

If you allow a woman into your life, then it's *imperative* that she is a complement to that life, not the focus. It's incumbent on you to stay on your purpose in life. Constantly chasing excellence with a genuine belief of outcome independence.

Look, disconnecting from women *might* be an interesting place to visit for a short while *if* you get divorced or have had your heart broken. But it's hardly a solution to living in a world where half of the population are women.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- Temporarily stepping out of the sexual marketplace is only valuable if you've just gotten out of a shitty

divorce or relationship. Taking some time out to chase excellence and to “Level up in multiple areas in your life,” will *definitely* pay off for you. Just make sure you’re receptive to the increase in higher-quality women that make themselves known to you now you’re a man of higher value.

- Remember, 70% of women want the time and attention of the top 20% of men. Chasing excellence will easily put you in the top 20%. What you do with your options when you get there... Well, that’s entirely up to you. Have fun.
- “Black Pill” MGTOW thinking is very nihilistic and unhealthy for your mental and emotional state. Men and women can certainly complement each other in life. Not *all* women are men-hating third-wave feminists. But, you *do* need to know how to “Find the diamonds in the rough.”
- Finally, hypergamy simply “is”. Accept it, embrace it, flip the script, and start using hypergamy to your advantage.

WHY SMART MEN AVOID MARRIAGE

Let me start by stating I'm not opposed to marriage or having a family. We are just a slightly higher form of primate, and make no mistake - as men, we're designed to scatter and pass down our seed. It is in our biological imperative.

I am, however, against allowing the state to decide what happens to your wealth, your freedom, and your access to your children if a marriage doesn't work out.

The divorce statistics vary slightly around the world. But, on a balance of probabilities, about half of all marriages end in divorce within seven years. Remember, this statistic ignores the *other* half of the men who are either living in an unhappy, or sexless, marriage.

In a study by Acevedo and Aron on both romantic love and long-term relationships¹, they discovered that only 13% of their participants, in an average of an 8.39 year relationship, felt "romantic love". And only 2% felt "obsession" for each other.

Meaning the chances of living in a state of bliss for eternity aren't particularly good and, in a marriage, it's the male and not the female who is often left in ruins. With him picking up the pieces after the couple goes through the relentless grind of the divorce machine, before being spit out the other side.

Throughout history, men have always been the disposable sex, and women the protected sex. So, it would make sense that everything in family law today favors the woman, while being hostile towards men.

It's time to drop some cold hard truth bombs about the reality of marriage in today's Western world:

“Marriage is a high reward/low risk choice for women, but a low reward/high risk choice for men.

- Richard Cooper

I should clarify in this chapter that, when I say, "Western family law," I am including all First World, modern countries indoctrinated by today's version of feminism.

Throughout most of history, men were at the head of the household. They were legally responsible for the actions of their spouse and children and could keep order in their home by more or less whatever means they saw fit. If a man's home was his castle, then everyone within was his vassals.

No one knows exactly when and where the tables began to turn. But things started changing in the late 1800s when the state passed new laws. For example, in 1895 London passed a bylaw prohibiting wife beating past 9pm. However, this

wasn't designed to protect women. It was primarily a noise pollution issue in the densely populated city.

In Stephanie Coontz book, '*A History of Marriage*', she concluded that, for tens of thousands of years, people married not for love, but for the acquisition of in-laws, assets, and influence. Church records, personal diaries, and public court records showed love wasn't even part of the equation.

Men had 100% authority, and 100% responsibility to the family unit. Family and their in-laws took care of medical care, law enforcement, the elderly, schooling, and so on. Men were the head of the household, and there was little to no state involvement in how a man ran his family.

This was a time when masculine virtues were both respected - and valued. But, in the last one-hundred-and-fifty-years, a toxic version of progressive feminism has changed it all. Toxic feminism has reversed the roles so both women and the state are now at the head of the household.

Today's men no longer have authority in their house, yet they still have 100% of the responsibility. Almost all authority has been taken away from men and has been given to both the government and women, while men maintain *all* the financial responsibility.

What is even more troubling is that, with the recent #metoo era, something as fundamental as establishing the facts first is no longer required. Instead, we are to believe all women when they accuse men by default, no questions asked.

Family law

When I was getting divorced in Canada, I thought I knew what the process would look like. But, truthfully, I had *no* idea what I was up against. I approached divorce with a naive eye, viewing it as a simple process with a fair exit for everyone. *Every expectation I had was way off.*

In fact, I was **dead wrong.**

Within the first hour I talked to my family lawyer, he had dropped so many truth bombs on me that I walked away from the call with a feeling of complete hopelessness. I actually believed I'd be lucky to see my daughter ever again. That I'd spend the rest of my life bending at the knee to the state and my ex-wife. While I simply watched as my wealth left me, and I became alienated from my child.

I'll never forget my lawyer's words "If you have the penis, and go to court, you are going to lose - and badly." I was shocked.

Hadn't feminism leveled the playing field for women?

Aren't women *equal* to men?

If so, then why am I being told that, because I was born with a penis, I would lose *by default* in family court?

They say the original intent of progressive changes to family law was to deal with deadbeat dads who didn't look after their kids, right? Well it did, and then it kept going on, becoming a supremacist movement against men which hasn't ever stopped.

In today's world, women are the supreme rulers in both the household and in family law. Western governments designed every part of legislation to preserve and improve the mother's interests, while simultaneously destroying the fathers. In Western family law, for one gender (the female) to advance its cause, it comes at the expense of the other gender (the male).

If you are considering marriage, then the best thing you can do is buy one hour of a local family lawyers time. Sit down, listen well, and learn how the law handles men in your state or province. Because there's a 50% or more chance your marriage will end in divorce.

Remember, this divorce statistic doesn't take into account the people who remain married because they are too unattractive, broke, and lack the option to leave. Or, simply because they are cowards.

It is nearly impossible to calculate the number of unhappy marriages that persist.

Domestic violence charges - A woman's trump card

Domestic violence charges, alleged by the mother against the father, is a trump card which has been built into Western family law. Men can be forcibly removed from their own homes by the police for false or exaggerated claims of domestic violence. It also includes being alienated from their children, while the courts enforce unreasonable payments to the mother from the father. In turn, restraining you from

entering the house you paid for, or accessing the children you fathered.

I had a coaching call once with a man who was cheated on by his wife several times. So, he decided he'd had enough, and that it was time to divorce her. During the acrimonious separation period, he became upset with her one day and pointed a finger at her face and angrily proclaimed, "You are a fucking liar."

The finger-pointing was enough for her to call the police, make a claim of domestic violence, and have the authorities involved. There was no violence, no physical contact, nothing. Just an angry finger being pointed while saying five words.

It's absolutely *vital* that you always keep in mind the following phrase: The woman you marry is **never** the same woman you divorce.

Remember, Western family law is written in such a way that it assumes women are the weaker sex. Men are the privileged sex and are also the abusive sex by default.

How women behave during divorce

Men need to understand that through a combination of family law and female nature, women are motivated to behave incredibly poorly to the father of their children during the divorce.

There are *significant* female-centric financial rewards that have been written into family law encouraging women to be

the sole custodial parent of the children. By becoming the parent that has primary custody of the children, money, and all decision-making capacity, goes to the parent awarded custody. Which, eight times out of 10, is the woman.

Let's be clear about something. Women are opportunistic *by nature*, it's hard-wired into them, and it's part of the reason why sapiens are such a successful species. Without opportunism, her children were less likely to survive. You can't blame women for this; opportunism is an evolved survival mechanism.

Women needed this skill to find the best provisioning mate, and to optimize their hypergamy. If you give someone, that's naturally opportunistic, incentive to benefit at another's expense then, guess what, they will do it.

It's only in recent history that female opportunism has had the full backing of the state behind it as family law. Interestingly, prior to the last 150-years or so, if there was a divorce, then the father would most often get custody of the children and retain all family assets - including what she brought to the table.

Once a parent has custodial rights, they can make unilateral decisions without the other parents' consent. Even if that decision is not agreed upon by both parents.

Depending on where the law governs your divorce, that could include choices about school, extra-curricular programs, religion, medical procedures, and even where the custodial parent chooses to live.

The financial rewards are not exactly small either. There are three major financial drains from the parent that isn't the custodial parent:

ALIMONY

Also known as maintenance, this is the first level of responsibility that a man must pay to his ex-wife if he was the breadwinner in the home, and she didn't work, or earns significantly less. For some men, that was because she was a stay-at-home mom. For others, she just never worked after the marriage, and there were no kids.

Either way, you are responsible to upkeep her standard of living after the marriage ends. The monthly cost, and duration of the payments, depends on where you live, and how long you were married. In some places, like California for example, if you are married for 10-years or more, then its lifelong alimony.

CHILD SUPPORT

Child support is paid to the custodial parent to cover the cost of raising the children. Contrary to popular belief, the payment amount is not based on what the children actually need to survive. Rather, it's based on state issued tables. I had a friend who had calculated that, during his marriage, the monthly cost to look after his child for things like food and clothing were around \$500 per month.

The state issued child support tables, however, compelled him to make a legally enforceable payment of \$4,367 every

month. Child support, for the most part, goes to the mother, not the kids.

MATRIMONIAL ASSETS

Matrimonial assets are divided after the knot is untied, usually 50/50 in most cases. Although, there are places like Australia where *more than half* of the assets can be awarded to the mother. So, every asset you acquired, before, or after, your nuptials goes into a pile, and you split it down the middle, regardless of who paid for it.

In some cases, a prenuptial agreement may protect assets that were acquired before the wedding. But, if circumstances changed during the time you were married, or a considerable length of time has passed since the prenup was signed, then a judge will most likely throw out your prenup and it won't be worth the paper it's written on.

Since men rarely stay home to raise children, and women are hypergamous in their mate selection strategies, then you can begin to see how unlikely it is for the mother to pay the toll of family law. For the vast majority of cases, it's the men that are left in financial ruin. With little to no access to his children, watching helplessly as his money flow to his ex-wife, while she alienates him from his kids.

Hypergamy doesn't care if she vows to love and be with you "In richer or poorer, in sickness or in health... 'til death do us part."

Divorce, and not career or entrepreneurship is, statistically, still the number one-way women acquire their wealth today.

For a clear example of this, as I write this chapter in a Starbucks, a woman at the next table said to her girlfriend, complaining about her husband. She said: “I can divorce him, take half his shit, the kids, the house, and not need to put up with his dumb ass anymore.”

That, gentlemen, is the world that this toxic version of feminism has created.

How the state encourages women to become single mothers

In the spring of 2019, angry single mother journalists from around the world attacked me for warning men on Twitter about the dangers of getting into relationships with single mothers. They manufactured about a dozen hit pieces, all from a three-minute clip of a 50-minute speech that I gave an audience of men.

You can watch my video response by searching “The truth sounds like hate, to single moms that hate the truth” on my channel for more perspective.

An overwhelming show of support came from men, and some women, praising me for shining a light on this unflattering subject. But, a golden nugget appeared from commenter “Kim Brown” in the comment section of the video, she said:

“ The thing that infuriates me is my hubby makes about \$50,000 per year, I make about half that. But when you are talking to people about taking responsibility for themselves, you do realize that if

I were to leave my hubby and become a single mother with government benefits, I'd have way more money. What we pay in taxes as a couple, opposed to what the government would give me if I was on my own isn't even close. So, when women leave there [sic] husbands they are improving their situation until that changes nothing else will. It's sickening when society rewards those who make bad choices!

She went on to expand on that with the following:

“ My friend who is a single mother, does the same job and makes the same money as me. We sat down and compared our finances and, with all the subsidies and tax breaks she receives from the government, she has about \$1,000 a month more than my family in disposable income. To me, that's not just rewarding single mothers, it is actively punishing middle to low income women for staying with the father of their children.

If there is a more damning piece of evidence that the state is encouraging women to leave their marriage and become a single mother... Well, I'm not sure where to find it.

Arguments for marriage

Some men might argue that their girlfriend is a “God fearing religious woman.” Or that his beautiful fiancée comes from a

home with conservative values where both of her parents remained happily married for twenty-years.

That isn't enough, for two simple reasons:

1. A woman *always* reserves the right to change her mind at any time.
2. Even conservative, God loving religious women will leverage the corrupt family legal system to benefit from family law.

I had a coaching consultation once where a man spent a good part of the call framing what was to become the “evolution” of “her” during his marriage. She went from a church going religious woman, from an unbroken home, to someone he didn’t even recognize during the divorce process.

It shocked him that she had performed a 180-degree pivot during the divorce. She filed a false domestic violence charge to get him out of the house. Allowing her to control the sale of the home, obtain primary custodial caregiving, and earn maximum benefits from the child support tables.

I simply cannot endorse marriage in its current state today.

But Rich, don’t men have an obligation to find a “good girl” and settle down?

No, you don’t. However, men do have an obligation to become the best possible version of themselves. If a woman enters your frame, is a complement to your life (but not the focus), and you want children, then - and only then - should

you consider having children (after a proper two-year vetting period).

But you must always remember... Women *always* reserve the right to change her mind.

All you need to do is browse the divorce discussion forums for 10-minutes to see loads of women who think that, just because the child came out of their body, that they are the sole *owner* of that child. Therefore, they are entitled to be the primary caregiver by default.

Better yet, spend an afternoon sitting in on divorce hearings at your local family court, and see with your own eyes how fathers get treated.

Societal conditioning, media, feminism, and the law all reinforce that men are inept clowns, incapable of being a useful parent to a child. Fathers are, however, useful as tax cattle, so the state can milk and then transfer those assets to a mother.

Society celebrates single mothers so much that, during Father's Day, you will see memes being passed around that are praising single mothers for doing the job of both parents. However, single fathers receive no praise on Mother's Day.

For more on this topic of the feminization of society, search for a video on my channel titled 'Why are today's men so feminized?'.

Throughout history, men were valued. However, with the state at the head of the household, we have slowly been reduced to that of the disposable parent and are treated like

tax cattle. Fathers are no longer the head of the household, the state is. The state ensures that women are well looked after. Even if it comes at the father's expense.

It's absolutely essential to understand: "The woman you marry is *not* the same woman you divorce." Mark my words - a woman's *true* colors will come to light in a divorce.

For one side to advance its agenda it will come at the cost of the other. Win-win scenarios in divorce are rare because of female hypergamy and only sometimes happens if a woman marries a man of lower value than her (which is even rarer).

Understand that women are not natural risk takers, men are. Now, wrap your head around the fact that women initiate about 80% of all divorces, and often plan them months, or sometimes years, in advance. They do this because they are confident that they will do well - because the state makes sure of it.

Remember that taking unnecessary risks is not inherent in female nature because women play not to lose. It's men that play to win.

Also, men, if you were caught fucking around on her, always understand that hell hath no fury like a woman scorned. Female nature is not on your side. Yet, it expects you to forgive her, look past her indiscretions and, in many cases, it expects you to take ownership for the reason why she fucked around on you.

Divorce and suicide

It was a warm spring day as I drove along the freeway. I was six months into my separation, and still living in the matrimonial home trying to hash out the details of my divorce. I was driving into the office in my truck, feeling utterly depressed about how things were going for me.

This was when overwhelming thoughts of suicide entered my mind. I felt powerless, and the notion of taking off my seatbelt, flooring the truck, and quickly slamming into a concrete pillar entered my mind. I figured it would be over fast.

It was *easily* the lowest point in my life. My life was out of control, and I had no idea if I was going to survive financially, or even see my daughter grow up.

Throughout history, men have been conditioned to be tough and to “man up.” We fight in horrible wars and do incredibly dangerous jobs that women aren’t typically willing to do, like work in mines, or on oil rigs. But when it comes to the emotional and economic toll of divorce, simply put, men can’t cope very well. Divorced men are also more than twice as likely to commit suicide as married men, and divorced men are almost 10 times more likely to kill themselves than divorced women.

But, this is something that the mainstream media won’t shine a spotlight on. Remember, men are disposable; women are protected.

Children and divorce

Even in today's modern world where women are working, and have income equality, mothers are *still* awarded a "primary caregiver" custody order about 80% of the time. That usually means that the father sees his child(ren) every other weekend and a Wednesday night - for dinner only.

My family lawyer said this is par for the course, and it's often called the "Screw over daddy deal."

Women often argue, "Children need their mothers," and family law still sides with that notion. Which, of course, is utter nonsense. Children need access to *both* of their parents if they are going to be an effective member of society as an adult.

Approximately 43% of children in North America are raised by the mother. Here's some more statistics that men should know when relying on the mother to raise their children:

Fatherless boys and girls are:

- Twice as likely to drop out of high school, twice as likely to end up in jail, and are four times more likely to need help for emotional or behavioral problems.²
- 85% of youths in prisons grew up in a fatherless home.³
- 85% of children who exhibit behavioral disorders come from fatherless homes.⁴
- 71% of pregnant teenagers lack a father.⁵
- 63% of youth suicides are from fatherless homes (five times the average).⁶

Mothers, by an overwhelming margin, are doing most of child rearing post-divorce. And, despite how single mothers are praised in the media for being strong and independent, they're often doing a terrible job at it.

How marriage changes men

A lot of men I've coached through divorce entered the marriage with some beliefs they came to learn weren't true. And most of those men were downright shocked by what happened to them.

Men's testosterone levels decrease

It's been proven that when a man lives with a woman, and has children, his testosterone levels drop. Some would argue that this process is just andropause, and natural. But unmarried men of the same age usually have higher testosterone levels than their married counterparts.

PATERNITY FRAUD

While it's difficult to get reliable statistics on this (because of gynocentric laws in some Western countries that lean towards no paternity testing), it's estimated that somewhere between 10 and 30% of married men are raising children that aren't biologically theirs.

This is a big issue because - one of the bigger selling points of marriage to most men - is the ability to pass down his seed. Marriage is, in theory anyway, supposed to *protect* paternity.

BETATIZATION BY A THOUSAND CONCESSIONS

Women will constantly test a man's frame. The vast majority of men will go through the slow process of agreeing to his wife's endless requests and demands. It often starts with "Honey, put your dark clothes in the dark hamper, and your white clothes in the light hamper." Before progressing on to "Let's go vegan together," and may eventually escalate to "Let's have a poly relationship." Which inevitably ends in a speech about how she "Loves you, but isn't in love with you."

Throughout your marriage, the question isn't if you *will* be betatized. It's more of *by how much* and will it be to the point that you become so unattractive to her; she leaves. It's important to note that **women don't do this intentionally**, it's just a natural part of female nature alongside the societal conditioning of the sexes.

REDUCED SEX DRIVE

Men often marry under the impression their wife will reward them with the reliable, consistent, and wild sex that they had before they got married. Yet, one of the biggest search queries from married men is: "How do I get my wife to fuck me?"

Sexless marriages are extremely common today. Introducing kids into the relationship *will* dramatically change the dynamic between both of you, her sexual availability, and her enthusiasm for you. Another, often overlooked reason for this, is that her competition anxiety drops considerably

when she lives with you. She also subconsciously knows family law has her back.

She knows where you are at all times and where you live. Therefore, the competition anxiety that she had when you were both living under separate roofs would keep the hamster between her ears caffeinated. With her constantly wondering what you might be up to.

For more information on competition anxiety search “Entrepreneurs in cars what is competition anxiety.”

How to minimize the risks of marriage

I've had men propose all kinds of ways to eliminate the risk of divorce rape, from importing foreign brides, to surrogacy. Look, there is no way to remove *all* risk. But, from my research, I've discovered a few things that you can do to minimize it:

LIVE WHERE SHARED CUSTODY IS THE DEFAULT ARRANGEMENT IN DIVORCE

There are a few places around the world where, upon divorce, *both* parents share custody 50/50 by default. Unless one parent can prove that the other parent is a risk to the children's safety. So, if one parent is a heroin addict, with a history of violence, or criminal activity, then there may be an argument for a sole custody hearing. However, be sure to ask a family lawyer in your country about this.

HAVE BOTH A PRENUPTIAL AND A POSTNUPTIAL AGREEMENT

A prenuptial isn't enough, and many people will tell you they really aren't worth the paper they're written on during a divorce. This is especially true if 10 years have passed since you got married and she stayed home to raise three kids while you worked. They just have less value over time.

However, there *are* cases where judges have enforced a prenuptial, because a postnuptial was signed *after* the marriage, thereby confirming the original terms. You must remember, any nuptial agreement loses value over time. As circumstances change again, be sure to ask a family lawyer in your country about the best way to handle this. **You** must protect **your** assets.

DON'T MARRY DOWN (Too FAR)

Men typically marry down. It's not uncommon for the VP of Accounting, who's making \$360,000 a year, to marry a hairdresser that's earning just above the poverty line. When you marry down, she doesn't return to her hairdresser lifestyle upon divorce. It is *you* who'll be expected to maintain the lifestyle she became accustomed to in the marriage.

Family law doesn't allow women to return to the poverty line, *especially* if there are children in the equation. Therefore, if you choose to marry in a Western country, then find someone that brings similar assets to the table. Or ideally someone who earns as much, or more, than you (although even that brings its own unique set of problems in a divorce).

DON'T MARRY A FEMINIST

Feminism teaches women they don't need men, that we men are disposable. How men have oppressed women, why men are the privileged sex, and that women are better than men. You simply cannot expect a woman to stick around when they subscribe to a belief system that indoctrinates women into simultaneously being a victim and a supremacist, all while hating the opposite sex.

SEEK THE BRIGHT TRIAD TRAITS

They are:

1. Clarity,
2. Stability,
3. Maturity.

My friend Dr. Shawn T. Smith, author of the book '*The Tactical Guide to Women*,' would consider a woman who displayed these traits as being a high-quality woman. Read this book, then read it again, and seek out these traits.

AVOID THE DARK TRIAD TRAITS

They are:

1. Narcissism,
2. Machiavellianism,
3. Psychopathy.

Narcissists are easy to spot today; she is the woman that is constantly seeking attention on social media throughout the day.

Machiavellianism is when a person is so focused on their own interests that they will manipulate, deceive, and exploit others to achieve their goals.

Psychopathy is traditionally a personality disorder that is characterized by persistent antisocial behavior, impaired empathy and remorse, and bold, dis-inhibited, and egotistical traits. It is sometimes considered synonymous with sociopathy.

Although it's not specified in the dark triad, I would add Borderline Personality Disorder (or BPD) to this list of traits to avoid.

WAIT TWO YEARS BEFORE YOU MARRY

In his book, clinical psychologist Dr. Shawn T. Smith pointed out that women can put on an act, *especially* if they are post-wall and in a rush to get married due to “baby rabies.”

Therefore, be sure to “Hire slow and fire fast.” Do your due diligence and take your time vetting a woman. One of the *biggest* complaints that men, who marry too quickly have, is they learn that they were merely dating a *representative* of the woman. And that the nice representative leaves after she says, “I do.” If, by the two-year mark, it’s not a “Hell Yeah!” then it’s definitely a “Fuck no!”

LIVE TOGETHER

You’ll only see someone’s true colors when you live with them. Live with them for at least six months to see if you still like them on the seventh month. Also, don’t listen to people that tell you that marriages have a higher chance of

failure if you live together before you marry. This is true in North America by a tiny percentage point. But, in Europe, most marriages fair better where a couple lives together first.

SEE HOW SHE HANDLES STRESS

Flight got cancelled? Her baggage was lost? Sandra at the office is a royal bitch every day? See how she handles stressful situations, and if she can make the best of them. Stress happens in marriage, so dealing with stress maturely is a skill needed for a successful marriage. Avoid a woman that can't handle stress, or one that makes mountains out of molehills.

SHE HAS A GOOD RELATIONSHIP WITH HER FATHER

I'm assuming you are a masculine man, or one seeking that level of excellence. How can you expect a woman to admire, and look up to you, if she didn't have a positive masculine male role model in her life growing up? See my chapter '20 Red Flags to Avoid' in this book, as I cover "Daddy Issues" extensively there.

SHE TAKES YOUR NAME

We live in a world today where some women, usually feminists, won't take on your last name. Sometimes, I've heard of weak beta men taking on their wife's last name. In an environment where the burden of all risks are on the man's shoulders, your wife should take on *your* last name. And, no, hyphenation *isn't* acceptable either.

It shows that she is in it for the long haul and is willingly entering your frame. There are some cases where women with a professional designation, for example, a Lawyer or a Doctor, can't change their surnames without a substantial amount of hassle. But, as far as the marriage license, passport, driver's license, etc., then her last name should change to yours.

DON'T COMPLICATE THE WEDDING

Do not get involved in the long, drawn out process that is wedding planning. Photographers, videographers, band, DJ, limo, venue, meal plan, invitations, and so on. If you let yourself get carried away in the planning, then you will overspend on something that already has a 50% chance of failure.

Therefore, keep it simple, have a justice of the peace perform it or, even better, make it fun and have a destination wedding. Statistics also show that more expensive weddings have a higher probability of divorce. A woman that is in your frame and admires you will not insist on a giant party that's all about her.

Conclusion

Marriage is utterly unnecessary in today's day and age. It is **all risk for men, and all reward for women**. If you want to have children, then my advice is to leave any Western country, state, or province, that is hostile towards men. Instead, live somewhere where there's ideally no alimony, division of assets, and child support to worry about.

There are still feminine women that frown upon feminism and value masculinity. Find one of these women and live where the law isn't going to destroy you.

The cold hard truth

Never forget:

- The woman you marry, **will not** be the same woman that you divorce. A woman's *true* character *will* be revealed during a divorce. So, don't be surprised if she makes up loads of crazy stories to get family law, and potentially even the police, to do her dirty work for her.
- If you have kids with her, then be ready for her to weaponize them during the divorce. She'll do absolutely *everything* in her power to turn them against you and alienate them from you. Rest assured, that this *will* test your personal resolve and frame to the absolute limit. Being alienated from their kids is one of the biggest reasons why so many men either commit suicide, or at the very least, contemplate it.
- If you've been betatized by a thousand concessions, and you begin to take back your life and frame, then you can be *absolutely certain* that your wife *will* fight you tooth and nail to prevent this. Expect the shit tests to escalate to never-before-seen epic-levels as she pokes and prods at this "new you," to see if you *truly are* taking your balls back out of her handbag. Or if you're just faking it.

- Before getting married, go see a divorce lawyer together and **do not** be guilt-tripped or shamed by your LTR for doing this (that, in and of itself, is a major red flag). Invest the money needed for a one-hour consultation with a local divorce lawyer to find out how a divorce would pan out where you live. Just think, if a skydiving instructor informed you that, not only did your parachute only have a 50% chance, or less, of opening. But, that you would also immediately lose legal access to everything that you had worked hard for the minute you jumped (including access to your kids), would you *still* want to jump out of that plane?
-

1 *Review of General Psychology* © 2009 American Psychological Association 2009, Vol. 13, No. 1, 59–65

2 US D.H.S. news release, March 26, 1999

3 *Fulton County Georgia jail populations, Texas Department of Corrections, 1992*

4 *Centers for Disease Control*

5. U.S. Department of Health and Human Services press release, Friday, March 26, 1999

6 *US Dept. Of Health/Census*

IN CONCLUSION...

So, there you have it. Several of society's most comforting lies crushed by a series of cold, hard, truths. Allowing your eyes to open up to these truths is the basis of the ultimate playbook to understanding how to get better results in life and with women. Ultimately, transforming you into that unplugged Alpha you want to be.

This book is just a no-bullshit introduction to the harsh realities that men around the world face today. There's much more to unpack, which I may release in a future book. The red flag chapter for example, could contain significantly more red flags. But, for the sake of simplicity, I had to distill that chapter down to the basics.

Throughout this book, I've referenced several other books that I strongly suggest you read. Consider those books next if you'd like to dive even deeper into the rabbit hole of becoming more alpha and masculine.

When you take the Red Pill, it's like being parched and then taking your first drink from a firehose. You're thirsty for the

information, but the sheer volume of information comes at you with a shocking intensity and speed.

With that in mind, I'd suggest reading this book a few times over. *Especially* if my cold, hard, truth bombs make that Beta inside you feel deeply uncomfortable.

If you are new to my work, I invite you to browse my YouTube channel called 'entrepreneurs in cars.' At the time of writing this book, there I've uploaded almost 1,000 free videos for you to watch and learn from. They're the perfect compliment to the information in this book.

Similarly, if you are looking to connect with like-minded men from around the world that are actively working on becoming a top 1% man, then consider joining my private men's community. I offer my members many exclusive benefits, including discounted 1-on-1 coaching with me. Continue your journey by watching the introduction video here: <https://entrepreneursincars.com/community/>

Finally, it's **essential** to remember: The point of unplugging from the comforting lies you've been told by society *isn't* to hate women, or to even leave a nasty taste in your mouth. It's about accepting, and then fully embracing, the realities of life as a strong, driven, masculine man. Which includes the requirement of being truly at peace with women and not hating them for what they can never be to you.

Peace,

Rich Cooper

GLOSSARY

Oneitis

An unhealthy attachment to one woman where a man desperately pines for her love, attention, and intimacy. The woman in question often couldn't care less about his existence. Men who get “oneitis” often subscribe to the notion of her being his “one true love”, only to see her move on to another man. All while he suffers and sulks in misery hoping she will, one day, return.

Spinning plates

This is a term used to describe simultaneously dating multiple women in a non-monogamous fashion (aka: casual dating), and is a tactic that's often used by men who are disinterested in a conventional monogamous relationship. Or, by someone who knows that he's prone to developing “oneitis,” or prefers vetting women for an LTR/wife by allowing contrast and comparison. Which allows “the cream” (his best “plate”) to rise to the top.

It's important to note that you *never* overtly state you are spinning plates. You just do it, and let your actions signal, by the lack of your availability, that you are spinning plates. Women are, unknowingly by nature, master plate spinners, and often date multiple men at once. Unless, of course, they feel that they've found their best hypergamous option.

SMV (Sexual Marketplace Value)

An individual's own value in the sexual marketplace. For example, your physique, style, Game, frame, confidence levels, etc. all have an individually perceived "value" to women. The more you chase excellence, the higher your natural SMV becomes as you optimize every area of your life.

The Wall

There comes a time in a woman's life when she can no longer really compete on the sexual marketplace with younger, more virile women, and they have therefore "hit the wall." Women are beauty objects to men and her SMP peak is around 23-years old. After that, her looks are on a steady decline.

While you'll never hear a woman admitting to the existence of "the wall" in public. If you ever hear divorced women talk between each other, they'll often refer to giving their "best years" and often ask their friends "who wants a 30-year-old with two kids in tow?" Like it, or not, they *know* that their prime asset to a high-value man, their looks, is on a very steady decline.

A woman can will hit the wall much sooner with destructive lifestyle habits like: smoking, drinking, drugs, or by becoming a single mother. Conversely, a woman can also delay hitting the wall by a few years, by mastering self-care. Either way, a hot 23-year-old will *always* be more attractive to high-value men than a relatively hot 43-year-old (as the latter now has a lower SMV).

Men also hit the wall, but a man's decline doesn't begin until he's in his mid-late thirties (or *much* later if he's a high-value man). For more, search: "What is (SMV) Sexual Marketplace Value and The Wall" on my YouTube channel.

Soft Next

A soft next is where you cut all contact with a girl for a few days if she displays any terrible behavior (maybe longer, depending on how often you see her, or how bad the behavior was in your eyes). This means you do not respond to her texts, calls, or attempts to visit you. Think of it as short-term ghosting.

The soft next works because it anchors negative consequences/emotions to bad behavior. For women, attention is the coin of the realm, and removing your attention powerfully resets your frame as the dominate one in the relationship.

However, it's *critical* that, at the end of the soft next, you continue the relationship normally and act as if nothing had ever happened. If she took the hint that you're more than

prepared to hold your boundaries firm, she'll be more than happy to meet up with you again.

Frame

Regardless of the relationship (or even with life in general), **frame is everything**. Frame is the rock-solid, congruent, outward representation of your core beliefs and your own personal boundaries. The term frame is most often used when talking about managing the frame of a relationship. In every relationship, regardless of the type, one person always “enters the others frame.”

What this means is that the person who's defining the frame of the relationship, is the one who is in control (as the other person willingly “submits” to the stronger frame).

When a man is in control of the frame of the relationship, then that means she is a complement to his life, not the focus. She rarely finds the need to shit test him, create drama, or challenge his choices or authority in the relationship. Women today subconsciously, but desperately, want to enter the frame of a strong, masculine alpha male. A frame that's been built upon the solid foundations of competency, success, and purpose.

Shit Test

Also more accurately known as a competency test. Women often shit test men to check if he's their best option. The competency test can be in the form of a question, or a

behavior she exhibits to test the frame of the relationship, where she's watching closely how he responds (is he cool, calm, and collected? Or does he let his emotions get the better of him?).

An example of a shit test might be: "Hold my purse for me while I go into this clothes store." But, what she's *really* testing you for, is to find out if you are a good little compliant beta male that will do as he's told, and stand there holding her purse like an obedient little puppy.

A simple "No. I don't carry female accessories" with a slight sneer would let her know that you're not falling for her test. Hypergamy means that women will *always* competency test men (whether that's at a conscious or subconscious level), but the frequency and severity of these tests will reduce close to zero when she trusts your leadership and competency skills and is willingly 100% in your frame.

Hypergamy

Women's primary sexual strategy for millions of years has been to form a sexual relationship with a superior man on the socioeconomic scale. It's often said that hypergamy doesn't seek its own level. Rather, hypergamy always seeks *better* than itself.

This is an evolved survival technique for her and her children to always find the best male she can secure for provisioning and protection. When a woman leaves a man, for another that she deems to be of higher value, it's because of hypergamy.

Many men are furious at women for being hypergamous. However, there's no value in being angry at a woman for wanting the best that she, rightly or wrongly, believes that she can get. Therefore, understand hypergamy and make it work *for* you. To dive deeper into hypergamy, search for: “what is hypergamy” on my YouTube channel.